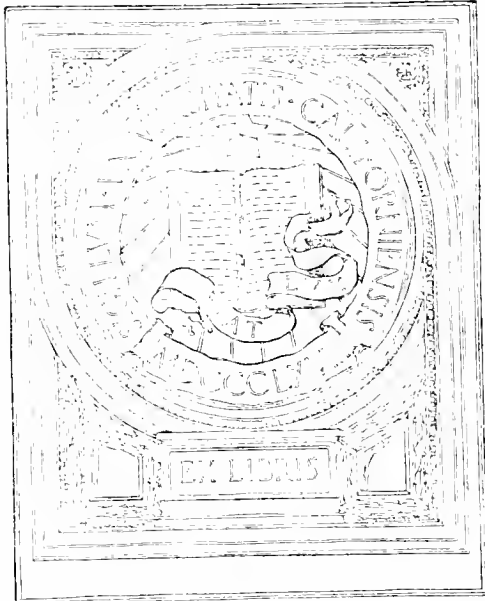
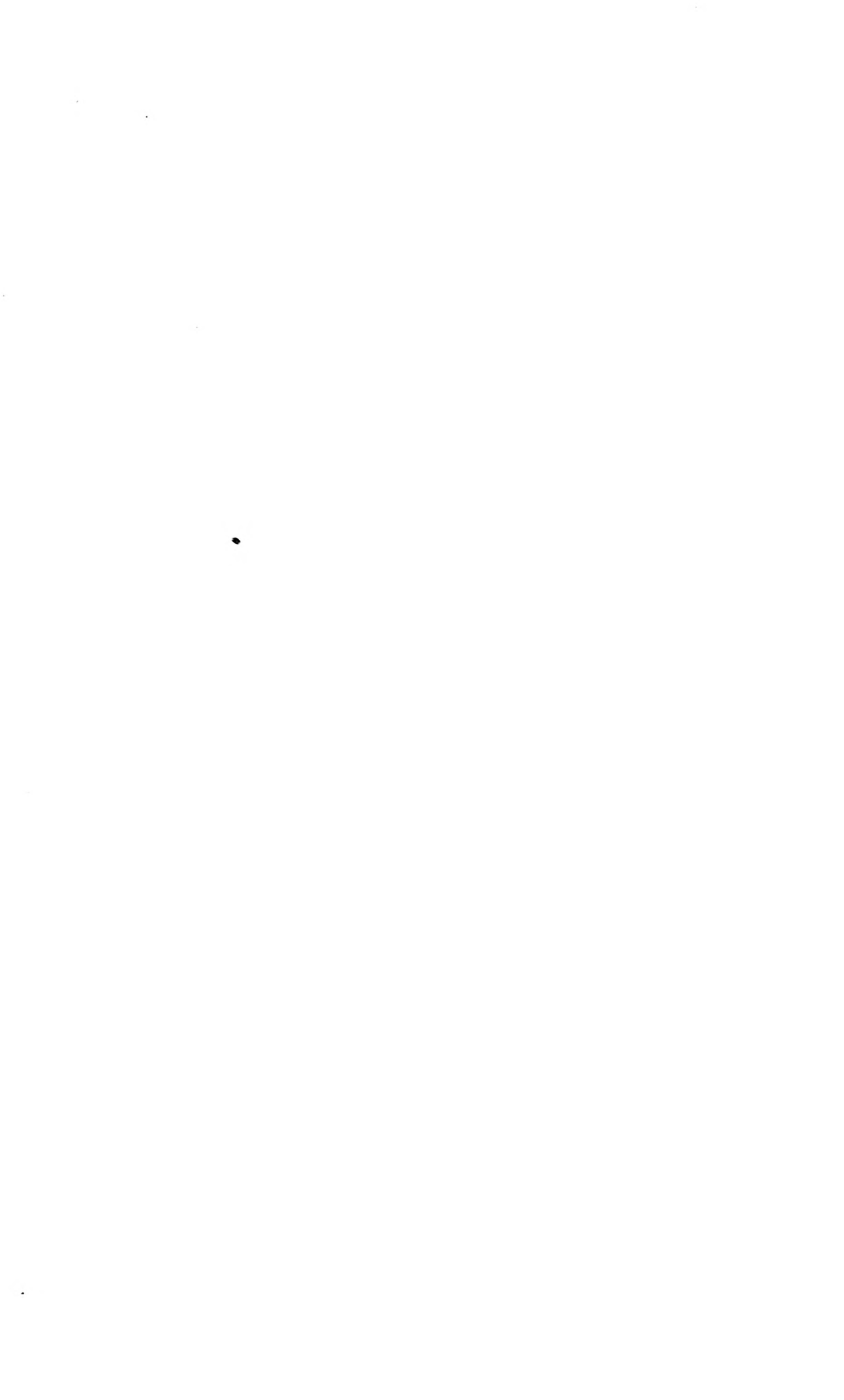


UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA
AT LOS ANGELES



EX LIBRIS





OR, THE
History of France.

A FAM'D

IN
Twelve Parts.

Written originally by the Author of
and

Translated by _____ Gent.

Printed for _____ and _____ at the
George near *S. Dunstan's Church*, and at the *Har-*
row at *Chancery Lane* end in *Fleet-street*,
and the *New Exchange*. 1677.

AMBOS FILIOS DO MINHO
CEL. BONA SOLITA

Ed 10/1/2/4

* Pu
1303
3 E
V

TO THE
Dutchess

OF
ALBEMARLE.

MADAM,



I were a presumption to approach so Illustrious a Person, did not your Grace's Goodness give access to your Greatness; and since I have made the French Pharamond an English Guest, he could be nowhere more nobly Entertain'd, or more Princely Lodg'd, than under your Grace's Roof: and when he enters there, he comes as Æneas did into Carthage, only with this difference. That Trojan Worthy beheld the fair Dido's Palace adorn'd with his own Labours. Here he saw a Grecian, there a Trojan Army; here Shining Navies, and there Glittering Fields; on this side a Besieged, on that a Burning City; and on the Painted Roof a Scene of Deities deciding the Fate of Troy; here he saw Warring Hero's, and there Contending Gods. But Pharamond, when he approaches here, instead of meeting his own Adventures, his Great Enemies, and his greater Conquests, is Treated by your Grace with a more Glorious Story: Here he views a Bleeding Nation, and the intestine wounds of a long Civil War, and there he sees the Loyal and Valiant Newcastle plung'd in the Torrent, and stemming an impetuous Tide to save a Sinking Kingdom, and in opposition to this active Hero, the Lantscape above presents him a Threatening Providence, like the Angel with the Flaming Sword before the Gate of Paradise. And in pur-

R. Brown 2-1-44 - English

suance of this Prophetick Vision he beholds a Martyr'd Monarch, a Ruin'd State, and an Enslav'd Country in a dismal Piece, Shaded and Darken'd with all the Horrors of Treason and Vengeance. However no sooner are his eyes diverted from this Tragick Object, but straight the next Prospect surprises him with a more Beautiful Scene. He admires the dazzling Lustre of a Northern Star, by whose sudden, and no less miraculous Influence, appears the Resurrection of Loyalty, Peace and Liberty, the Transports of a Deliver'd Nation, and the Restoration of an Exiled King.

Whilest the astonish'd Pharamond surveys this wondrous Chronicle of your Sacred Original, and as Sacred Alliance, and considers what perfections your Grace must derive from such infinite Virtues, he humbly throws himself at your Grace's Feet, and offers his Trophies to wait on your Triumphant Chariot: But when he presents his adored Rosamond to your Grace's Protection, he would fain flatter himself by resembling his Heroine to the Dutches of Albemarle; did he not know your Perfections to be above a Character, as your Example is above Imitation; since such Divine Qualities as your Grace's, cannot proceed from a less Fountain, or a greater then your own. The universal Adoration whereof, is that which gives me the presumption to stile my self

Madam,

Your Grace's most Humble,

most Obedient and most

Devoted Servant

J. Phillips.

PHARAMOND.

The first Part.

BOOK I.



That magnificent Empire, which for many Ages had been Mistress of the World, and which in the Reign of the great *Theodosius* did seem to be Reestablished in its Ancient Dignity, under the Government of his Children, began to suffer those Revolutions which all Tyrannical Sovereignties are subject to: for several of those Nations under its command, impatient of a Yoke, which had for so many years been imposed upon them, after they had for a long time bewailed themselves, and with continual sighs waited for their Liberty, so dear to all men, in the End gathered together all their Forces, and throughout most Parts of *Europe* covered the ground with Armed Souldiers. *France, Spain, Italy* and *Germany*, were the Stages, whereon the Interest of Nations were by the blood-thirsty Sword daily decided: but to the recovery of Liberty, other Provinces joyned their Powers; and 'twas only for Liberty, that a world of Souldiers of different Provinces and different Nations made the Banks of the River *Rhine* sound with *Ecchos* of their Martial Alarums, by Encamping in that great Plain, which it enriches with its clear and beautiful streams, from within the view of the proud *Agrippina* that famous City, to which the people (to blot out from amongst them all memories of the *Roman* greatness) had left no other name than that of *Collen*; even to the Banks of the River. All the Plain was to be seen covered with Men, Horses, Tents, Chariots, warlike Engins, which might render formidable the most Puissant Army; so that it seem'd to be that fatal Place where within few days the quarrel of several great Princes was to be determined at the price of one hundred thousand lives.

'Twas from one of these Camps that the Amorous *Marcomire* and the Valiant *Genebaud* sallied at the Head of one hundred Horse, to take knowledge of several Posts and Passes within the Plain: they took their way along the River, with design to visit before their return, those Parts which were most free. Mounted they were both on two beautiful Horses of the best *Jennet-Race*; and with so great a grace did their glorious Arms become them, and they their Arms, that it was impossible to be deceived in a true judgment of their incomparable Valour: Two Esquires bore behind them their Lances and Shields, known by the Ancient Device of their Illustrious Families. The fair *Marcomire*, whose mind was enflamed with an amorous passion, carried in his Eyes and in his Visage symptoms of his desires; but the Prince *Genebaud*, whose spirit was free and naturally jovial, endeavoured to entertain him with something of his pleasant humour, to divert those thoughts which perplexed his mind, and by degrees seemed to overwhelm him with a profound sadness.

No great distance were these two Princes from the Camp, for they might yet easily discover their Tents, when the Knights who attended them, gave them notice of five or six men on horseback, who at first marched along the River directly towards them; but upon discovery of them, had after a small stand quitted their course, and to avoid them were fallen off to the right hand: whereupon the two Princes thought it not convenient to let

them pass without knowledge of them, both considering the Country they were in, the present occasions which could brook no neglect, and that the behaviour of those Cavaliers might very well render them suspected, and make them be adjudged rather enemies than of their party: They therefore commanded *Gillon* with a dozen or fifteen Knights with all speed to cut off their way, and in their names to stop them, if they would not make themselves known.

Gillon rides swiftly after them, and the two Princes followed in the same Road at a more gentle pace. These unknown persons might easily have avoided being overtaken by him, if they had been of the humour to believe that inequality of number could have permitted them in honour to flee from their pursuers; but they kept on their ordinary pace; and when he approached them, entertained him in such an undaunted manner, that they gave him the means more easily to observe them, and that not without some astonishment. They were two Knights attended by four Esquires, who carried their Lances and their Shields. Their Masters had before the approach of *Gillon* lifted up the Visers of their Helmets, which they scorned to pull down again, they gave him the liberty to behold their Visages, and to remark things in them, which though different in themselves, yet of force made him entertain some respect for them. One of the two seemed to be of the age of thirty years, the other not less than twenty five: the Countenance of the most aged seemed full of complacency, but such a complacency as was accompanied with a noble Air and Heroick Majesty. In the Face of the younger might be descried something much above all that was common; there appeared a kind of fierceness in his eyes, and in all his Actions somewhat of pride and haughtiness. The Arms of the elder were all plain, and wholly black; nor were those of the younger of any other colour, but enriched with so many pretious Stones, that from their Value the Dignity of the person that wore them might easily be judged.

Gillon having for some time with wonder regarded these two unknown persons, at length very roughly accosts them; and confident his power was above theirs by reason of the numbers that accompanied him, very imperiously commands them either to tell their names, and the design that had led them so near the Camp, or to march with him and give an account to that Prince who had given him order to detain them. The two Knights hearing this Summons of *Gillon* with disdain, look'd for some time upon one another, as if they would consult what answer to return; but the youngest (who was without doubt the most proud and most impatient) first broke silence. *I know not* (said he to his Friend) *what is your intention; but I have been so little accustomed to obey, and have so little inclination to it, that I had rather hazard my Passage with my Sword in hand, than submit my self to those orders I have no reason to take notice of. I approve your intention:* (answered his Friend) *And though there may appear rashness in our design, my life is so little dear to me, that I will never counsel you to any Cowardize to preserve it.*

In speaking these Words, they saw that *Gillon* and his men had drawn their Swords; whereupon they immediately did the like, and without taking their Lances from their Esquires, flew with such fury among their Enemies, that they soon made them believe that their inequality of number would hardly assure them of Victory. Their two first blows sent two men to the Earth, the one dead, the other rendred utterly incapable of farther damaging them; and with such fierceness did they handle the rest, that repentance quickly began to be the sequel of their rash enterprize: nevertheless *Gillon* being a valiant Combatant, animated his Companions both by his Voice and Example; but approaching somewhat too near him, who had his Armour wholly black, he received so weighty a blow upon his Crest, that it made him fall upon his Horse neck, quite dazled and astonished.

This Combat was not made so far distant from *Marcomire* and his Troop, but that they might plainly and distinctly discern all that passed; so that turning himself to the Prince *Genebaud*, Cousin (said he) *you see that our men have found a resistance; and though we believed them the more strong in number, yet seem they now to have need of our assistance.* At these words, without expecting an answer from *Genebaud*, accompanied by him, and followed by all the Troop, he put spurs to his horse, and galloped towards the place where this unequal Combat was maintained. In few minutes they arrived there, where the two Princes, though they were esteemed amongst the most Valiant, stood astonished to see that the Resistance which their men had found, proceeded only from two men, and two men who had not only defended themselves, but so valiantly maintained a Combat amongst such unequal numbers, that the one half remained dead or wounded under the power of their swords, and the rest despaired of Victory. The Prince *Marcomire* casting his eyes upon *Gillon*, who lay astonished upon his Saddle-bow, was (because of the esteem he had

of his Valour) surprized with a Check, which had moved him to a present revenge, had not a sense of Honour, and considerations of the Disgrace would accrue by a Victory gained upon so great advantages, restrained him: he therefore not only hindered those that followed him to run to the revenge of their Companions, but by all the authority he had over them, commanded those who were already engaged in the Combat to retire; in which being obeyed, he with *Genebaud* advanced towards the two Strangers, who seeing them approach with their Vipers up, likewise pulled up theirs, either to receive them in the same manner as they perceived them to come in, or perhaps to refresh themselves, and breath more freely, after the great pains they had taken in to unequal a fight.

The two Princes *Marcomire* and *Genebaud* had conceived a great esteem for these two valiant Persons; but their anger for *Gillon's* misfortunes and the rest of his Companions, appeared in their eyes: which the impatient *Marcomire* could not dissemble. *I know not* (saies he, approaching them) *what reason you can have to kill, or to think you may kill unpunished before our eyes these Persons which belong to us, and which had no order to offend you.* The two Strangers stood for some time astonish'd at the Noble presence of the two Princes, and particularly at the Beauty of *Marcomire*, which was scarce to be parallel'd in the World; till one of them breaking silence, *There is sufficient Reason* (said he) *that we should do our best against your men since you sent them to detain us: But* (added his Companion, less patient than he) *there is less reason that you should send to slay men, who neither owe you any thing, nor acknowledge your authority, or possibly any other in the World. If you knew* (replied *Marcomire*, angered at this proud Answer) *the Orders of War, you would not seem so much to wonder, since 'tis in a place where two Hostile Armies are incamped, and where every person may justly be suspected, that we have used this strictness. You are yet too young* (replied the Eldest of the two Strangers, with a fierce countenance) *to teach us the Rules of War, who perhaps have taught them to persons that understand them better than your selves. If it be so* (said the youngest Prince, moved with this Answer) *I shall account my self happy to satisfy so great a Captain for the injury he hath received from a young man, and shall much satisfy my self to make use of my sword against so great a Master.* At these words, turning towards those of his Troop, he commanded them to retire towards the Camp, not being willing that their presence should cause any suspicion in the Strangers: and seeing that they shewed some unwillingness to leave him, he commanded them with so much authority, that they durst no longer resist his will; and carrying *Gillon* along with them they departed from the two Princes, though with a seeming discontent.

They only kept with them four Esquires, seeing that their Enemies had an equal number; and receiving from them their Lances and Shields, they might perceive their Enemies do the like: and at the same time these four Valiant Persons turned their Horses to take their Career in a Place where the Beauty and Evenness of the Plain gave them an intire liberty.

Marcomire being particularly incensed against him who bore the black Arms without any embellishment, for those words which had passed between them, address'd himself to him, and the Valiant *Genebaud* run against his Companion. They parted both the one and the other with the best grace in the World; and having pass'd with an admirable swiftness the space between them, they encountred with so much fury, that it could not be compared to any thing but Thunder, or something more terrible: Their Lances, though they were of the strongest, broke into a thousand pieces against their Shields: but with a success a little different, *Marcomire* and his Enemy received equally the two puissant strokes, without being moved from their Saddles; but their Horses were astonish'd in such sort by the terrible shock, that their croupers touched the ground; nor were they able to recover, but with a great deal of pain, and assisted by the skilful strength and Agility of their Masters. The Course of *Genebaud* and the Stranger, whom he undertook, was finish'd in another manner; the Horse of the Stranger being more feeble than that of *Genebaud*, or wearied by his long Voyage, was not able to sustain the stroke given by the young Prince, without falling quite along upon the ground: but *Genebaud* was so terribly shaken with the Strangers Lance, that having staggered a little while, he was forced with his Enemy to measure his length upon the Earth: they got up both the one and the other with an equal anger, (but the Stranger being naturally proud, had this consolation, that his mischance happened not through his, but his Horses default) and covering themselves with their Shields, they charged one another with an equal courage, and began a Combat on foot, worthy each others Valour. The Prowess of the other Stranger and *Marcomire* deserved a more gallant Testimony than the number of the present Spectators could afford: they were not contented with their swords in their hands; which they

laid on with such fury, as demonstrated them to be Persons courageous in the Highest Degree: *Marcomire* being enraged, and his Enemy having little respect of his Life, they exchanged two such blows, as puissance and strength could possibly enable men to give: If they understood the Art to cover themselves with their Shields, they understood no less to strike; and maugre the goodness of their Arms, their swords forced the blood to gush out both from the one and the other; their Horses which might compare with the best in the World, served their Masters with a nimbleness unexpressible; only *Marcomire's* was stronger than his Enemy's, which made him hope he would the longer and better hold out. *Genebaud* and the other Stranger covering themselves with their Shields, maintained a most gallant Combat on foot, both violently labouring for the Victory; but the strength of *Genebaud* seemed to be somewhat inferior to that of his Enemy, so that an easy judgment might have been given to which side the Victory would incline, had the fight continued overlong.

However, the Combat seemed yet doubtful between these four Valiant Personages: and the Squires not daring to help their Masters, though they earnestly desired it, stood by, and beheld this furious fight with an infinite trouble and disquiet of mind. At length some of them casting their eyes towards the Camp, from whence *Marcomire* and *Genebaud* first came, they might espy a great number of Cavalry, which posted toward them: The nearer this object approached, they the more fully discerned it, the day being clear; and the Sun darting his Rays upon the well-Polished Armour of this gallant Troop, cast a splendour sufficient to dazzle mens eyes; yet not so great, but that they might easily discern their approach, and the two Strangers observe that the whole Troop was composed of a number of Persons of high and magnificent appearance.

But though the whole Body was great and stately, there Marched one in the Head of it who seemed to draw, or rather command all their Observances. His stature, which by a great deal exceeded that of common men, made him seem goodly, seated even beyond admiration within his Saddle, wherein he sat with so much freedom that it gave him the greatest grace in the World: His *Cuirass*, which seemed to be of burnished Gold, was enriched with many little Figures, which by the mixture of Gold with Enamel, represented the Story of his famous Progenitors: his thin plated Armour (unfit for War) of the same matter and workmanship, falling from his shoulders covered him to the knee, only held by two buckles of Lions enriched all over with Stones of an unimaginable value; over which he was enrobed with a Garment of Tissue, Silk and Pearls, the diversity of colours, and the Artifice of whose workmanship paralleld that of his Arms: his Leg from the Calf to the Foot was covered with an Embroidery which was stained with a Buckle of Gold, and Enamel like to that on his shoulder, and charged with Plates of Gold and Enamel, which fastned it to his Leg, at certain distances, over a Tissue like to that of his Helmet: his fair and rich Sword did hang by a Chain of Gold, which by two Buckles made like the other, came down from before and behind his *Cuirass*; it seemed that an Esquire carried after him his Helmet which he made use of in fight: his Head being at present covered with nothing but a small Morion, after the *Greek* fashion, not useful for War, yet shining like his *Cuirass* with Gold, Enamel and pretious Stones; he carried for his Device on the fore-part of it, a *Lion fighting against an Eagle*, and the hinder part was covered with various Plumes of different colours, all agreeing with those of his Arms and his loose Robe. By reason of this small Cap on his Head, his Visage seemed wholly uncovered, and in that as well as in all his Person, he seemed to be the man in whom Nature had employed all her skill to form an excellency of Body to accompany a greatness of Mind; all his Features were made of a just proportion, and his Eyes, though sparkling like two Stars, and glistering with a Martial brightness, yet discovered in them something so pleasing, that from thence 'twas easie to judge the natural complacency of his Soul. The Deportment of his Person was attended with the same sweetness, yet mixed with somewhat that was to be discerned so great, so elevated, and so worthy a Royal Character, that it was impossible for any that saw him, to defend themselves from a Charm, which would force them love him; or from a respect which would make them regard him as the only Personage fit to command other men. His Hair, the nearest to black, courted his shoulders in delicate curls with an infinite Grace, and fell down to such a length, that it seemed extraordinary to those who had only been acquainted with the *Romans*, and had not known the Habits of other Nations.

This Noble Personage of so accomplished a form, was mounted upon a Horse, whose whiteness might outvie the purest Snow upon the frozen Alps, of a height so advantageous, and so proudly prancing, that in his bounding he seemed to express the pride he had

to carry so great a Master; all his Harness fairly and richly Embroyder'd, accompanied the Beauty of his Riders Array, his Bit and his Stirrups being of the same workmanship with his Cuirass. Several Esquires carried after their Master a Helmet purposely fitted for the War, together with his Lance and his Shield, (equally rich with the rest of his Armour) on which was emblazoned three Diadems Or, in a Field Gules. He was accompanied with a great many others of particular remark, if his presence had not eclipsed their glory, and drawn all eyes to wonder at him.

No sooner was he arrived at the place where the furious Combat was deciding, but after having beheld them a small moment of time, putting spurs to his Horse, he rode between *Marcomire* and the Stranger against whom he fought, whilst some other of his Troops by his order did the same between *Genebaud* and his Enemy. *Wherefore valiant men (said he) will you thus destroy your selves without being Enemies? Are your lives then of so little importance, that you sacrifice them to a light formality? Is it for Empire? Is it for Liberty? Or is it for a Mistress that you contend?* In speaking these words, he threw himself between them; and *Marcomire* no sooner saw him appear, but he retired a good distance: his Enemy likewise did the like, as well moved by his Example, as by the consideration he had of a Personage of so magnificent a presence. And because his Face was uncovered, he took the advantage, being chafed in the fight, to lift up his Viser to refresh himself; and breath with more liberty. There was somewhat more trouble on the other side: for though *Genebaud* did retire at the sight of those Persons, which went towards him, yet his Enemy being naturally proud, and believing that he owed no obedience to those who would hinder him from executing his Resolutions, would not be intricated to quit the Combat, had not *Genebaud*, who was in truth too weak for him, yielded him the Honour.

Being parted, the Stranger spied his Horse in the hands of one of his Esquires, and mounting upon him, approached his Companion, *Genebaud* likewise doing the like; when the whole Company throng'd about them, and made a circle consisting of many Great and Illustrious Personages.

The Stranger who had fought with *Marcomire*, for some time beheld with Admiration the Person of him who had parted them, as if he had been considering with himself, that though he had passed his life among the principal Persons, and in the chiefest Courts of the World; yet he never saw any that might equalize him in all points. In the mean time, the Person whom he admired had fixed his eyes upon him, with a great astonishment at his Noble Carriage, and that of his Companion; (who fierce as he was, yet could not hinder himself from being beheld with some surprize) and approaching them with a Grace which was wholly particular to himself: *As I must needs judge by a Multitude of Evidences (said he) that you are no common Persons, I cannot but think my self obliged to make an excuse for the displeasure you have received in a place where I pretend to some Power and Command; and tell you, that those who have practised the ordinary Formalities of War with you would not have committed that fault, had they known you better: but they have sufficiently suffered for the proof they have made of your Valour; Yet is not your quarrel so considerable, as to nourish an Enmity between us and you, or to hinder you from receiving from us all that service, and all that assistance, which Strangers like your selves can hope or expect from Persons who understand how to respect Virtue.*

The two Strangers, who were surpris'd with his generosity, had not been behind him in civility; but whilst the fierceness of the youngest began to abate by his Noble procedure, and the other naturally full of wisdom and sweetness did prepare to return him Answer suitable to his Generosity, his Visage, which was marked by all the Company, was known by *Antenor* and *Dagobert*, two of the most considerable of the Troop; and no sooner were they satisfied in their opinion who he was, but running passionately towards him; *O Sir (said they, bowing themselves to him with an action full of respect) our General and our great Captain, have the Gods again permitted us to see you? These words were listned to, by the whole Company, with an infinite admiration, till Antenor turning himself towards that Noble Personage who commanded this Gallant Troop; Sir, (said he) pardon our unhappy fury, and please to understand, that it is not without reason that you have had a respect for this Illustrious Stranger, since in his Person you behold that of the Great Constance, that destroyer of Tyrants, and valiant upholder of the Roman Empire.* *Antenor* had scarce spoke these words, but some discontent seemed to appear in his Face, which testified to him who spake them, that he was displeas'd within himself, that he had discovered himself.

That Generous Person had listned to his words with some surprize, which had obliged him to some moments of silence, but he soon broke it with a Deportment truly Noble.

Be not you troubled, Antenor (said he) that you have made us know the Great Constance, but believe that all our differences with the Romans, shall not hinder us from giving that respect to the virtue of so great a Person, which all the World owe him, or which he might hope from his most faithful Friends. And at these words approaching nearer to Constance, with an Action full of Civility and Gallantry: Great Sir, (said he) do not at all regard those as Enemies of your Nation, who cannot be so of Virtue; and though we have fought against the Romans in defence of our Liberty, yet do not believe that you shall find among them more respect and more service than you shall among Persons who have for a long time been honourers of your far-famed Glories.

If the Romans (replied Constance) are so unfortunate, as to have many Enemies like you, I shall fear their Empire will be much endangered; but when I should be less obliged to that Noble Entertainment you give me, I see in you things so great, and so little common, that no Interest of Nations whatsoever can be capable to render me your Enemy: but if you can pardon the curiosity of a Person, who in the estate he at present is, hath no reason to demand, please you to let me know to whom I am obliged, for so noble and generous proceeding. My name is Pharamond (answered the Prince) and I am——

'Tis enough (said Constance, interrupting him) by the name of Pharamond, you tell me all things, yet possibly nothing more than I knew before: for to be what you appear to our eyes, 'tis necessary that you must be Pharamond, whose renown the World publishes amongst its greatest wonders. That Renown (Pharamond modestly replied) has been too partially favourable in the Recital of our Actions; but I shall be sufficiently obliged to it, if it has given me any place in your esteem, and that I can hope that you and your Companion will not refuse to take here some few days of Repose, and suffer those wounds to be dressed, which by the blood upon your Armour I guess you to have received. It will be very hard (replied the Illustrious Roman, with a sigh from the bottom of his heart) to find repose for a man so wholly miserable, and whom Fortune prosecutes with all her cruelty; to whom the hurts of the Body are little considerable, whilst his Mind bleeds with a more incurable and mortal Wound: yet I would willingly accept your offer, both because I would not give you occasion to believe I refused it out of the Interest of our Nations, and likewise to testify the value I have for a Prince, whose great actions have created within me an esteem of him, and whose Person and generous carriage makes me desire his friendship; if in this deplorable estate of my life, I could covet any thing but death alone. Death (replied the Prince) without doubt, is not at all dreadful to him who has braved it upon so many occasions: but a life so Illustrious, and so important as yours, makes the whole World concern'd in its conservation, and will find defenders amongst the greatest enemies of the Empire.

To these words Pharamond added many more, the most obliging in the World, with a grace which was natural to him; and longer had he continued professing that civility he thought owing to the Great Constance, if he had not believed that he ought to pay some part to his Companion; judging by several Evidences, as well as by the respect that Constance bore him, that he was of an Illustrious Parentage. He address'd himself therefore to him, with a charming sweetness; and after having made an excuse, that the unexpected knowledge of Constance had made him stay so long from him. He made the same offers to him, that he had done to his Companion; intreating him with all imaginable courtelie, to give him the means by some few days of stay, to make satisfaction for the Injury he had received.

The whole Person of Pharamond was of so excellent a composition, and his Words and his Actions had something in them so Great and so Noble, that it was very difficult to deny him reverence. And though the Stranger was naturally of that proud nature, that made him look upon all men as his inferiours, yet could he not refuse to give to this Famous Prince of the Frankes all that civility his great reputation or presence could require from him; beholding him with a Carriage that plainly shew'd that his Natural Inclination was compelled to yield to the merit of Pharamond. I demand not (said he) any satisfaction for an Adventure, in which I believe I have satisfied my self; yet nothing should hinder me from agreeing to the civility and merit of so Noble a Prince, the same that you have obtained from Constance, if I had the same occasion, and the same Liberty that he hath; but I am neither wounded, nor can I yield to some occasions, which for several weighty reasons do for some days call me hence. Will you then (said Constance, interrupting him) part so soon from me, without having acquitted the promise you made me? I shall see you again within few days (replied the Stranger) in the mean time I leave you Mitrane, (shewing him one of his Esquires) who can, as well as my self, satisfy your desires and my word: yet I hope to return before you are cured of your wounds. I am very sorry (said the Famous King of the Frankes)

Frankes) that we cannot stay you here, with your Illustrious Companion: however, seeing you are to pass through a Country, where the bruit of War causes nothing but confusion and disorder, if you will any way command my service in your occasions, you shall dispose of all things, and have power to order whatever shall be necessary, for the security of your Voyage. I am out of countenance for the Obligations which you lay upon me (replied the Stranger) and shall ere long return back to give you thanks, and to find Constance, whom I would never leave wounded as he is, but in your hands.

At these words he embraced *Constance*, and took leave of *Pharamond*, who forced him to accept of a hundred Horse, which conveyed him till they thought him past all danger of both Armies. All the Company seemed somewhat displeas'd at the Carriage of the Stranger: but *Pharamond*, whose spirit had been accustom'd to overcome with sweetness the fiercest Minds, seem'd no way discontented; for besides that he judg'd, by the respect *Constance* bore him, that he was of an Extract equal to the Greatest, he did perceive marks of Grandeur in all his Person; which made him give him that respect, fit for a Person of the highest Dignity.

In the mean time, the Generous *Constance* and the Valiant *Marcomire*, having changed all their Enmity into a high Esteem of each other, embraced one another with all the Tokens, not only of a true Reconciliation, but inseparable Friendship. The young Prince, notwithstanding his great Eminency, both by reason of his Birth, and the glory of his Actions, out of respect to the high Renown of the Illustrious *Constance*, endeavour'd to excuse all that had pass'd, in terms full of civility and submission. And the famous *Roman*, knowing him for the Brother of the great *Pharamond*, and a Prince whose merit he had often heard published, returned Answers to his civil Expressions, with a gallantry becoming his virtuous Mind; telling him, that among great and noble souls, couragious Acts leave less place for resentment than esteem. I am then pardonable (returned the young Prince) that have adventured to fight with so great a Master, and have by doing it acquired so much glory, that I must again ask your pardon, if I cannot repent me of it. You may (replied *Constance*) teach the whole World, that which you practise with so admirable a Valour; and you have, without doubt, acquired sufficient glory in the Combat, by destroying me of that, which in so many years of War, and several happy Actions, Fortune hath been pleas'd to throw upon me.

Marcomire answer'd with a Blush, to this modest discourse of *Constance*, and withal presented to him *Geneband*, who for his Noble Mind, and for the proof of his Valour upon this occasion, he received with infinite marks of Esteem. After him, the most considerable Persons of the gallant Troop came to salute him; and *Pharamond* presented to his knowledge the young Prince *Sunnon*, his Brother, the Renowned *Priam*, *Antenor*, *Pharabert*, *Dagobert* and *Nicanor*, all Illustrious Princes of his Blood-Royal: The Sage *Berber*, and the Valiant *Rithimer*, chief of the *Gauls*, who fought for his Interest; *Heribert* chief of Islanders of *Gallia Belgica*; *Sigeric*, Prince of the *Celtiberians*; *Cledosile*, Prince of the *Bruderes*; *Theodomir* Prince of the *Angrivariens*; with many other chief of other Nations of *Franconia*, and with them the famous *Charamont*, *Richer*, *Diocles*, *Merovee*, *Basogaste*, *Salagaste*, *Gastalde*, *Harold*, *Adelard*, with many other Illustrious Personages, whose Reputations were sufficiently known, in the shares they had in the famous Victories of their King and Sovereign.

This Noble Company arriv'd at the Camp, and pass'd by a number of Tents (which form'd as it were a new City, on the Banks of the River) to the Princes Quarter; which was a Castle elevated upon a Mount, which seem'd to command all the Plain, conveniently situated, both for the view of distant places, and to prevent disorders in the Army: and the Lodgings within, were all most beautiful and commodious. After *Pharamond* had conducted *Constance* into his Apartment, he saw him disarm'd, in his presence; and though *Constance* would scarcely permit it, would see him likewise laid in his Bed, and attended the dressing of a wound which he had on his right shoulder; which was not of so great importance, that any danger could be imagin'd from it: yet was it not so little, as not to oblige him to some days repose. *Constance* suffer'd, and with infinite resentment acknowledg'd the noble entertainment that *Pharamond* gave him; but it might easily be judg'd by his Action, that it was for the desire, to please a Prince who deserv'dly merited this Complacency, rather than out of any love to his own life. *Marcomire* and *Geneband*, who were likewise wounded, were gone to have their wounds dress'd, though they were but very slight; and all the other Princes and Chieftains of the Army, were retir'd to leave *Constance* to that repose, which was adjudg'd necessary for him: *Pharamond* only kept him company at Dinner, which he caus'd to be serv'd on his Bed; and after having desired him,

that

that according to the counsel of his Physicians, he would betake himself to some few hours repose, he retired to his Apartment, to put off his Arms, and provide for those Affairs which the charge of an Army and the troubles of the War had incumbered him withal.

That grief, which for so many days had overswayed his spirit, and forcibly driven all quiet from his mind, now again possessed him, though he was constrained in such Rancounters as this of *Constance*, to resist his passion, and adjourn his sorrow to his solitudes. By Fortune the Windows of his Chamber being open, by which he discovered *Colien*, and the great Channel of the River, and with a beautiful Prospect might behold about two hundred furlongs of the Plain; he cast his eyes, as he often used to do, towards the Coast of *Segre*, and there beheld on the side of the River, the smoke and fire of his Enemies Camp, and looked upon their Tents, which the distance permitted him not to mark without confusion. This sight drew many sighs from his Breast, and rendered him altogether different from what he had but even now appeared to *Constance*: yet it was not the power of his Enemies, had they been far more formidable, could have raised this commotion in his spirit; his courage was too great, and his mind too warlike, to be daunted by any dangers, since he had a hundred and a hundred times braved the greatest danger that Death it self could threaten. But he was assailed by a passion, against which all his force and courage was not available; and at the head of this World of Enemies, which he disdain'd, he was compelled to yield to an Enemy that had vanquished him, and maugre all his power, had given him a mortal wound within his bosom, which made him die every hour of his life. It was towards the quarter of this implacable Enemy that he for a long time held his eyes fixed, without stirring from the Window on which he leaned; and having found out that which he sought after amongst the rest of the Tents that environ'd it.

Ab! (said he, with a gesture deserving compassion) *see, there sojourns that cruel one; yonder is the place where no pity can find an entrance: yonder is the place from whence bloody orders are given, and bloody commands are issued forth against my unfortunate life; whilst my afflicted heart religiously adores those fair lips, from whence they are pronounced.* He made a stop for some time, at these first words; and soon after shutting the Window, and walking up and down the Chamber: *But wherefore* (added he) *thou deplorable Lover, thou despairing Lover; wherefore dost thou defend with so much travel, and with so much blood, a life which thou neither canst nor dost love? Since 'tis detested by thy pitiless Rosamond, why dost thou for its preservation, guard thy self with so many thousands of men as now environ thee, and for it sacrificest so many other lives, without doubt much less unfortunate than thine? Oh Pharamond! desolate Pharamond, cease longer to oppose thy self to the vote of Heaven, and to the pleasure of thy Princess; since it is her pleasure that thou shouldst die, die at least to satisfy her will; and in that action thou shalt be more fortunate than in all the rest of thy life: die to redeem thy self from so many ills, as thy unhappy life must needs throw upon thee: Die to deliver so many Friends, that have interrested themselves in thy quarrel; and to give thy desolate Country, the best part of the Earth, that eternal obstacle of Peace and Repose; which they have so long thirsted after: That promise with which the Gods flattered thy ambition, before a stronger passion was made Mistress of thy mind, may as well be accomplished in the person of Marcomire, as in thine; he equalizes thee in Courage and Valour, hath the same right with thee to the Conquest of the Gauls, and under his Conduci, as well as thine, may these People pass the Rhine, and place upon their heads the Crown of that lofty Monarchy, which so many years since the Heavens promised to our Posterity.* It seem'd that the spirit of Pharamond found some repose in this proposal; but not long after, he disavow'd it. *I could well consent* (said he) *to the glory of Marcomire, and could consent more willingly to the Death of Pharamond; but I cannot consent to the felicity of my Rivals: and since only by my death, they can possess themselves of Rosamond, I will dispute it with them even to the last drop of my blood; though she be void of compassion, and though she ardently desires my Ruine, yet she desires it should come by some other hand than my own: and since she her self must be the price of my Conquest or fall, I will never abandon that noble price to my cruel Enemies, nor yield my heart to the Swords of Gondioch, Ardaric, Godegefile, or Balamir, thereby to give them the possession of Rosamond.* *It will do better* (added he with a new fury, and with a voice denoting some cholera) *to throw these evils upon the heads of our Enemies; which they threaten upon ours: I wear a Sword by my side, which some of them shall feel; and they already understand, more than one of them have by its fury been forced to kiss the Earth.*

In the midst of these thoughts full of irresolution and confusion, he discovered entering into his Chamber, the young Prince *Sumnon*, the valiant *Ibere*, *Antenor*, *Charamont*, *Kithiner*, and many others; either Princes or Chieftains of the Army. He endeavour'd to compose his Countenance at their arrival, and to banish from himself all thoughts of that sadness,

fadness, in which he knew they would interest themselves; but he could not so hide his grief, but there appeared sufficient to afflict them at the sight of it: which made *Charamont*, addressing himself to him, with a liberty which long custom and his great services had acquired: *And why, Great Prince, (said he) will you abandon your self to sadness? And will you alone be the only Person that shall weaken your courage? Ah Charamont!* (replied the King) *I am in a condition, that my courage is not less favourable to me than it is cruel; and I should have been much less unhappy, if I had long since delivered my self over to despair; for in the end (continued he, walking among his Illustrious Friends) What life is that I have of late years led amongst you? And what reasons have you to stop that fatal end, which a legitimate grief hath a hundred times prompted me to accomplish? It is true (replied Charamont) that this sorrowful life, which you lead, is but the contriver of that death, which you have so long desired; but 'tis not of such a life as this that we desire the continuation, but much rather the change; which if you would do by a force worthy the Grandeur of your soul, and that of your Actions—*

'Tis enough, dear Friend, (said the King, interrupting him) render not more than what you have already said unprofitable, for I know that neither my Inclinations nor Destiny it self can alter me.

At these words changing the Discourse, he turned himself to *Antenor* and *Rithimer*, and demanded of them the Effect of certain Orders he had given them, for the Army: and after they had satisfied him with an account thereof he commanded his Brother *Sunnon* to send several Troops divers ways towards the Coast of *Segre*, to observe the countenance of the Enemies, and secure the Camp from surprizes; and having likewise given other Commissions to *Nicanor* and *Diocles*, for the lodging of several Troops, and for certain Convoys of Victuals, he sent to enquire after the health of *Constance*; when at the same time, one of his Equires came to tell him, that he was sent to demand the same of him, so soon as he awaked from a peaceable repose, which he had taken ever since *Pharamond's* departure from his Chamber. And having told the King that he might without inconvenience visit him, he without farther delay went to his Apartment, with design to enter with *Constance* into a more particular converse than he had hitherto done.

These two great Personages, as well from the effects of their Renown, as for what they discerned in each other, in that little time they had been together, had conceived a marvellous esteem one of another: and that esteem was accompanied with an affection, to which their souls had without any repugnance guided them. After the first words of civility, *Pharamond* sitting very near the Bed of *Constance*, espied in his countenance, all the signs of a cruel grief; and remembering at the same time, some words he had heard him let fall of the little love he had for his life, he began to judge him an Honourable Companion in his misfortunes: *Constance* likewise discerned the same in the countenance of *Pharamond*, though he more endeavoured to dissemble his grief, especially before a man to whom he resolved to give the greatest Honours possible.

They were neither of them wholly ignorant of each others Fortune; as having understood that which Fame had confusedly blown abroad, through all corners of the Earth; but the particulars were wholly unknown to them, both by reason of the little means they had to learn them, and the little interest they had before now one with the other. They look'd upon one another with the same thoughts concerning this subject, till *Pharamond* with a demeanour full of charming sweetness, thus first brook silence.

My Lord (said he) I should esteem my self thrice happy for the honour we have to enjoy you, you, whom the whole World speaks of with veneration, if I did not attribute this Remembrance to something displeasing to you: For besides those too apparent marks of sadness upon your countenance, and some Discourses which we have heard from your own mouth, the state and the equipage in which we have encountered you, was so little conformable to the fortune of the great Constance, who was wont not to be seen, but in the Head of Puissant Armies, or in the chief place of the most Illustrious Courts of the Universe, that we must needs judge Fortune hath in some strange manner abused you, or that some weighty reasons have constrained you to pass thus alone through Provinces, where though your name be not unknown, yet your Person is. True it is, I am not wholly ignorant of your misfortunes, and have often heard speak of the interest you had in the Sack of Rome, and those other mischiefs which the Empire hath of late years groan'd under: But in the end I have always believ'd that the Illustrious Constance, famous for so many great Victories, Conqueror of the Alani, Gepides and Vandals in Spain; of Constantine, Jovinian and Attalus among the Gauls, and the only man, in whose hand the very destiny of the Western Empire seems at this day reposed: should be made partaker of those evils, and be forced to struggle with those misfortunes which would overwhelm other

men, though they cannot work the same effect upon the great Constance.

The famous Roman sigh'd at this discourse of Pharamond; and beholding him with a deportment wholly passionate, Mighty Prince (said he) I should not at all think what you have said strange, did it proceed from a man, who like you had not made proof of good and bad Fortune, or less strange from one who had not understood, that it is not the Nobility of our Extraction, that can preserve us happy among men, nor the glory of our great Actions, that can establish our felicity; but that we have certain passions, which swayed by good or ill success, do most of all contribute to the happiness or unhappiness of our life. I understand by a confused report, like to that which may be come to you of my miseries and adventures, that you your self have not been exempt; and I believe that your great Victories against the Romans, against the Sueves, and against the Cimbrians, though they have blazon'd forth your glory, and made your name be known throughout the World, have not established you a true repose, nor render'd your life happy, though they may have made it glorious.

As the Mischiefs of my life are without Example (replied Prince Pharamond) and that I am unfortunate a degree beyond misfortune, wholly prodigious and unheard of; so I protest I have never by my own miseries given judgment of other mens: yet I doubt not but yours are great and extraordinary, since they could produce so great an effect, as I have spi'd in you, on a mind so well resolv'd. They are such (answered the afflicted Constance) that I can neither hope for remedy nor consolation; and if I had not some force of courage, by which it is permitted me to flatter my self after all the proofs I have made, I had without doubt long since fallen under those evils, which it is impossible for humane strength to bear. I dare assure you (replied the Prince of the Franks) that mine are of that Nature, as not only to cause pity, but to astonish all such as can but be sensible of them. The interest I have in yours, makes me desire to know them particularly, except you have some reason to keep them concealed: and if you have any desire to hear the Story of my sad Adventures, I shall when you please make the recital: I shall not desire it from your own mouth (replied Constance) not doubting, but your modesty will make you pass over those great Actions, which I would have related in all their beauty; but if you have any one near you that is well instructed in the course of your Fortunes. I shall be oblig'd, if you will please to give him commission: And in requital, I shall recount you all my life, even to the least circumstances; or if you will treat me as I treat you; not for the same reason, but to avoid that grief with which the relation of several passages must necessarily afflict me; Valerius (continued he, shewing him one of his Esquires) can give you the same satisfaction with my self, since hitherto he hath not been ignorant so much as of my thoughts. I am content with what you please (replied the Prince) and since you have commissioned Valerius to do me this pleasing office, to morrow Cleomer, to whom all the secrets of my heart are common as to my self, shall come at what hour you please, to render you an account of the chief particulars of my life.

Constance consented to the proposition of Pharamond, and soon after Supper was brought in, during the repast Pharamond spi'd among the Squires of Constance, him whom his Companion had left behind him; and having for a time beheld him as a man worthy some respect: Shall I not be too curious, said he, if I demand of you the name of that valiant man, which we found with you? Nor shall you need to pardon the curiosity of my opinion, if I tell you I conceived him by several Marks, to be a Personage of extraordinary merit, and most illustrious Extraction. Constance at this discourse cast his eyes upon Mirrane; and not observing any thing in his countenance, which might hinder him the liberty of performing the desire of the Prince, My Companion (said he) having not at all enjoynd me not to disclose his name, and I believing that he hath no intent to hide it from you; I shall make little difficulty to tell it you, and withal that you are not at all deceived in the judgment you have made, both of the merit of the Person, and his high Rank in the World: his valour, of which you have seen some Evidences, is accompanied (by so much as I can judge in the small time of our converse) with all those qualities which can make a person truly great: and for his Birth, it is such, that there is scarce a Person in the World of equal dignity with him, since this is Varanes only Son, and sole Heir of Isdigerdes King of Persia and Parthia, who alone for his greatness counterbalances the power of our Emperours. How! (said Pharamond) is he Son of the great King Isdigerdes, whom the Emperour Arcadius dying, did declare Tutor to the young Emperour Theodosius his Son; and who in the Education of that Prince, acquitted himself with the fidelity he owed to the Memory of the Father? 'Tis of him (replied Constance) that the Prince Varanes is Son and sole Heir, and after his death, will possess that magnificent Monarchy, which was taken by the Parthians from the Persians, after the death of Alexander; but after some few Ages regained by the Persians, and is now in its greatest splendor. I am very sorry (added Pharamond) that I have not rendered that respect
that

that I ought to the dignity of so great a Prince; but if he repasses here, as he hath made you hope, I shall ask pardon for that fault, and endeavour to repair it if possible. *Mitrane*, who was a Person of Quality among the Persians, made bold to speak in his Masters behalf, Sir, (said he to the King of the Franks) I assure my self that the Prince *Varanes* is very well satisfied with the Entertainment you gave him, and that he will without doubt soon be here to testify the esteem that he hath conceived for so great a Prince.

After other some discourse passed, *Pharamond* gave the good night to *Constance*: but in going forth of the Chamber, he led *Valerius* along with him; not being willing to suffer any longer delay, and being accustomed of a long time to spare but few hours of the Night for sleep. *Valerius* was a Person of a noble and virtuous mind; and *Pharamond* had but very few Minutes entertained him, yet he judged him sufficiently able to perform his Master's commission, or any other business of importance: but he first acquainted *Pharamond*, that the Discourse could not but be very long, and therefore unfit for that season; However he intreated him that he would that night begin the Story of his Master's Life, and continue it the day following. *Valerius* disposed himself to obey; and *Pharamond* having forced him to sit down, not consenting that he should speak so long standing, composed himself likewise to give a peaceable attention: and soon after he began, in these words.

The History of Constance.

BY obliging my self (most Noble Prince) according to the command of my Master, to tell you the Story of his Life; I am engaged likewise to relate the History of a great part of the world, and particularly all those things which have passed within the Western Empire. The Adventures of *Constance* being so weaved with all the generous and important events which have happened, and his particular interests so mingled with those of the Empire, that it is difficult to separate the discourse of them; at least if I will give your Majesty an entire Knowledge, and such as you desire of my Master.

Flavius Constance, Father of him whom I have the honour to serve, was in *Illyria*, where his Father had a command as a banished Governour of that Province by the Emperours, Enemies to their great House: For most certain it is, that they were not only *Romans*, but that they were of the same Family, and the same Name with the great Emperour *Constantine*, and many other Emperours of their Blood, who bore the Name of *Flavians*, as hath been continually observed, both by those of the name of *Constantine*, *Constantius* or *Constance*, and likewise by those in *Illyria*.

'Twas the splendour of this Illustrious Family, that made the Emperour *Jovian*, fearful of their greatness, command them thither from *Rome*: and by fortune they to whom the Command was given, being men of peaceable and quiet minds, established themselves in that Province and Government, without parting thence, till such time that *Constance* Father of my Master, had permission from the great Emperour *Theodosius* to come to *Rome*, and there inhabit with his Family, if not with all the glory befitting one of that House from whence so many great Emperours were descended, yet at least in an estate not to envy the noblest *Romans*.

The great *Theodosius*, of illustrious and glorious memory, a Prince comparable in all things to the mightiest *Cæsars*, seeing himself so firmly seated in his Empire, both by his great Actions, and by the love of his People, did not at all fear the return and glory of that Family, which in truth, and to all mens judgments, could not at all disturb that happy Government which he had strengthened with such infinite goodness; he therefore himself would that *Constance* should be honoured with the Consular Dignity.

My Master was born during his Father's Consulship, near the time of the Birth of *Honorius* the youngest Son of *Theodosius*, and he that at this day governs the Empire of the West. *Arcadius* was born ten years before: and the Princess *Placidia* their Sister, the Fame of whose Beauty and Virtue hath filled all *Europe*, was born six years after *Honorius*. The young *Constance* in his youthful years began to make known his Noble inclinations, and to give to his Parents those hopes which made them flatter themselves with his future greatness. One day playing in a Garden with other Children of his Age, and in the presence of his Father, an Eagle flying from above, let fall a Lawrel folded into the form of a Crown, upon the Head of this young Noble, hovering for some time over him, as if sent on purpose to Crown him, His Father, though little inclined to superstitious prejudices, to which the *Romans* were ever much addicted, yet could not but entertain this

happy accident with an infinite joy, and a belief that though it did not predict to his Son the supreme Dignity, yet at least it promised much Glory and many Triumphs. And to second the fair hopes which he had of his Son's greatness, he caused him to be educated with all requisite diligence, and endeavoured to form his Body and Mind to those Exercises which befit his high Birth and Quality, that so he might leave nothing neglected which might perfect so Noble a Nature, and make the young *Constance* both for Endowments of Body and Mind, the most accomplish'd Person of the Empire.

He was not above nine years old, when the Emperour commanded that he should be brought up with the young Prince *Honorius*, together with divers others of his Age, Children of the most Illustrious Families of *Rome*; amongst whom *Euchere* the Son of *Stilicon* seem'd the chief, by reason of the great Authority of his Father. The most remote corners of the World are scarce ignorant of the Name and Puissance of *Stilicon*, as well for his Actions, which truly have given him some recommendation of Justice amongst men, as for that prodigious greatness to which Fortune had mounted him, he being look'd upon, to the very last day of his life, not only as the Parent and Father-in-law of the Emperour, but as absolute Master of the Empire of the West, in which it might truly be said, he ruled not as Favourite, but as real Emperour, and sole and supreme Commander. Though he was a *Vandal* by Nation, yet he was signally gallant in all great occasions, which made him renown'd as well for his Valour in Arms, as for his capacity to manage the most difficult Affairs of State: for *Theodosius* had often employ'd him, and finding him capable of the greatest things, had rais'd him from degree to degree, to the highest Dignities; and to oblige him to his Service, and that of his House, disdain'd not to make him espouse the Princess *Serene* his Brother's Daughter, and to give him the chief place in his Bosom, and in the management of his Affairs. It is true, that the Fortune of *Ruffinus* was not much inferiour to his, but *Ruffinus* was not adorned with all those Noble Qualities which graced the Person of *Stilicon*, though he was not much inferiour to him in address and policy. I make this particular mention of these two Persons, and more particularly of *Stilicon*, because the whole Command of the Empire lay in their hands.

My young Master had but few Months accompanied the Prince *Honorius*, but that the Empire, and the whole World, underwent the greatest loss they could possibly suffer, by the death of the great *Theodosius*. This Prince, the Delight and Glory of the World, that might justly vaunt to have sat on the Imperial Throne of the *Cæsar's*, with as much Honour and Renown as any of his Predecessors; who in Valour, Goodness, Justice, Piety, and all other excellent Virtues equaliz'd, if not exceeded all his Famous Ancestors, by his Death gave a new Face to the whole World, as you may easily judge by those strange Revolutions which have since happened, which were not so much as feared or thought of during his glorious Reign; before his death, he parted the Empire to his two Sons, dividing it into the Eastern and Western Empires: and because *Arcadius* was twenty years old, and *Honorius* but ten, he appointed the prudence of *Stilicon* as a stay to his young years, and to him he committed the Tutelage of his Son, and the Government of the Western Empire; and to *Arcadius* he gave *Ruffinus*, with the same power over him that *Stilicon* had over *Honorius*, though *Ruffinus* could not so easily abuse his power by reason of the riper age of *Arcadius*, who was already man, and capable to govern all things himself, if he had not been, as well as his Brother, of too mild a nature, and easie to be sway'd by a Favourite. *Arcadius* settled his Court at *Constantinople*, the chief City of his Empire, and *Honorius* with the Princess *Placidia* his Sister stay'd at *Rome* under the Conduct of *Stilicon*, who had in his hands yet Sovereign Authority, which he for the first few years us'd in such sort, that all things succeeded prosperously under his prudent Government, so that he acquired reputation among men, and made the whole World approve of the choice which the great *Theodosius* had made of him to supply the want of years in *Honorius*: but when he began to perceive that years brought not any vigour to this young Prince, but that his sweet spirit, naturally meek and fearful, was as submissive and complacent at thirteen years of age as it had been at ten, his intentions changed by the facility he found to bring all his projects to effect, and seeing himself confirm'd in a Power which he once believed would not be of long durance, he did not only endeavour to establish himself in it, and maintain this Authority during his life, but likewise began to conceive other thoughts, which afterwards came to be known to the whole World.

To further his Designs, the soft and gentle temper of the Emperour was a sufficient spur: he propos'd a Marriage between him and one of his Daughters, in which he found no more difficulty, than if the thought it self had come from the very Bosom of *Honorius*; and the power which he had over him in this business was such, that though the eldest of
the

the two Daughters died whilst he was contriving the Match, yet he perswaded him without difficulty to wed the younger named *Termantia*, whose Espousals he few days after celebrated with infinite magnificence. Thus this bold Favourite seeing himself Father-in-Law to the Emperour, and thinking himself advanced by his Alliance some degrees above what he was before, began to imagine nothing would be difficult for him to effect: he thereupon projected the Marriage of his Son *Euchere* to the young Princess *Placidia*. 'Tis true, that the Princess being not yet arrived at an Age fit to marry, made him defer his design, and attend the event some few years longer; yet in the mean time he commanded his Son to wait on her, and to endeavour to gain her heart by his love, and by his services,

He needed not use many Arguments to incline the spirit of *Euchere*: for the Princess was so rarely compleat both for body and mind, that it was not only ealie for him to perswade himself to love her, but impossible for any that approach'd her to forbear adoring her: And certainly, Sir, I may speak it with truth, the Heavens did never form any thing more accomplish'd than the Princess *Placidia*; the most famous Both of this and past Ages, though they might compare with her, yet could hardly equalize her, for hers was a Beauty accompanied with so royal and resplendent a Majesty, that she forced at one time both wonder and veneration: her Air was the best in the World, her Eyes and Hair were black, and all the Features of her Face were formed with a regular proportion: my Master would without doubt extend her praise much beyond what I am able, were he to recite it; but yet he would tell you that the beauties of her soul were not at all inferiour to those of her body; that she had a lively, yet a wise and judicious disposition, a generous goodness, a courage which she hath sufficiently approved in all the assaults of Fortune, a patience invincible in the most fierce and cruel Adversities; so that it hath been often said at *Rome*, That the great *Theodosius* had left somewhat to his two Sons of his goodness and piety, but that only the fair *Placidia* was the Inheritrix of all his great Virtues. All these wonders which time hath since clearly made known, did begin to appear even in her tender years; and though she was not above twelve years old when the Son of *Stilicon* did entertain those ambitious thoughts to have the glory to serve her, yet there were then observ'd in her things so extraordinary, as made her the Subject of adoration among the chiefest *Romans*.

In the mean time the young *Constance* was advanc'd near the Emperour, and grew to that Lustre, that before he was sixteen years of Age, he was looked upon as a Person from whom the noblest and greatest things might be expected: his Countenance (in which his miseries have since caused no small change) was as beautiful as any could be, that had more in it of Martial than effeminate; his Air was noble and free, and the whole composure of his Person formed of an entirely perfect: but this Body in which Nature had so curiously shewed her utmost Art, was rendred more accomplish'd by a perfection in all those Exercises, which were becoming his Quality; for there was none in *Rome* who for excellency in Horsemanship, or Agility in managing his Arms was equal to him: his Mind which Heaven had adorned with all that was Noble and Heroick, was yet more refin'd and polish'd by his Studies, the precepts of his Father, and diligence of his Tutors; so that he already seem'd adorn'd with all that Virtue contains of great and glorious. In all his Actions there appeared evidences of perfect goodness, an uncorruptible equity, and a greatness of courage which nothing could exceed; he was an Enemy to all Tyranny and Oppression, pitiful to those in misery, and impatient of all unjust Authority: His spirit was most compos'd of fire, which made him naturally ambitious of great things. In short, he was so entirely accomplish'd, that it had been hard to wish him that Noble Quality, of which he was not already possessed.

These Endowments rendred him highly esteemed both by the Emperour, and all the chief Personages of *Rome*; nor were those of his Age envious of his great Excellencies; and *Stilicon* himself was highly favourable in his judgment of him; nor could he refrain to say one day before the Emperour, *That if Fortune were not averse to him, he would in time not be inferiour either to the great Theodosius or the great Constantine*. On that day on which the Marriage was solemnized between the Emperour and the Daughter of *Stilicon*, he made particular demonstration of his activity, and admirable courage; and having in the Horse and Chariot-Races overcome all those that ran against him, and at the fights on Horse-back both with his Lance and Sword, born to the ground whoever durst encounter him, drawing to his infinite praise all the peoples Acclamations, and receiving the rewards due to the Conquerour from the young Empress, and the fair Princess *Placidia* whilst the Emperour who did truly love him, shewed infinite signs of satisfaction: And *Stilicon* himself, though he rather wished that the same Fortune had attend-

ed his Son, could not deny him the praise he so justly merited; but that which more sensibly touched him, was the particular mark of esteem which he received from the Princess *Placidia*, who presented him with a Sword enrich'd with precious Stones of unexpressible price, the Reward of his Combats on Horse-back.

Constance (said she) *I present you this Sword with a great deal of joy, perswading my self it cannot be given to a Person who will use it more worthily, either for his own Glory, or the benefit of the Empire.*

Constance upon his knees received this fair Present accompanied with such obliging Words; and then humbling himself more than before to the Princess; *Madam,* (said he, killing the skirt of her Robe) *I receive as a Gift from Heaven this glorious Present of our great Princess; and in receiving this Sword from so fair a hand, I engage to carry it by my side to the last hour of my life, and to employ it in your service to the last drop of my blood.* *Placidia* returned no other Answer to these Words, but with a Nod of her Head, and a charming Look, but the people testified by the clapping of their hands, their approbation of the Honour which he received.

Oh Sir! this Action of *Placidia's* gave a cruel beginning to those miseries which have still persecuted the unfortunate *Constance*, and which he hath suffered ever since, and suffers more cruelly at present: I attribute to this day, the beginning of all my Master's miseries: For this was the day, wherein he abandoned himself to a passion, which hath been the cause of all the evils of his life: not that he had lived till now without admiring the divine Beauties of *Placidia*; 'twas impossible that he should guard himself from not being touch'd, and from sometimes being sensible of a passion for her, which approach'd very near to love, and which had often made him sigh, and many times banish'd from him his rest; but the little cause he saw to conceive any hope, made him oppose all his reason to the growth of that passion, which he was resolv'd to expel from his heart; or to speak more truly, the Princess till then was not arriv'd to an Age, wherein Beauty hath its greatest force and lustre; and being but an Infant, though an admirable Infant, she was not in an estate for Love to shew his most violent power; but after that the Princess was past twelve years of Age, she appeared so excellent to the eyes of my Master; the sweetness of her Words, of her Carriage, of all her Actions, brook such an impression on his heart, being of a disposition so ready to receive that impression, that he soon felt himself truly inflam'd with an amorous passion.

He looked upon the change of his condition with astonishment, nor could he tell how he ought to receive it, or what judgment to give of it. *Oh God!* (said he) *is it possible, that I who was free this Morning, should in so few minutes become a slave? But is it possible (added he presently) that I have lived hitherto, without being enslav'd to the beautiful Placidia? Yet why should I love? (retorted he to himself) Why should I abandon my self to a passion, in which I can conceive no hope? But though I should defend my self against it, (added he soon after) I should in vain defend my self from that love, which ought to be the whole glory of my life: nor would I live, but for the hopes I have fortunately to love Placidia.* *Oh Constance!* (said he again, sighing) *consider seriously with thy self, and oppose thy self, if possible, to the ruine of thy repose, and of that fortune, which thou canst not hope for, but by thy sword: The Sister of Honorius is destin'd to the greatest Monarch of the World, and not to the most miserable remnant of the Governours of Illyria; neither Honorius, nor Stilicon Commander of all things, will suffer that thou shalt so much as think such a thought: Placidia her self, who hath so favourably honoured thee this fatal day, will look upon thee as an Enemy, when thy presumption shall once be understood by her: yet for all this (continued he, after these reflections) I must love Placidia, and must love her to death; If my Fortune be bad, yet my blood is sufficiently Noble to serve her without offence, and I may perhaps by the assistance of my Valour, raise my self among men to no despicable height; or at worst, when I shall love without hope, my love will be the more Noble, more worthy of her; and if she cause me to die by loving her, I can no ways hope a more glorious Destiny.* 'Twas at this resolution that he stopt; yet both that day, and all the other dayes of his life, he would continually dispute against his passion; but neither time nor the accidents of his life, could ever banish it from his spirit; it increas'd day by day: and as I was privy to all his secrets, and one whom he favour'd with a more particular confidence, and who alone have never forsaken him in all his Voyages and Adventures, so I was the first and only person, to whom he discover'd his passion, so long as it could be kept secret, and was not made publick, as it afterwards came to be, to the whole Empire: Though I had conceiv'd of him marvellous hopes, and always look'd upon him like something above Excellent, yet being now but about the same age with him, my reflections were but weak, nor did I much dispute against his passion, which I knew the least approbation of mine would confirm. In

In the mean time, he began to suffer extremely, and his pain was so much the more, by reason he durst communicate his sighs to none but me; and that he saw every day *Placidia*, without daring to discover to her the least passion of his soul, his mouth was altogether mute, nor durst his eyes permit themselves the license of those looks, which might give the least cognizance or suspicion of his presumptuous thoughts? yet was he not wanting to render her with a ready obeyfance all those petty services which oftentimes do manifest an affection better than words, and which might yet always be perform'd without the least suspicion of any interest. And he had yet more happiness that *Placidia* (to whom he was considerable both by reason of his merit, his birth, and education near the Emperour) receiv'd them more favourably from him than any other, and did every day shew him some mark of a particular esteem.

But not long after his discontent was most sensibly augmented, though moderated in the end with some consolation. It was by reason of the report that was spread throughout the whole world, that *Stilicon* well knowing the power which he had in the Empire, and over the too mild spirit of the Emperour, pretended to marry his Son with *Placidia*, as he had already marry'd his Daughter to *Honorius*; and that himself was witness of the ambitious *Euchere's* attending the Princess with a greater diligence than formerly, and giving as it were publick marks of his love, and of the design he had to espouse her. When the first knowledge of this was dispers'd among the *Romans*, many of them murmur'd, but none wonder'd, because they all knew *Stilicon's* power to be so great as to effect things more difficult.

Constance was extremely enrag'd many days, nor could longer endure himself to sigh without complaining or daring to open his mouth, whilst a Rival much inferiour to him in merit and descent, though Fortune had advanc'd him to a degree above him, should openly dare to court the fair *Placidia*. But after having some days pass'd over this resentment, he found in it somewhat of satisfaction for himself, believing that if *Placidia* could degrade her self to suffer the love of *Euchere*, he might with less presumption give her cognizance of his passion, knowing that the great courage wherewith this Princess was endow'd, would not make her at all enter into considerations (fit for lower minds) of the favour and fortune of *Stilicon*, or that she would prefer *Euchere*, because he was happy and powerful by means of his Fathers Authority, to a man who was to be prefer'd before him, both for his Illustrious Birth and Resplendent Virtue: However, he could not endure that *Euchere* should daily make testimony of his love to the Princess, and that for the respect that all the world had for *Stilicon*, none should dare but to leave the place free when he approach'd. As for my Master, he would never submit to that complacency, which both his Father, and many other personages instructed him to make use of; but on the contrary, he was more diligent about the Princess, and had often the satisfaction to mark in her visage, that she was not at all angry or displeas'd that he interrupted the discourse and converse of his Rival.

In the end *Euchere* complain'd to my Master; and having given a large testimony of his confidence, by a long Harangue of the love he bore *Placidia*, and praying him to serve him in it; *Constance* received his discourse with a great deal of resentment. In another occasion, said he, I shall willingly render you what ever service you can desire of me, but in this I can neither serve you, nor counsel you to raise your thoughts to a Princess who will never debase hers to you. The Emperour her Brother (replied *Euchere*) has not the same prejudice against our Family and Alliance, since he hath not disdain'd to espouse my Sister. Your Sister (replied *Constance*) could not make the Emperour lose either his degree or honour; but it is not the same with *Placidia*, who by the espousing you must lose hers: and if by the honour I have had to wait upon her, I can judge of the courage of this Princess, I cannot believe that she will ever dispose her self to make you happy. These brushes of my Masters, did much discourage *Euchere*, who parted coldly from him, and after that day us'd not that familiarity with him which they had contracted in their being brought up together with the Emperour.

In the mean time my Master, young as he was, observed with a great deal of grief, both the unjust authority of *Stilicon*, and the weakness of *Honorius* his spirit: In effect, never had Fortune rais'd a Favourite to so high a degree, nor was there ever man who us'd his power with more Grandeur: All the Dignities of the Empire; All the charges of the War; All the Governments of the Provinces, and all places of trust were distributed among his creatures, and by his choice, without so much as once demanding the consent of the Emperour. All the Revenues pass'd through his hands, with which he enrich'd both himself and his Family. He receiv'd all Ambassadors, all dispatches of Princes, whether

whether Tributaries or Allies, or dependents of the Empire; and manag'd all affairs of State, without communicating scarce any thing to *Honorius*. And as he knew the humour of this Prince inclinable to repose, and innocent pleasures, so he endeavour'd to satisfy and busy his inclinations, and cherish in him a softness which might deprive him of the cognizance of affairs, and preserve his Sovereign Authority with more facility: All the true hearted Nobility among the *Romans*, and those who either by their services or birth might aspire to charges or Dignities which they saw bestowed every day upon *Stilicon's* Favourites, bewail'd his greatness, but yet durst not so much as murmur, knowing well that either the prison or banishment would be the least punishment inflicted upon those whom he did but suspect, and whom he thought might but in the least obscure his greatness.

Constance more courageous than others, and who by reason of his being brought up with *Honorius*, and the degree he held by his Birth and Merit, had a free access to him, did often lament to him, and represent the unhappy condition of his estate, and the low esteem which he would expose himself to among other Monarchs of the world, if he did not suppress the great and odious authority of his Favourite, and did not render himself the real Master of the Empire. The Emperour, who truly esteem'd the merit and person of *Constance*, receiv'd this discourse with good approbation; and out of respect to his fidelity, never disclos'd a tittle of it to *Stilicon*, from whom he might justly fear all things, if such discourse should come to his knowledge: but however, it had no effect, nor caus'd any change in the spirit of *Honorius*; and my Master looking upon the poor spirit of the Prince with pity, left his resolution, and resolv'd no more to lose his labour in speaking to him.

However, I must needs avow that *Stilicon* was indeed a great man, and that in acting his particular affairs, he neglected not those of the State, so long as his intentions were honest: he was of a lively and active spirit, capable of great things, naturally eloquent, and for seats of war there were few Captains of our age more valiant, nor more experienc'd than he, so that my Master could not refrain an esteem for him for many things, and a respect for many great actions which he had perform'd both under *Theodosius*, and in the beginning of the Reign of *Honorius*. *Ruffinus*, to whom *Theodosius* had given a like Authority in the East with the Emperour *Arcadius*, had not so well us'd it: for after he had sacrific'd all things to his Avarice and Cruelty, and with an unexpressible infidelity armed strangers against his Prince; he had in the end receiv'd a deserv'd death, together with the unfaithful *Eutropia*, by the Valour and courage of *Gaynus*, a stout and great Captain, who was employ'd in the service of *Arcadius*.

In the mean time the young *Constance* languish'd and dy'd for *Placidia*; and his sufferings were so much the greater, that he durst not give her any knowledge of them: It is true, that he us'd to approach her with more confidence than formerly, through the courage which the concurrence of *Euchere's* passion had inspir'd him with: and so exasperated he was to see his presumptuous Rival give publick testimonies of his love, that he could no longer contain from discovering the impatience with which he suffer'd his boldness; and being one day in her Chamber, seeing her approach towards her Looking-glass, and that all the company stood discoursing on the other side of the Room, he followed her towards the Glass, and standing behind her, with amazement beheld those divine beauties which it represented to him: he had stood some minutes in this posture, whilst the Princess put in order some locks of her hair, till at length with a sigh he broke out so loud, that she might easily hear him, yet not those persons who were on the other side of the Chamber. *O Gods* (said he) *and can you suffer so horrible an injustice? Placidia* turning her self towards him at these words, and looking fix'dly upon him: *And of what injustice* (said she with a charming gesture) *do you complain? I complain* (answered he) *and let the whole world witness my complaint, that so much beauty as I now behold, which merits the adoration of the whole world, should be destin'd to the son of Stilicon.* The Princess at this saying of my Masters, fixing her eye more stedfastly upon him than before; after some few minutes of silence, *I esteem you* (said she) *so much the more, that you dare speak so confidently on this occasion; nor will I make it any point of difficulty to tell you, that the son of Stilicon shall never be possessor of Placidia.* *Constance* was ravish'd with joy at these words, as much for the assurance the Princess gave him, as for the confidence she express'd. to have of him; and being unwilling to lose the advantage to express himself farther, *I have always had* (said he) *great hopes of the courage of our Princess, but I know not how she can defend her self against the will of Honorius, which will never contradict that of Stilicon. I shall well defend my self* (replied the Princess, with a resolution befitting her) *and with that confidence*

fidence which I have testified to you, I will tell you that the weakness of Honorius shall never enslave the Daughter of Theodosius, and that I will suffer all things rather than be the Spouse of Euchere. It is not just (replied the amorous Constance) that you should suffer for others crimes: but without exposing you to suffer, I have a shorter way to hinder Stilicon's Son from espousing you. And what means have you (replied the Princess) more ready and more assured than that of my will? I will (answered Constance) shew him the way of this sword, which I received from you, and which I carry at my side only to employ in your service. Placidia at these words looking with a kind of pleasing wonder upon my Master: Why Constance (said she) do you offer your self freely to destroy the Son of Stilicon, without considering that it is the greatest and most dangerous enterprize, that the most hardy and most potent Person in the World can ever attempt? I dare expose my self (returned my Master with a sigh) to far greater dangers for your sake and service; and I dare engage my self that Euchere shall never be your Spouse, except you desire it. Placidia having for some time looked on him without speaking; I swear (said she, with a most obliging demeanour) that I am extremely indebted to your kindness, and so much the more, in regard there is none among all the Romans, hath had the courage to offer me what you have done: but I desire not at all the death of Euchere, though both his behaviour and person are troublesome to me; and less that you should expose your self to a danger, unto which there is scarce that power in the World but must yield. Constance was about to return her an Answer, but the company approaching the place where they were, hindred him: yet he had the satisfaction to read in the Princess eyes, that she had a large acknowledgment for the testimony of his good will.

After that day the Princess, which with all his other good qualities particularly admired the greatness of that Courage, and the resolution of that Spirit, which did not at all acknowledge the fortune of so potent a Favourite, testified a greater confidence in him, than she had done heretofore; and every day discover'd to him the thoughts she had of the weakness of *Honorius*, concerning which she spoke with much more prudence and knowledge, than could be expected from a person of a far greater age: but these testimonies of her goodness and esteem, though they did much encourage *Constance*, yet did they not give him an entire satisfaction, or yield him any comfort in his passion; when he consider'd that the favours he receiv'd from *Placidia* were addressed to *Constance*, but not at all to the lover of the Princess, whose passion she was ignorant of: and that when she had the knowledge of it, he had reason to fear that she would receive it with the same resentment, that she did that of *Euchere*: oftentimes tempted by favourable occasions, or encourag'd by the favour of *Placidia*, he had his mouth almost open to discover his passion; and as many times withheld by a fear that he should not prevail, he suppress'd his boldness, and persever'd in his silence.

'Twas not that, considering his Birth, he did not find himself of a blood sufficiently illustrious, to pretend to all things; especially in an Age, wherein he had seen so many Examples: But because he saw that his Birth was not advantag'd by a proportionate Fortune; he judg'd that he ought to repair that fault by those Actions which might give him Renown among men, and a lawful ambition to aspire to such heights. In these thoughts he stop'd, and resolv'd to banish his passion for the Princess, till by his Actions he had acquir'd a name worthy the greatness of his Ancestors, and a glory that might excuse his ambition. He therefore dreamt of nothing else, but to go and seek reputation and dignity by his Arms; and seeing himself at an age fit to go to the War, he sigh'd after some occasion to depart from *Rome*, to signalize himself in the Armies.

His impatience soon found means to satisfy himself, in the time when *Europe* found it self over-run with the incursions of the *Barbarians*: For the *Goths*, a cruel and terrible Nation, which a long time before in the Reign of *Theodosius*, under *Atbanatic* and *Fridigerne* had parted from *Scythia*, and the Borders of the *Baltique* Sea, but had by the valour and prudence of that great Emperour been forced to retire to their Native Country, returned again to invade the Empire, with a powerful deluge of war, under the command of their Kings *Alaric* and *Kadagaise*. These people were divided into two different Nations; and those *Goths* which came from the most Eastern parts (as your Majesty without doubt knows) were called the *Ostrogoths*; and those who came from the more Western parts, were called the *Visigoths*. *Alaric* commanded those last, and *Kadagaise* had the leading of the *Ostrogoths*, and the *Herules* Nations under his own command. Many persons have believ'd that they were call'd by the perfidiousness of *Ruffinus*, who sought either to render himself more considerable by the trouble of the Empire, or find the means to exalt himself by its disturbances, and by the assistance of the *Barbarians*.

However it was, the *Goths* finding *Ruffinus* dead, and the *Oriental* Empire defended by

many valiant Captains; they passed from thence into the *Occidental*; but not finding sufficient Victuals, by reason of the infinite numbers of their men, they separated themselves; and *Alaric* with his *Visigoths* marched into *Pannonia*, *Illyria* and *Dalmatia*; and *Radagaise* towards *Italy*, with an Army of two hundred thousand men: and report was spread abroad among those who searched not into the truth, that they were four hundred thousand. *Alaric* and *Radagaise* were two men of much different tempers: *Alaric* was a valiant Captain, and of noble thoughts, considering the Nation from whence he was extracted; being truly possessed of virtue; but *Radagaise* was a Prince altogether barbarous, a man naturally composed of cruelty, and whose whole virtue and excellence consisted only in shedding humane blood: 'twas reported, that he had made a vow to sacrifice all the *Romans* to those gods which he ador'd: and truly he testifi'd by his actions, that he had such intentions; for in all the places where he march'd, he pardon'd neither Sex nor Age, but destroy'd all he came near, either with Fire or Sword, without being touch'd with any sense of Humanity.

The News of those destructions which he began to work in *Italy*, were incontinently brought to *Rome*; and the report thereof strook terror and amazement into the whole City. I believe that those that have accused *Stilicon* to be of counsel with *Ruffinus*, when he call'd them into *Italy*, were scarce well inform'd of the truth; nay more, he could not justly be accused to have acted in this business, otherwise than as a great Captain, and one who truly intended the good of the Empire; for no sooner was the news arriv'd of the *Goths* entrance into *Greece*, but he had gather'd together all the Forces of the Empire: and at that time that *Radagaise* entred into *Italy*, he found himself in a condition to oppose him with an Army, though not so potent in men as his, yet composed of more valiant Commanders, and Souldiers better disciplin'd: and having thus in Person balanc'd all things, and order'd the Affairs at *Rome* in the best manner he could, he dispos'd himself to the conduct of this War, which the Emperour, wholly inclined to peace, willingly gave him the charge of.

Constance rejoiced in this publick Desolation, out of the hopes he had in short time to signalize himself; and though he were young, and had not as yet either commanded or obeyed, out of consideration had to his Noble Extract, the good opinion that all men had of him, and the recommendation of the Emperour, who much affected him; *Stilicon* gave him the command of a thousand Horse: with this command, which he receiv'd with an unparallel'd joy, he believed that there was nothing above what his courage might effect. And his Father who had great hopes of him, and lov'd him dearly, spar'd nothing which might be necessary to set him forth in a most magnificent equipage.

His absence from *Placidia*, would much more sensibly have afflicted him, had not the desire to render himself worthy of her, & the love of glory which *Managre* his love to *Placidia*, possessed a great part of his soul, infinitely comforted him, and represented unto him, that whatever of gallant he should do in that War, would more advance his Fortunes towards *Placidia*, than whatever he could do or suffer for her in *Rome*; It was likewise some consolation to him, that *Euchere* made the same Voyage, & that his Father would make him serve his Apprenticeship in War under him, & to that end gave him a command in the Army equal to that of *Constance*. He therefore prepared himself to depart with all these satisfactions, to counterbalance the sorrows he found in being banished from the sight of the Princess; which notwithstanding was such, that he could not in taking leave of his Friends hinder it from appearing in his eyes; though he constrain'd himself as much as he could to dissemble it: and that day on which he parted from *Rome* with *Stilicon*, and the greatest part of the Court of *Honorius*, coming to take leave of her, he appear'd so sad, that she could not refrain from testifying she took notice of it: and after some other words, *I know*, (said she) *how glad soever you be of these occasions of War which you have so often desir'd, yet you cannot leave us without some signs of grief and discontent.* *Constance* was a little surprized at these words; and endeavouring to feign a cheerfulness in his Visage, *How desirous soever I am* (said he) *of the glory, and service of the Emperour, yet the honour to wait in the presence of our Illustrious Princess, is so great a good, that it is difficult to lose it without some regret: and I intreat you, Madam, to permit me to be more particularly touch'd than others.* *As there are few*, (replied the Princess) *whom I esteem as I do you, so I would have you be one of those that feel the most regret to leave us: but I hope* (added she with a sigh) *you will soon cheer up again.*

Constance gave no other answer to these words but a sigh, accompanied with a behaviour might have given great suspicion to the Princess, had she observed it: but soon after endeavouring to vanquish his sadness, and appear with a more debonaire countenance, *Madam* (said he) *you may remember if you please, that I receiv'd this Sword which I carry by my side, from your heavenly hands, and 'tis the first Sword that I shall draw against the Enemies*

mies of the Empire; and therefore as I have a particular Obligation not to act any thing but what shall be worthy the glory I have receiv'd; so I hope you will always have a particular interest in all those actions which I shall perform for the service of my Country. With all my heart I consent to it, (repl'd the Princess,) and that so much the rather, because I am perswaded you will never do any thing that will give me cause to repent.

After these expressions which he receiv'd with a becoming submission, he took leave of her, having perform'd the like duty to the Emperour and Empress, who both gave him great marks of their affection: he mounted on Horse-back, and departed from Rome to go to joyn with the Army, which was already march'd, according to the Orders of *Stilicon*. 'Twas thought fit first to supply the greatest necessity, and therefore judg'd convenient to march first against *Radagaise*, who with Fire and Sword laid desolate the Frontiers of *Italy*; and afterwards, if Fortune were favourable to them, to march against *Alaric* into *Pannonia*. To this purpose we march'd towards *Etruria*, into which the *Barbarians* were ready to enter, advancing by great Journeys, to hinder the deplorable Progress which they made in that Province. The fear had been so great on all sides of *Italy*, that the unhappy Inhabitants had quitted their Habitations, and fled in great Troops towards *Rome*, not having the courage to defend their Country against a World of terrible Enemies, choosing rather to seek for safety in their flight, than by staying to be expos'd to the fury of those merciless men, who sacrificed them to Fire and to Sword, with an unparallel'd cruelty. *Stilicon* made stop of a great number of those whom he found capable to bear Arms, which being suppli'd within the Towns he pass'd through, greatly encreas'd his Army.

This War, Mighty Prince, being begun, was ended in the name, and under the Leading of *Stilicon*, and not of my Matter, though he had the command I inform'd you of; and since I doubt not but you have already had cognizance of the whole management of it, I shall abridge my Story, and only tell you, that no sooner were we entred into *Etruria*, but we had advice that *Radagaise* having had notice of our March, and thinking to devour us with the multitudes of his Combatants, withdrew his men from pillaging, and other disorders which he had given them leave to act for a while, and was rallying them together with a resolution to give us battle: This News affrighted not *Stilicon* at all, who desired nothing more than to combat those Enemies whom he despis'd, though they seem'd terrible to all *Europe*. Yet for that he doubted lest his men should be discourag'd at their Multitudes, and that in a Plain where both Armies might have space to fight with all liberty, the weakest might have the greatest disadvantage, he endeavour'd therefore to render himself Master of all those places where he might lodge advantageously; and in the mean time he sent forth divers Parties of two or three thousand Horse or more, as opportunity serv'd, (before *Radagaise* had ralli'd his whole Army) to charge them either in straits of Mountains, passages of Rivers, or other advantageous places, which were better known to him and his, than to the *Barbarians*; and in the Skirmishes, the Victory always fell on our side.

These petty Successes were of no small importance: for by means of them, *Radagaise* before he could come to a Battel, lost a considerable part of his Army: 'Twas upon these occasions that my Matter began to make known his Prudence and Valour: and one day *Stilicon* having given him one thousand Horse more, to those thousand he before commanded, that he might do somewhat worthy his great Courage, he charged eight or ten thousand *Goths* which were to pass over the River *Arnon*, at a strait which he had the keeping of, and so well took his advantages to hinder their passage, joyning an infinite Prudence to his admirable Valour, that more than five thousand of his Enemies remained dead upon the place, or were drowned in the River; and the rest were totally routed on the other side, and remained expos'd to the mercy of those people whom their cruelty had driven into the Woods and Mountains: few dayes after, with a like number of men, he assaulted one of the strongest Quarters of *Radagaise* his Camp, set on fire their Tents and Baggage, and left four or five thousand men dead upon the place; in many other places he had the like success, and in little time rendred his name famous among our Troops, and terrible amongst the Enemies: And as his Virtue made him be beloved of the whole World, so the whole World joyc'd at these his happy beginnings, which were seconded with such fair success, that in three or four Moneths time, which (by reason of the good conduct of *Stilicon*) preceded the Battel, he became victorious in ten or twelve important Skirmishes, where he alwayes commanded in Person: Infomuch that *Stilicon*, who naturally lov'd valiant men, and who knew well what service he might expect in this Expedition from so considerable a Person as *Constance*, looked no longer upon him as a young man of twenty

years of age, but instead of the Command he had given him of a thousand Horse, and some other employments which he had added to it, according as he had signaliz'd himself, he rais'd him to more high Dignities in the Army; and on the day of the Battel, gave to him, and his Son *Euchere*, the Command of all the Cavalry. *Euchere* was indeed a valiant Personage, and had acquir'd reputation in this his first Entrance into the School of War, but yet not so much as to deserve to be rais'd to this Dignity, if the Quality of the Son of *Stilicon* had not been more considerable than his Services.

In the end, *Stilicon* having wear'd and weakn'd the Army of *Radagaise* as he desir'd, and perceiving his men enflam'd and encourag'd with their good success, and the Enemy fearful and out of heart by reason of their Losses and Defeats, prepar'd with all diligence to give them Battel, marching as it were to a certain Victory. 'Twas near the Banks of the River *Arnon*, that the Captains of one and the other Party Embattel'd their Troops: nor was *Stilicon* wanting to seize upon all those Posts that might be advantagious to him, nor to order and dispose his Troops in the best manner that became a great and experienc'd General. *Euchere* commanded the Cavalry on the right wing, and my Master that on the left, which was opposite to the right wing of *Radagaise* his Army, in which he fought in Person with the most valiant of his men.

Your Majesty hath without doubt long since heard of the success of this bloody day, which was so memorable, and so important, that the whole World cannot be ignorant of it. The Victory remained for some time doubtful, occasion'd rather by the number than Valour of our Enemies; and for some hours it thus hung in an even balance: but in the end the *Barbarians* yielded to the Prowess of ours; for no sooner did the first begin to express a fear, but it became so general, that they scarce made any more resistance, giving opportunity to the incens'd *Romans*, and to those whom their inhumanity had forc'd into our Troops, to revenge themselves of their cruelty. I shall enlarge my self no longer on the particulars of the Battel, but so far as concerns my Master in this memorable Victory.

I must then tell you, that with the left Wing of the *Roman* Cavalry, which he commanded, he not only broke the right Wing of *Radagaise*, in which he himself fought, but overturning all before him, and covering the Earth with blood and death, he in Person pressed towards *Radagaise* with so much vigour, that a powerful succour could hardly deliver him from his fury; and in the end obtain'd an entire Victory on that side; and so entire, that he had scarce an Enemy left to dispute it: but seeing that on this victorious side he had nothing more to do, and beholding from a little Hill, that the right Wing had not fought with the same success, he flew thither with his conquering Troops, where he found that the Victory was not only doubtful, but did incline to the *Goths*; and that if he had not arrived in time, that part of our Army had been in great danger to have been defeated: he receiv'd likewise news at the same time, that *Euchere* with a small number of his Friends was environ'd with a great Troop of the *Goths*, and was fighting with little hopes of safety; I know not whether in the first thoughts which his love and jealousy inspir'd him with, he did not conceive some motion of joy that the life of his Rival was in danger, and that he was sorry that Fortune pressed him at such a time to his succour; but certain I am, that such thoughts balanc'd not his resolutions: for turning himself to me, who always was as near his Person as I could possibly, *Let us go Valerius*, (said he very softly, that he might not be understood by others) *Let us go, said he, and save the life of our Rival, and make the interest of our Love yield to that of our Duty.* In effect, after having encourag'd his men with a few words, he flew to the place where the *Barbarians* were most thick, and overthrowing all that stood before him, forc'd his passage, and struck so much fear into his Enemies, that they did not only leave *Euchere* free, but like their Companions they lost their courage, and by their flight endeavour'd to avoid his fury. The cruelty which they had used in all places where they came, was the occasion that my Master was forc'd by his utmost endeavours to stop the fury of the Conquerours where ever he came; but *Stilicon* had resolv'd their utter extirpation; and it was by his Orders, or by the fury of the Souldiers, that more than a hundred thousand *Goths*, or *Herules*, remained that day dead in the Field. The number of those that sav'd themselves was about fifty thousand, the Night having favour'd their Retreat; but they retir'd without any Equipage, and in the most miserable manner in the World, into the *Fesulan* Mountains, where the straits were advantagious to them, and where they could very hardly be forc'd.

But *Stilicon*, who had resolv'd to destroy them, and who wisely judg'd that if *Alaric* should come to their assistance, it would not only be difficult for him to conquer them, but he should be scarce able to defend himself against so great a Power, march'd with his whole Army after them; and understanding that they were retired into the *Fesulan* Mountains,

tains, and that it was impossible for him to force them, he caus'd a party of his Troops to gain the very tops of the Mountains, and with the rest to stopp'd all passages, that there was no way left, but either they must perish with hunger, or by endeavouring to open a passage with their swords, come to another Battel. The success was entirely agreeable with his design: the *Barbarians* liv'd many days on the tops of the Mountains in all imaginable misery, and in the end knowing that they must either dye, or by some other ways save themselves, necessity inspir'd them with valour, and *Radagaise* believ'd that he could the better save himself by force, in regard he perceiv'd that to stop his passage, *Stilicon* had divided his Army into several parts. In which he did not wholly deceive himself; for most true it was, that those which were placed on the tops of the Mountains could not give any assistance to the other, but the quarters of those which were lodg'd in the vallies were dispos'd in such sort, that they could in very small time re-unite and joyn their Forces.

But *Radagaise* believing that with the Forces that follow'd him, he could force his way through those he found at that strait where he intended to pass, before the quarters could joyn, quitted the Mountains at break of day, and appearing at the head of his Army, with a horrible noise of all sorts of instruments of War, he charg'd the first Court of Guard with so much fury, that some thousands of our men lost their lives before that their Companions could be in a state to succour them; but these having sustain'd the first brush, gave time to all the rest to come to their assistance: and now when *Radagaise* hoped for victory: he might behold our fresh Troops come upon him from all sides. My Master with his wonted diligence, and according to his command, was in the head of the Cavalry, gallantly arm'd and mounted upon an excellent Jennet: *Radagaise*, as I believe, took him for *Stilicon*, and having resolv'd not to out-live this day, if it should as the former prove unfortunate, taking a Lance from one of his men, and covering himself with his shield, he ran against my Master with a great cry. *Constance* scorn'd to refuse this encounter which Fortune seem'd to have rais'd for his greater glory, but putting spurs to his Horse at the same time that he saw him do the like, and that he perceiv'd by his cry he gave him a defiance; and leaving those of his Troops a great distance behind him, he met the King of the *Goths* in the midst of his carriere. Their Rencounter was equally impetuous, but unequal in the success: My Master had a slight wound in the shoulder, and was terribly shaken by the strong Lance of *Radagaise*; but so well directed was his blow, that the point of his Lance passing into his Enemies Viscer, tumbled him headlong, depriv'd of life, over the crouper of his Horse. *Constance* knew not yet over whom he was Conquerour, but soon after he heard a cry among the *Barbarians*, that their King was dead; and *Stilicon* arriving at the same time, and finding the *Goths* scar'd and discourag'd for the death of their King, he assaulted them with so much vigour, that they were not able to make any farther resistance: the greatest part of them were slain upon the place, and the rest which fled back to the Mountains, either perish'd with hunger, or were destroy'd of the people of the Countrey, who to revenge the Cruelties they had exercis'd upon them, scarce left one alive.

Such was the end of this War, famous through the world, and in which I may truly say my Master had a glorious share, as well for the death of *Radagaise*, to which his good fortune I believe reserv'd him, as for saving the life of *Stilicon's* Son; the many and advantageous skirmishes he made before the first Battel, with several other valiant and renowned actions during the time of the War, which were all so truly Noble, that the whole world admir'd them; and some did publickly aver, That the first atchievements of a man of twenty years of age, might already compare with the greatest actions of the most famous Captains: *Stilicon* himself paying to his virtue that which he could not refuse, and that which particularly he ought for the safety of his Son, after having rendred my Master all those honours possibly he could, publickly declar'd that he was the Conqueror of *Radagaise* and his Army, and treating him in all things with extraordinary kindness; writ to the Emperour the truth of all his great actions, not forgetting any thing that might make for his advantage.

We understood afterward that *Honorius* did not alone testify his joy for the death and defeat of *Radagaise*, which was of so great importance to him; but that with it he was sensible, and tenderly sensible of the particular glory of my Master, in which all *Rome* concern'd it self, by singing publick Eulogies of his praise; but that which was more than all these most acceptable to *Constance* was, that *Placidia*, his ador'd *Placidia*, had a share in this general joy, and testified all contentment possible for the advantages of a person whom she so particularly esteem'd. Though as I have said before, he was treated by her with all imaginable

imaginable marks of freedom and confidence, yet never having had permission, durst not presume to write to her, believing that he ought to keep that respectful distance with the Daughter and Sister of his Emperour. But he writ to several other *Roman* Dames, who every day accompani'd her, and with whom he had diligently sought a friendship, and without any great trouble obtain'd it. *Virginia*, a Lady of a Noble house, and who was dearly belov'd of the Princess, was the person with whom he had contracted a more particular freedom: he had writ to her often, and had as often receiv'd Letters from her; but at the return of the dispatch which *Stilicon* had sent to *Honorius*, she sent him one, of which I have not yet forgot the words, which were these, or the like.

Virginia to Constance.

When you shall hear from me with what joy and amazement the Romans have receiv'd the news of the glorious commencement of your Arms, how they talk of the death of *Radagaife*, of the safety of *Euchere*, of what your valour contributed to the gaining of two famous Battels, and of a hundred other great Actions, with those Praises, those Honours, they would scarce have given to *Theodosius* or the chief of the Cæsars; that the Emperour hath testified a most particular joy, and that the whole people of Rome are charm'd with your fair achievements, you will only be sensible of the rewards justly due to your virtue, and find nothing above what you might lawfully hope: But when you shall understand that *Placidia* hath taken as great a part, as those who are most concern'd, and that she hath commanded me to assure you of it, in the most obliging manner in the world; I believe that you will not be so insensible, as not to place this advantage above all those which you draw from your glorious actions. For my part, I believe the approbation of this Princess ought to be dearer to you than that of the whole Empire, and I am perswaded it will be so, if you be in the Camp what you are among us, That same Constance in whom valour is yet advanc'd by an addition of all other Virtues.

Though my Master had a great confidence in *Virginia*, yet he had never discovered to her the love he bore *Placidia*: for his discretion instructed him to believe, that it was a secret, which he ought to keep from the whole world: but as this fair Lady had observ'd something in his Countenance and in his Actions, which denoted a passion; so 'tis probable he had sometimes but weakly defended himself from the truth of her suspicions. But however it was, at the reading of her Letter he was transported with an extraordinary joy; and seeing that a person who was dear to *Placidia*, and who had suspicion of his love to *Placidia*; and who might have testified somewhat of his passion to that Princess, did assure him and write to him such obliging things by her order; his flattering thoughts made him believe, that his passion was neither unknown, nor disagreeable to that great Princess; and in these thoughts, he suffered himself to be transported with motions of joy, equal to the Grandeur of his love: but after short considerations, he moderated these by the contrary appearances; and with reason judging that these marks of *Placidia's* favour proceeded not at all from any cognizance she had of his love, he suppress'd his most forward extasies, yet did not so absolutely expel them, as not to rest satisfied with his fortune.

As I was the only person that had knowledge of his thoughts of this nature; so with me alone he consulted about all affairs that concern'd his love: and at this time I was witness of all those judgments, which this rencounter made him make of his condition; some few days after sending one of his confidants to *Rome*, under the pretext of visiting his Father and Friends, amongst other Letters which he committed to his charge, he writ to *Virginia*, these words or the like.

Constance to Virginia.

To have had the happiness at my first taking Arms, to have merited the respect of the Emperour, and esteem of the Romans, is an effect of my Fortune greater than I could hope for; and to have a place in the thoughts of the Amiable *Virginia*, is an advantage no less dear to me; but to have the least room in those of that incomparable Princess, is a real benefit as much above all expression, as it is above all my merit or my hope. If I could ever doubt of your sincerity, I could do it in this particular: but as I know you to be truth it self, I will suffer my self to be flatter'd with the honour

honour which you pronounce me, and charge you to make acknowledgement, as you are charged with the good action: supply my weakness, lovely Virginia, by testifying to our Princess, that she hath reason to interest her self for a man who hath devoted himself to her service, by receiving from her hand the sword which I have the honour to carry: Protest, if you please, for me, that I will render my self worthy of her esteem, if she will permit my actions to have that glorious Aim. I will say no more: for I fear lest in speaking to you, I should speak to the Princess, and I doubt if something too bold should slip from my pen, you would hardly have the indulgence to hide it from her.

In the mean time, having finished the War against *Radagaise*, and the Winter now approaching we had some hopes to return to *Rome*; but *Stilicon*, whether it was to blot out all belief of that report which had been spread abroad in most parts of the Empire, that he was of the counsel with *Ruffinus*, in calling the *Barbarians* into the lands of the Empire; or that he judg'd it necessary not to retire so long as *Alaric* was in *Ilyria*, despising the rigors of the Winter, led his victorious Army towards that Province, with resolution never to return to *Rome*, till he had either defeated or driven away his enemies.

It is true, that in this War he march'd with more wariness than to the first, knowing well that he had to deal with another kind of Captain, and other sort of Soldiers, than *Radagaise* and his Troops: For *Alaric* was a valiant and great Commander, and had besides with him many Princes of great valour: He likewise led the same Soldiers, which for five and twenty years had fought under the pay of *Theodosius* and his Children; nor had they then chang'd Party, had not their agreements been broken by *Stilicon* himself.

There were two Royal Families among the *Goths*; the *Amals* and the *Balthes*: The *Amals* commanded over the *Ostrogoths*; and the *Balthes*, from whom *Alaric* was descended, the *Visigoths*. This Prince well known and experienc'd in War, had well disciplin'd his Troops, and order'd his Army to the best advantages of fighting: He brought them under good constitutions, and affecting a kind of Justice in his design, had publish'd that he had not invaded the Empire, if the Sons of *Theodosius* would have observ'd that agreement, which he had made with their Father, but permitted him to enjoy that Land among the *Gauls*, which he had assign'd him. That they understood themselves that this was true, and alledg'd that *Stilicon* had broke these conditions, and hindred the performance of the Articles, to beget a War in the Empire, judging that he could much better maintain his authority in time of War than in peace.

However it was, *Stilicon* march'd towards them, without delay: and *Alaric*, who no less desir'd battel, march'd likewise towards us; so that we joyn'd near the Frontiers of *Ilyria*. It will be unnecessary to relate the whole course of this War, which was of a longer continuance than that of *Radagaise*; I will only tell you that the two Chieftains being experienc'd Generals, did both seek their best advantage, nor would either unadvisedly come to battel, or neglect any thing, which might add any assurance to their hopes of Victory: for which reasons, they for a good space of time led their Armies up and down, oftentimes removing their Camps, and always making use of that wary foresight, which became two such skilful Leaders.

After they had a long time observ'd each others motion, they began to enterprize something; so that many skirmishes happen'd, but with different success: yet I can aver with truth, that all those parties, over which my Master commanded, did continually gain an entire Victory: and in this War he did so augment the glory, which he had purchas'd in the former, against *Radagaise*, that both in the one and other party there was nothing talk'd of but the valour of the young *Constance*. In fine, after many disputes, they came to a Battle, which was fought near the Vale of *Epidaurus*, with infinite cruelty and effusion of humane blood: my Master had command of all the Cavalry, though the leading of the left Wing was given to *Enchere*, and that of the right to *Mesuesel*, who a little before with favourable success had put an end to the War in *Africa*, against his Brother *Gillon*. The right Wing of *Alaric's* Army was commanded by his Brother *Austalphe*, a Prince of great valour: The left by *Singeric* his Nephew; and the Cavalry by the young *Wallia*, a Prince of the Blood, and not only the most valiant among the *Goths*, but a man, in whom the valour which he was possess'd of in the supremest degree, was accompany'd with all other most excellent virtues.

This Prince's command being equal to that of my Master's, made them mutually try their force, before their Troops charged; and having broken their Lances the one against the other, with the best grace in the world, they set their hands to their Swords, and began a Combat worthy the view of both Armies; but they were parted by their Troops,
and

and the two valiant Warriors constrain'd to carry the effects of their courage to the exercise of their charges. The two Armies fought even till Night, whilst Victory neither declar'd it self for one side nor the other; the loss was near equal, and in the whole amount'd to between twenty and thirty thousand men. The next Morning they kept within their Posts, and made a Truce for certain days to burn the dead, and give them the Rites of Burial. 'Twas in this day, that my Master and the valiant Prince *Wallia*, besides the proof they had made of each others Valour in the Battel, being both equally amorous of that reputation which had extended it self through the World both of the one and the others virtue, desired to see each other, and mutually admir'd themselves, finding all things agreeable to what Fame had reported of them; so that they not only truly conceiv'd a reciprocal esteem of each other, but protest'd a real friendship, so far as the interest of their Country, or their own Honour would permit.

This interview facilitated divers others, and in the end, they came to Propositions for a further Truce: *Stilicon* found himself in an estate not able to drive *Alaric* out of the Lands of the Empire: and *Alaric* being weakned, with the loss of a great number of his men, and being in a Country where all were Enemies to him, found himself not so strong as to be able to stay, should the Emperour with all his Forces endeavour to drive him out: There were many Consultations had before they came to an absolute Accommodation. In the end, after many difficulties, the two Generals had an interview, and agreed upon a Truce to last for four years: That *Alaric* should depart out of the Lands of the Empire, and not return during the term of four years, in which time *Stilicon* promised to mediate with the Emperour, and to oblige him to perform the conditions which *Theodosius* had formerly granted to the *Goths*: and because *Alaric* had taken several Places, though of small importance, he consented to restore them, having a sum of money paid in part of his damages sustain'd in the War; protesting in the end, that if when the four years were expir'd, the Emperour did not deliver up those Lands which had been assign'd amongst the *Gauls* to his Predecessors by the Emperour *Theodosius*, he would return into *Italy* with such a Power, that it should be difficult for all the Forces of the Empire to drive him out. A Truce being thus concluded on, and *Alaric* being departed out of the Empire without committing any Act of Hostility: *Stilicon* return'd with his Army towards *Rome*, where we arriv'd two years after our departure thence.

Your Majesty may easily judge the excess of my Master's Joy, seeing himself now upon the point again to enjoy the presence of *Placidia*, after so long an absence, and to see her in such an estate as might make him hope she would have some consideration for him, since he had by his Renowned Deeds so gloriously perform'd the promises which he had made her, and answer'd the hopes she had conceiv'd of him. During the whole Voyage, he made me sensible of his contentment, both by his countenance and by his words; all those expressions with which an impatient Love could make eloquent a passionate Lover, never came near what I heard him say on this occasion. In sum, we arriv'd at the great City, all the People in a manner coming out to meet us; for the Emperour had commanded a reception for *Stilicon*, worthy the Fame which he had achiev'd in this Voyage, and the considerations he had for him.

He was pleas'd himself to view the Honours of this Triumph: but *Stilicon*, who knew himself expos'd to envy by reason of his great Authority, and which he would employ to establish his Grandeur, refus'd this Honour with an apparent Modesty. However the Emperour himself, either to honour his Father-in-law, or to have the pleasure to behold his Arrival, came to meet him to the very Gates of the City, in a most magnificent Chariot, open on all sides; having near him the Empress *Termantia* his Wife, and Daughter of *Stilicon*, and for more Ornament the incomparable *Placidia*, whose Beauty was so much augmented in these two years, that I who beheld her with no other interest than that of my Master, was astonish'd: and truly she appeared to me with so Majestick a Lustre, that I believ'd nothing in the World could equalize her.

For *Constance*, he was struck in such a manner, that he had no eyes for any other Object, and wholly abandon'd himself to an entire view of what he so religiously ador'd. He march'd on the left hand of *Stilicon*, cover'd with most magnificent Armour, and mount'd upon one of the fairest Horses in the World, which he govern'd with a surpassing grace: The People and all the Court, who had before heard the fame of his great Actions, seeing him so nobly beautiful, fix'd their eyes upon him as the only Object worthy regard: Nor were the eyes of *Placidia* less fix'd upon him, because she now with joy beheld him, what she had desired him to be: *Stilicon* with the rest that were about him, of whom my Master was the nearest, alighted from their Horses, when they drew nigh the Chariot of the

Emperour,

Emperour, to do him becoming reverence; who having affectionately embrac'd *Stilicon*, receiv'd the rest with a pleasing sweetness only natural to himself; but to my Master he gave particular Careffes, and in a few words exalted to the Skies the fame of his first Achievements.

After the Emperour, they saluted the Empress and the Princess *Placidia*: but here it was that *Constance* seem'd wholly struck dumb with amazement. He kiss'd the Verge of her Robe, without speaking one word; which might be attributed to his great respect, as well as to any other cause: But the Princess, whose mind was not burthen'd with a passion like his, having her spirit more free, receiv'd him with the most obliging expressions in the World, remembering the Emperour of the judgment which she always had of him, and of what she had foretold, that day when she gave him the Sword as a Reward for his Combats at the Marriage of the Emprcs.

Though it seem'd that love did wholly possess the Soul of my Master, yet the Sentiments of Nature did likewise find their place, which he shew'd by rendring in this occasion to the affection of a loving Father, all that a virtuous Son and naturally excellent could pay to respect or paternal love; and the old *Constance* was so much satisfied with all the Actions and the whole Person of his Son, that he could hardly contain that joy he resent'd.

The same Night My Master went to see the Princess, and received greater Careffes in her Chamber, than he had done in her Chariot; she particularized to him all that she had heard of his great Actions, and declared to him the interest she had taken, and was oblig'd to take in them: but there was so many present, and particularly *Euchere*, who departed last, that my Master could never have one word of private discourse with her, though he judg'd well by the eyes of the Princess, that she much desir'd it; which made him resolve to pass into another Chamber, to entertain himself with *Virginia*; and the Princess seeing him upon departure, came to him, and told him in his ear, *You know well the thanks I have to return you for having so well preserv'd Euchere for me. I was bound to do it at that time* (answered my Master) *and moreover, you told me that you did not at all desire his death.* *Placidia* return'd to her place without returning farther answer, and my Master pass'd into another Chamber with *Virginia*, who had a great desire to entertain him.

This virtuous Lady gave him all the Testimonies of an entire friendship, that he could desire, and receiv'd from him the like assurances; and at length they began to talk of those Letters, which had been sent between the one and the other, during the War, as that which they both desir'd to discourse of. *Virginia* press'd *Constance* in such manner, and did so well expound the terms of his Letters, that in the end she forc'd him to confess the love which he bore to *Placidia*: she brought him the more willingly to make this confession, because besides the confidence he had in her discretion and friendship, he found in her no inclinations to condemn his passion. In effect, *Virginia* did not at all blame him, but told him that these thoughts were worthy of his great courage, and that if there were any man worthy of *Placidia* (as she believ'd the Emperour, according to the Example of his Ancestors, would prefer a Noble Roman before a King of the Barbarians) there could be none so deserving of her as *Constance*: But when he pray'd her to tell him with sincerity, if she believ'd that the Princess had perceiv'd his love, or that she had given her any notice out of the suspicions she had from his Letters; *I know better how to manage the interests of my Friends* (answered she) *and I never believ'd I could do it without putting your repose into great hazard; not that the Princess hath not a far greater esteem for you than for any man in the World, or that she doth not accompany this esteem with an affection that makes her desire your advantages as if you were her Brother; but because I know that though her spirit be highly sweet and pleasant, yet she is so great an enemy to all amorous attempts, that I have always seen her condemn with so much severity those persons that suffer them, that I never durst disclose to her any thing of your passion, had I believ'd that you would have approv'd my doing it; and if it must be that she must know it, as a thing that cannot be avoided, I am not a little troubled, how to adventure on so great a difficulty.* *Constance* was somewhat perplex'd at these words of *Virginia's*, though he was before, himself, sensible of the most part of what she had told him; but he lost not his courage and resolution to serve *Placidia* even to death.

In this time, the Court was extremely sorrowful, and in a great perplexity, for the News that arriv'd of the death of the Emperour *Arcadius*: he di'd in the City of *Constantinople*, aged only thirty two years; and left for his Successor the young *Theodosius*, his Son; the rest of his Family being compos'd of the Princesses *Flavilla*, *Marina*, and the Re-

nounced *Fulcheria*: But because *Theodosius* was only ten or eleven years old, the Emperour his Father had at his death desired the great *Isdigerdes* King of the *Persians*, whose friendship he had prov'd to be sincere and loyal during his life, to be his Tutor, and protect his tender youth, against those enemies which his greatness might stir up. The King of the *Persians*, who is the Father of the same Prince *Varranes* whom you saw to day, accepted the tuition of the young *Theodosius*, and acquitted himself with an unexpressible fidelity: And because the greatness of his Dignity, and of his Empire, would not permit him in person to pass out of his own Dominions to *Constantinople*, he sent a Governour to the young Prince named *Antiochus*, a man adorn'd with all great virtues, who with a marvellous diligence hath not only educated the young Prince in all the exercises of virtue, but govern'd his Empire with infinite prudence, and defended it not only from Foreign invasions, but Intestine broils.

But to this general sorrow of the Court of *Rome*, *Constance* was constrain'd to add a particular one, for about that time his Father also departed this life, leaving him so sensible of his death, that for a long time he was not in a condition to receive any consolation; he lost his Mother in his youngest years, and owing to his Father only all the diligence of a noble and excellent Education, he could not lose him without feeling those due resentments, which a grief of that cruel nature can infuse into the mind: He was visited by the Emperour, and all his Court; and the Princess *Placidia*, whose Sex hindered her from rendering him that civility, sent several times to him, and assured him of the share she had in his grief; and indeed it was from *Placidia* that he receiv'd his only consolation, while love alone strove to be the Mistress of his Soul, by banishing all other passions: In the end it wrought its effect, and having in a small time overcome his grief, return'd *Constance* into his former estate, and rendred him capable of that conversation and society which his sorrows had depriv'd him of: But though love had so powerful a force over his grief, yet his grief had not the same power over his love, which never a whit abated nor diminish'd the violence of its fury; yet he serv'd himself often with that pretence before *Placidia*, to cover the true cause of that change which his sufferings had caus'd in his humour, and in his Countenance; and the Princess often attributed it to that passion though it proceeded from one far more violent and imperious.

In effect, the Amorous *Constance* consum'd and dy'd, without daring to complain; nor was he constrain'd only to restrain his words, but knowing the lively and piercing spirit of the Princess, to rule his actions in such sort, that when she should examine them with the greatest rigour, they might be attributed only to respect, though it was a particular respect, and which, though extraordinary, might well be defended. This restraint tormented him cruelly, and forc'd him many times into a melancholy, which nothing could divert; yet of all the Divertisements that were in *Rome* he had still the better part, nor was there scarce any thing of importance done without him. The Emperour had caus'd to be restor'd unto him all the goods of his Ancestors; and to the Government of *Illyria* which his Father had possessed, he added that of *Dalmatia*, which was a great Revenue: and he finding himself in an estate to defray a Princely expence, did it with so much of Magnificence, Grandeur, and true Liberality, that there was nothing else talkt of at *Rome*; nor was there ever person that us'd the blessings of Fortune so splendidly and so generously as he did: His noble and wise management of things gave him still more and more an esteem in *Placidia's* breast, but still she was ignorant that he dy'd for her, and with all the greatness of his courage he had not so much boldness as to discover that burning secret.

In the mean time, *Euchere* continu'd his pursuits with a great deal of diligence, but with little fruit; and instead of making progress upon the spirit of *Placidia*, Time and his services seem'd rather to banish him thence: not that *Euchere* was a man wholly despicable; he was sufficiently couragious, and bore something of a noble mind; but there seem'd to be a kind of drowlinefs upon his spirit, and some parts of his person were not altogether so amiable. But he was the Son of a Favourite who abus'd his Fortune, and usurp'd an unjust Authority over the Imperial Family; and this was enough to make *Placidia* hate him. *Stilicon* judging that this Princess would approve of his Sons suit sooner, if the Emperour express'd his willingness to it, than by his own motion, spoke to *Honorius*, and press'd him by all the reputation he had with him, to serve him with all the power he had with *Placidia*, and to finish the honour of his house with that remaining Alliance, since he had so happily begun it. *Honorius* who with age had acquir'd more constancy and resolution than formerly, or who perhaps now began to repent of the Command he had given *Stilicon* over his very inclinations, at first would not himself at all speak to the Princess concerning her marriage with *Euchere*, having observ'd several times

times that the proposal was displeasing to her; but in the end, *Stilicon* having unfortunately urg'd him, he spoke to her, and in such manner, as made her know he desir'd it; yet the Princess who very well knew her Brother, and very well consider'd that he was not a person of a humour to do her violence, answer'd him with a futable courage; and having represented unto him that *Stilicon* desir'd not these Alliances in his house, but only to raise him to a power sufficient to usurp the Empire, as without doubt he had an intention; she protested in sum, that if he would leave her to her liberty, which she hop'd his goodness would perswade him to do, she would never give an example of such baseness to the Princesses of the blood, by yielding that the Daughter of the great *Theodosius*, should become the Daughter-in-Law of *Stilicon*.

This answer, instead of provoking the spirit of the Emperour, which naturally was all compos'd of sweetness, tortifi'd him in the design which he had already begun, to abridge in some part the Authority which he had permitted *Stilicon* to grasp both over the Empire, and his own person. And when he return'd him the Answer, and likewise to the Empress his Daughter (who as much as lay in her endeavour'd to advance the interest of her Brother) having testified to them the repugnancy *Placidia* had to such a Marriage, he added that he would not at all hinder *Euchere* from endeavouring to gain the heart of the Princess by his love and services, but that no consideration should induce him to offer violence to his Sister. *Stilicon* and his Son were much discourag'd by this Answer, but not at all desisted their intentions, hoping that either time, or the power of *Stilicon*, would change the spirit either of the Sister or the Brother.

In the mean time, the passionate *Constance* remain'd a disconsolate lover, without daring to speak; so much did the respect and knowledge of the averfeness of *Placidia* cowardize him in this occasion; and I believe, out of meer respect, he for many years had never open'd his mouth, though he had judg'd the hazard greater than he could have undergone. Amongst the persons with whom he held the chief converse, *Virginia* had the first degree; and as she had the cognizance of all that pass'd within his heart, so he preferr'd her company before that of any other persons, and visited her constantly every day, except he saw her with the Princess; the rather, because his spirit being wholly compos'd of love, he could unwillingly entertain any other discourse but of *Placidia* and his passion. At those hours when he could not (detain'd by affairs of State) wait upon *Virginia*, he us'd to write to her certain short Letters, in which he still made mention of the Princess, and the great love he bare her. *Placidia* us'd often to visit *Virginia*; and one day being gone to her house, to see her, 'twas told the Princess that she was gone abroad; but the servants of the house understanding the respect due to the Princess, intreated her to enter into the Chamber of *Virginia* whilst they went to search her. *Placidia* stay'd for some time in the Chamber, with those Ladies that attended her; but by chance seeing the door of the Closet open, she alone went in; and seating her self in a Chair by the Table, she happen'd to spy there certain papers, and amongst the rest cast her eyes upon a little Note which *Virginia* had that day receiv'd from my Master, and which she had by mistake left there, for she us'd always to lock them up carefully. The Princesses great love and assurance of the affection of *Virginia*, made her believe that she would not be at all troubled, if she should view any Letters writ to her; therefore taking up the Note, she presently knew it to be the writing of *Constance*, which she had often seen (though he had never taken the liberty to write to her) and of whom she had often demanded Verses, and several other pastimes of his ingenuity. The respect she had for him, and the knowledge she had of the acuteness of his writing, made her more willing to read the Note, in which she found these words, or somewhat to this purpose.

Constance to Virginia.

SHall I suffer all my life without speaking? and shall I not at length give a period to that silence which has been my prejudice already for so many years? Nothing is more Sacred, nothing more Religious, and nothing more Dutiful than my Love, yet notwithstanding I am constrained to expel it from me as a crime; however I will not complain of my destiny; 'tis the most glorious and fairest of the world; though I must needs say it hath something in it of cruelty, if whilst I dye for the fair *Placidia*, it is not permitted me to let her know I dye for her.

The Princess concluded the reading of this Letter with no small astonishment, accompa-

nied with divers different thoughts which it will be difficult to imagine, or represent: for though she knew her self Sister of both the Oriental and Occidental Emperours, and was sensible there was none whose birth could equalize her, yet she had so great an esteem for the virtue, and especially for the extract of my Master, that she could not entertain a despising thought of him; and besides, as she look'd upon him as a personage already raised to the height of glory, and adorn'd with admirable qualities, so she remembered that he was descended of a house that had bred many great Potentates to the Empire, and had once rul'd in the same height and degree as those of her Family. For which reasons she could not consider his love as an affront, or conceive any violent resentment against him; but when she suffer'd her self to be led away by the natural repugnancy which she had all her life against love, and that inward detestation which she bore unto it, she was in such sort incens'd against *Constance*, that she thought she could never pardon him. Soon after she made reflection of all those marks of friendship she had shew'd him; and finding he accus'd her of cruelty, she grew angry, and blushing either through shame or vexation, or both, *He hath* (said she, throwing the Note upon the Table) *ingrately abus'd the effects of my goodness; and it is my goodness only which hath given him courage to offend me; but I shall know how henceforward to deny my self that innocent manner of living; and living henceforth with more reserve, I shall keep men perhaps within those bounds of respect which they owe to my degree and person.*

She was in this parley with her self when *Virginia*, who came with all diligence to wait on her, entred into the Closet. She accosted the Princess according to her accustom'd manner, and expected from her those caresses which she ordinarily made her: but on the contrary she wondred much to find her so cold and serious, and markt signs of discontent and anger as well in her eyes, as overspread through all her countenance. Having beheld her in this condition for sometime with infinite trouble and grief, she was about to open her mouth to demand the cause; but when casting her eyes upon the Table, she saw the short Note from *Constance* lying open, she now no longer doubted of the truth; and suffering her self to be transported by her first thoughts, *Poor Constance* (said she) *I did well foresee thy misfortune, but I never believ'd it should happen to thee by my fault!* She stopp'd at these words, holding her eyes fixed to the ground, with a countenance which sufficiently denoted her disquiet; when the Princess, who was risen from her chair, and had walked three or four turns in the Closet, beholding her with all that regret which her natural sweetness, and the love she bore her would permit; *And well, Virginia* (said she) *do you then keep intelligence with those persons that offend me? And who are those that offend you?* answered *Virginia*: *In truth, Madam, if you are offended by Constance, I know not by whom you are honour'd, nor by whom in the world you can be served. In sum,* replied the Princess, *you know my humour, and since you had the knowledge of his folly, you should either have cured it, or else have prevented its coming to mine. If it is come to yours,* replied *Virginia*, *you see by what accident it is arrived, and it is by some fatality that I forgot this Note, contrary to my ordinary custom to lock them up carefully: he himself can inform you, that it is by my counsel that Constance hath suffered a long time without speaking, though in truth this counsel was not at all necessary for a man, who would rather endure death, than run the least danger of displeasing you; but to endeavour to cure his passion had been the greatest vanity I could attempt; and if you will permit me, Madam, I dare avow that I never essay'd it, and that besides the inclination I naturally had to approve it, I have believed that if any man might aspire to you, that presumption was pardonable in none but Constance, who in all things is to be prefer'd before any Barbarian King.*

Placidia would have been troubled at these words, if her moderation, and the friendship she had for *Virginia*, could have permitted her; however she would have testified that they were not acceptable, and was perhaps opening her mouth for that design, when *Constance* himself entred into the Closet, the door being open; by the commandment of *Placidia* he used this freedom with her when she was to be visited, and he believed he might take the same liberty with *Virginia*; *Placidia* had not disapproved it at any other time, but for the present she could not dissemble the displeasure which the sight of him caus'd, in a moment wherein of force she must either break into an anger with him, or cruelly restrain her self from doing it. *Constance* incontinently knew both by her Countenance, and *Virginia's*, that something had happen'd, which displeas'd the Princess; but he believ'd not himself at all to be the cause of the displeasure she testified, but judging rather to avoid the pursuit of *Fuchere*, and the Authority of *Stilicom*, he concern'd himself was accustomed, but thereby so much the more he still perceiv'd greater marks in the eyes of *Placidia* than he ever yet beheld. This deeply touch'd h

proaching to her with a behaviour full of all respect, *Madam*, said he, *Please to pardon me if I cannot see you afflicted without demanding if it be possible that I could be so happy to find some occasion to serve you in the cause of your grief.*

Placidia, who in any other rencounter would have answered him the most obligingly in the world, would not yet abandon her self to the violence of her first thoughts, which perhaps might be too passionate, nor dissemble the resentment she had against him; but without returning an answer, continu'd still walking without speaking a word, and made him judge by a glance full of anger, that he himself might be the cause of that change of her humour. That thought made him remain astonish'd, and like one half dead, leaning against the Tapistry of the Closet, and looking sometimes on the Princess, and sometimes upon *Virginia*, to see what he might farther learn. As he had nothing upon his conscience which might make him fear, but his love of *Placidia*; and that he had often feared that which had this day fell out by an accident he had not foreseen, he remained not long time before he imagined the truth, by chance casting his eyes upon the Table to which he was very nigh; and seeing his Letter open, which at first sight he knew, he ceas'd to question the true cause of *Placidia's* anger. The knowledge whereof made him much more confus'd than before, he remaining in the posture of a person convinc'd of some great crime; and had *Placidia* minded his behaviour, she had certainly found somewhat therein to appease her, and touch her with a compassion; but she walked without regarding him, while her resentment and natural goodnels and moderation, fiercely combated in her breast how to govern her self; for besides the opposition she naturally had to violence, she knew well that it must be with a great deal of pain and difficulty that she could be offended against a person whom she had always particularly and tenderly esteem'd.

Constance remained a great while without daring to speak, but in the end not being able to master his grief, nor presuming yet to address his words to the incens'd Princess: *Oh Virginia!* (cried he) *ought you to have expos'd me as you have done, to the anger of the Princess, and to such an anger as your self well foresaw? Chance only* (answered *Virginia*) *hath expos'd you, and not my will; nor are you more surpris'd than I was, at this unhappy effect of my bad memory.* After these words, they all kept some time of silence, till in the end *Constance* calling to his assistance all his courage, advanc'd some paces towards the Princess, who had taken a seat; and bending one knee before her, *Madam* (said he) *If I have been so unhappy, as to displease you, I would willingly dye to expiate my fault; and death will without doubt be more agreeable to me, than a life odious to you. I desire not your death,* (replied the Princess, without turning her head towards him) *but should be much afflicted at it; but if you can pass the rest of your life without seeing me, you will much oblige me. I shall pass it so without doubt* (replied *Constance*) *if you ordain it so by the power you have over me: for nothing can be so cruel, nor so dismal as to hinder my obedience to you.*

Constance spake these words with so sad an aspect, and with a voice which express'd something so passionate, that the Princess mov'd at it, turned her head towards him with a behaviour more charming, than she seem'd before incens'd. *I shall never desire any thing cruel for you,* said she, *but I could not have wish'd that you had not lost the respect you owe me, and that you had not ungratefully abus'd those innocent marks I gave you of my esteem for you. If I have either abus'd them,* replied *Constance*, *or been wanting in the respect I owe you, I am worthy of all your anger; nor do I demand any pardon for a fault which can never merit it; but if my fault consists either in what I have felt, or what I have testifi'd, I dare to say, if you will permit it, that I believe my self innocent; and that having never had any thoughts for you, which your self would condemn if they were well known to you; yet I have still conceal'd them as if they had been criminal: All my past actions sufficiently justify this truth; and this very Letter which causes my disgrace, and which cannot be suspected by you, since apparently it ought not to have been seen by you, may suffice to denote to you that my intention was to adore you without giving you the least knowledge of it. I confess I am unworthy to lift up my eyes to the Sister and Daughter of my Emperour; but where are the men that can merit her; or who is he in whom she can suffer this presumptuous thought, if it be not with a respect and a submission like mine? 'Tis not to day alone that I have been faulty, if I be to day faulty: for ever since that day on which you honour'd me with this Sword, which I have the glory to carry, no occasion neither in war nor peace could one moment divert me from the adoration of our great Princess: but would to God that she could see within my heart what have still been the thoughts my love hath produced; and I assure my self that this knowledge would appease an anger which my ill fortune hath drawn upon me. I have still conceal'd them to all the earth, innocent as they were, though the presumption of *Stilicon's* Son, make him dare to serve you openly, whilst I not daring so much as to sigh for fear to render my sighs suspicious, have ex-*

pos'd

pos'd my self to the most tormenting griefs imaginable. Virginia her self, who only in the world knows this secret, learnt it of me by surprize.

Constance spake in this manner, and the Princess, who notwithstanding her displeasure found reason in his discourse, and had but little of her own to contradict it, permitted him to speak without interruption. Virginia joyn'd with him to assist him in his justification, and spake so many things to the Princess, that she appeas'd part of her anger; she consented not that Constance should continue to speak to her of his love, of which she said she had too much knowledge; but that he should see her as he had been accustom'd, and in the mean time she left him not without hopes, that if by his actions he could advance himself to such an estate as might make the Emprour agree to his passion, she would not be contrary to it. This was all the favour he could at present draw from her: but as he had never hop'd so much, and had never desir'd more, he was in such a measure satisfi'd, or rather so much transported with joy, that though arm'd with all his moderation he could scarce contain it.

He had reason to be satisfied (said Pharamond to Valerius, interrupting him) especially with a Princess of the degree and humour of Placidia, and I find him already much advanced; but it is for great merits only like his, to produce extraordinary effects; and the unhappy ought not to accuse any but themselves for their ill fortune. He pronounced these words with a sigh; and Valerius seeing that it was already late, and fearing to give him any farther distance, would have remitted the remainder of his relation till the next day; but the Prince, who by some time of use had got a habit of sitting up, finding himself not at all inclin'd to sleep, pray'd him to continue his discourse; which Valerius did in this manner.

The end of the First Book.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK II.



After that day (for I must omit in my Discourse several particulars, which would render it too tedious) my Master found his condition much different from what it had till that time been: for though the Princess did not give him the liberty which he might hope for to entertain his passion, but made him carry towards her a greater circumspection than he had hitherto done; yet the assurance that he had that his love was known and not disapproved, render'd him as much satisfi'd as if he had been encompass'd with all imaginable felicity. He saw Placidia every day, though he durst not use with her that familiarity which he had formerly done; and she did her self debar her self of those little liberties which she had been accustom'd to use with a person she did not all suspect; but time and his deserts begot in her somewhat more of favour, and by little and little by his respect and complacency, and the assistance of Virginia, she at first suffered, that his eyes should continually speak his love, and at length that his lips might presume to utter it; but 'twas seldom that she suffer'd this last; and his words were then accompanied with so profound an observance, and so absolute a respect, that the most strict severity could not condemn the least thing in him.

Constance

Constance satisfi'd with this happy beginning, resolv'd to owe the rest to his virtue, and render himself such by his Valour, that he might merit the approbation of *Honorius*. In this design his inclination agreed with his passion: for the love he had for *Placidia*, could not be greater than that he had for glory. So that equally animated by these two passions, he sought all occasions to acquire his ends in both, and render himself considerable. Fortune offered him an occasion not long time after, news coming to *Rome*, that *Arduric* King of the *Gepides*, and *Arcaces* King of the *Alanes*, with a mighty Army entred into *Spain*; and that they believed that *Gunderic* King of the *Vandals* was to follow them by the way of *Hispania Beticæ*: so that the Emperour found himself oblig'd to send a powerful Army into *Spain*, if he would not resolve to leave it a prey to the *Barbarians*, who had already promised themselves the conquest of that Country. 'Twas soon resolv'd to send this Army, but it took up some time to debate what Captain they should choose on so important an occasion. *Stilicon* expressed an averfiness to the Voyage; which made those that had accused him with the *Barbarians* invasion of the Empire, believe that he would not go fight against those men which himself had call'd in, for fear lest they seeing him march against them, should discover his intelligence with them; but others who judg'd more favourably did say, and with much more likelihood, that seeing his power over the inclinations of the Emperour began to fail, and fearing lest his absence might wholly lose it, he would not absent himself from his person, but resolv'd to wait on him more diligently than before, to preserve by his presence, that which his enemies might ruine should he part from *Rome*; whatever was the reason he stay'd, yet he gave order with great diligence to provide a puissant Army to march for *Spain*.

In the mean time the Emperour consulted with him, what General he ought to chuse; and though there were at *Rome*, a great number of famous men who had already commanded Armies with sufficient glory, and that *Constance* had not yet been a General, nor was past twenty four years of Age; yet the Emperour had so much regard to those great Actions he had done under *Stilicon*, to the report which *Stilicon* himself had made of his capacity to command an Army, and to his high Extraction, that considering him with a respect above all others, he preferr'd him to the Conduct of this Mighty Army. The inclination which the Emperour had for him, did much contribute to this command: but others have believed that *Stilicon* beginning to conceive some Eclipse from the greatness and merit of *Constance*, willingly condescended to find the means to send him away upon this fair occasion, and therefore in stead of appearing disgusted at his Honour, testifi'd by this means his affection, and the acknowledgment he had of his Sons safety, for which he confessed himself to be considerably engag'd to his Valour. In sum, my Master, thus preferr'd before all other pretenders, was nominated General in this important Expedition; and for the reasons I have already alledg'd, receiv'd that employment with an unimaginable joy; the hopes he had to advance himself to a degree worthy of *Placidia*, making him lay aside the grief he conceiv'd at parting from her.

He prepared to depart with all diligence possible; and by his liberality, and natural Magnanimity, caus'd to be prepar'd the most sumptuous and magnificent equipage, that *Rome* had for many Ages beheld: All those that accompani'd him in this Expedition, expressing a great deal of joy, caus'd both by the affection which all the World bore him, and the advantages which he had gain'd by his sweetness, and by his obliging humour, over the hearts of all men. One part of the Troops were to march with him out of *Italy*; and the rest were called out of the Provinces, to join with him before he came to the Frontiers of *Spain*, where was to be the Rendezvous of the whole Army, which consisted of near forty thousand men.

At length the day of his departure arriv'd; and after having taken leave of the Emperour, he went to render the same duty to the Princess *Placidia*: but on that occasion, he could not preserve his resolutions absolutely firm; for though he undertook this Expedition as a thing he had ardently desir'd, yet during these preparations for the same, he could not forget to testify often to the Princess, that though he went with infinite joy to serve his Prince, which might render him worthy to serve her, yet he could not at this separation defend himself from so violent a grief, that he was forced to make use of all his courage to support it. He said now nothing to the Princess concerning his passion for her, both because that he found her then taken up in Company, (not having yet so much favour as to oblige her to give him a particular audience) and for that the Emperour himself came whilst he was there, and after many obliging Caresses told him that he came once more to see him for that short time; but within few minutes perceiving the Princess alone, at a Window upon which she leaned, he adventured to tell her,

her, *That she was the Aim to which he directed all his enterprizes, and that he would not breath, but to think continually on her.* Placidia had the goodness to return Answer, *That she would condescend to any thing might serve to advantage his glory, and that she could never have any greater joy than to bear that his Valour was seconded by Fortune, whilst he might hope for any assistance he could desire of her.* If it be so (replied Constance) *I promise you Madam, that I will return vanquisher of the Enemies of the Empire: for if in fighting against them I can have the honour to be owned by you, they can never have Forces powerful enough to resist me.* I promise you at least (answered the Princess) *that my prayers shall be favourable to you, nor shall those that I make only be for the interest of the Empire and Emperour.* Virginia shall testify at your return (continued she in making sign to Virginia to draw near) *and let you know that in all things I desire your advantage.* She could say no more without having other witnesses of her discourse; and my Master having bid her farewell with a Countenance which sufficiently denoted his passion, had that consolation, to discover in hers that she was not altogether insensible. You see Sir, that I abridge my discourse in things of small importance, and I shall do the same in the recital of the Wars, that I may have the advantage to stay longer upon things more particular, and more worthy your attention.

We parted from Rome with a flourishing Army, which accompanied Constance with an infinite joy, highly satisfi'd to serve under so famous and belov'd a General. In few days we met with the nearest of those Troops that were to joyn with us, and in few days more we were imbody'd with the rest; so that Constance with no small content beheld himself at the head of his whole Army: At the entrance of the Frontiers he was strengthened by the joyning of above ten thousand men of the Country whom fear had made desert their habitations, rather than be expos'd to the fury of the Barbarians; and in few days the same reasons drove many others in to us; so that at our Approach to the Frontiers, our Army consisted of more than sixty thousand fighting men. This reinforcement of so many armed men, and of a warlike Nation, was very necessary: for we understood that the Enemies Army consisted of no less than one hundred thousand, I mean that of the Alains and Gepides: for Gunderic, who had threatned us, was not yet come; and my Master used all diligence possible to come to a Battel with these, before the Vandals should arrive. To which purpose he gave all requisite orders, and not such as could be expected from a young Warriour, but from an old and experienc'd Captain; and having regulated with an infinite prudence the disorders of the Frontiers, and confirm'd the people as he pass'd in their obedience and fealty they ought to the Emperour, he march'd towards the Enemy with an admirable assurance; and they knowing themselves stronger than we in number of men, were marching towards us before they were advertis'd of our Advance, and in a large place on the Banks of the River Hebre, presented us Battel.

Constance, though less in number, confid'd in the valour of his Souldiers; the greatest part of which had serv'd in the War against the Goths, and therefore despising the Barbarians multitudes, refus'd not the Combate; but having rang'd his Troops in an admirable order, and encourag'd the whole Army with an eloquent Oration, he caus'd the Signal to be given. I will not spend time in telling you the particulars of a Battel, of which you already know the success; it was for some time doubtful, and disput'd with much bloodshed; but at length Victory courted us, and remained firm on our side: we lost ten thousand men, but slew forty thousand Enemies. Night made the slaughter cease; and during the darkness, Arderic and Araces, to dissemble their flight, having made many great fires in their Camp, dislodg'd their men, and pass'd over a Bridge of the River somewhat distant from thence, well known to them, and which they broke down as soon as they had pass'd. Constance to whom the Country was unknown, would not pursue his Victory during the Night, which was extreme obscure, nor engage his men in that darkness, hoping at the return of day to renew the fight, if the Enemies would abide it; or if they fled, follow them by day-light with more safety, than in that great obscurity. But in the morning he was much troubled when he understood that they were pass'd the River, and had broken the Bridge, so that he could not follow them to the other side, but by another at a small Village distant a great days march: Yet he comforted himself in this mischance, with the hopes he had to overtake them in few days, or force them to quit Spain; and having employ'd that day in interring the dead, dressing the wounded, and other affairs which may bulie the care of a General after so important a Battel, he march'd to the Bridge where he might pass the River, and from thence directly to the place where he had advice the Enemies were retir'd.

But they would not hazard a second Battel; and the two Kings being both understanding Warriours, did so serve themselves of the advantages they had gain'd in the Country,

of the Forts and Cities which were in their power, and of the posts and passages which they had fortified, and so well delayed time, in expectation of a reinforcement from their Country or Allies, that they made us lose the season of the year; and the Winter approaching incommodious by reason of the great Rains, we were constrained to quit the Field, and to retire into the Cities, after they had done the like into those that were under their obedience: In the mean time on all opportunities that every day offered, *Constance* testifi'd a perfect intelligence in warlike affairs, and order'd and executed all things with a valour accompani'd with so much prudence, as might already place him in a degree equal to the most great and famous Captains. He had many valiant men in his Army, and had given the Conduct of his Cavalry to the command of two young men, of the greatness of whose valour he had good reason to hope, and of whose capacity to manage warlike affairs he had seen evident proofs. These were *Artabure* and *Arcobinde*, whose reputation began to spread it self through the World, and particularly that of *Artabure*, who had signaliz'd himself by a great number of renowned Actions.

During the Winter, *Constance* attempted several Enterprizes (as many as the season of the year would permit) and so diligently prosecuted them, that a great part of the Cities revolted from the Enemy, and put themselves under our protection; so that they had hardly any other places left to retire to, when the season should again admit them to come into the field. But why do I amuse you with the recital of things which you already know? To be brief, I will tell you in two words, that towards the end of the Winter, the Enemy having receiv'd a recruit of near thirty thousand men, quitted the Towns and places of their retreat, again resolving to try their Fortune; but it was so little favourable to them, that they were defeated in two great Battels, the last of which was so entire, that King *Ardaric* had much ado to save himself with seven or eight hundred Horse; King *Arcaces* was slain upon the place, and the whole Army cut in pieces, before *Constance* his compassion could stop the fury of his Souldiers.

After these great Victories, all the Forces that were garison'd in the Cities which the Enemies had taken, desir'd liberty to retire, and deliver'd the places into the hands of *Constance*; and all those of the Country, who either voluntarily, or through fear of the *Barbarians* had imbrac'd their party, and endeavour'd to shake off the yoke of the Empire, became humble Suitors to the clemency of *Constance*, who receiv'd them with an humanity only proper to himself; so that before the beginning of the succeeding Winter, there remain'd nothing to complete an entire peace to those Provinces. And the victorious *Constance*, after having gained three great Battels, made several considerable fights, and reduc'd more than thirty Towns to the obedience of the Emperour, was about to return to *Rome*, with hope to be received there, as the most great and most Triumphant Captain that ever entred those Gates, when he had advice that *Gunderic* King of the *Vandals* was entred into *Betica*, and had already made himself Master of many important places.

This News had afflicted him, if it had not given him occasions to acquire glory, and render himself more worthy of *Placidia*, with whom in all dangerous and perilous Enterprizes, his thoughts were still busied. In all Combates he invoked her name as a Divinity which govern'd the success of his Battels; and in all charges which he gave, turning himself towards me, who was always near his Person, and the only of his Confidants that had knowledge of his Love: *Valerius*, (said he) 'Tis to day that I must render my self worthy of *Placidia*, and raise my self to that degree whither merit can only raise me. Hitherto he durst never write to her, nor ever had permission; but when he saw himself depriv'd of hope to see her in the time which he once expected, and engaged in another War, which perhaps would be more durable than the former, he adventur'd to address a Letter to her; but it was in such respectful terms, and in such a manner as he might run the least hazard to displease her: for he resolv'd to send his Letter to *Virginia*, praying her in that which he writ to her, to give it to the Princess if she found it convenient, or if she believ'd she would pardon his presumption; but to burn or keep it, if she thought the contrary: with this precaution, he presumed to write to this effect:

Constance to the Princess Placidia.

Though it be already an Age that I have been absent from you, yet I should contemnedly endure the end of my Exile, rather than endanger the displeasing of you, if I did not see it prolong'd by those occasions which will render it without doubt much more tedious. I had patience till the end of that War which I was sent to finish; but since I must now march to a

second, perhaps likely to hold longer than the first, Pardon me, great Princess, if I hazard to make a new protestation of my subjection: that which I suffer by so cruel a banishment, may merit that pardon, which I hope from your goodness, for a person that doth what is possible to render himself worthy only to serve you: Permit him to preserve his glorious hopes, if you will have him be invincible, and to believe that what he shall do for the Empire cannot be displeasing to you. That sweet hope will fortifie me against so rigorous a banishment, and will preserve him from all dangers, who ought never to die, but for the divine Placidia.

He sent this Letter by him whom he dispatch'd to Rome to advise the Emperour of the entrance of *Gunderic* into *Spain*, and of his design to fight him; which he put himself in a posture to do with all diligence possible: and seeing his Army a little weakened, by the Battels which he had fought, and by the hardships they had suffered; he drew together the most affectionate and most warlike of the people, and acted with so much diligence, that in less than a month he put his Army into a better estate than they were since their first entrance into *Spain*: Yet his Forces did not near equalize the number of *Gunderic's*; and therefore *Constance* knowing that he had now to do with men more valiant, and a more famous Captain than those he came to conquer, resolv'd to observe more wariness against him, than he had against the *Gepides* and the *Alams*: He grounded this resolution upon reason; for besides that he knew the *Vandals* to be numerous and warlike, he was certain that *Gunderic* was a prudent and experienc'd Soldier, against whom it behov'd him to use the best of his martial skill: He therefore not only march'd in good order towards them; but when he approach'd them, chose his posts with great diligence, which made the old Officers of his Army, most of whom had serv'd under *Theodosius*, admire his great understanding in War.

At his entrance into *Betica*, he received Letters from Rome; and by those of the Emperour, and *Stilicon*, who likewise writ to him, he found the great satisfaction and acknowledgment of *Honorius*; and the effect which his great Victories had won the minds of all the *Romans*; while he understood with what Praises they had extoll'd his great actions: but though these caused some motions of joy in him, yet it was not so sensible as what he received from a little Letter, which he found within a Letter which *Virginia* writ him, and which he knew to be writ with *Placidia's* own hand. The extasie of his own joy was so great, that before reading of it he was forc'd to shew twenty actions of a passionate lover, little agreeable to his natural reservedness. In the end he read these words:

The Princess *Placidia* to *Constance*.

I Ought not to pardon a liberty which you have taken without my consent: but what ought we not to pardon to so great a person, the Vanquisher of so many thousands of our enemies, and renowned for so many famous Victories? I at least owe this complacency to the Emperour and to the Empire whom you so successfully serve: And willingly do I continue my vows for you, since I perceive they are not unprofitable. I am likewise content to have a share in your great actions, since you desire it, and to keep you in my remembrance, since you have so well deserved it: return Conquerour, and return quickly if it be possible, and believe that both from the one and the other, I shall receive an infinite joy.

Never did the most favourable, the most tender, and the most obliging Letters give so much content to the most passionate lover, as these few lines gave my Master: and as he never hid from me the effects which love wrought upon his mind, so he express'd to me his present content by terms and actions, which made me judge it extraordinary. *Valerius* (said he) fortune is favourable to me in all things; but the greatest Victories that ever we can gain over our enemies, are not so considerable to me, as the least advantage I can gain over the heart of *Placidia*: this is that makes us fight, this is that will make us overcome, if it be possible.

By this joy which the good success of his love gave him, his desire to engage his enemies seem'd to be encreas'd, and that he now hop'd the Victory with more assurance than he had hitherto testifi'd. In the mean he neglected not all means to prosecute them: and in our entrance into *Betica*, he made several successful and advantageous Skirmishes with them, which though in themselves of no great importance, yet were counted as good Omens. *Gunderic* had then besieg'd a place; but judging well that he could not continue the Siege in the face of our Army, he rais'd it, and march'd toward us, to gain a passage

passage which was very advantageous to him: But *Constance* who understood his intent, having sent *Artabure* first to view the post, the next morning went himself; and judging it a great piece of indiscretion to attack in such a place, an Army of an hundred thousand men, drew off to the other side, making shew as if he meant to assault certain places which were under the power of the *Vandals*, thereby to oblige their King to dislodge from so advantageous a place. The design succeeded to his desires; and *Gunderic* seeing us march by, followed as a man that scorned to decline the fight, but who, as well as *Constance*, knew, he had need to make use of all his prudence, against a person whose glorious actions had made him rather to be fear'd than despis'd.

Winter was now good part spent; yet to be short, we passed it quite through, partly in the Field, and partly in the Cities, without coming to a general Battle, though there were many Skirmishes of importance, which might deserve a particular mention.

At the return of the Summer, the two Generals expressed their desire to come to a set fight, but both endeavour'd to get the best advantages; *Constance* as the less in number, and *Gunderic* as a Captain that would overcome: but in the end, after several removals on both sides, and daily Skirmishes of partles, *Constance* so well ordered his affairs, that he joyn'd with the Army of *Gunderic*, in a plain between two Hills, which yet was not vast enough to serve the *Vandals*, with all those advantages which the number of their men gave them over us; and in this place he constrained him to come to Battle: never in *Spain* was there a more famous Engagement fought, nor more hotly disputed; but in the end the Victory did so entirely remain on our part, that more than sixty thousand *Vandals* were slain upon the place, and more than ten thousand were taken prisoners: but we lost seven or eight thousand choice men. *Gunderic* with about thirty thousand men, of whom a good part were wounded, retired into the Mountains, covered with Woods, and from whence it would have been difficult to have forc'd him. But *Constance* designing to prosecute his Victory, resolv'd to besiege him in the Mountains, and to that effect stopt up all the passages, hoping to famish them in few days. His thoughts and design did not deceive him: and *Gunderic* having try'd several ways to retire in the night, but finding his retreat impossible, extremely press'd with the misery and hunger of his men, of whom a great part were wounded, despair'd of safety any other way than by the Generosity of *Constance*; to which purpose he sends a Trumpeter to demand a conference: my Master agrees to his desires, and upon his Parol, *Gunderic* descends the Mountains to the place appointed: by being near my Master, and witness of all their discourse, I saw the King of the *Vandals*, whom I found to be a person of a gallant spirit, and of a bold and noble aspect; he highly praised the Valour and prudence of *Constance*, confessing that it did somewhat abate his misfortunes, to be overcome by so Heroick an Enemy, and one who in so many other places had gain'd such considerable Victories; and in the end demanded of him, how he would use his fortune, and the advantage he had over him. *Constance* with a becoming affability represented unto him the calamity of his present condition, that he could force him with all his men to perish in few days without the loss of one man; but that he scorned to abuse his fortune, against a Prince whom he had found so couragious: That he would therefore give him leave to retire with all his men, as well those that were with him, as those that he had engarrison'd in any places, upon condition that the places were surrendered immediately to him, and that he departed out of *Spain*, and all the Lands and Dominions of the Empire without delay.

Gunderic returned thanks to *Constance* for his nobleness; and having accepted the conditions with infinite joy, he sent instant orders to those whom he had left in the Cities, to quit them and attend his retreat: *Constance* giving Pass-ports to them, to the end that in their retreat they should not be set upon by the people of the Country, who took the *Romans* part. On the morning *Gunderic* departed from the Mountain, and took leave of *Constance*, who entertain'd him at a magnificent Dinner, and to court him with an extraordinary civility, freely return'd him all the prisoners without ransom. *Gunderic* having highly applauded his Generosity, retir'd, and march'd without stop out of *Hispania Betica*, which he left so free and peaceable, as if it had never been embroy'd in War: at the Frontiers he told the Officers of those Troops that had conveyed him, that the obligation he had for the Generosity of *Constance*, and the esteem which he had conceiv'd for his person, was so great, that it should hinder him from returning into *Spain* so long as he should live, or that he could but doubt he should encounter his person; but if by chance it should happen that he had no more *Constance* to encounter with, he would re-invade it with a Force that all the power of the Empire should with difficulty withstand.

Constance having so gloriously and with so many memorable Victories, completed the

affairs of *Europe*; after having employ'd some time to establish certain necessary orders, settle the Provinces in an entire tranquillity, and fortifie the people in their fidelity, he began his march towards *Rome* with all that satisfaction which he could receive from the glory of his actions, and the joy which his hopes to see *Placidia* could inspire him with; but during the time which we were in *Spain*, there fell out things in *Italy*, which it will be necessary that I tell you, that you may understand in what condition Affairs were at *Rome* at our arrival. The War with *Spain* had lasted near three years; and the four years of Truce which *Stilicon* had made with *Alaric* being expir'd, without any endeavours of the Emperour to fulfil the propositions which had been made, *Alaric* at the precise end of four years not seeing any effects of the hopes that were given him, with an Army stronger than the first, re-entred the Empire, and by the way of *Pannonia*, *Ilyria* and *Noritz*, marched directly towards *Italy*. This news coming to *Rome*, affrighted the Emperour; and *Stilicon* seeing that of force himself must undertake this expedition (unless he would leave *Italy*, and perhaps the whole Empire a prey to the *Barbarians*) made haste to gather together all the strength he could; and having formed a considerable Army, marched in the head of it towards *Ravenna* (by which *Alaric* took his course) and made so great haste, that he arrived there on the same day that the *Gotbick* King encamped at *Candian*, a small Village not far distant, and where he had chose his post to besiege the City; but understanding that *Stilicon* was the same day set down before it, and had lodg'd his Army on the other side of the City, he remov'd his Camp to *Palentia* a little City not far distant; and after some few days of repose, bid Battle to *Stilicon*; but he finding himself too weak to dispute with the great numbers of the *Goths*, and prudently considering that the loss of a Battle in *Italy* might be but a prologue to the ruine of the whole Empire, refused it; and seeing himself strengthened by *Ravenna*, and in estate to amuse the enemies whilst yet it would be difficult for the enemy to force him to a Battel, he delay'd it, till such time as the Winter approaching, *Alaric* was constrained to retire into certain places, which made little or no resistance against his great powers; which also began so to waste, that it was impossible for him to maintain them in the Field.

Stilicon remain'd still at *Ravenna*, quartering his Army about it, and daily facing *Alaric*, but not giving him the opportunity to enterprize any thing: During the repose which the incommodity of the season constrain'd them mutually to give each other, the ancient propositions were renewed, and they proceeded so far upon them, that *Stilicon* publickly declar'd to *Alaric*, that he would not hinder the Emperours giving him those Lands among the *Gauls*, which the Emperour *Theodosius* had promised to the *Visigoths*; and that himself believ'd he could counsel him to a consent, if *Alaric* would send some persons of quality to treat with him. *Alaric* easily dispos'd himself to send Ambassadors to *Honorius*, to agree to whatever they found reasonable; and upon the Emperours parol to give them an honourable reception, to testify the greatness of his respect, and the confidence he had in his word, he sent the Prince *Autalphe* his Brother, and the Prince *Wallia* his Cousin-German, giving them authority to determine all things with the Emperour, submitting himself to perform whatever they should consent to. In the mean time *Stilicon* stayed at *Ravenna* till their return, to hinder *Alaric* from enterprising any thing, in case they should not conclude a peace; and from thence sent his counsels to the Emperour, as if he had been present with him: he had left *Euchere* at *Rome* under some pretext of indisposition, but it was to preserve by his presence, and that of the Empercs his Daughter, his credit with the Emperour.

We understood these things before we arrived at *Rome*; and the day that we entred, we were informed that the two Princes of the *Visigoths* were arriv'd two days before us, and had been magnificently received by the Emperour: But few receptions were comparable to that of the Victorious *Constance*; the Emperour himself, and all the City of *Rome* coming forth to meet him, and rendring him all honours little different from ancient Triumphs: And as amongst all who had obtained such Triumphs, few had so well merited them as *Constance*; so the Emperour did absolutely determine to make the ceremonies greater, if my Master by his modesty had not oppos'd it, and endeavour'd to hinder all Pomp and Magnificence at his entrance. Yet he could not but hear the acclamations of the people, who extolled him above the most famous Captains; those who said least, comparing him to the great *Scipio*, who some ages before, in the same *Spain* which he came from pacifying, had by actions much less glorious than his, acquir'd a most famous reputation.

Constance receiv'd with an incomparable modesty all these praises: for my part, I was ravish'd with joy, and concern'd myself more in his interest than himself: but that which
 most

most contented him in this magnificent occasion, was, that his glories might become a servant to his fortunes in *Placidia's* favour, as she had permitted him to hope. Amongst those which came to meet him, he knew the Prince *Valia*, who made him remember the friendship they had contracted, after having mutually prov'd each others valour: the greatness of this Princes court had perswaded him not only without envy to behold the glory of a person for whom he had conceiv'd so great esteem, but made him willingly joyn himself with those who came to render him this honour. *Constance* was highly sensible of this testimony of his affection, than which a greater could not be made; nor did he return a less suitable retaliation, but by all his actions and all his words, made known his acknowledgment of it.

Their Caresses did not finish till they approach'd the Emperour, near whom he likewise saw the Prince *Autalphe*, whom he saluted with a proper civility, and from whom he receiv'd all that was due to his merit, and the degree which he held among men. Having staid some time with the Emperour, who render'd him all imaginable Honours and Caresses, and treated with him about the most important affairs of the Empire; and having perform'd his devoirs to the Empress, who gave him likewise a reception suitable to the greatness of his actions, he prepar'd himself, spur'd on with joy, fear, love and many other passions, to visit the Princess, whom he understood about four days since was gone to a pleasant Palace of the Emperours, about forty furlongs distant from *Rome*, whence she was to return the next morning: though the time were not long, yet it seem'd so to the amorous *Constance*, who being advis'd that *Virginia* was likewise with the Princess, resolv'd with an impatience worthy of his love, to see her that very day, believing that he ought not to lose the occasion to visit her in her retirements, where he might make his addresses with more freedom, than in the crouds and multitudes of the Court.

He arriv'd at the City in a very good hour; and the days being yet of the longest, he could not doubt of time to perform this visit: and therefore withdrawing himself from his friends, whose entertainments might hinder him from executing his design, he left the Court, and taking with him none but me, and two servants on horseback to hold ours, we parted out of the gate of *Ostia*, and flew towards the Princess's Palace, with the greatest speed of our swift-footed horses. My Masters knowledge that both the Emperour and all the world did understand the particular respect he bore the Princess, and the interest which she had publickly express'd to have in the growth of his fame and fortunes, made him believe, that this diligence to wait on her, would not at all bring his passion into suspect, nor offend his friends, if to theirs he preferred the view of the glorious Princess. The way was accounted two hours riding at an ordinary pace, but we scarce made one of it; and at our arrival, there was yet two hours of Sun ere his descent into the Western Ocean. My Master out of modesty, had not sent news of his arrival to *Rome*, nor was the Emperour advis'd of it till the night before; so that his presence brought the first tidings of his being come thither: no person being by fortune come from *Rome* that day, which made the sight of *Constance* extremely surprize those that saw him; and as he was greatly lov'd and esteem'd by all the household of *Placidia*, so their surprizal was agreeable: They would have run to inform the Princess, believing she would entertain the news with no small joy, but he entreated them to stay; and having understood from them that she was only with *Virginia* in the Garden, and that he might go without danger of disturbing them, he went alone, leaving me with the chiefest of her attendants.

He had been oftentimes in the place, and knew all the ways both of the house, and into the Garden; and having survey'd several Alleys, without finding any person, he approach'd in the end to a Banqueting House, which is at the very utmost extent of the Garden, over which it hath a clear prospect, being fix'd upon high and strong beams of Cedar; the windows look'd forth upon a great and beautiful Channel, on the other side of which lies a vast and pleasant Meadow: *Constance* found the Ladies attendants of the Princess without the Banqueting House, who were no less surpriz'd at his sight than the other persons of the house had been, and who told him that the Princess was alone with *Virginia*, in the Banqueting House, whilst they had liberty to divert themselves in the Garden: He hindred them as he had before done the others, from giving the Princess notice of his arrival, telling them that it would be easie for him to surprize *Virginia*, who as the chiefest of his friends would be sufficiently interest'd in his return.

At length seeing the Banqueting-house open, and believing he might enter, he did so, but with that respect which his love taught him, and which might easily have been discerned in his Countenance, had there been any by to have mark'd it. At his entrance the Princess and *Virginia* were leaning on the Windows which over-looked the large and beautiful Streams:

Streams : and *Constance* entering with the least noise he could, while they being intent either upon what they view'd or what they said, did not at all turn towards him, who out of the respect he had for *Placidia*, would not be so rude as till she turn'd of her self, to interrupt her Discourse with *Virginia* : but in the mean time softly approaching a Table which stood in the middle of the Banqueting-house, and seeing their Pens, Inke, and Paper, upon which he might discern some Writing, his curiosity made him fix his eyes upon it, when he perceived them to be Verses in little *Stanza's* which the Princefs and *Virginia* had made to divert themselves ; they were in the form of a Dialogue ; and of every *Stanza*, which consisted but of four Verses, the two first were writ by the hand of *Placidia*, and the two last, which served as answer to the first, by that of *Virginia* : The two first Verses of the first *Stanza*, written by the hand of the Princefs, were these :

*Insensible is not my heart,
Yet not with ease from it I part.*

And the two last, written by the hand of *Virginia*, answered in this sort :

*Who then can such a spirit prove
That is invincible to Love ?*

The two first of the second *Stanza* were :

*'Tis noble yet in such a mind
As mine, reluctancy to find.*

But to these *Virginia* not having answered, they had placed themselves at the Window without finishing the *Stanza* ; and my Master having once more read over the Verses, and believing himself to be concern'd in the Answer of *Virginia*, taking up the Pen, he ended the *Stanza*, by writing these two Verses under those of the Princefs.

*But never loving, then must I
Poor Constance miserable die.*

He did not at all disguise his Character ; and seeing that he was not perceiv'd, he believ'd that it would be a pleasant surprisal of the Princefs and *Virginia*, if he could retire without being seen, and give them time to view what he had writ. He did as he resolv'd ; and going forth again without the least noise, went to find the Ladies, telling them that he would stay some time with them, not daring to disturb the conversation of the Princefs and *Virginia* ; but he led them from the place where they were, for fear of being too soon discover'd, into a shady walk not far distant ; his intention being nevertheless not to stay long, having great impatience to see the Princefs, and to employ that little time he had to spend, in discourse with her.

In the mean time *Placidia* and *Virginia* having presently after his departure out of the Room withdrawn from the Window, and approach'd the Table, *Virginia* remembred that she had not yet finish'd the *Stanza* ; and therefore taking the Pen in her hand, she went about to answer those two Verses of *Placidia's* : but certainly never did any surprize parallel hers, when she beheld the *Stanza* finish'd, and by a hand which at present she could not know ; she shew'd such signs of astonishment, that the Princefs was oblig'd to demand the cause, and at the same time approach her, to see the reason of it ; which *Virginia* by shewing her the Verses soon made her apprehend, and rendred her surprize great as her own : they look'd upon one another a long time with amazement, demanding from each others eyes the reason of what they saw, but their wonder not giving them time to answer, they for a good while kept a profound silence ; till at length *Virginia* looking stedfastly on the Princefs, after two or three sighs ; *Madam*, (said she) *I know not what you judge of what has happen'd ; for my part I know not how to apprehend it ; but were we still in the Religion of our Ancestors, I should believe that some god favourable to the passion of Constance, came and writ these, or brought him from the place where he was, to write them himself ; for in sum, it would have been very difficult for any one to enter here, and write them without being discerned by us ; nor is it less difficult for any to counterfeit so well the character of Constance, which you are not ignorant I am very well acquainted with ; but more impossible it is* (continued she) *that any should so far enter into his thoughts, since I am confident I am the only person in Rome*

that is acquainted with his passion for you. That which you say is most true (replid the Princess;) and if Constance be at Rome (as he may well be on his way thither, not having any thing more to do in Spain, having put an end to the War against the Vandals) I believe no other person than himself can have writ these two Verses; so well am I my self acquainted with his hand-writing. The Lines (replied Virginia) are no less his own than the Character; and if he be here, I shall be assured none but himself writ them. In sum, said the Princess, 'twill do well to know the truth, since no god as you say, hath finish'd this Stanza, or brought Constance hither to do it.

After they had endeavour'd in their thoughts to search the truth of this adventure, but found nothing of likelyhood, they quitted the Banqueting-House to enquire of the Ladies that attended, if they had seen any one enter there; but not finding them thereabouts, they went to seek them in the Alley whither Constance had withdrawn them, and who was preparing to return to seek them. They entred at one end of the walk, whilst Constance was at the other; so that by reason of the length of the Alley, they could not know him, though they might discern his Garments to glisten with gold and precious stones with which they were enrich'd, having the same on with which he that day entred into Rome, and which was a stately and magnificent warlike habit; nor when they drew nearer did they scarce imagine the truth; but Constance at the appearance of the Princess, having quitted the Ladies, and advanc'd towards her with a deportment full of respect, was in the end known by her, and she by the sight of him releas'd from her first astonishment, but cast into a second surprisal, which made her almost forget what had happen'd in the Banqueting-House, her mind being now wholly busied with thoughts how to receive a person who came to offer at her feet so many famous Victories; but Virginia less oblig'd to a severe reservedness than the Princess, no sooner knew him, but she express'd publick signs of joy; and being approach'd nigh him, See there, said she, the Apollo that finish'd my Stanza for me, and who hath not quitted Parnassus, and the society of the Muses, but the Pyrenean Hills and martial Fields, to come and make an end of my Poetry. The Princess had laugh'd at this discourse of Virginia's, if at the same time Constance on his bended knee had not address'd himself to her, as to his visible Divinity: she therefore lifted him up; and having saluted him with all expressible civility, would not that the respect he had for her, should hinder him from saluting Virginia.

After he had performed that Duty, and had spoke to the Princess, and heard from her mouth those first words, which were customary in such occasions, Placidia gave him her hand, leaning with the other upon Virginia; and having walked some time along the Alley; at length her self first broke silence: Constance (said she) I am so extremely satisfied to see you after an absence which hath rendred you famous by so many great Victories, that I first begin to speak to you, by telling you that I pardon the surprisal you put me into at your first arrival; for as I have already writ to you, 'tis of force that I pardon all things to so great a man, to whose power and skill in Arms all other powers are forced to submit. In sum, Constance, I see you return'd such as I have desir'd you should, considerable to the Empire, and to the Emperour; and in such reputation amongst men, that few ancient Captains have had so large a repute: but I will not now (continued she with a sigh) repeat your praise, nor represent to you the Grandeur of those actions you have done; but I assure you that no person can be more interess'd in them than my self, and that Virginia can tell you, as I promis'd you at your departure, what concern I have always had in them.

Constance received this discourse of the Princesses, with an infinite submission and acknowledgment; and bowing himself to her with a demeanour full of respect, Madam, said he, If that which you have done me the honour to tell me be true, as I ought to believe it, out of the respect I bear your words, I do receive from my actions, such as they be, the most glorious fruit I could ever hope for, and all that I could ever propose my self: but if you will be pleas'd to grace me so much as to own that little I have done, and all that I shall do for the future, as done by a person who has the honour to be yours, and who could do nothing but to merit the glory to serve you; I will not only not change my condition with the greatest men in the world, but I will believe that Fortune her self can add nothing to my happiness. They have made me write, and speak in your favour, replied the Princess, more perhaps than I ought to do; and if you be reasonable, you will not demand any thing of advantage. Ah Madam (said Virginia, interrupting their discourse with an excellent grace) after so long an absence, seven or eight years sufferance, and actions so great and important, you ought not to refuse the passion and love of Constance, since he desires nothing from you, but what you may grant him without offending your dignity, and the love you have for glory, and which you if you well remember have already yielded him. If I have yielded him anything (replied the

the Princeſs) I have no intention to retract it; and the eſteem which I have always had for him, inſtead of being diminiſhed, is augmented by the ſame of his merit and fair reputation. I ſhould deſire (added the paſſionate Conſtance) if it might be permitted me to deſire it, that this precious eſteem might rather be augmented by the knowledge of what I ſuffer for you, than by the merit of what I have done for the ſervice of the Emperour: for I had rather be conſiderable to you for the paſſion which makes me die adoring you, than for all thoſe advantages, which Fortune or my Sword can give me; not that I would not endeavour by them to raiſe my ſelf to a degree might make me worthy to ſerve you, but that ſuch means producing a deſir'd effect over the inclinations of the Emperour, I might obtain my wiſhes over yours, if it be poſſible, by the proofs of a faithful paſſion, and compaſs my end, that if the Emperour one day can judge me worthy of the honour to which I aſpire, it ſhould not be only the reſpect you bear him, to which I would owe my Fortune. I think (replied the Princeſs) that there is little difference between this you now demand, and what I have long ſince yielded you; and I tell you again, if you can (as you are already well advanced towards it) raiſe your ſelf to a degree that may make the Emperour approve your deſign, I ſhall not only not be averſe to it, but favour you as much as reaſon, and what I owe to my quality will permit me. In the mean time (ſeeing that Virginia is witneſs of my this days folly) you may live in hopes that you are not indifferant to me, and that I will not do that for any man in the world, which I would for you.

Conſtance, who eſteem'd the favours of the Princeſs equal to the perſon that conſerr'd them, receiv'd this laſt with an extaſie of joy, which it will be difficult for me to expreſs, ſince he could hardly do it himſelf: he returned her thouſands of thanks, with all the marks of a grateful acknowledgment: And in the end, by the commandment of the Princeſs they wav'd that diſcourſe, and my Maſter having answer'd *Placidia* to many queſtions concerning his voyage, had the ſatisfaction to underſtand from her lips and from *Virginia's*, that the perſecutions which ſhe had ſuffer'd for the paſſions of *Euchere*, and the endeavours of the Empreſs, who was extremely ſolicitous for him, inſtead of being advantageous to him, had only produc'd a diſdain in the diſpoſition of the Princeſs, and that he was as unhappy as his Rival could wiſh him: their converſation held yet ſome time longer; and *Conſtance* had an entire permiſſion to do what ever might encline *Honorius* to render him happy, at which he ſo much rejoiced, that he could hardly contain himſelf.

But night approaching, my Maſter, whoſe reſpect forbid him to lodge in that houſe, took leave of the Princeſs. I had the honour to give her the good night; and the underſtanding the affection which *Conſtance* bore me, treated me with an infinite goodneſs: I only ſpeak this to draw thence an occaſion to tell you ſomewhat of her beauty, which I found ſo augmented, and in ſo an entire a perfection, that I was wholly ſurpriz'd and aſtoniſh'd: as for *Conſtance*, he was ſo tranſported with joy, for his good fortune, that all the way of our return he ceas'd not to relate to me his happineſs, and tell me what I have now recounted to you, with other particulars of their diſcourſe of leſs importance.

'Twas night before we arriv'd at the City, yet that could not hinder my Maſter from receiving a great number of viſits; ſo that the greateſt part of the night was ſpent before he could retire. The next morning he waited on the Emperour, and then receiv'd from him thoſe Careſſes that almoſt confounded him; nor did the Emperour ceaſe at bare Careſſes, but in few days made him know by the Dignities and Honours he conſerr'd upon him, that he had a deſign to raiſe him to the high'eſt degree a ſubject could aſpire to; and that, if *Stilicon*, who alone was above him, had more authority in the Empire, and over the Emperour, it was by a power uſurped, which it would be difficult to make him loſe; and not by that inclination which ſeem'd wholly to favour *Conſtance*. Few days after our return, to teſtify the confidence he had in him, the Emperour told him in ſecret, that he had been advertiſ'd by ſeveral means, that *Stilicon* had ill deſigns, and intended to uſurp the Empire: that it was he that lengthen'd the War with the *Barbarians*; that *Alaric* had by his Brother given him this advice, and that he himſelf had found it to be true, in that *Stilicon* did outwardly deſire to have peace with *Alaric*, and had counſell'd him to it in his Letters, yet he gave counſels wholly contrary to his profeſs'd intention, and daily repreſented to him the inconveniences to which he would expoſe himſelf, by giving to the *Viſigoths* thoſe Lands which they demanded among the *Gaules*: He told him likewiſe many other things with an intire confidence; and my Maſter receiv'd theſe marks of his affection, with a deep reſpect and true reſentment of ſo obliging a carriage; but concerning the intereſt of *Stilicon*, he ſaid he durſt not lightly give his judgment upon ſuch a man, who might truly be condemn'd as too ambitious, but for his great actions had merited well both of the Empire and Emperour: that it was a great while that himſelf had murmur'd at the too great authority which he ſaw him endeavour to uſurp, and had with many other noble

Romans impatiently born the yoke he had impos'd on them, but that this was all that was to be condemn'd in him, and that in the time that he had been with him at the War, he had found him so zealous a ruiner of the enemies of the Empire, that he could not believe he held any intelligence with them.

'Tis not an intelligence with them (answered the Emperour, interrupting him) that I accuse him of, but on the contrary it is believed that he irritates the people against us, by the discontentments which he gives them, and that he causes these broils in all corners of the Empire, to put all in trouble, and take opportunity during these disorders to effect his designs with more facility than he could hope for in quiet and peaceable times; especially knowing my spirit to be peaceable, and my complexion weak and delicate, he judg'd that by the Labyrinth of affairs into which he will involve me, I shall lose my courage, and be oblig'd to leave him an entire Authority, or associate him in the Empire; which will never agree with my intention. My Lord and Emperour (replied *Constance*) that which you say may have something of truth in it, yet perhaps not be wholly so; and therefore I shall counsel your Majesty not to believe any thing absolutely, nor yet to neglect any thing; you may still preserve your Authority without condemning a man, who may yet be necessary and profitable to you, especially upon the report of his and our enemies: whose accusation may the rather be judg'd false, in that his actions have testified, he hath not at all spar'd them, but well maintain'd the War against them; and in the mean time, though he should put himself in an estate to execute those wicked intentions of which they accuse him, you will not want faithful servants to defend you, and make him perish in the Enterprize.

He likewise added many things concerning this subject, to strengthen the Emperour's natural softness & timorous disposition, without absolute incensing him against *Stilicon*, whom he suspected only for an unmeasur'd ambition, but not at all for infidelity or Treason. But *Stilicon* was few days after called to *Rome*, by an ill fortune happening to his House, the death of the Empress *Thermantia* his Daughter, who left the World after five or six days sickness: as she had few qualities considerable, so she was lamented but by few persons, though the Emperour, who was naturally good and tender, seem'd much afflicted. *Placidia's* virtue (who was returned to *Rome*, the day after our coming from her Palace) made her take part of her Brother's grief, and endeavour to comfort *Serenus* the Wife of *Stilicon*, and *Euchere* himself, for their loss: but it was at the arrival of *Stilicon*, who had quitted *Ravenna* at this News, that the slavish Favourites did make their Lamentations, and accompani'd at least with appearances of theirs, the true grief he had in his soul. *Constance* induc'd by other motives, testifi'd himself touch'd for his ill fortune, as indeed he was: and *Stilicon*, who knew how to discern the thoughts as well as the actions of great men, receiv'd the civilities of *Constance* in another manner, than that of those persons whose vile complacence made them act it: for *Stilicon* himself he was griev'd at the very heart; and many there were that judg'd it less the force of relation that produc'd this effect, than the regret to have lost so potent a stay near the Emperour, and one of the strongest upholders of his Authority, considering that the Emperour had no Children by this Marriage.

In the mean time, to return to the interests of my Master, the two *Visigoth* Princes did every day see the Princess *Placidia*, and by the effect of her Beauty and ill fortune of *Constance*, Prince *Autalpb* Brother to King *Alaric* became passionately enamored of her. As he had pride enough to imagine that his love could not offend the greatest Princess in the World, so he took little care to hide it either from *Placidia*, or the whole Court of the Emperour: But the Princess being no less haughty, or perhaps having a pride grounded upon greater Reasons than those of *Autalpb*, was so little satisfi'd with a behaviour which she found so much different from that of *Constance*, and void of the respect which she thought due to her, that it appear'd to all mens judgments she had conceived an infinite avernsness for him. Not that Prince *Autalpb* was to be disdain'd for his person; for he was neither destitute of courage nor valour, his presence most comely and advantageous, and of a noble aspect; but there was something of such excessive pride seem'd spread throughout his whole Physiognomy, and his disposition declar'd him fierce, warlike, and barbarous, rather than a person polish'd and bred up in civil society. That of Prince *Wallia* his Cousin was quite different: for though he was valiant in War, in a most eminent degree, he was so sweet and affable in peace, and carri'd himself in all things with so much grace and address, that the most polish'd of the *Romans* did with envy behold themselves inferiour in all gentility to a Prince educated amongst the *Barbarians*; nor could they deny that both for body and mind, this Prince was one of the most accomplish'd men in the World.

The rivalship of the *Gothick* Prince, bred not a little discontent in my Master, rather out of a natural reluctancy we have to suffer Rivals in such occasions, or out of a prediction.

of the evils he was afterwards to be Author of, than for fear either *Placidia* or the Emperour should prefer him before himself; knowing well the advantages he had over such a Rival: but as his respect was unparallel'd, he would not testify any notice of it, nor speak of it to the Princess, believing himself too well establish'd in her spirit, to give cause of the least appearance of jealousy: but *Euchere*, whom in truth it concern'd to be no less wary than *Constance*, being of a different spirit, acted in a different manner; and having treated *Placidia*, in a more publique way, could not suffer patiently this Rival, without making appear his discontentment both to *Placidia* and many other persons: he found himself one day near the Princess in company with my Master, whom he did not yet look upon as his rival, though he saw him daily near the Princess; and not being able to dissemble the anger he had to find *Autalpb* his Competitor, he spoke to the Princess, and pressed her in such an indiscreet manner, that she was oblig'd to tell him, that she could not but express a distast that he should speak to her in that nature, that *Autalpb* and he were equally indifferent to her, and that she would intreat him, not to inform her who had either love or design for her, since he might assure himself, he neither had nor ever should have interest in her,

Euchere was so much abash'd at these words, that after having made a reverence to the Princess, he departed without returning any Answer; and my Master staying behind with her, and beholding her with a countenance that testified the satisfaction he receiv'd for his Rival's ill fortune; she soon dispell'd whatever of anger *Euchere's* discourse might have clouded her Face withall, and turning towards *Constance* with a pleasing serenity; And you *Constance* (said she) will not you likewise reproach me with *Autalpb's* love? No Madam (replied he) for though the punishment of *Euchere* may not have taught me my duty, it hath at least learn'd me not to fall into the same fault: I have, it may be, taken notice of *Autalpb's* love sooner than he; and if the concurrence of a Competitor ought to cause any grief, I have no less felt it than *Euchere*: but it does not make me forget that I am admitt'd only by your own goodness, and that the indulgence you have for my passion ought not to encourage me against others. If they deserve your smiles, I ought to suffer with patience what you please to afford them; if they be unworthy, you understand to give them that punishment they deserve, but in the mean time I ought to be silent, and permit you to act as my Sovereign, without searching into your intentions. You have that wisdom (replied the Princess) I could wish you to have; and to recompence it, I will tell you that you have much more reason than *Stilicon's* Son, to speak to me of the love of *Autalpb*, since I approve the interest which you have taken, as much as I have condemn'd his; nor should I have treated you like him, had you made to me the same discourse: but *Constance*, let neither *Autalpb's* nor *Euchere's* love alarm you, but be assured that neither the one, nor the other, nor possibly any person in the World can remove what you have gain'd upon the soul of *Placidia*. At the end of these obliging words, to which my Master answer'd not but with discourses full of the Extasies of Love, she told him all that *Autalpb* had made known to her of his Passion, concerning which she discours'd, in a manner that might make him judge that as his Rivals were like to be unhappy, so he was more fortunate than he ever hop'd. And to confirm him in this opinion, Fortune so order'd, that *Autalpb* and *Wallia* entred at the same time into the Chamber. *Placidia* receiv'd them together civilly; but *Wallia* beginning to enter into discourse with *Constance*, and *Autalpb* making use of the fair occasion his Cousin gave him, made his address towards her: she received him so coldly, that he was astonish'd, and hardy as he was, could not but lose a great part of his assurance: he remain'd a good while silent, but at length angr'd at his bashfulness, and reproaching his cowardliness, Shall I then be so unhappy (said he) to deserve nothing but your anger or aversion, for these marks which I have given you of the most respectful passion in the World? Certainly (answered the Princess so loud as to be understood by *Constance* and *Wallia*) those marks of passion of which you speak, cannot produce any other effect than what you cause them to deserve; and I cannot tell you why you should call that respectful, which is contrary and opposite to it. The Maxims of the Romans (replied *Autalpb*) are much different from those of other Nations: In the rest of the World a mortal person cannot be offended with what the Divinity permits, nay doth require from us. I am too religious (replied the Princess) to assume anything which is due to a Divinity; but there is so much owing me from the World, as not to admit those passions which you speak of, especially when neither approv'd by the Emperour, nor my self, as certainly yours will never be.

Having spoke these words with disgust, which rendred him as much discontented, as my Master satisfied; she called *Wallia*, for whom she had conceiv'd a great esteem; and my Master and he being drawn nigh, joynd themselves in a discourse, in which *Autalpb* hardly spoke any thing all the day: 'tis true, he was somewhat comforted by the company

of those who came soon after to wait upon the Princess, amongst whom the most considerable were *Virginia*, *Camilla*, *Hersilia* and *Hypolita*, descended from the most illustrious Families of the *Romans*, and amongst the men, *Maschezel*, famous for his success in the *African War*; *Heraclian*, who rather by his fortune than virtue, was raised to some consideration in the Court; the valiant *Artabure* and *Maximus*, that same *Maximus*, who some time before your Majesty vanquished in two great Battels, and who after having some time stayed at *Rome* ashamed of his disgrace, was somewhat reviv'd by the same success and destiny of his successor *Aurdlian*, whose fortune had prov'd no better than his, and whom you defeated on the banks of the *Rhynne*, with the loss of his whole Army.

It was not only that day that my Master receiv'd those important proofs of the Princesses good will; but after that time finding in him all those things which might create a subject worthy of her affection, and to make him approv'd by all the world, she made no farther difficulty to testify to him that she lov'd him, and bore so great affection to him as he could reasonably desire; of which she gave sufficient signs on all sorts of occasions; but because those of her esteem were publick, few persons suspected the truth; and because the Princess her self did not desire it should be known, till *Constance* could get the approbation of *Honorius*, she engag'd him to conceal his love, till he had rendred himself so considerable to the Emperour, that he might boldly demand a Boon of so high a value. Not but that by the merit of those great actions which he had already done, he had already rais'd himself a name as famous as any the Captains of the ancient times, and by the Nobility of his Extract, which made him consider'd amongst the *Romans*, as descended from the Imperial Family, and by reason of the love and esteem which all the world had for him, and his virtue, he saw himself not only in an estate both to enterprize and hope for any thing, but he look'd upon *Placidia* as a reward so far above all his services, though lawfully and justly pretended, that he could not believe that all that he was, and all that he had done, could advance him to such a height as might make him dare to approach so sacred a Deity; and by this modesty he gain'd the heart of *Placidia*, and in the end engag'd her to all that affection she was able to conceive.

Fortune would therefore give him another occasion to render him more and more considerable, by the revolt of *Cajan* that famous Rebel, of whom you have already without doubt heard speak, who commanded the *Roman* Forces in *Italy*, and having in a long time form'd a party which by little and little by his design became formidable, in the end he saw himself at the head of a great Army; and exciting the Commonalty of *Italy* to a civil War, had rais'd a commotion which would hardly have been appeas'd, had it not been in time remedied. But the Emperour at first having cast his resolution upon *Constance*, and *Stilicon* not at all opposing it; my Master parted from *Rome*, and having in few days assembled that part of the Army that lay nearest, march'd against *Cajan*, who having an Army more numerous than he, advanc'd resolutely to give him Battel, and gave it most unfortunately for himself, for he lost his life with almost his whole Army; and my Master having ended the War, return'd full of glory, and laden with spoils: and all this in so short a time, that it was hardly thought he was departed from *Rome*.

Placidia, and all the friends of *Constance*, which were sufficiently numerous, were joyful at this his increase of glory; and my Master favour'd, besides these advantages, with the affection of the Emperour, found himself in a condition to demand any thing: but he had yet some reason to doubt the power of *Stilicon*, who maugre the death of the Empress, seem'd to be re-established in his former Authority over the inclinations of *Honorius*; and he likewise desiring the Marriage of his Son with *Placidia*, 'twas very probable he would oppose the pretences of *Constance*: and it was certain that *Stilicon* had yet in the Empire a power almost absolute, and that if the Emperour lov'd or fear'd him less than he had formerly done, yet he could not refrain that habit he had us'd to permit him, to dispose of and command all things; nor had he the courage to oppose his will, or overcome that powerful predominance he had over his resolutions: 'Twould be difficult to judge what were *Stilicon's* thoughts of my Master; it might be easily perceiv'd that he had an esteem and respect for his virtue, which could not oppose it self against the glory he had gained by his great actions; he likewise seem'd to be oblig'd for the safety of his Son. But it was as well discernable, that his greatness began to overshadow this potent Favourite, and that the favourable inclinations of the Emperour towards him, rendred him suspected to *Stilicon*; for when he permitted him the Generalship against *Cajan*, many persons believed that he designed it that he might expose him to a business wherein there was more danger than glory: however it was, he had never openly done him any injury, or attempted it against him, as he had several occasions to do, and had oftentimes made use of to others,

whose fortunes he had re-inversed as he pleased, or as suited with his intentions.

In the mean time the *Visigoths* Princes pursued their Negotiation, in which they had found all with'd for success, by reason of the peaceable inclinations of the Emperor, if *Stilicon* had not found out new difficulties to retard the finishment of the Treaty; and *Autalph* himself, wholly abandon'd to the love of *Placidia*, rather than to the interest of his Brother, and Country, had not been unwilling to delay the Negotiation, to enjoy for a longer time the sight of *Placidia*, and endeavour to gain a heart in which he found few advantageous dispositions: As he was naturally proud and magnificent, so he made a most noble expence at *Rome*; nor was there any thing more splendid than his Equipage, or ought spared that might make him appear stately and sumptuous. But as he sought, though unprofitably, to conquer the heart of *Placidia*, he endeavour'd to gain the assistance of all those that were near her; and having been often witness of the esteem she publickly had shewn to my Master, without doubting any thing of Rivalship, he endeavour'd by means of the Prince *Wallia*, with whom he knew he had contracted an inviolable friendship, to engage him to serve him in his love.

He to this purpose spoke to *Wallia*, who unwilling to refuse to render him this service, though contrary to his thoughts, made him promise to use his best persuasion; and being used often to accompany *Constance*, after some other discourse, seeing himself alone with him, *I would not abuse your friendship* (said he) *as perhaps I go about to do, if I could refuse to lend my succours to a malady, or deny my service to a person to whom I owe it all. In summ, though we are both of one blood, Autalph and my self, yet he is the Brother of my King, and may be my King himself; I cannot therefore refuse my obedience to those commands he lays on me, though never so contrary to my own thoughts. If he would believe me, he would, it may be, cease to love Placidia, who testifies so infinite an opposition to his suit: but in short, he will love, maugre my advice; or rather, he hath not the power to refrain from loving, and therefore himself hath commanded me to conjure you by all the friendship you ever professed to bear me, to do him the best office you can, by the power you have over her, and with the Emperor himself, if you shall find occasion. I know not with what confidence I can hope a success to this prayer, whilst I must believe that the interests of Placidia are far more dear to you than those of Autalph; but the earnest desire I have to serve him, makes me hope that you will not accuse me of indiscretion.*

My Master stood for some time amaz'd at this discourse of the *Gottick* Prince; and having consider'd to the utmost, not knowing what balance to make use of on this occasion, looking on him with a sigh, *I could wish with all my heart* (said he) *that in any occasion I could truly serve you, you should have certain experience of the power you have over me; and assuredly there should be but few difficulties which should hinder me from testifying the esteem which I have for you: but believe, if you please, that besides those reasons which are known to you, and which permit me not to torment the spirit of Placidia about what she professes so much averseness to, nor deserve her by recommending a person to the Emperor against her intention, I have other invincible ones, and such, to which all in the world ought to yield; and you, I hope, will believe them powerful, since they oblige me to refuse what you desire of me, which you may judge no small displeasure to him who would willingly spend his blood on any occasion to serve you. I am too much oblig'd to serve you* (answered *Wallia*) *and doubt not at all but those reasons which hinder you from performing a service to those desire it, are sufficiently convincing; but if I may without indiscretion tell you my thoughts* (added he with a sigh) *permit me to believe that you your self have a passion for Placidia; and I assure you that I have not only before suspected it, but judg'd that she is rather born for you than any man in the world. You honour me too much* (replied *Constance*) *by so advantageous thoughts; few men in the world can be worthy of Placidia; but when this that you suspect shall be true, notwithstanding the interest you take in Autalph's love, I shall not refuse to confess the truth to you, if you demand it, though I hid it from all the world beside. 'Tis enough* (replied the Prince) *and I neither will, nor ought to demand farther of you; but though I did know it, and though you had avowed it to me, you should never see me abuse the freedom you indulge; and except the interest of Autalph, which I can never with honour abandon, either in this, or any other occasion, you will find few persons in the world in whom you may more truly confide: I shall not tell Autalph of your suspected love, for without that I shall find other reasons sufficient to satisfy him.*

After some other discourse, *Wallia* retir'd, and he went away well satisf'd from *Constance*, though he had not obtain'd what he desir'd: The same day my Master related this story to the Princess, making her sufficiently laugh at the choice which *Autalph* had made of him to serve in his love: she blam'd him a little, that he would give occasion to *Wallia*

to suspect the truth; but in the end, considering *Constance* to be in an estate that he might publicly pretend to all things, she pardon'd him, nor was she herself much troubled. After some other discourse (beholding him with a sigh) *Will you then* (said she) *employ the credit which you have with me, and that which you have over the Emperour, to give to Wallia a proof of your friendship? I shall do it without doubt* (replied he) *if you will order me; nor should I stay to attend those orders, if I did believe that in the love of Autalphe you would find all that felicity, and all that glory you deserve, and that a person loving you like me can desire. How!* (said the Princess) *if you love me so well as you would persuade me, can you sacrifice your interests and hopes to some other consideration? Yes, to that of your happiness* (replied my Master) *for the establishment of which, I would not only willingly sacrifice my hopes and interest, but with them something dearer than my life.* *Ah Constance* (answered the Princess). *I fear you do not love me at all! You may rather infer* (replied *Constance*) *that I do not love my self; and truly I love not my self so much as to desire my good fortune at the price of yours; nor would I be happy, if my felicity were to render you unfortunate. To repay your Generosity* (replied *Placidia*, with an infinite sweetness) *I'll tell you, that I would not enjoy felicity but with you; and if it be in my power to cause the happiness of any person, it shall be none but yours.*

At these words, the most obliging that could possibly be spoken by a person of so high degree as *Placidia*, *Constance* was so much transported with joy, that hardly the presence of those persons that were within the Chamber, could hinder him from giving publick demonstrations; but at length having overcome that passion, and bowing his head with a most submissive behaviour, *Would to Heaven* (said he to *Placidia*) *that I could one day merit that fortune to which you this day have rais'd me; but I find it so much too great for me; that I cannot imagine my strength able to support it.* Their discourse could not continue longer, by reason of the company which drew near, amongst whom were *Autalphe*, *Euchere*, *Heraclian*, *Artabure*, and the excellent *Claudian*, so famous for *Heroick Poesie*, by which he had already gained so much glory, that the Emperour had caused his Statue to be set up in Brass in one of the chiefest places of *Rome*: It is true, that he was much inclined to *Stilicon*, and his House, as he had testifi'd by many publick proofs; and *Euchere* in all those Gallantries to which his love obliged him, was assisted by him in those petty works of Poesie, which his ingenuity could not produce. Yet this served him so little, that those who have chanced to see any thing which proceeded truly from *Euchere's* own studies, have not failed to attribute it to *Claudian*.

Yet this night he engaged himself in an Enterprize, in which he proposed to have the whole honour, though *Claudian* might have some employment; and to this end he spoke aloud before all that fair company, that within three days he would maintain in the great place of the *Hippodrome*, that the Princess *Placidia* was the fairest person in the world; and that he would break three Lances with those who would dare to dispute so undeniable a truth. This proposition of *Euchere's* pleased one part of the company; for the hopes they had of a pleasing divertisement; but it displeas'd others, and particularly his Rivals; who were troubled to see the glory of *Placidia* in other hands than their own; and *Autalphe* was about to break silence when *Constance* did it. *You will be in danger* (said he to *Euchere*) *alone by your self to break three Lances; for you maintain a truth so much known, that few persons will enter into the lists to dispute it against you. I aver* (added Prince *Autalphe*) *that few persons will fight upon this quarrel; but it may give other persons considerable motives to dispute against him; and I assure you that neither you nor I shall be wanting to be of that number. Without doubt I shall not* (replied *Constance*) *if I can find any means to enter without doing an injury to the honour of the Princess: and I shall seek with you some reason or an other to enter, without disputing that truth, which I would no less defend than any other.*

These words confirm'd *Autalphe* and *Euchere*, in the suspicion which they began to have of the love of *Constance*, and in their thoughts accus'd him of having so lately discover'd it; and from that moment they began to regard him as their Rival and mortal Enemy; for in summ, no sooner did they believe him their Rival, but they believ'd him belov'd of *Placidia*; and reflecting upon all that esteem which she had for him, and his industry in serving her, they both believ'd that it was *Constance* whom they ought to fear as the most assur'd of her favour; and at the same time, part of the hatred which they had for each other, was turn'd against *Constance*, as against him who without doubt would be more happy, and more fortunate: They both with their eyes testifi'd their thoughts; and *Euchere* answering to what my Master had spoke; *It does appear* (said he) *that you will not want reasons less than Autalphe to break a Lance for the honour of Ladies; but under*

what pretext soever either one or the other comes, you shall find me disposed to defend both that truth which I have propos'd, and all those which I would maintain. It would do better, (said *Placidia*) to desist from this enterprize: for in divertisements of this nature, there arrives ofentimes accidents, and but little satisfaction. Ob! Madam (said *Camilla*, a fair Roman Lady that stood near her) why will you deprive us of so great pleasure; or why will you not permit what is only enterpris'd for your glory and the publick contentment? For your divertisement (answered the Princess) I consent to it with all my heart; but for my glory, I will not commit it to three courses of a Lance, nor would I have it consist in that beauty, which *Euchre* would render famous by his enterprize.

They returned in answer to this discourse of the Princess, many things which she had no desire to give attention to: and all the while the company stay'd with her, nothing was talk'd of, but this Challenge. *Constance* stay'd last, to the great regret of the other two Lovers, had yet some minutes conversation with *Placidia*, in which she would dissuade him from entering the Lists, telling him that it was not just that so valiant a Captain, famous for so many great Victories, should adventure himself amongst persons of a mean reputation, or serve himself with his Lance but at the Head of Armies: but in the end *Constance* obtained permission to enter, by telling her that it was in an Age, in which he could not dispense with such Exercises, and that it concern'd him so much to abate the Pride of those two insolent Rivals, that he could not without an infinite grief lose so fair an occasion, since if Fortune were not contrary to him, he hop'd to humble them by this Adventure.

The next Morning the Court of the Emperour was grac'd with the arrival of a Princess, renown'd amongst the fairest of the World; and indeed she was of so excellent a Beauty, that if the interest of my Master had not rendred me partial for *Placidia*, I might say that she was not at all inferiour to our Princess: It was *Theodolinda*, Daughter to the great King of the *Huns*, who having some time before made an Alliance with *Honorius*, would testify the confidence he had in his friendship, and the desire which he had to render his Alliance durable, by sending his Daughter to stay some time at *Rome* with the Princess her Sister. As she was Daughter to one of the greatest Kings of the World, so she came to *Rome* with an Equipage befitting her Greatness, and indeed wholly magnificent; but nothing was considerable to her self: and in truth, my Lord, I believe there are few Beauties in the World that have any advantages over hers; her skin was admirable fair; her complexion, compos'd of the most lively white and purest carnation in the World, did astonish those that beheld it; her Eyes seem'd full of fire, though they were black; and her Hair of the same colour, did marvellously well become her Face; the Beauty of her Lips did not at all yield to other parts of her person; and those Ladies that behold her with envy, must with difficulty endeavour to find any fault in her whole composure: Her mind was no less excellent than her body; for though it seem'd full of haughtiness mixt with a pride, which did present somewhat of *Barbarism*, yet is she by the report of those persons who from frequent converse have drawn their knowledge of her, indu'd with all charming sweetness.

But as she hath little interest in the Story of my Master, I shall forbear farther speaking of her; and I had spoken less, if I had not believ'd I ought this Testimony to a well known Truth. This fair Princess was honourably receiv'd by *Honorius*, and by the Princess his Sitter, and lodg'd in a convenient Apartment of the Palace, where she was nobly treated; and for the love of her, those sports were renewed, which after the death of the Empress had been intermitted in the Imperial House. *Placidia* being a person whose virtue made her look upon no person with envy, she cherish'd a very great friendship for the Princess *Theodolinda*; and *Theodolinda* having (and with reason) a good opinion of *Placidia*, as believing her inferiour to none, so she beheld her with a becoming respect and true affection. *Cleomira* a fair and complasant Princess, Daughter of the King of the *Tongres*, the ancient and faithful Ally of the *Romans*, was likewise come to *Rome* some few days before, together with the Prince *Taxander* her Brother, a Prince of great valour and merit: besides these Illustrious Personages, there was a great number of whom I shall make no mention, which made the Court more glorious, than it had been for many Ages.

The Night that preceded that Day on which *Euchere* was to perform his Challenge, *Theodolinda*, *Cleomira*, and many fair Roman Ladies, waited on the Princess. The Emperour likewise himself came thither, and with him *Autalph*, *Constance*, *Wallia*, *Euchere*, *Taxander*, *Artabure*, *Heraclian*, and other considerable persons of the Court, they began presently to discourse of the divertisement which they the next day expected; and *Placidia* willing

willing to honour *Theodolinda*, told the Company that she would cause the design of that Enterprize to be changed, and have the same performed for the Beauty of that Princess, which was intended for hers: but *Euchere* who had the principal interest, testified his dislike; and *Theodolinda* defended her self with an excellent Grace, from the civility of *Placidia*, praying her to permit her to accompany her without any other interest than what she should have in her glory; and that when by a longer stay she had acquir'd Friends at *Rome*, she would not hinder those who might have any such intentions, the enterprising of any thing for hers.

The Emperour, whose disposition was naturally courteous, and more proper for converse with Ladies, than the management of great Affairs; told her a thousand obliging things upon this occasion, protetting that he himself would be her Champion, and maintain the Honour of her Beauty against the whole World: but in the end, after a long contestation, 'twas agreed that the Achievement should be executed in the manner it was proposed, though *Placidia* resisted it as much as she could.

During this familiarity, the Emperour seeing upon a Table a beautiful Scarf enriched with all that Gold or the curiosity of the Workmanship could give it of embellishment, taking it in his hands, and shewing it to the whole Company, *Sister* (said he to the Princess) *methinks with some such present as this you ought to favour those that fight for your glory, and they will probably defend it better when encourag'd by such a favour. My Lord* (answered the Princess) *since there are so many of them in one intention, I know not to whom I may justly give it; and perhaps I shall raise a jealousy for a thing of so slight value. Give me leave to tell you* (said *Euchere* most presumingly) *that I was the only person had intention to fight for your Beauty, for no other can have any thing common in so glorious a design; and therefore if any one can merit so precious a favour, 'tis to me alone that you can give it with justice. Prefer not* (answer'd *Autalph*, looking upon him with disdain) *your intention to that of others; the proposition you have made, favours rather of boldness than respect and submission, and you ought rather to attend the success, than demand a reward, which we hope to merit as well as you. For us* (said *Constance*, composing himself to suffer the pride of his Rivals) *as we merit nothing, so we demand nothing. For my self* (added the Prince *Wallia*, who stood next him) *though I could merit a grace of so great value, I have that reason which would hinder me from demanding it. I have no reasons* (replied *Constance*) *which hinder me from demanding it, if I had what might make me merit it: but as I know my self too unworthy, I know how to submit my desires, and pretend to things I may more legitimately hope for.*

The Princess *Theodolinda*, to whom the renown of *Constance* was not unknown, and to whom his person was not less pleasing than his discourse, looking on him, *In truth* (said she) *your humility should work more upon me than the others boldness; and if the Scarf were mine, I would willingly give it you, and believe I could not put it in better hands. Constance* made answer to this obliging discourse, with a demeanour full of respect and submission; and the Emperour, who esteem'd him far above all others, turning to *Theodolinda*, *In truth Madam*, (said he) *we find our selves such fair returns for the gift of one Sword which *Placidia* once gave to him, in whose behalf you speak, that if she will take my counsel, she shall likewise give him the Scarf, according to your intention. If your Majesty orders it so,* (said *Placidia*) *I shall not make any opposition; and those great Victories which he gain'd with the Sword I gave him, deserve perhaps the Recompence. And at these words, seeing the Emperour mak a sign to give the Scarf to *Constance*, she put it about him, whilst he made a reverence with one knee, to receive it with more respect.*

It will be difficult, Sir, to express my Master's joy for so dear and glorious a favour; but it will be no less difficult to represent to you the moodiness of his two Rivals, which was so great, that the presence of the Emperour could hardly restrain them from some effects of violence. By the joy that they perceiv'd in the eyes and in the whole action of *Constance*, they did not at all doubt that he was their most potent Rival, which made them convert against him the greatest part of the hatred they had conceiv'd against each other. 'Twas now that *Euchere* repented himself for having engag'd himself in this enterprize, of which by these unfortunate beginnings, he expected nothing but shame and dishonour: he had broke it off, if he dur'd; but he saw no appearance how to do it with honour; yet he comforted himself with the hopes to pick up some pretence from what should pass in this Action, to quarrel with his Rivals; and after having kept some time of silence, *I wonder not at all* (said he aloud) *that *Constance* doth win battels, since Fortune favours him in all things, even above his own hopes. Nor am I any thing surpris'd* (added the *Cambick* Prince) *if that amongst the Romans, a Roman be preferred before Strangers; but I cherish my self with this, that not always Reason governs the Fortunes of men. Constance* withheld him-

self with great difficulty, not being willing (especially in the time of his good fortune, which ought to make men bear with the unfortunate) to contest with his Rivals, as he would have done, if he had not been in the presence of the Emperour, *Placidia*, and the rest of the Illustrious Company; and only regarding them with a settled countenance, and holding down the Scarf, which he came from receiving, to beget in them more anger, *Be it by Reason* (said he) *or by Fortune, I have those advantages, which I know how to preserve; and you shall see to morrow this high priz'd Scarf in a place, where it shall be permitted you to see whether you deserve it better than I.* The presence of the Emperour prevented further discourse, but it would not appease the anger of *Autalpb* and *Euchere*, who seem'd more offended than the *Gotbick* Prince: but both the one and the other, after a little time, retir'd themselves from the Company, under pretence to prepare themselves for the following day; but it was rather out of choler, envy, or some hopes to put it quite off.

As this was an enterprize resolv'd on on the sudden, and for which only two days preparations were afforded; there was not to be seen that magnificence, which other spectacles had been adorn'd with, and which had without doubt been seen in this, by reason of the Illustriousness of the persons concern'd, if *Euchere* had taken a longer time to prepare himself: But though now there was no contrivances extraordinary, there was nothing to be seen more noble nor more rich, than the Arms, Horses, Liveries, and all the Equipage of the three Rivals. Immediately after Dinner, the Emperour himself advanc'd to the *Hippodrome*, which (in all places where the people could seat themselves; for all that which was within the Barriers, was reserved for the Cavaliers) was fill'd with multitudes; and the Emperour being seated near the Princess *Theodolinda*, all the Company were plac'd according to custom; only *Stilicon*, who for some indisposition, whether feigned or true, refused to be present.

Soon after, the proud *Euchere* entred the Lists, covered with Arms so rich, that the Gold and precious Stones dazzled the sight: he was mounted upon a fair *Italian* Horse, and had led after him several others covered with rich Liveries suitable to the rest of the Equipage, which appear'd most noble and sumptuous to all the Spectators. *Autalpb* followed soon after, attended by the principal of his *Visigoths*, and in an Equipage which though it had somewhat of *Barbarism* in it, yet attracted the sight with a great deal of pleasure, and was remarkably costly and magnificent: he was mounted upon a *Barbary* Horse, but somewhat bigger than the usual Horses of that Country, and snorting contrary to the custom; which *Autalpb* managed with so good a grace, that he made himself to be look'd upon by the whole Assembly, as a Prince of great courage, and whose presence denoted his Illustrious extraction: His Arms were extremely rich, and his Head cover'd with so large and fair a Plume, as cover'd all his Shoulders: his Liveries were noble, and his whole Equipage expressed the Grandeur of the Master. *Constance* came after them, but drew no less than they, the eyes of the whole Assembly, whose affections he had already gain'd: though their appeared in his Equipage less pride than in the others, yet it had no less magnificence, and all things were much better ordered; all the Liveries more proper and rich: for being naturally the most liberal man in the World, by his great expence he had done things in two days, which so short a time had hindred his Rivals from effecting: his Arms were composed of little Scales of Gold enamell'd with red and white, and enrich'd all over with Stones of infinite price: his Helmet made of the same workmanship, was adorn'd with a spreading white and carnation Plume, below which was to be seen hanging on his Shoulders the fair Scarf of *Placidia*, fastn'd with a great knot behind, and plac'd there with design to be better observ'd in the course, by the help of the wind which play'd with the ends that hung down, and wav'd them behind my Master as he ran: He was mounted on a most excellent Horse; which himself had brought out of *Hispania Betica*, and of which King *Gunderic* had made a present to him, at their parting; and such was the nimble grace of his Horsemanship, that the two Rivals were not a little displeas'd to see the whole Assembly fix their eyes upon him, but their choler was more inflam'd to see the Scarf; nor hardly could they moderate themselves, or wait the time proper to dispute so glorious a favour.

After my Master, several others entred; and amongst the rest, the Prince *Taxander* richly armed, and proudly mounted, the valiant *Artabure*, *Arcobinde*, *Heraclian*, *Maximus*, *Flavian*, and others, whose names are not unknown to your Majesty; the greatest part of which sent to the Princess *Placidia*, that if they ran against *Euchere*, 'twas not to dispute with him a truth which themselves would avow, but to give her a divertisement, if she pleas'd to accept it.

All things being reduc'd at length in the accusom'd order, *Euchere* having caused the Trumpeters

Trumpeters to proclaim the defiance which he made to all the World for the Beauty of *Placidia*, plac'd himself in the Lists with a strong Lance; and (when it was perceived that neither *Constance* nor *Autalph* pressed themselves to run the first course, *Autalph* out of pride willing to let *Euchere* gain some honour before he would put himself in an estate to oppose him, and *Constance* detain'd by other reasons not known to the Assistants) *Flavian* presented himself first in the Lists, and parting at the sound of the Trumpets at the same time with *Euchere*, they encountered in the middle of the Course with a sufficient force and courage; but *Flavian* was thrown over the Crouper, and *Euchere* finish'd his Carrier without being mov'd.

The whole Assembly applauded the Beauty of this Course; and *Maximus* taking the place of *Flavian*, ran with a success equal to his, and was thrown on the Ground without having shaken *Euchere* in his Saddle. The Son of *Stilicon* glorying in these two prosperous Courses, might behold *Heraclian* entred the Lists; and parting at the signal given, he encountered him with so much ill fortune for *Heraclian*, that he threw both Horse and man to the Ground with so rude a fall, that he broke his arm; nor could he raise himself but by the help of his Servants, who carried him full of pain, but more incensed against *Euchere*, forth of the Lists: The fair success of these three Courses raised so much pride in the haughty *Euchere*, that he began to call to his Rivals, and demand of them, if they thought the defence of *Placidia's* Beauty to be in ill hands; when *Autalph* believing him to have gain'd honour enough for him to run against him, and not being able longer to suffer his pride, he pressed before the rest, and presented himself in the Lists; but before the course making a sign to *Euchere* that he would speak with him, they advanc'd each towards the other; and *Autalph* lifting up the Vizer of his Helmet to speak more distinctly, and be the better understood, *Euchere*, said he (so high as to be heard by the Emperor, the Princes, and those that were near them) *I come not to combat thee upon the quarrel thou maintainest; I know too well that Placidia is the fairest Person of the World; but I maintain that the defence of her Beauty is rather due to me than thee, and that no man in the World merits so well as my self the glory to serve her.* These proud Speeches displeas'd both *Placidia*, and many other persons that heard them; and *Euchere* having listn'd to them with sufficient disdain; *I should rather* (repli'd he) *answer this discourse with my Sword, than my Lance: but I hope that we shall have an opportunity both for the one, and the other; in the mean time I particularly desire thee upon this quarrel, as I have done all the World upon the first.*

At these words they return'd to take their Carrier; and *Euchere* having chosen a new Lance, they parted at the accustomed Signal, encountering with an unspeakable force, breaking their Lances into thousands of pieces, without being moved in their Saddles: All the Spectators praised the gallantry of their Course; the second fell out in the same manner; but at the third, they having taken stronger Lances than in the two first, carri'd each other to the Ground with equal advantage. They seem'd enraged with anger the one at the other, and would have begun a Combat with their Swords, if the Emperor, and the Judges of the Field had not caus'd them again to mount their Horses, by parting betwixt them the honour, and ordaining that *Euchere* should continue his Enterprize to the end, and *Autalph* should with the rest attend the success.

Euchere being mounted on a fresh Horse, and seeing that *Constance* stood still in his first place without making any sign of coming to the Combat, he boldly desir'd him both with his Voyce and Gesture, and sent an Esquire to inform him that it was him that he attend'd to make proof against, and to merit by a blow of the Lance the fair Scarf of *Placidia*: but *Constance* having patiently listn'd to the Esquire, *Tell Euchere* (said he) *that I have not yet found the reason why I should seek to combat a man that defends the Beauty of Placidia; but I hope to make him know that before the end of the day I may meet with one, and then I shall defend as well the Scarf as the Beauty of Placidia.* The good opinion which all the World had of *Constance*, made them attend somewhat extraordinary in the design, whilst in the mean time a Knight whom they had not before taken notice of, appeared in the Lists; and having civilly demanded that Course from *Artabure*, who was about to undertake it, before he ran, he sent his Esquire to speak to *Euchere*; and *Euchere* being prepared to hear him: *My Lord*, said he, (aloud, on purpose to be understood by the Ladies, and *Constance* himself, who advanc'd for that end) *my Master hath commanded me to tell you, that he runs not against you with any intention to offend the Beauty of the Princess Placidia; for though he avows that nothing in the World is fairer than she, yet that which he maintains against you, and against the whole World, is, that there is another Lady in the World, whose Beauty must not yield to any in the Earth.* The Esquire at the words retir'd, and oblig'd the

Spectatois to behold the unknown Knight with a more industrious view. He was cover'd with very fair Arms, and mounted upon a most beautiful Steed; but especially his great grace in the saddle made them conceive a good opinion of him. The Trumpets sounding, he parted at the same time with *Euchere*: and their shock was so rude, that the Lances were broken into innumerable shivers; *Euchere* lost his Stirrups, but the unknown Knight finish'd his Carriere without being mov'd. *Stilicon's* Son not having had any disadvantage all the whole day till now, made the Spectators more diligently cast their eyes on the unknown Knight, who having took another Lance after the example of *Euchere*, returned to begin another Course: they parted at the signal, and the unknown Cavalier with so much violence encountred the Son of *Stilicon*, that tumbling him over the Horses Croup, he made him measure his length on the ground, whilst he finish'd his course without making any ill posture in his Saddle.

At the fall of *Euchere*, all the people gave a great shout; and though the Princess saw her glory ill defended, yet she was not at all dissatisfied. But 'twas now that *Constance* advanc'd himself, and enlarging his voice to be understood by the whole world, *Euchere* (said he) *Behold now what I sought for, which was to fight for Placidia, and now I take thy place with hopes to defend her beauty better than thou hast done. Placidia* did with joy behold the grace and behaviour with which *Constance* proceeded in this action, and the whole assembly testifi'd their approbation of it by their cries and clapping of their hands; but whilst *Constance* was placing himself in the Lists with a strong Lance, he might behold the Esquire of the unknown Knight to approach him, who accotting him with sufficient respect; *My Lord,* (said he) *my Master entred not here to combat against you, but since he cannot without so doing quit the Lists with honour; he hath intention to defend the proposition he made; but will only break one Lance with you.* The Esquire return'd at these words, without expecting an answer: while *Constance* thought himself so oblig'd to the civility of his Master, that he would willingly have yielded him the honour without running against him, if by doing it, he should not have displeas'd *Placidia*: he made him a sign with his hand that he acknowledg'd his courtesie; and soon after they took their Carriere with so much fury, that they made all that beheld them admire the gallantry of their Course: yet neither the one, nor the other, moved in their Saddles, though the splinters of their Lances flew up into the Air. *Constance* went to take another Lance, believing that this equality of the Course would oblige the unknown Cavalier to run another; but he soon perceiv'd he had no such design, when he saw him depart the place, and disappear in a moment, leaving *Euchere* afflicted beyond comfort; but *Autalph* boyling with rage and jealousy, advanced before all others to run against *Constance*; and after having told him that he would run with him on the same conditions that he had done with *Euchere*, and with design to dispute with him the glory to serve *Placidia*, and not the price of her beauty; he made ready to begin his carriere, and at the sound of the Trumpets, pass'd the first course with little disadvantage; but in the second, Fortune was more contrary to him, and he was so rudely encountred by the Lance of *Constance*, that he was thrown out of his Saddle upon the ground, whilst my Master was not at all shaken.

The fall of *Autalph* caus'd a great shout through the whole assembly; for *Constance* being belov'd by all present, but only the *Viscounts*, there was scarce, except them, a person that did not rejoyce at his good success. *Constance* retired with modesty, not being willing to brave the unfortunate, though he had sufficient subject: and in the mean time *Euchere*, who had remounted himself, and who by the fire which darting from his eyes, made his anger appear, approaching fiercely towards him, and speaking with a loud voice; *Since thou hast not vanquish'd me* (said he) *and that another Fortune cannot give thee any advantage over me, in my judgment, thou oughtest to have run against me before thou tookst my place. I took thy place* (replied *Constance*) *after thou hadst lost it by thy fall, and I have defended the beauty of Placidia, when it was without defender: if thou wilt run upon any other pretence, it is permitted thee; but I will now thus defend Placidia's beauty.* *Autalph*, who full of rage was now come near the other two, not giving *Euchere* leave to answer, *No person* (said he to *Constance*) *hath disputed with thee the beauty of Placidia, nor canst thou defend it better than me in a Combat where Fortune shall have less part than in this here.* *Euchere* at this beholding *Autalph* with disdain, *Let me alone* (said he) *to end my differences with Constance: for since he hath vanquish'd thee, thou by the custom of Arms canst no more dispute it with him. Thou art vanquish'd as well as I* (replied *Autalph*) *and by a person who hath no more valour than Constance. If he have but as much as I* (said *Constance*, somewhat provoked) *he has enough to humble the pride of either of you two; and I have enough to make you know in another place, and in another sort of Combat, that you are both unworthy of the glory to serve Placidia.*

I know not whether 'twas anger that so transported *Euchere*, that it deprived him of his judgment, or the reliance he had on the authority of his Father, that made him forget the respect he ought to the presence of the Emperour: and whether *Autalph* being descend- ed of a Sovereign house, so far from being dependent on the Empire, that it made war against it on equal terms, believ'd that he was not obliged to have any consideration for *Honorius*; but scarce had *Constance* finish'd those words, when his two Rivals having drawn their Swords, he might at the same time feel two good handsome blows on his head. The choler which inflamed him at such an injury, made him make a cry, would have daunted the most assured; and passing with his head bow'd down between his two ene- mies, he stopp'd his horse about twenty paces from them, and at the same time with his Sword in his hand, he charged them with such a fury, as made them repent their over- daring enterprize. As they were somewhat abash'd for having both together assaulted him, so not having any greater friendship the one for the other than they had for him, they were the more dismayed; and my Master having found *Euchere* first, discharged so weighty a blow upon his head, that the Helmet proved too feeble to resist it, and the Son of *Stilicon* tumbled off his horse to the ground desperately wounded: from thence, with a quickness like to lightning, being mounted upon one of the swiftest horses in the world, he flew towards *Autalph*, before the Troop that ran to separate them could hinder him; and making a full thrust, pierc'd his right Arm which he had lifted up to strike him, so that with the wound he let fall his Sword. Then making two blows more with an infi- nite activity; he had not time, had there been any more to do, to have done any more; being environ'd by a hundred Swords drawn about him, by the friends of the one and the other, and by those whom the Emperour had sent.

The friends of *Euchere* and the *Visigoths* of *Autalph*'s train would have made some stir, if they had dar'd: but though the power of *Stilicon* was great, the friends of *Constance* were more numerous than the others, and many valiant personages, who had fought under him in his Armies, gather'd themselves together about him with infinite joy. His choler was soon pass'd over; and putting his Sword into his sheath, as soon as they had carry'd off *Euchere*, and led off *Autalph*; in the midst of those brave friends that accompany'd him, he went to attend the Emperour, whom his actions had as much pleas'd, as those of his enemies had incens'd him: being come before him, *Sovereign* (said he in a most sub- missive manner) *if I have offended the respect I owe to my Emperour, by defending my life against those who have assaulted it in his presence; I bring my head, and submit my self to suffer what your justice shall please to ordain. I am troubled* (reply'd the Emperour) *at the wounds of Euchere and Autalph, for Alaric's and Stilicon's sake; but I cannot ordain any punishment to that person who hath only defended his life: and if I did not believe his two ene- mies sufficiently punished, I would make them know the fault they have committed.*

As the Emperour *Honorius* was naturally mild, and could not as yet overcome the power *Stilicon* still preserv'd over him, nor would provoke *Alaric* upon the point of concluding with him a desir'd peace, so he would no farther express his anger against those who had so insolently violated the respect due to him, believing that their wounds were dangerous, and that they might possibly be punish'd more severely than he desir'd. For the Princess *Placidia*, she was surpris'd with many several passions upon this occasion: at first she was fearful of *Constance*, when she saw him assaulted by two such furious enemies, but after- wards not having any thing of cruel in her nature, she was troubled at the wounds of *Autalph* and *Euchere*, though their persons were little dear to her, believing they might be dangerous, and in the end prove the loss of those two men; but at last, when she under- stood there was little danger of their lives, she was extremely joyful, to see their pride abas'd, and all that adventure succeed so happily advantageous to *Constance*. The Prin- cess *Theodolinda*, who had conceiv'd a great esteem for my Master, was equally glad of his happiness, remembering the judgment she had given of him the night before, when she procur'd him the favour of the fair Scarf. But in the mean time they were extremely troubled, and all that magnificent assembly with them, who that unknown Knight might be, who had thrown down *Euchere*, and run against *Constance* without disadvantage, of whom for his fair and happy courses, they made many favourable judgments; but if they had a desire to know his person, they had no less to know the beauty for whom he com- bated: *Placidia* told *Theodolinda*, that it was assuredly for hers, and that it was no wonder, if in sustaining so just a cause he had so good success.

That night my Master would not for modesties sake go near the Emperour nor the Prin- cess, believing that it would in some measure be an Insulting over the misfortunes of his Rivals; yet there stay'd with him a great number of his friends, that the whole fortune of

Stilicon scarce led a train like him; but the next morning understanding that the Emperour would willingly see him, he went to attend him: passing through a Gallery he encountred *Stilicon*, follow'd by a train of those whom his credit kept ordinarily about him; and my Master having civilly saluted him, *Stilicon* returned his salute but coldly; and in the passing by told him, *You once saved my Son's life, and yesterday you would have deprived him of it: but I hope you will gain less glory and less advantage from the last action than the first.* As I did my duty to save your Son's life (replied *Constance*) I did the same in repaying the injury he had done me: and as you hold no obligation to me for the first action, so you have no reason to complain of the last. He would not answer him more roughly, not being able to restrain himself from a consideration for him, excusing likewise the grief of a Father for the wounds of a Son, and the shame he had for the ill success of his enterprize. But *Stilicon* returning to him, *You hold* (said he) *perhaps from me that fortune, which hath put you into an estate to offend me; but that same power which assisted you to mount so high, may likewise make you descend, if it enterprize it.* *Constance* utterly lost his patience at this discourse, and looking upon *Stilicon* with disdain, *I scorn* (said he) *to hold any Fortune from you, who are perhaps my inferior in all things; I owe it to my Birth, and to my Virtue; and as it is fixed upon other foundations than yours, I hope it will be more durable, and less exposed to those accidents which may reverse it.*

Many considerable persons, who were present, hindred this discourse from proceeding farther; and my Master's friends leading him away, lett *Stilicon* extremely incensed at the last answer *Constance* returned him. In sum, he had been so little accusom'd, for many years, to find any persons in the Empire, who durst give him replies of this nature, that he could hardly appease himself for this rencounter; it making him reflect upon those marks he had already observed of the decay of his fortune, and making him believe it already changed, since any other person but the Emperour durst speak to him with so much boldness: Both the one and the other made their complaints to the Emperour, who yet something fearful of *Stilicon*, but loving *Constance*, as knowing the reason on his side, would take neither party, but charging them not to proceed farther in their difference, promis'd to accommodate all things so soon as the wounds of *Euchere* were in a better estate.

Fortune at this time resolv'd to make my Master as happy now, as afterwards she intended to make him miserable; for the Emperour taking him by the hand, and leading him into a little Closet, having beheld him some time without speaking; *In the end*, *Constance* (said he) *if you have a true and faithful friendship for me, I would have you freely tell me a truth, which I am to demand of you.* I'll tell it you certainly (replied *Constance*) *though my confession would cost me all that I esteem most dear; and I protest that the loss of my life should not make me tell you the least falsehood.* I would then (replied the Emperour) *have you tell me sincerely whether it be true that you are enamour'd of the Princess Placidia, as many persons believe, and which considering the things that are pass'd, it is difficult to doubt.* *Constance* changed colour at this discourse of the Emperours; and fixing his eyes upon the ground, remained in that posture, without replying any thing. The Emperour judg'd easily by his actions a part of the truth; but willing to know it more assuredly, and entirely, he press'd him in such sort, to answer him precisely, that *Constance* seeing he could not shun it, endeavour'd to expel that astonishment which had surpriz'd him; and lifting up his own, toward the countenance of *Honorius*, with an aspect but ill assured; *My Lord* (said he) *all your authority is necessary to draw from me a confession of that misfortune, which I have hitherto hid from all the world, though I fell into it in the infancy of the Princess: But since it is discovered contrary to my design, after having been for so many years kept secret; and that it is perhaps by my evil conduct that my Emperour hath known it; give this presumptuous person all those punishments that are due to him, and believe it, Sir, that I will not murmur at all, to die for that Princess, whom I am resolv'd to adore to the last moment of my life: I will not at all justify my thoughts, though they are certainly such as I owe to the Sister of my Emperour, and that in lifting my eyes to her, I have not forg't any thing which a faithful subject should pay to his lawful Sovereign.* 'Tis only the rashness of others that hath discovered me; and as I could not suffer that they should publicly serve her, whom I durst only adore from the bottom of my heart, passion forc'd from me that prudence, which till then rul'd the conduct of my love.

Constance would have spoken more, but the Emperour hindred him: 'Tis enough *Constance* (said he) *and it suffices me to understand from you that which I have desired, without demanding further justifications of an offence which I willingly pardon you, if Placidia will do the like: you are of so illustrious a blood, as cannot injure hers, since your Ancestors have held*

the same dignities with ours: and for the merit of your person, it is such, that without the assistance of your extract, there's nothing but what you may fairly assure unto. I believe my Sisters thoughts are not much different from mine: I desire, for the love I bear you, they may be the same, not being of the humour, as you well know, to violate her inclinations; but if she be not at all contrary to you, you may be assured that I shall be always favourable to you, and shall assist you to overcome those difficulties, which you may meet with in her spirit, where my assistance may be necessary.

Constance was ravish'd with so much joy at this discourse of the Emperours, that seeing himself alone with him, he threw himself at his feet, and embrac'd his knees with a demeanour which made him know the greatness of his passion; and in sum, told him all that repentment, which the reception of so great a favour could put into his mouth: and the Emperour opening himself entirely to him, bid him be certain of his good will, and assuredly rely upon it; but that it was not yet time to make it publick, and that it were best attend till the return of *Autalph*, and the conclusion of the peace with *Allric*; and that things were in that posture, that there should be no more reason to fear the ill intentions of *Stilicon*. Constance receiv'd this advice of the Emperours with a becoming respect, and so much joy, that he could hardly dissemble it before him.

Parting from the Emperour, he encountred the Prince *Wallia*, whom he had not seen at the Jurs, and who excus'd himself, that by reason of a fall he had got from a Horse, he could not be assitant at that publick divertisement: and as he infinitely esteem'd his friendship, he ran to him as soon as he sp'd him; and drawing him apart to entertain him, *I should despair* (said he) *if what hath passed between Autalph and me, should cause any alteration in our friendship: and although I am not ignorant of the obligations you have to that Prince by reason of the nearness of blood, yet I would have you believe that you owe something to the friendship which you have sworn me: And I protest with truth to you, that if Autalph had not struck me, I should have suffered all things from him for your sake. You may perhaps add* (replied the Gothick Prince) *that amongst Rivals 'twill be difficult to preserve a good correspondence; but be it for that occasion, or for any other, that this disorder is happen'd between you, I know well how to discern those occasions which engage me to take the part of Autalph, from those which give me the liberty to consider so precious a friendship as yours, which there shall never be any thing of force sufficient to hinder me from opportunities to preserve at the price of my life.* There pass'd many other civilities between them; after which *Wallia* having told Constance, that he was going to make an excuse to the Emperour on the part of *Autalph*, for the fault he had committed, he told him likewise that he would entreat the Emperour to make reconciliation between *Autalph* and him, though he did not hope there could ever be a cordial friendship between them, till the love either of the one or the other ceas'd, which he had less reason to hope of his than of *Autalph's* part.

After they were parted, my Master went, or rather flew to the Princess, not able to contain his joy, and dying with impatience to make her a partaker of his good fortune: she no sooner saw him, but she read a part on his visage, perceiving in his eyes, and throughout all his countenance, something of an amorous extasie; but being ignorant of the cause, Constance (said she) *I did believe you more moderate in your good fortune than now you seem to appear; and I have observed that in those great Victories which you have won, you have testifi'd less joy than I observe in your eyes for the advantage over two men. Though I had but that subjects of joy* (replied Constance) *though perhaps it ought to be as great as any I have drawn from those Victories I have gain'd against the enemies of the Empire; yet modesty would persuade me to dissemble it, how great soever; but my spirit is now fill'd with a joy so great, that there is no modesty can restrain it, or hinder it from breaking forth.* The Princess at these words testifying a curiosity to know farther, the persons that were with her retir'd to the other side of the Chamber; and Constance remaining alone with her, told her word for word all the discourse which had pass'd between him and the Emperour; and representing to her his torture, with all those marks of joy that could be given by a person so infinitely passionate, he had the honour to know that the Princess was as sensible of it as he could desire. In effect, she testified without any dissimulation, that she could not hear news more welcome, and more acceptable to her; and that since the Emperour had the goodness to remit his happiness to her will, he might be certain he should not be long a stranger to those assurances she had given him of her affection; she counsell'd him however to give the Emperour that satisfaction he desir'd of him, by concealing this truth till he thought fit to declare it. *Virginia* arriv'd soon after; and receiving this relation from Constance, did so partake in his good fortunes, that she could not dissemble the joy which she resent'd.

That night the greatest part of the Court being with the Princess *Theodolinda*, together with the Princess *Placidia*, *Cleomira*, *Camilla*, *Hersilia*, *Flaminia*, and many other Roman Ladies; the Emperour himself came, and with him *Constance*, *Wallia*, *Taxander*, *Artabure*, and many others: they discoursed of several things, which rendred the conversation very pleasant; amongst the rest, the Emperour having found occasion to praise the beauties of *Theodolinda*, according to his humour, dwelt longer than ordinary upon that subject: but *Theodolinda* having a while hearken'd to him without interruption, *My Lord* (said she) *make my beauty no longer your subject; it appears sufficiently that it is not such as you speak it, since among all those valiant Knights which compos'd that gallant company we yesterday beheld, there was not so much as one that did entreprize one single Course for its honour.* *Ab Madam!* (replied *Placidia*) *if you remember, 'twas contrary to your will; and believe, that if you would have permitted, there would have been many who would have embrac'd with too much joy that fair opportunity to signalize themselves.* *I had so much reason not to request it* (replied *Theodolinda*) *that I could not abuse the civility you proffer'd me; but if any one had been so well intended* (continued she with a sigh) *they needed not have consulted my consent in such an attempt.* But *Madam*, said the Prince *Taxander*, *would you have given that permission, had it been demanded?* *I know not* (replied she) *whether in a day wholly devoted to the Princess *Placidia*, I could have agreed to it; but well I know, 'twas not at all necessary to demand it.* But if any one (added Prince *Wallia*) *had been so hardy as to enterprize it without your knowledge, could you have pardon'd it? We can easily pardon* (replied *Theodolinda*) *those things that make for our honour: for such an offence would be so obliging, that it rather deserves an acknowledgment, than reproof.* Take care (replied the Emperour) *lest you unawares engage your self to an acknowledgment: for I am much deceived if that brave unknown person, who unhors'd Eucheré, did not combat for your beauty: and you have then sufficient advantage, since the glory of the Course was paried between your Cavalier and *Placidia*'s.* 'Twas truly equal between us (replied *Constance*) *but I fear I should difficultly have maintain'd the honour I had got, if we had run two other Courses.* It is more likely (replied *Wallia*) *that he feared himself to lose what he came to obtain, and that he believ'd he might with honour depart the Lists, after having run without disadvantage against such a personage as *Constance*.*

At these words my Master turning his eyes towards *Wallia*, could not restrain the thoughts that surpriz'd his spirits; *Ab Wallia*, said he, *you give me great suspicions.* And there is no little probability, added the Emperour, *that he for whom you answer so modestly, is no other than Prince Wallia.* There is so much truth in what I have said (replied the *Vistogoth* Prince) *that I might very well make this discourse, without giving cause of suspicions.* But to the purpose (said the Princess *Cleomira*) *Where were you yesterday, when the whole Court was to view those fair Jests? There's many persons know* (replied *Wallia*) *that by the fall of a horse upon me that morning, I was so bruis'd, that I was forced to keep my bed all day.* He spoke not these words with so much assurance, but that the whole company casting their eyes upon him, made him blush as if he had been convicted of some great crime; and in the end the Emperour approaching him, pressed him so hard, that he had no longer power to disavow that truth which he had an intention to conceal for a longer time: At the same time he saw himself expos'd to the Contest he made with him for his Dissimulation, and the praises which they gave him for the honour which he had acquir'd; and the Emperour having likewise urg'd him to confess whether it were not the beauty of *Theodolinda* he design'd to maintain; *After the favour she hath done me in pronouncing my pardon with her fair lips* (said he) *I will not disavow my folly in committing to so much weakness so important a quarrel.* In truth (replied the Princess *Theodolinda*, blushing to see him blush) *you have testifi'd little weakness upon that occasion; and though you are paid for this civility you have done a stranger by the glory you have acquir'd, yet I will all my life confess my self oblig'd to you.* But *Madam* (said *Flaminia*, a Roman Lady of great quality, but of a malicious spirit, and little beauty, her countenance being more swarthy than fair) *if he had been overcome in maintaining this quarrel, as such an accident might have arrived to him, as well as others, would you yet have any obligation? I should however be oblig'd to his intention* (replied *Theodolinda*) *and it may be more engag'd than I am, since I should have caus'd that grief which would have seiz'd him for being unfortunate in his Enterprize.* You are too grateful (replied *Flaminia* with a great deal of indiscretion) *I should owe no favour to a man who should hazard my glory upon such an occasion; and I assure my self he would not have made himself known for that unknown Knight, if Fortune had not been more favourable to him, than to Eucheré.* If the same ill Fortune had attended me (replied *Wallia* to *Flaminia*) *it should not have boasted to have run for the beauty of *Theodolinda*: but because*

you have profess'd you would have own'd no obligation, I would have affirm'd that I had contracted for yours.

At this answer of *Wallia's*, all the company to whom the capricious humour of *Flaminia*, as well as her person, was displeasing, could not refrain from laughing so loud, that though she had design'd to have return'd somewhat more malicious, she could not be heard. But there was no person present but spoke somewhat in praise of this noble design of *Wallia's*, by which he had gain'd so much honour; but amongst the rest, my Master mildly complain'd of him, that he had depriv'd him of his glory upon so famous an occasion; and *Wallia* protested to him that it was with an infinite regret that he ran against him; that he did not believe he would take the place of *Euchere*; that he could not with honour, or without offending the Princess, whose beauty he maintain'd, excuse himself from one Course, which, said he, you know was all I would make. I am too tedious on these small things, the recital of which are not so important to the life of my Master; but what will it be to you to know a great man, whose actions, without doubt, have long since flown even to these parts of the world?

In the mean time the Emperour having received the excuses of *Autalpb* and *Euchere*, by *Wallia* and by *Silicon*, visited both the one, and the other; and their wounds not being very dangerous, though they were great, in few days they were reduced to a better estate: no sooner were they perfectly recovered, but the Emperour made them embrace with *Constance*, though he judg'd that amongst Rivals it would be difficult to establish a true friendship. *Autalpb* being cur'd, and finding little satisfaction at *Rome*, as to his love, press'd the treaty with the Emperour. And though *Silicon* endeavour'd by many difficulties to break it off, yet in the end, seeing he could not oppose himself longer, without making it manifest, he desir'd the continuance of the War, and by the knowledge of that render himself odious to the Emperour and people, he consented to it; but it was with an intention more malicious than all the obstacles he had before caus'd, and of which the dire effects did soon after appear; and the Emperour, as well by his own inclination, as by the counsel of well-intended persons, and particularly of *Constance*, who was willing to procure the absence of *Autalpb*, gave to King *Alaric* a part of *Aquitane*, and other Lands among the *Gauls*, which the Emperour *Theodosius* his Father had promis'd to his Predecessor.

Few days after the Articles were sign'd, and that the *Gothick* Princes had their Letters in good form, they took leave of the Emperour and the Princess, and all persons with whom they had contracted acquaintance. *Autalpb* had at this separation, a long discourse with the Princess *Flacidia*, to whom he protested, that notwithstanding the disdain she had for him, his passion for her should be eternal: but though the Princess testifi'd little correspondence to his affection, yet she treated him at his departure with sufficient and becoming civility. *Silicon* dissembled before the *Visigoth* Princes, the particular resentments which he had against them for the interests of *Euchere*, and told them that he should yet find some occasion to testify his good intentions. *Autalpb* and my Master acted at this separation each according to his humour, and the estate of his fortune; *Constance* like a man happy and favoured, and *Autalpb* like one whose soul the ill success of his love had fill'd with despight and envy against those he believed more fortunate than himself. But the departure of *Wallia* did sensibly touch my Master; and with all the marks of imaginable affection, they confirm'd a thousand times the promises which they had made of an eternal Amity; my Master having known in this Prince so much virtue, and so many great qualities, that he believed to whatsoever degree Fortune might raise him, he ought not to neglect his friendship. The sadness which he marked upon the visage of *Wallia* at their separation, much afflicted him, for it seem'd no less than that of *Autalpb*, who could not without a sensible grief lose the sight of *Flacidia*.

Pharamond would willingly have dedicated the rest of the night to that attention he thought due to the adventures of *Constance*; but *Valerius* unwilling too much to abuse his freedom (though the Prince testified he could not have a greater joy than that of hearkning to him) after having promis'd to begin the next morning at what hour he pleas'd; he gave him the good night, and retir'd to the Chamber which *Pharamond* had caus'd to be prepar'd for him; leaving the Prince rather troubled with the consideration of what he had related, and with the evils himself relented, than dispos'd to give the rest of the night to sleep.

The end of the Second Book,

PHARAMOND.

BOOK III.

THe valiant Prince of the *French*-men was no sooner awaked from that little sleep which his cruel disquiet permitted him to take, but he sent to enquire after the health of *Constance*, and afterwards of *Marcomire* and *Geneband*. For the two last, 'twas told him that their wounds were in a good estate; but for *Constance*, 'twas related that he had had a little Fever since his departure from his Chamber: that for the present the fit was over; but in regard he had but ill rested that Night, it was necessary he took some repose.

The Prince was troubled for *Constance*, and had been much more, had he believ'd that it had been accompani'd with any danger: but seeing himself depriv'd of seeing him for that part of the day, he was resolv'd to dedicate it to the relation of the rest of his Adventures, as *Valerius* had promised him, what he had already heard having strongly interest'd him in all the rest of his life: And to this purpose seeing *Valerius* himself enter among those who came to give him the *Good-day*, he made him come into his Closet; and having given orders to some of the most considerable of his Army, he prayed them to take charge of all things, and permit him to spend that Morning with *Valerius*. After they were entred, the faithful Esquire of *Constance*, having reassur'd *Pharamond* in his perplexity for the health of his Master, seated himself by his command near his bed; and seeing that the Prince lent him a diligent ear, he continu'd in this manner the Discourse which he had begun the day before.

The Continuation of the History of Constance and Placidia.

THAT which remains to compleat the Relation of the life of my Master, is without doubt the most important, and most worthy your attention: For as the Discourse I have already made you, hath been a continual chain of good Fortunes which till that time waited upon *Constance* and his designs, or to speak better, shews you the success that was an inseparable companion of his virtue, without afflicting him with the least disgrace; so you will perceive that in the end not being able to fallise her self, she utterly overturn'd by the sole effect of her natural inconstancy, all that happiness which for so many years, and by so many great actions he seem'd established in: but with the cruel revolution of the Fortunes of *Constance*, you will likewise see that also of the greatest part of the World, of which the particulars of most importance are without doubt come to your knowledge, since they are of such consequence as not to be obscur'd to any.

Oh my Country, with what courage can I relate thy ruines, which hath made the whole World take compassion upon thee, and have without doubt drawn tears from the eyes of those *Barbarians* that caused it!

After the departure of *Autalph*, my Master remain'd at *Rome* in a most happy estate, and in the fairest hopes his own wishes could entertain; for as the intentions the Emperour had to favour him were known unto *Placidia*, so this great Princess made no difficulty to testify the desires she had to render him entirely happy, so soon as the conjuncture of Affairs would permit the Emperour to publish his inclinations: Not but that he was yet troubled at the corrivalship of *Euchere*, and power of *Stilicon*, which might well somewhat obscure him, since it was formidable to the Emperour himself; but being assured of the
affection

affection of *Placidia*, and that of *Honorius*, he suffered with less disquiet than impatience which his love made him resent, and attended the compleating his felicity, with an entire resignation to the will of *Placidia*.

Honorius had scarce begun to taste the sweetness of that repose which the peace he had concluded with *Alaric* gave him, when from all sides there arrived news which infinitely perplexed him, and cut off the hopes of peace from all those who most earnestly desir'd it. 'Twas first reported that *Constantine* the Son of *Aldroet* King of *Britania Armorica*, having been sent by his Father into Great Britain, anciently called *Albion*, the conquest of which had cost so much Roman blood, had by his valour rendred himself so considerable to the people of that stately Island, that they had chosen him for their King; and he not contenting himself with those bounds which the Sea had given to his Dominions, had caused himself to be proclaimed Emperor, and with a mighty Army was ranging amongst the *Gauls*. To this, they added for many particulars of the valour of this Prince, his excellent Conduct, and great experience in War, that such an Enemy could not but be formidable both to the Emperor and Empire.

Honorius was beginning to raise Forces to oppose him; and advising about it with *Stilicon* and my Master, when there came other news to *Rome*, the cause of greater trouble and changes. There was at first a dull report, that at the entrance into *Gallia*, there had happened a great fight between the Armies of *Alaric* and the *Romans*: sometime after it was said that the *Romans* had been cut in pieces by the *Visigoths*, without knowing the cause of renewing the War; but in the end there arrived some *Visigoths* at *Rome*, who had charge from *Alaric* to demand a particular audience from the Emperor, make their complaints, and inform him the truth of those things, of which he was yet ignorant.

Honorius, though opposed by *Stilicon*, comply'd with their desires: and after they had shewn their Charges, and deliver'd the Letters of *Alaric* full of complaints and bloody reproaches, they related, that at the same time that *Autalph* and *Wallia* departed from *Rome*, *Stilicon* had with diligence dispatched Messengers to him who commanded the Army he had left at *Ravenna*, who was a Jew both by Nation and Religion, named *Saulus*, a hardy and valiant Man, and whom *Stilicon* for those reasons had raised from degree to degree, unto the height he now possessed, as a man in whom he had an entire confidence. That by those Messengers, and by many Letters which they shewed the Emperor, he had given him command, but a command accompanied with great promises, to follow the Army of *Alaric*, when they advanc'd to march into *Gallia*, and seek occasion to fight them, or at least to begin again the War, and break that peace which had been concluded. That *Saulus* obeying punctually *Stilicon's* injunctions, parted some few days before *Alaric* decamp'd; and marching by those ways which were best known to him, just at the entrance in to the *Gauls* (without *Alaric's* having the least suspicion of his march, by the belief he had of the occasion the *Romans* had of an Army to oppose their Enemies in *Gallia*) he had placed his whole Forces at a Post by which the *Goths* must of necessity pass: And while *Alaric* and his Troops marched without any suspicion, and in a manner out of any war-like Order, the perfidious *Saulus*, had charg'd them with so much violence, that he soon made a terrible slaughter. That King *Alaric* himself, and the Prince his Brother, were both dangerously wounded at the beginning of the encounter; and that by their misfortune the *Visigoths* were reduced to such extremity, that they were scarce able to make resistance: when Prince *Wallia* having ralli'd the most valiant with an admirable diligence, came to the succour of the rest, who encourag'd by his valour, in the end put the Battel into such a posture, that the almost-defeated *Visigoths*, against all appearance, by the effects of an admirable courage, changed the face of the Combat, and gained an entire Victory. That so cruel a treachery had in such sort incens'd the Souldiers, that they scarce left alive one of their Enemies: That *Saulus* their Captain being slain among them, they found about him Letters of *Stilicon's*, which discover'd his whole Plot. That King *Alaric* oblig'd for his safety, and this fair Victory, to the Valour of *Wallia*, lay wounded in a little Village near the place of the Battle; and from whence he had sent them to know the reason of this unworthy treachery, and to protest, that if such a satisfaction were not made as the greatness of the Injury did merit, he would with Fire and Sword destroy all *Italy*. In sum, they gave the Emperor the Letters, which they had taken in the pockets of *Saulus*, which *Honorius* soon knew to be the hand-writing of *Stilicon*; and in which he had not only given *Saulus* order to attack the *Visigoths*, but to act many other things, which discovered clearly the intentions of *Stilicon*, and particularly a short Letter, of which the substance was this.

Stilicon to Saulus

Fight in what manner soever you can: It is not so important for us to overcome, as to renew the War, and hinder a peace so contrary to our intentions. Yet I could wish the defeat of Alaric, and the Princes of his House, because they desire not War with us; which perhaps their Successors may more willingly incline to. Constantine is upon the point to enter amongst the Gauls; Gunderic returns to Spain, and Pharamond will ere long have passed the Rhine: We have too long been without War, which stops and interrupts the course of our designs. The Alliance we have made with the Huns, shall if possible endure but a short time; nor shall much time be spent e're the Empire be full of troubles, to give place to the execution of our thoughts. You may judge of the part you have in our Fortune; for Stilicon and Euchere can never forget what you shall contribute.

By the reading of these words, and by the discourse of the *Visigoths*, the Emperour entirely knew the designs of *Stilicon*; and finding them agree with the suspicion he already had of him, he began to consult with himself, how to assure himself against such an Enemy, and how to revenge himself of his perfidiousness: and having manifested to the *Visigoths*, the displeasure he had for the treachery which was acted towards them, for which the Actors had been sufficiently punish'd, since they all perish'd; he promised that he would do them such reason, that their King should confess himself to be satisfied; only entreating them to dissemble, and not make too publique a demonstration of their resentment.

Honorius now resolv'd, though with a great deal of reluctancy, upon the death of *Stilicon*, but his disposition being naturally tender, 'twas rather his fear that carried him to this resolution, out of the dread he had of a person whose power made him doubt his own safety, than any inclination to cruelty; nor was it for a disposition like his, a small enterprise to punish such a man as *Stilicon*; who had at his devotion not only the Governours of most places, but the greatest, and greatest part of the Officers of the Armies: and the Emperour feared with reason, lest if he had any knowledge of his design, he would put himself in a condition to hinder the execution of it, and raise yet greater troubles in the Empire. The oldest of his Counsellors, when he demanded their advice, told him, that there could be no mean in that action: that he ought to oppress *Stilicon* before he gave him leisure to defend himself, or so much as to suspect a design against him; not doubting but that if time should be given him to retire, he would be sufficiently powerful, both in Men, Cities and Money, to begin a War, of which the success would be doubtful.

By their discourse the Emperour was fortified in his resolution, and now thought of nothing but the means to execute it: and to this purpose, after having examin'd his thoughts, what persons he ought to employ, as well for this execution as those events might follow it; he fixed his mind upon *Constance*, as upon the most hardy, most powerful, and most affectionate to his interests, of all those whom he durst confide in; besides that he believ'd him particularly concern'd in *Stilicon's* fall, as against a person who had lately declared himself his Enemy, and who notwithstanding their apparent reconciliation, might probably trouble him in all his designs, and particularly in that he had for *Placidia*. He therefore the same day sent for him, and retiring only with him into his Clofset, having made a preamble to the discourse he had to make him, with all sorts of Careffes, and testimonies of his affection; he related at large, all he had understood from the Envoys of *Alarie*, and shew'd him the Letters of *Stilicon*, by the sight of which my Master could no longer doubt of his infidelity, nor find reasons to justify him, judging clearly of his design, both by his Writings and proceeding.

But when the Emperour, having finish'd his complaints, and declar'd the design he had to put *Stilicon* to death, told him that he had cast his eyes upon him, as upon the most faithful of his Friends, the most couragious and powerful of all the *Romans*, and him who ought most desire the death of a man, who was his continual opposer; and in the end conjur'd him by all the affection he had promised him, and by all he bore *Placidia*, to execute his will: *Constance* taking him by the hand, and kissing it with a behaviour full of love and respect. My Sovereign (said he) my life is yours, and I should be the most ignoble and most ingrateful of all men, should I not be always ready to sacrifice it for your service: for as you have permitted me to hope from your goodness a price which ought to carry me willingly to any thing may merit it, so I shall be always ready to serve you to the last drop of my blood, and with joy shall I spend it all for a Prince who hath conferred on me this never too highly to be valued favour. But Sir, if I may yet merit any thing from your goodness, permit me to tell

tell you, that you have not, it may be, a Subject more capable to oppose the noxious designs of Stilicon than my self, that is, in ways conformable to my courage, and those employments you have honour'd me with: and if Stilicon be to be fought with either one to one, or in the head of your Armies, to destroy him, with all those that favour him; no man can do it better than Constance: but to be his Executioner in those ways which you think best to dispatch him, you cannot in the whole extent of your whole Empire find a man so improper as my self. I need not alledge to your Majesty that I bare my first Arms under him, and that I cannot with honour draw that Sword against his life, which I first drew under his command: This reason is not sufficient for me to dispense with the obedience I owe to your will; but certainly, Sir, you would be ill served by me in such an enterprize, for I know so well my own heart, that I dare tell you, that in any design I undertake, the least objects of pity are capable to disturb me, and then the success, without doubt, will not answer your intentions. But as I have boasted my self capable to serve you in other ways, so there are persons less able than my self in them, but more fit in those which you purpose. Give to every one an employment agreeable to his inclination and capacity; and whilst I assure for your service the affections of the Romans, and the fidelity of the Governours of Cities, and Officers of the Army, and prepare all things for the sequels which such an affair may draw with it; Give Heraclian, or Maximine, or other such men as them, the Commission, of which they will acquit themselves much better than I shall understand to do, especially if you engage them by any great interest. It is not (added he a little after, seeing the Emperour listen peaceably unto him) but that if I durst speak in an affair of so much consequence, I should take the liberty to tell my Emperour, that this guilty Stilicon is still the same Stilicon, whom you so far honor'd as to espouse his Daughter, and who at other times by many great and important actions, hath well serv'd both his Emperour and the Empire, and whom if your Majesty would, you might assure your self of, without dipping your hands in the blood of one you have called Father; and so preserve advantageously that reputation of clemency, which you have so well acquir'd, and avoid those troublesome thoughts, which a bloody execution must bring to your memory: for in sum, Sir, I cannot refrain from telling you, that how criminal soever he is, the fortune of such a man makes me compassionate him; and willingly would I spare some of my blood to save his life, so that his safety might not cloud your repose, or the Empires quiet.

But what means can there be found (replied the Emperour) to assure us against his designs, without putting him to death? For I avow to you, that it is with an infinite reluctancy, and by a necessity that himself hath imposed upon me, that I took up this resolution. You may cause him to be arrested (repl'd Constance) and imprison him in the Hippodrome the rest of his dayes; and as I know the number of his enemies to be much greater than that of his Friends, so I can assure you, that few will embrace his party when he is depriv'd of liberty. The way you talk of is very uncertain (repl'd the Emperour) and I believe it will be very difficult to arrest Stilicon, and his Son, who must be arrested with him, without killing them: you see what a great number of persons accompany them, who will perhaps be so hardy as to put themselves in his defence. In this case (replied Constance) none can accuse you of the death of Stilicon, nor can any other but himself be guilty of it, since he draws it by his resistance.

With these words, and many others which he added, my Master inclined the Emperour only to cause Stilicon and his Son to be arrested, though many have believed otherwise; and the same day he gave order to Heraclian, who mortally hated Stilicon, and had redoubled his hatred against Eucherus, for the fall with which he broke his arm: he having a soul much different from that of Constance, received it with joy, and executed it with sufficient cruelty, as all the World knows. You have without doubt understood, Sir, the particulars of an Adventure known to the whole World, and that belief shall hinder me from repeating it to you, and suffer me to tell you in few words that Heraclian having received Orders to take Stilicon and his Son, alive or dead, accompanied with the Pretorian Bands, he went to his House, and met him coming forth thence, together with his Wife and Son, and a great number of persons of his Train; nor did he only arrest them as he had Order from the Emperour, but under some appearance of resistance which some of his made shew of, he slew Stilicon, and his Son Euchere; and the Princess Serena, born of the blood of Emperours, throwing her self between her Husband and Son, received two mortal blows, of which she dyed the same day.

Thus fell Stilicon, a man without doubt endowed with great and noble qualities, and who for his Heroick Actions, was raised by the Romans to the highest Dignities, and had merited not only to be the Father-in-law of his Emperour; but to have the absolute Government of the whole Empire. Policy and Valour seem'd in him weaved together, to make him both a great Politician, and a great Captain; and he might without doubt, have merit-

ted a chief place among the ancient Hero's, if the glory of his life had not been blasted by his last unworthy intentions. His Son being slain with him, there scarce remained a person of his Family: for being by extract a *Vandal*, he had few kindred at *Rome*; so that no trouble followed his death: for as well for these reasons, as by the diligence of *Constance*, and the Authority he had over the Men of War, all things remained in that peaceable condition after this action, as if no such thing had arriv'd.

The Emperour testified himself not well satisfied with the severity of *Heraclian*, and was pleas'd himself to shed some tears at the death of *Stilicon's* Lady; but he soon after comforted himself, as well for the belief he had to have procured an entire repose by this execution, as for the satisfaction he had to see that it was not disapprov'd by any person; and that both *Rome*, the Empire, and the whole world judg'd *Stilicon* to have been justly punish'd. As for *Constance*, though he had little reason to love *Stilicon*, and in probability ought not to be troubled at the death of a Rival like *Euchere*, who by the Authority of his Father, might have very much troubled him: Yet it is most certain, he was touch'd with so much pity for their misfortune, that he could not for many days forget the trouble it caus'd; so that amongst the very friends of *Stilicon*, there were few that manifested so great sorrow. The excellencies of *Placidia's* nature made her sensible of the misfortunes of this house, and deplore with excessive tears the death of *Serenas*; and though she never had other than aversion for *Euchere*, yet she could not hear the relation of his death without some marks of compassion.

By the death of *Stilicon*, *Honorius* regain'd his Authority, but it rendred little repose to the Empire: for were it by the devices of *Stilicon* which had given subject to the *Barbarians* to assault the Empire on all sides, or by the will of Heaven, to abate the proud power of a Sov'raignty continued for so many ages: they began hardly to taste the change which the death of that great Favourite had wrought both in the Court, and in affairs, when it was understood at *Rome*, that the *Gauls*, *Spain*, *Germany*, and many other Provinces of the Empire were threatn'd to be attack'd more fiercely than ever, by the *Vandals*, *Franks*, *Britains*, *Burgundians*, and many other Nations. There ran likewise a Report that *Alaric* notwithstanding the satisfaction that the Emperour had given him, did yet meditate something against *Italy*, and seem'd not contented with the League he had made with *Honorius*.

But that which caus'd the greatest dread to the Emperour and the *Romans*, was the entrance of *Constantine* King of Great Britain amongst the *Gaules*, and the progress he had made there: for hardly was it understood that he was entred, but that news was seconded with a relation how he had cut in pieces all the Forces which oppos'd his March, and that by the terrour of his Arms he had render'd himself Master of that Country, which is particularly call'd the Province of the *Romans*, unto the great City of *Arles*, before the which he was encamp'd, and hop'd in few days to take it: To this discourse was added wonderful praises of the valour and experience of *Constantine*, whom they compar'd to the most Heroick personages of the world, and the greatest Captains of past Ages, and of whom they spoke as the most formidable Enemy the *Romans* had since the time of *Hannibal*.

Whatever inclination *Constance* had for the War, or for the occasions to acquire glory, in a time when no person could dispute with him the chief employments; yet he could not but sigh with grief to think he should by these troubles be banish'd from his sweet hopes, not believing he could demand their accomplishments with honour, whilst he was forc'd to go fight in this present necessity of the Empire; he therefore delay'd not to resolve himself, though he was mortally afflicted; and not only counsell'd the Emperour what he should do to defend himself against such a world of Enemies, but demand'd of him the command of the Army to oppose *Constantine*, judging this Expedition the most important, and considering the glory that he might yet acquire against an enemy whose reputation was so great, and against a man to whom many Nations had already given the Title of Emperour.

Honorius, with a thousand praises of his Generosity, which made him prefer the service of his Prince and Country before so dear an interest as his love, consented to his demand. Protesting to him, at his return from this Expedition, he would not only give him *Placidia*, but by marks more considerable than the gift of *Placidia*, testify the esteem and the affection he had for him, *Constance* took this discourse for the greatest promise could be made him, not believing that it was in the power of the Emperour, nor any man breathing, to bestow on him a greater or more considerable gift than that of *Placidia*. Thus by the hopes to possess her, he endeavour'd to moderate the grief which he had to part from her,

and prepar'd himself for his Expedition with all diligence requisite in so urging a necessity. In few days all things were put in a condition fit for his departure; and the Forces he was to command having received Orders to joyn and embody themselves, the day of his departure came.

The Princess, who dissembled no longer the affection which she had for him, knowing it to be approv'd both by the Emperour, and all the world, all the time which preceded it had manifested sufficient sadness; and when he took leave of her, she abandoned her self so to grief for a person of his Honour and Courage, that at the sight of it, *Constance* was astonish'd, and felt his to redouble. She testified the resentment which she had by words which fully discover'd it, and persisted in her sorrow after an extraordinary manner, when interrupting her; *I am too much oblig'd to your goodness* (said he) *for the part you take in my misfortune; for in brief, mangre the glory which I may possibly acquire, I must call that misfortune which separates me from you; yet this notice which you take thereof, gives me a sweet consolation, by making me see that I am happy above my merit, and above my hopes; and though I never parted from Rome with those hopes as now accompany me in this expedition, and that I may well suppose at my return, I shall be the most happy among men; I have something in my heart which hinders me from being so sensible of this joy as I ought, and which makes me fear some extraordinary change in my fortune. I know not* (replied the Princess) *how you come to have these predictions, but I confess to you that I cannot overcome the sadness which I have for your departure, whatever opposition I make against it; and if I could, without wounding your reputation, hinder your expedition, I should do it with all my heart; not but that I judge well, I may be more afflicted at this last parting, than at others you have made, as well because the first were necessary for your glory, and your design, as because you truly are, and ought to be more dear to me now, than then; but though by these reasons I excuse a part of my grief, yet I vow to you I feel something so little common, that I cannot but draw from thence evil presages. Endeavour you, if it be possible, to prevent the effects; and as you have no occasion longer to fight for the purchase of honour, but only to preserve what you have acquir'd, and that no person disputes it with you, seek not danger without necessity, but consider that a great Captain, on whose person relies the whole fortune of the Empire, ought not to expose himself like a young Adventurer. Remember likewise that this *Placidia*, who in your first Combates had no reason to take that concern in your life, which she now does, hath some part in you, if all that you would persuade her is true; and that you ought to preserve your self for her, when you would not do it for your self.*

Constance at these obliging words bowing down his head, and fixing his lips upon one of the Princesses fair hands, which was the greatest favour his services, or the Emperours concurrence could yet obtain for him; *I am asham'd* (said he) *at the favour you do me; and this life which you too much honour by the honour which you give it, is not worthy of the interest you take in its preservation. I have an infinite greater resentment than I can express; but you shall permit me to tell you, if you please, that it is not on that side Fortune threatens me; and that if I had nothing but death to fear, especially in these occasions, where it is so familiar, my heart would not be at all troubled. I hope to Heaven, I shall return to see you, and return Conquerour of the Enemies of the Empire; but I can scarce establish in my spirit the hopes of that sole happiness I can desire, though according to all appearances, I never had more reason, since your fair lips, and those of the Emperour, have assured it me. As you fear of our side* (added the Princess) *so I fear of yours; and if you can assure me from the fear which I have of your life, I will assure you from that you have of my affection; and I promise you more solemnly than I have hitherto done, that at your return you shall find *Placidia*, as faithful and affectionate as you can desire. Receive* (continued she, presenting him her hand) *the word which I give you, and be assured that by my own will, I will never be to any, but to *Constance*.*

All my Masters grief could not hinder him from being sensible of some joy at this discourse of *Placidia's*; and at the same time the Emperour entring the Chamber with the Princess *Theodolinda*, and many other personages; *Constance* for respect sake, retiring from *Placidia*, and approaching towards him, and beholding him with a behaviour which denoted something extraordinary; *My Lord* (said he) *I promise you that I will overcome your Enemies, and powerfully contribute to the repose of the Empire; but remember if you please, that you have promis'd me *Placidia*. As she is a possession too great for me, so I shall never overcome the fear I have to lose her; and now in departing from her, I can with difficulty preserve the hopes you have given me: not that I distrust the word of my Sovereign, I believe it inviolable, but I distrust that same Fortune which hitherto hath so well treated me; and going now upon your service, I conjure you Sir, to preserve me *Placidia*. Yes* (said the Empe-

your) *Yes, Constance I will preserve her as dearly as my own life ; and you may certainly be assur'd of the promise I have made you before gods and men, that by my consent, Placidia shall never be any's but yours.*

At these words, *Constance* endeavour'd to dispel his sadness ; and some time after he had taken leave of the Emperour and the Princess, he bid adieu likewise to *Theodolinda*, who had an infinite friendship and esteem for him ; to *Cleomira*, and to many other considerable persons, who interest'd themselves in his Fortunes ; and particularly to *Virginia*, to whom he bore a most transcendent respect, which was encreas'd by the esteem he had for her, in regard that for the love of *Placidia*, she had refused to marry with the principal amongst the *Romans*, and had fully resolv'd to yoke her self to the fortunes of the Princess.

The most considerable persons of the Court would follow my Master to this War : *Artabure* march'd with the chiefest in employment ; the young *Castinus*, *Anaxilla*, *Arrobinde*, and many others, amongst whom was *Taxander*, a Prince of great merit, who though Sovereign of a fair Monarchy, chose to serve under him, and would begin his first proof in War, under a man who at the age of twenty seven years had already surpass'd the reputation of the most ancient, and most experienced Captains. With this fair Troop, *Constance* parted from *Rome*, accompanied with the Vows of all the people, to whom he was infinitely dear for his virtue : and having joyn'd his Forces, and rendezvouz'd that body which was to compose our Army, we march'd towards the *Gauls*, and particularly towards the Province of the *Romans*, in which *Constantine* had already made so great progress, and where he at present besieg'd the strong City of *Arles*.

The Events of this War having been so important, that they could not but come to the knowledge of all *Europe*, and particularly of a Prince interest'd like your Majesty in the *Roman* affairs, I shall endeavour to be succinct, and yet speak as much as I ought, that I may not be silent of my Masters greatest Actions. We had made but a few days advance, when we understood that *Constantine* had taken *Arles*, and having plac'd in it a strong Garrison, was gone to besiege the proud City of the *Massilians*. This advice made us hasten our march, though *Constance* hoped that *Massilia* might stop the Enemies proceeding till our arrival. As this occasion was more important than all the preceding, and the Enemy more formidable than any that *Constance* had hitherto overcome ; so his Army was greater, and more numerous than any he had commanded : for when we entred amongst the *Gauls*, it was compos'd of more than fifteen thousand Horse, and sixty thousand Foot-men. With this potent Force we advanc'd by great marches ; and passing by the Country of the *Alexandrians* and *Lucernois*, we approach'd in the end to the Province of the *Romans* ; but by reason that *Constantine* had broken the Bridges in several places, our march was more tedious than *Constance* either expected or desired ; and we were forced to give time to *Constantine* to render himself master of the proud City of the *Massilians*, which having besieg'd by Land and Sea with an extraordinary vigour, he had in few days carry'd by an absolute Force, against the opinion of the whole world, and against all evident appearances.

Constance knowing by these actions what man he had to deal with, thought he ought not to neglect any thing which experience had taught him ; and *Constantine*, to whom the reputation of *Constance* was not unknown, thinking himself oblig'd to employ all his judgment to preserve against so great a man what he had already gain'd, parted from *Massilia* to come and encounter us ; and in the mean time sent before several small bodies to dispute the passages, and to perplex and impeach us upon all opportunities possible. In effect, they gave us an infinite trouble, and it was in many combats with these Troops that *Artabure* did nobly augment the general opinion which was before had of his Valour, and that the Prince *Taxander* and *Castinus* began to make themselves known by many signal actions. 'Twas at this time that those two brave men which now attend your Majesty, and which yesterday knew my Master, and made you know him, having receiv'd some injury from *Constantine's* party, presented themselves to *Constance*, and during the whole time we were in *Gallia*, fought under our Banners.

In summ, notwithstanding the endeavours and hindrances of our Enemies, we at last entred into *Provence*, which they had almost entirely reduc'd to their obedience : but as neither of the two Chieftains could despise the other, and knew of what consequence the success of a Battel would prove, they would not give it but upon good grounds ; and to that purpose fought daily all the advantages which the knowledge they had in this martial mystery might instruct them to find out ; hereupon several Skirmishes happen'd, wherein Fortune was various, but still much blood was shed. In one of these, the two Generals encountered each other with their Swords in their hands at the head of some Cavalry ; and after

after having furiously run together, they exchang'd several blows, with which both were wounded: but the coming in of their Troops permitted them not to finish their Combat, though they had a great desire, and parted mutually perswaded of each others Valour.

In the mean time, as they had a reciprocal esteem, and were both highly generous; they made war with a noble civility upon all occasions that were offer'd, oftentimes sending back prisoners without Ransome, and treating in all things like men truly great and magnanimous. Some months were pass'd before *Constance* could find such an occasion as he desired, to give battle; but in the end, being advertis'd that *Jovian* who commanded over a part of the *Gauls* for the Emperour, had taken *Constantine's* part, and was levying Soldiers in those Countries that were at his devotion, to come and joyn himself with him, and that in all probability he might in a very short time arrive with a considerable Army; he judg'd it not best to attend him, and permit himself to be encompass'd by two potent Armies, since that of *Constantine* alone was at least as numerous as his, and in a condition to dispute the Victory: he believed now that these expectations of *Jovian* had been the cause of *Constantine's* endeavouring to shun the Combat, and doubted not but that without farther delay he ought to constrain him to come to a general Battle; he therefore sought all means possible: and *Constantine*, who naturally scorn'd to flee fighting, and acted not all he might have done to evade it, because in effect he found himself in an estate to fight any Army which was neither stronger nor better disciplin'd than his, and with an enemy, to whom the event of the fight must be of more hazard than to him:

Mov'd by these reasons, or others unknown to us, he oppos'd himself little to the design of *Constance*, neither disput'd the passage of a River, by which we must of necessity get at him, and where he might have stopp'd and fought us at an advantage. 'Tis most true, that *Constance* knowing how dangerous it was too precipitately to divide his strength before an enemies Army, had pass'd over a party of his by night; and those which in the morning found themselves on the other side the River, were strong enough to defend themselves against such Troops as *Constantine* might send to attacque them, and give time to the rest to pass over with more leisure: *Constantine* was blamed that he did not endeavour to defend this passage; but perhaps not thinking that *Constance* desired so soon to come to battle, he had neglected that precaution, which might have hindered him: however it was, the two Armies faced each other without any obstacle which might hinder them from joyning, in a great Plain adjacent to the City; and after having began by some Skirmishes, they at length came to a general Field.

The two great Captains, both of the one and the other party, did all that could be hop'd from their valour and excellent conduct: and many valiant personages who fought under them in different employments, signaliz'd themselves by an incredible number of noble actions: in short, all the Soldiers fought so courageously, both on the one and the other side, that night shut in before victory had declar'd her self for either, though the Plain was all cover'd with dead bodies floating in blood. The two Armies stood all that night in the same field, where they had so eagerly contended; the two valiant Generals employing themselves wholly in acquitting their charges, and in seeking those advantages, which might yield a happy success to that Battle, the beginnings of which had been so horrible and doubtful.

No sooner did the day appear, but at the sound of the Trumpets, the Fight was renew'd: *Artabure* commanded the right Wing of our Army; *Constance* having placed himself in the head of the left, that he might be oppos'd to *Constantine* whom he had observ'd the day before, to fight in the right of his. *Taxander* and *Constance* commanded our Cavalry, and both the one and the other in that memorable day acquir'd a worthy reputation: It will be difficult for me, to recount to you those many famous deeds by which my Master this day made his valour and his skill in War deservedly admir'd: but I must needs avow, that *Constantine* forgot not any thing which might be expected from the most valiant men and greatest Captains. The Victory was disput'd with a resolution equal to that of the preceding day; and we oftentimes beheld our selves in a condition that might rather make us fear than hope: but in the end, *Constance*, irritated with so long a resistance, after having had two horses slain under him, and two tired with the extraordinary travel he made them suffer; running through all the Ranks, and shewing himself to the Soldiers, he encourag'd them in such a manner, by his speech, by his action, and by his example; and did so seasonably succour those whom he saw worsted, that in the end his enemies began to quit the field, and by little and little, disorder and fear increas'd, they abandon'd that Victory, which they had so valiantly disput'd.

'Twas in fine, as entire to us as we could desire: for the enemy having left more than fifty thousand dead upon the place, the rest were in such fort scatter'd, that *Constantine* could very difficultly rally a small number, at the head of which he made an admirable retreat to the City of *Arles*, which he had taken some time before, and where he intended to stay, out of the confidence he had of the succours which *Jovian* had promis'd him. This Victory was great and advantageous, but it cost us twenty thousand lives. And always when *Constance* hath spoken of it, he hath been us'd to say, that the *Romans* in this Battel had truly vanquish'd the *Britains*, but that *Constance* had not overcome *Constantine*; and that by the experience of fighting him hand to hand, as he had done that day, he durst affirm that he had been invincible, had he but commanded men as valiant as the *Romans*, or if Fortune had been less contrary to him.

This knowledge he had of his enemy, made him judge that the whole War consisted in his sole person; and having given charge to *Artabure* to beat up and down the Plain, and not permit the vanquish'd to rally, and form such a body as might obstruct his designs; he without delay laid siege to the City of *Arles*, whither *Constantine* was retir'd. The King of the *Britains* was astonish'd at this diligence of his enemy; and though his courage was not at all lessen'd by the loss of this Battle, he repented his having inclos'd himself in that manner; judging well that *Constance* would not give *Jovian* time to come and succour him; besides a belief he had that *Jovian*, after having heard of his defeat, would not rashly engage the victorious Army. Things fell as he had fore-judged: for *Constance* finding the City he attack'd unfurnish'd with many things necessary for defence, and weaken'd in several places, by the breaches which *Constantine* had made when he besieged it, and which they had no time to repair, he press'd it in such fort, and gave so many vigorous assaults, that in few days *Constantine* lost all hopes to defend it, and resolv'd rather to trust his safety to his Sword, than to the Walls of the City: and to this purpose, one day when *Constance* caus'd an assault to be given, after having for one part of the day defended the Walls with an admirable valour, and constrain'd ours to retire with sufficient loss, in all places where he encounter'd them, on a sudden, whether it were that the present occasion inspir'd him with that resolution, or whether he had taken that resolution before he mounted on horseback, with a number of the most valiant and best armed he had with him, causing a Gate to be opened, when it was least expected, he threw himself among the first of our Troops that he found in his passage, resolving to lose his life among the *Roman* Swords, or open himself a way through our Army.

This unexpected sally caus'd so much fear in the first whom he encountred, that he had no great difficulty to rout them; and if the heat of the Combat had not made him forget the care of his safety, he might without doubt have pass'd through the disorder he had caus'd: but being chafed by some light wound he had, and encourag'd by the first success which he had, aspiring at something more than the retreat, he engag'd himself farther than he ought in prudence to have done, or than himself had resolv'd; giving time to the Prince *Taxander* to come with Brigades of Cavalry, to the assistance of those whom he had attack'd: after those succours, there came likewise more; so that in the end *Constantine* found himself encompass'd with his, a good part of whom he saw slain before him, and had himself his Horse killed under him; and having acted things worthy his prodigious valour, and to speak truth rais'd up a rampart of dead bodies about him, he obstinately determin'd rather to lose his life, than receive it from his enemy: when his good fortune led *Constance* into the same place, whither the confusion of the sally had spur'd him, and where understanding the danger he was in, he made a lane through his own men to come up to him; and seeing him on foot all covered with blood, and yet in that condition making the most hardy fear his approaches, he commanded his men to retire, with so much authority, that there was not one, but at the same instant obeyed him.

His valiant enemy having time to breath and turn his eyes on all sides, knew him by several marks, but particularly by this action; and seeing that he was engag'd to him for his life, he would no longer dispute it with him, but presenting him his Sword; *If you be Constance* (said he) *I render my self to you, nor can I disdain to yield to the Fortune and valour of so great a man.* *Constance* at the same time alighting, and receiving the Sword which he presented him; *As Lieutenant of the Emperor* (said he) *I receive the Sword you yield to him; but as a man that knows how to render what he owes to so noble a Prince as you. I give you the Sword of Constance.* And at these words, taking his Sword from his side which by fortune was not the same he received of *Placidia*, he placed it at that of *Constantine*, who received this civility with the best grace in the world, and with all the marks of a true and noble courage.

Constance

Constance at the same time having caus'd a fair Horse to be given him, and others to such of his train as wanted: he led him to his Tents riding by his side, and telling him all those things which he believ'd seasonable to comfort him in his misfortunes. In brief, he treated him in as noble a manner, as his best friends, in his and their greatest prosperity could have done: The next morning, the City being surrendred, he conducted him thither, judging it more commodious than the Camp; gave him the fairest apartment, and caus'd him to be serv'd like a great King, taking nothing from him but the name of *Roman* Emperour, which his Subjects had given him: and in truth, all the civility he render'd him, did seem to be truly due; for I believ'd at the sight of him, never to have seen any personage of a nobler aspect than he, and whose whole person would sooner create an affection and respect together. Nor was his person only excellent, or he only a great and valiant Captain; but these qualities accompanied with all those which might render a Prince accomplish'd, and with a politeness of spirit, hard to be found in those of his Nation: he was enrich'd with as much sweetness in his conversation, as fierceness in fight, and with all that might render a man amiable both to one and the other sex. His age was little different from that of *Constance*, and the conformity of their minds and virtuous inclinations, gave them a mutual esteem.

Constance having taken his Parol, took from him all sorts of Guards, and forgot no manner of civility or good treatment could possibly be made; and *Constantine* receiv'd them with a noble acknowledgment, and infinite marks of affection to him that render'd them, testifying with much earnestness how much he was sensible of them: but in few days he could not dissemble that grief which perplexed him, which by little and little augmented in such manner, that in the end he began to change his colour; which *Constance* perceived with an affectionate sorrow, praying him in terms full of kindness to inform him the cause, protesting that he would do all things possible either to comfort or serve him, not being able to imagine that change of Fortune could produce such a change on a spirit like his, especially since he had promis'd him all civil usage from the Emperour, and durst hope his future condition might be as happy as his past; and in the end, he told him things so obliging, that the Captive King being touch'd with his generosity, having intreated a patient audience, open'd himself entirely to him, and gave him the recital of his whole life, the particulars of which are not yet come to my knowledge, nor are at all necessary to that of the life of my Master. *Constance* hearken'd to the Heroick adventures of *Constantine* with admiration; and when he saw it was time to give him that consolation that was necessary for him.

Generous Prince (said he) *the interest I take in those great things which you have made me understand, is such, that it will make me perhaps forget one part of my duty, to serve you as I desire. You know that I am Lieutenant and subject to Honorius, whose prisoner you are, so that I cannot dispose of your liberty without his consent, or running a hazard to incur his indignation: but because his goodness is well known to me, and that liberty is necessary for you, I will hazard all things rather than render miserable a Prince of such merit; and out of the hopes I have that the Emperour will pardon me, I declare you to be free, and give you power to retire when you please. If the Emperour condemns my proceeding, I shall present him my head for satisfaction; but if he approves it, as I hope he will, I demand no other conditions from you, than that you no more invade the Lands of the Empire, nor suffer more the name of Emperour, which you have receiv'd, as I understand by the recital of your life, against your own will, and which is not at all more glorious to you than the Title which your illustrious birth and great actions have given you.*

Constantine admir'd the generous demeanour of *Constance*; but not being willing to abuse his generosity by putting him in danger to provoke the Emperour, and seeing himself forced to accept it, by the resolution which *Constance* had testified, he did it with this condition, that *Constance* should promise to write to him the truth, whether the Emperour were well satisfied with his disposal of his liberty; protesting, that in case he were not, he would come and submit himself, as soon as he heard of it, without finding the excuse of any necessities that might impede him. 'Twas upon these conditions that he accepted the liberty which *Constance* gave him; and having testified those acknowledgments a soul great like his could imagine, and promis'd to return to demand the continuation of his friendship, as soon as his affairs would permit him; he parted from *Arles* with the Convoy which *Constance* had given him, leaving us all full of the esteem we had conceiv'd for his great qualities.

Scarce was *Constantine* gone, when we understood that *Jovian* had his Army on foot, and had himself taken the name of Emperour. *Constance* having nothing which might

defer his marching against him, parted from *Arles* with thoughts much different from those which possess'd him when he went to the war against *Constantine*, and with a confidence full of disdain of his enemy; which led him against him as to an assured enemy: and truly the effects did not at all falsifie his hopes: but to abridge the recital of this War, I will only tell you, that having with a swift march pass'd through the Country of the *Gaballes*, we encountred *Jovian* among the *Vivariens*; who knowing that we had lost a great part of our men in the Combat against *Constantine*, refused not at all to fight, but presented us battel; but it proved a bloody one, both to his party and himself: for he was slain, and almost his whole Army cut off by so general a defeat, that its parallel hath scarce ever been seen.

But this Victory, though so entire, cost us more than all the others we ever gaincd: for my Master being wounded in the Arm with an Arrow, the steel was found to be impositon'd, and the victorious *Constance* not only reduced to the extremity of his life, but after we had several times despaired of it, by reason of the dire effects of that cruel poison, he staid a whole year in the City of the *Tediosages*, whither we caused him to be carried, not only without recovering his health, but without leaving us at the end of the year any hopes of his safety. From this misfortune proceeded all the rest which have rendred his life miserable: For in the time that he strugled and disputed with death, happened the ruine of my unfortunate Country, and those pityful disorders which have drawn compassion from the whole world, and which *Constance* had been able to hinder, and had hindered without doubt, if this cruel wound had not deprived him not only of the means, but the very knowledge of it, by the diligence we had to conceal from him those miseries, which without doubt had deprived him of the little life he had remaining.

It is fit that I should briefly tell you (though without doubt it is long since come to your knowledge) those sad accidents, which happened in *Italy*, after our departure thence. My Master had had frequent news, and had received several Letters from *Placidia*, fill'd with plentiful marks of her affection, and the share she claim'd in his honour; but after the Battel was gain'd against *Jovian*, he receiv'd no more; which without doubt redoubled the grief he felt for his wound: For in the time that the afflicted *Constance* was as it were lost to all our hopes, we receiv'd the cruel news of the desolation of our Country; and in summ, by many messengers, and by the general report which was spread through all, we understood the entire loss of all *Italy*, and the particular loss of the deplorable *Constance*, who alone in the world was ignorant of it, by the diligence of his attendants, and my self in particular, who resolv'd to rob him of that knowledge, which would have without doubt robb'd him of that poor remainder of his life, seeing he was incapable to remedy those misfortunes. Hear, Sir, what we were advis'd of, which I shall tell you, to pursue the order of my discourse, and not to inform you of those things which are certainly already known to you.

Some time after we had quitted *Italy* with the fairest Troops of the Empire, and that almost all the rest were sent into *Spain* or *Germany*: *Alaric*, who after the defeat of *Saulus*, had by reason of the indisposition of his wounds remained some time to repose himself upon the Frontiers of *Gallia Narbonese*, was no sooner recover'd, but he understood with the death of *Stilicon*, and the departure of my Master, all the rest of the troubles which threatned the Empire: and knowing that all the Forces which could defend it, were dispers'd in so many different places, that *Italy* by their distance, the death of *Stilicon*, and the absence of *Constance*, and many other brave men, who were employed in other expeditions, was left naked and destitute, both of men to fight, and Captains to command; and was in summ, in such an estate, that he could never find a better occasion to render himself Master of that fair Country:

'Twas this intelligence given to *Alaric* (more than the resentment of an injury, for which he had been too well satisfied) together with the sollicitations of his Brother, who provok'd him against the *Romans*, hoping by the war to find those means to conquer *Placidia*, which he could not hope for in peace, that engag'd him to break the League he had made with *Honorius*; to which he wanted no pretences, by reason of the foul play offer'd by *Stilicon's* orders; though he well knew the Emperour was innocent, and that he receiv'd all the satisfaction he could desire: in short, spurr'd on by whatsoever motive, he had no sooner recover'd his health, and understood that *Constance* was far engag'd in the war with *Constantine*, but he departed from the place where his Army was encamped, and re-entring *Italy*, like a declar'd enemy march'd directly to *Rome*, burning and laying waste all the Country as he went, committing those hostile actions which he had not practis'd in other wars with the *Romans*. By misfortune, as I have told you, he found no Leaders,

nor no Forces considerable in *Italy* to oppose him; and having cut in pieces all those that durst make head against him, without finding any obstacle to stop him, he arriv'd at the Gates of *Rome*.

Honorius was departed some time before to retire himself, to *Ravenna*; and because it was believ'd he was led thither by some love, which he would not publish, he had left the Princess *Placidia* at *Rome*, and with her *Theodolinda*, *Cleomira*, and many other illustrious personages of their Sex; but no man of command, nor any Forces to defend them; so that at the arrival of *Alaric*, the *Romans* were in such sort surpris'd, that they had hardly the assurance to shut the Gates, or put themselves into any posture of defence: In the end, necessity forcing them, they effected it in the best manner they could possibly, and this was by the exhortation of the Generous *Placidia*, who endeavour'd to put some order into their disorder, and to defend as long as it was possible their lives and their liberties.

Alaric discreetly judging that by reason of the multitudes of people that were in *Rome*, it would be difficult to render himself Master by force, or at least without loss of a great part of his Army, of whom he stood in need; and being advertis'd that there was but small store of provisions in the City, he resolv'd to starve it; believing with a great deal of appearance, that he might do it with much facility, by stopping all the passages so, that nothing more could be carried in. This was not very hard to effect; and by the orders which he took in few days, there entered nothing more into the City.

Alaric either at the entreaty of *Autalpb*, or by his own motion, sent several messages to the Princess *Placidia*, to tell her, that she, together with the Princesses *Theodolinda*, *Cleomira*, and other persons of their Sex, might have liberty to come forth; exhorting them not to stay in a City, which within few days was destined to utter destruction, promising to treat her with all the respect which was due to her birth and merit. But the Princess foreseeing that *Alaric* solicited her not to go forth, but to put her in the hands of his Brother, as she had sufficient cause to suspect; nor being willing to confide in these *Barbarians*, who had so ill kept their faith in the treaty with *Honorius*, returned answer to the King of the *Visigoths*, *That if the Heavens had resolv'd the destruction of Rome, she should be ready rather to fall in its ruines, than commit her self to the faith of those persons who had so treacherously violated it with a Roman Emperour: That she hop'd for succour from Heavens, and from Honorius (who in truth ought to have given it her) ye if she were deprived of that, she could be content to dye with so many thousands of innocent persons who were envelop'd in the same calamity.*

She not only return'd this Answer, but with an admirable courage; acted what should have been done by *Honorius*; and taking his place upon this occasion, she animated the people both by her words and example to the defence of the City; and diligently endeavour'd to provide for the necessities of the most needy, and to distribute provisions with equality, that all might be equally exempted from that Famine which threaten'd them, and unto which *Alaric* strove to reduce them: Nay, so much generosity and equity had she at this time, that notwithstanding the greatness of her degree, she would not exempt her self from the publick misery, retaining no other provisions for her self, than what she caus'd to be distributed to others, whom she thought to strengthen and fortifie by her example. The Princess *Theodolinda*, to whom they likewise offered a retreat, though she beheld her self in that condition with sufficient fear and grief, yet was so much touch'd with the virtue of *Placidia*, and had vow'd to her so much friendship, that she could not resolve to forsake her; and though often solicited to it by *Placidia* her self, she resolv'd to run the same fortune with her, maugre all the accidents which could happen: It is true, they had some hopes that the Emperour would give them some succour, they did absolutely expect it, but they were deceiv'd in their hopes; for this feeble and fearful Prince, instead of endeavouring to relieve the chief City of his Empire, shut himself up in *Ravenna*, which he caus'd to be well fortified and stor'd with provisions, for fear lest it should be attack'd. Posterity will hardly believe this truth of the Son of the great *Theodosius*, but it is certain, that during all the siege at *Rome* he stayed at *Ravenna*, either busied in those loves whereof he was accused, or in a stupid tranquillity which could have found place in no other breast but his.

Autalpb demanded several times to speak to the Princess *Placidia*, but she constantly refus'd to see the enemy of her Brother and Country; nor would she give this subject of suspicion to *Constance*, whose absence she regretted, and perhaps sometimes complained of, judging with reason that he ought to abandon all things to come to her assistance. She would not have refus'd to have spoken to the Prince *Walia*, whom she both esteem'd for his virtue, and the friendship that was between him and *Constance*; but he appeared not at all in the

siege; and it was reported that he had intreated *Alaric* to dispense with him, boldly telling him, That he could not shew himself as an Enemy against that place where he had so lately been so nobly entertain'd both by the Emperour and all the *Romans*.

In fine, Victuals beginning to want, the Famine in a short time grew so great, that it produc'd the most pitiful effects in the World, and the poor people began to make use of all things for the preservation of their lives. The Horses, the Dogs, and the Catts were eaten; yet in these extremities, and worse, the persuasions of the courageous *Placidia*, did as it were by force withhold the people from surrendring. They came at length to extremities so deplorable, that they will hardly find belief; and the Princess, who would not be exempted, had part in these miseries, as well as the meanest of the people. 'Tis reported that the most loathsome Animals served for nourishment to men; nay, that there were some women who slew their own Infants to preserve their lives with their proper blood. At last, by the will of the angry Heavens, the *Romans* no longer able to support their miseries, one cruel and fatal Night, some of them which guarded the Gates, to deliver themselves from the horrible death which threatned them, treated secretly with *Alaric*, and opened a Gate to several Troops, who at the same time opening a passage for the rest of their Companions on all sides, the whole Army of the Enemies entred.

Scarce did the day appear, but the *Visigoths* were become Masters of the Town; and no sooner were they so, but the Sword, Fire, Pillage, Ravishings, and all other sorts of miseries usual at such times, endeavour'd to make a second *Troy* of this proud City, which had for so many Ages been the *Metropolitan* of the *World*: Blood ran in streams down the Streets, Fire devoured the Houses: The cries of the Women and Children pierced the Heavens; and in all places was to be seen nothing but horror and dreadful desolation. I am overwhelm'd with grief to recount to you the deplorable misery of my Country, in which I was the more concern'd through the misfortune of many persons dear to me, who were expos'd among the rest to utmost miseries: And pardon me, my Lord, if I am oblig'd to abridge this Recital the most I can possibly.

The Princess *Placidia*, and those that were with her, were first adverted of the publick misery, and their own particular, by the noise and horrible cries which resounded in their ears from all sides of the City; and in the end, by the multitudes of miserable people, who hoping to find a safety there, ran towards the Palace. *Placidia* rais'd her self up; and *Theodolinda*, *Cleomira*, and many others, drawing near to her much affrighted, she began with an admirable courage to exhort them to submit to the will of Heaven, since their Religion did not permit them to follow the example of *Cleopatra's* and *Portia's*, and other famous persons of Antiquity, who by a voluntary death deliver'd themselves from those miseries which they might fear in such destructions; and was about to form a resolution conformable to her great Virtue, when she spied the Prince *Wallia* enter into her Chamber: the view of this Prince, whose goodness she was acquainted with, gave her infinite consolation, knowing the Authority he had among the *Visigoths*; and advancing towards him before *Theodolinda*, whom his presence had likewise much assur'd: *Ab Prince* (said she, approaching him with a behaviour full of Constancy and Majesty) *are you our Enemy? You, whom we have so much esteem'd? Wallia* could scarce restrain tears at the sight of a spectacle which touch'd him to the bottom of his soul. *Madam, I am not only not your Enemy* (said he) *but I may truly say that I have not been so to the meanest Roman at this unfortunate season, and that I was at a great distance from the siege: though I was not able to prevent it, I have at least contributed nothing to it; and had not appeared, if I had not done it out of design to do what I at present act, and if I had not believed that my service would not have been unprofitable to you at this time.*

Placidia was about to answer him when she saw *Autalph* enter, who had follow'd *Wallia* with all speed possible, and was perplexed to see, that, notwithstanding his love, another had before him rendred himself to the Princess, whom he adored. *Placidia* received him not as she had received *Wallia*; but yet with a constancy and gravity agreeable to her degree and virtue; which augmenting the love and respect of *Autalph*, made him ashamed to see himself arm'd as he was, and in the posture of an Enemy before the Princess, whom he pretended to serve: he knew not in what fashion he ought to speak to her, when she preventing him with a becoming assurance; *And well, Autalph* (said she) *is it in this manner that you return to see Placidia? Do you bring Fire and Sword into a City from whence you so friendly parted, and from which you never yet receiv'd the least offence? I come* (replied *Autalph*) *like a Lover rather than an Enemy, and I come to conquer by my Arms that which my love and service could not give me; and for that, rather than for any other consideration, have I perswaded the King my Brother to re-enter into Italy.* These words possessed the

the mind of *Placidia* with a mortal grief; and she was about to return him an answer, when she understood by many persons who entred the Chamber with cries and pitiful lamentations, the deplorable estate the City was in, and the horrible cruelties exercised by the *Visigoths*. This Discourse touched her with so much pity, that those tears which her own interest could not make distil from her eyes, now fell from them in great abundance; and turning her self towards *Autalph*, with a gesture which all afflicted as she was, made her yet appear more beautiful than he ever before had judged her; *Al* *Autalph* (said she) *there are other ways than by blood, slaughter, and the ruine of our Countrey, by which to testifie your affection; and but little am I oblig'd by the knowledge of these cruel proofs you give me.*

She was now about to turn to Prince *Wallia*, who was approach'd to *Theodolinda*, and of whom more willingly than of *Autalph*, she would have demanded what favour they desir'd for the miserable people; when she was advertis'd that King *Alaric* was come to visit her, and was ready to enter into the Chamber. She immediately address'd her self to him with a most assur'd behaviour; and instead of having recourse to supplications, preventing what he was about to say; *Alaric* (said she) *is it possible, that you knowing the God which we adore, should with so much cruelty shed the blood of a people which have never offended you, and with Fire and Sword destroy this City, which all Ages, and all Nations have respect'd? Alaric* was touched with the words of *Placidia*, dazzl'd with her Beauty, and charm'd with the Grandeur of her courage; and being willing to testifie the respect and consideration he had for her: *Princess* (said he) *I am sorry that you are expos'd to the misfortune which you endure; but you must excuse me if I cannot help those afflicting objects which at this time present themselves to your view: for the Pillage of the City I promised to give to my Souldiers, and cannot now hinder them from taking it, though I had a design to do it; but for the slaughter, and other disorders, though they are difficultly prevented in confusions like this, yet I shall do all that is possible for me to stay it.* And at the same time calling for some of his Attendants, he commanded them to proclaim through the whole City, that the people should retire themselves into the Temples; and that no Souldier should enter or commit any offence, upon pain of death, against such as had so taken refuge.

This Order being well observ'd, sav'd the lives of many thousands of persons; but the unfortunate City was expos'd to pillage during three dayes; and the Riches of so many Kings, and so many Nations, which by a Series of Victory had been gather'd into that City, Mistress of the World, became a prey to a *Barbarous* people, who hardly knew the price of it, and who unworthily tramp'd under feet the most sacred things, whilst they in their own thoughts triumph'd over the whole Earth, by insolently oppressing those who had for so many Ages been Masters of it.

However, *Alaric* assur'd the Princess that she should receive all good usage from him, but would not promise her liberty, telling her it was not in his power to give: for at his coming to *Rome*, he had destin'd the Pillage of the City to his Army, and the Princess *Placidia* to his Brother the Prince *Autalph*.

Placidia was like to die at these words; but being endow'd with Courage, Virtue and Piety towards Heaven, she call'd them all to her assistance, and resolv'd to undergo all, with an entire resignation to the will of that God which we adore. Yet she would often reply to *Alaric* with a Noble constancy, that she understood how to suffer, since Heaven had been pleas'd to ordain them, all the miseries of that Captivity into which she was thrown; but she hop'd that though *Autalph* was his Brother, yet a Generous King would not do any violence to the Daughter of the Great *Theodosius*.

Alaric return'd her the most civil replies, but gave her few reasons to hope otherwise; and this desolate Princess, notwithstanding all her constancy, deplor'd her misfortunes for many dayes in such a manner, as wrought compassion even in those that caused it, and which had obtain'd from them any other thing but that which she desir'd: I doubt not at all but she dedicated one part of her tears and sighs to the miserable *Constance*; that she lamented him at some times, and accused him at others; but as the thoughts she then had are not come to my knowledge, I can only speak by conjecture.

In the mean time she was honourably serv'd, but diligently guarded, as well as the Princess *Theodolinda*, of whom it was reported that *Alaric* was become Amorous, though he kept her with a promise to send her to the King her Father, so soon as he should depart from *Italy*, where he intended to make no long stay.

In sum, having continued some dayes at *Rome*, withdrawn by other designs, or fearing the return of *Constance* and his Army, having plac'd a Garrison in the City, and establish'd *Attalus* Governour with an absolute power, leading *Placidia*, *Theodolinda*, *Cleomira*, and
many

many other Illustrious Captives, and particularly *Virginia*, who stuck to *Placidia* in her misfortunes more than before, nor would ever abandon her; he repass'd *Italy*, destroying in his way *Campania* and *Lucania*, and leaving throughout all, cruel marks of Barbarous Tyranny.

We receiv'd this heavy News in the City of the *Teciosages*, otherwise called *Toulouse*, at the time wherein *Constance* was in the greatest danger of his life; and we judg'd well it was not fit to inform him of a misery would have prov'd his death, and to which he could lend no remedy being then in a condition that he could scarcely speak or remove himself, by the effect of the cruel venom which had reduc'd him to that deplorable extremity. However, some dayes after, *Artabure*, to whom he had given the command of the Army, judging that miserable *Italy* had need of help, told him that he had receiv'd advice that the *Goths* again threatned *Italy*, and that it was believ'd they intended another invasion; that they were seiz'd of the Avenues, which was the reason he received not Letters from *Rome*, as he had done before; and *Constance* who found a great deal of likelihood in this discourse, though he was but in an ill estate to examine it, knowing well that the Army was no farther necessary in that Country where all things were peaceable, pray'd *Artabure* to lead it back into *Italy*, to go and understand if his Country stood in need of his succours; which *Artabure* did, after having been several times intreated.

He was follow'd soon after by *Taxander* and *Castinus*; nor staid there with *Constance*, besides those of his Family, which was noble and numerous, any more than a body of Cavalry, which had accompani'd him in all his expeditions, and had every man vow'd never to forsake or abandon him.

It was after the departure of the Army, that I received a Letter from the unfortunate *Placidia*, which she had writ to my Master at her departure from *Rome*; but I durst not deliver it to him, only kept it without opening, till such time that I might fitly render it: I contented my self to let him be seen by the Messenger of *Placidia*, praying him to relate to the Princess the estate wherein he had seen him, and how well he was excusable, if he had not succour'd her misfortunes, which were not yet come to his knowledge, nor could for the present come without apparent danger of his life.

The Messenger of *Placidia* was sufficiently griev'd at the misery of *Constance*; but I permitted him not to make himself known; nor did he desire it himself, when he saw to what extremity this great person was reduc'd.

Thus had my Master languish'd for nine or ten Moneths, and languish'd still with little hopes of recovery, when a certain person presented himself unto us on the behalf of the King of the *Vandals*, who having understood in *Hispania Betica*, which he had again invaded, the cruel sickness of my Master, and remembring the courtesies he had formerly receiv'd from him, sent him this person, whom he knew to be the most expert in Chirurgery in all *Europe*; praying him to trust him, and promising him, that if his Evil were capable of cure, he would in few dayes restore him to his health.

There were several persons about my Master, who would have dissuaded him from making use of him, telling him that *Gunderic* was an Enemy of the *Roman* Empire, and that not having a greater obstacle to his designs than such a man as *Constance*, by whom he had been already vanquish'd, 'twould be easie for him this way to send him out of the World; and that perhaps he had sent him Death, instead of a cure. But *Constance* disdain'd any such distrust; and instead of suspecting the King, whose generous spirit he had experienc'd, of such a treachery, he receiv'd with a becoming acknowledgment this proof of his remembrance; and without deliberating farther, threw himself wholly upon the experience of that man, whom he had sent.

From this generous confidence he reap'd his health and safety: for this person, who truly was the most able in the World in his Art, having begun to work his cure in another manner than all those that had gone before, in few dayes gave us great hopes, and in few others, there appear'd visible signs of the recovery of my Master.

But why do I so long amuse you in this unpleasant Discourse? Let it suffice that by the knowledge and diligence of this man, whom I believe rather sent from Heaven than *Gunderic*, *Constance* recover'd an intire health, and in less than six Weeks saw himself in a condition to mount a Horseback, the happiness had transported us with joy, if it had not been too severely moderated by the grief we must needs cause in him, at the relation of his misfortunes. I observ'd often that he was astonish'd to see sadness in my countenance, at a time wherein he guess'd I should have receiv'd satisfaction; but in the end, having with a great deal of wariness, hinder'd the whole World from telling him the cruel News, before his entire recovery; I believ'd it was now time to let him know it, since he was in a condition to apply some remedy.

I sought several means to free my self from this troublesome passage, when I was releas'd of this pain, by the arrival of an Envoy from the Emperour, who with the news of the sack of *Rome*, the ruine of *Italy*, the captivity of *Placidia*, which were known to us, related likewise that *Alaric* was dead at *Consense*: that *Autalpb* his Brother was crown'd King of the *Visigoths*, and after his Coronation had espous'd *Placidia*; so that the deplorable *Constance* at the recovery of his health, understood the loss of his Country, and that he had suffer'd a particular loss, of which without doubt he was more sensible than he could be of that of his miserable life, which was as it were only conserv'd to let him know that he had lost *Placidia*, and lost her for ever.

'Tis now, mighty Sir, that I find my self to have undertaken too great a task, and involv'd in too great a difficulty for me, to represent to you the grief of *Constance* at this astonishing news: you may understand it better by imagination, than I can make you do it by discourse; and you may judge, that as the loss that he had was so great; as never to be sufficiently bewail'd; so his grief was such, as no discourse can express: at first he had some difficulty to fancy there could be truth in such strange news; but turning his eyes upon our countenances, and reading in them the sad confirmation of his misery, he was too much perswaded, and felt in an instant all that can be imagin'd of most terrible affliction: 'Twas at this time that he made use of all the assistances of his great courage, to support him from falling under so great a stroak of Fortune; he had need likewise of those of Religion, which permits us not to seek an end of our evils by a voluntary death: and it is most certain, that if the fear of Heaven, which he always reverenc'd, had not withheld him, he would a thousand times have pierc'd his own bosom, rather than have outliv'd the loss of *Placidia*: his grief was vigorous and piercing, a grief above all that any other soul is capable of; it broke not forth in feminine cries or extravagant words, but shew'd it self in his countenance, with something more lamentable than tears or plaints could make it: at the remembrance whereof I find my soul so pierc'd with pity, that I can scarce be able to continue my recital.

After that day he spoke to none: if he utter'd any words, it was only the name of *Placidia*, which he would often repeat, lifting up his eyes to Heaven with a most mournful countenance: it was impossible for us to make him take any nourishment; and several dayes after we could difficultly oblige him by the same considerations which had perswaded him, to live: but it was now he began to lament, and utter those words which without doubt would have made *Autalpb* himself compallionate his sufferings, if he had heard them.

He knew not himself what judgment to make of his Fortune, though he could not but behold it alwayes deplorable; and if sometimes he accus'd *Placidia* to have too slightly espous'd *Autalpb*, against what she ought to her love and to her word which she had given him, he presently lamented her being constrain'd by hard and cruel Captivity, to espouse a man she lov'd not, or rather to be made a prey to a *Barbarian*, to whom she alwayes had an aversion: but whether the one or the other busi'd his thoughts, both in the one and the other he found himself equally miserable: But he was prepossessed with so good an opinion for *Placidia*, that he could not believe she could forget him to espouse *Autalpb*, without being truly constrain'd, and that she found her self in that condition wherein she was forc'd to accept the Marriage, to avoid an injury less supportable to her virtue.

Ab Placidia (said he sometimes) *is it possible that you could forget me, after so many promises which ought to be inviolable in a Soul like yours!* *Ab Constance* (said he presently after) *is it possible that thou couldst not succour Placidia in those extremities to which she was reduc'd, and in a Captivity so little agreeable to the fortune of a Daughter of the Great Theodosius!* *Ab cruel ones* (added he, regarding us with some marks of resentment) *wherefore have you conceal'd from me my misfortunes, in a time wherein though not able to remedy them, I might at least have had recourse to a remedy had freed me from those ills to which you have cruelly reserv'd me? What can you hope from those unjust effects of your affection? Or what good do you for me, endeavouring to preserve a life, the sad condition of which you have foreseen?* *Alis* (continu'd he soon after) *is it possible that those miseries known to all the World, should be so long since conceal'd from him who had more interest in them than all the World together? Or is it possible that I my self have been depriv'd of this consolation, to understand by some marks of the remembrance of Placidia, that in her Captivity she hath not forgot me?*

These words which he repeated several times, or others like them, made me believe that it was now time to deliver him the Letter of *Placidia*, which I had diligently kept, and approaching to him, I presented it him, telling him in what time I had receiv'd it, and relating to him all the particulars pass'd with the Messengers of the Princess. *Constance* received

received the Letter without speaking one word; and after having twice or thrice kiss'd it with innumerable sighs, he open'd it, and read these words.

Placidia to Constance.

I Know not whether I ought to lament, or accuse you; but as my inclination leads me still to judge well of you, I will believe that our miseries are unknown to you, since you have not succour'd us. Italy is desolate, Rome is lost, Placidia is Captive; and that which ought to be more sensible to you, if you love her, she is captive of Autalph. He pretends that I am his, by right of his Conquest, and demands me for his Spouse without consulting my will; but can you consent, Constance, if you are still faithful to me, or if you are in a condition to oppose it? They lead me I know not into what Countries, and lest do I know to what condition my miserable fortune reserves me. Lament my miseries, Constance, if you cannot remedy them; and be assured, that if I be not threaten'd with any greater danger than death, I shall willingly sacrifice my life, to preserve my self wholly yours.

It would be difficult for me to represent to you the diversity of *Constance* his thoughts after the reading of this Letter; on the one side he found comfort, from the knowledge he had of the remembrance of *Placidia*, and the firmness of her affection: on the other, he found himself overwhelm'd with such grief, understanding the miserable condition of so great a Princess, that scarce all the force of his spirit was capable to support it. *Just Heaven* (said he, so soon as sighs gave leave to his words) you whom *Placidia* hath so religiously ador'd, is it possible that you have abandon'd her to the miseries of a sharp Captivity, or permitted that like a vile slave she should follow a victorious Army, whilst you take away all means to assist her, from the miserable and deplorable *Constance*? Or rather, was it just to throw him into an estate which deprived him of the knowledge of her misfortunes in a time when he might have remedied it; to draw him out of it, now she is no more capable to receive it, and restore him to a life much more cruel than that death from which you have recover'd him?

Soon after again reading over the Letter, and thinking on the time in which it was writ; *Alas* (cried he) in this time I had yet some hopes left that *Placidia* was a Captive, but not yet wife to *Autalph*; now she is, since so it hath pleased my cruel destinies; and this Barbarian King is sufficiently satisfied for those advantages I at other times had over him, by those he hath now gain'd over me. And then making reflection of what he had understood of that fatal Marriage, and considering that *Placidia* had not espoused *Autalph* till after the death of *Alaric*, and that he was King of the *Visigoths*, he found some consolation, judging that he could not dispose her till he had gain'd the Sovereign Authority, and *Placidia* had no farther refuge and defence to flee to: but at the same time his grief, ingenious to torment him, would persuade him that this new quality of *Autalph* might shake her constancy, and that being able to resist him whilst he was a Prince without a Crown, and a person much disadvantageous for her, she had permitted her self to be overcome when she had seen him rais'd to Sovereign Dignity. This thought might have afflicted him, if it could have gain'd any foundation; but by the knowledge he had of the soul of *Placidia*, he scarce entertain'd it one moment: and not being able to accuse the Princess, he accus'd only his own misfortune.

'Twas now that he recall'd to mind the actions of his past life; and looking with some disdain upon the glory he had acquir'd amongst men, by those memorable Victories he had gain'd over so many Kings and famous Captains, he accus'd Fortune to have so well serv'd him whilst he travell'd for the interest of the Empire, and to have so cruelly abandon'd him now that she had some Empire over his own. *Vain honours* (said he) vain advantages drawn from some happy Combates, you have serv'd only to my ruine; for if by your assistance, *Constance* had not been advanc'd to the highest degree among the Romans, he had never hop'd the possession of *Placidia*, nor ever become thus miserable by the loss of his hopes. You shall therefore never abuse me more, but I willingly renounce you, as I renounce all Dignities, all pleasures of my life, and all society of men.

I shall be tedious, Mighty Sir, should I relate to you all the complaints which were the products of my Master's grief; that which afflicted us most was, that time did not at all diminish it, and that it having made him relapse into his malady for some days, we wanted but little to lose what the help of *Gunderic* had restor'd to us.

We were still at *Toulouse*, retain'd by the weakness his relapse had caus'd, and the uncertainty in which he was, what course he ought to take; when we understood from *Rome* by
a man

a man which *Artabure* had sent to him to enquire of his estate, That after the departure of *Aleric*, *Attalus* whom he had left Governour in *Rome*, not contenting himself with that quality, had caus'd himself to be call'd by his, Emperour of the *Romans*; and now endeavour'd to make himself be acknowledg'd for Emperour throughout *Italy*, seeing that *Honorius* remain'd at *Ravenna*, in so entire a tranquillity, as if he had not the least interest in the miseries of *Italy*. That the *Romans* had lamented their misfortunes, but that they were constrained to suffer by reason of their present weakness, seeing themselves disur-nish'd of all their Strength, abandoned of all humane assistance, despoil'd of all their riches, disarm'd, and the greatest part of them employed in the rebuilding of those Houses the Flames had ruin'd and consum'd. That the insolent *Attalus* had for some time kept them in obedience and subjection; but that at the arrival of *Artabure* with those Troops he led back, the face of things began to change: That *Attalus* had lost his courage; and having understood that *Artabure* march'd directly to *Rome*, with design to assault it, distrusting the *Romans*, though miserable and disarm'd; he was departed from the City, and having rallied some other Troops, and joyn'd them with those that went forth with him, he had endeavour'd to form a Body to put himself into a posture of defence; but being encountred by *Ariobinde* and *Castinus*, who led a great part of the Cavalry, he was defeated, and having left on the place the greatest part of his men, had sav'd himself with the rest that could follow him; and as it was believ'd, was departed out of *Italy*, leaving that which remain'd of the miserable City free from his Tyranny, and that of the *Visigoths*: so that there rested nothing but the return of the Emperour, to which he was earnestly press'd by the poor people, though he had so feebly abandon'd them to the mercy of their Enemies.

Scarcely had we understood this news, in which as a *Roman* I found some subject of consolation, when we were advertis'd by the persons of the Country where we were, in whom the virtue of *Constance* had begot an infinite love and respect for him, That the same *Attalus* whom we before spoke of, and he who having caus'd himself to be proclaim'd Emperour, had been driven out of *Italy* by *Artabure*, had quartered the night before with seven or eight hundred Horse, a small days journey from the City where we were, and intended that night to lodge at a Village which was not above six or seven hours journey distant, with design as it was reported, to retire into *Spain*, not daring to return to the *Visigoths*, having usurp'd a Dignity so much above him, and so ill sustain'd it: that the Cavalry of his train committed a thousand disorders in the places through which they pass'd, which in part had oblig'd the inhabitants of a place he had ruin'd, to give this advice.

Though *Constance* in renouncing all things, had likewise renounc'd all desires to signalize himself, yet he could not understand that one of the principal destroyers of his Country, and one of those who had most of all contributed to the captivity of *Placidia*, and he who had been so impudent as to usurp a quality due to none but the Brother of *Placidia*, and whom he acknowledg'd for his Lord, should dare to pass so nigh him; and that he should not resolve to fight him, and let him feel some effects of his just anger: and to this purpose, having given order to draw together six or seven hundred horse, who as I told you would never abandon him, he caus'd himself to be armed, though yet weak with the sickness he had endur'd.

But before he mounted on horseback, he caus'd that person to be call'd, which was sent him by the King of the *Vandals*, and to whom he was so much beholdng for his recovery; and after having given him a recompence so magnificent, that he could not perhaps hope so much in all his life from the King his Master: *You shall testify to King Gunderic (said he) the acknowledgments I have for an action so full of generosity; but without assuring him, that I am too unhappy, to hope my self able to return a sufficient satisfaction: you may tell him if you please, that he hath made me the gift of an enemy, and that that life which he hath render'd me by your assistance, is much more cruel than the death from which he hath deliver'd me.* He spoke these words with a sigh; and the *Vandal*, to whom the cause was known, lamented his misfortune without wondring at his discourse, and departed highly satisfied with the rich presents he had receiv'd.

One hour after, we mounted on horseback; *Constance* having design'd not to march by day, lest *Attalus* should be advertis'd: but having good guides which led us all the night, we arriv'd in the morning at the Village where *Attalus* was lodg'd, precisely at the time he was about to depart. Though the number of his men was somewhat greater than ours, *Constance* delayed not to assault them; but flying amongst them like a Lyon at the head of a Troop which couragiously followed him, he struck such a terrour into them; that they

scarce made any resistance. Having met with *Attalus* amongst his Troops, he dealt him so furious a blow on his head, that what with the blow and the shock of his horse he bore him with his to the ground; and as we fought against the destroyers of our Country, with more heat and fury than in all the former Battels, we soon cut in pieces almost all those which accompany'd him, without losing more than fifteen or twenty of our men.

My Master having defended *Attalus* from being slain, and seeing him before him much affrighted, after he had with much Sweetness laid before his eyes the cruelties which he and his had exercis'd, and the crime he had committed in usurping a quality so much above his sphere, or theirs who had establish'd him in that which he had despis'd; he told him that his intention was to send him to the Emperour *Honorius*, to whom he for many reasons ought this satisfaction: but that he need not at all fear his life, which he did not only promise him he would demand of the Emperour, but assur'd him he should obtain it. *Attalus*, who had not conceiv'd so large hopes, and whose courage was much dismay'd, return'd him thanks for this effect of his goodness, and resolv'd himself to support his ill fortune, not doubting but *Constance* had sufficient power to obtain his life of *Honorius*, who naturally was not at all inclin'd to cruelty.

My Master had little conversation with him, being unwilling to insult over his misery, finding himself not in an estate to tell him any thing that might be acceptable; but seeing a *Visigoth* near him whom he straight knew, having before observ'd him in the service of Prince *Wallia*, he design'd particularly to entertain him; and having demanded of him news of the Prince he serv'd, as of a man whom he infinitely esteem'd, he entreated him the most pressingly he could, to tell him sincerely, what he knew of the marriage of *Autalpb* and *Placidia*, and what he had heard spoken of the resolutions of that Princess to espouse him, and how she carried her self at her marriage. The *Visigoth* hearing himself honoured with the Prayer my Master made him, after he had told him that what he demanded of him was not known to him, but by the report at *Rome*, from whence he had not stir'd since the departure of *Alaric*, he could therefore give him no other account, but what he had from the same report, which in summ was,

“ That as well at *Rome* as in other places, whither her adverse fortune led her a Follow-
 “ er of the Conquerour, *Placidia* had with a marvellous courage resisted the pursuits of
 “ *Autalpb*; letting him still know that the change of her condition could not alter her in-
 “ clinations: That this Prince knowing that all he try'd by love was vain and unprofitable,
 “ resolv'd several times to make use of the privilege of War, and force her to espouse him;
 “ but in such extremities he had recourse to *Alaric*, who though he desir'd the repose
 “ and satisfaction of his Brother, yet could not resolve to do this violence to a Princess,
 “ both whose Birth and Virtue he respect'd: That by this consideration, and as some said,
 “ by the prayers of the Princess *Theodolinda*, of whom *Alaric* was enamoured, she defend-
 “ ed her self against *Autalpb* until the death of *Alaric*, whom a violent malady which seiz'd
 “ him at *Consense*, took in few days out of the world: That *Autalpb* being crown'd King
 “ of the *Goths* after the death of his Brother, had not only persevered in his love to *Pla-
 “ cidia*, but gave her to understand, that if she did not in few days consent, he would
 “ make use of his authority to possess her: That the Princess still resisted him as much as it
 “ was possible, endeavouring to dissuade his design by all those considerations she believ'd
 “ capable to withhold him; but in the end, finding them all unprofitable, and that she was
 “ threatned and in danger to satisfy the passion of the Conquerour in another condition
 “ than that of his Spouse, the fear of so horrible a mischief made her suffer the other more
 “ patiently: That she was married and crowned Queen of the *Visigoths*, at *Consense*; and
 “ twas reported that though she espous'd the King *Autalpb*, with an inexpressible re-
 “ pugnancy, yet after their marriage she liv'd admirably well with him: That some time
 “ after they departed from *Consense*, and went into the Province of the *Lactans*, which
 “ is a Province of *Spain* bordering upon the *Mediterranean* Sea, which in a short time the
 “ *Goths* reduc'd to their obedience, and from whence they intended to pass among the
 “ *Gauls* to possess their Lands which they pretended to appertain to them, and which were
 “ assign'd to them by the Emperours *Theodosius* and *Honorius*: That it was in *Barcelona*,
 “ the capital City of that Country, that *Autalpb* at present kept his Court and reign'd
 “ peaceably.

This discourse of the *Visigoth* gave some satisfaction to the spirit of *Constance*, though it increas'd his grief: and upon the knowledge he had of the place where *Placidia* was, he form'd a resolution, which some days after he put in execution; he determin'd once more to see *Placidia*, whatever dangers might arrive in the execution of such a design: but because he could not march with his equipage, without being taken notice of, nor go
 with

with any train in those places, where his Countenance was so well known both to the King and to most of those persons who were near him; he therefore not only sent into *Italy* the Cavalry which came to fight against *Attalus*, but he would that all his House and Family should take the same course, keeping none with him but my self, and two men to serve him.

Leontius, who commanded the Horse, was much troubled to part with him; nor were the Officers of his Household less afflicted to abandon him; but both the one and the other were constrained to obey, which they did somewhat the more willingly, because he promis'd them he would in a short time be at *Rome*, whither he commanded them to go and attend him. He gave to *Leontius* the conduct of *Attalus*, charging him to present him to the Emperour, to whom he writ a Letter in these or the like words.

Constance to the Emperour Honorius.

I Have acquitted my self, Sir, of the promise I made you to overcome your Enemies; but you have not preserved for me the Princess *Placidia*, according to yours. Though my services had not been considerable, a Sister like *Placidia* was without doubt worthy of your assistance; and I cannot comprehend for what reason you should abandon her to the Barbarians: But it is not for us to judge the actions of our Sovereign; and you are it may be so sufficiently touch'd with the losses you have had, that our complaints need not renew them to your memory. For my self, having lost *Placidia*, I have nothing more to preserve, and nothing but death can be as dear to me as my life is odious: I go then to flee from the one, and seek the other, by those means Heaven shall be pleas'd to allot me. And for the last effect of my fidelity, I send you *Attalus*, whom the justice of Heaven deliver'd into our hands, that he might be committed into yours. You may punish his unjust Ambition by letting him know the difference between his present condition and the dignity he would have usurp'd; but spare him if you please, a life which I request of you, and which I have presum'd to promise him, upon the knowledge I have of your Clemency.

This was the Letter which he writ to *Honorius*, for whom, notwithstanding he was not so well contented with him for the loss of *Placidia*, he preserved a respect accompanied with a tender affection.

Leontius parted with the Cavalry he commanded, and all the Household of *Constance*, and we understood afterwards that being arrived at *Ravenna*, he presented *Attalus* to the Emperour, who led him in triumph to *Rome*, where he enter'd few days after; and that he confin'd him to the Island of *Lipari*, not inflicting on him any other punishment, upon the recommendation of *Constance*.

We parted at the same time from that City, where we had made so unfortunate a stay, as well for the cruel distemper of my Master, as for the deplorable news we receiv'd; and with that little equipage I told you, we went to seek the Country inhabited by that terrible Nation which had laid ours desolate. To accomplish this design, we had no very great journey; for we had only to cross a part of *Gallia Narbonnese* to arrive at the foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, where the Province of the *Lacetans* is situated.

I shall not be so tedious as to recite the particulars of our Voyage, in which there was nothing of divertisement or agreeable to you: for running only where the passion of *Constance* called us, we made no stay at any place we pass'd through, which might give us leisure to make any particular observation: besides, my Master's grief to which he had so entirely abandon'd himself, busied us in that nature, that it left no place for other thoughts. His eyes seem'd fix'd on all sorts of objects, and his spirit incapable of the remembrance of any thing, but his sad and cruel loss. Hardly at my pressing entreaties would he take any nourishment, or any moments repose; nor could he think that what he went to seek was in another's Arms, and bound with such chains, as nothing but death could loose, without being surpriz'd with an affection neither to be equaliz'd nor describ'd. He often express'd more by his silence, than by his tears and lamentations: and as my Master hath truly a noble patience, and a resolution not common, he restrain'd his grief as much as he could possible; not permitting it to break forth, but by those marks which he could not conceal nor dissemble.

In this sad condition we travers'd the Country of the *Niëibriges*, pass'd nigh unto *Narbonna* a famous City, which gives a name to a part of the *Gauls*, and in the end, entred into *Spain*: in approaching it, *Constance* inform'd himself every day with the particulars

of his misfortunes: and when we were a good way entred into the Country which was subje^t to *Autalph*, we understood that the *Barbarian* King was much more fortunate in his Marriage than he could have hop'd, considering the unjust ways by which he accomplish'd it; and that his virtuous Spouse making her inclinations yield to considerations of Duty, had conform'd them in such sort, that according to the common opinion, the *Gothick* King was no less in possession of her soul than of her body, and tasted those sweetnesses which seldom encounter in inclinations once so different.

This knowledge of the happiness of *Autalph*, and of a happiness so unjustly got, cast the afflicted *Constance* into extremities of grief; in which all his virtue was necessary, though by that virtue he found this consolation, that *Placidia* was not unhappy, which she had been without doubt, if by her admirable wisdom she had not overcome those repugnancies which dayly oppos'd themselves to her repose and felicity.

Ab Valerius (said he to me in these thoughts) *Is it then true that Placidia loves so truly the Barbarian King, whom force and violence made her husband? how would she have loved a Spouse whom she had receiv'd from her Parents, and from her own inclinations? but by the bonds of that duty which hath something in it more cruel than the Goths themselves, she hath forgot him whom her Parents, and her very inclinations destin'd her.* *Alas* (added he) *it is too true, but however, what misery I find for my self in this cruel knowledge; I cannot, though it render me eternally miserable, desire that Placidia should hate Autalph; and I ought to desire that she would eternally forget me, if my remembrance would bring any trouble to her repose.*

He made me often such discourses as these; and in this sad conversation we approached *Barcelona*, a fair City near the Sea, where the *Gothick* King at present kept his Court; we knew before our arrival that Prince *Wallia* was not there; that he had been a long time departed, and scarce any news heard of him since the death of *Alaric*: though my Master esteem'd and lov'd this brave Prince most particularly, and that though at another time he would gladly have encountred him, in this he was not at all troubled at his absence, having resolv'd if he had been there, to conceal himself from him as from the best of men, not finding it convenient to discover himself to him at a season in which he could not be favourable to him, without being the contrary to the King his near Kinsman.

Constance his resolution not to be seen by any person that might know him, and having reason to fear many persons whom he had seen at *Rome*, made us attend the night to enter the City, and then we went to seek a lodging in one of the least frequented streets, and most distant from the Palace. So soon as we were arriv'd and retir'd into our Chamber, my Master began to invent with me some means to see the Queen, and use the best caution, much less for the danger which might threaten him, than for the consideration he had for the repose and interest of that great Princess, which he might disquiet by an imprudent conduct.

The better to inform our selves in this occasion, he propos'd to regulate his designs by the passages of affairs at Court; and having caus'd our Host to be call'd, we understood from him that we were arriv'd in a fortunate time. That *Virginia*, she whom the Queen of all the persons that attend her esteem'd most dear, and the good and faithful friend of *Constance*, had the same day espous'd *Hilderic* the Favourite of the King, and the chief personage amongst the *Goths*, next the two Princes *Sigeric* and *Wallia*: that all the Palace was to spend this night in pompous solemnities: that on the morrow, in honour of such a Marriage, in the great plain of the City, courses were to be run, like to those my Master ran at *Rome* in the *Hippodrome* against *Autalph* and the unfortunate *Euchere*, which the *Visigoths* had first introduc'd into *Europe*, which the *Gauls* call *Tourneys*, the *English* *Tilt-ing*: That Knights of all Nations would be receiv'd, and that the Queen her self gave the reward to the Conquerour.

This news touch'd the spirit of *Constance* with several different motions; and if upon one side he could not understand without some resentment, that *Placidia* took her share in joy and divertisement whilst he was overwhelm'd with a mortal sadness; on the other, he rejoyc'd within himself for the happiness of *Virginia*, whom he always dearly lov'd, and whom he esteem'd more than ever, for the fidelity she had testified to the Princess: and besides, though he refus'd the dancing and other divertisements of that night, in which he well believ'd he could not see the Queen without running an apparent hazard to be known, yet he hop'd in the spectacles of the following day, when it would be permitted to all to go arm'd in the City, and to present themselves in that estate in the place without being oblig'd to discover his Countenance, he might be there as well as others, and enjoy with liberty the so much desir'd sight of the Princess, who would shew her self publicly

publickly upon the Scaffolds for that purpose erected with infinite Magnificence, and then he would attend till Fortune and his own diligence gave him the means to see her more particularly.

At this present, though loaden with such an abyss of sadness, he found sparkling in his soul some desire once more to signalize himself before the Princess *Placidia*, by some action that might please her, and abate the pride of that odious Nation which had depriv'd him of all his happiness. So soon as he entertained this thought, he resolv'd to put it in execution, having but little time to prepare himself for this action, in which he resolv'd to appear without any Magnificence, and only adorn'd with the marks of that grief which rul'd his mind; he would therefore have no other Arms than the same black ones he wore in his Voyage, giving only order that Night to add something to his Shield; but because his Horses were wear'd with the length of his Journey, he commanded me with the assistance of our Host to seek him one to serve him in this occasion: and Fortune would, that for the great price he charg'd me to offer, I found one of the fairest and best that were to be found in all these Provinces; and which as he desir'd, was of a colour correspondent to that of his Arms and whole Equipage. After this, having given some other orders for such things as were most necessary in such an occasion, he intended to dedicate the rest of the Night to repose: but it was more difficult to him than all the preceding Nights; for the impatience he had to see the Princess, whom he knew himself so near to, did scarce permit him a moment of sleep.

I will not entertain you with the thoughts which tossed and perplexed his mind during this long Night, though they might well deserve a place in our discourse, if they would not render it of too excessive a length; I will only tell you that the next morning, as soon as he understood that all things were ready in the great place, and that the King and Queen having din'd, that they might have the longer time for divertisement, had with the whole Court taken their places on the Scaffold, he put on his Arms, mounted upon the fair Horse I bought him; and charging his left hand with his Shield, and his right with a strong Lance, he march'd with his Visier down towards the place where the Courses were already begun, not being follow'd by any but one Esquire, whom he had taken in to his service in the *Gallick* War, and whose favour could not be known by the *Visigoths*.

He resolv'd to give them time to signalize themselves by the first Courses, before he would present himself in the Lists; and as he had a design to fatigue his eyes with the view of the belov'd Object of his heart, he took his stand in a place where over the heads of the people he might see the Queen seated on a high Scaffold to be easily observ'd by all that were in the place. This sight had almost made all his strength forsake him: he trembl'd with the violent motion which his passions gave to his whole person, to see that Princess so much belov'd, seated by the side of her unjust Possessor, and his cruel Rival, in that happy estate to which he had so much reason to aspire.

Placidia seem'd to the eyes of *Constance* accompani'd with all those charms which ordinarily attended her; her admirable Beauty still preserv'd in the hardships and changes of Fortune, produc'd its accusom'd effects in the spirit of a Lover so faithful, and so passionate. However, after the first violence was over, and that *Constance* had moderated his fury, he then beheld her with far less disturbance than before. It seem'd to him, whether so in truth, or by the inclination we naturally have to flatter our selves, that there were some marks of sadness upon the Countenance of the fair Queen, and that her eyes possessed not all their gayety and ordinary splendour; she appear'd more pale and wan than at other times; and indeed, to assist at so pompous and solemn a rejoicing, all the ornaments of her person seem'd extremely negligent.

Virginia sat next her, adorn'd with all that magnificence that beftted the solemnity of her Marriage; but she appeared in all her actions to accompany those of the Queen, who holding down her head in a kind of languishing manner, seem'd to entertain with her the objects presented to their view. Alas, what were the thoughts of poor *Constance*, beholding, or rather devouring with his eyes a treasure which had so cruelly been taken from him! What discourses did his present sad estate cause him to make of his past Fortune, and all the actions of his life! You may comprehend it well, Sir, by the experience you have of so great a passion, without which it will be impossible to represent it.

He had so fix'd his thoughts upon these sad considerations, and the sight of those belov'd eyes, that he seem'd to have entirely lost all remembrance of the Courses, and design he had to signalize himself. In the end he recollected himself, and seeing that they were already well advanc'd and that the people celebrated with cries of admiration the force of some *Visigoth* Cavaliers, who had already thrown to ground all that had presented themselves

elves on the place; judging it now time to shew himself, making the people give way, and advancing within the Barriers, he put himself in Rank with those who were prepar'd for fight. Those who saw him pass simply arm'd, and without any Train, were far from imagining that he was the great *Constance*, whose reputation was so gloriously spread through the World, the vanquisher of so many Kings, so many Nations, and the valiant Upholder of the Empire. However, though without any Train or Magnificence, he appeared in the Ranges with a grace, that made him be noted among all the Adventurers, as somewhat more than ordinary. His Arms were wholly black, as well as his Helmet, as was the Plume which cover'd his Helmet, his Lance, his Horse, and all his Furniture being of the same colour; but upon his Shield was to be seen represented a *Cupid* laid upon a Bed of dead and dry Ashes, such as they figure to blazon lost Hope, with these words which seem'd to come out of his mouth, *I AM ALIVE, THOUGH HOPE BE DEAD*. And at the lower part of the Shield were written these Verses:

*After all Hope is flown above,
Still with a Faith and Truth to Love.
Alas! that this to none can be,
Afflicted Constance, but to thee.*

He had caused these words to be written in the *Gallick* Tongue, in which the name of *Constance* which he bore, and the virtue of constancy have the same termination; so that he had reason to believe, that it would be of that virtue, rather than of him, that these words would be understood: they were read by those who were the nearest to him; and as well by their sense, as the blackness of his Arms, they judg'd the sadness of his soul; and from the little hope which he preserved, began to call him in the place, the *Sad Knight*, or the *Knight of lost Hope*.

He still beheld some Courses in the place where he had took his stand, till at length espying a *Visigoth*, proud, and full of Glory, for the great number he had overcome, he was resolv'd to abate his pride: without delay he presented himself in the Lists; his noble posture in the Saddle, and the grace wherewith he carried his Lance, and manag'd his Horse, oblig'd the King, the Queen, and all the Company to behold him with a strict observation; but their admiration was increased, when they saw him part like Lightning, and encounter his Adversary at the middle of the Course with so much fury, that he overturn'd both Man and Horse to the Ground, without so much as being shaken in his Saddle. All the multitude echo'd forth their Acclamations at the fall of the *Visigoth*, and at the Beauty of the Course; but their cries were augmented when they beheld the Fortune of the second to be like his Predecessors, and that afterwards with the same facility he threw down all those that presented themselves. In short, Mighty Sir, for it is not necessary to recount to you the little important particularities of every Course, he bore to Ground all the Cavaliers of the place, without so much as losing a Stirrup, or that any one oblig'd him to a second Course.

The King and whole Assembly could not dissemble their amazement; and the Queen herself, who till then seem'd little touch'd with curiosity at any thing which passed, could not refrain from testifying an infinite desire to know this Stranger, nor from beholding with some concernment the marks he gave by his Equipage of the sadness of his mind. In the end, *Constance* scarce finding any more to dispute the Glory of this Day, began to repent himself of having done so much; not doubting but that if he were forc'd to receive the Reward from the hands of the Queen, who intended to present it, he should be oblig'd to discover his Face, which he would not do in that company to purchase an Empire, since he could not do it without putting in danger the repose of *Placidia*, a thousand times dearer to him than his life, which he must likewise have apparently hazarded.

He fought with infinite perplexity the means to draw him out of this trouble, not being able without excessive grief to abandon a reward which could not but be dear to him from the hands of *Placidia*: yet hearing with displeasure the Acclamations of the people, who declar'd him victorious; when he saw the Barriers clear'd to a Knight proudly armed, and whom he understood by those stood near him to be *Hilderic* the Favourite of *Autalph*, and the Husband of *Virginia*, who (having till then been dispensed with in the Courses, because of the interest he had in that solemnity, which was this day celebrated for his sake, could not observe in the Countenance of the King the displeasure he testified for the fall of all his Knights, without putting himself upon an endeavour to repair the disgrace they had suffer'd, though he hop'd little in himself the success of such an enterprize; preparing rather

to keep company with the others, if he could not revenge them) was retir'd from near the King, and had arm'd and mounted himself with all speed possible.

My Master no sooner understood that it was he, but finding in this rencounter a fair occasion to retire, he embrac'd it without further deliberations; and advancing towards *Hilderic* in the posture of a man that would rather speak to him than fight him, he encountred him just at the entrance into the Lists; and reaching his mouth to his ear; *I will not* (said he, in the *Gotbick* Language, which he spake perfectly well) *dispute with Hilderic the glory of this Day, to whom it is entirely due, with the possession of Virginia; and I would testifie to Virginia, by the consideration I have for her Husband, the true respect I continually bear her.*

His Helmet so much conceal'd the tone of his voice, that though *Hilderic* had been familiar with him, he could not have known him: and he had no sooner spoke these words, but spurring from him without attending an Answer, and forcing with his Horse a way through the Multitudes, he got out of the place without any farther stay.

The King and Queen, who with all the company taking notice of his departure, wonder'd no less at it, than at the fair Courses he had made; not being able to imagine for what reason he should disdain a reward, which could not but be considerable to all men, coming from the hands of so fair a Queen: and *Hilderic* more astonish'd than they at the words of this valiant Unknown Person, being approach'd the Scaffold, and having recounted the discourse my Master had made him, their surprize infinitely augmented, not being able to fancy whom this Friend of *Hilderic's* or of *Virginia's* should be, that was so willing to yield so great a Glory, and whose strength was as extraordinary as his behaviour.

But *Placidia* being alwayes just, and especially to those who testifi'd an affection to her faithful *Virginia*, on a sudden took a resolution worthy of her self. *It is not justice* (said she to *Hilderic*) *that the respect that this Unknown Knight hath for you, should make him lose the reward he is willing to yield you; and since you are this day sufficiently happy in the possession of Virginia, without pretending to other advantages, answer the noble behaviour of this brave Unknown, in letting him receive what he hath so generously abandon'd.* At these words she took from her Arm a rich Bracelet, and presented it to *Hilderic*; who receiving it without returning other Answer than a profound reverence, parted from the place, and flew after *Constance* with all possible speed.

The croud and throng of the people had so hindred my Master in his design of departure, that before he could reach the end of a Street that butted against the Lists, *Hilderic* overtook him; and knowing him by his Arms, and particularly by his Shield, he address'd himself to him, with an excellent Grace: *The Queen is too just* (said he) *and Hilderic too acknowledging of your civility, to rob you of a reward, which you have so gloriously acquir'd, and which comes from a hand too Illustrious to be disdain'd: Receive then from my hand what the Queen hath sent you; and if you will not that I know to whom I am so much obliged, give me at least the means to let him know the esteem I have for his merit, and the obligation I have for the glory he would procure me.*

Constance deliberated some time what resolution he should take; but in the end, not being able to resist the desire he had yet to receive this precious favour from *Placidia*, and judging he could not refuse it without offence, he accepted the Bracelet, which *Hilderic* presented him; and answering his Discourse without discovering his Visage; *I had an intention* (said he) *to leave you that reward, which you have perhaps merited better than I; nor would I now receive it, came it not from the hand and by the orders of the Queen: But since you are pleas'd I shall hold it from her and you, you shall receive if you please this small gage of the affection I owe to the Husband of Virginia, and you shall permit me to demand yours, when I can make my self known to you better than now I can.*

Finishing these words, he pulled a Ring from his finger, and having put it upon that of *Hilderic* at the same time that he receiv'd the Bracelet from his hand, he quitted him without attending an Answer; spurring from him with an infinite speed, when he was encountred by three or four men on Horseback, who told him that they had order from the King to oblige him to make himself known to them, or to bring him before his Majesty; *I can do neither the one nor the other* (replied *Constance* very fiercely) *nor had I come, but knowing that at such times as these, both access and retreat are free to all the World. We have however an Order from the King* (replied he who had first spoke to him) *which we must execute; and you will difficultly defend your self from either seeing him, or making your self known to us.*

At this discourse *Constance* was enraged with a choler, he could not dissemble; and beholding them with a look full of fury; *You may tell your King* (said he) *that I am not his Subject, and that he ought perhaps bethink himself more than once before he violater in my person the*

right of Nations and publick Liberty: And seeing at the same time that one of them opposed his passage, and was about to lay hold of the Bridle of his Horse, he assaulted him with so much violence, that tumbling him out of his Saddle, he made him extend his length upon the Pavement, and flew from the rest with so much swiftness, that they immediately lost the sight of him. 'Tis true, that *Hilderic* at the bruit was approach'd to him, and being willing to favour his retreat, hindred them from pursuing him, by telling them that whatever desire the King had to know him, he was certain he would not approve of this violence. And he having a great Authority in the Court, they obeyed him without replying: but because in the shock with which my Master had thrown the *Goths* to Ground, the Buckle which held his Shield broke, it fell down; and some body having taken it up, presented it to *Hilderic*: he beholding it sometime, very circumspectly read those words upon it; but fearing he should not be able to discover the Master, he sent it away, with a design to shew it to *Virginia*.

After this he return'd towards the place, but in his way looking upon the Ring which the valiant Unknown had put upon his finger, and on which he had not yet had time to cast his eyes, it was no mean astonishment that surpriz'd him, when he beheld it to be a Diamond of such an extraordinary greatness and value, that it could not part but from the hand of some great Prince, and one highly liberal. He was vex'd he had receiv'd it, but could not now help it: and when he was come in to the presence of the King and Queen, who were departed from the place, to return towards the Palace; he equally surpriz'd them, with the relation of what he had seen *Constance* do, and the richness of the Present he had receiv'd from him.

Antalph vow'd that his men had gone beyond the limits which he had prescrib'd in the order he gave them; and by the diligence *Hilderic* took to appeale him, he shew'd very little anger for the refusal of the Stranger to obey him, and design'd not any farther search; yet both himself and the whole Court judg'd by the Grandeur and nobleness of his behaviour, and by the richness of his present to *Hilderic*, that this Unknown must be a person of a considerable degree; and many there were who suspected him to be Prince *Balamir*, Son to the King of the *Huns*, a Prince of great valour and reputation, and who had before been seen in several places, and upon the like occasions, in the equipage of a person that would not be known.

This Adventure in which the whole World found something highly extraordinary and unusually excellent, afforded them a subject to entertain themselves the rest of the day. But when *Hilderic* had opportunity to speak more particularly to *Virginia*, and had caused her to hearken with attention to the words which the sad Knight had told him, and those which were writ upon his Buckler, which he brought to shew her; he put great suspicions into her mind, or at least gave her sufficient employment to torment her self withal, in seeking that truth which she could not know; and yet in which she conceiv'd a great interest.

All the Court supp'd that Night with *Hilderic*, whither the new Marri'd was conducted with an extravagant Magnificence; but after Supper the Queen retir'd into the Closet of *Virginia* with her alone, where being private, she demanded of her, who this Unknown might be, that had testified such an affection and consideration for her, and who by what one might judge, both by the greatness of his Actions, and value of the Present he had given to *Hilderic*, could not but be a man of great importance. *Virginia* took some time to consider, before she gave answer to this discourse; and the Queen having again solicited her:

I know not, Madam, (said she) if I may tell you all I think of this Adventure; but I believe that you will enter as well as I into deep suspicions upon so great appearance. At these words she caused the Shield to be brought from the place where *Hilderic* had laid it, and after having shew'd the Queen the painting upon it, and read several times the words which were written; when she saw the Queen enter as well as she into deep thoughts, and betray several tokens of a great astonishment:

And well, Madam (said she) upon which of my Friends do you believe that my suspicions may fall with appearance of Justice? Or which of them would be in so sad an estate as this Unknown appeared to day, abandoned of all hopes, and yet loving faithfully after the loss of his hopes, able with so much facility to vanquish all the *Goths*, make so rich a Present to *Hilderic*, and preserve yet some affection for *Virginia*, and in sum, write those words which you see upon that Shield, if it be not the great and unfortunate *Constance*? That equivocation on the virtue which bears his name, might well deceive the *Visigoths*, as was without doubt his intention; but it could not have the same effect on a Roman spirit, and a Roman interess'd like my self

self in the Fortune of the great Constance; and I believe I may say after him, of him that has done all these things.

*Alas! that this to none can be,
Afflicted Constance, but to thee.*

Whilst *Virginia* was uttering these words, the Queen seem'd overwhelmed with a deep meditation, or rather cast into a mortal perplexity; and her behaviour already discover'd to *Virginia* the cruel disturbances which began to torment her: she remain'd some time in this estate, holding her eyes fix'd on the ground; but afterwards softly lifting them up upon the countenance of *Virginia*;

I am loath to believe (said she) *that I am so much abandon'd by Heaven and by Fortune, to lead hither Constance in a time when he cannot come but to trouble my repose, such as it hath pleas'd Heaven to give me; and besides, that it is uncertain whether he be living, or escap'd from that cruel distemper, which my Messenger found him in: he hath without doubt too much prudence, and considers too much my repose and my reputation, to come and expose both the one and the other to danger, as his presence of force must; and therefore, Virginia, I will not believe my self so unfortunate as you would persuade me; and so much do I fear that evil you pronounce, that I should rather chuse with all the Visigoths to be deceiv'd, than to understand it with certainty, so long as I may have some reason to doubt.*

Ab Madam (replyed *Virginia*) *can this be a misfortune so strange as you figure it, when you shall yet once more see the poor Constance? It will be so great for me* (replyed the Queen) *that scarce all I have yet prov'd can be comparable to it; for in sum, my dear Virginia, though the name of Constance be yet dear to my memory, and that I do tenderly preserve the remembrance of a man I lov'd, for so long as it was permitted me, I maintain'd my affection; but since Heaven hath bound me to a Duty, whose Rules are so strong and so nice, that the least thought of my first love is not supportable, nor can I preserve it without rendring me worthy of those evils I suffer, and all those which Fortune yet can prepare for me. For this reason, Virginia, and for the fear I have of the life of Constance, which without doubt will be in danger, if he should be known in this Country, 'twill be convenient to prevent those mischiefs that may arrive, if your suspicions be true; by obliging Constance, if it be truly be, to retire without seeing me, and not hazard for a good of so little importance, things of so great consequence, as the honour of Placidia, and the safety of Constance.*

They had enlarg'd this discourse, if they had not heard some noise at the door of the Closet; and the Queen not being willing to be surpris'd in this discourse, rose from the place where she was seated, and advanc'd towards the door, just as it was open'd; she hence went to find the King and all the company in the chamber where they had left them: but there arose such a distraction in her mind, as permitted her to take little pleasure in that nights divertisements.

The end of the Third Book.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK IV.

IN the mean time the desolate *Constance* had posted his horse with so much swiftness, that having in a little time travers'd many streets, and by the Gate most distant from the Palace pass'd out of the City, on that side where the flowing of the Sea seems to wash the feet of its lofty Walls: He pursued for some time his course along that fair strand; but stop'd when he saw himself far enough distant, and in some security from them who had a design to pursue him; and marching a gentle pace, gave liberty to his Esquire to overtake him, who with much trouble had follow'd him: his mind was so replete with the *Idea* of what he had seen, that he was not able to discern any other object: *Placidia* seem'd still before his eyes, and in such a manner employ'd all his senses, that he could hardly preserve a knowledge for any other thing.

Alas, Sir, what were the thoughts with which his spirit was turmoyl'd? what description can I make, that can in any manner represent to you the doleful estate of his mind? He came from seeing *Placidia*, that same *Placidia* whose sight he had so much desir'd; but he had seen her by the side of a happy spouse, who triumph'd through his Fortune, and by a treacherous war, over that his love and services had so well merited; nor could he think of these advantages, which his fortunate Rival had gain'd over him, without feeling the assaults of a violent despair?

Ab Placidia (cried he, when he found himself most vigorously assaulted by these sorrowful thoughts) *Ab Placidia, I have seen you by Autalph's side; and that which is yet more cruel to my imagination, you are all day in the Arms of Autalph, Autalph, that same Barbarian, before whom you so solemnly promis'd me the prebeminence in your affection. 'Tis true* (added he a little after) *that I have seen you by Autalph's side, but if my eyes have not deceiv'd me, I observ'd some marks of sadness in your eyes, and that on a day wholly dedicated to joy; and your condition it may be is unfortunate, and leaves me a larger subject to bewail than accuse you: Let us no longer then accuse our great and perhaps our miserable Princess, but let us lament until death the ill fortune of Placidia, and if it be possible, that of deplorable Constance.*

In speaking these words, he cast his eyes on the Bracelet which *Placidia* had sent him; and though he was not ignorant that this precious favour was given to an unknown Varruisher at a Tilting, and not to the amorous *Constance*, yet he could not behold it, but as a gift of his adorable Princess, nor oppose that joy he resent'd, but bringing his lips down to it almost as soon as his eyes; *Dear Present of my Divine Placidia,* (said he, kissing it with an extasie of tender affection) *though thou wer't not destin'd to the despairing Constance, yet Fortune hath with some justice return'd thee into his hands, rather than into others, and hath permitted him to receive thee rather as Heavens gift than hers: But since thou art without doubt the last which I shall receive from my Princess, I am oblig'd to look upon thee with all the tenderness of my soul, and to testify by all the marks I can give thee, the consolation which thou bringest to a mind so justly afflicted.*

Speaking in this manner, he pursued his way with his mind so intent on his misfortunes, and so fill'd with distraction for all other things, that he took no regard of a Knight follow'd by two Esquires, who accosted him, and having civilly saluted him, prayed him to tell him what news in the Court of *Autalph*, and what had that day pass'd at *Barcelona*. He repeated this request several times; but *Constance* his mind was so swallow'd up in an abyss of perplexing thoughts, that he answer'd him not one word, nor so much as took

notice that he spoke to him. This Unknown, although very wise, was incens'd at the incivility of *Constance*; and as he judg'd with reason, that the Knights of *Autalph's* Court ought to pay him some respect: *If I had not in my spirit* (said he; beholding him with a stern Countenance) *thoughts more important than that of forcing thee to thy Duty, I should perhaps soon teach thee both to hear me, and answer me.* These words pronounc'd with a loud voice, awakened *Constance* from his melancholy thoughts, and oblig'd him to look upon him who spoke them; and seeing him stand before him in a threatening posture, his grief having depriv'd him of his ordinary moderation, besides that he judg'd every man his enemy whilst he was amongst those men who had robb'd him of all his happincks; his Sword was in his hand, sooner than words in his mouth, to return him an answer; and approaching him with an aspect as terrible as his; *And who art thou* (said he) *thou, who darest so audaciously to threaten me, without having the least knowledge of me?*

He neither attended, nor received an answer, but choler being kindled in the breasts of these two Knights, they assaulted each other with an equal anger, and began, upon a quarrel of so small importance, a Combate as furious as if they had been exasperated one against the other, by love, ambition, or all other most violent passions. My Master having lost his Shield in the streets of *Barcelona*, and his enemy scorning to fight with advantage, refusing to take his own from his Esquire, their blows fell upon their Armour with more effect; and in truth, their Combate must of necessity be more cruel than if they had any thing wherewith to cover them against a tempest equally formidable, though not fear'd by either of them. By the proofs they had made of their forces in many occasions; they soon mutually knew that of their Enemy, and their esteem augmented, as well as their anger.

The Combate was maintained with an equal advantage: and it had been difficult to judge for whom the Victory would declare it self, when my Master having receiv'd a blow on the shoulder, which gave him a sleight wound, he return'd another at the same time upon the Helmet of his Enemy, and his Sword lighting upon those golden nails which fastned his Viser, broke them, and the Viser tumbling down, discover'd to my Master the face of his Enemy, and in that the Countenance of the valiant Prince *Wallia* his friend, whom he believed far distant from these Countries, and who by his last actions had made his reputation fly through the world. My Master was struck with no small astonishment at this encounter, and at the same time struggled with different thoughts what resolution he had to take, either to hide or discover himself to this Prince; but before he could determine his resolution, he saw the *Gotbick* Prince coming towards him in a posture that hindred his farther considerations; and not judging it convenient to make himself known to him, he found it less just to pursue a fight against a person to whom he had vow'd a true friendship: he therefore resolv'd by flight to save himself both from the one and the other; and turning the bridle of his Horse, with the greatest swiftness he could, he endeavour'd to get as far as he could both from *Wallia* and *Barcelona*.

The *Gotbick* Prince, who could not suspect his flight to be any defect of courage, was amaz'd at his behaviour, and had been more amaz'd, if a belief had not possess'd him that it might be some *Visigoth*, who quitted the place out of respect to a Prince of the Blood-royal. But as his valour had begot in him a great estimation, for that he had not known the like among the *Goths*, he determin'd to satisfy himself farther; and being mounted on a Horse far better, and less weary than my Master, he follow'd him at full speed, and at length overtook him, whatever diligence my Master us'd to prevent it. *Constance* was discontented to find himself overtaken, but confirm'd himself in his resolution not to make himself known, when *Wallia* accosting him; *I come not* (said he) *again to fight against you: I am already satisfied with the proof I have made of your valour, but since I know well that it is not fear that made you fly the Combate, if you be a Visigoth, I come to tell you, that you need not fear any ill effect from a rencounter which hath given me an infinite esteem for you; and if you be a stranger, it is not just that I should not acknowledge in you a consideration for me, to which I have never oblig'd you, and of the cause of which I must needs be ignorant.*

Constance was highly pleas'd as well with this noble deportment of the Prince, as with his love for his person; but judging that he could not make himself known, without forcing either his virtue or his friendship to too dangerous a proof, he persever'd in his design to hide himself from him; and knowing well that his Helmet chang'd the sound of his voyce, in such sort as it could difficultly be known, and particularly to a man who could not have the least suspicion of the truth; *Though I am no Visigoth* (said he) *I will not fight against you, having done so much already for a man who neither can, nor will ever be*

your enemy. If it be possible, I shall in few dayes tell you more at Barcelona: In the mean time, I demand of you as a recompence to what you think due to the consideration I have for you, that you will no farther pursue, nor desire to know a miserable person, to whom death would be more agreeable than the company of men.

Finishing these words, he again spur'd on his Horse to a full speed; and the Prince Wallia not willing to displease him, or obstinately endeavour to know him against his intention, permitted him to depart without farther pursuing him, or informing himself of him by his Esquire, who with difficulty follow'd him. And he being thus deliver'd from the fear of making himself known, pursu'd for some time the same Road; but when he saw darkness ready to chase away the day, he took another way, by which he return'd to a quarter of the City, which was most remote from the Gate he pass'd out at, and from the Inn he had formerly lodg'd at, and in which he had left me; whither he would not return, for fear to be too well known by his Equipage, and the stay he had made there. So having found a conveniency at the utmost extent of the City, and in the least frequented, and most obscure place possible, he sent to seek me by the Esquire which had follow'd him.

So soon as he saw me, receiving me with an Aspect in which all his passions were represented; And well Valerius (said he) I have seen Placidia, I have gain'd the honour of the Courses, and have likewise receiv'd a Bracelet from Placidia's Arm: Are not these great happinesses in one day? But alas, they are light ones, in comparison of the evils I have seen in their full career; little have I been comforted in the sight of Placidia, since I saw her only to see my misfortunes, and the happiness of a Husband to which our unpitiable destiny is fastned with indissoluble chains.

After these words, and many others little different, the length of which hinders me from relating them to you, he had the goodness to recite to me all that I have now recounted to you; and he touch'd me so much with the impression of his affectionate grievances, that himself could scarce be more. In the end, he began to deliberate, and long time he deliberated in vain the means to see Placidia, finding none but what he judg'd too dangerous for the Princess; for as for what danger might threaten himself, he consider'd it not at all. He believ'd that among all the Ladies that were come out of Italy with the Queen, there was none that would betray him; and he was likewise confident that among those Roman Officers which she had, there were few but would hazard their lives for his service, and particularly Tiburtius, whom he had some years before plac'd with her, and who was a man of Courage, Fidelity and Merit, and one of the most considerable in the House of Placidia, and whom had he rencountred, he had made no difficulty to confide in: but in short, those things that might regard the honour and repose of Placidia, bore such weight with him, that he had none but Virginia whom he might be confident of, and by whose means alone he might attempt the sight of the Princess.

Not but that upon any other occasion he could have laid a great foundation upon the Prince Wallia, (of whose Arrival I understood the News with joy, believing that by his presence and authority among the Goths, he might divert a great part of those dangers which might threaten the life of my Master, should he happen to be known) but in this he had no inclination to employ a person so bound to the Interest of Autalph, as he was both by Blood and Allegiance.

'Twas then to Virginia, he resolv'd to address himself not doubting her still so much his Friend, as to procure him all satisfaction that was possible: and because my Countenance was in much less danger to be known than his, as having been less observ'd in the World, and particularly by the Goths, with whom I had never had any converse, he resolv'd to remain conceal'd whilst I sought an occasion to speak to Virginia, and inform her of his being at Barcelona. Things being thus determin'd, I employ'd all my credit to make him take a light repast, and some little repose, to which with some trouble I engag'd him.

In the mean time Prince Wallia had been receiv'd by the King of the Goths, and by all the Court, in which after Sigerie (one degree nearer to the Crown) he held the first Rank, but was besides what was due to his Birth, more especially ador'd for his great virtues, and courted with all the marks of esteem and respect he could desire; and that Night having saluted the King and Queen at their return from Hilderie's, both the one and the other testifi'd by their reception of him, the great affection they bore him. He entertained them a long time with the subject which had led him back to Barcelona after so long an absence, giving them an account of his Adventures, the recital of which would perhaps be no less agreeable than those I am now recounting, and which without doubt your Majesty hath heard,

heard, since they are of too great importance not to have attain'd to your knowledge.

The next Morning so soon as the Queen was ready, being in her Chamber with some Ladies, amongst whom was *Virginia*, who notwithstanding her marriage attended her as early as ordinarily; he was admitted in, as well by the privilege of his Birth, as the particular consideration the Queen had for him: For in short, during all the misfortunes of her Captivity, and all that had happen'd to her till her Marriage, she had receiv'd so much assistance, and good offices from this Prince, that there was scarce any person in the World to whom she believed her self more oblig'd, and in whom she had more confidence: And as all the thoughts she had for *Constance*, were full of Innocence and Vertue, she had open'd her mind to him upon that subject, and that so much the rather, because she had not preserved the least thought in her bosome which might injure the duty she ought to the King her Husband.

She therefore now received him in the best manner in the World; and after having made some farther enquiry into his Adventures, in which she claim'd a becoming interest, and that he had acquainted her with the estate of his life without any other witnesses than *Virginia*, the other Ladies keeping a distance out of respect, they fell into discourse of the Marriage of *Virginia*, and those things which had fallen out the day before in the great place of *Barcelona*. *Wallia* had already heard speak of the confusion was made among the *Goths* by an Unknown Knight, and as well of his fair Courses, as of his discourse, and how he behaved himself toward *Hilderic*, and those who would have stopp'd him by Command of the King; and after having from *Virginia* inform'd himself of this Unknown, and was informed better than before of his carriage, and the fashion of his Arms, on an instant making a reflection which he had not thought of before, and comparing what they had told him, to what he had preserv'd in his memory; *I am very much deceiv'd, Madam,* (said he to the Queen) *If I encountred not this Unknown Knight, and if this encounter hath not something in it of extraordinary, and worthy your attention.* At these words he related particularly to the Queen all that had happen'd between him and my Master, as well upon the ground of their quarrel, which he no longer attributed to incivility, but to the distraction and profound sadness of the Unknown Knight; the particulars of their combat, the consideration the Stranger had for him so soon as he saw his Face, the words they had had together, after he had overtaken him, and fixing particularly upon the last, which had extremely touch'd him, and by which he pray'd him *not to endeavour to know a miserable person, to whom death would be more agreeable than the company of men.*

Whilst *Wallia* made this Discourse, the Countenance of the Queen several times chang'd colour; and having beheld *Virginia*, with a deep sigh, she fix'd her eyes on the Ground, and remain'd like a person wholly amaz'd and stupified. *Virginia's* Actions seconded the Queens, neither of them endeavouring to dissemble their thoughts before a man of whom they had not the least distrust: and the Prince observing them, was no less surpriz'd than they, till addressling himself to the Queen; *I know not, Madam,* (said he) *if it be the discourse I have made to your Majesty, which hath caused this change I have mark'd in your Countenance; and I am more ignorant whether the respect that I owe you, will permit me to inform my self.* *Placidia* remained yet some time silent without answering him; but at length, lifting up her eyes from the Ground where she had fix'd them; *'Tis your discourse, without doubt* (said she to the Prince) *which hath confirm'd me in those suspicions which made this last the most cruel night of my whole life: and since in an innocence like mine, I can confide all things to your vertue, without fearing any thing from those whom this discourse may interest; Virginia may relate to you all that she would perswade me to, and of which I remain almost convinc'd by the confirmation you give me, which makes me fear* (ended she with a sigh) *I am come to the very last of my misfortunes.*

Wallia hearkn'd to these words with an intention which made him begin already to enter into some knowledg of the truth: but desiring to learn more of *Virginia*, she declared to him the suspicion they had, that this valiant Unknown person, who had made himself so much spoken of in *Barcelona*, and who without doubt was the same against whom he fought, was the great and unfortunate *Constance*; which they judg'd not only by his carriage and actions, all parallel to those of that great man, but by the mournful colour of his Arms, his sorrowful Impress, which denoted the loss of his Hopes; the words which were written upon his Shield, in which he had not so much as conceal'd his name, though to abuse the *Visigoths*, he appli'd it to an other sence; the esteem he testified for *Virginia*, for whom *Constance* had alwayes a great respect; the Magnificent present he made to *Hilderic*, which could not come but from a great Prince, and from a man liberal like *Constance*; the value he had testified for himself, to whom he was alwayes a particular Friend; and the

he words he had spoke at their parting, all agreeing and conformable to the rest.

Whilst *Virginia* was speaking in this manner, *Placidia* perhaps touch'd with the last words of *Constance*, which she spoke over again, let fall some tears which might be seen trickle down her Rosie Cheek; and after liting up her eyes to Heaven in a languishing posture; *O God* (said she) *Protector of the innocent and miserable, can it be that you reserve me yet to this desperate misfortune, if our suspicions be true? Or can you give Fortune so much Empire over the Daughter of the great Theodosius? Wallia* was so much touch'd with the words and tears of *Placidia*, that he easily entred into the same suspicions; and both by the discourse of *Virginia*, and the reflection which himself made upon the Action, and the person of him against whom he fought, he doubted not at all but it was certainly the great *Constance*. This thought, against which he strove a little to defend himself, plung'd him into a deep sadness, as well for the pity he took upon the misfortunes of so great a man, as for the grief he had not to be able upon such an occasion as this, which had brought him into those Countries, to give him those assistances which in all others he might expect from his Friendship. These considerations, which began infinitely to disquiet him, silenc'd him for a long time. But in the end forcing himself to dissemble that Astonishment, which might augment the Queens, and increase her discontents, in stead of giving her consolation, endeavouring to cloath his Countenance with a more serene Aspect:

Madam, (said he to the Queen) *I am much perswaded by the reasons there are in your suspicions; and in all the appearances of this Unknown Knight, I find the Courage, the Valour, the Carriage, and the Fortune of Constance: The knowledge I have of his misfortunes, doth sensibly augment mine, and it is upon this occasion, that I find my self truly unhappy, that I cannot offer to so Illustrious a Friend the Services which I would endeavour to render him, were I neither Goth, nor of the Blood of the King your Spouse; But however engag'd as I am to the Interests of Autalph, both by Blood and Allegiance, there are good offices which I can render Constance without offending him; and by offering him what I can, he will know how to discern by his virtue, that which mine permits me to do, from that it defends me from. I dare my self assure you, that your Honour is in security as to his pretensions; and that love which without doubt makes him seek occasions to see you, cannot inspire a thought into him, by which your duty may be offended.*

I am of the same belief with you (answered the Queen, interrupting him) *for I have known so much virtue in all the Actions of Constance, that I cannot believe any passion whatsoever can taint it: but though our thoughts are not criminal, in the condition I am, I can have no innocent comierce with Constance, nor see him, nor think of him, without wounding that Duty I owe to the King my Spouse, and my own Honour. However, in those misfortunes which his arrival may make me fear, I receive you as a great comfort, and as a succour sent me from Heaven in my afflictions; not only because you can justify my proceeding, which shall be entirely known to you: but because by the friendship between you and Constance, which notwithstanding the Interests of your House, you generously preserve, you may oblige him to retire himself without seeing me, from a Country where his stay cannot but be ruinous to my reputation: and in demanding of him this proof of the consideration he hath for you, and of that which he may yet have for me, you may take care, if you please, to deliver him from those dangers which may threaten his life, if he should be known in these Territories: Behold now, Prince, what I hope from the friendship you profess both to him and to me; and behold the office I conjure you to render to the unfortunate, to whom it is not permitted to receive or desire any thing more from a Friend generous and just as you are.*

In speaking these last words, the fair Queen could not refrain from letting fall some tears; and the Gothick Prince, notwithstanding the resentments he had of his own unhappiness, which perhaps at another time was so great as might justly demand the entire thoughts of his mind, was touch'd in such sort, that there wanted but little to make him accompany his own tears with hers: but endeavouring to force that grief he felt for the Fortune of two such Illustrious Personages, with some pain, endeavouring to reply to the Queen:

Madam, (said he) *I will faithfully perform one part of what you ordain me; and though you had not commanded me to seek Constance, it had been difficult for me to know that he is near us, and not use my utmost power to find him, and offer him that service may be permitted me to render him. I shall see him, without doubt, if I have yet so much happiness as to meet him, and shall endeavour as much as possible to comfort his misfortunes, and to divert with the peril of my own life those dangers that may threaten his: but to make known your intentions never to see him more, I beseech you to employ, if you please, some person less sensible than my self of misfortunes of this nature; and if you judge I may upon this occasion*
procure

procure the satisfaction of an unfortunate Friend, he pleas'd also to think it fit, that I should not add to his miseries.

The Queen was about to return an Answer to the Prince, when they heard a noise at the Chamber-door, and immediatly after they perceiv'd the King to enter, follow'd by *Sigeric*, *Hilderic*, and some others, who us'd to have the principal access to him. The Queen was surpriz'd at the Arrival of the King; and so much the more, because she fear'd lest he should perceive in her Face the marks of their sad converse; to conceal which, she cover'd her eyes with a handkerchiff she had in her hand, feigning to be troubl'd with the head-ach; and *Wallia*, to favour her in that design, approaching the King, began to entertain him in some Affair, and in a short time after, under some pretence led him out of the Chamber.

So soon as they were departed, the Queen, to pass away her sadness with more liberty, entred, only accompanied with *Virginia*, into her Closet, the windows of which answer'd to the Palace-Garden; and it was at the same time that I being departed from our Lodging by the commandment of my Master, to seek some occasions to speak to *Virginia*, was come into the Garden (where I understood she often walked) and was now in an Alley not far distant from the Windows of the Closet; so that the Queen had no sooner open'd them, but casting her eyes upon the Garden, after she had for some moments look'd about, she retir'd with a pale countenance, and let her self fall into a chair, with a violent disturbance of mind easily observ'd by *Virginia*.

Virginia approach'd the Queen, strangely astonish'd, and earnestly demanding the cause of that last trouble which appeared in her countenance and whole person. *Look Virginia* (said she, with a gesture craving compassion) *and you will possibly as well as I see within the Garden that same Valerius, whom we all so well know, and whom we have so often seen attend on Constance.* *Virginia*, without returning her Answer, cast her eyes into the Garden, where, as well as the Queen, she saw and easily knew me; nor was it difficult for her to do so, the distance not being great; and I being there to make my self seen by her, had my entire Visage fixed upon the window: so soon as I saw that she had marked me, I made her a very submissive reverence; and notwithstanding the trouble the sight of me caused in her, she return'd my salutation by bowing down her head, which let me know she had not mistaken me.

The Queen had observ'd her, and having call'd her to her; *And well, Virginia* (said she) *is not that Valerius? and am not I* (continued she, seeing *Virginia* did not answer her) *the most unfortunate person in the World, to be reduc'd to fear more than death, where all the offence I can do to my duty, is but the sight of a man once dear to me, and to whom I seem'd to be desir'd by Heaven, by the Emperour my Brother, and my own Inclinations? However may it please God* (added she some minutes after) *that I resolve well what course I have to take, and that the reluctance which I have to flee the sight of Constance, make me not forget what I ought to prefer before all things; go, my dear Virginia,* (said she, embracing her) *go, find Valerius, who without doubt seeks the occasion to speak with you; and as all the secrets of my heart are known to you, tell him all I think, and all that I can, and all that I am oblig'd to do. Tell him that in all my miseries and in my change of condition, I have never forgot what I owe to the affection and virtue of his Master: but this remembrance, which does but render me more miserable, cannot with reason make me forget what I owe to my reputation, which if it had been dear to him, he had not come into this Country to seek occasions to ruin it. That both his person and the love he bears me, are known to the King my Husband, and the greatest part of the Goths; and that he cannot expose himself to the danger to be known, without exposing to the same hazard his life and the honour of Placidia. That I conjure him by all the affection he ever bore me, and by all that ever I had for him so long as it was permitted me, to give me this sole proof I can demand, to retire without seeing me, out of this Country, where he cannot see me without losing me, and where he cannot make any stay without casting me into those unquiet cares, which will be far more cruel than death. You may add to this all you can judge sufficient to persuade him: and thus will you do me an office I absolutely desire of you, and which is the best that you can possibly do me considering my present fortunes.*

Virginia would have return'd an Answer to the Queen; and perhaps have excus'd her self from the commission she gave her, and in which as well as *Wallia* she found her self little capable to serve her; but the Queen stopp'd her mouth so soon as she began to discourse, and press'd her in such sort not to lose the opportunity to speak to me, that having made me a sign from the window, she was constrain'd to descend a little pair of stairs, which came from the Queen's Apartment, and by which she often us'd to walk down with her into the Garden. So soon as she was entred with only one Maid that attend

readed her, I observ'd, that not to speak to me in a place too much expos'd to view, she sought the shady Alleys, and after having taken notice what way she took, I follow'd her, and met her in the least frequented part of the Garden.

So soon as she saw her self at liberty to speak to me, she waited for me; and receiving me with a Countenance full of all marks of tenderness and grief; "*Valerius* (said she) "Where is *Constance*? He is at *Barcelona* (answered I) and you saw him yesterday bear a successful part in the solemnities of your marriage. Yes, *Valerius*, I saw him (replied she) and the Queen saw him too, and we suspected well that by his carriage a person so extraordinary could be no other than *Constance*. Alas (continued she with a sigh) with what joy should I understand his arrival amongst us, and with what joy should I hope to see him, if in that interview there were not more to be fear'd than hop'd; and if in brief, we were not unfortunate for those reasons too well known to you? 'Tis true (replied I) my Master is certainly the most miserable of all men; but he is not yet so much as he will be, if you are no longer his friend: and I am charg'd before all things to inform my self, if you have still preserv'd that amity for him which he hath so often had experience of. Yes without doubt (said *Virginia*) I have preserv'd it for him, and will preserve it to my Tomb: but this friendship is little profitable at this time, since I cannot perform for him any service, though I desire it more than ever.

After these first words, we walk'd in a very retir'd Alley, and had a long discourse, in which I related to her succinctly the miseries which had happen'd to my Master after our parting, and learnt of her all those other things which I have but now recounted to your Majesty, especially the discourses between the Queen and Prince *Wallia*: but when in the end of our discourse, she told me the last resolution the Queen had taken never to see *Constance*, and the order she had given her to entreat him to retire without seeing her, with which she would charge me, though she testified the great repugnance she had to do it, I was, and the seem'd touch'd with a grief little different from that which *Constance* himself could have felt; and interrupting her in the discourse which she made with a visible trouble;

Why Madam (said I) *is it not enough that Constance dies, but that I must be the person destin'd to pronounce his death? Ah Madam, pronounce it your self, if you have so much courage; for I declare my self unable to serve you in this rigid employment. I sued as much to the Queen* (replied *Virginia*) *and I vow to you, that I never had such a force upon my spirits as to acquit my self of this commission concerning Constance. If you be still his friend,* (replied I) *or if you have a true pity of his miseries, you will testify it upon this occasion: 'Tis to you only I have order to, address my self to obtain some means to see the Queen: you ought not to refuse this succour to a friend, who hopes it from no other but your self; and you will infallibly give him a death, if you consent not. Ah! Valerius* (replied *Virginia*) *you are too cruel to speak to me in this manner: for you judge ill of my intentions, if you do not believe that nothing can be more dear to me than to serve the afflicted Constance; but alas, I have not the power to do it, and Fortune is aversly contrary to us.*

Finishing these words, pity brought tears to her eyes, and I observing she was truly touch'd, pressed her in such sort, that in the end I brought her to seek some means for my Master to see and to speak to the Queen, though she should run a hazard to displease her: but because this could not be done without deceiving the Queen, who would never consent to such an interview, she sought with a great deal of difficulty the best way; and in the end propos'd one she believ'd the least dangerous, and most likely.

There is a very little way distant from the City of *Barcelona*, a house of Religious men, consecrated to the service of that God which we adore, and which, after the *Goths* became Masters of that Country, was maintain'd by the authority of the Queen. Not that the *Goths* do not know and serve the same Divinity, and that under the Empire of *Valens* they quitted your Religion to embrace that of the *Romans*; but that after some time they received into their belief those errors which one *Arius* introduc'd, and which makes a considerable difference between theirs and ours. But *Placidia* having preserv'd the purity of hers, to which the King her Husband had given her liberty; and finding comfort in the conversation of these men wholly dedicated to God, she visited them often; and when her sadness made her seek a solitude, after she had offer'd up her Prayers in the Temple, she us'd to walk for some time in a wood near their house, in which there are both Alleys and Arbours, which make it a curious retirement; and when she was in this place, all the *Goths* and the King himself had that respect not to trouble her retirements. Some days were pass'd, since she went last, and this made *Virginia* believe that it was in that place better than any other, that *Constance* might see her without her having any suspicion that she had contributed;

contributed: she told me at the same time, the hours at which she was accustomed to go, promising to do what she could to oblige her to go on the morrow.

After having made me this promise, and vowed me with a thousand assurances her friendship for my Master, she left me; and immediately after I quitted the Garden and went to find *Constance*. He ran to me without patience, and without giving me leave to answer, he ask'd me a hundred questions in an instant. I resolv'd to conceal from him one part of the truth, believing that if I should tell him the firm resolution the Queen had never to see him more, I should cast him into a grief which might prove too fatal: and therefore dissembling that to him, sweetning those things which I believ'd necessary, and telling him that *Placidia* had still reserv'd for him an infinite tenderness and resentment of his miseries I endeavour'd to abate the trouble I fear'd; yet I let him understand, that she was fearful of occasions to see him, as well for the scruples her Duty inspir'd her with, as for fear of the danger would threaten him; should he be known.

He hearkned patiently to this discourse, being well prepar'd with the knowledge he had of her severe virtue, to receive a part of what I told him: but when he observed me with difficulty endeavour to sweeten what might seem most cruel in the intentions of the Queen; *sib Valerius* (said he) *you flatter me: I know well by your discourse, and by the trouble you have to dissemble the truth, that Placidia will see me no more. Yes, she would see you, my Lord,* (replyed I) *but she fears by seeing you to expose your life and her reputation to unavoidable danger; and therefore it was with a great deal of reason that Virginia hath advis'd that we ought to seek an opportunity without advertising her, lest her fear should deter her from taking such a resolution.* In sum, having told him the proposition *Virginia* had made me, to go to the house of those Religious persons, and the hopes she had given me, that he might have a sight of the Queen in that place, with more convenience and assurance than in all others, *I see well* (said he) *that it is to Virginia only that I owe that comfort my hopes can give me; but 'tis not for me, unfortunate as I am, to chuse neither the favours nor the persons from whom I am to receive them: but be it by whose assistance soever I gain it, the sight of Placidia will still be more dear to me than my life.*

We now only attended the nights black mantle to conceal us out of the City; my Master believing he could not in the day-time pass the streets, without putting himself in danger of being known, not having any pretence to pass armed as the day before. In short, having spent the rest of the day, and a good part of the night, ere the morning again appear'd, we departed from our lodging and from the City, going to seek this house of Religious persons, with design to lodge, if possible, in some place not far distant from it. But here we had an encounter which we did not expect; for after we had by the light of the rising Sun, seen and known the House, the Temple, and the Wood, of which *Virginia* spoke; and that *Constance*, whose excellent virtues have still been accompanied with a great piety towards Heaven, was entred the Temple, and had remained some time at his Prayers; one of the persons who in this house had devoted himself to Divinity, having passed twice or thrice by him, and withly looking upon him, knew him; and standing before him with the usual marks of great astonishment, he gave him the opportunity to note more particularly his Countenance, and to know him, notwithstanding the change which so extraordinary a habit might cause in a person who had spent a good part of his life in his service, and whom he had singularly affected amongst his Domesticks, and whom for his good qualities, and the confidence he had in him, he had given to *Placidia*, when he parted from *Rome* to go to the *Gallick War*.

Tiburtius, for so he was called, had accompanied the Princess in her captivity, and had stayed in her service, until the time of her Marriage; but either inspired by Heaven, or weary of the miseries of the world, he had abandon'd it, and retired himself amongst those persons who liv'd in this House, where he was considerable, both for his virtues, and the great esteem which the Queen still preserv'd for him.

His discretion moderated the transportation of his thoughts at the view of *Constance*; and though he found himself strongly affected with the kindness he had for him, yet judging well that he could not be in that Country with any design to make himself known; before he approach'd him, he carefully look'd about him, lest there should be any person in the Temple to be a witness of his actions: and then addressing himself to him; *Ab my Lord* (said he) *is it possible that my eyes see you without delusion?* By these words, and by the found of his voice, *Constance* could not doubt but this man was truly *Tiburtius*; and finding some comfort in the presence of a person, who notwithstanding his long abode among the *Goths*, was not at all suspected by him: *Yes Tiburtius* (said he with his natural sweetness) *you see the miserable Constance, and you see him in an estate where his meet-*

ing with your self cannot but yield him some comfort. *Would to God* (replied *Tiburtius*) that you could find it in a place where I have found my refuge and entire repose; and that in this happy retreat, there do but rest a means for me to testify, that in renouncing all things in the world, the affection I bear to so great a Master is the only thing I have not renounc'd.

After these words, *Constance* having made known to him that he was oblig'd to stay for some days near this house with the greatest secrecy imaginable, and that he should receive from him a considerable piece of service, if he would instruct him in the means how to compass it: *Tiburtius* after having some few minutes silently considered; *My Lord* (said he) *I have so much knowledge of your virtue, that I cannot judge ill of your intentions, whatever passion may make you act; and therefore without fear to offend the God I serve, or my profession, I dare offer you that little service you desire of me, and a retreat as secret as you can wish.* In short, he told him that if he would send away his equipage, as he might easily do, he might pass that time he desir'd in his Chamber, with all security imaginable, and command with an absolute power all those things which in the condition of life he had chosen, lay in his power to serve him in.

Constance having thank'd him with great marks of gratitude, gave me his orders; and whilst he continu'd in discourse with *Tiburtius*, I went to the place where we had left our horses and the two Esquires, and commanded him who had follow'd him the day before, and who was a person both faithful and courageous, to retire himself with the horses into some private place, and to come and find me alone at an hour appointed at the Temple Gate, to inform me where they were, and receive the orders of *Constance* according as there should be occasion.

Having perform'd this injunction, I return'd to my Master, and following him to the Chamber of *Tiburtius*, where his orders were that I should stay with him, and where *Tiburtius* caus'd him to be serv'd with all necessaries, if not with magnificence, yet at least with decency, not fearing his companions, who besides the little curiosity they had for the things of this world, much lov'd and consider'd him:

'Twas here that my Master more largely discover'd to him his intentions, the innocency of which he endeavour'd to justify with more diligence than he had done; had he spoken them to a person of any other profession, and principally to him, to whom besides my self they had at other times been more clearly made known, than to any other of his Domesticks; and *Tiburtius* having attentively hearkned to him; *Would to God, my Lord* (said he, when he perceiv'd him silent) *that the change you prove in your Fortune, may make you seriously take notice of the truth, and weakness of humane condition, and not endeavour to search among men a true consolation, which you will only find at the feet of that Divinity we serve; and afterwards regard with pity those, which you see exposed to those calamities which perpetually trouble this miserable life. But since it will be difficult to reduce you presently to these considerations, and that it will be perhaps somewhat of injustice, to deprive the Empire and the true Religion of so great a stay, and so generous a defender; I will not with too feeble Arms combat your intentions; and I will resist them so much the less, because I find them not so criminal as to be condemned by those to whom affection leaves the least indulgence. For your satisfaction, Virginia hath told the truth, in telling to Valerius, that in this place rather than any other, you may see the Queen, who here passes her hours of retreat and solitude: and since it is only the sight of her you desire, and that I believe I shall not offend in serving you in this design, I have hopes I may do it, by causing you to enter into the Wood by a small door, which we have on our side, whilst the Queen enters at the great Portal to walk with Virginia, who ordinarily is the only person that accompanies her: But remember, my Lord, that you demand only to see the Queen, and that you ought not to abuse the Ministry of a person consecrated to the service of God, in any thing which might offend him, and which will incense without doubt the Queen, if she should have any cognizance of it.*

Constance return'd thanks to *Tiburtius* for the offer he made him, and remov'd those scruples by new protestations: but a little after, beholding him with eyes that express'd the feeling he had of his miseries; *Oh Tiburtius* (said he) *what consolation had you to accompany Placidia in her captivity, and in her misfortunes? But alas!* (added he with a sigh) *how have you permitted her to be unfaithful to me? Oh my Lord* (replied he) *accuse not Placidia of being unfaithful to you; lament her evils, rather than reproach them, which you cannot do without injustice. I should lament for her without doubt* (replied *Constance*) *if I believ'd her unhappy, but what unhappiness can you find in the condition of a woman, who passes her life in the arms of a husband whom she loves, and for whose sake she hath forgot all others who might have claim'd a share in her remembrance? I believe without doubt* (added *Tiburtius*) *that the Queen loves the King, as she is oblig'd to do both by her duty and virtue;*

but you know well, my Lord, her inclinations were never for him; and it was not without much difficulty she forc'd her inclination to yield to this violence.

“ You have understood, without doubt, what she did, and what she suffer'd in the siege, and at the sack of *Rome*; and you ought to understand that in all those miseries that afterwards afflicted her, she preserv'd as long as it was possible, the desire she had to give her self to none but you. During the time the *Goths* stay'd at *Rome*, *Alaric* caus'd her to be serv'd with all that respect due to her Dignity; but she was continually expos'd to the persecutions of *Autalph*, who never stirr'd from her, and was constantly troubled with his continual protestations of love, no less odious to her than her Captivity it self, though she receiv'd him with the same aversion that she testified before the change of her condition.

“ But as she knew *Alaric* to be a Prince of great courage, and endow'd with more virtue than is ordinary in a *Barbarian* King; by her sweetness she endeavour'd to rely upon him, judging well that his Authority was necessary to defend her from the violencies she might fear from *Autalph*; and in this, her hopes deceiv'd her not: for *Alaric* had been but few days with her, but he conceiv'd a marvellous esteem for her virtue, nor respect'd he her less for that consideration, than that of her birth, opposing himself to the violent affections of his Brother, and making him observe that respect he ought not to a Captive, but to the Daughter of the great *Theodosius*.

“ 'Tis true, that the interposition of Prince *Wallis* did very much conduce to the confirming of *Alaric* in these thoughts, for he employ'd himself with infinite Generosity for the service of the Princess; and *Alaric* considering him both for his merit, and those great things he had done, more highly than for the nearness of blood, yielded much to his intreaties and intercession. But a while after there happen'd some things which caus'd a change in his affection for him, and *Placidia* was constrain'd to flee for refuge to the reputation of the Princess *Theodolinda*, of whom *Alaric* was become extremely passionate, and who had a powerful predominancy over his spirit.

“ *Theodolinda* employ'd her self for her with a sincere affection; and the consideration of the service which she might render the Princess, made her suffer from *Alaric* those testimonies of affection, to which she had an infinite opposition. Soon after she was forc'd to follow the Conquerour; and this unfortunate Princess turning her eyes swelling with tears, towards the desolate City, spoke those things which mov'd the very *Barbarians* to compassion, and which without doubt had oblig'd *Alaric* to have given her liberty, if *Autalph* had not been continually at his heels to hinder it, protesting that he could not but with his life lose the hopes of possessing *Placidia*.

“ *Alaric*, who had a real value for him, employ'd his daily intreaties to the Princess; but when he desir'd him to do farther, he told him that he could not resolve to force the Daughter of the Great *Theodosius*; in the mean time she was led away captive with the other Princesses, and a great number of Ladies of Illustrious birth, companions of her captivity and misfortunes: Yet she suffer'd all with an admirable constancy, nor was there any thing she suffer'd not more patiently than the love of *Autalph*: sometimes he would treat her with sufficient respect; and as he was by nature extremely fierce, so his nature carried him sometimes to a misbecoming violence, making her know by his words the change of her condition: but whether it were through the greatness of her courage, or the confidence she had in the protection of *Alaric*, she manifested to him an invincible constancy, making him often judge that the taking of *Rome* had render'd his condition little happier than before.

“ It was in one of the Cities of *Lucania* where we made some stay whilst the Gothick Troops ravag'd the whole Province that he fiercely assaulted her; and after he had unprofitably with prayers endeavour'd to bend her, finding her still firm in her resolution not to give her self to him, his anger overcame the respect he had for her; and beholding her with eyes, which express'd both his choler and his love; I see, Madam (said he) that the ways which I take, do not at all advance my hopes, and that I must in spite of my self, have recourse to those which the rights of war permit me to follow: I am unwilling to fall into extremes, and shall with a great deal of trouble violate that respect I bear you; but you may remember, if you please, that a despairing patience turns into fury, and that you ought not to reduce to those terms a man who could do all things, if his love to you, were not greater than his power over you.

“ *Placidia* listen'd to this discourse with an infinite disdain; and looking upon *Autalph* as a person whom the change of her condition could only make her fear; The power that you have over me (said she) comes by Fortune, and not by a legitimate right;

“and though by the success of an unjust War I am brought under your power, you cannot be ignorant that I am Daughter and Sister both to the Eastern and Western Emperours. This ought possibly to hold you in remembrance of what you owe me: but when you shall forget it, I hope I shall not be forsaken by Heaven, though I find no success among men. Those from whom you ought to receive it (replied *Autalpb*) are very slow to give it you; and without speaking of your Brother the Emperour, who seems to approve my design, since he doth not endeavour to hinder it, that happy *Constance* to whom you destine this Fortune, which with so much obstinacy you deny to me, is either very negligent of his duty, or perhaps employed in a War which in my judgement may be of less importance, than your defence, and his Countries.

“These words made the very heart of the Princess tremble; and being yet ignorant of the estate wherein you were, which she understood few days after, she felt a mortal grief for the reproaches cast upon you; however she endeavour'd to dissemble it, and was about to return an answer to *Autalpb* which might equalize his fierceness, when *Alaric* entering the Chamber, she complain'd to him of his Brothers threats; and the *Gothick* King blaming him in her presence, commanded him to preserve the respect due to so great a Princess.

“In the mean time, as I was he of her Domesticks who had the most entire knowledge of the affection she had for you, and in this regard, he in whom she had the most confidence, as to what concern'd you; she often complain'd her self to me of you, but still with an infinite sweetness, and in such a manner, which made me well judge of the difficulty she had to accuse you: But when the Messenger return'd which she had sent, and she by him had understood the deplorable condition in which you were, she not only excus'd you, but seem'd far more sensible of your misfortune, than she had been either for that of her Country, or her own; and gave her self up to a grief so immoderate for a person of her humour, that without the help of Heaven, to which she had daily recourse, with an admirable Piety, she could not have liv'd so long as to fall into the hands of *Autalpb*.

“My Lord, I shall not recount to you all the Discourses she made in deploring your misfortunes, and her own. Sometimes perhaps she attributed it to the goodness of Heaven, which to deliver you from so many mischiefs, as her misfortunes might cause you to suffer, took you out of the world. Nor will I recite to you all that she daily endur'd through the persecution of *Autalpb*, who did every day in the same manner afflict her, as his passion instructed him. All her comfort and stay against his Power, was in the succour she receiv'd from Prince *Wallia*, and the Princess *Theodolinda*, who to be in a capacity to serve her, admitted more willingly *Alaric's* love, than for any other consideration. But in *Campania*, where we made some stop, she lost the assistance of *Wallia* that Generous Prince, having some controversies with *Alaric* known to the whole world, which constrain'd him to banish himself from him, after he had manifested upon this occasion an admirable Grandeur of courage.

“After the departure of *Wallia*, which begot in her an infinite discontent, she yet made use of the Authority of *Alaric* against the enterprises of his Brother: and certainly that King, though a *Barbarian*, had a brave and generous soul, nor would ever have suffer'd that *Autalpb* should have acted any violence against her, but Fortune would have it so, that being arriv'd at *Consense*, he was surpris'd with a malady, against which all remedies proved vain, and by the which he in few days lost a life made glorious among men.

“Though *Placidia* had no great reason to afflict her self for the loss of a man who had been the ruine of her Country, and had reduc'd her to a deplorable Captivity, yet she had some particular reasons which made her receive it with a particular grief, shedding some tears at his decease. The cause of which were well known to us, and soon after to all the *Goths*. *Autalpb* succeeded to his Brother by rights of his birth, and was crown'd soon after his death. No sooner did he see himself seated in his Sovereign Authority, but he made the unfortunate *Placidia* sensible of his power, declaring to her his design to espouse her in despite of all obstacles whatsoever.

“*Placidia* sigh'd and griev'd at this deplorable effect of her helpless condition; she lamented, she wept, she invoc'd the Heavens, as she was accusom'd, and tryed all ways possible, either by sweetness or resolution to divert the intention of the King of the *Goths*; and indeed, she manifested at that time a constancy and resolution admirable, making her Lover, yet her persecutor, oftentimes know, that death would be much more sweet to her than the Marriage he propos'd; or the Crown he offer'd: But *Autalpb* did neither menace her life, nor was she of a Religion which might permit her to seek her
“end

“end by violent means; yet whilst she had nothing else to fear, she remain'd unshaken in her design, never to be others than yours.

“But when *Autalph* by the knowledge he had that the change of his condition nothing better'd his Fortunes, grew more and more enrag'd, and lost all the respect he had for her, treating her like a Captive, and making her know that his intentions were more cruel against her than he had yet shewn; and that he pretended by the power he had over her, to what she refus'd by Marriage, she trembled with horrour, and in an instant lost all her courage.

“In effect, my Lord, she was so much frighted with the threats of the *Barbarian King*, and fear'd in such sort the disgrace to which she saw her self expos'd, that as well perswaded by this fear, as by the counsels of all persons that were near her, she was constrain'd to accept of the least of those two evils which he propos'd: and it is certain, my Lord, that her most faithful servants counsell'd her rather to consent to espouse *Autalph*, than attend those utmost extremities he prepar'd for her, and that disgraceful condition into which he would throw her. I was my self of the number of those that sollicit'd her, though I was not without doubt the person to whom your interests were least considerable; and I assure you, my Lord, you would have sollicit'd her your self, rather than have seen her expos'd to that infamy with which she was threaten'd.

“In short, Heaven and Fortune would have it, and since of force I must pass lightly over this rugged way, I'll only tell you that she espoused *Autalph*; but I must tell you with the same truth, that she went to the Temple as one may go to his Tomb; and that she enter'd into this condition, as one may enter into the most cruel Prison, or into the most deplorable miseries. If she espous'd *Autalph* without loving him, she was a great while his wife without being able to perswade her self to love him, though by her admirable virtue she us'd all her power to do it, and dayly demanded from Heaven that change in her heart which she believ'd her self oblig'd to by her duty. But some time after their Marriage, she did a thing which touch'd him very nearly, and which more than all the rest, reduced her to those kind thoughts she hath for him; which are without doubt such as she thought owing to her virtue, and to the respect she had for Heaven.

“The news being brought that *Attalus* was chas'd from *Italy*, that *Artabure* had discomitted in several incounters those *Goths* which *Alaric* had left there, and that *Honorius* prepar'd to return to *Rome*, and settle all things in their first estate: he presently resolv'd, as well for the natural inclination he had for war, as to revenge himself of the injury he pretended to have receiv'd; and more than for these reasons, by the sollicitation of the *Goths* more covetous than ever of the pillage, of which they had tasted the sweetness, to turn once more his Arms against the unfortunate *Italy*, and finish the ruine of that deplorable City, which the cruelty of his hand had already lay'd desolate.

“So soon as he resolv'd, he began to put his design in execution; all things prepar'd themselves for the war more than ever; the dispersed Troops were rallied from all parts, and in few days he saw himself at the head of a multitude of armed Soldiers destin'd to the ruine of her Country. The first sweetness of his Marriage could not divert him from his resolution, and he prepar'd himself to march more vigorously than ever to the destruction of *Italy*, when he observ'd in the Countenance, in the discourse, and in all the actions of the Queen, far greater grief than he had ever seen in the greatest miseries of her Captivity. In short, she was so smitten with this last blow of her evil fortune, and believ'd her self so little oblig'd to dissemble the grief she felt, that she gave her self up wholly to it, and demonstrated all the marks which could be expected from the most sensible miseries. At whatever hour the King her spouse came to visit her, he found her cheeks overflowed with tears, and heard nothing but plaints issue from her lips, and sighs from her breast; his infinite love made him tenderly sensible of her grief, and having earnestly press'd her to know the cause, why she mourn'd so much at that time when she had born her past miseries with such a constancy;

Why, my Lord, (said she, beholding him with eyes swollen with tears) how can you expect that my courage should serve me at this time, as it hath perhaps assisted me in the first misfortunes of my life? or do you not consider that between those and this last, with which I am threated, there is a difference which renders me more cruelly unfortunate? while before your Arms attack'd Italy, when you brought fire and sword into all parts, and I beheld the desolation of my native Country, and my self Captive of the Goths, I saw nothing within my miseries, in which there was not to be found some example; looking upon your Soldiers as the enemies of my Country; I suffer'd the change of my Fortune, as a misery to which humane con-

dition is expos'd: but now my misfortune is both without comparison and without example, and Fortune hath now put on a more terrible countenance: For in brief, my Lord, they were at other times our Enemies, which march'd to the ruine of the places of our Nativity: 'Twas Alaric, whom I look'd upon as a Barbarian King, who came to assault our Walls; and I had the liberty to make vows, and to invoke Heaven to our assistance against those Enemies, whom it was permitted me to hate; but at this time they are our Subjects, that March against the Subjects of Honorius: 'Tis my Husband that goes to make War against my Brother; and on whatsoever side Fortune declares it self, in stead of the sweetness may be hop'd from Victory, I see for my self only occasion of tears and desolation: Shall I see you again wade in streams of the blood of those Citizens, amongst whom I receiv'd my Birth? and burn again the Houses of persons who were dear to me; and the Palaces of my Progenitors, destroyed by the fury of those people you would give me for Subjects, and by the order of a person, whom Heaven hath given me for a Husband? Or shall I see, if Fortune be contrary to you and us your Subjects, my Spouse perhaps fall under the victorious Arms of my Brother? But when I shall be preserv'd either to the one or the other of these cruel extremities, shall I be expos'd to that hard reproach of being said my self to run to the desolation of my Country? or can I without dying bear it said that Placidia her self brings a fire to enflame and burn down the City of her Birth? Oh, my Lord! if I am destin'd to this last misery, prevent by a blow of pity those mischiefs, the very thoughts of which afflict me, and sacrifice Placidia first to the implacable hatred you bear her Alliance. You may satisfy your self in this sort, without exposing your people, or without exposing your self to any danger; and by delivering me this way from the fear I have for you, and in an Enterprize in which Heaven may be contrary to you, you may deliver your self from those plaints, which I shall make you all my life.

“ The Queen spoke in this manner, and to these words she added so many more so forcible and perswasive, that *Autalpb* was not able to resist her; and taking one of her hands, which he kiss'd with an infinite respect; *Madam*, (said he) I submit my self to your will, and I give you your Country, with protestation that it shall not proceed from me, if the Emperour your Brother and my self be not united by an eternal alliance.

“ He said no more than these few words, and from that moment letting fall the designs he had for War, he chang'd all his Orders; and in stead of taking the way to *Rome*, he order'd his Army to march towards this Country; and few dayes after, he resolv'd to establish himself, (as he hath since done) and to extend his Dominions as well over that part of *Spain* as upon *Aquitane*, and the other Provinces which have been assign'd the *Goths* and the *Gauls*.

“ This action of *Autalpb*, which was without doubt very remarkable, being known throughout all *Europe*, produc'd very different effects; and if the *Goths* murmured on one side in so much that they came near to a revolt, it sensibly touch'd all the *Romans*, who were in the service of the Queen; and wrought so great an effect on the spirit of this great Princess, that after that day she gave her self entirely, at least as much as she could to that affection, which she believ'd due to her Husband, who had so much value for her: In brief, she accusom'd her self to live with him, with so much sweetness and complacency, and found from her virtue as great assistance as was necessary upon so great an occasion, to make him believe that he was as happy in his possession, as if he had obtain'd it by ways less constraining than he did.

“ See, my Lord, that which I could and ought succinctly to tell you in justification of the Queen, who perhaps hath done all she could to forget you, since she hath believ'd her self so bound by duty; but who without doubt hath done all things to preserve her self for you, so long as she had nothing more than captivity or death to fear.

Thus spoke *Tiburtius*, and to this discourse added several particulars upon the questions which *Constance* made him concerning those things, in which she took most delight, as well concerning the Adventures of the Princess *Theodolinda*, *Cleomira* and *Virginia*, as more particularly upon those of Prince *Wallia*, of whom *Tiburtius* told him all he knew, and things without doubt worthy your attention; but of which I shall not speak, because they are not at all concern'd in the life of my Master. *Tiburtius* had sufficient leisure to give him this account, because that day the Princess came not to visit the Religious House, as *Virginia* had made me hope; at which *Constance* was so much afflicted, that we could scarce comfort him, imagining that *Placidia* had been advertis'd of the design; and that the knowledge she had had of it, had hindred her from coming; and this fear made him but ill pass that Night.

But the next Morning, much earlier than we hoped for, *Tiburtius* came to advise him that the Queen was entred into the Temple, where she assist'd at Divine-service, and from
whence

whence he did not doubt but she would take a walk in the Wood, as she had been accustomed: that only *Virginia* and some of her Ladies in whom she had the greatest confidence, accompani'd her. *Constance* was affail'd at this discourse with the motion of divers different passions; and after having remain'd some time to resolve himself, he caus'd *Tiburtius* to conduct him to the little Gate of the Wood, where I enter'd along with him, not to expose *Tiburtius* to the reproach he might fear from the Queen, by contributing as he now did to the satisfaction of *Constance*.

'Twas not without reason that *Placidia* went often to walk in this place: for when the love of solitude did not invite her, the beauty of it was sufficient to allure her; for though it was not adorn'd with all those Embellishments which Art could give it, yet it was not too much neglected; and those good persons had with a great deal of diligence endeavour'd to add perfection to what nature had made most fair. The Wood is encompassed with a high Wall round about, except only that part which looks towards the Sea, where it is no higher than to lean upon; and from this side, as from a fair Terrace, one may with liberty extend his view to the Sea, and over all the strand of *Barcelona*. At the two ends of the Terrace, there are two very fair Arbours of interlaced Branches; and because the Wood is square, there are two others in the other corners; and the passage from one to the other, is by Alleys square after the manner of the Wood; from these, many others strike into the middle of the Wood, where there is a fair Fountain, great and large, that casts the Water almost as high as the Trees, and which may be seen at the entrance into all the Alleys.

'Twas in this place that the passionate *Constance* walked some time, with trouble upon his spirit, which left him little liberty to observe other objects, how agreeable soever they might be; and in the mean time in one of the Alleys which burted against the great Gate, I waited to give him notice when he enter'd. Long had not I attended, nor scarce had he visited one part of the Wood, when I saw her enter, accompani'd only with *Virginia*, and two or three Roman Ladies, having left all the men of her Train at the Gate, either as she was accusom'd, or as it had been now order'd by *Virginia*: she lean'd upon *Virginia's* Arm, and the Ladies follow'd some paces behind, but coming near the Fountain they stay'd, and the Queen pass'd only with *Virginia*, into the Terrace-walk; where having walk'd a little while, they retire into one of the Arbours, and there seated themselves upon those Benches, which are most conveniently plac'd.

Nothing could be more favourable to the design of *Constance*, who beheld them from among the Trees, with those commotions of spirit, which it will be difficult to represent; and fearing in such sort, that he who had never known fear in so many perillous hazards, where his life had been expos'd, now arm'd with all his courage, could scarce resolve to approach a Woman that he lov'd, and by whom he was perhaps as dearly belov'd; he dispers'd, in the end, those difficulties which hindr'd him; and tremblingly discovering himself from among the Trees, he came to the entrance of the Arbour, and presented himself to the sight of *Placidia*. She was just ris'n from her seat, either to depart from the Arbour, or perhaps because she saw a man contrary to her ordinary usance appear in her retirements: but so soon as she had cast her eyes upon the countenance of *Constance*, if that sight did not surprize her so much as she had without doubt been, if she had been ignorant of his Arrival in that Country; yet she was troubl'd in such a manner, that she scarce remained apprehensive of any knowledge; and after she had only utter'd, *Ah Constance!* She tumb'd back into her seat, and let her self fall into the Arms of *Virginia*, who made haste to sustain her.

From thence, slowly lifting up her eyes upon the Countenance of her unfortunate Lover, who not having power to approach her, had rested himself against the Branches which fastn'd the Arbour, she beheld him with a languishing tenderness, and with behaviour which seem'd to speak more eloquently than she could do by her discourses: her tears soon after accompani'd her looks, and her eyes overflow'd in such a manner, that in a little time she water'd her fair breasts; yet in this condition she seem'd to the deplorable *Constance* more beautiful than ordinary, and Maugre all his constancy, and the Grandeur of his courage, he could not refrain to give marks of a grief almost as violent as that which possessed her. In this posture they a long time kept silence; but in the end, *Placidia*, who had less passion than *Constance*, or more command over what yet rested in her breast, broke it first, and drawing away (that she might yet again look upon him) the handkerchiff she had put before her eyes to dry them; *Constance* (said she) *what come you to seek in these unfortunate Countries, and amongst those cruel men who have deprived you of Placidia? I come to seek a death* (replied the afflicted *Constance*) *and you may well judge that I can seek nothing less*

than death, after having lost Placidia. The Gods which we adore (answer'd the fair Queen) permit us not to seek our own death; for if it had been permitted to flee to that in our misfortunes, I had perhaps in the Arms of Death found a release to so many miseries, which may render mine as well as your life odious; but if Heaven defend you from seeking your death, your virtue should no less defend you from seeking Placidia, especially in a time wherein she cannot see you without offending her Duty, nor you present your self to her, without troubling that little repose which Fortune hath left her, and putting her reputation, into an apparent danger.

These words seem'd too cruel to the disconsolate Constance; and regarding the Queen with eyes which seem'd to express somewhat of a just sorrow; *Ab Queen of the Goths,* (said he) *though you are Wife to Autilph, yet you are still the Sister of Honorius, and Daughter of Theodolius: And in sum, that Placidia whom in requital of my services, by the promise of the Emperour, and by your own, ought rather and more justly to have been mine than the King of the Goths. Is this the consolation you give to the miserable Constance, after having so cruelly forsaken him? Injust Constance* (replied the Queen, with a behaviour wholly passionate) *do you accuse me to have forsaken you? Me whom you have first abandon'd to the fury of the Barbarians? Why did you not then defend against them, that which was due to your services, both by Honorius his word and mine? Or why did you let them take away that which so legally belonged to you? Ab Madam,* (return'd Constance, overwhelm'd with new grief at these words) *can you with justice thus revile me? Or are you ignorant how I pass'd my life, whilst Heaven and Earth refused you their succours? No, Constance* (added the Queen) *I am not ignorant, and I know I cannot complain of you with reason; but you know likewise that you cannot accuse me; and whilst, if Heaven and Earth have refused me their succours, you were in no condition to give it, nothing hath defended me against my ill Fortune, but by the will of angry Heaven I have been captivated to that violence, which deprived you of Placidia. I know well* (replid Constance) *that it was violence put you in the power of our Enemies, and that it was not willingly that you were made the Captive of Autilph, but if the miserable Constance could have merited, that for the love of him you had defended your self a little longer from this fatal Marriage, by which he hath utterly lost you, there was yet perhaps time enough to divert it, and to have put a stop to the Fortune of the Goths, that they should not have been able to do you any farther violence. You may have understood* (replid Placidia) *what resistance I made to this Marriage, and the miseries which made me consent to it; they were without doubt strong enough to merit the approbation of Constance, as well as that of other men: but it is neither permitted me to recount, nor so much as remember those things which may but for some moments alter that affection, which I ought to preserve pure and entire to my Tomb; and the plaint which I have at other times been permitted to make is become criminal, by the change of my condition. In sum, Constance, whether guilty or only unhappy, yet I am the Wife of Autilph, and that may inform you that you see me in an estate which permits me not to see you, nor so much as think you: from the sight of you I hope to deliver my self by the assistance of Heaven, and by the care your self ought to have to preserve my reputation and repose, and for the remembrance of you, I have not perhaps so well defended my self, that it hath not hitherto contributed more than any thing else to the greatest misfortunes of my life, and opposed it self to that tranquillity, which my Duty would have establish'd in my mind: but I hope by the aids of Heaven, and those of my virtue, to reduce it to those terms it ought to be in, to permit me to live in an innocent estate: and it is for this reason, Constance, that I conjure you by all that you know most holy and most sacred, that you would contribute as much as you ought, if you truly love me, to my future quiet. You know, without my representing it to you, what I owe to another, and what I can do for you; and I dare well believe that you so well know my heart, as not to hope any thing beyond my Duty; and I believe as certainly that you desire it not, at least if our ill fortune hath not chang'd your inclinations: but this is not enough, Constance, for the honour and repose of Placidia; and since these are the appearances that will ruine it, we must not make the appearances more criminal than the intentions: Heaven is my witness, that it is with a violence no less intolerable than all others I have suffered, that I demand these marks of your affection; for you know that Honorius his word was the least that engag'd me to you, if my fortune had permitted me to follow my inclinations, as they were conformable to reason, I abandon'd my self to them with all cheerfulness: and as you were truly he of all men whom I have known most worthy of my affection and my esteem; 'twould have been with too much joy, that I should have prefer'd you before all men, and before the Empire of the whole World, if Heaven had permitted me the liberty; but in the end, Constance, I have it no more; and since it hath pleas'd Heaven to make me the Wife of Autilph, his you ought to let me be without combating the will of Heaven which gave me to him, or disputing with him a heart which he*

ought entirely to possess, without assaulting a virtue which I cannot offend without rendring my self unworthy of your esteem, or troubling with your presence, and that interview which cannot but produce dire effects, a repose which ought still truly to be dear to you, if you have ever truly loved me.

Whilst *Placidia* spoke in this manner, the desolate *Constance* beheld and hearkned to her, with a demeanour wholly passionate; but when he understood her last words, he found in them something so cruel, that he could not refrain from interrupting her; and casting on her a look full of all the marks both of grief and love: *How, Madam!* (said he) *do you ordain me not to see you any more? Now that of all my hopes, there remains only the sight of you to me, and after having given that to another, which perhaps was only due to me, will you likewise deprive me of that which you give to all the World? But Madam, will you never see me more? No, Constance* (replied the Queen) *I will never see you more; and when this resolution shall cost me my life, I will rather resolve to lose it, than to see you again, I will yet permit you to believe* (continued she, letting fall some tears that she could not refrain) *at least, if this belief can give you any consolation, that I do not enjoyn this without feeling a grief perhaps little different from yours: But in short, when that grief shall guide me to my Tomb, I will employ willingly the rest of my life, such as it is, to maintain me in a duty, which ought not to be less dear than that, though it were as happy as I could desire it. Ah Madam,* (said *Constance*, o'er-power'd with a mortal grief) *'tis not your life that my misfortune can mend; 'tis only to Constance, that the misfortunes of Constance can prove fatal: 'tis by this way certainly (for others seem too difficult) that you will be deliver'd from my sight for ever: and those orders of Heaven, cruel ones to me at this present, which permit me not to employ my own hand to give my self a death, cannot defend the receiving it from my grief: That without doubt will be sufficient without the succour of my Arm; and 'tis from my sorrow only I shall receive that, than which all humane power cannot give me more, after the loss of *Placidia*.*

The Queen was sensibly touch'd at these words of *Constance*, nor was she able to reply for some time, which she dedicated to a flood of tears, which stream'd freely down her fair checks. *Constance* beheld her in this estate, with the countenance of a despairing man; not knowing in the marks of her grief how he could find any consolation for his; but at length, in this incertitude, abandoning himself to those thoughts; *Alas* (cried he, on a sudden) *all that I see then is for the happy Autalph, and death only rests to the miserable Constance. Death* (said the Queen, forcing her self to speak) *is a debt all men must pay: but among men, who like you, know Heaven and the true Religion, 'tis in the hand of God, and not in their own disposition: I know well that it is little formidable to those, who like you daily brave it in perillous Adventures, and that for this reason you would easily receive it, though it should present it self in the most terrible shape: but know, Constance, that you have not the same liberty with other men, to abandon your self to death; and that you owe your life to the Glory of your Country, of which by the great qualities wherewith Heaven hath endow'd you, you remain the sole Defender (considering the weakness of *Honorius*) against those Barbarians, who ruine and desolate it on all sides: you owe it to the God you adore, and to the true Religion, persecuted by so many Nations, with a horrible cruelty: And (if I may add this last consideration) you owe it to that interest I may yet take in you without offending my virtue, and to that prayer which I make you, by all that affection that you have had for me, to preserve it till Heaven shall dispose of it. As this is the last request I shall make you in my life, so, Constance, I desire it may obtain its entire effect: and in the confidence that I have of it* (continued she, raising her self from her seat) *and the knowledge I have of the fault I commit in continuing so long time a conversation which may expose us to great dangers, I bid you adieu, Constance; and I bid you adieu for ever.*

Finishing these words, she withdrew her eyes from *Constance*, whom she could no longer look upon, in that condition her words had left him; and pulling down her vail to conceal that trouble which appear'd in hers, she departed from the Arbour with an ill assured pace, leaning upon the Arm of *Virginia*, who followed her with much trouble that she had left my Master in that pitiful condition wherewith she saw him.

They were scarce gone forth, when *Constance* not having the power to follow them, nor the assurance to do an action that might displease *Placidia*, let himself fall on one of the seats with all the marks of a fatal sorrow in his Face; abandoning himself to a grief so extraordinary, that I feared lest he should have expir'd in the Arbour. I ran thither so soon as I saw the Queen depart; and seeing in his eyes and in all his Actions the visible signs of despair, I was seiz'd with a mortal affright, and approaching to him, I assayed to put him into another humour by all those words which the passion I had for him could make me utter; but in stead of producing any effect, I could not draw one word from him; but

he keeping his eyes fix'd on Heaven, guarded a silence which much more afflicted me than the greatest complaints he could have made: it was above an hour that he observ'd this posture, whatever I could say to oblige him to break it; and when he would speak, his sobs scarce left him the liberty to utter some interrupted words. With these and the sighs which maugre his constancy brake forth in multitudes from his breast, the tears stream'd from his eyes in abundance; so that I vow, in all things I ever saw him do, I never saw so much the courage of the invincible *Constance* overcome.

So soon as he could open his mouth, beholding me with a dying eye; *Ab Valerius*, (said he) *I shall never see Placidia more; she hath pronounc'd me the cruel arrest, and she hath told me in express terms, that she will prefer death before any occasions to see me again. In sum, the sight of Constance is less supportable to her than that of death it self; and whilst she gives her self entirely to Autalph, she prizes death before the view of the miserable Constance. Just Heavens, (cry'd he a little alter, lifting up his eyes towards Heaven) will you defend me from dying in this extremity? Must the respect I owe to your holy places, and to the orders of Placidia, force me to the cruel necessity of leading so deplorable a life?*

He stay'd a good while with this consideration, seeking the means to dispense with the orders of Heaven, and the will of *Placidia*; and as he had those commotions wherein his grief complacent to his desire seem'd to find what he demanded, yet he had others with which by his piety and the great respect he had for the Queen, he oppos'd all the hopes he could conceive. This thought sensibly redoubled his grief; and suffering himself to be transported to all it could inspire him with; *Neither Heaven nor Placidia (said he) will that I should die; but in defending me from dying, they deprive me of the means to live: and Placidia her self hath too much inhumanity, to refuse her sight to uphold that life she hath ordain'd me to preserve.* *Ab Placidia (added he) if in the terms to which you have reduc'd me, you desire obedience from me, order me things possible; or rather, if you love the life of Autalph, as without doubt you do, force not the despairing Constance to preserve his. You know not what this despair may produce in a soul though naturally flexible and moderate; nor can Constance himself resolve you, whether the life of Autalph be secure from his despair: I know that all it can inspire me with in this extremity, will not render my condition more happy than it is; and I know you too well, to hope the return of my fortune by this means: but do you believe, that in the estate in which you have thrown me, my reason can predominate over all my resolutions, or that in the last violence of my grief I can preserve moderation and wisdom?*

Thus he tormented himself; when *Tiburtius*, who entred into the Arbour a little time after the Queen was departed, endeavour'd with me by perswasions to cause him recal his spirit, when we were confirm'd in this design, by a person whom we did not expect; for when we least thought it, we might perceive Prince *Wallia* enter into the Arbour. We were surpriz'd at his Arrival; but *Constance* had been more, if in the extremities wherein we were, he had been capable of all the reflections he had made the day before, and had been still oblig'd to any caution for his interest in a time wherein hope had entirely abandon'd him,

The Gothick Prince, who had understood from *Placidia* and *Virginia* the condition wherein they had left my Master, found the confirmation of what they had told him, in his Face, observing in it the marks of so cruel a grief, that his soul could not but tenderly resent it; and so much the more, because he was not ignorant of all the effects, which a passion like that of *Constance* could produce in a misery like his. The thoughts which this sight inspired him with, hindered him presently from speaking, and he was contented to make himself seen by *Constance*, by all that he could practise of most civil and obliging, in the rencounter of two real Friends, whose friendship was not at all altered by the accidents of their lives, or by any judgment they could make of each others intentions. *Constance* returned his Caresses not only with those marks of true apprehension, which he had scarce testifi'd for any other thing, but with a vehemency which made the Prince know, that for a Friend less considerable he could less easily have acted that violence on himself.

In the end *Wallia* endeavour'd to testify the sense he had of his interests, when *Constance* preventing him; *Wherefore, Prince (said he) do you come to seek an unfortunate Friend, whom all the World ought to flee, and who flees himself from you, not to concern you in the fortune of one so miserable? Is it possible that in the injuries I have receiv'd from yours, you can preserve your amity? Or do you regard me as a Friend, whose misfortunes deserve pity? Or as a person who for his hatred of Autalph, is unworthy of your friendship? Would to God, that without being accus'd to have merited it by his actions, he could find in it thoughts more agreeable to your actions, than to your particular nature; or that you came less to comfort me in my misery,*

misery, than to assure Aulalph, by the death of a despairing lover, against all those thoughts his despair might inspire him with against me.

These words increased the compassion that the Gothick Prince had for the infortunes of my Matter; and after he had manifested those marks in his countenance, which could not let us doubt it; I know not (said he) in what manner you will look upon the diligence I have taken to search for you, after I understood you were in Barcelona, nor what judgment you can make of the share I have taken in the misfortunes of your Country, and in your own particular: but I shall be extremely unhappy, if you can believe that any consideration hath wrought the least change, or the least alteration in a friendship, in which I judge to consist a good part of my fortune, and in which I desire to maintain my self in prejudice of any other interest, besides that of my honour and my duty. I know well that they cannot be offended with the intentions I have maintain'd for you; and though I doubt not but the desire to see Placidia, led you into this Country, and that I am not ignorant, that it is not permitted me to serve you, in designs which you may have either against the life or honour of Aulalph; I am so much perswaded of your virtue, that it is impossible for me to have any suspicion of it; and I believe that nothing can hinder me from serving you in those enterprises, which I may be permitted to dive into, or to lament with you those in which you will not employ me.

Alas, (replied the miserable Constance) your friendship is rather cruel than favourable to me; it would be more advantageous for me to find an enemy, who would by his officious cruelty pierce this unfortunate breast, than a generous and pitiful friend, whose assistances are as unprofitable to me, as his friendship is dear. In short, great Prince, you see me in a condition, which perhaps you would condemn, if you had never been sensible of that passion which causes all my misfortunes: and as I shall be most worthy of your compassion, and of that part you have preserved me in your friendship, having protested before Heaven, that I seek nothing more in this Country, than the sight of Placidia; so you will know the greatest of my misfortunes, when you shall understand that that innocent good, which only remains for the preservation of my life, is refused me for ever.

I knew it before you, (replied the Prince) and you may perhaps have understood that the Queen having told me her intention, would have obliged me to have declar'd it: God is my witness, I am as sensible of your grief, as I can be of my own; and I could spare a part of my blood to satisfy you in all things which are possible for me: but having protested to you this truth, will it be permitted me to represent to you other things, which you cannot be ignorant of, and to demand if you have not courage enough to support the absence of Placidia, since you must resolve to lose her person for ever? can it be to such a misfortune, and to such a spirit as yours, a consolation so great to see again Placidia, and to see her in the power of another? Or can you be satisfied to surfeit your eyes with a beauty, of which Aulalph is possessor? Or would you buy this light satisfaction at the price of the repose and reputation of Placidia, and possibly at greater danger both to you and her? Ah, Constance, bethink your self of what I say, and consider, the great loss you have had, is in the person, and not in the sight of Placidia; whom a great many reasons ought to hinder you from seeking, though she her self had not forbid it. Consider, generous Constance, who you are, and in what manner you lead your life, in seeking miserable occasions to behold a happiness which is no longer yours: You upon whom the whole world cast their eyes, as upon the greatest man of this age; consider the degree you hold among men, the glory you have purchas'd by so many great Victories, and the necessity which both the Eastern and Western Empires have of such a personage at Constance: you may if your grief oppose not your Fortune, easily mount to the highest Dignity in the world; nor will I lose my hope to see you seated in the Throne of the Cæsars. But, Constance, if you cannot overcome that love which I cannot condemn, at least employ your great courage to moderate your grief. Placidia desires no other consolation, and (it may be, if I may be permitted to say it) the consideration of your misfortune, renders her as equally unfortunate: I demand it therefore of you, for all the affection you bear her; and of the counsel I give you, I may be the less suspected; being exempted no less than you, from the same passion that causes your miseries.

In this manner spake Wallia, and to these words he added a great many others, the most pressing his affection could invent; and easily might he speak to a person, who answer'd him not but by sighs and sobs, and by all his actions made himself adjudged little capable of the comfort which he endeavour'd to give him: In the end, having hearkned as long as he could desire; I see (said he) that you are both very reasonable, and very well intend'd towards me; but I neither am in an estate to yield to reason nor the value I have for you, all that Empire they ought to have over me. However, I will perform one part of what you desire; and if I cannot promise you to comfort my self for a grief, which will without doubt endure so long as my ill fortune; I promise you at least, that it shall not produce any effect which may

disspleas Placidia: *That I will no more seek occasions to see her, nor cause any trouble to her repose, by any action of my life.*

Whilst my Master spoke in this manner, and Prince *Wallia* found some satisfaction for *Placidia* in the promise he had made, but found little hopes to compose his spirit, we heard a great noise in the distant Alleys; and Prince *Wallia* being raised from the seat where he was set near *Constance*, advanc'd towards the door of the Arbour, and saw appear at the other end of the Alley King *Autalph* himself, followed by *Sigeric*, and a great number of persons ordinarily of his train. This sight struck the Prince with a mortal apprehension, not doubting but both the life of *Constance* and the repose of *Placidia* were in manifest danger; and if *Constance* in the despair to which he was reduced, feared not his life, yet he feared for *Placidia*, and felt a cruel redoublement of his grief for the trouble which this adventure might cause: however, that courage which had always made him invincible in his love, made him take a resolution to defend his liberty at the price of his life, and rather die by a thousand wounds, than fall alive into the hands of *Autalph*, and give *Placidia* the sorrow to see him subjected to the mercy of his enemy. He was already determin'd, when *Wallia* beholding him with an assur'd countenance, and taking him by the hand, *I judge* (said he) *of your design; and if you must perish, I am resolv'd to perish with you: but because there are other ways to try before we come to extremities, permit me to essay them; nor shew your self except there be necessity.*

At these words he went forth of the Arbour, and advanc'd towards the King, who came forward, and had already passed more than half the Alley: he had scarce fifty paces to make, when *Wallia* met him; and approaching to him, with a liberty which his proximity of blood and the Grandeur of his merit had particularly given him; *Sir*, (said he, very low) *your Majesty will surprize me, with persons who will be much troubled, if such a misfortune besal them. And what are those persons* (said *Autalph*) *with whom you have so particular a converse? They are two men* (replied the Prince) *who have brought me news of those affairs, with which I entertained you last night; and having express order to conceal themselves from all persons of your Court, I beseech your Majesty to spare the displeasure I shall receive, if they are seen contrary to the design of those that sent them.* The King laughing at this discourse of *Wallia*'s; *I am content* (said he) *to grant your desire, upon this condition, that this night you tell me all the secret: and at these words he turned about; and making a sign to all those that were with him to do the same, he walk'd towards the Fountain.*

But the Prince *Sigeric*, hoping to find in this adventure something to contest with *Wallia*, of whose great reputation, and the respect the *Goths* gave him, he was envious; parting from the King, when he was at a little distance farther with two or three men that followed him, he returned towards the Arbour, with design to enter, and know the secret of *Wallia*; but this Prince re-entring, saw him come, and turning towards him, civilly accosted him, intreating him not to refuse him the same favour the King had granted him. *Sigeric* is the presumptive heir of the Crown of the *Goths*; and more advanc'd one degree than *Wallia*, who for this reason was oblig'd to a considerable respect for him, but *Sigeric* abusing it, *The King* (said he) *received in earnest that prayer which you made him; and I should do the same, if I believed the occasion so important, to testify the consideration I have for you, but because I am not of that judgment, but perswaded that it is with some Ladies that you hold a particular correspondence, you cannot take it ill, if I endeavour to find out your familiarities: and in speaking these words, he would have advanc'd towards the Arbour; but Wallia stepping before him; When what you believe should be true,* (said he) *I should have no less interest to guard the secret of this adventure; and you cannot but your self approve that I should hinder you going into a place whither you are not conducted by any other reason, than that of displeasing me.* *Wallia* pronounced these words with a great commotion of spirit. And *Sigeric* being a haughty and courageous Prince, beholding him with a sutable fierceness; *I believe* (said he) *you do no longer remember what you owe me? I know that you are my Cousin.* (replied *Wallia*) *but I shall without doubt forget it, if you force me.* *You!* (said *Sigeric*, taking hold of the guard of his Sword.) *Yes, my self* (replied *Wallia*, doing the same) *and you know me sufficiently to believe me capable of a greater enterprize.* He had scarce ended these words, but he saw *Sigeric* with his Sword in hand, and thereupon drawing his, he put himself in a posture to make him repent his curiosity.

But of the three men which followed *Sigeric*, one run to advertise the King, so soon as he saw the Princes begin to grow angry; and the other two, though they were of *Sigeric*'s train, knowing the respect they ought to the birth and merit of *Wallia*, were contented to cast themselves between the two Princes to part them; yet they had had some difficulty

difficulty to withhold them, they beginning to charge each other with a surpassing violence, when they heard the voice of the King, and saw him at the same time advance towards them at a great pace: his sight made them both retire and put up their swords, appearing before him not a little astonish'd. *Autalpb* blam'd them, and fiercely threaten'd them, for having lost the respect they ought him, by drawing their swords so near his person: but when he had heard the reasons of *Wallia*, he condemn'd the behaviour of *Sigeric*, and having sharply reprehended him, he commanded the two Princes to embrace; and having expressly order'd them to forget the remembrance of such petty differences, he bid *Sigeric* follow him, and leave *Wallia* to the liberty of preserving his secret.

Your Majesty may judge what trouble my Master was in, whilst these things pass'd, and with what impatience he suffer'd that *Wallia* should draw his Sword in his defence against a Prince of his blood, and a Prince that might be one day his King; he was ready several times to step forth, and himself decide the controversy with *Sigeric*, to divert his generous friend from an occasion which might prove prejudicial to him: and many times in this thought he advanced to the door of the Arbour, to throw himself into the Alley; but as many times the consideration of *Placidia*, whom *Tiburtius* and my self still minded him of, staid him; we representing to him, that he could not shew himself without losing her in the affection of the King her Husband and all the *Goths*, and putting Prince *Wallia* into greater danger than he could run by the encounter of *Sigeric*: and this made him moderate, though with a great deal of vexation, the heat which transported him to a design to hazard all things to assist *Wallia*, should he see him in any danger.

He thanked Heaven for the good success of this adventure, when he saw him return to us: and so soon as he was enter'd into the Arbour, embracing him with great marks of acknowledgments; *Your generous behaviour doth not astonish, (said he) but confound me; and though I ought not to hope less from a soul noble like yours, yet I ought not to suffer that for my interest you should come to such terms, as you now did with a Prince of your own blood; and you may well judge that I had not suffered it without running a great part of the danger, if the fear to expose you to a greater, and making you suspected of an intelligence which Autalpb would difficultly have pardon'd, had not withheld me. The danger to which I exposed myself (replied the Prince) is not at all considerable, and though Sigeric may be my King, I hope before he comes to that dignity, he will have forgot this small difference. However, should he remember it, the fear I have of his disgust, shall never make me repent what I have done: and to tell you the truth, I am not at all sorry for an adventure, which may justify in your spirit the carriage of the Queen towards you, and make you understand that the occasions of seeing her cannot but be dangerous, in a Court where your countenance is known to all. Would to God (replied Constance) that it was only for my own sake, and that the desire I have to see Placidia, had nothing to combat with, but the love I have for my life; you should see which of the two should have most power over my spirit: but since that Placidia must bear a part in the mischiefs which I ought to fear, and that this adventure hath truly made me tremble for her, innocent as she is of my intentions, I will depart as she hath desired, and I will depart from a place where I leave all my joy, and where I leave my soul with Placidia. This is my resolution, since it must be so, and the Sun-rise shall not find me within the verge of Barcelona.*

Though the Prince *Wallia* could not without a great deal of grief leave so soon a person for whom he had so great esteem and affection, yet he could not counsel him to make a longer stay in a Country which could not but be fatal to him, should he be known; he therefore dissimul'd not, telling him that he should be still in fear, both for him and for *Placidia*, so long as he stay'd at *Barcelona*.

They retir'd themselves soon after, for greater security, to the chamber of *Tiburtius*, where they pass'd the rest of the day, which *Constance* in part employ'd in listening to the adventures of *Wallia*, with the best attention his grief would permit; and in part, in recommending to him *Placidia*, and demanding for her the continuation of that faithful friendship which he had ever testified. *Wallia* protest'd he would serve her in prejudice of all other interests: and for him, if he could hear news of him at a time when the engagement of his soul would leave him at liberty, he would go about the world to seek him, and demand the continuation of his friendship. The night was not able to separate them; and *Wallia* would have pass'd it away with him in *Tiburtius* his chamber: but *Constance*, who feared to render him suspected to *Autalpb*, if he should chance one day to come to the knowledge of the journey he had made to *Barcelona*, would that he should go that night, and relate to him the discourse he had made to conceal the truth. *Wallia* made him the most obliging offers in the world, and would himself have accompanied him out of the Lands, under the obedience of the *Goths*, and farther, if he would consent: but *Con-*

stance would not suffer him; and in fine, they bid each other adieu, with all the demonstration of a tender amity.

That night I caused the horses to come from *Barcelona*: and to shorten the discourse, an hour before day we parted from the Religious House; but in bidding adieu to *Tiburtius*, with great marks of acknowledgements and affection, (for he refused, for the poverty he had embraced, all the presents which my Master would have made him) he charged him with a Letter to the Queen, which he promised him to give to *Virginia*, and of which the words were these, or little different.

The Infortunate *Constance*, to the Queen *Placidia*.

Since it is no more permitted me to see you, nor so much as to desire it, for fear of exposing you to those displeasures, of which I shall be more sensible than of my present misfortunes: I depart, Madam, as you have desired; and to tell you all my misery at once, I part never to see you more. Receive then, if you please, this last adieu without reluctance, not of a heart that can ever abandon you, but of the vain and unfortunate shadow of the miserable *Constance*, which I go to wander with about the world, till the last hour of my life. This remaining with you, cannot at all trouble your repose, nor the Fortune of *Autalph*; for as you have been still more dear to him than himself, he cannot complain of his condition, so long as yours is happy. Would to God I could contribute to your felicity by something of greater value than the life you leave me, and that with all those miseries which must needs accompany me to my end, I might likewise support all those which might trouble the happiness of yours. Adieu, Madam, since Heaven will have it so, to yours and my ill fortune. If the remembrance of the unhappy *Constance* return sometimes into your mind, suffer it without resistance, if it be possible, or at least remember, that if he hath adored you as long as he hop'd, he was no less faithful after the loss of his hopes.

Thus we left *Barcelona*; but my Master could not refrain from turning his eyes again towards it, by a thousand sighs testifying the sorrow he had to depart thence. I will not become tedious, by giving you a particular recital of his griefs during our journey, since besides that a good part of my discourse is filled with them, it will be hard for me to remember them. I believ'd at first that we should have taken the way to *Rome*; and had some hope, that by meeting with his friends, the mind of *Constance* might be compos'd, and he lose in time and by his reason a part of that grief which was become the entire Mistress of his heart; but I perceiv'd in few days that all my hopes were in vain, nor was I ever so astonish'd as I was when my Master told me his design never to return either to his Country, or the society of men, commanding me to return to *Rome* with those great advantages which he offer'd me for an honourable departure, and testifying to me the sorrow he had for the sad time I had spent in his service. You may well judge, Mighty Sir, that I accepted not his offers, nor shewed any disposition to obey this cruel command; but having bewail'd his rigorous misfortunes, I easily resolv'd to accompany him to his end.

We wandred then without any other design than to weary a misery still alive, and a grief, which instead of being sweetned by time, gained every day new force; we visited the greatest part of the Provinces of *Spain*, where my Master understood without pretending any interest, that *Gunderic* had made himself Master of *Hissania Bethica*; not that he felt not some confusion at the disorders of the Empire, but all was cancelled when he thought of the loss of *Placidia*. Being arrived at the Metropolis of *Lustrania*, he would carry upon the Seas that passion which had so cruelly turmoyl'd him a shore; and being embark'd, we were tossed several months upon the Ocean without any accident in our whole Voyage; but the passing away of our time was still equally unfortunate; we saw Great *Britain*, once named *Albion*, and *Ireland* an adjacent Island; and having passed the Straits which separate it from *Gallia Belgica*, we sail'd into the *German Ocean*, where my Master finding himself as much tired with the Sea, as he had been on the Land, we went ashore in the Country of the *Danes*, which we visited, with many other Provinces, of which I shall make no mention, not judging it necessary in the conclusion of my Discourse.

'Twas in our approach to this place that we met with the Prince *Varanes*; nor will I recount the particularities of this rencounter, because you will understand it with more pleasant stories in the adventures of that Prince, which *Mitrane*s is engag'd to relate to you so soon as you desire it. There passed somewhat between them very extraordinary; and

and by the knowledge they mutually had of each others merit, they link'd themselves in inviolable amity, and pass'd several days together with greater satisfaction than either the one or the other did for some time past hope for. There was some appearance that they would not soon have parted; but if the Prince of the *Persians* was called from hence by some design to me unknown, my Master hath stay'd here much less invited by his wounds, than by the charms of your person, and by the complacence he thought due to your civility, and the good treatment you have made him.

See here, Mighty Sir, the Relation which I had order to make you of the life of *Constance*! Just to his last years, Fortune was favourable to him, without failing him in any occasion; but by one only effect of her inconstancy, she reversed all his happiness; though she could not despoil him of that glory which will endure till the last Ages: so that it may be still said, this is the same *Constance* who hath vanquish'd so many Kings, and so many Nations; but that crown'd with Laurels, and in the midst of his Trophies, is become the most unfortunate of all men, by a passion which renders unprofitable all those advantages in which perhaps another would find his Consolations.

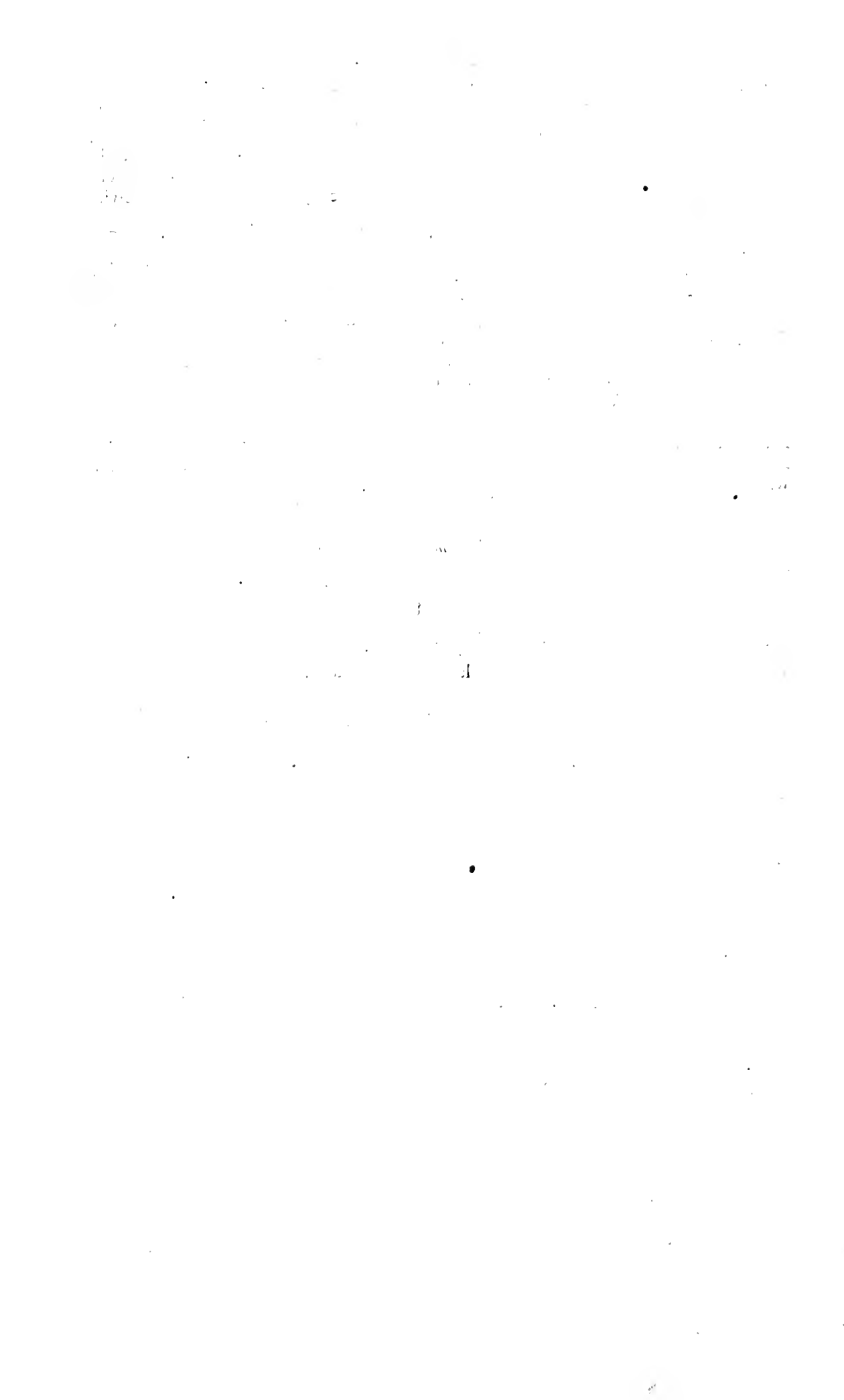
In this manner *Valerius* finish'd his Discourse of the life of *Constance*; and *Pharamond*, who had hearkn'd to the first events with admiration, and the last with compassion, was in the end touch'd in such a nature for the misfortunes of so great a man, that he could not refrain from shewing all the signs that might testify it: and having remained some time without speaking;

In truth (said he to *Valerius*) *you have recounted me great things, and too much concern'd me in the Fortunes of the great Constance, by the knowledge you have given me of his excellent virtues, to leave me now in that trouble of mind into which you have thrown me by the recital of his last adventures: I shall esteem my self too happy, if so considerable a person should find any consolation among us; nor would I spare my blood to seek the means to afford it.* *Valerius* thank'd *Pharamond* on the behalf of his Master, for the share he took in his Interests; and the Prince, having sent to know news of him, and understanding that he no longer slept, resolv'd himself to go into his Chamber there to testify to himself how much he was enamour'd of his Virtues, and sensible of his misfortunes.

The end of the First Part of

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.



PHARAMOND.

The Second Part.

BOOK I.



PHARAMOND could not receive these particulars of the Life of the Heroick *Constance*, without being induced to a greater esteem of him than that Fame which was blaz'd about the World of his great Actions could make him conceive; nor understand the deplorable estate into which he was now reduced, without rendering him that resentment of his Misfortunes which a soul noble like his, could not refuse to unfortunate virtue. He could not refrain, so soon as he saw him, from testifying his thoughts, his admiration of those things he had heard, and his grief for the sad conclusion of his Adventures: And he did both

the one and the other with so good a grace, that the Illustrious *Roman*, who was equally modest and obliging, was constrained to receive those praises he gave him, against his natural inclination to reject them, being so much touch'd with the interest he saw him claim in his misery, that he seem'd to forget the first: the better to shew himself sensible of these marks of his Generosity, he labour'd to testify his acknowledgments with all those words which so great obligations could instruct him with; when the valiant King of the *Franks*, interrupting him with a behaviour full of sweetness: *Cease, Noble Sir (said he) to pay me Thanks for that which all the World owes you, and which no man would refuse to render you, if they understood as well as I the miracles of your life. Your self in the recital which you desire of the sad Chances of mine, will have as great occasion to lend me what I now pay to you, as to the subject of compassion, though not of admiration: for I cannot be induc'd to believe, that the mean actions of a Prince born and educated among those people, whom you it may be, with justice term Barbarians, can enter into any consideration with a man in whom the fortune of the Empire, and that of the whole World, hath and ought still to repose. This I dare averr, that the misfortunes of my life have something in them so strange, and so much above all examples in the ordinary course of humane things, that there are not perhaps any miseries in the World that may compare with mine, or better deserve astonishment and compassion together.* "Permit me

"to tell you (replid *Constance*) that you are it may be equally unjust in both parts of your

"Discourse: for as I am not so ignorant of those of your actions which have shone with

"much splendour through the World, as to believe what I have done can merit the half of

"those praises that you are pleas'd to give them; so I will believe, and believe with satisf-

"faction to the interest I take, that your misfortunes, though they may possibly have

"something of more strange than mine, and more different from the common Adventures

"of the World, yet are without doubt, less great than mine, since they are not accompa-

"nied with despair, nor you despoyl'd like me of the last good which waits on miserable

"persons to the end. For in brief, though it be very ordinary to lose what we love, either

"by death, or a fatal Wedlock; 'tis certain however, that in the most prodigious events,

"there can be nothing more cruel; and therefore though your Fortunes may have some-

"thing more uncouth than mine, yet they can have nothing more deplorable.

Pharamond was about to reply, and they had perhaps discoursed longer of this matter,

if the Princes *Sumon, Ibere, Merouée* and *Genebaud* (whose wounds could not oblige him longer to keep his bed) had not entred the Chamber, upon knowledge given them that they might visit *Constance* without any disturbance. The King of the *Franks*, and the four Princes, din'd with him; and immediately after the repast, *Charamont, Cleomer, Antenor, Adelard, Dagobert*, and many other considerable Officers of the Army, came to visit him. *Constance* receiv'd them all with a sweetness and civility most natural to himself, and which his discontents could not alter; but seeing with them the person whom *Pharamond* had charg'd to recite to him his Adventures, and whom *Antenor* presented to him; that cruel grief which tormented him could not defend him against the desire he had to instruct himself in a Fortune in which he was so highly concern'd; besides that he found this employment more conformable to the estate of his mind, than a conversation with a number of great Personages, especially in a time when he was not in a condition to discourse any thing grateful to their attention. To this effect, addressing himself to *Cleomer*, whom he had receiv'd in a particular obliging manner; *I know not* (said he) *if a person that is not at all known by you, may abuse that liberty you are pleas'd to indulge; but since it is from you, I must learn the Adventures of the King of the Franks, you are in danger to be solicited by one who perhaps would have had less impatience in other things.* "My Lord (replied *Cleomer*) with an excellent grace, I shall acquit my self of the Order which the King hath given me, when ever you shall please to command me; and as there are few persons in the World that have more knowledge of the things which you seem willing to understand, so there is none that with a more ready diligence will give you the satisfaction you desire. *Constance* returned him thanks in terms full of civility, having both been inform'd by *Antenor*, and knowing by several marks, that he was of no common Rank.

Pharamond, who perceiv'd his desires, was willing, out of complacency to them, to define the rest of that day to other Affairs, and leave him the liberty to satiate himself; and after having told him that what he was about to understand from the mouth of *Cleomer*, though very strange and hard to be believ'd, yet were little considerable in comparison of those which *Valerius* had recounted to him, he departed out of the Chamber, all the rest following him save only *Cleomer*. 'Twas not without reason that *Constance* had taken *Cleomer* to be a man worthy consideration; for besides his being of one of the most Illustrious Houses of *Franconia*, and Son of *Diocles*, who was one of the chiefest and greatest Personages in the Realm; and had one of the highest employments in the Army of *Pharamond*; he was a man of excellent feature and noble spirit, and in whom both mind and body were accompani'd with an infinite strength and courage, and many other excellent virtues, which with a great deal of reason made him merit the particular confidence of his Prince. *Constance* knew in a little time a part of these Truths, and by the observation which he made of him, augmenting his estimation of him, made many excuses for the trouble to which he had engag'd him. *Cleomer* heard his Discourse with a becoming respect, and not being ignorant in any of that knowledge which the practice of the World must give to a person Nobly born, and diligently educated, he return'd an Answer to the Generous behaviour of *Constance*, with all the marks of a low submission; and being seated near his bed, after he had some few minutes bethought himself of the Discourse which he was to make, he soon after began the following Relation.

The History of PHARAMOND.

Those who have known Fortune either by the general opinion, or by the proper experiences, or contentions which they have had with her, do all as it were agree with one consent, that she is the enemy of Virtue; and that if by the effects or her ordinary inconstancy, she hath sometimes ill treated men of little valour or consideration, she hath alwayes assaulted, and with a particular obstinacy persecuted virtuous Personages: not that virtue hath not sometimes triumph'd over her, or hath not (if one may so say) defeated her in those things, where the success hath not been absolutely dependent upon her Empire, but that in all those where she could act with all her ordinary power, she hath oppos'd her with her most grievous and most weighty Tyranny; and though she could not ruine her, yet she arm'd all her Forces against her, and has eternally combated her. Certainly if she were a Goddess, whom great and Heroick qualities could render favourable to merit, or whom miseries could make sensible of pity, either the deserts of *Pharamond* would gain her, or his misfortunes bend her: but it is upon him, more than upon the rest of men, that she hath thrown the most dire effects of her cruelty. Ah, my Lord, to what enterprize

enterprize have you engag'd me, both by the obedience which I owe to my Prince, and by the purpose I have to satisfy your desires ! How shall I instruct you, in those grand events I am to recount to you, though I have assist'd in them all ! How will it be possible for me to represent to you the tender thoughts of a soul, against whom the most violent passions have cruelly made War, and which cannot be declar'd by any other tongue, than by that to which the heart thatresents them, furnishes words capable to express them ! Yet I shall, my Lord, do as much as my ability and the sad concernment I take in my Masters misfortunes will permit me, and acquit my self at least of the charge he hath given me, with the greatest exactness and truth possible.

Before I speak to you of the Birth and Actions of my Prince, I am oblig'd, Great Sir, to tell you somewhat of his Original : as well to let you know those Truths; which the Errour of many people hath rendred doubtful to many Nations, as to justify to you the right which our Princes have o'er the *Gauls*, and make you see that it was not only desire of Glory, or that of aggrandizing their Dominions, which made them with their Arms in their hands encounter that puissance, which was Mistress of the World. Those who would draw our Original from *Germany*, and persuade the people that it is from *Franconia*, that the *Francks*, *Francons* or *French-men* took their name, are not at all instructed in the truth: for it is certain, that we are not only descended from the *Gauls*, but that the Family of our Kings is the same that for sixteen Ages govern'd the fairest part of *Gallia*. Those who are the most understanding in Genealogies, fetch their Original from the blood of the gods; and before the time of *Hercules*, find the *Gauls* among those that descended from *Drius*, the *Samthes*, and the first Kings whose names have been known to men. But however that be, 'tis a general belief establish'd among us, that *Franconus* Son of *Heñor*, saved by his Uncle *Helenus* at the Destruction of *Troy*, and conducted by Fortune among the *Gauls*, espoused the Daughter of King *Rhemus*: yet this opinion is contested against by many Nations, who affirm that the Sons of *Heñor* perish'd in the ruins of that City: but besides many other proofs we have, most certain it is, that the *Trojan* names have been preserved in this Royal Family almost without any discontinuance, and that a great part of our Princes have born the names of *Priamus*, *Helenus*, *Antenor*, and many others, which have not been known, but in the Family of the Ancient *Trojan* Kings.

In sum, whether *Franconus* came from *Troy*, or whether he was born among the *Gauls*, 'tis certain that from him and from the Daughter of *Rhemus* issued that long Race of Kings, which have commanded over the *Gauls*, over the *Sicambres*, and over the *Franks*: They had Reign'd many years among the *Gauls*, when the people not finding convenience to live in their own Country, by reason of the strange multitudes of people which inhabited it, seeking new Dwellings in many parts of the World, under their Princes *Sigovese*, *Belivese*, *Brennus*, and *Belgius*, made all *Europe* and a great part of *Asia* tremble. You have understood that which *Brennus* did at *Rome*; nor are I believe ignorant of the passage of the other *Brennus* into *Asia*, and of his being lost with his whole Army, near the Temple of *Delphos*. Others more fortunate seated themselves near the *Palus Maotis*, and from thence passed some time after into *Germany*, where they possessed themselves of a vast extent of Land, which from the name of one of their Princes, and from a City which they built, they called *Sicambria*, and made the name of the *Sicambres* known and feared by all Neighbouring Nations.

After a long time Reign'd over these Provinces, one of their Kings, named *Marcomie*, and whose name without doubt hath been more known than any of his Predecessor's, spurred forward by his great courage, and encouraged by the Oracles, and by a Vision of which the whole World hath talk'd, promising to his Posterity the rule over a great part of the World, raised a most powerful Army; and passing the *Rhine* with those Forces which nothing could stop, re-seated himself in the Heritage of his Fathers, and made himself Master of *Gallia-Belgica*, and of a good part of the *Celtica*. 'Twas within the *Belgica* that he establish'd the Seat of his Monarchy; and after his Death his Successours Reign'd without discontinuance, until *Franconus* the Son of *Anthere*, one of his Successours, who Reign'd four Ages after him, in the time that *Tiberius* rul'd the *Roman* Empire. 'Twas this second *Franconus* who so well instructed his people in Discipline and Military Vertues, and repair'd by his Valour those Losses which his Country had suffered by the power of the *Romans*, who some years before under the conduct of *Julius Caesar*, had made themselves Masters of the greatest part of *Gallia*: he armed himself, and fought valiantly for Liberty; and after many memorable Victories, which he gain'd with infinite Glory, broke the yoke which they had impos'd upon his Nation, and chased away all his Enemies with a success, which established him a glorious and potent Monarchy. His great and Heroick Actions made

him considerable throughout the whole World and his name was so dear to his people, that they caused it to pass among them and their Posterity, and quitted the name of *Sicambres*, to take that of *Franks*. 'Twas then from the name of *Francus*, that they were called after that time; joyning with the name of their King, whom they had in so great veneration, that of Liberty, which had given them the name of *Frank*, or *Franchise*, and bore the same signification among them, as Freedom and Liberty did among the *Romans*,

After the death of *Francus*, his Son *Clodius* Reign'd over the *Franks*; and after *Clodius*, *Sumon*, *Herimer*, *Antenor*, and a great number of others, who succeeded from Father to Son, until *Clodomire* the Third of that name, who Reign'd in *Gallia Belgica*, sometime before the Reign of the Great *Constantine*. 'Twas to this *Clodomire*, that the *Turingiens*, oppressed by their Neighbours, sent to demand assistance; offering to put themselves under his Government, if he would deliver them from the oppression of their Enemies. *Clodomire*, either to succour his Allies, or to make his own advantage of the offer they made him, sent the Prince *Genebaud* his Brother, whom he caused to pass the *Rhine* with an Army of forty thousand men, with which he not only deliver'd the *Turingiens* from the cruel War they had with their Neighbours, but having in many Battles overcome their Enemies, he entered their Lands, and easily made himself Master of them: And seeing that not only the *Turingiens* were content to become his Subjects, but that many other people submitted willingly to his Empire, he resolv'd to establish himself in those large Champain Countries which are encompassed by the *Rhine*, the *Elbe* and the *Ocean*; and lay the foundation of a Monarchy, which from his *Franks* he called *Franconia*, and which in respect to the other, many have called the *Oriental France*.

The manner how the *Franks* establish'd themselves in that part of *Germany*, which is the same where we at present are, was admirable. And King *Clodomire* having sent them their Wives and Children, and all things necessary for persons going to inhabit a strange Country; they built Cities, tilled the Earth, and lived with as much ease and freedom, as if they had been born among those people. And some time after, *Genebaud*, either by the gentle treating of his Subjects, or by the terrour of his Arms, having rendred himself Master of the Countries of the *Cauches*, of the *Bruçieres*, the *Tençieres*, the *Marfes*, the *Angrivariens*, and many other Provinces, he left to his Successors a Kingdom little inferiour to that of his Brother. *Dagobert* his Son succeeded him; to *Dagobert*, *Clodion*; and to *Clodion*; *Marcomire*, the Father of our Prince *Pharamond*; under whom, as well as under his Predecessors, the limits of *Franconia* were extended from the *Rhine* to the *Ocean*, to the *Sueves*, and to the *Marcomans*: so that he possessed a Country composed of a great number of Provinces, and which without doubt is not the least considerable of *Europe*.

Such is the Birth of *Pharamond*, to whom without doubt few can compare, either for Antiquity or Nobleness of Blood, since without going to seek his Original from *Samobes*, nor yet from the Son of *Hector*, most certain it is, that from the first *Marcomire* which passed the *Rhine* with the *Sicambres*, he is the four and fortieth King descended from Father to Son, from his Illustrious House. Most true it is, that Prince *Genebaud* and his Successors, until the time of *Marcomire*, Father of my Prince, left the Title of King to their Cousin, who reigned in *Gallia Belgica*, contenting themselves with that of Princes or Dukes of *Franconia*. But after the Reign of *Rithimer*, Son of *Clodomire*, and that of *Theodomin*, *Clodion* and *Marcomire*, who reigned successively in the *Occidental France*, that Royal House being extinct many years before the Birth of *Pharamond*, in the person of *Marcomire* the last of his Kindred, the Royal Dignity descended to *Marcomire*, Duke of *Franconia*: Though after the death of that *Marcomire*, who was oppressed by the Emperour *Valentinian*, those Territories which he and his Ancestors had possessed among the *Gauls*, were now reduc'd under the Dominions of the *Romans*. You are not ignorant, without doubt, how that whilst the two *Marcomires* reign'd, the one in *Gallia Belgica*, the other in *Franconia*, the Emperour *Valentinian* (to whom the power of these two Princes (who did not at all acknowledge his Empire, as the others who were seated amongst the *Gauls* and *Germans* did) was much less tolerable than that of the other Monarchs of *Europe*) having received several losses in the enterprizes made against them, finding in the end the means to embroil *Marcomire*, the Father of *Pharamond*, in a War against his Neighbours, seeing him in such a condition, that he could not assist his Cousin, he invaded *Gallia-Belgica* with the whole force of the Empire, and defeated *Marcomire* in a great Battle; in which himself with his whole Army was cut off, and by his death, his Country left a prey to his Enemies, though he left the right of Succession to the other *Marcomire* and to his Son *Pharamond*, who is the Legitimate Heir, and hath no less right in the *Occidental France*, which the *Romans* have usurp'd, than

In the *Oriental*, of which he is at present possessed. So that you see that even at his birth, honour put Arms in his hands, both to revenge the loss of his Cousins, and to recover the Kingdom of his Ancestors: and I doubt not but the *Romans* will put a notable difference between their just pretensions, and the intentions of so many barbarous people, which have overflowed the Lands of the Empire, for so many years past.

By the death of *Marcomire*, King of the *Occidental France*, and the loss of his Territories, *Marcomire* Prince of *Franconia*, descended from his blood, and his legitimate Heir, look'd upon himself equally oblig'd to the revenge of his friends, and to the recovery of a Crown which appertain'd to him: He therefore immediately took upon him the title of King of the *Franks*; and having in several battles maintain'd the War against his Neighbours, and found the means to make with them an advantageous peace, he turn'd all his thoughts against the *Romans*, and prepar'd himself to pass the *Rhine*, and enter the Territories of the *Gauls* with considerable Forces: But his ill Fortune so order'd it that he found to oppose him the great *Theodosius*, who succeeded to *Valentinian*, and who endeavour'd to hinder his design with so much valour, and with a Force so much above that of *Marcomire*, that it was not only impossible for him to pass the *Rhine*, but to sustain the War which this great Emperour brought on all sides into his Country; and after many Combats wherein Fortune was various, but by the which he was extremely weaken'd, he was constrain'd to make peace with the Emperour, and confine himself within the limits of *Franconia*, which he left free to him, and with which his small power made him rest contented, though he incessantly aspired at the recovering of his lost Kingdom; and attending only a fairer occasion to renew the War, still bore the name of the King of the *Franks*. He had then been but a small time married; but some years after, the gods gave him part of that consolation which was necessary for him, by the birth of *Pharamond*.

'Twas then of the great *Marcomire*, a Prince of glorious memory amongst us, and considerable to all *Europe* for his Royal Virtues, that Prince *Pharamond* was born in *Peapolis* a fair City seated upon the Banks of the *Meine*, and Metropolis of *Franconia*: and in the same place, successively after him, were born the Princes *Marcomire* and *Sumnon* his Brothers; and after them, the Princess *Polixena* his Sister, a Princess in whom all Virtues are accompanied with an admirable beauty, A little time after her Birth, her Mother yielded to Fate, and this Noble Offspring was left under the conduct of their Father, who employed for their Education all the diligence which could be expected from his affection, and their virtuous inclinations. 'Tis most true, that he found them such as he could desire; and possibly for advantages both of body and mind, there never issued so many excellent persons from one Family: you have seen what the three Princes are; and had you seen the Princess, you would perhaps agree with me, that few persons in the world can with justice be compar'd to her.

For the education of such children, *Marcomire* disdain'd those of our own Nation, and therefore he call'd from amongst the *Romans*, and from amongst the *Greeks*, persons that were the most capable, as well for the Sciences, and the knowledge of Languages, as for the exercises of the body: And he saw at the very beginning so fair effects of his diligence, that he conceiv'd the most noble hopes that his affections could flatter him with, particularly in the person of *Pharamond*, in whom he believed to behold an abridgement of all that could be conceiv'd most great, and most amiable.

He was scarce yet eight years old, when an extraordinary woman, and of whom wonders have been published, pass'd through *Franconia* to go into *Gallia*, where she is reported to be since retir'd: She was vulgarly called *Altornua*, but others have nam'd her *Melusina*; and because with the knowledge of all Sciences she had likewise the gift to foretel things to come, as she had prov'd by many experiences, all the world ran to consult with her, and receiv'd her answers as infallible Oracles. Our Prince, whose paternal love employed as 'twere all his thoughts, though little infected with any sort of Superstition, yet would see this marvellous woman, and hear from her the destiny of his children. *Altornua* saw the King, and the three little Princes which he led with him, in a solitary house, where she pass'd some days; but though she possibly beheld in each of them somewhat to fix her thoughts, she address'd her self only to *Pharamond*; and after having a while beheld him more heedfully than she us'd to behold other persons; *Oh Infant! dear to Heaven* (she cry'd) *how Noble is thy Destiny? And how much more happy would be thy Fate, if thy heart were insensible? What glory will crown thy days? And what miseries shall persecute thy fair life?* She stopp'd at these words, to behold him more earnestly than before; and a short time after breaking silence, with a behaviour somewhat transported, *Go, young Lion* (continued she) *go combat the Eagle which usurps thy Royalties; Pass the Rhine, Re-*

venge the blood of thine, and re-enter into the inheritance of thy Fathers, the Earth shall tremble under the feet of thy Soldiers; Glory and Victory shall every where accompany thee, and thy posterity shall reign even to the last Ages over the fairest part of the world. What Posterity (added she soon after, with a tone somewhat extraordinary) what Kings, what Princes shall there be among thy Nephews, and among thy Successors? What glory to the Country of my birth? What glory to the Rivers of Seine, the Loire and Garonne? And what glory to the Ocean it self, which from the Banks of the Rhine to its very bosom, shall see all the people submit themselves to thy Empire? Ending these words, she seem'd as if she would have spoken more, if she had not been hindred by some unknown power which tyed her tongue. In short, she said no more at least in publick, though many persons believ'd that she told many particulars in secret to the King, which never yet came to our knowledge. Few days after, she quitted our Country, and retir'd, as was reported, among the *Gauls*: but her words made such an impressiion in the spirit of *Marcomire*, that all his pretensions for the recovery of the Crown, lost by his Family, were strongly rekindled in his breast; and he sigh'd for grief that he was not at present in a condition to execute his generous purpose, at least he doubted not but that glory was reserv'd for a Son, to whom so great things were promis'd: and these thoughts made him regard him with more esteem than before, and with greater hopes than he had ere that conceiv'd. And this young Prince himself, near whom I had the honour to be educated, and who was pleas'd to prefer me in his affection before any youth of my degree or age, had his spirit naturally carried to great things, and found those motions in his heart which did incline him to actions above what he could hitherto propose himself: and as he was not so young, but that he had heard speak of the pretensions of his Father, and had understood a great part of it, he began to bethink himself beyond what his age would permit, what he ought to do to answer worthily those expectations which were had of him.

Marcomire's hopes were extremely fortified after the death of the great *Theodosius*, seeing the Empire in the hands of his children, who were much inferiour to him in all things; and the Government of the Empire in the power of *Ruffinus* in the East, and of *Stilicon* in the West. He believ'd that either through the instances of the Emperours, or the ambition of their Governours, the affairs of the Empire would be reduc'd into such a condition as would give him liberty to enterprize any thing; and with these thoughts expecting a fair opportunity, he resolv'd to attend the years of *Pharamond*, upon which he grounded his entire hopes: he therefore educated him in such sort, that it might be judg'd by all appearances his chief aim was to make him a most Heroick personage: and to second those marvellous advantages which he had receiv'd from nature, with all those helps education could give him; he began with great transportation of spirit, to observe the admirable effects of an excellent nurture in an excellent nature. But though he had delight at the beginning, he enjoyed not what he propos'd to himself would follow; for in the fairest of his hopes, a cruel sickness, against which all remedies prov'd in vain, took him from among men, before *Pharamond* arriv'd at sixteen years of age: His youth did not at all hinder him from being sensible of the loss of such a Father; but in that age he demonstrated by the marks of his grief the Idea of his good Inclinations.

Marcomire before his death, left the administration of State affairs to the care of *Dagobert* and *Genebaud*, Princes of his Illustrious Blood; and the conduct of young *Pharamond* to the famous *Basogastus*, whose rare virtues had purchas'd him a great reputation amongst men: *Marcomire* and *Sunnon* were committed to the care of my Father *Dioeles*, who was appointed their Governour; and the Princess *Polixena* to that of the virtuous *Theodomira*, wife to *Prism*, a Prince of the Blood-royal, nearest to the Crown after *Dagobert* and *Genebaud*, and Father to the valiant *Genebaud* who shared with *Marcomire* the honour of combating you and your Illustrious Companion.

The sage *Basogaste*, who had the super-intendency over the young King, placed several virtuous persons near him; and amongst the most remarkable, *Charamont*, who both for his birth and merit, worthily held the chief degree. Nor did this Illustrious Governour forget any thing that might conduce to so important an education. But not to hold you over-long in the recital of things of small consequence, his design so well prosper'd, that he did not only render the young Prince such as *Marcomire* could have desir'd him, but much beyond what either he could hope, or any that had an interest in him could expect. I shall speak nothing of the person of *Pharamond*: you have seen him enough already to observe, that for a noble aspect, excellency of carriage, and Royal Majesty, perhaps no man in the world surpasses him. You may have likewise observ'd in that conversation you have had with him, that he is truly and wholly charming, as well for the vivacity and
delicateness

delicateness of his spirit, accompanied with a perfect knowledge of all Sciences, as for a sweetness which is wholly particular to him, and a complacency, which without having any thing of baseness or flattery, gives those that discourse with him that satisfaction which they could not find in any but his converse. The same sweetness accompanies him in all the actions of his life; though perhaps where fierceness is necessary, you have never seen a man more fierce than he. All his inclinations are in such manner fix'd upon virtue, that no consideration nor passion can disturb him; and in those extremities into which his ill fortune hath cast him, he hath never let pass any occasion to do good, though embrac'd at the peril of his life, and all that he could think most precious. His clemency, whether towards Enemies he had vanquish'd, or towards those from whom he had receiv'd any particular injury, can never be parallel'd: and one may truly in some manner speak of him, that he never tasted that pleasure, which so many other persons propose to themselves in revenge. His liberality is beyond what I can speak: so magnificent is he, and so excessive in his presents, that if his friends, and those that live near him, had not had more care to maintain his Grandeur and Dignity, he had often thrown himself into extreme poverty to enrich them. His word is inviolable, as well in the least things, as in those of greatest importance; and some have affirm'd that it was not without a mystery, that at his birth they impos'd him a name, which in the *German* tongue signifies the Mouth of Truth. His modesty will not suffer the most lawful praises: and he is adorn'd with an equity so exact in all things, that he cannot suffer the least effect of injustice. Neither prosperities heighten him, nor misfortunes abase him: And as there is nothing more modest, nor moderate than he in good success, so we may affirm that his spirit never seems greater than in the greatest misfortunes. 'Tis then that his courage is admirable; and I would say he were invincible, could he better have resisted love, and its dire effects, which hath caus'd all the miseries of his life, and embroyl'd the fair course of it, with those horrible disasters into which it hath precipitated them. He is naturally very jovial, but without excess or any transportation of mind, except his ill fortunes have chang'd his humour: yet in this melancholy, which for some time past hath possess'd him, those who converse with him find something more charming, and more agreeable, than in the conversation of the most esteem'd persons. To those excellent qualities of his soul, which I know not well how to describe to you, is joyn'd an unparallel'd strength of body, a force almost more than natural, which is in him so much the more wonderful, because both his colour, and the whole composure of his person, would make him rather judg'd of a delicate, than strong complexion. But in short, few men suffer all sorts of travel better than he; and scarce is there any can better endure the first shock in a combat. At all exercises of the body, all the most expert Masters will confess their ignorance in respect to him: And as there is none manages a Horse with more address than he, passes a Carriere with so much vigour, or breaks a Lance with so much grace; so there are none at all that combate on foot, or so dexterously handles all sorts of Arms as he; nor who (if I may be permitted to speak of Exercises of Peace, after having made mention of those of War) dances more becomingly than he, plays better on all sorts of instruments practis'd both amongst the *Greeks* and *Romans*; or accompanies better all these graces, by the advantages he hath in Painting and Musick. His actions have so sufficiently blazon'd forth the knowledge he hath in the mystery of war, that I need not mention it to you: but perhaps you will find enough in the Discourse which I have to make you, to judge him not inferior to the most ancient Captains. In sum, I shall end, by saying (for it may be I have already said too much for your patience, though not too much of truth) that my Prince had been the most accomplish'd personage, and perhaps the most admired of men, if he had better defended himself against love; and if with his other great qualities, he had been less sensible of this cruel passion, which renders him the most unfortunate of men.

Pharamond became what I have endeavour'd to describe you, by the diligence of *Basilagus*, and the Princes his Brothers, in whose persons Nature had plac'd most noble advantages of Nature, made no less progress under the conduct of my Father; so that the whole world judg'd they would prove worthy Brothers of so transcendent a Prince. So long as the Kingdom was govern'd by *Dagobert* and *Genebaud*, who having joyn'd to the interest of that Blood from whence they were descended, the confidence the dead King had plac'd in them, acquitted gloriously their trust, maintaining Peace and Justice in the Provinces with an infinite prudence, and defending themselves from the enterprizes of their neighbours with no less valour. The knowledge they had of the Intentions of the King *Meremire* to invade the *Gauls*, and the observations they every day took of the ardent desire of the young Prince to labour the revenge of his Friends, and recovery of his

Crown, made them endeavour to gain Friends to assist him in this design, when he should be of age to undertake it: they made secret Alliances with the neighbouring Princes to engage them to his interest, fortified all places of *Franconia*, with all things necessary to sustain a long war, and had perhaps done more, had not death cut off both the one and the other at the same time that the Prince entered into his seventeenth year. They left each of them one Son: *Ibere* remained to *Dagobert*, and *Merouée* to *Geneband*, Princes both considerable, not only for their Illustrious Extraction, but for their admirable valour, and a thousand excellent virtues which accompanied it.

After the death of these two Regents, whose memory is famous among the *Franks*, the young King took the Reigns of his Monarchy into his own hands, and by the counsels of *Prizm* and *Basogastus*, began himself to govern; they bias'd his youth by their prudence, and by their advice were all things manag'd. 'Twas now they perceiv'd better than before, and beheld with admiration those fair qualities, of which I have made mention to you; so that the *Franks* conceiv'd an immoderate joy to be govern'd by a Prince so great, and so amiable. There were few persons which did not feel the effects of his liberality, and inclinations to do good; so that he so much gain'd the hearts both of the great ones, and people, that he had all their love, and all their prayers. His carriage towards his Peers, was the most Noble and Generous in the world, and particularly towards *Marcomire*, whom he lov'd with a most tender affection, knowing in him those qualities which would make him admir'd by the whole earth, if they were not a little darkned by those of his King: yet this particular esteem which he had for him, did not at all lessen the affection which he owed to Prince *Sumon*, who in valour, spirit, and all sorts of noble qualities, is little inferior to the most accomplish'd persons; nor that he always bare to the Princess *Polixena* his Sister, of whose admirable beauties and divine perfections, I should be oblig'd to make you a particular description, if it were necessary to my recital, or if I were not oblig'd to pass to more important things.

Pharamond had scarce begun to reign, but he bethought how to execute that design which he had in his mind from his infancy, and in which he had been confirm'd by the instructions of the King his Father, and the eager thirst he had after Honour. As his courage was great, his thoughts became vast, and the limits of *Franconia* seem'd too narrow to confine his mind; he design'd nothing else but to pass the *Rhine* to revenge the injuries done to his friends, and recover that Crown which of right appertained to him. And besides that his ambition and warlike inclinations inspir'd him, the words of *Altornua* were daily in his memory; and finding himself pleasingly flatter'd by the promises which she made him, he burn'd with impatience for opportunities to signalize himself, and open a way to that glory which she had foretold him. And to testify the remembrance of those words, the first Arms that he carried, on the Ridge of his Helmet he wore a Lion fighting with an Eagle. He declar'd his intention to Prince *Priam*, *Basogastus*, *Charamont*, and others, in whose prudence he had sufficient confidence: And though these great men found an infinite boldness in the design, and perhaps little appearance that it should prosper, yet they could not condemn it in a Prince like *Pharamond*; but looking upon him as a miraculous personage, and one destin'd by Heaven to act something extraordinary, they let pass their reason, and made it give place to their better hopes of all things. They only contented themselves to tell him, that his design was truly worthy the Grandeur of his courage; and if any good success could be hop'd for, 'twas without doubt for him that the glory of such an enterprize was reserv'd; but that he ought to manage it with a prudence so much the more great, as he had to do with the most potent strength in the world, and not embark himself in so important a war, without having consider'd all dangers, and divid'd into all his advantages: That to this effect he ought not to be over rash or hasty; but whilst they secretly made necessary preparations, time might produce a favourable opportunity: That there was already great appearance of disorders like to happen in the Empire: That it was generally sam'd, that several Provinces intended to arm themselves, and throw off the yoke which the *Romans* had for many years impos'd upon them: That they should either allie themselves with one of those parties, and so forming a great body, give more trouble to their enemies; or making use of their opportunity, when the *Roman* Arms were employed against the other Provinces, make without doubt more progress than they could possibly do, whilst things were more calm.

Pharamond knew there was a great deal of reason in the discourse of his faithful Counsellours; and though he found himself strongly spur'd forward to seek for Honour, he yielded for one year to the advice of those old Politicians, though he then understood that the *Goths* and *Herules* were entered into some Provinces of the Empire, under the conduct

of *Alaric* and *Radagaise* : But afterwards understanding that *Radagaise* was defeated by *Stilicon*, and himself and all his whole Army slain in *Italy* by that success, in which the world gives you, great Sir, the noblest thare : That *Stilicon* was employ'd against *Alaric* in a war, which it was believ'd would not easily be determin'd ; and that it was blaz'd through the world, that the *Alanes*, *Gepides*, *Vandals* and *Burgundians*, were resolv'd to take Arms upon the common quarrel of all people, who had felt the heavy weight of the *Roman* tyranny : He had no longer power to contain his great courage ; and easily making all his Subjects give consent to his purpose, out of the marvellous opinion they had of him, he began openly to arm and seek the assistance of his Allies, and assemble his Forces from all parts. He in short time levied a puissant force, not only among the *Cauches*, the *Saliens*, the *Bructeres*, the *Angrivariens*, the *Jubantes*, the *Usipetes*, the *Marses*, and other people, which were his Subjects ; but amongst his Neighbours and Allies, who joyn'd themselves with infinite acclamations to his party : such were the *Jubons*, the *Cattese*, the *Sedusiens*, the *Turomens*, and the *Cherufques*.

His Army began to grow numerous, and the Banks of the *Mein* and *Visurgues* already in several places return'd their echoes to the cries of the Soldiers, and neighing of the Horses : And to make him yet more strong, there arriv'd an Envoy from the King of the *Burgundians*, offering an Alliance on the behalf of his Master, and to demand his, with the conjunction of their Forces against the common enemy. The *Burgundians* are a people descended, as it is believed, from the same original with the *Vandals* ; and which about an age preceding coming to inhabit in *Germany*, had possess'd themselves of a good part of it, and rendred themselves terrible to all *Europe*. Their King *Gondioch*, though he was not above four or five years more aged than my Master, yet had already blaz'd forth his renown through the world, by divers noble warlike exploits, which made him esteem'd amongst the most valiant living ; and he is fam'd to be no less experienc'd in war, than many of the ancient Captains. He had not only taken Arms against the *Romans*, but driven them out of those Territories which were subject to them, and the Neighbouring Countries, having fought many great Battels, of which the Victory still remain'd on his side : and to demonstrate the aversion he bore to that slavery which his Predecessors had submitted to, he had taken for his Arms a Cat Argent, with this Motto, LIBERTY. That Beast being reported to be of all others the greatest Lover of Freedom, and impatient of Captivity.

Gondioch had already made known his imprese to all *Europe*, and was now not only content to have driven the *Romans* out of their Lands in *Germany*, but he resolv'd to carry the war into *Gallia*, making several pretences to the Province of the *Senonois*. To this purpose he sought the Alliance of my Prince ; and the Agent who brought him the offer, told him on the behalf of his Master, that if it pleas'd him they should joyn their Forces, and carry on the war against the *Romans*, they would pass the *Rhine* together, and aid each other mutually in their conquests, without disuniting their interest till the end of the war, or till they had an entire satisfaction, or that either the one or other were ruin'd.

Pharamond (who already emulated the fair reputation of *Gondioch*, but with a noble emulation, and utterly estrang'd from that envy which only possesses baser minds) receiv'd with infinite joy, such a companion in his enterprize and first tryal of his Fortunes, hoping in a small time to oblige renown to treat him no less favourably, and advance himself by his valour to such a degree of glory, as might make him justly behold without envy all that *Gondioch* had gain'd. And therefore having favourably treated his Envoy, and having made him many magnificent presents, he charg'd him to assure his Master of all that he could desire from him, and protest to him, that he could not conceive a greater joy, than to have the fair opportunity to learn so great a mystery under so famous and experienc'd a Warriour.

Their Alliance was thus concluded, and the young King of the *Franks* endeavour'd with all diligence to put his Troops in order to meet *Gondioch*, on the Banks of *Visurgues*, whither he intended with all speed to march with his. But things could not be brought to pass at present, as they had propos'd them : for the rumour of our Princes Arming being already spread about the world, *Aurelian* and *Maximus*, who commanded the *Roman* Legions in *Germany*, and who had in many places considerable Forces, assembled them with all diligence, and put themselves in a condition which made them not only hope to frustrate their design, but to ruine them in the enterprize. The first thing they aim'd at, was to hinder the conjunction of *Pharamond* and *Gondioch*, which it was eatie for them to do, and which they effected with a marvellous diligence.

Besides the *Roman Troops*, which they in few dayes drew together, they had the greatest part of *Germany* for their Allies; and though it was fear rather, than affection that held them so, yet they ceased not to caufe them take Arms in all Provinces which were yet at their devotion. And by this means they had in a small time assembl'd two Armies much more puissant than those of *Pharamond* or *Gondioch*: Towards the *Danube*, the *Carithinians*, the *Latobriges* and the *Turingiens* raised Forces for them; and towards *Visurgues*, and the Mountains of *Millebec*, the *Dandutes*, the *Nerterians* and the *Sueves*, who for a long time had been Enemies to *Franconia*, did the like; but the *Romans* received the greatest assistance from the King of *Cimbria* and *Bohemia*, who being a mortal Enemy to *Gondioch*, embrac'd with joy this opportunity to testify the hatred which he bore him. With the Forces of all these Nations and their own; *Aurelian* and *Maximus* believ'd (and that with a great deal of probability) themselves in a condition to destroy their Enemies, and having parted their Forces into two Armies almost equal, *Aurelian* march'd towards *Gondioch*, and *Maximus* came to find out *Pharamond*, towards the Borders of *Franconia*.

The young Prince was advertis'd of his advance, but not at all daunted at it, for he testified more courage in these his first beginnings, than possibly many more assured Warriors could have done after many years practice of warlike Affairs. He disdain'd to stay expecting him in his own Country, but advanc'd to seek him in the best order in the World. They happen'd to come near upon the same time into the Country of the *Marcomans*; and in the end, their Armies approach'd so near, that nothing but the River *Meine* separated them. I know not, Mighty Sir, whether you can give an entire credit to what I tell you of these my Master's first Acts: but most certain it is, that at that Age whercin he might very probably be ignorant in what is unknown to any but old and experienc'd Captains, he gave cause of admiration to *Priam*, *Bisogastus*, and all those whom long practice had made Masters of the warlike Science. Not that his youth and great courage did not carry him sometimes farther than was necessary; but he gave so good reasons for all his enterprizes, that the most Sage could not tell how to condemn them: And when he perceiv'd that by too much forwardness he had too far engag'd his Troops, he knew how to retire them with such an admirable conduct, and preserv'd his judgment so entire in the midst of the greatest dangers, that all those that were near him, were astonish'd as at things most prodigious: He acted with this prudence for the preservation of his men, but for his own safety he us'd not the same: and had it not been for *Priam*, *Bisogastus* and *Charamont*, who would almost offer him violence at such times, he would have every day hazarded his Person more dangerously than the meanest Souldier of his Army.

The two Armies had for some time remained facing each other, on the two Banks of the *Meine*; and our old Captains advis'd that we should suffer *Maximus* to pass over, not doubting but he that should pass first, would in his passage give sufficient Advantages to his Enemy. But *Pharamond* could not with patience attend so long: and after having represented unto them, that he could not in honour suffer his Enemy to ruine and destroy the Country of his Allies, in which they were lodg'd, nor permit them to war in our own Country, whilst we might carry it in to theirs; he discamped one Night (contrary to the expectation of his Enemies, who did not at all suspect he would take his March that way he did) and by a great circuit reach'd the City of *Devona*, where over a fair and large Bridge cross the *Meine*, he pass'd his whole Army before that *Maximus* perceiv'd his design.

This hardiness of *Pharamond* astonish'd him, who could not believe that with forces fewer in number than his, he should have the assurance to pass the River, and come to him: and in stead of having before disdain'd him as a young man little experienc'd in War, and whom the first dangers would affright; this effect of his courage made him begin to fear, and to doubt more than before of the success of that War to which he had march'd with an assured confidence of Victory: so that he made no farther shew of desiring a Battel, or at least he deferred it so long as it was possible: not that he was not in condition to give it, being stronger than we by more than ten thousand men; but he had advice of the march of the *Sueves*, who came to joyn with him, and he was in hopes to oppress us without danger, with that great power, when it should be all united together. One party of those he expected, might have arriv'd, had we given him the leisure to attend that great reinforcement; but our Prince having been advertis'd of the Levies of the *Sueves*, and knowing them to be Allies of the *Romans*, doubting not at all but that they were to march against us, judg'd well, and his judgment was approv'd by all his own, that without giving further time to our Enemies to fortifie themselves, we ought to give them battel.

To this purpose he approach'd towards them, endeavouring to draw them to fight by all means

means possible; but it had been difficult for him to have perform'd his design, if *Maximus*, who was young and courageous, had not judg'd it disgraceful to the *Roman* name, to avoid the Combat with Forces much surpassing his Enemies; or had not believ'd himself assur'd of Victory without attending the Arrival of the *Sueves*, who were scarce march'd out of their Country. Wherefore without farther deliberation he prepared for Battel, and drew his Troops from the places in which they were encamp'd, to range them in a great Plain, which is between the River *Meine*, and the Country of the *Hermundures*. *Pharamond* had no sooner knowledge of it, but joy and courage were seen equally glittering in his eyes; and we might easily observe something more than humane in his Person, and in all the Actions which he did to prepare himself against this fortunate day.

You have already, Great Sir, too largely heard the success, to have the patience to hear me recount all the particulars: I shall therefore pass them over, and only tell you, because there are some things you may be ignorant of, That my Prince having rang'd his Troops with an admirable order, and following the counsel of the old Captains, to whom he hearkned with a wonderful quickness of apprehension, he plac'd himself at the head of the right Wing, and gave the left to be commanded by the famous *Priam*; *Ibere* and *Merouée*, young Princes of his Blood, and of his Age, commanded the Cavalry. Prince *Marcomire* his Brother he kept with him, to fight without any charge, together with Prince *Genebaud*, Son of *Priam*. *Bisgathus*, *Charamont*, and others the most considerable, who would not consent to be distant from his person, in a time of so much danger. The Prince *Sumnon* was not yet able to bear Arms, having hardly pass'd fifteen years; but though *Marcomire* was but in the seventeenth, they could not oblige him to be dispens'd with. Never did the Countenance of the fairest Amazon appear in Armour so beautiful as his: and had he carried it naked in the fight, there could have been no Enemy so barbarous as to offend it. But our young King seem'd such to us in his fair Arms, there appearing somewhat so great, so Majestick and so Divine (if I may be permitted to speak it) in his Carriage, in his Eyes, and in all his Actions, that he became the Admiration of those that beheld him, and put into the most timorous souls the assur'd hopes of Victory: But if all the Grace of his person could charm us, those who could hear his Discourse, when he encourag'd the Souldiers, were no less surpris'd with his eloquence: and besides the force his becoming Deportment gave to his words, a fire was to be discern'd to issue from his Eyes, which enflam'd with a Martial vigour the most faint hearted spirits. The Arms which he that day carried, were no less fair than you saw him wear yesterday; the Gold and precious Stones glittered throughout them, and behind the Lyon combating against the Eagle, which was erected upon his Helmet, in remembrance of the words of *Altornua*, he wore confusedly a great number of fair Plumes, which yielding to their own weight, seem'd almost to cover his Shoulders. He was mounted on a Horse most proper for the employment of that day, and carried his Lance with such a grace that he seem'd compos'd by the Graces themselves. But all that appeared of fierce and terrible in his Eyes, could not blot out that character of sweetness, which is depainted in his Countenance, and which in what condition soever he be, reigns in all his Actions: so that whatever may be discerned in him to make him appear warlike, he seems by nature inclined rather to make himself belov'd than fear'd.

As this day was destin'd to be of infinite glory to him, so all things contributed to it: for he was not only fortunate at the first blow he gave, but with the first stroke of a Lance he had ever given in his life, he depriv'd a Sovereign of his, and threw dead before the eyes of *Maximus*, the Prince of the *Latobriges*, who for fear rather than affection serv'd the *Romans* against their Neighbours. The first happy success of their Prince seem'd as a good Augure to the *Franks*, who made the Heavens echo with their acclamations of joy: but that blow was follow'd by so many others of the same hand, that the remembrance of that was utterly lost, and nothing lookt upon but the confusion and horrour into which he had put this side of the Battel. The young *Marcomire* signaliz'd himself in this his first essay, with a thousand memorable actions: and the Princes *Ibere*, *Merovee* and *Genebaud*, made both their friends and enemies witnesses of the fairest beginnings in the World. There was never possibly a fight better maintain'd in *Germany* than this days Combat, both by the valour of the Captains and Souldiers, both of one and the other party; so that the slaughter was so bloody, that the Waters of the *Meine* were changed for several furlongs to a crimson hew. The left Wing which was conducted by the valiant *Priam*, seem'd to give way a little before their enemies, who were commanded by *Maximus*; and possibly had fell into a great extremity, had it not been succour'd by *Pharamond*, who (having broken the wing of the enemies which he oppos'd; and by the effects of an admirable valour, and a conduct more than extraordinary, in an age like his, atchiev'd a Victory on

all sides where he shew'd himself) flew to assist his friends, and by his presence chang'd the face of the Combat.

I shall add little more my Lord, because I know that nothing of importance hath been hid from your knowledge. The wing which *Maximus* commanded, had the same fortune to be defeated as the other, and he himself dismounted by a blow he received from the Prince *Marcomire*; and had been taken, had he not been valiantly seconded and remounted by his Followers. He endeavoured by all means possible to rally his scattered Troops; nor could he be accused for this days unfortunate success. But in the end, the Victory remained on our side, and remained so entire, that more than thirty thousand of our Enemies lost their lives, and more than ten thousand were taken prisoners; whom *Pharamond's* clemency saved from the fury of his Souldiers. Night hindered the Conquerours from a further pursuit; and some dayes after, *Maximus*, who had escaped in the confusion, rallied the best part of those that remained.

This Victory, though great and renowned in it self, was more dear to us for the Honour which our young Monarch acquir'd, than for all the Advantages we drew from it: his glorious beginings had ravish'd us with so sensible a joy, that we had demonstrated it in some extraordinary manner, would our Prince have consented, and had not been resolv'd to resist as much modestly as we expressed our gladness. He committed the charge of other necessary employments after so great a Victory, to *Priam*, *Charamont*, and other great Personages; but himself took entire care of the prisoners: And having separated the *Romans* from the *Germanis*, he sent away those of the Provinces, after having taken their Parol to return to their Houses, and not serve any more under the *Romans*: and soon after, he shew'd the same kindness to the Forces of the Empire.

After he had rested the Army for some few dayes, he march'd after *Maximus*, not doubting but he was retir'd towards the *Sueves*, who were coming to joyn with him; which he resolv'd with all his endeavour to prevent, or if possible, carry the War into their Countries, rather than attend it in his own: To this purpose we march'd through the Territories of the *Hermundures*, taking our March between the *Meine*, and the *Hercinian* Mountains; but this Country being either possessed by our Enemies, or their Allyes, we found great difficulties in passing, and were stopp'd at the City of *Menofgada*, seated upon the Banks of the *Meine*, and little distant from the *Hercinian* Mountains.

Pharamond had no intention to lay siege to a City of sufficient strength to retard the course of his designs, and give too long time to his Enemies; he therefore resolv'd to pass his Army on the right hand between the City and the Mountains: but most passages being guarded, he was strongly oppos'd, and constrain'd to force his way through many, which he did with admirable valour and wisdom. His way being thus open'd, he happily pass'd the *Straits* before the Arrival of *Maximus* and the *Sueves*, who had without doubt disputed it with him, and would highly have annoy'd him, had they made themselves Masters of it.

He had scarcely time to enlarge himself on the Plains, when he had Advice of the March of his Enemies, that they were not above a dayes Journey from us; and that *Maximus* had joyn'd with the *Sueves*, all that he could save or rally of his discomfited Army. The *Sueves* were commanded by *Vindimer* their King's Son, a young Prince of fair hopes, and who in a tender Age had given admirable proofs of his valour: he march'd heighten'd by many great Advantages; but that which made him most proud, was the hope he had to possess the Princess of the *Cimbres*, that famous Beauty, whose Renown is spread throughout the whole Universe. Some have reported that he was dearly belov'd of her, though this high-minded Princess had seen all the Princes of *Germany*, and those of many other Nations, in vain fighting at her feet: And it was not at all doubted, but by the will of the two Kings their Fathers, who equally desired the Alliance, this Marriage, cruel to so many Illustrious Lovers, would in a short time have been celebrated. *Vindimer* was much troubled to be banish'd from her; nor had he without doubt quitted her, if Honour had not call'd him to succour his Allies, or that he had not had hopes to return crown'd with Laurels from the success of a War which he did not doubt would be soon determin'd. He led near forty thousand men; and with those which *Maximus* had sav'd from the former Battle, the whole Army was compos'd of more than fifty thousand. Out of the respect the *Sueves* had for the *Romans*, *Vindimer* permitted the chief Authority to *Maximus*; but *Maximus* unwilling to abuse his civility, treated him when they were together as his Companion and Allie. Our Army was likewise compos'd of above forty thousand men; which though a number inferiour to that of our Enemies, in stead of putting any fear into the mind of *Pharamond*, seem'd to animate him the more to the Combat.

Before:

Before we came to a Battel, several remarkable passages happen'd, and many Skirmishes pass'd, in which our King signaliz'd himself by many extraordinary actions. But the most famous which happen'd, and of greatest importance, was within the sight of *Mensogade*, where the Prince of the *Sueves* going with about three thousand Cavalry to plant some Forces behind us, and stop our retreat, met with the valiant *Pharamond*, who with a body of Horse little inferiour to his, was gone in person to take notice of several Posts he intended to secure. The two Princes did no sooner discover each other, but they mutually sent to know what they were; and *Vindimer* had no sooner judg'd by several marks, that *Pharamond* was in person in that great body of his enemies, but spur'd forward with a generous emulation of the Renown which already began to spread abroad of his Valour, advancing before all his own, whom he made march slowly after him, seeing that we marched towards him on a full trot, before the Troops could joyn he sent a Herald to demand the breaking of a Lance with *Pharamond*. Our valiant Prince receiv'd *Vindimer's* defiance with infinite joy; and having commanded us not to move farther, whilst *Vindimer* did the same to his Troops, he advanc'd towards the Prince of the *Sueves*, brandishing his Lance with a fierceness wholly Martial. The countenance of *Vindimer* was no less assur'd than his, and no sooner were they plac'd opposite to each other, but they parted at the same time, and made the beauty of their Course be equally admir'd by both parties. The Lance of *Vindimer* broke in a thousand pieces upon the Shield of *Pharamond*; but that of our Prince having found the place where the Helmet is joyn'd to the body of the Cuirass, pass'd between the one and the other without resistance, and piercing the neck of the unfortunate *Vindimer*, caus'd him to tumble depriv'd of life behind the Crouper of his Horse! Oh! this was the cruellest blow that ever was given by Lance both to him that gave it, and to him that received it: how much blood hath it since cost to repay those tears! which it caus'd to be shed by the fairest eyes of the Universe!

The deplorable *Vindimer* was scarce fallen, who with his life lost those fair hopes with which he was encourag'd, but his Troops, whom the sight of so sad an accident had inspir'd with fury, in a moment levying a forest of Lances against the Conquerour, intended without doubt by a thousand wounds to revenge the death of their Prince, if we had not spur'd forward so soon as we saw them couch'd, and had not cover'd our King by receiving them in the middle of their Carriere. Never had the like number of men so terrible an encounter, nor ever did so small a Troop fight so valiantly. The despair with which the *Sueves* fought, made the Victory a long time dubious; and had it not been for the wonderful actions of our Prince, and those valiant men that fought near him, this Combat could not but have been fatal to us; but in the end, the King of the *Franks* employing all his valour, put fear and flight into the most desperate; and after he had cover'd the Field with the greatest part, he permitted the rest to save themselves: he dismiss'd those which were taken prisoners with the body of their Prince, which he caus'd them to carry to their Camp; nor could he see it taken from amongst the rest of the dead, without testifying by his tears the sorrow he had for his deplorable destiny.

We understood the next morning that *Maximus*, and the whole Camp, had been sensibly grieved for the loss of *Vindimer*, and that with the sad news they had sent the body of the Prince to the King his Father. The desire *Maximus* had of revenge, made him hasten to the Battel; and the *Sueves* demanded it with so much earnestness, that it was impossible for him to deny it: It was given some few days after (not to detain you with a too tedious recital of things you already know) and it was near to the same place where the last Combate was fought, and with an order as to the embattelling our Troops little different from the former. It was certainly more bloody than the first; and the rage wherewith the *Sueves* were animated put our Prince oftentimes quite out of hopes of the Victory. So that one may say with truth, that it was not the *Franks* that vanquish'd the *Sueves* and the *Romans*, but *Pharamond* that vanquish'd *Maximus*; such prodigious things did he, and sustain'd so often the fortune of his party by the succours he gave them in the greatest extremities, and by the orders he gave and changed according to necessity in the greatest heat of the Combate, that 'twas to him alone, more than to all the rest, that we truly ought the Victory. The desperate fury of the *Sueves* render'd it more entire than it could have been, had they been less obstinate, for the enemies left forty thousand dead upon the place, after they had slain ten thousand of ours. *Maximus* again sav'd himself with the miserable remainder, which *Pharamond*, whom this great effusion of blood mov'd to compassion, would not farther pursue.

After this great Victory, all the adjacent Country which before took part with our Enemies, submitted themselves to his power, and many of the Cities follow'd their example;

ple; others whose confidence in their own strength made them take contrary resolutions, prov'd the effects of his Valour, and the knowledge he had already in beliegging strong Holds. *Menofgade* held out against us above a month; but in less than two we took five or six others. And *Pharamond* having made himself Master of all those passages which were before disputed, found himself in a condition to perform the conditions which he had made with *Gondioch*, and to assist him against *Aurelian*, who together with the *Cimbrians* and *Bohemians*, made war upon the Frontiers of his own Dominions. We understood in few days, that between them Fortune had been variously inclin'd: That *Gondioch* had had great advantages over *Aurelian*; and that in a Battel he had gain'd against him, near the Ruces of *Guttale*, he had kill'd him about twenty thousand men; and that in the end, the King of *Cimbria*, having joyn'd all his Forces, and those of his Allies with the *Romans*, they had compos'd so formidable an Army, that they had constrain'd him to retire into his own Country, where they intended to attacque him, with hopes to overcome him rather by number than virtue.

This news made *Pharamond* hasten to the assistance of his Allie: but he had advanc'd forward but a few days march, when he receiv'd an advice which forc'd him to change his resolution. He understood that *Aurelian* having heard of the defeat of *Maximus* and his whole Army, judging that his presence would be more necessary against us, than against the King of the *Burgundians*, had left the King of the *Cimbrians* with an Army of about fifty thousand, either to fight or amuse *Gondioch*, whilst he was obliged to run to the more pressing necessity, and with the rest of the Army went to joyn with those new Troops were levied among the *Sueves*, and those of the *Bohemians*; and thence traversing that part which was encompassed by the Forest, and the *Hercinian* Mountains (which he might the more easily do, it being the Country of his Allies, and where nothing could retard his passage) he came to the Banks of the *Danube*, and so through the Countries of the *Sedusians*, *Turomans* and *Marcomans*, to fall upon *Franconia*.

This advice which our Prince received from several parts, made him return to the defence of his own Country, before *Aurelian* should arrive; and having order'd diligent levies of several Troops to fortifie his Army less numerous yet by half than that of his enemies, he softly march'd towards the Country of the *Sedusians*, to meet *Aurelian* in his passage; and attending the reinforcement that was to joyn with him, he encamp'd, and rested some days on the Banks of the *Rhine*, between the *Turomans*, and the *Marcomans*, and in the Country which is opposite to that of the *Nemetes* and *Vagenses*. I shall shorten this discourse, as well because all that fell out of importance is known to you; as out of the desire I have to come to the recital of things more worthy your attention, or at least your curiosity. I will therefore tell you with all possible brevity, That *Aurelian* arriv'd as my Master had suspected: That the two Captains made war two or three months in the Country of the *Turomans*, where in more than twenty combats they disputed the advantages they fought; and that in the end, the two Armies being ranged near to the *Rhine*, decided the war by a general Battel. 'Twas much more bloody than all the others, and the victory was disputed with so much courage and resolution, that we lost more than twelve thousand men: but the Army of the *Romans* was entirely destroyed, together with their General *Aurelian*, who in the heat of the fight lost his life by the Sword of Prince *Marcomire*, who this day commanded all the Cavalry, and signaliz'd himself by a multitude of great actions worthy eternal memory. *Ibere*, *Genebaud* and *Merouée*, gave likewise severally noble proofs of their valour, as likewise did the young Prince *Summon*, who now began to seek his first glory in Arms, and in these his first beginnings shewed himself worthy of that Illustrious blood, from whence he was descended. The renowned *Friam* and the valiant *Charimont*, with many others for virtue and extraction considerable, had their shares in the honourable success of this War, and by their noble actions extended their fame through all the Provinces of *Germany*.

By this great victory, our valiant Prince did not only drive the *Romans* from the limits of his Territories, but render'd himself Master of the whole Country. The *Sedusians*, the *Caribinens* and the *Latobriges*, renounced voluntarily the Alliance of the *Romans*; nor were there any of the Provinces which lie upon the *Rhine*, the *Elba*, the *Ocean*, the *Sala*, and the *Danube*, which did not submit to his power, or seek his Alliance. Besides the effects of his great renown already spread through the whole world, and the veneration which the charms of his person might cause; the mildness with which he treated the people, as well those whom his Arms reduc'd to obedience, as those that submitted voluntarily, gained in a short time upon the fiercest hearts, and rendred his name as dear to all those who were not arm'd with some interest against him, as it was terrible to his ene-

'Twas now that with joy his valour was attended with the effects of those fair hopes which had been conceiv'd of him: for his Forces encreasing every day, through the confidence the people had of him, and the constant messengers sent by all to desire his protection, that he made no doubt at all to be in a posture to pass the *Rhine*, and establish amongst the *Gauls* the ancient Monarchy of his Fathers. And those who formerly would have dissuaded him from this enterprize, by the great difficulties they saw in it, were now the first to solicit him, and to testify the impatience they had to follow him in so noble an expedition. But his great courage needed not these solicitations: for the love of glory being at this time the sole possessor of his mind, he would have looked upon that River which separates us from the *Gauls*, as too poor an obstacle to stay him, if he had not remembered the league which he had made with the King of the *Burgundians*, and the obligations which engaged him to succour him in a war which had been brought upon him, partly by their Alliance.

He had understood that after the departure of *Aurelian*, he had not only defended himself against the Forces of the King of the *Cimbrians* and *Bohemians*, whom *Aurelian* had left to oppose him; but that after a long time having maintained the War, with a rare conduct and admirable valour, he had in the end, in a great Battel not only defeated his enemies, and retaken several Cities, which they had possessed themselves of in his Territories, but that he was upon the point to drive them entirely from thence, and carry the war into their own Countries: when the King of the *Cimbrians* found means to joyn the King of the *Sueves* to his quarrel, and to draw to his assistance a most powerful Army, which he had already rais'd, less for interest of the *Romans*, than to revenge the death of his Son, who lost his life by the Lance of *Pharamond*.

These two Kings had not only been a long time tied together by an ordinary Alliance, but had bound themselves by more particular and stronger bonds of friendship, and by the design they had to joyn in a more firm union, by the marriage of the unfortunate *Vindimir*, and the fair Princess of the *Cimbrians*. The desolate Father had with tears of blood lamented the loss of his Son; but after he had given some time to those unprofitable showers, he comforted himself out of hope of revenge; and to that purpose had sent throughout the world to seek his young Son *Viridomar*, whom some discontent had caused about two years before to part from his Court, and who in his tender youth had given proofs of an admirable valour, and a courage advanc'd above any thing common. In the mean time he had arm'd all parts of his Dominions, and those of his Neighbours who interest themselves in his grief. The King of the *Cimbrians* was not wanting to testify the portion he had in it, and which he ought to have for the interest of his Daughter, (who had been sensibly touch'd for the loss of a Prince, whom their Parents and their own inclinations had destin'd for her Spouse) promising him all that he could hope from a Brother, to perfect that vengeance which should be common to both: and since he understood that he was in a condition, and had already resolv'd to march against *Pharamond*, he represented unto him that they were not to follow the examples of *Maximus* and *Aurelian*, who had not perish'd with their whole Armies, had they not so unadvisedly separated them: That he should be ready to follow him, so soon as he had finish'd the War, which he was already engaged in: and that if he would joyn with him against *Gondioch*, who as well as *Pharamond* was their common enemy, he would follow him and serve him even to the last of his Subjects, against the murtherer of his Son, and the Spouse which he had destin'd to his Daughter.

The King of the *Sueves* had found so much of reason in the propositions of the King of *Cimbria*, that he easily comply'd with his desires; and assured him, that he would directly march to his assistance, now that his affairs were brought into such a condition; and that the King of the *Burgundians* having driven him out of his Country, was preparing to enter into his. No sooner did *Pharamond* hear this news but not long debating what resolution to take, he quitted the Banks of the *Rhine*, and with an Army of forty thousand Foot, and fifteen thousand Horse, marched to the assistance of his Allie. 'Tis true, he was fain to take a long and tedious Circuit, to avoid the Country of the *Sueves* or their Allies, who without doubt would have disputed his passage, and who had pass'd in the way, the difficulty whereof would have retarded his journey, and hindered his Allie from the hopes of his seasonable assistance: and therefore, entring into the Country of the *Marcomans*, he strook into *Franconia*; and following that course to the Territories of the *Bruçieres*, he there pass'd over the *Visurgues*; and crossing the Country of the *Gamberes*, he came to the Banks of the *Elba*, over which he made a Bridge of Boats; and from thence marching among the *Varines* and *Accorpes*, he arrived at the River *Guttale*: but

this march was so long, and he lost so much time by passing over several great streams and Rivers which were not fordable, that before we could arrive to the assistance of *Gondioch*, the King of the *Sueves* had not only time to joyn himself with the *Cimbrians*; but after that conjunction they made a war upon *Gondioch*, with such a success as surpris'd my Prince when he received the news of it. Not that the King of the *Burgundians* had not received them with an invincible courage, and that in several Combats with them he had not supplied the default of numbers with a surpassing valour, and such excellent conduct, that his enemies could not vaunt any great or considerable advantage over him; but that it was his misfortune, that being one day engaged farther than so great a Commander ought to have done, in the pursuit of some Cavalry to which he gave chase, he fell into an Ambuscade, and was taken by the Son of the King of the *Cimbrians*; and being by him presented to his Father, was sent prisoner to one of his Cities.

The taking of *Gondioch* had entirely ruin'd his affairs, and his Troops having lost their courage by the loss of their Captain, made no resistance, but retir'd into the heart of his Dominions, not daring to abide the enemies that pursued them. Fortune, which was wholly contrary to them, had deprived them of a valiant Defender by the absence of the young Brother of *Gondioch*, and who in an age little different from that of *Marcomire*, had already made himself known through all the world, and whom a desire to know the world had caus'd to travel into strange Provinces with *Goutran*, a Prince of the Blood-royal, who by many great actions had acquir'd a fair Renown. The two Kings making use of their good fortune, though they could not force them to fight, gain'd daily advantages over them. But in the end, seeing they durst not maintain a field against them, they laid siege to one of the principal Cities, with design either to make themselves Masters of the Country by the taking of places, or draw the *Burgundians* to a Battel if they endeavour'd to relieve them. It was at this Siege that they were busied, when we arriv'd at the Frontiers of the *Burgundians*; and although they were advertis'd of our march, we had pass'd the *Guttale* before they could give us any impediment in our passage.

Our valiant King lively afflicted with the misery of his Friend, resolv'd to try all his valour and wisdom in a war for his assistance; and to this purpose, though the Country was unknown to him, and though our enemies had a numerous power, he took his times and his advantages, and managed so well all things to bring his designs about, that maugre all the obstacles of the *Cimbrians* and *Sueves*, he joyn'd himself with those Troops of *Gondioch* his Army which still remained embodied, and encreas'd our Army to more than thirty thousand men.

The *Burgundians* seeing themselves commanded by so valiant a Captain, regain'd the courage they had lost by the captivity of their King, and became rather more zealous for war than ever, demanding nothing but to come to a Battel, *Pharamond*, who was well acquainted with their former Valour, though it had been somewhat discourag'd after the taking of *Gondioch*; and having a marvellous confidence in his Soldiers, and in the valiant men which commanded them, not at all dreading the number of his enemies, though far greater than his own, march'd towards them in a fair order, determining to give them Battel the first opportunity that should present it self.

The two Kings had rais'd the Siege of the place so soon as they understood of our approach; and being both well experienc'd in warlike affairs having with them the Son of the *Cimbrian* King, a Prince of great Valour, and the Country being much better known to them than us, they gave us some trouble at the beginning of this War, and made it endure for some time with variety of fortune; but so soon as my Prince was a little better instructed in the knowledge of the Country, and the enemies with whom he had to do, he began to put so well in practice that which in so little time he had learned, that the Leaders of our enemies began to distrust their Fortune, and fear the Arms of a young Warriour, whose reputation was already the cause of astonishment to most distant Nations.

The King of the *Cimbrians* was of opinion not lightly to hazard a Battel, of which the success might be doubtful, and must of necessity be of great consequence to their party: but the heat of the Prince his Son, who desir'd nothing more than the combat, over-rul'd his opinion; and the choler of the *Suevish* King, who breath'd forth nothing but revenge for his Son, and who believed that the gods had sent him in the person of our Prince, the only victim sufficient to satisfy his indignation, so rashly precipitated all things to a fight, that after many enterprises on both parties, and several Skirmishes, in which the valour of our Princes and Commanders was signaliz'd by a thousand worthy actions, the two Armies came to a general Battel.

I shall not tell you, my Lord, the particulars of this, more than of many others, bearing to make that recital tedious, where I have so many Warlike Acts to recount, should I not pass them over as succinctly as I could. I will only tell you, that Fortune, which, though seldom, had now declared it self for Virtue, accompani'd my Prince this day, as she had done all others; and after a hot dispute which increased the Waters of the *Guule* with streams of blood, *Pharamond* vanquished the Kings of the *Cimbrians* and *Sueves*, as he had done *Aurelian* and *Maximus*, covering the Plain with more than forty thousand of their men: Night saved the rest of their Army, which was composed of more than fifty thousand: but some dayes after, the Victor following them to the Banks of the *Vijula*, forc'd them to come to a second Battel, wherein the success was yet more advantagious than the first, and in which, after the entire defeat of their Army, the King of the *Sueves*, and the Prince of the *Cimbrians* (having fought with an invincible courage) were taken prisoners. The King of *Cimbria* sav'd himself with some few Horse; and by reason of the little care the Victor took to pursue him, escap'd out of the Territories of the *Burgundians* into his own Kingdom.

The success of these two great Battels, and the taking of the King of the *Sueves*, and the Prince of the *Cimbrians*, were of such consequence, that they might have drawn with them the loss of those two Crowns, if the Conquerour would have pursued his Victory, and made use of his Advantages to ruine his Enemies, while it was possibly not very difficult for him to make himself Master of their Dominions. There wanted not those who counsell'd him to it; but he rejected their Advice, telling them, that it was not for the spoils of Enemies, but for Glory that he fought.

He gave his two Illustrious prisoners a most Royal Entertainment, and comforted the unhappyness of their condition with the pleasing Honour which he did them; but he would not shew himself to the King of the *Sueves*, judging well that he could not without renewing his grief, let him see the person that had slain his beloved Son; but he daily saw the *Cimbrian* Prince, who was a personage of a noble mind and great courage, but of a spirit so fierce, that he seem'd but little sensible of my Prince's civilities. Yet he ceased not to heap them upon him; and having made him know by all his proceedings that he had less cause than he believ'd to afflict himself for the disgrace which had unfortunately befallen him, he told him that all the advantage he would draw both from the gain of two Battels, and from the taking of him and the *Suevish* King, should be only the Liberty of *Gondioch*; which though he might expect for his alone, or for that of the King of *Sueves*, yet he would return them both for the King of the *Burgundians*, so soon as it should please his Father to consent.

Theobaldus (for so was the name of the Prince of the *Cimbrians*) related the intention of *Pharamond* to the King of the *Sueves*, who, so much incens'd as he was against so great an Enemy, could not but with lamenting his own misfortune, esteem the gallantry of my Prince's proceedings; and as he found his own advantages in this proposition of *Pharamond*, he readily accepted it, and prayed the Prince of the *Cimbrians* to write with him to the King his Father to send *Gondioch* for their exchange. The *Cimbrian* King, whom the captivity of his Son, and of his Allie, had afflicted with a mortal grief, presently consented to so advantagous a proposal: and this Treaty was made in so much hast, that in few dayes the King of the *Burgundians* departed from the *Cimbrians* to return into his own Country; and the King of the *Sueves*, and Prince *Theobaldus* were sent into theirs with an honourable Convoy, and all those marks of Honour which they could expect from their Friends and Allies.

Pharamond, with some part of his Cavalry, went to meet *Gondioch* upon the Frontiers of his Country; and this was the first interview of these two Princes, whose reputation had already spread it self through the World. I profess, my Lord, that unless it were my own King, I have not seen a Prince of a nobler mind than *Gondioch*, in whom all things appear'd so great, that I could not but judge him worthy of his fair Renown: but whatever thoughts my Prince, and all those that accompani'd him, had of him, he shew'd an admiration at the whole person of *Pharamond*, and look'd upon him with a respect, which till then he thought scarce due to men. The esteem they had mutually conceiv'd one for the other, was confusedly expressed in their first words; but in the end, *Gondioch* knowing himself bound to *Pharamond* both for his Liberty and Crown, not being able, nor believing he ought longer to conceal his acknowledgment, beholding him with a countenance which denoted something of confusion; I thought (said he) when I sought your Alliance, to have seen you as my Brother at our first interview; but now looking upon you as a Prince to whom I owe both my Crown and my Liberty, I see my self by misfortune reduc'd to such a condition,

that it is not in my power to offer you any thing that is not already justly yours.

Pharamond listned to this Discourse with a grace which the gods have given to few men like him ; and coupling to his words that charming sweetness which accompanies the Majesty of his Locks ; *I am more oblig'd to you* (said he) *for the gift you have made me of your Friendship before I could merit it, than you can be to the happy success of our Arms : the gods, who had less favour'd us in a less just quarrel, were oblig'd without doubt to restore you that Liberty which you lost only through too much Valour ; and the Honour to have contributed to any thing of so great value, finds in it self its own recompence.* These first words of the two great Princes were attended with all those other expressions which in such a time the Generosity of two such Personages could inspire them withal ; and the acknowledging *Gondioch* publish'd the obligation he had to that favourable inspiration which had first made him demand an Alliance that had been so profitable to him. The Generous King of the *Franks* testified no less satisfaction in those happy opportunities which had given him the means to merit his Friendship. All that pass'd between them was truly great, and truly answerable to their Dignity ; and in this their first familiarity, they did not only confirm the Alliance they had contracted, but accompanied this familiarity with a thousand promises of a Friendship which neither time nor any accident should cancel,

At last, *Gondioch* casting his eyes upon the fair Troop that accompanied *Pharamond*, would know the names of those Valiant personages, who had so generously fought for the defence of his Kingdom, and recovery of his Liberty : for though he thought he had fix'd all his Admiration upon the person of *Pharamond*, yet he found new Objects in that of *Marcomire*, *Sannon*, *Genebaud*, *Ibere*, *Meroveus*, and many other Illustrious persons, who were in this noble company, to whom he testified his acknowledgments with all the marks of esteem he could imagine owing to their Birth and Merit.

After he had with an excellent grace thus acquitted himself, he together with *Pharamond* remounted on Horse-back, and advanc'd towards his Country, whither his return brought as much joy, as his Captivity had caus'd desolation : he receiv'd publick testimonies of it in all the Cities he pass'd through ; but he refus'd the Honour they would have given him, to throw it entirely upon *Pharamond*, not forgetting any thing which he knew to be due to a person, to whom he confess'd himself oblig'd for all things, and whom he consider'd for many qualities sufficient to cause the same effect in his mind, had he not anticipated it by so many powerful obligations. I will omit telling you the magnificent entrances they made into all the Cities, the divertisements by which the people endeavour'd to solemnize the return of their King, and the great expences which himself was at to honour the Redeemer of his Crown and Liberty.

Some days were spent in these Solemnities ; and they mutually acquainted with the great qualities which each possess'd, still more firmly knit the knot of their Friendship : but scarce by their familiarity had they form'd it into a habit, but that contrary to those publick demonstrations of joy, which the King of the *Burgundians* seem'd oblig'd to testify, *Pharamond* perceiv'd him overwhelmed with a dismal sadness, or at least his spirit troubled with some violent passion, which depriv'd him of his rest. He dissabl'd the first knowledge which he receiv'd, not doubting but time or some opportunities might give him more certain Intelligence : but the following dayes he perceiv'd such confirming Symptoms thereof in the countenance and behaviour of his Friend, that whatever violence he us'd to himself, he could not conceal a part of what he felt ; and was so much oppress'd with his evil, that it was no longer possible for him to hide it from those who daily convers'd with him : and in few dayes there might be perceiv'd a change in his visage, which he could not conceal as he might that of his thoughts. In brief, his evil at length got such an head, that neither he that suffer'd it could disguise it ; nor those who perceiv'd the strange effect which it produced, refrain from demanding the cause.

Pharamond, having long waited for an opportunity to satisfy himself, resolv'd at length to learn it of the King himself, not believing that there was any rule of discretion, which could defend him from informing himself of a thing, in which he believ'd himself strongly concern'd, by reason of the friendship he had contracted with *Gondioch*. To this purpose he went one day to seek him in a little by Alley of a Garden, where he often sought a retirement, and where he still withdrew, when the civility he ought to *Pharamond* would permit him ; and having command'd his Attendants to wait at a distance, that he might more freely discourse him, he found him in an Alley, where he walk'd with so profound a Melancholy, that he perceiv'd not the Arrival of *Pharamond*, till he was within six paces of him : he endeavour'd at sight of him, to have cloth'd his countenance with some kind of alacrity, and was about to make excuses for the business of his thoughts, when my Prince preventing him at the beginning of his Discourse ;

Study not (said he) to justify your Carriage with a Friend, who doth not desire these formalities, nor hath any intention to constrain you: but if it be true that you have for me so great a friendship as you have promised, defer no longer to let me know the true cause of that strange change, which we have observ'd in all your demeanour. I may without doubt complain that you have kept secret from me, those discontents which you cannot dissemble; and might represent to you, that after we are united by an interest against all sorts of Enemies, there is little which should not be common amongst us, and by which we may not demand the proofs of that friendship which we have contracted. But as I judge by many signs that you are not without trouble and vexation, I will not augment them by my complaints, nor be wanting to offer you upon this occasion, all that you can desire of a Friend, to whom nothing shall be difficult that may contribute to your satisfaction.

Whilst Pharamond spoke in this manner, the King of the Burgundians held his Eyes fixed on the Ground with a behaviour which declar'd the trouble of his mind; and afterwards lifting them up upon the countenance of my Prince, with an Aspect that begg'd for pity: Believe not (said he) that I have any Intention to conceal my Misfortune, whatever it shall be, from him to whom I owe all things, or at least attribute my silence to a design to spare your friendship that portion which it might make you covet in them. 'Tis true, I have deferred the discovery of it to you, so long as I had hopes to overcome it: for it had not been at all necessary to give you the knowledge of what I could have cur'd myself, by the helps of my reason, and by a violence opposing my passion: but since all remedies prove vain, and that of force it must appear contrary to my first resolutions; 'tis to you I truly ought to open my heart, not only to pay a duty to our friendship, but obey that cruel necessity, which hath reduc'd me into a condition to demand repose of the same Friend of whom I hold my Crown and Liberty. Would to God (added he after some minutes silence) that I had lost my life in that fatal Battel, wherein I doubly lost my Liberty; and that some favourable blow had spar'd to my dayes those long and cruel miseries, to which I am condemn'd by my misfortune: I had then did perhaps wish a great deal of Honour, and left nothing to blemish my memory; nor had I been left a prey to a cruel passion, which in a few dayes hath made me suffer more than all the most terrible mischiefs imaginable could do in a thousand years. 'Tis thus I must begin to tell you my misery; and you must know, since 'tis necessary you know it, that I have not been in one prison only among the Cimbrians, having been less a Captive to the Arms of their King, than to the Eyes of their Princess. In sum it will suffice that I tell you, that I have seen that most Divine Rosamond, whom all the Trumpets of Renown have publish'd the most beautiful throughout the Universe: and in telling you this great name, I justify that weakness for which you might reprehend me: I saw her in one of the Cities of the Bohemians, whither I was conducted, and where the Queen her Mother did me those civilities, which she believ'd due to a Royal Captive: and by that cruel Honour she wounded me to death. All that the Language of man can speak of this Beauty, is too much beneath the Truth; and if the force of your imagination supplies not my recital, it will be difficult to make you understand it by my Discourse: No humane eye can behold her, without being dazzl'd; nor any spirit fix one moments thoughts upon her, without giving it self entirely to admiration: and with more truth, No heart among all Mortals is able to resist her divine power. Thus the first moment that I had a sight of her became in truth the last of my Liberty; and I was struck as with a Thunder-bolt, or something more formidable and dreadful. The Beauties of her Mind, are without doubt what one can imagine of most sublime within the whole circuit of the World, and not at all inferiour to those of her Body: and though I saw her in a time when grief had clouded one part of her splendour, or at least obscur'd that which was most transparent; the greatness of her Soul appear'd above all that men have known of High or Noble; when she seem'd touch'd with some apprehensions of grief, and the tears which she shed at the death of Vindimir, if they were not to be attributed to love, yet at least made her accounted capable of all acknowledgment and tenderness. I dare likewise believe her apt to receive another passion: and if I may without cruelty declare this News to my Benefactor, I believe that the death of Vindimir hath created in her a hatred against him that gave it: I have heard her speak of him with tears, in which she seem'd more bright to me than in her ordinary splendor; and her grief mixt with those charms she gave it, was so sufficiently powerful to engage in her interests, that if I could hate him who had fought so generously for mine, I fear I should become his Enemy, who caused those tears to distil from Rosamond's Eyes. I saw her oftentimes by the goodness of the Queen her Mother, who gave me this comfort to my miseries: and my passion augmenting every moment, became in the end so great, that it scarce left me either the knowledge or use of reason: yet I made use of all that which I had left, to conceal an evil which I was not in an estate to make known; or at least, it was only by my regards and by my sighs, that I gave her any cognizance. But Rosamond's thoughts were prevented by others than those I could inspire into her: she re-

garded not at all the signs, though visible enough, of the evil which she made me suffer; and perhaps for a long time, she did not perceive it; but my passion in the end, grown stronger than all my resolutions, made me open my lips to discover it, and constrain'd me to speak in a time, wherein perhaps I was most oblig'd to be silent. Oh Gods! into what a condition was I thrown by this effect of my imprudent hardiness? What Thunder ever so astonish'd the fearful Hare, like to that which she with a more than Jove-like power darted against my presumption? I tremble at the remembrance of the marks of her dreaded anger; and I doubt not but that she had expressed it with a far greater severity, if I had not been a prisoner to the King her Father. This day was the last that it was permitted me to see her, and though I desir'd the sight of her much more vehemently than the preservation of my life, I durst no more demand it. By this misfortune my imprisonment became a thousand times more cruel than it had been before, scarce leaving me strength to support it, and I believe I could not have suffered it much longer, without my body's being over powered with the afflictions of my soul, if the King of Cimbria had not return'd as soon as the News of his Defeat, and the taking of his Son and the King of the Sueves; and if that few dayes after, by the exchange you made, he had not restor'd my Liberty, in a time wherein my wishes were neither for it, nor the preservation of my Realm.

See, generous Pharamond, the unhappiness of my Condition! I burn with a fire the most violent that ever attack'd any heart; and I suffer a mischief so much the more terrible, by how much I am forsaken by all appearances of hope. The Image of the divine Rosamond, still presents it self to my remembrance, and employs all the thoughts of my life: and though by your sight, and the knowledge of what I owe you, I have endeavour'd to drive away, or at least suspend the violence of my passion, all force against it has prov'd in vain and unprofitable; and it seems that by that force which I would oppose to its power, I have establish'd it a more absolute and tyrannical Empire: Not that in my love I find so much of misfortune as my grief, my countenance and my discourse may represent to you, if some cruel Accidents do not conspire my misery: for in short, neither is the degree I hold in the World inferior to that of the Father of Rosamond, nor my fortune more contemptible than that of the happy Vindimir, who was destin'd to the glory of possessing her, I have Dominions, I have Armies, I have courage, and I have reputation among men: but I am mortally hated of the Father and of the Brother of Rosamond; and besides the little disposition I have found in this Princess to favour my passion, I have understood that the intentions of the King of Cimbria is to unite himself more than ever with the King of the Sueves, and that he expects but the return of a Son, without doubt not much inferior to Vindimir, to give him the same honour of enjoying Rosamond, that was destin'd to his Brother: he hath already caused him be sought for throughout the World, by the Fame of his great Actions, which were every where known: at the same time he is to be wedded to Rosamond, he likewise pretends to give to the Prince of the Cimbrians the Princess Alceinda his Daughter, whose Beauty according to common Fame yields to none but Rosamond's; and by this double Marriage to joyn their Crowns in an eternal Alliance. Not, that by what I know of the spirit of Rosamond, it would be easie to perswade her to new affections, or that I do not believe but that the love she bore Vindimir, proceeding rather from an effect of her obedience than her own inclinations; but as she hath little less Virtue than Beauty, and that in her Soul, the love of glory is greater than that of her private satisfaction, I doubt not but she will sacrifice all things to her duty. However, all these impeachments which my ill fortune opposes to my felicity, can never diminish my love, nor abate my courage: and whatever wayes the misery of my life constrains me to make use of, I must either die or gain Rosamond; without her my life is odious to me, and to purchase her I will put in practice all that love shall inspire me with, or glory permit me to do: I will call to my assistance all that little valour which hath so happily serv'd me at some times: I will cover with Armed men the Countries of the Sueves and Bohemians: I will destroy half their Subjects, and perhaps that happy Successor of Vindimir; and to be invincible in all my enterprizes, I will Arm perhaps in my quarrel a friend, who may give me Rosamond, as he hath given me my Crown and my Liberty.

Whilst the passionate Gondioch spake in this manner, the sparkles seem'd to flie from his eyes, in which his love and choler had kindled an extraordinary flame; and the Prince who hearkned to him, seem'd surprized at his discourse with a trouble of mind which he had never before felt: he seem'd likewise accompani'd with some appearances of a misery, yet unknown to him; and though he knew not if he ought to attribute it wholly to what he felt of his Friend's misfortunes, yet it seem'd he interest'd himself more than he was willing, both in the hatred and grief of Rosamond, whom he knew not but by the Fame of her Beauty, and whom he had innocently incens'd. These thoughts gave him some disturbances, and indeed a melancholy, of which he knew not well the reason: when he believed that

that he ought to dispel this cloud, which by spreading it self, began to excite some trouble in his mind, and rent himself into an estate to offer to his friend all that he could expect from his contracted Amity. To this effect recalling the wonted serenity of his countenance, which he had for sometime lost, and taking him by the hand, with a deportment wholly passionate,

I shall be very unhappy (said he) if you judge me willing to leave you at such a time wherein your Friends may be so useful to you: or that I should not desire you to dispose of the Armies, Dominions and life of Pharamond as that of Gondioch. For the heart of Rosamond, I believe you ought to gain it by love and submission, but for the King of the Cimbrians, if prayers cannot overcome him, employ those Arms which he hath no reason to despise, and make him know that the Alliance of the Burgundians would be no less advantageous to him, than that of the Sueves. I shall be ready to follow you so far as you desire it, and I will perhaps appease the choler of Rosamond (continued he with a sigh, of which he knew not the cause) in giving her a lover more worthy of her affections, than him I deprived her of.

These words flatter'd in such sort the thoughts of the enamour'd Gondioch, that in a moment he seem'd transported from grief to joy, and giving visible signs of it by his change of countenance; *I apprehend (said he to the King of the Franks) that promise of good Fortune which you declare to me; and I receive it with a joy so much the greater, as the declaring and the giving is equally easie to your valour. I could not at all doubt, that after what I owe you, and the knowledge I have of the glory reserved for you in the world, that it was only from you I should receive my happiness; since besides all others but you, I perhaps had sufficient courage to be engag'd to none but my self: Let us try, since you approve it, the ways of submission with Rosamond till death; and with her Father, till such time as we are reduced by necessity to seek others: I will combat this divine enemy with all those Arms which a love worthy of her can furnish me with; and if her Father be inexorable to my Prayers, I will combat him with those Arms which shall perhaps shake his resolution.*

To these words the two Princes added many others, by which the passion of the one and the friendship of the other were equally expressed: And in fine, they stopp'd with a design to send Ambassadors to the King of *Cimbria*, to demand of him on the behalf of the King of the *Burgundians*, peace, and the Princess his Daughter; and to offer him at the same time all the most advantageous conditions he could desire, both in the peace and in the marriage, with an eternal union with him, in all sorts of interests, and against all sorts of enemies. What they had propos'd, in a few days after they put in execution; and one of the most considerable amongst the *Burgundians*, was sent upon this Negotiation, with power to accept all conditions which they propos'd, so that he would promise *Rosamond*. But as *Gondioch* expected little from this Embassy, by the knowledge he had of the intention of the two Kings his enemies; instead of disarming and disbanding his Troops, he gave order to make new levies throughout all his Dominions, and prepar'd all things for war more than ever, though his Forces abstain'd from all acts of Hostility, and that our Army was lodg'd in the Quarters assign'd them, and whither by the rigour of the season they had been constrain'd to retire.

In the mean time *Pharamond* prepar'd himself to this war, in case it should happen, with a reluctancy which he could not overcome: and though he had not at all balanced his resolution, nor made any difficulty to enterprize and hazard all things for the service of his friend, yet he felt something on his heart, which he could not dissipate whatever opposition he made; and that Martial heat which carried him on to actions of glory, languish'd in him, nor could he enliven it, though he did do what possible to stir it up. He could not bear the name of *Rosamond* pronounc'd, without some trouble, nor *Gondioch* speaking of the love he bore her, without an alteration, which he could not apprehend. I perceiv'd it often by the change of his countenance, but I understood more by the discourse he made me; and as I was the person, of all his attendants, to whom he open'd most willingly his heart in many things, having one day taken me aside, and beholding me with an aspect which caus'd in me no small disquiet:

Cleomer (said he) I know not what is to befall me, in the pursuit of those affairs we now enterprize; but either I have lost my courage, or I am threatened with some strange misfortune. I know well it is not death menaces me: for the fear of that, were it at present before my eyes, cannot well parallel what I now feel in my heart. It seems to me my self, that my soul lyes under a cloud, which I cannot dispel; and that my reason does not act so freely as it wont. I find my self sad, inquiet, irresolute; and I believe I grow a coward, without knowing what cause there can be of my sadness, disturbance or fear. He told me many other things to this purpose; and as I could not render him any reason where he knew none himself,

himself, I endeavour'd only to remove that trouble which might surprife him, by attributing the change of his humour to fome effect of his temper, rather than to any other caufe. In ſhort, as his courage was above all that may be called great, by the force thereof he diſpell'd thoſe miſts which roſe up to ſmother his repoſe, and trouble the calm of his ſpirit; or at leaſt he conceal'd it in ſuch a manner that *Gondioch* had never the leaſt knowledge of it.

In the mean time, he that had been ſent to the *Cimbrian* King return'd, and brought back the ſharpeſt answer could be expected from an enemy obſtinate in his hate and anger. This King, rather incens'd, than dreaded by the loſs he ſuffer'd, calling to his aſſiſtance all his Neighbour-Forces, had already covered with men of Arms all the Countries of his obedience, while the King of the *Sueves* on his ſide, gather'd together an Army much more puiſſant than that he had before loſt; and both together prepar'd to war with a firm reſolution to ſee the entire ruine of their Kingdoms, rather than make peace with *Pharamond* or *Gondioch*: ſo that the Ambaſſadour of the *Burgundian* King could not have arriv'd at a more inconvenient time, nor have been worſe receiv'd than he was; ſcarce had they hearken'd to his propoſals, but the proud King beholding him with diſdain, Tell the King of the *Burgundians* (ſaid he) that I will neither have him Son-in-law, Friend, nor Allie: And tell him moreover (added the Prince his Son with a fierce aſpect) that I will bring him an answer to his demands at the head of one hundred thouſand men.

This was all the ſatiſfaction that *Gondioch* receiv'd by his Embaſſie: but ſince he had never expected better, it ſurprised him not, though it highly incens'd him, and ſoon made him have recourſe to his former reſolutions. That which remain'd of the Winter in a Country where it is very ſharp, was employ'd to put thoſe Levies which were made in the Countries of the *Burgundians*, the *Nubions*, *Sidenes*, *Rbugians* and *Rutilians*, who were all ſubjects of *Gondioch*, into a good equipage; and that they might be ready ſo ſoon as the Seafon permitted him to take the Field; our Army quitted their Winter Quarters, and joyning with thoſe of *Gondioch*, both together they form'd an Army of one hundred thouſand fighting men. The two Kings placing themſelves in the head of them, with the Princes of their Illuſtrious Blood, and many great perſonages which commanded in their Armies, march'd with an aſſurance which preſaged them the victory, towards the Country of the *Bohemians*, where the King of the *Cimbrians* at preſent encamp'd; a Country enrich'd with the waters of the *Elba*, and environ'd, as with a ſtrong Rampart, with the *Hercinian* Mountains, and the large *Hercinian* Forreſt.

This Country was at firſt inhabited by the *Tutons*: afterwards, the *Boyens*, a people deſcended from the *Gauls*, made themſelves Maſters of it, and gave it the name of *Boyemia*, and by corruption *Bohemia*, which it keeps to this time; notwithstanding that the *Cimbrians* making uſe of their ſtrength, inhabited it after the great and bloody loſs they receiv'd againſt the *Romans* under the conduct of *Marius*; and from the time of the famous *Tentobacus*, of whom the Father of *Rofamond* is deſcended, the *Cimbrians* have peaceably reign'd over the *Bohemians*.

We entred into this Country by the foot of thoſe vaſt Mountains at which the *Elba* takes its ſpring, but not without a great deal of difficulty, and indeed a great deal of Bloodſhed; for we found ſeveral Squadrons at the defence of thoſe paſſages, reſolute to be cut in pieces, rather than quit them. Scarce were we entred, but Prince *Theobaldus* advanc'd towards us with a flying Army, to amuſe and weary us, rather than fight us, not having order nor intention to come to a Battel, but with the Forces of the *Sueves* and *Cimbrians* together: but as the Country was known to him, and he Maſter of all places and paſſages, he annoy'd us very much, and gave the two Kings our enemies time to joyn their Forces in the beſt manner they could deſire. The King of the *Sueves* was entred into the Territories of the *Cimbrians*, by the way of the Country of the *Dandutes*; and advancing with an infinite diligence to the *Elba*, was without any obſtacle come to the place where the *Cimbrian* King attended him; and having together paſſed that great River, they march'd towards us with above one hundred thouſand men, beſides that body which *Theobaldus* commanded apart, and which was compos'd of twenty thouſand men. Neither *Pharamond* nor *Gondioch* were aſtoniſhed at the approaches of this Puiſſance; but leaving Prince *Marcomire* with a body of fifteen thouſand men to oppoſe the Prince of the *Cimbrians*, they advanc'd with the whole Army towards that which the two Kings in perſon conducted.

This War was cruel and bloody; but I ſhould be tedious, without doubt, and extend my Diſcourſe to an exceſſive length in thoſe things which are leaſt neceſſary for you to know if I ſhould tell you all the particulars. It ſuffices that you underſtand that in theſe

these, as in all preceding encounters, victory accompanied *Pharamond* and his party. The young *Marcomire*, who had oppos'd himself to the *Cimbrian* Prince, defeated him in five or six engagements, with a considerable loss; and in many combats in several places of the *Bohemian* Territories, the advantage remain'd almost continually on our side. In fine, the two Kings our enemies were utterly discomfited by *Pharamond* and *Gondioch* in two great Battels, the one on the Banks of *Elba*, the other in the Plains of *Casurgis*; and in the last so totally ruin'd, that not being longer able to keep the Field, nor having any place so strong as to oppose the Conquerours, they retir'd into *Suevia*, where they had yet some refuge, and abandon'd the Country of *Bohemia* to the discretion of their enemies. 'Tis true, that they were deprived of the means to put themselves into *Marobuda*, the Capital of that Kingdom, we having gain'd the command of all the passages; or yet to get forth thence the Princess *Rosamond*, whom the King her Father had left with the Queen her Mother, under the conduct of *Briomer*, him whom of all his Subjects he had most confidence in, and whom from a very mean Fortune he had rais'd to the highest Dignities of his Realm. The Queen dyed during the War, of the grief, as it was believed, which the ill fortune of her house had rais'd in her thoughts; and the disconsolate *Rosamond* was left in those tears which this last loss made her joyn to those she still dedicated to the memory of *Vindimir*, without any other consolation than what she received from the charming Princess of the *Sueves*, whom the King her Father had sent at the beginning of the War to testify the confidence he had in him, and the desire he preserv'd to unite their houses by a double Alliance, according to the propositions they had formerly made.

'Twas not without great grief that the two Kings were constrain'd to abandon their Daughters to the hazards of war, and particularly *Rosamond*, who was the motive of it; but besides that the impossibility to succour them made them take this resolution; They hoped that *Briomer*, whose experience and valour they had known in many adventures, might defend the place till such time as Prince *Theobaldus*, whom they had sent before into *Suevia* to hasten those succours they expected, were in a posture to relieve it.

It had been easie for *Pharamond* and *Gondioch* to annoy them, and perhaps entirely ruine them in their retreat; but they would not; and instead of living like Enemies or Conquerours in the Country of the *Bohemians*, they commanded that their Troops should act in all things as if they had been in the Country of an Allie: but as all the thoughts of *Gondioch* tended to no other thing than the possession of *Rosamond*, 'twas only the conquest of *Rosamond* that he endeavour'd; and when he had no longer a Field-enemy to make head against him, addressing himself to *Pharamond*;

Generous Friend (said he) *as it is to you I am bound for all, so it is to you that I would owe, and from you that I would demand all things: our Valour hath made us Conquerours, and the Country of the Cimbrians is ours, or rather yours alone, for you are truly Victor; but you know well that it is neither for glory, nor Empire, but for Rosamond that we fight, and that in doing all things for your own honour, you do nothing for me, if you give me not Rosamond: Fortune is more favourable to our intentions than we could desire; she happily offers us her in this City, which her Father and Brother have abandon'd, and nothing can now oppose my felicity if you still favour it.*

Though *Pharamond* hearken'd to this discourse of *Gondioch* with some apprehension of grief which oppos'd it self to the joy he had to serve him, yet he consult'd not long what answer to return; but banishing by his generous friendship that unknown reluctance which oppress'd him, *Let us go, my Friend,* (said he) *let us go where the occasions of our repose call us; and since the ways which I judge most consonant to love prove vain to us, let us assault that City wherein your fortune is inclosed, and make our enemies see that the strength of their walls is too feeble to oppose the greatness of your love, or that of your courage.*

Gondioch embraced a thousand times my Prince, whom he called his Tutelar Angel, and notwithstanding all that he knew truly great and magnanimous in himself, look'd upon him as a miraculous person, or a divine person; and the same day having given necessary Orders, all the Avenues of *Marobuda* were block'd up; and two days after, the City besieg'd on all sides. This City which carries the name of the King *Marobodes*, who in the time of *Tiberius* commanded over the *Sueves* and *Bohemians*, and had unfortunately warred against *Arminius*, in favour of the *Romans*, whose Allie he was, is seated in a fair and large Plain on the Banks of the River *Elba*, which on one side washes the foundations of its walls, the other parts are defended by very strong Fortifications; and besides the number of Inhabitants, which is great, in a Town spacious and well peopled, it was strengthned when we besieged it with a very strong Garrison which the King had left, and furnish'd with all things convenient for its defence, so that it cost us no small trouble;

and I must confess that *Briomer*, to whom the King had trusted the guard of it, with that of the Princess his Daughter, acquitted himself like a man valiant and faithful, and that those who served under him did justly acquire reputation: We being absolute Masters of the Field, possess'd our selves of both sides of the River, to hinder the retreat of the besieged that way (over which they had two great Bridges) as well as by that side next the Land.

The impatience of the enamour'd *Gondioch*, added incessantly to our endeavours, made us advance in few days farther than we could have hop'd; and the understanding which our King had already in Sieges, as in all other Duties of War, put all things in such a condition as made us not doubt of a happy success. The besieged made several sallies so long as their Forces would permit them; but in a little time their hardiness was repress'd, and they reduced to a necessity to defend their walls, without hazarding farther enterprises. In fine, all things were prepar'd to use the last extremities, and to attacque the City by a general assault: but first my Prince would that *Gondioch* should summon *Briomer* to surrender the place, and endeavour to bend the will of the Princess to his favour. The King of the *Burgundians* did as *Pharamond* desired, and sent one of his Confidants to tell the Princess that he entreated her to consider, that neither by Birth, Fortune, nor possibly by merit of his person, he was less worthy of her Alliance, than the other Princes which were propos'd to be happy in it: That it was for no other desire than that of conquering her, that he had entred into the estates of her Father; and that if she pleased to agree to the design he had to serve her, he would not only remit to her Father all that the Arms of *Pharamond* and his had gain'd in his Dominions; but having re-established him in a quiet possession, defend him at the price of his blood against all sorts of enemies, with intention to serve him all the days of his life as his Father, and her as his Sovereign Princess.

But this effect of the submission of *Gondioch* wrought none over the spirit of the Princess; whose will was wholly conformable to that of the King her Father, and whose mind incens'd by the proceedings of *Gondioch*, could not consider him but as a mortal enemy; so that having receiv'd an answer full of disdain, both from *Rosamond* and *Briomer*, the two Kings prepar'd to give the assault on all sides. It was perform'd as was propos'd; but if the City was vigorously assaulted, it was defended with a courage, not at all inferior to that of the Assailants; and in little time the blood was seen to stream on all sides, and numbers of valiant men tumble without life into the Ditches. The two Kings had two different places to assault, at which they assisted in person: but though *Gondioch* labour'd and fought on his side with an extraordinary valour, their endeavours little avail'd, and the King of the *Burgundians* began already to fear the success of the day: but the valiant King of the *Franks*, who was accusom'd to owe to himself the gain of all Battels, incens'd by the resistance he found, and by the fall of so many of his men, and some of his most considerable Officers, whom he beheld thrown off their Ladders into the Ditches, advanc'd in the end (against the loud entreaties of all his friends, who threw themselves before him, to divert him from so dangerous an enterprise) and placing a Ladder to the Wall, he mounted in the midst of those Arrows, Darts and Stones, which from all sides were tumbled down upon him.

His example made hundreds of others follow him; and after him Prince *Marcomire*, the courageous *Ibere*, *Genebaud*, *Merozeus*, *Charamont*, and divers other illustrious men mounting towards the Battlements, seconded their Prince with an admirable valour. They were like ostentives to be deserted by those that followed them: But in the end, that *Genius* of victory which accompanied him through all, was favourable at this present as in all others, and made him be seen on the top of the Walls, before any of his had got the Battlements. I can give a particular testimony of this action, because I had the honour to mount immediately after him upon the Ladder which he had set; the passion I had for so beloved a Master, not permitting me to distance my self from him at such a time, the least I could possible. 'Twas here that he had his left Arm wounded with an Arrow, and that he had been perhaps in danger to lose his life, if *Marcomire*, *Genebaud* and many others, had not gained the Wall, and the enemies affrighted, abandoned it. *Pharamond* continued still to chase them with his sword in his hand; and when by the diligence which his men testified in following him, he had made himself entire Master of this side of the City, he sent a party to the place which *Gondioch* assaulted, and caused a gate to be opened unto him, upon the point when he despaired of victory.

Gondioch received this succour with some perplexity, but neglected it not: and to abridge my discourse, the two Kings in a little time became Masters in all quarters of the City,

City, still defending it from slaughter and pillage: and *Briomer* not being longer able to defend the Palace, yielded it into their hands, with the Princess. The inhabitants knowing themselves bound to their Conquerours for their clemency, laid down their Arms, and received no harm either in their goods or persons.

If the heat of the Combat had hindred my Prince from feeling his wound, when it was somewhat cool, he perceived it by the feebleness it begat; and *Gondioch* whatsoever delight he took to see *Rosamond*, yet could not behold so great a friend, and a friend to whom he ought all his fortune, wounded in that manner, without dedicating to him his first care, and endeavouring his safety before all other things. *Pharamond*, who would not see the afflicted Princess, to whose affliction he had contributed, as well by the death of *Vindimir*, as by all that he had done against hers during the whole War, and against her self, in this last assault, was not at all dissatisfied with this pretext to be dispens'd with; and to excuse himself to *Gondioch*, in case he should desire it; nor would he have lodg'd in the Palace, lest his so near approach should prove cause of grief to the Princess: but being extremely wounded, and finding his strength begin to fail through loss of blood, he suffer'd himself to be conducted by those who were near him, who took care to get him to rest, and to search his wound. It was found very great, but not believed dangerous by the most able Chyrurgions employed to work his cure. Instead of afflicting himself at this accident, he prais'd the gods, judging well that they deliver'd him from infinite troubles, to which he thought himself expos'd by the reluctancy he had against all which the friendship of *Gondioch* had made him act against the Princess of the *Cimbrians*. Yet he repos'd himself in his care, for the government of all things, as far as they concern'd him; and the care of his Army he left entirely to *Prizm* and *Chiramont*, who next the Princess of his blood, were the most considerable persons of all his Subjects, since *Eusegastus* was absent, whom he had left in *Franconia* to govern the Realm, as the man of the whole world most capable. He gave order likewise that neither the Princess his Brothers, nor any of his followers, whom he believ'd might be most odious to *Rosamond*, should present themselves to her sight, for fear of augmenting her affliction by their presence; and he entreated *Gondioch* not to keep men of war in the City, more than were necessary to keep it in subjection, and to let the Army live in the Country of the *Bohemians*, as if they were in that of the *Burgundians*, or in *Franconia*.

In the mean time, *Gondioch* had seen the *Cimbrian* and *Suevish* Princesses: but as it is not his History which I relate, and that I think it unnecessary to recount the particulars of his adventures, in which my Prince was not interess'd; I will not tell you those of this interview; you shall only understand that it was full of submission on *Gondioch*'s part, and of Majestick anger on that of *Rosamond*: That the King of the *Burgundians* endeavour'd to justify his proceedings before her, accusing his love for all things which he had been constrain'd to do to conquer her; but that *Rosamond* preserving her dignity entire in her utmost misfortunes, treated him in a manner much more severe than when she was free, and he the prisoner of the King her Father: she would scarce hearken to the excuses he endeavour'd to make; yet whatever distaste she had against him, it transported her not to any thing indecent, or contrary to her wisdom and moderation; she was only contented to let him see with a behaviour full of coldness, and some appearances of disdain, that the change of her condition was not able to baffle her resolutions; endeavouring to make him know, that the injury to which she was expos'd by the violence of his Arms, had not the least part in those tears which more just occasions made her shed.

Gondioch had no less admiration at the greatness of her courage, than he had at that of her beauty; and whatever aversion she had testified, he parted from her more passionate, and more lost a thousand times than before: he made it but too much known by all his discourses to my Prince, and by them did not lightly increase those disturbances that oppress'd him. In the mean time he rendred to the Princess all that honour which she could expect from the lowest of her Subjects, and made her be serv'd with the most becoming respect and greatest magnificence she could expect from the King her Father: he sought out with great diligence for all that might please or divert her; and because he knew his sight was not pleasing to her, he refrain'd from seeing her, as much as his passion would permit. Liberty was the only good, which of all things that might be pleasant to her, he offer'd her not, nor was he troubled not to see himself reduc'd to the necessity to refuse it her; for the high-minded Princess scorning to pray, at least to pray in vain to an enemy, neither spoke to him, nor ever caus'd him to be spoke to, nor ever demanded of him the least favour either for her self, or any of her Subjects.

Gondioch had in such manner given his orders, that it seem'd that all persons that ob-

serv'd her, approach'd her to do her all honour possible, and not to guard her; and in all their carriages towards her, it appear'd that they not only look'd upon her as free, but as their Sovereign: No person approach'd her Apartment, nor that of the Princess of the *Sueves*, which was very near hers. That of *Pharamond* (which as I have told you, he had by reason of his wound, made choice of) was so far distant, as well as that of *Gondioch* that she could scarce have any knowledge that they were lodg'd in the Palace. She kept her Chamber several dayes, nor had she for a longer time come from it, if some indisposition of the Princess *Albisinda* had not oblig'd her to take the Air; and because *Rosamond* would not let her go forth without her, they walked often in a Garden belonging to the Palace, to which they had a passage from their own Apartment, and which truly is one of the most pleasant in the World, not only for its fair and spacious Alleys, where the Trees are of an excessive height, but for a great number of pleasant Fountains; a Wood embellish'd with many Arbours, and a magnificent Terrass, which advances it self over the Banks of the *Elba*, and from whence the Prospect extends not only over the River, but over all the Neighbouring Fields.

In this place, the two fair Princesses used often to consume their sad thoughts: and the Sister of *Vundimir* had this consolation, to see that the tears she dedicated to the memory of her Brother, were often accompani'd with those of that Divine Prince, whom he adored, whilst he was among men, and to whom her precious remembrance would give more glory in the second life, than he could have had of happiness in the first. At these times, the persons to whom the guard of *Rosamond* was committed, acquitted themselves with as much civility as it was possible; and contenting themselves to observe the Gates of the Garden, and those places which might give them any suspect, they left to the Princess the liberty of a full retirement.

In the mean time, by the diligence of those persons who had care of my Master's wound, it was brought in few dayes to a good degree of recovery, and in a few more they permitted him to quit his Bed, and walk up and down the Chamber. *Gondioch*, who concern'd himself much in his safety, came often to visit him; and gave him an account with infinite grief, of the little progress he had made in gaining the affection of the cruel *Rosamond*; drawing with his sighs those of *Pharamond* to accompany them, whilst he attributed to compassion that, which my Prince himself could not attribute to any cause known to himself. He comforted the afflicted King with all those words which his friendship could furnish him with; and with making him hope that time would sweeten the spirit of the Princess, he continually prayed him to make use of mildness, where violence would be much more odious than any thing in the World: and in the mean time, as he saw himself with reluctance in the House of a Princess, to whose miseries he had contributed by so many dire effects, and to whose Beauty (though he knew it not but by what fame had spread abroad of it) all the World ow'd a veneration; so he prepar'd himself to depart, and retire himself to the Place where his Troops were quartered, to soon as his health would permit him; he likewise commanded the Princes his Brother's to retire, not keeping about him more than such Officers as were necessary for his service.

In the end, he believed himself able to walk abroad; and seeing that from his Apartment he might enter into the Garden, the Beauties of which he had discovered from his Chamber-window; one day compell'd by his Destiny, and spurred on by that Genius which guided him to his misfortunes; he departed from his Chamber, and commanding me only to follow him, he descended without other company into the Garden. He was walking in one of the Alleys, nearest to the utmost bounds of it, and which as all the rest led to the Terrass; and from that Alley passing up to the Terrass by five or six ascents, he marched gently along by a Balustrade of Marble, which on the side of the River reaches from one end to the other: Casting his eyes sometimes upon the River, and the Fields which are discovered from thence, and sometimes upon the Garden, whose Beauties were sufficient to arrest his sight. 'Twas a long time that he thus walk'd without speaking to me so much as one word, a thing not ordinary with him; and in his words and all his Actions, there appeared to me more reservedness and melancholy than I had ever observ'd: I was much troubled at it, and had, it may be hazarded the liberty he had given me to inform my self of the cause, when he prevented me, and beholding me with a sigh, which seem'd to dissipate part of that cloud hung over his eyes:

Cleomer (said he) you see it may be with some astonishment that I am to day more pensive and more reserved than ordinary; but you will perhaps be more astonish'd, when I shall have told you the cause, which I dare not declare to any other person but your self, for fear to have my folly laugh'd at, in avowing that a Dream can give me so much disturbance, and almost beget a sadness: I should without doubt mock another, whom I should find guilty of the same folly;

ly; and I affirm that the Dream I have had could not be able to move me, had it not been attended with several other apprehensions, which since we first made War against the Bohemians; seemed to foretel me some misfortune: and more it is, that the place where now we are, puts me in mind again of the particulars of my Dream, and figures to me what my imagination did represent. It was then this Morning, at the hour when 'tis said Dreams have the most agreement with truth, that in a place little different from this, I saw an Eagle-Royal descend with an inexpressible Violence from Heaven upon me, and snatch my heart from its place, before I could put my self in a posture to oppose its fury: it seemed likewise that my inclinations, as well as my strength, would have stood me in little stead to oppose it; for the heavenly Bird was so far, that I strove with all my power to follow it, and saw without any regret my bloody heart in its Talons, though I was very sensible of the wound it had given me. I struggled as you know men do in vain in their Dreams, and I lamented that weight which hindered me from raising my self up against it, when it made me understand, not with a cry like to Birds of its kind, but with a voice clear and intelligible, which pronounced distinctly these words:

Thou hast cruelly made War against me, thou hast spilt my blood, and ruin'd my Royal Seat: but I will revenge my self of thy cruelty by a thousand Deaths which I will make thee feel, not being able to revenge so many injuries with one death alone.

Scarce were these words pronounced, but I saw this unfortunate heart torn by the Talons and the Beak of the Bird; and though it was out of its place, I felt every blow which it received throughout all my body, with grief which cannot be expressed, and it is possible less in the truth itself, than in many a Dream.

Whilst my Prince spake to me in this manner, we were descended from the Terrace into the Wood: and he had without doubt continued his discourse, but that approaching to a Fountain which was near that place, we heard some voices very nigh us, and heard them so clearly, that by the sound we might discern them to be Women. The King stopt so soon as he heard them, fearing lest it should be the two Princesses, to whom he had given so great occasion of resentment against him; and as he had resolv'd not to present himself to them, nor to aggravate their grief by his presence, he would presently have returned back, and shunned by his retirement the danger of encountering them. Having a while struggled with his thoughts what course he was to take, he remained firm in his design not to let himself be seen by them; but having heard those wonders published of Rosamond's Beauty, with which the whole World is fill'd, and which have a strong power over the spirit of a young man; or to speak better, he being solicited by his evil Genius, would endeavour to see her without shewing himself to her; and it was the conveniency of the place, as well as any other reason that inspir'd him with this design. The Fountain near which we heard the sound of these voices, is on one side of the Wood, in a place where many little Allies joyn, but somewhat distant from the great ones: encircled it was with many fair Trees, under whose shade was to be seen a very fair Basin supported by a Basis of Marble, in the middle of which was another raised, which received the water spouting up to the height of the neighbouring Trees, and falling down again to the lower by many streams in different pleasing figures: there was a large space to walk about the Fountain, defended from the beams of the Sun, as well by the high branches of the Trees which shade it to the very foot, as by those smaller branches covered with leaves to the very root, which being pruned with a great deal of art, make a kind of Palisadoe, thick and unpassable, which robs the sight of the Fountain from all parts but by those Avenues which lead to it.

'Twas this that made Pharamond enterprize to approach, judging that making through these little branches a small passage for his sight, he might without being perceived content his curiosity; and to this effect, leaving me in a place where I might advertise him, and hinder his being surpris'd in an action, which though innocent in it self, seemed to him somewhat criminal, he advanced with the least noise possible to the utmost of the Trees which form the Circle, and approaching with his eye to the little branches, he gently removed those leaves that oppos'd his sight, and found in the end such a passage for it as he could desire, to discern with facility all that was done about the Fountain: and his ill fortune would that the persons whom he least sought which were the Ladies attending on the two Princesses, were on the farther side of the Fountain, so that he could not but see them imperfectly; but they whose sight was to prove so fatal, were placed directly against him on the benches framed at the foot of the Basis, having their faces turned entirely towards him, without depriving him of the least part of his observation. Albifinda had leaned her head against the Basis of the Fountain, and Rosamond's was rested on her shoulder, in a posture full of languishment and negligence.

'Tis now, my Lord, that I dese all my Forces, to represent to you either what was this fight, or what the effect it produced in my Prince's soul: he only of all the World can possibly make you comprehend either what he saw, or what he felt at this fatal view. 'Tis most certain, that as Nature had never created any thing so fair, as to approach the Divine Beauties of *Rosamond*, so it was impossible for any humane eye to behold such a sight, and not be struck with astonishment, and surpris'd with admiration: but would to God the astonishment and admiration had been the whole effect, and that this poor Prince had not been utterly lost, as he presently and entirely was at this unfortunate sight.

Not that it had not been too difficult for him to defend himself, or that I did not hope that you would excuse his misery, could I find my self capable to describe to you those Celestial Beauties which cast him into this deplorable estate. All that Nature hath formed of the most lively and most resplendent whiteness, will without doubt lose all its glory, if compar'd with the complexion of *Rosamond*: and that whiteness which darts a brightness not to be endur'd by the sight, in those places where it ought to be mixed with another colour, is accompanied with those separations which Art seems to have laid; so much is Nature made ruddy with the most lively Carnation in the World, and the most sweet together: that of her lips is the most-excellent, and in the little space which it covers, are compris'd a thousand Beauties most remarkable to the eye, which neither Discourse nor Art can represent: but those of her eyes, have without doubt something in them more puissant, and less proportionable to our imagination; as their colour is like to that of the Heavens, their motion seems Celestial, nor move they by a less than Heaven-like power to the safety or ruine of mankind: if joy for some time graces them with their natural serenity, they display a brightness clearer than the day; if grief makes them languish or shed tears, even in those showres, and in their languor, they have a charm so puissant, that it not only creates like passions in other hearts, but imprints them therein with so much violence, that all the assistance of reason can but in vain defend them; or if they be inflamed with anger (as we have too often proved that anger can inflame them) the flashes and lightnings of Heaven are much less formidable than theirs, and nothing but stupidity can then beget a courage: But whether serene, languishing, or incens'd they appear, they are still equally to be ador'd, and in their ordinary estate they have a fire so piercing, that no humane eye can support it; and in the contrary to their natural fierceness, an insinuating sweetness which troubles the reason, and penetrates the most concealed places of the soul. All the features of her Visage are formed with a most just, delicate and regular proportion; and those hairs which accompany it of the colour of an Olive, much more sweet than the black, much more lively than the fair, and incomparably more excellent than either. Her beauteous Head is planted on a Neck which nothing can parallel, either for excellency of form, or dazzling whiteness, if a perfection more accomplish'd be not found in the beauties of her Breasts and Hands. They who among Ladies envy would employ to seek some default in the Beauties of *Rosamond*, have only said that she was too great: it is most certain that her stature is as much above that of ordinary Women, as that of *Pharamond* is above the common sort of men; but few persons have been of their opinion; but in stead of looking upon this excess which they find in the stature of *Rosamond* as a fault, they have found it necessary to perfect her Beauty, seeing that with its height her person is most straight, most free, and most delicate; her deportment so noble, her walk and all her actions so excellent, that the Majesty of her Face could not be accompani'd with a more suitable Body, nor the delicateness of a Beauty the most regular in the World, meet in the same person with so stately and Royal a Majesty.

This admirable Princess, yet a thousand times more fair than my weak Discourse can describe her, seem'd to the eyes of my Prince that which she truly is, that is to say, much more than I have represented her; and this brightness did strike him like lightning, or something more violent, astonishment possessing all his soul before he could come to feel the other effects of this unhappy sight. All that he had heard of the beauties of *Rosamond*, could not present her such to his imagination as she now appeared to be in truth; and though he was at present astonished at that divine splendour which seem'd to shine about her visage, the fire that pass'd from the eyes of *Rosamond* to his, seem'd to open and clear them, the more to make him at once observe all her beauties. And he too readily observ'd, and too soon knew them: for by this fatal knowledge he soon saw himself expos'd to all those miseries which have since till now turnoy'd his deplorable life; yet at first he seem'd to dedicate himself wholly to admiration and not perceiving at all the tract of his wound, he received through his eyes with pleasure that poyson which insensibly infected his heart; but as his wound was not of the nature of those which could remain any long time without

out being felt, he found in short time the mortal blow, and observ'd that he did not only admire, but violently and passionately lov'd, before he had any knowledge of his love or passion. Though his misery was with sweetness crept into his bosome, he was with infinite grief soon sensible of it; yet advancing his reason to his assistance, he endeavour'd with all the force of it to combat such an Enemy: he would have fled from the place where he was, to seek in his flight a safety which he could not find in such a Combat; but he in vain essay'd it, and chains more strong than all he could find, stopp'd his body in a place where they had already arrested his noblest part, his soul.

So soon as he found himself vanquish'd, he sigh'd sighs proceeding from love and grief together, and gently lifting up his eyes towards Heaven; *O gods (said he to himself) is this then that heavenly Bird which ought to attacke my heart? And is this then that misfortune, with which so many forbodings have threatned me?* His eyes were not the only causers of his misery; his ears contributed, by the attention they lent to the entertainment of the two fair Princesses; I say, the two fair Princesses: for most certain it is, that the beauty of *Albisinda* is such, that it is able to obscure any other beauty but that of *Rosamond*; and that in any other place but near the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, there is no person but would admire it, and few but would be forc'd to love it. They entertained themselves with a great deal of liberty, not believing themselves listned to by any person, but with an infinite languor, and marks of a profound sadness. Their countenances and all their actions testifi'd it too visibly; and after that discourse, to which the first amazement of my Prince had not permitted him to lend attention, the fair Princess of the *Cimbrians* pursuing that which in likelihood she had before begun, with a voyce accompani'd with a charm equal to that of her person:

It is most true (said she to Albisinda) that the first affection I had for your Brother, was only an effect of my Duty; and that the humour which you know in me, had not been easily engaged without the commandment of the King my Father: but in the end, the noble qualities of that poor Prince, and the marks which he gave me of such an affection as I desired in him, made me approve the choice of the King with all my inclinations, and made me feel at his death that grief which we cannot but be sensible of, as at the loss of those persons which have been extremely dear to us. O happy Vindimir (said the Princess of the Sueves with a sigh) to what glorious Fortune wert thou reserv'd, if a cruel hand had not cut the thread of thy blooming dayes? And what happiness art thou yet possessor of, since, though amongst the dead, thou canst merit the tears and the remembrance of Rosamond? But my Sister (for it was by the name of Sister, that by reason of their Friendship, the hope of their future Alliance, and by the commandment of their Fathers, they called each other) admire not at all (added the Princess of the Cimbrians) at the fantastick humour of our destinies, which to render us miserable, will not use ordinary wayes, nor common persons: for in the end, since we ought not to rob our Enemies of that praise is due to them, besides, what may be said with truth of Gondioch, who hath persecuted me with an odious love, and who after having chased my Father from his estates, keeps me captive in the Palace of my Ancestors: besides, I say, that which Fame reports of him to be valiant, generous and truly great in all things, it is no less certain, at least if the report spread through the World be conformable to truth, that this Pharamond, who hath made us all miserable, for greatness of mind, Valour, Courage, Clemency, Liberality, and all other excellent Virtues, is the most accomplished amongst men, and one whom the whole World speaks of as a man miraculous in all things. And yet this Pharamond, adored by the rest of the World, is the same who deprived of life your Brother, who was destined to be my Spouse, who in the Country of the Burgundians defeated the Armies of our Fathers, who dyed the Earth with the blood of so many thousands of our Subjects, who hath chased away our Fathers by so many bloody Victories, who by so many dire effects caused the death of the Queen my Mother, whose affliction would not let her survive the ruine of her House, and who to accomplish these Cruelties, hath himself forced these Walls, and made me a Captive to Gondioch.

The remembrance of these injuries were so sensibly apprehended by the desolate *Rosamond*, that she could not speak them without letting fall some tears from her eyes; and every one like an Arrow pierced through the heart of my Prince that listen'd to her, and who for those tears of Chrystal which she spilt, shed drops of blood. Alas, with what a sadness was his soul surpris'd, at this reproach which she made him of so many cruel injuries! And with what regret did he make reflection on the fatal occasions which had reduc'd him to this misery! *O Fortune void of pity! (said he to himself) was it necessary then that I should act so many outrages against a Princess whom I ought to adore? Or oughtst thou make me adore her, after having committed so many outrages against her?*

Whilst he in this manner felt that tempest arising in his breast which was prepar'd to disturb

disturb the repose of his life, the afflicted Princess, dryed her tears by the assistance of *Albifinda*, who gathered them in her handkerchief, though she let those stream down her cheeks, which common interest, or the example of her friend made distil, and answer'd to her discourse with a sweetness which she had naturally wholly charming.

It is true my Sister (said she) *that I have often made reflection, as well as you, on this particularity of our misery, and have often accused Fortune for not giving us enemies which we might as well disdain as hate; but, my Sister, whatsoever she can do for the glory of our enemies, or whatever Fame hath publish'd for their advantages, if it be not too much deceitful in what it hath made us understand of my Brother which yet remains, I hope that you will not affirm that all glory and virtue is only compris'd in the person of Pharamond: you have often heard speak of the advantages of his person, and have had some knowledge of his Renown spread through the world, few persons in the Universe have acquir'd the like without any assistance of Fortune; and though alone and unknown in strange Countries, where his disgrace hath made him wander, he hath made himself known by such resplendent actions as have already given him a name great among men, I cannot as his Sister speak more with modesty: but since he hath the happiness to be called by our Fathers to the glory destined to his Brother, and that he ought soon come, and at your feet seek occasions to merit it. ———*

Alas! said Pharamond (whom the new trouble he found arising in his mind, permitted not the patience to hearken to the rest of this discourse) *can it then be that I am already threatned with the coming of this proud Rival, this happy Brother destin'd to the glory of Viridimir? shall I not have in Gondioch a Rival sufficiently formidable, and a Rival much more to be dreaded for our friendship than any other can be, armed with all the power of Europe?*

He had suffer'd himself longer to be transported with these thoughts, if he had not observed *Rosamond* about to answer to the discourse of *Albifinda*; and enforcing himself to listen to her, *I know well, my Sister* (said she) *that all the praises you can give to the Prince Viridomar, are legitimately his due; nor am I ignorant of the marvellous reports spread about the world of his Renown: I bear as great a part in them as you, and I should infinitely desire his return, if we were in an estate to hope for any success by it: but, my Sister, if I may with freedom speak to you, I find little in my heart which can dispose me to a second affection, after such misfortunes in my first; and though Viridomar might expect all things from his merit, yet he might travel perhaps in vain, if I did not owe all things to our friendship, or if I were not resolv'd to obey exactly the will of my Father.*

Pharamond could have stay'd all the day attentive to the conversation of the two Princesses, and fix'd to the consideration of those fatal beauties which had already bound him with an indissoluble chain; but some time after, they rose from their seats, and having made a turn about the Fountain, took their walk to the other side of the Garden; and in going, *Rosamond* gave the passionate Prince the liberty to view the beauty of her stature, which he could not entirely behold in the posture she before was in. Pharamond follow'd them not only with his eyes, but he found his heart flee after them, and force his body with an unknown violence to run after what he ador'd. Yet his reason was strong enough to hinder him, and to make him consider that he ought not to buy the joy he had again to see her, with the displeasures his presence might give her; he therefore stopt himself near the Fountain, marking the place where a little before he had seen the Princess seated, and by the effect of a passion which began already to disturb his reason, stooping down his lips, he kiss'd with a transportation of mind, which he could not master, the cold Marble against which *Rosamond* had lean'd: he at length seated him in the same place, and casting his eyes towards Heaven, with an aspect truly deserving pity, he began to consider the strange change of his condition.

I was now drawn near to him, having seen the Princesses pass on the other side, and I straight marked an alteration in his countenance which astonish'd me; the trouble of his soul was amply denoted in his eyes; and in all his actions there appeared somewhat so much of change, and so extraordinary, that I immediately judg'd some accident was befallen him, and by the same spread abroad of the divine beauties of *Rosamond*, I guess'd a part of the truth. In the mean time, I heard him sigh in such a manner, and saw such marks in him of violent agitation of spirit, that I could not refrain from demanding the cause, with all those arguments which my faithful affection could furnish me with: but so soon as I was about to open my mouth, stopping me at my first words, Cleomer (said he) *I am not, demand no more, but prepare thy self to see signs much more fatal than those thou ever hast observ'd in my countenance.*

He accompanied these words with so many sighs, that my heart was sensibly touch'd with

with compassion, and I in a moment confirm'd in the suspicion which I had : but a little after, looking on me with a passionate aspect, in the extremest excess; *I have seen Rosamond (said he) this is to tell thee all my fortune; the rest is well known to thee, and too well known to my self: would to God I were ignorant of it. I should yet perhaps have sufficient courage to receive the love of Rosamond, as a glorious misery; but I have not enough to remember, without dying, those injuries I have done her; nor so much sickness, as to forget that I am as much the friend of Gondioch, as I am detested by Rosamond.*

He had scarce ended these words, but the place shone with a new light; for we might see the two Princesses with their Ladies near us, before we perceived their arrival. They were about at first to have taken another walk; but having teen appear at the end of an Alley, some men whom they took for *Gondioch* and his train, they were returned back to thun their meeting, and had taken their walk towards this same Fountain which they had before quitted. *Pharamond* seem'd utterly astonish'd at this second sight of *Rosamond*; and such was the trouble that seiz'd him, that he could scarce raise himself with all his force, from the place he was seated on, but sustain'd himself against the Basis of the Fountain, with the countenance of a man depriv'd of sense.

But if the return of *Rosamond* wrought this effect upon my Prince, the whole person of *Pharamond* was compos'd in such sort, that it was difficult at first sight of him not to be surpris'd. He was not yet arrived to twenty two years of age, nor had his discontents yet wrought any change in his face; so that that aspect in which you have possibly marked something more than extraordinary; That sweet and charming Majesty of a countenance form'd with an admirable proportion; Those comely and long locks that flow'd in great curls upon his shoulders: That stature tall, straight and free: That noble port and carriage, above that of common men, could not at an instant appear before the eyes of *Rosamond*, without giving her some astonishment and surprize. Moreover, as he was always magnificent in all things, and that his magnificence, though without any affect'dness, extended to his habits; that which he had this day on, shone with gold and precious stones, with which it was enrich'd; and particulary a fair Scarf, which he carried to rest his Arm, yet feeble and weak by reason of the wound he had receiv'd: so that all these things could not present themselves to the eyes of the two Princesses without surprizing them, and begetting in them a consideration for a person of so Heroick an appearance. Their countenances sufficiently testified their surprize; and whatever desires they might have to seek out solitude, the rencounter of a man so extraordinary forc'd them to stop, and to behold him with some attention.

Pharamond with infinite pain supported the looks of *Rosamond*, either too feeble to withstand her power, or by reason of the reproach he felt in his soul for the miseries he had done her: and if with an ill assur'd countenance he for some time fixed his eyes on her resplendent beauties, he incontinently after let them fall to the ground, with all the marks of fear and confusion. He would have retired from her presence, to give this satisfaction to the resentment she had against him; but his love refus'd to be obedient to his desires, and his body more complacent to the one than the other, could not depart from a place where a violent passion held it so firmly fix'd.

Nor was *Rosamond* during this time without some trouble: for having let her eyes run over and over a person so extraordinary, and perhaps the only person she had ever found worthy her consideration, she began to lose that patience which had made her so long time behold him, and in a time wherein it rather seem'd that her discontents should stop her eyes to all sorts of objects; so that entring into a kind of choler, that he had not quitted the place, and retired from the Fountain so soon as he saw her approach, and breaking silence in a majestick manner; *And what are you? (said she) you that by your presence hinders the repose and solitude of the Captives of Gondioch?* She had scarce spoken these words, but she repented them, judging by all demonstrations that a person so extraordinary could be no other than *Pharamond*, whom her own miseries had so well fixed in her mind, and whom she had heard described for such as he now appeared. His admirable figure, his royal port, the magnificence of his habit, the marks of his wound; and in fine, all things made him be known for what he was: but she was soon confirmed by the countenance of my Prince, who maugre the greatness of his courage, had not the assurance to answer to the demand she made, but keeping a trembling silence, seem'd to seek words to defend himself before a terrible Judge, and to fear more than the most cowardly spirits have feared the most formidable death.

Rosamond for some time beholding his behaviour perhaps with much different motions; but in the end, permitting her choler to succeed to those doubts she had dilipated; *Ab*

(said she) I doubt no more; I know thee by too many tokens, for the cruel author of our misfortunes: shame perhaps hinders thy confessing it; but whether thou regardest me as the Captive of Gondioch, or thine, thou canst not defend thy self from shame, which the remembrance of thy crimes ought to involve thee in.

Having ended these words, she would have retired, if *Albisinda*, whose soul was compos'd of sweetness, and who in despite of the hatred she bore the name of *Pharamond*, could not but find those charms in his person, which blotted out a part of her disgust, had not stay'd her, to make her hear his answer; and it was in a time when *Pharamond*, subduing with all his courage that fear which had tyed his tongue, found both assurance and words; and lifting his eyes towards those fair eyes which he adored; *Divine Princess*, (said he) neither the confusion you may mark in my countenance, nor any other reason can dispense with my obedience to you; and whatsoever effect my confession may produce, I am constrain'd to tell you the truth, 'Tis for some time, that I have been *Pharamond*; but at present, I know not what I am; and changing condition, I have almost forgot my name: hitherto perhaps I might have owned it without shame; but before you, great Princess, I confess that I do with difficulty pronounce it, and begin to be odious to my self, since I began to see you. Would to God that the first blow of this sword which I unfortunately carry by my side, had pierc'd my heart, and that with some honour which it hath given me among men, I had lost this miserable life, before I had fallen into those dire occasions of offending you. I would endeavour to justify my intentions, if I were not too guilty by the effects; and I could say, if it were permitted me, that *Vindimir* lost his life in assaulting mine; that I was oblig'd by honour and friendship to succour my friend and *Allie* against his enemies; and that in the last injury you have receiv'd from our Arms, I only had a design to serve a lover which adores you; but not to offend a Princess adored by my friend, and worthy the admirations of the whole world: But in sum, I cannot be innocent, since I have unhappily contributed to your miseries; and I owe at least all my blood to the tears I have made you shed: I would give it with an excess of joy, if by its loss I could appease your anger, but all reparations I can give of those wrongs I have done you, can neither blot them out of your memory, nor merit your pardon.

My Prince spok'e in this manner with a behaviour, which as well as his discourse expressed the internal motions of his soul; and the Princess, who hearkned to him, finding so much reason in his language, and so much grace in the person of him that utter'd it, could scarce preserve all her anger; and possibly she had lost a part of it, had she had the patience to hear him longer: but opposing her self with some violence to those charms that began to seduce her, she recalled in a moment all her grief and all her choler, and regarding the Prince with eyes which seem'd to dart Thunder and Lightning; Neither dost thou descend from the blood of *Hector* (said she) nor art thou worthy of those advantages, which Heaven and Fortune give thee. Any other but thou, would have been contented to have deprived a Prince of his life, who was destin'd my Spouse: to have slain two hundred thousand of our Subjects, reduc'd me under the power of our enemies, without aggravating my griefs, or augmenting the miseries of my Captivity, by the odious presence of the cruel author of my misfortunes: But since thou art not satisfied with such bloody injuries, finish that thou hast so well begun, and by a blow worthy of thy hand, give the blood of *Rafamond* to *Gondioch* since thou canst not give him her heart nor her affection. Go, Barbarian (added she with a voice somewhat more rais'd) trouble no more by thy sight, that little repose thou leavest to thy Captives; and if thou fearest neither the anger of the gods which can revenge, nor that of men, who perhaps will arm themselves in my quarrel, blush at least to death, for shame to have employ'd thy Arms and thy valour, for the persecution and ruine of a Sex, which thou oughtest to respect and defend to death.

Being finish'd these words, she retired with *Albisinda* and her Ladies, and left the desolate *Pharamond* in an extremity of grief so terrible and prelling, that there wanted but little, that the violence of it had not made him lose his reason and knowledge; he had not fire enough able to sustain his body, but fell from the basis, against which he would have leaned, upon the Benches underneath, where he remain'd in a condition so deplorable, as if the Heavens had been Brass to him, the Air cover'd with darkness, the whole earth scarce able to uphold him, or as if all things had conspired to cast him into an Abyss of grief, not to be either express'd or apprehended.

I protest (said *Constance*, interrupting the discourse of *Cleomer*) that this beginning of the misfortunes of *Pharamond* hath something in it of most admirable; and I apprehend part of the grief he felt from thence, by what you have let me know by the recital you have made. This is but the beginning, my Lord, (replied *Cleomer*) but you will see in the pursuit adventures without doubt more worthy of your pity and attention.

The end of the first Book of the second Part.

PHARAMOND:

PHARAMOND.

BOOK II.

THe words of the incens'd Princess pierc'd so far into the heart of the King of the *Franks*, that he could scarce with all his courage support the cruel grief they caus'd: he remain'd upon the seats, and leaning against the Basis of the Fountain, in the posture of an amaz'd person, or of a person to whom reason had scarce left any Function free: Sometimes he held his eyes fix'd upon Heaven, with an aspect craving pity; and sometimes he let them fall to the earth, or permitted them gently to wander over the opposite objects: but in all their motions they had something to direct, that I could not see him in that estate without fearing some ill event. He for a long time kept silence, but a silence much more doleful than all the complaints he could have made; for instead of his defective tongue, his heart spoke with those sighs and sobs which issued in multitudes from his breast. But when his grief permitted him to speak, lifting his eyes up towards Heaven;

Alas (cried he) *into what an abyss of miseries and borrow am I unfortunately tumbled! And what merciful Deity will lend me a hand to deliver me? Oh! my too true dream: Ah! too kind forewarning. Why hearkned I not to you? And why shunn'd I not, by your inspiration, the most horrible misfortunes into which ever man was precipitated?* He stopt some moments at this first thought; but a little after, through the trouble which his new passion caus'd in his soul, speaking to the Princess, as if she had been present; *You are not just,* (said he) *you are not just, Divine Princess, to chase from you this Barbarian, who hath employed all his valour to render you unfortunate: for a man so worthy of your anger, is neither worthy of the light of your fair eyes, nor the light of the day. Happy Vindimir* (added he a little after) *thy condition is far better than mine; for if both the one and the other have drawn tears from the beauteous Rosamond: those which she hath shed for thee, are glorious to thy memory; but those which I have made her distil, are the disgrace of my days, and the troubles of my repose.*

From the remembrance of *Rosamond*, he pass'd to that of *Gondioch*; and finding both in the one and the other an equal unhappiness in relation to himself; *Oh Gondioch!* (said he) *is it possible that after having travell'd to make thee fortunate, by those effects which render me miserable, I should become most unhappily thy Rival? A Rival without hope, or without the very desire to be happy to thy prejudice. Oh hatred of Rosamond! Oh friendship of Gondioch! which of you is the most cruel to me? Or by which of you am I become most unfortunate, either by the friendship of Gondioch, or the hatred of Rosamond? I see well* (added he) *that I owe my life both to the one and the other; and as I ought without doubt rather to lose it than offend the Amity I owe to Gondioch, so I should give it without regret, to repair those injuries I have done Rosamond.*

He discours'd in this manner, with thoughts pressing him to the consideration of his misery; and I doubt not at all but that he had so pass'd the rest of the day, if I had not advertis'd him that I saw the King of the *Burgundians* who sought him, and who with a great number of other persons was coming to the place where we were. *Oh! Gondioch,* (said he with a sigh, when he heard me pronounce his name) *how cruel is thy friendship? Or how happy had I been, if I had lost my life in thy quarrel, rather than fallen into that misery, into which thou hast precipitated me?* Finishing these words, he rose from the place where he was seated, and not finding himself in a condition to endure the conversation of *Gondioch* or any other person, he endeavour'd to avoid it; and retiring by the

least frequented Alleys, passing out of the Garden, he entred his own apartment, and shutting himself into his Closet, gave me order to say that he repos'd, and to pray those that came to see him, to give him liberty to dedicate the rest of the day to some indisposition he felt. *Gondioch* came soon after; but understanding from me what he commanded me should be known of his intention, would not abuse the priviledge, which either his degree or their friendship gave him, but was the first to order others to leave him to the repose he desir'd.

But certainly, instead of finding any repose in this retirement, to which my Prince confin'd himself till the following day, he was rather encounter'd by a cruel War; and all the enemies he had fought in so many great encounters, seem'd little terrible in comparison of the enemy he now combated. In vain did he oppose a passion (which the first day of its birth had all the force which time could give to the most grown and most violent) by all that his reason could present to his assistance: for all the effects of his reason, and all those of his courage, were equally unprofitable; and having tormented himself the rest of the day, and the night following, with such turbulent fancies as permitted him not the least moment of sleep, he drew no other fruit from this torment he had given himself, but a more clear knowledge of that misery he had conceiv'd with confusion: and at the return of the day, he not only found himself more passionately amorous of *Rosamond*, than he had been at that moment he last ceas'd from seeing her; but he knew well that all the hatred she had for him, and all the friendship he had for *Gondioch*, could not restrain him from loving her to the last minute of his life: he resolv'd however (by a resolution not easily taken by any other virtue than his) to support constantly that misery into which he was thrown, without seeking to comfort himself by any thought that might reproach his friendship; and remain miserable until death, rather than disturb the fortunes or hopes of his friend: but as he suffer'd not only by his love, and that that passion had joyn'd to his torment, the grief he had to have contributed to the misfortunes of *Rosamond*, or rather to have entirely caus'd them; he resolv'd to seek some comfort to this grief, without seeking any for his love, and if it were possible to put an end to the miseries of *Rosamond*, without promising to himself any other advantages, but that of appearing less criminal to her. In this design he prepar'd in the best manner he could possible to act, what he believ'd he ought to do; and driving away by a force worthy of his courage, that which he felt most violent on his soul, he put himself in a condition to see his friends, and to execute a part of what he had resolv'd.

To this purpose he prepar'd to go see *Gondioch*: at what time he saw him enter into his Chamber, he endeavour'd to receive him after his accusom'd manner; but howsoever he strove to dissemble what he felt, he could not hinder *Gondioch* from observing some alteration in his countenance. After they had talk'd together for some time in the Chamber, they pass'd into an adjoining Gallery: the persons that attended them, staying at the entrance, to give them the liberty to walk and entertain themselves. So soon as they had walked a turn or two, the King of the *Burgundians*, whose soul as well as my Master's was fill'd with the Idea of *Rosamond*, stopping on a sudden, and fixing his eyes upon the countenance of *Pharamond*, with a passionate behaviour: *And well* (said he) *you have seen Rosamond; and more, she hath seen you, spoke to you, and known you. That which you say is truth* (replyed my Prince very coldly) *and against my intentions I have seen the Princess Rosamond. I know not* (replyed *Gondioch* with a sigh) *if I ought to rejoyce at this adventure: this view was sufficiently dangerous to make me fear some dire effects, both for you and me; but at least I can hope this advantage, that you will excuse, better than you have for the time past, all that my love hath made me suffer, or enterprise for this beauty. I excuse too much* (replyed my Prince) *the love you bear her, and doubt not but in all other breasts she may kindle a flame as great as she hath in yours: but* *Gondioch*, *I cannot excuse that which you have done against her, and the injuries which you have made her sensible of.*

My heart is sensible of them (replyed the King of the *Burgundians*) *and I could willingly have spar'd them with the loss of the best part of my blood; but you know too well that I tried all other ways before I attempted those extremities which might displease her; and that it was not but with an irresistible violence that I was reduc'd to this cruel necessity. Ah* *Gondioch* (said *Pharamond*, with a sigh which he could not hold) *we ought to dye rather than offend Rosamond.*

He spoke these words with an aspect so passionate, and after a manner so extraordinary, that *Gondioch* was strangely surpris'd; and instead of replying to him, he fix'd his eyes upon him, and beheld him like a man whose amazement had tyed his Tongue. The

King of the *Franks* easily perceiv'd the effect which his discourse produc'd in the soul of *Gondioch*; but being resolv'd to pursue his intention, he stopt not at those marks which he saw in his face of the trouble of his soul, but taking advantage at the attention he gave to the discourse he had to make; "I see well (said he) that my proceeding surpris'es you, and that you would expect any thing else from me rather than the counsel I ought to give you, and the Prayers I am constrain'd to make you: but *Gondioch*, my Brother, my real Friend, if you have thought for the time past that your interests have been considerable to me; in the name of the gods, and by the remembrance of all our friendship, hearken, and receive as you ought to receive the discourse of a friend, who prefers your satisfaction before the whole comfort of his life; You love the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, and you desire nothing more passionately than to be lov'd by her, and yet you have committed against her the great'st offences she could possibly receive from her most cruel enemies: I doubt not but that you have a lively repentance in your soul; nor should I ever have comfort in my life, if I had done that for my own interest, which I have done for yours. In fine, the Princess you adore is by your Arms, and by you, the most infortunate and disconsolate person on the earth; her Country blushes on all sides with the blood of her people; her Father is driven from his estates, and she is a Captive, she her self, of a man who says, and truly is her Captive. Repair, since it is in your power, repair so many cruel injuries by an action worthy of your virtue, and more worthy of your love than those which we have done; and since you cannot doubt but that it is by you that *Rosamond* is miserable, do you generously end her miseries by sending back her Father into that Throne from whence you have chas'd him, and restoring to her that precious liberty, for the loss of which she hath shed so many tears. For you cannot be ignorant that those injurious ways must needs be more unprofitable with her than submission and sweetness, and that if you can hope to bend her, it will be rather by shewing marks of your repentance, than by a perseverance in eternal injuries: her high and noble soul, which rigor cannot touch, will be sweetned without doubt by some effects of your love, as much as it is incens'd by oppression and violence; and if that fail, yet you will have at least this satisfaction in your mind, not to be longer guilty towards her, nor to merit her hatred if you cannot obtain her love.

Pharamond had farther pursued his design to persuade *Gondioch*, but that Prince, who had with impatience hearkned to his discourse, could not longer suffer the continuation of it, but on a sudden interrupting him; *Ab Pharamond* (said he) *is it possible that you can with so much cruelty give me this counsel, after you have with so much generosity given me your assistance? or can you so much repent the good you have done me at the price of your blood, to make me lose the fruit by so hasty a change? for the Realms of the Cimbrian King, I will willingly restore them; and as you know that it was not for this Conquest that we enter'd his Territories, so you ought to believe that possessing Rosamond, if I can be so happy to possess her, I have no design to despoil her Father, or her Brother of a Crown that appertains to them; for if that which I have receiv'd from my Ancestors sufficeth not my ambition, I wear a Sword by my side can give me others, which I should possess more contentedly than that of the Father of Rosamond, for the present, as it is by your valour, and by your Arms much more than mine, that we are become masters of this Crown, I ought not, nor will not dispute with you the disposal of it; you may either restore it to the King of the Cimbrians, or give it to whom of yours you shall judge worthy; but for Rosamond, Ab Pharamond, you have promis'd me her, you have conquer'd her for me, and you your self have given her to me, and cannot but think it just that I should guard her to the last minute of my life.*

"Yes, *Gondioch* (replied the passionate King) I would that you should guard *Rosamond* till death, nor have I any intention that you should ever yield her to any person; I would yet spend more of my blood to preserve her for you, and to acquire you her affections: but as they are of too great price to merit from your love those effects which it hath hitherto produc'd, and that by Arms and violence you have in vain assai'd her heart; I desire and demand by all our friendship, that you attempt it by submission and services, and that leaving her entire liberty, you treat her as the Mistress, and not the captive of *Gondioch*: she is so little worthy of this condition, that both you and I ought to dye for sorrow to have reduc'd her to it; and if this reparation suffices not for the injuries we have done her, there is none but we ought to give her at the price of our own lives.

Our King pronounc'd these words with so much passion, and the *Burgundian* mark'd so much alteration in his eyes, that his thoughts soon discover'd to him the truth; and in an instant making reflection of all that had appear'd in the person of my Master, he

doubted no longer but he was become amorous of *Rosamond*. This thought, like a subtil and violent fire, seiz'd straight on all his spirits; and that new passion which introduc'd it self with the same promptitude, not permitting him to dissemble it, made him instantly thunder it out with violence; *Ab Pharamond* (said he, casting a look upon my Prince, which expressed the new trouble which had seiz'd his mind) *you are amorous of Rosamond*

These words so conformable to truth, and a truth so rooted in the soul of my Master, surpris'd him with sufficient confusion and astonishment, to deprive him of the liberty of answering for some time; and the jealous King finding in his countenance the confirmation of his suspicions, and not being able to resist those impetuous motions which agitated his spirit; *Ab! I will doubt no longer* (said he with a voice somewhat louder) *but that all the misery I could fear is befallen me, and this Friend on whom I founded all my hopes is become my Rival. If that misery be happen'd* (repl'd the King of the Franks) *you ought rather to bemoan me, than accuse me; and this love (if it be true that I am in love) may well render me miserable, but can add nothing to your misfortunes, since I have no design to dispute with you, Rosamond, whom I yield to you without murmuring whatever love I may have for her. I know not* (replied the King of the Burgundians) *if you can do what you say; but I avow to you, that I have not the same power over my self, and that all that which I owe to our friendship cannot oblige me to yield you Rosamond. I desire not this effect of your friendship* (replied Pharamond) *nor should you receive it perhaps from mine, if the love, with which you tax me, preceded yours; but since that is not, I will inevitably surrender what I owe to our Amity, in demanding that which I hope from yours: and so that you will give liberty to the Princess of the Cimbrians, I promise you before the gods, and before men, that I will never see her more. You make me this promise* (answered Gondioch) *with a condition very strange; and you must permit me to tell you, that in the estate you now appear to me, your proposal may well be suspected. I have not forgot that to you I owe all things, and that it is by your valour, and by your assistance, that I hold my Crown, my Liberty, and those advantages we have over our Enemies: but it is with a most sensible grief, that in the person of so great a friend, I see that of so formidable a Rival, and of a Rival who in this quality seems more cruel and more terrible to me by how much he hath been assistant to me in all those Offices with which he may with justice reproach me. I have nothing to tax you with* (replied my Prince very fiercely) *for all that I have done for you, of what merit soever it be, was due to our friendship; but I shall disdain my self till death for those last actions I have done for your interests, if I cannot repair them in some part by the means which I have propos'd. I have hopes you will not oppose them, when you shall make reflection on them; but that you will know by my proceeding* (added he with a sigh) *that in a time when I appear to you so terrible a Rival, I give you a proof of my friendship, greater and more difficult than any you have yet receiv'd. I have told you already* (replied the Burgundian King) *that I owe you all things, and that I have the remembrance of it too well engraven in my heart ever to forget it; but I owe you nothing, if you deprive me of that only fruit I can desire of all you have done for me; and in vain shall I be engag'd to you for a Liberty, and a Crown, which will be little dear to me, if you take from me Rosamond, whom I love a thousand times more than my Liberty, my Crown or my Life. It may be* (replied Pharamond) *that you owe me no less Rosamond than all other things for which you believe your self oblig'd to me; and without respect to our friendship, I will tell you, that you have no more right than I to dispose of her liberty: but however it be, I have no intention to deprive you of her, though I desire she should be free; but will serve you with all my Forces, and with all my blood, against all those who dare dispute her with you. Few Rivals, since I must appear in that quality, would treat in this manner; nor should I perhaps be the most despicable of all your Competitors, though by my misfortunes I am the most odious, if my intentions were as contrary to you as they are favourable. I know not what are your intentions* (fiercely repl'd Gondioch, whose jealousie insensibly troubl'd his reason) *and it will be difficult for me to know them, since I cannot know you better than your self: but whatsoever your design may be, mine shall be to defend till death what I cannot abandon but with my life; and to hold all those for my most cruel Enemies, who will design to deprive me of it.*

The King of the Franks oppos'd with all his natural sweetness, the resentments which the words of Gondioch were about to raise in his soul; and beholding him with an eye which rather appear'd languishing than incens'd; *Ingrateful Friend* (said he) *renounce not our friendship upon the point when you should begin to be truly bound to it; forget, if you please, services of little importance; to consider, that for your sake, I consent to the most difficult thing in the World. You will better this way find your advantages than by that you seek them; for in the condition wherein you are, Enemies like me are not necessary. I confess I would not be*
your

your Enemy, though perhaps the repose of my life do require it, and that your friendship will be more fatal to me than the hatred of all men can possibly be.—Renounce it then (said Gondioch, interrupting him) as I renounce yours from this moment; and look upon him no more but as your Enemy, who will be so to his death. You will perhaps yet once more think of it, (answered my Prince, with his ordinary sweetness) nor would I by your example lightly break the bands of a friendship I respect, though I should occasion all the miseries of my life; but in the meantime remember, that whether Friend or Enemy, I desire that Rosamond should be free: for either in the one, or in the other quality, I am oblig'd to give her her liberty. You shall hardly compass your design (replied the Burgundian King, with a furious behaviour) but at the price of an hundred thousand lives; and it may be that either by yours or mine we shall satisfy Rosamond for the injuries we have done her.

Finishing these words, he laid his hand upon the Guard of his Sword; and Pharamond beginning to be inflamed with choler, both for his Discourse and Behaviour, there was no small danger lest they should have come to extremity upon the place, if the persons who from the other end of the Gallery had heard part of their conversation, and principally when they began to grow angry, and passion had made them raise their voices, had not advanc'd with infinite quickness, and cast themselves between the two incensed Kings to divert that misfortune: Gondioch retired from him in a furious manner; and uttered such words as nothing but his passion could excuse. Pharamond more moderate than he, though no less amorous, seem'd a little transported; and I believe he was not at all displeas'd at the behaviour of Gondioch, which dispens'd with him what he believ'd owing to his friendship, permitting him to give place to those thoughts and hopes which he had not till then dared to conceive.

The rest of that day, and the following, the wisest of the Franks, and of the Burgundians foreseeing the miseries which might arrive by the division of their two Kings, us'd all their endeavours to appease them, not forgetting any thing with which prudence might inspire them upon such an occasion: but as Gondioch knowing Pharamond for his Rival, had introduc'd a mortal hatred to succeed that affection he had for him, and Pharamond remain'd firm to his design to give liberty to the Princess of the Cimbrians; all their diligence who endeavour'd to pacine them; prov'd ineffectual, and all things contributed to the begetting of a War between these two Princes, who had been before united in so firm a League: both parties blam'd the ingratitude of Gondioch, who being bound to my Prince for so many great services, ought to have refus'd him nothing for any consideration, and most judg'd that by this disunion, the face of his Fortune would soon find a change.

The same day, spur'd on by that new passion which turmoyle'd him, and scarce left his reason any power over his mind, he went to visit the Princess, who was constrain'd to suffer such visits, though she did it with sufficient reluctance; and accosting her with a countenance on which she might remark the alteration of his soul, if she had not disdain'd to take notice of it; Madam (said he) your Beauty doth every day beget new Miracles, and causeth in minds the same disorder it causeth in Monarchies; it troubles the reason, cancels friendship, and makes infidelity reign in the place of Virtue. I am so little oblig'd by all the effects it hath hitherto produc'd (answered the Princess very fiercely) that I can neither confess nor hope any good from it; or if it be to that, that I ought to attribute all my misfortunes, you may well believe that I look upon it but as my cruel Enemy. If it hath given you any trouble (replied Gondioch) or made you feel any disquiet, it hath without doubt reveng'd you on those who have contributed to it; and for those two persons which are most odious to you, if it hath some time past rendred one most miserable, Fortune hath since yesterday thrown the other into an estate little different. For, in sum, Madam, whatever imprudence I commit by telling you it, Pharamond is become my Rival, and he who kill'd the Spouse who was destin'd to you, would willingly enjoy his place, if he might be so happy as to merit it; that heart which was thought impenetrable by love, and fortifi'd against all such feebleness, could not defend it self one moment against your fair eyes; and only one of your Looks, have rendred him at the same time unfaithful to his Friend, and Slave to Rosamond.

The Princess of the Cimbrians hearkned to this Discourse with a sigh full of disdain; and beholding the Burgundian King in the same manner; If the glory of a Conquest could make me flatter my self (said she) I averr to you I should be sensible of what you tell me: for as among men, there is nothing so great as Pharamond, so there is no person in the World which would not be oblig'd to that beauty which could give her so Royal a Slave: the Renown of his great Actions doth already shyns the whole Earth; and I have found in his person things so conformable to his great reputation, that I could not but admire him so soon as I saw him.

However incens'd the Princess was against my King, yet the greatness of her courage made her render this Testimony to truth, without considering the discontent which *Gondioch* receiv'd by her discourse: but that Prince could not dissemble it; and discovering it perhaps more than he was willing, by the redness which covered his countenance; *O gods* (cried he) *how strange is my misery? How soon do I receive the punishment of the fault I committed in serving my Rival against my intention! He hath served you so well in yours* (replied the Princess) *that it will be difficult for you to acquit your self towards him, by whatever service you can do for him: yet I will tell you without other design than that of speaking truth, that the judgment I gave of him, shall not make his condition more happy if his felicity depends on me; and that his being the most accomplish'd of men, renders him to me nothing less odious.* *Ah, that is too much* (repl'd the jealous Prince) *for with whatever resolution you arm your self against a man who hath so cruelly offended you, his Fortune is too great by the Idea you have of his merit. He would seem to you less accomplish'd, if he were more odious; and how great soever he may be, if you have entirely prefer'd your hatred, you would believe there might be some among men as great as he. If this which you have spoke of him be true* (replied the Princess) *he may in time prove what are the thoughts which I have for him; but I am not so happy as to find so fair an opportunity to revenge my self of my Enemies.* *Ah! Madam,* (said the passionate King) *permit me to tell you, that it is not perhaps for revenge that you desire this opportunity; and I fear by the success my Rival hath hitherto had in all his Enterprises, least the same Fortune which hath served him in War, should accompany him in his love: not but that I can hope the contrary, if your happiness be govern'd by reason; or that I cannot tell you, that in the injuries which both of us have done you, he is much more guilty than I, not only by the death of the Prince of Sueves, in which I had no part, but by all other actions, to which he was excited by no passion which may render him excusable, while I in all those which I have done to gain you, have been forced by a love for you, and such a violent love as hath neither left my will nor my reason free.* *I believe with you* (replied the Princess) *that when Pharamond offended me, he did not love me; and I believe more, that had he lov'd me, he would never have offended me. If his passion had been as powerful as mine* (replied *Gondioch*) *he had attempted all ways to gain you; and scarce is it born, but it makes him violate a friendship, which ought to be eternal; and he prepares himself to take you from his friend, and to drive him cruelly from you. He believes himself perhaps oblig'd* (answered *Rosamond*) *to restore to me that liberty he hath depriv'd me of, and 'tis that without doubt which causes your division: but I hope the gods or men will restore it me, without the assistance of Pharamond, or your consent. However, you may if you please believe, that though I be a Captive all my life, yours shall not be at all more happy.*

The King of the *Burgundians* was about to reply, when the Princess *Albisinda* entred the Chamber; and *Rosamond* rising to meet her, began to caress her in that manner, that *Gondioch* no longer having that attention given him he desir'd, or not being willing to speak before the Princess of the *Sueves*, what he had in his heart, departed the Chamber, and retir'd to his own Apartment.

In the mean time, the two Kings did no more see each other: but as *Gondioch* was animat'd against *Pharamond* by many violent passions, which made him look upon him as his Enemy: and *Pharamond* had been advertis'd of the intentions and resentments of *Gondioch*, they began to distrust each other, and stand on their Guards: Not that *Pharamond*, though he were not oblig'd to *Gondioch*, for any good action, did not respect the remains of a friendship he once esteem'd dear, and saw with grief those bands broke, though he gain'd no advantages by them: but when he understood that *Gondioch*, besides the Guards that he had redoubl'd about his person, and at the City-Gates, had caused a strong one to be placed near the Apartment of the Princess; as if to defend her against any design he might have to deliver her, and had given command to the whole Garrison to take Arms upon the first Order; he began to be excited to some anger, and judging that in the condition he was, he ought to Guard himself, and not give those advantages to his Rival, which might deprive him of the means to act what he had resolv'd. The reluctancy he had to offend *Rosamond* before he knew her, had caused him to lodge his Troops in the Field under the command of Prince *Marcomire*, who was retir'd with the other Princes; nor had he kept in the City any other but the Officers of his House, whom he could not spare from him: so that the whole Garrison was *Burgundians*, and *Gondioch* absolute Master of the City. The knowledge of which made my Prince resolve to part as soon as he could, from a place where he saw himself at the discretion of a man, who had declar'd himself his Enemy; and for this effect, having advertis'd all his Attendants to be in a readiness to part, he put on his Armour; but before he mounted on Horseback, he writ a short Letter

to the Princess, which he put into the hands of one of the principal inhabitants of the City, whom he had oblig'd by several kindneses, and who undertook to give it to *Rosamond*, maugre the new guard *Gondioch* had plac'd at her apartment.

He was now ready to mount on Horseback, when advice was given him that *Gondioch* had design'd to stop him; and that to that effect he had plac'd Guards at the Avenues of the Palace; and particularly in a place which he must of force pass to retire himself: this advice inflam'd him with choler; and turning towards those that were about him, *I am much pleas'd* (said he) *that the ingratitude of Gondioch blots out all the reluctancy I had to become his enemy; but we shall see whether he will be so hardy to execute in person that which he would execute by his Guards.* And at these words, judging well that he ought no longer defer his departure, he set forward with a fair troop of valiant men, and march'd in the head of them towards the Gate of one of the Bridges, over which he was to pass to our Troops, which were lodg'd on the other side of the River. The Soldiers which kept guard at the end of the street, and in the place, drew up when they saw him appear, and made some show of betaking themselves to their Arms; but when they saw the face of the King, they had not the assurance, but we pass'd to the Gate without stop or hindrance.

So soon as we came at it, those who guarded it, according to the Orders they had receiv'd, put themselves in a posture to hinder our passage: but the King putting his hand to his Sword, flew in amongst them; and those who knew his admirable valour, and had a respect for him which the difference between him and *Gondioch* could not disperse with, amazedly retir'd before him, and left him as free a passage over the Bridge as he could desire. Yet by their behaviour he knew the truth of the advice was given him of *Gondioch* his intention, which inflam'd his anger more and more against him: and when he was out of the Gate, turning towards the Guard, and beholding them with a menacing countenance, *You may tell Gondioch* (said he) *that in the City I yield the place to the strongest, but that we shall meet in the Field, if he hath the assurance to come forth, for since he will have a war with me, I declare it against him from this moment.* These words pronounc'd by a man well known to them, put them without doubt in some fear; and as the most prudent among the *Burgundians* approv'd not of the proceedings of their King, they beheld the departure of ours with infinite grief, foreseeing in part those miseries which would befall them by the divisions of these two Princes.

It is most certain, that *Gondioch* foreseeing the trouble which *Pharamond* might give him, if he retir'd to his Camp, had a design to have stopp'd him: but though he was strong enough to have done it, yet he found a great deal of trouble to resolve it, as well for the grief he felt in his soul, to come to such extremities with a Prince to whom he was oblig'd, and from whom he could not refrain a respect, as for the dangerous consequences he foresaw in so great an enterprise: and when he had resolv'd it, *Pharamond* was on horseback, and in a posture to make those run no small hazard, who should attempt to execute it. *Gondioch* follow'd by a very great train, came to the Gate a little after we were gone; and having understood what had pass'd and particularly *Pharamond's* words, of which in a person of his humour, he had no small consideration, he was infinitely discontented either to have ill undertaken or ill executed his design; and judging that he ought to prepare himself for war, and for a war, the event of which he might so much the rather fear, as knowing his enemy the most formidable living, he immediately dispatch'd the messengers to the places where his Soldiers were lodg'd, to advertise their Officers to keep them in readiness, and to forewarn themselves against their enemies: he had the same day gone to head them, not having any design to shut himself up in the City, whilst he had an Army abroad much stronger than ours; but his love, to which he made all things yield, would not permit him to depart without seeing *Rosamond*, and giving such orders for her guard as might keep his mind in repose whilst he was absent from her.

To this purpose he went to see her, and found her in the chamber of the Princess *Albisinda*, where they were reading the short Note from my Prince, which had sometime before been given her, and which maugre the resentment she had against him, she had open'd at the solicitations of *Albisinda*, who represented to *Rosamond*, that in the estate wherein they were, they ought not to neglect the advice of a Prince incens'd against *Gondioch*, and who according to the common opinion had design'd to restore them their liberty. *Gondioch* no sooner approach'd them, but having rendred them the first civilities due; *My Rival hath quitted me the place* (said he) *and I believe you will soon have the pleasure to see a War kindled between those persons whom you love not at all. It seems* (answered the Princess of the *Cimbrians*) *that you suspected me yesterday partial for Pharamond;*

mond; but you will have more reason to day, seeing that we receive and read his Letters. These words, and the sight of the Note which was open on the Table, made *Gondioch* twice or thrice change colour; and after he had remain'd some time silent; *Is it true* (said he in the end) *that his felicity is so well advanc'd in so short a time, and that you will scarce grant to a person who hath spent all his days in your service, those favours which you confer on one who is not known to you, but by his offences against you? If you will look on his Letter,* (replied the Princess coldly) *you will find the difference of his proceeding and yours, and judge perhaps by that the difference of your souls. If you think good that I should see it,* (said *Gondioch*) *I will read it willingly, and will explain to you possibly after I have seen it, the differences it puts between us.* And judging by the Princess's aspect that she consented, he took it, and read these words.

King *Pharamond*, to the Princess *Rosamond*.

TIs not the Guards of *Gondioch* which defend my access to your person; I should flee through greater difficulties under the conduct of a Divinity which would open to me all passages, if my misery to be with reason odious to you, would permit me once more to appear before your incens'd eyes. I therefore depart, Madam, both to be less criminal towards you, by carrying far distant from you what you detest, and to endeavour to repair one part of what I have acted, by what I have a design to act. but you will permit me to remain upon your Territories, until such time as I have chas'd thence your enemies, and restor'd you that liberty to the loss of which I have unhappily contributed. The sacred Bonds of Amity made me have recourse to prayers, before I would take up Arms against my friend; but the force of his love permitted him not to hearken to what he ought to reason, and possibly to our friendship. Lament his misery, Madam, instead of incensing your self more against him; and judge of the greatness of his passion, by the faults which it hath made that Prince commit against virtue, whose inclinations however are truly virtuous.

The reading of this Note did equally excite choler and shame in the soul of *Gondioch*: for if he were incens'd that it should declare to the Princess, the design that *Pharamond* had to restore her to liberty, he was no less ashamed at the diligence he took to excuse himself towards her, and to see him speak in his favour in a time when he might well have dispens'd with it. These two passions made him blush at the same time, while it was not possible to discern, to which of the two it might be attributed; and soon after, laying the Paper again upon the Table; *I confess* (said he) *that Pharamond and my self act differently in this affair, but as I shall have a great deal of trouble to speak in his favour, in the terms we now are, so I should possibly have had more to offend a friendship, which we had so solemnly sworn.* He thought without doubt (said the Princess *Albisinda*) *he might desire or demand of you the liberty of Rosamond: and if the love wherewith you accuse him, is not an effect of his will, he might well be struck by so divine a power as Rosamond, without being guilty towards his friend, since you your self in his demand of our liberty, have said that he would see her no more in his life.* *Pharamond is not happy, Madam,* (said the Burgundian King, beholding her with some marks of astonishment) *to find in the Sister of Vinidmir a Princess who takes his part against a man who never offended her.* You may believe (replied the Princess of the Swedes) *that he that took life from my Brother, can never be other than my enemy: but no interest ought to make us speak against reason and truth; nor can you doubt, but that the design of restoring us our liberties is as obliging, as that of keeping us Captives is injurious.*

Though *Rosamond's* disdain made her hold her peace, yet she testified by a sigh, that she approv'd the discourse of *Albisinda*: and the King of the *Burgundians* not finding any answer for himself, insensibly chang'd the discourse, and a little after quitted the Chamber.

That which I was oblig'd to tell you of the beauty of *Rosamond*, in recounting to you in what fashion she appeared to the eyes of my Master, hindered me from extending something upon that of *Albisinda*: but I may tell you with truth, that if *Rosamond* were not in the world, perhaps there would be nothing more beautiful than that Princess; and that next to *Rosamond*, she hath those particular charms, which nothing can withstand: she hath without doubt less splendour and Majesty than the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, or our Princess *Polixena*; but she hath an attractive sweetness in her eyes, an extraordinary delicacy in her complexion, and in the features of her visage, accompanied with a free carriage in her person and whole action; her eyes naturally seem to languish, but with a languishment

languishment wholly charming, and which wounds more than the brightness of others, their colour is Azure, the most beautiful in the world; her Hair is much more fair than that of the *Cimbrian* Princess. The Sweetness of her Spirit is conformable to her countenance; and if any passions seem to trouble its serenity, they are neither terrible nor violent; with this sweetness she enjoys a courage and constancy, a generous goodness, a solid virtue, and all qualities necessary, to form one of the most amiable persons in the world.

The King of the *Sueves*, in pretending *Rosamond* for the Prince *Viridomar* his Son, who ought to supply the place which was destin'd to his Brother, both in his Throne and in the glory to possess *Rosamond*, had promis'd, as I tell you, the Princess *Albifinda* to the Prince of the *Cimbrians*; and *Albifinda* conform'd her self to his will, as well by the Rules of her Duty, as for the complacency she had for *Rosamond*, whose Alliance they esteem'd dear: but without these considerations she had had little disposition to it, trusting something excellently rude, and little answerable to her inclinations, in the spirit of *Theobaldus*.

In the mean time, my Prince was come to his Camp, where he immediately put all things in readiness for war against the King of the *Burgundians*: he declared to the Princes that assist'd him, the intention he had to drive him out of the Territories of the *Cimbrians*; and to restore the Princesses he kept in captivity to their liberty: but he pretended only the design of his ill treatment, and discover'd his love to none but Prince *Marcomire* and *Charamont*. They all detested the ingratitude of *Gondioch*, who after obligations like to those of my Prince, ought to have testified his acknowledgments at the price of his Crown or life: and those two to which he spoke of his love, seem'd by the interest which they took in it, to feel a part of that cruel grief which tormented him: for he spoke it to them in terms so bewitching and passionate, that they could hardly refrain from entering into his thoughts, and lamenting that misfortune which stop't the course of the greatest hopes in the world; since it may be with truth affirm'd, that before this obstacle, never any Prince, at the age of ours, was seen in so fair a way to mount to the highest degree of glory; for by his marvellous beginnings, all the world expected from him (and that with reason) not only the conquest of the *Gauls*, for which he had prepar'd himself, but that of a good part of the world.

Agitated by the cruel passion which left him not a minute of repose, nor busying his thoughts about any thing, but how to appease part of the anger of *Rosamond*, by the services he should render her; he drew his Troops from the places where they were lodg'd, and put them in a condition to attack those of *Gondioch*, if their Prince would not give him the satisfaction he demanded. For the injury he would have done him, in striving to detain his person, he was ready to pardon him, so that *Rosamond* were free, and her Father restor'd to the possession of his Dominions. But though it was no light enterprise to make war against *Gondioch*, whose reputation yielded to no Prince's in the world, and that he might with reason hope that the King of the *Cimbrians*, whose quarrel he espous'd, would willingly joyn with him, to recover the Country he had lost; he would not hearken to the proposals that divers of his own made to call for him; and whether it were to have the only glory to render this service to the Princess he adored, or to make it appear that it was only *Rosamond*, and not the King of the *Cimbrians* he serv'd against *Gondioch*, he would not fortifie himself with the assistance of his enemies; but told *Marcomire* and *Charamont*; that truly he lov'd *Rosamond* better than *Gondioch*: but ingrateful as he was, he lov'd him yet better than the *Cimbrians*, nor could employ the Forces of those whom he had treated as enemies, to weaken a Prince who had been his friend.

Marcomire who was full of courage and generosity, approv'd the design he had, not to employ the Forces of the *Cimbrians* against *Gondioch*; but he had not the same complacency as to the scruples which he saw in him about the amity which had been betwixt them: and as naturally he was less patient than his Brother; *It seems to me, Sir,* (said he) *that Gondioch hath very well dispens'd with all those considerations you can have for him, and that after the treatment he hath made you, it is not only permitted you to seek your advantages in love to his utmost prejudice, but without fear of any reproach, make war against him as the greatest of your enemies. It may farther be alledged, that the obligations are not equal between you, and that Gondioch cannot pretend from you any duty or recognisance, while he is oblig'd to you for all things.* "In serving a man to whom I promis'd friendship, (replied the King) I have done no more than my duty; and if I have been more happy than he in the rencounter of occasions favourable to his service, I ought not too much to abuse what fortune might have given him as well as me, nor pretend by it to dispense with what is due to our friendship. The gods are my witnesses, that I have never had any such intention,

“ but that all those thoughts with which my love hath inspir’d me, were still against my
 “ own repose, but never against that of *Gondioch*. I have truly contriv’d how to repair
 “ those faults which made me incur the hatred of *Rosamond*: but you know, dear Bro-
 “ ther, how unwilling I was to commit them, before I had seen the person I offended;
 “ and I protest to you with truth, that I would do the same things for her service, when
 “ I had not a passion for her. Many persons will perhaps believe otherwise, but my inno-
 “ cence suffices for my repose; and to give to men that knowledge I ought, and to deliver
 “ me from those reproaches they may make me, I do declare, and will cause it to be de-
 “ clared again to *Gondioch* before I pursue the War, that maugre the treatment he hath
 “ made me, and the love I have for *Rosamond*, which I ought intallibly to find my death in
 “ this resolution, I will neither pretend to her affections, nor ever again see her, if he will
 “ leave her free in the Dominions of her Father, as I have demanded of him. I will yet
 “ render this Duty to our friendship, and keep my self in these terms so long as it shall
 “ be possible; but if *Gondioch* continue to abuse them, and that my reason find not Arms
 “ strong enough to defend me against my love, I know not whether I may preserve my
 “ resolutions till death, or oppose my self all my life, to that desire which we have na-
 “ turally to be lov’d, where we truly love.

He spoke these words with many sighs, which he could not restrain; and to make it appear he had spoke nothing but truth, he sent the next morning my Father to the City, to make once more to *Gondioch* that proposal he had before made him, and to protest to him, that notwithstanding the rigour of his proceedings, and the design he had to detain his person, and possibly to do him some greater injury, yet he would for the respect he bore to his friendship, keep himself to the conditions propos’d, and renounce all sorts of hopes or thoughts for *Rosamond*, if he would restore her her liberty, with what he possessed of her Fathers Territories. But the King of the *Burgundians*, whose violent passions had left reason no place in his soul, instead of having any considerations for the patience of a Prince to whom he had given so just a subject to lose all those he had for him, deported himself with violence in the answer he returned my Father, and having remanded him without any fruit of his mediation, save that of taking from my Prince a part of that aversion he had to this war, he caused several of his Troops to pass over the River, which were on the other side the *Elba*, to joyn with the others, at the places where they were lodged; and having taken the best order possible, both for the Guard of the City, and that of the *Cimbrian* Princesses, he came to the head of his Army, where he had already caused all things to be prepar’d to prosecute that war on which he was resolv’d.

The same day two men of incomparable valour and great merit, presented themselves to him, returning from a long travel in strange Nations: these were *Gondemar* his Brother, and *Gontran* a Prince of his Blood, well known both, and particularly *Gondemar*, by many actions which gave them a great name among valiant men. *Gondioch* receiv’d them as he was oblig’d by his Blood, and the consideration of their merit; judging himself no less fortified by the arrival of these two men, than he should have been by that of several great Bands of men: he therefore presently gave them the whole command of his Army; and those who had enjoyed it before their arrival, yielded all things without murmuring, to their Birth and Virtue.

Pharamond seeing that he could no longer shun the war, and that *Gondioch* himself open’d the way as much as possible, to those hopes against which by the scruples he had for their friendship he had still defended himself, neglected no more any thing necessary against an enemy who would not at all spare him, but began to act against him, as he had done against the *Sueves* and *Romans*. Nothing now separated the two Armies, which were both encamped in that great Plain which is below the *Elba*, that extends it self from that River to the *Hercinian* Mountains; and as the two Captains were two grand Masters in the art of war, and that each had a good opinion of his enemy, they both sought their advantages, by all the knowledge which their past experience could teach them.

In the mean time, a report flew abroad, that the Kings of the *Cimbrians* and *Sueves* did puiffantly arm themselves in *Suevia*, by the assistance of many Princes, who had embrac’d their quarrel. ’Twas likewise told to *Pharamond*, that the King of the *Sueves* threatned *Franconia*, and prepar’d himself to attacke it, to make a diversion: and *Gondioch* receiv’d intelligence, that the *Cimbrians* kept a correspondence, in the Country, and in the City it self. But these two Princes making love their only interest, it was that which stopt their eyes from all others, and made them abandon all things to serve their passion; and that of *Gondioch* was so violent, that though he knew, and had reason to fear the valour of *Pharamond*, yet he fear’d not to
 expose

expose himself to so great a danger, but dar'd to defie my Prince to a particular Combat of body against body, offering in this manner to end their differences, instead of sacrificing the lives of many thousands to their sole controversy. I admir'd at the patience of our King upon such an occasion, though I had experienc'd it in divers others; for though the defiance of *Gondioch* kindled some anger in his spirit, and assisted (with the other injuries he had receiv'd) to blot out by little and little that friendship he had still preserv'd for him; yet he refus'd the Combat he demanded, and had the advantage to refuse it in the face of the world, without rendring himself suspected of fear or cowardise: *You shall tell the King your Master* (said he to him whom he had sent) *that it is the liberty of Rosamond that I demand, and not the death of Gondioch: that in the war which he constrains me to make, I shall spare his person as much as I can possibly, but that I pray him not too often to try his fortune, and to consider that a man of my age is not always capable of such a moderation.*

Those who were near my Prince, testified an admiration at his proceeding; and particularly the young Princes, whom a boyling blood made eager upon such occasions. But though *Gondioch* would have drawn an advantage from it, haughtily sounding forth the defiance he had made my Prince; and sending to tell the Princess *Rosamond*, that that Rival in whom she had created so much love, as to make him enterprize a war against his friend, had not yet so much courage as to dispute against him with his Sword in his hand: However all that he would perswade in disadvantage of *Pharamond*, return'd not but to his honour, and made the whole world admire his wisdom and generosity.

In the mean time, *Pharamond* prepar'd for a Battle, knowing that *Gondioch* desir'd it; and having sufficient knowledge of the valour and conduct of *Gondioch*, he behav'd himself in this war with more wariness, than he had done against the *Romans*, and against the *Cimbrians*. One day marching at the head of five hundred Horse, to visit some posts between our Camp and the City, which he had a design to seize on, he rencountred a party of the enemies, who perhaps were upon the same design; who finding themselves stronger than we in number of men, attack'd us with great fury: he that commanded them, had not perhaps been so hardy, if he had believed our King had been in the head of us; and I believe he repented himself so soon as he perceiv'd it. The Combat remained for some time with a doubtful success: but as the presence of *Pharamond* carried victory through all, in a few minutes our enemies were no longer able to sustain the effects of his prodigious valour, and in few others turn'd their backs, seeking that safety in their flight they could not find in their Arms. As their hardiness and a slight wound my Prince had received, had incens'd him, he pursued them to the very Banks of the *Elba*, toward the same place where it washes the walls of *Marobuda*; and if his anger had lasted, few of them could have sav'd themselves either from the Sword, or the waves of the River; but at such times his anger ordinarily abating, he commanded his men to spare the blood of those who few days before had been their companions.

In the mean time he march'd along the Banks of the River; and because the heat of the fight made him sweat under the weight of his Arms, he lifted up the Visor of his Helmet to refresh himself; and casting his eyes cross the River towards the City, where the goddess he ador'd was inclos'd, by fortune the place where he was, was directly opposite to the Garden of the Palace, and to that proud Terrass where he was walking some days before, and that same day on which he had fatally lost his repose and his liberty: he soon knew the Balister'd Walk, and at the sight of it was assail'd with such vehement motions of spirit, that he could not restrain their violence; but he was assaulted by others more powerful, when he saw a company of Ladies upon the Terrass, and in the midst of the others, who kept a little distance for respect, he knew his divine *Rosamond*, and the Princess *Albisinda*.

The breadth of the River, and the height of the Terrass, made not so little a distance as to permit him distinctly to discern the features of their faces; nor was it so great, but that he might observe one part of them; and it seem'd that from that of *Rosamond* descended a resplendent flame like that of the Celestial Rayes, and which could not permit any distance to rob him of some part of her beauties: he saw her then, by the assistance love gave his sight, as distinctly as if he had been but within four paces of her; and at this sight remain'd wholly surpris'd, troubled and astonish'd. He stopp'd at the Bank of the River, and it seem'd as if with his looks, and sighs which accompanied them, he would have made his heart pass under the waters to the place where it was unfortunately lost.

This sight gave new forces to his love, though they were not necessary to raise to an

unquestionable predominancy; and that heart which the force of her beauty, or that of his destiny, had submitted to the Fetters of the cruel *Rosamond*, at this view was entangled in new snares, from which all the greatness of his courage and reason prov'd vain Allisters or Deliverers. Alas! what were now the thoughts which tormented him! and with how many different passions did he now feel himself forc'd to struggle with! the joy which we naturally have at the sight of what we love, presented it self first to his spirit, and so fill'd him with the *Idea* of it, that for some small time it rendred him insensible of any other thing: the desire he had to see what he ador'd at a less distance, succeeded it, but the jealousy he resent'd for the fortune of those to whom this happiness was permitted, at the same time began to infest him; and the grief to see himself mortally hated by her that he could only love, most violently perplex'd him.

Ab my eyes (said he with sighs, which parted from his Lips instead of words which he spoke to himself) *you from whom I seek my happiness, why have you rendred me miserable? rejoyce in your Fortune if you can; and since it is permitted you to see Rosamond without resenting the effects of her cruelty, behold if you can, this Celestial Object without being dazzl'd, and leave all the pain to this unfortunate heart, against which you have so cruelly brought a War.* But, *O gods* (added he a little after) *in this Divinity of my soul which I behold with so much joy, do not I see that incens'd Divinity, to whom for Sacrifices I have offer'd no other than cruel offences and bloody injuries? And a Divinity arm'd with thunder ready to lance it at this miserable person, who hath too much merited it? Ab my eyes, take away your looks; and by the pleasure you receive, expose not to new Arms this unfortunat, who hath already committed to many his presence as odious to his incens'd goddess: and we ought to content our selves to have once drawn her anger by our sight, without falling again into the same fault.* But what know we (added he a small time after, oppress'd by some flattering thoughts) *but the intention we have to serve her, may have appeas'd part of her displeasure, and that a heart sensible of offences, may not have the same apprehension of the satisfaction we would give her? 'Tis no light reparation of our faults, to take up Arms against our Friend; nor a light service, at the peril of our life to restore her liberty, and the Kingdom of her Father.*

It seem'd that this thought gave him some consolation, and some rays of hopes; but it was all destroy'd in a moment after, by those that succeeded: and himself adding his grief to torment him; *Ab miserable* (said he) *flatter not thy self with a happiness which thou canst not justly hope. Thou hast acquitted a part of thy duty, in repairing a part of the evils thou hast done, but thou hast not blotted out that impression of hatred thou hast stamp'd in the heart of Rosamond; and in that odious estate wherein thou art with her, even the greatest services will seem odious.*

While he discours'd in this manner, and that his contemplation was fixed upon that heavenly object, he was likewise seen and beheld with a very nice observation by the two Princesses: for they had not only perceiv'd him since he had stop'd at the banks of the River, but from the high place where they stood, they had seen the Combat, and discern'd as distinctly what had pass'd, as the distance would permit: but when *Pharamond* pursuing those that fled was advanc'd towards the River, they had mark'd him by several things which they discern'd to be more than common. His Armour shone with Gold and precious Stones with which it was enrich'd, and his Helmet was shaded with white Plumes which cover'd his head, and wav'd gently over his shoulders: but than by these exterior Ornaments, he was easier known by that Martial vigour, and that admirable grace he had in all his postures, and especially on Horseback; so that the two Princesses had no sooner cast their eyes upon him at a distance which might permit them distinctly to discern him, but they took him for himself: and by what we afterwards undertood, the Princess of the *Cimbrians* turning towards *Albifinda*, *My Sister* (said she) *I am much deceiv'd if that person so remarkable amongst all the rest, be not the same Pharamond, from whom we have received so many injuries; and notwithstanding the resentment I have against him, I find him so little resembling common men, that it is difficult for me to misprize him.* The Princess of the *Sueves* agreed in her judgment with *Rosamond*: but as at that time they walk'd not without having the Guards of *Gondioch* near them, *Albifinda* demanded of him who commanded them, if that person who had pursu'd the vanquish'd Troop to the banks of the River, and whom she shew'd him with her hand, were not *Pharamond*; and the *Burgundian*, who had seen him several times in the same posture, and in several bickerings of the same nature, having assur'd her that he was the same, *Doubt not at all, my Sister* (said she to the Princess) *but that is really the King of the Franks; but if I be not much deceiv'd, it is not to do you new injuries that he appears now before you; and if you mark his countenance* (added she, just when she saw him stop on the banks of the River in the posture I endeavour to represent

to you) you may judge well that he hath nothing of an Enemy, and that your beauty hath produc'd all the effect which Gondioch declar'd. 'Tis perhaps yours (repl'd the Princess) and the jealousy of Gondioch, may have deceiv'd him in the judgment it hath made him make; but when it shall be truly mine, I will tell you as I told Gondioch, that it is so little accusom'd to do me any good offices, that I shall not at all wonder that it hath made me be belov'd by a person, who of all the World, can have the least hopes of my affections. I know not (repl'd the Princess of the Sueves fighting) whether you speak this sincerely or according to reason; and if I were not the Sister of Vindimir, who fell under Pharamond's Lance, and of Viridomar, who pretends to the honour of enjoying you, I should oppose thy discourse with those reasons which these considerations command me not to alledge. That which you could tell me (repl'd Rosamond) would not be perhaps so just as you think; and though notwithstanding my resentment, I know as well as you the person and glory of Pharamond, and that by the design he hath to bring us out of the power of Gondioch, he puts himself in a condition to repair the injuries he hath done us; 'tis enough if by this reparation I can drive the hatred from my heart without introducing another passion, of which all the greatest services can scarce render me capable, should he make them the entire employment of his life.

They spoke in this manner, and he beheld them with eyes so powerfully fastned to the place, that though from the walls many Arrows were shot at him, and that he was in danger to be either kill'd or wounded; neither this consideration, nor any other, avail'd to draw him from the place, if the two Princesses, either mov'd by their generosity, which permitted them not to expose for a longer time to that danger the life of so great a Prince at a season when he had intentions favourable for their service, or to a witness of their displeasure, which made them flee his presence, had not retir'd from the place where they stood, and depriv'd him of that so desir'd sight, when his soul was most fix'd upon it. At their departure, the Heavens to him seem'd cover'd with cloudy darkness, and the Air lost its serenity: he accompani'd the sense of their departure with as many sighs as he could utter, and at length began to hearken to the intreaties of his Souldiers, who endeavour'd to retire him from a place where the stay was dangerous by reason of the showers of Arrows which had already killed two or three men: the King at last suffer'd himself to be perswaded, gently withdrawing, and turning his eyes from time to time towards the place where he had seen the Princess; but because among the Arrows which fell at our feet, there was one found with a Note fastned to it, he that first perceiv'd it unbound it, and presented it to the King; and as all things that came from that side touch'd him to the heart, he seiz'd it with an extraordinary greediness, and having open'd it, read these words.

To the King of the Franks.

I Hope that your good intention will produce the effect you desire; and I believe that I have known, that spirits that are incens'd at offences, are mollifi'd with services. However, I ought to advertise you, that if you do not pursue it with diligence, you will not have the entire glory of your enterprise; and that there are some would rob you of a part, by means which I could inform you, if I had a way more assured than that to which I trust this Paper.

The King several times read over these words, the beginning of which flatter'd him with as much consolation as the last gave him disturbance, not being able to imagine, neither by what persons, nor by what means he should be deprived of part of the glory he pretended in his enterprise: he doubted not but this Paper came from *Albimer*, who was that Inhabitant of *Marobuda*, to whom he had intrusted his Letter to the Princess, and who not only for being the most honest man in the City, had frequent access to her, but had a Sister who had many years waited on her, and a Sister who not only had spirit, but was particularly lov'd by her Mistress. This was that which caused a spring of joy in the soul of the King; and he believ'd that what *Albimer* told him of the mollifying of the anger of *Rosamond*, had come to his knowledge by the report of that Lady, who might have some part in her confidence; but he employ'd a good part of that day in searching out the truth of what he writ him in the end of the Billet; and though many things presented themselves to his imagination, he could find no judgment concerning it that could content him.

In the mean time, as his passion increased by this second view of *Rosamond*, and by that little hope which the Paper of *Albimer* gave him, he believed he ought to neglect nothing for the Liberty of the Princess, after such advice given him, and his diligence solicited; he therefore prepar'd for the Battel, upon which he knew *Gondioch* was resolv'd as well as he;

and not to be over-tedious with you, I will only tell you, that each of them having done all that the greatest Captains could do, and fought all their advantages by so much the more that *Gondioch* well knew *Pharamond*, and *Pharamond* could not despise *Gondioch*, they drew out all their Troops from the places where they were incamp'd, and by a mutual consent rang'd the two Armies in the great Plain which is within view of the City. Ours, though the less numerous of the two, was compos'd of fifty thousand men, but they were men made fierce and valiant by so many great Victories which they had obtain'd in so short time. And besides our Royal Captain, they had at their Head five or six Princes, and many more Illustrious men, able to command the most formidable Armies. The King divided his into three Bodies, having understood that the Enemy did the same; the first of which he gave to Prince *Marcomire*, the last to the famous *Priam*, and kept the main Battel for himself. *Ibere* and *Meroveus* commanded the reserves, and Prince *Sunnon*, with *Genebaud* and *Charamont* had the command of the Cavalry.

The King of the *Burgundians* having, like my Prince, reserv'd the main Battel for himself, gave the Vant-guard to Prince *Gondemar* his Brother, the Rear-guard to *Gontran* his Kinsman, and the other commands to such of his as were most capable, and whose valour and experience he had proved in several conflicts. He march'd to this Combat with less confidence than he was wont to the others which he had fought against less terrible Enemies than he whom now he oppos'd; and he knew so well the familiarity which Victory seem'd to have contracted with *Pharamond*, that for all his great courage, he could not hinder himself from fearing the event.

The order in which my Prince had order'd his Battalions, was admired by all the old Captains: and after he had exhorted the Souldiers with a charming eloquence, and encourag'd his men with the most pressing Arguments his desire of Victory could inspire him with, he caus'd the last signal to be given (at the same time that *Gondioch* did the like) and began the Battel. You will consent (my Lord) that I should abridge the particulars, lest otherwise I should be tedious, and that I content my self to tell you, that after the example of the two great Captains, many valiant men who fought under them, signaliz'd themselves by many brave actions; and all the Souldiers, both of either side, fought with infinite valour, Prince *Marcomire* and the gallant *Gondemar* broke their Lances the one against the other, and began a Combat with advantage little different; but they could not finish it, by reason of the necessity which constrain'd them to separate themselves to look after their charges, in which they both acquir'd sufficient honour. The King of the *Burgundians* gave many extraordinary proofs both of his Valour and Martial Discipline: and as he was animated by a passion wholly violent, he led his men to the Combat with so much fury, or rather he spurred them on with so much rage, that our first Squadrons could hardly endure the shock. As his were stronger than ours in number of men, he made use so well of that advantage, and of the heat wherewith he had inspir'd them, that he began to shake ours, and to open himself the way to Victory. This hope which they conceived, rendred them more fierce and furious; and our Officers beheld with infinite grief, that our Souldiers began to give Ground, when our great King, whom this disadvantage had inflamed with an anger not ordinary in him, ran with a courage able to assure the most fearful, to all the places where necessity called him to the assistance of his: and passing from side to side with his Face open, he enliven'd the hearts of the Souldiers with the fire which seem'd to dart from his eyes; and animated them in the end in such a manner, both by his sight, by his speech and by the diligence he took to sustain those that were faint, and by the seasonable assistance which he brought them, that he not only stop't the disorder which began to grow among his, but translated it in a little time among his Enemies, and charg'd them so fiercely when he once saw them shrink, that in the end he put them to rout, and made the Victory in all places declare it self in our favour.

Gondioch did a hundred Actions worthy particular notice; but he could not put a stand to the Fortune of *Pharamond*, which after he had attempted with a Valour extraordinary, he saw himself in the end vanquish'd, and his Army entirely broken on every side. 'Twas now that his despair made him seek *Pharamond* in all those places where he believ'd he might rencounter him, either to give him his death, or to receive his own at his hands: but the King of the *Franks*, by a motion much different from his, not only avoided the Combat with him, but caus'd it to be proclaim'd throughout the whole Army, that they should respect the person of *Gondioch*, and spare the blood of the *Burgundians* as much as possible. Yet it had been difficult for him to shun the rencounter of *Gondioch*, if in a place far distant from whence he was, the valiant Prince *Ibere* had not oppos'd his fury, and stop'd him by a Combat, in which they both receiv'd some wounds: though the King of the *Burgundians*

in the end quitted him to follow some other design which his love inspir'd him with, having lost the hopes of Victory.

It remain'd as entire to us as the King could desire : as for the Souldiers, I doubt not but they had rendred it much more bloody than it was, if the élemency of our Prince had not stay'd their fury ; however, the Enemies lost more than thirty thousand men, and kill'd above ten thousand of ours. It had been difficult for *Gondioch* to have sav'd himself after he had thrown himself so far among us, if our King had had any design to take him : but instead of opposing his retreat, he favour'd his, and whatever advantage he might have drawn by it, he would not give him the displeasure to see himself Prisoner to a Prince, who some few dayes before had been his best Friend.

But if he us'd this diligence for the safety and satisfaction of *Gondioch*, neither the heat of the fight, nor the desire of Victory made him lose the remembrance of *Rosamond*, for whom alone he fought : and not doubting but that if *Gondioch* lost the Battel, he would retire into the City, and once more render himself Master of the Liberty of the Princess, and either remove her thence, or defend her within the Walls, he resolv'd to provide for this mischief, which in all likelihood might happen ; and therefore so soon as he saw the Victory declare in our favour, and the King of the *Burgundians* engag'd among ours, he commanded Prince *Marcomire* to advance with certain Troops towards the City, and defend the passage against *Gondioch* and his Forces ; which he might easily do, by gaining the Avenues of the two Bridges, by which alone he could from that side enter ; *Gondioch* himself having some dayes before broken a Bridge of Boats made over the River during the time of the Siege.

The valiant *Marcomire* executed the Orders of the King with an admirable valour and diligence ; and having left *Genebaud* and *Meroveus* at the Avenue of one of the Bridges, he defended the other against *Gondioch*, who presented himself a short time after, and us'd a very resolute Conflict, he not only repuls'd him, and chas'd him for many toylongs along the River, but by an effect of Fortune which he had not hop'd for during the Combat, he that commanded in the City for *Gondioch*, knowing his Prince by several marks, and believing himself oblig'd to favour his retreat, came at the beginning to the Bridge ; and in the end, transported by an imprudent heat, he caus'd the Gates to be open'd, and at the Head of five hundred Horse charg'd *Marcomire* in the Rear. Thus success came to *Gondioch* upon the point when he had just turn'd his back, and when he was in a condition neither to make use of it himself, nor hardly perceive it ; and the Brother of *Pharamond* taking his resolution with a marvellous promptitude of spirit, commanded my Father, who was near him, to pursue *Gondioch* with one part of the Cavalry which he gave him, and with the rest he turn'd head against the *Burgundians*, who were fall'd out of the City, and charg'd them with so much fury, that they were not able to sustain it. In short, he oppress'd them, disorder'd them, and put them to flight all in a moment ; and the routed *Burgundians* gaining the Bridge in this disorder, the multitude of those that fled hinder'd the shutting of the Gates, and permitted the vanquishers to enter pell-mell with the vanquish'd.

Marcomire made use so well of this favourable opportunity, that by this confusion he rendred himself Master not only of the Bridge, but the Gate of the City, which he defended till the arrival of *Genebaud* and *Meroveus* ; to whom he had sent notice of it so soon as he had gain'd the Gate of the Bridge. As soon as they arriv'd with their men, *Marcomire* press'd into the City after the Enemies he had before him ; and my Father, who had no order to pursue *Gondioch* far, return'd just at the same time that the Prince saw himself Master of the City by an admirable Valour and good Fortune. There was for the present some blood shed by the resistance which the *Burgundians* for some time made ; yet soon after, Prince *Marcomire*, who, though more choleric and violent than the King, is notwithstanding full of a true generosity, knowing himself the stronger, and not doubting longer the Victory, caus'd Proclamation to be made to the *Burgundians* to lay down their Arms, and commanded his own to desist from the slaughter. He that commanded in the City for *Gondioch*, was one of the first slain at the Gate ; and those who remain'd after him, not having so great an interest to defend it, receiv'd willingly the favour which *Marcomire* granted them, and made no longer resistance.

The King of the *Franks* receiv'd this news with a surpassing joy ; and seeing himself in the same day victorious over a formidable Enemy, and Master of the City, in which was inclosed her whom he ador'd ; he could with difficulty, by all the force of his moderation, retain the marks of his contentment. He left the care of the Camp to *Priam* and *Charamont*, whose experience was well known to him ; and with a small number attending him, he came towards the City, either carri'd by an impatient desire to see the Prin-

cess, or by a belief that she could not be defended by any power so well as by himself. Entering the City, he found things far more calm than he expected: and you may judge, my Lord, that he was not wanting to give to this gallant action of the Prince his Brother those praises were due to it, and to testify the kindness he had for a service of so great importance.

He presently made all the *Burgundians* depart the City, permitting them to go seek their King, and to carry with them all that appertain'd to them, without suffering any loss in their Equipage, or injury to their persons; and at the same time he sent back to the Camp part of the Cavalry, and caused some Infantry to come to the defence of the City against the enterprizes of *Gondioch*: and took such order for their lodging and subsistence, that the Inhabitants suffered no trouble nor inconvenience from them, though they serv'd for their defence, and under the Orders of their Princes, to whom *Pharamond* at his entrance committed the entire Authority over them.

While he put all things in order, which were necessary for the service and security of *Rosamond*, he knew not in what fashion he should proceed with her: and if upon one side his passion carri'd him above all things, to the desire he had to go and enjoy at her feet this precious sight; on the other side he was withheld, by the remembrance of the injuries he had done her, and those cruel words which he had heard from her own mouth; not being able to imagine that the service he came to do her, could be so considerable to counterbalance all those great injuries she had receiv'd from him; he therefore believ'd there was need of time to take his resolution: he saw likewise that the night was already somewhat advanc'd: and he believed that though his access to the Princess was free, he ought to take a time to visit her at a less inconvenient hour: but in the mean time, he doubted not at all, but he ought to send some of his to inform her the estate of affairs, and to tell her that she was Mistress of the City, and should be in few dayes reinvested in all the Kingdom of her Father. He did me the honour to give me this commission, though he had many persons about him, who might be more worthy; and I parted from him to go to the Palace, where he would not now lodge, but in that quarter of the City most distant from it.

When I was come to the Palace, I was brought before the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, who was now, as she almost always us'd to be, accompani'd by the Princess of the *Sueves*, to whom I was likewise charg'd to bear my Master's civilities: I had before seen these two Princesses, and therefore in all likelihood ought to have been arm'd against any surprize a second sight might cause: but most certain it is, I was no less astonish'd than I had been at the first, so that my feeble eyes were scarce able to support the splendor with which they were smitten; yet the beauty of *Rosamond*, which may damp the brightness of any other beauty in the Universe, hindred me not from admiring that of the Princess *Albisinda*. I saw them by the light of many Torches, which made a day out of darknets; and the Princess of the *Cimbrians* was seated upon the bed, on which *Albisinda* reposed. I confess that the Majesty of *Rosamond*, and the fire that seem'd to flee from her eyes, dazzl'd me, and struck me into such an astonishment, that for a time it depriv'd me of the power to discharge my commission: but in the end, composing my mind in the most respectful and most submissive terms that I could find, I made her understand the intentions of my Master. *Rosamond* heard me with an infinite reservedness and gravity; but however, without pride: and *Albisinda* hearkn'd with a winning sweetness to those obliging words I told her on the behalf of my Master: and after they had remained some time to consider, as I conceived by the looks which they cast upon each other, what answer they should return; in the end, *Rosamond*, as most concern'd, breaking silence with an admirable grace; *Be pleas'd* (said she) *to tell the King of the Franks, that we doubted not at all but he would overcome in so just a cause, since in others more unjust he hath still been invincible; and that we acknowledge, as much as is permitted to us, the reparation he gives to the injury he hath done us: and if the death of Vindimir oppose not to his reconciliation with the King of the Sueves, it shall neither be mine nor my Sister's fault that he cease not to be the Enemy of our Fathers.*

She pronounc'd these words with a Royal Majesty: and *Albisinda*, by some words which she added, testifi'd that her inclinations were not different from those of *Rosamond*. But when I address'd my self to the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, to demand of her if she would please to grant my Master the honour to wait upon her; *It was not at all necessary* (replid she coldly) *to demand this permission, in a place where he knows well he is Master by right of Arms. And it is not just, my Sister* (replied the Princess of the *Sueves*) *that you should deny it, since he comes to do you service in a matter of so great importance.* *Rosamond* answer'd not at all to these words, though she testifi'd by her countenance a little to approve them:

them: and I taking her silence for a consent, departed the Chamber, before I gave her time to explain it, possibly in a manner less favourable to the intentions of my Master than I ought.

He had attended my return with an impatience, which well made manifest the greatness of his passion; and he hearkn'd to the discourse I made him, with a commotion of mind which visibly demonstrated the agitation of his mind: he employ'd one part of the night to explain the words of *Rosamond*, and did all he could to find in them a sense that might be favourable to him. In this design he wanted a great assistance, which his ill Fortune depriv'd him of; and therefore causing *Albimer* to be sought for, so soon as he entred the City, he was informed that he was departed the day before, and that no farther news was heard of him. This unhappy chance gave him much trouble, having hopes by this means to clear himself of many things: and not having any acquaintance with his Sister, though the Brother seem'd absolutely fix'd to his interests, he believ'd that he might be departed out of the City, to give him more plenary advice concerning what he had mentioned in his Billet; and he fear'd, not without infinite trouble, lest he should be fallen into the hands of *Gondioch*.

The words of *Rosamond* seem'd to him very cold, and somewhat too fierce, in a time wherein he came from gaining a great Victory, and exposing his life for her service: but when he made reflection on those which she had said to him at their first rencounter, he found a great deal of sweetness in these, and cause enough to believe that a great part of that disgust which she had thundred forth with so much violence, was now over: but he receiv'd a far greater consolation, in that the Princess deny'd him not to visit her; and he prepar'd himself to this view, with an impatience easie to be observ'd in his eyes, but not without a fear little different from that which accompanies the most cowardly spirits, in the most perilous conflicts.

The next Morning (for it is necessary, my Lord, that I should pass over things of little importance, in which the recital may be burthensom to you, though it may give you a more particular knowledge of the greatness of his love) so soon as he believed that he might see the Princess, he went to the Palace accompani'd by the Princes his Brothers, *Ibere*, *Geneband* and *Meroveus*: but approaching the Palace, he pray'd the Princes to walk in the fatal Garden, where he had lost his Liberty; telling them, that he would not render them all miserable by the sight of *Rosamond*, against which he believ'd no power or force was capable to resist. *Marcomire* led all the other Princes into the Garden, and I alone follow'd the King by his order. He trembled like a fearful Infant, when he approached the Chamber of the Princess: but when he was introduc'd into her Closet where she then was, and that his eyes were again dazled with the brightness of that celestial beauty, he remained wholly astonish'd, having the countenance of a person, to whom was scarce left any sense or knowledge. Yet he soon came again to himself, by the force he oppos'd to those impetuous motions of his spirit: endeavouring to preserve all his courage in the greatest difficulty that he had ever encountred; he could neither from the countenance nor from the behaviour of *Rosamond*, draw any knowledge of his Fortune; and though, neither in the one nor the other, he could see any mark of sweetness or complacency, he found in her proceedings all that was due to his dignity, and what in all likelihood he was to hope for.

But if the Princess of the *Cimbrians* conserv'd all her Majesty, and seem'd to add to it a new lustre, at the approach of the King of the *Franks*; the King lost at her sight all the remembrance of his Dignity, and forgot those Formalities, which a great King like himself ought to observe in such an occasion, to remember only that he was amorous, and that he was criminal. In this thought, which entirely command'd his breast, and chac'd away all others, in stead of saluting the Princess, as perhaps he had done in another estate of life, he bended his knee before her; and bowing his head to her very feet, with the most passionate affection in the World; *May it be permitted to this Offender* (said he with a voice that betray'd his want of confidence) *to appear yet before the feet of his incens'd Divinity? Or may he hope an abatement of your just displeasure, since he hath not yet sacrific'd his life to expiate his crimes?*

This humility in the person of so great a Personage, and in a person who in all his actions had an admirable grace, touch'd possibly the spirit of *Rosamond* with some good motion of pity; and had perhaps oblig'd her to give some signs thereof, if the Rules of her duty or severity had not been more strong than any that passion could form; and therefore she pray'd him to rise; and seeing that he delay'd to obey her; *Rise, my Lord*, (said she) *or you will constrain me to retire.* *I thought* (said the King, obeying her with some reluctancy)

that a man guilty of so many crimes, ought at least have remain'd at your feet till he had merited your pardon. You may merit it by other means (repli'd the Princess) and since by your last actions, you have made amends for those first wrongs which could be repair'd, you ought not to doubt but that you shall have that justice which is due to you, and that they will consider a good turn, who have been sensible of the injury. If it be so (repli'd the passionate King) I despair not of my Fortune; and as I make it entirely consist in the glory, of not being odious to you, I will endeavour to the last drop of my blood to become so happy. It is not necessary (answered the Princess) that you should buy so small a benefit at so great a price; for in few dayes past, you have shed too much of our Enemies blood, to make us desire the loss of yours. Ah, Madam, (said the Prince) I can hardly perswade my self that the little I have done, or whatever I am able yet to do for your service, can repair those faults which I have committed, for which I should scarce pardon my self, had you the goodness to forget them. All that which may justifie me in part, loses it force near you: and if of two offenders one sees himself punish'd by the Arms of a man, who was unhappily his friend, and should have been still, if friendship had not yielded to a more powerful force, the other sees himself exposed to torments, far more cruel than all those which Fortune or chance of War could make him feel: yet he will suffer them till death without murmuring; and since he is unworthy of your pity, if ever he dare to implore it, he will implore it, when he is giving up his last breath. 'Twas to make this protestation at your feet, and not out of a confidence drawn from a light service, that I have dar'd, unworthy as I am, to present my self once more before you. That which rests of my life, shall be dedicated wholly to your satisfaction: and that glorious punishment, which the just gods have imposed on me; by the one I will drive from your spirit, if it be possible, the remembrance of those crimes which have merited your anger, since it is (added he with a sigh) all the fortune to which I am permitted to aspire; and by the other, if I can die without being hated by you, I shall render my death so pleasing, that it may enzy the most happy lives.

Pharamond spake in this manner, transported by the violence of that love, which had the absolute command over him: but in words so passionate, he ran some danger to draw upon himself, more than ever, that anger of the Princess, which was so terrible to him. The knowledge I had of the fierce and haughty humour of the Princess, made me begin already to fear for him: but it is most certain, that the person of Pharamond is compos'd after such a sort, and the grace wherewith he accompanies his discourse hath something so powerful, that the most incens'd souls would difficultly find strength to oppose him at such a time, should they not make themselves insensible of a charm which obliges them to his favour. The Princess was now perswaded, both by what had pass'd at their first rencounter, by the Letter she had receiv'd, by the report of Gondioch, and by all the proceedings of my Prince, of the passion he had for her: nor was she perhaps ill satisfi'd with the noblest effect she could hope from her beauty: and if, though she suffer'd the passion, the discourse was able to incense her, it was conceiv'd in those terms, that the conjuncture of Affairs seem'd to excuse it, and gave her not the same reason to be transported, as if it had been spoken in another season, and more clearly. However it was, or were it that Rosamond, by the charms of his person, by the marks of his grief, and (it may be) by the love of Pharamond, was touch'd for him with a favourable inclination, and found in his condition and in his discourse, more reason to lament for him, than he incens'd against him; and that she judg'd it not convenient to let her displeasure break forth against an humbl'd Prince, in a time when divers considerations might divert it, she testifi'd nothing of anger at his discourse; and contented her self to attribute it entirely to his repentance, without ascribing any thing to his love: and breaking silence with her first coldness; *Since in ceasing to offend* (said she) *you may cease to be hated, there is appearance that by the good offices you do to our House, you may hope better: and with whatever prejudice the King my Father and the Prince my Brother may be incens'd against you, I see nothing which may hinder their becoming your Friends, if the Alliance which they have sworn with the King of the Sueves oppose not; nor which ought oblige me to hate you, if they cease to be your Enemies.*

In speaking these last words, Rosamond beheld my Prince with an eye in which he thought he saw some marks of sweetness or compassion; and the joy they brought into his soul, had spread it self in his visage, if he had not mastered it by those great reasons he had to moderate it, and the little foundation he had to conceive it. *I would buy* (replied he) *the friendship of the King your Father, and the Prince your Brother, at the price of what I have most dear; and I wish I could satisfy the grief of the King of the Sueves, by a part of what I unhappily deprived his Son of: But, alas!* (added he with a sigh) *I had been happy in this misfortune, if his death had only drawn me the hatred of the Suevish King; or if it had been less apprehended by the divine Rosamond than by him that gave him birth. This is not* (pursued he,

he, with a behaviour yet more passionate) *that the condition of that Prince seems not to me more worthy of envy than of compassion; or that I would not willingly change the glory I can hope for among men, for that of extracting from your fair eyes those tears he hath made you shed.*

He had perhaps said more, but that he thought by some signs in the countenance of the Princess that these words had stir'd up some grief in her mind. This belief touch'd him with a sensible apprehension, and made him resolve not only to change the discourse, but to put an end to (notwithstanding the violence which oppos'd his resolution) a visit which ought not be too long, considering how he stood in the opinion of *Rosamond*. To this purpose, raising himself from the Chair where she had forc'd him to sit, *Madam*, (said he) *it is not just to permit longer before you this offender; and I have perhaps too much abus'd your patience, that you have suffer'd it so long: nor is it necessary that I longer stay in a City where you do not command me to tarry for your service, and where I cannot but see my self with shame, having appear'd as an enemy. I go to expel out of your Territories those which in my remembrance of your enemies, and to restore to your obedience that which may yet be possess'd by Gondioch, and in hopes of the return of the King your Father into a Country of which he shall in few days be peaceably Master, I will depart out of his Dominions so soon as I shall be no longer necessary in his service: and though he cease not to hate me, yet I shall be always ready to assist him with my Forces, with my blood, and with my life, if his enemies renew the war against him: this is what I can offer to the King your Father. And for you, Madam, I offer you the miserable sufferings of a heart which will carry your chains till death; and of a soul which if fortune ceases to oppose it, will dispute perhaps with the whole world the glory to serve you.*

The fear he had to receive a cruel answer to these words, made him depart so soon as he had spoke them; but not before he had bended his knee to her, as he had done at his entrance; nor without making her see in his eyes, that all that which he expressed of his passion, was below what he had in his breast.

Before we departed from the Palace, he sent me to the Princess of the *Sueves*, to tell her, that by reason of the misfortunes he had to make himself odious to her house by the unhappy death of her Brother, he durst not presume to visit her; yet he should esteem himself most happy, if she would give him some occasion to appease, by his services, a part of the hatred she might have against him: and this Princess, whose soul was full of sweetness, having with an infinite grace receiv'd the civility of my Prince, made me know that she could without reluctancy have seen him in the Chamber of *Rosamond*, if she had there met him; but that for the fear she had of the severe humour of the King her Father, she durst not receive him in hers, though she was no less sensible of the service which he had willingly done her, than she could be of the injury he had done them, possibly against his own intentions.

By this last view of *Rosamond*, the love of *Pharamond* gain'd new force, and was perhaps already arriv'd at the highest that ever any passion mounted to: he had not seen her before, but incens'd, and in a condition terrible to him; so that Fear, with Grief and Despair, possess'd the best part of his mind: but at this time it seem'd that the other passions were in part dispell'd in his mind, to leave it entirely to love; and that by this sweetness, which he found in the disposition of the Princess, he was permitted to admit those hopes which till then found no access. In fine, *Rosamond* had endur'd his sight and his discourse; and though it were with a great deal of coldness, yet it seem'd to him to be without any resistance, and that her coldness ought to be attributed to her displeasure rather than to other causes, as to the death of a Prince whom she ought to have espous'd, and to the dependence she had on the will of her Father, whose thoughts she could not be ignorant of, and whom she knew yet not reconcil'd to *Pharamond*, though he had no more reason to hate him: and more, he had declared to her what he had in his heart, though he doubted not at all but she already knew it; and he believed that he had observed in her eyes that this acknowledgment had not displeas'd her, and that by his love he was not become guilty of any new crime towards her: besides; he found his conscience more free than it had hitherto been on the behalf of *Gondioch*, and as he remembered, that that ingrateful Prince, both in the Battel, and in all that had pass'd before it, had openly testified an ardent desire to take away his life; and so much the more sought to do it, when he refus'd the Combat with him, and us'd all diligence to preserve his friendship, when he saw him most incens'd to his ruine; that he himself had taken a displeasure at him in his soul, which had driven away those scruples that had tormented him in favour of his party, though he could not yet conceive a hatred for him; and he believed that he had done e-

nough, and suffer'd enough, not to fear that the world should accuse him to have offended the duties of friendship towards a person, to whom he was not bound for any good turn, though he should endeavour to gain the affections of *Rosamond*: he believ'd then that both on the behalf of *Rosamond*, and of *Gondioch*, he had reason to hope; and that if Fortune would a little declare in his favour, it would not be impossible that he should be one day happy.

These thoughts rendred him in a moment wholly different from what he had till that time been; and it appeared so much both in his eyes and all his person, that those who were about him easily discern'd the change. *O Gods*, (said he with a behaviour much differing from the ordinary condition in which we had for some time seen him) *if it be possible that it may be permitted me to hope, and that I have no longer reason to fear neither the hatred of Rosamond, nor the friendship of Gondioch, how great will be my fortune? or rather, what obstacles can oppose my fortune, if I cease to love Gondioch, or to be hated of Rosamond? Have not I birth, force and courage comparable to any of my Rivals? or which of them is it against whom I durst not openly dispute? That Brother of Viudimir, that Viridomar, to whom they have destin'd so glorious a Fortune, whatsoever fame is already spread through the world of his valour, or whatsoever advantages have been publish'd of his person, cannot be well assur'd of his happiness, if he be not fortified against me with the hatred of Rosamond: and may not I hope that the Father and the Brother of Rosamond, whose hatred my past actions may have attracted, will be sensible of what I now do for them, and of the services which I will do them? Ah! if this happiness might befall me, (pursued he, confirming himself more and more in his hopes) I would make it possibly appear by fair effects, that of all the lovers of Rosamond, I am not the most miserable; and by that little in which Heaven is favourable to me, I will give sufficient trouble to the most powerful of my Rivals.*

He flatter'd himself in this manner, being ignorant of what that fortune which seemed to behold him with a pleasing eye, was preparing for him more cruel and terrible: but as he would give the Princess the most absolute marks of his submission, he prepar'd himself to depart the City, and go to his Camp, when at the same instant the Scouts which he had sent into the Fields on the other side of the City, where the access to it was not at all defended by the River, being returned, brought him word that they had seen appear towards the Coast of *Casurgis* some Squadrons of Cavalry, and that the men of the Country had told them that they had seen others in other places, which seem'd to have some design against such places as yet remained under the power of the *Cimbrian King*; but that by the impatience of *Gondioch* they had left them, to come and attacque *Marobunda* where the Princess was.

The King, and those who were about him, who knew well that *Gondioch* before he came to the Battel had pass'd his Troops over the River, and had left none on that side, thought that he might have, during the night, found some passage, in a time when the waters were more low than ordinary; and that he had sent some Troops on that side, either to give suspicion, or to put himself, if he could find an opportunity, into one of those places from whence he might make war in the Country, and attend the recruit of his Troops. And though upon this consideration the King found little reason to fear a defeated Army, and which was not in a condition to perform any great exploit of war; yet he thought best to send to know further; and attending a more full advice, to stay in the City the rest of the day. He sent to the Princess to beg her permission, that she would be pleas'd to let him remain there for her service; acquainting her at the same time with the reasons that oblig'd his stay; and because Prince *Marcomire* was already returned to the Camp, he commanded *Genebaud* with three hundred Horse to march to the place where our Scouts had seen those Cavalry, with order to do all that he could, to bring some certain intelligence.

In the mean time, whatever disquiet he suffer'd to remain till the morrow in the City without seeing the Princess, he thought as the case stood, he could not without violating the respect he ought her, give her two visits in one day, in a place where notwithstanding the respect he gave her, it might be believ'd he was still Master; and not daring to hazard the demand of a second audience, he pass'd the time in far greater impatience than he would have done, had he been farther distant from her: but it is time, my Lord, that whilst I tell you what pass'd within the breast of *Pharamond*, I should enter into a farther discourse of his deplorable fortunes.

It was not without reason, that *Gondioch* had been advertised, that the *Cimbrians* had some intelligence in the Country, and in the very City of *Marobunda*: and though he had neglected the advice which he had received, as well because his love wholly busied him, and

and render'd him almost incapable to think of any thing else, besides what had relation to that; as because he had not heard it, but by a confus'd report, and by persons which were not so well inform'd of the truth, as to speak it with any certainty: but most certain it is, there had pass'd things of too great importance to be neglected; and to acquaint you with them, my Lord, I must tell you, that whilst the love of *Pharamond* and *Gondioch* hindred them from thinking of their enemies, they had not remain'd idle, but that the two Kings having call'd to their assistance all their Friends and Allies, had rais'd most powerful Forces to renew the war, and give trouble to their enemies. The news which they had heard of their division, had much augmented their hopes; and as the King of the *Cimbrians* attributed it to a jealousy which might be risen between these two Kings, either for the love of *Rosamond*, or some other consideration, rather than to any thoughts of *Pharamond*, which might give him place to become his friend; instead of being touch'd with any acknowledgment, or dreaming to joyn with him against *Gondioch*; he prepar'd equally against them both, believing he could never find a better opportunity to ruine them, than during their disunion; besides that he was joyned with the King of the *Sueves* in an Alliance so trait, that no consideration could separate them: and knowing well that nothing could divert his design, which he still vehemently preserv'd in his soul, to revenge the death of *Vindimir*, he remain'd fix'd in his resolution, to follow his fortunes to the end.

Prince *Theobaldus* his Son, who against all sorts of reason had receiv'd an infinite antipathy against my King, and who by reason of the love and the design he had for *Albifinda*, was more particularly knit to the interest of the King of the *Sueves*; confirm'd his Father in his intentions, and perswaded him to the war against us, as much as he could possibly: but as he found himself not yet in a condition to come with open force against two such Princes as *Pharamond* and *Gondioch*, who disunited as they were, might reunite themselves against the common enemy at their arrival; they joyn'd policy to open war, and manag'd those intelligences which they receiv'd among the *Bohemians*, before they enter'd the Country with their Armies. At present they likewise knew that the Princesses were in the hands of their enemies, and that having such precious gages, they might always be in a condition to impose hard conditions, and make their own advantageously; they therefore consider'd, that if it were possible to redeem them from the place where they were, and conduct them to some Town which yet held out for them, it would extremely advance their affairs, and put themselves in a posture to attacque their enemies, without any fear which might retard them.

To endeavour the execution of this design, *Briomer* presented himself; but Prince *Theobaldus* himself would have a part in this enterprize. This was the same *Briomer*, who had defended *Marobuda* against *Pharamond* and *Gondioch*; and I will add to that which I have told you of him, that though his birth was none of the highest among the *Bohemians*, yet he held one of the chief degrees, and possess'd the greatest charges of the Realm; for besides that he was hardy, valiant and able; he had the education of Prince *Theobaldus* from his cradle; and as he was dearly belov'd of him, so he had for him an affection more like that of a Father, than of a Governour. 'Twas then with *Briomer*, that the Prince would enter secretly into the Country of the *Bohemians*, and quarter themselves ready at some place, which still continued under their subjection, to find the means to execute the greatest things, and to form a party which should favour the entrance of their Armies into the Country.

Briomer having great acquaintance, and the inhabitants of *Marobuda* being all at his devotion, he believed that during our disorders, he might find some means to enter, and possibly to carry thence the Princesses; which was what the two Kings and Prince *Theobaldus* did most eagerly desire. One part of these designs were executed as they could have wish'd them. *Theobaldus* and *Briomer* with very little equipage were entered into the Country: and because they knew that the Plains on the other side of the River from *Marobuda*, were covered with the Armies of the *Burgundians* and ours, they had taken their way by the Country of the *Coldules*, and so pass'd to *Egitina*, a good City, in which the King of the *Cimbrians* had a strong Garrison.

They had kept their arrival so secret, that no person knew of it; and *Briomer* had so well manag'd his designs, that he had found means to enter into the City, the day before we gave battel: he had confer'd with the two Princesses, and told them the intention of their Fathers, and the design which Prince *Theobaldus* and he had, to take them out of the hands of their enemies. The Princesses, who had a great belief in *Briomer*, and knowing what esteem both the King and Prince had of him, dispos'd themselves to second his design;

sign; and so soon as they should find an opportunity to retire themselves with Prince *Theobaldus*. They had such an one as they could desire, so soon as my Prince was enter'd the City; for as *Rosamond* was not only Mistress of her liberty, but of the City it self, she had the power to go forth, whenever she had an intention: 'tis true, that after the discourse which she had with my Prince, she had some aversion to execute this design; it seeming to her that it was to deceive in some manner a Prince who had dealt so generously with her, to flee secretly from a place where he had left her the Sovereign Authority, and where the retreat, the stay, and all things were in her disposition; she spoke to *Briomer*, who was concealed in the Palace, so soon as my Prince was retir'd, and would have perswaded him that it would be perhaps more advantageous to her, and to her House, to treat in another manner with *Pharamond*, and to make use of his assistance to chase out *Gondioch*, since he offer'd himself so willingly, rather than to make him again an enemy of her Father by a flight, and a proceeding which seem'd to partake of incredulity, and did but ill correspond with that of the King of the *Franks*.

Briomer found a great deal of reason in the discourse of *Rosamond*, but could not approve this design: for knowing that of the King his Master and the Prince his Son, he told the Princess that he did not doubt, but *Pharamond* as well as *Gondioch* might become enamour'd of her divine beauties; and that acting as this passion guided him, he did apparently all things which he believ'd capable to please or move her; but that she ought not to trust a young man, who might deceive her, and who remain'd still Master in her Country, whatever respect he gave her: and in the end, that though it should be true, that he acted sincerely, and that they could not hope of him other than real services and assistance, the intention of the King her Father was not to receive from him any obligation which might hinder him from being still his enemy, as he was bound to be by the Alliance which he had contracted with the King of the *Sueves*. That he attended nothing to enter into the Country, but to understand that she was at liberty; and that he would never pardon her, if he should know that she had remained an hour under the command of *Pharamond*, having had power to depart. That in the end, Prince *Theobaldus* her Brother, upon the advice which he had given him of what had pass'd, would be on the morrow before day, with four hundred Horse, at some furlongs distant from the City, to receive her in case she could get forth, and would conduct her to *Egitan*, where they might defend themselves against their enemies Forces, till those of the King her Father were arriv'd.

At these words of a man whom the Princess knew to be esteem'd by the King her Father, she remain'd without answer, only contenting her self to say, that she would obey the King without murmuring: *Albifinda* said the same: and their departure being thus resolv'd on the morning following (for they judg'd well, that how absoluté soever the Princess was in the City by the command of *Pharamond*, yet she could not get forth by night without giving great suspicion) *Briomer* pass'd the rest of the day, and the following night, in preparation of things necessary, and sent again to Prince *Theobaldus*, to acquaint him with the last resolution; and so soon as the day appear'd, the Princesses being habited, mounted with their Ladies in three Chariots which were ready; and to give less suspect, they visited several Temples within the City, apparently with design to thank the Gods for the happy change of their condition: having done their devotions in two or three of those in the City, they feign'd they would go and pay the same Duty to that of *Diana*, which is some furlongs distant from the City: and having caus'd themselves to be driven to the Gate, by which they were to issue out, those which guarded it, and who had order absolutely to obey the Princess, saw her no sooner appear, but they open'd the Gate, and left her a passage, as free as she could desire: from the Gate they went to the Temple of *Diana*, under the conduct of *Briomer*, who was pass'd out disguis'd; with some men on Horseback which accompanied him. But they made little stay; for *Briomer* having caus'd them to remount into their Chariots, drove towards the place where *Theobaldus* attend'd them; which was in a Wood, distant only some few furlongs from the Temple of *Diana*. *Theobaldus* came forth to meet them; and the better to disguise himself, in case that they should be seen by any person, and to make *Pharamond* judge that it was by others, and not by the *Cimbrians*, that the Princesses were taken away, he accosted the Chariot with his Sword in his hand, as enemies might do, and feign'd to take them away by violence. All things happen'd according to *Theobaldus*'s intention, who would not by any means be suspected to be in the Country; and those persons, who by chance saw at a great distance what had pass'd, judg'd as he desired, that it was by enemies that the Princesses were taken away; and made the same report in the City, so soon as they enter'd.

In the mean time, my Prince, whose love had waken'd him very early, was no sooner risen, but he understood that the two Princesses had visited the Temples of the City, and were gone to that of *Diana*, which was without the Gates. So far there was nothing but the hour that surpris'd him: but as the season was for the present very hot, he believed that to avoid the heat they had taken the morning for their progress and devotions, as much less inconvenient. In the mean time, he found some time for himself to repose; judging that *Rosamond* did not disdain the office that he had done her, since she had so readily made use of it; but some time after, he understood by several persons at the same time, that the Princesses were forc'd away by a great body of Cavalry, who posted them thence with all diligence. The vexation that he had likewise upon this news, was, that it arriv'd late, and that the persons who gave it being Footmen, which had come slowly, understood but little, and minded less affairs of this importance: the noise of it had run a good while among the vulgar people, before it came to the knowledge of the persons who gave advice to the King. All his wisdom, and all his natural moderation, could not hinder him from breaking out into a passion; nor did I ever in my whole life see him in that posture he appear'd in at this cruel news: He at first could not believe it: but being confirm'd by the persons that reported it, whom they brought before him; and in the end by others, who afterwards saw the Chariots go with the Cavalry that conducted them; he did but too well know his misfortune, and was but too much perswaded: his countenance was an assured testimony of his inward grief, to those that stood about him; nor could he hinder himself to make known to them, by some words, not more than they believed, but more than till then he had declared to them. *Ab Gondioch, (cried he) how cruelly dost thou revenge thy self on me? and rendrest me by the loss of that which thou now takest from me, more unfortunate than thou couldst be by the loss of a Battle: but hope not to enjoy thy fair prize with security; for since by this violent proceeding thou blottest out of my soul all that remain'd there of friendship for thee, which mangre thy ingratitude I had yet preserv'd, fear all things from a man, whom a passion like thine may deprive of reason as well as thee.*

The belief he had that the Princesses could not be forced by any but *Gondioch*, made him speak in this manner: and though by the facility they had themselves given to this action, in passing out of the City at an hour so little ordinary, it might easily be conjectur'd that themselves had contributed, and that it was either by the *Cimbrians* or the *Sueves* that they were led away, rather than by the *Burgundians*; the report made of the violence which they used, took away part of the reason of this thought; and it seem'd entirely lost, by the little appearance there was, that the Princess *Rosamond* would be perswaded to such an action, and in a time when no necessity; nor any reason could oblige her to expose her self to the hazard she must run of being encounter'd by her enemies, when she was in the City with an absolute power, an entire liberty, and a security as great as she could find with the King her Father. *If I believed (said he in this thought) that it was with her will, that the Princess had quitted us, either to render her self near her Father, or to flee from an enemy, whose repentance perhaps cannot find faith with her; instead of opposing my self to her retreat, I would favour it with all my power; and if the Convoy I should give her in person would be odious to her, I would send all my Army before her to facilitate her passage; but there is little appearance she should make use of dangerous ways, so long as ways of assurance stood open; or that she would flie those persons who adore her, whilst she might command them to conduct her into what place of the world she pleas'd to retire, to expose her self to the rencounter of an enemy more powerful without doubt than the Troops of her conductors. However it be, (added he some moments after) I must follow her, either to defend her from her enemies, if she be retir'd with her friends; or to deliver her from her Ravishers, if they have taken her by force.*

At this resolution he stopt, not giving time to plaints, nor so much as words, but uttering what his passion made him speak whilst he put on his Armour, and the rest mounted on horse-back by his order: but ill fortune so order'd it, that of five hundred Horse which he had kept in the City, he had sent three hundred the day before with *Geneband*, and there remained but two hundred with him; and as for the Infantry which were in the City, they were useles at this time; nor would it require less than three hours time to command a party of Cavalry from the place where the Army was encamp'd; which delay would have depriv'd him of all hope to have overtaken the Ravishers, who had already above two hours way before us: He therefore resolv'd to follow them with his little Company; and he had gone himself, without doubt, had he been alone in so pressing an occasion. He gave however order to *Gajaldus* to go and command some Cavalry from

the Camp to follow us with all diligence; and he hoped likewise that we might find *Genebaud*, since, according to the report made, he had taken the same road with those that had carried away the Princesses. I confess to you, that as at no time whatsoever he had been incens'd as at this; so at all others I never saw him such as he appeared to me this day: for in defiance of the natural sweetness which was predominant in all his person, he had something so fierce and so terrible in his eyes, and in all his actions, that his small Troop gather'd courage from him, and resolution to follow him without fear to the most terrible enterprises.

We, pursuing those who had got a great advantage of us, march'd with utmost diligence, though it concern'd us most not to kill our horses at the beginning of a course which might prove long; and having followed the trace of the Chariots and Horses as far as we could perceive it, at those places where we lost it, we instructed our selves as well as we could of such persons as we encounter'd in the way; among whom, we found many who gave us intelligence of what we sought. However, we should with difficulty have overtaken them; for by the uncertainty which we were often in which way to follow, we had given our enemies time to gain ground of us, if by chance at the passage out of a little wood we had not encounter'd *Adelard* with an hundred of those Horse which had parted the day before with *Genebaud*. We no sooner knew them, but the King having demanded of him news both of what we sought, and the rest of the company, he gave him an account of both; telling him, that the day before, they had march'd over a great part of the Country without any encounter; and that after having quarter'd all night in a Village, this morning Prince *Genebaud* having understood that several Troops were seen pass divers ways in the night-time, and believing it important to bring some news, chose rather to weaken himself by dividing his little party, than return to the City without doing what possible to inform himself: that to this effect he had commanded him to take six-score Horse, and return towards *Marobuda* in the same path they took, and endeavour to instruct himself as much as he could; and that the Prince in the head of the rest, had taken another way: that since that time he had heard nothing of *Genebaud*; but for himself, travelling about half an hours way from thence, he had met a body of about four hundred Horse, which guarded three Chariots; and that he which commanded them, having known him, had attack'd his with infinite fury, and by their inequality, constrain'd him to yield to their numbers, though his had fought with sufficient valour: that he had ten slain, and as many wounded; and that there had been perhaps a greater number, if the enemies had not testified a greater desire to retire, than pursue them: that he had rallied his own with as much swiftness as he could possibly, and now sought *Genebaud* to joyn with him, that he might be in a posture to sustain a second encounter.

Pharamond, to whom the valour of *Adelard* was well known, cheered him up with a great deal of kindness for his small disgrace; telling him that it was very ordinary that a great number should gain advantages over a small one; and that if he had any fault, it was by the too much courage which *Genebaud* and he had had in dividing themselves: and in the end, he commanded him to follow with his men, and to lead him to the place where he had fought.

Thus was our party strengthened with one hundred Horse; and with this number my Prince doubted not but to carry the victory from a number far greater than our enemies. *Adelard* could not inform him whether they were *Cimbrians* or *Burgundians*; but he only told him that in that little time he was with them, he saw not any whom he had known about *Gondioch*; as indeed it had been difficult for him to do, not having seen any face uncover'd, nor any Viser lifted up. The King was glad for the hopes he had to succour *Rosamond*, though in his mind he found much more disposition to grief than joy, not being able to defend himself from an apprehension which seem'd to threaten him with some fatal adventure.

We march'd under the conduct of *Adelard* to the valley, where we saw the signs of the conflict; and with the dead bodies of those which he had lost, we found many more of our enemies who were slain with them. From thence some time after, we marched through a wood, where the way being deep, we judged the Chariots had gone but heavily; and having employed about an hour to cross it, we were no sooner past it, but in a great and fair plain, which presented it self to our sight, we saw the Chariots of the Princesses, and the Cavalry which conducted them. This sight made *Pharamond* give evident signs of his joy to all about him; and turning towards us with an aspect in which there seem'd to shine something more than humane, *My friends*, (said he) 'tis here that you must fight for *Pharamond*, as hitherto you have fought for glory; and 'tis now that I demand

mand from a small number of valiant men a victory which is much more important than all those which our entire Armies have given. I hope that I shall do my endeavour with you, and that we shall overcome together, if fortune do not oppose us.

Speaking these words, he took a Lance, which would have bended any Arm but his with its weight; and charging his left Hand with his famous Shield, and pulling down the Viser of his Helmet, he march'd in the Head of us toward our Enemies. We had no great trouble to joyn with them; for they, stopping so soon as they had discovered us, soon after turn'd head, and advanc'd to receive us with a resolution parallel to ours. *Theobaldus*, inflam'd with anger, and spur'd forward by the hatred he bore my Prince, would not hearken to the counsel of *Briomer*, who, fearing a life much more dear to him than his own, and with reason dreading the valour of *Pharamond*, had pray'd him to retire with the Ladies and fifty Horse, whilst he with the rest, more strong in number than the Troop of his Enemies, offered to sustain the combat, and give him, if he could not overcome them, more than sufficient time to retire to some place yet under his obedience. *Rosamond* herself, believing that she could divert the combat by making known her Brother to the King of the *Franks*, had call'd him several times with great cries; and seeing that he could not understand her where she was, she descended from her Chariot to divert that misfortune she so much feared; and ran after him with all her force, endeavouring to stop him with her voyce: but she was got but few paces from the Chariot, when *Theobaldus* was too far distant to hear her, and spurring forward at the Head of his Troop, had, as well as we, crossed the whole space which separated us, and saw himself at the levelling of Lances, and the just distance of a career. He easily marked *Pharamond* in our Front, and *Pharamond* saw by many signs, maugre the anger which had incens'd him, and knew with joy that it was not *Gondioch*: and as he had not for his subject the consideration he still preserv'd for his person, he oppos'd himself without reluctance to him whom Fortune presented him; and levelling his Lance with a countenance so terrible, that I believe it could not at that moment bur chill with some little frost the boyling heat of the Prince of the *Cimbrians*, they parted both the one and the other with an equal fury; and as they were more advanced than their party, they encountred in the middle of their career before we could joyn. Their charge was such as might be expected from the valour and fury of two such Warriours; and the Lance of *Theobaldus* sliding from the Shield of my Prince, upon the Buckles of his Armour, found so much passage as to give him a large wound in his Shoulder: but the too well-tempered Steel of the cruel Lance of *Pharamond*, piercing the Armour of *Theobaldus*, as if it had been made of some tender matter, pass'd quite through the Shield, the Cuirass, and the Stomach of the unfortunate Prince, and appear'd almost entirely all bloody behind his Shoulders. The unhappy Prince tumb'd from his Horse with the Tronchion In his Body, rendring his last sighs in a River of blood: his vanquisher ignorant of his ill fortune, nor knowing yet if the blow of the Lance had proved so fatal, had drawn out his Sword, and had cast himself with an infinite fierceness against those who first oppos'd his fury; and opening a large passage in their thickest Squadrons, he was generously seconded by *Ibere*, *Meroveus*, *Adelard*, and many other valiant men who fought next him; and acted their parts with so much courage in imitation of their great Captain; that the *Cimbrians*, either unable to support so furious a tempest, or discourag'd and daunted by the fall of their Prince, began first to give ground, soon after were disorder'd, and in the end, entirely broken, scatter'd themselves confusedly through the Plain, and on all sides seeking their safety in the swiftness of their Horses heels.

The victorious King, in stead of pursuing them, turned towards the Chariots, whither his love with such violence drew him; and he turned so much the rather, being called by many loud and pitiful cries: his heart was as soon struck with them as his ear; and tumbling to Earth all he found to oppose his passage, he soon opened one large enough to approach that fatal place where the cries reached to Heaven: with what astonishment, or rather with what thunder was he struck when he saw? Ah! what sight? When he saw, I say, the Princess whom he ador'd, seated in blood, and amongst the dead; and holding in her lap the Head of her deplorable Brother, who gave up his Spirit in her Arms, and whose Visage she bedew'd with a torrent of Tears: they had taken off his Helmet, and on his open countenance might already behold pale death in its most terrible Figure: they would likewise have pull'd off his Cuirass, but the cruel Tronchion which had gone through his body, made it difficult; and when they drew it forth by violence, as they were forc'd to do, there issu'd from the wound a new River of blood which cover'd the whole body of the Prince, and depriving him of the rest of his force, left him scarce a moment of life.

Albisinda was seated on one side, and *Briomer*, the despairing *Briomer*, on the other. *Al-*

bisinda, according to her sweet inclinations, expressed her grief by her tears; but *Briomer* refounded his with cries full of fury, and words which denoted his despair: and the divine *Rosamond*, whose constancy was quite lost at so sad a spectacle, in the midst of a thousand sighs sending some plaints to Heaven, with her countenance bedeck'd with tears that fell on the dying body of her Brother, seem'd to receive into her bosome that death which she saw painted on his countenance: her Garments were in many places besmear'd with blood, and her Auburn Locks, which all her moderation could not deliver from some touches of her fair hands, by their disorder demonstrated that of her soul, and the violence of her grief. But neither grief nor disorder were capable to take any thing from her beauty; and maugre all that her affliction could present to our view, she seem'd to us yet more fair, than she was afflicted.

Theobaldus tended vitibly to his end; but his anger endured as long as his life: and putting himself to a great force to utter some words; *My Sister* (said he) *offer blood, and not tears to my Tomb; and revenge me, if it be possible, revenge me of that cruel one who hath triumph'd over my life, and that of Vindimir.* He could scarce speak these words, and the Princess, who perhaps in a more quiet condition would not have approv'd these violent motions, abandon'd her self at this time to all that grief which so dire an object could inspire her with; and receiving in her troubled soul that cruel impression her Brother aim'd to imprint; *Yes, my Brother* (said she) *I will revenge you, and I swear it before the immortal gods, that I will pursue to the last moment of my life the cruel murderer of my Brother.* It seem'd that the spirit of *Theobaldus* parting from his body, receiv'd some consolation from the promise of *Rosamond*; and he solicited her to it by a look at that very moment when life forsook him.

Pharamond arriv'd time enough to see him surrender up his life, and to understand his last words, and the cruel promise of *Rosamond*. Either the one or the other had been enough to let him know that it was the Brother of *Rosamond* he had slain, though the sight of his countenance, which he had often seen when he was his prisoner, had not confirm'd his knowledge of it: and in a moment wherein he believ'd to have paid a new service to the Princess, and possibly finish'd his pardon for all past faults, he found that by a dire effect of his misfortunes he had, and that before her own eyes, slain her Brother. This cruel knowledge of a misfortune so little foreseen, and the deplorable object which presented it self to his eyes, as well in the person of the dying *Theobaldus*, as in that of the afflicted *Rosamond*, struck him at the same time with so great an astonishment, and so cruel a grief, that scarce with all the force of his courage could he retain any life in his body; and having at this fatal sight pierc'd the Heavens with a doleful cry, he swooned in his Saddle, and was about to fall over his Crouper, if Prince *Ibere*, and my self, who were the nearest to him, perceiving him to fail, had not spur'd our Horses forward, and lent him our Arms on each side to support him. I lifted up at the same time the Viser of his Helmet to give him Air, and I perceiv'd that he had not yet entirely lost his senses and knowledge, but that he had his soul troubl'd in such manner that he could scarce feel or know any thing.

Whilst we thus supported him with our Arms, and that in this languishing posture, he cast his eyes on *Rosamond*; the Princess, notwithstanding the sad employment in which she was busied at the cry which he made, turning her head towards his side, saw him and knew him: this sight added so cruel a redoublement to her grief, that she could scarce support it without falling into the same condition with her Brother; and that without doubt had happen'd, if this passion alone had possess'd her soul some moments longer: but anger joyned it self to grief, even at the same instant restored her that strength which had abandon'd her, and rendred her no less formidable to the astonish'd Prince, than she seem'd disconsolate to him: her eyes were inflam'd with a fire mix'd with tears, and her Anger causing them to cast forth sparkles more lively than ordinary, carri'd both their Lightnings and their Thunderbolts at the same time into the bosome of my Prince. He could scarcely support her Looks, when her Words struck him with a blow far more terrible; and the Princess causing that displeasure to resound, that she could not retain upon so dire an accident: *And how, Barbarian* (said she) *dost thou come to shew thy self to me cover'd with the blood of my Brother? Or art thou not satisfied to have slain him before my eyes, if thou seest him not die in my Arms? Com'st thou in my Bosom to seek that remnant of his life which thy cruel hand may have left him? Or dost thou believe, that without that addition which thy detested sight may bring, there is not enough grief in the soul of two Princesses, whose Brothers and Spouses thou hast slain?* The violence of the passion which turmoyl'd her, cut off her Discourse at these first words: and the Prince not finding any thing in all his courage to justify himself, though his innocency might well have furnish'd him; remain'd mute and immovable

immoveable between our Arms, rousing his eyes on that deplorable object, and contriving in his mind nothing but dire resolutions.

But whilst *Rosamond* shed tears, and *Albifinda* accompani'd them with hers, either out of the true grief she had for the death of a Prince who ought to have been her Spouse, or out of the part she took in that of *Rosamond*; *Briomer* echo'd forth his despair in Lamentations and Actions full of Fury; and having done things more agreeable to the grief of a Father, and of a most passionate Father, than that of an affectionate Governour, and expressed the trouble of his Soul in a manner unreasonable; so soon as he saw and knew my Prince, excited by the passion which transported him, rising from near the body of *Theobaldus*, he ran towards *Pharamond* with his sword in his hand, resolving to sheath it in his body. *Thou shalt die* (cried he, approaching him) *or thou shalt send me to the infernal shades with my dear Theobaldus.* Speaking these words, he was very near to my Prince; to have executed his design; and he had done it without doubt, for the little care the King took to prevent him, and the little heed which *Ibere* and I had to his behaviour, if *Meroveus*, who had better mark'd it, had not spur'd his Horse before him, and by the shock tumbl'd him to the Earth. The King who perceiv'd it, testified his displeasure; and looking upon *Meroveus* with some marks of discontent; *Ab Meroveus* (said he) *wherefore do you oppose so just a displeasure? Or take care of a life so deplorable?* These words saved *Briomer* from a farther displeasure; not but that *Meroveus* made his sword be taken away, and kept himself in a posture to hinder him, if he should have persever'd in his design.

The Prince having thus begun to open his mouth to speak to *Meroveus*, sought words for the Princess; but finding none to express his grief: *You see* (in the end, said he, with a voice betraying his want of confidence) *you see, Madam, whether it be my intention, or my fortune which causeth my greatest crimes; and you cannot possibly doubt but that at this fatal time I had a design to serve you, and none at all to offend you; but it is not my fortune to find my justification: for a man hated by Heaven, as I am, can never be innocent. Arm your self then for that vengeance which you have promised to the Prince your Brother, and bring a thousand deaths to the heart of this Offender, by all those most cruel punishments your most just anger can inspire you with; they shall be much sweeter to me than your hatred: for nothing can be so cruel to Pharamond, as the unhappiness to be still odious to you.* Yes, cruel one (answered the Princess, turning again her head towards him) *I will arm for the vengeance I have promised, and which I owe to the blood of my Brother; but it shall not be only the Sueves and Bohemians which shall demand of thee the lives of their Princes, I will arm with them all that the World hath of valiant men and haters of Villainy: and since that by my misfortune, and thy cruelty, I see my self engaged in an Enterprize little conformable to my Sex, and perhaps less conformable to my inclinations; I will call gods and men to my assistance, and cover thy Country with a World of merciless Enemies, and with a thousand Swords snatch away that life which thou didst receive from Heaven only for my torment and thy misery.* Ah (cri'd my Prince) *if it be this life that can satisfy you, that satisfaction will be easily given you; and you will arm unprofitably so many thousand of men against me, since from my own sword you may receive what perhaps you might in vain attempt by so many others.*

Speaking these words, he laid his hand upon the hilt of his sword, which I had put up in its sheath, and drawing it, turned it against his own bosom, when I cast my self down before him, and at the same time *Ibere*, and many others seized on his Arm to divert his cruel resolution; but we had with difficulty done it, if *Rosamond*, eager as she was for his ruine; had not her self, by what motive I know not, opposed it. *'Tis not to thy self* (said she, with a demeanour which seem'd enlivened with some interest for his safety) *that I would owe a revenge to which I am oblig'd; nor canst thou redouble the hatred I have for thee by a more cruel offence, than it will be to deprive me of the glory I hope for. Go, miserable man, since it is to thy misfortune that thou wouldst I should attribute thy crimes; and if thou beest sensible of any grief, deplore that cruel necessity to which thou hast reduc'd me; but know, that as I ought to assail thy life to acquit my promise, and my duty, it is thy duty to defend it, to let me have the glory of depriving thee of it; and if thou hast abandon'd it to this grief, whether true or feigned, which thou testifiest, I shall perhaps more difficultly pardon this fault than all the others thou hast committed against me.*

Finishing these words, she made a sign with her hand for him to retire; and turning her head on the other side, testified that she could no longer suffer his presence. *Pharamond* remain'd for some time in the place where he was, overwhelm'd with an Abyss of Grief, which his whole courage was not able to support: and a little after with some sighs taking leave of the Princess, he turned the head of his Horse, and spurring him to a full speed, fled from the Object he ador'd with a swiftness wholly prodigious, and threw him-

self into the Wood which we had pass'd, without regarding whether he was follow'd by his own, or thinking into what place he retir'd.

But, my Lord (continued *Cleomer*) I consider not at all that I do insensibly abuse your patience and attention; and besides that the King my Master may have some impatience again to see you, it is now so late, that it is necessary you give some time to Supper, and the rest of the Night to your repose. Doubt not at all (said *Constance*) but I have a great desire to see the King, especially after so many admirable things which you have recounted of him; but he shall pardon me, if for himself I cannot break that attention you have given me to the Story of his Adventures, and particularly in a time when I can hardly give you a moment of release. At these words, he sent *Valerius* to intreat *Pharamond* to pardon him, if he could pass the Night without seeing him, and give him leave to dedicate it entirely to the rest of his History, rather than suffer a discontinuation; and in the end, having suffered Supper to be served, and causing *Cleomer*, whose merit and quality he knew, to accompany him, he took a light repast; which was no sooner finish'd, but having made some excuses to *Cleomer* for the trouble he gave him in so long a recital, he desir'd him to continue, and heard him begin again in this manner.

The end of the Second Book of the Second Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK III.

AS the Adventures of *Pharamond*, and of *Rosamond*, form but the same History; it seems to me that I ought not to divide the recital, and principally in those most important things which are come to our knowledge: And for this reason, My Lord, I will tell you, That after *Pharamond* had in that manner remov'd himself from us by a precipitate flight, and we had follow'd towards the Wood which we saw him take; The desolate Princess of the *Cimbrians*, and the afflicted *Albinda*, remain'd in that fatal Field, where amongst the blood and dead bodies, the unfortunate *Theobaldus* had lost his life. And in the same place they yet dedicated some time to their tears; for the Soul of *Rosamond* was so overwhelm'd with a pressing grief, that it permitted her to take no resolution, nor to depart from the dead body of her deplorable Brother: but in the end, she was forc'd to hearken to reason, and to the prayers of the persons who attended her, who could not longer suffer her to remain in a place, and in so mournful an employment: and the comfortless *Briomer* having caus'd the Corps of *Theobaldus* to be taken up, and plac'd in one of the Chariots which had carried the bodies of the Princesses, seated himself by it, not being able to forsake it upon any consideration, whilst the two Princesses being with the Ladies mounted in the other two, they were about to take the way towards *Egitina*, whither *Briomer* intended to conduct them, when they saw appear a great Body of Cavalry which advanc'd towards them with too swift a career.

They remain'd some time without power to discern whether they were Friends or Enemies, though they had more reason to fear the one, than hope the other, seeing them come from a part where the *Cimbrians* had no Parties; and in the end, when they were at a distance which permitted them to observe them more distinctly, many which were about the Princesses

Princess knew them for *Burgundians*; and soon after they discerned the famous Ensign of *Gondioch*, which made them know that he was in that Party. This advice which they gave to *Rosamond*, begat a new trouble in her mind, though there was already sufficient there to leave her little liberty to observe what she did; which made her, without perceiving that the Princess of the *Sueves* was not in the Chariot where she saw some Ladies about her, to command it to march after *Briomer*, who was already departed with the Corps of *Theobaldus*. The Chariot had not moved far by her order, but the Ladies advertised her that *Albifinda* was not with her: but they told her in the same time, that seeing her Chariot depart, she was got into the other that followed with the rest of the Ladies; and soon after, seeing it advance near hers, they chose rather to march to separated, and stay a more convenient time to come together, than stop and attend their Enemies.

But they had gone but a little farther, when they saw him come up; and *Rosamond* knew *Gondioch* at the head of his, who having lifted up the Viser of his Helmet, aborded her Chariot, and saluted her with an infinite respect. The Prince *Condegar* his Brother was next to him, and made himself easily be taken notice of by his noble carriage, and by the beauty of his Arms. *Gondioch* had understood by the *Cimbrians*, whom he found flying through the Plain, the defeat of their Party, and the deplorable death of their Prince by the hand of the King of the *Franks*; and in this accident so cruel to all other persons, he found matter of great joy, for the misfortune of his dreaded Rival, whom he saw by his miserable Adventure, depriv'd of all the hopes he had conceiv'd. It was with this advantage which Fortune had given him, that he approach'd *Rosamond* with more assurance; and seeing her countenance cover'd with tears, *I praise the Gods, Madam, (said he) as much as it is permitted me in the deplorable estate in which I see you, not only that I have not contributed to that misfortune which makes you distil those tears, but that I come the first of all men to offer you my hand and my life for the revenge you owe to the Prince your Brother, and to protest to you that I will less make war with Pharamond, as against my Rival, than I will against the murderer of Theobaldus. Though I may seem weakened with the loss of one Battel, the event of which, Fortune, rather than Valour, decided; yet I am not wholly ruined, but have still the entire Forces of a potent Realm, ready to wait on your displeasure, and that of the King your Father. I will muster together a power which shall not be despisable; and when this Pharamond, this lover, as cruel as he is a friend unfaithful, together with the Cimbrians and the Sueves, shall have the Burgundians to combat with, that Fortune which hath hitherto been the Author of his so great advantages, may possibly change, and he with difficulty find amongst men the least refuge from so great enemies.*

To this effect spoke *Gondioch*; and perhaps his passion had made him speak more, when *Rosamond* gently turning her eyes towards him, and beholding him with a behaviour which might make him judge how little she was sensible of his offers; *Though you have not slain my Brother (said she) you know well that since the death of Vindimir, I have felt nothing of misery, with which I ought not to accuse you, and at present you are bound by so great obligations to the murderer of my Brother, that I cannot but be suspicious of all the offers you make me. Let it not then disgust you; if I employ both other forces and other hands than yours, in that I owe to the blood of my Brother: and in requital of that diligence I take to preserve your reputation in refusing an assistance from you which would make you pass among men for ingrateful, I only demand of you the freedom to lament my own misfortunes.*

This reply of *Rosamonds* surpris'd the *Burgundian* King, and the confusion it gave him, render'd him for some moments astonish'd; but soon after, dispelling that with a passion which made him insensible of all things but it self, *If I have contributed (said he) to a part of your injuries, you can accuse nothing but a passion which may demand a pardon for greater crimes; and for those obligations I have had to the King of the Franks (though the reproach would have been less displeasing, and perhaps more just from any other mouth than yours) you know, Madam, that by his infidelity I am dissens'd with them, and that without fearing to pass as ingrateful among men, I can pursue him unto death as the greatest of my enemies. If it be so, (replied the Princess very briskly) Pharamond is not so far distant from you, but that the same day you may satisfy the disgust you have against him. I should satisfy it without doubt (answered *Gondioch*) and should run with infinite joy to the opportunity you offer me, if I could forsake you; but as the opportunities to serve you are more precious to me than all others, you shall permit me to accompany you to an assured retreat. If you no longer continue to make war against us (replied the Princess) we have no more enemies in this Country; and then with the persons which yet remain with us, we can retire to some place of the King my Father, without any necessity of your conduct. You may think it*
good,

good, if you please (added the *Burgundian*) that I depart not from you, and that I tell you, that you cannot be so assured with the King your Father, as with a Prince that adores you, and cannot without death desert you. I see well (said the Princess very fiercely) what will be our condition : and no sooner did I see you, but I did not at all doubt we were prisoners. But let us go (continued she with a noble and becoming constancy) whither our Fortune will please to lead us. The Gods, who have once delivered us from your hands, may still yield us the same succours, and leave you nothing of your unworthy proceeding, but shame and confusion. Speaking these words, she arm'd her self with a resolution worthy of her great courage ; and turning her head on the other side, spoke no more to *Gondioch*, nor design'd longer to look upon him, though he march'd by the side of her Chariot.

In the mean time, Prince *Gondemar* his Brother, having beheld the Princess of the *Cimbrians* with that astonishment which her admirable beauty gave the whole world, and had excus'd by this sight the actions of the King his Brother, which perhaps he before condemn'd ; having understood that the Princess of the *Sueves* was in another Chariot, willing to render her what he believ'd due to her degree, and what he had heard publish'd of her merit and beauty, he approach'd to her, and saluted her with a becoming submission ; and the charming *Albisinda*, who had at the same time learn'd his name and quality, receiv'd his civility with no less sweetness. *Gondemar* beheld her with an infinite curiosity : and if the beauty of *Rosamond* had dazled and astonish'd him, that of *Albisinda* touch'd him with strange and tender motions, and made him already begin to feel something extraordinary. The more he beheld her, the more he perceiv'd some alteration in his soul ; and he knew in the end that he became, and possibly that he was already become enamour'd of that fair Princess. Yet the greatness of his courage permitted not this knowledge to astonish him ; and as the sweetness which appear'd on the countenance of *Albisinda* attracted rather than dishearten'd, he permitted himself to be seduc'd by a charm which might without doubt produce a more grand effect. He had by his first discourse testified to the Princess the share he took in the grief which appear'd on her visage ; and he was about to open his mouth possibly to speak to her according to those motions which his growing passion could inspire him with, when he was disturbed by the confused voices of the men of their party : and turning his head at the noise they made, he with them beheld appear and advance at a great trot a great body of Cavalry, whose Forces seem'd little different from theirs. The more they approached, the more they made doubtful the minds of the *Burgundians* : and when they were so near as to give place to some discernment, *Gondioch* himself knew the first by many marks to be *Franks*. To speak the truth, it was indifferent to him to encounter *Franks* or *Cimbrians*, since both the one and the other were equally his enemies ; but he would much rather have chosen to have seen the Princess whom he loved, in the power of the King her Father, than in *Pbaramond's*. He feared not at all the Combat, nor could he be reproach'd for default of courage ; but at this time it was with infinite grief that he saw his enemies appear, judging well that he could not fight them without hazarding the loss of his fair prize : and as his love stopt his eyes to all other considerations, addressing himself to the Prince his Brother, who was near to him, and speaking to him very low, not to be understood by the Princesses, My Brother (said he) it is to day that I would owe all my Fortunes to your friendship and your valour ; and as I cannot believe you will judge ill of my courage to see me stie the Combat upon an occasion that concerns the whole repose of my life, I pray you to sustain with all our party that of our enemies which you see approach us, whilst I with ten or twelve Cavaliers only, lead away the Princess to that place where I have resolv'd to conduct her. I desire no greater number of our men, that I may not too much weaken you ; nor should any passion or interest perswade me to leave you, if I saw you not in a condition to gain the victory.

In this manner spoke *Gondioch* ; and *Gondemar*, seeing that he had no time to spare to execute the will of his Brother, amus'd not himself to answer him, but putting himself in the head of his Troops, he placed them between the Chariots, and the enemies which advanc'd towards him ; and so covering his Brother and the Princesses, he gave *Gondioch* the liberty which he desired, to retire with that Chariot in which only *Rosamond* was, which he caus'd to be encompassed by ten Cavaliers, marching on the side of the Princess, whilst one of his guided the Chariot that way he resolv'd to take, whom he made to drive with all possible speed and diligence : that of *Albisinda*, to which he did not use the same violence, stirr'd not from its place ; and as this Princess, and the persons who were about her, could not but expect either from the *Cimbrians* or *Franks*, much better conditions than they could hope from the *Burgundians*, they attended the success of the Combat, with some thoughts of liberty.

'Twas in few moments that the *Burgundians* and *Franks* drew near to each other; nor was *Gondioch* so far distant, but that he might easily have seen the beginning of the Combat, if both his eyes and thoughts so absolutely fixed upon *Rosamond*, would have permitted him to turn his head that way. But, my Lord, before I make you the recital of the fight, I must tell you, that it was by the Kings order sent by *Gastaldus* to the Camp; that a part of the Cavalry were mounted on Horseback, to come and joyn with him; and Prince *Marcomire*, more diligent than the others, and more zealous for the interest of the King his Brother, parted thence first with six hundred Horse, and had followed the tracks of *Pharamond*, with a swiftness which permitted not the rest to overtake him. The knowledge he had, that the King his Brother followed after the Princesses, who were led away in the Chariots, made him that he no sooner saw the Chariots and the Troops which encircled them whom he took for their Ravishers, but he doubted not at all, that these were they against whom he was to fight.

With this resolution, having for some few moments stopt his Party, and with some few words represented unto them the necessity which invoked their utmost valour; he marched in the head of them, with a countenance and presence so gallant and courageous, as could make him be supposed no other than the Brother of *Pharamond*. The number was equal or little different betwixt the two Troops: The courage of their two Chieftains alike, and the Combatants on each side advanc'd with an equal vigour. The two Princes having run against each other, with an unspeakable fury, shivered their Lances to the very handles, without moving in their Saddles: but in the first encounter, the earth was seen covered with great numbers of dead, wounded and dismounted persons of each party; and many Horses having lost their Riders, ran with an uncontroul'd liberty; through the Plain. After the trial of Lances, the Swords began to glister; and between these two parties was maintain'd so bloody a contest, that in a short time, the number of the dead surpass'd the living: The two brave Captains, by the effects of a prodigious valour, endeavour'd to force a victory for their party; and in truth, they carried it into whatever parts they applyed themselves: many times they assaulted each other with a heat and valour little different, and as many times had they been separated by their own, or constrai'd to lend their assistance in other places where their courage still open'd them a passage. In sum, the slaughter was so great, by the obstinacies of the combatants, that both of *Franks* and *Burgundians* there remained but a small number of men, who though covered with wounds, resolutely disputed the victory, and seem'd yet resolute to dispute it to the last drop of their blood. The two Princes sigh'd at the same time, to see those men whom they esteem'd dear, fall on every side of them; and *Marcomire* being touched with compassion, once more approaching *Gondemar* with his Sword in his hand, made a sign to him, that he would speak to him. The *Burgundian* having observ'd him, stopt to know his intention; and the Prince of the *Franks* approaching to him with his Viler half lifted up, *There is already too much blood shed* (said he) *for a particular quarrel: and if thou beest so valiant as thou seemest, and so reasonable as thou art valiant, thou wilt not refuse either to spare the rest of the blood and lives, which remain to other men, by a combat of thy person and mine, or to restore that liberty to the Princesses, which thou hast deprived them of. If it be the Princess of the Cimbrians thou demandest* (replied *Gondemar*) *she is not in our power; and for the Princess of the Sueves, whom thou mayst see in that Chariot, I will fight against thee and against the whole world, rather than lose her.*

'Twas cause of no small discontent to *Marcomire*, to understand that it was not the liberty of *Rosamond* he could hope for from the success of the Combat: however, his true generosity perswaded him not to repent what he had done for the service of *Albifinda*, though it little concerned that of the King his Brother; and beholding fiercely the *Burgundian* Prince; *The Princess of the Cimbrians* (said he) *will possibly find a defender more worthy than my self: but since the gods have conducted me to the succour of the Princess of the Suevians, I will as well fight thee for her, as I would have done for both; and will lose my life, or give her liberty.*

Whilst the two Princes spake in this manner, they rais'd their voices to such a height, and were so near the Chariot of *Albifinda*, that she could easily understand their discourse; and by the knowledge she had of their intentions, she knew for whom she ought to make her vows, and the difference she ought to put between her Ravisher and Defender. And therefore beholding them with an equal distinction, and having cast her eyes on the visage of *Marcomire*, which appeared in part under his Viler, and observ'd those beauties, which in a Sex like ours deservedly might attract admiration, she soon perceiv'd him cover that part of his face to renew the Combat, and the two Warriours (having with a furious

furious voice commanded their men to be only Spectators) run one against the other with a far greater rage than had incensed them at the beginning of the fight. They made themselves to be observ'd by the Princess, and the other Spectators, by those terrible blows they gave; and as they were both valiant in the highest degree, they gave all that beheld the fight reasons to admire it, as the most fierce and furious Combat that ever was made between two men. I shall not weary you, my Lord, with the particulars (having but too much to recount you of the life of my Master) it shall suffice that you understand, that they were already covered with that blood, which in streams gush'd from their almost numberless wounds, when their Horses weaker than their Masters, and wearied with too great travel, tumbled at the same time under them, and oblig'd them to continue a Combat on foot, in which they drew forth almost all their blood; and in the end, reduc'd each other to an estate neither longer to fight nor to sustain themselves. *Gondemar* having stagger'd for a small time, at length rudely fell upon the Grass, turning by the blood that issu'd from his wounds that verdure to a vermilian hue; and the Brother of *Pharamond* employing all his forces to keep himself up, endeavour'd with infinite pain to reach the Chariot of *Albisinda*: before he could come near, his Helmet, the Buckles of which were broken, fell from his Head; and that fair Visage which the Princess had before but in part seen, now became her entire Object. The beauty of *Marcomire*, admirable in a degree remarkable in persons of our Sex, seem'd somewhat to amaze *Albisinda*: and as she had still in the Combat took notice of the person that fought in her quarrel, and whose victory and safety her apprehension of so great an obligation made her think it her duty to desire; so the sight of so beautiful a Defender, added something which particularly augmented her concern for him, and made her behold with some grief his staggering steps, and the blood which from many wounds spouted out between his gaping Armour: at length he approach'd the Chariot, on which he lean'd one hand to support himself; and looking upon the Princess with those eyes which his many wounds had enfeebld; *Madam*, (said he) *I believe that you are free, and I come to offer that which remains of my life, to that which rests to complete your service.* He had scarce strength to utter these words; but soon after his sight was cover'd with darkness, and his strength forsaking him, he remain'd senseless in the Arms of two of his men, who came to sustain him.

The charming *Albisinda* could not see the fair *Marcomire*, in this condition, without being sensibly touch'd with compassion; nor could she rejoyce at that liberty she thought she should buy at the rate of the life of so extraordinary a person. She learnt his Name from his Attendants; and this knowledge doubly surpriz'd her with a violent grief, to see a Prince whose dignity accompani'd both the valour and the charms of his person, reduc'd to the extremity of his life for her defence: yet could she not know him to be Brother to the Murderer of *Vindimir* and *Theobaldus*, without finding in that knowledge a cruel subject of extraordinary grief. Not but that she well knew *Marcomire* to be innocent of the misfortunes of her Brother, or that he seem'd less worthy of her compassion, and possibly of some more obliging thought for being the Brother of *Pharamond*; but she was not ignorant of the humour of the King her Father, fearing all things from his severity, if she should pay all she believed due to her generous Defender. However, this fear was not sufficient to restrain her; but yielding rather to her pity and to her acknowledgments, than to any other considerations, she caus'd the bleeding Prince to be laid in her Chariot, believing he might better so, than in any other manner, find those helps his condition did require. Those that remained of the *Franks*, follow'd their Prince, and the Chariot which carried him, towards *Egitiaz*, whither the Attendants of the Princess conducted her: and the *Burgundians* taking up their Prince, departed another way, without opposing or hindring their retreat.

In the mean time, the King of the *Burgundians* led away the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, making the Chariot march with all possible diligence. In a little time, he had pass'd several furlongs from the place where he had left his Brother engaged in a Combat, crossing all that Plain without finding any obstacle to stay him. The courageous *Rosamond* supported this last disgrace with a countenance worthy the greatness of her Soul; and in stead of breaking forth, or permitting her self to be transported to a passion against her unworthy Ravisher, she was contented to testify to him her displeasure, by her silence, and by her disdain: and to make him judge that the grief he might possibly cause by his violence, had no part in those sighs and those tears which she dedicated to the death of *Theobaldus*; as often as he opened his mouth, either to comfort her displeasures, or to execute his own procedure, she turned her head on the other side, not deigning to answer him a word: and more sensibly did she afflict him by this manner of behaviour toward him, than she could have done by complaints and reproaches.

From

From the Plain they descended into a fair Valley, and had for some time kept along the Banks of a small Stream, which murmur'd along a pleasing Meadow, when they spied coming directly towards them a Knight follow'd by eight or ten Horsemen, who march'd some paces behind him, and seem'd to be of his Train: His Squires bore after him his Shield, his Lance, and his Helmet, and his Visage being uncover'd, those who nearest saw him, judg'd that few men in the World were adorn'd with so Noble a Gesture, Majesty and Grace in all his person: all the Features of his Countenance were proportionably compos'd; his Eyes lively and sparkling, his Hair black, long, and flowing in fair and beautiful curls; his Stature large, straight, and the fairest in the World; or to praise him truly, little or nothing different from that of the King my Master. He was mounted on a most stately Steed, and his Arms were beyond measure rich and magnificent.

His silent march gave *Gondioch* and his the more time to observe him: and when he came near the Chariot, he permitted it to pass without moving from his place; and saluted the Ladies, whom he confusedly beheld, with infinite civility: *Gondioch* and his men had not separated themselves at all from the Chariot, but an hundred paces behind it follow'd two Officers of the Princess, who would not forsake her; and whom *Gondioch's* fear to incense the Princess had forbid him to draw away. When the unknown Knight pass'd by them, he stay'd them to inform his curiosity, and pray'd them with a becoming civility, to tell him what those Ladies were he had seen pass by in the Chariot: but scarce had he opened his mouth to ask them, when one of the men hastily breaking silence; *It is the Princess of the Cimbrians* (said he) *and the only Daughter of our great King, whom an unjust Ravisher hath surpriz'd, and thus leads away by violence.* The unknown Knight seem'd touch'd at these words; and addressing himself to him that spoke them, *Do you speak the truth?* (said he, with a countenance full of fierceness.) *Yes, my Lord,* (added the Companion of him who had before spoke) *and if you at all doubt it, you may easily clear your self.* He had scarce ended these words, but the Unknown covering his Head with his Helmet, and making sign to his own to follow him, return'd on a full gallop towards the Chariot, which he easily overtook. *Gondioch* perceiving his return, and doubting possibly his intention, stopp'd the Chariot and all those that convoyed it; and presenting himself at his approach, before he could come near the Chariot, fiercely demanded of him what he desired. *I would understand* (repli'd the Unknown Knight, with a boldness not inferiour to his) *if these Ladies which thou leade'st away, do willingly follow thee? And what concerns it thee to inform thy self?* (replied *Gondioch* infinitely enrag'd.) *I have* (answered the Unknown Knight) *that of service and interest which we owe to the Sex: and if it be by force that thou leade'st them away, thou shalt hardly accomplish thy design, though assisted by far greater Forces.*

He had scarce spoke these words, when the Ladies which were about the Princess, by their cries and confused words confirm'd him in the truth of their Adventure, and at the same time demanded his assistance. This solicitation was little necessary for a man, whose vertue and courage were sufficient spurs to incite him to so generous an action; therefore taking his Lance and his Shield from the hands of his Squires, he made *Gondioch* know, that before he led away the Princess, he must with his Sword open his passage. This obstacle begat a furious rage in the *Burgundian's* breast; and beholding his Enemy with eyes sparkling with anger, *Thou wilt repent thy self* (said he) *of thy presumptuous undertaking: for with thy life shalt thou satisfy the displeasure which thou make'st me sensible of.* *I have seen* (replied the Unknown Knight with a look full of disdain) *as terrible as thy self who could not affright me; and in the condition in which I encounter thee, I can difficultly believe thee to be a valiant man.*

These words were not necessary to incense *Gondioch*, whose choler was rais'd to the highest pitch; but believing that he should have need of his men to guard the Chariot, and fearing if he should call them to fight with him against those of the Unknown Knight, the Princess might in the mean time escape, he sought a remedy for that danger: and looking on his Enemy with a most assured confidence; *To take from thee all doubt* (said he) *of my valour, I desire that thou mayest without any hinderance prove it: and though seldom men like my self commit themselves to the like proofs, and that considering the glory I give thee opportunity to acquire, I can hope for little; if thou wilt that our men be Spectators of our Combat, we will end our difference in thy person and mine. I am pleas'd with what thou desire'st* (repli'd the Unknown Knight) *so that the Chariot depart not from us; and I will tell thee more, that if Fortune give thee the Victory in our Combat, thou wilt perhaps lose nothing of the glory thou hast acquir'd.*

Finishing these words, they commanded their men not to move from their places; and turning the heads of their Horses, they took from each other the distance of a just carrier,

and soon after parting, they ran together with a marvellous strength and agility. Their shock was truly terrible, and their Lances flew in a thousand splinters while they sat unmov'd in their Saddles. At the same time they put their Hands to their Swords, and turning with an equal courage, charg'd so furiously, and dealt such furious strokes, as could not but be the effect of an admirable and extraordinary force and valour. The Combat remain'd a long time equal; for the most feeble of these two Champions were perhaps able to have for some time withheld and stopp'd the glory of the most valiant in the World. Many times did their Spectators balance their judgment of the event of the Combat, and as often they believed it could not be ended but by the death of both the Combatants: but in the end (for I hope you will be pleas'd, my Lord, that I pass over particulars of the least importance) some difference might be not'd between the Forces of *Gondioch* and his Enemy; and that *Gondioch*, famous by so many celebrated Victories, began to faint by reason of the many wounds he had received; and found with an infinite grief, that those of his Enemies, though very great, did not cause the same effect in him. He despair'd not however of Victory, but seeking it in the greatest danger, threw himself more than ever under the force of his Enemy; and in requital of the blows he received from him, made his Armour blush with those streams of blood which issued from the open'd passages.

Yet the unknown Knight seem'd incens'd, rather than weakn'd, and pressing *Gondioch* with more fury than he had hitherto done, he threw upon him a tempest of such terrible blows, that in fine, his Forces were constrain'd to yield and bend under them; and he after having some time reel'd in his Saddle, to fall without sense to the Earth, staying in several places with his blood the verdant Grass; His Vanquisher seem'd to behold his fall with some compassion, when the *Burgundians*, in whose Souls he had equally incited a fury and despair, ran upon him with great cries, and forgetting the command of a Master, who was no longer in a condition to be obey'd, endeavour'd with all their might to revenge themselves upon his Enemy: but the Unknown flew among them with so extraordinary and prodigious a valour, that before his men could come to his assistance, he had with his two first blows given a deserv'd death to the two most hardy; and made the rest judge, that without the assistance of his own men, he could carry the victory from them all: he had likewise tumbld down some others, and they had all without doubt been slain, had not the valiant Unknown person taken diligent care for their safety, by commanding his men to retire, and ordaining those which remain'd of the vanquish'd to take up their Master, and afford him those helps he was yet capable to receive.

After this Action he approach'd the Chariot, and having before understood the name and quality of the Princess, he alighted to accost her with more respect. *Rosamond*, who now beheld his Noble Carriage with as much astonishment, as in the Combat she had admir'd his valour, and who by the success of it was bound to him for her liberty, to receive him with more civility, lifted up her Veil, which till then had covered her Face, and discover'd that prodigious beauty, whose first brightness mortal eyes are hardly able to support. This valiant unknown Knight was not only astonish'd at it, but seem'd struck in that manner, that he appear'd like one almost bereav'd of sense and knowledge; and remain'd at this sight, on which all his senses were fix'd, immoveable, mute, and amaz'd in such manner, that he had not the assurance to open his mouth to speak, or scarce the force to sustain that resplendent light which dazld him. As this was not the first effect of this nature that the beauty of *Rosamond* had produc'd, she seem'd not at all surpris'd at his behaviour; however dissembling the suspicion she had of the truth, and supplying the trouble which she observ'd he had in his countenance by the assistance she gave him, she feign'd to attribute it to other causes than to that which she ought to have accus'd; and having in few words, but with an infinite sweetness, return'd him thanks for the assistance he had given her, she demanded of him with a manifest disturbance and compassion if he were not wounded.

The time which she took to speak, was sufficient for the Unknown Knight to recover himself; and at the length with great difficulty finding words to answer her, *Yes, Madam* (said he) *I feel that I am wounded, nor can it be easie in such encounters as these to escape without wounds; but those which I have receiv'd, shall not hinder me to finish what rests for me to do in your service, and to accompany you to whatever place you resolve to retire. As I owe you my liberty* (answered the Princess) *I would not refuse your company, if in the condition in which you are, I could accept it without exposing you to some danger; but however it be, I believe that to afford you fitting remedy for your wounds, there is a retreat nearer than that we have design'd to be if possible conducted to.*

The brave unknown Knight sigh'd at this Discourse, without returning answer, and made her Judge by his silence and action, he felt more than he could express; and in the mean time

time the Princess calling to her one of those Officers which followed her, demanded of him how far it was to *Egitina*, and understood from him that she might be there in two hours. The day was already so far spent that the Princess could not hope to get thither by day-light, besides that she had spent all that day, and a day full of so many cruel accidents, without taking any nourishment: but there was no nearer place of retreat under the obedience of the King her Father, and the Country being so well known to her men; that they could conduct her through by ways, she resolv'd to march to *Egitina* without farther delay, and to commit her self, since she was reduc'd to a necessity to do it, to the conduct of a person of whom she had conceiv'd a marvellous good opinion, and whose generous proceedings could not beget in her the least mistrust. In these thoughts addressing her speech to him, *I am constrain'd* (said she) *to accept that company you offer me; and to lead you farther than perhaps your wounds will permit you to go without inconvenience: but we have no place nearer where we can give you that assistance we owe you; and I hope in that you will receive some marks of the acknowledgments of the King my Father: But* (added she) *will you not permit me to demand to whom I am engag'd for my liberty, and excuse the desire I have to know a person in whom I see all the signs of a true Grandeur? Hitherto* (replyed the unknown Knight) *I have made my self little known in those places I have pass'd in that condition you now see me; but now, since my condition hath received a change which it owed perhaps to the conduct of my life, there is no reason but I should submit to the obedience I owe you; and therefore since you command it, I will tell you that I am Son to the King of the Huns, and my name is Balamir.*

That name of *Balamir*, (though he that bore it was not much more aged than the King my Master) was already in such manner blazon'd through the world by many effects of an admirable valour, that the Princess of the *Cimbrians* could not hear it pronounc'd without paying him that respect due, and shewing her self glad to be oblig'd for so great a service to a Prince of that high birth, and whose great reputation accompanied so worthily all those advantages she had mark'd in his person: she permitted her eyes to run over him more accurately than her grief had till then suffer'd her's; and again addressing her self to him with a behaviour full of sweetness and majesty, *This name of Balamir,* (said she) *is so famous throughout all the world, that the very naming it is sufficient to make us learn all we ought to know: but all that I have seen in you, seems so conformable to that great name, that I could indeed hope no less from you. You will pardon the trouble and the grief wherewith my soul is this day afflicted; and if they have made me commit any faults against you, permit me to repair them in another place, and in another condition, the best I can possibly.*

After these words, she prayed him to get up into her Chariot, for fear lest travel on Horse back should injure his wounds: but he excus'd himself from this great civility of the Princess, with a profound submission; which having more advantageously testified to her by his behaviour and by his looks, than by his words, he mounted on Horseback so nimbly, as made him easily be adjudg'd able to support a greater travel. The Princess had the goodness to let the *Burgundians* know, whom she saw in a capacity to succour *Gondioch*, that if they would carry him to *Egitina*, he should be treated like a King, and not like an enemy: but they accepted not her offers; but making a Hand-barrow, with the greatest diligence possible, they carried him another way, whilst *Rosimond* with *Balamir* took theirs towards *Egitina*, where, with *Briomer* and the body of *Theobaldus*, she hoped to find *Albisinda*, if fortune had been favourable to those that fought for her. You shall understand at leisure, my Lord, the fortunes of them both; but it is now time that I return to the desolate *Pharamond*, whom I have perhaps too long forsaken in this recital of what befel to the two Princesses.

The unfortunate King of the *Franks*, transported by that cruel grief which entirely possessed his soul, was fled from us with an infinite swiftness, and as I think I have told your Lordship, had thrown himself into that wood which we had some time before cross'd. As it was not the society of men, but rather the horrors of solitude that he sought; so he frequented not the beaten paths, but the places most obscure, and most conceal'd. He wandred a long time without other design than that to flee from the world, from the light, and from himself, if it were possible: but in flying all things, he could not flee from his grief, which cruelly followed him every where, and begat a war in his bosom in what place soever he retir'd. At this fatal time, a thousand sighs issued from his breast; and accompanied sometimes with some lamenting words, made those places of the wood he pass'd, echo his mournful sounds, and had touch'd with pity the most obdurate hearts, had they been witnesses of the sad marks of his desolate grief.

Oh Fortune (said he) though all men are sensible of thy inconstancy, is there any among men whom thou hast treated like me? Those favours which thou mayst have afforded me in war, can they be esteemed favours, if they prove more unfortunate to me than all the miseries of the vanquish'd? Oh Gondioch, Oh Maximus, Oh thou King of the Cimbrians, I envy your condition; and it would, perhaps, have been more sweet to me to have lost ten battels, and to have been despoil'd of my estates, so I had not become the murderer of the Brother of Rosamond. O Theobaldus, thy death causes me to die ten thousand more cruel deaths; and that vengeance which thou hast dying demanded, must be cruelly executed against this unfortunate, who would willingly, if it were possible, at the price of his own, restore thy life.

In speaking these words, and many others like them, he found himself near a fountain, by the side of certain Ruines, covered with Moss, in the most obscure and savage place of the wood; and because night approached, and he found himself wearied with that days travel, he alighted, drank some water of the fountain, and let himself fall upon the grass, lying without any care either of the wound he had in his shoulder, or of the need he had of nourishment, having taken none all that day. It was in this place that I found him a little before that the day had yielded its brightness to obscurity: and as I was, perhaps, of all his, the person most affectionate to his service, and which was most obliged to it by the confidence he honoured me with; I was the most diligent to follow him, and the most happy to find him.

I could not see him in the condition wherein he appeared to me, without distilling some drops from my eyes; and approaching him, I accompanied for some time my grief with my tears, and with my silence, without speaking a word: but a little after, he discover'd me; and gently turning his eyes towards me, *I am much pleas'd, Cleomer, (said he with a feeble voice) to see you alone near me; for in this deplorable estate into which Fortune hath thrown me, the company of other persons would scarce be supportable.* That grief which had lock'd up my heart, and bound my tongue, hindred me from answering him for some time; and when I could do it, instead of amusing my self in vain to combat his grief, I entreated him not to be offended if I solicited him to depart from that place, and go to some other where his wound might be dress'd, and he receive that nourishment which was necessary: he received my discourse with his accusom'd sweetness, yet seem'd little perswaded; but beholding me with a languishing eye, which discover'd the little love he had for life, *Ah, Cleomer, (said he) those things for which you take care, are of little importance: happy should I be, if this wound which gives you so much disquiet, were in the midst of my heart. I must die, (added he a little after) and since Fortune hath so cruelly abus'd those hopes I durst conceive, and that in a misery like mine, none that have not lost their reason can think of a remedy, I must embrace that which only death can offer me, and not any longer suffer a thought for the preservation of this deplorable life.*

He spoke to me many others things to the same purpose, which the length permits me not to recount you; and whatever I could say to him to oblige him to quit that place, he pass'd the night there in the most pitiful condition in the world; and though I was wearied, and had fasted as long as he, yet the trouble his condition made me partner in, hindred me from feeling it: but I labour'd as much as I could, to perswade him to mount on Horse-back, not daring to stir a pace from him to go seek our people, or procure things necessary, for fear lest I should no more find him.

The Sun was now risen, yet could not I judge what resolution he would take, when I heard the wood resound with the noise and neighing of Horses; and a little after, I saw our men appear on all sides, who, having search'd over the rest of the wood, in the end came to this place. Had I followed the intention of my Princce, I had conceal'd my self: but on the contrary, I both shew'd my self, and call'd them with a loud voice; and no sooner had they discover'd us, but they came running to us on all sides; and the principal of them being alighted, approaching the King, environed him: he rais'd himself half way to look upon them, and saw not only Prince *Ibere*, *Meroveus*, and *Adelard*, who had followed him the day before, but with them he saw *Charamont*, *Gastaldus*, and many other principal Captains of the Army, who had parted from the Camp after *Marcomire*, and followed him with the greatest part of the Cavalry.

My Prince, however overwhelmed with this grief, could not but with some shame behold himself before so many brave men in a condition so little conformable to his great courage; and casting down his eyes with some confusion, he endeavour'd to dissemble a part of what he felt. *Charamont*, and all those that came with him, had understood from *Ibere* what had pass'd the day before; and by the knowledge they had of so great a misfortune befallen the King, they seem'd not astonish'd at all at those marks of sadness they beheld

beheld in his visage, and in all his proceedings. *Charamont*, whose spirit was sensible of the misery of his Prince, flattered at present his grief, instead of condemning it; and only told him, that there might yet be a remedy for his misfortunes; that if he would be assenting to himself a little, and not lose his courage at a time wherein it was most necessary, he did not despair to see him happy.

Though the King had ever a great belief in *Charamont*, yet he perceived now but little foundation of reason in his discourse; attributing it to his affection, rather than to any appearance of probability: and shaking his head with an aspect that express'd his thoughts, *Charamont*, (said he) *flatter us no more; never was any misfortune parallel to mine: and as my misery is without example, so it is without remedy, without consolation: I will therefore seek neither the one nor the other, but only in death; for the fear which it gives to the most happy and most stout-hearted comes not near the horror I find in life.*

Though *Charamont* would not at first disturb the grief of my Prince, he oppos'd to his discourse sound and solid reasons; telling him, That a misfortune like that which was befallen him, might well produce some effect on the most firm and constant spirit in the world, but ought not to daunt a courage like his, or make him forget that he was a great King, made illustrious among men by so many famous victories, and a King on whom the whole world had cast their eyes, as on the fairest object of their hopes: That a passion like that which he resent'd, was pardonable in a Prince of his age, whilst it drew him not from those limits which were prescribed to his degree and virtues; but that it would be no more so, when it should make him lose the memory of what he ought to all the earth, and more especially of what he ought to himself. But when he saw he was insensible of this discourse, and seem'd to have buried in his grief the remembrance of what ought to have been most important to him; *My Sovereign*, (said he) *I had no design to tell you all things in the condition wherein I found you; but since you constrain me by thus abandoning your self to passion in a time wherein all your virtue is most necessary, I must no longer flatter you, but advertise you, that if the love of your self can prevail nothing with you, it is by that of glory and by that of duty that you are called to the defence of your Kingdoms. The King of the Sueves hath assaulted Franconia; and that Viridomar whom they have so long expected, and to whom they have destin'd the possession of Rosamond, not only accompanies his Father, but hath made the blood of your people run down in streams, and overturning like an irresistible torrent the greatest part of your Provinces, has already laid siege to the Metropolis of your Realm; and by a boldness yet less pardonable in a Rival than any other enemy, he will not present himself before his destin'd Rosamond, till he be able to offer her the Crown of your Fathers.*

These words which *Charamont* pronounc'd with an infinite grace and vehemency, imprinted a deep sense in the soul of *Pharamond*, and wakened him from that fatal dream wherein his grief seem'd to have buried him; and turning his head towards *Charamont*, he demand'd of him if what he had related of the King of the *Sueves*, and the Prince *Viridomar* his Son, were true, when he presented to him a man on whom he had not as yet cast his eyes: *Sovereign*, (said he) *see here Harald, whom Basogastus hath sent to you, he arriv'd last night at the Camp, and it is from him your Majesty may best learn the estate of Franconia.*

The King received *Harald* with his ordinary sweetness; and having listen'd to what he had to say, he understood that the King of the *Sueves* and Prince *Viridomar* his Son, were enter'd into *Franconia*, with an Army of one hundred thousand men, whilst the King of the *Cimbrians*, as it was reported, was turned towards the Country, where we now were with the like Force: That they had open'd their passage by the Country of the *Catti*, and soon cut in pieces all the Forces they found in the Frontiers: That by the sole terrour of their Arms they had made themselves Masters of the Country of the *Chassuares*, and all the Territory bordering on *Visurgues*: That having laid waste the Country by the severity of the *Suevish* King, who destroy'd all with Fire and Sword, they were advanc'd towards the *Mein* without finding any considerable resistance: That *Basogastus* had performed all the duty both of a faithful Lieutenant, and experienc'd Captain: That with all possible diligence he had caus'd Levies to be made amongst the *Angrinarians*, the *Marses*, the *Bruderes*, the *Tenieres*, the *Saliens*, and other people which compose *Franconia*: That with those Forces he had on foot, he had defended the passages as much as he could possibly, but that he was found too weak to oppose so great a power; and having been over-powered by numbers in many encounters, and in the end defeated in a great Battel which he was constrain'd to give, and by which he had lost a great part of his Army, he was retir'd into *Peapolis*, (which was well furnish'd with all things to maintain a Siege) resolving

resolving to defend it to the last man: That he had sent several messengers, but that none were returned: That fearing lest they were fallen into the hands of the enemy, and that the King was still ignorant of the misery of his Country; in the end, *Harald*, though he had most important employments in the Army, judging well of what necessity this advice was for the safety of the Kingdom, had offered to go himself: and that in effect, by the dangers he had run, and the difficulties he had to enter into the Country of the *Bohemians*, the passages of which were guarded by the *Cimbrians*, he had judg'd that those who were sent before him had been taken.

To this discourse *Harald* added several other things, which were publish'd of the valour of *Viridomar*; by whose presence the King his Father thought himself more fortified, than by his best Squadrons; recounting many particular proofs, of which no examples were to be found but in the person of *Pharamond*: and concluded in the end, with telling the King that his presence was not only necessary for the safety of his Realm, but that if he did not march thither with all diligence, he would possibly find affairs in such a condition, as it would be difficult for him to recover them.

The King sigh'd many times, during the discourse of *Harald*, and with an admirable patience, gave him all the attention he could desire; but when he saw him prolong his discourse in the praises of his Rival, he seem'd more mov'd at those words than at any other part of his discourse; and made it appear by a redness which dyed his cheeks, that he was not insensible of them. And when *Harald* ceas'd to speak, turning himself towards *Ibere*, *Charamont*, *Meroveus*, and the others, with an aspect more lively than formerly; *Come, my friends* (said he) *let us march to the defence of our Country, to which honour and so many duties call us, and which no passion can dispense with: our enemies shall possibly yet find some resistance from us; and that happy lover destin'd to the possession of Rosamond, and who by my ruine would raise himself to that felicity, will not, it may be, find the way so easie as he imagines.*

He added to these but few words more; that grief which wholly possess'd his soul, giving him but little liberty: but he was no longer obstinate to stay in that place where we were, nor did he hinder the dressing of his wound, or refuse that sustenance was presented him. His wound constrain'd him to stay three days at a Bourg, where we made him stop contrary to his intention; and having in the mean time taken resolution to do all things to which he believ'd himself oblig'd, and by the assistance of his courage and sollicitation of his friends, awakened in himself all his virtue, he sent his orders to the Camp near *Marobuda*, to cause his Troops depart, and take their march on that side he resolv'd to pass: and because he would no more go into that City, where he could no longer see *Rosamond*, and where he feared too much to be detested as the murderer of their Prince; he caus'd a Bridge of Boats to be built lower over the *Elba*, by which he design'd to joyn with Prince *Priam* and the body of the Army, in the Country of the *Coldules*.

But having understood how Prince *Marcomire* his Brother had left the Camp, with six hundred Horse, to come and joyn with him; and how in the end, he had fought with *Gondioch*, and was retired sorely wounded in the Chariot of the Princess of the *Sueves*, towards *Egitina*; he would not depart, without knowing news of him; nor could the fear to incense *Rosamond*, in sending one of his own messengers to a City whither it was reported she was retired, how powerful soever it was over his spirit, restrain him from paying what he ought to a Brother, and the virtue of such a Prince: resolv'd therefore to lose all things rather than forsake him, he sent *Adelard* to *Egitina* to see him, since he was not permitted to go thither himself, and understand in what citate he was: And because from the Bourg where we were, to *Egitina* was but four hours journey, *Adelard* returned the same day, and reported that he had seen the Prince in bed with many great wounds, but not at all dangerous: That the Princess *Albisinda* caus'd him to be served with a generous care; and that the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, though she had not visited him, had commanded he should be treated according to his quality, and the service he had done for the *Suevish* Princess: That he seem'd well satisfied to be in the place where he was though according to his opinion, he perceiv'd something new breeding in his soul: That he entreated the King to march without delay, to the assistance and succour of his Kingdom; the necessity of which he had inform'd him of, and whither he would come and find him so soon as his strength would permit him; and in the mean time, to be assur'd that he was not only in safety, and well served in *Egitina*, but that perhaps his stay would not be improfitable to him.

This report of such a person as *Adelard*, who was considerable both for his birth and virtue, and particularly esteem'd by *Marcomire*, begat some repose in the spirit of the King: and

and if he had no reason to fear his wounds, he was not at all troubl'd, that he made some stay near *Rosamond*, to whom, if he were so happy as to see her, and to be hearken'd to by her, he might speak something of his innocence, and of his love. However, though *Marcomire* had with him a part of his Attendants, yet would he needs send some of his own to serve him, and to tell him, that neither the help he ought to his Kingdom, or any other considerations, should compel him to forsake him, if he thought his presence necessary, but that upon the least occasion he should be ready to return with the whole force of his Realm.

To the discourse which *Adelard* made the King touching the Prince his Brother, he added what he had heard of the Combat between *Balamir*, and *Gondiob*; and how that *Balamir*, the youngest Son of the King of the *Huns*, who had already gain'd so fair a reputation in the World, having overcome *Gondiob* in the fight of *Rosamond*, had accompany'd her to *Egitina*, where she caused those wounds he had receiv'd to be dress'd with great care; and where it was reported, that he was more deeply wounded by the eyes of *Rosamond*, than by the Sword of *Gondiob*. *Pharamond*, to whom Renown had already made known the valour of *Balamir*, and that possibly among men there could not be found a Rival of greater merit, and who with greater advantages might dispute with him *Rosamond*, principally in a time wherein all things were as favourable to his Rivals, as they were contrary to him, understood with no small grief, that his ill fortune had rais'd him up such a Competitor: and though he did not fear his valour, nor that of all men together, if all men had been his Enemies; yet he fear'd his fortune, and the advantages he had to be introduced to the Princess by his services, while he himself had made himself known to her, only by too cruel offences.

This reflection which he had made, both on the good fortune of *Balamir*, who by a Destiny so contrary to his, had begun to serve *Rosamond* so soon as he saw her; and on that of *Viridomar*, to whom she was design'd before a fight of her, or without having bought the possession, by one sole fight, drew many sighs from his breast, and made him speak many words deploring his misery, and discovering the birth of a passion, which joyned it self with his love and grief, the more to torment him: but as by his great courage, he was resolv'd against the most terrible events, he fortifi'd himself with whatever of most heroick it could inspire him with, to combat his ill fortune to the end: and the corivalthip of two such valiant men, instead of adding to his misery by abating his courage, revived in him what his grief seem'd to have laid asleep, and renew'd a fire in his eyes, which denoted the return of his pristine fierceness; *We shall see (said he) these terrible Rivals, which my cruel destiny hath rais'd me, we shall see them without fear of that great reputation renown flatters them withal; and if the Heavens be not as favourable to them as they are opposite to me, I dare hope we shall see them without envy. All things concur to their felicity, as they arm themselves for my ruine; but with all these advantages, they have not yet overcome me; and if my courage abandon me not, it shall cost them Rivers of blood, before they shall be possessors of Rosamond.*

With this resolution, which seem'd to give him new strength, and banish'd all that feebleness which his love or grief might have wrought, placing himself at the Head of his own men, we march'd towards the *Elba*, which we pass'd over by the Bridge of Boats which he had caused to be made; and so into the Country of the *Coldules*, where we joyned with the body of the Army, conducted by the famous *Priam*, and took our way towards the Frontiers of the *Bohemians*, whom we left on that side where they border on the Country of the *Narisques*, and with much difficulty climbed up the Mountains. Not but that the passage had been more easie on the Coast of *Usbinum*, and the Mountains less craggy; but the King not doubting but that the *Cimbrians* did defend that passage; and fearing besides, lest a retardment might cause the ruine of his Country, he shunn'd as much as he could the meeting with the Father of *Rosamond*, for fear of finding new occasions to offend her. From the *Hercinian* Mountains, we descended into the Country of the *Narisques*, and march'd towards that of the *Hermatures*: but because our Army came not near the number of our Enemies, not being compos'd of more than forty thousand men, so soon as we were parted, the King sent back *Harald* to *Basogastus*, to advertise him of his Arrival, in case he could enter into *Peapolis*, and oblige him to come to his assistance; the Princes *Sunnon* and *Genebaud* were post'd before with all possible speed towards the Provinces to make Levies, and to lead all the Troops they found in a posture to march into the Country of the *Marcomans*, where the King had appointed the general rendezvous.

From the Country of the *Hermatures*, we march'd into that of the *Hirudes*, which borders on the Frontiers of *Franconia*; but before we entred, the King being inform'd
what

what had passed, the condition of *Peapolis*, and news of the Princess *Polixena* his Sister, for whom he suffered no small trouble, understood likewise, that by the valour of *Viridomar*, the Affairs of the Field were in an ill estate; that with a part of his Troops he had on all sides beaten the Allies of *Franconia*, whom *Basogastus* had called to his assistance, and slain with his own hand the two Princes of the *Turomens* and the *Marcomans* in a battle gain'd over them: That as for the besieged City, *Basogastus* still defended it with infinite valour; and that as he had retired into the Walls with a good party of those which remain'd of his Army, he still made sallies, by which he much annoy'd the besiegers: That as for the Princess *Polixena*, she was in *Peapolis*, where she was retired sometime before the siege, from a Palace in the Country, together with the Princess *Theodora*, Wife of *Priam*, not without having been in manifest danger of falling into the hands of the *Sueves*. It was farther told him, that the King of the *Sueves* was some dayes before retired into his Kingdom, leaving the care of the Army, and of the management of the whole War to the Prince *Viridomar* his Son, for which the whole Country rejoyc'd: not that the Prince was less formidable than the King his Father, who was without doubt much inferior to him, in valour, and the whole mystery of War; but because he better treated the vanquish'd and made War with a noble mildness and generosity, whilst the King his Father put all to the sword, in all places where he commanded.

The King thus fully inform'd, was astonish'd that his Enemies could so long time keep him ignorant of the misfortunes and miseries of his Country, though he might well perceive the cause to be the situation of the Country of the *Bohemians*, encompassed on all sides, as with a high Wall, by the *Hercinian* Mountains, and that vast Forrest, all the passages whereof, by which in likelihood news was posted, were guarded by the *Cimbrians*; he therefore deliberated at present with the principal Commanders of his Army, what was necessary to be done in the conduct of this War, not being ignorant that he had to deal with a Prince, whose Renown was already flown through the Earth, and who, according to the fame spread abroad of him, was inferior in valour to none in the World.

Many of his Commanders were of opinion that he was not to advance into *Franconia*, till our Army were strengthened by those Succours we expected, judging that we ought to attend them in the Country, whither the Princes *Sunnon* and *Genebaud* had order to conduct them, without committing our selves, in the condition we were, to the hazard of a battle, the loss of which might draw with it that of the whole Kingdom. But though the King hearkned willingly to the advice of his Friends, and respected it as far as he could, yet he could not resolve on what they propos'd; representing unto them, that it had little appearance of reason to attend a Succour, which by the loss of his Neighbours and Allies was very uncertain, and could not but at best be late: That the Army began to increase, and would by his farther advance into the Country, daily strengthen it self on all sides, whilst that of his Enemies must of necessity be weakn'd: that therefore he judg'd it better, and more honourable for him and for us, to march by little Journeys straight to *Peapolis*: That by our march we should either oblige *Viridomar* to raise his siege, and advance with his whole Army towards us, or at least with a part of it, whilst he left the other to beleague the City; or if neither of these yet to stay in his Camp, and there expect us: That if he took this last resolution, he would thereby give us time necessary to lodge advantagiously, attend the Succour of our Allies, and annoy the Enemy in such sort, that it would be impossible for them to make any progress in the siege: That if they came to meet us with a part of the Army, ours would be strong enough to fight it; or if he intirely raised the siege, and came with his whole Forces, *Basogastus*, who had a good party of Cavalry, which he might draw forth in little time, being free to sally, would fall upon them in the Rear, and give no little trouble to an Army that were to find another in their Front; and especially in a Country which yielded all advantages to us, and all inconveniencies to our Enemies: That he would send new Orders to *Sunnon*, to march with all speed towards *Peapolis* with those men he had raised; and that he could not fail to arrive either to our assistance, or to that of *Basogastus*.

This was the King's resolution, which was approv'd by all his Commanders, not only because it was more glorious than any other he could take, but because the success might in probability be such as the King foresaw. So soon as it was taken, they began to put it in execution; and on the morrow, the Army entred into *Franconia*, in a most gallant order: the march prov'd so much the more easie, in that we had no Rivers to pass which in that season were not fordable, nor any City which might stop us. The City of *Peapolis* is situated in a fair Plain, on the Banks of the River *Meine*, which on one side washes the feet of its Walls; whilst on the other it is fortifi'd with a deep and large Ditch full of Water, and the

Citadel flank'd with a great number of strong and stately Towers which defend it, makes its approach very difficult. The King of the *Sueves* had besieg'd it on both sides, but his Army had an entercourse by two Bridges of Boats, which he had caused to be made above and below the River: he was seiz'd on part of the Suburbs, which was on the other side of the River, which the Inhabitants had forsaken, seeing well they could not defend it, and was lodg'd on a Hill amongst the ruines of an old Castle there demolish'd, and which commanded not only over the Suburbs, but over a Bridge of Stone which led from thence to the City, the Entrance into which is fortifi'd with strong and great Towers, which the *Sueves* batter'd with their Engines, and which the *Franks* defended with infinite valour, and a resolution to break the Bridge, when they could no longer maintain it.

Though the King of the *Sueves* had assaulted the City, with an inexpressible care and conduct, yet he had made little progress; for besides the experience which *Basogastus* had in the mystery of War, he had so great a number of men for its defence, that he feared rather to be famish'd than forc'd: but when he understood by *Harald*, who favour'd by a Salley made by the besieg'd, found the means to get into the City, that the King march'd to his relief, he ceased to fear his Enemies, and prepar'd himself to favour his approach, when opportunity should present. So soon as the King of the *Sueves* was departed, Prince *Viridomar* understanding that the Princess *Polixena* was in the City, had offer'd her liberty to depart, and a convoy to conduct her in security to any place she would retire to: but though he had often solicited her, with all that civility due to her, that fair Princess, born with a courage worthy her Illustrious House, and incens'd with a particular displeasure against those Enemies who destroy'd her Country, and brought into it a War with so much injustice, disdain'd his offers, and return'd for answer, that she was content to perish in the ruines of the City, if it should be reduc'd to that, rather than see her self oblig'd for her safety, to the irreconcilable Enemies of the King her Father. Her generous resolution inspir'd the like into the Princesses and Ladies of Quality, who were with her; and *Basogastus* himself seem'd more strongly encourag'd to her particular defence, than to that of the City.

Viridomar testifi'd some displeasure at this constancy of the Princesses; nor was it known whether for this consideration he less press'd the besieg'd, than they had been by the King his Father: It seem'd likewise to his Followers, that he continued this siege with some reluctance, or at least, that his vigour and natural fierceness were obscur'd by a sadness and melancholy, which they had for some time observ'd in him, without being able to imagine the cause. But both the one and the other seem'd powerfully revived in him, when he understood that *Pharamond* was entred into *Franconia*; and that that *Pharamond*, murderer of *Vindimir*, and lover of *Rosamond*; that *Pharamond*, whose glory he had envi'd with a generous emulation, and him whose person he fought, and not his Kingdom, march'd towards him to fight him; the news rekindl'd a martial ardour in his bosom, and return'd into his eyes their accusom'd splendour: he weigh'd not at all what resolution he was to take; and as it was *Pharamond*, and not his people, against whom he would carry the War, he no sooner understood his return, but he dispos'd himself to march directly towards him, and gave, that very moment, Orders to his Army to prepare to depart the next Morning.

Yet he would not wholly raise his siege, fearing to displease the King his Father, who had absolutely defend'd it; but believing with an Army of sixty thousand men he could overcome *Pharamond*, the number of whose Forces he had good intelligence of, left still thirty thousand at the Leaguer of *Peapolis*. It was perhaps the great desire he had to dispute with so famous a Competitor both in love and glory, which made him march so readily against him: however, he told his Captains, and the reason which oblig'd him to go with such hast to fight him, was because he understood that his Army was every day increased by the people of the Country, which flock'd in to him from all parts; that he fear'd if he should give him time, he would make himself so powerful, that he should not be able to maintain the Field against him but upon great disadvantages. There was not only probability and reason, but truth in what he said; for it is certain, that after our entrance into *Franconia*, our Army was strengthn'd by more than ten thousand men, and that before we approach'd them, there wanted but little to make it as numerous as the *Sueves*.

Pharamond, who had his Scouts in all parts, no sooner understood the march of *Viridomar*, and the division he had made of his Troops, but he thank'd the gods for this opportunity to encounter him with hopes of Victory: and having embattel'd his Troops in an admirable order, he march'd towards him with a joy which we had not for a long time mark'd on his visage: yet he would not tire either his Men or Horses by too long Journies: but as he desir'd Victory in this War more than he had done in all other, and well knew that the

Loss of one Battle could not but be of a terrible consequence, he resolv'd to neglect nothing which might give him any advantage over the most valiant enemy he had ever to deal with. All our Commanders, and all our Soldiers, who besides the love they had for their Prince, were firmly perswaded that they could not be overcome whilst he fought in the head of them, followed him with an infinite courage and confidence. In the end, after some few days march, which was so much the shorter, because each of the two Armies went half the way, they fac'd each other in a great Plain between the City of *Devona* and the River *Sala*, a little above the place where it disburdens it self into the *Mein*.

The Sun was scarce four hours high when we discern'd the Army of the *Sueves*: and because that it was at that season of the year when the days are longest, and that the King judg'd well that there was little appearance but that the fight would begin that day; he caus'd his Troops to stop, and his Soldiers repose themselves, whilst he employed his time in preparing things necessary for so important a Battel. He would himself as he was always accusom'd, not only view all the Plain, to observe what Posts might be advantageous to him, but also take notice of the countenance of the enemies, and the order of their Battel: and Fortune would, that as the Prince of the *Sueves* did the same on his side, they saw each other twice or thrice, and the last time so near, that they had without doubt come to blows, if they had not been separated by a large and deep Ditch caused by some springs of water, and which was above three thousand paces in length.

The two Princes by several marks knew each other, and kept for some time along the Banks of the Ditch, one beholding t'other with a menacing aspect: but as they were both generous and modest, they threaten'd only with their eyes, without breaking into words: and maugre the interest which incens'd them, they had conceived mutually an esteem which permitted them not to behold each other without a respect: however, their anger might easily be observ'd in their visages under their half lifted up Visers; and if they had not remembred that they had two great Armies that day to fight, they had soon by the end of the Ditch fought a way to joyn, and determine by a more single Combat their particular quarrel.

I doubt not but *Pharamond* appear'd such to the eyes of *Viridomar*, as he hath ever appear'd to all other men; but I confess that *Viridomar*, by what I could discern, seem'd such a one to me as nothing but my Master could equalize. That little I could discover of his countenance charm'd me, and I had certainly been more taken with his person, his carriage on Horse-back, and all his actions which were admirable, had I not been still present with the King my Master. His Arms were no less fair or rich than those of my Prince; his Helmet was covered with a Plume so white that it exceeded the Snow, and which by the agitation of the wind wav'd upon his Shoulders; and on his Shield, with which his left Arm was charg'd, were seen three Lions sable in a Field Argent, the famous Badge of his Illustrious House: the desire they had soon to see each other nearer, made them willingly depart from each other, to range their Troops, and prepare for Battel.

Both the Men and the Horses having taken both repose and repast during the survey of the King, at his return the Illustrious *Priam* and the valiant *Charamont* rang'd them in that order which they were to observe in that days conflict. *Pharamond* plac'd himself in the head of his right Wing, *Priam* commanded the left; *Ibere* the Cavalry on the right, and *Meroveus* the left; and *Charamont* brought up a Reserve of two thousand Horse, and six thousand Foot men: before the Army march'd, the King rode through all the Ranks, and shewing himself in the body of the Army with his face uncovered, encourag'd both his Commanders and Soldiers to the Fight, and by a discourse full of eloquence, and with an aspect which seem'd that day enlivened with something extraordinary, represent'd unto them not only of what importance it was for their glory, to preserve that reputation they had acquir'd in so many Battels, wherein Victory had still accompanied them, but the necessity which oblig'd them that day to fight for the safety of their Country, which depended on the event of that Combat: and the Soldiers by their cries on all sides seem'd to encourage and quicken each other with an heat equal to his own.

Finding them thus heartned, without further delay he led them to the Combat: observing at the same time his enemies to advance with a resolution equal to ours; and when the Armies were separated but by a very little distance, he gave the last orders, and caus'd the signal to be given. 'Twas now that in the middle might be seen Piles march against Piles; and the Cavalry in the Wings having levelled their Lances, part at the same time, and encounter with an undaunted fury. The Rivers of the *Meine*, and those of *Sala* re-
echoed

echoed this terrible encounter; the Heavens were darkened with the Splinters of the Lances, and the earth covered with blood, and the bodies of men dead and dying. The Infantry despising the distant sight of Arrows, to come to handy blows, began a fight much more bloody; and soon after, finding their Pikes too troublesome, letting them fall at their feet, made use only of their Swords, with which, my Lord, you know better than my self the great massacre ordinarily made in Battels.

Fortune so order'd that *Viridomar* that day, as well as *Pharamond*, fought in the head of the right Wing of the Army; and so he found himself oppos'd by *Priam* who commanded the left Wing of ours, as *Pharamond* was by *Almeric*, a valiant Captain, who commanded the *Suevish* left Wing: so that by this array the two Captains had not that satisfaction which they possibly equally desired, to begin the Combat of the two Armies: with that of their persons; but if it proved safe to the one and the other, it was no less cruel to those two Wings which *Priam* and *Almeric* commanded: for those two Commanders, though valiant, could not resist the Puissance of the two Enemies which oppos'd them, which like two violent Torrents, ravaged and threw to the ground all that oppos'd their passage. The generous *Priam*, Illustrious for a thousand fair exploits in War, yielded to the prowess of a young man, and was thrown down by the Lance of *Viridomar*: But *Almeric*, yet more unhappy, was run through by that of *Pharamond*, and fell without life under his Horses feet.

The fall of the two Captains wrought no small terrour and fear in those bodies that obeyed them: and if on the one side *Pharamond* overwhelm'd all that stood before him, and by his example made his followers fight with so much vigour, that they soon broke the Wing that oppos'd them, and in the end, put it to an entire rout; on the other side, *Viridomar* led his to the Combat with so much valour and good conduct, that all the resistance of the *Franks* was in vain, and they in the end broken, by the great force of the Prince of the *Sueves*. The generous *Merouée*, who commanded the Cavalry of this Wing, sustain'd it a long time with an extraordinary valour; and engaging in person with *Viridomar*, yielded not unto him, till after a long and doubtful combat; but in the end, he found his strength inferior to that of the *Suevish* Prince, when covered with wounds, and scarce able to support himself in his Saddle, he was succour'd by his friends, at a time when he was ready to abandon the Victory, and perhaps his life to the strongest.

The affairs were in this estate, on the two sides of the Battel, and the two Captains were on each side pursuing the Victory they had gain'd, and ignorant of the destiny of the other, when *Pharamond*, whom though the heat of the fight had a little transported, yet had not made him forget that he had the same interest in the other Wing, as in that which fought under his conduct; having made his enemies turn their backs, and pursued them without any resistance, rode to a little Hill, which he saw near him, from whence he might plainly discern what passed over a good part of the Plain: No sooner was he mounted on it, but he perceived the misfortune of his, and beheld his left Wing defeated, and retiring in disorder before the *Sueves*. This sight enflam'd him with anger, and commanding *Ibere* to pursue them that fled with a part of the Troops, and to hinder them from rallying or joyning with the others, he with the rest turn'd head, and flew to the relief of his left Wing with infinite diligence, having commanded *Charamont* to lead up the reserve to battle.

Almost at the same time, *Viridomar* having had advice of the misfortune of *Almeric*, and the defeat of the Wing he commanded, had turn'd head with an intention like to that of our King: and the two conquering Princes, with their victorious Troops, saw each other coming with a design alike, and the same resolution. *Viridomar*, who march'd before the *Sueves*, knew *Pharamond* at the head of the *Franks*; and as it was his person which he particularly sought after, spurred on by apprehensions both of glory and revenge, he had no sooner taken notice of him, but with a strong Lance, he ran against him, after he had defied him with a loud cry. *Pharamond* not disdainng such an enemy, according to his example took a Lance, and covering himself with his Shield, parted at the same time with a swiftness and fury which nothing could equalize: the Sun in all its dayly surveys of the world, never beheld so terrible an encounter, which made these two the valiantest men in the world prove something to them extraordinary. My Master could not be shaken in the Saddle by the Lance of *Viridomar*; but as the blow was too great to pass without a great effect, the Horse-girts were broken, and the King constrain'd to fall behind the Horse-crupper, with the Saddle between his Legs. *Viridomar* receiv'd the blow of *Pharamond* on his Shield, and held him so firm in his Saddle, that he could not be

mov'd; but his Horse not able to support the puiffance of fo great a froke, tumbled with his Matter a great diftance off, rouling upon the ground, as if they had fallen from the ruines of fome high Tower. *Pharamond* blufhed with fhame and anger, for an accident which had never before befel them; but being on his feet, in an instant; and cafting himfelf lightly upon a fair Horse, which I had the honour to prefent him. *Viridomar* was taken up by his own men, but with more difficulty; and before he was again mounted, *Pharamond* had many times call'd him, and made more than one of his own feel the effects of that anger his fall had caus'd. No fooner was the *Suevifh* Prince remounted but with his Sword in his hand he returned to feek *Pharamond*; and overturning all that endeavour'd to hinder his joyning with him; *Let us finish* (cried he with a clear and thundring voice) *what we have begun; and fince thou art the lover of Rofamond, and I the Brother of Vindimir, let us end a quarrel, which is only Pharamond's and Viridomar's, and not the Sueves and Franks.*

Pharamond, who difdain'd to fhun the combat, and whose fall had incens'd him, ran at thefe words to *Viridomar*, with a refolution no whit inferiour to his; and both the one and the other, with their Swords in their hands, endeavour'd to clear the paffage to each other: but as the *Sueves* caft themfelves before *Viridomar*, we did the like to *Pharamond*; both equally endeavouring to prevent thofe sad confequences which might follow upon the combat of thofe two Princes. They foamed with anger, and feem'd to dart fire through the lights of their Helmets: but do whatfoever they could, it prov'd impoffible for them to get together again; and they were confin'd, having threatn'd each other with their voice and with their hands, to carry thofe effects of their anger to a general victory, which they could not employ in a particular combat: nor did either the one or the other forget any thing which might conduce to the gaining it by their party, however in the end neither had that fatisfaction they defired, though it feem'd to incline more to our fide than the *Sueves*, and that we might well have hoped it, if the day would have lent its light for victory to declare it felf entirely: for when night made the combat ceafe, there were few places in the field where the *Sueves* yielded not place to the *Franks*: the number of the dead on their party exceeded ours; and if they retired in good order, and without any appearance of a rout, we had the advantage to keep the Field all night. We loft twenty thoufand men, and the enemies five or fix and twenty thoufand: and if Prince *Priam*, *Merouée*, and many other remarkable perfons among us, were wounded; *Almeric*, who commanded next after *Viridomar* in the *Suevifh* Army, and many other confiderable perfons of their party, loft their lives.

But though other perfons might poffibly have found fatisfaction in thefe marks of our advantages, *Pharamond*, who was never accustom'd to conquer by halves, had no fatisfaction in the event of the combat, but feem'd as much afflicted, or rather as much incens'd, as if he had loft the Battel: he therefore resolv'd at the return of day, to renew the fight, and prepared all things in fuch order and diligence as was to be admitt'd; but fcarce had the Sun faluted *Aurora*, when he was advertis'd that *Viridomar* was parted fome hours before, and retir'd with his whole Army towards *Peapolis*; yet not like a man that fled, but like one called by other affairs, marching ftill in battel-array, and in condition to fight. *Pharamond*, knowing well that it was not fear that made him take this refolution, judg'd that he either went to joyn with fome reinforcement from the King of the *Sueves*, or to attend him at *Peapolis*, and give him Battel with his whole Forces; having been deceiv'd in his hopes to carry it with thofe that followed him.

This belief oblig'd the King to march after him to fight him before he joyn'd with the reft of the Army; and already had he given orders to his Horse to mount, when he received a Message from the Prince *Sumnon*, by which he affur'd him, that in three days he would be with him with twenty thoufand men. This news made him change his refolution: for not doubting but with this affiftance, and thofe Troops which *Bafogastus* had in the City, that he fhould be able to fight the entire Forces of the *Sueves*, he took another in the Field; and having commanded his Officers to give that day to the refofe of the Soldiers, and to the interr'g of the dead, as well *Sueves* as *Franks*, he returned the meffenger to the Prince *Sumnon*, commanding him to march directly towards *Peapolis*, and to govern his march in fuch fort, that he fhould come to the place assign'd on the precise day and hour appointed; giving him more time than neceffary, that he might the more eafily do it without wearying his Soldiers: and at the fame time he fent to *Bafogastus* a valiant perfon, who promis'd him to perfish or get into the City, by whom he gave him advice of the day and hour he would affault the *Suevifh* Camp, and giving him order to fally out with his Troops fo foon as he fhould hear the alarm in their Camp.

By this means, he doubted not but he might carry the victory, how valiant soever he knew Prince *Viridomar*; and having employed that day in preparing all things necessary, and exhorted the *Franks* on all sides to fortifie themselves with a noble resolution to deliver their Country from the oppression of their enemies, he departed on the morrow, and marched towards *Peapolis* by little journies, but in the best order in the world, keeping himself still in a fighting posture, in case the enemy should make head against him: we might in all probability have been annoyed in this march, following an Army, who, to furnish us, ruined and burnt all in our way: but by the excellent orders of the King, and the affection which his people had for him, bringing us provisions from places far distant, we suffer'd no want, but had the means in five days to come, within view of *Peapolis*, where we might have arrived in three, if the Prince would not have spared the travel both of men and Horses, to keep them in better condition to fight, and likewise to give time to Prince *Sunnon* and *Genebaud*, of whose advance he had every day advice, to shew themselves at the precise hour, at the appointed place.

The Sun was just laid down in *Thetis* her lap, when we arriv'd within two hours march of the City; and because the King had resolv'd to assault the enemies at the dawn of the following day, he had caus'd his Troops to take some refreshment, that they might the better march in the night, to their appointed Quarters: and before darkness again forsook the world, we drew near the enemies Camp, and ranged our selves in order to fight: But Prince *Viridomar*, not being less expert in the mystery of war, than the most experienced Captains, having foreseen a part of our design, had not separated his Forces; but whilst those which he had left at the Siege, kept their first posts, though in a readiness to sally when necessity should call them; those which we had before fought with, were rang'd in battel array at the foot of a little Hill, on which, as I told you, the Prince of the *Sueves* was lodg'd, and from which he had equally the sight of the City and his own Camp.

From this place, which extends its prospect over all the neighbouring Plain, he saw at the break of the day, the King of the *Franks* assault the Army at the foot of the Hill: *Sunnon* and *Genebaud* with an infinite fury and resolution, charging those who were lodg'd between the Hill and the River; and the valiant *Basogastus* making a no less furious salley upon those who besieged the City towards the land side. By this vigorous proceeding, he knew with what a personage he made war, and blam'd perhaps for some time, the hasty choler of the King his Father, which had engag'd him in it. However, as he had a courage which nothing could daunt, he in a moment took his resolutions; and judging that the Troops which were on the other side of the River, and the City, and which *Basogastus* attacked, were more than necessary to sustain his assault, and that those which were between the Cavalry and the River, were too feeble to resist *Sunnon*: he sent speedy order to him who commanded on the other side the River, to cause a part of his Troops to pass over the Bridge of Boats, to the assistance of those which *Sunnon* and *Genebaud* assaulted, and to defend himself against *Basogastus* with the rest: and having given orders to him whom of all the *Sueves* he had most confidence in, to command against *Sunnon*, himself descended the Hill, and came to the head of his Army to oppose *Pharamond*.

The King my Master remembring that at the preceding Battel, *Viridomar* had fought on his right Wing, resolv'd, that he might become his opposite that day, to fight on the left Wing: and *Viridomar*, who had made the same observation, and who desir'd nothing with so much zeal as to fight with *Pharamond*, had with him chang'd his place, and put himself in the head of his left Wing, that he might charge the right Wing of *Pharamond*: this equal desire both of the one and the other, was that which hindred the effect of their design; and as instead of *Viridomar*; *Pharamond* encountred *Haldan*, a Prince of the Royal blood of *Suevia*; *Viridomar* found the Prince *Ibere*, to whom in the absence of *Friam*, the King had given the right Wing to command, and who by a vigour which youth rendred more strong in him, than in his Father advanced in years, sustained the great Forces of *Viridomar* with infinite courage: not that his strength was not found somewhat inferiour to that of *Viridomar*; but as he was truly one of the most valiant men in the world, he did all that could be done against so terrible an enemy, and by his great prowess, hindred a part of that disorder *Viridomar* had brought into the body, had it been commanded by a less valiant person.

For *Pharamond*, he found less resistance, though truly he found sufficient both from the Chief and Soldiers: but in the end, he overthrew all that stood before him, and open'd a fair way for victory. The Princes *Sunnon* and *Genebaud*, on their side acted all that could be expected from their valour: but the Troops which they commanded were much different

different from those which had followed *Pharamond* in so many famous encounters; and though at first they lay hard upon the *Sueves*, which were between the City and the Hill, those which were sent to their assistance from the other side had stopt them, and disputed with them the victory: however, they gave to *Sunnon* the advantage he desired, which was to amuse a part of the enemy, whilst *Pharamond* combated the rest, *Basogastus* busied at the same time those whom he had before him, the Combat passing between them with much equality,

In sum, my Lord, for I shall grow tedious to you in recounting the particulars of several battels, to you, I say my Lord, who have gain'd such important ones, and who being so great a Master in the art of War, can with no great pleasure heark'n to that mean discourse I make you: In sum, I say, after a long and resolute Combat, by which the earth was seen covered with blood, and the streams of the *Mein* dy'd with the same colour; *Pharamond* conquer'd intirely on his side, and *Viridomar*, Maugre the valour of *Ibere*, having gained some advantage on his, the Conquerors and the strongest came to the assistance of the vanquish'd and most feeble, as they had done in the first battel; and the two valiant Princes again saw and ran at each other, with their swords in their hands, with a fury not to be expressed: but they could not continue their Combat, by reason that the *Franks* and the *Sueves* equally hindred them, which constrain'd them to turn all their thoughts on a general Victory.

The force of *Viridomar* was too prodigious for us to dispute; but in the end, he perceiv'd that he disputed it with us in vain: and knowing that he could no longer maintain his Army, who weakned by the number of the dead deserted him, and ran away in disorder on all sides, he caus'd the retreat to be sounded; and leading with an infinite diligence the strongest to the help of the others, and opposing them to the fury of the *Franks*, he made his Troops retire towards the Hill; but still fighting with an order which *Pharamond* admir'd; and with the freshest men, still favouring the retreat of the wearied, which the roughness in many places, and the number of the Ditches made more easie than it would otherwise have been, he esteem'd *Viridomar*'s wisdom in the retreat, no less than he had done his valour in the fight: but having for some time observed him, he called those Troops which were most necessary for his design, and by his words and actions animating others to the Combat, he resolv'd to pursue his enemies, and gain if possible an entire victory: when the *Sueves* from the top of the Hill, made the Heavens eccho with their cries of joy: and soon after, *Pharamond* was advertis'd that there were seen appear a body of twenty thousand men, which the King of the *Sueves* had sent to the assistance of his Son.

The King stopt at this news, and after having a small time deliberated what resolution to take, he judg'd it not convenient to engage farther his men, wearied with long travel, or oppose them to the fury of fresh men, who might charge them at such advantages, and rob them of that Victory they had yet gain'd. For these reasons he likewise caus'd the retreat to be sounded, and sending orders to Prince *Sunnon*; to draw towards him, he retir'd his men from fight, and went and encamp'd some furlongs from thence, on the banks of the River, after he had lodg'd some men on a little Hill, between the Camp of the *Sueves* and his. Twelve thousand of ours were this day slain, but the enemy lost no less than they had done in the former battle; yet by the assistance which was arriv'd, they yet found themselves stronger in number than we, but not in a condition to continue a siege before an Army like ours.

The King employ'd the rest of that day, and the beginning of the following, to draw some Trees from that Hill where he had lodg'd his men, to our Camp, and from the foot of that Hill to the River; and prepar'd for the design he had again to present battel to the enemy; and if he refus'd it, to assault him on all sides, and endeavour to chase him from the advantageous posts he possess'd; at what time was sent to him a Trumpeter from the Prince of the *Sueves*, accompanied with one of his Squires.

After the usual formalities at the entrance of the Camp, they desir'd to speak with the King: and the chief Officers of the Guard, having advertis'd the King, brought them before him by his order; he received them with his ordinary affability, and the Esquire of *Viridomar*, telling him that he had a letter from his Master, the King reach'd forth his hand, and having open'd it, read these words.

Viridomar

*Viridomar Prince of the Sueves, to Pharamond
King of the Franks.*

Though we are not at all weaken'd by those advantages, which thy fortune or thy valour may have given thee over us, and that we can yet continue the War with our first hopes: yet I confess that the blood of so many thousand men, which we sacrifice to our particular quarrel, moves me to compassion. And therefore if thou beest valiant, as renown publishes thee, and as I have known thee, thou wilt not refuse to end our differences, by the combat of our two persons. Thou owest this satisfaction to the Brother of Vindimir, and thou oughtest to desire it as the love of Rosamond; and as I confess that I should win infinite glory in prevailing against thee, so I dare affirm thou wilt lose nothing of thine, by fighting with me. The Place, the Day, and the Arms shall be at thy choice: for besides that the Laws of Combat give them thee, I owe this respect to a King, especially to a King less considerable for his Crown than Virtue.

The Princes Sunnon, Ibere, Genebaud, Charamont, Gajaldus, and many others the considerable of the Army, were present, when the King receiv'd and read this Letter: no sooner had they heard it, but they began to murmur, and aloud adventured to tell the King, that it was not for a great King like himself, to commit himself to a particular combat: that these examples were of too great consequence among Kings: that *Viridomar*, who neither was one, nor had been offended by *Pharamond*, but by his Arms, and in a legitimate defence, had no reason to demand the Combat; and that he could not accept it without being blam'd by all the earth, not only for the interest of his Dignity, but for having expos'd to a hazard, with which he might well dispense, that glory he had purchas'd by so many famous victories. Prince *Sunnon* boyling with choler, demanded his place, telling him that his birth was equal to that of *Viridomar*, and that neither the one nor the other were responsible for their lives to their people, since neither of them wore a Crown. *Ibere* and *Genebaud* said after him, that being born of Royal-blood, they might aspire to the same honour, against a man who was no King; and *Genebaud* particularly alledg'd, that if *Viridomar* demanded reason of the King for the death of *Vindimir*, he ought to do the same of him, for the wounds he had given his Father Prince *Priam* in the Battel.

Pharamond hearkned to them with his natural patience and modesty; but in the end, he represented unto them, that if *Viridomar* was not a King, yet he would be so after the death of his Father; that since he was not inferiour to him, neither in Birth, Valour, nor fair Reputation, he by combating him could neither wrong the Royal Dignity, nor the Glory he had acquir'd: and afterwards turning himself towards the Squire of *Viridomar*; You will excuse (said he) the affection of my friends, who cannot without some grief see the danger I expose my self to, in fighting with your Prince. It is only their fear for me, that makes them speak, and not any default either in his degree or reputation: but because the danger ought not to be more considerable, than the honour I have to gain against so valiant a man, and that possibly my apprehensions of injury are no less great, nor less just than his, I accept with infinite joy the occasion he offers me, to spare the blood of our people.

After these words, which stopt the mouths of all those about him, having understood from the Esquire, that he had charge from his Master to agree all things with him; they agreed that the Combat should be fought the third day following, in a place assign'd between the two Camps, which should be guarded by an equal number of Soldiers of one and the other party; that they should name Judges of the Field, and be arm'd with the customary Arms of Cavaliers. They agreed moreover that during the three days there should be a Truce, during which the dead should be interr'd, and those persons who were in the City, be secur'd to come and visit their friends in the Camp.

The King added this last cause, out of the desire he had to see the Princess *Polixena* his Sister, whom he dearly lov'd, and whose sight he had many years been banished from. Those that were about him would likewise have had it concluded, that since the Combat was to be fought to spare Blood, if *Viridomar* should be vanquish'd, his Army should retire without delay out of the limits of *Francia*: but the Esquire having represented on the part of the Prince his Master, that whatever intention he might have to perform their desires, he could not be assured of those of the King his Father, and much less if he should

should lose his life in the Combat; that Article was pass'd over, and liberty remain'd to each to finish or continue the War, whatever were the success. This made us again murmur; but we were constrained to render our selves obedient to the Kings pleasure, whose eyes were blind to the injustice of this condition, through the desire he had to fight with a man to whom the possession of *Rosamond* was destin'd. The King having sign'd the Agreement, sent one of his Esquires with *Viridomar's*, to see the same performed by the Prince of the *Sueves*: but before his departure, he return'd Answer to his challenge in these terms:

Pharamond King of the Franks, to Viridomar Prince of the Sueves.

BOTH as from the Brother of *Vindimir*, and as from the Lover of *Rosamond*, I accept the Combat thou presentest me, and am well content that the reason thou hast to make War against me both in the one and the other quality, should be decided by our Arms. As the first hinders thee from being my friend, the last permits me not to love thee. I was before sufficiently unhappy by the hatred of *Rosamond*, nor is it necessary that the fortune of *Viridomar* should render me more miserable. I will therefore dispute thine with thee, though I cannot hope it; and shall do it so much more willingly, whilst I shall believe I dispute not only with the most happy, but most valiant of all my Rivals.

This was the Answer which my Prince returned to *Viridomar*, and in an hour afterwards, the agreement being sign'd by the Prince of the *Sueves*, the three days Truce was proclaimed in both Camps, and in the City, and both parties began to make use of the liberty it gave. By this assurance *Basogastus* came forth of the City, with the most considerable among those that had serv'd the King under his command, who came to visit him in his Tent. He receiv'd him not like a subject affectionate to his service; nor like a Governour, who in his youth had educated him with so much diligence; but like a real Father, with all these marks of tenderness and affection which a son could testify. *Basogastus* seeing in his person such fair and happy effects of his care, could not sufficiently thank the Gods, or applaud his own good fortune; and as he was considerable to all for his Merit, every one took part in the inexpressible joy which he testified.

The King had dedicated a longer time to the welcome which he thought due to him, if he had not been forc'd to retire at the arrival of the Princess *Polixena*, his sister, who with the Princess *Theodora*, wife of *Priam*, and many other Ladies which follow'd in several Chariots, alighted at the Tent of the King, whose impatience to see her had made him send for her. The whole Army ran with ardency, and the whole Army remain'd astonish'd at the sight of her admirable beauty. For my part, having the *Idea* of the beauties of *Rosamond* in my remembrance, I was of no easie belief that any other could astonish me; but I confess that at this last sight of *Polixena*, I lost that opinion: for I found her beauty so prodigiously augmented since our last departure from *Peapolis*, that I could with difficulty imagine it at all inferiour to that of *Rosamond*.

Having said hitherto nothing of this Princess, give me leave now, my Lord, to speak a little; and because it is not just you should longer be ignorant of the accomplishments of the Sister of my King, I will tell you, that with the fairest and most lively complexion that Nature did ever form, she has two black eyes, and her locks of no less sable hue. The colour of her hair, with the more than snowy whiteness of her complexion, produce an admirable effect of wonder; but her eyes create another far superiour: besides that they are well adorn'd, and of the most exact form in the world, they cast a lustre not easily supported, and a fire replete with a spirit more than natural: Yet they want no sweetness when she is pleas'd to be complaisant; and at those times that sweetness is the most charming in the world: but ordinarily a fierceness predominates over all her other qualities, but such a fierceness which much differing from any thing of rude or proud, there is nothing but it attracts, touches, and insensibly engages, though this effect be not ordinary, but to sweetness and complacency: nothing is so fair and beautiful as the form and colour of her lips, nothing more white than her teeth. Her visage is oval, but little, as her stature and person is indeed delicate, though noble and free, and her breasts and her hands more fair, if possible, than all the rest of her person. In short, it may be said that the Graces have compos'd every part of her, and all her actions; and though there be nothing

nothing of affected, neither in her countenance, nor in her discourse, she seems together civilised with an air so great, so noble, and so extraordinary, that into whatsoever estate Fortune can throw her, there may yet be discern'd the marks of that Grandeur which predominates in all her person; for her spirit is much above all that I can make you comprehend, and adorn'd with that noble vivacity which gives an admirable grace both to her discourse and to her actions: she hath a solidity in her judgment comparable to that of persons of a far greater age, both of the knowledge she hath of the world, and for a resolution not ordinarily found in those of her age nor sex. I will tell you nothing of her excellent virtue, of her wisdom, of the regular strictness of her manners; all that I can say will be below the truth, and it may be judged better by the conduct of her life, than it can by my discourse. She hath been accused often to want a loving tenderness and compassion, and my self have heard the King and the Princes her brothers laughing tax her of this default; but for my part, I believe that like other persons she might be capable of it, and that she might have a soul tender and passionate, if she had not always judged that such passions were vicious so soon as she perceiv'd them, or had not studied to resist them by a severe virtue.

You may well judge, my Lord, that a Princess a thousand times more amiable than I could represent her by my discourse, was receiv'd by a brother who dearly loved her, and who had not for many years seen her, with the greatest marks of affection; and it is most certain, that all that which a friendship of this nature could produce of tenderness and softness, appear'd at this time. The King embrac'd her a thousand times, and a thousand times testified his joy to see her arriv'd at that perfection of merit and beauty: And the Princess with an admirable grace, and a discourse full of Charms, let him know the share she took in that great glory, which by his admirable actions he had acquir'd amongst men; but the modesty both of the one and the other, soon made them leave off this subject; and from it they fell into an entertainment full of sweetness, and more particular to themselves, in which they spent a great part of the day.

The Princess *Theodomira* had visited the generous *Priam* her Husband, whose wounds, no more than those of Prince *Meroveus*, had not hindred them from appearing at the Camp in their Chariots, and who were now in bed in their Tents, with an entire hope of recovery. The King would not that the Princess his Sister, nor *Theodomira*, or those which had accompani'd her, should return to the City with *Basogastus*, of whose going thither, there was a necessity: and as *Theodomira* was well content to stay with her husband, to serve him in that condition wherein he was, the King desir'd the Princess to stay with him, at least the three days of the Truce; causing her to be magnificently lodged in his Tents which were the fairest, and most commodious in the world.

It was there that in a more particular discourse, he learn'd from her in what manner she had spent her time since their separation, and (by an apprehension which makes those that are violently tormented with any passion find some consolation, by discovering to any persons that interest themselves) he related to her the sad discourse of all that had befall him in his unfortunate loves, and made her understand the present deplorable condition of his life. The Princess often shed tears at this recital; but in the end, she stopt that source, not to augment the affliction of a Prince, who was already plung'd into an Abyss, and endeavour'd to make him hope not only that it was not impossible that the mind of *Rosamond* might change, but that (by what might be judg'd by the recital he had made of her discourse, and all her behaviour) her inclinations were strangers to those appearances of hatred she was oblig'd to testify to him.

The King, though little sensible of this hope, yet receiv'd it more kindly from the mouth of his sister, than he should have done from any other person. But if she were afflicted with the knowledge she had of his sad adventures, she could receive no comfort for the trouble she felt, nor assure her self from the fear that possess'd her, when she bethought her self that he was to fight against the Prince of the *Sueves*. The Renown spread abroad of his valour, and that which the King himself had proved in two encounters, fill'd her soul with terror, and made her shower down tears, notwithstanding the entreaties of the King, who reassur'd her the best he could possible, by telling her from how many dangers, which he had judg'd no less than this, his good fortune had retriev'd him. He told her likewise that to divertise her with a sight not ordinary to her, and to incense him to the Victory by a presence so dear to him, he resolv'd that she should behold the Combat together with *Theodomira*, and the other Ladies which had follow'd her, for whom he would cause a Scaffold to be erected in the Field; and though the Princess testifi'd great reluctancy, assuring him that she could not see him in that danger

without betraying too great marks of fear, yet he importun'd her in such manner, and abated her fear with so great hopes, that in the end she resolv'd to obey him.

The first and second day of the Truce pass'd in this manner; and that I may not retain you in too tedious a recital, the day appointed for the Combat no sooner appear'd, but all things were prepar'd. At an equal distance between the two Camps, they had encompass'd with Barriers a great space of ground, in which the two Princes were to fight: that part which view'd the Camp of the *Sueves*, and by which their Prince was to enter, was guarded by two thousand *Sueves*, chosen amongst the most considerable of their Army; and that which was on our side, by a like number of *Franks*, as had been agreed. The rest of the two Armies were to keep within their Camps, where their Officers had orders to detain them. On one of the other sides was erected a Scaffold for the Judges of the Field; and opposite to that, the King had caus'd another to be rais'd for the Princess, and the Ladies of her Train; having however sent to know of the Prince of the *Sueves*, if he would consent that the Princess *Polixena* his Sister, and some Ladies that were come with her to visit him, should be spectators of the Combat. The Scaffold for the Princess was covered with magnificent Tapistry, and had on the top stretched out very high a Pavilion of a light stuff but rich and shining with interwoven gold: and because all before it was open, there was to be seen below the seat appointed for the Ladies, and in the middle above all, that for the Princess, with a covering of gold which made it remarkable.

So soon as the hour appointed for this terrible Combat, which made so many thousands of persons to tremble, was come, that the Guards of the Field were rang'd, and that the Judges, who were *Basogastus* for the King, and *Haldan* for *Viridomar*, had taken their places in their Scaffolds; the Princess, and the Ladies of her Train were conducted to theirs by *Ibere*, *Geneband*, and many other considerable persons: and *Polixena* having taken her place (and made *Theodomira* and the other Ladies sit down in those ordain'd for them) drew all the eyes of those who were so near as to observe her; though it might be said that her beauty had lost some part of its lustre, by the effect of a fear which made her look more pale than ordinary, and seem'd to take from her eyes a part of that vigour which they had at other times. Her habit had been extreme careless, if she might have followed her own humour; the sadness which accompanied that fight, not only having made her forget, but refuse all ornaments, if the King, whose thoughts were contrary to hers, and who would not that at this time there should appear any thing of sadness in his party, had not importun'd her to do otherwise, and add the lustre of Gold and Jewels, to that of her excellent Beauty.

She had not been long plac'd, but that on both sides the Plain and the River might be heard to echo back the found of a hundred Trumpets; and at this noise, as terrible at this, as it had been pleasing and agreeable at other times, were seen to wax pale hundreds of visages, and hundreds of valiant men tremble, whose own peril could never have made them fear. A little after, and as it were both at the same time, the Champions presented themselves at the entrance into the Barriers, accompanied with two flourishing Troops of their own party, whose number was equal, as it had been agreed.

Though the soul of my Prince was abandon'd entirely to grief since his last misfortune, yet he would not now demonstrate it, nor give by the knowledge of it any cause of joy to his enemy; and therefore instead of denoting his sadness by his Arms, as he had for some time before done, not doubting but *Viridomar* would be magnificent in his, he covered himself that day with the fairest; nor had he any thing in his whole Equipage which was not pompous and magnificent, Prince *Sumnon* carried his Helmet, cover'd with several Plumes, *Charamont* came after with his Lance, chosen among a number for so important an office; and I had the honour to carry his Shield: In which, instead of the famous Livery of his House, he had caus'd to be painted a hand coming out of a Cloud, and darting Thunderbolts on a heart which was expos'd to them, with these words in the *Roman* Tongue.

Less cruel than those of your Eyes.

Entering into the Barriers, he cover'd his head with his Helmet, charg'd his right hand with his Lance, and his left with his Shield, and advanced with a countenance like to that of the god of war, at the same instant that *Viridomar* appeared on the other side in the same posture. It was impossible to see any thing more stately than his Arms, the precious stones whereof by the lustre of the Sun, which darted its Rays from above, dazled the eyes of the Beholders; yet they shone more lively on his Helmet, than on his Curia's, behind

hind which was rais'd a long Pennon laden with so many several Plumes, that his Head seem'd to bow under their weight. His Lance, though strong and weighty as it was, was cover'd with little scales and devices of gold and enamel; and on his Shield he had caus'd to be represented a Love in a languishing posture, turning his eyes from a Sun which darted its Rays through all the Hemisphere, and turning them towards another, which only appeared confusedly behind the Clouds, which conceal'd it, with these words in the Latine Tongue:

Whither my Destinies shall call me.

There were few of those persons who endeavour'd to explain the device of *Viridomar*, who did not believe that by the Sun which he disdain'd, he meant some beauty which he had known, and whom he had abandon'd for *Rosamond*, whom he had never seen nor known, but by the fame of her Renown. He was mounted on one of the fairest Horses in the world, fierce and proudly prancing; and whom he managed with so good a grace, that if I had seen him at another time, I had beheld him with pleasure and admiration.

The two formidable Warriours, having beheld each other with an eye full of incens'd anger, while the Sun was equally divided to them according to custom, after the Heralds had made their usual Proclamations, gently advanc'd to the distance of an ordinary Carriere, whence they darted at each other a countenance that struck fear into the most hardy; and when the Trumpets had given them the last signal, levelling their Lances, and letting their Horses go with a fury which nothing could equal, they encounter'd in the middle with a shock, which resembled rather that of two armed Gallies, or something more furious than that of only two men: their Lances were good and strong, but they broke into a thousand splinters, which flew towards the Sky with a violence sufficient to have struck the Stars from the Firmament; and the two valiant Knights having receiv'd the terrible blows on their Shields which refilled them, bended and shook in their Saddles through the force of two such powerful assaults: but staying themselves with all their strength, they resettled themselves equally, and spurring on their horses, whom so fierce a rencounter had almost set upon their Croupers, they finish'd their Carriere, and turning about, appeared in as good posture as if they had never encounter'd.

'Twas now that having turn'd head, they drew their terrible Swords, and were about to return to each other with a fury so much the greater, as the effect of their encounter, possibly little answerable to the hopes they had conceiv'd, had equally incens'd them; when by a prodigious effect of Fortune, *Viridomar* being near to the Scaffold of the Princess, though he had sufficient reason to busie himself wholly in the affair in hand, lifting up his eyes towards her, easily observ'd her on her seat, which was rais'd so much above the rest, that it was not easie for him to mistake her. At this sight he seem'd not only astonish'd, and wholly lost, but remain'd unmoveable; and planting himself before the Scaffold in the posture of a man who remembered no longer what he had to do: *O gods!* (said he, so high as to be understood by many persons) *this is the same:* and a little after, *Alas!* (added he) *what fortune is mine?*

He was in this posture when *Pharamond* came up to him with his Sword in his hand, and with a countenance which struck with fear all the *Sueves*. It had been easie for him to have struck him in a time wherein he put himself in no posture to defend himself; but as ordinarily he preserv'd in all fights his judgment entire, he observed the action and posture of *Viridomar*; and seeing that he neither prepared to assault him, nor defend himself, he would not make use of the advantage he gave him, but approaching him with his Sword advanc'd; *How,* *Viridomar* (said he) *hast thou then forgot that thou hast an enemy before thee, an enemy whom perhaps thou hast no reason to despise?*

The Prince of the *Sueves* seem'd to be awakened out of a profound sleep, at the words of *Pharamond*; and beholding him with an eye troubled with the different thoughts that turmoyl'd him; *Pharamond* (said he) *I am not at present in a condition to fight thee; and if thou art still generous, thou wilt not refuse to delay till to morrow the end of our Combat.* *Pharamond* was as much astonish'd at this Adventure, as he had ever been in his life; and as he certainly thought it was no fear of the event that could make *Viridomar* quit the Combat; so he could not divine the cause, nor imagine what judgment to make: he kept silence a while, observing his behaviour, but soon after breaking it, *We should do well* (said he) *to finish what we have begun: for we shall be blam'd by all the world, to have broken but one Lance to dispute Rosamond; but if thou hast any wound, or any reason which hinders thee*

to finish our Combat, I will not refuse thee the delay thou demandest. *Viridomar* answered not to these words of *Pharamond*; but having signified by bowing his head, that he thanked him for his courtesie, spurring on his horse with a prodigious swiftness, he presently got to the Barriers. and assoon disappeared from the sight of all the Spectators.

Never possibly any event, however extraordinary, had caus'd a greater astonishment, than was that of *Pharamond*, and all the Spectators at so strange an Adventure: and as there was none in all that great Plain, who could attribute this action of *Viridomar's* to any default of courage, so there was not any, who were not highly surpris'd, and who studied not to seek the true cause. Not but that, by his carriage near the Scaffold of the Princess, and by his words, which he had spoken high enough to be understood by her self; they believed that it might be an effect of her beauty, or that they did not judge her beauty able to produce as strange ones. But he having scarce time to behold her a moment, and at a time when his thoughts were otherwise employed, they knew not what judgment to make.

However it was, *Haldan* and all the *Sueves* testified much disorder, though they possibly rejoiced to see their Prince escape for that day, out of the great danger to which he was expos'd; and without speaking one word, they returned to their Camp. The *Franks* were more satisfied than they, in this event, being delivered from the fear they had for their Prince, whilst he could have no part in that scandal, which his enemy had to fear: but the joy of the Princess was much greater than that of any other persons; and she had joyc'd much more, if she had not had some fear for the following day, in which this cruel Combat was to be renewed.

When all the Soldiers were retired into their Tents, this action of the Prince of the *Sueves* was diversly talk'd of: and while the youngest and most boyling bloods would blame it, and draw consequences injurious to *Viridomar*; the King breaking silence; *Let not the bravest among you* (said he) *judge ill of the courage of Viridomar, his valour is above all the descants you can make; and you ought to believe as I believe, that it was by some just and powerful argument that he was induc'd to quit the Combat.* He added to these many other words, by which he made them know, that it was not for them to judge of the courage of one of the valiantest men in the world, against whom he had never gain'd advantage, though they had in Combat assaulted each other three several times; and of a man who might yet deprive him of his Honour, if Fortune were favourable to him.

The rest of that day was spent in this manner, and in the morning the King prepared himself to return to the Combat: the fears of the Princess returning with the light, she was in the Chamber of the King, where were the Princes and all the chief Commanders of the Army; and he already call'd for his Arms, at what time there entred the same Squire of *Viridomar*, who some days before had brought his Challenge: the King caus'd him to approach, judging well that he would speak with him; and the Squire having done his obeysance with the reverence he ought, presented him a Paper on the behalf of his Master, in which he found these words:

PHaramond, thou hast deprived my Brother of his life, and thy Sister hath given me my death; behold in what manner thy House triumphs over ours, and expect not the Combat from a man, who seeks no longer revenge for *Vindimir*, nor disputes with thee *Rosamond*.

In truth (said *Constance* to *Cleomer*, interrupting him) *you relate me a very strange adventure; and though all those of the King of the Franks have something in them worthy admiration, yet I cannot refrain from testifying to you how much I wonder at this last: but go on, if you please; for though I should devote the whole night to your rehearsal, I cannot suffer a discontinuance.*

The end of the third Book of the Second Part.

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK IV.

YOU may believe, my Lord (continued *Cleomer*) that the reading of that Letter from *Viridomar*, though it declared the cause which had made him quit the Combat, diminish'd not the astonishment they had conceiv'd at so extraordinary an accident : but that on the contrary, it gave the King, the Princess, and other persons about them, infinite matter of consideration and discourse on the Adventure. The King, having twice or thrice read it, sought for the Squire, to draw from his mouth a greater knowledge of the intentions of his Prince : but it was told him that he was departed while he read the Letter ; and being mounted on Horseback, was returned back in great haste.

The King finding himself more free by his departure, gave the Letter to the Princess his Sister to read, desiring that from her hands it should pass to those of *Sumnon*, *Ibere*, and other principal persons, who coveted to see it. At the reading of it, the countenance of *Polixena* was covered with a carnation dye, which render'd her yet more beautiful ; and the King beholding her with a sigh ; *My Sister* (said he) *I am possibly not lightly oblig'd to your beauty, nor could it produce its effects in a time more favourable to me : but in truth, I must confess I find it supernatural ; for though I was surpris'd by the divine beauties of Rosamond, the first moment I saw her, it was in a time wherein I dedicated all my affection to her, had nothing to think of but her, no enemy before me able to divert or busie my entire thoughts : This would make me judge that the Prince of the Sueves had seen you before, if I had not too great reasons to confute that opinion : For in sum, you were witness with what zeal, and with what animosity he desired the Combat against me ; and you are witness how he quitted it, and ceas'd to be my enemy, so soon as he saw you, and knew me for your Brother.*

The Princess answer'd not at all to this discourse of the King, either out of a modest shame which would not easily permit her, or out of anger for the presumption of a person, who durst declare so publickly, and make known to all the world he was enamour'd of her : yet after many importunities, she told the King that she had never seen *Viridomar*, and that she as well thought he had never seen her ; when the King again continuing ; *However it be* (said he) *I cannot refrain from conceiving infinite joy at this adventure ; for besides the danger I was expos'd to, in combating a man, whose strength has not been hitherto found inferior to mine ; I lose him, who of all my Rivals was the most formidable, and who with a merit equal to that of Balamir, and the most accomplish'd persons in the world, had the advantage to be ordain'd by the King of the Cimbrians to the possession of Rosamond. This good effect* (said the Princess, with a fresh blush) *might appease a part of the choler I have against him, if the cause which produced it, had ever produced anything less pleasing to me : but as nothing is more dear to me than your satisfaction and repose, I would willingly be expos'd to the war you wage against me, to see you freed from such an enemy, and such a Rival. As there are none but our friends* (reply'd *Pharamond*) *I shall without difficulty tell you, that besides the interest I have in the change of Viridomar, I see nothing in yours which may displease you : for besides that there is nothing in the world, to which by reason of his great degree, fair reputation, and all other advantages, this Prince may not aspire ; I confess, that in the concernments we had together, I have conceived so much esteem, though I had little friendship for him, and in his carriage wholly extraordinary as it is, I find something so great and so noble, that if he hath need of me at this time, I shall no way oppose him. The King finish'd these words laughing, but in such a manner as made the company judge he had spoke his thoughts ;*

and

and the Princess endeavouring to dissemble the trouble they gave her. *I hope my Lord* (said she to the King) *that if Viridomar keeps his word with you, we shall not hear any thing spoke of him, but by the noise of his renown; and then neither shall we have any subject to complain of him, nor you occasion to be either opposite or favourable to him.*

The King judg'd it not convenient to explain himself farther on this subject; nor would he press the Princess overmuch, in a matter he perceiv'd but little pleasing to her; but as the change of affairs requir'd new resolutions, the three days of truce being expir'd, and he not knowing whether the *Sueves* would continue the War, or retire with their Prince, he sent *Gastaldus* with a Trumpet to know their intention. *Gastaldus* went to their Camp in the ordinary form; and soon after returning, reported to the King, that *Viridomar* was departed from the Camp at the break of day, accompani'd only with three or four men; not as it was believed, with design to return to his father, from whom by his knowledg he could hope but a very ill treatment: That at his departure he had exhorted the *Sueves* to retire, and had prayed *Haldun* and the principal commanders of the Army, to lead them back into *Suevia*, hoping that the King of the *Franks* would grant them free passage: That he would not use a greater authority for fear to offend that of the King, who was highly jealous; but had testified to all the Captains, that he would never lose the remembrance of what they should do at his desire: That they resolv'd to obey, though they infinitely fear'd the displeasure of their King; and were ready to retire, if *Pharamond* would give them a free retreat.

The King, who with no small trouble beheld the miseries of his people, entertain'd with joy the *Sueves* resolution, and not only afforded them all sorts of assistance and favour in their retreat, but offer'd all sorts of good entertainment and noble conditions in his Court, to such as might fear the cholera of their King. He gave magnificent presents to the principal, and treated the rest like Friends and Allies, through all the Lands of *Franconia*; delivering our Country from the oppression of their Arms, and from a bloody War, in which by the unjust displeasure of their King, there had perish'd many thousands of men. The King enter'd into *Peapolis*, where he had not for a long time been seen: and *Franconia* breath'd under the sweetness of peace, though to all appearance it could not be of long continuance.

The *Franks* began now infinitely to rejoyce, at the so much desired sight of their Prince: and as by his excellent virtues, and the sweetness of his government, he had drawn the hearts of his people with a violent affection, all his subjects ran from all parts to *Peapolis* to see him, so that his Court was without doubt greater than that of the greatest Monarchs. There might you behold renew'd all the pleasures, and all the most flourishing divertisements, by the magnificence of the Prince, which drew from all parts all that could contribute to them. But during the repose of others, his mind was cruelly tormented; and if the heat of the War, the fence of Honour, and the jealousy he had conceiv'd against *Viridomar*, had apparently buried a part of those violent griefs that afflicted him: Now he had no longer those objects of glory, of duty, and of emulation, which had before buied his mind, but that his grief and his love might more easily be felt; in this appearance of repose he seem'd to tast, they began again to make War upon him with all their forces, and cast him into the most disconsolate condition imaginable. The divine beauties of *Rosamond*, and all that could contribute to his love, not only now return'd to his memory, but withal what was most powerful to force his love, what was most formidable to cause his fear, at the same time presented it self. The marks of her first anger for his former offences, and that of her last for the death of *Theobaldus*, with the cruel promise by which she was engag'd to pursue him to death, appear'd before his eyes in their most terrible shapcs, and rendred his condition more miserable than that of the most unfortunate living. He loved the Princess of the *Cimbrians* with the most violent love that ever heart felt, but he knew he was hated with a hatred little inferiour to the love he bore her, and with a hatred which not only made her insensible of his love, but made her arm, or cause to be arm'd all the Power imaginable against his life; yet with this knowledge he could not refrain not only from adoring her, but could no longer live without seeing her; but as he well perceiv'd that the sight of her was a happiness, he could with little appearance of reason hope for, he miserably consum'd and spent his days of all men the most deplorably.

All his friends excessively afflicted themselves; and as the cause of his evil was no longer secret, those who were the most familiar with him, the young Princes, and those to whom age gave a little more authority, as *Priam*, *Basogastus*, *Charamont*, and others, represented to him all things which they judg'd convenient to yield him comfort: but
though

though he hearkned to their discourse with his accustom'd affability, and instead of being troubled at it, testify'd his obligations for these marks of their affection. yet he made them in the end know that these endeavours of theirs were wholly unprofitable, and that as he was unfortunate in a manner wholly strange, and of which never any example had been seen, if they could not find remedies proportionate to the nature of his ill, he must only lament it, and attend some comfort from heaven, or from the change of his fortune. He spoke these words oftentimes with a troubled countenance, and not seldom with tears, which with all the greatness of his courage he could not retain, and in such sort did he soften them by his discourse, and the sweetness of his behaviour, that they had no longer power to oppose him, but receiv'd into their souls the sad impression of his miseries.

The Princess *Polixena* was afflicted in such manner, that it seem'd not to be the grief of a brother, but her own that she resent'd; and as the King discover'd himself to her more than to any other person, all that he had in his heart, she had greater cause to afflict her self, and become passionate for him, than those who only saw the exterior marks of his love and grief.

To settle him again in those glorious designs which the course of his love had interrupted, they propos'd to him the passing over the *Rhine*, and the Conquest of the *Gauls*, in a time wherein it was so much more easie, in regard the *Roman Empire* was depriv'd of all its strength, the *Goths* under the conduct of *Alaric* being possess'd of *Rome* and *Italy*, the *Vandals* under *Gunderick* being re-entred into *Spain*. The Emperour *Honorius* passing his life in solitude at *Ravenna*, not so much as informing himself of the miseries of the Empire; and you, my Lord, in whom only it could find a stay and defender, languishing in the chief City of the *Tectosages* of a cruel wound, from whence nought but death was expected: But the love of *Pharamond*, who other times had been so desirous of all opportunities to reap honour, and so firmly fix'd to this enterprize, render'd him now insensible of this Importunity; and he represent'd to those who spoke to him of it, indeed with sufficient appearance of reason, that though he had a passionate desire, yet he had little cause to abandon his Country, and deprive it of its main strength at a time, when it was threatned by the King of the *Cimbrians*, and the King of the *Sueves*, who intended not only to assault it with all their own powers, but according to the common report were arming all *Germany* against him; but that when by the assistance of heaven, either by Peace, or the events of War, he should see his Country secured from his enemies, they should see him more desirous than ever to attempt any enterprize to which honour call'd him.

He liv'd, or rather languish'd miserably in this condition, when one day walking in an Alley in the fair Gardens of the Palace with the Princess his Sister, three men came to salute him, two of which he presently knew for an Esquire of Prince *Marcomire's*, and one of the Officers he had left with him; and the third soon after for *Albimir*, that Inhabitant of *Marobuda*, of whom I have already spoke, by whose means his Letter was delivered to *Rosamond*, and from whom he had receiv'd a Note fastned to an Arrow during the War with *Gondioch*; and whom at his entrance into *Marobuda*, he could not find, though he made diligent search after him. He receiv'd the two first with his accustomary affability; but so soon as he knew *Albimir*, he embrac'd him, and shew'd him a thousand kindnesses extraordinary, not without many times changing colour, and giving the Princess his sister occasion to note that the sight of him did very much concern him.

He demanded in the end with a longing desire, and as it were all at the same time, news of the Princess *Rosamond*, of Prince *Marcomire*, and the cause of their arrival: they feared at first to speak before the Princess; but the King having told them that he had nothing to conceal from her, the Squire of *Marcomire* assured him that the Prince his Master was recover'd of his wounds, having been a long time ill at *Egitina*: that he had been well attended by the care of *Albifinda*, and by the Orders of *Rosamond* her self; and that by what he could judge, the stay he had there made, was not at all prejudicial to him; but that at the same time that the King of the *Cimbrians* was arriv'd at *Marobuda*, *Briomer* had caused him to be stopp'd at *Egitina*, where he was very strongly guarded, and not permitted to see but a small number of his people whom they had left with him to serve him: That the Princess of the *Sueves* had made great complaints, representing that a Prince who had expos'd his life for her defence; and shed his blood to rescue her from the power of her enemies, should not be treated like an enemy: That the Princess of the *Cimbrians* seem'd but ill satisfied; but that neither the one nor the other could hinder the effects of the King's will, nor that of *Briomer*, who was solely powerful with him, and seem'd more incens'd than himself to the

revenge of *Theobaldus*: That the Principal of those who attended the Prince, were likewise detain'd and kept Prisoners; and that the Squire who spoke, and the Officer of the King had with difficulty sav'd themselves by the assistance of *Albimer*, who was likewise come with them, by reason of the little safety he could hope for in the Court of the King of the *Cimbrians*, where he was known to be affectionate to the King of the *Franks*, by reason of the earnestness he shewed to serve his Brother.

The King was infinitely displeas'd and vex'd at the imprisonment of his Brother, and testified a great sorrow to have forsaken him at a time when he was strong enough to have rescued him out of the hands of his enemies: but remembering at the same time, that neither the Prince was in a condition to follow him, nor could he have taken him from the place where he was, without carrying the war to a place where *Rosamond* was in person, he found himself not so guilty, and less worthy of reproach.

But all the displeasure which had incens'd him for the interest of *Marcomire*, could not hinder him from lending attention to what they said concerning *Rosamond*; and he understood from the mouth of *Albimer*, who was better instructed in the affairs of the *Cimbrians* than *Marcomire's* Esquire; that *Rosamond*, having made some stay at *Egitina*, was by the Orders of the King her Father, at his arrival there, return'd to *Marobuda*, accompanied by the Princess *Albifinda* and Prince *Balamir*: That the last had been admirably well received by the King of the *Cimbrians*, as well for the assistance he hop'd from a Prince of his degree, as because that with some Troops that *Briomer* had given him before the arrival of the King, he had utterly driven the *Burgundians* out of the Country of the *Fohemians*, and in several encounters overcome *Gontran*, who commanded them: That it was not to be doubted, but he was passionately amorous of the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, and that she testified a particular esteem for him: That the King of the *Cimbrians* incens'd with a furious choler against *Pharamond* for the death of *Theobaldus*, would interest all *Germany*, and all the world if it were possible in his quarrel: that he had demanded the assistance of all his Neighbours, and that some days before the departure of *Albimer*, having understood how the Prince of the *Sueves* had abandon'd the Combat and War against him, and renounc'd those pretensions he had for *Rosamond*, after he had been transported violently against his proceedings, seeing himself free in the disposal of his Daughter, and disengag'd from his word given to the King of the *Sueves*, had declar'd, and sent to be declar'd throughout all *Germany*, that he would give *Rosamond*, and his Kingdom with her, to that Prince who should bring him the head of *Pharamond*, and that with that price only she could be attain'd: That it was judg'd, that this hope would encourage many Princes to the enterprize, to which a less would not so easily have carried them: That they counted a great number among those who pretended, who would not be wanting to present themselves with all their Forces: That the King, as it was believed, would not make any long stay at *Marobuda*; but intended to depart, as it was said, towards the Frontiers, to the Country of the *Sidons*; to have there some conference with the King of the *Sueves*, and the rest of the Princes which armed themselves on his side.

To this discourse of affairs in general, *Albimer* added for his particular interest, that he was infinitely dissatisfied that he did not meet the King in *Marobuda* at his entrance, as well to have given him advice of what was pass'd, as he had begun to do by his Note, as to offer himself, to do him all sorts of service; but that to his grief, and by the misfortune of *Theobaldus*, which he could have diverted, had he seen the King, he was the day before sent by *Briomer* to *Egitina*, and there detained by a dangerous sickness: That being there, when Prince *Marcomire* arriv'd, he had had the honour to visit him many times, whilst he lay sick of his wounds, and to employ himself in all things wherein he thought himself able to serve him: but in the end, being suspected by *Briomer*, he was no longer permitted to see him, and himself threaten'd, if he did not escape thence; which had oblig'd him to depart with the two *Franks*, after having assisted them in their escape, as much as was possible: and that he would now seek nothing but at the feet of a Prince, to whose service he was wholly devoted, and would fix himself till death.

The King thanked *Albimer* for those marks he had received of his affection, and not only promis'd him an assured retreat in his Court, but a fortune, and establishment much different from what he had receiv'd among the *Cimbrians*, and such that he should have no cause to pine after his native Country: but having satisfied him on that side, like an acknowledging and magnificent Prince, he open'd his mind to that increase of grief, which the discourse of *Albimer* and his companions had given him; and he found so much trouble for the last proofs of the hatred of *Rosamond*, and in the imprisonment of *Marcomire*,
that

that he could neither support it nor dissemble it. In the hatred of *Rosamond*, he found nothing but what he had before foreseen; and he had understood from that Princess her own mouth, that she would arm all the earth against him: That the King of the *Cimbrians*'s power though not so dreadful, yet was sufficiently formidable by the effects it might produce; nor had he at all any doubt but he would testify the most violent resentments for the death of his Son. But in the imprisonment of *Marcomire*, a Prince of admirable merit, whom he had always dearly loved, and who was not fallen in that danger, but for his particular interest, he met with matter of affliction, in which he could not comfort himself; and as in this accident he saw himself not only concern'd by fraternal amity, but by honour, which engag'd him to succour his Brother, he could neither find one moment of repose, nor one grain of patience.

Ab! let us march, (said he, breaking out into a passion) *let us march without farther delay; and since my desperate misfortunes will yet again lead me to these cruel Plains, where I have lost so much, let us once more cover them with armed men, and rescue Marcomire from that barbarous King, in whom my good intentions begat nothing but cruelty. It is to me a desperate mischief, but it is a mischief with which no consideration can dispence; and at the price of all my fortunes, and all my repose, nay of mine own life, I must deliver Marcomire.*

He remained some time in this resolution, preparing to act what he thought himself bound to, notwithstanding all that his love could inspire him with: but a little after, listening to thoughts quite contrary, and feeling the power of his affection, which presented it self with its entire Forces; *Wherefore* (replied he to himself) *should I again make War against Rosamond? for I shall not only present my self in Arms against her Father, but I shall with my Arms assault that same City, where she is environed with Marcomire, and with the same ill fortune which hath accompanied me in my love, after having slain her Brother, I should put my self in danger to deprive her Father of his life.*

This thought made him rave and tremble from head to foot: and as by the proofs he had made, he had reason to fear his fortune in all that regarded his love, he fear'd that it would prove so fatal to him, as to make him slay the Father of *Rosamond*. This fear made him grow pale; and still more and more fortifying it self in his mind, made him resent all it could contain of most cruel, or most terrible: so that having his spirit wholly fill'd with this dreadful Idea; *Ab,* (cried he) *I will not again make war against Rosamond, and draw on my self that danger (to which I seem provoked by my cruel destinies) to charge my self before her, with crimes yet less pardonable than those I have unhappily committed; I have already too much shed the blood of her miserable subjects, and I would I could repay with all mine, that which I have spilt of her Illustrious House: I have other ways to satisfy what I owe to Duty, and to fraternal Amity; and I will yet deliver Marcomire from the hands of our enemies, without appearing an enemy to Rosamond.*

He was turmoyl'd for some days by these different thoughts, without being able to determine what he should do: but in the end, he took his resolution, a resolution wholly agreeable to his love, though little to prudence and his dignity; and having caused *Albimer* to be call'd, withdrawing with him alone into his Closet; *Albimer* (said he) *whatsoever injury I receive from the King of the Cimbrians, I cannot resolve again to carry a war into your Country; and though I am oblig'd to it, by the unjust imprisonment of my Brother, I may find perhaps ways to deliver him, without rendring my self more criminal to the Princess whom I adore, and whom I shall adore to my death: and if all others fail, I have one infallible one, which I shall embrace in the utmost extremity, and by which I shall acquit my self at the same time, of what I owe to Marcomire, and of the hatred of Rosamond. I fear indeed that if the King of the Cimbrians see me return armed into his Country, he should be transported to some fatal resolutions against my Brother, and that those powers I employ for his liberty, should be turned against his life: but above all, Albimer, I cannot live without the sight of Rosamond, though the loss of my life should infallibly accompany the sight of her; for at present, it is so unfortunate and deplorable, that it would be but a bad effect of its prudence, to think of its preservation; and I hazard so little in hazarding it, that my friends cannot blame me with reason, when they see it expos'd to this danger. 'Tis for this reason, Albimer, that I have need of your assistance: and if by your help I may pass unknown to Marobuda, and remain there some days, and find means to see the Princess, you ought not only hope all things from my acknowledgments; but if this hope is beneath your courage, you may be assured that I will be indebted to you for something more precious than all I can hazard, nor ever forget how much I am oblig'd.*

After these words, he more clearly explain'd his intention to *Albimer*, whom though the greatness of the danger to which he would expose himself, made somewhat fearful,

he found in him so much disposition to serve him, that he had nothing to conquer in his spirit, but that fear he had for a life or a liberty so precious: in the end, the King vanquish'd all difficulties, not by reason, but by resolution; and the same day, calling *Priam*, *Basogastus* and *Charamont*, to whom only he would communicate his design, to hinder them from being alarm'd by his absence, and to oblige them to supply by their prudence the ill effects it might produce. You may judge, my Lord, that they withstood his design with infinite reasons, but they withstood it in vain; and the King, who by his natural affability, had all his life treated them rather like Friends than Subjects, spoke to them now with so much authority, and testified so well that he would be master at this time, that they were constrain'd to submit to his will, though with much aversion and discontent.

Yet it was by their counsel that the King parted not from *Peapolis*, in an estate so as to alarm his Court or people; but as he had not his Troops in that readiness his necessities requir'd, by reason of the threats and preparations of his enemies, and so wanted no pretence to visit the Frontiers, daily threaten'd to be assaulted by the *Sueves* and *Cimbrians*; after he had taken leave of the Princess, as for a little voyage, and left *Priam* and *Basogastus* at *Peapolis*, he departed with the greatest part of the Cavalry, and coasting along the Banks of the *Mein*, advanced to *Mensgade* which was in our possession, and is little distant from the Frontiers of the *Cimbrians*. From thence he visited several places, which he gave order to fortifie; and having thus employed two days, the third he remanded *Ibere* and *Genebaud*, who had followed him from *Peapolis*, with some orders to perfect the Levies; and the fourth he quitted his Party, and leaving *Charamont* (privy to his secret) order to command them on that Frontier, and not remove himself thence, he departed without any more with him than *Albimer*, my self and two Esquires.

With this little Train, which he found yet too great for his design, he resolv'd to pass into a Country, where not only all things arm'd themselves against him, but besides the proper Forces of the Country, they had call'd all their Neighbours to attack that life he went so voluntarily to expose. This action denoted so much more the violence of his love, as he was naturally full of wisdom, and that in his greatest youth, there were never observ'd in him those transportations of mind, which were ordinarily found in persons of his age. However, I may speak it with truth, that the consideration of *Marcomire*, in whose imprisonment he conceiv'd both his honour and fraternal love equally concern'd, was no less powerful over his spirit, than the power of his love; and that since he could not resolve to wage war against the Father of *Rosamond* for the liberty of *Marcomire*, if all other ways to restore it failed, he was resolv'd to put himself into the power of the *Cimbrian* King, to release his Brother, and to pay in this manner what he ought to the friendship of *Marcomire*, and to the hatred of *Rosamond*. He did me the honour oftentimes to make me the partner of these his thoughts; and the knowledge I had of his humour, and the truth of all his words, made me give but too much credit to all his discourse.

As at our setting forth we were not far distant from the Frontiers of *Bohemia*, so it was but the second day after that we entred that Country; and our entrance was so much the more easie, by reason that the King of the *Cimbrians*, well inform'd of the love and intentions of *Pharamond*, not fearing he would make war against him, had not caus'd the Avenues of his Kingdom to be guarded as at other times: With the same ease we went farther into the Country, under the conduct of *Albimer*, who knew the ways and passages most open, and whom the King caus'd to pass for our Master, in those places where we could not hinder our selves from being seen; yet we shunn'd the meeting with people as much as possible: and as in those preparations for war, it was no strange thing to see armed men travel, the King scarce march'd at all without his Arms, nor carried he in this voyage any other weapons than what common persons might bear, and not those magnificent and stately ones, to which he was accusom'd, and which might make him be taken notice of by their sumptuousness and beauty.

As we advanc'd into the Country, the King understood with the news of the departure of the King of the *Cimbrians* from *Marobuda* towards the Frontiers, that of the great force which he arm'd against him: but by the usual delay of such affairs, and the mighty preparations of the King of the *Cimbrians*, he judg'd well that there would yet be some time spent, before he could enter into *Franconia*. For in sum, though with the Forces of his Realm, and those of the King of the *Sueves*, who notwithstanding the love and behaviour of his Son, was not disinited from him, he was sufficiently able to make war against us; yet the knowledge he had of the valour of *Pharamond*, and the difficulty he should have to vanquish him, if he did not arm a great part of the world against him,

had

had made him resolve not to assault him, but with such a potent force, as should make all others yield to it: and not doubting but the hopes of possessing *Rosamond*, would draw a great number of Princes to his party, he attended the effect, and assembled a world of enemies to come and overwhelm *Franconia*.

We received advice that *Godegesile*, successour of that same *Radugaise*, whom you, my Lord, slew in *Italy*, and King of the *Herules*, and part of the Oriental *Goths*, a Prince of great valour and high reputation, charmed with those sweet hopes to possess *Rosamond*, had summon'd all the Forces of his Realm to come and assist her Father. That *Ardaric* King of the *Alains*, that same *Ardaric* whom you drove out of *Spain*, having till now unprofitably sigh'd after the beauties of *Rosamond*, whom he had seen, and by whom he had been disdain'd, seeing himself recall'd by the promise of the King her Father, to those hopes he had lost, arm'd the *Alains* for this quarrel, and prepar'd to march with the *Cimbrians* against us. That *Amalaric* King of the *Turingiens*, and *Odoacre* King of the *Basternes*, equally surpris'd with the beauties of *Rosamond*, either by the report of her far spreading renown, or by the sight of her portraicture, which her Father had sent into all Countries and Nations, and allured by that fair hopes he gave them, hasten'd to this war with a formidable power: but the most surpris'ing news that reached the King, was, that King *Gondioch* himself, for whose interest he had attracted the hatred of the King of the *Cimbrians*, being recovered of those wounds which he had received in the combat against *Balamir*, making all other considerations yield to his hopes to possess *Rosamond*, had not only offer'd to the King of the *Cimbrians* the employing of all his powers against us, but had with others been received into the Alliance he demanded, and to the hopes to possess *Rosamond*, by the destruction of *Pharamond*.

This last action of the King of the *Burgundians*, did truly incense my Prince: but notwithstanding so terrible a preparation, and the union of so many great Princes against him, was able to strike terror into the best assur'd mind, it did not at all shake his; either through the grandeur of his courage, which made him despise the greatest dangers, or through the little interest he took in his own preservation, in a time wherein his life was odious to him. *Would to God* (said he with a sigh) *that with all these great enemies, we had not the hatred of Rosamond to struggle with: we should possibly little esteem their power; if it were not armed with a power far more terrible.*

However he was not wholly insensible at this news; and though by the prepossession of his love, he had almost forgot all he ought to himself, he could not forget that assistance he ought to his people in those miseries that threaten'd them; and his disquiet had been unexpressible, had he not believed that the great preparations of his enemies would delay their executions, and give him time to return to the defence of his Country.

Being now approached near the heart of the Country, we received two advices, which though different in themselves, did both extremely concern him: by the one, we understood, that Prince *Marcomire*, whom the King of the *Cimbrians* had caused to be arrested at *Egitina*, where he was straitly guarded, being taken out of prison to be conducted to *Marobuda*, by those orders which *Briomer* received from his King, was deliver'd and taken from his Guards which had charge of him, without being able to judge from whence that assistance came, or to hear any news of him after his deliverance, though *Briomer* was extremely tormented, and manifested infinite displeasure at his liberty: by the other we were informed, that the Princess *Rosamond*, with the Princess *Albisinda*, whom the changes that happen'd to their Families could not disunite, was retired after the departure of the King to *Lisurgis*, a magnificent Palace of the King her Father, about four hours journey from *Marobuda*, where she was resolv'd to attend the return of the King; and liv'd in the mean time, in as great a retirement as was possible.

At the news of the liberty of *Marcomire*, the King my Master entertain'd all that joy so welcome tidings were able to inspire him with: for what he ought to the friendship of such a Brother, and to his honour, which was not meanly engag'd in such imprisonment, had possess'd him with a trouble, from which he could not be deliver'd without infinite satisfaction: he manifested his joy to us, by all imaginable exteriour signs: but though the imprisonment of *Marcomire* had been in part the cause of his voyage, his liberty made him not break off his design, or discontinue it: and indeed we were so nigh to the Palace where *Rosamond* sojourn'd, that no consideration could oblige him to return without seeing her: and her present retirement at *Lisurgis*, contributed much to facilitate his design; for fortune so order'd, that a Sister of *Albimer's*, a widow, for some years past, a woman of a great spirit, and who by many effects of the goodness of the King my Master, was no less affectionate to his interests than her Brother, had a very fair house on the Banks of the

Elba, where she at present liv'd, and which was not above an hours walk distant from the King's.

Albimer, who, however fearful of the great danger to which the King expos'd himself, yet had still a great desire to serve him, propos'd immediately this conveniency to execute his design: and as he doubted not but that his sister went every day to *Lisurgis*, (as well to complement the Princess, to whom she was very acceptable, as to visit her younger sister, who was in her service, as I believe I have told you) and was not ignorant of the good intentions she bore towards my Prince, nor distrusting her discretion and conduct in things of greater importance; he counsel'd the King to retire to this house, which was in the middle of a Wood, distant from all Roads, and in the most solitary place of all the Country.

The King, whose desire to see what he lov'd, shut his eyes to all considerations of danger, and who rather than fail of his intents, had resolv'd to enter *Marobodu*, where his countenance had been seen by all the World, and where he could not have stayed, but with the hazard of those perils you may easily imagine, adher'd to the advice of *Albimer* as the best effect of his good fortune, and committing his safety to his conduct, he suffer'd himself to be guided to that house, like a man whose passions had left him no thoughts of life.

Besides the interest which *Albimer* had to conceal the arrival and stay of the King in the Country, he was likewise oblig'd to conceal his own; not doubting but that besides the suspicion already had of him at Court, they might have understood his journey into our Country; and so his proper disgrace, which permitted him not to shew himself, did afford us the less opportunities, and oblig'd us to a greater restraint, than if he had had the liberty to walk abroad, and suffer himself to be seen: for this reason he would not that we should arrive at his sisters, but by night: and led us by unusual ways, though well known to him: but before the approach of night, there besel to the King an adventure so extraordinary, that it makes me believe, my Lord, it will give you some astonishment.

We had scarce two hours journey to the Place, whither we were to go, and we began to enter into a Wood of great extent, where ordinarily the Kings of the *Cimbrians* took their pleasure in the Chase, when we first heard a great noise, and soon after casting our eyes among the trees, which were not there very thick, we saw, though with confusion, a Combat of many men on horseback. The King, who for the reasons he had to conceal himself in that Country, endeavouring to avoid the meeting with any person, stop'd at this sight, to consider what resolution he should take, either to pursue his way, or to take another course which *Albimer* propos'd, when he saw coming towards us on full speed a young man without Arms, and with a visage on which all possible marks of fear and grief were pourtray'd: he was already very near us, and I believe that the prepossession of his mind permitted him not to see us, when the King out of his natural generosity, forgetting the design he had to conceal himself, advanced towards him, and demanded the cause of the Combat we beheld, and the disorder which appear'd in his person. The young man attended not the end of his demand, but precipitately interrupting him: *Whatever you be (said he) if you be not of the number of our enemies, succour virtue and valour oppress'd in the person of the great Balamir, who alone and without other Arms than his sword, defends his life against a Troop of Assassins which have assaulted it.*

He spoke to the King only these words, and in the same instant quitted him, believing that he ought to go search a greater assistance than we could give him, against a number of men thrice as many as we. The King stop'd some time, to consider the strangeness of this adventure, and the fantastick humour of his fortune, which had conducted him to such an opportunity; but he deliberated not at all what resolution to take, but when *Albimer* was now ready to open his mouth, and to represent to him that this *Balamir*, to whom he was demanded to give assistance, and an assistance which he could not give without running too great a hazard of his life, was his greatest enemy and most formidable Rival, stopping him at his first words: *Albimer (said he) I know your intentions, but I cannot conform mine; and though perhaps I am so much concern'd in my love, that I could understand without grief the death of such a Rival as Balamir, and perhaps with that my fortune had not led me hither to assist him, yet I am not so ignoble to let him perish, now I have the power to help him; nor could I ever pardon my self of this unworthiness, were I capable to commit it.*

Finishing these words, he spurred on his Horse towards the place where he distinctly beheld the fight: I followed him as fast as I could possible; and *Albimer*, who was likewise armed, speeded after us with a gallant assurance. In a few minutes the King came to the stage

stage of this unequal fight; and as soon he saw those things which struck himself with astonishment; in effect, one man alone, but a man of the noblest Air in the world, (if my Prince had not been) clad only with a small hunting Robe, and with no other Arms but his Sword, did not only mingle himself among a Troop of fifteen or sixteen men armed Cap-a-pe, but had by the effects of a prodigious valour, made three or four tumble dead at his feet, wounded many others, and in spite of the number, and the advantage of their Arms, made the *Assassins* fear in such sort, that the most hardy durst not approach him without trembling. I believe that their number had not been able to have given them a victory over him, had he been defended with Arms; but having nothing on which might preserve his person from those blows they gave, and not having a body impene-trable, though his force was prodigious, and his courage invincible, he was reduced to extream danger: for besides that his cloaths began to be dyed in several places with his blood, his Horse fell dead between his legs at the very instant we arriv'd. Yet he raised himself up with an admirable agility, and resting his back against a Tree, presented the point of his sword to his Enemies, with an assurance which yet made them fear, though it could not have preserved his life at that time, if help had been a little longer delayed.

Pharamond having for some time beheld with admiration these extraordinary effects of his valour, flew like a raging Lion amongst the Troop of *Assassins*, and by the shock of his Horse opening a passage through the Circle which environed him, with his first charge struck terror into the most confident minds. The first that would oppose himself to his irresistible valour, receiv'd a thrust in his Throat, which made him at the same instant with his blood yield up his soul: at the second blow he made a head with the helmet fall at the feet of *Balamir*. This terrible beginning stopt their fury, who seemed most eager after the death of *Balamir*; and by giving that Prince whom they assaulted time to breath, they permitted him to cast his eyes upon my Prince, and take notice of the great help he received: he saw how almost at the same moment a third blow threw down a third enemy, and he that gave it, charg'd the rest with so much resolution as made them forget their design to assault his life, and think of their own defence. If he had had time to dedicate to admiration, he had done it without doubt to that he believ'd due to the great effects of *Pharamond's* valour; but judging that it was now more just to joyn himself with his defender, than to admire him, he made use of the liberty he gave him to charge his left Arm with a Shield he saw at his feet; and casting himself on a Horse, which without a Master pass'd close by him, he returned to the Combat with his Sword in his hand; and spurring up by the side of *Pharamond* with his Sword in his hand, made him mark with astonishment, and it may be with some displeasure, the courage of his Rival. I did what was possible for me at such a pinch, to render my self worthy the honour to accompany so great a Matter; and *Albimer* fought near me with sufficient gallantry: but our enemies, whether they fear'd a greater help, or found themselves too weak to resist the tempest; fell from the Arms of *Pharamond* and *Balamir*, made little resistance, but after having a short time maintain'd the fight with infinite disorder, and seeing more of their Companions pressed to the ground under the weight of their gaping wounds, forsook their enterprize, and in the swiftness of their Horses sought their safety. *Balamir* incens'd by their treachery, and the wounds he had receiv'd; following them, slew some of the slowest; but he soon return'd asham'd to pursue vanquish'd and affrighted men, having more impatience to return thanks to his defender, than to revenge himself of his enemies. He approached him with a demeanour, which equally signified his acknowledgments and astonishment; and by his Majestick port, and that admirable grace he observ'd in all his person, perswaded himself so much to his advantage, that though his Dignity was unknown to him, he could not hinder himself from regarding him with some respect.

Pharamond resolving not to be known by him, had lifted up but a small part of his Viser, so that *Balamir* could difficultly discern any part of his visage; but that of *Balamir*, who was unarmed, appeared entire to the eyes of my Prince, and made him behold in the person of his Rival a man of the highest and noblest Air in the world: they beheld each other some time without speaking; and *Balamir* was about to break silence, to thank *Pharamond* for the assistance he had given him, when my Prince, who saw, and truly saw with great impatience and trouble, no small quantity of blood on his cloaths, interrupted him at the beginning of his discourse, to demand of him whether he were not dangerously wounded. *I am not* (said the Prince of the *Huns*) *though I have many wounds; and I hope the Gods will yet lend me life to return a part of what I owe to him who hath so ge-*
nerously

nerously preserved it. You can defend it your self by your own valour (replied my Prince) and both by the proofs which I have seen, and the fame which is spread through the world, I know well that my assistance was not at all necessary. The extremity in which you have found me (answered Balamir) may oppose it self to the modesty of your discourse; and though you had been hitherto the greatest of mine enemies, I will acknowledge till death that I am oblig'd to you for my life. I believe (replied Pharamond) that your enemies themselves owe all that service to your vertue which I have rendred you; and I doubt not at all but that Pharamond whose head you have promised to the King of the Cimbrians, had fought in your defence, had he found you in this danger. I believe things much more difficult from the vertue of Pharamond (replied Balamir) and perhaps he hath enemies who would not refuse to expose their lives for his safety in a like adventure; but though I have promised to fight both against Pharamond, and against all the men in the world in the quarrel of Rosamond, yet I was never so rash as to promise the head of Pharamond; for besides that we ought to act with more modesty against a Prince of so fair a reputation, I doubt not but he will defend his head against all the Power of the earth. If he defends it against you (replied my Prince) he will defend it easily against the rest of his enemies; and by what I hear by publick Renown, I doubt not but those who have so highly engag'd in so bold an enterprize, will run a doubtful hazard.

These words oblig'd the Prince of the Huns to look more strictly upon my King, and possibly with some suspicion, when we saw appear eight or ten men on horseback, who advanced towards us on full speed. The King no sooner saw them, but he demanded of Balamir if they were his enemies; but the Prince who knew them, though they were yet a good space distant, having assur'd him that they were his friends, and persons who came to serve and assist him: I leave you then with them (said he) since I am no longer necessary to you, and that I am called hence by affairs very important.

Finishing these words, he turned the head of his Horse to depart, when Balamir stopping him by the skirts of his Armour, Wherefore (said he) will you leave me without letting me know to whom I am oblig'd for my life? and when you should be Prince Marcomire, as many appearances make me suspect, you may believe me, that those contentions I have for love, or for glory, with the King of the Franks, should not hinder me from rendring to his brother what I owe to my valiant Defender. I am neither him whom you believe (said my Prince) nor any other person may be known to you; but I hope that we shall see each other in a place where you may be confirm'd in the good opinion you have of your enemies; in the mean time, permit me to leave you, since I am unuseful to you.

And at these words, seeing the persons who came towards us were very nigh, he spur'd his Horse away swiftly. Albimer, the two Esquires, and my self followed him the like pace; and so soon as we got out of the sight of those persons, we pursued under the Conduct of Albimer the way which led us to the house of his Sister.

This adventure (said Constance to Cleomer, interrupting him) makes me at once know what is the fortune of Pharamond, which equally leads him to occasions to offend what he loves, and to serve his enemies; but if this humour of fortune hath surpris'd me, yet the proceeding of Pharamond doth not at all astonish me; for I never doubted him incapable of such an effect of vertue, though truly this action be worthy all those praises can be given to the fairest and most extraordinary.

It was night (continued Cleomer) when we arriv'd at the house of Albimer's sister: but before we entred it, Albimer went to advertise his sister, and to prepare a conveniency for all things, and soon after returned to seek the King; and having caused him to pass through a Garden, conducted him to an apartment separated from the rest of the lodgings, and in which he might remain without being seen by the Domesticks. Those to whom the sister of Albimer could not conceal our arrival, believed by what she told them, that Albimer was returned, but that by reason of his disgrace, and the suspicion had of him, he durst not remain in the house but with infinite secrecy, and contributed as much as they could to conceal our stay.

Brafilda (for that was the name of Albimer's sister) did not only receive my Prince like a person educated in the Court of a King, and caused him to be serv'd in her house with an admirable diligence, but govern'd her self upon this occasion with a conduct extraordinary; and though she consider'd with an infinite fear the danger to which the King expos'd himself, and could not reassure her self against those great reasons she had to fear for him, yet she dissembled all exteriour shews of it, the better to let him find that satisfaction he came to seek with so much peril, and so little wariness: and not doubting but Luciana her sister, who was still near the Princess, and whom she knew well affect'd towards him, and entirely fix'd to the interest of their brother, could better than her self procure

procure a part of what he desired, she sent to *Lisurgis*, to pray her to come and visit her, and entreat the Princess to give her leave for a day; which she easily obtained: and because from *Lisurgis* to the house of *Brasilda*, it is no more than an hours journey, we saw *Luciana* the morrow after our arrival.

This Lady seem'd the most astonish'd in the world, when she saw *Pharamond* in her Sisters house; and conceived so great a trouble for him, that she could not conceal it: *Wherefore, my Lord* (said she) *whilst all things are fallen out here against a life which you can defend with such admirable valour, and with force not at all inferior to that of your enemies, do you come to give it them, and yield them a victory without trouble, which perhaps they would hardly obtain with the united power of Germany?* Yes (answered the King) *I come to expose to the anger of Rosamond this life which she detests, and for which you seem so much concern'd; and in the condition to which it is reduc'd by the hatred of the Princess, I expose so little in exposing it, that if its misery were known to you, you would not so much fear its loss. In sum, Luciana, I cannot live hated by Rosamond, nor can I live without seeing her; it is her sight I seek at the peril of this unfortunate life: and if by your assistance I may see her, I will be indebted to you something much more precious than that life you would preserve me. It is not difficult to see the Princess* (answered *Luciana*) *but it is difficult for you to see her, or to let your self be seen by her with any security. Ah Luciana* (replied *Pharamond*) *let us not take so much care for my security, but let us give some Empire to Fortune for a happiness for which I had not thus expos'd my self, if I had regarded my safety. I would willingly, if you desire it, conceal my self from the King of the Cimbrians, from Briomer, and all such, whose interest like theirs, might encourage them to my loss; but I would present my self to Rosamond; and if she desires my death I shall gladly suffer it. I cannot tell you precisely* (replied *Luciana*) *what the Princesses thoughts are concerning you, for she communicates them to no person; but whatsoever they be, I believe she will not be Mistress of your life, if you fall under the power of the Cimbrian King. The Gods will be the disposers of that* (replied my Prince) *but in fine, you see my resolution; and if I must dye, I had much rather the Princess should give her self that satisfaction she will receive by my death, than owe it to Godegfile, Balamir or Gondioch.*

These words overwhelmed us with a mortal grief; and the King seeing that *Luciana*, as much astonish'd as we, kept a silence like to ours, *I doubt not at all* (added he) *but in committing my self to you in my miseries, I shall expose your house to some disgrace; but I hope I shall dispel all those mists that may threaten it: and besides that I do not desire you should do any thing for me which may render you suspected, if Fortune is too much contrary to me, I will place Albimer, and all his, in an estate, shall not permit them to repent of the affection they bore me.*

To these he added many other words, unnecessary to recount you; and in the end, propos'd an hundred questions to *Luciana*; to which she gave him all the satisfactory answers it was possible for her to give. It was now that he understood those words which I have told you of the Princesses, spoken in the Terras at the sight of *Pharamond*, and many other things which without her recital had never come to our knowledge: she added to this discourse, that after the death of *Theobaldus*, the Princess had liv'd in a melancholy estate, which had made her avoid the company of all the world, only that of the Princess of the *Sueves*; that it was for this reason, that she quitted the City, to pass some time at *Lisurgis*, where though her Court was very great, she retir'd as much as was possible; and few days pass'd, but she walk'd with the Princess *Albisinda*, and some attendant Ladies; without other company, in the most shady and obscure Alleys of a great Park, which from the Palace extends it self to the Banks of the *Elba*: That in this place she often left *Albisinda*, that she might alone meditate with more freedom, and that at those hours there were few persons who had the privilege to enter into the Park.

'Twas in this discourse of *Luciana's* that the King believ'd he had found what he sought; and having demanded of her in what manner the Park was fence'd, and understood from her, that near the Alleys where *Rosamond* did most ordinarily walk, the wood was so thick, that one might easily hide himself from the eyes of persons that pass'd close by; that below the Park there was a little Gate, by which they entred into the Forest; and that from the house where we were, there was a passage to go to that little Gate, without going out of the Forest, and by ways which few persons pass'd, but were well known to *Albimer*: he demanded of her, if it were not possible going through the Forest to that little Gate of the Park, to enter it by her means, and conceal himself in the thickest of the wood, from whence he might behold the Princess passing, and govern himself as Heaven should inspire him, and the occasions would permit.

Luciana meditated a long time on this proposition; and in the end, she answer'd the King, that in this way to see *Rosamond*, she found infinite danger, but that she yet saw far more in all other ways she could imagine; and that if he could not be diverted from his design, to present himself to the sight of the Princess, he might as well try this as any other: that the little Gate of the Park was continually shut, but shut in such sort, that it might be opened in the inner side, which she promised him to perform, and leave it so, that with a small push he might thrust it open. At this discourse, which made us all tremble, and which *Luciana* herself spoke not but with trembling, the King believ'd to have found his repose and entire felicity; and thanking *Luciana* with an admirable serenity of mind: and the marks of a joy wholly extraordinary, he conjured her to perform what she had promis'd, and prest her in such a manner, that she gave him her word the day following to do him that service.

The King having taken this order for the execution of his design, and being more particularly instructed by *Luciana* what he ought to do, prick'd by a passion for the knowledge of which he had never till now given any exterior marks, began a discourse concerning *Balamir*, conjuring her to tell with sincerity, how she believ'd him to stand in the affection of the Princess. *It would be difficult for me* (said *Luciana*) *to tell the things which the Princess discourses but to few persons, and possibly to none but Albilinda: but by what I might judge, the Prince of the Huns, by the merit of his person, and by the services he has rendred the Princess, hath attracted no small portion of her esteem and good will: she has given him those marks which she has not hitherto testified to other men; and I seriously believe, that if his fortune would that he should be prefer'd before other pretendants, the Princess would receive the King's command to espouse him, with less opposition than she would many others: but I believe that this is all the advantage he hath over her resolution; and I think not at all, as I have told your Majesty, that she hath any thoughts for him, but those of esteem and good will: he hath in person attended her ever since he chas'd the Burgundians forth of these Territories, and hath still accompanied her to Lisurgis, where she often keeps her Court; but yesterday being a hunting, he was assaulted by a Troop of armed men, and had, as himself says, been kill'd, if he had not been assisted by some unknown persons, to whom he gave a thousand praises, and was conducted back to the Castle with many great wounds, but none judged dangerous: the Princess hath testified an infinite displeasure for his wounds, hath visited him, and caused him to be served with sufficient diligence. And in sum, according to my judgment, and that of the whole world, he is the most to be fear'd of all your Rivals. 'Tis true, that he serves her only with his person, and that not being heir to the King of the Huns, and being himself at present in disgrace with his Father, he hath no Crowns to offer, nor great Armies to lead to the service of the King her Father, like his Rivals, who are all great Kings, possessors of potent Realms; and it hath without all doubt been this consideration, that hath hindered the King from declaring himself in his favour, as I believe he had otherwise done, upon the change of Viridomar. The King here interrupting *Luciana*, Tell me (said he) if you please, what effects that change of Viridomar, of which you speak, produc'd in your Court, and particularly in the mind of the Princess.*

The Princess (answer'd *Luciana*) testified little displeasure at it, at least such as could come to our knowledge: that which most touch'd her at that time, was the discontent of the Princess Albilinda, who seeing how Heaven oppos'd all proposals made for the Alliance of their two Royal Families, remain'd for some few days wholly disconsolate. Our King at first highly resent'd the action, but was at length somewhat pleas'd, by the assurance the King of Sueves gave him, of the continuation of his affection, the confirmation of their alliance against you, and by the oath he made never to look upon his Son, but as his mortal enemy; and to testify to the King the truth of what he said, he order'd that the Princess Albilinda should still remain with the Princess *Rosamond*, for the better assuring of his promises, though all the hopes of the propos'd marriages were extinct.

The King had many other discourses with *Luciana*: but towards evening he permitted her to return to *Lisurgis*, this Lady having represented to him, that to prevent those suspicions might be had of her for the future, and to put her self into a condition to render him that service he desired of her, 'twas necessary that that visit should be of no longer continuance. The King pass'd that night with an impatience as great as if the succeeding day had been destin'd to his utmost felicity; and he rose very early in the morning, though he was not to go to the Park of *Lisurgis* till it were late: the hours that remain'd, seem'd of an extraordinary length; and when that of *Luciana's* appointment approach'd, he mounted on Horseback, and went to accomplish this dangerous adventure, with as much assurance as if he had been going to take his pleasure in his own Gardens in *Peapolis*.

You

You see well, my Lord, that this enterprize was ill conceived, both in the beginning and process of it; or to speak better, that it had never any conformity with good reason: I will not therefore justify it, but only tell you, that when men once despise or abandon their lives, all things are easie; therefore the King not being capable to live in the hatred of *Rosamond*, resolv'd thus prodigally to go and present her that head she demanded, in the sight of all the *Cimbrians*, since other ways they could not effect it; and it was for this reason, my Lord, that you heard me say in the beginning of my discourse, that *Pharamond* had been a person truly admirable, if he could have defended himself against a passion, which hath often transported his soul to fury, and carried him to those extremities, which no reason can excuse.

It was then under the conduct of this passion, rather than under that of *Albimer*, that we cross'd the Forest towards the Park of *Lisurgis*; and we were come within sight of the Wall, and of the little Gate which *Albimer* shewed us, when the King alighted, and permitting only my self to follow him, he sent back *Albimer* and the two Esquires, with his Horses, to the House of his Sister, ordering him not to return till night to the same place, lest if any accident should happen to him, *Albimer*, for whose life he with reason fear'd, should be surpris'd with the Horses, and be precipitated into a danger from whence he could no more retire: he fear'd not the same for me, knowing well that not being subject to the King of the *Cimbrians*, I was not expos'd to the same punishment that might threaten *Albimer*; and it was for this reason, that he suffer'd me to have the honour to accompany him.

The Castle of *Lisurgis* is built on a Hill, which commands over the River, and the Neighbouring Country. The Gardens are below, and extend to the Banks of the River; and from the Garden there is an entrance into the Park, which for its beauty worthily deserves to be annexed to a Regal Mansion. The Wood is very thick, but parted into several great Allies, the fairest of which runs along the River, and butts at one end to a fair Arbour very near the little Gate; and at the other, to another fair Arbour, from whence the prospect extends along the silver streams of the River, and over a vast meadow. The Gate with an easie thrust open'd, as *Luciana* had promis'd us; and the King being advanc'd to the end of the Alley, seeing there was no person appear'd, believ'd that he might have the liberty to walk to the other end, and take a little notice of the place, not knowing but that it might prove necessary for him before he conceal'd himself in the wood, as he had agreed with *Luciana*.

In short, he walk'd to the end of the Alley, though it was very long; entred into the Arbour, which was at the end, and beheld its admirable beauty: but being about to return, he saw the Princess appear in the Alley, into which she entred by another door that butted against the middle of that great walk; and casting his eyes up another Alley which from the height of the Park descended to the Arbour, he saw, though at a great distance, several men stopped. *Albisinda* was with *Rosamond*, and only two or three Ladies attending; the rest of their Train being walking in other places, to leave them a more free divertisement, as they were accusom'd.

Notwithstanding all the courage of my Prince, the sight of *Rosamond* both surpris'd and made him tremble; and his surprisal was so much that he had not leisure to conceal himself as he had resolv'd, and prepare himself for an action so important, it being impossible for him to go out of the Arbour, without being seen by the Princess, whose sight and pace were both directed towards us, or expose himself to the discovery of those men, if he retir'd on the other side. You may judge, my Lord, that it was not the fear of death that made *Pharamond* tremble, but the fear that seized him at the sight of a power more formidable to him than all things most terrible could be to the most faint-hearted spirits. I perceiv'd easly the commotion of his thoughts, though I were extremely troubled; but in a manner much different from him: and I observ'd the trouble that perplex'd him, though my soul was troubled with a thousand fears, for the danger which threatned his life, or his liberty.

To that fear which had first possess'd his spirit, succeeded other passions; and if he could not defend himself against the joy which transported him at the sight of his adored object, at the same time he felt the merciless grief which tormented him at the remembrance of that cruel hatred which caus'd all his misfortunes; nor was he exempted from the assaults of jealousy for those happineses which seem'd promis'd to his Rivals. These things presented themselves confusedly, and without order, to his imagination; but as he beheld the Princess still advance, and that moment approach which he had so much desired, yet so much fear'd, he had no time to discern what he himself apprehended, or take any reso-

lution; yet Fortune was pleas'd to give him a little time to recall his wandering thoughts, and to bethink himself, by letting the Princess to return when she was come within twenty paces of the Arbour, and continuing to walk with *Albisinda*.

It seem'd that this little time given him to prepare himself, afforded him some comfort; and he began to breath a little more quietly, though he knew not whether he ought to rejoyce at what deprived him of so beloved a sight, and robb'd him for some minutes of a happiness he had so much sigh'd for. In this uncertainty both of what he ought to do, and what he ought to desire, he held his eyes fix'd upon the Princess, and seem'd to give some repose to his heart by the sighs which issued from his breast. His Love rendred it self already mistress of the other passions it produc'd; or to speak better, insensibly dissipat'd the endeavours of all other, to make him resent that alone. His eyes were not only fix'd upon the Princess, but his heart followed every pace she took; and when she turn'd her face to return towards us, it seem'd that a new fire parted from her eyes, to kindle new flames in his soul.

See there (said he sighing) *see there the Divinity of Pharamond! but O gods* (added he soon after) *it is a Divinity arm'd with Lightnings and Thunders, and a Divinity from whom all our vows extract nothing but an anger under which we must be forced to yield. What matter is it to her* (pursued he, in the transportations of his passion) *to be environed with celestial fire? is she less adorable? or if her flames are fatal to the unfortunate Pharamond, is his condition less glorious?* He made now, whatever opposition he found in himself to it, some few minutes reflection on his strange kind of misery; and not being able to resist, having some compassion of himself, *Alas* (said he) *is there among all mortals a condition like to mine? or can all ages furnish an example of a misery parallel to mine? who besides me, among all men, excites nothing but hatred for so much love? and who besides me can behold, as I at present do, in his beloved object, his pitiless and implacable enemy? Ah Rosamond* (added he, with new sighs) *you whose sight I have with so much zeal desired, and whose sight at the same time inflames and freezes me with love and fear; can it be, that a body at whose beauty the celestial Luminaries blush, should be possess'd by a heart insensible of pity? or can it be possible that the unfortunate Pharamond should come to seek his death at your feet, without touching your soul with some motions of compassion?*

These were his thoughts or words, or words like these, whilst *Rosamond* was walking with *Albisinda*; but little after, he saw the two Princesses separate, and *Albisinda* go towards the other end of the Alley with one of the Ladies on whose arm she lean'd: but *Rosamond* came towards the Arbour without being followed, and that too at a great distance, by any but *Luciana*, who without doubt had caused the others to depart, to give the King that conveniency he desired. The Princess coming towards the Arbour, walk'd faster than she had done with *Albisinda*; and it was this confirm'd the King in the opinion that she had a design to enter: he saw now that it was impossible for him to shun her sight, though he had an intention to do it, without exposing himself to that of the other persons who were in the Alley, by which he might retire, and whom in the same time we perceiv'd to advance towards the Arbour; so that overcoming all those fears which oppos'd themselves to his resolution, and seeing that the Princess was not above fifteen or twenty paces from the Arbour, he went forth to meet her, and cast himself at her feet before she could observe his countenance.

The person of *Pharamond*, and his behaviour, caus'd some surprize in the spirit of the Princess; and she was about to open her mouth to demand of him what he was, when he having lifted up his head, which he had before bowed to the ground, she saw his countenance, and knew it. All the possible marks of astonishment straight appeared on the countenance of *Rosamond*; and hastily retiring some paces, *Oh gods* (cried she) *it is Pharamond!* The King open'd not his mouth to return answer to these words of the Princess, but beholding her with the countenance of a person wholly astonish'd, *Is it possible* (added she, raising her voice) *that I see Pharamond? Yes, Madam* (answered the King) *it is Pharamond himself whom you see; his miseries have made him too much different from other men, to be mistaken. And what comest thou to seek,* (replied the Princess, suffering her self to fall on a seat she found behind her) *what seekest thou, cruel enemy of our blood, in a Country where death is so well due to thee, and where death is prepar'd thee by so many thousands of men who arm themselves against thy life? It is that death I came to seek* (said *Pharamond* with a settled countenance) *and since you desire it, I should be unworthy of my glorious destiny, if I should permit you to be beholding for it to my enemies. You in vain arm all Europe against a life you hold in your hand: and since this heart, which was yours from the first moment of your life, is the seat of this odious life of mine, it is just I should come to present*

present it to the point of so many Swords you turn against it. At these words the Prince^{ſe} ſeem'd to be extremely mov'd; and having for ſome time kept ſilence, *I have already ſufficiently explain'd to thee, that it is not to thee that I would be oblig'd for the revenge I owe the blood of my Brother; but ſince thou wilt dye by thoſe ways which deprive me of the glory I expected, thou ſhalt dye.*—*Yes, he ſhall dye,* ſaid a voice we heard from the Arbour we before quitted: and at the ſame inſtant we ſaw *Briomer* come forth with his Sword in his hand, followed by a Troop of men in the ſame poſture. My Prince was riſen up at his arrival, but he made no proffer to put himſelf in any poſture of defence, though he ſaw him run againſt him with his Sword naked, and with intention to pierce his boſom; which preſenting to him with an undaunted countenance, *Strike,* *Briomer* (ſaid he he) *and ſince Roſamond deſires the death of Pharamond, give it him, if thou da'reſt ſo great an attempt.*

Theſe words accompanied with a behaviour and look which ſeem'd to have ſomething in it more than humane, caſt ſo much fear and ſo much reſpect into the ſoul of the furious *Briomer*, that it almoſt made him let fall his Sword from his hand, and depriv'd him for ſome time of the confidence he had to execute his deſign: but being ſtung with a paſſion much more violent than what could poſſeſs any other perſon, his firſt fury ſoon return'd; and again liſting up the point of his Sword, he was without doubt reſolv'd to have run it through the heart of my Prince, when one of the Ladies which attended the Princeſs *Albiſinda*, who was again advanced towards us, running to him with a great cry, puſh'd him with ſo much force, that ſhe made him recoil ſeven or eight paces ſtaggering amongſt his men, who hinder'd him from falling; and before he could return to my Prince, as he did return with more fury than ever, *Roſamond*, putting her ſelf before him and catching hold of his Sword-hand, *Stop,* *Briomer* (ſaid ſhe) *and know, that it is not permitted thee to murder a King, and that before the eyes of thy Princeſs, without having received orders for it from my Sovereign and thine; ſince it is by his will, and not by ours, that the life of Pharamond ought to be diſpos'd of; and I declare to thee, that thou ſhalt answer it at the price of thy own.*

It might eaſily be diſcern'd by the countenance of *Briomer*, that the words of the Princeſs, and the ſtop ſhe gave to his deſigns, did ſenſibly afflict him: rage and grief made him utter many ſighs. However, having a great reſpect for a Princeſs that was one day to be his Queen, fearing the effects of her anger, and that of the King himſelf if he diſobeyed her, and judging poſſibly that the condition of *Pharamond* would be little better by the delay of his death, he moderated the violence of his anger; and contenting himſelf only to take the King priſoner, he environ'd him with the Troop of men which accompanied him, and demanded his Sword: but the King looking on him with diſdain, and taking his Sword from his ſide, *Thou art not worthy* (ſaid he) *to receive the Sword of Pharamond; but I ſhall willingly yield it to the Princeſs;* and at theſe words caſt it at the feet of *Roſamond*. The Princeſs cauſ'd it to be taken up, and at the ſame time ſeeing *Cloderic* come into the Alley, who was a man among the *Cimbrians*, of a Birth much more noble than *Briomer*, though he had leſs power over the heart of the King, whom ſometime before the King had made Governour of *Marobuda*, having given to *Briomer* more important Employments, ſhe gave to him the charge of the imprifonment of the King of the *Franks*, commanding him to conduct him to *Marobuda*, whiſt *Briomer* remain'd with her for theſe affairs in which ſhe had occaſion of his ſervice and preſence.

Briomer teſtified no ſmall diſpleaſure at this order of the Princeſs, but he durſt not oppoſe it; and *Cloderic*, who was particularly oblig'd to the Princeſs for the Government of the City which ſhe had procur'd him, having received with all that reſpect he ought, the Commiſſion ſhe gave him, cauſed the Guards to be call'd, of which a part were at the great Gate of the Park; and whiſt the Princeſs walked towards the other ſide, that ſhe might no more ſee *Pharamond*, and led *Briomer* with her, who with ſome reluctance followed her, he cauſed the King to march in the middle of the Guards that encompaſſed him, to the great Gate of the Park, where he had given order for a Chariot to attend, to conduct him to the City.

I had never parted from near my King, but my deſire to dye with him had made me put my hand to my Sword, when I ſaw *Briomer* endeavour to kill him, although thoſe which accompanied him had fallen upon me, and having diſarm'd and taken me, guard'd me along with the King, who having asked for me, and ſeeing me ſo near him; prayed *Cloderic* that he would permit me to ſerve him; and *Cloderic* knowing what was due to his degree and dignity, and who regarded him with reſpect, though he were his priſoner, eaſily conſented to his deſire, and teſtified that he would ſerve him as far as his duty would permit him.

As we were marching towards the Gate of the Park, whither we went shortly, to give the more time to prepare the Chariot, and mount the Guard which was to convoy us, I heard a voice which call'd me by my name, and a voice which seem'd to me very familiar; and turning my head towards that side, from whence I thought it came, I saw, though indistinctly, because of the men that environ'd us, one of the Ladies of the Princesses, who followed us at a small distance; it seem'd to me that it was she, who had so fortunately and courageously defended the King against the fury of *Briomer*: But having neither the liberty to speak to her, nor to stop a moment, I observ'd, without making any show I perceiv'd her, though I doubted not at all but that she was a person well affected for the safety of my Prince; and it seem'd to me, that I as well knew the sound of her voice. At the Gate we found the Chariot in which the King took his place; and *Cloderic* having caus'd me to enter after him, seated himself afterwards with two or three men; and the rest, who were a great number, environ'd us, and followed on Horseback to the City.

See now, my Lord, what was the event of an enterprize guided by a passion so much an enemy to prudence; though little different from what I had in truth expected, and not at all from what the King himself had hoped. The swiftness of our horses brought us soon to the City, where the King was shut up in a Castle, ordain'd from its foundation for the imprisonment of considerable personages, environ'd with great Towers, and a very deep Ditch. The King was very well lodg'd, and as well serv'd, but very strictly guarded, being limited to one Chamber, and a little Closet to walk in; having none to converse with but my self and those which guarded him; nor had I much more liberty, it not being permitted me to pass farther than to a little chamber which was assign'd me near his: and this rigour caus'd some trouble in the King for *Albimer*, to whom he would willingly have sent, if he had had the means, to command him to return into *Franconia*; not doubting but if he were discover'd, and the Horses and Esquires found at his Sisters, he would infallibly be put to death: yet he believed that *Luciana* would not be wanting to give a ready intelligence to her Sister of what had pass'd; and this belief put his thoughts in some repose.

I tell you this, my Lord, to let you know his natural disposition, by informing you that he was afflicted with this disquiet, whilst he took no thought for his own safety; nor did he fear for me, though he honour'd me with an affection I had never merited, believing that the King of the *Cimbrians* having no reason to hate me for the service I did my Master, and my King could not in honour treat me ill.

I have few particulars to tell you of the imprisonment of my King, but only to let you understand, if it be possible, what was the condition of his mind, during his captivity; and to this effect, I must tell you, my Lord, and you will easily believe me, after all those things I have recounted you, that he not only never testified any fear of that death, with which he was so apparently threaten'd, and from which by the unworthy proceedings of the King of the *Cimbrians*, who demanded his head from all the world, it might be believed that his Dignity would not deliver him, though in all likelyhood amongst other enemies, it might have produc'd a greater effect; nor ever had any desire of liberty, though his imprisonment was so rigorous; but he seem'd entirely satisfied with the testimony he had given *Rosamond* of the love he bore her; nor was his rest disturb'd at the remembrance of a hatred, which he should appease by his blood. Yet however, he sometimes endeavour'd to persuade himself that his life was not so odious to *Rosamond* as it was represented, since it was truly her self, who had hindred *Briomer* from taking it away, and had been so careful to take him out of his hands.

To these thoughts he added several others, which might assist him to flatter himself; and it seem'd to him, that in the very words of the Princess, there were things he might explain favourably; and that in this misery, and the danger which threaten'd his life, her countenance express'd more grief than joy: for some times he entertain'd himself pleasingly with these thoughts; but a little after, all that he found for his advantage being banish'd his remembrance, by quite contrary appearances, and the cruel impression of his misfortunes imprinted in his mind, having defaced all that endeavour'd to struggle with it; *Ab! let us flatter our selves no more* (said he) *with a vain appearance, which ought not to abuse us; nor let us attribute the words or actions of Rosamond, to any abatement of her hatred, her hatred is so much the greater, she not believing that she can execute her revenge so entirely, if she doth not her self execute it without my assistance; this is the greatest mark she can give of the hatred she bears me: and necessarily must she abhor all that comes from me, since to my own death, my own assistance is odious: she desires it less than she would desire it, because she*

sees I would suffer it with joy, and she would again with impatience seek it, if she saw me fear it. The obstacle she gave to the design of Briomer, came less from her pity than her policy, or from that nobleness to which she was oblig'd: and besides that she was too highly born, to see shed in her presence the blood of a Prince, which himself had yielded to her revenge, she judg'd that the death of a King might draw after it troublesome consequences; nor would she without knowing the intentions of her Father, dispose of an affair of so great importance: That which she hath done, is no more than the ordinary form, nor hath she testified other than prudence in such an accident; and too much wisdom hath she, to shew gladness in her eyes, at an adventure so little common. In brief, I should be no less perswaded of her hatred, should she not desire my death, since she too well knows, it would be more agreeable to me, than that life which she would prolong me.

'Twas with these thoughts that his unfortunate passion did ordinarily entertain him; and to abridge my recital, it was in these discourses or the like, that he pass'd all the time of his confinement: I know not what the success might have been, if his imprisonment had been of much longer continuance: the orders expected from the King of the Cimbrians, keeping all the World in expectation of what should happen; when after six days confinement, and on the night which succeeded to the sixth, a little before the King us'd to betake himself to his rest, Cloderic, who had continually treated him with infinite respect, entred into his Chamber, and told him that he came to intreat him to come forth and attend the Princess, who desired to see him. The King was surpris'd at this discourse more than he had been at all the adventures of his life; and regarding Cloderic with a look which denoted his astonishment; *Do you speak truth?* (said he) *or is it possible that the Princess would see me?* *Yes, my Lord,* (said Cloderic) *and she hath commanded me to bring you presently before her. She may dispose of her prisoner,* (replied Pharamond) *but I shall have too much cause to praise her goodness, if before my death she permit me to see her.* And at these words, without farther informing himself of the intention of Cloderic or that of Rosamond, he departed out of the Chamber, descending a little pair of Stairs into a Court, whither Cloderic conducted us: but I was not a little astonish'd to see, that neither in the Court nor on the Stairs, there was any of those Guards that us'd to watch constantly near us; and that a little after we pass'd on, not follow'd by any, to a little Gate, whither he led us, and where there was a Chariot ready, into which he pray'd the King to mount.

The King was much astonish'd at what he saw; and finding no more Guards about him, he demand'd of Cloderic if he were any more a prisoner. *No my Lord,* (said Cloderic) *you are not any longer: but if you please to thank the Princess for the liberty she gives you, you may do it in that place whither she hath commanded me to conduct you. As the grace which she hath done me, in permitting me to see her* (said my Prince) *is incomparably greater than what I receive by the gift of my life and liberty, you may believe I will run with all joy imaginable, to a happiness so little hop'd for.* And at these words mounting the Chariot, having first receiv'd his sword from the hand of Cloderic, who presented it with a noble respect, demanding pardon of my Prince, if for reasons very important he led him without lights; and the Chariot having with an infinite swiftness conducted us to a Court of that same Palace where we had formerly made some stay, and where my Prince lost his repose and liberty; causing us to ascend a pair of Stairs, unknown to us, and pass through a Hall, a little more clear, he led us into a Chamber, where by the brightness of many lights, which darted a splendor equal to that of the morning sun, we saw the Princess Rosamond accompanied only by three Ladies.

At this sight my Prince was more astonish'd and amaz'd, than he had ever been: and whilst he made trial to recal his reason and knowledge, which seem'd utterly lost at that time, the Princess advancing towards him with a behaviour full of Majesty, and accompanied with something supernatural; Pharamond (said she) *as thou art not our prisoner by fair War, so it is not just to detain thee, nor to draw from thy imprisonment those advantages we owe only to thy self.* 'Twas never from me, without doubt, that thou didst expect thy liberty; and that which I this day do in delivering thee, is little conformable to my just resentment, and will possibly appear less conformable to my duty. But though I may expose my self to the judgment of men, and to the anger of the King my Father, if what I do for thee be known to him, yet I am too much a lover of glory, to suffer him to triumph over thee by thy self, or that he should be Master of thy Dominions and thy life, by an effect of thy will, rather than by the strength of his Arms. Go by the valour which hath rais'd thee above other men: Go and defend thy country against a World of enemies, which come to overwhelm thy Territories, go and defend thy life against so many Princes, whom the hope to possess Rosamond hath rendred thine enemies. Thou

wilt defend it well, without doubt, if fortune be not contrary to thee; or if thou dost fall by their Arms, I can without shame then receive a revenge and a victory, I shall hold no longer from thy self.

Rosalind spoke in this manner, and the King who listned to her without being touch'd with other motions than his love, beholding her with those eyes which spoke his passion better than his tongue could do it; "Cease great Princess (*said he*) to mantle under an apparent generosity, a true cruelty; and since pity bears no part in what you do, content your self with your revenge, without seeking farther glory in the loss of a Prince who dies for you. I might defend possibly with sufficient valour this unfortunate life against which you arm so many enemies, it it were not odious to you; but since you desire my death, I will not at all defend my life against those you shall send to give it me, but will present my breast with too much joy to the swords of *Balamir*, of *Gondioch*, and of all those that shall be own'd by you. *But if it be true* (replied the Princess, with a behaviour which denoted some constraint of her humour) *if it be true that thou lovest me, at thou wouldst persuade all the World, and as in despite of my self, I must persuade my self, couldst thou see with so much joy, that Balamir and that Gondioch possessors of Rosalind by the death of Pharamond? Or if thou lookest upon them as thy Rivals, wilt thou abandon to them together with thy life, that prize thou oughtest at the price of thy very life to dispute with them? I cannot dispute it with them* (replied Pharamond) *since all hopes of it is taken from me; nor shall I see them enjoy it, since it is by my death alone they can obtain it: but I ought indeed to consent, since you desire it, and since you your self so order it. Why dost thou not rather believe* (said she with a demeanour extremely passionate) *that nothing can be more cruel to me, than this fortune of thy Rivals? for amongst them, I see nothing worthy of me, and possibly none but thy self amongst men could merit Rosalind, if thy ill fortune or perhaps her's had not oppos'd it self: This is possibly a truth I have believ'd I might confess to thee without offending my self; and to this confession I will add, that if it be true thou lovest me, and that thy love gives me some power over thee, I not only desire that thou shouldst live to deprive thy Rivals of their hopes to possess Rosalind, but I order it thee by all the dominion I have over thee.*

Finishing these words, she made a sign to *Cloderic*, to lead forth the King; and at the same instant she passed into her Closet, without permitting her self to be longer seen. The King, whose spirit was repleat with those things he had seen and heard, and who believ'd he had found matter for new reflections, and perhaps subject to make new judgments on his fortune, followed *Cloderic* without thinking what he did; having abandoned himself entirely to those thoughts which possess'd him, permitted himself in this posture to be again mounted into the Chariot, which cross'd many by ways, and found himself forth of the City (by the power which *Cloderic* had to cause the Gates to be open'd at all hours) before he perceiv'd himself to be out of the Court. At about a thousand paces from the City, we found horses that attended us; and *Cloderic* having caused us to mount them with some men to guide us, told the King that he had order from the Princess to accompany him till such time as he were in some place of security; and that if he thought it fit, he would not forsake him till he were forth of the Land of the *Cimbrians*. The King thank'd him, as much as the importance of the service could merit, and much more without doubt, than he could hope from a man whose life was odious to him: and *Cloderic* having now liberty to entertain him, told him that the Princess having resolv'd, from the first moment in which he had been arrested, to deliver him from that danger to which he had expos'd himself, had therefore taken him out of the hands of *Briomer*, and committed him into his. That the rigor which he had in his guard, was to no other end but to deceive *Briomer*, and blind him from any suspicion he might have of the truth: That the third day, the Princess had found means to send him to the King her Father, to confer with him, as well about his imprisonment as other affairs of State; and in effect to prevent all obstacles his stay might probably have caused: That after his departure, being returned from *Lisurgis* to the City, and having sent for *Cloderic*, she had open'd to him (as to a man who was truly her creature) her design to save the King of the *Franks*, whose life would be in great danger, if the orders of the *Cimbrian* King were attended, or the return of *Briomer*, though he had not expos'd himself to death, but for the love he bore her: That as he had a great veneration for the Princess, and was bound to her for all things; he willingly offer'd himself to perform all she desir'd, and stoop his eyes to all things he might fear, either for his fortune or his life, from the anger of the King her Father; and that to render her the service she desired more entirely, he would manage this affair with so much security, that the King could never know she had any

part in it; to which intent, he made the Guards retire by a sign'd order of the *Cimbrian* King's; and observ'd all those other necessary cautions, that he was assur'd, that all the hatred of this action would fall upon him, and the Princess not be in the least suspected.

To this discourse of *Cloderic*, the King return'd great marks of his acknowledgments, telling him, that since he had been so willing to hazard his fortune for his safety, he might not only escape from the anger of his King by retiring, if he pleas'd, with him into *Franconia*; but that he would there establish him in such honours, that he should have no cause to repine at those he had lost. *Cloderic* accepted the retreat which he offered him, believing well that during the Reign of the King of the *Cimbrians*, there would be but little security for his life, in the lands under his obedience; and the King no longer doubting but he might discover many things to him, pray'd him to give some orders for the security of *Albimer*, whom he had with his Esquires left at his Sisters house. *Cloderic* lead us cross the Fields: and because that way he made us follow, was not the ordinary Road, but brought us nigh to the house of *Brasilda*, he sent one of his men in whom he had an entire confidence, with an order to *Albimer* and the Esquires, to come to a place by which we were to pass, and which was not far distant from whence we then were.

All things were executed as the King desired, and the Messenger having pursued his way with great diligence, return'd with *Albimer* and the Esquires to the place appointed, before we arriv'd there. The King was deliver'd from a great trouble, seeing *Albimer*, from whom he understood, that upon advice which *Luciana* had given, he had in such manner conceal'd himself and the Esquires, that no person had knowledge of them. Afterwards *Cloderic* made us pursue our journey more warily, though he believ'd that the Princess being Mistress of *Marobuda*, and *Briomer* being absent, no person would endeavour to pursue the King.

As for my Prince, he now fix'd his thoughts entirely on the remembrance of the words and the action of the Princess, and found he had so much reason to comfort up himself that he appear'd to us wholly different from what he had been before his imprisonment, and seem'd not to have preserv'd any of those thoughts which had so much tormented him; he open'd now his soul to other thoughts more pleasing, and which could before find no place in his breast; for he not only believ'd that the hatred of *Rosamond* was not so violent as it had till then appear'd, but he imagin'd that he had reason sufficient to believe, that if the misfortunes of his life had not oppos'd themselves, he might have been belov'd by the Princess. The words she had spoken, much confirm'd him in this hope; and though from her proceeding he could not draw consequences so favourable as to assure himself of her love, yet she had made him at least know, that she had no inclination to render his Rivals more happy than himself; and that that same *Balamir*, whose merit made him formidable above all others, was not much advanc'd in her affections, though he might be in her esteem. This knowledge return'd a joy in his spirit, of which it had not for a long time been capable; and returning with his joy all his fierceness into his soul, made him begin to think seriously what he owed to the defence of his Country, the preservation of his glory, and the confusion of his Rivals. *I will live* (said he) *since Rosamond hath ordain'd it, and I will live to dispute with my Rivals even till death, that felicity to which I am not suffer'd to aspire. I shall however be less miserable, if I can hinder them from being happy; and I hope it shall be with the best part of their blood, I shall make those rash ones buy the head of Pharamond: Rosamond doth consent, Rosamond doth desire it; and Rosamond doth command it by all the power she hath over me.*

He now made a reflection on those last words of *Rosamond*; and he found something so charming for him in that claim she had made of her power, and in the obliging manner with which she made use of it, that he believ'd he could no longer with justice complain of his condition. You may believe, my Lord, that *Cloderic* and my self, who were present at all that pass'd at that interview, were not wanting to set all advantages before his eyes, and relieve his hopes by all the consequences we could draw in his favour.

These and such like discourses spent the time during our journey; and before we entred into *Franconia*, we found in him a considerable change. The fame of his being taken, was arriv'd before him in the Countries under his Dominion; and as he was belov'd by his people with the most ardent affection subjects could bear their Prince, this cruel news had caus'd a general mourning. The Princess his sister was half dead; *Sunnor* and the other Princes, having the same moment sent to demand assistance of all their Allies, gathered Forces on all sides; and *Charamont*, who receiv'd the first report on the Frontiers, where according to his orders he had stay'd, prepar'd all things for War, with a care and diligence

diligence admirable. But both the one and the other, receiv'd the good news almost as soon as the ill; and scarce had they resent'd the griet of his imprisonment, but they were comforted with the news of his liberty, and by the sight of their Prince, which transport-ed them with an immoderate joy.

You will content your self, my Lord, that to abbreviate a long recital, I should pass over particulars of little importance; and that I leave your self to judge what so dear and so desired a sight could produce in the minds of *Polixena*, *Suannon*, *Priam*, *Basogastus*, and so many other illustrious persons, who judg'd their entire felicity to consist in the fortune of their Prince. If they were satisfi'd with his return, they were no less with the marks they receiv'd of his affection, by caresses full of sweetness and tenderness; and their satisfaction was so much the greater, because they believ'd to see in his person a part of that change they had so long desired.

Polixena, to whom the King open'd his whole heart with a tender consolation, understood from his own mouth all that had befall'n him; and she endeavour'd not a little to draw from that adventure the most advantagious consequences he could desire: but he was not a little discontented at the absence of Prince *Marcomire*, whom he believ'd he should have found in *Franconia*; and fearing lest some accident was befall'n him, or lest possibly he should again be fall'n into the power of his enemies, he suffer'd for him a perplexity from which he could not free himself, though we represented to him, that he could neither be retaken or slain by the *Cimbrians*, but that we should have receiv'd some advice of it, either after his departure, or whilst he was amongst them.

The first days were devoted to rejoycings for so happy a return, of which from the highest to the very meanest among the people, the whole Kingdom gave extraordinary demonstrations; and soon after, all things were prepar'd to sustain that cruel War which attended us. As the puissance of so many Kings was threatned to invade us, *Pharamond* believ'd that the assistance of all his Allies would be necessary; and to this purpose he neglected not to send to all places from whence he believ'd he might receive assistance. And Fortune so order'd that either by the Orders he left at his parting, or by the Messengers from the Frontiers sent by *Ibere* and *Genebaud*, all things were extremly forwarded, and a great part of the people already in Arms, and ready to march for his service,

His fair reputation, and so many great virtues, by which he had gained the hearts of all the world, arm'd in his favour, not only those of his neighbours, who had been always joyned in the Alliance with him, and those who had remain'd neuters against him and his enemies in his first Wars, but even those who had carried Arms against him in favour of the *Romans* as the *Latobriges*, the *Carithinens*, the *Tulinges*, *Belannes* and *Cennauns*, and many others, now took up Arms in his quarrel, towards the streams of *Rhine* and *Danube*; and on that side of the Sea next the *Frisons*, the two Provinces of the *Cauches* joyned themselves to the *Franks*; so that all the Provinces which are encompassed by the Sea of *Rhine*, and *Visurgues*, and all those which extend to the *Helvetians*, the Lake *Leman*, and the Mountains which serve as Bulwarks to *Italy*, gathered together their forces for his assistance.

Yet he believ'd not all this power great enough to bear head against that of so many Kings as came to invade him; he therefore prepar'd to send to King *Gunderic*, who a little before had made himself Master of *Hispania Betica*, from whence you, my Lord, once before chas'd him; and to that valiant *Agilmond* King of the *Lombards*, whose reputation and adventures are so great, and who with so much valour hath founded a Monarchy in the fairest part of *Italy*. Remembring, that all these Princes had demanded his Alliance for the common liberty, and had offer'd him all their forces. But in the mean time, he understood that all the people which among the *Gauls* compos'd that part of *France*, over which his Ancestors had always reign'd, and who by the death of their King *Marcomire*, of whom I have spoken to you in the beginning of my Discourse, were fall'n into the power of the *Romans*, in brief, those very people, the Crown and Dominion over whom did by a long order of succession lawfully appertain to him, and for the Conquest of whom he had prepar'd in his very infancy to pass the *Rhine*, having now made use of the disorders of the Empire to regain their liberty, had taken Arms, and not only driven the *Roman* Garrisons out of their Cities, but with a powerful Army came to seek their lawful King, and were already approached the Banks of the *Rhine*, to call him to the possession of that fair Crown which attended him.

Pharamond, in whom a desire to overcome his enemies was now very strongly establish'd, praised the Gods for this happy encounter, which made his people submit to him at a time when he was not in a condition to endeavour a Conquest, to which he had been called from his

his very birth, and had sent them now to his succour when their assistance was so necessary: and not doubting but that to make them in this pressing necessity, he ought to assist them in their passage over the *Rhine*, he advanc'd towards that River with a part of his Troops; and coming to the Banks thereof in the Country of the *Jubons*, little distant from this, and very near to the place where the *Moselle* encreases with its plentiful water the *Rhenish* streams, he caus'd Bridges of Boats to be made, on which these *Gauls*, the ancient subjects of his Fathers, or rather the true *Franks* or *French*, pass'd the *Rhine*, and joyning with us, saluted their Prince with acclamations full of joy, conjuring him to come and take possession of the Scepter of his Progenitors.

These people were led and commanded by the Princes of the Royal Family, and by others who willingly submitted themselves to him, though till that time they had refused to acknowledge any other power but their own. The Princes of the Royal Blood were *Pharabert*, *Antenor* and *Dagobert*; and with these came *Heribert* chief of the Islanders of *Gallia Belgica*; *Sigeric*, to whom a part of the *Celts* did obey, *Rithimer*, *Nicanor*, *Richer*, *Betrer*, Sovereign Princes of many fair Provinces among the *Gauls*, and many other illustrious persons, who almost all had the honour to salute you. They were all considerable both by their birth and virtue. The Army which they conducted was compos'd of more than sixty thousand men.

The King receiv'd them with a Royal nobleness, as well by reason of his natural sweetness and innate civility, as for the obligation he had to those persons who came with so much generosity to offer him a flourishing Crown, to the conquest of which, the unhappy estate of his affairs suffer'd him not to employ himself, and for the succour they gave him in so urgent a necessity. But if he were oblig'd to them who came to call him to the inheritance of his Ancestors, you ought to believe him more bound to those, who having never been subject to his Progenitors, as *Rithimer*, *Sigeric* and *Nicanor*, came to submit themselves to this Empire, giving him hope by their example that the rest of the *Gauls* would do the same. He was not therefore wanting to testify his resentment by all the marks of kindness he could possibly shew; and by so fair a beginning, he gave them reason to hope all sorts of happiness and satisfaction under his Reign; but in the end, he represented unto them those misfortunes which hindred him from repassing the *Rhine* with them, to go and receive that Crown they presented him, praying them to suffer him to do what he ought to do in the defence of his Country, of his honour and of his life, which an infinite number of enemies had in few days design'd to assault.

Both the *French* Princes, and the Princes of the *Gauls*, which had accompanied them, were sensibly apprehensive of the discourse of the King, testifying to him, that it was upon the report, which had reach'd their Countries, of the war which the King of the *Sueves* carried into *Franconia*, that they had put themselves in Arms to come and serve him with all their Forces; that not only they would not refuse to perish with him even to the last of their men, but if it were necessary to make greater Levies in their Countries, they assur'd him that they had yet many more thousands of men ready for his service.

The King thanked them, and treated them with a freedom which absolutely gain'd their hearts; and seeing himself strengthened with this powerful relief, he march'd towards that City before named *Heleopolis*, but which from this time began to bear the appellation of *Franckfort*, seated upon the *Mein*, as well as *Peopolis*, where the Forces of the *Saxons*, the *Carithinens*, the *Latsbriges*, and all the other Provinces which from the *Mein* extend even to the feet of the *Alps*, and to the *Helvetians*, were to rendezvous; whilst *Priam* and *Ibereg* gather'd the Forces together out of the Country of the *Sicambres*, that of the *Srisons*, the *Cauches* and other nations, which from *Visurgues* and the Ocean inhabit as far as *Franconia*.

In sum, my Lord, to abridge to you this discourse, all the Army rendezvous'd at the places appointed; and the King having made a general conjunction, entred into *Franckfort*, where he caus'd those that came from the Coast of the *Helvetians* and *Artannum* to pass the *Mein*, and where *Priam* having conducted those he had levied towards the Coasts of the Sea, he saw himself at the head of more than sixscore thousand Footmen, and above forty thousand Horse.

This diligence was indeed necessary to prevent that of his enemies: for his Forces were scarcely assembled, when those of the King of the *Cimbrians* appear'd at the Banks of the *Mein*, and began to enter into the Country of the *Nertereans* which were subject to *Pharamond*. With the King of the *Cimbrians* march'd *Godegesile* King of the *Herules*, *Ardaric* King of the *Alanes*, *Odoacer* King of the *Basternes*, and *Amalaric* King of the *Turingsiens*, all four lovers of *Rosamond*, and all four inflam'd with a desire to conquer, and

hopes to merit her by the ruine of *Pharamond*: their Army was compos'd of more than two hundred thousand men; and the belief that the King of the *Cimbrians* had, that *Pharamond* would not be so readily in a condition to sustain this power, had made him to advance without attending the Army of the King of the *Sueves*, or that of *Gondioch*, who were to joyn together at the foot of the Mountains of *Mellibor*, and enter into *Franconia* by the river of *Viforgues*, and by the Country of the *Gatti*.

But though the King of the *Cimbrians* was followed by four Kings, brave, valiant and zealous after the death of *Pharamond*, that which was more formidable to him than all the power of the enemy, was the Princess *Rosamond* her self, whom the King her Father would lead in his Army to animate her lovers by her presence to the ruine of their Rival. It was said that she took this Journey with much reluctance; but she was forced to obey the will of the King her Father, as the Princess *Albifinda* was forced to yield to the King of the *Sueves*, and to keep her company.

As *Gondioch* by reason of the wounds which he had receiv'd from *Balamir*, and the obstacle which the past enmity did for some time give, was receiv'd the last into this Alliance; so he came last into the war: and the King of the *Sueves*, though he was animated against *Pharamond* with a hatred not at all inferior to that of the *Cimbrian* King, having had by reason of the change of Prince *Viridomar* his Son, and by other affairs which fell out, very great hindrances, resolv'd to attend *Gondioch*, who was to pass by the Confines of his Kingdom, and to form with him another body of an Army of more than sixscore thousand men.

A power so formidable might have made *Pharamond* tremble, if he had been capable of fear: but by the greatness of his courage, he understood without any terrour the knowledge of those preparations, and prepared to answer worthily the opinion which all the world had of him, and preserve generously that high reputation, which he had acquir'd through the whole world. However, as he would neglect nothing in a time wherein all was necessary to his advantage, he would not hinder that the Princes of the *Gauls*, which were come to his assistance, should send to make other Levies in their Countries, as they had offered; and besides he hearkned to the counsel of his friends, who advis'd him to send to the King of the *Lombards*, and to the King of the *Vandals*, as himself had before propos'd.

He judg'd in the mean time, that he ought not to attend the arrival of the King of the *Sueves* and *Gondioch*; but since he must fight with the enemies Army, he should do it before, by this conjunction, they were become sufficiently powerful to overwhelm without any resistance any thing durst oppose them: He marched then, though much less in number than they, with a confidence in his valour, and in the justice of his cause, which permitted him not to fear the events of the fight; and he found himself strengthened in such sort, by the command which *Rosamond* had given him to fight his Rivals, and dispute with them that Fortune to which they ought to raise themselves by his ruines, that he could not think of them, but with a disdain which presaged him the victory. *Balamir* was the only person he would not dispute, both by reason of the great actions fame reported him to have done, and by the proofs himself had seen of his valour: but besides that he had only his single person to offer against him, he knew that at present he was not in the enemies Army, and that his wounds were not so well cured at the departure of the King of the *Cimbrians*, to permit him to accompany him.

The enemies had left the River *Meine*, and the City of *Menofgade*, on their left hand; and being without much difficulty become Masters of those passages which were guarded by the Troops left by *Charamont* on the Frontier, they had cross'd almost all the Country of the *Nertereans*, which they had in all places laid waste, when we arrived very near them, to hinder their advancing farther without fighting. The King of the *Cimbrians*, though he knew himself the stronger fearing the valour and fortune of *Pharamond*, by the proofs he had already made of it, would willingly have deferred the Battel till the arrival of the King of the *Sueves*, and the King of the *Burgundians*; by whose assistance he hoped to over press us, and irrecoverably ruine us. But the lovers of *Rosamond*, impatient of occasions to signalize themselves in her service, and not willing that *Gondioch*, of whose glory they were possibly envious, should have a part in the expected success of that Battel, they press'd him with violence to resolve; and *Pharamond*, who knew well that if he gave it not now, he should be no more in a condition to do it, and that he had not Forces able to oppose those who would fall upon him, if he did not in part weaken them whilst they were divided, acted with so much vigour and good conduct, that the enemies had not the power to shun the combat, though they had had a design to do it.

It was then in that vast Plain that is between *Pheuzarum* and the Country of the *Nertseans*, that these two puissant Armies came to battle, and cover'd the field with the greatest number of combatants, that possibly *Germany* ever saw in one fatal day. My Prince put now in practice all that he had learnt in past occasions, not forgetting any thing in the order of the Combat, or in the disposal of his Troops, of all that which could be known to the most experienc'd Captains: he had that day divided his Army into four bodies, of which himself commanded the first, the three others being led on by *Sunnon*, *Priam* and *Pharabert*: *Ibere*, *Meroveus*, *Rithimer*, and *Charamont*, commanded four bodies of Cavalry, appointed to the assistance of the four great ones. I ought to extend my self on the recital of this battle, more than I have done in all others my Prince hath fought, in regard this was the most considerable, for the number of combatants, for importance of events, and for the memorable actions of *Pharamond*, who did things without doubt beyond belief or very imagination: but the fear I have to prove too tedious to you, by the recital of so many Combats, and the belief I have that this day hath been sufficiently famous to be known to the greatest part of the world, shall make me pass over these particulars which I could recount you, to tell you, that it was not the *French* and their Allies which fought against the *Cimbrians* and those of their party, but that it was *Pharamond*, who combated the Lovers of *Rosamond*, and who at this time appeared not a mortal man.

Both Armies had already on all sides charg'd each other, and by the admirable order which the King provided among his own, the disadvantage of the number prov'd not disadvantageous to him; when leaving at the head of his body *Basogastus* and *Geneband* (whom he had purposely kept by him, to command in his place, when he should be oblig'd to succour some other quarters) he flew through all parts of the Field, to animate with his presence those to whom it was thought necessary, or rather to carry Victory through all: And by the care he took to succour those that were weaken'd, to whom a hundred times that day he led assistance, with a diligence which cost the lives of five or six horses, he serv'd his Army more than a re-enforcement of fifty thousand men could have done. In all his actions, appearing and shewing himself in all parts like lightning, or rather as a Comet bloody and fatal to his enemies, he on all sides call'd with a loud voice to the lovers of *Rosamond*, bidding them perform their promises. There was perhaps more than one of them this day repented themselves of their presumptuous enterprise, and felt themselves tremble under their Arms at the sight of so terrible an enemy, though they were Valiant, nay more, Enamoured and fought almost in the sight of *Rosamond*.

Ardaric and *Codegesile*, with the *Herules*, and the *Alains*, maintain'd an equal fight against the *Gauls* which *Pharabert* commanded, and that body conducted by *Meroveus*, which sustained them: and *Odoacer* on the other side, in the head of the *Frisons*, against the *Salians*, and the people neighbouring on the Sea, who were under the conduct of *Sunnon*: when *Amalaric* having with some Squadrons of Cavalry which followed him, pierced the *Sicambres*, who fought in the body commanded by *Priam*, turning to the other side with a fierce countenance, which he drew from some appearance of Victory, beheld *Pharamond* with a great body of Cavalry, who flew to sustain the *Sicambres*, whom he had seen in disorder. *Amalaric* could not mistake *Pharamond*, who made himself known from others by too apparent signs: and *Pharamond* having understood that it was the King of the *Turingiens* his Rival, spurring his Squadrons against his, and running towards him with a threatening cry, whilst the enamour'd *Amalaric* advanc'd towards him with an assurance equal to his: when they were so near as to be understood by each other, *Amalaric* (cryed the King of the *Franks*) *let us see if thy forces are equal to thy great design; and see here the head of Pharamond, which I bring thee.* *Amalaric* answered not to *Pharamond*, but with a blow of his sword which he let fall on his head, which from thence glancing on his shoulder, gave him a light wound; but the point of *Pharamond's* prov'd more fatal, which passing under the arm which he had lifted up, pierc'd him quite to the other side, so that he fell depriv'd of life between his horses feet. Both the *Franks* and *Turingiens*, though from a different provocation, echoed forth great cries at the fall of *Amalaric*. And *Pharamond*, whom at another time, modesty would not have permitted to open his mouth after a Victory, fighting in this against his Rivals with more courage than ordinary, *Neither shalt thou give my head to the King of the Cimbrians (said he) nor shalt thou possess Rosamond.*

The death of *Amalaric*, and the sight of *Pharamond*, had caus'd so much fear in the *Turingiens*, that instead of charging those they had to oppose them as they begun, they first made a stand, soon after fell into disorder, and in the end abandon'd the Field to their enemies: from hence the King hasten'd to assist where necessity most requir'd; and having

chang'd the face of the Combat, and given him the advantage in every place where he shew'd himself, he was conducted by the same Fortune which had made *Amalaric* lose his life, to the place where *Odoacer* with his *Basternes* fought against the *Frisons* and the *Salians*: and no sooner did he know him for one of his rash Rivals, who at the price of his head would merit *Rofamond*, but shewing himself to him, with an aspect full of fury: See here, *Pharamond* (cried he at a great distance) and see that head thou promisest to give *Rofamond*. *Odoacer* had no sooner known him by many formidable tokens, but judging that he had need of all his Arms against such an enemy, he took a Lance from one of his Esquires, and settling himself well in the saddle, he ran against *Pharamond*, with hopes to pass his Lance through his body. The King oppos'd it with his Shield, on which it broke in a hundred pieces: and my Prince, who was not at all shaken, receiving the blow with a sigh full of disdain; *Wherefore* (said he) *with so mean forces, so great an enterprize?* And at the same time turning to *Odoacer*, who came towards him with his sword in his hand, after he had receiv'd another blow, which did only glance on his Armour, he directed the point of his sword to his enemies's Viscer, and furiously spurring on his horse, made him tumble back over his Crouper, through a cruel wound, vomiting out his blood and soul together.

Thus was he in one only day, and by two blows of his own sword, freed from two of his presumptuous Rivals, who had engaged so lightly in a design so rash: and we were made to hope by a beginning so happy, that the others would have no more favourable success.

The death of *Odoacer* proved no less fatal to the *Basternes*, than that of *Amalaric*; and by the endeavours with which *Pharamond* and his Troop charg'd them, they were soon forc'd to yield the Victory to our side. But where *Pharabert* with the *Gauls* combated against *Ardaric* and *Godegesile*, fortune was a little different; and by the Valour of these two Princes, and the advantage they had in number over our men; they made them bend; and charging them yet more vigorously, they were about to yield to a general rout, when a Cavalier arm'd with very fair Arms, and who had not been seen at the beginning of the battle, calling to him some Squadrons of Cavalry which followed him with joy, so soon as he had spoken to their Captains, he stopp'd by his words and example those who were ready to turn their backs; and having encourag'd them by the fair actions they saw him do, he led them to the Combat with so much vigor, that those who before had made them yield ground, were now no more able to stand before them; but *Godegesile* himself, who in person combated in that place, having receiv'd some wounds from a hand so powerful as made him stagger in his Saddle, was constrain'd to yield, and quit the field with his *Goths* and *Herules*. The Valiant person who had put them to flight, carried his assistance against *Ardaric* with the same success; and strengthened by the arrival of *Ibere*, who with the Cavalry which he commanded, was come to the same place, he charg'd the *Astians* and their King with a valour so extraordinary, that as well as *Godegesile*, he constrain'd him to abandon the Victory.

In the mean time, *Pharamond* had done overcoming on that side, where the main body of the enemies Army fought under the command of the King of the *Cimbrians*, and under *Briomer*; who not permitting his King to expose himself to the greatest dangers, having left him in the middle of a Troop of valiant men, who had nothing to take care of, but the defence of his person, he perform'd all the duties of a General, and acquitted himself both like a valiant and experienc'd Captain. But he in vain made resistance against the Valour and Fortune of the King of the *Franks*; for he beheld with infinite grief, or rather with some transportations of rage, his first Battalions turn their backs to those that charg'd them, and the *Franks* with their great King carrying through all parts, disorder, terror and death.

To what end should I enlarge farther? In fine, my Lord, Victory extended it self in our favour, through all parts of the Field, and the whole Plain was in a little time seen covered with dead bodies, floating in blood. *Pharamond* in his Victory having nothing for which he was more solicitous than the safety of the *Cimbrian* King, made proclamation through all his Army, to leave him a free passage and retreat, and take as much care for the preservation of his life, as they could do for his own: but he was not long time in this trouble, for by the care he continually took to inform himself, he learn'd in the end, that seeing the general rout of his Army, and being no longer able to stop it, he was retir'd with a small number of his to a little City behind him, which he had some days before made himself Master of, and where he had before the battle left the Princesses.

Pharamond understood this news with no small joy; and finding that care over, he obtain'd

tain'd the fairest and most glorious victory that had for many ages been gain'd in *Germany*. It had been much more bloody than it was, if the King had not made proclamation that they should spare the lives of the Subjects of *Rosamond*, or if the night arriving soon after, had not deliver'd them from the fury of those whom their distance from the King permitted not to be partakers of his clemency. The advantages of this Battel remain'd to us so entire, that for ten thousand of ours which were killed, the enemies lost near one hundred thousand; amongst whom might be counted two great Kings, and a great number of their principal Officers: and that formidable Army, which the day before seem'd to threaten and make all *Europe* tremble, in one single day was reduced to the one half of its strength.

To the joy which the King had for so great a victory, was added another as great as he could possibly receive, by the sight of that valiant Cavalier, who by the assistance he had given to the *Gauls*, and to *Meroveus* against *Ardaric* and *Godegesile*, had so powerfully contributed to the success of the Battel, and who being presented to the King, who had earnestly demanded for him, was known for Prince *Marcomire*, whose absence had caused so much grief and perplexity. You may believe, my Lord, that the King shewed all the kindness he could to a Brother so worthy of his affection and esteem, and that he testified a joy so much the greater, by how much he was before cruelly tormented for him. All the Princes, and all other considerable persons, took part in the return of the Prince, and all the world gave him those praises which were due to the great actions he had that day done.

The King was still welcoming him, and informing himself of his adventures, when a great number of considerable prisoners were brought before him, and in the head of the rest he was presented with *Eriomer*: the sight of this implacable enemy, who had twice carried his Sword to the breast of the King, and from whose hands *Rosamond* had with so much difficulty rescued his life, gave some joy to *Pharamond*, and mov'd the Prince his Brother, less patient than he, to anger; but it made the King neither lose his sweetness nor modesty, but receiving him with a countenance which had nothing of an enemy in it: *Briomer* (said he) *Fortune hath been contrary to you, but you ought to pardon the injury she hath done you, since she hath not expos'd you to a greater misfortune, than that of receiving kindness from the man you hate.* *Briomer* expressed his anger by his silence, not answering at all to the words of *Pharamond*: but the King ceas'd not to care for him, till by his continued civilities he oblig'd him to speak: *I confess* (said he at length) *that you are great and generous: but after an injury you have done me, for which I can never receive reparation, I counsel you to take away my life, if you will assure your own. I shall rather diligently endeavour to preserve it* (replied the King with a sigh) *and if by my misfortune I have done you any injury, I shall endeavour to make you lose the remembrance, and to gain the friendship of a man who hath so much fidelity for the blood of Rosamond.*

Finishing these words, he sent him back with all those had been taken with him, giving them a convoy to conduct them to the place where the King of the *Cimbrians* was retired, to whom with the prisoners he likewise sent the bodies of the two Kings, with a liberty to take away all those to whom the *Cimbrians* would give Burial.

Pharamond without doubt might have put an end to the defeat of the enemies Army, if he would have renewed the combat on the morrow: Nor was it so well secured by the City whither the *Cimbrian* King was retired, but that by siege of that place, it had been easie to force them to come to a second Battel; but he could never dispose himself to it, and protested openly, that whatever should arrive, he would not go to assault the Father of *Rosamond*, especially in a place where she her self in person was. This consideration, of which he could not repent himself, was the cause of no small damage to him: for the night following, the Army of *Gondioch*, and the King of the *Sueves* came to meet, to whom the *Cimbrians* had sent a dispatch, and having passed the Forest *Gabretz*, which borders on the Country of the *Nertereans*, joyned with theirs, and not only made it stronger than ours by fifty thousand men, but fortified it in the person of *Gondioch* with a Captain, who in good conduct and experience in war yielded to few Captains in the world.

This increase of the enemies power, which however was no more than we expected, made it appear with how much reason the King had given Battel; and because we were forced to remove our Camp, as well by reason of the infection which a great number of bodies which could not easily be interred, might give to our Army, as to encamp our selves where we might live more commodiously than in that place where the want of water permitted us not to stay, we retired towards the *Rhine*, and pitch'd our Camp in such manner, that both leaving the River as a Bulwark behind us, and enjoying all the conveni-

ences we could receive, we secured *Peapolis*, *Franckfort*, and a good part of the Country from the incursions of our enemies.

Hitherto *Pharamond* had reason to believe, that he had by no action augmented the hatred of *Rosamond*, and having only stood in his own defence as she had commanded him, she would in all likelyhood persevere in those thoughts she expressed at his parting from her. But Fortune would that the King of the *Cimbrians*, seized with a mortal grief for the loss of the Battel, or rather not being able to resist the rage which transported him for the ill success of his enterprize, not only stopt his ears to all those consolations which the Princess his Daughter, or his friends endeavour'd to give him, but refus'd to receive any nourishment that day, or so much as suffer that a slight wound which he received by the shot of an Arrow should be dress'd; tormenting himself in such sort, that the day following he was seized with a very violent Fever. And as he disdain'd those remedies they would have applic'd, but persevered in his affliction, and his passion, his Fever became more strong; so that when by the arrival of the King of the *Sueves* and *Gondioch*, he might hope to redeem the loss he had suffer'd, he was reduc'd to such a condition, that his Physicians began to fear his life. The Princess his Daughter, and the Kings his Allies, caus'd him to be serv'd with infinite diligence; but all their assistance prov'd vain: for his malady that was grown too matterless for all remedies, took away his life the seventh day after the Battel.

He yielded up his life into the arms of *Rosamond*; nor dying, took he any oher care but to recommend his death to her revenge, of which he accus'd only *Pharamond*; threatening her with the fury of the gods, and the detestation of men, if ever she releas'd her self of that promise to pursue him to death. The Princess pouring down tears before him, promis'd to perform what he enjoyn'd, though without doubt she detested that obstinate cruelty which accompanied him to his Tomb. Yet the King of the *Sueves*, who was present, and whose inclinations were not more tender than those of the *Cimbrian* King, nor his resentment less violent, engag'd her by new protestations to the union they had made to the ruine of *Pharamond*.

So soon as the King was dead, she was saluted by the *Cimbrians* as their Queen, and declar'd Sovereign of the *Tentons*, *Cimbrians* and *Bohemians*, as her Predecessors had been; but her grief was such, both for the loss of her Father, and possibly for those things to which she was engag'd, that for many days she was not sensible of any thoughts but those of deploring her misfortunes. *Pharamond* was ready to dye with grief when he understood this news; not that he found any subject of affliction in the death of a man who after death it self made war against him, but he judg'd well, that innocent as he was, he was condemn'd to suffer the greatest punishment; and that since by his misfortune he dyed making war against him, and that it was reported that a slight wound he received in the Battel might have contributed, he should be look'd upon by *Rosamond*, if not as the authour, at least as the cause of his death.

He confirm'd himself more strongly in this belief, when he understood the particulars, and the protestations which the King of the *Sueves* and he had exacted from the new Queen of the *Cimbrians*. When the recital was made to him, lifting his eyes to Heaven, and permitting himself to fall on a seat that was near him; *Alas* (said he) *can there this misery rest for me still to prove? and must I wish so much innocency be eternally criminal? Oh Fortune!* (continued he a little after, rising and walking leisurely) *art thou then so favourable to me in Fights, to be so contrary to me in all those things that concern not my Honour, nor my Glory? Vain glory* (continued he) *importunate glory, which incessantly flies all repose, and which no felicity accompanies! shall I dedicate my intire life to you, and shall I not see some moments exempt from the cruelty of this merciless Fortune which so persecutes me?*

His passion made him utter many things like to these, and he tormented himself all that day, whatever Prince *Marcomire*, and so many illustrious persons that were about him could represent to him; and on the morning calling *Cloderic* unto him, for whom he had ever reserv'd a great esteem, he commanded him to go with a Trumpeter to the Camp of the enemies, to speak to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, if that Honour might be permitted him (as he might hope, since he was her Subject, and one of those the most considered) and in testifying to her the great share he took in her grief, to represent to her how far he was from rejoycing at the misfortune which caused her to shed those tears; and to offer her anew for victime to the Manes of the King her Father, that life which she had hitherto refus'd, which he had not preserv'd and defended but by her commandment, and which he was ready to abandon more willingly than ever to the Ministers of her revenge.

Cloderic

Cloderic being thus amply instructed from the King, departed from our Camp towards that of the *Cimbrians*; and as we understood at his return, he not only saw the Queen in that profound perplexity which was observ'd in her habit, and in all her person, in the middle of a great company of Princes and other illustrious persons which environ'd her, and who look'd upon her as their Sovereign, or rather as their goddess; but notwithstanding that grief which possess'd her, he was very well receiv'd, and had all the liberty he desired to discourse with her of what he had in charge. *Rosmond* wept while he spoke, and when he stopp'd, drying her eyes to return him an answer, *Cloderic* (said she) *of force I must perish, or Pharamond must perish; these are not my inclinations, but it is my cruel destiny which commands it, and it is to my destiny I must yield obedience, and not to my inclinations: Pharamond is not guilty, but he is unfortunate; and though I am not criminal, I am no less unhappy. The gods which oppose themselves to his intentions, are perhaps no more favourable to mine; but since they so visibly have foreseen their will, we must necessarily submit to it. Bid him prepare himself as I am prepar'd, and tell him, that in assaulting his life, as I must assault it, it is my will that he defend it as I have ordain'd him.*

Cloderic would have reply'd, but she would not that he should speak any more of *Pharamond*; though *Cloderic* believ'd by some outward signs in her countenance, that it was not without doing violence to her thoughts, that she declin'd her self from that discourse; and began another of *Cloderic's* proper interests, leaving him the liberty to stay with *Pharamond*, or to return to her Court, where she promis'd not only to re-establish him in his Estate and Offices, but to make his Fortune much better than it had been during the life of the King her Father.

This was what *Cloderic* reported to the King when he returned to our Camp; and by his discourse he knew not what judgment to make of his fortune, though Prince *Marcomire* still assured him that he had no reason to despair. On the morrow we understood that the enemies Army march'd directly towards us; and the day following we saw them come very near us, and encamp on the other side of the *Segré*, which is that little River you may behold from the windows of this chamber, and which taking its course from a little City, which from its name is call'd *Segodunum*, flows to discharge it self into the *Rhine* a little below *Coken*. After their arrival, we understood that all the Kings and Princes, of whose Forces this Army was compos'd, receiv'd their orders from the fair Queen of the *Cimbrians*, who by the commandment of the King her Father, and by the importunity of the King of the *Sueves*, was to await the end of the war; and that next to her, the other Kings had yielded the chief command to the King of the *Sueves*, as well because of his age, and the Forces which he conducted, as because he was the most concern'd, and most fervently fought the ruine of *Pharamond*.

Behold now, my Lord, what are the Adventures, and what is the present condition of *Pharamond*; I assure my self that you have found in his Fortune something more strange than what your imagination represented to you; and if you do not judge him the most miserable of all men, yet at least you will confess that his is a kind of misfortune so particular, that scarce the strangest Nations, or the most ancient of ages can furnish an example: His Actions are sufficiently heroick and noble, to give him a great name amongst the most famous men: And you must pardon me, my Lord, if I dare to say, that if his misfortunes had not thrown such obstacles in the ways of his glorious designs, he had not only establish'd himself in that fair Monarchy on the other side of the *Rhine*, to which he is call'd both by the Oracles of the gods, and the desires and hopes of men, but had possibly followed the tracks of more famous Conquerours, and been mounted by his valour and excellent virtues to a glory equal to theirs.

I confess (said *Constance* to *Cleomer*, seeing that he had made an end) that *Pharamond* is not only capable to exceed all mens hopes, but that nothing among men was ever greater than he. If his qualities were admirable, his fortune is no less prodigious; but though it be more extraordinary than mine, by the strange events which compose it, I see no reason to retract from what I have told him: and I do maintain yet, that my misery is greater than his, since all hopes are lost to me; but according to my opinion, he may yet hope.

Constance added many other words to this Discourse; and that of the Adventures of *Pharamond*, gave him sufficient matter to entertain a farther conversation with *Cleomer*, if the *Frank*, perceiving that the greatest part of the night was spent, and that in the

the condition wherein he was, his health might be endanger'd by so long watching, after he had demanded pardon of him for the tediousness of the recital, and receiv'd from his civility the thanks he believed due to the pains he had taken, had not given him the good night, giving him liberty to dedicate to the remembrance of the Adventures he had heard, or to his proper misfortunes, those hours in which by his grief he was often depriv'd of sleep.

The end of the Second Part of
PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

The Third Part.

BOOK I.



He great courage of the King of the *Franky* made him impatiently suffer the power of his enemies in his own Territories; and though he was much weaker than they in number of men, yet he had without doubt sought occasion to fight them, if he had not respected the presence of *Rosamond*, who was in the head of them, and whom he durst not assault, though she had commanded him to defend himself. The remembrance of this command, which she had enjoyed with all her Authority, and which after the death of the King her Father she had reiterated by the mouth of *Cloderic*, joyned to the indignation he bare against his Rivals;

inspir'd him every moment to enterprize something against them, and made him often call for his Arms, to return upon their heads thunders more formidable than those wherewith they threatned his. But then casting his eyes on their Camp, and with them finding out the place where the divine Queen of the *Cimbrians* lodg'd, that place seem'd to him a place most sacred, which he could not behold without veneration; and having reason'd on all things which were permitted him, he laid aside his design of driving back the enemies Forces with all his, or opposing himself to all the enterprises of his Rivals, resolving only to hold the defensive part, without assaulting an Army which *Rosamond* in person commanded.

With this resolution he gave all orders necessary to avoid surprises, sending continually parties abroad, to discover the designs of his enemies, and oppose them if he saw necessary, giving orders to fight them in all places where they were any thing distant from *Rosamond*; and keeping himself continually in a condition to repulse them where-ever they should assault him. To come at him, they were of necessity to pass the *Segré*, which was scarce fordable, though it were a very little River; or take their march round by *Segudunum*, a little, but very strong City, defended by a good Garrison which he had placed there, and which might much annoy their passage; besides that they were oblig'd to shut themselves up between the City and a Mountain that was opposite to it, at the feet of which, they were to pass unavoidably, by reason of the difficulty to conduct their Chariots, their Baggage, and their Engines of War cross the Mountain which was sharp and rough.

Pharamond exercis'd his diligence as much as his cruel passion would permit him, as well to preserve a Glory acquir'd by so many famous Victories, as to defend his people, whom his particular quarrel expos'd to the calamities of war, and to oppose the unjust designs of those odious and rash Rivals, who would raise their Fortunes by his Ruines. But in the midst of these martial employs, his love more cruelly made war against him, than either the *Cimbrians*, the *Sueves*, or the *Burgundians*; and that which fear might have wrought in other spirits, for the event of a war so terrible, and which in all likelihood could not be ended but by a horrible effusion of blood: This passion, the enemy of his repose, wrought over his with an effect much more strange, and subjected him to all that

grief which a Soul like his was capable to undergo. His wisdom and natural moderation supported him against a part of those transportations, which are ordinary in persons of his age, when assaulted by a violent passion: but that restraint they gave to the most impetuous motions, hindring them from appearing outwardly, did not divert the cruel effect they produc'd within, so that the Soul of that unfortunate Prince was miserably tormented by most sharp and doleful Sufferings; not but that in the midst of the most cruel ones that assaulted him, he found some minutes of consolation, and a very pleasing consolation it was, when he judg'd by the discourse, and by all the proceedings of the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, that it was not her inclinations that armed her against him; that notwithstanding all the injuries he had done her, he had attract'd her esteem above all other men, and that by the very confession of that divine Princess, if his ill fortune had not oppos'd, he had not only not been hated, but might have had hopes to have been preferred before all Princes in the world. The terms in which she had expressed her thoughts returned dayly to his memory, and the reflection she made on them, had sometimes so much power as to suspend in his Soul the remembrance of all his misfortunes, and give some access to that joy, from which for so long time past he had been miserably banished, but having devoted some few minutes to this flattering thought, in which he found both honour and comfort, he return'd to the sad knowledge of his misery, and though he well saw that he was esteem'd by *Rosamond*, he well foresaw that he could never be lov'd, that he could never be admitted to the honour to serve her, and that in sum, whatever advantages he might have over his Rivals, either by the events of war, or the esteem of *Rosamond*, he could never hope to be happy.

Ab vain appearance of felicity, (said he, when he was plunged into these sad considerations) *why do you abuse me thus? or why do you not permit my grief to work its full effect, since you are not able to bring any change to my deplorable condition? I will believe, since I owe an entire belief to what those false lips utter, that it is not by her inclination, that Rosamond wages war against me; and I will likewise be perswaded, that if Fortune had not put so cruel difference between us, my Rivals had never had any advantage over me in the esteem of Rosamond. But alas! dost this belief make me less miserable? or can it make me forget, that though the inclinations of Rosamond were wholly favourable towards me, she will never make him happy, who hath spoil'd and laid waste her Dominions, by the loss of so many thousands of her Subjects, who, with his own hand, and before her eyes, slew her Brother; and whom she accuses to be the cause of her Father's death? Though she should forget all these injuries, though she should no longer hate me, nay, though she should love me, durst she, or could she with honour, give before the eyes of all the world, marks of affection to a man, whom the merciless rules of her Duty ought to render odious to her very Tomb? Ab, let us believe rather, as we have hitherto believed, not only that there was never any among all men miserable in a kind of misfortune like to ours, but that all the changes that can arrive in the world cannot add any increase of misery, more than my heart alreadyresents, and that not being able to cease to love, but by ceasing to live, I cannot cease to be miserable, but in my Tomb.* He tormented himself ordinarily in this manner, not forbearing in the presence of many of his illustrious Friends, whom he saw concern themselves in his grief, he strove to dissimble it, making use of the greatness of his courage and moderation, to keep lock'd within his own breast the greatest part of what he felt.

After he was departed from the chamber of *Constance*, to leave him the liberty to understand from the mouth of *Cleomer* the recital of his Adventures, he betook himself into his Appartment, with the Princes and other great personages which followed him, where he entertained himself some time with them, consulting what orders he was to take to prevent the surprisals of the enemy. He gave charge to *Nicanor* and *Diocles* to draw a Line from the *Segré* to the foot of the mountain; and commanded *Gustaldus* and *Ade-lard* to seize on the straits of the mountain with some Infantry, with a design to raise there a little Fort to annoy the enemy, and guard that Post against all attempts. In fine, he conferred with *Basogastus* concerning the Government of the State, on whose prudence he relyed more than ordinarily, since his passion had clouded a part of his natural light, or at least hindred him from acting with an entire liberty. He advis'd with him so much the longer, because that day he was to return to *Franckfort*, and thence to *Peapolis*, from whence he was come some days before to confer with the King, and where he had left the Princess *Polixena*.

He gave in the end some orders to *Charamont*, what he would have done that day, and after went to visit Prince *Marcomire*, whose wounds, though slight, kept him yet in Bed for some days: but because he would entertain himself particularly with him, and that

that he would understand things of which he had not time to speak to him but confidentially, since his return, he took an occasion to go alone into his Chamber. He found him in a very good condition, and the Prince told him, so soon as he enquired of his health, that it was only to obey him that he kept his Bed, but that if he would permit him, he would quit it to Morrow. *Pharamond* desir'd him not to prejudice his health by an unnecessary halt, and being seated by his Bed side, he had no sooner shew'd by his behaviour that he had a design to discourse with him privately, but they who were in the Chamber retir'd.

The King caress'd him with all the proofs he could give him of a most real affection, and certainly, all that affection was truly due to him, not only by reason of his blood, but for a thousand admirable qualities by which he might equal the most accomplish'd persons in the world, and which had appear'd with a fairer splendor if they had not been in part obscur'd by those of so great a Brother. His beauty scarce yielded to the beauty of the fairest Ladies, but though it appear'd a little too delicate for his Sex, there might be seen to sparkle in his eyes a Martial Vigour, and in all his Person something so lively, and so full of courage, that it was impossible to behold him with ordinary thoughts: His Stature and whole frame of person was admirably compos'd, though much inferior to that of the King his Brother, and there might be observ'd a freedom in all his Actions, which gave him the greatest grace in the world: His disposition was very pleasant, and full of admirable sprightliness, but he was less Patient than the King his Brother, though he was not more quickly incens'd than he was suddenly pleas'd. For his Valour, he might not only compare with the most Courageous, but might dispute with the God of War: Nor had he ever fear'd danger in those perils which had made the most hardy tremble, and therefore young as he was, he had signaliz'd himself in many Combats, in which he seem'd to be bred by the death of those Generals which he had slain with his own hand at his first taking Arms, and by a thousand other Heroick Actions, which had got him a most glorious share in the famous Victories of the King his Brother.

Pharamond knowing him in all things worthy that Illustrious Blood from which he was descended, lov'd him with a most particular tenderness, and that love which seem'd to have blotted out of his Memory all things but *Rosamond*, had not at all lessen'd the affection which he had conceiv'd for a Brother, who had merited so well. He gave him now many particular Assurances, and after some discourse, by which he open'd to him his heart, with all possible freedom, *My Brother*, said he, *You know that since your return, we have not had one hour of time to entertain each other freely, but the Trouble of our affairs, and the Grief I have felt for those Miseries which by the death of the Cimbrian King were added to my Afflictions, have made us defer that which I am to learn of you, concerning those Adventures that beset you since our separation; not but that you have told me something, but it was so confusedly, and that little I have understood, seem'd to me so important, that I apprehended it with a great curiosity, and very much concern. I have prepar'd to devote so much of this day as shall be requisite, if your health will permit you without inconveniency, to make the recital; and because by the little I have known, I judge that you would not willingly communicate to other persons, that which our friendship may oblige you to tell me, I am come alone, as you see, to give you a more entire liberty. It is true My Lord, answered the Prince, I believe I have things to tell you may merit your Attention, and that for the little time I was absent from you, there beset me Adventures very considerable. I have still attended your will and your conveniency to make the recital, and since you desire it to day, I can obey you so much the more easily, my Wounds being in a condition to permit me to undergo a greater Travel than this; nor have I any sickness to obstruct a much longer discourse.* At these words *Pharamond* calling some of the Attendants, and having given them Order to take care that they should not be interrupted, he testified to the Prince, his willingness to hear, and soon after the Prince began in these words:

The History of Marcomire.

I should be difficultly perswaded, My Lord, to recount to you, much more to confess to you those things which by the rules of Prudence ought to be condemned, if I did not know you would be favourable to me, and that you are too conversant with the Passion that hath caus'd them not to pardon the effects it hath produc'd. You have understood Sir, that by the Combat which I fought against *Gondemar* and his *Burgundians*, for the liberty of *Albisinda*, (though at the beginning I thought I had fought for that of *Rosamond*)

Amund) I was reduc'd to a condition which permitted me not to be glad for any advantage I had over my Enemy, and that after his fall, I scarce had time to stagger, as I may say, to the Chariot of the Princess, and to open my mouth to tell her she was free, but my strength (which was spent by the great quantity of blood which I lost,) forsook me in an instant, and I remain'd without sense and without knowledge, in the Arms of those that came to sustain me. You have known moreover, how the Princess of the *Sueves*, touch'd with Compassion at the sight thereof, and not willing to leave without succour a man, to whom she believ'd her self oblig'd for her Liberty, laying aside the fear she might have to incense the King her Father, by the effects of her pity and acknowledgment, caus'd me to be laid in her Chariot to conduct me to *Egitina*, whither she retir'd.

The Chariot drove on a great way, Before I regain'd my senses, and I have been told since, that whilst I lay in that condition, the Princess express'd both by her Countenance and Discourse, great marks of a true grief, forgetting nothing she could do to succour me. We were gone a good part of our way, and the Sun was ready to set, before I return'd to life, when passing near a Fountain, the Princess command'd to stop, and having caus'd some water to be fetch'd, order'd it to be cast several times in my face; those refreshments in the end procur'd the effect they desir'd, for by little and little I recover'd my senses, and open'd my eyes.

As for the present, my Knowledge not being return'd entirely, and my Memory later than my Knowledge; By a light which was yet clear enough to let me easily discern all Objects, I found my self with astonishment among the Ladies, and near a Lady whose beauty attend'd not the return of all my strength, to give me surprize and admiration. I beheld her very stedfastly, and as the effect of fair things is to please in what estate soever they appear to us, I remember I beheld her with delight, and though I could not well discern what I saw, yet in my weakness I felt somewhat that allur'd me in this sight, which agreeably flatter'd and comforted me. I held my eyes firmly fixt on that fair face, and I heard, though very confusedly, the sound of a Voice as sweet as the Air of all the person who desired to know how I did, and assur'd me of my recovery; when with my entire Knowledge, my Memory began to return, and recalling by little and little to my remembrance all that had befall'n me to the moment of my swoounding, I knew in the end that I was near the Princess of the *Sueves*, and had sufficient strength to discern her from the rest, by the fair marks I discover'd.

With this Knowledge, that of my Duty returning into my Senses, brought with it Respect and Confusion, and seeing with what real concernment that fair Princess employ'd her self to relieve me, I beheld with some shame the pains she took, and the irreverent condition wherein I lay before her: But as my weakness permitted me not to hinder the effect of her goodness, I testified to her at the beginning, by my looks, the regret I suffer'd it with, and a little after I open'd my lips, and began with a feeble voice, and a stammering discourse, to express to her the Confusion of my thoughts, when she impos'd me silence, praying me with a sweetness wholly Charming, not to use any force to my self which might hinder the effect of the design she had to endeavour the preservation of my life: I would yet have replied something, when she oppos'd me with more Authority, and I left to my eyes the care to speak for me, when they likewise fail'd to do me that kindness, and to rejoyce at the pleasing aspect which charm'd them, through the defect of day, which soon after quitted us.

Though in the condition I was, and considering the little time I had, I could not resent the entire effect of the Charms of the Princess *Albisinda*; it is most certain however, that I had begun to receive a sweet impression which from my eyes insensibly pass'd to my heart, and had sensibly fill'd it with an Idea, which had wholly possess'd me, and made me forget all other things. This was that which made me endure the Darkness with grief, and as truly I was not in a condition well to discern, or reason of what I saw, or what I felt, I lamented the loss of the day, without knowing whether it were the want of its light, or any other cause I ought to accuse: *Alas!* said I, with a voice feeble and trembling, *What darkneses have deprived me of that fair day that shone upon me? Or who robs me of that Heavenly Object that recal'd me from my Tomb?* At another time I should scarce have pronounc'd these words so boldly; but as I now was, I had not preserv'd all my Reason, nor all my Discretion, but I spoke without Consultation what my first motion made me utter.

It seem'd that the loss of this pleasing splendor, as well as the loss of my blood, caus'd a new weakness in me; for I fell into a second Swoound, ere the Chariot arriv'd at *Egitina*,

tina, and out of which I came not to my self till after I was put into a Bed, and all assistances necessary given me by experienc'd persons. In effect, I understood afterwards, that this was the first care of the Princess *Albisinda*: And though she was come to a place, where the death of *Theobaldus*, whose Corps had been brought thither but some few hours before, put all things in Alarm, Disorder, and Confusion, yet she went not to the Princess *Rosamond*, whom so cruel an Accident had thrown into an Abyss of grief, till she had taken exact order for all things, without so much as confiding in any of my men, who had followed me, and on whose affection she might have relyed.

I can likewise speak it for truth, that the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, preserving in the depth of her affliction, and of her displeasure against you, her generosity still entire, not only order'd I should be serv'd according to my quality, and to the service I had done for *Albisinda*, but defended me by all her Authority against the fury of *Briomer*, who having lost his reason through the death of *Theobaldus*, would have extended to your blood that revenge he meditated against you. In effect, I have been inform'd, that it was not without some difficulty, that she hindred him from coming to stab me: And this furious man, incens'd by the obstruction he gave to his design, not being able to remain in the same City with the Brother of *Pharamond*, departed some few days after to find the King of the *Cimbrians*.

I was in my bed, between the arms of those persons who look'd to my wounds, and applied things necessary to them: When I recover'd out of my swoond, and that my blood being stopt, and those remedies they had given me having strengthned me, I came to my self, with more vigor and knowledge than I had the first time: I knew those of my men that were about me, and understood by what they told me, the place where I was, and the truth of what had pass'd. I had many great wounds, but by good fortune, none in any dangerous places, and those who took care of them, knowing that my weakness proceeded only from the quantity of blood I had lost, assur'd me that my life was not in any danger, and endeavour'd my Cure with infinite diligence. But instead of thinking of my self, I presently fought with my eyes for the fair Object which had smitten them so pleasingly some hours before, and I sigh'd not seeing it any more, through the pain I suffer'd in its absence: Yet I was forc'd to support it longer than I desir'd, and because the Physicians judg'd that I ought to apply the rest of that night to repose and silence, and all that day which succeeded it, I saw in my Chamber no other than the persons necessary to serve me: but the day following the Princess *Albisinda* came to visit me; accompanied only by two Ladies, whereof the one had been her Governess, and the other was Wife to the chief Officer of her Court. It seem'd to me that her arrival dissipat'd the Obscurity which was before in my Chamber, and I found Day enough to observe that Celestial beauty which had Charm'd me, and of which I had so dearly preserv'd the *Idea*. I felt likewise something at the same time which made me forget all my wounds, and by the various motions it rais'd in my Soul, I knew well I was become truly enamoured.

See here, Sir, the Confession which I have to make to you, and Fortune so order'd that having the honour of being your Brother, I should have a share in that destiny, which notwithstanding all cruel Obstructions, should make us love the Daughters of our Enemies, and that I should feel for the Sister of *Vindimir*, who lost his life by your hands, what you feel for the Sister of *Theobaldus*, who from you receiv'd his death. This Conformity or Union of Adventures, which seem'd to fix my Fortune to yours with a new Chain, or more particular interest, presented it self at that instant to my thoughts, and strengthned them against the sharpest difficulties, for the glory to encounter such as were common to you.

These were my thoughts, when the Princess having understood that my Fever was not violent, approach'd my bed, and whilst I beheld her with a Countenance wholly passionate, and that by my behaviour, rather than by my Words, I endeavour'd to thank her for the honour she did me, She sat down in a Chair which was brought her, and which was plac'd not at the head of my bed, but in a place directly oppos'd to my sight, and where without any Obstruction I might behold her. And looks were all I express'd my self by: For my Love, though in its infancy, had already gain'd such force, to tye my tongue at the sight of the Belov'd Object, to give me trouble and fear and to produce its ordinary effects.

The Princess for some time kept silence as well as I, but she unlock'd it first, and having demanded the condition of my health, looking towards me with an aspect full of tenderness; *I doubt not at all*, said she, *but that by doing what I now do for you, I shall*
expose

expose my self to the reproach of men, and to the anger of the King my Father: but those who shall condemn me for having visited, and for having diligently assisted the Brother of King Pharamond, might more justly blame me, if I abandon'd a Prince, who hath so generously expos'd his life for my defence, and who at the price of his blood hath restor'd me my liberty. And indeed it was at your own proper hands, that I have receiv'd this kindness; but it was from another hand, that we receiv'd the injuries which have been the Causes of the War between our Families, and for this reason I believe my self less oblig'd to the resentment of the Injury, than to the acknowledgement of the Service. However it may be, renown'd Prince, or however I may fear the opinion may be had of me, I come to testify to you the grief I have to see you in the condition you are reduc'd to for my sake, and to assure you of the desire I have to acquit my self of that I owe to you, by taking care of your preservation in a place where possibly all things are not favourable to you.

Albisinda spoke in this manner, and the time I had employ'd to hearken to her, having scatter'd a part of the trouble which my growing passion at the sight of her had rais'd in my mind, I found my self in a condition to answer her better than I hop'd, and beholding her with a passionate aspect; *Madam*, said I, *neither do I believe I have merited your displeasure, nor am I worthy of the acknowledgment your goodness is pleas'd to testify: And as I am not ignorant of the injuries you have receiv'd from a Prince, whom his misfortunes only have made guilty; So the service I have done you is not of so great importance to hope that glorious recompense you afford it. Would to God*, added I with a sigh, *that it were possible for me to merit it by all the remnant of my blood, or that at the price of something more precious than this life, for the preservation whereof you design to employ your self, I could make you change the opinion you have of the House of the King of the Franks, into more favourable thoughts.*

The thoughts I have of your House, replied the Princess, are not perhaps so distant as you think from what you can desire: And though I am not permitted to regard the King of the Franks, but as a man who both slew my Brother, and a Prince whom the will of my Parents had destin'd me for Spouse; Yet I have always been so just, as to discern the offences which flow from an obstinate will, from those which error or misfortune are the cause of: And if I can have this justice for the person of the King your Brother, you ought to judge that in yours, which I cannot accuse of any offence, I consider what I owe to the service you have render'd me, the blood which is both cost you, and the danger to which you have been expos'd.

Alas, said I on a sudden, with a behaviour which denoted a part of the passion I felt, *this service, this blood, and this danger, are little comparable to the passionate zeal of a man who would sacrifice himself a thousand times a day if it were possible to the least occasions to pleasure or serve you.* I spoke these words with a transportation which I could not master, and I observ'd nothing in her Countenance that could make me judge they were disagreeable: But a little after, making reflection on some words she had said; *I know too well*, added I, *that by our misfortune, Prince Vindimir your Brother encountred his death from the Arms of Pharamond, but I never understood that Pharamond depriv'd of life a Prince that ought to have been your Spouse, as it seem'd to me you said.* How, replied *Albisinda*, *are you ignorant yet of this last accident, or have you not understood, that an hour before you fought in our favour against the Burgundians, the King your Brother had assaulted the Cimbrians which conducted us, and before the eyes of Rosamond and mine, slew the unfortunate Theobaldus?*

These words in an instant pierc'd my Soul with a mortal grief, not doubting Sir but that this misfortune which the Princess related, was the most terrible you could possibly prove. I express'd it at first by my silence, but at length breaking forth with a behaviour which sufficiently denoted my astonishment: *No Madam*, said I to the Princess, *I never before knew of that misfortune you tell me, but by what I perceive we are much more unfortunate than I ever yet believ'd.* I stopt at these words, with so many signs of grief, that the Princess repented to have told me this sad news; but seeing she could no longer remedy it, and believing I was willing to learn more, she recounted to me what had pass'd in that fatal Adventure, even to the least particulars. though not without letting fall some Tears, which she devoted to the memory of *Theobaldus*, or to the grief of *Rosamond*, and which I accompanied with mine, by the reflection I made of the persecution you suffer'd by your ill fortune. *Ab Pharamond*, said I, so soon as she had ceas'd to speak, *is this the favourable change you hop'd, or is there any misfortune in the World equal to yours.*

I had perhaps said more, and had afflicted my self longer than I did, if in the Grief I found for your interest, the remembrance of my own had not yielded me a great Consolation. I am ashamed Sir to tell it you, but most true it is, that in the reflection I made of the Crosses, the death of *Theobaldus* might bring you (for no other reason could make me becom a person whom I had never seen, who was your cruel enemy, and of whom I never heard

any thing might make me much esteem him) I thought of the love I already had for *Albisinda* and coming to understand from her lips, as I had already done by the bruit of Fame, that *Theobaldus* was destin'd to the glory to possess her, I could no longer will it my self, as I ought to have done, considering your interest, for the death of a person who had been my most formidable Rival, and a Rival who might without difficulty have blasted all my hopes; or at least I was not afflicted for any thing else, but that he had not dyed by any other hand than that of *Pharamond*.

I expressed not at all to the Princess this variety of thoughts which turmoyle'd me, both for your interest, Sir, and for my own; but having endeavour'd to master them by a silence which I kept longer than almost civility granted me to do, I deplore, said I in fine to the Princess, *but the death of Theobaldus, and the misfortune of Pharamond; but if it be to the memory of Theobaldus that you give those precious tears, which I see trickle from your fair eyes, there are few men who will not emulate his condition, and who would not buy them at the price of all he hath lost. I owe perhaps those tears to the memory of Theobaldus,* replied *Albisinda,* *but if I owe a testimony to the truth, I may say I owe them to my Duty, rather than to my inclination, and that the marriage pretended to be made between Theobaldus and my self, was an effect of our Parents will, and not of our choice. I will likewise say, if I may be suffer'd to speak to you with confidence, that there was a harshness in the disposition of Theobaldus, which ever disliked me; and that after the obedience I owe to the King my Father, nothing had dispos'd me to this marriage, but the desire to atone my self by all ties that I could to the Princess Rosamond, whom I love more than my life.* You see, added she in words wholly charming, *with what liberty I explain my self to you, there are few persons in the world to whom I confess so much, and I hope that you will not judge ill of this freedom.*

To these words she added many others full of civility, and others very obliging; and fearing lest in the condition wherein I was, a longer conversation might impeach my health, she rose up and departed, having done me the favour to tell me that she would every day visit me. This sweet promise comforted in part the sorrow which her departure caus'd; but scarce was she forth of the chamber, when a Lady that was come with her, approaching my Bed, and being seated, after the refusal I had made to hear her in any other posture, *My Lord,* said she, *You may permit me if you please to give you this visit, and to make you my particular protestations; I have received a favour from you, which I have engraven in the middle of my heart, and I owe you the life of my only Son, who being imprudently mingled among the Burgundians, when you took the City of Marobuda, and being upon the point to lose his life by the Arms of the Franks, was deliver'd by your generosity, and receiv'd from you alone a life, which hitherto hath been more dear to me than my own; the remembrance of so great a benefit renders me entirely yours, and obliges me to offer you all the service you can receive from me or mine, in a strange Country, and in the Territories of your enemies. My name is Imbergida, I had the honour to be Governess to the Princess *Albisinda,* and am bound to her service the rest of my days; if in this employment, or any other services which are possible for me, you find any occasion to make proof of the power you have over me, you shall see my Lord, that at the hazard of my life, I will endeavour to pay you what I owe you.*

I hearkened to the discourse of this Lady with great attention, and as in the condition wherein I was, nothing could be more favourable to me, nor more advantageous, than such an accident, I praised the Gods with all my heart, and conceived all the joy thereat which I was capable to contain; I neither could, nor would I dissemble it to *Imbergida,* and breaking silence some time after she had made an end of speaking; *I am too happy,* said I, *to have been able to do you a kindness which will make me deserve your friendship; and though for an action to which I was oblig'd, I ought not to hope an acknowledgment equal to what you testify, permit me Madam to accept the offers you have made me, and to receive your assistances in those necessities I may have of it, attending till time shall give me some occasion to render me more worthy of your diligence.*

To these first words we added many others, and before *Imbergida* departed from my Bed, she gave me so many marks of a sincere affection, that I could not doubt but I might confide in her in all things. It was from her that I understood the design *Briomer* had against my life, and the endeavours he had us'd to execute it, if the Princess *Rosamond*, mov'd both by the interest of *Albisinda,* and by her own generosity, had not oppos'd him with all her authority, and had not in the end oblig'd that furious man to depart the City to meet the *Cimbrian* King, who as it was reported was entering then into *Bohemia*:

The cruel designs of *Briomer* had made me fear my life, in a time wherein I was in no condition to defend it, if my Love, which wholly prepossessed my Soul, had left me a place for other thoughts than those which it inspired, and had not been sufficient to make me neglect things of greater price than this life, which I saw apparently expos'd to some danger. That conversation I had had with *Albifinda*, in which besides the charms of her Beauty, I had discovered others which had sensibly touch'd me, had absolutely redoubled my passion, and as every moment it gathered new force by the eternal fixation of my thoughts, which I could not divert from her; two days visit wrought upon me, what two years could hardly have done on dispositions more gentle and more moderate than mine.

The morning after *Adelard* came Sir, to visit me on your behalf, and gave me those marks and assurances of your goodness, that you may well judge no passion could hinder me from being as sensible as I ought of your sorrows, nor divert me from seeking occasions of your consolation, by all those means which my being so near *Rosamond* might afford. I pray'd *Adelard* to assure you so, and having sent back with him those men which followed me, I retained only my peculiar Servants. I told not *Adelard* at all what I had understood of the cruel intentions of *Briomer*, for fear left by reason of the affection you have always born me, you might suffer some trouble, though they assured me a little after, that I had no reason to fear for my self, whilst *Rosamond* was at *Egitina*, who by reason of the respect all the *Cimbrians* bore her, was absolute Mistress in the absence of the King her Father. I understood that she visited *Balaric*, and had the same care of him that *Albifinda* had of me; and it was likewise reported that either out of consideration of his merit, or an acknowledgment she ought to the Service she had receiv'd from him, she testified much more esteem for him, than she had done for all other men, and had receiv'd without disdain the profession of that love he bore her. I confess to you, that the noble things I have heard related of this Prince, joyn'd to what renown had publish'd of his famous actions, begat in me a great desire to see him, and I heard it spoken, that he should testify no small desire to see the Brother of *Pharamond*, but though we were both in the same City, and very near each other, we were both at the same time wounded, and in a condition which permitted not such an interview.

In the mean time the fair and diligent *Albifinda* had the goodness to visit me every day, and by those sights and those new Graces I discovered in her person, my love continually augmented; and became in the end so strong that I could difficultly dissemble it: Not but that sometimes to its strength I oppos'd the weakness of my hopes, or that I did not consider with much grief, the little appearance there was I should ever be happy. That implacable hatred which the King her Father bore against you, and your Family, was an impediment I could never hope to remove; and though by time it might have been possible to overcome this difficulty, my Fortune oppos'd it self to my hopes, nor were there any but Kings who might pretend to the possession of *Albifinda*. I made often reflection on these truths, but the knowledge I had of them was never able to divert, or oblige me so much as to use the least endeavour for my recovery from this passion. And by that inclination we have to flatter our selves, I imagined that I might by considerable services appease in time the anger of the King of the *Sueves*, and by the assistance of my Sword one day raise my self to a degree equal to that of my potent Rivals; though I doubted not at all, but many great Princes, whom the competitorship of *Theobaldus*, and the intentions the *Suevish* King had in his favour, had made conceal their design, would engage themselves in her service, after the death of the *Cimbrian* Prince.

However it should happen, I neither could nor was willing to struggle with my passion, nor was I longer able to conceal it from *Imbergida*, who was continually at my Bed-side, and rendred me all the offices I could expect from an affectionate Mother. It was then to her that I entirely open'd my heart, mov'd both by the confidence I had of her discretion and friendship, and by the belief I had, that from her rather than from any other person, I might find consolation and assistance. I was not at all deceived in the judgment I had made, and she received my discourse with marks of so great an interest, that testified her not to be more concerned in the fortune of her son, or of her own; but after she had peaceably hearkened to me, and at the end of that attention made me a thousand protestations of the desire she had to serve me, in despite of all considerations which might oppose themselves, she represented unto me the difficulties I encountered, and certainly did not represent them less than I had apprehended them; but when I saw that she summ'd them altogether in the severity of the King of the *Sueves*, and that she made me

fear nothing on the behalf of the Princess, which was much more to be feared than all the anger of her father, I gave hope and joy an entrance into my soul, and beholding *Imbergida* with an aspect which surpris'd her: *If in my Love, said I, I have nothing to give against but the hatred of the King of the Sueves, or if I could hope that the inclinations of the Princess were not contrary to me, I should not only despise all other difficulties which I might encounter, but from this moment esteem my condition more happy than that of the most fortunate; and if you can, Madam* (continued I, taking hold of one of her hands, and locking it in mine in an extasie of affection) *give me some hopes of a happiness of which it seems you would not by your discourse leave me hopeless, you will raise me to a condition will merit as much envy, as that wherein you have seen me may deserve pity.* I know not, replied *Imbergida*, with a sigh, *if I may be permitted to tell you what I think on this subject, but by the confidence I have in your discretion, and the interest which I take in your repose, I cannot hinder my self from telling you, that according to my opinion, the inclinations of the Princess are rather favourable than contrary to your desires.* Yet testify to her nothing of this, though my discourse may make you believe it, for though she be of a nature extremely sweet, she hath a modesty full of scruples, which will ruine your affairs, if she should believe her self guilty of any weakness discovered to you before she be well engaged.

I hearkened to this discourse of *Imbergida* with much satisfaction, and I was opening my lips to let her know part of what I thought, when the Princess of whom we spoke entred her self into the chamber: to any other but her self I should with difficulty have pardoned this interruption of a discourse in which I was with so much delight employ'd; but at the sight of this divine object all other remembrances vanish'd, and I gave my self entirely to the sight so dear and so desired. My health was at present in a much better condition than it had been some days before, and the Princess who beheld this beginning of my recovery with no small gladness, was no sooner seated, but she testified her satisfaction by words full of sweetness; yet she receiv'd not the answer she expected: for I having hearkened to her discourse with a countenance in which the saw no marks of cheerfulness, *Hiberto Madam, said I with a mournful voice, I have been bound to your goodness more than I can utter, nor are a thousand lives like mine employed in your service capable to acquit the least part of what I owe you, but at present permit me if you please to tell you that I am little oblig'd to the joy you testify at the greatest misfortune can befall me.* And what misfortune, said the Princess wholly surpris'd, *have I testified a joy; since it seems to me that it is only for your recovery I made any appear?* Alas, replied I with a sigh, *this recovery is cruel to me, the benefit it affords me is little considerable to the price of that happiness it deprives me of; for in short* (continued I in passionate words) *I shall not only not be any more visited by the Princess of the Sueves, as I should have been in another condition, but it will be no more permitted me to remain with her, or possibly see her during my whole life.*

Having said these words, I observ'd blushes arise in the cheeks of *Albisinda*, but there seem'd yet no anger to dart from her eyes, and less when after a short silence: *This all you testify a fear of, said she, is not so great to hinder the joy is owing to the return of your health, but though you should never see me more, I believe you would with a great deal of ease comfort your self for all that.* I was about to reply, and it may be to discover more than I had resolv'd, but the fearing the pursuit of that discourse chang'd the matter, to hinder me from continuing it, but it was with a behaviour which gave me some cause to fear that I had attracted her anger. It was thus that I expressed my self to her, without daring to discover my self more openly, and though naturally I want no confidence; yet methought I ought her that respect, that I could not do more without abusing the kindness she had shewn me. I had said enough to let her know what I felt, and I said not enough to give her any just subject of anger, and by letting me judge that she desired not a more entire knowledge, she left me to believe that what she had received had not incens'd her.

I lived in this manner with her, highly satisfied with my condition, imagining that without being able to accuse me, she knew the love I bore her. When my much teared recovery was at hand, I saw my self deprived of a happiness so dear to me, though in a manner different from what I expected: In effect I had but two days left my Bed, when we understood that the King of the *Cimbrians* was returned to *Mazobuda*, and on the morrow *Briomer* arriv'd at *Egitina*, with an order from the King, which he shew'd to the Princess *Rosamond*, and by which he that same day caus'd me to be arreited in my Lodgings, and guarded with a severity, that not only the Princess *Albisinda* had no longer the liberty to see me, but it was not so much as granted to *Imbergida* or any other person but those appointed to serve me:

Albimer who was at present at *Egitinæ*, and who was always very affectionate to your interests, having visited me often during my wounds, and altho' me with an infinite affection, saw me yet for some days, and offer'd to do all things which were possible to serve me, but by his assiduity to visit me, he became suspected by *Briomer*, and the sight of him was deny'd me as well as of all other persons.

The Princess *Rosamond* testified no small indignation at this proceeding of the King her Father, and told *Briomer* publicly, that there was no reason to detain a Prince who was not fallen into the power of his enemies but by the service he had done them; but she could not hinder the effect of the King's will; so that after she had witness'd her just distaste to *Albisinda*, she promised to employ for my liberty all the credit she had with the King her Father; but the Princess *Albisinda*, all compos'd of sweetness, as she naturally was, broke out into passion, and testifying to *Briomer* her displeasure with infinite courage: *If you had not, said she, disguis'd the truth to the King your Master, he would not have given you so unjust an order, and when he shall understand, that it was not by war, but by fighting for his Service, for the Princess his Daughter, and for mine, that Marcomire remains in his Dominions, covered with those wounds he received for his interest, he will repent without doubt of that you have made him do, and not approve the counsel you have given him.* She added to these many other words, which made this fierce Soldier lose a part of the respect he ought her, and oblig'd him to answer her with insolence. *The King my Master, said he, will approve all I have done by his order, but the King your Father will not approve without doubt what you have done for the Brother of a man that slew the Prince his Son.*

This was all the satisfaction she received from *Briomer*, and whatsoever endeavours she used to give me advice of things, she could never find the means, and seeing that she could do nothing for my liberty, nor for my comfort, she resolv'd to go to *Marobada* with *Rosamond*, to represent to the King of the *Cimbrians* the injustice he did. I have understood likewise, that Prince *Esamir*, who was entirely cured of his wounds, whether it were out of complacency to the thoughts of *Rosamond*, or by the motions of his own Generosity blam'd publicly the proceeding of the King of the *Cimbrians*, and protest'd he would employ himself to the utmost for my liberty; but he departed thence presently after, to put himself in the head of some Troops which the King of the *Cimbrians* had sent him, and with which he went to fight the *Burgundians*, which yet remained in those Territories, and after, having vanquish'd them in several encounters, drove them out in few days.

For my self, Sir, I may speak it with truth, that I supported very patiently my imprisonment; that it excit'd in me more choler, than fear or grief; and, that if it caus'd any grief in me, it was for the loss it made me suffer of the sight of *Albisinda*, rather than for any other consideration. I testifi'd to those of my Guard a part of my thoughts, with a great deal of liberty, and seeing one day their Captain in my chamber, *Tell Briomer, said I to him, and tell your King himself, if you please, that he ought, or might have thought more than once, before he resolv'd on an action so full of ingratitude and indignity; that it is from the Franks he hath received the Crown he had lost, and that he is ill counselled, to draw yet upon himself those enemies, against which he was so ill defended.*

I had possibly said more, if I had spok'n to the King of the *Cimbrians* himself, and if I had not remembred that I was oblig'd to some respect, for the love you bear the Princess *Rosamond*. I did what possibly I could, to have receiv'd some intelligence from *Albisinda*, or from *Imbergida*, but I could learn nothing either from the one or the other: and my imprisonment was so severe, that those men that serv'd me, could not speak to me but in the presence of many persons. Mine that remained with me, had indeed the liberty to come near me, and to serve me, but not to go out of the house where I was detain'd, nor have any communication with other persons, than those whom *Briomer* had appointed for my Guard.

However at the beginning of my imprisonment, I understood news from those of my Guard, which made me dye with sorrow, which was, that of the war which the *Sueves* waged in our Country; of the Siege of *Peapolis*, and the progress of *Viridomar*; that by the diligence of our enemies Forces, we had receiv'd many losses. I had died with grief certainly at this news, seeing my self miserably shut up, whilst you my Sovereign were fighting Battels, and encountering dangers, in which my misfortunes permitted me not to accompany you; but as on the one side I had found cause of sorrow, I receiv'd on the other some consolation, understanding some few days after, the strange success of that war, the admirable change of *Viridomar*, and the retreat of the *Sueves*.

They who made me this recital, made no difficulty to relate to me, the effect that
news

news had produc'd in the heart of the King of the *Cimbrians*, and to tell me that the Princess *Albifinda* had been sensibly afflicted, seeing her self by that misfortune depriv'd of the hopes to be Sister to *Rosamond*, by alliance, as she was already by affection: that she was for many days comfortless, and that her grief could not be pleas'd but by the Princess *Rosamond*, who seem'd but little touch'd at this change of *Viridomar*, nor had appear'd so at all, but for the love of *Albifinda*. That the King of the *Cimbrians* had born it impatiently, and that few days after seeing himself no longer engag'd to the King of the *Sueves*, he had made Proclamation, that he would give his Daughter and his Dominions to that Prince that should bring him the head of *Pharamond*: That he was upon the point to have sent back the Princess *Albifinda* to the King of the *Sueves*, and to break all alliance with him, but that the King had pleas'd him by a proceeding contrary to that of his Son; protesting that he would never separate from his interetts: That he would till death assist him with all his Forces against their common Enemy; and that if *Viridomar* did not return to his duty, and renounce the Princess *Polixena*, and yield himself to *Rosamond*, according to the first intention, he not only would never own him for his Son, but in all things treat him as his mortal enemy, praying him still to keep the Princess *Albifinda* with the Princess *Rosamond* for the assurance of his word, so that the alliance was re-confirmed by these proceedings of the King of the *Sueves*, to the great contentment of the two Princesses, who by this means, were to stay together till the end of the War, to be made against *Pharamond*, for which they Arm'd so many Princes, and so many Provinces.

See Sir, the news I understood, which made me in the end infinitely glad, out of the hopes I had that the love of *Viridomar* to my Sister, might facilitate my fortunes with his, and that he would be favourable to me in my love, to receive from me the same assistance in his: In the mean time I remain'd yet some days in the same Prison, during which, notwithstanding the trouble it was to me, the recovery of my wounds was compleated, and I restor'd to my former health, and entire strength, so that I wanted nothing but liberty for the rest, being well assist'd, and as well serv'd. I understood in the end, and I understood it with an infinite sorrow, that the two Princesses were gone to *Marobuda*, by the Order of the King, under the conduct of *Briomer*, who had the charge to bring them thither. This distance from *Albifinda*, though I drew no advantage from her stay at *Egitina*, afflicted me more sensibly than all the rigours of my Imprisonment could do, and those that were about me, beheld me more melancholy and sad, than they had ever known me. But I was not long in this affliction, for on the morrow, by an Order which came from the Court, they took me out of the Prison to conduct me thither. I mounted a Chariot which they presented me, with *Clotarins*, he of all my men, whom I have always most esteem'd, and four of my Guard, who plac'd themselves at the Boots with their Arms: The rest of my people followed the Chariot on Horseback, but without Swords, and the Chariot was environ'd with one hundred men of War, well Mounted and Armed *Cap a-pe*. He that had the charge of my Imprisonment, marched in the head of them; And in a Country where the King had no more enemies, and where in all likelyhood, no person would endeavour to rescue me, they believ'd a greater Convoy unnecessary.

I found my self in the Country with some delight, and understanding that I went towards *Albifinda*, though I had no hopes to see her, I followed without reluctancy those that conducted me to the City where she was, and into which I had entred not long before after a manner much more different: we had already pass'd the greatest part of the way, and in less than three hours might have arriv'd at *Marobuda*: When they that guard-ed me saw a Body of Cavalry appear twice as strong as theirs, which came after us upon a round trot. Their Captain believ'd at first, that it was a re-inforcement sent him, not fearing any Enemies Troops between *Egitina* and *Marobuda*; But when they were so near; as they could clearly discern them, they saw that their Arms and their Cassacks were like to those which the *Burgundians* usually wore. They began to be affrighted at this sight, and stopp'd, to consider what resolution they should take: but at the same time they saw the Enemies Squadron level their Lances, and advance towards them on full speed, with those cries the *Burgundians* are us'd to make when they begin their onsets: At this sight my Conductors not doubting they were Enemies, and truly knowing themselves too weak for them, lost entirely their Courage, and their Captain seeing that all his men abandon'd him, and sought their safety in their flight, had recourse to his spurs, as well as the others; and fled after the rest on a full career. The Guards themselves, who were in the Chariot, letting down the Boots, endeavour'd to save themselves on foot, by running towards a Wood they saw near us: and the Charioter himself leaping from his seat, ran after the others, so that there remain'd about the Chariot only that small number of my servants, who followed without any Arms.

They who had affrighted my Convoy, made some shew of pursuing them, but it well appear'd, it was without design to reach them; and without killing or taking one, they scatter'd them in such sort, that they were no more to be seen throughout the Plain. I leapt out of the Chariot with my Guards, and my men began to range about me, but not having so much as a sword, we remain'd in the place where we were, with design to attend with patience, what might be the end of this adventure: Our expectation was not long, for a little after, the party of my Deliverers return'd to us, and their Captain more than fifty paces before the rest; his stature seem'd to me in his Saddle the fairest in the world, but I could see but a small part of his visage, because he had lifted up his Viser but a very little to speak to me: He drew near to me alone, leaving his men at a little distance; and being allighted, because he saw me on foot, *Prince*, said he to me, *you are free, but make use if you please of your Liberty, for it is not permitted me to stay longer with you. I receive this benefit*, said I to him, *with all those acknowledgments I owe it, but if you will make it entire, be pleas'd to tell me to whom I am thus engag'd.* "You are not so to any person," replied he, for this assistance was due to you from all who know how to respect a great Merit, and an Illustrious birth: You must permit me not to tell you any more, but shall see me perhaps one day in those places, where you may better know me.

At these words, seeing that *Clotarins* and my self were on foot, and without Arms he caus'd two of his men to be disarm'd, whose stature was nearest to ours, and whilst we cover'd our selves with their Arms, which were very good ones, he chose the two best Horses of his Troop, and having desir'd me to mount, and given me a guide to whom the Country was known, to conduct me to whatever place I would retire, he bid me *adieu*, and march'd away with his Troop in great hast. "It shall be only your fault," cried I, "seeing him depart, that I acquit not my self of what I owe you, but at what time soever, and upon whatever occasion you make your self known, you shall see that I have not forgot you. I know not if he understood these last words, but his behaviour gave me as much astonishment, as it gave me joy, so that if I had not fear'd to displease him, I had followed, and had not left him without knowing him, had it been possible.

I march'd some time by the guidance of that man whom he had left for that purpose (whom I could by no prayers nor promises oblige to discover him, be it that truly he knew him not, as he still assur'd me, or that he would with fidelity keep the secret he had order'd him) and who by unfrequented ways, led us towards the Country of the *Coldules*, but if I followed him, it was only to keep my self at a distance from places where I might be re taken, and to send my men out of the Territories of the *Bohemians*, to remain alone with *Clotarins*, and not depart without seeing *Albisinda*, whom I could not abandon for any consideration of danger.

I meditated on ways to effect my design, not finding any, but those which were very difficult, by reason of the little acquaintance I had at *Marobuda* to find a retreat: When I heard one call after us, and having turned my head, I saw a Cavalier, who being allighted, and having taken off his helmet, approaching me, came to salute me with infinite respect and submission: It was a young man, of an excellent grace, and who seem'd not above twenty years of age, and I being stopp'd, to hear what he desir'd of me, "I have run after those which conducted you from *Egitina*," said he, to come and offer you that service you ought to hope from a man that owes you his life, I am the Son of *Imbergida*, whom you saved out of the hands of your own souldiers at the taking of *Marobuda*, and being returned yesterday from a voyage I made into *Suevia*, my Mother made me depart at night, to come to *Egitina*, and endeavour to render my self near you in any place, or in whatever condition I should find you. I obeyed her with infinite joy, and I shall esteem my self most happy, if I can testify to you my acknowledgments by a service full of fidelity.

I embrac'd several times the Son of *Imbergida*, whilst he spoke in this manner, and remembering to have seen his face at that time when I did him the kindness for which his Mother and he were so grateful, I gave him all the proofs of an affection I thought due to the Son of a Mother to whom I was particularly oblig'd, and from whom I yet hop'd for good offices, and because he was arriv'd as if he had been sent by Heaven to serve me in the design I had, I stopp'd the Guide who march'd some paces before my people: and having assur'd him of the acknowledgments I had for him, and shewed them in part by a Ring I gave him, I pray'd him to conduct my people out of the Territories of *Bohemia*, into the Country of the *Narisques*, where I order'd them to stay in some City of that Country, nearest the Frontier, and not to depart thence till they had receiv'd news of me. I kept only *Clotarins* with me, telling the rest that I was oblig'd to do thus, because it being probable

probable I should be followed, there was great danger lest my equipage should make me be known, whilst marching alone with only two men, arm'd like my self, I might pass without any great peril.

Being thus rid of my people, and that with a very apparent excuse, I turn'd toward the Son of *Imbergida*, who was remounted on horseback, and having shewed him new marks of kindness, *You shall see*, said I, *the confidence I have in a person well born, as without doubt you are; and since you are the Son of Imbergida, to whom I owe all things, and who persists so generously in an affection for me, it is to you that I will trust my life, and something more precious.* *Gerontes*, for so he was called, having made me again new protestations, and having pray'd me to command what I desired of him, *I would fain if you please*, said I, *go to Marobuda, where we will enter when the Heavens are curtain'd with night, and where I know well they will not at present search for me, desiring you to guide me to the house which your Mother hath in the City, where I know she keeps her retinue, and that you bring me to speak with her, without other witnesses than your self and Clotarius.*

Gerontes seem'd astonish'd at my discourse, and beholding me like a man that doubted my intention, *Can it be possible my Lord*, said he to me, *that you will return to Marobuda? There is not*, said I sighing, *perhaps so much danger as you believe, but however it be, this is a resolution I am resolv'd to execute.* *Since it is so my Lord*, reply'd *Gerontes*, *I am ready to obey you, and I hope I shall this day make you speak with Imbergida, with as much secrecy as you can desire.*

After these words, and others which we us'd on the same Subject, we march'd towards *Marobuda*, by other ways than the ordinary, though in the equipage we were, and the Arms which we wore, with the little appearance there was I should take that way, we might have follow'd the usual Road, without any danger. We had no more time than was necessary, and the day was already ended, when we arriv'd at the Gates of the City, there were no Guards kept since the return of the King, but we pass'd with all liberty to the house of *Imbergida*. She lodg'd in the Palace, with the Princess *Albisinda*, but because she was a woman of considerable quality, and had a very great retinue, she had a house (whither her self very often retir'd) for her private occasions.

Gerontes led me into his chamber, without my face being seen by any of the Servants of the house, by reason of the Helmet which cover'd it, and when we were entred, having shut the door upon us, he oblig'd me to disarm my self, assuring me that no person should enter the place where we were. A little after he caus'd something to be brought for our Supper, I not contenting he should make any great preparation, and he received it at the door, not permitting any to enter into the chamber, though we believ'd that amongst the Domesticks there was not any could have known me, but *Clotarius* and he thought that we could not be too circumspect, and for this reason I was forc'd to receive from them those services which at another time I would not have receiv'd.

After a light repast, *Gerontes* at my entreaty went to the Palace, leaving us shut up in his chamber, and soon after he return'd with *Imbergida*. This Ladies surpris was not so great, finding me in the chamber of her Son, as it would have been, if she had not before known I was there, yet when I advanced to salute her, beholding me with all the marks of astonishment, *How, my Lord*, said she, *are you in Marobuda, and whilst the whole Country is in Arms to seek you, do you come to cast your self into the hands of your enemies? You see Madam*, said I, *that my desire to see you is more powerful over my mind, than the fear of all danger.* *I would thank you*, answer'd she, with a behaviour like to mine, *if the fear I have for you would permit me, but in truth that troubles me a little too much, for I have seen at the Palace so many preparations to run after you, upon the report which arriv'd here of your escape, and so many orders to stop you at all the passages, that I cannot as I desire rejoice at your liberty, and the honour I receive by seeing you. You may judge well by that you have told me*, reply'd I, *that in any other place I should be in less security than in this, and that those who have orders to pursue me, and from whom possibly I have difficultly escap'd, will seek every where rather than in Marobuda, therefore I have no desire to depart*, continued I after we were seated, *and I confess to you, that it would be more pleasing for me to dye, than to be remote from the Princess Albisinda.* For this reason Madam, I require your assistance, as of a person whom I would always consider as my Mother, and if you do not find the means for me to stay some time near the Princess, before my Honour and Duty drive me from this Country, to carry my Sword to the service of the King my Brother, in that war prepar'd against him, I shall be the most unfortunate, and most disconsolate of all men. And in what manner, my Lord, said *Imbergida*, believe you that I can give you the means? For whilst you would conceal your self from the knowledge of all other persons, by

whom you may be in danger, you may well judge that the Princess, whatever esteem she may have for you, will not suffer that you should remain unknown near her. I believe it, replied I, but it is the Princess her self whom we must deceive, and it is in this deceit that I implore your assistance, and demand of you the effects of that friendship you have promised me; this may teach you perhaps not to desire it longer with the miserable, who can be only a charge, and unconveniency to their friends; however I pretend to you, that from the deceit of which I would have you to participate, you shall never receive either reproach or injury, and when we shall be so unhappy to see the effects prove contrary to our hopes, both you and your house shall find a way which shall free you from all you can fear, and perhaps raise you above all you can at present hope. But my Lord, replied Imbergida, what way can I have either to deceive the Princess, without violating the fidelity I owe her? or to deceive the whole world, by letting you remain unknown near her? Propose Sir those that you have imagined, and if it be but the exposing of my Fortune, or my life it self to all those dangers may threaten us, I will gladly do it to do you that service I owe you, and which I have promised you, but do it in such manner, that I may deceive Albinde without betraying her, for to act a Treason, my Lord, and a Treason against my Princess, all the passion I have for your service will never make me consent. For the deceit, answered I, it is not against me that you should use this premonition, you know I love the Princess too well to counsel you to act against her a deceit may be call'd a Treason, but for the means which I have imagined, it is so little ordinary, that I believe you will find in it great difficulties, though it be not without example; For in fine, Imbergida, be pleas'd not to make any wonder at it, I know no other than disguising my Sex, there is nothing in my countenance which may hinder me from passing for a Lady, when in those habits, my hair (for you see we wear it longer than the rest of other nations) is such that it will comply with any dressing; and for my Stature, though it be taller than ordinarily that of women is, it is not, by what is reported, taller than that of the Princess Rosamond: My Face hath not been seen but by very few persons of your Court, the Princess hath seen it but once in her Chariot, then when by the loss of blood I was very pale and extremely chang'd, all the other times she saw it, was in Bed, in a place very obscure, and never in its ordinary condition, so that with the change which the dressing and habits will add, she will scarce find any thing she can observe, and though she should find some resemblance (which may happen by the sound of my voice, rather than by any other way) there are among all persons every day found some things so like, that she cannot be astonish'd. I speak very well your Countries Language, and you may make me pass for one of your kindred come with your Son to see you, and in this quality keep me for some time near you, where I may see the Princess at every turn, as those Ladies which wait on her do. And when one day the truth shall be discover'd, that which possibly may never fall out but by advantageous ways, you may justify the design which you did to acquit your self of what you believed you ought me for the life of your Son, by concealing me in your house, when I had no other retreat from the pursuits of my enemies. I will add yet the hopes we may conceive of Prince Viridomar, if he be truly enamour'd of my Sister, as report hath published, you will believe he cannot be opposite to us, and that in Suevia it self he can deliver you from all may threaten you.

To these words I added many others, which tediousness hinders me from reciting, by which I press'd and tormented in such manner the Spirit of Imbergida, who of her self was as affectionate as I could desire, that though she found many terrible difficulties and affrighting subjects of fear in my proposal, yet she resolv'd in the end to pass over all things, and to stop her eyes against all dangers to serve me as I desired, telling me, that for the Princess she hop'd to obtain her pardon, and for the King whose anger she had more cause to fear if he should discover it, she would avoid it by flying after me into *Francia*, if she did not receive protection from Prince *Viridomar*, from whom she could not but hope it, if he were so passionate for the Princess *Polixena* as they desired; that possibly there might happen changes yet more favourable; but in fine, whatever fell out she was resolv'd to hazard all things to serve me.

Having given me her word, she return'd to the Palace, with promise to return to me again on the morning betimes. And not to detain you with this discourse, by the recital of my disquiet and impatience, on which I could largely extend my self, she came on the morrow, though somewhat later than I expected, and brought with her into the chamber a Lady which belonged to her, in whose discretion she confided, and of whom she must of force make use in this design; she told me presently that she had already spoke to the Princess, of a Niece of hers arriv'd from *Suevia* with her Son, and had already begot in her a desire to see her, by the recital she had made of her. That things dispos'd themselves to my satisfaction better than I could hope; that that day was appointed for the

the Funeral Rights and Honours due to *Theobaldus*, whose Body they had brought from *Egitina*, and to solemnize which only the King was come to *Marobuda*; that he departed the morrow after to go to the Frontiers to a Rendezvous agreed on with his Allies; where it was likewise believ'd the King of the *Sueves* would be present; that soon after his departure the Princess his Daughter, and the Princess *Albisinda*, intended to leave the City, to go and pass away some time at *Lisurgis*, a Royal Mansion, seated on the banks of the *Elba*, about four hours journey from *Marobuda*, and that in that place, in the absence of the King, whom she fear'd for my sake, and in a place where the Princess *Resamond* would be Mistress, she durst attempt things more boldly, and could more conveniently keep me with her, present me to *Albisinda*, and give me opportunity to see her every day as if I were in her service.

I was resolv'd then by her Counsel to attend till the Princess was at *Lisurgis*, before I would show my self under the name and shape of *Ericlea*, who truly was a Niece to *Imbergida*, and a Niece who having been bred up with her Parents in the utmost parts of *Suevia*, had never been seen by the Servants which she had now about her. We sweetned thus by little and little the difficulties which had appear'd so great at the beginning, and *Imbergida* desired me at that time to put on the habit of her Sex, to see how it would become me; and to accustom my self during those two or three days I had to expect, to the end that I might be the more apt, and compose my self better to the Gesture and Countenance of Women. She therefore order'd me to be dressed in those habits which she had caus'd to be brought, having lengthned them for fear they should be too short, but expecting to make me others with more leisure, she clad me with them by the assistance of that Maid which came with her, whose they were, and who being very straight and tall, they prov'd of an absolute proportion and fitness to my Body: In the end they dressed my head, and by the reason of the length and thickness of my hair, they did it easily in the manner as is used by the Ladies of the *Cimbrian* Court, and put me in such a condition that I had some difficulty to know my self when I came to the looking Glass: and certainly the Change was so great, that there were few persons in the world who would not have been deceiv'd. *I know not* (said the King of the *Franks* to *Marcomire* interrupting him) *how Strangers should not be deceiv'd, since I was myself, not doubting but that you were a woman, and that you were that Lady which turn'd Briomer's Sword from my breast.*

I confess, continued *Marcomire*, that I saw my self with some shame in a condition so little conformant to my Courage, though I could flatter my self by the examples of *Achilles*, of *Hercules*, and many other great persons of Antiquity, whom a like Cause had oblig'd to like disguisements, and that if my passion had not been very violent, I had cast from me all that Apparel, and reassum'd my first shape. *Imbergida* and others mark'd well the redness I had in my Forehead, but their thoughts were different from mine, and though they had before condemn'd my design, they were now very much satisfied, and found (if it may be permitted me to praise my self for a quality I ever esteem'd as nothing) not only that I might pass for a Damsel, but for a very fair Damsel. *Imbergida* told me a hundred pretty stories on this subject, which I could not hearken to without shame: she was a long time at learning me my Gate, Carriage, and those little curiosities of that Sex, and when she was oblig'd to return to the Palace, she left me with the Maid that had dress'd me, who continued to give me the lessons the rest of that day, in which I profited so much to her content, that she assur'd me I should in two days carry my self like the most exact of Women kind.

On the morrow the King departed as he had resolv'd, but not without having caus'd great pains to be taken to post after me to stop me at all the passages, nor without having cast into Prison him who had the charge of my Guard and Conduct, with the Guards who were in the Chariot with me, and many others of those who had fled with so much swiftness from before my Deliverers. I was pleas'd at their ill fortune, not so much for the anger I bare them, as for the danger wherein I should have been to have been known by them rather than by any other Persons, there being few besides who had so often seen my face.

The Day which succeeded to that of the departure of the King, the Princesses departed to go for *Lisurgis*, and because *Imbergida* went in the Chariot with the Princess, and that she would not let me be seen by her till we came to *Lisurgis*, I went into hers, which she had caus'd to be made ready, with *Gerontes*, and the Maid that dress'd me. I began already to accustom my self so well to the Personage I was to act, that few could mark any fault in my Carriage, and that day I found my self more free, because I had cloaths which were made for my self, and which were so much the sooner in readiness, because they

were mourning habits, like to those which all the Court wore for the death of *Theobaldus*.

We soon came to *Lisurgis*, where *Imbergida* knowing well I was not what I appear'd, frighten'd her self at her Lodgings in the Castle to leave me a Chamber free, and that very Night judging it more to the purpose to present me to the Princess by Candle light than by clear day, led me towards her chamber: passing the Anti-chamber, we found *Mathilda*, who was a Lady of whom I have made mention, Wife to the Chief Officer of *Albifinda's* House, who came at present to the Princess with an intention like to that of *Imbergida*, to wit, to present her one of her Kindred that day come to her. As they were almost always together, and very good friends, they presently communicated to each other their design, and after *Mathilda* had embrac'd me, and *Imbergida* had done the same Carefs to her Kinswoman. *Theodora* and I (for so they call'd her) embrac'd, and afterwards look'd one upon another very wistly: She was a brown Damsel, of a stature little different from mine, of no delicate beauty, but of a sprightly and lively Air.

Coming both at the same time, there pass'd some Civilities between us, though I spoke the least I could possible, and it seem'd likewise to me that she had no great inclination to speaking: A little afterwards we entred together into the Chamber of *Albifinda*, and I soon beheld her with an affection of mind which carried me beyond my self, and but for a fear of discovering the Deceit I acted, enough to have made me commit faults able to discover the person I dissembled. So soon as the Princess saw *Theodora* and my self enter after *Mathilda* and *Imbergida*, I see well, said she, approaching to them, *that these are your two Kinswomen you promis'd to let me see, and doubt not at all, but since they are so near allied to you, that I behold them with no small affection.* Whilst she spoke in this manner, we advanced at the same time to salute her, and it seem'd to me we press'd forward with desire to receive the Kiss *Albifinda* was to give us, and that we equally envied each other for to precious a favour. For my part, I found so much sweetness in it, that I saw it with regret made common to another, and methought that casting my eyes at the same time on the Countenance of *Theodora*, I saw some signs in her of the same thoughts.

After this *Albifinda* causing *Imbergida* to draw near her, with *Mathilda*, and casting her eyes on *Imbergida's* Countenance, she made her blush so extraordinarily that she was forc'd to demand the cause: *Imbergida* remain'd some time to recover her self, and after she was somewhat embolden'd, I blush Madam, said she to the Princess, *for the fault I have committed, in presenting you a Damsel bred up in a Savage Country, and who hath no more the Air of the Court than a person that never came near it.* I may well (said *Mathilda*) *at the same time make the same excuse to her Highness, nor had I been so bold if she had not given me her Command for what I have done.* You have nothing to fear, said the Princess to them, *nor nothing you need to justify in this matter, if it be not for the dissimulation you have made in speaking so modestly of these two Persons so well compos'd.* I answer'd not to this Discourse but with a profound reverence, as *Imbergida* had well taught me, and as I had seen practis'd: But a little after the Princess having drawn *Imbergida* apart, *Ab! Imbergida* said she *your Niece is a most beautiful Damsel*, and having commanded me to approach the light, she wanted but little of putting me quite out of Countenance, constraining me to cast down my eyes for fear, which without doubt she took for Modesty. She beheld me sometime with an aspect which made me think she had observ'd in my face something that appear'd like *Marcomire*, but then when I was constrain'd to answer, (though in very few words, and very low) to several Demands she made me concerning my Journey, and concerning the places where I had been bred, her Countenance was cover'd with such blushes, that I infallibly believ'd I should be discover'd: I believe it was to conceal her blushes that she turn'd her head on the other side, and during that time, as it had been out of respect, I fell back some few steps, and retir'd behind *Imbergida*.

We were in this condition, and I knew not whether I ought to repent me of my enterprise, when the Princess *Rosamond* came into the Chamber, and by the splendor of many lights, I straight beheld the more resplendent rays of that prodigious beauty. I avow to you my Lord, nor is it out of the compliance I owe to your thoughts, that all the passion with which my Soul was prepossess'd for *Albifinda*, and all the precaution I had arm'd my self withal, could not defend me from astonishment at the sight of this wonder, which I beheld like somewhat more conformable to a Divinity, than any thing Terrestrial. It is most certain, all that admiration could produce, was at present found in my spirit: but it is true likewise, that I beheld *Rosamond* no otherwise, than as a resplendent star, which ought not to dart its rays on any thing but Gods, or men like you: and that the beauty of *Albifinda*, less heavenly and less bright, but full of a sweetness, totally charming, and more proportionable

nable to our weakness, preserv'd as I desir'd, its entire empire o're my heart.

Albisinda made us to be taluted by the Princess *Rosamond*, who treated us as she had done; and honoured me with a Kiss, which any other man but my self would have receiv'd with infinite transportation, and which I wish'd yours with all my Soul. After she had spoken some moments to us with an Air full of Royal Majesty, but however without any pride, she retir'd with *Albisinda* into her Closet, where they had private discourse till bed time. *Imbergida* made me retire with *Gerontes*, and being yet unwilling to give the Princess any subject of Complaint, which she could not well pardon, she accusom'd me to retire at an early hour, that I might not see her in a time wherein my dissembled Sex might have had those privileges which accords not with ours, and that either rising or going to bed I might have seen those beauties which are wholly conceal'd from us, but much less from persons of their Sex: She observ'd it daily with the same diligence and never forgot to make me a sign to withdraw, to spare the Princess that shame, which the remembrance thereof might one day have caus'd had I us'd a full liberty.

On the morrow she led me again to the Chamber of the Princess, whilst she dress'd her self, but it was at a time when she was to be seen as well by other persons as the Ladies that serv'd her, and she receiv'd us with a Countenance which made us judge that our Deceit was not discover'd: though truly she had found in my face, and in the sound of my Voice something resembling that of *Marcomire*, she could not at all dissemble it: but having taken *Imbergida* and my self near the Window: *Do you not observe*, said she, *that your Neece resembles somewhat in Face, and entirely in the sound of her Voice Prince Marcomire?* These words instead of giving us fear, reasur'd us we were not discover'd, judging well that the Princess would not have spoke in that manner if she had had any suspicion of the truth. We at this time lost nothing of our Countenance, but *Imbergida* having narrowly eyed me for some time, *In truth Madam*, said she to the Princess, *I never before observ'd what you have now observ'd, but I find that which you say is very true, and that both the Voice and Features of Ericlea, have a great agreement with those of Prince Marcomire. I know not Madam;* said I to the Princess, *whether I ought to be glad at that resemblance you are pleas'd to give me, for though I have heard that that Prince of whom you speak hath had the good fortune to render you some service, I know that he is of a House odious to yours, and I fear that my likeness to him may bring into your mind the memory of things disadvantageous to me.* *Marcomire*, replied the Princess, *is the Brother of a person who hath done us many bloody injuries, rather by our Misfortune than by his Will, but besides that, Marcomire hath no part in them, he hath done me a most important piece of Service, at the price of his Blood; and at the peril of his Life: and you need not fear*, added she with a sigh, *that your resembling him will hinder me from loving you as I believe you merit.*

I answer'd to this obliging Discourse with a profound reverence, and at the same time I saw enter *Mathilda*, with her Kinswoman, and after her many other persons who hindred the Princess from speaking longer to us in particular, but the rest of that Day, and all following, she did us often that favour, and by my good fortune, having found either in my person, or in my Carriage something that pleas'd her, she began to manifest an affection for me, and in a little time made me know that she prefer'd me before all the Ladies that attended her: Not but that *Theodora* did dispute with me this eminence as much as it was possible for her, and though the Princess, who found her person well compos'd and her disposition pleasing, did truly esteem her, yet in the end she seem'd to cast a better Countenance on me than on her, and called me oftner to her particular conversation, testifying much more confidence in me. I soon knew both by the countenance and Actions of *Theodora* that she supported impatiently the advantage I had gain'd over her: but as by the knowledge I had who I was, I judg'd there could be no important Competition between her and me; I laugh'd first at her jealousy, and had some pity of her, but when she began to be importunate towards me, and that I saw this Damself prevent me in those services I would have rendred the Princess, take charge with a kind of zeal of those Commissions she would have given me, to hinder me from executing them, and always maliciously come and interrupt us, when I was in a particular Converse with her, I at first beheld her with some spleen, and in the end began to hate her, if not so much as she made known she hated me, at least as much as I could hate a Woman, and a Woman who endeavour'd by all means to injure me in all that possibly she could; I therefore strove to do the like to her, without sparing her, and took pleasure to cross her in the Designs she had in gaining the heart of *Albisinda*.

In the mean time the Princesses affection towards me increas'd from day to day, and in a little time my happiness was so great, that at all times when she was not with the Prin-

cess *Rosamond*, she was pleas'd that I should be with her : she called me every day into her Retirements, and into her particular walks, and had that confidence in me to trust me with most she had in her heart. It is true that I forgot not any thing which might serve in the design I had to please her ; that I fought with great diligence all occasions to render her those little services, which though they were not of great importance, might be pleasing ; that I endeavoured to tell her things pleasing to her humour ; and that I employed all the skill I had, and all the knowledge of things I had seen in the world could furnish me with, to seek means to divertise her : with these the passion with which I was encourag'd gave my words and actions an Air wholly different from what might be noted in those of other persons ; and especially Sir, as you know, my voice to be good, and that I was taught to sing with great care, I sung often before her, and sometimes those words which expressed to the full what I felt, and then I accompanied them with a demeanour so passionate, that it had not been difficult to discern how I was touch'd at the heart.

There being at *Lisurgis* no Lodgings but for the Royal Family, and the most necessary Officers, the Court is never great, and at this time by reason of the absence of the King, and many other causes it was less than it had a long time been, and we pass the time in a very delectable privacy. *Albisinda* one day walked into the Park (whilst *Rosamond* had some business which kept her in her Closet) and having only taken with her *Theodora* and myself, to bear her company for some turns she was pleas'd to make in the Alley, she walk'd a good while leaning on our Arms, and having as long hearken'd to those things I said to divertise her, she made me so many obliging speeches, and did me so many sweet and charming favours, that if they had been done to *Marcomire*, and not to *Ericlea*, I had preferred my condition before the most fortunate in the world, so that I could not dissemble my joy (though I saw *Theodora* enrag'd with spight at it) but fixing my lips to her fair hand which I held, and which I had the liberty to kiss, and pressing it with a transportation in which she might discern somewhat more passionate than the affection of a Damself: *Is it possible*, said I, *that that which is the desire of all the Kings of the earth, is granted to the too happy Ericlea, and that she should rejoyce in a happiness which the greatest Princes in the world would buy at the price of all their Blood?* " You speak too much, answered the Princess, for this is all you could say if you spoke to my Sister (so it was that she called the Princess *Rosamand*.) *One may without doubt, replied I, say the same things of the Princess of the Cimbrians; but as she hath her Adorers, you have likewise yours, and though I look upon her as something Divine, if Heaven had granted me to be born of another Sex than yours, and in a degree and esteem amongst men, which would permit me to raise my thoughts either to the one or the other, I protest to you my Princess, by all that I know most holy and most sacred, it should be at your feet that I would fix my life even to my last Sigh.* " You are too full of flattery, replied *Albisinda*, and if this " *Metamorphosis could come to pass, you would soon be convinc'd of a falsehood and dissimulation. Would to God* (added I with a sigh) *that we could make the proof, and that instead of a Damself unprofitable in your service, I could become a Prince worthy both by his birth and merit of the Glory to serve you.*

" You should not be alone, (replied *Theodora*, who had hearkened to our discourse " with an infinite impatience and trouble) to make so advantageous a wish ; but when " we could obtain the effect I believe we should not be more happy, and that in that Sex " we desire we should not be treated so favourably by the Princess as we are in our own. *There is great appearance for it*, replied *Albisinda*, *but since we are in this question, I shall desire ye to let me understand which of all the Princes which are at present in the world, and whose reputation is come to our knowledge, you would desire to be.* " For my part Madam, " (said I, preventing *Theodora*, who was about to speak) *I should be much troubled to " choose, and though there be those whom for their merit I may without doubt prefer " before others, the circumstance of their Fortune permits me not to determine of my " choice. For Prince Viridomar, his great actions and admirable qualities make me very " desirous to resemble him, but the quality for which he is most dear to me, would " hinder me from desiring his condition, that is, because he is your Brother; and by consequence depriv'd of those hopes which are less forbidden to others, and therefore it " is not Prince Viridomar I would be. For Pharamond, if it may be permitted me to " name him amongst others before you, I confess, that the glory of his Actions, and what " I have heard told of his Virtue, would make me cast my eyes on him rather than on " any other Prince in the world, but the misfortune he hath to be odious to your House, " and the despair he hath to aspire to a Glory for which only I would resemble him, permit me not to wish my self Pharamond. For Gondioch, there are certainly things very*

“ fair and glorious in his life, but by his last Actions he hath defcnd all this Splendor,
 “ and he hath so unworthily treated both his Mistress and his Friend, that I would nei-
 “ ther be *Gondioch* nor resemble him. For the Great *Constance*, whose Renown is
 “ the valiant *Azelmond*, King of the *Lombards*; *Gunderic*, King of the *Vandils*; and the
 “ famous *Constantine*, King of Great *Britain*, as there are circumstances in their Fortune
 “ little favourable to the design I have to fix my life to your Service, so it is not into
 “ any of them I would be changed; and for Prince *Balsmir*, whose Glory may compare
 “ with the greatest; the *Gothick* Prince *Walix*, whose Renown is spread so far; *Gonde-*
 “ *mar*, Brother to the King of the *Burgundians*; and *Marcomire*, Brother to the King of
 “ the *Franks*; and some others who in Valour, Birth and Merit, are not possibly interi-
 “ our to part of these I have named, they want Crowns which doubtless are necessary to
 “ those who aspire to the Glory to possess you, and therefore not finding any, neither a-
 “ mongst them, nor amongst the first I have named, whose condition seems worthy to
 “ be preferred before mine, I know not how to resolve what choice to make. But if
 “ you will permit me to tell you to which of all the Princes which I have named, I should
 “ wish before all others, the Glory and Happiness I possess, (continued I, kissing her
 “ hand which I held) I will tell you that the interest I take in the fortune of a man
 “ whom you have done me the honour to tell me I resemble, the pity I have of him for
 “ default of a Crown which he wants to raise his thoughts to you, the good will I bear
 “ him for the service he hath done you, and that which I have heard spoken of his passion
 “ for you, would make me desire this fortune for *Marcomire* rather than any other. And
 “ since the affection you have created in me for him extends to his Brother. I could wish
 “ (if a wish for the Unfortunate may be permitted before you) that *Pharamond* might
 “ hope the possession of *Rosamond*, and that *Marcomire* might aspire to the Glory to serve
 “ you.

Whilst I spoke in this manner, *Theodora* had hearkened to my discourse with an im-
 patience, which by what we could judge, had often oblig'd her to interrupt it, if the
 respect of the Princess had not withheld her, and when I had done speaking, break-
 ing silence with a demeanour full of vehemence, *Madam*, (said she to the Princess) *As*
we are Rivals, Ericlea and my self, in the design to gain your precious affections, permit us
if you please to oppose each other in our thoughts, and to contradict with liberty a part of what
agrees not with our thoughts: Without amusing my self therefore to defend particularly all o-
thers amongst whom I might find without doubt as great advantage as she can in those on whom
she hath fixed her affection, I will only tell her, that I find her as little reasonable in the incli-
nation she hath for the house of the King of the Franks, as in the aversion she testifies to that of
the King of the Burgundians. I never understood that the offences whi. b Gondioch hath com-
mitted against his Mistress, which in sum, were only endeavours to conquer her, were of the
nature of those she hath received from Pharamond, who before her eyes slew her Brother, and
deprived a Prince of his life who was yours, and ought to have been her Spouse: and for
that proceeding towards his Friend, of which she accuses him, I never understood Gondioch
was guilty like Pharamond of infidelity towards his Friend, or that he endeavoured to deprive
him of a Mistress, for the conquest of whom he had taken up Arms for him as a friend in whom
he entirely trusted his Fortune. For Gondemar his Brother, I never heard it spoken, that ei-
ther for his Birth, Valour, or any other estimable quality, he was at all inferior to Marcomire;
and therefore not only to oppose the thoughts of Ericlea but to pay to Reason and Justice that
which I think I owe them, I could wish that Gondioch were Possessor of the Princess of the
Cimbrians, and that Gondemar were so happy as to be permitted by the Princess of the Sueves
to the Glory to serve her.

“ If the Princess, (said I, so soon as *Theodora* had done speaking) will grant me the
 “ same liberty you have taken, I shall say to justify what I have testified of inclination
 “ for the house of the King of the *Franks*, and of aversion for that of *Gondioch*, that by
 “ that Renown which spread it self in those places where I have pass'd my life, I have only
 “ understood that *Gondioch* was bound to *Pharamond* for his Liberty, and for his Crown,
 “ and that it was by serving *Gondioch* that he fell into a part of those misfortunes with
 “ which you tax him; and I have heard more, that with whatever passion *Pharamond*
 “ was inspir'd for the Princess *Rosamond*, he was content not only to yield her to *Gondioch*,
 “ though never oblig'd to him by any benefit, but would have engag'd himself never to
 “ have seen her during his life, if *Gondioch* would have restored her liberty, and what he
 “ had gained in the Dominions of the King her Father, by the Arms of *Pharamond*: and
 “ that *Gondioch* had not only refus'd to *Pharamond* this little favour he demanded after so
 “ great obligations, but presently treating him as his mortal enemy, would have seiz'd and

“ detain’d his person in *Marobuda*, and in all the pursuit of the war seem’d obstinately
 “ resolv’d to take away his life, though *Pharamond* continually gave him proofs of the
 “ friendship and esteem he had yet for him. For *Gondemar* I will not accuse him of any
 “ thing, and I believe he may have both merit and valour, but besides that in all things
 “ I hold him inferiour to *Marcomire*, and less worthy of the fortune I have wish’d him,
 “ I believe that the Princess would not take your part, but consent rather to the happi-
 “ ness of her Defender than Enemy.

If we were two Cavaliers, (said *Theodora*, regarding me fiercely) *I believe we should*
willingly fight in this quarrel. “ That might be, replied I, and I wish not only that we
 “ were two Cavaliers, but that you were *Gondemar*, and I *Marcomire*, and that we were
 “ to dispute the glory to save the Princess. *If I were Gondemar, and you Marcomire,*
 replied *Theodora*, *the effect of your wish would soon happen, and I assure my self, that we*
should not have attended so long to end our difference by a combat. “ If the event, said I,
 “ were to be like to that of the Combat already fought between those two Princes, I be-
 “ lieve you would take time to remember your self. *I do not believe,* replied *Theodora,*
that either Gondemar or Marcomire can have forgot it, or if that have happened, I assure my
self by the recital I have heard made of him, Gondemar is brave enough to renew the re-
membrance when he pleases. “ if the Princess will permit me, replied I, I will accept
 “ the defiance for the Prince, whose part I take, and by what I have heard publish’d, I
 “ hope I shall not be disowned.

We talked in this manner with so much vehemence that it gave great divertisement to
Albisinda, and having hearken’d patiently to us, till those words, *I have once already seen,*
 said she, *the spectacle you propose, but though in that Combat the courage was equal, and the*
strength of those two Princes little different, the advantage (said she, turning towards *Theo-*
dora) *was not on your side; and I will add, that my prayers were not for him, and in that*
action, I made a great difference between him who fought for my defence, and him who would
have made me the Prisoner of Gondioch, which may inform you, that in the choice you have
made, I shall not be of your party.

Theodora remained like one Planet-struck at this discourse of *Albisinda*, and walked a
 little while up and down before she could return an answer, but soon alter, lifting up her
 eyes from the ground, where she had fixed them, *I cannot but be much dissatisfied, my*
 Princess, said she, *that you have given to Ericlea so great a victory over me; it is thus, that*
innocently injustices are done, when truths are not well known; I have heard it spoken by per-
sons who have seen Gondemar since the Combat, not only that he had no design to make you
the captive of Gondioch, but that he was become yours from the first moment he saw you, and
enslaved in a captivity which would endure as long as his life.

After the advantage which the Princess had pronounc’d me with her fair lips, methought,
 that modestly would not permit me to aggravate the misery of the vanquish’d, and there-
 fore I permitted *Theodora* to speak without deigning to reply, when at the turning of an
 Alley, we saw the Princess *Rosamond* appear with her Ladies, who came to seek *Albisinda*
 in those walks. So soon as the two Princesses drew near each to other, *Albisinda* breaking
 silence, *I come my Sister,* said she, *from hearing the most pleasant dispute in the world, and if*
the interest you have in’t would have permitted you to have hearken’d to it, I should have
been glad you had heard your part; for in fine, never were two Champions more courageous,
nor more zealous to maintain a quarrel, than these two Damsels have appeared, (said she,
 pointing to us) *the one for Pharamond, the other for Gondioch.*

She would say no more at present, not extending her self upon the interest of *Gondemar*
 and *Marcomire*, in which her own seem’d a little concerned; but as *Theodora* was the
 most discontent, she first brake silence, and addressing her self to the Princess *Rosamond*
 with sufficient boldness, *I assure my self Madam,* said she, *that if our dispute had been made*
before you, the event had been more advantageous for me, than now it hath prov’d, and that
you would have took my part, if not as most dear, yet at least, as least odious. I see well, answer-
 ed the divine *Rosamond*, *that you are for Gondioch, but I know not if the assistance you expect’d*
from me, had been so favourable as you hope; and all that I could have said the most advan-
tageous for your party, is, that Pharamond ought to be odious to me, but that Gondioch truly
is; that I hate Pharamond by his misfortune and by my duty, but Gondioch for his fault,
and by my inclination; and though concerning the merit of their persons, I will not make
any comparifon, the difference I should allow, would never be for the advantage of Gon-
dioch.

I know not Sir, how to express the joy I resent to hear this great Princess express her
 self so nobly and generously in your favour. The Princess *Albisinda* appeared highly con-
 tented,

tented, nor was there any person in the company, but testified a great satisfaction, only *Theodora*, who even swell'd with spleen and shame.

After that day, the Princess of the *Sueves*, to divert her self, called us often by the names of those whose parts we had took; and seldom was it that she saw us enter her chamber, but she saluted us by the names of *Gondemar* and *Marcomire*; many persons following her example, accusom'd themselves to call us after the same manner, and such a habit was at length got of it, that they called us not oftner by the names of *Ericlea* and *Theodora*, than they did by those of *Marcomire*, and *Gondemar*. I found in my own thoughts much sport in this adventure, and if I could have imagined that *Theodora* had been truly *Gondemar*, as I was truly *Marcomire*, I had admired this fantastick effect of love and fortune, which having made us encounter in a fight, wherein both the one and the other failed but little of losing his life, two men touch'd with equal interests in the passions of their Brothers, should in the same day, and upon the same occasion, conceive the same passion in their souls, inspire both with the same design, and bring them to live under their true names in a place where they were equally unknown. As I proved in truth; a part of this adventure in the person of *Ericlea*, I imagined sometimes, that the other might meet in that of *Theodora*, and this thought enter'd sometimes so strongly into my mind, that it begat in me a jealousy and trouble, and made me consider the actions of *Theodora* more exactly than I had done before, to find some means the more easily to clear me of the suspicions I had conceiv'd. However it seem'd to me that I had sufficient subject of satisfaction, by the advantages I had over her; and though *Theodora* by the vivacity of her spirit, by the good grace she had in all her actions, and by an extraordinary merit oblig'd the Princess to consider her more than all the other Ladies that attended her; yet I observ'd, that in the treatment she made us, there was a notable difference, and that though she had a part in those caresses which proceeded from the sweetness and civility of the Princess, her secrets and things of trust began to be confer'd on me alone; yet by this advantage I was not touch'd with all that joy it might have made me sensible of, when I beheld *Theodora* only as a Lady; but when I began to imagine by many great appearances, that under the habits of *Theodora Gondemar* might be conceal'd, as *Marcomire* was under those of *Ericlea*, I received an entire contentment, and was highly contented with the sweetness of my condition.

The impatience with which *Theodora* supported my being preferred before her, caus'd my suspicions to augment, and principally, when I saw her observ'd with some dissatisfaction, by persons who took part in her interests. We were one day together, with many other Damselfs, in the chamber of the Princess, and because she would busie her self that day in curious works of Tapestry, she made some be given to all that were in the chamber to work on, and to *Theodora* and my self as well as the rest. You may judge my Lord, that I found my self in a strange trouble at this accident, not knowing in what manner to behave my self: However I took the Needle, and assay'd to imitate what I saw done, at the hazard of spoiling it, rather than declare my ignorance. I had endeavour'd to make some points in great disorder, when one of the Damselfs of the Princess; who was very near *Theodora*, having cast her eyes upon what she did, took her work, which she had wrought quite contrary, and showing it her companions with a great laughter, pray'd them to look upon the work of *Theodora*. She blush'd for some time at this Mockery of the Damselfs, but a little after being embolden'd, I confess, said she, *that I am ignorant in this exercise, and that I never yet learn'd it; but if you cast your eyes on Ericlea's work,* (continued she, laying her hand upon it) *you will see that she is no better skilful than I, and as well merits a part of your laughter.*

This report likewise made me blush, but being recovered in a short time, and having snatch'd my work to me in a great chafe, to hinder *Theodora* from taking it: *You shall not have that pleasure,* said I, *and it shall suffice, that I confess that I am possibly no more skilful than you in this sort of work, without giving you farther satisfaction.* "I believe indeed, (said *Mathilda*, to answer me with a malicious sigh) that *Ericlea* is no more skilful than *Theodora*, or rather that the affairs of *Marcomire* are in no better condition than those of *Gondemar*. So that their fortune be equal, replied *Imbergida* to her, *you have no reason to complain.* "I know not, said I again, whether this equality will content her, but for my part, I shall not be at all satisfied; and I do not believe that *Marcomire*, whose name they give me, would suffer in his fortune with *Gondemar*. I believe, replied *Theodora*, that *Gondemar* would suffer it less than *Marcomire*, and since I have so much taken his part, I will consent no more than *Ericlea*.

This discourse had possibly pass'd further, if it had not been interrupted by persons who entered

entred into the Chamber : And I remember Sir, that it was the same day that Prince *Ezimir*, who was return'd some days before to *Marobuda*, having driven out of the Territories of the King of the *Cimbrians*, those *Burgundians* which remain'd under the Command of *Contran*, came to *Lisurgis*, to give a visit to the Princess *Rosamond*. He was very nobly receiv'd, as well for the esteem which the merit of his person might cause, as out of the acknowledgments which the thought due to his Services. I saw him the same day in the Chamber of *Albifinda*, whom he came to visit, and I observ'd in his person so many great and heroick things, that next to you my Lord, I believe I never saw any thing which surpass'd him, or possibly could equal him : and though your interest made me look upon him with some distast, as the most to be fear'd of all your Rivals, by the advantages of merit and valour, it could not stop my eyes to those qualities, to which notwithstanding the Competitorship that renders you enemies, you would without doubt give part of your esteem.

I was much confirm'd by the modesty with which I heard him speak of you the day following, in the apartment of the Princess *Rosamond*, whither I had accompanied *Albifinda*, and where before *Briomer*, (who was that day come to *Lisurgis*) and who boasted to *Rosamond* of the valour and puissance of the Princes which were engag'd to give your head to the King of the *Cimbrians*, he condemn'd the rashness of those, who durst promise the head of such a King as *Pharamond*, in terms full of disdain of them, contenting himself to tell the Princess, that he would certainly fight for her quarrel, to the last drop of his blood, but that he would not promise the head of a man, who knew well how to defend it both against him, and all the men in the world. On the morrow he was led to the Chase by the Officers of the Princess, who was pleas'd to give him this divertisement, and as you understood Sir, he was assaulted by a Troop of Assassins, who having found him without other Arms than his Sword, whilst they were arm'd *Cap-a-pe*, had without doubt depriv'd him of his life, without the assistance which you gave him, and of which, I, with infinite astonishment, learn'd the particulars from *Albimer* who was with you. At night he was brought back to *Lisurgis* extremely wounded, where the Princess, very much afflicted at this accident, receiv'd him with infinite marks of sorrow, and caus'd him to be attended with all diligence imaginable. On the morrow those that dress'd him, assur'd him that his life was in no danger, though the cure of his wounds would be tedious, and the day following it was that you arriv'd at *Lisurgis*, presented your self before *Rosamond*, and having escap'd the fury of *Briomer*, were made Prisoner, and conducted to *Marobuda*.

I do not at all doubt my Brother, said *Pharamond*, interrupting *Marcomire*, *but it was to your assistance I was engag'd for my life, and if it were not too unfortunate to be dear to me*, continued he embracing him, *you may judge how much I should be oblig'd to you*. Though my fortune, replied *Marcomire*, had not conducted me in so favourable a moment, to render you this little service, your life was too dear to the Gods, to forsake it in that necessity : and the Princess *Rosamond* had done without doubt what you see her do immediately after, and which hindred me from doing any more, for fear of prejudicing instead of serving you : for as I saw that you offer'd your breast to the Sword of *Briomer*, without testifying any intention of defending your self, if *Rosamond* had not oppos'd his design as she did, I had cast my self upon him, and strangled him with my hands, if I could have found no other Arms to punish his cruelty.

The Princess rescued you from that danger, and the care she took for your preservation, appear'd not only in that first obstruction of the cruel intentions of *Briomer*, but in what she did to draw you out of his hands, and put you into those of *Cloderic* : though I well knew her intention was favourable to you, and that she would oppose all danger which might threaten your life, yet I could not assure my self, but following those that led you away, so soon as I saw them depart, I call'd several times *Cleomer*, whom I had taken notice to be with you, forgetting entirely the personage of *Eriolea*, in an encounter indeed sufficiently important to make me lose the remembrance of my interest, when *Imbergida*, who followed me, coming behind me, and stopping me by my Coats *What do you mean my Lord*, said she, so low as not to be understood by any person, *or what do you hope from this action, but the loss of the King your Brother and your self?* *Ah Imbergida*, said I, *my life is of little importance, when that of Pharamond is in danger, that on such an occasion I remember no more Marcomire, though I cannot forget Albifinda*. I spoke many other words, by which I made her know, that in the trouble which possess'd me, I could no longer think of *Eriolea* : but she represented so well the danger to which I should expose you, by making known that your Brother was disguis'd like a Damisel in the Court of the *Cimbrian* King, where

where you were at present Prisoner, and the little service I could do you in the condition I was, and by the noise I made, that she induc'd me to resolve to try ways more favourable to your assistance, and led me backwards towards the Princesses, from whom I had hopes of all assistance, disposing my self however, if they were wanting, to quit that very day the habit I wore, and prepare my self to attempt other enterprizes for your deliverance.

We found the two Princesses yet in the same Alley where this strange adventure happened, and though *Rosamond* were extremely troubled, she saw me no sooner approach with *Imbergida*, but turning her self towards the Princess *Albifinda*, whose disturbance appear'd no less than hers. *You see my Sister*, said she, *that it is not only with words that Ericlea knows how to defend Pharamond, I know not whether in the same occasion Theodora would have done so much for Gondioch. I scarce know well my self,* (replied *Theodora*, who was present at this discourse, and had been at all that had pass'd) *whether I should have been so bold, but I believe there are few Damsels so courageous as Ericlea.* This Discourse of *Theodora*, made me well judge, that the action I had done, might have given her great suspicions of the truth, and being willing to say somewhat which might in part smother them, *As I expos'd not my self to any great danger*, replied I, *so I testified no extraordinary courage in what I have done: and I dare say, that though I am in effect more affectionate for Pharamond than for Gondioch, yet I have done nothing for Pharamond, I would not have done for Gondioch in the same necessity: for the life of two Princes, such as they, is too considerable in the world, not to merit a like assistance from all persons who could give it.* All the company approv'd my discourse, but though *Theodora* likewise testified her approbation, she made me guess by her behaviour, she would not let her self be perswaded as I desir'd.

In the mean time we followed the Princesses who retir'd, and when they were in their appartments, *Albifinda* having caus'd me to be call'd into her Closet, and seeing me alone with her, *My dear Ericlea*, (said she) *because you are as discreet as you are courageous, I cannot hinder my self from confessing that the Action which you have done to day much augments the Affection I had for you: For though the misfortunes which are come to pass, suffer me not to love King Pharamond, I find so much innocence in the Injuries which he hath done us, and so many admirable qualities in his Person, that I cannot possibly hate him, at least so much as to wish him ill, nor yet to suffer it without displeasure: I make to you this Confession without any Scruple, and to testify to you my entire Confidence, I will tell you in recompence of your handsome Action some News will not be displeasing to you: I will tell you then, that the Life of the King of the Franks, in which you so much interest your self, is not in any danger. That the Princess *Rosamond*, whose power as you know in the absence of the King is absolute over the Cimbrians, causes *Briomer* to depart to morrow towards the King, under a pretence which permits him not to find any way to excuse the Journey, and that during his absence, *Cloderic*, who is a Creature of the Princesses, and whom she can entirely command in all things, will set Pharamond at liberty: It is not necessary that I recommend to you this as a secret, you know it of great importance, and you will judge well that I would not trust it to you if I did not dearly love you, being certainly assur'd that *Rosamond* hath not reveal'd it to any but my self.*

These words Sir begat in me as you may well judge, all the joy I could possibly receive, and not being able to dissemble it, I fix'd my lips to one of the fair hands of the Princess, and kissing it a thousand times, with a transportation enough to have discover'd me, if she had well observ'd it, "I praise the Gods, said I, and my good fortune, which hath brought me to those occasions to dedicate my Life to the service of a Princess so good and so generous: I cannot hold the misery of *Pharamond* so great as he without doubt himself believes it, since in the midst of his misfortunes you yet reserv'd for him this noble compassion. I told her in pursute many other words, which express'd the joy I resent'd for the News she had told me, and a little after lifting up my eyes upon her face, with a little more fear and less confidence, than when I spoke of *Pharamond*, and beholding her with a passionate behaviour, "But my Princess, said I, since you permit me to interest my self in the Fortune of one Criminal, will not you pardon me if I take some part in that of an Innocent, whom you have told me so often I resemble, by whose name you every day call me, and who (to strengthen my self more firm to his interest) hath no less passion for you, by what I have understood, than the King his Brother hath for the Princesses of the *Cimbrians*? Will you not my fair Princess, that I demand, whether that *Marcomire* who dies for you, and who hath never offended you: That *Marcomire* whom you have assisted with your Cares, and honoured with your Visits, whilst his Wounds kept him near you: And that *Marcomire*, who during that happy time; hath possibly made you know that he adores you, can merit any place in your memory; whether his person be

“not Odious to you, as you have testified to me: whether his Actions have never displeas’d you: Or whether his love could come to your hearing without incensing you, will you not permit him to believe, that your heart is touch’d with some Sensibility, and that he may yet hope a small part in your precious Memory?”

Whilst I spoke in this manner, the Princess lifted up her hand to her Face, to hide those blushes that dy’d her Fair Cheeks, and after she had kept silence a small while, “You are not wise *Ericlea*, (*said she, in a manner wholly languishing*) to ask me such strange questions, and I shall perhaps be no wiser than you if I study to answer you seriously: but since I have done so much, and have reveal’d to you the secret of another which should have been kept Sacred, I ought not to be reserv’d in my own, of which I alone am Mistress, and therefore with the same Confidence I have already testified to you, and which I would only repose in you, I avow to you, that neither the Person nor Affection of *Marcomire*, if he hath truly any for me, are at all Odious to me, and that at the first moment of his sight, I conceiv’d an inclination for him, of which my heart had not till then been capable, that all I have since observ’d in him (as well the qualities of his person, as the proofs of an affection which he hath let me very well know, though he never entirely declar’d it to me) hath confirm’d it in my mind. And in fine, if the misfortunes of our Families, or the hatred of the King my Father, oppos’d not it self to all those favourable thoughts I have for him, I should prefer him before all men in the World. “O too happy *Marcomire*, (*cried I, wholly transported with joy at this Discourse*) Why is it not permitted thee entirely to rejoyce at thy Fortune? Or rather why is it not permitted *Ericlea* that knows it to become *Marcomire*? “This Metamorphosis, (*said the Princess to me sighing,*) cannot easily happen nor can I my self with it, for if to the affection I have for *Marcomire*, were joyn’d that I bear *Ericlea*, I should without doubt be transported to too great an excess for him. And if, (*replied I, very warily,*) from under the figure of *Ericlea* you should see appear *Marcomire*, would you not preserve all that affection you have both for the one and for the other? As this would be, (*replied the Princess,*) an Adventure which I never expected, I know not well how I should use it, though I am not perhaps ignorant how I ought to do it, but because it is a thing I ought not to desire, I will not so much as think it can ever happen. These words though pronounc’d with an Air full of sweetness, repress’d my boldness, and stopp’d a violence which carried me insensibly to Discourses enough to have discover’d my self. *Albifinda* was perhaps surpris’d to see me remain confus’d as I was, and prepar’d her self possibly to demand the cause of some signs of astonishment she observ’d in my Countenance, when *Theodore* under some pretence which excus’d that liberty, entred into the Closet: it was this time alone I was not displeas’d at the interruption she ordinarily gave to our entertainments, nor could I find my self very much troubled at her arrival.

I pass’d that night in a great perplexity of different thoughts, and besides the inquietude which in despite of the assurances she gave me, I suffer’d continually for you, I found things in my Condition which did strangely moderate the joy which I might feel for the happiness *Albifinda* declar’d to me. It is true, that in the Confession she had made me of her good intentions for *Marcomire*, I found some subject to rejoyce at my Fortune greater than I could have desir’d, and that by the reflection I made on those obliging words by which she express’d her self in my favour, I gave my self up to a joy I could not contain: But in the end thinking of her last words by which she had made me judge that the change of *Ericlea* into *Marcomire* would not be agreeable, though I found not any thing to counterballance a joy so great and lawful, yet I observ’d wherewithal to cross it with great disturbances, and to employ my Spirit to seek other inventions than those I had propos’d to my self: In sum, my joy gain’d the Victory over all that which could trouble it in things that regarded my Love. And as nothing was so ardently desir’d of me, as to see *Marcomire* beloved of *Albifinda*, and that I my self did not propose this happiness, but as a happiness to which I should difficultly aspire, the assurance I had receiv’d from the mouth of this amiable Princess put my Soul in fine in that condition of satisfaction which nothing was capable to discompose but the fear I had of your safety.

Not but that I had an entire Confidence in the words of *Albifinda*, or that I did not believe that the Princess *Rosamond* might easily execute what she had resolv’d in your favour, but as that business was a thing of so great value as your Life and Liberty, nothing could assure me against the fear that perplex’d me. As I was in a condition not to enterprize any thing in that Country for your deliverance, and that I thought it to less purpose to remove my self from you to seek assistance in *Franconia*, I would have sent *Clotarius* who remain’d with the Son of *Imbergida*, but that *Imbergida* represented unto me that I ought to attend some days the effect of *Rosamond’s* Designs, and that if I saw *Briomer* return from the

Voyage he made to the King, without *Rosamond's* having executed what she promis'd to *Albifinda*, I might entertain things after the loss of that hopes which possibly before might give some obstructions to those intentions design'd in your favour.

I passed in this manner some days in great perplexity, though every moment I received from the Princess *Albifinda* new assurances, and in the end the affair was perfected as she had promis'd, and the Princess *Rosamond* going one night to *Marobuda*, with a private Retinue, and in so much secrecy that no person had knowledge of it, executed what she had resolv'd, caus'd you to be set at liberty, and that same night returned to *Lisurgis* with as much diligence and privacy that her departure was never perceiv'd. I will not tell you my Lord, what was my joy when I understood your deliverance from the mouth of the Princess of the *Sueves*, but you will I hope do me the favour to believe that nothing in the world was ever able to touch me so powerfully as the consideration of your safety.

When I was delivered from this cruel care, I dedicated my self wholly to my Love, resolving to sacrifice it to the rest of the time I had to stay near *Albifinda*, which could not be long, by reason of the approaches of a war for which they made so great preparations, and by which I was to be recalled to your assistance, notwithstanding all that my love could do, to persuade me to stay near *Albifinda*; for this reason I endeavour'd to make use of that time as much as possible, and us'd all my endeavours to gain the heart of my Princess, either for *Marcomire*, or for *Ericlea*, or for both together, and the confidence she had given me of the good opinion she had for *Marcomire* gave me the liberty to speak to her often concerning him, and I lost no occasion to tell her all things I thought expedient to retain her in those favourable thoughts she had of him.

Believe not however my Lord, that I thought only of my self, or that your interest was not as present in my memory as my own; from those private discourses I had with *Albifinda* concerning the fortune of *Marcomire*, I pass'd often to that of *Pharamond*, and as she had permitted me to take his part, and had approv'd what I did for him, I spoke boldly to her for him, and oblig'd her as much as was possible to favour you with the Princess *Rosamond*: I endeavour'd dayly to understand what place you held in her esteem, and one night having press'd her by that liberty she gave me; *I have already told you*, said she, *that I am not Mistress of the secrets of another as of my own, however I will tell you concerning what you desire of me, that not only Rosamond doth not hate, but that she cannot hate Pharamond, and that if among all men she could ever love any man, she could never have loved but only Pharamond, whom alone she thinks worthy of her, and in comparison of whom she looks upon all others with disdain; however she will act against him all those things to which she believes her self oblig'd by her duty, by her promise, and by the will of the King her Father, but she will act them with a grief which would beget a pity in Pharamond himself, had he the knowledge of it.*

These were the most important particulars I could learn, though the better to instruct my self, I had contracted a strict amity with the Ladies of the Princess *Rosamond*, and particularly with *Persinda*, who is the most dear to her, and with *Luciana*, who being Sister to *Albimer*, I believed real to your interests; nor did I deceive my self in that judgment I made of her, for I found her so well inclin'd towards you, that I fail'd but little of discovering my self to her. *Theodora* on her part seem'd no less pressing upon *Albifinda*, but she liv'd with me in a far greater distrust than she had at the beginning, and by many marks made me judge that she had great suspicions of the truth. She thought at that time she had an advantage over me, which she neglected not, the News arriving at *Lisurgis* that King *Gondioch* had not only made peace with the King of the *Cimbrians*, who turn'd his entire hatred against you only, but that by reason of the offers he had made to serve him with all his Forces against you, he had been received as the other pretendants to the hopes of enjoying *Rosamond* by the head of *Pharamond*.

This news wrought an ill effect for *Gondioch* in the mind of *Rosamond*, and I understood from the Princess *Albifinda*, that if hitherto the Princess of the *Cimbrians* had felt a reluctance to love him, she had now conceiv'd a disdain for him, which made her look upon him as the man of the whole world least worthy of her esteem. I understood this particularly in a dispute which *Theodora* and my self had in her presence, and that of *Albifinda*: for *Theodora* believing she had a fair occasion to revenge her self of a reproach I had at another time made her, and not being able to dissemble the dissatisfaction she receiv'd, *The time is come Ericlea*, said she, *that you cannot longer make use of an advantage which you have unjustly taken against me, in the interest of those Princes, of which yet*

and I have taken the parts; and when Gondemar shall be seen to fight near the King of the Cimbrians, and the King of the Sueves, for their quarrel, and that of the Princesses their Daughters, and Marcomire near Pharamond at the head of their enemies, there will the Princess Albisinda know well, as you desired some days past, how to put the difference she ought between her Enemy and her Defender. I make no doubt, replied I coldly, but Marcomire will fight in the quarrel of the King his Brother, and for the interest and defence of his Country; and that Gondemar will follow his Brother in that glorious enterprise for which he re-assumes his Arms: but I doubt less but that the Princesses which hearken to us will know how to make the difference they ought between a Prince that renders what is due to his honour and to his duty, and him who takes part in the infamy of his Brother. You speak unworthily in my opinion, replied Theodora, of those who are at present employed in the interests of persons to whom both you and I owe respect; but besides that, Gondioch, with his love to the Princess Rosamond, which may authorise all things, hath many great reasons to justify his proceedings against Pharamond, Prince Gondemar is no less oblig'd than Marcomire, both by his honour and his duty to fight in the quarrel of his Brother. For Gondemar (said the Princess Rosamond) he cannot be at all blam'd to adhere to the interests of his Brother, but for Gondioch, we are so much the more bound to him for the assistance he gives us, as we least expected it from him; for I expected the head of Pharamond from any other hand, rather than from that of a man who is bound to him for his Liberty, and for his Crown. The Princess of the Cimbrians pronounc'd these words with a Majesty which depriv'd Theodora of the boldness to reply, and made observable as much confusion on her countenance as there was satisfaction in mine.

In the mean time I began to be cruelly disturb'd at the preparations I saw made for the war, and the indispensable necessity which would force me so soon to absent my self from *Albisinda*. I heard, as I fancied, those Trumpets which call'd me on all sides, and I beheld my self with much shame under the habits of a woman, whilst all the world was cover'd with Arms; but it was not only the fear of this absence that afflicted me, and I was resolv'd, as other men might resolve, to absent themselves from what they love, flattering my self with hopes of return, as if the access of *Albisinda* had not been forbidden, and perhaps forbidden for ever to the Brother of *Pharamond*; for to hope that I could yet again return to her under the habits of *Ericlea*, there was little appearance, for besides that in all likelihood my deceit would be discovered during my absence, I had reason to fear, that that which might serve me for a little time, and in a solitude like to that of *Lisurgis*, would not have the same success in a longer stay, and in a great Court, as that of the *Cimbrian King's* ordinarily was. I had many times a design to discover my self to the Princess before my departure, and it wanted little that the confidence I had in her goodness, had not given me that boldness; but the remembrance of the words she had spoken on that subject, took away all my assurance for such an enterprise, not permitting me to run a hazard by which I might entirely ruine my self.

The disquiet I felt by reason of these troublesome thoughts, often chang'd my humour, and made my distraction sometimes observable in my countenance. I began to be more pensive than ordinarily, and at those hours wherein I could not be free with *Albisinda*, I sought to be alone, and went usually to walk in the least frequented places of the Garden and Park. I forgot my self one night after the Princesses were returned from walking, yet without thinking what judgment might be made of a Damsel who remained alone, and so late, in that solitude and obscurity, I was so much prepossessed, that I thought not of retiring with the others, but gently treading along the Alleys, I remained till night was well advanc'd. In the end I return'd towards the Castle, and because the chamber of the Princess *Albisinda* looked out on the Garden; I lifted up mine eyes towards the windows, and not seeing any light, I judged that she already slept.

I beheld for some time the place where all my treasure lay, with those thoughts which are not pardonable, but to persons possess'd like us with a violent passion; and in fine, I found my self importun'd by a motion of love and tenderness to sing under her window some words which I had compos'd the day before, and which I had never yet sung before the Princess; I approach'd therefore, by the knowledge I had of that place, rather than by any clearness of the night, which was extremely dark, to a place directly under the windows, and when I was just beneath them, I lean'd my self against a Palisade, directly opposite to their sight, and began to sing in a tune very passionate.

1.

THe Day star robbing th' Earth of Light doth ease
 It self beneath the Western Shore,
 Leaving to Mortals a Repose and Peace ;
 But that fair Star which I adore,
 In th' Arms of Sleep makes still my Torments live,
 And Joys in that Repose she will not give.

2.

The lovely violence of my Grievs makes me
 Disturb this pleasing silent Night,
 Whilst Zephyrus breaths with some regret, lest he
 Should discompose Climene bright :
 But pardon, fairest, day must know no name,
 'Tis only Night must shade my secret flame.

I had scarce sung these first words with a design to continue, when I heard a noise against the Palifade, on which I leaned, and casting my eyes that way, from whence my thoughts made me imagine it came, I saw something white, and notwithstanding the obscurity of the night, I in the end knew it was a woman ; as I doubted not but she had known me for *Ericlea*, I went towards her, and at my approach to her, I knew that it was *Theodora*. This encounter infinitely displeas'd me, believing this Lady (interested to observe me by the jealousy she testified, and of whom I had no less suspicions than she could have of me) would find in my action and in my song, sufficient subject to confirm her thoughts. The darkness robb'd both the one and the other of the knowledge of that confusion which this encounter might have made observable in our visages, and after we had some time beheld each other without speaking, *Theodora* first broke silence, *How, Ericlea, (said she) at such an hour as this, and whilst all the world reposes, are you alone walking, and under the windows of the Princess ? I am not alone, replied I, since we are together ; but I should be no less astonish'd than you, to encounter you, if I were of the humour to be astonish'd at small things. But both in you, and in me, replied Theodora, walking thus late, it may be an effect of the love we have for solitude, but such singing under the windows of the Princess Albisinda, seems something strange for a Damsel, and more conformable to the condition of a Lover, than that of the Niece of Imbergida. The love of solitude, neither in you nor in any other person, (replied I, marching forwards, that we might get farther from the window, from whence our discourse might be understood) can never astonish me ; but this jealousy you testify of persons who sing under the windows of Albisinda, is very strange for a Damsel, and more proportionate to the passion of a Lover, than to the tranquillity of persons of our Sex. Damsels like you and I, (replied Theodora) are not ordinary Damsels, nor can it be thought strange, that persons oppos'd in the desire of the same thing, should be capable of jealousy ; I confess you give me infinite cause, and if I believed you of the humour to explain your self to me, as I will explain my self to you, we should soon be out of doubt and trouble.*

These words, which she pronounc'd with a voice more resolute than ordinary, and pressing one of my hands with a force much different from that of a Damsel, not only confirm'd me in my suspicions, but turn'd them into a certainty, and had oblig'd me to reply to *Theodora*, otherwise than as to a Damsel, if I had not judg'd that it was not yet time to declare my self, and that I ought to dissemble a part of what I thought, till a better occasion, yet I did not forbear to tell her, pressing her hand with a force little inferior to hers, *Go to Bed, Theodora, I have nothing to explain to you now, but when it shall be time, if what you and I believe be true, I will explain my self to you more than you desire. If you forget, said she, I shall put you in remembrance, and in the mean time you explain to me enough for me to understand what I have to do.*

Finishing these words, she retired another way, and I went to seek my chamber, where I pass'd the rest of that night in a terrible discomposure ; I question'd no longer but that I was discover'd, since my secret was in the hands of a person, whom I look'd upon as my Rival, and my enemy, and I judg'd well that though *Theodora* would not divulge it to all the Court, for the respect she bore *Albisinda*, at least she would discover it to her

self, and break all my designs, and all my fortunes; and moreover, I could but a few days longer defer my departure, for the Troops of the King of the *Cimbrians*, and his Allies, had already begun to march towards *Franconia*; I saw therefore by all means it was necessary for me to depart, and I would depart if it were possible, before *Theodora*, had time to discover me, yet I could not resolve to depart, and depart possibly for ever, without taking leave of *Albifinda*.

I communicated my design to *Imbergida*, who died with fear at the recital I made her of what had befallen me, and of what she doubted from *Theodora*; but having assured her, that before my departure I would dispel whatever she might doubt, I prayed her to advertise *Gerontes* and *Clotarius* of what they had to do, to facilitate my retreat. I resolv'd then not to leave *Albifinda* all that day as well to find time to tell her what I had in my heart, as to hinder *Theodora* from entertaining her. But I was scarce out of my chamber when I encountered *Theodora*, and I found her so chang'd, by the grief I observ'd in her eyes, that she was scarcely to be known. She pass'd by without speaking to me, when a thought which came then into my mind, stopp'd me, and seeing that our discourse could not be understood by any person, *Theodora*, said I, *we will explain our selves in few days if you will, and in the meantime I promise I will not discover what I believe of you, if you will do the same with me. I would do it, said Theodora, if our fortune were equal; but since yours is much better than mine, you cannot think it strange if I cross it as much as possible. Consider, said I, that that revenge which would be pardonable in the Kinswoman of Mathilda, will not be honourable in the Brother of Gondioch. As the Brother of Gondioch, (replied she) is an enemy sufficiently terrible for the Brother of Pharamond, I shall have generosity enough to expose him to others.*

Concluding these words, she went away, leaving me in a resolution to execute my design, and to hasten my departure as soon as possible. In this thought I went immediately to *Albifinda*, whom I left not all the morning, not finding any occasion to entertain her particularly, by reason of the great company continually with her, though during that time *Theodora* came not into the chamber. The two Princesses dined together, and soon after they saw arrive *Briomer* with an order from the King of the *Cimbrians* to the Princess his Daughter, to depart in two days towards a City on the Frontiers, which he appointed them, to be there ready to march with him at the head of his Armies into *Franconia*. This order extremely displeas'd *Rosamond*, who was not prepared for this expedition, and who had not possibly any design by her presence to animate her Lovers to the ruine of *Pharamond*. However she told *Briomer* that she would obey, and *Briomer* having manifested that the design of the King of the *Sueves* no less than of the King of the *Cimbrians*, was not to separate the two Princesses, and that *Albifinda* was to go the journey as well as *Rosamond*, they comforted each other mutually, by the satisfaction they had to remain together, and at the same moment they gave their orders to prepare all things ready within two days.

I could not presently judge Sir, whether I ought to afflict my self or rejoyce for your interest, at the journey of *Rosamond*, but for mine, I was not at all troubled that *Albifinda* approached towards us, and I hop'd the events of the war might breed occasions to see her much better than if she were returned into *Suevia*. In the mean time I kept my self still near her, to hinder the access of *Theodora*, who presented her not self all that day. And when it was a little late, whilst the Princess *Rosamond* was in conversation with Prince *Balamir*, who had that day first left his chamber, and who was to stay some days longer at *Lisurgis*, to complete his recovery; *Albifinda* went forth to walk in the Garden, and from thence pass'd into the Park, and into the same Alley where you presented your self to *Rosamond*.

She walk'd here some time with those persons which had followed her, but having observ'd in my looks that I had a great desire to entertain her, leaving the rest in the middle of the Alley, she went leaning on my Arm, to one of those two Arbours which are at the two ends, nor was this that which was nearest to the Garden, but that on the Forest side, and very near that little door by which you entred. But scarce were we in the Arbour, and scarce did I begin to open my mouth to seek pretences for my departure, to which I was so much oblig'd, and to testify to the Princess the grief I had to leave her, when by that little door of the Park, we saw *Theodora* enter, and advance towards the Arbour with a countenance yet more chang'd than it appeared in the morning, and many marks of sadness, that had they sprung from another cause, they had mov'd no small pity.

I confess to you, her presence made me tremble, as she enter'd into the Arbour, and so soon

ſon as ſhe perceiv'd it, " You have reaſon to fear, *ſaid ſhe*, ſee here your accuſer, but if
 " I am yours *Ericlex*, I am likewiſe *Theodora's*, and you ought not to complain of me;
 " if I do not diſcover your crime, but with confeſſing my own. See here two offenders
 " Madam, (*continued he, caſting himſelf at the feet of Albitinda,*) and I hold them equally
 " criminal, by the belief I have that you have been equally ignorant of the Crime both of
 " the one and the other. You might have been yet ignorant of it, and I might have ſpar'd
 " you that diſpleaſure this knowledge may give you, if that which I ſee of my own miſery
 " inſpiring me with deſpair, had not robb'd me both of reaſon and diſcretion. The true
 " Brother of *Pharamod*, and the true Brother of *Gondioch*, whom you ſee before you, have
 " equally deceiv'd you under the Shapes of *Ericlex* and *Theodora*. Chance without doubt
 " inſpired them with the ſame deſign, their paſſion may have been alike, and poſſibly there
 " is little difference in their merit, but there hath not been the like in their fortune, for I
 " have had the ſorrow not only to ſee *Ericlex* preſerv'd before *Theodora*, but to ſee *Marco-*
 " *mire* gain all ſorts of advantages over *Gondemar*. I know not whether reaſon or fortune
 " have given him this victory over me, and as I have not believ'd my ſelf to be his inferi-
 " our, neither in Birth nor Courage, and am aſſur'd that in all that thoſe qualities may make
 " one ſuffer, and make a paſſion agree, mine hath not at all yielded to his. I have ſuffer'd
 " his happineſs and my own miſery, as much as was poſſible, but in the end my conſtancy
 " and my hope have equally abandon'd me: and ſeeing my ſelf reduc'd to that neceſſity to
 " dye for you, I had rather loſe my life in ſerving your party, than ſacrifice it here by my
 " grief to the fortune of my Rival. I ſhall at leaſt have this advantage over him, to fight
 " in your Quarrel, and if he appears at the head of the *Franks*, as he ſhall ſee me at the
 " head of the *Burgundians*, we will diſpute with our Arms the glory to dye for you. " A-
 " dieu Madam, (*continued he embracing her knees,*) pardon in the unfortunate *Theodora*,
 " the boldneſs of *Gondemar*, and permit him to hope, that if in his Life his love cannot
 touch you, he may ceaſe by his death to be odious to you.

Concluding theſe words, he roſe from the feet of the Princeſs, where he had hitherto
 continued, and letting a Veil fall over his face, which we ſaw cover'd with tears, he departed
 out of the Arbour, but having made two ſteps, turning his head towards me, *Thou mayſt*
remember Marcomire, ſaid he, *that I have not been willing to expoſe thee to the anger of the*
Cimbrian King, but have reſerv'd all my revenge to the Sword of Gondemar. After theſe
 words, he ran towards the little gate of the Park, which was very nigh, and diſap-
 pear'd from our eyes in a moment.

Though he had ſpoken to me words fierce enough to merit ſome answer, I neither reply-
 ed to him, nor was in a condition to do it, for when I ſaw him approach the Princeſs,
 he had ſo fill'd my Soul with fear and grief at the ſame time, that I was incapable of all
 things. So ſoon as ſhe had begun to underſtand the truth, from the mouth of *Theodora*,
 ſhe fell upon a ſeat of Turf behind her, and leaning againſt the branches of which the Ar-
 bour was compos'd, had hearkned to his diſcourſe in the poſture of a perſon to whom aſto-
 niſhment had ſcarce left any knowledge. She remain'd yet in the ſame condition, after the
 departure of *Theodora*, and as if ſhe had fear'd to obſerve the confuſion which in all likely-
 hood ought to appear in my Face: She durſt not liſt up her eyes, but held them fix'd on
 the earth, with her whole perſon immoveable, little different from a Marble Statue: I
 well obſerv'd in her behaviour, that ſhe was lively afflicted, and as by the knowledge I
 had of the ſweetneſs of her ſpirit, I knew as well that ſhe was not able to break forth into
 violence, whatever reaſon ſhe had to be incens'd: But by this manner of expreſſing her
 reſentment, without altering her ſweetneſs, ſhe ſtruck me with more aſtoniſhment and fear
 than others could do by reproaches and threatenng words. To my aſtoniſhment there was
 ſtraight added a new grief, for having diſpleas'd her, and though I could difficultly repent
 my ſelf of an action from which I had drawn ſo much advantage, at that preſent I could
 have wiſhed that, though at the price of my blood, I had never undertook it: I therefore
 fought for no reaſons to juſtifie my ſelf, but falling at her knees, which I embrac'd with a
 transportation I could not command, *My Princeſs*, ſaid I, *in the Name of the Gods; and by*
all that Goodneſs I have proved, abandon not to all your anger a miſerable Creature, to whom
you can give no other marks, than what are fatal.

I ſpoke but theſe few words, which I likewiſe pronounc'd with ſome difficulty, and with-
 out ſpeaking more, holding faſt her knees, I by my ſilence and by my behaviour, expreſſed
 my thoughts better than by my diſcourſe I could have done. The Princeſs let me alone for
 ſome time without teſtifying any apprehenſion of what ſhe ſaw, but a little alter, returning
 to her ſelf, as from a long aſtoniſhment, ſhe with one hand gently puſhed me from her knees,
 and with the other liſting a Handkerchief to her eyes either to hide them, to dry thoſe

tears which began to flow thence; *Ab! Ericlea*, said she, *ought you thus to have abused my Innocence, and my Goodness? Ab! Marcomire, wherefore have you deceived me?* “I have deceived you my Princess, said I, I confess to my shame, but if I had not deceived you, how had it been permitted me to see you, and if I had not seen you, how had it been possible for me to live? *It had been better*, replied *Albifinda*, *that you had never seen me, than to expose me to those griefs your sight must cause, and if you had truly lov'd me, you had chosen rather never to have seen me, than to see me at the price of all my honour, and all the repose of my life.* “Ah my Princess, (said I, with a motion full of grief) better a thousand lives like mine, were sacrificed to your repose, and to your honour, than that the least trouble, or the least blot, should accrue to the one or the other. *How*, replied *Albifinda*, *do not you trouble my repose, in exposing me as you have done, to the anger of the King my Father? Or will it not sully my honour when it shall be known to all the world, that I have kept by me in the habit of a Damself, and favoured with my most tender careffes, the Brother of Pharamond? And judge you, if there can be any thing more terrible to me, than the anger of a Father, whose severity all Europe knows, or more fatal to my honour, than the reproach you have cast on it.* “The stay which I have made with you, replied I, may yet be unknown to all the world, and *Gondemar* hath sufficiently testified, that he will not divulge it; but when by my misfortune it shall be known, those who understand the truth, will know well that you have been ignorant of it, and that you have not at all contributed to the deceit. *Yes, yes*, (replied *Albifinda*, very hastily) *I can inform those that know me, that I have not contributed to it, but it must be by punishing as I ought, and banishing from my sight for ever, a person who hath so unhappily abused my innocent goodness. I have an intention to do so, but I know not whether I shall be able to execute it, and by my misfortune you have but too much known my weakness. You have by a stratagem too contrary to the freedom of my proceeding, drawn from my heart a secret, which no complacency should have ever forc'd from thence; and you as Ericlea, have understood what Marcomire ought never to have known by my confession; this was it made you continue your crime with more presumption, but you may perhaps be deceiv'd as well as I, and you ought not to assure your self in such sort, by what you have learn'd of the thoughts I have for you, as not still to fear the effects of a just resentment, and a resentment which ought not to be less powerful over my heart, than all that it could have resent'd of most favourable for you.*

Whilst she spoke in this manner, the tears from her fair eyes stream'd down her cheeks; and through all her countenance she testified so true a grief, that notwithstanding the confidence I had in her goodness, I could not hinder my self from being mortally afflicted. I remained some time without speaking, not being able to resist those effects which drew tears from my eyes as well as hers; but in the end breaking silence as it were by a great violence over my self; Princess, (said I, with a most passionate behaviour) *Neither will I justify my self, neither will I murmur at whatever punishment you shall inflict on my crime, and instead of representing to you, that by its greatness you may judge that of my Love, I attend at your feet that destiny you ordain me, and submit my self to it without murmuring, though the loss of my life should be infallibly your Sentence, that is without doubt fixed to the design you have to banish me eternally your presence; but when that death should be accompanied with all could make it terrible, the fear of it shall never hinder me from obeying you, nor from finding sweetness it self in that obedience which should conduct me to my Tomb, if by that obedience I should appease your anger, and preserve to Marcomire in his Sepulcher, that which you have granted him during his life, and whilst he seem'd innocent before you. I will make you however remember to sweeten your displeasure rather than diminish my crime; that I have not so much abus'd your goodness as I might have done if my respect had been less than my love, and that I have taken care my self to deny Marcomire those liberties and advantages might have been granted to Ericlea: And that no remembrance can cause in you any confusion, nor make you repent, but that of having told to Ericlea that Marcomire was not odious to you. I aggravate possibly my offence by recalling to your memory the happiness of a man whose condition is so miserably changed in so few moments; but whence my Princess, can I find a safety if this be not declared to me? And if Marcomire was this morning the most happy of all men, why should he the same day become the most unfortunate, and most desolate, by a fault for which you your self can accuse nothing but his love? I confess there was rashness and imprudence in my enterprise: but in an age of more experience than mine, can there be found wisdom in a passion like mine? And without alledging to you the example of Gondemar, is prudence ever the companion of one so highly enamour'd?*

I spoke to her in this manner with a transportation of love which she might easily observe, and to these words I added so many others (which I accompanied with so many tears,

tears, as if with the Habit, I had put on the weakness of a woman) that a soul full of sweetness like that of *Albifunda* could difficultly preserve all her anger, and I denoted in her looks so soon as I durst lift up my eyes, that she was not absolutely determined to ruine me, and that if I knew how to manage those good intentions she had for me, it would not be impossible to appease her: And I can assure you Sir, that I forgot nothing of all that my love could inspire me with, and I perswaded her in such manner, that without giving me a death, she could persevere no longer in her anger, and in her grief, and that both the one and the other were caused by a fault, and a misfortune, much less than what she imagined them, that in the end she permitted me to observe some sweetning in her eyes, and after I had some longer time pressed her, taking away the Handkerchief from before them to behold me; *But in fine*, said she, *what desire you of me, and if I should by that weakness from which you draw so many advantages, pardon the fault you have committed, what do you hope? Do you expect I should still keep you with me under the habit of Ericlea, or that I should still grant you the same favours you have drawn from my abused innocence, and of which the remembrance will make me blush to my Tomb?*

No *Mizam* (said I) *I would desire nothing of you which may give you any disturbance, and besides that I aspire not to a happiness I have so little merited, the fear I have to be discovered by a too long stay near you, would make me resolve to take leave of you this very day, and run to those occasions to which you know I am called both by my Honour and my Duty; but in absenting my self from you, I have hopes it shall not be forbidden me to seek the means to see you again, to serve you and to please you if it be possible, which I may hope to do by time, favourable events, and the assistance of Prince Viridomar, no longer an enemy to our house, whatever change there may be in the humour and abatement of the anger of the King your Father: Nor am I my self forbidden to hope, from my Sword and the Arms of the King my Brother, a Crown which is necessary for me to assure for the Daughter of a great King, and that in the end I may raise my thoughts to all things which may contribute to render me happy. See here, my Princess, what is my desire, and what are my hopes in absenting my self from you, and I dare hope it will be permitted me, or would willingly dye if this desire or this hope were forbidden me.* No *Marcomire* (said the Princess in fine to me) *no, they are not forbidden you, and in despite of my self, my heart consents to you that which my resentment would willingly refuse you, but abuse not again this goodness, nor render me unhappy by this weakness I testify to you.*

I abuse your patience Sir, by this long discourse, and, to conclude it, suffer me to tell you in the end my fortune was such, that I not only appeas'd the Princess, but I constrain'd her to confess that she could not repent her self of the affection she had conceived for *Marcomire*, and consent to the design I had to undertake all things to render me happy: She was pleas'd that I should do all things possible in those opportunities that offered to assuage the anger of the King her Father, without whose consent she declared I could hope nothing; she approved particularly the thought I had to make use of Prince *Viridomar*, and doubted not by an equal endeavour to gain him to my part. In fine, all that I could hope from a virtue, which in its natural sweetness is full of severity, was granted me; and she assured me in such manner against the distrust I might have of the fortune of *Gontemar*, and all others who might have the same pretences, that on that side she put my heart in repose: but she would not that I should stay longer with her, nor present my self once more before her, nor before any other persons under the habit of *Ericlea*; but she was pleas'd that I should depart that same day to come towards you, permitting me to render you, against her own Party, that Service I owe you, and to seek in the course of a war, wherein she was to be present with the Princess *Rosamond*, all those occasions to see her which fortune could offer me: She commanded me likewise to assure you, that whatever you might fear for the time past from the Sister of *Viridomar*, she should not only not oppose to you with *Rosamond*, but continually take your part, and entertain the Princess in those inclinations which are as favourable to us as fortune is contrary.

I took my leave of her with a grief, which all the happiness which *Theodora* had procured me, by endeavouring to ruine me, could not hinder; when at the same instant *Imbergida* appeared at the door of the Arbour, and the Princess having called her, after I had justified her before her as much as it was possible, not only pardon'd her the part she bore in the deceit we had acted, but promised she would love her as much as she had done in time past, nor deprive her of the least part of that confidence she had in her.

But why Sir, should I hold you longer, after some marks of weakness which I could not refrain, I retired with *Imbergida*, to whom all the rest of that day I gave all the proofs were possible of my affection and acknowledgment, protesting to her, that I

would all my life consider her as my Mother, and that in a time more happy I would testify to her in a more ample manner my just resentments. On her part she promised me the continuation of her assistances with *Albisinda*: And because her Son had conceiv'd an affection for me, which would not permit him to leave me, she permitted him willingly to accompany me in the Voyage, and that he should fix himself entirely to me.

She had already prepar'd what she would say in the Court concerning the departure of her Niece, and I doubt not at all but *Matilda* had done the same for *Theodora*: But I had dispos'd the Princess to manifest nothing to her, for fear to disclose a thing that she would have kept as secret as possible. I parted the same Night under the Conduct of *Gerontes*, who was come to *Lisurgis* with *Clotarius*, and marching the Day following by ways known to him, we came in the end into the Country of the *Narisques*, and to the City whither I had sent my Equipage, but it was not without having taken a great Compass, (out of the fear *Gerontes* had of encountering the King of *Cimbria's* Guards at the Passes) which made us spend in our Voyage twice as much time as we should have done had we come the direct way. I was afterwards retain'd at the City of *Narisques*, by a fall from my Horse, which injur'd me so much, as to stop me for some days: And it was by reason of these delays, Sir, that I came so late to you, and that I came not till the Day of that Battel which you gain'd with so much Glory.

The End of the First Book.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK II.

MArcomire in this manner coucluded his Relation, and *Pharamond* who had hearkned with infinite attention, and with no less pleasure, when he had made an end, embracing him with a loving tenderness, *I aver to you my Brother*, said he, *that your discourse hath given me a great satisfaction, as well for the recital of your pleasant adventures, as for the knowledge it hath given me of your interest in my fortune, and the mixture of our concerns, which blend themselves in the same quarrel, and against enemies which are common to us both. But if Fortune hath plac'd this conformity in the cause of our passions, she hath put a great and cruel difference in our conditions: And I understand with all the joy that our friendship can give me, that you are as happy in your Love, as I am unfortunate in mine: For in sum Brother, after that obstruction which you have cleared, all others that can oppose your felicity, are not considerable, and if the heart of Albisinda be yours, all the Obstructions the King her Father can raise are easie to support. For the default of a Crown, which in all likelihood is necessary to aspire to Albisinda, you ought not to afflict your self, for besides what you may hope from your Valour, and the assistance of your Arms, the Crown of Franconia cannot be wanting to you, either by the end of my life, which cannot be of long durance if my misfortunes continue, or by the change of my fortune, which permitting me to pass the Rhine, to receive that of the Gauls, to which I am call'd, will permit me to give you that of Franconia, with greater joy without doubt, than you can have in receiving it.*

This generous offer of the King of the *Franks*, touch'd the Soul of the Prince his Brother with a resentment proportionable to the Grandeur of that Benefit he promis'd him, and

and killing perforce one of his hands, which he had loas'd in his own, when he had finish'd his discourse, My Sovereign, said he, I doubt not but you may give crowns, and make Kings when you please: All the World already knows, that no force can assure the dignity of your enemies, against the power of your Arms: I would therefore receive from your liberality all that might raise me to the hopes to possess Albitinda, so that I might hold it from your good fortune: But by that misery which you have declar'd, not only the entire Empire of the World would be odious to me, but my life it self insupportable. There is however a great deal of appearance (replied the King of the Franks) that by this way you should sooner mount to the Royal dignity: And though I should hope to overcome those enemies which now oppose us, as I may hope without doubt, if Fortune be not contrary to us: yet you know, my Brother, that I have a power to resist, under which I must yield; and that in the condition to which my deplorable days are reduc'd, they cannot in all likelihood extend to any great length. Be pleas'd to permit me, replied the Prince, to oppose this opinion you have of your fortune, and since you have told me that if the heart of Albitinda be mine, all those obstacles which might appear from the hatred of the King her Father were little considerable, you may think good my Lord, that I tell you that the inclinations of the Queen of the Cimbrians being favourable to you, as without doubt they are, you may hope all things, and so much the rather hope, because she is not at present, like Albitinda, submitted to the will of a cruel Father, but by the death of hers, is Mistress of her own thoughts. I believe, replied Pharamond, in a sad tone, a part of what you tell me, and I would willingly believe to flatter my self, that it is not by her inclination that Rosamond makes War against me: but what other advantage can I draw from this belief, but that of lamenting the misfortunes of a Princess, who with some reluctancy seeks my ruine, and who will not receive that satisfaction I could wish her at the price of my Life, which she would receive without doubt, if I were not as odious to her, as she hath testified to the whole world: For in fine, my Brother, when I could hope not only that she would cease to hate me, but that she could truly love me, you know well to what she is engag'd, both by Oaths, which she cannot violate, and by a Duty, which she will all her life prefer to her inclinations. I believe they may make her forget that which the friendship of Gondich made me do against her Father and against his People. I may likewise expect that they should blot out a part of that resentment she hath against the Murder of a Prince she loved, and who ought to have been her Spouse: and to flatter my self as much as possible, I may persuade my self, that they may sufficiently open her eyes, to make her discern how little I have contributed to the death of the King her Father, of which by the same continuance of miseries, I am unhappily accus'd. But for the death of Theobaldus, whom before her eyes I slew with my own hand, I cannot comfort my self with any favourable thought, for besides that my self heard the promise she made before all the Gods, to pursue my destruction to the last of my days, when that anger which she hath conceiv'd, should be entirely pleas'd by the knowledge she hath of my innocence and grief, and when she should abandon a design to which she is engag'd by her Oaths and by her Promises, You know well that that hope on which the thoughts of all Lovers are fix'd, is forbidden to me alone, and that whilst I see all my Rivals pretend to the possession of Rosamond, I am assur'd with whatever good motion she may be solicited in my favour, she will never espouse him, who before her eyes slew her brother. "The Gods replied Marcomire, may act

"in this fortune as in the merit of men, and as they have made you different from others, by

"so many advantages which your modesty permits me not to represent to you, they may

"as well by events estranged from the ordinary course, force those obstacles which might

"oppose a common fortune, and make them possibly yield to yours. "The Gods may

"do miracles, replied Pharamond, but besides that you may judge how weak that hope is,

"which is founded upon Miracles, the misfortunes of my life are such, that they cannot

"work them in my favour in this Condition, for not being able with all their power to recal

"what is past; they cannot make me not to have depriv'd of life the Brother of Rosamond.

The desolate Pharamond had dilated himself farther on this matter, if the Prince his Brother, who well saw how much he was griev'd, had not perswaded him to talk of something else, by entreating him to tell him what judgment he made of the Enterprize and Actions of Gondemar. "I judge the same thing, said Pharamond, of his as of yours, and

"the conformity is so entire, that it will be very difficult to put any difference: But for his

"Person, besides what renown hath already publish'd of his Actions, I avow to you, that

"the recital you have made me obliges me to love him, and that in all his proceedings I find

"so much Nobleness, and such greatness of Courage, that I could with all my soul wish he

"might be my friend, and that he were not your Rival. "Though he be my Rival, replied Marcomire, and possibly by reason of his merit the most to be fear'd of all I need fear,

"I confess that I can difficultly hate him, and that the Generosity he hath testified in making

"me known to only *Albifunda*, in a time wherein he might have revenged himself of me, and
 "expos'd me to a great danger had he discover'd me to other persons, hath begot in me as
 "great an esteem for him, as I have disdain for the ingratitude of his Brother: And to the
 "purpose Sir (*continued Marcomire regarding Pharamond*) Will you suffer your self still
 "to struggle with those scruples which have made so great a War in favour of your friend-
 "ship? And will you yet preserve for *Gondioch* that esteem which no less opposes your
 "happiness than the hatred of *Rosamond*? "I protest, *answered Pharamond*, that herein
 "Fortune hath treated me better than I durst hope, and of those two great Obstructions,
 "having taken away that which was not possibly the least in my Spirit, hath comforted
 "me in good part of my misfortune: for the first Actions of *Gondioch* after our Divisions,
 "they had not that effect which you have desir'd, and whilst he was only guilty towards
 "me, of a Design to seize my person in *Marobudæ*, of the desire he had testified to fight a-
 "gainst me, of the defiance he sent me, of the endeavours he us'd to encounter me
 "in the battel, and in fine, of all things he enterprised in the War we made for the liberty
 "of *Rosamond*, I preserv'd still so great a friendship for him, that I could not desire my hap-
 "piness to his prejudice: But since he hath most shamefully sought the alliance of a King
 "who was not my Enemy but for the Service I did him, and that without calling to me-
 "mory his Wounds, and the shame he suffer'd in the Combat against *Balamir*, he hath
 "joyn'd with him, and the rest of the Lovers of *Rosamond*, to assault the head of *Phara-*
 "*mond*. I vow, my Brother, that I have difficultly preserv'd the least remaining Confide-
 "ration for him, and that without being troubled, and without any sense of our an-
 "cient friendship, I earnestly desire at present, that which at other times I durst not
 "desire.

The two Princes entertain'd each other in this manner: when night arriv'd, and the
 King of the *Franks* judging it time to go into the Chamber of *Constance* to Sup with him,
 was about to depart from that of *Marcomire*, when *Valerius* came to pray him on the behalf
 of his Master, to permit him to dedicate that night entirely to understand without any inter-
 ruption, the recital of his Adventure, with which he was Charm'd in such manner that he
 could not suffer a moments discontinuance. *Pharamond* accorded to *Constance* what he de-
 sir'd, testifying however to *Valerius* that it was with some displeasure that he found himself
 depriv'd of his sight till the morrow: And a little after being entred into a great Hall, where
 the Princes, and all the considerable Commanders of his Army were Assembled by the Gran-
 deur of his Courage, he to please them dissipat'd a part of that grief which might be obser-
 vable in his countenance. And as he made his Greatness consist in the Glory of his Actions,
 rather than in Formalities, full of a vain Pride, by a custom which he daily practis'd, though
 different from many other Kings, he caus'd all those illustrious personages of which that
 fair Company was compos'd to Sup with him, and entertain'd them during the repast, with
 that charming affability which subjected to him the most fierce minds, and which gain'd the
 hearts of all that had to do with him.

After Supper he mounted on horseback at the head of that fair Troop, and with five or
 six hundred horse that followed him, the Night being bright and clear, he went round the
 Camp, and visited all the quarters as he often us'd to do, to oblige the Officers to acquit
 themselves exactly of their Charges, and keep themselves in a condition not to be surpris'd
 by the Enemy: But though he made a great Circuit, yet he return'd a great while before
Constance had heard the conclusion, from the mouth of *Cleomer*, of the recital of his Adventures:
 And therefore bidding good night to the party that accompanied him, he devoted the rest
 of that night apparently to repose, but in effect to the sad Considerations of his Misfortunes,
 which were his inseparable Companions.

The next morning he arose very early, but having understood by *Cleomer* that he had not
 left *Constance* till it was extremely late, deferring for some time the visit he intended him, he
 employed a part of the morning in taking Orders concerning the War, and entertaining his
 Friends: and when he understood that the illustrious *Roman* was awake, and might be visit-
 ed without inconveniency, he went into his Chamber: *Constance* no sooner saw him approach
 his Bed, but beholding him with a greater respect, as it seem'd, than he had done some pre-
 ceding days: "Great Sir, *said he*, You see me yet in an admiration to which I have dedica-
 "ted the greatest part of the night, and though I had before understood those of your Acti-
 "ons, which made the most noise in the world, the particular recital I have now received,
 "hath given me an astonishment which I cannot express, and a veneration for you, which
 "obliges me to consider you as a man infinitely rais'd above all others. "I might, *replied*
 "*Pharamond*, make you this discourse with more reason, at least for one part of it: for from
 "the other I will not defend my self, and as I remain in the same opinion with you, that
 "there

“ there are Adventures in my life so strange as to cause astonishment, you may aver with
 “ me, if you please, that there is much difference between those advantages I may draw
 “ from some most happy Combats I have fought against the *Barbarians*, of which there re-
 “ mains no fruit or benefit neither to me nor to my Country, and the glory which envi-
 “ rons you for so many famous and important victories, which in their events have in-
 “ terested the whole Universe, and upheld that Empire which for so many ages hath ruled
 “ over so many Nations.

I confess to you, replied *Constance*, that we have this advantage over you, to give our
 Actions a greater Renown in the world than you can yours; and as the Ruine or Preservation
 of the Empire interests the whole earth, so it seems that all the world have their eyes fixed on
 the least things which contribute to it: And moreover, as in our Nation, and amongst the
 Greeks, there have been in all Ages men more capable than among yours, to rebound the great
 Actions of their Captains; so it is certain, that their Glory is spread in the world, and trans-
 mitted to posterity, with an advantage which others could not find amongst a people whose igno-
 rance or despicable of Letters hath not permitted them to render to their famous men what they
 might merit. There have been possibly a great number who might equal the most renowned of
 ours, if Fame had done them justice, whose names are scarce come to our knowledge, but amongst
 those whom the injury of time could not deprive of being known, to what degree of Glory
 do you believe might Hannibal have mounted, if he had found amongst the Carthaginians
 persons capable to have declared to men what they have not understood but by the recital
 of his enemies? His Reputation would scarce yield to the Chiefest of the *Cæsars*, and
 though a Roman as I am, I should give him the advantage of all others for Military Vir-
 tues.

“ I believe, replied *Pharamond*, that you may with justice do it, but as Military Vir-
 “ tues do not alone merit that praise which may be given to great men, those who despise
 “ all others, are worthy of a part of that oblivion in which they remain clouded by igno-
 “ rance, or by the barbarousness of their Nation: And since, to the Glory of their Arms,
 “ by which the *Romans* have rendered themselves Masters of the world, they have known
 “ how to joyn those noble Sciences by which they are rais’d so many degrees above barba-
 “ rous people; it is with too much reason that they are become Masters, and that they
 “ have extended their Rule and Domination over those men who scarce know how to
 “ discern Empire from Servitude.

Having been born (added *Constance*) among men whose warlike inclinations make them
 neglect all other things, it seems to me my Lord, that for any of those Sciences you so much
 esteem, you have no reason to envy either the Greeks or Romans, and that in this advantage
 you no less excel other Princes, than in that of your Arms. “ I am possibly inferior to them
 “ in all things, (replied *Pharamond* modestly) but it was not the fault of King *Marcomire*
 “ that I lost not a part of the rudeness of my Country by the diligence he took to educate
 “ me under persons of your own Country: and moreover I can say in favour of this Nation,
 “ that it is at present very different from other people of *Germany*, and that after the time
 “ of *Genebaud*, the first of our blood that inhabited it, and who covered the Banks of the
 “ *Rhine*, the *Meine*, and the *Salâ* with this Colony of *Franks*, of all the Princes who have
 “ succeeded him to my self, there was none who did not endeavour to polish the people by
 “ their examples, and the instructions of many strangers, whom they have called in, and
 “ stayed here with great diligence, and no less success. We are likewise wholly different
 “ in the Worship of the Gods from the other people of *Germany*, and that according
 “ to the example of the *Gauls*, from whom we draw our Original, we keep to the ancient
 “ Institutions of *Drus* and *Samethes*, we adore that God they have made us know, and re-
 “ verence that Virgin which conceived him. For Peace, our Ancestors have made very
 “ excellent Laws to keep the people in Equity, honourable inclinations, and the inno-
 “ cency of the ancient *Gauls*; and in war it self, we have made them in part apprehend
 “ the good usage of Valour, the justice of Quarrels, and the glory to pardon the van-
 “ quish’d; so that I dare assure you, that if both the one and the other were known to
 “ you, you would place no small difference between those people that obey me, and the
 “ *Sueves*, the *Cimbrians*, *Turingians*, or *Burgundians*.

I doubt not at all (replied the gallant Roman) but the worthy example of a Prince such as
 you are, may produce an effect yet more difficult; nor is there any thing which I should not
 easily hope from those admirable qualities your conversation, and the recital I have had of your Ad-
 ventures have made me discover in your person: But Sir, to return again to the discourse of your
 Adventures, which your modesty would needs interrupt, will you not permit me to oppose a lit-
 tle that opinion you have of your misfortune, and that by the knowledge you have received in

In my occasions of the sentiments of Rosamond, I make you confess your fortune is much less desperate than mine? “ Ah my Lord, (replied the King of the Franks) do not flatter me, nor make any comparison between an ordinary misfortune of which the examples are familiar, and a prodigious misery of which no age can find a Precedent, for in fine, when I might find some comfort in the judgment I might make of the intentions of Rosamond, I can hope nothing in my fortune more favourable than what I at present prove, Rosamond may esteem me, but she hates me, since she arms so many thousand men against me, and though she should cease to desire my ruine, or cease indeed to hate me, nay though I should be beloved by her, I can never hope she should render me happy: For you my Lord, you are assured of the affection of Placidia, and though she be not at present in condition to give you the last proofs, Autalpb may dye, and by his death you become the most happy man in the world; but for me, unfortunate am I, far distant from being able to hope any change in my condition by the death of a Rival, or a Husband, though Rosamond should be in the same estate with Placidia, for unless I revive the dead, I can expect nothing from my deplorable destiny.

Constance was about to reply to the discourse of Pharamond, when they saw Valerius enter the chamber, and with him a man of a very noble Air, of about twenty five years of age, and who according to all appearances was a personage of great worth: the King of the Franks looking upon him instantly with an infinite esteem, rose from his place to receive him as he judged him worthy by his noble presence: But Constance had no sooner known him, but raising himself up on his Bed, transported with an affection, which he could not restrain, and reaching him his Arm in a most passionate manner; *Oh my dear Artabure* (said he) *is it possible that I am again permitted to see you?* Artabure cast himself into the Arms of Constance, receiving his embraces without reply, so much was he surpris'd to meet with so great a person, but his visage answered for him, by those tears which in a moment cover'd it, and which as soon attracted those of the afflicted Constance.

Being thus mutually touch'd with extraordinary affection, they remained for some time without being able to speak; but in the end Artabure forcing away his astonishment, and his grief, and recoyling two or three paces, to behold the countenance of Constance more wisely than before, *Oh! our great Captain*, said he, *our Upholder and our Consolation, is it possible that the Heavens have once more granted me the sight of you?* Yes, generous friend, replied Constance, *you behold me again, and you behold me as miserable as you left me in the City of the Tectosages.* This discourse brought to the remembrance of both the one and the other, things that plung'd them into a profound grief; when Constance thought of Pharamond, who beheld the interview of these two men with infinite tenderness, and addressing himself to Artabure, Artabure, said he, *see there King Pharamond, and I believe by that name, I make you understand him as the man of the whole world most worthy our respects.*

At these words Artabure beheld the King of the Franks with that admiration which none that saw him could deny themselves, and whilst he saluted him, and Pharamond received him both as an illustrious friend of Constance, and as a man worthy by his proper merit of sufficient esteem, Constance again breaking silence, *My Lord*, (said he to Pharamond) *in the recital which Valerius hath made you of the History of my Misfortunes, he ought often to have spoke to you of Artabure, and he hath so glorious a part in all that we have done for the service of the Empire, that he cannot be entirely unknown to you.* Renown, replied the King, *hath already made me know the name of Artabure; and besides what I have understood in the discourse of Valerius, I know well that this is the valiant Artabure, which delivered Rome from the oppression of the Goths, and chased Attalus out of Italy.* *My Lord*, (replied Artabure modestly,) *I owe without doubt to that friendship Valerius may bear me, a good part of the honour you have done me by your discourse, but I cannot disown the glory, to have learn'd the mystery of War under the great Constance, and to have accompanied him in a good part of his great expeditions.* Both with me, and without me, replied Constance, *you have done Actions worthy of eternal memory; few Romans have signalized themselves like you, in an age like yours; but without extending our selves further on a discourse, which by your modesty you would oppose, relate to me my dear Artabure, what is the fortune which reunites us, and by what encounter so little expected, you have again found out the miserable Constance, in a Country where in all likelyhood you could not have searched him?*

I will satisfy you, replied Artabure, *in all things you desire of me, but the discourse I have to make, to inform you so fully as you desire, will not be so short, but it will require some hours of your attention.* And I believe, added King Pharamond, *that it cannot be of so little importance, but that the presence of witnesses may be suspected, and for this reason I will retire*

retire so soon as you shall think fit to entertain your self particularly with Constance.

Artabure answered not to these words, but by looking upon *Constance*, who perceiving it, broke silence; *I know not* (said he to *Artabure*) *of what nature that Secret is, into which you design to trust me, but if it hath nothing more important or more particular, than there can be in all things that have pass'd, in which I have any interest, I believe the King of the Franks cannot be suspected with your discourse, if he hath time and patience to lend his attention, for there have happen'd few things either to the one or the other, of which we have not had a mutual knowledge, even to the most secret circumstances. In the discourse I have to make you,* replied *Artabure*, *there are certainly some things very particular, and of such importance, to the chief persons of the world, that they ought not to be published, but since you have made the King understand the secrets of your life, that which I have to say cannot be of greater importance, and if he can find any divertisement in the recital of those things I am to recount, I shall give it him with infinite satisfaction, and with a confidence which may oblige me to discover to him greater things.*

Pharamond defended himself for some time against this civility of *Artabure*, but *Constance* testified in such sort the desire he had to hearken to the discourse of *Artabure* in his presence, that in the end he contented to his will, moved by the interest he took in all things that concern'd him, either in his own person, or that of his friends; but he was pleas'd first that *Artabure* should go and repose himself in the apartment which was prepar'd for him, the nearest possible to that of *Constance*, where he remained till such time as Dinner was serv'd. *Constance*, *Pharamond*, and *Artabure* dined together without any other company, and after the repast, the King having testified that he would entertain himself particularly with *Constance* and *Artabure*, gave necessary orders not to be interrupted; Soon after which, *Artabure* being seated near *Constance's* Bed-side, began to speak in this manner.

The History of the Emperour Honorius, of Belamira, and of Artabure.

ALL the world beheld as a Prodigy the stupidity of *Honorius* in the ruine of his Country, and though there was always known to have been more sweetness, or rather more fear in his disposition, than resolution and vigour, and that his weakness was look'd upon with pity, by reason of the strange power he had permitted the presumptuous *Stilicon*, to usurp over the Empire, and over his own disposition; yet however, in some occasions he had forced himself to testify that he wanted neither courage nor knowledge, necessary for the Government of the Estate, and after that, by the death of that puissant Favourite, he seem'd to have thrown off the yoke which he had so many years lived under, he made some appearances of a courage to shine forth, which had not before been observ'd in him, and gave the people some hope that he would render himself capable to govern them himself, without returning them into a servitude, from whence they were so lately releas'd: But in these deplorable calamities of *Italy*, which have touch'd with pity the most cruel enemies of the *Roman* name, and which might inflame to its defence the most faint-hearted resolution, he hath appear'd such to the eyes of all the world, that they could not, nor ought not attribute his forgetfulness of his Country, nor what he did himself, to his natural weakness only, nor hinder themselves from believing that his knowledge was clouded, and his very reason troubled, by some passion or snare, which rendred him incapable to act, or so much as think of succouring infortunate *Italy*, which he miserably abandon'd to *Barbarian* cruelty. We have all felt the deplorable effects, and you particularly, generous *Constance*, by that cruel loss which hath made you so long sigh, and it is just that you understand the extraordinary cause, as you will without doubt by my discourse.

After the death of *Stilicon*, those which had groan'd under the burden of his unjust authority, began to take breath, and there was great hopes of a change in affairs, as in all likelihood there would be in the condition of many illustrious Personages, and in the Government of the Empire. The Emperour himself as if he were escap'd out of Fetters, after he had so long time worn them, look'd upon himself with joy in a different condition, and made others by his example believe, that the face of things would have a more pleasing aspect. But by the misfortune of the Empire, all those people which were arm'd

arm'd against its repose, invaded its Provinces on all sides, and by the particular misfortune of *Rome* and *Italy*, the great *Constance* march'd to the assistance of the *Gauls*, against *Constantine*, and by a misfortune which he could not foresee, going to defend distant Provinces, abandon'd his Country in a time when by his presence he might without doubt have diverted its ruine, and those terrible miseries to which a little after it was so unhappily expos'd: I accompanied him in this voyage, and therefore I cannot relate to you, the chief things I have to recount you, but only by the recital after made me, with sufficient truth and exactness.

After his departure, and that of the most valiant Captains, who with their Troops were sent into those Provinces whither necessity call'd them, the Emperour remain'd in great tranquillity at *Rome*, and by the love he naturally had for repose, endeavour'd to remove from his Memory all things which might disturb his quiet, seeking occasions to divertise himself with Ladies (whom his inclinations made him always love) in Walks, in publick shews, and in all other things which might yield Pleasure and Recreation. The Princess *Placidia* remain'd at *Rome* with him, and with her the charming Princess *Theodolinda*, Daughter to the King of the *Huns*, and Sister to the famous *Balamir*, whose Reputation Renown hath so largely publish'd: The Fair *Cleomira*, Princess of the *Tongres*, and many other Roman Ladies considerable both for their Birth and Virtue. The most valiant among the Romans were departed to the Provinces whither their warlike occasions severally call'd them, but there remain'd a sufficient number with *Honorius* to compose a Court worthy of an Occidental Emperour: and amongst these *Heraclian*, though with little merit, shone in the first degree of favour; he had rais'd himself to what he possess'd by ways which would have been odious to many others, and though in the Death he gave *Stilicon*, he had possibly done something unworthy of a great Courage, and by that of his Lady dishonour'd himself among vertuous personages, he was however so proud of the service he had done the Emperour, by delivering him from the Tyranny of a too potent Favourite, that he believed by this Action he merited all things, and thought nothing above his ambition.

The event made it afterwards appear, that he was not at all deceiv'd in his hopes, and the Emperour after having testified for some few days, sufficient grief for the misfortune of *Stilicon*, and his House, to perswade the *Romans* that he had not given such cruel Orders as had been executed, made it in the end be thought that the Execution had not displeas'd him, when preferring him before many personages illustrious both for their Birth and Services, he gave *Heraclian* the Government of *Africa*. In effect, the Dignity of such a Government appear'd to all the World so little proportionable to the merit and former fortune of *Heraclian*, that many persons found sufficient reasons highly to condemn the Conduct of the Emperour, but it was not presently that he was honoured with this Charge, there happening things which before I ought to recount in their order.

The Emperour in this time often visited the Princess *Theodolinda*, and as she was a Princess for Beauty and merit so extraordinary that few in the World could equal her, many persons there were that believ'd the Emperour had a great inclination for her. I cannot doubt but that he had an inclination to love her, and that if some other things had not fall'n out, he had engag'd himself more firmly. One day having sent to enquire the estate of her health, and whether he might without inconveniency visit her, Word was return'd, that she was mounted an hour before into her Chariot, and gone out of the Gates of *Rome*, and as it was believ'd, towards the fair Gardens of *Trajan*, which are seated upon the Banks of the *Tibur*, and which since the time of the Emperour whose name they bear, many of his Successors, and particularly the Emperour *Theodosius*, had diligently endeavour'd to embellish with all those Ornaments Art can add to Nature.

The Emperour having understood that *Theodolinda* was gone thither, resolv'd with the Princesses *Placidia* and *Cleomira*, with whom he at present was, to find her, and with her to divertise himself in those Walks: The Emperour made use of the Chariot of *Placidia*, with her went likewise *Cleomira*, and some other Roman Ladies, and in many others followed a great number of persons both of the one and the other Sex: *Heraclian* who at that time never absented himself from the Emperour, now accompanied him, and with him *Flavian*, *Maximus*, *Anaxilla*, *Pontianus*, and many others, among whom might be particularly consider'd the young *Artius*, a Youth of about eighteen years of age, born of an illustrious Family among the *Romans*, and who in those tender-years had already given marvellous hopes of his Courage, Spirit and Vertue.

Arriving at the Gates of the Gardens they found the Chariots of *Theodolinda*, and not doubting longer but she was there, this illustrious Company allighted, entred the Gardens,
and

and in search of the Princess of the *Huns* began to walk in the fair Alleys. After they had visited a part of them, they saw coming towards them the Princess whom they sought, and when she was join'd to the Company, the Emperour gave her his hand, and walk'd a long time with her, and the Princess *Flondra*: but afterwards the two Princesses giving him to understand that they had something of secrecy to converse of he left them, and causing *Heraclian* to approach, began to entertain him, and to walk with him towards another side leaning upon his shoulder.

As *Heraclian* was a man of Spirit, and of a humour so much the more pleasing when he pleas'd, being us'd to flattery: the things he spoke to the Emperour divertis'd him in such manner, that he thought no longer of rejoyning with the Company, but had insensibly absent himself a great space from them, and enter'd into one of the most pleasant and shady woods in the world, which was adjoining to the great wall: The beauty of the wood being at present in its rarest season, attracted him more and more, and made him in the end resolve to visit the most solitary and retir'd places of it. The loss of his Train which remain'd not with the Ladies, observing the pleasure he took to entertain himself with *Heraclian*, followed at a distance, and stopt when they saw him stop, leaving him an entire liberty to speak without fear of being understood or over-heard.

Walking in this manner, he arriv'd at the most retir'd and least frequented part of the Wood, and in a place where one of the great Channels which water the Garden dischargeth it self with a murmuring noise into the *Tibur*, which with its silver streams washeth the utmost parts of the Wood: From this Stand the Emperour fix'd his eyes for some time on the River: till by chance casting them aside, he beheld not far distant, a woman laid down in a most verdant plat, at the foot of a great Tree, which extended its shady branches over the River, She was rested on her side, her Visage turn'd towards those streams, and her head leaning in part against the Tree, and in part on one of her hands. whilst the other negligently extended upon the grass, appear'd to the eyes of the Emperour, and of *Heraclian*, of so resplendent a whiteness, that they were astonish'd. I know not whether it was a hand so extraordinarily white, that gave the Emperour sufficient Curiosity to approach nearer to that person, whose simple habits, and all other appearances might make him judge but of a mean fortune. He might advance towards her without being seen, because she had her back turn'd towards him, and he might likewise approach her without being heard, and that so much the easier, because he trod on the grass, and the water falling from the *Tibur* made sufficient noise to hinder any thing from being heard, which he made by walking, yet it was not so great as to hinder him when he drew near this Woman, from hearing some sighs, and some complaining words, which issued from her lips, and from her breast, and this was that which yet touch'd him with a greater Curiosity for this adventure, but he was more engag'd by the sound of a Voice which had something in it so Charming, that from the outward Organs of his Ears it in a moment pass'd to his heart.

Honorius was seiz'd with so extraordinary an Affection, that he no longer needed the Solicitation of *Heraclian*, to advance to a place from whence he might distinctly hear the words which a violent passion made this afflicted person from time to time pronounce. It seem'd likewise by their mournful accent that they were accompanied with some Tears, and this thought adjoining pity to the Curiosity of the Emperour, made him redouble his attention, *Proud Tibur*, said this desolate person, *Thou River proud with the Spoils of so many Nations, can it be, that amongst all those miserable persons thou hast drawn into thy servitude, thou never bebeldest any so unfortunate as she who this day miserably groans upon thy Banks, or that the miseries of so many Slaves, which on thy Rives have followed the vanquishers Chariots, should have nothing in them comparable to those that persecute me? Yes it may be, since so it hath pleas'd my cruel Destinies, and this Fortune which hath rendred thee famous by the ruine of so many people, will likewise that I increase thy Waves by these Tears I give thee.* *Oh my Eyes*, added she a little after, *Pour out at length the source of a River of Tears, which no length of time ought to stop, and since you are accus'd for a part of my misfortunes, serve no longer to any other use but to deplore them to the last moment of my Life, for you cannot let me behold the Heavens without accusing them of some rigour, at the remembrance of those sad Calamities to which our miserable Fortune is expos'd: Nor turn your looks to Earth, but to see Objectis much different from what you have lamented, and renew by the sight of all such as may be presented to you, the remembrance of that which you have miserably lost, and of the deplorable estate of my Condition.*

This afflicted person might possibly have said more, mov'd by the violence of a grief, which troubled her reason, making her express her thoughts by words, and endeavouring by a discourse, which sobbs and sighs every moment interrupted, to make room for a

part of what she felt within. if while the Emperour was the most fixed to the attention of these doleful and mournful plaints, another woman whom he had not seen, but who had discovered him from a place a little farther distant, had not risen up and advanced towards her that thus lamented, to advertise her of the presence of the Emperour. This advice made her raise her self up with no small haste, and by this change of posture, having made the Emperour observe the beauty of her person, which was admirable, she strongly increas'd the desire he had to see her face; I believe however, that he had been depriv'd of that satisfaction, if she could have found the means to have avoided his sight, but as with her back towards him, she could not advance but very few paces, either towards the River, or towards the Channel, though she had a design to retire her self from that place, and that she feared to displease the Emperour, who was known by her companion, she was constrain'd to turn towards him, and permit him to see her face against her will. But O Gods! what sight was that? Or by what discourse can I express it to you? That of a Lightning which with surprisal smites our eyes, or at least that of the most beautiful Rayes of the Sun, when dissipating the Clouds, it makes the day serene and fair, might be compared to it, but hath nothing so marvellous. *Honorius* was dazled, and *Heracian* remain'd immoveable through an excess of astonishment; it may with truth be said, that nothing could appear to any eye, capable to transport the Spirit with a more just admiration, nor wound the Soul with a blow more powerful, and less foreseen. The eyes of this admirable person, though swollen with tears, in the midst of a charming sweetness, which accompanied all their motions, and an amiable languishment, which rendred them yet more fair, darted a fire which made them no less resplendent than they were sweet, or languishing. The whiteness of her complexion sullies and darkens all that Nature ever made most like to Snow, but it is a whiteness relieved in those places where it ought to be with the most beautiful Carnation in the world; that of her mouth seems to have something supernatural, in that little space it covers; but as her form is no less admirable than her colour, and the whiteness and order of her teeth accompany answerably all her other beauties; in whatever condition she appears, there is no action nor no motion but what is charming. Her face is but very little, but well proportion'd to the delicateness of her stature, and adorned with a great quantity of fair locks, but fair to a perfection of beauty, and such as they should without doubt be to agree with the colour of her eyes; her neck, her hands, and all her person, have beauties which merit a description I am not capable to make, and her whole composition is doubtless such, that Nature never formed any thing more beautiful, though our Age be replenish'd with many beauties truly admirable.

The Emperour stood amazed, or rather wholly lost at a sight so little expected, and turning towards *Heracian*, on whose shoulder he lean'd, *Ab Heracian*, said he, *What is that I see?* *Heracian* had without doubt answered him to any other question, but at this he was no less astonish'd than the Emperour, having his mind entirely fixed on the contemplation of this fair object, and by his silence and immobility, giving the Emperour leave to give himself with liberty to those impetuous thoughts that assaulted his spirit, this charming, or rather this divine unknown Lady, not daring to retire incivilly from before the Emperour, whom her companion had made known to her, and being as unwilling to have any communication with the world which she fled from, held for some time her eyes fix'd upon the earth, with a countenance which denoted her irresolution, or rather her perplexity; but in the end being determin'd what to do, having saluted the Emperour with a reverence full of submission was about to pass by him, when he moving some paces towards the place whither she directed hers, and forcing that silence which his astonishment had hitherto made him keep, *Stop I pray you*, said he, *and fly not from one whom nothing should make you fly from, and whom nothing can comfort for your departure, if you make it with so much haste. This is not,* (continued he, seeing her stop) *by the authority which my dignity may give me, that I oppose your retreat; I am already sufficiently convinced, that all dignities lose their right before you, but in that estate in which you appear to my eyes, it is just that I inform my self, whether you are not rather something Celestial than a Mortal person; in other Nations and in another Religion, than that which we profess, they would be ready to erect you Altars; nor can all the respect I have for Heaven but difficultly perswade me that you be born amongst men. However, if you be as appearances make we judge, and that you have made any stay in the Lands of our Empire, what rampart or what cloud could conceal this prodigious beauty from the knowledge of men?*

Honorius spoke in this manner in the astonishment which possessed him, or rather in that passion which already ruled over all his Soul, when this beautiful and charming unknown

known Lady, lifting up for a moment her looks upon the earth (whereon she had hitherto held them fixed) to behold the countenance of the Emperour, or rather darting a lightning into the eyes and into the soul of *Honorius*, which inflam'd his very vitals, open'd her mouth with a behaviour which might make the Graces envious; *Neither do I flye, said she, from an Emperour full of Justice and Goodness, nor am I born with any advantage over other mortal persons, my misfortunes may possibly cause some difference, a sad,* (added she with a sigh) *a sad and deplorable difference.*

She stopp'd at these words, either out of a pressing effect out of her grief, or out of a design she had not to discover her self further. But the Emperour whose soul was naturally sweet and tender, and already touch'd in its most sensible part, could not observe her action, nor observe those tears which trickled down her fair cheeks, without being wounded with a new arrow, and receiving an assault against which he had not Forces powerful enough to defend himself. Nor could dissemble it, but beholding this marvellous person with those eyes which might make her easily perceive a part of what he felt in his Soul; *I know not, said he, of what nature those misfortunes are which you deplore, but if they be capable of any remedy, or if this remedy may be found in the power of the Occidental Emperour, you ought to expect a happy change of your fortune, and believe that I cannot draw from my own any advantage more dear or more agreeable; and in that confidence you may have of the word of Honorius, you may let him understand what is your Name, what is your Country, and what are those misfortunes, and if he be so unhappy as to be unable to bring any comfort, at least you may be assured, that the knowledge he shall receive, shall never be cause of any displeasure to you.*

The admirable unknown person, kept silence a short while after the Emperour had spoken these words, but in the end breaking it with a behaviour full of sweetness and respect, *I know well, said she, that from the Son of the great Theodosius, and from an Emperour whose virtue and piety is publish'd to the whole earth, miserable persons like my self, cannot but expect protection and assistance; nor is it perhaps a new thing for our house to implore it from those of your Blood; but my Lord, my misfortunes are such, that no humane assistance can help or yield comfort to them, and though a powerful Emperour may restore a ruined Family to its ancient Glory, yet he cannot restore life to the dead, nor comfort me for a loss which I ought to lament to the last minute of my life. My name is Bellamira, my Country is Greece, my Birth is sufficiently noble, but by the cruelty of the Barbarians, who destroyed my native Soil, my unfortunate Parents perished with all their Goods, and of a most illustrious Family there scarce remains one unfortunate person in the world to deplore so many lost.*

While she spoke in this manner, the Emperour hearkened to her discourse with a fixation of spirit, that might easily have made *Heraclian* observe that passion to which he had wholly abandon'd himself, if *Heraclian* himself, by a destiny equal to that of his Sovereign; had not been already expos'd to sufferings like to his, or had not as well as he, receiv'd in the middle of his heart the fair image of *Bellamira*. Both the one and the other expected from her lips a farther knowledge of her fortune, and in all likelyhood she had continued to speak, if the Emperour notwithstanding the attention he gave to her discourse, had not observ'd coming towards that place the Princesses *Placidia*, *Theodolinda*, and *Cleomira*, and with them the fair company which he had quitted some time before. Never had the presence of these fair and illustrious personages been other than extremely acceptable to him, but at this time it displeas'd and sensibly afflicted him; that violent passion to which he had already submitted himself, not permitting him to desire witnesses of the conversation in which he was employ'd. He saw however, he could not avoid it if he continued it, and after he had sigh'd for grief, so loud as to be heard by *Bellamira*, *As I cannot judge,* (said he to her) *that you would make your self known to this great number of persons which approach us, I go to divert the injury which you may receive, and I leave Heraclian with you, to understand more particularly the estate of your fortune, and the means I may have to endeavour your relief or comfort.* And at these words, after having commanded *Heraclian* in his ear, not to forsake her without knowing the place of her retreat, he departed from her wholly astonish'd, and advanced (almost without knowing what he did) towards the fair company which approach'd. He endeavour'd as much as possible to dissemble what he felt, and to conceal the change of his Soul from persons so highly intelligent; but they easily observ'd the trouble which appeared in his countenance, though they were ignorant of the cause, and all the time they were together, it prov'd impossible to recover him into his former serenity and good humour.

In the mean time *Heraclian* remained with *Bellamira* both by the command of the Emperour, and by his inclination, which as strongly fixed him; and so soon as the Emperour

was a little distant, approaching her with a behaviour that betrayed his want of confidence, and regarding her with eyes full of a fire which denoted that already kindled in his Soul; *Divine Bellamira*, said he, *You have heard the Orders I have received from the Emperour, and you see a man destin'd to your Service, both by his Prince, and possibly by another power not inferiour to his: To obey the Emperour, I would understand from your mouth if you please, in what his authority may be capable to yield comfort to your grief; and to obey another Master, you will permit me to go a little beyond the Orders I have receiv'd, and to offer you not the power of an Occidental Emperour, but the Service of a man who is not possibly despisable. It is not always the most exalted power which contributes to our happiness, and a greatness so bright and resplendent as that of the Emperour of the Romans, is often suffeeted, and almost always under a cloud. I shall know to discharge your trust, if you have any in me, in whatever manner you shall desire; I shall know how to conceal what you would have kept secret, or which possibly you would not depose in the bosom of a man expos'd to the sight of the whole world.*

Heraclian, whose passion (acting in this manner in a Soul naturally unfaithful) had already made him betray his Matter, had without doubt been induc'd to say more through that instigation which made him speak, if this charming person had amused her self to hearken patiently to his discourse: but whether she had already conceived disdain for a man so little faithful to his Sovereign; or that she had resolv'd not to discover her self farther, and not to stay longer in a place where she was expos'd to sight more than she had a design to be, she lent him little attention, and breaking silence before he had done speaking; "If I had any other thing (said she) to make the Emperour understand than what I have my self told him, I would tell it you to report it to him, and not to conceal it, not knowing any reason should oblige me to have more confidence in his Servants than in himself: But I neither have any other thing to discover of a Fortune too obscure to merit his knowledge, nor other favour to demand, than that of leaving me a free and peaceable retreat in that Solitude I seek, and to which you may be pleas'd to permit me to retire.

Concluding these words, after she had very civilly saluted *Heraclian*, but with infinite coldness, she parted from the place where she was, and went towards one of the Gates of the Garden, with so much haste, that *Heraclian*, who had order from the Emperour not to leave her without knowing the place of her retreat, but who was much less solicted by the Emperour, than by his passion, found some difficulty to execute his design, not daring to run violently after those women for fear of affrighting them, especially since the Emperour and all his fair company were still in the Garden; he made his way however through the Trees with so much speed, that he saw them go out of the Garden by a little Gate, by which there was an entrance into that of a Roman Knight named *Saturninus*, who had a very fair House there adjacent; and he acted so well in the end, by the diligence he took the rest of the day, that he understood this charming person had no other retreat than that House of *Saturninus*, which is seated upon the Banks of *Tibur*, and whose Gardens open into those of *Trajan*; that she was Kinswoman to the wife of *Saturninus*, who was a Grecian, whom he had brought to *Rome*, having married her in *Greece*, during the first wars with the *Goths*; and that by reason of the absence of *Saturninus*, who had for some time been from *Rome*, the fair stranger remained with her Kinswoman at that House, out of the City, and distant from the sight and trouble of the world, which she willingly fled.

He came that same night to make this report to the Emperour, and he found him so chang'd from what he had been some days before, that so strange an alteration might have begot some pity in him, if his own passion had not wholly employed his thoughts: In effect, the soul of *Honorius* was by this sole view wounded with an impressiion so deep, that scarce any heart the most susceptible of Love had been so sensibly touch'd in entire years; for indeed as his Spirit was naturally sweet, amorous impressiions are in it formed with much more facility than in any other. So soon as he saw *Heraclian*, he took him apart, and having led him into a Closet, where he shut himself alone with him, he hearkened with much impatience, and no less disturbance, to what he had to tell him concerning *Bellamira*. *Heraclian* easily observ'd in his visage, and in all his action, the violence of that passion which tormented him; but he knew it yet better, when after he had done speaking, and made the Emperour understand, that it was in the house of *Saturninus* that she at present sojourned, the Emperour having thanked him in an extraordinary manner, and beholding him with an aspect wholly passionate; *Heraclian*, said he, *I am scarce freed from one slavery but I am fallen into another; but as you delivered me from the first, if you comfort me in this, as I hope you will, there is no dignity nor no recompence which you may not assure to. I confess to you, that I love that admirable stranger, or rather that I dye for love of her, and that if I find*

not some comfort in this passion, my condition will be the most unhappy in the world, for it is certain I have suffered more in these few hours than I have done in all the years of my life; and that the image of this Bellamira, whose name we scarcely know, is fix'd to my remembrance with so much force, that in all likelyhood neither time nor reason will be able to banish it thence.

He added to these words many other, which were patiently hearken'd to, and when he had done speaking, *Heraclian* broke silence with a dissembling countenance, My Sovereign, said he, Your Sacred Majesty need not doubt but that I am entirely devoted to you, and that in this occasion as well as in all others which have given me the means to testify my fidelity to you, I shall expose all endeavours to your satisfaction and repose. You must see Bellamira, and she must needs be very terrible if she returns not her affection to an Emperor so potent by his Dignity, and so amiable for his person. I ought however to advertise you my Lord, that by what I can judge by the little entertainment I have had with Bellamira, she is a Lady, who either by her inclination, or some reason commanding over her Spirit, hates the society of the world, and seeks only retirement; and there is little appearance that a person who cannot suffer the sight and conversation of a particular man, will expose her self to the great clamour which the affections of an Emperor will make in the world, if we serve not our selves with some stratagem to engage her to suffer it, or if you constrain her not by your authority.

Ah! For my Authority, replied the Emperor, it is not that in such affairs as these I would employ it, and it shall never be cast as a reproach on the Son of Theodosius, that he made use of it against a woman, let us try other ways if we can find them, for that we must not think of. I have been of the same judgment, replied *Heraclian*, but I find my self much troubled to think of any means to make this Lady endure your love without affrighting her; for as she is a Stranger, and perhaps hath no occasion to stay her at Rome, I fear lest we lose her if we make any noise, or if we do not deceive her by some appearance advantageous to her.

At these words he stopt, remaining a short while without speaking, and in the posture of a person who fought with difficulty in his mind those inventions necessary for his design, and in the end breaking silence; "I know not, said he, if the means I have thought on may please your Majesty, but I cannot find one better to make Bellamira endure your approaches: as I have resolv'd to sacrifice my self entirely to your satisfaction, if you think it fitting, I will feign to be enamour'd of Bellamira, and that I would espouse her; and as I believe her Fortune is very mean, and that it will be possibly a great advantage for her to espouse a man established as I am by your goodness, I do not only believe that she will hearken to us, but in feigning to favour me in this design, and being willing to render her happy by marrying her to a man whom you can raise as high as you please, you may have a free access to her, and you may bestow on me what personage you please, whom I shall accept without reluctance, if you draw thence any satisfaction.

Heraclian spoke in this manner, and to these words he added many like, to persuade the Emperor of the sincere intention he had to serve him; and you may be pleas'd to hear how he made use of this stratagem, and in what manner he abused the easiness of a spirit, the sweetness of which he was well acquainted with. His first design was to be serviceable to his own passion, in feigning to serve that of the Emperor, and to gain to himself the affections of Bellamira, and that at his expences for whom he made show to act. In sum, he was in hopes to receive from the liberality of the Emperor such Riches and Dignities as might dazzle the eyes of Bellamira; not doubting but that to make her sensible by this hope he would raise him to a higher degree than that to which he was already mounted. And as by the disdain which Bellamira expressed at his first discourse, he doubted not but in the end she might advertise the Emperor, and acquaint him with the little fidelity he us'd towards him; he by this device cancell'd all he might fear on that side, imagining, and with much probability, that the Emperor would receive all he should understand of his love by the report of Bellamira, for the effects of a feigned passion which he practis'd for his service.

Any other but the Emperor would have suspected the proposition of *Heraclian*, but the weak *Honorius* penetrated not into his malice, and instead of distrusting him, he lookt upon *Heraclian* as a man faithful and affectionate to his interests, and made him promises so great and magnificent, that he had reason to hope all things, both in his Love, and in his Ambition. The greatest difficulty the Emperor thought of, was the danger to which *Heraclian* expos'd himself, of becoming truly amorous, whilst he feign'd to be so;

And in this case said the Emperour to him, *I shall find my self much troubled, not believing that I can ever have the power to give you Bellamira, though I pretend apparently to a design to make you espouse her.* *Heraclian*, notwithstanding all his confidence and assurance, blush'd sufficiently at this Discourse, to have begot in the Emperour some suspicion, if he had at that time cast his eyes on his Countenance: but having at that present fix'd them other where, he minded not his blushes, and *Heraclian* breaking silence with a sigh, *I confess to you*, said he, *that the Charms of Bellamira are powerful, but the Fidelity I have for my Prince is capable of a proof much more difficult, and if I were well known to him, he would suspect me rather of Ambition than any other passion.* *I will do for your Ambition*, replied the Emperour, *whatever you shall do for my Love, and if I am happy in my Love, you shall have subject sufficient to be satisfied in your Ambition.* They had some farther discourse together, and having resolved what they ought to do, as much as the passion both of the one and the other would permit, they left the Closet, and the Emperour soon after went to his repose, but with the Image of *Bellamira* so engraven in his memory, that for the whole night it would scarce permit him one moment of sleep.

The morrow after having publickly declar'd at his rising, that he had found the Gardens of *Trajan* so beautiful, that he was resolv'd to walk there often, he went after Dinner, followed only by *Heraclian*, and those persons whom the necessity of their Charges made continual Attendants on his person, believing that from hence he might enter into that of *Saturninus*, by the Door which *Heraclian* had taken notice of, without making this visit observ'd as it might have been, had he gone in another manner.

He walked some time with only *Heraclian*, the rest keeping at a distance out of respect, and he visited a good part of that Garden, out of hopes he had to encounter once more what he sought: but when he had run over almost all, without seeing any thing appear, he directed his pace towards the Garden of *Saturninus*, causing *Heraclian* to guide him to the little Door. I have understood from himself, that all his Dignity could not hinder him from trembling at the opening of it, either out of fear to displease the person he lov'd, or possibly out of fear not to meet with her. They who open'd the Door retir'd with respect to soon as they saw the Emperour, and scarce was he entred, but at the end of the Alley, which butt'd against the Portal, he saw appear four or five Women, among whom he doubted not but to find her whom he sought: She was truly there with the Wife of *Saturninus*, and though the distance was great, the Splendor of that admirable beauty might strike at greater distance the eyes of a man who before carried its Image in his breast: He easily observ'd that the sight of him had troubled them, and he doubted not but *Bellamira* had retir'd if she could conveniently have done it, in a place wholly discover'd, and where she could not make a step without being observ'd.

At the name of the Emperour, which the Servants pronounc'd, and at the sight of a Train, which though much less than ordinary, was yet much different from that of another person, the Wife of *Saturninus* advanc'd some paces before the others to receive him: and *Honorius* having saluted her with a noble sweetness and civility, told her, *That having understand in the Gardens of Trajan, that there were in hers Beauties very considerable, he had had the Curiosity to enter, and walk there for some time.* And from these first words, taking occasion to enter into some conversation with her: *Not to lye to you*, (said he very low, but with a handsome kind of confidence) *We have seen yesterday very near this place a part of the Beauties which are in your Garden, and if they caus'd in me admiration, they have created so much love in Heraclian, that he would not leave me in repose till he oblig'd me again to see them, either to make me consent to the advantage he gives them over all that can be most fair in the world, or to oblige me to do him some good Office, if I could find any opportunity.*

The Wife of *Saturninus* hearken'd to this discourse of *Honorius* with great astonishment: but before she could reply, the Emperour having made a sign to *Heraclian* to come to her, approach'd *Bellamira*, who remain'd at some paces distant, with a Countenance which sufficiently denoted the little love she had for that Company: However she receiv'd him like a person not ignorant of the Courtship of the World; and the Emperour accosting her with a respect more proportionate to the *Idea* he had conceiv'd of her Merit, than to the outward appearance of her Fortune, *I know not*, (said he, very low, and in a manner which oblig'd all that could understand him to retire,) *whether you will pardon what I this day do in coming to seek you, contrary to your intention, but I conceiv'd so much grief for the refusal you made me of serving you with my Fortune for the repair of yours, that I could not hinder my self from coming to complain to you, and to demand of you some satisfaction.* *I should not have made these offers to a person who perhaps by her Merit is above all that we can offer, if I had not understood from your own mouth that you were unfortunate, and that that changling Goddess, who ought*

to have submitted her Empire to yours, hath not respectied you. Treat me to day more favourably than yesterday, if you will that I should comfort myself for that trouble, and leave me not in those thoughts which now possess me, that you have not disdain'd those offers, but out of opposition to hints that made them.

In this manner spoke the Emperour, with a Countenance which yet spoke more than his Tongue, and *Bellamira* who hearkened to him with so much the more trouble, because she was oblig'd out of a respect to hearken to him, breaking silence without lifting up her eyes from the Earth, where she had fix'd them: "My Lord, said she, Your goodnesse found me, and one miserable like my self who is so little worthy of the pains you take to explain them.— You are too worthy, (*replied the Emperour, without permitting her to say further,*) both of all that I can do, and of all that I can imagine, but I am too unhappy, not to find some occasion to please you: for in any opportunity to serve you, I would purchase it without doubt at the price of what I hold most dear, and next to what I have given you, neither the Empire, nor my Life it self can be very considerable. " Astonish not your self, (*continued he, observing some trouble in her Countenance,*) at this last effect of your beauty, I doubt not at all, but it is sufficiently extraordinary to gain Slaves in every place, and in understanding that a *Roman* Emperour is captivated in your Fetters, you understand nothing but what you might well have expected, if you have believ'd that I have seen you, or that I am not insensible.

Honorius accompanied these words with many sighs, and with a behaviour so passionate, that *Bellamira* could not doubt their truth: besides she had so much reason to be perswaded of the power of her beauty, that there needed no great witness of the effects it could produce. She receiv'd these last words without any other disorder than what the first had caus'd, and beholding the Emperour with a discontented aspect, but however with eyes which pierced his heart with new wounds, My Lord, said she, I am reduc'd by my fortune to a necessity to hearken to what you shall please to make me hear, and though my grief and my misfortunes should be augmented by your discourse, I am not in a condition to desire a forbearance. Had I believed, replied the Emperour, that the knowledge of my Love could cause any grief in you, I had conceal'd it till my death, and I should be the most afflicted of all men, if you can imagine that it was towards you, I would abuse my Dignity, and make use of the advantages it might give me, to make you suffer an affection not pleasing to you. No Divine *Bellamira*, do not this injury to a Prince, who by all the actions of his life will never oblige you to it, but in permitting me to assail your heart by Love and Services: Receive the word which I give you, never to employ other Arms.

"You may make use of them, replied *Bellamira*, in some enterprize more worthy of you, and of which the success may prove more answerable: for though my heart is not worth the pains you will take to assault it, most certain it is, you will all your life in vain combat it. "This is most cruelly to foretel me my misery, (*replied Honorius, in a very sad tone,*) but when the fear you give me, should turn into an entire certainty in my spirit, it would work nothing to my recovery, for my Soul is in such sort abandon'd to the Love I bear you, that I cannot hope an end of it, but only in Death. "I should be much griev'd, replied the fair Stranger, if what you say should be true: for as I am by all sorts of reasons bound to respect you, it cannot be without much grief that I see my self all the days of my life, incapable to answer your Affection. "The grief you have, replied the Emperour, may change your inclinations, and it is from that, rather than from your inclinations that I hope a better fortune than you pronounce me.

He spoke likewise many other words, which I omit to abridge the recital: but though *Bellamira* answered him with infinite respect, yet she gave him no occasion to conceive the least Hopes, but though his Hopes diminish'd, his Love was doubly augmented by this second sight, and he return'd from the Gardens of *Saturninus*, possibly as much lost as ever man was. He return'd some days after in the same manner, and besides this visit gave her many others; without being able to know whether all the proofs of his Love produc'd any effect over the spirit of *Bellamira*. This appear'd so much more strange to those who had any knowledge of it, as it is certain that few other persons would have treated in this manner, and that besides the dignity of *Honorius* who saw nothing greater than himself in the world, he being young, fair, of a well-compos'd person, of a spirit sweet, gallant and pleasing, liberal and generous, he was capable to make himself belov'd by all persons who had not fought in him Constancy of Spirit, Grandeur of Courage, and those other qualities which compose great men.

In the mean time he was chang'd in such sort by this Passion, enemy to his repose, that the Princess *Placidia* and all the Court perceiv'd it with no small grief, and though none but

Heraclian knew his secret, they search'd so far into the cause of his change, that notwithstanding the diligence he took to conceal it, it was known by many persons. Being naturally liberal, he sent many magnificent presents to the house of *Saturninus*, but though the Wife of *Saturninus* receiv'd them from the hand of *Heraclian* who was still charg'd with them, she made him in the end know that *Bellamira* accepted them with indignation, and that she durst no longer offer them. *Honorius* was much afflicted at it, but he knew by the trial he had at the beginning made, what was the Soul of *Bellamira* who in an estate apparently infortunate, testified a disdain for things which generally enslave the very minds of other persons. The little esteem she made of them, and other marks of Grandeur which he saw in her carriage and in her person, made him sometimes believe that she was of a degree above what she would persuade him, and though he had often heard say that the Wife of *Saturninus* was of an illustrious blood, and that he could not understand any other of *Bellamira* than that she was her near Kinswoman, and that the misfortunes of her House had oblig'd her to retire to her, he difficultly could represent to himself, but that she was some other person than she appear'd.

But if the love of *Honorius* was ill acknowledged by this insensible person, that of *Heraclian* was receiv'd with so much disdain, that any other patience but his had been overcome, and though at the beginning he acted with her, as with a person whose fortunes he might make, and believ'd to dazzle her with the hopes of his Marriage, he had been so humbled by the little respect she had to his propositions, that he was constrain'd to change his proceeding towards her, and to look upon her as if she had been in the most resplendent and exalted fortune. Yet with this he was happy, that he could speak to her under pretence of rendering service to the Emperour, without the Emperours being able to conceive any pretence, and to tell her what he thought, without fearing the knowledge the Emperour might receive of it: Not but that *Bellamira* when he was importunate, had often threaten'd him to tell the Emperour, and that in the end seeing him not repuls'd by those threats she was persuad'd to it, by the hopes she had to defeat the persecutions of a man whom she neither lov'd nor esteem'd: But it was for this reason that this adventure seem'd strange to her, and that having pray'd the Emperour to deliver her from the importunity she receiv'd by the Love of *Heraclian*, and to content himself that she suffer'd his out of the respect she ought him, without exposing her to the persecutions of a man so little faithful to him. The Emperour receiving her discourse with a sigh, *See*, said he, *what is the misery of my condition, and pardon those ways which I am constrain'd to make use of to combat an insensible heart: I could suffer no more than you the testimonies of the Love of Heraclian, if they were true, or if he were not engag'd to this fiction to serve me, out of the fear we have lest the splendour of my greatness and dignity should give you some Suspicion. How my Lord,* (replied *Bellamira*, looking on him somewhat angrily) *is the love of Heraclian then a feign'd agreement between him and you, to render the greatness of Honorius more supportable to the meanness of Bellamira? There is nothing great in Honorius in comparison of Bellamira* (replied the Emperour,) *nor any thing to be thought mean in Bellamira, with a man who is bound to adore her to his death: But it is certain that it is to serve me, Heraclian hath testified a love to you, for fear lest mine should make too much clamour in the world, and you should fear its rumour: Besides, we have believ'd that under the pretence of doing him some good office with you, I should have an access more free to you, and abuse more easily those persons that might take any interest therein. Add to this my Lord,* replied *Bellamira*, *that you thought to tempt me with the hopes to espouse Heraclian, and that you have believ'd this Fortune sufficiently great to dazzle and seduce me. I cannot but disown what you say,* (replied the feeble Emperour) *but must confess, that I could not have consented to the felicity of Heraclian, though he should have been so happy as to have persuaded you, but I must confess to you, that in the posture in which Heraclian is at present, there are few Ladies in the Empire to whom he may not aspire. Know my Lord,* (replied *Bellamira*, with a sigh full of disdain,) *not only that Heraclian is unworthy of Bellamira, but that when you your self would grant the same honour to Bellamira which you did to the Daughter of Stilicon, you would possibly find some difficulty to compass it.*

She spoke these words with so much majesty, and at that moment there appear'd to the eyes of the Emperour, something so great in all her person, that he remain'd astonish'd and full of confusion, for the discovery he had innocently made of his intentions, so that the rest of the day he was not able to come to himself. But when *Heraclian* would have approach'd her, and given her the same assurance of his Love, he had already given, beholding him with eyes full of disdain, *Heraclian*, said she, *both in the fiction and the truth you will find equal success: and I counsel you not to trouble your self longer, since the event is not correspondent to your intentions. You may have understood from the Emperour,* (replied *Heraclian*, without

(without discomposing himself at this discourse) that I only feign'd to see you, and I doubt not at all that he is well perswaded I do so, but I am strongly assur'd you are not; for besides that you have heard me speak in a time when nothing could be agreed between us, you are so clear sighted as to discern a fiction from the truth. I might possibly do it, replied *Bellamira*, if I had so much concern'd my self, as to take that pains, but however it be, I counsel you rather to own the feigned than the true, to appear faithful to your Emperour. In any other affair, replied *Heraclian*, I should without doubt be faithful to him, but in the love I bear you, I acknowledge no Empire but yours, nor other fidelity than I shall preserve for you till my Tomb, and if you doubt it, (added he a little after) I will give so great proofs, that you shall difficultly remain in that error. All those that you can give me, replied *Bellamira*, will not be more acceptable than those I have already received, and I should chuse rather with *Honorius* to remain in that error, than clear my self farther from you.

'Twas in this manner she almost continually spoke to him, and it seem'd likewise that she forced her very humour to a disdain, not natural to her, out of the aversions she had for him. He was sometimes reduc'd even to despair, but out of the interest he had to conceal his love from the Emperour, he disssembled his grief as much as was possible; and as his Love made him not forget his Ambition, he found in few days that given to his Ambition, wherewith he might comfort the little progress he had made in his Love; for the Government of *Africa* being void, by the death of him that possess'd it, the Emperour who at that time gave him the chief place in his confidence, though others might have it in his esteem, preferred him before all those persons of merit he might have found among the *Romans*, and made him Governour of *Africa*, against the desires of the whole world. There were few persons in *Rome* who did not murmur, not only at the pre-eminence given him, above all those who might legitimately pretend, but because the Government of *Africa* was the most important of all the Empire, and that it had been prov'd few years before, by the example of *Gildon*, that if that Government fell into the hands of a person ill minded, he had the means almost, with an equal force, to make war upon the Empire.

Heraclian being thus appointed Governour, was oblig'd to pass into *Africa*, to take possession of his charge, and as the Emperour knew well the little service he drew from him in his Loves, he was willing he should make this voyage to appease some troubles, which as it was said, were rais'd in some of the Provinces. *Heraclian* departed apparently with the best intentions in the world, but not without having protested to *Bellamira* before his departure, that he would return to her in a little time, in a condition which would not permit her to despise him. His particular friends knew well however, that notwithstanding his Ambition, he carried a wound in his Soul, of which that was not able to cure him, and only *Honorius* remain'd in the opinion of his feigned love for *Bellamira*, and his fidelity to him.

By the absence of his Confident, the Emperour lost nothing of his Love, and though the Princesses *Placidia*, *Theodolinda*, *Cleomira*, and many other amiable persons, endeavour'd by all means to divert him, as they had at other times done, all their endeavours prov'd vain, and he dedicated himself in such sort to *Bellamira*, that he had no more eyes nor thoughts but for her. He refrain'd sometimes as much as it was possible, from visiting her so often as he desired, out of the fear he had to displease her, and at those times that he did visit her, he us'd all his power to perswade her to retire to the Palace, and accompany the Princess *Placidia*: but though *Bellamira* could not find in the world a more honourable retreat, were it either out of a reluctancy she had to converse with the world, or that of retiring her self to a Prince that loved her, or other unknown reasons, she not only would never consent to it, but seeing that she was too much press'd by the Emperour, who out of the love he had for her, abandon'd entirely all care of the affairs of the Empire, and that she could not hinder his dayly visits, contrary to the intentions she had to conceal her self from all the world, she absented her self one day from the house of *Saturninus*, and carried far from *Rome* those admirable beauties which had rais'd so much trouble in the soul of the Emperour.

Honorius struck with the departure of *Bellamira* as with a mortal wound, remain'd wholly lost at the news he receiv'd, and shew'd thereby such marks of his weakness much greater than all those he had made appear in all the accidents of his life. The consolations of *Placidia*, and all his Friends, wrought no effect on his Spirit, and he told those to whom he could speak with more confidence, that he would no longer live if he could not again see *Bellamira*. The wife of *Saturninus* was gone with her, nor could any thing be learn'd from the Servants that were left in the house, who in all likelyhood were ignorant

of their departure; but a hundred several messengers beat the Plain on all sides to understand news of them; and in the mean time the afflicted *Honorius* miserably languish'd in a condition which drew pity from all the world, and which rendred himself incapable of all things.

As he receiv'd neither consolation nor repose, so he was in such manner changed that he was scarce to be known, and all the world already teared that life which he miserably spent in lamentations; when a messenger by fortune brought him the news which he demanded, and which he understood, after he had almost drown'd himself with grief, that the same *Bellamira*, whose name he had every day in his mouth, and with the remembrance of whom his heart was wholly possess'd, was retired to *Ravenna*, where she had shut her self up in a House of Virgins, consecrate to the Service of God, which the venerable *Ambrosius*, whose memory is so glorious among us, had erected some years before, and that she had been received among them by reason of the design she had to stay there for ever, and renounce the world, from which she fled, by a kind of life which would deprive her of all commerce and communication.

Honorius was turmoyl'd at this news with divers different passions, and if the Design of *Bellamira* touch'd him with a sensible Grief, the Joy he had to understand the place of her retreat dispers'd a good part of it, especially since he despaired not of diverting her from her resolution, and believ'd by little and little to find some charms over her inclinations to augment his hopes; but he counselled not at all with himself what resolution he ought to take, for instead of going to one of the Cities of *Italy* to see *Bellamira*, he had run through the whole world to find her, if the ways had been free and open to him.

The report which began to run through all parts of the intention *Alaric* had to return towards *Rome*, was not able to divert his design, and though he mantled it under the pretence of a desire to march through *Italy* about affairs in which his presence was necessary, he departed from *Rome* without delay, and travell'd to *Ravenna* with so much haste, that he arrived there in few days, without doubt before the inhabitants of *Ravenna* could understand his having left *Rome*. So sudden a departure thence became the subject of much talk; but as the true cause was not known to all the world, so there were few that divined the truth: And as the Emperour would forearm himself against the flight of *Bellamira*, which he feared more than all things, instead of entring into *Ravenna*, he allighted at the House where she had shut her self up, which is not within the Walls of the City; but in the Suburbs adjacent.

The entrance into this House was permitted to no person, but as you know, there is nothing shut against Sovereigns in their own Dominions, and by this privilege all the Gates were open'd to the Emperour: So soon as he arrived he presently enquired for *Bellamira*, and the fear those Virgins had to displease him, or indeed to incense him, obliged them presently to lead him to her chamber: He beheld her with an extasie which it will be difficult for me to represent to you, and he beheld her yet more fair, if it were possible, than she appear'd at *Rome*; but by this sight he was touch'd in such manner that he had not the power to salute her, but suffering himself through weakness to fall down in a chair which he found near him, he beheld her a long time without being able to speak, and with a behaviour so passionate, that all those who saw him in that condition were sensible of his affliction, and *Bellamira* her self could not defend her self against some assaults of compassion.

Having for a long time held his eyes (moistned with some tears, which he could not retain) fix'd on her countenance, without opening his mouth to explain himself farther, he at length broke silence, usher'd with some sighs which preceded his words, and forming the last with difficulty, by reason of the interruption the effect of his different passions caus'd; *Ab Bellamira!* said he, *For what reason did you flye from me with so much inhumanity? And why have you abandon'd the miserable Honorius to such cruel griefs? By what misfortune am I become so odious to you, to make you take so dire a resolution? Or what have I done that you should fear the presence of a person that dyes for you? Could you fear that power which might be suspected, being accompanied with a passion which not always permits reason the rule? Or have you fear'd to be touch'd with some pity at the death of a man whom you insensibly must needs send to his Tomb? Ah! Bellamira, neither Fear nor Pity have been the causers of your flight; for as it is not for me that pity can gain any access in your Soul, so it is not from me, it is not from a heart that adores you like that of the unfortunate Honorius, that you have feared any effects of a Sovereignty which he lays down at your feet, and against which you are too well assured, both by his word, and the fear he hath to displease you.*

Honorius pronounc'd these words so feelingly, and so worthy compassion; that the heart

heart of *Bellamira* truly felt some tenderness; and as there was no reason could create in her an aversion for a Prince by whom she felt so dearly beloved, she listened to his discourse with pity, and beheld the condition of his Soul with infinite joy: Her eyes gave some marks of it, which she could not conceal; but the Emperour not daring to attribute it to any cause favourable to him, *I see well,* (said he, expressing himself yet more sadly than at the beginning) *I see too well the effect my arrival produces in your Soul: and as you possibly thought that I would come to seek you at Ravenna, you find at the sight of me that subject of grief which appears in your face, and you behold me like a persecutor who comes to trouble your repose by his importunate passion.* "But *Bellamira*, afflict not your self for an evil which is not possibly so great as you believe it, and fear not an importunity to which you may give those bounds you please.

He had said more, if *Bellamira* had not in the end broke silence, and told him, beholding him with an eye in which there did not appear the least reluctance for him; *Attribute not my flight, my Lord, nor that grief you observe in my countenance, to those causes you are pleas'd to give them; neither have I seen any thing in your person which ought not to make me esteem it; nor have I fear'd any thing from a Prince all whose actions are ruled by Piety and Virtue. I will say likewise, that the affection wherewith you have honoured me, instead of the opposition wherewith you reproach me, hath placed in my heart infinite acknowledgments of your goodness; but it is the condition of my Soul, of my life, and of my Fortune, and not my insensibility which I ought to accuse. I have been,* (continued she with a sigh) *and am possibly yet but too sensible, that it is that which causes the unhappiness of my unfortunate day, and makes me lead them in an affliction which cannot be ended but by the assistance of Heaven, and the retirement I seek for. It is that my Lord, that unhappy estate of my life which makes me flye, not from you whom I respect, but from all men in general, from an affliction which I cannot suffer, and from a Court, where contrary to the design, and the reasons I had to conceal my self, I have been expos'd to the sight and view of all the world. I will add, that the sorrow I have to see you suffer for a person by whom your sufferings can never be relieved, and whose absence might produce a good effect for your repose, made me precipitate my resolution, and seek my repose in a place where I thought my self fortified against all the persecutions of Fortune; yet you however, my Lord, envy that repose which Heaven would afford me, and you come perhaps to trouble it in a time wherein I had reason to believe you thought no longer of the infortunate *Bellamira*.*

Yes I come to trouble it, (replied the Emperour, rising from his seat) *or at least I come to oppose my self, not only for my own interest, but for that of the whole earth, which you would deprive of what it hath of most fair and most amiable. And do you believe then, my Lord,* replied *Bellamira*, *That this design is conformable to the promise you have made me, never to employ your power and authority against me. It is not by my authority,* replied *Honorius*, *that I will oppose your design, but by those ways which a Lover is permitted to make use of in this occasion, and by that death which you shall see me suffer before your eyes, if those prove unprofitable. Ah my Lord,* added *Bellamira*, *When I quit the World for Heaven, will you dye for that? The life of so great an Emperour is too considerable to all the world to sacrifice it to a loss of so little importance: For those other obstructions you may bring to my resolution, I hope you will make them yield to reason, and to that pity you would your self have to see me eternally miserable, and you will not then have any intention for me, which you cannot reasonably oppose to that Design Heaven hath inspired me with.*

"The intention I have for you, (said the Emperour, after some few minutes of silence) hath not yet appeared to you, and I must confess to you, that it was not form'd in my heart so soon as I began to love you; but since so many Virtues which accompany your Beauty, may justify the love I bear you, I am content that my design should be known to you, and that all the world should understand as well as you, that *Honorius* will espouse *Bellamira*, if *Bellamira* disdains him not for her Husband.

This Discourse of the Emperour surpris'd all those persons that heard it, though they doubted not but his love was sufficiently violent to carry him to all things. *Bellamira* seem'd the least moved, though she blush'd; and having kept her self silent for some small time, "My Lord, said she, you too much honour one that is miserable, whose low degree never permitted her to carry her thoughts to so high a Fortune: But my Lord, I ought not to abuse your goodness, nor take advantage of what an unjust passion makes you act against reason, whilst it rules Mistress in your heart, and which your reason will without doubt make you condemn so soon as she hath regain'd her Empire. I respect too much both your Person and your Dignity, to permit you to commit so great a fault, and it will be so much the greater, because you are yet ignorant whether I am born of a Noble

blood, or of a blood with which you may without shame dye your self. I see too well, replied Honorius, that you are born of an illustrious blood, and I have observ'd too much Nobleness and too much Grandeur in all your Actions, and in your person, to believe that there can be any meanness in your birth; but when there should be so, so many wonders both of body and mind would but too well repair that fault, and you would appear worthy of something yet greater than the degree to which I desire to raise you. You may then from hence my Lord, replied Bellamira, judge of the greatness of my miseries, since being able to hope, and by your goodness able to merit so great a Fortune, I am not permitted to accept it. How Bellamira (said the Emperour, crossing his arms upon his breast, and beholding her with a Countenance highly troubled,) Have I then in vain given you this last proof of my love? And cannot the Imperial Dignity which I offer you, change any thing of the disdain you have for the person of Honorius? I should be much pleas'd, said Bellamira, that you would acknowledge at this time, that it is not the person of Honorius I have despis'd: for by the necessity which constrains me to refuse what you offer, you may judge well my Lord, that it is not for light reasons that I have appear'd so little sensible of the affection you have testified me. Ah disconsolate Honorius, (cried he on a suddain, walking in a posture wholly passionate) Lover too unfortunate, what a cruel destiny is thine? Alas! added he a little after, is this all I am to hope from so much love? and come I with so good intentions to seek at Ravenna a mournful death by this last knowledge of my misery?

He after this continued walking in that desolate manner without speaking, whilst Bellamira testified by many marks that she was not insensible of his grief: And afterwards turning himself towards Bellamira, and beholding her with eyes full of tears; As I am not in an estate, said he, to remain any longer time with you, I go in some hours of solitude to seek assistance and succour against that despair to which you have driven me: I protest to you yet once more, that it shall never be but by prayers that I will give any Obstruction to your Design, and I will govern my visits either at Ravenna, or in any other places, as you desire them, and in such manner that I may be the least importunate possible; but if you will not have me run after you through the whole World, and perhaps make me dye by a kind of death which will beget a pity in you, do me the favour to deser the Design hath led you to this House, and fly not from Ravenna, as you fled from Rome. Bellamira, who truly was touch'd with grief, and acknowledgments of the affection he testified, promis'd what he desir'd, and immediately after he departed from that House, to retire to the Palace which was prepar'd for him, but in a condition which mov'd to pity all those that accompanied him.

They who hitherto had admir'd the beauties of Bellamira, and the virtuous resistance she made of the Emperours Love, while his intentions might be suspected by her virtue, admir'd now the greatness of her courage, and the disdain she manifested of the highest dignity, to which any woman could raise her ambition. For Honorius, he was blam'd for the design he had to espouse her, by all those who had not seen Bellamira, but amongst those who could see her, there were few who did not excuse him, or did not believe themselves able to give a like proof of their Love in a like occasion. In fine, it appertain'd only to Bellamira's will, that she was not Empress of the Occident, and it was not only this time that she was importun'd by the Emperour, but every day following: He press'd her with much more affection than I can represent to you, and liv'd daily with her as with a person whom he pretended to espouse, if he could be so happy as to gain her consent. Bellamira after this declaration of his intentions, treated with him in another manner than she had done before, and testified to him as much respect and acknowledgment as she could make appear without testifying a love; but neither this acknowledgment nor respect could at all satisfy the passion of Honorius, and the miserable Emperour consum'd himself in such a languishing manner as mov'd the whole world to compassion.

Though Honorius employ'd not his Authority to see Bellamira, she had not the cruelty to refuse him her sight, knowing well how truly and sincerely she was belov'd, and how that though this was the only happiness granted him, yet he dedicated himself so entirely to it, that he believ'd he could no longer live when he was absent from her. This made him forget in such sort the affairs of the Empire, and all other things in the world, that though he understood at that time the return of the Goths into Italy, and the Siege they had laid to Rome, he seem'd so little mov'd at it as if he had no interest in it: It is true, that by reason of the unexpected return of those enemies, and the distance of all the Troops of the Empire, he was scarce in any posture to remedy it though he had had such intentions: But it appear'd that he us'd no endeavour to do it, nor thought so much as of fortifying himself in Ravenna to resist his Enemies if they should turn that way: However those that were about him took all possible care, and as Ravenna is a very strong place, and well furnished with all things necessary to defend it, by the former diligence of Stilicon, the Emperour seem'd to be in great security.

They who were the most familiar with him, endeavour'd to excite him to some resolution for the defence of his Country, and the relief of that famous City which had rul'd for so many Ages over the greatest part of the world; but he seem'd insensible of their importunities, and when *Bellamira* her self, who with great grief saw her self accused of his thus abandoning all things, and who had a courage as great and high as his was feeble and daunted, would represent to him what he ought to the degree he held, and awaken in him some virtue by her discourse. *Let all perish*, said he, *if Heaven have so resolv'd: and since I my self must miserably perish, I will see the loss of the whole world, without having any interest in it.* It was said however, that he seem'd very much touch'd at the news he receiv'd of the taking of *Rome*, which surpris'd him so much the more, because he believ'd it in a condition to make a much longer resistance, and that all his insensibility could not hinder him from expressing infinite grief for the misfortune of the Princess *Placidia*, he lamented it several days before *Bellamira* her self, and accus'd himself often, not to have preserv'd *Placidia* for *Constance*, as he had promised him. His weakness created both disdain and anger against him, in all those that were distant from him, but it begot pity in those who saw it, or at least whilst they accus'd him, they could not refrain from lamenting him. He sent however to demand the Princess *Placidia* of *Alaric*, offering large Provinces for her liberty, but the Love of *Atalphe* caus'd him to reject all proposals that could be made, and all care taken to redeem that great Princess prov'd vain. *Oh Honorius*, cryed *Constance*, interrupting *Artabure* at this discourse) *could you abandon Placidia to the Barbarians?*

He spoke only these few words, accompanied with many sighs, and *Artabure* continued his discourse. *Honorius* said he, lived in this manner continually, fix'd at the feet of *Bellamira*, not only whilst the *Goths* having quitted *Rome*, ravaged *Lucania* and *Campania*, but after they had left *Italy* to embarque themselves on the *Thyssene* Sea, after the death of *Alaric*, and so by the *Ligustique* Sea went to seek the Coasts of *Spain*, and that *Attalus* whom they had left, remain'd Master at *Rome*, where in few days he became so insolent, that he durst take the Name of Emperour, and used the ruin'd, weak and disarm'd *Romans*, as if he had been truly Emperour. And in the end, till the affairs of *Italy* being in this estate, I arriv'd with those Troops which had serv'd under you my Lord, (said *Artabure* to *Constance*) in the War against *Constantine* and *Jovian*, and which you had commanded me to lead back.

Having understood all the misery of my Country before I enter'd it, I resolv'd immediately to succour it all I could, without Attending Orders from the Emperour, who no more acted, but who in all likelihood would approve all I should do for the service of the Empire: I therefore march'd without delay, towards those places where I knew there were any Forces of the Enemies, and preventing their intentions by our diligence, we not only constrain'd them to fight us, but were so happy as to Defeat them in many Encounters: and when *Attalus* dared to come out of *Rome* to meet us with his whole Forces, we fought him with the same success, and having cut in pieces all his Army, we drove him from *Italy*, which he quitted with six or seven hundred Horse, the only remains of his Defeat.

When I saw *Italy* entirely deliver'd from its Enemies, and the *Romans* in liberty to repair in some manner the ruines of their City, I resolv'd to go to *Ravenna* to see the Emperour, and I presented my self to him with the Prince *Taxander*, *Castinus*, and many other valiant men, who had no less part than my self in the defeat of *Attalus*, and in the relief of our Country. I found the Emperour in that condition I have endeavour'd to represent to you, nor could I see him so different from what he ought to have been, without being touch'd with compassion. As he believ'd that I had done something for his Service, and as he had always preserv'd a goodness for me, he treated me better than I merited, and receiv'd *Taxander* and *Castinus* with his natural sweetness. The aversion he had to all things but his Love, could not hinder him from speaking to me many things of you generous *Constance*, and he told me many times that he had no greater sorrow than that of being wanting in the promise he had made you, to preserve for you *Placidia*: but if it pleas'd heaven to return you to him, he would repair that fault by the greatest proofs of his affection he was able to give you, and such as you should have reason to be satisfied with, at least added he with a sigh, if an enamour'd person can be satisfied with any thing after the loss of his beloved Object.

Having spoke to me of others, he would speak to me of himself, and having drawn me from those who might understand us; *I doubt not at all*, *Artabure* said he, *but you have condemn'd me as well as all the rest of men, amongst whom I cannot but imagine I am extremely blam'd; I will not say that I am exempt from a part of that blame they lay upon me, and possibly that*

Passion which hath lost me, had not produc'd the same effect in another Soul that it hath in mine; but however it be, out of the esteem I have for you I am content that you should see the cause, and I assure my self that you will be sorry for me if you cannot excuse me. He perform'd what he had promised, and the next day he made me see *Bellamira*, contrary to his custom, which was not to lead men to those visits: I say only he made me see her, *continued Artabure saying*, for a sensible man to see *Bellamira*, and to love her with an inexpressible passion, is without doubt the same thing. All that I have told you of her beauty at the beginning of my Discourse, is but a light part of what she appear'd to me at this fatal view, and all that which I could imagine by the effect she had produced in the heart of *Honorius*, would but very imperfectly reach the truth. The astonishment which seiz'd me at so Super-excellent an Object, and which only for some few moments preceded my Love, might easily be observed in my Face, and the Emperour having perceiv'd it by all sorts of marks, conceiv'd no small joy to read in my Countenance a part of what he desir'd, and approaching me with some appearance of Cheerfulness, not ordinarily seen in him for a long time past, *And well Artabure, said he, did you ever see beauties parallel to those of Bellamira? And have you not a little more indulgence for my misfortune than you had before the cause was known to you?*

I was so astonish'd and surpris'd, either at what I saw, or at what I began to feel, that I had not at present the power to answer him: but when he had commanded me once more to tell him what I thought of *Bellamira*, *My Sovereign*, said I with some difficulty, *That which I can say to you will but ill express that which appears to me, and my silence may possibly speak better than my words can do.* The Emperour was as much satisfied with my Answer as he had been with my Countenance, and turning towards *Bellamira*, who had understood our Discourse, and to whom he had before presented me: *I cannot be displeas'd*, said he, *to have a man like Artabure justify me in the World, for he hath sufficient repute among men to draw a good part to his opinion. He hath serv'd you so well my Lord*, replied *Bellamira*, *as to merit the esteem you testify to him, and all things appear to us in his person conformable to what Renown hath published of him.*

This praise so little expected, and so little merited, from the fairest lips in the World, added some confusion to what I had already found in my Soul, and methought that by the prepossession of my Spirit, I difficultly resolv'd on the answer I ought to have made to such obliging words: But a little after, by the will of the Emperour being mixed in their entertainment, I endeavour'd to repair those faults which this new conceiv'd trouble had made me commit, and by a delign we naturally have to please persons which please us, was much satisfied that *Bellamira* attributed not to stupidity that which proceeded from another cause.

By having the honour thus to be near her, I carried her Effigies into my heart, and at one sole sight it pierc'd so far, that I durst not hope any trace of time should snatch it from me. During the night which succeeded to this fatal day, I entertain'd my self continually with the fair image of *Bellamira*, and I sought in vain sleep and repose in a War much more terrible to my Spirit than those in which I had accompanied *Constance*: Yet it was not without some endeavours to defend my self, that I was made a Prisoner to this imperious beauty: for I often plac'd before my eyes, both what I ought to my Emperour whom I saw wholly abandon'd to the love of *Bellamira*, and the little success I could hope in my love, being enamour'd on a person whom the love of *Honorius*, with the Crown of the *Occidental Empire* could not touch with any sensibility. *What canst thou offer (would I say) to this proud beauty which despiseth Emperours with their Empires? Or if thou couldst offer her Empires, with what honour canst thou violate that fidelity thou owest to thy Sovereign?*

I will not at all amuse you with the recital of the discourse I made to oppose this cruel passion, which assaulted and came to overwhelm all the whole repose of my life, but as it is of little importance, pass it over to come to things of greater concern, and which by reason of their importance, though they happened but lately may possibly be spread by renown as far as you. In sum, I lov'd truly and I lov'd like one wholly lost: and though I seldom saw *Bellamira* because the Emperour denyed himself as much as possible too frequent visits, and that I was not permitted to enter the place where she was but in his company, this admirable person had in a few minutes done that which others could scarce do in many years, and when I had the liberty to entertain her I found those Charms in her conversation which did but too much finish what her beauty had so well begun. I know not whether my eyes gave her at these times any knowledge of what my Soul suffer'd, but my mouth durst not utter it: for besides the respect I had to the love of the Emperour, I had so much fear to displease her, and so little hopes to be well received, that I could not be so hardy as to open my mouth to
give

give her the least knowledge of what I felt: 'Tis true I had few occasions to do it, and much fewer afterwards by reason of an accident which fell out.

Bellamira had often been upon the point to execute the design she had to quit the world, and shut up her self the rest of her days with the Virgins consecrated to the service of that Divinity we adore, amongst whom she had taken her retreat, but the Emperour had continually hindred her, not by his Authority, but by prayers accompanied with tears; and so many marks of a grief which seem'd to approach despair, that this acknowledging Lady could not refuse him many delays he demanded. She was in these terms with him, when *Heraclian* return'd from *Africa* (where he had made a longer stay than was necessary to take possession of his Government) and coming presently to *Ravenna*, presented himself to the Emperour. *Honorius* who had permitted himself to be seduced by this flattering Spirit, was very glad for his return, and made him great welcomes, which the dissimbling *Heraclian* receiv'd with apparent marks of as great a passion for his Service: But few persons rejoiced with the Emperour for his arrival; for besides that he was before little lov'd, the splendor of that new Dignity to which he was advanced by the fairest and most important Government of the Empire, had raised a pride in his mind, which few persons could suffer; for my self, I ever but lightly esteem'd him, nor did his Government of *Africa* make me consider him any whit the more.

The dearest proof the Emperour gave him of his affection at his arrival, was the leading him the same day to see *Bellamira*; but if *Heraclian*, in whose heart love had been but too well preserv'd, revisited *Bellamira* with infinite joy, I am confident *Bellamira* sav'd him with as much ill will, and gave him but little cause to be satisfied with the reception she made him, both at that time, and upon other following days in which he was permitted to see her. The Emperour believ'd that what he had discover'd to her at *Rome* of the feigned love of *Heraclian*, had begot in her mind some resentment against him, and because he was now sensible his designs were too well known to have any need of *Heraclian's* fiction, he would excuse him towards her, and intreat her for his sake to pardon what was past to a man who had been so affectionate to his Service: When *Bellamira*, who had had particular conversations with *Heraclian*, which had discovered but too much, shaking her head with a sigh at the discourse of the Emperour, the innocence of which begat a pity in her; My Lord, said she, *I will always pardon to Heraclian rather the fiction, than the truth for my interest; but if you think fit that I give you an advice, which by all sorts of reasons I am oblig'd to give you, beware of Heraclian, for I am much deceived if he be well affected to your service. I see well, (said Honorius sighing) that you cannot pardon him, it must be time and my prayers that must work this effect over your ill opinion. It is then through my own apprehension, replied Bellamira, that I advertise you once more to beware of him, and to pardon me, if both for you, and for me, I cannot hinder my self from fearing him.*

Bellamira gave this advice to the Emperour, but he neglected it, not only by his natural negligence, but by reason of an ill-founded imagination which rendred it suspected from the mouth of *Bellamira*; but it was not long time ere he repented himself, and to abridge my recital, five or six days after the arrival of *Heraclian*, one morning at the rising of the Emperour, some came to advertise him, that during the night, the House in which *Bellamira* resided, and which as I told you was seated in a very solitary Faubourgh, had been forced, the Gates broken, and *Bellamira* with only one Damself taken away by unknown men, who notwithstanding their cries and resistance had by violence constrain'd them to go with them. At this news *Honorius* was struck as with a Thunderbolt, and remain'd half dead in the presence of those that brought it; for a long time he was not able neither to speak, nor to act in any manner, and his grief was so great, that it permitted him not to express it by complaints; he open'd his mouth at last, either to bemoan himself, or give orders for the assistance of *Bellamira*, but the trouble of his Soul confounded both the one and the other, his commands were indiscernably mixed with his plaints, nor could it be known whether we should comfort him, or run to the succour of *Bellamira*.

All those who were most affectionate to him now presented themselves, nor was I one of the last, but *Heraclian* was not seen. The Emperour presently enquir'd for him, and though no tidings could be heard of him, he could however not so soon suspect him. I was not of the same opinion, but as by the love I had for *Bellamira*, and the interest she had made me take in all that regarded her; I had already understood that *Heraclian* was enamoured of her; I no sooner heard of her being forced away, but I accus'd *Heraclian*, not doubting but he had done it, with intent to carry her to *Africa*; my grief for this accident, was possibly no less than that of the Emperour, though I made it less appear;

and if I shed not tears, nor uttered cries like him, the grief I resent'd within, produced no smaller effect, than if I had as much tormented my self. He observ'd however there was none in the company appear'd so afflicted as my self, and believing to have a great obligation to me for it, *Ab Artabure*, said he, *I see well you are touch'd with my misfortune, nor can you give me a greater mark of the affection you have for me. But why my Lord, said I, do not you remedy this misfortune? Or what should hinder us from pursuing the Ravishers of Bellamira?* *Ab let us pursue them,* reply'd the Emperour, *those that love me will do it, and testify their love at a time wherein my life lies at stake.*

As I had before resolv'd to do it without his Orders, I expected them no farther, but mounting immediately after on Horse-back with those of my Friends I found ready in any posture to follow me, I went where my Love and my Anger guided me, without knowing what way I should certainly take, to overtake the Ravishers. The difficulty was not small; for as they had acted their design in the middle of the night, whilst the Gates of the City were shut, and that for that reason the Virgins whose House they had forced, could not advertise the Emperour till many hours after, the Ravishers had gain'd so great an advantage before the Pursuers, that there was little hopes or appearance to reach them; I post'd straight to the famous Port on the *Adriatick* Sea, believing they might be embark'd, but as that Haven had since the time of the war been diligently guarded, and that they had well foreseen the difficulties they should there encounter, they had taken another way by Land, and put me into a strange difficulty to divine what course they followed.

Whilst I pursued them, the Emperour being gone to the House of the Virgins, had understood the particulars of the Rape, and found that it was *Heraclian* himself by whom *Bellamira* was forced. Not having seen himself or any of his in this disorder, he had begun to doubt, but being fully cleared, he accused himself for having neglected the advice *Bellamira* gave him of his infidelity. There were likewise some of the Virgins, who addressing themselves to him, assured him, that *Bellamira* cried out to them at her departure, and whilst she yet struggled in the arms of her Ravishers. *Tell the Emperour that Heraclian forces me to carry me into Africa, and that if he can, he will with Bellamira, deprive him of the Empire.* *Alas,* (cry'd the desolate *Honorius* at this discourse) *that he had deprived me of the Empire, so he had left me Bellamira;* he judg'd however that he ought not to devote his time wholly to lamentations, but having made all the Court mount on Horse-back, he mounted likewise himself, and acted much more for the recovery of *Bellamira*, than he had done for the succour or defence of the Empire.

In the mean time I was already far distant, and by chance having found some persons who had met the Ravishers by break of day, and who placed me in their track, in the way towards *Cremona*, I followed it easily, though I had a great number of Horse, and I followed them with so much swiftness, that before one part of the day was pass'd, our Horses were almost tired, they carried us however to a Village, where we found fifteen or twenty in the same estate, and where we understood that they were those which *Heraclian* and his men had left there some hours before, to take fresh ones which there expected them, and by fortune one of *Heraclian's* men, who had broken his leg by a fall, being overtaken by us in this place, told me after some threats, that from the Port of *Genoua*, on the *Liguistique* Sea (where he intended to embarque, to pass into *Africa*, having found that way more convenient for him, than to coast *Italy* to *Brundisium*, by which he might meet with great difficulties) unto that very place, *Heraclian* had left at equal distances alike number of Horses, that he might change in all, as he had done in that place, and that by this Order he would be embark'd before we could make the third part of the way to *Genoua*; that he was expected by a great number of armed Ships, fitted for war, and that he had put himself in a condition to sustain all the Forces of the Empire if they should assault him; that all the Coasts were full of Vessels, and that there was never seen so great an *Armada* in *Africa*.

I easily believ'd what this man told me, not being ignorant of the Maritime Power of the *African* Governours; but I was much more afflicted at the loss of *Bellamira*, than at the great power of *Heraclian*, and so much the more, by reason of the order *Heraclian* had taken in his flight, by which I saw it impossible to find any means to succour her, or to follow with Horses wearied and tired, those men who through their whole Journey, had fresh ones to change. I saw then that I must of force return to the Emperour, and that it was only in *Africa*, that we ought to go seek *Bellamira*. I went back the way we had come, with the Horses and man of *Heraclian*, whom I intended to present to *Honorius*, to the end he should not doubt of the intelligence I was to give him, and because according

according to the instructions which had been given him, he had followed the same path with us. I marched no long time before I met with him. I will not recount to you all he did, and all he said in this disaster; it will be difficult for me to represent to you the greatness of his grief, when he understood that there was no other means to recover *Bellamira*, than by carrying the war into *Africa*, and that though the success of it should be favourable to him, he could not be assured to find her. He utter'd forth a thousand plaints to Heaven, he wept, he tore his hair, and did all that a most desolate woman could do in the like occasion. As all his friends had beheld with a great deal of grief, the neglect which this love had made him make of himself; so there were few persons in his Court, afflicted to see the cause taken away, and I had without doubt been of their opinion, if love had not ranged me on his party, or had not filled my soul with the most violent grief it could possibly apprehend. *Honorius* seem'd much concern'd at the marks I gave of it, and gave me such proofs of his repentment, as I not at all merited.

After he had that day extremely tormented himself, when I saw him a little more capable to hearken to me, than he had been for some hours past, *My Sovereign*, said I, *it is no longer time to seek consolation or revenge in complaints, you ought to think of the war, and send into Africa the revengers of your quarrel.* Ah *Artabure*, (said he to me) *I shall never more see Bellamira.* Though you should never see her more, replied I, *the Son of Theodosius ought to resolve against this misfortune; but I hope you may again see her, and that the Heavens will revenge you of that perfidious Traitor, who hath robb'd you of her, if you carry a war into the place of his retreat, and prevent by your Arms the design he hath to do you greater injuries.* Alas for greater injuries, replied *Honorius*, *he will not know how to do them: for though he should with my life deprive me of my Empire, he can deprive me of nothing so dear as Bellamira, yet I would however, added he, arm against him all my power, and as I have no man about me more capable of this war, than your self, nor any friend more afflicted at my misfortune, it is to you that I will commit my revenge, the repose of my life, and the safety of the Empire.*

These words of the Emperour afforded me infinite joy: for besides the consideration I had of the Honour he did me, I received infinite satisfaction from the occasion I had to go succour *Bellamira*, and wage war with an unworthy Rival, and unfaithful Subject. I restituted to the Emperour the apprehension I had of the favour he did me, protesting that I would acquit my self with all imaginable fidelity. He had without doubt in his Court persons more worthy than my self, and more capable of so important an employment; but as he knew that I led from among the *Gauls* a victorious Army, the Officers and Soldiers of which had been accustomed to obey me, both loving and knowing me, and that these same Troops, having chased the *Goths* which obeyed *Attalus* out of *Italy* were yet entirely on foot, he believed that he could not place any man in the head of them whom they would more willingly follow, nor with whom they would so easily accuse themselves.

This business being resolved, and the Emperour having nothing which might longer detain him at *Ravenna*, we intreated him to return to *Rome*, to give to that desolate City that consolation it might receive by his presence, and we easily disposed him to it. Fortune likewise so ordered it, that to make his re-entrance the more magnificent, and give some satisfaction to the *Romans* by so acceptable a sight, *Leontius* to whom you had given *Attalus* in charge, when you caus'd him to depart from you, with the rest of the Cavalry, said *Artabure* to *Constance*, arriv'd the same day at *Ravenna*, and on your part presented *Attalus* to the Emperour. This man, who a little time before had taken on him the quality of the Emperour of the *Romans*, supporting the change of his fortune with infinite lowness of spirit, prostrated himself at the feet of the true Emperour, attending with no small fear what destiny he would ordain him; many persons counselled the Emperour to make him an example, and to punish him as his infinite boldness had merited; but the Emperour (whose disposition was always mild) had more regard to your intercession, than to the advice of those who would counsel him to rigour, and contented himself to tell them, that he ought too much to *Constance*, to refuse him the life of *Attalus* which he demanded, and that with the life of *Attalus*, he would willingly give him a part of the Empire, to comfort him, if it were possible, for the loss of *Placidia*.

He spoke many other things, by which he made us understand more particularly the intentions he had for you: and in the end parting from *Ravenna*, he marched towards *Rome*, where he entred some days after, leading *Attalus* as it were in triumph, and exposing him to the sight of the *Romans*, by whom he had some days before made himself be respect'd in the quality of Emperour: This was the greatest pain he suffer'd, and
few

few days after he was sent to the Island *Liparis*, and there confin'd during life. I tell you these things succinctly, because I know well they are come to your knowledge: nor will I extend my self farther on the entrance of the Emperour into *Rome*, nor on other things which pass'd at a return in which he might have seen with infinite grief the horrible marks of the *Gothick* cruelty, if he had been capable of other grief than what he apprehended for the loss of *Belamira*, and by which he comforted himself as I believe, for that of *Flacidia*, which he had else impatiently supported.

In the mean time, to acquit my self worthily of the employment with which he had honoured me, and obey the inclination I had to succour *Belamira*, I sent to rigg all the vessels which were in all the coasts of *Italy*, and to make them Rendezvouz at *Brundisium*, where we intended to imbarque, and whither I made all the souldiers march with the greatest hast possible, by reason of the fame spread abroad of the puissant arming of *Heraclian*, who cover'd as it was reported all the Seas of *Africa* with his Vessels. Many persons judg'd that I ought not to precipitate any thing, nor march to the War against this unfaithful person, but with a Power not at all inferiour to his, and those who gave this advice, wanted not reasons to uphold it: but I agreed with that of many others, who held and that with sufficient prudence that the Forces of *Heraclian*, how great soever, were neither joyned together, nor well disciplin'd; that he might have a great number of Vessels, but that they were in several places, and neither well arm'd nor well fitted for War: and that if I should fall upon him with the Arms of his Master, before he had time to assemble them, better arm them, and exercise them for War, the expedition might have a better effect, than if I gave him leisure for greater preparations.

I believ'd then that the good success of this enterprize depended chiefly in the diligent execution of it, and in this belief I hastned as much as possible to put all things in order to march against *Heraclian*. I was seconded by many other persons well affected to the service of the Emperour, and particularly by *Castinur*, *Arcobinde*, and the young *Ætius*, of whom for the marvellous hopes conceiv'd of him, I have already made you some mention, and in the end, by their diligence and my own, we assembled together more than three hundred Vessels at *Brundisium*, and caus'd our Troops to imbarque in a good condition, and fairer resolution. At the head of this *Armada* I rowed towards *Africa* with a favourable wind, and I went to seek *Heraclian*, who not only believ'd himself Master of the Sea, but out of the disdain he had of the weakness of *Honorius*, publish'd openly his thoughts of aspiring to the Empire. It is most certain, that in the posture wherein affairs were, if *Heraclian* had been an able man of War, or a man as capable of a great execution, as he had shew'd himself of a great enterprize, he had rais'd those disorders in the Empire would difficultly have been remedied. In effect, possibly since the time of *Xerxes* there hath not been seen on the Sea a Naval force parallel to his, nor had ever any *Roman* Emperour covered the Deep with so many Vessels as were now seen under a deputed Governour of *Africa*. Many persons have reported in the world that he had five thousand, and those who have given him the least, have assur'd that he had more than four thousand, but they were divided through all the coasts of *Africa*, and out of a thought he had that the Emperour would not in a long time be in a condition to send against him any Army that durst assault him, he permitted them to wander in disorder, whilst he remain'd at *Carthage* fix'd to his love, and in vain employ'd to undermine the heart of *Belamira*. I believe it was this passion which in part distract'd him, and that the Heavens, enemy to Traitors, would make use of it to his ruine, and permit his thoughts to be so disturb'd with it, that he could not profit himself of his advantages, nor do all that mischief he might have done, had he employ'd his forces as any other would without doubt have done. I understood with infinite content that they were separated in many places of *Africa*, and not being willing to give them the time to assemble them, I made towards the nearest with intentions to fight them, and that with so much diligence, that in few days I discovered them, knew them, and assaulted them.

As I will not my Lords draw this discourse to too tedious a length, I shall not tell you all the particulars of the Engagements on the coast of *Africa*: You shall only understand that we were vanquishers in this first, in which we sent more than forty Vessels to the bottom, took more than twenty, and gave chase to the rest in such manner that for a long time they could not reunite: But some days after having understood that another Lieutenant of *Heraclian's* came with three hundred Sail, to joyn with him whom we had before defeated, we made towards him, boarded him, burnt good part of his Vessels, and defeated him with an advantage yet more entire than that of the first. It is true that we could draw but little glory from these Victories, and must confess that *Heraclian* having gathered together a world

of men without chusing them, only to fill his Vessels, and to compleat a number rather than fight, they scarce made any light resistance, and so soon as the least fear had seized them, they knew neither Orders, nor Officers, but fled with full sails without maintaining any fight. This begot in us so great a disdain for them, that without any regard to their number, we went to seek them through all the coasts of *Africa*, and without any difficulty defeated all those we could engage.

In fine, *Heraclian* awaken'd, and believing himself yet strong enough to vanquish us, set sail from *Carthage* with more than five hundred Vessels, and came to meet us then when we were about to go seek him at *Carthage*, with a confidence drawn from the disdain we had for his men, and for himself, which hindred us from fearing the advantage the number of men might give him over us: Nor were we any whit deceived, though by reason of the difference of the Forces, and the presence of *Heraclian*, this Battel was somewhat more doubtful, and much more bloody than the others. But in fine, we were Vanquishers as we had been in the former, and *Heraclian* seeing his Vessels either sunk or dispersed, fled with a very small number, and regain'd *Carthage* with an admirable hast. He knew he had Forces on Land with which he could yet oppose us; that the City was in a condition to endure a long Siege, if we durst assault it; and that which he considered not the least, was that he had left *Bellamira* under the Guard of his most affectionate friends.

After this defeat of *Heraclian* all his Vessels were dispersed on all sides, and of that terrible number which he had sometime before, there scarce remain'd one on the Sea in a posture to fight. We praised the Heavens for these Victories so easily obtain'd, and with an entire hope of the success of this War we rowed directly towards *Carthage*. I understood that *Bellamira* was there, and with the desire I had to serve my Sovereign and my Country, my love importun'd me to pierce with our Arms into the very bosome of *Africa*: we expected in all likelihood to find yet more resistance, but while we approached *Carthage*, Heaven and Fortune fought for us, and facilitated our Victory, by an assistance which we expected not, and of which the recital will give you some astonishment.

After that *Heraclian* had taken away *Bellamira*, and with so much diligence as I have told you led her into *Africa*, he had employed all manner of endeavours to sweeten that aversion and disdain she had for him, but he had laboured in vain; and this virtuous and courageous person drawing from this last effect of his infidelity, farther subject to despise him, had continually look'd upon him with a disdain as great as possibly she could bear to the meanest or worst of men. *Heraclian* however was not daunted, but as he truly lov'd her with a violent passion, and wanted nothing of spirit and address in any thing he would apply himself to, he had forgot nothing which was probable to produce the effect he desir'd, in a mind less firm than that of *Bellamira*: He had continually treated her with all appearances of a great respect, and saving only liberty which he had never offer'd her, and which she had never deign'd to require of him, knowing well she should have in vain demanded it, there was no civility but was rendred to her. He likewise used towards her this submission without reluctance, and without dissimulation: for as he had known those excellent virtues with which her admirable beauty was accompanied, by all sorts of marks he judg'd her descended of an illustrious blood, and by the refusal she had made of the Dignity to which the Emperour would have advanc'd her, regarding her as something more great than that she had disdain'd: he had truly a design to espouse her, and acted with her as with a person who expected to possess her by honourable ways. But in this design he was no less odious to *Bellamira* than in all others, and when he made the proposition (which was on the Sea between *Genova* and *Carthage*) beholding him with eyes full of disdain, *There is some appearance*, said she, *that if I must have espoused either Honorius or Heraclian, I should have preferred Honorius before Heraclian: but there is very little said she, that I will become the Spouse of Heraclian, having refus'd to be Spouse to Honorius. It will not be without example*, replied *Heraclian*, *to see a person like Heraclian prefer'd, who hath courage, spirit, and birth sufficiently illustrious, before a man like Honorius, who by his faintheartedness is rendred unworthy of the degree he holds in the world, and is expos'd to the disdain of all the earth. You ought possibly*, replied *Bellamira*, *to speak with more respect of your Sovereign: but though he were not so, and that you were equal to him in birth and dignity, this equality should not turn the balance in the difference I make between you. You would judge otherwise*, replied *Heraclian*, *if you were less prepossessed with an aversion I have not possibly merited; but I hope that time will banish it from your thoughts, and make a more favourable opinion succeed: but if the Imperial Dignity can bring any change in my condition with you, I am not perhaps so far distant from it, that I may not aspire to it with no small likelihood. Heaven*, said *Bellamira*, *gives not always favourable events to wicked intentions, nor can I believe you can mount so easily to the Dignity of your*

Mister; but when this change shall happen, it will not excite any in my heart for you, nor would you be more considerable to me than you are, should you be Emperour of the whole world.

He never received more favourable answers, nor was it known that her captivity wrought any effect on her courage, and when he was come to *Carthage*, where he saw himself with an absolute power, and that in all likelihood she had little means to defend herself against his will, he found no change in hers; and though *Bellamira* had a spirit sweet and moderate, which permitted her not to transport her self to threats and invectives, in all her moderation she was unshaken, and the amorous *Heraclian* lost in the end his hopes, that time or the proofs of his love might bend her. This knowledge which he receiv'd with infinite grief, rendred his spirit more fierce than it had hitherto appeared, or rather the true inclinations of *Heraclian* which hitherto he had endeavoured to dissemble, were now discovered in their natural colours, and as in his soul he had no virtue, which could oppose those motions his passions inspir'd, it was so much the easier subjected to them, because it found no succour to which to retire. It was now that he banished submission and respect, and that he began to talk like a Master, to a person whom her ill fortune had submitted to him, and whom all sorts of reasons ought to have made him respect. But this change of proceeding was not at all favourable to him, and the couragious *Bellamira* was no more mov'd by his threats, than she had been touch'd by his prayers. The spirit of *Heraclian* hourly sharpen'd by this resistance, and being one day transported to threaten her, and to tell her, that after she had so long abus'd his patience, she ought to fear all things from a man who could do what he pleas'd; *Bellamira* beholding him with an admirable constancy, *You may kill me* (said she) *for having deprived of life the wife of Stilicon, you are not ignorant how to rid your self of a person of my Sex. I will not kill you,* replied *Heraclian,* *but I will seek my satisfaction by those ways which my fortune permits me, since you refuse it me by that you ought to accept.*

Bellamira notwithstanding all her courage, trembled at this threat, and looking upon him who made it, with eyes in which her constancy could not hinder some tears from appearing, *I hope,* said she, *that Heaven will defend me against you, and that instead of abandoning me in so cruel an extremity, it will make you feel the effects of its justice in my favour, and for my protection. We shall see,* (said *Heraclian,* departing from her chamber) *if either Heaven or men can give you any assistance; but if in few days you change not your resolution, you shall find whither mine will carry me.* The unfortunate *Bellamira* sigh'd with grief at these cruel words of her enemy, and spent, by what I have understood, the rest of that day in tears and prayers, imploring the assistance of Heaven as most necessary for the defence of that honour which was a thousand times dearer to her than her life. She was likewise constrained to do that for its preservation, which she had hitherto refused for all other considerations, and the desire she had to hold *Heraclian* in that respect, which should hinder him from coming to those extremities he had made her fear, oblig'd her to act a violence on her inclinations, and dissemble a part of the aversion she had for him. She withheld her self for some days from giving him such fierce replies as she had been accus'tom'd, and forced her visage to appear less severe than it had for some time accus'tom'd to be. *Heraclian* knew this to be the effect of his threats, and would not be abus'd by this feigned sweetning of *Bellamira*, but persisted to make her know, that he would be happy in some manner or other. He dissembled however a part of his design, till such time as he understood we came against him, that we had defeated his first Squadrons, and that we marched against the others. But when in fine he was advertis'd of the other advantages we had gained, that his Fleet was dispersed without hopes of reassembling, and that he doubted no longer but we would fall upon him, the necessity to which he saw himself obliged to fight us, hardened his resolutions to the utmost, and carried him with an extremity of violence against *Bellamira*, so that there wanted but little but that before his departure he had snatched by force, that which she would so dearly preserve; he was however withheld by an effect of the Majesty of this admirable person, which stopp'd his fury for that time, and having at his departure uttered threats much more cruel than those that had made her so much fear, *I depart,* said he, *to go fight against those enemies you arm against me, and I depart without having drawn any advantage hitherto of that power I have over you, but believe not to triumph over my indulgence, by the event of the Combat, whatever it may be; but be assured that whether Vanquisher or vanquished, you shall see me return with those resolutions no considerations can or shall divert.*

He quitted her with speaking these words, not attending an answer, having left her guarded by those men in whom he had an entire confidence, and whom he had interested by

by all their fortunes, to be faithful to him in this occasion; he had a design to have led her with him on the Sea, but in fine was diverted from it by many considerations, and as he had resolv'd to flye and retire to *Carthage*, if he were overcome, he chose rather to leave her, than to expose her to the danger of the Combat, and the uncertainty of an event, by which he might lose her in his Ship, much easier than in the place where she was. He put himself then to Sea, came toward us, gave us Battel, which as I have told you he lost, after a Combat more resolute than any of the former, though not sufficient to gain us any great glory from the Victory. So soon as he saw his Forces sunk or dispers'd, he fled as he had resolv'd, and with an admirable swiftness regained the Port of *Carthage*. Being little loved in his Government, and fear of his Authority only having made the *Africans* arm in his favour, the Inhabitants of *Carthage* saw him return alone, and in disorder, without much sorrow for him; and if they had not feared the Troops which he had yet in the City, and in the Field, they had possibly given more visible marks. But the poor *Bellamira*, though she understood his defeat with infinite joy, saw him return with a fear that almost depriv'd her of life, and remembering the cruel resolution he had pronounc'd at his departure, she remain'd astonish'd, immoveable, and like one forth of her self at his arrival.

Nor was it without reason that she feared, and that she trembled, the danger being possibly greater than what she had conceiv'd to her self. In effect, this wicked person had scarce given some Orders at the Port, and at the City, to prepare things for defence, and those such Orders as denoted the disorder of his Soul, and the trouble which possess'd it, but full of fury which perplex'd him more than ever, now that the ill state of his affairs ought to have inspir'd him with other designs, he went to find *Bellamira*, she grew pale, and trembled from head to foot seeing him enter, nor had she the power to remove from her place, by reason of the fear which had gain'd a predominancy in her soul, and possibly the marks she gave of it were favourable to her, and by making *Heraclian* believe she was shaken in her resolutions, she made him omit the effects of his own till the morrow. In summ, were it for this reason, or others unknown to us, seeing that the night was already far advanced, and himself appear'd wearied with the travel he had that day suffer'd, he contented himself to tell *Bellamira* in a terrible manner, and with a voice which had something in it of fatal, that he gave her yet that night to resolve her self, but that he would not deprive himself longer of what the uncertain events of war might rob him of for ever, nor make those enemies laugh at his innocence, who already triumph'd over his ill fortune; In fine, that arrive what could, the day following he would be possessor of *Bellamira*.

Having pronounc'd her this cruel sentence, he left her as it is said to resolve her self, and went to give the rest of the night either to repose, or to the disposal of those affairs his ill fortune had cast upon him. The comfortless *Bellamira* remain'd in her chamber in a condition which it will be difficult for me to represent to you, and letting her self fall into the Arms of that Damsel which had been taken away with her, there stream'd down a river of tears from her fair eyes, and spoke things would have mov'd to pity the feeblest Monsters of that *Africa* wherein she saw her self expos'd to so great misfortunes. Having lamented her unhappy condition as much as her great courage would permit her, she endeavour'd with that Damsel to seek some means to save her self during the night, not doubting but that if she could escape out of that detested House, and conceal her self in some place of the City, she might yet hope some assistance from the ill estate of *Heraclian's* affairs; but she saw her self depriv'd of this hope by the order *Heraclian* had taken for her guard, and approaching her Anti-chamber; instead of some women of *Carthage* which *Heraclian* had given her to serve her, she saw *Heraclian's* Guards lying at the door, and understood that for that night he had set them in the place of the women whom he had caus'd to retire. *Bellamira* would needs tempt these Guards, out of the hopes of a great recompence she promis'd them, to save her, but the fear they had of *Heraclian's* anger, rather than any ill will for *Bellamira*, had made them reject the proposition; she visited then the windows of her chamber, but she found them barr'd, and saw her self in the end reduc'd to hope for no assistance but Heavens in the danger which threatned her. It was then to Heaven that she had all her recourse, and casting her self on her knees, with that Damsel which shed tears with her, she dedicated the night almost entirely to prayers, and would not disrobe her self, nor cast her self on the Bed, though the Virgin often importun'd her.

This cruel night passed in this manner, and on the morrow, scarce did the Sun appear, but she saw *Heraclian* enter her chamber; there wanted but little that this sight had not

carried a death into her Breast, or had not at least depriv'd her of that courage which was necessary for her in this occasion; but in the end she fortified her self by the assistance of a power that she had not in vain invoked, and seeing *Heraclian* approach with a countenance which denoted but too well his detestable intentions, and with a disorder which permitted him not to explain himself; *Heraclian*, said she, *Though you come into my chamber at an hour which may make me fear your visit, I will hope, that by the assistance of the Divinity which we adore, that night which you have given me to take my resolution, may have wrought some change in yours, and made you consider the shame, and possibly the ruine to which you expose your self by that enterprize you have made me fear: You know well that your Army is defeated, that your victorious enemies are coming towards Carthage, and that in all likelyhood the Emperour, whom you have so cruelly offended, will be ere long in a condition to revenge himself of the injuries you have done him; I dare however hope, nay I dare, Heraclian, promise you a pardon for all; and I have so much confidence in the Emperour's goodness towards me, as to engage something greater for you; make advantage of this means you have both to preserve your life, and your fortune, and lose not this occasion by those crimes which will permit you no more to hope it. Consider moreover, that I am a Virgin, born of a blood sufficiently illustrious to merit respect, a Virgin who hath nothing merited of what her ill fortune makes her suffer, and a Virgin whom you cannot unworthily assault without drawing the Arms of Heaven against you.*

Bellamira was about to speak more, when *Heraclian* interrupting her, *If it be by these words, said he, that you would let me understand your resolution, you shall understand mine by those effects which you will pardon in time; nor will you be the first fair person hath forgiven offences of this nature. I prefer this pardon to that of Honorius which you offer me, and when I shall have satisfied my love, let Heaven dispose of my destiny.* Finishing these words, he called two of his men, who at a sign he made them, took the Damsel which was with *Bellamira*, and though she cryed out, and struggled in their arms with all her force, they carried her out of the Chamber, and shut the door after them.

At this action *Bellamira* not doubting but she was lost, sending a cry to Heaven, and lifting up her eyes thither, *Divinity which I adore, said she, assist me,* and at the same time seeing *Heraclian* come towards her with a fury against which all her forces were not capable to defend her, she recoyled to the corner of the chamber, to which seeing him yet approach, in a posture which permitted him not to take much heed of himself, she threw her self to the guard of his Sword which she saw by his side, and drew it out of the sheath with so much hast, that *Heraclian* had the point against his breast before he perceived the action, and when he would have defended it, the courageous *Bellamira* plunged it into his bosom to the very hilts, and made him tumble at her feet, weltring in a River of his own blood.

At the cry he made at his fall, and at the noise he made beating himself against the floor, whilst the pangs of death seisd him, those of his Attendants who waited in the Antichamber to serve him in his wicked intention, and who possibly should have joyned their forces with his to have overcome the resistance of *Bellamira*, if he could not himself do it, open'd the door in haste, and advancing into the middle of the chamber, they saw the despairing *Heraclian* tending to his end, and rendring his last sighs, and some paces distant from him the courageous *Bellamira* holding yet in her hand his Sword dy'd with his Blood, and presenting her self to them in a posture to oppose what injury they might do her, with the same courage that had so well serv'd her in so dangerous an occasion; besides, that it was difficult for any humane eye to support those looks of hers in their ordinary estate, it seem'd that the action she came from executing, the extraordinary passion with which she was animated, and that posture in which she appeared to them, terrible in her charms, yet charming in the midst of her terrours, had not only given a new splendor to her admirable beauty, but had added something of Supernatural and Divine to what Nature had placed wonderful in her person, and made her eyes dart rayes like celestial fires, which permitted none to behold her as a mortal person. In sum, she appeared such to those which entred first, and to those which followed after them into the chamber, that they remained wholly dazled, and wholly astonished, without daring to approach her, and without having the assurance to approach *Heraclian*, to give him any assistance, had he been in a condition to receive it.

Bellamira attributing this respect which withheld them, to the assistance of Heaven, to which she believ'd she owed all things, and not to the power of her beauty, continued in the place where she stood without being mov'd, and pursuing those inspirations that had so well served her; *If you come, said she, to revenge the death of Heraclian, you may kill me*

with your Arrows without approaching me, but the first that daunts near me shall lose his life by this same Sword, which by the assistance of Heaven hath defended my honour. These words pronounced with a voice in which, as well as in the beauty of their natural Charm, there appear'd a Charm extraordinary, seconded so well that effect which her beauty had produc'd, that those men remain'd immovable, looking one upon another, and consulting by their looks what resolution they ought to take. I know not however if in the end it had not prov'd fatal to *Bellamira*, or if she had not been in some danger among men who might be dazled, but not truly touch'd with beauty and virtue, if *Maximinus*, he who next *Heraclian*, had over them and over all *Africa* the chief Authority, had not at that time enter'd the Chamber. Though he had understood, and understood with truth the accident which had fall'n out, yet he could not but appear as much astonish'd as the others at the sight of this spectacle: he remain'd immovable, and uncertain in what he ought to do, when he heard to cry behind him on all sides that the Enemy appear'd, and that the Army of *Artabure* approach'd the Port of *Carthage*. This news strook the utmost fear into that man who by his countenance appear'd already affrighted, and *Bellamira* who understood it as well as himself, finding place to hope, maugre the danger that menaced her: *Maximinus*, said she, *If you will accept the pardon of Honorius I offer it you, as I have in vain offered it to Heraclian: or if you desire the death of a Virgin, who hath saved her honour by that of her Enemy, you may easily satisfy yourself, but if you have intentions like to those of Heraclian, either by this hand, or by that of a greater Defender you shall perish as well as he.*

I know not whether *Maximinus* was touch'd, either by the respect he ought to the beauty and virtue of *Bellamira*, or by the hope of the pardon she promis'd him, in a time wherein he might behold his infallible loss if this pardon fail'd him, or if in effect he had little regret for the death of a man who had too well merited it, and who was little belov'd by his own: but however it was, he by his Authority made those men retire forth of the Chamber, and they retired so much the more willingly, because the fear they had of our arrival made them desire a share in the pardon offer'd them, and then approaching *Bellamira* with infinite respect, *Against other Enemies*, said he, *we would revenge the death of Heraclian, but what arms Divine Bellamira can turn themselves against you? Or who can condemn an action worthy all the praises can be given to heroick virtue? Heraclian hath too well merited his destiny, and it would have been too glorious had he received it from so fair a hand, in an attempt less disgraceful to his memory. Permit us to lament him by giving him the honours of Sepulture, and think fit, that under the protection you offer us, we go to implore the clemency of the Emperour, and open the Gates of Carthage to his victorious Army which marches against us.*

Concluding these words, he commanded the Body of *Heraclian* to be carried out, and having some moments longer conferred with *Bellamira* concerning the orders he was to take to restore *Carthage*, and the rest of *Africa*, under the obedience of the Empire, he dispatch'd to us immediately some men, who reach'd us before we arriv'd the City, deliver'd us the Keys of the Gates, and presented me with a Letter from *Bellamira*. It was thus without finding any further resistance that we became Masters of *Carthage*, and of all *Africa*, which submitted it self wholly to its former duty: And it was thus, that by an Action worthy eternal memory, the incomparable *Bellamira* sav'd her honour from that affrightful danger into which by her misfortune she was fall'n, and executed the justice of Heaven against the cruel *Heraclian*, who ought to dye by the hand of a Woman, having slain a Woman, and a Woman descended of the blood of our Emperours.

Having set foot on shore, receiv'd the Inhabitants, and the Garrison of *Carthage*, which under the Conduct of *Maximinus* came to submit themselves to the mercy of the Emperour, and remain'd some time in the City, to place a Garrison in it, and give orders necessary upon such occasions: Filled with an impatience I could not moderate, I hasted to the Palace of the Governours of *Africa*, where *Heraclian* had so lately lost his life, and where I found the Divine *Bellamira*. I remain'd at her sight as much surpris'd as I had been at the first time, and if I found her not more fair than she appear'd to me at *Ravenna*, (because it was impossible to add any thing to it) she at least appear'd more fair than any mortal thing could be according to my imagination, and I found my self more lost with love at this second sight than I had been at the first. It had been easie for *Bellamira* to have perceiv'd it, if she had observ'd it, for my whole Countenance made sufficiently appear the trouble that perplex'd me. I bended a knee before her, and kiss'd against her intention that hand she reach'd out to raise me. She seem'd not troubled at this Action, but she could not suffer my submission, and she told me with a Countenance full of sweetness, that she was not the Wife of *Honorius*, though he had been pleas'd to honour her with his affection, and there-

fewe pray'd me to treat in another manner. In summ, she thanked me for the part she might have in what I had done against *Heraclian*, and protested to me, that she would all her life contesse her self oblig'd to me, though I was sufficiently recompens'd by the Glory of my Actions. I answer'd her obliging discourse with all imaginable respect, though my passion made so much disorder in my Spirit, as left me little liberty to explain my self, but having excus'd my self from the praises she gave me; *It is to you Divine Bellamira (said I) that all the Earth owes those praises they are not capable to give you: for by this effect of your admirable virtue, you have so much surpass'd all Examples Antiquity can furnish us with, as you do surpass by your Celestial beauty, that which all Ages have boasted of as most fair. In summ, it belongs to you alone to punish Criminals, to return Provinces into the obedience of the Empire, and to make dye by your Sword those who merit not the glory to dye for your beauty.* I held her likewise in some longer discourse, to which she answer'd with all the marks of esteem I could desire, or that I should have desired if my love could have paid it self with some esteem alone.

She made me likewise know in some following days converse, that her good thoughts for me might extend to a friendship and a confidence, and discover'd to me her thoughts concerning the love the Emperour had for her, with a freeness which made me believe she had a good opinion of me: But with this knowledge which flattered me with some hope, I had not yet the boldness to discover the love I had for her, and it was indeed accompanied with so much respect, that it was not without difficulty I took the resolution. In fine, I determin'd it by the force of all my courage (though certainly I had never been wanting of fidelity to my Emperour in any other affair, only in a passion which hath caused to him so many miseries, and which hath lost him in the World) and one day talking concerning *Heraclian* (of whom she made me understand all those things I have recounted to you) after I had patiently hearkened to what she told me of him; *But madam, said I, Do you believe that if the Crime of Heraclian had not rendred his death odious, he had more reason to be lamented than ather men? Or that it would not perhaps be as sweet to dye suddenly by your fair hand, as to dye by your eyes a death more slow and doleful? I should believe it like you,* answer'd she, *if that death by my eyes could be truly a death.* *Ab Madam,* (said I without permitting her to pass further) *believe if you please that we may dye truly by your fair eyes, and that amongst those which are wounded, Artabure is no less to be lamented than Heraclian.*

I pronounc'd these last words letting fall my eyes with a behaviour which made *Bellamira* sufficiently see the fear I had to displease her. She blush'd and remain'd some time without speaking, but afterwards breaking silence with a Countenance that denoted more grief than anger, *Ab Artabure,* said she, *you would give me an infinite trouble, if I could believe that what you tell me is true. You see too well,* said I, *that it is only truth, and not a hope to be happy, which hath forced me to speak, since there is little appearance that she which hath disdain'd Honorius with the Empire, will regard Artabure. It is neither,* replied *Bellamira,* *the Empire in Honorius, nor the default of an Empire in Artabure, that can cause the happiness or the misfortune of the one or the other, but because neither Honorius nor Artabure, by reason of the condition of my fortune, can ever hope any thing from me. I am much perplex'd that a man for whom I have an infinite esteem, and to whom I am oblig'd, should go about to trouble his repose by an unprofitable passion, but I shall bring to this misfortune to which I am with little reason expos'd, that remedy which long time since I ought to have apply'd.*

She pronounc'd these words with so much appearance of displeasure, that I was touch'd with a most sensible grief, and beholding her with an aspect which might testify it, *Ab Madam,* said I, *would to God that I had fallen on the point of my Sword, or that I had perished in the Fleets, if I am so unhappy as to have incens'd you. It is not anger you have created in me,* replied *Bellamira,* *but I could wish with all my heart, that you had spar'd me the sorrow to see you lament for an ill which I cannot comfort, or that you had left me in an estate to have had always that confidence in you which I believed due to your virtue.* Those persons which at this time approach'd to us, permitted us not to proceed further in this discourse, and I remain'd in a condition not capable to make any assur'd judgment of my fortune: for though on the one side I found some comfort in the satisfaction to have discover'd my self to *Bellamira*, yet on the other, I saw little appearance to hope after the knowledge I ought to have had of her great constancy and firmness of mind.

In the mean time I was oblig'd by my duty, to make a progress through some Cities of *Africa*, to settle them in their obedience to the Emperour, and where my presence being absolutely necessary, whatever grief I felt to absent my self from *Bellamira*, I was constrain'd to do it, by leaving her in a place where she was treated with as much respect as if she had been the wife of *Honorius*; and in taking leave of her for some days, I entreated her to expect my return, after which I would accompany her to whatever place she would please

please to retire, giving charge my self before my departure, to prepare all things for her Voyage. My Journey was the shortest possible, and though I had many Cities to visit, and that I found Affairs proper to stay me, the impatience I had to return to see *Bellamira*, permitted me not to stay more than fifteen days out of *Carthage*; But O Gods what astonishment was mine, when at my reentrance I understood *Bellamira* was no longer there, and that under pretext of going to walk at *Hippone*, to confer with a man who sojourned there, called *Augustin*, whose piety and admirable devotion had acquired him a marvellous reputation, not only in *Africa*, but in all other parts of the world, she had withdrawn eight days before, and no news possible to be learn'd of her. This pierced me to the bottom of my heart with the most cruel grief I could receive, but she confirmed it much more strongly in my soul, when one of the women which had served her at *Carthage*, gave me a Letter which she had left with her for me, and in which I found these words.

Bellamira to Artabure.

IT is not out of a fear to find an *Heraclian* in *Artabure*, that I flye from you; I know too well your virtue, to entertain so injurious a suspicion; but it is to render to Heaven what I have for too long time owed it, and to acknowledge the assistance I received in that last misfortune into which I fell. Adieu *Artabure*, believe that I shall all my life have an esteem and acknowledgments for you, and take not, to seek me, that pains, you will take in vain.

In my Letter she had inclosed another for the Emperour, and because she had left it open, I read these words.

Bellamira to the Emperour Honorius.

THe displeasure which I should have to see my self accus'd of Ingratitude, by a Prince to whom I am bound, makes me Sir, take this leave of you, before I go to seek that repose to which I am called. The memory of the honours you have done me, is engraven in my heart in such manner, that neither time nor the accidents of my life can ever deface it; pardon to the misfortune of my life, the little means I have to acknowledge it; and be pleased to believe, that for the Empire you have with so much generosity offered me, I would willingly give you that of the whole world, if it were in my disposition. Remember in the mean time, that you are Emperour of the Romans, and Son to the great *Theodosius*. and make use of your virtue, to forget an unfortunate Virgin, who will never pardon her self the trouble she hath brought to your repose.

At the sight of these Letters a good part of my constancy forsook me, and I failed but little to testify as much weakness as *Honorius* had before done; yet I endeavoured with all my power to hinder *Cassinus* and the young *Aetius* from knowing the cause of my grief; and I daily represented unto them the sorrow I had, not to be able to return *Bellamira* to the Emperour, as he had commanded me. I therefore declared to them the intention I had to seek her, and that I would not retake the way to *Rome*, without having visited a part of *Africa*, to learn news of her, they testified great sorrow, both for the loss of *Bellamira*, and for my resolution, but they could not make me change it whatever endeavours they used, and being charged with the command of the Army which I left them, and with the Letter of the Emperour which I gave them, they embarked to repass for *Italy*.

I parted from *Carthage* as soon as they, seeing I could there learn nothing of *Bellamira*, and fill'd with a mortal grief, I posted with a little equipage through all the Ports of *Africa*, and almost through all the Cities to inform my self. I found not at *Hippone* that famous *Augustin* from whom I believed I might draw some knowledge of her retreat; and who was departed some days before without being known what way he took. All these things, and the Letters I had received from *Bellamira*, made me judge that she was retired into some Monastery of Virgins, consecrated to the service of Heaven, and possibly to that she had made choice of at *Ravenna*, where she might have changed her name to deprive all the world of the knowledge of her retreat. In summ, I sought through

all, but I fought in vain, without being able either to hear news of *Bellamira*, or find consolation for my grief; but after that I had quitted *Africa*, and put my self to Sea, to see if I should be more happy there, than on the Land, after those courtes which it will be needless to relate to you, and after having escaped many Tempests in which I had possibly perished if my life had been more happy, I coasted *Spain* and the *Gaules*, and having run through the *Britain* Ocean, I was conducted by my fortune to a Port in the Country of the *Frisons*, where being known for a *Roman* by the Host with whom I lodged, he told me in great secret, that a little time before, the great *Constance*, him whose reputation was so fairly spread throughout the Universe, had lodged with him, and had been known contrary to his intention: he likewise told me some particulars which permitted me not to doubt it, and gave me some knowledge of the way he had taken. The remembrance of *Bellamira*, how powerful soever it was in me, could not deprive me of the honour I ought to have for that name of *Constance* so dear unto me, and the hopes I had to find some consolation with him, rather than in any other place of the world, made me resolve to seek him, by the tokens of his Arms and Equipage; I met with no small difficulty in it, and I often lost his trace, though I followed it as much as it was possible for me, from the place where he had lodged; but in the end, I have as you see effected it, and have encountered him by a good fortune, only capable to comfort me in my afflictions.

The end of the Second Book of the Third Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK III.

Artabure having thus finished his Discourse, *Constance*, who could not understand the end of it without being sensible of the affection he testified to him, breaking silence so soon as he had ceased to speak; *How too much generous Artabure*, said he, *is it then the unfortunate Constance you now seek in Germany? And that love to Bellamira which should in all likelyhood employ your entire thoughts, could it yet leave a place for the remembrance of one so miserable, whom the change of his fortune renders so different from what he was at the time you gave him your affection? In truth, this proof of your friendship touches me as strongly as it ought, and as the loss of Bellamira could not make you forget Constance, the loss of Placidia cannot hinder me from feeling a true joy at the sight of Artabure. I hope likewise, wholly unfortunate, and wholly disconsolate as I am, to contribute something to your consolation, and make you know that you ought not to make any comparison between your evils and those of persons truly unhappy. When those of the King of the Franks are known to you, you will not dare to think yours to be true miseries; and for mine, they are too well known to you to find any equality with yours. I believe that you might love Bellamira with that height of affection I have loved Placidia, and I will likewise, against the custom of all other Lovers, believe that she was no less fair, nor less amiable than Placidia; but in losing Placidia I lost a good which ought to have been mine by my services, by her affection by the promise of the Emperour, and by her own; whilst you have never been loved by Bellamira, have not known her, have scarce seen her, and in losing her have lost nothing ought ever to have*

have been yours. If you have any cause to lament your fortune, it is the not having been loved of Bellamira, but in that I must accuse you more than bewail you, and if I've may in some intervals hearken to reason, what is it that you seek? What is it that you pretend? From a person, who by all her procedure, and particularly by the refusal she made of the Empire, and of an Emperour young and amiable in his person, might well make you judge that she was engaged in another love; which in all likelihood permitted her not to be sensible of yours. It will be difficult for you (said now King Pharamond to Artabure) to find two persons more favourable than Constance and my self to a faithful Lover, or to a passionate one; but let me tell you, that if the esteem I have for your merit had not concern'd me for you, it should not be to you that I would extend my compassion in those things which I have understood from your Discourse; and that if I find any misfortune for you in what has happen'd, it is, that you have had an affection for a person from whom you could never hope any, and not that you have lost her by her own will, without your fault, nor in that likewise you could never be lov'd by her. And how had you done with Honorius, added Constance, whose disgrace would have been infallible, and a disgrace which would have been accompanied with some reproach in the world? To what would you reduce your fortune, and the effects of those fair actions you have done? And in fine, abandoning all things, to what place would you retire with a person who finds not retreats for her self in the world? For men truly enamour'd, said Artabure, I find that you reason very notably and smartly, but I know not whether in your own loves you will leave to reason so much power as you preserve in your discourse in speaking of other men. In the love of Constance, replied Pharamond, I see nothing which is not conformable to reason, save only the opinion he hath to be more miserable than my self; but for mine, if the particulars were known to you, you would have sufficient cause to say, that wherein I have devoted all to my passion, I have not too much consulted reason. But it is too true, (added he with a sigh) that in the misfortunes which have overturn'd the order of reason in my love, there hath been no rule to follow, nor example to propose. And for my self (said Constance to Artabure) as I know my self too unfortunate, I would not desire your condition should be like mine: Nor shall my prayers and counsels be wanting to make you forget that person, from whom according to my opinion, you ought never to have expected any kindness. In truth, (replied Pharamond, having ponder'd in his mind for some time) however oppress'd I am with the considerations of my proper miseries, I cannot hinder my self from being strongly concern'd in the fortunes of this Bellamira, who in so little time hath made so much noise in two parts of the world, and I owe her so much good will, for having given a death, at a time so glorious for her, to that Barbarian, who executed with so much cruelty the Orders of a Master whom he afterwards betrayed, that I cannot understand she is miserable without truly afflicting my self, and wishing a happy end to her misfortunes, which in all likelihood make her wander out of the Country of her Nativity. "I am touch'd like you (added Constance) and though by "the love she kindled in Honorius, she hindred him from labouring in the assistance of "Italy, and for this reason hath contributed to my particular misfortune, there was so "little fault in her, that I cannot accuse her, nor check my self for praising her for the "death of Heraclian, and being sorry for the little satisfaction she shewed to have in the "world. She could not make her self be known, replied King Pharamond, by two more "noble actions, than the death of Heraclian, and the refusal of the Empire; and in this I find "something so great, and above any thing common, that it would be difficult for me to persuade "my self that she were not of illustrious birth. She is so without doubt, replied Artabure, "and had you seen her, all things in her person would but too much confirm you in that "opinion. But Artabure, (said Constance to him) is it possible that she should be so fair as "you represent her, or may I not well ask the question whether she were as fair as Placidia? "You may better ask me the question, replied Artabure, than I can reply; but without "making any stop at the judgment which your passion and mine may cause us make, or "without particularizing any thing of the beauty of the Princess Placidia, whom I con- "tinually reverence as I ought, I will tell you, that all disinterested persons who have seen "Bellamira, have judg'd that there was nothing so fair as she in the whole world. They (answered the King of the Franks, though coldly) have not possibly travelled over all the world, and it may be that in some part of the world there may be something found as fair as Bellamira.

They had some farther discourse on this subject, after which King Pharamond leaving Artabure with Constance, return'd for some time to his apartment, where he had some Orders to give to the Officers of his Army. He entertain'd himself for a while with Ibere and Charamont, concerning a design he had a desire to execute the day following against his Enemies; observing with impatience that repose in which his respect to Rosamond had ob-

ig'd him for some days past to leave them, and not doubting but that without wounding the consideration he had for her, he might assault them in those Quarters, farthest distant from her Tents, he gave Orders to *Charamont*, to prepare all things for what he was to execute on the morrow. Afterwards he visited Prince *Marcomire*, whom he found in a good condition, and very impatient to quit his chamber, and from thence he return'd to sup with *Constance* and *Artabure*.

After Supper, *Constance* spied the Persian *Mitranes*, Esquire of Prince *Varanez*, and him whom he had left him to recount the particulars of his Adventures, which he only yet confusedly understood; both *Constance* and *Pharamond* had a great curiosity to hear the relation of them, and therefore *Constance* no sooner saw *Mitranes*, but addressing himself to *Pharamond*, *If you have still, said he, the same desire you have testified to me, to understand the Adventures of the Prince of Persia, and if this evening you have no affairs which may hinder you from lending a time necessary to their recital, we will entreat Mitranes to take the pains to recount them, and I assure my self by those things I have already confusedly understood, that you will have no small pleasure to understand in the same day, news both from the East and West. If I may not interrupt the discourse of Mitranes, (replied Pharamond) I shall be very willing to hear my part with you of the recital he is to make you, and if there be any things which merit to be kept secret, you may assure him for me, that I will inviolably keep them so. I promise him the same thing for Artabure (replied Constance) and I assure him moreover, that the Prince his Master shall not be at all troubled that he hath trusted them either to the one or the other. There is without doubt, (said Mitranes with a becoming respect) something in the discourse you desire from me, is so particular, as not to be published, and persons so eminent are concerned in it, that I should be very sorry to give the knowledge of it to men less worthy this confidence or esteem of my Prince. But since he hath commanded me to obey you, I shall do it without fear of being blam'd, or without so much as a fear to divulge the secret of his affairs, by trusting them to persons who know too well how to discern things which ought to be kept private from such as may be made publick. You may, replied Constance, have an entire assurance of it, and we will be obliged to you, if in a time wherein the King can give his attention, and Artabure and my self cannot better employ our selves, you will satisfy our curiosity, and a curiosity (concluded he with a sigh) which in the present estate of our life, the sole esteem we have for your Prince can inspire us with.* *Mitranes* answered no farther to these words of *Constance*, but that he was ready to obey him, and being entred within the rail of his Bed, from whence he made all other persons retire, he remained alone with his three Illustrious Auditors, and being seated by the command of *Constance* and *Pharamond*, he began his discourse in this manner.

The History of Varanez Prince of Persia.

THERE are few persons in the world unacquainted with the power of the great Kings of Persia, who first in the world made Nations behold the Magnificence and Grandeur of the Royal Dignity. All the world hath understood, to what degree the great *Cyrus* advanc'd this Monarchy, and in what splendour it remained under his Successors (who extended their Dominions over all *Asia*, and a good part of *Africa*) until the last *Darius*, who yielding to the fortune of *Alexander*, saw that proud Dominion overturn'd by his fall, and so many great Provinces as had compos'd his Empire, subdued under the power of his Enemies. Yet they were not the Successors of *Alexander*, which reigned over Persia: for soon soon after his death it was snatch'd away, together with *Parthia*, *Hircania*, *Margiana*, and many other great Provinces, by the valiant *Arfaces*, who form'd and left to his Descendants, that proud Empire of the *Parthians*, which under those great *Arfacides*, whose names have been so famous in the world for four ages, oppos'd the Roman Puissance, and in the end, whilst *Cordianus* held the Reigns of the Roman Empire, return'd from the *Parthians* to the *Persians*, in the person of the illustrious *Artaxares*, or *Artaxerxes* the Persian, who having defeated *Artaban*, the last King of *Parthians*, restored its first name to that great Monarchy, and reestablished in the world the ancient glory of the Persian Kings.

After this great *Artaxares* Restorer of our Empire, it was extended and strengthened in its primitive lustre under his Nephews, who reign'd without discontinuation, until the time of the great *Isdigerdes*, who is at present seated in the Throne of *Cyrus*, and hath rul'd the *Persians* for many years, under a fair and happy Government. His Ancestors

had maintain'd great and cruel Wars against the *Roman* Emperours, in which, Fortune had not always been favourable to the *Romans*, and particularly in the reign of *Sapor*, and the Empire of *Valerian*, who falling under the power of *Sapor*, languish'd till death in a miserable captivity, and a captivity less disgraceful to him than to his Vanquisher, accus'd through all the Earth to have proudly and unworthily used his Victory. This rigor having incens'd with a just resentment the Successors of *Valerian*, rendred the War yet more cruel than it had ever been, between the *Romans* and the *Persians*; but *Isdigestes* being come to the Crown at that time in which *Theodosius* yet commanded both the Oriental and Occidental Empires: These two great men, both the one and the other repleat with moderation, and many other excellent virtues, stoppt by a happy peace the misfortune of many Ages, and agreed together in such sort, that after his death *Arcadius* the eldest of his children, to whom the Empire of the East fell in the division, testific'd to esteem nothing so dear as the friendship of King *Isdigestes*, or *Isdigerder*, and not only preserv'd it diligently during his life, but dying in an age whercin he appear'd to have hardly begun to live, and leaving his Son *Theodosius* aged only ten years, instead of casting his eyes on his brother *Honorius*, who reign'd in the *Occidental* Empire, or on many others both of his blood and religion, to whom he might have trusted his Government and Conduct, out of the good opinion he had of the fidelity and integrity of the King of the *Persians*, he declar'd him Tutor of his Son, charging those who were present at his last Will and Testament, to pray him by all the friendship he had promised him, and which they had so carefully preserv'd during their lives, to take care of him as of his own, and to uphold his young years with his counsel and assistance. This Action of *Arcadius* astonish'd the whole World, and that of *Isdigestes* was praised as well for the diligence he took for the education of the young *Theodosius*, as for that he had to keep his Empire in peace, employing his Arms for his interests as well as for his own. There was likewise this Circumstance considerable, that having drawn near him with infinite difficulty, the sage and virtuous *Antiochus*, a man highly considerable for his great virtues, and having begun to employ him to govern the young years of the Prince *Varanez* his Son, who was born four or five years before *Theodosius*, he took from his Son that excellent Governour, to give him to the young Prince, trull'd to him, and sent him to *Constantinople*, where he hath educated the young Emperour with that prudence which hath acquired him a marvellous esteem through all the World.

It was then from this great and wise *Isdigestes* that Prince *Varanez* my Master was born, his only Son and lawful Successor: and as in his blooming years the King his Father saw all things in his person answerable to his desires, so he employed all his diligence to make him a great Prince, and forgot nothing which might improve either in his body or mind those advantages he had receiv'd from Nature. The illustrious *Antiochus* whom I mention'd but now, educated him until his fifteenth year, nor did he leave him to go to *Constantinople* but with infinite sorrow. At this time the young *Varanez* had already receiv'd those fair impressions he could desire in him, so that those who came after him had no great difficulty to render him in a little time such as the King his Father could wish him. As his Body was perfectly well made, and such as you may have observ'd, Masters were given him, which by the excellent inclination they found in it, soon rendred him more understanding and more ready in all sorts of exercise than they were themselves: and as he had his mind lively, eager and ready of apprehension, they instructed him in all noble Sciences with an extraordinary success, so that it might be said with truth, that there were not only few Princes, but few men in the World who both in body and mind had better profited than himself under an excellent education. He was instructed in Learning by a man whom the King his Father had drawn from his solitudes, and forc'd as it were with no small pain from his books and studies, which was an *Athenian* Philosopher named *Leontin*, a man accomplish'd in all sorts of Sciences, and comparable for his Learning to the most famous men of Antiquity: he gave to my Prince four or five years of his time, but after that would return, notwithstanding what the King could do to perswade his stay; and so he re-took his way towards *Athens*, to absent himself from the trouble and noise of a great Court not agreeable to his inclinacions, to go Cultivat, as he said, a young Plant which he had left in his house, and which at that time might have need of his presence.

In fine, both by the diligence of *Leontin*, and that of his other Masters, *Varanez* was rendred a most accomplished Prince: Nor did the natural qualities of his Soul give less satisfaction to the King his Father than what his education might have yielded him. All his inclinacions did naturally carry him to virtue, nor is he capable of any thoughts may absent it: He hath an emulation for great men, a horror for the wicked, and a compa-

tion for the miserable: And in summ, all those marks can be desir'd in a Soul truly noble, and truly great. But I must confess likewise, that this greatness of spirit is possibly to such an excess as might receive some moderation, and that as it makes him despise all things for glory, and labour with an eternal desire to acquire Reputation by noble actions, and to surpass those of the greatest men, which he proposes to himself for examples, so it gives him a fierceness which almost mounts to a Pride that cannot suffer any comparison, or measure, and which makes him look upon all others as much below himself. The King his Father, who is a Prince discreet, sage, and moderate, would often correct this default, but could not compass his desires: yet in the end he excused the effect by the cause, which was nothing else without doubt but a Spirit, great and exalted above that of other men. And this judgment which he made out of sole appearances was confirmed soon after by the fair proofs my Prince gave: For not long after some of the Provinces of the *Partians* rebelling against the King, and rising in a Rebellion so great and general, that it threatned no small danger to the State, the King being obliged to send a great Army to bring them to their obedience, the Prince, who now was past his nineteenth year, beholding with joy this occasion to signalize himself, cast himself at the feet of the King to demand this employment, and press'd him in such sort that he could not refuse it him.

It was now that I was plac'd near him, and from this time I can better than any other person, give you a faithful account of what hath happened to him. I will tell you then but in two words, (for it is not in these places of my recital that I would enlarge my self) that in his first exploits of Arms he did a hundred Actions worthy eternal memory, though in truth his Heat was something too boyling, and that desire of glory which had the predominancy over his Spirit, transported him sometimes to more than was necessary: That he beat the revolted in many memorable Combats, though their Forces were no weaker than ours: that in the end he vanquish'd them, and ruin'd them entirely in a great battel, by the loss of which they were constrain'd to receive all the Conditions he would impose, and return intirely to their duty.

The King ravish'd with these admirable beginnings, made a thousand Caresses to the Prince at his return, and treated him as these fair beginnings had merited: But a year after the King of the *Sarazens* with a mighty power, having assaulted our Frontiers, and the King having with infinite diligence levied a puissant Army, the young *Varanez* plac'd himself in the head of it, clad in the fairest Arms in the world (for I ought to tell you, that no man ever carried more rich nor more glorious ones than he ordinarily did) and marching towards the Frontier, gain'd two Battels against the Enemies, and after having chased them out of our Territories, assaulted them so fiercely in their own, and weakned them with such considerable losses, that they made a Peace as advantagious for us as the King could desire.

By these great Actions the Reputation of the young *Varanez* was spread through all *Asia*, and he was spoken of as a Prince who might in all likelyhood one day equal the glory of his famous Ancestors. The King his Father beheld him with a joy which he could not dissemble, and to sweeten what appear'd somewhat too haughty in his spirit, he made him employ the leisure which a profound peace afforded him, in many Braveries in which the *Persians* yielded little to any other Nations, exhorting him himself to seek the company of Ladies, or any thing which might somewhat abate his fierceness. He kept him a whole year near him in this manner, but after that time, though he beheld him present with him with infinite joy, and could difficultly suffer his absence, yet for some Considerations which he discover'd to few persons, he was pleas'd that he should depart from *Persia*, to make a pleasing Voyage which he propos'd to him. He having been Tutor to the young Emperour *Theodosius* Son of *Arcadius*; and since it was by his diligence and care that he was educated as I have told you, and as all the world hath known, he look'd upon him as his Son rather than as his Ally, and had continually entertain'd such a correspondence with him, that in all things important, when time permitted him, the young Emperour did nothing without his counsel, and by his Embassadors treated with him as if he had been his Father. It was believed likewise, that only the difference of Religion hindred them from uniting themselves by greater Alliances, and that if this difficulty could have been overcome, these two Houses would have tyed themselves by other knots than those of friendship. Both the one and the other often testified the mutual desire they had to see each other, but as *Theodosius* could not depart the Empire, especially in a time when it was threatned on all sides by those Nations which declared War against it: So *Isdigestes* retain'd in *Persia* by reasons no less powerful, and incommoded by an Age already far advanced, not being able to leave his dominions, resolv'd that Prince *Varanez* his Son, who was in a condition more free,

free, and in an age might render such a Voyage pleasant and profitable together, should, to testify to *Theodosius* the true affection he had for him, go visit him at *Constantinople*, and confirm in person that alliance he desired should be eternally between their Towns.

My Prince receiv'd with no small joy the Proposition which the King made him, of a Voyage, from which in all likelyhood he might hope both pleasure and divertisement, and pressing it himself, he prepared with an impatience, which made it be judged he did it with delight; having been always very Splendid and Magnificent in all things, he was not wanting to be so in his Equipage for such a Voyage, and all things were prepared answerable to the greatness of the degree he held in the world. I was of the number of those appointed to follow him, and by my good fortune was none of those for whom he had the least consideration, or whom he the least honoured with his confidence. When all things were ready he departed from *Media*, where the Court at present was, but before he would go to *Constantinople*, by a curiosity agreeable to his age, and which was approved by those from whom he took counsel, he resolv'd to visit a part of the Cities of *Greece*, and particularly those of whom History hath made so illustrious mention, which had furnished Antiquity with so many famous Captains, and learned Philosophers, and which a thousand years before had made war with so much glory against *Xerxes*, and the first *Darius* his Ancestors.

To effect this design, instead of taking the shortest way, which had been by the *Hellaspont*, he pass'd by *Armenia*, and *Pamphilia*, and leaving *Bithinia* on our right hand, embark'd on the *Egean Sea*, and leaving to the right the Islands of *Chios*, *Andros*, *Mytelene*, and *Delos*, he land'd in *Peloponnesus*, where he saw the famous *Sparta*, so much renowned for its excellent Laws, for its ancient Discipline, and for those great men it yielded *Greece*. After *Sparta* he saw *Sicone*, *Epidaurus*, and the remains of the miserable *Corinth*; *Argos*, and *Micene*, celebrated for those Heroes they sent to the ruine of *Troy* and *Peloponnesus*; and passing into *Achaia*, he saw the illustrious *Thebes* (less famous for its hundred Gates, than for its *Epaminondas*, its *Pelopidas*, and other great persons it bore) *Delphos*, and *Eleucinia*; and with more curiosity than all the rest, he would see the ancient City of *Athens*, the Country of *Phaion*, *Pericles*, *Aristides*, *Alcibiades*, *Themistocles*, and *Miltiades*, who by Sea and Land had gained Battels so memorable against a world of enemies, which his Ancestors had arm'd against *Greece*. But in those which he visit'd (for he executed not entirely his design) we found only the miserable remnants of what we sought, and scarce found we any trace of what Antiquity had so much celebrated, which the injuries of time had cruelly ruin'd.

My Prince was so displeas'd at what he saw, that he forgot a part of the desire he had to see the rest, and of many other Cities which he had propos'd to himself to visit, he now propos'd to himself only the sight of *Athens*, and he told us that it was less, because it had produced those excellent men, who had gain'd against his Predecessors the Battels of *Marathon*, and *Salamina*, than because it was the Country of his Master, the Philosopher *Leontin*, a man considerable through all the world for his profound Learning, and admirable virtue; in effect, there were few men comparable to him either for the one or the other; and as he was accomplish'd in all sorts of good Doctrines, so he had found out true Wisdom, and the disdain of things vain and unworthy of his esteem. After his departure from *Persia* he had very particularly apply'd himself to Judicial Astrology, and had found such delight in this Science which had made him neglect a part of others to which in his younger days he had been more addict'd, and by which he had acquir'd so much Reputation. He had been request'd by several great Princes to accept an employment like to that he had in our Court, and he might if he would have purchas'd great riches, and have gain'd no small esteem in the world; but he despis'd riches as things too vile to merit his respects, and dedicating himself intirely to his Books, and to his Studies, had embrac'd a solitary life, from which no consideration was capable to withdraw him.

Prince *Varanez* remembering the good instructions he had given him, both in learning and manners, had preserv'd in his Spirit an infinite esteem for him, and at his approaching *Athens*, where he knew he dwelt, seem'd to rejoyce out of the hopes he had to see him: He was not deceiv'd in this expectation, and though the solitary *Leontin* seldom left his Closet, and had little conversation with the world, yet for so illustrious a Scholar, and a Scholar in whom he no less consider'd the fair fruits of his instructions, and the glory of his noble actions, than his Royal Extract, he at present left his solitude, and came to meet him half a days Journey from *Athens*. *Varanez* receiv'd him with all possible marks of esteem, spok'e to him in the most obliging words in the world, embrac'd him many times, and caus'd him to ride in his Chariot, praying him to give him some days of his con-

versation, and not to leave him, at least while he should stay in *Athen*. The Sage *Leontin* received the Caresses of *Varanez* with great humility (and so much the greater, because he was not ignorant of the difficulty he had to bow his Spirit to the least submision) and offered to show him carefully all those things in the City which might merit his curiosity.

My Prince had a most magnificent Entrance, but that which seemed to us most rare (for all the rest was indeed but what was ordinary) was, that after that he had alighted at the Palace prepared for him, by a custom which the *Athenians* observe when they would do any one extraordinary honours, all the fair Virgins of *Athen* (I say the fair ones, for the others were not admitted to this Ceremony) entred almost as soon as he into the great Hall where he was to dine, with habits very magnificent, and Garlands of Flowers on their heads, and presented him in the name of the City Baskets of Fruits, Flowers, and other presents of that nature; *Varanez* received this fair Company with infinite civility, but he had no sooner cast his eyes on her who was at the head of them all, and who as the fairest had been chosen to speak for all, but he was ravished, and astonished at her admirable beauty. And one may truly say, that his astonishment, and the other thoughts which succeeded it in his mind, could not be caused but by an Object so transcending; and that all the beauties we had seen in *Persia* (where the women are ordinarily very fair) or in all our Voyage, had nothing which in the least part might approach that wonder we at present beheld. Her Stature was lofty and delicate, but the most straight and freest in the world, and accompanied in her carriage, and in her gait, with a grace wholly charming, and almost supernatural. Her complexion the whitest, the most united, the most carnation in those places where it ought to be, the most delicate, and in fine, the fairest in the world, receives a new splendor from her sable curls, and from that of two eyes of the same colour, but so beautiful, so lively, so bright, and so sweet together, that it is impossible to find in any others such flames accompanied with so charming a sweetness, nor such sweetness accompanied with so bright a vigour; the colour of her lips, and the admirable form of her fair mouth, have beauties which no discourse can represent; and when by a sigh full of charms, or by any other action of her mouth, her fair teeth were discovered, both by their dazzling whiteness, and their admirable order, they gave a new splendor to her countenance, which begat the most agreeable effect in the world. There were a hundred other excellent things in this person, part of which have not appeared to me; as her neck, which I never saw uncovered, and others which can be but imperfectly apprehended by what discourse I can make you. This admirable person was clad with a habit not improper to cause a great part of her beauties to be observ'd, and by the dressing of her head after the Greek fashion, a part of her locks, as black as Ebony, fell in curls upon her shoulders, and the other on her fair cheeks, making by these two extremities of black and white, those two opposite colours shine more advantageously.

But if *Varanez* had been surpris'd at the first view of this beauty, now when this admired person open'd her mouth to acquit the employment with which she was charged of speaking for the rest, and that to the grace of the action which accompanied the discourse, and to that charm which proceeded from the sound of her voice, she added words full of eloquence and delicateness, and explained her self in terms worthy the greatest politeness of the ancient Greeks, the Prince remained surpris'd, both by his eyes, and by his ears, in such manner, that neither all he had understood from *Leontin*, nor all his natural boldness could furnish him, either with courage or words to answer to the discourse she had made; but in the end, opening his mouth in disorder, and without knowing what he ought to say; *Divine person*, began he, *Divine person*, repeated he again, *The astonishment which the sight of an Object so admirable may give to all hearts, leaves me not liberty to explain my self, nor have I words but to tell you, that neither ancient Greece, nor all the Nations of the world have ever produc'd anything which may approach your beauty.*

He spoke only these words in answer to her discourse, and afterwards turning himself towards *Leontin* which stood behind him; *Ab Leontin*, said he, *Is it possible that amongst the rarities you have recounted me of your City, you have made no mention of a wonder which is without doubt the greatest ornament of it.* *Leontin* sigh'd at these words of the Prince; and in fine, answering him with an austere gravity; *That which you call a wonder, my Lord, said he, does not seem worthy for you to take the least notice of it, nor is it with a Virgin of so mean a merit that I ought to entertain you. From any other than you, replied Varanez, I should with difficulty suffer such a discourse, but I see well you speak of beauties in Philosophy, and like a man more us'd to your Books, than the contemplation of so fair an Object; tell me however, added he, what is the name, and what is the Birth of this admirable person?*

If after having spoken so unworthily of her, I should yet address my self to you. No person, (replied the Philosopher lighting) can tell you more of her than my self, and since you command it, my Lord, I will tell you, that this Virgin is called Athenais, and that her Father is Leontin. How Leontin, cryed my Prince, Is this admirable person then your Daughter? and is this that Athenais of whom I have heard you speak, and whom you left so little in your house when you were called to the Court of Persia? "It is the same, my Lord, (replied Leontin) and it is a Virgin to whom you ought to pardon the faults your presence makes her commit, so much the readier, because she hath passed almost all her life in a Chamber, and that for any other but the Prince of Persia she had not appeared at this Ceremony. "O Gods, (cryed my Prince, mov'd by the first passion that had transforted him) can it be that a person so admirable should be born to Leontin, and not to an Emperour of the Orient? For being the Daughter of a poor Philosopher, replied Leontin, she hath her inclinations nothing meaner, and we have understood, both she, and me, to make less esteem of Fortune than Virtue. "My Father, (said the Prince, for he often called him so) I have not spoke these words to offend you, but since all the world are not Philosophers, you ought not to wonder that I have withed your Daughter a Fortune proportionable to her merit, and our inclinations.

At these words, without speaking farther to him, or to any other of those persons who stood in great multitudes in the Hall, approaching Athenais, who was retired some paces amongst the other Virgins, after she had acquitted her self of what she had in charge, and addressing himself to her with as much respect as if she had been truly what he wished her, "Fair Athenais, said he, as you are the Daughter of my Father, and I the Scholar of yours, I have a little more right to approach you than if there were not this kind of alliance between us, and you must permit me to look upon you at present, not as the Deputy of the fair Virgins of Athens, but as the Glory of Greece, and the Ornament of the whole world. The charming Athenais blush'd at this discourse of Varanez, and her modesty made her keep some moments of silence; but as she was admirably well instructed, not only in all things which persons of her Age or Sex might understand, but in many fair Sciences which ordinarily pass their learning and knowledge, and as her Father seeing in her mind no less beauty than in her body, had improv'd it with an admirable diligence, she remov'd her bashfulness by a modest boldness; and having observed in the countenance of Leontin, which she consulted with her eyes, that she was permitted to answer the Prince's discourse; "My Lord, said she, As the first quality you do me the honour to give me is more due than the last, I receive it with much more joy, and I doubt not but it was for the honour my Father had to contribute to your education, rather than for my beauty, that I was chosen among my companions to pay you the duty of our City. "Your Father, replied Varanez, is much more considerable for the birth of Athenais, than for the education of the Prince of Persia; and when with me he had educated all the Princes of the world, he would have been for it less glorious than for having sent into the world the fairest person of the world. But, (added he, speaking to her a little lower) it is not here that I am to dispute with you concerning this question, and I hope, as the Scholar of your Father, you will permit me to return the visit I have received from you.

After these words he spoke no more to her particularly, not finding himself in a condition to entertain her, concerning any other thing but what he was sensible of, and not judging it convenient to speak to her of that in so great company: A little time after the Company of Virgins retired, and it seem'd that the Daughter of Leontin carried with her all the brightness of day from my Prince's eyes. In effect, all things that the Athenians did the rest of that day to do him honour seem'd but troublesome to him, and he retir'd at evening sooner than he had been accustomed, that he might in his solitude think with more liberty of the adventure had befallen him. He devoted to these thoughts the whole night, without permitting sleep to take the least part, and the remembrance of Athenais kept him company so that he could not put it a minute out of his mind: Not but that his soul, fierce and haughty, did not submit without reluctancy to the yoke his passion would impose, or that before he submitted to it, he did not maintain within himself a great combat. To this age he had preserved his liberty entire, though by the advantages of his excellent composition, the fair qualities of his person, and the glory of his actions, he had obliged more, than one of the fairest Ladies in Persia, to respect him favourably, but now he found himself depriv'd of the greatest part of his strength; or at least he found not sufficient to defend himself against this imperious beauty, which at first had fettered him. How (said he, tormenting himself in his Bed) feeble Varanez, wilt thou surrender at the

first sight of a Virgin? Thou who hast hitherto beheld with indifference, and possibly with disdain, all that Asia hath of most great and most fair? and after so many proofs thou hast given of thy constancy, in the most dangerous hazards, shall a simple Virgin of Athens presenting thee flowers, imperiously snatch away thy heart? Is it from the habit the Athenians have gain'd to vanquish the Persians from the time of my first Progenitors, that they resolve to make me a Slave so soon as I appear in their City? And do they look upon me as descended from those Kings whose innumerable Armies a handful of their men have defeated? Ah! I would pardon them this intention of theirs if Athenais were descended from the blood of Miltiades, or Themistocles, but she is the Daughter of Leontin: she is born among the people, and hath not perhaps drawn one drop of noble blood from all her Ancestors. Ah! mean spirited Varanez, is this a yoke worthy of thee? Or dost thou think thyself born for so disgraceful a servitude?

He remain'd for some time content with this thought, and thinking he had represented to himself with success, all that could inspire him with a disdain of Athenais, or at least of those chains wherewith she would fetter him: but a little after her beauty presenting it self to his imagination with its entire forces, dispers'd insensibly all that would oppose its power; and when he found this re-assault in his Soul, *But my courage*, said he, *since it is by thee that my passion is assail'd, and since it is thou that art offended at my weakness, why comest thou not to defend me with forces able to resist the enemy thou disdainest? and why defendest thou not the entrance of my heart against Athenais? If thou judgest her unworthy to reign there, arm against her all thou seemest to offer in vain, and drive her from my soul, or cease to torment me. It is not necessary to be of the blood of the Gods to beget a love in man: It is beauty and it is merit that creates love, and not birth and dignity: I may love without proposing to myself any thing of base in my Love, and reason it self doth not forbid me from loving what is too amiable for any to be able not to love it.* He pass'd the night in this manner, without having determin'd any thing in his spirit, or without being able to draw other resolutions from all his reasonings, or other knowledge from all he resent'd, than that he was absolutely amorous, though he knew not to what he ought to carry his love, nor in what manner he ought to seek comfort.

This nights watching, and the trouble with which he was tofs'd, made some disorder observable in his Countenance, or at least some alteration, and he was forc'd himself to allege some light indisposition to conceal the true cause. But when he was gone forth of his Palace to visit some places of Athens, for which the History had given him some curiosity, or at least those which had escap'd the cruelty of Sylla, who had taken and destroyed this City four or five Ages before, and that he began with a Temple of Minerva, which is yet kept with great diligence; by an accident of Fortune rather than design, the first object that presented it self to his sight, was the charming Athenais, who there made her prayers, and who as all other persons which were there, rose up and discover'd her face at the arrival of the Prince. The sight of Athenais made him instantly forget all that he had a desire to see in the Temple, and he was struck in such sort, that had he been observ'd it had not been difficult to have noted his disturbance in his countenance: he recover'd himself the most readily possible, and turning towards Leontin, who accompanied him every where, *Tou did not advertise us*, said he, *that we should see Athenais in this Temple, but since we have that happiness, you must not think it ill that I demand some part in the prayers she offers up to the Gods:* And at these words without attending an answer, he advanc'd towards Athenais, though it were with a tumult in his thoughts difficult for him to conceal. Athenais was retired some paces from all company, and the respect we had for the Prince, making us keep a distance, he found himself alone with her, or at least so far from all others, that without speaking very loud, he might say any thing without being heard. In all likelyhood this conveniency should not have inspir'd him with a design to speak of his love to one whom he had seen but a small while before, and to one whose person was compos'd in such manner as might create a respect in all men: but we must not measure other minds by his; and besides that, he hath a boldness in all things which never had its parallel, and that he believ'd that what he should say could not offend Athenais, it is certain that the great disproportion between him and Leontin, made him think, and possibly with some reason, that he was not oblig'd to the same circumspectness with his Daughter, as if she had been born in a degree equal to his: By this reason, and perhaps by a motion which he could not master, having accosted her with a behaviour and words full of civility, *Come you hither*, said he, *to demand pardon of the Gods for the ill you have done to your Father's Scholar? Athenais* who understood not these words, though she might well have expected from her beauty an effect equal to what it had produc'd, blush'd in such manner that from the place where we stood we might observe it, and bending down her eyes with infinite modesty,

she made the Prince judge she was in some trouble, what answer she should return to his discourse. He felt some himself for the effect it had produc'd, and repented possibly for some time for the quickness he had us'd to discover himself: but seeing the first difficulty was past, and that the silence of *Athenais* gave him time to pursue what he had begun, *If the Gods will pardon you*, (added he to what he had said) *I will not lament for this effect of their goodness, but I will implore them on my behalf, that they make you a little sensible of pity for the evils you may commit.* *Athenais* was possibly unwilling to answer to this discourse, if she could have excus'd it, but not knowing how to retire her self from this conversation with a Prince, whom respect permitted her not to treat as she would have treated another person upon the same subject, seeing in the end she could not defend her self from answering him, *I have enough to do, to beg pardon from the Gods*, said she, *for those faults I truly am, without begging it for those evils which I neither have nor will commit during my life.* *You may be ignorant of this*, replied *Varanez*, *and I believe you acted it without design, but you will no longer be ignorant of it, when you shall understand from my mouth, that I truly dye for you.*

Concluding these words, he was somewhat ashamed himself of his boldness, and not being willing to continue a discourse which might have made the spectators conceive ill had it continued longer, he retired having saluted *Athenais* very civilly, and having done what he intended to do, and seen what he desir'd to see in the Temple, he went to visit those other parts of *Athens* whither he was conducted, and devoted the rest of the day to that employment; but it was with a prepossession so great, and he took so little notice of these things on which he had before his curiosity so intent, that it had been easie to remark, had he been well observed, that he had his thoughts full of something extraordinary, which rendered him insensible to all other things that could present themselves. He us'd however some endeavours to dissemble it, and to prevent the suspicions of the Inhabitants of *Athens*; he told them that he had found their City so delightful, that it would be difficult to part from it so soon as he had done from many others, and that if his affairs would permit, he would make some stay there. This second night he had very little or no more repose than he had the first, or at least he slept little more, though it be true that he was less perplex'd with those contrarieties which had disturb'd him at the birth of his love, and that he found some content in the advancement he had made by discovering his passion to *Athenais*, though he believ'd, as well he had observ'd, that his proceedings had not oblig'd her. But on the morrow when *Leontin* would yet have showed him some rarity in *Athens*, *Leontin*, said he, *we will see to morrow what you will show me, for since I think to make some stay in the City, we shall have time enough to see all that can be considerable, but in the mean time it is just that I return to the fair Virgins of Athens the visit they have made me, or at least, not being able to visit them all particularly, that I acquit my self to their Leader of what I owe them, and that by the same means I see my Master in his own house.* *Ah my Lord*, replied *Leontin*, *both my Daughter, my house and my self are unworthy to receive you, and it is not just——* 'Tis enough replied *Varanez* interrupting him, *and if my visit may not at all prejudice you, all that you can say shall not hinder me from paying you that visit to day.* He perform'd it according to his word, and an hour after having caus'd *Leontin* to ride in his Chariot with some of us, he caus'd it to drive to his house, which was about a furlong out of the City, and on the way to *Megara*. We found it very handsome, though not magnificent, and accompanied with a Garden very curiously kept, and embellish'd with many Fountains, and some very pleasing Alleys. At one of the corners of the Garden, stood a very fair Arbour or banquetting house somewhat distant from the body of the House. in which the Philosopher *Leontin* kept his Books, and where he pass'd in retirement the greatest part of his life. *Athenais* had her Closet within the House, which was the neatest in the World, though it had nothing of rich or proud; she had likewise a great quantity of Books, by the reading of which her Father had given her the knowledge of all liberal Sciences. But it was not all this my Prince sought, though he seem'd to see them with infinite joy, for in the sole *Athenais* he encountered all that could at present please him in the world. He found her accompanied with some Ladies of the City which were come to visit her, for by the esteem all the City of *Athens* had for her, her house had been continually full of company, if they had not known the little inclination she had her self to much society. Her Mother was dead some years before, and she had been educated under the care of her Father, who for this education rather than any thing else had quitted the Court of *Isdigester*.

Athenais blush'd at the sight of my Prince, without doubt out of the remembrance she had of those words that had already wrought the same effect, but she did not at all discompose her self nor seem'd troubled at his visit, and though she receiv'd him with all the marks

of a profound respect, she gave him however the honours of her house with so much grace and freedom, as it she had been daily accustom'd to receive Princes of his quality. *Be pleas'd,* (said my Prince, abording her and saluting her very civilly,) *to receive for all your Company, the thanks I owe to the fair Virgins of Athens, and you will permit me to part this visit between what I owe them, and what I would render to my Master.* My Lord, answered *Athenais*, *neither the Virgins of Athens, nor the Father of Athenais could have expected this honour you are pleas'd to do them, and by the part I have as a Virgin of Athens, and the Daughter of Leontin, you shall pardon me my Lord, if I dare for them assure you of an acknowledgement full enough of submission.*

My Prince return'd noble and civil answers to her discourse, but after the publick discourse had endur'd for some time, knowing well that in that company he could not entertain her with that for which only he came to entertain her, he testified to her a great desire to see the Garden and Cabinet of *Leontin*, and *Athenais* having offer'd to accompany him, he gave her his hand, and going forth of the house, he began to walk in the Garden with her; all the company as he had well foreseen out of respect kept a good distance behind him, so that he had as great a conveniency to speak to *Athenais* as he could desire. Nor did he lose it, for he had no sooner walked some paces with her in a very pleasant Alley, but beholding her with eyes full of all the marks of his love, and speaking low, not to be understood by those who came behind him, *I know not,* said he, *If you can well pardon me for the interruption I yesterday gave you at your prayers in the Temple of Minerva, or if you have considered with your self of what I then told you.* *All that comes from you my Lord,* replied *Athenais*, *ought to be regarded with respect, but as those things you did me the honour to tell me, were but an effect of your bravery, and a desire you had to divertise your self, I confess to you my Lord, that I have not since so much as thought of them.* How! replied *Varanez*, *do you call them the effect of a desire to divertise my self, the confession I have made you of the most violent passion can reign in a heart, or do you believe any person can find a divertisement in losing his liberty, and all the repose of his life?* *As I do not believe my self capable,* said *Athenais*, *to produce an effect parallel to what you speak of, and particularly, my Lord, over a heart like yours, I shall with pain believe it is come to pass, and possibly should have no less disquiet to suffer this discourse, if the respect I owe you did not oblige me to it: but you are the Prince of Perlia, and I am the Daughter of Leontin.* *I shall be very sorry,* replied *Varanez*, *if you can believe that for the quality of the Prince of Perlia, I will dispense with the respect owing to your merit; for though you should be the Sister of Theodosius, as you are the Daughter of Leontin, this advantage of your birth should not hinder me from declaring the love I truly bear you.* *You would possibly have acted more circumspectly,* replied *Athenais*, *for persons of your rank and degree have other ways to explain themselves, but as those are not for me to expect, I confess the rest are little conformable to my inclination; and that they give me infinite displeasure.* *I should chuse rather,* replied my Prince, *to be expos'd my self to the greatest mischief that Fortune can make me feel, than contribute to the least of those you may receive, but it seems to me, that there is no reason why you should be afflicted for the knowledge of an effect of that beauty whose glory is wholly for you and the misery only for me; for in sum, it is not you that the arrival of Varanez in Athens hath made lose repose and liberty, nor is it you who by the rigours and absence of Varanez will be rendred miserable, but it is you have depriv'd Varanez of his heart from the first moment he saw you, and who have triumphed in an instant over a Prince, who hitherto had defended himself and his liberty against all other Beauties.* *If I had beauty sufficient to have done as you say,* replied the Daughter of *Leontin*, *I would willingly have been ignorant of it all my life; and I had been much oblig'd my Lord if you had spr'd me the trouble to hearken to you or answer you in a matter so little agreeing with the wisdom I have been taught.* *With teaching you a wisdom so pernicious,* replied my Prince, *Leontin ought to have depriv'd you of your beauty, either he ought not to have instructed you in a wisdom which permits you not to be belov'd, or he ought not to have left you in a condition that must force all the world to love you.* *The whole world* replied *Athenais*, *have not thoughts like to yours, or at least few persons have hitherto given me knowledge of it.* *I confess,* said *Varanez* *that the impatience of my love made me a little too rashly discover the knowledge I have given you, but it is a fault you ought to pardon both because I could not restrain it and because that being Scholar to Leontin, I thought in that respect I had some little privilege: However it be it is certain that I passionately love you, and I feel likewise that I shall so love you till death. I will give you those proofs that shall not permit it to be doubted either by you or Leontin, and if I can oblige you to some acknowledgments, I shall not be less happy, than I shall be miserable if my love cannot make you sensible.*

He hastned to speak these words, being come near the end of the Alley, at which he must of necessity return, and expose himself to the sight of the company, to go towards the

the Banqueting House of *Leontin*, which as I have told you, was in a corner of the Garden, and *Athenais* was much pleas'd to be deliver'd by this means from a discourse from which she could difficultly have retir'd her self, out of respect to the Prince. She therefore made a sign to one of her Friends, not to absent her self any longer so far from her; and the Prince seeing himself deprived of the hopes again to entertain her in particular, or contenting himself with what he had said for the first visit, employ'd the rest of the time which he stay'd with *Leontin*, to visit with all the company, the beauties of the Garden and the Banqueting House, in which, besides the great quantity of Books, he saw no small number of other things worthy his curiosity.

On the morrow he gave *Athenais* a like visit, and afterwards many others, in which, though she testified no small reluctancy to hearken to him, he continually entertain'd her with his love, and that in a manner so passionate, that perswaded her by all appearances; that there was no man more truly amorous than he. *Athenais* being a Damsel extremely sage, she at first supported very impatiently both his frequent visits and passionate discourses, and she had without doubt not easily accus'd her self to them, if her Father for particular reasons which he had, and which were unknown to all the world, had not commanded her to suffer them, and had not visibly testified that he approv'd them, so that in a little time the Prince *Varanez* saw himself in an entire liberty to see *Athenais*, and to speak to her of his love. And to her he dedicated his whole time, or rather his entire life, and gave himself over in such a manner to his love, that he seem'd to live no longer but for *Athenais*, nor to think of any but her. He spoke not at all of leaving *Athenais*, nor seem'd to think longer of his journey to *Constantinople*, but left himself to his passion in such manner, that never any man seem'd so fix'd to one. He believ'd likewise, that in the thoughts of *Athenais* there was something for him, which went beyond the sufferance of his love, and as he saw himself of a person so well compos'd, as might be lov'd by the most severe person, he believ'd that he was not indifferent to *Athenais*. In effect, as there are few men in the world of a better mind than he, of a disposition more agreeable when he pleases, of a fairer reputation in the world, and of a birth more illustrious; it would not have been strange if with so much love as he had, and as he had testified, he had touch'd the heart of *Athenais*. In fine, he had reduc'd her to hearken favourably unto him, and to tell him sometimes things so obliging, as might make him believe he was a little lov'd; however, this was all the advantage he had gain'd, and when at favourable opportunities he would strive for little liberties with her, such as kissing her hand, he saw her shew a countenance wholly different from the ordinary, and beheld himself repuls'd with a severity that gave him as much fear as he had love. He had likewise taken notice of one thing which much troubled him, which was, that neither *Athenais* nor *Leontin* would ever receive any of his presents, (though he had made use of many devices to make them accept them) nor suffer any of those proposals he had made for their advantage. This severity of *Athenais* in granting him favours, (for she had always refus'd him, even to the least things) and her constancy, and that of her Father, in refusal of his Presents, gave him infinite disturbance, and though he saw himself well receiv'd, and favourably hearken'd to, and knew likewise by the discourses of *Athenais*, that she had some affection for him, it seem'd to him that he found not his aims either in the behaviour of the Father or Daughter, and that he had yet much more to do, to render himself truly happy.

The melancholy which he had at certain hours, might be observ'd in his countenance by those who like my self were continually near his person, or had any part in his confidence; and one day seeing him more disquieted than ordinary making use of the liberty he gave me to demand the cause, *It will be difficult for me to tell you it, said he, and I shall likewise have the same difficulty to tell you what is necessary to make me happy, not but that as you may judge the possession of Athenais would render me the most fortunate of all men, but out of the knowledge I have of an austere virtue, which refuses me even the least favours. I know not whither to direct my thoughts, nor know not what to hope, or what to desire. At least my Lord, said I, you know what is your own intention, nor are you ignorant, without doubt, how you ought to put an end to that love, to which you have abandon'd your self. I know that less than the rest, said he, and all that I can judge of my intentions, is, that I would make my self be lov'd of Athenais, as much as I love her, if it be possible, but that to compass it I would do nothing base or worthy blame.* This was all that I could learn from him that day, and many others; but in the mean time I saw with infinite grief, that that Journey of so much renown, to see the Emperour of the *Orient*, was ended at *Athenais*, and that all the thoughts of a Prince so great in all things, were fix'd at the feet of a

Virgin, who though of an extraordinary merit, yet was but Daughter to *Leontin*.

In fine, his desires increasing with his love, and possibly with his hopes, he contented himself no longer with the condition of his fortune, but after having made *Athenais* several times judge that he aspir'd at a better, without her having testified any knowledge of his desires, one time being alone with her, after he had several times in vain endeavoured to kiss her fair hands, *Too amiable and too well beloved Athenais*, (said he, with a passionate behaviour) *shall I be all my life in the condition you see me, and will you refuse me till death those marks of your affection, which may render me the most happy of all men?* "I believe not my Lord, (replied the Daughter of *Leontin*) that you can complain of me with justice, for I must believe I have granted you easily enough all that depends on me for your satisfaction. *All that you have granted me*, replied *Varez*, *might be given without any affection, nor have I obtained hitherto any thing but liberty of discourse.* "That liberty, replied *Athenais*, is not possibly so small as you believe it, for I had naturally so great a reluctance against it, as could not have been overcome but by the respect and by the esteem I have for you. *For this respect*, replied my Prince, *it seems to me more injurious than obliging, and for the esteem, you know it hath been often given to merit alone, without affections hearing any part.* "You have perhaps, said *Athenais*, known something sufficiently particular in this esteem, to discern it from that which merit alone can give; and you may well judge my Lord, that I am not insensible of the honour you have done me; if you demand further, it doth not depend on me, it is of others than my self you must ask it. *If your heart be not your own*, said my Prince, *I have in vain employed all these proofs of my love, and it will be difficult for me to draw it from another place if you have engaged it, but if it be yours, from whom but from your self can I demand it?* "My heart is my own, my Lord, (replied the Daughter of *Leontin*) at least, if you will permit me yet to call mine, that which you possibly believe due to you for those proofs you have given me of your affection, but it hath done for you all that is permitted it, and if you desire farther, you must address your self to him, to whom the disposition is reserv'd. *And to whom is it I must then address my self?* (said he very hastily.) "It is to *Leontin*, whom you see, (said she, espying *Leontin* to enter at the same time into the chamber) and it is *Leontin* who disposeth of my heart, even to the least thought of it.

This discourse of *Athenais* in the presence of *Leontin*, who had hearkened to it, and by which my Prince knew well that both the Father and the Daughter had a design to make him explain himself, surpris'd him with a great astonishment, and made him remain some time without reply; but in fine, making use of his boldness at that time, as he had done in all others, and answering very loud to *Athenais*, to be understood by *Leontin* as well as her, *I know well*, said he, *that Leontin is not ignorant of the love I have for you, and he knows well I have not made it a secret to him; but though in the beginning he hath been less opposite than you, I know not whether in the pursuit, he will be less favourable.* "You need not doubt it my Lord, (replied *Leontin*, breaking silence instead of *Athenais*) but that with the profound respect I have for you, I have all those thoughts you can desire in a man passionate for your service; but I know not in what manner I can be more favourable to your desires, than by commanding *Athenais* to receive the honour you do her with that respect and acknowledgment she owes to your person, and to that affection you testify. *As Leontin*, said my Prince, *this acknowledgment of Athenais hath limits very strait, and a man who truly gives his heart, is ill repaid with only civility.* *My Lord*, (replied *Leontin* very seriously) *Athenais hath done hitherto but what I have commanded her, and I assure my self, that she hath done for your satisfaction all that wisdom and virtue can permit her. Greater proofs of her affection cannot be granted, but to him that shall be her Spouse; and since by reason of her meanness she cannot hope that honour of you, you ought to pardon her if she keeps within those bounds prescribed her by her duty.* These words astonish'd the Prince, notwithstanding all his natural confidence, but a little after beholding *Leontin* fiercely, *I believe*, said he, *that you cannot think that I should espouse Athenais. I see well my Lord*, replied *Leontin*, *that I cannot well hope it; but you must permit me to tell you, that in any other quality, and with any other design, you ought to hope nothing from Athenais. In my opinion*, (replied the Prince with his first fierceness) *that without having the design you speak of, I might do for your fortune, and for that of Athenais, things sufficiently considerable to content reasonable ambition; but though there be few things in the world which my love for Athenais would not make me do, yet the Daughter of Leontin shall never be seen seated on the Throne of Cyrus. No my Lord*, said now *Athenais*, *she shall never be seen seated there, but as she is unworthy of that high degree, all other things you can*

do for her, are unworthy of her courage and her virtue; and as she knows her self no more worthy of the honour of your sight, she entreats you my Lord, with all the respects she owes you, never to see her more. And concluding these words, she retired with a profound reverence, and left the Prince with *Leontin*. "How, (said he, seeing her retire in that manner) at less than espousing the Daughter of *Leontin*, is it no more permitted me to see *Athenais*? "My Lord, my Lord, (said the Philosopher, with a behaviour that denoted his discontent) you shall not espouse *Athenais*, but I dare assure you, that the man who shall espouse her, shall be no less great than you, and that you shall see her in a degree not at all less exalted than that of the Queens of *Persia*. It is the belief I have in a Science which is not accustomed to deceive me, which hath made me understand this, and it is that knowledge hath made me commit faults ought not to be pardoned, either to my age or to my profession, if I had not a design to repair them.

Varanez laugh'd at this discourse of the Philosophers, and having made him know the little belief he gave to what he had predicted of the great fortune of his Daughter, he departed from his house, to retire to the Palace where he was lodged. He passed the rest of that day in a strange melancholy, not being able to take any resolution between two extremities, either to espouse the Daughter of *Leontin*, or never more to see *Athenais*. "How, (said he, walking at a great pace in a Gallery which was by his apartment) shall I no more see *Athenais*, to whom I have given my heart, and to whom I have given it without hopes of withdrawing it? That *Athenais* which I adore, that *Athenais* for whom I die, and that *Athenais* whom no reason, nor no consideration can make me abandon. That happiness I propos'd to my self in a hopes to be beloved by her, is it vanished then like a vain smoke, and shall I not only no more see *Athenais*, but shall I be hated by her for the injury I have done her? But what injury, (added he a little after) what injury hast thou done to the Daughter of *Leontin*? and whatever effects her beauty may produce, what appearance was there that the only Son of *Isdigestes*, and the Heir to the most illustrious Crown of the world, should become Son in-law to *Leontin*? Oh Love! Oh *Athenais*! Pardon me if you think fit, but I shall never act this meanness, and I must choose rather never more to see *Athenais*, than espouse the Daughter of *Leontin*.

He alone tormented himself for some time in this manner, but having seen me, and having observed upon my countenance the grief his disquiet had created in me, he called me, and recounted to me word for word, all that had befallen him that day at *Leontin's*. I know not how to tell you my Lords, whether the recital he made of this adventure, afflicted or rejoiced me; for as on the one side I was not at all troubled that he would not espouse *Athenais* (though by the merit of her person I judged her worthy of a Crown) nor yet that he retired himself from a passion to which he was abandon'd in such manner that he forgot all other things; on the other side, I feared that a rupture made in so strange a manner, would beget in him a discontent, of which he would not easily be cured. This incertainty of my thoughts made me remain a long time without saying any thing, and when he commanded me to speak and tell him the judgment I made of his proceedings, "My Lord, said I, I know not how to condemn the design you have not to espouse a Virgin born among the people, and in a meanness so disproportionate to your Dignity; and I approve it so much the more because you are made master of your passion in an age wherein for the most part, it renders it self Mistress of man's reason; but if you be as enamoured of *Athenais* as you have done me the honour to tell me, or rather, if it be true, that the repose of your days is fixed to this love, as your actions make me judge, you need not so soon make this manifestation, or do it at least with some sweetning. "Ah for the manifestation, said my Prince, I cannot well hinder my self from making it, and by the discourse both of the Father and Daughter, you may judge well they have resolved to cause me to explain my self, and I will add likewise, that truly esteeming *Athenais*, it is impossible for me to abuse her, or to make her hope I would espouse her, not having any such intention. "You may my Lord, replied I, represent to her your present condition, and the dependence you have on the will of your Father, who in all likelyhood will never consent to this alliance, and by this means my Lord, you would give a different face to this explanation of your intentions, though in effect it would be but the same thing. "I confess to you, replied *Varanez*, that I ought to have acted in this manner, but the boldness of the Philosopher having mov'd me, I could not become master of some small motions of choler which transported me, and made me declare my self somewhat roughly. If this may be repaired, and that tomorrow, you visiting *Athenais* on my behalf before I see her again, can recover what is

past, by the dependence I have on the authority of the King my Father, rather than any other reasons disobliging to her, and by your discourse mollifie a part of her anger, you will do me the best office I can receive from your affection: For in summ *Mitranez*, though I would not espouse *Athenais*, I must confes that it is impossible for me to live without loving her, or without endeavouring to make my self be lov'd by her if it be possible, and that if I lose that hope, I shall with difficulty find any joy or repose in my days. I promised him to do what he commanded me, and to forget nothing I believed capable to lessen the disgust of *Athenais*.

He wondred not at all that on the morrow at his rising, he saw not *Leontin*, though he had waited on him almost every day since our coming to *Athens*, believing that he could not now so well expect his visits: but not being able to live without the sight of *Athenais*, and remembering that she had prayed him never more to see her, to testifie the respect he had for her, he would not return to her house without demanding permission, and for this reason he sent me as we had agreed to discharge the commission he had given me the day before. But my labour was in vain, for (not to lengthen my discourse in places little important) I could neither that day nor the following find either *Athenais* or her Father at their house, but the third day we understood that both Father and Daughter were departed from *Athens* on a voyage, from which by all appearances they would not in long time return, and nothing could be judged but that they were gone to *Thebes*, to the Kindred of *Athenais's* Mother.

At this news *Varanez* was touch'd with a grief so piercing that it was impossible for him to dissemble it, or hinder it from breaking forth by most violent marks, "How cried he have I chased *Athenais* from her house and from her Country? and because I adore her am I become so odious to her, to make her quit her Native Soil, possibly to seek a retreat and Sanctuary in strange and forreign Nations? O cruel *Athenais*, O unfortunate *Varanez*, O ambitious and revengetul *Leontin*. Alas, added he a little after, it is to fly from thee, that the fair and Divine *Athenais* hath exposed her self to the labour and travel of an incommodious voyage, and exposed her self possibly to more terrible dangers; and it is thou alone oughtest to be accused for all her ill fortune can make her suffer. He added to these many more words, by which he expressed the violent agitation of his soul, and not content with words he commanded with all speed that his Equipage should be made ready to go for *Thebes*, whether he believ'd she was retir'd; and to follow her if he mist her there through all the Cities of *Greece* till he had found her. I let the first violence of his inward motions vanish, without opposing my self, hindering in the mean time as much as it was possible the *Athenians* and other persons who were not of his Confidants from the knowledge of what pass'd, and I acted my part so well that having stoppt him at *Athens* for the remainder of that day, at night seeing him a little more ready to hearken to me, I represented unto him the great noise that the effects of his passion would make in the world, and the judgments would be made of him through all the Earth, if they saw him run through all *Greece* to pursue a Virgin that fled him, the displeasure which that rumour would beget in the King his Father, and the ill effect it would cause in the Court of *Theodosius*, whither he ought to go: And in summ, to speak to him likewise of that of which he was most sensible, and by which I might best perswade him, I told him that if it were true that *Athenais* and *Leontin* fled from him, he could with little appearance of success follow them with an Equipage like his, and that it not being possible for him to march without great notice taken of him where he passed, he might well judge that those that fled him would have the knowledge of his removal on all sides, and by consequence as much liberty as they could desire to shun him; whilst if he thought fit to stay yet some time at *Athens*, in which place he might possibly learn more assured news of *Athenais*, than those he had yet received, and from thence take his march to *Constantinople* and visit in his passage some other Cities of *Greece* the sight of which he had propos'd to himself, I would engage in the mean time to go not only to *Thebes*, whither marching without Equipage, I should give no cause of suspicion by my arrival, and that if I were not so happy as to find *Athenais* there, I would seek her through all *Greece*, and not only promise him to find her if she were to be found in that Country, but to appease her in such manner by those things I should tell her on his part, without yet engaging him farther than he desir'd, that I durst assure my self she would no more fly from him, but that at his return from *Constantinople* where I would again meet him if I did not overtake him before he arriv'd there, he might see her as much as he desired, and with a leisure so much the greater, having acquitted himself of a Voyage he was of necessity to make, and for which the King his Father had sent him out of *Persia*.

I added to this discourse all things I judged likely to perswade him, and as there was much
more

more appearance of reason in what I propos'd, than in what he had before design'd, And as he had no small confidence in me, both by reason of my fidelity and my address to find *Athenais* if she were still in *Greece*, he in the end suffer'd himself to be perswaded, and consented to all I desired: but it was after he had recommended to me those things I promis'd him in such a manner that he made me easily judge all the repose of his life depended on them. I departed on the morrow for *Thebes*, and my Prince having remain'd yet five or six days at *Athens*, during which he had no news of *Athenais*, departed in the end for *Constantinople* by those Cities he had design'd yet to see, and in which he flatter'd himself with some hopes to find *Athenais* or hear some news of her. This hope feeble as it was made him stay in those Cities longer than he had otherwise done, where in the mean time he employ'd all manner of diligence to inform himself of the Philosopher *Leontin*, and his Daughter, but all his labour proved vain; for he visited all he had design'd to visit of *Greece*, without hearing of either of them. Besides the desire to find *Athenais*, that which made him make a longer stay during the rest of his journey than he had otherwise done, and gave me the means to arrive at *Constantinople* as soon as he, though I had run through all *Greece*, was the counsel which many considerable persons of his Train gave him, not to appear at *Constantinople* before he had by a little time expell'd a part of that grief which had chang'd both his spirit and his humour, and not to come to a place where he should be so much observ'd, and where his reputation and the Renown of his arrival, had already for a long time been spread abroad, far different from the fair representation thereof that had been conceiv'd from the extent of his fame. In effect, he hearken'd to their counsels, and particularly to *Megabises*, who was a person of merit whom the King his Father had plac'd near him in the stead of *Antiochus*, to perfect what was yet wanting in his education: And though he could with difficulty dissemble a part of the effects of his love, yet having a haughty courage equal to all that could be called most great, by the force thereof he became Master of a part of his grief, and appear'd himself in the end at *Constantinople* in a better condition than could have been expected.

For my Voyage, the discourse I could make you would be needless, I will only tell you, that I not only went to *Thebes* but that I visited *Argos*, *Micene*, *Madena*, and almost all those Cities my Prince was not to pass through without finding either *Leontin* or *Athenais*, or without hearing any news of them; and being returned to *Constantinople* the same day that he arriv'd, I had increas'd his disquiet, by the little success of my voyage, if his Mind had not been already resolv'd on what he had design'd to do after his departure from the Court of *Theodosius*.

Many days before his arrival he met the Officers of the Emperour, who received him, and treated him with a splendor worthy their Master's greatness; and approaching nearer to the City he not only encountred the Chariots of the Emperour who came to meet him with a magnificent Train, but the Emperour himself (who was come to receive him at a great distance from the City, having caused all things to be prepar'd for the most noble reception. I believe you desire, not I should make a particular recital of his entrance, You my Lords who have often seen things of much greater importance, I will only therefore tell you, that the young Emperour descending from his Chariot so soon as he saw my Prince, who was already allighted to move towards him, made him a Salute full of sweetness and Majesty: And though *Varanez* not being yet possess'd of that Dignity to which he was to mount after the death of his Father, knew well the difference which was between the degree of the Emperour and his, and treated him with that respect usually practis'd in the like interviews. The young *Theodosius*, without considering in him the default of a Crown which he ought one day to wear, look'd upon him not only as the Son of a Prince whom he had always called his Father, but like a true brother, and like a Prince in whose person he would acknowledge the obligations he had to the King his Father.

At present all things in the person of *Varanez* accompanied so well his dignity, and besides the reputation which the renown of his fair actions had already given him in the world, his high and noble Aspect answer'd so worthily to what was published of him, and particularly that day when it was set off by a most resplendent attire, and the most magnificent habit that possibly was ever seen in *Constantinople*, that it was difficult to behold him with an ordinary consideration: And when the Emperour and he were both mounted into the same Chariot, but so open in which they might be seen of all the world, and that in this pomp they marched through the Streets of *Constantinople*. We took notice with infinite pleasure that the people and persons of quality that were in the Emperour's Train, and which compos'd without doubt the fairest Court in the World, testified no small astonishment at the sight.

fight of my Prince, so different from common men. The Emperour conducted him to his appartment at the Palace, and forgot nothing usuall in such entertainments, when all honours possibly were to be paid to a Prince of the quality of *Varanez*. The same day he let him see the Princess his Sister, I mean the Princess *Pulcheria*, for the two younger Princesses *Flavilla* and *Marina*, had already renounc'd the World and shut themselves up for ever in a House consecrated to the Service of that Divinity they adore. And because I am much oblig'd, my Lords, to tell you in this part of my discourse, in what estate we found the Court of the young *Theodosius*, and how it remains to this day, I will do it the more succinctly for that I doubt not but every one of you is better instructed than my self, and I will tell you only what is necessary in the pursuit of my discourse.

You know my Lords, what was the Reign of *Arcadius*, Father of the young *Theodosius*, and Son to the great *Theodosius* whose memory is so glorious: Nor are you ignorant of any thing hath happened of memorable in the Empire, since the great *Theodosius* at his death parted it between his Children, and made them reign in the *Orient* and *Occident*. You have understood the disorders which the Infidelity of *Ruffinus* caused in the East, who by the great Facility of *Arcadius* had usurp'd an Authority parallel to that of *Stilicon's* in the West, but with a merit much unequal: For though there be some similitude between the last intentions of *Stilicon* and those of *Ruffinus*, yet in the person of *Ruffinus* there was none of those great qualities which both for War and Peace had with justice acquir'd *Stilicon* the reputation of a great man. The wicked *Ruffinus*, who without any virtue had a power almost absolute, tormented miserably the Empire with his Factions, and had entirely ruin'd it if a just death had not prevented his detestable intentions. *Eutropia* as wicked as himself, had an end little different from his: and the good Emperour *Arcadius* began to taste some sweetness in his Government, when too hasty Death cropt him in the flower of his Age. The young *Theodosius* his Son who was but Ten years old at the death of his Father, was educated as I have told you and as you very well know by the diligence of *Isidigeſtes* our King, and by the good conduct of his Governour *Antiochus*; who finding in this Prince a nature full of Sweetness, Wisdom and Piety, did in his Education all was possible though possibly not all he desir'd. He found truly in him a great part of the qualities of the great *Theodosius* his Grandfather, but he did not find them all, and with those which he possessed he without doubt wish'd a greater vigour of Body and Spirit, and a part of those great virtues which compose *Heroes*. Making use then of what he found, he made of the young *Theodosius* no strong and able man for War, or for the management of great affairs, at least by what may be judg'd of a Prince who hath as yet scarce pass'd his twentieth year, but a Prince full of piety to Heaven, of Goodness towards men, of Justice, Clemency, Liberality and all that which we may call good or acceptable. He had possibly inspir'd him with more vigour of Spirit than he hath, if he had not died before he could accomplish his work, which was two or three years before we arriv'd at *Constantinople*. As *Antiochus* had very well known the ill effects which the credit of Favourites had produc'd in the Empire in the Reign of *Arcadius*, he decried Favourites as much as he could in the affection of *Theodosius*, and exhorted him so well, not to let himself be govern'd by persons whom love to themselves makes ordinarily sacrifice the publick interest to their own private: that he inspir'd him truly with a very great constancy to suppress the ambition of those who after the death of *Antiochus* sought to aspire to a degree like *Ruffinus* and *Stilicon*. But as he saw himself young and naturally an enemy to affairs, by a design which all the World at first blamed, but by the happy event have since approv'd, he cast his eyes not upon a Favourite who might ease him from the weight of affairs, but upon a Favourite who by her natural knowledge or by the inspiration of Heaven he found more capable than all men he could make choice of. This was the Princess *Pulcheria* his Sister, who not above a year or two elder than he equalled already both for the greatness of her Spirit and that of her Courage, all that the World can boast of as most great. With her spirit and courage she was endowed with many excellent virtues, with which the Emperour was likewise endowed, and though a person admirable in the Politicks she was observ'd to have no less Sweetness, Piety, moderation and Goodness than he. For her person it may be said that *Pulcheria* hath an admirable beauty, and those beauties which do surprize and astonish, but as she hath her complexion fair, her features well compos'd, her body most exact, and an infinite grace and majesty in her person, so there are many beauties do outshine hers, though to speak truth it may in the general be said that *Pulcheria* is a beautiful Princess.

'Twas then into her Arms that the Emperour disburthened himself of his load of affairs, and he found things in a small time so well manag'd, that in the end *Pulcheria* did entirely govern both the Empire and Emperour, but it was with so much approbation of all the World.

World, by reason of her admirable conduct, and the good order she by her prudence took in the most pressing affairs, by her exactness in causing justice to be observ'd, in entertaining alliances for the Empire, her knowledge in the choice of those men she called to the War, or to the affairs of State, her good œconomy in the disposal of the Revenues, her excellent orders in the Provinces to keep the people in obedience; and in fine, in all the functions of that great employ with which she was charged, that the Emperour ravish'd with the election he had made, saw himself the most happy, and most satisfied person in the world.

Affairs were in this condition when we arriv'd at *Constantinople*, and you may judge, that *Pulcheria*, such as I have in few words represented her to you, receiv'd from my Prince a visit full of respect, and all the marks of that esteem which ought to be had for a Princess of so great a Merit, and Authority in the Empire. My Prince likewise found in her person all things answerable to her fair reputation; and though perhaps before he knew her, he had conceived some disdain of the Emperours having abandoned himself to her conduct, when he had seen her, and conversed with her; he approv'd what he had possibly before with many other persons condemn'd.

During several days the Emperour solemnized the arrival of *Varanez* with all sorts of divertisements, and the great streets, and publick places of *Constantinople*, were for a long time fill'd with Beholders and Spectacles of rejoycing. But besides the publick, the Emperour neglected no occasion to procure to the Prince such as were particular, and as it were prevented his intentions in all things which he understood to be grateful to him. In the Palace were seen magnificent assemblies both of the one and the other Sex; and out of the Palace, the Emperour, whose age might very well carry him to these sorts of Divertisements, made parties in his delight, to which all his Court agreed the more willingly, because he was extremely beloved, and the whole City ran with joy to seek occasions to please him. Yet in all there was nothing which was not full of innocence, and conformable to his piety and wisdom. He took with *Varanez* a part of those pleasures he procur'd, and there were few assemblies, and publick Spectacles, in which they were not seen together; but at some hours of the day the Emperour retired, both from *Varanez*, and from all the Court, and my Prince remain'd not long time without knowing that he had some affair to which he was solemnly fix'd. He might have observ'd more, if his heart had been in a greater liberty; but though the Pomp of *Theodosius* his Court, and the daily divertisements, seem'd for some days to have charmed a part of his desires, yet his passion, with its entire forces, remained still Mistress of his Soul; and though apparently he was divertis'd, and seem'd touch'd with those things were acted for that design, in truth, nothing was capable to make it self be felt in his heart but that love possess'd it. The fair image of *Athenais* was eternally presented to his memory, nor were all the objects he saw at *Constantinople* capable to make him forget it. The violence wherewith he forced himself for some time hindred the Emperour from observing his malady, or the disorder of his thoughts, and he made use so well of his great courage to resist his grief; and the force of his spirit to dissemble a part of it, that for more than a month after our arrival it was not suspected. But as too long a constraint is insupportable, after that time slackning a little the great diligence he had taken to disguise it, the Emperour perceiv'd in his countenance, in his discourse, and in all his manner of living, a part of what he had in his soul; not that he could precisely divine, or know, whether it was to love, or to grief, or to any other cause he ought to attribute this disorder and alteration, but yet he could not doubt but his Spirit was exasperated by some very violent passion.

Out of discretion he for some days dissembled what he thought, but in the end his goodness perswaded him to endeavour the knowledge of it; and as he concern'd himself truly in the repose of a Prince, in whom, besides the quality of being Son to *Isdigester*, he had known a hundred other virtues worthy his particular affection, he was desirous to instruct himself in his misfortunes to seek remedies, and for this reason he often demanded of him with infinite sweetness the cause of an effect which he observ'd with no small sorrow, praying him to make use of all things which might be in his power, if they were able to bring any comfort to the trouble he testified. *Varanez*, who would not discover the evil he felt; out of the reluctancy he had to confess that it was a person of so mean birth as *Athenais*, to whom his Soul was enslav'd, answer'd with respect to the obliging offers of *Theodosius*, but disguis'd the truth to him as much as possible; yet however he disguis'd it not so well, but that seeing by how many advantages he had reason to be satisfied in his Fortune, he easily perswaded himself that he was enamour'd, and that he had left some Beauty in *Persia*, the remembrance of whom in his Soul had caus'd that effect remarkable in his eyes:

He often made this war upon him, and my Prince defended himself so ill, that in fine he left him confirm'd in this opinion, but one day, after some discourse they had on this subject, and in which *Varanez* had endeavoured with much steadfastness to oppose the opinion of the Emperour, *Theodosius* after he had stood some time silent, beholding him with a sigh, and pressing his hand with an action which had something in it of passionate; *I will not, said he, treat with you as you treat with me; and because I esteem you truly, and consider you as my Brother, with a confidence worthy that quality, I will open my heart, and confess to you that I am truly in love; Yes my Brother, I have as much love as an admirable Beauty, accompanied with a charming Spirit, and excellent Virtue, can beget in a heart capable to receive it; but as my love is not accompanied with any criminal thought, and that there is nothing but innocence in all my designs, all things are favourable to me: Nor have I any thing in my condition which may cause a melancholy, or trouble, observed generally in persons highly amorous; yet this advice is not enough to testify to you the trust I repose in you, but as there is something so extraordinary both in my love and designs, to make me desire they should be approved by a friend like you, I will, my Brother, make you see that person that hath begot in me so much love, and make you possibly confess, that few persons in the world are more capable to enforce a true affection. I doubt not at all my Lord, answered *Varanez*, but if you love, you love with sufficient reason, and as in so early an age, you have an admirable prudence, and a very particular knowledge, I shall easily believe, that that which you have judged worthy of your affection, ought to merit the esteem of the whole world; nor is it necessary my Lord, that to make me of this opinion, you should do me a favour which I have possibly never merited. I see well, replied the Emperour, that you have little curiosity to see the person I would show you, and for this reason I may possibly accuse you of little friendship, seeing you take so little interest in a thing which at present employs all my thoughts; but I pardon you, because you cannot divine whether this subject be worthy of that desire I would have created in you, but to finish what I have begun, if you will, I will acquit my self of my word without farther delay. But my Lord, (said *Varanez*, who in truth had little inclination to follow him, by reason of the eternal object of *Athenais*, which rendred all other women odious to him) as I am truly unhappy in all things which respect love, if by misfortune (as it is not without example) pursued he laughing, I should my self become enamoured of this admirable person, what remedy could you find for so ill an accident? Believing your affections already prevented, (said the Emperour) I do not fear that any such thing should happen, nor have all the world a liking like to mine, and possibly though you should have the same love, you would not have the same intentions. You will charge your self then, (replied my Prince, in a jocund manner) with all that evil shall befall me, and as I am here under your protection, it is you must guard me.*

After these words, and some other which the Emperour spoke in the same manner, having sent one of his Attendants with a secret order to the Princess *Pulcheria*, and receiv'd the answer: He led *Varanez* to the Princesses lodgings, telling him he need go no further, to see what he would shew him. My Prince now believed that the young Emperour was only merry, and that he had made this discourse for no other cause, but to express the great esteem and affection he had for the Princess *Pulcheria*, though he had spoke many things that did not entirely agree with this design. But he lost this opinion entering into the chamber of *Pulcheria*, where he saw another person with her advance to meet the Emperour and him, to whom the Emperour presented him, telling her that the Prince of *Persia* was his Brother, and that it was as his Brother that he came to present him.

He spoke these words with a respect most tenderly obliging, but they were not followed but with a profound silence, and if the person to whom they were addressed, appeared a little surpris'd at the sight of *Varanez*, my Prince remain'd as one out of himself, when lifting up his eyes on her visage, he knew it for that of the charming and divine *Athenais*. Never possibly was any astonishment equal to his, nor any spirit in one instant assaulted with so many different passions, and though to strive against his surprisal, in a necessity so pressing, he call'd instantly to his assistance all the forces of his courage; it was impossible for him to receive all that help he desired, or at least, to hinder the Emperour or the clear-sighted *Pulcheria* from observing his astonishment. *Theodosius* himself observing with some surprize that of these two persons, cast his eyes on the Princess his Sister, as if it were to demand the cause; but by that time the astonishment of *Athenais*, which was light in comparison of that of *Varanez*, being vanished, she made answer to the Emperour, and beholding him with a countenance, to which serenity was in an instant restor'd, My Lord, said she, by the sight of the Prince of Persia, your Majesty doth but procure

care me an honour I have already receiv'd, for besides that I met at Athens when he was there, if your Majesty remember that I am the Daughter of *Leontin*, you may have heard that my Father was employ'd in the education of the Prince *Varanez*. I confess my Lord, (said my Prince, endeavouring to recover himself) that I could not see *Athenais* in a place where I so little expected to meet her, and understand at the same time, that she is the same which reigns in the heart of the Emperour *Theodosius*, without being astonish'd at so surpassing an effect of Fortune. Fortune, replied the Emperour, might have led *Athenais* to *Constantinople*, if Heaven had not guided her, but she hath no part in the effect of which you speak, for the merit of *Athenais* might produce things much more strange and more advantageous for her. "It shall not be *Varanez*, replied the Prince, who will dispute against the merit of *Athenais*, for I shall easily agree, that Fortune could do nothing for her but what would be below her merit. "I know not, replied *Athenais*, if you believe as you say, but I can render my self that justice, never to attribute to my merit, what I hold from my fortune. "All the world (said the Princess *Pulcheria*) act not with a modesty parallel to yours, and few persons with a merit like yours, would believe they owed any thing to their fortune. "I am content (replied very readily *Athenais*) not to owe any thing to my fortune, because it is to you Madam that I truly owe all things, for by a second Being which you have given me, I am more bound to you, than to those which gave me my first. "But Madam, (said *Varanez*, who gave no attention to this discourse) by what wonder is it possible that I find you at *Constantinople*? And if it be permitted me to make this complaint before the Emperour, with what cruelty could you conceal your self from a Prince who honours you as he ought. "My Lord, (replied *Athenais* very fiercely) I was not worthy of your remembrance, and my mind hath been so fix'd on those great employs I have had since I came to *Constantinople*, that it was difficult for me to retire from them. "I confess, said *Varanez*, that the employs you have had are great and worthy of you, since you have made the most illustrious conquest you could make in the whole world. "I believe not, (replied the fair *Athenais*) that you can make this judgment of the Daughter of *Leontin*, but however it be, I am so much satisfied with what I have done at *Constantinople*, that I shall praise the Heavens for it so long as I live. "You have done both good and ill, replied the Emperour, but you may repair if you please, that ill by another good, and not suffer any to be unhappy whilst all their good fortune depends upon you.

These words were as so many mortal wounds to the Soul of the jealous and afflicted *Varanez*, and whatsoever endeavours he used to dissemble it, it was impossible for him to hinder his eyes from discovering a part of his resentment; therefore whilst he durst not speak what he thought, and *Athenais* out of prudence would not explain her self in the presence of the Emperour and *Pulcheria*, whilst the Emperour observ'd the trouble in which *Varanez* was involved, and *Pulcheria* in the disorders both of the one and the other, read a part of the truth, the conversation of these four persons was very much forc'd; and had nothing in it of agreeable or pleasing; which the Emperour having in a little time perceiv'd, rising from his Chair, asked the Prince *Varanez* if he would descend, and walk a turn in the Gardens, which were under the windows of the Chamber, so he drew him from the greatest trouble in which ever in his life he had found himself, and led him away in a time when he knew not what to say, nor what countenance to keep.

When they were in the Garden, they took some turns in the Alley without speaking; the disquiet of *Varanez* seizing the Emperour, though rather by his goodness, which made him sympathize in the disorder of his friend, than any other reason, but in the end *Varanez*, who notwithstanding the violent agitation of his Soul, knew well he was wanting in his proceeding, and who could not hinder himself from discharging a part of what he had on his heart, turning himself towards the Emperour with more appearance of calmness than he really had in his spirit, besought him to relate to him by what adventure *Athenais* was come to *Constantinople*, why she was lodged in the Palace, and what was the design he had for her.

To answer to what you demand of me in few words, said *Theodosius*, I must tell you, that few days before you arrived at *Constantinople*, the venerable *Atticus* who holds here the chief place among those dedicated to the Service of that God we adore, and Successor of the great *Chrysofostom*, who for his piety and admirable eloquence, made himself famous through all the world; knowing the interest which the Princess my Sister takes in the augmentation of our faith, and the Religion we profess, and the zeal she hath for all things which regard it, came to advertise her, that he had for some time had with him two persons, whom the design to quit the Worship of those Gods you adore, had led from Greece, and that they had prayed him to cause

them to be instructed, with a zeal which was extremely edified; and moreover, that they were two excellent persons, the one for his profound Learning, the other for her marvellous beauty; that they were Father and Daughter, the one called Leontin, the other Athenais. In sum, he spoke in such manner to my Sister, (who was always well intended to persons who had such a design,) that she desired to see them, and prayed Atticus to bring them to her. Atticus obeyed her. and on the morrow presented to her Athenais, and the Philosopher Leontin. Pulcheria found Athenais such as she is, and having found by her conversation, that the beauties of her mind were not inferior to that of her body, she grew so affectionate to the fair Athenais, that she would not permit her to return with Atticus, but having well known she would not be troubled to remain with her, she gave her an apartment near hers, where she continued, to cause her to be instructed, and in few days made her quit both her Religion and her Name, to take ours, and that of Eudoxia which she gave her, and which was that of the Empress our Mother. On the morrow she made me see the new Eudoxia, and in telling you that she made me see her, I must tell you that she made me love her, since in me seeing and loving was but the same thing. I will not entertain you with what this new born and fondling love made me feel, believing you have sufficiently proved it to apprehend it, but only, that having some days sigh'd, and being more and more inflam'd by many conversations which I had with Athenais; in fine, out of the confidence I in all things had of the Princess Pulcheria, I discovered to her my love. She seemed not overmuch surpris'd at the declaration I made her, but she told me that at present she knew not what counsel she ought to give me, but prayed me to think yet some days of the intention I might have for Athenais, and not to suffer in my heart any, which might offend Heaven or Virtue; in the mean time I continued to see Eudoxia, and finding in her Spirit and in her converse, charms not inferior to those of her beauty, I not only could not conceive any thought which might offend her virtue, but I permitted without opposition to enter into my heart, all those which I might have had for a Princess of a degree equal to mine, and discovering in her daily new qualities, which made me judge her worthy of all things, but among others, a courage, exalted above her fortune, but without pride, and out of the true greatness of her Soul, an extraordinary Piety for Heaven, an admirable sweetness in her manners, a marvellous eloquence in her discourse, accompanied with a great knowledge of the fairest Learning, and a prodigious readiness in speaking and writing several languages, and in verse as well as prose, a regularity in her carriage, full of wisdom and moderation; and in fine, all the fair marks of a solid and true virtue; in few days I told my Sister, that according to my inclination and the Idea I had of the merit of Athenais, I could not fancy to my self a greater felicity than to espouse her, and though I were a person young in years, being scarcely twenty years old, I propos'd to my self so much happiness in this marriage, that if she approv'd it, and Eudoxia would consent, nothing should retard it. Pulcheria appear'd not astonish'd at my discourse, but she demand'd of me some days to observe Eudoxia better than she had hitherto done, before she would give me her advice; and those expired, she testified to me not only that she did not condemn my choice, but that she should exhort me with all her soul, not to change my design, for she believ'd that Heaven had sent Eudoxia to Constantinople for our happiness; that of all the qualities I could wish in a woman, to make me regard her as fit for my Spouse, she wanted nothing but Birth, but that she minded less the default of that, than of others more necessary, and that she esteem'd more a Soul exalted in a mean Birth, than a low Soul from a high descent; That I was of a Family strengthen'd with so many alliances sufficiently illustrious, that I had no need to make new ones, and that in fine, by the Marriage I should lose nothing of my degree, and that I found a Spouse, in whom having well observ'd her, she found nothing which was not worthy of admiration. The discourse of Pulcheria charm'd me, confirm'd me in my design, and made me resolve not to defer the execution. The same day I made the proposition to Eudoxia, with all the marks of an affection full of respect, and she received it with a submission, wisdom and moderation, which had nothing in it of affected, and gave me place to believe, that she was no less sensible of this fair proof of my love, than of the hopes of that dignity, to which I would raise her. The Philosopher Leontin, who after his conversion was entirely fix'd to the service of Heaven with Atticus, regard'd the fortune of his Daughter like a Father, but yet like a man already withdrawn from the world. And in fine, my Brother, all things are advanced in such sort, yet however without publishing any thing, that after the return of a person whom I have sent to Italy, to the Emperor Honorius my Uncle, I hope by ways allow'd by Heaven, and approv'd by her Virtue, to be possessor of my fair Eudoxia.

Theodosius spoke in this manner, whilst Varanez hearkned to him with an impatience which almost reach'd a fury, and which with all the power which reason preserv'd over him, he could hardly master; but when he had done speaking, beholding him with an aspect

aspect full of transportation, and eyes from whence his passion seemed to sparkle, *How my Lord*, said he, *is it then possible you will espouse the Daughter of Leontin? Yes I will espouse her if Heaven so please*, replied the young Emperour, *and I hold Eudoxia more worthy of Theodosius, than Theodosius is worthy of Eudoxia.* *This humility*, replied *Varanez*, *would do well in a person of the profession of Atticus, but an Oriental Emperour, whose greatness all the world beholds, cannot without too much offending it have such a thought for the Daughter of a man, who hath nothing so glorious for him in the world as the honour of having been my Tutor.* *He hath so well acquitted that employment*, replied sweetly the Emperour, *that in that respect he is yet more considerable to me: but however, it is not Leontin that I espouse but the fair Eudoxia in whom the defects of birth is too much repair'd by her beauty, by her mind and by her virtue.* *But my Lord*, said the passionate Prince, *if you will permit the Son of a person whom you have always look'd upon as your Father, and who hath possibly acted in your interests, as if he had had that quality: If, I say, you will permit the Son of Idigestes to speak to you with a little freedom, in an occasion wherein you ought not to be flatter'd.* *May not I represent to you that those who counsel you to a marriage so unequal, regard only themselves in so doing, and that the desire to govern the Empire, as they have for some time past done, induces them to give you from their hand a woman, who shall be oblig'd to them for her fortune, and who will not trouble them in their dominion as another might do, not beholding to them for her greatness? Those who counsel me this Marriage*, replied the Emperour sighing, *cannot be suspected by me, but if our friendship would permit me to suspect you, after what I have seen to day and what I now see and understand, you would be rather suspected by me, than those persons of whom you would give me some suspicion.* *Yes my Lord*, (said the Prince giving the reins to a passion he could no longer keep in,) *yes my Lord, I ought to be suspected by you, and since I see my self reduc'd to an extremity permits me no longer to dissemble.* *I confess to you, that I am not only enamour'd, but passionately and like a lost person enamour'd of Athenais?*

Theodosius appear'd so astonish'd at these words of my Prince, that he stood a long time without speaking, testifying a great surprisal and no less discontent. *Varanez* a while beheld him in that condition, and in the end breaking silence, *I see well my Lord*, said he, *that the confession I have made you gives you some astonishment, and I ought without doubt to have constrain'd my self by a greater violence, to have conceal'd from you that which I have discovered in so cruel an extremity.* *I had great reason to doubt*, said the Emperour, *the best part of the truth you have told me, but not in such manner that I could understand it from your mouth without astonishment, or without a sensible grief to see that of necessity one of us two must be miserable.* *Oh my Lord*, replied *Varanez*, *there is no need to consider which of us two it ought to be, for I am already too much prepar'd for my ill fortune.* *As your love*, said *Theodosius*, *without doubt preceded mine, and as by the greatness of your merit and that of your degree there is sufficient appearance that Athenais hath not been insensible, it is not just that a latter comer, and a person that makes profession of a fraternal amity with you, should deprive you of a benefit you merit better than he.* *But I look upon it as a cruel thing that Athenais hath told me nothing of it, for if she be engag'd by any word or any affection for you, she ought not to have accepted mine, nor permitted us to proceed so far as we have done.* *I owe my Lord*, replied *Varanez*, *a testimony to truth, which no interest can hinder me from rendering, and I confess, that having in the love I had for Athenais, represented to my self, the same things I endeavour'd some minutes past to represent to you, I could not overcome in my heart that reluctancy which I had to be Son in law to Leontin.* And at these words *Varanez* seeing that the Emperour hearkned to him without interruption, he made him understand in few words that which had pass'd of most importance between him and *Athenais*, and gave him to understand by a discourse of the entire truth, that though he had observed in the heart of *Athenais* some good will for him, and a great inclination to espouse him, if he had had those thoughts, yet she had made no engagement to him, which might deprive her of the liberty to dispose her affections, or receive those proofs the Emperour had given her of his.

Theodosius sigh'd at this discourse of *Varanez*, and beholding him with a countenance more serene than before, "I should have been much astonish'd, said he, to understand that with a merit like yours and an intention like mine you could not have gain'd the affections of *Athenais*: but since you have had no design to spend her, I wonder not at all that she hath by her virtue despis'd all other things unworthy of her. For my self, whose eyes this Idea of Grandeur hath not stoppt to an extraordinary merit, like that of *Athenais*, and who have as much respect'd her virtue as you have disdain'd her birth, I confess, that by a thought much distant from yours, I have judg'd her too worthy to be seated in the Throne of the *Cæsars*, and that in giving her my heart, I would with too much joy have offered her something of greater value than the Empire had it been at my disposal. You will

“ will not then be so unhappy as I should be in losing a person whom you would not possess,
 “ but by ways not permitted by her virtue, or rather in leaving to another that which you
 “ have not judged worthy of you; and if at present you have no design to espouse her, you
 “ have no reason to dispute it with me, nor to desire that a person destin’d to the Empire,
 “ should fix her thoughts on an affection of that nature with yours. “ It is true, *replied*
 “ *Varanez*, that hitherto I could not bow my courage to any design to espouse *Athenais*, but
 “ your example hath dissipated that reluctance, and as a person who hath merited to be Em-
 “ peress of the *Orient*, may well merit to be Queen of *Persia*, I would at present espouse her
 “ with an excess of joy, would heaven permit it.

At these words, the trouble which was in part removed from the Countenance of *Theo-*
dosius, entirely return’d, who thereupon beholding my Prince with an aspect full of all the
 appearances of his grief, “ This is a strange effect of my misfortune, *said he*, that a design
 “ which all the beauty and all the merit of *Athenais* could not beget in you whilst I had no
 “ interest, should be inspired into you to render me miserable, but this consideration shall
 “ not hinder me from acting with you as the friendship between us and what I owe to the
 “ King of *Persia* oblige me. I do not tell you that I yield you absolutely *Athenais*, though
 “ I may have less love for her, yet after the word I have given her and in the terms wherein
 “ we are I would not do her that injury; but as I doubt not by the knowledge I have of your
 “ merit and the discourse you have made me, that her inclinations might have been favoura-
 “ ble, if you had had the intention you at present have, you may hope that by the know-
 “ ledge you may give her of it and by the entire liberty I shall leave you, that she may do
 “ that for you she is upon the point to do for me. In sum, I will do no violence to her
 “ inclinations, nor will I make use of the word she hath given me to exact the effect: nor
 “ will I tell her any thing against you. You shall speak with her alone, and with all the
 “ liberty you can desire, and if she will chuse rather to be the Spouse of *Varanez* than *Theo-*
 “ *dosius*, you shall find no obstruction to hinder you from possessing her this way and leading
 “ her into *Persia*. *Oh my Lord*, cried *Varanez*, *this is too much, and when my life should be*
more strongly fixed to the love of Athenais, I cannot consent to this effect of your goodness. I will
suffer my misfortune if I have sufficient courage, and if my courage abandons me, death cannot
be wanting, but I will not abuse—’Tis enough, (*said Theodosius interrupting him*,) *and you*
oppose in vain the resolution I have taken; though the consideration of your repose did not oblige
me, I would do it for my own, for I would not espouse Eudoxia if I did believe she had any affe-
ction for you; to morrow we will make the proof, and I will give you the opportunity to entertain
her, and make with all leisure that proposition, by which you may hope as much change in her in-
tentions as there is at present in yours. Neglect nothing to gain her, in an occasion wherein the
excellent composure, and great qualities of your person may cause a happy issue. I will my self o-
pen to her the discourse in your presence, and leave you to do the rest, but afterwards if the success
is not conformable to your desires, demand no more; and if you cannot oblige Athenais to espouse
you, think it not strange that I espouse her, and conjure you not to trouble the repose in which I
would willingly establish the whole felicity of my days.

Varanez yet for a long time oppos’d the design of the Emperour, but he opposed in vain,
 and *Theodosius* having testified to him an unshaken resolution, he was constrained to submit;
 protesting that if Fortune were contrary to him, he would die rather than disturb his con-
 tent by the least thought that might injure him. Afterwards they both retired to their ap-
 partments at the time when the night began to spread darkness over the Garden, and my
 Prince spent the same in those agitations of spirit between hope and fear, which scarce per-
 mitted him a few minutes of sleep.

The end of the Third Book of the Third Part.

PHARAMOND!

PHARAMOND.

BOOK IV.

But it was not only by the effects of his fear that the spirit of *Varanez* was tormented, but amongst those pleasures which hope might for some moments make him conceive, he was assaulted by thoughts with which his generosity inspir'd him, and by the opposition it created in him to accept the offers of *Theodosius*, judging, that if Fortune should be so favourable as to make him be preferred, he ought not to make use of that advantage, against the repose of a Prince who had acted with so generous a goodnets. and expos'd himself to so cruel a hazard to testify to him his friendship. *Shall I be so ignoble, said he, to abuse ingratelously a goodness without example? or shall I suffer a man of the degree of Theodosius, to establish my repose at the expence of his own, and render himself miserable to make me happy? cannot I judge of the estate of his soul by that of my own, and imagine how cruel the loss of Athenais would be to him, (in a time wherein he might without any obstruction possess her) from the grief I have to lose her, without having ever had any hope to enjoy her? Ah Varanez, consent not to a weakness that will dishonour thy whole life, but make use of thy courage to eschew a disgrace thou preparest for thy self, and which possibly, added he with a sigh, thou preparest in vain.*

This last thought afflicted him no less than the first, but from the first proceeding to the latter with great facility, "Who hath assured thee, *said he*, or who can make thee hope that *Athenais* will prefer thee before *Theodosius*? thee, who hast so unworthily despis'd her, thee on whom she no more thinks, before him who hath so honourably and so generously treated her, and before him to whom she is already engag'd? Is it by a vain confidence thou hast in some advantages thy person may have over that of *Theodosius*, in somewhat of a more martial Air, or in some honour thou hast acquir'd by thy Arms? Ah thou abusest thy self *Varanez*, *Theodosius* is no less amiable for his beauty and for his virtue, and for the sweetness of his manners, of his disposition and many other qualities, no less deserving love than thou mayst be, for a courage possibly greater than his, or some reputation of valour.

He stopp'd a long time at these thoughts, and out of this double consideration of the shame would accrue to him, and the incertainty of his success, he endeavour'd what possible in him lay to vanquish himself, and gain so much power over his passion as to reject the offers of *Theodosius*. But soon after, the violence of his love stronger than all his resolutions, made them vanish, and flattering him against what he might fear of the choice of *Athenais*, by a thousand advantages it represented to him in his person above that of *Theodosius*, and stopping his eyes against the shame he had conceiv'd and foreseen in that design of rendring himself happy, by representing unto him that *Theodosius* was without doubt less amorous than he, since he durst expose himself to the hazard of a certain happiness, and that he did but a thing very ordinary, and to which all Princes were oblig'd, in leaving *Athenais* to the freedom of her choice. This thought did indeed rather make him resolve, than any other, imagining that he might with honour dispute a benefit not absolutely yielded to him, but which he was permitted only to dispute, whilst the other forsook not his advantages.

He would however expect the effect of the resolutions and intentions of the Emperour, without testifying to him any eager desire to urge them; but he attended not long, for immediately after Dinner the Emperour sent to entreat him to descend into the same Garden, where he had the day before entertain'd him. *Varanez* went without delay, but with whatever

whatever resolution he was fortified, he could not see the Emperour without confusion, and having saluted him, lifting up one hand before his face, as if he had endeavoured to cover his blushes, *My Lord*, said he, *I commit a weakness which renders me possibly unworthy of the degree I hold among men, or of the glory I have purchased; but besides that you have forced me to it, by the obedience I owe you, you owe possibly a pardon to a passion too violent to leave me in a liberty to do what I ought: And moreover my Lord, there is so little appearance that Varanez should be preferred before Theodosius, that you hazard but very little in the favour you do me. I would willingly do more,* replied the Emperour, *but Honour and Justice permit me less than love, and as I would not in my own favour force the inclinations of Athenais, I believe you would not desire I should force them in yours, or promise to make you spouse her if it be not her intention.*

Varanez was about to reply, when they saw *Pulcheria* and *Athenais* appear from towards the apartment of *Pulcheria*, whom the Emperour had intreated to come and bring *Athenais* with her; at the sight of *Athenais*, and at the remembrance of what passed, both the Emperour and Prince equally changed colour, and they were, I believe, both the one and the other, surpris'd with a heart beating, which denoted the agitation of their Spirits. The Emperour however appeared the most confident, and advancing towards *Eudoxia*, some paces before my Prince, who followed him not but with infinite marks of confusion, he accosted them, and saluted them with a countenance so sad, that both the one and the other felt no small disquiet; and a little after addressing himself to the charming *Eudoxia*; "Madam, said he, As great fortunes are difficultly established without some obstruction, it was necessary that mine should find one sufficiently considerable to counterballance its greatness; and I confess, that I have not bought it dear enough, to merit it. Yesterday I believed my self alone in the fairest hopes in the world, to day I have a companion, for the Prince *Varanez*, as well as my self, pretends to the glory to possess you. We come, both the one and the other, to decide our fortune, and I leave the Prince with you, to explain to you his intentions better than he hath for the present explained them; I will tell you nothing in his favour, nor to his disadvantage, but of two men which adore you, you have the free liberty of giving pre-eminence; but as I have reserved to my self the profit of your choice, if it be for my advantage, so if it be to that of *Varanez*, you may render him happy without the least murmur of *Theodosius*."

The Emperour concluding these words, presented his hand to *Pulcheria* to walk with her on the other side, when *Eudoxia* notwithstanding her natural reservedness, appeared more hardy than ordinary at this time, stopping him by the Arm, and beholding him with eyes whose excessive languour did seem to dart an extraordinary splendour; "Is it *Varanez*, my Lord, said she, who pretends I ought to be his? Or is it the Emperour would give me to *Varanez*?" "I tell you not that, replied the Emperour, Nor yet (added he, speaking a little lower) that if I lose you, I can suffer this misfortune without dying, but only that you are free, and Mistress of your will, in the Dominions, and in the house of *Theodosius*; and that with an entire authority you may choose a Spouse either in the person of *Varanez* or *Theodosius*." "It is enough, my Lord, (said she, with more serenity than had appeared some moments before in her eyes) and I ask pardon of your Majesty, if I have required this explication in a business so important. And at these words, seeing that he passed into another Alley with *Pulcheria*, and that the Princes made a sign to her to stay with *Varanez*, she receiv'd the hand which he presented to her, to assist her in her walk in the Alley were they were at present.

They made some paces, both the one and the other, testifying some confusion, though there appeared less in the countenance of *Athenais* than that of *Varanez*; but in the end the Prince stopping, and lifting up his eyes on those of *Athenais*; "And well Madam, said he, You see in the end him whom you have fled with so much cruelty, and I should speak it with an extasie of joy, that I see you again, if this sight were not much more cruel to me than your most doleful absence; for it had been much more sweet to me not to have seen you. than to see you in the Palace of *Theodosius*, and upon the point to espouse him. Yes Madam, you are within few days to become Empress of the *Orient*, and Heaven gives that to your merit which with too much reason it ought to do. Your beauty could expect no less, but the love I bear you is not worthy of so ill fortune; nor ought I to be led hither, by my pitiless destiny, to assist at the triumph, and be miserably bound to the Triumpher's Chariot. You see however, that it is my duty, and that which is most cruel, is, that you behold me without pity, and without the least mark of any remembrance of that love which merited possibly some part in your memory. I

"find

“ find however in the Soul of my Rival that compassion which I find not in yours, and
 “ that Rival whose felicity I come to trouble and disturb with difficulty accepts his hap-
 “ piness, since he hath come to understand it due to my love, and not to his; and that it is
 “ not just that he should triumph over my life and fortune, without having bought with
 “ one sigh that felicity he would deprive me of. Will you be less just than he, Divine *A-*
 “ *thenais*? Or will you oppose what Heaven seems to have inspir’d him with in my favour?
 “ You do see me, I will not say more enamoured than at *Athens*, but more enamoured than
 “ *Theodosius*, or all other men in the world can be, and yet as unfortunate as enamoured,
 “ if you regard not the estate of my condition with pity, and if you surrender not your self
 “ to deprive others of what they would unjustly deprive me of.

Varanez spoke in this manner, with a passion which permitted him not the liberty to ex-
 plain himself, but with confusion and disorder; and the fair *Athenais* having peaceably
 hearkned to him, answering him with a behaviour full of modesty and sweetness; “ My
 “ Lord, said she, I would answer to the complaint you make if I could apprehend it,
 “ but since I know nothing of it, you will do me a kindness if you will better explain
 “ your self. “ I confess, replied my Prince, that my love hath created sufficient disorder
 “ in my thoughts to leave me in an estate unable to express my self in acceptable terms, but
 “ I have no need to do it with you, who see so well into my heart as to know its most
 “ secret thoughts. “ I will not give my self this vain trouble, replied *Athenais*, I have
 “ been already too much deceiv’d to have longer this opinion; but in the end my Lord,
 “ what is it you complain of? Is it of me? Is it of your self? Is it of *Theodosius*? Or is it
 “ of Fortune? “ I complain, replied my Prince, both of you, of my self, of *Theodosius*,
 “ and of Fortune; but for Fortune, she is insensible and deaf to our complaints; for *Theo-*
 “ *dosius*, he does part of what he can do to satisfy me, for my self, I am so sufficiently
 “ miserable, that my own reproaches are not necessary to add to my misery, and therefore
 “ Madam there rests only you of whom I ought to complain, either with some reason, or
 “ with some hope; it is by you only that I lose all things, if I am so unfortunate as to
 “ lose them, and you have understood to day, that it is only in your will to render me
 “ happy or miserable. “ How my Lord, (replied the fair *Endoxia*) when I should
 “ be so happy to espouse the Emperour, will it be of me that you will have reason to com-
 “ plain? Or can you accuse me for giving him that you have never demanded, nor so
 “ much as once desired? “ I confess, said the Prince, that in the beginning of my love
 “ I have not possibly done all that I ought, nor is it strange to see that love in its first birth
 “ should not arrive at all that Grandeur which time and a greater knowledge might give it;
 “ but *Athenais*, I have at present attained that perfection, and since with what I ought to
 “ have to merit entirely your affections, I have likewise some things which by your con-
 “ fession have not displeas’d you, why may it not be permitted me to hope, that what
 “ might one have rendred me happy may not now prove unprofitable? “ I confess to you
 “ my Lord, said *Athenais*, that during the honour you did me at *Athens*, I observ’d no-
 “ thing in your person which was not great and worthy of esteem, and which did not
 “ merit all other fortune than what you can hope in the affection of *Athenais*. I will
 “ likewise say, and endeavour to speak it without shame or confusion, that those great
 “ qualitics had wrought a greater effect on my heart than I ought to have desired, and
 “ that you knew the truth when you knew that I was not insensible of your affection:
 “ But my Lord, if I was so presumptuous as to raise mine to you, you repress’d my bold-
 “ ness by the care you took to humble me, and to represent to me my meanness, and you
 “ taught me so much repentance, that it was only that, and the fear I had to esteem you
 “ more than I ought, which drove me from my Country, and made me sollicite my Father
 “ to depart, that I might no more appear before a person that had so well corrected me.
 “ You see how Fortune hath since dispos’d of me, and possibly you begin to believe, that
 “ those Predictions of *Leontin*, which you once with reason derided, by reason of those
 “ faults they made us commit, were not without some foundation; of what then do you
 “ accuse me? What injury have I done you? What desire you of me? Or for what reason
 “ come you to trouble the fortune of a person in whom you have no interest? “ Have I
 “ no interest? (cryed my Prince) Alas I have all the interest, for without giving me
 “ my death, you cannot give your self to *Theodosius*; you may say possibly that I had no in-
 “ terest in your marriage so long as I had no design to espouse you; but at present, that I de-
 “ clare it to you, and that with the person of *Varanez*, which you confess not to have been
 “ indifferent to you, I offer you a Crown, which possibly in the estate wherein the affairs
 “ of the Empire are at present, is of no less value than that of *Theodosius*: It is for you *Athe-*
 “ *nais* to recall into your heart that good opinion you have formerly had for me, to receive

“all the reparation which an humbled and repenting Prince can offer you, and to testify that you have sufficient generosity to accept, in the estate wherein you are, that which in another fortune you would not have refused. “No my Lord, said *Athenais*, I had not refused it, since I knew no reason which might hinder me from receiving a Crown from a Prince great and worthy of esteem like you. But my Lord, added she sighing, it is not seriously you make these offers, you would not abase your Grandeur to the Daughter of *Leontin*. “Ah Madam, replied *Varanez*, insult not over one so miserable, nor make me blush for my fault, since you see me touched with a true repentance. “How my Lord, added *Athenais*, can you forget that long descent of great Kings from whom you are descended, to ally your self to a miserable Philosopher? “I would do something much more difficult, said my Prince, to make you forget a fault, the remembrance of which you too cruelly preserve; and I find you at present as much above me, both by reason of your merit, and my own love, as I did formerly believe the Philosopher *Leontin* to be beneath the Prince of Persia. *This change would be very strange,* (replied the charming *Eudoxia*) *but it is to the honour I receive from the Emperour, rather than any other cause, that I owe this obligation, it hath possibly taken from my condition a part of that meanness you looked on with so much disdain, and you have possibly believed that a Prince of Persia might without dishonouring himself cast his eyes upon a person destined to the Emperour of the Orient. But my Lord, I am too just to abuse you by this unjust effect of your passion, a fortune which I have never merited, ought not to make me forget my Meanness, and your Dignity; if the Emperour hath committed a fault in raising me to a degree of which I am too unworthy, he will suffer the trouble by the knowledge he will have of it; and as he respects less Dignity than Virtue, if he can in me find any Virtue, he will make it supply the default of Dignity; but for you my Lord, in whom all things are great and exalted, it is not just that you should commit the same fault; and to deliver my self from the reproach might be made, should I contribute to it, I protest to you, that the Daughter of *Leontin* shall never be seated in the Throne of Cyrus.*

Ab! Throne of Cyrus! (cried my Prince, transported with grief) *mightest thou have been overturn'd as thou wert in the times of Darius, so that I had not remembered my self of thee in a time wherein I ought to have laid all things at the feet of my divine Athenais. But Madam,* (added he, beholding her with a languishing aspect) *is it possible, that having a Soul great and fair as you have, you cannot forget a feeble effect of the presumption of a young man who neither knew you nor himself, and much less knew the love he had for you? I had done without doubt at Athens what I do at Constantinople, had I for some days longer seen you; nor was it probably in the first days of his love, the design of Theodosius to espouse you: pardon me then if it be possible a fault which I do repair as much as I can, and if this reparation suffices not to appease your resentment, receive my life and my blood, which I will spill at your feet to satisfy you. Such a satisfaction,* replied *Athenais*, *is not at all necessary to repair an injury which I would willingly forget; the Religion I have embraced obligeth us to pardon much more cruel ones; but when I have lost the remembrance of it, as I do lose it for ever, what advantage will you draw, or what can you hope or desire of me? I desire,* replied *Varanez*, *all that that love I have for you, all that the favourable thoughts you formerly had for me, and all the consent of Theodosius will permit me to desire; and I desire (to explain my self more clearly) that you would receive the Faith, the Crown, and the Life of Varanez, which I offer you. I should accept what you offer me with infinite respect,* replied *Eudoxia*, *if I had the liberty to do it; but you know well that I cannot accept it. Ab for that liberty,* replied my Prince, *you know that you have it entirely; and you have understood it from the very mouth of Theodosius. I have well understood from the Emperour,* replied *Eudoxia*, *that he will not force my inclinations, which though he had not told me, I could have hoped from his justice, and from his goodness; but this power, which he leaves me over my will, doth not disengage me from an obligation, of which the gift of a thousand lives cannot acquit me, and which permits me not to prefer him who hath despised me, before him who from the stirrup hath lifted me to the Imperial Dignity. Ab cruel Athenais,* replied *Varanez*, *and have you so soon forgot the promise you made me not to remember my fault? I will not remember it,* said *Eudoxia*, *to keep any resentment against you; but you shall permit me to remember it to compare your proceedings with those of Theodosius; and to hinder me from acting an impiety, and horrible injustice, in preferring him to whom I owe nothing before him to whom I owe all things. Do you believe then to owe nothing,* replied my Prince, *to a man who hath devoted himself wholly to you from the first moment he saw you, and who at present offers you all that Heaven hath put in his dispose? Hath Theodosius done more, or hath he not done less than I? Since in the estate wherein he is, he may dispose of his Person,*

Person, and of his Empire, whilst I expose my self to the anger of a Father sufficiently formidable, if my love did not stop my eyes to that, and all other considerations: nor is he himself resolv'd on what he hath to do for you without the advice of Pulcheria, who hath an absolute power over his will; nor you possibly anything more indebted to his love, than to the ambition of his Sister. To whatsoever I may owe it, replied Athenais, I have all due apprehension thereof fixed in the middle of my heart, and the proceeding of Theodosius is so fair, so noble, and so obliging towards me, that my most sensible grief is, that I cannot express my acknowledgmen of it but by the sole gift of Athenais. I have likewise this misfortune, that it maybe believed the Imperial Dignity hath at least as many charms to incite me, as the person that gives it, and that endeavour which I shall use to insure the contrary, will scarce gain any ascendent over this opinion; but I will not refrain from telling you, whatsoever judgment you may make, that though the Emperour Theodosius, by a prodigious change of his fortune, should to morrow see himself reduc'd to the meanest condition of the most unfortunate person of his Empire, I would not only prefer him before you with the Crown of Persia, and before all men of the world, but I would give my self to him in that condition, though impossible to find any change, and in possessing only his person, I should not appear less satisfied, than in possessing with him the Empire of Constantine. I will add to this my Lord, that I had done the same for you, if I had been bound to you for an entertainment equal to that which I have receiv'd from him, and that in whatever estate fortune could have cast you, I had not only refus'd Theodosius for Spouse, but prefer'd your person before the possession of the world. "But if it be true, said Varanez, that you have had some consideration for my person, do you not find that it is a little different from that of Theodosius? and with a dignity not at all inferiour to his, the glory of some very noble and gallant actions, ought to have touch'd a soul like yours with some favourable thoughts. "I confess, replied Athenais, that there are few great qualities which you possess not, and that the glory of your actions is spread through the world; but as Theodosius speaks not of your person but with esteem, you ought possibly use him with the same generosity, and if you oblige me to judge, the difference I should place (according to my inclinations) would not be for your advantage. "But in fine, (replied the Prince of Persia) though all the merit and all the advantages were on the part of Theodosius, would you devote nothing to pity; nor suffer your self to be touch'd by the deplorable fortune of a man that dyes for you? it is no longer by reason that I will struggle with your inclinations, for all reason vanishes before your authority. I am without merit, I am guilty, I am unworthy of all things; but Athenais, once more I dye for you, and it is certain that the first moment of the felicity of Theodosius, will be the last of my life. Will the safety of an unfortunate Prince, whom you reduce to this deplorable estate, gain no consideration with you? or can you see him yield up his soul at you feet, without being sensible of compassion?

At these words, without considering that he might be seen, he cast himself at her knees, and embraced them with a behaviour so passionate, that Athenais had never been so troubled in her life. She released her self in the end from his arms, and having made him rise up, with a countenance which testified to him the little content she receiv'd in that action, "I know yet less my Lord, said she, what it is you can desire of my pity, than I can judge you desire of my affection: for since all the pity with which you would inspire me, cannot make me fail of my Duty to the Emperour, I know not to what intent you would employ it. I believe likewise, that it is not at all necessary for you, but that you have sufficient courage to receive, like a great man, all that grief which a loss like that of Athenais can beget in you. Summon it up at this time my Lord, if it be true that you have need of it, and do nothing which may be unworthy of your Birth or fair Reputation; with its assistance, and that of your virtue, a months absence, or the view of some person more worthy of you than the Daughter of Leontin; you will drive her from your heart; and since you ought never to see her again, there is some appearance that time will banish her in such sort from your memory, that there will not remain the least trace. How Madam, said Varanez, shall I never in my life, see you more? No my Lord, (replied she very readily) and if you will believe my counsel, this should be the last discourse we should have together. You are at present too much suspected by me, replied Varanez, to take your counsel, for I cannot only in this manner not abandon you, but I shall with difficulty do it all my life. "I know not what are your intentions, (added Eudoxia very coldly) but as mine shall always be, never to do any thing against my Duty, I know well that when I shall be the Emperour's, I shall not suffer the sight of any man who, may give him suspicion; and if I have not the power to make you depart from

Constantinople, I shall confine my self in those places where you shall difficultly see me. Ah cruel person, (*said the Prince, beholding her with an eye full of resentment*, stay at least till you are Empress, before you drive me from *Constantinople*, how know you whether this condition be too well assur'd, or who can answer to a Rival too happy, for the wisdom of a man whom his felicity makes despair? "I will answer for him my self, *replied Eudoxia*, out of the knowledge I have of your virtue, and against such crimes and treacheries I will with you seek no precautions. "I shall not be capable to act them, *replied Varanez*, whilst I shall have any remnant of Reason in my soul, but when that shall have absolutely abandon'd me, I know not to what I may abandon my self. *Since there is nothing capable to drive it thence*, *replied the fair Eudoxia*, I believe that it will still remain Mistress, and the belief I have hinders me from what I would do were I less assur'd.

Concluding these words, she found her self at the end of the Alley, from whence she saw in another that crossed it the Emperour and *Pulcheria*, who walking and judging that she had long enough entertain'd the Prince, "I believe my Lord, *said she*, that it is time to seek the Emperour and the Princess, who expect us, and we have possibly by so long a discourse pass'd the rules of civility." You may see it not seasonable for me, *said the Prince*, that in the condition wherein I am, I should present my self before them: I cannot do it at present without testifying some weakness or disturbance which will displease you, and you may pronounce victory to my Rival, without letting me so soon behold the face of my Conquerour. Concluding these words he made her a profound obeysance, and retired on another side, so lost and transported, that he had scarce any knowledge of what he did.

Two Ladies who had followed *Eudoxia* at a distance, approach'd her when they saw her alone, and a little after the Emperour and the Princess his Sister, seeing her advance towards the place where they were, mov'd towards her to receive her. The Emperour by what we knew afterwards accus'd her not, but with a great heart-beating, and beholding her with a countenance that betrayed his want of confidence, *And well Madam*, *said he*, is it life or death that you pronounce, and the Prince of Persia doth he absent himself from us, out of grief or modesty? *As this adventure*, *replied Eudoxia*, cannot be the cause of any great grief in him, nor put his modesty to any proof, I believe that it is neither for the one nor the other that he is retired, but rather out of a confusion to have accepted the offer that you made him. *But in fine Madam*, *replied Theodosius*, if I may demand it of you without trembling, in favour of which of us have you given sentence, and the choice which you have made is it to my advantage or to that of *Varanez*? It is without doubt to that of *Varanez*, (*replied Eudoxia*) for since he that loses *Athenais* gains much more than the other, I believe my Lord that his condition is better than yours. *Oh if it be so*, (*cried the Emperour with a countenance full of all the marks of joy*) if it be so that *Varanez* hath gain'd the advantage, I wish that he may enjoy it eternally, and I would my self preserve it to him at the price of my own life. *In truth Madam*, *said the Princess to Athenais*, I never doubted but you would act in this manner, and I have continually assur'd the Emperour against the fear which the uncertainty of your choice might raise. It was not so light, *replied Theodosius*, but it hath made me suffer in one hour, more than I have suffer'd in all my life: and I confess that the great and fair qualities of the Prince of Persia have begot in me a fear upon this subject from which I have had difficulty to recover my self. *Oh my Lord*, (*said Eudoxia with a behaviour full of sweetness*) by what action can I have merited that your Majesty should make so cruel a judgment of me? or how can you believe me guilty of so much deceit and ingratitude? *Would to God* I could make to this affection with which you honour me, a greater sacrifice than that which I have to day done of the Prince of Persia: and I must let you know my Lord, that if the effects of my gratitude cannot reach so high as I could wish, they are at least in such manner fix'd in my heart, that I shall preserve them unto death. I am not at all displeas'd, *added the Emperour*, that you have for to be Empress of the Orient, refused the Crown of Persia: Nor could the knowledge I have of your merit, be better authoris'd, than by the love and design of a Prince such as *Varanez*, who in dignity and merit hath possibly few peers in the world. *But I confess*, that his misfortune creates in me a pity, and that I would at the price of part of my blood, that he had not pass'd through Athens, or that he had not come to *Constantinople*. I cannot however yield to him *Eudoxia*, for besides that no reason obliges me to it, I would renounce much sooner my Empire and my Life, than my Divine *Athenais*. *Wholly absolute as you are my Lord*, *replied Eudoxia*, you shall permit me to tell you, that you cannot give me to the Prince of Persia: and though I confess that if he had offer'd me at Athens what he offers me at *Constantinople*, I had not refus'd it. Yet if you judge me unworthy of the honour you have offer'd me, it shall not be with *Varanez* that I will seek my recompense, but I will find a retreat more agreeable at the feet of Altars, with the Princess *Flavilla* and the Princess *Marina*.

You repay with too much generosity, replied the Emperor, a benefit I have not done, but to my self: but since I have no small impatience to possess it, think it fit that I hairen the time, and that I pass over many particulars and vain formalities oftentimes practis'd by persons of our degree, to espouse you in eight days. My Lord, said Eudoxia, you are my Emperour and I ought to obey you.

Whilst these happy persons took a resolution so cruel to the repose of my Master, that poor Prince had sought out the most silent and retired place of the Garden, where he abandon'd himself to all the assaults of a most terrible grief. He walked at a great pace, his arms crossed on his stomach, his eyes swoln with those tears he could not retain, and his sight wholly troubled and affrighted, which sometimes he let fall to earth, and sometimes gently lifted up to Heaven, whither he sent up sighs accompanied from time to time with words of complaint, which his sobs at every moment interrupted. All his gestures, and all that appear'd in his person was so worthy of pity, that the most cruel souls could difficultly have defended themselves from it: and possibly Theodosius himself, had he seen him in this estate, could not have kept all his resolution. *Ab unfortunate Prince,* cried he sometimes, *to what remediless torments dost thou see thy self miserably expos'd? and what assistance canst thou draw from thy courage, against thy terrible misfortunes? wilt thou patiently see Athenais in the arms of a happy Rival? or wilt thou suffer to break forth on this too happy Rival some effects of thy despair? canst thou suffer that he should enjoy peaceably before thy eyes, that only good can make thee love thy life? or by an effect of that fury, into which thy ill fortune hath precipitated thee, wilt thou make him find his Funerals in those cruel Esponsals which send thee to thy Tomb? Ab Varanez,* added he, *I feel that thou canst do neither; the first is no less impossible to thy love, than the last is forbidden by thy virtue: Miserable that thou art, what wilt thou then do? and to what dost thou resolve thyself after the loss of Athenais? thou wilt lose her for ever, and thou knowest that her loss is for thee a misfortune without remedy, without consolation. Alas!* said he a little after, *what resolution can I take but a resolution to dye? this seems to me so easie that it is that alone at which I must stop, for in the estate in which I find my self, nothing can be so sweet to me, nothing so agreeable as death.*

He torment'd himself in this manner, and his heart was miserably afflicted with those cruel thoughts that opprest it, when from another part of the Garden, where I had walked since he had entred with the persons that had attended him, I went to him, knowing well that my presence would be less troublesome than that of any other. I found him in the condition I have told you, and yet more disconsolate than I can represent to you: and he saw me no sooner near him but casting himself upon a seat of stone which was behind him, and beholding me with eyes which made me conceive a part of what he had to say, *It is to day Mitranes,* said he, *it is to day that I lose Athenais for ever. And well my Lord,* said I, *though this misfortune should happen,* (for to be complacent to your passion I will believe it a misfortune to you) *have not you courage enough to support it? No Mitranes,* cried he, *I have no courage against the proof of so terrible a misfortune. It seems to me however my Lord,* replied I, *that you ought to have been sufficiently prepar'd before you came to the proof you have made, for after the different usage which Athenais hath receiv'd from you and Theodosius, there was little appearance that she would quit Theodosius. "Ah vain pride, cried the Prince, which all men "have blamed in me with too much reason, wherefore hearken'd I to thee at that time? "and why consider'd I not that it was only against enemies, and not against those whom I adored, that thou wert pardonable. But, added he a little after, vain reflections, unprofitable repentance, wherefore come you to torment me? and wherefore joyn you your forces to that of a grief, sufficiently powerful to give me a death without your assistance.*

He made many other discourses, little different from these, and by which he made me know that he was in an extremity of grief, little distant from despair. I was little capable to comfort him, (though beholding his misery without passion, I found it not so great as he fancied it,) I however did all that was possible for me to restore his mind into a more settled condition, and I represented to him all that reason and the affection I had for his repose, could inspire me with, to appease a part of his grief, but I labour'd in vain: and having hearken'd peaceably to me; *Ab Mitranes,* cried he all on a sudden, *I shall never more see Athenais. "That may happen my Lord,* said I, *but it may in all likelihood fall out as well, "that in little time her sight will be no longer necessary for your repose, and that when you "have let Reason re-possess her entire Empire over your mind, you will not only comfort "your self for the absence of Athenais, but will be better content that the Daughter of Leontin should reign in the Orient than in Persia. "Ah Mitranes,* (said he looking upon me with *an incens'd eye*) *let us behold Athenais no longer as the Daughter of Leontin, nor flatter*

“more a pride which you ought to have condemn’d at a time that it produced an effect so
 “fatal to my repose. Since *Athenais* reigned in my heart, I ought to have made her reign
 “through all the earth; and since she had submitted my self to her, I ought not to have
 “doubted the submission of my people. Would to God it were permitted me to advance
 “her as much above me, as I am above the meanest of the *Persians*: or that beholding her
 “as my Sovereign, I might pass my life in her service like a vile slave, rather than see her
 “Spouse to *Theodosius*. “But my Lord, said I, since you love her truly, and it is ordain’d
 “by Heaven, that she shall not be yours, had you not rather that she should live advanc’d
 “in dignity, and be happy with *Theodosius*, than pass her life in a miserable condition?
Mitranes, said my Prince, seek not for Reason in me, I know neither what I would have nor
 what I think: but I know only that the death of *Varanez* or the death of *Theodosius*, are the
 two only things of which I can at present think. “Ah my Lord, said I, think rather of a-
 ny other thing, and both in the one and the other, hearken to your Courage and to your
 Virtues; for the life of *Varanez* precious to so many persons, and precious to the whole world,
 ’tis not in such a humour as this it ought to be abandon’d: and for that of *Theodosius* I am as-
 sur’d that if any one should make you the proposition you would hearken to it with horror.
 “It is a Prince who hath treated you in all things like his brother, and who in that very
 “thing which renders him odious to you hath done that for you you would not have done
 “for him. When he laid the design to espouse *Athenais*, he was ignorant of the interest
 “you had in her; and when he knew it, he hindred not but *Athenais* might have been yours,
 “though he had all sorts of ways and all sorts of reasons to preserve her. You have seen
 “that his proceeding hath been the sweetest the most generous and most obliging in the
 “world: And for this reason my Lord, you not only ought not to conceive any ill will a-
 “gainst him; but by an endeavour worthy of your courage, you ought willingly and cheer-
 “fully to yield him that you cannot dispute with him. Let the whole world see that it is
 “no less ealie for you to overcome by Generosity than by Arms: and remember in the end,
 “the word you have solemnly given, not to bring any trouble to his love and to his repose,
 “if the choice of *Athenais* were not favourable to you. *It is true*, said *Varanez* sighing,
 that I have given this word, and I will keep it if it be possible, (said he, lifting himself from the
 place where he was seated,) but let us go seek repose if it be permitted us in a place more gloomy
 and retired than this, and do you *Mitranes* manage things so, that I be not this day seen by any
 person.

Speaking these words he went towards his Apartment at a great rate, and having shut himself alone into his Closet, he passed the rest of that day and the whole night without suffering himself to be seen, and without receiving any nourishment. We had some difficulty to make him take any on the morrow, nor had we brought it to pass, if we had not represented to him, that by that proceeding he would make himself be accus’d of feebleness by those persons to whom his great courage was not so well known, and that it would be of ill consequence to expose himself to their disdain, in a place where he ought so carefully to preserve his reputation. Being always sensible of glory more than all other things, he had some respect to what regarded it, and acted a violence on himself which he had not been capable of for any other consideration. But when he understood that the day of the Emperours marriage was agreed on, and that there were but four or five to come, before that which ought to give to the Emperour the possession of *Athenais*, he relaps’d into his first transportments, and wanted but a little to enter into a fury ready to stop his eyes to all things. In fine, he moderated himself by the wise counsels of *Megabises*, for whom he had an infinite respect, and if we could not give him any comfort, yet at least we manag’d so well his discontent by the assistance of his virtue, of which we made great advantage in this necessity, and which with success we plac’d before his eyes, that in the end we made him resolve to support his misfortune like a Heroe, to keep his word which he had given to the Emperour, and seek his recovery in the absence of *Athenais*.

He had not seen her since she had declar’d her self in favour of *Theodosius*, and he had so well thunn’d the sight of *Theodosius*, who, knowing the condition wherein he was, would not aggravate his grief by his presence, so that they had not seen each other since that day. But when he had took his resolution, and was determin’d rather to dye than do any thing unworthy of his courage, he refus’d no longer to see the Emperour. *Theodosius* visited him in his Chamber, where he receiv’d him not with a sprightly Countenance but with an aspect which denoted a part of his resolution: and the Emperour willing to excuse himself of the grief he had caused in him, and comfort him with words full of sweetness, and the most obliging in the world, Cease my Lord, said he, to comfort one so miserable, who is not worth the care you take of him; and since the good fortune of *Athenais* wills her to you and not to me, rejoice both

both the one and the other in those pleasures which are destined to you, without receiving any trouble from the remembrance of my misfortunes. Time or Reason will possibly afford some comfort to my evil; but because I have understood that it is within three days that you are to espouse Athenais, think it not inconvenient that I do not appear to grace a solemnity which will put my constancy to too cruel a proof, and permit me to retire before this great day arrive.

“It will not be without great sorrow, replied the Emperour, that I shall see you depart from us; but since I dare not intreat you to be present where you will receive so much grief, I am constrained to consent to your departure with infinite regret, that a Journey by which you have so deeply obliged us, hath not been more happy to you.

They had little discourse that day, my Master not being so well able to dissemble his grief, as to continue with the Emperour in any long converse; and the Emperour was unwilling to constrain him longer to see the face of a man who was to render him miserable. But from that moment we prepared all things for our departure, and we laboured with so much diligence, that two days after, and precisely that which was to precede the Marriage of the Emperour, all our Equipage was ready in the great Court of the Palace, and my Prince went to take his last leave of the Emperour. He knew not whether he ought to bid adieu to *Athenais*, and if on the one side his love importun'd him once more to see her, the fear he had to renew his grief by that sight, and to procure some obstruction to the cure he sought, made him fly what he desired, or at least hindred him from demanding it. I know not what he had in the end resolv'd, but as he was upon the point to depart the chamber of the Emperour, having received all his civilities, and told him all that his grief would permit him to say, *How*, (said *Theodosius* to him, embracing him) *will you depart without bidding adieu to Athenais? and will you quit her like an enemy, having so much loved her? I will do what you please*, (replied my Prince, with a sigh which he could not withhold) but believing the sight of me might be troublesome to her, I durst not demand a permission to see her. And at these words, without speaking farther, he followed the Emperour to *Eudoxia's* Apartment, but with so much disorder and trouble in his spirit, that he had scarce knowledge how to demean himself.

The Emperour was advanced some paces before him, to prepare *Eudoxia* for his visit; and when my Prince entred into her Chamber, she received him with the best grace in the world, and with a Majesty absolutely conformable to the degree to which she was called. For *Varangis*, he had scarce the power to behold her, and in all his countenance he appeared so distracted, that if *Athenais*, to whom the cause of this trouble was too well known, had not assisted him, he had difficultly entred into any discourse with her. The Emperour to give him more liberty, was entred into an adjacent chamber, with those Ladies which he had found in that of *Athenais*, and now rendred this vain and unprofitable office to a man who could take no advantage from it. *You leave us my Lord*, said *Athenais*, *and you leave us, as I understand, without bidding me adieu. I ought this respect*, replied the Prince, *to the counsel you gave me some days past; and I depart from Constantinople before you are Sovereign, not to give you the trouble to drive me thence. Ad my Lord*, replied *Eudoxia*, *I should not have driven you hence; and it was for your repose as well as my own, that I counsel'd you to depart from us. I am too much obliged to you*, (replied the Prince very sadly) *for the care you take of my repose; but as all hopes ever to find it are banished from my Soul, it is not by that counsel you can procure it me. I desire with all my heart*, replied *Eudoxia*, *that you may entirely meet it, and I would gladly contribute all those things which my duty will permit me; but as I believe it is rather in your self that you ought to find it, than in any remedies I can bring, I hope that you will soon possess it as entire as I can wish it. In revenge of your good wishes*, said the Prince, *I beg of the Gods that you may be as happy as you have rendred me miserable, and that that felicity for which you forsook me, may never be troubled by any remembrance, or any change may give you cause to repent it. I hope my Lord*, replied *Athenais*, *that the effect of your prayers will come to pass, and as I have no intention that is not innocent, and that it is Heaven and not my own design hath wrought for me, I believe not at all, that any change of my fortune may make me fear to repent it. For you my Lord, I should be very sorry you should have any thing wherewith to reproach me, but without bringing things past to your memory, I am assured that the reflection your self may make, will justify me sufficiently in your thoughts. I know well*, replied my Prince, *that you have done me no injustice, and though you had, the cause that obliged you to it might well have excused it. I come not therefore hither to complain, I ought now to carry my grief, and lead it with me to all places whither my love shall conducl me, and where the remembrance of you will wage war with me to my grave. I will do it cruel Athenais, since my ill fortune will have it so, as well as you, and after having made you this last protestation, you shall suffer me to give you the last adieu.*

Concluding

Concluding these words he saluted her, and took leave of her, by a force so contrary to his will, that all his constancy was scarce able to withstand it. The Emperour followed him, hearing him depart the chamber, and whatever endeavours he used to hinder it, he accompanied him forth of the Gates of *Constantinople*, and would have gone farther would he have permitted him; but *Varanez* not suffering him, and the Emperour knowing well that his company was not acceptable, they parted, and at their parting, the Emperour embracing him with a tenderness which he expressed with tears, *Adieu my Brother*, said he, *preserve for me the amity of the King my Father and yours if it be possible; and believe that I would with all my soul give a part of my Empire, and a part of my blood for your satisfaction.* *Varanez* had not the power to answer to these words, or at least he answered to them with a disorder that would not permit him to explain himself.

He would not embarque to pass the Streight no more than he had done in coming, though it was his much nearer way to repass into *Asia*, but that was not his intention, and saying that he would yet visit some Cities of *Europe*, before he put himself to Sea, he went to lodge at his departure from *Constantinople*, at the same place where he had lodged at his arrival. He remain'd there all the morrow, to understand news of the marriage of *Athenais*, imagining that Heaven might yet by some miracle interrupt it, and out of a weakness common to all Lovers, conserving to the extremity a hope without foundation; and for this reason he had left one of our men at *Constantinople*, but he came about the Evening of the second day, and he understood but too certainly that *Athenais* was espoused, and was already Empress of the *Orient*. Though he was sufficiently prepared for this news, he could not understand it without relapsing into a grief which had near-hand deprived him of his life, and that night which he fancied with so much reason so sweet to *Theodosius*, was the most cruel to him that can be imagined. He passed it wholly in complaints, sighs and sobs, but on the morrow, before he rose, or had given orders for his departure, a man presented himself to him, who brought him a Letter from the Philosopher *Leontin*. He receiv'd it with infinite trouble, not being able to imagine what might be the subject of it, and so much the rather, because he had not seen *Leontin* during all the stay he had made at *Constantinople*, where he had understood, that instead of taking part in the greatness of his Daughter, he was absolutely retired from the world, and had with *Atticus* fix'd himself to the Service of Heaven; however he with no small impatience open'd the Paper and found these words.

Leontin to the Prince of Persia.

Since you know my Lord, that by reason of the honour I have had to be nigh you, I am not ignorant of any particulars of your Birth, and since by the success of those predictions I have made of the Fortune of Athenais, you may judge that I have some knowledge of the Stars; I will assure you out of the interest I take all my life in your repose, that you shall in a short time recover of the misfortune you at present suffer under. But it is upon the Banks of the Rhine that you must find the remedy, and it is there only that you will lose the love and the remembrance of Athenais. This is an assurance given you by

—LEONTIN.

If my Prince had not had too fresh in his memory the remembrance of the cruel effects of those predictions *Leontin* had made of the greatness of his Daughter, and which he had before derided, he had not laid so great foundation on this Letter, but after such a proof had of the knowledge of the Philosopher, he believed that what he had pronounced might befall him, though he could not imagine in what manner, for he fancied that only by death he could forget *Athenais*. However it were, this was the reason which completed his resolves, in the design he had not to return again into *Persia*, till he had freed his mind from that cruel passion which tormented him, and an hour after having caused *Megabises* to be called, who was the chief officer of his House, *Megabises*, said he, *you shall lead back my Equipage into Persia, and leave with me only my first Esquire, and two others to serve me. You shall return with the rest, to the King my Father, and having reported to him those truths you know, you shall tell him, that for not doing an action which might have given*

given him displeasur, I am become the most miserable of all men; and that not daring to present my self to him whilst I labour under this sad condition, I go unknown to wander through Europe, and seek a remedy to my passion in this voyage, and in the diversity of objects which may conduce to my recovery; that I will return to him so soon as I shall have a mind more composed, and that besides those very necessary knowledges I may gain by this voyage, I have hopes it will not be unprofitable to his service.

Megabiser did a long time oppose this design of the Prince, and represented unto him all those reasons he believed strong enough to divert it, or at least to oblige him to suffer him to accompany him, but he could gain nothing over his resolution, for the Prince in the end testified to him so absolutely that he would be obeyed, that *Megabiser*, though with infinite grief, was constrained to submit to his will, and to prepare to pass the *Bosphorus* with his Equipage, leaving with him only my self, and two Esquires, the best of his Horses, and the precious Stones and Silver, which might be necessary for his Voyage. With this little Equipage he began his Journey, resolving to essay, if the predictions of *Leontin* would produce any effect, and to do with that little proof, all that he had an intention to do, if he had not been flattered with greater, which was to seek from Province to Province, and from occasion to occasion, all that could divert his thoughts from *Athenais*, whom, in whatsoever manner it should be, he was resolved to drive, if possible, from his memory.

But believing nothing more capable than War, to divert the thoughts of Love, and having his mind naturally full with martial thoughts, he would (unknown as he was) pass into those Countries where he might find occasion to signalize himself; and to this purpose we took our way towards *Macedonia*, a good part of which, the *Huns* had possessed themselves of, and from thence into *Mesia*, whither their King extended his Conquests, and where he had gained many great Provinces, by the valour of his younger Son *Balsmir*. In effect, there being a war yet maintained in this Country, my Prince apparently sought death rather than glory (for what glory could he hope for not making himself known?) and siding with those parties he believed most just, he ran to all perilous hazards, and gave marks of so extraordinary a valour, that he every where relieved his party; and I know not by what fortune he was known in many places, whatever his desire was to conceal himself, and through all the neighbouring Provinces of *Greece*, it was spread abroad, that the Prince of *Persia* privately travelled in *Europe*, and that in *Macedonia*, in *Mesia*, and afterwards in *Illyria*, he had done several great actions worthy eternal memory.

This fame which spread it self through all, made him depart thence, and seek in *Pannonia*, and *Dalmatia*, new employs for his warlike inclinations. In the mean time, all the endeavours he used to banish his love from his mind, proved vain, and though by those of war, and others which our Travel daily presented to us, his thoughts were for some moments diverted, it is most certain however, that *Athenais* still reigned in his soul, and that if by the greatness of his courage, his passion found more steadfastness to resist its forces, than it had at his departure from *Constantinople*; yet it is but too true, that maugre all his resolutions, the remembrance of the beloved Object had fully maintain'd its Empire. In fine, having done many fair things, which through all places where he passed, left the renown of his presence, and of which, my Lords, I make you not the recital, (out of fear my discourse should prove tedious, especially since the night is so far advanced, as to make you desire repose, and inform me I ought to come to an end of my narration) he would try his fortune on the prediction of *Leontin*, and seek that River on the Banks of which he might find a remedy to his passion. For this design he did no more then cross those Provinces, by which he must of force pass to reach the River *Rhine*, and departing from *Pannonia*, he passed into *Noritia*, and from thence by the Country of the *Vindiliciens*, came to the Banks of the *Danube*; we passed it at *Celeusa*, and entred in the end into the Country of the *Hernoduses*, where there happen'd an adventure, which I ought not to pass over, as I have done over other particulars of our Travel, which for its importance; I am obliged to recount you.

Having always accusom'd himself to carry his Arms in those Countries, where he had found war, and knowing well, that in those we now travelled through, there dayly passed great numbers of Soldiers, which were advanc'd towards *Pannonia*; he for the most part went armed, and it was probably for this reason, that feeling himself one day annoyed by the extraordinary heat, and seeing near the Road we travelled, a little Grove of Trees, which made a very pleasant shade; he had a desire to alight, and repose himself for some hours. Whilst he considered of this design, and turned his Horse-head that way, he might see de-

part thence, a Cavalier followed by some Esquires, whom in all probability a like design had drawn thither. He rode a great distance from us, that he might not be taken notice of, and my Prince having no concern to know him, marched without stopping to that place of the little wood, which to him seem'd the fairest, and where the Grasse appeared most verdant; he presently alighted, and having commanded me to do the same, he made me leave the Horses in the hands of the two Esquires, who stopp'd at some paces little distant from that place; but scarce had he with his eye begun to seek a place proper to repose himself, when in the same he had destined for it, he saw something shine on the Grasse, which on the sudden dazzled his eyes; he approached it with sufficient curiosity, for a man whose passion had of late left him none, and having taken it up, he found it to be a Box of Gold, of the bigness of the palm of ones hand, enriched with many Diamonds of infinite value. He held it some time without opening it, and beholding me with a sigh, *If we were poor, said he, this accident might relieve us, but since I believe this fair Box belongs to those persons who but now departed hence, I will not make any profit of it; for I believe I ought to give it one of my Esquires to speed after them, and restore it if he can overtake them.* "It is just my Lord, said I, but your Highness will indeed have but little curiosity if you send it without opening. *Let us open it* Mitranes, said he, *but rather to satisfy your curiosity than mine.* And at these words he open'd it, and casting his eyes within it, he saw that which none can be capable to represent to you, he saw, my Lords, a face, to the beauty of which no imagination can reach. I shall therefore not make you the description of that, which without making any particular discernment, no mortal beauty could approach, so rare was what I saw in the Pourtraicture. *Varanez* beheld with a curious eye which nothing was able to remove; his astonishment, caused at the sight of so prodigious a beauty, was expressed better by his behaviour and by his silence, than it could have been by words. In fine, opening his mouth, yet without drawing his eyes from the Pourtraicture, Mitranes, said he, *can it be possible that there is any beauty in the world which may approach this?* "I cannot believe it my Lord, said I, and I should imagine rather that it is a Picture made for fancy. "There is so little appearance, replied he, that any mortal thing can resemble what I see, that I should easily be of your opinion; but however, added he, there is little reason to believe, that a Box so fair and rich, should be employed only to keep a Picture made for fancy or pleasure. At these words he yet remain'd some time without speaking, still keeping his eyes fix'd on the fair Object, and dedicating his contemplation entirely to the admiration it had caus'd in him; but in the end drawing his eyes a little aside, and turning them towards me, "I do not despair, said he, to see the effect of the predictions of *Leontin*, for it I meet a true beauty equal to this I see in painting, I doubt not at all but I shall forget *Athenais*. "Ah my Lord, said I, would to God this might happen. "I should not possibly be more happy, replied the Prince, but however it be, I feel that it would easily come to pass, if I chance to see that in the original which I see in the Pourtraicture. I will use all my endeavours to know if there be anything like this in the world, nor will my mind be at rest till I satisfy myself.

Speaking in this manner he still beheld the marvellous Pourtraicture, and his eyes were so firmly settled on it, that though we heard a great noise of Horses behind us, it was not able to disturb him, but he was still in the same posture, when a Cavalier attendd by two Esquires, came near him. I judg'd well (by what I could mark of his Arms at a greater distance) that it was the same whom we had seen depart from that place when we approached it; but because he had his Viser lifted up, and a part of his visage discovered, I observed him to be a person little different in age from my Prince, but of the noblest deportment that I had ever beheld any man. His Arms were rich and magnificent, and all things about him had a very advantageous appearance. Being come near my Prince, before he perceived his arrival, he found him seriously contemplating the fair Pourtraicture, and accosting him without alighting from his Horse, *Sir, said he, that Pourtraicture which you hold in your hand is mine, and I beseech you restore it me.* *Varanez* at these words lift his eyes towards the countenance of this Cavalier, and appeared surpris'd at his goodly presence, at the same time when his without doubt produced the same effect in the eyes of the strange Knight; but though he believed that it was the same he had seen depart from thence some moments before, and doubted not but the Pourtraicture belonged to him, the manner after which he demanded it pleas'd him not at all, and he had already fix'd his affection on it in such sort, that if he had thought he could with honour have kept it, he had hardly inclin'd himself to restore it, and therefore looking upon him very fiercely, *If this Pourtraicture be yours, said he, I shall not keep it, yet I shall very unwillingly restore it* you,

you, if you oblige not your self to let me see the Original, if it be possible that there is an Original of so admirable a beauty. In seeking to see her, said the Knight, you seek without doubt your own misery, and without doing you that ill office, I hope you will restore me my Picture. You hope in vain, replied my Prince, and if you engage not your self to this condition, you shall not draw it from my hands. I will engage my self to nothing but what I please, (replied the unknown Knight, with a fierceness nothing less than my Masters) and I will have what is mine without any condition. I see well, (said Varanez, with a sigh full of disdain) that thou knowest not him whom thou threatenest; but since there is some appearance we shall one day be Rivals, if it be true that there is in the world a Beauty equal to this Picture, there is little danger for us to begin to day for the Picture, what we shall one day finish for the Original. If I had not, replied the unknown Knight, Rivals more formidable than you, I should hope better of my fortune than now I can, but with expecting that thou shalt put thy self in a condition to do what thou sayst, thou shalt restore my Picture. And at these words, seeing that he still held the Box in his hand, he spurred his Horse by the side of him, and putting his hand to a Chain of Gold to which it was fastned, he laid hold on it so unexpectedly, that he fastened the Case from his hand before he could put himself into a posture to hinder it, and at the same time shutting it, and taking a Lance from one of his Esquires, Now, cryed he, I will attend thee without any trouble; and in effect he attended him in the posture of a man whom in all appearance the presence of an Enemy could not affright.

Varanez transported with a violent Choler, was in a moment on horseback, casting as it were flames out of his Viser which he pull'd down, and taking his Lance and Shield from the hands of his Esquires, brandishing it with a menacing cry went to take his Carier: his Enemy had already done the same, and having at the same time turn'd head the one towards the other, they parted, ran and encountred with a terrible fury; their Lances without shaking them in their Saddles broke on their shields into a thousand little Splinters, and they finished their carriers with the best grace in the world: turning about they drew their swords and assaulted each other in such a manner as would have put fear into any other hearts but theirs: I cannot tell you which of the two first struck his Enemy, nor particularize to you the blows they gave with an equal fury and forces little different; And I believe likewise that the recital I could make of the whole course of the Combat would be needless, but I will only tell you, that in little time they equally knew that neither had any reason to despise his enemy, but that both the one and the other had Glory enough to acquire by the issue of the Combat. I will not speak to you of the grief I repented, seeing my Prince engag'd in a peril wherein I could be only Spectator, both by the laws of Honour and the particular Laws of our profession. In a little time the Combat was heightned in such manner, and the two valiant Combatants dealt blows so terrible, that their Arms begun to bluish with blood in several places, and my affection possibly rather than the truth made me believe that there was more on those of my Master than on those of his Enemy: The Combat was brought to a very doubtful condition, and in all likelihood had not been finished but by the death of one or the other of the Warriours, and possibly of both, if Fortune had not led to that place another Knight cover'd with Arms all black, and followed only by two Esquires: though by all appearances it might have been judged he had little curiosity for things in which he had no interest, yet he stopped at the sight of such a Combat, and having sufficiently beheld it to be sensible of the valour of the two Combatants, on a sudden drawing his Sword, without considering the danger he ran into, by cutting himself between the Arms of two incens'd and two men so terrible as they appear'd, he spured between them with a countenance might make him be judged a great Master in what he saw others do, and joyning his voice to his Action, and to his voice the sight of a countenance full of majesty, which he discover'd to them, he acted so well that he oblig'd them to hearken to him. My Prince was however the last who had this respect for him, and his Enemy either less irritated or naturally more sweet than he, retired first, though to say truth he had no disadvantage of the Combat: *It is enough valiant men,* said he that had parted them, *I see too much blood upon your Arms? and however important may be the cause of your Combat you have done enough.*

He spoke these words and some others with so good a grace, and with an aspect so well accompanied with all marks of a true grandeur, that the indoubtable Courage of the Prince of Persia, which nothing but submission could bend, began to be softened, and to moderate that boiling Choler which transported him, and his Enemy with a very good grace addressing himself to the Knight in black Arms, "I am content, said he, to grant you what you desire of me, since you by many marks appear worthy a greater esteem: And turning in

the end towards my Prince, "By the proof I have made of thy valour, *said he*, and the belief I have that all things in thy person are agreeable to it, I judge thee worthy to enter into the number of many illustrious miserable ones, who will not disdain thee for their companion; and if we see one another again, I will out of good will do that for thee which thou hadst not made me otherways do. *I will seek thee so well, said Varanez, that I shall without doubt find thee, nor art thou so little remarkable but I may follow thy footsteps.*

His Enemy did not understand these last words, for scarce had he done speaking but he drew back with all the swiftness which the labour of the Combat had left his Horse capable to undergo: *Varanez* burn'd with desire to follow him, but he was hindred by him who had caused the Combat to cease, and seeing my self have so good a helper, I joyn'd my self to him with so much success, the rather because his loss of blood began to weaken him, that we obliged him to go to the next adjacent City to dress his Wounds. That generous Cavalier knowing my Prince by many marks to be an extraordinary person, would not leave him, but going with us to the City where we had a design to dress him, would not only see his wounds dressed, but having understood that they were not dangerous but might in few days be cured, he would not forsake him, but made him be attended as if he had been his brother: my Prince obliged to his generosity made himself known to him for whom he was, and that great person to testify to him that he had in him the like confidence, discover'd himself to him for that great *Constance*, who hearkens to me, and whose Reputation is so gloriously spread through the universe.

You may have understood from him, my Lord, *said Mitranez* to *Pharamond*, that which hath passed between them after this knowledge, and the assurance they gave each other of a reciprocal amity. Nothing happen'd to them worthy recounting to you; and after the wounds of my Master were cured, as they were in few days, they began their Journey, and separated not, but by the departure of *Varanez*, who as I believe is gone in quest of that valiant Cavalier against whom he fought, not having since that time had other thoughts but to see the Original of that admirable Picture, having confessed to us many times, that if he met with a Beauty equal to that, he should hope to forget *Athenais*. You may judge by this my Lords, if he be not in a condition to recover of his love, and to see the effect of *Leontin's* Predictions. I attend here news of him by his order, and believing he hath not forgot me, I doubt not but I shall receive it in few days.

Mitranez concluded in this manner the recital of the Adventures of *Varanez*, of which *Constance* had before a confused knowledge, which yet hindred him not from taking infinite pleasure in the Narration. He had many things to say concerning the interest of *Theodosius* and *Athenais*, and King *Pharamond* studied not a little of the last Adventure of *Varanez*; but because the greatest part of the night was past, they deferred till the morrow the discourse they intended to have concerning this matter, and King *Pharamond* having conducted *Artabure* into his chamber, notwithstanding all the excuses he made, retired soon after into his own, to set apart fewer hours to sleep, than to those sad thoughts that had prepossessed him.

The end of the Third Part of
PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

The Fourth Part.

BOOK I.



King Pharamond having resolv'd to execute an enterprize he had design'd on some parts of the Enemies Camp, awakened a long time before the day broke, and immediately after his Chamber was filled with a great number of Officers of his Army, who were to have a part in that days action; among the chief he saw the Prince *Sunnon*, the Princes *Ibere*, *Genebaud*, and *Meroveus*, accompanied with *Cleomer*, and after them enter'd *Priam*, and *Pharabert* followed by *Clodesile*, *Rithimer*, and *Theodimir*, and many others, who for their Birth and Valour merited a particular esteem amongst men. The King received them with all that charming affa-

bility which made them adore him, nor was there any one particularly to whom he gave not some mark of esteem by obliging discourses; and in the end addressing himself to those who were nearest to him, *I hope*, said he, *that we may to day acquire some glory together, and since by the Orders of Rosamond defence is permitted us, I believe we shall render our selves nothing more criminal, by visiting to day the Herules and Gepides. My Lord*, reply'd the valiant *Ibere*, *You would be less expos'd than you are, to the fear to offend the Queen of the Cimbrians, if you would not go to seek occasions in person, and if you would be pleas'd to reserve your self for the most important, leaving to us those which are less, and in which your presence is not always necessary. I see well, my Cousin*, reply'd the King of the Franks, *that you would have all the Peril, and all the Glory to your self, but you must give me leave to share both the one and the other with you, and that for my particular quarrel, I expose not so many brave and generous Friends to those dangers wherein I will bear no part. Ah my Lord*, (said the famous *Priam*) *you do but dayly take too much, nor can you by any example, or any reason, justify that neglect you shew of a life which ought to be precious to all the earth. You see to the contrary*, reply'd the King, *that it is odious to a great part of the world, and that it is not but against my life that so many thousands of men are armed, which destroy our Country, and which, for the misfortune of one sole man, make so many miserable. It would be much more just*, added he with a sigh, *to abandon it to the fury of so many enemies which demand it, and to the legitimate resentments of the Queen Rosamond, than defend it at the price of so many others, to whom the Destinies might grant one more long and happy. But since it is not your intention*, (added he with a sigh accompanied with some constraint) *and since you love too much a miserable person, bated of Heaven and Fortune; I will not deprive you of the object of a friendship which is dear to me in my misfortunes, nor rob you of the fruit you desire of so many fair marks of your affection: and to this end*, (pursued he, turning towards his Esquires) *let them give me my Arms, to the end, that we may not present our naked breasts to the Steels of our enemies, and that they defend us from any blow of Lance or Sword that may afflict so many generous Friends.*

Finishing these words, he put on his fair Arms, and appear'd soon after in that terrible posture, which to the eyes that beheld him might make him pass rather for the God of

War than any mortal. Having understood afterwards by the report of *Charamont*, that according to the Orders which he had given the day before, all the Battalions were already in Arms, as well those which were to march with him as those which were to remain in the Camp to attend his Orders. He prepar'd himself to depart when he saw *Richer* and *Diocles* enter the Chamber with countenances that made him judge they brought some news; and in effect, he had scarce opened his mouth to ask them, when *Diocles* breaking silence, My Lord, said he, *you need not take so much pains to go seek the Enemy as you have thought, for by what I can judge, they come to us with a design like to ours, and are now not far distant from our Camp.* And at these words he presented him an Officer who having receiv'd commandment to relate to him what he knew, My Sovereign, said he, *we have been on horseback all this night, under the conduct of Adelard, to whom your Majesty had given that command, and we were advanced far distant from the place where we began to draw a line between Segodunum and the Mountain. But in the end, having a long time beaten the Champaign, we encountered the Vant-Couriers of the Enemy, in number little different from ours: And Adelard without delay having given us command to charge them, we assaulted them with so much vigour, that not able to make any long resistance, they retired in disorder. The night being very clear, we pursued them a great way, and had possibly engag'd farther, if from the height of a Hill, which we came to in the pursuit, we had not heard in the adjacent Valleys, first the neighing of Horses, and afterwards the noise of Arms, which made us know, that not far distant from us, there was a body of the Enemies much stronger than that we had sought. Adelard stopt in this place, to learn more, and as you know my Lord, we hear things more easily by night than day, lending an attentive ear, we heard the same noise in several other places, and easily knew that those Troops which made it, possessed a great part of the neighbouring Country. Adelard dispatch'd two or three Horsemen of those who best knew the Country, to go take a nearer notice of them, and in the mean time he thought it his duty not to defer longer advising your Majesty, he commanded me at the same instant to depart, and I have speeded hither with all diligence possible.*

This Officer spoke in this manner, and the King who knew the Country, having asked him more particularly of the place where he had left the enemies, and judging very near of the advance they might have made since the time he had left them, and turning to those that were about him, *By what I see,* said he, *we shall take less pains than we thought, and more glory than we could hope: but the design we have had will not be unprofitable to us, since it will hinder us from being surpris'd, and cause the enemies to find us in another posture than possibly they hop'd.* At these words seeing he had no time to lose, nor scarce any to change his design, he commanded the Prince *Sunnon* to begin to march at the head of the Cavalry: *Pharabert* had command to place himself at the head of the *Gaules*, and keep them in Arms in their quarter, till they should have advice from him: and to *Priam* to do the same throughout all the Camp, leaving all Officers that were necessary to make them observe their Orders in their grand body. But he left particularly the charge to *Charamont*, to remain at the guard of *Contance* and *Marcomire*, with those Troops that were able to defend the Castle from the whole Enemies Army, should he have had none to oppose them. He had much difficulty to make *Marcomire* remain in bed now he went to the field, but he was constrain'd to obey at this season, and so much the rather he did it, because the King permitted him not to be advertis'd of the Enemies march.

Having dispos'd all things like a great Master with an admirable diligence, he mounted on one of those horses which he ordinarily rode upon on those days, and of which he order'd a good number to be led near him at such times, and reposing the trust of what remain'd to do in the Camp, on the experience of the valiant *Priam*, *Pharabert*, and many other brave Commanders, whose valour and intelligence was known to him by many fair proofs: he appear'd himself in a little time at the head of the first Troop, which march'd under the Conduct of *Sunnon*, and by his presence he inspir'd into the souls of his own that confidence of victory which never forsook them whilst he fought in the head of them. He drew forth some Infantry along the Valley, which was very near the Camp, to possess an advantageous Post which was upon the passage, and he left a great body behind, with many squadrons of Cavalry, on the two wings, to sustain them in case of need, dividing the Cavalry which he led into two bodies, of which he gave the first to *Sunnon* and the valiant *There*, at the pressing importunity of *Sunnon*, who would essay the first danger, and see the enemies before the King could approach them.

It was just about the time when darkness began to give place to the first splendour of the day, when the King having pass'd the valley in which he had lodg'd his Infantry, and from thence being advanc'd to a Place high enough to discover all the plain to *Segodunum*, and the foot of the opposite Mountain, might observe very distinctly a part of the Enemies Squadrons

Squadrons, which coasting a wood on their left hand, advanced in fair order in the Plain, and with some choice men charged *Adelard* and his Troop, who retired fighting in all places where the situation of the place gave means to a small number to amuse a greater. At this fight it was difficult for the King of the *Franks* to stop the boiling heat of the young *Sunnon*, and he had no sooner obtained leave to succour *Adelard*, but he advanced with *Ibere*, followed with ten great Squadrons, while *Pharamond* with the rest came on an easy pace after him, observing what happen'd in the first rencounter.

Sunnon and *Ibere* mounted on two fair Horses, and richly arm'd, covering their left hands with their Shields, and carrying their Launces fix'd in their Rests, in a posture altogether warlike, marched fiercely towards their enemies, and coming near them, having passed a rising ground, which robbed them of their sight for some moments. They now observed both what was their countenance, and in what posture they came towards them; They easily saw that they had oppos'd them with a Body of Cavalry, little different to theirs in number; or if the enemy appeared more strong, it was not with a difference so great, as to cause in them any fear, or make them assault them with less assurance. Those who came to encounter them, appeared no less assured than they, nor in effect were they less; and two men who were at their head, having observ'd the action of the two French Princes, strengthened themselves like them with two strong Lances, and brandishing them, at the same time they saw them depart, they ran with a violence like to theirs, and encountred in the middle of the course, with a shock that made the Plain resound like the sound of Thunder. Their Lances flew into a thousand splinters, and the four valiant Cavaliers finished their career without any considerable advantage of either side. They returned immediately with their Swords in their hands, and the two Troops either possibly by the order of their Captains, or possibly by their own, having expected the event of their course, without stirring before they joyned, they had time enough to accost each other and exchange some blows. *Ibere* began a furious Combat with the enemy he had before him, and they charged one another with an equal vigour, and forces little different. But he who address'd himself to Prince *Sunnon*, having made a sign with his hand, lifting a little up his Viser, to speak with more freedom, *I know not*, said he, *whether it may be permitted to an enemy to demand your name. Without informing my self of the reason you may have*, answered the Prince of the *Franks*, *I will tell you that I am Sunnon. I will not refuse*, replied his enemy, *the glory I have to acquire against you, but I could have desired that you had been Marcomire. I doubt not*, replied *Sunnon*, *but you are Gondemar, and you will possibly see Marcomire sooner than you desire, but in expecting*—— He had without doubt said more, if the Troops which at that time charged, had given him leisure, or if he had had time to explain himself, otherwise than by a great blow of his Sword, which he made fall on the head of *Gondemar*, for it was truly he.

The Brother of *Gondioch* knowing by this rude attempt the force of his enemy, could not despise him, though the passions with which his soul was stimulated, made him seek *Marcomire*, but he, to let his Brother know a part of that resentment he had against a Rival more happy than himself, he made him feel by a terrible blow, what in all occasions where in he had encountred him, he had never proved; they exchanged some others by the diligence they had to disengage themselves from the press, and I know not what would have been the fortune of the young Brother of *Pharamond*, fighting against a man incens'd by a violent passion. But they had not long time to pursue their Combat, the multitudes of their men separated them notwithstanding their endeavours, and made them carry among the multitudes, the effects of their choler and their valour. *Ibere* and *Gontran* against whom he fought, found the same obstruction, and the particular animosity of each yielding to the remembrance of what they ought to the employment of that day, they ran to their functions, making their Troops fight with all those advantages they could have learn'd from the greatest Masters in the mystery of war.

The Victory was however doubtful, and seem'd to incline neither to the one nor the other of these two Parties, though they fought it by very great endeavours, and by a great effusion of blood; when King *Pharamond* who was at the head of those he had reserv'd; and who from a place little raised, had observ'd a part of what had pass'd, could not longer withhold their impatience, nor possibly his own, which spurred him to the Combat, but turning towards those who were so near him as to understand him, *My Friends*, (said he, with a countenance in which with a Majesty full of sweetness, a martial fire might be seen to sparkle forth) *I doubt not but they who have acquired glory in so many great Battels, will likewise in this Combat gain sufficient honour, and if your courages need to be awaken'd, it will be by examples rather than words. Follow me then like valiant men, as you have done*
hisbert,

hitherto, and suffer not the event of a Combat like this, to take from you the glory of so many famous days. Concluding these words, to which he believing it not necessary to add a long discourse, he marched towards the enemy, and because from the height where he was, he saw, or believed to see at the same time, their second Body move towards him, and that those which fought, filled the Plain unto the Wood, which was on their right hand, he moved on the left, towards those Troops which advanced to receive him, and drawing all his Squadrons in a Line, he obliged the enemies to enlarge in the Plain to oppose him, and observe the same order with his, to fight without disadvantage. But because at their head, though at a great distance, he beheld a Commander, who might truly make himself be observed by extraordinary appearances, and whom he doubted not to be one of the Lovers of *Rosamond*, emulation, and possibly the particular animosity he had against his Rivals, made him desire to know him before he came to the Combat, and turning towards those were the nearest to him, *I would willingly, said he, if it were possible, learn the name of the Commander of this second Party you see coming towards us, and whom you may observe on the white Horse, and that bright shining Armour.*

He had scarce spoken these words, when *Meroveus* and *Cleomer* parting from him with an admirable swiftness, flew to some *Burgundians*, which they saw routed and out of the press, and stopping, with their Swords lifted up, and a threatening voice, the first they found in their passage, they understood without difficulty from them, that he who marched in the head of the *Cimbrians*, and who that day commanded all that party, was the great and formidable *Balamir*. At this name of *Balamir*, the amorous *Pharamond*, who understood it immediately after, felt the fire which mounted into his countenance by the effects of different passions, which in a moment surpris'd his soul. Though hatred could difficultly introduce it self with the others, by reason of the obstruction the true esteem for so great a man caused; it is true he felt at the same instant choler against an enemy who was his Rival most to be feared, jealousy for the advantage he had over him of the fight and friendship of *Rosamond*, grief to see him employed in enterprises to serve a Princess whom he had eternally offended, and joy for his rencounter at the present time, to dispute his happiness with his Arms. He had not time to express what he thought, but he had enough to take that resolution which his several passions inspired him with, and causing a Trumpeter to be called, *Go, said he, to Prince Balamir, whom thou seest at the head of that Party of the enemy, and tell him, that if he believes to find Pharamond an object worthy of his valour, he may before our Squadron joyn, break a Lance, and exchange two blows with his Sword for the love of Rosamond.*

The Trumpeter parted with this order, and the King having charged his left hand with his Shield, and his right with a strong Lance, marched a little pace after him, and followed him so much the more patiently, because that he saw well, that the Troop of *Sunnor* had not need of his assistance, but fought without disadvantage against that of *Gondemar*. The Trumpeter crossing with infinite swiftness the space between the two Battalions, accosted Prince *Balamir*, and had no sooner acquitted his charge, but the Prince of the *Huns* receiving with extraordinary joy a proposal which would have made any other face than his grow pale, and beholding him with eyes which his discourse had enlightened with a fire extraordinary, *Tell thy Master, said he, that I accept with too much joy the glory he presents me; and that in combating against him for Rosamond, I protest that for any other quarrel but that of Rosamond, I had never been his enemy.* He sent back the Trumpeter after these words, and having ordered those who commanded under him, to make the Troop march after him at the same pace as that of *Pharamond*, and not to advance but as the *Franks* advanced, he galloped to meet his enemy, who did the same seeing him part, and in a very little time they found themselves at the distance of an ordinary Career. From that place they beheld each other some few minutes before they began their course; *Pharamond* finding *Balamir* much more worthy his esteem under those Arms with which he was at present covered, than in the condition he appeared to him, when he defended him against his Assassines; and *Balamir* who believed never to have seen *Pharamond*, finding in what appeared to him of his person all other things conformable to his high reputation. *Pharamond* carried that day those fair Arms in which he had appeared some days before to the eyes of *Constance*; and the valiant *Balamir*, in whom the love of *Rosamond* had revived that which other passions seemed to have extinguished in his soul for some time before, had Arms most rich, and shining with Gold and precious Stones, so that the beauty of his stature, and all the grace of his person, could not be accompanied by any apparel more rich and magnificent, his Helmet was shadowed with several Plumes black and white, which fell confusedly over his Shoulders, and over his weighty Shield, which he sustained

sustained with his left hand, and on which he that day bore the famous Lions, the ordinary Arms of that illustrious house.

The two famous Warriours set apart but little time to the observation mutually made of each other, and having pull'd down the Visers of their Helms, they cover'd themselves with their Shields, levelled their Launces, and giving the reins to their Horses, they made them part with a swiftness to which few things can compare; if their Course were violent their shock was no less terrible, and as Love and Fortune had at this present armed one against the other two of the most valiant men that were at present among men, their rencounter did not at all fall short what might in all probability have been expected from their fair reputation. Their Launces, though chosen among the strongest, did even to their very handles break into a thousand pieces against their Shields which were oppos'd to them, but the two terrible assailants were not at all shaken by so violent an assault: but having sustain'd their Horses, who with their Croupers touch'd the ground, they spur'd them forward, and finish'd their career without shewing the least ill posture in their Saddles, though neither of them were accustom'd to find such resistance. The opinion which each of them had conceiv'd of the Valour of his Enemy, comforted them equally for the success of the encounter: and if by the bruit which was spread through the Earth of the valour of *Balamir*, *Pharamond* supported the equality with patience: *Balamir* was not ill satisfied with his fortune, to have sustain'd without disadvantage the force of that formidable Lance, which had given death to many great Princes, and many more valiant men. They drew their famous swords at the end of their course, and turning the heads of their Horses with an equal speed, they return'd with a fury which made the most confident of their Spectators look pale, and at the same time dealt two terrible blows on each others heads, that of *Balamir* falling on the Helm of *Pharamond* broke a part of its proud ridge, and made the King stagger in his Saddle; and that of *Pharamond* descended on the head of *Balamir* with so much force, that he was stunn'd as if the ruins of a Tower had fall'n on him, so that he was in need of all his strength to keep himself in his seat. They recover'd themselves very readily, and returning at the same time one against the other, they essayed to do that by the point they could not do by the edge, that of *Balamir* passing between the braces of his arm, gave *Pharamond* a slight wound in the shoulder, and that of *Pharamond* finding a default in the cuirasse to which he had directed it, wounded *Balamir* in the side, but with no great wound, for the Sword slid along the ribs without entering into his body. The blood which these two valiant Princes drew by these two blows stirred up all their anger, and rendering them more furious than two most terrible *African* Lyons, they were about to continue, and possibly determin'd by some fatal success a Combat which froze their two parties with a mortal fear, when their Troops which had seen the beginning with infinite impatience, could not suffer the continuation, but crossing in a few minutes the space that separated them, charg'd with infinite fury, and depriv'd the two great Warriours of the liberty of a particular Combat, to make them turn their thoughts to the event of a general one. This Obstruction made them foam with anger, and many times through bodies of their men they lanced one at the other with all that fury which Love and the emulation of Glory could create in them: But in the end they yielded to those difficulties they could not vanquish, and separating they threatned each other with their eyes, for the true respect and esteem they had for each other permitted them not to threaten with words.

But if their Choler could not make its effect fall on the object intended, it was no less fatal to the two parties, and these two Thunderbolts of War being constrained to employ their forces there, they carried terror, confusion, and death to all parts where they directed themselves. The valiant *Balamir* being a little drawn from the press to view the posture of the Combat, as well in the first as last Troops, perceiv'd that some Squadrons composed of *Sidenes* and *Rugiens*, subjects of *Gondioch*, did bend before those of the *Marses*, and the *Angricariens*, commanded by *Elimir* and *Theodemir*, and that these two brave Captains animating their men by their example, overwhelmed all that stood before them with an extraordinary Valour. The knowledge he had of this disadvantage of his Friends, made him run to that place with an admirable diligence; and presenting himself at the head of those broken Squadrons, by his presence and by his words, he gave them such reassurance as stopped the fury of his Enemies. *Elimir* and *Theodemir* perceived this change with infinite perplexity, and observing that this great assistance which snatched the Victory from them came but from one man alone, they bent at the same time their thoughts to revenge against him, and spurred on by an equal resentment, they both ran on him with full carriere, and accosting him let two weighty blows fall upon his head, the goodness of the Helmet resisted the edges of both their Swords, but it hindred not the Prince's being astonished for some time, and

his Enemies willing to take advantage of his disorder, were lifting up their Arms to redouble their blows, when the terrible *Balamir* incensed much more than astonished, turned towards them with a fury which made them wax palid under their Arms, and striking them with an Arm stronger than theirs, gave *Elimir* his death by a cruel back stroke, which clove his head to the middle of his face, and lancing himself towards *Theodomir*, he thrust the point of his Sword between his Helmet and Cuirasse, piercing him quite through the neck, so that he fell without life from his Horse Crouper.

The fall of these two men, who held the degree of Princes in their Provinces, and in the Court of *Pharamond* made those of their men who were Spectators cast forth many lamentable cries, and the couragious *Adelard* finding himself too near to see the fall of the unfortunate *Theodomir*, with whom he had tyed a particular friendship, ran to his revenge with great fury, not fearing to expose himself to the danger that threatned him in assaulting so terrible an Enemy, but fortune was not favourable to him in his design, though less cruel to him than to the two others, for having dealt some blows on *Balamir* with more violence than good success, he receiv'd one which having cut his Shield in two pieces, had yet so much force as to open his Casque, so that he fell at the feet of the Horses with a deep wound in his head.

By these Actions and many others, possibly no less worthy the knowledge of men, having recover'd the decay of his Party, and made Victory turn of his side in all places where he shewed himself, he was stopp'd by the valiant *Sumnon*, who having done several actions worthy the illustrious blood from whence he was descended, oppos'd himself couragiously to him, and though there were possibly some inequality in their forces, yet he for a long time put him to a Stand. *Pharamond* on the other side made no less havock among the *Cimbrians*, and *Burgundians*, and having killed with two blows of his Sword, *Gilmond* Captain of the *Coldales*, *Ulric* nephew of *Briomer*, who commanded all the *Cimbrians* next to *Balamir*, and threw to ground the famous *Goutran* Prince of the illustrious blood of *Gondiocb*, by his admirable courage he had disorder'd, and struck a fear into his Enemies, when the valiant *Gondemar* seeking a glory proportionate to the greatness of the danger to which he was expos'd, presented himself before him, not fearing to engage his life against the valour of so formidable a Warriour: He had likewise the happiness to sustain the Combat against him with little disadvantage, so long as they had liberty to fight, but the *Burgundians*, who cast themselves before their Prince, and the *Franks*, who by their example cover'd their King, depriv'd them equally of its continuance. In the mean time they fought of each side with an equal courage and a fortune little different: The Plain on all sides was cover'd with blood, and the bodies of dead or dying men, while yet it could not be judg'd to which side the Victory would incline. The invincible *Pharamond* with whom it seem'd to have contracted an eternal alliance, blush'd with shame and Choler at the same time to see it so slowly declare it self in his favour, and he made it appear with an anger which jealousy and emulation rendred more violent in his Soul than at other times, caused by the valour and experience of *Balamir* and *Gondemar*, who with Troops not at all stronger than his disputed with him the Field and the Glory of the Day: This knowledge made him run to all sides to strengthen with his presence the weakest places; but passing near a hill, from whence he might easily discover all that was done in the plain, a design to observe the state of the Combat made him attend it, and from that height casting his eyes not only upon the Troops which fought, but many furlongs farther unto the very Camp of the *Cimbrians*, which from that place he might discover, he saw appear, though at a very great distance, a great number of Squadrons which marched towards him, and whose Forces were not inferior to those which fought under *Balamir* and *Gondemar*: He could not presently discern their number, but fixing his sight more accurately, he saw a great part of the Country covered, and did not doubt but that unless he speedily remedied it, he should be forced to engage with a power too great for him to withstand with those Forces which now he had about him: But as in these adventures his prudence and his courage always equally served him, immediately taking his resolutions and turning towards Prince *Meroveus*, and the faithful *Cleomer*, who were next him, he commanded *Cleomer* to post with diligence towards the Camp, and cause those Troops to advance which were destin'd to his assistance; and whom he had left so near that he might easily receive a succour from them in case of necessity: but because he judg'd well that he could not be so ready to oppose them of his Enemies whom he saw coming, he order'd *Meroveus* to cause a retreat to be founded, and to advertise *Sumnon*, *Ibere*, and other the most considerable Captains to rally their Squadrons and make them retire fighting, towards the Valley where he had lodged the Infantry, which was not far distant from that place, and where he hoped to fight the Enemies

with a greater disadvantage for them if he could engage them.

All things were executed as he commanded, and the *Franks*, however desirous they were of the Combat, heard no sooner the Trumpets which recalled them to the Standard, but they rallied with that diligence which made their Enemies admire their discipline, and forming their Squadrons, maugre the disorder into which they were put, they began to fight and retreat with an admirable order, and like men who quitted the Field out of any other motive rather than fear. Both the *Cimbrians* and *Burgundians* were for the present astonish'd at the retreat of their Enemies, but the valiant Princes that commanded them, having presently discover'd the cause, were forc'd to take some more time to consult what resolution they were to take, and *Balamir* turning towards Prince *Gondemar*, who was come to his quarter, *Pharamond* retires before us, said he, but I believe that it is not fear that makes him flee, for since we know him for a great Master in the mystery of War, we ought not to doubt but on that side whither he would draw us, he has forces to sustain us: therefore in my opinion we have no other way to take, than either to engage him with those men we have, before he can join with the rest of his, or attend those who come to our assistance, to assault him in the post he goes to seek; but as the one of the two seems hard to execute, so the other is below our courage. That which you say is very true, replied *Gondemar*, but to follow that Party you judge the most honourable, we may in my opinion, press the Enemies without expecting greater Forces until we come to such places where we can no longer fight them without disadvantage, in which I judge as well as you, we ought not to engage our men without absolute necessity.

Balamir approv'd the advice of *Gondemar*, whose merit he extremely esteem'd, though he was brother to his Rival: and at the same time those two valiant Princes press'd with their Squadrons on those which retir'd, and had without doubt disorder'd them, had it not been for the great endeavours of their King, who sustaining the charges of the *Cimbrians* and *Burgundians* with those Bodies which he oppos'd to them, and which he changed from time to time, whilst the Gross retired towards the Valley, hindred his Enemies from drawing any great advantages from that little retreat. *Sunnon*, *Ibere*, *Genebaud*, and *Meroveus* did an hundred worthy Actions, and the great *Pharamond* was that day so well satisfied with what he saw his young Brother do, that it highly augmented the esteem and affection he had for him: Fighting in this manner, they arriv'd at the place where the Plain freightning, there appear'd the beginning of a great Valley, bounded on the one side with a River, which taking its source from some Fountains very near the place, went to discharge it self in the *Segue*: and on the other, with some Trees which took root in the foot of the Mountain. It was on the side of the Trees that *Ibere*, accompanied with *Meroveus*, sustain'd the Powers of the *Cimbrians* with an admirable courage, and the valiant *Sunnon*, followed by the hardy *Genebaud*, stopp'd the violence of the *Burgundians* on the River, whilst *Pharamond* combated every where, and keeping in the rear of those that retired, turned every moment his terrible Countenance towards those which pursued, striking fear by his sight into the Souls of the most hardy, and stopp'd them more powerfully by his presence than thousands of men could have done. He saw however near the place where the fair Meadow begins to expatiate it self between the Wood and the River, *Balamir* at the head of his Guards which were ordinarily near his person: the fall of this man who was very particularly beloved by his King, incens'd him with a terrible Choler, and notwithstanding all Obstructions, once more opened his passage to the Prince of the *Huns*, who for his part did not fly the Combat, and at the same time press'd him with his Horse, and directed the point of his Sword to his Vifer: The Sword did not work that effect he expected, but instead of finding the passage he sought, by the care which the Heavens had in this attempt of a life precious like that of *Balamir*, it lit on one of the edges of the Vifer, and broke in many pieces, leaving the incens'd King wholly disarmed; but the Shock was more advantageous, for the Horse of *Balamir* either feebler or more wearied than his could not support it, but fell with his Master at the feet of the Combatants.

These accidents that beset these two great Princes astonish'd them much less than those who fought near them, and if in a small time there was seen in the hand of the King of the *Franks* a Sword which he had wrested from one of his Enemies, the Prince of the *Huns*, whom the fall of his Horse had little, or not at all disorder'd, was straight remounted, much less by the assistance of his, than by his proper valour; his fall having incens'd him, he began to charge the *Franks* in the Meadow with a fury which made him forget the resolution he had taken with *Gondemar*, when he saw the Infantry which *Pharamond* had left in the Valley advance, and which marching along the River, and the foot of the Mountains, which the Cavalry of the *Cimbrians* could not approach, made shower down

upon them a flight of Arrows, which in a moment deprived of life a great number of those that were engaged in the Meadow. *Balamir* and *Gondemar* presently knew the disadvantage they might receive in this kind of fighting, and the damage they suffered by the Infantry which it was difficult for them to force; but having seen appear at the same time the Troops which arrived to their succour, they prepared to use all their endeavours to oppress those they had before them, not doubting but notwithstanding all the valour of *Pharamond*, they might compass their desires, when, from the place where they were, being somewhat more exalted than that to the sight of which they were opposed, they discovered the Troops which came to assist *Pharamond*, which *Cleomer* had gone to fetch, and which marched in so great a number along the Valley as might justly deprive them of the hopes of Victory.

Balamir and *Gondemar*, both as from *Rosamond* and *Gondioch*, acknowledging a power above their own, and not having orders to engage the Armies in a general Battel, stopp'd at this sight to consider what they had to do; and a little after *Balamir*, to whom *Gondemar* out of respect yielded the Command, following the example which *Pharamond* had some time before given him, retired his Troops from the fight, and made them regain the Plain in the fairest order in the world: *Pharamond* pursued them hotly to the very Plain, where seeing that he could not be followed by his Infantry, nor seconded by the Cavalry which came to his assistance, who were yet too far distant to joyn with him, he was constrained to consent to their retreat, and to suffer with infinite displeasure that *Balamir* should share with him the Glory of that Day. He marched however after him, but very slowly, to give time to his Troops to come up, if there should be farther occasion of fighting; but before they came to the Plain, the enemy was too far distant to follow them, with any hopes to make them renew the Combat. The Field remain'd in this manner to the *Franks*, but it was without any other advantage, than that of making the *Cimbrians* do what the *Franks* had some time before done, and for the loss of men, it was almost equal in both parties, for both of the one and the other party, there fell near eight thousand upon the place. The King being advanced to the place where the Fight had begun, ordered them to seek among the Slain, for such as might yet receive some help, amongst whom he with infinite joy saw *Adelard* living, and some others with him, whose loss he had before lamented; but he found with infinite grief the bodies of *Elimer* and *Ibeodimir*, who lost their lives by the Sword of *Balamir*, and encouraging himself at this sight with a new anger against a Rival and an Enemy, whom he could not forbear to esteem, he settled resolutions for their revenge, which added a new fire to what his love and jealousy had enlightened in his soul.

Whilst he gave his orders both to succour the living, and bear away the most considerable of the dead, and by a goodness seldom practis'd, took the same care to afford help to those of his enemies who were able to receive it, some Scouts which he had sent on the right hand, and towards that Mountain which is opposed to the City of *Segodunum*, returned to him, and brought him advice, that in a Valley at the foot of that Mountain, they had discovered a grove of Cavalry, of about seven or eight hundred Horse, which according to their opinion, took their way by the backside of the Wood, towards the right hand; and that they had seen, though very indistinctly, by reason of the distance, Chariots full of Ladies, which marched amongst the Squadrons, of which the Body was composed. The King hearkened with a great deal of coldness and neglect to the beginning of the report of these Horsemen, but as soon as they talked of Chariots and Ladies, he hearkened not only with more attention, but with much commotion of spirit; and judging that it was not impollible but it might be the fair Queen her self, who was with those Chariots, he could not receive this advice without a trouble easily observable in his countenance by those about him. *Ibere* and *Cleomer* perceived it first, and the King beholding them with a behaviour that confirmed their thoughts, *I see well*, said he, *that you read in my eyes, a part of what passes at present in my spirit, and I am content to tell you, that you are not deceived if you believe, that the report of these Cavaliers, by giving me some hopes to see Rosamond, have made me forget all other things to seek the occasion.*

Concluding these words, having left in that place those persons that were necessary to execute what he commanded, both for the dead and wounded, he placed himself at the head of some choice Squadrons, commanding Prince *Sannon* to follow after him with the rest, towards the place which those Horsemen had described. It being most true, that at the name of *Rosamond*, not only all his prudence, but all his reason abandoned him, the hope he had conceived to see her, possessed him entirely in such sort, that he was not capable of any other thing but the Idea of *Rosamond*. This pressing and imperious remembrance,

brance, made him march with great diligence towards the happiness he went to seek, but not without those troubles which strongly counter-balanced his hopes, and as in the estate of his fortune, he had but too much subject to fear, fear did at present hold but too much place in his spirit. Sometimes he imagined that the Queen of the *Cimbrians* would not so far hazard her self in that manner from the Camp, or if it were possible that she should do so, she would in all probability be accompanied by a greater Force than they had discovered, and by a Troop which would not permit his access: Not but that he could hope to open himself his passage to her with his Sword in his hand, if he had thought he might take the liberty to fight against her Guards, when she was there in person, but this was not his design, for he had without doubt preferred death before the least occasions to commit against her new offences. But when he fancied to himself that it was not impossible that *Rosamond* might be there, and that he might hope to approach her, it was in this action that he feared to displease her, as much at least as in combating against her Troops, and the fear to displease her, was more powerful over his spirit, than all other considerations. *What goest thou unfortunate to seek? (said he with a sigh) What though thou shouldst be so happy as to see Rosamond, dost thou hope that she will to day behold thee more favourably than she hath for the time past? or though her inclinations should not be contrary to thee, dost thou believe that she can approve thy presumption? or that before so many witnesses which accompany her, she can suffer thy presence without offence? What now can induce thee to hope that thy merciless fortune hath made a truce with thee? or rather, knowing it as thou dost know, what hinders thee from believing that she leads thee to new occasions, to injure her whom thou adorest? Ah too unfortunate Pharamond, return back if thou art able yet for some few minutes, to hearken to reason, and content thy self with thy miseries, without going to seek more, to which without doubt thy cruel destiny conducts thee.*

There wanted but little at that time, but that these considerations had stopped him, and made him direct his march another way; but he remain'd not long in this opinion, for all that he could fear from the sight of *Rosamond*, could not hinder him from desiring it. *Let us run, added he, let us march whither our love calls us, and let us hearken no longer to that reason which we have so long since abandoned to our love. It is against this power it ought to defend us if it were in its power, and not cruelly oppose it self to that good, such as it is, which fortune offers us. Though I should not approach Rosamond, I may probably be permitted to see her, and though I should not speak to her, nor understand the sound of her voice, I should be happy if my eyes could see her, whatever distance separates us, her sight in whatever manner I obtain it, cannot but be of great value to the enamoured Pharamond, and from her fair eyes, how distant soever, I shall receive a new day, much more sweet to me than what the Heavens great Luminary gives us.*

Speaking to himself these words, more agreeable to his passion than his ordinary wisdom, he came with the Troop that followed him to the borders of the Valley, and found himself in a place so high, that he might easily observe all that was there, and all that passed; he knew presently, not only that the report brought him was true, both for the number of the Cavalry, and for the Chariots which they conducted; but he saw that the Chariots and the Cavalry were still in the same place where his Scouts had left them, and that the Ladies, who in all likelyhood had been stopped by some hindrance, remounted their Chariots to depart. At the view of this he stopped, holding his eyes fix'd on the object which employed it, without power to determine on any resolution; but he saw that he was likewise seen, and the Troop which he beheld, not marching without distrust, they had no sooner discovered him, and with him five hundred Horse, which followed him, but they rallied about the Chariot, and placed them in the middle of four Squadrons, which they ordered in a moment. *Pharamond* observed them in the place where he stood, without stirring, and judged by their countenances that they were in a good resolution to fight if they were assaulted. In effect, they gave him occasion to judge so, whilst there appeared not only that Troop which followed the King; but Prince *Sunnon*, who fearing by the remembrance of things past, the effects which the love of *Pharamond* might produce, would not let him advance with so few men, without following him with the gross, with much more diligence than he had ordered; so that he had stood but a little time to behold the Chariots, and the men which accompanied them, when they might behold all the Hill covered with Squadrons, which advanced at the same time, and instead of five hundred Horse which appeared at first to them, they might now behold more than four thousand. At this sight, the fair resolution they had testified against the small number, abandoned them, and not being in truth in any condition to fight those they beheld, fear first wrought confusion and disorder amongst them,

them, and in the end spread so generally through all, that the whole Troop was disbanded in a moment, the Horsemen flying both along the Valley towards the other Hill and on all sides where they could hope to find their safety, leaving about the Chariots but a small number of men, more generous than the common, who ranged themselves about the Ladies, resolving to expect their destiny in their duty.

The King of the *Franky* beheld this disorder with infinite discontent, fearing to have already done a new injury to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, if it were truly she, by affrighting her men, but in a moment after he found some consolation, in the hope he had he might approach her, and demand pardon for the disorder to which he had not contributed, but by his presence. But as he began by some appearances to fear that it was not *Rosamond*, he would clear himself before he would go near the Chariots, and as he was about to send a Trumpeter, *Cleomer* presented to him two of the Fugitives, whom some of his Horsemen had taken, among whom their fear had made them seek their safety. The King having commanded those about him not to make him known, neither by their actions nor discourse, caused these two Horsemen to approach, and commanded them not to fear any thing, but tell him with truth who were the Ladies they accompanied. These men being reassured by the sweetnets of the usage they received, one of them breaking silence, *My Lord*, said he, *the Lady whom we accompany, is the Princess Amalazontha, who is Queen of the Turingiens, by the death of Amalaric her Brother, who lost his life in Battel by the hands of King Pharamond.* These words which deprived the amorous Prince of the hopes he had to see his adored object, touched him with a sensible displeasure, and those who were near him, easily observed the marks in his face, but he used his utmost endeavours to vanquish it, at least to dissemble it, and breaking silence with some sighs he could not retain, *How*, (said he to the two *Turingiens*), *the Princess whom you convoy, is she then the famous Amalazontha, who by the renown of her admirable beauty, is known through all the world, and who by the death of Amalaric is at present Queen of the Turingiens?* Those two men having confirmed what he said, *I doubt not at all*, added the King, *but your fair Queen passes this Country to go to the Queen of the Cimbrians, and join with those other Beauties, who encourage the Nations to war again Pharamond.* *It is true my Lord*, said the *Turingiens*, *that our Queen goes to visit the Queen of the Cimbrians, where the Troops of the King her Brother yet are, and it is believed they will not separate, till this war be at an end.*

This discourse drew many new sighs from the breast of the passionate King, seeing that with so many millions of men, so many Beauties united themselves together for his ruine; but this knowledge of the intentions of *Amalazontha*, could not presently extinguish that profound respect he had for her Sex, and what he ought particularly to her beauty, the fame of which was spread abroad; and therefore permitting his civil and gallant humour to reign over all his passions, which seemed to make him incapable of all things but the remembrance of *Rosamond*, he resolved to render to this fair Queen, though she were his enemy, all she could have expected from him, if she had passed through his Territories with intentions wholly contrary to those which now conducted her. And to this purpose, having commanded the two *Turingiens* to return to their Queen, and to cause their companions to rally, he commanded Prince *Sunnon* to stay in the place where he was, with *Ibere* and all the Troops, and taking with him only *Cleomer*, *Geneband*, and *Meroveus*; to whom, out of a respect which defended him from presenting before the eyes of that Princess, him who had slain her Brother, he gave order not to render any respect to make him known; he descended the Valley, and marched towards the Chariots, after having confirmed to those which were about them, by a sign which he made many times with his hand, what their companions whom he sent back might have informed them.

To accost the Queen of the *Turingiens* with more respect, he had lifted up the Visor of his Helmet in such manner, that his countenance was wholly discovered, and the stir and heat of the Combat having added a little redness to it, it seemed that his natural beauty received a new splendour, and that charming and majestick aspect, against which nothing could resist, appeared exalted that day, like something extraordinary, and more than humane; to the charm of his face was added that which equally spread it self through all his person, and his whole composure was such, that it had been difficult for persons that had never seen him, to behold him without admiration. Approaching the Chariot of the fair Queen, he beheld in her habits, and in those of her Ladies, and the Officers of her Train, all the marks of a profound sadness; but when he cast his eyes on her face, he found a subject of astonishment, from which, nothing but the prepossession of his soul, and a soul prepossessed for *Rosamond*, was capable to defend him. And it might indeed be said,

with

with truth, that few beauties in the world could equal that of *Amalazontha*; and that next *Rosamond*, there was perhaps none, with whom she might not dispute. Nothing can appear to the eye more white, more lively, and more united, than her complexion; nor was ever any proportion found more regular, than what was observed in all the features, and in the whole form of her face. Her eyes were black, though somewhat different from those which truly are so, but they had a piercing fire, which rendered their Glances difficult to support, and when they would sweeten a part of what they had of natural fierceness, they had a charm which did insensibly surprize, and against which, it was difficult for any to defend themselves. The beauty of her lips, and that of her teeth, was admirable, and those of her hands and neck, agreed wonderfully with the absolute perfection of her whole person; her hair approached rather to black than fair, nor could it be of a colour more proportionate to that of her eyes; her stature was little inferior to that of *Rosamond*, and in her port, her gait and all her action, she had something so great, so fair, and so exalted, that it was difficult to behold her, without submitting to her all that respect, which a Transcendent and Royal Majesty could exact. She had likewise in the tone of her voice, a particular charm, nor could any hearken to her, without receiving that impression which her discourse intended.

Notwithstanding all that the prepossession of *Pharamond* could do by observing at first sight a part of these wonders, and by the effect they produced, astonishment found place in a soul, which in all probability was little capable to receive any; but if he received any, he caused no less in the spirit of the fair Queen, and though she seemed at present overwhelmed in the grief that had seized on her spirits, and that what she felt for the loss of a Brother whom she dearly loved, expressed it self by all mournful appearances, from which the affright and fear of her Troop, and the danger threatening her was not able to divert her at the sight of such a person as *Pharamond*, she could not remain in the estate wherein she was, but lifting up her head which she had negligently leaned on the shoulder of one of her Ladies, she fixed her self entirely to observe a man so extraordinary as he appeared to her eyes. All that had ever amazed them before, was expell'd from her memory at the sight of so excellent an object, and the fair figure which presented it self to her sight, spread its representation through her whole soul in an instant. The King of the *Franks* having as well as she pay'd some time to the surprize which the fair object had caus'd, saluted her with a profound submission, bowing himself to his very Saddle Bow; and when he lifted up his eyes to fix them on her countenance, seeking terms to explain himself without making himself known, or without offending the truth, for which he had an inviolable respect, *Great Queen*, said he, *if Pharamond were at the head of the Troops you see, or if the misfortune he hath to be odious to you, permitted him to present himself before you, he would without doubt do the same I come to do for him; and therefore Prince Sunnon his Brother, who commands this Party, hath thought good I should come to assure you, that the design which leads you through his Brothers Territories, cannot hinder you from being Mistress there, and that you may not only call back your men, whom their fear hath made fly from you, but if their convoy suffices not to conduct you to the Camp of the Queen of the Cimbrians, he will in person assure the March to her very Tents. This is all he can offer you for Pharamond, nor doth his misfortune permit him to hope you would suffer more.*

The King of the *Franks* spoke in this manner, and the fair Queen of the *Turingiens* hearkened to him with a trouble she had never before felt, which appeared in her eyes whilst he spoke, and breaking silence so soon as he had done, *I am much more content*, said she, *to owe to Prince Sunnon or to you, the civility I receive, than to the King of the Franks; and though the fame which is spread through the world of him, makes him esteem'd by his very enemies, I cannot receive a more sensible discourtesie, than to be obliged to one who hath slain my Brother. I can,* replied the King, *tell you for the defence of Pharamond, that it is was only defending his own life, that he gave death to the King your Brother, and that possibly it is not just, that with so much innocence, he should be exposed to a misery so great, as the hatred of so fair a Princess. You know well,* (replied *Amalazontha* with a sigh) *that neither friendship nor hatred are always founded on reason, and that we ought to yield something to misfortune, when we are subjected to Fortunes Empire. If that cruel Fortune, added Pharamond, did act with the King of the Franks as with ordinary enemies, he might find some consolation in his misery, and in the justice of his cause; but he sees with too much grief, and possibly with some injustice, all the Beauties of the world armed against him, by seeing himself exposed to the hatred of Amalazontha, Albisinda, and Rosamond. Since he hath slain the Brothers of these three Princesses, replied the Queen of the *Turingiens*, he cannot wonder if he be hated by them, nor can he, having spilt so much blood, speak himself innocent,*

innocent. I assure my self, replied the King, *that he will do all that is possible for him, to appease your anger, and in those occasions of War you force him too, you will find him sufficiently favourable, to repair a part of those crimes, his ill fortune hath made him commit. He would esteem himself most happy, if with all his blood, he could satisfy the anger of those incens'd Beauties, and when I should offer it for him, I believe he would not disown it.*

The Queen at this very time beheld the King with an aspect, which to those that were near her, appeared altogether passionate, and breaking silence with a sigh, *I confess,* said she, *that an Intercessor like you is capable to appease the most incens'd soul, and whatever hath been published of the person of the King of the Franks, were he like you, it would be difficult to hate him.* These words slipt between the fair lips of *Amalazontha*, possibly against her intention, and no sooner had she pronounced them, but her countenance was covered with a blush, which yet made her seem more fair to those that beheld her. Her confusion increas'd from minute to minute, instead of diminishing, and whatever endeavour she us'd to recover her self, she could speak no more but in disorder. The King fearing that she began to know him, and that this knowledge of the murderer of her Brother, had caus'd this trouble which he observ'd in her face; having told her he would return to the Prince *Sumon*, and that he doubted not, but that Prince would come to render her in person, what he ought her, he took leave of her with a profound reverence, and return'd towards the Hill. *Amalazontha* followed him with her eyes so long as she could distinguish him from the others, or rather, her heart followed him more than her eyes; and by the prodigious effect of an extraordinary merit, like that of King *Pharamond*, a heart, which possibly till that fatal moment had been insensible of assaults of love, or rather, a heart, which till then, neither love, nor the merit of many great men, could touch, possibly by the revenge of a God whom she had cruelly despis'd, and by an effect of her ill destiny, began to burn with a fire she had never felt, and to burn for a man, who though sensible and too sensible of love, could never pay to hers, any acknowledgment could content it; she sigh'd with grief as well as love, at this change of her condition, and though she felt it but imperfectly, she did all that was possible to excite her anger against this presumptuous passion, which hitherto, not having been able to open its passage to her heart, seem'd now to be in a moment established with Sovereign Authority: But her anger languish'd, notwithstanding the force she us'd to incense it, and refusing to serve her in this affair, it seem'd to yield to a more lofty power, which disarm'd it of all its forces. She for some time flattered her self against the knowledge of her evil, but scarce had she consulted a small time, but she found she truly lov'd, though she were little experienced in the knowledge of an evil which she had never well prov'd, and she perceiv'd more, than she was willing, that the Idea of that person she yet sought with her eyes, was fixed in the middle of her heart, in such manner, as it had appeared to her in his converse. This knowledge wanted little of drawing tears from her fair eyes, or, that she had not open'd that stream which her unfortunate passion ought to have made her many days let flow. *Alas,* (said she at present to her self) *what am I? where am I? and into what terrible misfortune am I fallen?* She who amongst her attendant Ladies was most dear to her, and who was at present seated near her, observ'd in her face the trouble of her spirit, and demanded with great eagerness and affection, whether she were indispos'd; but the Queen pressing her arm, and reaching her lips to her ear, *Let me alone Erudice,* said she, *thou wilt know possibly but too much, would to the Gods that I were dead.* Concluding these words, she remain'd in this posture, her head leaning on the shoulder of that Lady, without thinking of her departure, or without so much as speaking a word to her Officers, who with infinite difficulty rallied their affrighted men.

In the mean time, King *Pharamond* was returned amongst his men, ravish'd with the beauty, and what he had seen of the merit of *Amalazontha*, and willing to render to that fair Queen, what he ought to her degree, to her beauty, and to the esteem she testified for his person, he commanded the Prince *Sumon* to go himself with a thousand Horse, to accompany her as far as she desired, and to endeavour by his carriage, and by the respect he should testify, to blot out a part of the anger she had against him. He order'd him to discover himself to her for what he was, and to signify to her, that the Brother of *Pharamond* was highly honoured, in finding an opportunity to serve her, but he forbid him expressly to let her know, or to give her place to imagine, that he who had before spok'd to her was King *Pharamond*, fearing to have been wanting in the respect he ought to her, in presenting to her eyes the person who had slain her Brother. *Sumon* descend'd the Valley with a thousand Horse (whilst the King with the rest took their way towards the Camp) and advancing with the principal Officers some paces before the Troop, he approach'd the Chariot,

Chariot, and accosting the Queen, saluted her with infinite submission; but when he fix'd his eyes on her fair countenance, and was about to have spoken to her, the splendour of that Cœlestial Beauty dazzled his eyes, and amazed his spirit at the same time, troubling him in such sort, that he forgot in a moment, both what he had to say, and what he ought to do in an accident of the same nature.

The Queen having understood that it was the Brother of King Pharamond, had put her self into a posture to receive him, with a civility due to his Rank, and to the treatment he us'd towards her, and all things in this Prince being truly conformable to his Dignity, his aspect being admirably accomplish'd, his Arms of the fairest and most magnificent, and all sorts of external appearances denoting truly what he was, she easily conceiv'd him Brother to Pharamond, and rendred him all the thought due to his Dignity; but though she saw all things in him worthy remark and consideration, she saw not Pharamond, or rather, that unknown person whom she lov'd, and whom she on all sides sought for with passionate eyes. The trouble she had, not to see him near the Prince, made her grow pale, but neither that paleness, nor the languor which by reason of that trouble seiz'd her, did any thing diminish her Beauty, nor hinder the French Prince, from finding too many charms to preserve a liberty which he had till that fatal moment defended against all other Beauties. In fine, were it by the merit of Pharamond and Amalazombha, or the ill destiny of the Queen of the *Turingiens* and the Brother of Pharamond, two Souls were on the same day enflamed under unhappy signs, and in an ill conjuncture both for the one and the other. The young Prince was soon sensible of his evil, but being ignorant of the most cruel circumstances of it, and the hard obstruction which his ill fortune oppos'd, he beheld his slavery not as a misery, but permitted himself with pleasure, to be transported by a torrent of passion, sufficiently violent in its birth: He had accosted the Chariot, and beheld a long time the Queen with the countenance of an astonish'd man; and if he had not had to do with a person whose spirit was at present no freer than his, he had been in great danger either to discover to her all the disorder in which he was, or to create in her a very bad opinion. He at length by force overcame what he resent'd, to acquit himself of what he ought, and breaking silence, which according to the Laws of Civility he had too long kept, *Be pleas'd to pardon Madam, said he, the faults which a too just astonishment makes me commit, nor think it strange, that having so great a subject to admire, I have spent some minutes in admiration. I believe I come hither to render you in the absence of King Pharamond, that which he would himself have rendred you with too much joy, if his ill fortune had not oppos'd it; and I see, that I am come to deplore the misfortune he hath to be odious to the fairest person in the world. I hope however Madam, that your hatred will not extend to the innocent, but that you will permit a Prince who truly is so, though he be the Brother of Pharamond, to present you the Duty of a Country you honour with your presence, though the intention which hath conducted you be not favourable to us.*

The Prince spoke in this manner, and notwithstanding the trouble of his spirit, express'd himself with a grace, which assist'd by the other advantages of his degree and person, might have oblig'd the Queen to a very particular esteem for him, and it is most certain that an hour before, in despite of the hatred she bore the King his Brother, he might have been received in a manner as obliging, as he could reasonably desire; but in the estate he at present found her, she scarce lent him any attention: Not but that she forc'd her self, to receive with civility a Prince, whose carriage was so obliging to her; in a time whereof she might well have dispens'd with a part of what he rendred her; but her soul was in such manner repleat with the Idea which wholly possess'd it, and with the grief she felt, that it seem'd she had neither eyes nor remembrance for any other thing, and therefore turning her self towards the Prince, with a languor which in his sight rendred her yet more fair, *It is to me a very great misfortune, said she, to see my self oblig'd to those persons, against whom I come to make war, and to find at present so great an obstruction in the just desire I have to revenge the death of my Brother. I should not have been expos'd to it, but by the error of my Guides, and some accidents that are befallen us. But however it be, I will again tell you, my Lord, what I told to him who made me the first offers on your part, and confess that my trouble is much less, to owe to you for the entertainment you give me, than if I received it from King Pharamond. I can assure you,* (replied the Prince, with a trouble she might easily observe on his face) *that King Pharamond would render you with too much satisfaction the service which his Brother comes to offer you, nor hath he possibly ever so much resent'd his misery, as he would this day do, if he could know, to what his misfortune hath rendred him odious. My beauty,* replied the Queen, *is in little esteem in the world in comparison of that of Rosamond, and the love which Pharamond hath for her, and*

that which Renown hath published, leaves him apparently in little Sensibility for other Beauties. I have never seen the Queen of the Cimbrians, replied Surron, but whatever renown may speak, I can difficultly imagine that there can be any thing so fair in the world as what now appears to my eyes: and if I could hope, added he with a sigh, that the hatred you have for a Prince, who hath attracted it rather by his misfortune than design would not extend, I should value with little grief that of all other enemies which our unhappiness may raise us. You ought not to doubt, replied the Queen of the Turingiens, that my thoughts are conformable to justice, so far as I understand it: But in the mean time (added she, seeing that her men were rallied) if you will not treat me like a Prisoner of War you shall permit me to pursue my journey, and to retire towards the Queen of the Cimbrians. You will rather make Prisoners, (replied the Prince, casting her a passionate look,) than be in danger of being a Prisoner, for the liberties of those that see you, are not in the same security with yours. You may depart when you please, (continued he, making a sign to his men to march,) but you shall permit me if you please to accompany you through those places where you may yet meet some troublesome encounter, and you shall receive this light service from a Prince, who would with all his soul sacrifice to you something more precious than his life.

He pronounced these words with a behaviour which might easily have made the Queen observe a part of what he felt, if she had taken notice, but her soul was prepossessed entirely with a thought which left no place to all others, therefore instead of replying to these last words, which had something in them very passionate, she contented her self to oppose the design he had to accompany her, and to refuse it if it were possible; but she oppos'd in vain, for the Prince who had done her this office, had he been obliged by civility only, joyning to the power it had in the soul of a high-born Prince, all that love could most violently contribute, to fix him to the sight of the beloved object, would not permit himself to be overcome, though he had yielded up his Arms to this imperious beauty; and having represented to her that she was not out of danger of encountering yet some Party, from whom the might receive displeasure, he made her in the end resolve to suffer him to accompany her beyond the Wood, the other end of which was little distant from the Enemies Camp.

Having obtained leave he marched on the side of the Chariot, finding in her sight somewhat to enflame him more and more, and swallowing down at every instant, the fatal bait which had already intrapped his heart. The charming Queen did not so much as think of this last effect of her beauty, nor suffer but with difficulty, any other object but what she had in her breast, and turning her eyes from time to time on those who nearest followed the Prince, she fought with little success but infinite trouble, that admirable figure she had too well engraven in her remembrance. She was oftentimes tempted to demand his name of the Prince, but the fear she had either to discover something by this curiosity of what she would willingly conceal from her self if it were possible, or to rencounter in the person whom she would know, him whom she desired not to know, stopped her mouth, and as she had a design to oppose this passion with all the force her virtue could fortifie her with, instead of seeking the knowledge of what she loved, she resolved to do all was possible to banish it from her memory.

In the mean time, the King of the Franks was return'd towards the Camp, from which not being far distant, he in a short time appear'd before the first Troops which he found in Arms as he had commanded, whom passing by, he order'd to repose themselves, and to give the word to the Rearmost. All the considerable men of the Army presented themselves to him, so soon as he had set foot on the ground, and he having endear'd them all according to his usual custom, and as by his natural sweetness he used to do, without aversion or affectation, he went to the Chamber of Constance, thinking himself obliged to demand pardon for the incivility he believed to have acted towards him, before he took any repose, or caused a wound he had receiv'd in his Shoulder to be dressed, which was not so slight that it ought to have been neglected. Entering into the apartment of the illustrious Roman, he found him risen from his Bed, and saw with him Prince Marcomire, who could no less than he keep his bed longer for a little wound, whilst the King his Brother was fighting, whom he prepared to go seek, if his return had been a little longer deferred. He was troubled to find them in that condition, fearing that their health might receive some prejudice, and was about to complain both to the one and the other, of the little care they took of themselves, when they prevented him by their complaints, and the generous Constance accosting him with sweetness equally natural to both, Do you believe my Lord, said he, that my grief hath made me forget a Mytery I have practis'd all my life? Or is it possible that I could be suspected, by reason of the alliance the Sueves have had with the Romans?

If neither the one nor the other be true, as I will believe for my own consolation, permit me to complain and to tell you, that possibly you ought not to have left me in the bed, when you went to the field. Though you had been in perfect health, replied the King, I had very great reasons not to abuse your goodness nor your friendship in such hazards, but I know not whether I have any strong enough to justify my self, for absenting my self so long from you as I have done, nor had I done it, had I believ'd that the enterprize I went about, would have retarded me longer than till you awaken'd. And for me my Lord, said Prince Marcomire, what reason had you to forsake me? For you Brother, said the King, I had not forgot you, had I thought you in a condition to mount on horseback with us, but if you had I assure my self you had found some diversion, by the encounter of a Lady who with a very good grace asked news of you. These words made Marcomire blush, either with anger or jealousy, but having soon after recover'd himself, I doubt not at all, said he to the King, but it was Theodora demanded news of Ericlea and I believe they might have diverted you with their conversation had they encountred. The King was about to reply, when Artabure who was in the Chamber, coming to him, My Lord, said he, though I am a Roman, mine wholly conform with the thoughts of the great Constance, and those he hath for you are so just, that without informing my self whether your Enemies be Allies to the Romans, I dare offer you a Souldier and a Sword against them.

As Artabure made this discourse with the best grace in the world, so Pharamond received it with the same, and taking the hand of the valiant Roman, which he pressed in one of his with infinite affection; You have reason, said he, to believe you may offer me a Souldier; the valiant Artabure is a Souldier so famous that what ever party he embraces may hope a victory from his Sword: I receive the offer he makes me with all the acknowledgment is due, but the advantage I may receive, will not oblige me to abuse your goodness, unless reduced to the greatest necessities. He had spoken more, and he had possibly stopp'd to inform Constance of the particulars of the Combat he came from, if he had not prayed him to disarm himself, and take some repose after the travel he had undergone; and if Charamont who was near them and to whom the King's safety was much more dear than his own, visiting all parts of his Armour, which were in several places besmear'd with blood, had not observ'd, that with which they blushed on his shoulder, was his own and not his Enemies: He had no sooner perceived it, but he complained to him of the neglect he had for the preservation of his life, and Constance and Marcomire having signified their trouble at it, Pharamond to satisfy them departed the Chamber, having told them laughing that that which so allarm'd them was but a scratch, though he received it from one of the strongest Arms in the world. So soon as he was in his Chamber, Marcomire and Charamont caused him to be put to bed, and soon after the wound to be dress'd; which they found sufficiently great though not dangerous: After he was dress'd they constrain'd him to take some nourishment; and presently after, knowing well that his wound oblig'd him not to silence, he gave an account to Priam, Phalarert, and the other Commanders who were near him of the particulars of the Combat, and his meeting the Queen of the Turingiens; and if he spoke advantagiously of the beauty of this Princess, he exalted all that he had seen that day of the Valour of Balamir and Gondemar, in terms which made them about him know; that in a Soul like to his, no interest could make Merit lose the esteem was due. All the world gave infinite praises to the great actions of Balamir, though the death of Theodmir and Elimir, and the great wound of Adelard had incens'd them against him. But Prince Marcomire stopping with an interest wholly particular at what he understood of Gondemar, hearkned to him with alterations which made themselves observable in his eyes, and on his countenance; when the King had done speaking, It contents me much my Lord, said he, that Fortune hath given me a Rival whom your self judge worthy your esteem, and I hope before this War be ended we shall breath one another, he may in the mean time want to have tryed himself against the three Brothers, but after the glory he hath acquired in Combating against you, he hath not much more to seek. He went off however; replied the King, in a better condition from the Combat he made against me, than from that he made against you, and by the proof he hath made of the strength of Pharamond, he hath no reason to despise Marcomire's: but however it be both in Love and War I highly esteem his manner of acting, and I could wish both for your and for my sake, that he were neither your Rival nor our Enemy. But Brother, if I make this observation for you as to Gondemar, you may render me the same as to Balamir, for it is most certain that among all men Fortune cannot raise me up a more formidable Rival, not but that Gondioch is possibly in greater esteem than he among his, both because he is a King, because he hath a powerful Army, and because he is in truth no less a great Warriour than he, nor less capable to command Armies, though he had the disadvantage against him in the particular Combat; but with all these advantages I fear little that Rosamond should look upon him favourably, and I doubt not at all but she hath

conceived for his carriage that disdain he hath merited, while both in the person and actions of Balamir, all things are worthy her esteem; nor is it but too much to be feared that esteem may grow to an affection for a man continually employed in occasions to serve her, against a man who by an invincible Obstruction can never be happy: besides, Rosamond being at present a Queen her self, since by espousing a Prince she can lose nothing of her Dignity, a Royal birth is sufficient for Balamir, nor hath he need of any other Scepter but what he will receive from her, if he be so happy to possess her. I have seen him however to day, said Geneband who was present, and I have seen him with all his Valour thrown to the ground, and forc'd to tumble at the Horses feet by the shock of King Pharamond. The disadvantage he had in that encounter, replied Pharamond, came from his Horse which was more feeble than mine, for in the proof I have made of his Valour both at the Lance and Sword, I have not known that his strength was inferiour to mine. It is true, added Prince Meroveus, that I have seen him this day do an hundred Actions worthy eternal memory. And I doubt not at all, concluded the valiant Ihere, that it was only by the obstruction he brought, that victory did not do that this day in our favour, which it hath hitherto done in so many great Battels.

Whilst before a vertuous Prince, justice was thus rendred to virtue, in the person of his Enemies, Prince Sunnon returning from accompanying the Queen of the Turringiens, arriv'd at the Camp, and came presently into the Chamber of Pharamond: So soon as he saw him, he made him approach his bed, and beholding him with a sigh, *And well my Brother,* said he, *Have you accompanied Queen Amalazontha, and have you found her as fair as I represented her to you?* The young Prince blush'd at this discourse of the King, finding himself in such a confusion, that for a long time he was not able to answer him: The King who did not presently perceive his alteration, gave him all the leisure was necessary: and the Prince having a little recover'd himself, *My Lord,* said he, *I have done what you commanded me, and have accompanied the Queen of the Turringiens within sight of the Tents of the Enemies Camp. I could never doubt,* replied Pharamond, *but you had acquitted your self of that employment with a very good grace, you are too gallant to have in this enterprize been wanting in the least duty of a Cavalier, but you answer me not to what I have demanded of the beauty of Amalazontha, though in my opinion it sufficiently merits your mention of it. It would be difficult for me my Lord,* replied Sunnon, *to tell you what Amalazontha appear'd to me, I have found her so much above all that my imagination can fancy, as she is above all discourse I can make of her.*

Speaking these words he chang'd colour several times, and appear'd to the eyes of Pharamond who took notice of him, in a condition which discover'd to him a part of the truth; scarce had he suspected it, but the eyes of the Prince, and his behaviour confirm'd it, and permitted him no longer to doubt but this misfortune was befall'n him: Being full of Wisdom and Moderation, he would not declare his thoughts before all the World for fear of displeasing him, but a little after seeing that there was none but Marcomire near the bed, and that the rest of the company were a good distance off, taking him by one hand and Prince Marcomire by the other, *Is it possible,* (said he so low as not to be heard by any others,) *that you should have a destiny equal to ours, and that it should be equally fatal to three Brothers to love their Enemies.* These words made the young Prince utterly lose his Countenance, and Marcomire having observed him as well as the King, *Ah my Lord,* said he, *you need not doubt, but that we are not possibly more amorous of the Queen of the Cimbrians, and the Princess of the Sueves, than Sunnon is of the Queen of the Turringiens.* Sunnon answered no more to this discourse than he had done to that of the King, but by his silence he as truly perswaded the King of what he had begun to believe, as if he had made an entire confession of it. *No my Brother,* said he to Marcomire, *I doubt it not at all, and truly the beauty of Amalazontha is such that I can easily pardon Sunnon all the effect it hath produced in his Mind:* "After this pardon my Lord, said Prince Sunnon in the end, I confess that my misery is such as you have imagin'd, and that none can be more passionately amorous than I am of the divine Amalazontha: had I had a design to conceal it from you it had been very difficult, for a passion like that, which hath rendred it self Mistress of my Soul, could not remain without breaking forth. But my Lord, it is of you alone I can complain in this misfortune which is befall'n me, and since you knew well that I had eyes, and a heart that was sensible, you could not be ignorant of the danger to which you expos'd me. I confess yet once more, replied Pharamond, that the danger was great for a man who was not prevented by any other passion, and much more for a Brother of Pharamond and Marcomire, but certainly I did not foresee it, and as I judge well that we cannot all be so happy as Marcomire, I contented my self with my misery with communicating it to my Brother. I do not believe my Lord, said Marcomire, that you are more unhappy than I: For though

“though the inclinations of *Albifinda* should be as favourable to me as I could desire, I find
 “no less Impediment in the Authority of the King her Father, than you do in the engage-
 “ments of *Tesamond* for the revenge of her Brother. *As you have caused my misfortune, said*
Prince Summon to the King his Brother, *You are obliged to assist me, and it is from your assis-*
ance that I must hope all my happiness. “I fear rather, replied *Pharamond* very sadly, that in-
 “stead of serving you I obstruct your affairs, nor do I believe you have any greater Obstacle
 “in your love than that of being Brother of *Pharamond*, however it be, we will run the
 “same Fortune, since Fortune hath made us Companions, and we will be miserable together
 “by the effect of a destiny with which never any could compare.

After this he caused *Prince Summon* to recount to him the particulars of all that befel him, and all the conversation he had with *Amalazombha*, and by the discourse he made him he judg-
 ed well that there were for him but few favourable inclinations in the Spirit of the Princess, though he could not judge the true cause, and that it were far from his thoughts to believe himself below'd by a Queen who came her self in person to make War against him at the head of her Armies. Having spent some longer time in this conversation, they desir'd that he would dedicate to repose that little which remain'd of that day, as well by reason of the blood he had lost and labour he had suffer'd, as to repair the preceding nights watch, great part of which he had passed on horseback, and he consented to the prayers of all his Friends, having sent to make his excuses to *Constance*, and charged *Prince Marcomire* to yield him the honours of the House till the morrow. The young Prince acquitted himself with an admirable grace, and in the company he kept with *Constance*, he made him find those charms in his conversation that augmented infinitely the esteem he had for him, and especially when he knew that he was not ignorant of any important particulars of the Adventures of *Pharamond*. He would not let his be more reserved to him, but by the agreeable recital he made charm'd for some moments that cruel grief that perplexed him.

Pharamond that night repos'd very peaceably, at least for his Body, for his Mind had few quiet minutes, the image of his strange misfortunes being continually fix'd to his remembrance. *Marcomire* passed some hours in a mixture of hope and fear, which confounded his imagination. And the young *Summon*, whose wound was more fresh, and whose Soul less accusom'd to what it began to resent, was he of the three Brothers who gave the least time of that night to sleep. But the desolate *Constance* scarce clos'd his eye-lids, but as the cruel remembrance of his irreparable loss incessantly afflicted his memory, he neither found nor sought repose. The recital he had heard of so many fair adventures of *Pharamond*, *Honorius*, *Varanes*, and *Marcomire*, seem'd to have drown'd for some time what his grief had of most lively and pressing: and in truth the love he had for virtue, made him find near *Pharamond* a sweetness capable to suspend some part of it: but in those hours wherein silence and solitude brought back to his Spirit the true Image of his misfortunes, his deplorable condition appeared in its own form, and without any cloud which might shadow the knowledge of it, so that he scarce found in all his courage, in his piety towards heaven, or in his respect to the orders of *Placidia*, helps against that despair, to which he was not permitted to hearken in these mournful disturbances which perplexed his Soul with so much cruelty, sending forth a thousand sighs from his oppressed breast: “What seekest thou mi-
 “serable? said he, Or to what reservest thou thy self? Can there be yet among Mortals
 “any good for thee or any shadow of hope to make thee love thy life? Whither dost thou
 “lead thy self not to offend the orders of Heaven and to obey the commands of *Placidia*? Is
 “it as she hath commanded thee for the defence of the Empire and for that of thy Religion
 “thou preservest thy self? Or believest thou that a Religion defended by an infinite power
 “hath need of thy Arm to maintain? Or that the Arm of a miserable person hated both by
 “Heaven and Fortune, and expos'd by the forsaking of the one and persecuting of the other to
 “those misfortunes that render him incapable of all things, should be capable to hinder the
 “fall of the Empire, which the Anger of Heaven, and the Arms of all Nations which rise a-
 “gainst it threaten with general ruine? Ah since *Placidia* hath given thee this counsel,
 “she ought to have put thee in a condition to execute it, and she ought to have restored thee
 “that courage and virtue she hath made thee lose; but as the Sister of *Honorius* and not as an
 “affectionate Princess she hath given it to the deplorable *Constance*: She is Sister to the Empe-
 “rour, she is a Roman, she is passionate for the conservation of the Empire, she hath believed
 “that a Sword which for the time pass'd hath so well serv'd would not now be useless, but she
 “hath not at all considered that he who at other times carried it, is not the same *Constance* who
 “so happily made use of it for the glory of his Country and for his own, and she believes
 “without doubt that having lost all, we can live with all our courage and all our virtue, be-
 “cause she sees her self in the Arms of *Antalphe* with a full repose, having lost the miserable
 “*Constance*:

He remained a while in these thoughts, which insensibly incens'd him against what he adored, but a little after he banished them as criminal, and regaining his natural patience, and natural moderation; *But why? (said he) may not we bewail our selves without doing injustices? And why do we not accuse our misfortune without accusing the innocent and virtuous Placidia? It is not by her will that we are fallen into these miseries, it is not by her inclination that she hath espoused Autalph, though she live with him, as she hath been obliged by her virtue; nor hath she possibly appeared more content in her condition than we are in ours, though espoused to a Husband that adores her, and to a Husband neither despicable for his Birth nor Person. Let us content our selves then with what she hath done for us, and content our selves with what she hath given us, though it be nothing but tears, since it is nothing but tears she could give us; and if it be impossible for us to live and obey her, let us seek death by those ways that are permitted us, and upon those occasions wherein we may find it without offending Heaven, or the respect we owe to the commandment of Placidia. Yet know we not to what place of the earth we should yet carry the rest of our unfortunate life, we will no more see the deplorable Italy, nor the desolate City which hath given us our Birth, for alas, we shall no more there see the deplorable Constance, but instead of that beloved object, and in that pompous Court, in which we have passed so many blessed days, we shall now see nothing but the terrible mark of a barbarous fury; and in the person of Honorius, who at other times was a great Emperour, dear to Heaven and men, and an Emperour who had promised me Placidia, we shall find nothing but a Prince lost and dishonoured by his feebleness, and a Prince who hath suffered the ruine of his Country, and the loss of Placidia. We will not go into Spain, to appear there in this miserable estate, having left there so famous a memory of our actions: Nor will we stay among the Gauls, where we fought unhappily, though with sufficient glory, and sufficient good success, whilst we lost all in the unfortunate Italy. 'Tis only that virtue which I have found in the person of Pharamond, more than in all the rest of men, that can beget in me any settledness, and I would say love, if after the loss of what I have loved, I can yet love any thing. Let us seek in the interests of a man whom we judge worthy of our affection, that end of our misfortunes, so desireable and desired; and since in the abandon we have made of all things, we have no farther considerations neither for alliances nor parties, let us follow our inclinations without delay, and not other where seek what we may here find fighting for a friend, and for a quarrel full of justice. 'Twas this thought which busied him more than any other, and he sought the means to execute what he projected, without exposing himself to those reproaches he might fear.*

On the morrow so soon as he was risen (for he would no longer keep his Bed) and knew that *Pharamond* was awakened, he went into his chamber, accompanied with *Artabure*, to render him the first visit; they found the Princes, and the principal Officers of the Army with him, who all retired, out of respect, when *Constance* approached the Bed: *Pharamond* having thanked them both for their visit; complain'd to *Constance* that he so soon left his Chamber, and testified to him, the fear he had lest his health should be prejudic'd. *Constance* desired to know the state of his, and blamed him no less for having so long neglected his wound, and being after seated in a Chair near the Bed-side, and *Artabure* near him, with *Marcomire*, *Pharabert*, *Ibere*, and some others, *Constance*, after a small silence, spoke to *Pharamond* in these terms, "Since in the stay I have made with you, in
 " a time wherein I find my self insensible of all things, I have encountred those charms
 " in your person, which have wrought their effects on my heart, and have engaged me to
 " those thoughts I did not believe my self longer capable of, be pleas'd, my Lord, to let
 " me give you this day more ample assurances than I have hitherto done, and that I a-
 " gain tell you, that no considerations of those which might in all likelyhood give
 " me some scruples to serve a Prince, who hath, and may yet have great controversies
 " with the *Romans*, against those Princes who have been, and are possibly yet their Allies,
 " are capable to stop the design I have made, and in which I am entirely confirm'd. But
 " because there may be possibly something done for your service more advantageous, than
 " the assistance you can receive from a man who is in no condition to serve you, but with
 " his Sword, and since by the knowledge I have of the love you bear the Queen of the
 " *Cimbrians*, I judge that peace will be more desireable for you, than the war you can
 " wage against her, and that besides the ease and solace it may give your people, you may
 " much better find your repose, and possibly your entire felicity, than in these continual
 " occasions, to commit new offences against her you love, I have been willing to under-
 " stand your intentions concerning it, and to demand of you, if you find it to the pur-
 " pose, that I employ the credit which the authority of *Honorius*, and the power I have
 " had my self in the Empire, may give me amongst those Princes, who as I yet believe
 " are

“are still in alliance with the *Romans*, to effect a peace, and finish these affairs, if it be
 “possible, with an entire reconciliation between you. I know that the King of the
 “*Sueves* was not only an Ally to the *Romans*, but that it was for the interest of the *Ro-*
 “*mans* that he began this war against you. The King of the *Cimbrians* was conjoined by
 “the same interest, and I doubt not, but the Queen his Daughter, hath yet some con-
 “sideration for the Roman Name. For the Kings of the *Burgundians*, the *Alares*, and
 “the *Herules*, since they make war only for the interest of the Queen of the *Cimbri-*
 “*ans*, if she and the King of the *Sueves*, who after her is the most interested, will give
 “their consent to the Peace, the other will have no great desire to be obstinate in the
 “war, and will possibly with no small difficulty continue it, being disunited from the
 “*Sueves* and the *Cimbrians*. No person better than my self, who since the death of *Stu-*
 “*licon*, have had the most considerable employs of the Empire, and who was destined to
 “the glory to espouse the Sister of the Emperour, can interpose in this negotiation, and I
 “doubt not but the King of the *Sueves*, who without doubt is the most incens’d, and the
 “most interested, will have some consideration for my name, and for my mediation. It
 “I am successful in the design to procure peace for you, I shall find more happiness for
 “my self in that good success, than I expected in all the remainder of my life, and if I la-
 “bour in vain, as that may happen, either out of the obstinacy of the King of the *Sueves*,
 “or those other obstacles which the Lovers of *Rosamond* may cause, I shall be justified as
 “much as I can desire against the accusation may be made, that I have embraced your
 “Party against the Allies of the *Romans*, by making the whole world know, those Al-
 “lies of the *Romans*, despised my mediation, whilst those who were less obliged, acted
 “with me with more candour and consideration.

Constance spake in this manner, and *Pharamond* having hearkened to his discourse, with
 all the marks of a tender resentment, made him know by his countenance, a part of what
 he had to speak, *Your goodness*, said he, *puts me in a confusion, which leaves me not in an en-*
tire liberty to express my self, but it draws me at present out of a great trouble, by offering
me a favour, which I can better accept, than that you offered me yesterday, and wherein you
have confirmed me, in the beginning of your discourse. Doubt not my Lord, but I affectionately
desire peace, not only because it is Rosamond makes war against me, but because so many
thousands of innocent persons are enveloped in my disgrace; and so many lives, more happy than
my own, expos’d to the daily danger that threatens them, not for the preservation of their liber-
ties, but for my particular quarrel: It is this that makes me lament my misery with tears of
blood, and renders more odious to my self this unfortunate life, to the defence of which, so ma-
ny others have been sacrificed, than it is possibly to those enemies who come with so many forces
to assault it. Be pleas’d therefore to believe, that I not only desire peace by your mediation,
since you have the goodness to offer it, but without fearing what judgments might be made in
the world, I would demand it of Rosamond, as of the Sovereign Mistress of a life which I
have often offered her, for the reparation of those injuries I have done her; I will demand it
of the Queen of the Turingiens, with pardon for the death of her Brother; I will demand
it of the King of the Sueves, whose Son I have slain, defending my own life which he assault-
ed; and I will demand it of Gondioch, whose friendship I have innocently offended, and
who with more indignity than all the rest, hath armed himself for my ruine; I will receive it
likewise as a grace from all the Lovers of Rosamond, and I should be content that our pre-
tensions might be ended by the hazard of our lives alone, rather than so many thousands more
should be offered up as Victims to our interests: But my Lord, I know too well I shall demand
it in vain, from enemies obstinate to my ruine, and from Rivals who at the price of my head,
hope the possession of Rosamond. If any consideration can make them hearken to this propo-
sition, it will without doubt be what they owe to you, and by the beginning they cannot so well
hope the success of this war, but they may as well as we fear the event; I am content likewise,
they should have all the advantages they could desire, only the possession of Rosamond, which
I will dispute with them till death: Nor is there any reparations which I would not willing-
ly make by your orders, to the King of the Sueves, to the Queen of the Turingiens, and to the
new King of the Basternes, for the offences I have committed against them. “In truth,
 (said the great *Constance* to the King of the *Frank*, when he had done speaking) “I did
 “expect no less from your virtue, than what I find true in this condescension, and I now
 “know better than I have done, the difference between a courage truly great, and truly
 “generous, and those who have only the appearances of grandeur and generosity. You
 “make it more appear in desiring peace, and in speaking as you do, than your enemies
 “have testified it in the ardour with which they have made war against you, and you have
 “this advantage, that it will never be believed, that it was the fear of their Arms which
 “hath

“hath made you submit to conditions you voluntarily impose on your self. I will try
 “my fortune, since you permit it, and if you think it good, I will this day send *Valerius*
 “to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and to the King of the *Sueves*, to incline them to
 “hearken to the propositions I have to make them, and to demand of them a cessation of
 “Arms for three days, and to entertain them in their Camp, whither I will go seek them till
 “that time be expired. *You may act as you please*, (replied the King of the *Franks*) *since*
not only both our enemies and we, ought to hold it to be an infinite honour, to have the great Con-
stance the Arbitrator of our differences; but that on my side, there is no Law which you may
not impose with Sovereign Authority, save only, (added he with a sigh) *to make me renounce*
Rosamond, and I believe you have not so much cruelty as to oblige me to it.

They were in these terms, when there came one to tell the King, that a Trumpeter from Prince *Balamir*, was arrived in the Camp, who demanded to speak with him on the behalf of his Master. This news made them turn pale, who remembered themselves of the adventure of Prince *Viridomar*, and the fear they had of a like began to excite a murmur in the Chamber. *Pharamond*, without amusing himself to examine their thoughts, demanded permission of *Constance* to let the Trumpeter come in, and *Constance* having answered that civility as it deserved, he was a little after led into the Chamber. All that were there approached him, so soon as he appeared, and assembled about him when he drew nigh the Bed. He accosted the King like a man who well understood his business, and the King having demanded of him the cause that brought him to his Camp, *Mighty Sir*, said he, *I come on the behalf of my Prince, to demand of your Majesty permission, to inform my self, if a Knight who was bred up with him, whom he dearly loved, and whose loss he infinitely laments, were either dead, or prisoner, in the fight you fought yesterday, and to seek him amongst both if you please to grant that liberty.* “I would do something more
 “difficult for the satisfaction of Prince *Balamir*, replied *Pharamond*, and though by his
 “valour and merit, he be the most dreaded of my Enemies and my Rivals, I will not
 “lose the opportunity to render what we owe to virtue in the very persons of our En-
 “emies.

After this, he demanded the name of the man whom he sought, and in what place he believed him to have been ranged. *He is called Telanor*, replied the Trumpeter, *and he fought yesterday near the Prince, when his Horse was thrown down, and maintained a great Combat to remove him.* The King immediately commanded an Officer to go with the Trumpeter, and seek either amongst the Dead or the Prisoners, for the person he demanded, and to bring him with him if he found him living, and in a condition to come, and this Officer having obeyed him with infinite diligence, whilst the King entertain'd himself with *Constance*, on the design he had to employ himself for Peace, a little after was seen return into the Chamber, with the Trumpeter and the Prisoner he sought, who was a man of a noble aspect, and who by all appearances, seem'd of no small merit. He saluted the King in person, having been accustomed to converse with great Princes, and the King being informed of the particulars of his taking, by those which took him, and of the usage he had receiv'd, and having understood from him, that he had been taken by the Officers of the *Sicambres*, after the Combat which was fought in the Valley, and in which he was engaged under his Horse, which was slain under him, from whence he could not recover himself, but by the assistance of those which took him, and from whom he had received very courteous usage. *You had received yet better*, (said *Pharamond*, having peaceably hearkened to him) *if you had made you self known: for besides what is due to your merit, of which I judge by sufficient great appearances; the great interest which Prince Balamir takes in you, had obliged us to consider you particularly, and to do what I do at present, which is to restore you your liberty, and power to return to your Prince when you please.*

Telanor received this favour of *Pharamond*, with great marks of acknowledgment and respect, and breaking silence, with a behaviour full of assurance and modesty together, *My Lord*, said he, *though I have not merited the care Prince Balamir takes of me, I assure my self, he will remember your carriage towards him, in the person of one who is his, and that if he finds the occasion to acknowledge it, he will certainly and gladly do it.* “He doth but
 “too well all he doth, (replied the King of the *Franks*) and it is by that, he gives
 “me more cause to fear, than he would do with all the power of the King his Father,
 “were it at his disposal; he is but too valiant, too generous, too amiable, and too great
 “in all things, but with all these great qualities, you cannot justify him of a fault he
 “makes known to all the world, and of which I ought particularly to accuse him, be-
 “cause I believe he is not fallen into it but for my misery; for in fine, though the fair
 “actions

actions which have given him so much repute, are pass'd into Crimes. I dissent from
ours, we have however heard speak by the voice of Renown though very cautiously; and
as we have understood something of his great exploits of War, we have not been ignorant
that he bore love to a fair Princess, and a Love which hath made sufficient noise and caus'd
no new alterations to him. It seems to me that in whatever manner the beauty of *Ros-
mond* may excuse this change, yet that it is a blot in a fair life like his, and I believe he had
not been capable of it if his inconstancy had not been destin'd to augment my misfortune,
by the encounter of so great a Rival.

It seem'd to *Pharamond* and those about him, that these words had begot in *Telanor*
some profound thoughts, and after the King had done, lifting up his eyes from the earth,
where he had held them fix'd during his discourse, "It is not however just, *said he*, to
condemn men upon an uncertain rumour, which may prejudice the truth; and I am
much astonish'd my Lord, that this same renown which hath made you understand some
part of the adventures of *Balsmir*, hath not given you a knowledge of the latter, which
without doubt are no less important, and by the knowledge of which he would possibly
be justified of the infidelity with which you reproach him. I have reason to speak in his
justification, since I can do it more than any man in the world, and that there is none to
whom like my self all the Actions of his life and all his most secret thoughts have been
known. "If it be so, *said Pharamond*, you are yet for some hours a prisoner, and for
the price of that liberty which I give you, I demand of you not only the knowledge of
what we are ignorant of in the life of Prince *Balsmir*, but the entire recital of his adven-
tures, at least of those which you are not oblig'd to keep secret, for those we have no
right over you to oblige you to violate your fidelity. "In all that I can relate to you
of the life of Prince *Balsmir*, *replied Telanor*, there is nothing which at present requires
to be kept secret, the things have made all the noise they can make in those places where
it had been possibly the most important to conceal them: But the discourse you demand
of me is not so short but that you must of force afford it some hours audience, and I have
need to employ some time to recal to my memory the particulars, which time and acci-
dents that have since fall'n out may have made me forget. "You shall then if you please;
spend this day with us, *replied Pharamond*, and the Trumpeter may return to the Prince
his Master, and telling him the cause of your stay assure him you shall be with him to-
morrow. Pardon me *added he with a sigh*, if I offer you some violence but you are so
sufficiently oblig'd to justify *Balsmir* in the spirit of the great *Constance* whom you see as
well as in mine, that you ought not to have any concern for the trouble we give you. I
shall never have any to obey you my Lord, *replied Telanor*, and besides that I thus pay
my ransom easily, I take so much pleasure to speak of a Master who is dearer to me
than my life, that you will possibly have some difficulty to make me silent when I have
begun.

After these words he demanded permission to speak to the Trumpeter who return'd, and
the King commanded *Cleomer* to take care of him as of a person of merit and quality, and
to bring him back after *Constance* had din'd, who desir'd as well as he to take part in the
Adventures of *Balsmir*. *Constance* desir'd that *Valerius* should depart with the Trumpeter,
who took charge to conduct him to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*; and *Valerius* being a man
of spirit and capable of a commission more difficult than that he gave him. *Constance* ex-
plain'd himself to him in few words concerning what he had to say to that Queen, and to
the King of the *Sueves*, and permitted him to part, with assurance that he would acquit
himself well of this employ. A little after this Dinner was served in to *Constance*, at which
the Princes and many other illustrious personages bore him company, the wound of *Pha-
ramond* obliging him to keep his bed for one day or two though he did it with infinite res-
tance.

The End of the First Book of the Fourth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK II.

After dinner *Constance* return'd into the Chamber of *Pharamond*, and with him *Marcomire*, *Artabure*, *Samon*, *Pharabert*, *Genebaud*, *Merovee*, *Antenor* and *Charamont*: All these Princes and illustrious men being touch'd with an equal curiosity to hear the Adventures of *Balamir*: *Telanor* having testified that he was not at all troubled to have so great a number of Auditors at the recital to which he was engag'd. *Cleomer* led him into the Chamber a little after this fair Company was entred, and after they were all rang'd within the rail, *Telanor* by the command of *Pharamond* took a seat near *Charamont*, and without permitting himself to be importun'd for the discourse he was to make, seeing that they lent him a quiet and attentive audience, he began in these terms addressing his speech to King *Pharamond*, though the King would a long time have denyed it, to have granted that honour to *Constance*.

The History of *Balamir*,

IT is not without reason, my Lord, that you have been struck with admiration, that a virtue like that of *Balamir* could be guilty of infidelity, and though among persons little scrupulous inndelity in Love hath not been condemn'd with so much rigour as that which is practis'd in friendship, in which they hold honour to be more strongly engag'd; it seems to me that a noble Soul ought to be equally faithful as well in the one as the other, and though the prodigious beauty of the Queen of the *Cimbrians* may deprive any Man of the knowledge of reason, and the remembrance of his duty, yet if Prince *Balamir* had nothing to alledge in his justification, I should not believe him sufficiently justified in the opinion of virtuous personages. It is not necessary that I extend my discourse to the Original of the *Huns*, a people fierce and warlike, who in these last Ages have by their Arms struck a terrour into a great part of the world. You know that their original progress was out of *Scythia*, as well out of that part which is in *Europe* as out of that part which extends it self into *Asia* beyond the Mountain *Imaus*, and I believe you are not ignorant that the Grandfather of my Master a Prince descended of the Royal Family of the *Scythians*, who from the first Foundations of that Monarchy numbred an hundred Kings among his Ancestors, not being satisfied with his part nor fortune quitted his Native Countrey, with an Army composed of valiant souldiers, and forgetting the ancient Scruple of the *Scythians*, who by a religious custom never made War but for the defence of their Limits, bent his mind to conquest, entred the Territories of his Neighbours, and by many great Battels made himself before his death Lord of *Dacia* and *Sarmatia*. The Father of my Prince named his Son *Balamir* or *Balamber*, for they gave him both those names who succeeded him very young and inheriting his Crown inherited no less his warlike inclinations: He found likewise the extent of the dominion obtained for him too little for his Ambition, and resolving farther to pursue his Father's Conquests, carried his Arms into *Mesia* and *Macedonia*, and into the Provinces bordering on the *Palus Meotis*. A part of this Country which by a name newly imposed on it was called *Scandia* or *Scandinavia*, was at present possessed by the *Goths*, who under the Reign of *Hermaneric* and *Fridigerne*, had absolutely established themselves,

selves, and under that of *Atharic* became peaceable Masters thereof. It was against these that the King of the *Huns* made War, after having subdued *Mesia* and many other neighbouring Nations, finding a facility so much the greater because the Emperour *Theodosius* was at present employed against *Eugenes* and *Arbogastus*, and afterwards against *Maximus* in those Wars which gave him neither time nor means to provide against others. *Balamber* making use of this advantage and having pretences sufficiently great and possibly just reasons to make War against *Atharic*, entred his Dominions with a mighty Army. This War hath been too well known in the whole world for me to believe it necessary to recount its particulars, and it will be possibly sufficient to tell you that at the beginning many Battels were fought between these two, in which Fortune was various, but in the end the King of the *Huns* made her incline to his Party, and having gained two Battels against *Atharic*, he rendred himself Master of the greatest part of the Cities which obeyed him, and finally expelled him entirely from his Kingdom.

The unhappy and despoiled *Atharic* possessing no longer one foot of ground, nor having any more Forces to oppose the Vanquisher, retired to the Emperour *Theodosius*, who at present returned triumphant from his Expeditions; and though he had formerly waged war against him, he made no difficulty to seek for refuge in his Court, and go in person to demand assistance against the Usurper of his under his power. He was likewise in such manner pressed in his retreat, that he had not the means to lead with him the Queen his Spouse, who had at that time newly brought forth an Infant into the world, and who not able to follow him in that estate, remained in a miserable condition, which three days after surrendered to the discretion of the Conquerour. All the world have known with what humanity the infortunate *Atharic* was received by the great *Theodosius*, who treated him in his misfortune, not like an exiled King, but like a Prince his equal whom his ill fortune had nothing deprived of his dignity, and not only content to promise him aid against an Enemy whose power he was bound by his proper interest to repress, he prepared truly to restore him to the Throne he had lost; when he fell ill and in few days dyed at *Constantinople*, as all the world have known. The Emperour caused magnificent Obsequies to be celebrated as for a great King, and having converted the design of assisting him into that of revenging his quarrel, and making war against a man whose greatness was not only suspected by him, but who advanced himself in part on the ruines of the Empire, raised a great Army to fall upon him. In short, our King had reason to have feared so ill effects, if his good fortune had not diverted them by the death of *Theodosius* himself, who survived *Atharic* but a very little time, and left his Empire to Children much different from their Father, who (through their tenderness permitting themselves to be governed by Strangers little affected and more especially by *Ruffinus*, who through the simplicity of *Arcadius* remained absolute Master in the *Orient*) gave him but too much opportunity, not only to establish himself in his Conquests but to pursue them into other Provinces. The Widow of *Atharic* with a little Daughter which she had then brought into the world, lost almost at the same time her Crown, her Spouse, and her Liberty: The King of the *Huns* did in truth neither restore her to her Husband nor her Crown, but he treated her in the best manner she could hope from a generous Prince, preserved her entire dignity, left her wherewith to maintain her House in an honourable estate, and in fine, used her in all things in such manner, that that Princess who naturally had her Spirit sweet; an admirable patience, and a great devotion towards Heaven, instead of going into the Courts of other Princes to demand assistance or revenge, contented her self to live peaceably in that of her Vanquisher, offering to Heaven as it is said all the losses she had made with an admirable resignation, and tying her self in a very particular friendship with the Queen, Spouse of our King, a Princess of an excellent virtue; and who respecting hers in her misfortune, comforted her with all sorts of good Offices, and marks of her affection. She had already since her Espousals born to the King two Sons, and at this time she bore him a Daughter: The eldest of the Sons was named *Mundisic*, a name so respected in the Family of our Kings that they have almost continually added it to theirs; the second receiving that of his Father was called *Balampir*, and the Princess was named *Theodolinda*.

Our King seeing himself peaceably settled in a very ample Dominion, though he aspired at greater Conquests, and not fearing any thing of the *Goths* who chusing rather to quit their Countries than live under the power of the *Huns* were gone to seek other habitations, resolved to dedicate some time to the sweetneses of Peace and the Education of his Family. In truth he found matter to employ himself contentedly though with inequality: And to let you know in few words what was and what at present is the Family of the King of the *Huns*, I will tell you that the Prince *Mundisic* is a Prince of a noble Air, of a Majestick Port,

and who hath nothing in all his person which doth not denote his Dignity, his inclinations are great and exalted, his thoughts vast, and his ambition without bounds; his Spirit is fierce, possibly to an excess, and hardly doth he suffer a resistance in any thing he enterprizes; and especially believing that all things are his due, he is led by his passion rather than reason in some enterprizes; he hath his Soul warlike, his Courage firm, and fearless in the greatest dangers, and it might truly be said, that he had indeed a gallant Spirit if it were somewhat milder than it is.

For Prince *Balamir*, I ought to make you a more ample description, as well because it is his particular History I recount you, as because there is certainly in all his person, both for mind and body, something extraordinary; for his aspect, it is not only nobler than that of the Prince his Brother, or at least much more taking, but it is certain that there are few men in the world who for noble deportment can equal him, and before I entered into this Chamber I believed there had not any surpassed him; his Stature is admirably complete, the straightest, the freest, and most exact that can be seen, his visage is brown, and his hair very black, but his countenance is the most amiable that can be imagined, and his hair being very long, and ringed in great curls, accompanies it admirably well; all his action is noble, but without affectation, and all the air of his person hath a particular grace.

I saw him yesterday under his Arms, (said the King of the Franks to Telanor, interrupting him) and I could not but discern the beauty of his Stature, and his excellent grace on Horseback, but I know persons that have seen him in another state, (pursued he, beholding Marcomire and Cleomer) and who describe him such as you represent him.

That which appears not to the eye, replied Telanor, is without doubt more fair than what is seen, nor ever was Soul more truly noble than that of *Balamir*, nor better endowed with all inclinations to excellent virtues; for the greatness of his Courage nothing can surpass it, nor is there danger, or misery, or any effect of good or ill fortune, that can shake his Constancy, nor move him from his ordinary temper; he is naturally very fierce, but his fierceness appears not but at those times when he must necessarily practise it; in all others, nothing can be found more sweet or tractable than he. All his inclinations carry him to good, and to be a mortal enemy to tyranny and injustice. He hath a greater knowledge of Learning than can be believ'd of a Prince born in a Nation which hath truly something of barbarous; and for the exercises of his body, he is so grand a Master, that few Knights in the world can acquit themselves either on Foot or Horseback like to him. He hath an admirable vigour, a prodigious force, and there are few persons which possess so great military virtues. I could say more, but it will not possibly be convenient to enlarge my self on these praises before men who are above all praises that can be given, and who will possibly attribute to my passion a part of those I believe with justice to give my Prince.

The Princess *Theodolinda* might well merit a particular *Elogium*, and though the beauty of her body hath few parallels in the world, yet I may say with truth, that that of her mind is not at all inferiour; and I would enlarge my self farther, if I did not know my Lord, (said Telanor, addressing himself to *Constance*) that you have seen her at *Rome*; and though I did not believe, that you knew all that I could represent to you, yet at present I have little to say of her in my recital, but it is upon the adventures of another Beauty, to whom Heaven hath possibly given advantages over hers, that I must extend my self more particularly.

It is true, said Constance to Telanor, that I have seen the Princess Theodolinda at Rome, where she was companion in the misfortunes of Placidia, and I have conversed with her so particularly as to bear testimony of her merit, and to assure those to whom it is least known, that for beauties of body and mind, she is one of the most excellent persons in the world: I know likewise of her affairs more than you think, and I can (continued he, turning himself towards Pharamond) inform you something when you desire it.

You may believe, continued Telanor, that our King seeing himself Father of so fair a Family, forgot nothing which he deem'd necessary for their Education; and I will tell you, that he contributed all he ought, and that for that of the two Princes, he caused Strangers to be sent for from those Nations where men are at present most polite, whom he employed with all the success he could desire; it was however with some inequality, and they would willingly have found in the spirit of *Mundisic* the same sweetness and docility they discerned in that of *Balamir*; the difference was easily observed in their very youth, but that excessive fierceness was more pardonable in a man born to command; as they knew *Mundisic* to be, and they judged, that the sweetness of *Ealamir* agreed bet-

ter with his fortune, which, by the order of succession, ought to be much different from that of his elder Brother; they therefore began to love him so soon as they began to know him, and besides the advantages he had receiv'd from nature, to gain the hearts of all by the grace of his person, that of his carriage soon attracted the affections of all the world. But it was not only those Masters the King gave him, which laboured to form in him an excellent person, he had soon another, which contributed possibly no less than all the instructions they had given him.

The Queen of the *Goths*, Widow to *Atharvic*, who, as I have told you, sacrificing to Heaven by her piety all the prejudice she might have against him who had despoiled her Husband of his Dominions, or preferring a repose, to a tumultuous life, which she must have pass'd, in seeking an assistance, or revenge, which it would have been difficult for her to have found against a power like that in which the King of the *Huns* was at present established, had reduced her self to a private life, because it was full of quiet; and contenting her self with her condition, by the conformity she found in it with her inclinations sweet and peaceable, had lived without murmuring, either in the Court of our King, where the Queen his Spouse stay'd her as much as it was possible by demonstrations of affection, against which she could not defend her self; or in those houses the King had left her, with revenues much greater than was necessary to maintain her according to her humour, and indeed considerable enough to permit her to live without care, and in port most magnificent. It was for these particular reasons that she had lived for seven or eight years in a solitude more conformable to her fortune and temper than a Royal Court, and which she had employed, as it was said, in the Education of a Daughter, the only issue Heaven had left her of her marriage, and on whom she had fixed all her hopes, and all her affection. It was believ'd, that if she had followed her own desire, she had ended her days in this manner, but she could not resist the prayers and affection of the Queen of the *Huns*, who loving her dearly, and reverencing her for her admirable virtue, left her not at quiet till she had obliged her to return to the Court to stay with her: she was soon persuaded by so virtuous a Princess, and return'd to the Court in a time wherein it was truly great and magnificent, and like that of a puissant Monarch. But it may be said with truth, that it received its greatest splendour by the arrival of the young Princess *Hunnimonda*, who presently appeared as a Star sufficient to eclipse all other brightness; she was at present aged about twelve years, *Balamir* fifteen or sixteen, and *Mundisc* two more, and *Theodolinda* was a year elder than she, and in that age had already made her beauties be admired, when they were a little eclipsed by the arrival of the Princess *Hunnimonda*.

Is it possible, (said *Constance* to *Telanor*, interrupting him) *that the beauty of the Princess Hunnimonda should exceed that of the Princess Theodolinda? Or is it not some particular interest you have taken, which makes you make this judgment?* It belonged not to me possibly to judge, reply'd *Telanor*, nor had I done it, if the general opinion had not created mine; but without deciding particularly the merit of these two Beauties, I will tell you, that in our Court, all those who have travelled most, do concur, that there is nothing in the world can equal the beauty of *Hunnimonda*; and I should likewise be of this belief, if I had never seen Queen *Rosamond*, I can yet very hardly believe, that in all her person, she hath any charm greater than *Hunnimonda*, though she hath a greater Splendour; nor that she is more capable to insinuate a tender passion into a Soul, though possibly she may surprisè, and dazzle more.

I will not make you a particular description of this Beauty, distrusting the weakness of my abilities to represent her to you as she appeared to me; nor will I speak to you of the whiteness of her complexion, which scarce hath its parallel in the world; of the beauty of her eyes, which may cause to dye with love all those that see them; of that of her lips, of her hair, of her admirable shape, of a grace spread through all her person, in which there seems to be something of Divine and Supernatural. But without making this particular description, I will tell you only, that *Hunnimonda* is in every part made to make her self be beloved, or to speak better, to snatch the hearts of the fiercest persons with a sweet violence, against which it is impossible for them to defend themselves. But the charms of her Body have no advantage over those of her mind, though by her constitution there appears in all her person more languor than vivacity; and if ever any Soul appeared fair by marks of piety, wisdom, greatness of courage, and all other excellent virtues, a too confirmed truth may affirm that of *Hunnimonda* to be so. It is likewise most certain, that never any person was so generally, and so truly beloved; and though she contributed not to that love all the world bore her, but by the advantages she could not conceal, and by a sweetness so insinuating and engaging, that it was impossible for any to de-

send himself: and though she had nothing of affected or flattering, yet it seemed that there was somewhat in her person, which attracted with a supernatural force, and which men followed by the effect of a power that none could resist. *It is thus,* (said *Artabure* to *Constance*) *that I should describe her, and she is absolutely such as Hunnimonda presents herself to my thoughts, by the discourse I hear.*

All these wonders, continued *Telanor*, do not at present appear equally in this young Princess, but her beauty, though it was not yet arrived at a perfection which years have since given it, charm'd and surpris'd all the Court, so soon as it appear'd, and after-time hath but too much discovered the rest. There were few young men, among those whom merit or quality rendred considerable to the Court, which at this sight did not resent a part of that effect it could produce, though they dissembled it out of the respect they bore the Queen of the *Goths*, to whom, by the will of the King, and the particular diligence of the Queen, the same honours were rendred, as in her Royal Fortune; but he who appear'd so, and who without doubt was the most lively touch'd, was the Prince *Balamir*, though he had yet scarce arriv'd at his sixteenth year; and if the sight of *Hunnimonda* made him presently feel, what hitherto he had not known, in a little time his familiarity and conversation begat in him as much love, as a person of the age of *Hunnimonda* could create, and a Youth of the age of *Balamir* was capable to receive. The first impressiion which seiz'd his heart, establish'd it self with sweetness, and his evil at first seem'd pleasing to him, though it troubled the repose in which he had before lived, interrupted his sleep, and gave him no small trouble; hitherto his thoughts had been intent on nothing but War, nor had he flattered himself with other hopes, than those to acquire fame, and to render himself renowned among great men, by the effects of that courage he knew in himself, though he had yet found no occasion to make proof of it. But so soon as his heart had submitted to love, that imperious passion would entirely possess him, without leaving place to other thoughts, than those which it inspir'd, and that desire which he before had in his tender age, to go to the Wars, and seek occasions to signalize himself, could not enlarge it self in him, at least, it began to languish, and to stir him up much less than it had formerly done. Every instant of the sight and conversation of *Hunnimonda*, gave new additions to his love, as every moment seem'd to add to her beauty, and he seeing her every day, and almost every moment, it was every moment his passion felt a redoublement. He had the liberty to see her when he pleas'd, at least when she was to be seen, and besides that the Queen her Mother us'd great circumspectiions, that she might not give any cause of complaint to the Son of a King, whom her ill fortune had rendred Master of her destiny, that affection which all the world had for Prince *Balamir*, was very particular to her self, and besides what she ought to his fair qualities, which rendred him amiable, the obligations she believed to have to the affection of the Queen her Mother, to whom she was absolutely dear, obtain'd with her greater complacencies, than possibly she had for any other consideration.

Hunnimonda her self, by her natural inclination, and by the knowledge she had of his merit, beheld him with delight, and by a manner of acting with him full of sweetness and freedom, engaged him more and more, and in the end, reduc'd him to a condition, that rendred him incapable any more to think of the return of his liberty. This great change which he suffered in his intentions, caused the same in his humour, and in his manner of living, and as it is very ordinary in like occasions, he began to become melancholy, to seek retirement, or at least, not to love any company, in which he could not see *Hunnimonda*. I had been plac'd with him from his Infancy, and being of an age little different from his, and he knowing in me a strong passion for his service, had honoured me with his particular affection, and a greater confidence than he had entrusted any persons about him with, so that I may truly say, I was the first to whom he gave the knowledge of what he had in his heart. With this, though the tender age of *Hunnimonda* might give him more boldness, and more liberty with her, than he durst have taken in riper years, and though in that, wherein she at present was, discretion is not ordinarily so great, as to impose silence to a passion so violent as his already was, yet most certain it is, he durst not determine to discover his love to this young Princess, and that he for a long time made his eyes and sighs speak, before he open'd his mouth, to make her know, what her beauty made him suffer: Not but that he gave very particular testimonies of it upon all opportunities which offer'd, or that in all those little diligences which love can inspire, he did not appear what that which he truly was. But in fine, he durst not publicly declare what he resent'd, though he felt nothing but what was full of innocence and virtue, but his love had imprinted in him, a respect which rendred him timid, and made him fear to displeas the Princess he adored. The

The beauteous *Hunnimonda*, who was not yet of an age ripe enough, to make these observations she might have done in another, and who, by a Mother wholly fix'd to piety, and to a solid virtue, had been educated in a manner, that might for a long time make her ignorant of all those things, which might give the least knowledge of love, perceived not any thing which the heart of the Prince suffered for her, but following the inclination she had, to esteem him for his virtue, and for his fair and obliging carriage towards the Queen her Mother, and towards her, gave him with infinite sincerity, many marks of her affection; nor made she any difficulty to let him know, the precedence he had in her esteem before Prince *Mundisc*. *Balamir* considered with infinite joy this beginning of his hapiness, yet he was not able to rest satisfied with it, but as he had wholly given up his heart, so he would have that of *Hunnimonda*, and fixed all his thoughts to the desire to win her, without daring to demand, or making her know what he desired. He hazarded however one day more than he had ever before done, and open'd his soul in part before the Queen her Mother, whom he met happily at that time, to advance his affairs much more than he durst have expected.

He was in her Chamber seated near the Princess, and the Queen was at some distance from them, busied about some little affair, in which, the presence of *Balamir*, whom she daily saw, and with whom she liv'd very freely, hindered her not from employing her self, when on a sudden *Hunnimonda*, who for some time had observ'd him very pensive, and much more addicted to melancholy, than naturally he was, observing in his eyes all the signs of a profound sadness, or rather, of a lively and violent grief, by the excellency of her nature, and the esteem she had for him, interressing her self already truly for him with much affection, demanded the cause of it. The young Prince answered her not at first, but by a sigh drawn from the bottom of his heart, and a passionate look; but in the end, being importun'd by the Princess, whose desire was augmented by his behaviour, *I know not*, said he, *by what marks you could know the grief with which my heart is oppress'd, nor had I any design to declare it this day to you, but in truth it is so violent, that it is impossible for me to dissemble it, and very difficult to support it. I know well, that some grief afflicts you, said the Princess, but I would know the cause, if you have no cause to conceal it, and I shall then do what is possible for me to comfort it. The cause is not new, said the Prince, but I confess, that I have not for the time past felt it as I now do, but it causeth such an effect upon my spirit, that it is difficult for me in my whole life to find any consolation, if it come not from you. My grief, since you command me to tell it, comes only from a fear, which perplexes my spirit, and all the fear that can afflict me, is the only fear I have, that I shall be hated by you. By me, (said *Hunnimonda*, with an aspect which sufficiently denoted her surprize) and what marks have you received of my hatred? and what cause have you given me to hate you? I think I have given you none, replied my Prince, neither by my actions nor by my intentions, and I dare believe, I never had any thought which you could condemn, but I fear lest my Birth should render me odious to you; and since I must speak the truth to obey you, whatever glory may accrue to me, by being born of an Illustrious, and of a King considerable to the world, I would I had been born of any other man in the world, than of him who possesses your Kingdom, and who hath deprived you of a Crown that belongs to you.*

The Prince pronounced these words with so many marks of grief, that the young Princess was touch'd, but believing that this discourse pass'd the reach of her age and capacity, and that it was not for her to decide those Sentiments she ought to have by herself of a King that had usurped her Crown; she beheld the Queen her Mother, as if she had wish'd it; trusting in her discretion, made no difficulty to hazard the proofs of it, while she might now do, and made her judge by her countenance, that she left her in a liberty to speak her own thoughts. *Hunnimonda* thought some moments on what she should say, and in the end breaking silence with a behaviour full of sweetness, and with a Majesty which surpass'd her present age; *You have so little part, said she, in the misfortunes of our House, that we can neither accuse you nor hate you without too great injustice, and since the Queen my Mother testifies no resentment against you, you need not fear any from a person, all whose thoughts ought to be, and always shall be conformable to hers. I approve the answer of *Hunnimonda*, (said the Queen, internixing her self in their discourse) and I will add, that we not only regard you as a Prince most innocent of our misfortunes, but that by the particular obligations which we have for you, and the great qualities of your person, you ought to expect from us thoughts wholly contrary to those you fear.*

These words of the Mother and the Daughter touch'd the Prince with a joy he could

not at all dissensible, and turning to the Queen in great haste he took one of her hands kissing it of force, and bending one of his knees whatever endeavours she used to hinder him; *You render me a life Madam, said he, by this effect of your goodness and from an extremity of grief you make me pass to such an extremity of joy that I cannot express. Would to God,* (continued he rising up by the command of the Queen, who would not suffer him a moment in that posture) *that it were possible for me to make you see both the one and the other resentments which I have in my heart, and that at the price of my blood and my life, I could offer the Princess Hunnimonda some reparation of those losses she hath suffered by the Arms of the King my Father. If I were in the place of Mundisic, I could hope to present her one day with the Crown of the Goths, that of the Huns, and all that birth, Arms and Fortune have granted to our house, but since the order of birth leaves me not this power: permit me to hope Madam,* (continued he speaking to the Queen,) *that if by any Valour which I may inherit from my Ancestors, or by some assistance of Fortune which sometimes favours Courage and good intentions, I may be rais'd to a degree equal to that of my elder Brother, and see my self possessor of a Crown worthy to be offered to the Princess Hunnimonda, you will permit me to lay it at her feet, and present her with a heart which I have dedicated to her, and which I will preserve hers to my Tomb, though I should see my self so unhappy as to see her despise the gift I make her.*

The Prince pronounced these words with a behaviour so passionate, that neither the Mother nor the Daughter could doubt of the sincerity of his intentions, nor find any thing too hardy in the declaration he made in a manner so noble and obliging; the Princess however blind and fix'd her eyes on the ground: But the Queen having dedicated some time to the admiration which this discourse had caused, broke silence, and beholding Balamir with a countenance which could not make him fear any thing; *Certainly, said she, nothing could be more obliging nor more generous than what you now speak, in a time wherein the ill fortune of Hunnimonda should not draw the like declarations from a Prince like Balamir, but as instead of complaining at your discourse she hath all the reason in the world to praise your intention, neither she nor I ought to abuse you, nor permit that in a Youth and in an estate which leaves you not at your own disposal, you should engage in a design which would not be approved by the King your Father and which may ruine your fortune. See that which Hunnimonda can answer you and I am content to add to testify my acknowledgment and follow my inclination, that if Hunnimonda possessed the Crown of her Father which appertain'd to her, if the fortune of War and the Will of Heaven had not deprived our House of it, I would not that she should value the default of a Crown before the person of Balamir, but prefer him without a Crown before all the Princes that either wear one or may wear one.*

At these words of the Queen the transported Prince had once more cast himself at her feet if she had not oppos'd it by all her Authority, and scarce finding in the pleasing trouble of his Spirit, words able to express himself in the disorder he felt and what he thought, *Ab Madam, said he, since by a grace to which I dare not aspire and the precious marks of an esteem I have never merited, you render me to day the most glorious and fortunate of all men, in the name of the Gods, trouble not that glory and that fortune by a consideration which ought not to be able to obstruct it. The King my Father will not be an enemy to my happiness, in a marriage wherein all the glory and all the advantage is for us; and though I should be so unhappy as to fear he would not be favourable to me, notwithstanding the respect I owe to him, and which I would preserve to my Tomb in things possible for me; I am born with a heart free and with a heart that shall never acknowledge other Empire than that of Hunnimonda. You consider not, said the Queen sighing, that Hunnimonda is yet an Infant, and that you make her understand things of which neither her Age nor possibly yours are yet too capable; in another more ripe you may change design.* “When this shall happen, replied the young Prince very coldly, I shall be neither worthy of her esteem nor remembrance, but if that never arrives, forbid me not from hoping I shall have some part both in the one and the other, and permit me in the mean time to seek occasions to put my self in an estate not to abuse your generosity nor offer a Prince without a Crown to a Princess, whose fortune ought not to be bounded to the youngest Son of the King of the Huns.

He had said more, and the discourse had extended farther, if the Queen had not been advertised that the Queen of the Huns was coming towards her Chamber to visit her, so that all the time she had was to tell him as she rise to go meet the Queen his Mother; “You merit more than you demand, and I would not that Hunnimonda should be so ingrateful to your good will. It was thus that by the favourable accident of that delight which the Queen of the Goths took in the conversation of Balamir and Hunnimonda, fortune seem'd willing to do for him more in one day than he could without doubt have done by other ways in many whole years; and Hunnimonda was of that humour that though to the esteem she had

had for him, she had joyned a true and strong affection, it is certain that she had never given the least mark of it without the advice nor without the orders of the Queen her Mother, whilst having heard her that day explain her self so favourably for him, and knowing by all kind of marks that this design was not disagreeable, she oppos'd not at all as she had else without doubt done, that inclination which the merit of this young Prince might give her for him, but suffered the proofs in another manner than she had suffered them, if they had been less approved.

So happy a beginning began in my Prince the most acceptable hopes with which he could flatter himself, and not willing to neglect his fortune whilst it was favourable to him, the Evening of that same day knowing the tender affection the Queen his Mother had for him, for the Queen of the *Goths* and *Hunnimonda*, and the great assistance he might receive not only with the Queen of the *Goths*, but with the King himself, over whose disposition she had a great power, he demanded a particular audience of her, and seeing himself alone with her in the Closet, having cast himself at her feet and done many other Actions which let her sufficiently know the passion that made him speak, he discover'd to her the love he had for *Hunnimonda*, and all that she had made him suffer, and in the end was about to recount to her the conversation he had that day had with the Queen of the *Goths*, when the Queen first by a sigh and in the end by the discourse she made spared him that pains, and let him know that she had understood it all from the mouth of the Queen of the *Goths*, who in effect living in an innocent life, and unskilful in all sorts of deceit and artifice, and knowing her self bound to the proofs she daily receiv'd from the tender amity of the Queen of the *Huns*, would not keep secret any thing for which she believed she might incur her displeasure, nor attend the rebuke she might tear from her friendship, if this affection had come to her knowledge by any other mouth than her own. *Balamir* was astonish'd for the present that the Queen of the *Goths* had so readily acquainted the Queen his Mother with a business in which he plac'd all the importance of his life and repose; but a little after having made reflection on the reasons she had, and the little she had hazarded for him in discovering it to a Mother of whom he knew he was infinitely beloved, he approved her proceeding, and persevering in the design which had occasion'd him to begin to speak, he conjur'd the Queen by all the passionate words which his love could put in his mouth, to be assistant to him in his love, to which all his thoughts and all the happiness of his life was fix'd, and in the good or ill success of which all his good or ill fortune consisted.

The Queen who truly loved the Prince with the most strong affection a Mother could have for a Child, who had linked her self with a very strait friendship to the Queen of the *Goths*, who esteem'd infinitely the merit of the young Princess *Hunnimonda* and who by an inclination full of piety, believ'd that no right of Conquest could make the King her Husband retain with justice a Crown that legitimately appertain'd to this Princess, and that by no rule of policy he could marry her to any other save one of his Children to fix to his House that right which she had to a Country of which she was depriv'd, was not contrary to the design of *Balamir*: but instead of condemning his love she told him that he could never be enamour'd of any person more worthy than that fair Princess on whom he had cast his affections, promising him the friendship of the Queen of the *Goths*, who for her sake would be favourable to him: Nor contented she her self to heighten the hopes of *Balamir*, by the assistance which she promised him on the part of the Mother of *Hunnimonda*, but made it her business her self afterwards with the King to persuade him to approve his love, and she acted in such manner, that the King look'd upon the beginnings without any mark of displeasure, and permitted it to be judged by the complacence he had to suffer them, and to suffer them agreeably that he would not oppose his intentions, and that he could not condemn what he felt for that Princess, who by what might be judged in the Age wherein she was would be a person wholly admirable. And moreover besides what the beauty of *Hunnimonda* might persuade for the justification of *Balamir*, it is certain that though depriv'd of the Crown of her Fathers, she had still a legitimate right which no right of Conquest could make her lose, and that marrying any other Prince, she might with justice raise Arms and beget a War able to trouble the Rule and possession of the King of the *Huns*: and it was possibly in part this reason, which made the King approve the thoughts of *Balamir*, or at least to suffer them: and though he did not declare himself publickly upon this matter, he let it be judged by his manner of acting that he might one day consent to this Marriage. He had likewise by chance some discourse with the Queen of the *Goths*, by which he gave her some reason to hope he would not oppose it.

This belief which was confirm'd both with the Queen of the *Goths* and all the Court was very advantageous to the love of *Balamir*, for the Queen of the *Goths* seeing so happy a

progress in a thing which she ought to desire, and which perhaps she had not a little desired, commanded *Hunnimonda* to give *Balamir* all marks of affection he could demand from a Princess full of wisdom and virtue, and the young Prince who without this order had much to fear, and had had much to suffer from the severity of *Hunnimonda* saw himself in a little time infinitely more happy than he durst have hop'd. In effect, he began to lead a life so sweet that it might cause envy in the most fortunate persons, and though he were not yet of Age to be well capable to know all his Happiness and that the beauty of *Hunnimonda* wanted yet much of that sublime degree of perfection to which some time after it arriv'd: yet however it is certain that the spirit of *Balamir* did in this design outstrip his age, to make him resent his felicity, and that the beauty of *Hunnimonda* though infinitely inferior to what it afterwards was, was already such that all the world judged that it would in few years outshine the greatest beauties of the earth, and all those qualities which ought to accompany it, were in such manner advanced in her person, that she might well be regarded as a young Princess truly admirable.

Balamir never stirred from her, and though he were very well treated, and that young as she was she gave him reason to believe that to the obedience she ought to the orders of her Mother she joyned something more advantagious for him, yet she acted with him with great wisdom, and no less reservedness, so that scarce with all the greatest proofs of his love, could he draw from her the least appearance of the slightest favours, but as he knew the price of them he contented himself with little and was satisfied with his fortune, when he persuaded himself that in the heart of the most amiable person of the world he was preferred to all persons in the world. Some young Princes in whom the beauty of *Hunnimonda* had created a love so soon as she appeared at Court, and to whom the ill fortune of her house had given the boldness to testify it, yielded the honour to *Balamir*, with less repugnance than they had yielded it to any other, not only by reason of his dignity but of the affection which his amiable qualities had begot in all the world for him, and if they ceased not to love nor sigh, they at least renounced their hopes, and did nothing which might give any ombrage or raise any inauspicious traverses in the love of the young Prince. For the Prince *Mundise* his elder Brother, were it that either his soul fierce and haughty, and which dedicated all his thoughts to ambition, had not hitherto made him resent any dispositions to love: or that the beauty of *Hunnimonda* as I have told you not having yet attain'd its perfection, could not work all the effect which it was afterwards able to do. He seem'd only to give him at this time what no person could refuse him, which were praises and admiration, and instead of opposing the love of *Balamir* with any obstacle, he favoured his commencements with a very great complacency.

You see my Lords, that not to tire you with a long recital, I have recounted succinctly the beginnings of a love, the discourse of which hath ordinarily something of tedious in it, and I was willing to pass lightly over these stories, that I might continue longer on those events more worthy your attention. To come to the discourse I am to make you, I must tell you that the condition of young *Balamir* was in the estate I have represented to you, and that as he loved passionately, so he had reason to believe that he was loved by *Hunnimonda* as much as his young Age and her severity would permit him to desire, when a life the beginning of which had been dedicated to love, was called to other things and that glory for which he was born came to trouble his prime felicity. In effect, however he had dedicated himself to *Hunnimonda* he had not renounced fame which he loved as well as she, and the King his Father though he consented to his love, had no design that he should consume and waste at the feet of *Hunnimonda* a life, which according to all appearances he ought to render illustrious by his fair Actions. Occasion offer'd it self at that time, to exercise the two Princes in the mystery they ought to practise to follow the example of their Fathers, and it seem'd to have waited for the Age necessary for them to signalize themselves. The King whose Soul was wholly warlike, wearied with a Peace of many years continuance, turn'd his thoughts to War and determin'd an expedition against *Pannonia*, which he had a long time thought of. The disorders which were at present both in the Oriental and Occidental Empires, and the invasion of many Nations which assaulted them, and employed their Arms on all sides, gave him that facility to execute his designs, which he had not had in conjunctures less favourable. But whilst he thought to carry a War into those Nations he would conquer, he was forc'd to think of defending those which were already under his dominion, for he understood that *Mazia* which he had forced to submit to his Arms, and a part of *Sarmatia*, which the King his Father had conquered, by the combination of some Princes, which had very apparent pretences, and who had a long time been forging conspiracies, were risen on all sides and covered all the Country with an infinite number of Souldiers.

He understood likewise, that so soon as they appeared in Arms, a great part of the Cities had declared in their favour, and that in all liklyhood, all the others would follow their example, if it were not prevented with diligence. His courage being great, this news affrighted him not, though it somewhat troubled him, but with an admirable speed he set on foot one of those terrible Armies, which by the warlike humour of our people, are raised among us more easily than in other Nations. But because it was of necessity for him to part his Forces, to send one party into *Mæsia*, and the other into *Sarmatia*, he resolv'd that the Prince *Murdisc*, his eldest Son, who had already attain'd his twentieth year, and was capable of command, should go into *Sarmatia* with one of the two Armies, with the old and experienced Captains, whom he gave him, to assist his youth with their counsels and experience, and with the other he would go in person, where the affairs were more desperate, and the Rebellion more general, and he thought good that *Balamir* should follow him, to serve under him his Apprentiship in War.

All the hinderance which the love of *Balamir* might give him with *Hunnimonda*, yielded to that he had for glory, and for his duty, and that martial ardour which he felt boil in his veins since his youngest years, rekindling it self at the sound of the Trumpet which called him, made him surmount all that opposition he had to absent himself from what he lov'd: Nor could all his passion hinder him from conceiving some motions of joy, out of the hope he had to see himself soon employed in affairs so much coveted, and like a young Lion, exciting all his fierceness against some tender motions which might raise themselves in his soul, he vanquish'd all that might seem to oppose the effect of his generous inclinations. That day, on which he understood the resolution of the King, and received order to prepare for his departure, being with *Hunnimonda*, on whose countenance he saw some marks of a very obliging sadness, *I beg your pardon*, said he, *if I cannot sufficiently afflict my self at the misfortune I have to absent my self from you. I am ashamed to have done nothing for my glory, which may render me worthy to serve you, and if with some honour among men I ought to purchase a Crown to offer you, it is time that I begin to labour for it.*

The Princess hearkened to this discourse of the Prince, with a countenance, in which he might observe more melancholy, than appeared in his, and beholding him with an eye which seem'd to speak more than her words, *I see you so well satisfied to leave us*, said she, *that I shall have no great need to prepare you consolations, and though I conform my self as I ought to the necessity that makes you absent your self from us, yet I would believe better what you have for the time past perswaded me, if I saw less joy in your face than now you testify.* *Ab Madam*, replied the Prince, *give not the name of joy to an effect of my courage, which I have not obtained without infinite difficulty, and be pleas'd to believe, that if this first expedition should lead me to the Empire of the world, and to the glory of the chiefest Cæsar, I should not be capable of joy whilst it absents me from you.* *It is true that I have struggled, and do struggle with my grief, both by the necessity of my duty, and those hopes which may flatter me, but between the Combat and the Victory, there is a great difference, and I doubt not but my courage will give me in this conflict, the same assistance I hope for in those I go to seek.* *You may well believe this truth*, my fair Princess, added he with a sigh, *and would to God that in the doubt you may have, I might be so happy to see in you some sign of trouble, which would render me more fortunate than I had ever been in my life.* *You observe but too much*, replied the Princess, *and as the thoughts I have for you, are own'd by persons to whom I am to give an account, I am not possibly studious to conceal it, neither have I believed that it was necessary, nor know I any reason which should hinder me from testifying, that I am afflicted for your departure.* *I am unwilling however, that you believe I interest my self in your glory so much, as not to oppose my self to the desire you have to acquire it, and I cannot doubt but you were born for something else, than to pass your life with us.* *Go, since 'tis of necessity you must go, whither your Birth, your courage, and your duty call you, but in travelling for your glory, oblige your self not to it in such manner, that you do not always remember Hunnimonda, and in exposing this life to dangers which you go to seek, forget not the interest we have in your conservation.*

These words, which truly were the most obliging which he had ever heard from the lips that uttered them, made him feel a tenderness which he had not yet experienced; and abandoning himself absolutely to a transportation of mind which he could not dissemble, *"The greatest charm which glory can have for me*, replied he, *is that, to make me merit your esteem, and though of it self it be sufficiently fair to touch the inclinations of a Prince of my age and birth, the Gods are my witnesses, that no motive makes me feel it with so much ardour, as the desire to render my self by your assistance more worthy*

“to serve you; for you must give me leave again to tell you, that being born of a Father that hath deprived you of a Crown, I should esteem my self most unhappy, if by some confidence that I have in my Sword, and in my Courage, I did not hope to oblige the King my Father to restore it you, or put me in an estate to give you another, which shall hinder you from repining at the loss of what was yours. It is to this thought, and to this desire that I am eternally fix’d, though possibly for my own interest, I should regard a Crown with sufficient disdain, but since you merit too well to be a Queen, and that there is no King in the world who will not one day esteem himself too happy to be yours, I will never desire, that you should yield to the condition of a man, who ought not to be so, if Fortune gives him not that which the order of his Birth refuses him. *Alas my Lord,* (said the Princess, with a becoming goodness, and a prudence infinitely above her age) *make me no longer a discourse which gives me confusion, and instead of tormenting your self to seek Crowns, which are not necessary for you, to merit Hunnimonda, believe that she hath not forgot, that to fix your self to her miserable fortune, you despise that which you might find every where else if you please.*

They had said more, if they had not been interrupted by the Prince *Mundisc*, who came to render a visit to the Queen of the *Goths*, with many other persons who accompanied him: He disputed with *Balamir*, and the Princess, concerning the discontent which their separation ought to cause in them; and as he had at present no reason which might hinder him from rendering this kindness to his Brother, he of his own free will pray’d the Princess to preserve him her affection, during a Voyage, which in all likelihood would be very long, and during which he doubted not but her absence would make him suffer much. *Balamir* thanked the Prince for what he said in his favour to the Princess; and *Hunnimonda* answered him modestly, that she did not believe, that *Balamir* could suffer any thing for the love of her, and that she would not be wanting, during their absence, to offer prayers to Heaven, for the preservation, both of the one, and the other, and for the happy success of their Arms.

In fine, notwithstanding the grief which *Balamir* had to absent himself from *Hunnimonda*, he restituted that day sufficient constancy and resolution, and during the time which we remain’d at *Alba Julia*, which was the principal City of *Dacia*, formerly named *Apulum*, seated on the River *Rhabon*, or *Marisus*, in which the King kept his Court, he gain’d from his courage a part of that assistance which he desired against his love, and with a great grace made all things ready for his Journey; but when the day of his departure came, and that he was to take leave of *Hunnimonda*, a part of his constancy and fair resolutions forsook him, and he could not hinder himself from making the Princess a witness how much he was sensible of the discontent he had to part from her. Then he appeared like another person, he said all that grief could put into his mouth of most affectionate, nay he likewise shed tears, *Accuse me not of weakness,* (said he to the Princess, drying them) *but be pleas’d to believe, that it is difficult to separate a body, which I carry into Mæsia, from a heart which I leave with you, without making it suffer a violence which I cannot conceal: The better part of Balamir remains without doubt with you, and that which is to be absent, cannot in quitting you, preserve sufficient strength to support his misery, with a greater constancy, I leave you, my fair Princess, and I shall return when the Gods shall please, and my good fortune permit me; but whatever distance separates us, your remembrance shall never one moment forsake me; and I hope the desire to render my self worthy of you, will make me do things which you may own. Permit me if you please thus to flatter my self with some consolation in my grief, and forbid me not from hoping, that you will preserve me some place in your memory. I not only permit you to believe it, said the Princess, but I pray you, and assure your self with certainty, that no absence, nor no tract of time, shall ever banish you.*

She pronounced not these words without blushing, though she knew well, that she did was approv’d, and the Prince was transported with a joy which made him for some time forget all his sorrow. It was confirm’d by the sight of some tears, which at the same instant overflowed the fair eyes of the Princess, and the Prince submitting himself to the charm which the knowledge of his good fortune had prepared for him, found himself in a disorder, between two opposite passions, which permitted him no longer to explain himself, but with confusion. In this estate he bid adieu to the Princess, and taking leave of the Queen of the *Goths*, he conjured her, with his knee bended before her, to remember her self of the marks she had given him of her goodness, and to believe, that in the confidence he had in it, he had built a good part of his fortune. This virtuous Princess, who loved him as if he had been her Son, and who found no misfortune for her Daughter in

in the love he bore her, promised him more than he demanded: and the Queen of the *Huns* his Mother who made him likewise remember the protection she had given him in his love confirmed the promise to him with all the affection he could desire.

We parted thus from *Alba Julia*, and on the same day the King with the young Prince *Balamir*, took their way towards *Mesia*, and Prince *Mundisc* by a Road quite opposite that towards *Sarmatia*. The two Armies were little different in Forces, and in the least there was near an hundred thousand fighting men. The King left the government of affairs in *Dacia* to men most capable, and whose fidelity could not be suspected; marching towards *Mesia*, with as much diligence as it was possible; without wearying his men who were to fight at their arrival. We crossed the Ancient Country of the *Gepids*, and that of the *Burridiens*, left on our left hand *Ulpia*, *Trajana*, heretofore named *Zarmigetusa*, passed at the foot of the *Ceraunian* Mountains, and by the Country of the *Burres*, came to the banks of the *Danube*, which we were to pass to enter into *Mesia*; by good fortune those Cities which were seated on the banks of the *Danube*, between the Rivers of *Murgis* and *Ciabra*, remained in obedience to the King, by which means he was Master of that famous Bridge of *Trajan*, which he had with so much cost and pains built over that great River, which yet stands as one of the wonders of the world; and it was that which gave us an entire advantage to pass the River, which had without doubt stopped us, if the Enemies had rendered themselves Masters of these passes, as they were from the Country of the *Tribaliens*, to the place of its disburthening it self in the *Euxine Sarmatique* Sea. The Country of the *Mesians* and all that which extends from the River *Sava* to the *Tribaliens*, which make a part of higher *Mesia*, was of our party, but all the lower *Mesia* which is bounded by the *Danube*, the Sea, and Mount *Hemus*, which is much greater, better peopled and stronger in Cities and Men, were Armed against us, and under the Conduct of two Princes, who pretended their Ancestors had some right over that Country, before it was subdued to the Empire, by the Arms of *Trajan*, and who had caused Forces to march out of *Thrace*. and had Armies on foot whose force was not inferiour to that of our King: The Princes were brave and valiant, the People warlike, all the plain Country, and the greatest part of the Cities were at their discretion: and thus fortified they hoped to drive us back, and remain Masters of the Provinces: but in the person of our King they had for their Captain a Warriour famous and celebrated for his great Actions, and they proved in little time that in that of the young *Balamir*, they had an Enemy no less redoutable.

I will not recount to you the particulars of this War, though there happened things without doubt very observable, the renown of a part of which may possibly be come to you, but because the recital would be too long, I will only tell you in the briefest manner I can possibly, that the King having repos'd some days in the Country of the *Mesians*, marched towards the River of *Ciabra*, over which we were to pass to enter into the Country of the *Triballiens*, and on the banks of which the Enemy had ranged a party of theirs to dispute our passage: If they had well managed this design, they had given us no small trouble, but believing themselves strong enough to fight us, and those who commanded them to give a better opinion to the people, perswading them that they would not fly the fight, they endeavour'd not at all to break a bridge which we had at a City called *Vilanis*, as they might have done, being absolute Masters of the other River, and ranging in battel those Troops they had on that side, they resolv'd to let pass a party of our Army, with design to charge it, and hopes to defeat it before the other could come to its succour.

There was a great likelihood in their design, and it had possibly took effect, if they had had to do with ordinary men, but by misfortune for them, it was Prince *Balamir* who pass'd at the head of the first Troops, who having for his entrance into Arms demanded this charge from the King, which he granted him with much difficulty, marched towards them with an assurance which struck them with a pannick fear, and instead of victory which they expected, forc'd them all to find their deaths who durst rencounter him, and carried so much affright and disorder among the rest, that the Troops which followed them had all time requisite to pass, and enlarge themselves in the Plain, where by the prodigious bravery of this young Prince, victory soon declared it self for our party. All the Infantry which the Enemy had opposed to us were cut in pieces, their Cavalry saved themselves in the *Teminites* Mountains, and went to rejoyne with the gross of their Troops which were beyond the *Escames*, another great River which stopp'd our passage unto Mount *Hemus*, whence it takes it source to the *Danube*, into which it dischargeth it self near the City of *Appiparia*.

By this first advantage which was great, though I have told it you succinctly, the King hop'd he should in few days be Master of all the Country of the *Tribaliens*, but this hope

Gave him less content than he receiv'd by the first success of the Arms of *Balamir*, and though by all appearances he had seen him now do things which pass'd his expectation, and would almost pass belief, if they were particularly told. I followed him the closest possible; and if before the Combat I admir'd with all the world the excellent grace he had under his first Arms, I admir'd him much more in the Combat, and could not hinder my self oftentimes from stopping to wonder then when all were most employed. For at his first blow of essay, he with his own hand deprived of life the General of those Troops who that day fought, and by this Action having begun the Victory, he seconded it with so many others worthy a particular notice, that it was to him alone the King confessed he owed most of the advantage of that day. In some other fights we had in the Country of the *Tribalians*, and in the assault of several places, which were carried by force, and which resolutely defended themselves, he did things above imagination, and which rendred him more formidable to the Enemies, than all the power and all the reputation of the King his Father: but it was at the passage of the *Escames*, having intirely subdued the Provinces of the *Tribalians*, that he made the world no longer question his renown, for whilst our Forces endeavour'd to force a passage on the bridges of Boats which the King had caused to be made, after a great many Bickerings, walking on the banks of the River, and from thence casting a terrible look to the other side, which struck a gelid frost into the hearts of the most hardy, he remembered himself of what *Alexander* did at *Granica*, and supporting impatiently all the Obstacles brought to oppose his generous design: *Why*, (said he to those that were near him,) *cannot we do that which others have done before us? that which appears to us of Enemies, is it more redoubtable than an Army of three hundred thousand men, ranged on the banks of the Granica? And Alexander and the Macedonians were they not Men like us?* To these words he added some others, to animate the Cavalry which were near him, and seeing that the River was neither too large nor too rapid, he put Spurs to his Horse, and swum him through the Waves towards the other side of the River, at the head of five or six thousand Horse which followed him, and amongst whom there was not a man found staying after so fair an example. The King who observed this Action, though from a place far distant; was somewhat offended at first, fearing the success would not answer the greatness of the enterprize: but as there is a fortunate rashness, this (for I may give it that name) truly was one; for the Enemies instead of making use of their advantage, to charge those which strove to get up the Banks, were so astonish'd at the boldness of this Action, that they lost the favourable occasion, and observing *Balamir* at the head of them by his shining Arms, and many white Plumes, which waved o're his Helmet, they had scarce sufficient confidence to maintain any fight. *Elizar* who was one of the two hostile Princes, ran from another side where he had been till then employed, and would by his presence have encouraged his own to have driven back ours into the River, but he found *Balamir* in the head who press'd him in such sort that he could scarce save himself from before him with two great wounds, which he had received from two cuts of his Sword. By this diversion which he made on this side of one part of the enemies forces, and the fear he gave to the other who so soon as he was pass'd over, fought no longer but in disorder, the King had almost a free passage, and *Elizar* who in truth was not strong enough in that place to give us battel, retreated in the best order it was possible, and like a man understanding in War, but yet not without leaving the Field covered with dead, and losing all his baggage.

Some days after, to pass over this succinctly, having joyned with his Companion near the City of *Davidacie*, in the Country of *Aroteres*, and beyond the famous Altar of *Decius*, and finding a Post advantageous for them, they presented us Battel, which the King accepted with joy, not only out of the desire he had to end the war, but to yield to the boiling ardour of *Balamir*, who promised him the victory; and such confidence had he not only in his valour, but even in his wisdom, (though he saw a little too much boldness in his enterprizes) that notwithstanding his youth, for he was not arriv'd to above nineteen years of Age, he willingly gave him the command of the right Wing of his Army, nor had he any cause to repent himself, and in this Battel of which no more than the rest will I recount you the particulars, with the right Wing which he commanded, he not only defeated the left Wing of his Enemies, which was oppos'd to him, and which *Timagnes* conducted, and having slain a part, and disorder'd the rest to a general Rout, but with his victorious Troops, he came to the assistance of the King who fought with much uncertainty of the event, and having chas'd by his arrival, all that made head against him, extended victory generally through all parts, and rendred it famous by the death of thirty thousand Enemies.

By a victory so important, the King might have hop'd soon to have put an end to that War, if the Season had permitted him to make use of those advantages it gave him, and if
soon

soon after, by the rigour of the Winter, he had not been constrained to retire into the Cities, and permit his enemies to do the same with their Forces. This obstacle of the Season, did not only prejudice him by the retardment of his designs, but by reason that the Enemies had during the Winter strengthened themselves by the arrival of many Troops, which recruited the default of those which they had lost, and put themselves in a condition to maintain the War better than they had done at the beginning. The King doubted not however to overcome them, and had already such confidence in the genius of *Balamir*, as made him hope the most difficult things; he understood likewise by many Messengers, that Prince *Mundisic* was also successful in *Sarmatia*, that he had taken two or three Cities, and that in many Battels he had had considerable advantages, so that he had cause to be satisfied at the same time, both with the valour of the Princes his Sons, and the happy success of his Arms.

I have now for some time spoke to you of War, though the most succinctly possible; but now I must mingle love in my discourse, and you will judge well, my Lords, that it hath been still mixed, and that in all the heat of the War, *Hunnimonda* had a great share in the thoughts of *Balamir*. It was to me, more than to all the rest that were about him, that he did the honour to communicate a part of them, and few days passed, in which I did not hear him twenty times call on the fair name of *Hunnimonda*. When any gave him praises (and he merited them too well to have his modesty not seldom expos'd to suffer them) *I shall be too happy*, said he, *if I can do any thing which may please Hunnimonda, and which may make me hope, that one day I shall not be unworthy of her affections, and when by the part which I take in her glory, I can rejoice with her for any happy success.* Alas! (said he to me) *whilst Fortune is favourable to me in Arms, I am absent from Hunnimonda, and possibly though she hath loved me, at this moment she may cease to love me more. It is difficult that in an age like hers, impressions should be strongly fixed, and I know not for what reason I cannot hinder my self from fearing some change in her inclinations, and my fortune.* He was not however content to think of her, and speak of her, but making use of the liberty he had, he writ to her as often as it was possible, and had often received her Letters. It would be difficult for me to remember them, but there are some, the sense of which I have retain'd in memory, and I think the first which he writ was in these terms, or the like.

Prince *Balamir* to the Princess *Hunnimonda*.

I Have not been absent from you but some days, and I have already suffered more, than I ever felt in all the years of my life; I know not how I shall defend my self against a longer absence, if my courage fortifies not it self by the necessity which obliges me, and by the hope to render my self more worthy, than I have hitherto been, of the glory to serve you. I doubt likewise, whether this assistance will yield me comfort, and difficultly shall I find it in any thing, but the confidence I ought to have in the promise you have made me, never to forget your faithful

BALAMIR.

I believe that the Answer which he received from her, was this, or little different.

The Princess *Hunnimonda* to Prince *Balamir*.

I Believe you do not suffer so much as you would perswade me, that love you have for glory, will easily make you amends for the absence of *Hunnimonda*, however, if the assurances of my remembrance can serve for your satisfaction, you may be assured that I shall never while I live forget you.

Such obliging words put the mind of *Balamir* into disorder, through the joy that transported him, nor was he wanting to seek like consolations to his passion, as often as it was possible, and I remember, that having received a Letter from her, after the first Battel fought, of which the King had sent the news to the Queen, with the praises due to the valour of *Balamir*, he writ these words, or the like:

Princ

Prince *Balamir* to the Princess *Hunnimonda*.

THe praises you give me, cannot but be very delightful to a Soul wholly yours, and the part you take in my happy entrance into Arms, flatters me more pleasingly than the glory I expected, I should however, choose rather to be considerable to you for my love, than for all the glory which my Arms may give me, and I would owe much less to the advantages I may hold from them and Fortune, than to the fidelity I shall preserve for you to my Tomb.

I remember not what the Princess replied to this Letter, but I have not forgot, that after the famous encounter of *Escames*, at which he had acquir'd so much honour, he receiv'd one, the words of which were these, or very like them.

The Princess *Hunnimonda* to Prince *Balamir*.

IT is most pleasing news to me, to hear *Marvels* already publish'd of you in the world, and to take in your glory that part, which you would have me take; but you make me buy it by fears you give me, and whatever joys I can resent, by understanding that great *Victories* are owing solely to your valour, it is not so great, as the fear you put me in, by passing Rivers, and swimming to fight those Armies which attend you on the Banks. Remember my Lord, that *Rashness* is no very great virtue, and be pleas'd likewise to remember, that you ought not to expose so lightly a life, which is not wholly yours, if your words be true.

This Letter hath remain'd in my memory, rather than many others, because it made my Prince feel an immoderate joy; for I saw him a thousand times kiss these last words with an extasie that could not be caused but by a violent passion; I have likewise preserv'd in memory that which he writ in answer of this, and I believe it was to this effect, or somewhat near it.

Prince *Balamir* to the Princess *Hunnimonda*,

IT is you should only take part in what is entirely yours, for as I have no part in my self, so my life and my glory are equally to you alone; fear nothing, neither of the one or the other, since they are own'd of you, and be pleas'd to believe, that I will die rather for the love I bear you, than by the Arms of our enemies.

I will tell you no more in this place, as well, both because that I have not well preserv'd them in memory, as because the recital may be tedious to you; but to return to our discourse of the War, so soon as the Season would permit, the King drew his Army together out of their Winter Quarters, and retook the Field, to fight his enemies, who being no weaker than he, and having great advantages, by reason of the many places they held, and the Sea, of which they were Masters, and by which they received often succours, avoided not the Fight, but as he did, they sought those opportunities which might give them the greatest advantages. The King took his like an experienced Captain, as he truly is, but he was interrupted in the execution of his designs, or at least, forced to betake himself to others, by reason of the news he received from *Sarmatia*. Prince *Mundisic* had maintain'd the War with infinite valour, and at the beginning with no less fortune, having defeated the enemies in almost all places where he had encountred them. But in the second year affairs had a little changed their face, and the enemies side being strengthened, his began to be weakened, by some losses he received, and he in the end beheld himself in no small danger to be driven out of *Sarmatia*, if he received not some assistance.

This news not a little displeas'd the King, and held him for a whole day in an irresolution

solution what he ought to do, but in the end he consulted no further, for knowing not only the admirable valour of *Balamir*, but his knowledge in War, he doubted not but he might leave to him the commandment of the Army, and the charge of all affairs in *Mesia*, whilſt he repaſſed into *Dacia*, which is directly between *Mesia* and *Sarmatia*, from whence he might both ſend Troops to reinforce *Mundſic*, and if it were neceſſary, paſſe himſelf into *Sarmatia*. He did it as he had reſolv'd, and notwithstanding the youth of *Balamir*, left all things to his diſpoſal, believing that he could not truſt them in better hands than his.

After his departure, *Balamir* remaining Maſter of this War, began to purſue it with vigour, which ſoon aſtoniſhed his enemies, and in a little time he beat them in ſeveral encounters, took ſeveral places by force or compoſition, and gain'd ſo much of the Country from them, that in the end, they cealing to flee before him, and believing themſelves able, and in a condition to give him Battel, avoided not occaſion to do it, but expected him in fair order, in a large Plain, near the River *Naxius*, and in the Country of the *Tomitans*, which the exile of the renowned *Ovid* hath made famous. The valiant *Balamir* that day ſhewing in his eyes the joy he had to ſee himſelf in a condition to acquire what he ſought with ſo much ardour, embattell'd his Troops more like an old Captain, than a young Warriour. He gave his left wing to the famous *Kenz*, a Captain illuſtrious by many great Actions, and who had bore no ſmall part in the Conqueſts of the King his Father; he placed himſelf at the head of his right Wing, where his noble poſture, and the grace he kept in ſpeaking to the Soldiers, wrought an admirable effect in their Courage, who look'd upon him as a Demi-God. The Battel was cruel, doubtful, bloody, and as reſolutely maintain'd as it could be by valiant men, who had deſign'd either to overcome or die; but in fine, by the wonderful endeavours of our Prince, the enemies loſt it, with more than forty thouſand men, who lay dead on the place. *Balamir* in the heat of the Fight, ſlew with one blow of his Sword *Timagenes*, one of the Hoſtile Princes, and did beſides an hundred noble actions, which truly gain'd us the Victory. By the favour of the nights black ſhades, which hindred the entire ruine of the enemies, *Elizar* retreated with the reſt of the Army towards the ſtreams of *Naxius*, and, beyond it, lodg'd himſelf in the Country of the *Troglodites*, where he fortified all places, and by reaſon of the ſituation of the Country, put himſelf in a poſture, for ſome time longer to ſuſtain the War.

Balamir having reaped the fruits of his Victory, which made all the Cities along the *Danube*, unto the Country of the *Etenſes*, declare themſelves for him, went to ſeek him in the place whither he was retired, but not without great difficulties, by reaſon of the reſiſtance he found from thoſe places adjacent to the Sea, *Tomos*, *Callatis*, *Timogetia*, *Iſtria*, and many others, not following the example of thoſe which bordered on the *Danube*, ſtood out till they were taken by force, or ſurrendred not, but at the laſt extremity. Winter for ſome time retarded the progreſs of the Prince, being ordinarily very ſharp in that Country, yet ſo ſoon as he could again take the Field, he went to ſeek *Elizar*, who poſſeſſed the Country of the *Troglodites*, and all that is behind it to the Sea. But to abridge my recital, having driven him from the Country of the *Troglodites*, into that of the *Peviniens*, and thence to the mouth of the *Danube*, he conſtrain'd him to engage in Battel, and gain'd it ſo entirely, that the unfortunate *Elizar* periſhed with all his Army, leaving *Balamir* no other enemies to fight with in *Mesia*, beſides thoſe that were in the Cities, againſt whom he immediately march'd, and having by this laſt victory acquired an admirable reputation, and being abſolute Maſter both of the Field, and the Banks of the *Danube*, and Maritime places, only thoſe which were in the Country of the *Coralles*, and from the *Etenſes* unto the mouth of the *Danube*, there were few that durſt expect a Siege, and who ſubmitted not eaſily to his obedience. His humanity towards the vanquiſh'd, ſeldom practiſed in thoſe Nations, wrought a good effect; for the people, whom deſpair of pardon had made reſolve to defend themſelves to the extremity, knowing the clemency of their Conquerour, who impos'd on them no other pain, than to live for the future under the obedience of the King his Father, now preſented themſelves at his feet, and rendered him truly Maſter of their hearts, as he was of all places, and the whole *Mesia*. In fine, in one year after the departure of the King, he had reduc'd all things into an eſtate as peaceable as if there had never been any war in the Country, and ſeeing that not only all things were calm, but that, by reaſon of the ſweetneſs of his uſage, as well as by the force of his Arms, the vanquiſh'd people with joy ſubmitted themſelves to the Government of his Father, not leaving him any fear of farther revolts, full of glory, and no leſs replete with a deſire, and hope ere long to preſent himſelf before his divine *Hannimonda*, he turn'd

towards *Dacia*, and approached the famous Bridge of *Trajan*, to repair the *Danube*, when he received an order from the King, whereby (having understood that the affairs in *Sarmatia* were in a very bad condition, not only by reason of the losses which Prince *Mundisc* had suffered, but by a sickness which had surpris'd him, caus'd by a great wound which he had receiv'd in a Battel, and which detain'd him in one of the Frontier Cities, with little hopes to remedy the disorders of the Provinces, or to conserve them in obedience to the King) he commanded him to go into *Sarmatia*, with his victorious Army, and with the greatest diligence possible, coasting *Dacia*, to get to the feet of the *Carpathian* Mountains, by which he might without opposition enter *Sarmatia*, telling him, with words full of affection and esteem, that it was by his valour only that he hoped to preserve that Country, which he doubted not at all he would do, if he could get thither before affairs were wholly ruined.

Balamir sigh'd at this cruel order which absented him in this manner from *Hunnimonda*, but he obeyed it without murmuring, and having passed the *Danube*, he followed its Bank unto the River *Tebesir*, which he passed at *Tebesum*, with an Army compos'd of fifty thousand men, and still keeping along the Banks of that River, he cross'd the Country of the *Jaziges*, arriv'd at the foot of the *Carpathian* Mountains, and entred by them into *Sarmatia*, contrary to the expectation of his Enemies, who did not believe he would fall upon them on that side. He got thither just at the time that Prince *Mundisc* departed, who not able to recover his health in an air contrary to him, had caus'd himself to be in a Litter carried into *Dacia*; the Forces which he had left, and who knew the valour of *Balamir*, by the renown of it already publish'd through all the world, came to meet him with infinite joy, not doubting victory under so great a Captain; and *Balamir* being now in the head of them went to find the Enemies, whom their advantages, and the sickness of *Mundisc*; had rendred insolent, and made them soon know, that his party, with the change of their Captain, were to change their fortune.

I will not weary you my Lord, by this unnecessary recital of the second Expedition of *Balamir*, but succinctly pass it over, and only tell you, that in a year which he remain'd in *Sarmatia*, he not only regain'd what had been lost, but by a valour and conduct which constrain'd Fortune to declare it self wholly for him, he defeated his Enemies in more than twenty Battels, took from them thirteen or foutreen Cities, and finally, utterly ruined them, by the gaining of two great Battels, no less bloody than those he had fought in *Mesia*, and by which, in fine, he reduc'd all *Sarmatia* into the same estate wherein he had left *Mesia*; and by the same sweetnesses which accompanied his Victories, and in which he went beyond the orders of the King, he produc'd the same effect among the *Sarmatians*, as he had done among the *Mesians*.

I remember that at this time, having receiv'd a Letter from the Princess *Hunnimonda*, by which she testified the joy she had conceiv'd for his great Victories, advancing his glory in terms very obliging, he writ to her in these words.

Prince *Balamir* to the Princess *Hunnimonda*.

I should wrong my self, should I complain of Fortune, after those favours she hath heaped on me in war: but I cannot boast of her in my love; for whatsoever pleasure and delight I may have to acquire glory, I can have no less grief to live eternally absent from what I love. Believe then, if you please, that I envy much more the happiness of those persons which are near you, than they can envy the honour of some actions sufficiently glorious; and that it would possibly be less delightful to me to gain Battels, than to see you dayly.

He had however soon after that felicity which he desired with so much ardour, for the King knowing there was nothing more to be done in *Sarmatia*, commanded him to return to Court, where after three years absence, and actions which had throughout all the world given him a name equal to that of the greatest men, he was impatiently expected. He obeyed this command with all the joy which his love could in this occasion inspire him with, and having given necessary orders to his Army, he, with his Equipage, took the nearest way, and by the Mountains which border on the Country of the *Agatirses*, entring into that *Dacia* which is called the *Mediterranean*, he followed the course of the River *Rabon*, or *Marisus*, unto *Alba Julia*, where the King at present kept his Court.

After an absence so glorious, he was admirably well receiv'd, both by the King, and Queen,

Queen, and the whole Court, of which by reason of his great and noble Actions he was the whole delight, so that the King had without doubt causted to be prepar'd for such the honours due to such great actions, if he had not feared to give greater cause of envy to Prince *Mundfic*, in whom the ill success of his Voyage had begot no small malice, and melancholly: He treated him however as much as his paternal dignity could permit, like a person extraordinary: And the Queen regarding him with thoughts more tender than she had all her life had for him, shewed him all those endearments he could hope from her affection. The Princess *Theodolinda* his Siller, who now appeared in an admirable beauty, and truly was in a condition to dispute with all other Beauties, welcom'd him with all the demonstrations of the strongest and tenderest affection: But Prince *Mundfic* received him very coldly, though he embraced him, and was constrain'd to some violence to hinder his countenance from expressing a discontent: *Balamir* perceiv'd it with infinite sorrow, but judging that his discontentment came from his envy of the happy success he had had in a war, and in a Country where he had been a little unfortunate, he hoped he might in this satisfy him, by a carriage full of that respect he ought to his elder Brother who might one day be his King.

But when after he had paid his first duty to the Royal House, he went to visit the Queen of the *Goths*, and having saluted that Queen it was permitted him to see the so much desired *Hunnimonda*, whose Effigies he had still preserv'd in his Soul, he found himself at the sight of her in a surprisal, for which he was not prepar'd; and though the Queen his Mother and many other persons had several times writ to him of the increase of her beauty, it was difficult for him to imagine it what he found it. In effect, the change was so extraordinary, that the sight alone could make it be apprehended; and this prodigious Beauty being arriv'd to its perfection, both for Stature and all other advantages, which it could not have gain'd at the time of *Balamir*'s departure, appeared to the lost Prince like something Supernatural and Divine, so that the astonishment he received tyed his tongue, and held him a long time in a profound Contemplation, which permitted him not to do any thing but behold her.

The fair Princess saluted him with a civility in which if he had been less surpris'd, he might well have observ'd the joy she had to receive him; and seeing that he still remained fix'd to an admiration, by beholding her without speaking a word to her: *What look you for my Lord?* said she, *Do you no longer know Hunnimonda?* *I have too well engraven her in my memory,* replied my Prince in the end, *to be able to forget her; but though I expected wonders which appeared not to me formerly, I confess to you I see things which have prevented my very imagination.* *I have possibly believed it since your departure,* replied the Princess, *and there was some appearance it ought to happen, but there is yet less difference from what Hunnimonda at that time was, and what she now is, than there is between the young Prince Balamir, and a great Hero, who already Eclipses the glory of the greatest men in the world.* *I would to God,* said the Prince, *that there were as much truth in what you say of me, as there is in what I observe of you, and the Gods are my witnesses, that I do wish it much rather out of the hopes to merit your esteem, than out of a desire to eclipse the glory of other men.* *As before these great Actions which have rendred you such as you are,* replied *Hunnimonda*, *I already infinitely esteem'd you, you ought to believe that by this increase of your glory, my thoughts cannot be changed but to your advantage.*

The Prince was about to reply, when the Queen of the *Goths* not being satished with the first reception she had made him, came again to welcome him, and knowing well that this was neither suspected nor troublesome, mixed a long time in their conversation, which pass'd, as is ordinary in these entertainments, in demands they mutually made of what happen'd to each other since their separation, though the Prince at every moment interrupted all other discourse, to enlarge on that which appeared to him of the beauty of *Hunnimonda*. In fine the Queen again left them alone with an entire liberty to entertain each other, and the Prince having employ'd a part of the time in recounting to the Princess that which his absence had made him suffer, and given her assurance of a fidelity which he ought, and would preserve her to his Tomb, had the satisfaction to understand from her fair lips all that he could desire of most obliging, and to know that he was truly loved as much as he could hope from a virtue like that of *Hunnimonda*.

He departed that Evening from her full of joy which he could not dissemble, and as hitherto both in Love and War, all things had been favourable to him, the reflection he made of the happiness he received both in the one and the other, made him pass the night in the most delightful manner possible. But on the morrow returning to visit the Princess *Hunnimonda*, so soon as he believ'd he might see her, he had been there but a very small while,

but he beheld Prince *Mundific* enter, who looked upon him with a coldness yet greater than that of the preceding day, and who being seated near the Princess, departed not the rest of that day, testifying no less trouble to enjoy her company, than she might have to suffer his. On the morrow the same thing happened again, as it did many others after, in which he observed in the Prince his Brother, an impression equal to his, and in the end knew by too many marks, that he was enamour'd of *Hunnimonda*.

This knowledge afflicted him with a mortal grief, and as amongst all men there could not be found a Rival more formidable to him, than a Prince to whom he owed all things, and a Prince who ought to be his King, if his valour gave him not other Crowns than those now appertained to his House, he regarded this misfortune as the greatest, and most terrible that could ever befall him. He complained to Heaven, accused his fortune, examined all things in it, but in the end knew not how to support it, the more he made reflection on it, the more dangerous he found it, but in what manner soever he regarded it, he found for him neither remedy nor consolation. *O Gods* (cryed he walking in his Closet, where he had confin'd himself, debarring all persons from the sight of him) *O Gods! must it be that I should so miserably fall into that sole snare of misfortune, which can ruine my happiness and the whole repose of my life? Ah Hunnimonda, how great and dangerous a proof must the affection you have for me be put to, if it be not already so? And when I might hope thee sufficiently generous to prefer the Love of Balamir before the Crown of Mundific, I have reason to fear that the Queen thy Mother will not persevere in her first thoughts, but that to see her Daughter in a place will no more permit her to regret the fortune of her House, she will let her self be blinded by the fortune of Mundific. What reason hast thou, (said he again reproving himself,) to suspect of such baseness a Princess in whom thou hast known so much virtue, and of whom thou hast received so many marks of a true esteem, and sincere affection? Ah! I have but too much,* added he, *And when this change should come to pass in the Spirit of a Princess, and a Mother interested in the fortune of her Daughter, I cannot condemn it. I ought not perhaps my self to desire, if I truly love Hunnimonda, that to fix her self to the fortune of Balamir, she should refuse that which presents it self for her, in the love of Mundific, and to act both as a disinterested Lover, and a true one. I ought to counsel her to turn her affections towards Mundific, who may make her one of the greatest Queens of the world, and abandon Balamir, who hath nothing but love and hopes to offer her. I might be perhaps capable to do it, (pursued he some minutes after) if I believed Hunnimonda would be more happy in Mundific, than in Balamir: but Crowns do not often Crown felicity, and I despair not one day to give her one, either by the goodness of the King who hath many at his disposal, or by the assistance of a Sword which may conquer one, since it knows so well how to preserve one: I will not then give her this proof of a disinterested love, I will not, nor ought I, nor can I, but I will sooner abandon my life to the unjust and cruel Brother, than those just pretensions I have to the heart of Hunnimonda. He ought rather to renounce it, if he hath any knowledge of virtue, he who hath scarce begun to sigh for her, and if he doth it not, I will reproach him of his inhumanity and ingratitude, I will give him my blood if he pleases, but I will not yield to him Hunnimonda.*

He entertained and tormented himself in this manner the rest of that day, during which he would not be seen by any person; and on the morrow taking his time to see *Hunnimonda* before *Mundific*, by reason of the liberty he had at all hours to visit her, he went to her, and found her in her Closet, in the best estate he could desire to entertain her: He seated himself by her as he was accustomed, but he had scarce the power to speak a word to her, and whilst she demanded of him why he had passed the preceding day without visiting her, instead of answering her he contented himself to behold her with a countenance which spoke what he felt better than words could do. The Princess soon doubted the truth, but she would understand it from his own mouth, and not her self pronounce it, and therefore prayed him with infinite sweetness to tell her the cause of the trouble she observed in his countenance, and to let her understand whethet it were not the same had hindered him the day before from visiting her.

The Prince in the end preventing with some sighs what he had to say, *I came not hither Yesterday, said he, because Mundific spent the whole day with you, and I am troubled or rather mortally afflicted doubting lest he should be amorous of you. I know not, said the Princess, if he be enamoured of me, but it is most true, that he every day tells me he is, and gives me all those proofs men most passionately affected can. I would not tell you this at your arrival, believing you would too soon have the knowledge of it, nor advertise you of it during your absence, hoping that reason, or the little satisfaction he received, might vanquish his passion before you could have the sorrow to know it. Ah Madam, cryed the Prince with a great sigh, I am lost: And repeating again these words without adding more, he remain'd in the Chair whercin he was seated in the posture of a man overwhelm'd with a mortal grief.* The

The Princess beholding him with an eye which made him well know the part she took in his grief, and rehearsing those words he had said with a tone which appeared a little severe: *You are lost, said he, and why are you lost? Or what do you fear if it should be true that Mundific bore love to me? I fear all things,* replied the afflicted Prince, *nor is there any thing I ought not to fear from this terrible misfortune; would to God that my death might have prevented it, or that some Sarmatian Lance had pierced my heart before I had had the knowledge of it. I know not,* replied the Princess, *whether you give me not a just cause to complain, or if I ought to attribute it to the little knowledge you have of me, or the less you have of your self. There is nothing in your person nor mine can make me fear,* said the Prince, *but there are things in our fortunes, which foretel me the ruine of mine, and possibly the intire loss of all my hopes. I did indeed believe,* replied *Hunnimonda,* *that the love of Mundific might displease you, and cross us; but I never believed it could lose or ruine you as you say; nor ought you your self to believe it, if you will not do me an injury: For his person, you need not in my judgment fear that I should prefer it before yours, and for the advantages his fortune may have over yours, if you have believed that I did ever value them, know Balamir that you have never well known me.* “I know you sufficiently well, said the Prince, never to suspect you, of any thought unworthy the greatness of your Soul, and I know that the Crowns which Mundific may possess, are too much below your courage, to make me fear your preferring them to the virtue and fidelity of my love; but alas! who can assure, that the persons whose thoughts rule yours will to the end persevere in the same generosity? Or who can likewise assure me, that I ought to desire it? Or that if I truly love you, for the love of your self, that I ought to prefer my fortune to that you will possibly find in Mundific. Will you then yield me to Mundific, (said the Princess, beholding him with a discontented aspect) Or can you have so great a respect for your elder Brother?” “I will rather yield him my life, replied my Prince, and whatever respect I owe him in other things, in this, he shall rather have my Blood, to the last drop, than oblige me to the least complacence for his satisfaction. I know likewise, though he be my elder Brother, how to dispute with him my just pretences till death, and he will possibly find in my courage, more difficulty than he hath yet proved; but I doubt whether I ought oppose my self to your advantages, if Crowns can make you find any against love, or whether I ought to desire, you should give your self to Balamir, if you might be more happy, or at least more high, in the Fortune and Dignity of Mundific. This is to love generously, (replied the Princess very coldly) but I am not so much engaged to you, as you persuade your self, and I declare it to you, since you oblige me to it by this discourse, that in this you do nothing for me, and though I should never be yours, I will never be Mundific’s.” “But if the Queen your Mother commands you to espouse him, said Balamir, as it may be feared, from a Princess who will prefer your establishment before all other considerations, would you disobey her? You know not the Queen my Mother, replied *Hunnimonda,* nor know you yet the greatness, and constancy of her Soul, she hath once commanded me to love, and without her command you had not possibly obtain’d all that was owing to your merit, I am assured, that she will never act a contradiction, nay so strong an assurance have I of it, that I dare this day assure you, since you constrain me, that if I be not to you, I will never be to any.

These words were so sweet to the enamoured Balamir, that all the grief with which his Soul was oppressed, gave place to the alteration which they caus’d; and losing the remembrance of all things else, he at the same time fell at the knees of the Princess, and held them a long time embraced, whatever endeavours she us’d to lift him up; she in the end oblig’d him to it by all her authority, and the Prince returning to his place, having kissed that hand which she with some little force stretched out to him; *After the assurance which you give me,* said he, *I will defend my fortune, both against Mundific, and against all the world; and though in his love I foresee great crosses for me, and great obstructions to my felicity, I will overcome all by your assistance, nor shall my courage abandon me, if you forsake me not.* “No Balamir, said the Princess, to give you this final consolation, I will never during my life forsake you, nor will I have you to be obliged to me, that I prefer you before Mundific. I will likewise tell you with truth, that the knowledge I have had of his thoughts, hath not been more pleasing to me than to you, and I had possibly let him know it, if I had been to act with a man, who believes he ought one day to be Master of our fortune, as with another person. She here gave him an account of a part of what had passed between her and Prince Mundific, and easily made him know, that it was no hopes she had given him made him obstinate in his love.

They were in these terms when the Queen of the Goths entered into the Closet, and having

ving understood the cause of *Balamir's* displeasure, which she had before likewise suspected, she confirm'd what the Princess her Daughter had said, in such terms, as made him believe he need fear nothing on her side. He departed soon after, fearing to see *Mundisic*, and choosing rather to pass some hours without the sight of *Hunnimonda*, than enjoy it in the presence of such a Rival. Departing from the Queen of the *Goths*, he went to the Queen his Mother, who was allarm'd, not having for two days seen him, and at what she had heard speak of his sadness, by those who had seen him, and particularly by my self, who had better observ'd than all others, having more access to his person, and having found her at liberty to hearken to the complaints he had to make, *Ab Madam*, said he, *is it thus that you have remembered the protection you so much promised me? and whilst I fight for the defence of Crowns which ought one day appertain to Mundisic, cannot I hope that you will defend me against his cruelty, which would deprive me of Hunnimonda? I dispute nothing with him of the Heritage of our Fathers, but would willingly defend it for him against all enemies which would trouble his possession, so that he would leave me Hunnimonda, over whom he hath no right, and over whom no advantages of Birth can give him any. Against any other but him, I should know how to defend mine, other ways than by words and complaints; nor is there possibly a man among the greatest of men, who would not look upon it as an enterprise sufficiently daring, to deprive Balamir of his Mistress; but he is my elder Brother, I have not forgot what I owe him, and I will pay it him, so long as reason shall remain Mistress of my soul.*

To these words he added many others, which he pronounc'd with a behaviour wholly passionate, and which the Queen hearkened to with great patience, and no less signs of her displeasure, and breaking silence so soon as he had done speaking, *When I promised you my assistance in the love you bear to Hunnimonda, I thought it had been with the Queen her Mother, and with the King your Father, that I was to do that service for you, and possibly you know well, that I have not forgot it, and that to encline the Queen of the Goths to your interest, and make the King agree to your design, I have not been useles to you; but as for Mundisic, I confess to you, I did not think I had any kindness to desire for you of him, nor that precaution was to be taken against him, and if he be truly enamoured of Hunnimonda, as by many great appearances he makes me believe, it must be from another power than mine, that you must seek assistance; you know his spirit fierce and impatient, and you know, that the King himself can with difficulty govern it.*

She was about to say more, when the King entred the Closet, and finding her in this particular dispute, he divin'd the cause, by the marks he observed in the countenance of *Balamir*. The knowledge he had of the love of *Mundisic* had displeas'd him, though he had not yet entirely resolv'd the Marriage of *Balamir* and *Hunnimonda*, and having as well other designs for him, as truly considering the satisfaction of such a Son as *Balamir*, he endeavour'd to withdraw his Brother from that affection, however without using his authority, knowing well, that if he began to make use of it, he should be forc'd to come to extremities, against a spirit that would not easily brook them. The Queen conceal'd not those complaints which *Balamir* had made, nor made the any difficulty to represent to him, the just cause he had, and the King having hearken'd to her discourse, with an anger easily observable in his face, having a long time walked without speaking, *This is not the first day*, said he, *that the disposition of Mundisic has begun to give me trouble, and I doubt not but it may give me more, if age and reason do not soften and humble it; I approve not his proceeding, and I shall without doubt make him know it.* 'Tis not (said he, turning himself towards *Balamir*, after he had yet for some time walked without speaking) *that this adventure ought to cause in your spirit, all the effects which we observe, or that a Prince, who by so great beginnings may aspire to all things in the world, should bound all his thoughts and all his fortune on the possession of Hunnimonda. Hunnimonda is a Princess truly worthy the affections of a great Prince, but such a man as Balamir should have an ambition equal to his valour, and find his consolations in those hopes, which his great courage should create in him should he lose Hunnimonda.* "Ah my Lord, (said *Balamir* to the King) be pleas'd to believe, that there is nothing in the world capable to comfort me after the loss of *Hunnimonda*, nor can I, if I lose her, regard the Empire of the whole world were it offer'd me. I have courage my Lord, and I have possibly some valour, nor want I ambition, but these qualities are not only firmly compatible with my love, but I may say with truth, that nothing is so powerful to rouze up my ambition, or spur me forward to seek occasions of Glory, as the love of *Hunnimonda*. It is by your advice my Lord, or at least by your License, that she hath rendred her self Mistress of my heart, and if *Mundisic* wil snatch her away, he need but tear my heart from my breast, and facilitate by

"my

“my death, the possession of a happiness he would unjustly rob me of. *I foresee*, said the King, *that this love will beget some strange affairs, but though reason be on your side, and that you may hope that I will not oppose you, there is a respect you must pay to Mundisc, and you know well, that there are few things with which he can dispense as to what you owe him.* “I know it my Lord, replied the Prince, nor do I believe he can complain to have ever found me wanting, he shall still see me act with him with all that respect he can desire, and if he demand from my respect and my duty but things that are possible, he shall be satisfied from me, as soon as from the meanest of your Subjects; but for my love, and those hopes which are a thousand times dearer to me than my life, I will preserve them my Lord, and will defend them till death. “Go, said the King, and settle your mind, remembering that the greatest Conquerours, of whose number you may, if you will, be, have not abandoned themselves to love as you do. I shall do both what I can, and what I ought to do for your repose; in the mean time you know how you ought to live with your elder Brother, and what you ought to do, not to expose me to those displeasures this division may cause. Concluding these words he departed from the Closet, and led the Prince with him, without giving him any probability to judge, whether he ought to hope any thing from his assistance, or not.

On the morrow, by what was afterwards understood, the King called Mundisc into the Palace Gardens, where he walked, and having made several turns in the Alley with him, talking of other things than the affairs of *Balamir*, he insensibly let his discourse fall upon the Queen of the *Goths*, and the Princess her Daughter, and having observed that on this matter he spoke with much alteration, *I know not*, said he, *whether I ought in the end permit my self to be led with the general opinion, and believe with the whole Court, that you are enamoured of Hunnimonda; there are sufficient appearances not to doubt it, but not sufficient to perswade me, if I understand it not from your own mouth.*

The Prince blush'd at this discourse of the King's, but by his natural boldness recovering himself very readily, *I know not*, my Lord, said he, *why your Majesty should so difficultly believe any one amorous of Hunnimonda, for after having seen her, as you daily do, in my opinion there is much more reason to wonder, that I should hitherto have seen Hunnimonda, and not become enamoured of her.* “I confess, (said the King, not a little surpris'd at this presumptuous answer) that the beauty of *Hunnimonda* is great enough to beget an infinite love, without reason to be astonished at it, but you have so great and powerful reasons to defend your self against this love, as may well make me believe you would not easily yield to it. *You know my Lord*, said the Prince, *that love is not always the effect of our will, and that our souls permit this passion to vanquish them with a violence, against which, reason is not always capable to defend us; and when my Lord I gave any consent to it, I do not yet well know the reasons that may hinder me from loving Hunnimonda.* “There are some, said the King, which you cannot be ignorant of, and since that you know well I had other designs for you, than to let you espouse *Hunnimonda*, and that *Hunnimonda* though of a Birth not inferiour to yours, yet is endowed with a virtue that will not permit her to suffer the love of a man, whom she hopes not to espouse; this had, in my opinion, been sufficient to divert your thoughts. *As my Lord*, (said Mundisc, hindring him from continuing his discourse) *I am much obliged to your goodness, for what it makes you speak in my favour, and since you confess that Hunnimonda is neither for Birth nor Virtue unworthy of me, in my judgment the love I bear her is sufficiently justified.* “It would be without doubt, replied the King, nor indeed had it any need of justification, if my intentions were conformable to it; but besides that they are contrary, you know the love and the engagement of *Balamir*, and you ought to have so much value for a Brother, and such a Brother as *Balamir*, as not to trouble his repose, whilst he fights for ours, nor take from him, what you ought to defend for him against all other men who should have such thoughts. *As!* for the interest of *Balamir*, (replied the Prince with a hasty vehemency) *I did not believe, my Lord, that it was that you would alledge; and if the repose of one of us be considerable to your goodness, I should believe that among your Sons, he who has the honour to be your eldest, should have the advantage.* “You should have it without doubt, answered the King, if you had begun to love at the same time, you know well nothing is disputed you; but after five years of a love which I have suffered, and which you your self have approved, in my opinion a Brother like *Balamir* ought not to have cause to fear his ruine from his Brother, though his elder. *What you say, my Lord, were just*, replied Mundisc, *if the Law were equal between Balamir and me, but the difference which the order of our Birth hath made, leaves no concurrence between us; and surely my Lord, if you have any design to marry Hunnimonda to one of your children, it should*

in all appearance be with no other thought than to restore that Crown to her of which you depriv'd her Father: and I believe not Sir, that you have any design to separate it from your Dominions, and give it to any other than him who ought to succeed you. "This is possibly a thing, replied the King, of which I am not yet determin'd, and concerning which there is without doubt no necessity that I explain my self at present to you; but to convince you of that error I see you in, I will tell you, that holding from my Sword and not by inheritance from my Fathers, that Land I have conquered from the *Goths*, and a part likewise of those others which are under my obedience, I have a right to dispose of them according to my will, and when I should give to *Balamir* and *Hunnimonda* what once appertained to *Atharic* you would in my opinion have in the possession of *Dacia*, *Mesia*, and *Sarmatia*, so fair a Monarchy, that you would have but little reason to complain of your fortune. Well my Lord, said the Prince very fiercely, dispose of your Provinces and Dominions by the right you have over them, against which I neither ought nor will oppose myself, but for a Soul I have received from Heaven, and submitted to Love, leave it in the disposition of Heaven and of Love, and permit that it yield not to other Empire than theirs. I owe you all things my Lord, and I will pay that duty until death: but *Balamir* owes me something, and if he forget to render it, think it not ill that I make him remember it. These words wanted but little to transport the King to a passion, but being before well prepar'd, knowing the obstinate Spirit of *Mundisic*, and fearing some dire effect if he should break into a fury against him, he moderated himself with infinite prudence, and returning towards the company he had left, contented himself to tell him that he should be wise, and that if he departed from his duty, he should know how to make him return to it.

In the mean time *Balamir* visited *Hunnimonda*, as he had been accustomed though he almost every day found *Mundisic* with her, who cast upon him but an ill eye and scarce at all spoke to him. In these visits they reciprocally disturbed each other, for the one not willing to speak before the other, they were both silent of what they felt. *Mundisic* acted very fiercely with *Balamir*, and *Balamir* though much displeas'd at his proceedings, still rendred him the respect he thought he owed him, and comforted himself for the discontent he received at his rivalship, with the assurance he had of being beloved; besides he observed that in all those constrained conversations they had together, all the favourable looks were his, and nothing but civility used towards *Mundisic*. The Princess *Hunnimonda* likewise to exempt her self from the trouble of daily receiving him, so soon as she could went to wait either on the Queen of the *Huns* or the Princess *Theodolinda*, with whom she had contracted a very strong friendship, and who standing for the interests of *Balamir*, much more than those of *Mundisic*, though she durst not openly testify it, rendred him willingly all the good offices he could desire, and facilitated as much as possible, the satisfaction of *Balamir*. He was highly grateful to the affection of his Sister, and certainly that Princess was very worthy of his, for if *Hunnimonda* had not been in our Court, we might well have believed that there was nothing in the world more fair nor more amiable than *Theodolinda*.

Hunnimonda was one day with her, and likewise the two Princes with many Ladies and other persons the most qualified of the Court, when *Mundisic* who never knew Justice, supporting impatiently the advantage which *Balamir* had over him in the heart of *Hunnimonda*, and not able to dissemble the discontent he had, though he knew well he had no reason on his side finding himself near *Hunnimonda*, and seeing that *Balamir* entertain'd *Theodolinda* on the other side, and the other persons out of respect kept a distance, having drawn his Chair nearer to that of *Hunnimonda*, than before it was, that he might be understood by her alone, Shall I be always miserable? said he, and will not you in the end consider that it is not just, that in the person of two Brothers fortune should make one the most happy, and the other the most wretched of all men? For in sum, I am not inferiour to *Balamir*, neither in nobleness of blood nor greatness of courage, and our Birth hath put a difference between us that merits some consideration: I am likewise assured that he hath not more love for you than my self, and yet in the mean time it is but too true, that he is dearly loved by you, and that I cannot touch your heart with the least thought of good will. Ah my Lord, replied the Princess *Hunnimonda*, make not this judgement of me, but believe if you please, that though I esteem Prince *Balamir* as I ought, the esteem I have for him makes me not lose the respect I have for you. You owe no respect to any person, replied *Mundisic*, but are of a birth and merit worthy to receive it from all the earth; but you owe me possibly a little affection, and it is possibly too much against reason that you so cruelly make a younger Brother triumph over the fortune of his elder. Your fortune, replied the Princess, is not fixed to those thoughts that *Hunnimonda* may have for you, and these I have for the Prince your Brother, and with which you reproach me, have for many years

years been inspired into me, and possibly committed by persons whom I ought to obey. If I believed, added the Prince, that only obedience had procured them, I should find in that belief an infinite consolation, and I could with no small appearance hope for orders as favourable for me, as the first have been for Balamir. I confess my Lord, replied the Princess, that without my inclinations agreed with my duty, and they have without difficulty permitted me to do what I could not have done, had they not been conformable, but the orders I have receiv'd cannot be revok'd, nor would your self approve that contradiction. If I have nothing more difficult to do, said the Prince, than to gain to my party those persons from whom you receive them, I do not despair of my happiness, nor do I believe the Queen your Mother to be so great an Enemy to her own advantage or to yours, if you will permit me to use that term, as to prefer a subject to his Sovereign. That quality of Subject, replied the Princess, renders not the Prince your Brother despicable to those that know him, and there are few Sovereigns in the world to be preferred before a Subject like Balamir. All the world, added the Prince, have not possibly thoughts like to yours, but that is my misery, and it would be much more advantageous to me, that those of all the earth were contrary to me, and yours less favourable to my Rival. Ah my Lord, said the Princess, give not that title to the Prince your Brother, and be pleas'd to remember that after so many years that he hath been the same to me he is to day, you have never call'd him Rival. He was not so at that time, replied Mundisic, but he is at present, and I should chuse rather that he had been so all his life, so he were not so to day. He is however, added the Princess, but what he hath always been, nor see I any person that can accuse him of having changed; I believe likewise that if he had seen you engag'd in any affection, he would rather have suffer'd death, than any thought to trouble it, and rather have attempted all other enterprises, than that of becoming your Rival. Well Madam, said the Prince, it is I then that am his, and who by my misfortune or his shall be so until death, if the remembrance of his duty make him not cease to be mine.

He had done speaking these words when the Princess Theodolinda came within the rail, at the importunity of Balamir who suffer'd with infinite impatience the particular entertainment between Mundisic and Hunnimonda, and who not able to remain longer distant came presently after: Mundisic saw him approach with infinite despite, nor could he entirely contain himself, and though at that time he spoke little to him, beholding him with asierce countenance, You come to the purpose, said he, to understand what I am speaking to the Princess of your happiness, and she can hardly disown you to be the happiest person in the World. It must be believed if she say it, replied Balamir, for there is certainly no person can speak of my happiness or misery with so much knowledge as she. All those who can say the same thing, replied Mundisic, are not for that more happy, and few persons are there in the world who may not envy your condition. We are not always to judge by appearances, answered the Prince, the greatest felicity may sometimes be troubled with that displeasure may hinder the enjoying it. It would be too much, (said Mundisic with a sigh full of pride) if Fortune were equally favourable to you in all things, you are too happy in War, to desire with reason the same happiness in Love. It is not always happiness, (replied Balamir very fiercely) which governs success, either in War, or Love: for I have always believed merit might bear its part; however, the good Fortune that I have had in War, hath redounded more to others advantage than my own, but that which I shall have in Love, will be so much more sweet, because it will be entirely mine. 'Tis enough advantage you have gain'd in War, said Mundisic, to have done your duty, and acquired glory, but I know not in Love, whether you will accord so well, either to the one, or the other, as to have the same success.

Balamir had so much difficulty to command his passions under the injustice he suffer'd that there was no small danger, lest he should reply to Mundisic, in another manner than he had done, in a time wherein his spirit had been more free, and the Princess Hunnimonda, who feared it, and would hinder it, having made a sign to him to be silent, began to speak of other things with the Princess Theodolinda, who had the same fear and the same intention, and they acted so well together that they hindred the continuation of that discourse. They had oftentimes the like or little different in which Mundisic always treated the Prince his Brother with infinite pride, and Balamir still suffer'd it with a moderation and wisdom admir'd by all the Court, and told his friends that he would suffer all things only the loss of Hunnimonda.

In the mean time that fair Princess was lively afflicted at this effect of her beauty, fearing continually those disorders she might cause between the two Brothers, which with an admirable prudence, she by her good conduct diverted as much as possible. The trouble she had conceiv'd might easily be observ'd on her visage, and one day Prince Balamir finding himself alone with her, and having demand'd with great trouble of mind, the cause of her sadness; "Do you wonder to see me sad? said she, knowing that I have as much reason to

“be so as any person in the World?” “I know that you have great reason, *replied the Prince*, and the misfortunes of your House have been so important, as to preserve a long time your remembrance, but in my opinion you have by the greatness of your courage in part comforted your self for them, nor have I ever seen you in that condition wherein you have for some days past appeared. “It is true, *replied the Princess*, that I am comforted for our ancient misfortunes, and after the assistance of Heaven, I can say it is from you I have received my greatest consolation: but it is difficult for me to receive any against those new misfortunes to which I see my self exposed, or to regard without mortal grief the danger in which I am, to cause troubles in your house, and disorders among those Brothers whom no other interest had possibly disunited. “Ah Madam, *said the Prince*, how good are you thus to interest your self in the repose of a House hath ruin’d yours, and which merits so little the sorrow you testify for it?” “We live in a Religion, *replied Hunnimonda*, which teacheth us to pardon injuries easily, and though it might not have made me forget those we have received from our Enemies, it would be difficult for me to hate a House from whence you are descended, or see my self on the point to beget a War in it, without being overwhelmed with grief. “You ought to pardon this effect for its cause sake, *said Balamir*, nor ought you to be ill satisfied to have received from Heaven a beauty can overturn Empires, and act yet greater disorders; yours will not be the first that hath caused such things in the world, and if for any beauty we may with justice take Arms, it is without doubt—“Seek, (*said the Princess interrupting him*) Seek for me some better consolation, my beauty is very ordinary, but whatever it be I shall heartily hate it if I receive not from it better offices, and instead of showing it longer in a Court where it produces not but such ill effects, I will carry it to a retirement where it shall be conceal’d for ever from the sight of all men. “Yes from all others if you will, *said the Prince*, but from Balamir you shall with difficulty conceal it, into whatever place of the World you retire, and you may believe my Princess, that there is no place so secret, as to rob you of his knowledge. “I shall difficultly resolve my self to fly from you, *said the Princess*, but if I am obliged to it by misfortune, and by the esteem I ought to have for you, I shall find those retreats where it will be difficult for you to discover me. “It would be much more facile, and it will be much less cruel, *replied Balamir*, to pierce my heart with a mortal dagger: for with whatever specious pretext you would cover your cruelty, the death you would make me suffer by forsaking me, would be less pardonable by Heaven than that you may give me by ordinary ways. But my Princess, (*added he beholding her with a passionate behaviour*) if it be true that you love me, what reason can hinder you from diverting those misfortunes you fear by an infallible remedy; and oppose an invincible obstruction to the pretences of *Mundisic* by espousing Balamir? “I would consent to it with all my heart, *said the Princess*, if the King your Father and the Queen my Mother should so order it, but without their consent I believe you your self would not counsel me to it. “I will never counsel you any thing, *replied Balamir*, which may give you the least offence, whatever interest I may have in it; but I believe it will not be impossible to obtain from our parents their consent for my happiness: the Queen your Mother hath sufficiently testified she will not be contrary to it, and the King’s so open approving my design makes me believe he hath no aversion to it. “I am of your opinion, *said Hunnimonda*, but I judge that though the King should have this intention, fear to provoke the Spirit of *Mundisic*, and transport him to some violent resolution, would make him delay the accomplishment, and since neither you nor I are any thing far gone in age, I believe it would not be to the purpose to press it. “I will obey you all my life, *replied my Prince*, but I think there is no danger in desiring the Queen my Mother to present my intentions if you permit it. *Hunnimonda* consented to what *Balamir* desired, and few days after he in effect found what she had said was true, and the Queen having entertained the King on this matter, reported to him that she doubted not but he would consent to his marriage with *Hunnimonda*, but that the time was not yet come, that he must attend till he had either made *Mundisic* change his design, to effect which he would employ all his Authority, or that he had put his affairs in an estate not to fear any disgust, which considering the humour he was of might cause great troubles.

Thus things remain’d for some time, but in the end *Mundisic* grew perplexed at his condition, not contenting himself to find only civility whilst all the affection was for *Balamir*, The fear he had to displease the King, though he had without doubt much less than he ought to have had, hindred his fury for some days breaking forth, but in the end he resolved to pass by all things and not suffer longer a competitorship so disadvantageous to him, in a place wherein he believed all things his due. Resolved on this design going one day to visit the Princess

Princess *Hunnimonda*, he found *Balamir*, who came thence, and having stopp'd him (as he pass'd a great Hall belonging to the Apartment of the Queen of the *Goths*) to speak to him, before many persons, who followed both the one, and the other; *My brother*, said he, *I believe I have let you know what I have in my heart so sufficiently, that I need not further explain my self to you, but because I see that you are yet ignorant, or will be ignorant, I thought it good in fine to declare to you, that I love the Princess Hunnimonda. It is true, my Lord*, reply'd *Balamir*, *that I have been ignorant, and hitherto thought that I ought to be ignorant of what you now tell me, and though many great appearances might have perswaded me to it, I have still thought I should do you an injury in believing what you now by your own mouth let me understand. And for what reason*, said *Mundisic*, *have you believed to offend me, by believing me amorous of Hunnimonda? Because I ever believed*, reply'd the Prince, *that honour and virtue kept you from it, and that knowing the ancient engagement of a Brother, and a Brother not unworthy the honour he hath to be so, you would not be guilty of so much cruelty, as to trouble his fortune, and carry a death into his bosom. Everyone may deceive himself in his own opinion*, reply'd *Mundisic*, *and to draw you from your errour, I advertise you, that my telling you, that I love Hunnimonda, is to let you know, you ought no longer to think of her. That I should no longer think of her!* (said the Prince, stepping back.) *No*, (reply'd *Mundisic*, with a voice louder) *You ought no longer think of her. Ah my Lord*, (added *Balamir*, beholding him with a fierceness which he could not then dissemble) *I know what I owe you, but I know that this duty hath other limits than those you would give it: for when the King, who can do all things over me, should command me no longer to think of Hunnimonda, he must pardon me if I cannot obey him. He may act according to his own pleasure*, reply'd the proud *Mundisic*, *and I will possibly act according to mine, and make you remember, when time is, that you have for your Rival, a man who is to be your King.* “You may be my King, said *Balamir* “very boldly, but my Lord, you are not, and there is yet more difference between the “King and you, than between you and me. I hope likewise that you never shall be: for “by the Symptoms you already give of your manner of Government, you will not oblige “a Prince like *Balamir* to remain among your Subjects: Yes my Lord, I will depart from “your Dominions so soon as you begin to reign, but in quitting your Dominions, I will “not quit *Hunnimonds*.

These words stirr'd up all the choler of *Mundisic*, and having cast a look at the Prince which made his anger observable, *You forget the respect which you owe me*, (said he, carrying his hand to the guard of his Sword:) *but had I no other consideration than for you, I should know how to make you remember it.* All those who observ'd what he did, cast themselves before him, to prevent a greater disorder, and Prince *Balamir* recoyling two or three paces, and beholding him in a disdainful manner; *You threaten me my Lord*, said he, *but I hope, that the injury I suffer, will not dishonour me among men, but that it will be believed, that none else but his Brother durst threaten Balamir.* Finishing these words, he retired, not like a man capable to fear a power exalted above him, but like a man, who by his virtue made his just resentments submit to the knowledge of his duty.

This disorder presently caus'd all that noise in the Court which in all probability it was like to do, by reason of the importance of the persons; and almost all persons in the Court, ran whither they were call'd, either by their own inclination, or other considerations. Those who may with reason be call'd Courtiers, that is, whose fortune is more considerable than their virtue, flock'd about him whom their interest made look upon as who should be their King; but notwithstanding what might be feared from his power and distaste, there were found a great number of generous personages, who passing by these low and mean considerations, declar'd themselves for virtue, and ranged themselves with *Balamir*, especially the men of war, and those great Commanders and Officers who had fought under him in *Mesia* and *Sarmatia* embrac'd his party, without other considerations than for his person, and he had not possibly found his party weaker than his Brothers, out of the love his virtue had gain'd him in all hearts capable to esteem it, if he had not himself oppos'd it, out of fear to give too much cause of jealousy to *Mundisic*, by this knowledge of his great credit, and the displeasure of the King his Father, by reason of the ill effects it might produce; and for these reasons, instead of testifying joy for the zeal of his friends, he appear'd afflicted, and having made known to them the apprehensions he had of their good will, by great marks of his acknowledgment, he pray'd them to retire, to deprive the Prince his Brother of all cause of envy, and to preserve their generous friendship for an opportunity wherein he should be oblig'd to make use of it.

By this so wise, and so moderate carriage, he increas'd his power in the hearts of all virtuous

virtuous personages, and gave *Mundisc* a greater cause to fear, than if he had us'd other ways. The King understood what was pass'd, with a very sensible displeasure, and after having employ'd some hours to deliberate what he ought to do in this affair, he sent to seek both one and t'other; but because he would speak to them apart, before he saw them together, he commanded that *Balamir* should go into a Chamber near his Closet, whilst he spok'd to *Mundisc*. This proud Prince approaching the King, saw well upon his countenance the marks of his anger, yet he was not much astonish'd, but accosted him with as much assurance as if he had not feared any rebuke. The King was walking in his Closet when he entred, and after he was entred, having made three or four turns without speaking to him, he stopp'd on a sudden, and fiercely beholding him; "How *Mundisc*, said he, Do you already act the King in my Realms? And not content to be obstinate in a passion which I disapprove, do you imperiously forbid *Balamir* from thinking more on *Hunnimonda*? Do you treat him already like a Subject, and threaten him, by carrying your hand to the guard of your Sword? Believe you, that such a Brother as *Balamir*, to whom you owe the greatest part of those Dominions you already look upon as yours, doth merit this usage? Or think you, that without that advantage which your Birth gives you over him, he fears your Sword? He, who hath carried one by his side which hath rais'd him to a glory equal to that of the greatest men of the world.

The King stopp'd at these words, out of the abundance, rather than default of things he had to say, and the Prince breaking silence with a very confident behaviour, "I am very sorry, my Lord, said he, that what I have done hath offended you, but I did not believe I should incense you, by making *Balamir* know what he owes to his elder Brother. *Balamir* is not ignorant of it, replied the King, but you deceive your self in the opinion you have, and you ought to expect that the course of my life be ended, that you be seated in the Throne, and that *Balamir* remain among your Subjects, before you treat him like a Sovereign, as you now do, and when this change arrives in your condition, *Balamir* doth so much honour to the Blood from which he is descended, to merit a particular consideration, and by those things he hath already done, in an age so little advanced, you may judge of those he is capable to do for your repose, or the increase of your Dominion. I see well, my Lord, replied the impatient Prince, that you are dazzled with the glory of *Balamir*, and because Fortune hath been more favourable to him than others, you believe that all the valour of your blood is in him alone, that I shall not be able to defend the Dominions you shall leave me without the assistance of that Sword which renders him so glorious to the world. "I believe rather, (said the King, whom this discourse displeas'd) that you behold with envy the glory of your Brother, and that it is out of this vice, rather than any other passion, that you are resolv'd to cross and thwart him; however it be, I shall soon give you opportunity to shew whether your valour be superiour to his or no: This is that to which you ought to prepare your selves, instead of dedicating your lives, either the one, or the other, to love, and consider, that if the King my Father, and my self, had acted like you, your fortunes had at this day been very mean, though your Birth was illustrious. That love you condemn my Lord, replied *Mundisc*, cannot hinder me from seeking all occasions of glory, when they are offer'd me, and if Heaven be not contrary to me, I hope I shall have no cause to envy that of *Balamir*. But Sir, though I am not his King, and possibly never shall be (as he tells me) there is yet some difference between us, and without expecting a greater for the future, if one of us ought to yield *Hunnimonda* to his Rival, I may hope you will not command me to do it. "I would command it to *Balamir*, said the King, if it were my intention that you should espouse *Hunnimonda*, but though *Balamir* should yield her to you, your love would be nothing more advanced, since I shall never have that design while I live. I shall always have that to obey you, replied *Mundisc*, but my Lord, it must be only in things possible, and you know, that Love acknowledges no other power but its own, nor doth that of the Gods themselves extend over hearts. "I cannot hinder you from loving *Hunnimonda*, replied the King, but I will hinder you from espousing her, and I know her too highly born to approve any other design you can have for her. You are absolute Master, replied the Prince, and I have nothing to dispute against your Authority, but with forbidding me to espouse *Hunnimonda*, I believe not my Lord, that you have any design to give her to my Rival, for there is no extremity to which I should not be carry'd, if I see my self expos'd to this disturbance. "You know but too well, replied the King, that I would never consent to that Marriage, though there be possibly no reason to make me disapprove it; nor is it of the Marriage that the question ought to be made of either, my thoughts being far distant for both; but I will, that attending a farther knowledge of my intentions, not only, that you take care

“ care to return with *Balamir* into those terms wherein you were, but that you live with
 “ him as with a Brother not unworthy of your affection.

To these words the King added many others, by which he explain'd himself to the Prince with so much authority, that he had not the assurance to disobey him, though his countenance sufficiently made appear the reluctancy he had to love a man whom he no longer regarded as his Brother, but as a Rival more happy than he. The King afterwards caus'd *Balamir* to be called, and though he knew well he was not guilty, and though possibly his inclinations were favourable to him, dissembling his sentiments by a policy which kept him from whetting the spirit of *Mundisic*, he spoke to him fiercely, and blamed him with no less rigour for having been wanting in his Duty to his elder Brother. The Prince hearkened to him with infinite patience and submission, and breaking silence when he had done speaking; “ My Lord, *said he*, if the truth hath been reported to you, you will
 “ understand that it is Prince *Mundisic* who hath been wanting of respect to those persons to
 “ whom he owes it, and not *Balamir* to *Mundisic*; for besides that I never had any un-
 “ willingness to pay it him, I know well, nothing can keep me from it, and that I do my
 “ self honour by respecting my Prince. But my Lord, it is not concerning respect we
 “ dispute, it is *Hunnimonda*, whom *Mundisic*, with an injustice, and cruelty, never to be
 “ parallel'd, would deprive me of, and it is this, my Lord, I will not yield to him, if with
 “ *Hunnimonda* he take not away my life: I have possibly Sir, merited your protection in
 “ a love which you have not condemned, and in which I had not engaged my self, as I
 “ have done, if you had not favoured the beginning; if I have rendred my self unworthy
 “ of it, I am content to die, for to me there is no mean between death and the loss of
 “ *Hunnimonda*. “ You would do better to turn all your thoughts to glory, *said the King*,
 “ and by that valour which hath given you so fair a reputation, put your self in an estate
 “ never to fear the power of *Mundisic*: All things are in this design favourable to you, if
 “ you will attempt it, and I will give you those Arms which shall open you the way to a
 “ Dominion little different from that of your Brother. *When it shall please you to replace
 me at the head of your Army*, replied the Prince, *you shall see my Lord, that love renders me
 not incapable of what you judge favourably of me, and if you persevere in the design you
 have had against Pannonia, and if it please you to give me that employment, I hope that I shall
 yet add that fair Province to the Crown which Mundisic ought to possess, and I will add it with-
 out regret, if the time which I employ in fighting, makes me not lose a happiness for which I
 would with joy abandon to him all the Crowns of the Earth.* “ Whilst you travel for your
 “ glory, *said the King*, you need not fear as to your love, for giving you employment, I
 “ will not leave *Mundisic* with *Hunnimonda*; I would that he might, as well as you, make
 “ himself worthy the glory of his Ancestors, and have therefore other thoughts for him,
 “ than to fix him near *Hunnimonda*; in the mean time, my will is, that you live with him
 “ as you ought, and that by your wisdom, you shun those occasions which may carry him
 “ to the extremity he is but too incident to.

After these words, and many others, to which the Prince answered with infinite submission (though he remain'd still firm in his design, to dispute *Hunnimonda* till death) the King caus'd *Mundisic* to return, and having commanded him to embrace *Balamir*, he ordered *Balamir*, in his presence, to give him the respect was due to his elder Brother. *Balamir* did all things with a good grace, though he had too much reason to be more incens'd by reason of the injustice he suffered from a cruel Brother; but *Mundisic* acted not only with so much pride as displeas'd the King, but with all appearances of so great a constraint, that he gave but little reason to hope any good effect from this reconciliation.

In the mean time, the fair and wise *Hunnimonda* had been sensibly afflicted at the disorder between the two Princes, and knowing well, that she was the cause, she had some difficulty to find any consolation in the sorrow she received, *Balamir* found it on her face so soon as he again saw her, and having obtain'd an opportunity to entertain her in particular, in the Closet of the Queen her Mother, having made her read in his eyes the part he took in all might offend her; *My fair Princess*, *said he*, *is it the pity you have of my misfortune, or the persecution your self doth suffer, which makes me observe that sadness in your countenance? And ought I fear, that the goodness you have for Balamir, diminisheth not the troubles to which his ill fortune exposeth you?* The Princess remain'd for some time without reply, and in the end breaking silence with a sigh; *I have always judged*, *said she*, *that I could not but be unhappy, and that beginning of happiness with which the knowledge of your affection flattered me, ought not to have made me forget the fortune of our House, or leave me any hopes, that in the continuance of my life, it would falsifie its beginnings. In effect, it is a happiness too great for me, to possess the heart of such a Prince as Balamir, and I ought*

not to believe she would let me possess it without trouble. Say with more truth, replied *Balamir*, that it was not for one so unfortunate as *Balamir* that you were born, and that the justice of heaven stronger than the destiny of your House reserves you for a fortune more exalted than what you can hope by fixing your self to mine. I believe not, (replied the Princess beholding him with an eye which denoted some trouble) that you can be of this opinion, or that you suspect that I can find in the dignity of *Mundisic* anything that may touch me. No my Princess, said *Balamir*, I cannot suspect you, it is from my ill fortune that I fear all and not from the change of your humour: but in the name of the Gods trouble not your self as it seems to me you do, for those Obstacles wherein all the misfortune is for me and which yet cannot render me miserable if you still hold on my party. How? said *Hunnimonda*, Will you not that I should be troubled at those disorders I cause in your House? Or that by these troublesome beginnings I fear those consequences which cannot but be unfortunate both for you and me? Heaven had been more favourable to me in giving me a destiny like to that of *Athanaic*, than in reserving me to such great displeasures; and that which you and *Mundisic* may have found in my person to attract your affection, had not been given me but for my misery if my fears be well founded: For in sum, if *Mundisic* change not, to what are we exposed? Or what stay can I make in a Court where I shall kindle a War between two Brothers, and where I shall cause mischiefs greater than any I can yet foresee. You may put a period to all when you please, replied the Prince, and by depriving *Mundisic* of his hopes by the happiness of *Balamir*, deliver your self from his persecution. When I could do what you think answered *Hunnimonda*, I should by such a resolution but ill establish your repose: for I know the Spirit of *Mundisic* to be so violent, that there are few extremities to which such a resolution would not transport him upon such an action. Ah Madam, said the Prince, fear not for me, when I shall no longer fear the loss of *Hunnimonda*, and believe that if she be one day mine I shall know how to defend her both against *Mundisic* and all the Powers of the Universe. *Hunnimonda* shall without doubt be yours so soon as she may, replied the Princess, and you ought to hope all that you can desire from a Princess in whom virtue is not less dear to you than beauty. I should be unworthy of you if I had other thoughts, and you would not your self see me exposed to the blame of the whole world, by making me commit those faults your self would condemn. In the mean time be assured, (said she reaching him her hand with a look full of sweetness) that I will never be tied to any person if I be not to you, and that I will not only resist the persecutions of *Mundisic* for your love, but that though with the Crown of the Huns I should be offered both the Oriental and Occidental Empires, I would refuse and despise them to preserve my self to you alone.

These words carried a sweet consolation into the soul of *Balamir*, and the passionate Prince bowing down his lips to the fair hand of *Hunnimonda*, held it so long fix'd there, that before he could return an answer, the Queen of the *Goths* and the Princess *Theodolinda* entred into the Closet, and interrupted their familiarity. It is true the interruption they brought was not so cruel to *Balamir* as that of any other person but these two Princesses had been, the one of which was as favourable as he could desire, and the other entirely fix'd to his interests, though the fear she had to incense *Mundisic* hindred her from testifying it openly. He therefore not at all reserv'd himself at their coming, save only to render what out of respect he ought to the presence of the Queen, and this good Princess hearkned as favourably as *Hunnimonda* her self had done to what he said before her concerning the competition of *Mundisic*, and all these alterations it might produce against his repose. The Queen confirm'd to him all that the Princess had testified to him, and made him assurances that she would not be contrary to him, when the King his Father should consent to his repose and happiness; and in sum, he saw so many marks of a true affection in all the proceedings of *Hunnimonda*, and hop'd so much protection from the Queen his Mother in all that might happen, that notwithstanding all the thwartings which the love of *Mundisic* might cause and all that he might fear from his competition, he departed from the Queen of the *Goths* less afflicted than he entred, and with a confidence which made him judge he was not too miserable.

Some days passed, in which *Mundisic* maintaining some appearance of respect, in obedience to the orders of the King, and *Balamir* remaining continually in that duty he ought to his elder Brother things were very calm between them, and there were seen no consequences of that disorder which began to break forth. But this tranquillity could not endure: for if the haughty imperious and violent spirit of one of the two Brothers, transported him to violences which overpower'd his reason, the great courage of the other though his virtue made him submit it to his duty, could not suffer with patience the injustice done him: and in fine it was judged by all the Court that if *Mundisic* by the advantage his Birth gave him, would deprive *Balamir* of *Hunnimonda*, *Balamir* who in all other things entirely

entirely submitted to him, would not yield her but with his life. Taking his time one day when *Mundisc* was gone on hunting, he propos'd to the Queen of the *Goths*, and to the two Princesses, *Hunnimonda* and *Theodolinda*, and many other Ladies of chiefest quality in Court, to go take some pleasure at a house of the Kings, not above two hours journey from the City, and which seated upon the same River surpasses the other, a place truly adorned with all the beauties Art could add to Nature. The proposal being accepted by the persuasions of *Theodolinda*, who sought as much as possible the satisfaction of *Balamir*, the Queen, the Princesses, and the other Ladies, mounted their Chariots, and the Prince with a gallant Troop of young Cavaliers followed them on horseback, and accompanied them to that delightful Palace.

The Princesses soon knew that this proposal though it seem'd to be made by chance had however been premeditated by the Prince, they found there a fair noise of Musick accompanied with a great number of instruments in use among us, and which have nothing of the Barbarism of the ancient *Scythians*, and a magnificent Collation and all other things which might serve for diversions in such an occasion. The Ladies chid the Prince for the deceit he had put upon them, and in the end devoted some hours to walking and to the other pleasures offer'd them. *Balamir* had this day had his own desire, having the happiness almost continually to walk with *Hunnimonda* and *Theodolinda*, who was not at all suspected by him, and to receive from the mouth of his Princess all the assurance he could desire of her affection. But some time before they were thinking of leaving that Palace, and had just made an end of a Collation in a green Arbour at the end of the Alley, Prince *Mundisc* arriv'd, who upon the news of this company of pleasure had left the Chase, and came much less to take his part in their delights than to trouble and disturb them. There were few persons in the company to whom his coming was acceptable, and fewer whose countenances could dissemble it, though they all went forth to meet him with that respect owing to his dignity. He easily knew and observ'd it, and notwithstanding all his confidence felt possibly some confusion, but dissipating it by his natural audacity, and incensing instead of amazing himself, he saluted the Queen of the *Goths* and the Princess *Hunnimonda*, scarce regarding the rest of the company; *I am very sorry*, said he, *to trouble the pastimes of Balamir, but he knows that persons like us often want complacency.* *Balamir* not finding himself in an estate to return him any pleasing answer, replied not at all, and *Mundisc* instead of expecting it turning towards *Theodolinda*, *You are very secret in your pastimes*, said he, *but if you were a kind Sister you would conceal them a little less.* *It had been difficult for me*, replied the Princess, *to advertise you of this, for I am assured that an hour before none of us thought of it.* *All things are too proper and too magnificent*, replied *Mundisc*, *to permit me to believe there was no preparation, but it is not only to day my Sister that I have known how little favourable you have been to me, for which I shall preserve those acknowledgments I ought.*

The fair Princess blush'd at this discourse of her Brother without replying to him, and her blushing made her appear fairer to those that beheld her in that condition; but the Queen of the *Goths*, who daily sought peace and endeavoured it with all her industry, breaking silence, justified the Princess *Theodolinda* against the reproach he had thrown upon her, very firmly assuring him that on the Ladies part that diversion had been unpremeditated. She would have added more to persuade him to it, when *Balamir* whose courage could not bend under it, losing patience at this persecution, *And though it should be true Madam*, said he to the Queen, *that you had a design to walk, are you therefore criminal?* These words displeas'd the proud *Mundisc*, and regarding the Prince his Brother with an eye which marked his indignation, *For the Queen*, said he, *I know the respect I owe to her will, but for you if you knew your duty you would not do any thing might displease me.* "You make me so often remember my duty," replied *Balamir*, that it will be hard for me to forget it, but though the knowledge I have of it makes me avoid occasions to displease you, there are some in which I shall be in danger to do it all my life. "I doubt it not," replied the proud Prince, but I shall possibly take a better order than you think. "All the order you can take," replied *Balamir*, is to take away my life, and I know so well how to defend it as to make them shall dare assault it, think more than once of the design before they attempt it. This answer quite depriv'd *Mundisc* of his reason, and things had possibly come to some extremity, if *Hunnimonda* with *Theodolinda* had not thrown themselves before *Mundisc*, whilst the Queen of the *Goths* giving her hand to *Balamir* led him another way; having a great respect for her, he humbly kissed that hand she presented him, and though upon another occasion he had without repining quitted the place to his elder Brother, in this he with infinite grief saw him remain with *Hunnimonda*.

A little after judging well that *Mundisc* would not that day leave *Hunnimonda*, he mounted

on Horseback full of melancholy thoughts, and returned to the City with those that had followed him thence. In the way, having made me approach to him, *Might it not be own'd,* (said he, with those marks of grief he could not dissemble) *that I am the most unhappy man in the world, and that Fortune hath in my love acted all that she hath of most cruel against me? For in fine, what man among all men could she choose, against whom I might not dispute Hunnimonda with less disadvantage than against Mundific? or, what enemy could she raise me up, whom I could not make pay, possibly at the price of his blood, for those discontents to which I am expos'd? This is not,* added he, *that Mundific ought to hope the possession of Hunnimonda, so long as there rests to me a moment of life, or that he ought not to fear all things from my despair, when he hath deprived me of reason.* "Your complaints are very just, my Lord, (said I, when he had done) nor can there be any thing in the world less reasonable than the proceeding of Mundific; you have yet this advantage, that all the world condemn it, and all their inclinations are for you. But my Lord, you must not permit your self to be conducted only by your passion, nor yet, if it may be permitted me to tell you so, make use of all the justice you have on your side; you know what is the fortune of Mundific, what is his love, and what your Servants might fear if you should come to extremity with him. *Yes Telanor,* replied my Prince, *I know all that you can say, and all that you can think in relation to this business, but I know likewise, that there is no consideration so powerful, as to oblige me to abandon Hunnimonda, but with my life. I know all the advantages Mundific hath over me, but that of reason is for me, and to prop up my reason, I have a courage which Mundific, though my elder Brother, ought not to despise. I will keep my self, as much as possible, within those limits which the order of my Birth doth prescribe; I will not assault the life of Mundific, as I should without doubt have assaulted that of any other man in the world, and I will hinder my self from forming parties against him in the Dominions of the King our Father; but I will hinder him from possessing Hunnimonda, so long as there shall rest a drop of blood in my veins, and if he will deprive me of life to conquer her, he shall not possibly effect it, without hazarding his own to no small danger.* To these words he added many more, by which he made me judge, that he was resolv'd to transport himself to extremities, and that Mundific would difficultly bring to pass his enterprise.

Balamir had so much reason, said Constance to Telanor, that I cannot hinder my self from interrupting you, to testify the part I take in his interests against those of Mundific; and Mundific had so little on his side, that in my opinion there could be few virtuous persons of his party. "I am firmly of your opinion, added the King of the Franks, and though he be at present my Rival, I willingly declare my self in his favour; but I can difficultly apprehend, how a man so amorous, could from a passion which made him despise all considerations, pass to a second affection. Possibly my Lord, replied Telanor, you ought less to wonder than any other person; you who have so well felt the power of the divine beauties of Rosamond, but I hope you will yet wonder less, when you shall have understood those other things I have to recount you, which are without doubt more worthy of your attention, than those you have already heard.

The End of the Second Book of the Fourth Part.

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK III.

THe last disorder which happened between the two Princes, not only obliged the King to shew his anger, with more authority than he had done for the time past, but hasten that design he had contriv'd, to send them farther off from the cause of their differences, by employing them upon other occasions. There were affairs in *Sarmatia*, wherein to employ one of the Brothers: for the people of that Country naturally fierce, and impatient of Command, had retaken Arms in some Provinces, and reduc'd the King to a necessity to send an Army to reduce them to obedience. He doubted not, but he might easily have effected it, if he had had only this design in his thoughts, but for many years he had fix'd all his desires to the conquest of *Pannonia*, a fair and flourishing Province, which the *Danube* separated from his dominions, and though he judg'd he should not compass it without difficulty, the great confidence he had in the valour of *Balamir*, made him resolve to enterprize it, and to spur him forward to it, he understood that at the same time the *Alains* and *Gepides* had assaulted the Empire towards the Coast of *Spain*, that the *Vandals* were entred into *Betia*, and that you, my Lord, were employed against them, (*said* Telanor to Constance) with the most considerable Forces; that in *Germany* the *Franks* under their great King, and the *Burgundians* under theirs, began already to abate the power of the Roman Eagle by many great Victories, and that in *Italy* it self, the famous *Alaric* was return'd with a puissant Army, and amus'd *Stilicon* near *Ravenna*, with the chiefest Forces of the Empire, so that it was adjudg'd, that all that could oppose him in *Pannonia*, could difficultly sustain the valour and fortune of *Balamir*. It was then to the expedition of *Pannonia* that he would send *Balamir*, and he perswaded *Mundisc*, in whom this employment might have stirr'd up some envy, that it was more convenient he should go to *Sarmatia*, whence in all likelyhood, he might return with a certain glory, and that he would not in the person of his Heir, commit the fortune of his House to such an enterprize as that of *Pannonia*.

Mundisc, whose spirit was great, knew well that the truth was contrary to the discourse of the King; but were it that he had already contriv'd some designs, which he could not execute with the same facility in the war with *Pannonia*, or that he believ'd the fortune of *Balamir* might fail under so great an enterprize, he appear'd content with his employment, and prepar'd himself like a man, in whom love could not blot out the remembrance of glory. For *Balamir*, whatever grief he resent'd to absent himself from *Hunnimonda*, he dispos'd himself without murmuring to run whither his honour call'd him, and seeing the eyes of all the world fix'd upon him, with an expectation answerable to his fair repute, he prepar'd himself courageously to do all that might answer to the fair hopes conceiv'd of him. But because that all things were not ready for expeditions so important, that some time was necessary for the King, to put his Armies in a posture to execute so great enterprizes, fearing lest in that time the violence of *Mundisc* and the just resentment of *Balamir*, should carry the two Brothers to some extremity, he found it convenient, that till their departure, the Queen of the *Goths* should retire with the Princess her Daughter to a House he had given her, two little days journey from *Alba Julia*, and in which she had spent some years before her coming to Court. The Queen of the *Huns* and the Princess *Theodolinda*, oppos'd as much as possible this retirement of *Hunnimonda*, but in the end they consented to it, to avoid greater misfortunes. *Mundisc* murmured, and *Balamir*

figh'd with grief, but both the one and the other were already prepared to absent themselves from *Hunnimonda*, and though *Mundisc* could not bow his spirit to suffer an equality with *Balamir* in the treatment made them, he at this time made no great matter of the fight of the Princess, though it were with *Balamir* equally denyed to him. They would have accompanied her, but the King fearing what might fall out, permitted neither the one nor the other to do it, and they had only the time to bid her adieu apart, some hours before her departure.

I never understood what was the discourse she had with *Mundisc*, though I doubt not but it was very passionate on the Prince's side; nor will I recount you all the words of that of *Balamir*, though it had without doubt, something in it very tender, and very worthy your attention. It was in a Garden into which they descended from her Apartment by a little pair of Stairs, and the Prince having walked some time with her, and having told her the most affectionate things in the world, carrying often his lips to her fair hand, which he held, and kissing it with many tears which he could not retain, *You leave me Madam*, said he, *and without expecting that my Duty constrains me to leave you, you, by your own will, advance that cruel hour I have so much feared. I make you this complaint, my fair Princess, because I know well, that it is by the desire of the Queen your Mother, and by yours, rather than by the design of the King, that this retreat is resolv'd on, and it is possibly as much to flye from Balamir as from Mundisc, that you absent your self from us. Though a part of what you say were true, answered the Princess, you know well that I cannot agree that the other should be so, nor can you doubt, but that to flye only from Mundisc, I have consented to this retreat; our separation will be but a few days distance, for you are upon the point to quit me, and that for an expedition longer, and more dangerous. I know not what may be the success of it, (said Balamir sadly) but I can hope no good; my heart tells me, if it be happy to my honour, it will be unfortunate to my repose, and to all the felicity of my life. I have for some days had those presages which I cannot vanquish, and I am almost ashamed to go to the War unwillingly, possibly not to be pardon'd in a great courage. I know not what you feel at our separation,* replied the Princess, *but it is certain I have those fears with which I have never before been assail'd, and if I am not deceived, I am threaten'd with some strange misfortune.* "I foresee not, answered the Prince, what misfortune you can fear, you may on all sides your self create your own fortune; but for my self, all that I have to fear in mine, is the change of *Hunnimonda*, and you ought to pardon me, if the advantages *Mundisc* hath by his Birth over me, hold me in a continual fright. "Fear rather for your self than me in this matter, replied the Princess, and reassure me if you can, against that fear I have to see you one day unfaithful. On my side you are in an entire security, and if occasions offered themselves, I would give you such proofs of a fidelity, as should shame you, should you be wanting in what you have promised me. "If I become unfaithful, said the Prince, I shall not only be worthy of this shame, but deservedly merit all the pains Heaven can inflict, and I protest to you, my fair Princess, I should submit to them without murmuring; being perswaded you have not this truly to fear, I make you no greater protestations to assure you, and I know not likewise, (added he, beholding her with a passionate look) whether you have need of all your constancy to support the infidelity of *Balamir*. "I have a succour to flye to in my misfortunes, replied the Princess, which you have not in yours, and I hope that I shall find it, should any such thing befall me. "Would to the Gods, replied Balamir, that you have never need of it in others, for for that you are in an eternal security: but my Princess, added he a little after, will not you permit me to come and bid you adieu in the place of your retreat? or, will you refuse me so dear a consolation in a time wherein it is most necessary, "I desire it no less than you, answered the Princess, but besides that the King hath equally denyed it to you and *Mundisc*, you cannot come without four or five days absence, and you know well, this absence being observed by *Mundisc*, he will desire no better an example to disobey the orders of the King, and come and torment me. "Ah *Mundisc*, (replied the Prince, lifting his eyes to Heaven) Inhumane Brother, what Devil hath armed thee for my ruine? and, why must thy persecution, from so happy beginnings, force such cruel consequences?

He made many other complaints upon this subject, whilst *Hunnimonda* comforted him with all the assurances he could desire of her affection, and when at the cruel hour of departure she was forced to bid him adieu, seeing him in a condition wherein all his constancy seemed to have forsaken him, *Farewel Balamir*, said she, *love me always if you can, and be assured I will be faithful to you until death.* She accompanied these words with some tears she could not refrain, and soon after went into the Chariot with the Queen her Mother, who

who had, on her part, forgot nothing, to assure the Prince as much as it was possible, of the continuance of her affection, and the care she would take to preserve *Hunnimonda* for him.

After the departure of *Hunnimonda*, the Prince remain'd in the Court as in an obscure night, and not finding there any more pleasure, thought only of his departure, not only because by hastning it, he hastned his return, but because he hoped that by the success of this voyage, he should increase the esteem the King had for him, and oblige him to do justice, and protect him against the persecution of *Mundisic*. That Prince, who had other thoughts, prepared for his voyage with no less diligence; and in fine, by the care of the King and the two Princes, all things were in few days in a posture convenient, to attempt the execution of such great designs. Before this *Balamir* had been often comforted by many Letters he had received from the Princess, which the length of my narration hinders me from reciting, and the same day he departed, he received a Paper, the words of which were these, or little different.

The Princess *Hunnimonda* to Prince *Balamir*.

GO Prince, since of force it must be so, whither Heaven and your Duty call you, and compel Fortune, if it be possible, to yield to your Virtue. In the mean time remember, that you leave the disconsolate *Hunnimonda* without other consolation, than what she can find in the hopes of your return. She daily demands it of Heaven, with the preservation of your life, and the happy success of your Arms; but she demands with no less ardour, that you shall continue faithful, since it is only on your fidelity, she hath established the whole repose of her life.

Before the departure of the Princes, the King would have reconciled their Spirits, but the Authority he employed proved vain; and as *Mundisic* was so bold, as to tell him, that he should never love *Balamir*, if he yielded not to him *Hunnimonda*, so he observed by the countenance of *Balamir*, that he would never while he lived yield up *Hunnimonda*. In fine, all things were ready, and the Troops that were marched, arrived at the places where the Princes were to put themselves in the head of them. They departed on the same day from *Alba Julia*, and at this departure, Prince *Balamir* received from the King, the Queen his Mother, and the Princess *Theodolinda*, whose eyes overflowed with tears, all the marks of a tender affection. The Troops that were to follow *Mundisic* into *Sarmatia*, expected him in the Country of the *Agathirzes*, at the foot of the Mountains which separated *Dacia* from *Sarmatia*, and it was towards that part that he took his march, with a magnificent Equipage, and having joyned with the Army, few days after he passed the Mountains, and entred into the revolted Country, with an Army of fifty thousand men, which was to be strengthened, if it were found necessary, by other Forces which the King had in *Sarmatia*.

Balamir took a way quite different, and following the Banks of the River *Rhabon*, unto that place where it disgorgeth it self into the *Tebesis*, he found the Army he was to command, and having passed that River, at the head of twenty thousand Horse, and forty thousand Foot-men, he advanced towards the *Danube*, and passing it without any difficulty, at *Tentoburgum*, he entred into that *Pannonia* which is called the lower, or inferiour, and which is separated, like another Province, from that which is called the higher, or superiour. He advanced into the Country of the *Amatines*, between the *Sava* and *Drava*, two great Rivers, which water the two *Pannoniaes*; and because he did indeed surprize them, he rendred himself Master, both of all that Territory which lies between the *Danube*, and those two Rivers, unto the foot of Mount *Alinus*, and of the Marshes of *Hiula*, before the Lieutenants of the Emperour could oppose themselves with Forces sufficient to stop them. I speak to you of this War succinctly, not doubting but all the most memorable passages of it are come to your knowledge, and I will tell you with the same brevity, that it was only at the City of *Cibalis*, seated on the Banks of the Marshes of *Hiula*, and in the Country which is called *Pannonia Cibaliensis*, that we began to find any resistance worthy the valour of our Prince, and that this City, strong by its situation, and fortified with all things necessary for its defence, though it were assaulted with an admirable vigour, amused us so long time, as to give leisure to *Philip* Governour of *Pannonia* to bring all his Army into the Field, and march towards us with Forces not inferiour

to ours, whilst *Pontianus* his Lieutenant levied fresh Souldiers, and prepar'd to joyn with him to soon as he could get them in readines.

The advice which the Prince received of the march of our Enemies, instead of amazing him, prick'd him forward with a generous desire to fight, but he judg'd that he ought first if it were possible to make himself Master of the besieged City, believing that he could not continue the siege before an Army stronger than his, nor advance to fight them, without making himself Master of the pass which that City commanded, from the foot of Mount *Alinus* to the Marish. For this reason he resolv'd to venture something of hazard, and against the opinion of the famous *Kena*, his Lieutenant and many other old Officers, he assaulted the City by force on all sides, and after a resolute storm with the death of a great number of men, and in which after he had done an hundred wonderful actions, he was first seen to mount the Wall, and chase with his Sword in his hand all those he found before him, he carried it by clear force, and the same day he became Master of it.

From the City he pass'd into the Country adjacent to the Marish, and to abridge my discourse, two days after entred into the Country of the *Scordisques*, and very near the banks of *Drava* gave *Philip* battel, and by a success due to his admirable valour, gain'd it so intirely to us, that almost all the Enemies Army perished and their Captain, and that which remain'd saving themselves in the night, in a Country known to them, endeavour'd to joyn with *Pontianus* who raised new levies. After this famous Victory, he made himself Master, not only of the Country of the *Scordisques*, but of that part of the *Savia*, of that which is called *Bubalia*, and of all that which is between *Sava* and *Drava* unto the *Claudian* Mountains. From thence turning on the right hand we pass'd the *Drava* and *Limura*, and march'd against *Pontianus*, who still kept the Country of the *Andrisertes*, of the *Bathadates*, the *Jases*, the *Carpiens*, and all that is between the *Drava* and the *Danube*: but because he well knew that the loss of one battel would be to him the loss of all *Pannonia*, he a long time avoided the Combat, nor had then resolv'd on it, if his Army had not been strengthned near the City of *Mursella* with a re-inforcement which made it stronger than ours, and put him in hope of victory.

This hope ruin'd him, for few days after presenting us battel, he lost it with his whole Army, and left us no more to fight within the lower *Pannonia*: the places which resist'd were carried by force, and the greatest part seeing themselves abandon'd of all hopes of assistance, voluntarily yielded to the Conquerour; and in the end he conducted this War with a valour and diligence so admirable, that the conquest of a Country so great and flourishing, was but the work of six Months: and before the rigour of the Winter constrain'd us to retire into the Cities: *Balamir* by force or the terrour of his Arms had rendred himself Master of all the lower *Pannonia*. And to those general Actions which might make him pass for one of the greatest Captains of our age, he had joyn'd a hundred particular exploits, and a hundred Actions of his own hand, either in the battels or in the assaults of Cities or in all the other Conflicts which happened, that it might by them with reason be judg'd, that his Valour was not inferiour to any man's in the world. The King his Father by many Letters full of his affection and marks of his esteem, testified to him that he had less joy for this augmentation of his Dominions, than for that of his glory, and made him judge, that he ought to hope from him an entire protection against the injustice of *Mundisic*.

But all the Letters of the King touch'd not the heart of *Balamir* so much as those that came from *Hunnimonda*, and they made him so well see the greatness and sincerity of her affection, that he seem'd little sensible of glory to devote himself entirely to the sweetness of his love; he understood and understood without envy, whatever interest he had to render himself more considerable than him, that *Mundisic* happily ended the affairs of *Sarmatia*, that he had gain'd one battel against the revolted, took many Cities either by force or capitulation, and that it was hop'd that in a little time all things would be peaceable in *Sarmatia*: but that which surpris'd him most was to understand that by lenity and sweetness, virtues in which he excelled not, he had reduced a part of the people to their duty, and that among them he had made himself be as much beloved for his carriage, as fear'd for his Arms.

Balamir as I have told you, beheld without jealousy what was published of the advantage of *Mundisic*: for besides that he believ'd his good success would not rob him of the least of that glory with which he was crown'd, he hop'd in the following battels not only to render himself Master of the higher *Pannonia*; but by his Arms to raise himself to that height that he need not envy the glory of any person in the world. In effect, there was sufficient appearance that the higher *Pannonia* disfurnish'd of men and other things necessary
for

for its defence, would make no great resistance, so that he already carried his designs to *Illyria*, despoyl'd of its greatest Forces by reason of the absence of the great *Constance* its Governour, who was at present employed against the *Vandals* in *Hispania Bética*. But in the fairest of his hopes he was stopp'd in his designs, by the news he had of a treaty made between the Emperour and the King his Father, and an order which he receiv'd from the King not to enterprize any thing but expect his Orders in the Cities whither he was retired, without doing any act of Hostility.

This change in affairs and of the King's designs surpris'd him: but he was confirm'd in his surprisal, when about a month after he understood that the peace was agreed and signed between him and the Emperour *Honorius*, or rather *Stilicon* who governed the Empire with an absolute power, that by the treaty the lower *Pannonia* which he had then newly conquer'd should remain to the King of the *Huns*, on condition that he should content himself without any farther invasion of the Lands of the Empire, the necessity and great affairs of which reduced them to make so disadvantageous a peace; that for the greater assurance of it the King had sent the Princess *Theodolinda* to *Rome*, to accompany the Princess *Placidia*; that there were secret Articles which the King would not discover to the Prince but with his own mouth at his return; and the Courier added that the King had given him in charge to say, that in all likelihood the voyage of *Theodolinda* was not without some great design, and it was believed that in what had been concluded between the King and *Stilicon*, there had been propositions of an alliance, and that *Stilicon* had given the King hopes of the Marriage of *Mundisic* with the Princess *Placidia*; and that of the Princess *Theodolinda* with the Emperour, who had for some time been a Widower by the death of *Stilicon's* Daughter.

These Propositions (said *Constance* to *Telanor* not being able to hinder himself from interrupting him at these words) *were kept very secret, if it be true that they were made: for I not only had not the least knowledge of them, though I convers'd very particularly with the Princess Theodolinda, but during all the stay I made at Rome with her, have never judg'd by her Actions either that she had any design on the person of Honorius, or any thought to marry the Princess Placidia with Mundisic: for if I had suspected her I had made complaints to her instead of returning her those thanks I did, for many good offices she did me. It may be my Lord, replied Telanor, that the Princess Theodolinda finding at Rome little disposition to those things she had been made hope for, dissimul'd her intentions, and having a great and magnanimous Soul would not torment her self to create a love in the Emperour; if by her sight and the knowledge of her merit he received it not himself: she had possibly likewise sufficient complacence not to contradict or oppose the inclinations of Placidia, finding them engag'd to so great a Merit as that of Constance: besides those things which fell out a little while after, obliterated those designs which the King might have had for Mundisic, and left no place to speak of them, however it was, it was believed that it was not without reasons more important than those which appeared to the publick, that the King sent the Princess his Daughter such a journey, and we had possibly known more if after that time the Prince could have cleared his doubts from the King as we hoped.*

With the news of the peace, the Prince received orders from the King concerning all that was to be done in *Pannonia*, and he saw himself engag'd to a longer stay than he desired, to settle that Country, disorder'd and made miserable by the War, place Garrisons in the Cities, establish Governours, and do all other things which are necessary to be order'd in a new and important Conquest. Love which still reigned in the Soul of my Prince, and whose force absence had increased instead of diminishing it, made him think it too long a time that he was compell'd to devote to his employment, notwithstanding he pass'd it over with an admirable patience, and by the diligence of the famous *Kens*, whom the King at his entreaty approv'd Governour of *Pannonia*, he put that Province into the best estate that could be desired. He likewise made himself be in such manner beloved, both for his amiable carriage, and generous proceedings that that people out of the respect they had for him and for his Nation though he had been their Enemy began to suffer, and have ever since peaceably suffered, that they should take from them their ancient name to give them that of *Huns*, and they beheld without offence that of *Pannonia* insensibly forgotten, to give place to that of *Hungaria* which both the one and the other impos'd.

But whilst my Prince crown'd with glory by the greatness of his Actions and repleat with all hopes he could conceive of the protection of the King, prepar'd himself to go-re-vise *Hunnimonda*, with a joy which the concurrence of *Mundisic* could not expel, fortune treated him with a strange cruelty, and if he received orders for his return they were very sad ones and much different from what he had hop'd. They had been foretold by ill-boding Dreams, and by other presages which had given him all the fear a courage like his was capable

capable to receive, and he that brought them to him, made him presently know in his countenance, a part of that misery he was to inform him of. The Prince was affrighted, and beholding the messenger with a frost which chilled all his blood, *What news do you bring me?* (said he) *Or what misery have you to make known to me?* The Messenger, instead of answering, presented him the Letter of the King, and the Prince having opened it with an impatience much different from what we might have for acceptable news, found these words.

The King of the *Huns* to Prince *Balamir*.

GO my Son, go revenge your quarrel and mine against our common Enemy; and if hitherto the duties of your Birth have hindered you from turning your Arms against your Persecutor, by another duty which you ought to obey, carry the Arms of the King your Father against an unfaithful Son who hath betrayed him. *Mundisic* hath raised all *Sarmatia* against me, and that which is more grievous to tell you, he hath taken away *Hunnimonda*, and carried her into that revolted Country, which takes Arms in his favour: the Queen her Mother is dead with grief, and I should be more sensible of mine than I am, if I did not hope to reduce this Rebel to Reason, by the valour of his Brother. Hate from *Pannonia* with these Forces you have in readiness, you will find others in the Country of the *Jaliges*, whom I will send to the passage, and you may enter into *Sarmatia* by the foot of the *Carpathian Mountains*, with a power not despicable to *Mundisic*. Go release *Hunnimonda* from the hands of her Ravisher, and you may possess her without difficulty, if you redeem her from your Rival; and I forbid you from sparing any thing to compass it, save only the life of *Mundisic*, who, however ingrateful, and however unfaithful he is, I cannot but remember I am still his Father.

It would be difficult, my Lord, to represent to you, what was the grief of my Prince, at the reading of this Letter, you may better imagine it, than I make you apprehend it by my discourse; to his grief was in an instant joyned all other violent passions, and he saw himself, at the same time, assaulted by jealousy, fear and anger, which in a short time reduced him to a most deplorable condition. The loss of *Hunnimonda*, or at least, the great danger he was in to lose her for ever, if Heaven, and his Valour, wrought not miracles for her succour, cast him into such an extremity of grief, as wanted but little to bereave him of his life; and the sorrow he had for the death of the Queen her Mother, whom he had so tenderly loved, pierced his heart with affliction. The resentment of the cruel injury he received, excited his courage to all that it could be inspired with of most violent, and the jealousy he had to understand that the Princess he adored was in the hands of his Rival, and of a Rival, from whom, by the knowledge he had of his humour, he might fear all things, both for himself, and for *Hunnimonda*, expos'd his Soul to all that grief it could possibly suffer, and cast him into the fear of all things most cruel and dreadful. As he was a man, as he was sensible, and as he was a Lover, he could not become Master of so many passions as tormented him; he sigh'd, he grievously complain'd of the ravishment of *Hunnimonda*, he dedicated tears to the death of the Queen of the *Goths*, and by words full of choler, he made his displeasure thunder forth against his cruel enemy. But in fine, having a courage as great in all things as in feats of War, he became Master of himself, and considering that *Hunnimonda* was neither dead, nor espoused to *Mundisic*, he suspended his grief to let his other passions act, and prepared himself to force *Hunnimonda* out of the hands of *Mundisic*, instead of amusing himself to deplore her loss by tears, and words of complaint; "Ah! (cried he in the end, with a behaviour which appeared to us wholly different from the first marks of his grief) Ah! let us march, since it must be so, let us march against that Barbarian, whom his cruelty permits us not any longer to acknowledge for our Brother, nor consider any more Duty in a man who hath unworthily violated all. By the orders of the King we are dispensed withal, and much better dispensed with by the cruel injury he hath done us. Thou shalt feel inhumane Brother, or rather cruel and unjust Rival, what a just resentment can work over a Spirit like mine; and that same hand which hitherto hath not fought but for thy greatness, shall at present without reluctance arm it self against thee: I will go seek thee in the midst of those barbarous people that favour thy crime, and with all that thou canst fear from a despairing Lover, bring against thee the thunder of an incens'd Father.

After

After these words he remain'd some time without speaking, revolving in his mind those different resolutions that presented themselves, and which all with one consent tended to the design he had to fight the Ravisher of *Hunnimonda*; and a little after, casting his eyes on that place of the Letter, where he promised him, that he should without difficulty possess *Hunnimonda*, if he redeemed her out of the hands of her Ravisher, he found in this promise a cause of joy sufficient to comfort a part of his grief, and judg'd, that it was not impossible, but it might prove for his happiness, that *Mundisic* had taken away *Hunnimonda*, and that one of the greatest obstacles he had was taken away, since the King, who hitherto had not declared, and who possibly durst not have done it, had not the ingratitude of *Mundisic* oblig'd him to it, had now freed him from that difficulty, and engag'd himself by a promise he could not violate. "Let us comfort our selves, (*said he, having for some time entertain'd this thought*) let us, with those reasons we have to do it, comfort our selves, and believe, that we are not absolutely miserable, since we march to the conquest of *Hunnimonda*. Hitherto have we fought for glory, or for the greatness of *Mundisic*; *Mæsia*, *Sarmatia*, and *Pannonia*, have seen me gain Battels, either for their Repose, or Conquest, but at present it is *Hunnimonda* must be the price of my Victory, and since I am assur'd, that delivering her from the hands of *Mundisic*, she is to pass into my Arms, and be mine, without any Rival to dispute her, let us march with joy to an assur'd Victory. I could overcome at other times without benefitting my self by my advantages, but it is for my self I must this day vanquish, and thou shalt with difficulty *Mundisic* oppose any thing to stop me, when I fight to possess *Hunnimonda*."

After these words, and by the thought which made him pronounce them, he in part comforted himself for his grief, and being willing to instruct himself more largely of what he had succinctly understood by the Letter of the King, he asked the Messenger who had brought it, and he being an intelligent person, and capable of something more important, made the Prince to understand, that it was most true, that all *Sarmatia*, in which Prince *Mundisic* had acted politickly, with a sweetness and lenity not natural to him, had taken Arms for him, and entirely joyn'd themselves to his interests; that he had chased from all places those Garrisons which were suspected to him for their fidelity to the King, and had placed in them his own creatures; that he had done the same with all Officers of Troops, which were not at his devotion, and not doubting but that for what he had done, and for what he had a design to do, he should have a War to sustain, he had made also great Levies through all *Sarmatia*. That the King would not believe this truth at the first news he received, but having the confirmation of it by the cashier'd Officers, and the Governours which *Mundisic* had sent back, and not being able to doubt it, before he would commence a war with his Son, he had sent one of the most considerable persons of his Court, to endeavour by sweetness to reduce him to his Duty; but *Mundisic* instead of answering the goodness of the King, retain'd the person he had sent, and while the King expected his return, not at all imagining that *Mundisic* would come into *Dacia*, he was secretly departed from *Sarmatia*, concealing himself diligently in all places where he pass'd, giving out, that they were Officers driven away by *Mundisic*, which retired, and in fine, managed his design with so much secrecy, that without being discovered he came one night to *Adramita*, (which is that House in the Country whither *Hunnimonda* was retired with the Queen her Mother, before our departure, and where she had ever since remained) forced the House, and took away the Princess with only one Lady; that this had proved so much the more easie to him, because the House stood near the way between *Alba Julia* and *Sarmatia*, by the Country of the *Agatirses*, and that before the King could have any advice at *Alba Julia*, *Mundisic* was got four days journey on his way; that the King had not been wanting to send after him, and to go himself to *Adramita*, to see the Queen of the *Goths*, who not able to support this affliction, had been taken with a Fever, which in six days had bereaved her of life, to the great grief of all the Court, and particularly of the Queen of the *Huns*, who would not be comforted; that the King had done all that it was possible for him to do, to succour *Hunnimonda*, but that all his endeavours had been in vain, and that he understood by those whom he had sent after *Mundisic*, that he had repass'd the Mountains with his fair prey, and was re-entred into *Sarmatia*.

This recital again renewed the grief of *Balamir*, but having already taken his resolution, he render'd himself Master of his griefs, to acquit himself of his Duty, and the same day having given to the valiant *Kena*, an absolute power over all that was to be done in *Pannonia*, of which Province he remained Governour, he gave orders to cause his Army to depart the day following, and in effect, they departed on the morrow, with himself at their head, from the City of *Herculia*, where we then were, in the Country of the *Arabisques*. We

marched

marched towards the *Danube*, which we passed at *Aquinum*, and came to the Country of the *Jafiges*, where the Troops which the King had sent, arrived as soon as we, and of which, with those he led back from *Pannonia*, he formed the Body of an Army stronger than that which he had led to the conquest of *Pannonia*, with these Forces he marched towards the *Carpathian* Mountains, which are not far distant from the *Jafiges*, and entered without difficulty into *Sarmatia*.

Though the violent passion which agitated him, seemed to have abated somewhat of his natural sweetness, and that he marched to this War with more anger and animosity than he had done to all others, yet he amused not himself to lay waste those places where he found no resistance, though he looked upon the whole Country as an enemy's; but seeking only *Mundisic* and *Hunnimonda*, he marched towards the places where he believed to find them, without stopping, save only there where his passage was disputed, and it was disputed with him in many places, and that with infinite obstinacy: but not finding any thing hard to overcome in that ardour which carried him to the Combat, he passed violently through all that opposed him, and having harassed like a violent Torrent, the Country of the *Roxolans*, and that of the *Almanobiens*, whom he first found in his passage, he advanced into *Sarmatia*, and marched without delay towards the City of *Cephalonese*, where he understood that *Hunnimonda* was with *Mundisic*. It is true, that the respect the *Sarmatians* had for him, since that glorious expedition he had made into their Country, and the remembrance they had preserv'd of the good and fair usage he practis'd toward them, hindered them from doing all that was possible for them to endamage him, and finding before, more appearance to hope victory should attend his party, than that of *Mundisic*, they would not incense him so much as they might have done, that they might be in a better estate to make their peace according to the event of the War, and by this means they gave him greater opportunities to approach what he sought, than if they had obstinately resolv'd to maintain the interests of *Mundisic*.

In the mean time that Prince slept not, though his passion was strong enough to make him forget all things but a care to preserve *Hunnimonda*; but as neither in valour nor intelligence in war he thought himself inferior to *Balamir*, and as he knew well that in revolts safety consists in diligence, and that if Rebel-parties produce not their effect with speed, they destroy themselves by time, and by those incommodities which the people suffer, in sustaining a long war, knowing himself stronger in men than *Balamir*, he resolv'd to decide that war by one Battel, the event of which he hoped would be favourable; rather than amuse himself to defend the Country by foot and foot, and draw the war to a greater length (as it had been easie for him to do, by reason of the large extent of the Country, and the great number of fortified places in *Sarmatia*) not being assured of the constancy of the people, and fearing, after the miseries of war, they would accept any conditions of peace, and forsake his interests.

There was some appearance that it was this which obliged him to act as he did, being sufficiently experienced in war to know the fault he committed in exposing all his Forces to the hazard of a Combat, without keeping any reserve to supply and re-enforce him in those necessities he might be driven to, if Fortune were contrary to him. *Balamir* understood with infinite joy that he took that resolution, and though he knew himself the weaker in number of men, yet confiding in the valour of his own, and the justice of his quarrel, he easily resolv'd to give him Battel if he presented it, and understanding that he was parted from *Cephalonese*, to come to us with an Army of a hundred thousand Soldiers, he went to meet him by little journeys, that he might not too much weary his Troops, and by his confidence and discourses, prepared his men not to fear the number of their enemies in so just a quarrel, and under the conduct of a Captain, with whom they had hitherto been invincible.

Before *Mundisic* approached us, he caused certain Pamphlets to be cast among our Troops, by which, having set forth the rashness of *Balamir*, who durst come to make war against his elder Brother, he exhorted all the men of war to quit his party, and to take that of a Prince who was one day to be their King; and to those offers which he made them of all sorts of good usage, if they would betake themselves to his party, he added threats of all they might fear from his anger, when he should come to the Crown. But this Artifice was very unprofitable: for all those either of the Soldiers or Officers, who found those Pamphlets, either tore them without any regard, or brought them to *Balamir*. My Prince acted with him in a manner much different: for before the Armies were within a days journey of each other, he writ him a Letter, wherein, after all the submissions to which *Mundisic* could pretend, he prayed him to pardon his boldness to come in Arms against him,

and to accuse for it the obedience he ought to his Father, and the despair it to which he had cast him by taking away *Hunnimonda*. In fine he conjured him by all that honour and the duties of his blood could have in them of most obliging, to return to the obedience of his Father, who held out his Arms, to him and to render liberty to a Princess whose heart he should assail by other Arms than violence, and promising him on the behalf of the King, according to his charge not to preserve any remembrance of the injury he had done her, protested to him that for this Action he would not pretend any advantage with *Hunnimonda*, but what his love and services might procure. There were many other things in this Letter sufficient to flatter the pride of *Mundisc*, and to make him see the advantage he might find in the propositions of *Balamir*, if he would hearken to them: But instead of having any consideration for them, he tore the writing in a thousand pieces, and had caused him to be taken Prisoner who brought it, if the Officers had not used all their credit with him to hinder it.

After this they marched without delay to the battel one against the other, and *Mundisc* not being so well assured in a rebellious and unconstant people, as to trust them with a treasure much more precious than his life, and fearing that their inclinations might change according to the events of War, and lest if fortune should be contrary to them they should deliver *Hunnimonda* to the Conquerour, he led her with him at his departure from *Cepharonse*, and the day before he gave Battel shut her up in *Pasiris*, a Castle strong both by its situation and the diligent care he had taken to fortifie it, and left her under the guard of *Bela* him of all his dependents, in whom he had the most confidence, and who remain'd with her with two thousand men which were sufficient for the defence of the Castle, and which were chosen out of those he led out of *Dacia*.

It was in a fair Plain very near the River *Hiparis* that the two Armies first saw each other, and there it was that a cruel and bloody Battel was fought for the liberty of *Hunnimonda*. Before the last signals were given, *Balamir* gave command to all the Souldiers to respect in the fight the person of *Mundisc* as if he were their King, and to take care upon pain of death not to let fly an Arrow in that place where he fought; and he took thus great dilligence for the preservation of *Mundisc*, while *Mundisc* sought his particular destruction more than the gain of the whole battel, promising great recompenses to those who could kill *Balamir*. I will not tell you the particulars of this battel, no more than I have done of all the rest of which I have spoke to you, though there happened in this things so memorable as to merit mention. The Combat was long, bloody and resolute, the Souldiers hardy and warlike, and the two Captains both the one and the other great Commanders, though somewhat unequal: and if one of the two were animated to a fury, the other had so great an interest in victory, that he spared nothing that might achieve it, save only the life of *Mundisc*, whom he might had he pleased have slain in the Fight, but he not only defended him from his own Arms but from those of all his. *Mundisc* sought him often in the fight and many times called him with a loud voice, but *Balamir* used all endeavours to shun his encounter, and contented himself to vanquish in all parts where he shewed himself without seeking victory in the person of his Brother: But to obtain it for us he did things past belief, as well for his good conduct as for a thousand effects of a prodigious valour: and in fine he forc'd it to declare in our favour and remain as entirely to us as we could desire. The greatest part of the Army of *Mundisc* was cut in picces, and the rest disperced in such manner that it was almost impossible for his Captains to rally any, I say his Captains, for, for himself he used no endeavours, though he had nobly behav'd himself during the fight: but so soon as he saw the Battel was lost, having exclaim'd against heaven and his ill fortune, he forsook all things to return to *Hunnimonda*, and ran with all the swiftness possible to the Castle where he had left her. This diligence was necessary to prevent that of *Balamir*, for my Prince having understood from some Prisoners taken in the Battel in what place the Princess was shut up, no sooner saw the victory incline to us, but instead of amuting himself to pursue it as he might have done if he had had any such design, he commanded my Father and another Commander, who had one of the principal employments in the Army, to hinder them from rallying, and do what other things are necessary in these occasions in which he knew them very well experienced: and having commanded me to cause ten thousand Infantry to march after him with the greatest diligence possible, he flew towards *Pasiris* with three thousand Horse, and made such speed that though he arrived not so soon as *Mundisc* who in effect gain'd the place before him, yet he came time enough to prevent the design he had to carry away *Hunnimonda*, and conduct her to some other place where he might better defend her than in a Castle which in all likelihood could not long hold out against our Army. He foam'd with anger and grief when he saw our first Troops appear, which straight stopp'd all the

passages and deprived him of all hopes of a retreat. The ten thousand Infantry which I led arrived some hours after, who wearied as they were readily placed themselves in the Posts appointed by the Prince, and the next morning the rest of the Army being arrived formed the Siege, and assaulted the place in their orders on all sides.

Mundisc now knew the fault he had committed, by permitting himself to be closed in, which he had not done, had he feared the loss of the Battel or foreseen the diligence of *Balamir*. My Prince praised the Gods for this happy progress of his good fortune, though he beheld with a mortal grief what Enemy his fortune gave him to combat, and the necessity to which he was reduced either to besiege his Brother or to abandon *Hunnimonda*. This mixture of good and ill, of hope and fear held him for some time in a cruel disturbance, and he made it known to those of his to whom he open'd himself more familiarly by words which sensibly touched them. *I hope*, said he to us, *that we shall restore liberty to Hunnimonda, and if some strange misfortune befall us not, I foresee not how they can any long time defend her against us. But alas! what Enemies hath Heaven and my ill fortune pleased to give me? Or what repose can I find in my life, if to recover Hunnimonda I make my Brother lose his life? He is unjust towards me, he is cruel and seeks all ways to deprive me of my life, but his Arms cannot authorize mine, and though in the opinion of most part of men I am not at all obliged to spare him, the Gods are my witnesses, that if this misery should happen I should never more be capable of comfort. But what must I then do?* added he a little after, *Must I leave to him Hunnimonda? and with Hunnimonda must I give him my life? Or ought I to give him my honour engaged in her defence, and which permits me not to leave her to the mercy of her Enemy? But this Enemy*, replied he to himself, *is a Lover that adores her, and a Prince who may one day be one of the greatest Kings of the world, a Prince with whom she can never be unhappy, if she can but resolve to love him. But dost thou wish*, continued he, *that Hunnimonda should love Mundisc? Or whatever generosity thou wouldst practise, canst thou so soon and so easily forget thy own interest, as to desire Hunnimonda should be happy with Mundisc? fear rather lest that should happen against thy desire, and confess that death would be a thousand times more sweet to thee than the knowledge of so great a misfortune. It would but too soon come to pass, if the confidence thou hast in the promises of Hunnimonda, did not re-assure thee, there is but too much appearance that she would let her self be overcome, either by the great advantages of Mundisc or by the greatness of those difficulties Fortune hath opposed to us.* This thought tormented him more cruelly than all others, so long as it could find any place in his mind, but it established it self there but weakly, and by the good opinion he had of the constancy and courage of *Hunnimonda*, all these fears were easily dissipated.

In the mean time he found himself much troubled to deliberate in what manner he ought to assault the Castle, not doubting but that if he gain'd it by storm, both the life of *Mundisc* and *Hunnimonda* her self might be exposed to some danger, but he saw himself soon delivered from this trouble, by the advice which he receiv'd that *Mundisc* having only shut up *Hunnimonda* in that Castle to keep her in security till after the Battel and not to sustain a siege, had not fortified it with any stores of victual, or at least with so little that two thousand men which were in it could scarce have enough for six days, and that there was some appearance that so soon as they should see themselves pressed with hunger, all the affection they might have for the interests of *Mundisc*, would not persuade them to attend the last extremities. *Balamir* found consolation in this advice, and resolved to starve his Enemies without making any enterprize upon them, and to guard the Avenues so well that nothing should enter into the Castle. This was easie for him to do, though he had not had the fourth part of the men he had. And in effect he gave such good Orders that the besieged soon lost all hopes of receiving any relief of provisions.

Mundisc soon knew his design, and the knowledge he had of it transported his Choler to extremity, and he made some of ours feel the effects of it by several Salleys which he made, and which he once or twice headed in person near the most neighbouring quarters of the Castle. He would likewise one day endeavour to pass through us, and retire with *Hunnimonda* whom he led with him: and to this purpose having made all his Cavalry mount on horseback he ordered them into three great Squadrons, which for the present overwhelmed all that stood in their way, and had opened a passage large enough to execute their designs, if *Balamir* whom the fear to lose *Hunnimonda* still kept awake, had not arriv'd in that place, and charged them with so much vigour, that *Mundisc* doubting lest he should lose his fair prey from which he durst not be absent, was constrained to retire and once more shut himself up in the Castle.

After that day he was shut up closer than before by the great diligence of *Balamir*, and in few days more he saw himself in that condition we expected for want of victuals, which so
great

great a number of men had soon consumed. It was now that he transported himself with fury against *Balamir*, and that he writ him a Letter not like a vanquished man or one reduced to that ill estate in which he was, but like a Sovereign to his subject full of reproaches and injuries and all possible marks he could give of his fury. *Balamir* returned him an answer full of sweetness and respect, by which he declared, that though he had order from the King to pursue him as an Enemy, yet he had not forgot what he ought, and that it was not against his person he made war; that he might retire himself when he pleased either to the King his Father, who would without doubt receive him as his Son if he returned to his duty, or unto whatever place of the World he pleased; that he would give no hindrance to his retreat, nor yet to his stay in *Sarmatia* if he pleased, believing that out of the respect he ought him he might take the liberty to dispence with the rigour of the Kings orders; but that he demanded the liberty of *Hunnimonda*, which he was obliged to render her or to dye in the design. At this demand of *Balamir's*, and the resolution he testified for the liberty of the Princess, *Mundisc* transported himself with more violence than he had hitherto done, and let the Prince his brother know, that before he would retolve to surrender up *Hunnimonda* he would undergo the most terrible misfortunes.

In the mean time Victuals began to be wholly wanting in the Castle, where the little that remained being reserved for the Prince and Princess and a small number of those who were most dear to the Prince, all the others began to murmur, afterwards complained themselves very highly, when they felt themselves pressed with hunger, and in the end losing their patience declared to the Prince that they must either have food or of necessity yield. The Prince became furious in this extremity, and knowing well that he could not hope any assistance, and that as he had well foreseen after his defeat a part of *Sarmatia* had forsaken his party, and daily sent Deputies to *Balamir* to obtain the Kings pardon, by this intercession his Spirit began to be filled with direful resolutions, and he resolved with himself to execute them. We understood it from some Souldiers of his whom despair had made leap from the Walls in the night time; and those who were in a condition to be presented to *Balamir*, having been brought before him told him that all things in the Castle were in a terrible disorder: that all the souldiers and their officers, not able to suffer the terrible hunger that pressed them, were that night gone in a body to cry to Prince *Mundisc*, that he must of necessity either give them victuals, or yield or else lead them on to dye by the Arms of their Enemies, that this would be more sweet to them than that which they should suffer by famine, and that upon the place he should determine what to do since it was impossible for them to expect till the morrow. That the Prince at this proposition of theirs had been moved with so violent a Choler that having drawn his Sword he had slain two of the principal officers which had brought him word, and that his fury had likewise extended to many others, if the Princess *Hunnimonda* who was present at this Action, had not cast her self before him, praying him to kill her rather than for so long time render her the cause of so many miseries and the loss of so many thousand persons. That *Mundisc* had stopped at this discourse of the Princess, beholding her with eyes full of the fury which agitated him, and that he had made all those who saw him in that estate judge that he was capable to transport himself to more fatal resolutions. That by the reason of the action he had done and the despair to which they were reduced the Souldiers wanted but little to arm themselves against him, and that infallibly the day following would not pass without opening the Castle Gates, or delivering up *Hunnimonda* to *Balamir*.

This report touched the Prince with several different passions, but it wrought not on his Spirit all that effect we expected, and though he saw things proceed as he had desired, and beheld sufficient place to hope for what he had so much wished, that hope was accompanied with such cruel fears as were impossible for him to overcome, and made him only resent a joy to which he could not carry his thoughts without doubting greater miseries and terrible dangers. He imagined sometimes that possibly *Hunnimonda* her self was not exempted from that misery to which the others were reduced, and that he might perhaps be so unhappy as to make her perish by those Arms he employed for her deliverance: but when he recovered himself from this fear by the knowledge he had of the love of *Mundisc*, which in all likelihood would make him pass by all things himself, rather than see her suffer, that which he knew of his humour, and that which he understood of his rage which possessed him put other fears into his Soul, against which all his courage was not capable to assure him, and cast him into irresolutions which he could not vanquish. He passed the rest of that night in this manner without giving himself one moments sleep, walking at a great pace amongst us without speaking or without hearkning to those that spoke to him, not being able in any manner to determine what he had to do.

The day appeared before he could form any design, and the Sun was already mounted some degrees in the Firmament, before he could take any resolution, when some came to advertise him, that they founded some parleys from the Castle, which denoted some design to capitulate; and soon after, one came to tell him, that *Mundisc* appeared on the Rampart of the Castle, and demanded to speak with him. *Balamir* trembled at this discourse, and without knowing the cause, felt that fear redouble which had for some hours before tormented him; he prepared himself however to speak with *Mundisc*, and when we would represent to him, that in the fury which possess'd the Spirit of that Prince, and which might have blotted out in him all considerations of honour, he was not in security from those Arrows might be shot from the Castle, if he approached too nigh, *Ab would to God*, said he, *that I had nothing more cruel to fear from Mundisc*. We constrain'd him however to arm himself, to reassure us the better from the fear we had for him, though himself was capable of none for himself. He had scarce put on his Armour, when some came to advertise him, that the Princess *Hunnimonda* was seen with *Mundisc* upon the Ramparts. This last advice made him again tremble, by reason of some presentiments, which rendred him as fearful in this occasion, as he had appeared to us assured in all other dangers to which we had seen him expos'd; however, departing from his Tent, without speaking, he advanced (with a great Troop of his Friends and Soldiers accompanying him) to the very brink of the Ditch, directly opposite to the place where he saw *Mundisc* and the Princess *Hunnimonda* appear.

The Ditch was not so large, nor the Rampart so high, but from that place he might easily discern their Visages, and distinctly understand their words; and his love making him immediately cast his eyes on the beloved Object, which he had not for a long time seen, he beheld that admirable Beauty, the image of which had been so well graven in his memory, but he beheld on her countenance, in her habit, and in all her person, the marks of her grief. Her Habit, besides the sadness it expressed in its colour, expressed likewise the estate of her condition by its negligence, and that of her dressing, and all that was upon her whole person; testified sufficiently the little care she took to appear fair to the eyes of *Mundisc*. But however, she was so, though contrary to her design, but somewhat more wan, languishing, and pale, than ordinary, and we judged, by the estate wherein we saw her, that no accident could ruine that Cœlestial Beauty. The amorous *Balamir* cast his eyes on her eyes, and kept them there so firmly fixed, as rendred him incapable of all other things, and we observed with him, that the Princess beheld him with an aspect which appeared no less passionate than his.

He spoke not to her but by his eyes, and with his sighs, not being able to tell her what he had on his heart; and judging well, that he was called for some other intent, than to tell *Hunnimonda* what he sented for her. He acted however a violence to his passion, to turn towards *Mundisc*, to whom he was to speak, and having cast his eyes upon him, he saluted him with the same marks of respect that he would have rendred him at another time, and upon a better occasion. *Mundisc* took little notice of his civility, but beholding him with eyes in which his fury was fully pourtrai'd; *Thou triumphest Balamir*, said he, *and see'st thy self there Vanquisher of a Brother who ought to be thy King, but thy triumph shall not be such as thou dost expect, and I hope that thou wilt weep for thy victory as well as I*. I have not expected so much my Lord, replied *Balamir* very modestly, *and you may well judge, that again'st such an enemy, I cannot obtain any pleasing victory; nor is it like a Conquerour I appear before you, nor pretend I other triumphs, or other advantages, from our victory, than that, to render liberty to a Princess, whom, both you and I adore, and whom you ought not to keep Captive, if it be true you love her*. I know well, replied *Mundisc*, *it is Hunnimonda thou demandest, and it is my life thou would'st deprive me of with Hunnimonda; thou shalt have her, if thou dost desire it, since my ill fortune hath reduc'd me to a necessity to render her to thee, but thou shalt have her in an estate will not permit thee to rejoyce in it*.

These words made *Balamir* tremble, scarce finding speech to express his trouble to *Mundisc*. *And in what estate*, said he, *can you give me Hunnimonda, which will hinder me from receiving her with joy? Thou shalt know that in few moments*, replied the Prince, *but thou shalt first understand, that her destiny depends on thee; and to pronounce thee the good, rather than the ill, I will tell thee, that if thou wilt see her thy Sister, if thou wilt see her thy Queen, thou mayest this day do it, by consenting that she espouse Mundisc*. *Balamir* remained for some time silent, without being able to answer this Proposition, but in the end, seeking words to explain himself in a matter so intricate; *If the Princess*, (said he, with a trembling voice) *will forget Balamir, to espouse Mundisc, I will not oppose her will; and if she believes, she can be happy with Mundisc, I will sooner lose my life, than trouble her felicity*. No, no, (cry-

ed the Princess with great precipitation) *I cannot be happy with any other than Balamir, and Captive as I am, I confirm to him the word I have given him, never to be any persons, if I be not his. If it be so,* (cryed Balamir, raising his courage by the consolation these words had given him) *if it be so, Hunnimonda shall never be Spouse to Mundisic whilst Balamir is living, and it must be by the death of Balamir that he must open his way to the possession of Hunnimonda. If that way were open to me,* replyed Mundisic, *I would follow it with joy, but since my ill fortune hath stopp'd it, I will follow that it hath left me, to revenge my self sufficiently of thee, and to hinder thee to build thy happiness on my ruine; if thou dost not fear anything from thy natural Prince, thou mayst fear all things from a despairing Lover; and consider, that I am yet Master of the destiny of Hunnimonda, though thou believest to be so of mine; thou shalt have her however, since thou wilt, and that I am in no estate to defend her longer against thee, but it shall not be alive that thou shalt see her in thine Arms, and thou oughtest resolve thy self in a moment either to abandon her for ever, or receive her at the feet of these Walls in the estate I go to send her thee.*

Finishing these words, he drew his Sword from his Scabbard, and by that action, as well as by his words, struck a cruel fear into the Soul of Balamir, which not being able to express, but by a cry, he pierced the Heavens with a voice so resounding, as obliged all those who were near Mundisic, and Mundisic himself, to turn their eyes towards him. *How Mundisic,* (cryed he, wholly transported) *wilt thou be so cruel as to kill Hunnimonda? I would do more,* said Mundisic, *to hinder thee from possessing her, and rather than give her thee, I will sacrifice with her the whole world to my despair. Consider cruel one,* (added the Prince, overwhelmed with grief) *consider the difference between us, though I consent that Hunnimonda should be thine, if she desire it, yet thou wilt give her a death, to hinder her from being mine. And you who assist at this horrible Spectacle,* (continued he, beholding those that were about him) *save Hunnimonda from his fury, and fear, if you do not, all that rage can inspire of most cruel against you into a despairing Lover.*

Those to whom these words were address'd, beheld each other with fear, and Mundisic possibly doubting some effect might hinder the execution of his design, *Know,* said he to Balamir, *that I am Master among mine, and to give thee proofs, that I have too long deferred it, receive Hunnimonda, whom I send thee.* Speaking these words, he, with his Sacrilegious hand, laid hold on the Princess's fair hair, and with the other, distancing his Sword, to put himself in an estate to drive it into her Bosom; *Pardon me Princess,* said he, *an effect of Love, rather than cruelty, and since you cannot be mine, suffer me, that I defend you from being any others in the world.* At these words he was about to pierce her Stomach, which she courageously held forth, or at least, by his action, he made all those which beheld him judge it, when he had his ear struck with a second cry of Balamir, but a cry much more resounding than the first, and a cry accompanied with the most vehement words he could pronounce to hinder the effect of his cruel resolution; *Hold Barbarian,* said he, *I yield to thee Hunnimonda, I abandon to thee Hunnimonda.*

These words, the only ones which apparently could work that effect, stopp'd the Arm of Mundisic; and in the posture wherein he was, turning his eyes towards the despairing Balamir; *Think not,* said he, *to abuse me with words, but if thou wilt that Hunnimonda should live, make thy Troops at this instant depart hence, and afterwards out of Sarmatia. Yes, yes,* replyed the disconsolate Prince, *I will depart from Sarmatia, and depart from the world, if thou wilt, to save the life of Hunnimonda. How Balamir,* (cryed the Princess, calling her eyes upon him), *Do you give me then to Mundisic? Now I choose rather to give my self to death, to preserve me to you. I had rather give you to Mundisic,* replyed the afflicted Prince, *than give you to death, and much more willingly would I see you in the Throne of my Fathers, than in your Tomb. Ah feeble Prince,* replyed Hunnimonda, *Is it thus thou forsakest me, by a fear unworthy thy courage? Or dost thou fear, that a man who loves me, will be capable to take away my life? I fear all things from that cruel one,* replyed the Prince, *I fear all things from my ill fortune, to which I see my self miserably left, nor have I so much courage, as to suffer one threat of your death. Depart instantly from this fatal place,* (continued he, turning to his Officers about him) *depart from Sarmatia, and lead me to death, since I cannot go but to death after the loss of Hunnimonda.*

Pronouncing these words, he was seized with so violent a grief, that his strength was not able to sustain him, and his eyes covering themselves with darkness, he remained without sense, or knowledge in our Arms; we carried him to his Tent, and laid him on his Bed, where he remained a long time in that estate, and when he was come to himself, turning his eyes on all sides, and remembering the miserable estate of his condition, he wanted little

to relapse into a second Fit, from which possibly our assistance had not been able to recover him; so soon as he opened his mouth, he demanded if the Troops were disencamped about *Pafiris*; and having understood that they yet attended his Orders, *How*, (said he, with those sighs which interrupted the course of his words) *Will they kill me by this delay? and not consider, that whilst we are here, the life of Hunnimonda is in danger?* At these words he rose from his Bed, though he had scarce strength enough to support himself, and having commanded the Troops which were nearest the Castle to disencamp with speed, and leave all passages free to the besieged, he mounted on Horseback, and marched towards *Toracia*, which is half a days journey from *Pafiris*; and in his way to return to *Dacia*. Turning his back to the fatal House in which he had abandoned *Hunnimonda*, he cast towards it his eyes swollen with tears, and opening his mouth with a multitude of sighs, which scarce permitted him to speak, *Adieu Hunnimonda*, cryed he, *and since it must be so, adieu Hunnimonda for ever*. He accompanied these words but with very few others, and the rest of that day he expressed his grief only by his silence, much more doleful than if he had done it by words. All the endeavours we used to divertise him proved vain, and when we knew that we were troublesome to him, and that he answered us only by sighs, and a river of tears, which all his courage could not hinder from trickling down his cheeks, we were constrain'd to leave all repose, and to follow him, with a silence which did not ill accompany that which his had in it of dreadful. Those who marched nearest to him understood sometimes some words cut off by sobs, but as he pronounc'd them according to those thoughts, which made him open his mouth, the most common were generally these; *Yesterday*, said he once, *I hoped, that this day Hunnimonda should be mine, and this very day I lose Hunnimonda for ever; O Gods, what terrible change is this in the space of one day?* Another day, being near him, I heard him pronounce these words very low, which he address'd as it were to *Mundisc*; *And well, cruel one*, said he, *see thy self now possessor of Hunnimonda, whilst nothing rests to the unfortunate Balamir, but the very despair of having a part in her*.

Arriving at *Toracia*, he commanded my Father, and the other Commanders to take care of the Army, declaring to them, that he could no longer think of it, and that they ought neither longer to hope any orders or counsel from him, no more than if he had not been in the world. These marks of so lively and profound a grief, and of a grief we durst not condemn, after the knowledge we had of its cruel cause, touched us in the very midst of our hearts, but we were much more concern'd, when after he had passed the most cruel night that imagination could represent to us, on the morrow he was seized with a Fever, so violent, that immediately by all Symptoms it appeared dangerous. He would however have risen, but his strength failed him, and in twenty four hours he was more weaken'd, than a man, vigorous like him, could in all probability have been in eight days. When he knew the danger of his disease, he was glad instead of afflicting himself, and turning his eyes towards me, whom he ordinarily saw nearest his person, as to him who without doubt bore him the greatest affection, *I praise the Gods*, said he to me, *that I shall not survive the loss of Hunnimonda, and if thou lovest me Telanor, thou oughtest to rejoice as well as I*. *O Death*, saide he a little after, *how much art thou desired of a heart that can love nothing but thee, having lost all it loved, and having lost it*, added he, *in so terrible a manner?* At this discourse, and others little different, he made all those who hearkened to him, burst into tears, and reaching forth his hand sometimes to one, and sometimes to another, according to the affection he had for them, *We believed not my friends*, said he, *that beginning so happy, shou'd have an end so deplorable; but it is the will of the Gods, and I submit to it my self without murmuring*.

On the second day of his sickness, he commanded that the Troops should depart, and pursue their marching without halting, till they came out of *Sarmatia*, not believing that whilst he had a man of our party in Arms, the life of *Hunnimonda* could be in security: and he commanded it so absolutely, that whatever regret the Officers had to abandon him, they were forced to obey, and there remain'd no more than those of his own House with him at *Toracia*. At first his grief made him refuse all remedies, and that very sustenance which was presented to him: but being of a sweet spirit, and naturally full of tenderness and goodness, the affliction he observed amongst his Attendants touched him, and to please them and assuage their grief in a time wherein it was comfortless, he received what they gave him, but in a manner which made them well judge the little fruit he hop'd or desired. In few days his weakness encreas'd in such manner, that almost all hope of his recovery was lost; and as for his goodness and admirable virtues he was adored by all his friends, there was possibly none did not resent the danger of his Matter, as strongly as if himself had

had been threatned with it, and who did not deplore with tears of blood, if it may be so spoken, the loss of the fairest hopes were ever conceived, and the loss of a Prince, who in his three and twentieth year, already by his great actions, equalled the chiefest of those famous men, which had for many past ages been known in the world. The heat of his Fever depriving him of a part of his knowledge and reason, made him sometimes extravagant in his discourses, and in those intervals, having his imagination replete with the misfortune befallen him, he spoke of nothing else, but continually address'd his discourse to *Hunnimonda*, or *Mundisic*, *Ab my Princess*, said he sometimes, *remember that you cannot be other than mine, and that if you be not mine, you ought never to be any persons*; and then turning himself towards us with as much readines as his strength would permit, *Ab my friends*, said he, *succour Hunnimonda, whom Mundisic is about to destroy. Stop cruel one*, added he, *and do not dare to kill Hunnimonda; pierce rather this bosom which I present, and take away Balamir's life to make Hunnimonda die, for she will else continually live in his heart.*

I abuse your patience, my Lords, though I should without doubt beget in you a pity, if I should recount to you all the particulars of the sickness and grief of *Balamir*; it is true they were not of the same continuance, for after his recovery of the first, his grief continued as lively and violent as it had been at its first spring. Having been reduced to the last extremity, he recovered by the will of the Gods, who gave his life to our tears and prayers; but he received without doubt the knowledge of his recovery in no other manner than he had done that of any other mischief. It seem'd likewise, that his grief, after having lain as it were, some time in a slumber, by reason of the violence of his Fever return'd with all its strength, and still gained new force as his body gained strength. *How*, (said he to us one day, after the Physicians had assur'd us he was out of danger) *Is death it self refused to the unfortunate Balamir? and that death which often cuts off the fairest lives when not desired, can it cruelly refuse its assistance to a miserable that demands it?* My Lord, (said I, finding my self now near him, as I continually was) *if you had reason to desire death, the Gods would not have refused it you: but by the diligence they have to preserve your life in so great a danger, they make us judge they reserve you to a better fortune. And to what fortune can I be reserved*, reply'd he, *since I have lost Hunnimonda?* You have not possibly lost her, reply'd I, though you have left her to *Mundisic*; and it is very likely, that a person whom you beheld despising death for you, when she saw it presented to her eyes, will have the constancy to resist him to the end. Though what you say should be true, reply'd the Prince, I ought not to desire it, for since by those means I have unfortunately attempted, I cannot redeem *Hunnimonda* out of the hands of *Mundisic*, I ought rather wish that she should be his Spouse than his Captive, and that she should, if it were possible, find repose, glory, and happiness with him, than continually remain expos'd to his violence and cruelty. If she could be happy with *Mundisic*, I should have only my own misfortune to deplore, whilst by the mixture of hers and mine, in the condition I have left her, I am doubly unfortunate. However, concluded he with a sigh, whatever consolation I can find in the constancy of *Hunnimonda*, I cannot flatter my self with this unjust hope, and though *Hunnimonda* hath had sufficient courage to despise death, there are other dangers for her she cannot despise, and misfortunes too great not to make her rather accept *Mundisic* for her Spouse, than be expos'd to them.

By this discourse it seem'd that the Prince foresaw the news he was soon to receive, for two days after, by the imprudence of the principal Inhabitants of *Toracia*, who visited him, he understood that after our departure from *Pasiris*, *Mundisic* had the same day removed, and was retired to *Olbia*, a fair City, seated near the mouth of the River *Hispanis*, and which was entirely at his devotion; that he had employed some days to settle his affairs in *Sarmatia*, and that in the end he had espoused the Princess *Hunnimonda*. Though *Balamir* was prepared to receive this news, and seem'd to have expected it, with a resolution to suffer it constantly, yet however he could not receive it, but with that augmentation of grief he had not before prov'd and which wanted but little to conduct him to his Tomb; he fell into those great weaknesses which made us fear a relapse of his Fever, his eyes stream'd down rivers of tears, and he uttered the most affectionate expressions in the world; and when after the first days were past, I endeavour'd to make him remember what he had told me concerning that Marriage, and those reasons by which he had testified to me, that he desired it, rather than feared it, *Yes Telanor*, said he, *I had reason to desire it, and I have reasons at present to afflict my self. If I were of force to lose Hunnimonda, as I did believe I should, I ought to desire she should be Wife to Mundisic, and not eternally his slave: but at that time the Gods might have adied a miracle in my favour, but at present by all their power I cannot hope it, though Mundisic should die, though he would restore Hunnimonda to me, she cannot be mine, having espoused my Brother, so that where-ever I seek my remedy or consolation, I can find it no where but in death.*

This cruel news was confirm'd to us from day to day, and in little time it was spread through all *Sarmatia* though the particulars of this Marriage were never recourted, by which it might be judg'd in what manner *Hunnimonda* had received the change of her condition, nor any thing else said but that after her Marriage she had been seen by very few persons. The Prince could not at present, notwithstanding what he had some days before said for her justification, hinder himself from sometimes accusing her of infidelity and weakness, and at some times likewise suspecting her to have permitted herself to be overcome by the splendour of *Mundic's* fortune; and some motions he had to desire this to be true that he might have more reason to comfort himself for the loss of an unfaithful person: but this belief would scarce serve him in his desire, for he was so well persuad'd of the generosity of *Hunnimonda*, that it was difficult for him to receive a contrary impression.

I will not extend my self farther on what I might tell you of the grief of my Prince, you will apprehend it less by the discourse I can make you than by the knowledge I have given you of the greatness of his love. In fine, notwithstanding the obstacle it brought to his perfect recovery, by the assistance of Heaven and our care he gain'd both his health and strength, and found himself in a condition to mount on horseback and carry through the world that cruel enemy of his repose which rendred it self Mistress of his Soul. He departed from *Toracia* so soon as he could, but it was with design to absent himself from those places where he had lost all, and from those places where he had likewise been happy, and not to return to the King his Father. He understood by advices from him some days before, that he was incens'd against him and had accus'd him of weakness for having abandoned *Sarmatia* to *Mundic*, and being wanting to execute his Orders to the full: But it was not this hindred his return to Court: he confid'd sufficiently in his innocence, and in the greatness of the services he had done for the Crown, to believe he should receive any ill usage, but he resolv'd to flee from a place where all he could see would but renew his grief and never reenter into that Kingdom where the cruel enemy of his life was to reign.

But because he would wander in the world without splendour or noise, or as one that sought death, believing in the search of it he had no need of any great train, at his departure from *Toracia* he sent all his household into *Dacia*; keeping only with him my self and seven or eight men who obstinately resolv'd to accompany him to death and whose affection he could not refuse. He gave to those he sent back the greatest part of what he had in gold and jewels, and I had some difficulty to retain what was necessary for our journey. He gave them likewise Letters of recommendation to the Queen, by which he pray'd her to recompence those services they had done him, and he charg'd them with one Letter to the King the words of which were these.

Prince *Balamir* to the King of the *Huns*.

I have not been unfaithful Sir, though I have been weak; nor is it by intelligence with *Mundic* that I have abandoned to him *Sarmatia*. I was too enamour'd to execute your Orders, and you ought to have given them to a man to whom something in the world was less dear than the life of *Hunnimonda*. I must confess I have sacrific'd all to her preservation, but with your interests I have well forgot my own, and with *Sarmatia* you know what I have abandoned. You may reduce him easily to his duty, now that he is possessor of what made him violate it; and if I may beg of you any favour, I will beg of you pardon for the Husband of *Hunnimonda*.

With that little Equipage I told you he departed from *Toracia*, and because he would turn his back to *Dacia*, to *Scandia*, to *Gosbia*, to *Pannonia*, and to all the Realms of the King his Father, he followed the banks of the River *Tebesus* to *Harmonacie* where he embark'd in the *Euxine* Sea to pass into *Asia*. It is not your pleasure my Lords that I should recount to you the particulars of our journeys, in which there is nothing of what you desired from me though there happened many strange adventures, and that in the design which *Balamir* had to seek death or at least to flee from life as much as possible, he did Actions truly admirable in all those occasions that offer'd themselves. We cross'd the *Euxine* Sea, left *Ibrace* and the streight of *Bizantium* on our right hand, and at length landed at *Heraclia*. We pass'd thence into *Papblagonia*, saw *Cappadocia* and *Bithynia*, and ran through *Armenia*, *Lydia*, and *Pamphilia*.

Balamir stopp'd at all places where he found War, and joyning himself to that party he believed

believed most just, in the first encounters so signaliz'd himself, that he could not remain unknown, but so soon as his valour had produced this effect he stole it to other places where he believed he might better conceal it, still departing so soon as he began to be observed. In this manner he spent a whole year, during which time I can with truth say, to justify him from the accusation you have rais'd against him, that the remembrance of *Hunnimonda* was still as present in his memory as it had been at our departure from *Sarmatia*; nor saw I any hope he would ever be comforted for so great a loss, though he considered the Action differently according to the different agitation of his soul, and that oftentimes he could not hinder himself from accusing her of infidelity.

But O Gods! what increase of affliction was his, when at a Port of the *Lydian* Sea at which we once more embark'd to pass the *Aegean* straits he found some Merchants of *Messia* by whom he was known, and from whom he understood all that he could farther understand, which was the death of the deplorable *Hunnimonda*. We understood from them in effect that *Mundisc* had no long time enjoyed his happiness, and that in the same City where he had espous'd his Princess he had soon after lost her by a sudden death, and of which few people had known the particulars: That he had appear'd desperate and had for a long time refus'd all consolation: but that in the end he was return'd into *Dacia*, where the King had receiv'd him, and seeing him sufficiently punished by his grief had pardon'd what was past.

This news in all likelihood ought not to have caus'd too violent an alteration in the spirit of a man who for a long time had lost all pretences to *Hunnimonda*: for whether she were unfaithful or that the miseries of her condition had reduced her to espouse *Mundisc*, most certain it is that *Balamir* lost nothing more and that other persons would have understood with a limited grief the punishment which heaven had inflict'd on their enemy. But *Balamir* acted not in this manner, for all that I have told you of the marks he gave of his grief at the first loss of *Hunnimonda*, was not comparable to what he made us behold in this last. He contented not himself to weep or lament, he would dye either by hunger or that element on whose waves we floated: and seeing that we continually observ'd him, he for several days refus'd all sort of nourishment, and if we had not been continually on our knees to conjure him to yield something to those persons who had so voluntarily sacrific'd their lives to his service, and renounc'd all things to fix themselves inseparably to the miseries of his life, we had difficultly oblig'd him to live. But in fine heaven assist'd us, and by its assistance we preserv'd a life so dear to us, and continued to see the deplorable progress of the rest of our voyages.

Being a long time weakn'd by his grief, and scarce able to sustain himself he preferred the Sea to the Land, were it whether he hated the Land on which he had receiv'd such bloody displeasures, or that he believ'd to find that more easily on the Sea what he had for a long time sought, and permitting himself to be carried by the Masters of the Ship in which we were, who were *Sicilians*, from the *Aegean* Sea, we enter'd into the *Mediterranean*, pass'd between *Sicilia* and *Africa*, left *Sardigna* on our right hand, and having coasted the *Baleares* and the most distant part of *Spain* which we saw on our left we set foot on shore at the City of the *Massiliens*.

Wearied with the Sea as well as Land he would no more return to it, but having remain'd some few days at the City of the *Massiliens*, we departed thence and enter'd into *Aquitaine*, travell'd the the greatest part of the *Gaules* and by *Belgica* came to the Banks of the *Rhine*, and pass'd it below *Collen* to enter into *Germany*: We travell'd through the Country of the *Catti* and that of the *Cherusques*, and being come to the banks of the *Elba* we approach'd the Frontiers of the *Cimbrians* or *Bohemians*. It was not the fame of the beauty of *Rosamond*, however great in the world, that oblig'd my Prince to take his course this way; and I can speak it with truth, that though two years were past since our departure from *Sarmatia*, and one since he understood the death of *Hunnimonda*, his grief was yet entire in his soul; nor saw I in him any disposition to hearken to those consolations we would give him, much less to receive any new impressi'on: but having understood of the War of the *Franks* and *Burgundians* against the *Sueves* and *Cimbrians*, of the defeat of the last, of the retreat of their Kings into *Suevia*; and in the end of the War then begun between the King of the *Franks* and the King of the *Burgundians*: he found so much justice and generosity in your proceedings my Lord, said *Telaor* to King *Pharamond*, and had already, whatever emulation the fame of your great Actions might excite in his soul, so great a respect for your fair reputation, that without consulting he resolv'd to embrace your party against that of *Gondioch*, and to fight unknown in your Army as he had done in other places either to serve a just cause, and a Prince whose renown had charm'd him, or in those Conflicts to find an end to that disquietful life that had so long been burthenfom to him.

He did what he could to be present at that Battel which was fought between you, but came a day too late: yet on the morrow he found reason to comfort himself for that delay by the encounter of the Princess *Rosamond*, whom *Gondioch* led away prisoner, and the occasion he had to do her a considerable service, by delivering her from the hands of her Ravisher. You have already known my Lord all that passed in that Action: nor are you more ignorant than other men that it was here that the soul of *Balamir* found its remedy against that grief which had for a long time possessed it, and that by a miracle which could not be produced but by the divine beauties of *Rosamond*, in a second loss of his liberty he lost the remembrance of *Hunnimonda*. It is true that so prodigious a change astonished me, but it was by reason of the little disposition I had seen in him to it, and not by the default of power in the beauty of *Rosamond*, sufficient to work a greater effect; nor by those reasons *Balamir* might have to defend himself: for it is certain that though he had not been recovered of the wounds he suffer'd by the encounter of the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, he had already done enough for the love and memory of *Hunnimonda*, not to fear any reproach though he had been capable to find a remedy in time and reason without any other succour: and I believe that though he had not these reasons to justify him, but had committed a real intidclity, the power that forced him would make his fault excusable. I will tell you however possibly to remove you from an opinion common to other persons, that it was not by the first sight of *Rosamond*, that *Hunnimonda* was banished from his mind, though he spoke some words accosting her that made some of that opinion. It is true that he was astonished and charm'd at the sight of that majestic beauty; but the remembrance of *Hunnimonda*, dead as she was, and unfaithful as he might believe her, before her death defended it self for some time against her, and quitted not the place till after a greater knowledge of all those wonders against which it is impossible to be defended.

I Confess, (said now the King of the Franks to *Telanor*, seeing he had done speaking) that Prince *Balamir* could not be accused of infidelity towards *Hunnimonda*, and that by her Marriage with another, and after by her death, he was dispensed from rendring so much as he was pleased to do to her love and to her memory. But with ceasing to accuse him I cannot from being astonished and with difficulty can I apprehend how a soul abandoned to love like that of *Balamir*, and which for this love had passed by all other considerations, and come with his elder Brother to those extremities you have recounted to me, and who after the loss of *Hunnimonda* in the space of two years, and in so long voyages could not find any solace to his grief, could so easily give way to a second affection. Yet possibly I wrong my self by being astonished, having felt as I have, the power of those divine beauties which have produced this effect; and I am reduced in the end to say, that if any other puissance had caused this change; I should not have apprehended it. "It is true, added the great *Constance*, that that which *Telanor* hath recounted to us of the love of *Balamir*, hath described a passion so strong, and a Constancy so great, as might make us believe that this impression would remain fixed in his Soul till death: but it is from admirable causes that we are to expect admirable effects; and though I have never seen the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, yet by what I have heard of her beauty, I should not wonder if she should cause unfaithfulness. "You would without doubt less astonish your self, replied the King of the Franks, if you had seen her, for it is difficult that by the recital any should make you apprehend the beauty of *Rosamond*: but though no person ought better than my self to agree to the certainty of the effects she is able to produce, I will yet attribute a part of this to my ill fortune, which, against all appearances and by ways so little ordinary, hath brought me from the extreme parts of *Asia*, a Rival, who for his merit is more formidable than all the rest: not but that I hope to dispute *Rosamond* against him with sufficient courage; but we shall give each other some trouble, and we began yesterday to prove that we cannot despise each other. I know well my Lord, said *Telanor* to him, that he hath more respect and esteem for you, than for all the rest of men, and as he hath always been of the humour to reverence virtue in the persons of his greatest enemies, and that he hath never had reason to be your foe; I assure my self that the love of *Rosamond*, though it arm his hand against you, doth not at all lessen in him that veneration the greatest of men owe to your self. I have often heard him speak before the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and before your other Rivals, and dare assure you you have no friend pays you more justice than this generous enemy. He hath more reason than he believes, said now *Constance*, and if he remembers——*Constance* would have continued, when *Pharamond* judging well that he was about to speak of the obligation *Balamir* had to him for the assistance given him in the Country of the *Bohemians* against those *Assassins* that had assaulted him, not willing he should in this manner have the knowledge

knowledge of it, took the hand of *Constance* and pressing it in his, at the same time made a sign to him with his eye which made him know his intention, and diverted him from the design he in effect had to speak of that encounter; and seeing that he stopp'd and that he sought to the discourse he had begun another continuance than what he had intended, he to assist him broke silence, and beholding *Telanor* in a very obliging manner, *But Telanor*, said he, *you have not acquitted your self of what you promised us, nor have you let us understand any thing of what happened to Balamir since he became amorous of Rosamond.* "My Lord, replied *Telanor*, "I have recounted to you what I believed you ignorant of, or at least what you could only "confusedly know; but for what hath happened to my Prince since his being in *Germany*, I "believe there are few things hid from you. I doubt not but you have understood his war- "like exploits against the *Burgundians*, whom he drove out of the Country of the *Cimbrians* "with those Forces the Princess gave him before the arrival of the King her Father, you have "understood the favourable reception the King gave him, of his stay at *Lisurgis*, and the dan- "ger to which he was expos'd by the treachery of some *Assasins* who would have murder'd "him, and had in effect done it by what himself confesses, had he not received succour by the "valour of a miraculous person, being wounded in such manner that he was forced to stay at "Lisurgis after the departure of the Princess to attend his cure, and could not arrive with her, "till after the loss of the Battel and the death of the King her Father. "We have understood "a part of what you say, said *Pharamond*, but there are other things which we may better "understand from you than from Renown, and having recounted to us so at length the loves "of *Balamir* and the Princess *Hunnimonda*, you say nothing to us of his love to the Queen "of the *Cimbrians*, and the progress he hath made in her affection since he hath been near "her. "My Lord, replied *Telanor*, I have made you the recital of all that hath befall'n to my "Prince in his loves with the Princess *Hunnimonda*, because I believed that that dis- "course was permitted me, and that there was no need of secrecy in things known to whole "Kingdoms, and which concern but one person no longer alive; but for what regards the "Queen of the *Cimbrians* I have not the same liberty: for when my Prince has trusted me the "secret, you may believe well my Lord, that it would not be comely for me to tell it you. "Without the interest that I have, replied the King sighing, I would not demand it of you: "but I believe you will easily pardon to a Lover that indiscretion which only curiosity makes "him guilty of. "To speak sincerely, replied *Telanor*, I believe that neither my Prince nor "my self have any secret to preserve in this interest; and though I believe and see that the "Queen shews by all sorts of proofs, that she esteems him more than all the other "Princes engaged in her concerns, as to speak truth for merit there is a notable difference, "and that she would declare her self in his favour much rather than in that of all others, I "think, and my Prince will not be troubled when I shall speak it, that the sentiments she "hath for him extend not beyond civility or what is due to his desert. "*Balamir* may me- "rit more, said the King of the Franks sighing, and it is this which causes my disquiet; but "the miserable *Pharamond* would be most happy if he could hope only good will in a heart "which could banish her hatred for him. However it be, I could wish with all my heart "that the Gods would again raise up *Hunnimonda* for *Balamir*, and leave me to dispute *Ros-* "samond with all the rest. "Though *Balamir* be our enemy, (said Prince *Marcombie* who "had not yet spoken) I confess that I have never been more tenderly touched by any recital "than that of his misfortunes, and that I could dedicate tears to his miseries and those of the "Princess *Hunnimonda*. "It is true, added the valiant *Artabure*, that this Princess was wor- "thy of a better fortune, and by the description which *Telanor* hath made, I believe there are "few persons among us, have not been touched with Fortunes hard dealing with her. "I "have repented it at the midst of my heart, said the Prince *Sunnon*. "And I have seen, ad- "ded *Phagabers*, that *Priam* and *Ibere* have had their eyes moistned as well as my self. "For "my part, said *Genebaud*, I never weep, but I am assured there is no person in the company, "who bears more hatred than my self to the cruel *Mundisic*. "Would to God, said King "Pharamond, that fortune had given me him for Rival instead of his brother, I should less "fear him though he were already possessour of the Estate of the King his Father, and that "he strengthened our enemies with an Army of an hundred thousand men. "But if *Rosa-* "mond fell into his hands, said *Charamont*, you would gain nothing by this change: for you "would fear more his Sword at such a time than you would fear all those of our enemies in "in the sharpest Combat. "I should without doubt fear it more, replied the King, and I "will moreover tell you, that I would without long consulting do the same thing with *Ba-* "lamir. "I know not, said *Meroveur*, whether he did not a little too much precipitate that "Action, nor can I believe that if he had remained resolute to the end, *Mundisic* could truly "have transported himself to kill *Hunnimonda*. "Such an act of cruelty is not without

“example, (*replied Ihere:*) for there are many persons, whom jealousy and despair hath made to commit the like. “It might be, *said Constance*, that *Mundisic* would only affright *Balamir*, but however, it was not easie to run that hazard, to tempt a man so passionately amorous; and as in that incertitude, he had scarce a moment to lose, in the decision of the life or death of *Hunnimondz*. I confesse as well as the King, I should not have delayed to act as he did. “You may assure *Balamir*, *said Pharamond* to *Telanor* that among his enemies he may find friends to serve him against *Mundisic* if they had yet any occasion, and that our interests cannot hinder us from respecting virtue, and it is that which makes me always put a difference between him and our other Rivals; but we shall have sufficient opportunities to know our selves better than now we do. To these words he added yet others intermingled with sweetness and frendship, and after Supper, *Telanor* took leave of him, and had the liberty to return to his Master at his pleasure, having received all sort of civility and good usage.

The End of the Third Book of the Fourth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK IV.

THis illustrious Company were about the end of their Supper, when *Valerius*, whom *Constance* had sent to the Enemies Camp, enter'd the Chamber, with two men which accompanied him. All that regarded the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, so sensibly touching the King of the *Franks*, he could not see a person who came from her, and who ought to tell them news of her, without being surpris'd with some alteration, which was observ'd by all those who cast their eyes on his Countenance: And *Constance* causing *Valerius* to approach, commanded him to tell what he had done with the Queen of the *Cimbrians*. My Lord, *said he*, I have done what you commanded me, and obtain'd (if the King agree to it) a little more than you have demanded. The Queen of the *Cimbrians* hath shewed a great esteem for your name, and as to the design you have to see her, and the King of the *Sueves*, though according to my opinion, their inclinations are far distant from peace, hath manifested a great value for your mediation, and desire to render you what is due to you by the Allies of the Empire: He had already understood that you were here, and told me, that any where else he had before visited you. In fine my Lord, the honour I have to be yours, hath made me receive from the Queen, from him, and the whole Camp, much greater honours than were due to my person. And concerning the Proposition made for a cessation of Arms for three dayes, the Queen fearing that in that time you would not be in a condition to mount on Horseback, hath granted it for eight, and hath sent one of her own to cause it be sign'd by the King, if he so please. “My intention, *said Pharamond*, shall not be only to sign it for eight days, but I would sign it with my blood for the rest of my life, and if there need no more than the giving of it, to make the Queen consent, she knows well how willingly I would surrender it.

Speaking these words, he cast his eyes on the Envoy of *Rosmond*, who saluted him with a profound respect, and causing him approach his Bed, he saluted him with a civility and

and sweetness which left not in his Soul any enemy-like thought. He presently signed the cessation of Arms, and return'd it into his hands, praying him to tell the Queen, that if it were only against his life that she made war, he entreated, that he might bring at once more to her feet, and that she would content her self with the death of the Criminal, without engaging in his miseries so many thousand innocents. The *Cimbrian* was as much touch'd at the discourse of the King, as charmed by his Majestick Aspect, and that admirable Grace he had, both in his speech, and in all his action, and receiving with a becoming respect the agreement he tendred him; *Would to the Gods, my Lord,* said he, *that the Seal you do me the honour to give me, were for an eternal peace, and not only for a truce of few days; and I assure myself, that only for some particular persons interess'd, there are few in our party would disown in me this wish. I would,* said *Constance,* *that you had yet pursued it farther. And I will possibly, my Lord,* replied the *Cimbrian,* *pursue it, if it be perouit'd me.*

These words drew some sighs from the breast of *Pharamond*, who would willingly have entertained himself more particularly with this man, if he had thought such manner of treating could have been permitted; but judging well, that in the orders he had, he would not open himself farther to him, he, with a look full of sweetness, returned him thanks for his good intentions; and seeing in the chamber *Cloderic*, and *Albimer*, who knew him, he commanded them to take care of him (since, at so late an hour, he could with conveniency return no more than *Telanor*, who was to go along with him) till the morrow. *We will go together,* said *Constance,* *and though instead of three days, I have obtained eight, I believe that what I have enterpris'd, may oblige me to more than one Journey, and that I shall have little time to spare, though I begin to labour in it to morrow. I fear,* said *Pharamond,* *lest you should receive some prejudice by riding so soon after your wound, and you cannot deliver me from that fear, but by attending yet some days.* *Constance* consented to him, that he felt not any thing might hinder him from a greater travel, in a less necessity. And a little after, causing *Valerius* to approach, *Pharamond* began to question him concerning what he had seen in the Enemies Camp, and principally concerning the beauty of *Rosamond*, and the accomplishments of his Rivals. *For the beauty of the Queen of the Cimbrians,* said *Valerius,* *I confess, that it is infinitely above all that I can speak, and in what manner soever, by the general fame, I might prepare my self, all that I could imagine, was too much beneath the truth. She is a Star,* (continued he, turning towards *Constance*) *whose Rays it is impossible to support without being strook dead; however, I can speak with truth, that this prodigious Beauty, though truly the others were inferiour to it, could not defend me from the admiration which those of the Queen of the Turingiens, and the Princess of the Sueves might justly give. I expected impatiently,* said *Marcomire,* *to hear you make some mention of that of Albisinda. And I doubt not,* added the young *Sannon,* *but that of Amalazontha might well cause in you some admiration.* “For the Princes which I have seen, and which were shewn, and named to me with no small care, continued *Valerius,* I confess, that all things in their persons are answerable to their fair reputations, and that what is reported of their valour, is accompanied with the most advantageous appearances in the world. I might possibly say more, had I seen *Balamir*, whom fame speaks for noble air excelling all the rest, but the wound he yesterday received in fight, made him keep his Bed. *Since he made me do the same,* said *Pharamond,* *it is just he should do so too.* “I have seen *Ardaric*, continued *Valerius*, who by the death of the Son of *Acacer*, is become King of the *Alains*, as he was before of the *Gepides*, and since we had seen him in *Spain*, at the time he was vanquish'd by the great *Constance*, I was now willing to observe him the more, and I have in truth seen nothing in his person which answers not worthily to his renown. I have seen *Udegesile*, a Prince of a high and magnificent appearance, but of a Spirit fierce and proud, by what I could judge. I have seen *Humbert*, the young King of the *Basternes*, who not long since, by the death of *Odoacre*, became possessor of that Crown, but instead of inheriting his Brother's passion, is, according to report, enamoured of the Princess *Albisinda*. I have seen *Gondemar*, all whose person and actions have admirably pleas'd me: and I have seen King *Gondioch*, whose extraordinary composure easily persuades a belief of what renown hath publish'd of him in the world, and I confess, that these two Brothers have appeared to me of a nobler aspect than all the rest, if possibly I may not except another Prince, whom I have seen, but whom I expected not to find there. *And what is that new comer, whose rencounter hath surpris'd you?* (said King *Pharamond*) *since, in my judgment, you have named all the Princes that are in the Enemies party, if Fortune, having wrought some change in his inclination, hath not led thither Prince Viridomar?* “It is not *Viridomar* whom I have seen in the Camp of the
“ *Cimbrians,*

Cimbrians, said *Valerius*, but you will possibly, my Lord, be no less astonished, (continued he, turning towards *Constance*) when by the mouth of a man, whom you see nigh me, and whom you may possibly know, if you mark his countenance, you may possibly understand who it is.

At this discourse of *Valerius*, *Constance* cast his eyes upon a person that came with him, and who was in effect very near him; and having for some time beheld him, knew him for one of the Esquires of Prince *Varanez*. The sight of this person, with what *Valerius* had told him, surpris'd him, and having made him approach, and with great greediness demanded news of his Master, My Lord, (said he, in the Roman Tongue, which he spoke very well) he sent me hither to seek *Mitranez*, whom he left with you, to demand pardon of you, if he return'd not himself, as he had promised, and to make you a recital of what hath happened to him since your separation. I shall be always content, replied *Constance*, to understand news of a Prince of so great merit, and who hath promised me some part in his friendship; but I could wish with all my heart, that it be not some troublesome accident stops him so near us, and permits him not to return, as he hath made me hope. You will understand the reason, my Lord, said the Esquire, when you please to hearken to me, and since there are but few days since you have been separated, you may well judge, there cannot arrive any Adventures may oblige a long Narration. Of whatsoever length it may be, replied the illustrious Roman, I shall hear you speak with infinite pleasure of a Prince I honour as I ought, provided you have no ill news to recount me; but if you have any secret to tell me, the King will permit me to retire to my Chamber, to give you audience, when you please. Since I believe, said the Persian, that all that hath befallen my Prince before he departed from you, is not unknown to the King of the Franks, and that he hath neither power, nor design, to keep secret what happen'd since your separation, I shall make no difficulty, if you desire it, to acquit myself before the King, and before this fair company, of the order I have received from my Prince; I believe likewise to be obliged to it, having a Commission, with which I am charged to the King, and of which probably I ought not to acquit my self till he have the knowledge of those things I have to recount. Whatever be the Commission, (said the King to the Esquire of *Varanez*) I shall hearken to it willingly, for from such a Prince as your Master, we can expect no other than things worthy of his courage and grandeur, and therefore doubt not, if we are not suspected to you, but we shall listen with delight to the recital you make to *Constance*, and that we will interest our selves as we ought, in what has happen'd to the Prince of Persia, after his departure from us. The Esquire of *Varanez*, after this discourse, made no farther difficulty, to recount before *Pharamond*, what he was to tell *Constance*, and having for some time meditated on the discourse he was to make, he began in this manner.

The Continuation of the History of *Varanez*, Prince of Persia.

YOU may well judge, my Lord, that the Prince of Persia had not left you, though he left you in a place where he ought to hope you would receive all manner of good usage, if he had not been led away by that passion, which for a long time had not permitted him to taste repose, and which made him wander from Province to Province, without other design than that, to recover himself either by time, or the different objects that might divertise him; yet however, it had been difficult for him to explain to you what that passion was; for after the encounter of that fatal Pourtraicture, for which he fought in your presence, against that Cavalier who owned it, there was wrought a strange change in his Soul, by which it was become wholly different from what it was before. Not that the image of *Athenais* was banish'd from his memory, for it had been difficult for the sight of a Picture to expel so strong an impression; but he remain'd firm in his belief, that if he found a living Beauty equal to what had appeared to him in the Pourtraicture, he could forget *Athenais*; and as he sought no other thing, or to speak more properly, all his thoughts being fixed to this sole design, he resolv'd not to be sparing in any diligence, or labour, of body, or mind, to find that admirable Beauty, imagining, that if she were such as the painting had represented her, she could not but have made that noise in the world which would give him an easie opportunity to know her. Moreover, he remembered the Prediction of *Leontin*, which had promised him, that it should be on the Banks of the *Rhine* he should forget *Athenais*; and seeing this beginning of an alteration, he hoped

hoped it entirely in that Country, and when he departed from hence, it was only with design to follow the Banks of the River to its mouth, without absenting himself from you, save only in such manner, as might give him liberty to return in few days, either having found what he sought, or having lost his hopes.

It was with this intention, my Lord, that he departed from you, and it was out of the hopes of a quick return, that he left *Mitrane* with you, whose absence, if of any long durance, he could difficultly have supported. He suffered unwillingly that the Convoy which the King had given him, should accompany him, not finding any greater pleasure than in solitude, and in the entertainment of divers thoughts with which his Spirit was at present possess'd; but so soon as we were pass'd that Camp, he would not suffer it to go farther, but prayed him who commanded it to return, with so much resolution, that he was constrain'd to obey him. He had fallen off to the right hand, to shun the Camp of the *Cimbrians*, in which he would not intangle himself, with design however to regain the Bank of the River, and to seek what *Leontin* had promised him, and which for few days past he had greater hopes to find than ever before. The words of that Knight, with whom he had encountred, augmented his hopes, and though by the proof he had made of his valour, he could not easily hope the victory, yet he had no other desire than to encounter him, and to fight him once more, if he would not be obliged to shew him that miraculous Beauty which he had seen in painting.

Resolved on this design, he inform'd himself every where of him by his Arms, which he had observed, not being able to give other ensigns, and it was out of the hopes he had to understand news of him in this Camp, that a little time before we encountred the Prince *Marcomire*, he had sent my Companion, who rejoyned us, at a place appointed, some time after the Convoy had left us. He diligently observed if he saw him not in that fair Troop which followed the King of the *Franks*, and having with infinite displeasure seen he was not there, he despaired not but he might find him in the Enemies Army; this thought made him consider what course he should take, and if on the one side, he was unwilling to engage himself in a Camp where he might find some retardment to his design, on the other, he was troubled to absent himself from a place, where, as well as in any other in the world, he might find the Knight he sought, without using other endeavours to hear news of him.

Whilst in this incertainty he coasted the Camp of the *Cimbrians*, passing by the side of a great Wood, which, by what I have understood, is that beyond the Valley, in which Prince *Sannon* yesterday found the Queen of the *Turingiens*, he stopp'd, either to determine his irresolution before he went farther, or to rest himself after that great travel he had that day endured; and having observed a fair green plat, under some spreading Trees, which made a very pleasing shade, near the utmost part of the Wood, and very near the Road, he alighted, took off his Helmet (for he never rode without his Arms in an armed Country) and having left his Horse with us, with liberty to go and repose thereby as well as he, he laid himself down upon the Grass, and resting his head at the foot of a Chestnut Tree, covered with Moss, he gave himself up entirely to those different thoughts with which he was turmoyl'd.

We wondred not at all to see him seek in that manner either repose or solitude, having often seen him do the same thing in our Journey, and remembering, that it was in the same manner that he had found the *Pourtraicture*. He dedicated some time to the entertainment of some wandring thoughts, which made his spirit float in the incertitude of his condition, and he found perhaps some delight in a free entertainment of them, when he found by and by that he was not alone in that retirement, for he heard the voice of some persons who discoursed, very near him. Not loving to find any obstruction to his designs, he was presently incens'd at the boldness of those persons that durst trouble his repose; but in the end, making reason gain the dominion over his first motions, and have nothing more present in his memory, than the design to inform himself of what he sought, he made curiosity succeed to his choler, and lent his ear with great attention to the discourse of those persons.

At first he could difficultly understand their discourse, but they being two men which walked (as he discerned a little after, by casting his sight between the Trees) and who in walking approached the place where he was, with design in all likelihood to regain the great Road, which lay on the side of the Wood, by little and little he began to understand them, and in the end, heard very distinctly all they said, not only because they were near him, but because they raised their voices, as they were heated in their discourse, by that passion that made them speak. They were, for we saw them from the place where we stood,

as well as our Prince, two Knights of a very fair Stature, (for we could not well discern their faces, though they had lifted up the Visers of their Helmets) one of the two very magnificently armed the other very plain, with black and white Plumes on his Helmet. Four Esquires who came some paces after them, led their Horses and carried their Launces and Shields. We had but now begun distinctly to understand their discourse, when they stop'd very near us, and he who carried the Plain Arms breaking silence with a tone which had something in it very pleasing. *I confess next to what I have seen, said he to his companion, that if it be not fading, this beauty is rather celestial than mortal, and that it is difficult for imagination it self to reach to her perfection; but you must likewise believe, both you and all those who take Arms for her quarrel, that it is not a light enterprise in which she engages you, and that there is possibly nothing more great nor more dangerous than that of assaulting the life of Pharamond like valiant men, as I believe is your intention. It is not against the life of Pharamond that I have taken Arms,* replied his Companion, *I have neither imitated nor approved the proceedings of those who have rashly promised his head to the King of the Cimbrians, but in those occasions which war may give me to assault his life, as I doubt not but I expose mine to a greater danger, so must I believe that his will not be wholly exempt, and the peril which may threaten us is not greater than the glory may be acquir'd against a man of the valour and repute of Pharamond. I am not of your opinion,* said the first, *but as I doubt not but there is glory to be acquir'd in fighting against a valiant man in a just quarrel, it seems to me that we sully what we have already done by taking an unjust party, and declaring our selves enemies to virtue as you do in this undertaking. There is possibly less reason in your opinion than in mine,* replied the other Knight, *and though I confess that there is nothing but virtue and innocency it self in all the proceedings of Pharamond, I cannot agree that the resentment of the Queen of the Cimbrians is unjust; and though the love wherewith I am devoted to her, were not capable to excuse whatever I might enterprise for her service, not being engaged to her Enemy by any alliance or the least obligation, I know no reason which may hinder me from serving her against him in all those ways which virtue and honour can permit. You will difficultly persuade me to what you say,* replied he who had spoke first, *for I am so much prepossessed by the virtue of Pharamond, and the justice of his cause, that my inclinations will not be easily changed from his party. You may embrace his,* said he that carried the fair Arms, *and though for many advantageous appearances I could have wished rather you had been of ours, yet it will not be justice to violate your inclinations. I would do what ye counsel me to without delay,* said the first, *if it were so well permitted me as you believe, but expecting till I have the liberty to fight the enemies of Pharamond, with those Forces I may oppose to them, if my fortune permit me I will most willingly expose my person to all the danger may threaten it, by combating the most valiant of all his Rivals. It is not possibly so light a thing as you believe,* replied the Cavalier with a sigh, *for amongst the Rivals of Pharamond, there are perhaps some may make you repent this enterprise. If I could fear any one,* replied the first, *it should be without doubt you: for by the knowledge I have of your great name, I doubt not but in valour and all sort of virtues, all the other Rivals of Pharamond are much your inferiours; but that which may cause fear in others, works in me a contrary effect, and by your example I would seek glory in a great enterprise. I see well,* (said the Cavalier with a severe look) *that you desire to signalize your self by combating against a man of some reputation in the World, and I have possibly acquir'd sufficient, to dispense if I please with a Combat so little necessary against a man I know not. If you knew me* (replied the first with a countenance as fierce as his) *you would possibly believe that I have no need of this Combat to signalize my self: but since I cannot discover my self I will tell you that I am neither in birth nor the degree I hold in the world at all your inferiour: And for my reputation, though it possibly may not equal yours, it is not so little that you ought to fear to dishonour your Arms by turning them against me.* "All that I see in your person," replied the Rival of Pharamond, *perswades me easily to what you say, and all that I have observed hath given me more desire to be your friend than enemy.* "I could with truth tell you the same thing," replied the first, *but whatever esteem your virtue may give me for you, I cannot but be your enemy if you cease not to be the enemy of Pharamond.* "When I shall cease to be so" (replied the other with a tone of voice yet somewhat louder) *it shall neither be for his consideration nor yours; but in the mean time I will give you the pleasure you demand, and permit you to have what opinion you please of a man hath suffer'd himself to be so much pressed to fight against you.*

Concluding these words he called his Esquires, and demanded of them his Horse, Launce, and Shield, whilst the other did the like, and equally prepared himself to that Combat he testified so much to desire. The Prince of Persia had hearken'd to a discourse so little common, and of two men so extraordinary with a great attention, but he enclined himself more strongly to it, when both by his Stature, Arms, the sound of his voice, and many other marks;

marks, he began to believe one of these two Cavaliers to be him he fought, and against whom he had combated for the fair Pourtraicture. For this belief which from moment to moment induced it self almost to a certainty in his Spirit, made him hearken to what he said, and observe what he did with more interest than he had done before, and when he saw them depart to mount on horseback, and prepare for the Combat to which they had desired each other, he left the place where he had thitherto remain'd, with intention not to forsake the Knight he fought and whom he believed to have found, without drawing from him that satisfaction he desired; he therefore intended to divert the Combat, which might by some accident deprive him of the means to do it, though by the proof he had made of the strength of him he fought (which had made him esteem him the most valiant person in the world) he believ'd that all the danger of that Combat would fall upon his Enemy. He however ponder'd a little upon these thoughts, and casting himself on foot out of the wood he call'd us and demanded of us his Horse, with an impatience little different from what the two Knights had testified. But at the same time he saw both the one and the other fally forth of the wood with countenances equally terrible, their left hands charged with their Shields, and their Launces ready prepared in their Rests; and before we could bring him his Horse he saw them distance one from the other to take their Carriere, turn head at the same time, and part with a parallel fury, so that his attentiveness to their course, not permitting him to mount on horseback, he regarded it on foot, and would behold the event in the place he stood.

It was truly worthy the knowledge he believed he had of the valour of the one, and the good opinion he had of that of the other. For the two Knights encountred like two Towers, their Launces which they equally received on their Shields, broke into a thousand pieces, without moving them from the Saddle; but their Horses, weaker than they, and not able to support so furious a shock, set their Croupers to the earth, and tumbled backward with their Masters to the ground: both the one and the other nimbly dis-engaged themselves from their Saddles, and being in an instant on their feet, and having drawn their Swords, they covered themselves with their Shields, and in that posture assaulted each other with countenances altogether martial. *Thou mayest vaunt thy self* (said he, who by his discourse had made himself known for the Rival of the King of the Franks) *to have made me this day prove what never before besel me. Thou wilt prove yet more,* replied his enemy, *when thou shalt Combat Pharamond.* And finishing these words they charged each other with two blows so weighty, that their Shields which were opposed to them scarce hindred the cruel effect, but the Arms which sustained them, yielding to the tempest, let them fall on their heads with so much force that the two Warriours were astonished, and stagger'd for some paces in no small disorder: however, they in few moments recovered themselves, and returned towards each other with a fury which created in us that fear which they disdain'd: when the Prince of Persia ran towards them with a fury that permitted not a second assault, and through the greatness of his courage, not fearing to cast himself between the Arms of two such terrible Champions, opposing his Sword to him he found on his right hand, and his Shield to him on his left, kept both the one and the other in that distant posture. "Stop, valiant men, said he, and give not each other a death without being Enemies.

At the sight of such a man as *Varanez*, whose noble aspect, confident behaviour, and richness of his Arms denoted in part what he was, though incensed as they were by the first blows they had changed, they were touched with some consideration for him, and not willing to hazard the wounding of a man of so fair appearance, who opposed himself officiously for their safety, or else being both wise and generous, and not Combating for any of those two passions that make us lose our reason and knowledge, they stopp'd and beheld each other in a posture which made show of no endeavours to a fresh assault. I know not what might in the end have fallen out, but at this time he of the two Cavaliers who fought for the quarrel of the King of the Franks, casting his eyes ore the Plain towards the *Cimbrian* Camp, beheld those little hills which were somewhat rais'd, covered with Squadrons which marched towards the place where we were, and being in all likelihood unwilling to be found in their way: "Though this Obstacle, *said he to his Enemy*, were not sufficient to hinder the continuance of our Combat, I see others which permit us not to continue it, we shall finish it when fortune will permit: in the mean time I retire sufficiently satisfied with the glory I have had to prove the valour of the great *Balamir*. Finishing these words he ran to his Horse which he saw near him, and having mounted him with infinite agility, he parted on a gallop a way quite different from that on which he saw those Troops come, by whom he had testified his unwillingness to be seen.

You have not at all surpris'd me, (said the King of the Franks, interrupting the Esquire of Varanez) by telling me that that Knight my Rival was Balamir, I should have discern'd him from all others by his discourse and proceeding, but I cannot imagine who should be that generous Friend, which would for my interests Combat the most formidable of my Enemies, yet by that commencement of the Combat he maintain'd against Balamir with so much equality, I must needs judge him one of the valiantest men in the whole world. I can inform you no farther my Lord, said the Esquire to King Pharamond, and I know well that my Master hath not had any other knowledge.

So soon as he was departed, the Prince of Persia addressing himself to Balamir, whom he had attentively regarded, and whom by the Escutcheon on his Shield he fully knew for the Knight that lost the Pourtraiture. I know not, said he, whether you remember to have other where seen me, but I see well that you are he whom I seek, and I understand with no small joy that it is with the famous Balamir fortune hath given me some cause of difference. "I believe, replied Balamir, that you are the same Knight against whom I fought for my Picture, and if you have any difference with me it is only because you will have it so, and not for any reason can oblige you to it. The reasons of common persons, replied Varanez, are not like those of men like you and my self, and I tell you and my self without offending you, because that neither in birth or dignity am I inferiour, either to you or any man of the world, the reason I have to search you is not so light as you believe, since it touches my heart and concerns all the repose of my Soul: and in fine you are engag'd either to make me see that admirable beauty whose Picture I have seen, or finish the Combat which we have begun. "It would not be difficult for me (replied the Prince of the Huns very fiercely) to acquit my self either of the one or the other; and I say of both though you seem to content your self either with the one or other, I know not in which of the two your condition will be the better; but however it be, since the fight which you desire will rather animate you to than divert you from the Combat, I doubt not but I may procure it you without making you think I would dispense with the Combat. We may likewise since you seek the occasion, have the consolation to be miserable together, and as I shall not be the most formidable of your Rivals, I believe you will not be the only person among the rest whom I shall have the most reason to fear.

These words displeas'd the haughty Prince, and he was about to return a fierce reply, when Balamir having turned his head towards that side from whence we saw the Cavalry coming from the Camp of the Cimbrians, and having observed some Chariots at the head of the Squadrons, "I think, added he, that I can soon acquit my self of a part of what you demand, for having left the Queen with a design to come this way, I doubt not but she is in those Chariots you see approach us. These words rais'd in the Spirit of my Prince an alteration which he had never felt before, and beholding Balamir with a countenance that might give him some knowledge of it: "By what you tell me, said he, and by what I judge of your conversation with that valiant man who but now parted from us, I judge that the Queen of whom you speak is the famous Queen of the Cimbrians, whose beauty had spread such a renown ore the world. "You may judge, replied Balamir, by a picture which hath touch'd you as I see, that a beauty so prodigious could not be other than that of Rosamond. And you may believe (added he with a sigh yet full of fierceness) that you engage your self in those affairs may give you employment: And that when Gondioch, Ardaric, Godegefile, and Balamir should prove Rivals but little terrible to you, you will have one in Pharamond against whom you will have need of all your merit and all your valour. "I have this day seen Pharamond, replied my Prince, and besides that all his person hath begot in me an admiration, I confess that the nobleness of his demeanour permits me not without grief to become his Rival. but though with his merit, yours, that of Gondioch and all others whom you have named, that of all the men in the World oppos'd my design, the fear of that Obstacle would not deprive me neither of courage nor hope, nor is there any man in the world to whom the concurrence of a Rival like my self would not disturb. I assure you, said the Prince of the Huns, that you have to do with a person, who of the whole world can best discern merit, and though your fortune should be rais'd above ours, as you seem to testify by your discourse, it will not with her produce that alteration you expect, if it be not accompanied with those qualities may merit her esteem.

Varanez had without doubt replied to this discourse, but that he had for some time ceas'd to give attention to it: for the Chariots, with the Cavalry which accompanied them, were already so near us, that he began to discern the objects, which being more discernable as they approach'd, he observed in the end very distinctly, that in the first of the Chariots, which was open before, there were seated only two Ladies, whose habits were black, without any garnish, and those of the Slaves which followed a foot, the Chariot,

riot, and all the Equipage, were of the same colour. Many other Ladies came in other Chariots which followed it, and about this first, might be seen many Knights, well mounted, and clad in magnificent Arms, who advanced about an hundred paces before those Squadrons which accompanied the Train, we observed these things much better than our Prince, for he having well judged, that all he fought was in the first Chariot, 'twas on that alone he fix'd his sight, without so much as casting his eyes on the rest; and I must needs confess, that he there encountered sufficient matter to employ both his eyes, and all his observation, and that the Chariot of *Aurora*, or that of the Sun it self, could not lance forth fires equal to those, which were darted from the Chariot of *Rosamond*, to dazzle his eyes, and inflame his very soul. The King of the *Franks*, and possibly the greater part of those persons who hearken to me, have seen the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and the Princess of *Suevia*, who was now with her, and therefore I see my self freed from a discourse, in which I should without doubt but ill acquit my self, should I undertake a description of this miraculous beauty: for she appeared to us so much above all that imagination it self could fancy, that we remain'd at the sight of her, like persons in whom astonishment and admiration had suspended all the other faculties of our souls. *Varanez* soon knew that fair Image, which the sole sight of a Pourtraiture had engraved in his breast, but he saw it now shining with those fires, which painting could not give: and if hitherto he had not any disposition to love, or a disposition which might yet hinder *Athenais* from finding some place in his remembrance, at this sight he was enamoured, he was passionate, he was lost in an instant, and now the most smallest lines of the image of *Athenais* were quite blotted out of his memory; he had had less leisure to contemplate this prodigious beauty, nor had the wound possibly pierced, as it did, the middle of his heart, if the Queen had not stopp'd at the place where we were; nor had she perhaps stopp'd, had not the known Prince *Balamir*, for whom she had an infinite esteem, who advanced towards the Chariot so soon as he saw it approach.

The charming Queen, in whom we beheld with extasie and admiration, the most accomplish'd miracle of Nature, opening her fair lips before *Balamir* who drew near the Chariot, demanded of him with infinite sweetness, what he did in that place, and why he had that day preferred retirement before company. The grace and majesty with which she spoke, though she spoke very few words, joyned to the natural charm of her voice, added yet something to the passion of *Varanez*, and *Balamir* breaking silence, having saluted the Queen, and the Princess of the *Sueves* with a profound submission, *Madam*, said he, *it is not only to day that I have begun to seek retirement, I have too often had sufficient reasons to prefer it before company, but at present your arrival interrupts it happily, since it spares me a Combat, of which this Knight, (said he, shewing Varanez to her) would not have pardon'd me, if I presented him not to you, and if I made him not see in his destiny, an effect of your divine beauty.* These words obliged the Queen to cast her eyes on my Prince, who wholly transported and lost, beheld her with a stedfastness which scarce left him any knowledge of what had passed; and because that as well as *Balamir*, he had his face uncovered, the Queen possibly found in his noble air, whereon to fix her eyes with a particular consideration, when he in the end overpowering that power which seemed to have tied all the faculties of his soul, and forcing the charm which held him unmoveable, he approached the Chariot, and saluted the Queen with a submission, to which hitherto his spirit had not possibly bowed; but because in the disorder of his soul, he could scarce find words to explain himself as he desired, *Balamir*, to whom the cause of his silence was not unknown, taking occasion to speak whilst he prepared himself, *You may judge by his countenance*, said he to the Queen, *if his condition be much different from ours, and though I cannot hope to receive any great friendship from him, I will not omit telling you, that by what I have known of his valour, he is not possibly unworthy to enter into the number of those who carry your fair chains.* "I judge by your discourse, (said the Queen to *Balamir* sighing) that this is that valiant man who had some difference with you for my Picture, but we must not attribute it to any other cause, than what proceeds from sole curiosities, nor make of a person, whom you know so little, a discourse will not be justified. *I know not now (said my Prince very fiercely) whether I ought not to confess but a part of the truth whereof I can only understand; but however it be, I am obliged to Balamir, who renders me the first day an office, which possibly I should not in many years have received from my courage.*

He pronounc'd these words with an aspect, which obliged the Queen to view him with more consideration than she had done before, and it was observable in all her actions that she had no mean desire to know a person, who by all appearances was of no common Rank, when one of those Knights who were about the Chariot, having known our Prince to,

soon as he began to speak, alighted, accosted him, and saluting him with a reverent submission, *Ab my Lord*, said he, *is it possible that I see you in Germany?* The Prince cast his eyes on him who had saluted him, and having called to mind the Idea with great readiness, he knew him for *Marcian*, whom he had seen and often conversed with at *Constantinople*, near the Emperour *Theodosius*, where, either by his virtue, or those fair employments to which he was advanc'd by his valour, he held a considerable degree. *Varanez* returned his salute with all civility, as to a man whom for his virtue he infinitely esteemed, and he had done more if the presence of the Queen had permitted him, and if she had not called *Marcian* to demand of him the name of my Prince.

Marcian, who as we understood afterwards had oftentimes spoke to her since he had been near her, and had entertain'd her with what had had pass'd between the Emperour and him at *Constantinople*, obeyed her without difficulty, and the Queen had no sooner understood from his mouth, that he was the Prince of *Persia*, but believing that she had committed a great fault, in receiving a Prince of so high a degree like a common person, she would have descended from her Chariot to have saluted him, with that respect to which she believed her self obliged, if the Prince had not so firmly oppos'd it, that it was impossible for the Queen to do as she intended; but the Queen seeing that she could not overcome his opposition, bowing down towards him, with a respect which she had possibly never before us'd to other Princes, *Why my Lord*, said she, *after those faults which ignorance hath made me commit, will you let me commit others which cannot be excused, now I know you for the greatest Prince of the world?* She added to these many other words, but by all, could not persuade the Prince to consent to that civility she would render, and she was constrained to remain in her Chariot with the Princess of *Suevia*, whom he likewise saluted with infinite respect. But all the Princes who were about the Chariot immediately alighted, and though the greatest part beheld him as their enemy, and murmured against Fortune, for having raised them up so great a Rival, they accosted him with a becoming respect, so that in a short time he saw himself saluted by the King of the *Sueves*, the King of the *Burgundians*, and Prince *Gondemar* his Brother, the King of the *Hernles*, the King of the *Alains*, him of the *Bajernes*, and many other Princes who were present and whom *Marcian* named to him, as they saluted him. *Balamir* himself returned to him with the rest, and with a behaviour full of civility and severeness together, demanded pardon of him, if he had not before rendred him what was due to his dignity.

Varanez beheld with all that attention his love could permit him, so many brave men, whose names were known to him, and saw likewise with some astonishment, and possibly with some envy, that in all their persons, and particularly in those of *Gondioch* and his Brother, all appearances answerable to their fair reputation: but though he saw many among them who might make themselves to be feared as Rivals, the greatest object of his jealousy was fixed on the person of *Balamir*, in whom, for all things, he observed great advantages over all the other Competitors, and whom, by many marks, he judged the most advanced in the esteem of *Rosamond*. He beheld him with an eye which gave a suspicion of what he thought, and he found in his thoughts something little different, and something that inclin'd him to a more particular unkindness for him, than for all his other Rivals. The presence of the Queen, and the Princess *Albisinda* fixing the thoughts of these great men on them alone, hindred them from entering into any conversation, and incontinently after, *Varanez* being mounted on Horseback with all the rest, approached the Queen to what place she had a design to go.

We understood afterwards, that she was departed from the Camp to go meet the Queen of the *Turingiens*, who was to have arriv'd that day, but who, as you know, came not till yesterday; and the Queen of the *Cimbrians* was going to receive her, with the Princess *Albisinda*, and all the Kings and Princes of her party; but a little after we were remounted on Horseback, there came a Messenger on her behalf, to inform the Queen, that by reason of some accident which had stopp'd her on the way, her arrival would be for some days retarded, and the Queen having receiv'd this news, stopp'd her Chariot, and return'd back towards the Camp with all that fair company, about the time that the Sun made his approaches to take leave of the Western Shore.

All along upon the way, the Prince of *Persia* marched by the side of the Chariot, with *Gondioch*, *Balamir*, *Ardaric*, and *Godegesile*, who yielding to him the honour of his Dignity, left him the nearest place to the Chariot, and most commodious to entertain the Queen, whilst the King of the *Bajernes*, Prince *Gondemar*, and some others marched by the side on which the Princess of *Suevia* sat, with whom they were in conversation, and the King of the *Sueves*, who was less in love than any of the rest, came some paces behind,

hind, entertaining himself with *Marcian*, who is a person of a noble spirit and excellent virtue. In the entertainment of the Queen, Prince *Varanez* found those charms which chained him more firmly in his letters, and drawing in at his eyes all that love his soul was capable to contain, he not only banished all that might yet remain there of the remembrance of *Athenais*, but saw himself in few moments subdued as much, as if for many years he had been enslav'd to *Rosamond*. We arriv'd at the Camp sooner than he desired, though the day was then shut up, and having almost quite cross'd it to go to the Quarter of the Queen, which is an old Castle seated near a great Village on the Banks of the *Rhine*; at our arrival my Master gave his hand to the Queen descending from her Chariot, to lead her to her Apartment, doing the duty at that time of some other, who beheld him not without envy in this employment.

We understood since, that so soon as they arriv'd, the King of *Suevia* entertained the Queen for some time in particular, and as in this War, by what hath been said, he had an end quite different from that of all other Princes, whom love makes act rather than any other consideration, and that he beheld not *Varanez* with the eyes of a Rival, as all the others might do; he represented to the Queen, that in their design of common revenge, she could do nothing more advantageous, than to engage the Prince of *Persia* on their party, which according to his judgment she might do without any great difficulty; that with the defence and assistance which she might hope from a King of *Persia*, whose power would be much greater than that of all the Princes of *Germany* together, she might easily overthrow her enemy, and if her inclinations agreed with her advantages, she might not only find in the person of *Varanez* a Husband much different from the King of the *Herules*, the *Burgundians*, and *Gepides*, but a Husband not inferiour in power to the Oriental or Occidental Emperours, and who would place her upon as renowned and as powerful a Throne, as any in the world.

I know not whether this counsel of the King of the *Sueves* (which my Prince on the morrow understood from the mouth of *Marcian*) wrought the same effect on the Queen, that it wrought on him, or whether she rendred of her own motion, what she believed was due to a Prince, than whom she saw nothing greater in the world, and whose merit accompanied his Dignity; but most certain it is, that she rendred him those honours which confused him (though he naturally hated not to be honoured) caused him to be lodged the most commodiously possible, and knowing that he wanted Officers, had sent him her own, if the King of *Suevia* had not prevented her, by settling his Household the next morning. I will not tell you in what manner he passed this night, though I can tell you, that at his lying down he seem'd to us as a man enchanted, and that on the morrow, we knew by his visage he had not dedicated much time to sleep. You know my Lord, that in love the commencements are almost always agreeable, and as our Prince was delivered from a torment which had cruelly afflicted him, to enter into another, which at present seem'd full of charms, or to speak better, had thrown off his old Fetters, to load himself with new ones, which yet made him no less feel their weight, so he beheld himself as another man, and with pleasure admir'd the change of his condition. By the knowledge he had of his degree and fortune, certainly much different from that of all those Princes engag'd in the service of *Rosamond*, and by the opinion he with reason had of his courage, and the qualities of his person, he conceived those hopes which apparently no reason could forbid him from conceiving: Nor could he flatter himself with the least hope of being loved by *Rosamond*, whom he beheld as a Divinity, and no mortal person, without abandoning himself to those pleasures which transported and enchanted him.

He open'd his heart entirely to the generous *Marcian*, and having understood from him the reasons which had drawn him from the Court of *Theodosius*, and which had conducted him into *Germany*, he in requital, recounted to him what had happen'd to him since his departure from *Constantinople*, what he had suffered for the remembrance of the Empress, and the change that had happen'd in his soul by the sight of *Rosamond*; and *Marcian* not being retain'd near my Prince by that passion which had chained others, he promis'd willingly to my Prince, all the service he could desire of him in this occasion, and flattered his passion with all those hopes he could with reason give him. It was now that he let him understand what the King of the *Sueves* had the day before done for him, and counselled him to do all he could to get him to his side, both as a man to whom *Rosamond* paid a high respect, and as him alone of all the Princes not interest'd by a passion like to his. *Varanez* hearkned willingly to *Marcian's* counsel, to whose merit he yielded much, and so soon as the Queen might be visited, he went to wait on her, and by this second sight enflam'd himself more strongly than before.

He saw her that day with all his Rivals, who absented themselves from her the least that possibly they could, and were it either for their continual presence, or the respect which her Majesty imprinted in him, he could not, or durst not speak to her of what he thought, though he had naturally a boldness which passed over all other things which might cause fear in less resolved persons. But on the morrow he found the Queen in a very fair Garden, which from the foot of the Castle, advances it self like a Terrace to the Banks of the Rhine, and he found her walking in an Alley with the King of the Sueves, who in all likelihood entertained himself with her about affairs of War, whilst the other Princes, to give him that liberty, walked in other Alleys. My Prince not stopping at that consideration which with-held the others, went presently to the Queen, and the King of the Sueves no sooner saw him, but were it that he had no more to say to the Queen, or that he would do him a kindness, as *Marcian* had testified to my Prince he had a design to do, he presented him the hand of the Queen, which he held, and praying him to take his place, whilst he went whither he was called by other occasions.

Varanez, not willing to abuse his civility, made some difficulty to do it, when the King beholding him with a sigh, *Take this place*, said he, *which I offer you, if you will not hazard the displeasure of seeing it soon possessed by some others, who will not perhaps yield it you so easily as I do.* The Prince let himself no longer be urg'd after these words, but taking the hand of the Queen, he began to walk with her, whilst the King of the Sueves retired. The Ladies of the Queen, and the Officers, who, by their charge, were obliged to remain near her person, kept themselves at a distance out of respect, and he had the fairest occasion to entertain her he could possibly have desired; he knew not however, as I understood by what he that evening recounted to *Marcian* before me, in what manner he should make use of it; for besides the fear which ordinarily accompanies love, the whole person of *Rosamond* is so proper to imprint that fear which proceeds from respect, that in all his courage he could not find sufficient assurance to explain what he had in his heart. *Balamir* had spoke enough for him at the first sight, he had sufficiently confirmed the discourse of *Balamir* by his first words to the Queen, and by his looks, and all his actions, he had enough discovered the love he had for her; but notwithstanding all this, the Majesty of *Rosamond* made him faint-hearted, and he thought he observed in her so little disposition to hearken favourably to what he would, if he durst have spoken, that he knew not in what manner he ought to undertake it, though he saw himself in a condition, wherein all the Princes of a degree worthy to serve her, were received, to give her proofs of their love, and from her to receive a sentence in favour of him, who serv'd her with most success against the King of the Franks.

The Queen having begun a discourse concerning his Travels, had obliged him to recount some particulars, and they insensibly fell upon the discourse of our arrival in that Country, of our coming to the French Camp, and of his meeting with the King of the Franks, and my Prince having a Soul truly great and noble, and in which no complacence or interest could oblige a disguise of the truth, could not speak to the Queen of *Pharamond*, not only not without praising him for the good usage he had receiv'd, but not without testifying the esteem and admiration he had for all his person, and he had possibly said more, if he had not perceiv'd that the Queen stopp'd and chang'd colour. This knowledge he received made him stop, and beholding the Queen with eyes altogether passionate, *I beg your pardon, Madam*, said he, *if I have spoken too much of your enemy, for I observe some marks on your Visage, make me fear I have displeas'd you.* The Queen yet sigh'd at these words, and hiding her face with her hand to conceal her blushes, *Those who know well*, said she to my Prince, *what are the injuries I have received from that Prince of whom you speak, would not wonder to see some signs of trouble on my countenance when I am to speak of him, and it is a hard thing for me to bear any mention made of him, without finding my self in a great disorder, but the pain I suffer is very ordinary, for in our present occasions, there is scarce a day passes in which I hear not a hundred times the name of my Enemy.* But, (added she a little after, with a sigh, by which she seem'd to open a way to my lost Prince) *if it be permitted me to make you remember what you love, as you have made me remember what I ought to hate, will you not be displeas'd, if I demand of you what you now feel in your heart for the Empress of the East, to whom you devoted so much love, and who hath made you undergo so tedious Travels?*

“I believe, (replied the Prince very coldly) that I shall answer to your discourse, without shewing any signs thereof in my face, by which you may judge how I am touched: and though certainly I have had as much love for the Empress *Eudoxia* or *Athenais*, as any heart is capable to receive, and that this love hath humbled me to all those sufferings which
“may

“may torment a passionate Soul, it is certain however, that of that passion there is not the
 “least sign that remains in my Soul, and that I preserve in my memory scarce any remem-
 “brance of the name of *Athenais*. *What you say can hardly be possible*, replied the Queen.
 “It is yet less than you believe, (*replied the Prince, without permitting her to speak fur-*
 “*ther*) but that which would have proved impossible to all other force, hath proved easie
 “to yours; and that image of *Athenais*, which no endeavour of my courage, no absence,
 “nor no diversity of Objects, nor no sort of remedy, could for one moment drive from
 “my memory, has been banish’d for ever at the first sight of your Celestial Beauty. You
 “have known it, Madam, from the very mouth of my Rival, and though my own had
 “not confirm’d it, if you had cast your eyes upon me, you had known it by too many
 “marks, to have been ignorant of it.

Varanex spoke in this manner, casting his eyes on the Visage of the Queen, to read his destiny, but with a fear not ordinary to him, he found nothing in this beginning which might give him any great good opinion of his fortune. For the haughty Queen beholding him very severely: “In another condition, and at another time, *said she*, I had punished
 “this presumption in the person of a Prince of *Persia*, as well as in that of any other per-
 “son, but you know what is my fortune, and the field is open to you as well as to others,
 “since so it hath pleas’d my destiny. *If the Field be open to me*, replied the Prince, *I shall*
enter it without doubt, were I sure to leave there a thousand lives, had Heaven given me so
many; and if it be by the service we ought to render you I may hope to be happy, I will not re-
nonounce those hopes which I may conceive on appearances more favourable than all those with which
my Rivals can flatter themselves. I will arm possibly for your service a power much different
from what they all can offer, and I will arm it with no less joy, if you will permit me to hope
that your inclinations are not more contrary to me, than to my Rivals, in a design to seek death,
or Supreme felicity, upon all opportunities to serve you. It is my fortune which makes the
Law, replied the Queen, *and not my inclinations, and you may understand if you please, that*
in a design equal to yours, those whom you call your Rivals, consult my Fortune, and not my
inclinations.

She concluded these words with a sigh, which the Prince observ’d, and turn’d towards the other side, possibly to call some of her Ladies, when King *Ardaric*, and King *Godegesele*, who had seen the King of the *Sueves* retire, appeared in that Alley, and came to accost her. My Prince could not so well dissemble the displeasure they did him, but that they might observe some signs of it in his face, and he beheld in theirs little disposition to remain long time his friends. He saw it no less in the eyes of *Gondioch*, who came immediately after them; and of all the Lovers of *Rosamond*, there was none, to whom the greatness of his Dignity, and merit of his person, gave not some suspicion, and made them not look upon him in few days with the same ill will which they all had the one for the other, and which is ordinary amongst Rivals, and which seem’d greater for him than for others, by reason of the great advantages he had over them. *Balamir* was he who testified the least, and to speak truth, the person who indeed fear’d the least, but it was he whom my Prince most feared, both for a thousand fair qualities, wherein he excell’d all the rest, and for those many appearances, that of all the Lovers of *Rosamond*, he shared the greatest part in her esteem, and possibly in her affections.

My Master hath lived in this manner, my Lord, since his departure from you; and in fine, having absolutely determined, and resolv’d to run his fortune with the rest, and to seek the possession of *Rosamond* by those ways which that might afford, call’d me yesterday, and having taken me aside from other persons who might hear his discourse, *Since I am bound here*, said he, *by those chains which permit me not to depart, go into the Camp of the King of the Franks, and on my part salute the great Constance, and bring hither Mitrances, whom I left with him. You may tell Constance what hath befallen me since our separation, and by the knowledge you give him of the engagement of my Soul, you will oblige him to pardon the fault I may commit in leaving him, and engaging my self on a side contrary to that of a Prince with whom I have left him, and who, by his merit, and the good usage he hath given him, hath without doubt gain’d his friendship. You may assure him, that what I have promised him, shall endure as long as my life; and you may tel the King of the Franks, that no passion, but that which engages me in the interest of the Queen of the Cimbrians, should mak’ me take Arms against his, that I know nothing greater among men, and that if I must be his Enemy, I shall make War upon him like a man whom no passion can hinder from esteeming his virtue. This is the Commission which my Prince gave me, and I have acquitted my self of it,* (continued the Esquire, turning himself towards the King of the Franks) *as he hath order’d me. I was upon the point to depart from the Camp, when Valerius arriv’d, and know-*

ing him, I accosted him, let him see my Master, and took my time to come hither with him to obey the orders of my Prince.

THE Esquire of the Prince of Persia finished thus his discourse, which put the whole Company into admiration, and when he had done speaking, Pharamond and Constance for a long time beheld each other, leaving mutually liberty to the other to answer, but in the end it being to Constance to whom he was sent, and the King remaining firm in his design, not to speak till after him, the illustrious Roman broke silence. *In truth (said he to the Esquire of Varanez) you could not well tell me news that could trouble me more than that you now recount: for esteeming the King of the Franks as I do, I could have wished him any other Enemy, rather than him. He might possibly have considered with himself better than he hath done, and better he had opposed a passion, which according to my opinion will not give him more satisfaction than the first; and by engaging himself to make War against King Pharamond, he does not possibly well know to what he hath engaged himself: but I shall better in person tell him my thoughts, since I hope to see him to morrow. You may tell him if you please (added Pharamond, addressing himself to the Esquire, so soon as Constance had done speaking) that I cannot understand without infinite trouble, that a Prince for whom I have a great esteem, though he returned but rough answers to my civility, and a Prince who is a friend to the great Constance (which renders him possibly more considerable to me than any thing else) should become my Enemy in a War only made against my life. That however I approve his fair design, and that I am too well acquainted with love not to excuse what he may undertake, but that his happiness is not possibly so near as he believes if he expects it only by the ruine of Pharamond, and that I will defend my life with so much courage, as may perhaps make him more than once repent the design to assault it.*

This was the answer he returned to the Esquire of Varanez, and when he was retired with Mitranes, turning towards Constance in whom this news had begot some melancholly, *You see my Lord, said he, what are the effects of the beauty of Rosamond, and that there is nothing in the world so powerful as she, either to recover men from great evils or make them unfaithful. Of three illustrious unfortunate persons, and unfortunate by the same kind of misery, you see two recovered by the sight of Rosamond, and I doubt not but she may work the same effect for the third. I understand you, replied Constance, nor can I believe but that it is of Varanez, Balamir, and my self you speak; but though there hath been in effect a great conformity in our adventures, I promise you there shall be none in the remedy, and that Death alone shall do for me, what the sight of Rosamond hath done for the other two. Varanez and Balamir had without doubt done the same thing, replied Pharamond sighing, and an hour before they had seen the Queen of the Cimbrians, had possibly sworn that they would not forget Hunnimonda and Athenais but in the Tomb, yet however my Lord you see what is fallen out. There hath been in our adventures, replied the illustrious Roman, Circumstances so different as to make a difference in our Obligations, and Balamir ought not to do for a person who lived not, nor Varanez for one who would willingly lose him to give her self to another, what I ought to do for Placidia. Moreover, I carry the name of a virtue which is proof against all the beauties and all the powers of the Earth, and to all this I will add, that when I should have no other reasons to defend my self against what is befallen the other two, but the consideration I have for you, I promise you my Lord that I will never be your Rival: Or at least, concluded he with a sigh, that if this misfortune should fall out against my intention, neither you nor Rosamond, nor any person in the world shall ever have knowledge of it. I have a confidence in your virtue, replied the King of the Franks, which reassures me against all that fear which your merit may give me, and I am strongly persuaded that no passion can ever remain firmer in your heart than your virtue. I will likewise tell you, that if my ill fortune give me the great Constance for Rival, I shall not comfort my self for such a misfortune, as I may possibly comfort my self for all that I can fear from the Competition of Varanez and Balamir. Though I should be your Rival, replied Constance, you would not be unhappy: for your merit puts you in sufficient security against Rivals more formidable than me: however, I seek not my cure as Varanez sought it, nor would I receive it as Balamir received it though it were offered to me; nor do I know if we ought to call this change of their condition a recovery, for I doubt much whether in this second love their fortune will be more happy than it was in the first. I know not what it may be, replied the King of the Franks, for in the estate to which my ill fortune hath reduced me, there is no Rival I ought not to fear, since of all the Lovers of Rosamond hope is denied to me alone: But if the friendship you preserve for the Prince of Persia leaves me a liberty to testify to you my thoughts, I will tell you that though he may be great King of Persia, and great as he is for the qualities of his person, he causes in me less trouble than Balamir, and that nothing at
this*

this time so much displeases me, as that I must wage War against one who is a friend to Constance.”
 “I may be a friend to *Varanez* in other matters, replied the Roman: for besides what I owe to the assurances he hath given me of his friendship, he has really such qualities in his person as have attracted my esteem, though I have perhaps found some things have not so well pleased me, and you may possibly have observed that he hath little conformity to our humours: but the opinion I have of him cannot alter that I have of you; and as I was not so prepossessed but that I could put a due difference between you, you shall see my Lord, that if this war continue he and I shall not be of the same party. “Ah this is too much, cried the King of the Franks, nor can I ever merit what you offer me; both against the Prince of *Persia* and against the Allies of the Romans: But if in those misfortunes to which I am reduced, there rests to me any means to make you see my resentment, and what consolation I in my ill fortune receive from those marks you give me of your friendship, you shall certainly see——“I shall see nothing (*said Constance opposing himself to the continuance of his discourse*) but I may hope more from your virtue; nor can I by any proof be persuaded more than I am of the beauty and Grandeur of your soul. In the mean time, (*continued he rising from his seat*) ’tis time to bid you good night, and retire to leave you to your repose, and on the morrow before I depart to go to the Camp of the *Cimbrians*, I will see you again, if you have any particular Commission to give me.

After these words, to which the King answered with all those which a true acknowledgment could put in his mouth, *Constance* and *Artabure* retired: And a little after, Prince *Marcomire* who had accompanied them being returned, all the Company departed the Chamber save only *Marcomire* whom the King made stay, and with him *Cleomer* and the two *Cimbrians* *Cloderic* and *Albimer*, who remained constant to his service, induc’d both by those benefits which had establish’d them a fortune much different from what they had had in their own Country, and by the charms of his person which had bound them too strongly to have any power to forsake him.

When the King saw himself alone with them, and some Officers in charge who out of respect kept distant from the bed, causing *Cleomer*, *Cloderic*, and *Albimer* to approach, and turning himself towards *Marcomire* who was seated near him; “And well brother, *said he*, is it without reason that I have always feared the merit of *Balamir*? Or were not you deceived, when you believed that the Queen bore only towards him a simple civility or at most good will? “I still believe the same thing, replied the Prince, and in all the discourse this day made, you find nothing that can make me change opinion. “How Brother, replied *Pharamond*, have not you observed all that the Esquire of *Varanez* told us, of the difference she made between him and the other Princes of her party? And do you esteem as nothing that Pourtraiture which began to make *Varanez* lose his liberty, and which she hath given him without doubt that he should keep it by her consent, and which faithfully tell him her miracles, since it can make Slaves? Can a favour of such price seem to you little considerable from a Princess of the humour and courage of *Rosamond*? Or can you attribute it to simple good will? Ah *Balamir* without doubt is happy; and though his fortune should remain in these terms, it is great enough to make me dye with grief and jealousy. That which possibly he had difficultly carried from me, if we had entr’d into the service of *Rosamond* with equal advantage, the misfortunes of my life hath given him, and there was some appearance that with a merit like that of *Balamir*, services and diligence should prevail against absence and cruel injuries. It is then in *Balamir* that I ought to seek the Object of all my resentment, and it is against his life alone much rather than against that of all others that I ought to turn my Sword, which I carry in vain by this side, if it knows not how to deliver me from such a Rival.

Pharamond spoke these words with so much violence, by the effect of a passion which at present over-ruled the natural sweetness of his Soul, so that neither *Marcomire* nor the others could stop the course of it nor durst oppose it: but when he had done speaking hindered by some sighs which permitted him not to continue his discourse, *Cloderic* breaking silence; “I know not my Lord, *said he to the King*, if you have other reasons than those are known to you to judge of the fortune of *Balamir*, but if it be the Pourtraiture of the Queen which gives you such trouble, it is not difficult to compose your spirit, by telling you, not only that it was not from her he received it, but that there are few of her Lovers who have not the like: That the deceased King of the *Cimbrians* caused many to be drawn by the hand of an excellent Linnen then at *Marobuda*, to send to those Princes whom he would engage in his party by the sight of that admirable beauty; and that it was from his own hand that *Balamir* received it the same day that he returned to *Marobuda*, having driven the *Burgundians* out of the Country of the *Bohemians*. “And I can assure your Majesty, added *Cleomer*,

“that *Cloderic* told me the same thing at our return from *Bobemia*, and that you ought not to suspect this discourse made to flatter your displeasure. “I indeed heard before my departure from *Lisurgis*, said *Prince Marcomire*, that the King of the *Cimbrians* had caused many pictures to be made of the Princess his Daughter out of that design *Cloderic* hath related to you. “And so many persons have known it, continued *Albimer*, that I know not how the King could be ignorant of it. “That which you assure me, said *Pharamond* to them, gives me some comfort though it hinder me not from believing that in *Balamir* I have a Rival I ought not to neglect, and from whom I may justly fear all things by reason of the advantages his presence and services give him over me. “But my Brother (continued he, addressing himself to the Prince) it is not to make any complaint to you that I have retained you, but to communicate to you a design in which I doubt not but you will take a part if you remember *Albisinda* as much as I do *Rosamond*. And after these words, without giving time to *Marcomire* to answer him, turning himself towards *Cloderic*, I desire, said he, that you would to-morrow accompany *Constance* to the Camp of our Enemies, where you may be very useful to him by reason of the knowledge you have of their customs. And I desire very earnestly, added he with a sigh, that you would find the means to tell the Queen of the miserable estate of my life, and give her a Letter which I will write if you can hope to make her peruse it. I shall receive infinite content from this good office if you will perform it for me, though I expect no change in my condition; but since the hope of so great good is denied me, I shall receive in this a satisfaction which cannot but be very acceptable in a fortune like mine. For you my Brother (continued he addressing himself again to *Marcomire*) you cannot doubt but the Princess of the *Sueves* will receive favourably your Letters, and if you give any commission to *Cloderic* he may discharge it more easily than that he takes from me. “It is most certain my Lord, said *Cloderic*, that I will do all that you command me, nor do I despair to accomplish a part of your desires. “I shall be much obliged to you (said *Prince Marcomire*) if you will give my Letters to *Imbergida* who will herself take charge of the rest, and though I have her Son with me I will not expose him to the anger of the King of the *Sueves*, with whom he may not be in the same security that you will be with the Queen of the *Cimbrians*. “I will render you my Lord that service you desire of me, answered *Cloderic*, with all fidelity, and I can do it so much the easier because few persons in our Court have greater access than my self to *Imbergida*. “Ah *Cloderic*, said the King with a sigh, that you were so happy in going to see the Queen, or rather that *Pharamond* were so happy if this felicity were permitted. After these words and some others, by which the passion of his Soul was naturally expressed, he called for Pen Ink and Paper whilst the Prince his Brother went to do the same, and all the company being retired, he writ, sealed his Letter, and gave himself to sleep, which he could hardly find by reason of the little familiarity they had together.

On the morrow so soon as he was awaken'd, having caused *Cloderic* to be called he gave him his Letter, and having accompanied it with all those words which a passion like his could speak in such an occasion, he would have risen to have gone into the Chamber of *Constance*, if *Marcomire Genebaud* and *Charamont* who entred at that time into his, had not opposed it by entreating him yet to keep his bed, since by the truce he had an entire liberty and nothing which might hinder him from sparing yet that day for his cure. However they had with difficulty obtained it, when *Constance* for whom only he would rise entred the Chamber; he no sooner saw him but raising his head out of the Bed; “Ah my Lord (said he) you make me ashamed, and I am vexed to see my self without necessity a bed whilst you are risen to labour for my repose. “I never rose upon a better occasion (replied *Constance*) and if I be but so happy as to give you that repose; I shall no longer account my self the most unfortunate person of the world. “If I may receive it from men (replied *Pharamond*) I shall hope it from you sooner than from all others, but instead of expecting it from men. “I cannot yet apprehend by what ways Heaven can give it me.

He had spoken more, if *Constance* had not given him notice that he was ready to depart, by demanding of him if he had any particular Commission to give him. The King kept not as a secret what he had given to *Cloderic*, and prayed him, that he might accompany him to the Camp of the *Cimbrians*, where he would not be useless to him, by reason of his knowledge of their customs and manners. A little while after, *Constance*, and *Artabure* who would not leave him, mounted on Horseback, followed by some Knights, whom the King of the *Franks* caused to accompany them, contrary to the intention of *Constance*, who had designed to go without any other train than his Esquires; but with him, the Princes *Marcomire* and *Sannon*, *Genebaud* and *Meroveous*, *Rithimer*, *Antenor*, *Dagobert*, *Clodegesile*, *Cleomer*, and many other illustrious persons mounted on Horseback, to conduct him forth of the Camp, and accompany him a part of the way he had to pass to that

that of the *Cimbrians*, not believing it convenient to go farther, though some of them very much desired it. He denied as much as he could this civility, but in the end he was forced to accept it, by reason of the constancy of the Princes, whose resolution he could not divert, and he marched towards the Camp between the two Brothers of *Pharamond*, at the head of the fair Troop which followed them; passing by the Quarters which were in their way, the two Princes discours'd him of the manners and strength of the Nations that compos'd them, but when they had reached the utmost bounds of the Camp, *Constance* addressing himself to *Marcomire*, demanded of him, if he would not give him some commands to the Princess *Albisinda*, assuring him that he would acquit himself with all possible affection; and the Prince, having thanked him for his civility, with great marks of resentment, prayed him not to speak of him to the Princess, for fear lest his discourse might put her to the blush, or lest she should be offended to find that he knew a thing which ought to be kept secret, by reason of the knowledge he had of the severe humour of her Father. *Constance* promised him he would act as he desired, and the Prince again breaking silence, *If you will do any one of us a good office, you cannot better employ your civility than by doing it for my Brother,* (said he, shewing him Prince *Sunnon*) *and I am much deceived if at present he hath not as much need of it as any of us.* "Can it be possible, (said *Constance*, seeing that *Sunnon* sigh'd at this discourse) that a sight of so few minutes should work so great an alteration in the soul of Prince *Sunnon*? or can a passion be established with such entire power in the space of two days? Since you know the affairs of all our House, replied *Sunnon* with an excellencing grace, *I shall, my Lord, make no difficulty to discover to you mine, and to confess to you, that I believe neither Pharamond nor Marcomire more enamoured than my self. I believe likewise, that I have in two days felt all that love can make me feel while I live, nor can mine be of any longer durance, if this passion moderate not its violence. That which is befallen you is very extraordinary, said Constance, but not without examples, you have them fresh and familiar in the fortune of the King your Brother, and that of the Prince of Persia. There wanted but little, added the Prince Marcomire, but you might have put me in the number, for though at the first sight of *Albisinda* I was not so enamoured as I was some days after, yet it is certain, that weak and feeble as I was, I receiv'd her image into my heart with delight, and that I loved her sufficiently the first moment, to believe it impossible to forget her, though I had never in my life again seen her. That which I felt, said the young *Sunnon*, was with another force than what you speak of: for the Image of *Amalazontha* is so fix'd to my remembrance, and as it seems to me, to my very eyes in such manner, that it is impossible for my thoughts to be absent one moment from it. I saw her all the night, and I think yet I see her in that resplendent beauty, whose brightness dazzled me, and in that charming languor, which made me receive death with sweetness, whilst she carryed it into my bosom. All objects, instead of diverting that Idea in my spirit, seem'd to despoil themselves of their form to imprint hers; and in fine, she possess'd it so entirely, that it was no longer capable to act for her alone. I know well by a language so passionate, said *Constance*, that you are truly in love, nor can I sufficiently admire the destiny of your House, which would not create love in the three Brothers, but for the Sisters of three Princes, who lost their lives by the Lance of *Pharamond*. But Brother, added Prince *Marcomire*, you have not yet told us in what manner the Queen of the *Turingiens* carryed her self towards you while you accompanied her, but if you can tell it us, we may possibly draw thence consequences which may give you hope and consolation.*

"She treated me without rudeness, and without incivility, answered *Sunnon*, and I observed in her all the proceeding of a Princess well and nobly educated; but with a tender grief, in which I saw her languish, I observ'd by her eyes, and by her words, much distraction in her spirit, and it seem'd to me, that by reason of the profound sadness, in which she seem'd to be overwhelmed, she minded me but little, and gave me less attention. I was not astonished after what I had heard speak of the death of her Brother, that at the sight of some objects which might renew the remembrance of it, she had her eyes moistened, or permitted some sighs to issue from her fair mouth, but it seem'd in my judgment, that to her grief there was joynd some trouble in her spirit, which deprived her of the liberty of her functions, and which made it self observable by the incertitude of her regards, and the several changes appeared in her visage. I had no difficulty to accommodate my action, and countenance to hers, and seeing her from time to time lift up her eyes towards Heaven, with an action which seem'd to accuse it of some cruelty; that which I gained from her regards in passing, stopp'd mine on her countenance, with a force which permitted me not to draw them thence, and they spoke I assure my self, if the fair Queen would have understood their discourse, what

“respect, and fear to displeasè her, permitted not my mouth to declare. I would willingly have accompanied her into the middle of the Enemies Camp, though her presence had not secured me; but she commanded me to return much sooner than I desired, and when I took leave of her, aided by the power of all my courage, I besought her to remember a Prince she had that day seen, not as an enemy who waged war against her, but as a man who would be too happy to sacrifice his life for her service. Yes, (said she with a sigh she could not retain) *I will remember what I have this day seen, and I believe I shall never forget it while I live.* “I lost her after these words, and by her departure I remain’d in an obscurity not yet dissipatèd, though the Sun hath twice since appeared in our Hemisphere.

At this passionate discourse of young *Sunnon*, *Constance* and *Marcomire* who hearkened to it with all attention, easily knowing that it was love put these words in his mouth, were about to tell him what they thought, or at least what they would persuade him they thought, concerning those things he had told them, when *Artabure*, *Genebaud*, and many others, before whom they would not explain themselves, approached them, and obliged them to change the subject of their discourse. That which they had afterwards together was not long, for *Constance* seeing that they were nearer the Camp of the *Cimbrians* than their own, would not permit them to go farther, but obliging them to return, he continued his way with *Artabure*, *Cloderic*, and those other Knights which *Pharamond* had given him to accompany him.

[I believe it may be permitted us to follow him, for the two Camps stood at so little distance, that we may pass from the one to the other without wounding that regularity of the Scene to which we are confinèd.]

They in the Camp of the *Cimbrians* being advertisèd of the coming of *Constance*, by the *Cimbrians*, who the day before came to the Camp of the *Franks*, and was returned that morning very early, they resolvèd to receive him with the honour due to his Birth, the degree he held in the world, and the glory of his fair Actions; and the King of the *Sueves* being an Ally of the *Romans*, and willing to honour the Empire in the person of *Constance*, and possibly oblige him to prefer his interests before those of *Pharamond*, he mounted on Horseback to meet him, and the King of the *Alains* and *Gepides*, though he had been overcome in *Spain* by *Constance*, not preserving any remembrance of the misfortune he had in the war, which had only creatèd in him an esteem and respect for his Conquerour, would needs accompany the King of the *Sueves*, and by his example the King of the *Basternes*, and Prince *Gondemar* were mounted on Horseback, to receive among them, a man, whose fame was so gloriously spread through the world. *Gondioch*, who was an enemy to the *Roman* name, and who had no kindness for the design that led *Constance* into their Camp, was dispens’d with, *Godegesile*, who was Successour, and of the blood of *Ragadaise*, whom *Constance* had slain with his own hand in the first onsets of his Arms, believèd not that honour would permit him to meet him, though his resentment had not forbid it; and *Balamir*, who without doubt; out of the love he had for virtue, had run the first, was hindred by a wound he received from *Pharamond*, which made him for some days keep his Bed. But the Prince of *Persia*, impatient to see a man whom he infinitely esteemèd; outwent all others in this design, and without attending the King of the *Sueves*, was gone to meet his friend.

Constance discern’d him coming at a great distance, and he no sooner discoverèd the Attendants of *Constance*, but he spurred on his Horse directly towards him, testifying by his speed the great desire he had first to embrace him. So soon as *Constance* knew him, he rode in the same manner towards him, and they having contractèd a friendship which banishèd all formalities in their complements, embraced without alighting, and notwithstanding the resentment of *Constance* against *Varsnez*, they receiv’d each other after a manner that well denotèd their friendship. When they could speak, *Varsnez* beholding *Constance* with shame, *And well*, said he, *what judgment do you at present make of me? or rather, to what do you condemn me?* “I condemn you to suffer, answerèd *Constance*, at least, as much for *Rosamond*, as you have done for *Athenais*, and if I deceive not my self, to suffer it with the same success, and for my judgment, you shall pardon me if I cannot give it for your advantage. *You speak*, replyèd the Prince of *Persia*, *like a man that knew not love, and when you shall have seen the Queen of the Cimbrians, instead of condemning me, I fear you will be my Rival.* “Fear it not, (replyèd, though very coldly, the illustrious Roman) and believe; that though this misery should befall me, as it hath done you, the respect I have to the merit of *Pharamond*, would make me struggle with this passion, instead of abandoning my self to it. *I respect the merit of Pharamond*, replyèd the Prince of *Persia*,

both for what I have known in his person, and what I have heard from Renown, but I am not engaged to him either by friendship, or any other obligation, nor by any reason which ought to hinder me from seeking my happiness by his prejudice. "I believe, replied Constance, that with a merit like yours you may hope all things, but for my self, who have but a mean one, I confess that I should hope little from my fortune, against a Rival such as Pharamond. I understand you well, said Varanez, and by your modest discourse you make me apprehend enough; but besides that I am not like you persuaded, that nothing can dispute against the merit of Pharamond, it seems to me that there is nothing to be disputed with him, and that in the estate wherein his affairs are with the Queen of the Cimbrians, though he had no Rival he could pretend nothing. I see well, replied Constance, that in many things you and I are not of the same opinion, but if you be in any condition to receive counsel, and I am any to give it, I will divert you as much as is possible for me, from a design to make war against a Prince who hath not offended you, and who can without doubt make his enemies bear a share of his peril. For the peril, replied Varanez very fiercely, you may well believe that it is not that which shall divert me from the War, and that fame of his valour which may cause fear in other persons, cannot work the same effect over a courage like mine. But I cannot love Rosamond without espousing her interests, though I have received no offence from her enemy, and I hate him much more, when I consider him as her lover, than as her enemy. Both in the one and the other quality, said Constance, it would be difficult for you to hate him, if you knew him well. I am therefore content, replied Varanez very briskly, not to know him farther: for I already feel, that if he should be loved by the Queen of the Cimbrians, I shall hate him more than any man in the world; but it seems to me, added he with a sigh, that Pharamond hath gained your heart in a very short time. I find yours no less engaged to love, replied the famous Roman, and I cannot believe there should be need of longer time to become the friend of Pharamond, than the lover of Rosamond.

They discoursed in this manner, marching towards the Camp, and they had said more, if they had not seen the King of the Sueves, with the other Princes so near them, that they had not the liberty to continue their converse. So soon as they were about an hundred paces one from the other, they all alighted, and Constance and the King of the Sueves to whom the others gave place, being advanced one towards the other, saluted with infinite civility. Ardaric came forward next the King of the Sueves, and next to him the King of the Balthernes, and Prince Gondemar, all whom Varanez named to Constance as they approached to salute him. All these Kings, and the other illustrious persons which had accompanied them, were no less touch'd with the noble composure of Constance his person, than they had been charmed with his fair reputation, and as there was no man in the world whose renown was spread like his, they beheld him with all the esteem due to so illustrious a name, and the King of the Sueves with breaking silence, I receive with infinite joy, said he, the favour which Heaven this day doth me, and though I were not Ally to the Empire, nor concern'd in the interest of the Romans as I am, I cannot see the great Constance, of whom all the world speaks with veneration, without being so sensible as I ought of a happiness so little expected. I merit not, replied Constance very modestly, what your affection to the Roman name makes you speak to the most unfortunate of all the Romans; and I receive from a great Prince, like your self, those marks you give me of your affection, with all due acknowledgment and respect.

And for me, (said King Ardaric with a very good grace) will you not that I render that Homage I owe to my Vanquisher? and that I rejoyce to see in Germany that great Captain, that drove me out of Spain. If the Romans vanquished the Alains and Gepides in Spain, replied Constance, it was not through the fault of King Ardaric, nor is it always by the valour of the Commanders, that victory taketh sides; and I can tell you with truth, that I have always esteem'd you as a very great Prince, and that I have much desired, that the interest of Nations might not leave you any cause of offence against me. My resentment, said Prince Gondemar very pleasingly, could not hinder me from flying to the name of Constance, for I am too much in love with his noble fame and reputation to stop at any considerations that might divert me. For my part, added the young Humbert King of the Balthernes, I this day with no small joy behold the effect of a desire I have for many years wished, and I would have gone to the end of the world to have seen that man who hath every where filled it with his fame. You see to my shame (said Constance to the King of the Balthernes though he had spoke last) that Renown hath too much flatter'd me if it be true that it hath persuaded you so well to my advantage. And for you (added he speaking to Gondemar) you are not so little known as you believe, and I am not ignorant that by the glory of your youngest years, you are already arrived at such a pitch of glory as need not envy that of more aged men.

After these words, and others little different practis'd upon this interview, Constance presented

Presented *Artabure* to all the Princes, and as his name was famous in the world, by means of the great actions he had done, so he was received with all the honour due to him, and a little after they all took Horse again to proceed to the Camp, from whence they were but little distant, and the King of the *Sueves* riding by the side of *Constance*, after some moments breaking silence; *Will not you*, said he, *after having testified the astonishment, and joy we have to see living, and with us, the same Constance, of whom we have received no news since the last War of the Gauls, and whose loss all the world hath deplored, we should make some complaint, the Queen of the Cimbrians, and my self, of the injury and injustice you have done us, in preferring the Enemies of the Romans before their ancient Allies, and choosing rather to sojourn with the Enemies of your Country, than with those whom the interest of the Romans hath made theirs? Have we not reason to believe, that it should be with the Sueves, and Cimbrians, rather than with the Franks, you should make some abode? Or are we not very unhappy, to have merited this forgetfulness, or disdain from the Romans, whilst we take Arms for the interests of their Empire?*

Constance hearkened peaceably to the discourse of the King of the *Sueves*, and beginning so soon as he had done speaking; "There might be some reason in the complaint you make, said he, if it were by my choice, that I had sought a retreat in the Camp of the *Franks*, rather than in yours (though I can tell you, that when that should have been in the unhappy estate of my fortune, I preserv'd no remembrance of the interest of Nations, whether Enemies, or Allies of the Empire) but you may have understood from the Prince of *Persia*, that it was by an accident, and not out of design, I stay'd with King *Pharamond*; and you shall understand from me, that in the stay which that accident hath made me make with him, I have found in him qualities so great, or rather so admirable, that I could not refuse what he will easily obtain from all persons to whom he is well known: And moreover, I have found so much innocence in his Arms, and quarrel, and if you will permit me to say so, so much cruelty, and so little justice in yours, that I could not suffer, that our Allies should dishonour their Arms in an unjust cause, make an inundation of humane blood throughout all *Germany*, and commit all their glory to the event of a War which Heaven ought not to favour, and of which the beginnings have been unsuccessful to their party. "How my Lord, (said the King of the *Sueves*, interrupting him, and beholding him with an eye that render'd observable the discontent he received by his discourse) do ye judge our quarrel to be unjust? Or can you believe, that *Rosamond* wageth war without reason against the Murtherer of her Brother, and him who hath caused the death of her Father, and the ruine of her Estates? Or that I am unjust, in pursuing the vengeance of the deplorable *Vindimir*, of an unfortunate Son, more dear to me than my life, who lost his by the cruel hand of *Pharamond*? I have been sensible, as an Ally ought to be, of Prince *Vindimir's* loss, replied *Constance*, nor have I condemn'd what the first motions of your grief made you act to revenge it, but you ought to give bounds to it, and content your self to have sacrificed more than two hundred thousand lives to that of a Prince who lost his with his Arms in his hand, and of which *Pharamond* depriv'd him only defending his own Subjects, against whom he had brought the War, as you well know. And you may add, replied the King of the *Sueves*, that we made war against him, without having received any offence from him, but for the sole interest of the Romans. What you say, said *Constance*, obligeth the Romans to remain your Friends and Allies, but justifies not the War you make against *Pharamond*, nor can make you condemn what he did for his defence. Yes, my Lord, I know that you are any Ally to the Romans, and that it was for their interest you lost the Prince your Son, and it is this reason makes me come to you, as to our Ally and Friend, to endeavour to give you a repose, you voluntarily deprive your self of, and spare the blood of your people, which you sacrifice without pity to your immoderate revenge. It is because you are our Ally, that I am engag'd to this enterprize, in a time, wherein I have abandoned my fortune, and my life it self; for against others than our Allies, I had without delay taken the Arms of *Pharamond*, whose virtue is no less dear to me than all the interest of Nations.

The King of the *Sueves* was about to reply, and possibly in a manner which had depriv'd him of a part of the hope he had conceiv'd to prosper in his design, but by this time they saw themselves in the Camp, and saw themselves on all sides accosted by persons who gave them not leisure to continue their converse. They followed on their way to the Quarter of the Queen, by long Streets of Tents ranged in a very fair order; and all this appearance of War, in a Camp compos'd of so many Nations, and the powers of so many Kings, recalling into the Spirit of *Constance*, the remembrance of what was pass'd, made him oftentimes sigh for that change of his condition, which had cruelly interrupted the course of those

those fair actions by which he had acquir'd so much glory. They came in the end to a great Village, seated on the Banks of the *Rhine*, at which the Princes had taken their Quarters, because there were many fair Palaces, much more commodious than the Tents, and a Castle, which, out of respect, they had left to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, the Queen of the *Turingiens*, and the Princess of *Suevia*.

It was here that they alighted, and *Constance*, conducted by the King of the *Sueves*, and the others, found the two Queens, and the Princess, at the gate of the Hall, whither they were come to meet them, with King *Gondioch*, and King *Godegsile*, who would not refuse to see *Constance*, though they were Enemies to his Nation, and more to the design which conducted him to their Camp. All that *Constance* could imagine of the beauty of *Rosamond*, by the recitals of *Clemmer*, *Pharamond*, and all other persons who had spoken to him of that subject, he now found infinitely below what now appeared to his eyes, and he confessed, that no imagination could persuade him to what he in truth beheld. He remain'd so surpris'd at such a far excellling Object, that for a long time he was not able to acquit himself of the Formalities usual in such Encounters; and though his Soul was wholly fill'd with the Idea of *Placidia*, his love for some moments suspended all its motion, and his Spirit seem'd to forget all things, to dedicate it self entirely to that sight which charm'd the remembrance of his evil, and spread something through his senses, which rendred him quite different from himself. The habit of the Queen, though suitable to an austere sadness, lessened not her beauty, for the black colour did more set forth the resplendent whiteness of a complexion which out-vied the very Snow, and did but form an obscurity from which her eyes seem'd to glance a fire more bright than ordinary. The admirable proportions of her whole person, and the beauties of her port and gate, seem'd rather like to those of *Homer's* Divinities, than those of mortal persons. In fine, all her person entirely attracted both the eyes and spirit of *Constance* to its sight and admiration; and though he yielded not to such a power as *Varanez* and *Balamir* had done, at least, he excus'd, and ceas'd to condemn them.

The wonders which he saw in *Rosamond*, hindred him not from observing those which all the world acknowledges in the Beauties of *Anaxantha* and *Albisinda*, he beheld them as two fair Stars near a brighter Luminary, and he judg'd well, that if he had seen them o-ther where than with *Rosamond*, he could have believ'd there was nothing fairer in the world. He saluted them with that respect due to their Dignities, and with that which Beauties so admirable could imprint in Souls, and they received him like that person of the world whom renown had most made them know, and who, by his great Actions, ought to be judg'd worthy their esteem. He was likewise civilly saluted by *Gondioch* and *Godegsile*, though their intentions were ill, and he rendred them all that was due to their Dignity, and to their Merit, so much the rather, by their noble air, and graceful comportment, he was perswaded it.

After the first words, usual at such meetings (in which, if his modesty suffered something by those praises which he saw given him by the fairest lips, it was as well impossible for him to conceal a part of those things with which a sight so extraordinary had replete his mind) being come into the Hall, with the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, whose hand he had taken, and from thence having conducted her into her Chamber, whilst the King of the *Sueves*, and *Artabure*, whom he had presented to the Queens, rendred the same office to the fair Queen of the *Turingiens*, and the Princess *Albisinda*, having taken his place near the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, like a person to whom all courtly customs were well known (whilst the rest of the company did the like) beholding her with a respect which was possibly above what is due to mortal persons, and which deprived him of a part of the liberty he had easily to explain himself; *I know not, Madam*, said he, *if you will pardon a person whose misfortunes have depriv'd him of his courage and boldness, those endeavours, which in a better fortune, he might have attempted with more appearance; or if you will grant, that it is yet permitted to a person, who, by the goodness of his Emperour, was at other times in some esteem with the Allies of the Empire, to hope, that he may still find so much among them, as to make his Mediation acceptable, and the Propositions he is to make of a peace, much more advantageous and glorious for them, than all the events of war can be pleasing, I know well, Madam, that your Father was an Ally of the Romans, and I believe you have not renounced their Alliance, and therefore a Roman cannot be suspected by you, especially a Roman, who dares promise himself, to be own'd by his Emperour, in whatever he shall do for your interests. It is out of this consideration that I would join my mediation to the desire of the King of the Franks, to demand peace of you, I say at the desire of King Pharamond, but I do not possibly say enough, since it is King Pharamond himself demands peace of you, and who would receive it*

from you on any conditions you please to impose. I have found his desire real, and if you will permit me to speak it, I have found his defence so just, that I could not refuse my intercession with you and my mediation with the Princes interested in your party. I will add both to the one and other that of the Emperour, if it be necessary, and I assure my self he will approve all that I shall agree for the Allies of the Empire, so much the more willingly because in the peace I propose their advantage may no less be encountred than that of their enemies: and that by the beginning of the War Pharamond hath no more reason to fear the event than the Princes of your party, they are present Madam at the supplication I make you, to grant that I seek your satisfaction by other ways than those which have already cost so much blood. The fair Queen of the Turingiens, the King of the Sueves, and the King of the Balternes, are by the losses they have suffer'd interess'd in the revenge you seek; and the other Princes are so by reasons or pretensions which perswade them to the justice of their quarrel: I doubt not but they will all follow those motions with which you shall inspire them, and if you will permit me I will intreat them all before you, not to oppose the desire I have to give them repose, and hinder the ruine of Germany. They know too well how many thousand lives this War hath already cost, both in the Lands of the Franks, those of the Cimbrians and Burgundians, and though they might hope (as this hope is not denied them) that the events of the War may be favourable to them, I cannot believe they can hope the ruine of Pharamond at less price than that of three hundred thousand men. In the mean time your people and theirs groan under the yoke of a most cruel War, you know already all their miseries and hard calamities, and you know moreover Madam that it is not for defence of liberty they suffer, nor for the interest of Nations, but for a particular quarrel. There is enough Madam, there is enough blood sacrificed to revenge, there is nothing so just but ought to have its limits, and that which might have been just in a time when the injuries were fresh, and when nothing had been done to repair them, ceases to be so in a long and cruel obstinacy. And further Madam (continued he, turning himself wholly towards her) you know what enemy you pursue, you are not ignorant whether he hath offended you by his intention or misfortune, and you cannot doubt but by reason of that which he hath to be hated by you, that life against which you arm so many thousands of men, is more odious to him than the worst of his Enemies. I will not say more, it belongs to another tongue than that of a Mediator (as I am) to perswade you in this matter, and if that I should proceed in it, there are many persons in this Company by whom I should not be favourably heard to: but I ought in my judgment to be so by the most interested whilst I demand only peace, and offer them all satisfaction, from a Prince (who submits out of all other motives rather than fear) at present in a condition able to sustain the War against all the powers they can Arm.

Constance spoke in this manner, and being naturally sweet and patient he would continue the discourse to the end, though at the beginning he soon knew by the countenances of many of the Company that it was not agreeable to them. There was a little murmuring among them so soon as he had done speaking, which made him well judge he should find some difficulty in his design. And the fair Queen of the Cimbrians, who had quietly listned to him having cast her eyes upon Amalazontha and on the King of the Sueves as most interested: And in fine, upon all the other Princes as it were to gather a part of their thoughts before she declared hers, turning her self towards Constance, and breaking silence with such a grace and Majesty as astonish'd the illustrious Roman; You ought not to doubt my Lord, said she, but your mediation is held in great esteem among persons who respect the Roman alliance and your particular merit, and you would do us injustice if you should believe, that what might be yielded to the Oriental or Occidental Emperours can be refused to the great Constance: but there are sometimes engagements which leave us not the liberty to follow our inclinations, and though we may overcome thoughts we must not violate solemn Oaths, nor break those unions in which our honour is engaged as well as our word. I tell you this particularly for my interest, and without making you the sad discourse of those cruel injuries I have received from the King of the Franks, by the ruine of our Realms, the loss of my liberty, the Death of my Brother slain by his own hand before my eyes, that of a Father who lost it by his Arms, and so many other evils which for the greatness of them are known to the whole Universe, I will tell you that though I could pardon such bloody injuries I cannot dispense with sacred Oaths, and Oaths which I have made before all the Gods both to my Brother dying in my Arms, and to my Father expring before my eyes, to pursue the revenge of their death to the last moment of my life: Nor can I violate a sacred union made with the King of the Sueves by the command of the King my Father, in a quarrel common to us and in which our interests cannot be separated. Ah for Heaven Madam (said Constance to the fair Queen) you ought not to doubt, but it will dispense with the performance of your oaths, and since they are contrary to its will, instead of being incens'd it will favour your good intentions: And for that union you have made with the King of the Sueves, as we desire to appease and satisfy him as well as you, it will not be necessary to disunite you in a treaty you shall not make but with him, and to which I
hope

hope he will for our sakes consent. You hope it in vain (said now the King of the *Sueves* very briskly) and though I consider as I ought, both the alliance of the *Romans* and the mediation of such a man as *Constance*, you must not wonder if I declare that no reason nor no consideration shall make me abandon the design I have to pursue the revenge of my Son till death. "I believed, said *Constance* very faintly, that time and the blood you have devoted to that desire of revenge might have sweetned a part of your resentment, and I despair not but we may in the end obtain what you refuse at our first demand. And for you Madam (continued he addressing himself to the *Queen of the Turingiens*) since it is difficult to imagine, but Heaven hath given to your soul Beauties agreeable to those we admire in your person, I hope that the sorrow you may have for the death of a Brother who lost his life in battel, and assaulting that of a Prince who had never offended him will not be more powerful in your spirit than pity, than the calamity of your people, and the effusion of so much blood as you must spill in the prosecution. I say the same thing to the King of the *Basternes* (added he addressing himself towards him) and I doubt not but that by whatever honour he may be engaged to revenge the King his Brother, yet that he will consider his death as an effect of his courage and misfortune rather than the intention of King *Pharamond*, and that he will comply with all things, reason and the intercession of his friends can exact from him.

"I confess (said the charming *Amalazontha*) that blood, cruelty and employs of War, are not conformable to to my inclinations, but there is nothing to which I would not form my inclinations to revenge my Brother whom I loved more than my self. "I owe the same revenge to mine (added the King of the *Basternes* Lover of the amiable *Albifinda*) but since I know the King of the *Franks* killed him like a valiant man, it is less resentment that arms me against him than the concern I have in the interests of the King of the *Sueves*, from which no consideration can withdraw me. "Besides those that seek revenge for their Sons and Brothers (said now King *Gondioch* who had not before spoke) there are some amongst us whom other reasons arm against *Pharamond*, and though all others should consent to a peace with him I would continue the War till death. "For you (said *Constance* whom this discourse displeas'd, and in whom all the proceeding of *Gondioch* had begot in him an aversion for him) as I never heard you had any reason to be an Enemy to King *Pharamond*, I confess that I intended not to address my self to you as I have address'd my self to those, to whom by his misfortune he hath given some cause of offence, and though that of others may be overcome yours will be permitted to act with liberty. "Being neither Ally nor Friend to the *Romans* (replied very fiercely the *Burgundian King*) I will not inform my self whether among them an infidelity like that of *Pharamond* may be approved. "If I were not here Mediator, replied *Constance* very prudently, I would answer both like a Roman and like a man in whom the virtue of *Pharamond* had wrought that effect it ought, to the discourse of a man from whom the *Romans* desire neither alliance nor friendship: but in the quality I at present am, I will only tell you, that I have understood that you are bound to King *Pharamond* for your Crown and Liberty, and are the sole cause of his misfortunes, but I have never heard it spoken that you could accuse of infidelity, a Prince to whom you owe all things and who is not obliged to you but for all the misfortunes of his life. The *Queen* knows well nor will she disown it (just and equitable as she is) that of all the actions of *Pharamond* which have attract'd her anger, there are only those done in your favour whereof she can with reason accuse him, and that all the others are fallen out by his misfortune and against his intention. And all the world have admir'd that instead of arming your self against him, you have not expos'd yours to defend his as the person of the World the most oblig'd to him.

Gondioch was about to reply to *Constance* in those terms had possibly transport'd him to extremities, if the *Queen* of the *Cimbrians* and the King of the *Sueves* had not oppos'd it, by remonstrating to him the injury he did them in the person of *Constance*; or if the *Queen* had not pray'd him or rather command'd him by all her Authority not to speak a word more. After this command *Gondioch* left the Chamber with Prince *Condemar* his Brother, who by his countenance made it sufficiently be judg'd he approv'd not his procedure. And King *Godegesile* who was neither a Friend to the *Romans* nor to *Constance* particularly, departed with him, saying that his design was conformable to that of *Gondioch*, and that he would never consent to a peace that would deprive him of the means to merit *Rosamond*. "For my part, said *Ardaric*, I am no enemy to *Pharamond*, nor know I any thing in him which is not rather worthy my esteem than aversion, but I will wage War against him and against all the world for the service of the *Queen*, nor can I desire that peace should rob me of

“occasional to serve her. “And for me (*said Prince Varancz who had not yet spoke*) I not only confess that I am not an enemy to King *Pharamond*, but I confess that all his person hath charmed me and that never any thing appeared to me so great as he: but if I must wage war to gain *Rosamond*, I would renew the ancient fury of the Gyants and make war against Heaven it self for such a Conquest.

Constance smiled at this discourse of *Varancz* though he was but little satisfied with the beginning of his negotiataion, and the Princess *Albifinda* reaching her lips to the ear of *Rosamond*, who notwithstanding her Royal dignity still called her Sister, “Alas my Sister (*said she very low that she might not be understood by any other*) what a great misfortune is it that I alone am not asked my advice, for I can well assure you that my opinion should not be for war. The Queen sigh’d at this discourse of *Albifinda*, and a little after *Constance* rising from his place to follow the King of the *Sueves* with whom he was to dine, and whom he yet followed with reluctancy by reason of the little disposition he saw in him to peace, addressing himself to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, “I did indeed believe Madam, *said he*, that at my first proposition I should not obtain what I demanded, but I hope the reflection whch you will make will be more favourable, and since I have eight days of cessation of Arms, I will endeavour to employ them all in such manner that I may not be blamed though the success may not conform to my intentions. After these words he told her that he would revisit her to take leave of her before he returned to *Pharamond*, and he added with a low voice, seeing that there were some persons nigh who might understand his discourse, that he entreated her to consider the cruelty she exercised towards a Prince who dy’d for her, and who instead of meriting her hatred was possibly the only man of the world worthy her affection. The Queen changed colour at this discourse of *Constance*, and seemed pleased that *Constance* by departing dispensed with her returning an answer.

Going forth of the Chamber, *Constance* who understood how the valiant *Balamir* kept his bed by reason of his wound, and who by what he had understood of the virtue and great Actions of that Prince had conceiv’d for him an esteem proportionate to his merit, demanded of the Prince of *Persia* and the King of the *Sueves*, in what place he was that he might give him a visit, when *Telanor* who was come to the Camp of the *Cimbrians* with him, and who the day before had recounted to him the History of his Masters fair life, came to him on his behalf, and told him that Prince *Balamir* had sent him to beg pardon for the obstruction his wound had caused to the desire he had to come and render him all that was due to the great *Constance* from persons who knew how to respect virtue, that without the violence of his friends who hindred him from rising, his wound had not been able to divert him. *Constance* having hearken’d to this discourse of *Telanor*, “I should be ashamed at the civility of your Prince, *said he*, if these Princes could not justifie me to you by testifying that I was on the point to visit him: and I should have a just complaint against him if he could believe that I had any design to depart hence, without seeing a Prince whose fair reputation would make me compass the world to wait on him.

Concluding these words he would have gone to have seen him without further delay, but because it was very late the King of the *Sueves* prayed him first to go dine, offering himself to accompany him in this visit immediately after the repast. The Prince of *Persia*, the King of the *Alaines*, the King of the *Basternes*, and many other Princes and illustrious personages dined with *Constance* at the King of the *Sueves* quarters: the Dinner was plentiful and magnificent, but *Constance* took small delight by reason of the little disposition he found in the Spirit of the *Suevissh* King to consent to peace: for that King naturally severe and obstinate in his designs, though he acted civilly with him and testified to him an infinite consideration both for his person and mediation, made him easily judge he would difficultly abandon that desire of revenge which above all things did predominate in his soul.

Incontinently after Dinner *Constance* went to see *Balamir*, and though the Prince of *Persia* had no inclination for him, or rather because he was the man of all his Rivals whom he beheld with most envy and jealousy, yet he would not leave *Constance* but with the King of the *Sueves*, the King of the *Gepides* and the King of the *Basternes* accompanied him to the Chamber of *Balamir*. This Prince received *Constance* with all those marks of acknowledgment and respect could be given to the chiefest person in the universe, and *Constance* found in his countenance and in all his person wherewith to confirm himself advantagiously in the opinion he had of him: These two great men both the one and the other made truly great,
by

by all that could raise men above any thing common, beheld each other reciprocally with a serious consideration, and if *Balamir* found in the person of *Constance* all that he expected to make it agree with his fair reputation, *Constance* judged that he had seen nothing equal to *Balamir*, before he had seen the King of the *Franks*: Not but that they had before seen each other, when *Constance* hindred the continuance of the Combat between *Varanez* and *Balamir*, but that was for so little time, and with so much disorder, that they could not make those judgments of each other, which they might do after some moments consideration.

Balamir began it by those thanks he return'd to *Constance* with the best grace in the world, for the honour he did him in this visit: but *Constance* stopping very readily the course of it, *You ought not to thank me*, said he, *for a duty I pay to my self rather than to you: for Fortune offering me occasion to see the great Balamir, I could not neglect it without doing my self an injury I should never have pardon'd.* *You may believe*, replied the Prince of the *Huns*, *that his Renown hath begot a sufficient desire to know the great Constance, in all those whom his virtue and great merits could touch, and that I am not little engaged to my fortune in giving me so easily, what I should have sought with all possible labour, had she given me the means.* *Though I have always passed my life among great men*, replied *Constance*, *yet I have never known such as I some days past have seen; but the satisfaction I have had to see them, hath been counterbalanced by a great displeasure, and as I have testified to the Prince of Persia, the grief I had to see him engaged against a person whose admirable virtue hath gain'd my heart, I cannot hinder my self from telling you, notwithstanding the presence of the King of the Sueves, whose pardon I beg, that I find nothing more cruel and unjust, than to see you take Arms against a Prince, whom you have no reason to hate, and whom you would without doubt love if you knew him.* *I already know him so well*, replied *Balamir*, *as to tell you, that I prefer him in my esteem before all that the universe hath of most great, and instead of counseling the war against him, you shall see me presently give my opinion for peace, if it be demanded of me; but as I am engaged in the service of Queen Rosamond, and by a passion stronger than reason, I believe you will not condemn the design I have, to serve her like a valiant man, and like a man, whom no passion can make forget the respect owing to virtue.* *This is to speak like a man truly valiant*, replied the famous *Roman*, *for true valour is an enemy to brutish fury; but I can assure you, that if you have an esteem for the King of the Franks, he renders you reciprocally justice, and that when you shall understand those things which is not permitted me to relate to you, I shall be much deceived if you cease not to be his enemy.* *I am his Rival*, replied *Balamir*, *and not his enemy, but though I am his Rival, and though I would seek the possession of Rosamond at the price of my life, if he should command me truly to declare my thoughts, no interest should hinder me from telling her, that among all men, Pharamond alone can be worthy of her affection.* *This is a discourse*, said *Constance*, *truly worthy of Balamir*—— *And it is*, added *Varanez*, *the discourse of a Philosopher, and not of a Lover, and a man like Balamir; for my part, I am not of this opinion: and though I am no less perswaded of his virtue than Balamir, I believe, neither Pharamond, nor any person in the world, to be worthier than my self of the affections of Rosamond; and that though Fortune had not given me advantages over all her Lovers, there is none, who for courage, or qualities of person, could better merit her than my self.* *Those are most happy*, said *Balamir* sighing, *who are so well perswaded of their own merit, I know that you are so with infinite reason, but you shall pardon me, if I fear that of Pharamond; and that though great as you are, by Birth, Degree, and Valour, I look not upon you as my most formidable Rival.* *I believe*, said *King Ardaric*, *that no Lover thinks himself inferior to his Rival, and that the good opinion we may have of our selves, is more pardonable in this, than in any other occasion.* *I agree with you*, said *Constance*, *but however it be, I desire with all my heart, that Balamir were not Rival to the King of the Franks, and that Heaven would again raise up Hunnimonda.* All the passion which *Balamir* at present had for the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, could not hinder him from sighing, and changing colour at these words of *Constance*; and in a moment after, by the excellency of his nature, which no passion could corrupt, his eyes were seen moistened with some tears, he carryed his hand to them, either to conceal, or dry them, and letting yet a sigh break forth, *Oh Hunnimonda*, said he, *if you had lived, though lost to me, I had never been amorous of Rosamond; but dead as you are, I can with difficulty comprehend the miracle her beauties hath wrought over my Spirit.*

Whilst these illustrious personages were in this converse, *Cloderic* with the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, endeavoured to discharge his Commission; and so soon as *Constance* was departed the Chamber, had presented himself, and saluted the Queen. She entertained him

most favourably, and told him many the most obliging things in the world, before all that were present. After Dinner she retired to a window with him, and beholding him with those eyes which had inflamed all the Earth, and whose dazzling splendour no humane force was able to support; *And well*, Cloderic, said she, *you have then forsaken us.* "I am still, *replied* Cloderic, the most faithful of your Subjects, but I am fixed to the service of that Master your Majesty hath given me, that I believe I shall never leave him. "I suffered you to retire with him, *said the Queen*, in a time, when, by the service you rendered him, you might fear all things from the anger of the King my Father, but at present, that you have liberty to return into your Country, among your Friends and Kindred, methinks there is some cruelty in leaving them to sojourn with our Enemies. "Ah Madam, (*said* Cloderic, *in the sadest manner in the world*) and what Enemy have you in King Pharamond?

He spoke but these words, and the Queen having hearkened to them, with a look sufficiently pensive, fixed her eyes on the ground, without replying. Cloderic regarded her for some time in that estate, and after breaking silence very low, that he might not be heard by any other person; "If it may be permitted your faithful Subject to beg a favour, *said* he, I would beg your Majesty to grant me one minutes audience. The Queen answered nothing to these words, but a little after, departed from the place where she stood, and entered into a Closet, which was very nigh. Cloderic judging by her behaviour, that she would not be offended if he followed her; and being more hardy for the service of a Prince whom he passionately loved, than he would have been for his own interest, followed her in effect, and entered alone into the Closet after her. So soon as she was entered, she seated her self in a Chair, and seeing Cloderic alone in the Closet, "Are you there Cloderic? (*said* she.) "I thought Madam, *answered* Cloderic, that your Majesty had commanded me to follow you. "I commanded you not, (*said the Queen*) but since you are here, I am content you stay, and if you have any thing to speak to me, either for your self, or yours, I will willingly hearken to you. "It is neither for me, nor mine, that I ought to abuse your patience, (*replied* Cloderic:) "and when you permitted me to follow the King of the Franks, you might well judge, that I fixed my self so strongly to a Master so amiable, as to forget both my self, and mine, to devote my self wholly to him. It is most certain, that I have found in him those charms which have enchanted me, and that to fetter hearts, he hath those chains, which no accident, nor length of time can break. I should certainly be too happy, and that much more for the love which hath tied me to his person, than for those benefits I have received from him (though they are above all I could hope from the most magnificent Prince in the world) if I were not exposed, much more than other persons who are near him, to the knowledge of his misfortunes, and the cruel sufferings, which render him the most unfortunate of all men. By reason of the honour I have to be your Subject, and that I have had to be employed in your service, 'tis to me he addresses himself more than all others, to make me know what he suffers, and what he will suffer for you till death. I should touch you without doubt with pity, should I make the recital, but no expression can approach the truth, but by the communication which great Souls have together, a Soul like yours may comprehend what passes in a Soul like Pharamond's, much better by imagination, than by my discourse. He was pleased that I should this day accompany Constance, to confirm what he commanded me to tell you, after the death of the deceased King. And he hath charged me with some words, which he believed I might persuade you to hear; And which I conjure you, Madam, *continued* he, *bending his knee before her, and presenting her the Letter of Pharamond*, to peruse with some motions of pity, if his merit and fidelity cannot excite any thing more favourable in your heart. Concluding these words, he opened himself the Letter of Pharamond, and in that open posture presented it to the eyes of Rosmond; she appeared much troubled at the carriage, and discourse of Cloderic, and had hearkened to it without lifting up her eyes from the ground, where she had fixed them, she remained yet in the same countenance, when he had done speaking, and turning in the end her eyes upon the Letter he presented her, and not able to resist a power which possibly obliged her to see it no less than the persuasions of Cloderic, she read these words.

King *Pharamond* to the Queen of the
Cimbrians.

Either as a Lover, or as an Enemy, I desire a death from your hatred, or your pity; the Enemy may expect it as a punishment, if the Lover cannot receive it as a favour. Few persons have so often demanded it without obtaining it; and I perhaps find my self the only person among men who desires death, and to whom it is not permitted to die. Is this pity, is it cruelty, or is it both together? Ah for pity I ought not hope it, and there is little appearance death should be refused me out of pity, while the whole Earth is armed to give it me; and if it be cruelty, it is a strange cruelty, which denies me death, yet permits me not to live. Is it not that you hope a revenge much more entire from those long deaths which I suffer adoring you without hope, than from a death that would deliver me from all that which my love, and all which your hatred makes me suffer? Or is it yet more true, that you would owe to some other than *Pharamond*, the price proposed for his life? Or that you fear not to be longer in a condition to give it to a Rival, if you receive that from me they ought to offer to merit it? Ah, if it be for this end that you forbid me from dying, it is too cruel to let me live; and you will possibly be ill serv'd by those Arms who will in the Combat respect that fair Image I carry in the middle of my heart. Or if you yet seek glory in my ruine, consider that you seek it in vain, and that you will gain nothing more, when you shall deprive me by a hundred thousand swords, of a life I yielded into your power at the first instant I saw you, than if you should permit me to give up before your eyes my last sigh, and abandon by my death to my Rivals what Fortune permits me not to hope.

Whilst *Rosamond* read these words, *Cloderic*, who held his eyes fixed on her countenance, observed those changes which made him well know the agitation of her Spirit, and judge by very great appearances, that it was not hatred which produced them. She let the Letter fall on a Table near her, keeping a long silence, in the same posture as before, reading the Letter, violently retaining some sighs, which notwithstanding her endeavours broke from her breast. In the end lifting up her eyes to fix them on the countenance of *Cloderic*, and breaking silence with a blush that added a new lustre to her beauty; "*Cloderic*, said she, You may tell the King of the *Frank*, that I have but too much explained my self to him; That neither as a Lover, nor as an Enemy can he obtain what he demands of me; And that if he loved me so much as he would persuade me, he would choose rather to dispute me with his Rivals to the end, than by his death abandon to them the possession of *Rosamond*. That he would let Heaven act what it hath resolved for his fortune and mine; and that he would employ all his Valour to defend me against others, if he cannot employ it to conquer me; that it is not impossible but his Valour may give him Victory against all his Enemies; and that if this misfortune befall us, he shall see me suffer it with more constancy than I should possibly comport our Victory. Concluding these words, she bushed more than he had done at the beginning of her discourse: And a little after, turning again towards *Cloderic*; You make me speak more than I ought, said she, but I pray let this befall us no more. Go *Cloderic*, and leave me a little alone.

Cloderic having made a profound reverence, departed the Closet, and retired with satisfaction, to have observed, as he thought, that the King, whom his present inclinations made him serve, was not so unhappy as he believed himself. Before he spoke to the Queen, and while *Constance*, and the other Princes were with her, he had seen *Imbergeda*, who

was his Friend, and given her Prince *Marcomire's* Packet. *Imbergida* having opened it, found a Letter for the Princess *Albisinda*, and one for her self, in her own she had read these words.

Prince *Marcomire* to *Imbergida*.

I Know not if you remember the promise you made me, to love me always as your Son; but if you have forgot it, I will put you in remembrance, by demanding the effect. *Gerontes* would visit you, if he had as free an access into your Camp as *Cloderic*: If you love me as well as he, I shall not be unhappy, and you know that my felicity in part depends on you, since, near my Princess, you are the only person in the world can act most for my repose and fortune.

Having read this Letter, *Imbergida* gave hers to the Princess *Albisinda*, so soon as she left *Rosamond*, to return to her Chamber. And that fair Princess truly loving *Marcomire*, could not see his Letter without being touched with infinite joy, and no less tenderness. She opened it with great impatience, and found these words.

Prince *Marcomire* to the Princess *Albisinda*.

Your faithful *Eriplea* salutes you, she advertises you that it is impossible for her to live without seeing her Princess, yet she would support her absence more patiently, if it were likewise common to *Theodora*, but *Theodora* dayly sees you, and *Eriplea* sees you no more; yet she fears this not to be the greatest of her misfortunes, but lest Presence should banish Absence from your memory; if this misery must happen, give her rather a death, and if you please, believe, that she would die much more cruelly by your forgetting her, than by the Arms of our Enemies.

The fair Princess of the *Sueves*, whose heart was tenderly touched for the Brother of *Pharamond*, read many times this Letter with all those motions her affections could create. But *Imbergida* having advertised her, that if she would answer it, she must do it presently, *Constance*, whom *Cloderic* could not leave, being upon the point to return, she writ these words.

The Princess *Albisinda* to Prince *Marcomire*.

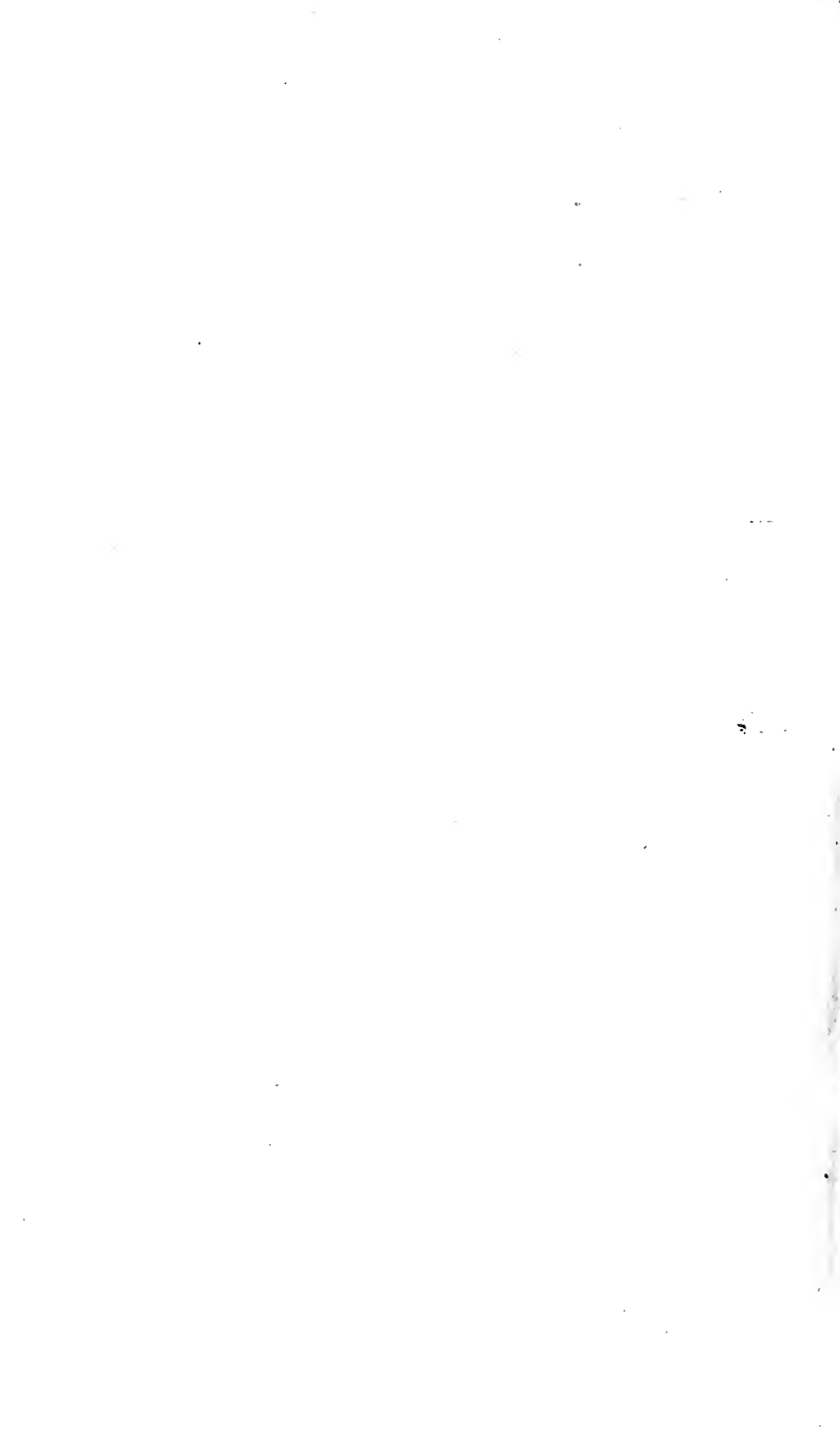
Though *Eriplea* be a Deceiver, yet I vow I cannot hate her, and would willingly see her, if I could do it without exposing her to some danger; but since it is difficult, she must attend with me the opportunities of Heaven and Fortune, and in the mean time, she may be assured, the presence of *Theodora* shall not prejudice her, so that she be still faithful.

Imbergida

Imbergida carried this Letter to *Cloderic*, with that which she had writ to *Mércomire*, just at the time that *Constance* having quitted *Balamir*, was returned to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, with whom he found the Queen of the *Turingiens*, and the Princes of the *Sueves*. *Constance* testified to the Queens his sorrow to have so ill prospered in the beginning of his Negotiation, and intreated them to think good, that during the days of truce granted him, he should yet do what was possible to incline their Spirits, and that of the King of the *Sueves* to peace. The fair Queens, without explaining themselves farther, assured him of the consideration they had for his person, and intercession. And a little after, *Constance* having taken leave of them, retired with the Princes that accompanied him, and notwithstanding the endeavours they used to keep him that day in their Camp, he took Horse to return to *Pharamond*.

The End of the Fourth Part of
PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.



PHARAMOND.

The Fifth Part.

BOOK I.



When *Constance* had taken his leave, and was upon his return to the *French Camp*, the fair *Queen of the Cimbrians* retired to her *Closet*, to give some few minutes of repose to the hard constraint, she was obliged (by the severe rules of a cruel Duty) to impose upon her self; and to gain a small liberty to entertain that diversity of thoughts her Soul then laboured with.

It was not perhaps through her own inclination, that she waged a war so cruel against the King of the *Franks*; and it was a very hard case, that considering so great, and so extraordinary a merit, a love like *Pharamond's* should only give birth to hatred, and desires of revenge, in a Soul which was not insensible of Gratitude. She had been without doubt exasperated by former injuries she had received at what time the interest of King *Gondioch* had armed his hand against the King her Father; she remembered also with no small grief, the deplorable death of her unfortunate Brother; and in the King her Father's, although *Pharamond* could not with any justice be accused, she nevertheless had found sufficient matter of new resentment against him, and had hearkened as much unto them, as either the Laws of Nature, or those of Duty could possibly oblige her, and had paid them all the Rights' as could be due from a person, whose inclinations were most suitable to the desires of Revenge.

Through the rage which his first offences had excited in her Soul, a first sight she had exclaimed against *Pharamond*, as against a person meriting all the thunder of her anger: at the death of *Theobald* she had darted such flashes of Lightning against him, as had been more fatal and tormenting unto him, than those which he had to fear from the incensed Heavens: and upon the death of the King of the *Cimbrians*, she had willingly followed those cruel Endowments which he would have given her, and had wholly abandon'd her self to all that which the King of the *Sueves* and he had desired of her, for the execution of their revenge. But amidst so many Injuries, so many Misfortunes, and so many fatal Resolutions, she had reserved a just sense of the outrages she had received, either by the misfortune, or by the intention of her Enemy; she had had a clear sight, and a just knowledge both of the person, and admirable qualities of *Pharamond*, and she had possibly been Mistress of a heart, which being neither of Steel, nor Adamant, could not preserve that obstinate firmness against so many fair proofs of so fair a passion. It was almost impossible, but that the first sight of *Pharamond* should have wrought upon her Soul part of that effect, which hers had produc'd upon the heart of the *French Prince*; and as *Pharamond* was not a person to be less admired in his Sex, than *Kosamond* in hers, it might happen that by this first Apparition (if we may so call it) she was surpris'd to his advantage, or at least, that it had bred in her mind some disposition to hearken more favourably to all that he could speak in his justification.

Through this advantageous impression, and through the intercession of Truth and Reason, she might believe, that those former injuries she had received from *Pharamond*, had been sufficiently repaired by what he had done in her service against King *Gondioch*; and that the death of *Theobald* had been an effect of his own misfortune, and of the intention he had to serve her, and not to offend him; and that to the King of the *Cimbrians*, he had only contributed, through the malignity and cruelty of those Stars, which design'd all things to his misfortune. However it were, either through this knowledge which she had of *Pharamond's* innocence, or through the effect of her love, and of his admirable qualities, all the thoughts she had of him were not of an Enemy, seeing that her Soul laboured with many other Passions than those of hatred, or desire of revenge. She suffered much more than could be judged by appearances; but yet by these appearances you might easily judge, that her Soul did not enjoy a perfect repose, there was no person that thereby could divine all the cause of her disquiet; for that which she endured without daring to make known, was for the most part covered with what she was permitted to declare. Thus while she shed tears upon the Herse of the King her Father, and to the memory of *Theobald*, she might mingle some sighs which sprung from another cause, and with the memory of these losses, she might feel the misfortune which constrained her to revenge them upon a person, who was not so odious unto her as he ought to be, to make her prosecute his ruine without repugnancy. Neither did she love those of her party with that fervency which they had reason to expect, considering her engagements to their assistance; and if when they went to fight, she accompanied them with some wishes; or if the found of the Trumpet, and noise of War made the Vermilion to forsake her Cheeks, neither were these fears for her own, nor her wishes altogether for the victory of her party. They who appeared most zealous, and ardent in seconding her anger, were those that in her heart found least of recompence, so that that eagerness by which they thought to merit most, was a fatal means to render them less esteem'd by her. How often (viewing them clad in their sumptuous Arms, casting looks of terrour through their glittering Steel, when they mounted their fiery Couriers in her presence, and threaten'd with an arrogant temerity the life of *Pharamond*) hath she breathed forth some sighs of which they knew not the true meaning, in lieu of a kind look which they silently entreated, casting her eyes upon them, animated with another passion than they dream'd of; *Go cruel ones, (said she to her self) go find my hatred where you believe to meet my love, nor expect that I will accompany your designs with any favourable wish; may the Gods rather divert the effect of your cruel threats, and direct the sharp points of your Swords to any other mark, rather than against the life of Pharamond: that life is too dear unto the Gods, to be so odious unto me as you believe it, and perhaps it may be defended at the price of yours.*

As they who appeared most furious, and eager after *Pharamond's* ruine, and that most outrageously threatened him, and who either through his absence, or the general hatred the Camp bore him, were approved and applauded for so doing, were the greatest strangers to her affection; so they who proceeded with more moderation against him, and spake more sparingly of him, she most favourably regarded; so that if Prince *Balamir* had had no other advantage over his Rivals, the modesty he always observed in speaking of the *French King*, with the high value he always professed both to his person and virtues, were not the least motives to prefer him in her heart before many of her other Lovers; which was the reason that the animosity, which (above others) *Gondioch* manifested always against him, did render him the most contemptible of all her Admirers, though in truth he was not so, and obscured all those great qualities he was endued with.

In the mean time she endured a torment so much the greater, because accompanied by an eternal constraint; and for that there were few persons in the world, to whom she durst unbofom her grief: *Albifinda* might solely boast to have learn'd from her self, part of this great secret of her heart, yet neither to her had she fully declared it; for although she had in her an entire confidence, she could not force the reluctancy she had to confess at large a secret, which might tend any way to shame her; so that in discovering unto her a part of what she felt, she left her to divine the rest, not submitting her self to the judgment she might make thereof: she nevertheless had not confessed so little, but that *Albifinda* had drawn from her confession an assurance to inform her of all that which had happen'd unto her, in relation to *Marcomire*. And although *Rosamond* found somewhat of surprizing in this Adventure, and even of eminent danger to her friend, through the severity of the King of the *Sueves*, and that she had represented unto her the difficulties which might cross her affection, she did it nevertheless in such a manner, as might easily make her judge, that the friendship she had for her, and not any hatred either to the person, or House of *Pharamond* had obliged her to it.

Amongst

Amongst her Women, *Perfunda* and *Luciana* were they who had the greatest knowledge, or rather, the greatest jealousy of the truth, by reason of her great indulgence, in giving them free liberty to judge their pleasure. But *Cloderic*, next to *Albisinda*, was the person to whom she had declared her self.

As her releasing *Pharamond* out of the Prison, wherein he had voluntarily cast himself, might have been well imputed to her sole generosity, (and doubtless, by her sole generosity she might have performed it, without being excited and push'd forward by other motions) so made she no scruple (after her Father's death) to aver it, being more willing the world should learn it from her free confession, than from the uncertain mouth of fame; so that she only conceal'd the interview between *Pharamond* and her self, a thing only known to *Cloderic*, *Perfunda* and *Luciana*.

She had often found great consolation in the gentle disposition, and sweet converse of *Albisinda*; for this fair Princess who loved *Marcomire*, and hated not *Pharamond*, instead of opposing those favourable motions she had conceived in her heart, for the amorous King of the *Franks*, did both approve, and encourage them, by all she could possibly invent to his advantage: but as she was not ignorant of those cruel obstacles which oppos'd King *Pharamond's* Fortunes, and perhaps the fair *Rosamond's* inclination, who had neither reasons strong enough to vanquish them, nor to put another face upon things (by the whole world) so well known; she thought rather to sweeten and mitigate those evils, than to take them quite away, or to give a relief considerable enough to settle the mind of *Rosamond* in a state of more repose and tranquillity. She had remained till now in that condition, but then she found new cause, by *Cloderic's* discourse, and *Pharamond's* Letter, to precipitate her self into a Sea of sadness and afflicting thoughts.

As soon as she was alone, and private in her Closet, and that by absence of those persons who might have given her some diversion, the remembrance of what she had heard, and seen some minutes before in the same place, return'd entirely into her fancy; she found her self expos'd to the severe war which her thoughts were about to wage against her, and abandoned her self to all those torments which her reflections made her suffer; she threw her self with a sad negligence upon that Couch, upon which an hour before she had received *Cloderic's* message; and with an afflicting sadness recalling to her memory all that she had heard, or seen in that place; *Was it not here* (said she) *that I have heard so much talk of Pharamond? And was it not here I explain'd my self more than my Duty did permit? How!* (said she, chiding her self for this remembrance, or rather seeming to chide) *Pharamond who is only known to thee by so many bloody injuries, he who hath laid thy Country waste, who slew thy Brother, who destroyed a Prince designed thee for a Husband, and who caused thy Father's ruine; that very person whom thou pursuest with so many thousand men, is come to find thee in the middle of thy Camp, and will bring the war to thy heart, yet hath he the confidence to write to thee? yet, it is thy heart he assaults, he has the boldness to write to thee, but thou hast not the courage to refuse his Epistle, nor the power to binder thy self from perusing it, nay, not perhaps from being therewith touch'd: Ah Rosamond, how great a weakness is thine, and to what shame dost thou expose thy self, in so ill maintaining a design wherein thou hast engaged so many Princes, and for which thou hast arm'd so many thousand men? Comest thou into thy Enemy's Territories with a power able to make all Europe tremble, only to expose thy weakness to the view of the whole world? And didst thou arm so many Provinces for thy quarrel, against this Enemy whom thou canst not hate, only to render thy overthrow more shameful, and his Victory more honourable? Is it thus, thou dost preserve the memory of those sacred promises, and of those solemn Oaths, by which (to the whole worlds knowledge) thou art engaged to the revenge of a Brother, and a Father, whom thou hast seen die, either by the hand, or by the Arms of this same Enemy; or if thou keepest them in thy memory, is this the way to observe them?* She stopp'd at these words, through the grief that this remembrance caus'd; and she found somewhat therein of so much cruelty, that she could not dissipate for a long time the trouble that had overspread her Soul. But dispelling those misty clouds which were rais'd in her fancy; *No, no, my Vows*, said she, *I have not forgot you, I am ready to offer you a Sacrifice which will make known at large the respect I have for you: yet all the rigor to which you can engage me, cannot hinder me from seeing that I have done it with integrity, that you have arm'd my self against an unfortunate Lover, but not against one that is criminal; and that this unfortunate Prince is of all men the most great, and most amiable, and that this so amiable person loves me a thousand times beyond his own life: Ye cruel ones, you that incessantly incense me to his ruine, most merciless King, of the Sueves, base and ungrateful King of the Burgundians, is it possible that your implacable hatred, and unjust resentments can close your eyes against a merit that shines so gloriously through the world? or if,*

your fury be so blind as to obscure this knowledge, can you believe that Rosamond hath a heart of Brass, or a Soul capable of those barbarous resentments you would infuse into her? And can you judge that she can arm her self with a rage parallel to yours, against a life which every day is offered at her feet with so much love and resignation? And that she can without grief and unkindness, turn the points of your cruel Swords against a heart which is only fill'd with her image, and only breaths to serve her? No, no, most inhumane Souls, do not nourish this opinion; and if you constrain me to the cruel necessity of observing my promises, and to acquit my self of those unjust Oaths, which were with so much cruelty extorted from my weakness, at a time when grief and misery had perplex'd my reason. Let none of you unworthy Rivals of a too illustrious Rival, hope a happiness from his misfortune, or to possess Rosamond by the ruine of Pharamond: Rosamond hath not propos'd her self the reward of so cruel an enterprise, and though she finds her self constrain'd to execute the will of a Father, for whom she is to act (through a tyrannical respect) what her Duty obliges, she will find a relief in her own courage which will disengage her of all, and will defend her from all the outrages which she hath cause to fear from her sinister fortune. And should you cruel Antagonists, give Pharamond his death, you give him his desire; for you may take away his life with much more ease than I can oblige him to preserve it. Here are (said she, taking up his Letter from the place where she had left it) Here are the too apparent and real testimonies of that so great affection he hath for me, and his little love he hath for his own life; he perfectly hateth it, because he believes it odious unto us; and therefore as a special favour, this unfortunate Hero desires nothing but his death. Here she opened the Letter, and reviewed it, stopping through a secret agitation of her thoughts, at those places which had most of passion; but in reading it, she could not abstain from giving such evident signs both of tenderness and grief, as might have been easily perceiv'd, had any person been present. She seem'd exasperated and disturbed, when she felt her eyes as willing to discharge some tears, and to swell with an accent betokening anger and vexation, repeating these words; *Oh eyes of mine!* (said she) *do you bestow your tears upon Pharamond's Letter, and have denyed them to the death of so many thousands we have lost in Battel? Is this pity? Is this grief? Or is it somewhat more offensive? Oh my eyes! It is not on Pharamond's misfortune that you bestow those tears, but on mine; without doubt you deplore the miserable condition of a Soul reduced to such severe necessities, that death is not half so cruel: you bewail this fatal violence which most barbarous Maxims constrain me to put upon my inclinations, and your tears are no less just, than if you payd them to my ashes: Ah Pharamond!* (after some few moments of silence, she added) *wherefore should our most mercileß fortune so cruelly oppose our happiness, and since by our own inclinations, and the mutual judgments of our Souls, we might be worthy of each other, wherefore should she oppose an eternal obstacle to those hopes, which had not otherwise been prohibited. Ah Pharamond!* (concluding with a sigh) *Wherefore, having so many causes of hatred, is it impossible for me to enjoy thee? or wherefore having so many causes of love, am I not permitted to love thee?*

She accompanied these last words with a River of tears which her constancy could not retain, and plung'd her self insensibly into an abyfs of grief from which all her courage was now incapable to preserve her, at what time she saw the door of her closet open. And as she had made known her pleasure to be alone, she began to grow angry because her orders were so ill observed, but much more she feared to be surpris'd in a condition little suitable to that firm stability which in appearance to the utmost of her power she ever preserv'd. But when she saw her dear *Albifinda*, and knew she was only disturbed by her in this sad entertainment of her thoughts her displeasure was soon appeas'd. The fair *Suevian* Princess by the confidence which her friendship gave her, drew nearer without fear of offending, and finding her eyes moist and some tears that yet like pearls hung on her cheeks, "How my dear Sister, said she to her, do you retire to afflict your self without me, as if you could have any mistortune or affliction in which *Albifinda* did not share? I wish it were possible for me so to do, replied the beauteous Queen, for it is no finall vexation to me to see you pass your most fair and youthful days with so unfortunate a woman, that must render you miserable by a participation of her misfortunes. If friendship and Amity did not allow me that share which I ought to have, replied *Albifinda*, I believe you have few misfortunes which are not common to us both: And it seems to me that we are tyed as it were by the same quarrel to the same fortune, and by an interest very little different. "Ah my dear Sister (said the Queen fetching a deep sigh) what a difference is there between your fortune and mine, and between those difficulties which *Marcomire* and *Pharamond* suffer for us. There may perhaps be less between your condition and mine, replied *Albifinda*, for those obstacles which you find in the rules of duty, to which possibly you bind your self with too much rigour, are not by much so

so great as those which I have cause to fear from the King my Father's severe humour. It is true^d replied the Queen, I foresee many difficulties in your affection, but they are not invincible, and there may arrive some changes which may open a way to hope, but on me no change or revolution can bestow that happiness. I can think nothing, nothing ask of the Gods for my consolation. The Gods, replied the Princess, can redress and give both consolation and relief even to those ills, which are most desperate in our opinions: And they have work'd miracles for things which questionless were of less importance to them than your repose and fortune. But my fair Queen, (continuing her discourse and embracing her as she sat close by her) will you not, said she, inform me what greater subject of grief you have to day than at other ordinary times? or at least will you not permit me to judge of your grief by those exterior marks you give thereof? My dear Sister (replied the Queen repaying her those Caresses she receiv'd) do you not find in me to day sufficient subject for my afflictions, by seeing me rather constrain'd by the inclination of the King your father than my own, to refuse peace to a man whom were it permitted I could love extremely, and cannot now hate though I am prohibited from loving him? It seem'd to me that Constance was sent from heaven for our relief, and that all the Princes of our party had a fair occasion to withdraw themselves with honour from an enterprise whose fatal beginning might give just cause to fear the success. But as you know dear Sister I was not ignorant of their intentions before the arrival of Constance, for they had sufficiently explained themselves to leave no place for any other answer than that which I was constrain'd to make him. I should not have had that complaisance for any of those whom love or other pretensions have cemented by interest to our party, as to have followed their inclinations to the prejudice of my own; nor because they were covetous of War should I have refused a peace so much more dear and acceptable unto me, but for the violence which the King your father imposes upon me; it is he that tyrannically makes use of those rights and cruelties which my oaths and the last will of my dead father seem to enslave me to. I verily believe dear Sister (said she, kissing her fair cheeks) that I should hate him in fine, if you could pardon it, more than the person towards whom he strives to work such an aversion in me. I would not have you if you could help it, replied the Princess, hate him, but I find that I can be wittily forgive you though you loved him less than Pharamond: and it may so happen that without hating him you may both enfranchise your self from his Tyranny and from the persecution of others: Although I am not very bold and hardy by nature, yet if I were the Cimbrian Queen I would happily rather follow my own inclinations than the dictates of those persons which had no authority over me. I believe (replied the Queen with a forced smile) that you would do much less than I, and by the judgment I can make since the time we have lived together, I believe my self Mistress of as great a courage as you; but were you a Commandress of that bold courage would you make known to the whole world the favourable resentments and private affections which you bore your Brother's Murderer, the Author of so many bloody injuries as I have received from Pharamond? I know not, replied the Princess, what I should do, but I believe I could not be condemn'd for informing the King of the Sueves, and all the other Princes that I pity'd the loss of so many thousand lives; and that I held my self no longer oblig'd to wage war against a Person who had only injured us through our own misfortunes, and that I might well rest satisfied in having sacrificed to my displeasure, which was not perhaps ever just, the lives of an hundred thousand men. I should have anticipated, dear Sister, not followed your counsel, replied the beauteous Queen, and I believe I should not have done it with a more hardy confidence than you, if the King of the Sueves and the other Princes had not greater advantages upon me than those which the weakness and timorousness of our sex afford them. But they alledge a duty against me or real or pretended, much more formidable than the authority of the King of the Sueves, so that being engag'd to war with those solemnities and Ceremonies as you know were observed, and having only received the Crown of the Cimbrians after the death of the King my Father, by renewing those oaths which dying he made me make to continue the war until the total destruction of Pharamond or our party, I cannot evidence my desire of peace against the intentions and inclinations of all those we have interest'd in the war without making them judge and giving all the world cause to believe I love our common enemy, and without exposing my self by this opinion to a misfortune to me much more cruel than all those which the uncertain event of war can threaten: And besides (dear Sister added she with attempt of sighs) if you only desire a peace for Pharamond you wish him not the thing which he desires, for nothing will satisfy him but death or the possession of Rosamond, and if Rosamond's heart cannot surrender to him by this peace, we cannot otherwise content him. He may have understood and know perhaps too well that he is not hateful unto me, he is not ignorant of the necessity which constrains me to war upon him, and if I should withdraw my forces from his territories to retire to my own, with the firm resolution which I ought to make never to see him more, he would be never the more happy if he loves me as much as he endeavours to persuade me; and I verily believe he had much rather be expos'd to the events of War in waiting like you dear Sister some miracle which I ap-

prebend not, than to lose by ordinary ways this unknown hope with which passion, not reason seems to flatter an enamour'd soul. And I know not Sister since I must confess it, whether I should be my self much happier in this peace and this retreat which must deprive me of the hope ever to see him, than in a condition which verily keeps my soul in eternal Alarms by divers events which must necessarily tend to the destruction of that party whom fortune declares against: But in this although I cannot conceive a hope yet methinks I am not nevertheless entirely forsaken. In fine dear Sister, my misfortunes are so much the greater by reason their weight cannot be apprehended, and Pharamond's are without doubt inferiour to mine since he is permitted to wish and follow without constraint the dictates of his inclinations, whereas I cannot vent one wish which is not either criminal or cruel to my self: for my inclinations are those which above all other things I must eternally combat. Behold dear Sister (after some few moments of silence, presenting her Pharamond's letter, said she continuing her discourse) see here if peace be the only thing which Pharamond demands, read this Letter which he assumed the boldness to write me, this letter which I had not power to refuse, and judge if he writes like a man to whom the events of war were more considerable than the loss of his hopes.

Albisinda taking the letter read it over very distinctly, and as she was no way concerned her self, she did not omit to stop particularly at those places which might nearest touch the Queen, being willing to render the King of the Franks this kind office, both for the esteem she always bore him and for the love she bore to Marcomire whose fortunes she saw link'd in the Chain of his Brothers. When she had read the letter, the Queen looking upon her with a languishing countenance: "Well now dear Sister, said she, whose misfortune have you most reason to condole, or Pharamond's who has liberty to speak and write all those pretty passions he feels for me? or mine who am constrained to declare all contrary to the real thoughts of my heart? "I know not whose fortune I should most complain of, replied the Princess, but I know that Pharamond is him I pity most, for if your felicity were at his disposal as his in yours, you would be quickly happy. "Whatever kind of love Pharamond had for me, answered the Queen, I am well assured he would do nothing for me either contrary to his honour or against his duty, and I believe he would never desire that thing of me that might eclipse a glory more dear to me than my repose. But in fine dear Sister, said Albisinda, may not I assume the boldness to enquire what your intentions are? To perform my duty even to death, replied the beautiful Rosamond, and to dye without regret when I have convinced the world my duty was dearer to me than my life. "But Sister, said the Princess, may you not be deceived in the judgment you make of this duty, could you believe your self very criminal if you prescribed it rules a little less severe? "There may be as you say much of error, replied the Queen, but those errors are in the general opinion and not in my particular judgment, and as it is this general opinion which creates a good or a scandalous reputation, or that gives or takes away our good name in this world; It is to that we very often ought to sacrifice both our repose and fortune. "But if, said the Princess, fortune should be more favourable to your publick designs than to your particular desires, and that by the hands of so many valiant men, as you have armed against the life of Pharamond, this illustrious Hero should most unfortunately fall, what course would you then take? "I should resolve then, replied the Queen a great deal better and with more ease than now I can, and having acquitted my self from what was due to my vows, to my father's ashes, to my brother's death and the ashes of Vindimir, I would openly pay to those of Pharamond what I am not permitted to give him during life, and I should not fear the whole worlds knowing my resentments after I had made known to the same world the glorious victory I had obtained over my self.

The sad Rosamond in this manner explained her self to her dear Albisinda, and the fair Suevian Princess for a divertisement to her pensive thoughts, shewed her a letter which she had lately received from Marcomire, when suddenly they were advertised that King Gondioch with Prince Gondemar his brother were at the closet dore. Gondioch's high quality did not permit the Queen to dismiss him, as if she could have fram'd any excuse she would have done with all her heart, yet she received him after such a manner as did clearly at first denote the small satisfaction he was like to receive by this visit, and the Princess Albisinda, though she could neither sleight nor contemn Gondemar, in whom she saw all those rich qualities which might purchase esteem, having her Soul at that time filled with the perfect Idea of Marcomire, whom she loved much more than him, gave him but a cold welcome. The two Brothers were no ways satisfied with this reception; but as they were naturally Matters of much confidence, they would not take a repulse, but while the Brother accosted the Princess, the King of the Burgundians approach'd the Queen; "I know not, Madam, said she, if I have been so unfortunate to displease you to day, by some words which a

“ just repentment made me speak to *Constance* before you; but besides, that I am not (as
 “ I told him) the *Romans*, the design that brought him hither was to little grateful, that
 “ it was not in my power to explain my self with so much mildness and civility as I could
 “ have desired, and should have done upon any other occasion. “ Had you given me there-
 “ by any distaste, (replied the *Queen* with a great deal of coldness) you would not have
 “ thought your self the more unfortunate for that; for you know full well, this is not the
 “ first time that you have done it, without esteeming your self a jot the more miserable;
 “ yet if you had proceeded in another manner with a personage of the Rank and Merit of
 “ *Constance*, you had not merited blame; and if any man had done as you did, over whom
 “ I might have pretended any authority, I should quickly have made him know, how lit-
 “ tle such proceedings were grateful to me. “ For your power, (replied the *King of the*
 “ *Burgundians*) you do me a cruel piece of injustice, if you can believe there is any person
 “ in the world, over whom you have more. “ I well remember, when I was under your
 “ power (replied the *Queen*) but could never perceive any power I had upon you: if I
 “ had I should have doubtlessly made use thereof for my deliverance from those misfortunes
 “ which I suffered in a contrary condition to liberty. “ Ah Madam, said *Gondioch*, do you
 “ not remember the promise you made the *King* your father to pardon all past injuries, and
 “ that you would never more remember those crimes which love forced me to commit. “ I
 “ have promised him things more difficult, replied the *Queen*, and you can witness how
 “ truly I have performed them: and though in obedience to him I have not nourished a re-
 “ sentment for those injuries you did me, you your self too often mind me of them to let
 “ me ever forget them. “ And what would you do then (answered *Gondioch* with indif-
 “ cretion enough) if *Gondioch* had murder'd the *Prince* your Brother, and caus'd the *King*
 “ your father's death: You have been the cause of both, briskly replied the *Queen*, and since
 “ you force me to tell you of it so often, it is only you whom I can reasonably accuse for all
 “ those misfortunes: but I could heartily wish that *Theobald* had lost his life by the hand of
 “ *Gondioch*, for then I should act without contradiction against a man who hath ever wil-
 “ fully perplexed me, what now I act with regret against him who hath offended me through
 “ the effect of my own misfortunes. “ *Pharamond* is very happy Madam, replied *Gondi-*
 “ *och* (somewhat moved with her answer) yet I believe that he might expect his justification ra-
 “ ther from the lips of any other person than yours. “ It is not more strange, answer'd the
 “ *fair Queen*, to see him justified by those he hath offended, than to see him accused by those
 “ he hath so friendly and faithfully served; and I have not more reason happily to hate him
 “ for the injuries he has done me, than you to love him for the good offices he hath rendred
 “ you. “ This is not the first time Madam, said *Gondioch*, that you have recalled to my
 “ memory the obligations I might have to the first actions of *Pharamond*, but that which
 “ might be at one time just when we were both criminals to you, possibly ceases to be so now
 “ that I am received of your party, and have taken up Arms to revenge you of your enemy
 “ at the dear price of my life and blood. “ It was neither your blood nor your life that I
 “ would have employ'd, replied *Rosamond*, and as I cannot with reason accuse this enemy
 “ but of those harms he did us in combating for your interest, since those are the only crimes
 “ he wilfully committed, I will again inform you of what I have so often told you, I should
 “ have call'd any other assistance rather than yours, and that certainly I ought not to com-
 “ mit the revenge I desir'd of *Pharamond* to a man of all the world the most oblig'd unto
 “ him. “ If I had been oblig'd by his former Actions, replied *Gondioch*, his last have been
 “ so vexatious and mischievous as ought to leave no place in my memory for his first, and
 “ that which he acted for my Liberty or in the defence of my Crown, was little considerable
 “ if he must deprive me of *Rosamond*. “ Alas! for *Rosamond* (said the *Queen* with an in-
 “ ward smile yet full of fierceness) *Pharamond* is not he you ought to accuse for depriving you
 “ of her, for if *Pharamond* had never been, *Rosamond* had never been the Wife of *Gondioch*.
 “ You might have happily consider'd (answered the *Burgundian King*) that you have receiv-
 “ ed others to the honour of serving you as little worthy as my self: and peradventure you
 “ might have yielded to time and reason these resentments you have now against me, which
 “ you can only attribute to the excess of an affection I had for you. “ If your love explains it
 “ self in this manner, said the *Queen*, you ought not to admire that it is not understood, or
 “ rather you ought not to find it strange (since it assumes the shape of hatred) that there is
 “ no better admision given to it than what is usually given to hatred. “ I must confess (an-
 “ swered *Gondioch* very soverely) that I am of all men the most unfortunate, and I even ac-
 “ knowledge that I may have merited part of my misfortunes: but I hope that my repen-
 “ tance and those opportunities which may offer themselves in your service, may work such
 “ a change in my favour, that you will not find less justice in the end for me than for others,

“who were permitted to enter into your quarrel upon those amorous hopes you no ways opposed. Whilst *Gondioch* entertained her with such like discourtesies, the Queen (who endured this partly with no small trouble) used a kind of violence to her self to hinder a larger discovery of her disaffection to him, and *Gondemar* who together with *Albisinda* had lent an ear to part of the discourse, although he endeavoured to have engaged the Princess to a more particular converse with himself, taking the words from her mouth, *How happy is Theodora Madam*, said he, *that Ericlea is not now here, and how much joy would Ericlea have to see the part of Theodora so ill managed? It would not be the first time*, replied *Albisinda*, *that she hath had this pleasure: But as Ericlea thinks not at present of us and that Gondemar ought only to nourish a repentance for the deceit he used under the name of Theodora: He doth ill to awaken the memory of an adventure which afforded me only displeasure.* “Ah Madam, said *Gondemar*, how willingly could I accuse you for want of sincerity durst I presume it, and as there is small likelihood that *Ericlea* thinks no more of you, how much less is there that his love was ever the cause of your grief and displeasure. “What else could it have caused (replied the Princess with a fierceness no ways suitable to her nature) was it joy for those great felicities I might then expect? do you believe the present conjunctures so favourable to make me hope a happiness from the affections of *Pharamond's* Brother? “If you believe, said *Gondemar*, that there is little happiness or small advantage for you in *Marcomire's* affections, *Gondemar* will never labour to make you forfeit the opinion: but as you have heretofore permitted *Theodora* to be jealous of *Ericlea's* happiness, you cannot find it strange that more than ever she should now fear it, and that with grief she remembers those advantages her Rival had once over her. “I confess, replied the Princess, that I did dearly love *Ericlea*, nor could *Theodora* complain of my want of affection for her, but they both ceasing to be the persons they appeared, they ought not to be astonish'd at the change of my kindness: And as *Marcomire* has reason to believe that the cheat he hath put upon me hath exasperated me against him, *Gondemar* might reasonably expect that the resentment I had for his might have lasted as long as my life, if by some actions which have sensibly obliged me he had not made me lose part of my anger, “Ah Madam (said the Prince with a cheerful aspect) tell me in the name of the Gods what action I have performed in my whole life that could ever possibly please you, and let me learn by this knowledge that I am not so much unfortunate as I always believed my self. “You ought not to doubt, replied the Princess, but that you highly obliged me both by the discovery of *Marcomire's* deceit and your own, and by withdrawing me from an error which might have engaged me to have committed great crimes, and in fine exposed me to no small grief and vexation: And moreover I willingly acknowledge that I hold my self indebted to you for having as well concealed the secret of *Marcomire* as your own from all the world, and so spared my modesty that confusion which these adventures would have cast upon it had they been noised. “I well perceive (said *Gondemar* unto her with a sigh) that you were highly pleased, that I did not expose *Marcomire* to those perils which menaced him, had he been known so near you: but on that side he had nothing to fear, for I could not without too much baseness revenge my self of him by ways so unworthy of my courage: And for what concerned you Madam, you may well believe that I had rather forfeit a thousand lives than be deficient in the least consideration I ought to have had. “You may judge replied the Princess, that it was not the interest of *Marcomire* that obliged me to you, since you so well know that he departed from us as soon as you, and that no danger could threaten his life in a place where he made no stay. But however it was your proceedings gave me such an esteem for you; as did mitigate my resentments, and I should testify it as much as was possible for me, if you had no other thoughts for me than what might permit me to do it. The Prince was about making a reply, when the Queen of the *Cimbrians* (who could not longer in the humour she was in endure a parley with *Gondioch*) entreated *Albisinda* not to part the society any longer: And a few minutes after *Ardaric* and *Godegesile* being entred the Closet, and after them the fair Queen of the *Turingiens* followed by the Prince of *Persia*, by *Martian*, the King of the *Basternes* and by the Ladies belonging to the three Princesses the converse became general, and neither *Gondioch* nor *Gondemar* had opportunity to prosecute the discourse they had begun. *Gondioch* was therewith much less displeas'd than his Brother, for he met so much rigour in every word of *Rosamond's*, that had he not been accustomed to the like, the ill success of this visit might have been able to have made him desist in his suit. He could not nevertheless abstain from making known to the Company some part of his perplexity, and for that he knew the Prince of *Persia*, the King of the *A-lains* and the King of the *Basternes* were newly returned from accompanying *Constance* through the Camp, he turned towards *Godegesile* for whom he had less unkindness than for

the rest, because there was more conformity in their dispositions, and towards Briomer whom he loved beyond all others because of the hatred he professed to Pharamond: "Do you not think, said he to them, that the Prince of Persa, the King of the *Milans* and the King of the *Easternes* have well performed to day their Complement to *Constance*, and that for Princes who delighted in War they could possibly have done honour to a man that came for peace?" It seems to me (replied *Varancz* without expecting *Godegefile's* answer) that the design which brought *Constance* into the Camp was neither disobliging nor injurious to any of us, and whatever intention he might have, provided it was no way contrary to the service and interest of the Queen, nothing could prohibit me from rendering to his Merit what is due to all persons that are lovers of virtue. This reason may be of weight to you, replied *Gondioch*, and besides that you may possibly be a friend to *Constance*, you have no difference with the *Romans*, but for *Aidaric* who is no more their friend than I and who hath had some contests with *Constance* in Spain, I know not what reasons could oblige him to such a Ceremony. Every one acts according to his own inclination, replied *Arderic*, and though I was vanquish'd by *Constance* as you were by *Pharamond* in Germany; I confess I have preferred as much esteem for my Conquerour as you have hatred for yours: and I am scarce satisfied that your proceedings are more brave and generous than mine. If *Pharamond* were only odious to me for the advantage which fortune gave him over me in the war (answered the King of the *Burgundians*) I should have no more hatred for him than you for *Constance*, but 'tis known full well that it was not the event of war which gave birth to our enmity: For my part, replied *Arderic*, I have neither known in war nor in peace any thing by *Constance* which hath not obliged me to esteem him, and the interest of nations ought not to hinder our reverence to Virtue. One may respect and esteem virtue, said King *Godegefile*, without loving the person that is virtuous, and I must confess that be of all my Rivals in whom I perceive most of virtue and merit is the most odious to me. He may be most formidable to you (said the fair Queen of the *Turingiens*) but it is very rarely that the effect of virtue attracts hatred. I confess (replied the King of the *Herules*) that fear will be the first effect, and that this passion may in a little time outstrip my hatred in my soul, but hatred must infallibly follow it at the heels, and he of my Rivals whom I have most cause to fear will doubtlessly be the man I shall have most reason to hate. This resentment is very natural, said Prince *Gondemar*, and if it is not the most praise worthy it is at least the most pardonable. If I could believe, said young *Humbert*, that my Rival would not precede me in happiness as well as merit, his deserts instead of causing hatred would cause in me more love: but as it is very difficult to acknowledge our selves inferior to any without believing our selves the more unfortunate of the two, it is almost impossible but that which gives us a belief of his happiness beyond us, should not likewise create an aversion rather than an amity for him. It is very true, added the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, that it is not in these occasions which men practise most modestly, for except in love it self it is in the knowledge of our selves that we are least just and equitable. There are some Persons of such a resplendent merit (said the charming Princess of the *Sueves*) that it is very difficult to flatter our selves so much as not to know the advantage they have over us. That may happen, said *Martian*, between a low desert and a very transcending merit, but when the disproportion is not so great, we do not ordinarily do our selves orermuch justice. If the complaisance and partiality we have for our selves, replied the fair *Amalazontha*, renders us unjust in the judgement we make of our own deserts, I likewise believe that in the judgment of others merits, passion as frequently presides as reason; and that we oft discern more or less merit in persons according to the affection or aversion we have for them. That which you say may be a great truth Madam, said *Briomer* unto her, for I confess that the hatred I bear to *Pharamond* doth not only blind my eyes to all those brave qualities which others observe in his person, but also represents them to my apprehension either truly as they are, or else as I look upon them with prejudice as defects and crimes that deserve my hatred, and I never yet knew either by sight or report, any thing by him which did not rather augment my antipathy than diminish it. *Rosamond* dur'd not reply to this discourse of the fierce *Briomer* as she could have wished, but she wink'd upon the Princess *Albisinda* who might much better do it than her self, and who loved not *Briomer* since the imprisonment of *Marcomire*, and who taking hold of his words with a pleasing grace, I confess *Briomer*, said she to him, that this opinion is perfectly your own, and that there is no person here present in whom we can find such as you have furnished us withal as to the point in hand, but though we should be just to our enemies as well as friends at least in our principles, I fear there is no such justice in yours: However will you not acknowledge that this hatred which might blind you, in the judgement you make of the Grandeur, courage, valour and other qualities of *Pharamond* doth not hinder you from the knowledge of his clemency to the vanquish'd, nor from finding a kind of sweetness in the civil treatment and entertainment he gave you when you were his prisoner, or if you were not thereof sensible, would you not rather have it attributed to some natural cause,

than to hatred which came by accident? I have not better interpreted that actions of Pharamond's, than others; nor had I need to make use of my hatred, to know that his civil usage was rather an effect of his love to the Queen, than of his own generosity. In this manner, one may blast all generous actions, (replied the fair Princess, with a scornful smile) but very few persons will be of this opinion, and I could easily convince you, were we permitted to speak to the advantage of our enemies. As I am not very eloquent, (said Briomer to her) and that I had need of a good Second to maintain a bad opinion: I beseech you, Madam, to stay till the King your Father be present, and not to be displeas'd, if I implore his assistance. You have small need of his assistance, (said Queen Rosamond unto him) in a place where your party is sufficiently strong; and you will give me no great satisfaction in finding out such a Second against my Sister. Briomer, to this discourse of the Queen, made no reply, but gave sufficient evidence by his behaviour, and more furious looks to that fair company, that the choleric and implacable hatred which reigned in his heart, would be as durable as his life; and soon after, the meat being brought into the Hall for the Queen and Princesses Supper, who for the most part did eat together, the Princes retired, and left them to their liberty.

After Supper they re-entred the Closet, and spent therein some small time more together, ere they retired; but the presence of *Amalazontha* did not permit the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and the Princess of the *Sueves* to entertain themselves on that subject which was most pleasing to them. It was not for want of affection for this fair Queen, nor that they would not willingly have given her a place in that Amity, which did so strictly bind them, as well in regard of those many fair and amiable qualities, that rendred her most worthy; as because she had often with much earnestness requested that favour. They likewise lived with her, with marks of affection little different from those they had for each other, and the title of Sister which they had always used to each other, notwithstanding the difference, which by the King of the *Cimbrian's* death, there was between her and *Rosamond*, was in common unto her with them, not only because the title of Brother and Sister is sufficiently common amongst Sovereign Princes, but because it seemed more conformable to the union they desired to preserve, during the whole course of their lives. But though *Amalazontha* was very dear unto them, both for the amiableness of her person, and the marks which she had given them of her friendship, there still remained a thing, concerning which, they reposed little confidence in her; and they had found so much the less appearance of calling her to this counsel with safety, as they perceived in her a greater vehemency in the prosecution of her Brother's revenge, and *Pharamond's* ruine, she hated the unfortunate man, without remembering that once she loved him equal to her life. The knowledge which she had given thereof, hindred them from explaining unto her the particular, and dear sentiments they had for the King of the *Franks*, and the Prince his Brother; but in all other affairs they used her with a most sincere and cordial affection, and loved her as a most dear, and amiable Sister. They had likewise with much regret observed, that her mind was assaulted with some sensible grief, or perplex'd with some other passion more violent; and as they well judged by themselves, it was very improbable for the loss of a Brother to cause all those disorders and distractions, which appeared in her Soul, they interest'd themselves with a great deal of tenderness in the unknown misfortune which produced this effect. It was certainly easie enough to read in *Amalazontha's* eyes, that her Soul was sick, and that her languishments proceeded from a cause more extraordinary than a natural grief, though the cause which made them languish, had not deprived them of their sweetness, but looking somewhat more dull, and wandering, it seemed as if part of their vivacity was covered with some cloud, but such a cloud, which by obscuring some part of their brightness, seemed rather to augment, than take away from those sweet and powerful charms which accompanied their beauty. Her complexion more beautiful than the fair Flowers of the Spring, suffered likewise some decay of its lustre, through the disturbances of her mind; and if at some times, by the effect of certain thoughts, in hostility with her repose, the vermilion of her cheeks was somewhat more than ordinarily heightened, it seemed that at other times they lost a part of those graces; and it was much to be feared, that if her illness continued, her health would be with much difficulty preserved. The language of *Amalazontha* did not a little contribute with her visage, to discover the state of her mind; and though she was Mistress of a happy wit, and natural readiness eloquently to express her self, and a good grace; there were certain times in which the distraction of her mind, and the slender attention she gave to what was said to her, caus'd her to return answers very different to those which she would have otherwise made, had her mind been less disturb'd, and she accompanied them often
with

with sighs that issued from an obstructed breast, ere she could recollect her self to retain them.

Rosamond and *Albifinda*, though sufficiently employed in their own concerns, had observed nevertheless some part of that distraction, which plainly appeared in the person of their new and amiable friend, and although the memory of their proper misfortunes might with much likelihood have rendered them insensible of others miseries, yet had they with grief considered, that she was much more unhappy than they could have wish'd her. They were often inclined to ask her, what they were ignorant of, the cause of her afflictions: but as they loved her, and that their acquaintance was but of a few days, they thought that they could not with any civility, at that time satisfy their curiosity. But that very night, the Princess *Albifinda*, whose Soul was replenish'd with bounty, and whose nature easily compassionate the misfortunes of others, observing in her visage more than she had done before, all the signs of a mortal sadness, could not contain her desire, which sprang from a real affection; and clasping one of her fair hands between hers, and pressing it with an affectionate tenderness; *Must you Madam,* (said she) ——— *But must you,* (said *Amalazontha*, interrupting her first words) *so soon forget the promise which you made me, to call me always by the name of Sister.* "I'll do as you please, replied *Albifinda*, however it be difficult for me to use that liberty with so great Queens, though in obedience to your commands. "What though you are no Queen (said *Rosamond* unto her) there's none that doubt but that you ought to be one; and for me, you know full well, were I more your Sister, I could not love you more. "We had hopes, some time since, to be so by a double tie, (replied the Princess) and I do not yet despair, but that the Gods will work some miracle to confirm this alliance between us. "I should be displeas'd, (said the Queen of the *Turingiens*) not to be the third; and although I have the disadvantage to come last, you cannot believe, without doing me an injustice, that you have more of friendship for each other, than I have love for you both. "The assurance you give us, is too obliging, (said the *Cimbrian* Queen) embracing her, and I can ascertain you, as well for the Princess *Albifinda*, as for my self, that there is nothing more pleasing unto us in this world, than your friendship. "But, my dear Sister, (added the *Suevian Princess*) to prosecute the discourse which I began, and by you interrupted, think you that you do well to converse with persons already sad enough of themselves, and who are so, from grounds of sorrow sufficiently apparent to augment their afflictions by an addition of your own, or that you ought to have any thing in your Soul so cruel and tormenting, which our afflictions will not permit us to be sensible of, or for which we may not be able to afford you some consolation or other?

The fair *Amalazontha* sigh'd at *Albifinda's* discourse, and looking upon her with languishing eyes; "You may best, dear Sister, (said she) afford us consolation; for I know nothing so capable to comfort us in our afflictions, as the presence and conversation of those whom we most dearly love, but there is neither ease nor remedy for me; for unless I receive them from Heaven, or from death, I know not whence to expect them. "Oh! my dear Sister, (said *Rosamond* unto her) how much do you afflict me by this discourse? for though verily my heart be sufficiently oppress'd with the burthen of its own grief, the causes whereof are so many, happily beyond what all other persons have occasion to know, yet I feel them augmented by the knowledge of yours. *I could not have believed, dear Sister,* (said the Queen of the *Turingiens*) *that these marks of my sadness ought to have surpris'd you; for having sustained a loss of the same nature with yours, and a loss too fresh in memory, for me to forget the Idea of the person for whom I mourn, it was not an easie thing for me to demonstrate more of cheerfulness in my countenance than you have already observed.* *We no ways doubted,* (replied *Albifinda*) *but that the loss of the King your Brother, must of necessity touch a disposition like yours, to the quick; and through that knowledge which experience hath rather given to us than you, of those great effects which such a loss can operate.* *We do not in the least admire, to observe so much grief and affliction in you; I have griev'd, and do yet daily grieve for the like misfortune; and yet the Queen of the *Cimbrians* hath greater cause of affliction, which draws each day a river of tears from her fair eyes.* *But you must give me leave to tell you, that it is not grief only we have observed in you, but that amidst your grief we have descried a trouble, and a disorder which is no ways natural to you, and such a disorder which grief alone is not accustomed to produce.* The disconsolate *Amalazontha* blush'd at this discourse of the Princess, and for some few minutes kept silence, covering her face with her hand to obscure her shame; but soon after, taking hold of her last words; *I know not,* (said she to *Albifinda*) *what this trouble and disorder is, you have so much observed, happily my disposition is naturally given to melancholy.* "For your dispo-

"fiction (said the Queen of the Cimbrians) we know full well what it is, when your mind
 "is free, and at liberty; nor do we attribute to nature that which some accident might
 "have caused: but I fear that the Princess of the Sueves is a little too urgent, nor had she
 "been excusable, had she prest upon any other motive than the dear affection she bears you.
 "Oh fairest Queen, (said Albitinda, embracing her, and as it were excusing her self of the
 "fault she had committed) I humbly beg your pardon, and protest to you, that friendship
 "was the sole cause of my indiscretion. "You could not injure me, (said Amalazontha,
 "returning her back her kind embraces, and making her feel some tears which stole down her
 "cheeks when she laid them to hers) and instead of complaining, I must owe you a perpe-
 "tual obligation for your being both so solicitous for my repose and quiet. So may I like-
 "wise most sincerely protest, that if with this grief, the cause whereof you know, there is
 "any thing mix'd in my mind which I have not discovered, and that I dare not declare
 "to you as yet, it is neither through any diffidence, or ingratitude to your affection, but
 "through a respect which I have for you, and a fear to appear less worthy of your friend-
 "ship, when my affliction shall be made known. For the rest it is not impossible, but
 "that which I most resent, and which is doubtlessly the cause of all that disorder you have
 "observed, may one day cease by a relief from Heaven, or those remedies I have sought
 "for, and if I am not happy enough to see the end, you shall be the sole persons of the
 "world to whom I will impart it, when through a larger knowledge of you, I may hope
 "that you will have more indulgency for my misfortune, than possibly you have as yet.
 She pronounced these words with so many signs of distraction, that her two friends were
 touched with pity; and the fair Queen of the Cimbrians folding her once more in her Arms,
 "Do not believe, my dear Sister, (said she) that a longer acquaintance, is either ne-
 "cessary to imprint upon our Souls, all those tender impressions which may be formed to your
 "advantage, or to receive the knowledge of your griefs in that manner your heart can
 "desire; but since you have some reasons to conceal the secret, defer the participation
 "thereof, till such time as you shall judge us most capable to give you consolation, and be
 "assured (for I am acquainted with Albitinda's thoughts, as well as my own) that we
 "are as sensibly touched with your afflictions, as with our own misfortune. The Queen
 of the Turingiens hearkened to this protestation of Rosamond, with all acknowledgment
 and tenderness; and a while after, perceiving it began to grow late, and finding by the
 eyes of Rosamond, that she had need of some repose, Amalazontha and Albitinda retired to
 their Apartments in pursuit of sleep, but it was no ealie matter for them to find it; and if
 the Princess of the Sueves, whose disquiet was less tormenting than either of the others,
 had more rest to hope for, she had employments to hinder it, which did not permit her to
 go to Bed at her accustomed hour.

Being come to her Chamber, where she found Imbergida, and those other women which
 usually attended her to Bed, was about to undress her self, when Imbergida desired her
 to discourse a word or two she had to tell her in her Closet, and the Princess was so much
 the more willingly thereto dispos'd, in that she believed she had somewhat more to impart
 concerning Marcomire; Imbergida took the candle her self, for to hinder any other person
 from entering into the Closet with them. In going out of the Chamber, Imbergida shut
 behind her the door of a little Lobby they were to pass through, and when they were
 at the Closet door, the Princess saw it was shut, and that Imbergida had taken the key,
 that great wariness gave some suspicion to the Princess, and constrained her to look upon
 Imbergida, as if she would have asked her the cause; but Imbergida having opened the
 door, and entered the Closet without speaking to her; the Princess who followed her,
 was very much surpris'd by finding a man there, which Imbergida had enclosed. Her a-
 stonishment at this sight made her speechless, not knowing on whom to lay the blame of
 this encounter, retaining nevertheless towards Imbergida for her better security: but it
 augmented much more her amazement, when this man suddenly ran to her with open
 Arms, embraced her, and kissed her many times, she not having the power or force to hinder
 it. Those familiar actions deprived her of the suspicion she had had, that it was Mar-
 comire, knowing well that the passion of the French Prince would not let him forfeit his
 respect; and whilst she repuls'd this Incognito, and was striving to force her self from his
 Arms, Imbergida held the candle so near his face, that notwithstanding the many years
 of his absence, which had caus'd some change in his favour, she gave her the means to
 know him for the Prince her Brother, the valiant Viridomar. At this sight her fright was
 dissipated, but her amazement redoubled, and both the one and the other soon after gave
 place to joy, which succeeded them upon so dear and desired a sight. As Viridomar and Albitin-
 da had two fair Souls, and all other inclinations good and virtuous, so had they bound them-
 selves

elves from their tenderest years in a stronger chain of affection than that of blood, and there were few, or no examples extant in that time of a fraternal amity that might parallel theirs; so that *Albifinda* could not have seen an object so dear as this Brother, whom she had not seen for many years, and for whom the high actions he had performed since their separation augmented her esteem, without yielding her Soul a prey to joy, and receiving in this conjuncture, the most sweet and deep impressions that a real amity might make her sensible of; so that instead of rescuing her self from his Arms, as at first she endeavoured to do, she now bound him fast by her embraces, and returned his Careless with all kindness.

They spent much time in these acts of affection, without expressing themselves in any other manner. But in fine, the Prince as the least surpris'd, came the last to himself, and looking more nearly upon the Princess by the clear light of the taper, than before he had done. *Oh my dear Sister,* (said he) *how much do I rejoice to see you in so good a condition, and to behold what an advantageous change in your person those years have wrought, which I have spent without seeing you.* "I might say the same of you with more reason," (replied the Princess) and besides what I have observed in your person, I hope you "doubt not but that I have been sensibly touch'd, as I was obliged, with that fair reputation of *Viridomar*, which fame so loudly trumpets about the world. *I have neither flattered you,* (replied the Prince) *nor have a design to be flattered by you. But howsoever it is, you see a Brother that hath always loved you equal to himself, and you ought to believe, that in him you shall always find all the affection of Viridomar, and all that of Vindimir, whom we have both lost since our separation. It is likewise only you, my dear Sister, that I come to search in this Camp; for in the state I am at present with the King my Father, whose humour you better know than my self, there is little of safety for me.* "I verily believe, (said the Princess unto him) your life would be in no danger, although you "were discovered, but I much fear the King might detain you; and my joy to see you "is much mitigated, through the disquiet and fright I have for you. *You likewise see,* (answered *Viridomar*) *that I give you this visit with a strange wariness, and at a particular hour: and since I entered this Camp, I have observed much more than a timorous person could possibly have done. It is not but that I might hope to make my peace with the King, had I any such desire; but because I cannot hope it, but upon such conditions that I can neither consent, nor submit to, I will expect, if it be possible, till time and reason have appeas'd his anger, and continue this liberty of following my own inclinations, as much as my duty can permit, since I cannot follow them as much as I desire.* *Oh! my dear Brother,* (said the Princess) *if at least, after the death of our eldest, you will still permit me to call you by that Title) is it possible, that having been as you were, design'd to the glory of possessing Rosamond, that is to say, to the greatest that ever mortal could aspire to, you could possibly consent to renounce her, or rather renounce her without dying.* *As I have never seen Rosamond,* (replied the Prince) *you ought not to admire, that I was smitten with a beauty, not perhaps inferiour to hers; and as I desire to draw you to my party, I hope, you will cease, before we separate, to condemn me, or at least to oppose me, if it be true, that you still really love me.* *I love you,* (said the Princess) *much more than I am able to express, and the amazement I discovered, was rather an effect, than a default of my affection, so that you ought not to question my being always of your party; and although I am not ignorant of the King's humour, nor very bold, and valiant by nature, I will assure you, dear Brother, that I shall be much more hardy in promoting your interests, than in the prosecution of my own, and that there can be nothing in the world shall ever make me forsake them. This is all I dare say to you in the ignorance I am, and to say more, you know I ought to be instructed both in your affairs, and intentions. You shall be,* (said the Prince) *when you please, and I will render you not only a faithful account of my affairs, and present intentions, but likewise of every thing that hath befalln me since our separation, and that will be to inform you almost of every accident of my life. I would begin the relation without longer deferring it, not being well assured to find again the like conveniency, did I not fear to make you thereby lose too many hours of sleep: but we shall endeavour——* *No my dear Brother,* (said the Princess interrupting him) *fear not to make me lose my sleep, for I have often lost it upon occasions of much less concernment; and when people are at war, as we are at present, they should accustom themselves to more labour, and less rest. Besides, I can lie as long to-morrow morning as I please; nor can I spend the night more to my content, than in seeing and hearing you. I consent* (said the Prince) *to your desire, and so much the more willingly, because I can only have at nights the happiness to see you, and that a days I must either remain at a distance from the Camp, or lie concealed, I have heard by some particular friends to whom I must retire, before the Sun gives eyes to the world, with whom I have left my*

Horses and two Esquires, that are at present all my Attendants. Do you also make some excuse or other to your Virgins, that they may not suspect the long stay you are to make in your Closet, where I came without being seen of any but Imbergida, who conducted me up the little Stair-case, which leads up to the Lobby, by which I may in like manner with liberty return, having the Word of this nights Watch, whereby I can pass as before I did, without being stopped by the Sentinels. Upon this, Imbergida went into the Chamber, where she informed the Virgins, that the Princefs would spend that whole night in writing, and that she had commanded them to go to Bed, retaining only two persons near her, in whom she well knew that she might confide.

In the interim, the Prince and Princefs seated themselves very close together, and after they had often repeated those Careffes they had us'd towards each other when first they met, and accompanied them with all those words of endearment, as might witness a real affection: *Albisinda* seeing the Prince ready to begin the relation she desired of him, stopped him before he opened his mouth; "Dear Brother, (*said she*) do not believe, that "you shall slightly acquit your self of the relation I expect from you, for I desire you "to impart to me every thing to the very least of your thoughts, and smallest circumstances. *I will perform your desire, (replied the Prince) at least in such things that will most concern your curiosity, and that are more suitable than others to your inclinations: as for the unprofitable particulars of my Travels, and the Wars which I have been in, you will not think amiss if I pass them succinctly over, that I may come to those passages more worthy your attention: it is likewise on those I shall be obliged to be the more prolix, to inform you both of the state of my mind, and that of my fortune; and I shall request from you the like favour, when the entire confidence that I shall have reposed in you, has obliged you to make nothing a secret to me.* These words caused the Princefs to blush, who gathered from thence, that the Prince had some knowledge of her affairs, but this thought afforded her at the same time some content, in assuring her, that this knowledge (if he had any) had not wrought in his mind any evil effects against her, and that he was not less satisfied in her, than happily he would have been, if he had known nothing of what had befallen her; but the reflection she was about to make upon the whole matter, was interrupted by the Prince his discourse, who began in this manner.

The History of Viridomar.

Although I am to recount to you every important Action of my life, I am nevertheless dispensed with, in much that I should relate to another person, of the nobleness of my Birth, and the beginnings of my life, through the perfect knowledge you have thereof, as well as I. You know in what manner I was educated with Prince *Vindimir* my elder Brother, and the hopes which were nourished from my tender years, to see those cares which were then taken of my education, prosper with a future success. As for those virtues, to which they endeavoured to form my mind, they were implanted easily enough: and for the noble exercises of the body, I did not only render my self therein sufficiently knowing and active, not to shame my Masters; but I was even very often constrained to conceal before the King, a great part of that which I knew, who with displeasure took notice that I surpassed my elder Brother, towards whom his affections were ever more strongly inclined, than towards us; although we may say amongst our selves, dear Sister, without offence to his memory, that neither in the advantages of body or mind, we were perhaps his inferiours. You likewise know, that to make me serve my Apprentiship in Arms, for which he perceived I had a great inclination, joyned with a body vigorous, and lusty beyond my age; in the seventeenth year thereof he sent me to the Wars, under the command of our Brother, and of some old Captains he had given him to assist his youth, by the grave experience he had of that Art: that in the Land of the *Semmons*, and *Galucons*, against whom, at that time we waged war, he fought many Battels, in the which, young as I was, I acquired some reputation; and that before my nineteenth year, I commanded in chief at many Battels, and at the storming of some Towns, where I did exploits proportionable to my age, where by the assistance of my courage and fortune, I had made my self enough remarkable, to acquire some name amongst the men of war, and to have given them an opinion of me much greater perhaps, than they ought to have conceived. Nor can you be ignorant, how at my return to the King, this report spread it self to my advantage,

advantage, though whatever I had purchas'd to make my self sufficiently beloved in the Court did not produce all those good effects which I could have desired, out of that particular aversion which the King naturally had against all those actions which might in any way eclipse the glory of *Vindimir*. This was nevertheless solely ingrafted in the King's mind, for in *Vindimir* himself I never could perceive any thing unworthy of his courage, for he always witness'd esteem and friendship enough to make me respect his memory all the days of my life. You have not forgot all that which pass'd in our Court, where were to be seen a thousand divertisements and publick spectacles of gallantry, after the King had concluded a peace with his neighbours: and you must needs remember the succeeding passages when the King our father had made an alliance with the King of the *Cimbrians*, and that upon the promise which had pass'd interchangeably between them to celebrate a double marriage of *Vindimir* with the Princess *Rosamond*, and of Prince *Theobald* with you; the King sent Prince *Vindimir* to the Court of the *Cimbrian* King to see there the fair Princess for whom he was design'd, whose beauty though then in the very cradle of her age, was loudly voiced through all *Europe*. *Vindimir* hereupon went for *Bohemiz* with a magnificent equipage, and I had willingly accompanied him if the King my father would have consented, but for that reason I before spoke of he would not suffer me, but made me remain near his person, where I caus'd him contrary to my intention to entertain a greater jealousy of me than he ever cherish'd for the interest of *Vindimir*, which oblig'd me to absent my self from him a while after, when I undertook those travels from which I did not return to him till he sent for me back after the death of *Vindimir*, at what time he was marching with his Army against the *Franks*: You know as much as was publick of the cause of my departure, for at that time I should scarce have trusted those particulars to your tender years as now I dare, since likewise by the change of the condition of some interest'd persons, I am less oblig'd to silence by my discretion, which then prohibited the publication thereof.

You know that we had lost the Queen our mother long before that, and that the King had continued many years a Widower, not only without dreaming of marriage but even without giving any cause to believe he would ever think of it during his life: he was nevertheless of a very amorous complexion although of a nature very severe and furious, and one that often cherish'd inclinations no ways tending to marriage: but whilst that *Vindimir* was making love to *Rosamond*, and that by the absence of his Son who was the chiefest object of all his thoughts he permitted them to wander upon others who had power to attract them, he became really and violently amorous of the fair *Artemira* who then rendred our Court happy by having made it her abode ever since the death of the Prince of the *Dardanes* her husband, who for our interests had lost his life in those wars we had had against the *Scythians*. Although a Widow she was not above twenty years indebted to time, she was fair, and had a great deal of wit, and was really very desirable: Love and these perfections so enflamed the King that he buried all things in oblivion only to think of her, and that he might please her he became much more gallant than he had been in all his life. He was not old, for as you know he numbers not yet above fifty years: He had a majestic deportment and his vigour as entire as at the age of twenty five, so that he no ways doubted to make himself be loved by a fair Person, and he was unmindful of nothing that might make him thrive in his design. He had the happiness of seeing *Artemira* every day, and was thereby in fine so enflamed with her beauty, that knowing she had too much virtue to permit a love that was contrary to it, and finding her birth and quality did permit him to marry her without offence to himself, without doubt he would have espous'd her could he have gain'd her affection. I likewise believe that by the advantage she might receive in becoming Queen of the *Sueves* after she had been wife to a Prince much inferiour to him, it had not been difficult for him to have dispos'd her to love maugre the disproportions of their ages if fortune had not made use of me (against my intention) to oppose an invincible obstacle to the King's affection. I visit'd *Artemira* very often, and as she was the fairest Lady of the Court and the person whose conversation was most grateful and all her parts most amiable, I delight-ed much more in hers than in the company of any other, and was always more complementary and courtly to her. I likewise sometimes let fall words and discourses which favour'd of gallantry, and I rendred her services and complacencies that might somewhat exceed the common rate of ordinary civilities, but I perform'd all this without any real ardour or amorous reflection, and I had so much the less design of engaging my fancy as the humour she was of, and the condition of her state convinc'd me she could not have other thoughts than of marriage, from which mine were naturally very distant. I know not whether she perswaded her self the contrary, and whether she really believed I had an affection for her, or whether fortune had in this manner design'd it to cross the King's intention: But how-

ever it was at the same time the King began to testify his love for her, she let me know by several signs that I was not indifferent to her fancy, and even after the King had rendered himself very assiduous in her service, and made manifest to all the Court the reality of his affection for her, and made her believe her self that he might have a design to marry her, she made the affection she had for me more and more appear: Although I had not much of affection for her I acknowledge that I perceived hers without any aversion not having my heart otherwise engaged, I should not have acted the part of a cruel person to a Lady so fair and amiable, if she had not endeavoured to have engaged and confined me to a place I naturally hated, and of which in the age I was I could not possibly endure so much as the sole mentioning. On the other side, as all the world condemned the design which the King seemed to have to remarry at that age, having an offspring like his that might well merit his entire affections, which in all likelihood would be then distributed to the children of the second bed, so had we great reason to fear, and you your self my dear Sister though younger by four years than now you are was very much allarm'd thereat, and I was no ways displeas'd that he found in his design some difficulties sufficient to make him lay it aside. It is nevertheless certain that I did not thereto contribute, and that I only gave fortune leave to act what it seem'd she intended to do for us without opposing her, and though in the general judgement of the world the King did us some injustice, through the respect I had for him, I would do nothing to offend him. I could not abstain nevertheless from speaking of his love to *Artemira* when fit occasions presented themselves, and she always reply'd like a person prepossessed with those more favourable resentments she had for me than for the King. As she was very reserved and had much of modesty, she continued a long time without clearly explaining her self, and as I had no design for her, although I had no aversion perceiving she much favoured me, I did not perform all which I might have done to oblige her: but being one day with her and others in her garden, and walking with her in an Alley where I usher'd her along, she let fall by accident a nosegay she had in her hands I took it up with great diligence and restored it her with a behaviour full of respect, and seeing that she returned me thanks for the pains I had taken in expressions full of civility and humility, which seem'd more than ordinary. *You ought not to have said so much,* said I unto her, *had I render'd you some service of great importance, for this return appears to me as much as you could have done had I ventur'd my life in your service.* The service, reply'd *Artemira*, *should be as much considerable from the person that renders it as from it self, and however light in it self, it must be of value when it is received from Prince Viridomar.* Oh Madam it is too much, said I unto her, *and methinks you should by no means deal in this manner by me: for though you have done it in time past* (added I smiling to my self) *you ought to change your manner of converse now with a person that is suddenly to look upon you with the respect that he owes to his Queen and mother in Law.* *Artemira* blush'd at these words though I utter'd them with a smile, when closing my hand in hers with a sigh, *Assure your self,* said she, *that Artemira will never be a stepmother to Prince Viridomar, and that though that honour should be offer'd her she hath such inclinations for him as would never permit her to accept it.* What you assert (said I somewhat touch'd with her discourse and behaviour) is too generous and too obliging for us, and *Vindimir*, *Albisinda* and I should be too ungrateful should we not make an eternal acknowledgment thereof. Neither *Prince Vindimir*, reply'd *Artemira*, nor the Princess *Albisinda* have any part in those thoughts which I have made known to you, and whatever respect I owe them or that really I have for them, I cannot find in my heart so much for them which obliges me to refuse the Crown of Suevia, if it were offer'd me. I must have alone then, said I, an obligation which I would have shared to others, and therefore alone must I have that resentment of your kindness which you prohibit all the rest of our family to acknowledge. I know not what resentment you have (added the fair *Artemira* with a sigh) but I must really protest to you that if I were oblig'd to love any of your house, it should not be the King your father. You'd love perhaps the Prince my Brother, said I, and I confess he might have much more reason than my father to hope so good a fortune. Oblige me no farther to enlarge my self, said *Artemira*, for I sensibly perceive that I have express'd my self plainly already. She utter'd these words with a blush that covered all her Cheeks with marks of bashfulness which gave me a secret torment for the present, I continued nevertheless my discourse, and if it were not amorous it was at least very obliging, and such as she had no reason to complain of: but as she would declare her self no farther thinking she had declar'd her self too much already, she turn'd her self towards the persons that followed us without giving me time to reply: and the King a while after arriving, all that day entertain'd her himself with his amours. I began to discern from that day that he had conceived a great jealousy of me, and he gave me a look in approaching her sufficiently crabbed to raise in me a shrewd suspicion of it: and as he had received but little satisfaction from the converse he then had

with *Artemira*, he looked at night upon me with an eye so furious as made me discern in his face a great part of what he had in his heart against me.

The day following his ill humour augmented, not only because I daily visited *Artemira*, or that his flatterers which were complaisant to his passion, had assured him that I was in no small esteem with her, and made him observe some passages which might convince him of the verity of his suspicion: but because in the discourses he had held with *Artemira* he could not obtain from telling him a part thereof, who every time the King spoke of me, as he did frequently, and almost every day to discover her affections for me, answered him in words and behaviour sufficiently passionate to confirm his suspicion: and one day both of them growing hot upon this subject, the unawares told him, that if all he believed were a real truth, he could have no reason to be astonished at it, and that it was no miracle for a person of her years to cast her eyes upon so high a merit as that of *Viridomar*. These words of *Artemira*, together with those proofs he fancied to have of her inclinations, did most furiously augment his Jealousie; which grew in time so violent that he could not hinder it from breaking forth: And having one night reproach'd me with his eyes sparkling with anger, for the impudence I assumed to cross his inclinations, he commanded me, upon pain of his highest displeasure, never to visit *Artemira* more. I promised, though not without reluctance, to obey him, having really resentments of esteem, of acknowledgments, nay even of tenderness for *Artemira*, although they were not grown to the full stature of love; and I obeyed him also by ceasing that day to visit *Artemira*, or searching occasions to see her: But on the other side it was true I did not much shun her, and as I went every where, and *Artemira* frequenting often those places where she might meet me, as either in your Lodgings or in the apartments of those Court-Ladies I most visited, so we met very often; and every where *Artemira* gave me as much proof of her affection as her modesty could permit her: and through acknowledgements which I had of, and a natural disposition not to hate so beautiful a person, I did always without incivility receive them, though not with so much of ardour as *Artemira* could have desired. The King endured for some days these kind of interviews, during which time he could not accuse me of affectation in searching the occasions to see her: But a circumstance which then fell out, as you Sister may well remember, spoild all, and quite ruin'd me in the Kings apprehension. You have not surely forgot how at the marriage of *Almeric*, him who of all the *Sueves* the King most loved, and who after he had in battel lost his life by the hand of *Pharamond*, the King to honour him, commanded amongst other magnificences certain Jufts and Turnaments, and that each Cavalier of the Court should break a lance in the great Piazza of *Stragone* where the King then was: and as I prepared my self like others for the Action, giving the day before a visit to *Almeric's* sister, *Artemira* arriv'd, who, having been let blood the day precedent, held her Arm in a very fair Scarf, the fancy and beauty whereof all the company praised, and every one delivering their opinions, and I mine amongst the rest. *Haldan* who was there present and had for *Artemira* much affection, undertaking to speak; *In truth Madam*, said he, *methinks you have very little need to wear this Scarf, and that the best use you could employ it to, were to favour some person of merit with it on whom you would confer the honour of being your Knight to morrow at the turnaments: Haldan*, who by reason of his own merit and the honour which he derived from the blood Royal of the *Sueves* might take any thing upon him, might the better hold this discourse with *Artemira*, and with so much the greater confidence, for as much as you well know, Sister, at such times Ladies do not only make little scruple to confer such favours, but also often bestow them and of themselves send them to those persons they chuse for their Knight that day. So *Artemira* without studying in the least upon his proposal, *I should willingly follow your advice* (said she with a sad and languishing accent) *if I believed the person on whom I should confer it would accept of being my Champion; but as I am not sufficiently happy to hope it, and that I may not for his interest desire it, I believe that I shall both keep my scarf and remain without a Champion.* If I had esteemed *Artemira* much less than I esteemed her, or had not been so sensible as I was of my obligations to her, these words would have in honour constrained me to make her a reply, and let her know, that all which I had to fear from the King's anger could not deter me from rendring what I owed to the great honour she had favoured me with: and thus shutting my eyes to all other respects, that I might the better acquit my self of this duty, "I do not believe Madam, said I unto her, that there is a person in the world, who, in to morrows action and all the actions of his life, would not glory in the honour of being your Champion, and might I know the person you intended to honour with this favour, I dare assure you on his behalf that no consideration whatever could deter him from receiving it with a great deal of respect." "If it be so, replied *Artemira*, you are in danger your self to be charged with this trouble, for after an offer so generous of Prince *Viridomar*, I affect glory too much to

“cast my eyes upon a meaner person than himself. She said no more, but began to direct her discourse to another subject, that that might be no more spoken of. But the next morning ere I was ready, one of her Pages entred my Chamber, with the Scarf and a Note, the contents whereof ran thus.

Artemira to Prince Viridomar.

IT is too much honour for me to have this day Prince Viridomar for my Champion, to let me omit the renewing to his memory that kind offer he made me; but if there be any danger in this action, I had much rather renounce the glory, which I hope from thence, than expose him to it, and he may keep the Scarf as a testimony of the esteem I have for him, without wearing it to his peril in publick.

These words, by which it appeared, that *Artemira* would have me recal the offer I had made her, more forcibly confirm'd me in the design I had to acquit my self bravely of it; and though I could not doubt, but this action would expose me to the King's severest anger, I did believe it unworthy of a Knight, if through fear or any other consideration, I had not rendred to a person of that merit, and quality as *Artemira*, what I owed to this great mark of her esteem, and thence taking a resolution without weighing it, I thus answered her short Letter.

The Prince *Viridomar* to the Princess *Artemira*.

Were the occasion more perilous than it is, I would be this day, since she hath honoured me with that favour, the Princess *Artemira's* Champion, and I should be too happy, if my fortune would permit me to be so all the days of my life.

You may easily, dear Sister, call to mind that I executed accordingly my promise, and that I wore the Scarf at the Tournament, appearing there as her Knight, and that none of my performances did any dishonour to the Scarf of *Artemira*. The King who had seen her wear it two days together, and presently knew it, was inflamed with so violent a rage against me, that not being able longer to dissemble it, he withdrew himself from the window where he was a Spectator of the Sports, and having evidenced his anger by all the marks of a deep resentment, to all those that were about him; no sooner did he see me at night, but casting a look full of indignation upon me; “I saw your fine Scarf, said he, and you have willfully this day exposed your self to all my hatred, by being *Artemira's* Champion. “Sir, said I, if you have informed your self of the truth, you will thereby easily perceive, that I did not seek out this occasion to displeasè you; and you know well, that I could not with good manners refuse it. “This good manners, replied the King, ought to be much less considerable, than the respect you owe to my orders; but since you have so ill observed that I gave you, never to see *Artemira* more, I now prohibit you ever to see me more, without my express command; my will is, that you retire to morrow to *Tenese*, and not to return hither, till you receive my orders. Sir, said I, I will do much more than you have ordered me, and to estrange my self from all occasions to displeasè you, I will travel to such a distance from *Artemira*, that those who bring your Orders, may meet perhaps more difficulties in finding me out, than you would have them, when it may be your business to recal me. After these words I went from him, and the next morning departed with such an equipage as pure necessity required, and rode towards the Confines of *Tenese*; but instead of making my abode there, I went out of those Territories, and engaged my self in a Voyage, from whence he found some trouble to recal me, as I had plainly foretold him. I have very succinctly discoursed to you of this cause of my departure, because you had before an entire knowledge of all, except what I have informed you, of the tokens I received of *Artemira's* affection. I will pass over with like brevity, what you have heard of my travels, either by report in my absence, or from those which might insuam you after my return to the King, to go into *Franconia*: but I shall enlarge

enlarge my self upon those matters of which I know you altogether ignorant, and which now makes all that is in my life of importance, and considerable unto me. “It is true, (*said the fair Albifinda to the Prince her Brother*) that I knew the greatest part of what you have recounted to me, or rather, I was only ignorant of those particulars you unfolded of the affection which *Artemira* had for you, the which by her good fortune, and your discretion, were so well concealed, that they never reach’d (as yet) the knowledge of the Court. You may have likewise understood, how firm she remain’d in the protestation she had made, never to be our Mother-in-law; and how she entertain’d the proofs of the King’s affection with so much rigour, and so little acknowledgment, that in fine, his disgust, and shortly after, the return of *Vindimir*, whom he solely and particularly loved, and employed all his affections for him, made him forget his design of marrying her, and finally extinguish’d his Amours in such a manner, that he favoured *Haldan* in the affection he had for her; and you are not ignorant, how after she had lost by your absence all her hopes, and possibly through the few marks she received of your remembrance of her, by the advice of her friends she married *Haldan*, and hath made ever since her abode in the Court, where, in regard of *Haldan*’s quality, she retains the next place in dignity to me. “I know it, dear Sister, *replied Viridomar*, with many more particulars than you have recounted; and *Haldan* himself, who is the person I most esteem of all the *Sueves*, in whom only I confide for the stay which I make here, hath informed me of all, even to the slightest circumstance, without giving evidence of the least jealousy of those resentments which *Artemira* had had for me, of which, dear Sister, I never spoke to any person but your self. I have much rejoiced to find *Artemira* so well provided for; and I intend one day to let her know, though I have not the love of a Lover for her, I have at least much of esteem, and those good wishes as might satisfy a Sister.

Before I departed the Court, I heard a spreading report of the War, which the King of the *Danes*, Brother to the Queen our Mother, made upon the *Saxons*, a people both cruel and furious, who had preyed some small time before upon his Neighbours; and who by their Arms began to render themselves formidable to all *Europe*, and although through some discontents that were between them, the King our Father did not so much interest himself in these affairs, as he had formerly done; I was often by my own courage solicited to go and offer him the assistance of my Sword, and to seek after glory in a War, which might afford me many opportunities to acquire it, not doubting, but the King of the *Danes* would receive me as his Nephew, and give me employment answerable to my Birth, and to that fame of my Valour, which the Apprenticeship of my Arms had given me. This design which was strengthened by my disgrace, made me, in departing from our Court, steer my voyage towards *Denmark*, with a resolution to seek out war in other places, in case that of *Denmark* should cease, and not to see *Suevia* in many years again. Departing from *Stragone*, I took my way through the Country of the *Catules*, and of the *Bards*, and following the *Elbe*, I left the *Turingiens* on my left hand, although there I might as well have met with war, as amongst the *Danes*, and against the same enemies, who under the conduct of their Prince *Genselaric* entred there in Arms a small time after; and, as you might well have heard, never met with any stop to their Conquests, but through the relief which the valiant *Ambiomer*, that famous *Gaul*, who hath achieved so great a reputation in the world: thence through the Country of the *Angiliens*, arriving upon the Bordes of the *Suevian* Sea, because the *Saxons* possess’d all the Countries adjoining to the straight passages of the *Elbe*, I entred into *Denmark*, and in few days address’d my self to the King. He rather receiv’d me like a Son, than a Nephew; and through the fame which had so much flattered me, considering me more than I deserved, he gave me employment in those wars, which then lay upon his hands, which gave me as happy opportunities of rendering my self remarkable, as I could desire. I shall not discourse it to you, because I am confident you know each particular, and that Countries much more distant than *Suevia*, and persons that could not pretend an interest like yours, are not ignorant of them; and I shall truly tell you, to keep a method in my discourse, that after I had in the first year, with the Horse which I commanded, beaten the *Saxons* in every place where we skirmish’d, or joyn’d Battel, the King gave me in the second, the general command of all his Army; of which command, I made so happy use, that without receiving any loss considerable, I routed the Enemy in more than ten Fights, and utterly defeated him in two set Battels, constrain’d him to repass the *Elbe*, and because in the very same conjuncture of time, they met with the like ill success in their wars against the *Turingiens*, they submitted to a peace as advantageous as the King of the *Danes* could desire. After these great Services, the

King my Uncle esteeming me as his Son, used his utmost endeavour to retain me near him, but it was impossible, by reason of my great desire to travel, and seek out Wars where-ever I might meet them. I no sooner saw peace well established in his Dominions, but I took my leave, passed the *Elbe* very near its source, and following the Borders of the *German* Sea, I passed over the Territories of the *Cauches*, as well those which are enclosed between the River *Elbe* and *Visurgue*, which are termed the greater, as likewise those which are beyond the *Visurgue*; I saw in order the *Frisons*, and the *Saliens*, and having coasted the River *Flemon*, I entred into the Country of the *Batavians*, which were in wars at that time against the *Menapiens*, and the *Uspetes* their Neighbours; and as I was known by them for that *Viridomar*, who had acquired some reputation in the Wars of the *Danes* against the *Saxons*, and one that testified an inclination to take their party, which I found the most just, they entreated me to take the command of their Army, which I accepted, with so good success for them, that in a short time I chased their Enemies out of all they possess'd in their Country; and having given them battel between the *Wahal* and the *Meuse*, I gain'd so full a Victory, that they seeing themselves ruined, were constrain'd to implore a peace of the *Batavians*, and to receive it upon any conditions they would impose upon them. After I had rendred them this service, I embark'd my self upon the Ocean, visited Great *Britain*, and *Ireland* which is near unto it; and for that I found all things there peaceable, and understood that *Constantine* their Prince, who had assumed to himself the Title of Emperour, was then amongst the *Gauls* where he made war, and where he fought for the Empire with the famous *Constance*, Lieutenant to *Honorius*: Having consumed some time in viewing what was most rare and remarkable in those Islands, the most famous of the Ocean; I put to Sea again, I coasted the *Gauls*, and having understood those Wars were finished by the valour of *Constance*, who had vanquish'd, and taken the Renowned *Constantine* Prisoner, I made no stay there, but keeping on towards the Coasts of *Spain*: In fine, I arriv'd at *Lusitania*, where landing my self, I visited the greater part of *Spain*, apply'd my self with a great deal of curiositiy to see the Cities, and the places famous for those great events which I had read of in History. And in fine, I was preparing my self to enter into *Betica*, which the *Vandals* had lately conquered, and where I might meet with war, when I found one of those Messengers which the King our Father had sent into all parts, to let me understand the death of *Vindimir*, and to recal me home. The Letter which he shew'd to me from the King was to this effect.

The King of the *Sueves* to Prince *Viridomar*.

*V*indimir is slain by the King of the Franks's own hand, and you are call'd upon to revenge his death, both by your own good fortune, and by a Father's grief, who can find no consolation but in the destruction of his Enemy: Come *Viridomar*, possess the Seat of *Vindimir*, not only in my heart, where blood and nature give it you, but also in *Rosamond's*, whom your good fortune hath designed you, and whom you ought to possess, if by the revenge of your Brother's death, you render your self worthy.

This Letter was very succinct, but the Messenger that brought it, inform'd me at length of all that which had pass'd, and recounted to me every little circumstance which happened at the time of *Vindimir's* death, and in the Wars of the *Sueves* and the *Romans* against the *Franks*. You may believe, dear Sister, that the change which I received in my quality by the death of *Vindimir*, which called me to the *Suevian* Crown, did not obstruct, nor hinder me from lamenting a Brother I so much loved, who was remarkable for his person, and who never had any hand or part in the evil usage I received from the King, although he had been some time an innocent cause. It is certain, that at the relation of his deplorable death, I was struck with a cruel grief; and that I suffered all those torments, which an affection and good nature might in the like occasion possibly endure. I was likewise sensibly touch'd with the King's affliction, which was represented to me to be very immoderate, which I easily believed, by the knowledge I had of the unlimited affection he always bore him, so that without much perswasion I entred into those resolutions of revenge, they endeavour'd to infuse into me, and I only coveted life for this occasion, to see my self with Arms in my hand, oppos'd against him who had been the death of my Brother. It was not but that I knew (by the discourse they made me) that

Pharamond had slain my Brother like a person of Valour, that there was no Crime in his death worthy of my hatred, and that even in the War it felt, the justice was on *Pharamond's* side. But I on the one side believed, that to seek an honourable revenge by an open War, and by ways equally honourable, was not prohibited: and on the other side, that glorious fame of *Pharamond*, which then began with so much noise to spread itself through the world, began to prick me with an emulation, which made me look with joy upon those occasions, to dispute the price of Valour with him. Moreover, as my heart was not then prepossessed by any passion, which might hinder me from being sensible of the offer which was made me, of the possession of *Rosamond*, I was really therewith touch'd, as much as one could be by the confused hopes of a happiness, which I figur'd to myself by an uncertain Idea, and as the fame of this great Beauty was then spread, as a prodigy, throughout all *Europe*, I could only look upon that fate which called me to her service, as a fortune which would draw all mens envy upon me. I then received without repugnancy, all those impressions which the King would stamp upon my Soul, and big with a desire to give him the consolation he sought, to fight *Pharamond*, and merit *Rosamond*: I turned my Horse's head, without then considering the course I should steer to return into *Germany*: I would not commit myself to Sea, fearing least the inconstancy of the winds should retard my Voyage; and for fear of finding impediments by land I resolv'd to pass all the way incognito: so that I then travelled over all that was to be seen in *Spain*, from the Country of the *Celtiberians*, where I then was, to the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which were to be pass'd to enter into *Gallia*, and I view'd the *Robertans*, the *Hedizans*, the *Illergets*, and all other places to the foot of the Mountains, without making the least stay at any place upon the Road. After I had pass'd the *Pyrenean* Mountains, I enter'd into *Gallia*, which I was oblig'd almost entirely to cross: I pass'd the Countries of the *Tectosages*, and the Mountains of *Gabenes*, I saw the *Ambars*, the *Legusiens*, the *Lingons*, and came in fine to the Territories of the *Belges*, and by those of the *Vagions*, aboarded the *Rhine*, I pass'd over to *Mogunee*, and arriv'd soon after in *Franconia*. At the sight of my Enemies Territories, and even of those places where I was to carry the War, my resentment was awakened, and I look'd upon them as the fatal *Champagnes*, where in a short time I should solemnize the revenge of *Vindimir*. But it was in this Country, that I us'd most care and caution to pass unknown, and although I had learn'd that King *Pharamond*, who was then the object of all my thoughts, much less perhaps through my hate, than through an emulation of his Glory, was then in *Bobemia*, from whence he had chased by many great Victories, the Kings of the *Cimbrians*, and of the *Sueves*; I made no question, but if discovered, I might have been stopp'd by those he had left behind; and therefore to pass the less discoverable, I divided my Equipage, and having sent the greatest part by a different rode from that I travelled, I only reserv'd *Timanthus*, and two other persons for my service near me. Nevertheless, as I knew I should return there with an Army, I observ'd the Country with the natural strength and situation thereof, as much as the short time of my stay did permit, I inform'd myself of the strength of their Cities, of the largeness and depth of their Rivers, and of all other things which might advantage me in the War for which I was call'd: but it was not the will of fortune, that I should depart that Country with the same liberty I enter'd it, for by an adventure very surprizing, she made me suffer a great change in my condition.

I had pass'd that City, which they had newly deprived of the name *Hellenopolis*, or rather changed it to that of *Frankfort*, and having after view'd in course some places neighbouring to the *Mein*, I follow'd one day the Banks of that River through a very pleasant and delightful Mead, which brought me to a Village where I was to have lain that night, when I found myself over against a little Island that was in the River, distant many hours riding from any place inhabited. In an instant, that which did appear to me of its Beauty fix'd my eyes upon it, which I the more easily discovered, by reason the Island was only separated by a little Arm of the River, about twenty paces from the Road I travel'd in, and that the Channel of the River ran on the further side much more deep and large. I perceiv'd the whole Island was cover'd with a small Wood, the most pleasant in the world; for the stature and beauty of the Trees, which do not only shadow the Island, in such a manner as the Beams of the Sun could not pierce into it, but also extended their shade, by reason of the Sun descending towards the West, very far upon the other side of the River, which as I have told you, was the grand Channel. That which I observ'd of the beauty of this Island, took up my eyes in passing with a great deal of pleasure, but would scarce have made me forsake my Horse to have seen more of it, if my ears had not been at the same time surpris'd by womens voices, that I heard on

the other side, and a while after by the sound of a charming voice, which was accompanied by the harmony of a sweet instrument, she sung words which the distance of the place did not permit me to hear, though it no ways hindred me from judging that the voice which sung them, was one of the most ravishing in the world. You know, Sister, that I ever delighted in Harmony, and this seem'd to me so sweet, that you need not admire, that I was suddenly touch'd with a desire to hear it at a nearer distance; and as that which I had some few moments before to enjoy the deliciousness of that shade, which presented it self in so hot a season, was joyned more strongly to the former, so I had not strength enough to resist them, nor to deny my self a satisfaction, which the free condition I was in permitted me to enjoy. I cast my eyes upon the small Arm of the River, where the water was then low enough to ride over it, and although *Timanthus* represented to me, that we had not much day to ride to the place where I had designed to lodge, this consideration was not capable to stop me, nor hinder me from entering into the Island, which I got to with much facility. However, because I feared that the sight of us might somewhat amaze and startle the persons that were singing, and so deprive us of the pleasure I had in chase; I and my two men alighted on the Banks of the Island, which were the two I told you before, I had only reserved of my Attendants, and making them stay in the same place with my Horses, I advanced under the Trees on foot, and made very softly towards the place, towards which I found my self attracted by the voice which continued singing. The Island was so small, that it contained scarce a hundred paces in length, and half so much in breadth, so that I had not far to walk to hear more distinctly, what more confusedly I heard before at some distance, and suffering my self to be guided by the voice, I arrived in fine at a place where I might both hear the words, and see the persons that sung, which were two fair Virgins, who sat upon a green Turf at the root of a great Tree, sufficiently well accoutred, to let me judge by their habit, that they were not of the vulgar sort: but almost at the same time they left of singing, and I could only hear these four Stanzas which were the last.

1.

O H! despise not sacred Love,
 Yet cruel Fair, you feel it not:
 But it may fatal one day prove,
 When it shall fall to be your lot.
 They are much more fair than wise,
 That the power of Love despise.

2.

He that conquered all the Gods,
 And made them feel his cruel Dart:
 Upon a mortal hath great odds,
 Whose strength is in a stubborn heart,
 At which, alas, if he once draw,
 He will impose a cruel Law.

3.

A Law to which you must obey,
 Although your Love be payd with hate:
 A Law which men dare not gainsay,
 Since Gods themselves ne'er alter fate;
 Then cease your enmity to love;
 Repentance may some pity move.

4.

There's none so obstinate in Sin,
 But when they come to punishment,
 Could wish that it had never been,
 And would, when 'tis too late, repent.
 Be you more wise, prevent your Fate,
 Lest when you love, it prove too late.

She that sung had scarce uttered these verses, but she and her companion rose from the place where they sat without turning their eyes towards me, and taking each other under their Arm hastned to the other side of the Isle, where I heard the voices of other women. As the love which I had for singing and the curiosity which this adventure might have given me, had not made me receive the satisfaction which I hoped, so I resolv'd to try my fortune farther, once more to feast my eyes or my ears with that which they might expect from this accident: But I endeavour'd to use therein all possible wariness, and in sliding from the Tree to follow these two Virgins, I arriv'd near the bank of the River, in the place where the Trees were both tallest and thickest, and where they then cast forth a shadow which covered almost the whole stream of the River: from thence I presently espied without being seen divers women upon the bank in a posture little different from those I had seen before and a Barge covered, at the end whereof a Lady of a good grace, although somewhat indebted to time was seated, and seem'd to give orders to the Maidens that were sat upon the banks of the River: I fastned my eyes for a while to these objects, when quickly they were taken off by a little noise I heard in the River from the side which I had not as yet viewed, although it was much more near me and under those very trees with which I obscured my self from being seen. It was by stroke of the same destiny which conducted me to that place, that I cast my eyes there where I not only found wherewith to arrest my sight, but also to bind in eternal chains a soul most generous and most undaunted: and behold dear Sister in what a manner this destiny which governs our days did act against me, since to make me submit to this Amour, which she armed against my liberty, she was not content to present a fair face or rather a celestial visage which might have produced alone a much greater effect, but as if she were distrustful of her own strength she expos'd to my view such a surpassing beautie able to subjugate the whole world instead of a particular person, and displayed by my eyes rarities which only this accident could have expos'd, more indeed than a mortal eye could ever hope to see. Be not dear Sister astonish'd if a man were therewith enchanted, and believe there is no power amongst men able to defend a heart upon such an occasion. I there saw my dear Sister, casting my eyes upon the river, two Ladies that bathed themselves close by the bank, being not bold enough to wade farther into the Stream. The least beautiful of the two was certainly a very fair and handsome personage, and I should not have doubtlesly neglected the consideration which was due to her beauty, if she had produced it elsewhere and not so near another person that obscured her lustre: but she that in an instant interrupted both my eyes and my thoughts, appeared to my dazled sight a thousand times more fair than the Mother of love issuing out of the sea, or whatever the most charming Idea could present to the imagination. Oh my Sister how weak and uncapable do I find my self to describe what I saw, and how difficultly can you apprehend it unless you read in my eyes that which my discourse cannot delineate nor represent unto you. "I fear my Lord (*said Albisinda blushing*) that you will represent it too lively, and I could wish if you so pleas'd that you would help your self with my imagination to save you the discourse, No my dear Sister replyed the Prince, fear nothing, I have not forgot what is due to your modesty, and on the other side I saw nothing but what I may mention without offending it. This adorable wonder which seem'd to have brought heaven into the waters, was in part covered with a fine Lawn which the water made cleave so close to her body that it seem'd pasted unto it, and expos'd to the eye even the admirable form of those parts which it covered, and left many others free to the sight, as the face the entire neck withall its beauties, the arms almost uncovered and nothing in fine was hid from me which her companion could see: and you well know Sister that there are bounds in the greatest familiarities which are created between two persons of the same sex which Modesty doth not permit persons well born to exceed. The upper part of this miraculous person was only covered with a little Coif of Tiffany that presented the great braids of hair which were nevertheless discern'd through it, nor did it hold them so firmly but that some got loose and dangling upon her shoulders with that shining blackness heightned the dazzling whiteness of her body. The coolness of the water had somewhat abated the vermilion of her cheeks and the colour of her lips, yet did it rather sweeten than take away the tincture, and in causing in her a kind of a charming languishment did seem to work no bad effect on her face in which you might observe much more than when it was sprightly. One might even judge that by this element an enemy to the fire, that which sparkled in her eyes was become more supportable to the weakness of our sight than it was accustomed to be in the ordinary vigour, and one might perceive somewhat of more sweetness than those flashes which accompanied or forerun the lightning which she used to dart forth. Her Neck was admirable both for its form and for its whiteness, laying open to the heavens all its beauties made them ashamed of their own splendour. It seem'd rather a kind of pride than

the fanning of the wind which moved the waters, and make them swell by intervals, and their Arms and hands which accompanied it in playing upon the Waves, seemed to make the same war against the God of the Sea which this fair object had already rais'd in my heart. This was all which then appeared to me, the envious waters obscuring the rest, although they could not hinder my thoughts from penetrating therein and supplying the defect of my eyes, and it was only at her coming forth of the River that those parts which the Lawn did not cover, as a leg and a foot much more fair than that which *Homer* gave *Thetis*, were presented to my eye with all their advantage. In this contemplation did I remain fix'd, but with such a fixedness as made me forget all things, and yet did not permit me to remember my self. It was not, for all that, the sole fear of being discovered which rendered me immovable, admiration did first produce this effect, and all that which succeeded in my mind scarce left me a freedom either of sight or respiration. I could not nevertheless prevent (a while after) some sighs from disturbing the silence I had imposed upon my self, and my heart, looking with distaste upon the yolk I would impose upon it, endeavoured to rise up against the chains which were presented unto it: At the same time it awaken'd my reason which this charm had stupified; and made it sit in judgment upon all that which she felt, either to make her approve what it began to suffer, or seek out Arms for its defence. In effect, when I could render my self capable of reasoning, which my first astonishment had suspended, I let her work upon this fair object which had engrossed my thoughts; but I found my reason so well agreeing with my eyes and so complaisant to the charm which had reduced me, that I did not receive the relief which I expected. I held my eyes and my mind equally fix'd upon this divine person, and were it that she walked, or turned her eyes, or opened her mouth to speak to her companion, I found her steps, her looks and the sound of her voice composed by love himself, nor did I see any thing therein which did not enchant me: "Oh my eyes! said I to my self at that time, to what a vision have you been guided by my destiny, and what do you seek for an object which already causeth trouble and disorder in my soul? No matter, added I soon after, whatsoever you may find there, if it be possible do not unfix your selves, nothing of more beauty can ever attract you, and what war soever you may wage from this fight against my heart, I implore the Gods that you may remain until my death fix'd to this fair object. I then permitted them to rove with delight upon this fair figure which had charm'd them, and in consequence permitting my discerning faculties to labour in the enquiry of what I saw; "But is it possible, said I, that what I see should be mortal, and yet not *Rosamond* whose beauty makes her famous throughout the world, and towards whom they made me elevate my hopes? Ah *Viridomar*, how fortunate shouldst thou be if this were *Rosamond*. "But senseless as thou art, added I, reposing my self at the same instant, thou too well knowest it is not *Rosamond*, that the waters of the *Mein* are not the waters of the *Elbe*, and that thou mayst rather hope to find her in any part of the world sooner than on her enemies territories: Oh since this which I see is not *Rosamond*, added I with a sigh, that same which gives her a value beyond all the beauties of the world is a false deceiver: for it is impossible that *Rosamond*, whom she so loudly flatters, can possibly be fairer than this present object of my eyes. Oh how happy amongst men is he to whom fortune allots this inestimable treasure, and how miserable amongst the unfortunate is he, to whom she grants a sight of this beauty, if she appear so opposite to his desires, as to deprive him of all hope. To these discourses I added many others of the same nature, and I still finish'd them with a prayer to the Gods to prolong the felicity I then enjoyed, and render it durable if it were possible to the utmost period of my life: But I quickly perceived that my prayers were fruitless; for in that moment my mind was most fix'd on this contemplation, a cruel maid came to advertise this admirable creature, that it was time to forsake the water, and that she had stayed there too long. She needed not many solicitations to forsake the River, for seeing many Virgins advance from the boat towards the place where she was with some necessaries to receive her upon the bank, she went towards them, and as the depth of the water lessened by degrees, she discovered more and more what had been hid from me, as much at least as the envious linnen would permit me to see. Coming to the bank, two Virgins received her in a large sheet, and although they shifted her out of the wet linnen, yet they perform'd it with such a cruel dexterity, that it was impossible for me to discover more than what before appeared, although I stood behind the same tree whose shadow covered them, and so near unto her that I durst not remove, nor scarcely breath for fear of making some noise to discover me. But I found it much more difficult to obscure my self when the company increased in that place by the arrival of that Lady of a handsome deportment whom I saw in the boat, who with some other Virgins approached near to those which came out of the River, whilst the Maids dressed them, sitting upon busses which were brought for that purpose. I beheld these

passages with infinite trouble, still keeping my eyes upon that beauty which had so nearly toucht my heart: But while she was dressing she turned her face most part of the time towards the side of the River, leaving me in such a darkness as I could hardly endure it any longer, but as soon as she was cloath'd with a habit little differing from those which are given to the Nymphs of *Diana*, of a stuff seemingly rich though very light, she rose and turning her face to the side of the wood, in the same instant I lifted up my head to view her, she both saw me and observ'd my behaviour; surpris'd with this sight she gave a sudden shriek, and turning towards that Lady which appeared to be her Mother; "Oh the Gods," said she to her, what is that shape I see of a man so near us, and of a man that hath seen us "in the water. These words oblig'd the Lady and all the Maids to cast their eye towards me; and finding my self discovered I did not endeavour to obscure my self, perceiving it then impossible, but I remain'd in as high a confusion as if I had been taken committing some greater crime. I am not naturally very timorous, neither had I been so in this occasion if I had continued in the same state I was in some moments before, but the effect which this admirable beauty had produced upon my heart deprived me of all assurance, and wanting confidence to look on her exasperated visage, I kept my eyes fixed on the ground with the countenance of a person much abash'd. At length I rais'd them towards the object they most covet'd, although it were with such a fear as never daunted me in the most dangerous occasions, and not till then did I discover either by the effects of shame or anger upon that celestial face which I already adored; the vermilion which the coolness of the water had somewhat vanish'd, returned to its full perfection; and those eyes which appeared languishing before, began to sparkle like fire, and their natural flashes were more enflam'd by the additional heat of her rage. This exasperated Beauty had at first design'd to flee from me in that instant, as from a man who had seen more of her than she desired: but she could not obtain so much of her anger, for she believed that my impudence merited a severe reproof, at least that she should give me some marks of her displeasure. She pierc'd me thorow in a moment with her eyes, although she turned her face scarce half way towards me, and casting a look at me which gave me less cause to fear than love; *And who art thou inconsiderate fool,* said she to me, *thou who by thy presence profanest sacred places, and who forcing a respect which no man ever durst violate, dost cast thy audacious eyes upon objects prohibited to all mortal eyes.* These words which like a clap of thunder having struck my ears and heart at the same time, had quite chas'd away the boldness of my courage, if I had not strove to retain it in the necessity I had thereof, or if I had not in fine met with a sufficient relief from my courage to render my self in a condition to speak and justify my error. I fixed my dazzled eyes with much difficulty upon a face which anger caus'd to sparkle with an extraordinary fire, and expressing my self in the terms my new passion had inspir'd me; *If you are a Goddess,* said I unto her, *you know that I am innocent, since chance and not my intention was author of this crime, and if you are mortal you may permit me to say the same in my justification, and to add, that you ought not to be exasperated for what I have seen, since all the evil will fall upon me and all the glory be yours: for in fine, what I have seen may justly shame all that the Sun ever saw of beautiful, and by this vision I have lost*——I had said more if I had not espied her face to cloth it self in a new scarlet, which made me conceive that my discourse did rather aggravate than in the least appease her. I was studying terms that might have work'd a better effect, when preventing me with a shrill voice; *What a rashness is this,* said she unto me, *and from what part of the world dost thou come hither to offend me both by thy behaviour, and thy discourse: I am a stranger,* reply'd I, *that a fortune less happy than glorious has lead to this occasion to displease you, or I am rather an Acteon, who for a crime parallel to his, find my self expos'd to a torment much more cruel than he endured. If I had the power to expose thee to it* (said the fiercely exasperated beauty) *I should have pursued thy crime so close, that thou shouldst not have had time to make a reflexion on what thou hast seen: but if I wanted that power I shall have at least enough to hinder you either from knowing or seeing any more that person whom you have view'd already more than you ought, and more than she would have had you.* Finishing these words with an angry voice she departed with her train, and retired into the boat which began at the same instant to make towards the farther bank; where I saw their chariots and men to attend them: I then advanced towards the bank from which I always held my eyes fix'd on the River, and I wish'd very often that the *Mein* had been as large as the *Danube*, that I might longer have retained the sight (although indistinct and confused) of that fierce beauty which already reign'd in my heart. But when after the had pass'd the River, I saw her go forth of the Barge to mount the Chariot, and that a moment after I lost her with all her train in a wood on the other side of the bank, I remain'd much more astonish'd and afflicted than I can possibly express. I saw my self at the same time deprived of a

vision which was dear enough to me to cause a forgetfulness of all things else, exposed to the rage of a beauty which I already most passionately loved notwithstanding all the endeavours I made to the contrary, and without all means either of seeing her or obtaining a knowledge of her person, the River hindring me to follow and I seeing no person to inform my self of her : and this misfortune which became great by a passion which had already gained a considerable strength, touched me so near that I found much difficulty to comfort my self.

In the mean time, the fair Idea of what I had seen, employed all the faculties of my Soul, and I abandoned my self thereto in such a manner, that I had not of a long time quitted the place where I had so pleasantly lost my self, if *Timanthus*, to whom my long stay, and the approach of night gave much of disquiet, had not quitted the place where I left him, to come to seek me, and to advertise me, that the Sun was ready to forsake our Hemisphere, and that we had many hours of riding, to reach any handsome place of Retreat: He repeated it twice or thrice before he could extort any answer from me, and turning in sine towards him with a gesture which much surpris'd him : *And if we should pass the night here*, said I to him, *would you think it, Timanthus, any great misfortune? The inconveniences which you might suffer*, replied *Timanthus*, *is a sufficient misfortune for persons to whom your safety is so dear; and give me leave to tell you, my Lord, you ought not to pass it here without great necessity. I should spend it with two much of joy*, replied I to him, *if I could nourish a hope, to see to morrow what I have seen to day, but I know too much ever to hope it: know this in the mean time, Timanthus, that it is not without reason, that I abandon this place with regret, and that I shall never see in another place what here I have seen; and that the small time I have spent in this place, hath wrought a very large change in my condition.* I accompanied these words with a sigh, and gestures sufficiently passionate to give some disquiet to *Timanthus*; but as the confidence I had in him, did not permit me to make a secret of what there happened unto me; I began, whilst we were walking to the place where he left our Horses, and continued when we were mounted and departed that fatal Island, to relate unto him my adventure, with many more particulars than I have observed in the relation I now make to you, and in such passionate terms, that he doubted not, that I had already really entertain'd an affection for her. He kept silence for some short time after I had finish'd my discourse, and then taking hold of my words; I confess, my Lord, (said he) *that these adventures you have done me the honour to relate, cause in me no ordinary astonishment, and that a Beauty which could produce on your Soul so great an effect, must necessarily be more than an ordinary beauty: But, my Lord, all the impression she hath left, will be quickly defaced by the sight of Rosamond; and before Rosamond's Beauty all others will vanish, like the little Stars before that Planet which ushers in the day.* Do not take, said I, *that Beauty which hath wounded my Soul, for one of those little Stars; neither believe that the beauty of Rosamond, can with ease chase it from my heart. I also feel something in my heart, which hinders me from desiring her: and to speak with the confidence I have in you, know Timanthus, that if I were solely called by the thoughts I have for Rosamond, they would not be capable to snatch me hence, nor hinder me from searching out the Beauty which hath wounded me, from using all means to know her, and to make my self beloved by her, and perhaps from chaining my self to her all the remainder of my life; but it is my Duty, and Honour which more loudly call, than any other considerations. I know I am to revenge my Brother, that I am to combat Pharamond, whose glory covers me with confusion; and that no affection can plead my excuse to the world, if I omit the search of this great Enemy, and to answer worthily those hopes the King hath conceived of my Valour. These reasons constrain me to use a greater violence upon my self, than you can possibly fancy; and though I bear an unkind usage in my heart, which perhaps may always continue; I will march with him in Arms, or by his orders in Franconia, or any other place, to find the Murderer of Vindimir; and when I have given my honour all her rights, I will search a solace for my affections in those opportunities which honour shall present me.* It was thus I express'd to *Timanthus* my intentions, and put them afterwards in execution, in the same manner I had explained them unto him, though not without a great violence to my inclinations, which made me feel by this cruel necessity that honour had much more impos'd, than I can possibly make you apprehend; the care I took to inform my self by the way, was very unprofitable, and all which I could learn, was, that on the other side of the Isle which I remarked, Prince *Friam*, *Basogatus*, and other personages of the highest Rank in *Franconia* had their Palaces; but although I was inform'd, these persons had Daughters which fame publish'd for beautiful; they did not character them sufficiently, to let me find out that Beauty which had wounded me; and so without larger information, and remitting my self to be instructed in another manner, at my next return into *Franconia* in a warlike equipage: I prosecuted my Journey
by

by those near ways, which brought me quickly to *Suevia*, near the King who received me with more tenderness than his Soul had ever testified before. I tell you not the particulars of the reception he gave me, although you could not have learn'd it but by the recital of others, for you had been long before with the Princesses of the *Cimbrians*. You were inform'd no doubt, that the memory of *Vindimir* made the King shed many tears at my arrival, which gave me some assurance that I should succeed *Vindimir* in his affections; and that he sollicit'd me in fine to revenge my Brother's death, with all the Rhetorick which might either animate or persuade, and gave me to understand that he could find no consolation in this life except in the ruine of his enemy. *I have learnt all this you now tell*, said *Albisinda*, *and I believe my self scarcely ignorant of any considerable passage which happened at the time of your arrival, and I know that the King's hopes were much more brightned by the confidence he had in your valour than by the power of all the other forces of his Kingdom: But I never heard of that adventure, you lately recounted, which made you lose your liberty, and I expect with a great impatience to understand what followed so extraordinary a beginning; although by fame hath taught us, I believed my self already enrich'd with the knowledge of that beauty which worked upon your soul such a sudden and wonderful effect, not having so bad an opinion of you to attribute that to many beauties which ought to have been caused by one only.* Your desire is to be inform'd of the truth, replied the Prince, so that I shall slightly pass over the things you know to enlarge my discourse upon such as never came to your knowledge or that could not possibly come but confusedly.

The End of the First Book of the Fifth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK II.

SOME days before I arrived at the King my father's Court, the King of the *Cimbrians* and Prince *Theobald* his Son who had retired themselves, after they had been chased by *Pharamond* and *Gondioch* from their Territories, were departed with a considerable force towards the frontiers of *Bohemia*, where they held intelligences, with a design to fall upon the two Kings their enemies while they were engaged in a war one against the other, or (if they found not a convenient opportunity) to translate the war into the Territories of *Gondioch* whilst we invaded *Pharamond's*. I approved this design much more than the former, and if the King of the *Cimbrians* had not been link'd by the Chain of interest to the King of the *Sueves*, and thereby obliged to assist him in the revenge he thirsted after, I should have found much of cruelty and ingratitude in his obstinacie to war upon him who was fighting against *Gondioch* to make him restore his and his Daughters dominions. I did not likewise much approve that unlimited eagerness which the King manifested in the revenge of a Son, whose life the King of the *Franks* did only take away in the defence of his own: and perhaps I might have testified it if we had had to do with any other enemy than this person whose renown had already filled the whole world, and whose invincible valour gave all those that had a design to war against him too much cause to fear, for me to manifest impressions any way favouring of cowardise by seeming favourable to the reluctancies or excuses I might have made.

This, and the consideration of what honour I might acquire against so great a person, made me freely consent to whatever the King imposed upon me; and all things being prepared for this Expedition, I accompanied him at the head of a hundred thousand men, to march into *Franconia*; I endeavoured to my utmost, to dissuade the King from making this War in person; but though he had so good an opinion of me, as to trust me with the conduct of this War, he listened much more to his own resentments, than to the reasons I could alledge, for he could not believe it possible for him to satisfy his revenge, unless he executed it in person. He made the truth too evident, as soon as he entered the Enemies Country, where he immediately began to consume all by Fire and Sword, acting with so much rigour, that neither respect nor complacency could make me approve it, so that I both condemned and hindred it, as much as was possible. You have known, dear Sister, the full progress of our Arms, and you have heard, how having stormed some places of small importance, and vanquish'd our Enemies wheresoever we found them; in the Campaign I forced *Basogastus* to come to the Battel he hazarded against me, because the King was some where else with one half of the Army, and that he lost twenty thousand of his men which remain'd dead upon the place, and amongst them some Princes, and considerable personages, Allies, or Subjects of *Pharamond*. You have likewise heard, that after this Battel, we found no more resistance capable to stop us, and that afterwards having reduced to our obedience and power all that might oppose us, we went to besiege *Peapolis*, the Capital City of *Franconia*, in which *Basogastus*, having performed all the duties of a brave Captain, and sustained his misfortune with a great deal of courage and prudence, was immur'd with the remainder of his Army. But dear Sister, although you have had this knowledge of the publick occurrences, you know not the secret war that was kindled in my breast, and with what it was concern'd: For your information therefore, I shall tell you, that neither the preparations for the war, nor the busie employments of the war it self, had power to chase from my Soul the fair image of that fierce and imperious Beauty, which became the sole Commanders of my heart, by that accident I have already related to you. This dear and pleasing resemblance remained in such a manner rooted in my remembrance, that there pass few minutes in the day, in which I had her not present in my thoughts, and that I did not feast them upon those Beauties, which I had seen with so much pleasure, that ravish'd me, and transported me sometimes even to an extasie.

The King was frequently astonish'd, to see me receive with so much flegm and coldness the hopes he gave me of the possession of *Rosamond*; and I could not have excus'd my self, but by telling him, that it was very difficult for the sole fame of a Beauty, how ravishing soever, to create such violent desires in me; and that to ground a perfect love in a fancy like mine, the sight of her was necessary: he satisfied himself with this reason, which was very plausible; and whereas he did not perceive in me any impatience for the sight of this celebrated Beauty, he attributed that to my warlike inclinations, believing that love would above all things predominate over my thoughts when leisure offer'd, but he fancied withal, that the sight of *Rosamond* would more fervently engage me to contend for the enjoyment of her, and it was not perhaps impossible, but some part of his thoughts might prove true; and that the time, the difficulties, and the apparition of a Beauty like that of the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, might have wrought in my heart something contrary to an impression which it had so lightly entertain'd, had it not been otherwise fixed by the will of Heaven, which had not design'd me for *Rosamond*, and had without doubt reserv'd her for a Lover much more worthy than my self, of having the glory to serve her. If in *Suevia* the memory of that unknown Beauty made war upon my heart, you may believe, dear Sister, that it continued it with greater force and violence when I was in *Franconia*, and that I could not approach those places where I believed her to be, without more and more perplexing my self, with the remembrance of what I had there seen, and the desire to renew again that happiness. As *Timantibus* was the sole person that knew this secret of my heart, so it was only with him that I dayly entertain'd my self with the discourse thereof, and the cruel necessity which chained me to the head of my Army, did not afford me the liberty to perform all those things which I most desired, so that I gave him many Commissions, and oblig'd him to many courses to enquire where that Beauty was retreat'd, and lodg'd, I so vehemently loved: but he could never learn any thing, capable to give me the least satisfaction, and although he reported that Prince *Prian*, *Basogastus*, and other persons of illustrious Rank in *Franconia*, had Palaces in that Province where I met this fatal adventur, and Daughters that fame published for Beauties, methoughts he told me nothing that could perswademe that any of these was the person I sought for: but fortune acted for me beyond all my diligence, although not half so much as I could have desired;

fred; for some days before I gave battel to *Basogastus*, having disengaged my self from the Body of the Army, I marched with five hundred Horse to make a discovery of the Country, (which was very customary unto me) and observe those stations that might be most advantageous for me, which I might effect with more ease, in regard the enemy had no Forces near enough to deprive us of that liberty: and in consequence, having divided my little party, and retain'd near me only two hundred Horse, after I had view'd a large Plain, situated between the *Mein* and the City of *Artanne*, ascending a little Hill which was near the end of the Plain, I heard some noise in the Vallley on the other side, and when I had got the top of the Hill, from whence I might, though not plainly, descry a part of that which was done in the Vallley, I saw confusedly some appearance of a Combat, or rather of a Rout; and not being able to discern it fully from thence, I dispatch'd two Scouts to discover the particular truth thereof, and to make me a speedy report. I expected in the same place their return with an impatience, of which I could not possibly divine the cause, and a small time after, one of them being returned, and pressing towards me in great haite; My Lord, said he, *The two hundred Horse which you divided an hour since from the Troop under the command of Cleontius, have in that meadow encountred a hundred Horse, which convey'd certain Chariots, and essaying to stop them, they did not only put themselves in a defensive posture, but also assaulted them with so much vigour, that Cleontius himself with some others, lost their lives at the first onset, which did so exasperate our Troop, that in a little time, they cut in pieces all those which did not save themselves by flight, and the Chariots remaining at the mercy of the Conquerours, they pulled out the Ladies, which seemed to be persons of great quality, and who are now in danger to suffer all those miseries of War, which the fury of a disorder'd Troop without a Leader may inflict upon them, unless they be with diligence relieved.* These words pierced my very heart, either through a compassionate resentment, or a natural aversion I bore to disorders of this nature, without consulting my second thoughts, I flew in person to their succour, which any other than my self could not perhaps have easily afforded them: but because I knew the King would not be pleas'd, with what pity made me do in favour of my Enemies, and that he would often in great fury taunt me, with my being merciful, I charged all those which were near me, not to tell my name that day to any person that should ask it, and having afterwards commanded *Timanthus* to give the same orders to those in the Vallley, I rode with the greatest swiftness that was possible, and I had not long rid, but I saw these miserable remains of the Combat, some men flying before the Conquerours, the Chariots without a Guide, and the Ladies which they had forced from thence (piercing Heaven with their outcries) in the hands of the *Sueves*, who dragged them along without either pity or respect.

As soon as I could make them hear my voice, I called to them on pain of death to stop; but if my voice to some were known, who at my sight withdrew themselves, there were many others, that the heat of the Skirmish, or the desire of the fair Prey had so inflamed, that they were a long time before they could know me. They were ten or twelve Ladies, every one guarded by eight or ten men, that were disputing amongst themselves whose Prisoners they should be, so that the number of their Enemies was their safety at that time; the first which I accosted, having commanded away all those that were about her, seemed to me a Lady of a very good deportment, and who, by all appearances, was a person of very great quality: and this opinion making me more narrowly observe her, methought it was the same Lady, who had been present in that fatal adventure which made me love; and that she appeared by several marks, to be the same I took for the Mother of my too much beloved, and unknown Mistress: I was designing to speak to her to clear this doubt, when she hastily prevented me: *Ab! where you be,* (cryed she with a shrill voice) *you, whom the Gods and your virtue have conducted hither to our relief, save the honour of those persons, who would willingly give their lives to preserve it; and if this design did guide you, as I believe it did, flye where the evil is greatest, and where youth and beauty attract the greatest dangers.* Finishing these words, and seeing her self free, she ran with all her might towards the place, pointing thereto with her hand, where I saw some Ladies dragged by the *Sueves*, with a most barbarous inhumanity; I called to them to hold, as I came near them, and punish'd some few of those that were slothful in obeying me, either by forcing them to the ground with the shock of my Horse, or cutting them with my drawn Sword, that they might bear the marks of their insulence. I was constrained to punish many in this manner near her, who at all the Ladies had drawn about her the greatest croud; and when I had beat them all off, then when she had no further use of her strength to defend her self, it forsook her in a moment, and either through the night, or weariness, she swooned at the root of a Tree, about four steps distant from the place where I was: she was no sooner

fallen, but the Lady whom I had newly set free, that spoke to me, and whom I fancied to know, as before I told you, came to her, and after her all the rest (finding themselves at liberty) ran to the same place.

This Lady having seated her self near the swooning person, laid her head upon her knee, and washing her face with tears which trickled down her own, she endeavoured to recover her to life again : the sight hereof obliged me to alight, being tenderly touch'd with pity, and agitated with much stronger motives, than those of compassion, and to draw near this disconsolate Lady : *Comfort your self, Madam, (said I) and fear not any thing of this accident, the mischief whereof is already past. This fear had not perplex'd you, if my good fortune had sooner guided me hither ; but not having the power to defend you from it, I assure you, you shall receive no farther harm.* This Lady who already knew me for her deliverer, look'd upon me, and by that means discovering the person that lean'd her head upon her knee, she gave me both an opportunity to observe, and know her, by that resemblance I had already engraven in my memory, for that same person I adored, and whose image I bore in the center of my heart. I cannot tell how, dear Sister, to represent unto you, either the astonishment which then surpris'd me, or the many differing passions my Soul at that instant laboured with. If joy durst present it self to my Soul at the view of the Lady I sought after with so much eagerness, and for the opportunity I had to do her so considerable a piece of service, it was very suddenly repelled by the grief I had conceived, to see the Beauty I adored, in a condition that made me doubt of her life, and to understand that it was by my own men she was so unmannerly handled ; and this last passion growing much stronger in my heart, did not only hinder me from feeling the first, but likewise touch'd me in such manner, that I stood in need of all my courage to preserve any appearance of resolution, or moderation, And in the mean time, by this second sight, a sight which pierc'd the very bottom of my heart, my love augmented more in an instant, than it could possibly have done by ordinary ways in many years.

This fair visage, although despoiled of those lively colours, which in a better condition of health, used to heighten its resplendent whiteness, and deprived of the sparkling lustre of its bright eyes, retained nevertheless such beauties in its languishment, as your imagination may much better make you apprehend, than my discourse. Her natural fairness which seem'd to receive by this accident, a kind of augmentation could not be looked upon without amazement. And whereas by the resistance and struggling she had made, the dressings of her head were somewhat slackened, some part of her hair falling in some disorder upon her cheeks, heighten'd their lustre by their different hue : her head negligently resting upon the Ladies lap that sustained her, insinuated somewhat of such tenderness by its languishing posture, that it was impossible for even the hardest hearts to defend themselves from it ; and a part of her fair neck, which the Maids had laid open (by unloosing her cloths) to give her the liberty of breathing, appearing at a nearer distance to my eyes, than the first time, expos'd but too much of beauty to complete my undoing, if I were not quite lost before. I beheld a while these wonders, with the countenance of a man totally amazed ; but in fine, not being able to master the passion which transported me ; *Oh celestial Beauty, (cryed I, and accosting her, and kneeling close by her) have my eyes, and my heart so much search'd and enquired after you, to find you in this condition, and must I purchase a happiness, so vehemently desired, with a grief so cruel.* *Oh Barbarians, (added I, turning to the Soldiers with a menacing look) you shall pay with the price of your lives, for this diskindness you have done me.* These words, and my more passionate gestures, obliged that Lady to whom all the other bore a respect, to look upon me much more heedfully than before, and seeing my face which was then totally uncovered, painted with all those marks or a most violent grief ; *It must either be, (said she) that you are very generous, in interesting your self as you do in our misfortunes, or that this personage which causes all our grief is not unknown to you.* *I once appeared, replied I, as a criminal before her, though very innocent, nor do I know in what condition I appear before her at this time.* *You ought not to doubt, said she, but that we look upon you as our preserver, and our tutelär Angel, but you must forgive our griefs, if they do not permit us to render you those respects which are due, whilst we remain in this uncertainty of a life, which is of greater value than our own, and of much dearer concern unto us.* These words multiplied insensibly my griefs, and she that before spoke to me, seeing that the fair swooning Lady did not return to her self : *May it please you to permit me, said she, to let my Daughter be carried in my Chariot to some place where she may receive that relief which we cannot here find, for I have some reason to hope that you have this kindness for those Prisoners which you have so lately rescued from a greater misfortune.* I made no answer to these words which cleft my heart with sorrow, but fearing
four

some other might anticipate me in this office, and deprive me of the most easy labour which I ever undertook in all my life. I took this admirable person in my arms, and raising her gently from the earth, I began to carry her towards the Chariot, with a delight which I could not compare to any other in the world, had I met with it upon a less sad occasion: Oh how sweet this burden seemed, oh how dear and precious those minutes were to me; and with how much sweetness, whilst this fair body was in my Arms, did I feel her head lean upon my shoulder, and her face so near unto mine, that I might easily have stolen kisses, if fear, which is the ordinary companion of Love, had not made the theft appear too criminal. All the Ladies followed me as fast they could, and I had but two or three steps to go, to discharge my self of my dear burthen into the Chariot, whose doors were before broken down: when my fair swooning Lady, either by the motion or other causes recovered her senses, and opened her eyes, raising her head which she had reposed upon my shoulder; she immediately turned her eyes on every side: and as the remembrance of the last accident came first to her memory; she could not see her self within the arms of a man that carried her, without taking him for one of the same persons from whom I had rescued her: and believing what might be most of cruelty in her condition, she struck her hands against my face, and repelling me with all her force, "Let me go Barbarian, said she, and content thy self with my life, without doing me a greater injury. Although I had not deserved this reproach, I suffered it with an immoderate joy, and leaving her (from whom I received it) in the Chariot, which then was at hand, I gave her to understand by that Action, that I was none of those Barbarians she feared. The Lady which I took for her Mother, with all the other maids seated themselves presently near her: and when I perceived by her behaviour, that she began to have more assurance, and to look upon my face with less of horror than she had testified some minutes before, bending my knees upon the Boot, and looking upon her with an aspect as full of respect as passion; "Fear nothing Madam, said I, in a place where all your Enemies are at your mercy, and do not take that person for your Enemy, that would abandon his life with too much of joy, to the least occasion that might either please or serve you: these Barbarians which so ill knew the respects they owed to your divine beauty, shall be punished for their crime: and though I am sufficiently innocent, I find my self exposed to a torment, which will render me no less worthy of your pity than they of your anger. By these discourses that divine person grew more and more assured in her imagination, and that Lady to whom all the others bore a respect, having informed her in few words, of what I had performed for her service and theirs; she fix'd her eyes upon my face, in which perhaps she had soon discerned something that appeared not barbarous; and having a long time considered my Countenance, without speaking; "I see plainly, said she, that I am indebted to you for all things, but I know not to what, nor to whom I owe this relief, yet I am much deceived if this be the first time I have seen you. "You saw me once before, (said I unto her with some signs of confusion) but it was against my design, and because I saw you against your intention, I should not have perhaps remembered you of that accident; which exposed so innocent a person to your anger. "How (said she with a blush that covered her whole face) we have but two times met, and at the first you saw me in a condition, in which no man ought to have seen me, and at the second, I found my self in your arms. "You see, replied I, what fortune hath done for me, and you ought not to envy me her favours, since I purchase them by the loss of a happiness which is very dear unto me. "I should be very sorry, said she, that the service you have rendered us, should cause you any loss or displeasure, and I know that it is great enough, to merit a larger acknowledgment than I can possibly testify: but I should have been very much obliged to you; if you had not confest'd to me the first accident: and although I see you without resentment, it will be very difficult for me ever to see you without being ashamed. "I must then (said I with a sad accent) estrange my self at a great distance from your sight, when my presence will be no farther necessary, and I will do it Madam, as soon as I may, without exposing you to some danger. I uttered these words with such marks of sorrow, that they touched the Lady's heart which I took for the Mother, and who by all her Actions seemed very grateful to the service I had rendered her: So likewise taking upon her to speak with a very obliging countenance; "My Lord, said she, you must somewhat pardon the Modesty of a young person, that was not by her fortune accustomed to find her self in a man's Arms: but I pray think not, that the shame that she mentioned will take away in the least from the acknowledgment she owes you. "No my Lord, (added my most admirable and unknown Mistress) the shame of a misfortune which befall me, will not render me ungrateful for a benefit, and I could wish you were not of our Enemies Party, that I might find occasions to manifest my gratitude.

And

And if it be true (added the other Lady with an inward smile) that you have preserved ever since our first encounter, that affectionate remembrance you would persuade us to believe: I cannot imagine how your heart could yield to the resolution of coming hither to war against us. I came said I, because I was born a subject to the King of Suevia, and that I could not in duty disobey him who commanded me to follow him, giving me a command very considerable in his Army: and I came rather, because I flattered myself with a belief of meeting some happy occasion to see you, and serve you, than to offer you any particular injury; not believing you had any more than a common interest in this war: Nor have we any other (replied my fair Mistress very readily) but as you appear to me an extraordinary personage, and that I have seen few whose deportment speaks more to their advantage, I could perhaps have wished you were not an Enemy to Pharamond; and possibly if you knew him, it would be difficult for you to be so. I shall be, said I, no farther his Enemy than my duty constrains, and to so great a King as he, an Enemy like me will be little considerable. I was unwilling to enlarge myself upon this subject, lest I should enter insensibly into a debate of the several powers of love and duty: and seeing that Timanthus had perform'd the orders I gave him, in recalling the scattered servants of the Lady, and in causing those who guided the Chariots, to return to their several duties; I enquir'd of the Ladies what they had farther to command me, but I asked them so movingly, that they might easily perceive the repugnancy I had, to forsake the person that I loved; and the elder Lady taking hold of the occasion, My Lord, said she, you know that our intentions must be submitted to yours, and as we are your prisoners, we have no intention to make you lose those advantages you may gain by our ransom, we will not so much as obscure from your knowledge the quality and rank we hold in the King of the Franks Court: and through the confidence which I have in your virtue, I will confess that I am called Theodomira, wife to Priam, a Prince of the Royal Family of the Franks, that one of these Ladies is my daughter, and that she whom you carried in your Arms, and who for her beauty has merited from you a more particular esteem than the rest, is my Niece Blefinda, whose nearest consanguinity, and greater merit, renders her as dear to me as if she were my own. Now you have understood thus much, dispose of our liberties as your virtue shall direct you, and believe, that after this obligation we have to you, there are few things which you may not hope for our Ransome. I should set perhaps so high a price, replied I, with a smile, that you'd have much of difficulty to resolve the payment, and for this reason it is necessary that I satisfy myself, and that I pay as the price of your liberty, the loss of my own. In the mean time, you may be pleased to tell me the place where you design to retire your selves, and to permit me to guard you till you are out of danger: Oh! 'tis too generous, replied the divine Blefinda, and I am confident the King of the Sueves will never approve your proceedings. That may be, said I, but I know Prince Viridomar will approve them, and I hope he will make my peace with the King, if this action should come to his knowledge. If you fall into any disgrace for what you have now done, added the Princess Theodomira, you shall find a retreat with us, and I shall persuade Blefinda to see you without being ask'd. You will find therein much difficulty, said Blefinda blushing again, and you might safer promise him, that Prince Priam, and King Pharamond himself would be sensible, as really they ought to be, of his civil usage and deportment towards us. However it succeed Madam, said I to Theodomira, I shall remember the promise you make me, and shall mind you of it whensoever I am reduced to the necessity of accepting it. I shall not forget it, replied the Wife of Priam, and in the mean time, if you have the bounty to cause us to be conducted to the City of Arttaune, which is not far from this place, you will complete the entire glory of your generosity: And I assure my self that Prince Priam my husband will testify to you, those acknowledgements to which he is obliged. After these words which inform'd me of the place where they designed to retire, I mounted on horseback with my men, whom I caused to march at a great distance behind me under the command of Timanthus, having made them observe the like distance all the while we discoursed, and having commanded those who drove the Chariots to keep the road that led to Arttaune; I marched by them, feasting my eyes with the sight of my most dear, and most adored Blefinda: I plainly perceived that it somewhat disturbed her to see me, but methought, (or I was willing for my comfort to believe so) that this repugnancy, rather took its birth from the remembrance of that displeasing accident, than from a natural aversion. I had many things in my mind to have said to her, but beside the presence of Theodomira, and her train which hindred me; I found something so full of awe in her face, and of majesty in her person, that the privilege I had of being in a rank above her, could not make me dispense with as great a respect for her, as if I had known her to be the greatest Princess in the world: and when she turn'd her fair eyes upon me, as sometimes she did, to assure me that she was sensible of my civility; she did so daunt me, that I had not the confidence to disclose my passion, so that I satisfied myself in having given such proofs of my affection as could not permit her to doubt it,

it, and in having said enough to make my self be understood by a person of a much meaner capacity : I had marched some time by their Chariots side, notwithstanding their entreaties to ease my self of that trouble, by giving them only a Trumpet or some other person in whom I might trust their safe conduct ; when *Theodora* looking upon me in a very obliging manner, *But must we,* said she, *part from you, without the least knowledge of our generous defender ? or are the obligations we have received, of so small importance to leave us in ignorance of the person to whom we are indebted ? My name is so little known in the world* (replied I to her) *that I did not believe it necessary to let you know it, and it will not much improve your knowledge, to tell you I am called Almeric. I have heard much of that name of Almeric* (said the charming Niece of *Theodomira*) *and I know he is one of the Grantees both in the Court, and Army of the King of the Sueves. I told you before,* (replied I with something of shame which always accompanys a Lye) *that I had a very considerable command in the Army, but I did not believe that my name was known unto you, and I much less desire it should be so by exploits of war, than by those opportunities which might less attract your hatred. Our hate,* replied *Blesinda,* *can neither enter into comparison with the obligations we owe you, nor with the esteem your generous actions have given us of your person : but a person may make himself be blun'd, without making himself be hated, and the reasons of the one and the other, are not always alike disadvantageous. I did judge by many marks,* added *Theodomira,* *that you were no vulgar person, and every thing appears so extraordinary about you, that I can hardly believe your Prince's person, of whom fame publishes so many wonders, is so compleat as yours. And I am confident,* replied I suddenly, *that the Princess Polixena, whose beauty is so loudly noised, is not half so fair as Blesinda's.* “The Princess *Polixena* (replied *Blesinda* blushing) hath many more advantages over *Blesinda,* than *Viridomar* perhaps over *Almeric* : or rather, answered I, *Viridomar* hath more over *Almeric,* than *Polixena* over *Blesinda.* “However, added *Theodomira,* I could wish *Almeric* were Prince *Viridomar,* that we might the better acknowledge our obligation to our generous protector. “You might wish at the same time, said I, that *Blesinda* were *Polixena,* and though you should put the wish farther, I am confident that neither *Almeric* nor *Viridomar* would disclaim it. “The inclinations of *Viridomar* are not conformable to yours, said *Blesinda,* for if they were, *Theodomira* believes we should not long have war, and perhaps that reason constrained her as much as her obligation to make that wish for you. “The disposal of peace or of war, said I, do not depend upon *Viridomar,* for you may have heard, that the King of the *Sueves* doth not square his intentions by those of his Son : But although his Son had his father's anger to fear, if he had seen what I have seen, and that *Blesinda* were *Polixena,* I am confident he would hardly wage war against *Pharamond.* We should have said much more, and I perhaps by the effect of a passion, very opposite to prudence, might have explained my self too far, if in advancing upon the plain, we had not discovered a body of two or three hundred Horse, which marched directly towards us. As soon as they discovered us they made a stand, and the followers of *Theodomira* presently inform'd her, that it was the Governour of *Artanne,* who came to meet her, with a Convoy which ought to have received her much farther, however retarded by some sinister accident. “It is because we went too far, said *Theodomira,* and I should speak it to our misfortune, if our meeting with generous *Almeric,* had not put it out of my thoughts. She then dispatcht one of her train to the Governour of *Artanne,* to entreat him to advance no farther, and commanding the Chariots to stop ; she entreated me to return, and thanked me for what I had done for her and her company, with such high marks of acknowledgment, as made me much ashamed of my self, assuring me, that Prince *Priam* her husband, who was then with his King in *Bohemia* ; and King *Pharamond* himself, who in all likelihood would come to the defence of his Country, would not miss of testifying their noble resentments of a generosity so little common : and if that fortune should minister any occasions to demonstrate unto me her particular acknowledgements, she would embrace them with such an excess of joy, as might sufficiently evidence she was not ungrateful. *Blesinda* her self with less fervency and fewer words, but with the best grace in the world, assured me that she was not insensible of the service I had done her, and when, with a face upon which the grief of this separation might make her discern a good part of what I endured, I took my leave of her, and entreated her with no small disorder, if not a visible extasie to remember her self once in her life, if it were possible, of a person that could never forget her the least minute of his, looking upon me with a smile intermingled with sweetness and rigour ; “Yes *Almeric,* said she, for more than one reason I shall remember you, and though we should know each other no farther ; I hope that you will not have cause to complain of me. She spoke these words, and gave me leave to depart with an Air so full of grandeur, that if I had not been blinded by my passion, I should have opened

my eyes to the knowledge of the truth; and presently after, being unwilling to be seen nearer by the *Franks*, which came to convoy her, and who by *Theodomira's* order had still kept their station, I returned with a slow pace towards our Camp, so touch'd and dismay'd with this last adventure, that I was even lost to my self.

My love took such strength and vigour from this second encounter, that all I could do in opposition to it, could not possibly stop its course; and I not only omitted nourishing any kind thoughts for *Rosamond*, whose Beauty was incessantly sounded in my ear, but that I even forgot to preserve any for my self, giving my self entirely up to my passion. I was in this very condition when I gave Battel to *Eufogaius*, which, as you know, I won with as great advantage to us, as loss to our Enemies; and a few days after, having rejoyn'd with the King, we march'd according to his will, which I wanted power to oppose, to lay Siege to *Peapolis*; within a few days we knew that the Princess *Polixena*, whose Beauty fame had already loudly sounded, was there immured; and I learn'd also, that Princess *Theodomira*, and by consequence, that *Blessinda* which I adored, was in the same City which we assaulted, and happily as much expos'd as the rest, to the calamities of a Siege. This thought gave me so much of affliction, that I could not conceal it from the King, though I always disguis'd the cause; and I acted all things in this Siege with such a reluctancy, that the besieged had opportunity enough to make thereby their advantages. I know not what I had in fine resolv'd, but as fortune would have it, that the King received at that instant Letters from *Suevia*, and from the King of the *Cimbrians*, which made him judge, that his presence was necessary in *Suevia*; and as he believed me capable for the conduct of that War, he yielded it entirely to me, and only with part of his Domesticks he took his way towards *Suevia*, having first with too much heat exhorted me to the revenge of *Vindimir*, and the destruction of *Pharamond*. When I found my self at liberty and alone, I made war in another manner than before we had done, or rather, I made none at all, giving the Besieged marks enough to know, that I either spar'd them, or warred against them against my own will. I sent Trumpets almost every day to the Princess *Polixena* to entreat her to go forth of the besieged City, and to retire her self into any other place of security where she pleas'd, not doubting, but that if she carried Ladies with her, as I gave her free leave, *Priam's* Lady would be one of the first, and with her my adored *Blessinda*; but she always answer'd me with a great deal of resolution, that since the King her Brother was absent, she would hold his place even till death, and that she knew how to bury her self in the ruins of her Country, before she'd receive any courtesie from her Enemies. In fine, I was in a strange perplexity, and if on the one side I could not resolve to assault that City, wherein all that I loved was immured; on the other, I answer'd very ill, by the event of a Siege of that importance, the opinion which the world had conceived of me, and that fame, which some actions sufficiently great and happy, had given me.

Besides, I was ashamed to make war in his absence, upon an Enemy whose presence I ought to seek if I desired to raise my self to glory equal to his; and I knew not in fine what resolution to have taken, if I had not learn'd in that very time, when my resolves were most wavering, and most unsettled, that King *Pharamond* march'd with his Forces to the defence of his Country, that he had pass'd the Mountains which inclose the Countreys of the *Boians*, and that he came on apace by great marches to fight me. It is certain, dear Sister, and I speak it without design of extolling my valour before you, that this news gave me more joy than I had ever received in my life: and although my affection seem'd to engross and monopolize my heart, I felt that the name of *Pharamond* had begot such an emulation, that the love of glory awakened with all her Forces in my Soul, had suspended those of my affection, to make me pursue its inspirations. I found there a double opportunity to satisfy my inclinations; and I could not forsake a Siege, towards which I had so much aversion, upon fairer occasion than to fight this great Enemy, whose glory fill'd the whole earth, and upon whom I ought to revenge a Brother's death: I straight departed to meet him with our choicest Troops, and I left the remainder before the City, as well to hinder *Eufogaius* from following me in the Rear, as he might have done, as not to draw my Father's anger entirely upon me, who had prohibited me, upon pain of his eternal displeasure, the forsaking that Siege. You know, Sister, at full all that pass'd there, I saw *Pharamond*, I fought him, both in a set Battel, and single hand to hand, and I found him much greater than fame had proclaimed him. In the particular Combat I had no disadvantage, and I may say, I lost not the Battel, though the *Franks* had something the advantage upon the *Sueves*; and if I withdrew next day towards the City, where I had left the rest of my Army, it was not in a manner of flight, but like one, that with a part of his Army could

could not keep the Field in that Country, against an Enemy that was Master thereof, that strengthened himself every day therein, and to whom every thing was favourable; and like one that had need to rally his scattered Forces, and to joyn with those which he expected within few days from *Suevia*, not to give too great advantages to an Enemy, against whom there was nothing of diligence to be neglected.

Some few days after he assaulted me in my Camp with a Lion-like force, and the valour of a great Commander, where again we met in the Combat man to man; and the world knows, dear Sister, that I was not vanquished. As for the Battel, I confess, victory at first inclined more to his side than mine; but the recruit which arrived to our Camp near the end of the Combat, rendred me in a condition to dispute it more strongly than ever, if he had not thought fit to retire as well as we. I reaped more satisfaction by these two great proofs of my valour and fortune against *Pharamond's*, than ever I got in all the actions of my former life; and although I had won many Battels, and obtained complete Victories, I ascribed more of Glory to my self for these two Combats, though I had in neither the advantage, than in all that I had more happily performed against other enemies. I had even the belief to flatter my self, that the *Franks* were more valiant than the *Sueves*, especially in the defence of their own Country, which caused them to make many extraordinary endeavours, and that *Pharamond* was no ways more valiant than I.

To manifest this opinion to the whole world, and to seek with more glory the revenge of *Vindimir*, I resolv'd a third time to prove the strength of *Pharamond*, without any obstacle which might hinder (as before) the success of the Battel; and by a challenge which I sent him, I invited him to a personal Combat with me. You know, dear Sister, and the world knows the success thereof, which doubtlesly had not been advantageous to me, if they had not had that good opinion of me, rather to attribute the misfortune to my love, than to any second cause. But to inform you of more than reach'd the publick ear, I shall tell you, that the day which preceded our Combat, whilst a truce for three days gave a free commerce between the City and the Camp of the *Franks*, I learn'd that the Princess *Polixena* was come to visit the King her Brother in his Tents, and that she resolv'd to be a Spectatrix of our Combat: I also knew that *Theodomira* was with her, and by this reason concluded that my sprightly *Blessinda* was there too. This imagination created in me a kind of joy, besides the hope which I had to see her, which could not but be very desirable, for as it is natural for us to desire to engrave a good opinion of our selves in the hearts of those we love, so I hoped to make her see by this fair opportunity which offer'd it self, that I was not altogether unworthy of her esteem: but informing by self by chance that very day of *Polixena's* Beauty, by persons that had often seen her, I found it by their description to resemble *Blessinda's*; and not hearing any mention made of *Blessinda*, who for her admirable Beauty, and her near alliance with the Princess *Theodomira*, merited a particular notice, my fancy was immediately touch'd with a suspicion of the truth, and I believed it not impossible, but *Blessinda* might really be *Polixena*, and that it was very difficult, there should be a *Blessinda* so fair as that appeared to me, whose Beauty fame had not proclaimed. All her proceedings so great and majestic, and her words which then return'd to my memory, sufficiently confirm'd me in this opinion; but soon after, other considerations presented themselves to my thoughts, which contradicted it; for besides, the little likelihood which I found, that the Sister of so great a King should be expos'd to such dangers as she had run, methought the sincerity which *Theodomira* had used in discovering her self to me, was very opposite to this deceit in concealing *Polixena*; and though I was not ignorant, that there were greater reasons to obscure the Sister of a King, than the Wife of *Priam*, and that by my proceeding I might judge of hers, yet methoughts there appeared such a reality in the actions and visage of *Theodomira*, and that she had so little reason to be diffident of me, that I could not entertain a belief that she had deceiv'd me. To *Timantibus* I communicated my perplexity, who found on every side as many reasons for doubt, as my self. I knew not whether I should desire *Blessinda* to be *Polixena*, for if on the one side by this equality of our Birth, I found a much greater facility to my happiness, and a kind of satisfaction in not having debas'd my self in my inclinations, on the other side, I had causes to fear all things, in loving the Sister of *Pharamond*, *Vindimir's* Murtherer, with whom the King my Father would neither admit alliance nor society, and a Princess that might her self hate me for the war I made upon her Country, and for the ardent desire I testified to fight her Brother.

Amidst these contrarieties of opinions, and of desires, I knew not what I ought to believe, nor what I ought to desire; for as that person I loved was unknown to me, so was it universally understood, that I loved not that Beauty which was propos'd as a period to

my hopes, I resolv'd in the device which I caus'd to be put upon my Shield, to represent the state of my fortune, which was thus, turning my looks from the bright Rays of that Sun which enlightened all the Hemisphere, I abandoned my self to my Destiny, which lead me towards another Sun wrapp'd up in Clouds, with these words,

Where ever my Destiny shall call me.

In this uncertainty of thoughts I pass'd a night full of disquiet, finding much reluctancy in my self to resolve to combat *Pharamond*, believing that I had fought him too much already, if I were the Lover of *Polixena*: but as I found no means in that small time which remained to clear this doubt, and that from so formidable an Enemy I could make no retreat which would not be ill interpreted, I resolv'd to tempt my fate, and to surrender my self up to the Gods, to Love and Fortune. With this resolution I appeared in the Field, where I entred in a most remarkable Equipage, and in the course I made against *Pharamond* I had no disadvantage; but when with Sword in hand we came towards each other, and that in passing under the Scaffold of *Polixena*, where I cast up my eyes to clear my doubts concerning her person, I found my real, yet false *Blessinda*; I was struck in such a manner, that all the strength of my courage was unable to defend me: all the thoughts of Combat, or of War against the Brother of *Polixena*, vanish'd in a moment from my Soul; and when he came fierce as a Lion towards me, to finish the Combat, I rather found my self in a condition to present him my naked Breast, than to lift my Arm for my defence against him. His Generosity, although he was ignorant of the cause, would not make advantage of the disorder he found me in, neither did he refuse to remit till the morrow the sequel of the Combat, when I assured him that I was not then in a condition to continue it.

Some persons might have heard the words, which the knowledge of *Polixena* caus'd me to utter, all the world saw my behaviour, and every one judg'd thereof according to their different thoughts: it was the more astonishing to all those that view'd it, for that they believed it was in that first instant of *Polixena's* fight, that my heart had been stricken with love, and that this love had made me forsake the Combat; if the chance had been so, there had been really a great subject of astonishment; not but that the beauty of *Polixena* was great enough to give a love at first sight, and that even according to my opinion, she who gives it not from the first day, will never give it: but I must have had more time than in that conjuncture I could have, and more liberty to observe her, than so redoubtable an Enemy as I had before me could permit. I retreated out of the Barriers (as it was well known) and retir'd my self into our own Camp, amidst a Sea of thoughts wherein I found my self plung'd.

The principal Officers of the Army, who immediately came about me, and who with much of surpris'e had seen my behaviour, and nevertheless retain'd too good an opinion of me, to attribute the cause of this accident to fear, yet gazing on me without speaking, they seem'd to ask much more by their silence, than they could have done by their discourse; and as I had no design to discover my self to the whole world, I left them in liberty to judge thereof as they pleas'd, and lock'd up within my breast whatever then presented it self, either made for my comfort, or for my torment: but as I distinguish'd *Haldan* from the vulgar, as much for his Birth, his Rank, and his Merit, as because he was Husband to *Artemira*, whom I had much esteem'd, and that he really appear'd very affectionate to my interest; I declar'd to him what he was as much a stranger to as the rest, and having made him the recital of all that which had happen'd to me in the love of the Princess *Polixena*, little different from that I now made you; I not only told him that I had no design to return the morrow to the Combat against *Pharamond*, but that I would willingly redeem with half my blood what I had already act'd against him, and that instead of having an intention personally to make war in his Country, I could not endure that our Army should make any longer stay, and therefore whatever I might fear from the King's anger, to which I would not expose my self, I desired him as a testimony of his friendship, to break up the Camp the next day, and to march back into *Suevia*. *Haldan* with much astonishment list'n'd to the beginning of my discourse, and became in course of my opinion, no ways admiring that so great a Beauty as *Polixena*, had had the power to beget an affection, nor did he find it strange, that the excess of love I had for the Sister, should make me unwilling to make war against the Brother: but he judg'd like me of the King's severity, and did not doubt but that the height of his displeasure might transport him to great extremities. He even fear'd both for himself, and the other Officers, that in
marching

marching back the Army they should find themselves expos'd to a great part of his rage, and he gave me sufficiently to understand that he would not have run this hazard upon any other account, than to do me so considerable a service. But I abated much of this fear, by telling him, that since the King at his departure had both commanded him and the other Officers, to receive upon all occasions my orders, and to obey me as his own person, he could not blame them for retreating back with the Army by my said order, which I would give him in writing, and in what form he desired. He dispos'd himself to obey me, and in order thereunto, by his advice, I discours'd with the other principal Officers concerning the return of the Army, which I left to their conduct, and they, though with a fear equal to his, resolv'd at length to obey me, and prepar'd themselves accordingly. Day being done, I pass'd the night full of uncertainties, upon judgments which I had to make of my condition, and of the trouble about those new affairs to which my passion had expos'd me, and of irresolution upon those ways I was to take, to find some satisfaction in this love, to which I had sacrific'd all things.

But as nothing touch'd my heart so near, as the displeasure I had to see my self in Arms against the Brother of *Polixena*, I suspend'd the memory of all other things to satisfy that; and no sooner did I perceive the day break, but I labour'd to send away the Army: and when *Pharamond* was preparing himself to return to the Combat, he received that little Note, of which you have heard so much speech, and I may repeat it to you, because it is very short.

Prince *Viridomar* to King *Pharamond*.

P*Pharamond*, thou hast deprived my Brother of his life, and thy Sister hath given me my death; consider in what a manner thy House triumphs over ours, and do not expect to be encountered by a person who prosecutes no longer the revenge of *Vindimir*, and who disputes no farther with you your interest in *Rosamond*.

At the same time I sent these few lines to *Pharamond*, I resign'd the conduct of the Army to *Haldan*, and I mounted on Horseback with only *Timanthus*, and two others, appointing the rest of my Equipage to follow *Haldan* into *Suevia*, where I told them I would suddenly overtake them. Hitherto, Sister, you have had some knowledge of part of my actions, because they appear'd in publick, and it was that which caus'd the disorder and confusion in my recital: but as you can have learn'd nothing of what remains for me to tell you; I shall discourse it to you in a better method.

If you should ask me, Sister, with what intention I took Horse, and for what place I was design'd, when I departed from *Peapolis*, I should be somewhat puzzled to answer; and I shall only tell you, that having then no other design in my Soul, than to cease to be an Enemy to *Pharamond*, and to repair what was pass'd by deeds quite contrary to those which might have given him a just cause of hatred, I only thought to absent my self far from those places where I had warred too much, to seek out means to give some satisfaction to my love; and without having determin'd any thing, neither as to one, or t'other design, I expected as much from my courage as I could hope, and left the rest to Heaven and fortune. I had no intention to return into *Suevia*, not only because I knew I should be ill received of the King, having so ill follow'd his instructions, but because this journey deprived me of the means to see *Polixena*, who at that time took up all my thoughts, and from whom I could not without much difficulty absent my self: I was unwilling to go to King *Pharamond*, not that I doubted his generosity, nor that I fear'd any thing of unkindness from him, contrary to the grandeur of his Soul, but because (although I no longer made war against him) honour did not permit me to associate my self with him, whilst he had war with my Father.

But I could have been well pleas'd to have waited on *Polixena*, without being seen by *Pharamond*, and this was it which most perplexed me, not doubting but that through the peace which the Princess would soon enjoy, the King of the *Franks* would for some time take a progress about her Country, and visit his Cities, the people after so many years absence most eagerly desiring it, and that the Princess his Sister would always accompany him, or at least be as little distant from him as was possible. Neither did I know, though
fortune

fortune should be so favourable to give me an opportunity to see her, under what name to present my self to her, or that of *Almeric*, or *Viridomar*. Under that of *Almeric*, the quality of a private person, prohibited me to hope from *Polixena*, what I might have hoped from *Blessinda*; and on the other side, this *Almeric*, whose name I borrowed, had been killed in battel by *Pharamond's* own hand, at the head of a Wing of Horse which he commanded; and as he had always kept that degree, which rendred him remarkable to all the world, his death was no less known in the Camp of the *Franks*, than in ours. Under that of *Viridomar*, although I did not doubt but *Polixena* had a large and generous Soul, I feared some remains of a resentment against an Enemy, who had caused so much desolation and damage to her Country, and who had so often assaulted the person of the King her Brother; and though I had some hopes, that through the satisfaction I had made, she might have pardoned me in part; I thought however, that a Virtue so scrupulous as hers, would with much difficulty frame it self to endure a private suit, without the approbation of the King her Brother; since even by reason of that happiness which I had to see her bathing, she could not suffer my sight without reluctance, after so considerable a service. The remembrance of the offers made me by *Theodmira*, and of the assistance which I might hope from her, brought a kind of relief to my disquiet; and when I called to mind the affection with which she fastened this assurance upon me, I flattered my self with a hope which afforded me some content: but fate had designed it for my misfortune, that I should wound Prince *Priam* her Husband with my own hand, in the first Battel which I gave to *Pharamond*; and though she did not accuse *Almeric* for his wound, she too well knew that he had received it from *Viridomar*, and could not in fine know me for what I was, without looking on me as a person that had exposed her to so sensible a grief. This diversity of thoughts which disturbed my mind, and this uncertainty, which of the two names I ought to assume, made me to loiter some days in *Franconia*, without determining what resolution to take; and as my equipage could hardly give any suspicion of my quality, I freely visited many Cities in that Country, expecting what the Heavens would inspire me, or some favourable occasion to make me take a resolution.

I knew not very well what I should in fine have done, for I still found difficulties sufficiently great in every design which I contriv'd: but in reapproaching *Peapolis*, after I had taken a great circuit by the side of *Franckfort*, *Mogunce*, and some other places near the *Rhine*, I learn'd that King *Pharamond*, upon the news of the great Forces which the King of the *Cimbrians* had raised against him, was gone to visit the Frontiers; and that upon a belief which they had, that he could not suddenly return, the Princess *Polixena*, who loved much more a Country than the City Habitation, was retired to *Fenuse*, a Royal Seat, distant one days journey from the City, and situated upon the Banks of *Tiberon*, somewhat near the place where that River discharges her self into the *Mein*. I likewise knew that the principal Ladies of the Court had accompanied her, and particularly the Princess *Theodmira*, who left her as little as was possible, and whom for her fair qualities; and the care she had taken in her education, she loved rather like a Mother than a Kinswoman; that together with *Theodmira*, the Princess *Artesinda* her Daughter, who is a very beautiful person, and the very same which I had seen with the Princess *Polixena* in the River, and *Laomira* Daughter to *Basogastus* were there also, and that the Court would be both full and pleasant. This news which seemed to offer me the conveniency which I had so long desired, gave me sufficient contentment, and although from *Theodmira* I feared some resentments against *Viridomar* for the wounds of *Priam*, I would nevertheless venture to present her *Almeric*, and recal to her memory the retreat she had offered him; and because that at *Fenuse* besides the Royal Palace, there is a very large Town not much inferior to a City; I thought I might there lodge my small attendance, till an occasion offered it self for me to go to the Castle, and shew my self to *Theodmira*, by whom I only intended to be presented to the Princess. As I had resolved it, I put it in execution; and through the care of my men which I had sent before, I found a convenient Lodging near the Castle, where I pass'd a night full of all those passionate motions, which my desires, and the hopes to see a Beauty that I adored, could possibly raise in me; and in the morning as soon as I thought the Ladies in a condition to be seen, I went to the Palace, going as I was guided, to Princess *Theodmira's* Apartment. Neither she, nor the Princess of the *Franks* had ever seen me out of Armour; and that day it not being necessary, nor indeed very convenient to go armed to such a place, I had clothed my self in a habit very rich, and much in the fashion, which through the care we take to please those whom we love, had nothing of very negligent about it: this made me, as I pass'd, to be observed more than I cared for, and obliged those persons to whom I addressed my self, to shew me more civility than was requisite to my remaining unknown. For

For the rest, neither in the carriage of our persons, nor in the accent of our tongues, are we very different from the *Franks*, and I spoke their language well enough to make me pass for a Native of that Country, so that very few amongst them took me for a stranger: and the first of whom I enquired the appartinent of *Theodmira*, offered himself most officiously to be my guide where I might speak with her. As soon as I was in her chamber, and that she had cast her eyes upon me she knew me, and putting from the place where she was, with a voice which denoted astonishment, “Oh! *Almeric*, *said she*, is it possible that I should see you again? And at the same time coming towards me with open Arms, and believing her self obliged, to make me a reception more obliging, and more familiar than at our former encounters; she embraced me, and treated me with as much kindness, as she possibly could have shewn to Prince *Genevand* her son. I received her Caresses with all the submission that *Almeric* might owe her, but a little time after, withdrawing her self a little back, and looking on my face with some signs of astonishment; “But is not this an illusion, *said she*, that I have newly embraced, have we not all heard that *Almeric* by the King’s own hand lost his life in the Battel. “He that dyed by King *Pharamond’s* hand, *replied I to her*, was called *Almeric* like me; for that name hath been born by divers persons in *Suevia*: but you see Madam, that I am not that *Almeric*. “It is true, *replied Theodmira*, that by the report made to us of his age, and the make of his person, we concluded that it was another of your name, or else (*added she with an inward smile*) we should not so soon have left mourning for the loss of a person to whom we stand so much obliged. “You are not, *said I*, obliged to me for having only rendred what I owed, and what every man born of a noble blood, would have done for you as well as I. But although that service doth not (for this reason) merit your remembrance, it hath nevertheless produced the effect which I feared, and my King thereby hath been so exasperated against me, that all my friends and Prince *Uridomar himself*, who is not in the best condition, did not believe there was any safety for me in *Suevia*.

I mused some time what Sanctuary to take, and remembering my self in fine of the offer you had made me, I thought that you would not be displeas’d, if I came to spend some days with you, in expectation of my peace being made with the King: or till the Prince his Son should be in a condition to give me a retreat, or until I might find one elsewhere, which may not perhaps be very difficult. Whilst I was speaking in this manner, *Theodmira* gave sufficient proof in her countenance of the content she received in my discourse; and as gratitude had worked upon her soul, all those effects it could possibly produce in a worthy mind, she could not but hear with a great deal of pleasure, the occasion which fortune had offered her to witness her resentments. She made it appear to me by new Caresses more obliging than the former, and when she took upon her to explain her self farther; “In truth, *said she*, you could never have seconded the first kindness you did for us, with any other more obliging or more grateful than this: and we are much more indebted to you, for having sought out this little retirement with us, than you to us for granting it. So that I not only confirm to you with all my heart, the offer I made you at our last parting, but I likewise assure you, that Prince *Priam* my Husband, and *Genevand* my son will not omit to render you what from them is due to our preserver: and that the King himself like a noble Prince will let you know how sensible he is of any service done to the Princess his Sister. “I have reason Madam, *said I*, to hope by your own proceedings, that the actions of all yours must be very generous: And I doubt not but that King *Pharamond* will act in this affair, as he acts in all other, but as for divers reasons I am constrained to obscure my retreat, if you will permit me I would keep it as secret as possible. “You will be content at least, (*said she smilingly*) that *Blesinda* should have knowledge of your being there, for I do not believe you have designed to conceal your self from her. “For *Blesinda*, *replied I*, I may have some reasons if you approve them to shew my self to her: But for the Princess *Polixena*, I do not think fit to hazard it after the faults which your deceit made me commit. “I deceived you (*said she*) by an order which I could not violate; and it was of great importance in such an encounter, that the Sister of a King should be concealed: but you saw plainly that when I spoke of my self and family I was sincere. However it were, I assure you that this deceit hath worked no bad effect for you, and that if *Blesinda* can behold you without being ashamed, *Polixena* will see you without any ill will. And of this I am so well persuaded, that I will defer no longer to give her notice of your coming, and so advance the joy which you will receive from her sight. And at the same time without expecting a reply, she left me with the Princess *Artesinda* her Daughter, whom I very respectfully saluted, and she gave me a very civil reception (although the same accident gave her a part in the bashfulness of *Blesinda*) and after she had entreated me to stay with her daughter till her return, she

went into the Princess *Polixena's* Chamber, *Artefinda*, who to a great deal of beauty, had an equal proportion of wit, testified unto me in the most obliging terms her particular resentments: and some of those maids being present, which had shared in the relief I had given their Ladies, made it appear to me both by their discourse and Actions, that they had not forgot it: But they had not then much time, although it seems always tedious in the expectation of a happiness we much desire, for *Theodmira* coming soon after to call me, gave me her hand, and led me to *Polixena's* Chamber. I followed all the way trembling, although I desired nothing so vehemently as to go to the place where she led me: And as methought, I used a second deceit to the Princess, in hiding again from her *Viridomar* under the shape of *Almeric*, I entred her Chamber with many marks of fear, which she might have perceived upon my face, had she but well observed it. My sight at first begat a blush, which as I judged, was raised by the remembrance of that first accident, which neither she nor I could ever forget, yet nevertheless she gave me a reception full of civility and sweetness: and though I saluted her as *Almeric* ought to salute her, and not as *Viridomar* might have saluted her, she appeared with less fierceness under the personage of *Polixena*, than of *Blesinda*. The generosity of her Soul without doubt produced this effect, and as she was but newly informed by *Theodmira*, that through the service I had rendred her I had lost the Liberty to return to my Country, and was reduced to seek for shelter elsewhere, she was willing to sweeten her natural fierceness, and make her struggle with the remembrance which gave her some trouble to see me, to let me understand that I was to expect all that from her acknowledgments, which *Theodmira* had made me to hope. Upon this consideration, without doubt looking with a favourable eye upon me; "I am very glad, *said she*, that you have not forgot us, and that you are so just to make your retreat amongst those persons that had cauted your disgrace. I hope you will not find them ungrateful, and that if you will see the King at his return, he will not give you any cause to repent your good deeds. "Your bounty (*said I unto her with a great deal of submission*) makes me too much ashamed of my self, and in lieu of expecting here marks of acknowledgments, I ought to demand pardon for those faults, which my ignorance of the truth made me commit. "I plainly see (*said she with a charming smile*) that you remember still *Blesinda*, but if they used any deceit towards you, accuse none but my Cousin who deceived you: "Ah Madam, (*said Theodmira unto her,*) you know that I did nothing but by your order, and besides that which you gave me in parting, not to permit you to be known in case of any encounter: tell me before *Almeric*, did you not afresh (as we were getting into the Chariots) command me not to discover you. "All that you say is very true, *said the Princess*, but you know that I had sufficient reason to do it, although I had none to be distrustful of *Almeric's* virtue; nor am I satisfied that he hath not dealt to us the same measure, for we have sufficient subject to distrust him, seeing him return alive, after he had taken the name of a person that was slain some days before. These words put me into a kind of confusion, and to augment it, *Theodmira* undertaking to speak, whilst this little disorder obstructed my reply; "To return the like measure (*said she to Polixena*) it must have fall'n out, that *Almeric* had been Prince *Viridomar*, as *Blesinda* was the Princess *Polixena*: and if you can remember it Madam, I wished it in your presence. "I know not in fine, *said I unto her*, if I am obliged to you for this wish, nor can I believe it at present to be very advantageous for me. "The Prince of the *Sueves* is in all things so excellent, *replied Theodmira*, that there are few persons can be injured by that wish; for besides the grandeur of his birth and the glory of his Actions, which fame hath spread through the world, all that he hath done in *Franconia* appears to me so great, that though in the last Combat his face was hid by the Viser of his Helmet, his person appeared so fair upon his Horse, and all his deportment so majestick; that I believe there are few men in the world, which might not wish themselves to be the same, or to resemble him. "I am too good a subject, *replied I*, to dispute with you the praises which you allow my Prince: but all these advantages will never make me envy his condition, till I am assured that he is not hated by the Princess *Polixena*. "I shall answer you sincerely, *said the Princess*, that the first Actions of the Prince of the *Sueves* against us, and the eager desire which he manifested to fight hand to hand with the King, had begot in me such a resentment against him, as might well have grown to a perfect hatred: but by the last Actions he perform'd in quitting the Combat against the King, and restoring peace to our Country, he might easily have reconciled himself to me, if in that short Letter, so much noised in the world, he had not writ something which displeas'd me. "Ah Madam (*said I unto her with an action sufficiently passionate*) is it possible that a person so divine as your self, could be capable of so great an injustice, and that you should nourish resentments against love, when you pardon injuries. "Although I could,

replied

“replied the Princeſſ, pardon the ſentiments which *Viridomar* hath for me, if it be true that they be ſuch as he hath publiſhed them, I ſhould never approve the confidence he had to declare them to the whole world, and with a boldneſs which poſſibly wants a precedent. This Action of my Prince, replied I, was ſomething extraordinary, but to him it was of an indiſpenſible neceſſity, if he meant to preſerve his reputation: for as it depended upon the quitting a Combat, already begun againſt ſo brave an Enemy as King *Pharamond*, and the abandoning a War to which he was obliged, by a double obedience to his father, and to his King; ſo he judged, that he could neither perform the one nor the other, without manifeſting to the world that great cauſe which conſtrained it, and was only capable to juſtify it. It is true, added *Theodomira*, that it was of great importance to him to juſtify an action which might cauſe rumours, and judgments ſo diſadvantageous to his honour. He did all then for his own glory, replied the Princeſſ, but he had done much more for his love, in caſe that he had really any, if through a reſpect to me he had not publiſhed it, but rather expoſed to hazard an honour, which his former Actions merited perhaps enough to protect. This which you ſay Madam is moſt true, replied I unto her, and *Viridomar* had doubtleſſy done well, to have ſacrificed all his honour, as he hath ſacrificed unto you all things elſe: but perhaps in a paſſion which might diſturb his mind, he did not ſo nicely argue it: nor is Reason always predominant in an amorous ſoul. I know not if it were a ſenſe of this crime, which made him to abſent himſelf from you, as ſoon as he had made known his love: but in what place ſoever his diſgraces make him at this time wander, if he believes that he hath diſpleaſed you, I am confident that he is there with more afflicted, than with the anger of the King his father. I am extremely ſorry, ſaid the Princeſſ, that what he did for us ſhould expoſe him to this diſgrace, but he will make it ceaſe by forgetting us, for the ſight of *Rofamond* will eaſily raze from his Soul, all that which renders him criminal to his father. I was going to reply to this diſcourſe, with an eagerneſs enough to have diſcovered me, but I moderated my ſelf, by appearing leſs paſſionate in the concerns of *Viridomar*: ſo that I was only content to ſay very coolly; I cannot believe Madam, that the ſight of *Rofamond* nor of any other beauty, can work the effect you conjecture, and ſeem to deſire: but although the beauty of *Rofamond* were capable, I know that the Prince of the *Sueves* will not ſeek there his remedy, and that he too much deſires the friendſhip of King *Pharamond* to become his Rival. I believe, ſaid then *Arteſinda*, that it will not be very difficult for him to acquire the amity of the King, and if the Princeſſ were as favourable to him as he, he would not be much unfortunate. You paſs this Verdict, ſaid the Princeſſ to her, upon the diſcourſe you heard the King make after he had read the little Note, but you know that he is too noble to have ſpoke in any other manner, and you ought to attribute what he ſo largely expreſſed at that inſtant, to an exceſs of joy which he received, in finding himſelf quit of a Rival to whom *Rofamond* was deſign'd: But methinks we ſpend too much time in ſpeaking of a perſon, who happily at preſent thinks not of us, and it would be as juſt to aſk *Almeric* of his own concerns, as to entertain him with *Viridomar*'s. I would not answer what I thought to this diſcourſe, for fear of diſcovering my ſelf too much: ſo that without oppoſition, I ſuffered them to change the ſubject of their diſcourſe, and having answered ſome queſtions which the Princeſſ asked me, concerning the reaſons which obſtructed my return into *Suevia* with the Army; I liſtned with a great deal of pleaſure, though with little deſign to benefit my ſelf, to the obliging offers ſhe made me, and to the aſſurance ſhe gave me, of the King's her Brother's acknowledgments, for the ſervice I had done her. She would not permit me to return to the lodging I had taken in the Town, but entreated *Theodomira* to take care of me as her Gueſt, ſince it was to her that I had firſt addreſſed my ſelf. *Theodomira* but too well acquitted her ſelf of her charge, and having provided me a lodging in the Caſtle, although ſhe knew me for no other than *Almeric*, yet my entertainment was little different from that which ſhe could have given to *Viridomar*.

Thus by a happineſs as great as I could deſire, was I obliged to remain near the Princeſſ, and from that time I had liberty to ſee her, if not ſo much as my paſſion made me to wiſh, as much at leaſt as civility did permit, or a man of my quality, to whom ſhe believed her ſelf extremely obliged, could demand: And dear Siſter it was by this ſight, and this converſation that my heart became more and more enflamed, and now perceiving a thouſand admirable qualities in this fair Princeſſ, which a ſlight enterview would not let me diſcover, I approv'd, as an effect of the beſt and moſt wary judgement in the world, all that which a paſſion born in an inſtant had made me perform. In effect Siſter, together with this charming beauty which had given the firſt ſtroke, and ſo much enchanted me, in a few days, I diſcovered an excellent wit, an admirable wiſdom, a generous bounty, a greatneſs of courage, not only much above her ſex, but ſuch as might ſhame ours in many reſpects, and a regularity in all her behaviour, which was much admired by the moſt prudent per-

sons; upon knowledge whereof my love augmented, and through that increase of my affection, all the fears I had conceived of the King's severity, and of the oppositions which the enmity of our houses might raise, gave place to the sole fear of not being able to make my self be loved by *Polixena*.

This was in effect the only perplexity of my Soul, for as I did not doubt, by the advantages of the person beloved, but my affection would be approved by the whole world; I did not longer think of justifying it, either in the opinion of men, or in the apprehension of the King my father: but employed all my thoughts to combat a heart, which I perceived naturally very distant, from all those sentiments which love might infuse. It was here I met the greatest difficulties, not knowing how I ought to behave my self under the personage I presented: for although I did not doubt but that I had given the Princess occasion, to discern the love I had for her, both by my words and by my Actions, in our two first encounters, and that she had received this knowledge of love without offence, through the knowledge she had of my error. I knew withal, that what was pardonable to *Almeric* from *Blefinda*, would not be Venial from *Polixena*, and it was no longer time to continue that which my ignorance, upon occasions that sprung from a strange adventure, had made her suffer, and that few would endure it at a time when the danger was past, and where the assistance of the defender was no more necessary: So that I found my thoughts in a suspense which way to go, and what to resolve, whether I should endeavour to please her under the Title of *Almeric*, or whether I should labour for *Viridomar*, by justifying his Actions to the Princess, and discoursing advantagiously unto her, both of the grandeur of his love and of the merit of his person. I knew too well, that whatever resentment she had for the good office *Almeric* had done her, (if it were possible that his person were not displeasing unto her) she would never humble her thoughts to so unequal a person: and truly methought I ought not to have desired it, since the interest of *Viridomar* more nearly touched me than that of *Almeric*, and that *Viridomar* ought not to suffer *Almeric* to have the advantage upon him, nor even permit him to enter into competition with him. To forget the interests and personage of *Almeric*, whose person had been known unto her, who had had the happiness to have done her so great a service, only to speak of *Viridomar*, whose face she had never seen, and to whom her sentiments seem'd no ways favourable, appeared to me somewhat severe, for that I lost by that means, all which my good fortune or that service might have gained upon her soul, and it might be surprizing to her, to see me act a personage so opposite to that which might be expected from a person, who had but too much manifested the passion he laboured with.

Amidst these contrarities, I found my self for some days following disturb'd, without being able to determine what I ought to do: But methought in fine, that it made for my purpose, to render the person of *Almeric* (if it were possible) grateful to the Princess, without making the least mention to her of his love, and to extol with my utmost eloquence, the love and merit of *Viridomar*, that so when she came to the true knowledge of me, she might encounter with that love the merit and rank of *Viridomar*, which she had conceived to the person of *Almeric*, and meet in the person *Almeric* (which had not been disagreeable to her) the birth and glories of *Viridomar*, which could be no ways displeasing to her. This was my thought, and this was likewise my resolution, and from that moment I searched all occasions to please her, and omitted none which might better her opinion of *Viridomar*, or represent his affections unto her. This proceeding was much more pleasing to her, than the contrary could have been, and although naturally she was unwilling to hear any speak of love, she lent an ear with much more patience, to the discourse of *Viridomar's* affection, than she could have afforded to the love of *Almeric*: And I confess, that though I had designed to have acted otherwise, I should not have had the confidence to have done it, knowing the Princess's spirit so fierce, and so nice withal upon this occasion, that all the advantages which I might have pretended, were not capable to have secured me from her anger, if I had run the hazard. She no ways admired at my new manner of proceeding, judging that through the knowledge of her quality, I had corrected those passionate inclinations which I had testified for *Blefinda*, and although she might possibly believe, that my soul was not fully released from a mischief which had shewn it self so vigorous in its birth, she was glad to see that my respect did predominate over my passion, and that in my proceedings she found no cause to exasperate her against a person, to whom she believed her self obliged. I found my self nevertheless at the beginning sufficiently puzzled to act this personage, for I fancied that I acted somewhat contrary to my self, in serving *Viridomar* to *Almeric's* prejudice, and that after I had felt my self wounded by this beauty, I acted something unworthy my courage, in pleading to her the interest of another. I likewise endeavoured to do *Viridomar* the best

offices to *Theodomira* which might be convenient; nor did I forget to justify as much as was possible, those wounds which he gave her Husband, by telling her, that in the heat of a Battel, no person could distinguish his Friends from his Enemies; that I my self, not knowing Prince *Priam*, might have acted in the same manner as the Prince of the *Sueves*; and that if he had been informed of his hurt, and known him (as I did) to be Husband to the Princess *Theodomira*, he would have questionless manifested a real sorrow for those wounds which he gave him. *Theodomira* hearkened most favourably to this justification, and as she was a very rational person, she told me, that these many years, both under the Reign of *Pharamond*, and of *Marcomire* his Father, she had been accustomed to see her Husband dangerously wounded, and that her resentments against the Prince of the *Sueves*, had lasted no longer than the danger which menaced her Husbands life, and that she had more easily left them, because his wounds were honourable, and that the person who gave them, could not be hated, nor with reason accused: and that for these reasons, I ought not only to believe that she had nothing of hatred for him, but assure my self, that none would be more favourable to him towards the Princess, than her self. And she was for the most part, really the first that put us upon the discourse, for the Princess, although she gave us liberty to speak our opinions, did never minister an occasion.

We walked one day in an Alley of the fair Gardens of that Palace, where the Princess keeping *Theodomira* on the one side, permitted me to walk by her on the other, when *Theodomira*, who knew well this discourse was not ungrateful unto me, surprisingly ask'd me, whether I did not know in what place the Prince of the *Sueves* resided at present; I demurred some time before I replied: but soon after, *I cannot tell you*, said I unto her, *where his body is at present, but I can assure you, that his heart is not much distant from you; and that it is never absent from the Princess. You speak of Viridomar's heart,* (said the Princess, with an inward smile) *as if you were in it; I doubt whether he would avouch a quarter of what you have said. I should be very imprudent,* replied I, *to have spoke in this manner, without having had knowledge of his inclinations; for besides that which the Prince hath evidenced by those proofs which nothing can convince, he hath sufficiently explained himself to me, to answer this point with boldness. Although this might have been true,* replied the Princess, *it may not be so at present; and since the question is concerning hearts, there happen in the hearts of men greater changes than this, in less time than you have been absent from the Prince of the Sueves. It is not long,* said I, *since I had the honour to be with him; and that which cannot happen in a thousand years, can much less fall out in so few days. As he is a Prince that delights in war, and prefers honour above all things,* said the Princess, *I have reason to believe that the grand hurry of those high affairs, and the pursuit of Renown, may drive all other thoughts from his Soul. Till now,* replied I, *he hath delighted in war, and evidenced a sufficient passion for glory; but Madam, for your sake he hath both renounced the one, and the other, and could not, in my opinion, declare it in a higher manner than he hath done. He hath put an end to the war among us,* added the princess, *but as you once told me, he hath not forgot his honour for our sake, and as I have also told you, he had much more obliged me, if he had taken less care of his reputation. Ah Madam,* said I, *permit me to tell you, that were Viridomar without reputation, he could not be worthy to think of you, and that if he should forget it, he could not merit your esteem. I do not say, Viridomar ought to forget his reputation for us, neither am I so unjust to desire it, but I believe his fame was so sufficiently established in the world, that there was no need of what, by your confession, he did for its preservation. You judge of his fame,* said I to her, *much more favourably than of his affection, and it were to be wished in his behalf, that you were more favourable to his love, than to his reputation. If we should believe you,* replied the Princess, *I fancy he would not be very unfortunate, for you defend his cause so well, that you give us occasion to judge, that you are rather come to propagate his interest, than to flee the rage and anger of your King. These words begat a blush, and Theodomira having observed it; Confess truly,* said she unto me, *and so much the more sincerely, for that the Princess, if it were true, would have no cause to disgust it, or to blame you for it. I shall not agree to that,* said the Princess, *for I had much rather that he only came hither to visit us, than to serve the Prince of the Sueves. I shall tell you then sincerely,* said I very promptly, *that it was only a desire to see you, which brought me hither; and although my disgrace were really such as I related it, it was not a design to take Sanctuary, which I might have taken in another place, but to review what I had seen, a beauty which my memory could not lose, which made me abuse that offer which the Princess Theodomira with so good a grace had made me. I did observe, that the Princess blush'd at these words, because without doubt they revived our first adventure in her memory, which still gave her some little reason to be ashamed; turning my self to the Princess Theodomira; But to answer sincerely,* said I, *to what you have demanded, I shall con-*

felt to you, upon the assurance you have given me: that really Prince Viridomar hath charged me with some Commissions for his service, and hath so well manifested unto me the excess of his love, that I dare answer as to the thoughts of his heart. All that you can imagine, Madam, of most tender and passionate can never come near what he hath represented unto me, and of necessity it must have touch'd me nearly, since it hath engag'd me to an employment so little conformable to my inclinations, which I should not have accepted for the world, if Bleilinda had continued Bleilinda, or that Almeric might have become Viridomar. These words, by which in speaking again for Almeric, I justified a manner of acting, towards which I had an aversion, made me to blush; and as I perceived that Polixena blush'd her self, In fine, Madam, said I, to divert her thoughts, for fear they might exasperate her, since you have made me confess so much, you must permit me to acquit my self of that which I owe my Prince, by telling you, that nothing but the love of Viridomar can be worthy of Polixena. I shall not represent unto you what his affection makes him at present to suffer; and though it is not much that he is deprived of a Father's favour, who will never pardon him, or that he should wander through the world, without knowing where to find the period of uncertain travels; yet it is severe, abandoning all things for your sake, that he dares not tell you, kneeling at your feet, that he dies for you; or that he should be ignorant, whether all this which he suffers for you, doth touch you with the least motive to pity, and that he should preserve a life which he hath given you, without knowing whether it be grateful unto you. I spoke in this manner, and through a passion which transported me, I was perhaps engaging my self farther than I ought, when the Princess looked upon me with an aspect which made me fear, that she had some suspicion of the truth: whilst that fear interrupted my speech; In truth, Almeric, said she, you acquit you well of the Commissions which are given you; and the Prince of the Sueves will be very unfortunate, if such an intercessor be unprofitable unto him. He hath much more to expect, replied I, from his own, than from my intercession; for he hath such a reputation in the world, as may easily persuade you, that he is not altogether destitute of merit. You speak modestly of his desert, replied the Princess, and exceedingly aggravate his love, whereas you ought to speak less of his love, and to be more just to his merit. It is Madam, said I, because I am charged to speak of his love, and not of his desert; and if you find me modest in speaking of his merit, you may likewise judge, that I speak not half that of his love, which he himself would persuade you, were he so happy as to be in Almeric's place. It is neither requisite, replied the Princess, for him, nor me, that he should be in Almeric's place; and surely you might wish things more advantageous to him, and less displeasing to me. These words uttered somewhat fiercely, suddenly struck me with a kind of grief, and keeping the silence which they impos'd on me, for some time: Theodomira taking her time, I pray Sir, said she, be pleas'd to clear a doubt which hath given me much disturbance, and to many other persons as well as my self, and tell me whether Prince Viridomar had not seen the Princess elsewhere, than upon the Scaffold, where she was seated the day of the Combat, and where, that moment he evidenced the effect which this sight had produced upon his Soul. This question, for which I was no way prepared, though I had much reason to have been so, entangled me more than all they had said to me, since I was near the Princess; and being altogether ignorant what answer to make, I remained for a time somewhat amazed; but Theodomira importuning me to answer: I know not, said I to her in fine, why you should rest astonish'd at this effect of so admirable a Beauty, which I hold able to produce much greater wonders. "I am of the same persuasion, replied Theodomira, concerning the Princess Beauty; but besides, having an Enemy so formidable as King Pharamond before him, that it was very difficult for him to have a moment free to receive such an impression, that were persons upon the Scaffold, which did hear the Prince of the Sueves say, "looking upon the Princess, Oh ye Gods! 'tis she her self: and these words seem'd to "denote sufficiently, that this was not the first time he had seen her. I cannot thereupon, said I, answer you precisely; and were there any secret which my Prince had confided to me, you might well pardon my not revealing it. "He is very happy, said the Princess then to me, "in having a friend like you, so faithful and passionate for his interests. I am Madam, said I, much more than you can believe, and would willingly forget all the interests of Almeric, for those of Viridomar. We had also more discourse, the remaining time we were together, and I often found my self much entangled by the questions they asked me, against which I was not sufficiently forearm'd.

In the interim I had observ'd, and more and more dayly did observe, the Princess to be touch'd with a sensible grief, and that it was not without much violence to her self she strove to dissemble it. I likewise saw very much in the visage of Theodomira, and that a kind of sadness was spread through the whole Palace. I shar'd immediately in their grief,

though

though the cause of their sadness was to me unknown, and I had in fine so great a disturbance, that I could no longer hide it; and as nothing could grieve *Polixena* without wounding me to the heart; I could not but observe, that often entering her Chamber, I found her eyes red with weeping, and that often through a remembrance which made her shed some tears, she would withdraw into her Closet, either to dry them, or give them a free course, without being much more cruelly afflicted than she herself felt; and having one day found her in the Closet of *Theodmira* in this sad condition, with only her and *Artesinda* in her company, and some time observed with an insupportable torment, the endeavours she used at my arrival, to conceal her afflictions; not being able in fine to master that which this sight had caused, I cast my self at the Princesses feet, and intreated her to pardon the passion that I had for her interest, which did not permit me, without dying, to be longer ignorant of the cause of her grief, if it were such at least as was lawful for a faithful person to enquire into. The Princess made me presently to rise, but continued some time without speaking to me, wiping her eyes with greater liberty, and having in fine consulted *Theodmira* by a look, and judged by her eyes, that she believed me worthy of a trust, she told me, That the grief I observed in her, (which she had endeavoured by the King's Command, and for other reasons to conceal as much as was possible) was caused by the imprisonment of Prince *Marcomire* her Brother, a Prince great and amiable for a thousand fair qualities, to whom she was bound by the most tender, and most powerful amity, which blood could introduce: that he was a Prisoner in *Bohemia*, not a fair Prisoner of War, but through the baseness and ingratitude of the King of the *Cimbrians*, who caused him to be seized in one of his Cities, where he remained in cure of those wounds he had received in fighting against *Gondemar*, and the *Burgundians*, for the liberty of the Princess of *Suevia*; and she told me in fine, Sister, the entire story (as it was reported to the King her Brother) of all that had happened to *Marcomire*, and made me understand, that it was only for your interest, and for those succours (which with the price of his dearest blood he had given you) that he was in the power of the King of *Cimbria*. She added, with a sufficient confidence of my fidelity, that it was for this reason King *Pharamond* was departed *Peapolis*, to march towards the Frontiers with a part of his Cavalry; and that he found himself reduced to cruel extremities, between his obligations to relieve a Brother, and his insupportable displeasure to war against the Father of *Kesmond*; that upon his departure, he had entreated her not to publish this accident, and to conceal her grief (for divers considerations) as much as was possible, and that for any other than my self, of whose good intentions she was conscious, she had made some difficulties of disobeying his orders.

This discourse of the Princess, which she accompanied with divers remarkable circumstances, made me as sensibly afflicted, as I had ever been in my life, as well by a participation of her grief, as through the necessity I saw of absenting my self from her, to search out occasions of serving her in the person of her Brother: But besides this, dear Sister, I must confess, that I thought my self thereto likewise obliged by your interest, and although I had not been amorous of *Marcomire's* Sister, I had nevertheless hazarded all things to relieve a Prince, that had so generously exposed his life for your defence, and that was seized against all the Laws of Honour by the King of the *Cimbrians*. Neither did I pause one moment upon the resolution which I took, but addressing my self to the Princess as soon as she had done speaking; *I am too much obliged to your bounty*, said I unto her, *for the honour you have done me, by informing me of the cause of your afflictions; and I assure you, that it passes from your Soul to mine, with a violence no less vigorous than those which afflicted you. It is not by words that I must testify it, for words would be very feeble, and weak upon such an important occasion, but because the service which you might receive from Almeric would be little considerable, I shall arm a person in your quarrel, more powerful than my self: And in the midst of this misfortune, I praise the Gods for the opportunity they give the Prince of Suevia, either to render you so grateful a service, or to die in the attempt of performing it; had he nothing of affection for you, he were obliged in honour to succour a Prince, who was only a prisoner for the services he had rendered his Sister; and if he did not owe in honour this succour to *Marcomire*, you might easily judge what his love would constrain him to undertake for the Brother of *Polixena*. Quite forsaken as he is, he hath yet some friends, and not only might arm a part of *Suevia* in his quarrel, if he pleased, but find as much obedience in the Army, as the King his Father could find there, and possibly he will put himself in a condition to go and break open the prison of *Marcomire*, malgré all the power and puissance of the King of *Cimbria*. If he be so happy as to render you this service, he will supplicate you to receive it without reluctancy, from a person, to whom the least opportunities to serve you, are a thousand*

times more dear than his life; and if he forfeits his life in this design, I conjure you on his behalf, to receive the gift he will make you thereof, as a thing that may merit the honour to be accepted by you. I know in what corner of the earth to find him, and I should depart this very instant about that design, had I but day enough remaining to further my journey: But I shall take horse to morrow by break of day, and I give you my parol, upon which you may build an assurance, that Viridomar will either restore you Marcomire, or lose his life in the design. I pronounced these words with so passionate a behaviour, and with such a forgetfulness of the personage I presented, that I have oftentimes admired, how such intelligent persons as I discoursed with, could so long escape the knowledge of me; but, were it because their thoughts were very distant from the truth, or because the Princess her mind was taken up by her grief, I had the fortune to remain undiscovered.

The Princess nevertheless, looked upon me with a countenance which denoted the astonishment my bold promises had given; and after some few moments of silence, *I am too much obliged to you* (said she) *for the passion which you testify for my interest, and as I am much engaged to you already, I should be exceeding glad likewise to owe you for my Brother's liberty, but as it is not perhaps so easie to perform, as you believe it, I am not of opinion that you should leave us upon that design, nor that you go to find out the Prince of Suevia, to give him a trouble which he will not happily entertain, with that willingness as you imagine: it is not but that I believe (through the good opinion I have of you) you are very well ascertain'd of all that you tell me, and that the Prince of Suevia is sufficiently generous, to undertake things most difficult, and most dangerous; but as in that design there may be much more hazard and danger than you can foresee, I should be very sorry to expose therein the person of so great a Prince, or to trespass on his generosity, and perhaps unsuccessfully.* "I well perceive," said I very sorrowfully unto her, that you have no very good intention to do justice to that poor Prince, and that he hath very much to suffer, before he can touch your heart; but I do not despair, but this opportunity may contribute to his happiness, and whatever grief I resent in absenting my self so soon from you, I die with impatience to see him flye to those opportunities which may as much please you, as his actions hitherto have displeas'd you. Finishing these words, I departed from the place where I was; and though the Princess and *Theodmira* used some persuasions to detain me, I got privately from the Closet, to go and prepare my self for my voyage; after I had demanded liberty of the Princess, to take my leave of her that night, that I might depart the earlier next morning. I went to prepare all things for my departure, which would have mortally afflicted me, had I not divided my thoughts between the grief I had to absent my self from *Polixena*, and the hope (with which I flattered my self) of doing her a service, which might be grateful to her, and which might give me an assurance of presenting my self to her in my real person, and of acquiring King *Pharamond's* friendship, which ought of necessity to be gained, if I desired to be happy. It was not but that I foresaw great difficulties in the deliverance of Prince *Marcomire*, neither could I imagine by what means to perfect my design, without carrying matters to a great extremity; but I was determin'd, if easie means failed me, to make use of the most rigid extremes, and either perish in the attempt, or bring it (as I had lately promised) to a successful period: but for that time I had neither the trouble to employ my self therein, nor to depart *Fenuse*; for an hour after I had quitted the Princess, *Genebaud*, Son of *Priam* and *Theodmira*, a Knight full of valour and merit, who made himself known by many fair deeds under King *Pharamond*, arriv'd thither from the Frontiers where he had left the King, and brought news of *Marcomire's* liberty, who had (as it was said) been delivered by unknown persons in Arms, whilst they were conducting him by the King of the *Cimbrians's* order, from *Egitina* to *Marobuda*. This news restored joy to the Princess (as much at least as the absence of the King her Brother, and the part which she shared in the misfortune of his amours, might give her) and at the very same instant, she had the bounty to send one of her Train to inform me of it, and to assure me on her behalf, that the news was the more grateful, because it would obstruct my departure, and the trouble to which I design'd to engage my self. As I could not omit being very sensible of all her concerns, so I immediately shared a part of her joy; and if I saw my self on the one side, deprived of those hopes to render her so great a service, I saw my self on the other enfranchis'd from that grief I had conceived, to absent my self from her, at a time wherein I made so delightful and pleasant a stay, and from those troubles I was casting my self into, which would have expos'd me to all the hatred of the King my Father. As soon as I returned to the Princess, who made me a reception much more obliging than she had ever done before, and retaining a fresh memory of the offers which I had lately made her, she made me larger acknowledgments for this, than

for all which I had done till that time, or had any intention to do in her service. *Genebaud*, was present, who having long since from his Mother and Sister, understood what I had done in their service, and having had no little desire to see me, through the advantageous character they had given him of my person, he carressed me in the highest manner as that time (the Princess being present) could permit, and an hour after in his Mothers apartment he gave me all those proofs of his esteem which he could possibly give, and demanded my friendship with the best grace, and in the most accomplish'd manner in the world.

The next morning, Prince *Sunnon* came from *Peapolis* to *Fenuse* to visit his Sister, and *Ibere* and *Meroveus* with him, all Princes like *Priam* and *Genebaud*, of the Royal Family of the *Franks*, whom King *Pharamond* had dispatcht with orders from the frontiers to make great Levies, and with these, divers other personages very considerable both for their birth and merit. The famous *Priam* remained still at *Peapolis*, where with *Bisogastus* he gave orders for the preparations of war, which in the opinion of all the world was pouring down in a short time upon *Franconia*, not only by the united powers of the Kings of *Cimbria*, and of *Suevia*, *Pharamond's* most cruel and inveterate enemies, but by the forces of divers other Kings, whom *Rosamond's* beauty had attracted to her Father's interest, and armed against their common Rival.

The Princess presented me to her brother, who by the relation he had had of the timely relief I gave his Sister, was already well affected towards me, and shewed me all those marks of acknowledgment and esteem, that I could have possibly expected from a well bred Prince: I received them not as *Viridomar*, but as *Almeric* ought to receive them: and besides that the merit of *Sunnon*, who for his goodly aspect, his valour, and all other fair qualities to none inferiour, was sufficient to render them very considerable; you may judge that I priz'd them much more as coming from the brother of *Polixenz*. I likewise tendred to *Ibere* and *Meroveus*, all those civilities that might be thought due from *Almeric*, and certainly through those advantages which raised them no less than their birth beyond the vulgar, I paid this duty without reluctancy, and especially to *Ibere*, whose valour I had tryed in the second Battel I gave *Pharamond*. *Sunnon* immediately assured me (as the Princess and *Theodora* had often before done) of what I had to hope, from the acknowledgements of the King his Brother: and finding somewhat in my person which did not displease him, he was unmindful of nothing that was probable to oblige me to him, offering me, upon the assurance which he had that it would be well approved, not only a secure retirement in his Court, but likewise employments enough considerable for the quality of *Almeric*, to make him forget his grief for what he had lost in *Suevia*. I answered these generous and obliging offers, in the same manner as I had replyed to those of the Princess, and nevertheless in such a manner, that I gave him only cause to believe that the engagements that I had to the Prince of *Suevia*, hinder'd me from accepting them. This fair Company met that night at the Princesses lodgings, where their first discourses were of the imprisonment and freedom of *Marcomire*, who after he had been delivered by unknown persons, whom those that conducted him took for *Burgundians*, had not as yet appeared in any place from whence they could receive any tydings of him, although he had had time sufficient (if he had taken that way) to have returned into *Franconia*: From these discourses of *Marcomire*, they passed to those of *Viridomar*, and as that which I had acted in *Suevia*, either in making war, or in concluding of peace, had been sufficiently noised to give matter of discourse, the discourse continued upon that subject, and Prince *Sunnon* addressing himself to the Princess with an extraordinary grace; *In truth Sister*, said he, *beauty hath large advantages, and considering what yours hath done for your Country, you have reason to respect it: for in fine, Franconia had never seen so great an Enemy, nor the King never cop'd with Viridomar's equal.* *Polixenz* made no reply to these words, and because the whole Company looked upon me as a person interested in what was said of my Prince, I judged my self obliged to a reply: and addressing my self to Prince *Sunnon*; *It was rather my Lord* (said I unto him) *the good fortune of Suevia, than that of Franconia, which armed a beauty in our favour: and as there is no glory which ought not to yield to Pharamond's, that of Viridomar was in great danger, if love had not decided the Combat.* *I believe*, replyed *Sunnon*, *they would have put themselves to no small trouble, and that the victory would not have been easily obtained: But if one may credit the testimony of King Pharamond, there is nothing in the world more great than Viridomar; and for my self by what I have seen of him in two battels, and in particular Combats, I confess that all his Actions have charm'd me. I perfectly hated him some days for the wounds of Priam, said *Genebaud*, and I would have given a part of my blood, to have fronted him in the battel. *You might happily have been quickly weary of it* (said the valiant *Ibere*) *if at least your fortune had been like unto mine, for although I had the glory to sustain some time the whole force of his valour, it was with the price of my blood,**

and with so little advantage to my self, that if the Combat had lasted any thing longer, the event on my part was much to have been feared. I have heard the Prince of Suevia speak of it, (said I to Ihere) in another manner than your modesty permits you to discourse it, and I know he was as much satisfied of your valour, as he would rest unsatisfied of his own, if he knew it had procured him the hatred of Genebaud. Although I had conceiv'd a hatred, replied Genebaud, it could not have been so lasting, for that which Viridomar hath since that time done, must of necessity have razed it from my memory. As for my self, added Meroveus, I have not only admired his valour, and his martial knowledge (although I may say he arrested victory which was not accustomed to waver before Pharamond) but all that which appeared of his person, both in the general and the particular Combat, although I only saw him in Armour and on horseback; I found his carriage so noble, his form so majestic, and all his actions so graceful; that according to my opinion there were few could equal him, and those that have seen his face say, that there are few persons in the world of a better aspect.

Although I heard my self flattered by these discourses, I had nevertheless a secret joy to hear my self praised before Polixena, on whose soul I ardently desired an advantageous impression of Viridomar might be stamped; and as a fear of discovering my self, did not permit me through modesty to oppose the praises of Viridomar, nor my modesty to maintain a discourse so much to my advantage; I took a medium between both, which might neither render me suspected, nor give me any cause to be ashamed; and addressing to those which had spoken of me so well; *The Prince of Suevia is very fortunate*, said I, *to have merited that esteem you all affirm to have for him, and although you were not in your selves entirely perswaded, of all that good you speak of him; you could not discourse it before the Princess, without rendering him the best office he could ever hope from your generousities.* As for my self, said Prince Sunnon, *I shall render him both that and all others with an excess of joy, as often as fortune shall favour me with an opportunity, and on the other side I am fully perswaded that my Sister cannot make a nobler choice than this which her fortune or her merit (if you will so have it) hath made for her, so that I believe I may always serve the Prince of Suevia, in her bearing without offence.* Some may displease without offending, said the Princess to Sunnon, *though I believe Brother you will do neither the one nor the other. I would not, replied Sunnon, displease you to pleasure any one of my friends, but to oppose a little this scrupulous severity, which we have so often quarrelled with you for, for so great a merit as Viridomar's, I would do it Sister, without any reluctancy.* You ought at least (replied the Princess with a little shew of anger) *stay till he employed you, and perhaps you would not do much for him, although you effected all that you could desire.* I was making a repartee to this discourse, when Theodmira prevented me, *But Almeric, said she, I pray you tell us if it be true, that Prince Viridomar hath so good an aspect as fame reports, for as you know we have only seen the proportion of his body.* I found my self hindred from answering to this discourse, for those reasons I told you, and I was searching some means to disentangle my self, when Sunnon resumming the discourse; *“Rather Madam (said he to Theodmira) ask Almeric if Viridomar have as good an aspect as himself, for if he have, he doth not yield in that particular to any man in the world.* This discourse of Sunnon assisted me to withdraw my self from the question of Theodmira, and taking upon Almeric all the shame which it could possibly cast upon me; *“I should make you understand, said I to Sunnon, very ill, the aspect of Viridomar by this comparison, for those that have seen him may certifie you, that there is very little between that of Almeric and his: They made me several other discourses upon this subject, of which in the end I found my self weary, fearing to fall into some mistake, or surprize to discover me, and particularly when I was necessitated to answer Sunnon to the same question which Theodmira had proposed some days before, about the beginning or rise of my love: to whom as near as I could, I gave the same answer, which I had before done to Theodmira.*

The liberty of Marcomire in the mean time, although they had no news of his abode, had banish'd the extremity of grief from the Princess, but the absence of the King, and an absence which was attributed to such cruel causes, did not permit an entry for joy, but left still sufficient subject for sadness and inquietude. It was this which deterred that fair company, from giving the Princess those divertisements, which she would have gratefully received in a more happy season. Prince Sunnon nevertheless obliged me to be of the party he made to chase a wild Bull, that had some time remained in the Forrest of Fenuse, which had made himself sufficiently known about the Country, by the ill success of all those attempts that they had made to kill him. Prince Sunnon knowing how long this Beast had rendred himself formidable to all the Hunters; was pricked by honour to this chase, and having commanded a great inclosure to be made, about the place where they reported him to be; he invited the whole Court to this divertisement. The Princess had no mind to go, by reason of the stories

stories which she had heard of this terrible beast : but the Prince her brother told her, she need not to fear any thing, with such a guard as she would have that day to accompany her, and that remaining in her Chariot without the Toils, she was expos'd to no danger : and in fine, because she had a great deal of kindness for him, he oblig'd her to it. By break of day he presented me a very fair horse, which he entreated me by the person that brought him to mount that day for his sake. I had rarely seen a statelier beast, and the richness of the Saddle and Harnes were not ill suited to his handsome shape. So that finding my self so well mounted for that day, and knowing that the Princess was of the company, and that for the Ladies sakes, the Knights would very gallantly accoutre themselves ; I was resolv'd if it were possible, to appear grateful to the eyes of *Polixena* : so that having brought rich suits with me, (for you know Sister I ever took a delight in bravery) I wore one that day, to which for a day of hunting or war, nothing could be added for its Gentleness, and very little for its richness. The Cassock was of a Tissue of gold and silk very light, but all the seams were embroidered with Pearls and little Emeralds at certain distances, and at the bottom of the sleeve, which reach'd below the Elbow, and the Cassock round about was set forth with the same imbelliments : and it was fastned by Clasps of fair and large Emeralds. The Chain of gold wherein my sword hung, appeared on the top of my shoulder suitable to my Cassock. The Hilt of my Sword was enriched with the same stones, and my head was covered with Plumes of white and green feathers, which reach'd almost to my shoulders. My habit was not too magnificent for the Prince of *Suevia*, but it was a little too noble for *Almeric*, and those that saw me in it were somewhat surpris'd. *Sunnon* and *Theodomira* thought them very gallant and fine, and as the Horse which *Sunnon* had given me, had much vigour and mettle ; I managed him in the riding with such a grace, to the end I might be the more view'd and observ'd by the Princess, and flattered my self with an opinion that she could discern nothing in me, that day of a bad deportment. I speak in this manner only before you, Sister, for before others I always speak of my self with more modesty.

I rode a long time by the side of the Princesses Chariot, in which *Theodomira*, *Artesinda*, and *Laomira* daughter to *Basogastus*, a fair Lady and of much merit, were seated with her, keeping incessantly my eyes fix'd upon that fair Visage which I adored, and when I was constrained to withdraw them to speak to *Sunnon* or other that spoke to me, it was always with a sigh or some other mark of the perplexity it gave me. The Princess spoke very often to me, and almost every time I retired at some distance from them, I observ'd *Theodomira* would, looking upon me, whisper her in the ear : I knew not well what judgment I ought to make thereof, neither did I well know what I ought then to wish : whether I should desire that *Almeric's* person might be favourably regarded, to the prejudice of *Viridomar's* affection ; or that the love and quality of *Viridomar*, might cause a forgetfulness of *Almeric's* person. When we were arriv'd at that part of the Forrest where the Toyles were extended, *Sunnon* caus'd the Chariot of the Princess and others that follow'd her, to be plac'd in a station from whence they might receive the pleasure of the Chase : her Chariot was open on every side, and having left some horsemen to guard her ; we entred into the Toyles to search the wild Bull. Now because *Sunnon's* Hunters had a great guess at the place where he was, we had not much difficulty to find him : and being at first affrighted with the noise of the Horns and the Dogs, for a long time he ran about without seeking other defences than by flight. But finding himself in fine penn'd up, both by the dogs and the Hunters, and that before the Toyles which obstructed his passage, he saw himself surrounded by men and dogs on all sides ; he turned head furiously, and having roared in a most terrible manner, he ran against all that resist'd his passage, and trampling over the Bellies of those dogs which he encountred, against whom he disdain'd to employ his other forces ; he turned his utmost fury upon the men, and encountering one of *Sunnon's* pikemen, whom fear had already disorder'd he bore him to the ground with the push of his Horn upon the stomach, of which he instantly dyed : and running upon others with his head stooping, he overthrew another in the same condition, and slew *Meroveus's* his horse with a stroke of his horn upon the flank. *Ibere* without fear with his Sword in his hand, came in between *Meroveus* and the Bull, which immediately made at him : when Prince *Sunnon* made full speed towards him, after having as it were desied him with a loud hollow, passing by him he wounded him with his sword in the Flank, which did not enter very far by reason the sword slipt along his side, but caus'd nevertheless much blood to spout forth, and so enraged the furious Bull, that leaving *Ibere* and *Meroveus* to pursue him that had wounded him, he overtaking him just upon the instant he was turning his horse to make at him, he thrust his two Horns with so much force in the Horse's breast, that the wounded Horse mounted on his hind feet, and overthrew himself

upon the Prince. By good fortune I was near him, to do him the same office which *Ibere* had done to *Meroveus*, and striking the Bull upon the Flank, as he was making at him; I overthrew him with the blow upon some brakes on the other side: and as he rose again to come at me, I gave him so violent a stroke with my Sword upon the Nose; as split a part of his Nostril. I know not whether this wound astonished him, but instead of making at me again, or at Prince *Sunnon*, who was now risen by the help of *Genebaud*, he turned head another way: and having opened a passage through all those which opposed him, he ran to that side where we had left the Princess, broke the Toyles near the place where she was, and directed his course straight to the Chariot, as if he had been guided by some fatal star. But as I had by good fortune, an extraordinary swift beast under me, seeing him take that way I followed him so near, that I got there almost as soon as he: and redoubling my course with a great shout, when I saw him coming near the Chariot, through the cowardise of her defenders whom fear had made run away; I rode in with such a flying speed, that I arrived in time between the Chariot and the Bull, just as he was running his terrible head into the boot of the Princess's Chariot. My horse received the main blow upon his shoulder, for I had only a small scratch on the thigh: but I gave the Bull at the same instant, such a strong and fortunate blow upon the neck; that my sword, whose edge was exceeding sharp, and managed by an arm whose strength was redoubled by love; struck his head clear off, and it fell amongst the wheels of the Chariot. My horse at the same time fell from under me, but not so suddenly, but that I had time to slip my feet out of the Stirrups, and so throw myself upon my feet. But when I turned myself towards the Chariot, on which my thoughts were always fix'd, I saw that the Princess through the fright she had received, had almost lost her senses, and neither knew nor saw any thing that had past. *Laomira*, who sat at the same side of the Chariot, was in a perfect swoon: but *Theodomira* and *Artesinda*, who were on the other side, and for that reason much less exposed to danger; were in a better condition, and seeing the danger now past, turned themselves to the Princess to assist her. I approach'd her like a person almost distracted, through the sad condition I found her in, and *Theodomira* who had seen with no small content, the happy blow I had newly given in her defence, looking upon me in the most obliging manner in the world; *Ab Almeric*, said she, *Is it then you that the Gods always send to our relief?* She said no more by reason of the sad condition wherein she saw the Princess, and believing it only an effect of her fright, which would be soon over, she desired us to take her out of the Chariot, and to carry her to a fountain, which was not twenty paces distant from thence. You may easily believe, Sister, that I did not suffer myself to be much importun'd, to be once more serviceable to her: but when that I had taken her in my Arms, and was carrying her out of the Coach, she came to herself, opened her eyes, and entirely recovered both her Senses and knowledge. She cast her eyes immediately upon me, and seeing that I yet embraced her in my Arms, she pushed me gently away with her hand, flinging her self towards *Theodomira*, and looking upon me in a languishing manner; *How Almeric*, said she, *must I find my self again in your Arms, am I never to receive any relief from you, but I must purchase it with so much shame.* I was opening my mouth to justify myself, but *Theodomira* prevented me, and briefly informed her of the condition wherein she was, and the reason that brought her into my Arms: but in justifying me she made her likewise understand, that she was obliged to me for her life: and shewing her the head of the wild Beast, and my dead horse near the Chariot, she made her sensible of the importance of what I had newly perform'd in her service. *Polixena* listened favourably to her discourse, and then gently turning her eyes towards me; *Well Almeric*, (said she with a low voice) *could you also wish Viridomar the happiness of this encounter, and had you rather that I should be indebted to him than to Almeric for the saving of my life.* I knew not well what answer to make to this question, neither had I time to do it, for immediately Prince *Sunnon*, *Ibere*, *Genebaud*, *Meroveus*, and all the whole company came about the Chariot. They had all seen what I had performed though at a distance, but when they saw nearer hand the Bull's head, and my Horse killed by the terrible blow he had receiv'd, they bestowed a thousand praises upon the brave Action I had performed, and admired the happiness I had to meet the Beast so precisely, at that necessary moment of time for the Princess's safety. But Prince *Sunnon* did not satisfy himself, with giving me these praises, nor by testifying an admiration of so extraordinary a success, but remembering what I had done for him, when the Bull had dismounted him, and cast him from his horse, he thanked me as the preserver of his life: and declared to the Princess in expressions full of acknowledgment, how in the same day I had saved both their lives, and that they were obliged to praise the Gods, for having sent me into *Franconia*, for the defence and safeguard of their family. He accompanied these words with all the Caresses, that a noble resentment might oblige him

to render, and though I felt them as *Viridomar*, I always receiv'd them as *Almeric*, and answered both his thanks and his praises with all the modesty that was possible. The Princess remembring the danger to which her self, the Prince and *Meroveus* had been expos'd, and touch'd with compassion for the death of the two men, and the wounds of some others, whom she had seen carried off in a bad condition, blamed the Prince for his great imprudence, in committing them to so great a peril, and recalled to his memory how unwilling she was, that he should proceed in so dangerous a divertisement: Nor did the Prince say any thing else in his excuse, but that he was put upon this design by the Gods without doubt, for the glory of *Almeric*, to the end, she might be oblig'd for her life to a person, to whom she had been formerly so endebted, for some thing more precious. "It is not necessary, said then the Princess, that you remember me of those obligations I owe him, since they are much too great to be forgotten. In speaking these words, methought she look'd very favourably upon me; but a while after, there appeared a blush upon her cheeks, which I attributed to a remembrance of that adventure, which made her look upon me with a kind of shamefacedness. I mounted a while after, a Horse which *Timanthus* presented me, and shewing the Prince the Steed he had given me, in the bad condition it was; "I am very much troubled, my Lord, said I, to have lost him so soon, for you may believe, that coming from you, and having done me the service he did to day, he must have been always very much valued and esteem'd by me. "I hope, said the Prince, that you will not refuse another from the same hand; and I could heartily wish, that you would likewise receive all that would be offer'd you in the Court of King *Pharamond*. I thank'd him, shewing several signs of my satisfaction, but nevertheless, like a person that did not testify any design to abuse his offers. A while after, *Theodomira* calling me, I went to the Chariot, and because all others, either to favour a stranger, or to recompense the action I had lately performed, gave me way, I rode by the Boot of the Chariot as long as the way would permit it; and whilst I was searching in the fair eyes of the Princess, for that sweetness which was the entertainment of my life, *Theodomira*, who really loved me, as if I had been her own Son, looking on me with all the marks of a tender affection, "How much do I rejoyce, *Almeric*, said she, that we owe to you, rather than to any other person in the world, this last obligation: And if it pleas'd the Gods, I would that you were Prince *Viridomar*. "If that change, replied I very readily, could render my condition to the Princess more happy, I should wish it with all my Soul, but if it did not work that effect, nothing could make me desire it. "Remain still *Almeric*, said the Princess unto me, for after those obligations you have laid upon me, it would be difficult for me to have those sentiments for *Viridomar*, which I have for you. "If you did him justice, said I, you would put those services which all the world owes, and all the world would have pay'd you as well as my self, in comparison with what he hath done for you, or at least, with the love he hath for you. The Princess turn'd towards *Theodomira* with an inward smile, and *Theodomira* looking upon her with an action little different from hers, *Well Madam*, said she very softly to her, can you apprehend any thing by this? But *Sunnon* and the other company, then approaching the Chariot, caus'd the discourse to be general, all the remainder of the way. When we were got home, Prince *Sunnon*, who had caus'd the head of the wild Bull to be brought along, order'd it to be fasten'd to one of the Gates of the Castle, with these words engraven upon the stone which was under it.

To the Honour of the Sueve, *Almeric*, who sav'd by his valour, the lives of *Sunnon*, and of *Polixena*.

And because the urgent affairs of the King his Brother, constrain'd him to return next morning, he testified unto me all the remainder of that day his acknowledgments by so many real marks, as made me almost asham'd; and the next morning, one of his Grooms brought me two Horses for a present (handsomer, if possible, than that he gave me the day precedent) with a Suit of Armour most richly gilt, most excellently tempered, yet exceeding light, the workmanship of a famous Artist, who in his return from *Greece*, and passing through *Germany*, had made some stay at *Francfort*. I would not refuse this present from the Prince, which I might have accepted from him, had my real condition been known, but because I delighted as much in giving as he, and for that in these occasions, it was very difficult for me to belye my inclinations, not daring, under the figure of *Almeric*, return a present to *Sunnon*: I gave the Gentleman of his Horse, a Sword, whose Hilt was enamell'd with precious stones, which certainly far exceed'd in value the present of *Sunnon*,

and desired him to keep it as a mark of the esteem I made of the present he brought, and of the merit of his person; the Gentleman shewed the Sword to his Prince, who admired to see such presents from a banish'd person, and laugh'd perhaps at the boldness of one of that quality wherein I appeared, who seem'd, as it were, to contend with the liberality of so great a Prince. He confirm'd to me oftentimes before his departure, the obliging offers he made me, and the Princes *Ibere*, *Geneband* and *Meroveus*, who were to return with him, forgot nothing which might evidence the great esteem they had for me. *Summon* entreated me not to quit this retirement for any other in the world, whilst the condition of my fortune kept me at a distance from my Country; and I told him that I should be constrain'd for some days to remain here, but that I did not despair to see him suddenly, and remember him of the good intentions he had testified towards Prince *Viridomar*.

After *Summon's* departure, I had more liberty to entertain the Princess, than during the time of his abode, and for that she treated me as well as I could desire; I should have been too happy, if she would have done as much for *Viridomar*, as she had done for *Almeric*; or rather, if I had received under my real form, those favours I received under a borrowed shape. The reflection which I daily made on the little solidity of my happiness, hinder'd me from enjoying it entirely, and on the other side, I saw it could be of no long continuance; and that it was very difficult for me to make a long stay in a place, where I had made my self more publick than I intended, without daily exposing my self to the danger of being known, either by my own proceedings in pleading (as I daily did) for *Viridomar*, or by the arrival of some person that might have seen me, or by a thousand other accidents which might discover me. And therefore, foreseeing it might so happen, I took up my resolution, for I really believed, that though they found me unknown in the Territories and in the House of King *Pharamond*, (an action in Politicks to be condemn'd) the King of the *Franks* would not accuse me to have come with any design against his State, nor with any intention which might not excuse me to a Prince, to whom the power of love was not altogether unknown. However, I observed, that what the Princess had foretold me, that she could not see me without real shame and continual bashfulness; and although in the remembrance of the services I had done her, she look'd favourably upon me, and us'd me more kindly than all other men that came near her; I often perceived a kind of blush upon her face, and always a reservedness in her actions, that she often told me the contrary, to what her eyes seem'd to tell me, and that the remembrance of her obligations, made her act some things against her inclination. I one day went to meet her in the Garden where she usually walk'd, and where after I had view'd many of the Allies, I found some of her women, who had all affection enough for me, near a fair fountain, and they imagining that I look'd for her, shewed me the place where she was, in a close Arbour at the end of the Alley, and told me that *Artesinda* and *Laomira* were with her: I immediately directed my feet thither, or rather, I made them follow my heart, which flew thither before them; but when I approach'd the Arbour, I saw *Artesinda* and *Laomira* at the portal, who presently by a sign which they made me, ordered me to make no noise, so that coming near the door, they shewed me the Princess asleep upon a little Grass Bank; she was late upon the ridge, from whence letting fall her head upon that part which was most raised upon one of her Arms which sustained it, she had fallen asleep. As in all postures she appear'd to me admirably fair, so I conceived her all charming in this, and although sleep had clos'd her bright eyes, and conceal'd a part of their beauties, methought it rendred them more supportable to mine, and that this negligent languishing, in which she appear'd to mine, added a sweet air to her whole person, which rendred her more amiable. Thus I beheld her from the portal like a person transported, nor had *Artesinda* much trouble to make me observe the silence she had commanded me. As she had often seen me in this condition, and that (as well as her Mother) she was not entirely ignorant of the cause, she did not admire to see me like a statue fix'd in this contemplation, nor to hear those sighs which forced a passage through my breast. In the mean time, they durst neither make a noise in that place for fear of awakening the Princess, nor be at any distance from her whilst she slept; but in fine, they ventured to walk near the Arbour, casting their eyes from time to time through the portal, till by little and little they went farther off insensibly, after they had desired me to have a care of the Princess from the place where I stood, and to call them, if she chanced to awake. Oh! how sweet was this Commission, and with what willingness did I charge my self with this care, to feast my eyes with the pleasure of that dear object, they so covetously desired. My Soul went many degrees beyond those bounds which limited my sight, and by force of the present object, the remembrance of what I had formerly seen, returning entirely to my memory,

plunged

plunged me in a Sea of amorous thoughts which arose in my breast, and in fine transport- ed me in such a manner, that not being able longer to remain within those limits they had prescribed me, I entred into the Arbour, and with a slow pace and a panting heart I approached the sleeping Princess: 'Twas not nevertheless without trembling, nor without being assaulted by a fear which a long time deterred me from advancing, and almost per- swaded me to retire out of the Arbour, but at last striving against it the best I could, I went to the very feet of the Princess, where calling my self upon my knees, as before a Deity, I fix'd my eyes upon her fair countenance, and I told her by my looks, and by my sighs, what my mouth could not tell her, and without doubt, had she been awake, she would have understood the dumb eloquence of my passions. In this reverent posture, Sister, I told her a thousand stories without opening my mouth, which through my imagi- nation did still pass to my heart, and methought by the struggling of my passion, that mine explained it self unto her more eloquently than in another condition it could have done, and with more variety of words, *Fair Light of my Soul*, said I to her closed eyes, *restore us that light you deprive us of, and behold a Lover at your feet, that adores you as his Deity: This object ought to startle or affright you, and since your piercing brightness may even penetrate to the heart, there you will better discern what my looks and my discourse cannot make you understand: But do not*, added I a moment after, *fair eyes, but do not open your selves, per- haps you will discern a criminal in this lover, whose sight may disturb your serenity, by some motion of anger, which his boldness may inspire you withal, remain rather shut, to give him some few good minutes more with that good fortune which so favourably offers them, and do not envy him the happiness which he receives by adoring, so near, those Heavenly Beauties, which mu't eternally reign in his heart.* *Alas!* added I a little while after, *unfortunate Viri- domar, what a deplorable condition is thine, to fear all things, and yet not dare to desire any thing? Mightest thou not dispel some part of this fear which accompanies thy love, and make known to those fair eyes (when they shall open themselves) the true Viridomar in the feigned Almeric? Will thy presence be more odious to the Princess, when she shall see it accompanied with a Royal Dignity? Or is the deceit thou hast used in thy concealment, a crime of too high a nature, for thee to expect a pardon? Behold thy self in the condition and posture thou ought- est to be, to implore it; and it seems Heaven hath guided thee hither to that purpose, and fortune perhaps will never offer thee so favourable an opportunity.* This thought made a pro- gress through my mind, but made no stay; and though possibly, I did not entirely want the boldness to execute a part of what I had propos'd, I judg'd it too early as yet, to attempt that hazard, and that neither as *Almeric*, nor as *Viridomar*, I had sufficiently en- gaged her affection. With grief I made a reflection hereupon, and I wavered in my re- solution, whether to depart that place, or to remain some few minutes longer, when one of her fair hands negligently extended upon her thigh, presented it self to my eyes, and lay so near me, that maugre the fear I had to displease the Princess, I could not find a sufficient succour from my reason against the violent endeavours of my love, to hinder me from carrying my lips to her hand, and press them thereon with such an extasie, as caused an unspeakable delight to pass in a moment from my lips to my heart, which had nothing of mortal in it, and which robbed me both of my knowledge and reason. By means of this violence of my lips, the Princess awaked, but not so quickly as to perceive my amo- rous theft: but as I well knew I could not hinder my self from being seen, I had much rather be found in that posture, than in any other less suitable to my condition, either of a Lover, or a criminal, if my fault had been known; so that as soon as the Princess open- ed her eyes, the first object that appeared, was *Almeric* at her feet, in a posture that gave her no less trouble, than astonishment. She fix'd her eyes for a time upon me, and after- wards turning them gently on the other side; *What*, said she, *in coming out of the water, in returning out of a swoon, and in awaking from my sleep, always Almeric before my eyes! and I shall be constrained to have him always present to my memory; because he will be eter- nally present in my sight:* *Almeric, what make you here,* (said she, continuing her discourse, and turning her eyes upon me) *how am I here alone with you, in what a posture do you ap- pear before me? And what have you to ask me in this posture? I am to implore your pardon* (said I, trembling all the while) *for the boldness I assumed, to enter here whilst you slept, and for adoring in the posture you now see me, those celestial beauties, that a religious heart might worship to his grave, and which merit the adoration of the whole Universe. You doubt- lessly think* (said the Princess) *that I am still Blellinda, or else you believe your self to be that Viridomar, of whom you daily speak to me so much. For you, Madam,* said I, *I know full well you are no more Blellinda; but as for my self, I have much ado to know whether I am still Almeric, and I know not, if (against my own resolution) I shall not in fine desire to*
become

become Viridomar. I have already told you, replied the Princess, that if you were so, your condition would not be happier, and I add now, that if you were Viridomar, I should not pardon you that, which the remembrance of his services makes me forgive Almeric. In the mean time, (continued she, seeing Artesinda and Laomira entering the Arbour) do not abuse my indulgence, and for a penalty which you have deserved, by seeing me more than you ought, I command you to see me no more in three days. This penalty, said I unto her, is not so light as you imagine it, and if you ordered me to throw my self into the river Tyberon, it would not be so difficult a thing for me to obey you. The Princess looked upon me very stedfastly, and with no little admiration, to hear me speak in this manner, and taking hold of my words, (after she had given me a sign to rise,) I did not believe, said she, that you had such a passion to see me, if I were Viridomar's, as you so much desire, would you see me every day? Yes, Madam, said I, I would see you every day, and by that happy Star which bath still guided me where you were, which you accused some few moments since, I should not despair, but you might see me again when you awaked. I had rather see you here, said the Princess, and in the interim not to refuse my presence to a person, I am so much obliged to; I will change the penalty I so enjoy'd, to a prohibition not to speak to me of Viridomar in eight days. I shall more easily obey (said I) this order, than the former; and I shall the more willingly abstain from speaking of Viridomar, because I hope that every time you shall see me, you will have cause to remember him. I confess (said then the Princess, turning to Artesinda) that I understand you not, and I shall be very glad to hear no more of it. After that she complain'd softly to Artesinda and Laomira, for that they had left her alone, and suffer'd me to enter the Arbour whilst she was asleep, but they appeas'd her by telling her the truth; which when they had inform'd her of, It had been a very ingrateful thing, said Laomira unto her, to prohibit him the entering that place where you were, who had so well defended you against the Sueves, and the wild Bull. And besides, (added the fair Artesinda, with a smile) we did believe, that he who had seen you in the water, and who had more than once embraced you as you were swooning in his Arms, might well have the privilege to see you asleep. Ah Cousin, (said the Princess very smartly) tell me of those last accidents as much as you please, but do not recal that first to my memory, which was common to us both, in which you might perhaps receive as little satisfaction as my self. In pronouncing these words, she blush'd as much as she could have done, if she had then seen her self in the same condition as she appear'd to my eyes, in coming out of the Mein; and Artesinda, whom she had made not a little ashamed, had her face for some time dyed with the same tincture of modesty: but Laomira desiring to relieve them, by changing the subject of the discourse, presented to the Princess a Letter which she had in her hand, and which I had let fall by carelessness a little distance from the Arbour, and in giving it, Madam, said she unto her, if Almeric had not been wanting to his promise, in keeping Sentinel at the portal of the Arbour without entering it, and had not expos'd us, by his boldness, to the peril of incurring your anger, I should not have done him the unkindness, which I am about to do him, by presenting you this Letter, which he newly dropp'd, which may perhaps inform you of his affairs, much more than he desires we should know. Laomira jestingly discours'd in this manner, without any design of doing me a bad office, because indeed she had not perus'd the Letter which she presented the Princess; but I no sooner perceiv'd it in her hand, but I knew it for a Letter which I had received from Haldan some few days before, and that it was sufficient to discover me, if I did not think of an invention to remedy it. By good fortune the Princess cast her eyes upon the Letter, before she look'd on my face, which might have given her to understand a part of that disquiet which perplex'd my mind; and withdrawing her eyes a while after from the Letter, whilst I was using my utmost endeavours to recover my self; If you had had discretion enough (said she in a merry humour unto me) to have abstain'd from entering into this Arbour, I had had civility enough not to have made an enquiry into your secrets, but since you have wanted it for me, you must not be angry that I entrench a little upon you, and that according to Laomira's counsel, I take this small revenge. " But Madam, said I, you have already impos'd upon my crime that penalty you thought it deserved, and I am confident, you are more just than to punish me beyond my desert, or more generous, than to revoke the favour you have done me. " It shall not be, replied the Princess, to punish the crime you committed against me, but that Artesinda and Laomira may revenge themselves, with whom you broke your word. And at the same time, casting her eyes upon the Letter, she read aloud these words therein.

Haldin to Prince Viridomar.

WE have marched the Army back, my Lord, according to your orders, and were received by the King, as we before expected; for we had like to have felt the utmost effects of his anger, and I verily believe, that the orders which he had given us to obey you, would not have defended us, if his greatest rage had not fallen upon you. It is not, my Lord, necessary to inform you of all that which I discerned therein, but you must know enough to hinder your appearing before him, before his anger be somewhat appeas'd; and although your presence be very dear to all the Sueves, your most faithful Servants do supplicate you not to afford it them, till the storm be over. Nor do I doubt, but that your love gives you a sufficient employment in the places where you are, to make you forget——

The Princess would not read any farther, but restoring me the Letter (when she had read to that place) with a countenance wherein I perceiv'd the marks of a disturbance sufficiently apparent: “ I did believe, *said she unto me*, to have seen some of *Almeric's* affairs in this Letter, but since I perceive it was directed to *Viridomar*, I have not the same curiosity for his. “ Yes Madam, (*said I very readily, and with a much greater confidence in appearance than I was really owner of*) it was directed to Prince *Viridomar*, and you will know wherefore he sent it me: I had brought it hither this day to have shewn you, but fortune hath happily done more for me, than my intention could have effected; but I shall say no more, for I well remember, that I am not to speak of *Viridomar* for the space of eight days. No, *Almeric*, (*replyed the Princess, with an action which made me judge, that the trouble of her mind was not entirely removed by my words*) you ought not to speak of him these eight days, and in that time, both you and I may consider what we have to do. In truth, (*said Laomira, perhaps to disguise the suspicion she had of the truth*) I am very sorry to have rendred you a good office, in believing I did you an injury, but another time I shall better consult my revenges. “ You may perceive, Madam, *said I*, that fortune doth not always favour bad intentions, though, to say the truth, I do not believe you have done any great good in seconding mine. “ As for my self who am not so malicious, *said Artesinda*, if I have done you no good, at least I have done you no harm, and I assure you moreover, that I shall never have an intention to do it. “ To speak seriously, *replyed Laomira*, I will assure *Almeric*, that I have no worse intention for him, than you, and I had rather do him a kindness (if the opportunity were favourable) than to *Viridomar*, who hath wounded your Father, and won a Battel from mine. “ I am confident, *replyed I unto her*, that neither *Priam* nor *Basogastus* bear any hatred to *Viridomar*, but I could have wish'd, the Princess had prohibited you as well as me from speaking of him, for I believe this discourse is not very pleasing to her. “ I know not how it may be to her, *said Artesinda*, but I believe we have not displeas'd the Prince of *Suevia*, by shewing this Letter; for I doubt not, but that this disgrace to which he hath expos'd himself for the love which he bore the Princess, will merit some esteem from her. *Ab Madam*, (*said I unto her, with a look full of acknowledgments*) how worthy a Daughter are you of *Priam* and *Theodomira*, and how well I know you by your generous proceedings for a Princess of the blood of King *Pharamond*. Whilst we were in this manner discoursing, the Princess observ'd a silence which astonish'd me, calling oftentimes her eyes upon me, with a carriage very different from her accustomed demeanour. but after I had replyed with so much ardency to *Artesinda*, looking fix'dly upon me: I clearly perceive, *said she to me*, that you continue very sensible of the interests of *Viridomar*; and in the end, you will persuade me that they are not less dear to you than your own: but remember in the mean time, the penalty I have impos'd upon you; and let us change this place, that we may the better change our discourse. Concluding these words, she rose up, and went out of the Arbour, permitting me as she had formerly often done, to receive the honour of supporting her as she walked.

I usually pay'd her this service with an excess of joy; but this time I perform'd it with such a disturbance, that I could no ways dissemble, which by another accident was immediately augmented. The Princess, when she had walk'd enough, directed her steps towards the Castle, when as some persons of quality newly arriv'd from *Peapolis*, came to kiss her hand, and amongst them, a person of a very fair appearance, who having, as the others,

others performed his duty to the Princess, and received, by the reception she made him, the marks of a very particular esteem; cast his eyes upon my face: and he had no sooner discern'd it, but shewing some signs of astonishment upon his own; he came to salute me with a respect that was no ways due to *Almeric*; and after he had (with a behaviour full of submission) withdrawn himself at some distance; *Ab my Lord*, said he, *is it possible that I should have the honour to see you here, and to thank you before our Princess, for that civil usage which I received from your bounty.* Although this adventure put me much to a nonplus, I return'd him nevertheless his complement if not with so much civility as I might have done at another time, as much at least as the Princess's presence, and the trouble which it caused could permit me, and looking upon him with eyes, which in my opinion might have made him understand my intention; *I am extremely happy*, said I unto him, *if any action of my whole life hath been seasonable to serve you, and I shall testify my content to you, much more amply in another place, than I can do it before the Princess.* I did believe that these words might have obliged him, to remit the rest of his civilities till another time: but he was ignorant of my design, and taking hold of the words with a behaviour as respectful as at first, and with an obeyance that could not be due from a person of his quality to *Almeric*; *My Lord*, said he, *I have not merited you should preserve the Idea of my face; but yet permit me (if you please) to recal to your memory, that I was not the least of those prisoners you so generously sent back to Basogastus, after he had lost the Battel: and that doubtlesly there were none that have preserved a resentment of that benefit, with an acknowledgement equal to mine.* I did make him no reply for fear of obliging him to an answer which might hasten my discovery; but only by shewing him the Princess with a respectful look, I gave him to understand that this was no place to continue our discourse, so that being a person that knew the world, either through the respect that he owed the Princess, or that he believed due to me, he withdrew himself amongst those other persons with whom he came, and walked with them at some distance after the Princess. When I saw him at a distance not to hear me, *I perceive* (said I to the Princess) *that it is the name which I bear hath deceived this Knight: And as at the battel which Basogastus lost, that Almeric (who was since slain) had the first command under Prince Viridomar in the Army, it was doubtlesly from him that he received this usage, for which he appears so gratefully acknowledging. It appears to me nevertheless (replied the Princess very seriously) that it was to your face and not to your name, he yielded those marks of acknowledgment and resentment: and on the other side, I could not have believed that Almeric had the power of dismissing Prisoners, in an Army where his Prince was in person. The Prince (replied I very much astonish'd with this answer) left the Army often to attend the King his father, who was on the other side of the country; and during that time, Almeric remained in the Army with an absolute power.* The Princess made no reply to these words, but did not less astonish me now by her silence, than she had done before by her answer: and a while after being come to her apartment, and having intimated her desire to be private; I withdrew my self with so disturbed a soul, that I scarcely could find out my own Lodgings.

As soon as I was got thither, making a reflection upon all that had befall'n me that day, and particularly upon all which I had observed in the looks, and in the discourse of the Princess; I no ways doubted but that she had entertained in her mind, many, and great suspicions of the truth: and methought she had sufficient reason for them, as well by the reading of the Letter, as by the complement of the French Knight; who had treated me as *Viridomar*, and not as *Almeric*. *Timanthus*, whom I informed of all that had happened, as a person to whom I trusted all things, was of the same opinion: and then recalling to our memories all those discourses I had had with *Polixena*, the eagerness I had always testified for the interests of *Viridomar*, and all that which I had said and done, more conformable to the personage of *Viridomar* than that of *Almeric*: we admired between our selves, that she could permit her self to be so long deluded, and we likewise believed that if the truth were not already really discovered, it was suddenly in danger of being so; since even the Princess her self might conclude it, by clearing her doubts with that person that had formerly known me. Then did I send *Timanthus* to find him out, with hopes, that if I could speak with him, I should divert him from all that might injure me: but *Timanthus* could not find him and learnt that after that he had entertained the Princess, with some affairs which had brought him to Court, he was departed again for *Peapolis*. I then found my self involved in a deep perplexity, and a great irresolution, what I had to do, in case I should be reduced to the necessity to act as *Viridomar*, and no more as *Almeric*: and though I might always think it very difficult, for a person of my quality to remain *incognito*, and shew himself freely to the world, and principally in a Country, where he had made himself so famous by so many renowned actions, and in a place where his love obliged him, to act in a manner sufficient

ent of it self to discover him, though his countenance did nothing contribute: I always trilled more to fortune than reason, nor could I resolve how to behave my self in this affair, so that I found my self very much perplex'd, and I passed the succeeding night in such a various agitation of thoughts, as gave little or no liberty to sleep: but the next morning, much about that hour the Princess usually shewed her self in the presence, a Gentleman belonging to *Theodora*, came to entreat me on the behalf of his Lady, to wait upon her in her Chamber. I presently conceived that she had some advice to give me, concerning those accidents which had fall'n out the day before, which turmoyle'd my mind: but my surprise was much greater, when (entring in her Chamber) I understood she was in her Closet with the Princess, who both desired to speak with me, and had obliged her to send the messenger to fetch me. This proceeding of the Princess astonish'd me; and I entred into the Closet with a greater apprehension of fear, than in the most hazardous encounters that ever I had been in. The Princess (who was alone in effect with *Theodora*) received me with much civility, but with a very serious countenance, and full of such a Majesty as made me more timorous than I was; through all her charms, she constrained me to behold the sovereign authority which she had over me. She remained some time ere she began to express her intentions, when on a sudden with an incomparable grace; *Almeric*, said she, *you ought not to doubt, but that (through a remembrance of those obligations we bear you, and that great esteem your person merits) your presence is very dear unto us, and I believe that hitherto you might easily perceive it; but because we have at present some reasons which constrain us to deprive our selves of it, you cannot be offended that I entreat you to retire your self, not out of the Territories of King Pharamond, but out of the house of his Sister, and from those places wherein she shall make her abode. We are not so ungrateful as to refuse you a sanctuary, during those disgraces you suffer for love of us, but you will find it, if it be true you need it, much more secure and honourable near the King than near our person; and during his absence near Prince Sannon his brother, or in any fortified place you shall please to make choice of. You shall there find all things disposed to receive you, as you can expect from persons that lose not the memory of those obligations they owe you; and in the mean time you must pardon me, that which I now impose out of necessity, and by the command of my duty which I am no ways permitted to disobey.* These words, though I expected somewhat to this purpose, struck me like a thunder-bolt, and for some time I remained sufficiently stupified, not being able either to do or say; but at last, putting a force upon my astonishment, or rather abandoning my self to my passion, at a time wherein I saw there was no more use of fiction; *Ab Madam*, (said I throwing my self at her feet) *for what offence could I merit so cruel a disgrace? Shall I see myself at the same time exposed both to that of my King and that of my Sovereign? And should I cease to be this Almeric, to whom fortune had gave those opportunities, to merit some marks of your bounty, could I possibly assume a shape so odious, as to deserve so cruel a banishment.* I believe, replied the Princess, *that you are still Almeric; and those likelihoods which might make others judge you were Viridomar, cannot persuade me to that belief. Viridomar is a Prince too highly generous, to have exposed such a Princess as my self to those reproaches she might reasonably fear; or to the displeasure she might suffer all her days, for having concealed in her House a person disguised, who had declared to the whole world the excess of affection he had for her; and Almeric hath merited too well from me by all his other actions, to have endeavoured to blot out the obligation by so cruel an injury: so that I believe not that you can be Viridomar: and should you be so, I do not believe that you are so much an enemy either to him or me as to confess it, and to constrain me by that confession to a severity which would be so little agreeable unto me. 'Tis not but that I have all that esteem for the Prince of the Sueves, which is due to his merit; nor but that I was touch'd with a just resentment, for that which he did in favour of my country, by ceasing to make any further war upon it: and if to his illustrious Rank, to those glories which environ him, and to that which he hath acted for us, were added these services I have received from Almeric, with those advantages we have observed in his person, there were too many perfections and obligations to make him merit a better fortune than his could possibly hope from the esteem of Polixena. But all these great advantages could not take from me the resentment and shame I should have all my life, for those faults he has made me commit: And if Almeric had been Viridomar, he would have preserved the respect due to his own dignity and mine, and had sought his satisfaction near the King my Brother, and not in a disguise so much unworthy of his courage and my virtue.* “But Madam (said I unto her with a more passionate behaviour) should *Viridomar* have presented himself unto you under the person of *Almeric*, had he been so criminal as you make him? and although he ought to have sought a part of his good fortune in the approbation of the King your brother, was he lets concern'd to seek it in the happiness of pleasing you, if fortune had so far favoured him as to have let him effect it. Could he have done you so cruel an injury by endeavouring to make you kind

“to his person by services no ways distasteful, before he discovered by any other way his design? or had he shewed any more consideration for your repose, or for your satisfaction, by imploring the consent of the King your brother, before he knew that his person was acceptable unto your self? I speak this Madam in the defence of *Viridomar*, though I am still *Almeric*: and although the services, the thoughts, and the person of *Almeric*, might assume a form much more advantagious from the birth and renown of *Viridomar*; I should be very sorry (if it were possible for me) to be *Viridomar*, whilst he remains so odious to you. I’ll go and inform him that he is the most unfortunate of men, though possibly not the most criminal; and that he must seek for refuge in the Arms of death, and not in the Court of King *Pharamond*. “He shall nevertheless find one there, replied the Princess, whensoever he pleases to honour the King by accepting it: for it is just that he should be well received in the King’s dominions, so long as he remains for our sake in his father’s displeasure; which I believe is to him of much greater importance, than the frowns of *Polixena*: but neither the one nor the other will further his death, pronounce their anger how severely soever unto him: neither is it his death nor his misfortune that I desire, but only the departure of *Almeric* which is necessary, although his services are so dear unto me, that his person cannot be odious. Finishing these words with a look which had nothing of unkind in it, and upon which methought (for my comfort I observed a very great constraint) she saluted me in another manner than she was accustomed, and departed out of the Closet of *Theodomira*, to retire into her Chamber. She would not permit *Theodomira* to accompany her, judging perhaps in the condition I was, that she might be useful unto me: And *Theodomira* returning to me from the portal of her Chamber, to which she had followed her, and finding me with a discontented countenance; “What my lord (*said she unto me with a merry and lively countenance*) have you then deceived us? “If that which you believe were true, replied I to her, you highly deserve to be deceiv’d for the trick which you put upon me: But Madam I am still *Almeric*, and *Viridomar* is too much unfortunate for me ever to wish my self the person. For my part, replied *Theodomira*, I have too often wished you before your face to have been *Viridomar*, to be troubled at it now; and I cannot dissemble the joy which I now have to find it so. “And wherefore (*said I unto her with a mournful voice*) ought you to rejoyce, to see me under the disguise of an unfortunate Prince, hated by a Princess which I adored, after you had seen me under another form, no way odious to her. I rejoyce, replied *Theodomira*, to see *Almeric* become the Prince of the *Sueves*, because I could not wish a more glorious fortune to a Person to whom I was so highly obliged, than to see him from a private person, become one of the greatest Princes in the world, both by his birth and from the renown of his actions: and I rejoyce because that in your love to the Princess (which I was always conscious of) had you still continued *Almeric*, you had nothing to hope; whereas you may hope all things being Prince *Viridomar*. “Alas (*said I fetching a sigh*) you may perceive what *Viridomar* hath to hope, and you see how the heavens and the inclinations of the Princess favour him. “You ought not, replied *Theodomira*, to wonder at the proceedings of the Princess, who hath treated you much more kindly than I could have expected, according to her accustomed severity. It was an obedience to her duty, which cannot permit her to retain in her house, a person disguised that pretends so much of affection, which made her pray you to retire your self: And though I am as much engaged in your interests as your own heart can desire, I could not contradict her purpose, when she communicated her intentions to me: but be confident that your person is not hateful to her, and that when the King her brother shall dispose (in your favour) of her inclinations, she will freely change her mind to your content. I must likewise counsel you to pursue that course, as the most assured for your self, and the most honourable for the Princess, and as you well know the great soul of King *Pharamond*, and how much he is sensible of a merit like yours, and favourable to a passion to which he hath but too much abandon’d himself; you ought not to doubt, but that he will take as favourable a cognizance of your design, as you your self can desire. You have heard what Prince *Sumon* hath spoken to your face, and I have heard sufficient from the King’s own mouth to give you this assurance; nor can it be accounted a misfortune to the Princess *Polixena*, to have enslaved the heart of *Viridomar*, nor to King *Pharamond* to have disengaged himself from such a Rival, and a Rival for whom *Rosalind* was designed. *Theodomira* spoke to me in this manner, and to these words added many others, by which in fine she made me apprehend, that I was not so unfortunate as I had imagined my self, and that the design which I had in my disguise could not possibly have met with a better success. She afterwards informed me, that the Princess had had some days before a great jealousy of the truth, by some serious reflections she had made upon my actions, upon my discourses, upon the eager-
ness

ncfs I had testified for the interests of *Viridomar*, in a time wherein I had already made known, that I had my self an affection for her, and upon the conformity the found between my person, and the report they had made her of that of *Viridomar*, besides, that they had not heard of any other *Almeric*, that was considerable in the Court of the *Saxons*, except him that had been slain; that the reading of *Haldan's* Letter, had left her little to make any farther doubt; and that she was fully confirmed by that person who took acquaintance of me in the Garden, that she had conversed with him after that I was departed from her; and that after she had received the confirmation of the truth from his mouth, she had obliged him by promise, not to discover to any person in the world, that he had known me, passionately desiring him to deprive the world, as much as in him lay, of the knowledge of this accident; or at least, to take away all suspicion, which men might have, that she had thereto contributed, she being so very nice upon this matter, that the least scruple deprived her of her repose. She afterwards counselled me to obey her without farther delay, and not to seek any occasion of seeing her before my departure, for fear of exasperating her mind, wherein I should find something more terrible, than what had yet appeared to me, if she had once proposed to her self the obligations of Duty; and after that she did not only assure me of the services of her Husband, her Son, and all her Family, upon all occasions which might concern my interest, but she promised me withal, to maintain them with an inviolable affection to the Princess, and that she would render me all those good offices, which I could possibly hope from that person in the world the best affected towards me. In fine, she told me all that which might either give me comfort or hope, and would not permit me to depart from her, till she had fully perswaded me, that there were more unfortunate persons in the world than my self. She likewise permitted me, before I went out of the Closet, to write a short Letter to the Princess, which she promised to shew her after my departure, whereof the words were these.

To the Princess *Polixena*.

IT is not, Madam, *Viridomar*, but *Almeric* that takes his leave of you; and since through his good fortune, and not through his merit, the person of the last is not odious to you, he will borrow nothing from that of the first, who by his misfortune, and not out of any design, hath displeas'd you; *Almeric* nevertheless will die with grief, if *Viridomar* hath deserved your anger, for neither the one, nor the other can live, if the hopes of appeasing you, be to them prohibited. They have sought in the occasions to serve the King your Brother, those which might bring them to the glory of being owned by you, but if fortune have oppos'd them in this design, death will be favourable in that of dying for you.

I shall not, Sister, dilate my self upon what remains to me to tell you; for besides, the recital would not be much pleasing, if I should confine my self to the repetition of particulars; I find my self shortened in time, and obliged to retire, and leave you to take some repose; and I shall only tell you, that after I had received from *Theolomira*, all the assurances that she could give me, either of her affections, or assistances; I departed not only from her presence, but within an hour after from *Fenuse*, not with any design to stay at *Peapolis*, or in any other City of *Franconia*, nor to oblige my self near *Pharamond*, whilst he was in war with the King my Father, being conscious that my honour could not permit it, although my affections might approve it, but with an intention to seek out some occasion of seeing *Pharamond* upon the Frontiers, where he was gone, to the end I might make him understand my love, and my intentions; no ways doubting, but that through his virtue, I might excuse the misfortune which hindred me from prosecuting my own inclinations, and that I should oblige him to have more favourable thoughts of me, than I could ever hope from the obstinacy of the King my Father: But I had neither the time, nor the occasion to execute what I had propos'd; for I had scarce travelled some days journey beyond *Peapolis*, travelling towards the Frontiers, towards which the King of the *Franks* was gone, when I heard the cruel news that was newly brought, of his being imprisoned by the King of the *Cimbrians*, whose prisoner he had voluntarily made himself. This news pierced my heart with a mortal grief, but it did not permit me to study what resolution I ought to take; for although I foresaw great difficulties in this design, I easi-

ly resolved, either to die, or set King *Pharamond* at liberty, not knowing any rule of Duty, which ought to obstruct the performance of so generous a deed, had not my love there-to obliged me. For such a design, I was resolved not to consider neither my fortune, nor my life it self, and to put in practice all that, which the succour of my Friends, or that of my courage might furnish, at a time where all my concerns were at stake; and wherein I ever believed, that the interests of my honour, were not inferior to those of my love, through that engagement which had chained me to the Princess his Sister. But all those designs which I had in my head for *Pharamond*, vanished like those which I had made for *Marcomire*, and we understood some few days after, that he was delivered out of prison by an accident much like his Brother's, and had retired himself, together with him, to whom they had committed the custody of *Marobuda*. The difficulties which I foresaw in my design to deliver him, caused me to receive the news with an excess of joy, although it deprived me of an occasion to render the Princess the most important, and most grateful service she could ever receive from me, and of meriting by this action the amity of *Pharamond*, which for the happiness of my life was become so necessary: And as the cruelty of his Enemies had made me fear for him, I forgot all that I might hope from his misfortune, to rejoice at a happiness wherein the whole world ought to have interested it self. I was upon the Frontiers of *Bohemia*, but I faced about, and steered my course towards *Franconia*, to endeavour the execution of what I had proposed some days before, when that by an encounter, which had like to have cost me my life; having engaged my self in the defence of a Knight, whom divers others endeavoured to assassinate, I received a very great wound, and was constrained to stay the cure a long time in his House whom I had rescued; who ordered me to be served (though he knew me not) with all manner of care and acknowledgment. It was during the abode I made with him, that I heard of the march of the King of the *Cimbrians*, and his Allies, towards *Franconia*; and some few days after, I likewise heard of the departure of the King my Father, with *Gondioch*, in order to joyn their Armies with the King of the *Cimbrian's* Forces, and to pour them altogether upon the King of the *Franks*, who received on his part the succour of his Allies, to defend himself from so formidable a power. I then heard with an extreme grief, all that which fortune acted against a person so renowned amongst men, for his admirable virtue; and if I did not resolve to fight on his side against my Father, because my Duty did prohibit me, there was at least, a strange disdain kindled in my Breast, against all those Princes, whom the hope of possessing *Rosamond*, or some other consideration, had cruelly armed against his life; and I nourished a resolution to encounter the most valiant amongst them, if I could meet with an opportunity, hoping thereby, as well to satisfy the inclination which moved me to it, as to render *Pharamond* a kindness, which might bring me to merit his friendship. I took Horse as soon as I was in a condition so to do, and though I was unwilling to appear in the Army of the King my Father, because my love forbid me; or in that of *Pharamond*, because my Duty would not permit it, I nevertheless took my journey towards *Peapolis*, without having any design determined, hoping from fortune some favourable occasion which might effect more for me, than all I could premeditate. But I was scarce departed, when I heard that the King of the *Cimbrians*, who with divers other Kings was entered some days before into *Franconia*, had given battle to King *Pharamond*, and had lost it with the lives of a hundred thousand men, which remained dead in the Field, together with two Kings, and divers other illustrious persons. I knew in course, the arrival of the King my Father, and of *Gondioch*, the union of their Army with the King of the *Cimbrians*, the King of the *Cimbrians's* death, with all that which had happened considerable, or of importance, during these great emergencies.

I heard also with an excess of joy, the illustrious actions of the King of the *Franks*, and that glorious victory which he had obtained; for as my love, and the esteem of his virtue, had made me take his part; I confess that I fostered no favourable wishes for my Father's: and I testified at full some days after, that I was not of his side, in an encounter which I had in a Forest somewhat near the Camp, with the most valiant of all the Rivals of *Pharamond*; against whom, in satisfying my inclinations, the glory which I knew I should purchase, was enough to excite me to the design. *Oh my dear Brother*, (said then *Albisinda* to the Prince, stopping the current of his discourse) *was it then you that fought so near this Camp with the valiant Balamir, and who left him so large a subject to speak worthily of your valour, and all that appeared to him of your person.* Yes, my dear Sister, replied the Prince, *It was I that encountered Balamir, or at least that had begun to encounter him, when we were separated by a Knight, whom I have since understood to be the Prince of Persia; and that soon after, the sight of some Troops of Horse which I saw coming from that Camp, constrained me*

to retire. I pass'd by the Army of the *Franks*, and took my way towards *Francfort*, where I was inform'd, that the Princess *Theodmira* was arriv'd some days before, and knowing that she had left *Polixena* at *Peapolis*, by reason of some affairs which had brought her to *Francfort*, which was under the Government of her Husband, I design'd to see her, and consult with her, as with an Oracle of my Fortune. Here, Sister, I saw, and was received by her, as if I had been her own Son; I found her as well affected towards me, as she had given me reason to believe; and in fine, Sister, to finish this recital, and to tell you what now brought me hither, I learn'd from her the love which *Marcomire* had for you, with part of those actions he hath performed to let you understand it, I knew moreover, by the strict tye which is between *Polixena* and *Marcomire*, nothing could be more favourable to my Amours, than those assistances that I might receive from *Marcomire*; and that doubtlesly, he would never refuse them me, if I desired the same kindness, which I could desire from him, on his behalf from the Princess my Sister. I accepted the proposal with an excess of joy, not only because it flattered my hopes, but because there was nothing in effect in the person of *Marcomire*, either by his birth, by the fair qualities of his person, or by the glory of his actions, which made me not judge him most worthy of your affections; and which did not oblige me (if the choice depended on me) to prefer him before the greatest part of those Princes that I now see crown'd with Diadems. So that after I had entreated *Theodmira* to assure *Marcomire*, when she found an opportunity, of the intention I had to serve him, I took leave of her to come secretly to this Camp, and find the means to see you without being known. And by the assistance of *Haldan*, I thrived in my design, to whom I have trusted my self upon all accounts, and he having the same power in the Army of the *Sueves* I had formerly given him, and the first command near the King's person, had the means to conceal me in his Lodgings, and to afford me the casie opportunity to see you, and to give you fresh assurances of the affection which I have always had for my dear Sister.

The End of the Second Book of the Fifth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK III.

V*iridomar* thus finish'd his discourse, and made the Princess to blush in such a manner by his last words, that of a long time she was in no condition to answer. He often importun'd her to a reply, but seeing his importunity augmented her confusion, and the trouble which appeared in her face, he endeavour'd to help her in the perplexity wherein he had cast her, and so with a smile. *I did not believe, Sister, said he, that that which I told you of Prince Marcomire, could have wrought that effect upon you which it hath produced; or rather, that you could have sufficiently forgot that amity which hath always been between us, to understand with so much shame, and happily with so much distaste, that I know any thing of your affairs: Nobody will admire, that a Princess so fair, and amiable as your self, should have yielded some love to Marcomire; and though the knowledge of his love, with that of his merit, had*

touched

touched your heart, I should neither admire, nor could I blame you for it, I know him of so divine a form, that there are few persons in the world, which might not be sensible of his affections; and should scarce have loved you better, if you had been as refer'd as Polixena. But, my Lord, (said the Princess at last, taking some confidence from his discourse) although the person of Marcomire were perhaps such as you describe it, and that I only began to understand it by a kindness which he did me at the price of all his blood, what judgment might you have pass upon me, if I had entertained any complacence for the love of a Prince, whom I ought always to look upon as the Brother of Pharamond, and consequently as a person, who in lieu of the consent, will always have the hatred of the King my Father. I should judge, replied the Prince of the Sueves, that you were Mistress of a Soul capable to discern merit, and to acknowledge services, and as by being born of the same Father as your self, my thoughts however are not conformable to his, I am not to think it strange, that you should not conform your self to those, which he cannot without injustice have against a Prince so innocent of his displeasure, and who at the peril of his life freed you from the hands of his Enemies. I must needs tell you, Sister, and I speak it with sincerity, that I should blame you, if that complacence for the inclinations of a Father too rigorous, and in his hatred too immoderate, could have rendred you ungrateful towards a Prince, to whom you were so much obliged, and whom, escaping from one danger, in which he had almost lost his life in your defence, you saw fall into another, which through the injustice of the King of the Cimbrians, was not less desperate, nor less considerable. I know not, Brother, (said the Princess, with more joy than she durst express) whether I ought to believe, that your thoughts are really such as you endeavour to persuade me, and whether you have so much indulgence, as you tell me, for those which you seem to infuse into me. And I know not, replied the Prince, wherefore you should have this diffidence of my sincerity, if it be true, that you have so good an opinion of me, as you have formerly had. But dear Brother, replied the Princess, do you know all which hath happened during the love that Marcomire hath had for me? And hath Theodomira informed you of all those particulars? They were not known to her, added the Prince, for she only told me that since his return, and some days after the great Battel, Marcomire had visited the Princess Polixena at Peapolis, and in declaring to her the love which he had for you, he had entreated her for his sake to be favourable to me, and to do the same thing for him, which I now pray you to do for me; that she had trusted this secret to her, but she told me no more particulars of the love of Marcomire, whether it were because she was really ignorant of them, or that she would keep her Brother's secrets: That she only knew, that Marcomire died for love of you, and that I could do nothing more advantageous for my own affection, than to be favourable unto him in his. Since it is so, (replied Albisinda, fully assured by her Brother's discourse) and that I ought to give an entire belief to those assurances which you give me, I shall open my heart to you, even to the very secretest of my thoughts, without concealing any thing I have learn'd of Marcomire's: but it will be necessary, that you give me to this effect a hearing, like to that I have afforded you, when you can conveniently do it; and when you are thoroughly inform'd in all my concerns, you shall prescribe me what rules you please, with this entire assurance, that though the person of Marcomire should be less acceptable unto me than it is, there should be nothing that were possible for me to do, which I would not submit to for your satisfaction. At these obliging words, Viridomar embraced the Princess his Sister with all the marks of a most tender affection; and immediately after, I never doubted of your affection, (said he with a confident look) although you deserved it for that distrust you had of mine; and as I am content to owe a great part of that happiness that I expect from my love, to that you intend to do for me, so you may rest confident, that to favour the love of Marcomire, if it be not disagreeable to you, I shall pass over all those difficulties which you might fear from me. I have already told you, that I consider not his not being a King, which may seem to hinder him, from aspiring to a Princess that may well expect to espouse a King, seeing that for his valour, and the rare endowments of his person, there are few Kings in the world, to whom I would not willingly prefer him: But I shall add, to satisfy the desire you might cherish, not to descend in dignity, that (as Theodomira informed me) King Pharamond did declare, when he went to receive the Crown of the Gauls, to which he is called, and which is of much higher importance than that of Franconia, that he is resolv'd to give that of Franconia to Marcomire: But of this we shall speak more at leisure, and since time forces me to retire, and leave you to your repose, we will remit the rest till to morrow, when I shall most gladly give all attention to the recital of your Adventures, in which I interest my self as much as for my own. To this effect, I shall return hither at the same hour I came to day, and when we shall rest equally instructed in our affairs, we will cause our friendship to act, as it behoves us, for our mutual satisfaction. As I have not hitherto concealed any thing from the Queen of the Cimbrians, said Albisinda unto him, and

that I cannot see you often without giving her suspicion, and that for her secrets, I dare better answer for her than my self, you would highly oblige me, to permit me to speak of you to her, and more especially to let her see you; and I am confident, that if the sight of her do not make you forget Polixena, it will at the least, shake your affection. To convince you that I fear not that danger, replied the Prince, I will see her when you please, well knowing that she hath a courage too great, and that she hath lost too little of it, to nourish any resentment against me; and for the management of this interview, that it may be secret, I shall wholly rely upon you, wholly committing all to your prudence. After these words and some caresses, which a long absence exacted from a tender and strong amity, the Prince had his Sister Good Night, and withdrew himself by the same way that he came, by means of that liberty which *Haldan* afforded him. *Albisinda*, after his departure, went into her chamber, and so to Bed, but it was not without sharing to *Imbergida* a part of that joy she reflected, both by the return of her Brother, whom she so dearly loved, and by the hope of a protection, she expected from him in an affection wherein the severity of the King her Father, had created many fears of great oppositions. This joy in effect, which then took up her whole heart, was not so slight, but that it might hinder her rest, which *Imbergida* knowing, and that she had need of sleep after so long sitting up, gave such orders that she might lie a bed the greatest part of the next day.

But if joy could interrupt the sleep of *Albisinda*, there were other persons not far off, in whom different passions did cruelly work the same effect; for whilst silence and darkness gave repose to a great part of the world, the unfortunate *Amalazontha* was miserably tormented by all that which an affection born under a fatal Star, could make her feel, of most doleful, or most terrible. It seemed in all other places, that this passion, to men so natural, insinuated it self with a kind of sweetness, or at least presented at first, something of flattery agreeable to the mind. But in this fair Queen, the same passion seemed to introduce it self as an enemy, and that having forced those defences she had made to oppose it, it carried a fire every where without pity, and establish'd it self with a severe tyranny. Sometimes she likewise look'd upon it as an effect of Heavens anger, which she believed to have been exasperated by an ingratitude, with which she some times reproach'd her self; and in fighting for the evils that it made her feel, she languished without any hope of relief, and without daring to desire it. And the more she defy'd her misfortunes, the more terrible she found them, through the small disposition she naturally had to submit her self to love; and making a comparison of her condition upon that of other persons, upon whom fortune exercised her power with rigour, she found nothing in theirs which was not less strange, and less cruel than that which she made trial of in her own. The sad reflection she made thereupon, plunged her into a Sea of grief, in which all her constancy was shipwreck'd, and her eyes, those fair eyes which both knew to give life and death, and which more than once had given wounds, which death only could cure, were either then drown'd in tears, or cast down with a languishment, no ways natural unto them: it even seemed, as if she never turned them but with disdain upon all other objects, not seeing any more that charming object, upon which she had so fatally fixed them: and if contrary to her design, any of those dangerous glances, which might enflame a heart of Ice, escaped her eyes, they disowned the effect at the same instant, and denoted it by sad and slow motions, which grief only could teach them. She strove very much, and many ways to dissuade her torments; but if at some times these endeavours produced their effects, at other times they stood her in no stead, for they imprinted upon her visage (maugre her) the marks of that cruel constraint she imposed upon her self. She was likewise deprived of that sweet consolation which is found in the greatest evils, when we are permitted to communicate them; and she found something in hers so extraordinary, and so little suitable to her courage, and to her first inclinations, that she hardly durst open her mouth to deposit the lightest part of her griefs, in the bosoms of those of her Attendants that she most loved; for although she discerned in the fair Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and in the charming *Albisinda* a most real and tender amity for her, which might merit her confidence; and that she had even proposed that comfort to her self, of laying her heart open unto them, in these misfortunes wherein they might give her both advice and comfort, all those desires were banish'd by the shame which she put in opposition to them, which set a vermilion dye upon her cheeks, in that very moment she fram'd the very thought in her mind. That same day by the tender caresses of the fair Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and by the sweet importunities of *Albisinda*, she was tempted more than ordinary, through an inclination we naturally have to discover the cause of our sufferings; but at last she became Mistress of her inclinations, and fancied that she had obtained no slight victory in the concealment of her secret. Though when she was

in Bed, and that instead of the repose she there sought, that merciless passion came to attack her in her solitude and darkness, with much greater forces than those that could assail her, in places and at times where company might divert a part of her grief, she saw her self miserably abandoned to her most severe persecution; and this most cruel and importunate resemblance, or rather this amiable and dear Idea, which was become with so arbitrary a power, Mistress of her Soul, presented its self to her closed eyes in the obscurity of the night, as fair and visible, as if it had appeared in the clearest day-light. The endeavours she used to remove it from her, seemed to make a greater addition to it; and when she perceived, that she vainly laboured to put it out of her thoughts, exasperating her self through its obstinacy to torment her. *Leave me, said she, leave me, thou merciless Enemy of my repose, and do not war with so much inhumanity, upon a heart which never before groaned under the like sufferings. Thy victory would be much fairer, if thou wouldst proceed with less cruelty; and thou mightest content thy self with making Amalazontha sigh for a mischief, to her altogether unknown, without carrying death, as well as love into her breast; neither canst thou long reign there, if thou reignest with so much violence; for it is a rare thing, that in a Soul so unaccustomed to such terrible torments, it should not produce a most fatal effect.* But pursuing her Complaints, after a short silence, *What art thou, cried she, most importunate vision, that incessantly persecutest one? And what is it, that thou eternally presents to my memory? Must I burn, without knowing who hath cast the flame in my breast? And must I grow mad for an Apparition, or for a Phantom, which appeared, and disappeared like Lightning to my eyes? What know I, whether the thing I love be mortal or no? And how know I, whether revengeful love hath not presented me this fair Idea, to punish in me that ingratitude which might have exasperated him: this misfortune were not without president, nor should I be the first, upon whom this God in his anger hath exercised his vengeance. Alas! (proceeding a while after) unfortunate Amalazontha, dost thou not already perceive that thy love disturbs thy reason, and makes thee discourse like a Frantick enraged, having extinguish'd all the light of thy soul? He that thou lovest, is not only a mortal, though through thy own misfortune, perhaps more than in reality there appears to thee, something of Divinity in his person: But he is likewise a person of a Rank very much inferiour to thine, a person that is a Subject to Pharamond, a person thou canst not look upon without offending thy self: and with all this (she added, fetching a sigh) a person that loves thee not, and one perhaps that may never love thee whilst he lives. Hast thou observed any thing in him might make thee judge that thy sight hath wounded him? And when thy eyes discoursed to him, too largely of the sentiments of thy heart, couldst thou perceive by the least glance, that his were correspondent to thine? So little of this was discernable, that (to thy misfortune) thou mightest easily observe the contrary. He hardly afforded himself the time to speak to thee some words of civility for his Prince, and as if thy sight were troublesome to him, he quitted thy presence in an instant, without so much as turning his face towards thee. Thy eyes which followed him as far as they could, did but too well observe it, and whilst he was discoursing unto thee, he applyed himself much more to the justification of Pharamond, than to the contemplation of thy beauty: Oh that for thy happiness, or for thy consolation, it had pleased Heaven, that he had done as much as the Brother of Pharamond, who rendred thee a service, to which civility alone could not oblige him, who applyed himself with so much earnestness to accompany thee to the limits of this Camp, who discoursed to thee in so passionate a manner, both with his eyes and tongue, and who made thee judge, that he might have an affection for thee, if a wretch who could have so easily received it without a return, had been capable to touch a heart in that conjuncture of time wherein hers lost its precious liberty. But senseless creature (said she a while after, reproving her self) of what dost thou complain? And if it be true, that thou endeavourest thy cure, why dost thou look with discontent on what may advance it? That which thou desirest, had only served to have engaged thee farther, and made thee love perhaps all thy days, what thou oughtest not possibly to affect one moment. Alas! (continued the sighing) I know not whether I ought to love him, but I much fear that I shall always love him, and that all those endeavours I shall use to break my fetters, will only serve to clench them faster. Those succours which I hope from my courage and virtue, may well combat my passion, but I fear scarce vanquish it; for in fine, all the symptoms that I observe in my wound, rather foretel my death, than recovery. She paused some moments upon this sad lamentation, and passing in course to another, to which she frequently applyed her thoughts, her Soul laboured to find out who this amiable and too much beloved object of her thoughts might be, and revolving in her mind with some kind of delight, all those things which had appeared to her in his person. *But who, said she, can this miraculous man be, who like a Planet falling from Heaven presented himself to me? What man parallel to this (since it is not Pharamond) can be in Pharamond's Army in Germany, or in the whole universe, of whom fame hath been silent?**

and what a personage ought Pharamond to be, of whom she hath published so many wonders; if there be men like this about his person of whom she makes no mention. But dost thou not know, (said the reproving her self) that fame is not accustomed to fix her self upon extraordinary appearances, that she would neither speak of Pharamond nor of Balamir, if they had nothing but a good aspect without other advantages: and that notwithstanding a celestial beauty, a majesty more than humane, and a grace altogether miraculous in his deportment and discourse, this person may be of so low a merit, that fame did scorn to bear his name upon her glorious wings unto thee. She had scarce entertained this thought, but she reproved her self, and disown'd it at the same instant: *Ab let us not offend,* said she, *what we must love in spite of us, or rather let us not offend our selves, in believing that a subject without merit could give us shackles, which possibly we may wear all the days of our life. He that appeared to us is too great to be accompanied with a vulgar soul, a mediocrity of courage or a common merit: And my heart much better informs me, than fame could do with her hundred mouths, that he is but too worthy of our affections. What shall we then do? for it is time to determine our irresolutions: Shall we love that which we would not love; or shall we dye not to love against our will? Alas!* (concluded she with many sighs) *There is the difficulty, and it is a difficulty that must be decided by Heaven, and by that powerful star which governs my destiny not my own will. Suffer in the interim O my heart, since heaven and fortune so ordain it, without abusing thy self to any thought unworthy of thee: and you my eyes, since it was you that presented this poison to my heart, weep even to death for the crime you have committed, and wash it, if possible, away with my tears.* The unfortunate Lady in this manner tormented her self, and her eyes to obey the commandment she imposed upon them, distilled at the same instant a River of tears upon her fair Cheeks, nor did the shower cease, untill that her grief insensibly stupified her spirits, and made them yield to the dominion of sleep. She slept indeed, but could not find repose in her sleep: for that amiable shape which she kept eternally in her memory, whilst her eyes were open; presented it self more charming to her imagination in her dream, and much fairer (if it were possible) than it appear'd in reality.

As in dreams all impressions form themselves, with no less violence than in the real sight of the object, so was she touched to the very bottom of her soul, with that so dear and desirable sight: and viewed with extasie the beloved object, and in her vision observed the same features which had wounded her; when she fancied that that adorable, though unknown person shewed her his heart open, and made her see therein a fair image which rul'd over it. Nor could he so content himself, but he added words to his gesture: *“View, Malazontha, said he unto her, with how great a power this heart is defended which thou assaultest, it might burn for thy sake if it were free, for alas it is but too too sensible: but another object entirely employs it, and if thou dost not chase it thence, it is in vain for thee to hope to reign there. After these words she dream'd that he approaching unto her, shewed her the fair image at so near a distance, that she might easily observe all the traicts and lineaments, and that fixing her eyes upon it (transported with her grief and jealousy) she knew it for the Pourtraiture of Rosamond.*

The knowledge whereof so sensibly wounded her, that sleep could not resist the smart thereof: for waking her self suddenly she opened her eyes, and cast them on every side of the bed, to find out the object she had lost. This vision remain'd so strongly imprinted on her imagination, that she found it difficult to perswade her self that it was not a real apparition: and the torment she suffered made her complain so loud, that one of her Women, who lay in her Chamber awaked, and running to her bed in a fright, demanded of her the cause of her complaints. At first she only answered with sighs, but being again importun'd by her woman; *“Let me alone Euridice (said she unto her) it is my mind that suffers, and not my body: and the relief which thou canst give me, will work but little towards my cure. “But Madam, Euridice was saying to her———“Let me alone (said the Queen once more) and content thy self to know that I am unfortunate, and that I am hardly my self.*

After these words which caused Euridice to withdraw, her thoughts returning to what she had heard in her dream; her mind was for some time so totally taken up therewith, and she listned thereto with so much attention, as if the words she had heard had been pronounced unto her by an Oracle: then turning her thoughts with some resentment upon the fair Queen of the Cimbrians; *“What, said she, is it then Rosamond to whom I have vowed so tender and so sincere an affection, which must render me miserable, and that beauty which till now I have looked upon without envy, though she may cause it in all that the Earth hath of fair and excellent, will only make use of her Charms to my ruine? Ah Rosamond! how difficult it is to see you without loving you, and yet how hard will it be for me to*

“love you, if you procure my death. But wherefore, wherefore shouldst thou cease to love her, though she should enjoy the place which thou wouldst dispute with her? and what cause canst thou have to complain, if she had made this conquest before that thou sawest him, and before that thou hadst any interest in him? “But why dost thou so admire (*continued she a while after*) that in the condition thou art in, thou art capable of this injustice: Is it in love that one ought to seek reason? Rather comfort thy self in knowing this, that it was only in a dream that thou didst apprehend thy misfortune, and that dreams though not always false, are seldom true. She sought some repose in this thought, and having dispell’d (by the assistance of her reason) a part of those impressions which might have given her cause of resentment against *Rosamond*; she surrender’d up her self a new to the protection of sleep: But because it was day er’e sleep begun to close her eye-lids; she waked so late that the Queen of the *Cimbrians* (who by the privilege which her sex and friendship gave her, came to visit her a bed) was entred into her Chamber, and sat upon the side of her bed, before she opened her eyes: so that the first object which struck them in receiving the light, was the very same which perplex’d her mind the greatest part of the night.

This sight, which the remainder of an impression that she could not entirely chase from her mind, began in despite of all her power, to render the Queen’s presence less acceptable than (till that moment) it had been unto her, surprizing her with astonishment: and at the same instant recalling to her memory, all that her fatal dream had foretold, it extremely troubled her, and caused her to sigh and blush. The *Cimbrian* Queen no sooner spied her eyes open, but she gently embraced her; and kissing her divers times gave her the good morrow: and the fair *Amalazontha* not to appear insensible of her Carests, though perhaps she received them with less sensibility than at other times; drew her fair Arms out of the bed, slung them about her neck, and embracing her returned her kisses: but because at the same instant, her vision returned to her memory, entirely such as it appeared in her sleep; she could not conceal what it put in her mouth: and giving the Queen the last kiss with sighs, whose violent passage she could not obstruct, “Ah my Sister, *said she*, must it needs be you that must render me thus miserable? She had scarce uttered these words, moved thereto by a strong passion which she was not Mistress of; but the blushes which appeared on her face, witnessed her repentance: and the adorable *Rosamond* who had heard them with astonishment, looking earnestly upon her; “How Sister, *said she unto her*, is it I that render you miserable? “Alas dear Sister, *replied Amalazontha*, do not take notice of what I say, for in truth I am not very wise. “You are too wise (*replied the fair Queen*) to have uttered those words without reason, and I am too sensibly touched thereby to leave you at quiet till you have explained them. “You will soon see my wisdom (*replied the charming Queen of the Turingiens*) when you shall understand, that before my sleep I extoll’d my happiness in your friendship, and that through a dream I complain and exclaim against you. “I will not answer, *replied Rosamond with a smile*, for the harm I may do in your dreams: but in sincerity I know I shall never wilfully do you any, and that there are none in the world, to whom your repose and happiness is more dear than my self. “This good intention (*replied Amalazontha with a fained smile*) doth not secure me from the mischief which my dream foretold, and you might well (although it were true) sincerely love me, yet cause the misfortune of my life. “Make me understand then, *said Rosamond*, what this dream was which doth me so much prejudice, and then permit me to explain it with less disadvantage to my self than possibly you have done. “You can apprehend but little by my dream (*said Amalazontha very sorrowfully unto her*) so far as you are wholly ignorant of the state of my mind: and I shall inform you both of the one and the other, as soon as I am mistress of a sufficient courage to do it. “It is not courage that you want *said the Queen unto her*, but rather an entire confidence: and if I have no merited it whilst we were friends together, I shall not demand it of you now your dream hath set us at variance: I told you yesterday, dear Sister, *replied Amalazontha*, that nothing hindered me from telling you my misfortunes, but a desire I cherish’d to maintain my self in your esteem, and a fear that you had not kindness enough for me to attribute to my misfortune, and not to my natural inclinations; what really springs from my misfortunes. “When I shall be known to you sufficiently, and so much beloved by you to hope it; I shall open my heart farther unto you than you desire: and likewise to the Princess of the *Sueves*, who interestes her self equally with you in my afflictions, and whom through an opinion I have of her mildness) I should less fear than your self in confessing my weakness. “You have little reason to fear either the one or the other, *said the charming Queen*, or to expect a larger knowledge, or a stricter amity from us, since it is most certain (for I dare answer for *Albifinda*, as well as my self) that none can have a more sincere friendship than we

“have

“have really for you : and that we already sufficiently know you, to judge of you as ad-
 “vantagiously in all things as your self can desire. But if you have any reason to conceal
 “from us what we are ignorant of, or any reluctancy to let us understand it, do not con-
 “strain your self, dear Sister, to inform us of any thing, till you really believe you shall find
 “some relief by imparting it to us : since you may sufficiently assure your self that the con-
 “cealment can no ways alter our amity. In the interim you may rise for it is something
 “late, and when you are dress’d we will raise the Princess of the *Sueves*, who still sleeps as
 “I am inform’d : and we will endeavour to find (for the remainder of the day) some diver-
 “sion together to qualify our misfortunes : for you may well believe dear Sister, that
 I have my share of them as well as you. After these words, she called for her women, and
 caused her to dress her self before her : *Amalazontha* did as she desired, and a while after
 they went forth together to the Princess *Albisinda’s* Chamber. Passing a Gallery which
 was in their way, they perceived on the one side the Prince of *Persia*, and *Martian* coming to-
 wards them, and on the other, *Gondioch* and *Godegesle*, who most courtcously gave them
 the time of the day : and taking them by the hand (which their Squires then quitted) led
 them to the Princess of the *Sueves* apartment : but so soon as the Queens told them, that
 she was in bed and slept, they took their leave and left them at liberty. *Albisinda* was yet in
 effect a sleep, through the care which *Imbergrida* had taken to favour her repose, and had pos-
 sibly slept much longer, though the Sun had half finished his course, if the Queen of the *Cim-*
brians who had been that day the most vigilant, had not waken’d her by accusing her of
 slothfulness. “What dear Sister, said she, you fancy your self still at *Strazone*, and believe
 “you are to sleep in War, and a Camp like this as peaceably as at home. “As I am no great
 “warriour (said *Albisinda* unto her rubbing her eyes) I confess that I accustom my self to the
 “maxims of war against my will, and yet possibly this night I was the last sleeper amongst
 “you. “I may perhaps dispute with you upon that point, said the fair *Amalazontha* unto
 “her, and peradventure (added the Queen of the *Cimbrians*) that those that complain least,
 “have not enjoyed a sleep, either more large or more peaceable than yours : But as for you
 “dear Sister (said she to *Albisinda*) who appear much more at ease than my self, and less
 “afflicted than Queen *Amalazontha* ; I would willingly know what employments can have
 “interrupted your sleep, since yesternight that we parted. It is not just (said she smi-
 lingly to her) that you should always know my affairs, for in fine I will begin to keep something
 reserved to my self. That will not prove perhaps so easie as you fancy it, said *Rosamond* unto her,
 for I know you so well at present, that it must be very hard for you to conceal any thing from me.
 I will not affirm the same of you, replied *Albisinda*, since I am very confident that you have often
 entertain’d thoughts which you have not communicated to me. Ah Sister, said the Queen, with
 how little reason do you accuse me, it being most true, that I often discovered those things to you,
 which I strive my self to be ignorant of. For the Queen of the *Turingiens* (replied the Princess
 of the *Sueves*) she is very careful in preserving a Secret : but if she have this advantage on the
 one side, to know that we cannot betray her ; she is deprived on the other side, of that comfort
 which we might administer to her griefs, had we the knowledge of them. I perceive, said *Amala-*
zontha, that I shall not in the end be able to defend them against the desire you have to know them,
 although possibly I ought rather to dye than to declare them, and that I run an eminent danger to
 lose (if you have not a great kindness for my misfortune) a great part of the esteem and affection
 you have for me. But because it is very important for me, to make you judge of my inclinations,
 by other proofs, than those which you may extract from the confession I am to make you : before I
 come to it I shall relate to you with method, those principal events of my life which confusedly may
 have arrived to your knowledge : and by the discourse which I shall make you, I will fortifie my
 courage for a confession, which will make me so much ashamed of my self, that perhaps were you in
 my place, you would hardly confess so much to me. “Ah dear Sister (said the Queen of the *Cim-*
brians) do not impose this violence upon your self, to satisfy the curioly of *Albisinda*,
 “who was never so unreasonable as she appears at this time : and yet doubtlesly only ceases
 “to be so, by intercessing her self so much in your griefs. But rest assured that our friend-
 “ship will never take it ill although you should always conceal this secret from us, which
 “you have so much reluctancy to discover. The resolution is already made, said *Amalazontha*,
 and since it is so, the greatest difficulty is vanquish’d. But as through the design which I have to
 inform you of those passages of my life you are ignorant of, or but imperfectly know ; I am to make
 you a very long discourse, it is necessary that you should this day afford me the conveniency to per-
 form it, in some place where we may not be interrupted. If you please (replied the Princess of
 the *Sueves*) we will dine together here in private, and upon the appearance which I will make of
 being indispos’d, I shall charge *Imbergrida* to give out, that you desire to be here alone for some hours,
 and to intreat those that have a design to see you, to defer their visits. The two Queens approv’d
Albisinda’s

Albisinda's proposal, who only dress'd her self by halves, by reason she design'd to keep her Chamber that day, and to receive again Prince *Viridomar* in the Evening: and having caus'd their meat to be brought thither, they din'd together without any company but such Ladies as us'd to wait upon them when they eat in private.

After dinner *Imbergida* put in execution the order which was given her, (which was very cruel to the amorous Princes, who could not lose without much displeasure though but for an hour the sight of their beloved objects:) and the Princesses having dined in a private Lobby, *Albisinda* who was not quite dress'd, flung her self again upon her bed: *Rosamond* seated her self close by her, and the Queen of the *Turingiens* who was to speak, placing her self in a Chair, remained a long time silent; either to finish her resolve, or to recal to her memory those things which she had to say, and having often chang'd colour ere she could give liberty to her tongue, she express'd her self at last in manner following.

The History of Amalazontha.

BEfore I enter upon the recital of those things I am to inform you of, or rather of those last which I am to confess unto you (for I shall more easily make you a repetition of the former) give me leave to hope fair Princesses, that though the confession which I am to make you of my misfortune, should cause me to lose something in your opinions, it will not at least deprive me of any thing in your affections, and that you will rather attribute it to my sinister fortune, or to the anger of heaven, than to any thing which may render me unworthy of your friendship; that you will rather pity than condemn me, and that you will not deny me that consolation I desire of you, in a misfortune the most great, or at least the least common, which might befall a Princess of my birth. And upon this hope, after I have inform'd you of those accidents (whereof some part have been sufficiently important to come imperfectly to your knowledge) I shall pass to the severe confession I am to make you, of the original cause of my affliction; the remembrance whereof already clouds me in some confusion.

It is not necessary that I speak to you of my Birth, which is as well known to you as my self, nor that I tell you I am descended from many Kings to evidence my illustrious Blood. You likewise know, there only proceeded from King *Cutheric* my Father, the deceased King *Amalaric* and I, and that (my Mother dying when I was young) I was bred by my father's care with the Prince my brother, seven or eight years elder than my self. The King omitted nothing in our education, and finding me very conformable to his desire, he caus'd my youth to be carefully improv'd in all those Sciences he saw me naturally addicted to, or that he fancied might please him. He found me a proficient in all, and that for Musick, Dancing, and other accomplishments, few persons of my age excel'd me. Besides this, my person was not so contemptible (if I may be permitted to discourse thus of my self before the two perfections of the Universe) but that the discourse of flatterers (joyned with the love my father bore me) easily perswaded him that I was a fair Princess, and this received opinion easily augmented the affection he had for me, for he neglected nothing, to let me know it, of what he might produce for my advantage. I was bred up with a noble train, in a Palace magnificent for a person of my age, in the fair City of *Lepbane* situated upon the *Elbe*, a River to us sufficiently known: which taking its source in your Dominions, and passing through the King of the *Sueves*, and in course through the Country of the *Calucons*, and of the *Catules*, traverses all *Turingia*; and then powers it self into the Sea, between the Country of the *Cauches* and the *Saxons*: And therein I consum'd my childhood, which no memorable Actions renders worthy of recital. I shall therefore pass it over, believing that it can only prove tedious unto you: and shall tell you that in fine the tranquility of my first years was troubled with the publick, and that the King my father's dominions were cruelly assaulted by the *Saxons*, a furious and barbarous people; who some years since got footing upon our Coasts, and made all tremble by the terror of their Arms, from the shore of *Suevia* to the Ocean. Part of them fell with great forces into *Denmark*, and in a short time reduced that King to great extremity, from which he recovered himself by the valour of Prince *Viridomar*, who by divers triumphant victories acquir'd immortal glory in that war. Their other forces under the conduct of *Genselaric* the King's Son; came thundering upon *Turingia*, and by reason they surpris'd the King my father, who enjoyed a profound peace (while the other people of *Germany* were in Arms) they made a
greater

greater progress on the instant, than they could possibly have done had he been prepared: and foraging all the Country which they covered with a horrible number of armed men, they rendered themselves masters of all places, even to the Country of the *Angilons*. The King with his forces opposed them with all possible diligence, and Prince *Amalric* my brother, commanding them, acquired in divers battles he gave them a very fair reputation: but fortune was no favourer of his real courage: for through a youthful presumption, and a too great confidence of his valour, having hazarded battle with troops weaker behalf than those of our enemies, contrary to the advice of his old officers, and the King's intention, who was then sick at *Lephane*; he lost it with a great part of his men, and with the battle he lost his liberty: for covered with divers wounds, he remained a prisoner to our enemies. This great misfortune entirely ruined our affairs, for although the King with an extraordinary diligence, gathered forces from all parts of his dominions, and put all things in the best order was possible for him; he neither found himself in a condition to sustain the puissance of the Enemies, considering his own weak condition; nor to keep the field before so victorious an Army, which like a Torrent ravaged the whole Country: He might have hoped some succour from his Allies, but besides the impressions of fear which the Arms of the *Saxons* had already imprinted on all nations, which made them loth to draw their fury upon themselves; there were few Provinces which were not either engaged for themselves in war, or that found not themselves interested in the Alliances, which were enter'd into all *Germany*, either for the *Romans* and the King of the *Cimbrians*, and of the *Sueves* who fought for them, or for *Pharamond* and the King of the *Burgundians*, of whom the last had already obtained great advantages against the former; and the first began to make himself known by his early victories; so that the King of the *Turingiens* finding himself constrained to defend himself with his remaining forces, and deprived of the succour he might receive from his Son's valour; had not only always the disadvantage, but likewise saw many of his Towns lost, without being able to relieve them: and was in fine constrained to inclose himself in his Capital City, and put the *Elbe* between his remaining forces and his Enemies. From thence he sent for relief on every side, and yet received it from none: and a few days after the *Saxons* being come to lay siege to that City, gave him to understand that he must be reduced to the last extremities, if the Gods did not pity and relieve him.

As he was Master of a great and resolute courage, and that he had many more men than was requisite for the defence of the City, and a free retreat on the other side of the *Elbe*, which being in that place six times as large as in *Bohemia* or *Suevia*, hindered our Enemies, from besieging us (without much difficulty:) on the other side, he did not stoop to his misfortune, but endeavoured to the utmost of his power to resist it. I do not tell you any thing of my thoughts in that conjuncture, for you may well judge that interesting myself as I ought in the misfortune of our house and dominions, that I passed immediately from their ruine to the grief of a father who tenderly loved me, to the Prison of a Brother whom I had always dearly loved, and to all we had to fear in a City besieged. I suffered all that a person of my Age and of my Birth at such a time of distress could suffer: and every day with tears, implor'd the Gods to send those succours, which were necessary in so pressing a misfortune. The Gods in time sent it us from those hands whence we could least expect it; and I cannot without ingratitude but confess, that it was in a season when the King had no more hope of preserving any part of his Dominions: and had absolutely resolved to retire himself with me (by the way we had free on the other side of the *Elbe*) to some City which still remain'd to him on that side. But at that very time a fleet of fifty or sixty ships, appearing upon the Coast of the *Cauches*, came to an Anchor just at the mouth of the River *Elbe*. The Fleet was composed of *Gauls*, and commanded by the valiant *Ambiomer*, who by the fame of his valour had not only made himself known amongst the *Gauls*, but doubtlessly through the world. I believe you have heard much speech of his name, and that it is not necessary, that I should make you a copious recital of those brave actions, which have given him so great a reputation in the world to make you know him. *No Sister*, said the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, for there are few Nations and few persons even in the world, that ought to be strangers to the name of *Ambiomer*: For fame hath even given us an account of what he acted in *Turingia*, but not so orderly as to make us to dispense with the relation we expect from you. I shall make it you as succinctly as is possible, replied the fair *Amalazontha*, as well not to weary you with the length, as because I am little vers'd in the affairs of war, so that I cannot discourse of them but very imperfectly.

Arriving at the mouth of the *Elbe*, *Ambiomer* understood the war which the *Saxons* waged in *Turingia*, and the sad condition to which our affairs were reduced, and so far as much as he was a person that fought for honour in the War, and one that believed he could

could not find it but on the juster side, and was therefore an enemy to iniquity and oppression, and by reason of the rumour every where spread, of the *Saxons* cruelty, he had contracted a kind of hatred against them, and so resolv'd immediately to succour us, and to embrace this fair occasion of employing his valour in so legitimate a cause. He drew his Soldiers easily to consent, for they respect'd him as if he had been their King, although it was only for his own virtue that he then commanded them; and knowing that by the *Elbe*, Vessels of the greatest Burthen might pass a great way into *Turingia*, with the Sea Tide, which flow'd as far as *Marionis*, of which place the Enemy was then in possession; taking a time fit for his purpose, he made up the River with his Ships, and by the help of the Tide, advanced with an admirable diligence without any opposition, and without the *Saxons* least knowledge of his approach: he landed at a place very near *Marionis*, on that side where the Enemy was encamp'd; and having set ashore some of his Horse on the other side of the River, by which the passage into the besieged City was free, he sent them to advise the King of his Arrival to his succour, of the order of his march, and of the design he had to assault the *Saxon* Camp, counselling him to make a sally upon them with all his Forces, upon the signal he would give him of his arrival. The King received with an excess of joy, the news of a relief so little expected, and being conscious of the reputation of *Ambiomer*, he easily consented to his proposal: and to abridge the recital of those things I cannot discourse particularly to you, I shall tell you, that all things were executed as *Ambiomer* had designed, as well by reason of his diligence and good conduct, as through the negligence of our Enemies, who believing they had no other Foes to combat, than those behind the Walls of *Lephane*, neglected the Guard of their Camp; so that *Ambiomer* assaulting them on the one side, and my Father sallying out upon them on the other, with all his Forces, before they could dream of making any defence, *Ambiomer* and his *Gauls* had made a bloody execution; and at last when they had rally'd, and came up in good order, he fought them with so much valour, that on all sides he cover'd the ground with their dead carcases, and struck such a panick astonishment into their Camp, that he scarcely found any farther resistance, in gaining a passage to the King, who had assaulted, and broken with equal vigour (on his side) the Ranks of his Enemies, chasing the *Saxons* from those Posts and Trenches they possess'd nearest the City, and lodging his *Gauls* therein, who promis'd to defend them at the price of their lives. Having given necessary orders, they entred the City together, where the King received and treated him, rather according to the grandeur of the service he had received, and the future occasion he had of his assistance, than according to his Birth or Quality; for (as you may well know) *Ambiomer* was neither descended from Kings nor Princes, but only from Knights, who like himself had acquired Glory in Arms, and by their valour, had rendred themselves illustrious in their Country.

He had sought his first reputation in meaner employments, but raising himself from degree to degree, he had obtained in fine, such a rank amongst the Soldiers, and rendred himself so illustrious by many fair victories, in combating against the *Romans* for his Countreys liberty, that not only a considerable part of the *Gauls* had elected him for General of their Armies, but at the age of twenty five, which he then numbred, he had rendred himself the person most esteem'd; and most considerable for martial employments that was amongst the *Gauls*; fame recounted of him admirable things, as well for the valour of his person, which he had manifested in all his Combats, by actions which transcended belief, as for his understanding in War, which surmounted the capacity of the most ancient, and most famous Captains, and for his winning behaviour to gain the hearts of the Soldiers, amongst whom he was establish'd in such reputation, that they believed themselves invincible whilst he fought at their head. With these military virtues he possess'd all others in their highest perfection, and besides his knowledge in War, he was much more dignified with Learning, than you could believe of a person that had been always trained up in Arms, which Learning of his was accompanied with an admirable and natural eloquence. All his inclinations were tending to good, his manners full of innocence and equity, and with all these qualities you could rarely see a person of so good an aspect, nor more grateful in all his actions. I speak nothing of him to you which is not perhaps beneath the truth, and you will have reason to know at the end of my discourse, that it is not passion makes me speak in these terms. I saw him with the King as soon as he entred the City, and the King presenting him to me as a person to whom we owed all, I received him both as the importance of the relief he had given us did merit, and as his fair reputation, and as his advantageous presence oblig'd me. I saw nothing in his person which I did not judge worthy of consideration, and I wish'd nothing more in him, but the sole quality of a Prince, which

which was wanting. He saluted me, and spoke to me with a profound respect; and when I thank'd him for what he had done for us, he received my discourse with a better grace, than I could have expected from a person born and nourish'd in War; and he made me know that his courage was not greater in War, than his wit grateful and pleasant in Courtship: For my self, I know I was not displeasing unto him, as the sequel will sufficiently testify; but this time we had but a short entertainment, and as he well knew, that he had no time to lose, in finishing what he had so well begun, he employed that which he had, in learning the estate of the place, and the condition of our Army, and in putting himself in a posture to attack the Enemy, before they had time to unite their Forces after their defeat and disorder: He performed it before the next morning, for believing, himself with those men he brought with him, and those of ours that remained, too strong to be enclosed, he not only sallied out at their Head, but making use, like a great experienced Soldier, of the advantages of the former Combat, he charged the Enemy whilst they were yet in disorder, beat up many of their Quarters with great loss to them, and caused them to judge by the several assaults that he made, that his Forces were much greater than in effect they were; he constrained them to raise the Siege, and encamp at greater distance, but he left them no more there at quiet than before; for having entreated the King to slay at *Lephane*, where he might better provide for things necessary, than in marching with the Army, where his presence was not requisite, he tyred them without intermission, assailing them every day with great advantages to us; and in fine, so weakened them, that he believed himself in a condition to give them Battel, which because they did not refuse, as being yet much more numerous, he would not refuse them, and by his own admirable valour gained it so entirely, that there scarce remained a *Saxon* alive to carry news to his Country of their defeat. All their Officers were slain, and their Prince *Genselaric* with many wounds which he had received in fighting valiantly, was taken prisoner, and with much difficulty preserved by the care of *Ambiomer* from the fury of the *Turingiens*. After this Victory, all the Cities that were in the *Saxons* power, returned to the King's; and the *Saxons* which kept them, demanded no better conditions than to have the liberty of retiring safely to their Country. *Ambiomer* chased them all out of *Turingia*, and having rendred it as peaceable as it was before the *Saxons* arrival, he returned triumphantly to *Lephane*, where some days before he had sent *Genselaric*, with design to exchange him for *Amalaric*, whom the *Saxons* had sent into one of their Castles immediately after his taking. The King had honourably treated *Genselaric* as well through a consideration of his Dignity, as the recommendation of *Ambiomer*, and testified unto him, that notwithstanding the just resentment he might have towards him, for a war which he had waged with much injustice against him, he should suffer no greater displeasure by his captivity, than to be obliged to restore him his Son for the price of his liberty. *Genselaric* with much joy had accepted the proposition, but by reason he was much wounded, the King believed it more necessary to endeavour his recovery, than to labour in the exchange. The same day that *Genselaric* was conducted to *Lephane*, *Rambaud*, Son to the King of the Oriental *Frisons*, arrived there with some Troops he brought to our relief, which he had conducted into *Turingia* by passing the *Visurgue*, after he had cross'd the *Bruçteres* Country. Although his succour came late, and was fruitless, the King omitted not to own the obligation, knowing well when he left his Country to come to us, the War was neither finish'd, nor we able to judge what would prove the event thereof; and for this reason, and that which was due to his Birth, and to his illustrious Rank, the King received him as honourably as he could have possibly done, if he had arrived in our greatest necessity. *Rambaud* appeared much troubled that the war was finish'd without him, and that the glory was wholly *Ambiomer's*, whose fortune was envied by the greatest number of the young Princes of the age, but he had now no better way than to comfort himself with the proofs he had given of his good intentions, and to testify the share which he took in the King's joy, who after he had seen his Crown shaken, and his Dominions on the brink of ruine, now saw himself victorious, and peaceable in his Kingdom, by the valour and assistance of a person that was neither his Subject, nor Allye. The King really made him those acknowledgments to which he was obliged, calling him openly his Deliverer, his Defender and his Protector, and professing himself incapable to acknowledge what he owed him, unless he made him a tender of that same Crown which he held from his victorious Arms: And when he returned to *Lephane*, triumphant, and laden with Honour, and yet with as much modesty, as if he had performed nothing for us; he did not only go out of the City to meet him, and the victorious Army he brought with him; but he commanded me to accompany him with the principal Ladies of the Court, telling me, we could not render too much to a person, to whom we

owed all things, and that he was more obliged, to perform this Honour to a Knight that had rendred him his Crown, than to a great King to whom he was not indebted. As the importance of those reliefs we had received of *Ambiomer*, merited in effect, that we should pay him that honour, I disposed my self thereto without any repugnancy; and I confess, that I saw *Ambiomer* that day in a condition, which might have infused favourable thoughts for him, into a heart that had greater dispositions to love. He marched at the Head of his Army, upon a very beautiful Horse, which he managed with the best grace in the world; his Arms were rich and magnificent, and being he was not to fight that day, his head was only covered with a small Helmet, shaded with a hundred white plumes; his shape appeared in his Armour the best proportioned in the world; his posture frank and unaffected in the Saddle, and his countenance so sweet, and so noble, that I believ'd (with all those that that day saw him) few men in the world could equal him: even the Prince of the *Frisons*, who had accompanied the King thither with ill will enough, being then near my Chariot, was constrained to agree to that opinion; but he no ways approved it, till *Ambiomer* alighted to make his obeysance to the King, the King descending from his Horse to embrace him, and render him all those observances which might be due to a King's Son. In short, the King being alighted approaching him, embraced him a thousand times, and told him all that a just resentment could put into his mouth of most obliging, and most honourable for him. *Ambiomer* received these marks of acknowledgment with much of modesty and submission, although with a free and cheerful aspect, and very gracefully opposed those praises which he had justly merited. After he had saluted *Rambaud*, who had alighted with the King, whom he treated with a more than ordinary respect, having learn'd who he was; the King conducted him to my Chariot, telling him, that since by his valour, *Amalazontha* and the other Ladies had obtained the liberty to go forth of a City, wherein they had been so long time immured, it was very just that they should employ it in coming to thank their Deliverer. *Ambiomer* replied very modestly to the King's discourse, and following to the Chariot, he saluted me much less like a Vanquisher, than a person vanquish'd; and he shewed much less courage and assurance at that time, than doubtlesly he had done in the Combat. He replied nevertheless like a man that well understood himself both to the acknowledgments I made him, and to those praises I justly rendred him; and when I represented unto him the importance of what he had done for us, *It was very hard, Madam, said he, for those Enemies which fought against you, to have fortune favourable, for the victory can never be hardly obtained by those that fight on your side. It is not to me nevertheless that this honour is due,* replied I with a smile, *and if that of triumph amongst us, as with the Romans, were in use, it would be to you, and not to me that they would offer it, and one might justly confess, that few victories have so well merited it. Is it not a triumph sufficient for him* (said then the Prince of the *Frisons*) *to see the Princess Amalazontha come to meet him: was there ever Roman Captain that received an honour parallel in theirs? I confess,* (said *Ambiomer* unto him) *that it is much above my merit, and the service I have done, and I am not so presumptuous as to attribute it either to the one, or the other. You may attribute it unto both,* said the King to him, *for these marks of acknowledgments would seem very light, if we should not give you others of more importance.* After these words and some others little differing, they all remounted, and returned on Horseback to the City, where the King not only that day, but at all other times, made *Ambiomer* know, that he thirsted with no greater desire, than that of acquitting himself of what he owed him, by all those ways that were possible for him. He likewise used his utmost endeavours therein, and on the instant offered him all his treasures, and all the Dignities of his Kingdom: but although *Ambiomer* testified no contempt of what he offered him, he would not accept of any thing, and only entreated the King to be pleased, that his Soldiers might benefit themselves with a part of that which they had gained upon the *Saxons*, whose Camp they had pillaged after the victory. The King would have given them greater recompences, but *Ambiomer* opposed it; and the King seeing he could not oblige him to receive any of those marks of his acknowledgment he had proffered him, although he presented him Provinces, resolved in despite of all denial to leave one to posterity in a Brass Statue, which he caused to be placed upon that Gate by which he entred the City, the first time that he vanquish'd the *Saxons*, and underneath the figure, which was equal to his natural proportion, on Horseback, and in Armour, he caused this Inscription to be writ.

To the eternal memory of the valiant Ambiomer, Deliverer of Turingia.

They treated in the mean timewith the King of the *Saxons*, Father to *Genselaric*, for his

his exchange for *Amalaric*; and by reason he was then engaged against the *Danes* in war, which began through the valour of Prince *Viridomar* to change the face of his affairs, he not only accepted the exchange of the two Princes, but he very willingly accepted of a peace; and after that it had been on both sides ratified, he sent back *Amalaric*, although *Genselaric* was still amongst us, knowing well that it was only an expectation of the healing of his wounds that retained him, and that after the peace concluded between the two Crowns, he remained with us not as a prisoner, but as a Friend, and an Allye. The peace being in this manner concluded, *Ambiomer*, who seeing that his Soldiers did nothing but pillage the *Turingiens*, who had already too much suffered, resolv'd to lead them back into *Gallia*; but the King could not consent to his departure, though he permitted it to his Army; and he entreated him so earnestly to remain some time with him, that *Ambiomer*, who perhaps had less mind to leave us, than he made us believe, resolv'd to comply with his desires, and sent back to their Country four thousand Horse, and ten thousand Foot which he had, under the conduct of their principal Officers, who as well as the Soldiers returned very sorry to leave him in *Turingia*, nor had they resolv'd to depart, but upon his promise to head them again within a short space. The Prince of the *Frisons* having found some reason to remain amongst us, sent likewise back those Troops which he had brought, so that within few days we were discharged of our men of War: But we had in our Court *Genselaric*, *Rambaud* and *Ambiomer*, the first staid by his wounds, the second, as he said, to see *Amalaric*, whom we expected, and the last to comply with the King's will; but all three by one and the same reason, more forcible than the other, as soon after appeared. *Amalaric* arriv'd some few days after, and by his arrival brought an inundation of joy into my Father's heart, into mine, and of all the Court, which for many days after gave publick demonstration thereof. The King received him with all tenderness imaginable; and I felt at his presence, all that joy which a real amity could possibly make any person feel upon the like occasion.

As *Amalaric* was generous, so he presently visited *Genselaric*, who was now almost well of his wounds, whom we had often before visited, and treated him as honourably as was possible. He likewise gave great testimonies of esteem, and acknowledgments to the Prince of the *Frisons*, who intimated to him an earnest desire of being link'd in a strict amity with him: but when he knew *Ambiomer* for the person to whom the State owed its safety, the King his Crown, and he his liberty, he omitted not any thing might make him judge he had a resentment proportionable to the greatness of the benefit, and finding him constant to his resolution, of accepting nothing the King had offer'd him, with which the ambitions of other men were usually contented, he perceiv'd in fine they were all beneath his courage; so that for the future, he look'd upon him with an esteem which could not permit him to present him any other recompence, than that which he found in the glory of his Actions.

Genselaric in the mean time being perfectly recovered, and receiving both from the King, and the Prince my Brother, an usage which might make him judge that his stay in our Court, was not displeasing; In lieu, of thinking of his departure, he put himself in an equipage conformable to his quality, and begun daily to visit me. *Rambaud* did the like, and *Ambiomer* came very often with them: But although the last, through the greatness of his services, and the advantages his person had upon theirs, had reason to believe himself more welcome than they; he was much less bold in his visits, and proceeded in all things towards me, in a manner much different from theirs; were it because he was conscious to himself, of the want of that dignity they gloried in, or that he had a natural inclination to act with more respect; but however it were, whilst the others spoke, he was for the most part silent, though he could have discours'd much better than they upon any subject, yet many times methought his eyes express'd more than their words. *Genselaric* could not see him without shame, nor resentment, by reason he still remembred how he had vanquish'd him, and snatch'd a fair Lawrel from his hand: and *Rambaud* bore an envy to his glory, and could not without much disaffection, endure that he should raise himself by his virtue, to a degree nearer his than he desired. *Genselaric* was a Prince couragious and valiant, he was of a handsome stature, but his aspect was somewhat grim, his wit tasted much of Barbarism, and the rudeness of his Nation, to let you know it was no way acceptable: *Rambaud's* was less rude, and indeed no way displeasing, when he pleas'd to shew it; but he was naturally proud, and much more conceited than he ought, of the greatness of his Birth, and merit of his person; he had a reasonable handsome aspect, and a high courage, full of ambition. As *Rambaud* and *Genselaric* fancied themselves of sufficient quality to mention love to me without offence, they both made me in a short time know the affection

they bore me: But *Ambiomer*, who certainly had much more than they, concealed it to the utmost of his power, and acted a violence upon himself, to which, through their presumption they no ways judged themselves obliged.

The first that discovered himself to me by discourse, was *Rambaud*, who was naturally of a bolder spirit than *Genselaric*; and by reason he met not often with opportunities to speak to me without witnesses, he took one day his time as I went out of the Temple, with design to take a turn or two in a pleasant walk which fronted the Portal, he accosted me, and my Usher through respect quitting my hand, he ceremoniously assumed his office; and taking occasion to speak to me of what I came from doing, *You come from praying to the Gods, Madam*, said he to me, *but I believe it was in a manner very different from ours. And what difference*, said I, *believe you to be between my prayers and yours? That*, replied he, *which may put us either in assurance, or incertitude of obtaining what we demand; for as you are certain that the Gods will deny you nothing, you petition them more boldly than those that have not that assurance. If I hope to obtain any thing of the Gods better than you*, replied I to him, *it is because I shall demand things more reasonable of them; for I know no other reason which can assure me of a greater credit with them than yours. You must pardon me*, added he, *if I am not of that opinion, and if I believe that amongst the Gods, as well as amongst men, the Dignity of the Petitioner is no less considerable than the justice of the petition. I cannot agree to your assertion*, replied I unto him, *without accusing the Gods of injustice; and besides, should what you affirm be true, that Dignity which creates a difference amongst men, hath not before the Gods the same effect, for the meanest have no mark to distinguish them there from the highest. Nor is it*, replied *Rambaud*, *of that Dignity you understand, that I would speak, for well I know, the Gods ought not to bear you more favourably than the people, because you are Princess of the Turingiens, but because your Beauty is celestial like theirs, and that like them you have Temples, and Adorers much more religious, and submissive than those which prostrate themselves before their Altars.* He spoke these words in a manner sufficiently passionate, to make me apprehend the sequel; and to divert his discourse, *I did not believe*, (said I very coldly unto him) *that you had thus designed to conclude, for there is a vast difference between real adoration, and adorations imaginary, of which you speak. Ah, Madam*, replied he very smartly, *call not imaginary, that which is the most real in the world; and believe, if you will be equitable (like the Gods) that no adoration is more true than that I have for you.* Although I might have foreseen, by what had appeared some days before in the looks, and in the behaviour of *Rambaud*, a great part of what I then experimented, I could not nevertheless entirely defend my self against the surprize and displeasure his hardy confidence had caused; nor had I the power to dissemble it, but looking on him with a severe fierceness, *I cannot credit*, said I to him, *that what you find of divine in me should render me more formidable, for if to you I had been so, you would perhaps have been more timorous in exasperating me. You see nevertheless*, said he, *that the Gods are never irritated by any of those marks we give them of our affections towards them, but on the contrary, ordain and require it of us. The Gods may do as they please*, replied I very briskly, *but since I am no Goddess, you will do well to consider me as a Princess, to whom you owe a respect.* All *Rambaud's* confidence could no longer defend him from that astonishment which my severe proceedings had created in his mind, which was the more surprizing, because (by reason of the good opinion he held of himself) little suspected: so that returning to my Chariot, I got to it, and was mounted therein before he could recover himself. Although *Rambaud* were of a sufficient quality to evidence without offence, the design he had for me, I could not nevertheless (through a natural aversion I had to love) abstain from testifying my displeasure; and methought no man ought to have treated with me in that manner, without first obliging me (by my Father's orders) to suffer it. But if *Rambaud* that day angered me, *Genselaric* two days after was guilty of as much, for in the King's chamber, where we were, seeing me solely approach the window, I know not with what design, he followed me like a person that had some news to tell me; and having accosted me with a countenance which shewed less of assurance than at other times; *I know not*, said he, *wherefore you retire from the company, nor which of us it is you sue thus; but as a prisoner is privileged, I take the liberty to come and trouble your retirement.* *You may come*, replied I, *for several other reasons, but not for those you have alledged; for you well know you are no more a prisoner. I cannot*, replied he, *be longer the King your Father's, but I shall be yours even to death; for all the peace which can be concluded betwixt our Fathers, is not able to free me from your Chains.* *My Chains*, said I to him, *as much exasperated by his discourse as I had been by *Rambaud's*, are not perhaps so soft as you believe them: and you may as soon weary yourself in this Prison as in the former. I may suffer there*, replied he, *but never be weary of my sufferings: for the glory of this*

Prison will sufficiently sweeten its rigour, so as to make me willing to continue therein with pleasure to the end of my life. I doubt (replyed I somewhat hastily) you would never find any pleasure there, and as I should not have more than you, I neither desire the effect nor love the discourse. *Genselaric* at this answer remained some time as if he had been struck dumb, but at length going about to prosecute his discourse, he presently saw himself interrupted by *Amalaric* and *Rambaud*, who were then approaching us: And *Rambaud* might for his satisfaction have perceived in my looks, if he had observed it, that *Genselaric's* conversation had been as little grateful to me as his. I treated happily too roughly with those personages whose birth equaliz'd mine, but besides that methought their proceedings were not very conformable to the respect they owed me, I could not believe there was any man in the world, whose love I could endure, so much had the Gods endowed me with a soul, contrary by nature to what it is since become through my misfortune. *Amalaric* discovered my displeasure in my countenance, and as the jealous *Rambaud* had made him observe *Genselaric's* actions, when he followed me to the window, and had perhaps obliged him to come and interrupt our discourse; he easily imagined the cause: and taking me apart from the company; Is it not true, said he drolling, that *Genselaric* hath a mind to begin the War afresh with you, and that if we would believe him, we should sooner become allyed, than return to our former enmity. I know not, replyed I, his intention, but I know that if I consult my own, there is already a sufficient alliance between us. I shall not, replyed *Amalaric*, promote a greater, for I avow I have not sufficiently pardoned him, for the shame he made me undergo, to take his part against a Lover that was more grateful to you. "No lover, replyed I, can ever be pleasing or grateful to me, for that quality would render odious the most amiable person in the world. In these words I then spoke the reality of my thoughts, as being ignorant of my future destiny: and *Amalaric* smiling to himself, having heard what I said; "As for *Genselaric*, Sister, said he, I may excuse you: "and should you not much affect *Rambaud*; I should not much oppose you: but if *Ambiomer* had a descent equal to theirs; I cannot fancy you could hate him, because he had an affection for you." I know not, replyed I, what I should do, nor is it necessary I should; "since that *Ambiomer* can neither become a Prince, nor hath any affection for me. "The "one might more easily happen than the other, answered *Amalaric*, and I could wish that in "acknowledgment of our obligations unto him, it were as ealie for me to make him a Prince "as for you to give him an affection. "You are too much conceited of my power, replyed "I to him, but all the world is not of your opinion: for a soul like *Ambiomer's* cannot be so "easily vanquished as anothers might be. *Ambiomer* approached us whilst we were thus discoursing of him though with much less boldness than the others, as a Person timorous of being wanting in his respects by interrupting our converse. *Amalaric* presently assured him, that his company could not but be always very grateful to us, and a while after seeing that no body over heard us; "Sister, (said he smilingly to me) *Ambiomer* is too much our friend "not to be admitted into our familiarity, and there is no person you can better advise with, "upon the choicé you may make of *Rambaud* or *Genselaric*. These words with those he "spoke before of *Ambiomer* created a blush, but the vermilion which appeared in my cheeks "was little considerable, in comparison of the change you might have observed in *Ambiomer's*: which in effect was such, that the Prince my brother could not abstain from "asking him whether he were indisposed.

He notwithstanding very quickly recovered himself, but as neither he nor I had answered to what *Amalaric* had spoken to me: "What (continued he, addressing himself to *Ambiomer*) would you not counsel my Sister, if you found her at a loss which of these two Princes to prefer: It is not my Lord from me, said *Ambiomer*, that the Princess upon such an occasion would take counsel; for I believe either the King's or yours would be sufficient: But if she did me the honour to demand my judgment, concerning those Princes merits; I should with sincerity declare it. "Do us then the favour if you please, replyed *Amalaric*, for if she dare not make you that demand, I will request it for her. "I find, said *Ambiomer*, that both the one "and the other have much of merit, but neither sufficiently deserving to render them worthy "of *Amalazontha*. He accompanied these words with an action so full of concern and passion, that might easily make me judge he had an interest himself. But although they flattered me, I could not abstain from hearing him with delight: And looking on him very favourably; "Either you have, said I, too good an opinion of me, or a very bad one of those "two Princes: or else you will make me believe that you love not *Rambaud*, and that you "still cherish some resentment against *Genselaric* for those evils he did us. "As for *Rambaud*, replyed *Ambiomer*, I know him not sufficiently either to love or hate: and for *Genselaric*, I ceased to hate him, when he ceased to be your Enemy. But neither hatred nor "any resentment could hinder me from doing them justice: and methinks to judge them "unworthy

“unworthy of a fortune, which in my opinion no man can merit, is not to injure them: You do them so much the less, replied I to him, forasmuch as they think not of me; and that the Prince hath only put me upon this discourse to try my humour. “It is true, replied Amalaric, I had a mind to try your patience: But however I spoke it sincerely, and I spoke it before Ambiomar, because that after the service he hath rendered us, we ought not to keep any thing a secret from him. We had perhaps spoken farther upon this subject, but the King’s approaching us, hindred the prosecution of this discourse.

But if the boldness of *Rambaud* and *Genfelaric* were displeasing to me, their following proceedings were less agreeable: for they not only continued upon all occasions to speak to me as they had begun, and to make publickly known their affections for me; but believing to advance their affairs more with the King, than me; they address’d themselves to him: and endeavouring to prevent each other, they declared almost at the same time their design, and employed their utmost eloquence to make him approve it. As in effect it could neither offend the King nor me, they being both of a Quality that might openly declare it; the King received the knowledge very civilly, and without any sign of repugnancy: but he neither determined in favour of one or the other, for although he had had the intention, he had found it somewhat difficult to resolve. For in the dignities and Persons of these two Princes, there was not sufficient difference to incline him more towards the one than the other, and that which might more place the one in his inclinations, was sufficiently balanced by other powerful reasons. He was much more obliged to *Rambaud*, who was come into his Kingdom for its defence; than to *Genfelaric* who only entred it to ransack and ruine it: and consequently he ought to have been more favourable to his Ally than to his Enemy: But the *Saxon* considering the situation of his Territories, was a more formidable Enemy than the *Frisson*, whose Territories were separated from his by many Provinces, whereas the *Saxon* was his Neighbour both powerful and terrible, of whom we were every day in danger, and whose people were always seeking new occasions of war. This reason might hinder him from declaring himself, when his inclinations leaned towards *Rambaud*, and the fear of being accused of ingratitude, when it inclined to the other: so that he politickly explained himself to neither: but in acknowledging that their intention did much honour him, he gave them to understand that before they engaged themselves farther, they ought to learn the King’s their Fathers intentions, which happily might not be conformable to theirs: and that he was not ignorant of what ought to be observed between Kings in designs of this nature. By this means he gained time of these Princes, without being obliged to declare himself in favour of either: and I remained in the mean time exposed to their persecution which made me to suffer much, through the small disposition I had to hearken favourably to them. They spoke likewise thereof to Prince *Amalaric*, and equally endeavoured to render him favourable to them: But although his inclinations leaned more towards *Rambaud* than *Genfelaric*, the reason which had hindred the King from declaring in his favour, worked the same effect upon him: so that he let the King act according to his sentiments, without interrelling himself either for the one or the other. The King who always loved me with an excessive tenderness, and who was resolved not to vex me or make me unhappy, by contraining me to espouse a person, for whom I had no kindness, consulted my inclinations upon the choice of these two Princes: But although he found it entirely disposed to obey him, he nevertheless perceived it so far distant from any kindness to either of those Princes, that it caused him to defer the resolution he ought to have taken. They both in the interim remain’d at Court with magnificent Trains, making their expences answerable to their quality and their design: proposing every day some new braveries, either to make known their addresses, or to display their magnificence in emulation of each other. They daily met both in the King’s and my apartment, and as they were Rivals and competitors in the same design, they were not only in all things opposite to each other, and on all occasions testifying their little Amity; but without doubt had pass’d farther, without maintaining a verbal quarrel, but that they feared to offend the King, and displease me.

Whilst these were satisfying themselves by a publick manifestation of their passion, another person in this occasion less bold, though happily in all other things the most hardy of men, consumed and languish’d away without daring to declare his. *Ambiomar*, for you well know it is of him I speak, beholding with grief the defect of his Birth, though he knew himself greater than Princes by his Courage, and not doubting but that it was an invincible obstacle to his desires; covered with a respectful silence, the love he had really for me: But he could not restrain his eyes, which in despite of his Modesty did frequently discover it, nor to well order his countenance, but that you might easily perceive therein that his heart was wounded. After that great action he performed in our favour, he was in such credit

credit in our Court, that you might have said he reigned there, had he been of a humour to have made use of his power; for the King having no way through the refusal he made of his offers, to acknowledge his obligations, chiefly testified his acknowledgments by the esteem he had of his counsel, and in the care he took to advance the persons he offered to dignities, and in preventing his thoughts in all things he judged might please him.

Ambiomer used his credit with an excessive modesty, but as the love of virtue reigned always in his Soul, he indulged the unfortunate virtue of his power, by advancing, through his recommendation, those persons about the King that he knew deserving, or that might have need of his assistance; so that by this generous and obliging humour, he had contracted in the Court a great number of Friends, who would for his interest have willingly exposed their lives. On the other side, the glory of his Actions, as well those he had performed in our defence, as those which had formerly acquir'd him such a reputation amongst the *Gauls*, having made the impression which they ought, upon the minds of our people, they not only looked on him as their valiant Defender and Deliverer, but as on a miraculous person, infinitely advanced beyond all others, so that he was received where ever he passed, with such acclamations and marks of honour as might amply satisfy the most ambitious Spirit, and the greatest admirer of glory in the world. Although he received nothing from the King, (I mean nothing but praises and marks of esteem and affection, such as I told you) his equipage was not less beautiful, nor his expences less magnificent, than the two Princes, for he received from his Country (whose liberty by many fair victories he had purchased at the price of his blood) much more than he desired, and more than was necessary to make him surpass the magnificence of others, and to testify his liberal inclinations by presents of greater price, which he made upon all occasions which presented themselves, with the best grace in the world: In fine, by all that appeared of his fortune, he had reason to rest satisfied, yet might we easily perceive a discontented mind in his countenance; and that in daily contemning and refusing what might satisfy the ambition of others, he aspired to somewhat more than was presented to him, and languish'd with a desire he durst not manifest. He saw me as often as he could, and when he could, he absented himself from company as much as good manners would allow of. Some times would he ride abroad to vent his griefs in the Country Air, and other whiles shut himself up in his Closet, as there either to read or write, which was easily believed, the world knowing his inclination to study, and how much he had thereby profited; and he would often retire himself into the Gardens of the Palace, which are the most pleasant in *Germany*, for the number and beauty of their Walks, and their situation, near the Banks of the *Elbe*, which delightfully watered it.

As his person was perfectly well compos'd, and that he had nothing, neither in his mind nor body, that was any way displeasing, he was not only well received amongst the men, but he had more than one Lady in our Court that cast favourable eyes upon him, and none by whom he was not well received; but although he rendred them all that they could hope from the civility of a valiant Knight, well born, and well educated, and that none had reason to complain of him; there was not one to whom he testified any particular affection, and fewer, whose company he courted when he could handsomely avoid it. But when he was engaged, and chiefly at Balls, or other meetings of Divertisement, he eclipsed the glory of the Princes in all they undertook; and as he surpassed them as much in address, and good grace in dancing, and all other exercises of the body, as in a good deportment, and all sorts of becoming qualities; and that he had no kindness for them, which obliged him to dissemble his advantages to please them; so when he made them known, he so much outshone them, that as soon as he appeared, they were scarcely looked on. They were both much enraged and exasperated against him, and had willingly express'd their resentment, but that they knew what person they had to do with, and saw what an esteem and consideration the King had for him. He was one night in my Chamber with them, together with many Courtiers of both Sexes, into which both *Rambaud* and *Genfalaric* press'd out of emulation to come near me, and endeavour'd by all their words and actions to testify what they had in their minds, *Ambiomer* had taken a place behind me, where he stood in a study, without meddling in our discourse; and because in turning my self divers times that way, I had perceived him in that condition, and that one time particularly I heard him fetch a deep sigh, and saw upon his countenance characters of an inward disturbance, I rais'd my head towards him, and speaking very low, because I would not be heard of any but himself: I pray, said I to him, *inform me what it is that employs your thoughts, and what moves you to sigh and rave as you do.* *Ambiomer* appeared somewhat surpris'd at my question, but very readily recovering himself, and making a quick reply:

You ask me, said he, a nice question, and I know not, Madam, whether I can answer to all as you command me. You will do it, if you desire to oblige me, said I, for it is a long time since I have desired any thing so earnestly. After this command, replied Ambiomere, I cannot dispense with my self, and I shall tell you, Madam, I begin to day to do that I never did in all my life, to complain of fortune, that she did not cause me to be born a Prince. You have so many other advantages, (said I to him, seeing that none listened unto us) that you may easily comfort your self for that defect, for you well know, that few persons in the world have so much esteem and glory in the world as your self. I confess, replied Ambiomere, that there are Princes of so small a merit, that all things considered, I never wish'd till now to resemble them, but because they have the advantages of speaking, when others must be modestly silent, and of expressing all that lies upon their hearts, when others are obliged to dissemble it; I confess that I envy their condition. Although these words might have much informed me, I then made no reflection on them, but answering Ambiomere according to the real esteem I had for him: And what can you have to dissemble, said I to him, in a place where you have all acquir'd by your merit, and by your services, and where you can desire nothing, but what you may be assured of obtaining. I desire then, said he, if you will permit me to be for this day silent, if you please to do me the favour, not to oblige me to a farther discovery. These words followed by some sighs, and the passionate behaviour which attended them, ought perhaps to have made me have known what he concealed from me, as much as the greatest demonstrations could have done, and really I cherish'd a kind of suspicion in my thoughts, but it was not sufficiently strong to convince them, yet it hindred me from pressing him any farther. At divers other times he departed himself after the same rate, and might have made me perhaps sufficiently know the love he had for me, if I had been desirous of that knowledge; but as I both avoided and feared it, I did not dive into those things which might prove the cause of my discontent, irritating me against a person to whom I owed so much, and for whom I had so great an esteem.

In the mean time, both what he suffered, and the violence he imposed upon himself to conceal the cause of his sufferings, wrought their effect as well upon his Body, as on his mind, and you might perceive his countenance to wax paler, and his health to impair. The King who was therewith excessively afflicted, demanded of him every day the cause, the like did Amalaric; but neither could learn it from his mouth, though both had possibly very great suspicion thereof: and whilst they perplex'd themselves, and that all the Court interested themselves in their griefs, through the high consideration they had of Ambiomere. Genselaric and Rambaud who hated him, and viewed all his Actions with envy, rejoiced in their Souls, although their fear to displease the King, hindred them from testifying it publickly; and taking their time whilst his indisposition, and the weakness it caused, disabled him from being a party in their Divertisements, in which he was always accustomed to eclipse them; they made many in which they did shew (in emulation of each other) much Magnificence and Address. Ambiomere beheld them with much discontent, though he found some comfort in the little effect they wrought in my soul to their advantage. But one day he had much ado to support their arrogance, in a kind of Tournament that they made in the great Piazza before the Palace, as it is now much in use in the world. They had obliged all Knights of the greatest ability to be at the match; and Amalaric would likewise have made one, but they had entreated him to dispense with it, and to permit them for that day an honour which they would not dispute against him. They were entred upon the place mounted upon very stately Horses, and clad in very glorious and costly Armour, with devices suitable to their design, and the name of Amalazontha deciphered in their Impress: They had broken many Lances upon each other without any considerable advantage, and in fine, by a mutual consent, they forbore to tilt at each other, and had placed themselves in the lists, with design to maintain it that day against all the Knights of the Court; and really as they had Address, Force and Valour, they had acquir'd honour by many fair Courses, for no Knight had presented himself which they had not born from his Horse. I was at the window of the Palace, with the principal Ladies of the Court; and that day also Ambiomere, who bore in his countenance the characters of his languishment, had taken his place behind me, which he took as often as he could, for the advantage it always gave him to speak sometimes in my ear, without being heard of the company. As he saw all that pass'd in the place, and heard the peoples acclamations for the fine courses of the two Princes, he from time to time enquired softly of me my judgment concerning them, and when in fine he saw the two Princes had almost beaten down all the Turinquean Knights, and that swelled with the pride of their success, they rode about the place with an insupportable arrogance; and that at the beginning

beginning of each course they turned themselves towards the Window where I was, and by bowing down of their heads implor'd my favours: putting his Lips to my Ear, as he had already divers times done; *Is it not true Madam,* said he, *that you divertise your self admirably well, and that you look with much joy upon the fine courses of these two Princes that adore you, and merely for your love perform them. I have so much joy* (whispered I softly to him) *that I could heartily wish to see their pride well humbled: If you so much desire it,* said he unto me, *it may possibly happen: for I know a person that would happily pay you this piece of service, if he thought it might be acceptable. I doubt not,* replied I, *but you might have well done it your self, had you been in a better condition: but as you are you have done well in abstaining from so violent an exercise. I confess,* said he sighing, *that I am in a bad condition, and in a worse than you imagine, but it ought not to hinder me from seeking all occasions to please you.* I replied not to these words, by reason the King called to me at the same time, to make me take notice of what then past in the Piazza. But that being over, turning my self on his side to speak to him, I perceived he was not there, and having enquired after him of those persons that were near him, they told me that he found himself indispos'd, and was therefore retired. I immediately doubted the cause, but believing that I should pleasure him by keeping it secret; I discovered it to none: and continued in the mean time gazing upon what passed in the Piazza, expecting what was to succeed upon *Ambiomer's* departure. The attendance was not so long as I expected, for as he lodged in the Palace and required but little time to go to his Apartment to Arm himself: and that from thence he had a back pair of Stairs, by which he might descend without being perceived. I spied him much sooner than I expected, enter the Piazza, mounted upon one of the gallantest Horses in the world, and clad in Armour neither less beautiful nor less rich than those of *Rambaud* and *Genselaric*. The Mejestick deportment he had on horseback, rendred him remarkable to all, though (as I believe) he was known to none, but through a jealousy I had of his design, I easily discovered him: And though I expected from his valour some change in the two Princes fortunes, I feared that by the feebleness which then appeared in him, his strength was too much impair'd to produce those brave effects which we might have expected from him in a better condition. The two Princes gazed on him very earnestly, as well for the beauty of his stature, as the richness of his Armour, but as they believed that fortune which had been all day so favourable to them, would not at night forsake them. They had not the least suspicion it was *Ambiomer*, and they saw *Amalaric* at one of the Windows, so that they resolv'd to stand him in the same manner as they had stood the others: and *Rambaud* being advanc'd to run the first, with hopes to spare his Companion the labour, placed himself over against him as he had done in the former courses: and covering himself with his Shield, parted at the accustomed signal. The Course was gallant but the success was not fortunate to the opponent, for *Ambiomer* thrust him with such a force, that he raised him from his Saddle, so that he tumbled over the Crouper of his Horse. This fall raised a great shout through all the multitude, and so much the more because *Ambiomer* performed his Carrier, without being in the least moved in his saddle, where he sat like a Rock. And the King and *Amalaric* looking on each other, and at the same time casting their eyes upon me, seem'd to demand, who this Knight should be that had so well abated the Pride of the Prince of the *Frisons*: But whilst he was rising by the assistance of his Squires, so bruised that he could scarcely keep himself upon his legs, *Genselaric* had taken his place, but he took it with less confidence than he had before the fall of his companion: and arming himself with a strong Lance he ran against *Ambiomer*, but his fortune was nothing more favourable than his Companion's, for without having stirred his Enemy, he and his Steed were both overthrown, so that his horse rowled over and over divers times with him upon the Sand. After these two brave strokes, the Conquerour not seeking any glory from the other Knights, went presently out of the lists, and spurring his Horse he stole himself by his swiftness from our sight, and from the pursuit of those who had a design to know him; and by a Compass he fetch'd coming to a back gate of the Palace, he pass'd without being known amidst the huddle of Knights which were that day armed, and returned with an admirable diligence to his Apartment.

This event so little conformable to the two Princes expectations, was that night the whole discourse of the Court: but they did not visit me as they were wont, either through a resentment of the displeasure they had received, or through the incommodity their falls might make them feel; they spent that night between themselves without being seen to any. All the Court was in my Apartment with the King and *Amalaric*, and *Ambiomer* also came thither. The King, the Prince and divers others had great suspicion of him, as well because they had observed his stature, which was no ways common to other persons, as for that they believed few persons able to perform what he had done: But by reason he was seen al-

most all that day at the window, and that they could not think him prepared for that action, they knew not what judgment they ought to make. The King and the Prince pressed him sufficiently to know the truth, and he defended himself so well, as to take away a part of the suspicion they had contracted. But as for my self, when I spoke to him at the end of my Chamber where I drew him, that we might not be over heard, *Madam*, said he, *whosoever you can suspect to have humbled the pride of Genselaric and Rambaud, I can assure you he only did it to please you: and he will be very unfortunate if he have not succeeded in his design. He is certainly therein very successful*, replied I to him, or rather, *Ambiomer, you have been so, for to me you cannot make it a secret. If this action hath displeas'd you*, said he, *I may well conceal it, but if it were not displeasing unto you, I will confess that it gave me some contentment. You have then no friendship*, replied I smilingly, *to those persons that love me. If they are unfortunate* (replied he blushing) *or if they suffer through respect their misfortunes without speaking, they may create a pity in me: But if fortunate, and that their good fortune render them insolent, it would be difficult for me to love them. I assure you Ambiomer* (said I to him) *you may either love or pity these, for they have no fortune in their love, which may merit your dislike. They have the advantage*, replied he, *of discovering what they feel unto you, and to tell you daily they dye for love of you: and this happiness is not so slight, but it may make them envied by those that are less happy.* These words which he pronounced with a mortal languishment, made me suspect somewhat, and therefore being willing to turn the discourse, *If that happiness*, said I, *had made them proud, I am confident that the accident which this day befel them, hath sufficiently humbled them: and that for some time they will neither return to the Lists, nor be so confident as to brag much. You see I was not ill advised, to take the way I did to bring down their pride, for I could not believe that victory which had accompanied you in all your Combats, would this day abandon you. You will make me proud of my office* (said he with a forced smile) *but although it were true that I had some fortune in the war, I know too well that in all things else, I am the most unfortunate of Men.* He spoke in this manner, and was about perhaps to have discover'd himself farther, when *Amalaric* approached us: and his suspicion being augmented by the secret discourse we held together; he pressed me in such sort before *Ambiomer* to make me confess what I knew, that at last my countenance betrayed me, and *Amalaric* having promised to keep counsel, I confessed the truth, and *Ambiomer* consented to it not caring to conceal it, but through Modesty and no other consideration. Nor did *Amalaric* keep his promise not judging it necessary, and incontinently after having informed the King, who kept the secret no more than he, although he knew that both the Princes could not but be much discontented at it: so that in a short time it was known to the Company and consequently by all the Court. As *Ambiomer* was the person they adored, both for the good he had done us and for his own virtue, the whole Kingdom received this news with an excessive joy, and the Knights which had been born down by *Rambaud* and *Genselaric*, were so satisfied to understand that it was he that had reveng'd their quarrel, that they could not abstain from manifesting their thanks in publick to him. The two Princes knew it that same night, and though the misfortune which had befall'n them, was no new thing among Knights that would venture, and that for the renown of *Ambiomer*, they had no great reason to afflict themselves, but rather to be glad that they were not vanquish'd by any person of less reputation; yet the envy which they bore him obstructed this consolation: and the grudge they had against him in such sort augmented their resentment, that if they had not feared to exasperate the King, and happily to encounter so valiant an Enemy; they had made it appear by some marks of violence. They could not nevertheless so well dissemble it, but the next morning in the King's presence, it appeared in their Faces to the view of *Ambiomer*; although they used a great violence upon themselves to hinder it, and that they endeavour'd to support cheerfully that little disgrace: and they believed themselves obliged to speak the first thereof, to take away the shame which appeared in their looks. *Genselaric* addressing himself the first to *Ambiomer* before the King, *As you had formerly been a Victor over me*, said he, *you might have rested satisfied with that honour, without seeking another less important conquest, in which as well as in the former, fortune perhaps had her share. I confess*, replied *Ambiomer*, *that she hath her part in all things, and those to whom she never gave victory, are possibly indebted to her for advantages they enjoy, not by virtue of their own merits. The advantage of Birth*, proudly added *Rambaud*, *are neither the children of merit nor fortune: And it is not happily contemptible, since so valiant a person as your self doth still owe it a kind of respect. My descent is not Royal*, answered *Ambiomer*, *though it be sufficiently noble not to shame me: and I here render you without regret the respect I can owe to yours. But* (smartly continued he) *when I have my Arms in my hand I respect few persons: and I should cherish a better opinion of you in that condition, if you could force me to respect you.* *Rambaud* was going to reply, and doubtlessly this

his discourse had not ended but in some disorder, had it been maintained in any other place than before the King, who hindred the fatal consequence, and very sharply assured *Rambaud* that his proceedings were no ways pleasing to him, and that from a person such as *Ambiomer*, few Princes could exact a respect which he would not willingly tender. He nevertheless appeas'd all things so well, that through the respect they bore him they proceeded no farther. And whatever resentments the two Princes had against *Ambiomer*, they made no show of it. It likewise appeared to have been smother'd for some days after, till their hopes were re-animated by the Arrival of their Father's Ambassadors, who at the same time came to our Court to demand me of the King, with all those Ceremonies that are used upon such occasions. It was for my happiness that they almost arriv'd the same day, that for the reason which I have told you in this juncture of time, the King might find a way to suspend his resolution; which after succeeded according to my desires: for although he gave to the Ambassadors favourable audience, and assured them that their Masters intentions did him a great honour; he gave them nevertheless equally to understand, that the present state of his affairs would not permit him to resolve so readily, which of the two Princes he ought to prefer, not being willing (if it were possible) either to irritate the one or the other: and thinking it better to wait some more convenient time or change that might happen to give him a greater liberty. And when that *Rambaud* (discouraging upon this subject) told him that he ought to put some difference between an Ally, and a friend that entred into his Dominions to succour him, and a cruel Enemy who came thither to ruine him, and had shed whole Rivers of his Peoples blood. The King told him that this same Enemy who had brought him so near his ruine, might again reduce him to the same condition, if he should force him to renew the War, or if he did not put himself in a better posture to sustain it, than he conceiv'd himself at present to be in. And when *Genfalaric* represented the interest he had to conserve the Alliance, which he had made with such a Neighbour as the King of the *Saxons*, to the prejudice of a Prince, whose Territories were so distant from his, who could neither do him injury nor assist him. The King answered him that he could not (without exposing himself to the reproach of the World) make an Enemy of a King who was his Friend and Ally, and who had sent his Forces and his Son to his relief, and that it was necessary before he resolv'd to make use of such expedients as the present time did not afford.

In this manner he delayed them, without either granting or refusing what they demanded, and expected in effect both time and occasion to take his resolution. *Ambiomer*, whose counsel he took in all things, and whom he respected for his virtue as a miracle, confirmed him in this design, and dayly represented to him, that he ought not to be precipitate in an affair of this importance, upon which, both the repose of his life, and that of his people might have dependance: but by the pressing importunity of the two Princes the trouble of his mind increased, and so much the more, by reason he believed, that the fear of the *Saxons* power was more prevalent upon the King's Spirit, than the memory of the obligation he had to the *Frison*; and that he would in fine permit himself to be sway'd on that side, though his inclination less favoured the *Saxon* than the other, and that this fear might determine his irresolution, in which he found all his safety. I tell it you because he made me understand it himself, and his confidence being augmented by the disturbance of his thoughts, it became at last strong enough to make him break that silence, which till then he had impos'd on his affections. He one day accompanied me to walk in one of the Gardens of our Palace, and as really there was no company there that was so acceptable to me as his, I was content to give him my hand in walking, to entertain my self more particularly with him, than with other persons that wearied me; for this reason we walked at some distance from the rest of the company, which was then only compos'd of persons which durst not interrupt us; and we were walking in the large walks upon the Bank of the River *Elbe*, when he discovered the suspicion he had, that the King's fear of the Arms of the *Saxons*, would at last perswade him to declare for *Genfalaric*, and that the consideration he had for the *Frison*, was not sufficiently prevalent to keep him stedfast in his irresolution; and having made me this discovery with all the marks of a terrible disquiet, *Shall I be so unfortunate*, added he very sadly, *to see you the prey of a person, who shall have gained by Iron and Blood, that which the services of a thousand Princes equal to himself could never merit? And did I unfortunately give him his life in the Battel, to make him triumph over another much better than his, though much less happy? Ah! Wherefore am I not permitted to renew the war with him upon this quarrel? Then should he see, whether the possession of Amalazontha ought to be the prey of a Barbarian.* These words which he uttered with a behaviour the most passionate in the world, revived some suspicions in my Soul, which I had endeavour'd to smother; yet nevertheless, striving once more to dispel them, I hope, said I to

him, that you will never see this misfortune which your friendship makes you fear will befall me; for I have too much confidence in the bounty the King hath testified to me, and hath particularly promis'd me in this very affair, to believe he would render me so miserably unfortunate, as to marry me either to Genscleric or Rambaud. But Madam, replyed *Ambiomer*, if the King had commanded you to espouse one of the two, you would not disobey him. No certainly, made I answer, for were they much more odious than either of them are to me, I would without murmuring espouse either, if the King had so ordained it. *Ab Madam*, (replyed *Ambiomer*, looking upon me very stedfastly) permit me to tell you, that neither *Rambaud*, nor *Genscleric* are in my opinion odious to you, for if they were, you would not so easily resolve to embrace your misfortune. I have no hatred for them, said I to him, that obliges me to wish them ill, but I have a sufficient aversion to their persons, to believe that I cannot be but very unfortunate with either. But *Madam*, added he, is it possible, the love they have for you can no ways change your inclinations, and that you can so firmly preserve them against Princes that adore you. I believe, said I smilingly, that yours have changed within this minute, since that after you have appeared so animated against them, you appear so disposed to speak in their favour. I should acquit my self ill, replyed *Ambiomer*, had I undertaken it; for they could not find in the whole world a person so unfit as my self, to do them such a kindness. But it is very difficult for me to believe, that by the dayly proofs of their love, they will not at length touch your heart; and that a faithful perseverance should not chase from your spirit, the dislike you have of their persons. You believe it, said I, without reason, for it hath been sufficiently experimented, that if the person cannot touch us, the greatest proofs of love are fruitless to obtain an affection. *Alas*, (said he, casting his eyes suddenly to the earth) and what could the unfortunate *Ambiomer* then hope, if with so much disadvantage he had the boldness to love you. These words (though I ought perhaps to have expected them from those that had preceded, and a thousand other marks of *Ambiomer's* affection) astonish'd me so far, as to take from me the liberty of a sudden reply; but at length, to hinder him from explaining himself farther: *Ambiomer* is too wise, said I, to entertain such unreasonable thoughts, and had he entertained them, is too prudent to declare them to me. *Ab Madam*, said he very readily, do not seek wisdom with love, and believe, if you please, that there is no prudence which can dissuade me from telling you, that I die for you. As *Ambiomer* was wholly abandoned to his Passion in speaking these words unto me, so had I almost given my self a prey to anger in listening to them: and I was so distast'd to hear them from the lips of a Knight, born without other advantages than those he achieved by his Sword, who believing that I ought not to endure them from any less than a King, and hardly from such; that by his injury he almost blotted from my mind, the memory of all that I owed to the great services he had rendered us, and all the esteem that I had for his Merit. In effect he appeared quite altered to me in a moment, and considering him much less as a Person that had done so much for us, than as a person that had cruelly offended me, I ponder'd in my mind upon many different resolutions which my resentments insus'd into it: and in time with much difficulty moderating my passion; "I could not have believed, said I, that the esteem and acknowledgments I gave to your Merits and Services, could have made you forfeit the respect that you owe to me. "In the person of one to whom we were less oblig'd, I knew how to punish this boldness "as it deserv'd: and in the mean time I prohibit you from ever more declaring it, if you desire not that I should hate you, as much as ever I esteem'd you. As I did not cast my eyes upon *Ambiomer's* face in speaking these words, I could not observe the effect they produc'd: But a while after I judg'd it by his words; for breaking that silence which for some time he observ'd; "I confess *Madam*, said he, that my rashness is worthy of punishment, but it "was not voluntary: for after I had long suffered, I spoke, compelled by a violence which "acknowledgeth no Empire. I shall without the least murmure obey what you have ordain- "ed me, or else dye if it be not possible to obey you." I would not, replyed I, that you should "dye, but I would have you either obey me or never more see me. Concluding these words, to hinder his reply I stay'd for the Company that were walking behind us, and I am confident if they had observ'd our faces, they might have perceiv'd marks of sufficient trouble, to make them judge the discourse we had held together, was no ordinary conversation.

In truth *Madam* (said the Princess *Albilinda* to *Amalazontha* interrupting her) your proceedings were very rigorous, towards such a person as you have represented him unto us, and to whom you owed so much: and in my opinion the offence he committed, was no way sufficient to make you so readily forget what you owed to his great services. It was irksome enough to such a Princess as *Amalazontha*, (said the Queen of the *Cimbrians* answering to the Princess of *Suevia*) to hear a declaration of love from the mouth of a person to much

“her inferiour: But I agree with you Sister, that this offence ought to have been supported
 “with more mildness from such a Person as *Ambiomer*, than from another to whom she had
 “less obligation, and that she might without treating him with too much rigour, have let
 “him understand she did not approve the fault he had committed, that he might not have
 “the confidence to continue it.” Listen but to the end of my discourse, *said the Queen of the*
the Turingiens, and you may happily find therein greater cause either to bewail or ac-
 “cuse me.

The End of the Third Book of the Fifth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK IV.

THE distaste which I had received at *Ambiomer's* boldness, bred in me for
 some days such a perplexity, which it was very difficult for me to dissemble
 and it was not without grief that I saw my self obliged to change my man-
 ner of converse with a person to whom we had so great obligations, whose
 person I infinitely esteem'd, and whose company was very pleasing to me.
 For in fine, my fair Princesses, you ought to believe that I either wanted
 due acknowledgments for such great Services, or that I was blind to his great Merits: I
 knew the one and forgot not the other, and both together fix'd in my thoughts so good
 an opinion of him, as he might assuredly have therewith rested contented, had he not so
 passionately loved me, I could not in effect remember what he had done for us, without
 having so great a grudge against him, as only freed me from being accounted altogether in-
 grateful: nor could I cast my eyes on his person, or on the glory of his Actions, without
 having for him an esteem and a consideration proportion'd to his merit. But as for love,
 as I believed that I ought not to suffer it, but from a person that might be my Husband;
 and that I would not espouse a person, who notwithstanding all the glory that environed
 him, was but a bare Knight, and a man that from my Royal dignity, would abase me to
 the condition of a private person: so the knowledge of his love touched me with a more
 sensible displeasure than I ever experimented in the whole Course of my life, and it was so
 much the greater, in regard of the high esteem, which with a great deal of reason I had for
 him. I looked upon the default of his birth as a misfortune to my self, since it opposed that
 happiness which I might really have enjoyed in the possession of a person so great in all be-
 sides; so that both for his and my own sake I daily complain'd on fortune: and seeing him
 some time with the Princes, I said often to my self, “Alas! wherefore with so great a merit
 “had not *Ambiomer* the Birth of *Rambaud* or *Genselaric*, and when I saw *Rambaud* or *Gense-*
laric, and was not importun'd by them, “Wherefore, *said I likewise*, were not the merits
 “of *Ambiomer* joynd to such Royal descent.

In the mean time, he conversed with me as I had enjoynd him, and if his eyes and
 gestures did more publish the secret sentiments of his heart than I could have desired, his
 tongue at least observed that silence which I had impos'd upon him; and when chance
 made us encounter alone, in places where no body could hear our discourse, I call it chance

because I thunn'd those occasions, and that he did not seek them for fear of displeasing me, he only acted by his looks what his tongue durst not perform, not permitting one word to escape his lips which might awaken my anger, or give me cause to accuse him of the least breach of that command I had imposed upon him: neither did he speak to me any more of *Rambaud* or *Genfelaric*, for he entertained me with discourses where the lover of *Amalazontha* should have no interest. If on his part he imposed a constraint on himself, I did no less on mine, that I might converse with him before the world, with the same freedom I had formerly done; and this constraint was neither so easie to the one, nor the other, but that divers persons took notice thereof, and *Amalaric* in particular, who through a particular friendship he had for me, interressing himself in all that concern'd me, observed divers times that *Ambiomer* did no more accost me, and spoke to me always with great appearances of fear; and that what endeavours soever I used, I could not receive him as I had formerly done. As soon as he had any suspicion of the truth, he tormented me to know it, and press'd me in fine so far, that through the confidence I had always in him, I could not abstain from imparting the secret, and related to him word by word what had happened between me and *Ambiomer*: *Amalaric* was not unmindful of the great obligations he had to him, and had that esteem for his great qualities which no body could deny him; but he entred into my sentiment, and like me was exasperated at *Ambiomer's* boldness. I confess, (said he, speaking of him) that if a Princely Birth were not wanting, he had sufficient merit to aspire to all things, and that what he had done for us, was enough considerable to deserve great recompences; but he might find them in those offers the King dayly makes him, if he had a reasonable ambition, for it is not at the expence of *Amalazontha* we ought to recompence his merit; though others had such intentions, Sister, I could not suffer it, for you shall espouse none with my consent, beneath a King. He promised me nevertheless, to manifest nothing hercof to *Ambiomer*, and that he would always feign an ignorance of his affections; and in effect he behaved himself to *Ambiomer* conformable to his promise, and changed nothing in appearance of his former manner of conversing with him, not being unwilling to appear ungrateful, nor disoblige a person, of whose valour we might have sufficient use: but he discovered the secret to the King, and related to him word by word what I had told him. The King, who already doubted it as much as he, was much afflicted, but by a motive different from his, and he resentend much more the trouble, which this passion wrought upon the Soul of *Ambiomer*, than the offence he had committed. "How unfortunate am I? (said he to *Amalaric*) and how will it afflict me, if I may not "in this occasion manifest to *Ambiomer* the affection my heart bears him. I could wish as "well as you that *Amalazontha* should espouse none but a King; but *Ambiomer* outva- "lues many Kings, and could I give him my Crown without depriving you of it, I would "raise him with all my heart to that Dignity, not to abase *Amalazontha* in giving "her to him. Look in the mean time, you behave your self towards him, as to a person "to whom you owe your Crown and Liberty; and pray to the Gods, you be not re- "duced to the necessity of offering him your Sister. He could not satisfie himself with speaking these words to *Amalaric* upon this subject; but he likewise spoke thereof to me, and testified so much of esteem for *Ambiomer*, so much displeasure that he could not do for him what he desired, and so much caution to preserve his amity, that it caused me to fear, that his inclinations were more favourable to him than I desired. "I am not angry, said "he to me, that you have a courage proportioned to your Birth, and that you affect not to "descend from the Rank whercin Heaven hath seated you; but I desire you should respect "virtue, and that you satisfie your self in not espousing *Ambiomer*, without looking on the "love he hath for you as an injury, or blemish to your Honour: I hope that time and his own "courage will free him from this passion; and in the interim, remember both what he "merits, and what we owe him, and rather listen to this remembrance, than to the coun- "sels of *Amalaric*, in whom with much grief I perceive ingratitude. He accompanied these words with divers others, which made me understand that he was tenderly touch'd with the merit of *Ambiomer*, and if he changed any thing in his manner of treating with him, it was in testifying much more of affection to him, than he had done formerly, in searching more occasions both to please, and oblige him, and by endeavouring as a sick person, to divert him by all those pleasures which he could procure him. In the mean time, either by the small care *Amalaric* had to conceal it, or by those marks *Ambiomer* gave against his will, his love came to the knowledge of divers persons, and in fine to the whole Court; yet had he the happiness that none spoke ill of his pretensions, but many on the contrary, would say, that a person like *Ambiomer* ought to be preferr'd before a King. For *Rambaud* and *Genfelaric*, they received the news thereof with an excessive rage, and had
thewn

shewn it much more than they did, had they been less sensible of the danger of offending such a person as *Ambiomer*. They had instantly recourse to me, and as the rumour which spread it self of *Ambiomer's* love, had augmented my resentment against him, they prospered in the design they had to exasperate me farther, although they met little success in the hope they might cherish of advancing their own affairs. They likewise spoke to me many times in a double sence before him, but without daring fully to explain themselves; and in fine, they gave him by divers actions to understand, that they were not ignorant of what he endeavoured to conceal from the whole world. When he found they had attain'd this knowledge, he soon grew careless of dissembling it, and believing it a kind of cowardise to constrain himself for such Rivals, he contented himself with obeying the command I had impos'd upon him not to speak to me of his love, and gave the interess'd persons occasion to believe all that the rumour of the Court, and their own jealousies might perswade them. They then found it very difficult to hold their peace, when fit occasions presented themselves of speaking, and principally before *Amalaric*, whom they knew less favourable to him than the King. And going with him one day to course a Stag, together with *Ambiomer* and divers others; this Beast, which at all other times is by nature timorous, is, as they say, furious and terrible when he comes to a Bay; and being near his end, and reduced to that extremity, which is accus'd to give him courage, he turned head against the Huntsmen, and having overthrow'd some with his Antler, and making, with his Head bended downwards (as they say it is his custom) at the first that stood in his way, he constrained *Genselaric* and *Rambaud* to give him passage, and to retire themselves in a sufficient disorder, *Amalaric* likewise avoided his fury by keeping at a distance, as they had done, only *Ambiomer* manfully fronted him, and kill'd him with two cuts of his Sword before their eyes. The three Princes abash'd to behold this action of *Ambiomer*, look'd upon his hardiness and good success with some shame to themselves: but *Amalaric* being less concern'd than the rest, and more careless of signalizing himself in his own Country than strangers, who would display all that might purchase them esteem, very readily recovered himself, and having prais'd the action of *Ambiomer*, as a person that bore him no envy. "We must confess, *said he in course*, that the bravest Atchievements are reserv'd for *Ambiomer*, and that he is not less hardy in the chase, than in the war. "I believe he is so in all, *added Rambaud*, for they say he is not less bold in love, than in the chase or war. "Perhaps they speak but the truth, (*replyed Ambiomer very fiercely*) and as a man cannot make me flee in the war, nor a Stag in the chase, I believe that a Rival cannot fright me in love. "The boldness in love doth not consist, *said Genselaric to him*, in not fearing a Rival, but in having too aspiring thoughts, as yours seems to be. *And your Rival may be such*, *added Rambaud*, *that you may yield to him without disreputation, since it is not valour alone that decides the competitorship in such disputes.* "Whosoever this Rival may be, *replyed Ambiomer*, he might find himself sufficiently embroiled, for I can hardly yield to Birth my self, if it be not accompanied with virtue. *Rambaud* was going to reply, and through the fiery dispositions which then possess'd their Spirits, they might perhaps have proceeded to an extremity, if *Amalaric* had not upon this occasion behaved himself as the King had done in the former, and obstructed by his care the sequel of their sharp dispute.

Since that time, the two Rival-Princes not doubting of the love of *Ambiomer*, and fearing that however inferiour to them in quality and birth, he might either through the King's inclination, or mine, prove happier than they, they turned upon him a part of that hatred they had for each other, and abstained from quarrelling as they were wont, that they might in some fashion joyn interest against their common enemy. But they had not long power to dissemble their hatred towards him; and although they were not ignorant of the influence he had upon the King's disposition, they could no longer constrain themselves to speak, and live with him as they were wont to do: *Ambiomer* made no difficulty to behave himself towards them after his usual manner, and was very glad to be no longer oblig'd to force his inclinations. The King by his prudence hindred this bad understanding from producing worse effects: but he could not hinder what happened a while after, which was of importance enough to have caused many disorders.

Neither *Genselaric* nor *Rambaud* lost any time in soliciting the King for the preferment which each of them hop'd for himself, and besides that which they themselves every day spake concerning it; they caus'd it to be urg'd by their Father's Ambassadors, that they might know his last resolt. But as the King had not as yet taken his resolution, or that he did not find himself in a condition to declare it, he deferred from day to day the answer they demanded, and payd them with those reasons I before related: and in this manner

he amused them so long, that in fine, *Rambaud* believed that his Rival was more happy than he, and that the King would forsake him, and put him off with delays, to give me to *Genselaric* as soon as he could rid himself of him; and *Genselaric* began not to doubt that the King's inclinations were more favourable to *Rambaud* than to him, and that he had an intention to espouse me to him, as soon as he had put his affairs in a condition not to fear a war with the *Saxons*; and even sometimes they believed that *Ambiomer* might be more happy than either, and that it was not impossible, but that the King had designed his Daughter for the price of his great services. Their suspicions were daily augmented by the King's proceedings, who, as they perceiv'd, had no disposition to declare himself; and they went in fine so far, that both the one and the other lost their hopes of obtaining me, by those ways they had attempted, and changed their thoughts to those their passions prompted them to. As their inclinations were very much alike, so they carried them both to the same resolution, and as they had a great number of men and Knights well qualified in their train, as well those that followed them, as those which came with their Father's Ambassadors, they fancied they might carry me away, and that with those men they had, they might conduct me even to those places, where, by the order they had taken, they expected to find a greater assistance.

They could not hope the execution of this enterprize whilst I remained at *Lephane* near the King my Father; but they had learn'd that I was to take the air for some few days, at a House five or six hours journey from thence; and they well knew, that through the small likelihood there was, that any should undertake to force away a King's Daughter from the heart of his Dominions, that I should only go attended with my own Domesticks, and should remain there without any fear of danger. This was it which doubtless gave birth to that enterprize, and they did not only agree in their design, but fate likewise decreed that they should both make use almost of the same means in the execution, for which they both appointed the same day, which was a day consecrated to *Diana*, upon which I was accustomed when I was at this House, to visit the Temple of that Deity, about four miles distance from thence. In all likelihood the safety and security the Daughter of a King might hope for in the midst of her Father's Dominions, and the peace which we then enjoyed might afford me this liberty, so that I made no difficulty in declaring my intention of visiting that place without the least circumspection. I departed in effect from *Lephane*, with a sufficient train of Ladies, but few men, besides those which were necessary for my service; and the Princes *Genselaric*, *Rambaud* and *Amalaric* stayd with the King, together with *Ambiomer*, and the whole Court. I shall not discourse to you the preparations which these Princes made in order to the execution of their design, nor the order they took in placing men on the way to defend them in case they should be pursued, nor in making those which were with them to depart the City without being perceiv'd, so that I shall only tell you, to abridge my discourse, whereof the most important passages still remain; that the day I had designed to visit the Temple of *Diana* being come, I mounted my Chariot with some Ladies of our Court, which had accompanied me to *Birse* (for that was the name of the Palace) followed by another, wherein were my Maids of Honour, and by some men on Horseback, rather for Majesty than defence; and in this equipage without the least fear of what afterwards happened, I had performed the greatest part of my journey, when that in arriving to a part of the Plain where our way lay between two woods equally distant from it, and about four or five hundred paces from each other, I perceived coming out of one of these Woods which lay of our right hand about a hundred Horsemen armed cap-a-pee, and at their head a person better armed and mounted than the rest, who advanced upon a Gallop towards my Chariot, and was followed by the rest upon a large Trot. The posture in which I saw them, and the countenance with which they approach'd me, gave me a sudden terrour, and caused me to divine a part of the truth. The women that were with me drowned in fear, cast up loud cries to Heaven; and from my Chariot which was on all sides open, I cast my eyes round about, to seek out that succour I then believed was necessary, when from a wood opposite to that on the right hand, I perceived another Troop of Knights in the same posture as the former, and little differing in number, with a Knight in the same garb as the former, at their head. The sight of this second Troop augmented my fear, fancying that both the one and the other must needs be Enemies; and I remained quite astonish'd, making my vows to Heaven, whilst the men of my Train were flying in disorder, and he that guided my Chariot being quite dismayed, had stopp'd it, when the two Squadrons (who had put themselves in marching from the time that they were discovered, in a posture of war) came within forty paces of each other, and their two Captains advancing themselves in the midst of that space towards each other with their Visiers up, I knew them

for *Genselaric* and *Rambaud*. After this discovery I no longer doubted of my misfortune, and whilst I was venting sighs and Prayers to Heaven to implore its aid, the two Princes met, and *Genselaric* beginning first, *For ought I see* (said he to *Rambaud*) *you are no happier than I, and that we meet here with the same intention. If I had not believed,* replied *Rambaud,* *that thy fortune had been better than mine, I had not this way sought the possession of Amalazontha; but since the attempt is begun, we must see the end of't, for I believe that neither of us will yield Amalazontha to his Rival. The Vanquish'd,* replied the Saxon, *shall yield her to his Vanquisher, or rather the dead to the survivor, for I do not believe any of us will abandon her but with his life.* In finishing these words he laid hold of his Sword, and the *Frison* at the same time drawing his, they assaulted each other with an equal fury, and made terrible interchangeable passes; but the two Troops suddenly joyning gave them no time to pursue the particular Combat, and they were constrain'd to fight in a body with the rest, and to animate their men to victory both by voice and example: two men of each Troop had stopp'd the Horses of my Chariot, and guarded the Boots to hinder my getting out, whilst the rest were disputing for me at the price of their Blood, and that I saw my self miserably designed to be the prey of the Vanquisher. If I had afflicted Blood, I might have then received some satisfaction in seeing it run so plentifully from my common Enemies, and as I ought to desire equally the destruction of both parties; I might have wish'd a defeat to both, but the victory to neither; I am not so well versed in Combats to discourse to you effectually of this, nor to describe it at length; I shall only tell you, that the passion which obliged the two Princes to combat, having an equal influence on both parties, animated them in such sort, that in a short space you might perceive the earth covered with dead bodies, and all floating with blood. As the two Princes well knew there was no other way but the sole path of victory which lead to my conquest, so they pursued it with an unparallel'd fury, and I certainly saw them perform against each other, actions worthy of a better occasion: but when they were most furiously blooded, and engaged in the Combat, and that the number of their men were reduced to the moiety of what they were, by the same rode we held from *Lephane*, they perceived another Troop coming, and that it advanced with all speed towards them: some of my women having discovered it, advertised me at the same instant, and casting my eyes on that side, I discovered it as before I had done the former, and instantly believed they might arrive to our relief. Whilst I was flattering my self with this hope, *Rambaud* (who of the two Princes discovered it first) called to *Genselaric* with a loud cry, and by his voice and action having obliged him to hearken to him: *Behold there,* (said he to him, shewing him the Troop that was coming) *behold, without doubt Ambiomere is coming to deprive us of Amalazontha: 'tis he, 'tis he himself who intends to take her from us both: let us joyntly turn our Arms upon this common Enemy, that he may not through our dissention triumph over us; and when we have vanquish'd him (if fortune please to give us the victory) we will finish our dispute.* *Genselaric* approved his purpose, and having given him to understand so much by a motion of his hand, and the command he gave his men. The remainder of both parties reduced themselves in an instant into one Squadron, and joyning themselves with as much union, as if they had never drawn each others blood, they ranged themselves behind their Captains, who placed themselves at their head, expected their Enemies with a brave resolution, and with a resolution so much the greater, by reason they perceived when the distance permitted it, that they were not much weaker in number than they, and that they might apparently hope the victory. *Rambaud* was no ways deceiv'd when he judg'd it was *Ambiomere* that the Gods had sent to our relief, for it was really he himself, who upon the absence of the Princes and their Trains, which both disappeared at the same time, having suspected the design, declared his jealousy to the King; and mounting his Horse at the same instant, with those men he found ready to follow him, without expecting greater force, put himself upon the rode towards *Birse* with fifty or sixty Horse; before he overtook us he met some of my men, who by informing him of all that had pass'd, had animated him with a rage, which joyned to his great courage, made him contemn the number of his Enemies, and hope a victory over them. He was weaker almost by one half than they, but besides that, his presence more fortified his party than their number could have done, a part of the Enemy were either wounded, or wearied in the former Combat, and those that followed him were men of another courage, and higher quality than those they were going to encounter: neither did he stand to consider one minute, but thundering upon them with a loud cry, he shook in such sort the resolutions of the two Princes, that neither the one nor the other opposed themselves to his encounter. They did wisely to avoid him, for he that endured it felt the power of his Lance, which piercing through and through, appeared all bloody behind his

his shoulders: immediately after he drew his sword, and thrusting himself in the midst of his enemies, with a fury which nothing could equalize; he destroyed as many lives as he had given blows with his sword. His great example animating his men, made them to fight with an admirable valour: for *Genselaric* and *Rambaud* quickly discern'd that the advantage of their number, gave them no assurance of the victory.

They laboured nevertheless on their sides with a great deal of courage to obtain it, but valiant as they were, they did not seek to encounter *Ambiomer*, nor were they displeas'd at the affections of their Men, who plac'd themselves before them to defend their lives from so eminent a peril. Oh how many brave Actions did I see performed in this occasion, by that valiant Person, which merit a recital which I must confess my self incapable to make you; and how often did I complain to heaven, for giving Birth to such a man as he in a Rank so unequal to mine. I really bemoan'd it as a misfortune as great for my self as him, and amongst the prayers which I then made to the Gods, the consideration of my interest had not perhaps a greater part than that of his safety. In fine by endeavours prodigious, which would not easily find belief could I relate them, he constrain'd victory to turn to his Party, but not without buying her with the greater part of his men, and a large share of his blood. He had lost much already by some wounds he had received, which the ardor of the Combat perhaps hindred him from feeling: when perceiving the trouble and disorder amongst his Enemies; amidst the bravest he forc'd his passage to *Genselaric*: and having got to him with a menacing cry, he charg'd him so terribly that he made him in a few moments see death before his eyes. *Genselaric* receiv'd him with a great deal of courage, and to the utmost of his strength, contend'd for victory: But it was much inferiour to *Ambiomer*, for he saw his blood distil upon his Armour from several wounds, and only hop'd his safety by some desperate blow: when that *Rambaud*, who would have seen him perish with joy at another time (but in this had turn'd all his hatred upon *Ambiomer*, whom he believ'd the happier) arriv'd to his succour, and passing behind *Ambiomer*, thrust his sword in his Flank: which through a default of Armour in that place, pass'd into his Body. *Ambiomer* felt the cruel wound, and turning towards him that gave it whom he knew at the same instant; *Base Coward*, said he to him, *thou hast kill'd me but thou shalt dye for it*: and in uttering these words, he forsook *Genselaric*, and made at *Rambaud* with so terrible a blow, that the *Frison* as valiant as he was, felt a mortal Ague which congeal'd his courage, and not having the boldness to meet him, retir'd affrighted amongst his men. when that the furious *Ambiomer* making his way with his sword against all those Obstacles which oppos'd them; forc'd his passage to him, or rather came thundering upon him like the Royal Eagle on his astonisht Prey, and thrusting his sword through his Viscer, that it pass'd to the other side of his Helmet, he thereby threw him breathless bathed in a River of blood under the Horses heels. After this revengeful stroke, he turn'd himself to *Genselaric*, and with a menacing countenance, pronounc'd to him a destiny parallel to *Rambaud's*: But the *Saxon* affrighted by the death of his Companion, and seeing his life at the point of the victorious sword; lost courage and was not ashamed to seek his safety in his flight. *Ambiomer* (who felt himself dying by the great wound he had receiv'd) and whom the desire of revenging his death had inflam'd with an extraordinary rage, follow'd him a while with much heat: But his strength did not second his anger, for extinguishing it self with his blood which ran in great streams to the earth, he began to totter on his Horse, and few moments after fell from his Saddle. Those that remain'd of his men, having no more Enemies to combat, for that the death of *Rambaud* and the flight of *Genselaric* had quite dissipat'd them; ran to him, wounded with fear and half dead with grief: and (casting themselves on the earth) made a circle about him, and endeavour'd to succour him by stopping the stream of his blood, which was all that their affections could inspire them.

I had seen from my Chariot the fall of *Ambiomer*, and I saw it with all the resentments that a high esteem and a just acknowledg'ment could give me: and being no longer held by those Enemies which had before deprived me of the liberty of going forth of my Chariot. I quitted it with a grief that did no ways permit me to resent the joy of that relief I had receiv'd, and running with all my force, together with those persons that were near me, to the place where our most valiant defender was extended in a stream of his own blood: I caus'd the croud to give place that was about him, and present'd my self to him, when he had scarce left in him any remainder of sense or knowledge: Nevertheless he had some for me, and seeing me near him; in a condition that might make him judge, that my soul was wounded with a real sorrow; he seem'd touch'd with a kind of joy, which for some moments retain'd his remaining forces, for finding enough to speak to me with a more lively posture, than his weakness (in all appearance) could permit him; *Madam*, said he to me,

You have prohibited me from living to adore you, but not from dying for your service, and without disobeying your commands, I have the happiness once more to tell you I dye for you. I hope you will not receive these last words for so great an injury as the former which I spoke to you, and that if my boldness hath merited your anger, you will give me a pardon at my death, which I willingly suffer for you. He would have spoken more if I had not opposed it, through the knowledge I had of the endeavours he used to speak that, and looking on him with eyes in which he might read that I was not insensible of his misfortune; For the offence you committed, said I to him, I did not require the reparation you have given me, for my anger was sufficiently appeased by the obedience you have testified: And I desire farther of you, if I have any power over your inclinations, and conjure you to live, by all the desires you have to please or obey me. If it were possible I would observe your orders (replied he with a faint voice) but inexorable death will take no notice of them, and I am happily more obliged to him than to your pity, which only commands me to live to render me miserable. These last words came from him with much difficulty, and some moments after his face was entirely clothed with a mortal paleness, and his eyes closing themselves, he remained in a Trance within the Arms of those that were labouring to stop his blood. I know not Sisters, what judgment you will make of the sentiments I had then for *Ambiomer*, but you may believe the truth, in believing that a person who had the most of affection for him, could not have been touched at that time with a more real sorrow than my soul felt: And although I had nothing of love for *Ambiomer*, I had so large a knowledge of his great merit, and in my heart such a resentment of his great services, and particularly for this last, which at the price of his life he had rendred me; that it was difficult for me to see him in that condition he appeared to my eyes, without suffering all that sorrow, which affliction in her highest cruelty can make us endure. I gave leave to the standers-by to judge as much by tears, which I did not so much as restrain from shedding themselves upon so just an occasion. Whilst a part of those that were employed in the helping of *Ambiomer*, were labouring to make him a Bier of some branches they had cut with their Swords, to carry him more easily to *Birse*, than could be done in the Chariot; the others had almost finished the binding up his wounds, and particularly that he had received from *Rambaud*, which had pierced him almost through; for the others were not very dangerous. In fine, both parties having finished their work, they put him upon the Bier, and every one striving with an unparallel'd affection to carry him, they raised him softly from the earth, and so marched with him a slow pace towards *Birse*, after they had dispatched some men that were best mounted to *Lephane*, to fetch the King's Chirurgions, and such others as were best experimented in the preservation of a life that ought to be so dear to the *Turingiens*. Before we reached this house we encountred *Amalaric*, with a strong Troop which he brought to our relief: and if through the Amity he bore me, he particularly interess'd himself in what had befall'n me; through a remembrance of what he owed *Ambiomer*, he considered the danger to which his life was reduced, with an extraordinary grief: But the King's (who arrived at *Birse* about Sun-set) was so immoderate that he could not have evidenced a greater for the Prince's death, or loss of his Kingdom: and when he perceived upon their countenances that searched his wounds in his presence, the little hope they had of his recovery, he abandoned himself to all those extremities of grief, that the most violent sorrow could produce in a heart which had no succour to oppose it: and he gave such evident marks thereof, as rendred all those that were near his Person, partakers of the same affliction: Oh! *Turingiens*, said he, you lose to day your valiant defender, and were you sensible of the greatness of your loss, you would deplore it in tears of blood: Oh valiant *Ambiomer*, the glory of our age, and the Protector of the weak and oppressed: Must Heaven take you from the unfortunate *Eutharic* with so much cruelty, and is this the reward you receive from a King and Kingdom, who had nothing great enough to offer you. He accompanied these words with many tears, and was so sollicitous in causing this illustrious wounded person to be served with care, that the meanest person in his Court, or the most affectionate of the *Gaules* could not have done more. He appeared pretty well satisfied of me, because he knew by many Signs that I was really afflicted, but by reason he fancied, there did not appear upon the face of *Amalaric*, such an excess of grief as was due to so great a misfortune; and that he had already suspected in him some ingratitude for his service, and envy to *Ambiomer's* glory; he looked on him with an eye enflamed, and could scarce endure to see him. He was not nevertheless obliged to testify to many his discontent upon the same occasions, for besides the complacency they had with his inclinations, the virtue of *Ambiomer* joyned with the memory of what he had done for the *Turingiens* safety, had link'd them to him with so strong an affection, that the danger which threatned his life, appeared as if it were the ruine of the Republick, and through all the Court who posted to *Birse* in great crouds, and amongst the people at *Lephane*, you might remark a desolation little different from that which appeared

when the City was reduced by the *Saxon* Army to its greatest extremity. The first day they recovered *Ambiomer* out of his swoon, by the force of those remedies they had applyed, but permitted no person for the space of many others to visit him, and he remained a long time without any hope of his recovery: But in fine, those skilful persons that endeavour'd it, began to believe that it was not impossible that he might live, and a while after they told the King, that if the heavens assisted them, and that the wounded would lend a helping hand, they did not despair of his recovery. He that first carried this happy news to the King, knew the excess of his joy by the magnificent present he received from him, and by the same degrees as this hope augmented in his soul, you might (as it were) perceive him return from the grave, wherein this affliction before had plunged him. He had sent honourably back the body of *Rambaud* to the King of the *Frisons* his Father, and excused himself to him for the misfortune, to which he had no ways contributed, and for which he entreated him not to become an Enemy to a Prince so innocent, and so ancient an Ally: And at the same time he had dispatch'd an Ambassadour to the King of the *Saxons*, to complain to him of the injury and violent enterprize of his Son, and to entreat him not to uphold and sustain his evil intentions. But the care and diligence he used like a sweet and peaceful Prince to appease their resentments, did not succeed to his desires, for a while after he received but too large intelligence of what he fear'd.

In fine, after he had given much fear and affliction, to all those that interess'd themselves in the safety of *Ambiomer*, the Gods were pleas'd that they who labour'd therein, had greater reason to hope than fear it, and by little and little all the symptoms were so favourable that they did not any longer forbear from assuring the King of his recovery, or at the least from telling him, that if he had no other wounds than those of his body, they would be responsible for his life: but that they well perceived he had others in his mind, that gave them more fear, and which doubtlesly might hinder, or at best retard his cure. As the King was fully perswaded of the great love *Ambiomer* had for me, he no ways doubted but that was the inward wound which the Chirurgions had discovered, and that I was the person to whom he ought to address himself for remedy; so likewise he performed it, rather like the father of *Ambiomer*, than of *Amalazontba*: and he made me easily judge by his proceedings, that nothing was dearer to him than the life of this valiant person: *Amalazontba*, said he to me, *if you love your Father, if you love your Country, or if you love your self; preserve, both for your self, for me, and for the Turingiens, the life of Ambiomer: and since that glory is reserved to you, do not refuse it through an ingratitude, which will be a scandal to you over all the world. I entreat you, although I might command you, and should I not desire it, yet you owe him too many obligations, not to be thereto disposed of your self. I shall not only approve and countenance all that you shall do for his safety, but I shall accept it as kindly as if you did perform it for mine; and in labouring for Ambiomer, you possibly labour for ours, and for the safety of Turingia.* I testified to the King that I was ready to obey his orders, and to contribute what on me depended to the recovery of *Ambiomer*, as far as became the breeding and honour I had to be born his daughter: and by reason they already began to visit *Ambiomer*, and that the day before I had visited him my self, in the company of the King and of *Amalaric*; he commanded me to go see him alone, and that I should endeavour by a sweet and yielding converse, to give him a desire to live, and to banish that melancholly which oppos'd his recovery. Dear Sisters, I obeyed him, and even without repugnancy, not having any thought in my heart which was not advantagious to *Ambiomer*, and made me regard him as a person that merited possibly more than I was able to do for him: so that being informed by his Physicians, that he was in a condition to see me and speak to me, without exposing himself to a new danger, I went that day to his Chamber, only accompanied by two Ladies who did not come near his bed, but left me alone within the rails. He was no otherwise concerned in the visit I made him with the King, except in the pleasure we naturally take to see the persons we love, for besides that he could not then speak to me before the King and *Amalaric*, he only had reason to look on me as a person that accompanied the King, and not as a person that came to visit him: but seeing me enter alone within the Rail, and seat my self in a Chair by the side of his bed without any other company; he was so moved and surpris'd that of a long time he could neither reply to those questions I made him, concerning the state of his health, nor thank me but with his eyes for the favour I did him, and for interressing my self so far in the preservation of his life: But when the first effects of his passions were dissipated, gazing on me with eyes which too much explained what then was moving in his heart, and beginning his discourse with a trembling voice, much less perhaps through his weakness than the fear he had to displease me: *Ab Madam*, said he, *is it possible that you should visit a wretch that hath offended you, and who too well merited death, since he hath deserved your anger.* He stopp'd at these words, casting down his eyes somewhat dejectedly; and as I visited

visited him with a design to perform all that was possible for me towards his satisfaction, looking on him with an eye that evidenced nothing of anger, *I have already testified*, said I to him, *that I had no longer a resentment against you, for had not the offence you committed, been repaired by your obedience, there are few crimes which the blood you have lost in my defence could not wash away.* *Would to the Gods*, said he to me with a sigh, *that I had still it all, and that through the rage of Heaven I did not find my self reserved for a life much more cruel, than that favourable death to which I had surrendered my self.* *I neither would have you die*, said I, *nor do I desire your life should be miserable; and as your virtue will always be a great part of your happiness, I likewise assure my self you will rest contented with what others can contribute to it.* *Ab Madam*, (replied he, liting his eyes once more towards my face) *you know too well that I cannot contribute to my happiness, and if I feared not to irritate you once more, I would tell you—* *But no*, (added he after some moments of silence) *I will tell you nothing, for it was only in dying that I was permitted to speak.* *I had rather*, said I, *hear you speak, than see you die, for your death would be much more displeasing to me, than whatever you can speak to me offensive; live then Ambiomere, if you have any desire to please me, and be confident I shall not esteem my self less obliged for this proof of your obedience, than for those you have already given me.* *Alas*, said he to me with a sigh, *what impossibilities you desire of me? And how would you have me live, since all that should entertain my life is prohibited me? I have obeyed you, Madam, in those things that were possible, and I have had sufficient power over my tongue, to constrain it to observe that silence you commanded me, but my heart doth not acknowledge the same Empire; and as I cannot restrain it from adoring you even to death, it were but just, that by the period of my life, I should avoid this new occasion of displeasing you.* *If you could do it at another price*, replied I to him, *I should happily remain obliged: but at the price of your life which is of such importance, and ought to be so dear to us, I would not buy the greatest satisfaction; although the thoughts you have for me were much more distasteful, there is something which I ought to endure from a person to whom we are so highly obliged.* As it seemed to him by this discourse that I approved his love, and that I had restored to him the liberty to speak of it, which I had before deprived him of, I thought I had spoken very obligingly to him, and had he been in another condition, it had not been possible for me to have told him so much without blushing, or without shamefacedness, so likewise did I observe, or at least I believed to observe in his eyes some marks of joy which had not before appeared; and some moments after they appeared in his whole countenance, so that with a voice more vigorous and chearful than ordinary; *Ab, Madam*, said he to me, *I will live, since I am permitted to adore you, and I shall more willingly endeavour the conservation of my life, for that I hope it will not be useless to you, and that I shall have suddenly an occasion to employ it in your service.* He would have happily said more (although I was careful not to let him spend his spirits) if *Amalaric* had not entred the Chamber; and his last words were but too much verified by the news which the King received that very day, of the great preparations that were making, both in *Frisia*, and in the *Saxons* Country, for a new invasion of our Country, and at the same time to destroy *Turingia*.

As the King before suspected it, he was less surpris'd than at the former invasion; but nevertheless he found himself much weakened by the losses he had suffered, and though he believed himself in a condition to sustain the power of one of these Kings, their united Forces gave him some terrour, and made him reasonably fear the success of that war. He prepared notwithstanding all things for our defence, with the best order that was possible, and *Amalaric* that very instant departed from *Birse* to go to *Lephane*, and all other places where his presence might be necessary to advance the Levies of the Soldiers, and to make them labour with greater diligence about the Ammunition and Fortifications of places. But as the greatest hope of the King was in his valiant Defender, and that he fancied himself invincible, if the Gods did sufficiently advance his cure, to enable him to fight in his assistance, he could not keep from him the news he had received, although he endeavoured to conceal it through the fear he had to disquiet him; and that very day he discovered to him the whole intelligence he had received of the design and power of their Enemies. *Ambiomere* testified to the King how much he shared in his misfortunes, although since the time that his health permitted him to reason, and consider of things better than he had done during his sickness, he had a fore-sight in part of what was then ensuing: and though in effect, he appeared afflicted for those misfortunes which threatened *Turingia*, and in particular for the King's affliction; he let him know that his greatest grief was to see himself then in a condition, which might not permit him to give him that succour he might expect from his valour. He notwithstanding believed, that he might be recovered, if not before that the Enemies had entred *Turingia*, at least, before they had made therein any considerable progress, since that *Amalaric* was in a condition

to repel and oppose them with Forces sufficiently considerable; and that through the misfortune which had befallen him in the former war, he ought to be instructed in the managing of this after a better manner. He would nevertheless in attending his recovery, put himself in a posture of serving him better than with his own person, although the King considered his person much beyond the relief he might receive from a great Army; and the next day he dispatch'd one of his Attendants in whom he had the greatest confidence, to the *Gauls*, with all possible diligence, to demand relief from his Friends, as for his proper quarrel, by informing them of the State wherein he was, and how far he was interess'd in ours. He instructed him more, than in all appearance his health could permit him, concerning all he had to do, and charged him in particular to bring those Forces they gave him by Sea, and with them to assault the *Frison* or *Saxon* Countrey, as well to make a diversion, which could not be but very advantageous to us, as because the length of the way which the Troops had to travel by land, permitted him only to hope for a relief too late; and that they were much nearer by Sea to our Enemies Countrys, than to *Turingia*. After this first he sent also others the day following, for fear of accidents by which one might be stopp'd; and as his cure advanced, he gave more ample instructions to those he sent, touching his intentions; and in the interim, advis'd and counselled the King concerning the preparations for war, like a person no ways therein less interess'd than himself: the King (through the great opinion he had conceiv'd of him) submitted himself entirely to his counsels; and if he perceiv'd a zeal in *Ambiomer* to his interests, he evidenc'd no less kindness to him in all those things which might please him or advance his cure; and he even proceeded therein so far, either through his acknowledgment, and the real esteem he had for him, or through his desire of preserving to himself a person whom he judg'd might be so useful, that he no longer dissembled to him the design he had to be favourable to him in his love to me; and meeting me one day as he was coming from his chamber, *Amalazontha*, said he to me, *I come from seeing a man who is much less wounded by the hurt he received from Rambaud, than that you have given him, but if you will follow my inclination, he should not be less fortunate in the wound he hath received from his friend, than in that which he hath suffered from the Arms of our Enemies. I wish, my Lord,* reply'd I, *that he may be quickly heal'd, both of the one, and the other, and it is the most advantageous wish I can make for him. For the wound of his Body,* reply'd the King, *I hope the cure from Heaven, and those remedies apply'd, but for that of his Soul I have not the same opinion, and perhaps you may be oblig'd to do more for him in that particular, than barely to wish his recovery. I shall ever do,* reply'd I to him, *all that your Majesty shall order me; and I hope that you will always cherish a remembrance of the Honour that I have to be your Daughter. You may believe, said he, that I shall never forget it; but if I should command my Daughter to prefer Ambiomer before Kings, I should not believe that I did her an injury.* He only then spoke these words as he left me, but the days following, and upon all occasions that present'd themselves, he spoke many others which made me fear his intentions were more favourable for *Ambiomer* than I desired; and as I had no design to marry him, although I had an extraordinary esteem for him, and I may say an affection which went beyond good wilhes, yet this opinion of the King's intentions gave me really no small disquiet. I likewise knew that he had spoken to *Ambiomer* of it, and that though *Ambiomer* entertain'd his discourse with a great deal of humility, and an extraordinary modesty; he had manifest'd to him, that there was nothing so great to which his hopes might not pretend.

We were upon these disputes when the *Saxons* assaulted *Turingia*, with an Army of sixty thousand men, under the conduct of *Genselaric*; and that we were inform'd, that the *Frisons* with a power not much inferiour, had pass'd the River *Anise*, and through the Country of the lesser *Braucieres* had advanced as far as *Visurgue*. *Amalaric* was gone with a brave Army to encounter the *Saxons*, and the King had retain'd with himself some Troops to oppose the *Frisons*, *Amalaric's* Army, conduct'd by a Prince that had Valour, might have stopp'd the impetuosity of the *Saxons*, by disputing their passages, and making a politick use of those advantages the Country gave him; but the Troops design'd to oppose the *Frisons*, were too weak to permit us to hope a happy success; and though by *Ambiomer's* counsel the King sent them before him to those places, where they might defend the passage of some Rivers, which were upon their way: he could have expected little, if he had not perceiv'd *Ambiomer's* recovery advanced beyond his hopes, so that he found himself in a condition to go to *Lephane*, when the King was constrain'd by the urgency of his Affairs, which did not permit him to remain longer at *Birse*. In effect, we perceiv'd him to recover his health and forces from day to day; and divers persons rather attributed this good effect to the hopes which the King had given him, than to the virtue of the remedies apply'd:

plied: but notwithstanding the impatience he had to be well, and at the head of our Troops, his recovery was not speedy enough to obstruct the progress of our Enemies; and by this means to render him more necessary and considerable to us, made us still obliged to him for our safety; for after some conflicts which *Amalaric* had had with much valour, and a very equal fortune, he received a wound which kept him a long time from his Soldiers, and reduced him to a condition wholly incapable to think on the conduct of the Army, so that *Genfalaric* improving this advantage, pressed the *Turingens* so fiercely, that he constrained them to give ground, and to quit those passages, which till then they had courageously defended.

After this the *Saxons* assaulted them with such a fury, as rendered those Chiefs which commanded them in *Amalaric's* stead, unable to sustain the Brunt, so that before the Prince was in a condition to mount his Horse, he had received such great losses, it was impossible for him to keep the Field before the *Saxons*; for he was daily constrained to retire, only in making good those Passes which were most advantageous, which he still defended with much more courage than hopes of victory. Nor was fortune in our other war more favourable to us, for the *Frisons* had not only pass'd the River *Visurgue*, but many others in despite of those Troops the King had sent to oppose them; but after they had beaten them in divers encounters, by the advantage which their great number gave them, they had forced them to a disorderly retreat, and to quit all the Country from *Visurgue* to the River *Elbe* to their fury, so that daily advancing, without any resistance capable to stop them, they marched directly towards *Lephane*, threatening the whole Kingdom with a general desolation; and the *Saxons* on the other side, gaining always ground upon *Amalaric*, drove him towards the City, and made us by all appearance believe that we should within few days be enclosed between the two Armies, and reduced to our last extremities. But our fortune then decreed, not only that *Ambiomer* should believe himself in a condition to mount his Horse, and to fight in our behalfs, though he was sufficiently weak, and indisposed enough to have dispensed a much longer time with himself, had he had less courage, or less affection; but by and by he understood that the succours which he had demanded of the *Gauls*, were coming by Sea to our assistance, and that they were to arrive within few days at the mouth of the *Elbe*, under the conduct of *Cillar* and *Dunnorix*, two valiant *Gauls*, that under him had acquired much reputation, and to whom the *Belgians* with an incredible affection had granted threescore Ships: he was likewise made acquainted that they kept the coast of *Frisia*, and the Country of the *Cauches*; and that before they came near the mouth of the *Elbe* they expected his orders, to know whether they should attack the *Saxons* Country, according to his former intentions; or whether they should come to him up the River, as they did formerly. *Ambiomer* ravish'd with joy at this grateful news, and changing (through the then pressing necessity) the design which he had had to make a diversion, which could not produce so speedy an effect as was necessary for our relief, he sent to the *Gauls* with all possible speed, to make a show of assaulting the *Saxons* Country, and to leave some Ships near their Coasts to keep them in a continual Alarm, and to make with all the rest up the River, and to land on that side which looks upon *Visurgue*, and which was possess'd by the *Frisons*, hoping that *Amalaric* for some days more might withstand the *Saxons*, who could not joyn with the *Frisons*, by reason of the *Elbe* which separated them, and which was in that part of such a breadth and profundity, as rendered the passage impossible; and having chalked out the place to them where they should land, he put himself in a posture to go and meet them, and joyning with those Forces which had been chased by the *Frisons*, all those men he could find in *Lephane* capable of bearing Arms, and who in this urgent necessity resolv'd with too much joy to follow so famous a Captain, he formed a Body able to encounter all those Forces which the *Frisons* could oppose, to hinder his joyning with the *Gauls*; and as soon as he was in a condition to march, he resolv'd to head them, and advance towards the place where his *Gauls* were to land, before the *Frisons* had made themselves Masters of the Banks of the *Elbe*. It was then that the whole world look'd upon him once more as our Deliverer, and that the people following him with Acclamations which pierc'd the Heavens, and made him sufficiently know that it was on him they built their utmost hopes; but the King perform'd not less than the people, for not doubting that he was going to owe his Crown once more to *Ambiomer*, he made no difficulty of promising him *Amalzoncha* for the price of his Victory; *Ambiomer* received his promise with a great deal of modesty, and assur'd the King that he would not abuse it, but he refus'd not the performance; and this hope raising his courage, he march'd to the Battel with such a confidence, as promised us beforehand victory; and causing those Troops which were in the City to pass the *Elbe* over a Bridge, which for its largeness was

not much inferiour to that which *Trajan* caused to be made over the *Danube*; he advanced with them to the place where he was to joyn with his *Gauls*, with the best order and discipline in the world.

The length to which I should extend this recital, if I recounted particulars, which would not perhaps be the least grateful part of my discourse, would hinder me from repeating the conversations I had with him before his departure; and it is likewise certain, that not being willing to abuse that advantage which the King's promise had then given him over me, he spoke to me less than ordinary, and did not mention the least word which might make me judge that his hopes were augmented, either by the King's promise, or by the necessity which we had of his relief; and when that the King embracing him before me, prayed him to go and fight, not only for the safety of the *Turingiens*, and of their King, but for the conquest of *Amalazontha*, which should be his recompence, his face was covered all over with a blush, equal to that he might have observed on mine; and casting down his eyes through modesty, *Ab, my Lord*, said he to him, *do not make me hope a Glory which I know my self too much unworthy of, and do not give so great a cause to the Princess to pray against the prosperity of our Arms.*

I remained with the King at *Lephane*, who by the counsel of *Ambiomer* was not to absent himself from thence; and I remained in a perplexity, which I cannot otherwise character, than by telling you my spirit was full of anxiety and disquiet, as well through the estate wherein I perceived our Affairs, which exposed us either to the danger of losing all, or to the necessity of owing it once more to *Ambiomer*. It was not (as I before told you) but that I esteemed him above all other men, and that I had more favourable thoughts for him than those of esteem, or that we commonly call friendship; but by the experience which I have since made, that which I felt for him could not be properly called love, and without much love, I could not see my self reduced from those hopes I had always cherish'd of espousing a King without much regret. In fine, whether I had reason on my side, or through a pride which I ought not to excuse, and for which I happily with justice suffer this present punishment, I could not bend my mind to it, nor endure the thought of it without much grief, and at last there wanted little in me of verifying the last words of *Ambiomer*, for indeed I was not very real in the wishes I ought to have made for the success of our Arms.

But whatsoever my wishes were, the success was greater, and more glorious for *Ambiomer*, than any one durst to have hoped; and to abreviate this discourse of the War, in the narration of which I am little skill'd, and whereof you have already learn'd the most important events, I shall only tell you, that *Ambiomer* with the Forces which he conducted, having in despite of the resistance which the *Frisons* (who were farther advanced than the others) could make, joyned with his *Gauls*; he faced them, and in divers conflicts cut their stragling Troops in pieces; and in fine, by a stratagem no ways inferiour to his valour, having taken his advantage upon the pass of a small River, which the *Frisons* were to cross to come to him, he not only defeated a part of their Army which was on his side of the River, but after he had so disabled them by that loss, believing himself sufficiently strong to fight the rest, he passed the River by night at some distance from that place where the Enemy lay encamped, and the next morning he gave them battel, and gained so entire a victory, that almost their whole Army with their Commanders perish'd upon the place, for there were saved a very small number, which were after taken prisoners. After this famous victory, he directed his course towards *Lephane*, where he came to pass the *Elbe* to meet the *Saxons*, who had chased and driven *Amalaric* even to the Gates of our City. It is most true, that this Prince (not being able without disgust, to see all the bravest actions reserved for *Ambiomer*, and willing to have his share in the safety of *Turingia*) had adventured farther than he ought, and by great losses had in such manner weakened himself, that one might conclude him utterly ruined, if *Ambiomer* had not come to his relief. Upon his arrival the face of our Affairs was immediately changed; for the name of *Ambiomer* so well known to the *Saxons*, struck them with so much terrour, that they were content to put themselves upon their defensive posture, without pursuing and pressing forward, as till then they had done: But *Ambiomer* being conscious of their astonishment, confiding in the valour of his men, and desirous to determine a war which ruined *Turingia*, stood not to dispute the giving them Battel, which *Genselaric* not refusing, it proved so bloody and terrible, that happily such inundations of blood were never seen before in the Fields of *Turingia*; and *Genselaric*, who was resolved either to die or conquer, having lost his life in the Battel by *Ambiomer*, the greatest part of his *Saxons* found the like destiny, either through their stubbornness in continuing the Fight, or through the rage of
Amalaric,

Amalaric who thought to revenge himself of the mischiefs they had done us, and deprive them of the means of invading our Territories for the future, without listening to the clemency, which in their favour *Ambiomer* perswaded him to. In conclusion, the *Saxons* and the *Frisons* were entirely defeated, and except the dead and the Prisoners, there remain'd of neither sort in all *Turingia*; and even the power of both the King's of those Nations was so weakened by this loss, that the *Saxon* broken by those others he had received from the *Danes*, fearing the Arms of his Conquerours, and the name of *Ambiomer*, notwithstanding the resentments which he had for the loss of his Son, made us of himself propositions of peace: and the King of the *Frisons* who could not without much inconveniency wage war against us, willingly consented, and shortly after ratified it with the King of the *Saxons*, through the diligence of the *Cauches* our common associates, who had continued neuter during the time of the war, and were now become mediators for this peace.

The glorious *Ambiomer* was returned to *Lephane* with *Amalaric*, and as no one could doubt but that this second time as well as the first, all *Turingia* was obliged to him for their safety, and the King for his Crown, you may judge that he was there received, not as a deliverer, but as the Tutelar Angel of our nation: and looked upon both by the people and the Court as something beyond a man, and raised by a kind of divinity above them. He excused himself for refusing those honours they gave him, with an admirable modesty: And as he was conscious that the grandeur of his renown, and the acclamations of the people made *Amalaric* not a little ashamed; so he endeavoured to avoid his envy by opposing himself as much as was possible for him, to the effect of the publick acknowledgments. He was even desirous to have the honour of the last battel attributed to *Amalaric*, although none were ignorant that it was entirely his: and he advanced the Prince's actions like a person who had such a superfluity of glory, that he might well share a part thereof to another. As for myself, I confess that if his former actions had touched me, these last gave me much admiration, and that all his proceedings both in war and in peace, had in such a manner charmed me, that I could not without confusion consider the great repugnancy I had to give myself to such a person. I saw myself in the mean time appointed for him, for besides that the King was but too resolutely bent to keep the word he had given him, and that if he could have spared him a Crown, he would most gladly have given that also and his daughter to boot, even the people themselves proclaimed aloud the necessity of giving *Amalazoniba* to *Ambiomer*, and to link for ever by that marriage so great a person to the interests and defence of the *Turingiens*. The most qualified persons of the Court declared no less, and added thereto, that if Crowns were necessary for *Ambiomer* to merit their Princess, he might well hope to obtain them: and that with so much valour and such brave friends as he had, there were few that remain'd in assurance to keep them, when he pleased to assail them. These discourses both of the people and of the nobility, exasperated the Spirit of *Amalaric*: for he could not without an excess of grief hear it said, that the Kingdom which he was to possess, had need of any other defender than himself. He could not so well dissemble the dislike he had taken, but that it came to the cognizance of many persons, and in fine to the King himself, who being therewith beyond patience moved, spoke to him of it with a high resentment, and in such terms reproached his ingratitude, as made him very much ashamed of himself. *Amalaric* replied to him very smartly, and was not only content to let him understand, that the necessity which the people imposed upon this marriage dishonoured him: but that he could not without an extremity of grief, see his Sister espoused to a person (though never so valiant) which was but a plain Knight. But the King with a great deal of fury interrupting him; *Without this Knight*, said he to him, *you and your Sister had both been in very bad conditions, to have chosen your Alliances; for few Kings would have posted to have married the daughter of a King without a Crown: I know not whether you have forgot that you owe it to Ambiomer, but the people cannot forget that they are bound to him for their safety: and I am ashamed to find in them as much of acknowledgment, as there is of ingratitude in the soul of a Prince. In the mean time be confident, I will keep my word, and although I were not engaged by my word, to the performance of what I design to do, I discern too much of advantage therein not to perform it.* These words giving more confusion to *Amalaric*, augmented the reluctancy he had for this marriage, and that very day being come to my Chamber, and causing me to enter with him alone into my Closet, after he had walked some turns without speaking, with an Aspect which sufficiently denoted the disquiet of his mind, turning suddenly towards me, *Well Sister*, said he, *you are then going to espouse Ambiomer, and I shall have the affliction to see a Sister I have so much loved, the Wife of a Soldier, and of a Soldier of fortune; and the shame to bear it said, that this marriage was made to obtain a prosessor for Turingia.* These words augmented the displeasure which perplexed me, and answering
the

the Prince according to my real thoughts, *This marriage*, said I to him, *is not more agreeable to me than your self*, for although I infinitely esteem *Ambiomer*, and am no ways ignorant of what we owe him, you know that I never had a design to espouse him. If you have no such design, replied *Amalaric*, you will not be his wife, for I am confident they will never constrain you to espouse him. I may reasonably hope, said I to him, that the King will not use any open violence to me in this occasion, for I have found too much sweetness in his spirit, to let me fear these utmost extremities: but you know what my duty is, and may well judge that I shall want confidence to oppose my self to the King's will, when he shall explain it to me by an absolute command. There is no duty, replied the Prince, which obliges you to do a mean action, unworthy of your blood, and of your courage, and happily another than your self would appear more hardy in this occasion: But because I will not expose you to the King's anger, (although it be not impossible for me to shelter you from it) I counsel you to address your self to *Ambiomer* himself, for I know he hath so much of respect for you, and so great a submission to your will, that if you declare to him your unwillingness to espouse him, and the misfortune you find in that condition for your self, he will never exact the performance of the King's word. What you say, replied I, may be true, and I had entertained this thought before you discovered yours: but I know not in what manner to express such a cruel intention, to a person to whom we are so much bound. A man of *Ambiomer's* birth, replied *Amalaric*, might satisfy himself with recompences more proportionable to his fortune, and the King hath many others to offer him, without sacrificing his daughter to the acknowledgments he hath for him. However it succeed dear Sister, attempt this way, if it be true that you will not espouse *Ambiomer*, or if you refuse it, you must give me leave to believe that you desire the marriage. To these words he added others so urging, that with the assistance they received from the aversion that I sincerely had from a Marriage so little proportionable to the Rank I might justly hope, they made me resolve to execute all that he desired of me: and happily it was rather through my own ill fortune, than that of *Ambiomer*; that I permitted my self to be vanquished by the influence which *Amalaric* had upon me. This resolution that he had infused into me, might nevertheless perhaps have been chased from my spirit, either by time or by the sight of the King, and a more absolute explanation of his will; if by misfortune *Ambiomer* had not entered my Chamber, a moment after *Amalaric's* departure, and had not found me as yet wholly filled and taken up with those notions which he had left me.

As since the return of *Ambiomer* from the entire defeat of our Enemies, all the Court had believed that he was to espouse me, and that the King not concealing his intention from any, was willing that he should converse with me, as a man appointed for my Husband might converse; he might have used more liberty towards me than formerly, and have acted with less respect through the advantage he had to be approved by the King. But he treated me after another manner, and in lieu of advancing himself by these advantages, he rather appeared thereby more humbled, so that he never presented himself before me, but as a criminal who had gained the inclinations of the King more than I desired, and had opened to himself the high way to a fortune much greater than I would consent to; so likewise was he more circumpect in his visits than he had formerly been, he never spoke to me but trembling, though elsewhere he always appeared the most hardy of men, and always regulated his words in such a manner, as never gave me occasion to judge that he had conceived any hopes which might displease me, and if he happened to manifest more joy in his eyes than had formerly appear'd there, he chang'd in an instant to a contrary condition; and rather accommodated his countenance to his former fortune, than to that to which the intentions of the King had advanc'd him. He nevertheless hoped the effect of his promise, and he hoped it so much the more, by reason I had not publickly opposed my self to it: and that he might rather attribute the little inclination I testified, to a natural severity than to any particular aversion.

He was not at all ignorant of the repugnancy that *Amalaric* had for this marriage, for he had discern'd it by too many marks, to permit him to doubt it; but although he found his soul excessively oppress'd with grief, and perhaps with a just resentment, the respect which he had for the King and me, oblig'd him to dissemble it: and he endeavour'd to vanquish the courage of *Amalaric*, by submission and patience; in lieu of making him remember what he had done for him. That day he brought *Cilair* and *Dunnorix* to my Chamber, those two brave friends that had brought us our timely succour, to take their leaves of me, having designed to march back the next morning with their Troops, and retire themselves amongst the *Gaules*. The King had retained them with him till the peace was signed, and *Ambiomer* would not they should longer continue in a Country, that had already sufficiently suffer'd by war: so that the King permitted them to return after he had testified his acknowledgments, both to the Officers and Souldiers like a generous Prince, and full of virtue. *Ambiomer* being entered my Chamber, presented me immediately those two illustrious *Gaules*, and

and after they had performed their civilities, like persons that understood themselves (and particularly *Cilaire*, who was a person as considerable for his fair behaviour, and for many excellent qualities as for his valour) and that I had manifested my acknowledgments to them in the handfomest manner that was possible for me; they withdrew themselves: and *Ambiomer* intending to go out with them, I desired him to stay, and to go with me into my Closet, where I entred first to oblige him to follow me. As he was not accustomed to receive such like favours from me, this was immediately suspicious to him, and he caused those that remarked his visage, to judge that he expected no good. 'Tis true, that he might perceive on mine, a part of what he had to fear, and that notwithstanding the instigations of *Amalaric*, and the pride which made me act, I had no less repugnancy to perform this action (which I looked upon as very unworthy) than to espouse him: I used nevertheless a violence to my self to accomplish it, fearing I should not have the same means, where affairs were farther advanced, or when I had received more precise orders from the King, than those he had as then given me; and really it was not without some violence, that I rendered my self in a condition to execute the resolutions I had taken: for the Gods sakes dear Sisters, do not hate me for the discourse I am going to make you, rather bewail an unfortunate woman, who acted much less through ingratitude, than through the persuasions of others, or through a destiny which guided her to her Misfortunes.

Ambiomer and I had been very silent for some time, and as their was an ill preface for him in mine, so was there somewhat in his of fatal and sad when I broke it; and in casting a look upon him, which my remorse rendred sufficiently wavering, *Ambiomer*, said I to him, *after all that which you have testified to me, may I not be permitted to believe, that I am really beloved by you*: I uttered these first words with much difficulty, and *Ambiomer* finding it as hard to answer a demand so little expected, and so little conformable to the discourses I was accustomed to make him; "I know not Madam, (*said he to me at last*) in what manner I ought to answer to what you demand, for I once found my self so unfortunate with having too much spoke upon this subject, that I shall never without trembling incur the same danger." "You had not at that time, *replied I to him*, the advantages that you now have, although we were then obliged to you for a part of what you have acted for us, and you may easily perceive, that your fortune is not now limited to the sole liberty of discourse, but since you find such difficulty in it; I answer my self for you, that you really love me, for I have received proofs sufficiently great, not to leave me any cause to doubt: But if this be true, ought I not likewise to believe, that the repose and happiness of my life are dear unto you, and that you would not refuse to perform any thing that was possible for you to hinder me from being unhappy." "Yes Madam you ought to believe it, *replied Ambiomer*, for if I had a thousand lives to lose, I would frankly sacrifice them all to the least occasion which might contribute to your happiness." "If it be so, *replied I to him*, I hope you will not refuse what I desire of you, and hope from you through the sole confidence I have in your vertue, for that only I shall tell you: And I shall tell you as it is really in my heart, that as you are the man of the world, in whom I have discerned the highest merit; so are you likewise the person of the world, for whom I have conceived the greatest esteem; and that although I had lost the remembrance of what you have acted for us, I find you a person worthy of a better fortune than that you can find in me. But in making you this confession of my thoughts, it is likewise necessary I should declare to you, that all the repugnancy you have discerned in me towards love, is but an inconsiderable part to the great aversion I have for marriage: and that though they gave me a God for a Husband, I should esteem my self unfortunate. I believe *Ambiomer*, I have said enough, and that although the felicity you propose to your self in marrying me, were a thousand times greater in the reality, than it is in your imagination, you would not purchase it at the price of all my happiness, and of all the future repose of my life. I should doubtless obey the King if you will constrain him to keep his promise, but you can have but very little satisfaction in rendring a person you love extremely miserable: and peradventure you cannot see her unfortunate, without bearing some share in her misfortunes. It is for this reason *Ambiomer*, that I request of your vertue, and happily of your love it self, that you satisfy your self with those other marks of acknowledgment that the King can give you, without desiring he should sacrifice unto you, the entire felicity of his daughter: and that by an Action so obliging and so generous, you give me the greatest proof that I can ever receive of your affection. I spoke in this manner, and might have spoken yet much longer, without fear of being interrupted, the grief and astonishment of *Ambiomer*, having so entered his tongue, that of a long time he was not capable to answer me. His eyes nevertheless supplied the office of his tongue, for by the divers changes and alterations of his

countenance, it was easie to perceive that his Soul was seiz'd with a mortal grief, and that had he not mainly struggled with himself, he had possibly manifested more than he had a design to shew. At last beginning to speak though with much perplexity, and with a voice interrupted with many sighs; *I was conscious*, said he, *that I was too much unworthy of the fortune they made me hope: But you know Madam that I never demanded it, and since that I could not merit it, they used a kind of cruelty to flatter my hopes. He that nourished them*, replied I to him, *hath not changed his sentiments for you, and in lieu of approving my proceedings, I doubt not but it would expose me to his anger, should it ever come to his knowledge. I should be extremely sorry to expose you to it*, said Ambiomer, *for in what manner soever you give me my death, I shall never complain of you. Nor shall I complain of the King, being absolutely perswaded that it is not by his orders that my ruine is decreed; but I shall complain of Amalaric, if you will give me leave: and if he were not your Brother, I should make him remember the condition wherein he was, and the condition he had happily been in at this day, without the succour of that miserable person, he hath precipitated into despair. Madam, I well know that you ought not to espouse any but a great King, and I have not forgot that I am neither King nor Prince, but for my Birth it is sufficiently noble, not to make me blush at the name of my Ancestors: and for the Royal dignity I had possibly had sufficient courage and friends enough, not to permit me to despair the atchieving it, if I had believed that my virtue could permit me to ravish a Crown from a legitimate possessor, or to render myself the master of my Companions; such as I am, I had not envied the fortune of any Prince, if that mere dignity had not been such a charm to you, which no other glory in the world, nor services sufficiently great could undo: and since that your inclinations are so conformable to your Birth, I praise the Gods that I have not been unprofitable to you, in maintaining you in a condition of never espousing any but Kings.* "Were it true, replied I, that I had this inclination for the dignity of my Ancestors, I do not believe that it were to be much condemn'd: "But you cannot believe that this quality hath a charm able to make me shut my eyes to your merit, when you shall recal to your memory, that *Rambaud* and *Genselaric* who were apparent heirs to Diadems, obtained no great advantages over you, although they had intentions very little different from yours. "I confess, replied Ambiomer, that you have testified but very little inclination for those two Princes: But Madam, you have not happily forgot that you told me, that if the King should command you to espouse them, you would obey him without murmuring. "And I should have done it (replied I to him) and I should obey as much, if he should command me the like for you: But as I have declar'd to you, that I could neither espouse the one nor the other without being unfortunate, so I ought to advertise you, that I cannot be happy with you. "Since it is so, replied he, I will the Gods may rather give me a thousand deaths, than render me guilty of your misfortune in the least thought that might contribute to it: And into what state soever my bad fortune may reduce me, I had rather be unfortunate my whole life, than you should be so one minute. Fear not then that I should abuse the good intentions of the King, nor that I should demand the performance of a promise, which he only gave me through his own bounty. The services that I have done him, never aimed at the possession of *Amalazontha*, though *Amalazontha* alone can make me happy, and although they were sufficiently great to merit some remembrance from the *Turingiens*; I esteem my self too much recompensed by the bounty of a Prince, who hath judged me worthy of the fairest fortune in the world. If the affection with which he hath honoured me, could cause this blindness in him, you may well pardon that which a passion much more violent could operate upon my spirit, and believe that it was very difficult, (if not impossible) for a heart extremely amorous to refuse the entry and entertainment of so sweet and fair hopes. I lose them since you command it, and would to the Gods I had before lost my life, and that the sword of *Rambaud* had not left me those miserable remains which a feigned pity hath so cruelly preserved. It is only of this pity that I would complain, might I have leave, and I would accuse it of all my misfortunes, if it had not given me the means to have rendred you one service more. Now that you have no more to desire from me, and that *Amalaric* hath no more need of my Sword, to maintain him in his Throne which he is to ascend, I will go linger out as pleases my destiny, that little life you have left me: and for ever deliver you from a sight, which might bring some trouble to your repose, in reproaching you contrary to my intention. Ambiomer spoke in this manner, and these words from the mouth of a person, much greater in all things than I have represented him to you, and of a man to whom I too well knew that I owed all things; touched me so sensibly, that it was not without using a cruel violence to my self, that I preserved my resolution: and to confess to you the truth, I believe that had I not feared the taunts of *Amalaric*, (who long before had obtained a great Empire over my heart) I had not preserved it: And looking on him,

him with eyes that testified no manner of aversion : No, *us Ambiomere*, said I to him, you must not quit us, and since that the King hath not given you any subject to accuse him, you cannot without cruelty expose him to that grief which your absence would beget : he may happily find out opportunities to acknowledge your great services, which may comfort you, and make amends for the loss of Amalazontha ; and the misfortune is not so great for you, but that a courage like yours may easily support it. I hope indeed, replied he, that my courage will sufficiently serve me in this misfortune, to hinder me from doing any weak action which you may condemn ; but it will not let me live near you after the loss of my hopes, although I might have lived here without hope, before I was permitted to hope ; and for those recompences which I might expect from the King, (continued he, looking on me with an aspect, which through all his respect shewed something of fierceness in it) as that which he ordained for me, was too much above me, all others which he can give, are too much beneath me ; and death only shall be my comfort for the loss of Amalazontha, if my just resentment afford me no other remedy. Adieu, Madam, (finish'd he, saluting me in order to his departure) the Gods grant that you never repent this action, and that you may be as happy with the Husband Amalaric designs you, as you have believed your self miserable with the unfortunate Ambiomere. After these words he retired himself with a constancy greater than mine, but in effect so disturbed, that he could scarcely find the door to go out of my Chamber. He us'd however his utmost endeavours to dissemble his grief before those persons he met in his way, but in passing through the presence, to go to his own Apartment, he met there Amalaric with divers other persons ; and by reason that the Prince (who, notwithstanding the ill offices he had done him, observ'd still his wonted ceremony to him) quitted his company to accost him ; Ambiomere receiv'd him with a countenance extremely different from that he was accustom'd to have from him, and looking on him with an eye that denoted his indignation : My Lord, said he to him, you have overcome, and you shall not have the shame to have a plain Knight of your Alliance ; but may possibly one day remember, that to this Knight you owe the Crown you are to wear, and that if he were not hindered by a respect much stronger than his just resentment, he might yet make it to totter. He quitted him roughly after these words ; and the Prince, who was not by nature very patient, were it either through the truth that he found therein to his confusion, or through some remorse he might feel for his proceedings, or through a fear that he had to irritate the King, let him depart without replying one word, although there appeared sufficient trouble on his countenance, to give cause to those that were in the Presence, and who had not heard the discourse of Ambiomere, to suspect a part of the truth.

The rest of that day Ambiomere was not seen by any, and they told the King when he enquir'd after him, that he was employ'd in the affairs that the departure of the Troops of the Gauls made him take care to dispatch. The next morning he understood that he had taken Horse very early to accompany them, as was said, half a days journey from the City ; nor did he any way admire, that he shew'd this civility to his warlike Friends, who had performed so much, and so gallantly for his interests : but after that night they saw his Equipage depart, and the next morning we heard no news of him ; but about the evening of the third day, one of his Domesticks who was a *Turingien*, whom he had taken into his service since his coming to Court, arriv'd at *Lephane*, and came to inform the King that Ambiomere was embark'd in his Ships with his Gauls, to gain the Sea by the mouth of the *Elbe* ; and when that the King much astonish'd, would have ask'd him the cause of this sudden departure, he presented him a Letter, whereof the contents were to this effect.

Ambiomere to the King of the Turingiens.

MY Lord, I was too unworthy of the honour you intended me ; and by reason I perceived it as well as Prince Amalaric, I was willing to spare him the displeasure of seeing the reproach, and the Princess the shame of seeing her self so debas'd ; she doubtlesly merits an Emperour of the East, or rather of the whole Universe, and the unfortunate Ambiomere merits nothing but death, either in the Waves, or in Arms, or in all that which his fortune can offer him to terminate his misfortune. He is too much recompens'd for the services which he hath rendered you, through the design you have had both for his glory and happiness ; and although he was not willing to abuse it, he will preserve as long as he shall live a just resentment thereof.

This was the Letter of *Ambiomer*, in which you see, my fair Princesses, that notwithstanding his grief and just resentment, he did not complain of me, for fear of irritating the King against me; and but little of *Amalaric*, although he knew the great cause he had to do it. This so modest, and so generous proceeding, augmented the remorse that I already felt in my heart, for the ingratitude I had testified to him; and it became so great, that I saw my self within few days exposed to a sensible grief and real repentance: *Amalaric* was less touched, and he supported patiently enough the absence of a person whose glory obscured his, and to whom the *Turingiens*, together with their King, rendered more honour than he desired. But for the King, he was sensible of such an extremity of grief, as could admit of no consolation in that little time which remained to him of life after this misfortune; and although that *Ambiomer* had not accused me, mistrusting a part of the truth, he had so great a resentment against me, that after he had cast upon me a thousand reproaches upon all occasions that presented themselves, he still looked on me as a person that had cruelly offended him; and for *Amalaric*, he was in such sort exasperated against him, that after he had accused him a thousand times of ingratitude and baseness, he banish'd him his presence, not being able to endure him, and without doubt he had not (of a long time) pardoned him the unkindness he had done him, if he had not been (some few days after) seized with a desperate sickness, (to which, according to the common opinion, his grief had much contributed) which in fifteen days deprived him of his life. In this condition he could not refuse to see me, and he likewise saw *Amalaric*, to whom, having anew reproach'd his ingratitude, he foretold that he would not long keep the Crown he should leave him; and that he would be more mercifully chastised than he hoped for, if the Gods should only punish him with the loss of his Crown: and addressing himself afterwards to me with the same spirit of divination, which the Gods had infused into him at his death, he declared to me, that Heaven would revenge *Ambiomer* by some strange misfortune that would befall me; and that if I did not repair the fault I had committed, by recalling him, and giving my self yet to him, if it were possible, I should be the most unfortunate person in the world. Some few moments after he had uttered to us these too true predictions, he departed this life; and left me by his death plunged in a grief, from which all that hath since happened unto me, hath not released my Soul. *Amalaric* received the Crown, and in the beginning of his Reign he shewed such a vigour, and greatness of courage, as obliged our reconciled enemies to ratifie the peace they had made with us; and he endeavoured by all manner of kind usage, and testimonies of an entire friendship, to make me forget my grief and resentments, both for the death of the King, and for the loss of *Ambiomer*, which a too late repentance, and a remembrance of his love, and of his admirable qualities made me incessantly bewail.

By his proceedings he really linked me to him in the chain of a tender affection; but I only entertained it in my heart for him to augment my misfortunes; for he had scarce commenced his Reign, when by the solicitation of the King of the *Cimbrians*, and the sight of one of the Portraits of the Princess *Rosamond*, which he sent to Princes he meant to engage in his quarrel, made him embrace it through the love he easily conceived for you, my Sister, much more than through any other consideration. You know that he departed *Turingia* with thirty thousand men, that he joyned himself with the King your Father's Army, that he saw you, that he adored you, and that through a destiny which rendered his death glorious, since he suffered it for you, he lost his life in the Battel by the cruel Sword of *Pharamond*. The Crown which I received by his death was not capable to console me; for I resented so lively a sorrow, that the Letters, that with this news, and the body of *Amalaric* I received from the King of the *Cimbrians*, and from the King of the *Sueves*, by which they exhorted me to the revenge of a Brother's death, by entreating me to let them have the Troops that he had conducted to their relief, did not only find in me all that disposition they could desire, to make me agree to their demands: but having learn'd some few days after, that the King of the *Cimbrians* was dead, and that their fair Queen, and the Princesses of the *Sueves* were at the head of an Army to seek revenge for their Brothers death, who had lost their lives by the same hand that had taken it from mine, I thought that I could not better testify to the memory of *Amalaric* the affection I had for him, than by joyning my self to these fair Princesses, with a design semblable to theirs: And thus, as well for this reason, as because, that maugre the change of my condition, I could not find my repose in a place where every object reconducted to my spirit, the memory of the King my Father, whom I had tenderly loved, and unfortunately irritated; that of *Amalaric*, who had been very dear to me, and to avow to you the truth, that of *Ambiomer*, which did not less torment me, I departed *Lephane*, and march'd out of *Turingia*

gia with a thousand Horse, to render my self near you, traversed the *Cherufques* Country, and not being able to pass the *Vifirgue*, whose passages were guarded by our Enemies, I did not only render my self here somewhat later than I had determined, but by reason of the circuit I was to take, and the error of our Guides, who conducted me to pass nearer the Camp of the *Franks* than they ought, I saw my self exposed to the misfortune which befel me, in falling into the hands of a party of our Enemies, commanded by a Brother of *Pharamond*, by which (if I were exempt from other evils that I might have feared, through the civility of our Enemies, who respected my Sex and Dignity) through a new and fatal apparition which my ill fortune presented me, I found my self precipitated in this horrible misfortune, which I have with so much difficulty to recount unto you, for which I employ your compassion; and must in fine declare it to you, since I am arrived to this fatal place, which covers my life with shame and confusion.

The End of the Fifth Part of
PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

The Sixth Part.

BOOK I.



T these words *Amalazomba* stopped, moved by the pressing consideration of a thought that rendred her too sensible of the future event. Her countenance changed in such a manner, that though her grief were unknown to the Princesses that heard her, yet it commanded their compassion before she begged it. Till then they had observed in her discourse a fairer subject of accusation than of pity; and if the Queen of the *Cimbrians* were too just, in not approving her ingratitude, yet the Soul, so sweet and tender, of *Albifinda*, was so far touch'd to the quick, that she began to doubt, whether she should not now rather cover the misfortune, which it griev'd her so much to make known. But by the lively demonstration of her grief, pity so defaced whatever they had of ill opinion towards her, that they really resolv'd rather to compassionate than condemn her. It was a long time ere she could compose her self to finish a relation that gave her so much trouble to conclude it: and shame oftentimes stopp'd her mouth, before she could come to a confession, which she so much feared. But at length she determin'd to venture upon an act of meer constraint. And having related to the two Princesses the rencounter which she had in the Valley, where some mischance that happened to her Equipage, causing a stop of the Troops which she thought to have been commanded by Prince *Sunnon*, were the occasions of her meeting with this admirable unknown person, who had caused so great a change in her mind; she rehearsed to them the converse which they had had together, she made a full description of whatever appeared to her in his person, But this was performed in terms so passionate, and with an action so conformable to her words, that the very thing which she so much feared, seem'd to the Princesses no way necessary to make known the effect of this fatal encounter. Her love was sufficiently discovered as well by her eyes, as by her discourse. And after she had disengaged her self from this first difficulty, still she found a greater to oppose that which this imperious passion had made her subject to, upon this cruel adventure; all the stratagems she had made use of to dislodge it, all her courage, all her reason prov'd in vain for her relief. Nor did she forget at the same time, to relate to *Rosamond* the particulars of a dream that had troubled her the night before, and which had given place to the sad impression which the complaint that she had made to her before, had left in her heart. She hung so long upon her discourse, that from thence the fair Queen made an easie conjecture how deeply her heart was engaged. Having finish'd her relation, after some few moments of silence, wherein the two Princesses had not time to interrupt her, resuming her discourse with some sighs, Behold, said she, what is now my fortune, and what a condition I am in, whether from the effect of that cruel Star that commands my Destiny, or from the punishment which revenging love and the irritated Gods are about to lay upon my ingratitude, I cannot tell. I confess, dear Sisters, that *Ambiomer* has more than well deserv'd my afflictions,

affections; and that no consideration, either of dignity, or of complacence to my Brother, ought to hinder me from rendering what I owe to his merit, and to my Father's will, I may also tell ye, and that sincerely, that I have not only acknowledged my fault; but that I have often been sorry for it, under other pretences that gave free liberty to my tears; and that all the changes that have happened to my condition, both by the death of my Father, and of *Amalaric* cannot root from my heart, neither the remembrance of *Ambiomer*, nor the stings that continually pierce my heart: and I will add with a reality most entire and cordial, that when I received the Crown, I was fully resolved to make a satisfaction for my crime, by obeying the last will of the King, and by making him the most pleasing reparation I could possibly give him; and that finding my self in such a condition, that I could espouse *Ambiomer* without the least dishonour to my Dignity, I had no other intention but to have given to him with *Amalazontha*, the Crown of the *Turingiens*. The Gods are my witnesses, that these were the thoughts that wholly possess'd my Breast, and that I studied all means to recal *Ambiomer*, at which time the sight of this miraculous man encountered me, whether descended from Heaven, or ascended from Hell to be my ruine, is the question: rather at what time the view of this Deity, this Demon, or Ghost, upon whom, through the strange effect of seeing him, I cannot look, as any thing of humane or natural, in an instant rais'd from my memory the Image of *Ambiomer*; and with those good thoughts which I had for him, all those which I can possibly have for my self. In a word, since this fatal moment I hardly know my self; and this change has been so great in me, that of the first original of *Amalazontha* there is hardly any thing left to shew. This pride, or rather this unjust fury that has fix'd my eyes upon so bright a piece of virtue, not accompanied with a Crown, would vanish like smoke, were it true that he were a man; who in all appearance seems to have nothing of more elevated worth than *Ambiomer*. Certain it is, my heart continually tells me, that he has nothing more of great or sublime within him, than *Ambiomer*, yet this heart, this miserable heart of mine, may perhaps betray me upon this occasion; but since it has thus betrayed me, I will have no more confidence in it. You see however, it is not through inclination, or any natural softness, that I have abandoned my self to a passion contrary to all the rules of reason: rather may I be thought a very indifferent Lover: for besides that *Rambaud* and *Genselaric* both born to wear a Crown, both renowned for their most high and noble qualities, could only tax me of too unjust a disdain; *Ambiomer* himself, whose virtue, though without a Crown, transcends the height of Thrones, could never raise a Battery sufficient to weaken my ambitions: This pride of mine that made me look upon all men that were not to be Kings, with a kind of scorn, had given place to love, had I been truly touch'd therewith. And it was for this reason only that I had not that love for *Ambiomer*, which I preserved for my own State and Dignity. By this misfortune I find my self justly expos'd to that reproach which you may throw upon me, not to love where I ought, and to love where I had no ground. But this strange irregularity, or rather behaviour so opposite to reason, in a person that perhaps upon another occasion may not appear so void of sense, gives you to understand, that my misery proceeds from a higher and more hidden cause; that in this last misfortune, my miserable will has neither action nor liberty; and that I am not less to bewail the violence which I suffer from a power that I am not able to resist, than I am to blame my former faults, which for having been voluntary, are perhaps the less excusable.

These last words of *Amalazontha* were accompanied with some tears that dropp'd from her fair eyes upon her more lovely cheeks, and mov'd the two fair Princesses that heard her; in such a manner, that they could no longer retain their indignation against her, for her ingratitude to *Ambiomer*; and so far they took her into their pity, that pity was the only thought with which any other of their passions could partake. The fair Queen of the *Cimbrians* was the first that testified how sensible she was of her misfortune. And although her mind was not a little troubled, by reason of some suspicious words which she gathered from the end of her discourse: yet could she not make use of any umbrage, to hide what her most excellent natural disposition presented to her thoughts, for the misfortune of her friend. She rose from her place to seat her self in a chair that was next *Amalazontha*; and laying her lovely face to her fair cheeks that were all bedewed with tears, with a behaviour so full of sweetness and tenderness, Sister, said she, *cheer up, and believe that there be other persons as unfortunate as your self, who endure their misfortune with patience: I confess, that in yours there is something particularly strange, and I believe with you, that the just anger of Heaven revenges the complaints of a person, that without doubt deserved a more favourable entertainment at your hands; in regard of whose love, in respect of whose merit, and for whose great services you ought to lay by the consideration of a Dignity, the preservation*

whereof

whereof you owe to him alone. But be it as it will, your misfortune is certainly great, and yet perhaps not altogether past cure: for in this unknown person whom fortune has presented to your eyes, and made you to love him contrary to your design, if she have not offered you a subject worthy your affections, you have so much resolution still remaining, which by the assistance of time and reason may expel from your heart all impressions which he has left there; and return you into a condition to pass your days with more agreeable content. However, dear Sister, we will endeavour your comfort as much as in us lies; and if we accuse you for any thing, it shall be less for what you are so apprehensive of blame, than for that severity which you your self have so adventurously confess'd, and for which I am assured, that Albisinda will be as much dissatisfied with your self, as she is now discontented to bear the misfortune which you have had so much trouble to relate to us. Believe me, if you please, (said the fair Princess of Suevia) that I have been as truly troubled for the misfortune of Ambiomer, as I am now for yours; and that I should not easily pardon the injustice which you have done to so great a person, did I not now see you more severely punish'd than I could have willingly expected. I am very well pleas'd, said the Queen of the Turingiens, that you throw all your displeasure upon an ingratitude for which I blame my self; and that you have either for my weaknes, or my misfortune, all the favour that I could have begged at your hands; seeing it was this misfortune, rather than my former crimes, that I feared would have rendred me incapable of your friendship. You need not fear either the one, or the other, said the Queen of the Cimbrians, and as you are not guilty of a misfortune to which your will never gave consent, so as to the fault which you confess, you want not reasons sufficient to justifie others in doing the same. But, Sister, said the Princess Albisinda, is it not possible for us to imagine who this admirable person should be? May it not be Marcomire? It cannot be Marcomire, (said Rosamond, observing the others disturbance when she spoke;) besides, we understand that Marcomire was wounded, and was not at the Combat that day: you well know, had he been there, Sunnon, who is his younger Brother, had not commanded that party. That which you say is very true, (replied Albisinda, with a more serene and calm countenance) but let us consider, for although in the Court of Pharamond there be Princes renowned for their merit and their noble carriage, and that both for the one and the other, I have heard Iberc, Meroveus and Genebaud above all the rest commended, yet do I not find that any of them all excel either Sunnon or Ambiomer, whom we have mention'd. Sunnon himself, replied Amalazontha, has not so graceful a carriage as Ambiomer, though perhaps he may have more of Beauty. But the person of whom we speak, is such an one, that I can hardly believe him to be a mortal; both in his eyes, in his discourse, in every action, in the whole frame of his person, there is something above humane; and were he not more than man, he could not in a thousand years have wrought that alteration in my heart, which he has brought to pass in a moment. But so insensible am I, proceeding with a sigh, that I have forgot, said she, not only whether he discours'd like a man, that spake to me, but whether he spake as a subject, or one that was a friend to Pharamond: merciless fortune would not leave me so much consolation as I might find in a favourable and advantageous opinion of him. And in the beginning of my love, I meet a danger, lest I should not only love a subject, but the subject of my Enemy. However, let him be who he will, he is a person that no person can equal; and what ever I can make you apprehend by my discourse, comes short of the truth. With that she made a more particular description of him, than she had done in the rehearsal of the first meeting, and she made it in such a manner, that the jealousy which formerly began to enter into the breast of Rosamond, from that time took a deeper root, and from thence glided also into the Soul of Albisinda. They communicated their thoughts aside, but would not discover any knowledge thereof before Amalazontha; and making reflections at the same time upon the dream which the Queen had told them, not a little advantageous to explain her fate, they began to be confident that it must be Pharamond himself that so had wounded her heart. At the same time Rosamond felt something of alteration, which she was not accustomed to feel, which though it resembled compassion more than jealousy, yet it troubled her mind in such a manner, that she changed her colour, Amalazontha, who by accident cast her eyes upon her, was the first that perceiv'd it, and beginning to have some mistrust upon that action of Rosamond, Dear Sister, said she, can it be possible, that you should know the author of my misery, and that my dream should have so truly signified the truth. "I do not believe, (replied the fair Queen, hiding with one hand the "blushes of her Rosie Cheeks) that you ought to lay any foundation of certainty upon "Dreams; and I am sure yours is not true, if it tell you, that I should do you any harm: "but to know the person for whose sake you so bewail your self, will prove a thing difficult "enough; for if you have not flattered him in the description which you have made of "him, there are few in the world that resemble him. It is too true, replied the Queen, that

I have not flattered him, nor is it less true that there are few humane shapes that ever appeared, as he appeared to me. Nor have I heard less always said of Pharamond, although he be our most mortal Enemy, and I might bear a heart not without cause suspicious, did not his proceeding together with that of Prince Sunnon, clearly take away whatever I am able to conceive of any such thing. "And should you believe your self the more unfortunate, said *Albisinda*, should it prove to be *Pharamond* himself that has given you this wound, and not a subject of his? "It would be a less disgrace to me, replied *Amalazontha*, but a greater misery: And although this ingratitude of mine which has contracted your displeasure, may have drawn upon me heavens indignation also: yet will I not believe that I have any way offended in yielding to so strange a misfortune.

Thus they discoursed, when one of *Amalazontha's* women came to tell her something in her ear, from him that commanded her forces, which caused her to retire to her Chamber: And she was no sooner departed out of *Albisinda's* presence, but the Queen of the *Cimbrians* causing *Albisinda* to sit by her upon the bed; "Well then dear Sister, said she, do you then believe Prince *Marcomire* to be this unknown person, with whom the Queen is so passionately in love? "I find well that it is not *Marcomire*, replied the Princess, rather should I believe as you would doubtlessly do, that it is King *Pharamond*, were there not so many evidences to take away all persuasions to such a belief. The Evidences which as you conjecture, gain say this persuasion; work no such effect upon my belief: For whereas this unknown person spake to the Queen of the *Turingiens*, on the behalf of *Sunnon*, though he met her but with a few in company, whereas *Sunnon* always attended her with a great Train, yet his deportment seems altogether *Pharamond's*, to which also the description that *Amalazontha* gave of his person, does no less persuade me; he had the discretion no doubt, not to make himself known, who had so little a while before put her Brother to death. And although a passion contrary to reason, does not always reserve such a consideration in ones thoughts; yet at *Marobuda* he had the same for you, when he sent to visit you, but durst not appear in person, though I could not then tax him for the death of my Brother, of which in a few days after he was found guilty. All that he said, all that he did, seems to me altogether conformable to the sweet disposition and wisdom of *Pharamond*: And if he accosted *Amalazontha* with so small a Train, it was perhaps because it was not her whom he sought when he met her Chariot. At another time, since you guess right that it cannot be *Marcomire*, I shall tell you, that no other man but *Pharamond* could have produced such effects in a person not naturally inclined to love: And since I must tell you more than perhaps I ought, by the proof that I have made, *Pharamond* is worthy of her. The first time I saw him, the whole composition of his person seemed to have something supernatural, a charm that deluded my hatred, and seduced my reason: A secret power that would not permit me from the first moment that I beheld him, to look upon him with an indifferent eye, while I entertained him as an Enemy. "I must acknowledge, said *Albisinda*, that the sight of him enchanted me: and seeing that *Pharamond* was not born for me, I have thanked the Gods a thousand times, that it was not my sad chance to meet *Amalazontha's* misfortune. But my dear Sister, if it be true that she is in love with *Pharamond*, in what a condition will she be, or how can we hope that she will be other than miserable. "It is not impossible, replied the Queen, but that having whatever else he can expect, with so much affection to boot, she may pierce the heart of *Pharamond* which cannot be insensible: and although I can never enjoy *Pharamond* my self, I shall behold *Amalazontha's* happiness without giving any obstruction to it. "*Amalazontha*, replied *Albisinda*, can no more enjoy *Pharamond* than your self: For you know he hath been no less guilty of the death of *Amalaric* than of *Theobald*. *Amalazontha*, said the fair Queen, is not engaged to ruine *Pharamond* as I am, by the Command of a Father, by oaths solemnly taken, by an Alliance contracted with the King your father, and many other Kings, who have taken Arms in our quarrel; she has only to revenge the death of a Brother slain in battle, whose death was neither accompanied nor preceded by any other injury. And seeing her affection is so great, she may perhaps forego that consideration: and if she do so, she is far less to blame than I should be, should I be guilty of doing the same. Supposing then that this should come to pass (replied fair *Albisinda*) think you that you shall be able calmly and quietly to behold so great a change? shall you be able to suffer so great a loss without giving one sigh, when you shall find *Pharamond* that could not be yours, to have yielded up himself to *Amalazontha*? "I shall endure all this without doubt, replied the Queen, but I know not whether I shall suffer it without some torment, perhaps not without my death. But my dear Sister, let us discourse no more upon this subject you see how open I have been to discover my thoughts.

When the Queen could not by those words, oblige the Princess of *Suevia* to change her discourse, she was about to do it her self: and therefore *Albifinda* seeing that night approach'd, at what time she expected the Prince *Viridomar*, and for that she would not let her visits be a secret to the Queen from whom she kept nothing concealed; she thought it was time to give her notice of her intention. Other reasons oblig'd her to give her a sight of Prince *Viridomar*, for besides that she was satisfied that she owed this confidence to her friendship, and that she did not fear that it could be any way prejudicial to her brother, to let the Queen know of his arrival, she believed it would be a difficult matter to see him often without her knowledge, or giving her occasion of other suspicions, which would be less advantageous to her. And on the other hand she had a great desire to let the Queen know, that it was not without good ground that she had so often spoken well of *Viridomar*, and that there were few Princes in the world, more worthy than himself of the good fortune to which he was designed. Here pondering a little, and then breaking silence which had lasted a few moments, resuming her discourse with a countenance less serious than before; *You made your boasts to day*, said she, *that you knew all my very thoughts, but I know not what you would think, nor what opinion you would have of me, should you understand from any other mouth than my own, what I saw in my Closet last night: and that I am this evening to see a Noble Knight, and a Knight whom I love most entirely.* These words surpris'd the Queen, and because she understood that the Princess had a real kindness for *Marcomire*, she thought it might be him, though she could hardly imagine that *Albifinda* would consent to so dangerous an interview. While she was thus in doubt what to think, with a behaviour little different from *Albifinda's*, *I cannot apprehend any thing by your discourse*, said she, *but whatever you tell me, I know you are too wise for me to suspect the management of your concerns.* *I have told you nothing but the truth*, replied *Albifinda*, *I have not only seen this Knight of whom I have spoken, and hope this evening also to see him again, but I intend that you shall see him your self if I may obtain so great a favour.* *There is nothing*, said the fair Queen, *which you may not command from my friendship, but by this friendship it self, give me leave to tell you, if it be true that you have seen Marcomire, as you may perhaps have done against your will, I advise you not to continue such interviews, that may cost him his life, and expose you to prejudices that may prove your perpetual vexation.* *I see now* (replied the Princess smiling) *that notwithstanding what you have said to me, you do not believe me guilty of too much discretion: However, if I have not seen Marcomire, I have seen another in whom there is as much hazard, yet for his personage nothing inferiour to him, though the other be accounted equal to Erideus.* *It is not without exposing himself to danger that he pays me his visits, and for that he comes so late and a good way off, I fear I shall not rise to morrow sooner than I did this morning.* "You talk so in the dark, said the Queen, that I protest dear Sister "I understand nothing that you say, but I hope when you think it convenient, you will let "me understand who this Knight is that you have seen, and into whose company you "would bring me. The Princess of *Suevia* not willing to keep her in a suspense so displeasing to her, discovered to her the truth: and gave her to understand the meeting which she had the night before with Prince *Viridomar*. She also made a brief relation of the adventures of this Prince, and of what had fallen out most considerable in the pursuit of his love, for the Princess *Polixena*. She also let her know by her discourse, that it was not one slight moments view that had engaged his heart, nor found he any reason to abandon those fair hopes which cherish'd his love. *Rosmond* listned with much delight to the discourse of *Albifinda*, and the Queen her self testified how much she was concerned in the adventures of her Brother, wherein she took an interest far different from that which any disposition but hers could take, or a disposition like that of *Viridomar*, capable of rebuking it self for the least error committed. She deliver'd her thoughts upon this occasion, with that calmness of speech; that *Albifinda* might easily gather from thence, that the Queen took no offence at the proceeding of her brother, besides that his merit had obtained a fair esteem in her thoughts, she assur'd her withal that she would be most joyful to see him, not only for her sake, but for the desire his own Reputation had created in her. And because he could not come to her without being in danger to be seen by more persons than he desired to be known to, she made a promise to the Princess, that she would come to her at any time which she should appoint or give her notice of. After this she advis'd her to feign her self indispos'd for that evening, that she might have a fair pretext for not rising early the next morning, if she should happen to sit up as late that night as the night before: and thus every thing being order'd, the Queen return'd to her apartment to shew her self to such persons whom she admitted, either for view, entertainment, or other matters not easie to be endur'd by a person of her temper, wherein she was rather subject to the necessities of affairs, the condition of her high estate, than to her own inclination. She always differently consider'd

both, nor did she constrain her self to hide the difference which she put between them. She looked upon the King of the *Suedes* as her Tyrant, as a person that cruelly made use of the advantage which her oaths and the last will of her Father had given him over her, to make war upon an enemy whose ruine she did no ways desire, or seek as he did. Among her admirers she considered the Prince of *Persia* as a great Prince, not only by birth, and for the rank which he held in the world, but for his valour and his extraordinary desert. However she observed in him a presumption that displeas'd her, so that her affection for him was little or none: for *Gondioch* she hated him, as well for what he had committed first against her, and afterwards against *Pharamond*, which created in her to great a dislike of him, that her eyes were shut to all the high and noble qualities that he possess'd. She looked on *Ardaric* as a Prince highly to be esteem'd, both for his valour and his virtue: but she was never importun'd by his Love, or rather she was never touch'd with any affection for him. And for *Godegesile*, though she knew him to be both valiant and Amorous, yet neither his Courtship nor his person pleas'd her: She perceiv'd a certain harshness in his disposition, and a haughtiness not less than that of *Varanez*, which was that she could not brook. *Balamir* was indeed the only person among all those that openly and most vehemently desired her affection; in whom she found whatever might be sought for to pierce her heart, and there is no question but he might have gain'd her favour, had he made an attempt more reasonable, before her heart had been assaulted by an affection greater perhaps than his, and by a merit no way inferior to his, or that of any other person in the world. However, though she had no affection for him, yet had she an esteem for his person, and as much as he could desire: She acknowledg'd the value of his love, if it be possible that love can pay in any other coin than love again. And as she judg'd him most deserving, and that his merits might have had success, had not fortune contradict'd; she afford'd him all sort of publick testimonies of her favour, and gave the world to know that if at any time she should be reduced to receive a Husband at the hand of fortune, the want of a Crown would not hinder *Balamir* from being advanced above the rest of his Rivals: Because he had no forces and at that time could serve her no otherwise than in his own person; after the death of her Father, she order'd him to command the *Cimbrians*. At what time they who for their birth or for their eminent services kept the chiefest ranks of dignity in that Country, and who would not so easily have brook'd subjection to another, without any resistance submitted to so great a person, and took it for an honour to have him their head: But if they had this value for his fair Reputation, his carriage attract'd their love more powerfully. And in his high and noble course of proceeding, they found such a charm that gain'd all their hearts. So that we may truly say that in the description that *Telanor* made of his person and his disposition, he did no way flatter him, and that in all things *Pharamond* stood in need of all his merit to gain any advantage upon his Rival. Because he kept his Bed this day, the Queen sent to enquire of his health, from whom she understood that he was in such a condition that he might be able to walk abroad the next day. This she also understood from the King of *Suedes*, who came to visit her and enter'd the Chamber in a short while after her return: He was accompanied with the Prince of *Persia*, the King of the *Alzins*, the King of the *Herules*, and the Generous *Martian*. As in Age, unity of interests and other advantages, he excelled all others the lovers of *Rosamond*, so had he greatest liberty with her, which made him make a gentle complaint in behalf of the rest of her cruelty in concealing her self all the day long. When the Queen receiving it with a smile full of tenderness; *It is not me*, said she, *that you ought to complain of, for it was the indisposition of my Sister that caus'd me to spend the day with her: For Albilinda* (reply'd the King of the *Suedes*) *at the sight of her was less important and less desired, she might keep her Chamber were she indispos'd: but it was not for her to purchase the satisfaction of your Company with the content of so many great Princes. And I am assur'd that she has created several discontented persons this day, by drawing a blame upon her self. She has less reason*, reply'd the Queen, *to stand in awe of those that earnestly covet'd her company, than of theirs that desire Amalazontha's or mine. But it is my hope that neither the one nor the other shall have any cause to complain, for we our selves see so much every day* (concluding her speech with a kind of pentiveness) *that I may easily be pardon'd this short retirement. It behoves them to be patient*, reply'd the Prince of *Persia*, *whom such misfortune seizes: But if an accusation were permitted, you would be in danger Madam of seeing your self expos'd to one: For it is a difficult thing for those persons whom your Company renders now so happy, to bear the loss thereof patiently. You have heretofore*, smilingly reply'd the Queen, *endur'd without falling into despair, a longer absence of a person for whom you had as great a kindness. I never brook'd it, reply'd the Prince, but with that trouble which confirms what I am about to say, such a torment of which I had never known the end, if I had not found it in others which are not less cruel, yet more dear to me*

than my life. From these, replied the Queen, you may still remove to others by an adventure of the like nature, and your heart shall find no more trouble in losing this second impression, if it be true that ever it received any, than it had to deface the former. As Athenais was not Rosamond, replied the Prince, and seeing there is not another Rosamond in the world, there is little hope that I should find for this latter passion, the remedy that cured the first. And I must add farther, Madam, that for the other I both desired and sought relief, but in this I cannot endure to admit any such thought. I will easily believe (said the King of the Alains) that your meeting with another beauty can never put away from your heart the lustre of the Queens. And you are right in your judgment, that there is none other in the world from whom you can expect redress, though if by the will of Heaven you could find one out, I should not undertake for your constancy: and if Balamir and your self had been guilty of inconstancy for any other beauty but that of the Queen, it would very much trouble me to understand it. "I find, said the King Godegefile, the inconstancy of Balamir far more excusable than that of the Prince of Persia, who after he had shed so many tears for the loss of Hunnimonda, and spent many years in immoderate mourning, I am of opinion, that he was no longer obliged to be faithful to the ashes of a person, that had before her death been taken from him, and married to his Brother, and that he had neither force nor reason to defend himself against the charms of Rosamond. "This, replied Martian, may be more truly urg'd on the behalf of the Prince of Persia, than of Balamir, since it is certain that Balamir had been entirely beloved by Hunnimonda, and that it was only by force and constraint that she was given to Mundisc, whereas Athenais of her own free will had preferred Theodosius before the Prince of Persia; and by bestowing her self wholly upon the Emperour of the East, had left Varanez neither liberty nor hope to see her again as long as he lived. "I confess, replied Ardaric, that reasons are not wanting as well for the one as the other, to excuse their inconstancy, but I wonder, that with their reasons they had the power; or at least, (said he, giving himself the check) I should wonder, if the power that caused it, were less known to me. "It satisfies me, said the Prince of Persia, that ye have found out this excuse; and I am apt to think, I stand in need of no better to shun a reproach which I so little fear. They had discoursed longer upon this subject, but they were interrupted by the Queen of the Turingiens, who enter'd the Chamber. A little after the two Queens supped together; for Albisinda kept her Chamber, as she had determined with Rosamond.

After Supper the Kings returned to communicate to them the design which they had for the convoys of provisions, which they fetch'd out of Countries where the terrour of their Arms drew contribution from the Inhabitants, for the sustenance of the Army, and to consult of other affairs, seeing the truce afforded them leisure; for which purpose, they held a council that lasted till it was time for the Queens to withdraw to their rest, and when they were retired, and that Amalazontha was gone to seek that repose in her Bed, which she had no hope to find, Rosamond remained some while behind in her Closet, expecting to hear some news of Albisinda; presently Imbergida enters, who came from the Princess to know of her in her ear, whether it were seasonable for Prince Viridomar to come and kiss her hand. The Queen courteously received the errand of Imbergida, and answering with a voice as low as the other had delivered it withal, *This resolution of the Prince of Suevia, said she, is too far obliging, and he need not doubt, but that for his own merit, and the affection which I have for my Sister, I have a particular desire to see him; but 'tis at my Sister's Apartment where I intend to bear him company, and not here, whither he cannot come without being seen of too many persons, and put himself in danger of being discovered.* With these words she sent Imbergida away to Albisinda, and a while after followed her self, and leaving her Attendants in the Princesses Chamber, she went into the Closet where Albisinda was with her Brother. At her entrance she appeared to the Prince, as if in the middle of the night the glorious lustre of day had darted its brightest Beams into the Room. No other brightness could have blasted his eyes with a lustre so surprising, hardly could they endure it; all the preparation which he had fortified himself withal, by having heard the wonders of this celestial Beauty related to him, could not defend him against that astonishment wherewith the eyes of Rosamond strook him, and which during some few moments, that his Faith was upon the point of shipwreck, seemed too great for him to believe, so that against a force so irresistible, it was not an easie thing for Polixena to keep her place in a heart that such a one had robbed her of. So that we may truly say, the Prince put his love upon the greatest tryal that temptation could ever have proved it by; and that he could never know the real worth and grandeur thereof, but by seeing it make so handsome a retreat out of so much danger. In brief, amidst all his astonishment and admiration, and something also more great than this astonishment or admiration could produce,

duce, the heart of *Viridomar* remained fast in the fetters of *Polixena*; his affection continued faithful, though his eyes were dazzled, and his very Soul enchanted: he protested however, notwithstanding his first engagement, that he never saw any thing under Heaven that could parallel what he then beheld; and perhaps he made no question (if love may permit a liberty to this opinion) that if his heart had been attacked by these two powerful Assailants at the same time, but that she who at that time appeared before him, might have had the advantage over her that already triumph'd over his affection. If the heart of *Viridomar* were charmed at the sight of *Rosamond*, the Soul of the fair Queen found in it self that which never appeared there before, but for the sake of *Balamir* and *Pharamond*. By such an advantageous knowledge of his person, and that high character which his Renown gave of his merit, any other Soul but that of *Rosamond*, would in a short time have beheld with an inward feeling, and perhaps with grief enough lamented the robbery, which the charms of *Polixena* had committed, of a Prince so worthy her esteem; but the Soul of the fair Queen was of a more elevated order, and whether it were through the greatness of her resolution, or her just pre-engagement, she looked upon *Viridomar* with all his merit, without bearing the least envy to the Sister of *Pharamond* for having obtained so fair a conquest, and without being concerned with any other thoughts for him, than what she owed to his worth, and her affection for *Albisinda*, which she easily let the Princess understand, by that serenity she shewed in her countenance when she saluted the Prince; and all the while she assisted him in that disorder of his mind when astonishment tied his tongue, caressing him with a welcome the most favourable, and expressions the most obliging that might be; *I know not*, said she unto him, *whether I am most obliged to you, or to my Sister, for that confidence you have in me in a place where you cannot appear to many persons; but to whomsoever I owe the debt, I do acknowledge the obligation as a favour, which I had many reasons to desire. And believe me, Sir, though you were not the Brother of my dear Sister, yet the reputation of Prince Viridomar's virtue, had been enough to make me covet the knowledge of so great a person.* She accompanied these words with such a sweetness, as seemed to qualifie the glittering lustre of her Majesty, when the Prince quelling the passion that such a surprizing light had rais'd in his mind, though she her self were never to be taken unawares: *Suffer me, Madam*, said he, *to make use of my first expressions, only to excuse the confusion of my thoughts, and to tell you, that my capacity will never serve me to observe the wonders that appear before my eyes, though they gave me full liberty to explain my self. I believe,* (said the fair Queen, smiling withal) *that you have your liberty entire, and without all controul, if you brought it so hither. But as we cannot blame you for having left it in a safe place, so you must not accuse us for making any attempt upon it.* She pronounc'd these words with an aspect less serious than she was ordinarily accustomed to do, to remove all suspicion from the Prince, that she intended to give him the least cause of exception, who while he was studying for words to reply upon so pleasing a subject, the Princess his Sister preventing him with a behaviour more reserv'd than the Queens, *You see Brother*, said she, *to what a height of honour you might have arrived, had fortune been more favourable. I know well*, replied the Prince, *that I was no way worthy of it, and if the Gods did not reserve her for themselves, they would be too unjust to appoint her unto any other than King Pharamond. I perceive,* (replied the Queen blushing withal) *that you speak like one in love with Polixena, and that passion without question shuts your eyes, that you cannot behold that which reason would present you, contrary to your opinion. I adore the Princess Polixena*, replied the Prince of *Suevia*, *and the respect which I bear to you will not suffer me to deny a truth, which I have declared to all the world: but it is not the love which I have for the Sister, that causes me to do this justice to the Brother; for although I am an enemy to Pharamond, yet I declare, that there is no person in the world that is more worthy of Rosamond. It will not be by such discourse as this*, replied the Queen, *that you will make your peace with your Father; you must change your opinion, if you ere intend to return into his favour. If I cannot recover it*, replied the Prince, *but at so high a price, I fear I shall remain eternally in disgrace; and I shall more readily endure it all my life, than suffer any change of an opinion so conformable to reason.* This discourse causing some disorder in the Queens mind, she was willing to put an end to it, and therefore to change the subject of their converse, she testified to the Prince with an incomparable civility, the share which she took in *Albisinda's* joy for his return, her true content in the glory of his actions, and the desire she had to use her utmost endeavour to procure a peace with the King of *Suevia*. *Viridomar* received this testimony of her good will with all due respect, and made his answer in such words, as more and more confirm'd in the breast of the Queen the good opinion which she had of him.

After they had spent some time in such returns as these, the Queen finding it to be late,

and that *Albifinda* had a long discourse to make with *Viridomar*: “I believe, *said she*, it is your intention to be gone before day; and therefore seeing you have but a small time to enjoy the company of my Sister, 'tis now time for me to retire, with this assurance, that you shall always find me ready to return into your company, and to endeavour with my Sister your quiet and satisfaction to the utmost. “As my satisfaction and good fortune, *replied the Prince*, depend for the most part upon persons to whom you are an enemy, I have no reason, Madam, to hope that you will contribute in kindness to me, or that you should put a force upon inclinations so contrary to my good fortune. “'Tis true, *replied the Queen*, that rationally our inclinations cannot be conformable to yours; but, (*continuing her discourse, and with a smile beholding the Prince*) my Sister knows, *said she*, that for her sake I can some times act beyond reason; and you need not doubt, but the esteem which I have for you will powerfully second the affection which I bear to my Sister. “It were a crime, *replied the Prince*, either for my Sister, or my self to abuse your goodness, but without requiring any signal proofs thereof from you, we may presume to tell you, there is a difference advances *Pharamond* above all his other Rivals. “That I may have taken notice of, *replied the Cimbrian Queen*, as well as you; however it is not greater in their merit, than it is in their fortune: and if it be difficult for me to love his Rivals with a merit less than his, it is no less forbidden me to love *Pharamond* with all the advantages he has above them. Concluding these expressions, she retired, giving them the liberty of entertaining one another according to their design.

When she was departed, the Prince, whom she would no more permit to attend her, than she did to visit her, remaining behind with the Princess his Sister, and sitting down by her in the same place where they had pass'd some part of the night before, he listened to the discourse that she had promised to make of her adventures, which she began from her first meeting with *Marcomire*, and the fight which he had in his own defence with *Gondemar* and the *Burgundians*, pursuing her discourse with a recital of the same things which *Marcomire* some days before had related to *Pharamond*, all which she knew, having been inform'd by *Imbergida*, after the departure of *Marcomire* and *Gondemar*, of every particular passage that she was ignorant of before. And though in this discourse she was willing to conceal some of those favourable thoughts which she had for the Brother of *Pharamond*, however, she let fall so much to make *Viridomar* understand, that they were far different from those which she had for *Gondemar*, or any of the rest. When she drew near to the end of her relation (in which she had spent the most part of the remaining night) laying her hand upon her cheek to cover the vermilion blushes, which the conclusion of her discourse had rais'd, and casting her eyes downward with some other marks of inward trouble, “I know not, my dear Brother, (*said she to the Prince, who would not suffer her to call him by any other name*) what opinion you have of that which has happened to me, in relation to the Brother of the King of the *Franks*, and of the frankness which I have used in declaring to you, what perhaps I ought not to have acknowledged concerning the passages of my life: on the one hand I have some reason to fear, that you have not so much mildness as to approve it, on the other side I feel my self somewhat assured, when I remember what you told me yesterday, being confident withal of the friendship which you have always had for me. Happen what will, I have told you the truth sincerely; and I hope (*concluding her discourse with a smile*) that you will be a Judge less rigorous to me, than the King would doubtless be, should he come to the knowledge of as much as I have related to you. “It may be, *replied the Prince*, that the hatred which the King bears to all the Family of *Pharamond*, might hinder him from being so favourable to you as we could desire; but if the immoderate passion which incessantly animates him to revenge, would but leave him reason enough to judge of things with justice, I do not believe you would have any cause to fear his severity, seeing you only suffered the presence of *Marcomire* while he was unknown, and would no longer endure his stay when you knew who he was. The most severe person in the world could have done no more, and seeing you did little less, (*continuing his discourse with a smile*) the merit of the *French Prince*, and the kindness you have for him, would easily excuse him before a Judge far more pitiless than *Viridomar*. I my self should have made that discourse, dear Sister, if I had not been in love with *Polixena*; but now joyning my interest with so many other considerations in your favour, you may believe, that instead of being an enemy to *Marcomire*, I shall be ready, next your self, to do him all the offices of kindness, which I may desire from him in my own behalf to his Sister, and that I look upon this opportunity to serve him, as occasioned by my good fortune. The hopes that he has thereof, which you have discovered to me, cannot but be very acceptable to me.

“And

“ And in performing those things which may assure him that his hopes were rational, I que-
 “ stion not but in such a soul as his, my performance will find acknowledgment, and that
 “ he will plead for me with a reciprocal satisfaction both to his Sister and King *Pharamond*,
 “ I conjure you then, my most dear Sister, to make your interest so with *Marcomire*, that he may
 “ undertake for me with his Sister, as I shall endeavour for him with mine, and at the same
 “ time to lay a sure foundation of whatever you can desire, for the satisfaction of *Marcomire*
 “ and your self from a Brother whose intentions are real, and who is to reign King of *Sue-*
 “ *via*. I do not find that the present Conjunction affords us means to do that which is in
 “ our wishes: But we must wait for a season and favourable changes, which may probably
 “ happen to our conditions: In the mean time we will leave to the Gods and Love the ma-
 “ nagement of our good fortune, and let us do one for another as opportunities offer them-
 “ selves. In this manner spake *Viridomar*, and to these he added other words, which re-
 moved all doubt from the Princess of his good intention to favour the love of *Marcomire*,
 and that he resolved to desire his assistance in the pursuit of his own: *Albifinda* listened to
 him with a joy which she had no small trouble to dissemble, but yet concealed it as much as
 possibly she could: and when he had made an end of speaking; *I will obey you, my most dear*
Brother, said she, *in whatever you shall be pleased to command me, for beside that my inclination*
carries me to satisfy your just expectations, where I am not engaged by duty, I will never be afraid
to execute the orders of a Brother who ought to be my King, if my condition change not sooner than
his. After these words they had some others, yet without being able to come to any parti-
 cular or determinate resolution, and therefore seeing the night was almost spent, and that
 it was high time for the Princess to repair to her rest, and for the Prince to retire, for fear
 of being surpris'd by the light, he took leave of the Princess, and went down the back
 Stairs as he had done the night before.

Going without a light, and groping his way in a place through which he had been con-
 ducted the night before by *Imbergida*, he met upon the Stairs not far from the Princess's Clo-
 set, a certain person, who having given him way at first to let him pass by, immediately
 followed him down stairs, and crossing along with him through a little Court which he
 was to pass to avoid the Guard, in a most fierce and valiant manner, he caught hold of *Vi-*
ridomar's Arm. *Ericlea*, said he, *What make you here in our Camp, and in the Closet of Al-*
bifinda? Viridomar who was afraid of being discovered, was strangely surpris'd at this ac-
 cident, and his surpris'e not permitting him to make answer, the person that spake to him,
 resuming his parley; *Ab—*said he, *this is too much, and that respect which has made me*
suffer hitherto without breaking into a flame, considering those advantages thou hast over me, must
not always have the same predominancy. While he uttered his mind in this manner, the Prince
 of *Suevia* having some few minutes to reflect upon the suddenness of the accident, and with-
 al having his memory full fraughted with the rehearsal which *Albifinda* had made of the ad-
 ventures of *Marcomire* and *Gondemar*, of which he had not forgot the least important par-
 ticular, he made no doubt but that the person who had put this force upon him, was *Gon-*
demar himself: and not being able to withstand the conjecture wherewith the novelty of
 the rencounter had possessed him, with a low voice not to discover himself by his tongue;
I am certain, said he, *thou art not Theodore, and it may be that I am not Ericleus, and there-*
fore whoever I am, do me the kindness to let me pass free. Without doubt, replied *Gondemar*,
thou art Ericlea because thou knowest Theodora: Nor thou must not think of parting hence,
without defending by thy valour that advantage which thy fortune has over me. With those
 words he laid his hand upon his Sword, and although the night were dark enough to hin-
 der them from observing one anothers faces, yet was it not so dark to hinder the Prince of
Suevia from observing his behaviour, nor from seeing him put himself in a posture before
 him, ready for an encounter. He was not naturally over-patient, and therefore being pro-
 voked by the sight of an Enemy prepared to attack him, though the reasons were very pre-
 valent that made him fear a discovery; and though perhaps he was not sorry to act that for
 one of the Brothers of *Polixena* against *Gondemar*, which he had for another done already a-
 gainst *Balmir*, he would not stand to reason the wrong which he might do the reputation
 of *Albifinda*, by leaving the Prince of the *Burgundians* to his mistake, but disdain'g to coun-
 terfeit, he chose rather to open a passage with his Sword than by any other means, either
 prejudicial to his design, or less becoming his Courage. When *Gondemar* saw him in a po-
 sture to defend himself, he encountred him with an absolute Bravery: and as the passion that
 emboldned him made him more desirous of victory, than he would have been upon any o-
 ther occasion, he had certainly carried away the conquest, had he not been to dispute with
 a person, whose courage as it is not inferior to his, hardly gave way to the most transcen-
 dent valour in the world. They made some blows at one another, which deser'd the light

of day rather than a darkness that concealed the knowledge of their Bravery : And being they had no other weapons but their Swords, without Arms to stop the entrance of their points whereever they were directed, they drew blood one of another almost at the beginning of the Combat. No doubt the encounter had ended in some fatal event, if the clattering of their Swords had not caused some of the Souldiers that heard it, to make to that side followed immediately by a greater number : whereupon they thought it not convenient either for the one or the other, longer to continue their bloody heat. *Viridomar* found himself sufficiently perplexed what resolution to take, in case his Enemy should be obstinate : But *Gondemar* who was truly generous, and who for his virtue deserved perhaps a better destiny than he had in *Albisinda's* affection, prevented his thoughts so much the sooner, because he thought the danger would be greater for *Marcomire* than for any other of the Enemies : *Marcomire*, said he, *we cannot finish our dispute, without exposing thy life and my honour to too great a hazard, we'll put an end to it another time with less inequality.* And having said those words which strongly confirmed the good opinion that the Prince had of him, he hastned to the souldiers that were coming up to them, and commanding them to stop he gave *Viridomar* liberty to retire, and seek out *Timanthus* who stayed for him at some distance off with his horses. As soon as he was on horseback, he related to *Timanthus* with whom he entrusted all his concerns what had happened. And being naturally enclined to be just to merit, he forgot not to speak all he could to *Gondemar's* advantage, and testified his sorrow to see him engaged in a passion for which he ought to have been favourable to his Rival. But he put *Timanthus* into a strange affright, who soon perceived that he had received a wound upon his Thigh, from whence there issued an exceeding great quantity of blood. However, *Haldan's* quarters not being far off, they were not long ere they got thither : and by the care of *Haldan* the Prince was put to bed, where he had the opportunity to have his wound dressed, with all secrecy : which did not a little trouble him to see himself obliged to keep his bed for some days.

The next morning the news was spread through all the Camp, that Prince *Gondemar* had received a very great wound in the shoulder with a sword, and another slight hurt in his left hand, but no man knew by whose hand he had received them : only King *Gondioch* his Brother, from whom he kept nothing hid, and to whom he had related the adventure ; who thereupon believed that it was from *Marcomire's* hand that he had received his hurts : Yet was it not without great precaution, and the deep engagement of his promise that *Gondemar* discovered to him this secret. And although his soul was more cruelly wounded than his body, being pierced thorow with a disgust against *Albisinda* which did in some measure lessen the value which he had for her ; yet would he not expose her to any injuries which she might justly fear, either from the publick report of the world, or the severity of the King her Father. *Gondioch* had much ado to contain himself within the bounds of moderation upon this accident, and for that the violent hatred which his cruel jealousy had breathed into him against the King of the *Franks*, passed through the whole family, all the consideration he had for the prayers of a Brother most worthy his affection, was all little enough to keep him from breaking out, and publishing to the King of *Sueden* the small conformity there was between him and his Children. So soon as both the Queens were stirring, they heard the news : but they were only told that *Gondemar* had been wounded by an unknown person, whom he would have stopped as taking him for a Spy, whereupon in regard of his quality and merit which obliged all the world to honour him, they resolved to visit him so soon as they were dressed. *Albisinda* who besides the knowledge she had of *Gondemar's* love, was not so free as the Queens to make such visits, was not so easily perswaded : but the King her Father commanded her to accompany the Queens, telling them withal that he was resolved to attend them himself, together with the Prince of *Persia* and Prince *Balamir*, who began that very day to go abroad again, and was the more willing so to do, that he might visit *Gondemar*, though his friends and his Physicians press'd him all they could to the contrary. The fair Queen who admired him, though she testified an incredible joy for his recovery, yet blamed him for his rashness in venturing abroad. And with those words which she spake to him upon that subject with such a divine grace, she charmed both his eyes and soul. "You know, *so she went on*, that a life such a one as yours, is of that high price not to be neglected, and that many persons are concerned in its preservation, who are not to leave you at your liberty to make light of it as you do. *Balamir* blushed at those words either out of modesty or by reason of some particular thoughts, which such expressions flowing from such lips as those might inspire him withal : and taking hold of her words with a most respectful behaviour, *If my life*, said he, *had so much worth for you to be but one moment concerned for it, I should then perhaps become more careful of it, than my honour permits me.* But

(concluding with a sigh) *hitherto it has been so unfortunate, as not to dare to hope for so glorious a change.* You need not doubt, replied the Queen, *but that it is most dear and considerable to all those who know how to pay justice to merit.* And I do not believe, (said she, beholding him with a most obliging smile) *that hitherto you have found that I was ever deficient in the acknowledgment of yours.* It is so high and so renowned through the world, added the fair *Amalazontha*, *that no person can be ignorant thereof without doing an injury to themselves.* And it has this advantage, concluded the charming *Albifinda*, *that envy it self is forced to regard it.* The modesty of *Balamir* had much ado to undergo the praises of the fairest lips in the world. And while he was studying for words, with a submission conformable to the respect he owed to the admirable Princesses, *Varanez* preventing him with a behaviour that shewed something of discontent, *I confess*, said he, *the merit of Balamir well deserves all the praises you can heap upon him; but in my opinion, the honour which he receives this day, is above the desert of any man in the world.* I easily accord with you in that, replied *Balamir*, *and if there were no other dispute in the world but this, we should never have occasion to quarrel and fight one against another, as we do.* We have other subjects of discourse enough, replied the Prince of *Persia*, *to revive; and indeed it is a difficult thing for two persons as you and I, pretending to the same fortune, to continue long friends.* I very much fear, replied the Prince of the *Huns*, *that you and I pretend to no purpose; and though you are a Competitor justly to be feared, yet I would not desire to run the venture against any other person sooner than against your self.* I do not know, (said *Varanez*, looking fiercely upon him) *whether you would have so little to do as you imagine; and I hardly believe that there is any other person in the world that can put you to more trouble.* I am apt to believe, replied *Amalazontha*, *to hinder the further progress of that dispute, that you would find it a hard matter, both the one and the other; but since your quarrel is the same, methinks the effects of your valour ought not to prove fatal, but only to the common Enemy.* Ah my dear Sister, (then said *Albifinda* to *Amalazontha* with a low voice, fearing to be over-heard by *Rosamond* that stood near her) *methinks you abide far better than I, the common quarrel between us; but I do not so well know, whether you would preserve all your ill will for your Enemies, had you seen them as I have done.* Since the misfortune which last happened to me, replied the Queen of the *Turingiens*, *I dare not answer for my heart, as I was wont to do; and seeing it is only destiny, and not reason, that rules my fortune and my thoughts, I know not well, whether I could protect all my hatred against the greatness of merit; for I doubt not, but there is that merit in the world sufficient to vanquish the most just resentment I might have, and upon that occasion, Sister, you should find in my heart a more steadfast constancy perhaps than you imagine.* Yes, dear Sister, (replied the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, beholding her with a languishing glance, which she turned immediately upon *Albifinda*) *you would remain constant, no doubt, in the just anger which you have towards your Enemies, nor would you know how to hate them too much, though perhaps *Albifinda* and I hate them not enough.*

After these words, and some other discourse which held for some time, this illustrious company repaired to King *Gondioch's* Quarters, (who with other Kings and great Princes were lodged in the Burrough) and presently enter'd the Chamber of *Gondemar*. The wounded Prince received so fair a visit with a deep respect; and he had look'd upon his wound as the greatest effect of his happiness, which was the cause that he then beheld in his Chamber the beautiful Princess whom he adored, if his mind had not been fill'd with imaginations, the absolute enemies of his repose, which representing to him the happiness of his Rival greater than indeed it was, spread through all his Soul the poison of a cruel jealousy, and furnish'd it with a resentment so great, that it durst dispute against his love. This vexation that possessed his mind, debarring him the liberty of discourse, hardly permitted him to find words to return thanks to the two Queens and the Princess, for the honour which they did him, and he acquitted himself with so much disturbance, as easily shewed the sedition of his mind, though he made not the cause apparent. The Princesses sat in the space between the Bed and the Wall, where they were informed of the condition of his health, though they understood more from *Gondioch* than from him; and when he spoke to them of his wounds, those looks, now more than usually enflamed, which he fix'd upon *Albifinda*, sufficiently manifested that his body was not so cruelly wounded as his Soul. However, at length he told them his adventure, not as in truth it was, but so as he would have them believe it, he also spoke in few words, as a person with whom it was not usual to tell an untruth. There might also possibly be persons in the company, to whom the truth was not necessary to be known: nor did they examine over strictly a personage of that quality, as *Gondemar* was, and one that bore the marks about him of what he said. *Gondioch*, who could not curb his impatience, nor dissemble the trouble which he

had to conceal the truth, was retired to another part of the chamber with *Martian*, by whose removal *Gondemar* finding himself at more liberty to repeat the whole story, otherwise than he had already related it, perswaded the Queens and the rest of the company, as he had lately caused it to be spread abroad, that it was done by a person unknown, and that he would have apprehended him for a spie, that he was wounded, and that he could not hinder him from making his escape, though he designed it; all the company concluded the unknown person to have done a very bold act, and by all the circumstances they judged, that he could be none of the vulgar sort, when the Prince of Persia, in whose soul courageous actions found always a noble reception, undertaking the discourse, *This unknown person*, said he, *whoever he be, wants not courage, and I am very much deceived, if he be not rather a Lover than a Spie, and that it was rather some amorous design, than to spie our Camp, that caused him to walk in the dark.* *Gondemar* made no reply to the words of *Varanez*, which went to the very bottom of his heart; but he sigh'd and changed colour, and by that demeanour of his, had it been well observed, the company might well have judged, that his thoughts were agreeable to those of *Varanez*. But the beautiful Queen of the *Cimbrians* laying hold of the words; *As there are not in the Camp,* (said she to the Prince of Persia smiling) *other Ladies than our selves and our Attendants, we are obliged to perswade you from this opinion, nor can you perhaps defend it without doing us an injury.* And do you then believe, Madam, replied *Varanez*, that it is impossible for some of these Ladies to have certain Lovers in the Camp, and that among those there may not be one, that does not give himself to sleep all the night. There is most certainly, replied the famous *Balamir*, and I question not my self, but that there are more than one whose love affords them but little familiarity with slumber. But of those there are very few that could not know Prince *Gondemar*, and who would not have sooner made themselves known to him, than have ventured a combat with him. I have heard say, straight replied the fair Princess *Albifinda*, that they who are in love, are not wise at all times, and I am apt to believe, that the prejudice of being discovered, or hindered from his design, might make him lose some part of that consideration which at another time he might not want. I believe as you do, Madam, (replied *Gondemar*, beholding her with a sudden alteration, which might easily be observed) and perhaps some one in particular might have greater reasons for the prejudice of being discovered, than another. But if it be a Lover, (continuing his argument with a sigh) he is without doubt a happy Lover; and I envy him for that happiness more than for his success in the encounter. At these words *Albifinda* blush'd, though she could not precisely conjecture the meaning of *Gondemar*; for indeed she suspected, that the opinion which he had of *Marcomire's* good fortune, had made him utter these expressions, though she did not mistrust that *Gondemar* was possess'd that he had fought *Marcomire*; she did not therefore well know what answer to make, but the Queen of the *Cimbrians* who was privy to all her concerns, seeing her at a stand, was willing to help her out, and preventing what she was about to reply to *Gondemar*; I do not know, said she to the Prince, by what signs and tokens you judge this unknown person to be a happy Lover; if it be because you met him at such an hour, when it is very probable none but Lovers are admitted to see their Mistresses, the same conjecture may be made of your good fortune, seeing it was at the same hour that he met with you. And we know well, (so she concluded with a smile) that it is not to spie that you take your walks about the Camp. *Gondemar* blush'd at this discourse of the Queen, and after he had made a stop for some few minutes, to study out words rather conformable to the respect and value which he always had for *Albifinda*, than to the passion which then disturb'd him: *As for me*, said he to the Queen, *it may be truly said, that I awake to my mischief, when others awake for their advantage; but since this was not the first day that I have met misfortunes, I confess,* (said he, sighing forth the last words) *that I never believ'd it to have been so great as I find it at this time.* Speaking these words, he cast his eyes upon *Albifinda* in so passionate a manner, that notwithstanding the force which he put upon himself not to discover his thoughts, he was in danger to have disclosed a very great share of what was in his breast, if *Gondioch*, before whom he was unwilling to proceed in his discourse, had not presented himself to the company, together with *Martian* and *Briomer*, in whom the King had a very great confidence, and for whom the implacable hatred he bore the King of France, rather than any other reason cherisht a very high esteem. In a short while after, this illustrious company retired to the Castle, all but *Eriomer*, whom the King of the *Burgundians* detained to dine with him.

The heart of *Gondioch* was swelled with anger and discontent, but though for nearness of blood, and the consideration of his merit, he dearly loved his Brother, yet was he not so much griev'd for his being wounded, as out of despite for the advantage which the House of *Pharamond* had over his. And as he laboured without intermission under that cruel jealousie,

lousie, that had kindled so much hatred in his mind against the King of *France*, so he could not endure without a violent disgust, that the Brother of *Pharamond* should be preferr'd before his, in the breast of *Albifinda*, the Sister of *Vindimir*, and once appointed to have been espoused to *Theobald*, which gave him that freedom, that he was permitted to visit her by night in the Enemies Camp; the passion, that for this reason enraged him, possibly appeared in his countenance, and in his discourse: and though he curbed it before the Queens, the Princess of *Suevia*, and the Princes who had born them company; after their departure, finding himself at liberty with *Briomer*, whose thoughts and inclinations he knew to be conformable to his own, he the less cared to dissemble his displeasure. And in conclusion, walking with him alone in a chamber distant from *Gondemar's*, he discovered to *Briomer* so much of his discontent, that the *Cimbrian* could not forbear, not without an eager vehemency; to demand the cause of his heat, and that in so passionate a manner, that the *Burgundian* King forgetting the promises that he had made to *Gondemar*, whether it were to pacifie his anger, by committing it to the breast of a person in whom he had so great an interest, or which was more true, out of a design to revenge himself upon *Albifinda*, against whom he was strangely exasperated, he discovered to him not only what thoughts *Gondemar* and he had had of the last encounter, but whatever else he knew of the concerns of *Albifinda* with *Marcomire* and *Gondemar*, just as he had been told them by his Brother, who concealed nothing from him. The provoked *Briomer* found the hatred which implacably incensed him against the House of *France*, augmented by this discourse; and reflecting upon all the actions of *Albifinda* that could increase any suspicion in his thoughts as well what happened at *Egitina*, where he seized and detained *Marcomire*, as what she had afterwards done at *Marobinda*, as also at other times, when she lost no opportunity to witness her disrespect towards him: he did not only not doubt of the truth of what *Gondioch* perswaded him to her disadvantage, but he became so violently enraged against her, that the was very near as hateful to him as the worst of those Enemies against whom he was so cruelly provoked; and as that immoderate passion which had blinded him, had benumm'd in his Soul all the motions of virtue, and shut his eyes against all other thoughts, but those of revenge, he took an immediate resolution to wreck his malice upon *Albifinda*, by whom he conceived himself injured, and not to lose so fair an occasion to plague the Brother of *Pharamond*. He would not tell *Gondioch* what design he had, for fear he should perswade him from it (though he could not forbear to express his madness in words full of fury) but a little while after he had taken his leave of King *Gondioch*, he went to seek out the King of *Suevia*, to tell him what crimes his Daughter had committed, of which the greatest was, that she cherish'd that affection which the Sister of *Vindimir* ought not to have for the Brother of *Pharamond*.

After the two Queens and the Princess had dined in *Amalazontba's* Apartment, and after some few hours of discourse together, *Rosamond* for the dispatch of business retired to her Closet, and *Albifinda* returned to her Chamber, where she found *Haldan* attending her coming. As he was the person amongst all the *Suevians* most considerable for his Birth, and for his merit, she always received him courteously, but then looking upon him as the confident of *Viridomar*, and as one that exposed himself to all the anger of the King for the service of the Prince, she treated him after a more liberal manner than she was accustomed to do, and in most obliging terms signified to him what thoughts of acknowledgment the Prince had for him. *Haldan* hearkened to her discourse with a very great respect, and when she had done speaking, he informed her of the occasion that brought him thither, telling her that he was sent by the Prince her Brother, to let her know of his wound, and of the encounter which he had with *Gondemar*. *Albifinda* was troubled at first to hear of the Prince's being wounded, but was soon pacified, upon the assurance which she received, that the wound was but slight, and consequently not dangerous; but other particulars gave her suspicion enough of the Alarm, at the news of this encounter; and therefore causing *Haldan* to repeat what the two Princes said one to the other, whence *Gondemar* gathered his reasons to take *Viridomar* for *Marcomire*, she foresaw a great part of those miseries which this mistake might draw upon her; nor could she forbear to tell *Haldan* with her wonted sweetness, that the Prince ought not, but upon a very urgent necessity, to have exposed himself to so great a danger: and that (besides that she stood in fear of the King's severity) her reputation was mainly concern'd in this encounter, and committed to the discretion of a person, that upon any distaste, how apparently soever unjust, might hazard the greatest part thereof. After that, she reflected upon the words that *Gondemar* had spoken the same day, which she found agreeable to the opinion he had of *Marcomire's* good fortune, and weighing the whole proceeding with that justice which it behoved her to pay him, she

could not choose but have an infinite respect for *Gondemar*, and esteem him a Prince worthy of a better fortune than he could expect in serving a person whose heart was already engaged. These thoughts ran in her mind just as she saw the King her Father entering into her Chamber; but she no sooner cast her eyes upon his countenance, when she beheld the cruel symptoms of those evils which she feared. In brief, his countenance was entirely chang'd, and his eyes sparkled with anger in such a terrible manner, that the Princess naturally timorous, at first sight lost all her courage, and with a fear that made her grow pale, expected the storm that was about to pour it self down upon her head. But if the Lightning astonish'd her, the Thunder which followed strook her into a mortal terrour; for the enraged King, after he had pronounc'd part of what she feared, *I come hither, said he, expecting news answerable to my repose, to the honour of my House, and to the grief which I endure through the weakness and remissness of a Brother, but for my sweet consolation I understand the infamy of the Sister. It was not enough for the treacherous Viridomar to forsake my interest, and his own duty, in loving the Sister of Pharamond, but the miserable Albisinda too, through the displeasure of Heaven, must love the Brother of him that murdered Vindimir, love him so too, as to forget what she owed to her honour; keeping him by her disguised in a woman's dress, and giving him entrance by night into her Chamber within our Camp.* The poor Princess was so far troubled, or rather amazed at these words, that she seem'd in the eyes of the King as one half dead: and although she knew her self accused of a crime which she had in no wise committed, and that in truth her innocence ought to have embolden'd her; yet she had so far lost her resolution, that she could not so much as open her lips to justify her self, or lift up her eyes to look upon the countenance of the outrageous King. The tears which soon after dropp'd from her eyes might have touch'd, and perhaps have mollified any other heart but that of the King of *Suevia*; but those tears, and the silence of the comfortless Princess condemn'd her, instead of doing her justice; for the King taking the crime for confessed, which she had not power to deny, grew more furious than before, scarcely containing himself from those aggravations of anger that are wont to hurry men into extremities of violence: *How, said he, poor spirited and dishonourable Princess, thinkest thou with a few tears to wash away the ignominy of a crime which all thy blood cannot wash off? Or that these marks of confusion can suffice to repair thy offence? Let not those proofs of my paternal affection which thou hast hitherto received, abuse thee, I will find a way to combat nature, rather than be unjust to my honour. And since the Gods, in taking from me Vindimir, have left me none but children unworthy of their parentage, I will overcome whatever their blood or birth can plead in their behalf; and instead of an indulgent Father, they shall find me an angered King, that knows how to punish their perfidiousness.* To these he added other words, which his passion caused him to utter disorderly; or rather such reproaches, such bloody injuries, that the afflicted Princess trembled to hear, having reason to fear all that might possibly be expected from a severity which she was never acquainted with before. At length she endeavoured to unlock a silence which rendred her guilty of offences which she had never committed; and while the King walking to and fro in the chamber, cast his eyes upon her every foot in a pelting fury, she recovering her speech with a boldness more than natural, *Sir, said she, I confess that I am very unfortunate, but assuredly I am not so guilty as you are persuaded to believe, and they that have incensed you against me, telling you that the Brother of Pharamond, and the Brother of Gondioch were concealed in a disguise at Lisurgis among our women, might have better inform'd you, that I was altogether ignorant of their folly; and that I suffered neither the one nor the other to tarry one minute after I came to the knowledge of it. Sir, this is a truth which shall be justified by the Queen of the Cimbrians, and by my accusers themselves; and whereas you tax me for having seen the Brother of Pharamond since that, in my chamber; Sir, I do affirm that I have deserv'd no such scandal; and that neither by night, nor by day, neither here, nor in any other place of the world has Marcomire appeared in my sight, since the day that Gondemar brought him to my knowledge. How! wretched creature! (replied the King, casting a terrible frown upon her) did not you see Marcomire last night in your Chamber? And did he not come out of your Chamber when Gondemar met and fought him? I know not, replied the Princess, with whom Gondemar fought; but certain it is, that Marcomire neither came to me, nor do I know of any such intention he had. I would lose half my blood, replied the King, that what thou sayest were true; but thou knowest too well the contrary, and thy crime is too apparent for my honour and thy repose: do not believe that I will let it pass unpunished, nor ever look upon me as a Father, since thou hast unworthily forgot that thou wert my Daughter, and that thou wert the Sister of Vindimir. Perhaps I may give an example to let the world know how little I connive at the lewdness of my children, when I once take up my resolution: And then looking with a severe countenance upon her at the conclu-*

sion of his speech) *Wait here*, said he, *in your Chamber my further orders, which will be for your confinement.* Having spoke those words, he was just going out when the Queen of the *Cimbrians* advertised of what had fallen out, entred the Chamber, and presently after her the fair Queen of the *Turingiens*. At the sight of the two Queens, the King of *Suevia* endeavoured to conceal some part of his fury, but it was impossible to hide what appeared so evidently in his eyes, and in every part of his countenance. Nor had he any great intention to make a secret of the affair, and therefore addressling himself to Queen *Rosalinda*, as the most interested person in the misfortune of *Albifinda*; "You come Madam, said he, in a very good time to reproach a Princess, who has made her self unworthy of your friendship, and of the name of Sister which you have always been pleased to allow her. Possibly ere this you have understood her crimes, and surely you have a fence thereof answerable to your birth, not to go about to excuse her: "True it is, (replied the charming Queen, beholding him with a Majesty to which all his Anger durst not forbid him to give a deep respect) I do not willingly nor easily allow of crimes, but it is withal more true that I do not at all suspect my Sister, at least from the time that we have had a mutual affection ore for another, she not having done any Action, and as I believe not having thought a thought, to which I was not private, and therefore she has committed no crime of which I must not be equally guilty. How Madam (replied the King, casting a furious look upon her?) You know that in the disguise of a woman, she kept concealed in her Company the Brother of Pharamond. I knew it without doubt, replied the Queen, the same day that she had knowledge of it: But I know withal, that neither the Brother of Pharamond nor the Brother of Gondioch were known to her, till that very minute that they were forced to depart: And if Pharamond or Gondioch by a wile like that of their Brothers, should have remained with me as their Brothers stayed with my Sister *Albifinda*, yet should I not think my innocency ere the more wronged for that. Madam (said the King of *Suevia*) I know not whether the King your Father would have been of the same judgment as you are, in a case of the same nature: But though you excuse *Albifinda*, as to the disguise of *Marcomire*. I verily believe Madam you cannot approve the visit which she condescended to receive, last night in her Chamber. I spent the greatest part of the night with my Sister, replied *Rosalinda*, nor did she entertain any visit in which I had not a share: but this I am well assured of, that neither she nor I saw any *Marcomire* there. *Gondemar*, replied the King, saw him go forth of her Chamber, and besides that he is a Prince that may be believed, he carries sufficient marks of the encounter, that leaves us no reason to doubt of the truth. Without doubt *Gondemar* was deceived, replied the Queen, and when occasion serves I shall make it so manifestly appear, as not to leave you the least imagination of a suspicion, injurious to the discretion of *Albifinda*. I desire it were so but I have little reason to hope it, answered he with fury enough, However Madam, you must give me leave to let them who fight on our side know, that I do not at all approve the lewdness of my Children, and that blood and natural affection prevail less over me than duty. And concluding these words, he left the Chamber with a countenance that might give *Albifinda* to understand, how little he was convinc'd of her innocence.

But the two Queens tarryed with her, unwilling to forsake her at such a time, when there could be nothing more dear to her than their Company, and the consolation which they were able to afford her. To this purpose they drew near to her, and ere they began to speak by their endearments they let her know, how apprehensive they were of her grief: But for that *Amalazontha* was ignorant of what had happened, nor knew any thing of *Marcomire*'s love or the Adventure of *Viridomar*, the most charming Queen and the fair Princess, though they would not discover any thing, of what opinion they had either for *Pharamond* or *Marcomire*, did not however think there was the same necessity to conceal from her *Marcomire*'s disguise, or the visits which *Viridomar* had paid to *Albifinda*. And therefore after the Queen of the *Cimbrians* had briefly related that which had happened between the Princess and the two Princes in disguise, without making known however her particular thoughts for *Marcomire*; she was not curious at all, but told her the whole truth of the private coming of the Prince of the *Suedes* into their Camp, of his visits to *Albifinda*, and of his encounter which *Gondemar*, according to the account which *Haldan* had been sent to give by order of the Prince, not doubting but she would faithfully preserve all secret. And when they had fully instructed her in what was convenient for her to know, to the end she might the better understand *Albifinda*'s condition, they fell into discourse upon the particulars of her misfortune, and the best resolution they had to take in order to her justification.

As to what appeared most criminal in her carriage, she questioned not but that it might be done, by letting the King understand the truth of the last adventure: to which *Amalazontha* added, that the Prince her brother could not for shame desire that to preserve him from a danger, which did no way threaten his life, she should expose her own to the fury of the King's

King's indignation, and her reputation to the publick discourse of men. And therefore she advised her to let the King know the truth, having first ordered the Prince to go farther off. *Rosamond* thought *Amalazontha's* counsel to be very sound, so that the Prince had timely notice to remove himself from their Camp, before the King understood of his being there. And she made no question but all the reasons which he could give for his stay, unlets his wound detained him, would be less considerable to him than the honour and safety of *Albifinda*. But the Princess believed her self obliged to proceed the most cautiously that might be for the interest of her brother: And though she feared her Father's displeasure beyond death, and the disgrace that a report so scandalous might bring upon her Reputation, she could not yield to any other resolution, than that of acting according to the orders of the Prince, who it was most probable would soon ridd her of the trouble which she endured, when he had once the knowledge of it, which she doubted not but he would quickly learn from *Haldan*, who went away with the King after he had been an ear-witness of all that pass'd. Then it was that *Albifinda* began to repent of the good opinion which she had had for *Gondemar*, not questioning but he was the cause of all her misfortune. And if till that time, she had had a value for him as he truly merited, she found his succeeding actions so far from being answerable to his plausible beginnings, that notwithstanding the mildness of her disposition, she found her self very much displeas'd with him: She conceal'd it however more than any ill will that ever she had: And instead of shewing her self outrageous, she mildly complain'd thereof to *Rosamond*: and gave her to understand that the injury which she had received from *Gondemar*, should serve to cure her of that sorrow which she had, to think she should be the cause of making him unhappy, at a time when she believed his merit deserved a better fortune.

Yet was it not without some injustice that she was provok'd against him; for that poor Prince, who was no otherwise guilty than by the confidence which he had in the King his Brother's secrecy, to which he had oblig'd him by all the protestations imaginable, no sooner understood this unfortunate accident, by the report which the anger of the King and the indiscretion or rather malice of *Briomer* had nois'd abroad through the whole Camp, but he was seiz'd with a grief the most violent that his heart was capable to receive; so that all the force of his courage and his reason, could not keep him in his bed, nor in the bounds of a passion that might have well enough justify'd him. As he knew it was only to *Gondioch* that he had discover'd the truth of his adventure, and the thoughts which he had of the happiness of *Marcomire*, it was only him that he accus'd, and he complain'd thereof to him with all the dissatisfaction, that it was convenient for him to testify toward his elder Brother and his King. He resolv'd to rise notwithstanding his wounds, to prostrate his Innocence at *Albifinda's* feet: nor had his friends that oppos'd his intention, dissuad'd him with all the reasons which they alledged, if King *Gondioch* whom they had acquainted with his design, had not enter'd the Chamber. Upon the sight of him the dissatisfaction of the Prince increas'd and beginning to speak with a behaviour that sufficiently testified his grief; *Ab Sir*, said he, *by what action or fault of mine have I thus disobliged you, that you should so cruelly hasten my death, or if my life were a burthen to you, why did you not deprive me of it by so many ways as you have to execute your will, without involving in my misfortune a Princess whom I adore, and one who never yet offended you.* To these words he added many more which the disturbance of his mind made him utter abruptly, and without any Coherence: whereby he gave *Gondioch* to understand, that by the ill offices which he had done him, he had plung'd him into a danger far greater than that, to which any wounds had they been far more dangerous than those which made him keep his bed, could have expos'd him. *Gondioch* who entirely lov'd him, and who infinitely esteem'd him for his great services, saw with no small sorrow what he himself had been the cause of, and hearkn'd to his complaints with much patience, not being willing to oppose such a torrent of words that he was not able to stop, and which a violent passion mov'd him to utter. But when he had done speaking, and at the conclusion of his complaints had let fall some tears, that more express'd his grief than all his words; *Wherefore Brother*, said he, *appear you so afflicted, or rather so overwhelmed with despair for a person that so ungratefully prefers before you the Brother of Pharamond, and who gives your Rival admission into her Chamber by night, while you unprofitably languish for her?* *Marcomire*, reply'd the Prince, *might possibly come to visit Albifinda without being invited, or that the Princess ever consented thereto: And though my Rival may be more happy or more in her favour than my self, it is not for me therefore to ruine the peace and reputation of a Princess whom I adore, by committing a treachery so abominable.* "Neither you nor I (reply'd the King of the Burgundians) have done any thing so unworthy: And though I have little reason to have any kindness for one that is contented to see the murderer of her Brother triumph over
"her

her Family : Yet the value I have for you and the respect I bear to her Sex, have withheld me from revenging my self upon her, by exposing her reputation to the censure of men, and her repose to the indignation of a Father. But Brother I have mistaken as you your self have been mistaken, for if you committed a fault in trusting me with a secret, I committed another in discovering it to one whom I thought worthy of the trust, as well for the interest he has in our party, as for the implacable hatred which he bears to our Rivals and our Enemies. At another time perhaps I should have been less sensible of the grief which you express, and I should have advised you to make use of your Courage to forget a person that despises you. But by the proof which I find in my self of a weakness equal to yours, I can neither blame in you that which I feel too well in my self, nor give you counsel in your passion, who am not able to follow any in relation to my own. I shall therefore only content my self to tell you, that as I was the cause of all this mischief, through the confidence which I reposed in *Briomer*, so I am resolved to suffer all the punishment, and to justify you by accusing my self before *Albisinda*. Having spoken these words and many others which he added, with an intent to try if he could settle the mind of the Prince, he departed out of the Chamber, and immediately hastening to the Castle he went directly to *Albisinda's* Apartment, and entered in while the two Queens were with her. *Rosamond* and *Albisinda* received him faintly enough : for besides that the Princess began to be of the Queens opinion never to love *Gondemar* more, she made no scruple to let *Gondiob* know how much she was offended at his Brother for his folly, nor could she frame her self to give him any thing of a kind reception. *Gondiob* perceived it, and easily divining the reason, " I see well Madam, (*said he addressing himself particularly to the Princess of Suevia*) that you look upon me as the Brother of an offender, whom you judge to have deserved your anger, but you will be more just when you shall find me my self to be the criminal; and indeed for the respect I owe to truth, I am obliged to let you understand that I am the person guilty, and that *Gondemar* is altogether innocent : And therefore be pleased not to suspect him in the least, for having told your Father the smallest tittle of what has incensed his anger against you. Whatever cause he might probably have to complain of your disdain, he would have suffered death sooner than have exposed himself to the least hazard of your displeasure, and that if he has committed any fault, it was only in trusting a Brother that loves him dearly, and from whom it was impossible for him to keep himself reserved, as one that expected from my assistance one part of his good fortune. I confess I have made an ill use of the secret which he entrusted me with, though he recommended it to me with a passion that ought to have instructed me, how much dearer it was to him than his life. And though with a good intention, I did ill to discover it to *Briomer*, whom I looked upon as the most zealous for the interests of those that fight on our behalfs, and who possibly transported with this heat, and a zeal altogether as imprudent discovered it to the King your Father. He neither did it by my advice nor by my persuasion, and beside the real sorrow which I bring for my fault, I come Madam to make this protestation, that *Gondemar's* affliction is no less, rather so tormenting that he can hope for nothing but death, if you continue to doubt his innocency. Thus spake *Gondiob*, when the fair Princess (whose displeasure had encreas'd her courage, and whose resolution gather'd strength during his discourse, looking fiercely upon him after he had done speaking ; " As I have not been accustomed, *said she*, to receive any kindnesses either from you or from *Gondemar*, so do I neither admire at that you come now to offer. But as ye are Princes born, and that among personages of such high quality, honour and virtue rarely suffer under untruth and calumny, I was apt to believe that you might have been content to have told my Father only the real truth, how far I was concerned in *Gondemar's* adventures, without assailing my reputation with a scandal, and accusing me to have entertained *Marcomire* in my Chamber. " I have told you already, *replied the Burgundian King*, that if *Briomer* had followed my directions, he had not spoken to the King either of *Gondemar* or *Marcomire* : But there was more of imprudence in his acting, than there was either of deceit or slander. Nor had *Gondemar* taken the person whom he encountered for *Marcomire*, if the marks and tokens which he gave him, had not seem'd so clear, that he could not doubt the truth thereof. " I shall acquit my self of that accusation when I see my time, *resolutely replied the Princess*. But as it is not before you that I am to make this justification, so I look upon it as time enough for you to find your error, when it shall be publickly known, especially since it so little concerns you : " If *Briomer*, *said the Queen of the Cimbrians*, were not more considerable by the recommendation of the King my Father, and for the fidelity which he hath preserved for his memory, and the memory of the Prince my Brother, than for his own merit and services; I would make him suffer a punishment

“proportionable to the greatness of his offence, for it is not for my Subjects to wrong my Sister; and as high as he is, I shall let him understand the provocation he has given me, in such a manner, that perhaps he may not forget it as long as he lives. “Most dear Sister, “replied *Albisinda*, be not offended against a person whose intentions were good, however the effects thereof were not answerable; and give me leave only to think for my own consolation, that *Gondioch* knew not where to find a better Confident than *Briomer*, nor more suitable to his disposition. “You may judge of *Briomer* and me what you please, “replied *Gondioch*, and I am willing that we should both be exposed to the punishment of your displeasure, provided that *Gondemar* were exempted from bearing any share. *I verily believe, dear Sister*, said the Queen of the *Turingiens*, *that Gondemar is altogether innocent of the trouble which you suffer. And indeed there is little likelihood, that a person who adores you, and in whom we know there is a great deal of virtue, would have any way contributed to such an injury as this which they have done you.* “I am of your opinion, answered “*Queen Rosamond*, and since that King *Gondioch* will have it so, I will sooner accuse him and *Briomer* than Prince *Gondemar*. “I know well, said *Gondioch*, that you are not at all prepossessed for my advantage, and that to day is not the first time that I have found my self unhappy for that reason; at another time I might desire you not to condemn me so readily; but now I am content to be accused of the fault which I have committed, and which I come on purpose to confess.

They were at these disputes, when one of the Princess's Attendants coming into the Chamber, brought news that there was an Officer come to seize *Imbergida*, by order from the King, and that she was guarded so strictly, that no person could be permitted to see her: *Albisinda* grew pale when she heard the news, though she knew her innocent of the accusation which they had laid upon her, of having introduced *Marcomire* into her Chamber, fearing least it should be for what had happened at *Lisurgis*, upon the Prince's remaining there in disguise. The two Queens were very much troubled, especially the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and the so much the more, because she was not at liberty to follow her own inclinations, and to declare her self so resolutely for her Friend, as she could have done upon another occasion, where there was no mention to be made of the Brother of *Pharamond*. However, she resolved to defend her to the utmost of her power, observing all necessary moderation; nay, rather than to quit her to the severity of her Father, if it came to the push, to lay aside all other considerations. *Amalazontha* took the same resolution. And *Gondioch* quite ashamed to see himself the cause of so much mischief, offered himself to seek out all the remedy he could, and departing from the Princess's Chamber, went to seek the King of *Suevia*, with an intention to trye if he could appease him.

While these things happened in the Castle, and that the King of *Suevia* had left it, *Haldan* returned to Prince *Viridomar*, and had acquainted him with the evil effect which his visit by night, and his encounter with *Gondemar* had produced to his Sister. *Viridomar* was much troubled at the news, and to shew that he took no small part of his Sister's sorrow upon him, he sorely repented himself, that he had taken no care to avoid the Combat. As he knew the humour of his Father, so he feared his severity towards *Albisinda*, well knowing it was no small portion of his rigour which she was to undergo, if he remained still in that persuasion, that she had been visited in the night by *Marcomire*: nor did he less consider the reputation than the repose of his Sister; and withal, that the report which was spread through the whole Camp, and which was likely to flie a great deal farther, was sufficiently important to require a clear and publick justification. He was a long time silent, pondering upon some better way to disentangle himself out of this perplexity, than at present he had in his thoughts, when at the very same instant *Timanthus* entering his Chamber, brought him word that *Imbergida* was seized, and that the King sought out with great diligence for all those persons whom he understood had kept any correspondence with the Princess. This news causing him to hasten his resolution, he turn'd himself towards *Haldan*, and beholding him with a brow that denoted his intentions, *I confess, Cousin*, said he, *I have done an action becoming a young man, not in fighting with Gondemar, for that was a difficult thing for me to avoid, but in speaking such words to him as might cause him to suspect me for Marcomire; this accident disorders all my thoughts. But it behoves me to endure this bad event of my evil fortune, and to repair the error which I committed, by that one only way that is left me, which is to present my self before the King, and let him, the Camp, and all the world know, that it was only I that gave her a visit by night.* O Sir, said *Haldan*, what a strange resolution is that? 'Tis the only resolution I can take, replied the Prince, and it is fitting that I should suffer the punishment of my ill management. “Know you not the humour of the King better? (replied *Haldan*.) And have you forgot how terrible he is, when “he

“ he is angry ? “ The King will not put me to death, *replied the Prince*, yet though my life was in danger, I would sooner expose it, than leave my Sister under that necessity, where my imprudence has thrown her. “ But Sir, *replied Haldan*, the King will no more put the Princess to death, than your self; and perhaps he may not use her so severely as you have reason to fear. “ He may do injuries, *replied Viridomar*, less supportable than death, seeing therefore that she is certain of the King’s displeasure, you need not question but the loss of her Honour will be more considerable than that of her life. “ But, Sir, *replied Prince Haldan*, you may acquaint the King with the truth, without going your self in person to tell it him; you may write to him, and then withdraw your self; or you may send me on your behalf, and I shall tell him the whole truth, if you please to appoint me. “ I may in so doing, *replied the Prince*, expose you to a greater danger, than you are well aware of, besides the hazard, that your relation may not work the effect which we desire, should the King, (who is easily prepossessed, but not so easily convinced, as you well know) not give credit to your words: and as for a Letter, it may probably, ’tis true, satisfy the King, through the knowledge that he has of my hand, and so in part justify her as to his satisfaction; but that will not serve to justify her before all the world, which is absolutely necessary; and the King, whom my private concealing my self in the Camp, will but the more incense against me, will sooner make use of my Letter to find out the secret correspondence which is between my Sister and my self, and pick from thence new matter of jealousy, which will but the more enflame his anger against us rather than to understand the truth to her advantage: it remains then that I declare it my self to all the world. And it is of so great moment to the reputation of a Princess, of whom the world speaks at present suspiciously, that there shall not be the least doubt of a truth, which I am able to clear, and wherein I ought by no means to shew my self wavering and uncertain. “ But, Sir, said *Haldan*, you are wounded, and though your wound be not very dangerous, yet it is not so slight, as to be altogether neglected. “ My wound, *replied the Prince*, can do me no injury, though I were to undertake a longer journey. Much less can it hinder me from paying my duty to the King; besides, that it may serve to justify the truth of the encounter, if the King and *Gondemar* themselves should question it. The Prince laid down some other arguments, by which he let *Haldan* and *Timanthus* understand, that they laboured in vain to dissuade him from his resolution. And though the necessity which constrain’d him, made him sigh, and though he foresaw the mischiefs that would follow, he called for his cloaths, and making himself ready in haste, he presently took Horse, with only *Timanthus* and another Esquire to attend him; not being willing by any means to let *Haldan* follow him, for fear of the King’s displeasure; and forbidding him expressly to let any person living know, that he was gone from his Quarters. To which purpose he disguised himself when he went forth, but as soon as he was gone out of sight he took no farther care; and for that he had only his Sword by his side, having no Arms on to hide his face, he was no sooner come into the Quarters of the *Suevians*, which he was forced to pass through, but the Shouts of the Soldiers and Officers began to pierce the Sky. And though he rode on without making any stop, excusing himself to them that met him in few words, by reason of his urgent affairs with the King, yet the very noise of his return running from one to another, caused the *Suevians* to flock together in great numbers, which encreasing every moment, they followed him to the King’s Pavilion, causing his name to resound from every part, though he endeavoured all he could to hinder them.

When he came into the presence of the King of the *Suevians*, he found with him *Balamir*, *Gondioch* and *Ardaric*, who all endeavoured to appease his wrath towards the Princess. The provoked King, though he strove with himself to pay all that was due to their Dignity, yet was he nothing moved with all their discourse. But breathing out grief and rage both at the same time, he walked about the Room, taking large steps, in a most outrageous passion, when on a sudden he heard the name of *Viridomar* upon the Stairs, from the mouths of several persons that made way for him; upon which, turning his head towards the door, he saw him enter, with such a grace, as attracted the eyes of all that beheld him. He began to doubt the truth of what he saw at first, and retreating back some few steps, as it were to satisfy himself, being troubled, not that he could not so suddenly recall to his memory the face of a feature, which a longer absence could not have made him forget, but to find out the reason that should bring him thither, at a time when he had more cause to flee from his anger to the very end of the world. While these thoughts busied his mind, and his astonishment kept him silent, the Prince made his obeisance, with a submission due to him, both as his Father, and as his Sovereign; and taking his time to speak, while his Fa-

ther's silence gave him liberty; Sir, said he, *the fear of your displeasure made me conceal my self till now: and although I am not faulty otherwise than by the constraint of a power which I am not able to controul, yet I durst not appear before my King, and my incens'd Father. I have sought all ways to appease your wrath, and I had some hopes the prayers of my Sister might have prevailed in my behalf;* Sir, I have given her some visits, and fearing to be known, I never visited her but by night; these visits, though innocent, have produced a mischievous effect; and by the encounter which I had with a person the last night, who would have laid hands upon me, and thereby forced me either to defend my self, or make my self known, I am taken for Marcomire; and Albitinda is accus'd to have entertained him in her Chamber by night. Sir, this misfortune has fallen too heavy upon the reputation of Albitinda and your Family, for me to continue any longer the design which I had to conceal my self, till your anger were appeas'd: and this mistake is of so great importance, to give advantage to any persons about you, to have an ill opinion of Albitinda's virtue. I have understood from her own lips the cheat which the Brothers of Pharamond and Gondioch put upon her; and I have found too much innocency in her proceedings, that she should confess any thing more to your self, than she has done to me. The knowledge which I had of that adventure caus'd me to speak these words to Gondermar, which made him take me for Marcomire. And if the wound which he has given me, be not a sufficient mark of our Encounter, I am able to tell him other particulars enough that shall convince him, beyond all doubt, of the truth. Thus spake Viridomar, and more he had said, if the King, who till then had hearkened with patience enough, out of hopes that he should have found him ere this, repenting of what had been past, and submitting to a promise of amendment, had not interrupted him in a very choleric posture, which he could by no means refrain: How, (said he, looking upon him with an eye enflam'd with anger) *dost thou then return to me upon no other account than to justify Albitinda? And because that she loves the Brother, as thou lovest the Sister of Pharamond, does this conformity of your inclinations bind you to an interest opposite to that of your King, your Birth and Honour? You approve, you support the same, and you perhaps have infused this treachery into her, of which thou thy self hast shew'd her the shameful precedent. And whether it be that thou tellest me the truth, in perswading me that thou wert the person that gave her a visit by night; or whether that to justify a Sister, guilty of a crime equal to thy own, thou comest here to add an imposture to those other vile acts, by which thou hast dishonour'd thy Illustrious Blood, thinkest thou that I will patiently endure the injuries which thou hast done me, and that I will receive thee as a Son, after thou hast engag'd thy self with my Enemies?* Sir, (replied Viridomar, with a becoming mildness and constancy) *neither have I engag'd my self in the interests of your Enemies, neither did I ever understand that my Sister's affection was criminal; and as I can assure you, that I never had a thought that could offend you, so will I undertake for my Sister, that she has no other will but what is wholly at your disposal. We shall find out the truth,* (said the King;) *in the meantime you shall stay in a place, where, though I cannot undertake for your thoughts, I will at least answer for your actions.* At these words, turning to the Officers of his Guards, he commanded them to carry him to a certain Chamber which he appointed them, and to look to him upon the peril of their lives. The Officers much troubled at this command, look'd upon one another with no small amazement, not daring to do their Duty against a Prince for whom they had a respect full of love, and an awful veneration. The King perceiving their thoughts by their behaviour, begun with great fury to threaten them, when the Kings and Princes that were with him, particularly Balamir and the Prince of Persia oppos'd his design, and earnestly besought him to deal more kindly by a Son so worthy his affection, and the esteem of all the world. Balamir well knew him to be that very Knight, who had fought him in the defence of Pharamond, which knowledge of his person, instead of incensing him to any act of prejudice against him, rather increased the esteem which the great reputation of his person had gain'd in his heart; but because he knew that that occasion, should it come to the knowledge of the King, would provoke him more violently against him, he would not pretend to have seen him in any other place before; and only contented himself to intercede for him out of the consideration of his merit, and upon the report of his noble actions, which were sufficient to oblige all virtuous men to take his part: Maranez, who knew him also, but had not had so much experience of him, led by the same considerations, seconded Balamir's entreaties, using all the reputation which he had with the King of Suezia. Neither did Gondioch or Arduric forget any thing that could be spoke in his favour. The King of Suezia, who by reason of their merit, their Dignity, their interest in the common quarrel, had a very high respect for every one, hearkened to them with very much patience; and when they had said all they could in the Prince's behalf, unblocking a silence which he had a long time kept very close; *You are not to doubt,* said he, *my*

my readinesſ to ſubmit to your requeſts : But do you conſider well what it is that you require from me, or do you look upon Viridomar as my Son or as my Enemy, if not the common Enemy of our League ? I confeſs the Gods have endowed him with very ſplendent qualities, and that he hath performed many actions, ſufficiently renowned to give him a great name among men : But do you your ſelves conſider what uſe he makes of thoſe advantages, and whether his inclinations be agreeable to the good opinion which you have of him ? And with theſe words turning himſelf toward the Prince, Tell me, ſaid he, your deſign, and let me know what is the next thing you are reſolved upon after the juſtification of Albiſinda, I am contented to believe what you ſay in her behalf : and for my own ſatisfaction rather than for yours, I am glad to find that it was you that ſhe ſaw in the night, and not the Brother of Pharamond. But what is it that you come to ſpy in our Camp, and what reaſon could bring you hither, having forſaken our party ? If you come to me and ſubmit your ſelf to your duty, and blot out the ſhame and diſgrace of your laſt actions by others more worthy your deſcent, and the fame which you have got in the world, come and fight at the head of your Father's Army againſt the murderer of your Brother : come and diſpute at the price of his life the enjoyment of Roſamond, in the behalf of ſo many brave Princes, as have in hopes of ſuch a renowned prize, embroyled themſelves in the Quarrel. " I came Sir into this Camp, ſaid Viridomar, to joyn with Albiſinda, to ſeek out means to appeaſe your anger, and I appeared before you out of the opinion that I had, that I my ſelf had credit ſufficient to juſtify my Siſter, in a miſfortune which I my ſelf had occaſioned. But to make answer to what you demand of me, I will tell you Sir that no paſſion in the world ſhall ever make me forget my duty : But if you will have it conſiſt in the execution of thoſe things which you propound to me, it will be a hard thing for me to diſcharge it. Certainly I ſhould commit no act of infidelity neither againſt you nor your party, in fighting at the head of your Troops, but perhaps I ſhould not fight there ſo vigorously as to answer your fury : And as for the Conqueſt of Roſamond, as I am not in a condition to diſpute her againſt ſo many brave Princes, who merit her far before me, I leave them to undertake with a better event what I have ill ſucceeded in, and to you Sir as to my King, I ſubmit the diſpoſal of my liberty and my deſtiny. " Yes yes, replied the King, I will have that power as your Sovereign ; for in that quality I will remain having loſt the title of Father. Obey then my orders, (ſaid he turning to the Officers, to whom he had given his laſt commands) and force me not (cried he laying his hand upon the hilt of his Sword) to make ye obey me, by ſuch means as will not prove hard for me to execute. Sir, ſaid the Prince, it is their duty to obey, and I my ſelf will be the firſt to ſhew a good example : Let us go then my friends (continued he, ſpeaking to the Officers) and ſince it is the King's will, that you ſhould diſpenſe with that reſpect which you ought to bear me ; provoke him no longer in deſerring the execution of his commands. Concluding theſe words he laid his Sword at the King's Feet, and went of his own accord into a Chamber adjoining, whither he was followed by the Officers and a Company of Souldiers appointed for his Guard.

Immediately the noiſe of Viridomar's confinement was ſpread through the Camp, and as he was infinitely adored by the Suedes, they could not but teſtifie how impatiently they brook'd his diſgrace : And aſſembling in great bodies together, their murmurings grew ſo loud, that the King might well perceive that he had ſome need of all his Authority, to keep them in obedience. Haldan though pierced with grief at the news of an accident which he well foreſaw, yet uſed all his endeavours to appeaſe them, repreſenting to the Souldiers that by theſe teſtimonies of their good will toward the Prince, they did but the more incenſe the King againſt him, and by making the power of the Prince ſuſpected to him, they might force him to take ſtrange reſolutions to the hazard of his life. The King of the Suedes reflecting upon his condition, found it better than it was ſome hours before : for beſides the content which he had to find Albiſinda innocent, in the moſt criminal part of the accusation laid againſt her, the diſpleaſure he took to ſee his Son perſevere in intentions ſo oppoſite to his, could not divert him from being pleaſed to ſee him in a place where he hop'd more eaſily to reduce him to his duty, than when he converſed among ſtrangers, and perhaps among his Enemies. When the Queens were advertiſed thereof, they went to viſit the King, who received them with all ſort of reſpect and good will : But when they were about to ſpeak in favour of Viridomar, " Content your ſelves (ſaid he with a brisk behaviour) to reign over all the world, only permit me to rule my own ſubjects and govern my own houſe ; ſince you deſire it, I will not forget that I am the Father of Viridomar as well as his King, but ſince he thinks himſelf more worthy of the imprifonment to which I have confined him, than of the glorious fetters of the Queen of the Cimbrians, I ſhall let him ſtand in ſuch a manner, the injury which he hath done himſelf in renouncing them, that perhaps I may not be able to find a greater puniſhment to impoſe upon him. But though

he continued obstinate as to the confinement of *Viridemar*, he released *Albifinda*, giving the two Queens liberty to fetch her from the Chamber where he had commanded her to be guarded, to keep them company as she was wont to do. The Queen of the *Cimbrians* also obtained liberty for *Imbergida*, but it was only to admit her into her own service if she pleas'd: and though the Queen endeavoured to excuse what she had done for *Marcomire*, to whom her Son owed his life; yet the King would not consent that a woman should be near his Daughter, who held intelligence with the Brother of *Pharamond*.

The End of the First Book of the Sixth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK II.

THE Queens were hardly departed out of the Chamber of the King of *Suevia*, when he saw two persons enter, who addressed themselves to make their obeysance before him: Immediately he knew one of them to be *Giferic*, whom at his departure out of *Suevia*, he had sent to the King of the *Saxons*, to require that assistance from him of which he had put him in hopes, and to interest him in his quarrel as he had engaged many other Princes. The King having a great kindness for *Giferic* received him courteously, leading him by the hand to a window to know the issue of his negotiation: "And well *Giferic*, said he, have you sped in our affairs? And shall we have that assistance from the *Saxons* which we had hopes of?" "Sir, replied *Giferic*, there is that befall'n the King of the *Saxons*, which may perhaps make him forget some part of your concerns, and they are of too great importance to come by halves to your knowledge. "I understand, replied the King, all the most important accidents, that beset the King of the *Saxons* in his wars against the *Danes*, the *Turingiens* and the *Cimbrian Chersonese*. He knows also that I was not concerned in the war of the *Danes*, though their King was my Brother in law; that *Viridomar* served him in person only, that I manifested my sorrow for his ill success in the last war against the *Turingiens*, though their King also was my confederate, and that it was but a little before that we entered into a league: But after the much lamented death of *Vindimir*, I was wholly oppressed with such a load of sadness and important affairs, that I hardly knew unless it were confusedly, what passed among my next neighbours and Allies. "I have brought one along with me, (replied *Giferic* shewing him the person that came with him) who will inform you from the beginning, and will make you a relation thereof, when you shall be pleased to afford him the hearing. "He shall have liberty when he will, replied the King of the *Suedes*, making a sign to the same person to come near him) You (said he addressing himself to the stranger) shall be heard by no other person but my self, if the particulars require privacy, otherwise if what you have to say to me, may be related before the Queen of the *Cimbrians* and some other Princes, I know they will be glad to hear news from the King of the *Saxons*. As I have nothing secret, replied the Stranger, I am at liberty to speak before whom your Majesty pleases: But as the rehearsal which I have to make is long, if your Majesty desires to know all the particulars of those rare accidents which I have to recount, it will require a seasonable time, which I beg your Majesty to favour me withal the soonest
"that

“ that may be for some important reasons. If you are not weary with your journey, replied the King, we will set apart the rest of this day, wherein we have more leisure at present than we may perhaps have for the time to come. And because I have confusedly heard of some things, of which you are to give me a clearer knowledge, I am perswaded that both the Queens will hearken to you with a great deal of delight and attention. Sir, replied the Saxon, I have not travelled so far to day, as to hinder my self from giving your Majesty full satisfaction at this time, nor is the day so near at an end, but that I may be able to finish one part before your Majesty and the two Queens go to Supper, and the rest after in the evening. The King of Suevia approved the proposal of the Saxon, though he were unwilling to engage him in a long discourse, before he had taken some repose, but that being excused he took the Saxon with him, and carried him to the Apartment of the Cimbrian Queen, where he found together in company with *Anzalazontha* the charming *Albifinda*, who could not look upon him without trembling for fear. He uttered not a word to her of what had passed that day, and before the Queen shewed a great deal of moderation, whereby they judged that his Choler was abated by the confinement of *Viridomar*. The fair Princess of Suevia who had already felt the effect thereof, and saw her self cleared from a cruel accusation, with as much joy as she suffered grief for the confinement of her Brother, was of the same opinion, not without hope, but that the King would in the end be mollified in favour of *Viridomar* also. Immediately after entred the Prince of Persia, Prince *Falamir*, *Martian*, the King of the *Alains*, *Herules* and *Basternes*: and the King of Suevia judging that so fair a Company, could not better spend the latter part of the day, than in hearkning to the discourse of *Gismond*, (for so was the Saxon call'd) he told the Queens who the person was whom he had brought with him, and the reason of his coming: and found them inclined to give all the attention he could desire, not so much for any curiosity that obliged them, as for the pleasure they took to see themselves divertis'd for some hours in such a Company, at a time wherein considering their present condition, they found disturbance enough. So placing themselves they made the Princes also take their Seats, and because that *Gismond* by the report of *Giferic*, was a person of quality considerable, and for that he had a long time to speak, they commanded him likewise to sit. He obeyed, well knowing what submission to pay great personages at such times as those: And having by a short silence prepared the Company to attention; he thus began his discourse, which he address'd to the two Queens.

The History of Melisuntha.

I Will not abuse your patience most illustrious Queens, in employing any part of my time in explaining to you those doubts which perplex many Nations at this day, touching the Original of the Saxons. Some there are who believe them descended from the *Saqui*, a people of Asia under the dominion of the Persians. But from whence soever they took their beginning, certain it is that for some Ages since, they have been formidable both by Sea and Land: And that after they had fought several great Battels against the Romans, the Vandals, the Danes and the Inhabitants of great Britain, they settled themselves at last in that wide extent of ground, that lyes between the Danes, the *Futlanders*, the *Cauchoes*, the *Turingiens* and the Sea of Suevia, and by force of Arms there established their Kingdom. Since that time they have been in continual wars with their Neighbours, and particularly with the Danes and the inhabitants of the Cimbrian Chersonese, a Province famous for being the seat of the ancient *Cimbrians*: who in the time of *Marius* made war upon the Romans; and after that forsaking the Country from whence they drew their original, made themselves Masters of *Bohemia*, and there founded that famous Monarchy, over which, Madam, said *Gismond* to Queen *Rosamond*, your Majesty rules at this present. By the departure of the *Cimbrians*, that Province by little and little lost its ancient name, so that at this day it is called *Julia* or *Jutland*. This Country has for a long time, been the Theatre of war, for the Saxons invaded it under the government of their lawful Prince, who to obtain the protection of the King of the Danes more powerful than himself, became his tributarie, as history reports, and engaged him for the reason that obliges all Princes to hinder the growing greatness of their Neighbours, to take Arms in his defence, and to expel the Saxons out of his Territories. It fell out as he expected, however though that King recovered his Country from the Saxons, his posterity lost it again to the same Saxons, who once more got possession of it: But afterwards through the uncertain events of war, losing and regaining it several times, being always in war with the

Jutlander's

Jutlanders and *Danes*. At length King *Ebald*, who at present wears the *Saxon* Crown, after several great Battels became absolute Master thereof, having reduced the King of *Jutland* to live with his Family, as a private person in the Court of the King of the *Danes*, who was contented to let him abide there, not being able to do any more for him. But some years since resolving to take Arms for his restoration, our King not content to defend *Jutland* against him, entred into *Denmark*, and by the victorious progress of his Arms, so shook the *Danish* Throne, that it was in no small danger of being overturn'd, had not Prince *Viridomar*, by the assistance of his own single person, of greater force than the power of an Army, re-established it by many great Victories, and chased the *Saxons* into *Jutland* with so much loss, that had not the King of the *Danes* been weary of the War, and desired peace for considerations best known to himself, he might through the valour of the same Prince *Viridomar*, have freed *Jutland* from the *Saxons*, and restored it to its lawful Prince, or else have kept it himself.

Gisulphus (for that was the name of the Prince of *Jutland*) having no way to recover his Kingdom, remained in *Denmark*, where he contrived plots, and held correspondences with his own people, to disturb the Usurper, upon any opportunity that should offer it self. And still maintaining an implacable hatred against him, as irreconcilable, as it was just, he bred up his children in the same detestation of him from their Cradles, continually exhorting them not to lose the thoughts of recovering their right, but with their lives.

Almost about the same time, *Genselaric*, the eldest Son of our King, had assaulted *Turingia*, and in a great Battel had taken prisoner Prince *Amalaric*, and forced the King of the *Turingiens* to shut himself up with a small number of men within his Capital City. You well know this to be true, said *Gismond* to Queen *Amalazontha*, and you have the entire knowledge of one part of our most important affairs, which is the reason that I shall but slightly mention them, being assured that they are unknown to very few persons: therefore it shall suffice to tell you in few words, that the issue of the *Turingien* war was such, as we had small reason to expect: for by the arrival of the famous *Gaul*, *Ambiomer*, fortune changed her countenance, our Forces were totally defeated, and *Genselaric* running the same fate with *Amalaric*, lost his liberty in the Battel, and remained doubly a Captive in *Turingia*. It is well known what his love made him suffer for the fair Princess of the *Turingiens*, having the Prince of *Frisia* for his Rival, and considering the ill success which he had, through the opposition of *Ambiomer*, in his enterprize to carry away the Princess, wherein he saved himself with the loss of much blood, and receiving many wounds. All the world also knows, how that upon his second invasion of *Turingia*, at what time he sought to gain by force, that which neither his love nor his service could obtain, he miserably perished under the victorious Arms of *Ambiomer*. I pass over these things which you know so well, to enlarge my self upon those things of which you have only heard a confused and uncertain report, believing them to be of too great importance to be concealed from people farther distant from us, but more especially from them who inhabit *Germany*.

Besides Prince *Genselaric*, our King had two Sons, of no less hopes than their eldest Brother: he that became the eldest after the death of *Genselaric*, was named *Gondemond*, the youngest *Aldemar*. They were both of a noble aspect, and full of courage, but there was a great deal of difference in their dispositions: and indeed the people and the Court were wholly inclin'd to *Aldemar*, in whose tender years they saw most noble qualities blooming forth. *Gondemond* had followed his Father in the war against the *Danes*, nor did he stir from him all the *Turingien* Expedition, But for the young *Aldemar*, whether it were to learn the customs and manners of strangers, or for other reasons best known to himself, he sent him abroad to see the Courts of several Princes his Allies, by which he was obliged to travel all over *Europe*, and a good part of *Asia*. So that when he received the news of the death of *Genselaric*, he had only *Gondemond* remaining with him; so that it was in him only that he sought the comfort of his declining age, after the loss of his eldest Son. He always loved him with a passion more than ordinary; and it is thought, that the advantageous change of his fortune did drown a great part of that sorrow, which otherwise he had felt for the loss of *Genselaric*. But while he was bewailing his death, and that notwithstanding his hatred against the *Turingiens*, he was forced to make a peace with them. He understood that the Prince of *Jutland*, taking the advantage of his misfortunes, and by means of the correspondence which he always held in *Jutland*, perceiving himself strong enough to execute his designs, was entred into his Country, had put several of our Garrisons to the Sword, was become Master of the most considerable

considerable places, as also of a great part of the Country, and was in hopes to drive the *Saxons* utterly out of his Dominions. Though the King was not ignorant of what designs *Gisulphus* had, he did not think he had been in a condition to execute them, well knowing that the estate of the King of the *Danes's* affairs did not permit him to give him any assistance. And therefore at this news, causing his grief to give way to his anger, and growing the more enraged against his Enemy, the more he perceived that he had taken advantage of his misfortune (though he were not ignorant of the justice of his cause, and perhaps did not condemn him in his thoughts) after he had concluded a peace with the *Turingians*, he turn'd all his power against the Prince of *Jutland*. And notwithstanding the lowness of the condition wherein men thought him, through the many losses which he had received, he set an Army on foot, sufficient, not only to encounter; but to ruine his Enemies: *Gondemond* having obtained the command thereof, through the continual impportunity which he used to the King his Father, entred *Jutland*, where to fulfill the command of the King, he destroyed all places that stuck to their lawful Prince, with Fire and Sword: *Gisulphus* had two Sons, brave and valiant Princes, whom he loved better than himself; and of whom there were great expectation. By their valour and his own, Fortune shewed her self indifferent in the first Conflicts, though there were not the same equality in their Forces. But their great courage hastened their ruine; for instead of keeping themselves within such strong places, where they might have prolonged the war, and have stayed till the King of *Dania*, deeply interested in their quarrel, had been in a condition to help them; they ventured into the open Field with a Force weak enough; and through the confidence they had in the justice of their cause, and their own valour, they resolved to hazard a general Battel: It was cruel and bloody, and for some time sufficiently doubtful; but at length victory declared her self for *Gondemond*, and that so entirely, that the Army of *Gisulphus* was defeated, and ruined to the last man; his two Sons slain before his face, wounded in a hundred places, himself, all bemangled and besmeared with blood, taken prisoner, while he endeavoured all he could to run the same fortune with his Sons. Though there be, who believe that the mortal hatred which he bare his Enemy, and the hopes he had to torment him in the possession of what he usurped, was the reason that he rather sought to fall alive into the hands of his Enemy, and chose captivity before death.

Of all his Family, there remained now but one Daughter, whom he had left in a strong Hold, not far off when he went to the Battel, but she within a few days after, by the taking of that place, which with all the rest were soon forced to submit, became a prey to the Conquerour, and was led a prisoner with her Father. The victorious *Gondemond* was received and welcomed with a joy that made him altogether forget his losses in *Turingia*; and the unfortunate *Gisulphus* deprived of his children, of the Kingdom of his Ancestors, and of all hope whatsoever, was shut up in a close prison together with his Daughter, who would not leave him, though she was offered a confinement less severe, and a Guard less strict: she was the only comfort that remained to her unfortunate Father, who seeing that in the person of such a Daughter, the Gods had left him a sufficient treasure, he endeavoured with all his persuasions, and all the power he had over her, to frame her to a magnanimous support of her evil fortune, and to maintain even to death, the hatred which he exhorted her to bear towards the Murderers of his Children, the Usurpers of his Dominions, and the Persecutors of her Life. It fell out, that she fulfilled his desires to the height of his expectation; for the fair *Melisantha*, that was the name of the Princess, in whom the misfortune of her Father had increased the affection which she had for him; and who had loved her Brothers with as entire and perfect a reality, as natural relation and reason could inspire her withal; and who, through the greatness of her courage, supported with no small grief the overthrow of her illustrious Family, and the Dignity of her Ancestors, complied more agreeably with his resolutions, than he could have expected, and so fortified her hatred against the House of the *Saxon* Kings, that it appeared nothing less than his own. She would not stir from the Bolster of his Bed, while his wounds detained him there; and when he was perfectly cured, she would not be absent from him, nor would admit of any other company but his, though she received many civilities, and many kindnesses from several persons at Court, whom her misfortunes moved to compassion. However, she was the sole and lawful Inheritrix of a fair and large Kingdom, for the defence whereof so much blood had been spilt; and as there was none but her Father and her self that remained of all the progeny of the ancient Princes of *Jutland*; so that the King of the *Saxons* might have easily freed himself from the trouble and disturbance which they were able to give him hereafter, in the possession of a Kingdom which he endeavoured to establish under his own Dominion; yet he wavered very much in his thoughts what to do, as to the taking away
their

their lives, nor could he by any means determine what to resolve upon.

Neither the King, nor *Gondemond* had as yet seen *Melifintha*, for the Prince was so modest, as not to appear before her besmeared with the blood of her Brothers, nor so long as he carried her a Captive with her Father. She was also seen by very few other persons; and when she was constrain'd to appear, she hid her face as much as it was possible for her to do. But in the end it was impossible for her so long to conceal it, but that such persons as came to the prison by the King's order, had a sight thereof sometimes, and made such a description thereof to the King and Prince, that her beauty seem'd a kind of prodigy. *Gondemond* at first believed nothing of what they reported; but at length, they spoke so often to him of her, and related things so extraordinary, that with a passion common enough to persons of his age, he coveted to see her, and that with an excess of eagerness. He oppos'd some days this desire, through a kind of inward presage that seem'd to persuade him to decline the sight of her. But at length, importun'd by the multitude of miracles which they reported of her beauty, which he was not able to withstand, he went to the prison, which was an old Castle at the farther end of all the City, where persons of quality were wont to be confin'd, and hudling in among the Officers that guarded *Gisulphus*, whom he had forbid to discover him, he saw her, he heard her speak, and he remain'd in her company for some time without being known. But at this view, and in this observation which he had of her, he found things so far beyond report, that he departed from her with a heart full of astonishment and admiration. He returned not only once, but many times in the same disguise, and he returned so often, that at length he left his heart there, and became the most desperate lover of this Princess in the world. They who saw *Melifintha*, did not at all wonder at this effect of her beauty, nor at many others which it had wrought; for it is such, that I durst have affirm'd an hour since, there was nothing in the world could parallel it. But now, illustrious Queen, since by the sight of what appears before my eyes so divinely glorious, I cannot say, as I thought I might have done before, I shall therefore content my self in saying only this, that I believe nothing can come near what I here behold, but only the celestial beauties of *Melifintha*. In another place I could make a description thereof, but here it shall suffice to tell you, that her eyes and hair are black, with such a complexion as may well seem to shame whatever nature designed for white; that the lineaments of her face, her lips, her neck, her hands are to be admired, her stature the fairest, and the straightest, her gate and deportment the freest and least affected in the world. In her person, and in all her actions, there appears such a charming air, that gains all hearts, by offering violence to reason. In short, by this beauty, probably greater than I can make you apprehend by my discourse, *Gondemond* was inflamed after such a manner, that he could no longer stifle his passion, which began to appear by so many signs, that all that he could do at first to conceal it, proved altogether in vain. The King had ever loved him above any thing in the world, and for that reason, as he observed him more than any others, so was he the first that perceiv'd it; so that the Prince having been pressingly urged for some few days, at length confessed the truth, and declared that he was not only passionately in love with the Princess of *Jutland*, but that he should be the most unfortunate person in the world, if he might not hope to enjoy her. The King was surpris'd at this confession, in a short time after he perceived it to be nothing strange, when he heard the report which they made him of the beauty of *Melifintha*; and therefore he was content only to ask the Prince what way he could propose to obtain her. *Gondemond* was a good while pausing what answer to make to this question: at length with a behaviour resolute enough, *I know not well by what means to gain the affection of this Princess*, said he, *but I know on the other side, that I am not able to deny my self the hopes of obtaining it, without being the most miserable among men. And though Melifintha knows me not, yet I think I know her so well, as to believe that I have no other ways to trust to, but what are just and honourable. Sir, this language may surprise you, and the present fortune of Melifintha will no question not let you give ear to my proposal. But besides, that this Princess is descended from Ancestors not inferior to ours, and that the merits of her person shew her worthy to espouse a King; I have heard you often say, that so long as Gisulphus and his Daughter liv'd, you could not assure your self of the Kingdom of Jutland; and that the fear of rendring your self odious to your own people, and Neighbours, was the only reason that hindered you from putting them to death. Now methinks you may better secure to your self those Territories by the marriage of your Son to the lawful Heiress, than by the death of an innocent Prince and his Daughter. And perhaps by doing an action which may render me the happiest person in the world, and whereby you will testify the continuance of that affection with which you have always honoured me, and preserve your self from the hatred of the people, and the reproach of so much cruelty, you will be thought to have acted with prudence, and accord-*

ing to all the safest rules of Policy. If you consider it well, Sir, you will perhaps find there is as much reason as policy in my discourse: and that in affording me the greatest favour that I can possibly hope from your goodness, you do nothing disadvantageous or prejudicial to the welfare of your Crown. Gondemond thus pleaded to a Father, who had naturally nothing in his heart that did not comply with his desires, and who finding them at this time no way repugnant to the rules of policy, not only approved his proceedings, but wished a happy event thereof as well as himself. He saw in effect that it would be a means to remove from his house the original ground of a war that continually threaten'd his Dominions, and that by this marriage establishing a lawful right to a Country, which he only possess'd by violence and usurpation, he should take away all pretence of claim from any others, and no longer give the Danish King an opportunity, to maintain a cause not supported by justice. That the other way of establishing himself by the death of *Gisulphus* and his Daughter, was too cruel and too abominable: and that lastly by this means he should be able to gratify the content and repose of a Son, whom he loved beyond himself, while he only did that wherein he found no disadvantage. For these reasons he consented to the affection of *Gondemond*, but because he knew the disposition of *Gisulphus*, whose courage was nothing abated by his ill success, and whose heart was filled with a violent and doleful resentment of the loss of his Children, fresh in memory: Children whom he had lost under the fatal conduct of *Gondemond* himself, who commanded the Army in person; he foresaw that greater difficulties would from thence arise in his way, than he was aware of: and that it would be no small trouble to appease their enraged minds, notwithstanding the advantages of such a marriage. However, as he had over naked persons and Captives an absolute Authority, and that he knew himself likely enough to make use thereof, when the repose of his Son and the welfare of his own affairs required; he made no question but easily to vanquish this consideration. And thus promising to *Gondemond* the entire accomplishment of all his wishes, he gave him leave by all endeavours of his own to make the progress of his love successful.

From this day forward the confinement of *Gisulphus*, was far less rigorous than what it used to be, and though they gave him not his absolute liberty, yet they guarded him with less strictness than before, and there was moreover a great alteration in the manner of his attendance: But the change in *Melisinda's* confinement was much greater, for besides that she began to be visited by the most noble Ladies of the Court, she was so little looked after, that her Guards seem'd rather to attend her as the Guard of Majesty, than Captivity. Both Father and Daughter were astonish'd at this sudden change, of which they knew not the cause: But they seem'd not to take much notice of it, and as they had supported their evil fortune with an admirable constancy, they look'd upon this appearance of a more happy alteration, with a perfect calmness of mind, patiently attending the issue without so much as vouchsafing to demand the reason. But they perfectly apprehended it some few days after, for *Gondemond* having the sole disposal of the King's will, gave *Melisinda* a visit in another garb than he had done before. For besides that he set off his graceful aspect with the ornaments and riches of his Apparel, he appear'd with a train suitable to his dignity: And these Officers who at other times by his order, to conceal him from the knowledge of *Melisinda*, had treated him as their Companion, now observing him as their Prince, shew'd the splendour of his quality. The fair Princess who had already observ'd his countenance, and who had before spoken to him, as she did to others when necessity constrain'd her, could not behold him in that gallantry without admiration. But when she understood that the person who had visited her before in disguise, and who then appear'd publickly and in his proper person, was the Prince of the Saxons, looking upon him at the same time as the cruel Enemy, that came now to give the last blow of ruine to her Family, who had deprived her Brothers of life and her Father and her self of liberty; she felt an inward horrour at the sight of him that made her tremble first, then grow pale, and lastly fall into a swoon in the Arms of certain persons that came to assist her, and who plac'd her in a Chair using all their endeavours to bring her again to her self.

Most certain it is that this accident ought to have oblig'd *Gondemond* to have retir'd, but whether it were that he might be ignorant of the cause, or that he thought that was only the effect of the first view of him, and that in a short time she would be better accus'tom'd to the sight of him, he stay'd by her all the while, and was one of those that were most forward to help her, insomuch that when she open'd her eyes, she saw her self almost in his very Arms. It was a hundred to one that this second view, had not caus'd the same effect as the former: But though the Princess overcame it with the assistance of some thoughts, that afford'd her strength in that condition, the power which they had over her grief could not vanquish the reluctancy she had to see her Enemy: and therefore in speaking the first

words which she had to say to him, fixing her eyes upon his countenance; *Ab cruel Enemy,* said she, *what inhumanity is this of yours, and with what new kind of torment do you assault my misfortune, by forcing her to see the Author of all her misery?* *Gondemond* stood as it were tongue-tyed at these words, and as he was really enamoured, so was he seized with a violent sorrow to see the behaviour of *Melisintha* toward him: However believing that he might so carry himself as to make her alter her opinion, he lost no courage, but after a short silence; “If I have been the cause, *said he,* of any part of your misfortunes, it was by the command of my Father and my King, and before I had ever seen or ever knew the person whom I offended: But now I have seen you, now that I know you for the Sovereign Mistress of my heart and of my life, I offer to you all the satisfaction that is within my power to give, and I offer you if you please to accept it, with the Liberty and Crown of *Gisulphus* the Controll of *Gondemod*, and the Crown of the *Saxons*. We would do much more were it in our power, and if you please not to disdain the Prince of the *Saxons* for your Spouse, you shall command a Kingdom far larger in extent than that of your Ancestors, and you shall reign over the heart of your Prince with the same sovereign Authority as over your subjects. Very probably *Melisintha* might be moved with this language, nor was it without some appearance of likelihood, that the Prince had hopes thereof. But he soon perceived that he had not wrought the effect which he expected: For the Princess hardly turning her eyes to take notice of him, with an aspect partly languishing, partly incensed; *They,* said she, *who are not easily bowed down by their evil fortune, are not suddenly dazzled with the glistering of a better: And you do not well understand your prisoners, if you think that the Crown of the Saxons can shake the Constancy of Melisintha, or that Gisulphus can command his Daughter to espouse the murderer of her Brothers.* Though it be impossible, replied the Prince, to restore your Brothers to life, yet we can offer you our Crown: and I hope, *Madam,* when time and our repentance hath asswaged your anger, that you will consider, that we repair the injuries we have done, as far as lies within our power, and that in making me the most happy among men, you will have no cause to believe your self the most unfortunate. I hope, replied *Melisintha,* that I shall cease to be so in a short time, but it will come to pass by the kindness of death rather than by yours: And death shall be always more welcome to me, than all the happiness I can receive at your hands. *Melisintha* uttered these words in the verity of her thoughts, and whether it were through the evil fortune of *Gondemond*, or from the reason which she had to hate him: at the very instant that she understood his affection, she conceived a hatred against him, the greatest that any soul could be imagined capable of, and such a hatred, that she would as soon have accepted from him the Empire of the world, as the Crown of *Saxony*. The Prince was in good hopes, that time and the consideration of her condition would mollify her, and therefore then finding with how much impatience she endured his company, he took leave of her and departed out of the Chamber. But because he was willing to give a visit to the Prince of *Jutland*, yet feared by the bad entertainment that *Melisintha* gave him, that he should find no better from him, he sent one of his servants before, to know whether he might have the liberty to wait upon him. *Gisulphus* started at the sound of a name so odious to him, and hardly finding words in the midst of his sighs to express himself; *Tell,* said he to the Messenger, *the Prince of the Saxons, that if he come to give me my death's wound I shall joyfully receive it, but if that be not his design beseech him to let me alone, to bewail the loss of those children which he hath deprived me of.* Upon this answer which the Prince himself heard, in the place where he stayed near the Chamber of *Gisulphus*, he quitted his purpose of visiting him that day: and being returned to the King, he related to him the ill success of his visit, and that in very passionate language, to the end he might understand how sorely it afflicted him. The King who expected nothing more than the greatest part of what had happen'd, was confirmed in the opinion he had, of the dispositions of *Gisulphus* and his daughter: and gathered from thence, that his Son would meet with greater difficulties in the design of his love than he was aware of, though he was not altogether out of hope, but that the advantages which *Melisintha* and her Father would find thereby, and the happy alteration which it would make in their condition, would at length shake their resolutions.

Some days after, the Prince had a mind to give another visit to *Melisintha*, but because he could not perform it but in the presence of her Father, whose sight he avoided, by reason of the report which he heard every day of the hatred he had against him, he thought it a better way to try if he could qualify their fury by the mediation of other persons, seeing that his presence did but provoke them the more. And to this purpose, the King some while after, at the request of his Son, sent such persons as he thought most able for the employment, to speak with the Prince of *Jutland*, and ordered them to propose a match between the Prince his Son and *Melisintha*, with promise to restore him to his liberty, and to
put

put him in the possession of his Kingdom, upon condition he would give his consent. Though the hatred of *Gisulphus* sprang from a just and lawful ground, yet many persons blamed him for nourishing it to such an excess; and believed, that upon such advantageous conditions as were offered him, it had better become him to have vanquish'd his indignation, and so have hearkened to a proposition that made his fortune better than ever it was. Others found out more prevalent reasons to excuse him. But however it were, he respected the offers of the King with disdain, and openly declared, that he would willingly surrender his life to his Enemies, if they were not satisfied with the losses he had suffered. But that he would never yield to give his Daughter to the Destroyers of his Family, and the Murtherers of his Children; and that he would be the death of her himself, if he thought she had any inclination to such a marriage, that he would endure his chains patiently till death; and that he did no ways counsel the King of the *Saxons* to give him his liberty, nor to joy'n himself in an alliance with those, whom he had no reason to trust. An answer so fierce, and which testified a hatred so obstinate, provoked the King of the *Saxons* in such a manner, that all his love, all the intercessions of *Gondemond* were little enough to keep him from returning *Gisulphus* to his former restraint, if not from dealing more cruelly by him. *Gondemond* besought his Father to use the fair means of entreaty, and let nothing be forgot, which he could imagine powerful enough to appease the anger of *Melisintha*, but all his endeavours prov'd in vain one after another. *Gisulphus* continued immovable in his resolution; and *Melisintha*, though her moderation kept her hatred within the bounds of discretion, and permitted not her expressions to be extravagant; yet she shewed those evident proofs of her constancy; whereby it might be perceived, that she would rather espouse death than *Gondemond*.

Seeing that the prayers of the Prince so little prevailed, the King made use of threats; and after he had endeavoured to strike a terrour into the Prince of *Fuland*, by underhand messages, at length he publickly declared, that the Prince must suddenly resolve either to die, or consent to the marriage of *Melisintha*; but he was as little mov'd by these publick menaces, as by his private threats: and whether it were, that he believ'd the affection of *Gondemond* would not permit the King to use extremity, or that really his hatred was more prevalent than the fear of death, he still testified, that he was ready to suffer it, and that he would never change his resolution. It was in the King's mind more than once, to rid himself of so obstinate an enemy by that death which he so much contemn'd: but *Gondemond* still diverted him from it; and the fear he had of driving his Son to despair, hindered him from executing what he had in his thoughts. But at length seeing that neither threats nor prayers availed, and that *Gondemond*'s love continued as violent as ever, he advis'd him not to use entreaty and fair means any longer, but to obtain that by force which he could not gain by his love and submission; that when he had obtained what he desired by his power, *Melisintha* would be mollified by time, and the advantages which she found in her condition. That in short he could not be blamed for making use of force, to make a person happy against her will, seeing that it was only in marriage that he desired to enjoy *Melisintha*, and that it was his own desire also, for the reasons which I have made known. *Gondemond* for some time opposed his Father's design, not knowing how to use violence towards a Princess whom he adored. However, at length overcome by his passion, more powerful than his reason, and despairing ever to be happy by any other means, he consented to the Kings advice: yet still it was in the King's name, and not his own, that he sent word to *Melisintha* to send her determinate answer to those offers which he had made her, and that if she did not resolve in those few days which he gave her to consider of it, he should no more consult her will. This message made *Gisulphus* and *Melisintha* tremble, but mov'd them not at all; and therefore not doubting but that the Prince would put in execution what he threatened, they consulted together, and made it their whole contrivance what course to take in case of utmost extremity. One part of the Court regarding interest and fortune, more than the effects which a just grief might produce, blamed their obstinacy. Others, compassionating their misfortune, ceased their accusations, when they considered that there were no persons more concerned than they, that *Melisintha* should be Queen of the *Saxons*. In short, instead of detesting that violence which might have been offered to a person of that Extraction as *Melisintha*, had *Gondemond* endeavoured to have enjoyed her without marriage, when they understood that his design was only to force her to a marriage in despite of all her obstinacy, they excused it, affirming that that misfortune which she so strongly opposed, did but advance her higher, than she could have expected at the best of her former prosperity. Yet all were not of this opinion; and there were some among the *Saxons*, who, notwithstanding that compliance which they owed to

the will of the King, infinitely commended the resolution of *Meliffintha*, and maintained that she had a great deal of reason to comply with her Father's judgment, and not to espouse a person that had imbrewed his hands in her Brothers Blood. However it were, neither Father nor Daughter staggered in their resolution; and the time given for *Meliffintha* to give her positive answer being expired, without any likelyhood of changing her intentions, the King caused her to be brought from the Castle where she was confin'd with her Father to his Palace, where she had a magnificent Apartment prepared for her, with an intention to celebrate the Nuptials the next day. Thus you see Ladies, that hitherto I have used all the brevity that might be, not being willing to enlarge my self in matters less worthy your attention; as I shall continue to do in what follows, though perhaps the subject may be more pleasing. For this reason I have omitted the particulars of a Negotiation, which without doubt caused many conferences between the King, the Prince, *Meliffintha*, *Gisulphus*, and those persons that sollicited him on the behalf of the King and *Gondemond*. And therefore I shall come to tell you what happened after *Meliffintha* and *Gisulphus* were separated.

So soon as *Meliffintha* was come to the Palace, she was visited by all the *Saxon Court*. And for that the Queen had been dead some years before, and the King had no Daughter, the King had appointed such Ladies as he knew fittest for the employment, to be near her, and had instructed them what they had to do. As for *Meliffintha*, as she was constant without extravagancy, whatever sorrows she felt for the violence that was done her, she bore it with moderation, though with sufficient courage, and went along wherefoever they conducted her, without any reluctancy, unwilling to suffer any thing of rudeness to be offered to her person, and boldly uttered her thoughts without any impertinent cries or invectives. She spoke not a word to the King, whenever she saw him, ill becoming her modesty, or the respect which she owed his Dignity. And when the Prince, who attended her several times that day, spake to her before company of the happiness which he expected to enjoy in her society, and of the pleasure that he promised to himself in their marriage, she contented her self only to tell him, that he should never be her Husband, without flying into reproach or ill language. As it was then that she came to be seen by all the world, then it was that her admirable beauty was taken notice of, together with those powerful charms that appeared in all her features. Those that discourst her, did not find less in her mind. And while she concealed all her disdain for her Enemies, but received the civilities of other persons with all imaginable courtesie and meekness, all people beheld her with admiration; nor was there any one that wondered at the violent and obstinate love of *Gondemond*. She also concealed the greatest part of her grief before persons that were not concerned, and made answer to such obliging questions as they demanded of her, in expressions altogether as obliging. But when the Ladies, as all for the most part did, testified their joy and their happiness to have her for their Queen, she answered them with a noble confidence, free from passion, that she would never be their Queen, unless it fell out some other way than by espousing *Gondemond*. Most persons seeing her deport her self so mildly, believ'd that she was well near appeas'd, and thought she would not long continue in her resolution. But others foresaw the contrary, and found by this cold beginning, that she was one that had the command of her self, and was less to be mov'd than if she had appeared more outrageously obstinate. Though she was attended as a Princess that was to rule over the *Saxons*, and that she seemed to be at liberty in her chamber, she was for all that no less a prisoner in the Palace, than if she had continued in the Castle from whence she came: for *Gondemond* fearing least she should escape, and that he could not secure her, till he was in the absolute possession of her, caused her to be strictly guarded, under the pretence of an Honourable Attendance, by persons who were very exact in their duty.

In this manner she passed the rest of that day and the night following; the next day the King sent her Apparel for the Solemnity, so magnificent, and enriched with Jewels of inestimable value, that the like are hardly to be seen. And because they feared that she would refuse them, *Gondemond* had caused her own to be removed out of her Chamber; so that either out of necessity, or for some other reason which the condition of her fortune mov'd her to, she dress'd her self without any more to do. And with this new lustre, which the richness of her habit added to her beauty, she dazzled the eyes of all that beheld her, to whom she seem'd to be something more than humane. She made no resistance to the women, who by the orders of the King were employed to attire her, yet by her often sighing, and by her looks full of languishment, she testified her grief, and the apprehension she had of the violence which they offered her, but without the least immoderate expression. But when

when the Prince came to give her the good morrow, and that after he had satisfied his admiration at the sight of a beauty, such as he had never seen before, he told her, that now that great and glorious day was come, wherein he was to be the happiest person in the world. *I am very much deceived*, said she, *if this day prove so happy to you as others have done, and I hope, by the assistance of the Gods, that you shall never be my Husband.* Gondemond seemed as it were stupified at these words, which she uttered with such a mature confidence. But as he had taken up his resolution, and did not doubt but in time the rigour of the Princess's would yield to his Careless, and the advantages she should reap from her high condition; and for that he also believed that so obstinate a reticence proceeded rather from her compliance to the will of her Father, than from her own inclination; these last marks of her reticence, did not at all divert him from what he had resolv'd; which made him hasten the accomplishment of his intended Nuptials, with all the violence that his love could press him to. But when all things were ready at the Temple where the Nuptials were to be performed, and that the Princess was constrained to go where the Chariot stood prepared for her, turning towards Gondemond with a look full of courage and Majesty: Prince, said she, *let me tell you for once, that you ought not to put a force upon me, nor constrain me to do a thing contrary to the will which only depends upon the will. Consider that I am born free, and a Princess, and that you have none to accuse but yourself, if the Gods inflict some strange punishment upon you for the violence you offer to me.* *Thank you, Madam*, replied Gondemond, *that violence and force are not always alike criminal, and that we are permitted to put a constraint upon free persons, when it is for their advantage.* And who told you, (replied Melisimba with a stern countenance) *that I find any advantage in espousing our most cruel Enemy?* He has'st absolutely lost that name, replied the Prince, *that you ought not to remember, that ever he deserved it, and it lies on your part altogether to obliterate that Title in him, by giving your consent to him, that comes to bind himself to you this day with the eternal bonds of wedlock.* Melisimba would not vouchsafe any reply to these words, and so going without any constraint wherever they led her, she went toward the Chariot, while all the people that were gathered together in the Streets to behold her as she passed along, admired her Beauty. Her grief perhaps then clouded something of its lustre, for although, through the greatness of her courage, she endeavoured to dissimble it as much as she could, it was no difficult thing to observe it in her eyes, and in her careless behaviour. At the people admired her in the Streets, the whole Court was no less charm'd at the sight of her in the Temple, nor was there any person that did not believe, but that Gondemond would be the happiest person in the world, if he could gain her heart, as he had the possession of her Body. Part of the Ceremony was performed, and yet Melisimba spoke not one word, nor so much as turn'd her eyes either upon the King, the Prince or people. But when the great Priest of *Irimensul*, the chiefest of our Gods, rather to perform the formality, than to understand her will, demanded of her whether she would accept the Prince of the Saxons for her Husband or no: No, (cried she with a haughty resolution) *I neither do, nor will accept him as long as I live; and I employ the justice of those Gods whom you adore, upon those who have done this violence to a Princess.* These words were heard by such as stood near; but by the orders of Gondemond, who had sufficiently provided before hand, as to the answer of the Princess; there was such a noise made, during all the time she spoke, that she was not understood by those that were any thing at a distance. However it came to pass, there was little notice taken of it; for the Priests, who were at the King's and Prince's beck, fearing their displeasure, concluded the ceremony after the same manner, as if Melisimba had given her full consent.

After this, she was conducted back to the Palace, and all that day she was serv'd and attended in every respect as the Prince's Bride, though the obstinacy which she testified against the marriage, put a stop to those publick expressions of joy, and those splendid triumphs usual at such Solemnities. In the evening she sat at Supper with the King and Prince, but she eat nothing at all, nor made any answer to whatever either the King or Gondemond said to her; by her silence and behaviour causing a discontent in the amorous Prince sufficient to allay his joy, and to let him understand that his happiness was not yet fully assured to him. At length the hour appointed came, and the night being far spent, they led the Princess to her Apartment, and thence to the Chamber where she was to be sacrificed to the passion of Gondemond.

The Court was then at *Cynestia*, a fair City seated just upon the Sea, on that side which is toward the *Caucher*, the King's Palace being at the farther end: so that Melisimba's Apartment had not only a prospect over the Sea, but there was also a fair Closet adjoining to the Chamber, which opened into a stone walk adorned with Balusters, that survey'd all the
there

More being raised high, for that part was the lowest part of all the Palace. When *Melissintha* was in the Chamber, she desired all the Ladies that had accompanied her to leave her, and although they made their excuses, knowing it was not proper for them to leave her till they had put her to bed, she told them that for what she had to do, she had need of no more than one maid that she had with her, and continued so positive in her desire, that though they had orders to the contrary, the fear of displeasing her prevailed over their obedience to the Prince, so that at length they left her alone, save only with one young Virgin in whom she put an entire confidence, as having been bred up with her, and one that had accompanied her in her imprisonment, and in all her afflictions. So soon as the Ladies were retired, *Gondemond* entred the Chamber; and whether it were to please the Princess, or to have the more liberty in his privacy with her, he presently dismissed all those that came along with him, and suffered only those to tarry in an Anti-chamber, who were to lie near him. So soon as *Melissintha* saw her self alone with *Gondemond*, she rose from the Chair where she had sat for some time, and moving some few steps towards him, with a nobler confidence than himself durst shew at that time; *Gondemond*, said she, *do not think that the violence which you have offered me to day, gives you any lawful right over my person; for since it is only the will that consummates a marriage, there is no such thing between you and I; and though to outward appearance I am in your power, yet perhaps I am not yet so forsaken of Heaven, but that my prayers may thence compel an unexpected assistance, if you go about to use any farther extremity towards me.* The thunder of Heaven, replied the Prince, to me is less terrible, than that of your indignation; but since I hope to appease your anger by my love, I fear not the thunder of the Gods whom I have not offended. Fear all things, replied she, not only the Gods, the enemies of oppression and tyranny, but a person whom despair may provoke to attempt any thing. Whatever you can attempt, replied the Prince, can never be so strong as the love which I have for you; and I question not, but that will vanquish your unjust resolutions, and whatever you can oppose against it. I tell you once again, (replied *Melissintha*, beholding him with a frown) you shall never be my Husband; and that if you attempt to be so by force, you will lose your life in the enterprise. The hatred which it behoves me to have for you, dissuades me not from giving you this good advice; and as the resolutions to which you force me, are more agreeable to my fortune, than my inclinations, I counsel you not to drive me to the necessity of putting them in execution. These words pronounced with a confidence so remarkable, strook a kind of terrour into the Prince; but his passion overcame it in a short time; and well perceiving that he should difficultly obtain what he desired, by his love and prayers, he resolv'd to put himself into a posture to obtain satisfaction by such ways as he had already determined; and beholding the Princess with an eye that prognosticated the suddenness of his design; *I am sorry*, said he, *that you your self compel me thus to a necessity which I am forced to make use of so much against my will; and that you force me to engage my strength, at such a time when I owe all obedience to my love; but since you will have it so, I am resolv'd to try those ways which are only left me, and to seek my happiness, though at the peril of a hundred deaths, with which you menace me.* Concluding these words, he advanced towards her without any farther deliberation; but before he could come near her, she threw her self within the door of the Closet from which she was not far off, and bar'd it after her with so much speed, that he could not suddenly follow her. However, he did not think this obstacle of any great moment to hinder his design, the door of the Closet being but weak, and easily to be forced open; yet he resolv'd to make use of entreaty, before he offered that violence, mildly representing to *Melissintha* the small advantage she would gain by such an unprofitable resistance. But instead of receiving an answer to his words, he heard the rattling noise of a great fire, which flamed out in the Closet, and by and by he perceived a thick smoke that vented it self through the chinks of the door, against which he leancd. Upon this he tarried no longer, but breaking open the door with his foot, he soon beheld the flames that began to devour every thing that stood in their way. He made no question but this fire was designed that *Melissintha* might escape in the confusion, as she might over the Terrass-walk, if she had any correspondence; and for fear of this, after he had called the Attendants that were in the Anti-chamber, he threw himself into the Closet, but he had scarce made his first step when he received two mortal stabs in his Breast; so that after he had staggered but a little way, he fell down in a River of his own blood. All this while the fire taking hold of combustible matter, increased with so much vehemency, that in a moment it seized upon all the Closet; and those who came running upon the call of the Prince, no sooner approached, but by the clear light of the fire, they saw the weltring Prince giving up his last breath, so that the most affectionate of his Attendants had much ado to recover his dead body out of the flames, which followed them into the Chamber whither they were forced to drag him, and

and from thence spread themselves over all the Palace, with a most dreadful fury.

I cannot tell which was carried first to the King, the news of his Sons death, or of the fire: But I am apt to believe that the first alarm that he received, was of the fire, the noise and fury whercof increasing, at length the flames became the wonder of the whole City; and as he was going toward *Melifintha's* apartment, where the fire began, while he thought that all the cries and lamentations that he heard, all the grief that he saw in the peoples faces had been only for that; he understood the sad and fatal destiny of the unfortunate *Gondemond*, and by and by he beheld his body half burnt; which some persons, who had recovered it out of the flames, were carrying to some more secure place. At the sight thereof, O ye Gods! what a deplorable object of pity was there to have been seen? there appear'd no more life in him, than in his Son; and having for some time fix'd his eyes upon that miserable spectacle of Mortality, with a loud cry he flung himself upon the body of the Prince without sense or motion. They laboured a long time to bring him to himself, but for several hours they laboured in vain; and when he opened his eyes, he appear'd to those that stood about him, in such a condition, as made them fear all those things which despair and grief could urge him to. And indeed they had much ado to hinder him from executing the fatal effects thereof. So that if they had not with-held him, and diligently look'd after him, there was no question but he had followed *Gondemond* by the means of some violent resolution or other. He had loved him with the most tender, yet most strong affection that a Father could bear to a Child; and it was this affection, too much complying with his desires, that had unfortunately lost him. Nay, we may well affirm it for a truth, that never did grief so exorbitantly shew it self, as in the person of this miserable Parent; in-somuch, that whatsoever eloquence could utter to make you apprehend it, would all come short of the truth. He embrac'd the cold and bloody Corps of the miserable Prince, using expressions sometimes as if his reason and his senses had been lost.

Of three Sons which he had, worthy all to have ruled over the *Saxons*, he lost the first in the *Turingien* War; he saw the second, he that without question was the dearest to him, dead before his eyes, by a most unhappy accident. And it was so long since he had heard of the third, who had left his Court some years before, that he durst hardly hope his being alive. The consideration of so dire a Misfortune wrought such an effect upon his Mind, that it wanted but little of ending his Days, without the help of Weapons, or any violent resolution: And I am perswaded that they who were concern'd for his preservation, were beholding for his life, only to those considerations that kindled in his soul desires of revenge equal to those of his grief. True it is, that for a long time his Mind was only employed in the exercise of his grief, which at this time was favourable to his enemies, giving them liberty to escape, whilst it hindered him from minding their pursuit.

This grief of his occasioned also almost the entire destruction of the Palace. For besides that, because of the King lying in a Trance for some hours; and by reason that during some hours he was not capable of any reason or consideration, there was no care taken to quench it; the strange accident of the Sons death, and the Father's lamentation did so perplex and busie the King's whole Houshold, that there was nothing done but with disorder, and without success, and they were forced to carry off the King with the Body of his Son, which he would not forsake, to a house in the City, there being no safety for him any longer in the Palace, the greatest part whereof already lay in Ashes: Then it was that his fury awoke, and that he turn'd his thoughts against the Murderers of *Gondemond* with hopes of a revenge, which for a while afforded him some comfort. But when he began to think with pleasure upon the Victims, that by their long and cruel torments were to satisfy his vengeance. He understood, that that very fatal Night, *Cisulphus* upon whom so strict a Guard had not been kept of late, either by corrupting his Guards, or by other means not known, had broke prison, and getting up into *Melifintha's* Apartment, by the help of a Ladder, which by some contrivance was convey'd to the foot of the Terrass, had taken her away in the disorder which the fire had caus'd, and that he was certainly the person that gave *Gondemond* his deadly wounds. This news increased the King's grief, seeing the comfort which he hoped from his revenge snatch'd out of his hands, and either quite lost, or at least for some time out of his reach. And for that he did not doubt, but that both Father and Daughter had been the ruine of his Son: He could not see them escap'd from his wrath without flying out into a rage, that made him act those things, that neither became his age nor dignity. At the same time he gave express order to pursue them with all diligence, both by Sea and Land; though he rather believ'd that they had made their escape by Sea, which afforded them the safest and most easie retreat: And because he made no doubt, but that they had withdrawn themselves either to some part of *Jutland*; which

remained

remained under their jurisdiction, or that else they had taken Sanctuary in the Court of the King of *Denmark*, which was always their undoubted place of refuge; he bent all his thoughts to War, resolving to solemnize the Funerals of *Gondemond*, with the death of many thousands of Men. In the mean while he expressed both his grief, and his anger in words that gave occasion both of fear and pity: And in those Intervals that his grief reign'd in his soul superiour to his anger, and that his fury gave way to his more soft temper, letting fall a stream of tears from his eyes: *O Love, said he, how fatal hast thou been to my unfortunate Off-spring: By thy means Amalazontha depriv'd me of Gentelarie; but it was no offence in her: By thy means the implacable Melisinthia has depriv'd me of Gondemond, but with a cruelty to be abominated. Spare, O fatal Passion, spare the heart of Aldemar, and take not from me the last of my Children, if he be yet in the number of the living.*

While the disconsolate King thus tormented himself, *Melisinthia* and *Gisulphus* were labouring for their safety upon the waves, to which the necessity of their condition had oblig'd them to commit their trust. True it is, that *Gisulphus* had corrupted some part of his Guard, who out of the hopes they had to run the same fortune with him, the issue whereof they doubted not from the charms of the Princess, which few the stoutest courages could resist, gave him the opportunity, while the Marriage of the Princess took away all distrust, and busied the whole Court to escape out of Prison, and to get to the bottom of the Terrass with a Ladder, by which he got into *Melisinthia's* Apartment, who was advertis'd thereof, and prepar'd to receive him: And that it was he that slew *Gondemond*, and had carried away the Princess by Sea in a Vessel, which the same Guards had provided for him, and kept ready near the shore: And that while the Palace was in flames, in tears, and in disorder, and the miserable City in an uproar, both Father and Daughter accompanied with their Domestick Servants that attended them in the Prison, and those of the Guard to whom they ow'd their Liberty, made all the sail they could from the Enemies Country, leaving the Coast inhabited by the *Saxons*, to make that either of *Jutland*, or of the *Danes*. As it was the shortest and most easie passage, *Gisulphus* conjectur'd right that it was the most dangerous, and that the pursuit would be taken that way: And therefore to avoid that danger he kept the open Sea, with a design not to make to the shore till he were far enough off from the Territories of the *Saxons*. He had always kept a correspondence in *Jutland*, and knew that the inclinations of the people were favourable to him: But he could make little advantage thereof, unless the King of the *Danes*, who had forsaken him in the last War, would assist him with an Army to enter his own Country: However, though his affairs would not permit him to afford him any assistance of men, yet he doubted not to find a secure refuge in his Court, though he were in danger thereby to draw a War upon himself. As anger bare the chief sway in his soul, and that he did not think himself sufficiently satiated with the blood of *Gondemond* which he had shed; so he beheld with delight the flames of the burning Palace, that mounted up to heaven, and in the darkness of the night presented themselves every foot before his eyes, though at a very great distance. Nor did he behold this fire, as once *Aeneas* in his flight beheld the flames of *Carthage*: for this same sight, was a spectacle of joy, for which he had neither trouble nor remorse, and a joy so much the more perfect in regard the fire had been kindled by the hands of *Melisinthia*, as the death of *Gondemond* was his own Act. The fair Princess though she were no less provoked than he, both against *Gondemond*, and the King of the *Saxons*, had a heart more tender; and though she had set the Palace on fire, as had been agreed between them, to the end they might the better escape in the disorder; yet did she not desire the death of a Prince who lov'd her, though she perfectly hated him: And *Gisulphus*, though he did not repent that he had slain him, had often declar'd to *Melisinthia*, on purpose to comply with her humour, that it was rather necessity than any premeditated design that had provok'd him to be the Author of his death, and that if he had not been rid out of the way by that mortal stroke, they could not have saved themselves. They made sail all the night long, with all the speed imaginable, having no want of experienc'd Mariners, whom the hopes of a great reward had engaged in so dangerous an enterprize. And by morning they conjectur'd themselves so far from the shore which they had left, as not to fear the pursuit of their Enemies.

But when they thought they had escaped that danger, they fell into another which they never dreamed of: For the Sun did but just begin to cast his Beams upon the waves, when they discovered a Brigantine of Pyrates that pursued them, which having given them chase for some part of the day, at length came close up with them; so that they had no other way but either to yield or fight. *Gisulphus* had but few Souldiers in the Vessel, and therefore thought it altogether in vain to make any resistance: But he knew the humour of Pyrates, and particularly of those that haunted those Seas, who above all others were wont to

make themselves formidable by their cruelty : and therefore considering that neither his own nor *Melismtha's* condition, for whom he was more perplexed than for himself, would be at all the better by his surrender than by being overcome, he resolv'd to make a courageous resistance : and the better to encourage those few men that he had with him, and to make *Melismtha* approve his resolution, whom he beheld trembling and weeping for fear ; he told them in few words, That it was only from their valour that they could hope for safety, and that though the Pyrates should give them their lives in hopes of a great ransom, yet when they came to know who they were, as it was impossible but that they should, if they were kept prisoners but a few days, in hope of a reward greater than their ransom, they should be delivered up into the hands of the *Saxon* King, to be tormented to death. The likelihood which the Seamen and Souldiers found in his discourse, made them resolve to fight, though they despair'd of victory : Immediately they were attack'd by the Pyrates, with a fury which they were hardly able to resist. They fought however for some time with sufficient courage : And *Gisulphus* being a very valiant Person, so enlivened them by his example, and did such great Actions himself ; that they might have easily aspir'd to the victory, had they been seconded and relieved by a force inferiour to that of the Pyrates. But the Pyrates being better Armed, and far exceeding them in number ; they overcame the resistance that *Gisulphus* made, and entering the Vessel though not without some difficulty and the loss of several of their men ; in a short time they covered the deck with blood and dead bodies, so that *Gisulphus* and *Melismtha* saw nothing but death before their eyes. *Gisulphus* valued it not, disputing his life with a great deal of courage, and *Melismtha* unwilling to survive after her Father, and hoping for no other conditions, but what would be more cruel than death it self, was resolv'd to throw her self into the Sea, to avoid falling into the Pyrates hands ; at which time fortune directed another Vessel that way, near enough to see that the Combat was unequal, and that the vanquishers were Pyrates. The Master no sooner judg'd of the certainty of the Truth by Circumstances ; but he resolv'd to succour the weakest, and those that were overcome ; and though he had but few men with him, and run a great hazard in taking part with the weaker side, at length he resolv'd no longer to waver, but arming himself and his men with such arms as he had, he came up with *Gisulphus's* Vessel, and fought the Pyrates with so much courage, that in a short time they were forced to quit the Vessel wherein *Gisulphus* was, to encounter their new Enemies. Considering their number, and their experience in Sea fights, they might have apparently hop'd for Victory : but they soon were made to understand that in the person of the Captain, they had another kind of Enemy to deal with than had held them play before : For when they saw him strike down as many men as he strook blows, they began to doubt the success of the Engagement. *Gisulphus*, who in all the fight had receiv'd no wound considerable, plucking up a good heart upon this assistance, encouraged those few that remain'd, by his words, and by his Example to second their Defender ; and *Melismtha* taking courage her self, rearing her eyes toward heaven, and giving thanks to the gods, for their assistance in a time of so much extremity, exhorted them not to abandon their own safety ; with that they fell on afresh with all their vigour, and their generous Defender hewing out the way to a difficult Victory, by many and worthy brave acts becoming his valour ; at length they forced the Pyrates to lose their footing, and chas'd them out of their Vessel to seek their safety in their own Brigantine. The number of those that they found upon the deck were not many, one part perished in the Sea, the other in *Gisulphus's* Vessel : The vanquishers were not very eager in the pursuit of them that remain'd : And for *Gisulphus* and *Melismtha*, they no sooner found themselves out of danger, but they enquir'd for their valiant Defender, to return him thanks, and to offer him the service of those lives, for which they were engaged to his preservation ; he took off his Helmet when they came near him, and shewing his face, they beheld the Noblest Aspect of a man that they had ever seen before in their lives ; his age had not been above two and twenty years, the air of his face bold and magnanimous ; his gate the comeliest in the World, and the whole frame of his Person formed to the height of perfection. Both the Father and the Daughter beheld him with admiration, and by so fair a resemblance, they found themselves bound to have a greater esteem and value for his Person, than was due to the obligation of their deliverance : But if the sight of his Person produced that effect in them, the sight of *Melismtha* on the other side no less surpris'd him also, dazling his eyes after such a manner, that he seem'd to be in an amaze if not rather enchanted. The Princess had the same Apparel on, in which she was led to the Temple to espouse *Condemond*, having neither time nor opportunity to furnish her self with any other : But she had taken off the jewels that enriched it, as well to distribute to those that had assist'd her in her misfortune, to whom she was

not in a condition at present to be more liberal; as also to be the less taken notice of by those that she might meet as she went along: But though she had taken off that glittering lustre from her garments, she could not Eclipse the Glory of her Eyes, which, full of penitiveness as they were for her evil fortune, yet preserved a fire sufficient to enflame a heart, perhaps less sensible than that of the unknown Knight. He beheld her likewise with such Symptoms of Astonishment, and with some Alterations so extraordinary, that the fair Princess, who had as little recovered her self as he, from the Surprise which his lofty aspect had occasioned, might perceive some marks of a disturbance easily to be observed: And as it is natural to be concerned for the trouble of others, to which they themselves have contributed, by the undiscernable agitation of her spirits, she felt the blushes that in an instant vermilion'd all her face, and which restoring whatever sadness had clouded her eyes, gave a new lustre to her beauty. Though *Gisulphus* was loth to make himself known, at a time when it behoved him to suspect all things, and that to take away all suspicion of the truth; he was not willing that *Melisimtha* should pass for his Daughter, however he still acknowledged the Title that she gave him, but it was that of an Uncle to whose charge she was committed, and not that of her Father: and speaking to his valiant defender in the *Roman* tongue, of which both *Melisimtha* and himself had perfect knowledge, with a submission not so agreeable to his dignity, as to the condition of his fortune, and the greatness of the Benefit which he had received; *What Sir,* said he, *what can we miserable persons offer to your worth, whom fortune has left no more than what you have preserved? Or how can they otherwise testify their acknowledgement, than by presenting to you that very life which they owe to your valour, and to implore the Gods to bless you with that reward which is due to your Goodness.* I am, (replied the brave unknown, in the same Language, which he spake so well as if it had been his Native speech) *more than sufficiently recompensed, for that little which I have done in your behalf, by that content which I enjoy to have served persons of your merit: for opportunities do not every day offer themselves, to be serviceable in necessity to a person so valiant and generous as your self, nor to a Lady fairer than the fairest that ever the Sun beheld.* He uttered these last words with such a behaviour, that made them easily judge that he spake what he really thought: *Melisimtha* could not contain from making her acknowledgment, and therefore seeing that by the conjecture she had of her Father's mind, she thought she might be permitted to speak in his presence, *I question not Sir,* (said she to the valiant Knight) *but that you will receive the recompense of your noble Actions, from the same that attends them, and the satisfaction that upon like occasions, accompanies virtue: But the advantages that you gain thereby, ought not to hinder our just acknowledgement, nor the prayers that we ought to make for your prosperity; since it is all that fortune hath left to the feeble, and those that want ability.* She leaves you (replied the unknown Knight, with a passion of which he did not seem to be the Master) *a larger power to be grateful, than she gives us opportunities to render you those services, which may be acceptable to you: and they who meet with them though at the price of their blood and lives, are certainly the most happy persons in the world.* He uttered those words with so passionate a Gesture, that it was ealie to judge that it was his heart, that had directed them the way to his lips: nor did the Princess hear them without some kind of inward disturbance, nor without discovering by the blushes of her cheeks, that whether it were out of modesty, or something of anger to see her self so hard put to it, or some other passion; she was at a stand how to express her self in a reply; at another time and to another person than he, to whom she knew her self so much obliged, and obliged without any reluctance, she had not perhaps made any reply, for fear of lengthning out a discourse which she was not wont to hear, but the benefit was too great and too fresh in memory, and the person from whom she had received it, too worthy of her esteem to arm her self so soon against him with all that her natural severity might have prompted her to. And therefore tempering it with a sweetness to which she was obliged, and to which perhaps she was more inclinable than ever she was in her life; *I do not believe* (said she with a pensive and languishing eye) *that it is possible to receive a kindness, more acceptable nor more important than that which we have received from your assistance, and with that life which we owe to you, I am perhaps obliged to you for something more precious, the memory whereof I shall preserve as long as I live.* The unknown Knight laboured to reply with more moderation to these words, than he had used before in his last expressions, but he came off but ill: and though he gave them not liberty to divine precisely what he thought, at least he left them scope enough to judge, that his mind was not in a very settled condition. A little after spying some blood upon the Prince of *Jutland's* Clothes, and believing that it might be his own, he besought him to see whether he were not wounded, and proffered him to that purpose one of his men who was an expert Chirurion. *Gisulphus* thereupon absented himself to dress that little wound which he

he had received, but he made a sign to *Melisimba*, who fain would have seen his wounds dress'd, to stay; so that while he was in the Chirurgion's hands, and while he was busy in giving orders to throw the dead over board, and to cleanse the decks from the blood of the slain; the unknown Knight remained alone with *Melisimba*, and fed his eyes with the sight of her beauty with all the liberty he could desire, which he would not do in her Father's presence. *Melisimba* did not acknowledge him for her Father, but he guessed by her discourse that she was the Daughter of one of his Brothers, who had committed her to his charge, during a voyage which necessity obliged her to undertake. As the respect which the unknown person had for her, did not permit him to ask questions, besides that he was unwilling to employ that time which he had to discourse with her, so impertinently, so it was not very difficult for her to conceal the truth from him, though it may be at length she was not so well pleas'd with her self for what she had done, through the reluctancy which she had to dissemble with a person, to whom she knew her self so much oblig'd. She had no small desire to know who he was, but she durst not shew it, nor satisfie her self by enquiring of his Attendants; and for that he did not discover himself at all, her desire remained without any satisfaction, though she despaired not of finding it out, if they kept company together for any time. However, all this while she perceived that the eyes of the unknown person spake far more to her than his tongue, that he sigh'd oftentimes when he look'd upon her, and that his thoughts were more entangled and perplexed, than seem'd to correspond with his own natural humour.

This disturbance appear'd so visibly as to make her mistrust, lest he had received some wound in the Fight; and therefore though she were engag'd in other discourse, she thought her self oblig'd to move the question, out of the acknowledgment which was due to him, and which she truly had for him. Nor could she refrain, not without some appearance of trouble to ask him whether he were not wounded, and whether some of the blood that she saw upon his Arms, might not be his own. The unknown person sigh'd when he heard this question ask'd; and casting a bashful look upon the Princess, *I do not believe*, said he, *that I have lost any blood in the Fight, yet I cannot boast to have come off without a wound; and perhaps I have received one this day, for the cure whereof there is no remedy in Physick.* These words began to explain clear enough to *Melisimba*, the meaning of that discord which she observ'd in the mind and countenance of the unknown person. But though she were of a humour not to suffer patiently a farther knowledge, than such as she could gather from suspicion, she found her self not so provoked by these suspicions as at another time she might have been, and which she would not have hearkened to, had she thought they would have excited her displeasure against a person that she could not hate; and so giving him an answer without explaining what she conjectur'd; *I am too much oblig'd to you*, said she, *to understand that you suffer any thing of trouble, and not to be apprehensive of it, and much more would it afflict me, were it as you say, that your grief were without remedy. I spake of physical remedies*, reply'd the unknown person, *which being not proper for all sorts of diseases, mine perhaps is one of those distempers over which it has no virtue. Whatever it may be*, reply'd the Princess, *I wish the cure thereof with all my heart, and I should be very ingrateful, if I should not all my life time implore the Gods for your happiness. There is some likelihood*, (reply'd the unknown person with a smile) *that your prayers may not prove unprofitable; and though possibly I may be more in love with my distemper, than to desire the cure thereof, the compassion which you have for it will give me sufficient ease.* He had perhaps said more, if the Prince of *Jutland*, who went to dress a slight wound which he had received in his left Arm, had not interrupted them, telling *Melisimba* she would do well to perswade the unknown Knight to put off his Arms, and retire to take a little rest after so hard a toil which he had undergone for their safety. The unknown person without expecting the answer of *Melisimba*, told him that he had no need of rest. But because it was a shame for him to tarry longer in her presence, with his Arms all besmear'd with blood, he thought it more became him to go and put on others wherein to appear before her, and so to return into her presence with an offer of all the service which he could assist her with, in the affair which had caus'd her to hazard her self upon the Sea, and also of his company, if it were not offensive to her; or that he could be any way advantageous to her by such encounters as he had already made: *Melisimba* had not time to make answer to the offer of the unknown person, but she found that she could hearken to him without any reluctancy; and *Gisulphus* himself judg'd well that in the condition of his affairs the assistance of so valiant a person, and a person that by all likelihood was of no ordinary quality could not but be most advantageous to him. The unknown person upon this went aboard his own Vessel, and so into his Cabbin to change his Cloaths. But while he was thus employ'd, and that *Gisulphus* and *Melisimba* were dis-

courfing upon this laft accident, and of the conjectures that they were to make thereupon, almoft at the fame inftant the wind began to rife, and the waves to fwell, and by and by grew fo tempeftuous, that the two Veffels that were now ungrappled, were by the fury of the weather feparated above a Bow's ſhot one from the other; and at length the wind grew fo high, and the Sea fo rough, that it was impoſſible for the Veffels to keep together, with all the ſkill that the Marriners uſed; and in a ſhort time they not only loſt that hope, but hardly preserv'd themſelves from ſinking. However, it ſeemed to *Meliſintha*, that ſhe ſaw the unknown Knight upon the deck of his own Veffel, ſtretching forth his Arms from the ſide where he ſtood, and endeavouring with all his might and main, maugre the Tempeſt, to return to her, and teſtifying to her by all the ſigns imaginable, the grief which he had to be ſeparated from her by this unhappy accident. But ſhe ſoon loſt the ſight of him; for beſide that the Veffel was ſoon carried out of ſight, the weather grew fo foggy that there was nothing to be diſcerned upon the Sea: and all that were in the Veffel of *Giſulphus*, thought upon nothing but how to ſave their lives. I cannot tell what *Meliſintha* thought at that time, but we may well believe, that ſhe did not brook without ſome diſcontent the abſence of a perſon, to whoſe generoſity ſhe was ſo much indebted, and in whom ſhe had perceived other things which intermixed other favourable thoughts perhaps for him, beſides thoſe of her acknowledgment. However it were, ſhe would not diſſemble her ſorrow to *Giſulphus*: and the Prince of *Jutland* teſtified no leſs how much he was concern'd himſelf for it, expreſſing himſelf with as much heavineſs, as the new danger would permit him. The tempeſt was furious for ſome hours, but afterwards abated contrary to their expectation; and, as if the Tempeſt had not been raiſed but only to ſeparate them from their Preſerver, the winds grew ſtill, the waves grew ſmooth and calm; and immediately there blew a Gale ſo favourable to the Prince of *Jutland's* deſign, that he deſcryed the coaſt of *Denmark* ſooner than he expected; and in a ſhort time he made the Port whither he was firſt bound.

All this while grief diſplayed all that was ſad, or miſerably to be lamented in the Court of the King of the *Saxons*; and that Prince altogether deſperate, not being willing to hear either reaſon or comfort, had ingulſed himſelf into ſuch an immoderate ſorrow, that he was ſcarce capable of any diſcourſe. After he had devoted the two firſt days to tears and lamentations, and to all that grief could urge him to of extravagancy, the third day he ſolemnized the Funerals of the unhappy *Gondemond*. And though in the condition wherein he was, he regarded not that pomp or magnificence uſual upon ſuch high occaſions, yet for the love which he had for this unfortunate Prince, he was reſolved to omit nothing of what had been uſually accuſtomed at the obſequies of former Kings, ſo that both to eternize among the *Saxons* the memory of his Son's deſtiny, and the cruelty of *Meliſintha*, he cauſed the ſtory to be painted about a magnificent Tomb which he erected, but more hainous than indeed it was, and ordered theſe words to be engrav'd upon the Marble of the Sepulchre.

Love laid *Gondemond* in this Tomb, though he killed him not with his ordinary Weapons; but that which the eyes of the cruel *Meliſintha* had begun, her mercileſſe hands completed.

And a little lower.

Paſſenger, bewail his deplorable Deſtiny: Yet weep no more, for it is blood, and not tears, which his revenge demands.

The King effectually began to offer blood to the Gholt of *Gondemond*, and having loſt the principal victims againſt whom he had arm'd the the thunder of his anger, he exerciſed it upon all thoſe perſons whom he ſuſpected to have in the leaſt contributed to the eſcape

scape of *Gisulphus*. And among the guilty he caused many innocent persons to suffer, or at least all such as were accused not to have discharged their trust with care. His grief was so increased by the ill success of those whom he dispatched in the pursuit, that they could hardly escape his anger, though he remembered that he had sent them too late, and that though they had held the same course which the enemy kept, he had given them too much time to be overtaken. But as his affliction was excessive, the Gods were pleased to vouchsafe to him a very great comfort, without doubt the greatest that he could receive, if his revenge had not transported him beyond all consolation. For while he was in the Temple, and standing at the Sepulchre of *Gondemond*, whither they had carried him that day, and which he watered all the while with his tears, he heard among the crowd the sound of Prince *Aldemar's* name, and by and by he saw the press make way, and *Aldemar* himself coming towards him, his youngest, and his only child. The sight of him wrought the desired effect; for upon his too much coveted return, the heart of his disconsolate Father opened it self to as much joy as it was capable to receive, considering the mournful condition it was in. And this joy, making way for its self through all his grief, raised a kind of combat in his mind, wherein he expressed the tenderness of his affection by a new flood of tears, that spake instead of his tongue, which the labour and conflict of his passions had locked up under a mournful silence. The young Prince had thrown himself at his Father's feet, with his cheeks all over bedewed with tears like his Father's, he embrac'd his knees with a behaviour full of passionate submission, while his Father becoming master of those first commotions that had stupified his mind, to follow those which reason and nature taught him, raised him up with his Arms stretched forth to embrace him, and after that held him in his Arms a good while, not having the power to speak one word. When he began to speak, it was without order or coherence, calling him many times his Son, with a voice interrupted with sobs, and without uttering any thing afterwards for a long while. To these marks of tenderness the Prince return'd all those tokens of a filial affection, that a good disposition could make manifest. And for that he had already been told of his Brother's tragick end, and that the sad objects that presented themselves to his eyes, such as were his Father's countenance, his Brother's Tomb, the mourning furniture of the Temple had wrought that effect, than which, no other could be expected in a soul naturally inclined to grief and pity. He appeared before the afflicted King in such a condition, as made him soon sensible of the share he took to himself of his sorrow, and the inclination he had to intermix his own thoughts with his Father's. The King as yet expressed himself but in some few abrupt words, till at length overcoming those passions which had hindered him from expressing himself as he desired, *Aldemar*, (said he, with a voice loud enough to be heard by a great part of those that were in the Temple) *when you took your leave of me, you had then two Brothers not unworthy their noble descent, neither the one, nor the other; but remorseless death has deprived me of both, though after two several manners, the difference whereof has imprinted different thoughts in my breast; Genselaric lost his life by the fortune of war, in a Country which he invaded perhaps with little justice; and I have no reason to seek to be revenged either upon the French Ambiomex, nor upon the King of the Turingiens: but the ever to be lamented Gondemond has suffered death at the hands of a woman, to whom he had surrendered up his heart; a woman whom, from a Captive, he had raised to the Throne of the Saxons, a woman that he had espoused in the presence of our Gods, so shed his blood with her own hands, and mingle it with those flames, wherewith she had consumed your Father's Palace to ashes. You are now all my store, and with my Crown you are to possess my affections; but though I hope you will never prove unworthy of my Scepter, as I am apt to believe by those marks which I find in your disposition, yet are you never to hope it, unless by the revenge of Gondemond, and the sacrifice which I have promised to his Ghost, of that inhumane creature that massacred him, and that barbarous person that lent his assisting hand to a murderer so inexorable. Though you did not owe this satisfaction to my grief, though you did not owe it to all that relation or nature do demand, as well as I, yet you owe it to your honour; that ought to be more dear to you, than either your Crown or life. Nor certainly can you endure without the loss thereof, that the cut-throats of your Brother should find any Sanctuary within any corner of the world. Prepare your self therefore, *Aldemar*, to pursue them to the ends of the earth, at the head of an Army, to second your indignation equally in censured with revenge: and swear to me at the feet of these Altars, and before those Gods who were witnesses of the fatal marriage of Gondemond, that you will give neither peace nor truce to those murderers, and that you will never take repose your self, till you have delivered them up into my power, that I may offer them up to the Ghost of your deceased Brother.*

Thus spake the King to a person, who needed no arguments to what his revenge; and

for that they had made him a rehearsal of all that which had pass'd, and that with so much partiality, as to render *Melisintha* far more in fault, than she was in truth, by charging her to have consented to the marriage of *Gondemond*, on purpose to dig his grave in her Nuptial Bed; and that she gave him with her own hands one of the stabs that deprived him of his life: he entertained so great an abhorrency of the Action, that he burn'd with an impatience to hasten to that revenge which it behoved him to take; and gave way to some thoughts of cruelty, out of a detestation which he had of such cruel actions. Neither *Melisintha's* Sex, nor what they reported to him of her beauty, did any way move him; but looking upon her as a Monster, rather than a woman, he gave full liberty to the discourse and tears of the King, that wrought most vigorously upon his inclinations, to take all the effect they could desire. The King knew part of his thoughts, before he opened his mouth to express himself any farther, when the young Prince, soon after, beginning to speak; *Yes, Sir,* said he, *I engage my self as far as you can desire, to revenge the death of Gondemond; and though I owed neither that obedience to your will, nor that consolation to your grief, the blood of a Brother so dear to me, and the detestation of a crime like that of his murderers, have kindled in my breast a just rage, not at all inferior to yours. I will seek them out, in whatever part of the world they find the least Sanctuary; and they shall feel the thunder of your just anger, whoever they be that protect them from our revenge; and though Melisintha's Sex will not let me sheath my Sword in her bosom, yet shall it not hinder me from delivering her up into your power, and leaving the disposal of her destiny wholly to your justice.*

After this manner spake *Aldemar*, and as he uttered these words, his eyes sparkled with anger, and his frowns were such, that the King no farther questioned his fidelity to perform what he promised. This hope made him sensible of that comfort, which before he believed could never have entered into his heart; and this respite given to his grief, causing him to observe more circumspectly the behaviour of his Son, made it plainly appear to him, that the absence of three or four years had wrought such advantageous alterations in his person, or rather had so increased his virtuous inclinations, that not permitting him to be prepossessed either with the memory of *Genselaric*, or blinded with the love which he had for *Gondemond*, he could not admit of any comparison between the two deceased Princes, and him whom the Gods had preserv'd. In short, the whole Court agreed with him, that few persons in the world were better accomplish'd than *Aldemar*; and to say the same of him as I have said of *Melisintha*, before I saw this Royal Company, I never saw that person who, in my opinion, ever excelled him for his noble aspect, behaviour, and those other ornaments that completed the comly grace of his person. His eyes are lively and sparkling, his hair black, his complexion somewhat inclining more to brown, than is usual under the Climate where he was born; his proportion admirably perfect, his presence lofty and noble, above what I am able to describe.

The King, after he had beheld his person with delight, upon his discourse with him, found no less perfections in his mind; and saw beyond his expectation, how he had improved himself by his travels, and his abode in the Courts of strange Princes with an admirable success. Some days after he observed yet more; but as on the one side, this afforded him great cause of comfort and joy; and that notwithstanding the passion for *Gondemond* that had prepossessed him, he now was of opinion that fortune was agreed with reason to call him to the Crown, who without doubt was the most worthy of it; so he was not a little afflicted to see himself obliged by the necessity which he himself had imposed, and by the burning desire of revenge that tormented him without ceasing, to part with such a Son, his only Son, and a Son that he should expose to great dangers, by the enterprise which he had engaged him to undertake. Sometimes he began so far to repent, as to think of revoking his imposition, and committing his revenge to other hands; but presently after, being incensed by his first thoughts, and believing that there was no other person but he, that could so well accomplish his desires, he yielded both to part with his Son, and to let him undergo the dangers which he might expect, to satisfy that immoderate passion which continually tormented him.

While he was raising the Army which he was resolv'd to employ in this Expedition, he had sent Spies to the Court of the *Danish* King, whither, he made no question, but his enemies were retired, by whom, in a short time, he understood, that *Gisulphus* and *Melisintha* were there, and that they were favourably entertained by the King, who had not only promised them protection, but that knowing *Melisintha* to be the lawful Heiress of *Jutland*, though deprived of her inheritance, he had a design to marry her to Prince *Simbald*, his Brother; and to assist them with an Army, to restore them to the possession of that fair Country, whereby he should assure to himself the amity of that Kingdom, and rid him-
self

self of a neighbour, whose power was always an eye-sore to him. That he desired this marriage for his Brother, not having any children of his own, but what were very young. That *Gisulphus* was willing to consent to the match out of the hopes he had to recover his Kingdom, and that they believ'd *Melisintha* would not refuse to espouse *Sinibald*, being a comely Prince, and of great valour. That for the accomplishing these designs, they assured him, that *Gisulphus* and *Melisintha*, whom her Father was willing to shew to the people, the better to encourage them to the maintenance of their interests, were to set forward in a few days with a Navy, which the King had provided for them, to make themselves Masters of the most important Sea-port Towns of *Jutland*; and that *Sinibald* was to march in a few days after, with an Army to enter *Jutland*, so soon as *Gisulphus* had secured the Sea coast. The King of the *Saxons* was overjoyed that his enemies did not hide themselves from his revenge; and the great courage of *Aldemar* was pleased to behold these opportunities to signalize his valour, and to acquire fame in the performance of his Father's commands, so agreeable with his inclinations to revenge the death of his Brother. In a few days after, they received a confirmation of the news, with all the certain particulars: and how that the *Danish* Fleet was ready to set Sail for the Coast of *Jutland*. The assurance which they had of this news, made them hasten the execution of their design, not being willing to let *Gisulphus* make himself Master of all the Sea-port Towns: And to this purpose the King commanding aboard such Seamen as he had in readiness, gave order to Prince *Aldemar* to meet *Gisulphus*, himself preparing with his Army to encounter *Sinibald* by Land. Before *Aldemar* went a Ship-board, he exhorted him with all earnestness imaginable to the revenge of *Gondemond's* death, and engaged him by new Oaths, not to give it over as long as he lived. After that, *Aldemar* put to Sea with a Fleet well equipped, and sailed toward the coast of *Jutland*.

But though the wind favoured him it was contrary to *Gisulphus* and *Melisintha*, who being within view of the Coast of *Jutland*, were forced back again toward *Denmark*, and to shelter themselves under certain Islands. In short, this obstruction of a contrary wind that rose some days after they put to sea, lost the execution of their design to the great grief of *Gisulphus*; who well knew that the good success which they expected, depended chiefly upon the suddenness of execution. He had flattered himself with a pleasing hope which he had, of the favourable inclinations of the King of the *Danes*. And though he well knew the reasons that obliged him to interest himself in his defence; and that he was not ignorant as to the advantage of his daughter, that there was a vast difference between the party whom they offered her, and the person whom she had refused; yet the implacable hatred which he bore to *Gondemond*, and to the House of the *Saxon* King's, had caused him to prefer a mean person before the Heir of that Crown: and he chose rather to recover his Dominions by the help of his Friends, than by the favour of his cruel Enemies. *Melisintha's* thoughts seemed to be conformable altogether to his, though indeed there was not any thing that she could see more advantagious to her, than to Ally her self to the King of the *Saxons*. But though out of respect which she had to the will of her Father, she did not altogether reject the proposition made her to marry *Sinibald*; neither did she seem very much to approve it, notwithstanding that there was nothing in the Prince of *Denmark* that she could dislike: and though through the impatience of his love (for he grew easily enamoured) he had desired and requested of the King his Brother and the Prince of *Jutland*, that the marriage might have been accomplished before his departure; she excused her self, that she was not in a condition to espouse a Husband while a miserable Exile, and one that had nothing to help her self. And she perswaded her Father by many Arguments which she alledged, that he should defer the Marriage till he came to be in the possession of his Kingdom, to which the King of *Denmark*, who desired this match only upon that consideration easily consented. While she was on shipboard she appeared very sad, and if out of the delight she had to comply with her Father's will, she forced her self sometimes to look a little chearfully; yet there was a certain pensiveness that seized her, which shewed that her mirth was not natural. However because she had had misfortunes enough in her life to make her sad, therefore her Father did not greatly wonder at it though it troubled him very much: But while the wind held in a contrary corner, he attributed the greatest part of her care and melancholly which he observed in her eyes, to the trouble she had for being so disappointed. At length finding the wind still continue contrary to their design, they began to think however of returning by the help of Art toward *Jutland*, where they had yet some hopes to arrive soon enough for their purpose, when they discovered the *Saxon* Fleet, which under the conduct of *Aldemar* in good order bore directly upon them with a fresh gale. *Gisulphus* well understood the preparations which were made upon Prince *Aldemar's* Arrival in *Saxony*, and the solemn

vows which the King had caused him to make to revenge the death of *Gondemond*. He knew likewise that he was to command the Fleet which was to be sent against him, but he did not think that they had been in a condition to set so soon to Sea, and he was in good hopes that before they could be ready to seek him out, he should have finished the greatest part of what he designed, so that he was not in a little surprize when he descried them first, seeing himself compelled in an instant to take new resolutions. Some of the Captains of the *Danes* that were near him, advised him to hawl close to the Shore, and not hazard an engagement, the ill success whereof would entirely ruine all his designs: And this counsel probably had prevailed, but that he considered that the Enemy was master of all the *Danish* shore, by reason of the Garrisons which they had in the Sea Towns of *Jutland*, where *Sinibald* was not yet entred, so that he should be inclosed between them, which hindred him from landing to shun those that pursued him by Sea: Whereas in bearing up to the Enemy which he saw before him, he had nothing to fear but only them, nor could they receive any reinforcement from Land. On the other side, he knew by a light vessel that he had sent upon discovery, that the Enemy was not stronger than they: and as he had a Courage more hot and more fierce than was usual at his years; and by reason of the hatred which always reigned in his Soul, he coveted nothing more than to spill the blood of the *Saxons*: He therefore prepared himself to fight, and put all things in readiness accordingly. He would have sent *Melismtha* away with orders to sail back into *Denmark*, accompanied with such persons as he could confide in to conduct and guard her: but besides that it was a very difficult thing to sail back into *Denmark*, the Enemies Fleet lying between them and home, she told him that she was resolved to run the same fortune with him, and that she hop'd the Gods would give him the victory: so that all he could persuade her to, was to keep at a distance with the same persons that he had appointed in a Vessel, which was ordered to keep out of harms way: And that it fortune proved contrary to him, that upon the first knowledge she had of it, she should endeavour to recover *Denmark* with all the speed she could. Having thus ordered their affairs, *Gisulphus* went aboard another Vessel, and going from Ship to Ship put all things in good order, and having taken all his advantages like a brave and experienced Admiral; he bore briskly up to the *Saxons*, so that in a short time both Fleets came within bow shot, and the Sky began to grow dark with the infinite showers of Arrows, that they let fly on both sides. True it is that manner of fighting lasted not long, for the impatient *Aldemar* bearing out of order before any of his own, and appearing at the head of the Ships Company with his Sword in his hand, he grappled Vessel to Vessel, and so came to fight hand to hand. I can well bear witness of what there passed, for I commanded one of the biggest Ships, and had some share in the success of the Engagement. The Prince of *Jutland* every where did the part of a skilful Commander, and a valiant Soldier; and he so encourag'd the *Danes*, both by his speech, and by his actions, that oft times the Victory inclin'd to his side, while the Seas were colour'd with *Saxon* blood. But the Valiant *Aldemar*, whose flourishing youth afforded him a more vigorous and brisk strength, appear'd to the *Danes* in his Glittering Arms, like a bloody and fatal Comet; and strowing death in all places where he appear'd, he not only increas'd the Courage of his own, but discourag'd his Enemies: And sailing up and down the Fleet, where he found his own too hard beset, or any important resistance, there by his presence he restor'd the Fortune of the Day. In fine, after great toil and labour he disorder'd the Enemies Fleet, so that they fought confusedly without any obedience to the Orders of *Gisulphus*: Nor was it long ere their disorder increas'd more and more, through the Valour of the *Saxon* Prince, who plyed his advantages, so that at length the Victory became wholly ours, and the *Danes* were totally defeated. *Gisulphus* did all that a valiant man could do, to stay their flight, but all his endeavours proving vain, he signaliz'd his fury by the death of many *Saxons*, that fell by the point of his sword. But in the height of all his despair, he saw the victorious *Aldemar* cover'd with blood enter aboard his Ship, killing all that stood in his way: At this sight he pull'd down the Viser of his Helmet, and fortifying himself with a courageous resolution, fearlessly prepar'd to encounter so terrible an Enemy. *Aldemar* who knew it was his Ship, and knew him likewise by several signs, gave him so weighty a blow upon his head, that he fell down quite stupif'd at his feet: He caus'd him to be taken up at the same time by those that were next him. But he would by no means see him, lest it should have rais'd a pity in him altogether unprofitable, and so turning himself to one of the chief Officers of the Fleet that he saw next him, and whom he trusted with all things of greatest Importance: *I believe*, said he, *that the Victory is ours; but for fear, that if Fortune should change her Countenance, we should be blam'd for not having done our duty, nor perform'd our oath: Make you haste, and in this Ship, which I leave for the same purpose, carry this Prisoner to the King my Father, and tell him,*

him, that by this prosperous beginning, which I have given to his revenge, he may expect as length that satisfaction which he desires from me. After these words he left that Ship, where most of the *Danes* had been put to the Sword, and having order'd a Convoy for the Officer, that was to carry *Gisulphus*; he pursu'd his Victory with that vigour, that in a short time he found no more resistance: for that the greatest part of the *Danes* having lost their lives in the Combat, the rest threw down their Arms, crying out for Quarter to the Victor: Who knowing well that they were not the Murderers of *Gondemond*, spar'd their lives and us'd them civilly. There was a great number of Prisoners, whom they put into certain Ships, after they had disarm'd them.

But among them all they could not find *Melismtha*, though several of the *Saxons* that were most forward to satisfy the passion of their King, and were most zealous to follow his Orders, searched for her in all the Ships, and sought for her in all the Creeks along the shore. They understood from the Prisoners that she made all the sail away that she could, as soon as she saw the fortune of the Engagement favour the Enemy: and that with one Ship and a few persons, to whose care her Father had committed her, she was fled toward *Denmark*, and because they thought there would be a great reward for those that should take her; the most zealous among them with the most nimble Vessels, undertook the pursuit. Though till that time, Prince *Aldemar* had testified no less indignation toward *Melismtha*, than he had done toward *Gisulphus*, and that his anger seem'd to be as much enflam'd against her, as against her Father, and that the fact for which she was accused, and which the *Saxons* verily believ'd she had committed, seem'd the more odious in a person of her sex, yet he was not much troubled for not finding her, and turning to them that were most forward to undertake the pursuit; *If she escape our Revenge*, said he, *she will not escape the justice of the Gods, and we perhaps shall be more happy, to see her receive the punishment of her Crime by other hands than ours.*

While she fled toward *Denmark*, this unfortunate Princess who had arm'd so many Swords against her life, though she suffer'd her self to be governed by those, to whom her Father had left her in charge, and who against her will had hoys'd sails, and made all the hast they could for the Coast of *Denmark*, when they saw the victory incline to the *Saxons*, not without more than ordinary compulsion; forsook a Father whom she dearly loved: and as she sat in the Ship that made for *Denmark*, she always turned her eyes, almost drown'd in tears, toward the place which she had forsaken, sending the unprofitable succour of her sighs to his relief. However, they who had the charge of her ill acquitted themselves thereof: for it being their ill fortune to have none but bad Scamen in the Vessel, and such as were withal amaz'd with fear, they made not half the speed which they might have done, so that night coming on before they were sail'd very far, they made but little way while it was dark: so that the Sun no sooner began to appear, but they were discovered by the *Saxon* Vessels that pursued them, and who knowing the *Danish* Vessel, made after it with so much speed, that in a short time they fetch'd her up and took her: Then it was that *Melismtha* seeing her self arriv'd at the height of her misfortunes, would have freed her self by death from all the worst of evils that she fear'd from her accursed fortune: and running to the side of the Ship, she would have thrown her self into the Sea, had she not been caught hold on by those persons that were near her, and who after they had in vain put her in mind of the charms of her beauty, that would soon disarm her Enemies; were constrain'd to make use of force to keep her from doing her self some mischief. In the mean while the *Saxons*, not finding any resistance from men, that could hope for no good success, having oblig'd them besides upon promise of their lives to lay down their Arms, went aboard the *Danish* Vessel. How furious how enraged soever they were at the sight of *Melismtha*, they could not forbear to pay her that respect which it was so difficult to deny her: and being by good fortune command'd by a Captain that was nobly descend'd, and of a considerable Family among the *Saxons*, he would not suffer any thing unhand'some: so that she was brought before the Victor, without receiving the least injury or affront. They who were the Masters of her liberty, understanding the design that she had to have thrown her self into the Sea, kept continually by her to hinder her from it: And I am assur'd that they beheld those charms in her eyes, that they repented they had been so eager in pursuing her: and that they rather inclin'd to let her escape than bring her prisoner, had they not fear'd the anger of the King: and had there not been two Captains of equal Authority, who out of the distrust they had of each other, durst not discover their intentions. *Melismtha* desired them to use her civilly, and to have some respect to the Quality of her birth: which when they had assur'd her, she demand'd of them whether her Father was alive, and understanding that he was a Prisoner, the grief that seiz'd her became so violent, that it fail'd but little of putting an end to her days, and made it

apparent to those that guarded her, that the danger which threatned her, was less terrible to her than that to which the life of her Father was exposed. After this she spake no more, but settling her self by the strength of her virtue to suffer her misfortune constantly; she patiently submitted her self to the power of the Victor: Now by reason that the Vessel was a very nimble Sailer, and that *Aldemar* was got head most of all the rest of the Ships, they soon discovered the Fleet, and in a short time after came board and board with the Princes Vessel, and went aboard with the fair Prize which they had taken. By and by the Cry went through the Ship, as it did immediately after through the whole Fleet; that *Melisintha* was taken: And *Aldemar* that heard it as well as others, spake aloud to forbid them from bringing her before him; when he saw her approach in the midst of her Guard, who retired some few steps backward after they had presented her to the Prince, *Aldemar* troubled at what they had done, would not so much as cast his eyes upon a beauty the sight whereof he dreaded: and *Melisintha* notwithstanding all her confidence, could not, without growing pale, behold her self in the presence of the Brother of *Gondemond*: and much ado she had to look upon an Enemy, whose good fortune had made him Master of her Destiny. But *Melisintha* having cast her eyes upon *Aldemar*, at the same time that he turn'd his face toward her, immediately knew him to be that unknown person, that had deliver'd her from the Pyrates, and who by many tokens at that time seem'd to be smitten with her beauty, of which he had preserv'd the memory longer than she desired. This same sight, and this same knowledge striking her with astonishment, made her head dizzy that she was e'en ready to swoon upon the deck; had she not been supported by two young virgins that attended her, and who kept her up in their Arms. But her surprize, as great as it was, was no way equal to that of Prince *Aldemar*, nor can words make you apprehend what he felt, when he understood that this admirable Princess, of whom he was become so passionately enamoured, from the very first time that he saw her, and whom he loved a thousand times beyond his own life; was that very *Melisintha*, who according to the common report, as he had been made to believe, had killed his own Brother: and the same *Melisintha* that he was necessitated to expose to the revenge of the King. Certainly among all the adventures the most estranged from the Common Course of Fate, never did any accident fall out so wonderful nor so surprizing: and the astonished Prince was so amazed at it, that for a long time he could not compose his judgment, to believe the reality of a thing, which he could not look upon to be other than an illusion or a dream. His whole countenance betrayed his admiration in such a manner, that all that beheld him might easily perceive it: And if one of the Masters of the Ship, had not done the same Office that the Ladies did for *Melisintha*, he could not have sustained himself in that weakness, which had shadowed all his face with a mortal paleness, and had caused a trembling in his body from head to feet: he remained a long while in this condition, not daring to lift his eyes toward that face, which for those reasons that had been imprinted in his mind, it behoved him to look upon with horreur, yet was he not able to remove them off from those beloved cheeks, the image whereof he carried engraved in his heart, and so deeply engrav'd, that he did not believe that any length of time could deface it.

All this while he kept himself in a silence, that amazed all those that stood upon the deck, a silence of a person troubled, irresolute and desperate. He so continued a long time, till at length lifting up his eyes towards Heaven, *O ye immortal Gods, said he, what an unhappy fate is mine! And wherefore is it, that ye preserve me?* He fixed his eyes upon the ground when he had uttered these words; and by and by turning himself toward me, whom he had some days before honoured with a particular confidence, he gave me to understand by a sign, that I should clear the deck of all the persons that were there. I understood his meaning, though not the reason more than any of the rest, only attributed it, as they did, to the beauty of *Melisintha*, which was able to work greater effects. Thereupon I caused them to retire where they might not be observers of his actions. When he had a little liberty, he beheld *Melisintha* with somewhat more confidence than before; and beginning to express himself, though in words interrupted with several sighs, *Ab most inhumane Beauty, said he, that Beauty to which I have surrendred my heart; is it possible, that you should prove to be that Melisintha who so cruelly slew my Brother?* “And is it possible, (replied the Princess with a languishing eye) that that person to whom I owe my life, and for whom I had a Soul full of acknowledgmet, should be the Son, and the Brother of the “cruel Destroyers and Enemies of our Family, and yet the preserver of my life? She stopp'd at these words, and the Prince seem'd to be touch'd in such a manner, that for a long time he was not able to make a reply, commending to his eyes the task of speaking for him, in the midst of that grief which impos'd that silence upon him. At length,

with

with some pains beginning to open his lips, *O Gods, said he, can it be that a celestial beauty, and a Beauty which through my misfortune I adore, should be guilty of a cruelty detested by all the earth?* The Princess's colour came into her face at this reproach, intimating something of disdain, and beholding the Prince with an eye incensed at something that the took amiss; and yet with a look wherein there appeared more of sweetness than extravagancy: Aldemar, said she, *neither ought you to adore me, neither have you perhaps any reason to hate me; and although you are prepossessed with an unjust prejudice against me, you may understand in time that I should not be so criminal, were I less unhappy.* *Oh Melinthia,* (replied Aldemar with a sigh) *since you had espoused Gondemond, you ought not to have killed him; for you have other weapons to take away the lives of men, without embroiling your fair hands in blood.* "I neither espoused Gondemond, replied the Princess, neither did I kill him. And though without blame I might have taken away the life of a person, who after he had deprived me of two Brothers, and the Crown of my Ancestors, would have deprived me of my Honour; yea, most certain it is, that he might have been still alive, for any thing that either my hands or my consent contributed to his death. *Would to all the Gods,* replied the Prince, *that at the expence of all my blood, what you affirm, were true.* *But though we may be ignorant of the particulars of Gondemond's death, however it is publicly known that you were married to him.* "All the world knows, replied she, that I was hurried to the Temple by force, to make me espouse Gondemond; but the whole Court of the Saxons knows as well, that at the Altar I refused him for my Husband, when they demanded my consent; and I will add this, that though my hatred toward him were such, that I would have rather chosen to die, than marry him, yet I neither desired his death, or if I had desired it, yet had I not the heart to dip my hands in blood. That was the blow of a stouter hand than mine; and I must also tell you, 'twas the stroke of necessity, and not of design; and that he that slew Gondemond, would sooner have spared his life, could he possibly have saved it without losing his own. I make this justification to you, Aldemar, as to my Judge, and the person who commands my life; but not to divert you from your resolution; or from what you owe to your Brother's revenge. My life is too unfortunate to desire the preservation of it from the Son of the King of the Saxons; and you may fulfil your Father's orders as to my person, as you have already disposed of my Father. *As to what relates to your person,* replied the Prince, *I know well enough, what orders I have to obey; and as I have received my commands from a Sovereign more absolute than the King my Father, I will stand to consider what I have to do, as to the execution thereof; for though you see me much afflicted, you find me not irresolute: nor are you to look upon me as the commander or disposer of your destiny, since mine is at your devotion so long as I live; and be you but pleased to think how to repair the injury which you do me; seeing that although you should prove guilty of the crimes of which your enemies accuse you, of which my heart, no less than your lips, informs me that you are innocent; and that with the blood of Gondemond you had shed all the blood of our Family; I should not however stick one moment to lay down my life for the preservation of yours.* "I should be willing to owe my life, replied Melinthia, to him who with the hazard of his own, defended it from the Pirates, but I would not willingly owe it to him that has so cruelly sent away my Father to be put to death. 'Tis very true, replied the Prince, that I have sent away Gifulphus to the King of the Saxons: but the sorrow that I feel for so doing, is not less than yours; and there is no danger to which I will not expose my self, to recover him from the place to which I have sent him. "O unhappy Parent, (replied the disconsolate Princess, letting fall a shower of tears from her fair eyes) and yet more unfortunate child, if she survive thee! Alas, what will become of thee? And what art thou not to fear from the cruelty of thy implacable Enemy? Aldemar was so inwardly touch'd with these her lamentations, and to behold the tears of Melinthia, that for a long time he was not able to speak, either to justify himself, or to console with her; and at length finding that he could neither do the one, nor the other, 'Tis not by words, said he, that I can express the part that I take in your affliction, and the sorrow that I have to be the cause of it: it must appear by deeds, only my endeavours must speak what I have in my heart, while I make use of all my power to preserve the Prince of Jutland. I will not tell you, that the King will give ear to my prayers; but I assure my self, that to the request which I shall make to him by a peculiar messenger of my own, which I will dispatch with all the speed imaginable, he will so far yield, as for some time to delay the execution of any design that he may have against his life, and in the mean while I will seek out all means to deliver him, though I exchange my liberty for his, and lay down my life for him. Receive in the name of all the Gods, all the reparation that I am able to give for the miseries which I have been the cause of; and be pleased to believe, that it no less concerns my repose than yours, that you should be satisfied. Melinthia

found some comfort in these expressions of *Aldemar*, and in regard the safety of her Father was that which most employed her thoughts, and that which she preferred before all other things, she condescended for his sake, which she would not have done for any other consideration, to owe her Father's life to the Son of the *Saxon* King, though her great courage could hardly bend to be beholding to him for her own: *Aldemar* finding he had no time to lose, considering the danger which threatened the life of *Gisulphus*, dispatch'd away one of his own Attendants, whom he most relyed upon, to whose industry he recommended the management of that affair with all the Rhetorick that passion could put into his mouth. He instructed him in few words that he had to say, and gave him a Letter to the King, the substance whereof was this.

Prince *Aldemar* to the King of the Saxons.

Our victory is entire, and you have taken *Melisintha* as well as *Gisulphus*. I shall bring her speedily my self, not daring to trust her in the hands of any other person, for very important reasons; and for the same weighty considerations I humbly beseech you, Sir, to stay till she be in your hands, before you execute the effects of your just anger upon her Father.

As he was sending away the person, he turn'd toward *Melisintha*, and whispering to her, Do not you believe, Madam, said he, that I would trust any other but my self in a business of this importance, if for the preservation of the Prince of *Jutland* it were not more necessary that I should be here than at Court. I hope you will soon find it; in the mean while, till you see the effect of my good will to serve you, suspend the hatred which by my misfortune you bear me. Till now I never bore a part in the injuries done to your Family; nor can I be accused of usurping your Territories, or of killing your Brothers: and therefore, next your self, I am more unhappy than criminal; and would to all the Gods, that my misfortune might endure no longer than the crime; and that in repairing my offence, as I hope I shall do, I may not be miserable till death, as I have reason to fear. Thus spake *Aldemar*, but the Princess made no reply otherwise than by certain looks that shewed more of grief than anger in her face; and which sometimes through the inclination we have to flatter our selves, gave him, as he thought, some reason to hope, that he should not remain all his life time so unhappy as he imagined.

For my part, (said the King of *Suevia*, interrupting *Gismond* in his discourse) I wish him nothing but misfortune; and I see already that he is in the number of those children that oppose themselves to their Parents inclinations; and that led by foolish and inordinate passion fail in their obedience to those that gave them their being. I thought, said *Varanez* smiling, that he was one of those that you had no kindness for, nor did I expect that you would be more favourable to him. Hitherto, Sir, (said Prince *Balamir* to the King of the *Suevians*) you have no great reason to accuse him, for though he had not been in love, yet compassion might move him to act for the safety of *Gisulphus* and *Melisintha* without any offence. I believe, said the King of the *Suevians*, that you would have done as he did; and this is not the first time that I have confess'd to you, that my disposition is not so mild as yours. Your disposition, replied *Arderic*, is not so fierce as you would make us believe; and well you know, that you have not been always an enemy to that passion which you so much exclaim against. I have heard him as well as you, (replied the Queen of the *Cimbrians* to the King of the *Alains*, smiling) but I am afraid that we shall see him ere long in a condition to want that pardon and forgiveness which he now so disdainfully slight. Let me never obtain it, replied the King of *Suevia*, if any such thing ever befall me: and in the mean time give me leave not to preserve it for any others that forget their duty. He had said more if they had not seen the Queens meat served up, which made them defer the rest of the adventures of *Melisintha* till after Supper, which they dispatched with more than ordinary haste, out of a desire to hear the remaining part. At length Supper being ended, they all took their Seats as before, and *Gismond* went on with his Relation.

The End of the Second Book of the Sixth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK III.

Aldemar quitted his Cabbin to *Melismtha*, where he ordered her to be attended with that respect, as if she had been his Queen, and he himself her Subject born. This proceeding of his made a great part of the Saxons admire, who thought it not fitting for him to treat in such a splendid manner, a person whose destruction the King his Father fought at the expence of his Subjects blood. One part of them that observed it, attributed the cause thereof to the natural courtesie and mildness of the Prince, which would not permit him to use rigour toward a fair Princess, though she was devoted to the King's anger: others, to whom the power of beauty was not unknown, conjectured the truth, believing that the charms of *Melismtha* might work the same effect in his heart, as they had done upon the unfortunate *Gondemond*. However it were, there were none that murmured at it, as well for the reverence they bare to the virtue of the Prince, as for that they looked upon him as the person that was ere long to be their King; and therefore they most willingly conform'd themselves to comply with him, seeing it was his pleasure that the Princess should be honourably attended. The evening before he had her good night, coming to her with the countenance of a person, whose life and repose seem'd wholly to depend upon her; *Madam*, said he, *I need not tell you, that you are free; for you know perhaps that the chains which the King of the Saxons prepared for his enemies, are rather prepared for his Sore; and that in reigning over my heart as you do, you also reign with sovereign authority over all places where I have any power. But it is time now for me to ask you what course you intend to take, and where you would that I should put you ashoar, that you may be out of your enemies reach.* *Melismtha* seemed to be mov'd at this discourse of *Aldemar*, from whom she did not expect a resolution so far contrary to his Father's purposes; and beholding him with eyes that plainly shewed, that she had not utterly abolished that acknowledgment which she owed to his former services: *Sir*, said she, *it becomes me not to abuse your generosity, nor to desire, that for me you should expose your self to the anger of the King your Father: but since in the liberty which you give me, you desire to know what I intend to do, I must tell you, Sir, that all my thoughts are fixed upon the preservation of my Father; and that instead of going to seek a Sanctuary in Denmark, where I might chance to find one, I rather study how I may have the freedom to offer my life to ransom Gifulphus, if the King your Father will accept it. The Gods, replied the Prince, preserve us from any such necessity: for I will sooner suffer death my self, than let you go to seek it, where you will infallibly find it without reaping any benefit thereby. We shall obtain our lives much more easily, while we are at liberty, than if we were in the King my Father's power, and though I make no question but he will grant me that delay which I have requested, yet I dare not rely farther upon my credit, to hope for more: and therefore instead of going near him, the better way will be to get as far off from him as we can, and that I land you in Jutland some two or three days hence, at what time the Danish Army will be advanced into the Country. There it is that I shall find means to accomplish a design which I have thought upon, for the liberty of Gifulphus; and if the success answer not my hopes, there is nothing which I will leave unessay'd, to repair the injury which I have done you, and to let you understand what I suffer in my heart for your afflictions.* *Melismtha* was very unwilling to consent to what *Aldemar* propos'd, neither believing it to be just to abuse such generous intentions, or to be engaged to her enemies for such great obligations. On the other side she was assur'd, that she ought to leave nothing neglected to preserve her Father; and it was that consideration

which

which made her overcome all difficulties, which at another time would not have permitted her to do the same. She turn'd toward the Prince with a pensive look, and beholding him with all the marks of a troubled mind. *I know very well*, said she, *that I ought not to give my consent to any resolutions that may be to your prejudice. But what ought I not to do for my Father's life? and what should I be able to say for my self, should I refuse any likelihood of its preservation? I once more own my self beholding to you for it, and I am willing to receive it at your hands, though not happy enough to merit your good intentions. You might perhaps do better to let an unfortunate Virgin perish, upon whom the Heavens have shewn'd for so many years together; but if that be not your purpose, dispose of my life, you and the Gods who have delivered it into your hands.* At these last words, notwithstanding all the constancy of *Melisinthæ*, she could not forbear to shed some tears: And the Prince, who, if we may so say, receiv'd them all into his heart, looking upon her with a behaviour that easily discover'd his torment. *Yes Madam*, said he, *I shall take care of your life, since you trust me with it, and would it might please the Gods that mine were not expos'd to greater misfortunes than can threaten yours: In the mean time, if it be possible, give some respite to your grief: And assure your self, that to dry up your tears, I will willingly expend all my blood.* Concluding these words, he bid her good night, leaving her with her attendants in the Cabbin, which he had quitted, to take some rest himself after a day of so much labour.

After that fatal interview, wherein he wholly lost his Liberty, he suffered all that love could make a heart suffer, that was too deeply sensible thereof: For besides what he felt through the strange Effect of that violent Tempest that had so cruelly separated him from *Melisinthæ*, without giving him time to know who she was, and less hope ever to see her again; he had very rigorously prov'd, not only the severity of her absence, but the loss of his hopes, which was far more grievous and terrible. He lov'd, and lov'd with a violent passion, not knowing whom he lov'd. He had affected her above all things, and it was under this affection, that his soul continually labour'd; but if he had receiv'd any satisfaction, contrary to his expectation, yet it was an unhappy and cruel satisfaction, and perhaps he had reason to have wish'd, for the happiness of his life, that he had eternally been unacquainted with the fair cause of his sufferings. The torments, which till then, had turmoil'd his thoughts, might perhaps have something common with these other afflictions, to which the hearts of Lovers are liable; and probably he might not be the first that had lov'd without knowing the cause of his Love: But by this fatal acquaintance he saw himself expos'd to all that his evil Fortune could bring upon him, or rather he saw himself overwhelm'd in an Abyss of misery, where his reason forsook him, not being able to shew him any way how to get out. All the love which he had could not keep him from being sensible of somewhat of shame, for loving that person, who, as the general report went, had either slain his Brother her self, or been the cause of his death. The danger which threatned her during the King's life, and the sorrow he had for sending her Father into Captivity, and exposing him to a manifest danger, added a mortal fear to the rest of his disquiet, and well understanding the severity of *Gisulphus*; and his implacable hatred of the *Saxon* Kings, he had some cause to be jealous that the Memory of his first Services, would not blot out the Injuries which he had done him; and that though he should pardon what he had caus'd him to suffer under the Chains of the *Saxon* King, if he should prove so happy as to free him, yet that he would never consent to grant him *Melisinthæ*. To this consideration he added, that though the King were willing to consent, yet it was not wholly in his power, it being the common report that he was engaged to the *Danish* King, in whom he plac'd all his hope, and on whom he solely reli'd, on his Brothers behalf.

This last thought intermixing jealousy with his other passions, was not the least important that troubled him: And when after all the obstructions, which oppos'd themselves to his happiness; he considered that he had a Rival, and such a Rival, who had all the likelihood of being happy to his prejudice, since he had besides the advantages of his services; the inclination of *Gisulphus*, and perhaps those of *Melisinthæ* favourable to him: He could not find in all his courage, wherewith constantly to support this last effect of his evil Fortune. However, certain it is, that it was not his jealousy that most tormented him that night: And therefore seeing that that mischief, which was nearest at hand, and which at present most threatned him, ought to prepossess his care, rather than that which was farther off, and which time and his own courage might more easily remedy; he employ'd the greatest part of his industry about *Gisulphus*, how he might defend him from the dangers that threatned him, and by what means to gain his liberty. He knew he was to begin there, for that so long as *Gisulphus* was in prison, and in that danger, whereinto he himself had thrown him, he durst not only not open his lips to *Melisinthæ*, to tell her what he suffer'd for her sake

fake, but could not well appear in her presence, guilty as he was of the just cause of her grief.

The fear he had to displease the King his Father, though it were very considerable, yet it was the least thing which he stopp'd at : And though at another time he might have beheld his anger as something too terrible for him ; yet now when the life of *Melisimba*, which seem'd absolutely to depend upon her Fathers, was concern'd, he laid aside all other considerations, he prepar'd himself without any hesitation, to undergo the most cruel disgrac that could happen to him : provided he might thereby restore *Melisimba* that comfort which he had taken from her, and that he might be look'd upon by her as her Friend, and not as her Enemy. He ponder'd upon the means the greatest part of the Night : And when he thought he had met with what he sought for, he not only felt some repose and intermission of his trouble, but he also perceiving the glimmering of some hopes that one day he should not be so unhappy, as he fear'd for himself, but that by the merit of his person, the advantages of his Birth, the Dignity to which he was advanc'd by the death of both his Brothers, he might at length prevail over *Melisimba*, and overcome the obstinacy of *Gisulphus*. For some intervals of time he also had some reason to delight himself with a pleasing flattery, and to judge by the reflexions that he had made, upon all that appear'd in the Countenance, in all the discourses, in all the actions of *Melisimba*, that she had no disaffection toward him ; and that if at the first meeting she had testifi'd as much acknowledgement as he could desire, in the last she had not manifested all the indignation, nor all the displeasure, which he had just cause to have fear'd from the order of his birth, or the imprisonment of her Father. In this turmoil of different thoughts, which sometimes comforted him, sometimes tormented him by intervals, he spent the whole night without sleep, and rose in the morning in such a condition, that you might easily perceive in his countenance the difference, between his morning discontent, and the troubles which perplex'd him when he went to bed.

While he waited till the Princess was ready to be seen, he gave some order about business ; but it was with such a discomposedness of his mind, that thereby 'twas an easie thing to discern the condition he was in ; and while he was thus employ'd, he receiv'd news by a Vessel dispatch'd from the Shore, that *Sinibald* in three days would enter *Jutland*, where *Sigimer*, who was one of the prime Nobility among the *Jutlanders* for his birth, and in whom *Gisulphus* had the great assurance for his fidelity, was got before into Arms with some Regiments of Natural *Jutlanders*, who for their faithfulness to their Prince, had fled from the *Saxon* Dominions, out of their Native Country, and were retir'd into *Denmark* ; and that with those Forces he had surpris'd *Gelasiz*, which is one of the most important Places in that Province, not above six miles distance from the Sea, and put the *Saxon* Garrison to the Sword, and that he had there fortifi'd himself, expecting the arrival of *Sinibald*, making daily incursions to the very Walls of the other Garrisons, and taking all opportunities to distress them. The Prince having receiv'd this news, kept himself silent for a while, as one that had his thoughts fix'd upon some strong imagination, and by and by turning himself toward us very pleasantly and calmly : *I do not believe*, said he, *that if this place be so strong, as they say it is, that we shall be able to retake it by force, before the arrival of the King with his army : But it is not impossible for us to reduce it without the loss of one man, and I have thought upon a way that perhaps might take effect.* He said no more, but presently understanding that he might visit the Princess without disturbance, he went to her Cabbin ; and when he entred he trembled all over, and look'd like one that was to appear rather before a Master or a Judge than before his Prisoner : He observ'd, by the eyes and behaviour of *Melisimba*, that she had taken as little rest as he ; nor was it any wonder to him, that the grief and sorrow which she labour'd under, had so disturb'd her rest. He sought also in her eyes what he could find of his own Fortune : where if he did not see there what he desired, yet did he not seem to find either too much cruelty, or too much disdain. In accosting her, he desired pardon of her for the inconvenience which she suffer'd upon the rude Element, to which she was confin'd : And the Princess having heard him with her usual sweetness : *I must accustom my self*, said she, *to greater hardships, and I shall freely undergo them without making any complaint, or without bearing any ill will to them, that have caus'd them, so I might but save the life of my Father.* *I hope we shall*, reply'd the Prince, *for Fortune, favourable to my intention, promotes the execution of a design, which I have contriv'd for that purpose, and upon which I do relye, as the most assured means.* Having spoken these words, after a short silence, he demanded of the Princess what *Sigimer* was, and how he stood with the Prince of *Jutland* : to which the Princess making answer, that he was one of the Prime Nobility of *Jutland*, and one whom for his inviola-

ble fidelity *Gisulphus* had in most esteem; the Prince told her how that he had taken *Gelasia* by surprise, and ask'd her if she thought that he had so much kindness for her, to receive her into that place with eight or ten men only; of which number perhaps himself might be one. *Melisimba* beheld *Aldemar* for some time, without returning him any reply; but at length, Sir, said she, *I do not question but that Sigimer would willingly receive me with a greater number of men than what you speak of, and I am well assur'd that he would do a great deal more for me than that: But I cannot understand, of what advantage that will be for my Father's preservation.* You shall find that in the conclusion, reply'd the Prince, in the mean while, said he smiling, *do not you fear that I intend to surprize the place, to put it again into my Father's possession. Instead of taking any thing from you, I intend to restore Jutland into your hands at the price of my blood; nor will I enter into such a Place, but in such a condition as may give no occasion of jealousy to Sigimer. You give me none at all,* reply'd the Princess, *and you may well judge that it is not for the preservation of a Town, that I would conceive the least suspicion of you, since my life and Fortune are in your hands, and that it is only by your means that I hope the preservation of my Father. But most sure it is, that I cannot apprehend, how that which you desire of Sigimer, can any way advantage it. You shall apprehend it suddenly,* reply'd the Prince, *and that it is only to advance my design without obstruction, and that I may remove that difficulty which you talk of, of exposing my self to the displeasure of the King my Father: You shall see how I will manage this affair, and all things shall be so carried, that Sigimer shall have no suspicion.* The Princess consented to *Aldemar's* request, without endeavouring to inform her self any farther of his intention.

And for that the wind was favourable to carry them toward *Gelasia*, the situation whereof many that were about the Prince understood, and knew the entrance into the Harbour; we sail'd to the nearest shore with that speed, that in few hours we discover'd it; and in short, we got into Harbour in a very good hour, so as to land just before Sun set. Coming near the shore, the Prince, who in the Execution of his Design, was to observe some formalities to avoid the discovery, that the Souldiers might think he had a design to surprize the Town, he land'd, about two miles from the place, two thousand men, ordering the rest to attend his commands a Ship-board; and having plac'd these two thousand Souldiers at a post which he chose, with a command not to stir, till he order'd them to advance; he desired the Princess to take horse with her women and some men, who particularly attended on her, and immediately with ten or twelve men only, of which number he was pleas'd to make me one; we march'd toward *Gelasia*, being guided by one of *Melisimba's* servants: If they that were men experienc'd in war, were not a little astonish'd to see the Prince act in that manner, at a time, and in a Country, wherein he could not use too much caution; we who accompanied him, were yet far more surpris'd at his proceedings; and I being of that small train, could not apprehend his intentions no more than the rest, though I began now to perceive a good part of the effect, which *Melisimba's* beauty had wrought in his soul; so that we followed him with a silence that sufficiently testified our admiration: before we came near the place, some Horsemen appear'd, who without adventuring near kept at a convenient distance to observe our March and our number; and presently after, upon the report which they made, a great Body presented themselves full in our way, who seeing us March directly towards them, as persons that were no way afraid, yet neither prepar'd to fight, they came up to us in very good order: But when their Captain was about to speak to us, *Aldemar* shew'd him *Melisimba*, and nam'd her name to him: At which name so belov'd, and so ador'd by the *Jutlanders*; and at the sight of her, who was presently known by the Captain who led that Squadron, being the Son of *Sigimer*, all the *Jutlanders* made a great shout, and all the chiefest in Quality of the whole Party, alighting, came and paid their obedience to the Princess with all the joy imaginable. Immediately the Son of *Sigimer* sent to advertise his Father of the arrival of the Princess, and the Messenger made so much haste, that before the Princess could get to the Gates of the City, *Sigimer* very honourably attended by the best men of the City, came forth to meet her, and receiv'd her as his Sovereign, or rather as a Goddess: *Melisimba* return'd him many kind expressions, and many thanks for his fidelity; and *Sigimer* manifested the joy which he had to see her, at a time when he so little expected it; with all the demonstrations thereof imaginable. And moreover, he humbly thank'd the Gods, that had brought her thither at such a time, when he had no reason to fear any Enemy; and when, upon the arrival of Prince *Smibald*, whom they should see in two days at the head of fifty thousand men, he should see her Mistress of all *Jutland*, as her Ancestors had been before her.

But by and by *Sigimer's* joy was cruelly abated, when he began to think of *Gisulphus*. And it was not without many thousand tears, that he testifi'd to the Princess the sorrow which

which he had for his Imprisonment, and the fear of that danger which threaten'd his life: *Meliffintha* answer'd the tears of *Sigimer* with tears of her own, and only contenting her self to tell him that she hop'd that Heaven would deliver him; she enter'd the City without discovering the Prince of the Saxons, whose mind she did not know, and who was look'd upon by *Sigimer*, only as one of her train, though his person were sufficiently remarkable, and without question had been taken notice of, if he had not pass'd among us for one of our fellow-servants: Till then *Meliffintha* was ignorant what *Aldemar* intended, at which she seem'd to be much troubled: But when she was in her Apartment, whither *Sigimer* had conducted her, and that our Prince took notice, that *Sigimer*, after he had excus'd to the Princess the bad Lodging which she would find in a place of War, and a Garrison, where the Saxons had put all things out of order; cast his eyes upon her more circumspectly than he had done before, asking the Princess withal how she came to escape out of *Aldemar*'s hands, he gave us a wink to retire out of the Chamber; by which action, and by the following obedience that we yielded, he thought him to be our Master, and judged by all appearances that he saw in his person, that he was of no ordinary Quality. He began to look upon with some respect and esteem, when the Prince addressing himself to *Sigimer*; after he had turn'd to *Meliffintha*, with a behaviour that seem'd to crave leave to speak; *Sigimer*, said he, *the Prince of Jutland is in the power of the King of the Saxons, and there is nothing to be omitted that may conduce to his preservation: I am Aldemar, and that's enough to tell ye, I am your Captive, as Gifulphus is the King my Father's Prisoner. And you have no other way to save his life, or obtain his liberty, but by offering to the King in exchange his own Son for Gifulphus; and by giving him to understand that just as he deals by Gifulphus, you will deal by his Son. I cannot tell whether he will prefer my safety before his own revenge: But I have some reason to hope; and I verily believe, that he will not lose the only Son he hath, merely to satisfy himself with the destruction of a single Enemy. You may send him news of my imprisonment, and your design: And you may use me after the same manner, as he uses the Prince. See, Madam,* (so he continu'd his speech, turning himself toward *Meliffintha*) *the reparation which I am about to make for the injury I have done you; and if I knew any other way more certain to deliver the Prince of Jutland, though it were more hazardous than this, I would most gladly embrace it: And with all my heart I would venture any thing more precious than my life for your satisfaction.* Thus spake *Aldemar* to *Sigimer* and *Meliffintha*; and both the one and the other were so astonish'd at his discourse and behaviour, that instead of interrupting him, they remain'd a good while as if they had been dumb, without being able to answer him: *Sigimer*, who understood nothing of *Aldemar*'s Love, and who could never have imagin'd him to be the Prince of Saxony, seeing so little likelihood thereof; was the more astonish'd. But because it was not for him to discourse before the Princess, concerning the Prince's Proposition, he held his peace, only looking upon him, to see whether he could find in his eyes the intention of his thoughts. But *Meliffintha*, who by reason of the knowledge which she had of the Prince's love, had the less cause to wonder; first recover'd her self, and beholding *Aldemar* with eyes that in the midst of their acknowledgement discover'd discontent. "How Prince, said she, was this then the design which you had to preserve my Father?" "If I knew a better way, replied the Prince, I would most certainly follow it, though I were sure to meet my present death. But the Gods are my witnesses, that I know but only this, and that I look upon this as the only means to redeem your Father." "Though it be the most assured, replied *Meliffintha*, yet it is not the honestest, nor the justest way for us to accept; and though I bare as great a hatred to you, as I did toward *Gondemond*, I would not entertain a profer, to which I cannot hearken, without committing a piece of Treachery unworthy of my Birth and Courage." "Then you desire not the preservation of your Father's life, reply'd *Aldemar*, and you make your self guilty of his death, if you withstand the only means which you have to save it: My Father's life is more dear to me, reply'd *Meliffintha*, than my own; but I would preserve it by ways less dishonourable; and less criminal: For though yet you were our lawful prisoner by the fate of War, and not by an act of your own Generosity, which we dare not abuse, I am not to look upon you as the Son of the Saxon King; when I call to mind that it is to you that my Father and my self already owe our lives, and that we had perhaps been expos'd to suffer something worse than death, had you not rescu'd us from the Pyrates; You owe much more, reply'd the Prince, to your Father, than to him that had you that service: And I will add this moreover, that you save him, without injuring me; since in his Liberty I shall find my own, and that in becoming your Prisoner, I am not expos'd to any danger, from whence you cannot redeem me when you please." "I cannot tell you, reply'd *Meliffintha*, whether I shall be always Mistress of so much power, and there may

fall out accidents that perhaps may alter my inclinations. When that falls out, (*replied the Prince, beholding her with a passionate look*) will you envy me the honour of having exposed my self, to any thing of danger for the love of you? Or would you have me believe to my mischief, that the reluctance which you testify against an offer so advantageous to you, is rather an effect of the ill will which you bear me; than of your generosity altogether unseasonable, when it pleads against your Father's preservation? The Prince uttered these words in so sad a manner, and with so many Signs of love and grief mixt together, that *Melismtha* was deeply sensible thereof: But when with some tears that flowed from her fair eyes, upon the apprehension of her misfortune; she expressed the dislike she had of being beholding to remedies contrary to her inclination; *Sigimer*, who had been silent all this while, and in whom the love of his Prince was more prevalent than any other consideration, taking upon him to speak, and addressing himself to *Melismtha*; "Madam, said he, you have reason to make some scruple, of accepting the proposition of the Prince of the Saxons: Nor is it just that in submitting himself to your power, out of his only desire to serve you, that he should fall into the condition of real Prisoners. But now that the life of a Father, whom you have always held most dear, lies at stake; you cannot refuse the means which the Prince puts into your hands to save him, without being guilty of a great error: And you ought to embrace it so much the more willingly, because you no way endanger the Prince's life, seeing there is no likelihood to the contrary, but that it will be altogether at your disposal. *Melismtha* held her eyes for a long time fix'd upon the ground, without being able to determine what resolution to take: but at length looking upon the Prince with a behaviour full of tenderness; "Since, said she, your will and my evil fortune constrain me, I consent to that seeming appearance of your imprisonment, which may restore me my Father: but it is only the shew of an imprisonment which I accept: For though I should be so unhappy as not to recover my Father by this means; I would rather consent to my death, than that you should fall into any other greater mischief. These words did so rejoice the passionate Prince, that the presence of *Sigimer* could not debar him from casting himself at the Princess's feet, and embracing her knees with such a behaviour, that *Sigimer* made no farther doubt of what he had conceived before in his mind. *Melismtha* blushing withal raised him up, not letting him discern any thing in her eyes to the contrary, but that she might at length be sensible of this fair proof of his love. Presently they resolved that to take away all suspicion of the truth, especially from the King of the Saxons, that it was his voluntary act to become a prisoner, they order'd him a Guard, and observ'd all the formalities of a seeming strictness usual upon such occasions: And the Prince the more to oblige them to it, assured them that he more feared the anger of the King, than the danger of being neglected and forsaken by him, in case he should know him to be a voluntary prisoner and out of all jeopardy. *Sigimer* at the same time sent for a Guard, and when he had placed them at the door of the Chamber, the Prince sent for us to come to him, and speaking to one of his Pages with a countenance apparently sad; "Go, said he, tell *Alderic* (that was the name of the Officer in chief, whom he had left to command the two thousand men which he had landed) I command him to retire a Ship-board, and that all the Fleet return home, not being able to reduce this place to set me free, nor to keep the Field against the powerful Army of the Danes, which are marching into the Country. *Alderic* may tell the King, that in going about to surprize this place I was surpris'd my self, and that through the ill success of a young mans rash attempt, I am a prisoner to the Enemy, and destin'd to the same fortune that shall be shewed *Gisulphus*. With those instructions he sent him away with one of the Princess's Attendants, to whom the ways were better known but with order to return again with the same person. As we were but nine or Ten that kept with him, whom he had chosen among all his Servants to be near him, out of the confidence he had in their fidelity, we were with less trouble always about him: and though we knew our selves to be prisoners, yet such was our affection for him, and such were the charms of his person, that we were all unanimously contented to stay, and we thought our selves honoured by the choice he had made of us, to be companions of his fortune. Though he were appearingly a prisoner, and perhaps by *Sigimer's* order not conformable to that of the Princess more than she believed him to be: He was however attended with all manner of service and respect, and with all the observance that he could have commanded in his Father's Court. Then it was that among all those that were about him; (of whom the greatest part had more reason to have expected the same advantage) that he reposed the greatest trust in my self, and that he then discovered the particular secret that lay concealed in his breast. Then it was that I understood from his own relation, what he had suffered from the first view of *Melismtha*, the particulars of what discourse had

had passed between us, such as I have already recounted to you, and what had befall'n him since that fatal meeting, by reason of that imperious passion that was become the sole Mistress of his heart. From the knowledge which I had thereof, I ceased to wonder at many things that had surpris'd me; like those of which I was a witness some days before: And for the honour which he did me to trust me so far with the secret of his imprisonment, and with what ever else had befall'n him of greater importance in his life; I engaged myself to his service with a passion most invincible, and a fidelity most inviolable.

All this while his imprisonment was the most pleasing that might be, though not so much for his gentle usage, as for the happiness which he had to see *Melisimba* every day, and indeed at all hours that discretion would permit. In short, that fair Princess who did not forget, the great obligations which she had received from him, and who perhaps found in his person, sufficient ground for thoughts more favourable, than only those of acknowledgment; beheld him with all manner of kindness: And if he found her not so sensible of his love as he desired, at least he had this advantage, that she endured the testimonies that he gave thereof, and that by a compliance to which he had oblig'd her, rather than out of a natural disposition; he had prevail'd with her to hear him discourse of his affection. That was his greatest happiness, only this afflicted him, that though he conjectur'd by the behaviour of the Princess, that her inclinations were not contrary to his, yet he was no less convinced that those inclinations, would however in the end be subordinate to her Father's will. Notwithstanding, he remained sufficiently content with the first days of his imprisonment: But when he understood that *Sinibald* was advanced into the Country, and was within a few days march of the Town where we were, perhaps out of a design to visit *Melisimba*, of whom he was passionately enamour'd, and of whom by the promise of the King of the *Danes* and the Prince of *Jutland*, he expected the entire enjoyment; Jealousie awaking in his breast, so excessively tormented him, that his affliction shew'd it self apparently in his countenance: and the Princess having perceived it as soon as we, besought him to tell her the cause in so obliging a manner, that easily manifest'd how deeply she was concern'd in his disquiet. *Aldemar* was unwilling to deny her, and therefore after a few sighs; *Hitherto Madam*, said he, *I did not think that I had done any thing in your behalf, but what was very inconsiderable, and that to restore the liberty of Prince Gisulphus, I ought to have exposed my self to some far greater danger than this of an imprisonment: But as pleasing and as honourable as it is, there is something in it more severe and harsh than you are aware of, and I fear you will have reason to remember one day, that to serve you I have put my self into the power of my Rival. I do not well understand what it is you mean* (replied the Princess with a smile) *nor can I believe that whatsoever pretence you make, Sigimer can be your Competitor. All that behold you,* replied the Prince, *are in jeopardy to be my Rivals, but I confess it is not Sigimer that troubles my thoughts, nor did I think but that you would have easily guessed him to be Sinibald of whom I gave you the hint. As you are not in the hands of Sinibald,* replied *Melisimba*, *so could I not conjecture that you spake of him: And as I am ignorant that you two have the same designs and the same inclinations, I could not believe that you had any design to call him Rival. How Madam,* (replied the Prince beholding her with a passionate look) *do you believe that I have less love for you than Sinibald, and that I pretend less than he to the honour of serving and adoring you till death? I know not well,* (replied the Princess blushing when she spake) *what to resolve or what judgment to make in this particular: But I would willingly owe to your virtue alone whatever you have done for us, and as it is most probable that we are not born one for the other*——Here the Prince interrupted her, “Alas! said he, if I am not born for you, I am born for an untimely grave: And without doubt I must cease to live, that very instant that I cease to be yours. But Madam, (so he continued beholding her with a languishing aspect) can you be so cruel as to forbid me to hope? or can you forget that hope is a happiness that attends the most miserable to the grave? “As it is not for me to give you any hope, replied the Princess, so neither is it for me to deny it you: But you must wicah remember, that it is not either by our inclinations, or our own private thoughts that we are to be govern'd, but by our fortune and by the will of our Parents. “As for my inclinations, replied *Aldemar*, I know they will never submit, either to Paternal Authority, or the Empire of fortune. But as for yours, concluding with a sigh, I dare not hope that they will be ever favourable to me. And I fear much more your inclinations, than either the power of fortune or any other obstruction which the enmity of our Parents can raise in my way. “However they are strong enough, replied the Princess, to make you confess that I spake the truth, when I told you that 'tis very probable that we were not born one for another: And as you know the intentions of your Father, I believe that as for mine, his resolutions are so fix'd, as for ever to shut his eyes to all advantages, though never so tru-

ly visible, in any design that you should have for his daughter. “As for my Father, replied *Aldemar*, I have great hopes that reason, and his great desire to preserve the only Son he has left remaining, may allay his obstinacy: And for the Prince of *Jutland* I do not despair, by those services wherewith I may oblige him, to vanquish the ill will which he bears to our house, and to bring him to take it into consideration that I am not *Gondemond*, though I am the Son of the King of the *Saxons*: and that I never was concern’d in those injuries that have drawn your hatred upon us. But it is from you Madam that I fear all my unhappiness: Nor will my Courage fail me to hope for a Victory over all other difficulties, if you your self prove not more favourable to the fortune of *Sinibald*, than to that of the unhappy *Aldemar*. “I have but even now given you to understand, replied the Princess, that so long as I lived I would be always obedient to my Father’s will, and that I have strictly observed that rule, in all that has hitherto pass’d upon the proposals of the King of *Denmark* and of *Sinibald*. “That’s to do all that can be expected, replied the Prince, for that is in the end to bestow your person upon *Sinibald*. Though I should be still in hopes yet, were not you more kindly disposed toward my Rival: For there is something already fall’n out, and many other things may happen in the course of the Prince of *Jutland*’s affairs, which may disengage him from his promise, though it were true that he had made it. “I am able to say this, replied the Princess, that it was not my inclination that mov’d at all in that affair, and that they hardly took any notice of my consent. However it is true that I made no opposition, nor will I oppose as long as I live, what is impos’d upon me by my duty. “But now, replied *Aldemar*, this happy Lover begins to approach, he comes to see a Rival in captivity, who might cross his fortune were his fortune equal, and it will be to his happiness that I must be sacrificed, and not for the preservation of *Gisulphus*, nor for the satisfaction of *Melisantha*. If you think that *Sinibald* will be able to derive any advantage from your imprisonment, I advise you not to tarry here but to return to your Father, without having any cause to fear that your withdrawing your self, shall any way blot out of my remembrance, those obligations which I owe to your generous endeavours. “I would not stay, replied the Prince, were the King of *Jutland* at liberty, but as I have no other way to restore him to his freedom, than by remaining in the power of my Enemies; I will rather expose my self to all the cruelty, which the fortune of my Rival can make me suffer, than forsake *Gisulphus* in the danger wherein I plunged him, through my own unhappy Error. “In exchange of this generous resolution, replied the Princess, I will debar *Sinibald* from making any advantage of your imprisonment: and perhaps you shall find little reason to be jealous, of your being sacrificed to his happiness. “Were I sufficiently happy, (replied the Prince transported with joy) to dare the presumption of hoping, that in the favour of a Prince who dies for love of you, and with whom your condition would be no way inferior, or less prosperous than with the Brother of the King of the *Danes*———Here *Melisantha* interrupting him; “How, said she, can you have any such kindness for a miserable Virgin, detested of all the world for the report of her cruelty, and would you be so venturous as to espouse her, who according to the general opinion of the *Saxons*, is the reputed Murtheress of *Gondemond*? “If *Gondemond* suffered death, replied the Prince, he well enough deserved it: And he had been more than happy, if in truth according to what most believe, he had received it at your fair hands. So that it is not the fear of a Destiny like his; that can divert me from my purpose: and I dare dye as well as he in the prosecution, but not by arming either yours or the hands of *Gisulphus* against my life. “My Father and I, replied the Princess, know how to make the distinction: for indeed we have as much reason to esteem you and to account our selves happy in your service; as we had reason to abominate *Gondemond*. “With that, replied *Aldemar*, perhaps it becomes me not that I should hope to be more happy than he: Nor is it my wish that either fortune or your inclinations should be more favourable to me: At least there is little likelihood, said *Melisantha*, that the King your Father will consent to what he desired for *Gondemond*: and seeing that *Melisantha* who at that time was guilty of no offence toward him, is now become too hateful to him to accept her for his daughter. The Prince was about to have made a reply, when *Sigimer* entered the Chamber to bring her News, that *Sinibald* having taken by onset, one place of strength that opposed his entry into *Jutland*; he was become Master of another by composition: and that he would that day quarter within a days march of *Gelasia*, from whence on the morrow it was very probable, he would endeavour to give her a visit. Though *Aldemar* had prepared himself to receive this news, he could not hear it without changing colour: And *Melisantha* who perceived it, gave him an occasion to discover some discontent on the other side in her own countenance: Yet she was willing to conceal it before *Sigimer*, and

and beginning her speech with a smile, that shewed however as if it had been forced: *I fear me*, said she to *Sigimer*, *we have not free leave to be glad before Aldemar, for the prosperous beginning of our success; and indeed modesty forbids in his presence to shew any signs of joy, which are to him rather cause of sorrow.* Now for that the Prince would not express himself before *Sigimer*, he made no reply at all to the discourse of the Princess, being contented only to let her see by a look accompanied with sighs, that it was the visit of *Sinibald* that he feared, and not the progress of his Arms.

That fear was the reason that he rested very little the next night. Nor was the following day less troublesome to him, for as *Sigimer* well foresaw, *Sinibald* arrived much sooner than he was expected. The Prince was with *Melisintha* when she was inform'd that *Sinibald* was at the door, with a fair retinue of the *Danish* Nobility, and a great part of the Officers of the Army, who attended him to render the pomp of his visit the more magnificent; whereupon the Princess, understanding by his eyes the anguish of his mind, desired him to let her know whether he would see *Sinibald*, or whether he would retire while she received his visit. The Prince considered a long time what course to take; for if on the one hand, the envy he bore his Rival obliged him to avoid his sight, in a place where he appeared with all the advantages of a happy Lover, and of a Lover destined to enjoy *Melisintha*: on the other side, the unwillingness which he had to give him place, importun'd him to stay with *Melisintha*, and to disturb by his presence a great part of the joy which the other had promised himself in seeing her. But when he remembered that he was to act the part of a prisoner, and that the Princess, though she permitted him all that freedom, would perhaps be troubled that *Sinibald* should find him with her, at a time when perhaps he thought him more closely secured; and fearing that his presence should cause some unnecessary reservedness in the reception which she was obliged to give him, he made a low obeysance to the Princess, and retired to his Chamber. I shall not say any thing of the visit which *Sinibald* gave to *Melisintha*, or of the discourse which they had together, of which I never had any knowledge, neither is it pertinent to our purpose; only this I must tell you, that after he had stay'd some time with *Melisintha*, he thought himself obliged in point of Honour to visit the Prince of the *Saxons*; and though he look'd upon him as his Rival, and perhaps understood beyond suspicion, that his voluntary imprisonment, and the liberty of *Melisintha*, were but the effects of that love which he had for her, rather than for any other cause which they alledged, with less appearance of truth. Yet what he owed to the Dignity of such a Prince, and the fame that his great reputation had raised him, made him lay aside all unkind thoughts, and having sent *Sigimer* before, to know if it were convenient, he enter'd his Chamber with a good part of that fair train that attended him. Being near the Prince with the rest of my companions, I saw *Sinibald*, and observed him very curiously; he was a Prince of a noble carriage, a fair proportion, and a lofty aspect, about thirty years of age, Renown spake very advantageously on his side: and it was said that he had performed many famous Actions in foreign Countries, where some discontent had made him lead a good part of his life; and that if he had been in *Denmark* at what time the *Saxons* made war upon it, he might have given to his Country as great an assistance, as it received from the valour of Prince *Viridomar*.

As *Aldemar* was naturally endued with entire principles of Honour and courtesie, at that time methought he appeared more constant in his resolution than ordinary; and though he entertain'd *Sinibald* to the height of civility, yet he seem'd to carry himself more haughtily, than perhaps he would have done, had he not been a prisoner. *Sinibald* who had not the same expectancy to wear a Crown, as *Aldemar*, and who understood well the distinction which that difference of Birth had made betwixt them, strictly tyed himself to that observance which became the interview, and was not wanting to pay to the Prince that respect which was his due. We observed also that his presence had in a manner surpris'd him, and that whatever he might have heard reported concerning his person, did nothing at all diminish his admiration upon the sight of his person.

After the first complements that usually pass upon interviews of the same nature, *Sinibald* gracefully address'd himself to Prince *Aldemar*, telling him, that though he were infinitely troubled to see a Prince of his merit in the custody of his enemies, yet he could not but look upon this unhappiness of his, as an effect of his good fortune. And that in the design which he had to re-establish *Jutland* under the jurisdiction of its lawful Prince, he could not have freed it from a greater obstruction of its quiet, than it would have found in the opposition of his valour. *Aldemar*, notwithstanding his inward rancor, could not choose but kindly hearken to this discourse of *Sinibald*, and to pay him what he had lent, he told him, that against the obstruction of his valour, all opposition was too feeble, and

that

that in such an attempt as he had undertaken, he would most certainly meet with greater difficulties, than what he might have found in vanquishing a young man like him, little experienced in war, but that he would probably meet with others able to oppose him; and that he should find his words true, by the event of his success against enemies more formidable than himself: and that it was in vain for him to flatter himself with hopes, that from his hand alone *Melisintha* was to receive the Crown of her Ancestors. *Sinibald* smiled at this discourse of Prince *Aldemar*, yet keeping himself within the bounds of that respect which he was resolved to observe towards him: *I confess*, said he, *that the honour of restoring the Crown to Melisintha, is an honour to be coveted by all the Princes in the world; but as there are none more devoted to her service than my self, I have hopes that fortune will prosper my good intention with a success answerable.* All good intentions, replied *Aldemar*, are not always favoured by fortune: and as it greatly concerns me to wish that you may not have all the success which you desire, I also hope that you will find more powerful opposition than you are aware of. I had some reason to fear it, replied the Danish Prince, were you to fight at the head of your Father's Army; but since they are deprived of so powerful an assistance, you must give me leave not much to doubt the victory. Were we to encounter one another, replied the Saxon Prince, I am persuaded we should put our selves to a considerable trouble, and I believe, that to which side soever the victory should fall, neither of us would be ashamed of being conquered. But as I do not at all despair, that such a thing may come to pass, be pleased to defer till that time the decision of an argument which only the chance of war can determine. *Sinibald* would no longer enlarge upon that subject, for fear of exasperating *Aldemar*, by whose countenance he found that he might be easily provoked. And after some farther discourse upon some things of less moment, he took his leave, telling the Prince, that he would advise the Princes to consider what was due to his Dignity, and his Merit; and that for his part, he would render him all the service, which in the condition wherein he was, he could expect from a Prince that understood how to respect his virtue. This is the sum of what passed at their first interview.

The next day *Aldemar*, who had the liberty, in the view of *Sinibald*, and all the world, to walk about the Castle, return'd him his visit, where all things were carried with extraordinary civility. But the same day meeting again in the Princesses Lodging, taking his observance from the interest which my Prince seemed to have, he grew to be settled in the jealousy which he had of his love, by several signs and tokens; and consequently, from that moment he conceived that hatred against him which is usual among Rivals. That which lay boiling in *Aldemar's* breast against him, was no less: and he thought himself so much the less obliged to dissemble it, by how much he believ'd him the happier of the two, looking upon him as the person that went to deprive him of all his bliss, and make him miserable.

They conferr'd a long time concerning *Gisulphus's* imprisonment, it being *Sinibald's* purpose to put *Melisintha* upon that discourse, to awaken her displeasure against the person that had sent her Father into captivity; and after some time spent upon this Subject, *Sinibald* addressing himself to *Aldemar*: *I fear me*, Sir, said he, *that the confinement of the Prince of Jutland, is not so mild, nor so commodious as yours; and though we may hope that for your sake the King of the Saxons may abate something of his rigour, you must of necessity confess, that there is a fair difference between his Fetters, and Melisintha's Chains.* That which you say, is most true, replied the Prince, and yet in some respect the difference is not so great; for there is hopes of being freed from the chains of the Saxon King, but in *Melisintha's* fetters we abide till death. Then I dare believe, said *Sinibald*, that you are in danger of being a long time a prisoner; and it would be more troublesome to be a prisoner to the Princess, as I find you here, were you not also under that confinement which I imagine. You may very often guess at the truth, replied *Aldemar*, if all your conjectures are as truly grounded upon reason as this; and I believe as well as you, that it is more easie to get out of the prison which you see, than that which you suppose. If this misfortune have befallen you, replied the Danish Prince, I pity your condition more than I did at first; for it is too severe to be a double captive in *Melisintha's* fetters. I do believe, said *Aldemar*, that my misfortunes are sad enough to move compassion; but it is not to you that I ascribe any cause thereof, nor from you that I beg that pity, nor do I find myself touch'd with that acknowledgment, which you may think it deserves. I am always ready to do what I can, replied *Sinibald*, in bewailing those evils of yours, which I am not able to assuage, and where I may be able to afford relief, you may be confident I shall not content my self with a single sorrow. You are too generous, replied the Prince, and I ought not to abuse your intentions; but perhaps you have more reason to be troubled at my last misfortune than the first, seeing that by the first you get an advantage, but by the last you are only engaged in a vexatious turmoil. I know so well

well how to disengage my self, said *Sinibald*, as not to fear any perplexity. Perhaps you never met with the like, (replied *Aldemar* very smartly) but neither in the Princess's presence; nor for me that am a prisoner, is it expedient to say more, especially since we may meet with other opportunities to explain our selves. I expect them as earnestly as you can do, said *Sinibald*, and I take them to be so honourable, as to assure you, that I shall be always joyful to meet them. They had said more if *Melisintha* had not interrupted them, by changing the subject of their discourse, and by letting *Sinibald* perceive in her eyes the distaste she took, to see him so offensive to such a prisoner as *Aldemar*. They met several times after that, and talked with the same briskness, but without going any farther, by reason the Princess took care to hinder it, and out of the fear that either had to displease her.

In the mean time *Sinibald's* jealousy increased to that measure, that he could no longer conceal it. I cannot tell what particular demonstrations he might give of it to *Melisintha*, but he manifested it to the Prince by several signs, whereby he foresaw that he would not long maintain that civility towards him, which he had assured him in the beginning. It was our belief, that he was very much troubled what to do with him; for in one respect, the hatred which he bore him, made him wish that he might be kept as close a prisoner, as if he had been taken in war; or at least, that a part of that liberty which he had, might be taken from him. In another regard, he wish'd that they would send him quite away, not being able, without a great deal of impatience, to suffer his abode so near the Princess, believing, that there he did him more mischief, than he could have done at the head of our Army. I know not what designs he might have put in execution, had he made any longer stay at *Gelasia*, but he was constrained to depart from thence sooner than he desired; for seeing that he had undertaken to expel all the Saxons out of *Jutland*, who possess'd the whole Country, except only three Towns; and for that he also understood that the King was already upon his march to find him out, it was high time for him to repair to his Army, which he did forthwith, having first represented to *Melisintha*, by what we understood after his departure, that if she would not be guilty of the loss of her Father, she should confine *Aldemar* after another manner than she did; that in all probability, the King of the Saxons, seeing himself likely to lose *Jutland*, would take some fatal revenge upon *Gisulphus*, if the fear of losing his Son did not put a stop to his fury; and that she ought not only to deprive *Aldemar* of all opportunity and hope of liberty, otherwise than by an exchange for *Gisulphus*; but also to make him use the more diligence to solicit her Father's freedom, she ought to make his confinement more irksome than hitherto it had been, and to deny him the happiness of her conversation, so delightful to him, to the end he might with more impatience desire enlargement.

After *Sinibald's* departure we received news of the King, by those whom the Prince and *Melisintha* had sent to him, to inform him of *Aldemar's* imprisonment, and to propose his exchange for *Gisulphus*, who reported that the King was transported with joy that *Gisulphus* was taken; and that he had thundered out his displeasure, in threatening what torments he would have inflicted upon him, if the person who was sent from the Prince to beseech him to defer his anger, had not arriv'd to prevent the execution; that the Prince's Letter had wrought the effect that was desired, and that the King, delaying his revenge, had put *Gisulphus* in the hole of the prison, where he used him with all sort of rigour; and that for some days he had fed himself with pleasing hopes, to sacrifice both the Father and the Daughter to the Ghost of *Gondemond*. But soon after, when he received news of the Prince's imprisonment, and the danger he was in to undergo the same misery that *Gisulphus* endured, this joy was suppressed by a most violent grief: in the midst whereof he hardly knew which went nearest to his heart, whether the danger that threatened the life of his Son, or the obstruction of his revenge. At first he was absolutely resolv'd to return *Gisulphus*, for the preservation of his Son, and that he had caused the Prince of *Jutland* to be removed to a more decent prison, and less severe, though he kept as strict a Guard upon him as ever. But at length reflecting upon the particulars, which they had related to him of taking the Prince, causing them to be repeated over and over again, and having better examined the circumstances than he had done before, he found so little of likelihood and conduct in his design, that at length he concluded that his imprisonment could not be other than voluntary, and that through the beauty of *Melisintha* he was infallibly fallen into the same passion, that had been the ruine of his Brother; that he was the more easily persuaded to believe this mischance, because it was no more than he had feared; and that he now made no doubt at all, but that the request which the Prince had made to him, to respite this revenge upon *Gisulphus*, was but an effect of his love for his Daughter: That upon these conjectures, which by little and little from suspicion turn'd to an absolute conviction,

he fell into such a rage against *Aldemar*, which appeared no less violent than his other passions, that he called him a hundred times Traitor, ingrateful and perfidious; and vowed, that he would let him perish a thousand times, rather than he would abandon the revenge of *Gondemond*; that he had detain'd for some days those that were sent, not being resolv'd what answer to return. But that he had dismiss'd them at length with an express command to tell the Prince, that the life of such a perfidious Traytor as himself, was nothing so dear to him, as what he owed to the memory of his Brother; and that if for his Honours sake he were obliged to redeem him, he would redeem him by force of Arms, and not with the liberty of *Cisulphus*.

This was the answer which the Agents of *Aldemar* and *Melisintha* brought back, the recital whereof overwhelm'd them with a sorrow so excessive, that all the force of their courage was but little enough to withstand it. But though *Melisintha's* grief was extraordinary, yet was it more moderate than the Prince's, who refus'd to admit of any consolation, when he call'd to mind, that it was his own act that had plung'd him into a danger from whence he was not able to recover him, he accus'd himself before her, and besought her to throw him into some Dungeon, that he might suffer like her Father, to load him with Irons, and to let his Father understand, that it was in her power to use the utmost extremity towards him, if her Father was not set at liberty. But the generous Princess, afflicted as well to see him take on, as tormented with her own sorrow, on the contrary besought him to retire, and not to draw upon himself the anger of his Father, nicely to pleasure two unfortunate persons, and not to link himself to the misfortune of a House abominated by Heaven, and deliver'd up to all the strokes of celestial vengeance for many years. There were several generous contents and disputes between them upon this subject, till at length the Prince compelled the Princess to submit to his reasons, telling her that his imprisonment would secure the life of her Father, though he might not gain his liberty thereby; that his Father had no more Sons to inherit his Crown, and that however he was at present enraged against him, he would act nothing against her Father's life, while he remained in her power. He desired her therefore to let him venture a second Letter, wherein, after he had confessed the truth, he would implore his pity, and try what he could obtain from his Fatherly affections, which design of his, the Princess well approving in the person of a Son, who might without any dishonour, humble himself to his Father how submissively soever. He dispatch'd away one of his Pages with a Letter to the King, the substance whereof was this.

Prince *Aldemar* to the King of the Saxons.

*S*ir, I confess I am an offender, I confess I am doubly a prisoner to *Melisintha*, and I am fallen into that misfortune so fatal to your House, which you have so much dreaded for my sake. But, Sir, I am perhaps through this misfortune, become more worthy of your pity, than your anger: for I shall be miserable indeed, if by the effect of my over-ruling destiny, where my will has had no power, I must be thus expos'd to all manner of infamy. But, Sir, since you have seen *Melisintha*, since you have experienced the charms of her beauty, by the fatal proofs thereof, will you expose me to this inevitable danger? Or can you think it strange that I have received a wound, seeing that my heart is not invulnerable, and that I am also Brother of *Gondemond*. That which you approv'd, that which you favour'd, that which you desired for *Gondemond's* sake, is that now a crime in me, because that *Melisintha* whom he lov'd in her innocency, is now accus'd for the death of *Gondemond*? But, Sir, you may inform your self from the mouth of *Cisulphus*, he will charge himself with the whole crime, and clear *Melisintha* from having contributed so much as a thought to the death of my Brother: I accuse him not to incense your anger against him, since he can expect no other effects of it, but what may prove fatal to himself, but only Sir to inform you, that in loving *Melisintha*, I do not love the murderers of *Gondemond*; I am therefore less faulty than I have confess'd. And, Sir, you will understand by my Page, that it was not since my last departure from you, that I became a Captive to the beauties of *Melisintha*. I saw her by a fatal accident before, and from that time my heart has been on fire; and when I ran with zeal to obey your commands, and to revenge my Brother's death, when I was preparing to find you *Melisintha*, as I had sent her Father, I found my self fetter'd in her chains, and through that misfortune that took away my liberty, I saw my self unable to dispose of others. Sir, upon this confession that I make of my misfortunes, if there be any affection yet remaining in your

your heart for me, I beg of you the life and liberty of Gifulphus: he can suffer nothing of which I am not guilty. And if I cannot restore to Melisinthā a Father whom I have deprived her of, I will surrender my life to her satisfaction, and pour forth at her feet, all that remains of your illustrious blood in the veins of the only surviving and most unfortunate of all your children.

Having sent away the Page, the Prince continued for some days overwhelmed with such a load of grief, that would certainly have press'd down his life to the grave, had it not been mitigated by the happiness which he enjoyed of *Melisinthā's* company, especially since he enjoyed it with more freedom than he could possibly do while *Sinibald* was in Town. He could not find that either in her countenance, in her discourse, or in her behaviour there appeared any thing to make him have an ill opinion of his fortune, until that the King had so cruelly declared his intentions, and that it was rather the reserv'd discretion of *Melisinthā*, than any distaste or prejudice which she had against him, that for the present harden'd the heart of the Princess against his love and merit. At the same time also he knew well enough, that notwithstanding all the promises of *Gifulphus*, and whatever Articles had been agreed to in *Denmark*, *Sinibald* was not yet so certain of his happiness as he imagined himself to be; and that if *Melisinthā* had any way yielded to give her consent to the marriage, she was rather guided by her obedience, than her own inclination.

In the mean while we received news every day in the place where we were, of *Sinibald's* proceedings: and we heard that in all parts he had worsted the *Saxons* that were in *Jutland*, and had taken several places of importance, either by main force, or by means of that correspondence which *Gifulphus* held through the whole Province; and most men concluded, that he would in a short time reduce all *Jutland* under the obedience of *Melisinthā*, when he understood that the King of the *Saxons* was at Sea with a power equal to his, and that he made for that Cape which is commonly called the *Cimbrian Promontory*. This news instead of troubling him, did much rejoice the *Danish Prince*, and without wavering or studying what resolution to take, he rais'd the Siege which he had laid to a certain Town, and march'd directly to meet the King, with much stoutness and resolution. Then it was that the Prince received the answer which he expected upon the return of his Page, where he beheld the King's resolution in these words.

The King of the *Saxons* to Prince *Aldemar*.

Return to your Duty, forbear to love your Enemies, and come and fight in the revenge of your Brother. Upon these conditions only will I receive you as my Son, and will pardon you the injury which you have done me.

Upon reading this short Letter, and a more large explanation of the inclinations of the King, which he received from his Page by word of mouth, he felt such an increase of his grief, that he began to forget all considerations of filial respect. I know, (said he, speaking of the King) that he is my Father, and at the same time I understand that he is my King; but in neither of these two qualities has he sufficient authority to claim that power over my heart, as to deface the image of *Melisinthā* there. It may rule there in despite of him, since it will tyrannize there in despite of my self, though I had a design to banish it thence. Nor is there any Duty, nor any authority that can command me out of the bonds of her beauty. After that he bitterly express'd his dislike of the King's proceedings; and reflecting upon the little care he seem'd to take of his life, rather choosing to leave him to the mercy of his enemies, than to redeem him by an exchange for *Gifulphus*. I have not merited, said he, this low contempt; for surely the life of a Son, and of a Son not unworthy of his descent, ought to be more valued by a Father, and certainly rather to be desired than the death of an Enemy. I will not listen to any thing which the justice of my resentment might move me to utter at this time; and I know there is no injury whatever can arm me against my Father and my King. But I will either redeem the Father of *Melisinthā* out of those chains, wherewith I my self have fettered him, or will lose my life in the attempt; and since it is so little valued by a Father that contemns its preservation, I will abandon it to all the mischief that may befall it, but I will restore to *Melisinthā* her Father, whom I have taken from her.

But if he had any cause to complain of the King's severity, fortune revenged his cause in such a manner, as he had least occasion to wish for. For we understood that after some light skirmishes, that had passed between the *Danes* and the *Saxons*; the King and *Sinibald* had fought; and that either through the misfortune of the *Saxons*, or the valour of *Sinibald*, the *Danes* had obtained the victory: and that the loss on the *Saxons* side was so great, that the King was constrained to retreat to his Ships in great disorder: and to return to *Saxony* in such a weak condition; that would no longer permit him to defend *Jutland* against the victorious Arms of *Sinibald*. *Aldemar* was with *Melisintha* when the news came, and so little he dissembled his sorrow to hear it, that the Princess easily perceived it: and whether it were to let him know that she took notice of his grief; or whether it were to let him see that she truly pityed him; *I dare not*, said she, *rejoyce at the happy success of our Army; seeing you so much afflicted: and certainly if the King your Father understood, how much you laid to heart his ill success; I am very confident your peace would be soon made with him. You would do me too much injustice*, replied the Prince, *should you believe me unconcern'd for my Father's loss of Jutland: nor need I justify myself where I know you have no cause of accusation against me. But I must confess that I could have wished these advantages, at which you believe me so much troubled, to any other person than to Sinibald: and that I cannot but with infinite grief behold him so prosperous in a design, that opens him the way to the enjoyment of Melisintha. Though Jutland were ours*, replied the Princess, *Gisulphus still remaining imprisoned by your Father: nor is it so near the recovery of his Kingdom, as the safety and liberty of her Father, which the daughter hopes for. If it be that* replied the Prince, with an alteration of joy that signally appeared in his countenance) *I fear less than I did the success of Sinibald, nor do I despair of my own. But O Gods* (thus continued he after a few minutes of silence) *what can I expect from fortune, should she prove more kind than the heart of Melisintha. Save the life and redeem the liberty of my Father, if it be in your power*, replied the fair *Melisintha*, and after that hope for all things, from an obedience which I am never to deny him. She could not utter these last words without blushing, though so full of innocency; and therefore believing that she had spoken too much already, she altered the subject of her discourse.

Aldemar knew not then what judgment to make of his condition; and if he found a greater happiness in the hope which he had, to mollifie the heart of *Melisintha*, than in all his disgraces; yet was his happiness counterbalanc'd, by the number of his sorrows and his discontents: For besides what his jealousy to see the success made him endure, especially when he reflected upon the reward promised to his victories, he began to be ashamed of mewing himself up within the compass of narrow walls, while *Sinibald* abroad got honour, and won battels from his Father. Willingly would he have fought against his proud Rival in his Countries behalf, could he have done it without renouncing the love of *Melisintha*. But he neither had the power nor the purpose so to do: nor did he know any duty that could oblige him to take up Arms against one whom he loved a thousand times more dearly than his life, for a Father that rather chose to let him perish, than thwart the honour of his revenge; for a Father whom they did not assail in his own dominions, but only expell'd out of those which he had usurp'd. In this hurly burly of different thoughts, he struggled for a good while: And if at the time that he was with *Melisintha*, the troubles of his mind were charm'd by the sight of an object so delightful; the grief which he observed in the Princess and his disquiet for being the cause thereof, cruelly augmented his anguish, and reduced him at length to believe, that under a kind of shadow of happiness, he was altogether miserable. While these strange Irresolutions floated in his mind, seeing that the means which he had attempted to redeem *Gisulphus*, and restore *Melisintha* her chiefest consolation, had not proved successful; he tormented his thoughts in the search of others, though without being able to resolve upon any thing: especially through the fear he had, that if he should absent himself from *Melisintha*, he might lose all his own hopes and her Father's life together. However at length he was constrained to determine: and one day that he was in his Chamber, waiting till it might be convenient for him to attend the Princess; he saw her entring into his Chamber with only two Virgins attending her, without any other train. He mov'd toward her very much confus'd and abash'd at the honour which she did him: But immediately the Princess and he withdrawing to a window; gave him to understand that *Sinibald* was in quiet possession of all *Jutland*: that after the victory which he had obtained, and the retreat of the *Saxon* King; he found little or no opposition: that very few places held out till they were assailed, but all yielded upon composition: and that all the *Saxons* who were in Garrisons, were gone away either by Sea or to *Denmark*, with such Letters of safe conduct as he had given them: and that having no more to do he was returning victorious to *Galatia*. *Aldemar* heard this discourse of *Melisintha*, with alterations and motions of a different nature:

ture: And as he was about to utter his mind, the Princess preventing him with a resolute utterance; "Prince, *said she*, you have no longer time to consider, you must of necessity leave us, and seek out some other ways to restore me my Father, than what you have already tryed in vain. I shall with all affection continue the remembrance of you, and I despair not but that you may find better success some other way, where I may be permitted a greater liberty. *Sinibald* returns victorious and absolute Master, and as he wants nothing to compleat his wishes, but the liberty of *Gisulphus*; I make no question but he will endeavour to obtain it, though with the loss of yours, and deprive me of the power of disposing it. I know well that you do not fear the danger, since you have willingly exposed your self to it: but be advised withal that I fear it more than death, which I would rather endure than the reproach that I may lye under, of having abused your noble and generous intentions. On the other side you have perswaded all the world that you love me: you have confessed as much to your Father, nor do you conceal it from any other person whatsoever. It is the general opinion that your pretended imprisonment is no other than an effect of your own will, and of your affection for me: so that it is the judgment of all the world, of *Sinibald* and of your Father himself, that you remain with me not as a Prisoner but as a lover: to which you know I neither can consent, nor is it in my power to suffer it, especially during the imprisonment of my Father, without incurring his displeasure and the scandal of the whole earth. For these reasons which you understand as well as my self, I beseech you Sir to make hast away: and do not give me any farther cause of discontent, either to see you dealt withal by your Enemies as a real prisoner, or to see you appear as my Lover at such a time, when my Father's captivity and the knowledge of his intentions, will not permit me to suffer it. Thus spake *Melisantha*, when the Prince beholding her with a languishing and passionate aspect; "I see Madam, *said he*, that here I shall but create new jealousies in *Sinibald* by my stay, and that this Victor for whom fortune so openly declares her self, will not suffer so near your person a Rival who surpasses him in love: and it may be is not inferiour to him in merit. This is the reason and no other that obliges you to banish me from your presence: and I wish to all the Gods that it prove not the means to put me on the rack of my severest torment, when I am forced to surrender you to the too happy *Sinibald*. "I pardon these expressions, *replied the Princess*, knowing the reasons that force them from you: But you cannot have any such thought without offending me. For besides that you have heard me unfold my self to you, perhaps more freely than I ought to have done, in relation to my thoughts concerning *Sinibald*; whose pretences as they are all grounded upon the consent of *Gisulphus*, you may be sure shall never prevail upon me, without the liberty and the presence of my Father likewise, which are both necessary to the accomplishment of his desires. "But, *said Aldemar*, my abode with you whether as a Lover or a Prisoner, still assures you of the life of *Gisulphus*; though it may not absolutely redeem him: And if after I am gone he should be put to death, who can you blame for so fatal a misfortune? when there are just and lawful means to shun the danger. "Those, *replied the Princess*, I will make use of though they cost me my life: But as the means which you propound is unjust and treacherous in me to accept, I will never yield to make use of it. "If you can, (*said Aldemar after a short silence*) so conceal my departure that my Father may have no knowledge thereof, till I have had time to execute what I have design'd; I do not despair of freeing the Prince of *Jutland* out of prison, and bringing him hither my self in a few days. "Would it please the Gods that you might accomplish it, I would undertake to keep your departure so secret, that no living person should have the least notice thereof. Upon this assurance, I will prepare my self to put a design in execution, which I thought upon some few days ago: And since the King my Father hath so little valued my life, I will not stick to wrong my honour nor my duty, by robbing his fury of a prisoner that he keeps by force from me. If I have success you shall speedily see the Prince of *Jutland*, but if the success answer not my hopes and my desires, I will return a prisoner to your self, or if you refuse me to *Sinibald*. He will receive me without doubt out of the great care he has of your Father's liberty: And since it is my fate to advance the happiness of his good fortune; I had rather meet my own destruction, than suffer the death of *Gisulphus*. "Your generosity, *said the Princess*, makes me altogether ashamed of my self, and obliges me to tell you farther, that if I cannot have the freedom to testify my acknowledgment, I shall esteem my self very miserable. Endeavour what you can for the liberty of my Father, and if fortune will not favour us in this attempt, I beseech you, nay rather if I have any power over you, I command you, not to commit your self to the hands of *Sinibald*. He will make use of your misfortunes doubtless to obtain *Melisantha*: and if you should suffer any mishap, as you would persuade

“her you are willing to do; I am apt to believe I should have some reason to repent my
 “misfortune. *Aldemar* perceived something more than of ordinary kindness, and obliging
 sweetness in this discourse, to be his comfort in that affliction, which he must of necessity
 suffer in parting from her: and after he had made some few reflections, that obliged him to
 a short-silence; “I hope, *said he*, that the Gods will be favourable to us, and that I shall
 “remove the cause of your grief, if fortune do not oppose me. In the mean while I must
 “leave you for a time, and if you were ever in love you cannot but know, what this absence
 “will make me suffer. But though absence be a very great mischief, ’tis not that which I
 “fear so much, for I am able to support it with the assistance of my courage: But hence pro-
 “ceeds my fear, when I call to mind that while I am absent; *Sinibald* is with you: and
 “that he aspires to the top of his felicity with favourable hopes. You may for any thought
 “of that matter set your heart at rest, *replied the Princess*, for as you know that *Sinibald* can
 “expect nothing from me, so long as *Gisulphus* remains in durance; if he be redeemed by
 “your assistance; you need not question your being by him preferred before *Sinibald*: and
 “that besides the double consideration of having twice saved his life; he shall likewise not
 “forget the advantages, which you have over the Brother of the *Danish* King. Upon these
 words which *Melismiba* uttered, not without some little violence upon her natural humour,
 the Prince’s grief was not a little asswaged: And passing from this discourse, to consider
 what course they were to take, that his departure might be concealed from the *Saxon* King
 they concluded that because it was not easie, to conceal his departure from those that were
 upon the place, that they would give it out abroad, that upon some extraordinary advice
 which they had that day received from *Sinibald*; which he had sent by a particular messen-
 ger; that they would send the Prince to some remoter Prison, and carry him to some more
 secure place than *Gelasia*; which was speedily to be put into the hands of *Sinibald*, like all
 the rest of the Garrison Towns: that that very night he should be conducted to the Sea-side,
 by those very persons that should be appointed for his Guard, and be thence immediately
 ship’d away in a Vessel ready prepared to receive him. All things were performed as they
 had concluded, being much furthered by the respectful obedience, which *Sigimer* gave to
 the Princess: For though he seemed unwilling at first, yet he durst not disobey *Melismiba*,
 the rather because he was privy to all the proceedings of *Aldemar*, and understood very well
 what kind of prisoner he was: so that to shorten my relation in things not pertinent, and to
 pass over the passionate and tender expressions on the Prince’s part; when he took leave of
Melismiba; by the care that *Sigimer* took to serve the Princess, some hours before day the
 Prince together with his peculiar attendants, was guarded to the Sea-side by a small party
 of horse which *Sigimer* commanded, where we found a Vessel ready fitted with all things
 necessary for our voyage.

As we were ignorant of the design that carried our Prince to *Gelasia*, so we were ignorant
 of the reason of his departure, though I was the first of all his retinue to whom he discover’d
 it: For a little while after he had been aboard, and that he had given order what course to
 steer, he call’d me singly to him and asked me if I understood the humour of *Gelimer*, and
 whether he were really my friend. I made him answer according to the truth that he was
 a bold daring person, and that we had for several years past, entred into a very strict league
 of mutual friendship. But have you any knowledge, *replied Aldemar*, of his affection for
 “me, or do you believe him to be a person, that will venture the King’s displeasure to serve
 “me, in the most important concern of my whole life? When the Prince had spoken these
 words I understood what he meant, and because I knew that it was *Gelimer* that guarded the
 Prince of *Jutland* in a Garrison under his command, I made no question but we were then
 making a voyage for the liberty of *Gisulphus*: and therefore by reason of the experience
 which I had of the Prince’s love, and the knowledge of a good part of his reflections upon
 the King’s carriage toward him, I less wondred at his resolution than another might have
 done, and I gave him a ready answer to his question: “I have for a long time, *said I*, known
 “*Gelimer* to be passionately devoted to your service: And I know moreover Sir, that you
 “have a great share in the obligation of his preferment: for that it was your self who beg’d
 “of the King that command which he now enjoys, some few days before your departure
 “from *Cynesia*. “That which you say is very true, *replied the Prince*, and it was that in
 “part which made me the more forward, in that resolution which I have taken for the liber-
 “ty of *Gisulphus*: whereupon he did me the honour to communicate to me, the design
 which he had to get into *Selima* privately by night, being the place where *Gisulphus* was
 imprisoned under the custody of *Gelimer*: and to try whether by fair means and upon the
 consideration of being able to advance *Gelimer*’s fortunes, he could oblige him to deliver
 the Prince of *Jutland* into his hands, and to put himself under his protection to avoid the
 “King’s

King's fury; and if he could not persuade him to that, to try some other way, which he would not attempt till the last of all, as being such as would of necessity make a louder noise, and be occasion of more important disturbance. Now because I knew it was a vain thing to go about to divert him from his resolution, I would not trouble my self to contradict him, or to lay before him the difficulties which he might encounter, but contented my self to tell him what I verily thought, that *Gelimer* was a person very fit for his purpose, and that besides his engagements to him, and the devotion which he had to his service, he was a person very ambitious, and consequently would the more willingly embrace any opportunity to raise himself.

This discourse made *Aldemar* the more confident to proceed in his design, which was to sound *Gelimer's* inclination, before he attempted any other way; and so making sail with all the speed imaginable, we left those Islands called the *Saxon* Isles on the right hand, making *Denmark* upon the left, and one evening we put in to the shore near the mouth of the *Elbe*, within the distance of an hours march from *Selima*; knowing the way, we easily got to the Gate, notwithstanding the darkness of the night. But before the Prince would appear himself, he commanded me to ask for *Gelimer* in my name, and that I should make his arrival known to no other person but himself, without speaking to the Guard at the Gate. I observed his command, and called for *Gelimer*, who coming to me as to his friend, I told him that the Prince desired to rest himself in the Garrison for an hour, and while I was talking to him, the Prince came forward with the small train that attended him, and made himself known to *Gelimer*. *Gelimer* was very much surpris'd to see him: and I cannot tell what resolutions he might have taken, if he had had time to consider. However it were, he durst not refuse to open the Gates to the Prince, to whom he was oblig'd for the chiefest part of his being, and who, by reason of his Father's years, was in a short while likely to be his King, he received him with a countenance that denoted something of distrust, though he labour'd all he could to put a good face upon the matter, and to hide the disquiet of his mind, and conducting him to a place which he thought most convenient for him. But the Prince quickly let him know that he intended to make no long stay there; and taking him aside presently after he came into his Chamber, *Gelimer*, said he, *I come to you as to a person of whose affection I am well assured, and from whom I am now to require a very great piece of service, and to whom I shall not forget to make that acknowledgment which your obligation shall merit: I must either lose my life, or give Gifulphus his liberty; for my destiny is so link'd to his, that there is no separation to be made betwixt them. 'Tis from your kindness and affection to serve me, that I come to demand him. Do this, and I will not only protect you from the King's anger, by making you the copartner of my fortune, but also raise you to that degree, that you shall thereby with advantage find the value of the obligation you laid upon me. Nor can you be thought to have done anything blame-worthy, or misbecoming a brave person, in saving the life of a Prince so unjustly and so cruelly destin'd to destruction. Besides that the example which I my self set before you, is sufficient to authorize the fact, and to free you from any reproach that you can justly bear. In short, it is your Prince, and he that may suddenly come to be your King, who here demands of you his own life, and the liberty of Gifulphus; or rather who commits himself into your hands, by reason of the confidence which he has in your particular self. For so great a piece of service you may expect a suitable reward; or rather, being you know that I am neither treacherous, nor ingrateful, there is nothing but what you may expect at my hands.* *Gelimer* heard him patiently all the while; but after the Prince had done speaking, he stood mute a good while, without being able to make any answer. And between these two extremities, whether to deceive his King who had trusted him with the custody of a prisoner of that importance, and to expose himself to all things that were to be expected from his fury; or whether to disoblige the Prince, who was ere long to be his King, and who in a few years would be able either to advance or degrade him, according as he should be dealt withal upon this very occasion, he was not able to determine what to resolve: nor could he tell how to disengage himself; only in laying before the Prince, how much he ow'd to the trust which the King had reposed in him, he seem'd to give him a hint that from any other person but himself he should have very ill resent'd such a proposal. But at length he was oversway'd by the charms of the Prince's entreaties and persuasions, against which it was hard for him to defend himself; or else out of the hopes of those offers which were made him; and of which, from a Prince of his humour and disposition, he might easily expect the full performance; or out of fear to offend him, and to have him always for an enemy. However it were, he told him he was ready to obey him, and to follow him, for there was no staying for him after such a fact committed in a Kingdom where, during the King's life, there was no safety for the Prince himself, and where, for so

he concluded with a sigh, he quitted a brave command to serve him. The Prince embrac'd him a thousand times, and promised him rewards of his service beyond what he could desire. And having conferr'd with him for some time, in contriving how they should go all together, without giving the Soldiers and Officers any Alarm, and whom they ought to leave at their departure in *Gelimer's* place, knowing he had little time to lose, and that the success of the design consisted in speed, he caus'd himself to be conducted to the prison, with an intention to set *Gisulphus* at liberty in his own person, and to depart without farther delay: *Gelimer* having taken care to send Horses for *Gisulphus* and himself, to the place where we had left ours. The Prince had forbid *Gelimer* or any other person to discover to *Gisulphus* who he was, till he gave us notice, fearing perhaps the resolution of that Prince, whose obstinate hatred against the House of the *Saxons* he well understood; and therefore he concluded to pass for that unknown person who had defended him against the fury of the Pirates, the remembrance of whose person he could not but retain, and which for that reason could not be hateful to him.

The Prince of *Jutland* was at that time in an indifferent handsome Lodging; they had also taken off his Irons, which they constrain'd him to wear when he was first imprison'd, and he was likewise indifferently attended, but they kept a very strict Guard over him; and because he was not permitted to hear any news, 'tis very probable that he did not then in the least expect his liberty. The Prince went into his Chamber with only *Gelimer* in his company; and as for *Gisulphus*, he being accustomed dayly to see *Gelimer*, was little or nothing mov'd at the sight of either, but received them courteously enough. With much pains he rear'd up his eyes to behold their faces, his own being in a bad condition, for his Beard was long, and neglected, and he wore the whole countenance of a man whose life was a burthen to him, which mov'd the Prince to a compassion that kept him silent for some time. However, the Prince was the first that spoke, and accosting him with a behaviour answerable to the respect which he had for the Father of *Melisintha*; Sir, said he, *let us make haste out of this prison where you have suffered too much already; and now breath a better air, and enjoy a better fortune.* *Gisulphus* with some difficulty lifting up his head at these words, and casting his eyes upon the Prince's face, *Young man*, said he, *make not a scoff of my misfortune, I know already it can never be altered but by death. But if it be to death thou art leading me, thou shalt see how willingly, how cheerfully I will follow thee.* These words, uttered by the Father of *Melisintha*, caus'd tears to flow from the eyes of *Aldemar*; and therefore going nearer the Lights, that *Gisulphus* might see him better than he did before; *If you would well observe my countenance*, said he, *you would from thence make a more auspicious conjecture: if you can but remember that you have seen it at any other time, you will then perceive that it is not to lead you to death, that I am come hither.* These words, and the accent of his voice, which made *Gisulphus* something recover himself, forc'd him to look more steadfastly upon *Aldemar's* face: and by reason, that he had charily preserv'd in his breast the resemblance of a person, to whom he was engag'd both for his own and *Melisintha's* life; and for that the shape and countenance of the Prince had nothing of common air, he readily knew him again. Upon the knowledge hereof he recoyl'd back some few steps in a posture of amaze, and immediately advancing towards the Prince with a behaviour that testified all the marks of Acknowledgment; *O my valiant protector*, said he, *what favourable God has sent you hither to my assistance? For I make no question but that it is only to my assistance that you are come hither.* 'Tis so, Sir, replied *Aldemar*, 'tis only for your redemption that I come hither. *If Melisintha be safe*, replied *Gisulphus*, *if she have escaped death and shame, I embrace your assistance with joy; but if Melisintha be lost, neither my life nor my liberty can do me any kindness. Neither is Melisintha dead*, replied *Aldemar*, *neither has she suffered any other misfortune than that of your confinement, and you shall find in a few days in Jutland, that there is no other who commands there as Prince, but your self.* "If any other but your self should be the relater of such news to me, replied *Gisulphus*, I should not believe a word; but having been a witness of what you have performed, it is not for me to suspect you of untruth, and having received already so great a benefit at your hands, there is nothing which I will not have farther hopes of by the assistance of your power. *Let us go then*, (said *Aldemar*, taking him by the hand) *and seeing it is so that we can get free of this place, let us make no long stay here.* *Gisulphus* then stretch'd forth his Arms, and having embraced Prince *Aldemar* with tears that joy and tenderness drew both at once from his eyes, he followed him without speaking one word, suffering themselves to be guided by *Gelimer*, who (to omit all unnecessary particulars of our departure) soon sets us free of that place, and in a little time after we got to our Vessel, where *Gisulphus* and *Gelimer* went aboard so much to *Aldemar's* joy, that he could hardly contain himself.

When

When we were got aboard, and that *Gisulphus* found that we steer'd our course directly for *Jutland*, he besought the Prince to tell him, to whom it was that he was engag'd for his life, at least this second time, for fear lest by some accident or other he might lose the opportunity of his satisfaction; but *Aldemar* desired him to stay till he saw *Melisintha*, telling him that for certain important reasons, he could not yet discover himself, nor let him understand by what means he had his liberty, till he came to be in his own Dominions, and in the presence of the Prince's his Daughter. *Well then*, said *Gisulphus*, *I will press you no farther, to what you are so unwilling to disclose, and I will moderate the impatience which I have to know my continual preserver, out of the hope which you give me that I shall receive satisfaction in a short time. But I suppose you will not deny to tell me to whom I am oblig'd for the safety of Melisintha, and the recovery of my Dominions.* "For the recovery of *Jutland*, replied *Aldemar*, you are oblig'd to *Sinibald*, who with an Army of the *Danes* defeated the *Saxons* and has reduced *Jutland* entirely under your subjection: but for the life of *Melisintha* and your own, you owe them to Prince *Aldemar*. *Aldemar!* (said *Gisulphus* in a great amazement) *the Son of the Saxon King! He that, I am given to understand, overcame me in fight, and sent me captive to his Father!* "This very *Aldemar*, replied the Prince, preserv'd you from that death to which the King his Father hath design'd you, and who having taken *Melisintha* also, carried her safe into *Gelasia*, which *Sigimer* had newly regain'd from the *Saxons*, and surrendred himself a voluntary prisoner to his enemies, to deliver you from his Father. He told him all along what had pass'd since that; and let him understand the obligations which he had for Prince *Aldemar*, yet without making any such mention of him, that might discover him to be the person, and without derogating at all from the honour and services of *Sinibald*. *Gisulphus* heard all this discourse very calmly: and when the Prince had done speaking, 'Tis an effect, said he, of that evil fortune that has persecuted me all my life, that I am still beholding for such great obligations to the Son of the King of the *Saxons*. And it is not without great reluctancy, that those thoughts of hatred, fortified in my heart by such powerful reasons, must now be chang'd into thoughts of affection and acknowledg'ment. *As I have heard*, said the Prince, *Aldemar was never concern'd in any of those injuries which were done by his Family to yours; and I am so far from understanding any reason for you to forget the memory of what he has done for you, that I think those obligations are more to be valued in him than in another: for besides the danger to which he has expos'd himself to serve you, as another might have done, he has done something more than others could have done for you, in incurring, as he has done, the fury and hatred of the King his Father.* "I know it very well, replied *Gisulphus*, and let him make no doubt, but that if he be yet with *Melisintha*, as you tell me he is, he shall have no reason to complain of my ingratitude. But I must confess, it will never be that I shall see my self beholding to the Son of my most inveterate enemy, without shame and discontent. The Prince was unwilling to press him any farther upon *Aldemar's* interest, for fear of making a discovery, believing, that since he found him sensible by what he had related to him, of what *Aldemar* had done for him; when in the person of *Aldemar* he should behold the same Defender, who had saved *Melisintha* and himself from the fury of the Pyrates, and who came to redeem him out of the hands of the *Saxon King*, he would be as equally sensible of that acknowledg'ment which was due to him.

All this while we made for the coast of *Jutland*, avoiding *Denmark* with the greatest care we could; but because the wind was not so favourable in our return, as when we were bound for *Saxony*, we were forc'd to keep longer at Sea than we expected; but at length with much ado, putting into the Port of *Gelasia*, we there understood that *Melisintha* was gone thence the day before, and that under the safe conduct of *Sinibald*, retired to *Nicopia*, the chief City of *Jutland*, seated upon the Banks of the River *Eidorz*. Though *Aldemar* did not doubt but that *Sinibald* was with *Melisintha*, yet the very thoughts thereof went to his heart, nor could he but be very much discontented, but to hear the very name of his Rival pronounc'd. However, he went by land with *Gisulphus* to *Nicopia*; and for that all the Passes were then open, they got thither without any difficulty. As soon as they enter'd the City, Prince *Gisulphus* was immediately known by all the chief persons of the City, who flock'd about him, while the common people made the Sky ring with their Acclamations, and resound with the name of their Prince, with such other marks of joy as easily testified their affection to their Sovereign. The report of his return spread it self with that swiftness, that it was got before us to the City; and *Melisintha*, to whose ears it had been conveyed by the confused cries of the people, amaz'd with the excess of her own joy, ran out of her Chamber to meet her Father; and at the same time also met *Aldemar* in a great Room which they were to pass through: *Sinibald* was with her; and if my Prince was troubled

to see him with her, *Sinibald* was no less discontented to behold any Prince so near *Gisulphus*, knowing withal to whom *Gisulphus* was obliged for his liberty. Never was an affection discovered by marks more tender, or more lively, than that which was reciprocally at this time shewn between the Father and the Daughter. Never had grief for the separation of Friends caused more tears to be shed, than these two persons weeping for joy upon their unexpected meeting. *Melisintha* remain'd a long time in the Arms of *Gisulphus*, without being either of them able to speak: and if the Daughter could not untwine her self from the Arms of a Father, who had spent so many sad days in loathsome imprisonment; neither could the Father let go a Daughter, who was more dear to him than his life; and for whose sake he had suffered torments, during his imprisonment, far more cruel than the chains of the *Saxon King*. At length the consideration of *Aldemar* and *Sinibald* interrupted their importunate Careffes; and if *Gisulphus* could not behold the Prince of the *Danes*, by whose means he had been restored to the possession of his Dominions, without paying what was due to his Birth, and the largeness of the benefit which he had received at his hands; so neither could *Melisintha* behold *Aldemar*, to whom besides so many other obligations, she owed the life and liberty of her Father, without approaching him with all the marks of as real and effectual an acknowledgment as he could have expected. And while *Gisulphus* and *Sinibald* were busie in making their reciprocal complements and acknowledgments, which kept them from other observations: *Oh, Sir,* (said *Melisintha* to the *Saxon Prince*) *how gloriously do you succeed in your enterprises; or rather how do you heap your benefits upon me? And how miserable shall I be, whenever fortune deprives me of the ability to testify the acknowledgment which my heart is full of.* “The Gods, modestly replied “*the Prince*, prospered my good intentions, and I hope they will never forsake me, so you “continue to be favourable to me. I shall endeavour, said the Princess, *what lies in my power, and perhaps more than I ought to do, to let you know that I am neither ingrateful, nor insensible.* The Prince was charm'd with these expressions; but they had neither of them time to say more, without being over-heard by the throng of people, which the return of *Gisulphus* had drawn to the Court in a moment. I cannot tell you the discourse that pass'd between *Gisulphus* and *Sinibald*, for I never knew any thing of it; but it is very probable, that the service being so great, the testimonies of acknowledgment given by *Gisulphus*, were as ample; and that they were received by the Prince of the *Danes* with all civility answerable. After they had sufficiently express'd themselves the one to the other, *Gisulphus*, who well understood that he did not owe all to *Sinibald*, returning to *Melisintha*, *As you have let me see,* said he, *the Prince to whom I am indebted for the Crown of my Ancestors, it is just that you also let me know to whom I am engag'd once for my Daughter; and you twice for your Father. The Gods that sent him to our assistance upon the Sea, sent him also to free me from a Dungeon, to the end I should not be beholding for my life, but only to him who had already prefer'd it. But if I hold my life from one of these two, and my Crown from the other, there is a third also by whose means I enjoy Melisintha, and to whom, as they say, I am also beholding for my life; it is just that I should testify my acknowledgment to him also, neither must Sinibald, nor our valiant defender deny us the liberty of paying what I owe to the virtues of so noble and so generous a Prince.* These words surpris'd *Melisintha*, who was ignorant that *Aldemar* had concealed himself from the knowledge of *Gisulphus*; and began to perceive that her Father, though he appeared sufficiently sensible of the service he had done him, did not yet shew him that respect which was due to his Dignity. Nor did she take time to consider what she had to say, but answered according to what was in their thoughts: *Sir,* said she, *I have already return'd my thanks to Prince Aldemar for your liberty, as I gave him thanks before for his noble performances for yours and my preservation at Sea: but I know nothing of any obligations that you have to any other person than himself.* “How, (cried *Gisulphus*, with “the greatest astonishment in the world) is that valiant person that saved us out of the *Pyrates* hands, who came to fetch me out of prison, and from the power of the *Saxon King*? “Is he that same Prince *Aldemar*, who gave you your liberty, and kept off that violent and “cruel death which threatened me, and who surrendred himself a Captive into our hands, to “redeem me out of his Father's power? How, have the Gods united such a variety of obligations in one single person, and a person from whom we had the least reason to expect them? “I beg your pardon Sir, said *Aldemar*, for the fallacy I put upon you, and I hope you will judge “no other wise thereof, but that I concealed my self, for fear you should refuse a piece of service, from one that you had any reason to hate. All the severity of *Gisulphus*, nor all the implacable hatred which he bore to the King of the *Saxons*, could not debar him from letting the world know, by how many and by what important obligations he was engag'd to the Son of his Enemy: and being born with the heart of a Prince, though it might be some-
what

what hardened by his adversity, he could not find any person that had done more for him, nor one that had more prevailed upon his Soul, with the charms of his person: so that accosting him with very great marks of honour and esteem; *Sir*, said he, *as the benefits I have received at your hands, are above the estimate of any Price and without any bounds, the sense we have thereof cannot produce expressions sufficient, to make the least acknowledgment according to their merit: Nor can my daughter or my self do more, than prostrate at your feet what you have so often preserved, by offering up our lives to you as to our common preserver and tutelar Angel. I cannot tell (modestly replied Aldemar) whether what I have performed in your behalf, be sufficient to repair the wrongs which I have done you, by exposing you to the revenge of the King my Father: However I shall think my self fully paid for my services, if you can forget those injuries: and if they can but protect me from the hatred, which you bear to our family.* That hatred, replied Gifulphus, was grounded upon arguments powerful enough, and which you are not ignorant of: But as I have reasons not less prevalent, to harbour in my heart an opinion of you quite contrary to what I have of the rest of your family, I shall not only lay aside these former thoughts, of hatred, which perhaps I have too easily admitted, but with the same constancy shall preserve till death, the affection which I have for your self. Some other discourse they had, which tediousness forbids me to rehearse: Immediately Gifulphus gave order that the two Princes should be lodged in the Palace, and in this disposal of their Lodging as in every thing else; though Gifulphus looked upon Sinibald, as the person that had restored him to his Crown; yet he punctually observed the distinction between two Princes, betwixt whom the design of birth had made an apparent inequality. And although with the Crown, Gifulphus had taken upon him the title of King of *Jutland*, as his Ancestors for many years had done before; however he gave the Prince of the Saxons as much the precedency, as if he had been already the Crowned Sovereign of *Saxony*.

The first following days were spent, in such publick ceremonies and testimonies of publick joy, as the *Jutlanders* spar'd no cost to manifest upon so happy a change of their condition, which they celebrated with all sorts of shows and divertisements, wherein the splendour of the Court of *Jutland* sufficiently appeared. *Sinibald* who was nobly furnished by his Brother, for a Royal and magnificent expence; was very sumptuous in his Equipage: but *Aldemar* who neither received nor hop'd to receive any thing from his Father, could not follow his Example, and fretted that he could not shew his own liberal humour and disposition, but at the charges of *Gifulphus*; which he was resolv'd never to do whatever disgrace befel him. All this while the two Princes saw each other every hour: and their jealousie increasing by reason of the obstructions, which they reciprocally occasioned each to other; set that hatred on fire with which they were sufficiently animated already. For some days *Aldemar* could not discourse *Melisintha* as he desired, finding *Sinibald* always in her company, which stirred up within him that vexation which was easily perceived: But at length taking his opportunity, while *Sinibald* was entertaining *Gifulphus* at another end of the Chamber, and seeing no body with *Melisintha*, who did not retire out of respect to give him the more liberty; he went nearer to her than he was before: and speaking to her with a low voice not to be heard; "I have done, said he, what you expected of me, ought not I now to hope, that you will not forget the promise which you made to me. I will do for you, replied the Princess, more than you demand: And instead of yielding my obedience, when I shall be commanded to prefer *Sinibald* according to my promise; I will put my Father in mind how much he is more obliged to you than to him: and I will maintain your interest against him, as much as reason will suffer me to do. "I am more happy, said the Prince, than ever I deserved to be: for if you take my part, *Sinibald* will not have all the advantage over me. However I know not what to hope from the King of *Jutland*, for among all those offers of kindness which he makes me by way of acknowledgment, he speaks not one syllable to me concerning you, though he cannot be ignorant of the love which I have for you. "He may pretend ignorance, said *Melisintha*, in regard he never heard you make any proposition concerning it, nor is there any reason that he should be the first, that should take any notice thereof: But I dare assure you that I find in his inclinations, a kindness more than ordinary for you: Nor do I believe that his engagement to *Sinibald*, does at all impeach his consideration of the honour which you do him or blind his discovery of the great odds betwixt you and *Sinibald*. But may I hope, (said *Aldemar* with a passionate look) that you will appear on my behalf against the fortune of my Rival, and that you will not forsake me, if fortune prove my enemy? "You merit more, replied the Princess, than you demand: and setting aside my obligations to your generosity, there is no law that restrains me from making this confession, that in taking your part, you shall find me rather led by my own inclinations, than guided by

“ the rules of acknowledgment : and this I shall shew, as soon as you shall have occasion
 “ to require it; and I shall let *Gisulphus* understand farther, that with *Sinibald* I can ne-
 “ ver be happy. But you must know, that in making this opposition, there are certain
 “ limits which I must not exceed, and you have too much reason to desire it. It is not
 “ always reason that regulates desire, (replied the Prince;) but though I am in a condition that
 “ acknowledges very little subjection to its Empire, I shall desire you to do nothing for me that you
 “ cannot all without offence. They had said more, if *Gisulphus* and the jealous *Sinibald*; who
 “ could not long endure this familiarity, had not with their presence interrupted them. *Al-*
 “ *demir* laboured still for some days under some unquiet thoughts that tormented him, for
 “ the happiness of his Rival, and the kindness that passed between him and *Gisulphus*, though
 “ he could hardly believe, that either for his person, or for his Services, *Sinibald* could be
 “ more considerable than himself. But at length he resolved to declare his mind, for fear a
 “ longer silence might be prejudicial to him, or that *Gisulphus* might engage himself, not know-
 “ ing his intentions. To which purpose, coming one day to visit the King of the *Futlanders*
 “ (for we can give him no other Title, seeing that the grandeur and splendour of his Court
 “ made him deserve no less a Title) he desired a particular audience: and being alone with
 “ him in his Closet, Sir, said he, when I did you that first service, whereby I had the happiness
 “ to merit some part of your friendship, I did not propose to my self any other reward, but what we
 “ find our selves in the content of having perform’d an honourable action. I could willingly have
 “ done much more (if I have done anything to deserve your remembrance) upon the same con-
 “ sideration, without intermixing any other interest to bring down the price; but love becoming the
 “ Mistress of my heart, bred there both desires and hopes; and as I could not see *Melissintha* with-
 “ out loving her, so I cannot live without desiring her and without hoping that at length by my love;
 “ and by my services I may deserve her. Without doubt my hopes have been too aspiring; for who
 “ among men can be worthy to enjoy *Melissintha*? Nor will I repeat either my Birth, or my Quality,
 “ you know them already, and to my misery you know them but too well. Though as through the
 “ knowledge of my intentions, your thoughts are become more favourable towards me, so I pre-
 “ sume to hope, that I shall not be punished for the crimes of others; and that I shall have no greater
 “ a share in your displeasure, than I had in doing the injuries that gave the provocation. I ex-
 “ pect from your Clemency, that in time you will abolish the remembrance thereof; and that when
 “ you see *Melissintha* Queen of the Saxons, you will have the same affection for them, as for the
 “ *Futlanders*; and that you will no longer divide the interest of our people, and our Families: per-
 “ mit me, Sir, to flatter my self with these hopes, through the confidence I have in your goodness;
 “ and suffer me at last to demand *Melissintha* at your hands, not for the merit of my services, which
 “ are not worthy so inclinable a reward, but for the reality of my love, which hath inspired me
 “ with a boldness to aspire to so glorious a fortune. Thus *Aldemir* expressed himself, and en-
 “ livened his expressions with so passionate a behaviour, that *Gisulphus* might have perceiv’d
 “ his love by that alone, had he been ignorant of it before. *Gisulphus* hearkened to his dis-
 “ course with all the marks imaginable of a deep respect, though with manifest signs of his
 “ inward perplexity: “ Sir, said he, though you speak over modestly of the obligations
 “ which we have received at your hands, yet I know well the price thereof, so as to confess,
 “ that they are above all that we can do, or all that we can think to acquit our selves of a
 “ satisfaction. We owe to you our lives and liberties several ways; and we are the more
 “ engaged to your good will, in regard you have exposed your self to the fury of your Fa-
 “ ther, and your King, and that you have refused no danger to succour the unfortunate:
 “ nor do I less understand the advantages of your Birth, and your high command after the
 “ death of your Father; and beyond all this, I look upon the merit of your person, which
 “ in a Soul like mine, is to be preferred before all the Dignity in the world. But, Sir, this
 “ knowledge serves me to no other purpose, than to let me see, that I am still to be unhappy,
 “ since my fortune gives me no more likelihood of that honour and felicity which you of-
 “ fer me, than if I had not the liberty to accept it: perhaps, Sir, you may not be ignorant,
 “ at least there are few that do not know it, that I have promised *Melissintha* to *Sinibald*,
 “ and to the King of the *Danes*, who entertained me, and protected me in my misfortunes,
 “ and who lent me the assistance of his Brother, and his own Forces to recover my Country.
 “ I know the odds between your Quality, and that of *Sinibald*: I believe also that the dis-
 “ ference between the merit of your persons is not at all advantageous to him; and I will
 “ not deny to recover, that in what you have done for the safety of *Melissintha* and my
 “ self, you have done more than he, in restoring me to the Crown. But what avails all
 “ this, unless it be to render me unfortunate? Since I am engaged by my Word which I
 “ cannot recall, and that I must be content to see *Melissintha* espoused to a Prince without a
 “ Crown, nor can expect any other than mine after my decease, who might otherwise be-
 “ hold

" hold her Queen of the Saxons (at the same time reigning my self in peace over the *Jutlanders*) by an access of happiness, espoused to so powerful a Prince, and a Prince to whom we are both so infinitely engaged. See, Sir, my condition, and while I excuse my inability, judge you which is the greatest misery, either yours, that in any other place may meet with a more happy fortune than that which you desire, or mine, who am not in a capacity to accept what you so kindly offer. This was the answer of *Gisulphus*, which *Aldemar* heard with a mortal grief; but as he feared before to find some difficulty in that pre-engagement of *Gisulphus* to *Sinibald*, so he did not despair to alter his resolution by vertue of those reasons and arguments which he had to alledge: and to this purpose, after a short silence, beginning again, *I have heard it said*, says he, *that there was a proposal made to you in Denmark, at such a time perhaps, when your bad fortune might persuade you to give something of attention: but I never heard that you had engaged your self by promise; and though you should have obliged your self, you know, that since that time there have happened sufficient accidents to excuse the disengagement. You were free, both you and Melisinthia, when you made any promise to Sinibald: but afterwards you lost your liberty, Melisinthia also lost hers. So that if the King of the Danes and Sinibald desire of you the performance of your word, they ought to have restored you your liberty, to the end you might be in a capacity to perform it.* " While I was a prisoner, replied *Gisulphus*, I might dispense with my promise, but now I am free, though it were by your assistance, and not through *Sinibald's* procurement, I am oblig'd to keep my word. It was a mutual engagement and stipulation, that if *Sinibald* recovered *Jutland*, I should grant him *Melisinthia*. He has perform'd his part of the obligation, and I ought to perform mine, else should I be the most treacherous among men, and should draw a just war upon my self, by making the King of *Denmark* my Enemy, who has always been my Protector. *Sinibald*, replied *Aldemar*, *expell'd the Saxons out of Jutland, because I forsook their defence to serve you, because I sent away my Army, that was able to have stopp'd his proceedings, because I threw my self into prison to redeem you, it was by such neglects as these, which would be my eternal shame (did not love excuse me) rather than through the valour of Sinibald that you recovered Jutland; and I suppose, you believe, that he might have found me strong enough to have opposed him, had I not rather chosen to lose all for your service, and that I had not renounc'd the Laws of Nature, and perhaps those of my Duty too, only for your sake. But, Sir, I am content, that you should leave your Crown to Sinibald, (for I omit to speak of your life, more than once by me preserved) only as she is my due, let me, and not Sinibald, enjoy Melisinthia: give to each of us, what you enjoy, by the services that each of us have perform'd: give to Sinibald, *Jutland* which he has won, provided that you leave me Melisinthia; let him rule over the *Jutlanders*, provided Melisinthia may be Queen of the Saxons. " Had I promised only *Jutland* to *Sinibald*, I would give it him immediately without more to do. But since it is only *Melisinthia* that I have promised him, there is nothing but the gift of *Melisinthia* can acquit me. Then let all things stand, (replied the Prince in a passion) as you left them after the the *Battel*, and let *Sinibald* force her out of my hands, if he has such a kindness for her: then she may be said to be his, but till then, he can claim no right of pretence to her, nor perhaps your self of disposing her in favour of him. " Seeing that *Melisinthia*, replied *Gisulphus*, was not in your power by any legal accident, but only by the violent chance of war, when we consider the arguments drawn from the unjust tyranny of your Family, which I have so long laboured under, you cannot pretend to have given her liberty, which she had not lost but by your means; and I would say the same of my own, were I not bound to you by other obligations than that of redeeming me out of prison. *Oh, Sir*, (said *Aldemar*, crossing his Arms upon his Breast, and retreating two or three steps backward) *I find now too apparently, that the services which I have done for you, have not yet appeas'd that implacable hatred that you bear against our Family; and perhaps this is not the first time I have perceiv'd, that you still look upon me as the Son of the King of the Saxons, and the Brother of Gondemond.* " I shall easily convince you of that opinion, replied *Gisulphus*, if you require any proof of my acknowledgment that I am capable to give. And unless it be that which I have disposed by promise, there is nothing within the verge of my power, which you may not absolutely command. *And what can you offer him*, (replied the Prince, beholding him with an angry look) *that holds any proportion with his services, and his Dignity, from whom you have received them? Have you any Offices or Treasuries to bestow upon me sufficient to make me amends for the loss of Melisinthia? Or have you within your Kingdom, where withal, to advance the fortune of such a person as Aldemar?* " I know very well, replied *Gisulphus*, very patiently, that I have nothing worthy your acceptance; and therefore seeing that *Melisinthia* her self is beneath your fortune, suffer me to give her to him from whom I came:*

“not take her. *There is a way, said the Prince, to satisfy me, and disengage your self. You are engaged by your promise to give Melisinthæ to Sinibald; and it may be you believe that I deserve her as well as he. Discharge your self from the trouble of determining between two persons to whom you are equally engaged, and leave the decision to valour and fortune: Sinibald is a brave and valiant Soldier, I am no Coward, let us dispute the possession of Melisinthæ with our weapons, that so either the success of the Victor, or the death of him that is vanquish'd, may save you harmless from all reproach or complaint. Let fortune favour which side she pleases, you can come by no harm; for the death either of Aldemar or Sinibald gives you full liberty of election, which otherwise so long as we both live, may be a trouble to your mind to see that you can satisfy neither.* “This proposal cannot be made, said Gifulphus, but by a person whose passion leaves him not the use of his reason; and you may very well judge, that I shall very unworthily behave my self towards *Sinibald*, to put that to the hazard of an encounter, which is his own by promise, and needs not be purchased at the price of his blood, or the hazard of his life: nor can I give any satisfaction to *Aldemar*, by exposing him to a Combat which may probably prove dangerous to his person. The possession of *Melisinthæ* is not so great a happiness as to be set to sale at the price of two such mens lives. And instead of saving my self harmless from reproaches and complaints, I could never pardon my own self for giving so fatal and so unjust a consent. Sir, said *Aldemar*, your consent is not at all necessary: we can with our Swords dispute the right of our pretences, without demanding your leave. “I am of opinion, replied Gifulphus, that *Sinibald* will not be willing to put that to the hazard of a Combat, which is his own by lawful right: and if I knew that he had any such intention, I have however power enough to prevent him. I cannot tell, (replied the Prince, who began to be impatient) whether you may have always power enough to maintain what you now say; or whether you may for all this behold your self again in your former condition of repentance. “I neither fear the effects of such a threat, replied Gifulphus, nor if it should befall me, could it make me repent of an action wherein I only did that which I ought to do. Well then, (said *Aldemar*, transported with anger) do what you ought to do, to advance the happiness of my Rival; but take from me first the ability, if I may advise you, of doing what I am able to obstruct it; or since that, notwithstanding the remembrance of some service, not to be forgotten without shame, you prefer before me a person inferior to me in all respects; Finish what you have begun, and take my life from me while you have it in your power; for be assured, if you do not prevent by my death the effect of my just anger, that I will arm the Saxons once more, and once more enter Jutland with Fire and Sword, to be revenged of your injustice; when *Sinibald* shall know, that he had not so easily vanquish'd the Saxons, had *Aldemar* fought at the head of his own Army. “To let you see, said Gifulphus, that these threatenings nothing at all terrifie me, I give you free leave to put them in execution, scorning the counsel which you give me to take away your life, while it is in my power. Neither the remembrance of what you have done for us, will permit me; nor does the fear of what you threaten, tempt me to it. And if you are not pleas'd to make any longer abode here, you shall have liberty to depart without any let or molestation within the Territories of my Jurisdiction. Yes, yes, I shall depart, replied *Aldemar*, and though for your sake, I have made a Father, who stretched forth his Arms to receive me in the midst of my adversity, my most mortal enemy, and that through this misfortune of mine I have no place of retreat, I have yet hopes, that what deprived your friend of refuge, will restore it to your enemy, and that I shall again find a Father whom I have lost; when I shall no longer be unfaithful to him for the love of you. Concluding these words he departed from the King's presence, so transported with rage, that he had much ado to prevent the fatal effects of a passionate fury. And they who met him coming out of the Closet, saw such apparent marks thereof in his eyes, that it was easie to conjecture what had pass'd. On the other side, *Gifulphus* was extremely nettled at his threatening language, nor had he endured it with so much patience, had not the remembrance of his great services been yet fresh in his memory; and that he thought it became him, to bear only words, from a person to whom he was so infinitely engaged. By and by he went to *Melisinthæ's* Apartment, but with so much disquiet in his face, that the Princess troubled thereat, thought her self obliged to enquire the cause. I understood the discourse that pass'd between them, from one of the Princess's maids of Honour, who had attended her in her imprisonment, and in all the misfortunes of her life; and from her it was that I learn'd all the particulars that I have hitherto related concerning the death of *Gondemond*, and many other things, that never could have come to light, but from the mouth of *Melisinthæ*, or her's, or of *Gifulphus*.

After he had suffered the Princess to make several entreaties, he told her at length all that had happened, and reheas'd to her word for word the whole discourse between him and the

the Prince. *Melifuntha* heard him very impatiently, and at length she was so disturbed in her mind, that *Gisulphus* could not draw one syllable from her, though he several times required her opinion upon the whole matter. He stood in admiration, and it may be was moved with pity, to behold such signs of sadness in her face: and therefore urging her with all his Authority to declare the reason; *Would you not have me sorry Sir,* said she, *to see, that instead of that peace which you expect; you will go about to kindle greater wars than ever: while he becomes our mortal enemy, to whose fidelity and courage more than once we owe our lives.* “You know, said *Gisulphus*, that one must be our Enemy either *Sinibald* or *Aldemar*: and as in provoking *Aldemar*, we only Arm a single power against us, who was our Enemy before; so you see well that your condition cannot be so bad, as if we should engage against us the Arms of the *Danish* King, whose protection is most necessary for us, and who by reason of the situation of our Territories, is a neighbour whose friendship is more important to us, than the Amity of the *Saxons*. But I fear *Melifuntha*, (adding to his discourse) that you mix particular with general considerations, and I believe I have discovered by some observations, that your thoughts encline rather to favour *Aldemar* than *Sinibald*. My thoughts Sir, replied the Princess, shall be always governed by your will, and though they were contrary to your intentions; I should find a way to reduce them to their obedience: But Sir I must confess, that as I have always thought, the obligations which we have received from Prince *Aldemar*, to be greater than what *Sinibald* ever laid upon us; and that it was my opinion, grounded upon several reasons, that you would have declared your self in favour of him; so I had disposed my self to obey your will, without any opposition. “How! replied *Gisulphus*, take you the services of *Sinibald* to be little considerable, when you know that 'tis to him I am beholding for my Crown? “Yes Sir, said *Melifuntha*, 'tis by the service of *Sinibald* that you reign, but by *Aldemar*'s that you live. And as your life has been always more dear to me than your Crown, I confess that I thought there was no comparison, between *Sinibald*'s kindness and *Aldemar*'s travel. I must tell you farther, if you please to give me leave, and if my interest be worth your consideration, that together with the obligations which I owe him for your life, I am indebted to him for my own, and that perhaps I may not be thought to have offended, if so just an acknowledgment have bred something of an affection? I may also add, that having by so many proofs experienced that tender affection, with which you have always honour'd me, I always thought that you would testify it, rather in providing well for my future welfare, than in other things of lesser importance: and for that reason I thought that you would rather chuse to see your Daughter, Queen of the *Saxons*, commanding a potent Kingdom; rather than the wife of a Prince, that can expect to wield no other scepter but yours after your decease. “Are you then ignorant of the promise that I have made, replied *Gisulphus*, and have you no consideration of my word? As for your promise, replied *Melifuntha*, I never thought that *Sinibald* had any reason, to claim the performance of it, who not being able to free you, from the imprisonment of the *Saxon* King; cannot in justice expect to make any advantage, of the trouble and danger to which he himself, who set you at liberty, exposed himself. “*Aldemar* himself, said the King of *Jutland*; pleads not his own cause better than you do: And I find that your gratitude is more prevailing than I could wish it, but if you have an affection for him; you had as good fix it upon some other object: for in short he is not the person, whom I have resolved upon to be your Husband. My affection, said the Princess, whatever it may be; shall always submit to your will: But I hope you will pardon me, for justifying the respect which I have for *Aldemar*, for those reasons which obliged me to entertain it, fearing also the effects of his indignation; which may possibly reduce us to our former misery. I have already declared, replied *Gisulphus*, that we have no less to fear from the King of the *Danes*: and that if we must have a war; I had rather wage it with our Enemy than with our continual protector. *Melifuntha* durst not make any farther reply, but he might well perceive by her countenance, that it would be no small grief to her to obey his commands.

In the mean while *Aldemar* prepared himself for his departure, upon which he debated within himself with a strange irresolution: not that he had but only one single place of retreat, for he knew of many in the Courts of those Princes where he had spent his travels, and where he had also many friends; but for that his thoughts were wholly employed, how to revenge himself upon the King of the *Jutlanders* for his ingratitude; to overturn the fortune of *Sinibald* and to obtain *Melifuntha* by conquest. He knew he could not live if he did not overcome the evil fortune that threatned him. which he saw he could not otherwise effect, than by engaging in a war with *Jutland*. He considered also that he was engaged by the threatening language which he had given *Gisulphus*: he found also that he could un-

dertake nothing of what he had design'd, without a sufficient Army and a powerful support and in short not without casting himself into his Father's Arms, to beg his pardon and assistance to make a war upon his Enemies. He could not doubt but that his Father was justly incens'd against him, and that his anger was not easily appeas'd: however he had hopes, to pacifie him by his humility; seeing that necessity constrain'd him to look upon him as his only Son, now that his other two were both lost: and more than out of any other consideration, by reason of the design which he then had of renewing the war, to the intent he might repair the loss of his honour, and the loss which the *Saxons* had suffered, by the overthrow that *Sinibald* had given them. As to what he had reason to fear in relation to his own person, he was little or nothing concern'd, for being to lose *Melisintha*: all other dangers were looked upon as nothing: so that at length he resolv'd to throw himself at the feet of the King his Father, and try if fortune would be so favourable to him, as to grant him what he hoped for. Thereupon calling to him, those of his own Attendants whom he had most respect for; he let us understand his unhappiness and the resolution he had taken: and commanded us to make all things ready, for his departure the next day. He had no reason to believe that the King would be at all displeas'd, with any of those that had attended him as his domesticks. But as for *Gelimer* he was loth to trust to the King's mercy, and therefore sent him away with a Letter, which he wrote in his behalf to the King of the *Vandals*, who was his particular friend, till he could make his peace with the King his Father, or that he himself were in a condition, to raise him to a better fortune than that which he had lost, by doing him that unhappy piece of service. He had a desire above all things to encounter *Sinibald*, and he did me the honour to chuse me out of all his Train, to send me with a message to him to that effect, and to perswade him without more ado, to put an end to the contest about the enjoyment of *Melisintha* by a single Combat, and to assure him that he would quit all his pretences to the Conquerour, if it were his fortune to be victorious. But it was impossible for me to speak privately with *Sinibald*, he was so narrowly watch'd; or rather so strictly guarded, as well by *Gisulphus* who by the discourse of *Aldemar* foresaw his design; and by all the rest of the Courtiers, to whom *Gisulphus* had given a special charge to take particular care of his person, that he was never to be met withal but in the midst of a great throng, who would not suffer any, especially the servants of *Aldemar*, to come near him. I doubt not however but that if it had been possible, to have made known his intentions to *Sinibald*; the *Danish* Prince would have given him all the satisfaction he could have expected, and that he would have done his endeavour to have baulk'd his Guards, to have let him understand that he deserved *Melisintha*, no less for his valour than for his fortune. However it were, our Prince could not find any opportunity to satisfy himself that way, and therefore was constrain'd to refer all his revenge, to the war which he was contriving, and to which he knew the King his Father had no less an inclination: He spent the rest of the day and the night following in preparing for his journey, and in hiring a Vessel to be ready for our transportation. *Jutland* is a Peninsula or half Island, fair, large and well peopled: but the entrances into it by land were in the possession of the *Danes*, being Masters of both sides of the Sea, and of all that space or tract of Land between shore and shore, which gives great advantages to the *Danes* over the *Jutlanders*: whom they keep shut in between those places and the Sea which environs them on every side, and that by reason of their being possess'd of those passes, they can either let in or keep out any other nation; that comes to invade the *Jutlanders* by land, which was the reason that the *Saxons* had so much trouble to keep that Country after they had conquered it, and that they were always forced to keep great Fleets at Sea, when they made war upon the *Jutlanders*, so long as the *Danes* were their Enemies, and refused them entrance by land as they had always done: And for this reason it was that we were compell'd to return by sea, and for that purpose to make sure of a vessel, which it was not very difficult for us to do. *Gisulphus* contenting himself only to spite *Aldemar* by refusing *Melisintha*, without impeaching his departure or giving him any other cause to complain; some hours before he took his last leave of the King, as it was necessary for us to do: the end he might give us free liberty; the Prince sent to know of *Melisintha*, whether he might be permitted to take his last leave of her, and whether he might be permitted to have some few minutes discourse with her out of the hearing of his Enemies; to whom the Princess not having received any order to the contrary, sent back word that she was ready to receive him privately in her closet. *Aldemar* hasted thither immediately, and entred himself singly leaving us in a Chamber hard by. *Melisintha* presently spyed in his countenance all the marks of his despair, nor was he without some consolation to behold in her eyes, all the signs of a real sorrow. But he had yet a far clearer manifestation of the Princess's inclinations, who coming toward him with a behaviour, far different from any that he

he had ever observ'd before, and eagerly preventing him as he was about to speak, "Princess, *said she*, it was chiefly my own desire to see you, to the end I might make you a credible profession of my innocency, and how little I am guilty of the ingratitude of my Father, and that I might justify my self before you, before the Gods, and before men; and let you know what a contest I have had with *Gisulphus*, as far as I durst venture to convince him that it was to your self, and not to *Sinibald*, that he was to surrender." *Melifintha*. I must add, (since in regard of the injustice which is done you, it is less sinful for me to confess that which till now I have never done) that as well my own inclinations, as my acknowledgment lead me to prefer you before *Sinibald*, and before all other men in the world; and that at the first time I saw you, I did not look upon you with an indifferent eye, and that my affection did not stay to expect the issue of your last services. I am perhaps imprudent to let you understand so much of my thoughts, at a time when I ought rather to conceal them, seeing that notwithstanding all this I am desir'd to another person. But my grief does not consult my prudence, and I had rather be wanting in that, than what I owe to your merit, your affection, your services, and my own repose. If in this you find any consolation, I am willing to share with you; and what ever resolution you shall take, I shall be glad to find you satisfied that I have neither been ungrateful, nor insensible.

These expressions so charm'd *Aldemar's* grief, that it almost remov'd it for a time, so that now with less melancholy, and less sadness in his eyes than had clouded them at his first entrance into the closet; *Oh Princess*; said he, *why flatter you my despair with words able to revive me from my Tomb, were they real?* "And why, (*said the Princess with a discontented aspect*) do you suspect them not to be true? Because, replied the Princess, *I am the most unfortunate among men; but if that which you tell me, were true, I should be no longer believe my self to be so, but I should esteem my self more fortunate than Sinibald: for in short, Aldemar, did I think it true, that your inclinations were agreeable to your acknowledgment of my love and services; and that it were true, that you believe you should be more happy with Aldemar than with any other person, as you should not only never be tyed to Sinibald, so nothing should hinder you from the enjoyment of your faithful Aldemar.* "If a true affection can produce that effect, replied *Melifintha*, you may be assured, but I cannot conceive how such an affection can disengage me from *Sinibald*, to make me *Aldemar's*. You have sufficiently testified, said *Aldemar*, that violence cannot force your inclinations, so that if you will act against *Sinibald*, and against *Gisulphus*, but half so much as you have acted against *Gondemond*, and the King of the Saxons, I desire all the power of Europe to give you to *Sinibald*. "Oh, Sir, replied *Melifintha*, blushing, have a care what you say; and consider, that there is a great difference between a tyrannical power, such as was your Father's constraint over me, and a lawful and natural authority, like that of *Gisulphus*: and can I look upon *Sinibald*, from whom we have received nothing but favour, as upon *Gondemond*, who deprived us at once of a Crown, our liberty, and the life of my two Brothers? Neither do I, replied *Aldemar*, require the death of *Sinibald*, nor the burning of this Palace; nor do I desire that you should use *Gisulphus* or *Sinibald* as Tyrants, or as Enemies. But if you have the same constancy to refuse *Sinibald*, as you had to deny *Gondemond* at the very Altar it self; if you have but the same confidence to commit your self to the Sea with *Aldemar*, as you had to trust your self with *Gisulphus*, all the assembled Forces of the Danes and Jutlanders together, should not hinder you from being Queen of the Saxons. "You know, replied the Princess very affectionately, that it is not lawful for me to disobey my Father, as I did my Enemy; and that what might be accounted an act of courage and constancy, in that extremity, and possibly might deserve praise, would now be otherwise construed, and would draw upon me the reproach of all the world. "And for going away with *Aldemar*, as I fled away with *Gisulphus*, I would willingly consent to it, if Virtue and Duty would permit me to follow a Lover, as they commanded me to follow a Parent. What then wilt you do for me, (*replied Aldemar*, relapsing into his former melancholy) and what success am I to expect from that pity which you make me believe you have for me; or from that affection with which you permit me to comfort my self? "I have discovered the affection I have for you, said the Princess, not for you to expect relief from thence, but to let you understand that I do not merit any that in those reproaches you may justly cast upon them that do you the injustice; and that by these proceedings of *Gisulphus*, whence your misfortune derives it self, I my self shall also become unhappy. If it be so, replied *Aldemar* I am still engag'd to do more yet than I thought for, and that if I thought to enterprise this to prevent my own misfortune, there is nothing which I ought to leave unattempted, to prevent yours; I make no question but I shall be able to stop this

course of Sinibald's fortune, if you will be but so kind as to assist me: for if you can but defer for some few months the consummation of this fatal marriage, by that power which you have over Gifulphus, I will put his affairs into such a confusion, that he shall not have time to think farther of it. "How, (said the Princess, full of sorrow) must I be the incendiary to set all my native Country in a combustion? Must the blood of thousands be shed for me? And for my sake must our Family be reduced to our former calamity? Oh, Aldemar, I must never consent to this; and if you have any love for me, you will never appear in Arms against my Father. As for the life of Gifulphus, replied Aldemar, to me it shall always be sacred and inviolable; for whatever prejudice I may have against his humour, his death will never be an introduction to my happiness: And as for your Subjects, I will ease them as much as in me lies, from the miseries of war; to which end I will be sure to fall most heavy upon Denmark: But as for the happiness of Sinibald, you must give me leave to oppose it with Fire and Sword, which if you forbid me to do, you had as good yield your self to Sinibald, and suffer me to kill my self in your presence. "As I do not permit you, replied Melintha, so I deny you nothing; for as I dare not give you such a Commission as may make me guilty of all the miseries that shall happen to my Country, so neither is it for me to deny any thing to a Prince to whom I owe all things. You might do more than you do, replied the Prince, for if you remember what you once promised me; Redeem my Father, said you, if it lies in your power, and hope for all things. " (Peace, said Melintha, seeing him stop at these words) peace, Prince, and do but recollect your self; for then you will find, that what I meant by hoping all things, was intended of all things that were within the limits of an obedience, not repugnant to my Father's will. I have done more than I promised, for I have not only declared to my Father how ready I would be to obey his pleasure, should he command me to prefer you before Sinibald, but I have also let him understand, perhaps more than became me to do, that I should never willingly obey him, if he commanded me the contrary. What farther lies in my power I shall not leave undone; and while you by gentle means endeavour to change the resolution of Gifulphus, I will delay the consummation to the utmost of my power, and to the farthest length of time that I am able; nay, I will tell Sinibald himself, if I cannot otherwise prevail, that out of the dislike which I have to the marriage, I must have time to frame my humour to it: if you love me, be but satisfied with what I am able to perform; and assure your self, that I will sooner die, than injure my Gratitude; should I do that, I were not worthy of your affection, seeing that the honour I have to be beloved by you, is by me valued at a higher rate, than to omit any thing, so long as I live, that may assist me to deserve it. These your good thoughts of me, replied the Prince, are above all expressions of my thanks; and it lies on my part, to make my self worthy, by all the ways that my love and fortune are capable to contrive for my advantage. In the mean time I must depart and leave you to your self, and perhaps I shall never see you more, till married to Sinibald. "Come, said Melintha to him, the Gods will be perhaps more favourable than you expect: and you may depend upon my promise, that I will forget nothing within the limits of my ability to keep off the evil day. In the mean while, I conjure you, not to flie out when you take leave of Gifulphus, least out of the fear of what mischief you may do him, he may put a stop to your journey. I shall obey your command, replied Aldemar, and for that I know I shall sooner obtain Melintha by force, than by a second imprisonment, I shall do nothing that may prevent my being in a condition to win her. Having said these words, he took his leave, though not with so much resolution, but that his grief shewed it self with all the visible marks that usually accompany it; nor with so much constancy on Melintha's part, but that her fair cheeks were over-flowed with her tears.

Going out of the Princess's Chamber, he sent to know of Gifulphus, whether he might conveniently wait upon him; but the Prince of Jutland, remembering how far he was obliged to him, and who was as unwilling to provoke him as possible might be, presently left his own Appartment to wait upon him, and met him in a Chamber not far from Melintha's, where the Prince stayed the return of the messenger; Gifulphus excused himself for what he had been constrain'd to do, upon his words: but Aldemar, not forgetting what Melintha had commanded him, and who was willing to avoid all occasions of being stayed in Jutland, out of the design he had to return thither in a better Equipage, disssembled a great part of his anger, and took his leave with so much moderation, that Gifulphus had some reason to hope, that time and his absence from Melintha might make him quite lay aside his indignation. He would not visit Sinibald, but seeing him pass through the Chamber, as he was talking with Gifulphus, notwithstanding the resolution he had taken, he could not contain himself, but stopping him in his passage, and taking him by the hand, Sinibald, said he,

you must know, that you are beholding to me for Melintha, if it be the will of the Gods that you enjoy her, since 'tis to me that you are oblig'd for her liberty, and the life of Gifulphus: I would have contended for her, if our fortune had been equally favourable; for you must give me leave to think that I deserve her as well as you. No question but *Sinibald* made him an answer; but *Aldemar*, who left him as he had done speaking, would not stay to hear it, not being willing to engage himself in a contest whence he could not easily get off. In a short while after we took Horse, and because *Gifulphus* was unwilling to discontent the Prince as little as might be, we had all accommodations for our journey; and the next day we found a Vessel ready at one of the Ports of *Jutland*, wherein the Prince being embark'd, steer'd directly for the Coasts of *Saxony*.

Our King was then at *Hispalia*, a City seated in the middle of all his Territories, where he was raising more Forces, to carry on the war which he intended again to renew, against his implacable Enemies, and where he almost pined himself to death for grief. He had laid to heart the loss of *Jutland*, a fair and large Province, which till then had much added to the largeness of his Territories; and he had impatiently born the loss of that Battel which *Sinibald* had won, whereby he was constrained to quit *Jutland* to the Victor. But he was less afflicted at these losses, than with *Aldemar's* behaviour, whom love had caused to act so contrary to his love and interest. To that misfortune he attributed all the rest that had befallen him since the death of *Gondemond*: and because he verily believed, that if *Aldemar* had commanded his Army into *Jutland*, he had put a stop to *Sinibald's* success, and thereby not only sav'd the loss of the Battel, but kept *Jutland* still in his subjection, therefore he look'd upon him as the author of all his evil fortune. But his displeasure was more encreas'd by the liberty which he had given to *Gifulphus*, at such a time when he could have hindered him, as a Captive, from making any advantage of what *Sinibald* had done for him, and that he had some possibility of revenging himself for the death of *Gondemond*, and of being able to oppose himself to all the designs of his Enemies, that watch'd all opportunities to annoy him.

These wrongs committed by the only Son that he had left alive, overwhelmed him with a heap of affliction; and he was the more apprehensive thereof, knowing the rare endowments of his Son, and that his Princely Qualities were such, that he could not choose but love and esteem him. This affection, which notwithstanding all his fury, he could not drive from his heart, sometimes would persuade him to excuse the first faults of *Aldemar*, occasioned by that unfortunate passion, that had been the destruction of his other two Sons, and the effects whereof he fear'd in relation to this. Sometimes he saw some reason for what he had done, in giving *Gifulphus* his liberty, when he considered the Prince's contempt of his own freedom, and of his life it self, in committing it to the power of his enemies, till he could redeem himself by an exchange with *Gifulphus*. At other times, according to the different passions that reigned successively in his breast, as before he sought to excuse him, so then he sought to condemn him. In short, though he knew him to be guilty of offences bad enough to deserve his anger, nature pleaded for him, and represented to the King that he was his only child, that he was a Son to be esteem'd for the merit of his virtues, before either of those which he had lost, that he wanted his assistance to support his old age, and to oppose his Enemies, which made him earnestly wish that he would return to his Duty, that he would forget *Melintha*, and that he would recal himself into a condition to make amends for what he had committed.

These were the King's thoughts, though he concealed them as much as it was possible; when we arrived at *Hispalia*, after a prosperous voyage; and that the Prince having concealed his arrival, and surprizing him in his Closet, threw himself with all humility at his feet, embracing his knees. The King surpris'd at his arrival, was a good while before he could conceive him to be the same person, but when he was assured that it was the Prince, thrusting him weakly from his knees, *How*, *Aldemar*, said he, *is it you, and is it possible that you have left Melintha?* Yes, Sir, replied the Prince, *I am that offender, more worthy the thunder of your anger, than the marks of your affection. I have robb'd you of the revenge of Melintha, I committed my self a prisoner to the custody of your Enemies, to redeem her Father out of your hands; I loyter'd there, while I should have oppos'd the Arms of *Sinibald*; I delivered *Gifulphus* from those Fetters which you had provided for him. In short, I am guilty of all these, and many more offences, and worthy all the punishment which they deserve, unless the passion which forc'd me to commit them, may in some measure qualifie the heynousness of my crimes; and that you will be pleas'd to consider, that a Lover together with his heart sometimes loses his reason. I confess also that my repentance proceeds not from a good ground, since misfortune and indignation restore me to my Duty; and that if *Gifulphus* had not prov'd ingrati-*

ful, I had linger'd all my life long at the feet of Melisinthæ. If my weakness and my misfortune provoke your anger, punish me, Sir, as your Subject: If they move your pity, look upon me as your Son, and attribute my faults rather to my evil fate, than to my intentions. "Then, said the King, you return to me, but only because Gisulphus was ingrateful; or that you had stay'd with him still, had he been so kind as you expected. 'Tis truth, reply'd the Prince, and if this confession which I make, deserve your anger, I am contented to die, rather as the object of your pity, than of your indignation; and perhaps shall be no less bound to you for my death, than for the life which you gave me. "This despair shews, reply'd the King, that you find your self wrong'd by your Enemies; and I would have concern'd my self in your quarrel, had you not forsaken me to serve them. But in short, what am I to expect from this repentance of yours, such as it is? Will it produce good effects, though the ground thereof be bad? Come you now to employ your valour in the revenge of your Brother's death, and to the destruction of Gisulphus and Melisinthæ? Sir, as for Melisinthæ, reply'd Aldemar, nothing but death can make me cease to love her, and consequently I am compelled not to attempt the life of her Father. But, Sir, if your anger can be any other way appeas'd, than by shedding that blood which I am forbid to still; if I may any way deserve your forgiveness of those faults which my love has committed, if you will trust me with the conduct of your Army, I will pluck from the ingrateful Gisulphus that Crown which they have set upon his head: I will repair the loss that you have suffer'd, through the fortune of Sinibald, and I will prevent, at the price of my blood, a marriage not more fatal to me, than destructive to your Kingdom, and pernicious to the well being of your Sovereignty. "You are more amorous than politick, reply'd the King, and by your past actions it is easie to judge. that rather your love than the good of my Kingdoms, inflames your passion. But let it be as it will, (for I must not deny, this alliance between the Danes and Jutlanders to be prejudicial to me, and that it deprives us almost of all hopes ever to be Masters of Jutland) though I should have so much of paternal affection to pardon your past offences, though I should so far confide in you, as to put you at the head of an Army, do you think I would ever give so much way to your foolish passion, as to let you espouse that cruel woman who kill'd your Brother. Oh, Sir, reply'd the Prince, Melisinthæ is altogether innocent of the death of Gondemond. And by Gisulphus himself while he remain'd imprison'd under your power, would he but have confess'd the truth from his own mouth, you would have plainly been convinc'd that Melisinthæ never was consenting to the murder; she was more than sorry for the fact, though it be true, that she hated Gondemond as the person that slew her Brothers. And if you knew her, Sir, you might apparently see that inhumanity is a crime no way compatible with her virtue. In short, Sir, (said the Prince, pursuing his discourse, when he perceiv'd that the King patiently hearkened to him) either inflict upon me that death which I have deserv'd, and by a just punishment deprive your self of the only child the Gods have left you, or else forbid me not to hope that you will one day behold with pity the effects of a passion which you your self did once approve, though it cost both your Sons their lives, and will send me also to the Grave, if your goodness save me not, the only remedy of my affliction, which I have so unhappily abused. Concluding these words, he embraced the King's knees, and moisten'd them with such a stream of tears, that the King, who could not but regard his noble qualities, which he really doted on, and who look'd upon him as the only object of all his hopes, could no longer withstand the motions of his affection, and immediately letting fall a shower of tears, he tenderly embrac'd him; and after a short silence, Well, Son, said he, I am resolv'd to pardon what is past, and will pardon Melisinthæ for your sake; and I am resolv'd to arm all my Forces, to the end you may be able to dispute the possession of her with Sinibald.

He utter'd his mind in these few words, which were so pleasing to the Prince's ears, that they transport'd him with all the joy that his Soul was capable to receive. He made it appear in the passionate returns of his thanks, and gave such satisfaction to the King for the favour he had done him, that oblig'd the King to bestow upon him all the marks of his affection that he could desire. After this, all the Court came to congratulate the Prince: and as he was honour'd for his deserts, for the sweetness of his behaviour, and his obliging familiarity; and for that they had reason to expect something from him beyond the fame of his Brothers, or the renown of all his Ancestors, they solemniz'd his return and reconciliation to the King, with all the signs and ceremonies of publick joy.

During these publick festivals, the King finding every day more and more reason to love and esteem him, and to settle the affection which he had for him; manifest'd his diligence in nothing more, than in hastening to compleat his levies, to the end he might be furnish'd with a sufficient power to win Melisinthæ: and in short, that I may finish my relation. Both

Father and Son so well plyed their affairs, and so well improved the friendship of their confederates; that in a short time they raised an Army, greater than had been raised in our Country in all the former wars: and being of opinion that in regard of the strict league that was between the *Danes* and the *Jutlanders*, that it was necessary to make war against both Nations at once; they agreed that while *Aldemar* with a puissant Army invaded *Jutland*, the King with another Army should fall into *Denmark*, not expecting to make any great conquest there; so much as to prevent the *Danish* King from succouring *Gisulphus* and *Sinibald*. What they had resolved they put in execution a few days after, to which purpose, *Aldemar* having now ready the most numerous Fleet, that had been seen upon our Seas for many years, embark'd his men: and the King at the same time begun his march for *Denmark*. I made no question but that I should have attended Prince *Aldemar*, to whose service I had entirely devoted my self, among the rest that had attended upon him in his misfortunes in *Jutland*, of which number was *Gelimer*, whose peace he had made with the King. But the King made choice of me in particular, said *Gismond*, to send me to your Majesty, (addressing himself to the King of *Suevia*) to let you know the reasons that hindered him from joyning with you in your quarrel, or from sending any forces to your assistance. I doubt not Sir, but you find them sufficient for him, to hope that you will excuse his disappointment, and that notwithstanding the allyance between the *Danish* King and yourself, you will be pleased to keep your self a Neuter, as you have hitherto done betwixt the two Crowns.

This was the relation of *Gismond*, and as those illustrious Auditors had hearkened with all attention and heed imaginable, to the adventures of *Aldemar* and to what *Melantha* had suffered; they could not but be much concern'd and troubled within themselves, to understand the misfortunes of two such unhappy Lovers; wishing all happiness to *Aldemar* and all success to his undertaking. The Queens, the Princesses, the Kings and Princes, who composed that Royal Society, every one declared their opinions: and there were very few that favoured *Sinibald*, or who were not offended at *Gisulphus*, though there was no want of Arguments to excuse his proceeding: Only the King of *Suevia* differed in his judgment from all the rest, and when he had an opportunity to speak, addressing himself to *Gismond*; *We have no reason*, said he, *to complain of the King of the Saxons, for he has too many irons in the fire to concern himself with us, but I must tell you that I pity his weakness, and that he does not deserve to succeed in his designs, for his indulgence to the foolish passion of Aldemar. We would have otherwise counselled him, had he required our advice: but perhaps the event will teach him whether he hath acted prudently or no.* And so concluding he bid the Queens good night, and took *Gismond* along with him, and by reason it was late, the other Princesses did the same; leaving the Princesses to their repose.

The End of the Third Book of the Sixth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK IV.

THat Night was spent by those illustrious personages, as many others preceding had been: for there was hardly one in the whole company, whom love gave liberty to sleep. *Balamir* who among all these lovers, was none of those that suffered the least, though he were the most esteem'd and favour'd of all those that admired the *Cimbrian Queen*, and who had more than one reason to be perplexed in his mind; was the first that was stirring next morning, and going to the King of *Suevia*; he desired leave to visit Prince *Viridomar*. That King who infinitely respected him and revered him for his virtue, though their dispositions were far different; would by no means deny him: so that the Prince of the *Huns*, having first sent to know of *Viridomar* whether it might be seasonable, went into his chamber. If *Balamir* by what he had observed, in the person of *Viridomar*, and by the same which he had heard of his Acts, had conceived that respect for the Prince which was due to him; *Viridomar* who in their society one with another, and that first part of an encounter, had found in him all things answerable to his renown, was no less just in paying him according to his merit. Nor was it to be perceived during those visits which *Balamir* made *Viridomar*, oftner than any other of the Princes, that the late quarrel had bred in the heart of *Balamir*, any effect so worthy the grandeur of his Soul, which *Viridomar* did not find redoubled in his own breast for him: Nor could he without sorrow or at least without some shame, behold *Balamir* the first in manifesting those kind thoughts of each other, which were common to both. He received *Balamir* with all becoming grace, and gave him to understand by his looks, that the discontent which his passion might occasion, did not hinder him from being sensible of the satisfaction which he received in his visit: instigated therefore by the engagement laid upon him, because he could not go before him, being detained by his wound in his bed; he was willing at least to prevent the discourse which he expected from him, with the testimonies of his acknowledgment: Therefore after *Balamir* was fate down by his bed-side, looking upon him rather like a Freeman than a Captive; *You ought*, said he, *to have contented your self in admiring Viridomar, either for his discourse or for his courage; without shewing him this last advantage which you have got over him: nor can he otherwise comfort himself, than in the joy which he has to find his own thoughts so conformable to yours, though fortune have denyed him the opportunity to give the first testimony thereof.* "I cannot tell," said *Balamir* smiling, whether I durst have given you a visit in any other place, than where you have neither Arms nor freedom: For if you call to mind that violence, which you offered to a just inclination, that made me to covet the Honour of your friendship, rather than the encounter, you may thence conjecture, that I should be safer in any other place, than here." "I should be ashamed of an offence which you call to my remembrance," replied the Prince of *Suevia*, if I did not believe that for the reason which now you know, you might have excused it in part, and if the other might not be justified by the glory, which I thought to have purchased in the encounter." "You had so little need," replied the Prince of the *Huns* to seek for honour by that encounter, who are laden with the renown of so many other famous deeds; that if you had no other reason you might be blam'd, to have compelled a person to fight who had no inclination to it: and who refused it so long, that you had good cause to suspect his courage. "If that reason," replied *Viridomar*, will not justify me, I hope you will have regard to others: and you know too much of love, to excuse the fault which love causes us to commit. "We have so great an obligation to yours," replied *Balamir*, that we

“are engaged particularly to respect it : for if love had not prepossessed your heart to de-
 “send it against that Celestial beauty, that makes so many persons miserable, your return
 “into *Germany* had been fatal to our hopes. “It may be, *said Viridomar*, that in regard of
 “the good opinion which the King of the *Cimbrians* had of me, my love might have vy’d
 “with the affection of any of *Rosamond’s* admirers. But if the dispute lay upon virtue and
 “merit, that of Prince *Balamir* is too formidable, to give me any hope of success. I say the
 “virtue of Prince *Balamir*, for as for those other pretenders who have united themselves
 “in her Quarrel against King *Pharamond*; I had not for any of them quitted my own interest.
 “You would but too well have defended it, both against *Pharamond* and against us, *replied*
 “*Balamir*, and we find by your taking part with the King of the *Franks*, how great advan-
 “tages he has, through the beauty of his Sister in the assistance of your Arms. There is no
 “way that I could ever hope, to succeed against the King of the *Franks*, though by that
 “success which he hath had against me in two Battels; I got more honour than in all those
 “other wherein fortune was more favourable to me. I only wish for your sake that you
 “were not his Rival, for setting aside all other obstructions that oppose him; he had no
 “reason in the world to despair, had he not *Balamir’s* merit to encounter. “This merit,
 “(*replied Balamir very modestly*) is not worthy that applause which you give it, so inconsi-
 “derable in respect of *Pharamond’s*, that he has the least reason in the world, to suspect or
 “be afraid of it. ’Tis my misfortune to be his Rival not my desire : and as I sought for
 “death in finding love, so I make no question, that in this love I may find that death, which
 “a former love made me seek. “To say the truth the danger is apparent enough, *replied*
 “*the Prince*, which threatens all them that are Armed against *Pharamond’s* life : and well they
 “may expect to, meet with death in the attempt. But seeing there is no less danger of
 “*Pharamond’s* life than of yours, and that to whether of you two fortune gives the victory,
 “by the death of the other, the whole world will be the loser ; therefore it were to be wish-
 “ed that *Balamir* were not *Pharamond’s* Enemy. “I have already declared to the great
 “*Countance*, *replied Balamir*, that I was no foe to *Pharamond*, though by misfortune I was
 “become his Rival : and as I will never hazard a Combat with you more upon this dispute,
 “(*thus he went on smiling*) so there shall be nothing wanting, either of my counsel or en-
 “deavours to conclude a peace with him. And I dare presume to tell you, that as much
 “link’d to his interest as you are, whether through your own inclination, or for the love
 “you bear the Princess his Sister, you cannot have a higher esteem, nor a more venerable re-
 “spect for the merit of *Pharamond* than my self. “He is very unfortunate, *replied the Prince*
 “of *Suevia*, that having so much merit he should have so many Enemies, for that virtue is
 “unhappy that produces miserable effects. “But Sir, (*said Balamir, to alter the subject of*
 “*the discourse*) may we be well assured that you will not change your opinion? And
 “though you have defended your self against the first sight of *Rosamond*, (for we understand
 “that you have seen her) may we think that you will always preserve your self with the
 “same success, and that we shall not be trebly unhappy, in finding you among the number
 “of our Rivals, who are so much to be feared? “I confess, *said Viridomar*, that before such
 “a Beauty as *Rosamond’s*, there is no man dares presume to undertake, either for his own
 “liberty when he is free ; nor for his fidelity though engaged in his affections to another.
 “But this I dare assure you, that how divine soever she may appear, she will never cause
 “any other effects in me but of admiration and respect. For that which defends me from
 “all the power of her Glances, is a beauty not so contemptible, that a man can expel from
 “his heart the resemblance thereof, having once taken possession of it. “I have, *said Ba-*
 “*lamir sighing*, known some that have said as much, but however they have been very
 “much deceived. In some persons, *replied the Prince of Suevia*, who having lost their
 “hopes wander in search of a cure ; or in some lovers, who for many years like Prince *Bala-*
 “*mir*, have lost their beloved object ; it is not impossible to find this alteration : But for
 “me that do not believe my self in that condition, and who do not despair of my good for-
 “tune ; I promise you, Sir, I shall never be your Rival, so you never love *Polixena*. *Bala-*
 “*mir* was about to reply, when *Gondioch* who as well as himself, had obtained leave of the
 “King of *Suevia* to visit the Prince entred the Room. *Viridomar* courtcouly received him,
 “though he had no great kindness for him ; by reason of his ingratitude toward *Pharamond* :
 “however he had reason to consider his Royal dignity, and those great endowments of his
 “mind, by means whereof he had gained so high a renown ; before his passion had Eclipsed
 “the lustre of his virtue. *Gondioch* after some expressions of his sorrow for his misfortune,
 “and his readiness to serve him to the utmost of his power ; told him that he came particu-
 “larly at the request of *Gondemar*, who could not rest in quiet for the error which his jealousy
 “had caused him to commit : and that notwithstanding his wounds that kept him in his bed,

he would have come himself to have desired his pardon, had he not been hindred by force. That against him of all men in the world, he would never have drawn his sword, and that instead of assaulting his person had he known him; he would rather have defended him to the last drop of his blood. *Viridomar* answered to the first part of his discourse, that as to his own particular, he had done very justly and honourably: but when he had heard what had been delivered on *Gondemar's* behalf; "I cannot tell, *said he*, whether it does not rather become me to make my excuse to *Gondemar*, since I might have avoyded the encounter which he forced me to, had I let him see his error: But as it was a thing of too great importance for me to discover, and for that men like him and my self do not readily explain their meaning, when they are dar'd by another with a Sword in his hand; I am in some hopes that he will the sooner pardon me, for what farther past between us; instead of condemning him I shall applaud him as long as I live: and I find all his Actions so worthy the esteem which all the world has of him, that if I had another Sister, with whom I might do him those kind offices, which *Albifinda* denyes me to pretend to; there are few in the world that I would advise her to prefer before him. The only fault that he committed was, in disclosing a secret which you trusted to a person of no worth, by means whereof you have occasioned all this trouble. "As for me, (*replied Gondioch somewhat ashamed of himself*) I assure you that it was as much against my will, as it was against the will of *Gondemar* that this secret was discovered, and that I should have been more wary, had I known that you had been any way concerned. "I am nothing troubled for my own concerns, *replied the Prince of Suevia*, for you see I did not mind my own interest, when the repose and reputation of my Sister lay at stake. "If *Briomer*, *said Gondioch*, who has imprudently committed an error, thought you would not be displeas'd to see him; he would endeavour to justify himself. "No Sir, *replied the Prince*, I care not for the fight of him, and were I at liberty I would make him understand, that it becomes not such a one as he, to blemish the reputations of persons that he ought to reverence. This discourse had set the two Princes in a heat, in regard of the prejudice that *Viridomar* had against *Gondioch*; if *Balamir* had not prevented it by changing the subject of the discourse, and if the Prince of *Persia* together with *Martian*, and after them the King of the *Alains*, the *Herules*, and the *Basternes*, had not entred the Room and interrupted them. They all profered their services and their civilities to the Prince of *Suevia*, who received them all like one, who was not unacquainted how to entertain great personages, especially the Prince of *Persia*, whose high dignity and generous qualities deserved a particular consideration. *Varanex* put him in mind of the accident, which first gave him the honour of knowing him; when *Viridomar* thanked him for the favour which he did him at that time; in saving him when he was expos'd to so much danger, while he encountred *Balamir*. *Alderic* and *Gudegesile* omitted nothing to express their good intentions toward him, and the young King of the *Basternes*, who for the love which he had for *Albifinda*, was particularly oblig'd to a more than ordinary address, behaved himself with singular applause. Their discourse was upon several indifferent subjects; for *Viridomar*, who had not the same kindness for any of the rest, as he had for *Balamir*, would admit no discourse of *Pharamond*; or if it were urg'd, *Balamir* by his prudence assist'd him to put it off.

Soon after they took their leaves altogether, and went with the King of *Suevia* to wait upon the Queens who were already dress'd: they found them altogether in the Queen of the *Cimbrians* Chamber, who rose the latest; and because it was a lovely day, the Prince of *Persia* made a proposition to the Queens, to take the air in a great Wood that was between the two Camps, where there were several fair and spacious walks, delightful shades, and some pleasing Fountains, and security enough by reason of the cessation. The Queens consented to the proposal, and having given their orders accordingly, they made haste with Dinner that they might have the more time to walk. *Rosamond* and *Amalzontha* were the more ready and willing to go, thinking they might find there a better opportunity to entertain themselves in private, than where they were always haunted and pester'd with a crowd. After Dinner the Chariots were soon ready, but because those fair Princesses (according to the custom of the age wherein they liv'd) were wont to ride a Horseback; several beautiful Nags were made ready, caparison'd with costly and magnificent Furniture, and led after the Chariots for the Ladies to ride, when they came to the Wood. The two Queens and the Princess rode together in *Rosamond's* Chariot, leaving the rest to their Attendants, and with a magnificent Convoy of Princes that attended them on Horseback, they took their way toward the head of the River *Seguz*, which rises at one end of the Wood.

This fair company, the fairest then to be seen in the world, rode slowly towards the Wood; and the Lovers of *Rosamond* surrounding her Chariot, every one strove to divert

her with some discourse or other, or were else ambitious to give her the opportunity to observe their graceful postures in sitting and managing their prancing Steeds: only *Jordan* is prepossessed with either melancholy or discontent, stayed behind. But the Prince of *Persia*, the valiant *Balamir*, *Ardaric* and *Godegesile*, with the young King of the *Basternes*, accompanied of *Albifinda*, appeared all together in great splendour, keeping as near about the Chariot as the way and opportunity would permit. But the King of *Suevia*, burnd with other thoughts than those of Gallantry, kept at a distance, accompanied with *Marnez*, *Briomer*, and some other the most considerable Commanders of the Army. At length, the Queens, together with their train and their Royal Convoy, came to the Wood; and being already got into a clean and open way, *Albifinda* and *Amalazomba* who had before agreed to ride, causing their Horses to be brought for themselves, and some of their Attendants, were presently set up by the assistance of the Princes, who crowded to proffer their services, and took no small delight to behold their skill and comely grace in riding. The Queen of the *Cimbrians* not having a disposition to follow their example, desired to be dispensed withal, and remained alone in her Chariot that followed after them that Rode.

They had already taken some turns, when they found themselves at the end of the Wood where *Balamir* and *Viridomar* had fought some days before upon a quarrel about *Pharamond*, but had been parted by the Prince of *Persia*, who also there first beheld the fair *Rosamond*. By the importance of the accident that had rendred it remarkable, he knew it again, and being willing to put *Balamir*, who rode on the opposite side of the Chariot, in mind of it: See there, said he, where once I saw two valiant Combatants with their Swords in their hands, and where once perhaps I saw'd both the one and the other from no small danger. For my part, said *Balamir*, I believe my self to be the person who was most oblig'd to your kindness, for I make no question but I was in the greatest danger: but perhaps that place ought not to be so remarkable to you for the noble action which you there performed, as for the first sight of the Queen, and the effects which thit has produc'd. True it is, replied *Varanez* that there it was that the fight of her finish'd what the fair Picture had begun: nor have I forgot, that it is to you that I stand indebted both for the one and the other. I expect that you should return me thanks, replied *Balamir*, when you find that you have reason to bless your self for the good fortune of that accident: or if your happiness be not answerable to your wishes, that I did what lay in my power to preserve you out of the number of the miserable. You have perhaps some reason, (answered *Varanez* very fiercely) to keep me from that misfortune, for possibly you will find no great comfort to have a person so considerable as my self for your Rival. When that misery befalls me, replied *Balamir*, smiling, I must endure it patiently; and besides you are not ignorant, that we are wont to comfort our selves in the crosses that proceed from our Rivalship, with the thoughts of that honour which we may be likely to purchase in the dispute with our Competitors. He uttered these words so seriously, that the Prince of *Persia* had not so easily digested them, but that the presence of the Queen curb'd his anger, so that while he with a redness in his cheeks that betrayed his choler, was studying what to reply, *Ardaric*, who for his own interest was equally concern'd with *Balamir*, preventing him, True it is, Sir, said he, that it is a very great misfortune to have a potent Rival; and although perhaps I may not want courage to dispute my pretences, yet I am not of *Balamir's* humour, and rather than gain honour by your competitorship, I wish you were both fix'd to your former affections, and that I had not the honour to have you for my Rival. Though it were so, replied *Godegesile*, I question whether you would be the happier for that, for you would find others that would give you the same trouble. I know, said *Ardaric*, that the King of the *Burgundians* is no contemptible Rival, and may be no small obstruction in my way; but were we deliver'd from the fear of these two, your heart and mine would be much more at ease. For my part, said Prince *Balamir*, I fear none of those things; for though perhaps I have as much courage as another, I must be so just to my self, not to hope to be ever happy. "If you did your self justice, (replied the *Cimbrian* Queen, who till then heard them with silence) you would have a better opinion of your fortune: But fortune, (concluding with a sigh, said she) is a Goddess that respects not virtue.

Thus discoursing they entered the Wood, being led by *Albifinda* and *Amalazomba* who rode a Horseback before; when the Princes of *Suevia* coming up to the Chariot to speak something that she had to say to *Rosamond*, the Queen of the *Turingians* still rode on before the company; and being always known to love solitude, because it gave her thoughts their full liberty, the Lovers of *Rosamond* kept close to the Chariot, and the King of the *Basternes* applyed himself to *Albifinda*, while *Amalazomba* rode slowly before, musing to her self upon what the passion then ruling in her heart suggest'd to her remembrance; but while she was in this pleasing study, she heard a noise among the Bushes, and by and by the

saw a wild Boar come rushing forth with so much violence against the very nose of the Horse, insomuch that the Nag, perhaps naturally fearful, was scared after such a manner, that he started out of the smooth way into the thickest part of the Wood, and getting the Bridle between his Teeth, carried the frighted Queen among the Trees, not being able in the fright she was to hold him in. The danger she was in, either of being thrown, or kill'd among the Trees, together with her crying out for help, made them who had most passionately fix'd their eyes upon the Queen, to change their object; and though the admirers of *Rosamond* took no small delight to be near her Chariot, yet this accident made them all flie to the succour of the Queen of the *Turingiens*, so that there was none that stayed by the Chariot but *Albifinda*, and some few whose Duty it was not to stir. The Princes and all those that followed them, whom as well the Queen, as *Albifinda* encouraged to relieve their Friend, speeded after the Queen's Horse, but they had not gallop'd far before they found themselves stopp'd by a Ditch, which the great floods of water had widened in that place, so they were forc'd to turn back, and follow where the Queen's Horse had made way; but it was so long before they could find the way, that the Queen was quite out of sight, so that they could neither overtake her, or know what was become of her; nor could they tell which way the Horse had carried her, so that without the miraculous preservation of the Gods, they could not chuse but fear some fatal accident.

All the while the Queen was like one half dead; and her fear having taken away her senses, it was only the innate principle of self-preservation that made her keep her Seat, and hold down her head to avoid the Boughs, yet she could not prevent some part of her Cloaths from being rent by the Briars and small Branches, nor her beautiful locks from being torn, while they confusedly hung about her Shoulders not finding that respect among things insensible which was due to them. The Forest was of a very large extent, part level, part hilly, descending into some Valleys, covered with wood to the very foot of a Mountain opposite to the City of *Segodunum*. The scared Horse had taken the descent with an incredible swiftness, through a way quite distinct from that which all they that followed her took; and at length he came to a Valley, where were several persons a Horseback; but the Horse still upon his speed crossed the Valley, and was running up a little Hill where the Wood was thicker, and the danger greater than she had met with till then, when a certain Knight that saw her cross the Valley, and heard her outcries, guessing at the truth, ne're stood still to consider, seeing he had no time to lose, and for that he had not lost the sight of the Queen, and withal had a swift strong Horse under him, he flew after *Amalazontha*, and got luckily before her, and turning full in the Horse's way, he got hold of the Bridle, and by main strength stopp'd his carrier, yet not so but that the Horse mounting upright, the Queen had fallen backward, if the Knight, who perceiv'd it immediately, had not caught hold of her with his Arm that was free, and let the Horse go from under her, which being done, he set her down gently upon the ground; he alighted immediately, and seeing that either out of weakness, or by reason of the remainder of her fear, she had laid her self upon the Grass, he came to her and submissively ask'd her, whether she had receiv'd any hurt or no. The Queen for some time had not power to speak; for the very thoughts of the danger which she had escap'd, had so disturb'd her mind, that for a while she was not able to open her lips, either to return thanks for her preservation, or to enquire after *Rosamond* and *Albifinda*, but then she perceiv'd him not to be of her company: however, she remembred that she had seen him somewhere else, and by little and little calling his Physiognomy to mind, she knew him to be Prince *Summon*, who some days before had conducted her to her own Camp, and had held so long a discourse with her, that she easily remembred his face. *Summon* with less difficulty knew her again, for although in all likelihood, he could not have expected to have seen her again, and that such an accident could not but be very surprizing, and scarce to be believ'd by one that saw it not; yet the fair Pourtraiture of her whole resemblance which he carried in his Breast, had made a deeper impression in his memory, than to let him mistake but a moment. He was no less troubled than was the fair Queen, having more than one passion to turmoil him: joy to see what he lov'd, and what he lov'd a thousand times beyond his life, first appeared in his eyes; but the dread of so terrible an accident, though the worst were past, benumin'd his heart in an instant, while he had reason to believe by the looks and gestures of the Queen, that she was hurt. He had ask'd her several times, before he had observ'd her countenance; but knowing who she was, love had created another sort of fear, than only what meer compassion mov'd. She assured him in the first place, that she had received no hurt; and thereby his mind being now more at rest, he began to reflect upon the accident with less disturbance, and to give himself wholly up to his love without the mixture of

of any other passion. But if the sight of the Queen had put him into such a condition that he was not able to express his own thoughts, the sight of him wrought no less upon her heart, though the effects were different in relation to their misfortunes. And remembrance that it was upon the same day, the very same occasion, and almost at the very same hour that *Sunnor*, and that other unknown person had appeared before her eyes, and that it was on the behalf of *Sunnor* that he had shewn himself, this resemblance that every where followed her, began now to fix it self in her remembrance, and to possess it so entirely, that she had almost forgot *Sunnor*, and lost the memory of the condition she was in, or of the danger she had so lately escap'd.

The young Prince was upon his knees before her, and beholding her with eyes full of that fire which love had kindled; *Is it possible,* (said he, as it were in an extasie) *that I am certain of what I see before my eyes, or is it some dream, or some illusion? Are the Gods so kind to afford me a happiness contrary to my expectation, a happiness that I would have purchas'd with a thousand lives, had I so many to lose?* The Queen was a good while before she made answer; and casting upon him a languishing look, which was as much as to say, he was not the person whom she sought; at length she opened her lips, and began to return her acknowledgment for so great a piece of service: *I believe,* said she to the Prince, *that I am indebted to you for my life; and though I had rather have owed it to any other person than to the Brother of Pharamond, yet permit me to assure you that I am more than sensible thereof; and that I well remember this is not the first obligation that I have received from your civility. I cannot tell,* (said the Prince, whom the condition of his fortune, and so unexpected an accident did not permit time to speak, nor to observe those rules of demeanour towards a Queen as *Amalazontha* was, which he would have done at another time) *how you are any way engaged to me, rather I oblige my self so much by serving you, that I can hardly permit you to have any share. But if my light services may merit your remembrance, surely my misfortunes may likewise find some pity. However, if the unfortunate condition of a Prince undone and lost at the first sight, will not move your compassion, pardon however, mighty Queen, or rather most sublime Divinity, this passion that will not suffer me to keep silence, nor yet fully to express my self. I should have endured it till death without uttering a word, did not my miserable fortune deprive me of all other means to let you understand my sufferings, but by my discourse, and by an accident which I never ought to have expected from Heaven, considering the deplorable condition of my life. I am not ignorant of the Glory that accompanies my sufferings, it is a thousand times more dear to me than the repose which I have lost. That death which I ought to suffer for you, shall be more acceptable to me than the most happy life which the Gods can let me enjoy: but must I die without letting you know the cause, and shall I not be permitted upon so fair an opportunity as this, to say I die for *Amalazontha*?*

The amorous Prince, whom the violence of his passion, the opportunity so little expected, and so difficult to have been found, had emboldened beyond what he would have been at another time, thus spake to a person that patiently hearkened to his discourse. But alas, some minutes after she was no longer capable of hearing more, who had now no more eyes, nor no more ears for him, being wholly attentive, wholly fix'd, not only upon the resemblance which continually haunted her, but taken up with the real sight of that substance whose image she carried in her heart, and which she beheld then approaching toward the place where she lay, in a condition almost as bad as she had appear'd in at first. *Sunnor* admired to see her colour come and go so many times in so few minutes; nor could he divine what conjecture to make of that change, when on a sudden he heard behind him the trampling of a Horse, and turning about with no small vexation and impatience to find himself so cruelly interrupted, he saw King *Pharamond*, who from another Valley, though at a greater distance had beheld the fury of the Horse that carried *Amalazontha*: He stopp'd his Horse at some few paces distance from them, casting his eyes upon the Prince his Brother, and the person with whom he was in discourse; or rather the person whom he was adoring; for he was kneeling at her feet in a most submissive posture. But at the same time the fair Queen, who from the time that she first discovered those features that were so dear to her, had not all the while removed her own eyes off from them, seeing his person so near, was so moved at the sight of what she both loved and feared at once; that by reason of her late affright, all her strength was too weak to support her: so that her cheeks growing wan and pale, she sunk down without sense or motion. *Pharamond* suddenly alight, and running to the intranc'd Queen, whom he rather knew by the discourse and gestures of *Sunnor*, than by her countenance, especially in the condition she was in; he endeavoured with all his care to recover her to life: but after he had for some time laboured in vain, he sent the Prince to fetch a little water, from a Rivolet that run at the foot of the Valley, and was but a small

distance off. There was no need of importuning *Sunnon* to make haste, how unwilling soever to absent himself from what he loved, and yet not so unwillingly neither, when he considered in what safe hands he left her: but he was not gone far before *Amalazontha* opened her eyes and recovered her senses: She presently looked carefully about, for fear any other person should be near her but he whom she desired. Fortune was so favourable that she saw no person but whom she loved, and in such a condition near her, that she might easily perceive, how much he was concern'd in her misfortune. This second view had been as fatal as the first, had not the Queen made use of all the courage she had, to support that feebleness which it had caused; or that she had not summon'd up all the powers of her soul to defend her in a time of necessity. However she could not cast her eyes, upon the King of the *Franks* without trembling, mov'd by a constraining power which she could not resist: And the discontent which she had to be forced to love, what she ought not to have loved, (seeing she could not love what she ought to love) made her behold that object of affection, as the occasion of a crime for which she condemned her self, or rather as a Tyrant who had violently enthralled her heart, and together with her liberty had taken from her the repose of her life. The officious King stood by her in a posture little different, from what he had seen his Brother use, and she observed in him neither less submission nor less readiness and forwardness to serve her, though in his eyes she could not discern the same marks of vehement love. *What unlucky fortune*, said the King to her, *could reduce so great a Queen to this condition, wherein we see her? And what a happiness had Prince Sunnon and myself, so fortunately to be in the way to serve her? Be pleased however not to trouble your self* (so continued he observing the agitation of her spirits) *nor to mind your present condition, though you be alone, or with men whom you look upon as your Enemies, for you shall not find less respect among them, than among the Turingiens: and you might have perceiv'd but now a passion strong enough in one of us, to let you understand that you can want nothing of honour, service or attendance: Though Pharamond in all places and upon all occasions, spake and acted with a grace beyond all the people in the world, having nothing in him common to other men, by reason that the Princess was prepossessed with such an affection for him, to her beholding and hearing him, he appeared yet more than it was possible for him really to be. For she was of opinion that in the air of his aspect, in his behaviour, in the accent and sound of his voice, there was something supernatural and more than humane. Her eyes were so fixed upon their beloved object, that she never took thought of making any answer: And it was a long time, that the King having spoken several times to her, before she opened her lips to return him any reply. But at length with some disorder very easie to be observed, and as it were labouring for words to express her self; I cannot tell*, said she, *what fortune means, by thus her sending you these two times to my relief, in my greatest necessities; nor can I tell why she suffers me to fall rather into your hands, than into the hands of some one, of whom I would more gladly lose the remembrance. I know not who you are, though I behold in you something more sublime than in other men, which gives me the greater desire to inform my self: and yet I feel something, I know not what it is in my heart, that makes me afraid to know. I am,* replied Pharamond, *an unfortunate person, whom you would pity would you do him justice: but one who through his unhappiness, to be concern'd in the interests of your Enemies, would be more hateful to you were he better known. It is hard for you to be more concern'd in the interests of Pharamond than Sunnon,* replied Amalazontha, *yet I cannot hate him: and though I had other far greater reasons to hate you, I do not apprehend, that what you urge would ever make me do it.*

All the modesty of *Pharamond* could not hinder him, but that by the discourse of *Amalazontha*, by the trouble that appeared in her eyes, and by the reflection he made of what had fallen out at their first meeting, he clearly suspected the truth, and that with no small grief, the rather for the fair Queen's sake, to whom it was impossible for him to return an affection answerable; as also in regard of *Sunnon*, who by reason of her being thus prepossess'd, would himself be miserable. However, he did not declare what he thought, but as well to change the subject of the discourse, as because he was obliged for *Sunnon's* sake to let her know the reason why he was absent from her, while she was in her swooning fits, he gave her to understand how he was gone to seek for some fair water to cast in her face; to which he added that finding the water of no use when it was brought, he had sent him to give order for a Chariot to carry her out of the field into his Camp, or else to her own company if they were to be found. The Queen hearkned to this discourse with much impatience, so that hardly staying to hear it out; *I am extremely obliged to Prince Sunnon* (said she to the King) *but I am better contented to find that you have not left me, and I shall be very glad to stay a while longer with you, in expectation of the rest of my Company.* Prince *Sunnon* said

said *Pharamond*, (desiring to do his brother a kindness now it fell in his way) *will envy my happiness: for if he have had so much confidence, to discover what he suffers for your sake, I dare assure my self that you will have compassion upon him. I must pity Sunnon*, said she, *if he have any love for me; in regard he will the more deserve it, by how much the more unfortunate it will make him. You tell me sad news*, replied *Pharamond*, *since I must declare that you pronounce the death of Sunnon, if it be impossible for him to hope that his fidelity, may merit some acknowledgment on your part. He may deserve it*, replied the fair Queen, *and it may be that my affection may be indebted to him: But he will be never the more happy, for if you understand the cruelty of my Stars, you would find that I am never to love where I ought to love, and that through my misfortune I love where I should not.*

Thus discoursed the Queen, and for that passion overcame her reason, she was in danger to have farther betrayed her self, if they had not beheld Prince *Sunnon* returning, and with him two of the Queens pages; who as they were searching for her through the Forrest as others did, had met with *Sunnon* at the Rivulet where he went for water, and who followed him having heard tidings of the Queen from his own mouth. She knew them afar off, as she did *Sunnon* also, when turning her self toward the King; "I see Prince *Sunnon*", said she, and two of my pages following him, and I must now suddenly leave you without either the knowledge of your person, or any hope ever to see you more. Saying these words she rose from the Bank where she had sat ever since, when *Pharamond* giving her his hand to help her; "'Tis our unhappiness", said he, that we are denyed the honour of seeing you, though we shall not despair, so you will but be pleased to give us leave. For your self, *hastily replied the Queen*, I shall with joy admit your welcome: And yet, said she, I shall not, for it is not convenient that I should see you. All this disorder both in the discourse, and in the behaviour of *Amalazontha*, sufficiently confirmed the former suspicion of the King: But the arrival of *Sunnon* and the Queen's Pages, hindred him from making any farther reflection upon it: And *Sunnon* being glad to find the Queen in such a condition, though all the pains he had taken had been to no purpose; and perceiving that the King had no mind to be known, he behaved himself before him as if he had not been present, lest the respect which at other times he was wont to shew him, should have made any discovery. But as he was about to speak to her, as a companion of the King, who to favour his design and the better to conceal himself, had let go her hand which he had taken before, and was asking the pages several questions, in reference to the accident that had fallen out; they discovered the Princes and Knights who were in search of the Queen, spreading the adjacent wood, and by and by casting their eyes right forward into the valley, they discovered the Chariot of the *Cimbrian* Queen, and all the rest of her train. *Pharamond's* colour changed, and to *Amalazontha's* Pages he look'd like one forlorn, when he understood from them, that *Rosamond* was in the Chariot which they shewed him. And though he verily believed that it was not without her, that the Queen of the *Turingiens* was come abroad to take the Air; he was not able to hear her name pronounced, or to understand that she was so near him, and that in a place where it was not impossible for him to see her, without being capable to entertain any other thoughts, than what his love inspired into him. He continued some time in a deep study what resolution to take, but soon after judging that all those persons whom he saw coming, and whom the accident which had befall'n the Queen of the *Turingiens*, had put into that disorder wherein he perceived them, would in the end all flock to her. He made no question but while they were busied with her, to find an opportunity to see the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, if he could but get near her Chariot, before she came to that place, where the croud began already to gather together about *Amalazontha*. And for that *Arderic*, *Humbert* and others were already come in, he took his time while they were employed about the Queen, to set her upon another horse; knowing well that *Sunnon* would delay her departure as much as he could: and that the Truce together with the duty which he came to pay, would secure him from any danger of his Enemies. Thereupon he rode with full speed toward that part of the Valley where he saw the Coaches: but he had not rode above two hundred Paces, before he met *Marcomire* who was in search of him, and not questioning but that he would be glad to accompany him upon this occasion; "Follow me, Brother", said he, and I will shew you *Albisinda*: *Marcomire* needed neither his persuasion nor promise, to urge him to follow the King his Brother, wherever he intended to lead him, had it only been for the hopes that he gave him of seeing *Albisinda*: For that news transported him with so full a measure of joy, that he spur'd after him with no less speed, than that which the King his Brother made. Though the Truce which lasted yet for some days; might easily dispense with their going arm'd, that continual use which *Pharamond* and his Brothers had accustomed themselves to, during

the war, made the weight thereof so light, that that day, whether it were out of any mistrust of meeting some encounter or other, or the design they had to conceal their faces upon any occasion that obliged them to it, they had not left off theirs, (no more than the Princes who accompanied the Queens abroad to take the air) who (notwithstanding the security of the truce) thought it not inconvenient to be prepared for their defence, should any dangerous accident oblige them thereto. So that *Pharamond* and *Marcomire* pulling down their Visers all the way that they met any of those persons that were hastening to the assistance of *Amalazontha*, pass'd by unknown, till they came to the very Chariots themselves. Fortune, favourable to their attempt, had so ordered it, that in the way which the Queen's Chariot took, being full of stumps of Trees, one of the wheels brake; so that while they were endeavouring to refit the Chariot, the Queen, and Princefs who had quitted her Horse, was sitting by the Queen in the Chariot, where both alighted near a pleasing Brook that ran down the Valley, whence all the Princes, and all the rest of the company were sent in search of *Amalazontha*, except some few of the Queen's Guards, and some Footmen who attended the Chariots, and where the Queen and Princefs stayed full of perplexity, to hear what news they brought back. But the King of the *Franks* having told the news to them that were before; and having shewed them the place where he had left the Queen of the *Turingiens* safe in the hands of her own Officers and Servants, by the advice thereof, which was speedily given both to *Rosamond* and the Princefs of *Suevia*, soon freed them out of that trouble under which they laboured.

When the King and *Marcomire* drew near, they were fate down more quiet in their minds upon the Bank of the Rivolet, from whence they had sent away a Chariot to Queen *Amalazontha*, not being able to wait upon her in their own: the Ladies that attended, were sitting in the same posture, but at a distance, out of respect, and the custom which they had for some time used, not to interrupt their discourse: the men also kept aloof off at a farther distance, part a foot, and part a Horseback. As *Pharamond* was not at all prepar'd for this encounter, so he was puzzled in what manner to accost the Queen: and as he had reason enough to think that she had no great prejudice against him, so there was nothing more terrible to him than the fear of displeasing her, so that he was not more bold in fight, than he was timorous upon these occasions. However, he thought the opportunity was too favourable for him to lose it; and therefore because he knew it was not easie to find such another, he embraced it without farther consultation. But not deeming it convenient to mix himself with the rest of the company, that she would take it well for him to accost her on foot: finding her therefore sitting upon a rising ground with her face toward the Rivulet, and that by crossing the stream, which was very narrow, he might have a full view of her, and speak to her with more advantage, than on that side where she sat with all her train attending, he cross'd the stream a little above, and so keeping along the Bank till he came just opposite to the Queen and Princefs, he stopp'd and saluted them both, bowing down to the very pommel of his Saddle. They were immediately surpris'd at the sight of two whom they knew not to be of their company: but before they saw their faces, the proportion and Royal Deportment of the King of the *Franks* had almost discovered him; nor did *Albifinda* doubt but that it was *Marcomire* that was in his company, and so well they were both convinc'd before hand, that they were hardly better inform'd when they lifted up the Visers of their Helmets, and let them see those faces they could have no reason to hate, though they were not permitted to love them: *Rosamond* could not determine whether in this meeting she apprehended most joy, or most sorrow; for if on the one side, those Maxims of policy which so cruelly restrain'd her inclinations, made her apprehend more inconvenience than pleasure in that meeting; yet on the other side, the powerful oratory of acknowledgment and tenderness, against which she could make no opposition, perswaded her to the contrary, insomuch that she could neither be troubled nor provoked at the sight of *Pharamond*. However, she devoted her first words, and perhaps her first thoughts, rather to Duty, than to inclination; so that while the King wholly transported, fed his eyes with the sight of an object so delightful, without being able to find words to express his grievances; and perhaps not having courage enough to speak to her whom he fear'd as much as he lov'd, casting a look upon him possibly less terrible than what he expected: *Oh, Pharamond*, said she, *since I am not permitted to see you, how comes it to pass that you presume to appear before me?*

She said no more than these words, letting her head gently fall upon *Albifinda's* Shoulders, who beheld *Marcomire* with less reluctance, or at least with less restraint; when the passionate King, whose eyes spake more eloquently than his lips, in answer to the Queen's words: 'Tis not I, Madam, said he, 'tis fortune that presents you *Pharamond*; and there-
fore

fore since she is so favourable to me this day, would you hate me more cruel to my self, than that same fortune which hitherto has so cruelly tormented me, and that I should refuse the only happiness which she has vouchsafed to me, since I first began to die for love of you? The fair Queen then lifting up her eyes, which for some time she kept downward fix'd upon the stream, and turning them sweetly towards Marcomire: And you, Ericlea, said she, come you to see us too, knowing what a cheat you put upon us? I come, said Marcomire, to deliver the deceiver up to your justice; and to beg a pardon of you, which the just anger of the Princess does not indeed permit me to desire. You are not much afraid of that anger, replied the Princess, and I see well enough, that I should be more terrible than I am to make you fear it. Alas, replied Pharamond, that the condition of my Brother and I should be so different, seeing that if he be not so happy as to be lov'd, at least he has some reason to hope that he is not hated. Ah Pharamond, replied the charming Queen, you know that it is not in my power to hate you, and I have discovered to you too much the knowledge thereof: on the other side, you know that it is not permitted me to love you, and that if I have any other thoughts than those of hatred for you, I can make no other use thereof than to render my self absolutely unhapp'y. No, Pharamond, no, all misfortune belongs not to you; and therefore while you complain of your own miseries, do not believe mine to be more easie. I have explained my self enough already; in the name of all the Gods, do not urge me to say more, but retire your self from an unfortunate person who cannot behold your face but to her own undoing, and who cannot behold you without some displeasure, though she sees you without any reluctancy. You shall suddenly be delivered, sadly replied Pharamond, for though I am able to defend my life against so many thousand Swords which assault it, it is impossible for me to preserve it from the cruelty of my sufferings, more cruel than that death which only can put an end to them. You abuse my weakness, replied the Queen with a discontented aspect, nor would you threaten me⁷ so often with your death, did you know how impossible it is for me to desire it: you may, and must defend your life against your enemies, and against all the sufferings whereof you complain; and to oblige you to defend it, I will once more tell you, that it is not hateful to me, since hitherto I have let you know it in vain. She uttered these words after such a manner, that the King was fore afraid he had displeas'd her, and being therefore willing to appease her by his submission, Pardon, Madam, said he, pardon a miserable creature whom love has depriv'd of his reason. I will endeavour to live, that I may obey your commands; and if I may be permitted to make a favourable conjecture of what you have impos'd upon me, I will not only defend my life against all my Enemies, and all my misfortunes, but also believe, that nothing how terrible soever, can render it unfortunate, so that it be not odious to you.

While Rosamond and Pharamond thus unfolded their thoughts one to another, talking so low as not to be over-heard by any other persons, except Albisinda and Marcomire; and that Albisinda and Marcomire keeping silence out of respect to them, discoursed only with their eyes, speaking with their looks part of what they thought in their hearts, they beheld Amalazontha returning in the Chariot which they had sent to her; and at the same time all the Princes and Knights who had dispersed themselves in the Wood in search of her, making haste from all parts, as it were to the general Rendezvous; wherefore Rosamond, being unwilling to be surpris'd in discourse with Pharamond, with a behaviour full of all the marks of grief, made a sign to him to retire, and rising in haste from the place where she sat, she turn'd toward the company who began already to environ her, and walk'd toward the Queen of the Turigiens, embracing her with much affection. While they embraced, and that Amalazontha received from her two Friends the testimonies of their friendship, so far dear and precious to her, as that passion with which her Soul was wholly taken up, would permit, and while the King of the Franks, not being able to quit the sight of Rosamond, followed her all the way with his eyes, forgetting, through the force of his love, to obey the sign which she had given him to retire, the King of Suevia, with Martian, Briomer, and a great party of other Knights were come up also to the place where the Queens were, when Briomer, having learn'd by some of the Cimbrians, that that Knight so remarkable for his Stature, and his Arms, who appeared on the other side of the Brook, was King Pharamond, he could not withstand the violence of his hatred and anger, but that running to the King of Suevia in an agony: How comes it to pass, Sir, (said he, pointing to Pharamond with his finger) that you suffer the murderer of Vindimir so insolently to shew himself in your sight; and that we lose this fair opportunity to revenge the blood of so many Princes that have fallen by his Sword. The King of Suevia had no such need of arguments to incite him against Pharamond, so that he was no sooner shew'd the King of the Franks, but that anger awaking at a sight which he so much detested, caused him to lay aside all considerations of Honour, and had fill'd his Breast only with a design to destroy his Enemy.

Yes, he shall die, said he to *Briomer*: and at the same time, with his speech, and by his gestures encouraging the Knights to follow him; he was in haste to be gone, when the Queen of the *Cimbrians* drawing near him, upon advertisement of his design, layed before him the inconveniency, telling him withal, how without dishonouring himself, and making *Constance* his Enemy, he could not violate the truce which he had made; and at such a time, when those Enemies whose lives he aim'd at, had sav'd the life of *Amalazontha*. But the King blinded with passion, had scarce the patience to hear the Queen speak; and looking fiercely upon her, *The truce*, said he, *though it does not permit us to assault the Camp of our Enemies, yet it gives no security to the murderer of my Son, your Brother, nor so many other Princes who have lost their lives in our quarrel, if he will be so insolent as to shew himself in our fight*. Concluding these words, without hearkening to a farther reason, he crossed the Brook, and taking a Lance from one of his Knights, he flew with all the fury imaginable against the King of the *Franks*, who was beginning to retire, yet not without turning his eyes every moment toward that object which he could not forsake. *Sunnon*, who observed the motion of the King of *Suevia*, ran to the King his Brother, and with a loud voice gave him notice; so that all he had time to do, was only to turn his face towards his Enemies, and oppose his Shield to the Lance of the King of *Suevia*, who had out-rid his own company, out of hope to dispatch the murderer of *Vindimir*: *Briomer* followed him close, and would have gone before him, had his Horse been swift enough to revenge the death of *Theobald*. The King's Lance brake in several pieces against *Pharamond's* Shield, without moving him, no more than if he had been a Rock; and *Marcomire* preventing *Briomer's* blow, being clos'd with him before he could reach *Pharamond*, lent him so heavy a stroke upon his head, that he tumbled quite dizzie to the ground. The valiant King of the *Franks* provoked with so much dishonourable foul play, drew his Sword, which the *Cimbrians* nor *Suevians* ever saw glister without growing pale for fear; and reproaching the treachery of his Enemies in threatening words, with a brush of his Horse, and a blow of his Sword, he beat to the ground the two first that he met, the one stark dead, the other so crush'd with the fall that he could not escape, being trod under foot by the Horses of his companions: *Marcomire* cleft the head of one *Sueve*; and *Sunnon* run another quite through the body, so that he fell backwards over the Crupper of his Horse.

The King of the *Sueves* took breath for some time, being amazed to see so bad a beginning, but his astonishment soon gave way to his anger, and causing him to contemn all things, made him come too near the King of the *Franks*, who not knowing him for any other than the chief Leader of those that assaulted him, gave him a blow so terrible, and so home, that he cut his Shield in two pieces, carried away one part of his Helmet, from whence his Sword lighting upon his Vanbrace, cut the Buckles, so that it fell off his Arm upon the ground, whereby the King disarmed in his head, and part of his body, was in great danger of his life, had *Pharamond* redoubled his blow; but *Marcomire* being near his Brother, knew *Albisinda's* Father by many signs, and putting his Buckler before *Pharamond's* Sword, *Oh, Sir*, said he, *spare the King of Suevia*. The anger of the incens'd King did not hinder him from understanding what his Brother said, nor from granting his request; and so turning his fury another way, he left the King amazed, and in great perplexity; and rushing in among the thickest of his Enemies, he made a way large enough to have made his retreat, had he so design'd. The two Princes his Brothers seconded his valour to admiration. However, they were in no small danger, through the great number of their enemies, and the fury of the King of *Suevia*, who not considering the courtesie, nor the mercy of *Pharamond*, nor perhaps minding it, had by the assistance of his own Attendants got another Helmet, and encouraging his followers with all the words that boiling choler could put in his mouth, was returning to the charge more furiously than ever, when the Princes who were with the Queen, condemning his rashness, made haste to hinder any farther mischief: *Martian*, who was with him, but could not dissuade him from his purpose, refus'd however to second him: and *Humbert*, though tyed to his interest for the love of *Albisinda*, and engag'd particularly to revenge her Brother's death, who was slain by *Pharamond*, yet fear'd too much the dishonour that might accrew from such an action, and therefore would not engage: *Ardaric* and *Godegesile* disapproving his intention, endeavoured all they could to have stopp'd him; but *Balamir* and the Prince of *Persia* coming in just as the Combat began, and understanding the business, enraged to hear of an action so dishonourable to their whole party, they flew with full speed among the Combatants; *Balamir* making his way like Lightning through all opposition, and getting before the King of *Suevia* with a behaviour that denoted his choler, after he had

frighted

frighted those that followed with many and loud threats, “What Sir, *said he*, is it thus that you honour our Arms, is this the care you take, to preserve the renown of those that fight in your quarrel? It so far misbecomes a great King, that it is base in any person of noble blood: and do you think that we will be so accessory to your treachery, as to suffer it?” The King of *Suevia* rather provoked than appeas’d by the words of *Balamir*, and chafed by *Briomer*, who was by that time remounted, persevered in his attempt, and encouraged his men, not being able to open a passage to the King of the *Franks* himself; when the Prince of the *Huns*, disdainful farther to entreat or seek to withhold him, quite left him, and clapping next to *Pharamond*; “Behold what part I am to take, (*said he with a loud voice*) and in fighting for vertue’s sake, you shall know that I have no share in your treachery. I question whether the King of *Suevia* would yet have given off, had he not been withheld by the Prince of *Persia* for whom he had a particular esteem: and if *Arderic*, *Godegesile* and *Martian* had not threatned to charge the *Suedes* if they did not retreat, which they were well able to do, by calling to their assistance the Knights that were of their own Train. Hereupon the King of *Suevia* full of rage, confusion, and it may be shame to have attempted an enterprize, wherein he had so ill prospered, after he had expressed his malice in words full of fury, at length he desisted, and not enduring the sight of those that had disturb’d him in his wretched purpose, he left the company galloping full speed over the valley, without enquiring whether it were the way to the Enemies or his own Camp. They whose charge it was to attend his person, took the same way: but he rode at such a rate, that not above five or six could keep even with him. After he was gone, and that *Briomer* and the rest that had assaulted *Pharamond* were marched off, the Queen of the *Cimbrians* not judging it convenient to speak to the King of the *Franks*, nor to make any longer stay in a place where he was before so many witnesses, who might have made a bad interpretation of things; She together with *Albisinda*, went into the Chariot where the Queen of the *Turingiens* rode, and commanded the attendants to drive back to the Camp, but not without often casting her eyes backward, upon the Camp which she was leaving.

Pharamond with his two Brothers stayed with the Princes, who had opposed themselves to the bloody intentions of the King of *Suevia*, not willing to take his leave till he had let them see, how apprehensive he was of what they had performed in his behalf: but because he had formerly observed *Balamir*’s deportment, and that the person of that Prince was very remarkable, for his graceful proportion and lofty aspect, easily discern’d him from the rest, and accosting him with a charming aspect which surpris’d, or rather enchanted all them that beheld him, *I am not a little sensible*, said he, *of what you have done in my behalf: and by that action and all that vertue which accompanies your person, I make no dispute but that you are Balamir*. The Prince of the *Huns* charmed at the sight of *Pharamond*, as he had been at the report of his fame, and by these acts which he himself had seen him perform, beheld him with admiration: and making answer to his sincere expressions, with a grace little different from that, which the other was always accustomed to; *I am assuredly Balamir*, said he, *but I had rather that by other occasions, than what you have seen me this day perform, it had been my good fortune to merit the esteem of the greatest person in the world*. *Pharamond* was about to reply with his wonted modesty, had not the Prince of *Persia* prevented him with a graceful address: “As for my part, *said he*, I cannot come into your presence without being ashamed of my self: For as you obliged me to be your friend the first time I saw you, to which you engaged me by a particular favour; so I cannot tell how I can presume to beg your pardon, for so unfortunately adventuring to be your Rival. “That is certainly to me a real misfortune, (*replied Pharamond, yet with a countenance that shewed little of resentment*) But this is not the first misfortune that has befall’n me, that I have not inconsiderable Rivals to deal withal, in the contest for *Rosamond*. “You have others also here, (*replied Varanez shewing him Arderic and Godegesile*) and we have left one behind in our Camp, who hath not the greatest kindness for you in the world. *Pharamond* was very well contented to see *Arderic* and *Godegesile*, though they were his Rivals and his Enemies: and those two Kings beholding him with admiration, lost perhaps no small part of their hopes, by the sight of him. *Godegesile* who was of a close and fierce humour, and who could not be the Rival of any person without mortally hating him, beheld him with an angry countenance: but *Arderic* who always honoured virtue, and saw nothing in his person which did not attract love and respect, freely paid him what was his due. *Marcomire* and *Sannon* passed many complements from one to another, nor was *Marcomire* whose valour had been tryed by many signal proofs, but very little less esteem’d and admired by the Rivals of *Pharamond*.

The Prince of *Persia* who had been an eye witness thereof, in the combat between him and

and *Constance*, and had seen him acquit himself with so excellent a grace, in the contest which they had both together, notwithstanding the natural fierceness of his nature; applyed himself with an extraordinary civility to him: and the Prince of the *Franks*, to whom the dignity of his person was not unknown, paid him all manner of respect imaginable. But while *Marcomire* entertained *Varanez*, and that *Sunnon* discoursed with *Arderic* and *Godegeste*, *Pharamond* and *Balamir*, who had mutually conceived an esteem each for t'other, answerable to each others merit, being at some distance from the rest, and beholding one another with an admiration more than ordinary; "How comes it to pass (*said Pharamond to Balamir*) that Vertue and Fortune are so much at variance in the choice of my Rivals, or to put it into better phrase, How comes it to pass that fortune stirs me up Rivals, that vertue will not suffer me to hate. "All your Rivals, *said Balamir*, might with better reason ask this question than you: for there is no vertuous person, who ought not rather to give you all respect, than bear you the least ill will. But for my part I shall never complain, that it is not in my power to hate you, because I cannot find that I shall ever have any occasion so to do. "If you cannot hate me, (*replied the King of the Franks, with his accustomed charming familiarity*) what reason is there that you should contribute, more than any other person to make me miserable? For the hatred of others is less formidable to me, than the mischief that you do me by loving me. "I am of opinion, *replied Balamir*, that neither those others nor my self, will ever be able to do you any harm: for I find that by your valour and by your merit, you will easily defend your self against us. But seeing that the love which I have for *Rosamond*, is that which gives you some kind of trouble, I will only beg your favour to justify my self, by desiring you to resolve me this single question: whether that love which you your self have for her, be an effect only of your will? "I understand you (*replied the King of the Franks*) and I must confess that not only my love was no effect of my will, but that my will made the most powerful opposition it could to my love: and that to my lives end I had strove against it, had *Gondioch* permitted me to continue his friend. "I ought to have paid the same respect to your high worth, *replied Balamir*, and had it been known to me otherwise, than by the sole report of your fame, I had certainly opposed my passion, at a time when I sought in vain to overthrow it, with the remembrance of a beauty that ought to overcome it, had it been to have been vanquished. And I will add, that it was the good fortune of your Rivals and not yours, which I only thought I might have the happiness to cross: and that through the hard fortune which you had to spill the blood of one, that hinders *Rosamond* from declaring in your favour; I thought I could do you no injury in aspiring to those hopes, which in all likelihood were denied you ever to expect. Without this consideration I should attempt yet farther, and perhaps should do too much for my honour, being engaged to preserve it against a person, whose transcending fame might cause such an interpretation of my intentions, which they have not deserved. "This very reason, *said Pharamond*, which among men like our selves, is sometimes thought to be over nice, hinders me from any longer disputing upon this subject: nor will it permit me to make use of any opportunity, which in a soul like yours I sufficiently perhaps be assured of, to make use of your Friendship. *Balamir* seemed something troubled at these last words, and instead of making a reply, he stood viewing him several times from head to foot in a perfect silence, and such a behaviour which made the King of the *Franks* suspect that he had spoken too much. And because he was not disposed to explain himself farther, as perhaps he might have been obliged to do, to avoid the telling of an untruth had the conference continued, he turn'd toward the Prince of *Persia* and the other Princes, and accosting them together with *Balamir*, who followed him without speaking one word, he besought them to excuse him, if the particular thanks which he owed *Balamir* for his kindness that day, made him separate himself from them for so short a time. *Varanez* and the two Kings hearken'd to him as became them, and the Prince of *Persia* whose great and fierce disposition, could not dispense with a true respect for *Pharamond*, which his deserts exacted from all the world; and which the majesty of his presence particularly infus'd into all that saw him, was about to excuse himself for that force, which the beauty of *Rosamond* had put upon his inclination which was otherwise to have always continued his friend, when the King of the *Franks* interrupting him; "I hope, *said he*, that your sufferings will so sufficiently punish you for the injustice which you have done me, that you need not wish a greater or a more rigorous correction. Nor should I have any comfort in my self, *said he*, proceeding in his discourse, and turning himself to the rest, if I did not think that I should find more than one Rival, as unhappy as my self. "That may be, *replied Godegeste*, for where only one can be happy, it follows that all the rest must be unfortunate. But let it be as it will, you have

“no Rival but what has a great advantage over you, because they are not denyed those
 “hopes, which you are forbidden to expect. “If you have this advantage over me through
 “my misfortune (*replied the King of the Franks*) It is not impossible but that I may have some
 “other over you, nor have you leave to hope, but on conditions too hard for you to pre-
 “sume to say, that you shall obtain the happiness which you aspire to, without purchasing
 “it at a rate dear enough. The chance of war will decide that, *replied the King of the He-*
 “*rules*, and then we shall see to whom fortune will be favourable: Fortune does not al-
 “ways determine all things; for if it should be our hap to encounter in fight, I my self
 “might perhaps be so fortunate as to let you know, that in attempting the life of *Phara-*
 “*mond*, you have not undertaken a slight enterprize. It is not of a slight enterprize, *said*
 “*the King of the Alains*, that *Rosamond* ought to be the Guerdon; so that they who devote,
 “their blood and their lives to such fair hopes, can never more gloriously employ themselves.
 “I am of your opinion, *said Pharamond to them*, but come what will, I advise my Rivals
 “not to neglect, any opportunity to deprive me of my life; seeing that in forbidding me
 “to hope, however they forbid me not to oppose the good fortune of others: in which
 “opposition, there are few persons in the world that, while I live, can assure themselves to
 “possess *Rosamond*. “All your Rivals, *sincerely replied Varanez*, cannot contend with you
 “for *Rosamond* with equal forces, though there is one not far off, can hold you as hard to
 “it as any Prince in *Germany*. “I know, (*said Pharamond without any alteration at all*) that
 “my power is not equal to that of the King of *Persia*, though I have not feared the puis-
 “sance of the *Romans*, which was no less formidable: and partly by my courage, partly by
 “the assistance of friends that will not forsake me; a Prince of *Persia* shall be no more ter-
 “rible to me, than a Prince of *Germany*. *Varanez* was about to have replied, and from a
 familiar discourse begun in civility, it might have come to be a hotter dispute, had not
Balamir, quitting his converse with *Marcomire*, interpos’d to prevent the danger, and
 chang’d the subject of the discourse by enquiring after *Constance*, of whom they had not
 heard a word in the Camp since his departure, though they expected to see him again by
 what he had said, and by the opinion they had of his negotiation. *Varanez* was already
 inform’d by *Marcomire*, and he had heard it from his mouth, as *Balamir* had been told by
Pharamond, that this great personage, after he had by the force of his courage, a long time
 resisted that tormenting grief, under which he laboured for the loss of *Placidia*, could not
 prevent his body from sinking under it, though his mind remained always firm and con-
 stant: so that since his return from the Camp, he had been taken with a Fever, though not
 violent, but that by the nourishment which it received from his grief, it was likely to prove
 fierce and dangerous. That the first day he had neglected it, and would not take his bed,
 but that *Pharamond* at length had over perswaded him: and that the next day, finding his
 distemper increase, and fearing that in the Camp, where by reason of the long continuance
 of the Army the Air was not so wholesome, he should with more difficulty recover his
 health than in another place: and that he should be attended with less inconvenience, and
 less safety, in a place where the various accidents of war might occasion various changes, he
 had with great trouble caused himself to be convey’d in a Litter to *Frankfort*, there to be
 more carefully looked after. That he had accompanied him good part of the way, and that
 he had not left him, but upon the pressing necessity of the war, and that he had committed
 him to the care of Prince *Priam*, with strict charge not to stir from him, and to give him
 daily advice of his health. *Varanez*, *Balamir*, and *Ardèriè*, though he had been his enemy,
 testified their great sorrow for *Constance*’s being sick, and would every one have offer’d to
 serve to the utmost of their abilities, had he not been under the care of *Pharamond*, who
 neglected nothing, either for the recovery of his body or the ease of his mind. While they
 were thus tending their service to *Constance* in *Pharamond*’s behalf, Prince *Marcomire* held
 his eyes fixed upon the countenance and person of *Balamir*, finding in his proportion in some
 part of his face, majesty enough to breed suspicions which produced the same effect which
 the last words of *Pharamond* to *Balamir* had produced in him. Both the one and the other,
 appeared so intent upon what they had in their thoughts, they gave no heed to the discourse
 which passed between the rest: But they neither of them had time to be satisfied of their
 doubts; for the Queen of the *Cimbrians* being gone, and by that time a good way in her re-
 turn homeward, the Rivals of *Pharamond* considering what had befall’n *Amalazantha*, fear-
 ing what might happen to *Rosamond*, had not patience to stay any longer: and therefore tak-
 ing leave of the King of the *Franks* civilly enough, and yet with no small appearance of in-
 ward rancour on both sides, they turn’d their horses head, and gallop’d after the Chariots
 with all the speed they could make.

All this while the Queen of the *Cimbrians* and the Princess of *Suevia*, sitting by the

Queen of the *Turingiens*, had been sadly employed. They beheld in the countenance of the *Turingien* Queen all the signs of discontent, which hardly permitted her the use of her senses, much less of her reason. At first it was attributed to the impressions of her affright, by reason of that unhappy accident that had befallen her; so that they us'd all the words they could to recover her, and to make her understand that a danger which she had escap'd, and to which she could not in all likelyhood be again expos'd, but by her own will, ought not to give her any farther trouble, by renewing it in her memory; but finding, after the great pains which they had taken, that she made no answer to all their persuasions, but with sighs that continually issued from her Breast; and that during this silence, that portended some fatal misfortune, she sometimes cast her eyes towards Heaven, and sometimes look'd upon them with tears that rush'd down her fair cheeks, which she could by no means refrain, in such a posture that would have mov'd Souls to pity, less sensible than theirs, they began to suspect the truth, and out of the effects of this supposition, casting their eyes one upon another, thereby to explain each others thoughts; the disconsolate Queen observed them, who notwithstanding the disturbance of her mind, too sadly perceiv'd the confirmation of her misfortune: *Ab, 'tis enough,* (she cryed with the saddest accents in the world) *I see you understand too well my misery; but I cannot tell whether you have that compassion which you ought to have for me.* " We cannot tell that, *said the Queen of the Cimbrians,* though having that confidence in us which you say you have, I know not, *Sister,* " why you should conceal any thing from us. *Alas,* (replyed *Amalazontha,* with many sighs) *I should in vain conceal my woes, for it is easie for you to know, that there is no misfortune equal to mine, if it be true, what I can doubt no more, that this so remarkable a person for his deportment, and for his noble proportion, whom the King of Suevia assaulted, was Pharamond King of the Franks.* Neither the Queen nor the Princess could then deny the truth; so that the afflicted Queen having read it in their eyes, and in their silence; *Oh! Sister,* (said she to *Rosamond,* fainting in her Arms) *'twas not without reason that I dream'd that you were to be author of my death, but I pardon you with all my heart, for it is not for the miserable Amalazontha to contest for a heart with you.* She could hardly utter these last words distinctly, so that as soon as she had done speaking, her eyes clos'd, and she swooned away in the Arms of a Rival that beheld her ill fortune with more pity than jealousy.

The End of the Sixth Part of
PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

The Seventh Part.

BOOK I.



IN the mean while the King of the *Sueves* transported with that boiling choler, which made him possibly forget the Laws of Honour, rid full speed through the Valley, and fled from the sight of his fair company in such poste haste, that he was soon out of sight, by reason of the Trees and windings of the Valley. And for that he had no other intention than to shie the sight of those persons that oppos'd his fury, he rode on without regarding whither the way carried him, either to or from his own Camp; and this was the reason that by meer accident he kept the Bank of a Rivulet till he came to the very head of it, which was about

two miles off in the wildest, yet most delightful part of the Forest. The Spring of the River was a Fountain that rose with a noise to be heard at a good distance, among a knot of Trees, and among the sharp tops of certain Rocks covered with Moss; from whence it ran between others that gave it no disturbance. The water that issued out in large bubbles was very clear, which after it had glided a little way upon the green sod, by the help of other little Springs grew to be an indifferent stream, which winding it self through the Valleys of the Forest, emptied it self into the *Segua*. The great and old Trees which nature had there bestowed for ornament, in a more delightful order than art could have planted them, made a most pleasant shade, that invited all that pass'd that way to make a stop; so that the King of the *Sueves* being chafed and heated either by the fire of his anger, or by his hard riding, or else swelter'd with the weight of his Armour, which that day he had put on, as the rest of the Princes did, he made a stop for some time to view the pleasantness of the Spring, and presently after, either to quench his drought, or to rest himself a while, he alighted from his Horse, which he gave to one of his Pages among the rest of those few that followed him, (who kept aloof off, knowing by his countenance, that in the humour he was in, solitude would not be a thing unacceptable to him) and seating himself upon the brink of the Fountain, he took up some of the water in the palm of his hand and drank it, and then stretching himself upon the green Moss, he lean'd his head against a point of the Rock which was covered with the same: there it was that he vented his anger mixed with sighs, and the sorrow which he felt to have lost so fair an occasion to revenge the death of his beloved Son.

His hatred against the House of *France* was much increased by the injury which he believ'd he had receiv'd from *Marcomire* and *Polixena*; for as he look'd upon the love which *Marcomire* had for *Albisinda* as an attempt against his honour and repose, so was he enrag'd against the fair Princess, for having deprived him of *Viridomar*. He puzzled his mind with several different thoughts, which notwithstanding tended all to the same end, seeing that none of them had any other object than revenge. But scarce had he time to give them but a short freedom; for he was interrupted by the coming of three Ladies, who,

after they had walked by the River-side came to the Fountain, and rested themselves under one of the great Trees, about five or six paces from him. They were very richly habited, wearing upon their heads little Hats covered with plumes of Feathers, which very much added to the beauty of their faces. Nevertheless they were extremely beautiful, though in their beauty there was no small inequality; for she that walk'd in the middle, and who by many other signs seem'd to have other advantages beyond the rest, besides that of beauty, seem'd to the King rather to be something of Divinity than a mortal creature. Her black eyes, but full of a fire, the most lively and sparkling in the world; her lips, the shape, colour and motion whereof had a particular charm, the features of her face so delicately proportionable, whose tincture dazzled the sight with the whiteness thereof, her deportment so graceful and so free, compos'd a most admirable creature, and presented so fair a figure to the eyes of the King that beheld her, that all the fierceness which for some time his grief had caused to reign in his Soul, all the fury that disturb'd him, could not hinder him from fixing his eyes upon this fair vision, and in an instant to lose the thoughts of all other things that so employed his mind but a few minutes before. In short, he minded neither his anger, nor his revenge, nor his rage against those that had prevented their fatal effects, nor could he hardly think upon *Pharamond* or *Vindimir*, and though 'twere very improbable that the sight of a Beauty could astonish him, who saw every day in the person of *Rosamond* all that nature ever produc'd of perfection in this world, either through an effect of sympathy, or of his misfortune, or of divinè justice, now found work enough for his sight, and for his thoughts, and soon after to fetter his heart with those charms that were to endure as long as his life. He had time enough, and too much to contemplate that fatal beauty which produc'd this great change in his Soul, for being hid by a part of the Rock, those three fair persons were not aware of him when they approached the Fountain. So that having seated themselves upon the Grass, she that sat in the middle resting her self against a great Tree, at the foot whereof they had taken their places, divertis'd herself in listening to one of the rest that sung, and had a most incomparable voice, and warbled forth most passionate notes. But it was not she upon whom the King of the *Sueves* had fix'd his eyes and his thoughts, and therefore little minding either the tune or the words, he only took notice of the last, being repeated at the end of four Stanza's.

*Loves great power no more despise,
Though your beauty tyrannize.
Now insensible, yet know
You may one day feel his Bow.*

That which may happen, does not always happen infallibly, (replied the so much to be admired person to her that sang) *nor have you had so much reason as you thought for, to change these words as you did, since you begin the contest with me. I have not,* said the other that sang, *so much as I could desire; but I shall be loath to believe that you are too unjust to afford it me; and it is rather upon the grounds of reason, than for any signs that you make appear, that we must accuse you of this change. There is a great deal of reason,* added the other that had not yet spoken, *and as I conjecture a great deal of truth. We are often deceived in our judgments,* (replied the other that seemed to excel as well in quality as in Beauty) *and though you are the two persons to whom I disclose my heart the most freely, I cannot tell whether you find in it all that you imagine, or all that you would persuade me that you see there. If I do not perceive it,* said the latter, *I will add to what we have spoken concerning reason, 'tis my desire that reason will let me understand it; and as I look upon my self to be very grateful, and not to do you any injury by my acknowledgment, I must confess, Madam, that there is nothing which I have more desired than this change. You understand not what it is you wish for in my behalf;* (said the charming person that was unknown) *however, because your intentions are not amiss, though your wishes are unjust; and I find also, Cousin,* (said she, leaning her head towards her) *that I shall pardon you this injury more readily than any other. This is to say something,* (replied she to whom the address was made) *but this is not to say enough, and you must give us leave to imagine somewhat more. Divine what you please,* (said the other with a charming languishment) *but take heed of thinking amiss, and doing injustice to a person that loves you well, instead of making a right censure.*

While they were talking in this manner, and that by these discourses they engaged themselves in a larger dispute, the King who heard them, beheld this admirable unknown person with a transportation of mind, that would not permit him to think or remember any thing besides, and notwithstanding the charms that so lately disturb'd his mind, he felt the poison,

poison, which through his eyes distill'd it self into his heart. At first he felt it with delight, at least with a kind of sweetness, and by reason of an object so fair and pleasing to the eye, he could not perceive in himself any thing more besides a flattery that pleasingly surpris'd his senses, and sweetly insinuated its self: and at that very instant giving himself entirely up to the charms that seduc'd him, and freely yielding to his first thoughts, he lent his helping hand to his own self to sink the farther progress thereof into his bosom, through the indulgence which he had for the birth of his mischief, or at least through the consent and agreement which he could by no means refuse it.

In this interim remaining fixed to the sight of the fair object which enchanted him, and knowing the force thereof by the effects which he felt: *Now I repent*, said he to himself, *that I have hitherto so severely condemned those who at the first sight permitted themselves to be surpris'd by love; so that if the Sister of the King of the Franks be but like her that now appears before my eyes, I shall easily pardon Viridomar the weakness with which I have upbraided him, and with which I have been so much displeas'd, such a reason would make his fault excusable; for I perceive that at those years that should in all likelihood better defend themselves than his, from the violences of beauty, I can hardly protect my self, nay, I have hardly the will to undertake it.* *Oh, Love!* (continued he) *is this an effect of thy revenge? And to punish the severity of those that live under thy Empire, wilt thou subject me to it at a time when that wisdom which attends my years, the perplexity of my important affairs, and so many passions opposite to the pleasures of thy charms, ought to defend me against thy power?* Then for some time he chafed at the complaisance which he had for this growing passion, hastily recollecting in his mind what ever he could to oppose it: *How!* (said he, with a kind of shame that cover'd his face with blushes) *shall I permit my self to be vanquish'd by love, at a time which I have altogether devoted to my hatred?* *And after I have had so little indulgence toward those persons, whose youth render'd this passion excusable, shall I submit my self to it, so far advanced in years, and expose my gray hairs to the laughter of the world?* By and by he thought he had strength enough to oppose this hostile passion, that came to overturn the order of his designs, and perhaps all the repose of his life.

But at the same time willing to find the relief which he sought, he endeavour'd to take off his eyes from the sight of that face that had charm'd him, and to seek a victory which he could not hope for, but by flying from his Enemy; but it was impossible for his eyes to obey his reason, and his heart that would not longer acknowledge that subjection, abandon'd it self entirely to that sweet violence that claim'd Dominion over it; yet could he not choose but grieve to see himself fetter'd in chains so unsuitable to his years, his deliquis and the condition of his life, so that he breath'd toward his beloved object certain sighs which despite and love parted between themselves. He had but even now heard the Song which one of the three persons had sung, and had lent his ear to their discourse, by which he understood with a jealousy that already began to torment him, that they contended with that admirable person about some certain affection, and he perceiv'd that she defended the argument but very weakly. But while in all likelihood he was listning to understand more, and that to inform himself of what he was yet ignorant of, he bent his ear with greater attention to their discourse, he was discovered by one of the three that shew'd him to the rest. Upon that they rose with no small surpris'd; however, like persons little affrighted, and such, as it appeared, were not far distant from the rest of their company. The King of the *Sueves* also seeing himself discovered, rose also from his Seat, without considering what resolution to take, and as he was naturally very bold, and one that by reason of his high quality did not think himself oblig'd to any severe constraint before persons that were apparently inferiour to him, he hearkened only to his passion, and the desire he had to make himself known to her that caus'd it, and so advanced toward that place where she staid, with a deportment that might easily distinguish him from the common sort, though with a behaviour sufficiently submissive: *It is not fitting*, said he, *that any person should drive from this place a celestial beauty, to whom the Gods themselves would pay their homage: I cannot tell whether you will not disdain to receive it from men, yet is there no person in the world that would more willingly pay it you than my self, nor over whom the sight of your person has produc'd a more strange effect.* "I cannot tell, (replied that divine person very fiercely) what effects I may have produc'd; but if it were the repose that you sought near this Fountain, I am sorry to have interrupted it. For a repose of so short a continuance as that, replied the amorous King, you might have interrupted it without doing me any great injury; but in taking away all the repose of my life, you make me lose enough to give me a just cause of complaint. The aspect of the King of the *Sueves*, and what besides appeared in his person, shew'd there was something more than ordinary, which was not slightly to be contain'd. But the person

son to whom he address'd himself, was so little accustomed to suffer the liberty of such a discourse as his, without being more than ordinarily mov'd, nor without being vex'd to find her self compell'd to behold with disdain a person toward whom she could no otherwise shew her displeasure: and therefore looking upon him with an eye, whose cold looks might have caus'd a greater frost upon his hopes, than they had kindled fire in his breast: *You are too wise, said she, to have lost in so short a time the repose of so many years, but as I have disturb'd yours against my will, so will I take as much care as I can that you shall not disquiet mine.* "And if any one do come to disturb it, (*said one of those fair Ladies, whispering in her ear*) we know a Knight who has far more reason to hope well. She spake not these words so softly, but that the King heard something of it, and being nettled at the severe answer which he had receiv'd, his lofty spirit could not have contain'd it self, had it not been entirely under the yoke: it was sufficient that he knew where he was by this experiment, and he sigh'd for madness, that his resentment would not serve him for a remedy; but though he kept himself within bounds before her whom his love caus'd him to respect, yet could he not dissemble his resentment of the contempt, and beholding her more boldly than he had till that time done; *I am not, said he, perhaps so contemptible as you take me to be; and it may be I may appear before you in such a condition, that you will not be sham'd of this conquest, which among many others you have made.* "Whoever you are, (*replied the other, looking upon him more seriously than she had done before*) I promise you I shall never boast of the conquest which I have gained over you; but you may boast, that you have made me endure a discourse longer than I intended, which few persons durst have continued. *It is but just, replied the passionate King, that for sufferings that must endure till death, you should suffer only the trouble of a little discourse; nor is there any law so severe, that forbids the miserable to complain.* "Either you are a person much above all other men, (*replied the fair Lady, blushing withal*) or else very presumptuous. *Or else very much in love,* (*replied the King of the Sueves*) *which is that which you may more rationally conjecture; though as for my quality it is not so low, but that persons of the highest extraction may look upon it without debasing themselves: however, let it be what it will, there is no degree of Honour which I do not submit to your beauties; and having given you my heart, I have no more to preserve for you.* "Do but preserve the respect you owe, (*replied the fair unknown, beholding him very sternly*) and I shall restore you both your heart and your Dignities: and I find, (*said she with a smile*) that I shall be better satisfied with your respect than with your love. *Al! for my respect, said the King, I cannot think that I have transgressed it; but if you are a Goddess*———"I am no Goddess, (*said she, interrupting him very smartly*) but I am *Polixena*, and I am the Sister of King Pharamond. The fair Princess discovered her self to him in this sort, probably contrary to her first intention; but besides that *Artesinda* and *Laomira*, the two Ladies that were with her, shew'd her about a hundred paces off some eight or ten Horsemen, who were of the King of the Sueves train, and whom she knew not to be of her own; she moreover perceiv'd something in his eyes that she had some reason to fear, which oblig'd her to let her self be known, to keep him in awe with the name of *Pharamond*: it caus'd an effect which she desired, or rather a greater than she look'd for, though in a different manner; for if the two famous names of *Pharamond* and *Polixena* wrought not a sufficient respect in the King their Enemy, yet they strook him with an astonishment so great, as if he had seen Thunderbolts fall at his feet; so that for a while he look'd like a person altogether dismayed and forlorn. In fine, he could not apprehend, that this beauty which he so passionately lov'd, was the Sister of that Enemy against whom he had arm'd so many thousand Soldiers; nor that that beauty which in so short a time had engag'd his heart, was the same that had depriv'd *Viridomar* of his, against whom for that very cause he had been so highly offended, without feeling a grief hardly inferior to his love, and without seeing at the same time added to that grief the shame of being fallen into that misfortune, and the fear of being justly upbraided with a weakness which he had so severely condemn'd in persons of an age more suitable to Love.

All these passions crowded together; but neither his passion nor his shame could cancel his love; and though she were the Sister of *Pharamond*, and the Mistress of *Viridomar*, notwithstanding *Polixena* seem'd no less charming, nor was his heart the less engag'd for that. His different thoughts disorderly assailing him, made him pause a long time without speaking, and almost without knowing what he did, for he had a great deal of matter to ponder upon, before he could recover himself from the trouble, whereunto so surprizing an accident had plung'd him. During which time the fair Princess had left him, and was walking between *Artesinda* and *Laomira* toward certain Chariots and Horse-Guards, which he discovered among the Trees, and which in all probability stay'd for her return, but because

cause she was not gone far, and because he could not forsake her till he had seen her again, though irresolute as to those thoughts which this knowledge had infused into him, he followed her a good pace, and seeing her turn her head as he drew near her, with a behaviour that testified his fear: *Stay Princess, said he, and flee not from a person that can no longer remain your Enemy: one moment has deprived him of that enmity which he thought to have preserv'd to his dying day, and his hatred and his anger throw down their Arms at the feet of your beauty.* The Princess stopp'd the more willingly at the words and behaviour of the King, in regard she saw he had quitted his company: and while in the amazement which these last words produc'd, she kept her self silent, the passionate King resuming his address, *I do not wonder, said he, that you have so easily found out the way of my heart; it is by vertue of that predominancy which you have over my Soul, that you have so easily overcome me, and that I am not the first of my Family that upon the first sight you have fettered in your chains. Triumph, Princess, triumph over an illustrious Family which you have reduc'd from hatred to love, and from Sovereignty to Servitude. But know that your Chariot will be more honour'd by a captive King, than a fetter'd Princess, and that it will be less your glory to have a Subject than a Sovereign for your Slave. I pardon Viridomar for having forsaken my Arms, and my interests, but I do not pardon him for being my Rival, so that if he prove more happy than I, either by his good fortune, or the advantages of his youth, I must of necessity look upon him as my greatest and most cruel enemy.* Thus spake the King of the Sueves. And certainly his passion was so violent, that it had troubled a great part of his reason, seeing that at those years which ought to be accompanied with wisdom, and in the condition of his fortune, it caus'd him to utter with so much vehemency whatever came into his thoughts, and had in so short a time shut his eyes to all considerations that ought to have made him act with more reservedness, especially at the first sight, and with the Sister of Pharamond.

The fair Princess, who was not a little astonish'd at the beginning of this accident, seeing the pursuit of it so disagreeable from what she thought could have succeeded; and not doubting, after the last words which he gave her to understand, but that this her new Lover was the King of *Suevis* himself, and the Father of *Viridomar*, look'd upon this last effect of her beauty as one of the strangest accidents that fortune could have produc'd; and by vertue of the short reflection which she made upon it, she was more astonish'd at this than all the accidents that had befallen her all her life time, and look'd upon this capricious humour of her destiny, as the most surprising thing in the world; she never had heard the King of the *Sueves* otherwise spoken of, than as the most implacable enemy of the King her Brother, and of all his Family, and for that reason he could not be but hateful to her (so far as her virtue, and the sweetness of her disposition could admit of hatred) however, he was the Father of *Viridomar*, whom she had no cause to hate, nor whom she did hate, but rather lov'd more than she was willing to do, and more than she was willing to shew; he was the Father of *Albisinda*, whom *Marcomire* adored, who lov'd *Marcomire*, and had no hatred against *Pharamond*. For these reasons she was oblig'd to have a sufficient esteem for him; and knowing that she could well enough conceal it under the respect due to his Dignity, she easily conform'd her self to it, by vertue of that lively courage which accompanied her upon all occasions, and unlocking a silence which so strange and extraordinary an accident might readily excuse, *Had I known you to be the King of the Sueves, said she, I had pay'd you the respect due to your Dignity, with which, the hatred that you bear the King my Brother and our Family, cannot make me dispense.* "I cannot tell, said the King, whether it be to *Viridomar*, or to *Albisinda*, that I owe this kindness; though if my fortune would so please, I would not willingly be engaged for it to either of them. *If the King my Brother were here,* replied the Princess, *I know that he himself would pay you the same respect; and as I have no other motions to follow than his, when I act not by my own proper directions, you may be sure that you owe the entertainment which you receive at my hands to no other person than either to him, or to my self.* "I will owe nothing to *Pharamond*, (replied the King very angrily) and being that he is not beholding to me, for not having satisfied this day some part of my resentment, you will not find him it may be so moderate as you have known him, against such an enemy as my self; neither is it for me to be beholding to him for my happiness; and I must seek out other means which my fortune shall provide without engaging my self to love him, or forbearing to hate him. Having spoken these words, he beheld two Knights coming from that part where the Chariots stood, who proved to be *Ibere* and *Moroves*, and casting his eyes the other way, he saw three others at a good distance off, galloping toward the Chariots; and not questioning but that the three last were *Pharamond* and his two Brothers, whom he desired not to see, nor be seen by them if it were possible, he made a sign to his Esquires to advance, and turning himself toward

the Prince, with a behaviour that denoted the trouble of his soul; *Farewell Madam*, said he, *I intend to see you again when fortune will permit me, but I will love you till I dye: If Viridomar be more happy than I, I shall endeavour to disturb his repose, since I can never hope to trouble yours.* He uttered these last words, remembering what the Princess had spoken to him, with sufficient disdain, and when he had done, he retired to his Esquires, and those other persons that had followed him, who being got about him, he took horse and parted from the Princess, and that fatal place with extraordinary speed, avoiding as much as might be the rode which he saw *Pharamond* take. If in going to the place which he left, he had been assail'd with so terrible a passion; at his return he was assaulted by another, which though it were more pleasing; yet was it such a one as gave him greater trouble, so that he experimented in one day, the highest extremities of love and hatred: a change in his condition, so unexpected and so far from probability, rendred him hardly capable of any discourse. All his contemplations were taken up in thinking, that he who but an hour before was free, was now become enamoured in love with the Sister of *Pharamond*, not considering it as an effect of divine justice, which so ordered it that he should be always a slave to his passions, who had not vertue enough to master them; seeing that after he had allowed more to his hatred than was reasonable, he had yielded to love more than became him, at those years when in all probability he might think himself free from his Tyranny. He endured this change very impatiently; for besides his shame to be enslav'd to love, at a time when he ought to shew more prudence, and a courage sufficient enough to defend himself from it, and at these years when, to outward appearance, the dalliances of love were no way proper for him; he considered with an infinite sorrow, what person among all others in the world, his cruel destiny had forced him to adore: the Sister of *Pharamond*, the Murtherer of his dear *Vindimir*, against whom he was then arming both the Heavens and the Earth, having surpassed all the bounds and limits of a most cruel hatred. The Mistress also of *Viridomar*, whom, endued with so much vertue and excelling worth, he had used like a most cruel Enemy, because he lov'd that beauty which he was going to submit himself to: And he called to mind with so much shame, that it was impossible for him to overcome it, the severity that he had used toward his children, for a fault into which he now saw himself running headlong: a fault that was of another nature in him than in *Viridomar*, and which in the opinion of men would not be found so excusable, as the passion of a young man. In brief, to reduce the condition of his fortune into few words, he saw himself in love at those years that he was ashamed to confess it, in love with the Sister of his enemy, and the Rival of his own Son: And reflecting upon these three particulars of his adventure, he found therein so much mischief to himself, that it left him no hope of any consolation. *What wilt thou do*, he cryed, *enamour'd old man, the lover of thine enemy and thy Sons Rival? wilt thou dare to appear among men loaden with the fetters of a young beauty, thou whom thy years ought to have supplied with wisdom, sufficient to resist this idle passion? Thou who by reason of thy severity, known to all persons, art deprived of all excuses which thou canst study for thy folly? Wilt thou, to satisfy the curiosity of thy love, forsake this great enterprize, in the pursuit whereof thou hast engaged the Heavens and the Earth, and armed so many thousand men? Wilt thou renounce the revenge of Vindimir, for the Sister of his murtherer? and instead of pursuing that detestable Enemy to his grave, to which thou art bound by so many solemn oaths, and by a resolution publick to all the Earth; wilt thou cowardly and basely seek his friendship, and flatter him perhaps in vain, to seek his alliance? Or if thou couldest resolve thy self as to all these questions, wilt thou contest for this Mistress with thy Son, with a son more worthy thy affection and esteem, than the crosses with which thou wouldest perplex him? against a Son whom a fair and flourishing youth, a merit vying with that of the most renowned persons, and a hundred other amiable qualities both of body and mind, give advantages above thee which thou canst not but acknowledge, if together with thy liberty thou hast not lost thy reason? Alas! added he presently after, *I know too well that I have lost my reason, for had I preserved it, I had not been reduced to this condition wherein I find my self. I also am not ignorant of the cure which reason offers me, I see the shame which my foolish passion may cause, I see the obstruction of my hatred, of the performance of my oaths, and of my resolutions, and I see that I must contend with Viridomar for Polixena, with little honour and with less success: Yet knowing all this, I perceive I must love Polixena till death, and that through a misfortune which I have perhaps deserved, this passion, which the Gods have inflicted on me for my punishment, will endure as long as I have life.* He continued a long time fixed in this contemplation, combating his passion with all that he could oppose most powerful against it, wherein he employed the greatest part of the time which he had, to get to the Camp. But perceiving that his endeavours were all in vain, and that that imperious resemblance that so tyrannically reign'd in his soul, seem'd to establish it self more strongly,*

by the resistance which he made against it, he sought for other resolutions, wherein after he had spent some time; "Let the incensed Deities, *said he*, and my hostile destiny, dispose of my fortune as they have decreed, I will love since they constrain me, and I will seek for ease if I cannot find my cure. Many other men, many other Kings more advanced in years than my self, have been enthralled to love, yet could not Love eclipse the glory, either of *Anthony* or *Cesar*. For my hatred, to which hitherto I have sacrificed all things, I will preserve it as entire as my love, and instead of reconciling my self to *Pharamond* for the love which I bear his Sister, I may perhaps make use of my love to help me to my revenge: nor do I despair to find in my love, opportunities to perplex my Enemy. And for *Viridomar*, (*concluding with motions of anger and jealousy*) if he be so confident, *said he*, to be my Rival when my love shall be discovered; he shall know that I have over him some advantages, which may counterbalance those that he hath over me: and that though he be more youthful, more fair, and more capable to create love in others; however 'tis I that reign and keep him imprison'd, which I am able to do so long as his obstinacy shall continue to cross my affection. Upon the conclusion of this resolution, he came to his quarters about the time, that day-light began to give way to darkness.

The two Queens, the Princess and their illustrious life-guard, were got home a little before, but with disorder enough by reason of the trouble, which *Amalazontha*, long lying in a swoon, had given to her two diligent friends. They had laboured in vain all the way to bring her to her self, nor did she open her eyes or recover her senses, till she was just coming out of the Chariot. All the rest of the fair company, except the Queen of the *Cimbrians* and the Princess, attributed the cause of this accident, to the fright which her horse had that day put her into: nor did they wonder at the effect, who knew the cause to have been so terrible. The two Princesses to whom the true reason was only known, confirmed them in their opinion, and having accompanied the Queen of the *Turingiens* to her Apartment where they stay'd with her, they gave the Princes to understand, that their presence, considering her condition, might be inconvenient: who thereupon retired, leaving the Ladies alone all the rest of the Evening. Immediately *Amalazontha* threw her self upon her bed, and after she had told the women that crouded about her, that now the worst was past, and that she had no more need of their help; they departed and left her alone with *Rosamond* and *Albifinda*, who sat by her, and by their expressions and by their caresses so full of affection and tenderness, made it plainly appear to her, how much they were themselves concerned in her misfortune.

The first part of their discourse was very much discomposed, through the disorder which they discern'd, as well in her mind as in her body: insomuch that the fair Queen of the *Cimbrians*, seeing that she made no answers but with sighs and tears, that continually flowed from her fair eyes, laying her cheeks to hers and tenderly embracing her; *For the love of the Gods dear Sister*, *said she*, give not your self over to a grief that may prove your ruine, and for which I find no new cause, in any thing that has befall'n you. True it is that it was a misfortune great enough for you to love against your will, and to endure a mischief for which you could find no remedy: But methinks your condition was not better in loving an apparition, or an unknown person, who might be altogether unworthy of your affection; than in loving a Prince whom all the world esteems for his merit: and that when you understand that it was to King *Pharamond* that you had given, what you thought you had unworthily bestowed, you have no reason to accuse your self for so doing. "Ah Sister, (*replied the fair Queen of the Turingiens*) surely you speak not according to what you think, for though your pity makes you say something to flatter my grief, yet you know full well, that there is no greater misfortune in the world, than to love that person whom we ought chiefly to detest, a person I can never hope to enjoy, though it were permitted me to love him, a person who has other where bestowed all that is for me to desire from him, though my fortune and his condition gave us leave: no Sister, neither is it for me to love *Pharamond* who hath slain my Brother, nor can I be beloved of *Pharamond* whose heart is engaged, or though I might hope it, 'tis not wish you, dear Sister, that I am willing to dispute. "Ah! for me dear Sister, (*said the Queen of the Cimbrians blushing*) fear no obstruction on my part, rather believe that there shall be nothing wanting in me to make you happy. I will not tell you that *Pharamond* does not love me, since he perswades all the world to the contrary, and that by all his actions he makes me believe the same: nor will I tell you that I hate him so much as I ought, or at least so much as I am bound to testify; for that sincerity which I owe to yours, permits me not to use any dissimulation with you. But I will assure you that all the reluctancy I have to hate the King of the *Franks*; serves me to no other end than to make me unhappy: And though I had as great an inclination for him as I manifest hatred,

" that shall never make me go beyond those reasons, that oblige me now to make war a-
 " gainst him, and to look upon him till death as an Enemy, and not a lover of *Rosamond*.
 " By this resolution of yours, *replied Amalazontha*, you teach me what mine ought to be,
 " for seeing *Pharamond* did no more kill *Amalaric* than *Theobald*, and that I have no other
 " reason but what is common with yours; 'tis certain that that very reason overturns all
 " the hopes that I can conceive. " I told *Albifinda* yesterday as I will tell you now, *replied*
 " *the Queen of the Cimbrians*, that though we all three make war upon *Pharamond*, we are
 " not equally engaged: for that together with a brothers death, which I am to revenge, I
 " have also to perform, the last will of a Father dead in your quarrel, to acquit my self of
 " those solemn oaths which I have taken, and to keep that union with the King of the
 " *Suedes*, which I have sworn to observe not only with him, but all those other Princes,
 " who are link'd to my interests. These invincible obstructions to any pretence that *Pha-*
 " *ramond* may have to me, shew you plainly, dear Sister, that it is not by me that you will
 " any way be injured: so that as we can never oppose one another, you may believe that
 " nor only *Pharamond*, will easily forget his unprofitable affections to give himself to you:
 " I say to you, who merit his love far beyond me, had he seen you first of all; but that also I
 " shall joyfully behold that change, and that I can never be more perfectly glad, than to see
 " you enjoy what I cannot possess; besides that I thought it a thing always worthy of my self,
 " though my fate had not opposed it, not to shake off my own fetters but only to put on
 " yours, nor to have been wanting to an unfortunate person like my self, with whom it is
 " impossible for him to be happy, but to render fortunate a person whom I love, equal to
 " my self. " I no way deserve, *said Amalazontha*, these inestimable marks of your friend-
 " ship, and I must tell you also dear Sister, that it is hard for me to comprehend them: nor
 " can I believe that any other than your self, could ever patiently endure to see the per-
 " son whom she loved, in the possession of another. " I have not told you, *replied the*
 " *Queen of the Cimbrians*, that I loved *Pharamond*: but I must tell you now that though I
 " loved him, so well as you by your confession do, his condition would be never the more
 " fortunate, nor should I pretend that you were ever obliged to me, for yielding that to you,
 " which never could be mine. " I hope, *replied Amalazontha*, that I shall follow the fair
 " Example which you set me, and that if I cannot like you, find my cure in my courage
 " and my vertue, I shall at least meet my remedy in my death. My relief will be to me
 " more just and more assured, than that which I shall receive from your obliging and gene-
 " rous offers, and which I hope my unfortunate passion, will never reduce me to the ne-
 " cessity of abusing. In the mean while Sister, (*so she continued a while after looking upon*
 " *Rosamond with a sigh*) see now whether my dream did not tell me the truth, and whe-
 " ther it were without reason, that I accus'd you of my death. " I confess (*said then the*
 " *Princess of Suevia, who during the dispute between the two Queens, had not spoken a word*)
 " that the relation of your dream, raised in me a great suspicion of the truth, and after-
 " wards by the description, which you made us of the person of *Pharamond*, my suspicion
 " turn'd almost to certainty. " You see then, *replied the Queen of the Turingiens*, that not-
 " withstanding the prepossession of my soul, that I did not flatter him in the description,
 " which I made of him, and that he is altogether such a one as I retain'd him in my me-
 " mory. It would be a hard thing, *replied Albifinda*, to flatter King *Pharamond*, for in
 " speaking of him there is less danger of saying too much, than of not speaking enough.
 " But well you see now Sister, that it was not without reason that I told you, that you would
 " be less eager after *Pharamond's* ruine, than you appear'd to be if once you knew him so
 " well as we. " Alas, innocent as I was, *then said the fair Amalazontha with a sigh*, it was
 " against my own life that I was unfortunately incens'd, and my heart ought to have told
 " me out of its own foresight, that I was not to turn my arms against him: but I shall for-
 " bear any farther enmity: and in this dear Sister (*continued she turning toward Rosamond*)
 " I confess that my vertue is inferiour to yours, in not being able to make war with a passion
 " so opposite to hatred: and that instead of sending the *Turingiens* to the field; I will first
 " present my own bosom to the points of their swords, rather than permit them to turn
 " their steel against him. Pardon, *Amalaric*, pardon my passion stronger than our relation:
 " and if thou wilt that I should revenge thy life, raise me up other Enemies than this belo-
 " ved adversary, who by vertue of a misfortune far more terrible than thine, has at the same
 " time infused death and love into my breast. That violent passion which was become Mi-
 " stress of the Heart of that fair and unfortunate Princess caused her to express her self in
 " this manner, and had caused her to utter more, if she had not used her utmost endeavour
 " to moderate her self, and had not found within her self sufficient help, to stop the violent
 " current of her Extasie. She remained for some time without speaking, but at length
 " turning,

turning her eyes upon her compassionate Rival, *Oh, Sister,* (said she, slowly taking off her eyes from their fair object) *what opinion will you have of me? In the name of all the Gods, I beg you to believe only that I have lost my reason, and am grown void of sense.*

These words and some others little different, nearly touch'd the Queen of the *Cimbrians* and the Princess of *Suevia* with so much compassion, that they could not forbear to accompany with their own, the tears which they saw drop from the eyes of the fair Queen; and this compassion also so strongly mov'd the Soul of the generous *Rosamond*, that for some time she desired that *Amalazontha* might be happy, and that the heart of *Pharamond* might change in favour of her affection. But when she consulted her own, she recall'd her wishes; or rather, she perceiv'd that she had only endeavour'd to wish, but could not wish indeed. However, she left nothing unsaid, that she thought might conduce to her consolation: nor was *Albifinda* wanting to do what lay in her power; and having spent in this manner a good part of the Evening, *Rosamond* changing the subject of the discourse, mildly complaining to *Albifinda* of the fury of the King her Father, who contrary to his faith engaged to *Constance*, the Laws of Nations and of Honour, would have slain *Pharamond*, giving so little heed to whatever was urg'd to him to divert him from his design. *Albifinda* shrunk up her Shoulders at this discourse; and instead of justifying what her Father had done, she only gave the Queen to understand what she suffered, and what she expected to suffer from his severity. After they had spent the rest of the Evening in this discourse, *Rosamond* and *Albifinda* retired to their Apartments: but the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, as she was going towards hers, whether by chance, or whether out of any design of the Prince, met *Balamir*, who mov'd toward her to bid her good night. Though it were not her intention to see any person at that unseasonable hour, yet *Balamir's* virtue gave him a privilege; and that very day she was so particularly satisfied with him, that she willingly permitted him to accompany her to her Chamber, and to tarry there for some time. They were hardly over the Threshold, when the Queen beholding the Prince with a very obliging aspect; *It becomes me not,* said she, *to thank them that do any kindness for my Enemies; but all the desire that I have for their ruine cannot hinder me from telling you, that you are always Balamir; and that in what happened to day between the King of the Sueves and the King of the Franks, you have appeared what you ever shewed your self to be.* "I never thought, replied *Balamir*, that the interest of your service led me to follow the motions of the King of the *Suever*; or that, though you desired the death of King *Pharamond*, which it may be he has no way deserved at your hands, yet I know you never desired he should lose it by foul play, and to the eternal shame of all that take your part. *I did then sufficiently testify to the King of the Sueves,* replied the Queen, *that my thoughts were no way agreeable to his, but he gave little ear to what I laid before him, either in relation to his own, or my Honour, or the esteem which we owe to Constance; so that had it not been for your generous resolution, and timely rescue, 'tis very probable he might have satisfied his revenge.* "I cannot tell, replied the Prince, whether the success might have answered his expectation; for notwithstanding the advantage he had in the Combat, it would have cost him a great deal of labour, and a great waste of blood, ere he could come the end of so great an undertaking: I likewise understand, that in the heat of the Combat *Pharamond* had a respect to the Father of *Albifinda* and *Viridomar*, of whom *Marcomire* gave him the knowledge, and that the King had been in great danger, but for the esteem which he had for him. *I easily believe it,* replied the Queen, *and by the fair example which you set, I am of opinion that we are not forbid to praise those deeds, that merit praise, in our very enemies.*

Balamir then appeared more pensive and serious than he was ordinarily accustomed to be; whereupon the Queen desiring to know the cause, as a person that was much concerned for him. *Pharamond*, said he, *has done many noble actions, the same whereof rings through the whole world: but if my suspicion be true, he has done one noble deed, which he conceals from the whole world; and if I am so unhappy as to discover this truth, I shall have but small comfort in my life.* These words begat a curiosity in the fair Queen, and though she avoided all occasions that tended to the discourse of the King of the *Franks*, she could not refrain from making it known to the Prince, who accounting nothing so precious as the opportunities of pleasing her, related to her all that had passed after her departure between King *Pharamond* and his Brothers, and himself and his Friends, declaring word for word what discourse had pass'd between them; but he paus'd particularly upon what the King of the *Franks* had spoken to him, of a way which he had to gain his friendship; and finding the Queen to be as deeply concern'd as himself, *If your Majesty,* said he, *calls to mind the accident that befel me in the Forest of Lisurgis, and of the assistance which I received from the most*

valiant person in the world, in the greatest danger of my life, you cannot forget what I related to you, concerning what discourse pass'd between my noble Preserver and my self; and that by what he said to me, I had some reason to take him for one of the Brothers of Pharamond, or some other person highly engaged to his interest. It was neither Marcomire nor Sunnon that I discovered from under his Arms, but by his deportment and his comely grace on Horseback, and by what I guess'd by his voice through his Helmet, it was very probable to be Pharamond himself. He resembled him not more by his valour than by his words, such as methought could not issue from any other lips than his; and the more to strengthen my suspicion, by what I afterwards recollected in my mind, I understood that King Pharamond was at that time in that part of the Country, and two days after he gave you a visit. All these circumstances almost convince me of a truth which I fear to find out; or rather, I see nothing which does not confirm me in this opinion more than I could desire. "Since you have this suspicion, said the Queen, there will be now no danger in telling you that I had the same, ever since that day that Pharamond arrived at Lisieux, or rather that Albisinda and my self made no doubt thereof: and that we had revealed our thoughts to you, (continuing her discourse with a smile) had we not been afraid of doing you a discourteous, by letting you understand the obligation you had to your Enemy. No consideration, (replied Balamir very pensively) can disengage me from your service: But if it were true, that I was beholding to King Pharamond for my life, it is impossible for me to assail him, without being detestably ingrateful, which is a vice I do not find my self too much inclin'd to. This it is, Madam, that makes me find so great an unhappiness in that adventure; for if I really owe my life to Pharamond, I must either renounce the fairest hopes in the world, or preserve them with that ignominy which no passion can deface, or at least, discharge my self from so great an obligation, before I am in a condition to have anything to dispute with him. "You have not long waited for that, replied the fair Queen, for besides what you have performed this day in Pharamond's behalf, which merits a sufficient consideration, my Sister and I knew, (though we have hitherto preserv'd it as a secret) that you have prevented him in what he did for you, by what you did for his Brother some days before, and these two obligations added together, are not of so small a consequence, but that they may counterbalance the obligation which you have to King Pharamond. Ah, Madam, said Balamir, be pleas'd not to make any comparison between things that are not capable to bear it. I owed to my Honour all that which I performed to day; and for what I did in Bohemia for the liberty of Marcomire, besides what I owed to the request which your self and the Princess of Suevia made to me, I put my life at that time in no danger, nor did I meet either with an Enemy or a Rival in the person of Marcomire: I had probably done as much for his Brother, as I did then for him, but my fate would not permit me that happiness, for it belongs to none but Pharamond to meet with opportunities to exercise and signalize his virtue. "You have sufficiently made yours known to the world, replied Rosamond, not to have any reason to envy the Renown of another; so that if you are not satisfied with yours, it may be affirm'd that you are unreasonable. Such as it is, replied the Prince, it behoves me to be contented with it; and I ought more choicely to value it, if it has been the cause that I have acquir'd my esteem in your thoughts. But I too plainly perceive that it is not sufficient to make me happy; for though it were neither defaced by that of Pharamond, nor clouded by that of Varancz, Gondioch, or Ardric, yet have I not as they, either Armies at command, or a Crown to wear. And while I can only prostrate my self at your feet, Varancz, together with a merit probably greater than mine, presents you a Throne hardly inferiour to that of Theodosius or Honorius. "I had thought, replied the charming Queen, that I had sufficiently explain'd my self upon this difficult argument; and that I had as often let you understand, that besides that in the condition I am now in, it is in my power to espouse a Prince that has no Crown to wear, without degrading my self, a virtue like yours is of greater value to me, and more esteem'd than the Crown of the Persians with all the merits of their Prince. But I must tell you moreover at this time, that it shall not be for any defect in your person, or in your fortune, if you find any obstacle in your pretences; for if my Fate in conformity to the intentions of my deceased Father, were so relat'd that I must surrender my self to any of those Princes that fight in our quarrel, there is not one that I would flick to prefer before your self. At these obliging words, Balamir fell upon one of his knees before the Queen, but being immediately rais'd by her command, I am not worthy, said he, of an honour and a happiness which the chiefest of the Gods would bestow with envy; and I have something in my heart that tells me too severely that I am not born to enjoy it. But, Madam, if I may be permitted without injuring your goodness, to bear in my memory this glorious advancement with which you honour me, I will be bold to tell you, that among all the Princes that adore you, they that fight in your quarrel are not the persons

persons whom I fear, and that Pharamond as unfortunate as he is, has always been to me more formidable, than either Gondioch or the Prince of Persia. For Pharamond, replied the Queen blushing, you know he is our Enemy, and an enemy that may fall by our Arms, if fortune be not our adversary: besides that if it be true that you are obliged to him for your life, it is not probably with him that you would be willing to dispute his pretences. I very well know, replied the Prince, that I ought not so to do: so that if my passion causes me not to lose my reason, it never will permit me to forget my duty: But Madam, since his misfortune will not suffer him to preserve his pretences, it is not with him that I believe myself concern'd to contend. Then you have nothing to fear, replied the charming Queen, and I shall not forget that I have promised you, the precedency before all others: But in truth Prince, (added she a little after, casting a most obliging look upon him) I bewail your destiny, if you tie your affection to a person, more unfortunate than you believe her to be: and I judge you worthy of a better fortune than you can hope from me. She accompanied these words with a deep sigh, and the Prince instead of making an answer, remained like one fix'd upon some peculiar thought that perplexed his mind: and which it is very probable, deprived him of the liberty to explain himself. The Queen made no wonder at it, having before perceived him in the same posture, and having more than once observed in him, that he did not speak to her over confidently of his passion, though he were naturally courageous, and seem'd to be most highly concern'd: nor did it appear that he sought the occasion himself: for that time therefore they said no more, for the Prince perceiving it was late, and not being willing to abuse the esteem which the Queen had for him, bid her good night and retir'd.

The next day several of the Princes went to visit the King of *Suevia*, to consult about what they had to do, before the eight days of the Truce were expired, at which time they observed in his countenance, a change sufficient to make them judge, that he had but ill retir'd that night, and that his mind was perplexed with some new disturbance. To them however he dissembled the cause, for though he knew it was a difficult thing, for him to keep his passion from being known, yet he thought it was not then seasonable to declare it, in regard it behoved him to keep it as secret as he could, to the end he might bring to pass a design, upon which he had been pondering in his mind all the night long. He could not however retain some certain sighs, that in despite of all his endeavours, forced themselves from his breast: But he had this advantage that they rather interpreted the meaning of them, according to his desire than according to truth; there being few persons who believed that in a breast so overswayed by hatred and rage. Love could find any retreat. Among the Princes that came to visit him *Balamir* was wanting: For that Prince whose virtue acted otherwise than in common souls, could not behold him without reluctance; since that fact which he had seen him guilty of the day before, and perhaps not without some resentment, of the little repentance that he saw in him for what he had done. The King of the *Suedes*, though he could not blame him, was nevertheless nettled at his proceeding, nor could he without something of anger, but remember that he had seen him take *Pharamond's* part against him. But because he infinitely esteem'd him, and for that he knew himself in an error, he did him justice at that time, and willingly hearken'd to the discourse of *Martian*, and the King of the *Basternes*; who advis'd him to shew him some more than ordinary civility, and not to persist in any coldness, which might make any farther breach, and deprive them of the assistance of so valiant a person.

The King of the *Suedes* had a very great reverence for the counsel of *Martian*, whose virtue he much respected, and therefore having promised him, whatever he desired in that particular; in a short while after he found an opportunity, to be as good as his word: for going to visit the Queens with the rest of the Princes, he there met *Balamir*, and he no sooner saw him, but moving toward him in a very obliging manner; Sir, said he, this is not the first time, that I have found your virtue to be above ours, but besides the advantages which I here confess it gives you over us, if you knew the grief of a Father, such a one as is conceal'd within my breast, I assure my self that you would excuse a great part of the faults, which it might cause me to commit. *Balamir* received this complement of the King with an admirable grace, and therefore not being willing, to pay him less civility than he had received; It lies on my part Sir, said he, to beg pardon of you for hindring you from executing a design, which you your self would have condemn'd, had your passion let your virtues have born the chiefest sway: For now that it has reassum'd its power, I am assured that you are thereby convinc'd that I had no other intention, but to serve you. They had some other expressions equally full of honour and respect, and a little after they all went to visit the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, to confer with her about the affairs of the war. It behoved her to put a very great constraint upon her self, to behold the King of the *Suedes* as she was wont to look upon him: and had it not been

for those cruel reasons, by which she was tyed to an interest that was common to both, she would not have concealed the least part of what she had in her mind. He made her allow some excuses, not for having assaulted *Pharamond*, against whom he thought it behov'd her to be incens'd with a hatred sufficient to desire his death, but that he had not quitted the discourse of him, by reason of certain words which she had spoken to divert him from it, laying the fault upon the violence of his grief, of which he was not Master upon the sight of the person who had slain his Son. He express'd himself so discomposedly, and with so much trouble, that could the fair *Queen* have divin'd the cause, she might possibly have known that she was as well reveng'd upon him as she could desire. She hardly vouchsafed to give him an answer, contenting her self only to tell him, that she had no cause to blame him, and that not having any other reason to divert him from his design, but only the confidence she had that he could not execute it without doing an injury to his own, and the honour of all those that took their parts, she might possibly be deceived in things which she was rather to learn of him, than to teach him.

Afterwards they fell into discourse about *Constance's* Sickness, for which, unless it were *Gondioch*, there was none in all the company that did not testify a very great sorrow. The *Queen* was of opinion, that it behov'd her to send some persons to visit him at *Frankfort*, questioning when the Truce was expir'd, whether *Pharamond* would give leave, and there were few of the Princes that were not resolv'd to joyn one of their own to the person whom they should make choice of. But the Prince of *Persia*, who had a very great esteem for the generous *Constance*, was resolv'd to visit him himself, with whom, *Martian*, who had a particular value for him, would needs go along, intending to set forward the next day, to which purpose they sent to the *French* Camp to get leave. *Varanez* very joyfully accepted of *Martian's* company, with whom he had entred into a particular friendship, nor was it without reason, seeing that it was a hard matter to find a person so considerable for his merit, not only in that fair company, but also over all the world beside; nor more worthy the high Dignity, to which some years since his own virtue had advanc'd him, though he were neither King nor Prince; and that he only serv'd in the Army as a private person, for no other advantages than the purchase of Renown; yet he was look'd upon by the Kings and Princes who were there, as if he had been their equal in Dignity; for besides what they owed to the Glory of many great Actions by which he had signaliz'd himself to the whole world, and that they were not ignorant of the great Rank he held with the young *Theodosius*, and of his high employments in the Eastern Empire, they might behold in him all the marks of a true, fair, shining and sublime virtue, to which they could not deny their esteem, their affection, and their respect: of valour and prudence he had an equal share: and so great a lover he was of equity, that in the meanest things, and things of the smallest concernment he could not endure the least appearance of injustice; which was the reason he would not over-zealously engage with a party that did not seem to have the greatest right on their side; so that when he believ'd himself convinc'd of the injustice of the cause, as courageous and gallant as he was, when they ask'd his advice, he counselled them rather to peace than war. He had a most excellent disposition; haughty, yet courteous and moderate; and besides that he was naturally eloquent, he had enrich'd his natural parts with all sorts of acquir'd knowledge. He was well proportion'd in his Body, and very nimble and expert in all exercises both of body and mind. But as there were few persons that were ignorant how highly he was advanc'd, and what splendid Offices he enjoyed under the young Emperour of the East, together with his great and important employments, of which he always honourably discharg'd himself, it being never known that he fell into any disgrace, they did not a little wonder to see him so far absent from a Court where he had always liv'd in such high splendour; and as it were an Exile in a Camp, where, though his Train and Equipage was sumptuous and magnificent enough, yet it was no more than the Equipage of a private person. Many of the Princes, by whom he had made himself worthily honourable, endeavoured to oblige him to tell the cause; but they found him little inclin'd to content their curiosity, so that perceiving his design to conceal it, they press'd him no farther. Only *Varanez*, betwixt whom and himself there was more than an ordinary familiarity, during the time that he abode at *Constantinople*, and to whom he was more particularly tyed by the bonds of friendship would not be put off, so that he press'd him one day after another to make him discover what he kept secret in his Breast; *Martian*, who discern'd in that Prince a very strong affect on toward himself, and who for the knowledge he had thereof, and of his great virtues together, preserv'd a very high esteem for him, took in good part the prosecution of the *Persian* Prince, which he made use of to get this secret out of him; however, he had not discovered it to him, still finding out obliging excuses,

cuses, though with all the marks of reverence and esteem. But that very day after they had din'd together (as they were often accustom'd to do) finding themselves private or at least without other company than their Domestick Servants, whom they could easily send away, the Prince of Persia renew'd his importunity, and embracing him with a behaviour full of all the marks of friendship, *Will you be so unkind, to bid me, as to let me see that you put no difference between your old and true friend, and persons whose acquaintance grew but of yesterday? Will you be so cruel to let me languish so long, out of a desire which I never had conceiv'd, but for the esteem and affection which I bear you? Are you ignorant how far I am interested in your fortune; or if there be any thing that deserves to be secret, as I believe this does, think you me unable to keep it at a time when it concerns the interest of a friend so considerable to me as your self? No, generous Martian, be not so cruel-hearted towards me, who would willingly trust you with whatever happened to me important in this world, did I not know that you understand every particular from the beginning; but in laying up in my Breast that which you conceal from all others, give me an experiment of your friendship, which shall be ever dear to me; and of which I will make such an use, that you shall have neither cause to complain, or repent.* Martian found himself somewhat perplex'd with this adjurement of the Prince whom he so truly lov'd, and who did not so eagerly press him, but for the interest which he took in his fortune, so that for a long time he kept silent, without returning any answer; but Varanez adding to his words most obliging Careffes, with the best grace in the world, he could defend himself no longer against his request, and lifting up his eyes towards his face, which till then he kept fix'd upon the ground; *I find, Sir, (said he with a sigh) that I can no longer deny what you request of me; and that I must now disclose a secret to you which I keep concealed from all the world, and which is sufficiently to me considerable, and to some other persons concern'd therein, to deserve to be lock'd up in silence until death. You will understand as much without doubt by the discourse which I shall make you; for in learning news of me, you will perhaps hear news of others, to whose interest you are otherwise engag'd. And I hope you will keep this secret better from all the world than I can keep it from you, especially as to what you think most worthy of being conceal'd, in regard of your promise that I shall never have cause to repent. But for that in declaring to you the cause of my absence from those places where you have seen me, it will not be from the purpose, that to satisfy your curiosity yet a little further, I should make you a short relation of what has happened of most importance in my life, and that I add other things which happened to me at Constantinople since your departure thence, sufficiently deserving your attention, I find my self engag'd in a long discourse which I shall not perhaps have the liberty to finish, if we do not take some care to hinder our being interrupted, and that you do not give order that we may be left free to our selves for some part of the day. That will not be difficult to do,* replied Varanez, to which purpose, having confirm'd to you my promise to keep your secret inviolably, for the performance whereof I will refuse you no oath that you shall require, we will shut our selves into this Chamber, leaving first, word at the door, for the Servants to tell all those that come to see us, that we desire not to be molested for some few hours, being to dispatch some important affairs; which reasonable request I suppose there will be none so cruel to deny us, or to deprive me of the satisfaction which I expect from your discourse. Varanez did every thing as he had contriv'd it, to the end he might be private with Martian, and after that lock'd the Chamber door, at what time both being late down, Martian began as follows.

The History of Martian.

MY Ancestors have always gloried to themselves to have been descended from the noble Family of the *Martians*, who from the beginning of the Roman Republick began to make themselves known, as well in the person of the Renowned *Coriolanus*, who was the first that made their name famous, as of many other illustrious persons, who there held and exercis'd the chiefest authority. Their fortune has not been so flourishing in these latter ages, either through the revolutions of Fate, that permits not Families themselves the most advanc'd, to remain in the same condition, after such a number of years, or through the disgraces into which ours has often fallen, in the great change of Masters, which either through fortune or by chance of war, or through the fickle humours of men is become subjected to. My Grandfather however was in high esteem with *Constantine* who forsook Rome to keep his Court at *Constantinople*, and my Father who had been well known

known to the Emperour *Julian* and *Valentinian*, was highly favoured by *Gratian*, and received many great benefits and advantages from the great *Theodosius*, whose memory remains so glorious among us; it was in the Court of this great Prince that I had the honour to be bred up, sometimes at *Rome*, sometimes at *Constantinople*, according as the Emperour resided either in the one, or the other of those Cities, being the Metropolitan Seats both of the East and West, where I spent my youthful years with the famous *Constance*, who had there his education also, though he were more particularly oblig'd to wait upon Prince *Honorius*, with whom he liv'd at *Rome* after the death of *Theodosius*, and the partition of the Empire; whereas my Father following altogether the Emperour *Arcadius*, remained always at *Constantinople*. My Father made it his chief study to give me a noble education, sparing for no cost or means, either to frame my inclinations to virtue, and the knowledge of the best things, or to fit my body for the most noble Exercises. And he was incited thereto, not only out of his own proper inclination to virtue, and a natural desire in Parents to testify their affection to their children by a generous education, but out of a hope that he had conceived from the vanity of certain Prophecies, that, through the propensity which we have to flatter our selves, had possess'd his mind that I was destin'd to some extraordinary height of advancement. He had understood from *Tatian*, and some others, under whose care I was brought up, that an Eagle made a low stoop over me as I lay one day sleeping in the Sun, and had a long time continued upon the wing, hovering over my face as it were to defend me from the Beams of the Sun, hardly leaving me at their approach; whereupon consulting the ancient Presidents of Prophecies little different, that had portended Sovereign Dignity, his head was so fill'd with Chymera's, that one day being with the Emperour, (the great *Theodosius*, who was then alive) and being by him put to read some part of the History of his Ancestors, the Emperour made a stop at one particular passage, where *Galba* was said to collect the Prophecy of his future greatness from a prediction of *Augustus Cæsar*, who in his most tender infancy clapping him upon the Shoulder said these words to him, (*And thou also Galba shall taste of the Empire*) foretelling him by these words, as the event made it afterwards appear, that in his old age he should attain to the Empire; and because I was then standing by chance near the Emperour, and that the Emperour out of the delight which he took in that part of the History, clapp'd his hand upon my Shoulder, repeating the words of the Historian, (*And thou Galba shalt also taste of the Empire*) my Father presently laid hold of that action, and those words of the Emperour as a presage of a fortune that was to befall me, equal to that of *Galba*, wherein he was the more confirm'd, for that the Emperour died some few days after; and there is generally something more than humane in the last words of great Personages. I do not tell you this that I had ever any confidence in these vain predictions, to hope from thence any extraordinary Grandeur, to which I never bent my thoughts: for though it were more excusable in our Empire, where we have seen so many examples of the advancement of Fortunes far more improbable than mine to attain the supreme Dignity, than in Kingdoms, where by a legitimate succession the Crown is perpetuated to particular Families, not to be forc'd from them without overturning the whole frame of Government: I for my part have been always contented with my condition, and have endeavoured to make my self happy by doing my Duty, and seeking in the exercise of virtue, what perhaps is not to be found in the possession of a Throne: nor had I made mention of these hopes which my Father had so lightly conceiv'd, but to let you understand the reasons that oblig'd him to give me a more than ordinary education: I was bred in the Court of *Arcadius* after the same rate that I had been in the Court of the great *Theodosius*; and it was my own fault that I made no more of those many fair examples, and noble precepts which ought to have compos'd me to virtue, not only by means of my first breeding which I received in the Court of my Emperours; but from the experience which I ought to have drawn from my several Travels through the Empire, both in *Europe* and *Asia*, whither my Father sent me to see all that was remarkable, as soon as I had strength to sit a Horse; nor did he recal me back, unless it were to send me to other places, till I was of ability to bear Arms. This happened to be in the first war, when *Alaric* with his *Goths* invaded the Territories of the Empire; and although I was not then above eighteen years of age, I was sent into *Thessaly* with a noble Train, and such fair recommendations to those who had the command of our Army, that some slight actions that my fortune gave me opportunity to perform, were cry'd up more than they deserv'd, and gave occasions to those that wish'd me well, to advance me to employments conformable to my years, and by step and step to raise me to Dignities and Offices, far more considerable than it became me to hope for.

About this time I lost my Father, who died, as I since understood, not losing the hopes which

which he had entertained of my great fortune, though he could not live to see the event. However, though his death most sensibly perplex'd me, yet did I not for that leave the Army, where, by the favour of our Generals, and the kindness of fortune, I had farther hopes to advance my self. Nor was I deceiv'd in my expectation; for with a small party of Horse, of which I had then the command, I performed several enterprizes so fortunately, as thereby to obtain a greater employment, being chosen by the consent of the Emperour, to march into *Epirus* with a body of four thousand Horse, with a farther Commission to command what Forces should be rais'd in that Country, whither *Alaric* had sent a part of his Army, that made a strange havock where e're they came. About this time also it was that *Radagaisus* invaded *Italy*, where he perish'd with an Army of two hundred thousand men by the good conduct of *Stilicon*, and the valour of *Constance*: Nor was it long after that *Alaric* having pass'd through *Ilyricum* and *Pannonia*, was stopp'd by the same *Stilicon*, who oppos'd him with a victorious Army; and that after several Battels wherein fortune seem'd to favour neither side, the war seem'd as it were to be lull'd asleep, and all acts of Hostility were forborn, there being a truce made for four years. In the mean while I had been sufficiently successful in *Epirus* by defending that Country against the *Goths*, which *Alaric* had left there with all the good fortune that I could desire: For besides that in several signal Encounters, wherein the advantage was generally on our side, they were so weaken'd in one Battel which I fought near the City of *Nicopolis*, that they were constrained to quit *Epirus*, having lost above eight thousand upon the place, to rejoyne themselves with *Alaric*, for fear of greater damages in their retreat.

About this time it was that the Emperour *Arcadius* dyed, a Prince much lamented for his goodness and affability, yet one that overswayed by the softness of his temper, had put the government of all his Empire, into the hands of two self-interested favourites; *Entropius* and *Ruffinus*: who had altogether ruined it, if that death which they had abundantly deserved, had not prevented the evil effects of their treacherous intentions. You know Sir, that the Emperour dying, declared the King your Father Guardian to the young *Theodosius* his Son: who most nobly acquitting himself of that trust, which his friend repos'd in him, sent the vertuous *Antiochus* to *Constantinople*, who not only educated the young Prince with a most admirable diligence, but also governed the Empire with great prudence, and with all the good success that could be desired. As for my self though I lost by the death of the Emperour *Arcadius*, who testified so great a kindness for me; yet in that change of affairs, I was not altogether laid aside: for by the advice of the young Emperour's council, wherein the sage *Antiochus* bore the greatest way, the government of *Epirus* which I had defended against the *Goths* was bestowed upon me, besides many other considerable employments, more favourable to me far than I deserved. They gave me also the command of those forces which they sent against the cruel *Carroc* who succeeded *Radagaise*, predecessor to *Godegesile*, whose memory is detested for his horrible cruelties: and although *Maximus* reaped the honour of his death, and of the last defeat which he received, by reason of a desperate wound, which hindred me from compleating what I had so happily begun: 'tis well known that I had no less a share therein than himself, and that that *Barbarian* was ruined by several advantages that I obtained over him, while *Maximus* was absent with another part of the Army. In all the trouble that afterwards befel the Empire, I was honoured with the same employments, and I was so fortunate as to give daily proofs of my fidelity, in the service of my Prince, and to take away all suspicion of my being slack, in the performance of my duty. I shall make no farther mention Sir thereof, but shall come without any farther stop to tell you what has befall'n me of late years, since it is that which you chiefly desire of me, and which it may be is most worthy your attention. I have nothing more to tell you, concerning the disposition of the young *Theodosius*, which you understand as well as my self; and whose name is enough to make you sigh, were you not by another passion cured of that which so long tormented you: You know that with him were bred up the three young Princesses, *Pulcheria*, *Marina*, and *Flaccilla* his Sisters. That *Marina* and *Flaccilla*, though they had merit enough to give them the hopes, of leading a life in the world conformable to their dignity; especially *Flaccilla* who was a most beautiful Princess, forsaking the love of the world for the love of heaven; devoted themselves to God, and renounc'd marriage: and that their eldest Sister *Pulcheria* had the same inclinations, and had perhaps preceded them in her purpose, if the affection which the young Emperour had for her, had not kept her always with him, contrary to her first intentions: and had not obliged her to tie herself altogether to his concerns, at that time when the wonders of her courage and wisdom, which are still the astonishment of the world; began to render her famous in our Court, and by little and little to discover those lamps of prudence in her, which have confounded

the most cunning Politicians: and the greatest part of the Empire believe, that they were not given to a Princess, and a Princess that was enclined to renounce the world, but as a supernatural succour which heaven owed to the decaying government, the felicity of the people, and happiness of the Empire. The murmurings which were heard at first, and that ill opinion which people had of the spirit of the Emperour, for yielding to the counsel and will of his Sister, vanished in a short time, through the good effects they found thereof: And if at first my judgment failed among the rest, I was one of the first that submitted to those wonders that surpris'd me, and perfectly agreed with all the rest of the Court; that not only the Emperour, could not have made a better choice of a person, so intelligent and affectionate to the welfare of his Dominions, but also that this choice had repaired the error which the Emperours, his Father and his Uncle in the East and West, had run into by the choice of *Ruffinus* and *Stilicon*: though the last were a most excellent person, and worthy his great fortune, had he been as faithful, as by his wisdom and courage he was capable of the government. It is not necessary Sir, that I should rehearse to you what already you know, what method this admirable Princess took, to manage the most important affairs in the world, or with what prudence she governed the Empire, the Court, and family of *Theodosius*: only give me leave to tell you, that after I had beheld her for the first years without giving my judgment; through the experience which I had of the latter years, I admir'd her: and joyning other thoughts to those of admiration; they caus'd me to take up a particular interest in every thing that concern'd that Princess, and fix'd me to it at length in such a manner, that neither process of time nor any change of lite, could separate me from it. Here Sir it is, that I am beginning to manifest to you, the duty that I owe to your commands, by making a confession that I never yet made to any person living, and which perhaps I never ought to have done; but I will go now a little farther in complacence to your desire, and out of the confidence of the promise which you have made me. The Beauty of *Pulcheria* is none of those Beauties, as well you know, that surpris'd and dazle; however, she has not so little, but that persons the least passionate, cannot deny but that she is a comely personage, and before the appearance of that *Athenais*, that so often made you sigh, and who is now our Empress *Eudoxia*, there were few Beauties in our Court that excelled *Pulcheria's*; and that which Heaven has adorn'd her with, is accompanied with a Grace so little common, both in her behaviour and discourse, with an aspect so lofty, and a Majesty so commanding, that few persons among those whose Beauties are more resplendent, are capable of working those great effects upon the heart, would she make use of all her advantages, which yet she never practis'd. And if either her Devotion to Heaven, or her intent care of the Government of the Empire and the interests of the Emperour, have been the cause that she has always neglected it, and contemn'd those advantages as things unprofitable and beneath her courage, and her virtue, which others studiously make use of to render themselves amiable, yet is her disposition tender, her inclinations virtuous, her natural wit most excellent, and it may be truly said of her, that there is no person in the world that has a greater esteem for virtue, nor more free, or more capable to acknowledge it.

As I became wholly her creature, by the obligation which I received from the liberality of the Emperour, particularly the Government of *Epirus*, which I owed to her recommendation, I waited on her every day, and by the effect of that good opinion which she had of me beyond my deserts, I had the happiness to see my self honoured with many marks of her esteem, and finding in my heart too free a disposition to receive them at their full value, it wrought that effect which the Princess did not perceive, and which I my self did no way desire. However, I did not oppose it at the beginning, but flattered my self with some opinion of virtue, out of the inclination which I had to respect it in her; so that believing my self to be rather smitten with her Virtue than her Beauty, I did not believe that any thing would come of it that might trouble my repose, nor that any ill effect could proceed from a cause so excellent. But when I understood that this effect, as just as it was, did not stop within those bounds which my reason ought to have prescrib'd; and that instead of doing justice to the merit of *Pulcheria*, I beheld her with an affection that tormented me, and made me feel that which I had too little feared, I endeavour'd to suppress that which rose in my heart too vehement for my repose, and to reduce my thoughts within those limits which it became them not to exceed. And I believe it might not have been impossible for me to have attained my end, had I at the same time employ'd all those remedies which might have serv'd my turn; and if I had sought in absence the cure of a distemper, which a continual presence, and a presence that more and more discovered to me the wonders that I began to adore, render'd in process of time too desperate for me to hope for any other relief than death.

That

That day that the two Princesses *Marina* and *Flaccilla* publickly abjured the world, as they had renounc'd it long since in their hearts, and putting on habits suitable to the condition of life which they embrac'd, were shut up in a Cloyster of Virgins consecrated to Heaven; all the Court attended the Emperour and the Princess *Pulcheria* in the Temple, and assisted at that solemn and remarkable action, by reason of the Dignity of the persons that devoted themselves to the service of the God whom we adore; so that being plac'd behind the Princess, at a little distance from the Emperour, I saw, as all the rest of the Assembly did, that during all the time of the Solemnity, the Emperour and *Pulcheria* wept, bathing their eyes in tears, while the two Princesses that quitted the world, manifested in their looks, and by their behaviour, all the cheerfulness and constancy imaginable. That example so softened my heart, that I could hardly preserve my eyes drye to behold a sight that so tenderly mov'd all the congregation. But at the end of the Ceremony, the Princess *Pulcheria* turning toward the place where I stood, to wipe away those tears that had all bedewed her Cheeks, and seeing me behold her with an aspect, by which she judg'd I was nearly concern'd: *Martian*, (said she, with a sweetness unexpressible) *it may be you may laugh at my weakness; but you see that the Emperour's constancy is not greater than mine; and perhaps it may be pardonable in both of us, what we cannot refuse to love and consanguinity.* I received these expressions with that respect which became me, and looking upon the Princess with an eye that discovered how much I was concerned in her tears, *Do not believe*, said I, *that either Martian, or any other person in the world can condemn either in you, or in the Emperour those marks of your good disposition: but be pleas'd to give me lieve to tell you, that if the Emperour be as much displeas'd with this days action as he seems to be, he might easily have contradicted it.* *Ab!* *Martian*, replied the Princess, *whatever you say, you know better, that in things of this nature, it is not for the Emperour to make use of his power; and that though he might defend his Sisters from the violence of any men that should have gone about to have ravish'd them from him, he could not deny them to Heaven, that required them at his hands, and has called them to its service: Nor are you ignorant, Martian, that both the Emperour and all the world must submit to the will of God. So that it is not for the condition of our Sisters, which is the best and most happy in the world, that we shed so many tears; but we cannot refuse them to our natural affection, which is more prevalent than our reason, and which our reason does not deny us upon such a separation.* As I never look'd upon the Princess *Pulcheria*, replied I, *but as something celestial and divine, rather than a mortal creature, I must confess, I did not think her subject, like our selves, to those passions that constrained tears, and which produce other effects, and which instruct us in our infirmities.* Either you too much flatter me, replied the Princess, or else you do me a very great injury; for as I believe that you think me able to resist any thing of passion or vice, either by my prudence, or by the assistance of Heaven, I would not have you think me insensible of that which reason does no way condemn: and that you may know me better than you have hitherto done, I will inform you, *Martian*, that I am sensible both of joy and grief, when I find a lawful cause, that I am sensible of merit, of obligations and good turns; and that I am not so insensible of friendship, but that I could tenderly love too, if I were as tenderly belov'd. These words, though I could not rationally draw from thence any advantage, besides, that the Princess did not utter them with any thoughts that I could lay hold of, did not leave me however without feeling something of sweetness and flattery, which till that time I had not experimented, so that reserving a good part of what I thought, and what I had opportunity enough to have said, had I spoken to any other person but the Princess *Pulcheria*: *Did I but know*, said I, *any person in the world worthy to make use of your good inclinations, I would be the first messenger of these happy tydings to make him truly fortunate; but as there is no person under Heaven that can merit your affection, so I believe it will remain in your Breast, without finding any object upon which to employ it self.* *Hitherto*, replied the Princess, smiling, *I never knew any affection for my self, but the Emperour's and my Sisters, and I assure my self that they cannot complain that I have been wanting to answer theirs.* That which was lawful for the Emperour and your two Sisters, replied I, is not lawful for any other persons; and indeed there are few in the world that have the liberty to let you see the reverence which they have in their hearts for your person. Though there were, replied the Princess, *I have never yet had any occasion or leisure to extend my kindness to any other but they; but yet if any such accident should befall me in my life, you should find that I should more esteem merit than Dignity.* I could not understand any thing more pleasing than these words, though as well as those which she had spoken before, they were uttered without any relation to my self. But to make me wholly lose my reason, the Ceremony being fully concluded, the Princess did me the honour to give me her hand, to lead her to the place where she was to take her last lieve of her Sisters, and from thence to her

Chariot, that which I undertook with so much joy, or rather with so much transportation, so that if the Princess had never so little minded it, she might easily have made a discovery.

By means of this conversation, and proceedings of the Princess, I found something in my heart which possibly by that time was grown to be great enough to be called Love, which still increased from day to day; and out of the propensity which we have to flatter our selves, believing that I might make an advantage of what she had spoken about preferring merit before Dignity, I thought that when she understood the strange effect which her admirable Beauties had wrought in my heart, that she might be induc'd to pardon me, and to look upon it with some kind of favour: I waited so continually and so diligently upon her, that I was absent as little as possible might be, which, in regard of the power that she had over the Emperour, the whole Court imagined to be rather an effect of my ambition, than of any other passion, and that I endeavoured to insinuate my self into the favour of the Princess, for the sake of such advantages as I might make thereof: I cannot tell whether at first she were not of the same opinion her self; but soon after, had she pleas'd, she might have been of another mind, and might have perceiv'd, that it was rather the honour of her esteem which I sought for, and not for any advantages that I expected by her recommendation. In short, she took notice in a little time, that I not only ask'd for nothing for my self, nor for any of my Friends, but also refus'd great part of what was offer'd me, so far as I durst without offending the Emperour, a thing which often happened, and without giving him reason to think that I undervalued his favours. And when he ask'd my advice, as often he did, as to the bestowing any honourable place of preferment, he always perceiv'd, that without any partiality or self-interest, I gave my voice for those that I judged the most worthy, and the most capable to serve the Empire. And to this purpose I remember, that being once offer'd a place of very great importance, where, together with an immense profit, there was honour sufficient to be obtain'd: after he had told me all the advantages which he that enjoyed it would meet with, he commanded me to name that person whom of all the men in the Court I thought most meet for it, I acknowledged the Honour which he did me, with that respect which became me; and after I had studied for some time, I named *Maximinus*, a person of the greatest quality, and the greatest merit of any that you ever saw in our Court, where he always held one of the most eminent degrees: *Pulcheria* smil'd, and understanding that I had nam'd *Maximinus*, look'd upon me with some signs of amazement; not but that the quality of *Maximinus* was suitable to the employment, but for that she knew well, and so did all the Court, that there was no great correspondence between *Maximinus* and I, and that upon all occasions we oppos'd one another; so that after a long silence; *And how long is it*, said she, *that you have been reconciled to Maximinus, to recommend him to such an advantageous employment? Had you commanded me to name the best of my Friends*, said I, *I had not nam'd Maximinus; but it being your order that I should tell you who it was, that of all the persons in the Court I judged most worthy of that employment which you propos'd, and the most capable to serve the Emperour, unless I should deceive you, I could not name another before Maximinus, who notwithstanding he is no friend of mine, is nevertheless never a jot the less qualified to discharge his trust with Honour. He has not all those perfections*, reply'd the Princess, *because he wants your friendship; and therefore it is not upon him that the Emperour bestows that place, but upon your self, who better deserves it upon all accounts, especially for that excellent virtue of endeavouring to advance your Enemies.* As the employment was noble and great, and that I had no reason to refuse it in favour of *Maximinus*, I did not at all oppose the good intentions which the Princess had for me; but I had then other thoughts than to advance my self by charges and employments; and I saw that this employment would separate me from the Princess, than which, I feared nothing more; so that keeping close to what I had said already, with a resolution to fix there if it were possible; in answer to *Pulcheria*, *As it is more Honour to have merited something by your judgment*, said I, *than to obtain it by my good fortune; permit me, Madam, to be contented with my share, and not to give anyone an occasion to think that I have made any advantage of your goodness to the prejudice of a person, who by reason of his ripe years, and his longer experience, is certainly more meet for the employment with which you would honour me, though he cannot have a greater zeal and fidelity for the service of the Emperour and your self. There are meaner employments more sitting for me; and in whatsoever quality I may serve the Emperour and the Princess, I shall esteem my self highly honoured and satisfied with my condition.* *'Tis true*, reply'd the Princess, *we may find out others more worthy your acceptance, and I shall endeavour it for the good of the Empire: I shall propose Maximinus to him on your behalf; and I am perswaded that I shall persuade him to accept what you so generously bestow*

upon him, but it shall no otherwise be his than as received from you, to whom he shall acknowledge himself obliged for the favour. She was as good as her word; and the next day Maximinus came to give me thanks for the good office I had done him.

Upon several other occasions the Princess manifested the esteem which she had for me, and particularly one day I went to wait upon her, when she gave audience to certain Ambassadors from the King your Father, at what time I saw her deport her self with an unexpressible Grace and Majesty: upon that account I heard her discourse so prudently of the interest of the Empire, which she accompanied with such an extraordinary knowledge of other things, that the Persians, as well as other Nations, were astonish'd at it, yet with such a down-right and charming modesty, that after the Ambassadors were departed, I could not retain any longer what I had in my heart; so that I gave my self wholly up to set forth all her praises, which could not be denyed her, and that in a more passionate manner than I had ever done before. Ordinarily she did not love to hear them repeated: but at that time it could not be perceiv'd, but that the praises which I gave her, were acceptable to her, so that after she had given me liberty to continue my discourse, *Hitherto*, said she, *I not only never sought for praise, nor could I endure to hear my self extoll'd, fearing that I had never deseru'd them, and as it is the Emperour's will, who orders me by his power to take upon me the management of affairs far above my Sex, my Age, my Humour, it is impossible for me to discharge my trust so well as to deserve that approbation which several persons have publicly given me, whose sincerity I had great reason to suspect, finding little justice therein, and the misfortune to which we are expos'd, seldom to be inform'd of the truth among persons, the variety of whose interests force them to be in various Tales.* This made me to aim no farther, than only to discharge my Duty as far as in me lay, and to answer the trust which the Emperour repos'd in me with an entire and faithful diligence to serve him without expecting any applause, and indeed without deserving it: but though the applause of other persons never yet mov'd me, I must confess, *Martian*, that I cannot look upon those praises which come from you, with indifferency; for as I highly value your merit, there are few persons in the world, whose approbation I more value than yours. She spake to me many more obliging words, and gave me to understand more than she had ever done before, that she had a great confidence in me, and a very good opinion of me: I answer'd her with all the marks that I could possibly give of a most profound respect: but although there was something that appeared more than ordinarily passionate both in my discourse, and in my behaviour; yet I kept my self within the bounds wherein a true knowledge of my condition ought to restrain me; so that I gave her no cause to search into the true dissembler of my heart.

For a long time after, these thoughts of her, afforded me nothing but a pleasing content, and I found a real pleasure in loving and esteeming that which to me seem'd to deserve the greatest love and veneration in the world. But these thoughts at length becoming more violent, began at last to torment me, and to disturb my sleep, and to produce the true effects of love; then it was also that I endeavour'd to reduce them to more reasonable bounds, so that I might leave nothing in my heart but respect and admiration; and to this purpose, calling my reason to my assistance, *What is it, Martian, that thou ponderest upon?* (said I sometimes to my self) *And into what an Abyss of evils art thou headlong thrown, by a silly complacence with thy vain and peremptory thoughts?* O, *Martian*, know *Pulcheria* no more, no longer mind her; for though thou art sprung from a Descent sufficiently noble, and mayst flatter thy self with a favourable report of fame, canst thou hope that that *Pulcheria* that disdain the greatest Kings in the earth, and whose thoughts are only fix'd upon Heaven, and the Government of the Empire, will humble her self and look upon *Martian*, and change her resolutions publick to all the world in favour of him? No, thou hast not been so hardy as to hope it yet, nor canst thou hope it whilst thou livest, and yet thou hast not been so wise as to put a stop to the growth of those thoughts which from admiration chang'd into affection, and thence degenerated into a violent love: you ought to have respected and admired *Pulcheria*, but you ought to have look'd upon her as something divine, and to have kept your self within the bounds of veneration, without venturing so far as love; so far there was full liberty, all was well; and thou hadst the Honour to behold and understand the wonders of the divine *Pulcheria* more than any other person in the world: but to suffer thy self to be surpris'd with the love of *Pulcheria*, is not only unworthy the favour of thy providence, with which thou hast hitherto been flattered, but it is enough to make thee ridiculous through the whole Empire, and to expose thee to the contempt of the Princess, who without doubt never thought thou wouldst have so far transgressed the bounds of Duty, whom she has honour'd with such particular marks of her esteem. Without question, either her disdain or her anger will punish thy folly, when it shall be discover'd to her, and then neither the one nor the other will be less supportable to thee than death.

For some time I remained wholly taken up with these thoughts which incens'd me against my self, though to no purpose; so that having examined whatever my reason could represent to me, *Oh, my Reason,* said I, *you blame me for loving Pulcheria, yet you do not enable me to resist my passion; you should have done better not to have let me know her admirable virtues, that I might not from admiration have run headlong into Love.* However, *I am not the first person in the world that has lov'd without hope, nor the first that ever conceal'd his love to the end of his life.* When Pulcheria her self shall happen to know it, she will perhaps see nothing to merit her anger or contempt; and as she can have no reason to despise me for loving the most amiable, and most noble person in the world; so neither can she have any reason to be displeas'd at an affection altogether conformable to the Duty which I owe to the Sister of my Emperour: however, I shall learn to suffer, and to be silent; and yet I find that I must love Pulcheria till I die; and I am also sensible that whatever else shall make me suffer, will be to me more pleasing and more acceptable than the greatest happiness that my life can offer me of greatest value or advantage. Thus I talk'd to my self, and I found arguments on both sides both to oppose and encourage my passion; and when I disengag'd my self from these contests, I was either in the same condition, or else more passionate than before. The Princess might well observe in my diligence, in my care, and in the passion which I manifested for her interests upon all occasions, the particular devotion which I had for her; but I prohibited my eyes from speaking, as much as lay in my power, and from many other actions whereby Lovers are wont to discover themselves in their discourse, and which I knew I was not to put in practice, having to deal with such a person as she was.

About the same time the Emperour would have had me married the Daughter of *Saturninus*, the President of the Senate, and one of the greatest persons for wealth, and for authority in the Court. His Daughter was very beautiful, rarely deserving, and indeed the prime Lady of the Court, but I had no inclination to love her; so that after I had manifested to the Emperour my acknowledgment of his Favours, I begg'd of him to let me remain at liberty in the same condition I was in. The Emperour admired, and so did all the Court, at the little regard I had for such a match, to which few persons in the Empire durst aspire, which caus'd him to make several conjectures upon it, but though several endeavour'd to seek out the reason, I believe there was not any that found it; so that they satisfied themselves in concluding that my small inclination to marry, was the only cause wherefore I did not listen to so advantageous a proposition.

This was my condition when the charming *Athenais* arriv'd at *Constantinople* with the Philosopher *Leontin* her Father, and I was in *Pulcheria's* Chamber when she was brought thither by *Atticus*. I confess, Sir, that I was surpris'd, and that my eyes were dazzled at the sight of that celebrated Beauty; and certainly more it had been, but that I was otherwise prepossess'd before I met with her, and that I could not fix my eyes upon any other object, than that to which they were already engag'd: I was also present at the converse of those two most excellent persons; and I found no less cause to admire the Wisdom, Eloquence and Behaviour of *Athenais*, than her Beauty. The Princess who was strangely taken with her, made her a thousand Caresses, whereby she manifested that affection for her, which has since produc'd those effects so advantageous on her behalf; but after she was departed, carrying the Idea of her virtues in her mind, she talk'd of nothing but of her all the day after, and directing her speech particularly to me, she demanded of me in a very passionate manner, what I thought of the Wit and Beauty of the *Greek, Athenais*. I coldly made answer, that truly she was very beautiful, and had a good wit; but the Princess not being satisfied with my reply: *How comes it to pass,* *Martian*, said she, *that you give me no better answer, and that you do not extol the beauty which you have seen above all that ever you yet saw, or could imagine in this world?* I did not believe, (said I, as coldly as before) *that I did her any injustice, in saying she had a great deal of Beauty and wit; but had I known what I ought to have said to please you, I had express'd my self in another manner.* *Pulcheria* beheld me very seriously, and for a good while without speaking; but at length resuming her discourse with a smile, *I am deceiv'd,* said she, *if your slighting Saturninus's Daughter, and the little notice you take of Athenais's Beauty, do not proceed from one and the same cause; and I believe, that should I tell you, you are in love, I should speak truth.* I had not confidence to keep my self from blushing, at these words which I so little dream'd of, and therefore holding my hand before my face for some time to hide the alteration of my colour. *That which you tell me, Madam, is not impossible,* said I, *for he that has a heart and eyes, is not exempted from love.* Had I thought, replied the Princess, *that I had spoken so true as your behaviour now makes me judge, I had not perhaps utter'd my mind with so little caution: but however it be, if you are in love, you keep it very secret, since we that see you*
every

every day did no way suspect it. I can be in places, said I, where I am not obliged to retain a secret: and I can be in others where I can keep a secret more charily than my life. I make no question, said the Princess, but that you would discharge your self exactly of such a trust, and I have that good opinion of you, that you have not plac'd your love upon a mean object. But I should have a better if I thought you did not love, for there are so few women, worthy the affection of men of merit, that I should esteem you much more, had you not yet found one that could merit yours. It was not for that only reason, that I have liv'd till now without loving: for though the wonderful advantages which you have above all the rest of your sex, cause you to speak slightly of others; there are few that deserve not services, of greater value than those of Martian. I can hardly believe you to speak sincerely, said she, since you have so slighted Athenais, at least since you have spoke so faintly of her: for if I were a man and were to love, I would never love any other than Athenais. That fair Grecian is more happy, said I, in having so well gained your affections, where by you make the condition of her good fortune, more envied than for all her advantages of wit and beauty. If they have not appeared to you as well as me, replied the Princess, I shall return to my former opinion, having no reason to believe otherwise, but that you are in love. If that misfortune be befall'n me (said I changing colour withal) I am surely to be pityed: and as I am sensible that I shall never love, but where there is an infinite merit; I am in great danger of being miserable as long as I live. But Martian, (said she beholding me with a smile) do you find in your self a disposition to love, as well as others are said to do? Madam, I replied, do you not remember that you did me the Honour once to tell me, that you your self could love tenderly. There is a great difference, replied the Princess, between the tenderness that I meant, and the passion which we now speak of, which as I look upon as a weakness, I could wish you were not guilty of it: and as I have no more inclination to marry than you have shewn, so I was mightily pleas'd to hear you refuse Marriage. "As for me, said I with a sigh, 'tis not material whether I have any inclination to marry or no: But for you Madam there is not the same reason, and for many weighty considerations, there is a necessity that you should change your opinion. I cannot tell (said the Princess with a careless look) whether you believe as you say, but I dare presume that you are not so well resolv'd as to wager, that you will not be married sooner than I. "I dare not be so bold as to lay any wagers with you, said I, but if you will give me lieve, I will boldly promise you what you have done me the honour to propose, and I engage my self so solemnly from this very moment, that I will not break that promise, though with a wife they should offer me the Empire. "That's too much, said the Princess, and for such an advantage I would release you of your promise: but though I am not bound to make you the same, and perhaps you neither require it of me. "I do not think I should run any hazard, should I engage the same thing to you, and you will find it may be, that I shall keep my word as well as your self.

We had had a farther discourse, had not the Emperour entred the Chamber, when she began to entertain him with the wonders that she saw in the beauty of Athenais. She told him nothing but the truth, and she made him understand it so effectually by her discourse; that the young Prince had a very vehement desire to be inform'd by his eyes, and to see whether the Princess had not flattered her in the Relation. He satisfied himself the same day, he saw Athenais, he found her more charming than the Princess had represented her, and became desperately in Love with her: so that from this time forward he laid that design, so fatal to your repose, and created you such a Mischiefe, of which we have little hope that you should ever be truly forgetful. About that time you arrived at Constantinople, to whom I was sent before hand with the Complements of the Court. You know Sir how I endeavour'd to acquit my self, and as I at the first sight conceived a very great respect, for you, you were not behind hand, in honouring me with particular marks of your favour. You remain'd in our Court above a Month, before you understood any thing of what had been discovered concerning Athenais, who at that time renounced the worship of your Gods, to serve the Deity whom we adore, and changed her name from Athenais to that of Eudoxia, which name the Emperour gave her out of the respect which he bare to the name of the Empress his Mother. But in a short while after you understood all: you saw the fair Eudoxia, you told your mind both to her and to the Emperour, and you left us the day preceding the solemnity of the Marriage. All our Court that was highly honoured with your stay therein, lamented your departure, as also did the Emperour who was much afflicted for your misfortune: so that his joy for the possession of what he loved, was not a little curb'd by his grief. But in truth there was no person more concern'd therein than my self: nor was there any so apprehensive of your absence, and the little satisfaction you would receive in your Travels. As you were the best friend that I had in the Court of Theodosius, (replied Valereus, in answer to Martian's civility) I could not believe but that you were the most concern'd

concern'd in my misfortune, and such a one it was at that time, that I deserv'd far more pity than they imagin'd. I cannot tell whether my present condition be better, but besides the small perplexity that remains for having lost a happiness to which I might have so easily attain'd, as it happen'd to me in my love for Athenais, I do not find any of my Rivals so free to take my place, and by their own good fortune to render me as miserable, as I was when I parted from Constantinople.

This great Marriage, said Martian pursuing his discourse, was solemnized with a Pomp, answerable to the dignity and magnificence of the Emperour: And the admirable *Eudoxia* appearing pulchrically both to the Court and people, was look'd upon like a glittering Star, when first discovered in our Hemisphere, displaying her beams with so much lustre, that the choice of the Emperour was confirm'd by the general applause: So that there were few persons, that did not affirm and openly maintain, that the fair Empress did more than deserve, the high fortune to which she was rais'd. They were the more confirm'd in their opinion, and all the Court acknowledged with delight and admiration, that it was not for beauty, for her great wit or her sublime knowledge, that the young Empress was so famous, but for her virtue, of which she gave such publick manifestations, that it appeared far transcending her beauty, or any other of her excellent endowments. Some days were spent in diversions and publick Spectacles, wherein was to be seen all that our Ancestors had invented of rarity in their Amphitheatres, unless the Duels of the *Gladiators* which our Emperour would never suffer, following the good example of the Emperour *Honorius* his Uncle, who quite put them down at *Rome*, as is well known to all the world. Upon one of these days and at one of these spectacles, or publick shows it was, that there befel me an accident too considerable to be forgotten, the cause whereof was sufficiently known to have come to your ears: for I make no question Sir, but you have heard of the accident that happened in the Amphitheatre at *Constantinople*, by the burning of one of the Machines, which set the whole Amphitheatre on fire, in which the Emperour and a great part of the Court had like to have been lost. For according to the common report and relation thereof, you cannot but have understood that the Emperour, the Empress, the Princess *Pulcheria*, and all the most considerable persons of the Court, being pleas'd to grace with their presence, the publick solemnities, that lasted two Months for joy of the Marriage, the fire took in one of the Machines, that represented the Chariot of the Sun, which from thence lighting upon others, that were of a very combustible matter, not only consum'd the whole Theatre, but from the stage taking hold of the scaffolds, ran with that fury and violence where the Emperour sat, that in a moment he was in one of the greatest dangers, that ever he was expos'd to in his life. There was all the diligence imaginable us'd to quench it, and the people opened all the Doors and Windows to save themselves; but neither could the fire be put out, neither could they who were farthest off from the doors, hardly shift for themselves, by reason of the crowd that stopp'd them up, and who knowing nothing so terrible, as that death which they saw before their eyes, minded neither the threats nor blows of the Emperour's Guards; but crowding for their lives made it impossible; to open any passage through them. The affrighted Emperour together with his incomparable Spouse, the less concern'd of the two, and *Pulcheria*, who in that confusion behav'd her self with an admirable courage, had shift'd from their own scaffold to those that were nearest to the Doors, but notwithstanding all the endeavours of his Guards, it was impossible to get out, while the fire and smok increased in such a manner, that he was really in very great peril. We had all our share, and I was expos'd among the rest: But through the passion that reigned in my soul, I took little care for my self, willingly neglecting my own safety to preserve *Pulcheria*. 'Twas not enough to think of it, it behov'd me to take pains, to which purpose getting together, about a dozen or fifteen of the Guards; the most lusty and resolute I could pick out, I went my self foremost: and with much ado and no small labour, I at length cleared one of the doors and placed them there, and calling others, by the help of their Officers who gave me all their assistance; I drew them out into two Files, and in despite of all people's cries and all their crowding, I made a passage directly from the door, to the place where the Emperour was with the Princesses: but knowing that the Souldiers could not long resist the violence of the press, I ran with all the speed I could to that part; where I saw the Princess *Pulcheria*: and although the generous Princess, seeing me come with open arms to carry her from off the Scaffold, yet preferring the Emperour's life before her own, cry'd to me several times, *Martian* have a care of the Emperour, and perswaded me to succour him first, I gave no heed to her words, but out of my love forgetting perhaps my duty, I took her in my Arms, and carried her off through the lane of the Guards, which I had made to the very door, which they could no longer keep: As there were several persons that followed my example, the Emperour and the

Empress received the same assistance, either from the most affectionate, or most fortunate of their own Attendants. But before they were out of danger, *Pulcheria* was safe; so that after I saw her secure, as I was returning to have carried them off, I met them coming forth by the way which I had opened. When they were gone, the Guards left the Gate free for the people, who tumbled out headlong: but in regard a great part of the multitude was got out before, and that the fire only destroyed the combustible matter, and that the arched Roof hindered the Building from falling, there were very few that miscarried, either by the Smoak, or in the Fire.

In the mean while, as I told you, Sir, I had carried *Pulcheria* in my Arms, and notwithstanding the dread I was in for her safety, I could not but be sensible of a real pleasure, that proceeded from the happiness of my employment, far greater than I can express. For through the felicity which I enjoyed to hold that in my Arms which I always carried in my heart, and which I could never hope for again, but by some such accident, I had prolong'd my good fortune to the utmost of my ability. Yet while it lasted, had the trouble she was in permitted her, I am confident she might have observ'd the difference between being in the Arms of a person that ador'd her, and one that had been engag'd to her relief, only upon the score of Duty. She ran so hastily to the Emperour and the Empress as soon as she saw them come forth, that she had no time to give me thanks for the service I had done her; but she let me understand by her looks, that she was not insensible of it, and that the general disorder did not hinder her from taking notice of the kindness which she had receiv'd. The first care of the Emperour, after he was out of danger, as also of the Empress, and of *Pulcheria*, was to send help to those who had not yet escap'd it; and when they had given all sufficient orders for that purpose, they return'd to the Palace, where, as well as in all the Temples, the Emperour commanded that publick thanks should be return'd to Heaven, for his own, and for the safety of all those that had been expos'd to the same peril. Immediately all the Court came to visit the Emperour, and as he had not forgot what I had done in that disorder, which had depriv'd of their reason and senses all those that had the charge of his person; and for that he knew also that it was I that had opened the way, though I gave my first assistance to *Pulcheria*, the remembrance of that service in an excellent disposition, and in an apprehensive judgment, wrought more effectually upon his gratitude, than the preferring his Sister before him, upon his displeasure, which perhaps in another person had produc'd a contrary effect. So that when he saw me among the rest, beholding me with a look full of mildness and courtesie, and of all the marks of a true acknowledgment; *It is to you, Martian, said he, to whom next to Heaven we are oblig'd for our safety, and as there are some brave persons in every place, it was by your courage and vigorous activity that we had a way opened to escape so threatening a danger. It is very true, (added the fair Eudoxia) that without the assistance which he gave us, we had been in great jeopardy, and that a service of so great importance is most worthy all acknowledgment. Notwithstanding his great courage, (said Pulcheria, with an intention to excuse the fault which the Emperour might have accused me of) he confess'd to me that the danger wherein we were, put him into an amazement; and that by reason of that amazement he was mistaken in not assisting first those persons whom he ought to have succoured before me.* This discourse of the Princess, instead of doing me a kindness, as she intended, plung'd me into a great perplexity; for as on the one side I was unwilling it should be known, that it was by any mistake that I first assisted the Princess before the Emperour, believing it beneath my courage, and unworthy of my love; on the other side methought it was very hard, if not very imprudent, to declare out of my own mouth, that the preferment of my assistance, so notoriously known, was real, which made me study how to save my self between these two extremes; nor was it an easie thing to find the way, when the Emperour observing my disturbance, was willing to assist me out of his own goodness, and preventing the bad Apology that I was meditating, with a look conformable to his words; *Martian, said he, take no care to justify an action that needs no justification: you know well that the safety of my Sister was dearer to me than my own, and that you should serve me better in serving Pulcheria, than Theodosius: you must know also that I have look'd upon your intentions without envy; and that I am not less sensible of the good you have done my Sister, than if you had done it to my self.*

This pass'd in the Emperour's Apartment; but being afterwards in the Princess's Lodgings, she took me aside; and after she had testified her acknowledgment in the most obliging expressions in the world, and with offers, which, considering the sway she bore, had found a more joyful acceptance in any other heart than mine, she put me upon the same discourse that had given me so much trouble before the Emperour, and press'd me to tell her whether it was not by mistake that I ran to her relief, sooner than to succour the Emperour; I stood,

a good while without making any answer; but when I saw my self constrain'd, "Madam, *said I*, you put me once upon a necessity of making a discourse before the Emperour, "wherein I should have appeared rather a down-right man, than a good Courtier; and I "had begun it, if his goodness had not spar'd me the trouble which I should have found "in it. It had been a difficult thing for me to have told him that it was by mistake that I "address'd my self first to your aid, out of the reluctancy I have to tell an untruth: and "it would be a vain thing for me to tell you so, since you know too well, Madam, that "I could not fail by a mistake, seeing that you gave me notice sufficient, by putting me "in mind of the Emperour. "By what I understand, (*said she, smiling*) you were not so "much perplex'd, as I would have perswaded the Emperour in your excuse. But it is "that for which you have less reason, for I cannot apprehend why you should be more care- "ful of *Pulcheria*, than *Theodosius*. "That is apparent enough, (*said I, making a ready "answer*) for all that can be said of it, is, that the life of *Pulcheria* was dearer to me than "the Emperour's, though in truth the Emperour's life is dearer to me than my own. The Princess blush'd at those words; however looking upon me with a very serious coun- tenance, she did not seem to be any way displeas'd with them: "I shall be always glad, "*said she*, to have so worthy a Friend as *Martian*; and as I cannot have any other but such "as are real to the service of the Emperour, I am apt to think that I do him service in "preserving them and esteeming them as I do. However, you will please me better, not "to do at another time as you have done to-day. And if the Emperour have the first place "in your affection, I shall be contented with the second. "I cannot tell, Madam, (*said I "in a most passionate manner*) whether I have been so unfortunate to displease you in what I "have done to-day: but if to please you, I must prefer any person in the world before the "Princess *Pulcheria*, I fear I shall never please you as long as I live. You see, Madam, that "the Emperour has approv'd my Actions, and my Intentions. Since therefore he pro- "fesses those Services to be done to him, which are done for his Sister, permit me to pre- "serve my first Services for the Princess, and to pay them till I die. "And what know you, "*(said the Princess, laughing)* whether I may prove always faithful, whether or no my am- "bition may not make me forget my Duty, and whether I may not one day abuse the good "will which you have manifested for me, by putting you upon trials, which so nice a virtue "as yours cannot undergo, "That is a danger, *said I*, to which I am not likely to be ex- "pos'd, nor is it from you, Madam, that virtue can have any thing to fear: but should a- "ny such thing happen, I will never separate my self from your interest: and although hi- "thereto perhaps I never had a thought contrary to my Duty; I will never acknowledge any "one more powerful over me, than that of obeying you. I would not desire it of you, "*(replied the Princess very seriously)* and therefore to make use of your good intentions as "becomes me, I shall endeavour to employ them for the good of the Empire, for your "honour, and the satisfaction I shall find in acknowledging them as I ought. Concluding these words with a look full of Majesty, she return'd toward the company, and spoke no more to me in particular, but as to other persons that were in the Room. But the follow- ing days, methought she carried her self toward me with more reserv'dness, than she was wont to do; that she did not take me particularly aside; that she gave me fewer opportuni- ties to explain my self, though her countenance toward me was the same, and that she still procured for me all benefits and advantages from the Emperour: she also had the goodness to bestow considerable employments upon those that were related to me either in blood or friendship.

And about that time the King of the *Vandals*, that famous *Gonderic* whose Renown is so far spread, being come upon our Coasts with a potent Navy, and having put to flight cer- tain Ships that oppos'd him; I had the command of those Forces which were design'd a- gainst him, though probably there were persons near the Emperour, that for their years and their ability, were far more deserving than my self. I put to Sea with a very power- ful Navy, I went to seek out the King of the *Vandals*, who was cruising about the Islands of *Archipelagus*. And fortune was so favourable to me, that in two or three Engagements I beat and vanquish'd the Lieutenants of *Gonderic*, to their considerable loss of men and Vessels. At length coming to the main Engagement where *Gonderic* commanded in per- son, the dispute was very bloody, and if the victory were not entirely ours, yet the success was so little favourable to the *Vandals*, that they were forced to quit their design upon the Eastern Empire, and to turn their Arms against *Spain*, whence they had been expell'd by the great *Constantine* some time before. And because I had command from the Emperour to treat in friendly manner with *Gonderic*, if he desired it, about certain propositions which he had made. The King of the *Vandals* and my self put into a certain Island, where we had several Confe- rences,

rences, wherein I found that it was not without reason that fame had numbered that Prince among the most renowned of the Age, as being inferiour to few for his noble Aspect, his Valour, his Wit, and many other Royal Endowments. But whatever esteem I had truly for him, my kindness inclin'd more strongly toward Prince *Thrasimond* his Brother, a young Prince, in his person admirably compos'd, brave and valiant as the God of War, and to be belov'd for all sorts of Noble Qualities. By my good fortune he easily took an affection for me: and because I could not agree upon certain Articles with the King of the *Vandals*, wherein there was something of difficulty, he consented that Prince *Thrasimond* should go to *Constantinople*, upon my faith and promise given that he should be there kindly received by the Emperour; thereupon the King allowing his Brother a Royal and Magnificent Train, ordered him to accompany me, while he steer'd his course for *Spain*. *Thrasimond* undertook this Journey very willingly, giving me to understand from day to day that he thought me worthy of his friendship by the proofs that he gave me thereof; and I was so apprehensive of them, and pleas'd with the knowledge which I daily receiv'd of his Virtue and admirable Endowments, that I return'd him all the affection that I could serve him withal, so that we easily entred into a strict amity, which made us live in an entire confidence one of another, and so link'd me to his interests, that I expos'd my self to several apparent inconveniences, as you shall see in the pursuit of my Story, for his sake. I would not enlarge my self upon the particulars of that War against the *Vandals*, so that I have only hinted them to you in a few words, what you ought not to be ignorant of for your better understanding those things which yet remain for you to know, not doubting but that I have been sufficiently tedious, and not judging it pertinent to the continuance of my Story to tell you any more.

You need not question, (then said Varanex to Martian) but that the report thereof has come to my ears; and that I have been informed of all those Transactions, and of your success both against the Lieutenants of Gonderic, and against himself in person. Renown has publish'd them in places where I was, and for the friendship that was between us, during my stay in the Court of Constantinople, I interested my self therein, as much as that passion which was then predominant in my heart would give me lieve. I am sensible, said Martian, how much I am indebted to that effect of your goodness; and to discharge my self of what I have undertaken, I shall rehearse to you things more worthy of your attention than what you have already heard, whereby you will understand the confidence I have in your promise, and my obedience to your commands.

The End of the First Book of the Seventh Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK II.

AT my return to *Constantinople*, I was received by the Emperour and the Princes, as one that brought along with me the Renown of many signal Victories. And through their goodnes they look'd upon the little which I had done, as if they had been the greatest Services that could have been performed for the Empire. The young Emperour testified to me in the most obliging language in the world, how much he was satisfisd in the management of the War and Negotiation; and gave me to understand by the good opinion he had of me, that there were few Employments or Dignities to which I might not aspire. The charming Empress, who studied all things that might please the Emperour, honoured me with many marks of her esteem; and *Pulcheria*, whose looks and thoughts I much more consulted, gave me to apprehend that I had lost nothing in her affection by my absence, and that she was not a little joyful for the good success of my Voyage. In the Evening she caus'd me to give her a long relation thereof in her own Apartment; and I inform'd her of all the most important particulars, except what I had suffered in my heart for her self, during my absence: and when I had satisfisd her in all that she desired of me, opening her lips with an extraordinary kindness and familiarity, *You see, Martian*, said she, *that I have kept the promise that I have made you some time since, and that I employ your loyal intentions for your own honour, and the good of the Empire. In whatever you shall employ them,* (I replied very readily) *you shall find them always prepared to obey you, nor shall I ever question the end for which you make use of them.* By what I see, (replied the Princess, smiling) *your voyage has not chang'd your resolution.* No, Madam, replied I, *nor shall it ever change, so long as I live.* Such obliging intentions of a person of your merit, are too considerable, added the Princess, *that any alteration thereof should be desired: and as I am very well pleas'd that you should preserve them, I will assure you that I have no disposition to lose those which I have had hitherto, of prizing you according to the merit of your Virtue, and as you oblige me by your affection.*

She stay'd not for an answer of these words, but concluding them; she went to meet the Emperess, whom she saw entering the Room. The charming *Eudoxia*, for she was no more call'd *Athenais*, kept an admirable correspondence of friendship with her; and as she was not ignorant, that she had a great power over the Emperour her Husband, and that it was chiefly to her that she owed the high honour which she enjoyed, she gave her that respect that the Princess was unwilling to take from the wife of her Brother and Emperour. So that the wife *Pulcheria*, far from remembering in what condition she had seen her, as the Daughter of *Leontin*, entertain'd her, as we plainly saw, with the same respect, as if she had been descended from the most ancient of our Emperours. They seem'd in all things to have but one heart and one will. But the fair Empress loving altogether a quiet life, took no cognisance of the affairs of the Empire, though *Pulcheria* understanding her miraculous wit, and believing her capable of all things, would sometimes oblige her to it. So that at those hours wherein she was not either with *Pulcheria*, or the Emperour, she would retire to the Princesses *Eudoxia* and *Maria*, and with them spend whole days in her Devotions. The Emperour, who was no less addicted to pious exercises than she, often went with her; and when the Princess had any leisure time, she willingly bore them company. Together with Religion toward Heaven, which was, and still is the best observed

in our Court of any other that ever was in the world, all other virtues are amply exercis'd even in things of the smallest importance: and the least Licentiousness opposite to the fear of Heaven, and contradictory to good manners, which generally creeps into the Courts of Princes, is banished from thence with so much zeal, that it is not without reason that our Court is called the Holy Court, and a Court altogether celestial. Justice is there administered in those things, wherein the Emperour is no way concern'd even to admiration: nor is the course hindered by unjust favour, for Princes taking no care to prevent that inconvenience, pardon easily those injuries which they themselves have not received: and only mind a positive swerving from the Law. But in all crimes, where the offence particularly concerns the Emperour, which he can pardon without injury to others; he shews a clemency rather blameable for its excess, had it not hitherto produced good effects: so that at one time when he had received so great an injury, that the criminals were by the Judges unanimously condemn'd to death; the Emperour after he had interpos'd his Authority to save them, speaking to them who advis'd him to suffer execution; *Would to God,* said he, *I could restore the dead to life.* Here Sir I tell you those things of which you have seen the beginnings: and which I could not leave out speaking of *Pulcheria*, because that all the world gives her the praise, of having very much contributed to the religious manners of the Emperour, and of having established in his Court, that most excellent government so admired by all the world. But to make an end of this digression, and to follow my discourse, I must tell you Sir that the next day that we arriv'd, Prince *Thrasimond* as he had been ordered, went to pay his duty to the Emperour, as also to the Empress and the Princess. He was as well received as he could possibly desire, for by the Character which I had given him both to the Emperour and the Princess, I had easily prevailed with them, to give him all that was due to his Birth and Merit.

They lodg'd him in the Palace, and in all things treated him as the Son and Brother of a great King: but if at first he were only looked upon for his Birth, for the dignity of his Brother and his Ancestors, he was afterwards admired for the advantages of his person, for his resplendent merit that shone through all the Court, and made all the people cast their eyes upon him, not as a barbarous Prince or at least born among *Barbarians*, but as a Prince enriched with all those noble endowments, that render a man accomplished. His person as I told you is rarely well proportion'd, his courage great beyond the common rate, his wit pleasant, and all his inclinations virtuous: As the King his Brother had magnificently furnished him, and as he was naturally of a free and generous nature, he spared for no cost: spending at the same rate as if he had been heir to a Crown. His Train was stately and magnificent, and as he was very nimble, and experienced in all exercises of the body, and in all sorts of pastime, as riding, juggling, and such other sports as the Emperour loved; he appeared every where, with so much magnificence and with such a grace, that all the world was charm'd and admir'd, that among the *Vandals* should be found such a person, as had been hardly seen among the *Greeks* or *Romans*. Nor was his converse less delightful: For besides that he was very ready, in expressing himself neatly and eloquently; he spoke many languages, particularly the *Greek* and *Latine*, as if he had been bred up either at *Rome* or *Athens*. More than one Lady of our Court by what I understood, felt the effects of his merit: and there were few persons that did not envy the general advantages of his most excellent parts. As I was tyed to him by a sincere and faithful friendship, we were alway together: and though he were younger than I by five or six years, for he had not seen above two or three and twenty years at most, I refused him no courtship that he desired, being sufficiently enclined thereto by my own disposition.

Among the rest I consented to one request of his very willingly; for upon a day that the Emperour solemnized with several plays and shows, together with Horse races in the Hypodrome, a place as you know appointed for those kind of sports, being a festival celebrated in honour of the Empress, who precisely on that day, was a Twelve-month arriv'd at *Constantinople*, which day as it was very grateful to the memory of *Theodosius*, he resolv'd to observe it annually; he was sitting upon a scaffold in the great Piazza between the Empress and the Princess, where with the whole Court he beheld some that were casting Javelins, according to the custom of our Ancestors, others breaking Lances as was usual among the young Knights, when *Thrasimond* and my self entred, with several Trumpets sounding before us, magnificently arm'd, and mounted upon the fairest Horses in the world. It was not our purpose, to make our selves suddenly known: but because he did not see us among the rest of the spectators, where he knew we would not be missing, as well as by other marks which made us observable, we were presently discovered, so that we took no farther care to disguise our selves. After the Trumpets had sounded several times at our

Entry, we proclaimed our design, which was in honour of certain Ladies, against all Knights that would venture, to present themselves within the Lists. As it was a thing commonly practised, there was no person that made any wonder at it: But while those Knights that were upon the place were making ready, and that others were gone forth to fit themselves, the Emperour call'd us to his Scaffold, and caus'd us to put up the Viscers of our Helmets, then did he and all the Court admire *Thrasimond's* noble aspect, and his becoming grace in sitting his Horse. In conclusion, after he had view'd our Arms, and our Equipage, and seen that every thing was sufficiently magnificent, *I must confess*, said the Emperour, *that you are a pair of Knights, that for deportment and equipage suitable to your design, are not to be easily match'd: But you must not deny, but that you have committed the greatest error in the world, since it was never known that ever any Knight enter'd the Lists for the honour of Ladies without any impresse, or without some favour, and mark of particular affection for some Lady who had been the original cause of the enterprise.* “Martian, (said *Thrasimond*, *undertaking the answer*) I have heard say, that he never had but a general affection, without any particular design: but for me, who perhaps have not so much power over my self, in another place I might probably have had some Lady that would have honoured me with her favour, upon such an occasion as this, and would have own'd me for her Champion; but in such a Court as this, being a stranger, or rather a Barbarian, whose favour can I demand, or by whom can I expect to be own'd? Thereupon the Emperour turning himself to the Empress who sat next him, whisper'd something to her in her ear, which made her smile; and when she apprehended his meaning, turning to the Prince of the Vandals with a charming Grace; *It becomes us not*, said she, *to suffer the disgrace that you would put upon us this day; nor shall it be for want of a favour that you do not find a Lady that shall own you for her Champion.* And concluding these words, she pull'd from off her wrist a Bracelet of precious Stones, and gave it him, which the young Prince receiv'd from her fair hands, bowing himself down to the Pommel of his Saddle, with the greatest submission imaginable, and seem'd to be so transported at the receipt of so high a favour, that he could not a good while find language to express his thanks: yet at length he perform'd it with such a deportment as shew'd him to be no *Vandal*; and before he tied on the Bracelet, kissing it with all due respect, *For such an Honour*, said he with a loud voice, *as I have this day received, I will not only break a Lance, but I will fight the whole world: and I assure my self, that there are more persons that will envy this day's honour of the Champion of the Empress, than all the fortune of a Roman Emperour.* I my self tied on the Bracelet, as being interested in his joy: and in performing that office, *And must I*, said I aloud, *be unhappy in my own Country, where strangers are so courteously treated? And must I behold like a disown'd Knight the honour of my companion?* The Princess *Pulcheria* presently look'd upon me with a smile, and believing there could be no bad interpretation made of what she did, either by the Emperour, or the Court, and that she was in a condition to do things more extraordinary, without running the hazard of being to be blam'd, she took a Rose of Diamonds from her head, and presenting it to me with a careless, yet pleasing behaviour, *No*, *Martian*, said she, *you shall not be a disown'd Champion to day; and though your honour be not equal to your companion's, yet you shall be Pulcheria's Champion.* I cannot easily express the joy that surpris'd me for a happiness so little expected; and as the Honour which I received, which coming from her was too great for me, was dearer to me for the love I bore the Princess, than for any other consideration: I had hardly power enough to receive it with moderation, and from manifesting those signs of a transportation which might have discovered the cause more than I intended; I drew back therefore as soon as I could, and bowing down to the Saddle Bow, *It is in your power*, Princess, said I, *to do for us what you please, and as no power under Heaven could advance any man to a Glory parallel to mine, it shall be my care to endeavour that it be not unworthily bestowed.*

After these words, *Thrasimond* and I enter'd the Lists, where we performed our Duty so well, that the two great Princesses had no reason to repent the Honour they had done us; and where fortune was so favourable to us, that of all the Knights that ran against us, there were few that kept their Saddles, and none that ran without some disadvantage. The Emperour, who is a great lover of that exercise, and who would use it oftener than he does, did they not persuade him from it, upon considerations of the danger which he might fall into, and the several disasters that attend it, seeing with what a grace and courage *Thrasimond* behav'd himself, was stirr'd up with a kind of emulation against a Prince of an age not much different from his, which made him have a great desire to break a Lance with him: to which purpose, while we were at some distance from the place, and otherwise busied, retiring privately from his Seat, and ordering his Arms to be brought him into a Chamber

Chamber not far distant from the Scaffold, and a Horse to be ready at one of the doors where he might mount without being seen by any of the Spectators, in a short while after he enter'd the Lists magnificently arm'd, and bravely mounted, and when he had done what he saw the other Champions do, he plac'd himself just opposite to *Thrasimond* with an intention to run against him: but he was hardly approach'd the Barriers, when it thought that by certain signs I should know him; and at the same time casting my eyes toward his Seat, and not seeing him there, only *Pulcheria* next to the Emperess, who gave me a sign with her hand, I made no more question but that it was he; whereupon turning my Horse as it had been only to make him fetch some curvets, I rode up to *Thrasimond*, and gave him notice that it was the Emperour that was to run against him: *Thrasimond* seem'd not to take any notice of what he was told, but being at the starting place of the Course, he made toward the Emperour upon the Signal given by the Trumpets, but before he came near him he let his Lance fall, and received the Shock of the Emperour's Lance upon his Shield: he was so near the Emperour at that time, that the Emperour had not leisure to observe what pass'd, so that he broke his Lance upon the Prince's Shield in a thousand pieces, though without moving him any more than a Rock. Thus they finish'd their Course, when the Emperour seeing what *Thrasimond* had done, and knowing that it was in vain to conceal himself from a person who had manifested by that very action, that he was known already to him, came toward him, and accosting him with a frank and pleasing behaviour. *How, Prince,* said he, *did you not think us worthy one blow of a Lance, or did you think to dishonour your Arms in running against us. I laid them at your feet,* said the Prince, *out of that respect which does not permit me to make use of them against you. But you must give me leave to tell you, Sir, that all that we owe you, could not perhaps have made us dissent with your own self for the Bracelet of the Emperess, nor could you have a design to render me unworthy the honour which you had procur'd me, without some kind of cruelty. You have defended it,* said the Emperour, *against more worthy Champions than my self, only I was willing to make it more entire, by putting the Emperour among the number of those whom you had vanquish'd.* Having spoken these words, they drew near the Stands; and we believing that with that course it became us to conclude the Triumphs of the day, were unwilling to proceed any farther. So that after we had heard our selves sufficiently prais'd by the Emperess and *Pulcheria*, who were no way dissatisfied in the Honour which we had done them, we quitted the place and went to disarm our selves.

That Evening there was a magnificent Ball in the Emperesses Apartment, and all the Ladies of our Court (among which you your self have seen many that deserv'd your observation, had not your affection for *Athenia* (but your eyes against all other objects) augmented there their several Beauties, with the lustre of their Ornaments and Attire. The Emperess, at the Emperour's desire, appeared there with all her charms; and the Princess *Pulcheria*, who was seldom present at such meetings, having her thoughts otherwise employ'd, did not refuse to be there also out of her love to the Emperess, and had accoutred her self much more sumptuously than she was accustomed to do: I accompanied *Thrasimond* thither, and as we omitted nothing in our Habits which we had also trimm'd over and above with those inestimable Ornaments that we had received that day, I was not the meanest among the rest; and as for *Thrasimond*, he appeared in the greatest Gallantry in the world, so that he drew upon him the eyes of all the whole assembly. Now for that by reason of what we had already perform'd, we were look'd upon as those who had the greatest share in the Solemnity of that day, all eyes were upon us more than they would have been at any other time, and every one courted us with applauses, testifying their gladness for our good success in that days enterprize. The Emperour in praising us, shew'd others the way; and after he had spoken several things aloud to our advantage, there was not any person throughout the whole meeting, who was not eager to testify the respect they had of his good opinion. When it was time to dance, *Thrasimond* took his place at the feet of the Emperess, very bravely telling her, that since she had that day chose him to be her Champion, he was so to continue all that day, and that no person was to dispute it. *Eudoxia* kindly entertained his discourse, and very civilly, and with all the marks of her esteem and consideration of his merit, return'd him an answer. So that he danced several times with her, and that admirably well, and did all things with such a becoming Grace, that to the shame of all our Knights, he carried away the honour from them all, both in the Tournament, and in the Ball. For my own part, when I saw that, I left them to dance who had more inclination to it than I had; I found my self more happy to stand behind the Princess's chair, and talk to her over her Shoulder, whereby I had the good hap to entertain my self with full liberty, and without being over-heard by any other persons. You may well imagine,

Sir, that I was not wanting to return my thanks, and that with all the respect and submission that I was able to express, for that inestimable favour with which she had honoured me, and to make ample protestation of my resolutions to render my self worthy of her kindness by a fidelity which she should find far surpassing what she could expect from any other Subject of the Emperour. And I am to add, that she not only listened to those returns of my acknowledgment, and the protestations which I made, with a great deal of tenderness; but that after she had let me say all that I had to say, turning toward me with a charming eye, Martian, said she, *this is not the first time that you may have perceiv'd the value which I have for you; and I am to testify the esteem which I have for your virtue by more important and more remarkable testimonies than I have given you to day.* “But, Madam, (said I with a transportation of mind, which somewhat disturb'd my senses) do you not fear that so great a happiness may blind my reason; and have not men of prudence greater than mine been distracted, inasmuch as they have not known themselves in the midst of less favours than mine? Seeing that I find all your thoughts governed by the dictates of virtue, replied the Princess, *I will never fear that good fortune can puff you up, or evil fortune depress you; for as well in the one as the other, I know you will still be Martian.* “For adversity, said I, I dare affirm that I could bear it with a great deal of courage; and by experience I am quite contrary to the opinion of those who believe that the greatest trials of virtue appear in adversity; for I have seen many persons suffer their evil fortune with an egregious constancy, but I have seen as few use their good fortune with moderation, and preserve their virtue in a long and continued prosperity, which I dare not hope to do, not having those assistances which are necessary in a fortune too glorious and successful; and I cannot tell, though I should be always Martian, whether I should always bear it in my memory. *Should you forget it,* replied the Princess, smiling, *you might perhaps find friends that would put you in mind of it.* “I stood in need of those Friends this very day, said I, for I had much ado to remember that I was Martian, when I saw my self honoured with the glorious Title of Pulcheria's Champion. *Those two names are no way incompatible,* replied the Princess, *for I had not own'd you for your merit, had I not thought you worthy of the Title.* “If it were so, (said I, charm'd with the sweetness of her words) I may as well bear that Title to-morrow as to-day; nor do I know any reason to the contrary why I may not keep this glorious Title which I prefer before the Empire of the Universe, as long as I live. *You need not question,* replied the Princess, *but upon the same occasion I shall prefer you before all others: but as to-morrow I have no need of a Champion, so neither will you have any need of an employment which you cannot exercise.* Though she smil'd when she uttered these words, yet she spake with such a Majestick Seriousness, that she repress'd my boldness, and made me tremble for fear that I had spoken too much: and therefore casting my eyes upon the ground with some symptoms of bashfulness, *I desire your pardon,* said I, *for having spoken too much; but you see the truth of what I have said, since my good fortune already begins to blind my reason, and disturb my senses.* I spake these words after so passionate a manner, that the Princess had some reason to suspect the truth of what was in my heart. And perhaps the jealousy which she had thereof, made her change the subject of the discourse, bidding me to observe *Thrasimond*, who danc'd with the Empress with the greatest grace in the world.

Thrasimond and I kept company the next day, and many other days following, in which I observed a change in his looks, and his behaviour, from being naturally jovial and merry, he became serious and melancholy; and he began to love retirement, though till then he had us'd to be never out of company: however, he did not shun mine for a long time, and I had this privilege above the rest of his Friends which his merit had procured in our Court, that when he could not endure theirs, he would patiently brook mine. But at length, he would be absent many hours from me; and I had much ado to find him out in blind walks where he hid himself. Sometimes I took the liberty to expostulate the matter with him, to which, though he made me very kind answers, yet he gave me no satisfaction, but only cause to suspect that he had something in his mind that he kept secret from me as well as other persons. He would sigh very often, and his eyes were heavy and pensive; and at length his whole countenance was covered with those marks that love is accustomed to imprint. I made no question therefore that in a person of his years, frolick as he was, and capable of the most tender impressions, it was only love that caus'd this change. But though I knew that he frequently visited the Ladies of the Court, who either for their quality or desert, could expect to be visited by him; yet I never perceived that he had ever any particular affection, behaving himself with so much freedom toward all, that denoted the liberty of his mind. At length, the marks of what he suffer'd were

so apparent, that his Friends could not forbear to speak to him, and being I had the greatest affection for him, and the most oblig'd to the testimonies of his friendship, I gave him to understand how really sensible I was of the evil, which he conceal'd from me as well as from others: and one day looking upon him with an eye that seem'd to upbraid him for his distrust, while he beheld me with a languishing countenance, *Ab Prince,* said I, *I believe you have now no more love left for me: When I shall cease to love you no more,* (answered he grasping one of my hands, in a most passionate manner) *I can assure you I shall forbear to love my self: but when I am not able to remember my self, my friends may easily pardon me if I forget them.* You can neither forget your self nor your friends, said I, *but through some great misfortune, or by reason of some violent passion: and you cannot suffer either the one or the other, and keep it secret from me, without cruelly wounding that friendship, with which you have honoured me, and which I look upon as one of the greatest happinesses of my life.* Your friendship is infinitely dear to me, said the Prince, *and whatever happens to me I will never break it: But in truth at this time, I see no occasion to give you any proof thereof, nor do I feel any thing, but what may proceed from an ill temper of body, or some other distemper of little Importance.*

You may well imagine Sir that such an answer, was not sufficient to satisfy me: However I was forced to be contented for that and many other days after, during which time he very obstinately conceal'd his thoughts, from my continual importunity, though he testified how much he was thereby, rather obliged than disquieted: and though he did not question that my zeal, proceeded from the real interest that I took in his concerns, and not out of curiosity. But one day having surpris'd him in his Closet, where he had shut himself in all alone, nor would open the door till he heard my voice, and seeing his eyes red, and his countenance troubled; I had no longer patience: but conjur'd him by the power of that friendship which he had assur'd me of, not to make me miserable, by concealing his misfortune from me, which if it were to come to the knowledge of men, might as well be made known to me as others, without being obliged to a trust: But if it were always to be conceal'd, would receive no small ease and consolation from the Counsel, and perhaps the assistance of a friend, who in honour and friendship, ought to be no less obliged than himself to preserve the secret. And at length I so far urg'd him, that he could no longer resist the force of my importunity, and thereupon beholding me with a sad look, *And well my importunate friend,* said he, *will you be satisfied, when I shall have inform'd you by word of mouth, what my countenance and actions make you suspect: that it is love which makes me the most miserable of all men? As there are few other accidents,* said I, *which could reduce you to this condition, considering your quality and your courage; I made no question but that only love was to be accused for this change: But seeing that a person like your self may be much in love, yet not be very miserable, and that if the pleasures of love belong not to you, there are few persons that can expect them; pardon me if I lament not your condition, so much as perhaps you desire, unless you shew me more particular marks of your misfortune. Is it not,* said he; *a very great unhappiness to love without hope, and to love without daring to make it known to the person, whom he loves? There are few in the world,* said I, *to whom a merit like yours may not aspire, and fewer perhaps, whom the knowledge of your love would displease: But as it is most probable, that you are in love with some person of our Court, seeing that here it is that you seem to have lost your mirth and frankness of humour, will you not tell me, whether you sigh for Marcella, Tiberina or Paulina? For besides that they are the fairest in the Court, they are they whom you most visit.* *Ab Martian,* said he, *my condition would be far more different from what it is, if I suspected what I now suffer, for one of those Ladies whom you name: For though they are Ladies of great merit, there is nothing there to deter my hopes. But do not expect that I should tell you more, for I know well that instead of being my friend, you will be my foe, when you know the cause of my misery.*

These words made me think he was in love with *Pulcheria*, whose averseness from marriage, being publickly known to all the world, I took to be the reason why he had so little hopes in his Amours. And though I had never discovered to him, what I had in my heart for her, the proneness to be jealous in such occasions, and easily to believe that what appears amiable to our eyes, is no less lovely in anothers; cast a fear into my heart. He might have seen the effect which it produced, had he observ'd my countenance: especially when with a stammering voice I demanded of him, whether it were not the Princess *Pulcheria*, that had engrossed his affection. His eyes were then fixed upon the ground, but slowly lifting them up at those words and looking upon me; *Were I in love with Pulcheria, I make no question,* said he, *that I should have sufficient reason to despair, either for my want of merit, the condition of my fortune, or in regard of her own inclinations: However neither my discourse*

would be forbidden, nor my hopes would be so desperate as now they are, nor would my misery have been comparable, to what I am now fallen into. These words opened my eyes, and wondering at my self that I had so long studied to divine the truth; *Ab Thrasimond* (said I all in an instant) *I enquire no farther for I know now too well, that it is the Empress that you are in love with.* And now that that misfortune is befallen me, (said the Prince crossing his Arms upon his breast) *what can you say more, but that I am a person to be pityed.* Without doubt you are, replied I immediately, and surely I find my self very unfortunate, to see so dear a friend fallen into a misfortune, wherein I can give him no assistance. Cruel friend, said he very sadly, *make not your Apology so soon, nor believe that I will desire your assistance, contrary to the affection and duty which you owe the Empress.* 'Tis not that fear that afflicts me, replied I, for as you are full of virtue in this as well as in other things, I will pay you all the service that you can expect or desire: but though I should for the friendship which I have for you, forget all that I owe to the Emperour; I know that my good intentions will signifie little: and I so well understand the disposition of *Eudoxia*, the Severity of her virtue, and the love she bears to her Husband, that I must tell you more than once, that all the assistance that your friends, the most affectionate in the world can give; is only to advise you eternally to oppose your virtue to this passion, and to seek out means to cure your self, by all that your reason and your courage can arm you withal. I may find my cure in my death, (said he, beholding me with eyes bedewed in tears) but other remedies I shall seek in vain: I have already made war against my love so far, with all the considerations that you can lay before me, and with what I have set before mine eyes; that I too well feel its power, which I assure you will last as long as I live. I know my life will be miserable, but I know it will not long continue, nor can I end it more gloriously than in sacrificing it, to her celestial beauty and most infinite merit. I need not desire you to keep it secret, for such a request would be injurious to your virtue and our friendship: as it is not for me to make any progress in my love nor in my designs, you shall not hear me desire for the future, any thing that may put your duty upon a greater tryal than that: However I hope it will not hinder you from lamenting my condition, nor from affording me comfort in my misfortune. I should be very miserable, (said I, with a countenance that plainly shewed how sensibly I was afflicted) if I could do no more for you; and more than that with a Friend so virtuous as your self, I am not so cautious as to deny you the service which is due to you. In the mean time endeavour to conceal the cause of your distemper as much as in you lies: and consider that however the Emperour is full of goodness, and has a great confidence in the virtue of the Empress; yet I know that he is so nice in this particular, that had he the least suspicion of your love, it would be a difficult thing for you to stay long in this Court. We had a great deal of other discourse, and indeed it took up the rest of the day, wherein I did not omit any thing that I could imagine or study, for to divert him from this passion: but though he were of a courteous disposition, and that he heard me without any contradiction, and without making any other answer than with his sighs; the beauty of the Empress had made so deep an impression, that I saw it was impossible to deface it, and despair'd of doing any good with no small grief to my self. After that day as he conceal'd nothing from me, so I found his distemper to increase and grow more and more incurable: so that several who did not understand the cause, could not chuse but perceive it, by the marks that they observed which he could not conceal. In short, not only his humour became absolutely different from what it was, but also there appeared so great a change in his countenance, that if he would not attribute it to the indisposition of his body, he was necessarily to confess, that his mind was very much out of frame.

As he was very much beloved, so every body enquired the cause of his discontent, nor was the Emperour the last, who earnestly shewed himself interested therein. The Princess *Pulcheria* who esteem'd him for his merit, was diligently pressed him to know the cause of his grief, offering all that lay in her power for his satisfaction: and the Empress her self, ignorant of the mischief which she was the cause of, had desired to know more than once, and had put him many times to very hard shifts, what answer to make to so nice a question. One day we were together in the Princesses Chamber, and had been there a good while, when the Empress at length came in: She no sooner entred, but *Thrasimond's* colour changed in such a manner, that had I known nothing of his distemper before, I might then have easily apprehended it. It made me so much ashamed that I blush'd my self, and I was about to have spoken something to the Princess to have amused her, and to have hindred her from observing the countenance of *Thrasimond*. But I thought of it too late, so that she discern'd that great change, and eagerly pressed him to tell her what he ail'd. *Thrasimond* seeing he could not hide that, which was plain to the eyes of all the world, told the Princess that he had been taken, with a very great pain in his heart, and fearing to discover more if he there made any longer stay, he took his leave of the Princess and retired: But the Empress

Empress who perceived him, turning toward him and looking upon him with eyes, that made new wounds in the bottom of his heart; "How *Thrasimond*, said she, do you flee from me too, as they say you flee from all the world. The Prince was stopp'd by his respect, since she had began to speak to him, and returning in despite of himself, to the place from whence he could not depart, without rudeness and incivility; "I would Madam, (*said she to the Empress with a faint voice*) I would willingly flee from my self if it were possible, although a man cannot absent himself willingly from hence, but he must be an Enemy to himself. "To flee company, answered *Eudoxia*, is no sign of being an enemy to a mans self: because in seeking retirement, he flies all others to enjoy himself: So that in effect, added the Princess, a man hates that which he flies, and not that which he seeks. "When a man avoids society, for that reason that makes me shun it, replied *Thrasimond*, he is not for that to be accus'd of hatred: and it is but little sign of love to a company, especially such a company as this, to let them suffer the trouble of a distemper'd person. "In truth, (*said the Empress with a serious look*) you cannot be ill without a great affliction to us, and we shall blame you if you use not your utmost endeavour, to recover your former condition that you were in, that day that you were my Champion. "That day was so kind to me, (*replied the Prince with a sigh, which it was impossible for him to keep in*) that I fear I shall never see the like again, and it were to be wished for me, (*continued he as he began*) that I had perished in that glorious enterprise. "We should have been very sorry for that, replied the Princess, and I assure my self that he who was your companion in Arms that day, does not wish as you do. Hitherto, (*said I, seeing her address her self to me*) I have made no such wish: for as I am not in a condition to give my wishes, those bounds which I ought to set them; I attend my good fortune from whence soever I am to look for it, without asking any thing: but I must confess with Prince *Thrasimond*, that I cannot dye more honourably, than in dying the Champion of *Pulcheria*. "You agree very well in your thoughts, replied the Princess, and by what I see, you do not repent you of an action which you perform'd with so much success. But (*said she addressing her self to Thralimond*) you are not gone as you were about to go, which makes me believe that the distemper which you felt is over. "If it be not altogether, replied the Prince, however I find some ease: and seeing that I know I shall not be much better any where else, if you have the goodness patiently to endure me in this condition, I shall very willingly stay here. "I am very glad, replied *Eudoxia* very obligingly, to find that it was not my company that drove you away: and if my Sister and I could charm your illness, (*for I dare answer for her as for my self*) you may be assured we would endeavour it with all our hearts. "If my evils were of such a nature, said the blushing Prince, as to be charm'd, I make no question but that your spells were sufficiently powerful: for if I could not find them here, I know not where to go to seek them. "You may find them, said the Empress, in those famous beauties that fame has celebrated over all the world: the Princess of the *Cimbrians* the chief of beauties, the Princess of the *Turingiens*, the Sister of that illustrious King of the *Franks*, and a *Bellamira* that makes so loud a report over all the western Empire. And think you, replied the Prince, that renown talks less of the Princess *Eudoxia*, than of those other Beauties? Or rather do you not think that she speaks more of *Eudoxia* alone, than of all the rest together? "I know, said the Empress, that my fortune has been very good, that gave renown any occasion to speak any thing of me. But those that know the truth, are not ignorant that I owe it to the decrees of Heaven, the goodness of the Emperour and the Princess his Sister, rather than to any advantages of my person. "They who will be just, said *Pulcheria*, will not hearken to your modesty, for there is no man but knows, that you might have been Queen of *Persia* before you were Empress of the East. *Eudoxia* was about to reply, so that there had been a pleasant controversy between the two Princesses, if the Emperour had not enter'd the Closet, followed by *Lenon*, *Maximinus*, *Paulinus*, and others the most considerable persons of the Court. He argued with *Thrasimond* about the change that he saw in him, but it was after a very obliging manner: And *Thrasimond* expecting no less, was the less troubled to disengage himself than at other times, for generally he made but ill defences for himself, in what he was urged to: For looking upon him as the peaceable possessor of that which he adored, he could not so well matter the cruel agitations, which the remembrance thereof inspir'd into him, to make use of all his wit and courage at that time, or to turn the discourse another way as he desired, which he had been able to do, had his passion been more moderate

The Apartment allotted to him, was in one of the Corners of the great front of the Palace, which looks upon the Gardens, over which there are other very fair Lodgings: there

it was, as well you know, where you lay, and where now the Princess *Pulcheria* lies, having parted with her own to the Empress, as being nearer to the Emperour. You know there is also a long Balcony that runs all along the Front of the House, and serves to all the Apartments upon that Floor. *Thrasimond*, who out of his own Lodging might go into that Balcony, many times was wont to walk there in the evening, when every body else was retired to their rest, and when all the Court was buried in sleep which his love would not permit him to taste of. There he entertained himself with the Stars, and conversed with what the light of the night would permit him to see in the Garden, and discover of the Sea over the Trees, of which he had a large and free prospect. With these insensible objects he discoursed of all that his love made him feel, and out of the pleasure that he took therein he forgate himself sometimes, and walk'd there the greatest part of the night.

One evening troubled more than ordinary with these amorous thoughts, and being in a deep contemplation of those Ideas which employed them all the day, he began to walk at such an hour probably when all the world was drown'd in sleep, and fixing his eyes toward Heaven, he call'd the Stars to witness what he suffered, and with a thousand sighs which he breath'd from the bottom of his heart, he seem'd to crave their compassion, and to make them interested in his misfortune. The night was neither light nor clouded. However, being obscure enough to please the humour of a person who sought nothing less than light, it was not clear enough to discover objects at any reasonable distance. *Thrasimond* walk'd gently to and fro, making twenty discourses, (as is ordinary with persons in his condition) sometimes to the object of his love, sometimes to himself, sometimes to the senseless witnesses of his grief. He spake to his ador'd *Eudoxia* all that he could possibly imagine to say to her, in the discovery of what he suffered for her, and sometimes he thought he made some things known to her, that all her severity could not furnish her with reasons to accuse or blame him for; and while his imagination in complacency to his love, held him in this contemplation, he found such pleasures therein, that would not permit him to think upon any thing else; but when he awak'd out of that flattering dream that seduc'd him, and beheld the condition of his life without any dissimulation of the truth, he fell from the beams of hope that dazled him for some moments, to a night of sadness and anguish, and supposing to himself his *Eudoxia* as terrible as she had been pitiful, he became so lost and desperate in his own opinion, as if he had been really in her presence convicted of all that was hid in his heart, and expos'd to all the most terrible rigour of her fury: then he turn'd all his reason against himself, repeated all that he thought capable of affording him any cure, and fortified himself with all that his reason and his courage could infuse into him. But he found in himself no disposition to hearken to all that he was able to represent to himself; and thus giving a small check to himself, he pass'd from those severe and sad thoughts to others more sweet and flattering, and finding there more satisfaction, he gave himself over to them, not caring to interrupt them any more by any importunate reflection. All this discourse which I repeat not to you otherwise than as he told with his own mouth, he made silently to himself, not letting fall any words; but sometimes passion more strong than his reason, made him drop some words unawares, and that so loud as to be heard at some distance off. At first he walk'd only in that part of the Balcony which was near his own Apartment, without any intention to stray farther; but by little and a little being buried in his thoughts too deeply to mind what he did, he suffered his body to be guided by the passion that ruled his mind, and which without permitting him to take notice of one or t'other end of the Balcony, which you know, Sir, is about six hundred paces in length, lead him unawares to the end of the Emperour's Apartment, and just before that which belong'd to the Empress. He might have walk'd there often enough, without being taken notice of, had he made no noise: but being wrapp'd up in his amorous thoughts, and having his mind entirely possessed by his passion, they put into his mouth certain words of a passionate Song which he had made the day before, and which I had heard him sing the same day; for he sung admirably, and there are few persons in the world that had a better voice than he. Nor did he sing them only once over, for the disturbance of his mind, had so depriv'd him of all circumspection, that he repeated them often, and the Song consisting of several Stanza's, took up some time to sing it. As he was singing he made a stop also, without minding what he did, at one end of the Terraces, which is just opposite to the Empress's Apartment, with his face toward the Garden, leaning upon the Balisters. And by the same fortune the Empress return'd later to her Chamber that Evening than usually, having pass'd that evening with the Princess *Pulcheria*, at some sports that *Thrasimond* formerly took much delight in, and wherein he would not fail to make one still before he grew so melancholy. The Empress was just going to undress

dress her self, when two of her Maids of Honour came and told her, that if she would go into her Closet, she might hear a voice that sung admirably, and which they took to be Prince *Thrasimond's*; the Empress, who as you know well, together with her skill in all other Sciences, is perfectly skill'd in Musick, and sings marvellously well her self, had heard *Thrasimond* sing before, and knowing the condition wherein the Prince then was and having a curiosity more than ordinary to understand what it was that the Prince at that time a night, and in his humour, should be pleasing his fancy with, she was easily perswaded to step into her Closet, where, opening the window softly, which was no farther distant from *Thrasimond* than the breadth of the Terrass, being about seven or eight paces, and causing the lights to be taken away for fear of discovery, she lean'd upon the window, and listen'd with great attention; but all the care she took not to interrupt him was needless, for besides that his face was turn'd t'other way, he was so buried in those thoughts that busied his mind, and so ravish'd with the words of the Song, that a small noise would not have disturb'd him; but by and by he made a small pause in the Song, which caus'd the Empress to think he would sing no more; but immediately after he had breath'd out some sighs, he began again in so passionate a manner, that thereby the true passion that made him utter these words was easie to be discern'd, and that he was touch'd to the very bottom of his heart with what he sung. The first Notes of the Song gave the Empress to understand, that her women had not been deceiv'd, but that it was really *Thrasimond*; and therefore listening with great attention, she heard these following Stanza's.

*When for his rash attempt, Ixion bold,
Himself to Hell thrown down beheld of old:
This Honour my disgrace repairs, he cry'd,
That yet my courage ventur'd once to love
The beauteous wife of the most Sovereign Jove.
And lest I feel the rigour of his pride,
Than that which from her eyes I prove.*

*Bold Lover, though, how fair thy Destiny!
A jealous God that will not let thee die,
Will keep thee here in pains without relief:
Yet 'tis my comfort, though she prov'd unkind,
That I with freedom told her all my mind.
And whereas others dare not tell their grief,
My death leaves none conceal'd behind.*

Ab Ixion! (said the Prince, having made an end of singing, and mov'd by a passion which he could not contain) *I am more unfortunate than thou, since thou didst only suffer after thou hadst made known thy grief to the Goddess that caus'd it, but I must perish, concealing mine as long as I live.* He accompanied these words with many sighs; and a little after he left leaning upon the Balisters, and turn'd his face toward the Empress's Closet. Till then he was not aware to what part his passion had lead him, contrary to his intention; but though the Tapers were remov'd, he saw the light of the Empress's Closet, and also perceiv'd the Empress leaning at the window. The fear which he then had for what might have happen'd, made him open his eyes to look about where he was, and certainly knowing that he was got before the Closet of *Eudoxia*, where he had often been, he made no question but that it was she her self whom he had seen look out at the window, though he thought she had been retired long before. However, he was uncertain what to think, and what judgment he ought to make of that accident, supposing it were the Empress that had heard him sing; and in this anxiety he was no less unresolv'd what to do, when the Empress, who had seen all the passages by a light sufficient to discover them, believing that he would sing no more, and not doubting but that he knew that she had seen him, and farther by reason of the words that she had heard him utter, being touch'd with a curiosity greater than ever, was resolv'd not to let him pass by without speaking to him, and without making him give her an answer to some questions concerning those things which she had heard, raising her voice to be well understood by him, *Give not over singing,* said she, *the persons that hear you understand how to value the harmony which you make, and perhaps know something of Musick.* The darkness was favourable to *Thrasimond*, in concealing the change that that accident might have discovered in his face by a better light, for his bashfulness did not in that obscurity permit him in a good while to find words to express himself.

However,

However, at last he drew near to the window with a profound reverence, and begg'd pardon of the Empress for the transgression which he had committed through the darkness of the night, that hindered him from knowing where he was, protesting that if he had thought he had been so near her Closet, he would have taken more care how he had made any noise to disturb her rest. The fair *Athenais* hearkened to him with abundance of sweetness, and making him an answer after she had heard his Apology, and that her women had brought lights, *I shall easily pardon you, said she, the noise which you have made, which was a noise so pleasing; but I cannot pardon you for being sorry that you did us so great a kindness; for I must tell you, I took great delight to hear you, had not you by your Song given me to apprehend your misfortune.* The night serv'd well to conceal the blushes of *Thrasimond* which these words caus'd in his cheeks; and the Prince giving the Gods thanks, for the happiness which he had thereby received; and with much trouble finding words to express himself as he intended: *I cannot tell, said he, what knowledge of my fortune you may have gathered by the words which I sung; for as I neither made them, nor sung them but by accident, I cannot believe that they could make you apprehend any thing of my condition.* "I do not question, but that you made them, replied the Empress, besides that you sung them after too passionate a manner not to have some concern therein: but though it were not so, those words which you added after you had done singing, sufficiently inform us that you are not so happy as you would be; for in regard you know that I have read the Poets, and understand something of their Fables, give me leave to tell you, that person must be very miserable that envies the fortune of *Ixion*.

These words augmented *Thrasimond's* confusion, so that he stood a good while without knowing what to answer, and without being able to find out a way to make amends for the error he had committed; but at length taking courage from the necessity that constrain'd him, seeing it was not for him to stand like a mute at a time that his silence might convict him of what he had a mind to keep secret, *I cannot tell, Madam* said he to the Empress, *what words those were that gave you to understand my envy of Ixion's fortune. However it were, the honour to have perish'd for what he lov'd, and to have lov'd the greatest of all the Goddesses, seems to me a thing that deserves to be envied.* "If you look upon his boldness as an effect of his courage, replied the Empress, you may thereby confound virtue and vice together; for all bold thoughts proceed not from the same principle; nor does the Fable give him that honour which you attribute to him; for instead of dying for what he lov'd, he died only being punish'd for his offence. But on the other side I am of opinion that you do not envy his condition chiefly, for that only you esteem him more happy than you, in regard he had the liberty to tell his thoughts, and declare his whole mind, while you are forc'd to keep silence. *I confess, said the Prince, in that his fortune might be better than mine; for there is nothing more cruel than to suffer excessive torment, and to be forc'd to conceal it as long as a man lives.* "If you will speak like *Ixion*, replied *Eudoxia*, by exposing your self to the same punishment that he deserv'd, I question not but you may have the same freedom as he had; for he that fears not to be strook with Thunder, may take to himself the liberty to speak what he pleases. *The Thunder of Heaven, replied the Prince, is not always the most terrible, for that confidently may be out-brav'd by one that dares not resist those other Lightnings.* "In short, said the Princess, we will no more endeavour to seek out the cause of this change in your humour, and in your person for some time since, so that when we behold you pondering and muttering to your self; when we perceive you sighing, and hiding your self in solitude, we will no farther question the cause that makes you sigh, and produces all those other effects. To tell you the truth, I had almost a suspicion of it before: and I am very glad that I find you labouring only under such a distemper which will less trouble your Friends, than any other misfortune more grievous, or more important, either in your person, or your fortune. *I never thought, Madam, said the Prince, that I had discovered my malady so far, that you should speak thereof with so much certainty, but were it that which you imagine it to be, I know not, Madam, why you should esteem it less to be pity'd than any other, seeing that in losing the quiet of our life, our fortune cannot but be very miserable, and that no part of the body can have any health when the heart is wounded.* "Time and reason, said the charming *Eudoxia*, easily cure those that are sick of these wounds; nay, there are some that have not need of so much assistance to recover their health.

It seem'd, Sir, that the Empress speaking in that mannner, foretold the change that was to happen suddenly after in your mind; or that the Philosopher *Leontin* had declared to her that which he foretold you; but the *Vandal* Prince who had often heard the discourse of your malady, but did not foresee your cure, and therefore thought it had been more easie, beginning

beginning to talk like one that had no ground for what he said; *In truth, Madam, said he, though other persons might make that judgment, we are not to expect it from your Majesty; for besides that you may remember that you have seen Princes lie prostrate at your feet, that will carry your wounds to the Grave; you are not to deny but that the same power may wound others not less incurably.* “ ‘Twas not in expectation of this piece of flattery, *said the Em-press, that I told you sincerely my thoughts; and I am well enough satisfied in having made one single wound, since you will needs allow me that vanity, so that it be the last that ever I shall make as long as I live. As you well know, replied Thrasimond, that it was not willingly that you made it, you are not to question but that you may make others contrary to your own intentions, and of which you may be ignorant as long as you live.* “ I shall be very willing to be ignorant thereof, *replied the Empress, for as the knowledge thereof cannot be pleasing to me, and very unprofitable to those that would teach it me, they can never more sensibly oblige me than in sparing me that knowledge as long as they live.* *But, Madam, replied the Prince, how can they oblige you, if you never know what they do for you? Or how will you know that they hide their wounds from you, if you never know that you have given them?* “ To oblige me sincerely, *replied Eudoxia, it is not necessary to know that they have oblig'd me; for you know it is generous to conceal a good turn when it is done, and that without the desire of acknowledgment, or seeking any other reward but that of self-recompence. But it is not concerning me that you speak, (continued she, with a smile)* and therefore to return to the subject of the discourse, which is your self, as there is no question but that you sigh for some absent Beauty, and that you brought along with you in your heart an evil which time now makes you feel more grievously than you suffered at the beginning, methinks you should rather lament the evils of absence, and seek for a remedy of them, than complain of those that you suffer through a silence which you are constrained to keep. *There may be reason for both, (replied Thrasimond very sadly)* and you may judge by that, *Madam, whether a person that is sick of several distempers at one time, be not truly miserable.* “ I do believe, *said the Empress, that you do not at this time desire that I should be your confidant; and because I will not be so whether you will or no, nor farther interrupt the hours of your repose, I leave you to your liberty; and advise you to give your self to your rest for the remaining part of the night.* Concluding these words, she took her leave and retired: *Thrasimond* went away from that corner, but he walk'd a long time after upon the Terrats, employing one part of the night in pondering upon the adventure that had befallen him, and passing his judgment thereupon, and examining what he could find either harsh or advantageous for him, among all the expressions of *Eudoxia*. She had talk'd to him both as a person that blam'd him, and as a person that esteem'd him; but she had too far explain'd her self for his repose, when she declar'd to him the small inclination she had to know the wounds which she inflicted; besides that he found something in what she had said, that so nearly prick'd him, that he was in great fear lest he had spoken something which had given her a jealousy; and therefore he was glad, when he had not discovered himself against his will, by finding that he had followed the same track that she did; and that she made him believe, if she did really think so, that it was only for some absent Beauty that he sigh'd.

Next morning he repeated to me the whole story, in the same manner as I tell it you; and he hung upon every particular, like a person truly passionate. I was sensibly afflicted to see him, though I were my self in a condition, which probably did not permit me to interest my self so strongly: But though I believed my self not less in love than he, and that I had as little hopes; yet I found my self less disturb'd than he, and whether it were from the difference of our tempers, or of our thoughts, my mind appear'd in another condition than his, and methought that my fortune was also very unlike, who never could desire any thing more sweet and favourable in all things, than the kind entertainment that *Pulcheria* gave me. I thought also that I had done and said enough, to let her understand the difference, between my thoughts and those which other men had of her: and I was of opinion that she was not wholly ignorant thereof, though she would not testify that she knew any thing that passed in my heart, or that she was willing to know any thing more. In short she carried her self toward me in such a manner, which might make me judge that she was perswaded, of a good part of what I suffered for her: and that the signs which she had observed thereof, were not displeasing to her. But that she did not desire any more particular or precise evidences, and that she would not have been well pleased, had I more publickly made them known: However she still procur'd me the noblest employments, she discovered to me her secret counsels and determinations, and trusted me with affairs of greatest importance, and desired my advice in matters of greatest consequence. I was way

how I abused her favours, and knowing they proceeded rather from her goodness than my merits, I did nothing that might give her the least opportunity, to think that my preferment made me presumptuous. She also declared sometimes, how much she was dissatisfied with the easie nature of the Emperour, to grant whatever she desired without any examination, and sign all sorts of papers without minding the contents: and I was privy to it, when she put that innocent deceit upon him, of which there has been so much talk abroad, when to make him sensible of the errors that he might commit, by signing papers without minding what they concern'd, she made him sign a writing by which he sold the Emperess at a certain price, which he confess'd himself to have received: and having shut up the Emperess in her Apartment, she suffered him to desire the writing a long time, nor would give it him till she had let him see, how he had sold her: and shewed him withal by what she had done in jest, what errors he might commit in earnest, by such an easiness of nature. The Emperour received it as a just correction, and the Emperess who at first knew not how to take it, followed the Emperour's example, out of her experience of *Pulcheria's* good intentions, and approved the Act of the Princes.

The same day *Pulcheria* having drawn me aside, as she was often wont to do, did me the honour to tell me all along, the reasons which had obliged her, to put this innocent deceit upon the Emperour, that he might be the better advised, of the faults which he had committed, and of those which he might run into by his easiness, and discoursed to me upon this subject, not only with the greatest judgment in the world, but as the most experienc'd and ready Politician could have done, joyning withal to the reasons of policy, those of piety and conscience: which in the management of all affairs, she preferred before the other. And because she commanded me to give her my advice, in certain matters which she propos'd to me; I was a good while delivering my opinion upon her proposition, and made her a discourse so conformable to her inclinations, that she not only hearken'd to me without interruption, but with a great deal of satisfaction by what she had made me perceive: but when I had done speaking, beholding me with an obliging look that denoted much of kindness for me, *In truth* *Martian*, said she, *I am not a little confirm'd in the Good opinion, which I have always had of your virtue and your understanding: so that I do not only think you capable to govern an Empire, but I believe those people would be very happy, that had you for their Emperour.*

This discourse was so obliging, that I did not look upon it as seriously spoken, but beholding the Princes with a smile, *'Twas not without reason Madam*, said I, *that my Father had some hopes that I should one day be an Emperour, and that he had so carefully observed those predictions which as his fancy led him to believe, seemed to him to portend me that dignity.* These words, though uttered in a jesting manner, begat however so much curiosity in the Princes, that she made me rehearse to her, all that I have related to you at the beginning of my story, concerning those vain hopes that blinded my Father, and when she had heard me out; *Your Father*, said she, *was not perhaps so much to blame as you believe, seeing that besides these favourable omens, there are other fairer grounds of greater hopes. Were you now under the reign of Valens your life would be in danger, who put our great grandfather to death only upon a prediction, of less importance and probability. But happen what will if you are not Emperour, you deserve to be one for your virtue: And if it should please God, added she smiling, that the Empire were to be translated into another family, if there wanted no other voice than mine for your election, you might assure your self thereof.* "The Empire, (replied I with a confidence that her words had infus'd into me) would be more acceptable and dear to me from your hands, than from the election of the people: And I dare answer for my self, that no other Ambition than that will ever trouble me. But Madam as greatness blinds our eyes, and as the possession of one happiness infuses into us desires of a greater, I do declare that I would not accept the Empire, unless thereby I could attain to one happiness more, which would be of greater value to me than the Empire of the East." "And what great happiness is that, replied the Princess, which you prize beyond the imperial dignity. Were I Emperour, said I, it might perhaps be lawful for me to tell you: but since I am not so, I hope Madam you will do me the favour to dispense with my silence." "If I ever see you in that condition, (replied the Princess smiling as before) I suppose I shall know from your self, and if you ever see it in my power to dispose of the Empire; you shall then know of me what I forbear now to tell you. Though it were not fitting for me to build any foundation upon words so obscure and utter'd after such a manner, yet they made me feel something of a sweetness, and carried me to a persuasion for sometime, that it was not impossible for me, to be one day more happy than I expected. Thus the Princess brook'd those marks which I gave her, of a good part of what I conceal'd in my breast: but though she endured them without

without any sign of dissatisfaction; yet she gave me to understand that she was unwilling I should farther explain my meaning, and only contented her self with letting me know by particular proofs, the good opinion which she had of me, and the trust with which she honoured me, provided I made no ill use thereof nor made publick the certainty of those things of which the bare suspicion did nothing offend her.

She spake to me one day concerning *Thrasimond*, well knowing the Friendship that was between us, and the interest which I took in all his concerns, and having a true esteem of his merit, she sought from me, as a person that was sorry for him, and was willing to shew him all kindness, the cause of that alteration which she observed in him; and having throughly divid'd into whatever might be imagin'd contributory thereto, at length the Princess of a sudden looking very earnestly upon me, *I see*, said she, *that you do not deal sincerely with me in the affairs of Thrasimond; and though I have only tryed to hear what you would say, I make no more doubt than you, but that it is only love which had brought him to that condition wherein he now is. Your judgment may be very right*, said I very faintly, *for besides that I see nothing else in his fortune that may have produc'd any such effect, were it any other thing than love, I should not so obstinately keep his counsel. I do not believe*, said she, *that he has kept his own counsel from you, for you are such united Friends, that I doubt not but he hath made known to you both his love, and the person whom he loves. Were it so, Madam*, said I, *I were the more oblig'd to keep his counsel, than if I had learn'd it any other way; and you would easily pardon, Madam, my fidelity to my friend, which is a due debt to amity in such occasions. As you are my friend rather than his*, reply'd *Pulcheria*, *I cannot tell whether I ought to pardon you; and though I am not ignorant that we are oblig'd to keep religiously the secrets which our friends have trusted us withal, possibly there are persons with whom we need not to be so punctual; I believe there are none with whom we ought not to be very exact; yet I believe there are some with whom we can hardly contain our selves. And as it is an imprudence to trust a secret with one that is not in a condition to defend himself against all the world, yet I do find that he has not less to charge himself withal, who is not able to answer for his own ability. I have a desire to trie my power upon this occasion, and to put your friendship upon a proof, which may perhaps tell me how far I may confide in it at another time.* These words made me tremble and change colour, for fear of being constrained, either to disobey *Pulcheria* or betray my Friend: and therefore returning an answer to the Princess with a guilty countenance; "There is nothing in the world," said I, "wherein it is impossible for me to disobey you, and I would sacrifice to the power which you have over me, whatever is more dear to me than my life: But if *Thrasimond* have trusted me with a secret, which is of that importance that I cannot reveal it, without casting my friend into despair; I had rather hope that you would have pity on me, and that you would not employ a power, to which it behoves me to submit all things, to make me commit an infidelity that will render me unworthy your esteem, and by consequence the most miserable among men." "No *Martian*, fear nothing," said she, "I will not make this tryal though I have put you into a fright: nor will I expose my self to this discontent, of knowing how little power I have over you, if you refuse me what I desire, or of making you do what you are so unwilling to do: but at least," continued she *with a smile*, "remember that you would not declare the distinction which you make between *Thrasimond* and my self." "Ah Madam," said I, "you see well there is no equality in the condition, and although I love *Thrasimond* as well as any man in the world, be pleas'd to believe me Madam, that had the meanest man living trusted me with a secret, I would never have told it to *Thrasimond*." "I will believe what you would have me," said the Princess, "provided that you will believe that I have not spoken in earnest all this while, and that I never had so much curiosity as to desire to know that, which any person did not think convenient to tell me."

Thus I got out of a streight which gave me no small trouble, and I was glad at the same time to observe in the countenance of the Princess, that she was no way dissatisfied: Much about that time *Thrasimond* and I went to visit the virtuous *Leontin*, Father of the Empress, who as you know after he had changed his Religion, had wholly dedicated himself to the service of the Altar: and without being heightned with any Ambitious thoughts, for the grandeur of his Daughter, lived among his Books in a retirement of his own chusing. He received us with a very signal affability, and in a long converse that we had together, out of the love that he had for judicial Astrology, being informed of the time and circumstances of our Nativities: and perceiving that we had a desire to know something of our future fortunes; *One of you*, said he, *may be happy, but it shall be a good while first: the other is in hazard never to be so as long as he lives.* He explained himself no farther, being desirous to give each of us leave, to hope the best we could for our selves: I thought it not impossible

to be my self, knowing less improbability in my own fortune, than in *Thrasimond's*. But the Prince of the *Vandals* rather believ'd the prediction favourable to himself. And though he believ'd that *Leontine's* knowledge did not reach to make him divine what he had in his heart, he blush'd at first for fear of being surpris'd by the Father, in the love which he had for his Daughter, but afterwards growing pale through the grief which the cruel prediction made him feel, *I do not doubt at all*, said he with a sigh, *but that I am to be miserable, nor have I but now begun to prepare my self for it.* " Perhaps it was my self, not you whom *Leontine* meant, (*said I, touch'd with compassion for the marks which I discovered in his face of a most vigorous grief.*) *Nor ought you to disturb your self*, said the Philosopher, *for words that proceed but from an imperfect knowledge, and an art that is not always infalible. That which Martin tells you, may perhaps be true; at least, I assure you, that his miseries will endure far longer than yours. I do not doubt*, replied *Thrasimond*, *but my miseries will end in death, for I find the happiness that should prolong my days is forbid me for ever. The wise man is above the Stars*, said *Leontine*, *and had I known that two or three words without any assurance, or any certain knowledge, would have so sensibly afflicted you, I should have been more wary what I had said.* *Ab, Sir*, (*said Thrasimond with a great deal of tenderness, and striving to discover less sadness*) *It is not you whom I accuse for my misfortune, nor is it here only that I first apprehended my misery, and consequently it is not you that have given me the first knowledge thereof: it is some time since that I begun to have an ill opinion of my fortune.*

I think that this was the last Prediction of *Leontine*, for a few days after he fell sick and died at *Constantinople*, where he died as he liv'd, a true Philosopher, and one that knew how to despise life, and condemn death. All the Court went into Mourning, after the example of the Empress, who did the same out of the affection which she had always had for her Father, which her greatness did no way make her forget: for some days she remain'd shut up with the Princesses *Flaccilla* and *Marina*, where she was seen by no persons but the Emperour and *Pulcheria*. But after she return'd to the Palace, and permitted her self to be publickly visited as formerly, she had the satisfaction to see that all the Court was sensibly afflicted for her grief. But among all those that appeared most deeply touch'd with her sorrow, she perceiv'd none so truly sensible as *Thrasimond*, and when he made profession thereof by some expressions, she easily discern'd that his heart spake through his lips, and that he thought what he said, after another manner than many others, whom the observance and complacence of the Court, had caus'd to give the same demonstrations of sorrow. At length, time wore away out of the Court and heart of *Eudoxia* what her loss had fetted thereof doleful; and with joy the usual divertisements as formerly return'd: only *Thrasimond* was insensible of all comfort or delight, or at least if he tasted any thing of pleasure, it was only from the sight of the Empress; for as for her discourse, he fear'd it almost as much as he desired it, and out of the fear which he had to discover in despite of himself that which he was willing to hide, as much as possible he avoided her company, which at other times he so much coveted: but at length his malady encreas'd to that extremity that he could no longer master it, and his passion grew too violent to be kept within those bounds which he ought to have prescrib'd it.

The Emperour, the Empress and the Princess were walking one day in the Gardens belonging to the Palace, with a great company of the principal Ladies of the Court, and with them the illustrious *Anthemius*, the virtuous *Paulinus*, *Lenon*, *Maximinus* and my self; the Emperour himself led the Empress, whom he still lov'd as passionately as ever, and for whom when he was married he had preserv'd his love entire, resting on the other side upon the arm of *Paulinus*, for whom he had a very great esteem; *Anthemius* and my self had the honour to lend a hand to the Princess, the rest followed behind with the other Ladies. They had walk'd along time in the broad walks, when the Ladies desired the Emperour to go see a Fountain that stood in the most private part of all the Garden, which they call'd the Rustick Fountain, as being so little adorn'd by art that nature seem'd to have made all its Beauties; for there is neither Stone nor Marble nor other bottom but what is natural, covered with Grass and green Moss on every side, and defended from the Beams of the Sun by four great Trees that grow about the Fountain, and darken it with a delicious shade: it springs out of the Gravel, and bubbling up to the very surface of the water, runs into certain Troughs or Conduits plac'd in the Grass, with a delightful noise: *Eudoxia* had perhaps commended the wild Beauty thereof, had she not met with another object to entertain her; for with a voice drew near it, we saw a man lying all along upon the Grass, which we immediately knew to be *Thrasimond*; who, because he neither rose, nor mov'd at the approach of the company, they judg'd him to be asleep; and because as being his Friend, I concern'd my self more for him than the rest, and was fearful that in the condition he was

in, he might think himself alone when he awak'd, and so commit some error, or utter some words in the height of his passion that might discover his secret, I let go *Pulcheria's* hand after I had begg'd her lieve, and was going to awake him, and to give him notice of the Emperour's being there, when the Emperour himself stay'd me, telling me that I should not deprive him of the content which he expected from that accident, and that he stopt thereby to learn a good part of what *Thrasimond* so diligently conceal'd; I durst not disobey the Emperour's command, only I took care to awake him by talking louder than the rest, when the Emperour commanded me also to speak softly. And *Pulcheria*, who observ'd me troubled, and likewise remembered the discourse we had had some days before concerning *Thrasimond's* privacy, smiling, gave me a sign with her eye, not to oppose the Emperour's will. He first drew near to the Prince as he lay asleep, the Empress and the Princess followed him, and as they pass'd with him on that side from which the Prince's face was turn'd, they look'd back upon him very earnestly: he rested his head upon one of his Arms, his other being extended upon his Thigh, and because the gentle breath had blown his hair behind his Shoulders, one of his cheeks was wholly uncovered, so that they saw it all bedew'd with tears, and not only with those that he might have shed when he was awake, but with such as trickled from his eye-lids as he lay asleep. His tears were every foot accompanied with deep sighs, so that they perceiv'd that that unfortunate Prince did not find any rest in that very charm which affords it to all creatures, and that in that very appearance of tranquility his Soul was cruelly afflicted. That object of pity tenderly affected the Emperour who highly esteem'd the Prince for his merit, and had a great kindness for him; and therefore turning towards us, but me in particular, whom he knew to be his faithful friend, *I confess*, said he, *that I find my self mov'd with compassion, and that there are few things in the world that I would not do to cure that malady, which is yet unknown to us.* "In truth, said the Empress, I am throughly griev'd; and I will employ all my credit this day, but I will know what hitherto I could never apprehend. I know not whether these words, being spoken a little aloud, did not for some few moments open his eyes, but immediately he stirr'd, and opening his mouth before he opened his eyes, *Oh, miserable creature!* said he so loud as to be understood by all the company, and without saying a word more, he turn'd to the other side, and there he lay in the same posture without any sign of awaking. *I confess*, said *Pulcheria*, *that this poor Prince, whatever it be that afflicts him, causes a great compassion in me for him, and I wish I could find it out, that I might be able to give him some assistance.* *Tiberina*, who was a Lady of great Quality, whom you knew in our Court, of a lively and confident disposition, turning toward the Princess, *Madam*, said she, *I think I have found out one way to forward you in your design; for if it be love that thus torments Thrasimond, as it is very probable, this paper will, 'tis very likely, give you some intimation thereof.* And at those words, laying her hand upon the corner of a piece of paper which she saw lying by him, she took it up softly, and having open'd it, she shew'd it to the Emperour and the company, to whom it soon appear'd, by the manner of writing, that they were Verses. The Emperour was very glad, hoping that through the experience he had of *Thrasimond's* wit, to find something more than ordinary therein, and more than that, some satisfaction in what he desired: *Tiberina*, who requested no farther than to read them, began without expecting the Emperour's command, whereby they understood these following Verses:

*Hence, hence presumptuous thoughts, be gone;
Perplex not one that is undone:
How! will ye thus to Heav'n aspire?*

By that beginning there was ground enough to fear that what followed, which was very long, would discover more than the sleeping Prince desired should be known; and out of that jealousy which I had thereof, turning toward the Princess *Pulcheria*, as it were to crave her assistance by my looks, I made her so well understand the perplexity that I was in, that she had no need of a more earnest importunity; and whether it were truly that the sign which I made, and the disturbance which she perceiv'd in my countenance oblig'd her, or out of that admirable prudence that so well govern'd the Empire, that she conjectured part of the truth, and believed that there might follow some things in the coherence of the Verse, which it was not convenient the Emperour should see, she snatch'd the paper so suddenly out of *Tiberina's* hand, that the Emperour could not hinder it. 'Tis enough, *Tiberina*, said she, *and 'tis a sin against a virtue that preaches to you and I every day, not to pry into the affairs of another man against his will.* And because she was afraid the Emperour should

demand the paper before she had time to give it the Prince, she tore it all to bits. The Emperour and Empress, attributed that action of hers to her sole discretion: but all this was not done with so little noise, but that *Thrasimond* awoke, and opening his eyes he saw the illustrious personages that environed him. The surprize was greater than I am able to represent to you, and though his eyes finding so near what his soul sought every where, received those rays of joy, to which he could not but give entrance at the sight of his beloved object; yet the shame to be surprized in that condition, and with so many marks in his countenance of what he felt in his heart, made him blush with his eyes fix'd upon the earth, nor would permit him, after he had hastily recovered himself upon his legs, to accost the Emperour and his fair Train without a great confusion. The Emperour who was willing to ease his grief by all means, beholding him with an Affectionate look; *You flee company, said he, and yet you see the Company that seeks for you. You did not I know expect to be thus awakened, and I assure you it was against my intention to interrupt your sleep: I am very much asham'd,* replied the Prince, *to have been seen in a condition, not fit for the sight of such a company as this, that awakened me out of my sleep: nor had I ventur'd my self, had I not known that it was not in this part of the Garden, that you were accustomed to walk. By what you say, said the Princess, you declare to us that you avoid our company: But you see that fortune favours the good intentions of those, that only seek the consolation of your misfortunes if it be possible. It shall not be my fault,* replied the Empress, *that I have not a better knowledge thereof to day than hitherto: And to that purpose Madam* (said the Emperour interrupting her) *I commit him to your care, and intreat you to employ all your endeavours according to your promise.* Saying these words he caused *Thrasimond* to take the Empress by the hand, and so staying with the rest of the company, he order'd us during the time that they stayed in the Garden, to follow at a distance, that they two might have the greater freedom of discourse.

Poor *Thrasimond* seeing himself in that extremity, trembled, sigh'd and changed colour every moment, behaving himself altogether like one that was forlorn. But the Empress willing to put to tryal what she had determin'd, after she had looked upon him for some time in such a condition, as augmented the compassion which she had for him, beginning her discourse with a behaviour full of sweetness, and a grace that did but more and more inflame the unfortunate Prince; "*Thrasimond, said she, besides the esteem which I have of your virtue, and so many rare qualities which attract the admiration of all that know you, I find my self so far obliged, by seeing you so much concern'd in my sorrow for the death of my Father, that I shall be very much dissatisfied, if I do not find some occasion to testify my acknowledgment, by endeavouring to comfort and ease you of yours. You are in such a condition, that forces all the world to take compassion on you: And I have perceived in your countenance this day, the marks of so severe a discontent, that who is not touched therewith may be said to be insensible, and they to have no esteem for you, that are not deeply concern'd therein. Seek Thrasimond, seek the cure of your distemper, and be not wanting to your self as you are. And that we may be able to contribute thereto as we desire, let us understand the malady which you so obstinately conceal, and assure your self that if the Emperour can procure your ease, or whatever his goodness has bestowed upon us, you shall soon behold a change in your fortune, and we shall have the satisfaction to see it in your person.*"

To these words the charming *Eudoxia* added others most obliging and very urgent, to which the poor Prince, transported and perplexed with Love, could not for a long time make any answer but with sighs, which continually issued from his breast, or else with some guilty looks by which the fair Empress might discern that which she desired to know, had she had never so little an inclination to have bent her thoughts that way. Then was his reason assaulted with many anxious resolutions; for as there were some few minutes wherein the civility that he received from the Empress, her obliging offers, and the testimonies of her being so highly concern'd for him, made him judge favourably of his fortune, and infus'd courage into him fit for such an enterprize, at other times when he looked upon the effects of *Eudoxia's* goodness with another countenance, he could not but think that it was out of the ignorance of his malady, that she was so pressing and so urgent after the cure: and from thence to his grief he inferr'd, that his love was something strangely, extraordinary, and opposite to reason and likelihood as to the apprehension of *Eudoxia*, since after so many visible marks which he gave thereof, she could not all that while suspect it. His harassed reason floated in that diversity of thoughts, when the Empress not enduring so long a silence, interrupted him more than once: and jogging his arm as it were to awake him out of some deep slumber; *How Prince, said she, will you give me no answer, and do you make so slight of my kind offers, and of the interest which you see me take in your misfortune, that you*

think them not worthy to be confided in? The amorous Prince could no longer resist so importunate a sollicitation: and beholding the Empress with a sigh fetch'd from the bottom of his heart; *Ab Madam, said he, suffer a miserable person to dye that cannot live: and seeing that in the condition wherein you see him, he may yet dye with the honour to have merited your compassion, do not cast him into another, wherein he may lose that glorious and dear consolation. Most certainly Madam I am just dying, for I find my self drawing near the end of that term, which Fate has set to my days: But the cause of my death is so desirable, that if it were known to you, you would lose all that compassion that makes you seek my relief. And instead of desiring me to live, you would hasten that death by which I should receive so great an honour. I have lived long enough, seeing I have lived to see that which the Sun never beheld more fair and amiable; since I have loved her, and since I am willing to surrender her the rest of my life. Others have found their happiness in acknowledgment from them whom they have loved, I find it in dying for her whom I love: But I find it so full and so entire, that I would hardly change my destiny for theirs, or at least if I may not be suspected for speaking too much, and that it be admitted me to aspire to so great a fortune, I willingly surrender my own and without envy behold them, whose lives are more happy than mine, though less glorious than my death.*

These passionate words were uttered in a posture no less passionate, and the fair Empress, not so much minding the explanation of the words, as the compassion to which she was moved; was less apprehensive at this time than she had been at any time before: and not discerning a truth which the Amorous Prince did not over-cunningly disguise; *Your words, said she, tell me nothing but what I conjectur'd before, for there is no person doubts but that love is the cause of your affliction: But it is impossible for us to employ our selves, in doing you these kind offices which we desire, unless you will discover to us the fair cause of your sufferings. Name her then Thrasimond, and together with the assistance which I promise you to the utmost of my power, if you trust me with your secret, I shall most faithfully keep your counsel.* “It may behove you, *said he,* to keep it so well that you your self may not come to have the knowledge of it: for perhaps it cannot be known to you, without being known to the person whom I adore. *Alas! added he presently after,* I say too much: and I believe Madam you did not desire more. “No *Thrasimond, (said the Empress without being any way moved)* I desire no more, for my curiosity is satisfied. “I see well *(said he in a forlorn manner)* that having satisfied your curiosity, you have already lost your pity as I well foresaw. But Madam remember that it ought not to forsake me in the greatest extremity of my life. I had not spoken but in obedience to you, and durst I have adventur'd to have disobey'd you, I had known how to have held my tongue till death. That which you may command me can but very little prevent, that which I have propos'd to my self for the end of my troubles, and whether it be that I sacrifice my life to my love, or deliver it up to the punishment of my offence; I shall find ne're the more alteration of my condition, but I shall hasten to meet my death not only without repining, but as one that shall find an equal happiness, as well to please you as to be rid of my torments. I shall also have some ground to believe, that I dye happy if at the last gasp I may dare to hope, that I am not detested by you, nor shall I complain of my hard fate, if your anger, that I have too deservedly incurr'd, does not destroy all that pity which you have so generously testified. “No *Thrasimond, said Eudoxia very calmly,* my pity of your condition is not lost, and rather now that your malady is known I have so much the more compassion for you, seeing your malady remediless, or at least because I know no cure that may be acceptable to you; yet I will endeavour to find one out, as well in respect to you as for love of my self: and it is but just that I should do so, since I have been so earnest to seek what I have found. I have possibly deserved the greatest part thereof, or at least I have brought it upon my self in persecuting you: and for that reason I have neither any hatred against you, nor so much as any resentment. I shall also keep your counsel, as far as you can desire, nay I shall so far keep it, that I shall endeavour to be ignorant my self, that you did ever trust me with a secret.

Thus spake *Eudoxia,* and the Prince, who found more courtesie and gentleness in her behaviour than he expected, yet to cross this kindness, discovered something more cruel than all that he could have fear'd from a person less moderate, heard her with a mortal anguish, when the Emperour, who was already grown impatient to know whether the Empress succeeded in her design, drew near before they perceiv'd him, and addresting himself to the Empress, *Well, Madam, said he, are you satisfied in your credit, and have you found out Thrasimond's mystery?* “He has not truly confess'd it to me, *replied the Empress,* but I do not despair but that I can make a shrewd conjecture, but for to day I do not desire to know any more. Saying these words, she stayed for *Pulcheria* and the rest of the company, not desiring to be any longer alone with *Thrasimond,* who not knowing what judg-

ment to make of his fortune, was swallowed up in a Sea of dubious thoughts, and was so ingulph'd therein, that he was not capable of any converse. *Pulcheria* tryed him more than any of the rest, resolving to urge him in her turn, with all the obliging and generous arguments, but he answered her with so much trouble and disorder, that out of pity she forbore to torment him: but in the mean time the Emperour taking the Empress under the Arm, walk'd at a distance from the rest of the company, who out of respect would not follow too near to interrupt their discourse, and press'd her so hard to tell him what she knew of *Thrasimond's* affairs, that she found herself for some time in a very great streight, but at last fearing to give him any ground to suspect by her behaviour the truth of the matter, and desiring withal, that the design which she had contrived, should come to some issue in a short time; Sir, said she, *Thrasimond would tell me nothing clearly; and I believe he has very powerful arguments that will not permit him, but I have gathered by his discourse, and am pretty well confirm'd to inform you, that he languishes or rather dies for some Beauty that he has left behind in his own Country, and that not daring to depart from hence till he has perfected the affairs for which his Brother sent him, and discharg'd himself of his Commission, he consumes and pines away, and is in danger of death if he make any long stay here; so that out of that pity which I have for him, as well as your self, I am oblig'd to beg of you that you would dispatch him with all the expedition imaginable, and with all the advantages he can reasonably expect from your goodness and my intercession. Be pleas'd to grant him generously, and of your free will, that which he ought to expect from the esteem which you have testified for him, and out of respect to him add something more, if it may be done, to what the King of the Vandals desires of you. The confidence which he has had in me more than in any other person, obliges me to importune you, that I may give him his dispatch my self after the best manner that may be, that I may have the opportunity to let him see how I have employed my time in his behalf, and the satisfaction to have done that kindness to a Prince of his merit.* "In truth, Madam, said he, your intercession is very prevalent over me, though you receive but slight proofs thereof, if you make use of it in things of no greater difficulty; for though you did not request me in the behalf of *Thrasimond*, there is no person more inclinable to treat him more favourably than my self, and with the greatest advantages that he can desire. His Affairs had been dispatch'd a good while since, had you let me know what you now tell me; but since his first arrival he never told me any thing of them, nor ever testified any desire of departing from us. I am glad that you have learn'd more than I knew, out of the desire I have to satisfy him, and to give him all occasions to speak well of us; and though I shall be very sorry for his departure, and that considering his virtue I could be content that he could remain with us a longer time, I shall have a greater respect to his ease, and the happiness of his life, than my satisfaction; and I will put his business in such a forwardness, that in two days he shall see the effect of your solicitation, and the power which you have in the Empire. "I have had, Sir, said the Empress, a larger than I deserv'd; and I dare promise you, that you shall never see me abuse it upon any other occasion; but as to this, take it not ill that I request the dispatch which you promise me; and that to make your favour complete, I desire you not to say any thing either to the Prince, or to any other persons, but to those who must necessarily have knowledge thereof.

The Emperour promised her what she desired, and to testify his willingness to please her, he call'd the Princess *Pulcheria*, who, as of all other affairs had the knowledge of the pretences of the King of the *Vandals*, and having told her what he had understood from the Empress's lips, and the intention which he had to put an end to *Thrasimond's* Negotiation; with all the concessions which he could honourably grant, he desired her to take care in it the same day, and to yield those things which at another time would have been difficultly granted; *Pulcheria*, who had a very great value for *Thrasimond*, was very glad of the opportunity to oblige him; and having soon after consulted with *Anthemius*, who had the greatest knowledge of those Affairs, they both used their utmost diligence to do him that kind office which he did not at all desire at their hands.

Leaving the Emperour, we retired together, and when we were alone he told me that which I have related to you, and repeated word for word the discourse which he had had with the Empress, but he rehears'd it with so much passion, that being concerned for him as I was, I could not chuse but be very much troubled. And when he had done speaking, seeing me hold my tongue, like a person, whom his discourse, and the accident that betel him, had astonish'd, and not perceiving in my looks what he desired, *Ab, Martian*, said he, *I fear you have no good opinion of my fortune, for that I see those things in your countenance that foretel my misery.* "I know not, said I very pensively, what judgment to make thereof; but as I never expected much good, I cannot find any ground to hope better, as

“ to the success of this business. “ However, *replied* Thrasimond, methinks the Empress
 “ was not so much offended at the knowledge thereof; for I feared she would have been far
 “ more rigorous than I found her to be. “ If you knew *Eudoxia's* disposition, *said* I, you
 “ would not flatter your self at all with her courteous behaviour; but you would believe
 “ as I do, that very moderation in her to be more dangerous than than the passionate extra-
 “ vagancies of another: she is too prudent to testify any resentment that might make a
 “ noise, or come to the knowledge of the Emperour; and she has a greater esteem for you
 “ than to expose you to what you might fear from the Emperour, were your love known
 “ to him. I believe also as you told me that she does really lament your misfortune, and that
 “ it is not without a sufficient perplexity, that she sees you fallen into it: but I am very much
 “ deceived if that familiar sweetness, which she shewed you and which is natural to her,
 “ have any complacency with your love, or partakes of the least thought that may be favou-
 “ rable to it, and I should think my self a Traitor should I advise you to abuse it. Let the
 “ Gods (*replied* Thrasimond) dispose of my destiny as they think fitting, but as in speaking look-
 “ ing, or keeping silence death is equally inevitable for me, if there befall me no change in my
 “ fortune; I cannot repent of having spoken after such express commands, which I could not
 “ disobey.

That was *Thrasimond's* opinion, and he continued in this uncertainty of his condition the rest of that day, and the next that follow'd: but the third day, being alone in his Chamber, he saw the Eunuch *Chrisaphius* enter, in whom of all her Servants the Empress repos'd the greatest confidence, and to whom she shews the greatest tokens of her favour, who brought him his Dispatches seal'd with the Seal of the Empire, in the best form that could be, and with all the advantages he could desire; and after he had presented them with all due respect, and had given him to understand, that the Emperour did not only grant what the King of the *Vandals* demanded, but that out of respect to himself, he had treated him more honourably than the Emperours were wont to do other Kings, and had added to the end of the Articles particular applauses, and marks of his esteem for the merit and person of *Thrasimond*: “ Sir, *said* he, had the Empress sooner understood the necessity of your return to the King your Brother, she had sooner done you the service which now you receive at her hands; and she commanded me farther to tell you, that if there remains any thing farther to be done for yours, or your Brother's interest, she will willingly undertake it, and discharge her self so faithfully of her trust, that you shall not need to tarry any longer.

Poor *Thrasimond* beholding in this cruel civility of *Eudoxia*, the severe Decree for his Banishment, stood in need of all the Force of his courage to hear it without dying, nor did all that which he had serv'd him so well, but that the dreadful present tell out of his hands, and that he himself growing mortally pale, at length was constrain'd to let himself sink down upon a chair that stood near him, in a cold sweat without knowledge or feeling: *Chrisaphius* astonish'd at the effect of his message, drew near him, and earnestly besought him to tell him the cause of that accident, but the forlorn Prince for a good while made him no other answer than with his eyes, and beholding him like one that was half dead, he gave him ground to believe that the present which he had brought was more cruel than favourable. He continued thus for some time, without being able to come to himself whatever he could do: but at length, perceiving the frighted Eunuch was about to call others to his assistance; and fearing to discover his misfortune more than his respect permitted him, he us'd a more than ordinary violence to recover himself a little, and rallying the forces of his mind to assist the strength of his body, at length he put himself into a condition to speak to *Chrisaphius*; and beholding him with eyes wherein despair was lively painted: “ Be pleas'd to tell the Empress, *said* he, that I understand her commands, and that I am ready to obey them, that *Gunderic* shall one day thank her for the favours she has done him; but that there remains no more for her to do for *Thrasimond*, who possibly receives not as he ought this favour which she hath already honoured him withal, and which he has as little deserv'd.

He said no more then than those words, but a little while after, finding by the countenance and behaviour of the Eunuch, that he was much concern'd for his affliction, though he knew not the cause thereof; and believing him to have so much kindness for him, as not to refuse to oblige him by doing that courtesy for him, which none could serve him in so well as himself, mov'd by his passion that transported him beyond his ordinary prudence, and shutting his eyes against all those other considerations that had at another time withheld him, he made the Eunuch say as he was about to retire, and looking upon him as one that had need of assistance, *I am apt*, *said* he, *to think that you have some pity upon an un-*
fortunate

fortunate person, and as you see my indisposition to be such, as will not let me go to return my thanks to the Emperess, shall I presume to hope that you will give me the opportunity to do it in writing, and that it may be so delivered, that a secret which I discover by her authority may be no farther divulg'd. Yes Sir (said *Chrisaphius* without any more to do) I promise to give her your Letter, and so securely, that the Secret which you trust in my hands, shall never be known by any fault or miscarriage of mine. *Thrasimond* then taking off from one of his Fingers, a Diamond which his Brother had given him and presenting it to the Eunuch, prayed him to take it, not as a recompence for the courtesie he was to do him, but as a proof of his obligation to him for accepting it, and a testimony of his own good will toward him. *Chrisaphius* made some scruple at first whether he should receive it or no, but at last he suffered himself to be tempted by the beauty of the present, and the good grace of him that gave it, against which it was a difficult thing to defend a man's self: and having accepted it with an apology for his refusal, he stayed till the Letter was writ, and being written he received it from the Prince's own hand and so took his leave.

Chrisaphius was hardly gone out of the Chamber when I entred in, and seeing all the marks of his misfortune in the countenance of the poor Prince, I conjectured a part of the truth. In short, you might see by his wild and troubled countenance, by his wanness and by his eyes big with tears, which he endeavoured with all his might to refrain, all the symptoms of despair: sometimes he walked a great pace in his Closet with his Arms cross'd upon his breast, casting sad looks to heaven, and soon after the grief of his mind enfeebling the force of his body, he threw himself upon a little Couch in his Closet, from whence in a few minutes his cruel torments compelled him to rise, not to seek for repose or ease but to weary his body that could take no rest, so long as his soul was miserably deprived thereof. He had sent away all his servants that offered to come near him, commanding them to leave him alone: and when he saw me enter after he had staggered a little way, he sunk down in a Chair that was behind him, and all his constancy forsaking him he gave free course to a river of tears, which he had no longer power to refrain. He accompanied them every foot with sighs and sobs, and at length his face and all his body became to be in such a condition, that there is no soul so cruel that having seen him, would not have been deeply moved with compassion for him: and it may be *Eudoxia* her self would not have preserved all her constancy, at so sad and miserable a spectacle. For my part, seeing him unfit for any discourse, I was contented only to sit by him without speaking a word, being willing to stay till that torrent whose first fury it was impossible to stop, had emptied it self: but in the mean time I was not so insensible, but that in a little time my eyes were all bedewed like his: so that in embracing that disconsolate Prince, I was forced to mingle some tears with those, with which he washed my cheeks.

We continued a long time in this posture, neither *Thrasimond's* grief permitting him to discover the cause, nor the interest which I took therein permitting me to demand the reason: but seeing upon the table the dispatches which the Emperess had sent him, and knowing that *Chrisaphius* was but lately gone out of the Chamber; I made no question but that it was that fatal present, that had reduced him into that condition. I read the treaty which I my self had begun with the King of the *Vandals*, and found therein such advantageous conditions, that he could not have presumed to have hoped for: when *Thrasimond* striving with himself, began to recover himself so far as to be able to talk. *Well* Martian, said he, now you see what you so wisely foresaw: *Eudoxia* in pronouncing the decree of my Banishment, has pronounced the decree of my death, nor was it without reason that you told me, that outward kindness conceal'd an inward cruelty. Adieu Martian, farewell the generous friend of a friend the most unfortunate. I must be gone from the fatal place, where I unfortunately lost my liberty and my repose, and absenting my self from *Eudoxia's* eye for ever, I must surrender up a life which I neither can nor will preserve.

To these he added other words full of transportment, and of all the marks of the most vigorous grief, that ever could afflict a lovers heart: and at length he told me the cruel command which he had received, from *Chrisaphius's* mouth under the colour of civility. I confess his misery did so move me, and I was so sensible of what I saw him suffer, that hardly all the fidelity which I owed the Emperour, could hinder me from going about to seek out some means to give him relief, had I thought I could have found any out: but not seeing any likelihood of being able to do him any kind offices of friendship, I was forced to declare so much to him, bewailing my unhappiness, and giving him to understand by my looks and my discourse, that I was as deeply sensible of his misfortunes, as if they had been my own. I proceeded as well to give him all the consolation that my words could afford, either to encourage him against his misfortune, and to infuse into him some good resoluti-

ons that might serve him for a cure. I laid before him the little reason he had to expect any better success, and the small probability he had to believe, that the Empress, who was bound not only by the Laws of Duty, by her own virtuous inclinations, and by so many ordinary ties. but by extraordinary reasons so known to all the world, would show any kindness to his passion, and forget in the first years of her marriage what she owed to a Husband so lovely in his person, and who doted passionately upon her, and who from a low fortune had rais'd her to the highest Dignity in the world. That if his passion had been more moderate, he might have found a way to have afforded himself some better satisfaction; that in a place where the eyes of all the world being fix'd upon her, she could not engage with him in a vicious affection, she could not have treated him with more courtesies, nor with greater marks of a true esteem; and that in short, though the knowledge of his love might possibly be displeasing to her, out of the necessity to which it reduc'd her to forbid him the Court, yet I firmly believ'd, and durst presume to assure him, that she had no prejudice against his person, nor any distaste that hinder'd her from having a true value for him. I told him many other things besides, which took but little effect for his consolation, though he hearkened to them with a great deal of patience. And at length demanding of him what he resolv'd upon, and what his courage would enable him to determine: With an utterance interrupted with sobs, *You need not question*, said he, *but that I am resolv'd to obey the Empress, and to depart from Constantinople, though I am assured to go to my grave: I cannot tell whether I shall be able to-morrow to proceed in my design, yet I find already that I shall not put my self to the trouble to seek my death far from the place where I receiv'd my wound.* We suddenly found that he had not uttered any thing of an untruth; for instead of being in a condition to depart the next day, as he had determin'd over night; he was seiz'd with so violent a Fever, that the next day we perceiv'd, he was to take care of something else beside his journey, and the day following we began to be in great fear of his life.

In the mean time *Chrisaphius* was return'd from the Empress, with an intention to tender that service to *Thrasimond* that he had promis'd him. And whether it were that he really believ'd that it was upon some other subject than that of love that he wrote to the Empress, or out of the pity which he took upon his misfortune, or the acknowledgment which he owed him for the fair present which he had received from him, that he was willing to venture hard to serve him, he took his opportunity (as it was easie for him to do, by reason of the access which his employment gave him at all hours to *Eudoxia*) to speak to her out of the hearing of any witnesses of the charge that she had employed him in; and after he had given her an account thereof, and had related to her the truth of what he had seen, (though without mentioning the Diamond that he had receiv'd) he gave her *Thrasimond's* Letter, rehearsing to her his Apologies by reason of his indisposition, which would not permit him to wait upon her, to return her thanks for what she had done, and to speak to her of those things of which he had taken the liberty to write: I cannot tell whether the Empress, who knew the cunning of *Chrisaphius*, believ'd that he meant so innocently as he spake: However, she continued for some time not resolv'd what to do; she blush'd when she saw *Thrasimond's* Letter, which she believ'd not to contain any other business than what had been discours'd between them; and perhaps she had not receiv'd it (though she had been mov'd to compassion by the story that *Chrisaphius* had told her) had she not fear'd to discover to *Chrisaphius* a truth with which she had never yet trusted him, and which she was willing to conceal to her utmost. She took it for that reason, though with little intention to read it; but two of her women being come into the Closet when she receiv'd it, she was afraid to give them any suspicion by putting it up without perusing; whereupon having open'd it without being perceiv'd, she set her self to read, and not being able to leave off when she had begun, she found there these words.

The unfortunate *Thrasimond* to the Empress.

IT is not that which I feel, Madam, but that which I have said, that may have offended you. And as I did not speak, but only in obedience to your commands, 'tis only to my obedience that you are to impute my crime; could I have disobey'd you, I had kept silence till death. And since you made me speak, to banish me from my life, by banishing me from your presence, permit me to tell you that it is a cruel effect of that pity, which you testified to have for me before my crime committed;

committed, and which, after I had offended you, you gave me leave to hope. However, I do not murmur, and since I was destin'd to the glory of dying for you, I shall find it more complete, while I surrender it by your command, rather than abandoning it to be destroyed by sufferings which had ended it with less Honour. I receiv'd the orders as well as I could, but I shall obey them as I ought, and that obedience whereby I have merited your anger, may perhaps occasion me to deserve your pity in following to my Grave.

The reading of this Letter did no way stir *Eudoxia's* virtue, nor the resolution that she had taken, to stick severely close to her Duty. But certain it is that she was mov'd therewith, and that compassion wrought in her part of the same effects which it might have done in another: she cast her eyes again upon the lamentable words which she had undertaken to read, and bewail'd the misfortune of a Prince whom she judg'd worthy of a better fortune. But while she was thus employ'd, the Emperour enter'd the Closet; and whether it were the suddenness of his entry, or the melancholy wherewith *Thrasimond's* misfortune had disturb'd her, he was upon her before she perceiv'd him. Her innocency could not chuse but blush, seeing her self surpris'd with the Letter in her hand, but she was in a greater perplexity, when the Emperour having taken it out of her hand in jest, and casting his eyes upon it, knew it to be *Thrasimond's* hand by what he had seen before in the Verses which *Tiberina* had found, and it may be several other times, and when he farther told her he knew that hand, and that it was easie now to see whither *Thrasimond* wrote as well as he spake. *Eudoxia* was in a little study for some few minutes, but recollecting her self sooner than she could have done had she been guilty, and putting her hand upon the Letter just as *Theodosius* was going about to look over it, You will not find in that Letter, said she, any thing to satisfy your curiosity, and therefore since *Thrasimond* has confided more in me than in any other person, who sought to know his mind, I beg of you, Sir, that while he stays here, which will not be long, that he may not see himself betrayed by my imprudence.

She spake these words to the Emperour with such a serious behaviour, keeping her hand upon the Letter, that out of the fear which he had to displease her, he was not hasty to contradict her; whereupon the Empress having recovered it again, threw it into the fire. She told the Emperour afterwards with less disturbance, that there was something in the Paper that she had desired to know before *Thrasimond's* departure, and that thereby she had understood more of his affairs than by all that he had confess'd in the Garden. The Emperour having after that demanded of her how he receiv'd those things which she sent him, and how he was satisfied with him, she made answer how he had testified a very great acknowledgment thereof to *Chrisaphius*, and to shew how reasonable the good office which she had done him was, she believ'd that he would depart the next day, to find out in some other place the happiness which he could not obtain in our Court. The Emperour signified his sorrow for his departure, and spoke of him with large expressions of the esteem he had for him. But the next day, instead of seeing him come to take leave of him, as they believ'd he would have done, they understood that he was detain'd in his Bed by a violent Fever, and the day after they heard that the Physicians were in despair of his life. The Emperour, who was very sorry for his departure, and who would have endeavour'd to have detain'd him, had he not believ'd, by what the Empress had told him, that he could not recover his repose at *Constantinople*, was much more troubled for his sickness; and the Empress, though she were not sensible of his love, was much afflicted to hear that his life was in so much danger, and not doubting but the orders which she had sent him were the cause of his present condition, there were certain intervals of time wherein all the severity of her virtue could not hinder her from repenting of what she had done.

In the interim, it was very true that Prince *Thrasimond* was dangerously sick, but it was no less certain that his sickness was the cause of his comfort, and though he contributed rather to the increasing of it, than to the cure. Not that he obstinately refus'd the Physick which they gave him; for besides that he was of a mild disposition, and submissive to the will of his Friends, he would not discover all his despair for fear of discovering the cause. But certain it is that he neglected what he durst refuse, and that instead of having any desire to recover his health, he look'd upon his sickness as the way to death, and his death as the last end of all his troubles, and the fairest satisfaction which he could give to *Eudoxia* for the offence which he had committed. But being well below'd by all persons of both Sexes in our Court, there were few that were not extremely sorry for his sickness; but above all the rest, I was touch'd to the very bottom of my heart; nor could I see death before his eyes with so little sorrow, or so little desire of his recovery, without abandoning my

my self to an entire grief, and giving him those marks of kindness which in the midst of all his sickness, forced him to be sensible thereof, and did not a little afflict him to see my sufferings for him; *Is it possible,* (said he to me one day with a feeble voice, but with a good courage) *that you can look with dissatisfaction, upon the only cure that I can hope for of my misfortune: and since you your self can imagine no other, are you troubled to see them brought to a period by a death, less cruel than the sufferings to which I am expos'd? Do you not only know that by the orders of Eudoxia, I was upon the point of departing from you in all likelihood for ever? and is it not the same thing to be separated by a death that will deliver me from all my troubles, rather than by an absence which removing me from your self and Eudoxia, would never cure me of a torment much more cruel, than that which you fear so much should befall me.* I will dye, added he presently after, *since it is the will of the Gods and my destiny: and since in living I am so unhappy as to displease my adored Eudoxia; I hope that my death will appease her anger, and that I shall move her pity that could not move her affection.* Ab Thrasimond (said I overwhelmed with grief) *that your thoughts and resolutions should be so unworthy of your courage, how shameful a thing it is to see a Prince like you, a Prince that upon all important enterprizes have shew'd so many proofs of the largeness of your soul, submitting himself so meanly to his passion, without being able to make use of his vertue to relieve him: Are you the only person in the world that ever loved? Are you the only person whom fortune has not favoured in his affections, or rather are you the only person that have not succeeded in an enterprize, which was both unlikely and improbable: And when it is most certain that you ought not to expect from Eudoxia, that which with all your merit you have no reason to hope, are you therefore so weakly and miserably to abandon your self over to grief and to despair, why do you not rather wait? for we are no longer to contend with your passion: why do you not rather expect from time, from your services, from the proofs of your affection, that which you have not obtained by your first address? and since that in all likelihood the conquest of Eudoxia's heart was not so easie a victory, why do you not assay, as all other lovers do, to vanquish it by perseverance and fidelity.* Ab Martian, said he, *you know you never spake to me before in this manner, and though in the condition I now am in you say this to flatter me, you can tell that you never permitted me to hope any thing, by my perseverance or my fidelity, and that it was your opinion that my friends, could do no more for me than lament my misfortune.*

I knew how to answer him well enough, and I had reasons enough to convince his: but beside that he produced none, that contest did but augment his Fever, which made me put an end to it, conjuring him to take some rest: and assuring him that if for the love of his friends, he would be assisting to his own cure, they would not despair to do him better kindnesses than those of lamenting his misfortune. He was sometimes apprehensive of this promise, and out of the natural vivacity of his wit, I did sometimes persuade him to yield to many things that I requested of him. But in the interim his distemper became so violent, that there was more fear than hope of his life: and then it was that my grief surpass'd the bounds of moderation, and caused me to make a diligent enquiry after all remedies that might conduce to the preservation of such a friend, without minding those considerations which till then had kept me more reserv'd, and which I had never thought on in all my life, had I not been so concern'd for his, and had not verily believed that I might a little slacken my duty for his preservation. The Emperour had visited him the third day of his sickness, had spoken to him in the most obliging expressions in the world: and by the care which he took to send several times to visit him, and to employ his Physicians and other Officers about him; he shew'd how much he was concern'd for the preservation of his life. The Empress and Pulcheria sent often to his Apartment, to inform themselves how he was, as being a person who was not slightly valued by them, but they had not seen him; which was the less wondred at, because it was not an ordinary thing, for persons of their rank to visit men unless they were their near relations, nor did Thrasimond himself take it amiss. But as I took more care of his life than he himself, I thought upon all things that might preserve it: and I believed it lawful for me so to do, in such a case of necessity. To which purpose one evening going out of his Chamber, I went to the Princess Pulcheria: and the Princess immediately enquiring of me how I found him, as a person much concern'd, she easily judg'd by the answer I made and the sadness she saw in my look, that there was more reason of fear than hope. She seem'd then full of pity, and after she had testified to me in most obliging language, how excellently she was afflicted for the misfortune of this poor Prince, as well in regard of his own merit as the friendship that was between us, and the interest which she saw me take in his misery; *I make no doubt,* said she, *but the same cause that makes him suffer so much, is the same that hastens his death: and had you not conceal'd it so obstinately, I had perhaps assisted you in seeking out the means of his relief.* I had also kept his counsel, and you

saw what I did the other day as well for him as you, whose perplexity I took notice of when Tiberina would have read his verses to the Emperour. You did, said I, like Pulcheria, that is to say like a Princess equally replenished with prudence and goodness: Nor need you doubt also Madam, but that if it might have been permitted, not only for the fidelity which I owe my friend, but for the respect which I bear your self, to have disclosed his mind to you, I should have done it with all the resignation of my obedience to your will. There are no persons in the world, to whom I would have sooner discovered it than to your self: and when you shall understand it, as perhaps you may too soon, you will see Madam that I could not discover it without venturing your displeasure. You will very much wonder, said the Princess, if by what you tell me and what I have seen, I should already make a shrewd conjecture, and should have no more need of your discovery to understand a mystery which you have so long conceal'd. I should not so much wonder, said I, as you believe: and as Prince Thrasimond is in a condition, not to fear any thing farther of his fortune, and that out of your pity, if you have any for him, it be in your power yet to save his life; if you will permit me to hope that you will use, your utmost endeavours to retrieve him from the grave, I will make no scruple to inform you all that I know. You need not doubt, said she, but that I shall be very ready to do a kindness of that importance, and that in doing any thing for you, I shall receive a great satisfaction, if I may contribute to the preservation of so worthy a Prince as Thrasimond. If it be so, said I, there is nothing ought to hinder me from declaring to you, that which his death will suddenly make publick to all the world, and you have discern'd the truth, if you conjectured that it is for the Empress that Thrasimond dyes. Now you see that it became me not to make you this confession, but upon the extremity of his life: and that I could not do it without making my self in some measure, an offender against my duty to the Emperour. However I assure you that I do not find any check upon my conscience, and that I made no other use of the knowledge of my friends passion, but to oppose it with all the arguments, that my duty and the care that I had of his repose could furnish me withal. His passion has been too strong for my counsel, and it came to the knowledge of the Empress, rather by means of the authority which she used, than out of any intention of his: His passion was perhaps innocent, and respectful enough to merit pardon: But the Empress was wary in this condition, and perhaps another person would not have been bound so rigorously to that severity: and though out of her admirable prudence she made no noise of these dispatches, but only that she had solicited them out of her meer goodness, yet she sent her orders to the poor Prince to depart: so that while she only intended to banish him from her sight, I fear she has exil'd him from the society of men.

I told her then at large what pass'd between the Empress and Thrasimond in the Garden, and inform'd her of the orders which *Chrisaphius* had carried to the Prince, and the sad effect which they produced, not mentioning the letter which he had wrote to the Empress, not believing that would any way make for my design: and when I saw that she continued to hearken to me with all calmness and attention, after I had told her all those things, or at least that she took no disgust against a miserable person, who was in a condition rather to move pity than anger; "You do not imagine Madam, said I, that I go about to solicit your goodness to assist Thrasimond, in attempting the affection of the Empress, nor did I ever dream of doing him any such piece of service, but if out of the compassion which his misfortune and the grief which I have to see him perish, you will preserve his life by letting the Empress know that he does not at all desire to live, you will do an action worthy the grandeur of your soul, and which can never be ill interpreted upon such an occasion as this. *Pulcheria* listened patiently to my discourse, and when I had made an end of speaking looking upon me with a smile; "You know well, *Martian*, said she, what it is that you desire of me, and few persons will believe that *Pulcheria* was ever so employed: but to continue the testimonies of that esteem which I have for you, and to succour a Prince whose merit I consider, and lament his misfortune, to retrieve him from that low condition in to which he is fallen, it shall not be my fault that Thrasimond does not recover his health. If it succeed, you must advise him to make use of it, to seek out the means how to recover his liberty, and I think he can hope no more neither from you nor me.

She told me afterwards that she had suspected the truth a good while before, and that it was rather out of that suspicion than for any other cause, that she hindred *Paulina* from reading his verses. That she would speak to the Empress, and that she hoped not only to bring her to visit Thrasimond, but also to speak to him that which she thought most necessary to conduce to his cure, and to tell him that she had no such distaste against him, to hinder him from desiring it. But it after that he recovered his health, then that she should immediately depart, not so much to satisfy *Eudoxia*, who could not perhaps be offended at a respectful affection, but for fear of giving any occasion of jealousy to the Emperour, whose disposition she knew, which though it were very mild was very precise in that point. I declared to

to her that my thoughts were conformable to hers, that I desired nothing but *Thrasmond's* life, and that I should persuade him to depart so soon as he had recovered health, so that after I had return'd her thanks for her promises with all the submissive acknowledgment, I went away very well satisfied, as well for the hopes which I had conceiv'd of my friend's life, as for the proof which the Princess had upon this occasion given me of the value she had for me.

The same Evening she visited the Empress, and discours'd her particularly upon this very subject, to whom after she had told her errand, she gave her those praises that were due to her virtue and good conduct, and laid before her all the most obliging arguments she could upon that occasion; and after she had commended the honesty and prudence of her proceeding, she said to her with a smile, that though she was not to love *Thrasmond* with an affection that might displease the Emperour, she was not to let him die, and prosecute her resentment so far for an offence that deserv'd no such cruelty of punishment, and that she ought to restore him to a condition to perform those orders she had sent him; *Eudoxia* could not chuse but blush at the beginning of *Pulcheria's* discourse, but afterwards recovering her self, she hearkened to the rest with more seriousness; and as it was easie for her to lay aside her prudence, and rely upon her authority, whatever should happen upon this adventure, she confess'd to her more than I had said, and discovered to her the trouble she was in when the Emperour surpris'd her with the Letter in her hand, and what she had ventured against her own quiet, to hinder the disturbance of the Emperour's repose. Afterwards she told her, that she was wholly govern'd by her advice, upon which she would rely in all things; and as she did really pity *Thrasmond's* misfortune, and desire his recovery, she would without any scruple do what the Princess desired, in order to the saving of his life, and so much the rather for that *Pulcheria* undertook so to order matters, that the Emperour himself should oblige her to visit the Prince. *Pulcheria* desired her to send *Chrisaphius* before to enquire how he did, and to tell him in her behalf how much she was afflicted for his being sick. All that she did the morrow morning: but if the poor *Thrasmond* trembled at the sight of *Chrisaphius* when he brought him his terrible orders, he no sooner heard his obliging message, but he admitted a passion into his Soul, that probably was not to come there any more. As he had his senses very quick, he said nothing to the Eunuch that did discover any thing more than he had a desire he should know, so that upon his first coming into the Chamber, the Prince took from his lips the Bracelet which the Empress had given him at the Tilting, which he continually kiss'd; but a little after calling him close to his Bed-side, and whispering to him, he ask'd him what news of the Letter which he had given him; whereupon the Eunuch relating to him the truth of what had pass'd, inform'd him of the care which the Empress took to conceal his Letter from the Emperour, and the hazard she had thereby expos'd her self unto; whereupon he permitted himself to be flatter'd with a thought that presented it self at that instant to his mind, and persuad'd him that he was not so unhappy as he believ'd himself. These thoughts for some time brought a little colour back into his cheeks, and infus'd some inclinations into his Soul to desire life, which he hated but some minutes before; but he was more sensibly surpris'd when he saw that *Pulcheria* and the Empress were come to visit him, as indeed they presently after did by the will of the Emperour who upon the advice of *Pulcheria*, had himself made it his request to the Empress.

It seem'd to the amorous Prince not only as if a new day had been entred into his Chamber with *Eudoxia*, but that the Heavens were open'd for him, and that he had been transported to the Seats of the Blessed. For by that sight he was troubled in such a manner, though with a very pleasing trouble, that it did more than all his sickness had done, for it took away part of his reason and his knowledge; and indeed it was much that so sweet a surpris, finding him in so great a weakness, had not made him lose all his understanding; not that he attributed the favour which he received, either to *Eudoxia*, or *Pulcheria*, or the Emperour; but from whence soever it came, he could not receive it without being transported in his mind, nor could he see that which he adored, which he thought he should have died without ever seeing again, without a strong commotion and extraordinary seizure, that render'd him so incapable of all things, that it did not permit him so much as to return a reply to the first complements of *Eudoxia* and *Pulcheria*. However, he answer'd them with eyes fix'd upon the countenance of his too much beloved object, in so passionate a manner, that if the darkness of the place had not conceal'd a good part thereof, *Pulcheria* had no need of what I had told her to inform her of the truth. I was in the Chamber, and as I was the better friend of *Thrasmond*, I did my obeysance both to the Empress and *Pulcheria*. But after they had sat a little while upon the Bed's side, which

time they spent in informing themselves of the condition of his health, and testifying their sorrow for his sickness, all which they perform'd in a most obliging manner. The Princess, willing to do what she thought was necessary for his recovery, and to let me see how she would acquit her self of the promise she had made, told me she had something to say to me, and rising up from the Bed-side, she took me apart to the other end of the Chamber, and left *Eudoxia* sitting by *Thrasimond*. Though the Empress were prepar'd for all this, yet she could not chuse but blush to see *Pulcheria* gone, nor was she without some little shame, to see her self so engag'd, though her intentions were wholly innocent; *Thrasimond* could not but with a great deal of joy behold himself alone in her company, and though the fear of displeasing her shut his lips, and that he made her stay a good while without speaking to her any other ways than by his looks; at last judging that in the condition he was in there was no necessity for him to observe those punctilios, as if he had expected longer life, or to stay long near the Empress, struggling with his weakness how to express himself, and preventing with certain sighs what he was about to say to the Empress, *I beg your pardon, Madam*, said he with a faint voice, *if I have not obeyed the orders which you sent me, and I hope that your goodness will spare me, in the condition wherein you see me. Had it been possible for me, I had not delayed my obedience, but what I should have accomplish'd by my departure, I will complete by my death, which shall no less deliver you from the sight of a miserable person that has displeas'd you, which perhaps my absence could not so effectually have done. I accept it also as a relief against the misfortunes of my life, and as a satisfaction which I owe to your just anger; and since it must serve me in both extremities, I willingly receive it; I will not endeavour to justify my thoughts, which could not be innocent since they offended you, and without doubt I deserv'd death because you condemn'd me to it. So favourable to me is death in my misfortunes, and so honourable in so good a cause, that I should be unworthy of so glorious a destiny, and unworthy of the favour with which you have honoured me this day, should I murmur at it. My only sorrow is that I can only prostrate at your feet a miserable life, and a life which through the misfortune I have had to displease you, cannot but be odious to me. Had my fortune given me leave, I would have desired to have sacrific'd something more precious; for the Gods are my witnesses, that for my life I would have offer'd it up in the most happy estate, with the same joy as now in this deplorable condition wherein you see me.*

The poor Prince spake after this manner, and more he would have said, by the assistance of a passion that strengthened his weakness, but that the fair *Eudoxia*, who heard him with pity, and had not visited him but in reference to his preservation, thought that a long discourse would prejudice her intentions. Upon this consideration she hindered him from going on, and undertaking the discourse with a carriage full of sweetness: "If hitherto I have declared that your illness caus'd in me as well compassion as sorrow, you may well believe I shall much more lament your death; and that you cannot have done me a greater injury than to think that I desired any such severe satisfaction: In sending you those things which were presented from me, perhaps I let you know that you would do well to absent your self from this place. But when I gave you that advice, I neither did it out of any motion of anger, or any prejudice to your person, but only knowing the miserable life which you led for my sake, and the little likelihood of your being happy here; and out of the hope I had that in your absence from us you would lose the remembrance of that which was the cause of your affliction: I might add, nor can you find any thing therein unjust or cruel, that you are not ignorant what my obligations are, and besides those ordinary obligations, those of *Athenais* to the Emperour *Theodosius*, by all which you must of necessity judge that a knowledge of your thoughts, such as you gave to me, could not but have wrought a bad effect in the mind of the Emperour, both for me, and perhaps for your self, seeing you do not so well conceal it, that it could have been long kept secret. Having these arguments for you absent, I thought I had us'd sufficient moderation to perswade you that it was not your death which I desired, and that I had neither any hatred or prejudice against you: but seeing my proceedings have produc'd an effect so contrary to my intentions, I must tell you that I do not only not desire your death, but that I am willing you should live, and that you can no way better manifest the care that you have to oblige me, than in doing all that lies in your power for the preservation of your life.

These words, though they signified to the amorous Prince but an imperfect happiness, yet they gave not a little satisfaction to his unquiet mind; and though he saw well that *Eudoxia* did not engage her self by her discourse, yet he made a right conjecture that so great a care of his health could not proceed from any thoughts but such as were far from hatred or anger, and that therefore he was not possibly so unfortunate as to desire death with so much vehemency,

vehemency, nor to oppose himself to what the Empress condescended to for the preservation of his life. In the midst of these thoughts, and beholding her with eyes, which, as dejected and languishing as they were, sparkled with his love, *As I cannot, nor ought ever to disobey you,* said he, *I will endeavour to live, since you command me; and it may be, Madam, you shall see that I shall shew you a proof of my obedience far greater, in reserving my self to an unfortunate life, than I should do in abandoning my self to a death that may be avoided, since you otherwise decree.* “As you have both virtue and reason, replied Eudoxia, I am in good hopes your life will no way prove unfortunate; but though it should be so, I desire you once more to labour for its preservation, nor expect the continuation of my friendship but upon that condition.

Concluding these words, she rose from her Seat, telling the Princess, that considering the condition wherein *Thrasimond* lay, it was not convenient to make a long visit. And *Pulcheria*, who had not in all that time spoken any thing to me but of *Thrasimond*, drawing near his Bed, most obligingly besought him to mind his recovery, and to shew that he had both courage and virtue to vanquish both the sickness of his body, and the disturbances of his mind. After that they retired, and left him in a condition to examine the estate of his body. The rest of that day he employed in that study, and though he knew *Eudoxia* too well to hope to be perfectly happy, or to attribute what she did for him to any other causes than her moderation and goodness: when he reflected upon all that had pass'd, and that he argued thereupon with an inclination to judge favourably of his fortune, he considered that he had spoken, that he had writ, and withal that he was not odious, that the Empress was not ignorant what his thoughts were for her, that she had conceal'd all this from the Emperour, and that in doing so she had expos'd her self to some hazard, and that she had testified that she desired the preservation of his life; and that after his thoughts had walk'd over all these things, he saw some ground to believe that he was not altogether unhappy, and that he was not forbid to hope a better fortune. Though I had no intention to engage him farther in a passion of which I sought so affectionately to cure him, if it were possible, I was unwilling however to contradict those thoughts that might seem to flatter him; so that I furthered his belief of all things which I thought might advantage his recovery. You can hardly imagine the effects which the satisfaction of his mind wrought upon the distemper of his body, and how powerfully that admirable receipt work'd for his cure. For certain it is, that the day following there was an apparent amendment, so that he, of whose life all persons so lately despair'd, now recovered so visibly, and in such a manner, that in two days we were assured of his life, and in four or five after his Fever quite left him. *Eudoxia* came once more to visit him, together with the Emperour, whom she brought along with her; and though she spake nothing to him then in particular, however he thought that he observed nothing in her eyes less favourable than in her first visit, and that she shewed no more prejudice toward him than she had done before the knowledge of his love: there were few persons indeed that were not deceived in the carriage of the Empress as well as he; and as she had an intention only to help him out of the danger into which he was fallen for her sake, there was not any thing which she did, that did not give him less cause to fear than hope: and to shorten this story wherein perhaps I have too tedious, you must know, that in a short time after, he got up, and at length perfectly recovered his health, and found himself in a better condition than he was before his sickness.

His recovery caus'd no less gladness than his sickness had been the occasion of much sorrow, and thereupon I return'd my thanks to the Princess *Pulcheria*, for what she had done for him, with so much sincerity, that thereby she soon perceiv'd how deeply I was concern'd for him: nor did she seem in the least to repent of her kindness. But one day that we were talking of him, after she had heard some expressions of my acknowledgment; *Marian*, said she, *I have done for you at this time, that which possibly few persons in the world durst have requested of me, and although perhaps I have acted nothing which you did not innocently intend, I cannot tell whether the Emperour would approve at that I have done, had he the knowledge thereof. His disposition is soft and mild in every other thing as well you know, but in this I am not so well assured of his meekness. And as you see well that I acted for the preservation of Thrasimond, if the cure of his sickness have not withal completed the cure of his passion, I desire you to helpe your self for his satisfaction and ours, which he may disturb by any longer stay in our Court, and gently to persuade him to seek those remedies in absenting himself, which he will hardly find by tarrying here.* *Eudoxia*. “I find, Madam, said I, that I shall have more trouble to do him a discomfiture than you had to do him a kindness. And though I doubt not but that he will be very ready to obey the Empress's commands, if he have any notice thereof;

“ thereof, yet perhaps it may occasion a relapse worse than the sickness of which you have
 “ cured him; however, in obedience to your desires, I will endeavour what a friend can
 “ do without the ruine of his friend, and I will fortifie with my counsel and entreaties
 “ those reasons which ought to oblige him to absent himself, but it will be convenient for
 “ you to send your orders by some other person; for I shall not be able to serve you in this
 “ affair. *You believe then,* (said she, with a behaviour that had something in it more than
 ordinary) *that the absence of the person beloved is a thing so cruel, than a man of courage and*
virtue cannot easily support it. “ There are some circumstances, replied I, that make the ab-
 “ sence of the person who is beloved, more or less intollerable than others, and though I
 “ believe a man of courage may easily endure what his fortune, or the desire of honour, or
 “ the service of that person whom he loves, causes him to suffer, and which is not likely to
 “ be of any long continuance, I cannot apprehend how he can submit to an absence com-
 “ manded him by the person belov’d, or rather to an eternal banishment. *Then,* (said she
 very seriously) *you would be very much troubled to dispose of your self, and the person whom*
you lov’d, if you love any, would find you but a disobedient servant upon the same occasion.
 These words terrified me not a little, and caused me to pause for some time, without ma-
 king any answer; but afterwards recollecting my self, *In any extremity,* said I, *I shall ever*
obey the person whom I love, even till death, but whatever resignation I make to her will, and
whatsoever honour I gain by my obedience to her commands, you may well imagine, Madam,
that I could not receive her commands without a signal affliction. There are several reasons, ad-
 ded the Princess, *to aggravate or lessen that sorrow; for as those orders which you call a banish-*
ment might proceed from a favourable intention, they may have sometimes a very obliging cause:
and that person that shall find his absence desired out of a fear of his merit, cannot but reap a
great satisfaction by the knowledge thereof. I believe, Madam, said I, *that few persons were*
ever banished upon that consideration; and as I have no such merit which the person whom I love
can fear, and that there is no merit which she can think worthy of any consideration, I am not
in danger to find so cruel an effect of so glorious a cause. There may happen things, replied
 the Princess, *that never happened yet; and seeing the fortune of men is subject to many revolu-*
tions, there are few accidents against which we ought not to prepare our selves. She uttered
 these words with a calm reserv’dness, and left me the rest of the day in a strange meditation,
 what should be the occasion of that discourse of hers to me: I ponder’d upon it till morning
 with no small perplexity; but finding the Princess, as soon as I saw her next, the very same
 that she was before, my fear left me, out of the belief that I had that there was no founda-
 tion for it.

In the mean time, the passion of *Thrasimond* (for you see ’tis rather the story of his life,
 than my own which I relate) instead of being weakened by his distemper, seem’d to have
 gather’d greater strength; for being permitted as soon as he got abroad to see the Empress
 as he was accustomed to do, the sight of her, and the remembrance of that goodness which
 she had shewn him, increas’d those fires that were kindled before. However, he saw that
 the Empress gave him no opportunity to speak to her in particular, as at other times, and
 that she would not discourse alone with him in any place where-ever she met him. But as
 he knew that she was not ignorant of what he suffered for her, and that he was not oblig’d
 to conceal what he had in his heart from her, he spake to her with his looks, as eloquently
 as if he had discours’d her with his tongue; and as his passion many times transported him
 beyond his reason, his eyes express’d themselves in such a manner, that many times *Eudoxia*
 was asham’d of it, and *Pulcheria* fear’d that they would soon discover what her discretion
 had conceal’d; and I was almost dead for fear, lest others besides our selves, and conse-
 quently the Emperour, should come to know the truth. This fear made *Eudoxia* blame
Pulcheria for what she had done, and *Pulcheria* to blame me, and to desire me to ad-
 vise *Thrasimond* to depart before those things happened that were so likely to fall out, and
 which might have been so easily prevented. But though I promis’d fair to the Princess,
 yet had I not the courage to speak to him of it; for though he was perfectly cured, yet he
 made no proffers to be gone, nor any way prepared for his journey. One Evening the
 Emperour being upon the Terrass of which I have spoken, together with the Empress, the
 Princess and all the Court, and seeing *Thrasimond* among the rest he call’d him to him, and
 after he had highly complemented him, he told him, if it pleas’d him so to do, and that
 it stood with the conveniency of his affairs, he need not to think of leaving a place
 where he was so highly in esteem, and where all persons were glad to see him, though there
 was none but the Empress that knew his whole mind, and that he had not confidence e-
 nough in him to trust him with his secret concern: *Thrasimond* made answer to this obliging
 discourse with a becoming respect, though blushing, and with a timorous countenance,
 and

and without saying any thing whether he would go or stay. But *Endoxia* who had impatiently heard the discourse, yet was unwilling to speak any thing (especially before *Thrasimond*, being gone a little farther off, and seeing her self alone with the Emperour, “ Sir, *jud she*, “ if you knew how cruel you were to seek to retain a person who visibly pines away here, “ and may in another place live with that comfort and repose, which he has lost among us; “ I know you would discourse him in another manner than you did: and because I know his “ mind as you told him I did, I entreat you to give me leave to solicit his departure, which “ I know to be necessary for the preservation of his life. “ You may do as you please, re- “ plied the Emperour, but I do not find that *Thrasimond* has such a desire to leave us, as you “ would persuade us to believe: which makes me think, *added he smiling*, that either you “ have a prejudice against him, or else that he is in love with you.

These words made the Empress blush in such a manner, that had not the Emperour been slow in observing her countenance, he might easily have perceived that she spoke the truth, of what he conjectured in these last words: But soon recovering her self, and not being willing to be long ere she gave the Emperour an answer; *Neither have I*, said she, *any prejudice against a Prince of so much merit as Thrasimond, and so much in your favour: nor is he in a condition to be in love with me. But Sir*, laughing as she concluded, *then you judge*, said she, *that Thrasimond’s love if he have any for me, is a sufficient cause of banishment. I do not say it were a just reason*, replied the Emperour, *but if I were in his place I should extremely fear it, from a virtue so severe as yours; and in truth this eagerness of yours to send him going, gives me a great suspicion of it. I hope you will not continue long in that opinion*, replied *Endoxia*, *and that you will find by the deportment of Thrasimond, that his inclinations are in another place.* That little discourse confirm’d her in her design, and it seeming to her that the Emperour did instruct her what she had to do with *Thrasimond*, were he in love with her: She resolv’d upon it without any more ado, though not without some motions of pity and grief, for the diskindness which her duty oblig’d her to shew to a person that ador’d her, especially seeing that neither his person nor his love was distasteful to her.

The next day knowing that *Thrasimond* and I, were with the Princess *Pulcheria* in her Apartment, thither came the Empress and found us there, with several other persons belonging to the Court. At first the discourse was general, but a while after the Empress told *Pulcheria*, she had something to say to her in private: and that was enough to make those persons that understood themselves retire. *Thrasimond* and I went out of the Cabinet as well as the rest, but upon the sign that *Endoxia* gave her, *Pulcheria* called us back and told us we might tarry: and seeing that ever since his recovery he had observed the Empress, to avoid all occasions of speaking with him in particular, his heart misgave him that that reservedness boated him no good from her intentions. It was not long ere he knew the certainty, but *Pulcheria* unwilling to be present to hear, what the Empress would say to *Thrasimond* though earnestly entreated, took me aside to a window that looked into the Gardens, leaving *Thrasimond* and the Empress alone at the other end of the Closet, with so much the more freedom, because she had opened the window and stood looking out into the Garden. *Thrasimond* was fate down by the command of *Endoxia*, and expected his destiny trembling, when the Empress after a short silence beholding him with a look wherein there was both sweetness and majesty; *Thrasimond*, said she, *when I visited you in your sickness, I told you that I had no ill will for you or prejudice against you: and I spoke this as well out of pure sincerity, as out of the opinion that I was persuaded into, that it would be of great consequence to hasten your cure. If this assurance proved successful I am very well satisfied, and though I see you in a condition now not to have any farther need thereof, I will add that instead of prejudice or distaste I have a true esteem for you: and that there is no person that shall be more concern’d, for your repose and happiness than my self, and that out of an apprehension much different from that of other persons, I do not find my self offended at those marks, which you have given me of your affection: I must tell you also that I find more reason, to shew you favour than to be angry with you, and that all the thoughts which the knowledge of your love has infused into me, tend rather to procure your happiness than to displease you. Having told you all these things that another person more nice perhaps and scrupulous, would not have told you with so much reality; I must desire you to consider who I am, what is my duty, and how far my ability extends: and to consider that together with the obligations of my duty and virtue, I have these more particular that you are not ignorant of, whereby that which would be looked upon as a small fault in another person, would in me become a crime most detestible, and a treacherie that would render me unworthy your esteem. I have a husband worthy of something more precious than my affections and fidelity, a Husband who is Emperour of the East, and a Husband who from a mean fortune, has rais’d me to the biggest dignity in the world. Besides he loves me now more tenderly than ever he loved me*

yet, he seeks out every day new ways to oblige me, and he merits in his person whatever I owe to his kind deeds, though he were less worthy to be beloved for his desert. In short (though that consideration is not to be alledged among virtuous persons) he sees you every day, believes you are in love, and now begins to suspect that it is with me. By all these things which you know as well as I, you see there is a necessity which obliges you to be gone from this place: and out of the good opinion which I have of you, I do not doubt though I should entreat you to stay, the fear which you would have of injuring my repose, my honour and all things dear to me; would not hinder you from so far condescending to my request. 'Tis not a banishment which I command you, but a necessity which I lay before you, which you are constrain'd to obey at the price it self of both our lives. I should submit without doubt had I the same thoughts for you as you have for me, and I desire you to prepare your self, without accusing of inhumanity a person, who believing you have nothing of cruelty in your heart for her, has nothing of severity in hers for you. The absence of a few months will settle your mind in its former tranquillity: and I am apt to hope that you will have no need of your courage, nor I of all the credit and reputation I have with you, to encline you to a willing compliance with my desires.

Having finished these words with a steady and resolute countenance, wherein however some marks of tenderness appeared, she rose from her seat not staying for answer, which pity made her afraid to hear, when casting her eyes upon *Thrasimond's* countenance, she beheld therein all the true colours of death, and at the same instant she saw him fall from his seat, upon the floor like a person without life, or rather like one in a swoon. At the noise which he made in falling, the Princess and I looked that way, and seeing him in that condition I ran to him: and having lifted him up and seated him in a Chair next the wall; I strove all I could to make him come to himself. Neither the Empress nor the Princess were willing to leave him without relief, but because they feared that by divulging the accident the cause would be known, they were at a stand, not knowing whether they were best to call the women and servants of the Princess or no. At length believing that that swooning of *Thrasimond*, would be taken for an effect of his late sickness, she called two women to the Closet door, and commanded them to fetch her some water. While they were throwing water in the Prince's face, and doing their utmost to recover him; *Pulcheria* was very much troubled, and it was as much as *Eudoxia* could do to refrain, from shewing greater marks of her compassion than she desired. At length *Thrasimond* came to himself, and opening his eyes he saw the Empress sitting by him in such a condition, that had he observ'd her looks he might easily have perceived, that she was not insensible of his grief. And for that *Pulcheria* seeing him come to himself, was retir'd at a distance from him, having first commanded the women to depart the room: he was by that means alone with the Empress, who as soon as he spy'd the opportunity; *Oh Madam*, said he, *why did you not let me dye, when favourable death offered me his relief: For since it was your purpose to take away my life, why would you prolong my pains to make my death more miserable? I have done*, said the Empress, *all that I promised to do, and I did it willingly to retrieve you, from that danger wherein you were thought to be. My intention was to preserve your life and not to take it away, and I have so little alter'd it, that you can never give me a proof of your affection, that can be dearer to me than in doing your utmost for your own preservation. I make no question but you will do it, and that as soon as you can you will depart from a place, where you had been always most gladly welcome, had you remained in a condition to permit it. Yes Madam*, (said the Prince with a dejected look,) *I shall be gone from you since you command me, and it will be more easie for me to obey that command, than it will that of commanding me to live. I equally desire of you both the one and the other*, said *Eudoxia*, *and I expect both the one and the other from your courage, from your virtue, and the consideration you have of my honour and repose.*

Concluding these words with a look that had nothing of anger in it, she rose from her seat and went out of the Closet, without giving the Prince any liberty to make a reply. Had *Pulcheria* followed the motions of her compassion, she had gone to him to comfort him in the extremity he was in: but because she was unwilling to let him know that she understood the whole truth, as well for fear it might displease him as for other considerations; she commanded me to stay with him to do him those offices, which he might expect from my friendship, till he was able to go out, and she her self followed the Empress into her own Chamber. *Thrasimond* continued in his Chair more than half dead, not being able to rise neither for the one nor the other when they went forth. For a good while he wanted all other language but looks and sighs, but when he began to unfold his grief in words, his expressions were so piercing and so lamentable, that had I never loved him I could not but have taken pity on him. I obliged him at length to rise, and causing him to go out of the Closet, at the door that opened into the Terrace walk, I led him to his own Apartment,

where

where he might give a greater liberty to his grief: there he gave himself up to his sorrows all the rest of that day, so that many times I lost the hope which I had promised myself in his resolution, while he all the while uttered complaints of his misfortune, that would have softened the most stony hearts. It would be a difficult thing to recite them, besides that they would extend the story to a tedious and irksome prolixity: and therefore to let them pass, I will only tell you that not being willing to leave *Thrasimond* in the condition wherein he was, I stayed with him all that night: and having given the first impetuosity of his grief, liberty to tire it self, and to waste the torrent of his tears and complaints, which it was impossible to stop for some hours, I gave him all those exhortations, when he was in a condition to hear me, which I thought might prevail with him to take a better resolution. I also endeavoured to persuade him, that his misfortune was not so great as he represented it to himself, and though the Empress urged thereto by the necessity of her duty, to which she could by no means oppose her self, ordered him to depart; yet he might well observe by her looks, in her discourse, and by her general deportment towards him, that she did it not without a vehement compulsion, and without letting him understand that he was no indifferent person in her thoughts. To this I added all that could make for his consolation, and all that I could imagine might oblige him, to employ his courage in that extremity: and at length I so well composed his mind, and managed the confidence that he had in me, that I made him understand that it was impossible for him ever to see *Eudoxia* there, or that she should suffer him to tarry longer where she was, if time could not procure him other remedies: so that he resolved at last to hearken to reason rather than to his despair, and to depart like a man of courage and in such a manner, that the Emperour should have no more ground to find out the certainty of a truth, of which already he had a suspicion. In short, murthering his grief, he composed himself so well, that the next day he did what I desired, with a better resolution than I expected. He took his leave of the Emperour who testified no small sorrow for his departure, and spoke to him in such obliging expressions, that thereby he found that the suspicion which the Emperour had of his love, had not produced any bad effect in his thoughts. *Pulcheria* treated him with all manner of courtesie, and all the marks of value and esteem, and the Empress who avoided all occasions of taking any particular leave, especially before the Emperour, for fear of some accident, gave him sufficiently to understand at that separation, as well by her looks as by her discourse and in all the rest of her deportment, that she had no hatred for him. Then it was that he stood in need of all his resolution, upon the Empreses addresses, to assist him, to hide the trouble and disorder of his spirit. After he had taken his leave he would not tarry a moment in *Constantinople*, nor could I prevail with him to go with me, and stay some few days at my house in the country, to gather strength, and to put himself in a condition fit for Travel. Had he travelled by land I had accompanied him some days journey, but he resolved to go by sea: and embarking from *Constantinople*, we took leave of each other the same day, but yet not without all the marks of tenderness and affection, which two real friends, and such friends who had in their hearts, something more prevalent and powerful than bare friendship, could testify upon such an occasion. I was certain that all that passion which possessed the soul of *Thrasimond*, could not hinder the sorrow which he had to leave me, and for my part mine was so great to part with him, especially in such a condition; that without that love which fortified my heart against all other passions, I should have found some difficulty to have satisfied my self.

'Twas then in *Pulcheria* that I sought my comfort, and the consolation of the sorrow which I felt for his departure: but I enjoyed it a very short time, and it was through my own misfortunes, that I became less sensible of *Thrasimond's*. For three days after the Princess told me, that I was to go to *Rome* to attend the Emperour *Honorius*, who a little before was return'd thither from *Ravenna*, where he had kept his Court a long time, having abandon'd miserable *Italy* to the fury of the *Barbarians*. She gave me to understand how important and honourable the employment was, as being to reconcile the two Emperours, betweenwhom there had been an unhappy misunderstanding for some time: For which reason they had not assisted one another against those Enemies, that had invaded both their dominions, as they had done at other times, and as they were truly obliged by their nearness in blood, by the interest of their honour and the good of their Empires. I understood indeed that that journey would be honourable for me, but I gave *Pulcheria* to understand that if she had procur'd it for *Authemius* or *Paulinus*, or any other person that was more worthy of it than my self, I should have been better satisfied, and that the occasions of serving her near her person, would be always more dear, and better acceptable to me than any others. However I submitted to her commands, and some days after having received the orders of the

Emperour, I departed from *Constantinople* towards *Rome*, where out of the desire I had to return, I us'd my utmost diligence to dispatch my affairs. There I found the Emperour *Honorius* overwhelmed with that sorrow which mov'd me to pity, though it were less for the ruine of that magnificent City, which had commanded the world for so many years, which every where bore the marks of the *Gothish* fury, than for the loss of *Bellamira*, whom the perfidious *Heraclius* had carried away by force into *Africa*, where, by her own Heroick Virtue, and the death of *Heraclius*, she has given Renown so large a Theme to celebrate her praise. However, he received me with an extraordinary civility, and all the marks of his esteem of my person, which I had no way deserv'd, seem'd very sensible of the offer which I made him of our Forces to assist him in his war in *Africa*, whither he had sent the valiant *Artabure*, and testified a great desire to reconcile himself for ever with the Emperour his Nephew, and inseparably to joyn interests with him: I need not tell you the particulars of my Commission, of which I discharg'd my self to the utmost of my ability. And when I had dispatch'd all my affairs at *Rome*, I departed thence, and spurr'd forward with a desire of returning to the Princes, I hasten'd for *Constantinople*, travelling hard every day. But before I came near it, I received orders from the Emperour to command the Forces that were marching against the *Blemian* Rebels, and reduce them to obedience. The hopes of winning honour was that which comforted me for the delay of my happiness. In short, I headed the Army, march'd against the Enemy, whom I successfully overthrew, chas'd them from those places which they had assaulted; and having forc'd them back within their own Limits, made them submit to such conditions as I was pleas'd to impose upon them. This war being happily and quickly ended, I sent to give an account of the success to the Emperour, and in one Letter which I wrote to *Pulcheria*, (for she suffer'd me to write to her about the affairs of the Empire, of which she had the Government in her own hands) after I had given her to understand that my presence was not necessary in a Country where all things were quiet, I begg'd her that I might return to be near her; and not foreseeing the difficulty, I indeed prepar'd for my journey to *Constantinople*, when together with Letters from the Emperour, wherein he declar'd the satisfaction which he had in the service that I had done, I received one from the Princess *Pulcheria* in these words.

The Princess *Pulcheria* to *Martian*.

IT is sometimes a bad thing, *Martian*, to have too much merit; for as in some accidents it may beget suspicion and envy, it causes it self in others to be more fear'd than lov'd. I knew all your thoughts, but I did not know my own, and it is but the distrust of my self that makes me so cautious as to you, in whom I have all manner of confidence. That which obliges me to esteem you above all other men constrains me to keep you at a distance from our presence, and to desire you not to come back till I recal you: your absence shall produce no bad effect for you; and that which you have most to fear, (if I am not deceiv'd in my judgment of you) is, that you will not be over suddenly recal'd. Your presence disturb'd me in my designs, and perhaps I say enough to make you guess that it troubled my repose, or at least, thwarted my resolutions; when I find that it ceases so to do, I shall take care to send for you. In the mean while be assured, that when it shall so please Heaven, it shall not be my fault if you do not see the effect of your Father's hopes.

Have you ever heard of so odd an accident as this? And could you have believ'd that I could have expected from a humour like *Pulcheria's*, what I felt upon that occasion? I know not what judgment you may make of it, but I must tell you, that I remain'd some days without being able what to think of my own condition, nor could I determine whether the misfortune which I found in a banishment, to which as well as *Tbrasimond*, I saw my self condemn'd, might be counterbalanc'd by the honour to have had the glory to disturb *Pulcheria's* repose, or (if modesty might be permitted to think, after the her self had spoken) in having a merit that was terrible to her: "What an Honour is this, said I, on the one hand! What a misfortune, said I, on the other! But what a happiness, said I again, to find such favourable inclinations for us in the heart of that Princess whom we adore! But what a terrour, cry'd I, to see our selves banish'd, it may be for ever, from the sight of *Pulcheria*! Ah! if it be for ever, added I, our glory and our happiness will be the greater; and I have nothing more to fear, than that I shall be suddenly recal'd.

"But

“But if this glory continue as long as we live, we shall then never more behold what we
 “so much love, and we shall spend our days in an absence more cruel than death it self.
 “Chuse, *Martian*, between these two extremities, either to see *Pulcheria* again, or to be in-
 “different to *Pulcheria*. I often propos'd to my self this choice, but neither that day,
 nor in any that followed, had I power to make the election, nor to resolve of which of the
 two I ought to be most sensible, whether of my happiness, or my misfortune. However,
 I stood firm to my obedience. And having sent back part of my retinue to *Constantinople*,
 I resolv'd to travel into places far remote from the place of my banishment, and where I
 should more easily endure the cruel exilement to which I saw my self condemn'd, than near
 our Court, where I must live an idle life, hateful to a person of my disposition, being such
 a one as I could have led at my house in the Country. But before I went, I wrote these
 words to the Princes.

Martian to the Princess Pulcheria.

‘Tis to the defect, and not to the excess of my deserts that I must attribute my misfortune; for
 had I had enough to excuse the boldness of my thoughts, I believe, Madam, that you would
 never have banish'd me. Since they are known to you, I will not disown them, yet probably they
 were not sufficiently criminal to merit the severe sentence to which I am condemn'd. However,
 neither will I complain of my misfortune, nor shall I interpret it to my advantage; and as the lat-
 ter is not permitted me out of the knowledge which I have of my self, so neither am I permitted
 the former, through the submission which I owe to your commands. It is from them that I
 shall wait the continuation of my exilement, without examining the cause thereof; and if it must
 last as long as the favourable thoughts with which you flatter me, I shall hardly desire the end of
 it, though the rigour of it causes me every day to die. I know not whither I am wandering to lead
 my life; but since you are no longer ignorant, that it is wholly at your devotion, I believe it may
 be permitted me to tell you, that the absence to which you condemn me, shall never hinder it
 from being otherwise as long as I live.

This was the answer which I gave to *Pulcheria*'s Letter. And a few days after, setting
 forward upon the journey that I had premeditated, I left *Thrace*, and visited a good part of
 the fair Cities of *Greece*, carrying always along with me the image that reigned in my heart,
 and dividing my thoughts between the grief to see my self exil'd, and the glorious cause of
 my banishment. I pass'd through *Macedonia*, and so into *Ilyria*, and *Pannonia*; afterwards
 reduc'd under the power of the *Huns* by the valiant *Balamir*. At length I came into *Ger-
 many*, and finding it full of Armies, and almost all intercs'd and involv'd in a war which
 has made so great a noise in the world, I thought it more honourable for me, and more a-
 greeable to my Birth and inclinations to stay there some time, and to see so many Princes
 whose reputation flies over all the world, than always to wander without any design; and
 although by common report this side was not the justest, I did not think it handsome to
 take *Pharamond*'s part, who was one of the most formidable enemies of the Empire, more
 especially because the Queen of the *Cimbrians* and the King of *Suevia*, who were the chief
 authors of the war, who had been for some time since our Allies and Confederates, and
 had not begun the war with *Pharamond* but for the interest of the Empire: it was therefore
 to them that I made my address, and as my name was not unknown to them, they receiv'd
 me very honourably, and by their noble entertainment engag'd me to stay with them. You
 arriv'd some few days after, and your arrival has bound me faster than any other consid-
 eration, since now I understand better than I did, the little justice on their side, and the
 admirable virtue of their Enemy.

Thus you have heard what you desired of me; and with my own adventures I have
 mingled *Thrasmond*'s, out of the belief that I had that you might not be a little pleas'd
 with those of *Athenis*. And now you see that it was not without reason that I was so
 scrupulous of discovering my mind: for besides what I owed to the secrets of *Thrasmond*,
 which were known only to *Pulcheria* and my self, you find that the very secret of *Pulche-
 ria*'s thoughts, which all the world knows nothing of, was of sufficient importance to make
 me conceal it till death, but that I could not hide it from you, since you so obligingly de-
 sired

fired the knowledge of it, my confidence in your promise being such, that I dare assure my self I shall never have any cause to repent of the trust which I have repos'd in your friendship.

The End of the Second Book of the Seventh Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK III.

THis was the Relation that *Martian* made; and the Prince of *Persia*, who listen'd thereto with so much attention, as to let him know how much he was concern'd therein, taking his turn when he had made an end of speaking, "In truth, *said he*, you have inform'd me things worthy the attention which I gave you with so much delight, and the trust which you have repos'd in me. And though you have made a shorter relation of your own than *Thrasimond's* affairs, I find in the end something so surprizing, that I can hardly yet recover my self from the astonishment that has seiz'd me. I give my voice however rather for your happiness than for your misfortune; or to say better, I take your happiness to be far more probable than your misfortune. Not believing that the sufferings of absence can be in the least compar'd with not being belov'd, where a man has fix'd so strong an affection. Those others cause only pining and languishment, the other inspires rage and despair. In my opinion, *Pulcheria* is not only not afraid to love you, as she tells you in her Letter, but loves you most affectionately: and that terrible Maid that despis'd all men, and who in raising her self above her own Sex, has sham'd ours by her great endowments and ability to govern the Empire, has found in your merit that which she avoided, and which she will shun in vain if her heart be touch'd as I imagine it is. I know her pride is such that she can hardly endure the yoke, but I do not despair but that she will submit at last. And as you know of late it has been an ordinary thing to associate Partners in the Empire, that *Valens* for example was associated by *Valentinian*, *Theodosius* the Great by *Gratian*; and who doubts but that *Honorius* would have associated *Constance* after he had given him *Placidia*, had not their fortune been otherwise dispos'd: I do not therefore hold it impossible but that through the power that *Pulcheria* has over *Theodosius*, she may oblige him one day to take you for his Partner in the Empire being married to his Sister, so shall your Father's hopes which I do not find to be ill grounded, and *Leontine's* Prediction, have their effect. And you see that the Princess instead of opposing them, heightens and encourages these hopes her self. For poor *Thrasimond*, my Successour in the love of *Athenais*, I fear his misfortune will endure. But if he will come to us, and seek out the remedy which has cured me, I dare answer for his cure, and promise him that after he has seen *Rosamond* he will never love any other Beauty. "I do not believe that remedy, *said Martian*, to be so infallible as you say it is; for though I have with others admired the Beauty of the *Cimbrian* Queen, and that I truly find therein something supernatural, I do not believe she can work the same effects
" upon

“ upon many other hearts, as she has wrought upon yours. And although, (if a true love
 “ will admit of this confession) I will readily confess that *Pulcheria's* Beauty is not com-
 “ parable to hers, nor to that of *Athenais*, yet neither the one or the other have been able
 “ to make my heart lose any thing of its first impression. “ You have successfully made that
 “ experiment, said *Varanez*, because, as I said before, you are belov'd by *Pulcheria* : But
 “ did you despair through her cruelty, or the entire loss of your hopes ? As it was my mis-
 “ fortune; and is likely to be *Thrasmond's*, and that in that condition such a Beauty as *Ro-*
 “ *samond's* should present it self before your eyes, I cannot tell whether you would prove
 “ so constant in your love, or so obstinate in your opinion, as not to be shaken. “ If that
 “ reason could effect it, replied *Martian*, there would be no greater argument to move me
 “ than this cruel exilement to which I am condemn'd. And although I see my self flatter-
 “ ed with some rays of hope, by some actions of *Pulcheria*, but more by the words of her
 “ Letter, yet neither do so far intoxicate me hitherto, as to fill my head with chimeras and
 “ ridiculous fancies. *Pulcheria* sports with my misfortune, when she mentions my
 “ Father's hopes, and for Copartnership in the Empire of which you have spoken, it is
 “ most certain, that if *Honorius* were inclin'd to take a companion, (as considering his weak-
 “ ness known to all the world, it might be convenient for him to do) *Constance* has more
 “ reason to aspire to that, not only as being of the blood of the great *Constantine*, but also
 “ as being the person that by his valour and his renowned actions has been the only support
 “ of the Western Empire against all its enemies, and who had without doubt defended *Ita-*
 “ *ly* against the fury of the *Goths*, had he not been detain'd in *Gallia* by a sickness that had
 “ reduc'd him to the utmost extremity. The same may be said of the great *Theodosius* ; but
 “ for my self who have done nothing considerable, either for the honour, or enlargement of
 “ the Empire, I should not be wise in nourishing such vain imaginations ; and I am there-
 “ ly mistaken if *Pulcheria* (notwithstanding that holiness that possesses some part of her
 “ thoughts) is not ambitious of Government for all that, and if she does not one day make
 “ use of that power which she has over the Emperour, to make him take another compa-
 “ nion than her self, whom he has truly made his Partner, causing her to be called *Pulche-*
 “ *ria Augusta*, establishing her in an authority equal to his own, as I was inform'd presently
 “ after my departure. I have also understood that in this advancement of her power, she
 “ has done me kindnesses and procured many eminent Employments and high Dignities for
 “ my Relations and Friends ; but all this in a disposition like hers, is far from that which
 “ you would persuade me to hope, or rather from that which you feign to hope, only
 “ for my present consolation. In the midst of this discourse night drew on, whereupon
 “ they called for Supper, and having taken a short repast, they went both together to visit the
 “ Queen of the *Cimbrians*, where that illustrious company, compos'd of so many Princes or-
 “ dinary us'd to meet.

With the two Queens and the Princess of *Suevia* they found the King of the *Burgundi-*
ans, Prince *Balamir*, the King of the *Herules*, and a little while after came in the King of
 the *Alains*, and the King of the *Basternes*. After some discourse *Ardaric* told the Prince
 of *Persia* that he had been at his Chamber door to look him, but was there answered that
 he was lock'd in with *Martian*; whereupon he was not willing to interrupt them, believing
 they were about some business of importance, or at least entred into some discourse that re-
 quired time and attendance. *Varanez* excus'd himself, and presently after turning to the
 rest of the company : It is true, said he, that *Martian* and I have been together the most part
 of the day, busied in a discourse that has been very pleasing to me for some hours, and that find-
 ing him in a good humour, I would not let him be at rest till he had told me some passages of
 news, from a place where I have spent many a sorrowful day. “ In all likelihood, said the
 “ Queen of the *Turingiens*, there are few persons can inform you more than he can ; for he
 “ hath been so highly prefer'd in the Court of *Theodosius*, that in all probability he ought
 “ to know what happened there of greatest importance. 'Tis very true, Madam, said *Mar-*
 “ *tian*, that I liv'd there long enough to give an account of things that came to publick knowledge.
 “ And we may believe, said the Queen of the *Turingiens*, that you know a great deal more
 “ than you say ; for you have been so long of the Council and Cabinet of *Theodosius*, not to
 “ be ignorant of the most hidden secreties. I believe, added the Queen of the *Cimbrians*,
 that *Martian* does not only know what has pass'd in the Imperial Court in the Reign of young
Theodosius, or his Father *Arcadius* whom he has seen, but that though he was very young in
 the latter years of *Theodosius* the Great, I doubt not but he has well inform'd himself of all that
 was memorable at that time. And as there were many things for which I have always had a
 curiosity which I have not yet satisfied, though I have heard them confusedly spoke of a good while
 since, if I durst presume I would entreat him to inform me in what I am ignorant, and I should

be infinitely oblig'd to him, if he would be pleas'd to take the pains. I believe, Madam, replied *Martian*, that there is no person in the world who does not esteem it so great an honour to please and to obey you, that he would willingly purchase it with much more pains and labour, than you impose upon me in what you desire; and as there is nothing certainly that has fallen out considerable under the Reign of the great *Theodosius*, wherein I have not been particularly instructed, either by my Father, from whom I was seldom absent, or by the persons themselves who occasioned the most memorable accidents, and whom I knew in their old age. If you please to tell me what it is that you desire to know, I hope, Madam, that I shall be able to satisfy your curiosity, and I shall most gladly undertake it when you shall be pleas'd to command me. Since you will have me abuse your civility, replied the charming Queen, I must tell you, that I never heard but confusedly the beginning of *Stilicon's* fortune, nor of his love to the Princess *Serena*, whose Virtue and Beauty have been so loudly reported, wherein of necessity there cannot but be most notable accidents. There may be couch'd therein some particulars of the fortune of the great *Theodosius*, and above all his advancement to the Empire, which I never rightly understood, and as I believe that the Queen of the *Turingiens*, and the Princess of *Suevia* are no less ignorant than my self, I make no question but they will desire to be sharers in the obligation, if you will take the pains to make us a relation.

Amalazontha and *Albifinda* confirm'd what *Rosamond* had promis'd in their behalfs: and although *Amalazontha* her self was not in a condition that gave leisure to mind curiosities. However the liberty which a long discourse of *Martian* might give her to be silent, and to meditate upon that which chiefly employed her thoughts, made her sensible of the proposition, and readily accept it. And *Martian* understanding their desire, I am most happy, said he to *Rosamond*, to find so easie an occasion to do something to give you the least content, and as among persons of the same age with *Stilicon* and *Theodosius*, as there are several in our Court, there are few that are better instructed in the transactions of those persons which you desire to know, as having learn'd part thereof from *Ruffinus's* own mouth, who understood the greatest part no less than *Stilicon* himself; when you please to give me your orders I shall content your curiosity to the utmost of my ability, and together with those things that are come to publick knowledge, I may probably inform you of some that are not very much discovered to the world, the relation whereof may be worthy your attention, if I can but acquit my self of my task as I ought to do. If, as by what we gather from the Prince of *Persia*, said the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, you had not been so lately too much tired already, and that for that reason it were not an incivility, to urge you to speak so much in one day, I must tell you, that of a good while since we have not had such a time of leisure as now; and therefore believing that all these Princes will not think it a trouble to give you an attention equal to ours, if you need not a longer time to recollect your self, and bring back to memory things out of mind, though we are forc'd to borrow some part of the night, I dare be bold to say that this noble society will not grudge their time, nor think it ill spent. The Princes confirm'd what the Queen of the *Cimbrians* had said; and *Martian* having a great desire to please her, though he might probably be tired with the long recital which he had made *Varanez* but a little before, he thus began his Relation which he address'd to the fair Queen of the *Cimbrians*.

The History of Theodosius the Great, of Stilicon, and of Ruffinus.

THE Relation which you desire of me, Madam, might perhaps require a little preparation, and whereas it will be convenient, that in rehearsing the lives of *Stilicon* and *Ruffinus*, whose actions until the death of *Theodosius* were intermingled together, I should also relate unto you part of the Actions and Life of that Illustrious Emperor; and whereas you declare to me that you desire a more perfect knowledge than what you have hitherto had, it behov'd me possibly to have taken a longer time to methodize those things which may in all likelihood come to my memory but confusedly; yet in regard I am only to make a succinct Relation of those things that are known to all the world, and to enlarge upon those only, of which you are ignorant at present, I hope my memory will serve me to recollect sufficient matter wherewithal, to satisfy your expectation; at least I shall endeavour to shew my self a person willing in all things to obey your Commands.

To pay what is just to the memory of the great *Theodosius*, we may say that it will not only be highly revered by his successors, to the utmost period of the Empire, but that for the glory of his life he has equal'd if not surpass'd, the most famous of his illustrious Ancestors; and that in valour and all other military virtues, he was not inferior either to *Constantine*, *Trajan*, or to the ancient *Cæsars*: that in goodness, justice and moderation he excell'd *Vespasian*, *Antonius*, and indeed that he possess'd all the virtues both of the one and the other, nor was taxed with any of those vices for which they might have been blamed. In a word, besides his valour and skill in war, easily to be compared with that of the most famous Captains of the Ancients, besides his ability in governing the Empire, wherein he shamed the most nimble and sharp-witted Politicians, he was so faithful to his word and so great an observer of what was his duty, that no consideration of interest could move him. His piety toward heaven was such, that it has serv'd as an example to all the world: so courteous toward his equals, so mild and affable to his people and friends, that he was adored by all those that came into his presence: so faithful in his acknowledgments toward those, to whom he thought himself oblig'd, with a liberality full of magnificence, especially toward persons of any merit, whom he loaded with his favours, and for whom to his dying day he had an affection full of respect, tender as a parent of his relations and friends, with a most amiable and familiar sweetness in his behaviour; so great a contemner of those honours, which his Ancestors so eagerly fought after, that though he had merited those Triumphs and other marks of glory, which are commonly challenged as the reward of great actions, he always looked upon them as things beneath his consideration, having lived in all the splendour of his victory, and in the supremest place of honour in the whole world, with the modesty of a private person, who did not understand any other use of honour and grandeur, but only to distribute them illustriously to those, that by their virtue rendred themselves worthy of them. He was soon angry but sooner pleas'd, nor was he ever in a passion which caus'd not in him either trouble or repentance. Under such a person was the Empire established in its full glory, all the potentates of the world trembling at his name, sought his Alliance with submission: and if heaven had suffer'd him to complete the number of his years, of which there was a natural likelihood enough, and for which his people earnestly pray'd, he had restored the Throne of the *Cæsars* to all the glory of its primitive splendour. These rare endowments of his mind were accompanied with the advantages of body: For besides a most exact proportion, he had a very fair countenance, his eyes pleasing yet quick and lively, and in all his person a deportment full of royal Majesty: so that they who have seen the pictures of *Trajan*, have found no less resemblance in their persons, than all the world has observ'd in their manners, their actions, and their management of affairs; which is the less to be wondred at, seeing that these two Emperours both sprang from the same line, and that most certainly the Emperours that at this day rule the Eastern and Western Empires, deduce their original from *Trajan*. Having told you all this, it is not necessary, since you cannot be ignorant thereof, to inform you that he was a Spaniard, or that he was the Son of that great Captain whom *Valens* the Emperour put to death, as the reward of so many great victories that he won; because he bore the same name as his Son *Theodosius*: and for that they had foretold to that Emperour, being cruel and jealous of his dignity, that he should have a famous successor, whose name should begin with *Tb*, the two first letters of the name *Theodosius*. That Prince being weak in parts, but of a bloody nature, not minding what had been foretold him by one of his most illustrious Ancestors, that never any Prince had put to death his Successor, yet for that vain and ridiculous reason before mentioned, deprived of life a person illustrious for his great deeds, and most renowned actions. The young *Theodosius* his Son incens'd for the death of his Father, and therefore fearing the same fate, retir'd into *Spain*, where by his admirable virtues and the many proofs of his valour, he made his fame so well known that his great reputation had expos'd him more than ever to danger, if *Valens* had not lost his life in the great fire of the *Goths*, wherein he was burnt in *Thrace*: and that his Nephew *Gratian*, who after the death of his Father ruled in the west, had not become master of the Empire, making himself to be presently known, for a Prince adorn'd with most excellent virtues: for besides that he was just, liberal, prudent and eloquent, he was the most active for all exercises of the body, of any person in the whole Empire. He was also valiant and a very great Captain, and in his early youth had gain'd a very famous victory, over a numerous and formidable Army of the *Barbarians*, wherein were slain above forty thousand upon the place. But at the same time finding himself assaulted on every side, by the *Goths*, *Huns*, *Suevians*, *Alains*, *Herules*, and many other Nations, that like an inundation threatned the Empire, with a most formidable power; and seeing that he stood in need of a person to assist him,

and help him to support the burthen of all those wars, the report which was already spread through all the world of *Theodosius's* fame, obliged him to cast his eyes upon him above all other men, and to send him the purple Robe into *Spain*, declaring him chief over all the Armies of the Empire, and desiring him to come and employ his valour and courage in its defence.

Theodosius, whom renown had inform'd of the vertues of *Gratian*, willingly embraced all occasions to serve him, and because he saw there was an urgent necessity, to stop the fury of the *Barbarians*, who began to swarm in the Territories of the Empire; instead of going to *Gratian* who was then in *Pannonia*, he put himself at the head of the first Army he could meet, and sending for more forces from other parts, he made up an Army not to compare with the Enemies for number, but which under the conduct of such a Captain was sufficient to undertake any enterprize: and with these forces which daily increased, he not only stopped the progress of the *Goths* and their confederates, but he assaulted them in their own quarters, weakened and distressed them in many skirmishes, where virtue and valour had always the advantage over number: and at length giving them battel, obtained so entire a victory over them, that hardly in any part of the Empire, a more complete was ever gained though bloody withal, the field being covered with an infinite number of the dead *Barbarians* bodies, whereby he chased the remainder quite beyond the *Danubius*. After these Actions, so renowned and of so great importance, he went to seek the Emperour *Gratian* at *Simium* a City of *Pannonia*, where that Prince gratefully in love with his vertue, not only confirm'd him in the dignity which he had bestowed upon him, but a few days after observing more and more his admirable endowments, and knowing the good which he should do for the people, in bestowing upon them such an Emperour, declared him his equal, and companion and associate in the Empire: and retaining for himself the Empire of the *Romans* and of the West, which *Honorius* at this day possesses. He left him *Constantinople* with the Empire of the East, as it is now under the government of the young *Theodosius* his Grandchild.

Thus the great *Theodosius* in the two and thirtieth year of his Age, was advanced to the Empire, and it was upon the Throne of the *Cæsars*, that he made the lustre of his vertue shine, while all the world commended *Gratian's* choice. He seconded his first deeds with many others that were no less renowned, and having every where overthrown the *Barbarians*, his very name struck such a terrour into them, that they durst no more come near the limits of the Empire; and those who had been his most formidable Enemies, not only submissively sued for peace, and had it granted upon conditions very honourable for himself; but they engaged also to assist him in all his own affairs, and to fight under his pay as his own subjects. He had sent for *Flaccilla* the Empress out of *Spain*, with the young *Arcadius* his Son, who was born much about that time, together with *Serena* his Brothers daughter, her father being dead some years before; whom he caused to be brought up under the Empress, with that care and affection as if she had been his own daughter. His Court was then more numerous, more fair, and more magnificent, than any of the Emperours before him had been: and it being publickly known that there virtue would infallibly find reward, all brave persons flocked thither out of foreign nations; nor did they fail to find there the relief of estates and dignities proportionable to their merit: But among those that had the highest employments, *Arbogastus*, *Stilicon*, and *Ruffinus*, were in chiefest esteem with the Emperour, as being the persons that by their services and by their great endowments, though perhaps not in every one alike, had best merited that great honour. They were first entertained by *Theodosius*, at what time he marched out of *Spain* with that Army, where they had considerable commands under *Gratian*: and being there detained by the charms of his vertue, and the entertainment which he gave to men of desert with a discerning judgment, they not only affectionately tied themselves to his service, but they had also a great share in the famous Actions that had advanc'd him to the Throne, and in the wars that had been ended since his establishment: they had themselves commanded Armies by the Appointment of the Emperour, and had in many battels overthrown the Enemy, and settled the peace of the Empire, insomuch that seeing themselves the chiefest persons in the Emperour's favour, they began to dispute the Priority among themselves, with little odds in their advantages, though they sufficiently differed in their endowments. *Arbogastus* was descended from the race of the *Gauls*, if it be true as is reported the most illustrious in the world, as of those Princes who boast themselves descended from the Son of *Hector*, who reigning over the *Sycambrians*, settled their Kingdom in that part of *Gall*, which lately called King *Pharamond* to the Crown. Besides his Birth, *Arbogastus* had noble endowments of mind, but that which excelled all the rest was his great valour, which was such, that he would not submit to the

God of War himself; and though his passions made him act like a person that had other inclinations, yet he was naturally born for War, and War it was that was more natural to him than any other thing in the world; though he wanted not wit, yet he came short of that mildness necessary for a Courtly Society; for in his discourse, and in his behaviour he us'd a kind of ruggedness, that was next to pride it self, and sometimes extended it self to insolence.

Stilicon was a *Vandal* of a very noble Descent, and for his Valour not inferiour to *Arbogastus*, of which he had given manifold proofs; and he had a wit capable of all things as well in peace as in war: he was no less a good Captain than a valiant Soldier; nor was he less fit to consult at the Council-Table upon the most important affairs of State, than to conduct an Army in the Field. Besides all this, he was truly generous, magnificent, and a lover of Virtue, and he had in all things a great courage, large thoughts, and a boundless ambition; he knew how to conceal, where it was convenient, the excess of his passion; and his deportment was so much the more pleasing, because his person was rarely proportion'd; his aspect haughty, so that from his youth he seem'd to be born to something beyond the fortune of his Ancestors.

As for *Ruffinus*, though his Parentage was not known, it being uncertain whether he were descended from the *Gauls*, or the *Italians*, yet his nature was so different from the frank humour and downright plainness of the *Gauls*, that as many other persons did, I took him to be rather an *Italian* than a *Gaul*: in valour he was certainly inferiour to *Stilicon* and *Arbogastus*; but for address of wit he far exceeded and surpass'd *Stilicon* himself, as being the person that till his declining years, was accounted the most cunning Head piece, and the greatest Politician of the Age: his behaviour also was far different from theirs: and it the other two upheld themselves by their famous Actions and their sublime courage, he did no less by the subtilty of his Genius, whereby he had so insinuated himself into the favour of the Emperour, that he kept his station till his death, with an admirable Conduct. He was handsome in his person, and his converse was charming; and though the Emperour neither lov'd Flatterers, nor Flattery, yet that of *Ruffinus* was always masqu'd under so much curiosity of address, that that great personage, as apprehensive as he was, never understood him, nor could discover his subtilty and artifice from his real and sincere intentions.

These three persons different in their parts, in their inclinations, but little unequal in their fortune, look'd upon one another in a short time with envy, by reason of their corrivalship in the favour that they contended for. And if *Arbogastus* and *Stilicon* had an advantage over *Ruffinus* by their Military Employments, of which, the wise Emperour knew them to be more capable than he, yet he seem'd to have no less advantage over them at the Council-Table, and in the private Affairs; for in those things that concern'd the Government, the Emperour heard him more favourably than the other two, and very much relyed upon his advice. He carried himself however toward every one with so much reserv'dness and indifferency, that they had no cause to complain of him, not *Stilicon* himself, whom he knew fit both for the one and the other, and whose prudence in council he did no less esteem, than his Valour in the Field. But to this Corrivalship that fortune had contriv'd between three men, she added another in a short time, which gave them no less trouble, and which produc'd the greatest part of those Adventures and Accidents which I am going to relate.

You heard me say, Madam, that the Emperour had sent for the young Princess his Neice *Serena* out of *Spain*, causing her to be bred up under the Empress with all care and affection imaginable, to which I must add, that in a short time, what with the Beauty of her Body, and Divine Quality of her mind, she became one of the most accomplish'd persons, and the greatest ornament of our Court, and so drew upon her the eyes and admiration of all persons that beheld her; the report of her Merit and her Beauty has been sufficiently spread, that I need not doubt but you have heard thereof, and that it is not necessary for me to make a particular description of her. I have heard marvellous things spoken of her youth, and though I knew her not till she was well advanc'd in years, the charms which I perceiv'd in her person were so extraordinary, and that I easily believ'd that what was said of her, came far short of the truth: her Eyes and her Hair were black, her Skin most delicate and white, her proportion the exactest in the world, and her gait in walking, her deportment, her discourse and all her actions seem'd to have a charm altogether supernatural, and gain'd her more hearts than she had a desire to be Mistress of; she had a lively brisk wit, but prudent and moderate withal, sweet and severe by intervals, according to the persons, and the occasions: her inclinations were noble, her courage great and lofty, which occasion'd some

to accuse her of so much ambition, as to have approv'd the last intentions of *Stilicon*, if not to have been the encourager and promoter thereof: her Beauties had not attain'd to their perfection when she came to *Constantinople*, but in a few years they appear'd in all their glory. And you may well imagine, that in a Court where there were so many persons capable to know and feel their power, that they produc'd quick and notable effects. Certain it is, that in a short time the fair *Serena* became the object of the most noble passions; and probably there might be several persons, illustrious both for their Birth and Virtue, that sigh'd for her; yet by reason of the disproportion of their fortune to hers, they covered their love with a respectful silence. But among all her admirers, *Stilicon*, *Arbogastus* and *Ruffinus*, having receiv'd the same wound, did not conceal it with the same care, nor with the same success. And whether it were that the only merit of the Princess had inflam'd those hearts, where it is very probable that ambition had left no place for any other passion, or whether ambition joyning it self to their love made them look upon the Emperour's Neice as the highest mark they could propose to accomplish and complete their happiness, the fair eyes of *Serena* had made them Rivals in love almost at the same time that they became Competitors in favour. *Arbogastus* by the advantage of his Illustrious Descent, by the fame of his Actions, and out of a natural boldness which he had above the rest of men, was he that less feared the Dignity of the object which he look'd upon; and whereas through the greatness of his courage, and the good opinion which he had of himself, he imagin'd few things to be above his desert, he embark'd himself in that passion with larger hopes than any of his Rivals. *Stilicon* modestly consider'd what he was going about, and respecting the blood of *Trajan*, and the Emperour's descent, though his own were sufficiently illustrious: for a long time he did what lay in his power to suppress his presuming thoughts: but at length beholding with a jealous eye the boldness of *Arbogastus*, to whom he thought himself nothing inferiour, and confiding in the greatness of his services, and the Emperour's inclination which he knew would be favourable to him, he permitted himself to be guided by his love, which engag'd him to the service of the Princess far more deeply than his ambition, and verily believ'd that he was no otherwise prohibited than as he was a *Gaul*, to settle his thoughts and hopes upon her. As for *Ruffinus*, though the obscurity of his Birth ought to have abated his courage, yet trusting in the power which his nimble and flattering wit had over the Emperour, he was in hopes that he might make such use thereof, as to perswade him to approve his boldness before that of his Rivals, nor did he despair but that the same dexterity, and the assistance of fortune, that he might raise himself to such a degree in his Master's favour, that might counterbalance in the opinion of *Serena* those other advantages which they had over him.

Serena, as I said already, was bred up in the Palace by the Empress, who as well out of the consideration of her blood, as her deserts, look'd upon her rather as her own Daughter, than a Neice. All the Court ador'd her as well for her Virtue, as for her excellent Qualities. And besides those Lovers that already sigh'd for her, several other Princes, either the Emperour's Friends or Confederates sought in the glorious happiness of possessing her, the alliance and support of the Emperour. But whether it were for the tenderness of her years, or out of the little disposition which he found in her to the matches which he propos'd to her, or whether it were that he chose rather to bestow her upon some person, who by his Virtue and his Merit might aspire to that honour, he never shew'd any inclination to absent her from his person, yet still very honourably dismiss'd those had been sent to demand her. This proceeding of the Emperour toward foreign Princes, had rais'd and increas'd the courage, or rather presumption, of those Lovers whom *Serena* had at Court; for they judg'd by appearances likely enough, that notwithstanding the inequality of their Birth and Dignity, the Emperour would be always more favourable to them than to strangers. *Arbogastus*, as being the person who for the Nobility of his Descent, and the good opinion he had of himself and his great Actions; thought himself least distant from *Serena's* Quality, was the first that by his actions, and by his discourse, made the love which he had for her publickly known: I could never well understand in what manner he declar'd his passion, nor what the Princess said to him to abate his presumption; but I have been inform'd that she receiv'd the first marks thereof with a marvellous disdain, and that she gave him such a repulse as would have humbled any courage but his: and indeed for some days he appear'd very submissive before the Princess; but afterwards he resum'd his courage and his hopes, and giving himself entirely up to his love and his ambition, he made no question but that time and his services would overcome the greatest difficulties, and out of a confidence with which he easily deluded himself, he continued almost openly what he had begun with more circumspection:

Stilicon who had always look'd upon him as his Rival in fortune, observ'd him more particularly since he had confirm'd his suspicion of the truth by his Actions, and not wanting Spies near *Serenz*, for the interest of his Love, he not only observ'd what was evident to best part of the Court, but afterwards he was inform'd more secretly that *Arbogastus* had spoken to *Serenz* concerning his affection, and that she had receiv'd him very disjointly in her discourse. On the one side, the presumption of his Rival, so little answering his hopes, gave him no small satisfaction; nor was he a little glad to understand that *Serenz* had receiv'd the knowledge of his love with such evident marks of anger and reluctance. On the other side his fortune made him distrustful; for as he knew that in Birth he might be inferior to *Arbogastus*, though it were not a thing certainly agreed upon; and that in the Glory of his Actions he had at that time no advantage over him, he fear'd with probability enough a fortune equal to his own, and believ'd that he was to go another way to deal with such a haughty disposition as the Princess's was. It was not but that for his person he knew he was more comely than any of the *Gauls*, and observ'd by many signs that the Emperour's inclinations were favourable to him. But this thought with which he might flatter himself with reason enough, did not sufficiently secure him from that which he had to fear in a design which he look'd upon as a great enterprize; nor could all the opinion he had of his own merit, or of his person, hinder him from acting with a circumspection, full of respect, in a business that concern'd the chief repose and quiet of his life. By reason of this fear which his love had caus'd in him, he would not speak a word for a long time, or if he expressed himself any way, it was only in looks and sighs, whose language might have been easily understood by a person whose inclinations had been more acquainted with love, than those of *Theodosius's* Niece. Perhaps he had been contented for some time to have used no other language, if the presumption of his Rival had not inspir'd him with more boldness than he could draw from his own courage, and caus'd him impatiently to suffer, that another should so publickly own that which he conceal'd as a crime. Already for the merit of his person, through his obliging diligence, and by means of a compliance full of respect, he was become more acceptable to her than any other person in the Court. And as there were none over whom he had not very great advantages, in regard that *Serena* had an excellent wit, a lofty courage, and a true value for merit, and also a great respect to the thoughts and inclinations of the Emperour, she seem'd therefore for those reasons to give him the precedency above all that ever came into her presence, and entertain'd with most kindness.

This great Emperour liv'd in his Court with a great deal of familiarity and courtesie, so that besides the peace which reign'd among the people, he had introduc'd several Sports and Divertisements: but he took the care himself to appoint them, and to make the matches wherein he often took his lot, and where his presence begat the greatest occasions of gladness. He resolv'd one day to walk with all the Imperial Family, and the principal Officers of the Court to a House that *Valentinian* had built, and which he himself had magnificently finish'd, not above two hours riding distant from *Constantinople*, and being in the strength and flower of his age, he left the Chariots to the Ladies, and generally rode a Horseback himself. Particularly being mounted that day, all the Court was mounted with him, composing the most magnificent and pompous Guard of the Emperour's Chariot and the rest of the Chariots that attended, that ever was seen in the world. Among the rest *Stilicon*, *Arbogastus* and *Ruffinus* mounted upon stately Steeds, and magnificently habited, displayed their pomp in *Serenz's* sight: but because she rode in the Emperour's Chariot, they contented themselves only with publick complements, as they could come near the Seat of the Chariot. And *Arbogastus* himself, though more rash than the rest, durst not declare to her otherwise than by his looks what he had in his heart.

But when that noble company was arriv'd at the House, and were walking in a very fair Garden, while the Collation prepared for them was making ready, *Stilicon* and *Arbogastus* who equally waited for that opportunity, at one and the same time took the Princess by the hand to lead her: and *Ruffinus* who was more close, though less bold; yet had done the same had he found the opportunity favourable, seeing himself prevented retir'd another way, and shortly after went to the Emperour who was walking in another Alley, with another part of the company. The two Rivals cast a look one upon another, which shew'd their indignation: and if they had not that satisfaction from *Serenz's* entertainment, which they might have expected had she had more freedom; however they had the satisfaction of equally spoiling one another's design: nor was it so slight, but that it made amends for some part of their discontent. As they could not speak to the Princess but of things which were far distant from what they had in their minds, they had much ado to

hold out the discourse; though *Stilicon* more wise than *Arbogastus*, made use of the advantage of his wit, to quit himself of it as he was accustomed: and for that their thoughts were always opposite, out of the diskindness they had for one another, it was no easie thing for them to reduce themselves to that complacency, which by her pretence she seem'd to command them. *Serena* who shun'd the troublesome discourse of *Arbogastus*, whose love was already known to her, was more delighted in *Stilicon's* company, which she was pleas'd to let him observe in her eyes when he first accosted her: but if that made him any thing glad, he was sensible soon after of a more pleasing joy, when *Arbogastus* was sent for by the Emperour, who desired to speak with him: and that that haughty Rival who to obey his orders, which his ambition at other times coveted, but then his love deemed cruel, was forced to leave his competitor, yet not without manifesting in his looks, how much he resent'd his misfortune. But if vexation appeared in his face, gladness at the same time overspread the countenance of *Stilicon*, and that so visibly that the Princess having observ'd it, out of the confidence that she had put in him in some particular affairs, could not chuse but manifest the thoughts which she had of it: *Metbinks*, said she, *you are not so much troubled as you should be for Arbogastus's absence, nor does the emulation that is between you, in relation to the Emperour's favour, give you any disturbance to see him peculiarly called away.* *I* confess, replied *Stilicon*, *that without any trouble I behold that effect of Arbogastus's good fortune: and as it is not the favour of the Emperour, at how high a price soever I value it, that I care to dispute with him, I shall never be disturbed to see him near the Emperour upon that score. You make me admire at this discourse,* (carelessly replied the Princess, whereby he might discern that she misdoubted the truth) *for I do not believe that there is any thing of greater importance, that can be disputed between ye, than the favour of Theodosius. You know however* (said *Stilicon* fixing his eyes upon the ground) *that Arbogastus has more than one pretence: and you may believe that he will not have more Rivals in the fortune, which he can expect from the favours of the Emperour, than in the honour which he has to serve you.*

Serena, though she were the daughter of the Emperours brother, yet was the daughter of a private person only, born at a time when the Empire was not in their family: nor was it a thing unheard of in the Empire, nor without example to see the Emperours favourites Court, and marry their near relations and kindred, and sometimes their own Sisters and Daughters. But *Serene* having a high spirit, and knowing her self to be descended from *Trajan* before *Theodosius* came to the imperial dignity, she could not endure that persons who were not born to reign, or of parents who had worn the regal diadem, should talk to her of love or pretend to enjoy her: and therefore though for the amiable qualities which she saw in *Stilicon*, and for his more respectful behaviour, her inclinations were more favourable to him than to *Arbogastus*; they did not proceed so far as to make her effect in him that which she detested in the *Gaul*, nor yet to suffer her to endure without disdain and some kind of anger, that publick manifestation of his love. The commotions which it rais'd in his mind, might have been observed by the choleric colour of his face, had *Stilicon* looked upward: but the fear which possess'd him that he had displeas'd the Princess, made him keep his eyes fixed upon the ground. And *Serena* having walked for some time with looking upon him, striving with her passion to hinder it from breaking out, against a person so beloved of the Emperour, whom she had also an esteem for her self, and who perhaps had not said enough to deserve her anger; *I did not believe*, said she at length, *that what you have observed in Arbogastus, and which you know displeas'd me; had given you the presumption to imitate him. Nor have I imitated him*, said the Amorous *Stilicon*, *for though I have suffered more than he, while he has declared himself the profess'd lover of Serena, and spoken in publick of his love to us and to the whole Court, or to say more truly to the Emperour and the Empress in our hearing and the hearing of all the Empire, I am still contented to adore without speaking, to sigh in secret, and to burn without opening my lips to make any complaint. If you have done it hitherto*, replied the Princess, *you ought to do it as long as you live, nor do I see any thing to the contrary, why you should now dispencc with that respect which you have hitherto paid me. That which you have done me the honour to tell me*, replied *Stilicon*, *has drawn from my lips the confession of a trash which I cannot conceal, having so seasonable an opportunity to disclose it: nor was I the master of a passion, that transported me contrary to my intention, but if by some few words, whereby I did not think to wound the respect I owe you, I committed a crime that does deserve your anger, I am ready to undergo what punishment you shall please to ordain me, nor is there any so severe, to which I will not submit without repining.*

Stilicon utter'd these words with a behaviour so submissive and passionate, that it was hard for the Princess to preserve all her Anger entire: Yet being unwilling by pardon to give him liberty to pursue what he had begun, taking the middle way between the two extremes,

tremes, and observing a moderation to be wondred at in a person of her Age, *I have no other punishment to ordain you,* said she, *but that you no more commit the same offence that you have done this day, and that if you do not desire that I should have the same thoughts for you as I have for Arbogastus, I advise you not to provoke them by a behaviour answerable to his: at least while Arbogastus speaks, I may be permitted to sigh,* said Stilicon, *and while my heart endures for you all that his can feel, you will not forbid my eyes from telling you, what the mouth of the presumer shall insolently publish to the whole Court. I cannot tell what his vaunts are there,* said the Princess very smartly, *but his Example is so bad to follow in all things, that once more I advise you not to imitate it:* and concluding these words she turned toward the Ladies that followed her, and joyning her self to the rest of the company, she gave him no farther opportunity to pursue his discourse: nor had *Arbogastus*, though he accosted her when all the company was united together, any more liberty to speak to her all that day but in publick. When the Collation was set upon the Table, in a magnificent Room at one end of the Garden, and that the Empress and *Serena* were ready to sit down, as the Princess was looking about, to give her Gloves to some person to hold according to her custome, *Arbogastus* and *Stilicon* both at the same time presented themselves ready to receive them; but she believing them both equally guilty would give them to neither: but seeing *Ruffinus* coming toward her in the posture of a lover that crav'd the same favour, without any farther scruple she put them into his hands. *Arbogastus* cast a furious look upon *Ruffinus*, not daring to do more, knowing his reputation with the Emperour: but *Stilicon* who stood next the Princess, whispering to her over the shoulder, so that no body could hear him; *I cannot tell Madam,* said he, *whether you have favoured the most innocent: but I am very much deceived if he be not as guilty as the rest. If it be so,* said the Princess blushing, *I had rather learn it from your mouth than from his, and you are ignorant perhaps of the kindness which he receives by your means, in doing for him that which all his life time, he durst not have presum'd to do for himself.*

She concluded these words with a countenance, sufficiently disdainful to make *Stilicon* understand, that he had but more displeas'd her: and her displeasure was such, that all the company observed it in her looks, and which she could not forget all the rest of the day, though there were none that knew the cause. But after the Collation was ended, the Princess calling for her Gloves, *Ruffinus* went to her and presented them with a behaviour full of submission and respect. She received them courteously, but remembring what *Stilicon* had told her concerning *Ruffinus*, and because she observed in his looks something of that passion, which *Stilicon* had perswaded her to believe, she received them very carelessly, and with some symptomes of disgust, which the apprehensive and nearly concern'd *Ruffinus* easily perceived. He was troubled at it for some time, but recollecting himself shortly after, and beholding her with a look that might easily convince her of the truth; *Shall I be so unhappy Madam,* said he, *to see you repent of the honour you have done me, and would you give that satisfaction to persons who are so concern'd at the discouragement they have thereby received? Neither have I done any thing for which I am obliged to repent,* replied the Princess, *nor do I know any person who can concern himself therein, or to whom I owe any satisfaction: However I make no question,* replied *Ruffinus*, *that Stilicon and Arbogastus may have beheld my good fortune with envy, and though you owe them no satisfaction, they may presume to pretend to it, since they are so confident as to make known their affections for you, while others are careful to conceal them from the whole world.* These words confirm'd *Serena* in the truth of what *Stilicon* had told her, and because *Ruffinus* was less in her esteem than the other two, though at that time through the favour of the Emperour, his fortune was not inferiour to theirs, beholding him with all the disdain that an imperfect knowledge could create; *I cannot tell,* said she, *what thoughts they have for me, but if they have any such as may be displeasing to me, neither the persons whom you name, nor any other person in the Court, ought to be so bold as to let me know it, and you cannot do me a better piece of service, than to advise them to conceal them for ever from me. Since you command me, I will obey you,* said *Ruffinus*, *but I fear I am too much suspected by them already. You!*—— replied the Princess, looking upon him with disdain, and without saying any more, she went away from him, when *Arbogastus*, who was got near while they were discoursing, and heard the last words, intercepting her in her passage just as she had turn'd her back to *Ruffinus*. *Never doubt it, Madam,* said *Arbogastus*, *Ruffinus is shrewdly suspected by us; nor will we bear the advice of a person whom we know so much concern'd as he is. For you,* (said the Princess very disdainfully) *this is not the first time that you have been wanting in your respect; nor is it the first time that your behaviour has wrought that effect upon me that it ought to do.* She spoke these words so loud, and made so little stop in pronouncing them, that *Arbogastus* had neither liberty nor courage to pursue his discourse; and the Princess being got near the Emperors, kept close

close to her all the rest of the day, so much displeas'd that she could not dissemble her vexation.

The Empress, who by many signs observed it, when they were in the Chariot together upon their return to the City, demanded the cause, and the Princess seeking to excuse her self for some time, seeing she could not avoid it without displeasing her, and expecting from her some assistance against those persons whom the favour of the Emperour made more presumptuous than she desired, told her the whole truth, and gave her to understand in a discourse full of resentment, the trouble that she suffered by reason of the boldness of her Lovers. The Empress, who was a good and virtuous Princess, did no way condemn her anger, nor the little inclination which she had kindly to entertain the thoughts of Love; but she gave her not that assistance which she expected; and having manifested to her how well she approv'd her spirit, and her unwillingness to debase her self, she let her know withal that she did not receive so great an injury as she imagined, in what she complain'd of; and that of the three persons whose passion she was either acquainted with, or suspected, the one was born a Prince, and the other two, by the favour of the Emperour, were not only in a condition to aspire to great things, but were already in a better estate than the Emperour before *Gratian* sent for him out of *Spain* to associate him in the Empire; that she might do that which became her Dignity and her Virtue, without being transported, by expecting the event of the Emperour's intentions, who, she might assure her self, would not bestow her upon any of his Favourites, nor encourage their presumption, if he had not a design to advance her to such a degree with which his Neice might be satisfied without thinking her self undervalued. This discourse of the Empress, and the instructions which she gave her besides, made *Serena* resolve to hearken more favourably to her Lovers, at least not to look upon their loves as so great a disturbance, and such a great injury to her Dignity as she had thought it had been, and to leave the care of her Destiny to the Emperour, without being so much offended as she had been, had she only followed her own inclinations.

This resolution spared her much of that disquiet to which she was exposed by the perseverance of her three Servants, who very diligently waited upon her: but they managed their business differently; for while *Arbogastus* made his love publicly known, not caring to keep it private neither from the Court, nor the Princess, *Stilicon* govern'd himself with so much respect and circumspection, that neither the Princess could be offended at his behaviour, though she saw well enough the pursuit of his love, nor the Court take any knowledge thereof that might displease the Princess: And for *Ruffinus*, he knowing the advantages which his Rivals had over him, was more reserv'd than either, and carried himself toward the Princess in such a manner, that while he discovered to her all his passion, he neither said, nor did any thing which might not be attributed to his respect only, and by his address he made it his business to let her see, that he was less confident than *Stilicon*; and at the same time endeavoured to lay before her all the insolency of *Arbogastus* to render him odious to her. However, he was certain that *Stilicon*, who by means of several rare qualities, appear'd more admirable in his person than *Arbogastus*, and in all things to be prefer'd before *Ruffinus*, was the person of all the three whom she lov'd best, or at least the person to whom her favours most inclin'd; and though for a long time she could not resolve to shew him any kindness, nor possibly dispose her self so much as to conceive any affection for him, she made a most remarkable difference between the entertainment she gave him, corresponding indifferently well with him, that his Rivals might perceive 'twas he was the most fortunate. *Stilicon* made an admirable use of the advantage which he had over them, and feigning to be ignorant thereof, out of a modesty that was very pleasing to the Princess, but taking all occasions himself to make known his own love, rather by his Actions, and by all the most obliging diligence that his hopes could infuse into him, than by his discourse: at length he played his game so well, that he oblig'd her to suffer his discourse, or at least to hear him speak without being offended. Besides *Serena's* inclinations, all things else were very successful at the beginning; for setting aside that he was more acceptable to the Empress than his Rivals, and to all persons that had any power over the Princess's disposition, the Emperour, who lov'd him better than *Arbogastus*, and esteem'd him above *Ruffinus*, took notice of his love without any offence, and a little while after testin'd by many signs, that in that very affair his thoughts inclin'd to favour him, rather than either of his Rivals, though he well considered the valour of *Arbogastus*, and that *Ruffinus's* wit was extremely pleasing to him: but he had not leisure then to declare any thing farther; nor the Lovers of *Serena* to dispute their affections at the Court. For just about this time the Eastern Empire was troubled at the strange revolutions that happened in the Westera

Western Empire, the rehearsal whereof I shall briefly run over, because there are few persons in the world that are ignorant thereof.

You know most illustrious Queens, that while *Theodosius* lived at *Constantinople*, from whence his renown flew through all the world, *Gratian* by whom he had been associated into the Empire, was adored at *Rome* for his excellent virtues: and very honourably and prudently governed *Italy*, *Spain*, *France* and other Provinces which fell to his share: and which at this day remain under the power of *Honorius*. Certainly that Prince was adorn'd with all noble qualities; but though his valour had rendred him formidable to his Enemies, yet he was not fear'd by his subjects, who taking advantage of a slight pretence, that he had entertained some of the *Alain* Troops to be of his Liteguard, the souldiers that were in *France* rebelled, and after they had committed great disorders, casting about who to pitch upon for their Captain, they chose *Maximus* then in *Gallia*, and proclaimed him Emperour.

Maximus was a person truly endowed with excellent abilities, as well for war as peace, and it is reported that he never sought that dignity, and that he accepted it very unwillingly: but when he was chosen he neglected nothing to establish himself, but resolved to try the utmost of his fortune. To this purpose gathering forces together from all parts, he made himself master of a good part of *Gallia*, resolving to reduce the rest, and so to march for *Italy* to dethrone *Gratian*: but that Emperour being advertised thereof, was nothing dismay'd, but halting into *Gallia* with such forces as he had ready, by his presence had reduced his affairs into so good a condition, that the fortune of the Rebels began to change countenance, when his Enemies betook themselves to stratagems and treason, which was much more favourable to them than open hostility: to which purpose having spread a report in the Camp, that the Empress, whom he had left in some frontier town of *Italy*, was coming to him, and counterfeited letters in pursuance of their treachery, that gave him an account of her march, and the places through which she intended to pass. The Prince ill advis'd, and submitting rather to his love than his prudence and reason, going to meet his Spouse with some few Troops of horse; fell into an ambush near *Lyons* a famous City of the *Gauls*, where the perfidious *Andragathius* Lieutenant to *Maximus*, attended his coming and most inhumanely slew him. After the death of *Gratian*, a Prince of noble and renowned memory, *Maximus* and the parricide *Andragathius*, to whom he had given the command of the greatest part of his forces, having slain or disperd all those that had followed *Gratian*, or were rais'd by him in *Gallia*, march'd into *Italy* thinking to surprize the young *Valentinian* brother of *Gratian*, whom his brother a little before had made his partner in the Western Empire. They found all the passes free, by reason that *Valentinian* was but in a very bad condition, and having with the terrour of their victories overcome all resistance that made head against him, they advanced toward *Rome* without any opposition: whereupon *Valentinian* being dismay'd, and not finding himself able to sustain their power; he forsook *Rome* and *Italy*, and sought for succour and sanctuary in the Arms of the great *Theodosius*, who was become the refuge of the miserable, the support of the good, and the terrour of the wicked.

Before his Arrival, the news came of the fatal and lamentable death of *Gratian*, of which the generous and grateful *Theodosius* was so deeply sensible, that with all the grandeur of his soul, he had much ado to support so great a misfortune, with a moderation answerable to his dignity and vertue. In short, the loss of so great a Prince much more deplorable than if he had dyed a natural death, a Prince endowed with so many excellent qualities, and to whom he was beholding for the place which he held in the Throne of the *Cæsars*; did no less move him than the loss of a Father, a dear and beloved Son, or some other person to whom he had been bound, in stricter tyes of tenderness and affection could have done: and after he had spent many days in tears and lamentations, which drew all the Court to mourn, he turned all his thoughts to revenge his Benefactor, and had given orders to muster up forces from all parts, and to march against all those inhumane parricides, with all the power of his Empire, When the young and unfortunate *Valentinian* arriv'd, despoiled of his Dominions, he did not receive him as a person chac'd from his Territories, and forsaken by fortune; but as a brother whom he most entirely lov'd, or rather as his Emperour, and as a person to whom he would restore that dignity, which he had received from his Father: so that it was not by a kind reception, and in bare words of consolation, that he only sought to assuage his grief; but after he had paid him all the honours that his grief could suffer, without losing a moment of time, which was to be employed in levying and assembling his forces together, he let him soon see that he was in a posture to serve him; and solliciting him himself to the revenge of his Brother, and the recovery of his

his Empire, he undertook that famous expedition with him: and departing from *Constantinople*, he marched toward *Italy* with a flourishing Army. Then it was that the three Lovers of *Serenz*, were forced to absent themselves from her, to go where their duty obliged them: no question but they went with a sorrow little different, but equally glad, that every one of the three at the same time, beheld the departure of his Rival, and that they were not exposed to a misfortune that was not common to all, seeing they were all deprived of making any advantages of one anothers absence. They had every one hopes that in a war of such importance, they might not only find occasions to purchase honour; but by their famous Actions to open a way for the enjoyment of *Serena*, and their hopes were so much the greater, in regard that *Arbogastus* and *Stilicon* had the highest commands in the war, and that *Ruffinus* being bound to be near the Emperour's person, was called to all Councils and employed in all important Embassies.

I cannot tell particularly, nor is it necessary for me to relate, in what manner they took their leaves of the Princess, but it is most likely that *Stilicon's* farewell was received most favourably, in regard she had a higher esteem for him than for the rest: and that then she suffered him to declare his affection. However it were, they were compelled to depart all the same day, but they did not long continue to march together: For the Emperour understanding that *Maximus* to keep him from entering into *Italy*, had shut up all the Passes of the *Alpes*; and had lodged his Forces in the streights of the Mountains, and that so strongly, that it was impossible to force them; was resolved to make a diversion that might compel him to draw off his Army, and to that purpose he sent part of his Forces by Sea to land in *Italy*, under the command of *Arbogastus*, in whose valour he very much confided. *Stilicon* being jealous of him more for his Love than his Ambitions sake, though his other passion did not altogether smother that, had envied that employment, if the Emperour, who confided no less in him than in his Rival, had not honoured him with another that was no less considerable, by dividing his Army by land into two bodies, and giving the conduct of one part thereof, not inferiour in number to that which he kept himself, with orders to attempt a pass in one part, while he marched to another place upon the same design. As the issue of this war has been publick to all the world, I will not abuse your patience by rehearsing the particulars: only I must tell you, that the famous Emperour, accomplished to admiration what he had reserved for himself to do where he commanded in person, and that he was served to his satisfaction, by those two Captains to whom he had given the command of his other forces. And indeed *Maximus* himself gave him as great advantages as he could desire; for dreading the power of the Army, sent by sea under the conduct of *Arbogastus*, and fearing to be assailed on that part with the greatest force, he drew off the best part of his Army from the passes which they guarded, for the perfidious *Andragathius* to head, and oppose himself against *Arbogastus*, whereby he weakened his party that lay to defend the passes in such a manner, that *Theodosius* on the one side and *Stilicon* on the other, hardly met any resistance capable to oppose them.

Arbogastus undertaking *Andragathius*, obtained considerable advantages over him in all the engagements that he had with him, and constrained him at length to flee before him, after he had sustained many notorious losses. *Stilicon* also about the same time, meeting with *Victor* the Son of *Maximus*, whom his Father had trusted with a good part of his Forces, while he opposed the Emperour with the rest, fought him with so much valour and good fortune, that *Victor's* Army was totally defeated and he himself slain in the field: whereby all the passes became so free and open, that *Stilicon* advanced with all his forces to that part of the Country, where *Maximus* lay to oppose *Theodosius*, who upon the coming of this additional succour, and the vigorous onset which he gave upon *Maximus*, put him into that fear, that he durst not hazard the least skirmish: but at length forsaking all the passes which he had so well guarded some days before; he retired in disorder and shut himself up in *Aquilegia*.

The Emperour who had no time to lose followed him close, besieged him, and so hardly distressed him on all sides, that the same souldiers who some time before had proclaimed him Emperour, seeing no hopes of their Lives but in the clemency of *Theodosius*, and willing to repair their infidelity by such a change; seiz'd upon the Tyrant, and presented him in fetters to the Conquerour. All his clemency could not move him at that time, nor could it prevail for the life of a *Barbarian*, who not content to have usurped the Empire, had so perfidiously and cruelly slain that very Emperour, from whom *Theodosius* had obtained the imperial Diadem: and therefore not being able to give any denial to the demand of his own justice, nor the young *Valentinian's* fury, who required satisfaction for his Brother's blood, he would not however deliver him up to the tortures that he deserved, but requested

Valentinian

Valentinian to be contented with his head. The cruel *Andragathius* being inform'd of his end, neither hop'd nor sought for pardon, but ended his miserable days by casting himself headlong into the Sea. After the death of *Maximus* and *Andragathius* all *Italy* was at peace, as also were all the rest of the Imperial Territories; for the Rebels relying upon the clemency of *Theodosius*, every where laying down their Arms, the famous Emperour, in the midst of the peoples Acclamations march'd directly to *Rome*, there to settle the young *Valentinian* in the Throne of his Father and his Grandfather. The Empire of the West was no less then at his devotion than the Empire of the East; for besides that he was called thither by the consent of the people, *Valentinian* instead of opposing him, did not presume so much as to murmur at it. Most certain it is, that there were several persons that advis'd *Theodosius* to keep both the Empires, and that upon grounds solid and specious enough. It was never known to be *Stilicon's* judgment; but for *Arbogastus*, he press'd him to it with all earnestness: and for *Ruffinus*, he omitted nothing that he could imagine of force to persuade him. But the Generous and Faithful Emperour hearkening to their counsels with disdain, and rejecting them with anger, brought the young Prince as a victorious Triumpher to *Rome*, where he established him in the Throne of the *Cæsars* in full authority; and because that by reason of his youth he was unapt for Government, he took the pains to instruct him as if he had been his Son, and with admirable diligence reform'd what the corruption of the age, and the disorders of the War had introduc'd of bad and vicious customs into *Rome* and *Italy*; he employed the force of his Arms, and the terrour of his name to reduce all things to peace and quietness, and would not leave him till he saw him in a condition capable to maintain himself without help in a Dignity equal to his own. After he had done all these things in the view, and to the admiration of all the world, he took leave of the Emperour, and left *Italy* and *Rome*, and full of Glory return'd to *Constantinople*.

During this Renowned Expedition, the three Rivals, as well in the Emperour's favour, as the love of the Princess his Neice, had sought by all the ways imaginable to facilitate the enjoyment of her to themselves. *Stilicon* had signaliz'd his Valour by the defeat of *Maximus's* Son, and by many other Noble Deeds, insomuch that we may say that the Emperour was in some measure beholding to him for his success. *Arbogastus* had beaten *Andragathius* at Sea in several Engagements, and might boast himself to have had a notable share in the ruine of *Maximus*. But though *Ruffinus* had not perform'd such famous Actions as either of his two Rivals, he had stuck close to the Emperour with his counsel; and it was said that by vertue of his correspondencies and contrivances he had facilitated the reducing of *Italy*, and had in part been the occasion of the revolt of *Maximus's* Troops; so that he returned to *Constantinople* with very favourable hopes, though perhaps not so kind as those of his Rivals; nor did *Stilicon* seem to presume more than *Arbogastus*. By the Emperour's indulgence they had a great share in the Triumphant Reception that the people gave him; and as *Serena*, who well understood the affection and esteem that *Theodosius* had for them, was no less ignorant of the increase of their late acquir'd fame, she entertain'd them very obligingly, and forc'd a kindness for them to whom she had the least inclination. Certain it is, that her carriage was such toward *Stilicon*, that it plainly appear'd that she esteem'd him above the rest, and it was afterwards well known, though in prudence she disssembled it, that she was much concern'd for the Honour which he receiv'd in the War, and was not a little joyful for his return. However, she made but little difference in the Reception which she gave to all the three: so that if *Stilicon* had any advantage above the rest, there was only something to be observ'd more sweet and pleasing, when *Stilicon*, than when either of the other two came into her presence. But soon after he had reason to believe, that those happy beginnings of his good fortune, with which he had flattered himself before his departure, had not prov'd false to him during his absence, and that though he could not entirely glory to be below'd by the Princess, he might at least conjecture by all manner of signs that the value which she had for him was far different from that which she had for the rest of his Competitors. He had ground enough to be confirm'd in that opinion by several discourses which he had with her; and the very next day after the Emperour's arrival, having happily an opportunity to discourse her in her Closet without any interruption, ushering in with his passionate looks that which he had to say to her: *Shall I dare to hope, Madam.* (said he with his eyes fix'd upon the ground) *that the pardon which you granted to my presumption before my departure, may still continue after my return? And may I not now make this farther protestation, that during an absence wherein we have not wanted employment, and during an Expedition that has been too successful to the Emperour, not to have found some work for those who had the honour to follow him, my thoughts were still employed in*

the precious remembrance of your Beauty? I dare sincerely avow it, if you will but give me leave; and I will tell you yet something which is no more than truth, that in all those enterprizes that my Duty made me undertake, it was only your favour that I sought, or at least, I thought on nothing more than to render my self thereby worthy of the honour to serve you. Arbogastus, (replied the Princess, smiling) told me just the same; and I think I answered him, that ambition and the desire of Glory were sufficiently predominant in his mind to carry him to Enterprizes of a higher nature. This answer, replied Stilicon, might be fit enough for Arbogastus, in whom certainly ambition prevails over all his passions: But as for myself, though I really affect Glory, and that I am of opinion that that I ought to love it, to the end I may be in your esteem; and though my courage is not incapable of a noble ambition, yet on the other side it is as true, that all my other passions submit to love, or rather, are sacrific'd to love in such a manner, that they have hardly left in my heart any signs of their first impressions. This truth, Madam, is more difficult for me to prove upon this occasion than at another time; for as I find the noblest end that my ambition can aim at, and a transcendent subject to satisfy my love of Glory, in the honour of being your Adorer, and of being own'd by you, I cannot say, that in adoring you, I am the less in love with honour, or that I am not ambitious; but I can safely make you this protestation, that love alone governs my Actions, and that it is love alone to which I am entirely devoted. To which soever of your passions we are engag'd for what you have done for the good of the Empire, and for the service of the Emperour, replied the Princess very bravely, you may believe, Stilicon, that the cause of such worthy effects cannot be odious; and without farther examination, you know that I am too much concern'd for the honour of the Emperour, not to esteem those famous Actions whereby you have so much contributed thereto; and therefore I may truly inform you, that few persons have heard that which Renown has publish'd thereof, with a greater joy than I my self received; and that you have few Friends who are better satisfied with the effects of your courage. That which I have done, added Stilicon, is not sufficiently considerable to have given any great satisfaction to those persons who have the goodness to be concern'd therein; but were it true that they did merit any credit or esteem with you, if you look upon them only as you are interest'd for the good of the Empire, and the service of the Emperour, Arbogastus is no less happy than I; for as his Actions are no less famous, nor of less importance than mine, he must have an equal advantage with me in your thoughts. 'Tis true, (replied Serena very readily) that I have payed that justice which I thought was due to the famous Deeds of Arbogastus, and that it is not in my power to deny desert that esteem which belongs to it. "I am not troubled, replied Stilicon, that the Emperour takes so much notice "of Arbogastus's service: and as I do not pretend to rob him of any part of his Honour, I "never interposed for the smallest boon that he expected from the Emperour's Gratitude. "But I confess, Madam, in relation to your self, I have not the same equity; for if it might "be permitted me, I could wish that you would look upon my Services more favourably "than those of Arbogastus. When you desire that which is unjust, (replied the Princess, smiling) you must not complain if you obtain not your desire; and where it is not in the power "of the person to do it, it may not be perhaps less just to confess it to you. "Ah, Madam, (said "the amorous Stilicon, beholding her with a passionate look) and what injustice do you think "you shall do in preferring in your thoughts a person that adores you with all the respect "and all the humility with which we can look to Heaven, before a presumptuous person "that presently thinks himself worthy to love and serve you, and publishes the same to all "the world, as one that does not believe you to be a price equal to his ambition? It is "not necessary, replied Serena, that I should teach you the difference that I have made; for "without explaining my self any farther, I am apt to think that that you understand it well e- "nough; but in truth, Stilicon, since I must give you an answer to what you say, you will not be "over-happy should I prefer you before Arbogastus; for though I have a respect for some quali- "ties that make him worthy of respect, there are others which hardly permits me to endure him. "Ah, Madam, replied Stilicon, be pleas'd to take nothing from his merit, for the favour "which you shew me; but permit me to hope, that if the haughty carriage of Arbogastus "have displeas'd you, the submission of Rufinus, who under a feigned humility couches "an ambition greater than that of Arbogastus, may not work a contrary effect. He now "presumes as well as Arbogastus to profess himself a Lover of Serena; and though I may "say without an offence to modesty, that in all things he is inferiour to us both, he is now "in so much favour with the Emperour that he may advance his hopes as high as ei- "ther of us, and through the insolence that his fortune infuses into him, he makes no scrup- "ple of declaring as much in publick: Heaven is my witness, that I envy him not the fa- "vour of the Emperour, I could have done it before, and I should do it now, if, as I have "already said, Madam, I had not another passion in my Soul stronger than my ambition;

"but

“but for the honour of serving the Princess *Serena*—— For that, (said the Princess, interrupting him) if it be true that it be an honour to serve *Serena*, I advise you not to renounce the favour of *Theodosius*, which is no less necessary for the enjoyment of *Serena*, than for the obtaining any other fortune which you can expect at his hands. Do not wonder, said she, at what I say, observing in his looks some kind of surprize, it is not to prefer merit before fortune and virtue; but as you know there is no enjoying *Serena* but with the Emperor’s approbation, you may believe that she will never dispose of her self without his good liking, though he should leave me at my own liberty. Now you see what my inclinations are, and what are my intentions; and in short, to explain my self to you, with a confidence that perhaps may seem something too free, know that I esteem *Stilicon*, that I hate *Arbogastus*, and condemn *Ruffinus*. The amorous *Stilicon* was ravish’d with these last words of the Princess, and began to manifest in his eyes, before his lips could express it, the joy that transported him, when *Arbogastus* entred the Chamber, and presently after him *Ruffinus*.

The Mourning which all the Court was in for the Emperor *Gratian*, and which *Theodosius* carried rather in his heart than in his habit, together with his his natural modesty, had made him refuse the Triumphs and magnificent Honours that were prepar’d for him at *Constantinople*. But it could not hinder the people from doing all those things which they were capable to perform, to express their affection and loyalty towards him, together with their joy for his happy return, and the glorious success of his Arms; nor the Knights of the Court from contriving Matches for publick fights of Gallantry, very usual for some ages since, wherein they displayed even to envy their Magnificence, their Activity, and their concernment for the good fortune of Emperor; inso much that the Theatres and Hippodrom were fill’d with all those publick Divertisements that a flourishing and magnificent Court might abound in upon such occasions. I will not make you description thereof, for I am not to crowd things of that nature into this relation, only I must tell you there were not wanting all manner of ingenious and costly Scenes, running of Chariots, and Horse-races, Combats of all sorts, and at all Weapons, both a Horseshack, and a foot, and in short all that us’d to be seen at publick Spectacles. My Father, who was then among the young Knights, was one that did not signalize himself the least among them; and it was from him that I learn’d the chiefest particulars. But among all the rest, the Favourites of the Empire were more than ordinarily remarkable in the Colours of the Princess, and bearing upon their Arms and Furniture the character of her name, and all sorts of curious Impreses and Mottos, which might denote their devotion for her service. *Stilicon* as he was very ready and magnificent withal, signaliz’d his activity in all sorts of Exercises, and shewed his Magnificence in his Furniture. Nor was there less in that of *Arbogastus*, nor did he less manfully behave himself in the Courses, and upon all occasions where vigour and activity were necessary. But *Ruffinus* acquitted himself but meanly, either of the one, or the other; for as he was less liberal than his Rivals, and less used to the Exercises of the Body, he did not pass at that assembly either for an Active or Magnificent. As he had a great judgment in all things, he very well discern’d his disadvantage, and though he could find no excuses for his miscarriage in the Courses, yet he endeavoured to pretend something for his Furniture, the means whereof he attributed to other causes than that of sparing. As for *Stilicon*, though he neither lov’d nor esteem’d *Ruffinus*, and that at that very time he found new occasions of disgust, beholding him apparel’d in *Serena’s* Colours, he was satisfied to see that his Rival had worn them to his own shame, and was unwilling to heap too much discontent at one time. But *Arbogastus* was not so moderate; for the hatred which he already had against him, being now augmented by an accession of fresh malice to see him wear the Princess’s Colours, and to presume also to crowd himself in for a Champion, he could not dissemble the joy which he had for his ill success, so that he omitted nothing to make it known to all the world. And therefore as *Ruffinus* was ill belov’d by the Court, it entred presently into *Arbogastus’s* thoughts, so that he could not conceal it from *Ruffinus* himself; and some few days after being together with him, *Stilicon*, and several others in the Princess’s Chamber, where were also present several Ladies of the Court, who were come to visit her, the discourse of the publick Sights, which was then the entertainment of the company, being at an end, all the Ladies and the Knights that were present began to speak in the praise of *Stilicon* and *Arbogastus*, as well for the fair Courses which they had run, with a success little different, as for the magnificence of their Furniture. Though the commendations which they gave them were all their due, and that they had truly got all the honour of the Tourny. *Stilicon* heard the discourse very moderately and modestly: but *Arbogastus* not being able to dissemble his thoughts, and not being willing to let slip that opportunity of discovering what lay brooding in his mind: after he had beheld *Ruffinus* with
a smile

a smile of derision; *It was a shameful thing*, said he, *of any Champion who had the honour to wear the Princess's colours, not to perform something worthy to be taken notice of. I cannot tell whether I myself did my duty, Stilicon I am sure acquitted himself very well: but Ruffinus, of whom you speak not a word, has so far excell'd us all, both for the gallantry of his courſes, and the magnificence of his furniture, and has so highly honoured the colours of the Princess which he wore as well as we, that I fear he will now be the only person, who must henceforward enjoy all her favour. I do not believe,* (replied Ruffinus changing his colour) *that I have done any discredit to the colours of the Princess, or possibly that I am less worthy the honour of wearing them: For if it be true, that in Tilting you have an advantage over me; I have perhaps the advantage over you, in other things no less important than Tilting. For counsel and treaty I must confess, said Arbogastus, that I must yield to you: But I desire you to stick close to your Gown, and not to tilt any more.*

At these words, considering the gesture with which they were uttered, all the respect which that noble Company had to the reputation of Ruffinus, could not hinder them from falling into a very great laughter, which instead of making Ruffinus any thing ashamed, assisted him to conceal the present confusion of his thoughts. Any other person but he might possibly have been nonplus'd, but he had a wit that was able to overcome greater difficulties than what he was then expos'd to: and using a method quite contrary to what any other person would have taken upon that occasion, and looking upon Arbogastus with a smile; *To tell you the truth*, said he, *it will be no great punishment to me, though I never tilt again: For I had rather be seen in the Emperours Closet than in the Lists. It would be to very good purpose,* replied Stilicon, *if in the Emperours closet you would wear the colours and characters of the Princess as you wore them to day, and that you were call'd to council as the Princess's champion. In whatsoever quality I may be call'd thither,* replied Ruffinus, *I shall never be ill received, nor shall I be wanting in my duty. And as the Emperour perhaps is no more ill satisfied in my services than in yours, the judgment that he may make between us, possibly will not be either to yours or the advantage of Arbogastus. I make no doubt* (said Arbogastus with the same behaviour as he had spoken before) *but the Emperour will pay that justice which he owes to your great merit, and the good opinion which he has of you, gives us sufficiently to understand, that great men cannot err in their choice. But for the Princess, I cannot tell whether she be altogether so just, and I question whether she be so well satisfied, in the honour which you have done to her colours, as the Emperour is satisfied in your services.*

Serenus, who in contemning Ruffinus loved Arbogastus never the better, was not more pleas'd to find the former so much thamed, as she was vexed at the presumption of the latter: and therefore undertaking the discourse with a design to humble him; *As the choice of my colours was free to any person*, said she, *I could not hinder them that were so minded from wearing them, but if it had been necessary for me to have been consulted, 'tis an even wager whether there had been any more than one person, to whom I would have granted that favour. Nor can I tell* (said Ruffinus immediately to Arbogastus smiling) *whether that award would have been so favourable to you as you imagine: for in my opinion 'tis neither you nor I, that the Princess would have honoured with her choice. Your opinion,* replied Arbogastus, *may not probably be so full of reasons, for though our merit and services are equal, there is a great difference in our birth. I confess* (said Stilicon very smartly) *I am not of the blood of Hector, but I much question whether there be in the world a nobler extraction, than that from whence I am descended: and for other things, I cannot tell whether the difference which is between us, be so much for your advantage.*

This answer of Stilicon wrought so upon the company, that Arbogastus was not a little abashed: And as among us, that pretended descent of the Gaulish Princes from the Son of Hector, has pass'd for an idle Chimera, it was no unpleasing thing to see them contemn in the person of Arbogastus, a man of an excessive pride, that to which in another Prince, descended from the same line, they would have born a great respect. However he prepared to give Stilicon an answer, and because he took those words from him, after another manner than he had done from Ruffinus, whom he despis'd; there was therefore some danger that a reply might have transported them, to a higher dispute than that of words, had not the Princess interpos'd, and us'd her Authority to hinder the farther pursuit of the discourse; She mistrusted however her power, to hinder the effects which it might produce: And though less than there pass'd, might have hurried two persons full of courage and valour, Rivals and Competitors in all things, to the worst of extremities; before they went out of the Chamber, she caus'd the Emperour to be acquainted therewith, who reconcil'd them the same day, forbidding them to quarrel upon any consideration whatever: and farther declar'd to Arbogastus with a stern authority, that he could not despise Ruffinus without displeasing

displeasing him, in condemning the esteem which he had for him.

From that time forward, *Ruffinus* understanding that of his two Rivals, one was better belov'd, and the other more respected than he, and fearing least in the end they might have the same advantage in the favour of *Theodosius* as they had in *Serena's* good opinion, instigated at the same time by his love, and by his ambition, though in the opinion of the world he was less addicted to Love than to Ambition, resolv'd to employ all the dexterity of his wit, to undermine as well their respect with the Princess, as their favour with the Emperour, though he forsook less trouble in his design against *Arbogastus*, than in what he meditated against *Stilicon*; and as they were persons of a different temper, he resolv'd to use a different method of proceeding against them: for *Arbogastus*, he saw well that he had not much to do to effect his business with *Serena*, finding by several signs that he was not all belov'd by her, but he knew him to be in good esteem with the Emperour, and likewise understood that the Emperour's approbation was sufficient to render him the enjoyment of *Serena*, and consequently to raise him to a higher degree of Honour. He was also of opinion, that it was not with *Serena*, but with *Theodosius* that he was to lay the foundation of his contrivance against him, not doubting but his fierce, boiling and tumultuous humour would furnish him with opportunities enough. For *Stilicon*, as he questioned not but that he was the best belov'd by *Serena*, and that in that regard he found he had a greater advantage over him, than in respect of the Emperour's favour; therefore believing it would be a difficult thing to prejudice him in the opinion of a just, prudent and apprehensive Emperour, a person so wise, and who did his Duty so exactly, he resolv'd to play his game against him with his Mistress, and with her to practise against him as he practis'd with the Emperour against *Arbogastus*. He hasten'd his design with all diligence, resolving, in the plot which he had, to ruine both, to make use of the one against the other, equally to serve his turn; hoping thereby not only a better success in his design, through the help which he should receive from them; but in the end, by the ill offices which they should reciprocally do one another, of which he would not fail to give them both a secret account, they would be transported to those extremities of passion and anger, in which they might both perish, by that means to rid himself of two formidable Competitors. To bring about this project he admirably disssembled the hatred which he had against them, and became so great a master of his passions, that for some days they could neither of them discern that he bore the least malice or spleen against them, or that he had any bad thoughts toward them. He began to hold a fairer correspondence with them than ever he had done, and in a short time after he gave them to understand by many signs that he desired their friendship; and they had the less reason to suspect him, because he had receiv'd the same commands from the Emperour as they had done, in point of reconciliation, who gave them to understand that they could not oblige him in any thing more, than in living peaceably together. *Arbogastus*, who was more courageous than subtil; and *Stilicon*, who as cunning and politick as he was, yet was more free hearted and plain dealing, had no distrust in the least of the bad intentions of *Ruffinus*, and how unwilling soever they were at first to entertain the testimonies of his feigned friendship, in time they suffered themselves to be deceiv'd, and to make him returns of true sincerity. However, when they were both together he behav'd himself but coldly, making them both believe that it was only for him in particular that he had such a peculiar kindness, and to take away all suspicion of holding any correspondence with his Rival. But when he found either of them alone, then it was that he discovered himself, or at least that he feigned to discover himself to them, and that he omitted nothing to persuade each of them apart how much he desired to unite himself, and joyn interest with him in particular for the ruine of his Competitor. Whatever contempt they had of his person, they saw that they were no more to despise his fortune; and that although even in the very judgment of the Emperour, he was much inferiour to them in all things, yet that with him he was in as great a reputation as any person in the Empire, and might glory to have no less than *Stilicon*, much more than *Arbogastus*. In short, he so behav'd himself that he wrought them into a belief of what he pretended, and so allured both one and t'other apart to think that if he was not intimately their friend, yet he was not their enemy: and when he saw himself in that forwardness, he began then to go on with the execution of his design, without losing any opportunity. And to this purpose, when he saw himself alone with *Arbogastus*, amusing him with a false confidence; "I confess, said he, that I know my self unworthy the affections of *Serena*, and that I am assur'd they are due to a person of greater merit than my self; but certain it is, that if I must renounce my hopes, I shall more willingly abjure them for your sake than for *Stilicon's*; and since I cannot be happy my self, I wish you may enjoy that good fortune to which I dare not

aspire, rather than he. Nevertheless, I clearly perceive that *Serena* has no more kindness for me than for you, and that *Stilicon* enjoys the sole preeminence, though with less merit than yours, and perhaps little superiour to mine. Shall we suffer this injustice to be done to our fortune, without using some endeavours to divert the effects? And shall we suffer this *Vandal* to easily to ravish from us a happiness which you better than he deserve, and of which I think my self no less worthy than himself: let us try, *Arbogastus*, let us try all that a just grief can infuse into us, to overturn the advantage which he has got over us; let us unite our Interests against a Rival that will be too happy, if we become unfortunate. And since that Love as well as War allows us to make use of all sorts of Weapons to distress our Enemies, let us employ against him all those that we can imagine may give us the victory.

In this manner did he incite *Arbogastus* upon every occasion that he could meet with: and the amorous *Gaul*, who was too apt to follow his incitements, and who look'd upon the advantages that *Stilicon* had with a jealousy that gave him but little repose, most willingly entred into the combination, and offered as much as he could desire to ruine their common Competitor. On the other side, when *Ruffinus* found an opportunity to be private with *Stilicon*, feigning before him the same assurance in point of Ambition, as with *Arbogastus* he had done in point of Love: "You are most worthy, said he, of the esteem which the Emperour has for you; and although it be natural to us to seek our own advancement to the prejudice of the fortune of others, I behold yours without the least disturbance, as well in regard of your great merit, as of the judgment which I have hitherto made of your inclinations, in which I have found nothing that can make me fear your power over persons that have not deserved your hatred. But for the power of *Arbogastus*, I must confess, that I cannot endure it patiently, not only because he has no endowment that signalizes him, unless it be that valour which is common to Lions and Leopards. But also for that both you and I have no small reason to fear his impious, terrible and violent humour, so that should he attain the top of a happiness to be supreme in the favour of the Emperour, to which he takes a very good way, he would infallibly ruine and destroy us. Therefore, *Stilicon*, since it no less concerns you than my self, to oppose the growing advancement of a person that will overturn our fortunes, or rather, since you have more reason to expect than I, as being his most formidable Competitor, to feel the first effects of his power, and that though you were assur'd of *Serena's* affections (to intermix the interest of Love with that of Ambition) you cannot be ignorant how little they would avail, should *Theodosius* stand firm to *Arbogastus*, let us therefore joyn together that reputation we have in the Emperour's favour, to remove a person that would endure no companion if he could be our Master. And since you and I may well behold one another's fortune without envy, and without any design to cross one another, let us put a stop to that person who only seeks to mount so high that he may cast us headlong.

With such provocations as these *Ruffinus* ply'd *Stilicon*; and because *Stilicon* truly hated *Arbogastus*, as a person that was his Rival in all things, and knew it was all truth that *Ruffinus* said of his humour; and for that being ambitious as he was, he look'd with emulation and envy upon all those that went about to dispute with him the chief place in the Emperour's affection, and which indeed was the most forcible argument, because he was not ignorant, as having been told by *Serena* her self, that for the obtaining of her, the favour and approbation of the Emperour was chiefly necessary, and that by that means *Arbogastus* might endanger those advantages which he had over him, through the inclinations of the Princess, he readily consented to the proposal that *Ruffinus* made him, to use their utmost endeavour to ruine his credit. But there was this difference in their proceeding, that *Stilicon* did openly that which *Ruffinus* did only by indirect and by-ways, and that he never went about to mischief *Arbogastus* till he found that the other sought to do him all the injury he was able, both with *Serena* and *Theodosius*. So that *Arbogastus* being no more cunning to conceal his thoughts than *Stilicon*, by reason of the little care they took to hide the ill offices they did one another, they serv'd *Ruffinus* in his design as much as he could desire. All this while that subtil Sophister remain'd fix'd in the favour of the Emperour, not only because he was really useful to him in the management of all State Affairs, but because he never lost any occasion to please and divert him, complying with all his inclinations, and for that because he knew the Emperour was very devout, and extremely zealous in the service of that God whom we serve, he also feigned to be very devout, and a piety like his, conversing with Cloystered Votaries, and spending his time all day in the Temples, though in his heart he had less Religion than *Stilicon*; who not affecting piety, yet observ'd a moderation

tion and reservedness as to those things, and perhaps he had less than *Arbogastus*, who had no religion at all.

Through this care which he had to disguise his inclinations, and to cover them with a Veil of piety, he had obtained such a repute with the Emperour, that that great personage subtil in other things, suffering himself to be deceived by outward appearances; gave ear to him and hearkned to his advice, more willingly than to any persons in the Court, though he had a greater esteem for *Stilicon*, and a greater value for *Arbogastus*. And *Ruffinus* made an admirable use of that advantage, not failing to return the blow upon his Rivals when he found a fit opportunity, though after a different manner. Certain it is that *Arbogastus* himself, gave him opportunity enough to do him all ill offices, for being naturally fierce and impatient, he was in a rage if his counsels were not followed in the government of Affairs, murmuring at it without discretion or circumspection, before persons that might tell the Emperour again: and sometimes he had so little power over himself, as not to refrain the violence of his behaviour in his very presence.

The Emperour who knew it, and considered that which was good in him as well as his faults, endured those violent sallies of his pride with a wonderful patience, and attributed them more to his boistrous humour, than to any bad intention. But *Ruffinus* lying upon the catch, like those that hide their hand when they throw the stone, did not want his Agents, who without appearing any way concern'd: fail'd not to whisper in the Emperour's Ear the danger of such a violent spirit: and when he himself found him in a good humour to hear him upon that subject, he told him all he could to create a jealousy, and make him suspect his intentions. Through the good nature of the Emperour for a good while he wrought little or no effect: but in time the Emperour finding likelihood enough, and something of truth in what he said, by little and little began to conceive some distrust in his mind, and to look upon *Arbogastus* as a person, likely enough to attempt a disturbance and to work mischief enough too if once he were set upon it. *Ruffinus* did not fail to heighten his jealousy, by putting him in mind of the great authority he had among the men of war, of whom he was admired for his valour, and beloved for the liberty he gave them, and the care that he took to see them well paid: and in short he omitted nothing, that could either make him be hated or dreaded, but he did it so artificially, that the Emperour could not attribute it to any other cause, than the zeal he had for his service.

As for *Ruffinus* he observed a very strict reservedness, not only out of the assurance which he had of the Emperour's good will, but because *Stilicon* did not give him any probable occasion to accuse him, He only was contented therefore, in reference to *Stilicon* to persuade the Emperour after his dextrous manner, that he had a very high ambition, that every day he sought to make new friends at Court: as also in the Armies by the employments which he bestows in the Armies, and by many other benefits, of which a just suspicion may easily make a right interpretation, and which according to the common opinion was only out of design, to advance himself higher than he is, than out of any real fidelity that he took so much care, studying rather by his own merits than by the Emperour's favour to gain the heart of the Princess. This was all that at present he could insinuate into the Emperour, to his prejudice, and waiting only when time would give him a farther advantage, he turned all his thoughts, to undermine his favour with *Serena*, with whom he then saw him in a high esteem. He spent a great deal of time and diligence to find an opportunity, and at length he found one, or at least he believed he hath met with one to his hearts desire.

Considering the condition he was in with the Emperour, *Serena*, who gave way to favour, had been constrained to suffer his addreses as well as others, and though she never return'd him any very favourable answers, for as much as she had but very little respect for him, as also for that her love was already fixed upon *Stilicon*, however she gave him leave to talk of his passion, as she did to the rest of his competitors, or at least she permitted him not having any means to hinder him: and through this advantage which he had equal to the rest, one day being alone with her, which happened very often by reason of his dexterity in taking his time for all things, after he had framed his countenance to the discourse he was to make; As it may be, said he, I thought myself the least considerable of all those, that openly make profession of their love to you, and as in your opinion Madam, and possibly according to the verdict of truth it self, I am far inferiour in merit to *Stilicon* and *Arbogastus*; so was I in fear that my fortune would be forced to submit to theirs, and that by the power of their luck, they would carry away from me that, which they could not hope by their love and fidelity. But now they themselves begin to free me from that mistrust, so that I despair not at this time, of being the only person of the three, devoted to your service till death. If it be so, said the Princess

smiling, *I shall see you with a better will and humour than I see you sometimes, at least if such Rivals as they are, could give us any cause of discontent in me: and therefore since it would never trouble me to be rid of you all, it is your fault you do not tell me, what grounds you have for this hope.* For Arbogastus, replied Ruffinus, *I know you are too wise to believe him capable of love: for though in all his passions, he has seem'd to proceed even to madness, I assure my self that for that very violence of his love which he has declared to you, you will soon see your self quit of him.* And as for Stilicon, *his ambition for a while may make him covet the Niece of Theodosius, but if he have any love, it is not in that place, where his Ambition stops him for the present*

Though *Serena* might well suspect those words as spoken by *Ruffinus*, yet they made her change colour: For seeing that she then loved *Stilicon*, the least distrust that you could insinuate into her, touch'd her to the heart. Nevertheless she recovered her self in a moment, and looking upon *Ruffinus* with a behaviour, that would have made a person less dextrous than himself have believed, that she nothing regarded his discourse; *By what I can find,* said she, *the grounds of your assurance are not altogether so infallible as you imagine them: for neither is the violence of Arbogastus's passions incompatible with their continuance, nor is the ambition of Stilicon, incompatible with his love: at least I shall never be perswaded to it, till I hear it from some other mouth than yours.* True it is, (replied *Ruffinus* with a very serious look) *that I am a person suspected at this time, and therefore I shall say no more, but stay till time shall inform you what you ought to think of Stilicon's inclinations.* I do not concern my self, replied the Princess very severely, *to seek for any farther information, for I am contented to believe that Stilicon's inclinations were always conformable to his duty.* I cannot tell, replied the cunning *Ruffinus*, *which duty you mean, only I am apt to think with you Madam, that Stilicon would not be wanting in his duty toward his Prince: But I think he is not altogether so regular in what obliges a Lover to the service of a Mistress.* As I believe, replied the Princess, *that a person who makes a profession of virtue, is equally oblig'd both to the one and the other, for that reason I conjecture Stilicon will not be wanting in either, and that he would be no less faithful to his Mistress, than to his Prince.* I should believe as you do, replied *Ruffinus*, *had I not been a witness of things that convince the contrary, and if by misfortune Arbogastus were not as much suspected as my self, he could tell you what Stilicon's fidelity is.*

These words, though the Princess gave little heed to them, yet put her into some disorder, just as *Arbogastus*, whom *Ruffinus* had mentioned, and as a better Artist in cunning and deceit, had exactly instructed before, entred the Chamber. The last words that *Ruffinus* had spoken of him, made *Serena* blush at the very sight of him, and *Arbogastus* guelling at the cause as soon as he perceived it, though he seem'd to know nothing thereof, and seeing *Ruffinus* look upon him with a malicious smile, as soon as he was fate down by the Princess, who fix'd her eyes upon the ground in a considering posture; *I cannot tell,* said he, *whether she Princess be more disturb'd at my visit, than you seem to be glad of it: but methinks I equally observe no less disgust in hers, than pleasantness in yours.* *Serena* did not give *Arbogastus* an answer immediately, and therefore *Ruffinus* preventing her just as she was going to speak; *I cannot tell,* said he to *Arbogastus*, *whether you have given the Princess any occasion to be in this deep meditation, but truly my errand hither was to tell her, that you can inform her what Stilicon's fidelity is.* Ah *Ruffinus*, (replied *Arbogastus*, counterfeiting an amazement) *is it possible that a wise man like Ruffinus, should commit a fault not to be pardoned, by such an inconsiderate person as Arbogastus? and do you not consider that though the Princess were not concern'd in those things which we know, yet they nearly touch'd a person, from whom the secrecy ought to have been conceal'd. Had I been better advis'd, perhaps I had not spoken so much, but since 'tis out that which is pass'd can not be recalled, nor did I say any thing more to the Princess but that you could inform her, what kind of fidelity Stilicon's was.* 'Tis very true that you told me so, (said *Serena*, looking upon him with a sornre disdain) but I never told you I was so much concern'd, as to desire to be satisfied of the truth. "If it be so, replied *Arbogastus*, I shall not deceive the person who has trusted me with this secret: for being so indifferent for *Stilicon's* affection, I am quit of a trouble which your curiosity might have given me. "You may be sure, said the Princess, that I am no more curious after *Stilicon's* concerns than after yours, though I am not so little curious after your affairs, but that I shall be glad to hear news if any person can tell me any. "I will tell you then some news, replied *Arbogastus*, if you please, or rather I will inform you without speaking a word: And whatsoever discontent I have testified to you for prejudicing by indiscretion a person of quality and merit, who is concern'd therein, I know no consideration strong enough to hinder me from pleasing you, wherever I meet with an opportunity.

At these words, without expecting that she should manifest any farther curiosity for what

what he was about to inform her; and before she could tell him whether she had any desire to be inform'd or no, and so prevent him in his design, he drew forth some eight or ten Letters out of his Pocket, and presented them to *Serena*: *See, Madam*, said he, *whether you know that hand.* *Serena* opened the first Letters that she took out of the Packer, not without some inward disturbance, and presently found it to be *Stilicon's* hand, with which she was very well acquainted, and which she saw every day upon one occasion or other, though perhaps she might receive none of his Letters; the manner of their being folded up put her out of doubt that they were Love-Letters; nor was she long in an uncertainty, when calling her eyes upon the first superscription, she read there, *To the charming Irene.* *If it be to Irene then that he applies himself*, said the Princess, blushing, *I know not where he can better make his applications.*

She spake the very truth in those words; for there was not any Lady in all the Court that could contend with *Irene* for beauty, and all other advantages besides. She was bred up by her Parents, who were of the chiefest in Dignity there, but some years after being contracted to *Flavian*, one of the most eminent personages in *Gratian's* Court, she was married at *Rome*, where she made her abode till the death of her Husband, who was slain in the War against *Maximus*. *Stilicon* and all the Court had seen her at *Rome*, during the Emperour's stay there: and at *Constantinople* she was not only visited by all the persons of Honour, but she was also without doubt courted by several, there being few women in the world that were more desirable. So that if *Serena* could admit of a jealousy, there was no person more proper to give her cause, and make her suspect the fidelity of a man devoted to the service of one of her degree and merit: it was not therefore without an apparent inclination to a disgust which she could not shun, that she cast her eyes once more upon the Letter, wherein she found these words.

To the charming *Irene*:

YOU are unjust to accuse me of more Ambition than Love; for certain it is, that I have no more Ambition than to serve me in my Love; and that I seek not for honour, but only to make me worthy of you. 'Tis out of that desire that I use so much diligence, to serve those persons who can advance me; and though I highly prize the favour of my Master, you ought to believe that the favours of my Mistress are of a more precious value, and that all the Grandeur of the Empire is not so dear to me as are the fetters of the fair *Irene*.

I did not believe, (said *Serena*, giving more credit than she needed have done to the Paper which they presented to her) that *Stilicon* had chained up his fortune in the fetters of *Irene*. And I confess, that we may be deceived in our judgments. But let us see whether the other Letters do confirm us in what we have discovered in the first. And at the same time opening another Letter she found these words.

To the most pleasing *Irene*.

YOU were discoursed of this day to me in the Emperour's Lodgings; but as they were persons much suspected, I made very little discovery of my self, but left them to think what appearances only anim'd the world withal. In the meanwhile I beg you to believe that this constraint makes me die, and that in a Court where so many fair things are to be seen, I have neither eyes nor thoughts for any other object but you.

This is yet a little more plain, replied the cunning *Ruffinus*, and methinks that *Stilicon* could not more clearly make us apprehend that here he only disguises his fortune, while his heart is with *Irene*. I believe it it as well as you, said *Arbogastus* to *Ruffinus*; and I am of opinion that you and I may be the persons whom he leaves to judge by appearances; for it is not many days since that we were speaking to him of *Irene*, as the Emperour was making ready. You

have decided the matter very judiciously, (said *Serena*, striving to conceal what she had in her thoughts) but it behoves us to try a little farther before we determine any thing certainly. And so saying, she opened another Letter, and there read these words.

To the fair *Irene*.

They who shall see me enter the Lists to morrow with any other Colours than yours, will not make a right judgment of my intentions; and others, with as little justice, will attribute what I shall act there, not to be done for your sake alone. But since I am not permitted to be your Champion but in secret, I shall most carefully conceal this secret, only I shall trust it in some dubious Imprese, which hiding it as much as is required, shall give me that consolation which is necessary for me.

Ab! Madam, then cry'd *Ruffinus*, would you have more to convince you how wrongfully we are accus'd by you? For if you remember what happened at the last Tilting after the return of the Emperour, when *Arbogastus* and *Stilicon* carried your Colours with so much Honour, and I with so little, can you mistake the foul play of *Stilicon*, or can you be so blind as not to see the dubious Imprese of which he makes mention. Have you forgot that he caus'd a Syren to be painted upon his Shield openly, for the resemblance which it had with the name of *Serena*; but in truth, as you perceive in the Paper for *Irene*, since it is but changing two Letters in *Serena*, and adding one to *Irene*; and this equivocation answerable to his intent, equally preserv'd his secret, and disguis'd the outward appearance. Neither is any so clear, nor so well interpreted, reply'd *Arbogastus*; so that *Stilicon* cannot inform you more in a hundred Letters than he has done in two words. I shall see what is in the rest, (said the Princess with a forc'd behaviour) but not before such severe accusers as you are.

And concluding these words she put them up, as well those which she had read, as those which she intended to peruse. *Arbogastus* besought her to restore them back again, telling her it would be an unhandsome thing for him, out of mere complacency to her, to hazard the reputation of *Irene*, who was in such esteem at Court both for her quality and merit. But *Serena* absolutely denyed to return them, promising, as soon as she had read them all over to restore them, and assuring him that she had no design to publish what was in them; and presently after she left them, and shut her self up in her Closet, where, at her liberty she read all the other Letters of *Stilicon*, which she found altogether answerable to the first, and confirm'd her in the opinion into which they endeavour'd to persuade her of his infidelity, being such as they had pick'd out among a great number of others to serve their turn.

The rest of that day the Princess would not be spoken with, so that *Stilicon* coming to the door was refus'd as well as the rest; but the next day she resolv'd to see him, and she so order'd it, that she resolv'd to be alone with him in her Chamber. He saw in her countenance some marks of his misfortune, but he could not well interpret the meaning, and therefore confiding in his own innocency, he conjectured every thing else rather than the truth of what had been contrived against him. *Serena* beheld him for some time with eyes full of indignation, and by and by she took them off again with a behaviour full of disdain, and indeed she shew'd in her whole countenance those signs of a general inward commotion, which in a very large measure perplex'd the amorous *Stilicon*: for some time he patiently bore his disturbance without speaking, but at length willing to know the cause, with a trembling utterance, he besought the Princess to inform him. But the words were hardly out of his mouth, when the Princess interrupting him, I possess nothing that is worthy taking notice of, said she, and perhaps less that deserves the passion of any person. But before I say any more, (drawing forth one of the Letters, and shewing him it open) tell me, said she, whether this be your hand or no.

Though *Stilicon* believ'd himself innocent, and least thought of those Letters, while *Serena* kept her hand upon the superscription, yet the behaviour of the Princess so surpris'd him, that he stood like one that had been struck speechless, and whether it were out of a fear that he had written something that had displeas'd her, or out of the usual mistrust that accompanies love; and which, considering those signs of anger that appear'd in the countenance of *Serena*, might easily produce that effect. He was troubled in such a manner, and

and so difordered as well in his looks as in his discourse, that he could hardly find two or three words to return an answer, only at length he confessed that it was his hand. The commotion of his mind and his guilty countenance, were enough to convince the Princess without any more to do: and so putting up the Letter again, and with all striving to her utmost to keep in that resentment, which she was unwilling should express it felt beyond what she intended; *Trouble not your self Stilicon, said she, for your crime is not so great nor your punishment so rigorous: for though perhaps I could easily let you see, that 'twas not to Serena or the Niece of Theodosius, that you needed to have acted your feigned Courtship; you shall easily be quit of that duty, by never seeing me again as long as you live. Never as long as I live, cryed Stilicon in an extatic; No Stilicon not while you live, replied Serena aloud and sternly, and I shall find means to force you to an observance.* Concluding these words, she went into her Closet and lock'd her self in, and would not hear one word more of reply.

In truth, said the Princess of *Suevia* out of her own sweet disposition (which made her interrupt *Martian* in his discourse) *in a moderate person methinks that behaviour of hers was too violent; and as I always take the part of the unfortunate, I wish she had heard Stilicon speak for himself, before she had proceeded to so much extremity. She had too violent proofs,* replied the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, *to produce any mild effects: and indeed we mortals are subject to greater weakneses, and to do pieces of greater injustice than this. But I cannot apprehend why Ruffinus made use of Arbogastus, in that which he might have done alone; for if I am not deceived, 'twas he that contrived the plot, and gave Irene's letters to Arbogastus. You judge right Madam,* replied *Martian*, *for it is most certain that Arbogastus acted only, by the solicitation and instruction of Ruffinus. But besides that I have told you that Ruffinus being nothing so bold and valiant as his two Rivals, chose rather to oppose Arbogastus and Stilicon's anger, than expose himself to danger, he had no less a design to make them quarrel one with another, and so to rid himself of both at once, if it were possible. And for that reason he considered that the foul play he played with Stilicon, would either be concealed, and so Stilicon would be quite lost in Serena's favour, or if it should be discovered, Stilicon would understand that it was from Arbogastus, that Serena had the Letters; and so looking upon him as the principal Author of his misfortune, and as a person by whom he should get more honour than by Ruffinus, he would turn all his fury upon him, and give the Emperour time to hinder the effects thereof, from falling upon Ruffinus. He endeavoured also to make Stilicon act after the same manner, in those ill offices which he did Arbogastus with the Emperour, making use of all his subtilty, to destroy two such formidable Enemies.*

The End of the Third Book of the Seventh Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK IV.

IT would be a difficult thing, Madam, to represent to your fancy the condition, where-into the amorous *Stilicon* was reduced, by the severe entertainment that *Serena* had given him: for as that misfortune befel him at a time, when he had least reason to fear it; it was so much the greater by how much the less it was foreseen, whereby he found his heart not so well prepared to bear it. This lover equally astonish'd and afflicted, examined himself a long time in the Chamber, where he heard those cruel words that so tormented his soul before he went out of it: And not finding any thing that he could recal to his memory, which in his opinion could provoke *Serena* to so much indignation, his astonishment encreas'd without lessening his grief at all: and sometimes he was in doubt whether he ought not to attribute to *Serena's* frowardness only, that which his innocence suggested to him, could proceed from no other cause. He had sufficiently viewed the Letter, that *Serena* shewed him to perceive that it was his own hand, but not having read any thing therein nor seen the superscription, he could not divine to whom he had written, nor of what offence he stood convicted by that Letter. However he found that he was thereby accused, and he chose rather to fall into a misfortune, which calumny and slander might have produced, and which when the truth came to light, would as suddenly vanish, than permit himself to fear a far greater Calamity, should it be any change in the natural disposition or inclinations of the Princess. He had for some time perplexed himself with these thoughts, when *Sextilia* one of the Princess's women, for whom he had the greatest kindness, and one whom he knew took his part against his Rivals, enter'd the Chamber: and wondring to see him there alone, she was yet more surpris'd when she beheld in his looks and in his behaviour all the symptoms of a violent grief: whereupon she pressed him to tell her the cause with so much earnestness, that he found thereby she was not a little concern'd for him.

The afflicted *Stilicon*, who desired as much as in him lay to find out the true cause of his misfortune, told her though with a great deal of trouble the whole story: and conjured her to inform him if she knew, what offence he had committed to have drawn it upon him, or rather what way they had made use of to destroy him. *Sextilia* professed that she knew nothing of it in the least, and all that she could say was, that she had seen the Princess for some hours, reading and studying upon certain Letters, at which time she often mention'd his name with many expressions of vexation and anger, and that she believed that she had received those Letters from *Arbogastus* and *Ruffinus*, who the day before had had a very long and particular discourse with her. *Stilicon* then made no question but that it was his two Rivals, who had done him this ill office: so that all the commands which the Emperour had given him to live friendly together, could not have hindred him from going to find them out, with an intention scarce to have been regulated by his obedience, had he not believed that it would be better, first to endeavour to find out the truth, before he suffered himself to be hurried to attempt those things, which he could not do without using extremity. Nor would the fear which he had of displeasing the Princess, give him leave to stay in her Chamber any longer: and therefore after he had conjured *Sextilia* to be kind to him, and to endeavour to find out what his offence might be, he went his way.

He continued for some days before he adventured to return again to visit the Princess, being willing to yield that respect to the command which she had laid upon him, never to see

see her more, which made him suffer so much during that constraint, that the effects thereof were easily to be observed in his countenance. His Rivals perceiv'd it with no small joy, his friends were not a little sorry. And the Emperour declared himself so much troubled for him, that *Stilicon* not being able to disown what was so apparent, and yet not willing to discover the real cause for fear of displeasing the Princess, rather than out of any other consideration, was constrain'd to attribute it to some indisposition of Body. In the mean while he neither durst visit the Princess nor the Empress, in so much that he had hardly confidence to see her in the Emperour's Apartment, where she was every day. And as he never beheld her without trembling, or without such a fear which the night have easily discern'd in his looks, had she but vouchsafed to cast her eyes upon his countenance, he had still the misfortune to observe that she turn'd her eyes away, and kept off from looking upon him with all the wairiness imaginable; or if at any time her eyes were constrain'd to make him their object, it was with so much indifference that he had reason to believe that he was entirely ruined in her affection. But that which pierc'd him to the very heart, was, that during all this while he saw *Arbogastus* and *Ruffinus* continually attending her, and that she rarely went to the Temple to walk, or to any other place, without being waited upon by one, or both of them, but attended with more diligence by *Arbogastus*, that *Gaul* not caring for any affront she put upon him, or at least not dreading the effects of her displeasure so much as the rest did. He observ'd likewise that she conversed with them after a more familiar manner than she had been accustomed to do, especially with *Arbogastus* for whom she had all along an unkindness, which she could hardly dissemble in company, and that she now openly treated him with all the civility that he could reasonably desire.

Stilicon for some days suffered all patiently that a heart like his could endure, striving with himself all that it was possible for him to do. But at length he was of opinion that no respect was to hinder him from endeavouring to justify himself, or at least from teaching what his crime was, from *Sextilia's* mouth, since he could not find it out by any other ways that he tryed. He durst not visit her after the command she had laid upon him to the contrary, fearing also to appear in her presence in any other place; but at last he found it necessary to clear the truth by speaking to her, for it cruelly oppress'd him to let them that had accused him carry away a victory so easily obtain'd by his silence. To that purpose he endeavour'd to speak to *Serena* in the Empress's presence, or as she was taking the air, but when she was walking abroad he found her attended by *Arbogastus*, to whom all others gave way, either by reason of his authority, or out of other considerations; and as often by *Ruffinus*, whose reputation was highly revered by all the Court, and therefore fearing the success of that enterprise, he was unwilling to expose himself before his Rivals, lest he might give them any cause to be glad, should he receive a repulse; and as for speaking to her in the presence of the Empress, in regard she was never there without a great crowd of company, he had observ'd that still when he drew near to her, she always turn'd another way to avoid him if possibly she could, thereby depriving him of all the means to discourse her. At length finding all other ways prove ineffectual, he resolv'd to write to her, and gave the Letter to *Sextilia*, who was willing to undertake the delivery: the contents whereof were as follow, or much to the same purpose.

To the Princess *Serena*.

I Cannot tell what is my crime; but as I know you are not unjust, I find that I have committed an offence, since I have deserv'd your anger; it is but some few days ago that you permitted me to believe my self the most happy among men. But now, Madam, 'tis your pleasure that I should think my self the most unhappy: nor can I think there is any likelihood that I should fall from one extremity to another, if I were not acnyl guilty: Yes, Madam, I have offended since you have condemn'd me. But for pity's sake inform me what my crime is, and give me so much confidence as to justify my innocence, for that is impossible; since I have displeas'd you, but to render me more odious to my self when I shall know my offence: This is the only favour which a person, which you once permitted to hope the most glorious favour in the world, now begs at your hands. Nor will he at his death ever complain of you, if you will but let him know the cause of that death to which you have condemn'd him.

Sextilia presented this Letter to *Serenus*, and she had so much reputation with her as to oblige her to read it; but she could get no other answer from her, but that *Stilicon* was the most ingrateful, and the most unfaithful among men, forbidding her any more to speak of him; so that *Stilicon* understanding the ill success of his Letter, and knowing himself to be altogether unfortunate, though altogether as ignorant of the cause, fell almost into a despair. It was in his mind sometimes to throw himself at the Emperour's feet, upon whose goodness he relyed, and whose affection for him he well knew, with an intention to inform him of his misfortune, and beg the aid of his compassion. But he was afraid, with probability enough, to provoke the Princess by that way of proceeding, and therefore more boldly resolv'd to speak to her himself, and to receive from her own lips his last condemnation. Fortune seem'd to offer him an opportunity some days after at the Temple, whither he went every day to find her. For as the Princess was upon her knees very devoutly at Prayers, her Book fell out of her hands, which, *Stilicon*, that was not above five or six paces off, perceiving, ran with so much diligence to take it up, that no person about her could prevent him in doing her that little peice of service. *Serenus* durst not refuse the Book at *Stilicon's* hands, but she blush'd when she receiv'd it; and after she had return'd him a cold thanks for his civility, with a countenance that denoted vexation and a constraint of kindness, she turn'd her eyes away from *Stilicon*, and fix'd them upon her Book. That behaviour of hers had almost daunted *Stilicon*, but necessity constrain'd him to make use of his courage; and therefore standing behind the Princess, he laid his head to her ear, and speaking to her with a guilty utterance; "Do you believe, Madam, *said he*, that that Divinity which we adore, and to which you pray, approves the cruelty which you exercise toward a miserable person, whom you condemn without hearing, and execute the sentence of his death before you let him know his crime. *Serenus's* colour chang'd upon *Stilicon's* words, though she alone understood them; yet believing she could not put him off without speaking to him, not so much as turning her face toward him, "I am less cruel, *said she*, than you ingrateful and perfidious; but since you are no less presumptuous to persecute me, I shall perhaps find out a way to defend my self. "Ah, Madam, *said she* desperate *Stilicon*, I protest unto you in this sacred place, that I will for ever deliver you from that trouble; and that after I have sworn to you upon these Altars, that I was never ingrateful or perfidious, I will betake my self where I will never molest you more as long as I live. "You will do me a kindness, (*replied the Princess very smartly*) and it is the only favour that I can now expect at your hands. *Stilicon* saw well that he could not urge her any farther at that time, and therefore retiring without making any other replies he went out of the Temple with a countenance wherein you might read all the characters of despair,

Hardly was he got forth without discerning whether his passion guided his steps, when he met *Ruffinus*, who came from the Emperour, where he had done a very ill office to *Arbogastus*. Some days before one of the most considerable commands in the Army became vacant upon the death of him that enjoyed it; and *Arbogastus* having begg'd it of the Emperour for a person that he had a kindness for; but the Emperour, who was not wont to deny him requests of the greatest consequence, refused it him, as a Boon which he had already promised. However, he excused himself, by letting him see his engagement, and that in such language as would have contented another person. But the fierce *Arbogastus*, who believ'd all things due to his Merit and Services, could not with patience brook that denial: so that after he had testified his discontent before the Emperour himself, in such language that was enough to provoke him; he muttered also in other places, and out of his turbulent and proud humour, he intermix'd such expressions with his complaints that seem'd to resemble threats, sufficient to make him suspected of some traiterous resentment; *Ruffinus*, to prejudice him, being frankly advertis'd thereof, in the report which he made immediately to the Emperour, added much of his own to the truth of these things whereof he had been inform'd; and not content to tell the Emperour of *Arbogastus's* muttering; and to aggravate upon it as much as in him lay, he omitted nothing to persuade the Emperour of his evil intentions, and how he practis'd with the Soldiers to stir them up to sedition, and that in all likelyhood he should soon see the effects of a disgust which he could not dissemble: and at length he said so much, and confirm'd his discourse with so many appearances of truth, that if he could not oblige the Emperour to such a distrust of *Arbogastus's* intentions as he desired to infuse into him, at least he provoked him against the insolency of his behaviour, and so exasperated his mind against him, that *Arbogastus* coming into his presence that day (having been wanting, contrary to his custom, for two or three before) the Emperour not only look'd fowrly upon him, but spoke to him after another manner than

than he was wont, and gave him to understand that he should not be always in a humour to suffer his extravagant behaviour. *Ruffinus* after he had given the blow was gone out of the way but a few minutes before, and then it was that he met with the afflicted *Stilicon*. As that despairing Lover only fought for an object at which he might let lie the effects of his fury, at the sight of *Ruffinus*, he could not look upon him but as one of the authors of his misfortune; so that the first motion of his anger made him lay his hand upon the hilt of his Sword; and it was ten to one but that politick Rival had felt his blows before he had apprehended his words; but in conclusion, with much ado, he moderated his passion; either because he thought it more convenient to expostulate with him before he betook himself to use extremities, or else that his anger demanded a more noble conquest: however, spurring his Horse up to him (for they were both a Horseback, with only some slaves attending them on foot) he stopp'd his way, and looking upon him with eyes that might have terrified a Champion more valiant than himself, "Is it you, *said he*, *Ruffinus*, that have ruined me in *Serena's* favour? And is it from you that I am to demand satisfaction for so great an injury?"

Ruffinus was troubled at *Stilicon's* words, so that he had much ado to recover himself so well as to give him an answer. But as it was ordinary with him to stoop to rebukes, at this time his wit assisted him as much as he could desire, and as much as was necessary to draw him out of that inconvenience, and looking upon *Stilicon* with a confidence which it may be lay not then in his courage, "I might possibly, *said he*, be excus'd for not giving you an answer to what you desire of me, especially considering the manner in which you demand it. Nor do I want courage to give satisfaction to such persons as you are, when I shall do them any injury; but besides what I owe to the commands of the Emperour, of which you are not ignorant, I have more reason to joyn with you in your resentment, rather than give you satisfaction; and though I lose not hopes in the service of *Serena*, equal to yours, yet I am depriv'd of those which I might have justly conceiv'd, and I lose them them through the happiness of a Rival that triumphs over us both, rather by his good fortune, than out of any merit. In short, *Stilicon*, besides what the report of the Court daily informs you, your eyes themselves may perceive what favours *Arbogastus* now receives from *Serena*, whom before she so apparently disdain'd; and you will apprehend, it may be, in a few days that he is the only person, and no other that has done you this prejudice with *Serena*."

At another time this discourse of *Ruffinus* had made but little impression upon *Stilicon* to whom he was egregiously suspected. But besides that he had but too well observ'd *Arbogastus's* double diligence near *Serena*, he had also perceiv'd that the Princess look'd upon him very graciously, and that she shewed him more countenance now than before his disgrace; and that it was moreover true, that to spite him she did in his presence more civilly treat that Rival of his, than in other places, and most apparently so well and civilly, that thereby he might easily flatter himself with hopes of good success. Through that remembrance of these things which he himself had seen, and which had pierc'd him to the quick, the afflicted *Stilicon* receiv'd but too easily the impression that *Ruffinus* endeavoured to make, and out of the knowledge of his own innocency, he suffered himself to be perswaded to believe, that that change in *Serena* proceeded from her favourable opinion of *Arbogastus*, rather than from any distaste she had taken against him; but at the same time calling to mind that he was accused of perfidiousness, and that they had shewn her Letters to convince her, he began to think that the happiness of his Rival had not created his misfortune, and that there must of necessity have been some contrivance of cunning to subvert him, and with these thoughts beginning his discourse: "That which you say, *said he* to *Ruffinus*, might carry some face of truth, did I not know *Serena* to be no fickle person, and that *Arbogastus* has not merit sufficient so suddenly to produce the effects which you would make me believe: and which is more, *Serena* accuses me of infidelity, and she has Letters by her that give her some ground for that accusation, which in my opinion she would not receive from any person, but either from you or *Arbogastus*. "It may possibly be, *replied* *Ruffinus*, that she received them from one of us; but you well know that it was not from *Ruffinus*; for if you will but ask *Arbogastus*, I dare say he will not disown the truth. "I hope then, *replied* *Stilicon*, that I shall know it from him; and as I expect that he should tell me more plainly than you, I suppose it is rather from him than from you that I must require satisfaction."

In concluding these last words, which *Ruffinus* would not seem to take notice of, he parted with him without any complement, and rode towards the Palace to find out *Arbogastus*; when, as fortune would have it, he saw him coming forth of the Palace-yard, in a con-

dition much like himself, with a countenance wherco appeared no less the signs of anger than in his own. He had just parted from the Emperour, who as I told you before had but roughly rebuked him, and as he could accuse none but *Stilicon* or *Ruffinus* of that disgrace, he went on full of disgust and with a desire to make it soon appear. *Stilicon* very fiercely accosted him, but before he could open his lips to speak to him, *Arbogastus* prevented him with a behaviour no less furious. *Is it you,* said he, *or is it Ruffinus, that has been doing me ill Offices with the Emperour. It may be both Ruffinus and I too,* replied *Stilicon*, but whoever 't be, advise you to seek your satisfaction from me and not from *Ruffinus*: for besides that 'it will be more for your honour, I will spare you the pains to begin, if you will but 'say that it was you and not *Ruffinus*, that have done me so much injury with *Screax*. *You need not doubt,* said *Arbogastus*, *but that it was I who wrought you all that mischief, and you ought to accuse me, for I fear you not like Ruffinus, of all that Ruffinus had not the courage to undertake. I confess,* replied *Stilicon*, *I should less fear a man of courage than you, for I only endeavour the ruine of my Enemies, by ways that are honourable, but you to mischief yours, make use of treason and impajure. But* (said he, beholding him with a menacing look) *we are too near the Palace to determine our differences, and therefore we should have more liberty, if thou hadst the courage to follow that person whom thou fearest so little.*

As *Arbogastus* was naturally full of fury, and of less consideration than *Stilicon*, he had laid his hand upon his Sword and had drawn it, when he had heard those last words: But judging afterwards, as well as his Enemy, that it was more convenient to go farther off from the Court, he spurred on his Horse without giving him any answer, and *Stilicon* also following at the same rate, they left their slaves at a distance, and after they had passed through some streets they came to the Hippodrome: where finding a convenient place, and having defied each other with a loud cry, they ran one at the other with a kind of headlong fury: And because they had no Arms on to defend themselves from either the points or edges of their weapons, but fought with more fury than discretion, the Combat was very bloody: so that before those persons that ran from Court after them could come to part them, they had given one another four great wounds, which cost them a great quantity of blood, so that it was only their own febleness, that hardly permitted them to sit their Horses, that compelled them to give over. They were both carried off and put to bed: And their wounds being feared the Chirurgeons found them so dangerous, that they could hardly tell what to think of their lives.

The report of a Combat of that importance, fought before so many witnessers, was immediately spread abroad, so that the Emperour hearing the news, fell into a very great passion against them, who had so ill observed the commands which he had laid upon them: and for some time he continued in his resentment of an injury done to his Authority: but when he understood that those two persons, against whom he was provoked through the little respect they had given to his commands, were both in danger of their lives: or to say better, that he was like to lose, by reason of their wounds, the two persons of the Empire, whom he best esteemed and loved, and who had done him the greatest services, his Anger could not oppose it self against that consideration. So that when *Ruffinus*, who by that time was come into his presence, began to lay before him the greatness of the injury that he had received, to aggravate the contempt which they had put upon his authority, with all the arguments most prevalent to provoke him; *Forbear Ruffinus,* said he, *to incense me against two persons, that are not perhaps in a condition to give you any farther cause of jealousy: I am troubled as much as you that they did not obey my commands, but I am more perplexed for the pain which they endure, than for the offence which they have committed. For the danger that threatens the lives of two such persons as *Stilicon* and *Arbogastus*, is sufficient enough to make me forget greater wrongs than they have done me.*

At those words *Ruffinus* was so abashed, that he could not make any answer: And indeed the Emperour bestirring himself, upon that unfortunate accident, with a fatherly goodness and care, not only employed all his officers for the cure of the wounded, but he made it his own business, with all the earnestness that he could have testified, either for *Arcadius* or himself. He forgot at the same instant all the distaste, which for some days before he had taken against *Arbogastus* at the instigation of *Ruffinus*: and believing that the resentment of the disgrace which he had put upon him that day, had in part produced this sad effect, he repented the words which he had said, and testified to all that heard him that he was sorry for what he had done. For *Stilicon*, as he loved him more tenderly, in regard he understood that *Arbogastus* had first provoked him in words, and had first laid his hand upon his sword, he grieved beyond consolation for him, and omitted nothing that might

testific to all the Court how much he was concern'd for his preservation. As for *Serena*, she being very prudent, and having a great command of her self, it was not ealie to judge what were her thoughts of an accident in which she had so great a share. For though she were provok'd against *Stilicon* as much as it was possible for one to be, and had nothing of a real disgust against *Arbogastus*, they who were most intimately acquainted with her thoughts, which she kept to her self, observ'd that she was less concern'd for the life of him that was innocent, than of the person that was the offender, and that all her anger would not permit her without sorrow to behold the danger to which *Stilicon* was expos'd.

The first day there were none that were admitted to come near the persons that lay wounded, except the Officers that attended them. The second day, wherein they could nevertheless make no certain judgment, the Emperour took the pains after they were dress'd to go and visit them, but for fear of giving them occasion to speak, and by the sight of his presence of increasing their Fever, he went not near the Bed, but contented himself only with recommending them to the care of those that look'd after them, with such a zeal as denoted the affection and esteem he had for them. Some days pass'd before any judgment could be given of the event. But at length the Chirurgeons were of opinion, that by the assistance of Heaven, the vertue of their Medicines, and the vigour of their youth, they might recover, provided they were not wanting to themselves, and that the dittemper of their Minds did not increase the dittemper of their Bodies.

They had that opinion more particularly of *Stilicon*, in whom they did not find the same willingness to preserve his own life, as in *Arbogastus*, nor the same readines to take their remedies; for indeed after he was recovered from that extremity of weakness which the loss of so much blood had caused, and that the remembrance of his misfortune was return'd to his mind, he look'd with disdain upon that life which they labour'd to preserve, and would hardly suffer them to dress his wounds: he sigh'd often, and shed tears in abundance, accompanied with many sad moans and complaints; and when his Fever caused a kind of Delirium, the image of his misfortune having then the command of his Soul, which reason had forsaken, made him talk those things which easily discovered that his mind was in a worse condition than his Body. They who attended him advertised the Emperour thereof, who sent several times in a day to know how he did, and who hop'd that through the power he had over him he should perswade him not to be wanting to himself to hinder the operation of the Medicines that were applyed for his recovery. And therefore so soon as the Emperour understood that he might see him without any prejudice to his health, he went: and *Stilicon* being advertised of the care which he had taken of him, and of the testimonies that he had given of his tender affection toward him, carried such an acknowledgment thereof in his mind, that it made him receive his visit like a person more oblig'd to him for that than for all his former favours; and when the Emperour sitting by his Bed-side had taken him by one of his hands, with a behaviour that manifested how much he was concern'd for him, the passionate *Stilicon* laying his lips to the Emperour's hand that held his, and bedewing it with tears which he could not refrain: *It is you, Sir*, said he, *it is you that do Stilicon the honour to come and see him; but it is not Stilicon, guilty as he is, who presents himself before you; yet it was Arbogastus that assaulted me, and I hope you have been informed of the truth. Yes, Stilicon, I understand it*, said the Emperour, *but it is the condition wherein I now see you, and not your disobedience to my commands that now offends me; for I was more covetous of your life, than jealous of my authority. Ah, Sir,* (replied *Stilicon*, kissing his hand a second time) *why was it not the will of Heaven, that all the blood of which you are so sparing, had been sacrific'd to the service of your Majesty, before I had incurr'd the hazard of displeasing you? And why did it not permit me to let you see that all the despair that reigns in my heart was not able to make me fail of my Duty? And what is that despair,* replied the Emperour, *of which you tell me, what misfortune can have caus'd it? For what indeed can befall you that can create despair in a Soul like yours? No other, Sir*, said *Stilicon*; *but the unhappines to have displeas'd you.*

He stopp'd at these words, troubled to have spoken so much; and that he was thereby become engag'd, to inform the Emperour that which he thought to have concealed from him; but his behaviour too well discovered what his language intended; for his last words were accompanied with many sighs, fetch'd from the bottom of his heart, and at length with a deluge of tears that he could not stop. The Emperour was touch'd to the very heart; and tenderly grasping *Stilicon's* hand, *No, Stilicon*, said he, *you must not think so to deceive me; for besides that which you tell me of a despair that cannot be attributed to the reason which you give me, both what the persons that attend you have informed me of, and the signs which I have for some time since observed in your looks, of a grief that you would con-*

ceal from me, have already given me so much disturbance as to deserve that you should have some kind of respect to it, and that you should not dissemble with a friend, who may complain of your dissimulation, if you continue to practise it any longer. It must of necessity be that your evil must be very extraordinary, if all our pains and travel can afford you no relief; for you may perhaps have already understood, that I have so great a kindness for you, to employ for your good all that lies within my power. Ah, Sir, replied Stilicon, if there yet remain in your Breast that goodness for me, of which you have given me so many proofs, make not use of that power at this time, but permit me to conceal till I die that which it behoves me never to discover, and that which perhaps I cannot reveal without rendering my self more miserable. No, Stilicon, replied the Emperour, I will not give you leave to conceal any thing from me; for I know very well that no information that you can give me can increase your misfortune.

Stilicon continued a long time without making any answer to those last words, otherwise than by the language of his sighs that frequently issued from his Breast; but the Emperour pressing him a second time with such words wherein he only found authority, commanding with an excess of affection. But, Sir, said he at length, if I commit a fault that will not permit me to call my self innocent; if I cannot let you understand my misfortune without wounding the respect which I owe you, by betraying my own rashness, or letting you see how it may be I may have abus'd more than I ought to have done that goodness of yours that gave me pardon, shall I not render my self perhaps unworthy of that which now you promise me. And instead of that assistance which you assure me of, shall I not merit all the punishment that I am able to suffer, and all that is due to my audacious misfortune? But, (said he a little while after, struggling with certain sobs that interrupted his speech) what condition can I fall into more deplorable than that to which I am now reduc'd? So that if I can obey my Sovereign without displeasing him, what prejudice can I fear in my fortune, at a time that death is more acceptable to me than ever life was? In short, Sir, since you command me by vertue of that authority which I cannot resist, it behoves me to confess that it is the Princess Serena, not the Sword of Arbogastus that hastens me to my Grave, through your Majesties forbearance that sav'd my boldness, but would not punish me; once she gave me leave to live, and to live enjoying the honour to serve her; but as it was a happiness which I never could merit, she has repented that ever she advanced me, and in doing me justice she has condemn'd me to death. I shall never complain of a condemnation which may be so just for the presumption that I had to cast my eyes upon our Princess. But, Sir, my Enemies have added another crime to that, and by their cunning contrivances have render'd me guilty, and will not let me know what my crime is. This is the only favour I have desired, and the only kindness that I request while I live. And this, Sir, is all that I can desire from the assistance which you do me the honour to promise me.

After these words and some others, when the Emperour had confirm'd the promise he had made him of his assistance, he inform'd him all that he knew of his disgrace, and related to him all that had happened to himself in reference to the Princess, but in such passionate expressions, and with so many sighs and tears, that the Emperour, who entirely lov'd him, and infinitely esteem'd him, was sensibly mov'd with his grief; and after he had patiently listen'd to him, interrupting the course of his words, when he thought he had said enough, as believing a tedious discourse might be prejudicial to his health; I am glad, said he, that your misfortune is not so great as you made me fear it was, and I am troubled that you did not let me understand it before it had produc'd such effects as these, as well to grieve as to displease me, I make no question but your Rivals have done you an ill office; and among persons that make an exact profession of virtue, foul play is more to be pardon'd upon such occasions than many other contexts. However, I believe I shall make your peace with Serena, and since you desire to clear the innocency to her, I promise you to give you the opportunity, and that she shall hear you with kindness, after that assurance which I shall give her of your innocency, but this shall be only upon condition that you admit nothing to disturb your mind that may delay the cure of your body, and that you spare the resentment of your Rivals injustice till you know the truth. By these words the compassionate Emperour recovered Stilicon into a far better condition than that wherein he found him, and out of the assurance of his goodness, the power which he had over Serena, and the confidence of his own innocence, he was in good hopes to be as happy as he was before, having now no other fear but that he had displeas'd Serena by his contellation to the Emperour, for which he was in the same hopes, that by the same power, and the same intercession he might obtain pardon.

If this hope made Stilicon submit to whatever they did in relation to his cure, and as it promoted his recovery, the just Emperour was not wanting to give him that assistance which he promised. We could never learn what discourse he had with the Princess upon that subject; but by using his endeavours sincerely with her, by reason of the authority he had

over her, and for that the sorrow which she had for *Stilicon's* wounds had awak'd her anger, he perswaded her easily to hear a justification, and to give her the opportunity he not only went himself; but took the Empress and *Serenus* along with him to accompany him in that visit. *Stilicon*, whose health began to be in a better condition, with many signs of balsfulness complemented the honour which the Empress did him; but when, after he had testified his acknowledgment to her in most submissive language, he saw *Serenus* behind her, his words died in his mouth, his colour chang'd, and he look'd like a man forlorn and stupified: the Emperour and the Empress most obligingly testified how glad they were to see him mend. But the Emperour being willing to do more for him, took the Empress by the hand, telling her that he would shew her what excellent Pictures *Stilicon* had in his Closet, and commanded *Serenus* in the interim to stay with him till their return. *Serenus* blush'd to hear the Emperour's charge, though 'tis very probable she might be willing to obey it, and *Stilicon*, who understood the Emperour's kindness, which he had desired beyond his life, remain'd for a while in a condition which suffer'd him not to make use of it; for seeing himself alone with that person who had so severely forbid him never to see her more, his fear was at least equal to his joy, and scarcely left him courage and strength enough to employ an opportunity so favourable for his justification. However, he strove with himself to shake off that which hinder'd his intentions, and sought to make him lose so fair an occasion; and after he had beheld the Princess for some time without speaking a word, at length with a guilty countenance opening his trembling lips, with an utterance that sufficiently denoted his fear, "I beg your pardon, Madam, said he, not for a crime which I never committed, and of which I cannot repent till I have knowledge of it, but for what I have been forc'd to do in the extremity of my life, in confessing my misfortune to the Emperour; you have perhaps understood from him how he engag'd me to it by all his authority, an authority so much the more powerful over me, as being accompanied with all those marks of his affection: yes, Madam, the Emperour commanded me to speak, and though I should have as often disobey'd him as he laid those commands upon me, I thought my self oblig'd not to rebel against him at such a time when I lay in despair of my life, and that I ought not to die without endeavouring what lay in my power to let you know my innocence. And to that end he may have also possibly inform'd you, that of all that assistance which he did me the honour to promise me, I never request'd any other effect thereof than that I might understand what my offence was towards you. No, Madam, neither from the Emperour's goodness, nor your favour, did I desire, nor do I desire but only to know that: and if it be true that I am guilty, I shall condemn my self to punishments more severe than those which you would ordain me. Do not then refuse, Madam, to the Emperour's intercession, who without doubt has perform'd his promise as I have reason to hope, and as I find by this effect so unexpected, that which you have denied to the unfortunate *Stilicon*; and be pleas'd to believe, that if after I have understood my crime, you shall then conclude me to be ingrateful and perfidious, as you have branded me to my reproach, or that if it be the happiness that insolently triumphs over my misfortune, which hinders the effect of my justification when I shall know from what offence I am to vindicate my self, I will not only discharge my self of that vow which you have commanded me to make, but I shall most willingly sacrifice to your just revenge the remainder of that miserable life which the weapons of my happy Rival have left me.

In this manner *Stilicon* express'd himself with a behaviour wherein the Princess might easily observe all the signs of a true passion: so that she was a little perplex'd to find out a conformity between that which appeared of *Stilicon's* love, and the proofs which she believ'd she had of his infidelity. The diversity of thoughts which arose in her mind upon this subject, oblig'd her to look upon him, during his discourse, with an observing eye, and with some marks of admiration. So that when he had done speaking, preparing her self to answer with a forc'd countenance, "True it is, *Stilicon*, said she, that you have given me some cause to complain, by discovering to the Emperour what has pass'd between us, and that it was not necessary to give him the knowledge of what should have been conceal'd from all the world: but I confess I have deserv'd it by my own fault, seeing that I had not been expos'd to that discontent that I may find thereby, had I with more moderation receiv'd the information of that infidelity of which I may have accus'd you. It had been perhaps enough to have let you understand without being so outrageous, that I had discovered your intentions, for had I been less apprehensive of that knowledge, you had had less reason to believe that you were not a person indifferent in my esteem. It is true, *Stilicon*, that I was in an error, and by that resentment which I imprudently

" imprudently made known, I let you see something more favourable in your behalf, than
 " all that you could have discern'd in my more obliging behaviour. But if I committed that
 " fault, do not you commit another no less unpardonable, in reducing me to a necessity
 " of unfolding to you, that which I have already let you too apparently perceive. And
 " would you be more satisfied, when rather to obey the Emperour than to convince you, I
 " must be forced to confess, that I am not to be a cover for your real passion, since another
 " possesses your heart, while in outward appearance you address your ambitious services
 " the Niece of *Theodosius*. However I have still so much respect for you, that upon no oc-
 " casion that may seem to oblige me, I shall ever discover the truth to the Emperour: For
 " had I done so, *Stilicon*, it may be you would not have found him so favourable as now you
 " prove him, at least if he should not concern himself in the offence, so much as either side
 " might expect, he would however stand neuter between us. " But, *said Stilicon inter-*
 " *rupting her through the violence of his passion*) why do you spare a criminal by delaying to
 " convict him of a crime, the knowledge whereof would shame him to death? who is that
 " who possesses my heart, while the Princess *Serena* serves only for the cloak of my real
 " passion? Which is that among mortal beauties, that can make a counterfeit of the fairest
 " person of the world, and the niece of *Theodosius*? " I did not think, *said Serena very fierce-*
 " *ly*, that you could have been ignorant of that, having shewn you the Letters that you had
 " written to her, and which you have confessed to be your own hand: besides that it would
 " be a vain thing to inform you, that which your heart and your conscience sufficiently con-
 " vince you of. But since you desire it and the Emperour has commanded me, I will let
 " you see that which you little regarded when I shewed it, and no question but having had
 " so much time since, you are now prepared against that trouble, which was not so favour-
 " able to you at the first sight, as a thing that does not usually accompany innocency.

After she had spoken these words, she presented him the Letters which she had brought
 with her on purpose, as knowing before that she was to come to hear his justification.
Stilicon desiring leave to peruse them in her presence, had no sooner cast his eyes upon the
 first, but without reading it he opened another, of which when he had seen the first words
 and the subscription, he did the same with all the rest, without troubling himself to read
 them, and putting them up as they were before, and looking upon the Princess with a coun-
 tenance, full of all the signs of joy and tranquillity, that had not appear'd in his face for
 some days before; " Thanks be to Heaven, Madam, *said he*, that my misfortune is no sadder,
 " than it appears to me this day: and that the cunning of my adversaries who intended my
 " ruine, will now serve to make me more happy, by giving me to understand as you have
 " done me the honour to tell me, that I am not a person indifferent in your thoughts. But
 " if it were lawful for me to accuse you, of any cruelty upon this occasion, I might complain
 " of the miseries which you have so long made me endure, and which without all question,
 " had been at an end as soon as they began, had you had so much kindness, as then to have
 " let me know what I this day understand. " How *Stilicon, said Serena*, will you deny
 " to have wrote these letters to *Irene*? " No Madam, *said he*, that is none of my intention:
 " For since *Irene*, for whom I had a respect, is willing to make that known which I always
 " kept private; I must confess that I did write to her those Letters, and many others which
 " they have not shewn you, as not perhaps for their purpose, and that I wrote according to
 " my real intentions, for I had a love for her: But Madam, *Irene* is at *Constantinople*, and
 " though for giving those letters to my Enemies to do me a prejudice, I ought very much
 " to suspect her; she knows that there are persons in the Court, who are not ignorant of e-
 " very particular that passed between us. And I submit to all the punishments, that a per-
 " son truly guilty can deserve, if she dares affirm that for these six years last past, there has
 " been any correspondence between us. True it is, that some time before *Theodosius* came
 " to the Empire, I saw her, I found her amiable, and did really love her. Nevertheless be-
 " cause the Emperour had manifested to me, an intention which he had to marry me to *Isi-*
 " *dora*, the daughter of *Maximinus*; I concealed the love I had for *Irene*, for fear of dis-
 " pleasing him. But because *Flavian* then courted her to espouse her, and that I was un-
 " willing to hinder a match which her Father desired, she took it so ill that she gave her con-
 " sent to him, and broke off with me, and in a short time after she married *Flavian*, and
 " went with him to *Rome*. You know very well, Madam, that she was there a long time,
 " before I had devoted my life to your service; nor will you ever find, that since that time
 " I ever wrote to her, no not after the death of her Husband, which gave me opportunity
 " enough had I minded it: nor did I ever see her since but in publick, either during my
 " stay at *Rome* with the Emperour, or since her return to *Constantinople*. This is a truth
 " which she will not presume to deny, besides that, *Leon, Justinus*, her woman *Sabina*,
 " who

“ who were the confidents of our affection, and present when we broke off, as being done
 “ at their house, can inform you of all that ever pass'd between us. *Rufinus* himself had
 “ some knowledge thereof, whom I consulted then, as not being in a condition for me to
 “ look upon him at that time either as my Rival or competitor: since that time he him-
 “ self has kept an intimate correspondence with *Irene*, for since she came to the Court, he
 “ was employed to treat with her about certain affairs of concernment, wherein she her self
 “ desired rather to make use of him than of me, which makes me really assured that it was
 “ *Rufinus* that got these letters from her, and who has contrived the whole treachery.
 “ only that *Arbogastus*, more gallant than he, would needs take it upon himself. *Ira*, said
Serena, (interrupting a second time) how do you explain that letter, which makes mention of
 a Tournament, wherein you were to be the Champion of *Irene* in private, though another was to
 give you the honour of it: and where you speak of an imprese that carried a dubious meaning,
 which I cannot but take for that Syren which you bare at the last tilting, and which has no less a
 relation, to the sound of *Irene's* name than of mine. Ah! Madam, cried *Stilicon*, in the ve-
 ry explanation of the words I perceive the comment of *Rufinus*, and there is nothing more pal-
 pable but that that very day wherein he gave you them, he contrived this piece of treachery. I
 confess his interpretation is very ingenious, and that though my misfortune in not having dated
 my letters, as it is not usual to date such kind of Epistles, it might have perplexed me more than
 all the rest, by means of that unlucky explanation of my dubious imprese, were it not easy to il-
 lustrate the truth as well in this particular as in the rest, and to make it appear to you by a thou-
 sand witnesses, that this happened at a Tournament that was held presently after the Death of *Prince*
Arcadius, when it was the Emperor's pleasure that I should enter the Lists, as the Champion
 of *Hidora*. And though I loved *Irene* better than *Widora*, I not only wrote her that letter, but I
 enter'd into the Lists with a great Y for my Cypher, the letter with which as well the name of *Irene*,
 as of *Hidora* begins, and upon my shield I bare a Heart, pierced through with a dart with this
 Motto,

MORE FOR LOVE, THAN OUT OF OBEDIENCE.

Whereby *Hidora* might believe that it was my inclination, as well as the command of the Empe-
 rour which engaged me to her service: and *Widora* might judge that the love which I had for her,
 was more prevalent than the commands of the Emperor. But Madam it is not enough for me
 to justify myself by the words of my own mouth: For since you have the goodness to know the truth
 of my innocency, though it be no difficult thing to apprehend it by reason, by my actions and by all
 outward probabilities, you may be pleas'd to inform your self further, from the mouths of *Irene*
 her self, of *Leo*, *Justin* and *Sabinus*, who are all alive at Court, and know all the particulars of
 that Amour, that neither made a very great noise, nor was of any long continuance. *Rufinus* him-
 self, though in my opinion he has divided this scandal against those persons as well as my self,
 will not have the impudence to contest the truth, or to disown what at that time he understood from
 my own mouth: Be pleas'd Madam to let me entreat the Emperor, that they may all appear face
 to face: and though he be ignorant to this day of the offence that I committed, in preferring my
 own inclination to the obedience which I owed to him, I hope his goodness will pardon me, and
 will not refuse to assist me with his power, to illustrate a truth on which my life depends. “ No,
 (said *Serena* with a mild and cheerful look, and different from what it had been ever since his
 “ misfortune) there is no need to engage the authority of the Emperor, or the testimony
 “ of so many witnesses in your justification, for I am satisfied of the truth thereof, as well
 “ by the discourse as by your behaviour, without seeking after any farther proof to make a
 “ great noise in the world. The error wherewith cunning and subtilty has lead me, has proved
 “ very hurtful to my repose and it may be to my honour: and I should be sorry beyond mea-
 “ sure for it, did I not believe that you will forget it, and that I shall be able to make satis-
 “ faction. In the mean time be assur'd, that your Enemies have not no advantage by their
 “ imposture, and therefore if you will but seek to recover your self, as speedily as I desire
 “ and earnestly request you to do, you shall have me the last Person to observe that it has but
 “ augmented my contempt of *my self*, and my disdain of *Arbogastus*.

Stilicon heard those words with such a transportation of joy, that he was like to have
 done himself a mischief, for his health not being in a condition well to support it, he was
 upon the point of swooning. *Serena* perceived it by the several changes in his countenance,
 so that she began to be afraid, and to take care to call for help, when *Stilicon* struggling to o-
 vercome that weakness, which the excess of his joy had caus'd, on a sudden laid his hands
 upon one of *Serena's* that he saw next him, and laying his lips thereto with a transportation
 of mind, that he could by no means master, he better and more plainly interpreted his

Meaning by his gesture, than those few minutes would have permitted him to have done in words. *Serena*, who probably at another time would not have so patiently endured such a rudeness, though that she might easily bear with it now, and that she owed that reparation to the mischief she had done him, and to the blood which she had caused him to lose. However, she took away her hand in a short time, when the transported Lover beheld her with eyes that spake to her at once both of his love and innocency, and yet hardly finding words to express his thoughts in the disorder of his mind, *Now it is, Madam*, said he, *that I am more confirm'd than ever, that it is my Duty to die for you; and as I was about to lose my life through the excess of my grief, now I feel that my joy threatens it with the same danger; however, I will do what lies in me, that I may enjoy the favours with which you bless me, and I have hopes, if you permit me to live, that I shall live both to adore and serve you.*

He had said more, but that the Emperour, who by this time believ'd he had given him leisure enough to explain himself, return'd into the Chamber with the Empress: *Serena* retired from the place where she was sitting, to give her way. And the Emperour knew well by her looks, and by *Stilicon's* countenance, that they beter understood one another than they had done before. However, being resolv'd to be farther inform'd, laying his head to *Stilicon's*, he ask'd him in his ear whether he had made peace with *Serena*, "Yes," "Sir," reply'd *Stilicon in an extasie*, and I should be the most ingrateful and treacherous person in the world, if any thing could be more dear to me than the opportunities of sacrificing to your service, that life which this day is mine through your only goodness. The Emperour testified his satisfaction, and after he had desired him not to seek any revenge upon two persons that would be sufficiently punish'd by their own shame, he went his way together with the Empress and *Serena*, who at her departure by a favourable glance gave him hopes of being now more happy than ever he was before.

The same day, the Emperour having heard the particulars of all that had pass'd from *Serena's* lips, and being confirm'd in what *Stilicon* had had said for himself, by the proofs which he understood thereof, rightly apprehended that all the whole contrivance proceeded from the management of *Ruffinus*, though he had intigated *Arbogastus* to act; and he attributed all the kindness which he had observ'd him to shew *Irene*, to be but the plot he had to make use of her in this design. As the Emperour was full of virtue and true plain dealing, the whole contrivance displeas'd him; and though *Ruffinus* for his wit, and his compliance with the Emperour in those things which he most affect'd, was in great credit with him, yet he no sooner saw him but he gave him a very sharp reproof, telling him plainly, that such cunning tricks of knavery were not only displeasing to him, but unworthy a person that pretended to any reputation, or made any profession of virtue; that by his abominable subtilties he had like to have lost two men of great merit, and great service, and that if he persevered in those kind of practices, he should not continue that kindness which he had for him. *Ruffinus* was very much astonish'd at the Emperour's discourse, though he had all the reason in the world to expect it; however he heard it with all the patience and submission imaginable. So that when he saw himself convinc'd of the truth, and found that the Emperour, instead of suffering himself to be deceiv'd by his endeavours to lay all the blame upon *Arbogastus*, revil'd the lowness of his spirit, for joyning interests with him against *Stilicon*, at that very time when he endeavour'd to throw him out of his favour by his own sly reports and tales, easily mastering the shame of what he had done by his prompt impudence, and affecting more courage than indeed he had, *I must confess, Sir*, said he, *that I have committed a fault, but it was through that presumption that made me so bold as to think I might deserve the Princess's favour, and if that fault might be pardon'd me, though my Rivals, to whom your Majesty, by your goodness and your favours, has made me equal, committed the same offence, I may have some reason to hope that the same goodness will pardon all other faults which that error led me into; in regard that policy and deceit, though not allowable in other things, are not so criminal in love proceedings. I must confess*, said the Emperour, *they are more pardonable in love, than in all other acts of enmity and hostility, and for that reason I shall more easily forget them. But seeing they are altogether fruitless, and to no purpose in love affairs, and that you to so little effect made use thereof in that love which you had for Serena, 'tis my pleasure that you think no more of her; for in short, Serena is not for you; not but that I will advance you as high as he that shall espouse her, and uphold you up in a condition, if you continue faithful wherein you shall have no cause to envy the Husband of Serena. But because her inclinations are no way favourable to your thoughts, and for that you always knew that I never would put a force upon them, besides many other reasons, that had I any such intention, would not permit me, therefore it is my pleasure that you think no more upon Serena.*

Upon these words of the Emperour, *Ruffinus* stood like one bewitch'd: and though for a person of his humour there was consolation enough to be found in the Emperour's promises; nevertheless, whether it were through his ambition, which made him look upon the quality of being the Emperour's Nephew, to be a dignity beyond all others, or through that love which *Serena* might infuse into a heart more ambitious than his, he could not submit without feeling a mortal grief for the severe Law which the Emperour imposed upon him. However, his answer, with a great deal of submission, was, that he would obey him as he ought, and though it were impossible to remove *Serena's* love from his heart, so long as he lived, he would sooner die than fail of his Duty and Obedience.

In the mean while *Stilicon* had receiv'd such considerable help from the change of his condition with *Serena*; and the Princess her self, to make amends for the injury that she had done him, confirm'd the affection that she had for him with such obliging proofs, and so different from those which she had been accustomed to give him, that in a few days such a progress was made in his cure, as surpass'd their expectations. And to shorten my story, in a few days after he was perfectly healed, and found himself in a condition to quit his Chamber, and go abroad. *Arbogastus* grew well much about the same time, though he was infinitely vex'd and disturb'd at the news which *Ruffinus* told him of *Stilicon's* happiness, and the ill success of all their Stratagems.

The Emperour had visited him several times as well as *Stilicon*; and though there were a great difference in the friendship he had for both, yet it was not apparent in the value which he put upon them, so that he believing himself to be in as good a condition as ever with the Emperour, and vanquishing by the greatness of his courage whatever might seem terrible to another, he shew'd himself at Court with more boldness than ever, and with greater hopes to attain the enjoyment of *Serena*. She entertain'd him by the Emperour's order with the same civility as formerly, nor did she ever speak to him of the fraud he had practis'd; but she treated him so indifferently, that thereby he easily perceiv'd the bad effect which it had produc'd; for at the same time, and in his presence she carried her self toward *Stilicon* in so obliging a manner, but still within the bounds of a severe reserv'dness, so that he found that his juggling had but made his condition worse, and that *Serena's* carriage towards him proceeded only from the directions of the Emperour, by whose command *Stilicon* and he were once more reconciled in his presence; and after that he enjoy'd them no more to venture upon those extremities one against another, and that with so much earnestness, and that in such language, that there was little likelihood that whoever by disobeying his commands should run the hazard of incurring his displeasure, and of drawing upon him his disgrace, would find him so easie to be appeas'd: but though *Arbogastus* had for some time a respect to that consideration, which kept him from listening to the provocation that incited him to challenge *Stilicon*, and to venture a Duel with him, it could not however oblige him to have any converse with him, nor so much as to give him a good look; and *Stilicon* observing his carriage, behav'd himself towards him in the same manner, so that they met every day at the Emperour's and Princess's Apartments without speaking one to another, and in all proposals and all contests that happened at Court they always took the opposite part, by which all the world might judge that they would not long remain in that condition without embroyling themselves more than ever they had done.

As for *Ruffinus* he did not openly bustle either with the one or other, but privately he watch'd all opportunities to do both a mischief. And his greatest animosity being then against *Stilicon* as the most happy, and apparently the person for whose sake he was to renounce *Serena*, and being also, in regard of his love, link'd with *Arbogastus* in a common interest against him, it appear'd that he was still inclin'd for the Gaul against the *Vandal*, whom he would by his devices have ruined in the favour of *Serena*, and against whom without doubt he had not dissembled his malice, but out of respect to the Emperour's commands. But however, he acted with so much caution, that he discover'd his intentions to *Arbogastus* so closely, that *Stilicon* could not perceive how he mov'd against him. And for that the Emperour out of his goodness had always conceal'd from *Arbogastus*, that it was *Ruffinus* that had done him all the ill offices which *Stilicon* was charg'd withal, he had therefore some confidence in him, and accepted of his advice, as a person interest'd equally to himself in the ruine of his enemy, and he embrac'd it the more willingly, as not suspecting him upon the score of his love, as knowing that it was the Emperour's will that he should renounce his pretences to *Serena*. All this while the Princess entertain'd *Stilicon* with all the kindness which her wisdom and her virtue would allow her to shew: *Arbogastus* she treated civilly, but indifferently, and with little sign of any inclination for him. And for

Ruffinus, who had left off his suit, she looked upon as a person whom she little regarded. But it was time that *Arbogastus* should follow his destiny, to those bloody tragedies which he has caused, to be acted upon the Theatre of the world, and of which, Madam, by what I have said, and what remains for me to tell you, you understand the true original, not known to the greatest part of the world, though it hath severely felt the effects of its fury.

Arbogastus clearly understood that *Serena's* inclinations, were remote from any kindness to him, as they were favourable to *Stilicon*: and therefore seeing there remained but little hope one way, he turned his thoughts another; when the politick *Ruffinus*, who bent all the force of his wit to disturb *Stilicon's* happiness, and sought either to make use of *Arbogastus* to cross it, or to set 'em together by the ears, out of the hopes he had to be quit of them both, laid before him how that since he had laboured so long in vain to bend the heart of *Serena*, he was not any longer to employ his pains where he should reap no benefit: and therefore since there was nothing to be done that way, if he would follow his advice, he counselled him to make his addresses to the Emperour, who how favourable soever to *Stilicon*, would rather chose to admit into his alliance, a person descended from a long race of Kings; than a private Knight who was only what he had made him: that though he lov'd *Stilicon*, and had procured his justification before *Serena*, he had not however declared or signified by any discourse, that he intended to bestow her upon him; and that if he had had a design to to have depriv'd *Arbogastus* of all hope as well as *Ruffinus*, he would as well have forbid him to think any more upon *Serena*, seeing he could not doubt but that Corrivallship would every day enrage him against *Stilicon*: and that in leaving him the liberty to court *Serena*, when he had forbid the same to a person no less in his favour than *Stilicon*; it seem'd that he himself open'd a way to the means of obtaining her. In brief, he insus'd into him so many things, wherein he found so much probability, that *Arbogastus*, bold enough of himself, and sufficiently conceited of the merit of his own deeds, and of the nobleness of his extraction, wherein he thought he surpass'd *Stilicon* by many degrees, easily perswaded himself to follow his advice, resolving without delay to address himself to the Emperour, and to demand his Niece in recompence of his services. It would not be only very difficult but little to the purpose, to repeat to you the language which he used to obtain his desires, but 'tis very probable that he did not forget, to insist upon the advantages of his birth and services. The Emperour was not at all offended at his discourse, for as he had not forbid him to wait upon *Serena*, he nothing admir'd to hear him make such a request. Therefore gave him this answer, that in respect of his birth and services he well deserved his Niece, for that he did not think him inferiour either in the one or the other, to any person upon whom he could bestow her: But he had promised *Serena* not to force her inclinations, and that if they were not favourable to him, he could not put any violence upon them for his sake. This language very much astonish'd *Arbogastus*, who knowing already that *Serena* had no kindness for him, but that *Stilicon* possess'd all her affection; took this answer of the Emperour for a denial: so that after he had paused a while to find out words, to express what his resentment insus'd into him; "How Sir, said he, ought not *Serena's* will to submit to yours? do you not reign, and are not you her Emperour?" I am an Emperour, replied the mild Prince, but I am no Tyrant, and though I were as much concern'd for my self, as you would have me concern my self for you, I would neither force my Niece nor any daughter of the Empire to marry. I suffered you to wait upon her, when I forbid the same privilege to another, because I thought you not unworthy of her; and could you have gained her affections, I should readily have consented to the choice she had made: But if it be so, that she does not freely consent to what you desire of me, I advise you and request you to think upon some other rewards, which you may as easily demand, and which I will easily grant if they be within my power to bestow. All other recompence, replied *Arbogastus*, is low and contemptible to him that has the courage to aspire to the Princess *Serena*, and perhaps there is no other recompence, can reward the services of a person equal to my self. I confess, (said the Emperour with a great deal of moderation) that your services are highly to be valued, and that there are few commands in the Empire which you may not aspire to, and you shall find a' so that I will deny you nothing, which my honour or my justice will permit me to grant you: but it beoves you not to think it strange, if I do not that for you which I would not do for my self in the same case. I see Sir, said the audacious *Arbogastus*, that *Serena* is ordained for *Stilicon* and not for *Arbogastus*, but though by many probabilities I had reason to believe it, I had thought Sir, that having been as prodigal of my blood and my life, to serve you as well and as often as ever *Stilicon*; and that being descended from an extraction less disproportionable to yours, than that of a Vandal Knight, you might have done justice to the birth and services of both the

one and the other, by honouring a Prince with your alliance, and recompencing a Knight with such dignities as I should not have enjoy'd him.

Those words displeas'd *Theodosius*, who as all the world knows was as apt to be provok'd, as easie to be appeas'd: however moderating his passion through the knowledge which he had of his humour; *I did not believe* (said he to *Arbogastus* very coldly) *that I had till now needed your instruction, for the distribution of my rewards: nor do I yet think that I have been so sparing of them as to your self, to give you any reason to complain or to taunt me with your services. But however it were that you deserv'd what I did for you, I am of opinion that I have done for you as much as you deserv'd. And for Stilicon, as I do not make so much difference between you as you pretend, as I am satisfied in his services and am convinc'd of the nobleness of his Extraction; I cannot think I have done any injury to my own, in permitting him to serve my Niece. And if he have been more fortunate than you to gain her affection, I think I may do for him what I would have done for you upon the same occasion, without your having any reason to murmur at it. No Sir,* said *Arbogastus*, *I shall not murmur at it, for murmuring is beneath a spirit like mine: But it may be I shall not endure it with patience, for while I live and wear a sword by my side, Stilicon perhaps may not be so sure of his happiness. You forget the respect you owe me.* (said the Emperour, calling an angry look upon him) *but had I not some regard to the passion that makes you thus fly out, I would perhaps make you an example to those, that suffer themselves to be transported with presumption and arrogance: and so get you to your own home and stir not thence without my order, till you hear what course I shall take.* *Sir,* replied *Arbogastus*, *give me leave to tell you that I was not born among your subjects, and though the Roman Emperours brought the Gauls and Germans to submit to their yoke, yet my Country was never subject to it, nor endured their dominions; and you know well that it is from their Franchise or freedom, that they retain the name of Franks as well as that which our Ancesters gave it: be so kind then as to let me go to receive commands in another place from my Sovereign, and such a Sovereign that will be the more favourable to me, as being of his own extraction.* Be gone then *Arbogastus*, said the Emperour; *and rid a quiet and peaceable Court, of one that will eternally trouble its repose. But quit Constantinople in three days, for I give you no longer time to stay.*

As he was a person ill beloved, and whose turbulent, insolent and fiery spirit every body hated, there was not one that offer'd himself to make his peace with the Emperour, nor did he signify any inclination to desire it, but on the contrary he meditated in his mind a thousand mischievous designs, the mildest of which was to carry away *Serena* by force, or to kill *Stilicon* and *Ruffinus*: (for by that time he had found out the tricks which the latter had put upon him, and the ill offices which he had done him, at a time that he pretended the greatest friendship to him:) but finding that he could bring none of them to perfection, seeing that the Emperour knowing the impetuous fury of his spirit, would not let either *Stilicon* nor *Ruffinus* stir, but where he went himself or else very well guarded, he committed his revenge to other contrivances which he had in his head, and departed out of *Constantinople* with a numerous and magnificent Train, such as a person truly noble, and who had held the most honourable commands in the Army, and had received all the most bountiful favours, that a most grateful and most liberal Emperour could bestow upon him, could have to attend him. Two days after his departure, an Officer of the Emperour's Guards, presented him a Letter which an unknown person, and one whom he could not lay hold on, had thrown in the street as he rode along: wherein after the Emperour had open'd it he found these lines.

Arbogastus to the Emperour Theodosius.

Since I have received no less injury from the ingratitude of a Prince, than the fortune of his subjects, I scorn to take my revenge upon his subjects, to let a Prince understand that he did not know me, when he thought he could scotfree provoke me. He shall find that it is no more in *Stilicon* or in *Ruffinus*, that I seek the object of my just resentment, that is no more the love of *Serena* that busies my thoughts, but 'tis at the Emperour and the Empire that I aim; and as low and miserable as he thinks me, I will arm such a force against him as shall shake the Empire, and make the Emperour tremble.

The insolency of that Letter, enflam'd the best part of the Court with anger, others contemned it, nor could the Emperour chuse but smile at it: and without doubt they had

despis'd it more, had they foreseen the effect of that menace, which they saw happen in a short time after. The Emperour declar'd to all the Court how he had dealt by *Arbogastus*, not being willing that they should suspect that he had given any just ground of discontent to a person whom he had at other times thought worthy of his esteem; a person who had great skill in war, and who had done him most considerable Services, but such as had been liberally and magnificently rewarded. So that at last as he had for some time before dislik'd his violent, seditious and incompatible spirit, he shew'd himself glad for his departure; and all the Court, whether from his example, or for other reasons, did the same. In short, the Court appear'd as if it had put on a more calm and serene countenance after he was gone, all consultations and all affairs being managed more peaceably. But if the separation of the two Favourites caus'd by *Ruffinus's* envy against *Stilicon*, and *Stilicon's* disgust against the wiles of *Ruffinus*, occasion'd at any time any disturbance in Council, it was pacified by the prudence of the Emperour; so that no blood was shed, nor no extremities ventured upon, to which the violence of *Arbogastus* often transported them. *Ruffinus* forbore to visit *Serena* in her Apartment, for which he was made amends by the favours of the Emperour, who contrary to the custom and humour of many other Princes, never took off his love from those whom he once thought worthy his affection, but in his heart he burn'd with jealousy against *Stilicon*, while *Stilicon* happy in the Emperour's favour, and the affection of the Princess, not being molested by *Arbogastus*, nor openly by *Ruffinus*, liv'd a life the most comfortable in the world; and out of the reliance which he had upon the Emperour's goodness, who had openly declared himself in favour of his pretensions to *Serena*, he doubted not but in a short time to complete his felicity, when all his hopes were dash'd, and all resolutions overturn'd or delayed by the cruel effects of the threats and disgust of *Arbogastus* which begun to break out, when it was least thought upon, and that into such a rage that made all the world feel it. It would not be necessary, Madam, for me to repeat the story, as well for that it is so well known to all the world, and because there are so few particulars of importance which either you or this illustrious Society can be ignorant of: but since it behoves me for the compleating my rehearsal to make some mention thereof, I shall only run it over so succinctly that I may not tire you with prolixity.

The End of the Seventh Part of
PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

The Eighth Part.

BOOK I.



Arbogastus made haste to the Port where he intended to take shipping, and the farther he travelled from the Magnificent City of *Constantinople*, the more he felt his love and jealousy to wear away. But if those two passions lost their vigour in his Soul, as their fury slacken'd, the fierce *Gaul* reforc'd the violence of his implacable malice. He was mightily pleas'd in having propos'd the Emperour for the only object of his revenge, and his proud humour that chiefly delighted in such enterprises as promised him the loudest fame, causing him to look upon *Stilicon* and *Ruffinus* as Subjects too mean for the exercise of his courage, he scorn'd to take them for the mark of his mutinous thoughts, or to aim at any thing less than the death of the Great *Theodosius*, and the overthrow of his Empire. For the accomplishment of a design so extraordinary, he resolv'd in his mind various bold and violent resolutions. And having examined them severally with all the consideration that his natural rashness would give him leave, at length he pitch'd upon that which he thought most conformable to the Grandeur of the Enterprize. In order thereunto he determin'd to go among the *Gauls*, where, by vertue of his Birth, he had great power, where in all likelihood he had hopes, that since they were a warlike Nation that lov'd liberty, they would be easily incited to take up Arms for the recovery of their freedom, and to shake off a yoke that they so impatiently endured.

After a long Voyage he arriv'd at the famous Port of *Marseilles*, and finding the Province of the *Romans* full of armed Soldiers, he understood that *Valentinian* with a powerful Army was march'd into the Country of the *Gauls*, to fix himself in the Center of his Empire, either to render himself more formidable to the Nations under his Dominions, or to be nearer at hand to defend them from their Enemies. *Arbogastus* therefore contrives the death of the young Emperour, that he might afterwards employ his Forces against *Theodosius*; to which purpose he thrusts himself into his Army, is extremely diligent about his person, gains the Soldiers by his liberality and good management; and to make himself more considerable, he levies Soldiers in his own Country, and reinforces the *Roman* Army. Fearing however that for want of the love of the Pretorian Guards, he should not be able of himself to bring to pass those strange revolutions which he intended, he casts his eyes upon *Eugenius*, a person of a good aspect, bold, eloquent, and a lover of change. Nevertheless he does not presently enter into a particular league with him: he sees him seldom, that he might speak well of him without being suspected; and praising all his actions from the highest to the meanest, he appears so generous, that the *Romans* esteem him the more. *Eugenius* acknowledges his kindness, and desires his friendship, which after *Arbogastus* had accepted, he does him all manner of good offices upon all occasions, discourages to him a good

part of his secret, the better to inveigle him into a confidence of his fidelity. They mutually bequeath their Friends one to another; and their Faction growing powerful, they soon after begin to talk openly of the cowardise and simplicity of the Emperour. In the mean while they deal underhand, to have the most important charges of the Household bestowed upon their own creatures, and by presents and promises gain'd to their party the Officers already preferr'd.

But, Madam, since it grows late, I know you are not desirous that I should relate every particular of a dismal attempt, the news whereof has already spread it self through all the world. It will suffice to let you know that the Emperour was strangled at *Vianz* upon the *Rhine*, and that the Officers of his Chamber Committed that Parricide by the orders of *Arbogastus*. That Barbarian having satiated his eyes with so horrid a spectacle, gave it out himself, that *Valentinian*, struck with a panick terrour, had slain himself. That that Prince who was so fainthearted at another time, as to flee to *Constantinople* upon the bare report that *Maximus* was marching against him at the head of an Army, was not so much master of his grief as to hear a little bad news which they reported to him, and that he had kill'd himself for fear of being expos'd to misfortunes, the danger whereof he only fancied to himself: presently, Romans, he cry'd, *the Heavens declare, that they do not in such an extraordinary manner deliver you from Valentinian, but only to shew you, that they themselves take care of your honour, and that they were weary to see the noblest Nation the world to groan under the Sovereignty of a Prince unworthy to give them Laws. Think not however, that in depriving you of an Emperour, they intend to expose you to any disorder that may breed confusion in your Government. They present you a renowned personage to fill the Throne of the Cæsars, they present you Eugenius, the famous, the belov'd Eugenius: he was born for you, he will be your companion, rather than your master. Through his wit, his courage and experience you shall enjoy under a fortunate Reign, whatever happiness your predecessors tasted under Augustus, Trajan or Constantine.*

The Soldiers assemble in great numbers, and as they were all gain'd before, they by their acclamations applaud the proposal of *Arbogastus*. The bold *Gaul* loses no time, he takes *Eugenius*, he seats him upon his Target, commands him to be lifted up, and having shewed him to the *Romans*, caus'd him to be proclaimed Emperour. Though his Soul was capable of an unlimited ambition, and that his boiling humour hinder'd him oftentimes from acting with circumspection, at such a time as this he would not suffer it to dazle him, out of prudence, not being willing to hazard the usurpation of the Sovereign power; he set before his eyes all the obstacles that could oppose him in so great and ticklish an undertaking; he considered that he was not of the same Religion as the *Romans*, nor had he for a long time been known in their Armies, to hope for their consent and submission. So he gave way to another to undergo the danger, not doubting but to govern the Empire, while *Eugenius* carried the Title of Emperour. A lofty Title, that only serves to draw envy upon those, that not being able to obtain it by election, lay violent hands upon the Sovereignty. The event of his design was very prosperous, for he got the good will of *Eugenius*, either by reason of the service which he had done him, so important and fresh in memory, or through the prevailing power that he had over his affection. And though revenge were the mark and goal to which all his actions tended, yet seemingly he pretended to make no other use of the Forces and Treasure of the Empire, which were all at his disposal, but for the establishment and honour of the Empire. But foreseeing that the generous *Theodosius* would soon take Arms in revenge of *Valentinian*, and to the destruction of *Eugenius*, he distributed new Largesses among the Soldiers, and after he had made a general Muster, and strengthen'd the Army with an addition of Auxiliary Troops. As soon as he found himself strong enough, not only to settle *Eugenius* at *Rome*, but also to assail the Eastern Empire it self, he took the command of the Army, and after he had given all necessary orders, he march'd directly toward the *Alpes*.

The great *Theodosius* with no small sorrow receiv'd the dreadful news of this revolution; and because he hated injustice naturally, and had ever loved *Valentinian*, for those reasons which you have already heard: he rendez vouz'd his Forces together with all the speed he could, giving out Commissions for new Levies: *Stilicon* and *Ruffinus* encouraged him to this enterprize, and whether it were that they design'd to supplant one another at the Council-Board, or in *Severna's* favour, whom they desperately loved, or whether they were incens'd against their Rival, they redoubled their pains and care, and contributed large sums toward an Expedition of so much consequence. The Emperour, who well knew the nimbleness of *Arbogastus*, would not stay for so numerous an Army as he might have had, but fearing lest the fierce *Gaul* should enter into his Provinces, to make them the Seat of the

the War, and move his Subjects to sedition, he took the Field with an Army in number inferior to his Enemies. He gave *Stilicon* the leading of the Vanguard, composed of three thousand *Romans*, two thousand *Vandals*, as many *Alains*, and ten thousand *Goths*: and keeping *Ruffinus* near his person, he followed *Stilicon* with the Body of his Army, consisting of about sixty thousand fighting men. The eyes of the whole world were fix'd upon this war, attending the success with terrour, while all good men put up their Prayers to Heaven for the great *Theodosius*, with little hopes of seeing him a Conquerour. While the two Empires with grief beheld from the top of the *Alpes* all their Forces ready to give battel, and to destroy one another, *Eugenius* and *Arbogastus* having possessed themselves of the most advantageous Posts, *Ruffinus* sends one of his Confidants laden with Gold and Jewels into the Enemies Camp; and *Stilicon* sent his Squire, called *Barbarius*, upon the same errand. *Theodosius* adjoyned Piety to his Courage, he lifts his eyes to Heaven, and looking upon that as the fountain of all success, he begs relief and succour from the God whom we adore and whom we often call the God of Battel.

This Battel which was fought between the two Emperours was so far famous, that all the earth having heard the event and circumstances thereof, it will not be necessary, Madam, to give you a farther description. I shall only say thus much, that neither *Eugenius* nor *Arbogastus* wanted either courage or discretion; that their Soldiers were well disciplin'd, and in number so far exceeded those of *Theodosius*, that there was little likelihood that he could have sustain'd the weight of such a war, much less have obtain'd the victory. All the famous and brave Actions of *Stilicon* that so signaliz'd him in the first onset, could not preserve the Vanguard which he led, for that was defeated, and ten thousand *Goths* cut in peices, and *Theodosius* himself found himself surrounded in the midst of four and twenty thousand men. In this extremity that great personage lost neither his courage, nor his judgment; but resolving to die with his Arms in his hand, or to open his way with the point of his Sword, he encouraged his men to follow him, and valiantly to believe themselves. In the interim *Arbatius* one of the principal Commanders of *Eugenius's* Army revolts to *Theodosius*, followed by the Confident of *Ruffinus*, and those Soldiers whom he commanded, and immediately after in came *Barbarius* with a reinforcement of twelve thousand *Vandals*, and four thousand *Spaniards*. At their arrival the Easterlings took heart; but being yet inferior in number to *Arbogastus's* Forces, neither the industry nor valour of *Stilicon* could have secur'd an entire defeat, if *Theodosius*, having rallied a great part of the Army, had not come to the assistance of his Favourites with a greater power than theirs, thundering in upon his enemies with a valour beyond wonder, which rendred him equal to the virtue of the ancient *Cæsars*; *Stilicon* also seconded him vigorously; nor was *Ruffinus* wanting to perform such deeds as were worthy to be registred in the book of fame. On the other side the furious *Arbogastus* forgot nothing to accomplish his revenge, enlivened by the presence of his illustrious Adversary, that gave a new heat to his anger, running from place to place to encourage his Soldiers by his words, and by his actions. He sought also every where to find out *Theodosius*; and because that valiant Prince did not forbear to thrust himself into the midst of his Enemies with such an undaunted resolution that I am not able to express, they did not fail to meet, to know one another, and to come to handy blows. *Arbogastus* puff'd up with the honour which his good fortune had given him, endeavours to overcome the greatest man living, and the illustrious *Theodosius*, fired with a just indignation, prepares to punish the rash *Gaul*, when their Troops coming to engage, caused them to separate, and carried them another way. They fought on both sides so obstinately, that their losses were little different: so that the Forces of *Theodosius* being inferior to those of the *Gaul*, Virtue had yielded the victory to number, had not the pious Emperour, casting up his eyes to Heaven, invoc'd the assistance of that Supreme Power that disposes as it pleases of the fortune of Empires. All the earth understands it with joy, and posterity will read it with admiration, that at that time there arose a most dreadful Tempest, that bore off the Enemies Darts, and gave new vigour to the Easterlings. The Army of *Theodosius* encouraged by such an extraordinary succour, and as it were sustain'd by an invincible Arm, redoubled the fury of the Combat with so much vigour, that at length the valiant *Theodosius* became entirely victorious: he takes *Eugenius*, cut in peices all his men; and the desperate *Arbogastus* being wounded by *Stilicon*, and seeing the entire defeat of his Army, sav'd himself by flight; but carrying along with him his punishment in his heart, and not knowing where to find a Sanctuary after such an attempt, and such a misfortune, he cut his Throat with his own Dgager, and punish'd himself for his own crimes. By the Emperour's command *Eugenius* lost his head. After that they gave thanks for a victory of so great importance: so that now the troubles of both Empires being absolutely appeas'd, all the

Potentates

potentates of the world sent Embassadors to *Theodosius*, according to their several interests. In the mean while that great personage, thought of nothing more than to establish his successors and to dye in peace: he retires to the pious and learned *Ambrosius*, a person of immortal reputation, and sends for his Son *Honorius* and the charming *Serena* his Niece: he bestows her upon *Stilicon*, as the most precious reward to which he could pretend, leaving that famous *Vandal* Tutor to his Son, whom he declares Emperour of the West, and sends back *Ruffinus* to *Constantinople*, to take the same charge of *Arcadius* who was to possess the western Empire. And thus Madam I am to finish a relation, that has taken up too much time, since you know that *Theodosius* dyed full of honour, and that *Stilicon* and *Ruffinus*, afterwards abusing their Authority, and the young years of their Masters, would have aspir'd to the Empire, but were punished for their Attempts, with the loss of their lives.

Martian had no sooner made an end of speaking, but the fair Queen of the *Cimbrians* return'd him thanks, with that most charming grace with which she was wont to gain all hearts: but as they were about to retire, they were surpris'd to see the King of the *Suevians* enter, whose new troubles gave him not a moment of repose. He saluted the most divine *Rosamond*, and the pensive Queen of the *Turingiens*: and not being able to conceal the marks of his disquiet, he told them with a kind of surly melancholly, that it was already day, and that such extraordinary sitting up would prejudice their health. He began to look sowlily also upon his lovely daughter, and was visibly about to have given her some severe language, at what time three or four of the Officers of the Queen of the *Cimbrians* Army, entred in a very great consternation, not minding that respect which they ought to have had in the presence of so many illustrious personages. The most considerable among them drew near to *Balamir*, and applying himself to him with a very earnest behaviour; "Sir, said he, yonder is a certain unknown Knight, followed by about five hundred men, who has defeated above a thousand *Cimbrians* in our Quarter, and defends himself at this present against a greater number, with a most admirable valour.

Balamir durst not take upon him to speake before *Rosamond*, but presented the Officer to the fair Queen, who while he was giving a more exact accompt to his Sovereign, the King of *Suevia* look'd upon him with a sparkling eye: For as the two opposite passions, that equally reigned in the heart of that violent Prince, filled him no less with the formidable Image of *Pharamond*, than with the fair Idea of *Polixena*, he presently bethought himself that such a Champion, could be no other than the invincible King of the *Franks*. This belief augmented his disdain, and looking upon the astonishment of the *Cimbrian*, to add new honour to that great Prince whom he mortally detested, he resolv'd to hasten to the revenge of his dear Son, believing that while he made use of part of the Army, he might oppress that valour by multitude, which would have drawn veneration from a person not prepossessed with hatred. *Balamir*, whose thoughts were quite different, as in whom his love for the *Cimbrian* Queen, was found intermix'd with all other laudable passions; conceiv'd a more generous esteem for the valiant Knight, and instead of desiring his death, he was willing to labour for his preservation: to which purpose he opposed the King of *Suevia's* design, as soon as he had knowledge thereof. He prayed him therefore to give him leave, that he might go and encounter that unknown Knight, he laid before him that such an occasion rather required some young man, than the presence of a great King: and that he in short desired it before another, as having the honour to command the Army of the *Cimbrian* Queen. The Princess *Albisinda*, whose natural sweetness rendred her an Enemy to violence, easily consented to *Balamir's* resolution: but though she durst not approve it before the King her Father, she had the satisfaction to see all that illustrious society of the same opinion. The two Queens who were not obliged to the same respect, undertook to speak: and being afraid of *Pharamond's* life, whose merit had made a strong impression in their souls, they were not wanting to joyn their entreaties and reasons with *Balamir's*. The rest of the company, unless it were the King of the *Burgundians*, were of the same mind with the two Queens, that the Prince of the *Huns* was to hasten to revenge the *Cimbrians*, and averr'd to the King of *Suevia*, that that strange Prince whom they talk'd of, could not be *Pharamond*. They told him that the generous King of the *Franks*, was no such person to follow the Example which he had set him to break the treaty, or at least that he would not be so imprudent to break it, with such an inconsiderable force. The King of *Suevia* provok'd, that he could neither give them an answer, nor moderate his choler, flying furiously out of the chamber; and *Balamir* also leaving the company, got to horse, and being followed by such Troops as he could hastily get thither, he flew to the place where the fight was maintained.

The day beginning to appear, gave them opportunity to discern what was done, so that

Balamir

Balamir no sooner observ'd the odds of the parties, and the valour of the Stranger; but that he chafed at the *Cimbrians*, and found the esteem which he had conceiv'd for his valiant adversary, to increase. He perceived nothing but what was brave in his countenance, and in his manner of fighting: he saw that he wounded, that he killed, and struck fire with his terrible sword, upon the bucklers of those that oppos'd him: and that carrying a terror wherever he bestowed his furious blows, he made the event of the skirmish doubtful; when the *Cimbrians* redoubling their strength, in the presence of the Prince that commanded them, pressed to kill the unknown Knight, laying their blows thick and threecfold upon him. But the undaunted Champion defended himself with a matchless force, and an extraordinary judgment: so that the generous *Balamir*, having encreased his good opinion of him, was resolv'd to hinder him from being oppress'd by the multitude. *Hold Cimbrians, hold*, cryed he, *and if ye will not deserve the name of Barbarians, as ye are called in most countries, forbear cowardly to overwhelm with number, a valour which ye ought to reverence.* These words had great authority among the *Cimbrians*, and they had hardly produced the effect which he expected, when that obliging Prince addressling himself to the Stranger; *Invincible Knight*, said he, *pardon our Soldiers, if they had no respect to a virtue that did them so much damage. Tell us if you can, what it is you seek for in these parts.*

The stranger testified his astonishment by the silence which he kept, at a time that he was obliged to return an answer, to the civilities of the Prince, and *Balamir* as accustom'd as he was to the sight of extraordinary personages, could not behold the Stranger without being struck with I cannot tell what to say of grand and heroick, which he had observ'd in few among many illustrious Warriours. While he was seriously considering him; the Stranger brake silence: and in answer to the most obliging language of *Balamir*; *Most generous Champion*, (said he, moderating the anger that had incens'd him) *can you think that I am your Enemy, without believing at the same time, that I am the most ungrateful among men. What judgment can you make of my heart, if you can doubt of its acknowledgment. It hath been moved as it ought to be with your carriage, which together with that which I have admir'd in your person, has entirely gained it. I am strangely covetous to put my self into your Army, and to try my fortune there, provided that the great Constance, to whom I am infinitely oblig'd, and whom I seek for every where, be not engaged in that of the King of the Franks. But as there is little likelihood, that he fights against the Allies of Honorius, or that he sides with Pharamond the most formidable Enemy of the Empire, I hope that without being wanting in my duty, I may offer you a life to which you have purchased a glorious right, by defending it in such a manner. You defended your self with so much valour,* replied the Prince, *that I laboured less for the preservation of your life, than to preserve my souldiers. Nevertheless I may not be altogether unserviceable to yours if you think good: and therefore since I see you bleed through your Arms, whereby I find you are wounded, we will if you please make hast to our Camp. There you shall find all the assistance you stand in need of, and after you have rested your self as much as you think requisite, you may depart for Francfort where you may find the illustrious Constance. If then the value which you have, for Constance that famous Roman, will permit you to take part with the fair Queen of the *Cimbrians*, you may joyn your self with many great Kings, and valiant Princes who have embrac'd her quarrel, and we shall be glad beyond measure, to have purchas'd so great an assistance, with the loss only of a thousand men.*

Concluding these words, without expecting an answer which could not but have been very civil, he began to take care for the relief of the unknown Knight, and finding in his looks the effect of his weariness, and the loss of a good quantity of blood, he caused him to be disarm'd, and such remedies to be applyed to his wounds, as were most ready at hand. He order'd a fresh Horse to be brought him, and causing a Soldier to get up behind him to sustain him in his Saddle, he gave all requisite commands for dressing the wounded, and burying the dead. The stranger had lost two hundred men, few of those that were left escaping without wounds, but the *Cimbrians* lost many more by far. The Prince who commanded them, had no sooner executed all those things which his charge oblig'd him to take care of, but he had a desire to know the name and quality of the unknown person: and therefore riding up to one of the Officers of his party, *Will you do me the kindness*, (said he very civilly) *to tell me whence you come, and the name of that valiant Knight under whom you march?* "Sir, (said the stranger very submissively) we are *Britains*, Natives of *Gallia Armorica*, lying upon the pleasant Banks of the *Loire*, and our illustrious Captain is called *Viridonix*: I neither know the name of his Country, nor what is his true quality; all that I can tell you, is, that he speaks our language, which is peculiar and difficult, which makes me think that he was certainly born a Subject of *Aldroec*, King of little *Britain*. As for the endowments of his person, I dare assure you, that how eminent so-

“ ever he appears for that valour which you have already observ’d, you will discover in
 “ him sundry other virtues more worthy of your esteem. But, Sir, (*said he, shewing him*
 “ a Britain more advanc’d in years) behold there an Officer, whose name is *Dinocus*, con-
 “ siderable both for his birth and merit, who can tell you more. He it was that lead us to
 “ follow the valiant *Viridonix*, and he is the only person among the *Britains* that can inform
 “ you of all the particulars which you desire to know. *Since he confides in so few persons,*
 “ (*said the discreet Prince of the Huns*) *I shall not make any farther enquiry: for though the great*
qualities of Viridonix made me a little curious, the knowledge of his design, and the considera-
tion of his virtue prohibit me from being desirous of that wherein I cannot satisfy myself with-
out displeasing a Knight of so much merit.

He had no sooner spoke those words, but he return’d to *Viridonix*, and that illustrious Stranger receiving him with a double measure of civility, and a redoubled joy, *I am infinitely pleas’d, Sir* said he, *to understand that it is to the great Balamir that I owe for the succour which I have receiv’d. But as I have the satisfaction, of not being oblig’d to any but an illustrious Prince, I hope you will not repent of the good offices which you have done me, when you shall better know me. I will tell you who I am, and will disclose to you the very thoughts of my heart, when I shall have a convenient opportunity: and if you find that my Birth and Dignity prove not altogether unworthy the care of the Prince of the Huns. you will it may be see that I have not so mean a name among men, but that fame has publish’d among you some report of my Actions.*

They continued their discourse as they rode along; and *Balamir* being willing to appoint the Stranger a convenient Lodging, conducted him to the Quarter of the Princes, which was the strongest part of that formidable Fortification, which they had rais’d against the King of the *Franks*. They cross’d the Camp, view’d the Soldiers in Arms, and following the Bank of the *Rhine*, they at length arriv’d at that Village which the residence of so many Kings had made famous through all *Europe*, which was commanded by an old Castle, so much the more glorious, and more famous, because it enclosed those transcendent and fatal Beauties, whose fame the whole world was not able to contain. In that Camp, in that Village, and in that Castle, every one extoll’d the valour of the Stranger, every one admir’d his noble aspect, inasmuch as the seditious Prince of the *Huns* had much ado to get him to his Chamber, such was the multitude that press’d to see him, and speak to him. As soon as they were retir’d to put off their Arms, all the rest of those great personages sought to take some repose, but alas, if they took any, it was soon again interrupted: for though the calm that follows an alarm, and the pleasing freshness of the morning sweetly lulls us to rest, every one did not find repose in that numerous Army. Therefore though the Soldiers, whose Bodies were tired, and their minds undisturb’d, slept without any trouble, their illustrious Commanders feel the torments of cruel disturbances, their Souls being continually turmoil’d by their passions.

The fierce *Varanez*, and the generous *Martian*, who were design’d for *Franckfort* to see the great *Constance*, made haste to be up, and having receiv’d their necessary Passports which *Pharamond* had caused to be given them in the most ample and most obliging form that might be, they took their way toward the River *Rhine*, attended by those Envoys which the two Queens and the greatest part of the Princes had sent to visit the famous *Roman*. Though these two great personages were far less unhappy than many of their Friends whom they had left behind, yet they did not permit themselves to believe the rest altogether miserable; for *Martian* himself, who was naturally moderate, and had the honour to be esteem’d by *Pulcheria*, yet many times felt the rigour of absence. He measured the greatness of his misfortune by the infinite merit of the person belov’d; so that without an extraordinary melancholy he could not see himself so far distant from a Princess whom he admir’d, and of whom he was by no means hated. While the admirable *Pulcheria*, who was the wonder of all the earth, takes up *Martian*’s thoughts, Prince *Varanez* believes himself as unfortunate among Lovers, as he saw himself great among men. He could not endure that the Queen of the *Cimbrians* should ponder upon the choice which she had to make; for every time that he consider’d the rare qualities which he too well knew adorn’d his own person, and that from that consideration he pass’d to that of the fair and puissant Monarchy of which he was to wield the Scepter, he felt a redoubled vexation which his fierceness rendred insupportable: *How*, said he to himself, *shall I find Competitors in the Barbarians Countries? What shall Princes that but now begin to make known their Names and their Dominions dare to dispute with me the enjoyment of Rosamond? And will not Rosamond her self whom I so passionately love at first sight, prefer me above all my Rivals? Will she be so unjust as not to separate out of the croud of her Lovers, a Prince that is one day to sit upon the Throne of Cyrus, and who in all likelihood will as worthily become it?* While

While he thus afflicts himself, and *Martian* muses upon his incomparable *Pulcheria*, both being on their way to *Francfort*, *Let us stay a while upon the Banks of the Rhine, not to depart from the Scene which the famous writer of this work has prescrib'd to us that continue it.* Love seem'd there to have settled the Seat of his Empire; for among all those illustrious persons that there were assembled, there was not one who was not enthrall'd under the fatal Laws of that puissant Divinity. A thousand Breasts breath'd forth sighs, a thousand hearts carried in them the cruel arrows with which they were pierc'd. And *Albifinda*, how sweet soever were her disposition, was her self the cause that more than one Lover complain'd. The young King of the *Baltheres*, though he were neither despis'd, nor ill treated by that amiable Princess, felt however no small vexation when he thought upon his two Rivals, *Marcomire* and *Gondemar*. And if *Gondemar* remember'd with delight those happy hours which he had spent in the presence of *Albifinda*, what think ye was his anguish when he saw *Eriolea* prefer'd before *Theodora*? From this afflicting thought he pass'd to other reflections more sorrowful: he could not call to mind without being sensibly tormented, that he had assaulted the Brother of *Albifinda*, that he had nourish'd suspicious injuries to that amiable Princess, that he had drawn upon the person whom he ador'd the anger of a violent Father, and that he had been the occasion of *Viridomar's* imprisonment. But if the Lovers of the Princess of *Suevia* could not be happy, how much more unfortunate were those Princes that sigh'd for the most divine Queen of the *Cimbrians*? *Araxie* for his virtue was truly esteem'd of *Rosamond*; but he had the unhappiness to see that she could not endure the evidences of his love. *Godegesile*, by reason of his inconvenient and ill to be endured haughtiness, and the insupportable rudeness of his disposition, had drawn upon himself the utter dislike of the fair Queen. And for the King of the *Burgundians*, she hated him, both because he had made war upon her, and because he then made war upon *Pharamond*; nor can I tell whether he was not as much hated by *Rosamond* for being ingrateful to the King of the *Franks*, as for that he had been an enemy of the *Cimbrian* King. So that if the charming Queen had consulted no other but her own heart, and that she had not labour'd to disguise her own thoughts to her self, out of a scrupulous niceness that was the adversary of her repose, the hatred which she had against *Gondioch* had soon let him see that she had a quite contrary passion for the most illustrious of her Lovers. *Balamir*, who was little inferior to that renowned Suitor, was however not the less esteem'd by that divine Queen, and he had that advantage over *Pharamond*, that *Rosamond* shew'd him the marks of her good will without constraint, while the severe Laws of correspondency too cruelly engag'd her to assault the life of the King of the *Franks*. Nevertheless that satisfaction of the Prince was intermingled with a world of disquiet; for it was a most sensible affliction to him that *Balamir* had but one heart to give the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and that he was in a condition together with that heart to offer her a Crown additional to that of the *Bohemians*. This affliction was followed by another, for the generous *Hun* reverenc'd in such a manner the virtues of *Pharamond*, that he could hardly sometimes wish himself happy, lest he should render the illustrious King of the *Franks* unfortunate: to corroborate that thought he call'd *Hunnimonda* to mind, he perswaded himself that he ought to be faithful to her, and that he was oblig'd to love a fair and unfortunate Princess whom he had once ador'd: *But*, said he presently, *did not Mundific espouse Hunnimonda? Is not Hunnimonda dead? Ah, cruel Brother!* (cry'd he immediately after) *Ah, cruel Death! Wherefore did you deprive me of the only person that could render me happy? But pursuing his complaint, Wherefore, said he, should I repent of loving the most amiable creature in the world? Is Balamir so much a coward to fear his Rivals? Is he so unjust to deny a heart to Rosamond, whose right it is to command all other hearts? And is it not an honour for Balamir to wear the fetters of a Queen who numbers among her Slaves the greatest Princes of the Universe?* This was the language of his sighs, with little hopes of cure, or to see his passion satisfied: nor could his virtue hide the persecutions of love, at such a time when that formidable Divinity exercised his tyranny over a whole Sex of mankind obedient to his power.

Albifinda, the lovely *Albifinda*, was not only afflicted for the imprisonment of her dear Brother, but wasted many tedious hours in sorrow, when she thought that the King her Father would never consent to make *Marcomire* happy: but while she thinks upon *Eriolea*, and by that thought labours to allay her grief, the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, whose passions were more vigorous, is yet more unhappy. She is haunted by a number of Suitors that are odious to her, whose importunity however she is forc'd to endure, though they have nothing in their persons that renders them more worthy to be belov'd than *Pharamond*. Their defects were but a foil to set off the virtues of the King of the *Franks*, and those vir-

tues which they severally possess, do but augment the Glory of a Prince who possess'd them altogether. *Rosalind*, who is neither blind, nor insensible, saw but too well all those rare qualities of *Pharamond*, she is but too deeply touch'd therewith; and so passing from the consideration of so many merits, to the remembrance of a thousand noble proofs of a violent and respectful love: "Alas! *she cry'd*, it is but too true that *Pharamond* loves us, and "we know, too well for our repose, that he is the most lovely person in the world: But, "*(said she, perceiving some tears to trickle down her cheeks)* why is it not permitted us to "have some affection for this Prince? Is it fitting that a cruel destiny should oppose eternally the happiness of two persons that seem to be born one for another, and who by no "offence have merited their misfortune? Must a malignant Star force from a generous Prince's actions contrary to her designs, and compel me to persecute that which I cannot "hate? Feeble heart! irresolute heart, *(she cry'd, redoubling her sighs)* it behoves us at "length to act without constraint; we must either hate *Pharamond* according to our Duty, "or love him according to our inclinations: Sovereign Arbiters of my resolution, maintain the resolutions which I take, calm the Tempests that so cruelly shake and disorder "my Soul. And thou *Theobaldus*, the unfortunate Brother of a more unfortunate Sister, "forbear to incense me to your revenge; consider that I am a woman, and weak, or rather that I am apprehensive and grateful: the Prince that slew you knew you not, and "ventur'd his life at the same time in my behalf, and would have expiated with his own "blood the cruel crime that he had committed contrary to his intention. Ah, *Theobald!* "you sell me a Crown at a dear rate; your gift is fatal; for it had been better for the repose of *Rosalind*, that you had left her at liberty to enjoy *Pharamond*, rather than the "right of reigning over the *Cimbrians*. But why should we accuse *Theobald*, who understands things without disguise, and who beholds at this hour without a cloud the lustre of "*Pharamond's* Virtue? Let us accuse rather the revengeful King of *Sucvia*, the unjust *Gondioch*, and the furious *Balamir*. They are the Authors of my Sufferings, and persecute "the Queen of the *Cimbrians* more than they persecute the King of the *Franks*, while the "faint-hearted *Rosalind* cowardly submits to their violent tyrannies: but alas, this will of "theirs is conformable to the will of my deceased Father, that ought to be an inviolable "law to me, that incites me to the revenge of a Brother slain before my eyes, and at the "same time that it causes me to persecute a Prince that I love, it sustains my honour, and "renders me more worthy the illustrious Prince whom I affect. Am I then driven to that "extremity, *(said she, letting fall two Rivulets of tears upon her fair cheeks)* am I then "constrained either to renounce my own honour, or the heart of *Pharamond*.

Upon those last words her sighs interrupted her complaints, and she had hardly ponder'd but a few moments, upon the deplorable condition of her fortune, when not apprehending whence to derive her comfort; she employed all her thoughts upon the King of the *Franks*, as it were to charm her grief with such a pleasing fancy. *Pharamond*, *(said she sighing)* Generous *Pharamond*, forbear to wage a war in my heart, more cruel than that which they have brought into your dominions. Your services, your obedient respect and the generous offer you made, to sacrifice your life to my displeasure, render me more unfortunate than all the hostile acts of a merciless Enemy could do. Yes, yes, that heart of *Rosalind* that probably could resist with a constant resolution the rude assaults of fortune, cannot make any resistance against your submissions. You cause such a fatal Combat between my heart which is yours, and my reason which is your Enemy, that my soul is cruelly tormented: For Heavens sake as you are generous, as you love me, restore me that sweet repose that I enjoyed, before I saw those eyes of yours. Cease to love the miserable *Rosalind*, forget that unfortunate Queen. But do I know what I do, since I do not tremble in wishing for such a terrible Change? would I no longer reign over the most illustrious heart in the world, or could I desire that *Pharamond* should forget me? Ah no, no, *Rosalind*, it behoves thee not to deceive thy self. 'Tis better for thee to suffer and to dye, being beloved by *Pharamond*, than to live without that honour in the tranquility which thou desirest.

While she encourages in her heart, a thought so conformable to her inclinations, and that her fair eyes overflowed with tears out of a despair that she should never be happy, the afflicted *Amalazontha* finds yet less repose, and so feelingly complains in her Apartment, that it was enough to have mollified the most stony heart. That fair and disconsolate Queen abandons her self entirely to the imperious passion that reigns in her Soul. And if *Rosalind* found the only cause of her misery in the death of *Theobald*, besides that the Queen of the *Turingiens* meets the same occasion in the death of *Amalaric*, she perceives other grounds to think her self unfortunate. The image of the King of the *Franks* continually takes up all her imagination, the Pourtraiture of *Pharamond* is always before her eyes, and that unfortunate Princess labours in vain to expel from her heart that charming object that

that causes all her disturbance. She tosses and turns, she sighs, and in short she gives herself wholly up to the vehemency of her grief: presently the tears trickle down her fair cheeks, and her eyes overflowed in such a manner, that the fire which they were wont to dart forth, seem'd to be extinct, leaving to compassion only the power of gaining hearts. *Ab Sunnon*, said she, *what would be thy grief to see those tears?* *Amalazontha*, your charming *Amalazontha*, who with a dry eye might easily see all the evils that she makes you suffer, weeps for a Prince that no longer has a heart to give her. She weeps for *Pharamond*, when *Pharamond* fights for *Rofamond*; and at the same time when you would purchase with your own blood one of those precious drops which fall from the fair eyes that you adore, your disconsolate Princess pours forth two streams for the King your Brother. *Alas!* said she very mournfully, *am I not sufficiently punished for my past insensibility? Or has not Heaven sufficiently humbled my disdain? If there were need of a Pharamond to render me sensible, if there were need of an accomplish'd Prince, ought that Prince to have slain my Brother, ought he to have given his heart to the fairest Princess in the world? Ah, Pharamond! that the charms of your person should render me miserable! Ah, Rofamond! that your beauty should be cruel to me! And since that beauty, fatal to so many illustrious persons, gives me my death's wound, can I still call you Sister? And for you, Pharamond, can my heart adore you, and yet I wage a war in your Dominions?*

At these words the sad Queen sigh'd, and for some time after pondering upon what she had to say, she found so great an impossibility to become the enemy of a Prince that she lov'd; insomuch that resuming her words with some marks of content that she had at length come to a determination in such an affair as that: *No, no*, she cry'd, *no more shall my Soldiers fight against those of the French King. If Amalaric fell, let us bewail him, but we ought not to look upon Pharamond's valour, or his good fortune as a crime. Though the King of the Suevians, though Gondioch, though Briomer become my adversaries, though Rofamond her self* ——— *But what was I about to say? Do I not see that Rofamond will be satisfied with whatever I do for Pharamond? It is too true that she loves the King of the Franks, and it may be so assur'd of the fidelity of that Prince, that she can suffer me without jealousy to execute my resolution. But alas!* pursuing her complaint, *unfortunate Princess*, said she, *canst thou with the same patience brook Pharamond's love to Rofamond? Yes, yes*, (said she somewhat more resolutely) *I shall behold that love without being jealous, the troubles of my passion shall not smother the inclinations of my virtue: for I will preserve my friendship entire to a Princess, who no otherwise makes me unhappy, but because she is fair, and because Pharamond has seen her. If Beauty be in us the same thing that Valour is in men, why should Rofamond appear to me in a fault, since I cannot take Pharamond for an offender that slew my Brother? Let us not therefore hate the Queen of the Cimbrians for loving the King of the Franks: let us content our selves to send back our Army into Turingia; let us our selves not remove from the Banks of the Rhine, and let us wait til we either die of languishment and anguish; or that by the will of Heaven some change shall befall our unfortunate life.*

While the resolution of the Queen of Turingia qualifies her disquiet, the furious King of the Suevians, through the violence of his disposition and his passions, is yet more miserable than those illustrious unfortunate personages whose complaints we have already repeated: so that if to assuage his troubles he represents to himself the fair visage that wounded his heart, he presently falls into a raving despair: "How, said he, must I love the Sister of an irreconcilable Enemy, the Murderer of my dear and unfortunate *Viridimir*? "Was it not enough for the faint-hearted *Viridomar* to love her? That the feeble *Albifin-* " *da* should give away her heart to *Marcomire*, but that I must throw away mine upon *Po-* " *lixena*? The thought thereof exciting new troubles in his heart, raised certain cloudy and malignant vapours, which overcasting his imagination, and having envelop'd the fair image of *Polixena*, seem'd to obscure her lustre: "No, no, then he cry'd, I will no longer "love the Sister of my Enemy, nor will I ever suffer the House of *Pharamond* to triumph "over mine: *Viridomar* shall break his Fetters ——— But, (replied he, after he had reflected "upon what he was about to say, and that the bright shining Idea of *Polixena* had dissipated the "clouds of his mind) am I the master of my childrens thoughts, that cannot answer for my "own? Flatter not thy self, unfortunate Prince, thou wilt not easily renounce a passion in- "sinuated into thy heart with so much pleasure: *Polixena* is the fairest Princess that ever "was; the charmer, and thou hast an inclination to love her to thy last sighs, as thou ought- "est to hate the King her Brother to the last moment of thy life. But must we be eterna- "ly miserable both in regard of our love, and in regard of our hatred? Shall we never be "able to satisfy those two passions, and to find out means to vanquish *Pharamond*, and en- "joy *Polixena*? Yes, yes, we shall find them; *Pharamond* we will ruine by open force, and "then

“ then by joyning with *Briomer*, we will keep *Viridomar* always in prison, and offering *Po-lixens* the soveraignty of *Suevia* and *Franconia*, we will dazle her eyes with the sight of two Crowns.

Concluding these words he called his people, made himself ready, and went to find out *Gondioch*: and while those two Kings consult upon the means, to confound that great Prince whom they hated, the two fair Queens, whose thoughts were quite opposite, held a different conversation. *Amalazontha* went to the Queen of the *Cimbrians* and found her abed: so soon therefore as she came into the Chamber, she drew near the bed-side, with a look wherein appear'd that little confidence, which her resolution had given her. *Rosamond* had no sooner beheld her countenance, but that she partook of her comfort, and drawing her fair Arms out of the bed, she threw them about the Queen of the *Turingiens*, after she had kissed that amiable Princess, with a friendship quite free from all jealousy, and truly sincere, *My dear Sister*, said she, *how joyful am I to see these symptoms of moderation in the midst of your sorrows, and to find by all outward appearances that you have spent this night, more quietly than I have done.*

At these words and in the presence of a formidable Rival, the sad *Amalazontha* sigh'd for the dazzling beauty of *Rosamond*, perswading her that the heart of *Pharamond* would never be hers. That forsaken Princess began to feel all her torments to awake with their former violence: For some time she beheld the fatal eyes of the fair Queen of the *Cimbrians*, without being able to speak. For upon the sight of her charms, there began a cruel combat in her soul between the jealousy that was there fixed, and that little remainder of reason and generosity, that used their last endeavours to destroy it. *Amalazontha* changed colour, by reason of those contrary motions, whose violence she sustained, and her fair eyes were bedewed with tears, but perceiving *Rosamond* so much afflicted at it, and that she redoubled her Caresses, the generous *Turingien* summon'd up all the equity, that she could find in her soul to shew her gratitude. She embraced the fair Queen, and then opening her lips to a sweet dejectedness; *Alas!* said she, *dear Sister, for you are good natur'd, but you do not know that Amalazontha is ingrateful. I will not abuse the testimonies of the good will which you shew me, for I must declare to you that I often make my self unworthy of your kindness, through the injustice of my thoughts, of which I am not always the mistress.*

As she was about to continue her speech, the amiable Princess of *Suevia* entred into the chamber, and hardly had those three illustrious friends finished their usual caresses, when *Amalazontha* resuming her discourse, made a sincere confession of her passions, and a faithful description of her most private thoughts. Her two associates had pity on her; but the passionate Queen had no sooner declar'd her resolution, to send her forces back into *Turingia*, but *Rosamond* appeared like one amaz'd. A certain motion, the nature whereof she could not presently discern, surpris'd her heart: For she could not see without vexation, that obliging proof of affection, which so fair a Rival was about to testify to the King of the *Franks*. *Albisinda* studied less upon the matter than *Rosamond*, for as her inclinations were for peace, she was very well content to see that Army weakned, that desir'd the continuation of the war: presently therefore she confirm'd *Amalazontha* in her design, wherein she made the less scruple, as believing she had nothing to fear from *Pharamond's* ill intentions: and that he would never make use of his advantages, but to bring things to an accommodation. While she explained her thoughts to the two fair Queens, and that the Queen of the *Cimbrians* dressed her self, friendship banishing all ceremony from those illustrious persons; *Rosamond* was advertis'd that one of *Constance's* Pages, desired to be admitted into her presence. She had a great value for the famous *Roman* whom they nam'd to her, so that as soon as she was in a condition to be seen, she order'd *Valerius* to be brought in.

He no sooner appear'd, but he address'd himself to the three Princesses, like a person that well understood the world: with the same carriage he address'd to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and having made his complements on the behalf of his Master, he told her that *Constance* would be extremely disturb'd, to see himself engag'd to become her Enemy. *But Madam*, said he, *he is so absolutely perswaded, that your Majesty is altogether an Enemy of violence, that you cannot at all approve of the assaulting the King of the Franks during the treaty: so that he hopes you will no way condemn his proceedings, and that the Queen of the Turingiens, and the Princess of Suevia, to whom I have also the same command to offer my Masters services, will do him the same justice. Not that my Master is absolutely resolv'd to declare himself for the King of the Franks, for he does not pretend to take his part, till he shall be thereto constrained: and as yet I bring the means to settle all things, and to accomplish a final accommodation.* *Valerius* contented himself with only saying these few words, for he durst not speak openly against

against the injurious King that had broken the league, both in regard the Princess *Albifinda* was there, as also out of that respect which he knew, was every where due to the Royal dignity. *Rosamond* felt a secret gladness from the hopes of making a Peace with *Pharamond*, either by the mediation of *Constance*, or else by his joyning a considerable assistance to the *Franks*: while on the other side *Amalazombæ*, by the retreat of the *Turingians*, weakened that Army which refused any accommodation. However she shewed no outward testimonies of satisfaction, so that after she had heard *Valerius* with all the Majesty befitting a person of her degree, she beheld the Queen of the *Turingians* with an obliging aspect; thereby giving her to understand, that it was for her to return an answer. *Amalazombæ* immediately apprehending the civility of the *Cimbrian* Queen, with a gesture full of the greatest respect she gave her a denial: and having in that manner explained her self, she also signified in words to *Rosamond*, that she had nothing to offer upon the interests of a league from which she was disengag'd. Whereupon the Queen of the *Cimbrians* taking the answer upon her self, "We know, (*said she to Constance's Esquire*) that your illustrious master has no reason to think himself obliged to us, for though there had been no assault made upon *Pharamond*, yet nothing could hinder the great *Constance*, from taking which side was most agreeable to his inclinations, without giving any cause of complaint for his proceeding. You may tell him likewise that the choice which he makes, whatever it be, shall never hinder us from having a particular consideration of his virtue, nor from presenting that acknowledgments, that is due to him for the pains he hath taken to reestablish our peace, which yet we cannot attain through the strange misfortunes, that the anger of heaven hath lit upon us.

Amalazombæ and *Albifinda* returned their particular thanks in few words, but they avoided to deliver their thoughts upon *Valerius's* commission. The Queen of the *Turingians* avoiding all occasions in discoursing of a Prince who already too much busied her mind, and the Princess of *Suevia* not daring to enlarge upon a subject, that would have engaged her either to speak against the King her father, or else to declare her self contrary to reason, *Valerius* without any more delay departed, and went to the Quarters of the Burgundian King, where he was inform'd he should meet with the King of *Suevia*. In short he found him there, and being introduced into the Chamber where he was, he presented him a letter from *Constance*.

The King of *Suevia* would not take it, before he had demanded leave of *Gondioch* to receive and read it, and in despite of his natural boldness, not presuming to look upon *Valerius*, he almost made it manifest that he could have repented, that he had injured the great *Constance*: and perhaps he felt a secret and inward thame, for having assaulted King *Pharamond*, after a manner so little conformable to the lovers of honour. Nor can I tell whether his new passion did not make him turn his eyes another way, depriving him of the wonted confidence of his looks, or whether he did not bethink himself, not without some marks of the trouble that exasperated him, that he was desperately enamour'd of the Sister of his Enemy, and his Son's mistress; whom he had not began to love till far advanc'd in years, and at a time that it behov'd him to have no other thoughts, than the revenge of *Vindimir*. However, the impetuosity of his temper was soon corroborated, by the hatred which he had against *Pharamond*, which remained in his heart of an older date and better establish'd, than his love for the Princess *Polixena*, insomuch that his haughty humour immediately refusing its power, that violent King easily forejudging what *Constance's* thoughts might be, fiercely beheld his Esquire, and opening the Letter which he had received, he there read the following lines.

Constance to the King of Suevia.

You have heard that we once commanded the Armies of Honorius, with some reputation, and if after that you have forgot, either the fame or the dignities which we have enjoyed in the world, you ought however to remember that you are a King, and that your word ought to be inviolable. Nevertheless you have failed in that which you gave to me, and in assaulting the King of the Franks, you have broken a Truce which had not been made, but at my intercession, and to which you solemnly accorded. But if you have wounded your own glory, injured *Constance*, and violated the laws of Nations, repair and make satisfaction for that injustice, by such ways as are in your power: restore peace to so many Nations that ardently desire

desire it, grant it to all the Empire that impatiently wait for it, nor deny it to the Lieutenant of Honorius, who still demands it, and requires it from you for your own repose sake. Thereby you will become justified before all the world, you will preserve the Emperour's alliance, and you will reign in peace within your own Dominions; we will come and offer you these advantages in your own Camp, if you are resolv'd to hearken to reasonable propositions. On the other side, if an obstinate resentment carries you still above our reasons, we shall without reluctancy follow our own inclinations; and not looking upon you as an Ally of the Romans we shall embrace the justest side, and take upon us the interests of the King of the Franks. All Germany knows what the valour of that great Prince is; and when to those Forces which he has already, we shall joyn those of the Emperour, commanded by Constance, it may be we shall oppose no despicable power to the attempts of those abused Nations, who to second the violence of your hatred, have blindly arm'd themselves against the life of generous Pharamond.

No sooner had the furious King done reading the Letter, but he tore it in peices, looking upon *Valerius* with an eye full of provocation, Tell your Master, answered he, that I little regard his menaces, that I renounce his Friendship, nor shall I much endeavour to preserve the Emperour's. Tell him that I never yet heard that Constance sat in the Throne of Honorius, that he should dispose at his pleasure of the Forces of the Empire; or that a Citizen of Rome, in the low ebb of his fortune, should prescribe laws to persons of my degree. *Valerius*, who was neither amused nor dazled at the sight of Royal Dignity, and he that had seen more than one King humbled before his illustrious Master, undertook to make him an answer with a constancy becoming a true Roman; Sir, said he, there are few Scepters at this time that have been more formidable than the Sword of the Great Constance. And Citizens of Rome, such as he, not subject to any but the Emperour, have privilege to make good their word and faith wherever they give it. What, (said the King of *Suevia*, impatiently interrupting him) must I behold my Son's Murderer without any disgust; and because Constance loves Pharamond, must I not revenge my Son's death? *Valerius* not able to suffer a reproach injurious to a King whose virtues he admir'd, and thinking himself bound to justify his Master's proceedings: The great King whom you call Murderer, replied he, overcame the unfortunate Prince of *Suevia* during open hostility, and in the midst of the hazards of a Battel: and neither Pharamond nor Constance will ever complain, if never any other assaults than those be made upon their lives.

The fierce King perceiving these words to be boldly spoken, had certainly fallen foul upon the Squire of Constance, if *Gondioch*, as much an enemy of the Romans as he was, had not generously interposed: *Valerius* seem'd to be nothing mov'd, but having nothing more to say for his renowned Master, he would not by his presence farther provoke a person of that high Dignity, and therefore took his leave; and to discharge himself wholly of his Commission, he went to visit *Ardaric*, the Prince of the *Huns*, and the King of the *Basternes*, not having any more to wait upon in Constance's behalf, having already complemented *Varanez* and *Martian*, whom he met upon the Road to *Francfort*. As he was coming out of the Quarters of the King of the *Alains*, he saw the people gather together in heaps, that they talk'd with much vehemency and eagerness; and that the complaint of Constance, and the resolution of *Amalazontha* was no less known to them than the adventure of the valiant Stranger, that had spread it self all over the Town, and through all the Army. Every one related this weighty news according to his fancy; and there were some so confident as to affirm that *Honorius* and Constance acted by consent, that they would undertake some thing extraordinary, and that the unknown Knight did not go to *Francfort* but by order of the Emperour, and that *Amalazontha* was without doubt engag'd in the same interest.

In the mean time that fair Queen sends for the principal Commanders of her Army, and gives them all necessary orders for the execution of her design. On the other side, the King of *Suevia* and *Gondioch* repair to *Godegesile*, and send to the forward *Briomer* to be there. As it was apparent that they intended to take some violent resolution, *Valerius* who had already visited the King of the *Alains*, and of the *Basternes* went to wait upon *Balamir*, where he understood that that generous Prince was busie in taking care of the noble Stranger whom he had conducted to his Apartment; he therefore attended in another Chamber, being accompanied with a Squire of *Balamir*'s, till his Master was to be spoken with. But he had not gone many paces when he saw a great company of different Officers, who crouding upon him, appear'd to be very eager to see something that was worthy their curiosity: Constance's Squire having the same longing, the person that attended *Balamir* opened the way for him, so that he immediately saw that they were certain magnificent Arms that

that had drawn all that crowd together, and which he understood were the Stranger's, whose valour had made such a noise in the Camp of the *Cimbrians*. Though *Valerius* had led his life either in the Court of *Rome*, or in the Imperial Armies, he was not a little surpris'd to see the lustre of so many Jewels: he saw them glitter every where as well upon his rich Buckler, as upon his magnificent Helmet; and he no sooner cast his eyes upon the terrible Sword of that unknown Warriour, but he took it up in his hand to take the more notice of it; but he had no sooner well view'd the Hilt, which was remarkable as well for the beauty of the workmanship, as the sparkling of the Diamonds, when with astonishment he cry'd out, "Is it possible, *said he*, that I should once more behold so glorious an Instrument of *Constance's* Victories. At these words all the Officers turn'd toward *Valerius*, and the chiefest among them desiring him to explain his meaning: "The Sword which you see, *said he*, was design'd only for valiant Owners. *Constance*, *said he*, whose fame rings over all the world, when he quartered in the Province of the *Romans*, gave it to the Renowned *Constantine*, whose reputation has fill'd the Universe. That illustrious Prince was well worthy of such a present, for ye know that he is one day to reign over both the *Britains*, that he has enlarg'd the Territories of the *Armoricians*, that he has gain'd several great Battels, made the best part of *Europe* tremble, and so shook the Western Empire, that he had without doubt quite overturn'd it, had not *Honorius* sent the invincible *Constance* against him, to stop the fury of that fortunate Conquerour. After some Combats, the report whereof has dazled the world, those two great Hero's saw one another, lov'd one another, and mutually interchang'd Swords with a demonstration of so much friendship, that of necessity, that famous Soldier who is yet unknown to you, must be either the dreaded *Constantine*, or else that great Prince must be dead. Not yet, (*said another person that embrac'd him behind*) for *Dinocus*, to whom you once promised some part of your friendship upon the Banks of the *Rhine*, offers himself to carry you to his Master's Chamber, and to let you see him.

Upon these words *Constance's* Esquire turning about, knew the person that spoke to him to be a Knight of *Britain*, of great quality in his own Country. In short, he had seen *Dinocus* in the Province of the *Romans*, and he knew that that *Britain* had commanded the Armies of *Aldroec* King of *Galia Armorica*, or *Little Britain*, and Father of *Constantine*. *Valerius* was extremely glad to meet with him so fortunately; but after the first complements usual upon such occasions were over, he seem'd to be somewhat troubled that he had spoken so much, imagining that *Constantine* it might be had a mind to conceal himself; and therefore excusing himself to *Dinocus* in that particular, he offer'd him to repair the fault which he had committed, by contradicting what he had said, in such a manner as he should think fitting: No, *said the Britain*, you have declared nothing but what we our selves were about to have made known. The reasons that oblig'd *Constantine* to take another name are out of doors through the generosity of *Balamir*; and if you please, you may see them both. Whereupon *Valerius* enter'd into the Chamber where *Dinocus* led him, and was courteously received both by the King of the *Britains*, and the King of the *Huns*. While he was giving them an account of the reason of his Journey, the famous name of *Constantine* flew about as well in the Burchough, as through the Army. All the Kings and Princes were surpris'd at so extraordinary an Adventure, they send to inform themselves exactly, and being ascertain'd of the truth, they thought it behov'd them to pay him that respect which was due to a person of his Dignity and Merit. The King of the *Suevians* and *Herules* were the first that went to visit him, as soon as they understood they might do it without inconvenience. And the charming Queen of the *Cimbrians* led by the King of the *Burgundians*, and the lovely Princess of *Suevia* handed by the young King of the *Baïernes*, coming immediately after; the Society was magnificent, and their converse was admirable. Though there were nothing spoken there but of height and great things, and that there was no person but might have been well satisfied with the Gallantry of the entertainment, the impatient King of *Suevia* turning toward the King of Great *Britain*, and casting his eyes upon the fair *Rosamond*, Sir, *said he* to *Constantine*, may we not hope to see you take part with this fair Queen, and for your own interest will you not put a stop to the victories of *Pharamond*? You know that the Gauls have called him to reign over many fair Provinces, and so it would prove more convenient for your Father as his Territories lie, that he should be vanquish'd upon the Banks of the *Rhine*, than that he should triumph, and being puff'd up with his prosperity, should go about to make himself terrible to his Neighbours upon the *Scin*. He is young, he is fortunate; *Aldroec* is stricken in years, and the Sea separates him from his illustrious Son, who reigns as it were in a world divided from ours. "There is nothing without doubt more honourable, *replyed Constantine*, than to fight in the behalf of the most incomparable Queen of the *Bobemians*

“ whether it be a man’s fortune to be a victor in the quarrel, or to die in the service of so
 “ incomparable a Princess. But, Sir, let us talk freely among our selves, and seeing that
 “ persons of our degree have not always the opportunity to discourse with our equals, let
 “ us not make an ill use of that which now offers it self, but for God’s sake let us break our
 “ thoughts freely. Our Subjects too much disguise the truth of things, they never come
 “ into our presences but with starch’d countenances, and seeking to please rather than instruct
 “ us, they rather endeavour to tell us pleasing Tales, than true Storics. In brief, we ought
 “ to be weary of flattery. And for you, Madam, (*said he, addressing himself to Edmond*)
 “ I question not but that you are continually environed with complaisant persons, who set
 “ out *Pharamond* as an offender, and make a crime of his valour. And thus you suffer your
 “ self to be led by your prejudice, by your pusillities, or by the opinion of the people:
 “ But, Madam, ’tis time to satisfy you, having satisfied others; it is time to act according
 “ to your equity, and to shew to all the world that a personage all divine as you are, ought
 “ to have thoughts more proportionable to the grandeur of your Soul. Your apprehen-
 “ sion ought to be quick and piercing; and while ordinary Geniusses are just enough to
 “ make a stop, and judge of things by the event, Souls of the first Magnitude are oblig’d
 “ to ascend higher, and to separate our own dependencies from the capricious humour of
 “ fortune, that as she pleases, gives success conformable, or contrary to our designs. This
 discourse did no way dislike the fair Queen, who not daring to manifest the secret delight
 which she took therein, she undertook the reply with more Majesty than marks of satisfacti-
 on, Sir, said she, *I confess that the action of the King of the Franks was not criminal when he
 slew my own Brother before my face; but how praise worthy soever it might be, or how honest so-
 ever were his intentions, they could not restore an only Brother to life, nor hinder a dying Father
 from laying his commands upon me to revenge his death, and not to consent either to have peace or
 truce with the Prince that slew him. So that if I did not assault Pharamond upon the score of
 anger, it behoves me to wage war against him out of obedience to my Duty. And I shall be ob-
 lig’d to continue it to the last gasp of my breath, since my Father is not living to revoke his or-
 ders.* “ After all this, Madam, replied the King of Albion, I am of your opinion, that it is
 “ not for you to desire peace of the King of the Franks; but I cannot tell whether you are
 “ always oblig’d to refuse that which is offer’d you; if the great Princes who are of your
 “ party do not rather seek occasions to signify their zeal and their courage, rather than to
 “ deliver you from the toil of war, and to preserve your Subjects. *The Queen of the Cim-
 brians chuses rather to preserve her honour,* replied the impatient King of the Sueves. “ You
 “ are not ignorant, Sir, replied the King of Great Britain, there is a great difference in ho-
 “ nour, according to the quality of the persons that would purchase it; for a passion of re-
 “ venge, and a violent desire of war, which may be excusable and commendable in a young
 “ Knight, will add no great reputation to a fair Lady. *There are some Ladies,* replied Gon-
 dioch, *so far exalted above others in capacity, that they seem not to be born into the world, but
 rule after what manner they please. Nor is it methinks a thing prohibited a fair Queen, to seek
 the Conquests of Nations by the power of her Arms, while the force of her beauty subjects the
 hearts of so many great Princes.* “ Were we to speak of Ladies in general, replied Balamir,
 “ I could tell you my opinion; but I must hold my tongue while you speak of the conduct
 “ of a great Queen, who is not to submit to any but the Gods and reason; she will always
 “ manage things with an admirable prudence, and whether she consents to peace, or will
 “ continue the war, ’tis for us to do what she thinks fitting. *This submission,* said Godege-
 file, *seems very obliging, but I find very little advantage in it to the Queen of the Cimbrians;
 for they may be accounted to have the greatest zeal for her service, that sometimes for her own in-
 terest differ in opinion from her.*

The young King of the *Basternes* said nothing to that matter, knowing well that he could not declare either for peace or war, without madding the King of *Suevia*, or displeasing *Albisinda*. True it is that he had the happiness to entertain that amiable Princess, who durst not speak before her Father, and thought her self oblig’d in point of civility to hearken to a Prince whose quality and repute deserv’d that common complacence. On the other side, *Rosamond* not being able to endure to see *Albisinda* under a constraint, nor to continue a discourse her self, wherein she could not speak her mind freely, she left the Room, and took the fair Princess with her.

They were waited upon back by the Kings of the *Burgundians* and *Basternes*, and a while after *Amalazontka* led by *Arderic* entred the Chamber, and was received by *Constantine* with all the marks of acknowledgment and respect, little inferiour to what he had shewed to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and the Princess *Albisinda*. Hardly had they passed their first complements, when the King of *Suevia* beheld *Amalazontka* with a blushing countenance, and

and addressing his speech to her with an exasperated smile; *Madam*, said he, *if King Constantine knew what weighty affairs you lay aside, to give him this visit, he would think himself more obliged to you, than to the Queen of the Cimbrians, in regard she has not these great designs that you have. She must remain with her Allies, and may make visits with less disturbance, not having any or less to give for the sending away an Army.* “Since mine is suddenly to march, (replied the Queen with some discomposure of mind) there is little likelihood that my designs should be so great as you say, and if it were proper for my sex, to undertake extraordinary enterprises, or that my humour were so much that way inclin’d as yours. I should not forsake a powerful league that might sustain them, and give me hopes of a favourable success. “You forsake it not, (said he with a forced haughtiness) but to wage war by your self, and to have the sole honour of vanquishing Pharamond: For I cannot imagine whatever they say, that you will make a peace with the murderer of Amalaric. That unfortunate King, replied she, fell not but in the design he had to overcome Pharamond, had he not triumph’d in his destiny: and the same Prince has since that shewed respect to Amalazontha, and did her kind offices at the very time, that he proceeded to wage war in her dominions. “You have a very grateful heart, replied the King of Suevia. “At least, replied she, I am more sensible of effectual benefits, than of involuntary offences. To tell the truth Madam, said he, you are a generous Enemy, and you treat Pharamond very civilly——You have treated him so badly, (replied she interrupting him, fiercely incens’d by her prevailing passion) that I know not, Sir, whether your fury be more commendable or my moderation: but however it be, I can dispence, with assailing the life of a Prince that comes to save mine.

Constantine perceiving that the dispute continued so sharp, undertook the discourse to prevent what might ensue: and Balamir, whose inclinations were all virtuous, had the same intention. They both with all civility and modesty, laid before the King of Suevia, that he ought not to be surpris’d at Amalazontha’s intentions, since it was no strange thing that they should be conformable to the softness of her sex: and that they were more inclinable to the pleasing motions of acknowledgment and pardon, than to the violent passions of hatred and revenge. “Let Amalazontha, said he interrupting him, pardon if she have so much a mind to it. Let her dispose of the rights that belong to her person, and let her make what generous use she pleases, of the victory which is almost assured us. “But is it handsome for her, to hinder the Turingiens from revenging the death of their King, or to withdraw her forces from our Army? Amalazontha provoked by his self-will’d stubbornness, “Sir, replied she, you assault your Enemies in such a manner, of which the generous Balamir is a witness, as if you had no need of my forces, nor am I obliged to lend them to an Ally, that would destroy a Prince who had not been expos’d to the danger, but for coming to my relief. “What Madam (said he, impatiently interrupting her) do you quarrel with me for taking the King your Brother’s part? and because I would have you to pay, that which you owe to his memory. “Sir, answered she, I know very well how I ought to receive admonition, and what advantage I can raise either from war or politicks. But to tell you the truth, your advice carries not that weight, when it respects the duties of a family, and the conduct of good manners: for so long as you keep the illustrious Prince of Suevia a prisoner, I cannot tell how you can handsomly tax me, for not being kind to the memory of the unfortunate King of Turingia. In short, Sir, learn to be a kind Father, before you accuse me for not being a kind Sister. “When, said he, interrupting her, the ungrateful Viridomar shall become a dutiful Son, and renounce that cowardly passion that makes him prefer imprisonment before the Command of my Army.

Concluding those words, choler and shame made him blush, and tumultuously considering the noble qualities of Viridomar, as so many obstacles that oppos’d his hopes, he was vexed to see his Son so exceeding handsome, and wish’d that he had had no Son to love. Then perceiving the violence of his disquiet to encrease, his colour changed, and he would have been gone: when Constantine stopping him with a civil entreaty to stay; *For Heaven’s sake*, said he, *permit me to speak in the behalf of the generous Prince of Suevia, and since this opportunity offers it self, which I durst not presume to take, be pleas’d to suffer me to discharge my self of the duty, of a friendship which I enter’d into in the Island of Albion, at that time when he visited the best part of the Courts of Europe.* What can you say, replied the enraged King, when you shall understand that he loveth the Sister of my irreconcilable Enemy? That he is unfortunate, replied he, that he is to be bewailed, that he deserves rather your compassion than your anger. Ah, Sir, said he, (pursuing his discourse with a sigh) did you but know the power of love, and were the heat of your impetuous nature, inclinable to that passion, instead of being altogether

carried away with a desire of honour, you would easily observe that fate sports with our resolutions, and that it hurries our liberties at its own pleasure, to the fatal point of their destruction and utter loss. At these words the King of *Suevia*, and the Queen of *Turingia* both blush'd, and the former undertaking the discourse; I do not, said he, condemn love in general, but I cannot endure that that passion, should compel us to act contrary to reason. I would not have only pardon'd *Viridomar*, but I should have commended him had he rais'd his thoughts to the fair Queen of the *Cimbrians*: and I should have been ever joyed to have seen him gone upon a design, that might have been many ways advantageous to him. In short Sir, I would have had the witless *Viridomar*, have imitated the illustrious *Constantine*, that like him he had loved a fair Princess, the daughter of a King his Ally, and heiress to a great Kingdom. "Alas Sir, replied the King of Albion, that you should know so few of the particulars of my life, for I knew not presently what I lov'd my self. "How, replied the King of the *Herules*, was it not with the Princess of great *Britain* that you always were in Love? And was it not for that charming Princess, said *Balamir* pursuing the discourse, that you have performed so many renown'd deeds, gain'd for many battels, and renounced so many victories? "Yes Sir, said he, the little which I did and which you overvalue, aim'd at nothing more than the divine *Octavia*, *Gratian's* only heiress: And yet I must not forbear to confess, that I never engag'd my self in a design more contrary to reason, nor more distant from any hope of success: Yet was that fatal engagement so sudden and so compulsive, that I was forc'd to love in despite of all my resolution, and to abandon my heart and my will, to the power of my destiny.

The Queen of *Turingia* hearkened to these words with a redoubled attention, and the King of *Suevia* in whom the sight of *Polixena*, had produced the same effect which the sight of *Pharamond* had produced in the heart of *Amalazontha*, equally concerning himself in the discourse of *Constantine*; "How happy should I be, Sir said he, would you but inform me the particulars of a life, which I have so often admir'd. "There are few circumstances therein, replied *Constantine*, worthy of your curiosity: nevertheless so far as I can, I will not be coy to make you a relation of what you desire, seeing that though you find not all the satisfaction which you expect, I may at least give you to understand, that it is not without ground that I speak for the Prince of *Suevia*, and that the generous *Balamir* may see, how strong those obligations are which I owe to *Constance*, to the end he may advise me in the end, which party I should adhere to. "By what I perceive, replied the King of *Suevia*, there is little likelihood that you will embrace our side, and since there is less, but that you will speak to the advantage of two persons that favour our Enemies, I must be constrained to bid adieu to that satisfaction which I expected. In short, added he, rising from his seat, 'tis the relation of the noble deeds of *Constantine* that I would hear, and not the praises of *Constance* or *Viridomar*. 'Tis the friendship of the King of great *Britain* that I would purchase, and not be inform'd that my Enemies have already obtained it. For I must tell you, Sir, *Constance* and *Viridomar* are my Enemies; for as long as a disobedient Son, shall foster an unjust passion in his heart, he shall never find that I preserve in mine, the affection of a loving Father.

Concluding these words he went his way together with the King of the *Herules*, and he was no sooner gone out of the Chamber, complemented by *Balamir* with the most noble grace in the world; but the converse ceased to be so rude and quarrelsome, as it had been, being again renewed between the *Turingien* Queen, the Prince of the *Huns*, the King of the *Britains* and the King of the *Alains*. "Sir, said *Amalazontha* to *Constantine*, I must confess that I have the same longing that the King of *Suevia* had, and as I have not the same reluctance, to hear well of *Constance* and *Viridomar*, I shall be highly engaged if you will permit me the satisfaction of my curiosity. I would not at this time give you the trouble of such a request, did I not think to be gone very suddenly, or if I had not been inform'd that you have in your train, a *Brittish* Knight who is able to save you the trouble, by relating the story of your life himself. 'Tis very true that *Dinocus* can very well perform that task, said *Balamir*, and besides the delight we shall take therein we shall thereby discover *Constantine's* resolution, which part he intends to take in this famous war. It would never trouble me without doubt, replied the King of Albion, to find all *Germany* judge equitably of my proceedings: But *Dinocus* has so much kindness for me, that I am afraid he will tire you with a hundred unprofitable things, while he labours to turn them to my advantage. "We have no such fear, replied *Balamir*, for I know the Knight of whom you speak, to be a person so quaint and so judicious, that the Queen of the *Turingiens* will be well satisfied in his discourse. And therefore I will carry him to her Apartment, when she shall think it convenient, that she may more commodiously hear a long rehearsal,

“rehearsal, which before you he cannot so well repeat without prejudice to your health; as also lest your presence should restrain a person from using his freedom, who will be forc’d to speak in the praise of your renowned Actions in your own hearing. *You will exceedingly oblige me,* replied *Amalazombha,* by giving your self as soon as may be the trouble which you undertake. And because my Officers have received all the orders which they expect from me for this day, I am willing to employ the rest of the Afternoon to hear a Story that cannot but be very pleasing.

Concluding those words she rose from her Seat, and went away, being led by the King of the *Alains* to the Castle, that she might retire her self in her own Apartment. *Balamir* delayed not to go and find him out; so that after he had made it his first business to take care of *Constantine*, and then found that his presence was no longer necessary, he carried *Dionocus* to the Queen of the *Turingiens*, according to his promise. *Amalazombha* next obligingly receiv’d the *British* Knight, and having caused *Balamir* to sit down, and commanded *Dionocus* to do the same, she requested the *Britain* to give her that satisfaction which she expected; which he accordingly did in manner following, after he had considered a while to recall the particulars to his mind,

The History of Constantine.

THE Relation whichth you demand, great Queen, is most worthy the curiosity which you have manifested, there being few Histories that better deserve your attention than that which I am going to relate: whether it be that you love to hear of those great changes caused by those revolutions that have their original from ambition, or that you have a heart sensible of Lovers affection, and of the misfortunes to which the violence of that passion often exposes them. But before I begin the Adventures of my Renowned Master, give me leave to inform you, that he is descended from a very ancient succession of Kings; and for that reason cursorily to mention the original of a people that gave the name to both the *Britains*. Without doubt you very well know, that Great *Britain* is that famous Island which our Forefathers call’d *Albion*, either because one of the Sons of *Neptune*, call’d *Albion*, had there reigned; or else, according to the language of the *Romans*, from the whiteness of the Rocks that environ it. And you also as well understand that Little *Britain* is that part of *Gallia* which is call’d *Armorica*. The *Britains* that possess both Countries are descended from the *Trojans*, and derive their name from the valiant *Brutus*, who was the youngest Son of *Ascanius*, the Son of *Aeneas*. *Lavinia* could not bring forth *Brutus* but with the loss of her life; and he had hardly attain’d to the fifteenth year of his age when he slew his Father with an Arrow by accident as he was a hunting. This second misfortune, though it fell out by chance, renewed the remembrance of the former; and both being considered together, appear’d so strange, that *Brutus* began to be a terrour to all his kindred, and began insensibly to hate himself. His native Country seem’d so fatal to him, continually putting him in mind of his misfortune, that he resolv’d to forsake it, and to wander from Country to Country, to wear away his melancholy with the pleasing varieties of Travel. He made a halt first in *Greece*; where several of the dispersed *Trojans* gathering together, joyn’d themselves with him. So that at length, after some few little Wars with his Neighbours, that Renowned Exile resolv’d to seek out some settled place of Habitation. He embark’d in several Ships that had been presented to him by a certain King that was his Confederate; but being in a great perplexity what course to take, he, as they report, consulted the Oracle of *Diana*, who ordain’d him to go to the Island of *Albion*, where she promised him a peaceable possession for himself and his posterity. *Brutus* willingly undertook a Voyage that was so successful, but after they had been a long time at Sea, coming upon the Coast of *Gallia*, he was so delighted with that Country, that he landed in *Armorica*. The *Gauls* would have repell’d him, he encounters them in several Battels, so that the valiant *Turnus*, Nephew of our Renowned Founder, was there slain, after he had kill’d six hundred men with his own hands in that War. *Brutus* afflicted for his death, resolv’d to immortalize his Nephew’s fame, to which purpose he built a Town of his name upon the Banks of the River *Loire*, which famous name extended it self afterwards over a whole Province, which for its fertility was call’d the Garden of the *Gauls*. No sooner was this magnificent Monument erected to the memory of the valiant *Turnus*, but pensive *Brutus* departed from *Gallia*, and sail’d away for the Country to which his destiny call’d him.

There

There he fix'd himself, chasing out the Giants that were the ancient inhabitants thereof; and upon the Banks of *Thamesis* he founded the stately City of *Troynovant*, or new *Troy*, Capital of the fairest and biggest Island in the world. The posterity of *Brutus* reign'd therein very peaceably, till *Octavius*, who liv'd about fifty years since, who had only one Daughter, whom several great Princes laboured to merit by their Services, or to take away by open force. *Conan*, a Prince considerable for many excellent Qualities and Princely Endowments, Nephew of *Octavius*, believ'd that there was no person who could pretend to dispute her with him; however that he might make a league with the *Romans*, the King was advis'd to give his Daughter to one of their principal Senators named *Maximus*, the Son of *Leonius*, a *Britain* by Birth, and Uncle to the famous and virtuous *Helen*, Mother of *Constantine* the Great: *Octavius* follows this counsel, sends for *Maximus*, and bestows his Daughter upon him. But *Conan* not enduring this piece of injustice flies to the *Pis*, and relies upon their assistance, declares war against *Maximus* his Confederate. However, his enterprize was not altogether so successful as he desired. *Maximus* overthrew him in a set Battel, but making a generous use of his victory, he granted him peace, and promised him a Kingdom in lieu of the losses which he had receiv'd by his means. To which purpose they both rais'd new Forces, and imbarquing them, they steer'd away for *Gallia Armorica*, and there landed. Being both very valiant men, and their numbers very considerable, and because they were assisted by several of the *Britains*, with whom they had before kept a secret correspondence, they soon became Masters of the Country; and having utterly either destroyed or expelled the native *Gauls*, they still preserv'd the best part of the women. But, Madam, shall I dare to make mention of a piece of cruelty, which to our shame has made so loud a report in the world? For those *Britains* more in love, with their language than they needed, cut out the tongues of all the women which they had preserv'd, that by that severe piece of cruelty, their language might keep its native purity free from mixture. After such a horrible way of prevention used, it is no wonder they still retain a peculiar Idiom in that Country, which you would the sooner believe, did you but know the inclination of the people. By this strange and barbarous usage the *Britains* became so odious to the *Gauls*, that they were forc'd to send for women out of their own Country; and all the world knows the Story of the eleven thousand Virgins, which were sent thither, of which the chiefest in Virtue, Beauty and Birth, was the famous *Ursula*, design'd for King *Conan*, whose memory is yet in great veneration among us.

Thus, Madam, you see that the two people that inhabit both *Britains*, are but one Nation; and the Sea to repair the injury which it seems to have done them by that separation, joyns together again by frequent Commerce and Alliance. *Aldroec* King of *Gallia Armorica* had always kept a friendly correspondence with *Gratian* King of Great Britain. They mutually succour'd one the other in all difficulties, yet that consideration, how strict soever it were, not being entirely to their satisfaction, they resolv'd to unite themselves by more particular Alliances, as opportunity should offer. The Heavens favoured their wishes in probability, for their children seem'd to be born for no other end but to love one another, and to unite their Father's Kingdoms. *Aldroec* had espoused a *Gaul*, though a Princess both wise and fair, named *Fregonda*; and four years after, *Gratian* put the Crown of Great Britain upon the head of the fair and virtuous *Lucia*, born of *Roman* Parents, inhabiting in the Island of *Albion*. *Constantine* the Son of *Aldroec* and *Fregonda* had hardly attain'd the fifth year of his age when the Queen of Great Britain lay in of *Octavia*, and because those two Royal Families were continually renewing or confirming their friendship by one signal of assurance or other, *Lucia* did not fail to send *Fregonda* notice of the news, verily believing it would be no way unacceptable. She also frankly offer'd *Octavia* for a Mistress for young *Constantine*, so that the Birth of the Princess was in both Kingdoms solemniz'd with publick Plays and Festivals: and if the fair streams of *Thamesis* some years before were pompously adorned by the Natives at the Birth of *Constantine*, the Banks of the *Loire* resounded with acclamations no less portending a universal joy for the nativity of *Octavia*. In short, Madam, never was there so sweet a beginning, never an infancy so happy, while fate seems to labour the good fortune of *Constantine* and *Octavia*, before they were in a condition to be sensible of it. Being thus both admirably beautiful, both Heirs of two fair Kingdoms, and both born one for another, who could now imagine but that they should be both perfectly happy? But alas! for they can never be happy that rely upon two blind powers, that put their trust in the promises of Fortune and Love. 'Tis well known that the former does but raise her Favourites to cast them headlong down into deeper miseries: and that Love poisons with his favourites, and hides the dismal precipices under pleasing flowers that he makes use of to delude our eyes. My Master's life is a conspicuous testimony thereof; and

and in the pursuit of my discourse you will find the many causes he has to bewail his misfortune, and complain of his love. The death of Queen *Lucia* laid the first foundations of his misery; but not to tell you at this time of a haughty Princess, advanc'd to the Throne some while after; it is only my business to pursue the Story of the Prince of *Armorica*. This famous *Britain* was born with all those rare Endowments that form a Hero, nor was ever seen a fairer assembly of noble qualities than appear'd in that great personage. As you have only beheld him a bed, and wounded, methinks, Madam, I am to speak to you, as it you had never seen him before, and to inform you, that his person is admirably compos'd, his behaviour charming, and his aspect so majestick, that it immediately attracts both the love and respect of all people; his disposition mild, yet powerfully insinuating into those affections whither it leads him into acquaintance. And for a Soul, there never was a larger, nor more vast than his. He has embrac'd the whole world, in aspiring to its entire conquest. And if reason had not moderated his designs, and if the power of Love had not acted by *Constantine's* consent, to stop his progress, *Constantine*, that *Constantine* of whom I now speak, had at this day been a greater name than that of *Cæsar*, or *Alexander*: all the world agrees, that unless it were the famous *Hannibal*, the *Romans* never had a more formidable Enemy; let us go a little farther, and say that if *Constantine* had not met with those obstacles which I am coming to relate, he had advanc'd his renown beyond the celebrated *Carthaginian*, who lost himself at *Capua*, and making a better use of his Victories, had, ere this, brought the lofty *Rome* her self under his subjection: *Aldroec* charm'd with the noble qualities of his Son, laboured with his utmost care for his education, and to second the liberality of nature with a Princely Nurture, he sent for the most exquisite Masters that could be found out in the world, as well to instruct him in the Sciences, as in the Exercises of the Body. The Prince learn'd so exactly and so readily whatever his Masters taught him, that there was never known a more active, vigorous, wise and discreet youth. Those Studies however hindred him not from showing himself a brave Courtier, such as one might be that had not experienc'd love; so that he was scarce fifteen years of age when he wrote Letters to the Princess *Olavia*, and sent her little presents more conformable to her age than Dignity.

This pleasing correspondence continued as long as his exercises, but having completed his studies, though not yet of Age nor in a disposition to marry; he betook himself to the wars, joyning himself to the interest of those Nations, who out of a noble impatience, resolv'd to shake of the Roman yoke. He declared his purpose to the King his Father, and urg'd it with so many reasons and vehement entreaties, that *Aldroec* was near vanquish'd; but bethinking himself at last, that *Constantine* was his only hope, his affection for a Son so well belov'd, made him repent that he had already, so far condescended to his laudable intentions. He therefore oppos'd his paternal Authority to the Prince's resolutions, yet to satisfy him in part, and to employ that activity and stirring humour that he saw in him, he gave him leave to travel. And as I had the honour to accompany him, I could inform you of the particulars of his Travels, had any remarkable passage happen'd worthy your attention: Only I will say this, that though *Constantine* pass'd only for an ordinary Knight, yet he gain'd a reputation in all places where we came. We visit'd the Emperour's Court, where we beheld the dazzling splendour, of *Placidia* the Emperour's Sister's beauty, the power of the favourite *Stilicon* and the great merit of *Constance*. After that taking *Germany* in our way, we view'd the principal Cities and visit'd the most famous, and most celebrated personages of both Sexes: But, Madam, as I have travelled so far in so short a time, so for the same consideration it behoves me, to finish my journey with the same speed, being only to tell you in a few words, that we return'd into *Gallia Armorica*, through the territories of the *Batavians* and *Belgians*. Soon after our return the Queen *Fregunda* dyed, so that while *Aldroec* and *Constantine* with tears lamented her death, our Court continu'd a long time a most pensive mourner. But to restore their former joy and mirth after so much sadness, *Aldroec* thought on nothing more than to perpetuate his life, in the succession of his posterity: And to that purpose he renew'd an Alliance which many people desired, though others laboured to break it off, seeing it was accounted the most important in all *Europe*: *Gratian* having no Son, nor the probability of having any by his second Marriage. The Prince no sooner understood his Father's design, but he seem'd to be troubled at it, when I, not enduring to see him melancholly without a cause; *Is it possible Sir, said I, that you should be sad, when all things succeed so happily for you, and that you should be the only person in the world, ignorant of your own good fortune? Take heed Sir, take heed that heaven be not incens'd against you, by giving you at last a true and just occasion to bewail your calamity. Has it not beflowed upon you, those endowments which it seldom parts with? Does it not design you heir to*

two Crowns, and the enjoyment of a fair and virtuous Princess? After all this most fortunate Prince, what can you more desire? Honour—replied he with a sigh—Nor can I any longer live, without seeing opportunities to purchase it.

He was about to have continued his discourse, when I was sent for by the King: and I was no sooner come into his presence in the Closet, when directing his speech to me in particular, Dinocus, said he, *I have received Intelligence, that the King of the Picts is preparing to invade Gratian's Dominions, threatening to waste his Territories with Fire and Sword, unless he will give him the Princess Octavia in marriage. But, Sir, said I in a surprise, King Gratian has solemnly promised her to you already. You know, said he, interrupting me, the casiness of Gratian's disposition, and that the dread of his enemies may easily make him fail of his word to his Confederate. And I must clearly confess, that were not the Queen his wife much better resolv'd than he; the hopes which I have of uniting the two Britains in the person of Constantine, would be but very ill assur'd. That resolution, replied I, will be strengthened by the fierceness of the Britains; nor can I imagine that a people so haughty as they will ever submit to the Scepter of the Picts. The natural enmity between those two Nations is so great, that there is no fear that they will suddenly come to an agreement; if we then can in the mean time but land an Army in Great Britain, the very sight and presence of a people well seconded, and the terrour of fresh succours will give a new heat to our mutual animity, and fortifie the justice of your pretentions. That which you say is very considerable, replied the King; but Dinocus, I must inform you more than yet I have told you, my Neighbours, to oppose the growth of my power, have enter'd into a league with the Picts, and to make a Diversion, they are suddenly to invade my Territories with a considerable power. The Neustrians and many other Neighbour Nations are levying Forces already, so that it is easie to foresee that we shall quickly have our hands full. Therefore let us lose no time, Dinocus, let us levy Soldiers, visit the Sea-Ports, and see what condition our Ships are in; so that whether we be constrain'd to repel our Enemies, or succour our Allies, let us prepare to maintain the Honour of the two Britains, and give those envious Nations cause to repent, that oppose their union.*

Having spoken those words, he began to examine what Expedient were necessary to be made use of in that weighty conjuncture of Affairs; and doing me the honour to leave the sole management of that important service to my care, he promised me the chief command of the Forces which he was about to raise. His intelligence was very true, for we had no sooner raised twenty thousand men, but we were assail'd by more than forty thousand. The Britains were very much dismay'd, and considering the great inequality of number, they dreaded a fatal issue of the War. The Prince was the only person that carried cheerfulness in his countenance, and a brisk fire that sparkled in his eyes; nor did his behaviour less demonstrate the transportment of his courageous mind, which he could not moderate, while he gave thanks to Heaven that now offered him such a favourable opportunity to win Renown. However, in this satisfaction he met with some vexation, for by reason he had not yet attain'd his seventeenth year, the King thought it not convenient to expose him to dangers accompanied with great labour and travel. Constantine more terrified at the resolution of Aldroec, than with all the threats of the Neustrians, throws himself at his Father's feet, and in that submissive posture intermixes with respectful Prayers such generous and lofty resolutions, that he wrested from him, as it were by force, a consent, which he look'd upon as his chiefest happiness. Aldroec knowing how much the presence of a King avail'd, puts himself at the head of his Army, and to strike a terrour into the Enemy, and give new courage to the Britains, he marches against them rather like the first Assailor, than one that stood upon his necessary defence. However, he admirably took his advantages, and were I not to make a relation of more important Wars, I could let you see in reciting the particulars of this, that Aldroec behav'd himself like an experienced Commander. However, I must needs confess, that neither his experience, nor the advantages of those Posts of which he had carefully possess'd himself, nor his election of the ground in Fight had given him that victory which he obtain'd over forty thousand men, commanded by their Prince, who signaliz'd himself by many noble feats of war, had not the valiant Constantine in that very Battel, which was the first that ever he fought in his life, perform'd actions worthy of eternal memory. The King gave me the right Wing, the left to a Knight of Galia, considerable both for his Birth and Valour, and careful of the preservation of his only Son; he kept him near his person in the main Battel, surrounded with all the youth of the Court; Constantine endured it for some time with a horrible vexation, but seeing the Britains hard beset, he felt himself transported with a warlike impatience, and taking advantage of those disorders that generally precede a Rout, he nimbly stole out of the crowd, and ran to the succour of those Troops that he saw most in need.

Presently

Presently he began to encourage them, and throwing himself among the thickest of the *Neustrians*, he slew three or four of their Officers, and put the rest to flight with a most incomparable valour; afterwards looking every where about to see where his presence was needful, he observed where the Prince of *Neustria*, whom he knew by the Magnificence of his Arms, and by other marks which had been told him, very sorely press'd upon our men with a fresh courage. At the sight of that illustrious Enemy, and the danger wherein the King was, he felt his strength redouble, and resolving to encounter the valiant *Neustrian*, after he had given him a loud defiance, he got at him maugre all the resistance that stood in his way, and wounded him in two places in so short a time as was hardly to be imagin'd. The provok'd Prince of *Neustria* flew toward his Adversary; but while he makes haste to revenge himself, and *Constantine* prepares to complete his victory, they were separated from one another by the joyning of two Bodies. My Master instead of being satisfied with that first success, accuses himself for want of vigour, and terrible as he was, as well for the blood with which he was all besmear'd, as for the blows which he gave, he makes way through the disin'd Enemies, as a young Lion makes the Hunter flie with the first effects of his fury. On the other side, his Adversary, who fought the fierce *Constantine*, wanted neither valour nor boldness; and therefore desiring revenge with the same heat as my Master thirsted to complete his victory, it was not long before they met again. The Combat was furious and bloody, and such a one as cool'd the courage of many a Spectator; but the impatient *Constantine* perceiving his courage and his rage both to increase, by resistance which he had never made trial of before, he flew upon his enemy with that violence that nothing could stop, and letting drive with his victorious Sword where his Curiafs was defective, he thrust it through his Body up to the very Hilts. After the death of the Prince ensued a general rout of the whole Army: so that the valour of *Constantine* gain'd us a victory so entire, that we were not only Masters of the Field, but of all their Bag and Baggage: and more than that, the *Neustrians* having drain'd all their Frontier Garrisons to reinforce their Army, we found our selves in a condition to march without any obstruction to their chief City of *Roman*. *Aldroec*, who had been an eye-witness of the last action of the Prince, was so overjoyed, that embracing his Son close in his Arms, he kissed him a thousand times with tears in his eyes, which the excess of joy drew from thence; but on a sudden, calling to mind the many dangers that his beloved Son had run through, and seeing the blood trickle down his Arms, he found that the transportment of his content abated in his heart, and gave way for his care to preserve a life of that inestimable value, he immediately caused the young and lovely Victor to be disarm'd, desiring to see his wounds: nor was he without a double measure of joy when he understood that he had but two, and that they were neither great nor dangerous. So that *Constantine* did not keep his Bed above ten or twelve days. In the mean time, his reputation having wrought a powerful effect over all *Armorica*, the *Britains* inspir'd with fresh courage, came and joynd themselves in great Troops every day to the Army: insomuch that it was so numerously reinforce'd that they resolv'd upon the siege of *Roman*, and our Souldiers, proud of their victory, thought of nothing else but the entire conquest, of all the fertile Country belonging to it. The *Neustrians* terrified sent Embassadors to the King, very submissively desiring peace, propounding very advantageous conditions: and *Aldroec* readily sign'd the Articles, that he might bend all his thoughts upon the war of great *Britain*. To that purpose he pick'd out the choicest of all his Army to succour his Allies, and having given me the command thereof, I perform'd my duty with so much diligence, that I was ready to set sail in a few days. The Prince not willing to lose this second opportunity to signalize himself, besought the King his Father: so that *Aldroec* whatever care he had not to expose his Son too rashly, was constrained to give way to his desires a second time, and to permit him to exercise that admirable valour, of which some part of the *Gauls* had already felt the surprizing effects: Besides the power, which the prayers of a Son so infinitely below'd had over him; *Aldroec* thought it of great concernment, that *Constantine* should appear in *Albion* in a condition, fit to gain the Hearts of the Islanders, and that it would be hard to find such another opportunity. He judg'd it also a piece of justice, that the Prince being no less presumptive King of great *Britain* than of the lesser, as he had fought for the latter, so he also should succour the other; so much the rather because it was chiefly for his interests, that it sustain'd a war against the *Picts*. *Constantine* satisfied with the first successes of his Arms, and overjoyed to see himself engaged, in a more famous war than that of the *Neustrians*; embark'd with a more lively and chearful countenance, than when he march'd against his first Enemies: so that to entertain him in that pleasant humour, and to pass the time in acceptable discourse during our short voyage; You must now acknowledge, said I, that there is more plea-

sure to go to fight for a fair Mistress, than you found in defending the frontiers of Armorica. The Mistress of which you speak, said the Prince, is not perhaps that Mistress that I am most affected withal: For 'tis another that I adore, whose charms are more powerful over my heart, and not the Princess Octavia at this time. In short, Dinocus, I breathe after nothing but honour, her favours carry a greater esteem and ardour in my breast, than those of the fairest person in the world: and I have so good an opinion of her that she will not prove ingrateful; that I am resolv'd to serve her all the days of my life. I cannot tell, Sir, said I, what delight you take in her favours, but this I know, that her favourites enjoy but little repose and short lives. How, said he, Dinocus, (looking upon me with a kind of surprize) do you speak as you really believe? can you be afraid of that death that you talk of? can there be any thing more pleasing than to dye in the Arms of glory? or can a man dye in that manner without being immortal? do you blame a passion that all the world applauds, and which you have strengthened in my heart, and which you would have inspir'd into my Soul, had not nature prevented you? You judge very truly Sir, replied I, that I cannot condemn that noble passion, but I speak ingenuously, I could wish that you had not devoted your heart entirely to it, but that the charming Princess of Albion, might have some share therein: Surely you would be much more happy, nor would you have any cause to complain of love, if instead of causing you to mourn and sigh, he should crown you with a double crown, while you enjoy another Kingdom, and the charming Princess together. When all this shall happen, answered he, of which there is very great likelihood, it will not occasion me so much perhaps to rejoyce as you believe: For I must confess that I should rather chuse to purchase a happiness, than to be beholding for it to the liberality of fortune. "Is it not sufficient, said I, that we render our selves worthy of that happiness, without taking a great deal of pains to gain what is offer'd us: so that if love be ready to present you with that double crown of which I speak, why should you labour to tear out of his hands, what he so freely offers?" But they say, Dinocus, replied he smiling, that that love of which you are so great a Patron to day, never makes any considerable present, and that for the most part he only gives you a Crown of Myrtle. "You must agree then, (said I with the same countenance) that the Crowns of your Mice are not of greater value, that your Lawrel may have a larger leaf than Myrtle but not more fresh and green: and that after all it is not for a Prince of your Age to speak against love. Nor do I think, replied he, that it becomes a person of your Years, to take his part with so much heat, and I must boldly confess that how terrible soever you describe him to be, I cannot apprehend any great danger in provoking him. Take heed, Sir, take heed, said I, and make your self secure from his assaults by a happy marriage: For in short, continued I very seriously, I am afraid lest your great courage prove fatal to you, and I should fain see you tyed. "Ah! Dinocus, said he interrupting me, talk no more of those terrible ties: I tremble to think that my Father should engage me without advising with me, and that he should give away my heart, although it never yet was touch'd nor it may be never will be. "I cannot tell what it will do, said I, but if the Princess Octavia be not flattered, the effects of her beauty may happen to surprize you. "I must confess, said he, that I have heard her reported, able to captivate the most severe and obstinate liberties, but since we were born one for another, that will be no great trouble to me though she deprive me of mine. But I must tell you I do not expect she should; for as I never yet had the curiosity to see her picture, and have hitherto also preserv'd my liberty both in Rome and in Germany, 'tis not very probable that I should lose it in great Britain. You see how unconcern'd I was when I beheld the beauties of Placidia, and the pleasing lineaments of the amiable Princess of Suevia. You know well that unpunished I beheld the charming Siller of the King of the Franks, and the incomparable Princess of the Cimbrians; and after all this ought I to tear the Power of love, or to speak according to our own fancy; can I expect that Octavia should pierce a heart that all those famous beauties could not wound, or that she should do more than all the Polixena's and Rosamonds? But Sir, replied I, that bright lustre that strikes the eyes is not always that which surprizes the soul: for you have heard talk a thousand times of a beauty, which men have never seen, yet only by report, they have felt something within, which, more powerful than the sight of shape or countenance, has wrought in their heart both great and sudden effects, which without doubt, proceeds from the Sympathy and Temperament of Nature.

You hear Madam what was our discourse during our passage, nor was it very pleasing to me to hear, that the Prince sigh'd after nothing but glory, and was not capable of receiving those thoughts, which I would have inspir'd into him, to moderate that heat which cannot be but dangerous, being violent in the breast of a young man without controul. We were now within the sight of the Towers of Dover, when as I was thus discoursing to Constantine, he seem'd to be in a kind of study: but immediately looking earnestly upon me,

Dinocus,

Dinocus, said he, *since the King was so unwilling I should undertake this voyage, and that our embarking was so sudden, that there can be no news thereof in great Britain, I am resolv'd to conceal my self for a time, and go by another name as long as I can.* Ob Sir, (replyed I very much troubled, and suspecting his design) *you neither can nor is it convenient: Think you 'tis possible to conceal your self, among a people that have daily trade with your own subjects, or that you can ever gain the esteem of a Nation, to which you are obliged to make your self known, and beloved among them by going disguised.* If that disguise of mine turn to the advantage of the same nation, replyed he, *can you justly blame me if I conceal my quality, only to avoid the pestermment of complements, the expences and formalities that people are constrained to, in the entertainments of persons of my dignity.* Really Sir, answered I smiling, *your foresight is most admirable, and I think it reaches farther than I have spoken, and if you should only pass for an ordinary Knight, to the end you might be less taken notice of, and less care take taken of your preservation, and in regard you might then fight as often as you please.* I must confess, replyed he, *that I would not stay at home with Gratian, when the Britains of both Kingdoms were hazarding their lives in my quarrel, for indeed the disposition of that mild King and your exact prudence, are more terrible to me than our Enemies.* The life of a great Prince, added I, *is of too high a price to be lightly expos'd, and persons who are not born but to sovereign Authority, are so exalted in their condition, that they might not experience the troubles and hazards of the common people.* Princes, said he, *are set over Nations to protect and not to oppress them, and we are no less oblig'd to fight for them, than they oblig'd to expose their lives for our preservation.* In short Dinocus, I am absolutely bent to pass only for one, of the Principal Officers under your command, and if you think good call me Viridonix, or by any other name that you please. I know I shall not be able to conceal my self long in the Court of Troy Novant, but I shall be contented if before I am discovered, and before I am compelled to bear the part of a King's Son, I can find an opportunity to perform some enterprize to satisfy the best of my desire.

To these words he added others more strong and more convincing, and made so much use of his eloquence and his authority over me, as well by reason of his vertue as his birth; that I was at length constrained to give way, that he should take upon him a disguise contrary to my approbation. As we were perplexing our selves, to find out a way to bring about the Prince's design, a Sailer from the top-mast-head discovering a Vessel, cryed out affail, yonder be the Britains. We immediately looked out, and calling our eyes as far as we could discern, we soon spycd what the Mariner had discovered, and to assure our selves that he was not mistaken, we discovered the Ancient of the Vessel that bore up directly to us. Constantine not being willing to be known for the King's Son, instead of expecting those honours which were his due, separating from the rest of the Fleet, bore up toward the Britains, who as we truly conjectur'd were coming to receive us with all civility. It was then less difficult for us to conceal Constantine's quality, for the Prince who was beloy'd even to veneration by all his Father's subjects, having given them to understand that he was unwilling, they should discover who he was, on purpose to hinder the Britains from giving him that magnificent reception, which they were all ready to have done. We all agreed to call him Viridonix, and that he should pass for a Knight in great esteem among the Gauls, and Commander of the Auxiliary forces of that Nation, who then serv'd in the Army of the Armoricans. These directions were no sooner given out, but the two Ships were come up with us, ready to perform the usual salutes: which being done with all the formalities of friendship, which is usual at such encounters; we came up board and board with them, rending the sky with all the shouts and acclamations of a loud joy. Immediately we hoisted out our long boats to go aboard them, when an Islander of a comely presence, and about fifty years of age, came aboard us and complemented us with a very good grace, in behalf of the Citizens of Dover, of which Town he was the chief Magistrate. He pray'd us to go ashore, and rest us the remainder of that day in the Town, and to accept of some refreshments that they had prepar'd for us. I answered his civility with another, not opposing the obliging offer of the Magistrate: but Viridonix had no sooner return'd him thanks on the behalf of the Gauls, which he did very gracfully; but he testified his unwillingness to what I had consented. For my part, said he to the Britain, *it beoves me not to partake of any refreshment, of which the Gauls whom I command have not their share.* Nor can I let them participate of your civil offer, without hazarding the loss of a great part of them by my landing, which may give them a desire to shift for themselves, when they may so easily do it. Ob Sir, replyed the Magistrate, *I beseech you make no excuses, nor deprive our people of so charming a presence as yours.* You will afford them an extraordinary comfort, for your countenance alone is able to infuse new courage into them, and to raise their spirits almost ready to droop. We will send refreshments through the whole Navy, as well to the Gauls as Britains: but for you Sir,

we entreat you to go aboard with those officers that are with you, and the more you bring along the more you will oblige the Islanders, and the more enlarge their hopes.

To these entreaties he added others more obliging, and made use of so many kind importunities, that at length he perswaded us to put into *Deter Road* and go ashore. The Town seem'd to us to be very large and magnificent, and shew'd us a fair Range of buildings all along the Sea-side, adorn'd with Balconies all after the same order and fashion. The Balusters were of Copper gild'd, and at such a convenient distance from the ground, that that they who took the Air in their Balconies might discourse with them that walk'd upon the Key. We were no sooner got into the Harbour, but all the Ships that lay there saluted us, and the shouts of the Islanders mixing with the sounds of the Trumpets and other warlike instruments, fill'd the Air with their loud Echoes, and caus'd the very Waves of the Ocean to swell. But the most pleasing object that dazzled our Eyes, was an infinite number of fair Ladies that stood in the Balconies, either to see us land, or to behold the Navy that came to their succour. The Lustre of so many fair women as generally they are in great *Britain*, had very pleasantly busied our eyes, had not two or three young Virgins that flung their glances upon the Prince as soon as he was landed, attract'd our sight by their postures of wonder and eager observation. When we came so near their Balcony as to hear what they said, where we were likewise forced to make a stop till the rest of the officers came to us, we heard that one of them in pursuit of a discourse, that she had address'd to a Lady somewhat elderly; "Good-now, Madam, said she, let her come hither, she will be highly pleas'd to behold these strangers: And since they shew us, added she laughing, a person of the most noble aspect in the world, it is but just that you should shew him the fairest Lady in the world." "It is not my fault, said the Lady that was spok'n to, that she does not come forth to take the Air as we do, or that she does not leave her work upon which she is so intent. Turning about as she had done speaking she went into the house, and after she had stay'd there a very little time, she returned with a young Lady that rather seem'd to be a Deity. A proportion more streight was never seen nor a freer carriage, and though she had not all that majesty, which riper years might have completed by adding to her height, yet was she infinitely lovely, to the full satisfaction both of the sight and imagination. Were I speaking before any other person than your self, Madam, I could not contain from describing that miraculous beauty to the utmost: But what delight can you take in such a Portraiture, that when you please can behold your self in your own mirror, and who are also daily in company with the amiable Princesses of *Suevia*, and the divine Queen of the *Cimbrians*. At those words the fair Queen of the *Turingiens* blush'd and sigh'd, but no way interrupting *Dinocur*, he continued his story as follows.

I will content my self only to tell you, that the bright Eyes and the pure whiteness of her complexion, darted such a dazzling Lustre, that *Constantine* greedily set his eyes with such an enchanting sight: and that the first object that seiz'd upon the eyes of that astonishing beauty, was the person of *Constantine*: But admire, Madam, admire at the effects of a powerful Sympathy, while the Prince keeps his eyes fixed upon the person of that divine Virgin, with that earnestness which he was never before accustomed to; that admirable Lady stedfastly beheld *Constantine*, they both together blush'd at the same time, and at the same time you might see a short sigh make its escape from the fairest lips that ever were seen, while at the same time the passionate Prince seems to breath forth a thousand amorous flames. The charming looks of the unknown Virgin dart a thousand glances, or rather a thousand little Cupid's Arrows from her fair Eyes into my Master's: They enter pleasingly, and so far they carry nothing but delight, but descending into the heart there they make a horrible havock. The Prince is in an extasy, stands immovable, and being not able to take notice that the Magistrates were ready to conduct us, I advertis'd him that we were to go on. What, said he, do you expect no more to come. No Sir, whisper'd I to him, for the Officers that are to follow us are already landed. We had best, said he, send for some more to come ashore, be it only to delight the people. Sir, said I smiling, this is only to squander your own time, but I beseech you, Sir, let us march on, and remember your self, that it is not in this Town, that you are to lose this insensibility, which has rais'd these disputes between us. Well then since we must let us go on, said he inwardly perplexed, and whether it be that we are insensible, or that we would cease to be so, let us endure to bear our affections condemn'd, though it be for loving the fairest person in the world.

Pronouncing these last words he march'd forwards, and we were conducted to a house where they had prepared a magnificent banquet, and after the entertainment was over to another, where they left us to repose and rest our selves, before we began to enter upon business. When we were alone *Constantine* beheld me very stedfastly, and having observ'd me

me for some time without speaking. *Did you see*, said he, *Dinocus, the fairest creature that ever Heaven made? Or rather in all our travels did you ever observe any thing that could compare with that surprising Beauty that I am now admiring, unless you call to mind that of Placidia, or that you have not forgot the charms of Polixena and Rosamond.* Alas, continued he sighing, *that I should be so unhappy, that it is not in my power to tie my self inseparably to her, perpetually to behold her, and enjoy the pleasure of adoring her to the last moment of my life.*

He talk'd to himself, walking, as if he had been in haste, about the Room; then stopping just before me, and recalling his words before I could have time to answer him, *but why should I esteem my self unfortunate, that have both a heart and a Crown to give? You are promised already both the one and the other,* replied I. For the latter, (briskly interrupting me, said he) *they may dispose of it without my approbation; but for my heart there is no person shall dispose of it: but that most admirable Virgin that is already Mistress of it. Yes, Dinocus, she is absolute Mistress thereof; and if I must renounce the enjoyment of Octavia, and both Britains, I shall freely forgo them, preferring the fetters of this admirable Beauty, before the Dominion of the whole earth.*

Concluding these words, he stood still, he kept silence, he rear'd up his eyes to Heaven, he sigh'd, but after all he gave way to his discontents: *Silly Prince*, said he, *is it this way thou maintainest thy Honour? Is it by such low thoughts as these that thou canst preserve these fair pretensions to which thy illustrious Birth has advanc'd thee, and that grandeur of courage of which thou thoughtest thy self the owner? Dost thou not remember both the Dignity and the happiness to which thou mayst attain? But forgetting that thou art to rule over more than one Kingdom, cowardly and poorly enslavest thy heart to an unknown Damsel. Hast thou not resisted the charms of the fairest Princesses in the world, though they were Princesses? Art thou not capable of any other passion but what is beneath persons of thy Rank? Ah, Constantine! thou art never to act after such a manner, nor to dispose so lightly of a heart which thou owest to the repose and union of many Kingdoms. Thou comest into Albion to succour the Britains; thou dost not cross the Sea at the head of an Army to sigh at the feet of a Virgin without name: for if Constantine ought to carry fetters in Great Britain, he ought to wear those of the Princess Octavia, nor ought he to have them imposed upon him but by that fair and illustrious hand whence he expects the Scepter.* He pronounc'd those words with a strange commotion, then walking to and fro without speaking, as if he were absolutely resolving what he had to, he made a stop before me, and looking earnestly upon me, *I am victor, Dinocus, I am victor, for my reason has overcome a passion which you have condemn'd: it was too mean, it was too unworthy the heart of Constantine to settle it self there; and if it got thither by such ways as I cannot apprehend, I have expell'd it by my reason, and with a purpose never to receive it more; I will arm my self against it, and never see the person again that was the first occasion of it. Her beauty has a secret charm that presently mov'd me, that enchanted, and doubtless would have been the Sovereign of my heart: I will talk no more of this fatal unknown person, nay, I will not give her the least room in my thoughts.*

This resolution which the amorous Prince thought to be strong and solid pleas'd me so exceedingly, that I was about to testify the satisfaction I receiv'd thereby, at which time the Magistrates return'd, and after the usual complements, they inform'd us of the state and condition of their affairs in the Island. *Constantine* heard them, though very unsettled in his mind; and while his countenance visibly denotes the disturbance of his thoughts, the most considerable of the *Dorobèrnians* brought us news that the King of the *Piës* had gain'd a very great Battel; and that upon the entire defeat of the *Britains* Army he was marching up toward the Metropolis of the Kingdom with sixty thousand men. Nevertheless the Queen prepares to defend her self, in expectation of your assistance, she animates our good King vigorously to bestir himself, and as there is a natural antipathy between the *Piës* and *Britains*, and being apprehensive of the cruelty of the war, they have sent forth the best part of the women and unprofitable persons out of *Troynovant*. In the mean time they labour incessantly in the fortification of the City, Provisions are brought in every day; so that there is nothing omitted that may conduce to the preservation of a place of that importance. Embassadors are also sent away to the King of *Ireland*, to oblige him to declare for us, who for that he makes great Levies of men, and is passionately in love with the Princess, (replied the Prince, transported with a passion which he could not master) *be but as fair as a charming Lady that I have seen, she deserves without doubt to arm all the nations in the world in her defence. All Kings ought to fight for so glorious a reward, and to expect which of them fate will declare most happy, when to render him worthy to enjoy a person so miraculous, it shall establish him the universal Monarch.*

He pronounc'd those words with so passionate a gesture, and so earnestly beheld *Conosus*, for so was the Magistrate call'd, that the *Britain* appear'd in a manner puzzled what to answer, recollecting himself from that surprize, *I easily conjecture*, said he, *what person it is you mean; but without flattery, or appearing too zealous for our Princess, her Beauty is not inferior to that which you commend.* "To justify what you aver, (*replied the Prince with a serious countenance, willing to disguise a passion which he could not curb*) you are oblig'd to introduce me into the company of that admirable Damsel, that I may be the better acquainted with her charms, that when I come to see the Princess, I may do justice in giving my opinion, whether you be so impartial as you would persuade us you are. *It is not very easie to obtain what you desire*, replied the *Britain*, *for the person which you request to see, has not been in the Town above these two days, and few people are permitted to visit her: yet I know that such persons as you are, who cross the Seas to our relief, ought to be of the number of her Favourites that pretend the greatest privileges.* But, Sir, *I shall have more trouble than you imagine, to procure you this small favour; and when you have obtained it, your satisfaction will be very small.* Your earnestness, pursued he, smiling, *gives me a little suspicion, and if you will credit me, you should carefully shun a visit, which cannot but prove injurious to your repose.* That charming Lady which you speak of is extremely to be fear'd, her wit is as extraordinary as her countenance, and in seeing her, you bequeath the rest of your liberty, as there is great likelyhood such a thing may fall out, you will not be over happy. No, Sir, without doubt you would not be so, for whatever rare endowments you possess, how considerable soever your command be, you will find too many and great obstacles in the way of your pretensions.

At these words that little pleas'd him, the Prince blush'd, but willing to conceal those thoughts which he perceiv'd ready to invade his Breast, he laboured to recal into his face some marks of his former insensibility: and by a second endeavour he turn'd the matter in so handsome a manner, and had so much power over the motions of his heart, that he rather seem'd blith and jocund than amorous all the rest of the time that they discours'd together; so that he had no sooner disengag'd himself from the company that inconvenienc'd him, but he abandon'd himself altogether to his turmoiling disquiet; "For what crime, (*said he, crossing his Arms upon his Breast, and lifting up his eyes to Heaven*) for what crime have I drawn upon me this strange misfortune? Faint-hearted Prince, and unworthy thy illustrious Descent, what is become of thy noble resolution? What Destiny is this of thine? Thou sawest with an indifferent eye the fairest Princesses of the world; the Princess of Great *Britain* charms more than one Monarch, without giving thee the least curiosity to see her, or so much as to look upon her Picture, and yet the malignity of Fate compels thee to love an unknown person, as soon as ever thou didst but cast thy eyes upon her. Yes, yes, thou lovest her passionately. But, pursued he, after he had ponder'd a while, why shall I not love that admirable person above all others that I have hitherto seen, since I find her more amiable? But, alas! for what cause shall I love her when two great Kingdoms oppose it, if the King my Father have already dispos'd of my affections, and that he has solemnly engag'd them? O Heaven! disperse my irresolutions, manage the motions of my heart, and limit my thoughts. Infinite sighs then issued from his Breast; and the unfortunate *Constantine*, after he had beheld me with a pensive look, "Ah, *Dinocus!* that my Soul should be thus cruelly turmoil'd! However, fear nothing, for I remember that I am beholding for my life to the King of *Armorica*, to you for my education. "My fear is not very great, (*replied I with a look as confident as I could fix it*) for I am of opinion your passion will forsake your heart as soon as you depart from *Dover*, or else that the sight of the Princess of *Britain* will easily vanquish it. Well then, *Dinocus, answered he*, let us begon with with all speed, and not so much as take notice either of the Town, or of the chief Burgeses, yet I confess, *said he*, that we ought to visit the Magistrates. "But Sir, *said I*, ought the curiosities of *Dover* to stop a Prince that is marching for *Troynovant*. "I know, *said he*, that a man may better satisfy his curiosity in that magnificent City than in this Town, nevertheless why may we not see at *Dover* such things as we cannot find in *Troynovant*: yet be not suspicious that I mean that person that has dazled me, and whose beauty afflicts us both, though in a different manner: therefore since you are of the same mind, let us visit the chiefest Magistrates of the City, and that with the soonest, to the end we may acquit our selves and come off with the better grace.

After these words forth he went, and I followed him, not having power to contradict his thoughts, though, to say truth, I was very suspicious of his eagerness; and that I saw when he went about to make those visits so exactly, he gave way more to his passion than to his civility, and that he only desired to visit those old Burgeses, out of hopes to meet at some

of their Houses with this fair unknown person. To that purpose, in the first place we gave *Bonofus* a visit: and *Constantine* was very pleasingly surpris'd to see over the door the same Balcony, where he had seen the Virgin that had enchanted him. The *Doverness* was not at home, and therefore I perswaded *Viridonix* to make some other visits, "But, (*he replied*, "not without being a little nettled) methinks, *said he*, it behoves us to pay our first respects to the chief Magistrates in the first place. We came with the same intent, but since *Bonofus* is gone forth, we may ———— We may, *said he*, go into his House, and stay till he comes. It is no unuseful thing to desire to see a fine House.

He pronounc'd those words with so much earnestness, so that finding he was resolv'd to follow his own humour, we went in. Hardly were we come into the Chamber into which they carried us, but *Constantine* ran very hastily toward the fatal Balcony. He seem'd to change colour immediately; for though the passionate Prince found himself in a place whence he had seen so many charms of Beauty dart their lustre, he was troubled however that he could not there find the admirable person that reign'd in his heart; and though he were not able to hide the visible effects of his passion, yet being willing to conceal his eagerness, he cast his eyes upon the Harbour, and upon the Sea, and praised the beauty of the prospect; but all this while his disquiet perplex'd him in such a manner, that he stay'd not long to behold it, but on the contrary he return'd to his company, went from Apartment to Apartment, and at length understanding that *Bonofus* had a very fine Garden, he desired to see that. The door was lock'd, and one of the servants that kept the Key did not seem very willing to open it. *Constantine* was no sooner enter'd, but (as he inform'd me afterwards) he felt an extraordinary beating of his heart; and being curious to see a Statue that he had in his eyes, he went to the end of an Alley, evidently conducted by his prevailing passion, there was he so strangely seiz'd with a sudden fear, without knowing the cause, at what time he found himself near a very fine green Arbour, without having any way interrupted the company that was in it: he knew by their voices that they were women, and therefore in despite of the trouble that perplex'd his Soul, he found in himself such a strong curiosity, that he was constrain'd to lay his ear to their discourse: he had not listen'd long but he had heard the person that spoke continue her speech after this manner, *Do not increase my shame, I must confess that I have been surpris'd, that I have blush'd, and perhaps it is not without reason that thou accusest me to have sigh'd.*

Constantine charm'd with the sound of that voice, and spurr'd on by an Imperious Motion, softly puts aside the little Branches to make a passage for his sight, and there discovers the divine stranger; he was thereupon so transported with love and joy, that he could hardly contain himself, nor stand to wait till a young Virgin that was with her made her an answer in these words, *For Heaven's sake, Madam, still retain the same liberty, confess that you would not be deceiv'd, and that you never had sigh'd if ———— Confess rather,* (*said the admirable Beauty, interrupting her*) *that thou art not very wise at this time, and that I should be as imprudent as thou, should I stand to hear thee any longer.*

Concluding those words, she rose and went forth so suddenly, and with that nimbleness, that *Viridonix* had neither time, nor so much as a thought to retire, so that at the very time that she came forth, they saw one another, and stopp'd full in one anothers way, and if the enamour'd Prince stood like one that were amazed, the incomparable Lady that had enchanted him, look'd upon him with no less surprise. They both blush'd, and in their eyes, partaking both of love and fear, might have been seen variety of passions. *Constantine* at length broke silence, and with a trembling utterance, *I see, Madam,* (with all submission said he) *that I ought not to have enter'd into this Garden, and that I have to no purpose interrupted the retirement which you seek for your own satisfaction; but I am sensible of my error, and should be much more afflicted if I thought you would not be so kind as to attribute my fault rather to the indiscretion of a young man than to the curiosity of a stranger who was willing to see all that was remarkable in the Town, as he pass'd through, and which he is about to leave, if ————* He could not conclude, such was the anguish of his mind, when the fair person opening her lips, *That desire being natural,* said she, *I am so far from complaining thereof, that I will give you the opportunity to satisfy your self with more freedom, by departing out of a place where my presence may put any constraint upon you.*

After those words, she made her Honours to my Master, and walking toward the House she renewed a mortal grief in the amorous Prince: *Ah, Madam!* cry'd he, when she was gone a good distance off, *is this the means you give me to satisfy a curiosity that you have not in the least condemn'd? What, Madam, do you forsake an unfortunate person, and leaving him only to behold a bare walk, do you deprive him of the sight of all that is only fair upon the earth?*

Then

Then it was that he found himself seized upon by several violent passions, and coming again where I stay'd for him, he oblig'd me to return to the House, hoping there without doubt to find some opportunity to have another view of the person that reigned in his heart: but as he lost his hopes upon the return of *Bonofus*, he complemented the Magistrate in few words, and with very much disturbance; and having made all his other visits in the same manner, he retired to his Lodging with a double augmentation of his love. At first he walk'd about the Chamber without speaking a word, but at length looking upon me with a pensive melancholy in his eyes, *Dinocus*, said he, *that the grandeur of my Birth should prove so fatal! That I should now be content that I were not the Son of a King; and that I cannot absolutely dispose of the actions of my life!* With that he turn'd away without expecting an answer, and continuing his large steps, *But why*, said he, *must I be miserable because I am a Prince? Ah! no, no, Constantine, renounce thy Dignity, if that oppose thy happiness; and if in quitting a Throne thou canst melt the heart of that admirable person that reigns in thine, abandon, abandon all thy claims and pretensions. Too happy now to possess a beauty so divine, abandon without murmuring both Britains, and those vast hopes that kindle beat and courage in thy Breast. But why should I quit that which may facilitate my design, why should I cease to be Constantine, if Viridonix must find any obstruction? Let us be Constantine, let us continue to be a Prince; and for the hopes of a Crown let us break through all those difficulties which the merit of Viridonix cannot overcome: let us prostrate our selves at the feet of our unknown Beauty, declare our real quality, let us have for her all the respect that Viridonix ought to have; and let us promise her all that Constantine can make good. But, vain Prince, canst thou act as Constantine without the ruine of all thy designs? Will they endure in this Island, that a Subject of Gratian should advance her self in a heart where the Princess his Daughter ought to reign? And will they not presently remove out of the way a Beauty, the sight whereof will prove so disadvantageous to the union of both Britains, as it is really necessary for thy repose? What course wilt thou then take, unfortunate Prince, if neither Constantine, nor Viridonix can be happy! Alas! I cannot tell precisely what to do.*

After those words he came to himself, and not giving me time to speak, he address'd himself to me after this manner, "I believe you approve not my passion, *said he*, if it be so *Dinocus*, I complain as I was to have complain'd when I condemn'd it; do but consider the power of those charms that caused it, and do not lightly condemn——" I do "not lightly condemn your passion, (*said I impatiently interrupting him*) But, Sir, I "I wish it had some other object, and that it were more worthy of that Royal heart where "in it reigns.

Thus I eagerly continued a discourse that I thought profitable for my Master, making use of all the authority which my care in his education could make me bold to use, and laying before him that we had no time to lose, but that it was absolutely necessary for us to leave *Dover*. The passionate *Viridonix* finding in the extremity of his grief that I spoke reason, and his love being more apt to infuse into him a more noble courage than a superfluous lamentation: "Well then, *said he, Dinocus*, since it must be so, I will be gone, on this "condition that I may suddenly return; I will go offer my Arms and my life to King *Gratian*, and if the power of a cruel destiny altogether opposes my intentions, my Sword, "this Sword which I wear shall break through those obstacles that *Bonofus* would have me "apprehend, and make them easie.

That resolution to be gone made me not a little glad, and for fear the amorous Prince should change his mind, I got under Sail with all the expedition I could. But we did not rejoyne that part of the Navy which *Constantine* would have divided, because he still desired more vehemently than ever to conceal himself; to which purpose he chose a nimble Vessel; and such as he could trust; and having entreated me to make some excuse for his departure, he left us notwithstanding all the arguments that I could possibly urge: so that not being able to prevail, I resolv'd to second his resolution, and caused it to be spread abroad, that the Prince upon some private design was minded to go for *Troynovant*, there to see the Princess without being known himself. The report was easily believ'd, and we pursued our Voyage, and we had no sooner landed our men at the mouth of the *Thames* in the Country of *Essex*, but we march'd in very good order directly toward *Cambridge*, where the Enemy lay encamped; there was at that time a cessation of Arms for ten days, and thereupon I went to *Troynovant* to give the King an account of all that concern'd the success that we brought. The King receiv'd me with all kindness, and the Queen testified her acknowledgment of the King of *Armorica's* friendship, with more vigour, and a more lofty spirit. And because at that time she managed the Government, and that the credit which you are to give to my Story depends much upon the knowledge of her humour, it will be necessary

necessary for me to describe her, after I have spoken a word or two of the King her Husband. The Prince was one of those persons of whom there is little noise made, when they are but of mean spirits: and though he were accused of cruelty, certain it is that his inclinations were rather virtuous than evil: his endowments were but ordinary, for he had a certain softness that hindered him every foot from determining what resolution to take, but his humour being apt to receive whatever thoughts were infused into him, he then only acted as the Queen his wife mov'd and guided him. She it is then of whom I am to make a description: *Loerinia*, for so you know that manly woman was call'd, was descended from an illustrious House to which boldness and courage were natural, and which had some pretences to the Sovereign Dignity, though never a jot the more legal, because they were supported by courage and magnanimity. Her face was very fair, her proportion large, her eyes quick and piercing, with an active cunning, and dissembling wit. Her humour was complaisant, and full of flattery when she found it for her purpose; but when she acted according to her own freedom, her looks were bold and confident, her countenance settled and fierce, her language imperious, and her gait was very stately: her carriage was very turbulent; she was soon weary of every thing, she despised what she enjoyed, and ardently coveted whatever was in the possession of others. Though she had nothing to trouble her mind, yet was her mind continually troubled: and love, which oftentimes became Master of her heart, rather incited her to violent precipitations, than to that obliging tenderness, which flows from those persons that are of a more soft and delicate temper. *Loerinia* being such an one as I describe, was not above six and twenty years of age, and few persons in the world lov'd the noise and tumult of a great Court better than she did. I will not make you a third description, by relating to you the beauty of the most admirable *Octavia*, only I must tell you that she was not then at *Troynovant*, when I request-ed to be introduc'd into her Apartment to make my complements to her: Said the Queen, *She is not in the City, for as I love her as if I were her own Mother, I sent her away about ten days ago; I have too great a desire to preserve her for the Prince of Armorica, than that she should be under the Guard of sixty thousand men who are coming to our succour, under the command of a King who pretends to be her admirer. And for my self I have firmly resolv'd rather to bury my self under the ruines of Troynovant, than to fail of my word to the Prince. And now, Dinocus, could I soon disengage my self of my promise; for upon the confidence of the succour which you bring, I could recal Octavia to the City, and then the universal joy of our Court for your assistance would give me an opportunity to complete the marriage so much long'd for, and thereby to unite the two Nations by the strict alliance between their two Royal Families.*

I was deeply sensible of this obliging and generous language, that made me apprehend more injustice than before in my Master's passion. They augmented in such a manner the indignation that I had against it, that without any more to do I resolv'd to break the neck of such a fantastical affection, and so unworthy the illustrious *Constantine*: I had no sooner return'd the Queen thanks with all the eloquence that I could summon together, but I went in all haste to the Army, where the Prince was already arriv'd without being openly known. However, he did not omit to take care for all things; he went with the principal Officers to view the Soldiers, their Arms, their Horses and their Ammunition; and the vigour of his wit giving him that knowledge that we acquire by long experience, at the second time of his taking command upon him, he perform'd all the offices of a great Captain. It was not without great satisfaction that I found him in an employment so worthy of himself; and as I was about to applaud him, No, no, Dinocus, said he, sighing, *I deserve not yet that approbation which you are about to give me; for though I should continually keep my self in exercise to expel the charming Idea that displeases you, I declare to you that I know not how to accomplish my desires, for it spreads it self through the whole extent of my imagination. Alas! Dinocus, that Idea is always before my eyes, continually in my mind, and controuls my heart with Sovereign power, so that when I encounter it with the love of Glory, when I assault it with all the weapons that my ambition can furnish me with, all my endeavours prove in vain. That proud and lovely resemblance remains always victorious, and makes me repent of my resolution as of some horrible attempt. Instead of repenting, Sir, said I, resist it, and for Heaven's sake more strongly oppose a passion that cannot but do you an eternal injury. To the weapons which you have hitherto without success made use of, add with better fortune those of acknowledgment: you are engaged to the Queen of Great Britain for new obligations, she is willing to perish for your interests, at a time when her life is exposed to danger, she takes all the care imaginable to preserve the Princess for you.*

As I was thus aggravating as much as I could the generous proceeding of *Loerinia*, to render him more deeply sensible of her favour: *Ab, Dinocus!* answered the Prince, *do not*

argument my troubles, by setting before my eyes the enormity of my ingratitude. I know my self to be guilty, I know I have committed an offence for which you prudently reprove me. But at the same time I feel an imperious power, that compels me to commit that crime, and which environs it with so much lustre, and shines about it with so pure and glorious a brightness, that my dazzled Eyes can see nothing, to be compared with so charming a crime. In short, Dinocus, I find that I am unjust, that I do not see things as you do, that I do not love a fair Princess that I ought to adore, and that I prefer an unknown person, that I know not how to advance to the Throne, if I obey that will which ought to regulate mine. But however I must always love that unknown person, a superiour fate has decreed it, an absolute power commands me: yet if I must part with my blood to satisfy Octavia, and to repair the injury I have done her; I will pour it forth to the very last drop: For I shall be always more ready to sacrifice my life, to the interest of that fair Princess, than to offer to her charms a heart that is not my own.

The innocent Constantine pursued this discourse in such passionate language, that I found my heart rather inclin'd to bewail his misfortune, than to aggravate as I was resolv'd, the dangerous consequences of an Engagement, that already rendred him so unhappy. Not that he neglected in the least, to take care of every thing that concern'd the Army, nor but that at the same time he had conceived a cruel hatred against the King of the Picts: For besides that he looked upon him, as a Prince that went about to supplant him; he had besides a certain Antipathy against him, of which he knew not the cause. This motion of Antipathy, rendred him more fierce and disdainful, and the contempt of a life so miserable, being joyned to the Grandeur of his Courage, made him appear as if he had something supernatural in his deportment, and his Actions. Never was more of beauty seen in a youthful Warriour, nor an aspect more Majestick and Lofly. His Eye sparkled with a fire that shewed the activity of his Temper: so that his noble impatience of coming to fight, transported him in such a manner, that he resolv'd to march directly toward the Enemy, so soon as the Souldiers had refreshed themselves. I durst not oppose my self to his resolution, seeing that he was my Master, and powerfully commanded whatever he pleased. On the contrary I commended it to the General of the Britains, of whom it will be necessary for me to tell you by the way, that Geronces, so was that Britain called, had been rais'd to the most weighty commands by the favour of Loconia, being so devoted to the interest of that fierce Princess, that he was ready to undertake any thing for her service. So brave a person was overjoyed to meet the Picts; to which purpose we kept along the side of the Hill, that divides Essex from the City of Cambridge, and came to encamp in sight of Ely, between two pleasing Rivers that wash the feet of her Walls.

The Army of Gratian and ours, might make about fifty thousand men, and that of the Enemy was about sixty thousand: Constantine took a thousand horse to command himself, and we had no sooner made choice of our ground, and ranged the Army in good array, but he appeared at the head of his own men, with an enchanting grace: He was most nobly mounted, and magnificently Arm'd, his helmet being covered with several fair Plumes of Carnation and white Feathers. Immediately he exhorted his men in a few words, and lifting up the Viser of his Helmet, he spake to them the following speech with a soldier-like Aspect, and a short and pithy Eloquence.

I deny my name and renounce my dignity to be your Companion, rather than your Prince in this great Battel, and to fight with more equality among you: shew your selves worthy of what you see me do, and the precedency which I give you before the rest of the Army. Remember your selves that I shall be a witness of your valour, that you are Britains and that you fight against the Picts. They are your natural Enemies, and come from their cold Countries to rend from you the command, of a flourishing Monarchy under a more temperate Climate. It beboves them to fight and to overcome, you have nothing to do but to follow me to a certain Victory, you have nothing to do but to follow my example, to purchase the honour of a Triumph. After all this, require of me no more superfluous words, when I demand of you brave and heroick deeds.

He had no sooner concluded these words, but he embrac'd the Principal Officers, calling them by their Names: He promised the Horsemen in general fair Rewards, and immediately he flew like lightning upon the Enemy. His deadly spear buried it self in the bodies of all those that withstood the force thereof: And the impatient Prince had no sooner satisfied himself, with the ponderous effects of that weapon, but he threw it away to make use of another, that was more fit to second the Activity of his valour. He drew a stubborn sword the same that had been so fatal to the Neutrians, and which afterwards made the Western Empire tremble, and Arm'd with that terrible weapon he perform'd those deeds, that I cannot

cannot tell how to describe, and which deserves Eternal memory. He overturn'd whatever stood in his way, he overthrew horse and man, and having opened a way with the point of his Sword, to the most illustrious of all his Enemies, he cried him with a loud cry: *King of the Picts*, cried he, 'Tis against such an Enemy as my self that you may turn your weapon with Honour. *Whoever thou art*, (replied the fiery King, flaming with rage) *that seekest to dye by my hand, receive the fatal effect of thy wishes.*

He followed these haughty menaces with a furious blow, but *Viridonix* warded it with an admirable strength, and his valour being augmented by the furious reply of his Enemy, diffused a Heroick heat through every vein. Transported with this heat he threw himself upon the King of the *Picts*, and taking him up in his invincible Arms, he drew him from the pommel of his Saddle, with a strength more than Humane, and threw him at his horses feet. When he was down he commanded a Brittilsh Officer to take care of him, and flung himself into the thickest of the *Picts* with a fresh vigour: but his fury having carried him too far, he was born away with the multitude of those, that fled as with the violence of a rapid Torrent. The *Britains* that were in love with his vertue, so soon as they saw him out of sight, made a hideous noise of despair, insomuch as the report ran through the Army, that *Constantine* had fought there in person, and that after he had overcome the King of the *Picts*, he was taken by the Enemy. Our forces redoubled their courage, and running to rescue as well their illustrious Prince, as *Viridonix*, who was likewise said to be among the *Picts*; they made a most terrible slaughter, that in less than a quarter of an hour we were Masters of the field, and above five thousand Prisoners, among which was the King himself. The ground was covered with above forty thousand of the Enemies, who were slain in that remarkable battel. The rest fled in disorder, leaving a glorious victory to the *Britains* with the loss of only six thousand men: only their sorrow was so great for the loss of their Prince, and the pretended *Viridonix*, that they seem'd rather to mourn than to be revived, with that noble Spirit and Metal, that usually attends a field of Triumph.

The End of the First Book of the Eighth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK II.

Though our victory were of great importance and very compleat, and though I received not so much as one wound in so famous a battel; However I was in a most terrible Agony, to see my self deprived of my Master's company, especially when I called to mind that my complaisance, had contributed to his Misfortune, in seconding the fervent humour of his youth. Insomuch that the orders which I gave for burying the dead, and looking after the wounded were very confusedly given, my ears being all employed in sending and seeking after the illustrious *Constantine*. I ran my self to hear news of him, stopping the fugitive *Picts*; but when I despair'd to find him and that it began to grow dark, I retreated full of

deadly sorrow. I sent away my people, walk'd alone by my self insupportably disturb'd ; but while I abandon'd my soul to despair, an officer of the *Gauls* enter'd, and presented me the young Knight or rather the generous Son of *Aldroec*. The Prince ran to me and embraced me, before I hardly knew who he was, not being able to believe my eyes, so preposited with the sad thoughts of his loss. I no sooner beheld him, but I was transported with a joy which I am not able to express, but instead of losing time in talk, I caused his Arms to be taken off, and then putting him to bed order'd his wounds to be search'd. I was far better satisfied when I found, that he had but one or two and those very slight. They had scarcely made an end of their first dressing, when *Constantine* called me, and beholding me with some kind of trouble ; *Dinocus*, said he, *I have performed a good part of what I intended, I have fought with success against the King of the Picts, I have been contributory to help the Britains to a noble victory, and perhaps I have obtained some honour by the battle. But I have done nothing all this while, if we cannot yet disguise the Prince of Armorica, and discover no other person than Viridonix.* What, Sir, said I, are you not yet satisfied? Has not the design which you had to fight like a private Knight, been more successful in the Event than we expected, and will you adventure into new dangers when there remains nothing for you to do, but to bear the shouts and acclamations of the people, and to receive from *Gratian* and *Locrina* the testimonies of a just Recognizance. As for the Princess I speak not a word of her, for fear of renewing your anguish : only I must tell you after my having had all this complaisance for you, in assisting you to conceal your self, the cause whereof has made me tremble a thousand times, I shall never any more give way to anything, that may be in the least injurious to your honour. Though there were no person in the Army that could discover you, though I were not obliged to give an account to your Father, of his only and most renowned Son ; yet I love you so well (permit me to speak it) as to make it my earnest desire that you would lead a publick life, worthy the degree wherein by the order of heaven you were born. “ Ah ! *Dinocus*, said he sighing, if you love me as you profess, you will assist me to avoid the greatest misfortune of my life. I do not desire you to approve the violent passion that prevails in my soul : I desire you not to take pains to make me happy : That would be too much, *Dinocus*, and too much in vain to labour for a Prince, whom destiny resolves to persecute : But is there no way in the world for me, by your means to go under the name of *Viridonix*, for six or seven days only. I will see the Princess, perhaps I shall love her ; yet if her beauty cannot expel from my heart, the Idea which I there preserve so dearly, yet my insensibility of *Oſtavia's* love, shall never create a subject for report : *Viridonix* may depart from *Troynovant* without any notice taken and afterwards consult with you how to resume, the person of the *Armorican* Prince. He pronounc'd these words with such a wounding look, and I found his request so reasonable, that notwithstanding my resolution never to hearken any more, to any farther requests of his of that nature, I could not be obstinate in refusing what he demanded : However I did not presently give my consent, but after I had ponder'd upon it for some time ; “ Sir, said I, very pensively, have you not some other design conceal'd, that rather concerns your unknown Mistress than the Princess of great Britain ? “ I confess, (said he, with that sweetness and frankness that quite overcame me) that I should be very willing to see that admirable Virgin, that has touched my heart, but that I am in good hopes of meeting with her at *Troynovant*. I know not how to call to mind, the charming Air that is spread through all her face, and over all her person, without perswading my self but that she belongs to the Court : and though that conjecture be not very certain, may I not have reason to believe, that the publick festivals and solemnities, may draw so celebrated a beauty thither ? Let not this confession scare you, rather believe that that unknown Lady will not long prevail in my heart, against the lightning of the Princess *Oſtavia's* Eyes, or that her charms will be able to hold out against a Beauty, whose Lustre will not be a little augmented by the magnificence of her Apparel, and the pomp of a most sumptuous and most Royal Court. After all this will you refuse to serve me in a design, which is conformable to your intention, and which you ought to encourage me in : Can you *Dinocus*, Ah ! can you see me languish in a bed, having in your hands the means to raise me thence ? “ But, Sir, said I, how can you remain in the Court of *Troynovant* without being discovered ? “ I agree with you, replied he, that I cannot continue long in that private condition, but by reason the report runs that I am a Prisoner with the *Picts*, since I came hither for fear of being descryed, and that there are but three or four faithful servants that know my mind, what should hinder but that I may remain, some days at *Troynovant* without being known ? But what must I write to the two Kings, said I, interrupting him. We will give an exact account said he, to the King of *Armorica*, and if you leave out the passion of my love, I give you liberty to tell him all other things beside, even to the very design which I have to conceal

“ my self, which he will take for no other than a piece of gallantry. We will take another
 “ course with the King of the *Britains*, and as we do not owe the same obedience to him,
 “ and for that he will also be prepossessed, by the report that is spread abroad of my imprison-
 “ ment, it will be easie for you to free him from the sorrow which he may conceive upon the
 “ news thereof, by writing to him without any prejudice to my intentions, that he should
 “ not be troubled in the least. That you will answer for me that I have received but two
 “ slight wounds, that I am in a place of security under another name, and that the people
 “ under whose care I am, know me, are faithful, and will not let me come to *Troynovant*,
 “ till I have perfectly recovered my health.

In short, Madam, *Constantine* made out the business so plausibly, and urg'd the probabi-
 lity thereof with so many entreaties and prayers not to be denied, that I gave way, and
 dispatch'd several Posts to the two Kings, with such an account of things as I saw conveni-
 ent. In the mean time we so well forwarded our cares for his recovery, and to hasten him
 to *Troynovant*, that in a few days he left his Bed. At the same time *Geronces*, who was
 slightly wounded as well as *Constantine*, began to grow well, having received Letters from
 the King and Queen of Great Britain, as well as my self. The answer which they sent me
 was very obliging, wherein they return'd me many thanks, and invited me to come to the
 Court, testifying moreover their great sorrow for the imprisonment of the Prince of *Ar-
 morica*, and *Viridonix* the *Gaul*. The Officer that brought me the Letters told me, that
 there was nothing more discoursed of than the valour of those two famous Soldiers; and
 that their names had the honour to be in the mouths of a thousand fair Ladies, that had so
 often sigh'd before at the approach of their numerous Enemies. He inform'd me likewise
 that there was nothing but rejoicing and triumphs at *Troynovant*, that the Ladies who quit-
 ted the City return'd every day, bringing along with them all those delights and pastimes
 that together with their persons had so lately absented themselves; and that there was no-
 thing talk'd of but publick Festivals and Divertisements. *Constantine's* heart leap'd at
 the news of the Ladies return, redoubling the vehemency of those longing desires that be-
 fore possess'd it.

As for my self and *Geronces*; whom I often visited, and whom I found very much dis-
 turbed, he manifesting an earnest heat also to go to the Court of *Albion*, we resolv'd to set
 forward together, and to leave the Armies under the care of our Lieutenant Generals. The
 Prince, who was unwilling to be discovered, went by himself, and indeed before us, though
 we did not stay long behind him. As we were entring into *Troynovant* we saw *Constantine*
 in ordinary habit upon the Bank of the *Thames*, got among a great crowd that were stand-
 ing to see a Boat full of women put into the Stairs. *Geronces*, who had never beheld
Constantine but in his melancholy fits, he was very much pleas'd the first time he saw him,
 and taking him for a person who did not aspire very high, not having had any occasion to
 be jealous of his valour, found in himself nothing but motions of acknowledgment and
 kindness toward him, and only remembred the assistance which he had given him in the
 Battel. Thereupon he rode to the *Gauls*, while I followed him, whereupon the people re-
 tired out of respect, we did alight, and went toward *Constantine*, who immediately met
 us, not without some signs of a discontented mind. We testified to him our joy to meet
 him so happily at *Troynovant*, especially at such a time when we thought him to be a Pri-
 soner among the *Picts*, as well as the Prince of *Armorica*. And *Geronces*, to oblige a stran-
 ger, who had so great a courage, but, as he thought, no great ambition, notwithstanding
 his natural moroseness, he address'd his speech to him in this manner, *Valiant Knight*, said
 he, 'tis only among the *Picts* that *Viridonix* should conceal himself, but now since that by his
 prudence, and the help of ordinary habit he has had the good fortune to escape, and come hi-
 ther, 'tis all the reason in the world that he should make himself known according to his quality,
 and shew himself to a Court that has such an esteem and acknowledgment for his noble Actions.
 As for my self, who am particularly engag'd to your valour, I offer you in my own house all ac-
 commodations necessary for a Knight who is a stranger, who has made an escape from my Enemies,
 and to whom I am beholding for my life.

To this civility the Prince return'd as much; but having accepted of nothing, At least,
 said *Geronces*, admit that no other person but my self may bring you to kiss the King and Queen's
 hands: for besides that *Dinocus* belongs not to our Court, he is so well known for your ancient
 friend, that he may easily yield me that advantage: of which I can make use with less reserv'dness
 when I speak in your praise.

He seconded his request with so much reason, that he overcame the Prince's reluctancy,
 and obtain'd his consent: so that that very day he carried *Constantine* to kiss *Gratian's* hand;
 and that good King having received the Prince of *Armorica*, as if he had been only *Viridonix*,
 shew'd

shewed him all the marks of esteem and obligation that could be expected from a grateful Prince. But the civilities of *Loctrinia* went a little farther, for they seem'd to be much more obliging; and if the modest Prince took no notice that they exceeded the bounds which a fair and great Queen ought to have prescribed her self, *Geronces* and I that were present, did very much observe it. Besides the handsome aspect and carriage which naturally grac'd *Viridonix*, the honour which he had won still got before him, and prepar'd all hearts to his advantage, so that they easily yielded to the motions of admiration and affection, which his presence augmented in those that were least sensible. But *Loctrinia* was too passionate, not to be touch'd with the Grandeur of his Air, and that charming grace which the law so admirable in all his person, and her humour was too great an enemy to reserv'dness, to put her to the trouble of dissembling her thoughts; she blush'd as soon as she cast her eyes upon *Constantine's* face, she look'd upon him with that earnestness as manifested her astonishment, and having at the same time, and with equal surprize beheld the beauty of the surprize; *Valiant Viridonix*, said she, *by the assistance of your courage we triumph over the Picts: but if you were not content with that victory, such a Knight as your self should not have extended his conquests even to our Court, over enemies less terrible than those that you have vanquish'd in the Field. I have contributed no otherwise,* replyed he, *to the victory over your enemies than by my Sword, which the meanest of your Subjects might have done: but, Madam, if my good fortune afforded me any particular advantage, by seconding my earnest zeal for the service of your Majesty, I must lose it again without doubt, by assailing those enemies whose eyes are certainly more formidable than all the weapons of our enemies.*

At those words the memory of his unknown Mistress causing him to sigh, the Queen blush'd, and I observed that *Geronces* seem'd to be ashamed, and cast down his eyes. We our selves beheld her without speaking a word; and as every one of us was about to find the cause of such a sudden alteration, the King enter'd, with an intention to tell us some news that he had newly receiv'd. Hardly had he began to speak, but the impatient *Loctrinia* interrupting him, *Either I am very much deceiv'd,* said she, with a kind of distaste, *or else your earnestness threatens us with a long story: but I beseech you take a better opportunity, and suffer me at this time to testify to our valiant preserver the acknowledgiment of those weighty services which he has done us. But if you think loss of time will prejudice the business which you would communicate, tell it to Dinoc and Geronces, but let me alone to shew Viridonix the high opinion which I have of his noble deeds.*

Concluding those words without expecting any answer, she retired to the side of the Bed, and causing the Prince to stand near her, she beheld him with those looks that denoted a violent passion; *Viridonix*, said she, *fame hath loudly reported your renown, and the people of Troynovant have publish'd your praises, but your only presence tells us more than a thousand mouths can utter. You know, Madam,* said *Constantine* very modestly, *that fame many times makes things greater than they are. And if your Subjects have spoken to my advantage, it was meerly because they would give to a stranger that fought in their behalf those honours which they believ'd not due to the Natives, who were oblig'd to expose their lives for the defence of their Country.*

The Queen beholding then with more freedom the Prince's countenance, felt the arrow peirce more deeply into her heart, that already had wounded it deep enough. So that her humour and her quality giving her greater liberty than ordinary persons of her Sex are wont to take, she began her discourse more obligingly than before, and return'd *Constantine* an answer in these words, *Your modesty, Viridonix, encreases a merit which you labour to eclipse, and confirms me in the resolution I had to keep you in this Court, and to offer you my protection: yes, Viridonix, I esteem you so well as to confess it with that freedom which is usual with me, that my purpose is to give you a sufficient maintenance, and that my heart (of which you have perhaps some talk already) is capable to undertake enough to advance your fortune perhaps beyond your hopes, I say no more but leave you with the King, and do you consider of what I have promised you, while I make it my business to accomplish what I intend.*

And with that, casting yet a more obliging and passionate look upon *Constantine*, she went into her Closet, and the Prince astonish'd and full of meditation, return'd to the King, who was not wanting to repeat what he had already said to us concerning the news: *Viridonix*, said he, *your valour has turn'd the tempest upon the Picts, with which they threatened us; and the King of Ireland, who made those powerful Levies but to raine that Kingdom which the loss of the Battel should render weakest, has declared war against our Enemies, and is about to invade them with a considerable Army. The King of the Picts, enraged at this foul play, offers me very advantageous conditions; and if the Queen be of that mind we will treat with him, to the end he may return to the defence of his people; with such an assistance they will better resist*
a Neighbour

a Neighbour whose growing power is to be fear'd; and while they with equal force assault one another, we will sit still, after the great success you have obtain'd for us. But when I see to them the best part of your good fortune, replied the Prince, for Heaven that declares it self most commonly for the justest cause, redoubled the strength of that Arm that fought in your quarrel. But, Sir, I beseech you to be just to the end, and since you have a respect to the Royal Dignity, and the prayers of an unfortunate Prince, pursue no longer a war of which your enemies themselves humbly beg a final end. I am very gald, replied the King as he was going away, that you are of my opinion, and that a Knight who may promise himself so many advantages from opportunities to exercise his valour, has so great a kindness for my people, as to prefer their peace before his own honour.

Constantine, Gerences, and I followed Gratian, and no sooner had we left him, but the Prince retired to an Apartment, which was appointed for him in the Court. There after he had devoted his first thoughts, to the most incomparable unknown Lady, he ponder'd very melancholily upon *Loconia's* obliging words, and soon apprehended the consequences, and whether he suspected a good part of the truth, or whether he attributed the civilities of the Queen, to a pure acknowledgment, he found himself entangled after a strange manner, *Loconia's* passion menaced his with a thousand obstructions. On the other side the mark of her Friendship, rendred him so much the more unhappy, by how much they made him the more ingratul: For, said he at length, I renounce *Loconia's* alliance, and though she should offer me with the Crown of Great Britain, that of the whole world, though Gratian, should give me the possession of the Princess his daughter, and that She were the most charming beauty in the whole world, the most exact piece of workmanship, that ever Heaven adorn'd the world withal; I will never forsake that incomparable person whom I love, and whom I will love to the last moment of my life.

The Amorous Prince then recalling to his mind, all those beauties which he had observ'd in his unknown Mistress, the fire of her eyes, the luitre of her complexion, and all these inexpressible charms that reign'd in all the lineaments of her face, and from those pleasing imaginations, passing farther to a desire to have another sight of that wonderful Virgin, to that end fought in his mind a plausible pretence to leave *Troynovant*, before he came to be discovered, foreseeing very well that he could not pass any long time for an ordinary Knight, what diligence soever he could use, to avoid meeting with those persons that might know him. His love making all things feasible, he resolv'd with all speed to go for *Dover*, and the next morning as I was in his chamber, while he was rising, he went about to persuade me to approve his design: but he had no sooner began to open his lips to that effect, when several of the most considerable *Britains* enter'd his Chamber, drawn thither no doubt by their apprehension, of his growing into favour, and after some discourse full of fair protestations, which Courtiers well know how to make, their complements ended in news, which is a thing very usual. They told him how the Queen was somewhat indispos'd, and that the Princess being on her return, would be in town the next day. Whereupon *Viridonix* being surpris'd he knew not why, with those two things that they inform'd him, perceived that his heart was strangely mov'd without being able to divine the cause. He enquired into the particulars therefore of what they related to him, either to be better inform'd or else to conceal his surpris, at what time a Page came from *Loconia*, who told him in very respectful language, that the Queen had sent for him about very urgent Business. *Constantine* immediately obeyed the commands of the Queen of *Albion*, and the greatest part of the *Britains* following, they made a stop in a great Antichamber belonging to the Queen's Apartment, while he alone went into her Chamber. *Loconia* sitting under a magnificent Canopy, and leaning negligently upon a Table, received the Prince with all civility, and after she had very stedfastly beheld him; *Viridonix*, said she, *resolve me one doubt which extremely much perplexes me, and tell me whether you never were at this Court before: I fancy that I have already seen you, for I still carry in my memory a confus'd Idea of your countenance. It is most certain, Madam,* replied *Constantine*, *that I never before was in Troynovant, and that yesterday was the first time, that ever I had the honour to see your Majesty. If that be true* (said she, after she had made a little pause) *your birth is most illustrious, and you are some Prince, among Princes not the meanest.* At these surprisng words *Viridonix* blush'd, and that alteration of his countenance confirm'd the suspicion of the Queen: *Assure your self,* said she, *my intention is not to draw from you any thing, which you have a mind so conceal: For I can resolve my self, without having any need of your confession.*

She said no more, but leaving my Matter in great haste, after she had desired him to stay in the Chamber, she went forth and did not return till about a quarter of an hour after. But coming back she manifested her Astonishment, and her perplexity to *Viridonix*, and giving

the full reins to her humour, " Prince, *said she*, I come to be inform'd of a truth which I would willingly understand; for I find it very strange, that the Son of the King of *Ar-morica*, that our beloved *Constantine* should come to our Court under a borrowed name. " Not that it is possible for me to believe that such a disguise can be for any offence committed, you noble Actions, and a certain inclination that I find in my self to interpret all things to your advantage, sufficiently protect you from any such suspicion. But after all this, have you so little respect for us, or do you love *Octavia* so violently, that you are unwilling to appear what you are in a City where she is not?

Constantine extremely surpris'd, stood in a kind of an amaze for some time, not knowing what answer to make, but at length recovering himself, *It is not possible for me, Madam*, said he, *to fail in my respect to your Majesty, nor to give that testimony of my love which you speak of, to a Princess whom I never saw? And if those persons that declar'd to you that I was Constantine, would have spoken sincerely, they might have also inform'd you that it was an impetuosity of youth only that made me take upon me the name of Viridonix, to the end I might act in the Army, at my first undertaking feats of war with less wariness and circumspection than was necessary for the Heir of a King.* " There is no person has betrayed you, replied the *Queen*, nor have I understood this secret of yours otherwise than by looking among the Pourtraictures of several Emperours, of all the Kings in *Europe*, and the most considerable persons who are descended from them, all which we have in a certain Gallery not far distant. I wish'd above a hundred times, in going to inform my self, that you had been *Marcomire*, *Sunnon*, *Balamir*, or any other whom I might have fix'd to his advantage in this Island, but my misfortune will have it that you should be *Constantine*, that is to say, that very Prince, whom of all the Princes in the world, I would not have had you to have been; I could not suffer my self to make a moment's doubt, and I hated the Painter immediately for having been so happy with his Pencil. Nay, I have been displeas'd at your disguise, that has contributed to surpris'e my heart, and I have felt a certain kind of instigation against the Princess, which may not be perhaps altogether exempt from jealousy: Prince, I have told you too much, but the force of my passion carries me beyond the common rules of my Sex, as my Dignity advances me above the ordinary rank of women, and I would give you evident proofs of my love, would you but continue always *Viridonix* for me, and not again become *Constantine* for *Octavia*.

The Prince was so confounded, that he neither could return any answer, nor so much as look upon *Loctrinia*, when the courageous *Queen* resuming the discourse, " Speak, explain your self, *said she*, are you so dazled with the Crown which is promis'd you, (which if I please, I can easily deprive you of) to tie your self absolutely to a person, because in all likelyhood she is to be Heiress that must enjoy it. *Constantine* press'd by by these last words, " I have already told you, Madam, *said he*, that I never saw the Princess, and for that reason can easily preserve my pretences for another, if it be not your will that I should aspire to the Daughter of a great Monarch.

He uttered these words with such a gesture, that easily made it appear that he spoke what he really thought: and yet though his heart was possess'd by the Idea of that fair Mistress whom he only lov'd, however it was not without a signal grief that he renounc'd his ambition to reign over Great *Britain*, and the honour of enjoying a transcendent Lady, that was to put the Scepter into his hand. Nevertheless *Loctrinia* thereby thought her anguish somewhat appeas'd, for imagining from thence that *Constantine's* heart was at liberty, they went away very well satisfied the one from the other. The Prince believing he should find less obstruction in his love of that incomparable Virgin whom he ador'd: and the *Queen* on the other hand believing that she might in time gain a heart that was not already prepossessed by love.

In the mean while you are to understand, Madam, that the *Queen* had given order that no person should have admittance into her Chamber all that day, unless it were *Viridonix*; and that *Geronces*, not having had that favour shew'd him as the Stranger, took so great a disgust at his entertainment, that it was little different from fury: for I saw him in the great Anti-Chamber belonging to *Loctrinia's* Apartment, where he walk'd in a pelting chafe; and he no sooner perceiv'd me, but he came toward me with a countenance full of discontent, and address'd himself to me in these words, " Your Friend is more happy than we; but as I introduc'd him into Court, and as he is beholding to me for his good fortune, it may happen that I may undo what I have done: I know he has sav'd my life, but besides that commonly men of our calling make but little account of it, they hazard it often enough to find every day opportunities to retaliate benefits of that nature. If you rightly understand *Viridonix*, replied I, as you will infallibly know him in a few days, you will find that it

is not ambition that brought him to Troynovant; for he might appear at Court after another manner, or he will never be your Competitor, or hinder you from the quiet enjoyment of your Commands, and the favour which you have obtain'd.

I pronounc'd those words which were really true, with so many signs of perfect integrity, that *Geronces* seem'd to be somewhat appeas'd; but he was no sooner gone down stairs, and had made a stop in a wide Court just before the Palace of the Kings of *Albion*, but he began to ponder, (by what we afterwards understood) upon what I had spoken to him; he call'd to mind at the same time the noble aspect of *Viridonix*, his disguisement, the favour that the Queen had shew'd him; and composing a poison of the mixture of all these thoughts, he infected his heart therewith, insomuch that it produc'd a most cruel jealousy. While his fury added new violence to his passions, *Viridonix* goes along well contented in his mind, to see his affection for the Princess dispensed with, and to find less obstruction in the design which he was bent upon. And being taken up with that pleasing fancy, he made no stop at the sight of *Geronces*, when the *Britain* observing his countenance, and seeing there all the symptoms of satisfaction, and therefore not doubting but the *Gaul* was lov'd by *Loctrinia*, "*Viridonix*, cryed he, you are madly dazzled with your new favour, since you take no notice that I am here, and tarry for you.

At that hasty language, the great Prince, naturally impatient, began to be in a passion; but being withal infinitely generous and grateful, as one that had forgot that *Geronces* was beholding to him for his life, that he might only remember the obliging offer which the *Britain* had made him, he immediately beheld him with more moderation, and addressing his speech to him, *My sight is too good*, said he, *to fear that the pretended favours which you tax me with, should any way do it an injury.* "It must be then, replied *Geronces*, that your converse with the Queen has so put up your mind, that you scorn to look down upon such miserable persons to whom it is denied. *You speak after such a rate*, (replied the Prince, striving still to keep himself in temper) *that I might dispence with giving you any satisfaction, however being very unwilling to differ with my friends, I will tell you that strangers have a privilege every where, and that it is no extraordinary thing for the Court of Troynovant to distinguish Viridonix from the subjects of Gratian.* "We have not observ'd, replied *Geronces* full of impatience, that that quality of a stranger of which you boast so highly, was so much look'd upon in the person of *Dinocus*; and if out of a fancy it were regarded in that of *Viridonix*, I wear by my side that wherewith I do dispute with him any advantages which he can claim in *Troynovant*. And I have wherewith to maintain them, (fiercely said the incensed Prince, laying his hand upon his Sword) *and wherewithal to make Geronces repent, and all others that shall assault Viridonix with the same boldness.*

They fell to it immediately, and layd at one another with great fury; but while rage transported the jealous *Britain*, and Heroick Courage animated the valiant *Constantine*, a great number of persons in the Palace-yard, and from the Palace it self came running in, and parted them. *Gratian* and *Loctrinia* shew'd themselves in a great Balcony to appease the tumult; and the passionate Queen understanding the cause, ordered *Geronces* to be seised upon, though he were her Favourite, and that a person of her humour stood in need of one so bold, so hardy as he was, and apt to undertake any enterprize of her contriving. She sent immediately to desire *Viridonix* to come to the Court, not a little glad to find that he had received no hurt. And though at the same time she understood that *Geronces* was wounded in the Arm, she caus'd him to be sent to a Tower, where persons of the greatest quality were imprison'd; so that if the generous *Viridonix* had not interceded for him, and added his own to the petitions of his Friends, the fierce *Loctrinia* had absolutely order'd her farther commands to have been put in execution. At length she pardon'd *Geronces*, and to reconcile that violent and rash person to a Prince whom she lov'd, she told him that it was to *Viridonix* that he was beholding for the favour he had receiv'd. Those words instead of infusing thoughts of gratitude into the *Britain*, did but redouble his hatred against the *Gaul*, which so incensed the Queen, that there was much ado to make *Geronces's* peace. And indeed there was extraordinary means used before they could perswade the Queen to see him again that Evening.

The next morning all the youth of the Court, and the most considerable among the Strangers took Horse to meet the Princess. And *Constantine*, incited by a passion that he could easily have yielded to, had accompanied that noble Train, had not the Queen detain'd him with her all that day, shewing him all the time a hundred signs of a most violent passion; but while she freely beholding his beloved face, drank large draughts of a poison with which love had already envenom'd her heart, *Gratian* enters, *Madam*, said he, *the Princess is come.* I cannot believe, Sir, said *Loctrinia* interrupting him, *that her return is so unexpected.*

perci'd, that you should surprize us in this manner, or that your happiness is so great, to be so overjoy'd at so small a matter. She was going on with the same sharp severity, when the noise of the Horses and Chariots, oblig'd her to step forth into a great Balcony, together with *Constantine* and *Gratian* to see the Princess. 'Twas not that she condemn'd the thought of curiosity, but beside that her humour was very fickle, she found a certain violent desire growing in her heart, to observe the countenance of the Prince upon that first interview. *Constantine*, notwithstanding the melancholy study, into which his converse with the Queen had plung'd him; cast his eyes upon the noble Train that came toward the Palace, and no sooner did he discern the several objects, but his heart was strangely mov'd, his countenance grew pale, his legs became feeble, by reason of a surprize that suspended all the functions of his soul: insomuch that he was constrained to lean against the Balcony, like a person quite fainting away. In short, Madam, he there beheld his fair unknown, or rather he saw by a miracle wrought in his favour, that the incomparable Princess destined to him, was the admirable person, that had already charm'd his affection.

As her Idea was always present in his mind, he mistook her not the least moment; for the sumptuousness of her habit and the gallantry of her convoy, instead of disguising it, made it shine out with a brighter lustre, and only seem'd to add the magnificence of a Triumph, to the victory of her beauty. The passionate *Loecrinia* took notice of the alteration of *Constantine's* countenance, and having easily divin'd the cause, she suffered the impetuosity of her humour to take its full swing. She cast a cruel look upon the innocent Princess, afterward she beheld *Constantine* with a despitiful eye, and hastily leaving the King she shut her self up in her Closet: either that she might with more freedom, give way to the violence of her passion; or to seek out a remedy against the distemper that afflicted her. While she spins and then again unravels a hundred several designs, while the King, who durst not follow her, feeds his delighted Eyes with the sight of his fair Daughter, and that the enamour'd Prince recollects his spirits; the fair Princess enters into the Court of the Palace: and she was no sooner allighted out of her Chariot, but she goes up into the Queen's Apartment followed by a noble Train. *Gratian* received her with all the affection of a loving father, and having told her that *Loecrinia* was busie in her closet, he presented *Viridonix* to her in a very obliging manner. Princess, said he, the valour of this Knight has restored you to Troynovant, his Arm has delivered you from your Enemies, to preserve you for the Prince of Armorica: so that you see in the person of *Viridonix*, the defender of your liberty and the tutelar Angel of our dominions: I desire you to receive him with all the acknowledgment that is due to him, and let us labour both together to stay him here in a Court, of which he will without doubt be both the support and ornament.

Concluding these words he leaves *Constantine* with *Octavia*, and moving toward two or three strange Princes, that had accompanied the Princess, he gave them that respect which he thought due to their quality and merit. In the mean while *Constantine* transported with love and joy, stands like a mute person, his heart abandoning it self wholly to his Princess, his eyes being solely employed in beholding her, and if he found himself in a capacity to open his lips, 'twas not so much that he might speak, as to give passage to his Amorous sighs. He said nothing because he had too much to say, for he was at the same time to return thanks to his happy destiny, to relate what befel him at Dover, and to declare himself the fortunate Prince of Armorica. The Princess observ'd that discomposure, and therefore to avoid such consequences as might give her distaste; *Viridonix* (said she, with a very civil aspect) I believe that you have seen us somewhere else already, and that the surprize which appears in your face, comes from some supposed change of my condition: and because you find all at an instant, that I am the Princess. 'Tis true, Madam, (answered he, with a world of respect and civility) that I saw you at Dover, but I beheld you so fair, shining with the lustre of so many divine qualities, that if I have any reason to be surpris'd, 'tis to see you again the only Princess of Britain, that deserves to be Princess of the whole world.

The charming *Octavia* was at a stand, and finding in those respectful words of *Constantine*, something I cannot tell what presumptuously spoken, she said not a word for a good while, studying what resolution to take: But having no ground at all, and perhaps no power at all to give a severe answer, to a Knight whom she esteem'd already more than she thought she did; You turn the matter very obligingly, said she, for I must assure you I had not begun my discourse in that manner, had I expected such a piece of flattery: but instead of drawing it upon my self, I would have given you that applause which your noble deeds deserve. That which I did, reply'd the Prince, deserves not the remembrance of so fair and great a Princess, for had I known that the divine person that I saw at Dover, had been the illustrious *Octavia* for whom I fought; I had lost my life: or else by Actions far above what you commend, I would have appear'd before you, Madam, less unworthy the honour which I have received.

The

The vexed *Loocrinia* at that time came forth of the Closet, and in the despite that appear'd in her eyes increased, when she saw so many Princes and Knights, forming a Magnificent Court about the Princess; her choler mounted to the highest degree, when she saw *Constantine* and *Octavia* discoursing together, at a little distance from the rest of the company. What thoughts did not then possess the enraged Queen, and how shall I be able to express the violence of her deportment? she returned into her Closet, and there embracing the first designs that offered themselves to her mind, she called the Princess: and instead of receiving her with an affectionate tenderness, upon her return from a journey, the cause whereof had been so extraordinary, she presently cast a most dreadful look upon her: but then labouring to conceal the excess of her anger with a feigned moderation, more to be feared than a passion that madly shews it self; *Or I am deceiv'd*, said she, *or you are very ready to entertain lovers.* The modest *Octavia* blush'd and cast her eyes upon the ground, as if she would clear her self by her respect, of an accusation that surpris'd her. *No no*, (said the impatient *Loocrinia*, interrupting her) *there is no reason that you should be my superiour, as the great number of men that are always your attendants, give me ground to complain. But I shall put things in better order, and it may be you will be to morrow with people, not altogether so gallant and amorous as the strangers, but with such as will obey me after another nature than I find you intend to do.*

Concluding these words she turned hastily away not staying for any answer, and commanded her to retire: *Octavia* surpris'd with her strange carriage, calling to mind not only all her Actions, but also the very least of all her thoughts, and finding nothing to deserve that furious charge which the Queen had laid upon her, she only contented her self to lift up her eyes to heaven, thence to call witness of her innocency, without daring to accuse the fierce *Loocrinia* of injustice.

Thus *Octavia* went away sighing, and she was no sooner come into her chamber, where she settled her self to a serious examination of her past life, but she gave order not to be spoken with that day. A little while after the Virgin in whom she most confid'd of all that attended her, went into her chamber: and immediately observing the melancholy countenance of her Mistress, *What Madam*, said she, (as we understood afterwards) *do you chuse out such a time of mirth as this to afflict your self? For Heaven's sake* (said she, pursuing her pleasing expostulation) *give more respect to the good fortune that smiles upon us. What would you do if the Picts were besieging Troynovant, and that you were at Dover compell'd to take shipping, to seek a Sanctuary in Gallia Armorica? What would you do, Madam*, said she, *if you perceived your self inclin'd not to disaffect Viridonix, and that this Viridonix should appear to be but some ordinary Knight. In the mean time your Enemies are overthrown, you are in the Court of the King your Father, and there is nothing more certain but that Viridonix, the valiant and lovely Viridonix, is the Prince of Armorica, as I always thought. I have been to see his picture in the Queen's little gallery: and Dinocus whom I begg'd to clear my suspicion, seeing that Constantine by my advice was about to make himself known, made me no answer but with a smile; whereby I apprehended that he knew not how to deceive me.* At these words the fair cheeks of *Octavia*, were covered with a pleasing blush, while that charming Princess instead of making any answer, continued pondering, and seem'd to be more sad than before. *Gadena*, so was the Virgin called, having an inconceivable affection for her Mistress, threw her self upon her knees before her: and after she had used all the pretty tricks of female flattery and soothing persuasion, she took her by one of her fair hands, and kissing it; *My dear Princess*, said she, *can you have any disturbing trouble, and not acquaint me with the cause of it?* As she was about to say more, one of her companions came to advertise *Octavia*, that *Viridonix* desired to attend her.

The Princess was surpris'd, and looking upon that Damsel with an eye, as well denoting melancholy as discontent; *Have I not told you*, said she, *that I would see no person this day?* 'Tis very true Madam, said the Virgin, *but I did not think that your Orders had concern'd the Strangers, and more especially such a Knight as Viridonix. I did not except him*, reply'd the Princess, *and you would do well to send him civilly away.* *Gadena's* companion hearing these words, thought that she had displeas'd the Princess: and was going to make amends for her error, when *Octavia*, after she had beheld her carriage, and knew her design not without some perplexity; *'Tis not seasonable*, (said she, looking somewhat doubtfully) *for those excuses that would have satisfied Viridonix, immediately return'd, will look now like contriv'd answers, and not be well taken.*

Pronouncing those words, she fell again into a study, without absolutely determining what precise answer to give, when *Gadena*, to free her out of her perplexity, took upon her to speak, addrelling her self to her companion, *Since, Madam, the Princess has spoken*

said she, you do not do well to let a Renowned Knight stand at the door. Let him enter then, (replied the Princess, blushing, and then endeavouring to smile) *Gadena will have it so*, said she, and I will not have any more contest with her about the interest of *Viridonix*. She had no sooner obeyed, but the enamoured *Constantine* appeared with a charming grace, and drew near the Princess in a most respectful manner; *Octavia's* Damfels retired to the other end of the Room, out of respect, when the passionate Prince, who took no farther care to conceal himself, and had already discovered his real quality to the King, had he not design'd to declare it first to the Princess, observing the alteration of *Octavia's* countenance, *Is it possible, Madam*, said he, smiling, *that Viridonix should be always a trouble to you? That Constantine should be unfortunate*, (pursued he, beholding her with looks of love) *if Viridonix be offensive because he resembles the other. We are so highly bound to Viridonix*, replied the Princess, *that his company can never be displeasing to us: But certainly you will never have any ground, no more than the Princess of Armorica, to complain of us, as of a person upon whom your good or bad fortune depends.* "Ah, Madam, replied he, you know *Constantine* but very little, if you doubt in the least of his being absolutely devoted to your service, or if you think you have not his destiny at your disposal: yes, Madam, the Prince of *Amorica* adores the divine Princess of *Albion*, and must expire at your feet, (added he, kneeling upon the ground with one knee) if she become so cruel as not to consent to her Father's will. In brief, Madam, you see a Prince on whom you may bestow all honour and felicity: you see *Constantine* whom the Heavens design'd to serve *Octavia* before you were born. I have obeyed that sacred power; I was never sensible of any other but your charms, which I no sooner saw, but I felt those passions which I never prov'd before nor since.

While *Constantine* expresses himself in this manner, *Octavia* raises him up. And though she were prepar'd to hear good part of what he had given her to understand, yet could she not forbear from being so surpris'd at first, that she could not make him any answer, which gave the enamoured Prince time to give her a more exact account of what he thought was necessary to inform her. As for the Princess, she hearkened to him with more signs of satisfaction than disturbance, in regard his company and his person was pleasing, but more especially because she knew he was the person design'd for her Husband, so that I believe had she had time to make him an answer, she would have done it in a very civil manner, if not very obliging. But the passionate *Constantine* had no sooner declar'd his thoughts to her, but two Strangers of eminent quality, to whom they could not refuse the favour which they had granted *Viridonix*, entred the Room, and broke off their farther converse. My Master was infinitely displeas'd at it, for he thought to have stay'd with the Princess till night, as well that he might have a longer time to behold her, as to continue an entertainment that was so pleasing to him; but it was impossible for him to do it, because the two Strangers stay'd so long that it was time for him to retire as well as they. He found some little kind of perplexity for not having inform'd himself what were *Octavia's* real thoughts; but on the other hand joy transported him when he consider'd that the fair person he lov'd, was the miraculous Princess that was appointed for him, and that Princess, all enchanting as she was, had hearken'd to him, with fairer marks of esteem than of indifference, and seem'd more inclinable to good will than any aversion.

In the mean time the violent Queen sends for *Geronces*, who was the person that put all her designs in execution; and she no sooner saw him, but without permitting him to assuage her with any Apology, she told him that he must prepare to leave *Troynovant* the next morning early, and that he should carry *Octavia* to a certain house which she appointed; Go, said she, go and make ready for your journey, and without putting your self to the trouble of enquiring into the cause, or studying upon the event, manage this affair with quick discretion; and take care that *Octavia's* residence at *Sotimbra* be not made publick. *Geronces* instead of going his ways, beholds the Queen, blushes and sighs. *Loeriniz*, who already observ'd it, and had nothing but *Octavia* in her mind, instead of understanding the *Britain's* true thoughts by the alterations of his countenance, fancied that it was some effect of compassion in him for the Princess: *What*, *Geronces*, (said she, looking upon him with surprize) *have you always obeyed me without scruple, now to stand pausing at the most just of my commands? Have you more interest than I in the disposal of her life? Or in short, Geronces, explain your self, do you think of angering the King?* "Ah, Madam! said he, forbear to continue a discourse so harsh and terrible. My fidelity is too much injured by it, and I cannot hearken to it without believing my self the most unfortunate of men. Can you, Madam, can you, without wounding me to death, doubt in the least but that I am wholly devoted to your service? Does not what I have already done, answer for me? Have you ever found

“found any faint slackness in me, or any scruple in the execution of your commands? And
 “in the oaths that I have solemnly sworn to you, had I ever any respect to the King or
 “Princess? No, no, Madam. I never considered them at all; and I am still ready to sacri-
 “fice them to your service, should they go about to make me scruple a submission, that
 “might give you any trouble in the possession of your Sovereignty. But, Madam, I can-
 “not receive without surprize any command that may abate me from your Majesty;
 “and I tremble when I think, that during my absence, some accident of importance may
 “happen wherein you may have need of assistance. At these words *Loerina* chang’d her
 purpose, for knowing *Geronces* to be hardy and ambitious, she found that the interest of
 his fortune made him express himself after that manner, *Go, said she, and return again as
 soon as you have conducted Olivia two or three miles out of Town, provided that by your order
 she be safely guarded to the place, and that no person living know where she remains.*

Satisfied with that last command, the *Britann* retired; and though his countenance ap-
 peared more cheerful than before, he could not leave *Loerina’s* Closet without sighing.
 Early the next morning he caused the Princess to be awaked, and rudely entred the Cham-
 ber, inform’d her of his Commission, and speaking to the Virgins that attended her, and
 were presently got together, he ordered them to dress their Mistress with all speed. They
 were so surpris’d at the strangeness of the accident, that they began to complain and mur-
 mur at it aloud; but *Olivia* commanded them silence in such a manner, as shewed the pru-
 dence of her mild temper. Afterwards looking upon them with a pensive aspect, and
 with tears flowing from her fair eyes; *Be obedient, I entreat you, said she, dress me quickly,
 and forbear all reluctancy of which they may make a new offence. Alas! since the Queen removes
 me from her presence, I must be either very guilty, or very unfortunate; besides that your affection
 may make you fail in your fidelity to our Sovereign, and render me an Accessary with you.*

She concluded these words with a sigh, and wiping away those tears that she could not
 contain, she so well assisted the diligence of her Servants, that she was presently ready to
 call for *Geronces*, who being entred the Chamber, and letting him know that she was rea-
 dy to be gone; *Geronces*, (said she, with a sweetness able to melt any heart but his) *will
 you not permit me to take my leave of the King and Queen? You shall be there present, nor
 will I desire them to recal the orders they have given; for in short, it is only to see them that I
 make you this request. And if I speak to them, it shall be only to tell them, that I will be obedi-
 ent as long as I live to their wills and pleasure, with all the respect which I owe them. If you are
 ready,* replied *Geronces*, interrupting her, *let us be gone, and never take care to awake two per-
 sons in the morning so early, whose repose you ought to be wary how you disturb, if you have so
 much respect as you pretend.*

Those last words went more near the Princess’s heart, than the refusal of a thing which
 she so earnestly desired; but instead of breaking into passion against a person that acted by
 the Queen’s orders, she preserv’d her first moderation, and answered that she would stay
 till *Gratian* and *Loerina* were awake, “That cannot be, said *Geronces*, interrupting her a-
 “gain, for our orders are so exact, that I cannot tell whether I have not already fail’d in
 “the preciseness which I ought to have observed in the execution of my Commission, by
 “wasting so long time in discourse. And therefore if we must go, let us be gone presently,
 “yet of your self do what you think necessary for you to do.

Instead of saying more he went out of the Chamber, and marching at the head of the
 Guard which he had brought with him, the Princess followed, suffering her self to be led
 by the Officers who took charge of her. She was no sooner out of the Palace-yard, but
 she went into her Chariot ready prepared, and the Ladies that attended her having taken
 theirs, *Geronces* immediately led the way for *Sotimbra*. The people of *Troyvant* that saw
 the Princess as she rode along were very much grieved; for besides that she was but care-
 lessly dressed, she carried a pensive melancholy in her countenance, enough to have mov’d
 the most insensible hearts. The sweetness of her temper appeared more visible, through
 the severity of *Geronces*; for that faithful minister of *Loerina* had something of so much
 haste in his deportment, and in his countenance, that the ill will which he drew upon him,
 seem’d to add new charms to the Princess, and to render her more amiable: yet there were
 none that durst take her part, nor murmur aloud against *Loerina*, so powerful she was, and so
 much dreaded: so that they were contented to give the young Lady a thousand praises, and
 to accompany her with their good wishes, while in secret they uttered as many imprec-
 ations against the cruel Queen. In the mean time *Geronces* had given order to make such
 speedy haste, that they got to *Sotimbra* that very night, though it were thirty miles from
Troyvant: *Olivia* was no sooner there, but instead of minding to rest her self, she thought
 of nothing else but *Loerina’s* anger, and afflicted her self in such a manner for having been the
 cause

cause of it, though innocently, that she fell into an extraordinary Fit of Melancholy.

All the while she is so sad, the whole Court was no less afflicted, astonishment reign'd only there, and every one labour'd to find out the reason of *Octavia's* so sudden departure. The King, who was no better inform'd than the meanest Citizen in *Troynovant*, was so surpris'd, that not being able to satisfy those that ask'd him to give an account concerning his own Daughter, he ran to *Locrinia's* Apartment to learn the news himself. He demanded of that fierce Lady where *Octavia* was, why she was hurried from *Troynovant*, and why her departure was so hurried and kept private. *Locrinia* hearing him speak with that earnestness that is not ordinary in persons of his humour, look'd earnestly upon him, and preparing to answer without being mov'd in the least: *You would fain understand things*, said she, *but I cannot tell whether I am oblig'd to answer you, considering how imperiously you make your enquiry.*

Those words seem'd very dreadful to *Gratian*, so that he was fain to fall to his old submissiveness: *For Heaven's sake, Madam*, said he, *tell me what is become of my Daughter.* "Since you call her so, *replyed she*, 'tis very fitting you should take some care of her, or at least you should not blame me if I deprive my self of her sight for your own good. "This is not all, I make my self odious that you may live in quiet: for since you have layd upon my Shoulders the burthen of affairs, I have met with several occasions, that instead of being rewarded for the pains I have taken, raise the clamours of your Subjects against me, so that I draw upon my self their hatred for exposing my own life to preserve yours. Thus I make no question but all the world cries out against my pretended severity; for when you disrespect me in your carriage, 'tis in vain for me to expect more satisfaction from indifferent persons. But that you may be more just for the future, and may not lightly condemn me, know that I had not remov'd *Octavia*, but for fear lest some of these Strangers now in your Court should steal her affections, and least your only Daughter should bestow that heart which you have the sole right to dispose, to the prejudice of your authority, and your promise given to the King of *Armorica*. And thus I have done that which may perhaps render me odious, to keep you from being entangled with your Neighbour Princes, and that you may not be forc'd to follow the inclinations of a young Girl that is not capable of governing her self.

Gratian is overjoyed, he returns thanks to the dissembling *Locrinia*; and after that, to be fully inform'd, as he thought, of the business: *But, Madam*, said he, *why did you not communicate to me a design so much to my advantage.* *Because*, said she, *I would exempt you from being thought ill of by the strange Princes that are in Town, and the clamour of your Subjects, which I could not have done, had you been privy to the design: for the affected surprise which you would have shew'd when you had been discours'd with, or question'd about it, would not have produc'd the same effect as that which you now manifest, which being real and effectual, causes a more confident aspect in the countenance, and far more persuasive than if you had acted by consent with me.* "Ah, *Madam*, *cryed he*, your prudence is great and very prodigious, and Heaven certainly was very favourable to me, when it put into my heart to resign the Government up to your care. Govern then, *Madam*, still, and govern absolutely, and never fear lest I should call you to give an account of that administration which you acquit so worthily; for my part, I am resolv'd to submit to your management without putting my self to the trouble of any examination, and to testify the acknowledgment which I owe to a person that sacrifices her repose to the establishment of mine. *I do not repent*, *Sir*, said she, *of the pains that I have taken in your behalf; for I am glad that the labour and travel which I undergo proves to your ease and quiet; but after all it is but just that I should take care for my own tranquility, and not to draw upon me the hatred of those that envy all such persons as are advanc'd contrary to the common order of things. You will do me a kindness to discharge me of a burthen that will infallibly overwhelm me; and to consider that a woman acts more securely and more becomingly when she obeys, and when she binds her self to——* "Ah, *Madam*, said the King interrupting her, forbear to have a thought which is no less injurious to you, than prejudicial to me; and be assured that women like your self, when they are to be found, ought to bear the whole sway, where men are of capacity to understand them. Concluding those words, he went his way, fearing lest *Locrinia* should restore him back that absolute power of which he had declar'd her to be absolute Mistress, and that she would discontinue to act as King.

While the feeble *Gratian* is thus overjoyed to be dispoil'd of his authority, and that all the Court mourned for the absence of the Princess, *Constantine* and I slept securely: nature compell'd us to take our rest, over-wearied with long watching, and turmoil of the mind that had lasted all the preceding night. The enamour'd Prince had stayed in my Chamber

till a little before day, when he beholding me with a look that easily denoted love and joy, "It is but just, *Pinocus*, said he, that you should partake of my happiness, who have had so great a share in my discontents; I am, *Pinocus*, not only more happy than Princes, who are but a small number, but more fortunate than all men. Do you not admire at this strange providence of heaven, that visibly shews it felt in the beginning of my youth, and which seems to lead me to a perfect happiness?" "It is very true, said I, that hitherto it has been very favourable to you, for besides the noble qualities with which it has endowed you, it has always given success to your valour." "Let us, said he, interrupting me, discourse of the greatest of its favours, let us but consider that it made me insensible of the charms of those celebrated beauties, which we saw in our Travels: But then when I met, yet without having any knowledge of her, that incomparable Princess of whom it seems to promise me the enjoyment; Heaven it self guided her looks into my heart, and there established their Empire in my soul. And so firmly is this Empire founded that nothing can move it: nay though destiny were as contrary to me, as she is now favourable, nothing can hinder me from the possession of *Octavia*, nothing debar me from being happy.

At these words he made a stop, and ponder'd upon the Queen's affection, which he durst not make known to me. The thought thereof happening to moderate the excess of his joy, awaken'd him to think wherein he might fail of his good fortune: so that after he had breath'd forth a sigh; *Alas!* said he, *am I so dazzled with the first beams of my hope, which I see begin to glimmer, to think my felicity so immovably fix'd? Ah thoughts too pleasing! Ah flattering hopes! you cannot disguise those misfortunes, of which I feel such fatal Omens. I know the proud Locrinia to be as fierce and fiery, as the most violent of her impious sex: She thinks that great Princes are beholding to her, if she vouchsafes to accept of their homages. She is fair, she is proud, she is Queen of a great Kingdom, and setting aside these bright shining qualities, she has humbled the pride of her soul before thee, she has compelled thee to understand an affection which thy heart and thy reason cannot approve, and which thou canst not reject without drawing upon thee the persecution of an incens'd Woman and in high power. But this would be but a small thing, had her fury no other object, but the pretended offender who resists her charms. Alas, there is more than too much likelihood, that she will extend it to the fair and innocent Octavia, and that that miraculous Princess will be soon expos'd to the violence of her passion. Let us therefore forget our own interests, that we may take care of the admirable Octavia: let us throw our selves at Gratian's feet, let us cease to be Viridonix, let us appear to be the Prince of Armorica, and let us demand the fair Princess, so long since promised the over-happy Constantine.* After he had taken this resolution, he called for Attendants, who were no sooner enter'd into his Chamber, but they inform'd him of the departure of the Princess. The news thereof surpris'd him in a strange manner; for the fear which he had already felt, returning to smite his heart, he grew pale, and was constrained to give free passage to a number of sighs. He caus'd them several times to repeat, the circumstances of that new misfortune: and suffering himself to give way to his former discontents, and an intermingled transportation of fury, rage and choler, he went to the King with so much eagerness, as easily denoted, how much he was concern'd for the absence of *Octavia*. There was then with *Gratian* an Envoy from the King of *Armorica*, who had no sooner cast his Eyes upon *Constantine's* face, but he seem'd to be overjoyed: and would have cast himself at the feet of his Prince, had not *Constantine* oppos'd it, out of the reverence he bore to the Father of his Princess. The King of *Albion* being taught in a few words, the true quality of *Viridonix*, transported with joy, he threw his Arms about my Master's Neck, and embrac'd him with all the affection, he was able to express: and having kiss'd him he call'd him twenty times his dear Son, his only stay and support, and then bedew'd his cheeks with his tears. *Constantine* kneels out of respect, embraces the knees of so good a Prince, and tells him the reason of his disguise, with all the sincerity that modesty could permit him. He discourst him afterwards concerning the extreme love which he had for the Princess, of his intention to have discovered himself that day, and gave him an exact account of all things, tending toward the making good his honourable claim. *Gratian* is overjoyed, and would needs carry *Viridonix* to the Queen, of whose affection the wary *Viridonix* had not spoken a word; either that he might be the first to bring such acceptable news to the fierce Queen, or to understand her thoughts, before he would presume to make known his own, though he had sufficiently discovered already what they were, by his extraordinary caresses and transportation of mind. When he was enter'd *Locrinia's* chamber, he presented *Constantine* to her: and undertaking to speak with more than ordinary vehemency; *Madam*, said he to the Queen, behold here the illustrious Prince of *Armorica*, behold here the generous *Constantine*, who had

not as I am inform'd gone under another name, but only that he might fight with less caution of his person for our interests.

At these words *Constantine* kneeling with one knee, kiss'd the *Queen's* hand with all the submission, that any subject of *Gratian* could have shewn, and he spoke with a respect answerable to his behaviour. *Loocrinia* blush'd to see her conquerour at her feet, and therefore immediately commanding him to rise, she shewed him all the decent civilities that her love and despite would permit her. However she did not manifest that full satisfaction, which it behoved her to shew at such a meeting, but she excus'd the defects of her perplexity, by reason of the surpris which they had put upon her, and something of an indisposition, which hindred her from shewing those marks of joy, which she ought to have express'd upon the sight of *Constantine*. But *Prince*, said she, *my distemper will not long endure without doubt: and therefore you may return in a short time, and know the reality of my thoughts.* *Gratian* was extremely troubled at that reception, but not daring either to complain or stay in the *Queen's* Chamber, after she had told him her mind, *Constantine* and he went away together.

A little while after *Loocrinia* sends for my Master, and looking upon him without any reservedness but a great deal of love, she openly discovered to him her passion: she told him moreover that *Gratian* was sickly, his body tender: and therefore to assure him entirely the Crown of great Britain, she gave him easily to conjecture the violent means, which she was able to make use of. The vertuous *Constantine* was struck with horror, but for many reasons forbearing to incense *Loocrinia*, he answer'd to every thing with all submission, nor did he take his leave of the fair Princess, but in a very respectful manner. The *Queen* far from being satisfied with all the civilities of the *Prince*, was strangely enrag'd at his carriage: and seeing the spirit of *Constantine* far from being enclined, to that acknowledgment which she desired, she sent for *Geronces*, who was no sooner enter'd the Closet, but beholding him with a troubled countenance; *Geronces*, said she, *you must serve me now with a re-inforc'd resolution, you must give me new proofs of that fidelity, which you have always had for me. In short, Geronces, you must absolutely break off the match between Constantine and Octavia: You know and the report is already spread abroad every where, that Viridonix is the Prince of Armorica, but understand however, Geronces, understand, that I cannot suffer him to espouse the Princess of Albion. The very fear which I have of seeing those two persons married, causes a dreadful anguish within me, nor will my soul be ever at rest, unless we can hinder it by some invincible obstruction.*

Geronces, at these words was confirm'd in the truth of what he suspected, and feeling the violence of his jealousy increase, his colour chang'd, and his heart seem'd to be turmoyl'd with infinite discontent. And because he did not answer presently, the *Queen* resum'd her words; *What*, said she, *Geronces, are you willing that Constantine, who is already but too much beloved in Troynovant, should augment his power, overturn your fortune, and deprive me of my Authority? Think you the generosity which he affects, to procure the esteem of the King and the admiration of the people, be so great as to make him forget your carriage of affairs, or to pass by the haughtiness of a Mother-in-law, too much already hated by him. Let us break off, Geronces this fatal match, let us avoid the yoke of subjection that threatens us: and wonder not at a discourse so little answerable, to the civilities which I have shew'd Viridonix. I knew him to be Constantine by a picture that I have of him, and I would have gain'd his affection, believing that he would soon have a great power in this Court. But Geronces, I find that there never was a heart more disdainful than his, never was conceal'd a pride so haughty, under so appearing a modesty. The Britain finding some likelihood in the *Queen's* discourse, perceiv'd his melancholy to be in good part appeas'd: and meeting at the same time with an opportunity to preserve his own reputation, to injure *Viridonix*, and to serve a person whom he passionately lov'd; *Madam*, cry'd he, as it were in an extasie, *your fear is just, and to rid you of the cause of it, I will sheath my dagger in the heart of Constantine, if your Majesty commands me.**

The enamour'd *Loocrinia* blush'd at so dreadful a promise, and remain'd without speech, whence *Geronces* conceiving new disquiet; *How Madam*, reply'd he with some surpris, *are you mute and do you change colour?* 'Tis true, reply'd the dissembling *Queen*, *that I presently felt my self prompted by the same motive, and the same desire that you did, however, I will consider before I resolve upon the death of Constantine, which may bring us a very great prejudice without being any way advantageous. Aldrocc will take Arms in his revenge, and all our neighbours looking upon us with indignation, and mov'd with the sorrows of the King of Armorica, will league themselves with him to our ruine: and therefore without having recourse, when there is no necessity to that extremity of violence, it will be sufficient to find out a husband*
for

for the Princess, whose interests are tyed to ours, and whose alliance may be a support to us : “ Oh Madam if that be all, said he, rest your self satisfied, for I have found in the person of “ *Maximus* all that you can desire : He is of the same blood as the King, he loves his family, “ and is much concern’d for the Line that now reigns in our Island. He is a brave person, “ powerful at *Rome*, and one that easily can procure us the friendship of the Emperour. “ That is not all Madam, he has an esteem for your self even to veneration, and believes “ the Princess to be the fairest person in the world : more than that, having a great friend- “ ship for me, he revealed to me his most secret thoughts, when I went by your commands, “ to joyn with him near the head of *Danubius*, when we marched against *Pharamond*, what “ time *Aurelian* oppos’d *Gondioch*. *Maximus* during that war was sufficiently able to raise “ in *Germany*, the *Carithnians*, the *Latobriges*, the *Tulingians*, and the *Dandates* and the “ *Neterians*, lying at the feet of the mountains of *Meliboe*, and the head of *Visurgues*. Though “ he had no great success against the King of the *Franks*, yet has he above forty thousand “ men left : and being come into *Gallia Belgica*, he may easily bring his Army hither in a few “ days. But Madam, added he with some discomposure, what will you do with *Constantine*, “ shall he dye in *Albion* by your commands, or will you suffer him to return into *Armorica* ? “ I have already told you, replied the Queen, that his death will occasion us inevitable dan- “ gers, and you may easily judge what will be the consequences, of his retreat into *Armorica*. “ He will certainly return like a Lion let loose, he will make havock perhaps of whatever “ opposes him, how valiant soever you are and how warlike soever our people. Why should “ we then neglect those ways of prevention that are in our power ? It behoves us, *Geronces*, “ to seize upon *Constantine*, if we would hinder him from spoiling our designs, and if we “ desire to preserve the means, of making an advantageous peace with the King of *Armoni-* “ *ea*. Then make no delay, but this very day begin to go about this great affair of ours, “ dispatch a Currier to *Maximus*, make him a noble proposal which without all scruple he “ may gratefully accept. As for me, I will undertake to govern *Gratian*’s inclinations, as “ to what concerns the Prince of *Armorica*. In the mean while do you contrive in what “ manner, we shall bring all this to that pass which we desire.

When she had spoke these words, she sent to request the King to come to her Chamber, where *Geronces* attended his coming without speaking one word : He found *Loctrinia*’s Ar- guments very strong, though he were not for all that entirely perswaded, and that he felt as yet a secret anguish, of which he could not divine the reason. *Gratian* was no sooner en- tered the Queen’s Chamber, but he beheld the Queen with a stedfast look, and perceiving her to be discomposed without knowing any cause ; “ Madam, said he, I believe you yet “ feel the same disposition, which you had when I presented the Prince of *Armorica* to kiss “ your hands, for methinks I see some marks of it still, besides that *Constantine* went away “ not well satisfied, with that second visit which he made you. “ He should have been bet- “ ter pleased, replied the Queen, had I not presently discovered that *Viridonix* was *Constan-* “ *tine* : and that I had not been forced to oppose those pernicious designs, which he came “ to put in execution. In short, Sir, we are no longer ignorant of the reason of his disguise- “ ment, that might have prov’d fatal to you. Nor are you to be surpris’d either at the re- “ moving *Octavia*, nor at any of our other proceedings as you have been. I have received “ *Viridonix* with those civilities, that were due to the Prince of *Armorica*, *Geronces* has blam’d “ me for your interest sake, before he knew what those civilities were, because that *Gaul* “ would have drawn him into a conspiracy : And I was angry with *Geronces* only to please “ *Constantine*, and soften the fierceness of his courage. But as I could no way moderate his “ unmeasurable ambition, I gave him to understand in what manner, I had been inform’d “ of his practices : and then letting him see that I was in a condition, to spoil his plots and “ to destroy his accomplices, it was that which has caused that melancholy in him which you “ have observed. Is it possible Madam, cryed *Gratian*, that *Constantine*, who has fought for “ your interest with so much valour, could imagine so unjust a design ? Never enquire whether he “ could or no, said the Queen interrupting him, but rather after what manner he contrived it. “ Such enterprises as this are only for great and haughty spirits, and *Constantine* could never have “ been capable to undertake it, were he not extremely bold, and that his valour had not given him “ a reputation, with our subjects and in the Army : so that what I have acted has been only to divert “ the fury of an ambitious young man, who thinks your life too long. For if a disguise- “ ment could not render him suspected, if his own proceeding and the testimony of *Geronces*, will not “ persuade you, however can you suspect the fidelity of any person, the most interested in your “ concerns of any in the world, and who does not reveal you a Crime, but only to hinder the effect, “ nor that neither, but upon certain proofs.

At those words *Gratian* appear’d like one in an amaze, he could not tell what to do,

whether to complain of *Constantine*, or return *Loecrinia* thanks, when the impatient Queen refusing her Story, that she might not give him time to examine things; Sir, (said she in great haste) *I have already told you, that all your reflections are unprofitable, and that without losing a moment of time you must seek for shelter from the tempest that threatens you. But, Madam, (at length answer'd the astonish'd Gratian) do you think he will not return back again well satisfied, if we give him the Princess to wife? No, (immediately replied the incensed Loecrinia) he will never be so content, for considering the enjoyment of Octavia as a thing already his due, and assur'd him; think you he will be mov'd with a present which is his own already? His design, Sir, his design is only to get possession of your Throne, choose either to quit your Crown, or labour to divert his design, before he be able to overwhelm your power. Ah, Madam, replied Gratian, you well know that Princes never quit their Thrones willingly; and therefore as you, like a person worthy of your Dignity, fill that part which I have given you in mine, I make no question, but that your endeavours will prove successful to sustain and maintain both your own and my place likewise. I see that Constantine is guilty since you accuse him; for since your interest is inseparable from mine, I will not longer consider, but prepare to put in execution those resolutions we shall take together.*

The cunning *Loecrinia* having thus wrought upon *Gratian's* easie temper, continued in these words, "They who advised you to bestow the Princess *Octavia* upon the Prince of *Armorica*, without all peradventure expected to meet with some particular advantages in the alliance which they propounded: But for you, Sir, you can reap no advantage from it; for thereby would our nation lose both its honour and its peace: What must *Constantine* espouse the Heirefs of *Albion*? As much as to say, must *Great Britain* be subject to the *Little Britain*? What, will you give your *Octavia* to a Prince who shall no sooner be establish'd in his Father's Kingdom, but the Princess must lose that which the right of nature gave her, and that which you left her? In short, Sir, do you believe that *Constantine*, who may reign in his own Country, will leave the pleasures of his native Soil for a Country where he was never accustomed to the Air, nor Climate, nor the manners and disposition of the people? Ah! never flatter yourself, he will never forsake *Gallia* for our Island: nor will the proud *Albion* ever submit to the Scepter of *Armorica*: nor is this all yet; for besides the renouncing of her Honour, she will see her self drain'd of all her wealth, either by sending her Tributes to *Constantine*, or to satisfy the rapaciousness of his Deputy-Lieutenants, whom he shall send to domineer in his room, in this unfortunate Island. If our *Britains* should suffer the weight of this yoke, they would be truly miserable; and should they take up a generous resolution to throw it off, they would but rend and tear the Bowels of the Nation in pieces with civil broils, and so either become a prey to many Tyrants of their own Nation, or to the first Stranger that should attempt to bring them under subjection to his Laws. *But, Madam, said the King, how shall we avoid this mischief?* "I do not go about to tire you with an idle story, replied she, in telling you of a mischief without a remedy; for I go about to propose you Expedients which will establish your Glory, and the peace of your life. Give the Princess such a Husband as can pretend to no other Crown but what you leave her; for then as he is to expect all things from you, he will be content to abide with his Benefactors; so will you not only not be deprived of the company of your beloved Daughter, but he also that shall be oblig'd to you for the possession of so fair a Princess, will have all the respect and acknowledgment for you imaginable. Besides, living among the *Britains* he will labour to gain the people, and coming to know their disposition, he will so instruct himself in the rules of clemency and severity, as to be able to make use of both, according to the necessity of affairs: However, do not think it sufficient for you to render any person happy, that you may so continue your self; there must be other means of prevention used, it behoves this happy person to labour himself for your felicity, and labour to procure you a powerful alliance; nor can you seek a more potent amity than that of *Honorius*, which *Maximus*, who is your relation, and friend of our faithful *Gerones*, can with ease procure to your advantage. He has commanded a long time with great reputation the Armies of the Emperour in *Germany*: he will accept of the Princess's troth as a happiness beyond his pretences and his hopes. In the mean time, he is of your blood, and he is not the first of the name that has espoused the Heirefs of *Great Britain*; for give me leave to put you in mind, that *Maximus*, to whom King *Octavius* gave his only Daughter, reigned very happily in this Island. Expect the same good hap from him; and since I have no other Kinsman who can lawfully aspire to the honour which I would procure him, but *Maximus*, who is of the same Family from whence I am descended, which claims its lineal pedigree from *Loecrinus* the eldest Son of *Brutus*. I do consent, nay I do heartily
"desire

“desire that that Renowned Roman may obtain her out of that satisfaction which I forget he will have in her. Then said *Geronces*, Sir, *there is no person living could speak with more reason, nor more to your advantage. I know it very well,* replied *Gratian*, but I would fain understand how shall I shelter my self from the anger of a King to whom I have broken my word. Your Majesty shall be safe from the invasion of his Armies, heicely replied *Geronces*, if you will vouchsafe me the command of yours. Besides that, *Maximus*, as I have told the Queen, being in Gallia Belgica with forty thousand men, will presently be at hand to give you aid, and to maintain the glorious claim to which you have advanc'd him. You will also be free from any reproach that he can lay upon you, replied the Queen, by complaining first of the proceedings of *Constantine*. I need not tell you, Sir, that Kings without scruple may sometimes break their words, seeing that the necessity of their affairs furnishes them every foot with arguments and pretences; so that you may easily dispose of the Princess's inclinations, and forbid her to give her consent, which is absolutely necessary for the consummation of the marriage. It will be sufficient, Sir, that without laying of fault upon the Subjects, or *Octavia*, that *Constantine* himself engages you to change your resolution. He disguises himself upon his entry into Albion, while he has an Army ready on the one side, and the *Picts* are marching against you on the other: before your face he testifies a great love for the Princess, before me he renounces her, and deluding us both, he labours to attain his ends by secret ways, that is to say, such as are altogether to be condemn'd as vile and illegal. Let us ruine those designs which cannot but be pernicious, let us seize *Constantine* since we have ground enough, and by depriving a nation that will be our Enemies of a valiant Leader; let us not neglect the true means to procure our own safety, by all the ways that we can deal with him.

Upon this discourse, the King, who had a real friendship for *Constantine*, was more surpris'd than before. But *Loctrinia*, who would not endure that the King should hesitate a minute in contradiction of her intentions, resum'd her discourse with a more shrill and loud voice; “*Explain your self, Sir,* said she, *do you love a Stranger so well that you never saw above two or three times, and one that has not appear'd in your presence but under borrowed names, to sacrifice your life and your honour to his ambition? Declare your self, imitate me in the freedom of my speech; if you dare not, follow me in my generous resolution. As for my part, I am strongly perswaded that the marriage of Constantine with Octavia is of dangerous consequence; and I protest I will omit nothing to ruine the alliance; and having gone so far, I will go a little farther, and make sure of the person of Constantine, for fear least through my negligence and credulity he may chance to surprize your person, and triumph over our weakness.*

Gratian, who saw *Loctrinia's* interest intermingled with his, and being otherwise perswaded that he could not reign with honour, nor live in peace, but in following the advice of a Princess whom he thought to be the most politic in the world, *I yield, Madam,* cry'd he, *and leave to you the sole management of this important affair; and assure your self, the orders which you shall issue forth for the good of our Subjects, and our particular safety shall be followed with all exactness imaginable.*

Upon the conclusion of those words he went his way; and *Loctrinia* causing *Geronces* to stay, paused a little while upon what she was going to undertake, the image of *Constantine*, which she had always present in her imagination, more than once disarm'd her anger; but at length the fear of losing what she had either by departure, or by the charms of her Rival, made her resolve not to defer the execution of her design: nor but that she had many cautions to observe in so nice a conjuncture; for though she knew *Geronces* to be a person bold, faithful, and an enemy to *Constantine*, and that he was too well settled in *Troy-nouant* to be wrought upon to leave the Court of *Gratian* to follow the Prince of *Armorica* into *Gallia*; yet those other qualities which she took notice of in the *Britain*, did not a little disturb her thoughts, which he also evidently perceiv'd; and therefore first of all observing his fierce nature, and the consequences of his fury, she studyed nothing more than to avoid all sort of violence, therefore she sleightly commanded *Geronces* to use the Prince civilly; and speaking to him with an imperious utterance, “*Remember,* said she, *that Vidonix is Constantine, that is to say, the only Son and lawful Heir of a great King, and that your Queen will recompense or punish you, according as you give the Prince cause either to commend or complain of your proceedings. Your life it self also, added she with a strange discomposure, shall answer for his; I have told you the consequences which we are to expect upon the death of Constantine; you know those that concern you at this time, so that you have nothing to do but to take your opportunities, and to act as you shall see convenient for your purpose.*

Geronces, who well knew how far the power of the haughty Queen reach'd, was vex'd

to hear himself fear'd and threatened upon this occasion, and suspecting that which was the true cause, would not have seized the Prince of *Armorica*, had he not expected some great satisfaction by becoming Master of his design. However, he dissimbled his thoughts as much as a man of his humour was able, for fear lest *Loecinia* should discover him, and therefore to keep the active spirit of the Queen employed, till *Constantine* be retired to his Chamber, he wrote to *Maximus* before her face, and according to her intentions he invited the *Roman* into *Albion*, he put him in hopes to enjoy the Princess, he promised him that he should succeed *Gratian*, and open'd to him the design which he had against *Constantine*.

The Prince was no sooner return'd to his Apartment, but *Geronces* being advertis'd thereof, accompanied with several of the Guards went thither, and the Queen who saw him quit the Chamber, changing colour, followed him without delay, transported with the different motions both of love and fear.

The *Britain* beheld my Master with a malignant joy, and presently giving him to understand his Commission, without putting himself to the trouble of mitigating the circumstances, Sir, said he, *I have order not to let you stir forth of your Apartment. Constantine* fix'd his eyes upon him with more fury than surprisè, and speaking to him with an utterance that testified his indignation, *Who could give*, said he——— *The King*, replied the impatient *Geronces*, interrupting him. *No, no*, replied my Master, *Gratian is not of a temper to act a violence of this nature: Princes of his Rank understand how to treat Princes of mine; and therefore I cannot imagine that the Father of the Princess Octavia, could ever put such an affront upon the Son of Aldrocc. Would it not be very unjust for him to seize a Prince that came into his Kingdom, and submitted himself to his power only to assist him against his Enemies? So that if Geronces had not forgot what I did in that Battel, he would perhaps have advertis'd Gratian's Counsellours, that it is not an easie thing to stop Constantine's passage, if he have a Sword in his hand. I remember very well*, said *Geronces*, *that fortune was very favourable to your courage against the Picts. But, Sir*, added he very insolently, *I cannot tell whether it be fitting for you to remember it your self. For, to say truth, I find that that good success has too much swell'd your heart, and that such boasting has almost made me lose that respect which I owe to the Prince of Armorica. Oh!* 'tis more than needs, said *Constantine* interrupting him, and laying his hand upon his Sword——— "Hold, *Geronces*, hold, Guards, (at that very moment cryed out *Loecinia*, entering the Chamber, and seeing so many Swords drawn) "and if you intend to save your life from the punishment that the attempt deserves, lift "not your impious hands against the Son of a great King. And you, Prince, (said she, addressing her self to *Constantine*) I beseech you to moderate your anger, I see you have "reason to be surpris'd; but consider, I beseech you, that a King jealous of his Honour, is "apt to follow those ways of prevention which may seem very strange, yet such as weighty "considerations render excusable. You came into our Kingdom after a suspicious manner, which gave his Privy Council the Alarm, and they awak'd the King, so that notwithstanding all the power which they say I have in the Court, they will not so much "as hear me when I speak in your behalf; all that I could do was only to make haste in person, to the end they might only execute *Gratian's* orders in the most obliging manner that could be, and that they should deny you nothing that was either necessary "or convenient. In the mean time I beseech you, Sir, stay in this Apartment, and I will "employ all my reputation——— *I find that reputation of yours is very great*, said the Prince, interrupting her, *But, Madam*, since it behoves me to receive with submission such proofs thereof as a person of your Sex and Quality is pleas'd to give me, at your desire I will stay, and assure your self, Madam, that happen what will, I will never complain of the King of Great Britain; *Geronces* however will not do amiss to consider who I am, and if he forgets that I am one day to reign over some part of Gallia, I hope your Majesty will not be offended if I put him in mind of it, and that I maintain the rights and privileges of my Birth, at a time when they are least suspected.

Loecinia apprehending without an interpreter the last words which *Constantine* spoke, went her way, lest she should farther provoke him, "I leave you, Sir, said she, and I promise you that *Geronces* shall not come into your presence but when you shall think it convenient. "In the mean time, said she with a low voice, I will endeavour to bring to pass those designs which you know concern you; and so that if you will not oppose my intentions, you "shall be suddenly at liberty with a greater increase of power.

The Prince summon'd up all the Generosity of his Soul to moderate his disdain. And though he soon apprehended the ingratitude which they shew'd, and the injustice which they did him, yet instead of being transported, he considered with an admirable prudence who

who the person was that persecuted him, and how much it lay in her power to ruine *Oſavia*. That laſt thought drew many ſighs from his heart, ſo that *Loerina* was hardly gone forth of the Chamber, but he gave way to an immeaſurable grief. He repreſented to himſelf the hardſhip which the cruel Queen by all appearance, cauſed the fair Princeſs of *Albion* to undergo. And ſo lively was his affliction, that he forgot himſelf to preſerve *Oſavia* in his mind. Or it by chance he called to mind the unfortunate Prince of *Armorica*, 'twas only to redouble his Anguiſh, only to accuſe the Queen for having ſent away *Oſavia*. In ſhort, Madam, the rigorous uſage which *Oſavia* was like to endure, touch'd the paſſionate *Conſtantine* ſo far to the Quick, that his eyes became inſenſibly moiſt, and that very day offer'd the firſt fruits of their Tears to Love. While my Maſter feels them trickling down his checks, and with ſurpriſe took notice of this new proof of his own tenderneſs, *Loerina* treats hand over head with the King of the *Piſts*, ſhe put him in great hopes, and obtained an Iſland for him, the poſſeſſion whereof ſo long contended for, had been the occaſion of many Wars between the two Nations. For as concerning the Frontiers, Madam, you know that the Emperour *Pertinax* had made a ſeparation, and that he had raiſed a great wall from Sea to Sea, to hinder the continual invaſions of two people, always naturally at enmity one with another.

If the King of the *Piſts* appeared ſo well contented, to return to his own Kingdom to preſerve them from the *Hibernians*, I departed out of *Troynovant* nothing ſo well ſatisfied; for ſo ſoon as I underſtood how they had ſerv'd *Conſtantine*, having no reaſon to be in fear of his perſon, becauſe I already knew *Loerina*'s affliction, without ſtaying to complain or intreat; I made haſt to our Army with all extraordinary diligence: I was no ſooner got thither but I urg'd very zealouſly, the ſtrange violence that was offer'd to our Prince. I ſent a declaration to the Camp of the native *Britains*, wherein I ſet forth the contrivances of the Queen of *Albion*, and the inſolencies of her favourite: But not daring to declare what I thought of the paſſionate *Loerina*, I let them ſee that ſhe had aſſaulted the Prince of *Armorica*, only becauſe he had ſerv'd her faithfully, and was well beloved in *Troynovant*. The greateſt part of *Gratin*'s Army were in love with the valour and perſon of *Conſtantine*, and for that cauſe hating *Loerina*'s injuſtice, a good part forſook their own General, and joyn'd with us. By that means I found I had the command of forty thouſand men, and hereupon I wrote to the King to give him an account of all things, and to deſire him to ſend more forces: and underſtanding that they had ſent for *Maximus*, I advanced between *Troynovant* and the Sea toward the mouth of the River *Thamſis*; both to make my ſelf Maſter of the River, and to favour the landing of the *Gauls* which I knew the King would ſuddenly ſend me, and to hinder the conjunction of *Maximus* and *Geronces*. In the mean time the fierce Queen to moderate thoſe troubles, the violence whereof ſhe could not brook in her heart, returned to viſit *Conſtantine*: and ſuffering her ſelf to be transported by the heat of her paſſion, ſhe ſpoke with ſo much vehemence and ſo loud; that the jealous *Geronces* being got to the door, and hearing all very attentively, loſt not one title of that familiar diſcourſe. *What Prince*, cryed the Queen, *are you immoveable? will you have a kindneſs for no other but a perſon that never will be yours? do you not fear the power of a Princeſs of my humour, when once deſiſ'd?* "Ah unjuſt *Loerina*, ſaid *Geronces* at the ſame time, will you always reſuſe the heart "which I offer you, to aſſail another which you will be never Miſtreſs of? Cruel Queen! "when will you forbear to perſecute *Conſtantine*, *Oſavia*, and *Geronces*? Fate will have it "that the Prince of *Armorica* muſt enjoy the Princeſs of *Albion*, and ordains me for you. "Oppoſe not the decrees of deſtiny, and if my ſufferings cannot mollifie the hardneſs of "your heart, fear at leaſt what that perſon can do, whoſe courage you ſo well know, yet "whoſe moſt violent and ſubmiſſive paſſion that ever was, you will not vouchſafe to take "notice of.

While he thus whiſper'd to himſelf, the deſperate *Loerina* could obtain from *Conſtantine*, nothing but marks of reſpect and ſubmiſſion: when perceiving her fierceſneſs begin to change into rage; ſhe ſlung out in ſuch a manner, as if ſhe thought to make him apprehend ſome terrible conſequence, of the fury that appeared in her eyes. However ſhe remembered what ſhe had promiſed to my Maſter, that *Geronces* ſhould not appear in his preſence, but when he approved it: and notwithstanding all her choler, ſeeing ſhe could not forbear to keep her word, ſhe left one of the Officers that guarded *Conſtantine*, to ſee the Prince from time to time, with orders however to yield an exact obedience in every thing elſe to *Geronces*, in whom ſhe had the greateſt confidence. And that ſhe might not diſpleaſe that great miniſter of her will and pleaſure, ſhe choſe an Officer who was beholding to *Geronces* for his being: being alſo brother of that commander, to whom the fierce *Britain* had given the charge of *Oſavia* when ſhe was ſent to *Syſmbriz*, and had left to guard the houſe where that amiable

Princess recided: whereby *Locrinia* testified to *Geronces*, that she gave him a Lieutenant and not an observer, and that she did far less suspect him than seek to appease his grief. She made a full interpretation of her meaning, yet in forbidding her conceal'd lover from entering into the Prince's Chamber, she raised in his mind disturbances not to be express'd, nor were her own less violent, for she no sooner shewed her self in publick, but she was inform'd how the people murmur'd, and that I was escap'd from *Troynovant* and gone to the Army, and that I would soon be upon my march, to revenge the affront and injury done to the Prince.

At that news the passionate Queen was afraid, lest her beloved *Viridonix* would be taken from her: so that feeling in her soul a mixture of love, despair and rage, she resolv'd to make her last assault upon *Constantine*, or to lose him rather than yield him up to a Rival whom she mortally hated. In the mean time *Geronces* walking to and fro, taking large steps and revolving in his mind, all the words that he had heard so cruel in relation to himself; *Wilt thou suffer*, said he to himself, *wilt thou suffer a stranger to come and reduce thee, to the utmost extremity of despair? Tear up that heart from the root, that deprives thee of the heart of that ingrateful Princess whom thou adorest. And since this arm accusom'd to great crimes has perpetrated more hainous deeds upon less urgent necessity, without farther deliberation, sheath thy dagger into the breast of the too happy Constantine. Revenge thy self, Geronces, revenge thy self upon this Locrinia, and deprive her of the sight of a Prince whom she loves, and who may possibly be induc'd to love her. But* (said he, pursuing the dictates of his discontent, after he had paused a little while) *wherein can the felicity of Constantine consist, and what can be the end of thy revenge? The Prince of Armorica ardently sighs after the Princess of Albion whom he cannot see, and he is persecuted without ceasing by a person whom he cannot love. Constantine is then the cause of my misfortune against his will, and I should be more unjust than Locrinia, should I make an attempt upon his life, at a time when he withstands, with so much constancy, the most powerful charms of a beautiful and great Queen. These arguments however would not move me, since that in him I neither seek my satisfaction nor my grandeur: But what can I expect from the death of Constantine? Shall I commit an extraordinary crime in vain? I that never perpetrated any but what were very advantageous? Locrinia, the passionate Locrinia, has chang'd her love which she has for Constantine, into an implacable hatred of Geronces: and the unfortunate Geronces shall be constrained, to pass the rest of his sad days in exile, or to be tormented to death in Troynovant according to the merit of his crimes. Yet would that death be less terrible, than that which would succeed it: and I tremble when I think that Locrinia should love the memory of Constantine while she lives, and that mine should be by her detested to her last breath. What course am I then to take, shall I suffer Locrinia every day to behold her beloved Constantine? Or shall I wait till that Prince be smitten with a beauty, who can never meet with a heart insensible? No, no, I will no longer guard the Prince of Armorica for the Queen of Albion, no longer will I hold him imprisoned for her to satisfy every day her unjust passion with his company, Nor will Geronces be the instrument of his own ruine, to please the ingrateful Queen whom he adores. Since I cannot be the death of Constantine without destroying my self, I will give him his liberty, and by forcing from Locrinia a Prince who I fear will not long resist her charms, I will facilitate a means as a cure for that unjust person, that persecutes both them and renders me miserable. Let us then no longer consider, but seek out a way speedily to put what we resolve in execution, and let us deceive the jealous Locrinia, if we intend not that she should turn all her fury upon us. Concluding those words he took large steps, pondering till night upon the various ways most probable to bring about his design.*

He had no sooner pitch'd upon that which he thought most unlikely to fail, but he went to the Prince of *Armorica*, and after he had given him such testimonies of submission, as were not ordinary with him, that there was now an alteration in his mind; he thus began. "Sir, said he, I was your Enemy when I thought I serv'd the King my master in being so: "But now I know the Queen's thoughts, and that I cannot any longer assist him or further "his intentions; I come to give the Prince of *Armorica* his liberty, and to deliver into his "possession the fair Princess who is destin'd for him. This is too pleasing to be refused though "you hated the person that should make the offer, and therefore I hope that you will willingly accept it, and that this last of my Actions will utterly deface the memory of all my former Treasons. Nor do I think that I run any hazard in doing you this service, for you "will doubtless not only keep this secret for me, on which my fortune and my life absolutely depend, but that you will protect me in *Gallia*, should I be forced to seek for Sanctuary.

This language made *Constantine* behold the *Britain* very earnestly, and though magnanimous persons

persons are not easily apt to have any distrust; he would not presume presently to determine any thing, being willing carefully to examine a discourse wherein the interest of the Princess was concern'd. He was suspicious lest the cruel Queen should know precisely, what *Constantine* had in his heart for *Octavia* through *Geronces's* double diligence, and lest he might be hatching some new mischief, against that fair and innocent creature. However those thoughts lasted not long, for besides that his frank and generous disposition, was not naturally apt to be suspicious; *Geronces* spake with such an aspect, as easily perswaded him that he did not go about to betray his thoughts. He told him word for word what he had heard from *Lacrinia's* mouth, and not being absolutely able to conceal the affection which he had for the Princess, he suffered himself to be guided by the particular interest which *Geronces* had, that *Constantine* should depart from *Troynovant*. My Matter therefore demurred no longer, for instead of considering what caution he should observe for himself, he minded nothing but the Princess: and therefore presently enquired of him by what means he could set her at liberty. Sir, replied the *Britain*, that you may be quit of all trouble, I will take care of all, and in two hours you shall be free, and in a condition to go see the Princess, of whom they cannot in justice dispute with you the enjoyment. In the mean time take it not amiss that I leave you, that without losing a moment of time, I may use my diligence to prepare all things necessary for your departure.

Concluding these words he went forth of the Chamber, to find out the Officer which *Loecrinia* had constituted his Lieutenant, and speaking to him in such a manner as testified the weight of the matter, which he had to deliver to him; *Silirus*, said he, 'tis time for me to discover to you the intentions of the Queen, and the reason which moved her to leave *Constantine* in your charge. You must know then that now she repents of the injury she has done to the Prince; for hearing that the people murmur at it, she is afraid lest they should rescue him out of her hands, and lest *Dinocus*, who is gone from *Troynovant*, should be got to the Army, with an intention to return with his forces to favour the rebellion. She would willingly avoid insurrections which are generally dangerous, especially among us *Britains*: and by giving *Constantine* his liberty take away the true occasion of the peoples complaint. However she does not shew any change in her resolution, which would be a sign of fear and weakness, and therefore to preserve the constancy of her courage to outward appearance, she rather chuses to act by a faithful Agent, than appear her self. She casts her eyes upon us, she prefers us before all the rest of her favourites, and seeing that my proceedings with *Constantine* already dispose him to have a confidence in me, you alone shall put the Queen's design in execution, and alone receive the reward of a service so important: only manage this affair with speed and all the secrecy that she requires: and as soon as *Constantine* is gone, return hither to this Chamber, to take new orders which I am going to receive from the Queen.

Silirus overjoyed with such an opportunity to serve *Loecrinia*, greedily hearkned to *Geronces*, and being both of great reputation in the King's house, seeing both were the Queens favourites who had all things at her command, they had no sooner consulted together but they found the means to bring their contrivance to a good issue. *Silirus* discharged the Guards that were to wait at the Prince's Chamber door, and afterwards he went to the Palace-Gate to see how he might get out there: and finding no difficulty, having resolved to disguise my Master, and himself to accompany him till he was out of danger, he commanded horses to be brought to a certain place which he named: and in the mean time he wrote to his brother, who commanded at *Sosimbra*, ordering him in the Queen and *Geronces* name to obey the Prince of *Armorica*, to seek his favour, to let him see the Princess, and to permit him to carry her away. The Queen thinking it convenient to conclude the marriage between those two illustrious persons, for reasons of state that had relation to *Maximus*, and the King of the *Picts*. So soon as he had finished his letter he went to *Constantine*, and addressing himself to him; Sir, said he, (not to lose any time which is precious to you) I will not stand to make you any long protestations which are to little purpose, instead of telling you that it is by my means that you recover your liberty: I am only to inform you that the Princess resides in one of the King's houses called *Sosimbra*, that the Officer that commands that place is my brother, with whom you have no more to do, but to shew him that note to be brought into *Octavia's* company, and to receive from the *Britains* who guard her, all the respect which they owe to a Prince of your birth. You are now only to change your habit as soon as you can: Those servants which you have left are ready to attend you, and in a word you are only to let us alone to act, without making any doubt of the issue, and not to give your self the trouble of examining the reason of things. *Constantine* no sooner read the letter which *Silirus* gave him, but he perceived his hopes and his joy to increase, and putting on a riding habit, he earnestly desired to leave *Troynovant*. To that end he lost not one moment, but went forth with *Silirus* as privately

as he could, and he had no sooner mounted one of these admirable Nags which are bred in *Albion*, but he made all the speed imaginable to that fortunate place where he was once more to see the Divine Princes.

While he is posting away with all expedition, *Sylirus* returns to the Chamber where *Geronces* promised to attend him, to give him new orders in the Queen's name; but he was no sooner entred (see what confidence there is, Madam, in a wicked Politician) but the perfidious person whom he went to find, gives him three or four stabs with his Dagger, and lays him dead at his feet, for fear that miserable and unfortunate man should destroy his pretences, and overturn his good fortune by revealing the secret. After he had taken that bloody way of prevention, he goes to the Queen's Apartment, and though it were very late, and the Queen a bed, he desired to see her, the more to testify the earnestness of his zeal; *Ab, Madam*, said he, with a countenance strangely discomposed, *all's lost, the Prince of Arinorica has made his escape. How*, (said the passionate Queen, interrupting him, with a look that plainly shewed the trouble of her mind) *is Constantine no longer in our power? Ab, Geronces!* that's impossible; you did not consider the news that you bring. 'Tis too true, said he, and *Sylirus, the Traitor Sylirus, who by your directions had only liberty to speak with the Prince, is* ——— *Perfidious Sylirus, unfaithful Subject*, (cried she, impatiently interrupting him) *thou shalt be tormented to death, all the power of Aldroec shall not defend thee from the punishment which the enormity of thy crime deserves. In the mean time*, said she with the same impetuous violence, *lose not a moment of time, get Horses ready, let him be pursued, and afterwards come and tell me what you know of Sylirus's treason: flee Geronces, flee, and if the people which you send can overtake Constantine, let them bring him civilly back, and lay the offender in chains. The offender is punished already*, replied the confident *Britain*, *for I no sooner perceiv'd that Constantine was gone, and that Sylirus had given several instructions to his Guards to let Constantine pass, but my arm, diligently accustomed to serve your Majesty, sheathed my Dagger in his perfidious breast. Thus he vomited up his black Soul with his treacherous blood, just as he was preparing to follow Constantine, that he might make advantage of his crime.*

Immediately those words gave some consolation to *Loctrinia*; but when she began to consider that *Sylirus* was not in a condition to suffer any farther punishment, she felt a double disturbance, and thought of turning all her fury upon *Geronces*; however, before she would suffer her self to be transported against a person, who, as she believ'd, bestir'd himself in revenging the injury done to her, she considered that heat of passion might excuse the act; besides that she had need of his assistance at this very time, to make good the pursuit of *Constantine*; which she commanded him once more to go about; when *Geronces* after a little pause, *Madam*, said he, *I cannot tell what Road he has taken; but since we have no certain knowledge, let us now study what course to take, without doubt Constantine is gone to the Army, for besides that his warlike humour carries him headlong to revenge, he knows not where else in all our Island to secure himself. He will never take shipping presently to return for Gallia, for fear of being known and stop't in some of our ports, so that I have nothing more to do, but to take Cambridge-Road, and prepare my self to be gone, if your Majesty thinks fit, and take charge of the Army: and to fight, if need be, the Gaulish Britains. There is no need of that*, replied she, 'tis better to take *Constantine* by stratagem, than ingratesfully to assault his life. Go, *Geronces*, go and dispatch those orders I have given you, and return as soon as may be, that you may assist me either to dispel my cares, or help me to consult what farther course to take.

Upon those words the *Britain* left her, and while his disconsolate Mistress gave herself entirely up to her tormenting grief, he in outward appearance takes care to execute her orders, causing them that he sent in pursuit to follow a quite contrary Road from that which he knew *Constantine* had taken. In the mean time a confused noise was spread in *Troynovant*, that *Constantine* was murdered: that the Queen and *Geronces* did but pretend his escape to hide their crime; and that those two ambitious persons desiring to reign without obstruction, had found a means to rid themselves of a virtuous and valiant Prince that stood in their way, and would have opposed their tyranny. By little and little this rumour increased, and besides this, they reported that *Gratian's* Forces were united with ours, and that I was marching toward *Troynovant* at the head of a powerful Army; the people grew bold, and no sooner had they found out a considerable person, and an Enemy of *Geronces's* to head them, but that they took up Arms and required to see *Constantine*; but my Prince instead of appearing in a City where he was innocently like to be the occasion of great troubles, made what haste he could from it, and rode with all speed to *Sosimbra* where he arriv'd in less than five hours.

See here a part of the adventures of *Constantine*, I shall give you a relation of the rest when

when you think convenient, wherein your Majesty shall find something more moving than what you have already heard. The fair Queen of the *Tuvingens* had a great desire to know where so many extraordinary accidents that composed the History of *Constantine* would terminate. But she would not presume to request *Dinocus* to pursue his Relation, fearing it would take up too long time, and keep him too long absent from his beloved Master, who might stand in need of his assistance: therefore she contented her self only to return him thanks; and to testify how attentive she had been, she repeated to him many passages of the History of the King of the *Britains*, insinuating thereby, that she desired to hear the rest as soon as might be. At length she turn'd toward *Balamir*, who hearing her so carefully to give him thanks for being himself so punctual to bring *Dinocus* according to his promise, that obliging Prince well understood what that discourse meant; and therefore having only spoken some few things in honour of the valiant *Constantine*, with all the generosity that a heart exempt from envy could express, he undertook once more to bring *Dinocus* again, when she would be pleas'd to appoint her time: so that he had no sooner visited the King of Great *Britain*, and taken that care which he thought necessary for his health, but he returned in his Chariot together with *Dinocus* to the Castle, where he found that *Amalazontha* was retired to her Chamber, having stay'd that Evening but a very little while with the charming Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and the amiable Princess of *Suevia*, to the end she might be at leisure to hear the remaining part of the Story of the famous *Constantine*. To which purpose the Prince of the *Huns* being seated, *Dinocus* who was constrained to take a Chair also at the request of the Queen, he continued his recital as follows.

A Continuation of the History of Constantine.

MY Master was no sooner arriv'd at *Sosimbra*, but he shew'd the Letter of *Sylirus*, and made himself known to the Officers in chief: thereupon he was received with as much respect as he could have expected in his Father's Court. Presently he enquir'd what time it would be before *Ocavia* would be stirring, testifying by his earnestness that he counted every minute lost till he could see that incomparable person: Sir, answered the *Britain*, *the Princess having left the Court, she has also left the Court-Customs for the manner of the Country, for she is up very early in this House, and you may find her in the Garden where she is now walking, and taking the fresh air, as she does every morning, and much about this hour.*

Upon those words my Master felt a pleasing alteration, and causing the Brother of *Sylirus* to lead the way, he went to find out the fair Princess of *Albion*. Presently he saw two of her Virgins who were talking together, as they walk'd slowly toward a Fountain of Marble in the middle of a large Grass-plot. The Prince went to meet them, and he was no sooner come near, but he perceiv'd that he was known as well by their surprize, as by their respectful carriage toward him. He accosted them, and civilly saluted them; but it not being in his power to talk of any other than one person that entirely busied his imaginations: *I hope*, said he very cheerfully, *you will give me leave to inquire after the fair Princess, and to go and make my obedience to her, if you think it be not inconvenient.* Sir, (replied one of the Damsels, the same that introduc'd him before into *Ocavias'* presence, when he pass'd for *Viridonix*) *you have not only that liberty*, said she, *but I dare presume to say that the injury which you receiv'd at Troynovant, did too much grieve the Princess, to make me believe that she can see you now at liberty with an ordinary satisfaction.* *She is in that Arbour*, (said the Virgin, shewing him the place, and preparing her self to be his guide) *and you will find no person with her, but one of our fellow-servants that keeps her company.*

At those words the Prince seem'd to be somewhat discompos'd: for the fancy of Lovers being more quick and lively than the imagination of other men, he had a thousand different thoughts came crowding into his mind all at one time, which it would be too troublesome to express, it will suffice to say that he had a great desire to over-hear *Ocavia* before he had notice of his coming, that he might understand her real thoughts. By and by accusing himself of indiscretion, he repented of that with as of a crime, and his heart begg'd pardon of the Princess; but immediately a quite contray motion caus'd him to change his mind, and all of a sudden he desires the same far more ardently than before. His love in-

scalous to flatter him, that it was less for his advantage than for *Octavia's*, commanding him to inform himself of whatever might relate to the fair Princess, to the end he might be able to serve her, without expecting either her entreaty or confession. In short, the modest Prince was thereby in hopes to understand over and above, her most secret thoughts, not presuming to believe that the divine person whom he ador'd, would enter into any discourse of him. but rather of *Gratian* or *Locrinia*, it being his design to support with his own Arms and the power of the King, whatever resolution she should take. Thus his reason agreeing with his love, or else being abus'd thereby he determin'd to go alone: to which purpose he had no sooner declared his pleasure to the two Damofels, that they might continue their walk by themselves, but *Lisca*, who was the person that was said to be the brother of *Silvius*, caus'd them to stop, understanding his meaning by vertue of that ready and discerning wit, which they that are bred under great personages do acquire above others. He also stay'd himself with *Octavia's* Attendants, the better to shew his respect to *Constantine*: for finding the Prince to be disguised, they were of opinion that he had a design to put some merry surpise in gallantry upon the Princess, and therefore let him walk by himself, it not being necessary for them to attend *Octavia* who had other company.

My Master transported with a secret joy, very carefully mov'd toward the place which enclosed all that could render him happy in the world, but being come pretty near he pac'd it after a different manner and whatever were his curiosity, he could not betake himself to listen without a certain fear that assail'd his trembling heart, so apprehensive was he lest he should displease the Princess. After he had heard certain words of which he did not well understand the sense, by reason of their coherence with others that were before, he perceived the Princess to continue the following discourse. *No no, Gadena, I believe nothing of it, forbear to flatter me, I do not find but that I am the most unfortunate person in the world. How Madam,* (impatiently replied the Virgin that was with her) *will you labour to persecute your self, and when you stop my mouth from speaking of those advantages, which heaven has liberally bestowed in your favour, will you not permit me to tell you at least what you cannot deny? Are you not the only Daughter and Heiress of a puissant King? Are you not ordained for———* I agree with you, said *Octavia* interrupting her, *that the King my Father reigns in one of the fairest Monarchies of Europe, and that nature seems to promise me the inheritance of his dominions. But Gadena, thou knowest Gratian, thou knowest Locrinia, and thou knowest that my rights are not very well assured. Though the Queen were more bold and more unjust than she is,* replied *Gadena*, *or that the King were yet more tractable to her, Our people love you too well, Madam, not to oppose themselves to all changes that shall threaten your prejudice. Our Islanders are of a strange humour,* replied the Princess, *and few Nations have seen so many revolutions in their countries, as our Ancestors have been forced to submit to in this. You will have an illustrious husband,* replied *Gadena*, *to whom all the Britains will be overjoyed to submit themselves with one consent, and under whom they will live happily in their Island. 'Tis uncertain,* replied *Octavia*, *whether the heart of Constantine———* How Madam, replied *Gadena* interrupting her, *can you question the fidelity of that Prince? Content your self,* replied the Princess of *Albion*, *that you understand my weakness, without pretending that I should discover how far it may extend. Have I not confessed to thee that I have no unkindness for Constantine? I should be too much ashamed to tell thee all that I feel, and with what a fear in my heart the affection which I have for Constantine is accompanied. Madam,* replied *Gadena*, *never fear for that Prince he will be taken care of no doubt: for I am very much deceived if he be hated, by those persons that caus'd him to be seized upon. I do not fear his life,* replied the Princess, *but I fear———*

As she concluded those words, not presuming to proceed any farther, my Master leaped for joy, and was just upon the point to have entred into the Arbour, to have thrown himself at *Octavia's* feet, and to have return'd her thanks: But he was so fearful of displeasing her, by surprizing her at a time when her thoughts seem'd to be so favourable to him; that he moderated his transportation: when the dutiful *Gadena* pursuing her discourse; "Madam, said she, let that be the least of your fear lest *Constantine* should prove untrue: For the Prince loved you at the first sight, and he will always love you: Nay I am less apprehensive of any change in his heart, than of the humour of those that persecute your Amours. I see very well, replied *Octavia*, that thou hast not considered so well as I, the carriage of the Prince of *Armorica*: for thou believest him to be as constant in friendship as in danger. As for my part I judge after a different manner, for I have a certain niceness of imagination, that will not suffer me to think that ever *Constantine* was in love with me at *Dover*. Is it possible Madam, said she, that you should speak as you really think? How, replied *Octavia* with some discomposure, shall *Constantine* come into this Island to see me, to espouse me? shall he have heard a thousand Encomiums of the Princess appointed for him; for

“it is usual upon such occasions as these to flatter persons of my Sex; and shall this Prince, notwithstanding his pretences and his hopes, notwithstanding all things that were to highly spoken in my praise, no sooner set his foot upon the land, but to please his own humour, fall in love with the first Virgin that he sees, and shall not this be an affront to a Princess, the Heiress to so puissant a Kingdom? But, Madam, readily replied *Gadens*, are not you the person that Constantine ought to love, and the very person that he lov'd at first sight? I agree with you, replied the Princess, but acknowledge withal that he did not know me, and that there was a bare chance intermix'd with that engagement. Rather, said *Gadens*, it was your particular destinies that made the same impression upon both your hearts at the same time. Constantine presently singled out his Princess from the Ladies that environ'd her; he lov'd her in despite of all those objections that seem'd to oppose the birth of his passion. And you your self felt for Constantine, as you have had the goodness to tell me, what you never felt before, though you knew him for no other than but a common Knight. Thus am I perswaded it is the will of Heaven that you should be inseparable, for the union and honour of both Britains, and for a stronger tie it has bestowed upon you both those sympathizing excellencies, that it is impossible for Constantine to be taken from you, as it is very improbable that you should prefer any more fortunate Rival to that Prince. 'Tis true, continued the Princess, that I do not find my self inclin'd to change my affections for Constantine. But I am perswaded that Constantine will not be so constant to me; and my heart continually tells me that one day I shall find him unfaithful.

Those words made the Prince tremble, as if he had been struck with a Thunderbolt; nor was he longer master of his passion: he entred into the Harbour, threw himself at *Ostavia's* feet, and embrac'd her knees before she had time to recollect who he was: Rather, Madam, rather shall this Island be shaken from its foundation by the surges that continually beat upon the Shore, sooner shall the solid mass of earth become the sport of the winds, and all the world be turn'd topsie turvey, before the heart of Constantine shall change. Ah, Madam, (said he, lifting up his eyes toward the countenance of the fair Princess) how could a thought so cruel enter into your breast? And which of my actions has given the ground of so strange a distrust? Ah, Prince, cry'd she, what have you heard? What have you done?

She could say no more, so great was her surprize; but resting her head with a soft and pleasing languishment upon *Gadens's* Shoulder, she meditated upon what she had to say before she raised her head. The shame that made her blush, and caused her to cast her eyes downward, giving some little addition to her beauty: Constantine, whatever were his fears of displeasing his divine Princess, was transported with love and joy: so true it is, that the presence of the beloved object has those secret charms that are able to expel or suspend all other passions. But my Master made her a hundred protestations of an immoveable constancy; he told *Ostavia* whatever a most sensible affection could inspire into him. And there was something so respectful and passionate in his gesture, and in his aspect, and the sound of his words, that the astonish'd Princess began by little and little to collect her self: she presum'd at length to cast her eyes upon the enamour'd Prince, and that fear that hung upon her looks insensibly changing into an admirable sweetness, that wonderful person was at last able to pronounce these words, Is it possible, Constantine, said she, that you should constrain me to appear disturb'd for beholding you at liberty, and that I should not be permitted to feel that innocent satisfaction which I hop'd for from such a pleasing sight?

Concluding those words, she rose, and though my Master would have held her by the Gown, and that the obliging *Gadens* spoke to her, that modest Princess could not resolve longer to sustain the presence of a Prince, whom she believ'd to be privy to her most secret thoughts. Thereupon she went forth, and it was not without some small discomposure that she suffered my Master to lend her his hand, as she walk'd toward the Garden-door, being return'd, she went into her Apartment, desiring to be alone in her Chamber, and intimating to my Master her intention, the Prince found all his joy to languish, and quitted the charming Daughter of *Gratan* in a manner so respectful, that the too severe and timid Princess was mollish'd therewith. Constantine also receiv'd sufficient testimonies thereof so soon as he was permitted to return to visit her, without displeasing or interrupting her, not being able to defer his visit long, that he might propose her a means to secure her from the persecution of *Loecinia*. In short, he was so charm'd with the sweet carriage of *Ostavia*, so encouraged by the justice of his pretences, which *Gratan* and *Aldroec* had both authoris'd, and so ventrous withal, out of the fear which he had lest his fair Princess should be expos'd to new troubles, that beholding her with eyes inflam'd, and sparkling with the fire of his passion, Madam, it is time, said he, to shake off a yoke which is too severe and hard to be born: Heaven that created me to carry your fetters, has ordain'd me to break those chains

which they who tyrannize over you, would load your limbs withal. The King your Father will be overjoyed that we have taken a resolution that he durst not advise us to, and you shall reign in Armorica with Aldroec, while I return into this Island to make Gratian the true King, and compel Locrinia to act with more advisedness toward you. Never study upon the business, Madam, withdraw your self from a power to which you stoop with too much submission, and no longer let injustice so cruelly oppress innocency. "Ah, Prince! replied Octavia, what is this which you advise me to? "That which I ought to do, said the Prince, and that which it concerns you to do, if you intend to live in peace. "That tranquility which you tell me of, must not be so dear to me as my Honour, and I wonder you should make me such a proposal, to follow you into your Country, before Heaven and my Father have ordain'd it.

At this denial the afflicted *Constantine* sigh'd; but the passion that inspired him, never wanting an Expedient, "Madam, said he, *Lisca* shall be your convoy; for the unhappy *Constantine* refuses that advantage, I will stay in this Island till affairs shall put on a better face; and while you recal me with the consent of *Gratian*. After all this will you be an enemy to your repose and mine, obstinately to oppose my designs? "Do not you continue so obstinate, said she, in urging your persuasions, I neither will, nor can consent to your resolution; and you would questionless change it your self, did you but know my heart: yet though I am absolutely determin'd to do what it behoves me, I am not altogether so unapprehensive to withstand what you propose so rigorously as I ought; besides that, to tell you ingenuously, I am strangely disturb'd, when I consider that you came hither by night, that you were disguised in my Chamber, and that you discours'd me in private, I know very well that I am not the less innocent, yet these circumstances seem never a jot the less criminal, or at least to be some suspicious mystery, and to create a fear in my Breast. Therefore, Prince, be gone from *Sosimbra*, leave a Virgin who is too careful both of her own honour and yours, to detain you longer in this House. But when you are gone, remember I beseech you that I am beholding to *Gratian* for my being, and that you cannot revenge your self upon *Locrinia*, without offending the King my Father. "It will be no difficult thing, answered he, to obey your commands in relation to the King and Queen of *Albion*: but, my honoured Princess, can I leave the place where you reside? And to satisfy those groundless scruples that possess your mind, must the real passion that reigns in mine, endure that I should absent my self from you, that I should deprive my self of your sight, and that I should abandon you to the cruelty of an enemy that triumphs over the most gentle and amiable Princess that ever was.

He pursued that discourse with so much ardency, and his language was very persuasive; yet he spent his words in vain, for the Princess continued firm in her resolution, insomuch that *Constantine*, interrupted by his sighs, could not continue his discourse. He beheld *Octavia* with an aspect very amorous, but very pensive, he threw himself at her feet, and all to dispose her to a compliance; and as the charming Princess went to raise him, the unfortunate Prince had at least the kind comfort to kiss one of her fair hands, without observing in her eyes any symptom of anger: but as he was striving with himself to bid her adieu, yet had not the power to do it, *Lisca* entred the Chamber, and presenting an open Letter to the Princess, "Madam, said he, sighing, see there what news I have received; and after you have understood who the Officer is that brought it, be so good as together with the Prince, to give me your orders what to do, in relation to what service I can perform for either him or you. Concluding those words in such a manner as testified both his surprise and his trouble, the Princess took the Letter, and casting her eyes upon it, read these Lines.

Lenox to Lisca.

Sylirus has procured the escape of the Prince of Armorica, and Geronces, too passionate for the interest of the Queen has slain your generous and unfortunate Brother, having given him four mortal wounds with his dagger: expect not however consolatory complements at a time when you must shew more vigour than sadness, only take my advice for your future caution. Know then that the people of this City have taken Arms, that the honest party grows very strong, and that those Forces that fought against the Picts are entirely disbanded. As for your part, keep you the Gates of *Sosimbra* fast, and without acknowledging *Locrinia's* orders defend the place, and

and keep the Princess safe. Farewel. Fear nothing, we are in a condition to uphold you; and the Officer whom I have sent will give you a farther account of all things.

The Princess had no sooner read the Letter, but she seem'd extremely surpris'd, she was very much troubled for fear of her Father; nor was she altogether unmindful of *Loctrinia's* safety, such was her Virtue, and her Generosity. The enamour'd Prince knowing part of her thoughts, his colour chang'd, and having fix'd his sight upon *Octavia's* fair eyes, as it were to take counsel of them: "It had been far better, (*said he sighing, and with as much grief as if he had done her some injury*) that *Constantine* had died in *Sylirus's* stead, than that he should, though innocently, have occasion'd the trouble which he observes in your face. But be confident, Madam, that I will be in *Troynovant* within these few hours, and soon appease the tumult; and I promise you, your Father shall be suddenly more absolute than ever he was; not that I intend to injure the Queen; your generosity and mine, if I may presume to say so, will sufficiently secure her from our anger; but it may be, I may somewhat limit the exorbitancy of her power, and make her look upon the illustrious Princess of *Albion* according to her merits. Only before I depart I beg your pardon for the people that love you, and do not hate me, and that you will grant me the favour to believe me guilty of the tumult that has given you any cause of disquiet.

The Princess answer'd *Constantine* in the most obliging language he could desire, and having given him to understand that she could not so patiently bear his absence as she had a little before testified the firmness of her resolution in that particular. She sent for the Officer that came from *Lenox*, who was a *Britain* considerable for his Birth and Virtue; being brought into the Princess's presence, and by her demanded what news from *Troynovant*: "Madam, *said he*, your sudden departure amaz'd all that poor City, and chang'd the face of mirth that reign'd there ever since the defeat of the *Piars*, into a melancholy that gave it a quite different countenance. There was not one word more of pleasure or pastime, only secret murmurings against the Queen. But when she had caused the Prince of *Armorica* to be seiz'd, they then began to grow bold, and to speak out. The people finding themselves depriv'd of two illustrious personages whom they infinitely ador'd; and that through the injustice and passion of a fierce Queen whom they lov'd not at all, though they saw her to be very high in power, made their complaints aloud, and met together in publick. But no sooner did they understand that *Dinocus* was escap'd from *Troynovant*, that he was got to the Army, that he had drawn to his party a good part of the Natives, and that he was advancing toward the City, but they took Arms, chose *Lenox* for their Captain, of whose experience and integrity they were well assured. By the orders of our new General we march'd to the Palace, demanding to see the King, and the liberty of the Prince of *Armorica*. The Queen, who obstinately refus'd at first to make any answer to those whom she call'd Rebels, at length caus'd it to be reported to us, that *Constantine* had made his escape, and had slain *Sylirus* that guarded him; upon that they expos'd the corpse of that unfortunate *Britain* to the sight of the people, but though at first they knew not what to think precisely of that accident, they were inform'd at last that *Geronces* had assassinated the Brother of *Lisca*. To this news they added that perhaps the Prince of *Armorica* had not been spar'd; and that *Loctrinia* had apparently intended to have destroyed him, after she had so much injured him as not to hope a reconciliation. That she had caused the body of *Sylirus* to be expos'd only to move the compassion of the people upon one of their Fellow-Citizens so cut and mangled, and to render the murderer of the unfortunate *Britain* odious. But our people, who are apt to believe all things that make to the disadvantage of a Princess whose humour and disposition they know, easily persuaded themselves that she had murdered the Prince of *Armorica*, and that adding impudence to her crime, she strove only to amuse the Islanders, by telling them that the Prince was in a place of security, and that no mischief had befallen any but *Sylirus*. In this interim of time two *British* Gauls coming disguised into the City by order of *Dinocus*, to observe the posture of affairs, finding how things stood, joyn'd themselves to us, and demanded their Royal Master, heavily threatening *Geronces* and all his Associates. They were also very diligent in fastening their Chains, and making Entrenchments in the Streets to preserve themselves, and being followed by some of the boldest of our Citizens, they seiz'd upon some of the Avenues of *Gratian's* Palace. True it is that *Geronces* made a rally that morning, and vigorously engag'd himself among us. But *Lenox*, much more numerous in men, and not inferiour in courage or conduct, after he had put a stop to his first fury, easily beat him back, and drove him to the very Draw-Bridge of the Palace.

"However,

“ However, without being puff up with this first success, he humbly besought the King, to pardon his subjects, if they were forced to have recourse to the last extremity, for the preservation of his own Authority: protesting that his Majesty should always find in him, and in all the rest of the Britains that followed him, all the fidelity that he could lawfully claim, and that they had not taken Arms, but to oppose the extravagant power of those persons, that robbed him of the sovereign Authority: and to obtain the Return of the Princess, and the Liberty of *Constantine*. *Gratian* seem'd very much concern'd, but as he was about to make answer, favourably enough without doubt, the fierce *Loerinia* took upon her to speak; telling the King that it did not behove him to hearken to Rebels: that petitions delivered to him with their Swords in their hands, were no more than effectual commands: And that it was their duty to disband and submit, before they could pretend to be heard, in reference to any remonstrances or regulations whatever propounded. As for what remained, that *Maximus* was not far off with an Army of forty thousand *Romans*, and that the King of the *Picts* would bring other succours without delay, and in one word for all, that he ought to inflict the severest death that might be, upon those two deputies of *Lenox* before the Rebels faces. And she had most certainly put that violent resolution of hers in execution, if *Geronces* had not opposed it, laying before her the ill consequences of such an unseasonable extremity, and that in all wars how cruel soever, it was but good policy to preserve the means of treating securely.

“ Thus Madam you see the condition of the City of *Troynovant*, *Loerinia* and *Geronces* keep possession of the King's person, that they might make use of his name and Authority: On the other side *Lenox* demands that he may Act of himself without any restraint, and to provide against all contrivances of the Queen, he dispatched me in all haste to *Lisez* to engage him in on his side, being the justest cause. He was of opinion that the publick interest, the revenge of *Silurus*, the advantages which he might reap from the protection of a great Princess, having faithfully defended her, might persuade him to embrace it: nor is he deceived without doubt, since *Lisez* bids me Act only by your order. In the mean while *Lenox* and *Dinocus*, who kept correspondence and both arrived at the same mark, will give him all assistance he shall need: For while our Captain keeps *Loerinia* and her furious Champion close shut up, the General of the *Britain Gauls*, prepares to fight *Maximus*, who as they report is already put to Sea. That Roman is invited out of the glorious hope of espousing you, Madam, and to reign one day in our Isle. *We will see* (said the enamour'd *Constantine*, interrupting him and changing colour) *what order the Princess will take: But considering the little need she has to fear the felicity of Maximus, I cannot apprehend that ever that Roman will carry away such an inestimable victory, or that he should be more successful in Albion than he was in Germany.* Sir, (replied *Octavia* with a discomposur little inferiour to the Prince's) *I do not pretend to be Mistress of my self in any accident, more especially in the most important accident of my life. I depend absolutely upon the King my Father, but seeing he has often declar'd his intentions in publick, I may confess with more boldness, that it is not in such matters as these that I have in so much obedience dispos'd my heart to follow his will. Let us therefore only endeavour, to deliver the King out of those dangers that environ him, and to free me from that cruel apprehension of his life that torments me: For in short, how faithful and dutiful soever *Lenox* may be, I cannot chuse but fear every moment, for a Father shut up and besieged in his own house, and methinks it should behove me likewise to be with him, either to divert and prevent mischief, or to take my share of those hazards which he undergoes.* Ah Madam, cryed *Constantine*, *to what purpose should you go thrust your self, into a City which is all up in Arms? Why should you not rely solely upon my fidelity? Is it not sufficient for me to appear in Troynovant? Is it not sufficient——* No, no, Sir, said the interrupting him, *it suffices not for my assurance: for I always consider with my self, that a valiant Prince is more apt to infuse a warlike heat, than to calm a popular tumult: and that a person of my sex is far more likely to appease it, besides that to tell you truth, I cannot live at rest being absent from my Father's troubles.* She uttered these words with so many marks of inward disturbance, that *Constantine* being in a great perplexity; Madam, said he, *the people of Troynovant that love your person, will never suffer you to enter into the Palace where the Queen is so powerful: And that commander, said he, shewing her the Officer sent by *Lenox*, who knows the resolutions of his party, can tell you whether they will accord to what you pretend.* 'Tis certain, replied the Britain, *that the people will never endure to see your life in the power of *Loerinia*, who looking upon you as the original of her mischief; may be instigated by her passion to use those extremities against our Princess, which we have all the reason to fear from her fierce and bold temper. Nor do I think, added my Master, being so generous as you are, that you would leave the place whither she has banished you, on purpose to be held*

bold the dowfal of her Authority, in a City arm'd againſt her. To theſe words he added others more preſſing, and ſo faithfully promiſed in a few days to ſettle all things in quiet at *Troynovant*, that at length the Princes conſented to ſtay at *Sofimbra*.

Conſtantine took leave of her with all the reſpect, and all the paſſion that could be ſhew'd upon ſuch a ſeparation; and the charming Princeſs, whom the Laws of modeſty did not oblige to ſhew any ſtrict reſerv'dneſs towards the Prince, gave him occaſion enough to obſerve at that ſeparation a certain languiſhment in her countenance, that my Maſter did not take his leave but with a redoublement of his love and hopes. As he was going out of the Chamber he turn'd toward *Liſca*, and recommending the Princeſs to his care, promis'd him a Princely Reward. He teſtified after that his ſorrow for the death of *Sylrus*; but without upbraiding *Geronce*, of whoſe perfidiouſneſs he was well ſatisfied, he contented himſelf only to tell the Commander of *Sofimbra*, that he would only change the object of his acknowledgment, and that he himſelf ſhould now find the effects of thoſe intentions which he formerly had to favour *Sylrus*. After thoſe few words, addreſſing his ſpeech to the Officer that came from *Lenox*, he entertain'd him civilly, and while he was preparing thoſe things which were neceſſary for his departure, he took a full account of all that had paſſ'd of importance in the Capital City of the Iſlander *Britains*.

The End of the Second Book of the Eighth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK III.

C*onſtantine* took the Road for *Troynovant*, breathing out his fears in ſighs; for notwithſtanding the flattery of his hopes, he could not depart from *Sofimbra* without an extraordinary melancholy. He accused himſelf of that ſadneſs, as of a fancy little conformable to the conſtancy of his mind, but not being able to reach the true cauſe, he apply'd his thoughts to the conſiderations of the future, to trye whether the diſcompoſure of his Soul did not forebode ſome diſaſter to come. Immediately the haughty humour of *Loctrinia*, the Army which *Maximus* lead, and the countenance which the *Roman* Emperour might give him, came into his mind. But inſtead of inſuſing ſo much as a ſlight apprehenſion of him, the fierceneſs of his courage did but the more provoke him; ſo that in the friendſhip of the *Britains*, in the good will of *Gratian*, and the kind expreſſions of *Octavia*, he found ſufficient to overcome all obſtacles that could oppoſe his honourable pretences. However, neither the grandeur of his courage, nor thoſe expreſſions of kindneſs which he had heard from *Gratian's* mouth, or from the the lips of the Princeſs, could ſtop the current of his anguiſh, nor was the ſight of *Troynovant*, where he was to be ſhortly received in triumph, ſtrong enough to diſpel the troubles that perplex'd him. So ſoon as he diſcovered the Towers of a City for which he had ſo great a kindneſs, he thought it behov'd him to make a ſtop, that he ought to keep with *Lenox's* meſſenger; and that it would be neceſſary before he appeared in a tumultuous City to ſend before to ſee how they ſtood affected in their different Councils.

But

But his generosity soon laid aside this nice way of proceeding, as an effect of fear, or of a prudence too scrupulous for a young souldier: And therefore he rode on with the same speed as before, and he was no sooner enter'd and known in Troynovant, but all the people received him with shouts and universal acclamations, *Lenox*, the two *Britain Gauls* that were associated with him, and the most considerable of the Islanders came to pay him their respects, with all earnestness, and all the demonstrations of joy they were able to express: The Soldiers and common people, disclosing their passions with more precipitation, cryed out quite overjoyed, that they ought to create *Constantine* Regent of the Kingdom, and that they should look upon him as the protector of the *Britains*.

At those bold words the Prince changed colour, and preferring the interest of the King of *Albion*, before his own advantages; he caused the Soldiers to assemble in a void place, to whom he represented, that the honours which they were about to confer upon him, were due to *Gratian* only. *My friends*, (said he looking upon those that stood about him) *Your King has so great a love for you, that you ought to endure under his Gentle government, those little severities, which you would not be sensible of under another more rigid. 'Tis only the clemency of Gratian, from which you expect a continual happiness, that makes small evils seem considerable: But in rebelliously opposing your selves to those evils, you raise greater troubles and tumults, to appease those that are less dangerous. Flatter not your selves, my friends, for it is not for the people to regulate their Sovereign's will, should it prove as exorbitant, as their own according to Rule: 'Tis only for Heaven that anoints Kings, to change their inclinations. And I must inform you, that that Supreme Power, upon which all others depend, being an Enemy to violence, will never look down with favour, but upon your Respect and Submission.*

Those words pronounc'd with a commanding utterance and a charming grace, immediately made some impression: For the Soldiers and Citizens feeling the love which they had already, now increase for a Prince so comely and so generous; *Let all perish*, they cried with one consent, *or let the injury done to the illustrious Constantine be reveng'd, and let him reign over the Britains.* *Citizens of Troynovant*, replyed the Prince, *have I not already told you, that Gratian is your King, can you disence with your sworn fidelity, without drawing upon you the Anger of that God whom you adore? Let not the injury that I have received at all incense you, perhaps the carriage of a young man might have provok'd it, and you may think that what was done, was rather to instruct me than to do me harm. Let us therefore forget whatever has been cruelly or harshly committed, let us go and cast our selves at the King's feet: Lay down your Arms which you cannot sheath but in the bowels of your Brethren: And I promise for Gratian that he shall lay in oblivion, whatever you have enterpris'd against his prerogative, and receive you again into his favour with a paternal love.*

To these words he added others more perswasive and vehement, and making use of that Authority which he had over the people, he appeas'd in less than an hour the fresh beginnings of many Tumults, and dispos'd all things to a fair way toward an accommodation. However *Lenox's* party were very obstinate to desire, that the Queen might no more have the sovereign Administration of the Government in her hands. And *Geronces*, would you believe it, Madam, *Geronces* himself very much contributed toward the peace, by seconding *Constantine's* endeavours and the desire of the people: For to please *Gratian*, the Prince of *Armorica*, and the *Britains*, he perswaded the King in the first place to give *Oëavia* to my Master. *But Sir*, (said he, pursuing the same proposition) *it is very convenient that the Princess should be sent to the Court of Aldrocc, and that your Majesty should give Maximus to understand, that they had carried her away during the hurly burly, to unite themselves by a new alliance under the valiant Constantine, so shall you satisfy the Roman: or if he will not yield to lose his hope, however we shall not have the war in our own Territories: For besides that many reasons will hinder Maximus, from declaring himself our Enemy, he will chose rather to assail a Country, where his Riual is one day to sway the Scepter, with the conquest whereof he may obtain a fair and great Princess.* But Madam this is not all. *Geronces* went farther, he applyed himself to the Queen, he threw himself at her feet, and after he had made her new protestations of his fidelity, he conjur'd her to yield to the necessity of the times, and to retire for some time to some one of the King's houses, about a dozen Miles from Troynovant. He promised with so much zeal and assurance, that his words enlivened with a passion that always carries with it a secret charm at last, mov'd *Loecrinia* and obtain'd her consent: Yet it went to her heart to give it, because her love was such that it would hardly permit her to be absent from the sight of *Constantine*, and her natural haughtiness scorn'd to satisfy the people that had taken Arms against her. Nevertheless besides the unwillingness she had, as bold as she was, to appear in the presence of a Prince whom she had injur'd, she had a consideration more powerful

erful that obliged her to avoid his company. For spite and anger, having added their fire to that of her own temper, had put her into a Fever sufficiently painful, yet finding that in that condition, she had still leisure and opportunity to bewail the loss of her beloved *Viridonix*, she resolv'd to retire from *Troynovant*, till the recovery of her health restored her to her former vivacity. The *Britains* overjoyed with the success of this compoture, surceased their hatred of *Geronces*, believing that at length he had taken compassion of his Country, and would no longer be the instrument of the injustice of a proud Queen, who was the cause of all the mischief in the Kingdom.

The virtuous *Gratian* received *Constantine* with the tenderness of a Father, embracing him in his Arms with tears of joy in his eyes: And having reastur'd him the gift which he had already promised him, he declared him his successor: calling him by the name of his dear Son, and his only support. He sent his instructions to *Sosimbra*, in order to the Princesses departure for *Armorica*, not forgetting at the same time to send away to complement *Maximus*, and to inform him of the pretended conveying away of *Octavia*, in such a manner as *Geronces* had advised. In the mean time the *Britain* particularly entertains the Deputies that were sent to him, and my Master took care to advertise me of what pass'd, and of what I had to do. At length he resolv'd to leave *Troynovant* to follow his Mistress, notwithstanding the plays and divertisements with which the *Britains* laboured to entertain him. But the King and the people oppos'd themselves to his design, with such pressing and persuasive entreaties, that they prevail'd with him to stay, testifying their desire that he should be present, at the Assemblies which were to be called for the regulating the Government. These seasonable Honours made the Prince to sigh, but though *Octavia* was continually in his thoughts, he was nevertheless always present at such councils to which he was called: where he was admired by all persons for his perfect prudence. While he seem'd to be wholly busied in these affairs of weight, a courier arriv'd that brought news, which altogether surpris'd the Court. He inform'd that while the *Piis* and *Hibernians*, were ready to come to the decision of a Battel, the latter had received a considerable reinforcement of men: and that the King of the *Piis* despairing of the Victory, had generously thrown himself into the midst of his Enemies, where after he had perform'd many brave Actions, and received three or four honourable wounds, he was in the end slain. "His Army, said the Stranger pursuing his relation) was quite cut to pieces or put to flight: and that the *Piis* broken with those two losses, believing also that they could never repair that of their King among the rest, were resolv'd to put themselves under the protection, of the most valiant Prince in the world. 'Tis You, Sir, said he, upon whom they have pitch'd, to whom they are sending six Embassadors, to offer you the Scepter which is wholly at your disposal: assuring themselves, that you will be no less their delight, than the Terrour of their Enemies.

Whatever pleasing surpris'd these words might give to *Constantine*, the soul of that Prince continued in its wonted constancy, and by an admirable moderation he shew'd himself to be above the thoughts of a Crown. But though his soul had been less elevated, my Master had not been a jot the more satisfied, in the expectation of that profer: for the trouble that he had to think, that he should be obliged to take a journey, quite contrary to that which the Princess had already taken; was as great as the joy which the most ambitious heart, could be sensible of upon the same occasion. However the Prince did not outwardly shew any sign of melancholy, but received the weighty intelligence which they brought him, with a singular acknowledgment, and treated the *Piis* with all the civility which he could have expected, from a Prince more in love with greatness, than with a fair Lady. However, when the *Piis* Embassadors arriv'd, he request'd them to make choice of *Gratian*, under whom he promis'd to assist them against the *Hibernians*, and that before he left their Countries, he would establish Lieutenants in their Provinces, who being accustomed to their manners; should govern them according to their own Laws. But these Arguments nothing avail'd, the *Piis* answer'd that they would have a King, that could defend them against many Nations, who had leagu'd themselves together to their destruction: and that *Gratian* was so far from being able to perform so great an enterprise, that he had much ado to preserve his own Authority at home. "In short, Sir, said they pursuing their instructions, we require a vigorous Active King, whose name is beloved and known in our Country, to the end our soldiers and people may obey his orders, with more confidence and cheerfulness. It is *Constantine* whom we seek to, who may reside in his new Territories, while *Aldroec* and *Gratian* preserve him both his *Britains*, and when heaven shall call him to a succession more considerable, than that which we offer him, he may leave behind some Prince of his own illustrious blood, or some other *Britain-Gaul* to preserve these laws, which

“ which he shall make among us. You are necessarily to undertake this charge, and how
 “ puissant a Monarch soever you are one day to be, will you refuse a Crown which we come
 “ to add to that of *Britain* and *Armorica*, or is it an offence that we desire you to reign du-
 “ ring the lives of *Aldroec* and *Gratian*? Besides that we are not willing that one *Piſt* should
 “ advance himself above another; for the jealousy of Families pretending to the Sovereign-
 “ ty may prove our ruine; especially having always had a greater veneration for the virtues
 “ of a Stranger, than of one that was bred and born among us.

These reasons were so undeniable, and what the *Piſts* offered him so considerable, that my Master was forc'd to yield, and to accept of a present that augmented his disquiet. However, being a person that did every thing with a good grace, he receiv'd the submissions and homage of the Embassadors in the name of their Estates assembled, after such a manner that they were entirely charm'd therewith, and confirm'd in the good opinion which they had before, that the *Piſts* could not have made an election more pleasing, nor more profitable. Nevertheless, he was no sooner retired into his Chamber, but he abandon'd himself wholly to his grief: *What!* said he, *must I take a march quite opposite to the way that carries me into Gallia? And must I absent my self from my forsaken Princess? Must I for so long a time be depriv'd of the sight of a Star, whose lustre is the cause of all my joy, to thrust my self into a cold and cloudy Country where the Sun seems to shew his Beams unwillingly? Ah, fortune, that thou shouldst be so cruel to thy self, that thou shouldst so betray thy ignorance! Reserve thy favours for thy slaves, keep thy presents for those that adore thy power. They move me not at all, for how bright soever they seem to glitter, they cannot outshine the eyes of my fair Princess: thinkest thou to dazzle me with the gift of a Crown? Alas, I prefer Octavia's chains before the Scepter which thou offerest me: I had rather receive the commands of my Princess, than give commands in a victorious Army, or in a flourishing Kingdom: for the enamour'd Constantine sits with more honour at the feet of the Divine Octavia, than if he should give Laws to all the world upon the most glittering Throne that ever was erected.*

He had continued longer in that tedious irresolution, had not the consideration of the Princess, that caus'd all this trouble, qualified him at length, by letting him see, that to refuse a Scepter, was but to snatch it out of her fair hands. He determin'd therefore, and ordering me to rendezvouz the Army, he took no farther care of any thing but the defence of those people that had put themselves under his obedience. Several of the most considerable Citizens of *Troynovant*, resolv'd to accompany a valiant Prince that was one day to be their King, and under whom they one day hop'd to purchase honour. As for my self I departed from our Camp with above six thousand chosen Horse, and being inform'd that the King of *Armorica* was sending us more Forces, I left the rest of the Army with the Lieutenant General, with orders to stay till the succours came, to watch *Maximus's* motion, and to oppose himself to whatever assaults he should make either upon *Armorica* or *Britain*. I was no sooner joyn'd with my Master in a Town where he appointed me to meet him, but we drew toward the Wall, which, as I said before, *Pertinax* had rais'd to divide the *Britains* from the *Piſts*, but which both Nations had then demolished, as if they had not been willing it should separate a Dominion which *Constantine* was coming to unite. But, Madam, though I might here describe many famous Battels, and many strange events, I shall not trouble you with the particulars of a tedious war, more than to tell you the success. You are only then to understand, that the *Piſts* receiv'd my Master as their Tutelar Angel, looking upon him as the support of their tottering Estate, insomuch that their force and courage return'd at the sight of that valiant Prince.

But while the vigilant *Constantine* labours to settle all things, and that by his care and liberality he brings all things to the conclusion to which you find them fairly drawing, it behoves us to return to *Troynovant*, that you may understand the inside of *Geronces*. You will easily believe, Madam, that he had oblig'd *Loecrinia* to retire for some time into the Country, on purpose that he might hinder her from the sight of *Constantine*, and gain the affection of the people. But you shall see, that that *Britain*, more slye and cunning than the fire of his temper promised, carries his contrivances much farther. To oblige my Master to return into *Gallia*, he advises *Gratian* to send *Octavia* thither, and at the same time advertises *Maximus* how he might seize her, and carry her away from both. Afterwards when he saw that *Constantine's* power increas'd, and understood that *Maximus* had happily receiv'd his advice, he writes to the *Roman*, and at the same time dispatches Letters to *Stilicon* and *Honorius*, he advertises the Emperour and his Favourite, that the *Piſts* had chosen *Constantine* King; he represented to him that that Prince was valiant, fortunate, and that therefore before he came to inherit two puissant Kingdoms more, as it was his right to do

in a little time, it was the interest of *Rome* to oppose his prosperity. That the uniting so many warlike Nations under a Captain already so renowned, was a thing to be look'd after by all the Monarchs of *Europe*. That the Prince of *Armorica's* Renown carried a loud report of Fame through both the Empires. That the *Britains* have that Royal Name in a particular Veneration; and believ'd that the Great *Constantine*, who was born among them, was to revive again in the person of the Son of *Aldroec*. At length *Geronces* assures them, that if the *Romans* did not suddenly deprive him of a good part of that large extent of ground which was to fall under his power, their Empire would be less powerful and majestic than what the Dominion of the *Britains* would be in a short time. He offers at length to support and forward the pretensions of *Maximus* to the Princess of *Albion*, and so well makes it out of what importance this Island was to the *Romans*, that *Honorius* is very willing to reduce it once more under the obedience of the *Roman* Empire, and to declare a war that would secure the peace of the West, without troubling the quiet which *Italy* began to enjoy by the retreat of the *Goths*. *Stilicor* also more overjoyed than the Emperour, willingly embraces an opportunity so favourable to that unjust design which he had already contriv'd, and which afterwards cost him his life, as all the world knows; for he had hopes that in disposing the military employments, he should increase the number of his Favourites, and reinforce the Arms which he had gain'd to his party. He also thought that by his diligence and experience in warlike affairs he should render himself more considerable among the *Romans*, and that at the same time the peaceable and sluggish *Honorius* would appear less worthy to be their Emperour. To this purpose he loses no time, he gives out Commissions to levy Soldiers; he sends also into *Gallia* to the Governour as ample orders as *Maximus* could require, as well for recruits as for providing all sorts of Ammunition; and in the mean time that *Roman* himself, who had a more particular interest in the weighty enterprize, acts with all the vigour that love and ambition could infuse into him.

At the same time *Geronces* infligated by the same passions to pretences little different, and to remove the *Britains*, whose virtue was terrible to him, perswades *Gratian* to send *Lenox* to seize the Island of *Monz*, as belonging to the Crown of *Britain*. The *Britains*, the *Picts* and the *Hibernians* had often disputed their claim to that Island with considerable losses. However their mutual jealousy had still preserv'd it in an entire liberty, by the same way that those Neighbouring Nations had sought to subject it. *Geronces* therefore made it so well appear, that the war between the *Picts* and *Hybernians* was then an infallible opportunity for the *Britains* to make themselves masters of that Island, and urg'd his arguments so forcibly, that it was not convenient to lose so favourable an occasion, that *Gratian* followed his counsel, and gave *Lenox* the command of his Forces to attempt the conquest. The *Britain* departed from *Troynovant* with the principal persons of his party, so that *Geronces* seeing himself rid of those Grandees whom he most feared, sent presently for such Soldiers into the City as he knew were faithful to him, and whose courage he had tryed upon several occasions. Having thus got the strongest party in *Troynovant*, he wrote both to *Constantine* and *Maximus*, admonishing the latter that it was not convenient for him to set footing in *Albion*, but that it was better to return into *Gallia*, and to carry the war as far off as he could from a Country the Heirefs whereof he pretended to espouse; and at the same time advertising my Master, that *Maximus* had taken away *Ocïavia* by force, continually cruising in the narrow Sea between *Albion* and *Gallia*, and seizing upon all Vessels in general that sail'd between the two Countries. He assured him likewise that the *Romans* were about to invade the Territories of the *Nantois*, that they rais'd Levies on the other side near *Armorica*, by order of the Emperour; and that the *Romans* grew jealous of the growing power of the *Britains* under so famous a Prince.

Constantine receiv'd this news after he had gain'd a great victory, and regain'd many Towns which the *Hybernians* had taken from the *Picts*. But, Madam, since it is not necessary for me to particularize every Battel, nor every Siege, I will say no more, but that fortune having afflicted *Constantine* in the midst of Shouts and Triumphs with these conceited pranks of hers, by informing him that the Princess was in the power of his Rival, seem'd to make a shew of comforting him with the acquisition of a new Kingdom: for in short, the Valour and Justice of *Constantine*, the effects of his Magnanimity and Justice grew to be so universally famous, that the King of the *Hybernians* falling under the same fate as the King of the *Picts*, his people followed the example of their Neighbours, and put themselves also under the protection of my renowned Master, Nevertheless while all things submit to the powerful Genius of *Constantine*, or rather range themselves under the support of his Heroick Virtues, the enamoured Prince takes only care for that which he had lost in Climates far more happy, and at the same time that he holds three Scepters, believes

Himself robb'd of all his whole substance. He could not brook that the Sea or wide Provinces shou'd separate him from his Princess, while the too fortunate *Maximus* had the happiness to see her every moment, conceiving an insupportable grief, and beyond measure tormented, when he came to examine with himself how his Rival carried himself towards her: *Oh*, *Maximus*, said he, *if thou art so barbarous as not to respect the divine Octavia, because she has a kindness for me, there is nothing that defend thee from my just anger, for the provok'd Constantine, from whom thou hast taken the person whom he adores, will come and punish thy cruelty in the very midst of thy Army, and rend thy heart from thy breast, maugre all the Forces of the Empire arriv'd in thy defence: For shall my Princess whom I never behold but with veneration, shall she undergo the hardship of unkind usage? But why,* (replied he presently after) *wouldest thou have thy Rival have a respect for her, which might perhaps move her heart? Chuse unhappily in if thou canst, and determine thy desire, that thou mayst be the less disturbed in going to deliver thy Princess. Wish that Maximus may love Octavia, that he may attend her with all reverence and true respect. But more ardently desire that the services of that Roman may not be acceptable to thy Princess, but that she may faithfully preserve her innocent affections for thee.*

He was so perplex'd with those thoughts, that he resolv'd to pass over into *Gallia*, where the charming Daughter of *Gratian* seem'd to require his aid, desiring however before he left his own Territories to reconcile the *Picts* and *Hybernians* with several strict alliances, for the better establishing peace in those Countries. But because such weighty affairs as those could not be dispatch'd in a short time, he left me behind with instructions to conclude what was begun, giving me a power as absolute as could be desired, had I car'd to have had the command of many nations, far absented from my Master, or could I have preferr'd that sad advantage above the satisfaction of being inseparable from my illustrious Prince. Thus *Constantine* departed to the great grief of his Subjects, taking along with him four thousand Horse to guard his person, and to reinforce his Army: and to please his Subjects, he chose out as many *Picts*, and as many *Hybernians* to attend him, who were overjoyed to march under the conduct of so great a personage, and to fight in the view of their King. While my Master was upon his march toward the Army, I laboured with so much pains and diligence, that finding it not to the purpose to make any new alterations, nor to leave Garrisons in those Cities where the love which the people bare to their Sovereign was a sufficient Guard, I was soon after ready to follow my Master: for I had nothing to do, but only to rely upon the care of the Governours and Magistrates, and the vigilancy of *Lenex*, who was then in the Island of *Mona*, where the people of that Island considering the present conjuncture of affairs, receiv'd him kindly.

But *Constantine*, in regard the Army march'd but slowly, and were many times forc'd to rest themselves, left that part which he led, and while they advanc'd to joyn with their fellows that were encamped upon the Banks of the *Thamesis*, strikes away for *Troyonant*, to give a visit to the Princess's Father; so that I was joyn'd with the Body of the Army as soon as he arriv'd, and mustering altogether I found them to be above seventy five thousand men. *Constantius*, a *Britain* Prince of the Blood, brought with him ten thousand Foot; *Antenor* and *Dagober*, who to this hour serve the King, came with an addition of six thousand Horse, and the *Picts*, *Britains* and *Hybernians* made up about sixty thousand more: as for our parts we were forc'd to set sail with all the speed that might be, understanding that *Honorius* had declared war against the King of *Armorica*, and that *Maximus* at the head of twenty six thousand men was ready to enter *Aldroec's* Dominions.

Never did a fire more warlike enflame my valiant Master's Breast, the power and Dignity of his Enemy, the defence of a Father so infinitely dear to him, and the desire of rescuing his Princess, kindled such martial heat within him, that he appeared like another *Mars* by his looks and by his actions, infusing into the most cowardly hearts that noble courage which they saw triumphing in his countenance. Before we could set foot in *Gallia* we were forc'd to encounter the Enemy by Sea: but the great King of the *Picts* being no less invincible upon the Waves than upon the most solid of all the Elements, we put them to flight, took Ships, and chased the rest to the very coasts of *Spain*. After this successful beginning we landed without any resistance; and my Master leaving the conduct of the Army to Prince *Constant*, he went to pay his Duty to the King his Father, then in the Territory of the *Rennais*: I will not enlarge upon the mutual expressions of love between those two great Princes, since their joy was so immediately interrupted by the fatal news that came from *Troyonant*, by which they were inform'd, that *Gerances* finding himself to be the most powerful, through the absence of *Lenex* and all his party, and having no reason to be afraid of *Constantine*, for whom he thought he had cut out work enough in *Gallia*, had

put to death such of the *Britains* as were suspected by him: And openly Airing all things by the order of *Gratian*, he had so incens'd the people against their good King, that they rose all up in rebellion against him. That in conclusion he had put himself at the head of the Mutineers, had forced the Palace, had embred his Murderous hands in the blood of his Prince, and usurp'd the Supreme Authority: That he had received *Loecmia* into *Troyevant*, with a most magnificent Train, that he had publicly declar'd his purpose to espouse her, and that by his liberality, his promises and his threats, he had caus'd the insolence of his claim to be allowed. That he had hopes his faction being now grown potent, that it would be sufficient, and as ready to maintain his boldness, as well as there in the crime, so that all his care was to get the good will of the Queen, and fortify *Troyevant*.

Aldroec and *Constantine* exceedingly compassionating the sad end of *Gratian* immediately devis'd how they might revenge his death: But my Prince being more afflicted, and more zealous than the King his Father, suffer'd himself to be transported beyond his ordinary moderation, while he threatn'd *Geronces* as if he had been present. *Barbarian*, thou shalt dye, (said he being alone in his Chamber:) And thy abominat'd blood shall satisfy for these precious tears, which thou drawest from the fair Eyes of my Princess. Tremble, perfidious Traitor, tremble, for the justice of heaven reserves thee for torments proportionable to thy fact: and that *Constantine* whom thou knowest, loves the divine *Octavia* too well, to suffer that thy unpunish'd cruelty should cause her to mourn in vain. After these expressions of transportment, his anguish augmented when he consider'd, how infinite must be the Princess's grief upon so dire an Accident: And believing that the death of the King of *Albion* might be advantageous to *Maximus*, he felt a double measure of anger and hatred, reigning in his Soul against his Rival: so that he resolv'd not to stay in *Armorica*, but to depart the next morning. The Evening before, *Aldroec* was advertis'd that *Altoruna* or *Melusina* was newly arriv'd, so that the greatest part of the Court were overjoyed, out of a curiosity which is natural, to know what fortune has reserv'd for them of good or evil in future events. You know Madam, that *Melusina* was perfect in many Sciences, and being endued with a knowledge of several things, above the capacity of her sex, she pass'd for a Magician in all Countries where ignorance yet reigns. The King of *Armorica* was very glad of the Arrival of that famous female *Gaul*, and being that he had already advis'd with her concerning *Constantine*, and had intrusted her in what was requisite for her to know before hand, to the end she might speed according to Art, he had some hopes that he might learn in some measure, what would be the destiny of that Prince. Not that he gave an over-nice credit to such kind of predictions, but considering the power of the Celestial influences, over human Temperaments, he did not despise the judgment of so knowing a person, as *Altoruna*: Besides that, to his experience, she had before told *Marcomire*, *Pharamond*'s Father, of many things which that valiant Prince should perform in *Germany*, some of which are already come to pass. But as for *Constantine*'s part, whom Love and Ambition easily excus'd for being curious, he would not change his resolution which he had taken to depart, hoping more from the grandeur of his own courage, than from all *Melusina*'s skill. Nevertheless not being willing to lose the opportunity, of seeing a woman so extraordinary nor to neglect any thing wherein he might serve the Princess, he stay'd by the King his Father when they brought *Altoruna* into the Chamber, yet with some unwillingness to discover himself presently, that he might not accuse himself of too much eagerness. *Aldroec* knew his intention, and therefore letting him alone to stand among the rest of the Croud for some time, he entertain'd *Altoruna* with all the civility that was due to a person of her merit. But soon after the impatience of a Father urging her to look upon his Son. *Melusina* beheld those *Britains* which appeared to be most considerable, and immediately taking notice of my Master above all the rest, she looked very stedfastly in his face. No sooner did she apprehend the truth, but she presently fell to examine what she could find in that Phytlognothy which she carefully observ'd: And then revolving in her mind what the Heavens promised from thence, she there met with so just an account, that now no longer doubting but that the Prince whom she beheld, was the great King of the *Picts*; Prince too renowned to be conceal'd, (cried she with a kind of prophetick spirit) Pursue this generous enterprise, vanquish *Maximus* and deliver this Princess: then repass into *Albion*, revenge the death of *Gratian*, and receive his Crown. After that return to extend thy Conquests, from one Sea to another and beyond the *Pyrenian Mountains*: But when in the midst of so prosperous a career, thy love and thy forces shall oppose themselves to thy glorious designs, yield to a famous Enemy without repining, to whom however thou shalt not be inferior in Experience or greatness of courage. That great personage shall put a stop to the torrent of thy victories: but if he causes thee to sigh after so much prosperous success, he shall at length change thy misfortunes into an accomplished fidelity.

After

After these words which she could not but pronounce aloud, her countenance that before was strangely alter'd, came again to it self: and by the behaviour wherewith she received my Master's civilities, she made us know, that had she not set her self to observe the carriages of men, generally practis'd in the world; her great Application to study had never rendred her wild wit, fit for civil conversation. But her converse with the King and Prince was very pleasing, for as she had been a great Traveller, and carried in her memory the rarities of several Climates, she entertained the two Kings with several discourses, where she made it appear that she had not been more than a Student, in the Abstruse and notional part of Natures knowledge. The Night preceding *Constantine's* departure, that Prince made several reflections upon what *Altoruna* had foretold him. And though his humour did not carry him to a light belief, however he was not a little melancholy, resolving to dye before he would yield to that Enemy, which he had spoken of. *There shall never live that person in the world, cryed he, who shall be the Victior over Constantine, without triumphing over his life: And Melusina knows me not, if she think that force can make my Courage bend.*

No sooner day appear'd, but the first beams of light in some measure, appeas'd my Master's disturbances, at the same time increasing his desire to be gone to the Army. Being ready to depart, the Father embrac'd his dear and beloved Son, with all the tenderness and affection imaginable; though with such a generous tenderness, as had in it nothing of effectminacy, though *Constantine* were then going to fight a Roman Army, much more numerous than his own. The Evening before my Master had taken his leave, both of *Altoruna* and all the principal Ladies of the Court, so that he had nothing to do but to take horse: And he was no sooner mounted, but he was followed by fourscore or a hundred Volunteers of the Nobility, who left their homes to try their first fortunes under so great a Prince. We travelled through *Aldroec's* Territories, and crossing the Line entred into *Pictavia*, where the Rendezvouz of the whole Army was appointed. Being come thither he made a general Muster, found them all lusty and couragious, and near the number which I have told you, the *Britains* after our landing, having recruited their loss of men at Sea. The next morning certain *Gauls* having quitted the Imperial Army, came over to us: and the most considerable among them told my Master, that *Maximus* was much terrified with the loss he had received at Sea, and that he was retreated into the Country of the *Lemovices*, where he intended to encamp under the protection of certain Hills, the narrow passes whereof he intended to defend. *But* (said the enamoured *Constantine* impatiently interrupting him) *have you not seen the Princess of Albion, and do you bring me no tydings of her? Sir,* replied the *Gaul,* *she has been gone from the Army ever since your landing in Britain: for Maximus, who passionately loves her, would not hazard the loss of her in the loss of a Battel, should fortune that attends your courage, still favour you with your wonted success. Do you not know,* said my Master, *what way she is gone? Into the Province of the Romans,* replied the *Gaul,* *whence it is reported, that she is to be conveyed into Italy, and that Honorius is resolv'd to hinder your espousing of her, lest you should thereby become too potent. Ah! Honorius,* replied the passionate King of the *Picts,* *restore me Octavia and peaceably enjoy thy Empire: But if obstinately thou detainest that fair Princess from me, prepare to feel the effects of that power which thou tremblest at.*

Instead of saying any more, he returns back to the Officers that were retired out of respect, and gives them order to march toward that place, where the Enemy lay intrenched with an intention to surprize them, before they could fortifie those advantageous Posts, of which they were Masters. Anger and indignation then joyning their force to the love we bare to *Constantine*, incited us to second the resolutions of a Prince that was so dear to us: so that we made such speed, that *Maximus* was asham'd to avoid the Combat, though he daily expected fresh recruits. The *Roman* therefore, who wanted neither courage nor experience, fortified with his Love and an Army in good heart, issues out of his Trenches, and shews himself before his Rival in good order of battel. *Constantine* overjoyed with that resolution of his Enemy, puts his men in Array: And he had no sooner given the Vanguard to *Comtant*, but that young Prince fiercely marched toward his Enemies, and begun the fight with a courage, worthy the noble discent from whence he sprang. *Castinus*, to whom *Maximus* had given the same charge, vigorously sustained the first onset: so that the *Britains* were forced to retire more than once. But the impatient Prince not enduring that delay, falls upon *Castinus* hand to hand: And having dangerously wounded him, forced the Body which he commanded to give way: and we no sooner began to see them totter, but the King, who led the right wing of his Army, advancing with the flower of the nobility, of several Kingdoms, thrust himself into the midst of his Enemies, with such a transcendent valour,

valour as posterity well may wonder at. He fought out *Maximus*, he call'd to him aloud, and defied him in fierce language, and every where opening for himself a passage with an impetuosity that met with no sufficient resistance, he caus'd terror and disorder in all places where he fought. At length, Madam, the *Roman* haughtiness gave way to the invincible Son of *Aldric*: for that great Soldier, as amorous as valiant, obtain'd a victory, that made him Master of the Field, of Bag and Baggage, and a great number of prisoners.

The ground was covered with dead bodies, for the *Romans* lost thirty thousand men upon the spot, the darkness of the night favouring the rest. Eleven thousand of our *Britains* fell in this bloody slaughter; neither my Master nor *Constant* escap'd without wounds, no more than *Dagobert* and *Antenor*, who signaliz'd themselves with an extraordinary courage. The next morning *Maximus* rallied together the reliques of his scattered Troops, and crossing a River that was hardly fordable, he broke down the Bridges after him: so that the King not being able to follow him, and having nothing but *Octavia* in his thoughts, did but imperfectly taste the pleasure of so favourable a success, and notwithstanding all the advantages, he appeared melancholy in the very field of triumph, yielding the conquest to his vanquish'd enemy that kept possession of his fair Princess.

While Love thus in a manner blasts the fruits of his victory; and the passionate *Constantine* knows not where to repose, he goes forth in a languishing posture out of his Tent, and as he was walking he saw two *Britains* quarrelling, and just ready to fall to blows, immediately he causes them to be sent for, and demands the reason of their difference, when the most violent of the two taking upon him to speak, *Sir*, said he, *the Officer whom you see has always been my Friend, and we resolv'd to share whatever we got in the Battel: however, he would fain break an agreement which we concluded since, though it were made altogether as he would have it. He has given me his part of a rich Head piece, and I have given him my share in a very considerable prisoner. I confess it,* replied the other *Britain*, *but you must acknowledge withal, that we neither knew the price of the Helmet, nor of the wounds which the prisoner had, and that friendship requires more fidelity than you have shewn me; for in short, you did not know that the Roman of whom I might have expected a considerable ransom could not live above five or six days.* *Continue friends as you were before,* replied the King, *and to preserve that kindness between you that first united your love, bring me hither the two subjects of your difference.*

The *Britains*, who knew well the Generosity of *Constantine*, were over-joyed with his proposal, and loving the Prince even to veneration they obeyed his commands, and receiv'd in lieu thereof rewards far more costly and magnificent than they expected. As for the prisoner, my Master having heard him prais'd for his valour, adding certain thoughts of esteem to those which his compassion inspir'd, ordered great care to be taken of the *Roman*, and the most skillful Chirurgions to attend him. A while after not being able to qualify his amorous impatience, he sent to offer *Honorius* a peace, on condition that he would restore him *Octavia*. While he stay'd in expectation of the return of his Deputies, he employ'd himself as much as his melancholy would give him leave, in exercising the Soldiers, in providing Ammunition, and taking care for provision, and in making alliances between the *Vandals* and the *Alains*, who threaten'd to invade the Empire. But so soon as he understood that *Honorius* was resolv'd to maintain *Maximus* in his pretences, and to oppose the union of the two *Britains*, he prepar'd for his revenge, and to overturn a haughty power that pretended to limit his, on purpose to keep it in subjection: wherefore he concluded a Treaty with the *Vandals* and *Alains*, and engag'd them to make an invade into *Spain*, while he on the other side made himself Master of the greatest part of *Gallia*.

In short, Madam, that formidable confederacy made no delay to shake the Empire of the West, insomuch that my Master had no sooner cut in pieces in a second Battel the rest of *Maximus's* Troops, but all the Soldiers proclaim'd him Emperour: but *Constantine* modestly refus'd that Title, telling all them that had the honour to be about his person, that he would by no means accept of that Addition. However, as the whole Army was not apprehensive of his moderation, he let them alone to act according to the extent of their zeal, not judging it material to stop the stream of a popular affection, the advantageous effects whereof he had time enough to attend. On the other side, the King not willing to let this passionate heat of affection die, turn'd toward *Aquitain*; and because he knew that the people of that Country could not endure *Honorius*, for having promis'd their Country to the *Goths*, he was in hopes they would make the less resistance, and therefore he sent thither only a part of his Army, under the command of Prince *Constant*, to whom *Antenor* and *Dagobert* were Lieutenant Generals. As for his own part, he laboured with all diligence to get ready a Fleet to transport his Army over into *Albion*, to punish *Cerences*,
and

and revenge the injuries done to his Princes, sending orders at the same time to *Lenox*, to advance toward *Troynovant* with all the Forces he was able to assemble together. But while the Ship-Carpenters and Seamen are continually at work upon the coast of *Britain*, and that *Constantine* not having any means to see *Octavia*, burns with impatience to sacrifice to her just anger the murderer of her Father, an unknown Knight pretends himself before him, approaching him with an aspect that drew the Prince to fix his eyes upon him. The Stranger appeared with a haughty carriage, though his countenance were pale, and he seem'd to be very feeble in body; yet in that weakness he made a low obeysance to the King, and finding him dispos'd to hearken to what he had to say, Sir, said he, *I come to offer your Majesty a life which I owe to you as its preserver, and to tell your Majesty that the marks of your Generosity which you have manifested, have made me so sensible of your kindness that I know nothing which I can do, sufficient to testify my acknowledgment; yet the first proofs that I shall give you thereof, may not be perhaps the least acceptable: for in short, Sir, I believe I can help you to the sight of the Princess of Albion, if you can but have so much confidence in a person whom as yet you know not; but a person who is absolutely devoted to your Majesties service, and whose heart is above all thoughts that so much as border upon treachery.*

The enamour'd Prince not being able then to refrain from embracing the Knight: *What is there can more deeply engage me, generous Stranger,* replied the Prince in an extasie of joy, *if ——— But is it possible,* (said the Prince, mov'd with a sudden passion usual upon occasions of the like nature) *to be in your power to procure me so great a happiness? It is too much for an unfortunate Prince; and whatever inclination I have to give credit to persons of your quality, give me leave at this time to question the truth of your offer: nor do I suspect you can have any thoughts which are contrary to the laws of honour; for I wish to Heaven that my heart were as capable to entertain those hopes you would infuse into it, as I am ready entirely to give my self up to rely upon your conduct in this affair, you have no more to do then, but to tell me the place where I may find the Princess of Britain, and how I may get thither. Neither difficulties nor dangers, nor assured death it self shall hinder me from observing that course which you shall instruct me to take. I will make use of stratagems and cunning, if you think it to the purpose; or if open force be more convenient, I will look upon all the power of the earth assembled against my love but as obstacles too feeble to frustrate my designs.* You must know then, Sir, replied the Stranger, *that the Princess Octavia is in the Country of the Cavarians, and that they who have the charge of conducting her to Rome, have receiv'd orders to stay at Avignon, a fair City seated upon the River Rhosne. For Maximus, who had given command that she should be convey'd into Italy, soon chang'd his resolution, and fearing lest the Emperour should espouse her to Constance, or to the Son of his Favourite Stilicon, thought it better to keep her still among the Gauls, whether it were that he thereby labour'd to draw to his party those two Rivals, or that he might appear before his Princes in greater lustre, being far remote from Honorius.* But, Sir, *in regard that Maximus never discovered his mind to me, as not being born a Subject to the Romans, and for that I am so infinitely oblig'd to your goodness, I cannot only without scruple endeavour your satisfaction in this particular, but rather think my self engag'd to seek out all opportunities to serve you. Be pleas'd to mind then what I am about to propose and promise to effect; and if a person that owes you all that is precious, can claim a right to demand any recompence, I beseech you to suffer me henceforward to remain in your Army, and in all encounters to expose for your interest a life which you your self have preserv'd. It is a long time since that I prefer'd your interest before the Romans; but understanding that Dagobert had put himself into your Army, many considerations made me side with your enemies.*

He had no sooner made an end of speaking, but he sigh'd, and having easily obtain'd the Prince's ear for some time, he related to him a good part of his Adventures, and how he came to have the knowledge of *Octavia* in the Province of the Romans, with what facility he could conduct my Master into the Country of the Cavarians, and introduce him into the presence of the Princes.

My Master had no sooner heard *Gildon's* relation, for so was the Stranger called, but he redoubled those thoughts of value and esteem which he had already conceiv'd for him, resolving to follow him whatever course he took. In short, Madam, an amorous design prevailing in the mind of a passionately engag'd King, transported him beyond the care of a grand preparation for war, above the pursuit of his victories which he intended to follow to the utmost, and above the revenge of *Gratian's* Blood. So fully were the thoughts of *Constantine* taken up with the Idea's of his Princes; for so absolutely did that fair person reign in his heart, that I may say my Master only lov'd *Octavia*, or at least, that there was nothing which he lov'd, but only for her sake. His conquest pleas'd him no otherwise but only that he thereby aim'd to enlarge the power of that divine Princess. Nor did ho-

nour it self, how glittering soever it appear'd, move him in the least, but only as it render'd him more worthy to serve the illustrious Daughter of *Gratian*. So that, Madam, you need not wonder, if instead of pursuing his design to repass into *Albion*, he delayed his journey that he might go to that only place where he was sure to find his certain happiness. This was the reason that he did no sooner send new orders to *Lenox*, for having put on only an ordinary Suit of Armour, he set forward upon his journey toward the *Roman* Province with a satisfaction not to be imagined. And therefore, though he was to travel through a great part of *Gallia*, his journey was not tedious, for in six days the impatient Prince reach'd the Banks of the River *Rhofne*: where he was no sooner arriv'd, but his faithful Guide carried him to the House of a certain *Gaul* that was his particular Friend; and having recommended his illustrious Guest, without letting him know however who he was, to his care, he went to *Oſavia* to advertiſe her of the arrival of the King of the *Piſts*. There he presently learn'd that the Princess was not ignorant of the fatal murder of her Father; but he saw withal that she appear'd more lovely in her mourning than when she departed to meet *Maximus*; whether it be that a mourning Habit seems like a cloud to set off the lustre of that brightness which breaks through it, or whether it heighten the Beauty of complexion by a favourable contrariety, *Gildon* condol'd with her in few words for the loss which she had sustain'd: and after he had given her leisure to sigh, and to bedew her cheeks with certain fresh tears, he began insensibly to enter upon the discourse which he had to make, and from thence to speak something of my Master's grief, of the violence of his passion, and how he had stollen from his victorious Army to throw himself at the feet of his Princess, and offer her his Dominions, his Forces and his life. At those words *Oſavia* seem'd surpris'd. At first she could hardly give any credit to *Gildon*. But so soon as she was convinc'd that *Constantine* was so near her, she moderated her grief, being without question satisfied with that evident proof of his love, which a Prince for whom she had no unkindness, came to give her, and with whom she only could be happy. Therefore it was not without some kind of delight that she gave *Gildon* leave to bring *Constantine* to her; and after that sending for the particular Virgin in whom she most confided, and who had likewise a great esteem for my Master's interest, she told her the news which she had receiv'd, to the end she might share in her occasions of gladness, as well as in her misfortunes. While *Gadena* was extolling the King of the *Piſts*, and was overjoyed that her fair Mistress had now so true a cause to give some respite to her melancholy, the passionate *Constantine* enters; but the mourning habit wherewith the Princess was clad, being the first object of his sight, recalls to his mind the memory of *Gratian*, and renews more than one sort of sorrow in his Soul; so that he drew near the Princess in such a manner, not so conformable to his love, as to the affliction of that fair Princess, for kneeling upon one knee before her, *Great Queen*, said he with a sigh, *I am come to mingle my tears with yours, I have had a loss as well as you in the person of Gratian; and I wish to Heaven that you would repair the loss which you have sustain'd, as soon as might be, in the person of Aldroec: that the King of Armorica might once be satisfied, fair Queen, that the Glory which Constantine has won, was at length sufficient to make him worthy all that is good or great upon the earth.*

He could say no more he was so turmoil'd with differing passions, while he beheld the countenance of *Oſavia*, which made the Queen of *Albion* her self sometimes keep silence; for she felt her grief augmented by the sight of the Prince, who had been so dear to the King her Father, so that the tenderness which she had for *Constantine*, coming to mix with the charms of a sweet melancholy, she seem'd in the Prince's eyes to be adorn'd with new allurements, and incomparably more lovely than ever she had been. He greedily overrun all the Beauties of that young Wonder, while his Soul instigated by new motions of love, still violently eager after that divine object, seem'd ready to leap out at the eyes of the passionate King. But grief in an instant lock'd it up a close prisoner again, and then the usual effects of sadness putting a restraint upon it, soon stopp'd the violence of his extasie. *Oſavia* observ'd those various thoughts in *Constantine*, notwithstanding all the sorrow that had prepossess'd her; and out of an acknowledgment which it no ways displeas'd her to make, she not only treated that great Prince with all the civility that his Royal Dignity could require, but also after such a certain obliging manner, as the extraordinary services which that Generous Prince had done her truly deserv'd. Yet could she not shew those signs which *Constantine* might have expected at another time; for although she had understood the crime that *Gerouces* had committed some time before, yet she was constrain'd to mention it at this first interview, inſomuch that she could speak without tears and sighs; and for that reason looking upon my Master with a languishment that would have mollified the hardest heart that ever was: *Alas, Sir!* said she, *it is too true that you have had a very great loss; it is too*

true that Gratian— At the sound of that name, her fair lips not able to continue her discourse, gave passage to several sighs: And the afflicted Queen not having strength enough at that time, to express what she was about to say, was content to conclude in few words, what the violent texture of her grief had interrupted. *Yes Sir,* (said she in pursuit of what she begun) *the affection which Gratian had for you, was not much inferior to the tenderness of your own Father. I wish to heaven,* replied my Master, *you had known what honourable proofs thereof his goodness gave me, greater than I could expect. The Letter which he wrote to me upon my departure from Sofimbra, replied me, inform'd me of it: For the report of what passed in the Assemblies at Troynovant, spread itself farther than only to reach my Ear. But,* Sir, (said she beholding him, with a sweetness altogether charming) *If the King of Albion, promised you his daughter and his Crown, Maximus has secured himself of the One, and Geronces possesses the Other. Ah! Madam,* (replied the fierce Constantine interrupting her, with something of discomposure) *What opinion have you of a Prince that adores you? Do you think they shall snatch from me my divine Queen? Shall Geronces, Maximus, or the two Emperours themselves, both united together against me, be sufficient to limit me from delivering you out of their hands? No Madam, no, it is not yet come to that pass, nor shall all the power of the Earth detain you from me, if you your self fair Queen, oppose not the will of Gratian, and the just pretences of your faithful Constantine.*

This transportation of his mind no way displeas'd Octavia, and as she was about to have spoken, to give him some evident sign thereof; news came that Maximus was arrived, and desired to see her. She was surpris'd and troubled, while the Amorous Prince, keeping his eyes stedfastly fixed upon her countenance, took notice of every little motion, and was not a little pleas'd to observe a discontent, which he interpreted to his Advantage. He had the happiness also to see, that Octavia would not presently admit the visit of the Roman: True it is that she had afterwards a respect to his birth and quality, when she consider'd that he made that visit, only as he pass'd through the Town to go for Vienna: that she could hinder both him and Constantine from quarreling in her presence, and that the latter after all, would not be less powerful than he, in a City where Gildon, who was faithful to him, had so great a command of friends. Thus not finding it material to turn Maximus back, he entred, and perceiving that the Queen had been weeping; *Is it possible, Madam,* said he, *that your grief should endure so long, and that you should abandon the most noble heart in the whole world, to the most irksome of all the passions. Rather tell me,* (answered the Queen with less moderation than was usual) *when you will put an end to this sadness, by applying a remedy to some part of my evils, that have been the cause of them all? You took me away by force, you detain me here in a foreign Country far from my own dominions: And you may well think that I cannot look upon the Banks of Rhosne, without longing after the Streams of Thameis. You mean the streams of the Loire,* said he, *for I suppose, Madam, 'tis in Armorica where you would fain be, if my love had not forced me to tie you to a more happy Rival. I confess,* replied she being somewhat nettled, *that the River of which you speak, does no less please me than that which runs by Troynovant, and were I near the banks of that River, I should be satisfied at least, in being within the Territories of a King, our Confederate and Ally, and among the Britains. But Madam,* replied he, *when you are among the Romans, and that you are serv'd and attended with all the respect, that is due to your Quality: have you any reason to complain, or can you be ignorant what is the difference between the two Nations. The King of the Picts,* (said she with some signs of discomposure) *I think has shew'd you the difference—— Good Madam,* said he, *don't praise your great Constantine so much, He will not be always fortunate, nor Maximus peradventure always unfortunate. It is true,* replied my Master very coldly, *that the brisk valour of some Barbarians, may have been too hard for the nimble, courageous, and well disciplin'd Romans: But Madam, the capricious humour of fortune, cannot long continue to favour to the damage of the Romans, a wild and savage Nation separated from the rest of the world, as unworthy humane society. At these words, Maximus calling a fierce look upon my Master, and taking up the dispute with a shrill voice; I am much surpris'd,* said he, *to hear you talk in that manner. Sir,* answered my Master, *it is according to the nature that your nation, the chiefest in the world, speaks most commonly of the British Islanders. I never heard any such discourse in Rome,* (replied the other with a disobliging Aspect.) *That may be,* (said Constantine, without being any way moved) *because they stand in such fear of you, as not daring to speak to the disadvantage of a Country, where your Ancestors were born, the Scepter of which Kingdom you would be glad to wield, were it offer'd you by the fairest Queen in the world. Yes Madam,* (said he addressing himself to Octavia) *Maximus would condescend to a marriage with your self, notwithstanding he is a Citizen of Rome, and perhaps by his care and diligence he might procure you the priviledge to be made free of the City, and the honour sometimes to fawn*

upon the daughter of Stilicon. *Ab! Madam, this is too much,* cryed *Maximus*: But as he was growing into a rage, the Queen taking up the dispute, turn'd the subject of the discourse; so that the two Rivals were more quiet and moderate. She requited them both severally not to break forth into passion, which they had no sooner promised to do, but *Maximus* went his way, not caring to stay, where persons seem'd to Act by consent, and shew'd but little kindness to him. But *Constantine* remained sometime after with the Queen, so that he related to her all that had happend to him, since his departure from *Sosimbra*: and beholding her with a tenderness, that plainly testified the tenderness of his heart; *Fair Queen*, said he, *seeing that Gildon is my friend, and that in a manner he absolutely governs this City, he pleas'd to permit me to reconduci you back into Armorica. It is not my request,* said she, *that you should there make me happy. No Madam,* replyed he, *I require no such thing as yet, it behoves me first to revenge the death of the King your Father, it behoves me to establish you in his Throne, and that I act for your interest, before I think of my own.* These obliging words were accompanied with looks, more than ordinarily passionate: However the scrupulous *Octavia* would not yield, giving my Master for answer, that she durst not undertake a journey with a Prince, whose passion for her was known over all the world. *Could Maximus then have that advantage,* said the Prince sighing, *which you deny to Constantine?* *I never granted willingly,* said she, *to the Roman whom you speak of, that which you call an advantage: nevertheless he might sooner obtain it than the King of the Picts. For in short I am of opinion, that without a prejudice to the laws of civil manners, and hazarding my reputation, I might better travel a hundred Climates with a person, for whom I was never suspicied to have any kindness. But,* said the blushing, *I should not be so careful or cautious in Constantine's company: so that how innocent soever my intentions were, I should always fear lest the world might interpret things to the prejudice of my honour.* Those last words rather rejoiced than disturb'd my Master, which made him bow with all respect in returning thanks to the Queen: However, not being yet entirely satisfied; *Is it impossible,* said he, *for us, pursuing his first design, to take different roads to the Court of Aldrocc?* *No, no, Sir,* said she, *it cannot be, a resolution taken by consent, would be a perpetual trouble to me: For I should never think upon that secret intelligence, without disturbing my rest. Ab! Princess too severe,* (cryed he, beholding her with eyes full of love and grief) *how ingenious you are to torment your self, and render me unhappy. But after all this if we conceal our departure, and that no person in the world know of our designs, but our selves, can you find any reason then to be troubled?* *Yes Sir,* replyed she, *since I cannot be ignorant of it myself, and that it becomes me to fear the reproaches of my own heart, as much as the accusations of a thousand witnesses.*

Constantine would no longer obstinately pursue a request, which he saw so unlikely to be obtain'd, nor durst he tarry longer with *Octavia*, for fear the persons of the house, to whom he was altogether unknown, might have any suspicion, should they remain together later than was convenient for Visitants to be in her chamber. Thereupon he went his way very melancholy, after he had conjur'd her to consider better than she had done, the proposal which he had made her to set her at liberty, out of a City that depended upon the Empire, to the end that the next day, she might be prepared with a more favourable answer. As he came a horseback, by reason that the *Gaul's* house was at a good distance off, he return'd in the same manner, being only attended by one Squire which *Gildon* had provided to shew him the way. As he rode back my Master ruminated all the way, upon those cruel scruples of the fair Queen, when of a sudden calling to mind the predictions of *Altoruna*; *Ab Melusina*, cryed he, *I must but too plainly acknowledge that the obstinacy of the severe Octavia, is too powerful to be mov'd by the rules of your Art: You promised me that I should beat the Romans, and if I am not deceived, according to the order of things as you rehearsed them, I was to set my fair Queen at liberty, before I went to revenge the death of the King her Father: Yet for all that I am unhappily constrained to leave her in a City, under the power and command of my Rival. For in short, it neither behoves me, nor can I persuade her to return with me into Albion, and I tremble when I consider that the divine Octavia, will have no person to defend her from her Enemies. And therefore,* said he, pursuing his discourse to himself, *it will be better to forsake the Conquest of Aquitain, to delay the punishment of Geronces, rather is it far better that all things should go to wrack; than that the fair Princess should suffer any outrage. Let us renounce our enterprises and our anger, let us renounce our advantages and our honour, let us inziely sacrifice our interests to the interests of Octavia: and provided she be at liberty, provided she be happy, let us never take care for Constantine's happiness, let us never take care for a Prince, that lives in the world, but to serve that fair Queen whom he adores. But,* said he, *will the Romans stay till thou comest, at the head of a potent Army to the banks of the River Rhosne, without removing Octavia from the Country of the Cavarians?* Then (cryed he sitting up his

eyes to Heaven) to what extremities do I find my self reduc'd? So that if the Supreme Deity of afflicted innocency afflict me in any extraordinary means, into what an abyss of misfortunes shall I infallibly tumble headlong. With these thoughts was his mind busily employ'd, when the noise of several Horses awaked him out of his deep study, at what time he saw *Maximus* accompanied with five or six other persons directly coming to meet him, whether by accident, or out of any premeditated design he could not tell.

At the sight of *Octavia's* Ravisher, *Constantine* felt a fire which he had much ado to moderate, nor could the inequality of number have hinder'd him from assailing his enemy, had he not call'd to mind the request which the Queen had made him, and that that request had not taken place in his Soul as an inviolable command. His Rival less reserv'd, beholding him with a haughty pride, agreeable to the fierceness of his native Country, and to his high Dignity, *I find thee to be a Stranger*, said he with a lofty utterance, *and thou hast but little knowledge of Maximus, when thou didst with so much presumption lose the respect which is due from thee to persons of his Rank and Birth.* The provok'd Prince impatiently taking hold of his words, *I know well enough*, answered he with indignation, *the person whom Pharamond and Constantine have displayed to all the world: and for the respect which you talk of, without examining which of us two is most oblig'd to pay it each to other: See here,* (said he, laying his hand upon his Sword) *that which shall soon decide the difference, without being compell'd to have recourse to any further illustration of the point.*

Concluding those words, and encouraging his Horse with his voice and his spur, he flew upon *Maximus* like an impetuous whirlwind; immediately the violence of the Assaultants made the Stones and their Armour strike fire, so that the best part of the assistants were not a little terrified. The Roman, who was both active and courageous, sustain'd my Master's first onset with bravery enough; and that which became the ancient Gallantry of his Country was this, that the Knights in company with him, never stirr'd to assist him. And though the undaunted *Constantine* did not well know their number, yet he had taken so much notice of it, that being resolv'd to punish the Ravisher of the Queen of *Albion*, before he was environ'd on every side, or overwhelm'd by the multitude likely to come to *Maximus's* assistance, he redoubled his strength, and making a violent thrust at his enemy, he run his adversary quite through the right Arm: nor did the combatants thus leave off, the Street being large, and no person daring to come near them, so that they had both room and liberty enough to continue the dispute; whereupon the valiant King of the *Picts*, disdain'd to find so tedious a resistance, let drive so furiously at his enemy, that with the weight of the blow he struck *Maximus's* Buckler out of his hand, which falling heavy upon his Horse's head, made a deep and large wound. The fierce Beast exasperated with his hurt, stood an end, and finding himself ill at ease by reason of the blood that trickled down his eyes, he kick'd and flung; and at last throwing *Maximus*, that could no longer rule him, to the ground, fell backward upon his Rider. By reason of that fall, *Maximus* lay at the mercy of his generous enemy, but the Prince seeing his adversary no longer able to make any defence, forbore all further pursuit of his victory. And notwithstanding the hatred men have for their Rivals, *Constantine* had certainly succour'd his Competitor, but that he saw several people ready to help him, while others ran with their Swords in their hands to revenge his quarrel; yet this fresh danger no otherwise mov'd the haughty King, but only that it reinforce'd his strength, but darting looks of terrour at the multitude that advanc'd toward him, he beheld his inevitable ruine with a fearless constancy. Instead of considering what resolution to take, he left himself to be wholly guided by the motions of his own great heart, chusing rather to seek an honourable, though present death, than to wait for it by protracting his life for some few moments; covering himself therefore with his Shield, he flew upon the multitude with so much violence, that like thunder he spar'd none but those who made no resistance, overturning all that withstood his fury. While he kills, falls to the ground, receives wounds without feeling them; while he drives back his enemies, not desisting to gain one of the Gates of the City, he finds himself all in an instant in a place where the people throng'd together, and environ'd him on every side: then the image of a fair Queen from whom he was to be for ever separated, hovered before his thoughts, and notwithstanding the rudeness of the Combat, and his own fury, he could not forbear to sigh, feeling his Soul oppress'd with grief and tenderness. But notwithstanding the motions of his love, and to leave *Octavia* without support, and *Gratian* unreveng'd, he loses no time, takes no rest, while at the same time his valour burning with a brighter flame, shews it self more surprising and more formidable. *Gildon's* Esquire, who would have spoken in the behalf of that great King, though he knew not who he was, not being able to make the people heedless to his admonition, had fought for him; and he fell at his feet run through

through and through at the very time that the second Troop of *Cavarians* were running against my Master.

Thus *Constantine*, Madam, the illustrious *Constantine*, alone, far from his Dominions, absent from his Arms, after so many Victories, so many Conquests, and so many fair hopes is just upon the very brink of perishing. But, Madam, he meets his death unknown, overwhelm'd by a mutinous multitude, nor does he fall but in the defence only of his life. He knew the greatness of the danger, he beholds a thousand Arms lifted up against his life, yet far from being astonish'd; he kills, terrifies; nor was he at the same time without some kind of pleasure, so fierce was his Soul, finding now that he had an opportunity to fight at the full extent of his courage, and without having any partner in the honour of his great Actions; and in the mean time that the blood trickled down from all parts under his Armour, he perceives that his Horse, quite tired and wounded in five or six parts, was almost ready to die; and at the same instant he discovered a new reinforcement coming to his enemies: seeing all this, he took no farther care but how to end his days with some more than ordinary Action, that might maintain the honour of his renowned name: wherefore observing that the fresh *Cavarians* that were coming seem'd to be more considerable in their quality than the former, he makes toward them, seeking for objects more worthy of his anger. Though he had no sooner made his passage toward them, but instead of a reinforcement of enemies he saw *Gildon*, who being followed by fifteen or twenty of the principal Officers of the City, cleft their way through the crowd to come to his succour. He perceiv'd that they prayed, promised, threatened, laid on; and in short, that they did all things that lay in their power to make the people keep off and retire, and to save the life of a generous Prince to whom he owed the preservation of his own: *Cavarians*, *stupid Cavarians*, he cry'd, *what does your fury transport ye? Maximus is not dead, and though he had fallen by the hand of this invincible Soldier whom you assail, will you punish the Victor because he was the more valiant? Are ye so far the enemies of Virtue? Must a Stranger of necessity perish in your City, either by the hand of him that assaults him, or afterwards for defending his life against a multitude.*

He held up his Sword ready to strike, and pronounc'd those words with so much vehemency, that the people of that Country, who love reason when it is made out to them, presently chang'd their minds, turning their hatred into an extraordinary admiration of that great personage, whose death they had but a little before resolv'd. The chief Leaders of the multitude declared to *Gildon*, that at first they only set upon that valiant person to have taken him, and sent him to *Honorius*, apprehending, that in letting him escape, the Emperour might lay the death of *Maximus* to their charge, and otherwise take all for falsehood and supposition that they should say for themselves. But *Gildon* urging his argument a little farther, *How!* said he, *my Friends*, with a very loud voice, *will you be guilty of a fear so servile? Will you renounce for the Romans sake the dictates of humanity? Will you to please them assail the life of a valiant person, who has committed no other crime but that he defended himself by force against force? Forgo a complaisance so dishonourable: imitate the example of those generous Nations who have thrown off the yoke of a proud and haughty people. The Franks are ready to pass the Rhine, and Pharamond is coming to fix himself in those pleasant Countries that have lately call'd him to the Throne of his Ancestors. On the other side, the Burgundians cry for liberty; so that Gondioch carries that enchanting charm in his Standards; and while the Vandals are fallen into Betic Spain, the Goths threaten Italy with a second invasion: nor is this all, the famous Constantine has sent an Army into Aquitain, sufficient to make himself master of that Province, while he himself at the head of another Army more potent, lays claim to Gallia Narbonensis, being ready to come without resistance to the Banks of your River. Require the protection of that King, who can do you an injury while he defends you? Can the Romans do it, whom he has overthrow'n in two great Battels? Or can Stilicon do it, who has now lost his former vigour, and his power over his Master, who is now reported to be jealous of him? Shall it be the good Honorius, whose softness and sluggishness render him incapable of military Renown? Or at last, shall Constance do it, who is deeply engag'd in Spain, and whom the valiant Gonderic keeps in full employment upon the River Betis with a puissant Army of Vandals? No, no, my Friends, you need not be afraid of the Romans; if you doubt of the truth of my words, I will not leave ye, and my life shall answer for them: I will also farther undertake, that the noble person whom you have so unjustly assaulted, shall pardon the injury which he has receiv'd in this Town, and shall fight himself in your defence. What have you to fear, if this invincible Soldier shall take up your interest?*

At those words the people, who were already repent of their violent proceedings, mov'd with his promises, interposed no objection; and all went over to him, committed to him

the conduct of all things, and cryed out for liberty. Their new Captain went immediately and embrac'd the knees of his illustrious Benefactor, and having testified that it was to a great Prince that he payed all that respect, the most considerable among the multitude did the same, and every one prest'd to shew their diligence, for my Master's ease and refreshment. But the Amorous *Constantine*, instead of suffering his Arms to be taken off, presently prepared to speak: testifying in the first place his acknowledgments, to those that were most forward to assist him, and pursuing his harangue in the following words; "Generous Citizens, as I do not refuse your Aid, so I promise you my Assistance, but after I have assured you that you will not find it altogether unprofitable, it behoves me to let you know something more Advantageous. I will procure you the most honourable protection in the world: You have within these walls the young Queen of *Albion*, that Admirable Stranger; with whom it is reported you are also charm'd. Away then, let us go set her at liberty from the Tyranny of the *Romans*, who took her by force out of her own dominions: Let us go and demand the very support of your City, you know what are the King of the *Pisirs*'s pretentions, that fair Princess and you need not doubt, but upon that confidence he will defend you against your Enemies. He will not only preserve your liberty entire, but he will also lade you with other large immunities. He will protect you with his Arms, and suddenly procure you a solid peace: Run and embrace this happiness, make haste to a fair Queen, to whom you may pay your homage without any contradiction, being a submission by which you will reap a hundred Advantages.

He had no sooner concluded those words, but finding that the people approved them by their loud shouts and cries, and were ready to follow him, he marched together with *Gildon*, directly toward the Palace where *Ostavia* resided. Entering into her Apartment he took notice, that all her Attendants were fear'd: And he had no sooner put his foot in the chamber, but he saw the charming *Ostavia* lying in a swoon upon her bed; while the Virgins that waited on her stood round about her, endeavouring to recover her out of her fit by all sorts of remedies. All they that followed *Constantine* retir'd out of respect, while the enamour'd Prince being only accompanied with *Gildon*, was so Amaz'd that he remain'd like a meer Statue: And by and by shewed no ordinary Symptoms of that despair that seized him. The Affectionate *Gadens* no sooner perceived him, but she appear'd extremely surprized, and seeing no person to be suspected near her; "Ah Sir, said she, for Heaven's sake draw neer, and since that Heaven has preserv'd you contrary to all hope, come here and cure an evil, of which you are the innocent cause; and recover the Queen from a weakness, whereinto the false news of your death has cast her.

Upon these words my Master came to himself, he felt at the same time joy and grief, so humourfome was the passion that reigned in his soul: And if he were glad to see that effect of kindness, in the divine person whom he ador'd, he could not but with an extreme affliction behold, that the proof of her Affection should prove injurious to her health. He ran toward her, he called her several times, leaning his head neer her fair cheeks which he bedewed with tears. But his voice more powerful than they, soon penetrated with a secret charm *Ostavia*'s heart, and presently enlivened her. When *Constantine*'s passion perceiv'd that the Queen began to come to her self; he was overjoyed in such a manner, that not being able to moderate his Extasie, he became more venturous than ever he had been. But though he were never so much overcome by his Passion, he durst not for all that presume to kiss those charming lips, which seem'd to be neither shut nor open, only to receive some part of his flame, but contented himself to take that liberty, upon one of her fair hands. He prested that white hand so Amourously hard: that the Princess began to open her eyes, yet instead of taking notice of my Master's presumption, as not having recover'd the freedom of her senses, she presently believed that she saw the shadow of her lover, so deeply was her imagination prepossessed, with the news of his misfortune. The Anticipation of that sad thought made her sigh, and while the tears fell from her fair Eyes; "Alas, cryed she, and was it so decreed, that I must be the unfortunate cause of his death? When *Constantine* interrupting her to clear her mistake; "I live fair Queen, he cryed, and you Advance me to an honour so high, that I can never dye till you cease to live. "How! do you live, Sir, (said she turning her fair Eyes, with a sweet and languishing aspect upon the Prince's face?) "Are you alive, and has Heaven, mov'd with my tears, delivered you from the Grave, that I might once more see your face? "Could you think Madam, replied he, that Heaven could consent to my death, or that it had so little care of a Princess altogether divine; as to deprive you of that Arm, that may one day establish you in your throne? I live Madam, and I owe my Life to your prayers and *Gildon*'s friendship, I live to bring you tidings of your liberty, which the inhabitants of the City are coming to Assure you: And that they

“they are ready to shew you all the proofs of their Affection and fidelity, that you can stand
“in need of, during your residence in their Country.

This familiar converse was so obliging, and enlivened with so much passion, that *Celtor* and *Gadens* apprehending that it was not very profitable, toward the recovery of both their healths, made hast to interrupt them. *Gildon* represented effectually to the King of the *Picts*, that it was very necessary for him to retire to his bed, and to have his wounds lanced, and the Princess joining her prayers to so just an Admonition, with much ado he was constrained to leave her. So soon as the *Cavarians* had delivered their message, in order to their design in hand, they behaved themselves with a becoming grace, and the Queen accepted of their submission with an extraordinary goodness. They went away to well satisfied, that they resolved to expel all the *Romans* out of their City: so that it was not without great favour shewed him, that *Maximus* notwithstanding his dignity and his wounds, obtained leave to stay there till he were perfectly cured; he obliging himself to depart, as soon as he should be able to sit a Horse. My illustrious Master had then the pleasure to see, that his Rival was forc'd to give way to him in all places; but he found a more exquisite content, in the daily visits of the Queen of *Albion*, and the observance of her care and diligence. For that diligence of hers more powerful than the Chirurgeon's Art, produced so good effects, that the King did not keep his Chamber above fifteen days: And after that he thought of nothing else but of revenging *Gratian's* death, and reestablishing *Ostavia*. Not but that he was very unwilling to leave that fair Princess, but knowing the separation was only for her interest, at length he determin'd to be gone, having before he went made it his request, that she would leave the Province of the *Romans*. But she would not consent, her mind not being yet cured of those former scruples, beside that the people of *Avignon* testified so much zeal to guard her, that *Constantine* was constrained to leave her in their Country. Nevertheless before he stirr'd, he saw *Gildon* made Governour of the City and Territories belonging to it. And yet notwithstanding all this prevention and wariness, he had not absented himself from *Ostavia*, had he not observed that the *Romans* were not very strong in that Country, either to march against the *Cavarians*, or to besiege their Capital City. And so believing that he should as soon be in a condition to defend *Avignon*, as *Honorius* should be to Assault it, he was the less grieved when he took leave of the Queen. And that which gave him something more of consolation, was that she permitted him to write to her. Most of the young Gentlemen of noble Families, resolv'd to follow him, being overjoyed that they had taken that resolution, especially when they knew the real quality of the personage, whose valour they before admir'd. My Master was unwilling that so many brave Cavaliers, should leave a City where he left his *Ostavia*: but when he considered that they would be as so many hostages, to answer for the fidelity of their parents, he no way oppos'd their intention. That noble Troop thus upon the way, us'd all possible diligence and wariness in their march: And being come within the Territories of *Armorica*, *Constantine* dispatch'd a Courier to *Ostavia*, to give her an Account of his journey, and to entertain her with that passion, of which Lovers think they can never talk enough. At length he went to the King his Father, to whom he gave an extraordinary satisfaction, nor did the divertisements at that time, solemniz'd at Court upon the return of the Prince, hinder the vigilant *Constantine* from minding the Affairs of a Queen, whose image was always present in his mind.

He sent orders to *Lenox* to advance toward *Troynovant*, and to *Constant* to enter *Gallia Norbonensis*, and to draw toward the Country of the *Cavarians*. As for himself he stay'd as little as might be in *Armorica*, for no sooner had the generous *Aldroec* given him his consent to cross into *Albion*, but the Ships which he had Appointed for that service being ready, he set sail with a wind very favourable for his passage. At the same time also, he had received a very obliging Answer from the Queen, so that he did not at all question the fortunate issue of an enterprize, which he had so luckily begun. *Geronces* however expected him with a greater force and a more resolute power of Souldiers, than in justice ought to have Attended a person so criminal: So that my Master could not land his men till after a bloody fight, wherein he obtained at length a very Advantageous Victory, more then three Thousand of the Rebels were slain. *Geronces* whose fury led him where-ever his presence was necessary, received a wound from *Constantine's* own hand, insomuch that not being able to withstand that Valiant Prince, he fled with the best part of the Cavalry, and gained *Troynovant*, which opened her Gates to him, by reason he had there left the principal of his Accomplices in Command. The King was incens'd, and not being willing to lose the least moment of time, nor to give *Geronces* leisure to settle the peoples minds, he march'd without delay toward the Rebels sanctuary: Yet being loth to destroy *Celtor's* subjects, he sent his Heralds

to the *Troynovantines*, to invite them to peace, requiring only, that to signalize their fidelity to their Queen, instead of giving protection to the Rebels, they would surrender them up to the Law. The mad *Geronces* perceiving that the admonitions of *Constantine* began to make some impression, caused the Messengers to be cruelly murthered, and cast their mangled Bodies from a high Tower, in sight of his Army. For he violated the Law of Nations, by committing that new crime, to shew that he made little reckoning of a Prince to whom he durst offer such an affront, besides that, he thereby thought to engage the Citizens of *Troynovant* more strongly to his interests, causing them to despair of pardon, by an action so opposite to the answer which they ought to have given. The King enrag'd at so abominable a piece of villany, was resolv'd to die, or carry the place, and that speedily. He exhorts his men, and gives orders to his Ships to attacke the Post.

Then it was, Madam, that the valiant Prince of *Suevia* came and admitted himself into *Constantine's* Army, where he perform'd a hundred Actions worthy of eternal memory. But as it is not his History that I now repeat, it shall suffice to say, that my Master and *Viridomar* signalized themselves in such a heroick manner, that they immediately had a reciprocal esteem one for another, and entred into a strict league of mutual friendship. But to return to *Constantine*, you must know that they were to mine on the one side, and to raise their Battering Rams on the other; and being resolv'd to mount the Walls himself, he took a Ladder, and followed by all the Voluntiers together with some of the nimblest and stoutest of his Soldiers, covered with his Buckler, and having only his Sword in his hand, while our Archers and Slingers continually plyed those that defended the Walls. Nor could it be avoided, but that a prodigious Shower of Stones and Arrows slew many of the Assailants, overturn'd many of the Ladders, and many times made that shake upon which the hardy *Constantine* stood; nevertheless, being one of the most vigorous men in the world, besides that his anger reinforc'd his strength, at last he got quite up, by such prodigious performances as seem'd almost supernatural, and leaping nimbly upon the Wall, he continued there for some time alone, and among a great number of his Enemies. But far from losing his courage or his reason, he made so good use of his Sword and Buckler, that not only he made a stout resistance till others came to his assistance, but kill'd several with his own hand, who were so rash as to cope with him. He was no sooner aided by those who were most diligent and fortunate to follow him, but he forc'd a good part of the Rebels to leap off the Walls into the City, while others felt the fury of his blows, till *Lenox* appear'd with the Body of the Army, and that the Rams had beat down a part of the Wall. Then the people cryed for Quarter, then they cryed out that one *Britain* should not fight against another, that they would revenge *Gratian's* death, punish his Murtherers, and receive *Constantine* for their King. The Prince, who by the Laws of War might have put all to the Sword, caus'd his men to enter the Breach, to terrifie the *Troynovantines*, and to make himself Master of the City; and notwithstanding his clemency, finding himself obliged to shew some severity to satisfie his other virtues, he commanded a diligent search to be made after the Murtherers of *Gratian*, and promised rewards to those that should apprehend them. And it being the humour of the common people to be fickle, the *Britains* not having more constancy than other people, now fell upon those whom a little before they acknowledged for their Leaders, so that many were slain, and most of the principal Officers of the Sedition being taken, were laden with Fetters, and cast into prison. *Geronces*, with some few of his Confidants sav'd himself through a Vault which he had caus'd to be made under ground, and posted to *Locrinia*, who, under another name without any attendance, was fled to a House which being neither strong nor guarded, nor in a good situation, would not in all likelihood be much suspected. *Constantine* chiefly desired to sacrifice to the memory of *Gratian* that Victime which had escap'd him, and to that purpose resolving to pursue him, sent away part of the Cavalry with orders to search every where that they could apprehend or imagine he might have taken Sanctuary. In the mean time, after he had appeas'd the troubles of the City, he caus'd *Geronces's* House to be pull'd down, and laid level with the very foundations, and not contented that it should be a spectacle of ruine and desolation, he made it a place of ignominy, where afterwards all the most criminal Malefactors among the prisoners were executed; causing a Pyramid to be erected, with an Inscription of their names and crimes, for a memory to posterity. After that he applied himself to the regulation of the Government, making all the other Cities after the example of *Troynovant* to acknowledge *Ostavia's* Sovereignty. Nevertheless the people ceased not to beseech him to accept of the Crown himself, and without delay to take possession of a Kingdom that *Gratian* had bequeath'd to him. But *Constantine*, who came to fight under *Ostavia's* Banners, and who only liv'd for her sake, far from any pretence of enlarging his Dominions,

missions began to be angry with those that press'd him to it. And when he wrote to the said Queen to give her an account of his Transactions, it was in these following expressions, if I am not very much deceiv'd.

Constantine to the Queen of Albion.

TROYNOVANT, Madam, is reduc'd; the King your Father's death is reveng'd; and his Throne, if it be not the chief Throne of the world, will not be the less renowned and flourishing when the most happy nation upon earth shall be overjoyed to see the fairest Queen in the world seated under its Canopy. When will it be my fortune to be inseparably tyed to that incomparable Queen? When shall I continually admire her Beauties, and sigh out my affections at her feet? Alas, for all other happinesses are of little value in respect of that. My Victories and my Conquests please me not in this Island, when my divine Princess is in Gallia; and the most happy success of my Arms will never move me, unless it may serve to reestablish you in your Kingdom, and render me worthy of those honourable claims which I make to your person. In short, Madam, methinks I do not live but for you. In your presence I find my heart entirely satisfied. But depriv'd of your sight I am nothing but melancholy it self, and my Soul is disturbed in the midst of my Triumphs. The most favourable success of all my enterprizes makes a far less impression upon my Soul, than my misfortune; and should you question the truth of what I say, I should be yet far more miserable.

He was going to give this Letter to one of his Esquires; but, as Lovers always thinks they have never said enough, the King of the Picts saw that he had not written with that exactness which he intended. And for that reason he added this Postscript, where however his love ceased not to predominate, so absolutely was that passion Mistress of his Soul.

You are earnestly expected, Madam, in your Dominions, every one prepares to receive you; and I am unfortunately constrain'd still to tarry here, to keep your subjects in subjection. I yield to Constant the honour to attend you upon the Banks of the Rhosne, and thence to conduct you into your own Kingdom. But, my fair Queen, when you think upon the magnificent preparations which they are making for your reception: for Heaven's sake think upon your Constantine, nourish in your heart a disposition never to forget him. Let not the acclamations of your Subjects, the pomp that they will display at your return, hinder you from casting your eyes, those fair eyes that command my destiny, upon the most humble, the most faithful Captive that ever followed the Chariot of his Vanquisher.

Thus Constantine at length concluded, maugre that passion which could never be silent. He also wrote to Prince Constant, and the Letter to regulate the several Dominions that pay'd their homage to his Scepter, he sent for the most considerable among the Britains, the Picts and the Hybernians. But while thus he bestows his time upon weighty affairs, while Lennox, who was appointed to attend the Queen on the behalf of her Subjects, prepares for his departure with a magnificent train, Constantine understands that Geronces and Loerinia were escap'd into Gallia, notwithstanding the care he had taken to stop all the Posts: and a few days after an answer was brought him from Octavia in these words.

The Princess Octavia to King Constantine.

I Understand with infinite satisfaction, that you have taken Troynovant. But, Sir, surprisal had no share in my joy, for I am too well accustomed to hear of your renowned Actions, to wonder that you gain Victories, or take Towns. I always thought what you went to assail, would not long hold out against the Conquerour of the Romans, and that a great King, who had overthrown so many Armies, subdued so many Nations, would easily reduce a company of Mu-

tineers to their duty. Yes, Sir, Troynovant owes you a perfect obedience, the King my Father has chosen you for his Successor, and Octavia her self yields you up all her right, and gives her voice for your Establishment. Reign then, Sir, for my repose and for the honour of our nation: they are a haughty people, and it is fit that only such a Prince as your self should govern them, and that a formidable Arm should wield the Scepter, my hand is too weak to hold it. But after all this shall I not reign your companion, if you continue faithful? For if you change your mind, what will a Throne avail, when my life will become miserable.

The enamoured *Constantine* read those inestimable Characters, which the fair hand of his Mistress had drawn, a hundred times over. He kissed them, he stopt at every word, he examin'd the force of the Sence, and found at the close of the Letter something so obliging, that he felt those transpartations of joy, which he had never proved before. *Divine Octavia*, crycd he, *can you believe that a heart devoted to yours, can be capable of change? What Beauty, how charming soever, can rob you of your conquest? No, no, fair Queen, it is impossible to want a constancy for you; be but faithful your self, and Constantine, the most passionate of all your lovers, shall be without all question the most happy among men.*

The End of the Third Book of the Eighth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK IV.

How extraordinary soever *Constantine's* joy appear'd to be, he was not for that the more remiss in business, sending me away to the *Picts*, and *Lisca* to the Island of the *Hibernians*: Nor was he forgetful of those *Britains*, who had been faithful to *Gratian*. For besides the many other benefits that he bestowed upon them, some he plac'd in the chief Magistracy of the Cities, others he made Commanders in the Army. But while all things seem'd to tend toward a happy Conclusion, he received news that did not a little perplex him: For he understood that *Gerences* had joyn'd himself with *Maximus* at *Vienna*, that he was very liberal to the Soldiers, and that with the money and jewels of a King cruelly murder'd, he had given a new life to the *Roman* Affairs: So that they were near ready to bring another Army into the field, to find *Constantine* more work. Thereupon my Master fearing the Queen of *Albion's* safety, prepar'd to repass his Army into *Gallia*: he ordered *Lenox* to stay in *Troynovant*, and committed the government of the Kingdom to him. But while he felt a secret melancholy which he could not vanquish, neither by the hurry of employment, nor the force of his reason, he received the following Letter.

Gildon to King Constantine.

I Am robb'd of her whom I love: nor can I any longer give you an account of that treasure which you entrusted in my custody. In short, Sir, the Queen of Albion is departed from this City. After this, can you expect from an afflicted person, words sufficient to express his misfortune? My shame is too great, and my grief too insupportable to permit me to give you the full relation; and therefore I have entrusted the Gaul who brings your Majesty this Letter to give you a more ample account of this fatal accident.

Constantine having read this Letter, stood like a Statue, he cast his eyes several times upon the Paper, and then he found it was not without cause, that despair had been so long brooding in his heart; he rear'd his eyes to Heaven, as if from thence he required a divine Princess, of whom the celestial powers ought to have taken a more particular care, since they had fram'd her with so many extraordinary advantages. As a Lover he sighs, complains, and examines the proceedings and carriage of *Gildon*: but as *Constantine* he banishes all thoughts that might be injurious to that generous Stranger; and instead of being dejected for this new affliction, he rowzes up his fury against the *Romans*, whom he verily thought to be the authors of his misfortune. He beheld the messengers sent by *Gildon* with such a discomposure of mind, and so many symptoms of impatience, as visibly testified his real desire to understand what his Master had left unrelated, to which the *Gaul* gave him the following satisfaction.

“Sir, it is in vain for me to say any thing of *Gildon's* tormenting grief, since it is impossible for me to describe it; only give me leave to tell you, that after your departure he took all the care imaginable to divert the Queen of *Albion*, and to allay that melancholy which your absence occasion'd; there was a fair Lady whom he passionately lov'd, who was inseparably in the Princess's company, and that few other persons were admitted into that beautiful society; and certainly they might have there spent many a pleasing hour, either in discourse, in reading, or in taking the air, had the absence of your Majesty permitted them those innocent pastimes. These illustrious personages were wont to take the air forth of *Avignon* in a little Island which the *Rhofne* encircles, about a Bow-shot from the Wall; and though it were within sight of the Walls, *Gildon* never fail'd to accompany the Queen, as also to take along with him a strong Guard: yet all this wariness could not prevent his misfortune; for about ten days since the Queen of *Albion* was carried away by force together with the fair Lady whom he so much lov'd, they were all together in the Island of which I have made mention, when a certain Stranger approaching my Master, under pretence of begging some favour at his hands, gave him the following Letter.

Maximus to Gildon.

IF thou art not as cowardly as perfidious, thou wilt not refuse to follow the Soldier who gives thee my Letter. He will bring thee where I am, with only a Sword and a Target; and therefore bring no other Arms, if thou wilt not render thy self unworthy the honour which I offer thee to fight me, thou wilt not delay to give me satisfaction. Thou art not ignorant of my quality, nor of the injury which I have received, nor what satisfaction I expect. Come then, and let not the fear of losing thy pretended Government be any excuse; for that will be but a vain one, since thou art not desired to stir from the City which thou hast caused to revolt from us. For in short, I stay for thee at the very Gates of the Town; 'tis in the view of thy accomplices that I will punish thee, and where I expect to take that revenge which my Country and my love demand.

“He had no sooner read those words, but his eyes sparkled, and the haughty language

of *Maximus* so incensed him, that he commanded the unknown Soldier to give him the Shield which he wore himself, and to bring him to his Master. No sooner did the Stranger lead the way, but *Gildon* followed him apace; and though he left the Queen of *Albion*, and the person whom above all others in the world he loved best, he minded it not, being wholly bent to encounter *Maximus*, and make him repent of his threatening Bravado's. True it is, he did not see any appearance of any danger that could happen to those fair and noble personages; for besides that, he did not absent himself but a short while, he was assured that whatever fortune befel him in the Combat, that they would in an especial manner be taken care of by the *Cavarians*: so that he went to the place where the grandeur of his courage call'd him, without taking so much as one of his Friends along with him, not believing that a *Roman*, such as *Maximus* was, could be guilty of treachery. Nor would he return to the Queen, for fear lest the disturbance of his countenance might make her suspect a design which honour oblig'd him to keep secret; besides that, he was ashamed to appear before Ladies at a time that he was to go seek an enemy that had sent him such a lofty challenge. Nor was he far distant from his adversary, but *Gildon* was extremely surpris'd, when instead of *Maximus* he beheld a Stranger, whose Physiognomy he had never seen, nor was he a *Roman*. His proportion was tall, and there was to be seen in his countenance a wild fierceness, mingled with grief and melancholy. This unknown person no sooner perceiv'd *Gildon*, and understood who he was, but looking upon him with a kind of villainous satisfaction to himself: *I am overjoyed*, said he, *that my plot has so far taken to Maximus's advantage; and that after it has been my good fortune to proclaim Maximus Emperour at Vienna, I shall be yet more happy to put Gildon into his hands.* It may be, (replied my Master, briskly drawing his Sword) *you will not so easily accomplish your design; for Gildon knows how rather to die honourably than—— We would let thee die,* (said the Stranger, interrupting him) *but as we have no need of it we must preserve thee, notwithstanding thy pretended generosity.*

Upon these words, eight or ten men, who lay hid in a little Thicket of Owers and Poplars, rush'd out to encompass and apprehend him; my Master got his back to a Tree, and while he defended himself by the assistance of the Tree, and with his Buckler, the impatient Stranger commanded his Assassins not to spare him, but to kill him whatever advantage they lost by his death. And certainly they had executed their cruel command, when on a sudden the Island began to ring with the noise of several cries, calling out for *Gildon* to come to the assistance of Queen *Octavia*, whom they had taken away. Upon which more than twenty *Gauls* in search of their Commander, came running from several parts to the place where their help was required; so that the Stranger seeing so many got together, and perceiving that the fair prey which he chiefly aim'd at, was already seized, he made all the haste he could to be gone, and with his company presently got into certain Boats that lay about a slight shot off, and immediately commanding them to row with all their might, by the force of their Oars, and the rapidness of the Stream, the perfidious Traytors soon got out of sight. Immediately *Gildon* ran to the place where he had left the Queen of *Albion*, but she was gone, nor was it possible for him to pursue those Ravishers, there not being a Boat to be had, being always us'd to pass the River in a great Ferry-Boat, for *Octavia's* better convenience, who always rode in her Chariot: so that he could only abandon himself to a remedyless grief, enduring at the same time that which he rightly judg'd you would endure upon the sad tydings of so cruel an accident. Unutterable were his lamentations, without taking the least notice of his wounds, nor could we have got him out of the Island, had we not laid before him the impossibility to recover the Queen, and the danger we were in, lest the enemy, of whose cunning contrivances we had so sad experiments, should have sown the seeds of Sedition and Rebellion among the *Cavarians*. *Gildon* gave little ear to us at first, but we press'd the same things so often over and over, and urg'd them with so many arguments, that at length we prevailed with him to return to the City. Thither he caused one of the Assassins to be brought, who being run through the Body, could not follow the rest of his company: they were about to take care of his wounds, but the remembrance of his crime, and the presence of death which he saw before his eyes, caused him to put by the charitable hands of those that were busie to dress his hurts: *Suffer a miserable wretch to die,* (cry'd he, with a disturbance that appear'd something terrible) *leave a Parricide forlorn, that has assisted the murderer of his Sovereign, and who also came to assist him to carry away the Queen of Britain; that innocent Princess was destin'd to the same barbarous end as her Father, had not the passion of Constantine and Maximus preserv'd her, and had he not found it necessary for him to make use of Octavia to shelter him from the Arms of those two Lovers.* How! cry'd

cry'd Gildon, was it *Gerences* that commended me to be slain, and who at this time detains the Queen of Albion in his power? " Upon that Exclamation the Stranger beholding my Master, with all the earnestness he could, and discerning him by his face; " Yes, answered he, " it was *Gerences* himself, who the other day over-perswaded the scrupulous *Maximus*, and " caused him to write that short letter, which I delivered into your hands. The *Roman* " was very unwilling, to set his hand and name to a counterfeit contrivance, so little conformable to the virtues of his Nation. But the *Britain* who understood that you were " always diligent to attend upon *Octavia*, laid the matter so convincingly before him, that " there was but that one way to seduce you from your care, that *Maximus* consented at last " to send that pretended challenge, on condition that the Queen of *Albion* should be seized " on, nor be in the hands of any but *Romans*, and that they should carry her no where but " into a City of the Empire. *Gerences* was resolved to manage the enterprise himself, but " for fear of failing in his word to *Maximus*, whose friendship he sought mainly to preserve, " and for fear of terrifying *Octavia* with his odious presence, which might make her resolve " rather to dye than yield to force, he order'd *Maximus*'s soldiers to seize the Princess, while " he himself drew you into the Ambuscado, which he had laid for your surprise.

The Stranger had striven so much to disburthen his heart, that his weakness increased upon him, and as if he had only stayed to finish his relation, that he might merit by the confession of his crime, to dye without infamy, he expir'd just as he had uttered this Relation.

You are also to understand, (said Gildon's Officer pursuing his information) that as I was just upon my departure from *Avignon*, there was brought to the City a young Virgin, who was hurt in the bustle wherein *Octavia* was surpriz'd, whom at the entreaty of the Princess, they had sent back in a supernumerary Boat which they made no use of. Gildon went to visit that Virgin, who inform'd him of several circumstances, which it will be superfluous to repeat: She gave him also a Letter, which the Queen of *Albion* had recommended to her care, that it should be delivered to your Majesty.

The King greedily opening the Letter which Gildon's Squire presented him, not without eminent signs of disturbance, read these words.

The Princess *Octavia* to King *Constantine*.

I Am once more violently forc'd away, I am upon the *Rhofne*, but whither they intend to carry me, or how I shall be able farther to keep a correspondence, as yet I cannot understand. However, Sir, I must tell you this, that it is absolutely necessary for you, to accept of the Crown of the King my Father, that the *Romans* may be sensible of that union of the two people which they so much stand in fear of. What will you not be able to obtain with so formidable a power? Will they refuse a Princess that has no more Kingdoms to give, and whom you may perhaps cause them to restore by open force? Farewell, I shall be surpris'd if I write longer, only do what I order you, and whatever alteration shall befall me in my fortune, be you assured that no change shall happen in my heart.

Would to God Madam, (cry'd the enamour'd Prince, killing the last words of the Letter) would to God you would preserve this constancy for the unfortunate *Constantine*, you would render him the most glorious among men; nor should all the forces of the West, hinder me from wresting out of *Honorius*'s hands a treasure, which is of a value infinitely beyond his Empire: I must succeed *Gratian* because you command it, however I shall not ascend the Throne but only to establish it, and then quit it again to fix you there.

Having spoken in this manner, he considerably rewarded Gildon's Squire, and sent him back to his Master with a most obliging answer, and a positive promise to be upon the banks of the *Rhofne*, with an Army sufficient to rescue *Octavia*, and defend the *Cavarians* from all the forces of *Rome*. To this purpose he coveted so passionately to repass into *Gallia*, inasmuch that that desire, joyned to the resolution which he had to obey the Princess, and suffer himself to be Crowned King of Great *Britain*, obliged him to hasten the Ceremony, and to omit that sumptuous magnificence, that ordinarily displays it self upon such occasions. For besides that he would not admit of any pomp, or pastimes in the Absence of his Princess, he knew that such tedious preparations, would too long delay his journey. He was no sooner in a posture to depart, but *Lisus* and my self attended him with five or six hundred,

dred, of the young Nobility among the *Piſis* and *Hibernians*: For we eaſily engaged them to follow the King, the Attractive Charms of whoſe perſon and virtues, had obliged to the ſame duty, above a thouſand *Britains* of moſt eminent quality, not only in *Troynovant*, but had drawn them alſo from all the Provinces of *Albion*. Thus he might with more ſafety be abſent from his Kingdoms, having in his Army ſo many hoſtages, of the moſt conſiderable quality and families in the three Nations. At that time there was a report ſpread abroad, that after the death of the Empreſs *Thermaſtia*, the daughter of *Stilicon* that proud favourite, and his Son *Eucherius* were both ſlain by order of the Emperour: That the *Franks*, the *Burgundians*, and the *Vandals*, threatned the Provinces of the Empire with a terrible invaſion, that *Alaric* ſeeing that *Honorius* made no haſt before the concluſion of the Truce, to give him that ſatisfaction which he had promiſed, prepar'd to re-enter *Italy*, and that the *Gauls* trembled at the very name of *Conſtantine*. It was further rumour'd, that the *Romans* had no other hopes than in the valour of *Conſtance*, and that it was upon him only that they had caſt their eyes, upon whom to confer the charge of repelling that inundation of many nations, which was ready to pour it ſelf forth upon the Weſtern Empire. And indeed *Conſtantine* believed, that the Enemy had but only that perſon to oppoſe againſt him; and not imagining that other Captains alone, could retard the liberty of *Oſiavia*, he thought of nothing elſe but of fighting with him for that fair Lady, reſolving to ſtay for *Conſtance*, and with him to put the ſhare of the greateſt part of *Europe*, to the deciſion of one Battel. So ſoon as he came into *Gallia*, and had joyned himſelf with Prince *Conſtant*, neither Armies nor Towns could put a ſtop to his Conqueſts, ſo that in a ſhort time he reduced under his obedience, all thoſe Countries that acknowledged *Narbonne* for their Capital City, he overthrew *Maximus* again, and enlarged his Dominions to the very Province of the *Romans*. After this, hearing that *Jovian*, who was the Emperour's Lieutenant in the Country of the *Vivarians*, made great preparations, and that the Queen of *Albion* was in *Arles*. He ſent *Conſtant* againſt thoſe Forces which the *Romans* were raiſing, and he himſelf marched directly toward that City, within whoſe walls he believed all his happineſs to lye incloſed. Before he began the ſiege, he gave a viſit to *Gildon* whom he found abed, where a deep melancholy had kept him for ſome months, as being tainted with the venom of a ſlow-working poiſon. It is not neceſſary for me to repeat the diſcourſe that paſſed at that enterview, between thoſe two afflicted Lovers, nor the particulars of a war that has made ſo loud a noiſe and were perhaps no leſs worthy to be taken notice of, than many others with which I am obliged to entertain your attention more exactly. Know then Madam that *Jovian* came over to our party, in regard that he, though the Lieutenant of *Honorius*, had made thoſe levies with no other intent, than to take Advantage of thoſe troubles, and to uſurp the ſoveraignty of thoſe Countries of which he was then Governour. And that *Conſtant* had no ſooner treated with him in the King's name, but he marched for *Lyons* to drive *Maximus*, and *Geronces* out of that place. Where we underſtood ſoon after, that valiant Prince being aſſiſted by *Dagobert* and *Antenor*, had ſo vigorouſly purſued them, that *Geronces* no longer finding any Sanctuary for his beloved Princeſs, adviſed *Maximus* to quit *Gallia*, and to retire into *Spain* among his Relations, who were in a condition to relieve him. It was reported that the *Roman* was unwilling to hearken to him at firſt, for fear of abſenting himſelf too far from *Oſiavia*, till *Geronces* laid before him, that he could no longer hold out in thoſe Provinces, where having taken upon him the Title of Emperour; the *Romans* were no leſs his Enemies than the *Britains*. That inſtead of being able to defend the young Queen of *Albion*, he would never get her out of their hands, unleſs he made uſe of Stratagem rather than open force. That he himſelf would undertake, to have the Princeſs conveyed into *Spain*, provided that *Maximus* would conſent, to let him carry Queen *Loocrinia* along with him. He added entreaties to the Arguments which he had urged, and ſo well made out the intereſt which he had, to diſpoſe of *Oſiavia* at his pleaſure, that *Maximus* yielded, and marched directly for the *Pyrenian* Hills. *Geronces* ſtayed among the *Gauls* to plague *Conſtantine*, and while that victorious Prince made all things yield to his Conquering Arms, the perfidious Traitor fought by all the plots and contrivances that he could deviſe, to overturn and ruine his propriety. You have heard Madam, that the valiant King of the *Britains* took *Arles*, that afterwards he marched againſt the famous City of the *Maſſilians*, which after a very ſtout reſiſtance he carried by force; ſo that he was abſolute Maſter of all thoſe fair Provinces, from one Sea to the other. But perhaps you may not know theſe circumſtances, which it is neceſſary for me to relate, that you may the better apprehend the ſequel of my diſcourſe. Beſides that I am oblig'd to let you know, that my invincible Maſter never behav'd himſelf more valiantly than in that memorable Battel, where the *Britains* were forced to yield to the *Romans*, where *Conſtantine* however could not be ſaid to be vanquish'd.

quish'd by them, as our enemies themselves confess'd. Know then, Madam, that my Master did not find in *Arles* the fair Princess whom he sought, but understanding that she was in the strong and stately City of the *Massilians*, he presently besieged that place of importance, and took it by plain force before the *Romans* could relieve it. But what could he not perform when he fought for *Oëavia's* liberty? So that at last Fortune ceases to persecute him, granting him at length the precious reward of all his hopes. In brief, he delivered his fair Queen, he saw her, he threw himself at her feet, and did her homage for all the Crowns that he wore, and return'd her thanks for all the victories he had won. He was contented to find with her the faithful *Gadens*, and a most beautiful Lady nam'd *Merofida*, whom, as I have told you, *Gildon* passionately lov'd; but while he was transported with joy, and thought of nothing else but how to divert his Princess, and conduct her safe into her Dominions, he had advice that the famous *Constance* was marching toward him through the *Alexandrines* and *Lucernois*, with all the speed he could make, and an Army of fifteen thousand Horse, and sixty thousand Foot.

Upon this news the King of the *Britains* prepar'd to receive the Vanquisher of many Kings like an experienc'd Captain, and to make good against him the renown which he had won in all other enterprises. On the other side *Constance* confess'd that he had to deal with the most terrible enemy of the *Roman* people: That *Constantine* was more formidable than all the *Alarics*, *Radagaises* or *Acaces*; and that the *Britains*, the *Picts*, and the *Hybernians* were more to be fear'd under their valiant Prince, than the *Goths*, *Herules*, or *Vandals* under any of their Captains. These two renowned Warriours having an extraordinary esteem one for another, and knowing the importance of the War which they undertook, which all the West look upon as the decision of its Empire, resolv'd to display to the view of all *Europe* all the knowledge of their Art which they had acquir'd by long experience. In the mean while *Constantine* minding above all things the safety of the Queen of *Albion*, and judging that if *Constance* got the better, the City of *Massilia* would be sooner attacked than *Arles*, convoyed *Oëavia* to the latter place, breaking down the Bridges, and cutting down several great Trees in the way, to hinder *Constance's* march. He also reinforced the Garrison of *Arles*, the Government whereof he gave to a certain *Gaul*, named *Ergastus*, whom *Jovian* had sent to him with four thousand Horse, during the Siege of that place. Several Skirmishes pass'd with different success, but with equal Generosity; for the two Generals always spoke kindly one of another, and sent their Prisoners every day back without ransom. At this time also *Gildon* came and joyn'd with us, but having great contests with *Antenor* and *Dagobert*, the grounds whereof it would be too tedious to relate, the two *Gauls* not receiving that satisfaction which they expected from *Constantine*, and which perhaps they had as little reason to pretend to, treated underhand with *Constance*, and revolted to the *Romans* with above ten thousand men. *Constantine* was somewhat vex'd to see that Fortune began already to concern her self in a war, the event whereof he would have had to depend only upon courage and military experience; and therefore knowing his Adversary, who had receiv'd so great an advantage, was strong enough before, besides that for his valour he was to be compared to one of the greatest Captains among the ancient *Romans*, he resolv'd not rashly to hazard a Battel. To that purpose he remov'd his Camp more than once, and amus'd his Enemies with Skirmishes, resolving to stay till *Jovian* came to joyn his Forces with his, according to his promise. *Constance* on the other hand, before he would hazard a Battel upon which he knew the fortune of the Empire did depend, he survey'd all the advantages of the ground himself, and march'd from place to place, that he might seize the most advantageous Posts to encamp his Army. But hearing of fresh Supplies that were coming to us, he considered no longer, but fought all ways to provok us to fight before *Jovian* came with his Recruits, which were all ready to march in the Country of the *Vivarians*. The fierce *Constantine*, more eager to seek than avoid all opportunities of giving Battel, suffering himself to be led by the Grandeur of his Courage, would no longer delay time, but resolv'd to receive his Enemies like a person who had been accustomed to such accidents, and yet to vanquish.

But, Madam, before I describe to you this famous Battel, that has made such a noise in the world, I am oblig'd to advertise you that I shall speak no more but what the *Romans* confess themselves, nor should I relate those particulars which are known to all the world, were it not my aim to shew you that *Constantine* was always invincible; but only now the Lover of the Queen of *Albion* lost the *Britains* the victory, that he might see whither his love call'd him; for the Prince understanding the Evening before the Battel, that *Oëavia* was extraordinary sad, he was so little Master of his passion that he could not refrain from going to visit his pensive fair one: he took *Gildon* along with him, and found her in so deep

deep a melancholy, as if she already had had some foreknowledge of those misfortunes that afterwards befel us. *Constantine* remain'd a long time with her to comfort her, while the skillful *Constance* shrewdly observing that our wonted fierceness did not gladden in our eyes as formerly, and that there was not that diligence in observing orders as used to be, he presently conjectur'd that either *Constantine* was not in the Camp, or else that he was sick; and therefore losing no time, he spent the whole night in passing his Army over a small River, the passage whereof, it was afterwards said, that *Constantine* ought to have disputed. The next morning the Prince was truly surpris'd at the diligence of the *Romans*, and was so far from staying for their coming, that he resolv'd to advance and charge them. To which purpose he march'd directly towards them in very good order; he commanded the right Wing himself, the left he gave to me, and the Cavalry to Prince *Constant* and *Gildon*, who signaliz'd themselves against *Taxander* and *Castinus*, who had the same command in the Enemies Army. The valiant *Artabure* who led their left Wing, was opposite to *Constantine*; and I had the honour for some time to sustain the first onsets of *Constance*, who had reserv'd the Right Wing to himself. But, Madam, without rehearsing circumstances which you cannot be ignorant of, I shall only speak of the two chief Commanders. Those two great men fought at the head of their Army, they observ'd and labour'd to take all advantages; and by and by thundering in among their Enemies, brought destruction and terror along with them wherever they went. In vain the veterane Soldiers kept their Ranks clos'd, in vain they endeavour'd to preserve their wonted reputation, those furious Warriours fell in among them, overturning and overwhelming all before them; so that finding no resistance worthy their valour, they fought every where the one for the other, animated rather with emulation, than exasperated with envy or animosity. After they had chang'd their Horses three or four times, they found each other, for they knew one another by the sumptuousness of their Arms, though far better by the blows which they both bestow'd among the crowd; and after a loud challenge they began a most terrible encounter. They were quickly wounded both, while the astonish'd Spectators beheld whatever agility and strength could do, when seconded by a great courage. In short, it seem'd as if fortune had taken delight to make these two famous Captains meet, both young, both well limbed, and always Victors; and that for the first time they should both retire, neither of them being Conquerours; for they were parted by a great Body of Cavalry, and the day being at an end before the Fight, darkness veil'd the splendour of many noble actions. Both Armies rested all night in the Field, but the two Captains, instead of taking repose, spent all that time in looking after their several Commands.

While these two Heroes labour without intermission, while their eyes are every where, while they promise their Soldiers, and visit the Officers, give me leave, Madam, to return to the City of *Arles*, and to discover to you the Treasons of *Gerences*, instead of keeping your thoughts in suspense, which may give you afterwards a needless surprize. That perfidious person, after he had try'd all ways in vain to ruine the King of the *Britains*, went into the Country of the *Vivarians*, and by vertue of his money and his confidence soon got a reputation with *Jovian*. When he found that he had gain'd upon his affections, he inspir'd him with great hopes, offering him his wealth and his life, and solemnly promising to tie himself to his fortune: *You see*, said he, *that the fortune of the Empire wholly relies upon the valour of Constance, and that the courage of Constantine is the only support of three or four Nations: and being they were never vanquish'd, but have an ambition beyond measure, you may be sure they will fight it out to the last man, and to the last drop of their blood: let them destroy one another, but as for your part never think of taking one side or other, nor of acknowledging any Superiour, but now you have so favourable an opportunity to make your self the greatest Potentate in Europe, never lose it. You may easily accomplish your design by seising upon the Empire, after a Battel that has exhausted all their Forces. And as to what lies in me, I promise you, and my life shall answer for me, to help you to espouse the Queen of Albion; she is at Arles, Ergastus, who is your creature, commands that City: you need do no more than write to him, that I may have liberty to act, and in a little while I will bring you hither the young Queen Octavia: why should I persuade you to a thing where I must take all the pains, and run all the danger, did I not foresee the fortunate success of my design, and afterwards expect a reward answerable to the importance of my services?*

To these arguments he added many others, as since that we understood, and press'd so home a thing that was plausible enough of it self, that *Jovian*, perswaded of the truth, embraced him a thousand times, returned him a thousand thanks, and quite transported with joy, committed to his care the whole management of that great design. The perfidious Traytor, ravish'd with delight that he had laid so good a foundation, departed for *Arles*,

Arles, gave *Jovian's* Letters to *Ergastus*, and got into the City at the same time that *Constantine* entered into the Province of the *Romans*. The *Britain* and the *Gaul* conferr'd together; and after they were agreed they took such measures, that *Geronces*, as you shall see, deceiv'd those whom he seem'd to serve.

The Evening that the two Generals were constrain'd to retire without any advantage to either party, *Geronces* told *Ergastus*, that it was time to execute the design which they had taken in hand: *However*, said he, *it behoves us to tarry till the two Armies are engaged, and that we have found a way to abuse Constantine, should be understand that we are about to carry away Octavia, or should be so imprudent as to quit the Fight to rescue a Mistress*. Upon which, the Impoitor seeming to be in a study, presently all of a sudden said he, *I find it very convenient that we should separate our selves, and that one of us carry away Octavia with a small company, and as it were carelessly without any noise, while the other attends Merofida with a considerable Convoy, that by the number of her Train she may be taken for Octavia; and that if we be followed, which I do not much fear, the main attempt may be to deliver the Gaul*.

Ergastus had no sooner consented to what *Geronces* propos'd, but the crafty *Britain* gave him his choice which party to lead, with an extraordinary seeming ingenuity; but afterwards pursuing his first advice, *Yet*, said he, *methinks it would be much better for me to have the charge of conducting Octavia to the place where we have appointed to meet; for being that I understand the British Language, as having liv'd a great while in the Island, it will be hard for any person to give the Princess any advice but what I shall understand: besides that, there will be less wondering to see you go well attended out of a City where you are Governour, than that a Stranger should lead a great party, believing that you act by some private order of Constantine*.

At last, *Madam*, *Ergastus* and *Geronces* agree in all things, while the two Generals expect the approach of day with an impatience which they could not moderate. They no sooner perceiv'd the very first dawn of light, but they made the large plain which was covered with their Armies, to ring with the noise of their warlike Instruments. *Constantine* rides from Rank to Rank, encouraging the Soldiers with different speeches, fram'd according to the temper of the several Nations, laying before them how ill it would become them in one Battel to lose the honour which they had purchased in so many notable Encounters; that there remain'd but one more proof of their valour to tame a haughty power that sought to impose a yoke upon all the Nations of the West; while he the more to encourage them, rides with his face open among the Soldiers, many Voluntiers single themselves out from both parties, challenge one another, fight and signalize their valour at the head of the Armies. But the eager *Constantine* aims to give the first onset; so that three thousand Archers of the *Picts*, and the same number of *Irish* Slingers had no sooner discharged a Shower of Darts and Stones, but he thundered in upon the Enemy with a Body of four thousand *British* Horse. And now, *Madam*, observe the effect of *Geronces's* Treasons; for at that very time that pernicious Traytor advertises *Constantine* by several Messengers, that the Garrison of *Arles* had carried away *Octavia*, to the end the enamoured Prince, to rescue the person whom he only ador'd; might quit the Field, and lose the Battel. He was in hopes also that the King would pursue *Ergastus*, and that the *Gaul* might be kill'd in the Encounter, or at least lose so many of his men, as not to be able to rescue out of his hands the lovely prey which he was carrying into *Spain*. In the mean while, the wicked *Geronces* makes all the haste he could toward the *Pyrenean* Mountains, and all the way he pleases himself with a spiteful content, continually to behold the fair Queen of *Albion*, while her destiny depended upon his will; nor is he less satisfied to see himself protected by the Arms of *Constantine* and *Ergastus*, and to think how variously his plots would affect the King of the *Britains*, and *Jovian's* Lieutenant; nor was the Traytor deceiv'd; for *Constantine* was struck as with a Thunderbolt when he receiv'd the news. Presently looking upon that misfortune as the greatest that ever besel him! *Alas!* (he cryed with a doleful ejaculation) *To what extremity am I reduced? Must I quit the Field at such a remarkable time as this? Ought I to abandon my Princess when it lies in my power to rescue her, when she reaches out her hand for help, and for my sake refuses a most potent Monarchy? Ingrateful Prince, unfaithful Lover, darest thou presume to deliberate? Does it not behove thee to sacrifice thy life, thy ambition, and thy honour it self, to flee where thy love and thy acknowledgment call thee? Thou ventur'st no more than one Battel, the event whereof is uncertain; but it is certain that thou losest Octavia, that thou leavest a Princess whom thou adorest be taken away, a divine person that can only make thee happy, and who has given thee so many transcendent proofs of her affection*.

Immediately coming to a final determination, he put himself at the head of a great Body

of light Horſe, commanding the old Soldiers to make good that poſt which he quitted, and where the greateſt fires of the Battel was like to be. He exhorted them in few words vi- gorouſly to ſtand the ſhock of the Enemy, then giving them to underſtand that he was go- ing upon a very conſiderable enterpriſe, he turn'd off to the left hand, and poſted after the Ravifhers of *Oſtavia*, taking along with him for their guide, a certain *Gaul* who had precifely related to him every circumſtance of his miſfortune.

In the mean while ſuch a Captain as *Conſtance*, was not wanting to make uſe of all thoſe Advantages, which the abſence of his Adverſary might afford him, though there follow- ed a great ſlaughter on both ſides. Prince *Conſtant*, *Liſca*, *Gildon* and my ſelf, ſtood firm for a good while, before the formidable Commander of the *Romans*, but at length we ſaw that our Troops, in vain oppos'd the progreſs of his proſperity: For they being no lon- ger encouraged by their General, began to ſlacken in their reſiſtance, and afterwards ſeeing their Ranks grow thin they gave way, and ſoon after betook themſelves to a univerſal flight. During the rout the deſperate *Conſtantine* return'd, having killed *Ergaſtus* and cut in pieces his Convoy, without delivering *Oſtavia*. He no ſooner perceived the diſorder of his Troops, but he ſtopt thoſe that were flying, and with threats and prayers he again rallied above twelve thouſand, with which he renewed the Fight, and as if he were unwilling to outlive the loſs of the Battel, and the loſs of his fair Queen, he threw himſelf into the thickeſt of his enemies, where he did wonders paſt belief. But after he had fought for the great *Con- ſtance*, after he had fought with Prince *Taxander*, wounded the fierce *Artabure*, overturn'd *Antenor* and *Ariobindus*: he took pity of the poor men that followed him, and not being willing that they ſhould any longer, expoſe themſelves to be cut down by number, under the leading of ſo valiant a Commander, he retreated to *Arles* before that numerous Army, with ſo much experience and reſolution, inſomuch that *Conſtance* himſelf confeſſed, that few victories were to be compared with that admirable retreat. Nevertheleſs the afflicted *Conſtantine* paſſed the following night, in a condition to be very much lamented, the defeat of the *Britains* ſadly tormenting his mind. But as his heart could not accuſe him for any thing, and that the enamoured Prince could not repent, for having forſaken all to purſue the Ravifhers of *Oſtavia*, all his other grief gave way to that which he felt, for not having reſcued that moſt incomparable Princeſs. He complained of that miſfortune in ſuch ex- preſſions, as would have melted the hardeſt heart in the world: And it was with much ado that he would ſuffer his wounds to be taken care of, while far from taking any reſoſe, he ſurrendred up his heart a prey to Melancholy. In a word the night appeared as dreadful, as the day had been unfortunate, and no ſooner did darkneſs give way to the morning light, but the *Romans* appeared ready to inveſt the Town on all ſides, which was ſtrangely alarm'd at the ſight: Nor were the Soldiers themſelves a little ſurpriſed, having no more than juſt time to breath. *Conſtantine* on the contrary appear'd to be leſs ſad, and immediately pre- pared to make a vigorous ſally. He was ſo well beloved, that all the whole City oppoſed his deſign, but the valiant Prince joyning to the grandeur of his Courage, a kind of con- tempt of his life, would give ear neither to entreaty nor advice. But having compelled *Gildon*, who ſain would have followed him, to take charge of the Town where he had a love- ly Miſtreſs to defend, he took a review of the Troops, and choſe out thoſe that were in the beſt condition to ſerve. And ſo leaving the infantry with *Gildon*, he put himſelf at the head of four thouſand Horſe, and having divided the command thereof between Prince *Conſtant*, *Liſca*, *Gildon* and my ſelf, he ſallied forth accompanied with all the good wiſhes of the people. He was no ſooner come within a flight ſhot of the Enemy, but there appeared to be ſomething more great than ordinary in his looks, in his countenance, and in all his Actions: and he no ſooner ſpied certain ſquadrons of the *Romans*, but he gave them a brisk charge and cauſed them to give way, after they had made but a feeble reſiſtance. *Caſtinus* made haſt to their relief, but my Maſter having thrown him to the ground at the very firſt ſhock, he ſoon broke through the Cavalry and came up to the body of the Army. At that time *Taxander* and *Ariobindus* turn'd about to gain the Crupper of us, and to cut us off from the City, while *Conſtance* himſelf endeavours to hemm us in upon all the other ſides. Prince *Conſtant* for ſome time ſtood firm before him, while *Liſca* and I endeavour'd to repel the o- ther two. In the mean time the furious *Conſtantine* had his eyes and his Arms every where and wherever he came he carried the victory, as if it had been fix'd to his dreadful Sword. With one blow he ſlew *Tanaxilla*, with one blow he wounded *Dagobert*, whom he ſpar'd afterwards when he knew him: And to ſay all in a few words, he cut to pieces whatever made head againſt him. While he performs theſe deeds of wonder, the great *Conſtance* in- cens'd at the reſiſtance, wherewith *Conſtant* oppoſed his paſſage, turns upon him only all that valour which had been fatal to ſo many Kings, and gave him ſo weighty a blow upon his

his head, that the Prince being stund and wounded, fell between his Horses feet: which some of the *Britains* perceiving, laid him upon a Buckler, and carried him to the City, the generous *Roman* not opposing their design. At the same time *Taxander* slew *Lisox*, and *Armbindus* and I being dangerously wounded, weary and feeble fell from our hortes, inso-much that the rest of the Horsemen fled, and left my Master all alone. The Prince looked round about him, and finding himself almost quite forsaken, in the midst of above fifty thousand Soldiers, his Loife dying under him, he rimibly leap'd from his back, and instead of being discouraged, he felt his heart strengthened with a greater resolution at the sight of a danger so terrible. The undaunted Champion covers himself with his Buckler, and with a heap of bodies that lay dead at his feet, and deals such terrible blows on every side, that none durst come near him, so that they were contented to keep aloof off and shoot at him, every one hoping to have the honour to kill that great and valiant Prince. However he avoided or received upon his shield, the greatest part of the blows, and very fortunately for himself: For as he stood defending himself in such a wonderful manner, the great *Constance* comes to the place himself. No sooner had he observ'd what had passed, but he chased at those of his own men, that seemed to be the most eager, and commanded them to retire. He spake with so much authority, that they soon obeyed: when the Generous *Roman* turning himself toward my Master, and addressing his speech to him with an aspect that shewed nothing of an Enemy, *Great King*, he cryed, *continue invincible: For we are so far from disputing with you, a Title which is so much your due, that we rather aim at the preservation of a glorious life, which others seek to destroy after a manner so beneath the honour of our Nation.* The fierce *Constantine*, more ready to run through fire and water to meet death, than to yield to the strength of an Enemy, was dilarm'd by obliging words, but not enduring to be overcome in generosity, no more than in greatness of courage; *If you are the great Constance*, he made answer, *I yield my self to you, for it is no shame to yield to your valour, and the fortune of such a great person.* Afterwards not contented to have testified his acknowledgment in these words, he presented his Sword to his generous Benefactor. The *Roman* presently alighted, and accepted with an extraordinary civility, the present which my Master offered him. *As the Emperour's Lieutenant*, said he, *I receive the Sword which you give me, but as a person that knows what to pay to a Prince of your worth, I return you the Sword of Constance.* And upon that he presented to my Master a rich Sword, the Hilt whereof was no less remarkable for the workmanship, than for the precious Stones with which it glittered all over.

Those two great persons having viewed one another more exactly, were strangely surprized, and both seemed to be prepossessed with an esteem each for other, and by virtue of their merit, which produced a quick and powerful effect, they both felt in their souls a mutual disposition, to enter into a strict reciprocal Amity. And they would have immediately shown some testimonies thereof, but that *Constance* found it more convenient to take care of *Constantine*, carrying him to his Tent, there to have his wounds searched. He rode all along by his side and never left him, till he had recommended him to the most skilful of all his Chirurgeons. At length he gave orders for the wounded to be dressed, and the dead to be buried: And I am obliged to acknowledge that I was as kindly and generously used there, as if I had been among my relations in *Armorica*. Nor did *Gildon* take long time to consider, but made his own Articles: for neither could the King help him, nor could he look for any relief, besides that he found that the breaches which *Constantine* had made before, were not well repair'd, and that he was a Conquerour that came with a numerous, and well disciplin'd Army to besiege the Town. *Constance* would not enter into the City without *Constantine*, where he gave him the most convenient Apartment in the Town, and caused him to be serv'd and attended, as a great and powerful Monarch: *Constant* and I caused our selves to be carried to my Master's Quarters, but whatever we could say, or whatever civility *Constance* shewed him; that afflicted Lover made no other answer, but in sighs and tears, evidently testifying the marks of that profound melancholly, occasion'd by *Octavia's* being carried away. *Constance*, who all this while thought that the ill success of the Battel, had been the reason why he looked so sad, began to comfort him in such Language, as he thought proper for that occasion. The King full of acknowledgment, and charm'd with that manner of proceeding, thought himself, obliged to let *Constance* understand, that it was not the success of the *Romans*, that was the cause of his disturbance: and thereupon by degrees he told him the Adventures of his life, as I have related them to your Majesty: Not but that he slightly pass'd over those passages, that related to his own Actions, so far from boasting or vain glory, that he rather endeavoured to conceal them all that he could. Nevertheless *Constance* knew how to understand his virtue for all his modesty,

and admiring such a croud of virtues, he could not forbear from making new offers to the Hero that possessed them. *Sir*, said he, *I am a Subject of Honorius, I have no priviledgè to dispose of a great King; whom the fortune of war hath made my prisoner, but what is there that may not be done, for the renowned Constantine's sake? I will endeavour peace between the Emperour and your self, which I doubt not to accomplish, in regard that the Emperour loves his own quiet, that you are generous, and that some regard will be therefore had by both for my mediation. You shall reign peaceably over the Picts, the Britains, and Hibernians, you shall also quietly succeed your Father in his Kingdom, only you shall restore to the Romans, the Conquests which you have made in Gallia. For the name of Emperour, which I do not believe you have any design to accept of, having already refused it; I believe that being of such an illustrious descent, and possessing of so many great Kingdoms, that you will not make any great scruple to dissemble with a title which being not lawfully purchased, neither increases your revenue nor your power. In the mean while, since they have convey'd away the fair Queen of Britain out of your power, and seeing that the loss of her is the only cause, of that severe affliction which torments your mind, make haste, *Sir*, and pursue Octavia's Ravishers, as soon as your health will give you leave. You are free, and if Honorius be incens'd, or accuses me for having abused the Authority which he gave me, I will throw my self at his feet, and present him my head for the reparation of my offence. Ah! 'Tis too much,* (cry'd the King of the Britains, transported with admiration and acknowledgement) yet shall it never be said, that the great Constance ever lost the favour of his Emperour, for the ingratitude of Constantine. I accept the liberty which you give me, since it may conduce to the reestablishment of my Princess: But, *Sir*, I engage my word, both as a King and as a Prince that loves his honour, that so soon as I shall have rescued the Queen of Albion, you shall then again be the Master of my destiny, while I surrender my self a Captive to Honorius, if he approve not the carriage of the most generous of all the Romans.

This obliging and familiar conversation, pass'd from one to t'other reciprocally; and Constance using the same freedom that Constantine had done, related to him the particulars of that passion, which he had for the Princess *Placidia*. The next morning they took into examination, such of the Inhabitants of *Arles*, as were most likely to give my Master any information, touching the manner of *Octavia's* being convey'd away, and they had no sooner describ'd the Stranger, whom they suspected to be the Author, as having often seen him in private conference with *Ergastus*, but that Constantine was fully satisfied, that it was the Traitor *Geronces*, who had been the contriver of his misfortune. Immediately a trembling Ague seiz'd his joynts, and the disconsolate Lover could not without horror call to mind, that the fair Queen was now in the clutches of *Gratian's* murthurer, and at the discretion of the most cruel of all mankind. And that which yet appear'd more terrible, and which deprived him of all comfort, was, that he neither knew nor could conjecture, in what place *Geronces* had taken sanctuary. However after he had ponder'd upon it for some time, he began to think that he was either fled to *Jovian*, or else that he had cross'd the Pyrenian to joyn with *Maximus*, who was escap'd into *Spain*. He communicated his thoughts to Constance, and the Roman having already made the same conjecture; You know, *Sir*, answered he, that the protection that *Maximus* or *Jovian* can give *Geronces*, will prove very feeble to defend him against our power, and when we shall undertake their pursuit, I do not think we shall find any great obstacle to obstruct our enterprizes. In a few days I will march against the latter of these Rebels, who has followed the example of *Maximus* in taking upon him the Title of Emperour. And then I will give the great Constantine the satisfaction, to go and vanquish his own Rival, and to exterminate the abominated *Geronces*, if he have rather made choice of *Spain*, than the *Vivarians* for his place of refuge. On the contrary, if it be from *Jovian* that he seeks his support, I promise you that I will take no less care, to send you the parricide, than to make him restore the incomparable Princess whom you admire, to the end there may be nothing wanting to make you full satisfaction, and that you may punish the most criminal of men, at the same time that you shall receive the fairest Princess in the world, as the most glorious reward of your virtue.

These Madam were Constantine's expressions, and your Majesty may be pleas'd to observe, that then Queen *Amalazontha* was but Princess of *Turingia*.

My Matter charmed with the Generosity of the Roman, Ah, *Sir*, said he, how great is the heart of Constance! How magnanimous upon all occasions! If I recover my Princess, the Battel of *Arles* will be to me a greater gain than loss; for the friendship of my Conquerour is so inestimable, that I should not be able to retaliate those obliging proofs of his kindness, though I should yield him a hundred victories.

Thus those two Heroes entertained one another for three or four days that Constance devoted to Constantine's company. But when he was oblig'd to depart, being resolv'd to march

march against *Jovian*, he could not leave the King of the *Britains* without renewing those protestations which he had already made him. *Constantine* confirm'd his, after which they tenderly embrac'd, and how great soever their courage were, they could not part without some signs of grief, as foreboding that either they should never see one another more, or never but both unfortunate.

You know, Madam, that *Constance* overthrew *Jovian*, and that he reduc'd the *Vivarians* to their obedience to *Honorius*: you have likewise heard of the fatal wound by which this renowned person was forc'd to keep his Bed in the chief City of the *Tectosages*, while *Alaric* reinvaded *Italy*, and laid it waste, while proud *Rome* became a prey to the *Goths*, and Prince *Autalpb* carried away *Placidia* as the only Beauty which he aim'd at. Therefore instead of repeating to your Majesty these accidents, I must only tell you, that my Master ordered himself to be convoyed into *Gallia Armorica*. Upon his arrival *Aldroec* was transported with several different passions; on the one side he was overjoyed at the sight of his beloved *Constantine*; but on the other side what grief could be greater than his, when he saw that dear Son of his bleeding from so many wounds, and possess'd with a most deadly melancholy? While he takes care of his recovery, promising the Chirurgeons excessive rewards, *Constantine* lies tormented with a thousand discontents. He heard no news neither from *Octavia*, nor from *Constance*, only he understood that *Alaric* was marching toward *Rome*, which did not a little vex him that he could not succour the native Country of his Friend. While his affliction increases, his Attendants gave him notice that there was a Messenger from *Lenox* that desired to be admitted into his presence: he commands him to be brought in, when the *Britain* having given him an account of the reason of his coming, presented him a Letter which *Geronces* had written to the Governour of *Troynovant*, with an intent to allure him to his party, the contents whereof were to this effect.

Geronces to Lenox:

IF thou hast an aspiring courage, and wouldst advance thy self above thy condition, *Briamenus*, whom I have sent to thee, will tell thee the way; make use of his advice, and never stand upon scruples, which amuse the vulgar. However, if *Chimeras* are more prevalent over thy Soul, than those reasons he will let thee understand by my instruction, remember at least, and let *Constantine* know, that the Daughter of *Gratian* is within my power, and shall be no better used, than as they deal with a person who belongs to my service, and that she is not to return into her Country but by my order.

The conclusion of that insolent Letter appeared so cruel to the King of the *Britains*, that he cryed out, rearing up his eyes to Heaven, *O infinite Justice, who art the Sovereign Disposer of rewards and punishments, why sufferest thou the treacheries of the most accursed among men to prosper, while thou leavest forlorn a fair and innocent Princess, whom we admire as one of the most beautiful works of Heaven? Wherefore does thy vengeance delay? Are not Geronces's crimes enormous yet enough for thee to let fall thy ponderous hand upon so wretched an offender?*

Pronouncing those words he turn'd about with a restless impatience, he sigh'd, and tears were also seen to tricle down his cheeks; and that great courage which the rudest assaults of fortune could not shake, was not proof against that despair which *Geronces's* Letter had settled in his Breast, so deeply sensible he was of whatsoever concern'd his beloved Queen: *Is it not enough*, said he, *for my fair Queen to be in the hands of her Father's Murderer? Is that divine Princess to be still put in the balance with a forlorn wretch, a wicked villain, an accomplice of Geronces? Dost thou live Constantine, while thy enemies exercise so strange a piece of tyranny? Canst thou live Constantine, when yet perhaps thy divine Octavia lies in fetters? Coward, canst thou suffer that the same person that reigns in thy soul, should be subject at the same time, to the barbarism of the most cruel among men? No, no, it shall never be said that Octavia weeps in captivity, while Constantine sees the Sun: I will cause my self to be carried into Spain, there shall my Soldiers fight, nay I will fight my self for the safety of my adored Princess.*

The violence of that commotion having redoubled the fury of his Fever, *Aldroec* and some of the principal of the Court hasted to his Chamber, but instead of comforting him, as they intended, their hearts were so mollified, that they were compelled to mingle their

tears with those of the afflicted Lover, so lively, and so well grounded were his complaints; nevertheless they attempted to divert him from the resolution which he had taken. But the amorous Prince manag'd his persuasions with so much reason, with so many entreaties, and so fix'd an obstinacy, that the King of *Armorica* yielded, knowing the temper of *Constantine*, and fearing lest the wounds of his Soul should prove more dangerous than the wounds of his Body. *Aldroec's* condescend somewhat allayed my Master's disquiet, who having understood where *Octavia* was, and not despairing to be able to set at her liberty, endeavour'd to chase from his thoughts whatever might retard the cure, that he might be in a condition himself to fight for the Queen of Great Britain. Thereupon he gave out Commissions to make new Levies; he sent for the messenger that came from *Lenox*, and having given him an answer, and some other instructions to carry back, he could not forbear to inquire of him in what manner they treated *Bramenus*. Afterwards the niceness of his thoughts went a little farther, and he imagin'd within himself that it would be some content to him to see the person that had seen *Octavia*, and that he should understand some more certain news of the Princess, if he could but have a relation from the mouth of that *Britain* himself. Wherefore in regard the Governour of *Troynovant* had not only sent the Letter which he received from *Geronces*, but had also caus'd the person that brought it to be guarded into *Armorica*, it was no difficult thing for *Constantine* to satisfy his curiosity. He therefore commanded that *Bramenus* should be brought into his presence, yet he no sooner saw him but his joynts trembled, so that he could hardly endure the sight of him; for he presently imagin'd that he was an accomplice of that offender that had sent him, and that he as well as *Geronces* had embrued his murderous hands in the blood of the Father of his Princess. The thought thereof augmented his horror, which made him hastily send *Bramenus* back, being exasperated by the same passion which had caus'd him to send for him. Nevertheless he order'd that great care should be taken of him, so excessive was his fear for *Octavia*, and so true it is that fortune is pleas'd many times to make the greatest personages sensible of her capricious humour.

In the mean time some persons zealous for my Master's repose, went to *Bramenus*, and understanding by the fierceness of his looks, and the boldness of his carriage, that threats would sooner provoke than fright him, they us'd him with all civility, made him great presents, and more considerable promises. The lustre of Gold and Silver dazled his eyesight, and having at last touch'd his heart, he appear'd less extravagant, and at length inform'd the *Britains* all the particulars of his Master's treacheries which I have related. He told them moreover that *Loecinia* had chang'd her name into that of *Nonnichia*, a name that she afterwards render'd very famous, that *Maximus* and *Geronces* had leagu'd themselves with *Didymus* and *Verodian*, who were very potent in *Spain*, and that they had already many Towns and considerable Forces. As for *Octavia*, (said he, continuing his discourse) she only thinks upon Heaven, and weeps, without taking any care to reestablish her self in her Kingdom, or accepting any of those Expedients which *Geronces* daily proffers her. Lately they told her that *Constantine* was dead, but she would believe nothing of it; they propos'd *Maximus* to her for a Husband, but she refus'd him with disdain; nor would she that they should think of undertaking to restore her to her Kingdom of *Britain*. She made them answer, that the King her Father had dispos'd of it before his death, and that she her self had also renounc'd her Title to it; and though she had still some right to it, she would chuse rather never to reign, than to be beholding to a Traytor and a Parricide. That they suffer'd those reproaches, and were so far from using violence to her that spok'd them, that they only laid before her what course she were better to take, and how she was to carry her self toward a person who was absolutely Master of her Destiny. However she took no notice of those admonitions, but rather seeming the more incens'd, she holdly answer'd that she had an entire confidence in a power far superiour to that of her tyrannical Governours. That that supreme power would at last relieve her oppress'd innocence, that it would bring down the pride of the guilty, and perhaps make use of *Constantine's* Arm to execute those acts of vengeance: nor was this all, for you shall see that her constancy proceeded farther yet: it was told her privately that her enemies would quit the interests of *Maximus*, and seek a means to restore her to *Constantine*, provided she would write and persuade the Prince that *Geronces* and *Loecinia* might enjoy the Kingdom of *Ireland*, which being an Island separated from her Territories would not be of any great importance. It shall never be, said she in answer to them, that the Daughter of the unfortunate *Gratian* ever labour'd for the settlement of that Monster which they had mention'd to her: for *Octavia* has too great an esteem for the illustrious King of *Britain*, to advise him to make any such dishonourable agreement, I had rather chuse to die, than make him commit so foul a piece of treachery, or were I capable to perform it, how have I deserv'd so much from *Constantine*, than he should take notice of my mediation?

In short, they could never make that spirit of hers to bend, that had always appear'd so mild; and Geronces has been constrain'd to seek out other ways, to satisfy Loocrinia's turbulent humour, before Constantine should be in a condition to impede his proceedings. He sent me therefore to Troynovant to advise Lenox not to lose so fair an opportunity, to advance himself to the Royal Dignity. I have discharged my commission, lying before Constantine's Lieutenant, that he had no more to do, than to receive Maximus and Geronces into his government with their forces, that the new King of Albion was not in a posture to oppose their designs, and that before he could return into Britain, they should be all three strong enough to repel more considerable Armies, than a King of Armorica could bring against them. That Maximus, to make himself more acceptable to the Britains, should marry Octavia their natural Queen, and that the Picts, considering Constantine's misfortune, would be ready to submit to Loocrinia, an active Princess and accustom'd to rule. That for his part being seconded by Maximus and Geronces, he might easily possess himself of the Kingdom of Ireland, and that hostages should be given by all parties for the security of such an important League. I strengthened with Arguments what I had to propose, I also shew'd him how easie 't would be to bring all these things to pass, notwithstanding all which the fainthearted Lenox, changing colour at my discourse, caus'd me to be seized instead of sending me away with an answer, or embracing a party that made him such advantageous propositions. I have told you my thoughts with that freedom which is not usual, for why should I conceal those things which Lenox himself can sufficiently declare, and what can I fear among the Britains, since the life of their Queen is to answer for mine,

Thus Madam, you hear the discovery which we drew from a person, that we could have hardly got to speak, but by engaging him insensibly in a discourse; Constantine having commanded that he should be treated with all civility, far from turning him off rudely. Nay the enamour'd Prince was yet more exact, for he order'd him to be convoyed to the other side of the Pyrenian Hills, into a County that was at Maximus's devotion. In the mean time he hasten'd his levies, with so much diligence throughout all Armorica, so that presently after Brauenus's departure, we had above twenty thousand men in readiness, and Lenox having sent us a far more considerable number, our Army rendezvouz'd above fifty thousand strong. Prince Constant who was very near recovered, commanded in chief: and the eager Constantine leaving his bed, but finding his strength not to serve him to ride a horseback, order'd himself to be carried in a Litter. As for my own part, being in as bad a condition, I followed my Master's example, and we were no sooner at the foot of those vast mountains, that separate Spain from Gallia, but we understood that Verodian and Didymus possess'd the tops of the Hills, and defend'd all the passes. Constantine seeing the trouble that he should have, to force an Enemy so advantageously posted, and that had besides a perfect knowledge of the Country, shew'd himself to the Soldiers, and the more to encourage them, promis'd to lead them himself.

At those words the Britains rent the Skyes with shouts of Admiration, and promis'd him to vanquish their Enemies, whatever obstructions lay in their way. They were importunate that Constant might lead them, and that the King should keep in the Rear, arguing that the most cowardly and faint-hearted, would not dare to flee nor so much as to recoyle, in the sight of such a renowned Captain, whom all the Army had in so much veneration. Constantine made answer that he knew his Soldiers too well, to have any such injurious opinion of their courage. However all the Captains redoubled their importunity to him so zealously, that he consented at last to their desire. But the fight was no sooner begun, but the generous sick man presently forsook his Litter, and by his absolute command caus'd a Horse and Arms to be brought him, and his heart sustaining his body, he ran into the front, joyned himself to Constant, and contributed with much renown to the famous victory which we obtained over Verodian and Didymus. The discomfited Enemy fled into their Country, through by-ways to us altogether unknown. But having gain'd a large plain which displayed it self at the foot of the mountain, Geronces brought them a considerable reinforcement, rallied them and retreated in good order. It was impossible for my Master without a prodigious labour and trouble, to pursue them so fast as he would have done, and therefore he sent only at first some few parties to charge and keep them in play: But not long after he us'd a far different method, for he no sooner had heard news of Octavia by the prisoners, but he resolv'd to come to a battel for the rescue of that fair Queen. He understood that Geronces was never absent from her, that Maximus and the false Nonnichia were inseparable, and that the Britain had perswaded him to approve that way, which he had made choice of to unite their interests, because it was most Advantageous to him, and made him absolute Master of the Queen of Britain's destiny. He understood that Flavian had given Maximus a retreating place in Cartagena or new Carthage. That Geronces had always re-

sided in the famous City of *Tarracon*, and that he did not depart thence, till after he had heard of the rout of *Verodian* and *Didymus*, and that thereupon he presently came to their relief, and that he carried along with him Queen *Oclavia*, guarded with a flying convoy, not daring to leave her in a City of which he was not well assured, and wherein he was unwilling to be besieged should he lose the Battel: he told this news to the principal Officers of the Army, and being still apprehensive of the danger which dayly threatened the Princess in fighting for her liberty, he made use of another Expedient, which his love infused into him: thereupon turning to his own Soldiers, and shewing the *Spaniards* to them, My Friends, he cryed, your Queen, the most amiable Queen in the world, and who deserves that all the world should serve her, is before your eyes, and by the mouth of your King desires your assistance to rescue her from the tyranny of her Enemies: she is only guarded with the miserable reliques of an Army which you have so lately vanquish'd. But among those reliques she has Lords and Tyrants that domineer over her. Will you suffer that she shall any longer remain under the cruelty of those Barbarians? Will ye suffer those remains of a frighted Army to recover heart? Or that they should presume to rally before their Victors faces? Let us charge them and finish their destruction; but let us make use neither of Dart nor Stone, nor Javelin, our Swords will be sufficient to execute our design: other weapons may be fatally dangerous, and cause us to lose more at one blow than we shall gain by all the performances of our life time, though we should thereby become Victors over all the Nations in the world.

Presently he put himself at the head of six thousand Light Horse; and for that the liberty of *Oclavia* was the principal thing he aim'd at, he left the charge of managing the Fight to Prince *Constant* and my self, while he accomplish'd the design which he had to cut off all the retreat to *Tarracon*, that they might not carry the Princess back. To which purpose he chose extraordinary Guides, promising them large rewards and recompences, upon the exactness of their fidelity. In short, to avoid all places where my Master might fall into any ambuscade, they led him a great way about, insomuch that the *Spaniards* were upon the rout, and running away when he was just ready to fall into their rore: he was immediately troubled at it, but his grief was far more excessive when he understood by the first that fled, that *Geronces* was escap'd, and drove *Oclavia's* Chariot full speed before him: that he was separated from *Verodian* and *Didymus*; who fled toward *Cesarea Augusta*, while the other took toward *Tarracon*, built by the *Scipios*. Then did the enamoured Prince spur on after the Ravishers of all his happiness, and that with such a speedy diligence, that he was oftener mingled with the *Spaniards* than guarded by his own; he let them flie on, not having leisure to fight them, as well as for that they could tell him little or nothing of the truth which he desired to know, yet having still a restless impatience, at length he pitch'd upon one, who, as he thought, might more certainly inform him, he imagined he had seen him, either in *Geronces's* company, or at least in his service, though he could not precisely call him to mind in the condition wherein he met him. That miserable wretch lying along in the high way, by the prodigious quantity of blood which he had shed, and the mortal paleness that overspread his face, made it manifest that he had but a few minutes to live. My Master, not to lose time, nor to be rude to a dying man, ask'd him very courteously and mildly in the *British* Language, whether *Geronces* were got into *Tarracon*. He is too wise to do that, (replied the wounded person, believing the Prince to have been of his party) for he knew before it came to a Battel, that if he were overcome, there were no safety for him in Towns. That *Tarracon* would not fail to treat with the Victors, and to obtain the more advantageous conditions, they would together with the Town deliver up the young Queen of *Britain* to *Constantine*. After those few words he took breath, and then making another essay, he pursued his discourse, Avoid your enemies, said he, who will be at your heels in a moment, and if you seek *Geronces*, ride on to the Sea shore, where he is ready to embarque in a Vessel which there expects him: Tell him that *Bracmenus*—— And saying that word he expired, and thereby my Master understanding the principal thing that he desired to know, put on at full speed, not staying to behold a person whom he afterwards remember'd that he had seen in *Armorica*. By and by he discovered a sumptuous Chariot, but there was no person in it, only he found that the Horses were all in a foam and water; at the sight thereof the amorous *Constantine's* heart leap'd, and therefore riding on with the same speed, he came to the Sea-side just as the Ship had put off, the vehement Prince followed a good way into the Sea, without considering the danger, and so long as *Geronces's* Followers could hear him, he promised vast rewards to them that would deliver him the Queen of *Albion*. Presently *Geronces* appears upon the Poop, and seeing that some of the Horsemen shot at him, he fetch'd out *Oclavia* and *Gadenna*, and opposed them to the Stones and Arrows, while his own men at the same time aim'd

at *Constantine*. But he forbid them to shoot, and being overjoyed to see his Princefs, he could not endure they should importune him to come out of the water, *It matters not for me whether I die or no*, said he, *provided I could see the Queen, that I could set her at liberty, and recompense the authors of her freedom.* *Olivia* altho her self, pale with tear and grief, made him a sign with her hand, so that *Constantine* was now only guided by the dictates of his love, and though he was wounded, and that his Buckler was all stuck with Darts, he had no power to think of his own safety; but there he stood crying continually to *Geronces's* people to endeavour the Princefs's preservation.

You may perhaps wonder that a Galley should stay so long in the same place, but you must know that *Geronces* finding himself to be out of all danger, had commanded them to hold water within a Bows shot of the Shore, with an intent to destroy that person who was most terrible to him of all persons in the world. In the mean time the greatest part of those miserable creatures that laboured at the Oar looked upon themselves to have now the most favourable opportunity to change their miserable being for a happy life, under the protection of a great King. To which purpose the boldest among them, to begin a general mutiny, laid hold of a Partisan. *Geronces*, who had his eyes every where, observing that action of the Slave, grew mad, and drawing a Cimiter of *Damascus* Steel, he let fall such a back blow upon the Slave's arm, that he cut it sheer off; nor was the Barbarian so contented, but with an unparallel'd inhumanity, with the bleeding arm that was cut off, he beat all the other Slaves about the head, not daring to kill them when he had so much need of their labour. After that horrible punishment he commanded them to ply their Oars, while the dejected *Constantine* was ready to die for grief. He would not take on aloud, nor comfort his heart with lamentation, as not becoming a person of his dignity and courage. And therefore having shut up his affliction in his Breast, the force of his grief became so violent, that the strength of his Body began to fail. Besides that danger, they saw him in a place where the waves were enough to overwhelm him, though the Sea were never so calm: yet could they not perswade him to turn toward the Shore, though they often repeated to him that it was for *Olivia's* preservation that he ought to look after his own. They represented to him likewise that *Geronces* would be sure to land again in some part of *Spain*, that he would not forsake neither *Locrinia* nor *Maximus*, and that there was no likelihood that a Galley should make for the Channel without convoy, when there was no necessity. Those arguments qualified his despair, being at length fully perswaded that *Geronces* would again joyn himself with his Friend and his false *Nonnichia*: nor was he deceiv'd in his judgment; for some time after we learn'd by our Spies and some prisoners that we took, that the Queen of *Britain* was in *Cartagena*: my Master was overjoyed at the news, resolving to march thither and besiege it by Sea and Land, to the end *Geronces* might have no way to escape. And for that purpose he sent Prince *Constant* to *Barcelona* to the King of the *Goths*, to crave the assistance of some Men of War, for which he offered him very advantageous satisfaction; *Autalpb* granted him more than he desired, whether it was his own Generosity, or his interest that oblig'd him to assist a King against his Rebels; or whether it were that *Placidia* having heard of the friendship that was between *Constantine* and *Constance*, favoured the *Britains* for the *Roman's* sake. However it were, *Autalpb* sent him twelve Gallies and forty Vessels without taking any farther consideration, than so much money as was convenient to satisfy the Soldiers and Seamen, who began to mutiny, because that in compassion to the Queens tears, the King had promised them never to wage war again in *Italy*. *Constant* soon appeared before the Port of *Cartagena*, while we at the same time were diligently employed in drawing a Line about the City. The Town was large, and besides the fortifications wherewith its Founder *Asdrubal* had strengthened it, *Flavian* had omitted nothing which might make it tenable against more numerous Armies. Our works advanced apace, for we had not only a great number of Pioneers, but the Soldiers also, who were commanded to break the ground, had notably besirred themselves.

In the mean time the besieged made several sallies, the success whereof did not always prove so advantageous to us, but the impatient *Constantine* having brought all his Engines to play, and battering the walls without intermission, soon made several great breaches, which not a little terrified the besieged. On the other side, the *Britains* went fiercely unto the Assault, animated by the presence of an invincible Prince: and *Maximus* shewing himself in person, to sustain the hearts of his Souldiers, the fight was maintained with great fury and obstinacy. *Maximus* had also the advantage to wound my Master, but that honour continued not long, for the incens'd *Constantine* soon after run him quite thorow the body. The *Roman* tumbled without life upon a heap of stones, while the King entered the City, with such a terrour as put the Spaniards utterly to flight. *Flavian* hastning to rally the ena-

gain, endeavour'd to repel the victorious Enemy, and to revenge the death of *Maximus*. But the valiant Prince advancing toward him, and looking upon him as the only support of *Octavia's* Ravishers, assail'd him with so much anger and resentment, that he laid him at his feet after a weak resistance. The Enemy seeing their Leaders fall, immediately fled, and shutting themselves up in their houses, left the women and Aged people to beg quarter for their lives. Though by the laws of war they had no reason to expect it, yet *Constantine* caused the Soldiers to forbear killing and plundering, and understood at length that *Geronces* being beaten by *Constant*, had retired himself to the Citadel. Immediately he resolv'd vigorously to assail the Traitor in the last of his Sanctuaries, nevertheless he had no sooner prepared his Engines ready for Battery, but he began to fear a thousand fatal Events. He revolv'd in his mind the hatred, which *Nonnichia* had against the Queen of *Albion*, the cruelty of *Geronces*, and what despair might work upon two persons, so violent in their humours. Such terrible thoughts as these, so surpris'd that illustrious object of misfortune, that he knew not what to determine: However at length he thought he might treat with *Nonnichia*, without doing any injury to *Gratian's* memory, especially having no proof that she had contributed to the death of her Husband. To this purpose he offer'd her very advantageous conditions, provided she would release *Octavia*. But the haughty Queen instead of laying hold upon this opportunity, to be at peace and to live restored to an honourable condition, return'd a furious answer, that she would rather dye than owe her safety to a faint-hearted compliance. That she too well remembered the ingrateful *Viridonix*, to favour *Constantine's* or *Octavia's* desires, and that she had this comfort still left, that it was in her power before she perished, to sacrifice to her revenge, the person who had caused all the misfortunes of her life. My Master trembled at these words, and understanding that *Geronces* had less inclination to treat, he knew not what resolution to take, so that he was about to have quite given over the Assault, fearing to enrage the Princesses Enemies. On the other hand finding it not in his power, to abandon *Octavia* her self into the fury of those Tyrants, such a Torrent of Anguish overwhelm'd his Soul, and his resolution tottered between so many various meditations, that after so many victories, and in the midst of so many loud Acclamations, that great Personage mov'd the pity of all that beheld him, and knew the cause of his misery. He fought without intermission, all means to save the Queen, but could find none, and not being willing to make use of violence, till he had made tryal of all other ways, he promised the Soldiers in the Citadel, whatever he thought might prove effectual, to induce them to leave *Geronces* and to take part with *Octavia*. He also confirm'd the promise which he had made, to the principal Citizens of *Cartagena*, who being won with the generosity of their Conquerour, seconded his purpose with an extraordinary zeal. To which effect they gained all those that were of their own Nation, and and in regard the *Spaniards* that were in the Fort, were not inferiour in number to the *Romans*, and that they had the advantage of being in their own Country, they presently mutined, and after that began to declare their minds freely, that it was convenient to treat with the King of the *Britains*, and to restore him the Princess whom he demanded. At those words *Geronces* grew mad, drew forth his Sword and flew upon a young Officer, who had been the first that spake in that manner: But the *Spaniard*, who did not acknowledge his command, thought he might defend himself, without offending the laws of military discipline, and finding himself well back'd, withstood the *Britain* like a man of courage. Then every one took to their party, according to their inclination or interest, whereby the mutiny encreas'd to that height, that *Constantine* making use of so favourable an opportunity, vigorously assail'd the Citadel. *Geronces* reduced to this pinch, no longer observ'd any rules, he called the *Britains* whom he had left to guard the two Queens, giving them express command not to let them live, and prepares to defend himself to the last gasp, as well against his enemies within, as against the Besiegers.

In the mean time *Loctrina* takes four Soldiers, keeping them at her elbow, and seeing her self at liberty during the tumult, she runs like a distracted fury to *Octavia's* Apartment. The Princess with an admirable constancy, attended the determination of her destiny, and rearing up her eyes to heaven, to implore the Aid of that sovereign justice that protects the innocent, she saw *Loctrina* advancing towards her with a dagger in her hand, followed by four Soldiers, and transported with rage. The unfortunate daughter of *Gratian* had no other assistance nor no other comfort, than the company and tears of *Gadena*, when the furious *Nonnichia* manifested by her threatening looks, that she was just prepared to sacrifice to her hatred, that fair and innocent victim. However before she executed her abominable purpose, she was resolv'd to satisfy her self, by loading the young Queen at her own pleasure with scandals and reproaches, and to make her suffer as long as she could, that terrour which the presence of a violent

violent and assured death inflicts. *Thou thinkest,* (she cryed with an utterance full of horror) *to triumph now over my destiny, but I am yet the Mistress of thine, and thou shalt never have the satisfaction, to see me in the power of my persecutor. No more shalt thou behold the Tyrant whom thou adorest, and who follows thee every where, but only to run after favours of which thou wouldst have persuaded him to be less prodigal, had not thy soul been altogether unworthy of this Birth.* *Ab Madam,* answered *Oëavia,* *how far does your resentment extend, that you do not take away my life without blemishing my honour? Hast thou any honour,* said she interrupting her, *for what canst thou refuse thy Constantine, after thou hast given him thy Kingdom of Albion? Thou hast plucked me from the Throne where Gratian seated me, but I shall straightway have the pleasure to pluck out thy heart, and to deprive thee at least after thy death, of the person who has reigned in too great power during thy life.*

Upon these words the cruel woman felt her rage increase, but while she lifts up her hand; and with an execrable satisfaction, surveys the incomparable *Oëavia,* looking where to theath the fatal weapon with which she was Arm'd, she heard the hasty steps of some body coming behind her, and which made her turn furiously about, to see who it was that durst interrupt her, or come to succour the Queen. But how was she surpris'd when she perceived it to be *Geronces,* who came toward her with his sword in his hand, stain'd all over with blood, and carrying in his looks all the dreadful symptomes of despair; *Madam, all's lost,* he cryed in a dreadful tone, *the Enemy is entred: But it shall never be said, that Geronces suffer'd a Princess whom he adores, to fall into his hands.* While he expresses himself in that dismal language, the Citadel resounded with the famous name of *Constantine,* while *Nonnichia* appears as it were thunder-strook, and stands immoveable suspending her fury.

During this tumult and astonishment, *Oëavia* and *Gadenz* nimbly withdraw themselves, and by large promises to their Guards, easily obtained leave to get into another Chamber; to which they were convey'd, with as much respect as could be shewed them, in so strange a confusion. *Geronces* who had the same resolution, to sacrifice the young Queen to his despair, as *Loctrinia* to her jealousy, soon perceived *Oëavia's* flight, and not being willing that the lovely Victim should escape, was about to pursue her, when the noise redoubled of the King's approach. Whereupon the *Britain* fearing to fall alive into his hands, and least *Nonnichia* should be expos'd to the insolency of the Soldiers, saw that he had not a minute of time to lose, and therefore turning himself quite frantick toward the person whom he loved, and casting a wild look upon her, he thrust his Sword through her body with that quickness and violence, that she had not time to speak one word to her murderer; then falling upon the point of his own weapon, he rob'd himself of those torments which his crimes had deserv'd. In the mean time the invincible King of the *Britains* that only had *Oëavia* in his thoughts, hastens at the head of his own Soldiers, into an Apartment whither he was led by the Prisoners, and with a heart divided between love and despair, he casts his Eyes about every where looking for the Princess. He enters first into the fatal Chamber, where the bodies of *Loctrinia* and *Geronces* lay weltring in blood, and he no sooner beheld that spectacle, but he admir'd the managements of eternal providence. He was not troubled that *Geronces* came to such an end, nor that an offender whom he could not have punished without great circumspection, had as it were been drawn in by her destiny, to that fatal conclusion of life, to which despair generally reduces persons, guilty of the same crimes. Yet though a parricide merits no favour, *Geronces* having been always *Constantine's* Capital Enemy, that generous Prince was loth to condemn him, how wretched a villain soever he were, without observing the rules of moderation. But seeing himself rid of that care, he commanded the bodies of *Geronces* and *Loctrinia* to be taken away; the latter to be buried, and the other to be kept till *Oëavia* had resolv'd, in what manner it should be dispos'd. As he was giving order to that purpose, he heard the voices of some persons, that begged quarter for their lives of the soldiers that followed, promising that they would deliver the Queen of *Albion* into their hands. *Constantine* hearing that engaging promise, ran toward them that made it, and looking upon them altogether transported with joy; *Is it true,* said he, *that you can shew me the Queen? have you had care to preserve her? Is it possible she should be in a Chamber where you guard the Door?* Then without expecting an answer he enters the Room, and he had not gone many steps, before he spy'd *Oëavia* together with the faithful *Gadenz,* one of her Maids of honour. They looked pale and dismay'd, and carried in their countenances many signs of that horror, which at the sight of so many terrible accidents, had amaz'd their senses.

The victorious *Constantine* clad in his glittering Armour, yet more splendid with the honour he had won, throws himself at the feet of his Princess, more happy in that submission,

than in the magnificence of a triumph, being hardly able to speak for joy, or express the satisfaction of his thoughts. But at last after he had continued pausing a while, like a person desperately gone in love and deeply plung'd in joy; *Is it you Madam,* cryed he, *is it you my most divine Queen? and is it the pleasure of heaven that I should once more see your face?* *Yes, Sir,* (replied the Queen beginning now to breath at more liberty) *'tis the unhappy Octavia to whom you speak, and to whose misfortunes you are now certainly come to put an end.* But instead of continuing their discourse during their surprize, those two illustrious persons could not express their innocent affection, otherwise than by their looks, after which my Master complemented *Gadena*, not believing that *Octavia* would be displeas'd, that he took that liberty in her presence.

As for our parts, the Princefs received most obligingly Prince *Constant* and my self, coming to present our duties to her, after we had quieted the disorders that usually attend the taking of Towns. *Constantine* also departed from that confusion with all speed, to the end no object of desolation might give nourishment to that melancholy, which a long series of misfortunes had fix'd in the Queen's heart. He took his march therefore for *Terracon*, while *Constant* return'd to the Court of *Autalpb*, with orders to enquire of a *Roman* Lady, whom the Queen of the *Goths* tenderly loved, what news of *Constance*. He had been already inform'd by *Virginia*, for that was the Ladies name, of the particulars of a journey which *Constance* had made to *Barcelona*, and knew that that unfortunate lover, not being to be suffered by *Placidia* to live near her, was gone with an impatient grief to seek for martial employments, upon the borders of the *Rhine*. Of all this *Constant* gave an account to the King my Master, so that the generous King advancing toward the River *Hebrus*, spent many of his thoughts in the memory of his friend, out of an extraordinary fear lest he himself should have been some cause of his misfortune. *Terracon* stay'd not till we fate down before it, but presently surrender'd it self, as did all the other Cities under *Flavian's* jurisdiction, following her example. They sent their deputies to *Constantine* to assure him of their fidelity, but the Prince would not accept their homage, but in *Honorius's* name: for he believed himself so far bound to that renowned *Roman*, that he could do no less than act upon all occasions, for his Advantage and Honour. He feared continually lest he might have made him lose his credit with the Emperour, and persisted in the resolution which he had taken, of going to *Rome*, if by no other means he could restore the reputation of his friend. Nevertheless whatever satisfaction he had, to acquit himself of so just an engagement, he could not forbear being sensibly afflicted, to think that he must be forc'd to leave his adored Princefs: For as he was always in her company, and found her more charming than ever, and more dispos'd to render him happy, his joy was inexpressible. But how great was his grief, when the cruel remembrance of the promise which he had made to *Constance*, oppos'd it self to the establishment of his happiness, and when so severe a reason began to plunge, the sweetness of his hopes in the gulph of bitterness. In short, that enamour'd Prince could not abandon his heart with pleasure, to behold that incomparable beauty, the possession whereof was assured him, when with no small disturbance he thought upon that tyrannical honour, that went about to absent him from his Princefs. And indeed so violent was his anguish, that *Octavia* perceived the effects thereof in his looks, though she imagin'd that it arose from no other cause, but from the King's impatience, who eagerly now desired that inseparable union, which he had so long wish'd for: so that upon such occasions, the more lovely Sex being the more modest and reserv'd, the prudent Princefs durst not presume to question the passionate *Constantine*. *Gadena*, who had the same thoughts, was yet more confident, and believing that it was merely respect, that kept the King of the *Britains* lips so close lock'd, she gave them both to understand, that there was now no longer need to use that nice circumspection, but that they should repass the *Pyrenians*, and fulfil *Aldroec's* will.

At those words *Constantine* remembering his promise to *Constance*, was constrained to look down with his eyes and sigh: *Octavia* blushed and *Gadena* was surpris'd at my Master's silence, upon an opportunity so favourable to tell his thoughts. But the unfortunate Prince not finding his soul at rest, as by what appeared might easily be conjectur'd, had not the power to stay any longer in the Queen's company, but resolv'd to be gone for fear *Gadena* should put him to a farther nonplus. He believed that that dutiful person, being as much concern'd for his interests as for *Octavia's*, might draw from him something of discovery, that would not a little perplex him. And because he was neither able to disguise his thoughts, nor declare his engagement to *Constance*, for fear of afflicting his Princefs, he rather chose to deprive himself of her Company for some little time, than expose himself to the danger of giving her any cause of disquiet. So soon as he was retired into his Chamber, his soul was

was turmoyl'd with various troubles, while he the most happy, yet the most miserable of all Lovers, beheld the Sovereign Arbitratrix of his life, without daring to dispose of himself. His heart and his love perswaded him to procure to himself the satisfaction of enjoying what he lov'd; but his reason and his honour imperiously commanded him to acquit himself of his promise. He endured a torment unconceivable, while he sustain'd the shock of these violent, yet opposite passions. At length, weary with the punishment that he inflict'd upon himself, *Severe voice*, cryed he, *of a cruel duty I will no longer obey thee; I adore the divine Octavia, she does not oppose my happiness, and shall I be so much my enemy my self to renounce my own felicity? But how shall I presume to present the hand of a person without honour, and a breaker of his word to a fair and great Queen.*

He mus'd a while upon what he had said, and believing that he had found out a way to satisfy his love and his acknowledgment, he was intended humbly to have besought the Queen to consummate his felicity, so soon as they should be arriv'd in *Armorica*, resolving to go afterwards where the interests of *Constance* call'd him, with the honourable advantage of being in the possession of his Princess. But immediately repenting of such a thought, as of a most horrible crime; *Is it for any other reason*, said he, *than more sensibly to afflict the Queen of Albion, that thou pretendest that she should favour thee the more? Is it not enough that a Lover must forsake her, but that she must also lose a Husband? Is it fitting that a Prince who is not master of his own will, should be united in wedlock to that divine person, to be immediately separated from her, only to submit his destiny to the humour of a Court that is at enmity with him? No, no, Constantine, it behoves thee not to aspire to a Dignity of which thou art not yet worthy, which thou canst not peaceably enjoy until thou hast acquitted thy self of thy promise to Constance. If it cost thee thy life to restore that Roman to his lost favour, thou dost but in acknowledgment return him that which he has given thee out of his meer generosity; and by so doing, far from leaving Octavia the widow of an unfortunate Prince, thy death will advance her to the Sovereignty of many Kingdoms, and put her into a condition to chuse where she pleases. What hast thou to say*, added he all of sudden, *feeble Lover, fainthearted Lover? canst thou think without dying that another should enjoy the Queen of Albion? O Heavens, that sent me into the world only for that divine Princess's sake, will you suffer so terrible a piece of injustice?*

After he had thus lamented to himself, he perceiv'd the troubles of his Soul increase, and imagining that only the company of the person belov'd could allay them, he hasted to *Octavia's* Apartment. That lovely person receiv'd him with her usual kindness, however, as Lovers are generally quick of apprehension, *Constantine* observ'd something more of coldness, and less of freedom in her conversation. Her eyes also seem'd less to sparkle, instead whereof they shewed more of sweetness and a charming languishment, which how far could they not affect a heart of which they were already Sovereign Controulers? *Constantine* thereupon retired more forlorn than before, yet spent the night with more content than disquiet; for he determin'd to abandon himself wholly to that good fortune which he could work out by his own endeavours, rather than submit his fate to *Constance's* disposal, being of opinion that he should acquit himself well enough toward his Friend, if he march'd to *Rome* with a force equal to that of *Honorius*, and with his Arms in his hands restor'd him to his former condition. But the light of his reason returning with the light of the morning, he foresaw that in executing such a design, he should but destroy *Constance's* Country, and render *Constance* odious to his Fellow-Citizens: and that on the other side, by marching at the head of a puissant Army, he should rather seem to act with pride and caution, than perswaded by the motives of a true generosity. Thus his virtue contending with his passion, soon renewed his cares, till at length, labouring under such an opposition of thoughts, he determin'd upon his last resolve. However, that he might examine with himself what he had to do, he took a walk forth of the City in a pleasant place, which deriving its name from the renowned Family of the *Scipio's*, is called the *Cornelian Gardens*. *Constantine* had no sooner weigh'd what *Octavia* and *Constance* could reasonably require from a heart full of love and acknowledgment, but he judg'd that for the very honour of the Princess, he ought to keep his word with his Friend: and fixing in an opinion which he found so just, he sat him down at the foot of a great Tree, and the few Attendants that followed him being retired, for fear his passion should alter his resolution, he presently wrote these following Lines to *Constance*.

I Have made a happy advantage of that leave you gave me to go and fight for the Queen of Al-bion. The Princess is free as I am also, and shall suddenly render my self your Captive, according to your order. And I dare make you this protestation, that I have never surceas'd from being so, since I have been so far from breaking those chains which you have made so easie, that I have rather more strongly invited them by my acknowledgment. In short, having reveng'd the death of Gratian, and set Octavia at liberty, I thought it my Duty to acquit my self of my promise to you, and to be true to that word which I gave you more than once. Dispose absolutely of my destiny, nothing can hinder me —

At those words, instead of having power to write on, his pen dropp'd from his hand, when rearing up his eyes to Heaven, *Is it reasonable*, mournfully he cryed, *that my destiny should be at the disposal of any other than my Princess? Alas! to what an extremity of misfortune am I reduc'd? Was ever heart so rent and torn with the violence of tyrannick passions? Or ever suffered the violence of more boysterous and contrary agitations?* Then returning to ponder upon the miserable condition of his fortune, he fell into such a deep contemplation, that he perceiv'd not *Constant* coming toward him. The Prince was newly arriv'd from *Barcelona*, and understanding that the King was in the Garden which I mention'd before, he came to give him an account of his journey, and of some other particulars of weight which he had to communicate to him. He discours'd him all the way as they return'd to the City, and told him that the *Goths* would not let him enter into the City; that the report was that King *Autalph* was slain, and that *Sigeric* had usurp'd the Sovereign Authority. *They assured me also*, said he, *that Placidia had been the innocent cause of her Husband's death, in having dissuaded him to wage war in Italy, a sufficient provocation to enrage the fury of a Nation that took delight to enrich themselves by plunder. That thereupon the Queen of the Goths was departed from Barcelona with her dear Virginia, in expectation of Prince Wallia's return, for whom she had sent, and of whom they also related very extraordinary Adventures.*

Constant entertain'd the King of the *Britains* to the very Gates of *Tarracon* with this discourse, but not having met with any person that could tell him any tyding concerning *Constance*, he made no mention of him. *Constantine* was touch'd with a real sorrow for the death of *Autalph*, but the disturbance which he felt for that was nothing comparable to the content that renewed it self in his mind to see the hopes of his generous Friend revive. He thought also that it behoy'd himself to give him notice of so important a revolution, before he had any other information. In the mean time having a desire to finish the Letter which he intended to send, he found he had lost the Table-Book wherein he had begun to write it. Immediately he gave me order to seek it in the place where he thought he had left it; but at the very time that he saw I could not find it, and was about to make use of another, there came to him certain Commissioners from *Didymus* and *Verodian*. They took up a good part of the day with *Constantine*, in pleading for their Master's interest, when the amorous Prince having disengag'd himself from their company, hasted to visit *Octavia*, manifestly troubled that he had been so long depriv'd of her Society. But he was strangely surpris'd when he was told that the fair Princess was sick, and that she had given a strict command that no person should come into her Chamber. *Is it possible*, (said he, extremely terrified) *that that command should concern me, and that the Queen has not left me out of the crowd?*

His astonishment not permitting him to say more, *Octavia's* Page took upon him to speak, and because he knew not his Mistress's mind, he made answer according to what he thought himself: *You conjecture right, Sir*, said he, *that it is not usual to give no more respect to a great King, than to the vulgar; and therefore instead of refusing entrance to him, as to the rest of the people, we only beseech him not to make use of that privilege which his Birth and Dignity claim. Besides this general consideration*, (said he, seeing that my Master stood musing and vex'd) *you know, Sir, that a Princess, who was the Daughter of Gratian, has a particular reverence for your Majesty, nor do I believe that your Majesty can suspect that a person so infinitely just, can fail of her esteem and acknowledgment for the renowned King of the Britains.*

The afflicted *Constantine*, instead of making any answer, was perplex'd with his own sad thoughts; and whether he believ'd that *Octavia* was sick, or whether he thought her unfaithful, his anguish was not to be express'd. He sigh'd, he look'd upon the Princess's Attendant; and though he ardently desired to be better instructed, he would not presume to draw any further discovery from his mouth, such was his fear, lest he should understand any thing that might increase his affliction, or any way diminish that profound respect which

he had for *Octavia*, by causing her Servants to speak more than they had order to let him know. He return'd therefore with a restless impatience, and no sooner was he got into his Chamber, but he abandon'd his Soul to that dreadful grief that had seiz'd it: many times he perswaded himself that *Octavia's* health was endamag'd by the various accidents that had befallen her, but he was always more inclin'd to believe that the Princess's heart began to waver.

While he laboured under the apprehension of the latter misfortune, he considered every thing that might be the occasion thereof, and finding himself neither guilty in word nor in thought, he sent boldly to the Queen's Apartment to understand the condition of her health. But the Page whom he sent, return'd no better inform'd than he had been himself, only he learn'd that *Octavia* took her repose, and that no persons were admitted into the Room. Many others were sent with the same success. Nor was *Constant* or my self more prosperous, for all that we could learn, was, that the Queen was very melancholy, and that all other company was troublesome to her but *Gadenz's*. Upon that *Constantine* fell into a kind of despair; but instead of repeating all the complaints that he made, it will be sufficient for your Majesty to understand, that he thought himself far more unhappy for being thus out of the Queen's favour, than for all the misfortunes that ever besel him at any other time. Some few days after he was inform'd that *Gadenz* had perswaded her fair Mistress to take a walk every Evening in the *Cornelian* Gardens. The news whercof overjoyed him, being in hopes that he should thereby find an opportunity to throw himself at the Queen's feet, to the end he might either satisfy himself, or expire for grief, if she continued inexorable. However, he forbore the first night she took the air, as not being willing to give her too hasty a disturbance: but he could not admit of a longer delay, and therefore the next day he suffered himself to be guided by the violence of his passion. Nevertheless, that he might observe his opportunity, he thought it not convenient to tarry till the Queen was in the Garden, believing that he should commit a great piece of folly, should he go to disturb her in a place where she sought retirement: and therefore he resolv'd to be there two or three hours before the Queen's usual time. And for fear so nice a person should come to have intelligence of his being there, he was let in at a little door in the most private and unfrequented part of the Garden. There he remain'd in the most remote part of all, and fearing lest the diversity of objects should interrupt a contemplation that pleas'd him beyond the most delightful place in the world, he laid down upon the Grass, and by and by turning himself upon his right side, he negligently lean'd his head with his eye fix'd upon the ground. In this sad posture he revolv'd in his mind all the misfortunes of his life; but when he came to think upon the Princess's displeasure, he felt his Soul assail'd with a grief so painful, that his courage not being able to resist the tenderness of his affection; the unfortunate Lover not only sigh'd, but shed tears, when he call'd to mind the cruel unkindness which he had so little merited.

While he afflicts himself in that manner, two Ladies cross'd that solitary part where he lay, and walking some five or six steps behind him, when they beheld his proportion and his habit they were not a little surpris'd, as appear'd by their whispering. They were both very lovely, though with no small difference; for she that was incomparably beyond the other, mov'd with such a majestick air, that thereby it was easie to conjecture that her descent could not but be as illustrious as any in the world. In short, Madam, it was the charming Queen of the *Goths*, who having made an escape out of *Barcelona* with her beloved *Virginia*, to avoid the consequences of a violent Rebellion, was retired to *Tarracon*, being pleas'd with the solitariness of the *Cornelian* Gardens. At that time, as my Master afterwards understood, she was discoursing of her misfortunes to *Virginia*; sometimes shedding tears when she remembred *Autalpb*, and sometimes sighing for the return of Prince *Wallia*, as the only protector that she had among the *Goths*. While she thought of the absence of that virtuous Prince, she could not forbear to speak of her faithful and unhappy *Constance*, which sad and pleasing discourse took up their time, till my my Master's comly Stature, little differing from that of the renowned *Roman*, fix'd at once both their eyes and feet. The astonish'd *Placidia* could not tell at present what to think, but she had no sooner cast her eyes upon the Sword which *Constance* had given to the King of the *Britains*, which she knew again by the Hilt that had been often admired in the Court of *Rome*, when she took him for her Renowned Lover; and not being able to controul the first motions of her surprize, *Ab! Is it Constan*—— she cryed, but not being able to say any more, her colour chang'd so, that she had fallen to the ground, had not *Virginia* upheld her: my Master hearing the shriek, turn'd about, and seeing the different conditions of those two fair persons, he immediately rose up and ran to their relief. Nor could he do less than hold

the charming Queen of the *Goths* in his Arms, in regard while *Virginia's* were too weak, long to continue their assistance. But so soon as *Placidia* was come to her self, and that *Constantine* understood her name, he fell before her upon one knee, and kiss'd the hemm of her garment, and without any regard to his own dignity, he gave to that fair and great Princess, all the honour which he thought due to the Widow of the King of the *Goths*, the *Roman* Emperour's Sister, and generous *Constantine's* Mistress. *Placidia* on the other hand no sooner understood him, to be the great King of *Albion* in that submissive posture, but she rais'd him, and shewed him all the civility which *Honorius* himself would have claimed.

Afterwards these two illustrious persons, entertain'd one another with a free and pleasing discourse: nor would *Constantine* notwithstanding *Placidia's* reservedness, forbear to speak continually of his friend, and no less to praise his love, his fidelity, the grandeur of his courage, and the generosity of his soul. It was a discourse that many times made the Queen blush, and fain she would have changed the subject, but the diligent *Constantine* strove to convince the scruples of her mind, and endeavoured to fortifie the motions of her heart, which he made no doubt were favourable to *Constance*. He offered *Placidia* also to restore her to *Ataulph's* Throne, but she refused it, as deeming it unjust to deprive *Sigeric* of his succession to his Uncle, nor being willing to reign with a *Gotbick* Prince, whom she loved as little as she hated *Constance*. *Virginia*, who greatly pityed that renowned *Roman*, many times seconded the King of the *Britains*. Nor were they willing to leave off a discourse so pleasing, but that it grew late, and that *Placidia* was to return to her Chariot. *Constantine* led her thither, and before he left her, he renewed those proffers which he had made her, before, promising either to protect her, or to send her to the Emperour. *Placidia* testified her acknowledg'ment, but in answer to the generous *Constantine*, she told him that she had chosen a private retiring place, upon the banks of *Hebrus*, where she resolv'd to live without any noise or pomp, till the return of Prince *Wallia*: Judging that in point of decency, he being of the whole blood of *Antalph*, and the most virtuous Prince among the *Goths*, was the fittest person to return her to *Honorius*. The King of the *Britains* approving the prudence of Queen *Placidia*, press'd her no farther, nor would he presume to enquire the name of the place, to which she intended to retire, knowing that she might easily send to *Terracon*, if she had any need of his assistance.

Being parted from that fair Queen, he felt the violence of his passion increase, the effects whereof were only suspended, so that now having no other thoughts, but of seeing the divine *Octavia* and recovering her favour, he sought for her with all the diligence imaginable, he searched every thicket behind every hedge, and at last when he almost despaired of finding her, he saw her in an Arbor shaded all over with green boughs. She was sitting upon a bank of Cammomel, leaning her head carelessly upon *Gadena's* shoulder, manifesting by her looks, and by the tears that trickled down her fair cheeks; the painful Anguish of her soul. So soon as she perceived the King of the *Britains*, she blush'd: *Ab! Gadena*, cryed she, *who is that which I see?*

After these few words she rose up hastily, and went forth at another door, opposite to that where the Astonish'd *Constantine*, stood immoveable like a Statue. How great soever were the surprize of that unfortunate Prince, yet greater was the force of his love, the violence whereof carried him toward the fair and pitiless *Octavia*. He stay'd her, he threw himself at her feet, and while sighs and sobbings interrupted his half uttered words; *Great Queen*, he cryed in a mournful tone, *for heavens sake what fault have I committed? discover your mind, and suffer me either to justify my self, or to dye for the expiation of my crimes*. The hard hearted Princess instead of being moved, beheld the afflicted Prince with all the signs of a fierce Anger, and struggling to get loose out of his Arms, *Go perfidious, go ungrateful man*, said she, *unworthy of thy birth and rank, go live and reign in quiet, far from the unhappy daughter of an unfortunate Father*. With that she went very swiftly toward one of the Garden doors, while my Master getting before the Damself that followed her; *Generous Gadena*, said he with tears in his eyes, *have you no pity upon a miserable creature, whose only hope is your protection? Sir*, (answered she with a coy behaviour, and still eagerly pressing to follow *Octavia*) *I spoke in your behalf when I could do it without prejudice, but were it true that you had still need of my mediation, you are not any longer to expect it: For in short, I am clearly of opinion, that it behoves me to prefer the concerns of my Mistress before yours. And better it is that in doing my duty, I should act according to reason, than———According to reason*, said he interrupting her, *Ab! Gadena*,———*Yes, Sir*, answered she in a fret, *according to reason*; after which she flung from him in great hast to overtake *Octavia*, who was already at a good distance before.

The disconsolate *Constantine* followed her, but because he durst not presume before all the world,

world to hinder her from taking her Chariot, and for that decency did not permit him to follow her a foot, he beheld her as she went away with a dreadful anguish. He return'd to *Tarracon* very fast, his countenance chang'd, despair in his eyes, and suffering himself to be guided by the violence of the passions that reign'd in his Soul, he went to *Octavia's* Apartment, and laying aside that circumspection which he was wont to observe, he entred without demanding whether he might or no, and without taking any notice of those persons that made their obeysances to him, he went directly to the Chamber of the severe Princess. Presently he threw himself at her feet, and not having the power to speak, he express'd himself only by his tears. But the Queen, instead of being mov'd therewith, or looking upon them as the signs of his love or repentance, was so cruel as to turn away her face, and rearing up her eyes to Heaven; *Alas!* she cry'd, *(shall I never find any Sanctuary to protect me from the persecutions of an enemy so odious?)*

Those words so dreadful, struck a terrour into the very heart of *Constantine*, so that the unfortunate Prince standing in an amaze for some time, at length fell down in a swoon before the inexorable *Octavia*: yet did she not appear altogether so pitiless upon that accident; for she could not forbear to cry out for help, nay, to run her self to the assistance of *Constantine*; but the King was no sooner come to himself, but the severe Virgin vex'd that she had been so sensible of compassion, and not enduring to see my Master, went into her Closet, and shut the door after her; *Constantine* followed with plaints and entreaties, but all in vain; so that being reduc'd to the extremity of despair, he had certainly ended this miserable life, if the Religion which we profess had not been an enemy to all violence of that nature: for that commands us to wait till the supreme power that gave us life thinks fitting to take it away again. So that my Master durst not presume to imitate those unfortunate Heroes, who were wont to prefer death before servitude, or a long series of misfortunes. Thereupon he retired back to his own Apartment, where he refus'd either to eat, or to be seen of any person, spending the cruel night that succeeded so fatal a day in walking up and down the Chamber, instead of taking the least care of his rest. He examined also with himself what might be the cause of his disgrace: and comparing in his thoughts *Octavia's* words with the circumstances of time and place, he believ'd that the Princess might have been a witness of his discourse with the Queen of the *Goths*, and not knowing the true reason of those civilities that pass'd between them, he made conjectures thereupon which were not altogether without foundation. However, he soon reject'd any such thoughts as being too empty; for he durst not presume to imagine that *Octavia* could nourish in her heart a passion against him, void of love; besides that, he remember'd very well, that before his meeting with *Placidia*, his Princess had already begun to scorn him and decline his visits. Nevertheless, not to omit any thing for his satisfaction, he resolv'd to put it to the proof; and to that end, he went to the Queen of *Britain's* Apartment, so soon as decency would permit him. But instead of seeing her, he was surpris'd after a strange manner, when they told him that she was retired to a Religious House of Virgins, consecrated to the service of that God whom we adore, and that she had chosen that Sanctuary to be free from the persecutions of a Prince for whom she had nothing but a little pity remaining. *Constantine* all forlorn, hasted to the place of her retirement; he desired to speak with a person named *Paulina*, who was the chief Abbess, telling her such sad stories of his affection and Generosity, that she began to be really mov'd. At length he desired her to get leave of the Queen of *Albion* that he might see her. He promised easily to clear the mistake, and to justify himself, in relation to his meeting with that Lady whom he saw in the *Cornelian* Gardens. He gave her instructions also to make it out to her, that her dissatisfaction was groundless, and that it must of necessity be a wrong interpretation of his actions or his words, that had produc'd that aversion in her mind. *Paulina*, who understood the sincerity of his intentions, was very willing to undertake the composition of the difference, and being perswaded that she should take pains for the good of several Nations, in favouring *Constantine's* designs, she went to *Octavia*, but spake to her with more earnestness than good success. The severe Princess confidently answer'd, that she knew too well that *Constantine* was guilty, that she would neither see nor hear him, nor give ear to his justification, for fear he should deceive her a second time. However, *Paulina* would not be so answer'd as yet, she made her a reply, and urg'd all the reason she could in my Master's behalf: but *Octavia* continued in her obstinacy, and believing that the person that took *Constantine's* part to be her self abus'd, she would at length no longer endure the discourse. The wise and prudent *Paulina* fearing farther to provoke her, would not presume to talk any more of the King; so that when she went to give the unfortunate Lover an account of the success of her mediation; *There is no remedy, Madam,* (said he, with tears in his eyes) *but I must die, since my innocence can-*

not save me; nor indeed is it to appear in my behalf, when the divine Octavia condemns me. But, Madam, said he, sighing, is it not enough that I must be unfortunate, but that for my sake a young and beautiful Queen must shut her self up in sad retirement? For Heaven's sake root from her mind a resolution which will be so fatal to her, persuade that severe Princess sometimes to go abroad to take the air, and use those divertisements that are answerable to her age and dignity. I will endeavour as much as in me lies to procure her comfort, without considering that she makes me miserable, wishing her an accomplish'd happiness, at the very time she causes me to die a death so strange and cruel.

Paulina mov'd more than before with my Master's Generosity, promis'd also to take his concerns upon her, not believing that Octavia would refuse her what she desired, only for her own advantage; nevertheless the Princess remain'd inexorable, No, no, (answered she, with a fierceness not usual with her) I will not go out of this place so long as Constantine shall be in Spain: for while that perfidious person is in the same Country with me, I will shut my self up in a perpetual retirement, lest in going abroad I should expose myself to the danger of meeting him.

The disconsolate Constantine no sooner understood the last resolution of Octavia, but he departed without being able to speak, such a load of grief oppress'd his Soul; and being retired into his Chamber, he sent for Constant and my self; he seem'd to us to be quite chang'd, his eyes that wont to glisten with a warlike and amorous fire, appeared heavy and clouded: nor might you less perceive all other symptoms of a person hating life. Then looking upon the British Prince with a sad aspect, Cousin, said he, I leave to your care the entire conduct of the Army; I leave to you all my Rights, Privileges and Pretences; I recommend to you my dear and faithful Dinocus; and I desire you to reward and employ Lenox. As for the King my Father, I do not mention him; for I know what thoughts nature and virtue have infus'd into your Breast for so good a Prince. But give me leave fully to instruct you what to do in relation to the divine Princess whom I adore: so soon as I am gone ——— Ob, Sir, (said we, interrupting him, and throwing our selves at his feet) it shall never be said that we forsook you, since we love your person above all the Kingdoms of the world. For Heaven's sake, replied he, sighing, tye not your selves any longer to the fortune of a miserable man; you have suffered too much already for me; 'tis time for you to seek that repose which I have made you lose, and for me to find out death for the satisfaction of Octavia.

Prince Constant and my self endeavoured to lay before him that the Queen of Albion could neither hate him, nor long continue her discourse; but instead of hearkening to us, with a lively aspect, It is too true that I am scorn'd by that fair Princess, she has told me as much to my face; and I am too unhappy that it is not in my power to die after such a Sentence. Nor should I so much as dream of any comfort, did I not believe that Heaven has preserv'd me on purpose to be serviceable to Constance, and that I may be able to offer to the interest of such a Friend a life which I hold by his Generosity. Therefore oppose not my resolution, you will contend in vain, for I believe I commit as many crimes as I stay minutes in Spain, and therefore I am resolv'd for Germany, where I shall either find Constance, or an honourable death.

In short, Madam, my Master was so obstinate in the execution of his design, that all that we could obtain from him was, that I should attend him with two or three of his Esquires. He left precise commands with Prince Constant to take care of the King of Armórica, and the Queen of Great Britain; and constituted him his General Viceroy over all his Dominions, and absolute General of his Armies. After this we made all the haste we could to the Pyrenean Hills, and were no sooner entred into Gallia, but my Master, the most perfect Lover that ever was, dispatch'd a Courier with a Letter to this effect.

The unhappy Constantine to the Divine Queen of Britain.

You are free in Spain, Madam, I have left it, and I shall suddenly leave the world, that you may live without reserv'dness, and that your liberty may have no other bounds than the ends of the earth. I also vow that I will not justify my self before my death, knowing that I must be certainly guilty, while it is my misfortune so to be esteem'd in your thoughts. The veneration which I have for whatever concern you, is so great that I rather wish my honour may suffer reproach, and be blasted, than you should be accounted unjust. And that my memory should be odious, than that my innocency should vex your repentance for having condemn'd me without a cause.

He felt some ease after he had thus disburthen'd his thoughts; and continuing his resolution, he thought it convenient to change his name to travel with more safety. And therefore he took the name of *Viridonix*, which he had already made use of, travelling very hard every day to reach the Banks of the *Rhine*. I should have oppos'd his design, but remembering *Melusina's* prediction, I made no question but that *Constance* was the person that was to put a stop to the misfortunes of *Constantine's* life, as he had stopp'd the torrent of his Victories in the Province of the *Romans*. I made some interpretations of it to my Master, who having little disposition to believe things that pleas'd him, answer'd me with a melancholy aspect, that he would not flatter himself, being a miserable person that had no hope left, but such an unfortunate person, that without considering the event of things, would use his utmost endeavour to his last gasp. In this manner talk'd the unfortunate Lover upon the Road, and believing he should find the end of his misfortunes upon the Banks of the *Rhine*, he post'd thither with all the speed imaginable. We pass'd through *A Armorica*, where we got together some five hundred Horse for our Guard; and you well know that upon our arrival we were charg'd by a party of *Cimbrians*, that *Constantine* defended himself like an undaunted Hero, till at length he was rescu'd by the Prince of the *Huns*, whose timely aid sav'd the life of that great King.

Thus, Madam, you have heard what have been the Adventures of my renowned Master. I have repeated the story at large, since it was your own command, and without considering that I had not eloquence enough to discourse upon such a subject as I ought before your Majesty, I only look'd upon my Duty that oblig'd me to obey so great a Queen, or at least to satisfy her curiosity, if I could not answer the perfection of her ingenuity.

The End of the Eighth Part of
P H A R A M O N D.

PHARAMOND.

The Ninth Part.

BOOK I.



D*Inocus* had no sooner finish'd the History of *Constantine*, but the fair Queen of *Turingia* by most obliging testimonies manifested her attention to his Relation, letting him understand how much she was concern'd for the mistortunes of the King his Master. *Balamir* also testified how much he admir'd the Actions of that great Prince; but because it was late, they thought it now convenient to take their leaves of *Amalazontha*; whereupon he departed together with *Dinocus*, whither his employment, and the care of the King of *Britain* call'd him. He beheld that renowned personage with an increase of his esteem, not being able to forbear giving him those praises which *Constantine* could not brook, though no more than what he deserved from all the world. But those two brave persons were no sooner parted from one another, but they abandon'd their thoughts to the passions that reign'd in their Souls, while the divine Beauties of *Rosamond* and *Ocīavia* busied their contemplation, during the greatest part of the night. But while the chains of those two fair Queens depriv'd them of that rest, which the greatest part of the world then enjoyed. The King of *Suevia* was troubled with a passion less just, but more tumultuous. He could not endure no more than the hairbrain'd *Briomer*, that the Queen of the *Turingiens* should quit their party; and their rage still tormented them with greater violence, when they considered that *Pharamond*, the object of their implacable hatred, was however not hated by *Amalazontha*. After a thousand designs which they had contriv'd in disorder, they resolv'd at length to oppose by open force the departure of the *Turingiens*: and to avoid the dividing of the Army, and from engaging it in a Fight which might expose it to the Enemy, they resolv'd so to strengthen their party, that the Queen of *Turingia* instead of being in a condition to resist should be forc'd to obey the Laws of the predominating Faction. The King of the *Herules* was of their Cabal and Judgment. And *Gondiocb*, the Rival and particular Enemy of *Pharamond*, would with all his Soul have been willing to have hinder'd a disunion of the Army in favour of the King of the *Franks*, if that remainder of natural Generosity which was yet left him, would have permitted him to have taken Arms to restrain the liberty of a fair and young Princess. *Gondemar* was too virtuous to enter into that conspiracy. And indeed the King of *Suevia* knew him too well to impart any thing of a design to him which was contrary to his inclinations. Besides that, he very impatiently endured his humour in most affairs; nor was there in all the Army a Prince, except *Balamir*, more likely to prejudice the resolution he had taken. Therefore to the end it might succeed more prosperous, he thought fit not to speak of it at all; for though *Ardaric* were *Pharamond's* Rival, and that the young King of the *Basternes* sigh'd for *Albifinda*, he rather chose to dispense with the assistance of those two Princes, than to discover a design wherein he apprehended but little success.

Nevertheless,

Nevertheless, for the better management of the enterprize, he was willing to understand what contrivance might be used in the *Turingiens* Quarters: to which purpose, though he had given instructions to certain confidants of his own, he could not forbear going privately himself, together with *Briomer*, to hear and observe what was discours'd among the *Troops*, which he looked upon as *Enemies*. Immediately he listen'd up and down in several places to no purpose, but coming to the Tent of one of *Amalazontha's* principal Officers.

After some words spoken the sense whereof he could not understand, he heard a certain person pursuing the following discourse; 'Tis true, Sir, said he, that to morrow you have a very favourable opportunity of seeing the Queen, but has a person of your condition, any need of so nicely observing your time, rather may you not expect many privileges, after so many services performed? That which I have done, replied the other, is so much above the meanest recompence, that the divine *Amalazontha* can bestow upon me, that I cannot question her bearing it in remembrance, and I assure you that I had not come only to give her a visit, had I not understood by that intelligence which you know I have, that she is to march hence to morrow, contrary to the good liking of the King of *Suevia*, and several other Princes, upon which occasion I thought my self in a capacity to serve her. There is another young Prince, replied the former, that has the same design in this Camp. Ah! if that be true, replied the other sighing, I have more cause to bewail my own condition than I thought for, nor can I tell whether my reason, will be sufficiently powerful to tame a passion, which it has essay'd to subject to its Empire. My desires began to be less violent, for as I could not conceive any hopes, that I might preserve the Accord of my first passion, I began to encline to deprive my self of the sight of that which I adore. But now I find that the competitorship of a Lover, that may be more happy than my self, rekindles a flame that I endeavour'd to have extinguish'd: For when I consider that the Rival whom you mention, comes to serve *Amalazontha*, having the same design that brings me hither, and the same affliction that I have, not the same advantages, when I consider that he may aspire to a happiness, which only my Birth forbids me to pretend to, all the generosity of my soul is too weak, from hindering me to envy his felicity, from opposing it, and from bewailing my cruel destiny. The unfortunate Lover held his peace, after he had thus expressed himself, when the impatient King of *Suevia* not being able to endure, that any person should come to the assistance of a Princess, whom he so mortally hated, resolv'd to secure those two commanders, whose discourse he had overheard, and to punish all those that had kept correspondence with him.

To that purpose he went his ways in great haste, called for *Briomer*, told him all he had heard, and what he intended to do. From thence they went to the King of the *Herules*, and after they had talked to him, according to the violence of their own rash humour, they all agreed that it was better to let alone two persons, that were only concern'd for *Amalazontha's* interests, and could do no considerable harm, rather than to make a disturbance among the *Turingiens*, unless they could become their absolute Masters. I confess, said the King of *Suevia*, it would be a means to give the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, the Prince of the *Huns*, the Kings of the *Alains* and *Gepides*, as also the King of the *Burgundians* himself, an opportunity to seek an accommodation, and I make no question, whether they would not think themselves oblig'd to take the Princess's part, whom we would rather constrain to be of our side. Therefore it behoves us to give a false Alarm to the French Camp, to cause the whole Army to stand to their Arms, and if the *Turingiens* then refuse to fight for us, we may without scruple fall upon them, and cut them in pieces: for in short we must finish our work when once we begin, and utterly destroy those whom we have once provok'd, lest out of a desire of revenge they revolt to our Enemies, or else assist them in those attempts, which they may make upon our Camp.

Godegesile and *Briomer* approv'd the King of *Suevia's* counsel, so that after a long deliberation upon the means, which they were to make use of for the execution of their design, they gave out many private orders, after which they retired expecting day with an extreme impatience. No sooner did the morning begin to display her beams, over those vast numbers of men of war, but several Scouts in a strange terrour came and brought news, that the Army of the *Franks* was advanced on this side the Line, that *Pharamond* had drawn from *Segoduna* to the Mountain, and that they came on in good order, to attempt some great enterprize without all doubt. Upon that the King of the *Suevians* and the *Herules*, were very much surpris'd, while the Captains of so many Nations as compos'd that formidable body, calling the Soldiers to their duty, you might have seen the *Cimbrians*, the *Suevians*, the *Burgundians*, the *Alains*, the *Gepides*, the *Herulians* and *Basternes*, rang'd in an instant under their peculiar standards.

The principal Officers of the *Turingiens* gave the same Orders, and their Queen seeing herself in honour oblig'd to consent thereto, notwithstanding her passion, was cruelly afflicted

to be reduced to that extremity. True it is that her grief was soon allayed, a certain Knight having assured her upon his word, that the intelligence which the Scouts brought was utterly false, and that the *Franks* had not so much as made a shew, of coming out of their Trenches. The serious aspect of him that spoke, soon perswaded her to give him credit, for so noble was the behaviour of that brave Champion, that he attracted the eyes and respect of all the *Turingiens* upon him, how mean soever the Arms were which he then wore. Almost all the Army believed already, what that unknown person had divulg'd, when Prince *Balanir* confirm'd the truth, having only discovered instead of the Enemies Army, some few Squadrons of the *Suevian* Cavalry, that coasted along the side of the Wood, which was between the two Camps. The King of the *Suevians* and *Herules*, were very much incens'd against the Scouts, that brought such a groundless piece of intelligence, and caused them to be diligently sought for in all places, where they knew they were not to be found. Nevertheless, they did not much endeavour to perswade the rest, that it was not by their order that this false Alarm had been given, seeing they did it only to discover the *Turingiens* intentions; and since they had effected what they desired, they were not much troubled that it should be known to be their own contrivance. But though the *Turingiens* stood to their Arms, yet were not the two Kings very well satisfied, for they had much rather that the *Turingiens* had given them cause to accuse them, and a plausible pretence to have fallen upon them.

Immediately they sent for *Briomer*, they walked together to consult what they had to do, and found themselves sufficiently at a loss, what way to go about the execution of their design. In the interim some of their trusty Agents, among those whom they had entertain'd in every Regiment of that great Army, came to give them notice that *Amalazontha* was gone out of the Castle, toward the *Turingiens* Quarter, to hasten their departure, for fear of exposing them to the danger of some unexpected Battel.

Upon that news, they looked all three upon one another, as if they expected from each other, an immediate remedy against a mischief they so little dream'd of. When the King of the *Suevians* being most forward to speak; *What do we stand considering for*, said he, *when Amalazontha openly deserts our interests, and for ought we know intends to joyn with the murderer of the King her Brother? Shall we be more wary and cautious in an act of justice, which we are going about to put in execution, than Amalazontha is in a design so opposite, to the sacred laws of her birth and our alliance. Let us oppose her attempt, let us compel her to act according to her duty and our wills; let us secure her person, and then we may easily take an order with the Turingien Troops.* *Godegesile* and *Briomer* easily agreed, and the latter of the two by the command of the two Kings, put himself at the head of five hundred chosen Horse, to meet *Amalazontha*.

This violent instrument of the passion of two Princes, put himself in a place where the Queen of *Turingia* was necessarily to pass, and no sooner did she appear, but approaching her in a rude manner; *Madam*, said he, *I have order to conduct you back to the Castle, where you may remain with more reputation and safety, than among men of war. You have order to conduct me back to the Castle*, said *Amalazontha* interrupting him, *who is there, I pray, that claims so much authority over a person, that acknowledges no power but that of Heaven? We have not time now to examine those priviledges*, replied *Briomer*, *for the noise and tumult of Arms, either interrupts or will not give us liberty, to hearken to such discourses. Meer piece of insolence*, said she, *dost thou not know that thou speakest to a Queen? Yes, I know it well*, said he, *but I know withal, that it is by the order of certain great Kings that I speak, and that I am to oppose your design.* *How*, said *Amalazontha* thorowly anger'd, *can they hinder me from looking after my own forces and disposing of them, and shall not Amalazontha sooner dye, than see her liberty subjected to the violent humour of Tyrants? Concluding these words she was about to go forward, when Briomer more forcibly opposing her passage; Return Madam*, said he after a very rude and resolute manner, *and expect to make use of that liberty, of which you suffer suspension so impatiently, when you shall give such orders to your subjects, as are conformable to your dignity, and that kindness which you ought to have for the memory of your brother.* And not being contented to have spoken after this manner, he insolently took *Amalazontha* by the Arm to force her to return back to the Castle, while the extraordinary commission which he executed, having made a noise over all the Army, had drawn together several Troops from all quarters of the Camp.

By and by appeared a great body of the *Turingien* Cavalry, commanded by several Officers of the greatest quality in that Nation, highly zealous in Aiding their Queen. But their zeal, how vehement soever it were, did not equal the eager fury of two Knights, who separating from the rest of the Body, flew among *Briomer's* Guards, threatening them in a most terrible

terrible manner, *Uld, Barbarians*, they cryed, and not being able to use more words, they explain'd their meaning in deeds more conformable to their anger, for with two prodigious thrusts of their Lances they laid several of the *Sueves* upon the earth, while others trembled for fear; and after that, drawing their Swords, they fell in with the rest with so much valour and impetuous fury, that the *Turingiens* that followed them had soon disorder'd *Briomer's* party. In the mean time, those two Champions fought every where for the Leader of that affrighted crue, at what time the King of the *Suevians* and *Herulians*, understanding that *Briomer* was in danger, hasted with several Troops, either to bring him off, or to defend him; on the other hand, the rest of *Amalazontha's* Forces advancing, there had began an encounter which might have prov'd bloody enough, if *Balamir*, followed by a Body of the *Cimbrians*, together with the King of the *Gepides* and *Basternes* with their own Life-Guards, had not come in time to prevent it.

The Generous King of the *Britains* also, who could not endure to keep his Bed at such a time as that, notwithstanding the inconvenience of his wounds, called for Horse and Arms, and whatever his faithful *Dinocus* could persuade to the contrary, he could not hinder his valiant Master from joyning with the Prince of the *Huns* to assist him either in composing the difference, or in fighting as occasion should serve. All the Captains that knew the famous *Constantine* gave a great shout for joy, and indeed the presence of that great King, who was already highly reverenc'd in the Army, was very useful to *Balamir*, who with a surprising swiftness rode from Rank to Rank, prayed, entreated, menaced, and at the same time made use of his Sword, as necessity required. *Ardaric* and *Humbert* acted little less vigorously; and *Rosamond* and *Albifinda* shewed themselves at the Castle Windows to the most eager of all the Troops; the fair Queen of the *Cimbrians* also made continual signs with her fair hands, call'd the principal Officers by their names, and spoke to them, either as she saw them act, or according to that power which she had over them. To so many deeds, and so many words, *Balamir*, *Constantine* and *Ardaric* added so many arguments, and so many pressing instances, addressing themselves to the King of *Suevia*, representing to him, that the Army in destroying it self would become a prey to King *Pharamond*, so that at length the very name of *Pharamond*, so odious to the enraged King, appeas'd some part of his anger, and settled him soon after in a capacity to follow their advice, such was his fear of disuniting an Army which was to fight against the King of the *Franks*. *Godegesile* and *Briomer*, whom the conformity of their humours, and their hatred against *Pharamond*, rendered faithful partners with the King of *Suevia's* temper, moderated their fury, so that all the rest of the Troops, according to their example, finding the heat of their animosity to cool, that had stirred them up one against another, suddenly retired, and all the tumult was quieted and calm'd in less time than they took to engage themselves. In the mean while the two Champions that fought so heroically for the interests of *Amalazontha*, had flung themselves among the *Suevians* that *Briomer* commanded, and had open'd themselves a way to the very Queen of the *Turingiens*, that she might behold them sacrificing their Lives, in defending her from the assaults of her enemies. But when they saw that the disorders were wholly pacified, they alight, and casting themselves at *Amalazontha's* feet, they gave her to understand in very passionate words, that how great and heroick natural courage might be, yet love oft-times heightens it, especially when the person belov'd, appear'd to be expos'd to any danger.

What contentment did they not enjoy, after their honourable labours, to talk to their lovely Mistress and Queen; and how strange do you think was the surprize of *Amalazontha*, when the two Champions not seeing any of the *Turingiens* near her, litting up the Vises of their Helmets, whether to breath, or to talk with less trouble, O Heaven, cry'd she, when she saw and knew them; but not able to say more by reason of her astonishment and weakness, caus'd by the agitation of a strong passion, she fainted away in the Arms of her two Lovers, who ran hastily to her succour. Their present fear hinder'd them from being sensible of their happiness, though they no sooner perceiv'd that the fair Queen was in no danger, and observ'd the new charms of her languishing looks, but they felt those extasies of pleasure which there are few persons able to comprehend; yet were they not a little perplex'd, notwithstanding so sweet a satisfaction, they both envying the part which they severally participated in that joy, and therefore looking upon one another as furious enemies, and considering one another as the mutual obstacle of each other's pretences; *Methinks*, said the younger of the two, with a kind of envy, *that your diligence is not altogether so necessary; for though there be some occasions wherein there may be need of much help, there are others where multitude does more harm than good. Since you so well understand the difference of such occasions,* replyed the other very impatiently; *you may do well to leave me alone with*

the Queen, not being obliged to give your self any farther trouble.

The respect which they had for *Amalazontha*, was the reason they said no more, beside that they had no leisure: For at the same time *Balamir* and *Constantine* arrived, who finding the Queen of *Turingia* in a condition, to be conducted back to the Castle, the Prince of the *Huns* himself took that office upon him, neither he nor *Amalazontha* being willing, that *Constantine*, wounded and feeble as he was, should put himself to the trouble of a civility, prejudicial to his health. The Queen of the *Cimbrians* and the Princess of *Suevia*, affrighted as they were, did not fail however to come and meet the Queen of the *Turingiens*, and in the mean while that they were all three talking, what persons of their Sex could say upon accidents of the like nature. *Dinocus* got the King of the *Britains* into his bed, while *Arderic* and *Humbert* stayed with the King of the *Suevians* and the *Herulians*, to hinder them from any farther extremity of violence. But the first of those two Princes, seeking for an object of his choler, which he could not moderate; "Will they not however permit me," said he, to seize and punish as spies those two unknown Knights, who came yesterday in the evening into our Camp, and fought before my face for *Amalazontha's* interest? "How," said *Godegefile* and *Briomer*, can they deny the demands of a great King, and what the laws of military discipline expressly require? *Arderic* judging well that their fierce humours would proceed yet higher, if there should be any satisfaction of that nature yielded to, undertook to speak, and return'd for answer that it was but just, to leave those two unknown persons, to the rigour of the laws of war, if they were not own'd by some of the chief Officers. "But Sir," (said he pursuing his discourse, and addressing himself to the King of *Suevia*) ought we not first to understand from the Queen of the *Turingiens*, whether those two persons belong not to her, and are not in her pay; not that it is my Aim that you should send to complement *Amalazontha*; but on the contrary I will take charge of that Affair my self, for as I have not manifested any disaffection to that Princess, I can Act without being taxed, for having any thing of malice or heart burning in demanding that satisfaction.

He pronounced these words after such a manner, that it might be perceived that he was not altogether unwilling to second the Animosity of the King of the *Suevians*. In the mean while, as he was truly generous, and had beheld with marks of great esteem, the valour of those two Knights, at whom by his conjecture they aim'd; he ordered the Captain of his Guards to send to the Queen of the *Turingiens*, to the end she might have time to provide for the safety of those two valiant persons. On the other side, the King of *Suevia* having no great confidence in the King of the *Gepides*, secretly dispatched some of his own creatures, with orders (by the consent of *Godegefile*) to joyn themselves with the *Herulians*, and to go and seize certain of the *Turingiens*, whom he particularly pitched upon, that he might be inform'd from their mouths, though it were by constraint of the Rack, who and where those two persons were, that fought for the Queen of *Turingia*. But in the mean time that in seeking for them, they began to raise a new tumult, they were got a good way from the Camp, with those Officers that had conniv'd at their escape: And while they rode upon the side of a wood upon the left hand; seeking for a place convenient for the design which they had in their heads. At length they made a stop, and looking furiously one upon another, "It behoves us," they cried, before we go farther, to shew that we can fight more than one way, for the fair Queen of *Turingia*.

Their Esquires and the *Turingiens* in their company, immediately opposed their purpose, but all persuasions and Arguments were in vain, so that the two Champions being at a Carricks distance one from another, turn'd head and ran one against the other, with an equal fury and equal success. So terrible was their encounter, that their Lances flew in a thousand Splinters, and their Horses already weary and too weak, to sustain so rude a shock, fell upon their Cruppers and afterwards tumbled backward upon the ground. Their Active Riders quitted their Stirrups in a moment, and drawing their Swords flew upon one another a foot with the same fury. And their passions that transported them, causing them to despise defensive Arms and all manner of wariness, they threw away their bucklers, dealing such blows as made their Steel strike fire. Already the blood trickled down their Curiaffes, and without doubt their Combat had had a fatal end, if two Knights, noble in their outward appearance, and attended by others of meaner quality, had not interposed between them. They were both magnificently Arm'd, and the majesty of their deportment attracted veneration: so that they had no sooner allighted, and couragiously thrown themselves between the two exasperated Combatants, but they parted them, maugre the obstinacy of their inveteracy. "Valiant Knights," cried he to whom all the rest gave a respect, what reason can you have to draw these Swords one upon another, that you ought rather to turn upon the Common Enemy.

There are particular interests, replied one of the Assailants, that more powerfully incense than general quarrels: And for my part, replied the other, I do not believe that the Enemies which we have are common to us both. I see well then, replied the other that had parted them, that you are engaged in a private quarrel, and that it is not for me to enquire into the occasion. I see though discretion permits me not to demand any discovery thereof, however I am not thereby prohibited from suspecting the justice of the cause: So that I have nothing else to do, if I am not deceived in my conjectures, but to make it my request to wait till that fair person, who has put their weapons into your hands, declare her self, and by her own choice make the one happy, and the other unfortunate.

To these he added other words so perswasive, that the two Rivals were convinced that they could no longer continue the marks of their Animosity, however in taking Horse they could not but declare by their eyes, that they were no way pleased at this disturbance. and that their greatest comfort was the hopes they had, that it would not be long ere they met again. Afterwards they turned toward those unknown persons, who had been so diligent to serve them, and having given them to understand, that it was for weighty considerations, that they did not discover their faces to persons of their dignity, such as they appeared to be, especially in the Camp of the *Cimbrians*, they beg'd them for the present to dispence with that point of good manners. The two Knights would willingly have known those two valiant Heroes that had gained their esteem, but that opinion which they had already conceived to their Advantage, prohibited them from pressing any farther, a thing to which they had so little inclination of themselves. Being all on horseback they took toward the Camp, when the two Rivals soon perceived, that they were the King of the *Burgundians*, and the generous *Gondemar* that had parted them. That these two Princes made a falley forth of the Line of Entrenchment with *Salamir*, and that while the *Cimbrians* under their famous General, scouted to the right hand toward the Meadows, they had been picketing upon the left hand toward the Wood, from whence they were but newly come. By that time they were thus inform'd, the generous *Gondemar* approached them, and after he had considered their faces; *Valiant Strangers*, said he, since 'tis not your desire to be known, I will in no wise oppose your intentions, but I am afraid that you cannot for that reason, be received into our Camp as you really deserve to be: but to salve that fear, you may if you please accept of Quarters with the King of the *Burgundians*, where you may remain with safety and free privacy: and I make no question but those offers which we shall propound, may reduce you to our party, whatever advantages you may have by being engaged to the contrary. This behaviour of yours, does no way surprize me, answered one of the unknown persons, for the reputation of *Gondemar* is so well known, that it is hard to say, whether his virtue be more admired in *Pharamond's* Camp, than reverenc'd among the subjects of King *Gondioch*. However I dare not accept what you so obligingly offer: But the reason which I have to refuse it, shall never hinder me from testifying my acknowledgment upon all occasions, wherein I may give proof thereof, without wounding those laws which to me are inviolable. As for my part, replied the other unknown Knight, I am glad there is nothing that hinders me from taking part with the generous Prince of the *Burgundians*, or from hoping that in following my own inclination, I may have the opportunity to find you in the Enemies Army: For I see well that destiny made us to agree in one thing, that we might differ in all others.

He uttered these words so softly, and at a time when *Gondemar* was obliged to speak to the King his Brother: So that his Rival answering him in the same manner; I know, said he, that we are not both of the same party, and I should be very well contented but that I apprehend, you have thereby the advantage of seeing a divine Princess every day, whose company is forbid to me. But I cannot tell, said he, whether you will quietly enjoy an honour, which a competitor like my self, is resolved to dispute with you to the last gasp. This discourse which might have renewed their passion, was interrupted by the approach of *Gondemar*, who began to talk of general news, till they arrived at the Camp where they found all things quiet. For the Prince of the *Huns*, the Kings of *Albion* and the *Cepides*, had been very successfully industrious, to calm the late disturbance, having laid before the opposite party, that it belong'd to *Amalazombas's* Officers, to look after the observation of discipline among the *Turingiens*, as it was their duty to punish spies and deserters of their colours, in the quarter belonging to their several Nations, but that no person but the Queen alone had power to dispose of her own forces. So that at last the King of *Suevia* himself, notwithstanding the violence of his humour, would not oppose *Amalazombas's* resolution, but consented to the departure of the *Turingiens* with less reluctancy, especially when he understood that their Queen would not leave the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, whereby her person being in hostage, there was no danger that her Army would joyn it self with *Pharamond's*.

The two Rivals being both deeply concern'd at that news, and passionately desiring to see *Amalazontha* before the departure of the *Turingians*, turn'd toward the *Burgundian* Princes, and testifying their several engagements to them, took their leaves, and went feverally with a purpose to contrive how to bring about their design. The Officers who waited on them at that time made it their first care to see their wounds dress'd, which being neither large nor dangerous, the impatient Rivals were in hopes not to keep their Beds long, nor would they have been perswaded to take their Beds, till they had been at the Castle, but that they were inform'd that there would be a world of company with the Queen of *Turingia* all the rest of that day. But if they were overjoyed when they were led to the Apartment of the person beloved, they had still the ill luck to meet and hinder one another, immediately their distaste began to renew; for they no sooner beheld the fair cause of their love, but they look'd upon themselves as objects of hatred. The Queen of the *Turingians* chid them for the surprize which they had put upon her; but how unwilling soever she were to receive the the visit, she would not presume to refuse it, admitting them with all the civility that might be. True it is, that when she was going to speak she blush'd, and while she laid one of her fair hands upon her face to hide the change of her countenance, she fetch'd a deep sigh, *Ab, Prince*, said she to the youngest of the illustrious Lovers, who was indeed the passionate *Sunnon*: *Ab, Ambiomer*, said she, turning to the other, *to what extremities will you reduce me?* Then she stood pausing a little while without saying any more, but immediately after making answer to her own thoughts, *Is it you*, said she, *that do me these considerable services, and must I always owe to you for the most important obligations of my life?* Instead of saying any more, she appeared all of an instant so prepossess'd, that she gave little heed to what either *Sunnon* or *Ambiomer* made answer in relation to their passionate and tender affections: yet she made an attempt three or four times, that she might shew her acknowledgment, and to expel from her mind a thought that afflicted her in such a manner as might be easily observ'd; which; though she knew was not a thing presently to be remov'd, yet in point of civility she thought her self oblig'd to speak; and thereupon addressing her self to the Prince of the *Franks*, *Sir*, said she, *your pretence has strangely perplex'd me, nor could I see your life expos'd in your Enemies Army, without deeply considering at the same time what could be said to my prejudice, had you fallen under the tumultuous fury of the Suevians and Herulians. What would Pharamond then have said? Would he not have accused me to have reveng'd the death of my Brother with his, and to have sacrific'd the Generous Sunnon to the Ghost of the unfortunate Amalaric?*

After those few words her blushing increas'd; however, being willing to disguise the passion which she had augmented, *Not*, (said she, pursuing her discourse) *that revenge is a thing always forbidden, but that I really believe that revenge of which I speak, could not have been brought to pass with any advantage to my reputation.* *Ab, Madam*, replied the amorous Prince, *the death of Sunnon had been honourable, had you but look'd upon my life lost in your defence as a thing devoted to your service.*

All the while he spoke he kept his eyes fix'd upon *Amalazontha's* countenance; nor was it without an extraordinary trouble that he observ'd a disturbance therein; and that instead of being mov'd to pity, she carelessly turn'd her self toward his Rival, *As for your part*, *Ambiomer*, said she, *think not that I can forget these obligations which you have laid upon me, or that I am not always ready to grant you all the recompence that it becomes a person of my degree to bestow upon a Knight who has so highly and faithfully serv'd me without being thereto any way oblig'd. But after that, he reasonable, and consider that I am a Queen.*

At those words of *Recompense* and *Queen*, the fierce and amorous *Ambiomer* blush'd for madness, not enduring them, but with an extraordinary impatience. Thereupon those Generous Rivals felt the violence of their sorrow increase, but their hatred toward one another diminish, seeing themselves equally unfortunate. So that if the Prince of the *Franks* continued as passionate as before, his Rival was disturbed with motions so contrary and so tumultuous, that he understood not well the nature of them, not being able to judge whether he could always love *Amalazontha*, or whether at length he could suffer himself to hate her; *I see, Madam*, said he, *that you will never be mov'd with the respectful passion of Ambiomer. In the mean time, whatever his descent may be, his heart perswades him that he deserves an illustrious Lady, and that he is not altogether unworthy the advancement which you see him now aspiring to, and that perhaps fortune may not always be so contrary as you make her prove to him.*

After he had spoken these words, and that the Queen her self had given him to understand, that a longer discourse would prove prejudicial, he prepared to be gone as well as *Sunnon*; when the *Turingians* who had introduced them, began to speak in their own justification.

fication. They declared to their Queen the purpose which they had, to perform an Act of courtesie for two valiant persons, that came to present themselves to her. *It was not for any other reason, Madam,* said the most considerable among them, *that I besought Inbergida, when she spoke in the behalf of Sunnon, and that I favoured the purposes of that Prince, as of the valiant defender of your dominions. The former may assure our march, by obtaining from the King his Brother, that neutrality which you demand: and the other will lead us into our Country with that courage, that never forsakes us when he appears at the head of us.* He enforced many other Arguments, whereby he represented to the Queen, how profitable *Sunnon's* mediation would be, when they were to desire a cessation of Arms between them and *Pharamond*, and how useful *Ambiomer* would be to lead the *Turingiens* boldly through all places, where there might be any danger. *Amalazontha* considered those reasons, and and having left the conduct of the whole Affair to the *Turingien* that spoke, the two Rivals took their leaves: Prince *Sunnon*, with little satisfaction and more love; the incens'd *Ambiomer* with thoughts that made his heart waver between love and disgust. While they prepared to depart, with an intention to effect, what *Amalazontha's* Officer had requested them to propose and mediate, the fair Queen found in her self a secret inclination, to write to the King of the *Franks*, and verily believing that she might really do it upon this occasion, she went into her Closet, and there wrote the beginnings of many Letters, which she tore as fast, imagining with her self that she had either not said enough, or that she had wrote too much. So powerful was the conflict of her mind, between the violence of her passion and the force of her modesty. At last instead of writing, she resolved to let those persons act who were less prepossessed: while she her self, to expel an Idea that totally possessed her thoughts, or else to follow an imperious motion, that constrained her to a farther discourse of the King of the *Franks*, went to pass the rest of the evening with the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, where she also found the Princess of *Suevia*.

Rosalind was somewhat surpris'd when she saw her enter, but immediately rising to meet her, she embraced and kissed her, chiding her very obligingly for the little care she took of her self, in not reposing after a day of so much tumult. *In truth, dear Sister,* said she pursuing her complement, *We have great reason to blame you, and I cannot tell whether, far from receiving you with our wonted confidence, we ought not rather to forbear some part of our civility, to punish you for the offence you have committed. What! come into this Apartment, before you gave us time to visit yours? I must needs confess,* added the Princess of *Suevia*, *that I am vexed that I have no more disposition to be angry: However I am glad of this satisfaction, that a person more to be feared than my self, checks you more severely than I could tell how to do. How* (replied the fair and pensive Queen of the *Turingiens* endeavouring to smile) *would you have a person like me perplexed with the Affairs of an Army, to repose her self at her own ease, and give exact and quaint answers to two Princes that understand the world, as well as it were convenient she should know the Art of war?*

These words pronounced with a pleasing aspect, occasion'd a more jocund and brisk conversation, than could have been expected from three persons, whose hearts were too sadly engaged to give overmuch liberty to their thoughts. In the mean while, several occasions offering themselves to make mention of the *Franks* and their forces, these Princesses after they had avoided the discourse two or three times, at length fell to talk altogether of the noble endowments of *Pharamond*, and those two Princes the worthy Brothers of so famous a King, making them the Theme and Subject of their converse, till it was time to part.

The next morning so soon as day appeared, the King of the *Britains* departed in a Litter for *Francfort*, with an extraordinary impatience to see the great *Constance*, and as he left a high esteem of his person, in the hearts of the chiefest part of the Confederate Princes, so could he not part from the generous *Balamir*, without giving and receiving more particular testimonies of a friendship, that seem'd established for many years. On the other side, the *Turingiens* stood to their Arms by *Ambiomer's* order, and *Sunnon* attended by *Amalazontha's* deputies, left the *Cimbrian* Camp to return to the *Franks*. Not but that they had both a vehement reluctancy, to absent themselves from *Amalazontha* without seeing her once more, or that they had not both fair pretences to request that favour: For *Ambiomer* might have desired more precise orders, and *Sunnon* more particular instructions; but *Amalazontha* had given them full commision to Act, as they themselves saw good, and by that cruel civility deprived them of that content, which they would have doubtless preferred before the most absolute and uncontrollable Authority in the world. Nevertheless the Prince of the *Franks* was so well assured, that the King his Brother would grant him whatever he requested, and the Princess her self was already, so well acquainted with the generosity of

Pharamond, that the *Turingiens* made no scruple of beginning their march. They took the left hand way through the Valley, at the foot of the Hill opposite to *Segodunz*, and march'd with all the satisfaction, which the hope of seeing their own Country could infuse into them. As for *Ambiomer*, he, having wholly abandon'd himself to the restless torments of his disquiet, and the condition of his mind causing him to avoid all company, that he might with more freedom consider what resolution to take, march'd every day at the head of the *Turingiens*, at a distance from the other Commanders, and suffering himself to be guided insensibly by the humour that led him to solitude, he entred the Wood, followed only by a few, while the Army march'd by the side of it.

The early Sun display'd as yet but his first Beams, so that the thick branches which a vast numbers of huge Trees oppos'd to the weak light, extended a shade enough to create a kind of terror, in minds less prepossess'd than *Ambiomer's*. But as much prepossess'd as he was by a passion scarce own'd, that caus'd all that disturbance in his breast, he could not forbear from making a stand, and fixing his eyes upon an object altogether extraordinary; he saw several Horsemen that ready to expire, seem'd to swim in their own blood, and if such a person as *Ambiomer*, bred up among Arms beheld them without astonishment, yet could he not without a surpris, cast his eyes some three or four paces farther. In short he not only discover'd a magnificent Chariot, the Horses being taken out and tyed to several Trees, but also he beheld a certain person, whose excell'g beauty deserv'd to be admir'd, than the strange condition of her fortune, to be pitied and reliev'd by persons the least generous and compassionate. How magnificent soever were her habit, now particular the fashion, *Ambiomer* stood not to consider them so exactly, finding that he had enough to do, to admire that charming unknown beauty: for there was never any thing seen whiter than her complexion, never a more lovely tincture than hers. All her Lincaments so regular, the shape of her face so miraculously proportionable, only her Eyes that ought to have darted forth a thousand Flames, and have enlightn'd a beauty so accomplish'd, were fix'd, either by the hand of some remorseless death or a deadly swoon. That fair unfortunate, worthy to fetter the most untam'd liberties, was her self in Chains, having her fair Arms tyed, by barbarous and impious hands to the pole of the Chariot: an object so surpris'g, suspend'd all *Ambiomer's* former meditations.

The tumultuous thoughts that a little before turmoyl'd his Soul, were on a sudden quite becalm'd, while the torments of his disquiet losing their force, suffer'd the motions of softness and good nature, insensibly to take possession of his heart, without being able either to know or examine the cause: For he found it was impossible to see so many beauties expos'd to inhumanity, without being mov'd to pity. He rode therefore up to the Chariot, he Allight'd, cut the Stranger's bonds, and desiring to know with the same swiftness, whether she were in a condition to be further reliev'd, he laid his hand upon one of those fair Arms that he had unlock'd. Immediately whatever virtue that happy hand had, it could not chuse but tremble, whether out of respect which that divine person infus'd into it, or the fear that *Ambiomer* had that she was past recovery. True it is that this fear soon vanish'd, for the diligent Knight not only perceiv'd that the unknown Beauty still breath'd, but some few moments after saw that she came to her self, she open'd her eyes and turned her head toward her deliverer. In that posture several stately Plumes overshadow'd the attire of her head, and underneath them a magnificent wreath of costly precious Stones twis'd with her hair, darted forth a rich and glimmering Lustre, to which the lively colours of the feathers were artificially suited, though nothing comparable to that Celestial fire that sparkled from the eyes of that divine person. Those fair Eyes were large and proportionably distanc'd, and it was to be question'd whether that languishment which then eclips'd their beams, did not make them more supportable by moderating their Lustre, or whether it did not cause their charming Rays, more victoriously to Triumph, by insinuating into the heart, with a more dangerous sweetness, as being neither suspected nor formidable. *Ambiomer* had not time farther to consider her disposition, nor could he speak when he would, his mind was so strangely possess'd. For the Stranger after she had diligently observ'd his goodly proportion, and consider'd his diligence, at length unlock'd the fairest lips in the world and thus brake silence; *Knight*, said she with a grace that had something in it of a secret charm, *Your behaviour gives me to understand, that you are not only no associate with those that persecute me, but that I may find in your Generosity, a Sanctuary against their violence.*

She utter'd those few words with an aspect so obliging, and the tone of her voice so charmingly harmonious, that *Ambiomer*, notwithstanding his trouble and his love, perceiv'd that those words had a power to make an impress'ion in a heart less capable to receive it.

it. And thereupon after he had very earnestly beheld the unknown Beauty, and perceiv'd that she was neither sick, nor hurt, *Madam*, said he, *the succour that I have afforded your distress, is no more than what you might have receiv'd in any part of the world, but if fortune, which too ordinarily appears the enemy of the persons most excellent, have rais'd you any adversaries, I will do that in your behalf which you cannot expect but from those persons who are most faithful to your interests.* In the mean while, *Madam*, if it be your pleasure that I should induci you to the Camp of the *Cimbrians*, there are three great Princesses in that place who need understand how to be just to merit, they will doubtless be a comfort to your affliction, and cause you perhaps to forget those strange accidents of the cruel effects whereof I have been a witness. In their company you will be at quiet, in safety, and without hazard of your reputation. And if it could be possible that you never should have heard of the charming Queen of the *Cimbrians*, the fair Queen of the *Turingiens*, and the amiable Princess of *Suevia*, I should not presume to bring you to such persons whose fame had never reach'd your ears. Though I did not know those persons, answered the unknown Beauty, whom you mention, and whose merits all the earth adores, I could not be coy to follow your proposal with an entire confidence; we will go therefore to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, since it is your pleasure, nor will I make any scruple for once to perplex her with the familiarity of an unfortunate person, since my present condition obliges me to it; besides that, I am not unacquainted with the Generosity of the illustrious *Rosamond*; and I have hopes also, that that fair person will have no reason to repent of granting me her protection; for perhaps I may bring an additional strength to her party that may not be contemptible. But, generous Knight, before we set forward toward the *Cimbrian* Queen, give me leave to seek for a Chariot, wherein are two of my Virgins whom they caus'd to be driven along with me, as also to make enquiry what is become of a certain Knight who fought in my behalf with a most eager zeal. He cannot but be very happy, *Madam*, replied *Ambioner*, whatever be his condition, nor could he give a sufficient price to be so honourably eterniz'd, though he purchas'd it with the loss of his life. But, *Madam*, how great soever his happiness be, it behoves us to encrease it, by letting him understand it, while we second your goodness with our care and fidelity.

When he had thus said, he call'd for several Horsemen, and commanding them to take several ways, he order'd them where to meet when they had any tydings to bring, or atter they had beaten the wood in vain: as for his own part, whatever disposition he might have naturally to have made one in the search, he staid however by the Chariot, and having caus'd the Horses to be untied from the Trees, and put in again, and he caus'd the Troops which he lead, to make a stand, and return'd himself to the *Cimbrian* Camp, riding by the Stranger's side, and entertaining her with a discourse of those persons whom she was shortly to see. He believ'd that he might do her that kindness without being wanting in *Amalazontha's* service, nor to the employment which he had accepted, not doubting also but that *Pharamond* would consent to a neutrality, that would secure the *Turingiens* from being assailed or molested by his Forces: so that there was no danger in his absence for a short time: or if the King of the *Franks* (which he thought very improbable) would not yield to the request of a fair Queen that had no desire to remain his enemy, for his beloved Brother's sake, that then it was the best way for the Princess's Forces to make a stand, whereby they might be able to retire to the Body of the Army before the *French* could fall upon them and cut them to pieces; besides, his reason told him, that he could not in honour forsake a person of that Dignity, which the unknown person shew'd her self to be. In her converse he tasted that sweetness which for some time suspended his disquiet, and more than that, made him wish more than once that *Amalazontha* had been of the same disposition, or that the Beauty of the Stranger, which was not inferior to that of *Amalazontha*, had had the same power over his heart. But who can assure thee, said he, that a person altogether yet unknown to thee, can have a greater kindness for thee than the Queen of the *Turingiens*? Is it out of her acknowledgment for the service which thou hast done her? Or is it because she seems not to be so royally descended? Does she not come to proffer a considerable reinforcement to *Rosamond's* Army? Flatter not thy self, *Ambioner*, thou art only a *Voluntier*, whose extraordinary courage can have no high pretences: besides that, thou thy self dost merit thy own misfortune, for but thinking a thought of infidelity. Love *Amalazontha*, be not a weary of suffering for her, and leave to her will and the power of thy own destiny the entire disposition of a life wholly at their mercy; notwithstanding all thy reason. Thus he continued constant to his first passion, whatever delight he took to behold and converse with that amiable Stranger.

As they were just approaching to the Trenches, a Knight of a comely presence, who had followed in as great haste as three or four wounds would permit him, drew near, and was received

received by the unknown person with a great deal of satisfaction; *I always believ'd, Madam, cry'd he, that Heaven would not forsake a great and virtuous Princess, to the rage of the most violent Prince that ever was: and I began yesterday in the height of your misfortune to conceive some hopes from the encounter of the Burgundians, who repulsed your enemies, and kill'd a good number besides. And you, valiant Ambiomere,* (said he, turning to the Knight, of whose name and merits he had already inform'd himself) *though you may not find a recompense to your liking, in the pleasure which you take to do good actions, you will have no reason to blame your fortune. She has led you to the aid of a Princess, or rather, the Queen of the Lombards; now that the famous Agelmond, Monarch of that warlike nation, has ended his life by an accident absolutely deplorable. Yes, Ambiomere, that King is now no more: he that had extended his Conquests to the River Vittula, he that triumph'd over the Forces of Honorius near the River Po, he has lost the sight of day; or if he yet beholds it, he enjoys it only among those torments which an imperious passion causes him to suffer, and which can only tame his invincible heart.*

At those words *Ambiomere* could not forbear blushing, and turning toward the Princess of the *Lombards*, he bowed himself with all respect to the very pommel of his Saddle, and demanded pardon for all the faults which his ignorance might make him commit. But that charming Beauty, instead of taking upon her that majestick aspect which her Dignity seem'd to demand now she was known, redoubled her civilities, looking with far more sweetness and mildness than before. *Ambiomere* had found it had overcome him, so that his heart murmured against the humour of the *Turingien* Queen, while he declared his acknowledgment to the Stranger, yet with so much discretion however, as not to violate the Laws of decency and good manners, which were to be observ'd before so great a Princess. But while he testified his desire to be better inform'd, they beheld a Chariot driving toward them, wherein were certain Ladies, who as soon as they drew near the Princess, she knew them for her attendants, being very glad to see them again after so great a danger escap'd, a danger so terrible and dreadful to her.

The Strangers still look'd all like persons affrighted and fear'd; yet could they not forbear looking upon their fair Mistress, so great was their fear for her, that they could hardly believe what they saw. However, at length giving credit to the testimony of their eyes, they could no less forbear then to shew the excess of their joy for an escape so fortunate and unexpected. They could not for their lives make answer to the Princess without disorder, many times speaking before she had made an end; their surpris'd passions being no way conformable to exactness of behaviour, so that those young Ladies, transported with duty, though they observed not so much regularity at that meeting, yet they manifested the greater proofs of a zealous affection.

That converse lasted not long, because they presently enter'd into the Camp, where the quality of the Stranger was no sooner divulg'd, but every one seem'd overjoyed, some out of hopes of new assistance, others less interest'd, regarding nothing but an extraordinary merit, of which they saw so many apparent symptoms in so fair a person. The Queens of the *Cimbrians*, of the *Turingiens*, and the Princess of *Suevia*, receiv'd her with an extraordinary joy, giving her all the testimonies of their esteem and friendship that could be expected upon the first interview. *Is it possible, Madam,* said *Rosamond*, *that the Heavens who fram'd your outward excellencies with so much care, should take so little to preserve them from the cruel outrages which you have suffered. Since fortune, Madam, has been so daring as to offer such insolencies to your person,* replied the Princess of the *Lombards*, *it is not for me to complain of her persecutions in your presence, especially having procured me the advantage which I now enjoy. We could have wish'd,* replied the Queen, *that the advantage which we reap by your arrival had made us happy by some other means: but since that cannot be, it lies in our part to give you that content, as may bury in oblivion some part of the afflictions which you have endured.*

That which most astonish'd them, was, that the Beauty of the Princess hardly gave way to *Rosamond's*, and disputed with advantage the priority with *Amalazomba's* charms, nor would yield to that pleasing sweetness that render'd the Princess *Albisinda* so amiable. *Albisinda*, as well out of her own inclination, as by the order of the King her Father, resign'd her Apartment to the Princess of the *Lombards*; but the fair Stranger would not accept but of part, and that too with such a graceful unwillingness, wherein there was no mixture of the obstinacy of complement. *Ambiomere*, whose intentions of siding with the *Cimbrian* party, became to be nois'd abroad, was civilly receiv'd by the most illustrious persons, to whom *Amalazomba* presented him, as believing her self oblig'd thereto, and the King of *Suevia* himself, who had chang'd his opinion at the same time that he understood *Ambiomere's*, infinitely carcs'd that famous Warriour, the more to endear him; he desired also that they

they would carry the Knight that came along with the Princes to his Quarters, not only recommending him to the most able Chirurgeons, but appointing him also Attendants convenient for him.

As for *Ambiomer*, he felt only a pleasure mix'd with grief at the unlook'd for sight of *Amalazontha*, while he still perceiv'd in her countenance the same surface of indifferency, which was the cause of all his misfortune, so that he took his leave, not one jot better satisfied than before. However, before he departed, he had a great desire to see the wounded Knight, who was laid in one of the King of *Suevia's* Tents, believing himself oblig'd to give him a visit. He no sooner came into his Chamber, but after the first complements pass'd between them, *I do not believe*, said he, *that the barbarous usage shewn to the Princess of Lombardy, might arise from any other cause than a Lover's despair.* 'Tis very true, (answered *Grimaldus*, (for so was that strange Knight call'd) *that it was only the revenge of a disdain'd Prince that carried him to that height of violence.* *That disdain*, (said *Ambiomer*, interrupting him, and blushing he knew not for what reason) *had not produc'd so strange an effect, had it not been accompanied with a very severe jealousy, or that the Princess of the Lombards had not look'd more favourably upon a Rival less unfortunate.* *It is most certain*, reply'd *Grimaldus*, *that she never yet loved any person in this world, and that a peculiar niceness of her judgment has hitherto preserv'd her heart in an entire liberty.*

Those last words caus'd a secret joy in *Ambiomer's* heart; but as he was about to reply, with an intention, without question, to pick out some other assurances of a conjecture that did not a little please him, the King of *Suevia* entred, and chang'd the subject of the discourse: so that *Ambiomer* presently departed, and took Horse to return to *Amalazontha's* Army.

But if the King of *Suevia* were officious to gain the friendship of the *Lombard* Knight, as well by civil complements, as by an obliging care of his person, to the end he might procure him the alliance of his Nation, he was no less diligent to execute a resolution which he had taken, together with *Godegesle* and *Briomer*, to mischief *Amalazontha*: to which purpose he gave out several private orders, hoping thereby to raise a Rebellion in *Turingia*. While he was hammering this revenge, he forgot not to look after his own security, and the concerns of the Army. For he made no question, but *Pharamond* understanding the departure of *Amalazontha's* Troops, would either assail some Quarter of the Camp, or come to a general Battel; and therefore being fierce and cunning, he had a mind to be before hand with the King of the *Franks*, and to assail him first in his own Trenches. He was in hopes that such an attempt as this might dazle the *Cimbrians*, who could not but from hence conjecture that the enemy was either very weak, or in great disorder, when experienc'd Captains, notwithstanding the departure of the *Turingiens*, should go about to force their Camp. He was of opinion also, that this venture was not very dangerous, but only to outward appearance, for that it might cause a present surprize and fear among the *Franks*, but if afterwards they took heart, and went about to repulse the *Cimbrians*, it was an ealie thing to retire in good order before an Army that could not come out of their Trenches but in confusion: besides this consideration which concern'd the general interest of the Nation, there were others more particular, being the products of his own natural temper. His restless humour was incessantly covetous of novelty, and his mind was so turmoil'd, that he was so far from fearing lest any ill success should render him miserable, that every moment he desired a change, imagining, as it is natural to the unfortunate, that a change could not but be favourable to his purposes. The hatred which he had against *Pharamond*; his love for the Princess of the *Franks*, and his jealousy of his own Son, the Renowned *Viridomar*, rent his very heart to pieces, and he found no other ease but in believing he should vanquish his Enemies, revenge himself upon the King of the *Franks*, and make himself Master of the Destiny of a Beauty so charming, yet so troublesome. But when that flattering thought gave way to contrary sentiments, and that the King began to think he might be beaten, then he trembled, and was often just upon the point of changing his resolution. Then he considered that there was some reason to hope for a considerable reinforcement of the *Lombards*, and a more considerable succour from the Emperour *Theodosius*, at the request of *Varanez* and *Martian*. True it is, that his impatience causing him to apprehend the delay and the vexation of a tedious sufferance, he began by and by to resume his first resolutions. For he believed the loss of the Battel would be less insupportable, than the restless passions that tormented him; and so representing to himself the utmost extremity to which the loss of a Battel might reduce the vanquish'd, he found that he should not be without help in a condition so deplorable. In short, he was of opinion that the fair Queen of the *Cimbrians* would flee from a victorious Enemy, and that her Lovers would

would not fail to remove her as far as possibly they could, from the most formidable of their Rivals. At other times his envious humour made him imagine, that after the defeat of the *Suevians*, a house so haughty and so triumphant as that of *Pharamond*, would never march into an unfortunate Family: And that there was little likelihood that they would consent, to bestow the Princess of the *Franks*, upon such an unfortunate person as *Viridomar*. No sooner was he thus confirm'd in his design, but he resolv'd to make a tryal: And for that the greatest part of the Princes interest'd in his party were *Pharamond's* Rivals, he hop'd the more easily to gain their consents. However he thought it convenient to consult, upon such a weighty enterprize, and to hold a Council of War, in the Apartment of the *Cimbrian* Queen.

In the mean time *Amalazontha's* Envoy, having obtained from *Pharamond* more than he desired, returned from the Camp of the *Franks*: And he had no sooner given an Account of his Commission to the Queen his Mistress, but he went to *Rosamond's* Chamber, where he was expected to relate what news he had brought along with him. The *Turingien* being willing to declare, what he had observed most remarkable in the Enemies Army, or else to testify his acknowledgment to so great a Princess, who had without doubt oblig'd him by her generous behaviour, told a thousand things to *Pharamond's* honour, as well in relation to the qualities of his person, as to what concern'd the discipline of his Army. He told them also what he had been inform'd, by the chiefest among *Sannon's* Officers, and assured them that *Artabure* had declared for the *Franks* as well as *Constance*, and that they had sent for fifteen thousand Horse, part of the Armies of *Honorius* to reinforce *Pharamond*. That it was reported that though the Emperour, did not presently declare himself openly for the King of the *Franks*, however that he would not deny to let *Constance*, dispose of good part of his forces for his Assistance, provided they did not march under the Eagles or Standards of the Empire, against those Kings that were accounted his confederates. *This is not all*, said he, pursuing his relation, *the King of the Tongres is dead, and Taxander being sent out of Italy, and having taken possession of his Realm, is also coming to joyn with the Army of the Franks. Is it possible*, said the King of the *Herulians*, *that he who is a Prince of so much courage, and was always bred up in the Emperour's Court, should so little consider future consequences, as to joyn with a powerful Stranger, whom he is concern'd to oppose, unless he intends to let him extend his Empire to the Gates of Rome? It may be*, said *Balamir*, *he aims at Agrippina, seeing that Atfard the Father of Marsinda, who is reported in the Camp of the Franks to be dead, was crowned King of Cologne in the Reign of the great Theodosius. However it be*, replied the King of *Suevia*, *I cannot imagine that either the Emperour or the King of the Tongres will be against us, or that they will infringe the rights of an ancient Alliance, to take part with a people that have harass'd so many Kingdoms, and who if they enter Gallia, cannot but cause a dread of many other resolutions. But though it were true that so boisterous a tempest threaten'd us, and that all the several interests in the West that obey Honorius, should rise against us, ought not we to prevent our Enemies, by falling upon them without any more ado, before they come to be strengthened with such formidable Aids?*

All the Princes that were then present with the *Cimbrian* Queen, agreeing in opinion with the King of *Suevia*, that it was necessary to put in execution the design which they had contriv'd, gave orders to have all the Army in a readiness the next morning, as soon as the first dawn of day appeared. *Rosamond* after that went to visit the Princess of the *Lombards*, where she found *Albisinda* and *Amalazontha*, and by reason the resolution which had been taken did no way please them, their Converse was very melancholy. To free themselves therefore out of that perplexity, instead of any farther discourse about the Army affairs, they talked together of the Accident which had befall'n the Princess of the *Lombards*, and of the desire they had to know the particulars.

While they were thus busied in company with the fair Stranger, all things were in a hurry busily in the Camp. All the Commanders being busied in their several employments, and preparing for a Battel, which they resolv'd their valour should eternize. They also declared how glad they were of a general Battel, having received advice that above fifty thousand men, were coming out of high *Germany*, and advancing toward the *Rhine* without discovering their design; insomuch that the next morning by break of day, all the whole Army was in Arms. Immediately the King of *Suevia* chose out of his own Nation, such as were the nimblest and the stoutest, and order'd them to march with all speed, toward the Wood which was between the two Camps, with an intent to make themselves Masters of the most convenient Posts, commanding twenty Squadrons more immediately to follow them, and assist them if they found any resistance. As soon as the Sun began to scatter his beams, upon the tops of the neighbouring Mountains, the whole Army mov'd in little bod-
dies

dyes out of their Entrenchments, so that the plain afforded a pleasing yet terrible prospect being covered with so many thousand Armed Soldiers, and so many different Nations. *Belamir* and *Arderic* commanded the right wing, composed of *Cimbrians*, *Alans*, and *Cepides*. The *Suedes* and *Herulians* that made the left, were led by their own Kings, who would not remove themselves, from those advantageous Posts which they had seized. The main Battel where the *Basternes* and *Burgundians* fought, obeyed *Gondiech* and young *Humbert*, *Gondemar* was in the rear with a reserve of six or seven thousand Horse, and Prince *Contran* stayed behind to guard the Castle, and *Briomer* to defend the Camp, being both left behind by reason of their contention in the Council, where there were as many interests as several parties.

The great quantity of ground which they took up, in Advancing toward the Camp of the *Franks*, spread their number to a large extent, and such a vast body of men in Arms appeared, that few mean courages would have abided their approach. But the undaunted *Pharamond* grew joyful at the sight, and having laid a design little different from that of his Enemies, he was as little surpris'd at this time, as he used to be at any other, wherein the same occasions presented themselves. He had this Advantage also to hope, that he might now fight his Enemies without offending *Rosamond*, in regard he was assaulted, and that the just Queen had given him leave to defend his life, against which certain too severe and rigid Laws, had Arm'd so many thousands of men. That invincible King issued forth of his Trenches, commanding the right wing himself that he might keep along the side of the wood, judging well that the most violent assaults would be made, where he had most reason to believe, the Enemy had most opportunity to make use of policy and Stratagem. The choicest of the *Franks* therefore were led by their own famous King. The *Gauls* and *Tongres* who composed the left Wing, were commanded by *Marcomire* and *Alexander*. The vigorous *Sumnon*, who notwithstanding the inconvenience of his wounds, was resolv'd to be a Horseback and make one in so great a Battel, led the main Battel composed of *Sicambrians*, *Marses* and *Angrivarians*. *Prism* and *Claramont* remained behind to guard the Camp. *Genebaud*, *Meroveus*, and all the other renowned Captains of the *Franks*, took their several charges under the King and his two Brothers. *Artabure* was resolv'd to draw his sword for the King of the *Franks*, as he had already freely offer'd, and *Pharamond* to testify the confidence which he had in his friendship and good conduct, gave him a reserve of six thousand Horse, to succour as he should see occasion.

The Army of the *Franks* marched out of their Trenches in this order, courageously moving after the Standard, of the most valiant King in the world: And seeming rather to march to a victory than to a Battel, the success whereof is to be doubted. Immediately *Pharamond* who knew all the most Advantageous Posts, rode to the top of a little Hill, from whence he observed the countenance of the Enemy: And seeing them come on in very good order, and all the plain covered with Squadrons and Battalions, he was infinitely pleas'd within himself: For besides that his warlike humour delighted in objects of this nature, he was in hopes they would come to a general Battel, and that that Battel would decide the famous quarrel, that had Arm'd the greatest part of *Europe*: So that which way soever he looked upon the conclusion of that war, he saw that whether he overcame his Rivals, or whether the greatness of his courage, would not permit him to survive the loss of the Battel, however there would be an end of all the misfortunes of his life. Nevertheless his last thoughts made not so deep an impression as his hope, and therefore as one that had order'd all things like a great commander, and whom the sight of the many Lovers of *Rosamond*, did but inflame with new fires, his Heart prognosticated nothing but happy success.

He exhorted his soldiers in few words, and riding from Rank to Rank with his Viseer up, he inspired the multitude with a double proportion of courage. And to make the best advantage thereof, he put himself at the head of a body of Cavalry, that covered one of the Wings of the Infantry, because the plain contracting it self in that part, forms a kind of a valley, between a little Rivoler that discharges it self into the *Segna*, and many great trees that grow at the foot of the descent. *Pharamond* had no sooner charged his Enemies, but the Combat began to be boistrous and bloody: And as the valiant King there signaliz'd himself, he was valiantly seconded by *Genebaud*, *Cleomer*, and *Cloderic*. The latter having the satisfaction to serve his renowned Master, without fighting against his own Nation. The Kings of the *Suevians* and *Herulians*, forced the great *Pharamond* to retire more than once, and made a resistance so much the more case, by reason that they poured down a shower of Arrows, from one side of the Wood where they lay shelter'd, and unawares charged upon the Flank of the Enemy. The King was nothing at all surpris'd, but making use of the

same stratagem that he had done before against the *Cimbrians* and *Burgundians*, he oppos'd against the Hill such Troops as were most likely to make head. *Cleomer*, who command'd them, alighting, and having stood the first discharge of their Arrows, not only entred the Wood, but still covering themselves with their Arms, as they advanc'd toward the Enemy, they fought with great advantage. Then *Pharamond* broke in among the *Herulians* with more ease, and seeking every where for the haughty *Godegesile* both as his Rival, and the most noble enemy he could meet with in that part, he challeng'd him several times in threatening language; nor did the King of the *Herulians* avoid his enemy how terrible soever he was, so that they easily found one another, and fought hand to hand, notwithstanding the great throng: *Pharamond* made a thrust at the Viser of his Helmet with more vigour than success, the Sword only gliding along the Steel, which but the more incens'd the enrag'd *Pharamond*: thereupon turning about, as the King of the *Herules* did, they continued a most terrible and bloody Combat: *Godegesile* made one thrust that pass'd between the lower end of his Helmet and his Curia's, but made only a very slight wound, while Heaven it self preserv'd so great a Prince. But *Pharamond* on the other side let drive so ponderous a blow upon the head of his enemy, that he fell stunn'd and wounded at his Horses feet. *Pharamond* immediately commanded *Cloderic* to take care of him, and to carry him off with a sufficient Guard; whereupon the *Herulians* betaking themselves to flight, he vigorously pursu'd them, spurr'd on by the ardour of his courage, and an impatient heat that drew him to the *Cimbrian* Camp. The King of *Suevis* maintain'd the fight against *Genebaud* with more vigour than could be expected from his age, when the haughty *Gondioch*, who had got no small advantage over *Ibere*, came to his assistance, and with a numerous Squadron put a stop to the victorious Troops of *Pharamond*. *Artabure* being join'd with *Ibere*, rallied the *Angrivarians*; and as he was about to charge the *Burgundians*, their King came to the assistance of his left Wing, and *Gondemar* with a Reserve re-inforc'd the *Basternes*, who were near overlaid by *Sunnon*. The *Roman* however sustain'd the *French* Prince; and *Pharamond* in the interim giving a fresh onset, broke in with a most dreadful impetuosity upon *Gondioch's* Troops, so that he put them to the Rout, notwithstanding the valour and experience of their courageous Prince. *Gondemar* no sooner understood that the *Burgundians* began to give ground, but he hasted to their relief, while *Sunnon* opposing *Artabure* against *Humbert*, ran to assist the King his Brother. There it was that so many deeds worthy eternal memory were perform'd, while *Sunnon* and *Gondemar* signalize themselves in a high degree, while *Gondioch* outdoes himself, and the great King of the *Franks* does miracles of valour. The earth was covered with dead bodies, both parties being at once both Vanquishers, and both vanquish'd. But at length after an extraordinary obstinacy the *Burgundians* gave way to that Nation that was destin'd to give them Laws. *Gondioch* and *Gondemar* so often rallied their Troops, that *Pharamond* could not quite vanquish them, till within view of the Trenches. The fight whereof occasion'd strange commotions in his heart; for presently he thought to enter the Camp, to make his victory more entire, and that he might triumph over his Rivals in view of the divine Queen; but that hasty thought giving way to the deep respect he had for his ador'd *Rosamond*, he look'd upon the Entrenchments of the *Cimbrians* as sacred Barricadoes, which were not to be rudely attempted: How, *Pharamond*, cry'd he to himself, *wouldst thou commit a crime, and lose that innocency which thou hast hitherto preserv'd, notwithstanding all those offences committed against thy will? Repent, bold Prince, and if thou hast not a mind to deserve those punishments which thou sufferest, look upon those Trenches with veneration, that have the honour to enclose the Queen whom thou adorest.*

While love is thus more powerful than his ambition, and tenderness possesses his Soul, notwithstanding the clattering of Arms, and noise of Victory, *Artabure* makes the *Basternes* give way, and drives them to their Trenches: and for that the same consideration did not withhold him, which stopp'd the passionate King of the *Franks*, he enters the Camp, and there fighting with the same valour that had purchas'd him his renown, he beats the hair-brain'd *Briomer*, and advancing fiercely toward the party that *Gontran* command'd, after some resistance breaks in among them, gains one Gate of the Castle, and giving order to send for a Chariot, he commands a prisoner presently to conduct him to the Apartment of *Rosamond*. He was no sooner entred the Chamber, but he lifted up the Viser of his Helmet, and turn'd the point of his Sword downward, and approaching the Queen with all respect imaginable, he let her understand who he was, and thus address'd himself to her, *Madam*, said he, *be pleas'd to permit me to convey your Majesty to the other Camp; there you will find less disorder, and it may be more obedience than here.* How discreet soever *Artabure* was, neither to mention the defeat of the *Cimbrians*, nor the Victory of the *Franks*, *Rosamond* for all

all that could not forbear to sigh: *Then I see*, said she, *that fortune has declar'd her self for our Enemies, and Generous Balamir is lost. That great Prince, Malion, replyed Artabure, is still fighting for your interests; and for those Troops which you call your enemies, they have a thousand times more affection and zeal for your Majesty than those that seem to have espous'd your quarrel.*

Concluding those words, because he was unwilling to lose time, he presented *Rosamond* his hand; and that great Queen thinking it below her Dignity, by shrieks or entreaties to tell me any reluctancy, prepar'd her self to submit to the Vanquisher, and follow where he should lead her. In the mean time, *Pharamond* understanding that the *Franks* were not only enter'd the Camp, but the Castle, was infinitely perplex'd, and hasten'd thither, transported with anger, to punish those that should lose their respect, or fail of their Duty to *Rosamond*, and going up stairs, he meets *Artabure* just coming down, when all astonish'd and forlorn to meet his divine Princess, now a Captive in the hands of the *Roman*: *Ab! too valiant Artabure*, cry'd he, *Ab, my too zealous Friend, what art thou doing? That which becomes me*, answer'd he, *both in relation to your self and the Queen of the Cimbrians. No, no*, (said he, interrupting him) *it shall never be said that ever any force was put upon that divine Princess, so long as the unfortunate Pharamond sees the light of day.*

Concluding those words, he put himself between *Rosamond* and *Artabure*, and throws himself at the feet of the only person in the world who had power to humble him. Immediately so excessive a joy seiz'd him, that he could not open his lips to express his thoughts, believing himself to be the most fortunate of men; nor was he in a capacity to hearken to *Artabure*, to consider that he was not yet Master of the Camp of his enemies, when the *Roman*, to whom at the same time they brought word of the condition of the Army, *Sir*, said he. *Balamir has made our left Wing give way, and pursues it to the very Trenches: he is now about to return, and therefore let us put our selves in a posture to encounter him, and get an entire victory.*

But *Pharamond*, instead of answering, being only busied in beholding the charming Queen, *Artabure* leaves him without any more words, at a time when every minute was to be managed to the best advantage, believing that his departure would sooner perfwade him than all the arguments in the world. But the passionate *Pharamond*, far from following, stays to admire the charming Beauties of the Queen; and addressing himself to her with all submission, *For Heaven's sake, Madam*, said he, *look not upon me as guilty of a new crime; for though I present before your divine eyes an object which they cannot chuse but hate, 'tis not so much out of want of that deep respect which I shall ever pay you to my last gasp, as out of my fear and care lest the Soldiers under my command should commit the least offence displeasing to your Majesty in the heat of a Battel.*

He uttered those words with so many signs of tenderness and deep respect, that the fair Queen after she had earnestly beheld him, return'd him this answer, *Had you never appear'd before me*, said she, *but in this manner with your Arms in your hands, the unfortunate Theobald had been still alive, and I should not have been oblig'd to look upon you as an enemy: but you have obtain'd victories too fatal to me, not to be every day remembred, more especially when I behold you my self the Vanquisher of my Army. Ab, Madam*, replyed he, *if by the loss of a thousand Battels, of a thousand lives, nay, of my honour it self, I could but cause you to forget that which has made me the object of your ill will, instead of justifying my self in reference to the lost life that has drawn so many tears from your eyes, you shall see, Madam, how I will sacrifice to you all things for the revenge of your Brother's death: nay, provided I may but appease your indignation, I will renounce with joy all the Crowns which an ambitious heart can require from fortune and Victory. How happy should I be*, added he, sighing, but a violent transportation hindering him from saying more, he abandon'd himself to the pleasure of beholding that divine face which produc'd that pleasing trouble in his Soul. The fire of his love sparkled so visibly in his eyes, and so evidently manifested it self in his behaviour, and all his expressions, that *Rosamond* blush'd to find her self in such a Labyrinth, that being desirous to oblige *Pharamond* to depart yet taking notice that the noise which she heard of a new Combat, could not move him to leave her company, *See yonder, Sir*, said she, *how necessary your company is among the Franks; and though the memory of Theobald did not forbid me to stay long in your company, you may well think that I ought not to let you fall into the power of your enemies for having set me at liberty. Alas, Madam*, said he, *what can my presence avail among my Soldiers, since there is a necessity that I must be beaten, and that I cannot overcome, as you tell me, without afflicting you? Shall I appear at the head of them, only to be a witness of their being routed? Or shall I rally them again and fight to incur your displeasure. The affliction, which as I have told you, your valour has been the cause of, cannot make me yet*

so unjust, replied the Queen, to take it amiss that you should defend your life, and preserve your honour. Go and fight, said she, both for the one and the other (hearing the noise increase) follow those directions that Heaven and your courage shall inspire, and do not believe that Rosamond ceases to be just because unfortunate.

At those words, uttered not so much with the tone of an enemies voice, as with a sweet moderation mingled with Majesty, the amorous Prince had just so much power over himself as to leave the charming Queen of the *Cimbrians*, perceiving a new access of eagerness to overcome his Rivals, how invincible soever those obstacles were that stood in his way: I leave you, Madam, said he with a sad and respectful look, and since you permit me to defend my self, I will still encounter my enemies, who perhaps will not obtain that victory so easily which I would gladly yield them, for the honour they have of being in your presence every moment, and of entertaining the fairest Queen in the world.

Concluding those words, he departed, and perceiving *Balamir* returning with his victorious Troops, he advanc'd furiously toward him, as being his most formidable Rival. On the other side, *Sunnon*, who had followed the King his Brother, and had seen the Queen of the *Turingiens*, began to think of setting *Viridomar* at liberty, remembering that that Prince had formerly sav'd his life, as well as the Princess *Polixena's*. He had understood in the Camp of the *Cimbrians*, while he lay hid there for *Amalazontba's* sake, in what Quarter the King of *Suevia* kept the Prince his Son. Thither flies he, and after a stout resistance he enters the Chamber where *Viridomar* was confin'd: presently he made himself known, and embrac'd him with an extraordinary affection, Generous Prince, said he, you are free, you are free all manner of ways, and far from being oblig'd to make any satisfaction for the service which I have done you; for I have not yet discharg'd my self of those obligations which you have laid upon me.

After those words he hugg'd him in his Arms, and left him without staying for an answer, whether it were that his business call'd him, or that he did it to leave *Viridomar* his entire liberty without any manner of constraint. The Prince of *Suevia* no sooner perceiv'd that it was *Sunnon* who had given him his liberty, but he was thereupon infinitely overjoyed. At first he resolv'd to follow him, but soon after his resolution staggered; he found he could neither fight against the King his Father, nor against a Prince that had given him his freedom, and the Brother of *Polixena* beside; and thereupon he felt an extraordinary grief, believing that this new favour of fortune was but the beginning of a new persecution. However, it behov'd him to determine quickly, and indeed he had no sooner resolv'd in his mind those opposite considerations that kept his thoughts in suspense, when he understood that the King his Father was in great danger, but that it was not against the Brothers of the Princess against whom he was to appear in his defence: he sends therefore for Horse and Arms, and hastening to the place to which they directed him, he found that the Prince whom he went to succour was wounded, and that he did but weakly defend his life and liberty against a great number of his enemies that environ'd him. The violent King knew his Son, and seeing him come with his Sword in his hand, and a courageous look, his imagination quick and jealous, presently conceived a hundred unjust thoughts. In short, he believ'd that *Viridomar* had escap'd in the hurly burly of the Battel, that he would revenge himself for a great injury, and at one blow assure himself of his future repose; and out of this apprehension looking upon him with eyes inflam'd with choler, *Perfidious wretch*, cry'd he, art thou come to joyn thy self with the Franks, and to deprive me of a life which hinders thee from ascending my Throne, and placing therein the Sister of Pharamond?

The Generous Prince, instead of returning any answer, flies at the enemies of his ingrateful Father, breaks in among them, overturns the most eager, disengages the King; and perceiving that his Horse being run through in several places was ready to fall, the Prince alights and presents him his own, with the same submission as he could have shewn to the most indulgent Father in the world. At length addressing himself to him with the same respect, Sir, said he, will you be pleas'd to pardon me for stirring from that place where I was confin'd by your order.

Upon those words the King of *Suevia*, beheld *Viridomar* with a kind of Astonishment, at first he manifestted something of shame, afterwards being sensible that the acknowledgement, which he owed for so great a piece of service, restrained his natural fierceness, he was so vexed to see himself thus hamper'd, that his very madness appeared in his look, and hindered him from giving any answer. Nevertheless at length; *Viridomar*, said he, you have rescued me out of the hands of the Franks, but what have you done which you were not oblig'd to do? For who can assure me that affection had a greater share in the Act, than desire of honour? Afterwards beginning to think that the generous behaviour of the Prince, would

would make a noise in the world, and that the report thereof would certainly be known to the Princes of the *Franks*, he blushed for Anger, and if he did not run wholly besides himself, it was not so much out of any moderation that proceeded from his reason, as out of the weakness caused by his wounds, and his weariness after a tedious fight, notwithstanding all the vigour of his courage.

Viridomar caused him to be carried to the town, where his wounds were searched; but not being found dangerous, and seeing all those Officers and Attendants about the King, who were most necessary and in whom he most confided, the Prince thought he might leave him without offence, desirous rather to go in search of some opportunity, to discharge himself toward the person that gave him his liberty. To that purpose he drew near his Father, and whispering him in the Ear; *Sir*, said he, *you are free but I am not, and therefore be pleased to let me go, and give some testimonies of acknowledgment to a Prince, to whom I am beholdng for your liberty. Go*, said he, *follow the dictates of your own heart, serve the Enemies of your Country, of your Father and of your Sovereign: for if my carriage has been severe toward you, I make no question but you will justify it by your Actions, now you have your own will.*

The Prince endured whatever was sharp and biting in that answer, with the same aspect with which he was wont to endure all the reproaches of the violent King, taking his leave in a most dutiful manner. He was no sooner mounted but he inform'd himself, of the condition of both Armies, whereby he understood that *Pharamond* was marched to meet *Balamir*. That *Artabure* being about to follow him, was attacked by *Briomer* and *Contran*, and that at the same time, *Gondioch* and *Gondemar* had rallied a part of their Troops, and charged *Sunnon* as he was going to joyn with the King his Brother. *Viridomar* never studied which part to take, he flew to the succour of *Sunnon*, and while he fought against the *Burgundian* Princes with the same valour, that he had at other times opposed against *Balamir* and *Pharamond* themselves, a certain Knight haughty and warlike in his deportment, entered the Camp, and joyn'd himself to the *Cimbrians*. After he had made himself remarkable by his great Actions, he assisted *Contran* where he manifested, by the redoublement of his vigour, that it was principally in defence of the Castle, that he exposed his life. He presented himself before *Artabure*, and fiercely challenging him; *If thou art Sunnon*, said he, *and durst make an attempt upon the liberty of the Turingien Queen, turn thy Sword against me, and if thou canst begin the execution of this design by my death happily for thee. I am not Sunnon*, replied the *Roman*, *but how inferiour soever my valour may be to his, I have no mistrust that it will submit to thy strength.* They had no sooner done speaking, but they charged one another with an unspeakable fury, and though they were often separated by the Throng, yet they met together again.

In the mean time the invincible *Pharamond* opposes the formidable *Balamir*; he saw him marching at the head of the *Cimbrians*, and Advancing toward the Camp with an aspect that manifested the honour which he had won, and the hope he had to have still the same success. For in short, that valiant Prince and the King of the *Gepides*, had so luckily conducted the right Wing, that maugre all the endeavours of *Marcomire* and *Taxander*, they put to flight all that made head against them. At first the Prince of the *Franks*, vigorously opposed himself against the Captain of the *Cimbrians*, but after he had for some time sustain'd the impetuosity of his fury, he was separated by a great body of Cavalry. Then he sought for *Arderie*, to signalize himself by some noble exploit, and having found him he opened himself a passage with his Sword, met with him and prepared to Assail him. And as they were both hardy and stout, and animated with the same passion, they obstinately contended for the victory. Nor was the same fortune that too often shares in such encounters, wanting to second their purposes in removing all obstacles that they had reason to fear, and fatal in its kindness, gave them! sure to give one another several wounds, and to put themselves almost out of a condition to maintain the Combat. On the other side the Prince of the *Huns*, and the King of the *Tongres* met, and both the one and the other overturning all obstacles that made any resistance, they presently knew and assailed each other with a great deal of satisfaction, each other finding in his renowned enemy an object worthy all his valour. Thereupon they displayed all that nimbleness joyned with courage, could produce of admiration. But the generous *Taxander* at last fought with more courage than good fortune, receiving two wounds, for which he comforted himself with the honour of having dyed his Sword in *Balamir's* blood. But then that furious King flew upon the King of the *Tongres*, who received him like an undaunted Soldier; but if he vigorously sustain'd the surly shock, his Horse was overturned, and *Taxander*, as nimble as he was to disengage himself from his Stirrups, had been overwhelmed among a great Body of the *Cimbrians*, if *Balamir*

Umir himself, to preserve the life of so valiant a Prince, had not stopp'd the most eager of the throng. The King of the *Tongres*, whose Sword was up against him, taking notice of that action, was mov'd with his Generosity, so that instead of pursuing his blow, he us'd the following expressions, *I make no question but that you are the famous Balamir, your last action assures me of it, as your valour perswaded me before: enjoy then all those victories which it bebozes me to yield to your conquering Sword, and receive my heart after you have triumph'd over my strength.*

Concluding these words, he delivered him his Sword, but the Prince of the *Huns*, instead of accepting it, commanded a Horse to be brought for *Taxander*, whose quality he no sooner understood, but he return'd him this answer, *Sir, said he, 'tis only to the divine Rosamond that you are to deliver it; if I lack'd by my self, and did not hold my employment under the fairest Queen in the world, I should be so far from receiving that Sword which you offer me, and of which you make too good an use to surrender it into any other hands, that I should not so much as request of you that word which you will not now refuse me, to permit your self to be condued into our Camp.*

To which, when *Taxander* had given his consent, he recommended him to *Telanor's* care, while he continued the pursuit of those affrighted Troops that *Marcomire* strove in vain to rally, or encourage any farther. Not but that he made a stand from time to time with a select number of men, notwithstanding his wounds, or that he did not shew in that retreat an experience beyond his age. But what could he do against the famous *Balamir*, who had rally'd the *Gepides*, and the *Alains*, and had joyned them to the *Cimbrians*? What could he do when the timorous *Tongres* had caus'd a disorder among those Troops which he sought to encourage?

That Generous Prince seeing that he could not stop the right Wing of the Enemy, and that part of that which he commanded was entirely routed, and just upon reentring into the Camp, resolv'd not to survive his bad fortune; and therefore to end his life with honour, he resolv'd to go seek out *Balamir*, to encounter him, and not to leave him till the death of the one or the other had decided the controversy. But at the same time that he parted from the rest with this intention, *Charamont* issuing out of the Trenches fresh and active, labours to rally those that fled, and to lead them on again to the charge. On the other side, the Prince of the *Huns* no sooner understood that the *Franks* were entred the *Cimbrian* Camp, but he began to be in fear of *Rosamond's* being taken, being no less prick'd forward by that noble emulation between him and *Pharamond*. And thereupon passing into the rear of his Troops, he made that the Front, and advances toward the famous King, who, on the other side, in his way to meet him, encounters *Telanor*, beats him, and had the satisfaction to give the King of the *Tongres* his liberty. However, *Sir, said Taxander, give me leave not to make so much advantage of this renowned action performed in my behalf, for I am more powerfully bound to Prince Balamir by my word which I gave him, than the strength of his Guard: so that if your valour could without trouble disengage those whom you have from the crowd of their Enemies, your Generosity doubtless will not permit them to fail of their promises.*

After these few words, not finding it convenient to say more, he took his leave of *Pharamond*, who embracing him with all respect and tenderness, suffered him to depart, not being willing to oppose his intentions so conformable to his own. In the mean time, it growing somewhat late, the two famous Champions foam'd with impatience till they came hand to hand. No sooner were they so near as to observe one another, but they set spurs to their Horses both at the same time, as if they had known one anothers intentions; and meeting in the middle between the two Bodies, they encountred with that vigour and violence, that the air resounded, and both their Lances flew in a thousand pieces: the two Rivals were enraged that those weapons had no better seconded their purposes; and therefore drawing their Swords, they prepared to put an end to a Combat wherein they found themselves engaged more out of a desire of Glory, than out of any animosity, whatever hatred might proceed from their jealousy. But their Troops that followed them, though Enemies to each other, yet inspired with the same Genius at that time, thought good to oppose a resolution which would prove so dangerous in its consequence, the *Franks* being fearful for their King, whatever confidence they had in his valour; and the *Cimbrians* growing pale for their General, with the same affection and tenderness they could have trewd their Sovereign. To which end they courageously clos'd themselves to part their Captains, by that means calling them away to their several charges; so that the great *Pharamond*, and the incens'd *Balamir* were constrain'd to defer till another time the effects of their anger. While they therefore signaliz'd their conduct and their courage, *Vindomar* per-

formed exploits little different: for as if it had not been against the *Suevians* that he fought, he displayed all his courage, and so well seconded *Sannon's* valour, that they quite cut to pieces the *Burgundians* that *Gondioch* had rallied, so that the fierce Prince was obliged to save himself by flight. But *Gondemar* preferring death before a retreat, met with a fate no way correspondent to his generous intention. For he let drive a great blow at *Viridomar*, which he receiving upon his Buckler that was excellently temper'd, *Gondemar's* Sword broke, so that the disarm'd Prince lay now at *Viridomar's* mercy of whose confinement he had been the cause some weeks before.

In the village and at the foot of the Castle, they fought with different success: *Genebaud* was entred the Camp in Aid of *Artabure*, when that valiant Knight who was already known for *Ambiomer*, desirous to hinder that conjunction, advanced toward the *Frank* Prince, having left *Gontran* and *Briomer* to make head against *Artabure*. But that famous *Roman* renewing his courage, to put an end with honour to the Actions of that day, made the hairbrain'd *Cimbrian* give ground, and the *Burgundian* Prince making an obstinate resistance, was wounded, and he forced to surrender his liberty to the valour of his Enemy. Nevertheless, that good fortune which every where followed the *Franks*, forsook them against whom *Ambiomer* fought, so that how gallant and courageous soever *Genebaud* was, after a fierce and bloody combat, he met with the same fate in fighting his Adversaries, as *Gontran* had met in undertaking *Artabure*. But at length notwithstanding these brave exploits, that valour displayed in both Armies, there was now a necessity that so many Renowned warriors, should part sooner than they were willing: For their heat and fury continued longer than the day, and the envious night far more speedy than they desired, spread it self in an instant over the world, as it were to bury in darkness those noble exploits, the remembrance whereof never ought to perish in the memory of men.

The End of the First Book of the Ninth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK II.

P*Haramond* and *Balamir* brook'd it with impatience, that the only obstacle which they never thought in a condition to hinder them, had spoiled their generous design, either to vanquish or dye. They were not content to have carried away the victory wherever they fought, seeing that at the end of a Battel, that had been so honourable to them both, they both met with a new vexation, to be parted from an Enemy before they had triumphed over his valour. In the mean time as much Heroes as they were, their fury must yield to the laws of nature, so that they were constrained to retreat, before the obscurity of the night engaged them in a pal-mal confusion, without being able to discern their own from the Enemies Troops. The first care they took after their retreat, was not only to relieve all those that stood in need in both Armies, but both parties had free leave granted to search by Torch-light, for all such wounded

wounded persons, of whose recovery there was any hopes. The next day having caused the most considerable among the slain to be buried, they made great fires upon the place where the Battel was fought, to prevent the corruption of the Air, after which they began to compute their losses. Certain it was that the Advantage was really on the Franks side, however not so great as to pass for an entire victory. They had killed about five and twenty thousand of their Enemies, but they had lost above fifteen thousand: And if the King of the *Herules*, generous *Gondemar*, and Prince *Gontran* were prisoners to the Franks, the *Cimbrians* had among them the King of the *Tongres*, and Prince *Genebaud*.

Besides these famous Warriors, of whom we are obliged to make particular mention, several others illustrious both for their birth and merit, though less celebrated by fame, were either slain or else signalized themselves in that Battel. Nor was valour that seems generally, to make the only decision in such memorable encounters, the only virtue to be admired: For generosity produced as noble effects, which are looked upon with as much esteem and as much satisfaction, as Acts of valour how honourable or glorious soever. For that reason when the Battel was at an end, there appeared no farther hostility or enmity; the prisoners on both sides being treated with as much care, as if they had not changed their Camps. There were also some proposals mentioned for a Truce, long enough to give time for the cure of the wounded, and to make new Recruits and new Alliances. *Viridomar* seconded the proposal to his utmost, for he had surrendred himself to *Sannon*, not believing that he could serve the King his Father in the *Cimbrian* Camp, or dispence with a voluntary taking the *French* side. On the other side the generous King of the *Tongres* surrendred himself to *Balamir*, and for that his valour and his last exploit, had won him the esteem of all the confederate Princes, he was visited by all those that were in a condition, and was most obligingly complemented by all the rest: and which he found himself so highly obliged, that being otherwise charm'd by the merit of *Pharamond*, he thought he could not more profitably employ his time for the good of both Armies, than to mediate a peace, after a Battel that had so much weaken'd their force. Before he published his design he discovered himself to the Prince of the *Huns* much to this effect; Sir, said he, were you not one of the most valiant Princes in the world, and that the justice of your mind were not as well worthy our admiration, as the grandeur of your courage, I should not presume to tell you that it is time to put an end to a war, where you daily win new additions of honour. But I am assured that you will not prefer the interest of your Reputation, before the good of many Nations that bewail their calamity, and that you have a generous consideration, that many men must lose their lives in these encounters, where you only signalize your valour: And therefore, Sir, if you think it convenient that I should second the good intentions of the great *Constance*, I shall be overjoyed by my labours and my travel, to settle peace among so many desolate nations. I will write to the generous *Roman*, who has already began to mediate for a general accommodation, and after I have given him an account of the condition of affairs, out of that respect to that great personage, under whom I served my first apprenticeship in war; I shall conjure him to take upon him once more, a negotiation, the good success whereof will determine, the miseries of a good part of Europe. He said no more, when Prince *Balamir* returned him to answer; Though it were certain, said he, that fortune had always befriended me in fight, yet she never favoured me so much that such a Prince as you, should think me worthy these obliging expressions which you have bestowed upon me, nor indeed to give me any great authority in our Army. The power which it may be thought I have, depends upon the illustrious *Rosalmond*, and whatever my inclinations may be either to peace or war, I must absolutely submit to that fair and great Queen. It is she, Sir, who is chiefly concern'd in those differences, to which you would endeavour to put an end: and it is to her that you are to address your self, in relation to the treaty, which you proffer to undertake with the famous *Constance*. I will say this however, (if you will permit me to tell you my thoughts) that it will be very convenient before you make any overture, that you declare what engagements those are, that tie you to the *French* interest. The Queens of the *Cimbrians* and *Turingiens*, have confusedly heard many remarkable stories of your life, and being I know they mainly desire to understand the particulars, it will be a very easy thing for you to satisfy their request, and at the same time to let them know, how you came to take part with *Pharamond*. There are so few accidents in the story of my life, worthy the curiosity of those fair Princesses, replied *Taxander*, that I could willingly be dispens'd withal, where I can give so little satisfaction. It will be a very difficult thing for you to deny what they demand, so soon as you do but see them. I know sufficiently already, replied *Taxander*, how far renown has spread the wonders of those miraculous beauties, which is the reason I fear that all the recital which I can make, will not merit their attention. And most certainly I shall be very short, without repeating those accidents in war, of which they have had sufficient information.

He had no sooner concluded those words, but they brought him word, that there was one of *Rosamond's* Attendants who was come to complement him on the behalf of the Queen his Mistress, and he had no sooner return'd his answer to the first civility, but he received many others of the same nature. The Queen of *Turingia*, and the Princes of the *Lombards* were no less obliging than *Rosamond*, not only to complement *Taxander*, but also the Kings of *Suevia*, and the *Geptides*, who were considerably wounded. They gave a visit to the King of *Suevia*, from whom the afflicted *Albisinda* would not be absent. They also sent to visit *Balamir*, *Ambiomer*, and the King of the *Hasternes*, though according to the opinion of the Chirurgeons, there was no necessity for them to keep their Chambers above two or three day. They also manifested their intentions to visit those Princes who were threatened with more tedious distempers, as soon as things were recovered out of that disorder wherein at present they were. But they were not a little surpris'd the next morning, when it was told them that *Balamir* was come to the Castle, and desired admittance into the Queen of the *Cimbrians* presence: for indeed that amorous Prince could no longer deprive him of a sight so precious: and the King of the *Tongres* who was a little troubled with his wounds, being only in one Arm, soon followed him, to see those celebrated Beauties of whom the whole earth had spoken with so much admiration. *Balamir* presented him with a comly grace, and *Taxander* accosted the Queen after such a manner as was not only conformable to the grandeur of his Birth, and his new Dignity, but like a person accomplish'd with that polite and brisk behaviour which he had learn'd in the Court of *Honorius*. The Queen on her part most obligingly receiv'd the King of the *Tongres*, and after the first complements of civility *Taxander* thus proceeded, *Madam*, said he, *the Generous Prince of the Huns was willing that I should come hither to receive an honour which might cause me to forget that which I have lost in the Battel; or else perhaps he is too much concern'd for your interests, as not to be contented to have made me yield my Arms, unless he also deprive me by your presence of the liberty of ever bearing them again against a divine Princess whose Beauties no person can have the power to resist. You see for all that,* (modestly replied *Rosamond*, turning the subject of the discourse) *that our side was never the more successful: so that if Balamir had not performed prodigious exploits of valour to our advantage, we had been at this time at the mercy of our Enemies. The Franks might overcome the Cimbrians,* replied *Taxander*, *but whatever success accompanied them in the Battel, never would the renowned Pharamond have been the less a Captive to the divine Queen of the Cimbrians. As you express your self,* replied *Rosamond*, *I am apt to believe that it was out of a particular friendship that you adher'd to his interest. Nevertheless, as the alliance which you made so all upon the sudden, has surpris'd all the world, we desire to be better inform'd, when you shall be pleas'd to think it convenient, to the end, that if you have any reason to dislike a confederacy with us, we may be able to satisfy you in that particular, and to let you know we are not so unjust as the world perhaps would persuade you. That shall be when you command me, Madam, and something which Prince Balamir has already told me as from your Majesty, shall make me go a little farther in recounting to you all the passages of my life that have made any impression in my memory. If this recital be not inconvenient,* replied the Queen, *I know not why I may not request it this very time, At least, Madam,* replied the Prince of the Huns, *you need not fear that the length thereof will prove prejudicial to the King of the Tongres's health; for by what I understand of his disposition, he will but very slightly pass over his own famous actions; so that you are like to hear but one half of his History. Provided he conceal nothing but what renown has already publish'd,* replied *Rosamond*, *we shall have no cause to complain. In truth,* replied the complaisant *Taxander*, *I cannot tell whether I shall be quick enough to discern those things which I am to speak, from what are unnecessary for me to repeat. But at the hazard of committing never so many faults, I must not refuse to be my own Historian, since the fairest Queen in the world commands me.*

He had no sooner concluded those words, but the illustrious Personages took their Seats, when the King of the *Tongres*, after a short study, thus began the Relation which they required of him, addressing his speech to the beautiful Queen of the *Cimbrians*.

The History of Taxander.

I Am of opinion, that it is not without a kind of vain glory that we reproach fortune; for besides that, she is continually said to be an enemy of virtue, we rather chuse to accuse her humours and follies than our own weakness; otherwise her blindness might testify that we suffer unjustly, and beget that compassion which we seek in our misfortunes, as the most pleasing consolation of the miserable. But, Madam, though that power which I mention be not so culpable as she is ordinarily describ'd to be, yet she ceases not to render her self formidable, when she unites her Forces to those of love, and when she displays her follies in the vast Empire of that dreaded Deity, I have but too severely prov'd the truth hereof, as you will find in the pursuit of this discourse. But before I give you an account how maliciously she seems to have taken pleasure in the persecution of my life, I will tell you the reasons that perswaded King *Marsandus* to send me, together with my Sister *Cleomira*, to the Court of *Rome*. *Atsard* King of *Agrippina*, Father of the Prince that gave me life, some time past made a league with *Theodosius* the Great, and fought for his interest with so much valour and conduct, that he thereby not only obtain'd to be his Lieutenant General over all *Gallia Belgica*, but also to be Sovereign of the *Tongres*. *Marsandus* inclin'd by his breeding and nutriture to serve the *Romans*, preserv'd the same affection for *Honorius*: so that the Princess *Cleomira* and my self were no sooner of an age fit for travel, but he sent us both to *Rome*, how loud soever they murmured in *Germany* against so odd and severe a piece of policy. Nevertheless, the prudent King did not deprive himself of the sight of his children, nor in all liklyhood seem to forsake them, but that they might live with more security in the Capital City of the West. He saw the Cloud that was gathering into a dismal Tempest. He saw a numberless number of Nations preparing to make an inundation upon the fairest and most pleasant Provinces of *Europe*, and that his Dominions were threatened to be made a thorough-fare for all those people who were taking Arms to the ruine of the Empire. Therefore he was willing to give *Honorius* that proof of his friendship and fidelity, to the end he might be assisted by him, and not be suspected at such a time when all the world was up in Arms against him, either to shake off the *Roman* yoke, or to usurp the Territories of the Empire. You know, Madam, that the King of the *Huns* had a design little different from that of *Marsandus*, and that he sent the Princess *Theodolinda* to *Rome*, who was Sister to that great Prince who was the cause of my now speaking before your Majesty. The *Romans* look'd upon that fair and noble Stranger with a great deal of respect, insomuch that *Honorius*, the Empress his wife being dead, had those thoughts for her which made the *Huns* expect a closer alliance than what was at the present intended. There was nothing then talk'd of, but of pastimes and pleasure, so that during a time that seem'd to be consecrated to joy, I made it my business to visit the fairest persons, that were the ornament of that Magnificent Court, and to be acquainted with *Claudian*, and some other of the wits who flourish'd at that time. There I reform'd and polish'd among the Ladies whatever I had brought of rude and unbeseeming out of our Climate, and I not only in a short time understood the delicacies of the language, but I ventur'd also to make several Verses which *Claudian* did not disapprove; nor did these soft and pleasing amusements hinder me from the exact exercise and practice of my Arms. And whenever there was any occasion of going to war, I went along with the young Nobility that were covetous of Honour, without any regard to my Dignity. Thus was my life happy, besides that, I had a name among the Soldiers: during the Winter I signaliz'd my self by actions of Gallantry, if I may be permitted to speak after that rate; and for that I had no particular ties, but fought to please all in general, there was not a Lady that would not be of one side or other in the matches which I made, or who took any offence at my eagerness or diligence. Those pastimes were laid aside upon *Stilicon's* death, the particulars whereof are known to all the world, *Honorius* for some days appearing very sorry, to shew that it was not by his order that *Heraclian* had slain his illustrious Favourite. But as he began to live at more liberty, having cast off a yoke so burthenfome, he receiv'd news that the Banks of the *Rhine* were throng'd with several vast Armies. Soon after there came Embassadors from the King my Father, who laid before him the troubles of *Germany*, and conjur'd him by the memory of *Theodosius* to assist his Allies, who had always faithfully fought under his Eagles, for the Glory and Honour of the Empire. They

added

added some days after, that several Nations had revolted from the *Romans*, that the *Nemetians* had taken part with *Pharamond*, that the *Senonois* held for *Gondioch*, and that they had also admitted him into their Territories. Hereupon I presently prepared to hasten to the Aid of *Mirisandus*, but as I was about to depart, we understood that the *Franks* and *Furgundians* were divided, and that having made Alliances, with all the neighbouring Princes that were taking Arms, all those great Armies were marching one against another, instead of pouring themselves forth upon the Territories of the Empire. Thus the King of the *Nemetians*, the Prince of the *Senonois*, having exposed themselves to the displeasure of *Honorius*, sent privately to *Rome*, made large Presents to *Heraclian* then in great favour, and requested him to make their peace, yielding to any conditions which he was pleased to prescribe. *Heraclian* gave them to understand, that he found it a very difficult thing to obtain what they demanded. That *Honorius* was bitterly incensed, and that it was but just that they should have at least as much respect for a person of his quality, as the Kings of the *Huns* and *Tongres* had shewn already. That all the world had heard of their proceedings, and that they ought therefore to do more than other Princes less powerful, who had broken with the Emperour, not only by giving the best hostages they could, but by adding other circumstances more obliging.

During that negotiation which endured for some time, *Heraclian* laid before them great obstructions, to the end that *Salison* and *Cavaria*, (for those were the names of the King of the *Nemetians* and Prince of the *Senonois*) might be the more engaged to him, and that they might shew the greater submission to *Honorius*. On the other side he extoll'd his great pains to the Emperour, telling him how he gained Nations every day, that he had perswaded and almost reduced *Salison* and *Cavaria*, to resubmit themselves to his government, which they were just upon the point to do, upon very advantageous terms to the Empire. True it is that he managed this Address with a great deal of policy, for soon after it was reported that the Prince of the *Senonois* was coming himself to *Rome*, and that the King of the *Nemetians* would send his Wife and his Daughter in his behalf. It was about that time, Madam, that *Heraclian* was possessed of the government of *Africa*, and that the Emperour himself became desperately in love with that incomparable Lady whom he had seen in *Trajan's* Gardens.

Heraclian who was at that time with *Honorius*, felt the same fire, but as it is not their history which I am now relating to your Majesty, instead of rehearsing the particulars of their engagement, I will only content my self to say, that there were few that could boast of their freedom, that had seen the most admirable *Bellamira*. I may also add that there were few beauties in the world, more accomplished or more charming than *Bellamira's*. But while *Heraclian* visited that most wonderful beauty on the Emperour's behalf, instead of speaking for his Master, though he only acted for his own proper interests, there came to see him a young Knight of a goodly presence, and full of wit and briskness. *Heraclian* however, would not let him be seen but by few, confers with him only in private, and makes the world believe that this very Stranger, was the Prince of the *Senonois*, who was unwilling to appear according to his quality, until he had received that favourable answer from the Emperour, of which he was in hopes. Nevertheless he openly obliges him to the service of a lovely Lady, the Sister of *Artabure* whose name was *Hersilia*, who thereupon gives her such pretended proofs of a violent passion, that *Hersilia* was thereby thorowly moved and engaged.

In the mean while *Heraclian* is advertised, that certain Ladies were arrived within six miles of *Rome*, at a house belonging to one of his nearest kindred named *Camilla*. Thither goes he, and notwithstanding his love for *Bellamira*, good manners and business detain him there for some days. *Maximus* and *Ariobindus* follow him, out of a curiosity incident to youth, and they were no sooner returned, but they talked of nothing else but of a wonder, which they had only had as it were a glimpse of, yet they durst compare her beauty, to the charms themselves of the Princess *Placidia*. The next day *Flavian* and young *Aëtius* made a match to go visit *Camilla*, and so earnestly desired me to make one that I easily yielded, *Aëtius* was desirous to take *Artabure* and *Claudian* along; but *Artabure* refused to visit a person, that had obtained from him to his prejudice, one of the most principal governments of the Empire, and who too often did him many other ill offices with the Emperour. On the other side *Claudian* consented to our request, but as he had been a Favourite of *Stillicon's*, (as his famous works made manifest) he had too much a desire to go to *Camilla's* house to visit *Heraclian*, as to discover what news he could pick up in the Country. No sooner were we come nere a place, that was to prove so fatal to my purpose, but I felt an alteration within my self more than ordinary, and which without doubt was only an ill o-

men, of what was afterward to befall me. I presently blam'd my own weakness, and striving to recover my former briskness, *Have ye thought upon,* said I to *Flavian*, *what method we ought to observe, in coming all four together to Camilla's house. For my part, I think it is better for us to divide our selves, and that while Claudian and Ætius, enter at that gate which we see before us, that we go about and seek to get in at the Park. 'Tis very true,* said *Claudian*, *in consent with me, that there may be some jealousy of so much company, in a house that entertains the favourite of Honorius, and so beautiful a person beside. As for doing any injury to the favourite;* replied young *Ætius*, *it will not be any great prejudice to go all together. We shall yet find less perhaps,* replied *Flavian* smiling, *if we have any desire to serve that fair Stranger, whom we are so covetous to see. With that,* said I impatiently, *happen what will it is not convenient that they should suspect that we come by agreement, or to have made a match, which cannot be pleasing to those persons, who it is evident desire not much company.*

Concluding these words I left *Ætius* and *Claudian*, and rode toward the Park Gate, at a swifter rate than before, as it were led thither by the compulsion of my own destiny. *Flavian* followed me, and we were no sooner enter'd and allighted, giving our Horses to our Pages, but we took a walk by the side of a brook to avoid seeing *Camilla*, till *Ætius* and *Claudian* had been some time with her. For my part, though I had been at the same place several times before, I must confess that it never seem'd so pleasant as at that time. The Air seem'd more sweet, the chirping of the Birds more delightful, the brooks more fair and clear than ordinary, the verdure and shades seem'd to have put on a new spring, and a more pleasant dress than ever before I had observed. In short, all things seem'd to dispose my heart, to a certain pleasure which is inseparable from the first engagement: or to say better, all things seem'd to open that unfortunate heart, that it might more easily receive the poison which threaten'd it, and which was to please it for the present, only to punish it afterwards with a tedious pursuit of torments.

Thus conducted by a kind of meditation wherein I found a secret charm, I went toward a pleasing tuft of trees, and entering into the shade I perceived two women admirably shap'd, and who had something of the stranger in the Air of their faces. But because of the sumptuousness of my riding habit, and for that *Flavian* who appear'd to be a person of quality, seem'd to follow me with a more than ordinary respect, the Ladies left the bank of the Rivolet free, and very ceremoniously retired. Yet were not my thoughts so strongly prepossessed, as to hinder me from taking notice of their behaviour: And therefore Advancing toward them, I civilly told them, that it was for me to quit a place which already belong'd to them, that Ladies had no less privilege in *Italy* than in other Countries, and that they were less to be ignorant what it was to give way to a Sex that owed all respect and duty to theirs.

While I was using these complements, one of the Strangers turned her head as if she had been fearful that my discourse was overheard, though indeed it were only to see whether I had not wak'd a young person who was fallen asleep, in reading a book which she still held in one of her fair hands. She sat upon the grass at the foot of a great Tree: But, Madam, what was it I saw there, or how shall I be able to describe her? I drew near, rather moved by a natural impulse, than by any reflexion that I could make, and Advanced gently forward to a place where I might more conveniently behold her as to the fatal point, whither a force beyond the power of my resistance constrained me. I saw (alas! what have I suffered for that sight, after the happiness but of one moment?) I saw a wonder which immediately defaced all impressions of the most accomplished beauties, imprinted in my memory before, raising those disturbances in my mind that I never was Accustom'd to. My eyes were dazzled with the whiteness and splendour of her complexion, exact was the symmetry and of a perfect hue, the tincture of those vermilion lips that clos'd her mouth, besides a thousand graces more triumphing in her beauty, that wanton'd among the curls of her white hair, that dangled upon her cheeks at the pleasure of the gentle Breezes. As all contributed to my ruine, the same wind discovered to me part of her youthful bosom, and that charmed me altogether, so that although I could have defended my liberty against all those charms, yet others more powerful that displayed themselves in an instant, would soon have utterly enthralled it.

In short that admirable person that slept not very soundly not long after wak'd, and as if those celestial eyes had been only closed to create more fire, they darted so many beams at once, that methought my soul was all of a flame. I was dazzled, astonish'd, lost my remembrance and the knowledge of every thing. In short I saw nothing but that divine unknown person, being touch'd with such an unusual passion for her, that my heart never felt before. While I beheld her in an extasie more then ordinary, and with joy suck'd in the poison that afterwards wrought so fatally, she perceived me, nor was I wanting to make a
most

most respectful obedience. But when her women drew near her, they no sooner had given her their hands, but she rose, and after a civil courtesie she took a little path that cross'd the way where I was, and went away before I was capable of taking any resolution. However, I knew that my eyes and my heart followed her; and when the Trees had robb'd me of the sight of her, my eyes were curtain'd with darkness, and all those things which I beheld with pleasure lost both their charms and lustre. Not but that I had still some kind of veneration for the place which that celestial Beauty had left, for I envied the Grass on which her fair Body had lain. Methought that after that Honour it rose again more green and lusty. And a thousand thoughts like these had come into my mind, had not *Flavian* interrupted me, *Sir*, said he, smiling, *surely that beautiful Stranger is a most dangerous person in matter of revenge, that for so slight an injury done to her repose in making her, has disturb'd yours after so terrible a manner. I cannot tell,* (answered I with all the brisknets that I could possibly recollect) *whether you are already acquainted with the humour of a person that you never saw, but I am sensible how much you are deceiv'd in reference to my concerns; for I never received more content than I had in meeting that wonderful unknown Beauty. I would have run after her, had modesty permitted me, and notwithstanding the dangers which you have the unkindness to make me apprehend, I long impatiently to see Heraclian, to the end, he may bring me into the company of that person which you call so dangerous.*

Concluding those words, instead of staying to hear *Flavian's* answer, I went in great haste to *Camilla's* House; nor had I gone many steps before I saw *Heraclian*, who was coming together with *Claudian* to meet me. He received me with all the civility I could have expected from a haughty Favourite, who was not only Governour of *Africa*, but also by reason of *Honorius's* weakness, pretended to be Master of all the affairs of the West. He told me his Kinswoman had been extremely surpris'd at the honour which I did her, and that for his part, he was bound to make me a particular acknowledgment. But my mind was so little at rest, that I return'd him no direct answer, and my countenance appear'd to chang'd, that *Heraclian*, who never believ'd me to be his Friend, thought that I had some private design, and that I had not come to that place, but that I knew I should there find the Queen of the *Nemetians*, and the Princess her Daughter: insomuch that if *Claudian* had not interrupted the discourse, it had not perhaps continued very pleasing. True it is, that we soon discovered *Camilla* in a green Court between the House and the Park, whither, as I gathered by *Heraclian's* words she was also come, together with *Atius* to meet me. I immediately made haste to salute her, when she, after the usual complements upon such occasions, desiring me to go in and rest my self in a magnificent Parlour, *Madam*, answered *Flavian*, *either I am deceiv'd, or Prince Taxander has less need of repose than to go seek where he may lose that sweet rest which he enjoy'd when he enter'd the wood. I confess*, said I, *I met there a most incomparable Beauty, from whom it did not a little grieve me to part. And therefore, Madam, as you would not that I should repent of my coming to give you a visit, I make no question but you will permit me once more to see so amiable a person, to the end, that being accustomed to her charms, I may return with as much quiet and repose of mind as when I came hither.*

Those words somewhat puzzled *Camilla*, which made her cast an eye upon her Kinsman, that she might the more handsomely come off with her answer. *Heraclian* appear'd very much troubled, and fearing lest I should either come to know, or fall in love with the Princess of the *Nemetians*, for that was she to whom my heart had surrendred it self, *Sir*, said he, *the Stranger for whom you enquire, is a personage of great quality, who came to this House to avoid company, and to tarry with her Mother, who has been advis'd to take the Country air.*

Claudian observing that I was not very well satisfied with that excuse, *What*, said he, *shall I know there is a Lady in this Park lovely and young, and shall I suffer her to be melancholy and retired. To what purpose serves a lively and brisk humour, when I must be barred its privileges, and that it should be forbid me as to another man, to see a person that I am oblig'd to divertise.*

Camilla, *Atius* and *Flavian* could not chuse but laugh; but for my part, I observed *Heraclian*, who, after he had paused a while, plainly thought he should encrease my suspicion, if he manifested any farther reluctance; to let me see *Adelziada* (for that was the name of the Princess of the *Nemetians*) but having peculiar ends of his own, he neither would let me know her name, nor give me an opportunity to entertain her in particular. And his behaviour being conformable to his intentions at that meeting, "Sir, said he, you shall see two persons instead of one, and you must not take it amiss, if *Camilla*, who acts in all things according to the rules of order, does not show you the Lady of whom you speak,

“ unless it be in her Mother’s Chamber, who would not her self approve any other sort of
 “ visit. “ By what I find, *said* Claudian, you are more exact in this place of Divertise-
 “ ment, than you could be at *Rome*, and perhaps you come not so much into the Country,
 “ to take that sweet liberty which is ordinarily sought for there, but rather clog it with
 “ these troublesome customs that injure modest persons in great Cities. “ However, I am
 “ of opinion, *replied* Heraclian, that it is better to consider the quality of the persons, than
 “ nature of places. “ I am of the same opinion, *said* I, for though in the Country we are
 “ allow’d to banish the peffment of Ceremonies, I agree that we must make an excepti-
 “ on as to the women, to whom we owe all the respect in the world.

After I had said those words, *Camilla* gave me the hand which she had yet free: and while *Ætius* and I began to lead her toward the House, *Heraclian*, attended by the rest of the company, went directly to the fatal Wood, where I had surrendered my heart to the divine *Adelaiada*. I could not forbear to turn my head, and followed him with the thoughts of such as were more happy than my self, but when I was in the Chamber of *Polyena*, (that was the name of the Queen of the *Nemetians*) I could not draw near a person, in whose power it was to dispose of all that I ador’d in this world, without being touch’d at the same time both with fear and veneration. I complemented that Princess almost with as much respect as if I had known her real quality; but afterwards I spake so little, and with so much disturbance, that the disorder of my mind might have been easily taken notice of, had I not been discourting with a Lady, whose want of her health did not admit of a converse too long, or over nicely cohering together.

But, Madam, when *Adelaiada*, the youthful, the charming *Adelaiada* entred this obscure place, and that Light it self, together with the Graces and *Cupids* entred along with her, what became of poor *Taxiler*? The lustre of these bright Beauties being added to the Dominion which Heaven had granted that divine Princess over my heart, gave my heart a new wound. But alas, too powerful was the stroke, and too weak my resistance against it, so that I could not hide my passion nor keep my countenance! I mov’d toward *Adelaiada* with such a discomposure of mind, that all the company observ’d it, and after I had made her a most profound reverence, to the best of my remembrance, I spake to her much to this effect; *I cannot tel, Madam, whether we ought not to repent, that we have made you forsake your retirement. But I am sure, Madam, we may well blame such persons like your self for being cruel, while robbing themselves of the pleasures of the world, they rob the world of the only light that can make it happy.*

Those words pronounc’d with a passion that glistn’d in my eyes, caus’d the young and modest *Adelaiada* to blush; and observing that *Polyena*, instead of speaking her self, lett her at liberty. *Sir*, said she, *I expected so little to hear such complements as these in the Country, that I am very much at a loss to return an answer, so that although I were in a desert, which is a kind of Sanctuary against such flatteries, I do not believe I should have any great reason to be a weary of it.* “ What could you do in your desert? (*pleasantly replied* Claudian) Or what honour could you purchase there? Were we in the times of the Goddesses, I would permit you to go thither every day: but at present, though you should have been there for many years, attended with a company of Nymphs, and a pack of Dogs, though you should appear there with your Bow, and glittering in all your charms, do you think you should be taken for *Diana*? Or would you not in such a place be accounted a mortal creature?

Those words made the entertainment more pleasant, *Camilla*, *Ætius*, *Flavian*, and *Polyena* her self continued it in a very complaisant manner, though *Heraclian* seem’d to be much troubled, and in a deep study. As for the fair *Adelaiada*, she spoke little, but she hearken’d very attentively, and though she was very young, yet did she not forbear to turn her eyes, when mine went about to speak what my lips could not utter; but what obstacle soever I found that would not permit me to give her the first knowledge of that violent passion which she had created in my heart, yet could I not but think my self happy, only because I was in the presence of that divine Princess. I diligently observ’d all the lineaments of her face, with a transportation that I am not well able to express; and with one look I beheld in her countenance, Youth and Beauty, Wit and Wisdom, and a lofty Air allay’d with a sweet Modesty. In short, I took notice of so many rare qualities in that admirable person, that I my self more deeply fix’d the fatal dart with which she had wounded me, so that I departed desperately enamour’d at the first sight. Were I oblig’d to recount all that pass’d at our taking leave, I should have a task hard enough; for in truth, these new disturbances that work in my heart, hinder’d me from taking notice of such particulars as did not seem of any great importance. However, I remember I cast an amorous look upon the beautiful

Adelaiada,

Adelaiada, and that I endeavoured in vain to make my eyes speak, and that I did not take my leave, but with a resolution to return, with the first opportunity that offered it self.

Upon the way I was very much disturbed and full of meditation, while *A tins* and *Flavian* were very sedulous to put me into humour: but notwithstanding I found my self melancholy, the secret pleasure that I took therein, made me refuse their merry discourse, yet with a graceful respect: But *Claudian*, who had an extraordinary friendship for me, and who very well understood in what a condition my heart was, instead of continuing the discourse he turn'd it another way, taking for a new subject the new favourite of *Honorius*, discoursing of his publick management, and how vain a person his reputation had made him. I was very glad that he had done me that good office, for besides that I had some reason to fear, lest they should talk too much of my passion; I saw my self disengaged from concerning my self in their stories of *Heraclian*, whereby I had the more leisure to think upon what I loved, and from what I had parted. So soon as I got home, I ran to my Sisters Apartment, and immediately gave her an Account of my short Travels, before she desired to know any thing of her self: And all the while I related to her with so much earnestness, all the circumstances that concern'd *Adelaiada*, and perplexed my rehearsal with so many digressions, only to have an opportunity to repeat the name of the fair Princess: that *Cleomira* having very earnestly beheld me; *Certainly Brother*, said she smiling, *you have taken a great deal of pleasure in making this long recital, and you must needs confess that I am less behold- ing to you, than you engaged to me for giving you a hearing so patiently.* How! said I interrupting her, *do you call it long? a discourse that I have cut off above half?* Then, said she very pleasantly, *you must have a hundred different phrases more, to tell me your Lady is the most beautiful person in the world.* Ah Sister, said I very seriously, *there is nothing more true than what I have told you; see her your self and you will be of my mind, and that my expressions have been rather faint and short of the truth, than any way superfluous.* But Brother, replied *Cleomira*, *before I can make a match to go to Camilla's house, will not your passion be over? For the Prince of the Tongres being too rational to have any unjust passions, can he preserve above two or three days a kindness which he has for a Lady, of whom he knows nothing but her birth?* It suffices, I replied, *that this Lady is lovely enough to be beloved, that quality is enough to engage my heart, without troubling my mind to seek for others.* You are not ignorant, said she, *how persons of your degree ought to behave themselves.* Ah! cruel Sister, said I interrupting her, *why do you tell me of a thing which I understand too well, and which has already rais'd too great a trouble in my thoughts?*

Concluding these words I grew melancholy, but afterwards all at an instant; *Dear Sister*, said I pursuing my discourse, *if the Stranger of whom we speak, be the Princess of the Nemetians as the report runs, will you then condemn my passion? On the contrary, answered Cleomira, I would farther it, for I should be glad that Taxander and Adelaiada might ally two neighbour Nations, who have always held a good correspondence together, before they took different parties in these new wars.* How happy should I be, cryed I, *should that come to pass, but how shall we discover this secret?* I will speak of it to the Princess *Placidia*, replied *Cleomira*, *perhaps she will draw from the Emperour some knowledge more certain.* My dear Sister, said I impatiently interrupting her, *if you love me then go and visit Honorius, lose no time I conjure you, and omit nothing that may do me the greatest kindness that I can request from you.*

I pressed her after that so fair, that I obliged her to visit the Princess *Pulcheria* that very evening, and to solicit her in my behalf, while I walk'd all alone in the Chamber, employing all my thoughts in the contemplation of the divine *Adelaiada*. In this posture when I called to mind some part of her charms, I thought my self to be the most happy among men, for having seen the fairest person in the world, and for having at the first view the most violent passion for her, that a Lover could feel. I blam'd at the same time all those that could see *Adelaiada*, and not fall passionately in love with her: I thought them to be either insensible, or else that they knew not what beauty meant, and which way soever I took it, yet still I thought them less happy than my self: Not but that an Amorous disquiet that had disturb'd every moment of my rest, had already got possession of my heart, but as men generally flatter themselves, when they have no reason to complain of the person beloved. I hoped for a propitious success, and perswaded my self that my fair Stranger, would not be displeas'd to see me serve her, with a design to advance her one day to a Throne, especially if she were not of that degree, as to pretend to such a dignity. Or on the other side, if it were *Adelaiada* that I loved, that *Salison* and *Martandus* would willingly consent to my happiness, for the good of their own Kingdoms,

Thus I employed my contemplations till *Cleomira* returning from the Emperour, I went

to her Chamber: And as I was beholding her countenance to conjecture thence, what news she had brought me; Brother, said she, *I come to discharge my self of the commission which you gave me, I have spoken to the Princess Placidia, who has a very great suspicion, that your fair Stranger is not the Princess of the Nemetians, yet she has promised me to give me a better information, so soon as she can find a fit opportunity to speak to Honorius. Cannot she find, said I, an opportunity to speak to the Emperour every moment? And therefore since you neglect the chiefest of my concerns, I will go again to Camilla's house to morrow: For indeed I ought to give a particular visit to those Ladies of whom we are now speaking. How Brother, replied Cleomira, will you before you are better instructed, give another visit to your terrible unknown Lady? And that to fortifie a passion which perhaps it will behove you to banish from your breast? I cannot tell, said I very smartly what it may become me to do, but I am certain it will be never in my power, for she will reign in my soul to the very last gasp. In short, Sister, I will ride to Camilla's house and take Claudian thither with me, not only because of his acceptable Company, but because he has that ready wit to help me out in my discourse, with such persons as may be perhaps too nimble for me. Besides, as he has a great deal of ingenuity, and I to tell you truth a great deal of love, it will prove very hard if we do not discover, something of Heraclian's hidden intentions. But the Princess Cleomira still opposing my design, yet not finding me to be moved in my resolution; In truth Brother, (said she with some marks of displeasure) I never thought you guilty of so much extravagancy before, and I am very much surpris'd that reason has so feeble a dominion in your breast. You would never wonder without doubt, answered I, had you ever seen those charms that rais'd my passions. But after all, Sister, if the person whom I love be of an illustrious descent, partake with me in my joy: But if on the other side I sigh for a Lady of a mean condition, pity and blame me, but never expect that I should change my mind.*

Concluding these words I took my leave of the Princess Cleomira, who seeing she could persuade me to nothing and that it was late, thought it not fitting to detain me any longer. I was no sooner in my own Chamber but I went to bed, not so much to sleep as to meditate without disturbance. Immediately imagining new Idea's of what I loved, I fashioned in my fancy so lively an Image of that Beauty, that with its brightness it dissipated those vapours, that would have envelop'd my senses: Nor was my sleep it self, which nature forc'd upon me at length, less favourable to me, in representing to me in my dream *Adelaiada*, as fair as when I saw her, or as she was represented to me waking.

The next day I sent to *Claudian*, to request him to make one in a match that I had made, he gladly consented, and coming in all hast to my Chamber, we rode together toward the place wherein was harboured the most powerful Allurement of my soul. Upon the way I made a real confession of my Love to *Claudian*, and we were no sooner arrived, but this diligent friend, while I entred into *Polyena's* Apartment, went to *Heraclian's* Chamber, to keep him there, that I might have the more freedom and leasure to talk my mind. He found him not there, being afterwards told that he was walking in a Gallery, with one that was come from the Emperour, when casting his eyes upon the Table, he found there a little Note which he presently read. Whereupon having made a little pause, and rais'd to himself several suspicions, he was of opinion that it behoved him not to neglect the shewing it to me, and then to let *Adelaiada* see it: And to that end spying me as I was going down stairs, from the Queen of the *Nemetians* Chamber into the Garden, with the Princess and *Camilla* who had a great desire to walk, he made hast toward us and all the way as he came he held the Letter open in his hand, as if he had had some curiosity to shew us: so that after the first complements were passed, *Camilla* who knew her kinsmans hand, *Let us see*, said she to *Claudian*, *what Heraclian has written to you. 'Tis not to me*, answered he very pleasantly, *but to some other persons that this note is directed. Why then are you so inquisitive*, said she, with the same briskness, *after other peoples secrets? Because 'tis my duty*, replied he, *for Heraclian has not more right to take care of affairs of state, than I to take care of all those things, that concerns the gallantries of love. See Madam*, said he addressing himself to *Adelaiada*, *whether you and I are of the same judgment: And after that presenting a Table-book to the Princess, she took it and at the beginning, read a piece of a Letter to this effect.*

Since you have no real business that detains you at Rome, and that you do not visit our Ladies to any other intent, but only to make them prove serviceable to your designs, come into our wood

“ I cannot tell, *said Adelaïda to Claudian*, what your judgment may be upon those words, but for my part, I do not believe that we are to seek for any mystery therein; *Heraclian* has written to a Friend who is apparently ambitious, he intreats him to come and refresh himself in this House, and that he may have no pretence to excuse himself, he writes the first lines of that Note, indited as we find them. “ I see very well, *answer'd he*, that you make this interpretation, lest you should seem to fail in your acknowledgment toward *Heraclian*; and that you make as if you did not apprehend that he desires some person to come and lose by the sight of your Beauties the liberty which he has defended against our *Roman Ladies*: I am also a little more bold in my conjectures; for I am apt to think it is some Stranger that he invites into these Woods, and that he aims to remove that Stranger from *Herfilia's* charms, to expose him to the force of yours.

At those words the young *Adelaïda* blush'd out of modesty: and *Camilla* taking the Table-Book, “ I must confess, *said she with a very pleasing aspect*, that your great Wits are a strange sort of people, they would always pretend to have reason, and yet sometimes they are deceived as well as we. However, *she cry'd, addressing her self to Claudian*, without examining whether it be a Stranger that is to come, or with what kind of charms they intend to fetter him, lay the Table-Book in the place from whence you took it, or else expect to be severely chid. “ Heaven, defend me, *said he, turning himself about*, from drawing such a mischief upon my self.

So leaving us, he carried back the Letter, and return'd to us as we were walking in the Garden. Immediately he presented *Camilla* his hand, giving me thereby the opportunity to lead *Adelaïda*; so that now the Pages and young Virgins that attended, being retired, I thought I had found a favourable opportunity to entertain *Adelaïda* by letting her know the powerful effect her charms had wrought in my heart: but *Heraclian*, destin'd to interrupt me in my passion, at that very instant appear'd, and approaching me, he protest'd that he had left all company and business to wait upon me, so soon as he knew of my arrival. I was vex'd to be thus disturb'd, especially when I saw him continue to walk along with us, and that I could not utter a syllable of that which most tormented my heart: nor durst I presume to look upon that fair face so much as I desired, the only Idea whereof was enough at another time wholly to employ my thoughts with full satisfaction; and I should have thought my self very unfortunate, if the presence of the person belov'd, had not allay'd the best part of my disturbance; or that the pleasure of holding her fair hand had not in some measure made me amends.

In short, *Heraclian's* persecution lasted as long as my visit, and I was constrain'd to depart without letting the admirable *Adelaïda* understand the affection I had for her, which so perplex'd my Soul, that neither *Claudian* nor *Cleomira*, after that, could afford me any consolation. The next day *Cavarin* departed from *Rome*, which confirm'd those suspicions which *Claudian* had rais'd; and *Heraclian* returning presently after, the report run, that the Strangers that were entertain'd at *Camilla's* House, were return'd into their own Country. Be pleas'd then, Madam, to consider how great was my surprize! How sad was my affliction! And because I was not well assured of what Nation *Adelaïda* was, I could not guess into what Region she was return'd, nor what Road she had taken; I enquir'd what news of her in all places I could think of, and of all persons I thought likely to give me any intelligence. I press'd *Cleomira* to give another visit to *Placidia*, and I sent to King *Salison's* Court, to see whether the Queen and the Princess of the *Nemetians* were there, or to know what was there reported concerning their absence. In a word, I omitted nothing which a passion ingenious and fertile in Expedients could infuse into me. Not but that I resolv'd to be inform'd by *Heraclian*, and to challenge him if he refus'd to satisfy me; but I was still to observe a Decorum in my proceedings, in regard he was in the Emperour's favour, and that I was to consider *Marisandus's* interest; but above all, because it lay in his power to serve me in reference to *Adelaïda*, if I could gain his friendship, 'twas my opinion therefore that I was to seek other means than to search for a discovery from him, which made me resolve to go to that fatal place which I had always in my mind, imagining with my self (to the end I might please my self with seeing it once more) that those persons whom I had sent would not inform themselves with that care and exactness, and that the most cunning among them all would not be able to win the Domestick Servants of *Camilla* to give them the best instructions so well as my self. While I was turmoil'd with a thousand tumultuous thoughts, I saw *Claudian* enter: I met him immediately, and in a very sad tone, *Well, Claudian, said I, Our divine unknown Beauty is vanish'd from the unfortunate Taxander; and the cunning Heraclian has a design without doubt to dispose of her, in favour of some Stranger who more servilely flatters him than the Prince of the Tongres can stoop to*

do. Sir, answered he, I am perswaded that this Stranger is the Prince of the Senonois, and that she did not so diligently visit Herfilia, to the end, that Artabure her Brother might solicit the Emperour in her behalf, as she made use of Heraclian for the same intent. I am also apt to think, that that Favourite of Honorius apprehended at length that Cavarin came to court the Sister of his Rival in favour, and that he endeavoured to oppose an alliance that might render Artabure considerable in the Court of Rome, by his becoming powerful among the Gauls: so that he came here to deprive Cavarin of Herfilia, pretending he shall espouse Adelaïada, and by that means he will procure a peace for the Nemetians and Senonois, to the end, that those two Nations being beholding to him, might always stick close to his interests. Ah, Claudian, cry'd I, you speak reason; I have had thoughts little different from yours; and I plainly see, that the suspicions which you rais'd at Camilla's House were but too well grounded. I knew, answered he, that I was not at all deceiv'd, nor did I take Heraclian's Table-Book for any other purpose than to shew Adelaïada how much it concern'd her to be wary, and to treat her Lover who was coming to see her, as a person that was drawn thither not so much by the power of her charms, as by the politick contrivance of the Roman that sent for him. That policy, said I, may net have perhaps all that success which they promise to themselves; for though the murderer of Stilicon bear a more absolute sway with Honorius, yet when he shall be guilty of a greater crime than that which he committed in the view of the whole world, it will not be a very easie thing for him to dispose of a Princess whom I adore. Alas! (continued I sighing, and lifting up my eyes to Heaven) Was it my fate to see that divine Princess only that I might no sooner passionately love her, but that she should as soon be taken from me? Was it just that my Destiny, too potent for my reason, should entice me to a place where it became me not to have gone, and whither I was only led to be delivered up to my evil fortune. Ah, Claudian, never was a Lover more unfortunate seen, so that if I do not suddenly find out Adelaïada, I cannot tell to what extremity I may be reduc'd to rid my self out of that miserable condition where in you see me.

While I bewail'd my self in this manner, Cleomira return'd from the Emperour, and rehearsing to me what she had been inform'd by the Princess Placidia, she confirm'd me in the opinion to which Claudian had perswaded me, and of which I had prepossessed my self almost at the same time. But when Claudian was gone, she gave me a more particular relation of all things. She told me that Placidia had been inform'd by Honorius, that the Stranger that was departed from Rome was Cavarin the Prince of the Senonois; and that it was true, that I had seen at Camilla's House Polyena Queen of the Nemetians, and the Princess her Daughter, nam'd Adelaïada. That Cavarin was tenderly beloved by Herfilia, and she had been espoused to him, if Heraclian, who apprehended from thence an augmentation of Artabure's power, had not chang'd the Senonois Prince's mind, as well by the power which he had over him, as by proposing him greater advantages in the person of Adelaïada. That he had perswaded Honorius that it was only for the welfare of his Dominions, that he had oppos'd Cavarin's kindness for Herfilia; and that he might well believe it was not for him to suffer a Roman so potent as Artabure to make an alliance that might give him a Sanctuary among Strangers, which might embolden him to make attempts against the Empire. As for the place to which Polyena is retired, Honorius knows it not at present; for he reposes such a trust in Heraclian's management, that far from informing himself of the State of Affairs, he only hears what his Favourite thinks fit to give him an account of. Ah, Sister, (said I impatiently, interrupting her) of necessity I must know where Adelaïada is; and since you can no longer condemn my passion, it behoves you to act by consent with me, and not to leave any thing unattempted to make me happy. Dear Sister, (said I, most affectionately beholding her, and taking her by the hand) for Heaven's sake see Placidia to morrow morning, make use of all your credit with Honorius: but above all things vigorously pursue what the Princess acts for my interest: I am mad to think of the softness of the Emperour, and the nimbleness which I observ'd in Cavarin: And it may be, said I sighing, that very moment must render Cavarin the most happy among men, and Taxander the most unfortunate Prince that ever was: it may be perhaps that fatal moment is already past, at this very time that we are speaking of it. "Affairs of this nature, replied Cleomira, move
 "not so fast as Lovers thoughts; so that before Salison be advertised thereof, or have giv-
 "en any order therein, or that Polyena or Adelaïada can get to the farthest part of all Gal-
 "lia, we may easily, if I be not deceiv'd, find obstructions enough to hinder Cavarin's de-
 "sign. In short, Brother, as I am very willing you should court the Princess of the Ne-
 "metians, I have discovered your intentions to Placidia, I have conjured her to make Ho-
 "norius your Friend, and to understand from him all things relating to your advantage.
 "She testified how glad she was to do me any kindness, and opening her very heart to me,
 "after she had spoken with a great esteem of your person, she told me she could not but be
 "very

“very indifferent for *Cavarin*, but that she had an Anitpathy against *Heraclian*, that she will represent to the Emperour, how he is not only obliged to prefer you before the Prince of the *Senonis*, by reason of the Alliance that united our two houses since *Theodora*, but also out of the acknowledgments which he owes you for your services.

These words having for some time calm'd my troubled thoughts, I return'd *Cleomira* as many thanks as if she had not been my Sister, but had given me all the Crowns in the world. However neither the satisfaction that produced my complements to *Cleomira*, nor the tranquility of my mind endured for any time: For notwithstanding all my hope, the trouble I was in for not knowing where *Adelaiada* was, having seiz'd my heart all of an instant; I see dear Sister, said I, that I may expect a great deal from your assistance, but as it is grounded upon the protection of *Honorius*, and that he will be slow in giving us such proofs thereof as we desire, there is a necessity for me in the mean time, to know where I may see the Princess whom I adore, if you desire I should live, till you can shew me the good effects of your undertaking. And therefore while you return to *Placidia*, I will go to *Camilla's* house, for provided we could but discover in what part of the world to find *Adelaiada*, I would demand no other help but the assistance of my love and courage, to supplant *Cavarin* maugre all the Stratagems of *Heraclian*.

This I spoke with so much passion and transportment, that *Cleomira* was surpris'd, and I must confess it was not without reason, since no man ever loved with a more violent passion in so short a time. I was so desperately lost, that the next day instead of preparing for *Ravenna*, whither the Emperour was going to keep his Court, instead of being mov'd at the news which they brought me, that *Constance* was marching with a great Army against the famous *Constantine*, I departed out of *Rome* to seek *Adelaiada*, not taking notice either of the Emperour's journey, or of the conquests of the King of *Albion*, nor so much as thinking of them. so much was my mind taken up with the Idea of my Princess. I was no sooner come to the place where I had seen her the first time, but I was seiz'd with some thoughts that went near to Idolatry: Impatiently and greedily I sought about every where; and because I could not think to find her, my passion being no longer subject to my reason, I committed a hundred little follies, which as fruitless as they were, however pleas'd a fond and enamour'd heart for the time. I call'd my Princess a hundred times, I ask'd the trees and Rivers for her; then crossing my Arms I stood immoveable. At last transported by my passion, and as if I had been ignorant that *Camilla* had followed *Queen Polyena*, I desir'd to speak with her, or that they would tell me where I might find her, as a person that had important business with her. Hardly had they returned me for answer, that she was gone with those Ladies that I had seen in the house, and that they knew not whither they were design'd; when I took all the principal domesticks aside one by one, but seeing that neither promises nor threats would work any effect, and that I could receive no farther satisfaction, I return'd to *Rome* impatient to know whether *Cleomira*, had had any better success with *Placidia*. She told me that that generous Princess had urged *Honorius* very home, and that the Emperour had also very earnestly spoken to his favourite: Which eagerness of the Emperour, said *Cleomira*, appeared so extraordinary, that *Heraclian* very much suspected the meaning, and therefore that he might have time to unfold the Riddle, and in the mean time arm himself with politick wariness, he answered with an affected indifferency, that he knew not where *Polyena* was, and that he did not think it convenient to be inquisitive, into the circumstances of a good part of the journey. Ah! *Heraclian*, (then cry'd I out of the fury of a resentment, which I could by no means moderate :) But fearing to make known my intentions to my Sister, I shut up my Choler and listned to her as before. That pretended coldness of *Heraclian*, said *Cleomira*, pursuing her discourse, might deceive *Honorius* but not the persons interested, they suspected a great part of what we know, and this morning *Hertilia* visibly testified the same to the Princess, who as she well knew had no kindness for that favourite. She made a great deal of sport with him but very neatly and cleverly, that she might preserve her respect as well to *Placidia*, as the Emperour's choice. *Heraclian's* colour came into his face for madness, but whether he wanted ingenuity to reply, or whether he thought that the Princess would not favour him, he would not continue a discourse of that nature, with a young Lady so smart and witty. But went in all hast to *Honorius's* Closet, where there being then a consultation about bestowing the principal employments in *Constance's* Army, he declared himself openly against *Artabure*, that he might make a difference between the Brother and the Sister, in order to revenge himself.

Cleomira had no sooner concluded these words, but she was advertis'd that the Princess *Theodolinda* was come to visit her, whereupon I retired to my Apartment that they might have the more freedom of discourse. There I began to walk up and down in a petting chafe, and in threatening language; “Ah *Heraclian*, cry'd I, thou thinkest to be protected from

“ *Artabure’s* anger by thy favour, but fear *Taxander* who is no subject of *Honorius*, and who
 “ is able to revenge himself, notwithstanding the protection which thou hast obtained by
 “ thy treachery. Then instead of continuing my complaints, I went to seek out *Heraclian*,
 and found him at the Emperour’s Apartment where they said he was, whence I resolv’d to
 follow him as soon as he went forth.

No sooner was I come to *Honorius’s* Chamber, but he received me with all extraordinary
 civility. He told me that *Constance* and the *Romans*, promised great things to themselves
 from my friendship, “ And for my part, *added he very obligingly*, I think that in opposing
 “ you to *Constantine*, we shall oppose the most valiant of our Confederates, to the most for-
 “ midable of our Enemies. I will not mention the employments which you may hope for in
 “ our Armies, your birth and your noble Actions claim many privileges, which shall be pre-
 “ serv’d you entire, and you shall find in us that acknowledgment, always which is due to
 “ your person.

He would have spoken more, had not one of the deputies of the *Massilians* entred, who came
 to make a report of the condition of the *Roman* Province. I would have taken my leave, finding
 that *Heraclian* was upon going; but before I could take my leave, *Honorius* redoubled the testi-
 monies of his good will toward me, embracing me with a most cordial affection. I was
 not insensible of the caresses of an Emperour, nor of the honour I might acquire in a war
 so memorable and important. Nevertheless Love so absolutely possessed my heart, that I
 withdrew making only a profound reverence, instead of returning any answer, not daring
 to promise my service in an Army, that removed me at too great a distance from *Adelaiada*,
 nor finding my self in a capacity of changing my resolution to fight *Heraclian*, if he deny-
 ed to tell me where my beloved Princess was gone. To that purpose I followed him, and ac-
 costing him when we were both without the Palace of *Honorius*, and in the turning of a by-
 “ street, I think, (*said I to him with a cold indifferency*) that there is no person to whom I can
 “ better apply my self than to you, to enquire what is become of *Camilla* and the Strangers
 “ who are with her. “ You may deceive your self, *replyed he with the same behaviour*, if you
 “ think me so well instructed in her affairs. “ You are proudly taken up with the affairs of
 “ state, *said I with the smile of anger*, that you cannot endure to be question’d concerning
 “ an inconsiderable journey, and still keeping the state of a favourite in small things, will
 “ make a mittery of what you know so well. “ It shall not be by *Heraclian* that you shall
 “ be inform’d, *replyed he with a reserved tone*, and more than that, after you have in vain
 “ employed the chiefest persons in the world, you will be never the wiser. It suffices then,
 “ (*said I interrupting him, and laying my hand upon my Sword*) that this remains to revenge
 “ my quarrel, and wherewithal to search even in thy very heart, the secret which I demand.
Heraclian at the same time being in the same posture, we presently fell vigorously to work,
 while I being at the same time transported with love and anger, and also the person that
 gave the very first assault; fought with more fury and less caution, for fear lest we should
 be parted, before I had obtained some advantage over a person, whom I believed to be in
 all things inferiour to the Prince of the *Tongres*.

Heraclian guarded himself with that Activity which testified an assured courage, but my
 impetuosity soon made him give way, which I no sooner perceived, notwithstanding the vio-
 lence of my anger, but I gave him a home thrust in the Arm, pressing on without permit-
 ting him any respite. Then I began to feel less resistance, and I had certainly worsted him,
 when all of a sudden he renewed his courage perceiving people coming toward us. I took
 notice of it also, and therefore being desirous to put an end to the Combat, I flew upon my
 Adversary, and having seiz’d the Hilt of his Sword, I had certainly disarm’d him, if the
 people running in had not speedily parted us. This Encounter made a great noise over all
 the City, and the Emperour no sooner understood th’ circumstances, but he appeared to be
 very much incens’d against me. He highly complained that I had quarrell’d with a person
 so much respected by him, at the very Gate of his Palace, where he had made me so many
 obliging offers, and that which more sensibly anger’d him was, that I left *Rome*, protesting
 that I would never be reconciled again to *Heraclian*, unless he would give me that satisfac-
 tion which I required, and which he could not deny me. In the mean while all the Court
 was divided, and though the number of those that court fortune, be generally greater than
 the generous party, I dare say that *Heraclian* had fewer that took his part, than were on
 my side.

The Princess *Placidia* and *Theodolinda*, did me the honour to send to see me, *Artabure*,
Atius, *Ariobindus*, *Flavian*, and many others of the most high quality among the *Ro-*
mans, came to offer me their service, and *Claudian* whose elderly years privileged him
 from tendring such proofs of his friendship, made me a visit of another nature: For having
 declared

declared himself for my interest, he maintain'd it every where with that Wit and Boldness, that he increas'd the number of my Friends, and disabus'd many persons whom the Flatterers of *Heraclian* had prepossessed to his advantage.

A few days after, a Squire of *Constance* came to complement me on the behalf of his Renowned Master: while they discoursed at *Rome* with so much heat both on the one side, and the other, insomuch that many apprehended that the consequences of our quarrel would prove not a little dangerous. *Honorius*, naturally of a good disposition, would have put an end to it; but loving *Heraclian*, and on the other side, being unwilling to break with the King of the *Tongres*, he was at a great loss. His favourite protested to him that he knew not where *Polyena* was, that he had no reason but to leave *Adelaiada* wholly to her disposal, and that it was not just to obstruct the Prince of the *Senonais* in those pretences which he had already declar'd, and likewise obtain'd to be approv'd. On the other side, *Placidia* represented to him that he ought to stand my Friend to the King and Queen of the *Nemetians*, and to obtain leave at least that I might be admitted to court the Princess *Adelaiada*, as well as the Prince of the *Senonais*; and that the Princess ought to be left to her liberty to make her own choice. So that *Placidia*, who had a greater esteem for me than I could expect, believ'd that I should have no reason to complain of her mediation; and that the Princess of the *Nemetians* would not stick to prefer me before the the Prince of the *Senonais*. Besides this, she gave *Honorius* farther advice, telling him that he ought not to suffer my design of engaging my self in his quarrel to be any way prejudicial to me; nor to permit my Rival to win any advantage upon me, by living where *Adelaiada* retided, while I was fighting against the King of the *Britains*: that he ought to engage *Cavarin* to pass into *Africa* with his Friend, while I march'd with *Constance*; and that matters being so easily pois'd, *Rome* would preserve the alliance of the *Tongres* and the *Senonais* so much the more easily, while *Constance* and *Heraclian* had time to deal with both Princes who were there particular Friends. *Honorius* being perswaded by the Princess his Sister, acted according to her counsel; and as he went to *Ravenna*, where he found the incomparable *Bellamira*, with whom he was so deeply in love, as I have told you, he visited *Polyenz* upon the way, and conferred in private with her that very day that the Princess left *Italy* to return to the King her Husband. He sent *Flavian* afterwards to me to give me an account of this conference, and to assure me that *Salison* and *Polyenz*, as soon as she came home, would receive such proposals as should be made on my part, as favourably as those from *Cavarin*; and for the final determination, that they would refer themselves wholly to the inclinations of the Princess their Daughter. After that *Flavian* inform'd me what I have already told you, and how earnestly *Placidia* took my part. He gave me to understand that that obliging Princess had testified to divers persons of Quality, that she should less fear the success of *Honorius*, and *Constance's* safety, if my assistance were but joyned to that illustrious *Roman*. And while he continued his discourse, which could not but be very pleasing to me, my love furnishing my mind with a hundred importunate thoughts: *Alas!* cry'd I, *how unhappy am I? Must I renounce my honour if I follow Adelaiada, and fail in my acknowledgment to a generous Prince to whom I am infinitely beholding? Cannot I go,* said he, *sighing, where Constance, Placidia, and Honour call me, but I must absent my self from her whom I love, at a time when it is in my power to abide where she remains? No, no, I will not forsake Adelaiada: you know, Flavian, what charms she carries in her eyes, you have been a witness to my vows, and you have seen both together at the same time the most amiable person in the world, and a man the most enamour'd in the Universe: insomuch that you cannot be surpris'd at my behaviour; but though you should not approve it, and that all the world should think it strange, however this will be consolation sufficient for me, that I may follow Adelaiada, and that Adelaiada believes me to be the most passionate of all her Lovers. Wonder not that I talk in this manner, for I make no mystery of the affection which I have for the Princess of the Nemetians; and though it were unknown to the greatest part of the Court, I find it too just not to be made publick. I rather wonder,* said *Flavian,* *that you have no better apprehended the news which I have brought you, and that you complain at a time so favourable to you — In short, did they believe that you would march along with Constance, they would hinder Cavarin from seeing Adelaiada while you continued in the Army; for Polyena is not only engag'd not to bear any proposal for the Princess her Daughter till your return, but to the end, the Prince of the Senonais may be farther remov'd than you from the person which you love, they have oblig'd Heraclian to take him along with him into Africa. Let Cavarin,* said *I very hastily, and according to his own Politicks, let him forsake the Princess of the Nemetians, and serve upon the Emperour's Favourite, for my own part I will only follow the dictates of my own love, and abandon all things to adhere to Adelaiada.*

Afterwards pausing upon what I had said, I imagined to my self that *Constance* and *Con-*
stantine

Flavine would not fail to observe one another's motions, out of the mutual knowledge they had of each others experiences; and that they would certainly spin out time before they came to a Battel, to take their advantages and preserve their men, and that by that means I should be a good while deprived of the sight of my Princeſs; ſo that I went about to fix my ſelf in the reſolution which I had taken: when all of an inſtant, methought that if I declin'd the Battel, I could not with any reputation appear before *Adelaiada*, and that it behov'd me clearly to win Honour when Heaven offer'd me ſo fair an opportunity, were it for nothing elſe but to render me worthy of that perſon whom I ador'd. I was about therefore to tell *Flavian* that I had alter'd my reſolution; yet before I could determine there happened a violent Combat between the extreme paſſion which I had for *Adelaiada*, and the natural inclination which I had to ſignalize my ſelf in the Army. But at length conſidering that it was in my power to ſatiſhe thoſe two contrary perſwaſions, and that it was neceſſary for me to follow the incentive that carried me to the performance of noble exploits, to the end I might appear with more Honour before the Princeſs of the *Nemetians*: I promiſed *Flavian* to ſee the Emperour, that I would lay aſide all heart-burnings againſt his Favourite, and that I would ſerve him in the Army. That of all this he might aſſure him in my behalf, and that I would ſuddenly be at *Ravenna* to make good his undertaking for me.

While *Flavian* returns to *Honorius* with better ſucceſs in his Errand than he expected, the Courier whom I had ſent to *Salifon's* Court came back; and after he had related to me in few words what I already knew concerning *Polyena* and *Adelaiada*, he told me that he was aſcertain'd in *Samarobrina*, (ſo was the City call'd where *Salifon* then kept his Court) that Prince *Cavarin* was to eſpouſe the Princeſs *Adelaiada*: that the Emperour had obtain'd *Salifon's* and *Polyena's* conſent, and that the Princeſs had alſo given hers. Thoſe Tydings ſtruck me like a clap of Thunder, inſomuch that notwithstanding the promiſe I had made to *Flavian*, I alter'd my reſolutions a hundred times: I thought to make my complaint to *Honorius*, to tax him with my ſervices, and to accuſe him of keeping an underhand correſpondency with my Enemies. Then I deſign'd to be reveng'd upon *Heraclian*, and to diſpute the enjoyment of *Cavarin* with the laſt drop of my blood, and laſt of all to forſake the *Romans*, and joyn with the *Britains*. But no ſooner had my reaſon appeas'd the greateſt part of thoſe tumults which my love had rais'd, but I repented of thoſe mutinous thoughts, finding that it behov'd me to give leſs credit to the report of a Town, than to the word of an Emperour. At other times I conſidered, that ſince my Meſſenger had left *Samarobrina*, there might have been a change of Affairs, through the mediation of *Honorius*, and that for that reaſon I might be able to acquit my ſelf of what promiſes ſoever I had made to him, without any prejudice to the paſſion that was predominant in my heart. Nevertheleſs not being willing to omit any thing, I immediately ſent back again to *Salifon's* Court, with order to give me intelligence from time to time of whatever concern'd the Princeſs of the *Nemetians*; and for my own part I ſtedfaſtly reſolv'd not to engage my ſelf in *Conſtance's* Army, till my Rival had embarqu'd for *Africa*. Thereupon I went to the Emperours, where I was receiv'd with all the marks of kindneſs which he was wont to ſhew me, and underſtood that *Artabure* and *Heraclian* kept no good correſpondence together: Immediately I conjectur'd that *Herſilia's* reſentment might have contributed to their mutual diſguſt. But I underſtood ſoon after that that fair Lady neither blam'd the *Roman*, nor *Cavarin* himſelf: that they apprehended little or nothing in the conduct of that Prince who had wrote ſuch affectionate Letters from *Camilla's* Houſe, how paſſionate ſoever he appear'd at the ſame time for *Adelaiada*. I was ſurpris'd at that manner of proceeding; I with'd that *Cavarin* might only love the Siſter of *Artabure*: but my love did not prohibit me to hope, and perſwaded me that there was no Rival that could diſpute a heart with a Princeſs that was the Sovereignneſs of mine. *Flavian*, who had inform'd me all theſe particulars, related others to me ſome few days after. He aſſur'd me that the Prince of the *Senonois* had defended his liberty againſt the charms of *Adelaiada*, as he had preserv'd it from *Herſilia*; and that he had not continued to write to *Artabure's* Siſter, but only to appeaſe her in reſpect of *Heraclian*: Not, ſaid he, but that *Cavarin* deſires to wedd the Princeſs of the *Nemetians*, though he be not yet much in love with her; for beſides that, he may ſoon have a kindneſs for her, in regard ſhe is very beautiful: *Salifon* and *Cavarin* will reap conſiderable advantages by their alliance. They will have no reaſon to fear thoſe great Armies that make Germany tremble. And being they have neither of them loſt the friendſhip of *Pharamond* or *Gondioch*, being only reconciled to *Honorius* out of neceſſity, whatever ſucceſs betides the war between the *Franks* and *Burgundians*, they will be mutually proteſted from any invaſion of the *Vanquiſher*: ſo that the Prince of the *Senonois*, who always acts according to ſucceſs, has omitted nothing to gain the heart of *Adelaiada*, and had us'd ſuch extraordinary means, that he had almoſt perſwaded

swaded the young Princess into a belief that he passionately lov'd her.

Thus you have heard what I learn'd by an accident, the particulars whereof I do not believe necessary for me to relate. I will tell you however that I had them from the mouth of *Heraclian* himself; and therefore seeing I came to understand them only by chance, I could not think my self oblig'd to make them a secret. And thus it happened: we were five or six miles from *Ravenna*, in a pleasant Garden belonging to *Ariobindus*, where without doubt you know already that *Honorius* uses to take the air. *Heraclian* being separated from the Emperour's Train in the company of *Maximus*, with whom, as he was talking together near a pale behind which I lay reading, he spoke of the wit and abilities of *Cavarin* with so much heat, and so lowd, that I easily over-heard all those particulars of which I have given you this account. After I had embrac'd *Flavian*, and testified my acknowledgment, I mus'd upon what I conjectur'd *Adelaiada's* thoughts might be, but when I imagined to my self that the belief she had of being belov'd by *Cavarin*, proceeded from her inclination to love that very Prince, then again that cruel supposition tormented me with an unconceivable grief, *How, Adelaiada, (cry'd I, when Flavian was gone) shall the charming Adelaiada be sacrific'd to the policies of a person that loves her not, to the desires of one that perfidiously abuses her credulity by the pretended testimonies of a passion which only ought to be the effect of a sincere heart? No, no, it shall never be while the enamour'd Taxander enjoys the Light of Heaven; nor shall the contrivances of Cavarin and Heraclian end in that success which they promise to themselves.*

Afterwards being in a capacity to consider what I had to do, I resolv'd to see the Prince of the *Senonais*, and to force him to yield me a Princess whose worth he did not understand, or else to dispute the enjoyment of her to the last drop of my Blood. While I was contriving this design, came a Courier from *Constance*, who reported that the King of the *Britains* had taken the famous Town of *Marsellia*, and that there was a necessity of the *Roman Army* to march with all speed to the relief of a Province almost ruined, and that called to him for help. Immediately all the young Nobility of the Court prepar'd to be gone in all haste; and I having received Letters from *Constance*, would not be less diligent than the rest to joyn with the Army: not but that I had still an intention to tell *Cavarin* my mind. But it being a difficult thing for me to secure my self from being chid by the Emperour, was that which made me melancholy. I was but little in *Honorius's* presence that day, I refus'd as much as decency would permit me, the company of Ladies; and the next day the Emperour going to divertise himself in *Ariobindus's* Garden, I stirr'd not out of *Ravenna* to follow the Emperour, till I thought he was just ready to come back, and that all the sports and pastimes were over. But I had not gone far from the Walls of the City, when I perceiv'd riding toward me certain persons of Honour very gay and magnificently arm'd, account'd as if they had return'd from entering the Lists before *Honorius* and the rest of the Court. I stay'd not long to talk to them, but being desirous to get to the Garden before the Emperour was come away, I took my leave and rode on faster than before: but I was suddenly forc'd to make a stop, seeing several Horsemen scuffling together, which I took at first for a frolicksome continuance of that days Divertisements. But I soon chang'd my opinion when I beheld five or six men valiantly defending themselves against ten or a dozen, who assail'd the other with an extraordinary fury. I never stood to consider which part to take, but flew to the weaker side with my Sword in my hand, desirous however before I assaulted persons whom I knew not at all, to moderate their anger, and compose their difference. And in regard I was in some reputation among the *Romans*, and that my face was open, I had some hopes that they might have some respect for my intentions, or at least some regard to my requests. But I had no sooner open'd my mouth to enquire the cause of the quarrel, but the principal of the opposite company, after he had given me a fowr look, flung himself toward me, and gave me a good blow with his Sword. That unworthy action of his incens'd me so highly, that I was bent without mercy against a person who had assaulted me without a cause, and for that I had no other Arms than my Sword, I resolv'd with all speed to dispatch a Combat the continuance whereof might prove fatal to me; so that I thought less to defend my self than to be reveng'd of my Adversary whom I mortally hated, insomuch that I was wounded immediately, but having luckily spied a defect in his Curials, I soon sheath'd my Sword in his Body. A Horseman that fought on his side, and saw him tumble at his Horses feet, seem'd to be very much griev'd, *Good God, cry'd he, my Master is slain;* and presently looking upon me with eyes inflam'd with anger, he stood a while considering whether it was best for him to fall upon me, or help the Knight; but the last motion prevailing in his Breast, he alighted, when at the same time, fortune not always favouring good intentions,

intentions, he received a wound with a Javelin, which put him in the same condition, of having need of his companions.

¶ The fall of a person so considerable among his own associates, had so weakened the contrary party that we had easily overcome them, had not a great body of Cavalry appeared at the same time, or that we had not believed that *Honorius* himself had been there in person. Thereupon we immediately parted, as if we had acted by consent: And for my part, I return'd by a by way to *Ravenna* for fear of being seen, and thereby engaged to make a relation of the Combat. I was of opinion that *Honorius* would have turned, all the circumstances to my prejudice, and would have been assured that what I did was premeditated, and that it was a design which I had resolv'd upon, because I did not accompany him, and that he would chide me by representing to me, that it was not for me always to quarrel with his most faithful subjects: And therefore contented with the testimony of my own conscience, without requiring other witnesses, and being satisfied that I had been only guided by a motive of generosity, I did not desire to make any noise in the business. On the contrary, I forbid my Attendants that had any knowledge thereof, to say any thing of it. The other persons concern'd observing the same caution not to displease *Honorius*, no person could tell precisely what had pass'd, only it was reported that *Heraclian* and some other Courtiers had been wounded, while they endeavour'd to part certain Knights, that fought upon the Road to *Ravenna*. For my own part I could not go abroad, in two or three days by reason of my wound, wherefore *Flavian* who was altogether my friend, reported to *Honorius*, that a certain indisposition of health, that hindred me from attending him to *Ariobindus's* Garden, increased upon me, and oblig'd me to keep my Chamber. *Honorius* did me the honour to give me a visit, and the greatest part of the Court having shew'd me the same civility by different conversations, I understood several pieces of intelligence, that were not ordinary. They assured me that *Artabure* and *Heraclian*, did not hate one another for any other reason, but that they both loved *Bellamira*, and that it was believ'd with no small probability that they had fought one another. I knew also that the report ran every where, that the Prince of the *Senonois* was dead, and that *Heraclian* had given it out by his flatterers, that *Artabure* had slain him upon a quarrel for satisfaction, in reference to *Herfelia's* resentment. Two days after the news of *Cavarine's* death continued, and was confirm'd, and notwithstanding *Herfelia's* pique, whom it became to justify her generous Brother, it was so variously discour'd, that *Honorius* was fully satisfied of the Animosity between *Artabure* and *Heraclian*, and had a design to remove them one from the other, fearing lest their reputation might cause any faction at Court. *Heraclian* received orders to take possession of his Government in *Africa*, where he was generally thought to have been already. And *Artabure* departed to overtake *Constance* in the Army, that was marching toward the Province of the *Romans*. I together with *Flavian* took the same rode with *Artabure*, pondering upon the way what would be the issue of this business, without being able to clear those suspicions that had already seiz'd my thoughts. So variously did men talk of things according to the variety of their passions.

Soon after, Madam, I learn'd that *Artabure* had not at that time yet seen *Bellamira*, and that *Heraclian's* jealousy was ground'd upon a visit, which he had made to one of her Kinswomen, devoted to the service of that God whom we worship, in a house where *Bellamira* was wont to seek retirement. On the other side, I knew also that it was not said, that *Heraclian* and *Artabure* had been before at *Ravenna*, but that they were only ignorant of that circumstance, because they had been but few days with the Emperour: Nor did they speak at all of this particular, as being less necessary in the recital of their Adventures, but only for the understanding of the Relation which I am now to pursue.

To return therefore to a Story from which I made a digression, only that I might not leave any doubt in your Majesty's remembrance, I must tell you, Madam, that while *Heraclian* sows the seeds of a famous revolt in *Africa*, and while he prepares to cover the *Mediterranean* Sea, with a Navy as formidable as ever was seen, we march'd against *Constantine*, and after many skirmishes the success whereof prov'd various, we fought the famous Battel of *Arles*. You know Madam sufficiently, not only all that happened in that memorable conflict, but all that relates to the defeat of *Jovian*. And therefore instead of making a relation of a war, of the circumstances whereof few are ignorant, it behoves me to entertain your Majesty with the discourse of a fair Princess, whom I retain better in my memory, than all the most considerable exploits of both Armies, and of whom I think it too long, before I come to speak. While the victorious *Constance*, wounded with a poysoned Arrow, caus'd himself to be convey'd to the City of the *Tectosages*: *Flavian* who never would forsake me, and I, travell'd to *Samarobina*, and still as I drew near the Town, I enquired
the

the news that most concern'd me, I was told that *Salifon* was in great perplexity, and that he had much ado to keep the Citizens of *Samarobina* in order, and that *Polyena's* health being much impair'd since her return out of *Italy*, she was gone to the waters of *Tongres*, together with her daughter *Adelaiada*. I took no long time to consider, but made hatt to a Prince who I thought might have need of my Assistance: and having some reputation, and for that love and youth not only augment the heat of courage, but also many times render it successful, my presence immediately wrought so powerfully upon the minds of the Rebels, that they submitted themselves to *Salifon*, and I received from the Prince a thousand testimonies of acknowledgment and friendship.

If it were pleasing to me be treated after that manner by the Father of *Adelaiada*, I was much more charm'd by the civilities I received from *Polyena*, and the Princess whom I adored: For the King of the *Nemetians* had wrote to them in my behalf, and extoll'd so bountifully the service which I had done him, that I thought my self the most fortunate of men, from the day that I arrived in the dominions of the King my Father. The next morning I apparell'd my self in most magnificent habit, I sent to *Leodia* which is the biggest of the Neighbouring Cities, for whatever could be had to render the pastimes and diversifements at our waters, sumptuous and rare, and I went to visit the Queen her self, so soon as she was in a condition to be seen. She had a great Train of company with her, and while I was busied in beholding that which I passionately loved, and sigh'd for grief that I had been so long absent from *Adelaiada*, they fell to discourse of the pleasures that our waters of the *Spa* every year afford. For my part, (said a fair Lady of the Country of *Belgia*) that which I find there most agreeable, is to meet in the Country with the diversifements of the greatest Cities, and to be often there at Balls and Comedies. Do you say nothing, added a young *Batavian* Lady, of the surprise which we find, when at our coming forth from a numerous assembly, we see our selves environ'd with woods, hills, and rocks? What you mention both of the one and the other, said a *Parisian*, is not particular to the *Spa*, for expence will afford you the same delights, in every field where the Masters are rich and liberal. But we may fancy a kind of pleasure near these Fountains, not to be met with but in few places, for at the sight of many sick people, they who have their healths believe themselves more happy, and they who are indispos'd may find some satisfaction, in conversing with those who are troubled with the same distempers. Since every one has spoken her thoughts, said a *Neustrian*, I declare it, that I came hither only for recreation sake, and that persons of my humour satisfy their prevailing passions better, in these places of concourse than in Cities: For if fortune favour them they gain only them to whom they are unknown, whose complements rarely move them, and to whom they are not obliged to be so complaisant. If on the contrary they happen to have any considerable loss, it makes no noise in their own Country, or at least it comes not to be known till they have had time to alter and palliate the circumstances. As I am of a world divided from yours, replied a *British* Lady, I must confess that the diversity of Nations, that I see in this little Country, pleases me infinitely: Nor can I imagine where in any other place to enter into a friendship, with persons whom we never saw before, nor perhaps shall never see again.

Flavian taking notice that that general discourse, was no way profitable for me, and that my Aim was to discourse *Adelaiada* by her self, I wonder, said he, that not a word has been said of walking, which is one of the most usual diversifements in the Country. But methinks instead of busying our selves to commend it, the Princess should shew a good example, who were she now pleas'd to lead us the way, would give a better reputation to that pastime, than we could do with all our commendations.

The Queen of the *Nemetians* looked upon me, and as I had been to visit her she would not express her mind, till she had honoured me with those Compliments, that civility requires upon all occasions of the same nature. But so soon as she observ'd in my looks, that I was pleas'd with *Flavian's* proposal, addressing her self to the *Roman*; If the Prince of the *Tongres*, said she, be of your mind, I am very free to give my consent that *Adelaiada* may leave us for some few hours.

After she had spoken these words, all the company rose, *Adelaiada's* Attendants were called for, and I had the satisfaction to give my hand to that fair Princess. When we were out of the house, I found that it would be no small ease to my mind, if I should let that most incomparable person understand the passion, that I had cherish'd in my heart. I look'd upon her with an extraordinary love, but that love how violent soever it were, being accompanied with a deep respect, instead of opening my lips, caus'd me only to sigh and look downward. *Adelaiada* taking notice of my behaviour, made a right conjecture of my thoughts, and therefore to divert me from a discourse, of which her modesty was too apprehensive, she fell upon the subject which *Flavian* had interrupted. Since you have not

declared your self, (said she speaking of the pleasures of the Spa) let me ask you the question, what you think to be there most agreeable to your humour? For my part, Madam, (said I with an Air that spoke before I could express my self) methinks there is nothing so pleasing as the liberty we have to bewail the evils we endure, and if the Princess of the Nemetians will not refuse me that privilege, which all people enjoy in this place, I must crave leave to tell her that Taxander has adored her, from the first time that ever he saw her, and that he was no sooner deprived of the sight of her, but he suffered all the cruelty wherewith absence could afflict the most passionate of Lovers. I said no more after those few words, when the charming but too cruel *Adelaiada*, blushing and keeping silence for some few minutes; Prince, said she, with a haughtiness mingled with disdain, I knew I was in that Kingdom, where you are one day to wear the Crown, though you had not been so bold as to put me in mind of it: But know withal that the Princess *Adelaiada* has not changed her condition, in changing the Climate, and that she expects that men should consider the privileges, which she claims by vertue of her birth and sex, as well in the Country of the *Tongres* as in other places. Ah Madam, said I sighing, for Heavens sake better understand the unfortunate Taxander, he has a veneration for you that no men have for mortal creatures, and since his destiny made him your servant, he was left a subject to the Emperour of the Romans, than to the charming Princess of the Nemetians, even in Italy where he first beheld those eyes. Taxander Madam adores you, Taxander is yours, if he offend you by this respectful protestation, he must never cease to injure you after that manner, as long as he lives, finding himself in a better capacity to expire at your feet, to appease your displeasure, than to repent of that pretended crime. The Princess perceiving that I spake with so much vehemency, feared the continuance of a discourse which she could not brook without disturbance, and therefore making a stop she stayed, till those persons that followed her overtook us and mix'd company: Which so much grieved me that not being Master of my Affliction, I sigh'd a hundred times during the walk which I had desired.

Being parted from *Adelaiada* *Flavian* came to me, and after he had spied in my looks, the troubles of my heart, and understood the cause; "And well Sir, said he to allay my sorrow, you see no more than what often happens, upon the first discoveries and protestations of love: For it is evident that the Princess of the Nemetians did not think it expedient to let you conceive too fair hopes at first. "Ah *Flavian*, cryed I. I am lost, the unjust *Adelaiada* scorns me, or else her inclinations are more favourable, to some other lover more happy than my self. But which way soever my ill fate has ordain'd, both the one and the other is more unsupportable to me than the most cruel death.

After that without giving *Flavian* time to answer, I recounted to him what had passed between us, I represented to him my submissiveness and the severity of *Adelaiada*, and aggravated her unkindness to him, that he soon perceived I was the most enamour'd person in the world, and that the Princess of the Nemetians had not so much softness in her conversation, as she had sweetness in her looks. He was much surpris'd at it, and us'd all his endeavours to disengage me from a person, whose behaviour gave him some distaste: And giving me to understand that I had sufficiently acquitted my self, of my respects toward *Polyenz* and the Princess, he perswaded me that I could no longer dispence with my duty that engaged me to make halt to see the King my Father: And in regard my thoughts were not much different from his, in relation to the Prince to whom I owed my being, I remained not long unresolv'd, but at length departed for *Mosellana*, where *Marsandus* usually kept his Court, but with an intention to return as soon as possible to *Adelaiada*. The King of the *Tongres* received me, with all the marks and signs of tenderness that could be expected, from the most indulgent Father in the world. But though the joy which I felt at the sight of a Father, was little less than his, yet it much less endured, having but for a while suspended those thoughts, which were only to be bestow'd upon *Adelaiada*, while the Ideas of that Princess fill'd my imagination, and tormented me with the remembrance of her severity.

These reflections joyn'd to the melancholy caused by her absence, insus'd a certain languishment into my eyes, which being observed by *Marsandus*, he was earnest to know the cause. But because I durst not presume to discover it, yet had not confidence enough to make any excuse, the King my Father was not satisfied with my Answer, but began to have a suspicion: And therefore to inform himself he put me upon a discourse, wherein he mention'd the Sister of *Honorius*, the Princess *Theodolinda*, and many other Roman Ladies whose beauty he had heard extoll'd, and finding that I gave my opinion concerning them, without any alteration in my countenance, he bethought himself of speaking something of my journey to the Spa, and the charms of *Adelaiada*. Hearing that Princess nam'd I blush'd, and my mind was discompos'd in that manner, that *Marsandus* who heedfully observed me, took notice

notice thereof: *Ah, my Son*, said he, *you are in love with Adelaïada, and I will enquire no farther whence proceeds your melancholy, the cause whereof I have been diving into this three or four days.* Those words augmenting my discomposure, the King of the *Tongres* was confirm'd in his belief, *Prince*, (said he with a more lively air) *I am glad your distemper is no worse than I apprehend it to be; for I believe it will be no difficult thing to obtain the cure.*

Hereupon, being in a furious perplexity, and not knowing what to answer, I took my leave of *Martianus* as soon as possibly I could; and while I retired to my Chamber, he sent for *Flavian* to be inform'd of all the particulars that concern'd my passion. He had a long conference with the *Roman*, and at last resolv'd by his advice to send to the King of the *Nemetians*, to propound a Match between *Taxander* and the Princess his Daughter. After that he gave me leave to go to the waters, where I was no sooner arriv'd, but I went to *Polyena*, and evidently made manifest the visible marks of that passion that controul'd my heart. The charming Princess blush'd, perceiving an earnest disquiet, and a joy mingled with anguish; and I had the pleasure to perswade my self that the Carnation that appear'd in her cheeks was too lovely to be an affect of antipathy or choler. But the satisfaction of that deceitful thought endured not long, I found too soon that it was not an easie thing for me to move *Adelaïada*; and that in spite of my submission, my complaisance and my cares, that severe Princess did exactly avoid all opportunities that I could possibly find to let her but understand what I suffered for her. *Flavian*, who expected not such ill success, was desirous to know the cause of a behaviour so surprizing; to which purpose he could not find a better way, than by obliging himself to serve a beautiful Virgin nam'd *Ydonia*, in whom the Princess repos'd a very great confidence: and in regard that Lady was fair, and of eminent quality among those of her Country, *Flavian* not only beheld her without reluctance, but soon after, his passion for her was little different from that which I had for *Adelaïada*: his love not so violent as mine was better entertain'd. And while I led a sorrowful languishing life in the presence of *Adelaïada*, the happy *Flavian* had the satisfaction to see that *Ydonia*, to ease him, wore some part of his Fetters: yet the obliging *Roman* thought his felicity not perfect so long as I complain'd of the cruelty of my Princess; and taking notice that my health began to be visibly impair'd through the effect of a profound melancholy, and that all people were willing to contribute toward my recovery except *Adelaïada*, he resolv'd to make use of *Ydonia's* reputation to render *Adelaïada* kind, or at least to oblige me to take my last leave of an ingrateful and unjust Princess. To that purpose he went to *Ydonia* very much discompos'd, and that fair Lady having a kindness for him, no sooner perceiv'd the trouble of his thoughts in his countenance, but she eagerly press'd to know the cause: *Flavian* spoke first to my advantage, then upbraiding the Princess of the *Nemetians*, he protested that he could not endure she should either have an antipathy against me, or shew her self indifferent. Then he conjur'd *Ydonia* in language most urgently pressing, to declare to him what *Adelaïada's* real thoughts were, and to tell him ingenuously whether the Princess was prepossess'd against me with any natural antipathy, or whether I had offended her by any action of my own. *Ydonia* was at a great loss, and kept off a great while before she would say any thing to the purpose; but her heart being already accusom'd to be complaisant to *Flavian*, caus'd her to return him this answer, *The Princess of the Nemetians* said she, *knows the merit of your Friend, she esteems the Prince as much as you can wish; and since you constrain me to say more than I ought, I must confess that she would now have had thoughts more obliging, could she overcome a scruple that opposes it self to Taxander's happiness.* But, *Flavian*, do not flatter your self that obstacle is invincible; and *Adelaïada*, who has the goodness to communicate her most secret thoughts to me, has never yet trusted me with that, to hinder me without question from being in a condition to contend with her in the behalf of a Prince whose part I generally take. *Ah, Ydonia*, reply'd *Flavian*, *Adelaïada dares not declare to you what forbids her to give the Prince of the Tongres admission into her heart, because she finds it to be an obstinacy ill grounded; nor can I imagine that a thought of that nature can long hold out against a merit which you say is already known to her.* Nevertheless, replied she, *I am afraid you deceive your self; for the Princess has spoken to me with that resolution, which is no way conformable to your hopes.* 'Tis enough, *Ydonia*, (said he impatiently, interrupting her) *that resolve of Adelaïada's must of necessity produce another which will determine Taxander's misfortune: I must represent to the Princess, that she ought to disdain so much weakness, and that it is time for her to shake off those chains with which she stands at present so unjustly fetter'd.*

He had no sooner spoken those words, but he took his leave of *Ydonia* in great haste, and coming directly to me, he gave me an account of all that I have already related; afterwards more than ordinary zealous, *Sir*, said he, *you must think no more of Adelaïada: 'Tis*

not for such a Prince as you to languish in vain for her; and if your heart cannot be easily won to forsake a Princess that has charm'd it; call back again into the same heart that desire of honour that possess'd it so long time before: let us go to the War in Germany, let us take part with the Sueves, who are the Roman Confederates, and you will find in the divine Rosamond, or the amiable Albisinda, those charms that will bury in oblivion a Beauty which you ought never more to have in remembrance. I will follow you, Sir, and yet I am not disdain'd by Ydonia, and if I am capable of such a self-denial, what answer can you give me for an excuse? That you are a Generous Friend, I replied, but never any true Lover; Ah, Flavian, you would soon change your resolution; had you for Ydonia a love that came but near what I feel for the Princess of the Nemetians, you would prefer the joy of being in her presence before all other contents; and all the honour that attends on Triumph, how glorious soever they be, would be a meaner satisfaction without doubt, than that which you would find in serving the person whom you really lov'd. To those I added other words, which testified how impossible it was to take off my affection for *Adelaiada*, inasmuch that *Flavian* withdrew very much vex'd; and while he made haste to complain of me, I went to visit the Princess, the first sight of whose fair eyes quite defac'd all the impressions of reason which his arguments had labour'd to raise against my love.

The next morning *Flavian* returning to visit me more eager, and more discomposed, Sir, said he, we must be gone from a Country fatal to your repose: *Alaric* is marching against Italy, and threatens Rome it self with utter desolation; and though the interest of *Honorius* did not call you to the relief of a City where you have been eminently esteem'd, you cannot refuse your assistance to the Princess *Cleomira*, to a dear and noble Sister ready to be besieg'd by an Army of the Barbarians.

At this news, which was too true, I seem'd not a little surpris'd, and perceiv'd my self inflam'd with a noble enmity against the *Goths*. But, Madam, I must presume to tell you, that at the same time *Adelaiada*, as ingrateful as she was, still was Mistress of my heart; and that after a conflict between the passion which I had for her, and the claims of Kindred and Friendship, she imperiously commanded me not to remove from her presence. *Flavian* no sooner understood my resolution, but he was struck with an astonishment more than ordinary, after he had taxed me with a folly unworthy the grandeur of my courage, How, Sir, said he, are you immovable, and can you preserve a constancy which *Adelaiada* so much disdain's? What thoughts would you have, should that Princess prove more kind? I should believe my self the more happy, (replied I with a sigh) but I should be neither the less diligent, nor less faithful: after all that, if you look upon my passion to be extraordinary, go to *Adelaiada*, and read my excuse in her fair eyes.

Then *Flavian* beheld me with an aspect where compassion seem'd to be mingled with anger, but his friendship proving at length more prevalent, he went to *Ydonia* to give her new testimonies of that affection which I offered to the Princess, to the end that *Adelaiada* having the knowledge thereof might be at length compell'd to take pity on me. Thus was the Princess soon inform'd of the deep respect I had for her, and listen'd to those evidences which she heard from the *Ydonia's* lips, with that sorrow which manifested that I was not unworthy her acknowledgment, though she could not however give me any relief.

In the mean time a *Nemetian* Lady of great quality came to the *Spa*, and gave *Polyena* an account of a Treaty almost concluded upon, and request'd her on the behalf of the King her Master to look upon me as a Prince that was to be his Confederate. *Salison* had also written to *Adelaiada*, wherein he commanded her to receive me with that civility, and that confidence which Ladies usually have for those who in all probability are to become their Husbands. On the other side, *Martсандus* was not only careful to advertise me of all that had pass'd, but he gave me assurances of my happiness, and promised me to agree with the King of the *Nemetians* in all things for the obtaining what I so ardently affected.

These tydings at first fill'd me with joy, but when I consider'd that neither *Polyena*, *Salison* nor *Martсандus* could render me happy, and that only *Adelaiada* could accomplish my felicity, I breath'd innumerable sighs, feeling an augmentation both of my fear and sadness. After a vast variety of thoughts which an extraordinary love infus'd into me, I went to visit the Queen of the *Nemetians*, to whom I thought I was bound to apply my self for several reasons. *Polyena* receiv'd me after a most obliging manner, and having testified to me how glad she was that *Salison* and *Martсандus* agreed in their intentions so conformable to her own, she began to deal more frankly with me, and told me if I would see *Adelaida*, I should find her in her Closet with *Ydonia* and *Flavian*: immediately I went to wait upon the charming Princess, not being able to enter without trembling, into a place where my destiny was to be decided. I first consult'd those fair eyes that I ador'd, to find there the prognosticks of my good or bad fortune, and took notice that

that *Adelaiada* no sooner perceived me, but she laid one of her fair hands upon her cheeks; to hide those blushes which my presence had occasion'd. As for my part, upon the sight of what I loved, I felt my self so transported with my passion, that *Flavian* and *Idonia* being no way suspected, I threw my self at the feet of my Princess. "I come hither to you, Madam, said I sighing, as to the only person that can dispose of my destiny: you know Madam that by the will of your Father, I find my self advanc'd and encourag'd in the most honourable of all my pretences; but I protest never to take any advantage of *Salison's* good-nests, so that if I cannot obtain from yours a voluntary consent, I renounce that supreme felicity to which my hopes have rais'd me. It is sufficient Madam that I am so unfortunate, as to live without your favour, without loading my self with a crime, and by rendring my self guilty, of putting a force upon your Inclinations. Sir, I am reduced to that streight, answered *Adelaiada*, that I cannot preserve my innocency, bow cautiously soever I behave my self, or what limits soever I set to my intentions. In short, if I follow not the orders of the King my Father, I fail in my acknowledgment to you, and that obedience I owe a Father, who has the privilege to govern and dispose of my inclinations. On the other side, if I fulfil *Salison's* commands, I must accuse my self of lightness, and all my life reproach an ingratitude in my self, which I cannot think can ever deserve to be pardoned. But Madam, (said I afflicted with those last words) of what ingratitude———I beseech you Sir, said she, seek no farther interpretation, for I must confess to you with all the freedom that your behaviour merits, that I am troubled that I cannot answer your desires. Ah! my Princess, replied I sighing, Who in the world can if you cannot? Truly Sir, answered *Adelaiada*, that which raises the scruple which opposes your suit, so that if you can be content with my esteem and good will, you shall never have cause to complain. That which you offer, I replied, is of a high value, but I must presume to say my heart desires something more, and that the passion whose Empire it acknowledges, requires another sort of Recompence. You may find it in the society of some other Princess, replied the blushing, not constrained and tyed by the accidents of a contrary fortune, while I lie under the reproaches of an incens'd Father, not daring to declare to him the reasons of my proceeding, with which he would be himself surpris'd. Would *Taxander* may perish, (said I interrupting her, with a new disturbance in my countenance) before he prove inconstant to his divine Princess. No, no, Madam, I shall never change, but notwithstanding your severity, I will rather chose to wail and mourn under the weight of my chains, than to receive Crowns at the hands of any other Princess. And how insensible soever you may be in respect of me, I will sacrifice my self to the displeasure of *Salison* and *Martlandus*, and that the King of the *Nemetians* may have no reason to blame you for your reluctancy against me, or your disobedience to him. I will my self seem to be the cause of breaking off a match, so honourable and satisfactory to my self. I will absent my self from you, I will quit that happiness which I prefer before all the Empires of the world, and in the Armies of the *Goths*, go seek the end of a life which you cause me to hate, and which you may render the most fortunate in the world. Ah divine Princess, wherefore will you not tell me?———"Yes; Generous Prince (said she interrupting me, and moved with my resolution) I will open you my heart, since nothing could sooner have urg'd me to it. You may perhaps have understood already, said she pursuing her discourse, that the Prince of the *Sennois* was to have espoused me, by the will of those persons who have power over mine. The King my Father had commanded me to have a great value for him, and as then it was in my power to dispose of my affections, while *Cavarin* on his part gave me a thousand obliging proofs of his, I followed *Salison's* commands, and gave my consent without any reluctancy. Judge you now Sir, of what importance an engagement of this nature, is to a soul that is capable of honour: And whether I ought not to be strangely sham'd of my self, should I change to the prejudice of a Prince who is dead, with all those privileges and claims which I have mention'd, and who himself never would have chang'd. Ah! Madam, said I, that you should know so little.———

At those words I held my peace, not daring to speak against our Rival, whose Tomb ought to be his sacred sanctuary: But *Flavian* not being obliged to the same reservedness; Madam, said he, the Prince of whom you speak was but a Politician in the disguise of a Lover, he was not tyed so much by the motives of his affection, as by the maxims of state-prudence, and would have been unfaithful every time that change could have been profitable. At the same time that he sigh'd at your feet, he wrote affectionate Letters to *Hersilia* to preserve *Artabure's* friendship, and I make no question but he would have renounced the fairest Princess in the world, to have only been looked upon by the Sister of *Honorius*, could he have had the same pretence to have favn'd upon her, without exposing himself to the displeasure, of the most formidable of all the *Romans*. I would you could persuade me to it, (replied *Adelaiada* casting a most obliging look upon me) but Fla-

vian, besides that all the words and Actions of *Cavarin* manifested the contrary, behold there a testimony of his constancy. Concluding these words she presented a Letter to *Flavian*, and as I had an extraordinary impatience, to see whatever might concern my misfortune, I greedily overlooked these words, while *Flavian* read them aloud.

Heraclian to the Princess of the Nemetians.

I Have lost Madam a most Royal friend, and you Madam the most faithful of all Lovers: I am inform'd that *Cavarin* is dead, and that he had not lost his life but because he was beloved by you. And indeed it is true that he might have had his life, would he have promised not to have lived only to serve you: But this generous Lover has renounc'd his Life sooner than his Claim; you approved it Madam, and so honourable it was that he was willing to carry it to his Tomb. He has left the world but has not forsook the Empire, and it may be said that he has extended your dominions beyond the Limits of the world.

"I am not ignorant, replied *Flavian* after he had read the Letter, that it was reported at Rome that *Artabure* had slain the Prince of the *Senonois*, and that he had fought with him for *Heraclian's* sake; nevertheless that rumour was very uncertain, for it was presently known that only *Heraclian's* creatures made it publick. 'Tis that incertainty, replied the Princess, that troubles me at present, and I could wish that the Prince of the *Tongres* could quit me of it, but forbear I beseech you till I have better information from him. When *Flavian* observing that there was a Postscript, continued to read these words.

I do not doubt Madam, but you will suddenly know the Murderer of Cavarin, that he may not entertain you with a pretended passion, nor dare to presume to demand a heart, which the unfortunate Prince of the Senonois had merited and obtained. But Madam, I fear nothing from a heart like yours, nor can I imagine that you will ever endure, that our common Enemy shall triumph over an illustrious Lover, who had been promised the honour of espousing the divine Princess of the Nemetians.

At those words *Flavian* held his peace, and *Adelaiada* changed colour, and I remain'd like one astonish'd: the suspicion of the Princess was confirm'd, and the jealousy which I had before was almost turned to a certain knowledge, and *Flavian* not knowing what to think he beheld me without speaking a word. The Princess at length brake silence and addressing her self to me; "Prince, said she, there is no person in the world can better clear the point in relation to *Heraclian's* letter than your self, and to shew you what an esteem I have of your sincerity; I declare that I will rely upon your single testimony: And if you can assure me that it was not your self that slew *Cavarin*, you shall find me freely dispos'd to follow the orders which I have received. But if that Prince for whom my Father had design'd me fell by your Sword, I cannot believe that you will again assail him in my heart, and there take from him a second life which it behoves me to preserve, and constrain me to receive you in his Room.

She had no sooner spoken in that manner but I found my self in a strange perplexity, I saw my self the Master of my own destiny, I found my self in a condition to render my self the most happy Prince that ever was. But alas, I found at the same time, that I did not deserve the happiness which it lay in my power to procure; should I obtain it by that dissimulation, that became not either *Adelaiada* or *Taxander*. I beheld my Princess then with an extraordinary melancholy. and in that posture; "Madam, said I sighing, Heaven is my witness that I know not how to live absented from you, and if you banish me I shall dye the most unfortunate of men. On the contrary had I the advantage not to have done any thing to displease you, I should prefer it before the honour of possessing the Throne, either of *Theodosius* or *Honorius*: At the same time I also protest, that I cannot assuredly tell whether I slew the Prince of the *Senonois* or no, but I must confess after all this that very strong conjectures, forbid me to aspire to that felicity, which you would surrender to my disposal, nor shall it ever be said that *Taxander* betrayed his own thoughts, or deceiv'd
the

“ the Princess whom he adores. No, Madam, I will not purchase the marks of your good
 “ will at so high a price; for I will rather chuse to live and die in misery, than obtain it by
 “ means that would render me unworthy of it, being neither conformable to the greatness
 “ of my courage, nor the purity of my flame.

Thereupon I gave her a full relation in a few words of what befel me upon the way from
Ravenna, and then pursuing my discourse, *Madam*, said I, *see there a perfect account of the*
grounds of my suspicion, for it is not by a disguise of the truth that I pretend to an affection
like yours, but by services of high importance, even by the loss of my life. But yet dear Prin-
cess, would you that vain appearances should deprive me of a most solid felicity? Is it reason-
able that a Prince, whose pretences could not destroy mine, should after his death overturn those
hopes which were permitted me while he lived? Was his felicity absolutely establish'd, had you
given him your hand? Is it to the Princess of the Senonois? To the Widow of Cavarin that I
address my self? Ah, Madam, after an ingenious confession be you just in your turn: I beseech
you let not your scruples, let not your ill grounded suspicions be more prevalent than your Fa-
ther's commands, or the testimonies of the most zealous and most respectful passion in the world. In
truth, Madam, replied Ydonia, I do not understand what answer you can make to Prince
Taxander. How, (said the Princess, interrupting her) is Ydonia against me too? Ydonia
that knew in what manner I was engag'd, she who knows my disposition, and how I value my
word: have I not told you, (said she, addressing her self to the fair Lady) that notwith-
standing the esteem which I had for the Prince of the Tongres, I would prefer the Prince of the
Senonois before him when ever I should be put to my choice, being already engag'd to declare my
consent in his favour. Why then, Madam, replied I, was I permitted to serve you as well as
my Rival? That I might not displease the Emperour, replied Adelaïda, who had declar'd
himself in your behalf: at which Heraclian and Cavarin that knew as much, were not much
troubled, being fully perswaded that I was not given to change. Ah, Madam, if it be so, Ca-
varin knew not how to love, for the passion which I have is always accompanied with fear and
impatience, nor could I live in any quiet had I a Rival that were not contemptible, or found a-
ny remora of my happiness. But, most Sovereign Princess, will not the death of the too fortunate
Prince of the Senonois permit you to dispense with a constancy that occasions all the misfortunes
of my life. I must ingenuously confess, replied she, that it would not allow me any dispensation:
but, Prince, I mean more in relation to others than your self, if you deprive me not of that good
opinion of your virtue of which I am already prepossess'd.

As she had concluded those words, there came one from the Queen her Mother that ear-
 nently call'd her away; whereupon we immediately return'd to *Polyena's* Chamber, and
 we were no sooner come into her presence but we perceiv'd her countenance was chang'd.
 She could hardly express the cause of her sadness, but the Courier that was arriv'd told us
 in short, that the Citizens of *Samarobrina* were absolutely revolted, declaring that their
 City was a free City of the *Gauls*, and under that pretence had sent Deputies to *Pharamond*,
 with a promise to put themselves under his jurisdiction, if he would protect them from *Salison*.
 In the mean time they besiege the City whither the King is retired, and that there
 was great probability of their carrying the place if it were not speedily reliev'd. The news
 having put my Princess into a fright, there appear'd so much perplexity in her face, that
 my heart became turmoil'd with several violencies, infomuch that not being able to mode-
 rate the transportation of my mind, but addressing my self to *Polyena*, *Madam*, said I with
 a resolute utterance, *fear nothing in reference to the King, so long as Taxander lives; I will*
reduce those Rebels and set Salison at liberty; for when the valiantest among the Tongres shall
joyn with the most faithful of your Subjects, a divided City will not be able to hold out long a-
gainst their united Forces.

I spake with an aspect so proper to infuse courage, that the Queen being thereby some-
 what assur'd, *Sir*, said she, 'tis upon you that all my hopes depend, I beseech you to make an
 end of what you have so generously propos'd. Besides the honour that attends you, you will
 fight for your self in fighting for the King of the *Nemetians*, and you will reduce *Samarobri-*
na under the obedience of a Prince who will leave in one day under your Dominion.

These last words causing me to turn toward *Adelaïda*, I beheld her sighing, but the
 presence of the Queen not permitting me to express my mind, I was constrain'd to leave
 her, being to undertake an enterprize that could not be deferr'd. Thereupon I sent the
 principal Officers which I had about me to draw out several Troops and Companies out of
 the several Garrisons, and having appointed them a general Rendezvous, I met them with an
 extraordinary haste. In the Evening I went to take leave of *Polyena* and *Adelaïda*, and
 had the opportunity by *Ydonia's* and *Heraclian's* means to discourse that fair Princess in her
 Closet; *I depart, Madam, (said I in a very passionate manner) yet I do not absent my self*

from the divine *Adelaiada* but for her interest. I forsake *Honorius*, *Placidia*, and an only and dear Sister, to go to the relief of *Salison*; and so long as you are not offended with the design that causes me to march for *Samarobrina*, I shall without doubt return a Victor. Then will I oppose so many effectual services to your vain scruples, that perhaps you will not then remain so firm in your constancy to make me suffer, as I in that constancy which I have always had to dedicate all the actions of my life to your service. But, dear Princess, if I return with that favourable success which I dare promise my self, that fortune that attends me, and the victory which I shall gain, shall they both be sacrific'd to the destiny of my Rival? Go, generous *Taxander*, said she, go and set the King my Father at liberty, and remember that cruelty ought not to enter into the heart of a Prince that is going to fight.

Somewhat of a blush that accompanied those words, gave me to understand the true force thereof, so that I returned *Adelaiada*'s thanks with some kind of satisfaction, more than I had received from the beginning of my engagement.

The End of the Second Book of the Ninth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK III.

BEfore I took my leave I complemented *Ydonia*, believing *Adelaiada* would not take it amiss; so that I not only took my leave of her with all the civility that I thought due to a person that was so infinitely dear to the Princess, but I also recommended to her my own concerns, after such a manner that I perceived her mov'd with my request. After that, *Flavian* and I retired, who, notwithstanding the ordinary humour of the *Romans*, prefer'd his Mistress before his Country, immediately we rode both together to the general Rendezvous, taking along with us all the Soldiers that we could find in the way. On the other side, the King my Father sent to me without delay, and understanding that they were levying men in several Countries of *Gallia* for the assistance of *Samarobrina*, he caus'd *Polyena* and the Princess to be conducted to *Leodia*, a fair and strong Town not far distant from the waters. In the mean time I marched toward the Rebels with a Body of four thousand Horse, and understanding that a party of the *Belgians* were about to get into the City, I set upon them so suddenly, that I defeated them before any party from the City could be sent out to make good their approach. The report thereof coming to the City, at first caus'd no little disturbance among them: but the Inhabitants took heart, and understanding that five and twenty thousand men were advancing in all haste to their relief, they assaulted the Castle more vigorously. Though I found my Army increase, as well by the accession of those Forces which the King my Father sent me, as of those of the *Nemetians* who were desirous to signalize their zeal and fidelity, however I could not but be in great perplexity for the Father of *Adelaiada*. The Assaults and Sallics were frequent and vigorous; so that while I apprehended that every blow might be the death of *Salison*, and occasion sorrow in the heart

heart of my Princess, that cruel apprehension so tormented me every moment, that I sought out for a way speedily, to suppress the growth of farther trouble. To that purpose I gave the principal Rebels to understand, that I would procure their pardon, if they would submit to their Prince. On the other side, that I would lay wast all their estates, if they continued obstinate. But they not valuing any such threatening language, return'd insolent answers, and would hearken to no propositions tending toward any accommodation, till they understood that the *Nemetians* that were in my Army, began to burn their Enemies houses, and that the King of the *Franks*, instead of protecting them, sent forces to *Salison*.

The treaty continued a long time, but at length was concluded to the King of the *Nemetians* full satisfaction, who return'd me so many marks of acknowledgment and favour that my hopes increased to a double proportion. A thousand times he affectionately embrac'd me, he called me his Son, his deliverer, and the only restorer of him to his lost dignity, and understanding that the *Gauls* who came against him, had invaded the Territories of the *Tongres*, he resolv'd to march in person to the relief of the King my father. I oppos'd my self to this generous resolution, for not looking upon any war to be considerable, but what concern'd the Princess *Adelsiada*, I bent all my care to reestablish the King of the *Nemetians*. The better to assure him in his Throne, I sent away the heads of the sedition, and left him sufficient forces as well to joyn with his own, as to keep in subjection the inhabitants of *Samarobrina*. In all regulations that were made to the advantage of the King *Flavian* was very servicable as well in his Advice and counsel, as in his valour during the war. *Salison* most obligingly return'd him thanks, and forced him to accept of some considerable presents. He wrote also in my favour to the Queen and Princess, and did not only in his Letters extol the most inconsiderable of my Actions; but gave her to understand, that he ardently coveted my Alliance. Had I not understood these circumstances which I have repeated, I had not however delayed my departure, being extremely impatient to see *Adelsiada*: To that purpose I made haste toward *Leodia*, but as I was in hopes suddenly to enjoy the company of my Princess, I received news that did not a little disturb my satisfaction: For the report was, that the famous *Alaric* had taken *Rome*, that the riches of that magnificent City was become a prey to the *Goths*, and that there was nothing but disorder and desolation in that City, which had given laws to all the Nations of the world. Immediately a fear surpris'd me for the Princesses *Placidia*, *Theodolinda*, and *Cleomira*, who would not forsake the *Romans* in their misfortune. But I was assured that *Autalpb* brother of *Alaric*, that *Walilia* a Prince of the blood, and *Attalus* the most considerable of his general Officers had not only protected them from the insolency of the Soldiers, but had caused them to be us'd with all the respect, which they could have given them in any other place.

Flavian enquir'd after many particulars of so strange a resolution, seeming to be very much afflicted: Nevertheless love still being the more predominant passion in his heart as well as in mine, we comforted each other with the sight of *Leodia*, whither we had made such an extraordinary haste, that they were surpris'd at our arrival: For I went to visit *Polyena* before she was advertis'd of my return. *Ydonia* was the first person of my acquaintance, that I met, and therefore after I had consult'd her countenance addressing my self to her, “*Ydonia*, said I, have you remembred the unfortunate Prince who——— Ah, Sir, (said she, interrupting me with a pleasant assest) never speak of being unhappy I beseech you: but prepare to be received with all the sounds of rejoycing and triumph. Notwithstanding all these great words, said I smiling, I would know whether you have spoken in the behalf of *Taxander*. Perhaps less than you believe, answered she, for in truth renown has so well delivered her self in your behalf, that all I could do was but weakly to second her. I beseech you, fair *Ydonia*, do not think, that excuse will satisfy me how fair soever it seem: for I must still desire you to tell me, whether you have taken care of my concerns. You have so much interest your self that my intercession was altogether needless, for every advantage you got over the Rebels, made some progress in the heart of the Princess. I see by these answers, said I, that 'tis not your desire I should keep you any longer in discourse, but that you civilly command me silence. Besides that it is but just that I should give that place to *Flavian*, which he has deserved by many noble actions; and that while he enjoys so pleasing a converse, I should go and give an account of what I have suffered for her in my absence.

In short, I went to *Polyena*'s Chamber, where I was received with all the marks of favour, that *Salison* had bestow'd upon me at *Samarobrina*: But that which pleased me most, was a favourable glance from the fair Eyes of *Adelsiada*; and as I was turning toward her to make my reverence, *Flavian* happily entred, whereby I happily gained an opportunity to

discourse of my passion to my divine Princess. *Madam*, said I, *may I not be so inquisitive as to desire to know the condition of my fortune. It will be no difficult thing to answer you in that particular*, replied the Princess, *for your valour is so universally spread abroad, that you may easily guess at the honour which you have won. There is no other honour but that of being yours, dear Princess*, said I interrupting her, *and therefore I beseech you let us talk of that which most concerns me. Tell me I conjure you what you think of Taxander, and how you intend to dispose of his destiny.* She paus'd a little upon those words, but I urging her still more earnestly, *Taxander*, answered she at length, *the Rebels are overcome, Salison is free, and Adelaïada was never ingrateful, let that suffice you and require no more from a person of my humour.*

Those words gave me some satisfaction at first, but having examin'd them I was not so well content, seeing they rather proceeded from my Princess's acknowledgment, than from any perswasion of her own inclination. So that I should have requested something more, had not the Queen at the same time complemented me, with an entreaty to go and take my repose, understanding that I was but newly alighted at the Palace Gate. I was therefore constrained to retire, but instead of taking my rest; *Flavian* and I spent all our time in talking of the charms of *Adelaïada*. The Roman would needs perswade me that I stood very fair in the Princess's affection, but finding me not overmuch disposed to believe it, *It may be*, said he, *you may not remain long in suspense, for if Ydonia has not deceived me, you may to morrow make Adelaïada explain her mind, and draw from her own lips a confirmation of what I tell you.*

He infused this hope into me with an Air full of so much assurance, that I impatiently longed to see my Princess again, and I went to her Apartment transported with love and joy, so soon as *Flavian* judg'd it convenient, according to the order which he had receiv'd. We found *Adelaïada* in the Garden, and her Pages retiring to sit on as we drew near her; I gave my hand to that beautiful Princess, and thus expressed my passion to her. *Is it possible, Madam, that you should not yet be moved with those demonstrations of tender affection, and veneration which I have for you, and that you should not value me so far, as I am favour'd by fortune?* Pronouncing those words I beheld her with an amorous look, and to those expressions I added others, to which she return'd me this answer. *Methinks, Taxander, you ought to have been contented: But since the commands of the King my Father, and those obligations you have laid upon me, permit me a free liberty of speech. know that the will of Salison and your own services, have vanquished that reluctancy which I had to my pretensions: and since it remains uncert in whether you slew the Prince of the Senonais, while it is not to be question'd but that you saved my Fathers life and Crown; I dare safely (without being unjust to Cavarin) obey my Father, and cease to be opposite to your intentions. How highly have you engaged me, divine Princess, cryed I, what acknowledgment can I make of a favour so extraordinary?* I was so transported that I was about to proceed, when one of her Attendants came to her in great haste, and told her that *Megastus* desir'd to be admitted.

The name of *Megastus* seem'd to trouble *Adelaïada*, and turning about she saw a stranger of a comely aspect but somewhat wan, approaching toward her: I took notice that she had not the power to speak to him, which made me more exactly heed the person, who had caused that discomposure. I had no sooner observed him but methought he was not unknown to me: so that being desirous to inform my self; *Stranger*, said I, *have I not seen you before, either at Rome or at Samarobrina?* *No, Sir*, (answered he sighing after he had well considered my countenance) *and I wish to heaven that I had never met you neither, upon the rode to Ravenna.*

At these words I recollected my thoughts, and calling to my remembrance all that had befallen me, when I went to meet the Emperour in *Ariobindus's* Garden. I observ'd that the Knight who spake to me was the same, who ran to the succour of his Master during that fight, the particulars whereof I have already repeated. I was so surpris'd at *Megastus* taking that opportunity; *Is it in your presence, Madam*, said he, *that I come to find the Enemy of Cavarin? do you not know Madam, that the Knight who gives you his hand, is the person that slew the unfortunate Prince who adored your beauty; and if you know it, is it possible that you should suffer him in your presence?* He had no sooner spoken in that manner, but *Adelaïada* stood in an amaze: She had cast her eyes downward, and by and by looking in my face; *Prince*, said she, *do you grant for truth what he gives you to understand? I confess*, said I overwhelm'd with grief, *that I wounded the Master of this Stranger; but Madam let him speak on, let him tell the whole Story, and then if he has as much zeal for truth as he has for his Master's interest, he will tell you without doubt that Cavarin assaulted me, that he was arm'd that I could not know him, and that I took his life away only in defending my own.* 'Tis enough, replied *Adelaïada*, you slew Cavarin.

After she had said those few words, and call'd *Ydonia*, she rest'd her hand up on her Arm, and making a sign that no person should follow her, she went into a green Arbour: *Megastus* retired, understanding my quality: but for my part, I stood like a Statue, and as I was pondering upon the capriciousness of my fortune, *Flavian* came to me, seeking to moderate some part of my trouble, *Ab, Flavian*, (said I interrupting him) *never was Lover more unfortunate than the miserable Taxander, and perhaps the only person in the world that ought to bewail his Rival. Why should you bewail him?* replied *Flavian*: *Or why should you repent of having defended your self? Think you, Sir, that the injustice of the Princess can last long? think you she will never open her eyes, and that she will not soon see how advantageous you will be able to repair the loss of which you have been the occasion? Fear nothing, Sir, Adelaïada does not hate you, you have serv'd her, she is sensible of Gratitude, and Ydonia stand your Friend.*

Having so said, he leaves me, goes toward the Arbour, stands at the door, and takes notice that the Princess was talking to her beloved *Ydonia* with a passionate languishment, and that the tears trickled down her lovely cheeks. *Flavian's* behaviour surpris'd the Princess who desired him to return; nor did the Roman only obey her, but causing *Adelaïada's* Attendants also to retire, he takes me by the Arm, causes me to walk a great way about, and brings me to sit behind a pale that clos'd up one side of the Arbour. After *Ydonia* had look'd out, and saw that there was no person in the Alley that could over-hear their discourse, we had not listen'd long but we understood that *Adelaïada* sigh'd, and then thus continued her complaint, *Is it not true, Ydonia, that this is a strange blow? My heart had fully determin'd, it had chosen the Prince of the Tongres, and its persuasions were authorised by the will of a Father, and by considerable services; but now at a time when it seem'd lawful to follow my own inclinations without scruple, that Megastus should come, that he should divide my Soul from my heart, that he should put me in mind that I cannot bestow an affection upon Taxander which I had promised to Cavarin, without committing a piece of inconstancy unworthy a virtuous mind.* This niceness of your thoughts, Madam, answered *Ydonia*, serves to no other purpose but to make you miserable; nor do I find any reason why the return of *Megastus* should alter your resolution. After all, Madam, what has the Prince of the *Senonais* done for you? What has the Prince who adores you not done? And what can you your self pretend to do for a Lover so generous and passionate? As long as I live, replied she, I will preserve a perfect kindness for him. He has told you, already, replied *Ydonia*, that he was not satisfied with that, and that they who love as he loves, expect something more affectionate and more obliging. Ah, *Ydonia*, you press me after a strange manner, replied the Princess, and I find that I must be forc'd to call *Megastus* again, that he may take part with my reason against a person that too strongly shakes my inclinations. Those inclinations will prove but weak, replied *Ydonia*, if you once forbid that they should be countenanc'd. You know what I have told you, replied *Adelaïada*, and if you question the truth of my words, see here what I wrote when I could not otherwise discover you my mind concerning a Prince whose interests you have so zealously embraced.

Having so said, she gave her certain papers, and rising up she return'd to the Queen. I immediately so earnestly desired to see what the Princess had written, that I would not let *Flavian* rest till he had got the papers out of *Ydonia's* hands; and I had no sooner received what I so immoderately coveted, but after I had a thousand times kiss'd the characters written with *Adelaïada's* own hand, I read the following Lines.

SHall I always suffer, and shall I never know neither what I ought, nor what I would do? Must two Princes combat together in my heart, and tear it to pieces, and I not be able to take neither part? I confess, nor does this confession displease me, that my esteem and affection strive for T. but my compassion upon C. causes me to fear the reproaches of an unfortunate Prince, should he bewail himself in a place whence nothing can come to our ears but what is very terrible. But it is not that I am apprehensive of provoking C. but that I do not find my self dispos'd to offend him by preferring T.

I kiss'd those Lines over and over, I read them with delight, I return'd thanks to the Princess; and that I might still find the same consolation in the misfortune that had befallen me, I sought farther, and found these obliging words.

Determine with thy self, feeble *Adelaïada*, unfortunate Princess, love, since thy destiny will have it so: but love that which is most lovely in thy eyes, without being afraid of what thou shalt

never see. Thou knowest, and thou hast thought so a thousand times, that thou didst not preserve thy good will for Cavarin, but to render thee more worthy of Taxander, by shewing thyself capable of a generous constancy; but shouldst thou not better deserve the affection of this Prince by bestowing thy own upon him, out of an acknowledgment which he has so well deserv'd?

“How much am I engag’d to your favour, divine Princess, (cry’d I after I had read the Letter) how inestimable is your resentment, and how much above all my inconsiderable services! But from these pleasing reflections passing in an instant to the consideration of my misfortune, methought that the return of *Megastus*, and the change in *Adelaiada’s* mind would still occasion me to undergo extraordinary sufferings; and therefore to divert what I fear’d, I went to the Queen, who was already inform’d of the circumstances of my misfortune. *Polyena* declar’d her self very much troubled. that the Prince of the *Senonais* had lost his life by my hand. But I neither perceiv’d in her looks, nor by her discourse, that I had that cause to apprehend those obstacles from her which I had ground to fear from the scrupulous *Adelaiada*. In short, as I was going to the Apartment of the severe Princess, *Ydonia* met me, and requested me in the Princess’s name not to see her in two days. “Let her command me to die, cryed I: And you, generous *Ydonia*, (said I sighing, and addressing myself to that fair Lady) do you undertake such cruel commissions? Return, I beseech you, and by that ardent and faithful passion which your charms have created in the Soul of *Flavian*, perswade her to change the decree which she has given out. “Think you, Sir, said she, that I have not spoken in your behalf, or that I have not labour’d to gain you that acknowledgment which is your due, and undeserv’dly bestowed upon the Prince of the *Senonais*? Certain it is, that I have oppos’d the humour of the Princess, that I have condemn’d that constancy that she would preserve for *Cavarin*, that I have taxed her with your services. In short, I have mollified her, I have incens’d her, but could not prevail that you should see her to day. She answer’d me that decency would not permit her; and because I absented my self, the sorrowful and charming Princess look’d upon me with a languishment that mov’d me to compassion: and those tears I saw trickle from her fair eyes have obtain’d that silence from her which her arguments could never have impos’d.

I was so mov’d with those last words of *Ydonia*, that instead of requesting any more the favour which I desired, I return’d full of grief, which was however mix’d with something of despite. I walk’d about my Chamber, complaining of the cruelty of *Adelaiada*, and I abandon’d my self so absolutely to the torments of my mind, that *Flavian*, who came to me, not being able to moderate the violence of my anguish, was desirous to set my thoughts at work before he left me, hoping to ease my fancy by diverting my ears: to which end he began to discourse of those papers of *Adelaiada’s* which I had seen through his means, and told me that certainly the Princess had never put down those thoughts of hers in writing, but to ease her heart: “For my part, said he, I had made Verses a hundred times since I began to be in love, had the Muses been so kind as to have inspir’d my fancy, which makes me wonder that you never make use of those elegant and strenuous expressions that Poetry might furnish you withal.

Those words kindled a certain fire that was almost extinguish’d in my Soul, and joyning it self to my love it presently compell’d me to despise the ordinary ways of complaining, as not conformable to the violence of my passion: to that purpose I studied for the most vigorous expressions, and while the severity of my Princess depriv’d me of rest, I spent the night in meditating upon the deplorable condition of my fortune, or in bewailing it in an Elegy that perhaps did not describe it amiss. The next day——“How, Sir, (said the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, interrupting him) will you leave the Verses out of the rest of the Relation? “Quite contrary, Madam, since your Majesty testifies your desire to hear them, I will recal them to my memory as well as the time will give me leave. In short, having return’d that answer, he made a pause for a little time, and then repeated the following lines, which he address’d in this manner to the original cause of his disquiet.

The Elegy.

OH, Love, since by thy cruel Arms assail'd,
 My Tears and sighs my sorrows first bewail'd :
 Since first an amorous heart, by fate constrain'd,
 Of the harsh rigour of thy Laws complain'd :
 Since Mortals felt the raging pangs of woe,
 Did ever sorrows like my sorrows show ?

The unjust Iris, whose bright eyes controul
 Each faculty of my enamoured Soul :
 Ah! She whose beauties I alone adore,
 To spite my flame, loves what is now no more.

Yet thou tame Love brook'st thy degraded Might,
 While the cold Grave usurps thy Tapers Right :
 Robs thee of Hearts, and then torments them too,
 While all those vows to thy fair Altars due ;
 Now to the Empire of the Grave are sworn,
 Where never yet thy brighter Fires did burn ;
 Where never yet thy feeble Bow and Darts
 Could ever reach to wound those senseless hearts ;
 Where happy Thyrsis safe from storms of Love,
 No more can either rash or fickle prove :
 Fortunate Rival! whom my fatal hand
 Sent unawares unto the Stygian Strand.

A Victor there he triumphs over me,
 And gains a conquest by my Victory :
 Compelling Iris to bewail his Fate :
 What Honour, what Success more fortunate !
 Iris, whose beauty knows no parallel,
 Unless my love, and my as constant zeal.

Let all my love and perseverance scorn'd,
 She constancy for constancy return'd
 To Thyrsis pays ; to him she pity shews,
 And thinks with friendship to reward my vows.

Rather, too cruel Iris, let me bear
 Thy hate more useful, and far less severe :
 So may my anger make me break my faith ;
 Or else despair may hurry me to death.

But incens'd Iris chides my low'd complaint :
 Behold the torments under which I faint ;
 I suffer, yet I dare not tell my woe,
 Nor hate my Rival, though my only foe.
 Twixt Iris thus, and Thyrsis in distress,
 My wavering thoughts turmoild, seek vain redress.
 Determine then ye Gods, that know my faith,
 Bequeath me Iris, or bequeath my death.

“ What ! said Rosamond, you would then have depriv'd us of all this pleasure, and left
 “ us to think that you had learn'd so much of the Roman haughtiness, as to believe there
 “ is nothing in Germany but what is still barbarous ; or that persons born and bred there are
 “ not worthy to hear such delicate pieces as these. “ 'Tis true, (*very complaisantly replied*
 “ Taxander) that your Majesty might have some ground to think as you do ; but I cannot
 “ tell, said he with the same air, whether my fear were not better grounded, when I was a-
 “ sham'd to repeat a Copy of Verses before so great a Queen, whose Wit is not inferiour to
 “ her Beauty, though her Beauty fills the world with admiration. Those words caus'd the
 “ charming Queen to blush, though instead of an answer she return'd only an obliging look,
 and

and far from entering into those contents that chiefly serve to beget high complements, her fair eyes required only the pursuit of *Taxander's* Relation, which made the Prince continue his Story.

Whatever ease I might find in the complements which I made in the Elegy which your Majesty has heard repeated, my heart was nothing satisfied: I was enrag'd against *Megastus*, nor did I spare my Princess; and as if no person ought to have been exempt from reproaches, I was angry with my self, accusing my self of injustice. Then beginning to ponder upon that niceness of *Adelaiada's* thoughts, and representing to my mind that modesty and behaviour that accompanied all her words and actions, I fancied to my self so much pleasure in being belov'd by a Princess of her humour, that my passion augmented, and I felt in my Soul fresh and more ardent desires to vanquish those obstacles that were opposite to my pretences. As I was casting about how to accomplish this design, *Flavian* enter'd, and far from conforming his countenance to that sadness which he saw in mine, he ask'd me for my Verses after a very jocund manner, not caring to begin his discourse upon a subject that was any thing common and ordinary. He was very well pleas'd with those which I shewed him, he told me 'twas convenient that *Adelaiada* should see them by *Ydonia's* means: and that he might not continue his discourse of a Princess that render'd me unfortunate, he talk'd to me of the march of the *Gauls*, and the invasion wherewith they threaten'd the Territories of the King my Father: but I immediately perceiving his drift, *Generous Friend*, said I, *do not fear but that I will be ready to aid Martlandus when need shall require. I will go, and for his interest expose that life which I owe him, for I should render my self unworthy Adelaiada, should I remain with her when it became me to appear at the head of our own Armies. But after all, Flavian, I find my love so violent, and my passion so extraordinary, that I shall not absent my self from Adelaiada till necessity drives me. And yet,* replied he, *you must be forc'd to leave her very suddenly: for to-morrow the Queen of the Nemetians departs hence with an intention to return into her own Territories to the King her Husband.* "How, said I, presently interrupting him, is *Polyena* so unjust, to be guided by *Adelaiada's* persuasions? But the changes when she has a mind to change; and to begin a breach with the unfortunate *Taxander*, she removes out of this Country upon the arrival of *Cavarin's* Squire? "In truth, Sir, replied *Flavian*, I cannot but admire to see how you would appropriate all things to the concernment of your violent passion, and that you should attribute *Polyena's* departure rather to *Megastus* than to the coming of twenty thousand *Goths*. Would you but have heard me patiently, I would have told you that the King of the *Nemetians* has sent for the Queen, that he has sent Ambassadors to *Pharamond* on the behalf of *Martlandus*, and that in the mean time he had declared himself for the *Tongres*. He is also preparing to march himself toward those Frontiers which are like to smart with the first onsets of the War; and *Polyena*, from whom I have a commission to advertise you, has given me to understand, that notwithstanding her continual fear for *Salison's* safety, yet she cannot but approve of his proceedings. "I know full well, replied I fighting, that the Queen is all goodness, I knew that *Salison* was generous, but yet I fear that *Adelaiada's* severity will be my death. Come, *Flavian*, let us seek to mollifie her flinty heart, let us make use of *Ydonia's* credit, let us redouble our endeavours, let us do more this part of the day that remains, than we have done to this hour.

I had no sooner spoken those words but I flung out of the Room, and went to the Queen of the *Nemetians*, and all the way continuing my dispute with *Flavian*, "Do you not believe, said I, that it will be a difficult thing for me to discourse my passion to the Princess upon the Road? "Truly, said he, my thoughts are, that she will ride in the Chariot with the Queen, so that there will be no opportunity, but only for your eyes to inform her of the pains of your heart. "Do you think, said I, that *Adelaiada* understands that language?

Then I mus'd upon the Princess's humour as I went unto the Queen's Apartment, whether I was no sooner come, but I went directly to *Ydonia's* Chamber, I took notice that the fair Lady was not over chearful; and as my fancy was taken up altogether with *Adelaiada*, and that I thought of things only according to the passion that reign'd in my Soul, "Generous *Ydonia*, (said I with a countenance very much discomposed) what is it that your melancholy presages? is it the hatred of *Adelaiada*, or the banishment of *Taxander*? "No, Sir, said she, the Princess will not carry her injustice so far along with her, but I find that her scruples are returned with such an absolute dominion over her, that I do not believe it will be easie for you to vanquish them. Is it possible, said I, that she should remain so obstinate to prefer *Cavarin* who is dead, and who perhaps never loved her, to *Taxander* who adores her, and prefers his chains before all the Kingdoms and Crowns in the world? Then *Flavian*

vian in pleasing language; *Sir*, said he, *instead of making new complaints, permit me to demonstrate, that they are not the least moving which an unfortunate Lover makes.* After he had so said, he presented *Ydonia* with the Elegy which I have repeated, and the Virgin had no sooner read it, but after she had testified her approbation; *By what I see here*, said she, *you rather merit a Laurel Crown of more than one sort, and if your verses prove as happy in the hands of the Princess, as I observe them to be elegant and well composed, you will have no reason to complain of the Muse to whom you are so much obliged.* Suffer me then I beseech you, *Sir*, said she with an obliging impatience, *that I may have leave to prove the success: For if I be not deceived, you are going to attend the Queen in expectation of Adelaïda.*

Thus finding *Ydonia* kind in her intention, I left her and went to *Polyena's* Apartment, where I received a confirmation of the news that *Flavian* had told me, touching the proceedings of the King of the *Nemetians*. But Madam, not to particularize exactly things which are not of importance, as not directly referring to *Adelaïda*; I will only tell you that I could not see the Princess, but only in the Queen her Mothers Chamber, and that I discover'd under her complements and civilities, a severity that almost made me dye for grief. Thereupon I left her, yet not without several marks of despair in my countenance, and immediately ran to *Ydonia* as the only person, from whom I could hope for any assistance. She no sooner perceived me, but coming toward me, *I protest Sir*, said she, *that for your sake I have lost some part of the respect which I owed the Princess, for I must confess at the same time that I can obtain no favour at all, and that neither the force of my reasons nor the strength of my zeal have proved effectual in the least.*

This made me leave *Adelaïda* with less choler than compassion, so insinuating was her behaviour; nor can I tell what a report you your self would have made, of a discourse which triumphs ordinarily over the will. "I know nothing more, answered *I sighing*, for "there are certain moments when, maugre my love, my heart murmurs against *Adelaïda*, "there are others when I adore that severe Princess, maugre her obstinacy, to render me unhappy. Alas! that the latter motion should controul the first, and that I should find within my self, that *Adelaïda* will always reign in my soul, how insensible or inhumane forever: and therefore fair and generous *Ydonia*, be pleased to give me leave to see her: Ah! "Sir, said she interrupting me, did you but apprehend after what manner she will entertain your visit, you would be so kind to your self as not to make it. In short, she believes that your presence would but confirm, and strengthen an inclination in her, which she imagines her self to have some reason to inteeble, and for the verses which I shewed her; they having moved her more than she was willing they should, she requested *Megastus* to discharge himself of the promise which he had made her. "And can you not tell, replied *I sighing*, what new misfortune the Squire of my too happy Rival, now threatens me withal? "I believe, replied *Ydonia*, that he had promis'd to give her a little Cabinet, wherein she shall find the marks of *Cavarin's* passion, as also some of *Adelaïda's* Letters, which she earnestly covets to combat the impression which your Elegy has made in her heart. "Fair *Ydonia*, said I, let not these weapons I beseech you, that will serve for nothing else but to wound my heart, fall into the Princesses hands: Nor suffer I conjure you *Cavarin* to triumph over a Prince, whose part you take so generously. But Sir, said I, I support your interest with so little success; and the Princess to renew the remembrance of the promise she had given to the Prince of the *Senonois*, has with so much earnestness demanded to see certain answers which she had written to him, that it will be a vain thing for me to oppose her intentions. "You see then, said I to *Flavian*, how fortune turns all things against me, and that the verses also of which you expected a fortunate effect, have produced an accident quite contrary to our hopes. True it is, said he, that I was the cause of your composing them, and that you receive a prejudice by them. Nevertheless I cannot repent it, for I imagine that there is something of divinity in a good poem, which is so far from being injurious, that it always promises some advantageous events.

We did not long continue this discourse, for I so vehemently desired to see *Adelaïda* in her Chamber, that I went thither together with *Ydonia*, how unwilling soever she were to carry me thither. The Princess beheld her with surprize; yet she was contented only to upbraid her with a glance, by reason that I began to speak immediately, and so passionately laid before her the injustice of my sufferings, that the Princess (*Flavian* and *Ydonia* joining their entreaties to my Arguments) after she had kept a short silence; Prince, said she, *I had thought I had sufficiently explain'd my self already: nevertheless since you constrain me to reveal yet more of my thoughts, I will tell you ingenuously once for all as much as you can desire, that I had not at all wav'd in preferring you before Cavarin, had all things been to have been dispos'd according to my own election, or that the King my father had left me the entire liberty of my* choices.

choice. But you know he had design'd me for the Prince of the Senonois, before I was known to your self, and my heart being engaged to him by a command that ought to regulate my will, I cannot without wounding my honour———No, no, Madam, said I interrupting her, you will not wound it at all, for when you gave your consent to Cavarin, it was not so much out of a mutual inclination, as by the cunning contrivances of Heraclian, the Ambition of my Rival, and the obedience you owed your Father. “And this is so true, replied Flavian, that I do not believe that Heaven would have permitted *Taxander* to kill *Cavarin*, but that a Prince worthy of your enjoyment, should deliver you out of the hands of a false and treacherous Lover, who without doubt rather sought the Alliance of *Salison*, than the charms of *Adelaiada*. He had reason, replied the Princess: You and I are not both of one opinion, in that, replied *Ydonia*, for if what *Flavian* says be true, ought you not to love *Cavarin* so much the less, and are not you dispens'd withal from testifying a constancy to a fickle and politick lover. I confess, replied the Princess, that such intentions in a Prince not yet espoused, might give me just cause to change; but *Ydonia*, can I be unfaithful to *Cavarin*, who has not been so himself to me; and will you oppose my resolution, to preserve that place for him in my heart that he has already obtained? And what will you do, Madam, replied *Ydonia*, for poor *Taxander* that dyes for you? “I will give him the friendship, replied the Princess, which he refuses, and I will always refuse him the hatred which he requires from me. When she had uttered these words she blusht, and she had no sooner uttered them but she went into her Closet, and shutting the door after her, left me in a condition whereine you might easily perceive a weighty and pressing grief intermix'd with choler and jealousy.

I shall not precisely rehearse all that my passions then inspired me withal, you already know what were then my thoughts, and it is time indeed to finish a story, the length whereof may prove irksome to your Majesty. I will only tell you, that understanding the resolution of *Adelaiada* not to be shaken, despair seiz'd upon my heart: so that if the Religion which I embraced at *Rome* had not forbid me to make away with my self, I had soon found the end of my misfortunes. The morrow after as I rode along to convoy *Polyena*, *Adelaiada* appeared to me fairer than ever: But alas! at the same time that I admired her charms, I remembred likewise, overwhelm'd with grief, that I was utterly denyed the enjoyment of them. It was not but that I could have made my application to the Queen of the *Nemetians*, and have obtained that from her which *Adelaiada* so obstinately refused me. But besides that I should have displeas'd my Princess, that which was to me more insupportable than my grief, that I thought with my self that I could never live happily with *Adelaiada*, unless she gave me her hand as an effect of her free consent rather than of her obedience: So that I thought my self the most unfortunate of all Lovers, though it might seem otherwise as to outward appearance. In short, I was not hated by her whom I loved, but was treated with all civility: And those persons who had power to dispose of her, had not only an esteem for me, but desired nothing more than to see me allyed to their Family. Nevertheless these kind circumstances did but augment my disquiet, methought I was like those miserable creatures, who are represented to be famish'd in the midst of abundance: And I had no other consolation but in seeking an honourable death, among the weapons of our Enemies. I did not flatter my self long with these thoughts, for we were no sooner arrived at *Samarobriana*, but we understood that *Pharamond* had sent *Basogastus* to make peace with the *Tongres*. This news that caus'd a general rejoycing in several Nations, to me appear'd sad and dreadful, for I found that instead of meeting a quick death as I had hopes, I should spin out an unfortunate life: And that I should not lose it but by the effect of a most profound melancholy, that questionless would operate no otherwise than like a slow poyson.

These sad reflections made an impression so powerful, insomuch that the loss of my health and the change of my Physiognomy, were evident marks of my condition. *Salison* and *Polyena* took notice of it and were exceedingly troubled: And *Adelaiada* carrying an obliging languishment in her fair eyes, protested to her dear *Ydonia* that my indisposition had put her into a strange disorder. “I will assure you, (said she, by what I afterwards understood) that I cannot well tell what to think when I consider the Prince's distemper. Were it dangerous I should be more troubled than you think for; but I must confess, that if I should look upon it as a proof of *Taxander's* affection; I should be yet less satisfied that he enjoyed not now as perfect a health, as before the Arrival of *Megastus*. Since his passion is no way displeasing, replied *Ydonia*, why should you then refuse him the recompence that it deserves? “I thought I had already told you, replied the Princess, that I should render my self unworthy of his Esteem, by reason of that fickleness to which you advise me. That I would preserve a constancy which he should not be able to disapprove, or if he were not content,

“tent, yet his reproaches would be at least more easily supported, than a contempt which I should more easily draw upon my self by acting after another manner.

While they were thus arguing together, I mournfully complain'd away the time with *Flavian*, who like a faithful Friend was immediately mov'd with my griefs and my discoloured countenance. But afterwards thinking to thwart the despair that appear'd in his eyes, with an entire resignation to *Adelaiada's* will, he rose up in haste, and taking me by the hand, *Let us to the Princess*, said he, *you have rais'd those persuasions in my heart that give me hopes that we shall mollifie hers, and that she will not obstinately hold out against the most respectful passion that ever was.* *Alas*, *Flavian*, answered I, *you know well what your prognostications tend to; but as I look upon the intention of my Friends beyond the event of their counsels, it is so pleasing a thing to see the person that is belov'd, that I am very free to be led to Adelaiada's Apartment.*

Thereupon I went to that place to which my destiny call'd me every moment whatever injustice I there suffered, and I was no sooner in the Princess's Antichamber, but I beheld the Stranger that had overturn'd my fortune. At the same time I took notice also that he had in his hand the fatal Box that carried those writings which were to confirm *Adelaiada* in her scruples, and to strengthen the resolution which she had taken, not to be unconstant to the Prince of the *Senonais*. At so cruel and unexpected an accident my colour chang'd, infomuch that I was about to have fallen foul upon *Megastus*, but my reason commanding me to suppress a violence that would put out of frame the respect which I owed my Princess, and was even repugnant to Generosity it self, I made my anger give way; yet was my heart so sadly opprest'd, that finding my self begin to faint, *Flavian* came presently to me, but as I saw him drawing near me in all haste, “For Heaven's sake, (*said I, deeply sighing*) “come not near a miserable creature, or if you will not leave him without help, betake “your selves to the fountain of my misfortunes. 'Tis not here so much, as with *Adelaiada*, “*da*, that ye may do me offices of kindness, make haste to that Princess, take my part with “the same obliging zeal of which you have given me such ample testimonies, and suffer “me not to be persecuted at a time when a Tomb protects the Prince of the *Senonais* from “my resentment, and that my quality and a sense of justice prohibit me from taking my “revenge upon *Megastus*.

Flavian, instead of giving me an answer, enter'd presently into *Adelaiada's* Chamber, where he had the dissatisfaction to see that the person sent for by the Princess's order, had already the Cabinet, the Key whereof, as I conjectured, was not in the custody of *Cavarin's* Squire. The officious *Roman* was desirous to hinder *Adelaiada* from seeing that which might beget in her any thing of tenderness for a Lover whom death already render'd worthy of compassion, he look'd diligently for what he thought would soonest attract the eyes of the Princess, and having discovered among several Letters and some Bracelets two very rich Boxes, he took one, wherein he found the picture of *Adelaiada*. The Princess at the same time laying her hand upon the other, and eagerly opening it, found it to be the picture of a young and fair Lady of whom she had no knowledge, and which she looked upon with an apparent despite, however more out of a thought of honour usual enough upon such occasions, than out of any motion of jealousy, having never had that affection for *Cavarin* which might create that passion. She blush'd therefore, and *Flavian* perceiving it, “You see, Madam, *said he*, the fidelity of the Prince of the *Senonais*, and whether the “Sister of *Ariabure* did not share in his heart with the Princess of the *Nemetians*.

Ydonia was overjoyed at that accident, but she durst not yet speak; and *Megastus*, how surpris'd soever he was, did not omit to take his Master's part: *True it is, Madam*, said he, *that Prince Cavarin had an inclination toward Hertilia, but was he therefore guilty because he lov'd a fair Lady, or for having kept a picture which he could not handsomely restore her? I confess he had been unworthy of your favours, had he made use of it according to Flavian's interpretation; or if that he had entertain'd any hopes of Hertilia, after he had declared to the King of the Nemetians his pretences to the Princess his Daughter. But, Madam, I cannot imagine that ever he acted after that manner; or if he did so, neither the indulgence that is generally favourable to Lovers, nor the respect I owed a Master should hinder me from confessing that there was a perfidiousness in his proceedings.* The Princess, instead of making any answer, having open'd one of the Letters, found in effect these words.

Heraclian to the Prince of the Senonois.

Since you have no tye of affection that detains you at Rome, and that you have no kindness for our Ladies, but only so far as they serve your turn, I invite you into our Wood to the conquest of a young heart to which I have design'd you. You will carry the victory without doubt; for having been never before assail'd, nor having learn'd how to defend her self, she can never withstand a Prince always successful in such kind of enterprises. However, do not you believe this victory to be the less considerable for being so easie; you will thereby reap many important advantages; for besides the enjoyment of a fair Princess, you will find in the alliance of a Neighbouring Prince that augmentation of your power which you more earnestly seek after than the charms of a Mistress.

She had no sooner read it, but she believ'd she had formerly seen the beginning of that Ticket in *Claudian's* hands, afterwards reflecting upon the whole Letter, she began to believe what they had endeavoured to perswade her of the humour of the Prince of the *Senonois*: *Flavian* and *Ydonia* sensibly rejoyc'd, though they said little or nothing, leaving the Princess to her self, who would find enough to ditabuse her credulity. Thus soon after she found another Letter of *Heraclian's* that incens'd her beyond the former.

Heraclian to the Prince of the Senonois.

I Am very glad you have already made so fair a progress in *Adelaiada's* heart; but I confess I cannot apprehend how you can sigh, and not be in love; or appear transported, when your mind is in a perfect tranquillity. Will you not believe at length what you so well teach others? Or rather, will you not effectually love a Princess who is so amiable? *Alexander* is lost, and it is to me the greatest pleasure in the world, to see that your feigned support of my credit should supplant a true passion, notwithstanding the opposition of *Placidia* and *Cleomira*.

Upon reading this, *Adelaiada*, as she afterwards confess'd, perceiv'd all her scruples that oppos'd my happiness to vanish: she chang'd her opinion of *Cavarin*; and if she read any more of his Letters, it was rather with contempt than anger, considering that as a lovely Lady had so fram'd her answers, it was easie to judge of the Letters that she receiv'd, which Answers did no less demonstrate the infidelity of my Rival.

Herfilia to the Prince of the Senonois.

Your pretended Treaty with the Queen of the *Nemetians* drives on furiously. Without feigning, Sir, I suspect your delay, and imagine that you would not stay so long at *Camilla's* House, were *Polyena* there without *Adelaiada*. All the world gives a high character of that troublesome Stranger, they applaud her Beauty in all places where I come, which has caus'd in me such a capricious disquiet, that I am as often angry with my self as I blame you, or the person that detains you in the Country. I beseech you return to calm the storms in my heart: shew that you are faithful to me, and that the charms of the Princess whom you see every day, cannot rob me of a conquest which I have design'd to preserve.

Herfilia to the Prince of the Senonois.

Will you still write to me that you love not Adclaiada? And will you never return to Rome, to persuade me to the contrary? Think you that your protestations can entirely satisfy me, when I have so much reason to suspect that you bestow your sighs upon a Rival which makes you prefer Camilla's Wood before the Court of Honorius. Return then I conjure you, preserve the place that you have gained in my heart, and suffer not any further discontents to rise in that place where you still reign, maugre the injustice you do me.

Adelaiada being confirm'd in her opinion, took her picture out of the Box wherein I saw it, and finding withal two answers which she had formerly wrote to *Cavarin* by *Polyena's* order, she tore them, and return'd the Cabinet to the *Senonois* that brought it. Here, *Megastus*, (said she with a compos'd countenance) you have done me more kindness than I expected: and therefore believing that you were rather a faithful servant than an accomplice of *Cavarin*, you have more to hope than fear at my hands, provided you never utter syllable more concerning that Prince.

Megastus retired without returning any answer, his shame being so great, that he almost forgot to make his reverences to the Princess in acknowledgment of her Bounty. When I saw him come forth dissatisfied, I felt that consolation which made me recover my spirits, so that I went to the Chamber door to listen after the most important of my concerns; when at the same time *Ydonia* and *Flavian* beginning to speak, Well, Madam, they cry'd, know you not now the difference between the Prince of the Tongres's passion, and that of *Cavarin*? Can you refuse the illustrious *Taxander* a heart which he has so well merited, and which the wily *Cavarin* had not won but by surprise? Most certainly, replied she, That, never any thing more, shall satisfy those motions of kindness which I have for the Prince of the Tongres; and to tell you something farther, I must acknowledge that I am very glad of it. 'Twill be convenient then, Madam, if you please, replied *Flavian*, that *Taxander* himself, having suffered so much, should be his own witness of this acceptable change, and that he may see that a superiour power has re-established the condition of his fortune by the same persons that overwhelm'd it. But, *Flavian*, replied she, how shall I endure to see his presence after all this unkindness that I have shewed him? Ah, Madam, (cry'd I, immediately entering, and throwing my self at her feet) it suffices that you suffer me in your presence, and that to render me the most glorious of all Lovers, you at last acknowledge me to be the most passionate and most faithful.

The charming *Adelaiada* blush'd, beholding me without being able to speak; but after her fair eyes had express'd her mind in my favour, she return'd me this answer, Prince, said she, should I believe all that you would persuade me, should I be absolutely satisfied of your proceedings, can you be satisfied with mine, can you forget *Adelaiada's* injustice? That which you call injustice, (I replied, transported with joy, and laying my lips to her fair hands, which she endeavoured to draw back) is the most assured mark of my felicity; for in short, dear Princess, since you have so constantly disdain'd my sighs, my complaints and my services, since you have been so inexorable to the continual entreaties and solicitations of *Flavian* and *Ydonia*, only to keep your word with a Prince, who, being dead, freed you from so severe an exactness by his death, how solid and durable must *Taxander's* happiness prove, if you consent that the King of the *Nemetians* shall confirm it? What Prince, what Lover, what person among them who are most happy, can compare his good fortune with mine, if my Princess do not contradict my claim.

Uttering those words, I beheld *Adelaiada* with so much love, and *Flavian* and *Ydonia* entreated for me in language so vehement and so persuasive, that the Princess quite obliterated all my past sufferings with this obliging answer, Prince, said she, if the Prince my Father gives me liberty to act freely in the most important of all my actions, I will never consent to any but *Taxander*; and what obedience soever I owe him, I cannot tell whether I could freely submit to his commands were they not impos'd in your favour.

She had no sooner spoken those words but she blush'd; and how innocent soever that mark of affection was, something of a sense of shame made her return into her Closet, whither I durst not follow her, though they are seldom timorous that are happy. *Ydonia*

and *Flavian* testified their joy upon so pleasing a resolution, which produced so quick a change in my mind; that restoring me to my repose, I recovered the health that my discontents had deprived me of. All *Salison's* Court appeared wonderfully satisfied; but while they expected suddenly to solemnize with publick festivals and rejoycings the fortunate day that was to crown my love, *Polyena* whom a tedious indisposition had made to keep her bed, grew worse and worse, and my happiness was delayed by her death, which equally afflicted us both, though it grieved me the more to see the tears that fell from the languishing eyes of my divine Princess. True it is, that I observed with no small consolation, that mine allayed the sadness of *Adelaiada*, as much as any other Company. At the same time also I shar'd the honour and the content, to dry up her tears in the midst of those persons that were most dear to her, and perhaps she did not open her heart with more freedom to her faithful *Ydonia*, than to the happy Prince that so passionately loved her, and with such pleasing hopes had engag'd his affection to her.

But besides that I could not yet pretend to the felicity that was promised me, in regard that prudence and decency would not permit me, to mention any such thing in a time of affliction, there came news also that snatch'd me away from my Princess. It was reported over all *Europe*, that *Attalus* Lieutenant to *Alaric* in *Italy*, had usurp'd the Sovereign power, which was only committed to him in trust, and in contempt of *Honorius* and his Master, had taken upon him the name of Emperour. I looked upon that piece of insolency with disdain, being vexed to see that the Son of the great *Theodosius*, should so patiently suffer such a publick dishonour. Nevertheless my Love prevailing over all those considerations, there wanted some particular injury to draw me from *Samarobrina*: And therefore when I heard all *Attalus's* proceedings more exactly repeated to me, a sense of honour and affection called me to succour the Princess my Sister. In short, I understood that after the taking of *Rome*, at the same time that *Autalpb* and *Wallia* made their Applications to *Placidia*, and *Theodolinda*, *Attalus* paid his devoirs to *Cleomira*, and without considering the inequality of birth, rais'd his pretences to the daughter of a King, puft up questionless with the prosperity of the *Goths*, as well as out of his natural haughtiness that afterwards rendred him famous.

Cleomira had entertained the testimonies of his affection with that contempt which they deserv'd, but the absence of *Alaric* and *Wallia* so increased the boldness of that undeserving Lover, that he exercis'd an open Tyranny over the Princess of the *Tongres*: for not being able to move her, he caus'd her to be shut up in a Tower whence she was not to be set at liberty, till she should give her consent to marry him. I could not hear of that strange hardness which so dear a Sister was forc'd to suffer, without a boiling impatience to revenge the injury done her, And that which redoubled so legitimate an ardency of my courage, was that I saw my Princess infinitely concern'd at the news, and that she was not only mov'd to compassionate *Cleomira's* misfortune, but (notwithstanding her wonted moderation) she seem'd to be incens'd against her persecutor. To go on therefore with my design, I chose out of the *Tongres* and *Nemetians* the stoutest Soldiers and most able to follow me, and march directly toward the Province of the *Romans* to joyn with *Artabure*, not questioning but he was ready to march to the relief of his distressed Country. It is not necessary, Madam, for me to repeat, what that valiant *Roman* and my self perform'd together. You know that *Attalus* was overthrown and punished, that *Honorius* was re-established, after which, the famous revolt of *Heracian* covered the *Mediterranean* with such a prodigious Navy, that posterity may well doubt the truth of the Story. I will only tell you that after I had deliver'd the Princess my Sister, and had staid some few days with *Honorius*, I was desirous to return into *Gallia*, having nothing else in my mind but the charms of *Adelaiada*.

To that purpose I repass'd the *Alps* with *Cleomira*, and understanding that *Marsandus* was but in a bad condition of health, we travelled hard toward his dominions, where we arriv'd just soon enough, to pay our last duties to so good a father. The King of the *Nemetians* obligingly testified, how much he was concern'd in our affliction, but when we expected upon such an occasion, to have received some marks of *Adelaiada's* remembrance of us, we understood that she was gone from *Samarobrina*. For *Salison*, to give the King of the *Franks* some testimony of his acknowledgment and friendship, had desired her to go and see *Polixena*; that since she had lost her Mother, she might remain for some time with a Princess of her merit. This with other news that I received at the same time, namely, that *Constance* was also in *Pharamond's* Camp, made me resolve to take his part, it not being in my power to live peaceably at home, when I had so many opportunities near me to signalize my self, and so many Princes assembled together, that every day acquired new honour. To this intent I rais'd what forces I could in a short time, and *Cleomira* having a desire also

to see *Polyxena*, and to tie her self in friendship to *Adelaiada*, I resolv'd to take a journey which I imagined with my self could not be unprofitable.

Soon after my arrival I was better pleas'd with the resolution I had taken; for the Princesses of the *Franks* and *Nemetians* receiv'd the Princess of the *Tongres* with all the demonstrations of esteem and affection she could have expected; and I in my divine *Adelaiada* met with the same thoughts of favour and kindness also which she had for the fortunate *Taxander* when he departed from *Samarobrina* to joyn with *Artabure*. But at the very time that I intended to make known to the fair Princess my impatience to see her Queen of the *Tongres*, a report was nois'd through the Army of the *Franks*, that the *Turingiens* were about to leave the Camp: whereupon it was resolv'd at a Council of War, that we should advance toward the Entrenchments in Battel Array to favour *Amalazontha's* design. The success of that Action has enclin'd to *Pharamond*, though contrary to what the *Franks* really expected, they could not terrifie your Forces, though forsaken by such a Body of their Confederates; only they had this good fortune thereby not to be set upon at unawares by those who might have easily surpris'd them, while they attacqued the *Franks*, as they did contrary to all probability. For my part, Madam, I cannot tell whether I fought with bad or good fortune; for I have lost my liberty, and find my self debarred from what I love. But besides that I have not been vanquish'd but by the most formidable of all your Captains, I shall yet receive this more obliging consolation, if I may add the advantage of being instrumental to procure the peace of so many Hostile Nations, to the Honour which I have had to be so long heard by the most beautiful Queen in the world.

Thus the King of the *Tongres* concluded his Story, with the rehearsal whereof *Rosamond* appear'd infinitely satisfied; and *Balamir*, who would have interrupted him toward the end, durst he have attempted it before the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, modestly avoided the praises which *Taxander* had given him, and generously return'd them upon that valiant Prince: and certainly those three illustrious persons had still continued their converse, but that the return of *Varanez* was spread abroad in the Camp, which created new subject of discourse upon those wonderful accidents which his travels had brought to light. It was not only observ'd, that that Prince was attended by a far greater train of people than that which followed him before he departed for *Francfort*, but more especially men look'd upon a certain person that rode by his side: his Arms were plain, but well polish'd: his Helmet was shadowed with a fair large plume of black Feathers, and his Viser being put up (for he was talking to the Prince) discovered a haughty and warlike countenance, though the deep sadness that displayed it self much eclips'd it's natural fierceness. This illustrious Stranger was no sooner alighted, but he was by *Varanez* conducted to his own Quarters, with a respect which that Prince would not have shewed but to some extraordinary personage: and no sooner had the first complements pass'd between them which are usual upon the like occasions, but *Varanez* went to visit the incomparable Princess whom he ador'd: he testified first of all the trouble which afflicted him for not being at the Battel, and then he gave her to understand that he would no more hazard an opportunity of fighting in her detence. *I shall also have the advantage, Madam,* (said he, pursuing his discourse) *no more to fight in your Army as a single Volontier; for the Emperour of the East, who is sensible of the interest of an alliance with the King of Persia, to strengthen the side which I have taken, has sent me those Forces which, as you have questionless heard, took their march through Germany, and brought a terrour upon all the Countries where they came, without declaring their design. And as certain it is that Pulcheria, out of her respect of a Lover whom she highly esteems, has also joyn'd twelve thousand men to that Army, which reinforcement Martian commands, while Varanez at the head of the rest will be in a condition conformable to my quality, to signalize the zeal which he has for the charming Queen of the Cimbrians.*

Rosamond receiv'd the Prince of *Persia* with all the civility that she could think due to the Heir of one of the greatest Potentates in the world: but it was not possible for her to be sensible of any joy, or to shew it in her countenance upon the news which he brought, how advantageous soever it seem'd to be. Nevertheless, as she acted always with great caution, she hearken'd to *Varanez* with that acknowledgment that prudence in some measure oblig'd her to shew him, after which she inform'd her self of *Constance's* health, and of the cause that stay'd *Martian* at *Francfort*: “The Roman whom you mention, Madam, will suddenly see
“a revolution in the condition of his fortune, if we may believe a great person whose fame
“already spreads it self over all the East, and the Lover of *Pulcheria*, who has not here what
“so powerfully attracts him hither as my self, is gone to meet certain Officers who have left
“the Forces that are coming from *Constantinople*. For my part, instead of absenting my
“self upon that consideration, I had not power to make any stop in my journey to examine
“those

“those things that doubtless deserv’d a curious inquisition. *’Tis most certain,* replied *Balamir,* *that you have seen, by report, persons very extraordinary. But more certain it is,* (replied *Varanez,* turning himself to *Rosamond*) *that what I now see has made me forget what I have seen. There was no such ground of astonishment other where,* coldly replied the Prince of the *Huns,* *and yet perhaps it would do better before the Queen to talk of some Stranger, than of those charms which, as you say, busie all your thoughts. I cannot tell,* fiercely replied *Varanez,* *whether the Queen of the Cimbrians have made you the trustee of her thoughts, but I should be very unhappy should I not dare to utter my passion, since she is the original from whence it springs. Persons of my humour,* replied *Rosamond* a little perplex’d, *are yet more unfortunate, finding themselves constrain’d by the capriciousness of their destiny to hearken to such discourse. Madam,* replied the haughty Prince, *though your fortune did not oblige you to that condescension whereof you complain, mine perhaps does with some appearance of justice, nor do I believe that any Princess in the world need to be offended, if Varanez has a design to advance her to the Throne of Persia. I confess, Sir,* replied *Rosamond,* *that such pretences as those cannot be accounted injuries, nevertheless, as content is not always to be found in the advance of fortune, there are some that may prefer the quality they are us’d to, before a more splendid manner of living.*

Balamir and *Taxander* then taking their turns, maintain’d the Queen of the *Cimbrians’s* opinion; but though the difference of thoughts might have prolonged the dispute, nevertheless it continued not long. *Balamir* and *Taxander* retired as soon as the impatient *Varanez* was departed, which he did the sooner, not being willing to shew his extravagancy before the Queen, nor to brook a retort. Away therefore he went to the Princes of the *Lombards,* where he found the Queen of *Turingia* and *Ambiomer,* and as he was very much in love, but receiv’d very little satisfaction, his disquiet and vexation soon appear’d. After the first complements had pass’d, his haughty humour hindring him from putting any constraint upon himself, he began to talk of *Rosamond,* and addressing his speech to the two Princesses who best knew her: “Have you not taken notice, said he to *Amalazontha,* “that those marks of Grandeur, that appear in the looks and behaviour of *Rosamond,* are hid under much moderation, that they seem to shew a kind of fierceness, and that the heart of that Princess is very little capable of a noble ambition, since she is not yet mov’d with the offers of *Varanez?* *I wish she were sensible of them,* replied *Amalazontha* blushing, *and to wish like a real Sister, I wish she were once Queen of Persia. But you hear,* replied the Princess of the *Lombards,* *that Prince Varanez tells you, that she her self does not desire it. How, Madam,* said he, interrupting her, *can you approve the Queen of the Cimbrians conduct, in that which concerns my passion?* *Sir,* replied she, *I am apt to think that the Heir of a great King may offer a considerable establishment, and yet not be able to bequeath a desire to accept it. And I guess that the lustre of such a Princess does not always dazzle the eyes of those that are tempted with it. It may be there is some difference,* replied the haughty *Varanez,* *between that Prince whom you mean, and the Prince of Persia, as I am assur’d there is between the Dominions they are to inherit. True it is,* pursued the Princess of the *Lombards,* *that we have no King in all Germany who may compare with the Successor of Cyrus; I confess also that the Prince whom I could name, has vernish’d his noble actions with perfidiousness, and that several hearts have been prepossess’d against him with an aversion that you have no ground to believe. ’Tis not enough,* said *Ambiomer,* *then for a great beauty to be prepossess’d against a Lover, it behoves her also not to be kind to another.*

Concluding those few words, he could not chuse but cast a look upon *Amalazontha,* and give free passage to a sigh, but for fear it should be taken notice of, he continued in this manner, *When the prejudice does not arise from the parties themselves, is there no need to fear the change of Climate, distance of place, or strangeness of manners, to which they can hardly sometimes submit?* *Not at all,* replied *Varanez,* *for that Princess who goes to receive the Homage of a Nation, is so far from finding her self oblig’d to become subject to custom that may be troublesome to her, that she has the pleasure of causing those to be receiv’d that please her: but I see very well that *Ambiomer* is not a person that will justify the dispute on the behalf of the Princess. At least,* replied he, *he will never oppose what is just and equitable; and therefore without considering what his Birth denies him, he will only regard that wherewith reason shall inspire him.*

As he had a noble heart, and saw that *Varanez* had given him a close nip before a Princess whom he lov’d, and before a Princess that he did not deime to have any unkindness for him, he spoke those words with a furly utterance, which the two great Beauties observ’d, and therefore knowing the haughty humour of the Prince of *Persia,* they took their turn, and so dextrously maintain’d the argument, that neither *Ambiomer* nor *Varanez* had any opportunity

opportunity to speak farther in it. The Prince of *Persia* soon after took his leave, but before he return'd to the Stranger in his own Quarters, he gave a visit to the King of *Suevia*, whom *Albisinda* tended with all the tenderness and diligence, that could be observ'd toward the best Father in the world. As for *Ambiomer*, he had no sooner left *Agelmond* and the Sister of *Agelmond*, but he went and shut himself up in his Chamber, to the end he might ponder upon the behaviour of the two Princesses, whose words and Actions he had taken exact notice of. He had understood with sufficient vexation, that the Queen of the *Turingians* had received Prince *Sumnon* after a very obliging manner; indeed the passionate *Amalazontha*, having her fancy taken up with the Idea of *Pharamond*, and hearing toward the end of the Combat, that he was entred the Camp of the *Cimbrians*, deceived by that Air of resemblance, that might possibly be between two Brothers, and which in an instant pierc'd both her eyes and her imagination, had taken Prince *Sumnon* for the Prince of the *Franks*, and entertained the offers of his service with a pleasing surprize, which usually causes an unexpected joy. Nor durst she change her manner of behaviour when she saw her error, for fear she should appear humourfome and ingratul, or at least for fear of disclosing those thoughts that she kept concealed: Inso much that having treated the young brother of *Pharamond* with an extraordinary civility; they among the *Turingians* that took *Ambiomer's* part, advertis'd him of it, as they let him know every thing else, that might concern the Queen their Mistress. *Alas!* (said he, reflecting upon that circumstance of his misfortune) *Is it then in vain that I have fought to uphold Amalazontha's interest, when she was about to send away her forces from the side which she had embraced. To what purpose did I expose my life to save her liberty, when the Franks victorious over their enemies, were ready to have seiz'd upon her? Must I be no less unfortunate in the Camp than I was in Turingia, while with resentment I behold my self desis'd by those, that owe their acknowledgment as well to my services as to my passion? Ah, Amalazontha, unjust Amalazontha, thou deniest Ambiomer thy heart because he has not a Crown to offer thee, and yet ingratul Princess considerest not, that a Soldier renders himself worthy to reign over the Kingdom which he preserves, and that Ambiomer could not defend thy Kingdom, without shewing himself able to subdue other Kingdoms under thy subjection.*

While he thus complains of the Queen of *Turingia*, and from time to time fills his imagination with the sweetness of the *Lombard* Princess; the King of *Suevia* receives the Prince of *Persia* with all the respect, that the natural ruggedness of his disposition would permit him to shew, demonstrating at the same time all the joy, that he could be capable of after the loss of the battel, which had been fought by his advice. For he was perswaded that his pity could never be overcome, so long as *Varanez* was engaged thereto by his love, for whose sake as being the heir of *Idisgeiles* and *Theodosius's* Ally, all the East would not fail to be in Arms. That which he understands, concerning the forces coming from *Constantinople*, confirms his hopes, and the better to taste the pleasure of his expectations, he conjures *Varanez* to repeat the news so acceptable to him with all the circumstances. The Prince of *Persia* who came to tell him, what he had already made known to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, took his turn: And notwithstanding the impatience of his humour, pursued his discourse in this manner.

Albeit the unfortunate *Constance* enjoyed but little health, though deep enough plung'd in melancholy when we arrived at *Fracfort*, however he received us with all the marks of satisfaction; testifying to us that the very sight of us, had suspended the greatest part of his grief. We first began to talk of our particular adventures, and when we were constrained to intermix our thoughts, concerning the sides that we had taken, we did it as succinctly as might be, to avoid an entertainment which would not have proved conformable to that friendship, whereof we gave one another such obliging testimonies. But our converse was better fram'd, when we went about to comfort the afflicted *Constance*. And as usually great courages are not touched, but with a violent Love or an unmeasurable ambition, we laboured to moderate those two passions in a heart, wick in outward appearance seem'd to be severely beset with both.

Martian for his part ingenuously declared, how free and willing he was to renounce those high employments, which he held under the Emperour of the East, being commands little different from those which *Constance* enjoyed in the Court of *Honorius*. For my part, I was utterly against that self conceited obstinacy, that renders us unfortunate after the loss of the party beloved, for as I was one that had seen the fair *Athenais* in the Arms of *Theodosius*, and yet after that recovered my self out of the abundance of my sorrows, I endeavoured to perswade the disconsolate Lover of *Placidia*, patiently to suffer the happiness

of the King of the *Goths*, and to seek for that which I had found in the beauties of *Rosamond*, from the charms of some other Princess. *Constance* appeared little moved with my discourse, but at the time that he was intending by my persuasion, to shew me more at large, that what I propos'd was a remedy both irksome and impossible, we were advertis'd that five or six strangers who had pass'd the *Mein*, were landed with some Ladies in their company, among which she that appeared to be of the greatest quality, was a perfect miracle. They spoke of her with admiration, and averr'd that only *Rosamond* or *Polixena*, could preserve in her presence the same which they had acquired, nor that they themselves had that advantage over her beauty, which in justice ought to be allowed her over others: Those extraordinary praises rais'd in us a desire, to see whether they were lawfully due: And indeed we had no sooner beheld that fair Stranger, and observ'd the lineaments of her face, as much as the lustre of her beams would permit us, but maugre those passions that prepossessed us, we all three concluded, that neither *Pulcheria* nor the Sister of *Honorius*, nor the celebrated *Athensis* discovered any thing more charming; and that neither the Queen of the *Cimbrians* nor the Princess of the *Franks*, would prove a conquest of less time or less difficult. We made our thoughts known to the most incomparable Stranger, so that after we had respectfully and in a Courtly manner, manifested the surprize wherewith she had astonish'd us, *Constance* offer'd her an Apartment in *Pharamond's* Palace, and oblig'd her also to accept it. So soon as she had rested her self we went to her Chamber, and as Lovers usually flatter themselves, and hope for success in all new attempts which they propose, I endeavour'd to persuade that charming beauty that I was come to visit her, and to invite her to this Camp, imagining that her beauty might free me from some of my Rivals. I thought that it might not be impossible, but that *Balamir* who was the most formidable might change a second time: I considered that he had no Crown to claim, that he had several great Kings for his Rivals, and that having forgot *Hunnimonda*, as having utterly lost the hopes of enjoying her, he might cease to love the Queen of the *Bohemians*, when he should find so many obstacles in the way of his pretences, and found the chains he wore, to be as noble and no less weighty.

The Stranger blush'd when I spoke of the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and what grandeur of courage soever I had observ'd in her Air and manner of movement, I took notice that she could not hear the name of *Rosamond* pronounc'd, without manifesting a discontent that might pass for a kind of passion, unworthy of so fair a soul. True it is that a Calm was suddenly resettled in her countenance, and that in the following discourse she spoke so much to the advantage of *Rosamond*, that I began to think that it was not emulation, which had produced the trouble that I had observ'd, but that of necessity it arose from some other cause, which I understood not.

While I laboured better to inform my self, or at least to discover her Name, and perhaps also the principal adventures of that fair Stranger, I was advertis'd that several persons clad after the manner of the East, desired to be admitted to see me: and as if destiny had taken pleasure to lead me from one surprize to another, I was no sooner entred into the Hall where I was expected, but I saw five or six Officers of the Army, comely in their aspect and magnificently habited. The chief of them all was a person whose years rendred him venerable, who no sooner perceived me but he mov'd toward me with such a grace, as without doubt seem'd to have something of Majesty. And without studying to make any of those long complements, with which so many people think themselves oblig'd to perplex Princes; he saluted me, uttering his words with such an air, as rendred him worthy that respect which we had for him. Immediately he related to me the cause of his Arrival, Sir, said he, *the Emperour having intelligence, that you were gone to the Banks of the Rhine, to signalize your self either in the Army of the Cimbrian Queen, or of the King of the Franks, commanded a considerable force to march into these Countries. They have order to take that side which you have chosen, that by such a reinforcement you may appear the more considerable among Nations, so far remote from the potent Monarchy, over which you are one day to reign.*

Having said these few words he presented the rest of the strangers, whose names he told me and their employments; and while they were relating to me several particulars, concerning the Court at *Constantinople*, and of the assistance which was sent me, I observ'd that the old Officer look'd very earnestly upon *Constance* and *Martian* who were standing by me, and that afterwards he still cast his eyes more wistly upon the former. After he had considered a while, he desired to know the Roman's Name, and being told it, he perceiv'd enough (doubtless by the correspondency between the Lineaments which he had examin'd, and observations which I believe he had made) to know that which concern'd the life of so great

a personage who had been the support of the Eastern Empire. He was thereupon surpris'd all of an instant, and addressing himself to me with more vehemency than I could have expected from a person of his age and humour: "Sir, *said he*, when the famous *Leontine* shall have let you see the admirable experiments of an assault which he makes his sole employment and delight, I shall not fail to assure you that his rules are more infallible than the greatest part of the world believes, and that they are not to be accounted impostures, but among those people who have but little knowledge.

At those words I made no doubt but that the Stranger was the Learned *Theon*, whose reputation is spread over all the East; and I was no sooner confirm'd in my conjecture, but I shewed new civilities to that wise *Greek*, and gave him liberty at length to explain himself at large, which he thus performed: "Sir, *said he*, you shall soon find that my knowledge has made me undertake a journey which my age might have excus'd; nevertheless, as I foresee important revolutions, and that the whole world is about to put on a new change: I am come into a Climate where will suddenly be laid the foundation of many great and famous Kingdoms. 'Tis in these parts that I aim to labour with some success for the side which you have taken, while *Melusina*, who is coming to the Camp of the *Franks*, shall to my counsels add her own cares, whether it be effectually true, that Heaven has promis'd so much Glory to a Nation, of which she has already written to me things altogether wonderful. If you doubt the truth of what I say, let those Officers speak, they know it was my self that obliged them to leave the Army, and that I caus'd them to make haste hither, promising to shew them at *Francfort* three of the greatest Potentates in the world, nor have I deceiv'd them, *added he with an extraordinary vehemency*, no, Sir, I have not deceiv'd them; for here they see, as well as I, where that Prince who is one day to rule the flourishing Monarchy of the *Persians*, stands in the middle between two great personages, to whom Heaven has promis'd the possession of two Empires. All the company seem'd surpris'd at this discourse except *Constance*, whose heart could not be touch'd with any future event, since the loss of *Placidia*. When *Theon* perceiving us enclin'd to listen more attentively, "Wonder not, *said he*, at my boldness, I utter my mind freely, not seeing any person that I have reason to suspect; nor do I speak so positively, but upon the real assurances which I have gained by long study, and from *Leontin's* Memoirs which I diligently preserve.

Martian fearing then lest *Theon* should discover some particulars that might render him suspected in *Theodosius's* Court, or perhaps not willing to shew any curiosity that might be taken for a mark of ambition, put the Stranger by degrees upon a discourse of mine and *Constance's* future Adventures: for my part I gave him presently to understand that it did not much concern me to know what would befall me hereafter; for I thought that a successor of the famous *Cyrus*, that a Prince who believ'd himself perhaps not inferior in greatness of courage to his renowned Predecessor, ought not to be subject to any such desire; but that on the contrary, acting upon all occasions with a courage worthy of his Dignity, he might with justice believe himself to be the Master of his own fortune. It was not so with *Constance*, who thought he lay under a burthen of ill fortune, and that he had nothing more to look after: "Speak on, sage *Theon*, *said he sighing*, but speak without giving your self the trouble to make the best of things, I am an unfortunate person whom all the anger of incens'd Heaven cannot render more miserable.

After those few words he held his peace, and with a countenance wherein was to be discovered nothing but a profound sadness, without any symptom of fear or hope, he gave ear to the old man, who returned him this answer, "Sir, *said he*, so happy is your destiny; that I make no question but you will be suddenly perfectly satisfied therein. The honour of being advanc'd to the Throne of the *Cesars* is but one part of that felicity which you are promis'd: you shall sit with full content upon that Throne, and that you may have no cause to sigh in the midst of that pomp which environs you, you shall behold sitting by your side a fair and great Princess which shall render you that recompence which you have so well merited, and which you have so long waited for, without any hopes of enjoying it.

Constance, whose heart was not yet capable of so pleasing a faith, being shut up against all comfort, sigh'd instead of returning an answer, or seeming to be perswaded; and therefore that he might not disoblige *Theon*, he chang'd the subject of the discourse, and presently after desired the Stranger to take his repose, which could not but be very necessary after so long a journey. To that purpose he order'd *Valerius* to take care of him, not being willing to leave me, and when he thought he had sufficiently rested himself, he went to see him in his own Apartment, and by degrees engag'd him to give a visit to the unknown Beauty

whom I have already mention'd, I went before to her Chamber, together with *Martian*, where we staid till *Constance* came and brought *Theon* along with him. The old man immediately seem'd surpris'd at the Beauty of so fair a person, which we took notice of; and to know his thoughts upon so pleasing an occasion, we put him at first upon a subject far less considerable, and of which we thought he could better acquit himself: "You must needs acknowledge, *Theon*, said I, that if we may judge of the favours which we expect from Heaven, by those which we have already receiv'd, you may without doubt promise this Lady a long series of happy events.

I said no more, finding that the knowing *Greek* was not so much attentive to what I said, as eager to behold the Stranger's countenance; and I observ'd in his those different alterations, that intermix'd some kind of discontent with the joy that appeared in it from time to time. The unknown Beauty, out of an effect of modesty, blushed, turning her eyes toward me, and perceiving that the earnest contemplation of the old man was not thereby disturbed: "Methinks, said she smiling, that it would be more delightful to hear you relate your own Adventures, than to see you take the trouble to prognosticate my fortune. 'Tis not without cause that I speak this: and to shew you, that without the help of your Art, I know many things that concern you, instead of desiring to be inform'd any thing concerning the Court of *Constantinople*, as the Prince of *Persia* and *Martian* may do, I only long to know some tydings of *Alexander*, and the fair *Hypassia* your Daughter, and of the continual conversation of *Orestes* with the Learned and Pious *Cyril*.

These names pronounced so unexpectedly, striking *Theon* into an amaze, suspended his present contemplation, insomuch that breaking silence, and beholding the Stranger, *Would to God, Madam*, said he sighing, *that Hypassia's destiny were absolutely like yours; and that that unfortunate Maid, having undergone so many misfortunes, might at length be happy by means of some fortunate resolution. But, Madam, as I desire this happiness without having any hopes thereof, instead of speaking of a person so dear to me, and whom I see threatened with so terrible death, I only wait with an absolute submission what the supreme cause of all things shall ordain, whose effects it is in our will as little to regulate, as in our power to create.*

The sage *Greek* not only held his peace after those words, but also spoke but very little during the remainder of that converse, nor was he so earnest in contemplating the Physiognomy of the unknown person; whether it were, that he had observed enough, or that his mind began to be overcharg'd with grief.

Towards the Evening I conferr'd with *Martian*, *Theon*, and the Officers that were newly come; when *Constance*, who had taken *Pharamond's* part, seeing so many people assembled in my Chamber, avoided being there, believing that there would be nothing said there but what concern'd our Army, and the reinforcement which the Emperour of *Constantinople* had sent. After we had examined all things, and taken such orders as were requisite, I went toward *Constance's* Apartment, but met him by the way in a Gallery more discompos'd than he was wont to be. He was discoursing with a woman in whom the Stranger seem'd to me to put no small confidence: and no sooner were *Martian*, *Theon*, and my self met together, but *Constance* addressing himself to the old man, "Sige *Theon*, said he, if you have gathered any knowledge from those fair Lineaments which you observ'd, I wish you would tell us what judgment you make thereupon. "In my opinion, said he, I have already given you a general essay: but to express my self more precisely, till I can better satisfy my self, I must tell you, if I am not very much deceiv'd, that the Stranger of whom we discourse, is a person in every thing extraordinary. Her thoughts are as much elevated, as her Beauty is accomplish'd, fortune will give her none but terrible blows, yet will offer her none but excelling favours, but the greatness of her courage will bring her out of many dangers that shall appear to be inevitable, and the haughty Gallantry of her Soul shall fix her in the highest degrees of exaltation; I am not yet assur'd whether the greatest part of these things have not already happened. But this I know, that after a famous interchange of misfortune and prosperity, this fair person will be as happy as she deserves to be. "Ah, *Theon*, cryed the woman that stood by *Constance*, how celestial is your knowledge! You seem to be less inspired from Heaven, than inform'd only by the light of your own judgment: and to justify the truth of what you have said, I have nothing more to declare, but that it is the peerless *Bellamira* of whom you have been all this while discoursing. You know, Sir, without doubt, pursued she, addressing her speech to me, that the Emperour *Honorius* sigh'd full often at her feet, and that she looked upon his Throne but with an indifferent eye, and that she never made any other use of her power over him, but only to give him wholesome advice for the good of his Dominions. You know

“ know that the Rebel *Heracian* took her by force away from *Ravenna* and carried her in-
 “ to *Africa*, that she was there exposed to those violences, from which she could not free her
 “ self but by performing a noble exploit, and killing her Tyrant heroically. But neither
 “ is *Honorius* the great Prince, that has offered Crowns to *Bellamira*, nor *Heracian* the only
 “ Ravisher, whose persecutions she has suffered: And I could relate to you things more won-
 “ derful, and more agreeable with *Theon*’s judgment; had I time to let you know the in-
 “ comparable *Bellamira*. And therefore I must confess that *Theon*’s last words put me to a
 “ stand, for I cannot see how *Bellamira*, can be so fortunate as he has promised her to be.
 “ True it is that her courage has constantly resisted the most rude assaults of a fierce Enemy,
 “ and that she never shewed her strength, but when she was assail’d by a bold hand, and I
 “ know there is one sort of injury that she cannot patiently endure. She has already defend-
 “ ed her self, against an outrage of the same nature, she sees also others in pursuit of her e-
 “ very moment, so that as it is impossible to change what is past and gone, or that for the
 “ future she can suffer an injustice so heinous to her; I cannot imagine how a heart so nice
 “ as hers, can ever enjoy a perfect tranquillity. By what I see, *Sage Theon*, replyed *Con-*
stance, you have the goodness to make the best, of what your predictions threaten of severe and
 harsh. But you shall meet with some unhappy and miserable people, whom fortune too obliquately
 terrifies, to give them any ground of hopes to be ever at peace with her, by vertue of those changes
 with which you flatter them. For my own part, added he sighing, who pretend to no share in a-
 ny thing that promises me consolation, I have heard you more out of respect to your person, than
 out of any inclination to believe what you foretel most pleasing to me. The losses which I have
 had are so great, so cruel, that I shall never find but only in my Tomb, that end of my sufferings,
 which you would have me expect from some favourable change.

But oh! wonderful! He had no sooner uttered these words, when he was told that an
 Esquire of *Constantine*’s, desired to be admitted: where upon taking notice that my presence
 caused him to act with a circumspection which our friendship might have dispens’d with,
 I complained to him of it, and not only oblig’d him to admit the King of *Britain*’s Envoy,
 but also to read in my hearing a Letter which he received, and whereat we were all surpris-
 ed as well as he; being much to this effect.

Constantine to Constance.

I shall render myself your prisoner so soon as possibly I can, in the mean time, having most im-
 portant News to communicate to you, which I cannot bring my self so soon as I would; I have
 sent this Messenger to inform you; that is to say of the death of *Antalph*. Yes Sir, the King of
 the Goths is dead, and the illustrious *Placidia* is now in a condition, to recompence her faithful
Constance, could I defer the relation of so happy a change? Receive it I beseech you with that
 satisfaction, which you ought to be sensible of, and if you look upon it as a thing that has happen-
 ed by the death of a person that was dear to *Placidia*, consider him as the person that ravished
 your happiness from you, and let not the generosity of your soul, disquiet the content of your
 heart.

I must confess, said the King of *Suevia*, that the *Britain* arrived very opportunely for *Con-*
stance’s consolation, and that *Theon* could not have wished for an accident more just, to Autho-
 rize his predictions. ’Tis most certain, replyed *Varanez*, that this was a very extraordinary
 precedent, and as such a one, we looked upon it with astonishment, every one testifying his surprise
 as they were variously affected. *Theon*, notwithstanding that moderation, of which long ex-
 perience had made him Master, seemed to be not a little glad: and *Constance* having much
 ado to believe the news, that brought with it so great a change in his life; not only read
Constance’s Letter over and over, but to put himself out of all doubt from the Esquire’s
 mouth; Will you do us the kindness, said he, to give us a more distinct relation of a persons de-
 cease, the circumstances whereof your Master seems to have committed to your care. The *Britain*
 then preparing to obey, related to us (though not so succinctly as I shall do) that the Goths
 incens’d, that *Antalph* through the persuasions of *Placidia* would no more wage war against
 the Romans; rebel’d against their Prince, and slew him as he was preparing to reduce them
 to obedience. And while he recounted other particulars of that accident, we discovered
 certain beams of hope and joy streaming upon *Constance*’s face, and dissipating that gloomy
 cloud of long sadness that covered it before. His forehead appeared more serene, his hair

eyes more lively and sparkling, however he could not forbear sighing, so true it was that his soul was not yet capable of tasting pleasure without some perplexity. *Passionately do I love the Queen of the Goths, said he, I fancy her to my self to be fairer than ever she was, and I find her now in a condition to make good to the Emperour her promise, so infinitely honourable to me. But if the satisfaction which I receive from so sweet and pleasing a thought, were without a mixture of grief, it would be unworthy of Constance's heart. It beboves me to mourn, in short I must bewail Autalph's misfortune, out of a sence of humanity that requires us, to have compassion upon all those that are miserable. I am sorry for a Prince that has lived in good correspondence with Honorius, and had a high value for Placidia: And though Autalph's misfortune had no reason, to disturb the happiness which is befallen me, may I not for the Queen of the Goths sake be sorry? Who can assure me that she has preserved at Barcinnona for a miserable creature, that affection which the Princess Placidia had at Rome, for the fortunate Constance whose services were not unprofitable, either to his Country or to his Emperour? Who can assure me that Placidia, who truly loved the King her Spouse, and who labour'd incessantly to strengthen that legitimate love in her breast, hath not quite expelled from her mind, that kindness which she was forced to banish? In short, can Placidia forget a Prince, that rather chose to see his people rebel against him and to lose his life, than to displease her by invading her Country. No, no, let me not flatter my self in this particular, I know too well the malice of fortune, to suffer my self to be deceived with this seeming reconciliation, without having cause to fear some new misfortune, which will be however so much the more insupportable, by how much the less I am accusom'd to it. I will assure you, said I very impatiently, you are more unjust at this time, than that blind Deity of which you complain. She begins to favour you, and it seems to be you your self who will not be at peace with her, while you poison her favours at first with a cruel prognostication, which makes you have an apprehension of those evils which are no way threaten'd you. I am of the same opinion with the Prince of Persia, said Martian, that you ought not so much to study how to afflict your self, but considering the correspondency between the King of England's Letter, and Theon's predictions. to expect a famous issue of so happy a beginning. Had I not labour'd with all possible exactness, replied the ancient Sage, and were not the observations which the learned Leontin has made, absolutely conformable to mine; I had spoken more sparingly of your adventures, the most important in the world. But as I have often made the same computations, and still arrived at the same knowledge by different ways; I make no longer any doubt but that all things, will fall out as I have said.*

Those words uttered by a person of profound learning, and already confirm'd in part by the experiment we had seen, having something resettled Constance's thoughts, I told him, how glad I was to leave him more happy than I found him, and that I would be gone as soon as I had seen Bellamira, and had offered her my service to conduct her to Rosamond. "Sir, replied the Stranger who was in our company, if you please to credit me I would not, that you should mention any such thing to her: For to tell you truth; though Bellamira has an infinite esteem for the Queen of the Cimbrians, there are several weighty reasons, that will not permit her to wait upon her, or it may be to hear her discourse with any great satisfaction. You would be of the same opinion, were I permitted to let you understand them, as well as I may declare to Cleon without failing in my fidelity; that it was at Hippo where Bellamira heard tidings of Alexander, in the house of the great and venerable Austin, to whom the famous Cyril had written concerning him. Those words having caused me to change my resolution, I only took my leave of Bellamira, without making her any proposal.

After which I had no sooner embraced Constance, but I took horse: And being followed by some of the Greek Officers that intermix'd with mine, I return'd hither, while Martian and Theon went to meet the Army, that is come from Constantinople.

"But, Sir, replied the King of Suevia, I hear you say nothing of the Knight that came along with you, and who by the description they have given me of him, deserves to have some place in your relation. "Had I not seen at Francfort persons so extraordinary, replied Varanez, you might have some reason to accuse me of a silence, which would have been so unjust: But Sir, as in all my journey I have met with strange accidents, and for that it was but this day that I met this stranger; it seems to me soon enough to speak of him now.

This morning entring into the Forest, I met there a Knight, whose haughty and fierce Aspect did no way displease me. His Arms besprinkled with blood, shewed him not to have been long out of some dangerous encounter, so that being come near me; and having after certain complements demanded of me, whether I had not seen a Chaiot; I answered him No: And then farther pursuing my address, *Though I can tell you no news of what*

you desire to know, permit me to give you other satisfaction, and to conduct you to the Camp of the Cimbrians, where you shall find that repose and assistance which is necessary for you. I am troubled, replied he, that it is not in my power to accept these obliging offers, but I cannot go to a place where I must see one of my most implacable enemies in high esteem. I will rather betake my self to the Army of the Franks, that I may meet opportunities to encounter a person whom I mortally hate, since he hath made me miserable, who at the same time had in my hands wherewith to make me absolutely happy.

As he concluded those words, a certain Knight who was hid before by a Tuft of Trees, appear'd in an instant before us, and he no sooner knew the Stranger that spoke to me, but he laid his hand upon his Sword, and challeng'd him with a menacing look: *Perfidious Traitor*, he cryed, *thou shalt die, unworthy of thy Birth, and our Friendship.* He could utter no more he was so transported with choler, and he flew impetuously into the midst of us to attacque his Enemy, without regarding the number of Defendants that might oppose him: I would have oppos'd his fury, when the other unknown person seeing my intention, *Stop*, said he, *and instead of seeking another dangerous revenge, accept one of the greatest alliances in the world. Thou knowest me well enough that 'tis not out of fear that —* At those words, the incens'd Knight having interrupted him, *Thou demandest a reward*, cryed he, *when thou oughtest to expect rather the punishment that is due to thee.* He was about to have fallen upon him without any more words, but seeing me ready to impeach his fury, at first he gave me a fierce look, afterwards that motion of anger giving way to other thoughts more rational; *I see well*, said he to me, *that only Generosity moves you thus to act, and that such a person as you cannot be an accomplice with the most treacherous person that ever was: Consider then, that they who protect the Criminals authorise the crime. That Criminal in appearance* (replied the unknown person who was accus'd to be so) *shall need no other Arm than his own, if thou continuest obstinate to condemn a passion which thou rather shouldst approve. Try then*, said I to his adversary, *whether you can put an end to the difference. That can never be determined*, replied he, *but by the death of one of us, and therefore if you desire to see the end of it, leave to my revenge the person whom I am bound to pursue over all the world. Thy enemy*, replied the other Stranger, *shall save that labour; for thou knowest whether he be one that seeks to avoid the encounter or no. Keep then thy hatred; since thou preferrest it before the preservation of thy life, and the quiet of thy people, seek no more for peace with a Prince whom thou hast so obstinately offended, and who refusing thee those advantageous reparations which he has offered thee, will seek thee out in the farthest limits of all thy Territories to satisfy his just anger,*

He would have seconded those words with his Sword, had not I oppos'd his intention, while mine was seconded by all those that followed me. Thus the two Warriours finding an obstacle which interrupted their design beyond their power to remove, cast a terrible look one upon another, and manifesting in that manner the constraint which I had compelled them to endure, they took several Roads, yet before they parted, expressing thus their resolutions, *I make no question*, said the Stranger who is in our Camp, *but that thou wilt retire to Pharamond's Army; and if thou hast not enfeebled thy heart by dishonouring thy Arm, thou wilt not avoid the opportunity which I shall seek for to come to a speedy decision of our quarrel. No, no, I shall never flie the least occasion*, replied the other Stranger, whose Arms were stain'd with blood, *and thou knowest we shall see one another in the first Battel that shall offer it self, where we shall have the satisfaction to fix our particular hatred upon the general enmity of the sides which we embrace.*

Those words having confirm'd me in the belief which I had already conceived, that those two Champions were of an illustrious Birth, and of an elevated courage; I accosted him whom I found engaged in our Association, and having considered his aspect, and tasted his converse with an augmentation of esteem: *I shall be received in the Camp whither we are going*, said I, *with more joy than I ought to have expected; and many thanks will be returned me for the assistance which I bring along with me, though it were none of my procuring.* "They will rather apprehend," answered he, that an unfortunate person seeks for Sanctuary "in a great Army: for if yours have Captains like your self, I see no reason why they "should wish for assistance. On the other hand, though the assistance which I bring to the "Cimbrians should not prove altogether unprofitable, I do not believe they would be much "oblig'd to me, since the life which I shall hazard for their interests, is no other than such "a one that I condemn, and which at present too many misfortunes render too odious to "me to take any care of its preservation.

Concluding those words, he sigh'd, and I took notice that a cloudy melancholy covered his face, where so lately I saw a warlike ardour flame. For that reason he spoke but little afterwards,

afterwards, nor did he hearken to me without distraction, when I discoursed to him of the most considerable persons in the Army. In regard he rode without any equipage, having but one Esquire to attend him, I conjectured he was unwilling that his real quality should be known, to the end perhaps that he might enjoy himself with more freedom, at a time when his discontents rendered him incapable of repose, and an Enemy to all society. For that reason I would not presume to enquire his name, though after he understood mine, he shewed himself very obligingly complaisant toward me.

However Sir, replied the King of Suevia, be pleased not to neglect to draw what advantage you can from this adventure, for it is necessary to know with what forces we can furnish so eminent a stranger, whom we cannot permit to pass for an ordinary Knight. "Sir, you judge very right, replied Varanez, and besides you know my passion to be such; that I shall never omit any thing that concerns the Queen of the Cimbrians interest: And as I am persuaded that you are fixed to mine, I have resolv'd to open my heart to you fully and frankly. Let us therefore rivet the chain that links us together, let us this day solemnly engage to satisfy each others interest, obtain for Varanez the enjoyment of Rosamond, and the Prince of Persia promises you the overthrow of the King of the Franks. If the Queen of the Bohemians has not a Soul large enough, to prefer the most puissant Monarchy of all Asia, before a petty Country of Europe; if she be not moved with my orders, nor persuaded by your counsels, then I shall take another course, and I make no question but to carry that away, which Rosamond would afterwards be overjoyed to grant me. For in short, Sir, it would be a shameful thing for Varanez to fight in vain, how illustrious or how charming soever should be the cause of his passion: Nor shall it ever be said that she refused to give her hand to a Prince, who did not think he could give his, without debasing himself, to the fair Athenais, whom the Emperour of Constantinople afterwards espoused. I desire only your forces and the King of the Basternes, whom Albisinda will easily persuade to be of our party, and when those forces shall be re-inforced, that are to fight under my command, we will make our selves so absolute here, that the united power of the Cimbrians, Burgundians, Alains, and Gepides; though supported by the valour of Balamir, Gondioch, Arderic and Godegesile, shall be too weak to——

———" Ah Sir, (said the King of Suevia interrupting him) let us not talk of dividing our selves, for if you look upon the four Princes whom you have named as Rivals, I beseech you Sir consider, that the King of the Franks is both a Lover, as well as an Enemy of Rosamond. And therefore because he is an enemy, replied Varanez, I do not look upon him as a Lover, that can ever hope to be happy: yet if the death of Theobald cannot render him odious to the Queen of the Cimbrians, my pretensions shall more forcibly impeach his claim, than the loss of a Brother.

The End of the Third Book of the Ninth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK IV.

WHile the fierce *Varanez* was boasting in this manner, a *Herulian* Knight who came from the *Franks* Camp, entred the King of *Suevia's* Chamber. But because he was sent by his Master *Godegesile*, who was a Lover of *Rosamond*, the Prince of *Persia* went his way. In the way to his Quarters he understood, that *Pharamond*, *Adelaida*, and *Cleomira*, had written to the King of the *Tongres*, that *Albisinda* had received letters from *Viridomar*, and that proposals were made on both sides for the exchange of prisoners, and to sign the treaty which was propounded. They added farther that *Cleomira* and *Blesinda*, to oblige the *Cimbrians* to take care of *Taxander* and *Genebaud*, sent often to visit and sometimes were themselves visited, by their most considerable Enemies, so that the fortune of war, seemed to have submitted to the puissance of the *Franks*: But above all *Gondemar* and *Gontran* were most respected, whose hearts were as full of acknowledgment toward those fair Princeesses, as the humour of the King of the *Herulians*, appeared froward and untractable. *Godegesile* naturally turbulent and fiery, could not behold himself so far absent from *Rosamond*, and so near *Pharamond*, without a double access of inward vexation, when he considered the double mistortune that was befallen him, through the victory of a Prince whom he mortally hated, both as his common Rival and common Enemy, which made him abandon himself to transportations of joy, little different from madnes.

Varanez when he had understood these particulars, and had demanded some others that concern'd the King of the *Franks*; went on: but was all of an instant surpris'd when he saw the Knight, that he intended to have carried to the King of *Suevia*; walking along with *Ambiomer* toward the Castle. He went to him in all hast, when the Stranger having perceived him and as quickly meeting him; *Sir*, (said he with less melancholy, than he had for some time shewn) *Agelmond finds his Sister in your Camp, and for that reason sets himself more powerfully engaged in that interest with which you have chosen to side.* The Prince of *Persia* hearing the famous Name of the King of the *Lombards*; felt a new access of surpris: declaring in a most obliging manner, that all the Army would be overjoyed, when they heard that *Agelmond*, famous for so many victories, was come to be one of their Captains, and most valiant Champions.

Saying those words he walk'd on, that he might not delay the satisfaction, which those two renowned persons would suddenly enjoy at their meeting, and no sooner were they all three arriv'd at the place of so agreeable an enterview, when *Agelmond* running with open Arms toward the Princess of the *Lombards*; "Is it possible, said he, that I should ever see you again, my most dear Sitter, or that Heaven should intermix a happiness with so many mistortunes, as have for so long time persecuted me?" *Agione*, for so was that fair Princess called, immediately knowing her Brother that was so dear to her, notwithstanding that his countenance was changed, received his Caresses with an extraordinary joy, and if the marks of her tenderness seem'd not to be so vehement as his, yet they flow'd from as fervent an affection, being only moderated by an Air of modesty and decency, which accompanied all *Agione's* actions. *Varanez* and *Ambiomer* having manifested, how much they were concern'd in the joy of that meeting, speedily retired, lest their presence might interrupt a converse, which they were desirous to leave free and private, to the King of the *Lombards* and his Sister.

This

This news was not spread through the Camp without great rejoicing. The Queens of the *Cimbrians* and *Turingiens* went to visit *Agione*, and the Princess *Albisinda* taking her opportunity, followed soon after. *Agelmond* was also visited by all the great Captains of so numerous an Army; and those Princes who could not stir forth by reason of their wounds, sent their principal Officers. The King of the *Lombards* admirably acquitted himself of whatever he thought to be his Duty, giving to every one the marks of his acknowledgment, according to the Merit of the persons, the Grandeur of their Quality, and the difference of their Sex. Above all he lovingly embrac'd *Ambiomer*; for besides that he had long since understood the reputation of his person, *Agione* had inform'd him in what manner he had reliev'd her. The generous Knight blush'd, and look'd down with his eyes, and hearing the obliging expressions of the King, and considering the little he had done, and how little capable he was to do, he was ashamed to receive from so great a King such return of thanks for a piece of service so inconsiderable. For that reason he disengag'd himself from *Agelmond* as soon as possibly he could; and making a reflection upon the condition of his life, he sigh'd to see himself always in the company of the greatest Kings of the world, and to be in danger either to reproach the uncertainty of his Birth, or to hear it spoken that it was not splendid enough for his Honour, *Unfortunate person that I am, cryed he, shall I always live in an ignorance so cruel, shall I not know at length whether my extraction be illustrious enough to have merited a more favourable reception from the Queen of the Turingiens? Or whether the actions which I have performed deserve no other recompence than to repair the default of my Birth, and make me only suffer for Amalazontha, without being able to authorise my too aspiring flames? Take up a resolution worthy of thy self, Ambiomer, (said he all of a sudden) 'tis time; and that thou mayst not serve in the Camp as a mean Volunteer in the sight of thy haughty Queen: bring back to the Camp those Troops that have elected thee for their General, and send for the Gaul that had the charge of thy infancy. For besides that thou wilt be more considerable in the party which thou hast chosen, shalt thou not also strengthen the Enemies of thy Rival? Shalt thou not render thy self in appearance at least more worthy the civilities of Agione?*

But then so many different thoughts turmoiled his mind, that to the end he might not be interrupted, he took Horse, and rode forth of the Camp, being glad that he had disengag'd himself from going to the King of *Suevia*, where there was a Council to be held, and where he could not expect but to be ranked in a place not correspondent to his courage. So soon as he was out of the Trenches the sight of the Wood allur'd him, whither his own contemplation conducted him. *Amalazontha* took up all his thoughts, and as he pass'd by the place where he had formerly fought *Sannon*, the remembrance of that encounter call'd to his mind the services which he had done for the Queen of the *Turingiens*. Immediately he accus'd himself of feebleness and folly for loving an ingrateful Princess; but then his heart lifting up its self against his reason, he repented of his thoughts as criminal. While he laboured under those discontents, he rode forward into the Wood, where fortune led him insensibly to that part where some days before he had met the amiable Sister of *Agelmond*: *Here it was, (cryed he, after he knew the place again) that I found the fair Princess of the Lombards, here it was that she receiv'd that succour from my hand, for which she believes her self so much engag'd to me, though I underwent neither danger nor trouble: Alas! Can I perform nothing that may avail me? I have expos'd my life more than once for a person that is altogether insensible, that remembers not my services, but after such a manner as is rather injurious to me, and only to put me in mind of her Dignity, which she believes ought to destroy all my hopes: if on the other side Agione considers that little I have done, ought I not to be mov'd with the acknowledgment of so fair a Princess? Why, said he immediately alter, why should I not be mov'd, why shall I not love Agione, since there is a kind of fate that forbids me to love any other than persons of her degree? Let us give over the Queen of the Turingiens, let us serve the Princess of the Lombards, and chuse a yoke that will not doubtless be so ponderous as that which to this very hour thou hast too patiently born. But who assures thee, (said he, pursuing his complaint) that thou canst change, or that Agione's Chains would be lighter than the Fetters which thou wouldst break? Ah, Ambiomer! all inconstancy is unworthy of a heart like thine; far therefore from renouncing thy pretensions for fear of difficulties, measure the honour which thou shalt obtain above the obstacles which it becomes thee to surmount. But then, added he, if my heart be still resolv'd to love the Queen of the Turingiens, does not my reason command me to disengage myself from a servitude too rigorous? Alas! What resolution shall I take?*

He held his peace, having expressed some part of his grief; then in an instant determining with himself, *Let us love Amalazontha, cry'd he, since our destiny will have it so. But let us endeavour to avoid the sight of her, let us endeavour to deprive her of the opportunity of exercising*

cising a tyranny so insupportable, let us diligently wait upon the Sister of Agelmond, let us serve so fair a Princess with all the zeal which we had for the Queen of the Turingiens; and if by our performances we can gain the esteem of the charming Agione, we shall have the satisfaction to let the disdainful Amalazontha see that all persons of her high degree do not despise her too faithful Ambiomere.

He rode on, confirming in his mind the design which he had contriv'd, when he perceiv'd a Knight, who being alighted from his Horse, was sitting upon the Grass at the foot of a great Tree to take his rest, of which he seem'd to have great need. *Ambiomere* had no sooner fix'd his eyes upon his countenance, but he felt some sparks of kindness begin to kindle in his Breast; and when he reflected upon the motion that surpris'd him, he attributed the cause thereof to that esteem or compassion men might generally have upon the sight of such an object. Indeed the Stranger looked pale enough easily to persuade him that the condition of his health was bad, and yet that symptom of indisposition did not so cloud his face, but that there appeared an air of Grandeur that had something extraordinary. On the other side, the Stranger mitigated some part of his natural haughtiness in beholding *Ambiomere*, whether it was out of those secret sympathies that Friends sometimes experiment upon their first meeting, or that the Stranger desired some assistance. At length he spake these words, addressing himself to *Ambiomere*, I guess, said he, that you are one of the Cimbric party, and that you can tell me tidings of certain Ladies that were conducted thither, if my information be true. There is no person, said *Ambiomere*, that can better inform you of that Adventure than my self. But since it is apparent that you mean the Princess of the Lombards, and that I know she has enemies abroad, if you be of their number, do not expect that I should take your part against her, though I find my self well enough inclin'd to befriend you upon any other occasion. Alas! replied the Stranger, sighing, I am so far from hating her, that I love her but too well, as insensible as she continues; and it is only to see her, that I desire of you the means how I may remain in the Cimbric Army without being known. That this circumstance may not hinder you from acting according to my intentions, nor make you unwilling to grant me so fair a courtesie, know that I am *Mundisic*, the Son and lawful Heir of the great King of the Huns. By the knowledge of this you easily judge that my pretences are not injurious to the Sister of Agelmond, that you expect a recompence proportionable to the rank of a Prince whom you will oblige; and that I desire not to conceal my self in your Camp, but only that I may not be obliged to see the rash *Balamir*, who not considering the right of eldership has caus'd me to lose the Princess of the Goths through the obstinacy of his passion. You have heard without doubt that once passionately lov'd *Hunnimonda*, that to obtain the possession of her I was driven to most extravagant extremities, and you have heard how mortally I hated *Balamir*; and I hate him still; and that for one heart that he has robbed me off, he shall not be assured of his life, as long as *Mundisic* enjoys his own. But let not this confession work in your mind an effect contrary to my designs; for since it only declares how sensible a heart I have, it is certain that I shall be no less exact to acknowledge a benefit, than I am eager to pursue my revenge.

While he thus talked, *Ambiomere* beheld him with astonishment, making no farther doubt but that it was *Mundisic* himself, who, accustom'd to acts of violence, had us'd *Agione* after that manner, so unworthy of her Sex and Dignity, inasmuch that he immediately felt an antipathy against him, and remembering the resolution that he had taken to embrace the Queen of the Lombard's interest, he was about to have acted accordingly, and to have reproach'd the persecutor of *Agione*, but a secret force restraining him, he accus'd himself of weakness; and it may be he had at length quarrell'd *Mundisic*, if the persuasion of kindness that hindered him had not been supported by sense of Generosity which forbid him to attack a person whom he saw in a condition rather to crave his assistance than the effects of his anger. On the other side, the Prince of the Huns conjectured by the looks and silence of *Ambiomere* that he should not obtain what he aim'd at; so that in a rage, Is it this, cryed he impatiently, that thou acknowledgest the truth and confidence of such a Prince as *Mundisic*? Though I was less feeble than I am, I would not leave unpunished such a denial, the marks whereof I too plainly discover in thy face; however, I was dispos'd before to let thee partake of that kindness which I shew to few persons.

Upon those words *Ambiomere* more earnestly beheld *Mundisic*, and considering the haughtiness and misfortune of that Prince, he paus'd a while what answer it behov'd him to make: but soon after declaring his mind, 'Tis neither the Grandeur of thy Birth, nor the pride of thy heart that protects thee from any resentment. I have met more than once great and valiant Princes arm'd against me; and I suffer only from unhappy *Mundisic* that which I would not take from the Prince of the Huns in his Father's Court, in the midst of all his Guards. But, (said he, taking notice that *Mundisic*'s strength began to fail) 'tis more seasonable now to suc-

our, than repress thy fury. As he spake those words he alighted, and went toward the Prince to pull off his Arms, and use his endeavour to give him ease. However, he was not long in that employment, for one of *Munditic's* Officers coming just in the interim into that side of the Wood, assisted *Ambiomer* with so much diligence and success, that the Prince came suddenly again to himself. After that casting his eyes upon *Ambiomer's* countenance with more moderation, *Generous Knight*, said he, *I am glad that this last of your actions has settled in my heart those thoughts which I had at first to your advantage: I return to the Camp of the Franks, where I should not have been, but that the Princess of the Lombards is in the Army of the Cimbrians. But in whatever part of the world Munditic shall be, you may be sure always to find a grateful Prince. And you, Sir, replied Ambiomer, shall find that Ambiomer will take your part in all things where justice will permit him to obey your commands.*

They were no sooner parted one from the other, but *Ambiomer* pondered in his mind upon this Adventure. *What*, said he to himself, *shall I no sooner resolve to adhere to the interests of the Princess Agione, but I must meet her Ravisher, without having any power to punish him? Must I see my self obliged to do good offices to an enemy that provoked me with his pride? Is it for this that Heaven decreed me to be born among the Huns? Is it because he is one day to rule that Nation, that I have so deep a sense of respect for Munditic? Ab, Ambiomer, said he with disdain, How miserable wouldst thou be, wert thou to live under the laws of that Prince, thou that canst hardly submit to his illustrious Brother! But what authority canst thou submit to, if *Balamir's* be not supportable? What extraction dost thou require, wouldst thou owe thy being to some great King, that is to say, wouldst thou wish that which is impossible, since there is no Sovereign Prince in the world that complains for the loss of a Son? There is more probability that I descended from a mean Family, whose complaints for the loss of me were not worth taking notice of.*

The thought thereof very much discontented him upon the Road; so that to drive it out of his mind, as soon as he was return'd to the Camp he went to the King of the *Burgundians* to learn what was done in Council; there he learn'd that there was a Truce for one Month, that in three days there was to be an order taken for the exchange of the Princes; and that there would be suddenly a general satisfaction to see the Officers of both Armies pass from one Camp to t'other, to visit those persons for whom they had the greatest kindness. That last particular was not very pleasing to *Ambiomer*, who apprehended that *Suxnon* would not neglect to wait upon *Amalazontiba*. But immediately upbraiding himself for this fear, he went to kiss the Princess of the *Lombards* hands on purpose to weaken the passion which he had for the ingratful Queen of *Turingia*. However, he thought it expedient first to visit the King of *Suevia* to let him understand that it was not because of the place that he refrain'd from being present at the Council. Coming then to his Apartment, he there found the King of the *Lombards*, *Balamir*, *Varanez*, and divers other considerable persons, among whom the *Persian Mitranez*, and *Viginizus Agelmond's* Esquire held no mean degree. The King of *Suevia* receiv'd *Ambiomer* very civilly, and after he had very obligingly rebuked him for an absence that deprived the illustrious company of his good advice. *However, you shall easily make amends*, said he, *and as the preserver of the Princess Agione, if you can but obtain from the King her Brother to give us that satisfaction which he can hardly deny us, I believe you may easily obtain the pardon of your injustice. In truth, Sir, replied Agelmond, it will be a very difficult thing for me to satisfy your desires as I would myself, and to speak as I should of all those cruel Adventures of which you request the repetition.*

Instead of proceeding any farther he held his peace, when the King of *Suevia* being the first that spake: *However, Sir*, said he, *it behoves us to know in what condition your Country and people are, and what is the cruel cause of your sorrows, to the end we may either assist you, or wait for your relief. Nevertheless*, said *Varanez*, *if the King of the Lombards be not himself dispos'd to repeat his own famous Actions, I know that Viginizus can ease him of the task, and that he will acquit himself so much the more to our content, in regard his renowned Master would have been unwilling to have been so exact in these parts of the Story, wherein his humour is most concern'd. Sir, then*, added the King of *Suevia*, *do us the favour we beseech you, to permit him to inform us more precisely what we only know as yet confusedly, and by report. Truly*, replied *Agelmond*, *I may expect so pleasing a consolation from the compassion which you will afford me, that I ought not to refuse the means of obtaining it, which you offer me: only I am to advertise you before hand, that Viginizus loves me, and may perhaps attribute great part of my success to my own courage, which is due to the warlike Nation that fought under my Banners. But, alas!* added he sighing, *though Viginizus may aggravate upon what I have said; how incapable is he to represent to your compassion all that I have suffered?*

He took his leave after those few words, and then his Esquire being seated at the request of the Princes that heard him, recollected his memory for a while, and presently after addressing himself to the King of *Suevia*, he began his relation in the following words:

The History of *Agelmond*.

Your Majesty puts me upon a hard task, in commanding me to repeat the Adventures of the King my Master: You see, Sir, that the most renowned among the miserable, dares not presume to undertake that himself, which you engage me to perform, and that it is evident that he does not observe a silence so doleful, but that he is perswaded he should open his lips in vain, and that it would never be possible for him, to find out words to express the sadness of his misfortunes. However, Sir, I shall shew my obedience, and the difficulties which I have reason to fear, shall give way to the respect which I owe to my Master's commands: Nor shall they hinder me from undertaking a recital, which would require more of art, than without doubt can be expected from a person that has been always bred up among the tumults of war. I shall not stand to repeat the original of our Nation; persons of your degree know already the concernments of all considerable Kingdoms, at least they are not ignorant, by what victories all people have established themselves in the Countries of their Conquests, or by what misfortune they have been constrained to submit to foreign yokes. I will only tell you that it is about some fifty years since, that our Ancestors forsook the Island of *Scandia*, a famous Region out of which those terrible multitudes of Armies have swarm'd, that have inundation'd all *Europe*. As for the name of *Longobard* or *Lombard*, you know, Sir, that according to common fancy, we derive it from the length of our hair, whether it be that we wear it so at this time as a mark of liberty, not only upon our heads but upon our chins, or whether the opinion were grounded some time since, upon some extraordinary accident. In short, it is ascertain'd among us, that our Ancestors crossing *Germany*, to seek out habitations in some pleasant Country, and finding themselves weakned by many Battels, though they had been almost every where victorious, were at length constrained to have recourse to policy, after they had given a thousand testimonies of their valour. Understanding then that an Army far more numerous than their own, was coming to attack them, they arm'd their women, and to make them seem more like men, they caused them to comb down their hair over those parts of their faces, that required that Masculine covering. So that their Enemies fear'd by the report of their Scouts, who at a distance took those new Troops to be a part of the famous *Veteran* Body, sent to the Camp of the *Longobards* (for so our Ancestors were call'd) to make them propositions of peace, which were immediately accepted, as being very advantageous to us. But those that are now curious among us, look a great way more backward, and assure us that the name of our Nation has been known, and famous for above a thousand years ago, about which time they say there reign'd a very potent King among the *Gauls* whose name was *Longo*, whose Son that was called *Bardus* rul'd after him, in the Island of *Albion*. That those two Princes having extended their conquests, to the farther end of *Germany*, to the end they might keep those remote Countries under their subjection, sent Colonies from both places into those parts, that soon joyned together, whereupon the people of which they were composed, took upon them the name of *Longobards*, either as a mark of their union, or else to immortalize those two Princes, whose puissance they had in veneration. Thus the *Longobards* or *Lombards* as they are more commonly called, finding themselves far remote from their Princes and their Country, and apprehending that they had no fewer Enemies than Neighbours, gave themselves wholly to war. It was a good while before they were govern'd by any other than Captain Generals, who in process of time having gained the hearts of the Soldiers, by degrees took upon them the controul as well of civil as military affairs, and at length quite renounced their obedience to their Sovereigns. Our two Captains that were most famous, *Agion* and *Ibor* were the last that were only contented with that Authority, and you well know how many victories they gained, and in how many battels they overthrew the *Vandals* our particular Enemies. *Agion* dy'd laden with renown, leaving behind him as a consolation for our Loss, a Son who had already signaliz'd himself in many encounters. Thereupon all the *Lombards* soon agreed to confer upon that Son, that is to say the famous *Agelmond*, all the commands and employments of his illustrious Father, and charm'd with the greatness of his courage; they went a little

farther and created him King, at the same time that the *Franks* raised *Pharamond* to the same dignity. We immediately became prosperous under this form of government, and soon grew to be the terror of our Enemies. The formidable *Agelmond* having given them many overthrows, invaded their Territories, and like a torrent that no strength of nature can stop, he overturn'd whatever oppos'd the fury of his Arms. Inſomuch that Embaſſadors were ſent from all parts, either to compoſe ſome war or enter into ſome alliance or other: And there were few Princes in *Germany*, that were not glad to embrace the friendſhip of a Nation, ſuſh'd with victory. The *Vandals*, maugre their haughty pride, ſued to us for peace, and other Nations that were at war with us, followed their example; even the potent King of the *Huns* himſelf, deſired to be our confederate: after he had loſt the moſt conſiderable part of his forces, in the abſence of the invincible *Balamir*. After that for ſome time we enjoyed a ſecure peace, which tranquillity it ſelf was not unprofitable, for it ſoon brought forth plenty and civility. In ſhort, *Agelmond* governed his Kingdom with an admirable prudence, he took care to eſta bliſh the religion of his Fathers, and the moſt noble Arts and Sciences: and to temper that auſtere ſtiffneſs which we had contracted by the wars, he ſent for perſons of learning, and excellent Artiſts from *Rome* and *Conſtantinople*. In ſhort, he thus eſta bliſh'd the 'dominion that he had purchaſed by his valour, gaining as well the love of his Subjects, as the hearts of his ſouldiers. On the other ſide, the beauty of the Princeſs *Agione* encreaſing from day to day, ſhe became the delight of the Court, and attracted all that was noble and gallant in the Neighbouring Kingdoms: But while we are talking of nothing but magnificent feſtivals, while the publick paſtimes and divertiſements take up all our preparations, while that the calm of peace flouriſhed in our Provinces, where nothing was to be heard formerly but the noiſe of war, we ſaw a cloud gathering from *Sarmatia*, that threatned us with a furious Tempeſt. Nevertheleſs it ſtrikes no terror into the hearts of the *Lombards*: on the contrary, they look upon it with joy as an opportunity to win fame, yet from that cloud they likewiſe ſee a clap of thunder break forth, that cauſes their diſconſolation, while it becomes the original of their Prince's miſfortune.

Though the difference between the *Huns* and *Sarmatians* has occaſion'd all our miſeries, I ſhall forbear to ſpeak of their firſt falling out, for as it is not poſſible, Sir, that you ſhould be ignorant of the main circumſtances, I ſhall only relate thoſe whercon thoſe adventures are grounded, which you are chiefly to underſtand: You know that the *Huns* invaded and vanquiſhed the *Sarmatians*, that they extended their Conqueſts far into their Country, and that that Nation was a terror to all its Neighbours, while the two Princes who were the ſupport thereof, fought unanimouſly for the common intereſt. But it was expoſed to ſtrange revolutions, when the Royal family was divided, and that *Mundſic* had raviſhed away the Princeſs of the *Goths*, the enjoynment of which Lady was promiſed to the enamour'd *Balamir*, as the glorious reward of his noble Actions; I paſs lightly over theſe circumſtances, by reaſon the Prince himſelf is here preſent, and hinders me from dilating upon particulars, which perhaps he thinks, would appear too much to his commendation and ſhew too plainly the injuſtice of *Hunnimonda's* Ravisher. For I muſt needs ſay, that among all the other virtues of the renowned *Balamir*, he has one which makes him reject thoſe applauſes, that others are ſo greedy of, and that that generous Prince ſtill acknowledges a brother, in the perſon of his perſecutor: But I am only to entertain your Majeſty, with what concerns the King my Maſter. Know then Sir, when the enamour'd *Balamir* was conſtrained to renounce all his hopes for the preſervation of *Hunnimonda's* life, he took a reſolution to abſent himſelf from the fair Princeſs, that he might not be expoſed to the danger of ſeeing her in the power of his Rival.

To that purpoſe he forſook a Country, that he could not but look upon with horror, and left the Army which he ſo dearly loved, ſtriking a conſternation among thoſe whom he had ſo often lead to victory. On the other ſide, *Mundſic* looked after nothing elſe but to ſoften *Hunnimonda's* heart: His heat and love of war now changed its object, and that Prince ſo fierce and haughty, ſpent many days in vain at the feet of the moſt immoveable Princeſs of the *Goths*. However I ſhall ſay nothing of the ſucceſs of that paſſion, for beſides that it would only renew the grief, wherewith *Balamir's* ſoul was ſo reſtleſly afflicted, I muſt confeſs, that I know but confuſedly my ſelf the circumſtances. It ſhall only then ſuffice to tell you, that this change produced another more conſiderable, that the *Sarmatians* found themſelves ſtrong in the weakneſs of the *Huns*, and that their courage was raiſed by the return of their valiant Prince.

The King his Father had ſent into his Dominions into *Aſia*, ſo that *Agathirſis*, (for that was the Prince's name) was engaged beyond *Tanſis*, when the *Huns* that bordered upon

Dacia had invaded the *Sarmatians*, and very much enlarged their Conquests. But no sooner was he arrived at *Tamyrague*, where the King of the *Sarmatians* usually kept his Court, but all the people of that vast Monarchy, prepar'd not only to expel the *Huns*, but to carry the war into their own Country, and to assail them more vigorously than they had been assaulted themselves. The Prince overjoyed to find so general an inclination to war in the people, immediately hatches his levies, while the King on the other hand took extraordinary pains himself, desirous to share in the honour which they both expected to acquire. While the Prince of the *Venedes* his Brother, went to the Sea-side to the Provinces allotted to his Government, to raise forces in those parts. While all things are in a hurley burley in the vast extent of ground that obeys the *Sarmatian* King, and that the people talk of nothing but Arms and Engines of war, all the neighbouring Nations beheld those preparations: and though they conjectured, that in probability this Tempest threaten'd only the *Huns* they neglected not however to prepare for their own safety, and to put themselves into a posture of defence, against so formidable an Enemy. The *Burians*, the *Didurians*, the *Omanes*, and the *Deluceons*, and in a word all the Nations that drink the waters of the *Viada* and *Vistula*, behind *Corrodon* and the Mountain *Afaborges*, to the Countries of the *Sidenians*, and *Ruticians*, all these people fortified their frontiers toward the *Gytbons* and *Phymians* being a part of *Sarmatia*, and raised a great Army which they rendezvous'd near *Calisia*.

On the other side, *Mundisc* lost not one moment of time, he assembled all the forces of the *Huns*, and to render them equal to those of his Enemies; he drew out all the people out of both the *Pannonias*, *Dacia*, and the higher and lower *Mesia*. The Prince of *Sarmatia* having intelligence of all this, would neither stay for the King his Father nor for *Harmaxes*, that was the name of the Prince of the *Venedes*, but march'd with impatience toward the Plains of the *Ombrons*. *Mundisc* judging he might have some design to fall into *Dacia*, advances with all speed, intending to make *Sarmatia* the seat of a war, which he knew could not but prove very bloody. The two Armies met in the Province of the *Avarines*, where they came to blows without delay, maintaining the fight with so much fury and oblinacy, that above sixty thousand men were sacrificed to the ambition of their Princes. The *Sarmatians* lost a far less number than their Enemies, so that they remained Masters of the field, and the *Huns* were forced to retire in disorder toward *Carpathus*, being Masters of all the Avenues at that vast mountain.

In the mean while the Nations whom I have mention'd, lying upon the *Viada* and the *Vistula*, being joyned in a confederacy together, not only saw themselves in an instant out of all danger, but so observing that the *Sarmatians* were wholly bent against their ancient Enemies the *Huns*, they resolv'd to employ the forces they had rais'd some other way and to that purpose invaded the Territories of the *Batenians* our Allies, desirous to extend their Dominions toward the River *Elbe*.

Agelmond who was then in the Country of the *Chirusquians* in the City of *Lispia*, presently heard the complaints of his Confederates, and having assembled all the old Soldiers together, to which he joyned his own Guards, he march'd toward the *Elbe*, and pass'd the River, notwithstanding the opposition of a potent Enemy. Afterwards being reinforced by the *Batenians*, he fell into the Territories of the Confederates, and gave them battel with so much valour and good success, that he cut the *Burians* to pieces who had the Van, afterwards breaking in among the *Omanians*, he slew their Captain with his own hand, put to flight the *Didurians*, wounded the Prince of the *Alveons*, and finding no resistance march'd directly to the City of *Calisia*, which he assaulted so vigorously, that he took it in a few days, though the place were sufficiently fortified, and furnished with provision to have held out, against an Army that was too much weakned and wearied, had they not fought under the conduct of the valiant *Agelmond*. He had no sooner left a Garrison in the City, but he march'd forward toward the *Vistula*, there he encamp'd for some time, but finding no Enemy appear, and that the season was unfit for Action, after he had put his Army into winter Quarters, he return'd to *Calisia*, whither the Princess *Agione* was then come, with some part of her Court. I have made a brief relation only of these great Actions, in regard it behoves me to speak more at large, of those that are more important, nor will I say any more concerning them but only in few words, that the King my Master had no sooner concluded a peace with the vanquish'd, but he was oblig'd to prepare for a new War, more dangerous and of greater fame.

You know Sir, that the Prince of the *Sarmatians* having once more overthrown the *Huns*, forced their Trenches behind the foot of the Mountain *Carpathus*, at the head of the River *Tyras*, that he entred *Dacia*, while the King his Father and the Prince of the *Venedes*, advanced on the other side toward the Province of the *Arseres*, with an intention to march on

as far as the *Danubius*. *Mundisic* finding with a more than ordinary vexation that as fast as his Enemies Forces increas'd, his own as fast diminish'd, resolv'd to seek to the King of the *Lombards* for aid; and that he might obtain the more considerable assistance, he was resolv'd to intercede in person for it: and this the rather, seeing his presence in the Army was not so useful in a season unfit for action, besides that he had left the famous *Keva* his Lieutenant to command in his room. To *Calisia* therefore he came, and there finds *Agelmond*, where, though he had but an ordinary suit to make, yet the interview between those two Princes was doubtless very extraordinary and magnificent. *Mundisic* preparing to speak with that respect which perhaps he would not have shew'd at another time: *Sir*, said he to the King of the *Lombards*, *if the Huns have been overthrown by the Sarmatians, they have this consolation for the sorrow of their defeat: for by reason of their alliance with the great Agelmond, they may assure themselves to vanquish in their turn by virtue of his assistance.* "Sir, answered the King my Master, we shall never refuse to aid the Confederates of the *Lombards*, since we never deny it to any Nation that is in distress, though they have no other right but their misfortune to demand it. I confess also that you may perhaps have better success with a considerable reinforcement; for that the valiant Prince of the *Huns* being overcome by multitude, the *Sarmatians* will soon lose their advantages when the number of their Enemies shall increase by the accession of our Forces to your Army.

After such obliging expressions as these, the two Princes not only continued their familiarity, but also for two days consulted together of every thing that might concern so important a War. I shall not however recount the particulars of their Conferences, nor the circumstances of a fatal engagement that afterwards occasioned so many dire mishaps: only this I must not omit, that *Mundisic* obtain'd whatever he request'd of *Agelmond*; only he departed from *Calisia* not so well satisfied with *Agione*: for if he spake of her as of the fairest Princess of the world, yet he complain'd of her as the most insensible person that ever was. In short, *Sir*, it may suffice that you will see by the sequel of this Relation the effects of that journey which the Prince of the *Huns* made to the King of the *Lombards*, to how many Royal Families they were tragical, through the over-ruling force of destiny. So soon as the Spring of the year permitted them to take the Field, *Agelmond* ordered his Soldiers to their Rendezvous, to the end he might make a general Muster; and finding his Army to consist of above sixty thousand fighting men, he took a resolution to pass the *Visula*, and to invade *Sarmatia*. But he was no sooner there arriv'd, when he felt a disturbance in his mind, to which he had not been accustomed, and reflecting with surprize upon those unusual commotions, he conjectured them to proceed from no other cause than the vastness of those extraordinary designs which he had undertaken, upon the sight of that mighty Monarchy which he was about to assail. Prepossess'd with those thoughts, and full of that haughty confidence that accompanied him in the most hazardous enterprises. He exhorted his Army in these few words with an aspect sufficient to infuse courage into the most timorous of his Soldiers.

Most valiant Lombards, having triumph'd over the Vandals, and so many other Nations, you see that the Huns, famous for many Victories, sue for assistance, and that we are now come into Sarmatia to declare open war against the most potent King in Europe. See here, my generous Friends, what was wanting to complete our Glory, here behold that which will purchase us a perfect immortality, which we may gain with less trouble than success. I confess that we are going to assail an Enemy who has no less Provinces in his Dominions than we have Cities, but which they will hardly defend against a warlike Army accusom'd to Victory. Are they not a multitude of people undisciplin'd, which their own number puts into confusion, and which we shall disorder before we can charge? Along then my Friends, and cheerfully let us vanquish this multitude, and then we shall extend our Conquests so far, that advancing to the remotest Climates of this vast Empire, we shall cause our power to be acknowledg'd in those places where our name is hardly yet known, how famous soever it be among those Nations that are known to us already.

He had no sooner spoken, but the *Lombards* with loud shouts and acclamations testified their noble impatience to follow their valiant Prince wherever he conducted them. So that *Agelmond* according to the resolution which he had taken with *Mundisic*, aiming to make a Diversion, and having march'd very hard to meet the King of the *Sarmatians*, he resolv'd to give him Battel, notwithstanding the inequality of their numbers. While he was marshalling his own Troops, the Enemies omitted nothing on their part; and *Harmaxes* a hardy and bold Prince shew'd a very great deal of activity and experience in execut-

cutting the orders of the King his Brother, but all his diligence prov'd in vain; and his valour, as extraordinary as it seem'd to be, gave way at length to the invincible *Agelmond*. The *Sarmatians* were overcome, they left upon the place sixty thousand men, their King was taken by ours, and the Prince of *Venedes* saving himself by flight, shut himself up in *Tamyraque* with the remainder of his shattered Troops. *Agelmond* not only pursued him with more heat and vigour than he was wont to shew after the defeat of his Enemies, but march'd directly toward the City of his retreat. Though it was strong and full of men, he resolv'd to carry it in a few days without laying a formal Siege to it, that the *Sarmatians* might have no time to gather again, nor the Prince any opportunity to give them assistance. To that purpose he brought his Rams and other Engines to the Walls, and maugre the Showers of Arrows and Stones, he battered them without intermission for three or four days. When the breach was wide enough, he entred it himself, followed by some Volunteers that ordinarily fought near his person; and the Prince of the *Venedes* appearing on the other side, the Conflict grew bloody and terrible. But the irresistible *Agelmond* after a stout resistance wounded *Harmaxer*, kill'd and put to flight the most courageous of his Enemies, entred and took the Town. Being Master thereof he became its Protector; for understanding that a party of the *Lombards*, greedy of pillage, were running to the Temple where the most considerable of the *Sarmatians* were fled for refuge, he made haste thither himself, and not only prevented the Soldiers from breaking open the doors, but so ordered it, that they that were within opened them willingly themselves: when a venerable person, devoted to the service of the Gods of that Country, appeared at the head of several others of the same profession. He was clad in the Vestures of his Priesthood, and the Majesty that rebounded from him was supported by that of his age and aspect. Having fearlessly beheld the Conquerour of the *Sarmatians*, he began to speak with a gravity that shewed the constancy of his mind: "King of the *Lombards*, said he, if thou approachest these sacred Altars to commit any act of violence, retire, and provoke not the Gods who are favourable to thee. But if thou comest to this Temple only to render thanks for the victory which the Gods have given thee, enter, and when thou seest the persons that the chance of War surrenders up into thy power, judge thou whether thou canst abandon their defence without drawing upon thee the anger of Heaven, and putting an end to thy success.

The King having dropped the point of his Sword, and listened attentively to the old man: when he had made an end, "Fear not, Father, said he in a very obliging manner, *Agelmond* is an enemy to violence; and where his commands are acknowledged, it suffices to be secure, only to be feeble without being constrain'd to flee to the foot of the Altars. If it be so, Sir, said the Old Man, I do not wonder at what renown has spread broad concerning the great *Agelmond*, and I dare hope for you in this war a more happy success than the beginning thereof seems to promise. Let us go then, said he, and give thanks to the immortal Gods, you for your victories, and we for your Generosity.

Concluding those words, he turn'd about to go into the Temple, and led the King to a Magnificent Altar, where the *Sarmatians* were wont to sacrifice to the chiefest of their Gods. As I had the honour in the Combat to follow my valiant Master, and was at that time very near his person, I took notice that there were many handsome persons in the Temple, notwithstanding the characters of fear that might be read in their faces. But we were no sooner in the place whither the Chief Priest intended to lead *Agelmond*, but we perceiv'd two women which we guess'd to be of no ordinary extraction; for besides that, notwithstanding the confusion of the place, they were separated from the rest of the Crowd, the negligence of their Drefs did not at all obscure the Magnificence thereof. Their shapes were lovely, yet differing in proportion, but we could not see their Faces, they having both Vails, either to hide their sadness, or to wipe away the tears which the misfortune of their Country made them shed: Sir, (said the ancient Priest to the King my Master) you see two great Princesses, *Gilsmene* and *Dorcira*. The first, as without doubt you already know, is the Daughter, the other the Sister of our King, of whom we may say, they are endowed with extraordinary advantages by the favour of Heaven. I will advertise them, if you please, that you have caus'd murder and pillage to cease, and that you are not come into this Temple but only to make it that Sanctuary which they seek; and that if they have any thanks to return, or any Suit to make, you are ready to bear them, and perhaps inclin'd to grant them some kindness to appease their melancholy.

Agelmond feeling in his heart, a new commotion of pleasure and disquiet intermix'd, answered in few words, that he had sufficiently explained himself for him to know his mind: when the chief Priest coming to the two Princesses, obligingly perswaded them to pull off their Vails. *Dorcira* was the first that took away her hand with which she hid her face:

whether it were that having attain'd her Two and Twentieth year, she was more courageous than *Gilismene*, who was not above seventeen years of age; or whether she had less pity and grief in her heart. The King of the *Lombards* looked upon them with surprize, and then going toward them, yet with a great respect; *Madam*, said he, *since fortune could not favour me, with rendring me at the same time the Author of your misfortunes, I should not dare to present my self before those Princesses, whom my Actions have questionless provoked against me: were I not emboldened by full intention to make them reparation for those losses, which they have thereby received: For besides that you know, Madam, that I am no particular enemy of the Sarmatians, I have only entred their dominions to succour my Allies. And therefore in regard Prince Agathyrhis has obtained great advantages against the Huns, there will be no difficulty to make a peace between two Kings, that have mutually tryed their strength which they find to be so equal, as not to desire the hazard and chance of many Battels.* While he spake, *Dorcira* not only began to look more assuredly, but also more earnestly beheld the King of the *Lombards*, than 'tis to be thought it became her to have done at such a time.

After she had considered a while; *Sir*, said she, *the success that accompanies you in fight, may render us miserable, but it shall never hinder us from being just. For my part, I cannot cast my eyes upon the reliques of our scattered Troops, nor turn them toward those Towns which you have won, without affirming at the same time that never any Conquerour was more generous, than the valiant King of the Lombards, nor did I ever find any thing more obliging, than your manner of behaviour toward those persons, who have offered up their prayers for your confusion, and still bewail your victory.*

She thus concluded, when *Gilismene* to whom the chief Priest had also spoken, discovering her face; displayed a thousand charms and darted a dazzling Lustre from her eyes. The star that ushers in the day appear'd not half so bright, after she had dispell'd those clouds, that had overcast her face. Nor could the apparition of a Goddess environ'd with splendor, have displayed more lively beams, nor have astonish'd a mortal with more surprize and veneration. I need not tell you that *Gilismene's* shape is streight, her deportment fierce and noble, only this I must say that she deeply wounded the heart of *Agelmond*. For you must know that all the lineaments of the *Sarmatian* Princess are regular to the very exactness of proportion, that her complexion is beyond imagination, being adorn'd with that whiteness, that vivacity, that freshness, and that flower of youth which is usually the soul of beauty. Admirable was the proportion that opened her vermilion Lips, and certain Tears that flow'd thither and there stopp'd, seem'd to me as if they there sought to terminate, their course with honour, having taken their source from two tountains altogether celestial. For in short, never was seen any thing more beautiful than *Gilismene's* eyes, their colour blew, and though sweet, large, and fairly distanc'd, yet they sparkle and are full of vigour. The flames which they darted forth even in that time of sadness, instead of being quenched by her Tears, brake through these precious clouds, and received a brighter Lustre from their Eclipse.

All these wonders of which I ought to have given a more eloquent description, were accompanied with a grace that most admirably became them, and which the present misfortune had in some sort augmented: But then the careless attire of *Gilismene's* head, let fall upon her Neck and some part of her Shoulders several curling locks of white fair hair, which though it were a Treasure so profusely scattered abroad, yet had a secret charm to move those persons that were least covetous of such kind of riches: at first the astonish'd King of the *Lombards* stood like a Statue, afterwards he greedily survey'd the Beauties of *Gilismene*: And as he had the fatal command, he had the leisure to see to be engaged and lose himself. He seem'd to feel several other passions, which seem'd only to increase for the strengthening of that, which had got possession in his soul. He could not think upon *Gilismene's* sadness, but with an excess of grief, nor could he without as great a satisfaction behold himself in a condition to render such extraordinary kindnesses, as lay in his power, to that beautiful Princess. And if compassion and repentance softned his heart, his blooming joys opened it to love, and all things at length made way to admit that cruel passion, or rather served to establish its tyranny.

Agelmond already desperately enamoured, could neither speak nor think what he had to do, when the chief Priest to put him out of that melancholy fit, desired leave to sing a Thanksgiving Song. The King had no sooner given his consent in two words, but he betook himself again to feed his eyes, with that miraculous beauty which destiny laid open to his view, but afterwards transported with a violent passion that he could not moderate; *Madam*, said he, *if you be the divinity of this Temple, as those Celestial Rays that dart from your fair countenance, are apt to perswade me; you may see into my Soul and there discover, how*
great

great is my grief to have been the cause of yours. You may see with those divine eyes that penetrate every where, whether I would not sacrifice the last drop of my blood, to stop those Tears that I have caused to trickle down your fair Cheek. Ah Sir, answered she, offend not the Gods I beseech you, take notice that you are in a place consecrated to them, and that you only speak to an unfortunate Princess, upon whom Heaven only looks in anger. But how incens'd soever it may be against me, though it has rais'd you up to destroy the Royal House of the Sarmatians; your behaviour has been so generous, that I question not but I may speak in the behalf of the King my Father. Yes, Sir, (added she with a melting languishment, that had something in it infinitely moving) I conjure you to have that kindness for that unfortunate Prince, which my Sex may oblige you to have for me. In the Name of the Gods suffer me to wait upon him, that I may carry some part of his chains, and link my fate to his.

The Air wherewith she spoke all this while, having made an impression far more powerful in the soul of the passionate King, he cast an Amorous look upon *Gilismene*, he sigh'd without being able to return her an answer. But then when his eyes had promised more than the Princess request'd, and that he was preparing to speak; he durst not proceed, seeing himself obliged to turn toward the Altar, by reason the Anthem was begun. So soon as it was ended, he offer'd the Princesses to conduct them either to their Palaces, or to what other place they would chuse, and to that purpose giving order that those Ladies who had the principal charges about their persons should attend; he presented his hand to *Gilismene*, and gave me command to lead *Dorcira*. He went out of the Temple, the High Priest going before, and followed by an infinite number of people, blessing and praying for him all the way. But the pleasure which he had, to lead his adored *Gilismene* by the hand, was mix'd with a discontent, that he could not discourse his affection to that fair Princess: For he was continually hindred by the throngs of people, that threw themselves at his feet, or by the Lombard Officers who came to receive orders: And this perplexity lasted not only to the Palace of the King of the Sarmatians, but also in the Princesses very Apartment. In the mean time my Master felt the violence of his passion increase, by how much the more he tasted the humour and spirit of the Princess. However, instead of shewing any sign thereof, he found himself constrained to depart, not only to give orders as to what concern'd the Army and City, but also to give the Princesses all the time and freedom, to cheer and repose themselves. So that after he had caus'd the Room to be cleared of all unconcern'd persons, and found there were none with *Gilismene* and *Dorcira*, but only such as attended them, he was about to take his leave: when the Princess of the Sarmatians addressing her self to him with an Aspect, that was able to move the most insensible heart; Sir, said she, will you give me no answer, as to what concerns the King my Father. 'Tis in your power, Madam, said he, to dispose of his fate, Yes, most divine Princess, the liberty of the King of the Sarmatians is in your hands, and I find at the same time, added he after a very passionate manner, that you will have the Sovereign command of all things that are in Agelmond's power.

When he had so said he departed, without expecting any return of thanks from *Gilismene*, and lest *Dorcira* should delay him also by concerning her self with the Princess, presently he sent to know of the King, whether he might be admitted to give him a visit, and while he expected an answer, I took that opportunity to perswade him to put off his Arms, and betake himself to his rest. He had much ado to permit it, so impatient and disquieted was he already: But at length he yielded, and some slight wounds were dress'd, which he had received when he enter'd the breach: And so soon as he had rested himself, the Officer whom he had sent to the King of the Sarmatians returned, and gave him an account of his Errand. He told him that he should be received, as a Generous Conquerour ought to be by a grateful Captive. Which words, as they had nothing but what was to be expected upon such an occasion, so pleas'd the enamour'd *Agelmond*, that he caus'd them to be repeated with all the circumstances. Afterwards calling for Horses, he determin'd to go to that Quarter, wheré the King of the Sarmatians was guarded, and thither he would ride; notwithstanding all our entreaties to take a little more rest and be more careful of that health that was so necessary and dear to us all.

As he enter'd into the Tent where the Princesses Father was guarded, his heart fail'd him, being the first time he had found himself liable to fear. *Agelmond* was at first surpris'd at those new motions, but afterwards he call'd to mind, that he might be undaunted in battle, yet tremble upon such an occasion: That that courage which made him venture, upon an Army of a hundred thousand men, ought to give way to other passions, in encounters of a different nature: And in short that he ought not to think it strange, if he did not present himself so boldly before the King of the Sarmatians, when he consider'd that the Princess

who had reason to hate him, had also the sole right of disposing the admirable *Gilismene*.

The two Kings had a mutual respect one for the other at their first Interview. So that the King of the *Sarmatians* received *Agelmond* as his Conquerour: and on the other side, my Master looked upon him not only as a great Monarch, but as the Father of that divine person whom he ador'd: Sir, said he, *you are free, go and receive into your protection all those your Subjects who have submitted to our power; but while I abandon to you both my Interest and my Conquests, give me leave to plead for my Allies when you shall be out of our Camp, and at liberty to act without controul.* Ah, Sir, (cried the King of the *Sarmatians*, charm'd with *Agelmond's* Generosity) *what an Enemy have the Gods raised up against me, and what success can I hope for, having so much virtue to fight against. But it is not reasonable that you should vanquish me in all things, or that after you have overthrown me in Battel, and taken my Towns, you should triumph over my Generosity. There remains yet sufficient hope for me to recover my self, by means of the victorious Arms of Agathyrus, and by reason of the vastness of my Dominions; for as yet only those Countries lying upon the Vistula have felt the force of your Arms. Those Nations that drink at the two heads of Borylthenes, that obey me on both sides the Tanais are all yet entire, and are able to furnish me withal to act either for the Lombards, or the Huns, whatever the great Agelmond shall command me.*

My Master answered him in few words, That Prince *Agathyrus* would easily spare him that pains; and therefore as he desired nothing more than to restore the King of the *Sarmatians* to the Princess his Daughter. He gave the King to understand, that he might depart when he pleas'd, and that he was impatiently expected at home by his children, and by his people. Thus the two Kings return'd from the Army to the City, where but two hours before desolation raged in a most terrible manner. *Dorcyræ* testified her satisfaction to see her Brother; and *Gilismene*, who had an inconceivable affection for the Prince, was not Mistress of the motions of her own heart, gave evident testimonies thereof, which she intermixed with those of her own respect.

Many other advantages attended upon the present favours shewed to those illustrious persons. For *Agelmond* drew off his Army from the City where his Princess resided, intending they should take their march toward the *Vistula* after some days of repose and refreshment. On the other side, *Harmaxer's* wounds not being found dangerous, he was brought to the King his Brother's Palace: and in a little time after came a Courier from *Agathyrus* that completed the joy both of Court and City. He inform'd the King of the *Sarmatians* that the Prince his Son had once more overthrown *Mundisic* and that after he had cut the greatest part of his Army in pieces, he had carried his victorious Arms as far as *Albæ Julia*, if the report of *Agelmond's* victorious progress had not compell'd him to make haste back into *Sarmatia*. The news hereof very much troubled me; and when I considered that our Allies were beaten, and that *Agathyrus* was making all the speed he could toward us, I was griev'd to think that my Master had quitted all those advantages which his valour had given him over the most puissant Kings in the world. *Agelmond* found by my countenance that I was not very well satisfied; and therefore as it was usual for me to tell him my thoughts, I let him frankly know what my opinion was at that time: "I very well see, *Viginizus*, answered he, that our opinions are very different at this time, if you think that the War can continue between the *Sarmatians* and the *Lombards*; or that my designs, which you approve not without doubt, can be prejudicial to our Nation. On the contrary, an act of Generosity done to a Prince that is himself generous, usually produces better effects than the most prudent foresight, or exactest cautions can assure us. But, Sir, replied I somewhat impatiently, *who has undertaken that the King of the Sarmatians will not prove ungrateful.* "The Princess *Gilismene*, replied he very readily, for I imagine it would not be as strange, that a Prince who gave a being to such a divine person should fail in his acknowledgment, as it is impossible for *Agelmond* to fight against the Brother of *Gilismene*. Then doubt no more, *Viginizus*, of the success of our Army, and I wish to Heaven, added he sighing, that I had as much reason to hope for success in those other designs which I have. Ah, *Viginizus*, how charming is the Princess *Gilismene*! But alas! the King her Father is a powerful Potentate, in comparison of a Prince that only reigns in one corner of *Germany*.

Instead of expressing himself any farther, he blush'd and looked discompos'd, afterwards walking about the Room in a great passion, he studied for some pretence to visit the King of the *Sarmatians*, not being able to live long absent from the Princess his Daughter. He was very much perplexed in what manner he should make this visit; for it was not regular to go among those that were rejoicing for a Victory which they had obtain'd over his Allies; nor would the Laws of good Deportment permit that he should shew himself sad in a place

place where there was nothing but gladness, especially before a Princess whose passions he desired should sympathize with his. While his mind was thus perplexed with variety of thoughts, a *Sarmatian* of great quality from the King his Master, who told him that the King still preserv'd the same inclinations, and that he looked upon the victory of *Agathyrfus* only as a means to bring down the haughty fierceness of the *Huns*, and make them more willing to come to terms of accommodation, and that he would have come in person to give him the same assurance, had he thought it convenient at a time when their interests were so contrary.

Agelmond was overjoyed at this complement; for besides that it came from the Princess's Father, it determin'd his irresolution, and gave him an occasion to visit the King of the *Sarmatians*. Thither therefore he went, but when he was just ready to see *Gilismene*, his heart labour'd under a new agitation: for the amorous Prince not being able to keep enclos'd in his Breast all the violence of his passion, hop'd for some ease by giving the incomparable person, who was the real cause of it, some knowledge thereof: but then considering that *Gilismene* was the Daughter of one of the greatest Kings of the world, and that she might have received some time before some impressions of hatred against the *Huns* and their Allies. He changed his mind, being troubled with a deadly fear lest he might provoke the Princess that he so much ador'd. But that he might not hesitate upon an uncertainty which appear'd so cruel, he took an immediate resolution, and considering how much the Royal House of the *Sarmatians* was oblig'd to him, he perswaded himself that it was absolutely necessary that *Gilismene* should understand his passion. For thereby he thought the Princess would not only take into consideration what he had already done, but also what he might farther do out of his affection to her, especially since there was such probability of a Treaty likely to begin. That such a publication of his love would also be of great weight to justify his proceedings before all the world, that he might not be accus'd for not knowing how to prosecute his victories, but rather be with some kind of pity excus'd, when people understood that imprudence had no share in his Actions, seeing that love was the only cause of what he had done.

Thus the Prince suffering himself to be guided by a persuasion so pleasing, and which he apprehended so conformable to reason, resolv'd without delay to let *Gilismene* understand that she only reign'd with sovereign controul in the heart of *Agelmond*, so that having visited the King of the *Sarmatians*, and excus'd himself to him that he durst not presume to wait upon *Harmaxes* whom he had wounded with his own hand, he went directly to the Princess's Apartment, he found her in a cheerful humour, with only one of her Maids of Honour, with whom she was talking of *Agathyrfus's* victory. *Dorcira* was in the Prince of the *Venedians* Chamber, whom she tenderly lov'd; insomuch that *Amasis* (for that was the name of *Gilismene's* Favourite) being retired to the rest of her Associates, *Agelmond* saw his opportunity to speak to the Princess without being overheard. He render'd thanks to love, but instead of having the power to open his lips, all that he could do was to admire the fair eyes of *Gilismene*. He beheld them with such evident signs of a violent passion, that the Princess blush'd and looked down upon the Ground: but at length fearing perhaps that *Agelmond* should farther express his mind, she took the confidence to begin the discourse, and to ground it upon a subject contrary to what intentions she thought the King of the *Lombards* might have. To that intent she chose an argument that was generally talk'd of; and believing there was nothing more proper than to talk of a victory which was the only news at that time, *Sir*, said she, *you see that we are not altogether unfortunate, and that* — — — *Ab, Madam*, said he, interrupting her with a sigh, *I know very well that the King of the Sarmatians is very formidable, I know he has a power sufficient to overcome all the Nations that shall arm themselves against him, that he has in his own Family sufficient to defeat them, and that he has vanquish'd Mundisic by the valour of Agathyrfus, and triumphs over Agelmond through the charms of the divine Gilismene. Yes, Madam, your eyes won him a triumph over the King of the Lombards: from the first time I saw those celestial eyes, I felt my heart engag'd to do them homage; and it ceas'd to be free while you load-ed me with fetters in the midst of my Conquests.*

Though there were nothing in these words which the most scrupulous virtue could disapprove. The Princess of the *Sarmatians* however could not forbear to appear discompos'd, and as it were somewhat offended, insomuch that my Master fearing to receive some severe answer, instead of giving *Gilismene* leave to reply, proceeded in these words, *I beseech you, Madam*, said he, *let not the confessions of the most respectful passion that ever was, provoke your anger against a Prince that adores you. Consider I adjure you, that cruelty will become a Conquerour to whom the Captive yields with an entire submission. And if you think*

that the King of the Lombards has not altogether made an ill use of his victory, can you, most angelical Princess, dishonour yours by an Action so inhumane? would you imbrue it in the blood of Agelmond, in the death of a Prince who must renounce his life, if you permit him not to be obedient unto your laws.

He spoke with so much vehemency, and beheld *Gilismene* with eyes so brightly sparkling with the fire of his love, that the Princess was in a greater perplexity than before. At first the King of the *Lombards* protestations seem'd a little too bold, and perplexed her: but as she was about to have shewed the marks of her resentment, the soft whispers of equity balanc'd that pretended injury, with the effectual obligations which she owed to so generous a Prince, and perswaded her at length to return this answer. *Sir*, said she, *I still bear in mind with so much acknowledgment, what you have done for our Family; that I am willing to pass by what you have now said to me, on condition that you never speak more of it, or that you never see me more.* Rather, (cried he with a new discomposure in his countenance) rather forget what you tell me I have done, but without intermission, bear in remembrance that *Agelmond* adores you, and that if he could demean himself after such a manner, as was not altogether displeasing, before he was animated with that noble passion that controuls him, there is nothing now which he dares not enterprise, for the divine Princess that reigns in his heart. He is ready to lay down his life for *Gilismene*, he is ready to sacrifice even his honour for the life of that fair Princess.

He had no sooner concluded those words, but *Dorcira* entred, and perceiving the fire that glinted in *Agelmond's* Eyes, she cast her own upon *Gilismene's* face, and there observ'd a disturbance not usual, with a person of her moderation and prudence. At the sight thereof she appeared surpris'd and troubled, but her natural courage quickly ridding her out of that amazement, she interrupted the silence which *Agelmond* and *Gilismene* still observ'd. *Or I am deceived*, (said she to my Master, not tying her self to any exactness of circumstance) *or else your discourse has not been common.* 'Tis very true Madam, replied *Agelmond*, (labouring to recollect himself) *that we are deeply pleas'd with the subject of our discourse, it being as true that Agathyrus's victory gave us the occasion.* I cannot tell (replied she, in language too disobliging to *Gilismene*) *whether it were the Princess that began the discourse of the success of our Arms against Prince Mundisic: but I confess for my part, I should never have chosen the defeat of the Huns, wherewith to entertain the King of the Lombards.* And she had without doubt pursued her piquant beginning, had not the King of the *Sarmatians* interrupted them by coming into the Room, who immediately addressing himself to my Master; *Sir*, said he, *when you came to this Chamber I went to my Brothers, and in regard the humour of that Prince is not altogether conformable to mine, I was desirous in person to let him understand the kindness you had for him, lest he should be the only ingrateful person in a family, where there are none, but those that are ready to justify all the acknowledgment and gratitude which is due to your Generosity.* My Sister seconded my intentions, she spoke as she ought to do of the famous King of the *Lombards*, nor would she leave us to share in the visit wherewith you have honoured us, till she found Prince *Harmaxes*, notwithstanding his wounds and his misfortune, inclin'd to look upon the Great *Agelmond*, rather as a Generous Conquerour than a hateful Enemy.

How prepossessed soever my Master were, he omitted not however to answer, with that deep sence of the obliging words of the *Sarmatian* King which they justly merited, and seeing that *Dorcira* kept him from entertaining the King in particular, he went to *Harmaxes's* Apartment, not only because his prudence seem'd to require him, but also the better to conceal his flame. The Prince of the *Venedians* courteously received him, striving with his natural fierceness out of respect to his Brother: But *Agelmond* taking notice of the constraint, that *Harmaxes* put upon his own humour; took his leave of the Prince, not to keep him any longer under a forced violence: As also that he might have time to examine by himself, how far the severity of *Gilismene's* answer extended. After he had been in the Camp, and given all necessary order in relation to our marching toward the *Vistula*, he retired to his Chamber where he desired to be alone, relying upon the care of *Grimouldus* and mine, as to what concern'd the Army. There it was that the brisk Image of *Gilismene*, took possession of his imagination, he fancied that Princess with all her charms: then reflecting upon the severity of her humour, *Too fair but yet too cruel, Gilismene*, cried he, sighing, *must I be either absolutely deprived of your sight, or must I else forego the pleasure which I tasted, in making known the passion which it has produced in my Soul? why do you not command me rather not to live, than to forbear your presence? I should more gladly obey you, and you would revenge the injury done the Sarmatians more speedily and more notoriously than by an inhumanity, only known to the unfortunate Prince that adores you.* How *Gilismene*, fear you not to in-

penſe a paſſionate King, a King that commands a victorious Army, which you ſtill behold at your Gates? At theſe words he ſtopt'd, and having pauſed a while; Ah fair Princeſs, I ſee too well (ſaid he purſuing his ſad complaint) I ſee that our hearts at the firſt enterview, mutually ſympathiz'd, that they ſoon underſtood to what they were deſtin'd, and that at the ſame time mine ſubmitted to your laws: Yours, through thoſe perſuaſions that made you perceive the power which you had over Agelmond's will, gave you a confidence that renders you cruel, and me miſerable: But reign however, divine Princeſs, reign in the heart of the Lombard King, and never ſuffer a revolt in a place where your power is ſo abſolute. Since you have forbid me to expreſs my ſelf in what concerns my paſſion, I will only make uſe of my tears and ſighs, and only employ my reſpect and diligence. But inſenſible Princeſs, I will ſpeak in that manner and of ſo great ſervices, I will ſpeak with ſuch an entire and abſolute reſignation of my ſelf to your commands, that without doubt you will underſtand my language, and at length perhaps bear me without reluctance. Behold Gilifmene, after what manner I intend to combat your Antipathy, behold the weapons which I will make uſe of againſt you. To morrow I will begin to aſſail your heart, by cauſing my Army to remove, and not being able to abſent my ſelf from that which I adore, return my ſelf to Tamyraque: There will I ſurrender my ſelf up into the power of the King your Father, and that of your fair eyes, thoſe Celeftial Eyes that are more dreadful to me, than all the forces of Sarmatia

In ſhort; We broke up the next day, and the Amorous *Agelmond* being deſirous to ſtruggle with himſelf, in favour of an Army that was ſo dear to him; not only forc'd himſelf to take leave of the Court of *Tamyraque* and to depart; but alſo for two days together, marched at the head of us very chearfully. True it is that at laſt giving over the Combat, with a paſſion that wholly raign'd in his ſoul, he yielded to its imperious paſſion, inſtead of contriving any farther violence to rectify it. Then the tendereſs of that Prince evidently appear'd, as well by the frequent ſighs which it forc'd from his breaſt; as by a ſoft languishment that diſplayed it ſelf in his looks and in his actions. After that, a profound melancholy ſeizing his mind, and oppreſſing his heart ſo much the more, by how much the farther he remov'd from *Gilifmene*, we perceived in an inſtant an alteration in his health, being our ſelves immediately ſurprized with ſadneſs. In ſhort, as our Army kept their eyes fixed upon the King, and that their Prince was really the ſoul of that great body, it was no wonder that *Agelmond's* grief ſoon became the ſorrow of all the *Lombards*: or if they earneſtly fought the cauſe of an alteration ſo ſudden and ſo ſtrange. Every body made their conjectures upon it, when my Maſter mov'd with the love which his Army had for him, and beſide that, not being willing to ſuffer the growth of an evil, that every day gathered new ſtrength; ſent for me into his Cloſet, and after he had earneſtly beheld me; "*Viginizus, ſaid he, I believe you will not be ſurprized, when I ſhall tell you that I paſſionately love the Princeſs of the Sarmatians. The Luſtre of her quality and beauty ſufficiently Authorize my flame, and I talk the leſs of my paſſion, to find whether you approve it, to the end you may ſecond me with your care and aſſiſtance. We muſt therefore return to Tamyraque, ſince it is impoſſible for me to live abſented from the ſight of Gilifmene, which I may the better do in regard the treaty of peace, which we are ſuddenly to begin with the King of the Sarmatians, is a good excuſe for me for having ſent away my Army, without expoſing my proceedings to cenſure. Sir, (answered I without making any wonder at his confeſſion) it is no extraordinary thing that the charms of a fair Princeſs, ſhould have ſome power over the heart of a young King: Or that the ſame heat which carries the valiant King of the Lombards to meet the greateſt of dangers, ſhould render him capable of receiving thoſe impreſſions which a beauty may make. Nor were we ignorant before, what were your thoughts for the Princeſs Gilifmene, for by all that you acted to the advantage of the Sarmatians, it was no difficult thing to ſee what love added at that time to your mutual generoſity, of which you gave every day ſuch ſignal proofs. But Sir, ſhall I preſume to tell your Maſtety, that you too much neglect thoſe cautions which you might take, and that the paſſion which rules over you, deſtroys your hopes by theſe means, whereby it may be you think to eſta bliſh them? What advantages have you not won? You were Maſter of ſeveral places and of a great Army, you carried in your hands the fate of the Royal houſe of Sarmatia, and when the Father of Gilifmene could have recovered neither the Cities which you had taken nor his liberty, but by yeilding the Princeſs his daughter to be Queen of the Lombards; think you he did not believe himſelf very much beholding to Gilifmene's beauty and Agelmond's affection? Could he accuſe a Conquerour for reſtoring his priſoner to his Throne?*"

Upon theſe words, my Maſter fancying to himſelf that he might perhaps have eaſily obtained the poſſeſſion of *Gilifmene*, pleaſed himſelf in the content of ſo ſweet a contemplation.

But

But when the thought of having lost so fair an opportunity had disturbed that pleasure, No, no, Viginizus, said he, *It is not just that we should purchase so great a felicity at so easie a rate; or that the fairest conquest in the world should cost so little.* I agree, Sir, said I, *that the Princess of the Sarmatians is a Princess altogether extraordinary.* But I believe at the same time that your manner of acting has not been so very common neither, nor can I tell whether there be many Princesses that have let go so many advantages as you have quitted; for — But, said he hastily, interrupting me, *are there many Gilifinenes in the world to produce such experiments often?* No, Sir, answered I, *there is but one, no more is there but one Agelmond; so that if few Princesses are comparable to the Sarmatian, few Kings are equal to the valiant King of the Lombards.* Ah, Viginizus, replied he sighing, *how far art thou prepossess'd in favour of me!* But how soon wouldst thou know the difference between the celestial Gilifinene and the Prince that adores her, had you less good will for Agelmond! *Were you your self,* said I, *somewhat less prepossess'd with the love of the Sarmatian Princess, it may be, Sir, you would find that I speak reason, and that you had payed sufficiently for the alliance of a Prince who was your prisoner upon the defeat of his Army.* How, replied he impatiently, *do you think then we were able to pay for a treasure of so infinite a value? Would you that Agelmond, whose humour you know, should have made those pretences out of a false Generosity to receive more considerable? Think you I had been perfectly happy, had I obtain'd the enjoyment of Gilifinene without having mov'd or merited her heart? Or that the only misfortune of the Sarmatians had forced a consent from that beautiful Princess that ought to be always voluntary, and that should proceed only from the meer motion of the inclination?* Ah, Viginizus, *it is that fire which I must labour to kindle in her heart, instead of seeking to obtain that Angelical Princess by interest of State; and to the end I may attain to an end so glorious, I am resolv'd to perish, or else far to outdo whatever you say I have hitherto perform'd: let us go to Tamyraque, whither my fate calls me to what I love, let us go and offer to Gilifinene —* But, Sir, (answered I, not being able to forbear interrupting him) *will you leave your Army? Will you go alone into a City where your Generosity has not yet absolutely obliterated the remembrance of those losses which they sustained by your valour?* As for my Army, said the King, *that shall march under the conduct of Grimoaldus, and take you no care for my person when I am at the Court of a King whose virtue is so well known.* Besides, I know that for my sake he has sent for Agathyrus, who has also sent himself to offer peace to the King of the Huns: though if nothing of this were true, or that I were to meet a certain death at Tamyraque before I could possibly see my Princess, I would rather chuse to run to my destruction so near Gilifinene, than preserve my life by absenting my self from that angelical person. After all this oppose not my resolution, but if you love me prepare to follow me. Those words imposing silence upon me, I was glad of the opportunity to shew how zealously I would endeavour to maintain that precedence with which he had honoured me, making it my only business to rivet that chain which linked me to a Master so great, and so good withal.

The next day the King of the Lombards having bestowed extraordinary Gratuities among the Soldiers, and taken order for every thing that was convenient, committed them to the conduct of Grimoaldus, giving it out that he was going to the general peace, which was true in part, though it was not his particular design. He departed then for the Court of Sarmatia with a fair and numerous Train: whether it were that he thought to make out the pretence of his going by that preparation: or whether it were that he was willing to follow the instigations of a passion, which oftentimes delights as much in Magnificence and State, as it is usually pleas'd to act mysteriously in all its concerns. When we arriv'd at Tamyraque there were none that were not overjoyed at the sight of Agelmond, unless it was Harmaxes; and yet the King instead of sharing in the joy which he had caus'd, felt a new access of discontent. The constraint which he was obliged to put upon himself was more cruel than before, by reason that after an absence he saw to his thinking new charms in his Princess's eyes, or at least he saw them in earnest, at a time when peace and tranquillity had return'd all those Graces to her eyes, which the misfortune of her Country had eclips'd. But notwithstanding all those transportments of love caus'd by that access of Beauty, Agelmond's lips were faithful to the will of Gilifinene, so that the silence which he kept, though insupportable, made up only a part of my Master's sufferings; for Dorcira began to love him much more, and to hate the Princess; and Harmaxes, who had a passion concealed at the bottom of his heart for Gilifinene, of which he was not aware before, knew then by the Competitorship of an illustrious Rival what it was that troubled him, and at the same time conceiv'd an antipathy against the King of the Lombards, and a more strong affection for the Sarmatian Princess. Thus Dorcira and Harmaxes crossed Agelmond's design, though their intentions proceeded from contrary instigations, and they no sooner mutually dis-

covered

covered the thoughts which they severally had for the *Lombard* Prince, but they entered into a strict league, and finding themselves united by interest, as they had ever been by friendship, they promised to act unanimously together, and to have recourse to all sorts of means to support those pretences which their ambition did as little authorise as their love. And another thing was, that besides that the Prince of the *Venedians* really loved *Gilismene*, he looked upon her as the Heiress of *Sarmatia*, since *Agathysus* expos'd himself every day to extraordinary dangers. And as for *Dorcira* she would not have been discontented to have obtain'd a lovely and valiant King for her Spouse.

After they had made an agreement so fatal to the King of the *Lombards*, that unfortunate Prince found *Dorcira* and *Harmaxes* continually in *Gilismene's* presence, and observ'd that they watch'd her in such a manner, that not only he could not entertain the Princess by her self, but he was never in her company but he found himself constrain'd to all the exactness imaginable, and not so much as to look awry. As he was much more sensible of all that concern'd the incomparable *Gilismene*, yet when he perceiv'd that disaffection of *Dorcira* by such evident signs as put him beyond all doubt, he was infinitely discontented at it. He foresaw that the peace and quiet of the Princess would be every foot disturbed by a fierce and cunning wit; and he found himself in a strange perplexity how to carry himself toward *Dorcira*. He considered her Birth, her Sex, and the kindness which she had for him. On the other side he beheld that Princess with all the resentment against a person that hated *Gilismene* that his love could infuse into him; but if he were in this racking torture in relation to *Dorcira*, he saw himself yet more unhappy when he was fully assured of *Harmaxes's* affection. At first he thought that the kindness which the Prince had for *Gilismene*, was but the love of a Kinsman; but taking notice that that pretended friendship was accompanied with vehemency and tenderness, he began to conceive an affection for *Harmaxes*, and suffered the rudeness of his disposition with more moderation. So true it is that fortune intermixes folly with the conduct and prudence of the wisest men. 'Tis very true that this Calm endured not long; for as the same fire that enflames Lovers gives them light, and that it is a difficult thing for them to deceive one another long, *Agelmond* suddenly perceived that *Harmaxes* was his Rival, how surprising soever an engagement of that nature might be. Then diving more deeply into the business out of an ordinary effect of love, he fancied that the Prince of the *Venedians* was not at all disdain'd by *Gilismene*, and to make good this persuasion, he called to mind those proofs of friendship which the Princess had given to a near Kinsman, and upon those he look'd as the marks of a real passion: nor did he attribute the Princess's fierce answer which affected him every moment, to any thing else but to *Gilismene's* being possess'd in favour of *Harmaxes*, and that cruel thought casting despair into his heart, had like to have made him break out extravagantly against his Princess, and in the midst of his troubles to have a slighter opinion of her beauty than it became him. I confess this injustice did not long continue in the heart of the *Lombard* King, and though it might have held out against the frail equity of that Prince, yet the faireyes of *Gilismene* would soon have overcome it. The charming sight of her was so powerful, as sometimes to suspend all my Master's discontents: but that calm soon gave way to those Tempests which the severity of *Gilismene's*, *Harmaxes's* hatred, and *Dorcira's* love immediately rais'd.

While those different causes concurred to render the amorous *Agelmond* unhappy, there were many Councils held about the choice of a fit Minister to be sent to the place of Treaty; and *Dorcira's* Faction proving the more prevalent, a *Sarmatian* nam'd *Alicarsis*, entirely devoted to that Princess, was sent to *Carroduna* upon the Frontiers of *Dacia*, near the Spring of the River *Tyras* (for you know, Sir, there are three or four Cities of that name in *Europe*.) To the satisfaction caus'd by the departure of *Alicarsis* succeeded that which the return of *Agathysus* gave the *Sarmatians*, the whole Court and City were overjoyed once more to see their Prince, even *Harmaxes* himself dissimbled the secret malice which he bore him, and by many testimonies seem'd to partake with the same reality as he ought to have done in the publick rejoicing. I will not repeat the Caresses of the *Sarmatian* King, how he embraced his Son, nor the marks of tenderness which *Gilismene* bestow'd upon her dear and illustrious Brother; yet I may say that there was not ever any thing more remarkable in those publick ceremonies of gladness, than the interview of *Agelmond* and *Agathysus*. Those two Princes being young, handsome, and laden with renown, beheld one another at first with surprize, and having already a high esteem one for the other without any intermixture of jealousy, they appeared not only well satisfied, but by their looks it was evidently seen that their presence confirm'd the high opinion which they had mutually conceived of each other. *Agathysus* believing himself obliged to speak first,

Sir, said he to my Master, I know you have so generously oblig'd the Sarmatians, that if it be true that our losses have gain'd us the amity of the great Agelmond, we are so far from bewailing our misfortunes, that we ought rather prefer them before the greatest success of our Arms, and that the most famous of our Victories was never of that consequence to us as one happy overthrow.

The enamour'd Agelmond was moved with that air wherewith Agathyrus address'd his speech; and having discovered certain lineaments of Gilismene in the face of a Prince that spoke so obligingly to him, he was so highly pleas'd, that not being able to moderate his passion, he resolv'd to give the Generous Agathyrus a glimpse of it. So that after he had both earnestly and pleasingly beheld him, Sir, said he, you judge too favourably of a Stranger, of whom you have yet but a slight knowledge, and I am afraid you will change your opinion when I shall open my heart with all that frankness which your familiarity deserves; and I cannot tell whether you will not find under the pretended liberality of Agelmond the most insatiable ambition that ever was.

Having said those words, he appeared more discompos'd than before; so that instead of proceeding he held his peace at the same instant, fearing to provoke Gilismene by a confession which he thought might prove no less offensive to that severe Princess, than that which she had forbid him already to make. The Sarmatian Prince took notice of Agelmond's discomposure, and though he had a suspicion of the cause, yet he would not put the Lombard King to explain himself, whether it were that so young an acquaintance would not permit him, or that in common prudence he did not think it convenient to speak first of his Sister's Conquests. Thus at this first meeting, and at many others was my Master depriv'd of that ease which he expected; nor did he ever after that declare himself to Agathyrus, but then when he could not help it, as you will find in the rehearsal of those strange revolutions which overwhelm'd him in an abyss of misfortunes.

You must know then, Sir, that the Deputies of the two Kings had no sooner began to confer together, but they drew a general draught of the Treaty, and sent Copies thereof to Tamiraque and Alba Julia. The King of the Sarmatians having receiv'd that which Aliearsis had sent, read it in the presence of Agelmond, Agathyrus and Gilismene: neither Harmaxes nor Dorcira were ambitious to be there, she being desirous by that carelessness to conceal how much she was concern'd in that Negotiation, and the Prince of the Venedians not being able to brook that civility which the King his Brother shewed the King of the Lombards. The principal Articles upon which the Embassadors agreed, were much to this effect.

That both sides should restore all the Towns and Prisoners which they had taken: that King who had gotten most being to pretend to no other advantages than the honour of shewing the greatest marks of Victory and Generosity.

That the River Tyras and the Mountain of Carpathus should be the Limits of each others Dominions.

That the City of Carroduna should be under the protection of the two Kings, and remain Neutral, as a place for general Treaties and Interviews.

That the King of the Lombards shall not only be comprehended in this Alliance, but also in regard he did not enter into the War, but only to assist the King of the Huns, he may insist upon his damages, and send to Carroduna to state his losses.

That to render this important Alliance more firm and lasting, the three Royal Families should mutually bind themselves in a double tye, not only of Friendship but Affinity.

That the Sarmatian King shall give the Princess Gilismene to Prince Mundisic, and the King of the Huns shall give the Princess Theodolinda to Prince Agathyrus.

And that the Sarmatian King shall bestow the Princess Dorcira upon the King of the Lombards, and the King of the Lombards, the Princess Agione to Harmaxes.

So soon as the Sarmatian King had done reading, he fixed his eyes upon all those illustrious persons who had heard him with all the attention that a powerful interest required; and then addressing himself to Prince Agathyrus, Son, said he, I believe you have heard of Theodolinda,

Theodolinda, and that it will not be a trouble to you to consent to our happiness. I know Sir, most certainly, replied Agathyrus, that the Princess of the Huns is a most beautiful Lady, but without I know that she is adored by Prince Wallia; and if he cannot move her heart, Agathyrus will but flatter himself too much, to hope for better success. On the other side, if Wallia have gained the good will of Theodolinda, would you, Sir, break the Chain of so fair an affection: or would you command me to disturb the happiness of two such considerable persons, to be never a jot the more fortunate?

At those words the Sarmatian King paused a while, afterwards turning toward Gilismene, instead of making a reply; "And you Daughter, said he, have you the same reluctance to accept of Mundisic's service? Speak and take all the liberty, that ought to be allowed upon such an occasion. You know Sir, answered she, blushing out of modesty, that my obedience only ought to answer for me; but since your Majesty gives me leave, to declare my thoughts after another manner; I will tell your Majesty, that if you have forgot how Mundisic behav'd himself, toward the Princess of the Goths and Prince Balamir, I humbly beseech your Majesty, that I may revive it in your memory. You may better consider these things (replied the Sarmatian King to Gilismene and Agathyrus) and afterwards we will send our answer to Carroduna.

Concluding these words he gave them a sign to retire, and as soon as they were gone forth of the Room; "Sir, said he to the King of the Lombards, I am very much troubled that the two ways propos'd to unite mine to the family of the King of the Huns, prove altogether fruitless. But Sir, you know we ought not to put a constraint upon the liberties of our children in such cases as these. So that all that I can do out of my gratitude to your self, will be to cause Gilismene to espouse Mundisic. As for Agathyrus, you will excuse me, if I make not use of all my Authority to force his inclinations, and I hope you will consider that he is of a Sex and profession, which tie him not to that exact obedience, that I have reason to expect from the Princess his Sister. But, Sir, I wish you would your self discourse Gilismene in favour of Mundisic: She is a person that has that acknowledgment and esteem for the King of the Lombards, which is altogether due to so great a King and her preserver, and besides that in regard you will intercede for your Ally whom you know, but whom I never saw; your words will be favourably heard as the counsel of a Friend, while mine being only looked upon as the commands of a Father, will not be so pleasing.

This Language surpris'd the enamour'd Agelmoid in such a manner, that not being able to mitigate the anguish which he felt all of a sudden; "Ah Sir, answered he, you could not have given me a worse commission, nor do I believe any person in the world more incapable to discharge it. The Sarmatian King fearing he had displeas'd my Master; "Sir, said he, in taking a Liberty which you have not approved, I not only thought that the King of the Lombards, would have been glad of the opportunity to speak in the behalf of his Confederate, but that I was oblig'd to make you the Judge of Gilismene's reasons, and consequently the witness of my proceedings. Agelmoid being aware of the effect of that discomposure, that had appear'd in his Countenance, labour'd to recollect himself: and being desirous to change the Sarmatian King's opinion; Sir, said he, I answered you in that manner, that you might well think to be strange, only to let you know that I am not fit to propound things, that may not be well taken: For besides that I may be suspected in speaking in the behalf of Mundisic, I think I may be excus'd of that office, and that my Alliance with him does not oblige me to contend with the affections of the Sarmatian Princess.

They would not long continue a discourse, wherein they seem'd to be tyed up by the several courses they were both to follow, so that having taken their leaves of each other, my Master retir'd to contemplate upon this whimsical adventure that had befallen him, and the cruel design that was intended against his love. However he felt some consolation when he call'd to mind, as well what the Sarmatian King had told him concerning Gilismene's thoughts, as the unwillingness which the Princess had testifi'd to espouse Mundisic. But in the mean time that he was taking resolutions conformable to his designs, and that he determin'd openly to oppose all those that should be contriv'd to overturn his hopes, the Sarmatian King apply'd himself to Dorcira, and having shew'd her what concern'd her in the Articles, which had been sent him from Carroduna; Sister, said he, you know the King of the Lombards, you are sensible of his generosity as well as I, and I believe you would not be troubled to be happy in so renowned a husband. Sir (answered she with a kind of satisfaction, which she could not altogether dissemble) you have so great an esteem for that Prince, and we have so much reason to be grateful for his kindness, that there is no ground to imagine why I should murmur at the obedience which I owe your Majesty. I did expect this answer from you, replied

452 PART IX.
the King, and I could wish my Brother were of the same mind as you. Come then dear Sister, let us go and seek to overcome that obstinate antipathy, which he has to the King of the Lombards, and let us no longer suffer, I beseech you, that injustice to abide in the heart of a person so nearly related to us. Sir, replied Dorcira, in regard my Brother and my self have always lived together, with that true confidence in each other, correspondent to the equality of our degree, joy'd to that nearness of blood which ties us together, I know his humour too well, to think there is any taming the fierceness of it, and that instead of persuading him into a compliance, we should but provoke him and but drive him on, to assume upon himself an absolute Authority, to take resolutions quite contrary to those, which he would have embraced of his own proper inclinations. "But, replied the King, what can he do with his haughtiness and his obstinacy? He may displease you by some disobedient language, replied Dorcira, he may be so far outrageous as to offend the King of the Lombards, and therefore in my opinion your Majesty will not do amiss, to avoid both the one and the other. In the mean time I will go and see my Brother, and try to dispose him to a concurrency with us, and I will endeavour to make him understand, how Generous the King of the Lombards has been to him in particular.

After these words leaving Dorcira, he went to the Prince of the Venetians Apartment: and having spoken to him concerning the Articles which I have recited; "I know not Brother, said he, observing him to be somewhat troubled, whether you approve the double Alliance which is to unite the Sarmatians and the Lombards. "Sir, replied Harmaxes, I know that Agelmond is a person of great courage; and therefore 'tis not without reason that you seek to purchase his friendship. But I also believe withal, that he will be sufficiently engaged to our interest by espousing Dorcira, without any necessity of my desiring his Sister, considering what has fallen out already. "Seeing Agione is so very beautiful, replied the King, what will Agelmond think of your refusal? Will he not believe that you have still a hatred against him, though he has acted so obligingly in all things that concern your self. I am a witness in person that he would have given you a visit, but durst not presume to do it, because he apprehended that—— "Ah Sir, (said the fierce Harmaxes interrupting him) that this behaviour of his should conceal such an insufferable pride, under an outward shew of civility. Agelmond did not affect to shew that reservedness which you praise, but to let you understand that he had wounded and overcome me, and that his valour had obtained those advantages, which are oftner got by the favour of fortune than the conduct of Commanders. "You turn all things to a strange sense, cried the King, yet I will overcome your obstinacy and you shall espouse Agione, because I will have it so. You are my King, replied Harmaxes with a confident behaviour, yet I do not believe your power extends farther than that of the Gods, or that it can deprive me of the liberty which they have given me.

He had no sooner uttered these words, but the King beheld him with an angry look, and so leaving him on a sudden; he went to complain of his humour to Dorcira. Well Sister, (said he, continuing his former discourse) and have you found out any way yet, to soften the ruggedness of his disposition. I have been seeking a great while, said she, and having fancied many ways to no purpose, at length I may hit upon one that may be suitable to your design. But I would fain (said she very cunningly, and laying her hand upon her face to hide her blushing) that you would think upon some other your self, that I might not be obliged to tell you that my self, which modesty forbids me to think. Speak, dear Sister, speak, replied he: But Sir, she replied, is there a necessity for me to speak to be plainly understood, and in a business of this nature? Have I not sufficiently expressed my self in saying, that I dare not well presume to express my self? I partly guess your meaning, replied the King, you are willing we should begin to fulfil the Articles, by the disposal of you first: And in truth I see no better way to accomplish our designs. For in short, either Harmaxes will follow your example, or at least he will cease a hatred toward a Prince whom you have made his relation: and if he espouse not the Princess of the Lombards, Agelmond will never have any cause to complain, that we refuse to unite our family to his, when we have already done it in your person. I have no reason then said she, to make any farther dilemma's, for since it is for your satisfaction and for the interest of the State; I shall be very glad to teach the rest of the Royal Family, to obey your Majesties Commands without reluctance. The Sarmatian King was overjoyed at this compliance, redoubled his Careffes, and told the Princess Dorcira that he would endeavour, to understand Agelmond's mind by Agathyrus's means. But Sir, replied she, I beseech you discover not our intentions, yet omit not any thing to accomplish them with success. Let it not be made publick to our disgrace, that the King of the Lombards would not vouchsafe to accept of the Sarmatian King's Alliance. In short, added she moreover, engage neither your honour nor mine, I conjure you, and either speak, not at all, or speak

Speak like a great King. I confess, replied he, that these cautions were not amiss, had I not to deal with Agelmond. But as we know that generous Prince, and know him to be inclin'd to friendship with our Family, we hazard nothing in engaging him by degrees by the persuasions of Agathyrus: and therefore rely altogether upon my care, never fear my wounding a kindness with which I am so well acquainted, and know to be so ready to serve persons of your Sex: and I promise you besides to manage this affair with more exactness than the humour of the Lombard King requires.

After he had thus satisfied Dorcira he left her Apartment, and no sooner was he come to his own, but he sent for the Sarmatian Prince. He gave him charge dextrously to dive into Agelmond's thoughts, in relation to a Princess which was design'd him for a Wife; and to let him know withal, that the Royal House of Sarmatia would be always ready to consent to those Articles which concern'd him. Agathyrus being fully instructed by his Father, went to find out Agelmond, and understanding that he was in the Palace-Garden, he overtook him walking by the Bank of a Rivulet so prepossess'd in his thoughts, that he hardly took notice of the fair stream upon which his eyes were fixed. The Sarmatian Prince accosted him with an obliging aspect, and after he had earnestly beheld his countenance, Sir, said he, the condition wherein I find you, makes me believe that your mind is not well at ease, and perhaps out of a dislike of those Articles concluded at Carroduna in reference to the peace. If that be it, open your heart I beseech you to a Prince who is altogether at your devotion, and who will assure you on the behalf of the Sarmatian King, that the whole Court is more inclin'd to submit to the King of the Lombards will, than to agree to any thing done at Carroduna.

The enamour'd Agelmond hearing those words so frankly and obligingly uttered, looked upon Agathyrus, but in regard he only sigh'd without returning any answer, the generous Prince of the Sarmatians confirm'd in the suspicion which he had already, I see very well, Sir, said he, that I am not deceiv'd in my conjectures, be pleas'd then to speak, and if there be any reason that hinders you from espousing Dorcira, I will deliver you out of that perplexity wherein your own good nature may involve you, in breaking off the Treaty my self, how great soever my desire may be to see you allied to our Family, or whatever satisfaction a Princess so nearly related to me may receive from the consent which she has already given. I protest, Sir, and I take the Gods to witness, at length replied my Master, that Agelmond looks upon the alliance of the Sarmatian King to be the most honourable in the world: but I am constrain'd to declare to you at the same time, that I cannot aspire to that happiness which you propose, that I am an unfortunate person, that Dorcira knows me not at all, and that if she knew the thoughts of my heart, she would soon change those which she has for a Prince, who not being Master of his own heart, is not in a condition to render back that acknowledgment which is due to so fair a Princess.

Those last words and the air wherewith they were uttered putting Agathyrus out of all doubt, Well, Sir, replied he more cheerfully and pleasantly than before, I am free to consent that the King of the Lombards may withstand the beauty and kindness of the Princess Dorcira. But to say the truth, I should not be so well pleas'd should I find him insensible of Gillismene's charms: and on the other side, I should not know how to pardon my own Sister, should she be wanting to purchase us the friendship of the great Agelmond. Ah, Sir, replied my Master, that you should so little know that divine person: Would it might please Heaven, since you will have me disclose the very bottom of my heart, yes, Sir, would it might please the Gods to permit me but to spend my days at her feet, devoted to the service of the Sarmatian King, how happy should I be! Then far from aspiring to that honour to which you would have me presumptuously advance my self, I should content my self without any other claim than that of not being hated by the person whom I adore. I know, replied the Sarmatian Prince, after what manner those persons express themselves, who are prepossess'd with that passion from which I believe you not exempted: so that instead of staying to hear you speak any farther in praise of my Sister, I will go and labour my utmost in your behalf by making known your intentions to the King my Father. How, Sir, replied the enamour'd Agelmond, do you think your Sister will ever pardon me, when she understands that I have—— I believe, said Agathyrus, interrupting him, that she will obey the King my Father, and that if he commands her to give her heart to the King of the Lombards, she will not be troubled to submit to his will. Concluding those words he left my Master, not staying for an answer, and went a good pace to one of the Garden doors that led to the Palace.

Agelmond accompanied him with his eyes, but stayed behind himself, full of the extremity of anguish. His mind was toss'd between hope and fear, and the last of these motions being almost every day the stronger, the distressed Prince felt those torments that were answerable to the importance of his concern. Having walked about for some time in a kind,

of passion, he went to a little Grove, and retired into the thickest part among the Trees, that it might be as long as possible before he heard the news, so strongly was he persuaded that *Gilismene* was above his pretensions. But while his cares increase, he is surpris'd to see from between the Trees, that the King and Prince of *Sarmatia* were looking up and down for him. Immediately he went toward them, labouring in vain to settle his countenance, which when the Father of *Gilismene* perceiv'd, running to him with open Arms, Sir, said he, *I praise the Gods for the love which they have infus'd into your Breast; I give you Gilismene, or to say better, I have provided for my Daughter a renowned Husband, and for my Dominions a formidable Defender.*

The King of the *Lombards* was struck so suddenly with such language, that promised him so great a felicity, at first could neither return an answer, nor believe what I saw, but when he began to give credit to what they most obligingly repeated over and over again, he turned thanks to the Princess's Father with all acknowledgment and submission, yet not sensible of all the joy which so charming a promise ought to have excited in his heart. *Agathysus* who was acquainted with the power of love, and the different effects which it produces, when it is once become absolute in the heart, saw that there wanted yet one word of kindness from *Gilismene's* lips to persuade *Agelmond*, and calm all his disquiet. He whispered his thoughts therefore to the *Sarmatian*, so that my Master was immediately led to the Princess's Apartment. But though he saw himself in the midst of two persons so dear to that admirable person, yet he could not believe himself in safety; he thought that he had not yet deserv'd *Gilismene's* heart by services great enough; he also feared lest the Princess should either refuse the consent which he demanded, or that she should not give it but only in obedience to her Father. But when he came into a Chamber glittering with the lustre of his Princess, his passions became more lively, and he felt a new access of love. Though when he drew near *Gilismene*, he trod with a guilty step, with his eyes all the while fixed upon hers, where he consulted his destiny with all respect imaginable. Immediately the *Sarmatian* King with a satisfied countenance, addressing himself to the Princess, and presenting my Master, *Daughter*, said he, *it is no longer Mundilic that I design for your Husband; I have considered that there is nothing more recommendable than Birth and Valour, yet the fame which he receives from those virtues is eclipsed by the extravagancy of his disposition, I have an affection for you that will not permit me to expose your life to the injustice of that Prince, I have better provided for your felicity; and I am persuaded you will make no dispute, to accomplish my design, when it is my desire with your consent to engage your fortune with that of the Lombard King. You know very well what his virtues are, and we are too much obliged to that great Prince to forget those Actions which all Sarmatia will preserve in eternal remembrance.*

Agelmond would not without doubt have heard all this discourse without interrupting him, but that instead of listening to the *Sarmatian* King, he abandoned all his attention, to behold the Princess: for her part she immediately blush'd, and that there is a certain kind of fear from which Lovers cannot free themselves, my Master examined with all the care that his passion could infuse into him, whether he could observe any signs of displeasure or unwillingness in the effect of *Gilismene's* modesty. After he had sought in vain what he desired not to find, he took notice that the fair eyes of the Princess were in no sort incens'd against him, only he perceiv'd in her looks both fearfulness and sweetness. Then my Prince's heart gave a full reception to his joy, but afterwards he was sensible of more extraordinary transports when he saw that *Gilismene* testified by her respectful behaviour, that her will was altogether agreeable to the will of the *Sarmatian* King. True it is that her modesty had not the confidence to express her mind in any other manner upon such an occasion: but the three Princes who knew her humour, were satisfied with that confession, instead of offering any farther force to the reserv'dness of so prudent a person. The King of the *Lombards* charm'd, and altogether in an extatic, abandoned himself in such a manner to the inspirations of his content, which his good fortune had infus'd into his heart, that notwithstanding the presence of a Father and a Brother, he would have thrown himself at her feet, to have rendered thanks to her whom he loved, but they not permitting him; in a most passionate tone, and with a profound submission, *Divine Princess*, cry'd he, *is it possible that you should consent to the felicity of Agelmond?*

He could only utter those few words; for the passions that hindered him from proceeding, seem'd to stop his mouth, that they might give his eyes the liberty to express themselves more fervently and more feelingly. In short, his eyes sparkled with a new fire, and a mixture of love, hope and joy, enlivening his air and his countenance, his aspect appear'd more amiable and more lofty, as it were taxing *Gilismene* for not having spoken enough in favour of so lovely a Prince.

In the interim the *Sarmatian* King went his way, attended by *Agathyfut*, desirous that the two illustrious Lovers whom he purpos'd to unite in one, might have an entire freedom to discourse their thoughts, intending to tell *Dorcira* himself what had pass'd, to mitigate the circumstances which might inenue the mind of that haughty Princess. The enamour'd *Agelmond* was at first overjoy'd, to find himself alone with *Gilismene*, and as it were already happy by the consent of her Father. Nevertheless when he considered how favourable those two Princes who were gone from him, had been to him; he sigh'd: And by reason of some thoughts not conformable to love, he was constrain'd to with within himself for their sudden return. He perceiv'd that boldness, which their presence had inspir'd into him, began insensibly to wane, and the fear of displeasing *Gilismene* assailing those pleasing passions that possess'd his heart, he beheld the Princess with an Air less confident, and respect producing in a Prince entirely submissive the effect which modestly had produced in the heart of *Gilismene*; they both blush'd, looked down upon the ground and remain'd silent.

Some few minutes after *Agelmond* first adventuring; *Madam*, cry'd he with an amorous utterance, *shall I be assured that you will not oppose my happiness?* Then seeing that *Gilismene* had not yet confidence to speak; *Ah for Heavens sake dear Princess*, (pursued he beholding her with eyes inflam'd) *vouchsafe me an answer, and grudge not a few words I beseech you to a Prince, to whom you are so much desired to grant so great an honour, and so large a share of felicity.* Then *Gilismene* growing less bashful; rear'd up her eyes just so high as to look upon my Master: but not being yet adventurous enough to open her lips; the *Lombard* King thus passionately pursued his protestations. *Madam*, said he, *had I had the presumption to have desired, to be made choice of by the divine Gilismene, I should have rendred my self unworthy of so great an honour: But, too severe Princess, will you remain so cruel, as not to tell the Prince that adores you, that you are not discontented that others have made choice of him, To these he added other words so urging, that the Princess at length recovering her courage; You heard Sir, answer'd she, that I could not forbear to utter my mind, when they spoke to me concerning the Prince of the Huns. But when they presented to me the King of the Lombards, I had nothing then in my memory but my obedience to my Father, and the obligations of the Generous Agelmond. After all this, (said she, laying her hand upon her fair Checks to conceal her blushing) ask no more I beseech you, but permit me to retire to my Closet, for in truth I am involv'd in that perplexity, which I never was acquainted with before.*

Thereupon my Master taking notice that the young Princess endur'd the same pain which those persons suffer that struggle with their inclinations, after a profound reverence took his leave, satistied that he had observ'd both in her looks and and in her language; a certain sweetness that could not proceed but from an instinct of kindness. So soon as he was return'd to his Apartment, he sent for me to let me participate of his joy, and no sooner had he repeated those things which I have rehears'd to your Majesty, but he began to contemplate upon what he had said: And then beholding me very earnestly; *Methinks*, said he, *I am promis'd too much honour: For my part, Viginizus, I cannot yet believe my self to be sure of Gilismene, for notwithstanding the probabilities that persuade me to it, I feel from time to time a certain kind of fear in my heart. To tell you the truth, fortune seems too favourable not to be suspected, and I question whether I am not threated with some misfortune as terrible, as the felicity is sweet that flatters now my hopes.*

While these ominous presages too severely made out by the sequel of my discourse, disquieted the *Lombard* King, the *Sarmatian* King goes to *Dorcira*: He finds her discompos'd, and in deep consultation with *Hirmaxes*, insomuch that to appease the passion of the fierce Princess, he thus address'd himself to her. "Dear Sister, we found that the King of the *Lombards* had all those thoughts of high esteem for your person, that you could reasonably pretend to, and our design had infallibly succeeded, had not that Prince been prepossess'd with an affection, that prov'd an obstacle to our intentions. 'Tis certain that we must not omit to purchase the favour of that great personage, seeing it is only his Alliance, that we seek, and therefore since his affection permits him not to be yours, being already fix'd upon *Gilismene*, I question not but you will be willing, that by the means of a Princess, your so near relation, I may obtain that which I too much wish for, and that you will be satistied since I am contented, understanding that you did not act at our first consultation, but for my interest. I confess Sir, answer'd she, that I studied only to please you, when I gave my consent to espouse *Agelmond*, and if that Prince had not had an insatiable ambition, of which you may see perhaps too soon the sad effects, he would have stoop'd without doubt to a lower prize, and then after you had gain'd him by that means which you aim'd to make use of, you might have chosen for the Princess, some one of the great-

“*est Kings in the world. But I see too well (said she, pursuing her complaint with a kind of malice, that she could not altogether conceal) that I am too sincere hearted, and that I ought to have acted with as much cunning, as those persons that abuse my integrity. Not that I blame you Sir, for I know you are deceived as well as I, and that your power and your diligence is made use of, to discover what Harmaxes and Dorcira think of your proceedings. For in truth, Agelmond and Gilismene did not find us inclin’d to favour their secret correspondencies, so that they are glad to———Princess, (said the King impatiently interrupting her, as not being able to endure the tart expressions of Dorcira) I will have no division in my family, I will have you continue in friendship with Gilismene, and I will have my Brother cease his spleen against Agelmond. How Sir, replied Harmaxes very briskly, do you believe that I have an Antipathy against Agelmond? Did I oppose your intentions when you would have espoused Dorcira, who has the honour to be the daughter of the Sarmatian King and your Majesty’s Sister, to the Son of a Lombard Captain? I agree with you, replied the King very coldly, that Agione was a Captain, and methinks you should not forget that Agelmond is a Captain too. But if that great Prince whose merit had advanc’d him to a Throne, had not had as much generosity after his victories, as valour in fight, I cannot tell whether you would have been in a condition, to have talked so sharply against him. Take the part (replied the Prince of the Venedians blushing) take the part of a Stranger against us, effect a resolution of so much weight, without vouchsafing to see the consequences, despise advice and hearken to no counsel. You may do it, Sir, the Sovereign power is in your own hands: Nevertheless, since Kings are more obliged than their Subjects to mind the future, will you not weigh the importance of what you go about so suddenly to accomplish? For my part I’ll maintain that the marriage of the Princess is of so great consequence, that the marriage of the Prince her Brother, is not to be advis’d upon with so much deliberation. For in short, Agathyrus gives the precedency of course to that person whom he espouses, and all Sarmatia will acknowledge her Queen by consent, when you are gone to that place which is design’d you among the Gods. But if our misfortunes deprive us of the renowned Agathyrus, in those dangers into which his valour precipitates him every moment; think you Sir, that the famous Monarchy which you command, will submit to the Sovereignty of the Lombards? No Sir, the Sarmatians will never acknowledge Agelmond for their King. On the other side if while that ambitious Prince refuses to renounce his Right, we shall see the two Nations which your Majesty endeavours to unite, all together by the Ears, and it may be engaged in a war to their mutual destruction. Very good, replied the King with his first indifferency, and to prevent all these great evils and to make advantage of your foresight, I will suddenly settle Agathyrus in a condition, to furnish me with successors before a new war deprive me of him, and you shall suddenly see the Daughter of Agione, so unworthy Prince Harmaxes, Princess of the Sarmatians.*

After he had spoken these words, he departed out of the Room not staying for an answer, and soon after it was reported all about the Court, that *Agelmond* and *Agathyrus* were to espouse the two Princesses, *Gilismene* and *Agione*. But while the people spoke of nothing but pomp and rejoicing, *Harmaxes* and *Dorcira* left no stone unturn’d to break off these matches, incorporating their hatred with a violent jealousy, which they always had of a Brother that was their Matter: For they looked upon the grandeur of that Prince, with a rage which they laboured to disguise, nor could they endure that he should be beloved, either by the people or by the Army. They found they were not able to raise a sufficient force among the *Venedians* and *Igilions*, (Territories that were allotted for their own proper portions) to sustain a war against a Monarch so puissant, and whose Authority was more absolute than theirs, even in their own Allotments: So that their hopes were but very small. However to leave nothing unattempted, they kept Cabals both in Court and City, they sent to solicit insurrections where they had any favourites and Soldiers, and dispatching Courriers away privately to *Carroduna*, they order’d *Alicarsis* not only to create such niceties and difficulties, as might break off the Treaty; but also to let *Mundisc* understand, that *Agelmond* had treated privately with the King of the *Sarmatians* without his knowledge, and that they had made a league together to ruine the *Huns*, and that to strengthen their union they had agreed, that *Agelmond* should marry *Gilismene*, and *Agathyrus* espouse *Agione*. That however yet he might divert the effects of that confederacy, and that the only way was for the King of the *Huns*, to joyn with the Prince of the *Venedians*. That to begin, *Dorcira* would by her faction disturb the Court at *Tamyrasque*, and that *Mundisc* should enter *Sarmatia*, while *Harmaxes* caused the several Countries to take Arms, and surprisè the King’s forces. That by that means he might take an accommodation, or at least obtain *Gilismene* for *Harmaxes*, and *Agione* for *Mundisc*, whose passion for her was already made publick.

Though there were ground enough to apprehend the consequence of this secret alliance, nevertheless there would have little or no danger ensued, had not Prince *Agathyrus* innocently furnished those concealed Enemies with Arms. He was prepossessed with a violent passion, which for reasons of great importance he would not make known to his Father, inasmuch that he appear'd very much disturbed for some days, and at length resolv'd to follow the motions of his own heart, and to get out of the way, before he should be forced to declare himself in relation to that fair Princess whom he was not in a condition to love. The Evening that preceded his departure, he came to see my Master, and made him a hundred protestations of an inviolable friendship; after that he went to *Gilismene's* Apartment, where he stayed all night: the next morning the Courtiers that were most diligent to attend his rising, not finding him there, and no person being able to tell any certain news of him, all the whole Court was surpris'd with melancholy; and their sadness had questionless increas'd, but that two hours after, an Officer of the Prince brought Letters which his Master had charg'd him to deliver, it is not necessary for me to remember all that they contain'd, it will suffice to let you understand that in that which he directed to *Gilismene*, he conjured the Princess to pacifie the King, and that the Letter which was sent to that afflicted Prince was to this effect.

Prince *Agathyrus* to the King his Lord.

Since you have *Agelmond* in your Family, and peace in your Kingdom, I thought I might take the liberty to absent my self from your Majesty, and that I should not have been wanting in the duty which I owe you, by undertaking a journey which I had not done, (how deeply soever it might concern me) had I thought my presence any way serviceable. But in regard the war with the Huns is at an end, and that the King of the Lombards is truly united to us, I see no Nation that can trouble us, nor why I should not be permitted that curiosity which my age and the peace of *Sarmatia* may excuse, and which other considerations imperiously justify in my heart.

This Letter very much afflicted the *Sarmatian* King, he read it over and over, and though he were accustomed to the absence of the Prince, he could not brook this without being touch'd to the quick. While he complains to *Gilismene*, and labours to comfort himself with *Agelmond*, whom he looked upon as another *Agathyrus*, *Harmaxes* and *Dorcira* triumph at the news. But how extraordinary soever their joy were, they cunningly dissembled it, and fram'd their countenances to the sorrow which they observ'd in the Court. In the mean while they have their meetings, they consult, they promise largely, and liberally bestow; in a word, they attempt all things, and omit nothing. To gain *Agathyrus's* Officers, they delude them with false suggestions, telling them that *Agathyrus* had never left the Court, but only that he could not endure to see a Stranger more powerful than the presumptive Heir of the Crown. That *Agathyrus* did really love *Agelmond*, but that after he had examined his proceedings, he found all his actions suspicious and dangerous, that he took notice that the King of the Lombards had not renounc'd a new Kingdom and little considerable, forsaking his Army which was the support thereof, but only to establish himself more firmly and honourably in *Sarmatia*: that being the only person that sway'd the King's Counsels, and having espous'd his Daughter, it would be no difficult thing for him to rid himself of the only obstacle that could obstruct his pretences.

Harmaxes prething at last with more vehemency than before, Let *Agelmond* return into Germany, cryed he, let him let us alone to live in our own Country according to the Laws of our Ancestors, and if he desires our alliance, the Princess of the *Igylions* shall consent to give him her hand, but if he refuse so great an advantage which we are ready to grant him, shall we not have reason to question his insatiable ambition, that makes him aspire to the very Throne of *Sarmatia*? Shall we not thereby conclude that he return'd to *Tamyrac* only to possess himself of *Gilismene*, destroy *Agathyrus*, and make way for his succession to one of the greatest Kingdoms in Europe? Let us then vigorously oppose such pernicious designs, the interest of our Country presses it, our honour requires it, and the safety of *Agathyrus* commands it. It was only to conceal his flight that the Prince would not that you should follow him. He has left you at *Tamyrac* to strengthen our party, which is his; and while he hastens toward *Tanais* to arm those people which are at his devotion in his own defence, he

would have us make our selves Masters of the Court and Army, which remains upon the Coast of Dacia. By such speeches as these accompanied with great gifts, he engaged the principal Officers to gain their friends, to publish cunningly the pretended reason of *Agathyrfus's* departure, and to perswade those persons that could observe it, that there was a particular friendship between the King of the *Lombards* and the Prince of *Sarmatia*, that if the pretended generosity of *Agelmond* had gained the heart of *Agathyrfus*, that Prince had chang'd his opinion, having discovered the dangerous practises of the Stranger.

At the same time that they put in execution so pernicious an order, the King of the *Lombards* spent the happiest hours of his life with the Princess: For no sooner had he comforted that charming person for the departure of *Agathyrfus*, but he had the satisfaction freely to entertain her with the protestations of his own passion. He discovered to her the violence thereof, how much he had suffered, as well since the fatal moment that he had seen her in the Temple, after the taking of *Tamiraque*; as after the answer with which she had mortally afflicted him. "Divine Princess, said he pursuing his suit, by what offence had I merited that cruel language? What cause had I given you to hate *Agelmond* that ador'd you? He sought even to the very bottom of his heart, if there were any thought that might offend you, but he found it was altogether at your devotion, that his thoughts were all such as he ought to have for those persons that are above the condition of mortals. I beseech you therefore my most dear Princess, permit me to understand that which yet I could never find. Declare your mind, answered she, I conjure you: For in short, if you have given your consent that I shall be yours, you ought to suffer nothing in me that you disapprove. How Madam (she continued with an impatience mix'd with grief) will you not vouchsafe me an answer? Alas Sir, replied she most obligingly, what can I say, if I must speak of nothing but your faults! You may Madam, replied the King of the *Lombards*, discover to me the reason of your hatred, and their impose silence upon me. It may be, replied *Gilismene*, you will not see so many marks of my Aversion, in a behaviour with which you tax me so often, and I believe *Amasia* can tell you some things to that purpose, of which you will have no reason to complain. Ah Princess (said he interrupting her, with a new access of joy both in his heart and countenance) if it be so, permit me to hear the same from your own fair lips.

He urg'd her at length in so passionate a manner, that *Gilismene* at last thus return'd: "Sir, I have been always perswaded that my will ought to depend so absolutely upon my Fathers, that I have laboured to preserve my heart, that it might be at his entire disposal, so that when I took notice that you were about to deprive me of that liberty which I was willing to defend, and that you assail'd it with such a remarkable act of generosity; I borrowed from my reason all the weapons that it could furnish me withal. But when I saw that they were too weak, and that I already perceived in my heart, the first beginnings of an affection that pleaded on your behalf, and acted by consent with your honour; I strove the more with my self, and perhaps not without some trouble: And therefore to deprive you of the means of disturbing the resolution which I had taken, I thought with my self that it behoved me not to hearken to those words, which to tell you true, were terrible to me from the lips of the *Lombard King*, and of which I should have been less apprehensive, had they been uttered by any other Prince, for whom I had not had that acknowledgment and esteem. "If I so rightly conjectured, most incomparable Princess, replied the King of the *Lombards*, when I took you for a Deity, by those sparkling fires that darted from your eyes, the farther proofs which I meet now, will not permit me longer to doubt the truth: For is there any mortal person that could plunge me into an Abyss of torments, and at the same time raise me to a heaven of joy, and oblige me to be thankful for the cause of my sufferings! No, no, Madam, there is nothing but a Goddess could have extracted so much joy out of so much grief, or so delude me that I should mistake a testimony of kindness, for a mark of severity. But fairest Princess, act no more in that manner I beseech you, for I must confess I am so fearful to displeas'e you, and so unapt to believe that I do not still offend you, that I should rather dye for grief upon the first act of your cruelty, before I could find a favourable interpretation of your favour. "Alas Sir, replied she with a most obliging aspect, I shall have no more need to make use of that caution, since the knowledge of my Fathers will, permits me not to resist that innocent affection which I feel in my heart, nor to disoblige the King of the *Lombards*, from shewing me the marks of his.

The enamoured Prince charm'd with those expressions, that gave so much ease to his passion was about to have proceeded, when word was brought both to him and *Gilismene*, that the *Sarmatian King* was taken very ill. They were equally afflicted at the news, and immediately they went both together, to see a Prince that was equally beloved of both.

The

The *Sarmatian* King no sooner saw them enter the Chamber, but he spoke to them with a hearty utterance, to shew them that his indisposition was not considerable, and when they were come near the bed, and that all the croud was retired; “Sir, said he to my Master giving him his hand, look not upon this sickness as an obstruction of my intentions, you shall espouse *Gilismene* within three days, and it *Harmaxes* and *Dorcira*, whose designs I begin to understand, continue obstinate in the opposition of mine, I know how to reduce them to that obedience which they owe me, and to punish those Rebels that have taken their part. *Agelmond* return’d thanks to the Princesses Father, with all the acknowledgment that a passionate Lover, could summon up for so fair a promise: And after he had made him a protestation, to spare neither his pains nor his life, for the interest of a Prince to whom he really believ’d himself so highly engaged, he left the King and Princess full liberty to discourse of the Divisions of their Family.

Not being willing to lose a moment of time in this important conjuncture, he thought fit to wait upon the Prince of the *Venedians*, to let him know that his designs were discovered, and to persuade him to make his peace. He thought to have represented to him, how difficult it was to attempt great things with small forces, and the impossibility which was generally observed in keeping private great confederacies. But if neither reasons nor entreaties, would prevail upon the resolutions of *Harmaxes*, that then the fiery *Agelmond* was equally resolv’d to dispute the enjoyment of *Gilismene* with him, to the last drop of his blood, and that it became him not for a private difference, to make a general quarrel to the disturbance of the whole Kingdom and the Royal Family. That it was enough for the two Rivals only to venture, and that in exposing their lives for the Princess, the object of their Love should become the recompence of their valour. However, these good intentions of his prov’d fruitless, for as he was going to *Harmaxes*, he was inform’d that the Prince was gone out of Town some three or four hours before, and that most probably he was gone a hunting.

Agelmond suspicious of his departure, gave an account thereof to the *Sarmatian* King: and in regard they could not tell precisely in what place to find *Harmaxes*, they dispatched several Messengers several ways to enquire after him, nor was it long undiscovered but that he was gone to the Army, and that it was not to be question’d but that he would gain the Soldiers, during the King’s sickness and *Agathysus*’s absence. The *Sarmatian* King was vex’d and his malady augmented, the Princess was troubled, and *Dorcira* seem’d to be surpris’d and disquieted: But *Agelmond* incens’d against a Prince that was both his Enemy and his Rival, and a Rebel to the father of his Princess, did not stand to make complaints nor to cheer up those that made them. On the contrary, he advis’d the *Sarmatian* King to send fresh orders to the Lieutenant Generals, that had served under *Agathysus*, and not only to forbid them to obey the Prince of the *Venedians*, but at the same time to give them the chief command of the Army, which would be a means to make them refuse *Harmaxes*, to preserve their own Authority more absolute. Nevertheless they knew not upon whom to pitch for the trust of so weighty a commission, in a Court where there were so many different factions, when the hardy *Agelmond*, to signalize his courage, thus bespake the father of *Gilismene*. Sir, said he, I would beg of your Majesty an employment, in the discharge whereof I would contend with *Harmaxes*, did I not believe that the quality of a Stranger, would rather serve as an excuse for the revolters, than to strengthen your party. But Sir, I will go along with those Officers, whom you shall send to the Army, I will look after the execution of your orders, I will exhort the Soldiers to preserve themselves in that fidelity which they owe their Sovereign, and endeavour to reduce the Prince of the *Venedians* to his obedience. If he will be neither mov’d with my persuasions, nor the respects which I shall pay to his birth, he shall try the strength of an Arm that he has but little reason to despise, and perhaps he may find that *Agelmond* will perform that for the *Sarmatian* King, that he never did for the *Huns* or the *Lombards*. The Father of *Gilismene* transported with acknowledgment, threw his Arms about *Agelmond*’s neck, and embracing him with an extraordinary tenderness; The Gods defend me, said he, from suffering *Agelmond* to expose himself to so great a danger. No Sir, you shall not go to an Army, where without doubt *Harmaxes* is by this too powerful, and since you are the object of his hatred, ought I to consent that you should become a victim to his revenge? What must I do then Sir, replied he, shall I remain shut up immur’d within the walls of a City, when your Enemies and mine are Masters of your Army and of the field? Or shall I seem to forsake you, while I go to fetch that succour which I cannot bring time enough? No, it is better for me to go try an Army where the generous Prince of *Sarmatia* has left behind some remains of a good opinion of the *Lombard* King: whither I shall not go without your orders, and the most faithful of your Officers, and where it may be I may not find any one except *Harmaxes*, that dare lift up his Sword against a King.

In short Sir, my Master spake with such a graceful assurance, that the father of *Gilismene* would no more oppose his resolution, so that he went forth of the Chamber, animated with a noble pride that sparkled in his very eyes. Nevertheless that heroick heat soon gave way to a profound melancholy: For while they were preparing all things necessary for a journey of so great importance, the enamoured *Agelmond* visited the beautiful *Gilismene*, from whom he found himself constrained to absent himself. At first that he might shew no ill omens of his enterprize, he laboured to suppress his grief, but strove in vain, for he no sooner came into the Princesses presence, but having sed his eyes with all those beauties of which he was now to take his leave, on a sudden he resolved not to forsake them, and he maintained this change with all the arguments that could flatter his love. He thought that it behoved him not to forsake, neither the Princess nor the sick King, nor the Capital City of the Kingdom. Nor did he want several other reasons, by vertue of that active intention, that furnishes Lovers fancies, which crouded to strengthen his new resolution. But with the same quickness he considered, that if he stayed in *Tamyraque*, *Harmaxes's* authority would increase in the Army, and that consequently his Rival would soon appear before a City, that would certainly submit to his power, rather than undergo a civil war in favour of a stranger, against a Prince of the blood. And therefore determining to follow those motives, that were most suitable to the Conjunction of affairs, and the promise which he had made the King; *I must be gone Madam*, cryed he fully resolved within himself, *yes dear Princess, we must part and I must leave you, but never fear lest my sorrow should enfeeble me, or that our enemies shall gain any advantage thereby. On the contrary, I find it accompanied with a despair that will prove fatal to them, and perhaps they may see themselves punished for separating the King of the Lombards from the divine Princess whom he adores. I would not Sir, however, (answered she with an obliging sadness) that such a generous Prince should abandon himself entirely to the heat of his courage, I would have him expose himself less than he was wont to do, and that he may return with success to the King and to a Princess, that is not a little concern'd both for his life and glory. Ah if it be so, (replied he with an extasie that he could not master) then I shall overcome Harmaxes, for were I alone and be at the head of an Army, I desire but my Arm and my love to triumph over such a Rebel. But alas, added he, how shall I be able to hasten to this victory? how shall I be able to seek it at a distance from my Princess?*

With that he stopped, and perceiving that his passion raised new troubles in his soul, he was afraid of his reason, and therefore out of that generosity that commanded him to withstand his love, he resolved briskly to depart and to leave *Gilismene*, without making any farther reflection: Yet could he not exactly do what he intended, and were I not in the sequel of the discourse, to describe more considerable circumstances of the same nature; I would have less succinctly declared the particulars of this separation, let me only add this, that my Master having manifested to *Gilismene* all the marks of his love and sorrow, was forced at length to take his leave of her, and in point of civility gave a visit to *Dorcira*, with whom he stayed a little while, and discoursed but with a cold indifferency. When he was ready to depart, the *Lombards* that were in *Tamyraque*, took horse; and all the Horse-guard of the *Sarmatian* King were ready to attend him. But *Agelmond* unwilling to weaken the City wherein his Mistress resided, took no more than a hundred *Lombards* and as many *Sarmatians*, leaving the rest after he had recommended the King and Princess to their valour, and exhorted them to an immoveable fidelity in their defence. On the other side the *Sarmatian* King sent after *Agelmond*, those Troops which the Prince refused to take along with him, and having declared his desire that the King of the *Lombards* might have a considerable Convoy, immediately the young Nobility of the Court, that were not tainted with faction, made hast also to overtake him. Thus my Master at the head of two thousand Horse, marched to meet an Army of sixty thousand men with that speed, as if the chief Commander of that vast number, had had as much kindness and affection for him, as he had mortal hatred against him. We found what we sought for sooner than we expected, for the Prince of the *Venedians* desirous to lye near *Tamyraque*, advanced toward us: So that *Agelmond* dispatched away two *Sarmatian* Officers, who had the King's orders in charge, accompanied with several horsemen of their own Nation, to add the more credit to their solicitation. However he linged not far behind, to the end that by countenancing them he might add the greater Authority to their commission, as also if occasion required, to astonish the Rebels by some daring or surprizing Action. The deputies met *Harmaxes*, who rode before the Body of the Army, with about four thousand Horse, the impatient Prince being desirous to reach the City with all expedition, where he pretended to satisfy his love and his ambition. He made no question but that *Tamyraque* would suddenly submit to his summons,

Summons, and if the power of his Faction, the strength which he brought along with him, and the King's sickness made him confident, the great Army that march'd slowly after to execute his commands, gave him yet more certain assurances. He receiv'd *Toxanes* and *Indyfes* (for so were the Deputies nam'd) but in regard they were to deliver him from the King those Letters which only serv'd as a pretence for their journey, they discharged themselves of their Commission as soon as might be, that they might not engage in a dispute which might bring them to any prejudice. *Harmaxes* instead of receiving the King his Brother's Packet, fiercely beholding the *Sarmatians* that presented it, *I shall be suddenly*, said he, *at Tamyraque, where the King may tell me his mind himself. In the mean time tell him that I am advancing toward him at the head of sixty thousand men, who may perhaps be able to proteſt me from the power of a Stranger whom he prefers with ſo much injuſtice.*

Thus he ſent back the Deputies, whom he had ſeiz'd without doubt, but that he durſt not begin a war by a violence that was contrary to the Law of Nations, the conſequence whereof might be dangerous in an Army where *Toxanes* and *Indyfes* had ſo many Friends and Favourites. So ſoon as thoſe two *Sarmatians* were return'd, and had given an account of what had paſſ'd, my Maſter commanded them to wheel about, and put themſelves into the Army, there to confer with the Lieutenant General, to whom they were particularly ſent. While they manage that affair, *Agelmond* makes it his buſineſs to obſerve the ſituation of the Country, among the reſt he ſpies a ſmall ſlip of land where a ſmall number might engage, without danger of being environed; of that Poſt he makes himſelf Maſter, and poſſeſſes it. And in regard he was exactl, inform'd of the diſtance between his Troops and thoſe of *Harmaxes*, he commands his own to take their reſoſe, while he for his part ſtudies all the while how to bring all the danger of the Encounter upon himſelf. To this purpoſe calling a Trumpeter, *Go*, ſaid he, *tell Prince Harmaxes 'tis yet in his power to ſettle a calm in the Dominions of his Brother, and that if his hatred of me hinders him from conſenting to a firm and entire peace, I am ready to break a Lance with him for the deciſion of our differences, without involving in our quarrel ſo many millions of men who are no way intereſted therein.* After that when he thought 'twas time to embattel his Troops, he ranged them in an inſtant, and march'd at the head of them with a fierceneſs in his looks able to inſpire courage into the moſt timorous of Cowards.

On the other hand, the *Venediſh* Prince could not determine what anſwer to make, his natural boldneſs, and the neceſſity that engages a General to purchaſe a good opinion of himſelf in the beginning of a war, perſuaded him to accept the challenge which my Maſter ſent him. But on the other hand, conſidering that he ſhould commit the probable ſucceſs of a Battel to the chance of a particular Combat, he chang'd his opinion, yet not knowing what to reſolve. During this turmoil of his thoughts, the Scouts on both ſides meet, they know one another, make a ſtand and fall to parly. Immediately thoſe of our party upbraid the other for Rebels, they accuſe them of marching againſt their Prince, while theſe that ſided with *Harmaxes* revile the *Sarmatians* that followed *Agelmond* as Traitors to their Country, and for ſerving a Stranger that was an Enemy to it; from words they fell to blows, and fought with an obſtinate fury, as is uſual in a civil war. The victory was for ſome time doubtful, but at length declared it ſelf for us, and in regard that ſome of our party purſued the Enemy, the Prince of the *Venedians* to relieve his own, commanded off ſome few Troops from his main Body, which the King of the *Lombards* obſerving, was forc'd to do the ſame thing; ſo that they prepared for a general Encounter, and the two Generals advanced with the groſs of their Cavalry. The fierce *Agelmond* exhorted his Soldiers in a few words, flies upon his Enemies with an unparallel'd fury, and at one blow cauſing the Sky to ring again, threw to the ground two *Sarmatians* with their Horſes, and all with his Lance that ſhivered in a thouſand pieces, being too weak to ſecond the Arm that gave the ſtroke. Then our undaunted Champion drawing his Sword, throws himſelf among the thickeſt, and ſeeking for *Harmaxes*, calls him by his name, challenges him, and at length eſpying a certain Knight no leſs remarkable for his brave Exploits, than for the Magnificence of his Arms, he made no queſtion but that the hated Rival that oppoſed his felicity was there, he reſolves to cloſe with him, he redoubles his blows, he opens a paſſage for himſelf by his valour that outbrav'd number and reſiſtance, and fought with that fury as every where begat terror. Delay incens'd the haughty *Agelmond*, he ſecretly reproach'd his heart and arm, and at length diſcharged ſo weighty a blow upon the head of his Enemy, that his Helmet ſtruck fire, and the Knight reeling a while in his Saddle, at length fell under his Horſes Belly; however he was ſet upon his feet again in an inſtant by ſome of his own men, when the haughty King ſeeing him in that lamentable condition, inſtead of finiſhing his Victory, turn'd the fury of his Sword another way. His Sword glittered

in his hand like Lightning, and that Lightning is accompanied with a Thunder that kills, overturns, and strikes such a terror, that the Enemy fled, and left us Master of the Field. *Agelmond* fearing lest the Enemies might draw him into the Body of the Army; and taking notice that the slip of Land where they had fought began to widen into a wide and large plain, he stopped the forwardest of his men, presaging by what had happened, that he should prosper in what remain'd. He sent therefore to the two Lieutenant Generals with whom he thought that *Toxanes* and *Indyres* had already conferred. He desires a suspension of Arms for the day, and easily obtains it, for indeed the Agents of the *Sarmatian* King had been favourably receiv'd, and their proposals were the rather listened to, by reason that *Harmaxes* was wounded, and their Vanguard of Horse defeated; insomuch that my Master advances, attended by considerable Knights, and sitting up his Viser that his face might be observ'd, he address'd himself to the Officers that crowd'd to see him, and thus bespake them with much vehemency and Majesty:

Soldiers too much abus'd, too credulous Sarmatians, open your eyes, and consider the crime which you commit in marching against your King, consider the miseries you will fall into by fighting one against another: 'tis a King that speaks to you, and that gives you his advice, 'tis a King that Harmaxes accuses to be the author of all your dissensions, and has questionless made you believe to be a Stranger detestable for his practices. But examine Agelmond's proceedings, and Harmaxes's Actions; consider that a Stranger advises you to obey your King, and to live in peace, that the Prince of the Venedians goes about to kindle a civil war, that he marches against his Brother, against his Country, against the Father of Agathyrus your beloved and renowned General. After all this will you stand to consider which side to take? Rather will you not forsake the high way to Disorder and Rebellion, and chuse the Road that brings you to your Duty and your Honour? They that so much deceive you, as to persuade you to this revolt, under the appearance of a particular quarrel, let them still persuade you, provided that they spare your blood, and that the Prince of the Venedians only will maintain his interest against the King of the Lombards. If he accept the challenge which I make him, I shall be content, and your troubles will be soon at an end. If he refuse it, and to save his own would expose the lives of so many valiant men, I hope you will change your minds, and that an Army furnish'd with so many victories will not obey a Prince so unworthy to command them after he has manifested a cowardise so notorious.

So soon as the King of the *Lombards* had done speaking, there was heard a humming noise quite through the whole Army, when the generous Prince having caressed the principal Officers in a most obliging manner, on a sudden the confused buzzing of voices was accompanied with many cries of *GOD SAVE THE KING*; while the Shouts of all that multitude made the Sky resound, *Harmaxes* recovered out of his Swoon, for it was with him that my Master had encountred, and becoming desperate to see the change which he too well observed, wounded as he was, mounts his Horse, and flying for his safety slips into *Tamyraque*; he is not only received there, but shewing himself to the people, speaking to them, and letting them see his wounds, he mov'd them to compassion, and to take part with him. Thus in regard the King was sick, and the most faithful of his Nobility with us, and that the Princess *Dorcira's* party joyned with *Harmaxes*, that Prince instead of losing an Army gains a City, and becomes Master of his King's life, and of the Princess whom he lov'd. To establish his power he rewards the most forward of his Cabal, and exercises a cruel tyranny over those that he could not move. *Agelmond* is inform'd of his outrages, at the same time seiz'd with grief, and transported with choler, but afterwards comforts himself by the assistance of his reason, and seeing himself absolute, and belov'd in the Army, finds himself in a condition still to vanquish the *Venedian* Prince, and suddenly to restore the *Sarmatian* King and the Princess his Daughter to their liberty. But alas, so far was fortune ready to favour him, that the now displays the most terrible of his persecutions: for in his hasty march towards *Tamyraque*, one of *Gilismene's* Attendants brought him a Letter that fully inform'd us of all those revolutions of which we had heard but imperfectly before. The Letter was to this effect.

The Princess of the *Sarmatians* to the King of the *Lombards*.

BE gone, Sir, be gone from an ingrateful Land where your noble Deeds are so foully requited, abandon a Country where your Generosity is the innocent cause of our misfortunes. It has endangered the life of my Father, it renders me the object of the rebellious peoples hatred: and I fear it will at length hamper you likewise in the snares of our Enemies. For Heaven's sake shun this last misfortune, and be not the cause of more; you may pacifie all things by your departure; and if you are unwilling to absent your self from *Gilismene*, I give you leave to believe that *Gilismene* is no less troubled to be deprived of the sight of the *Lombard King*.

How obliging soever these last words were, they could not mitigate my Master's despair, No, no, cruel Princess, cryed he, I shall not absent my self from you; for notwithstanding your inhumanity, so passionate is my love, that though the whole earth should conspire with *Harmaxes* against the miserable *Agelmond*, I would rather cease to live than forbear to see you.

At those words he felt himself too sensibly oppress'd with grief, he walked in a passion to and fro; and at length addresting himself to the *Sarmatian* that brought the Letter from the Princess, he made such mournful complaints as mov'd all that heard him to compassion. Nevertheless, we took the liberty to speak; as well to justify *Gilismene*, as to persuade *Agelmond*, we represented to him all the miseries of *Tamyraque*; we told him that it was but prudence to give way to the necessity of the times; and that the journey which seem'd so severe, yet promised no unsuccessful consequences. But all these reasons did but the more provoke him against us, he looked upon us as the common Enemy, and was about to have march'd the *Sarmatians* against the *Sarmatians*, and against the Metropolis of their Country, had they not suddenly made use of the only means to avoid those miseries with which that potent Monarchy was threatned. To this purpose there was an interview of both parties propos'd, and the Princess obtain'd her self what no person else could, inasmuch that the day, place and other circumstances were agreed upon. They chose a Bridge which is not above three miles from *Tamyraque*, and a part of the Bridge was beaten down to separate those two renowned personages that were to hold the conference. The enamour'd *Agelmond* was there before the hour appointed. But as soon as the Princess of the *Sarmatians* appear'd, the King of the *Lombards* ran to meet her, transported with the violence of his passion, and as soon as he was come as near as the cruel prevention would permit him, he appeared so forlorn and disquieted, that instead of speaking first, as he had intended, he stood mute and motionless. 'Tis true, that he observing *Gilismene* to be sad, and carelessly habited, he from that received some consolation, which though it were not strong enough to dissipate his disturbance, yet at least it empowered him to interrupt his silence: Is it possible, Madam, said he, that you should command me to absent my self from you? Sir, answered she, they contrain me to it. They contrain you to it, (cryed he impatiently, interrupting her;) Ah, Madam, rather say it is your pleasure: for in short, while *Agelmond* beholds the Beams of Day, and leads an Army, who is so hardy as to controul your will? *Harmaxes*, who commands in the City, replied she, *Harmaxes* who is absolute Master of the life of the King my Father. Do you believe, Madam, said he, that he commits on purpose the attempt which causes your fear? I believe, said she, there is no extremity to which his rage and ambition will not transport him; and yet I must tell you I did not yield at the first blow: for the Gods above know what I have suffered from the people of *Tamyraque*, and the Prince of the *Igylions*, before I consented never to see you again. Never to see me again! (cryed he with an utterance that shewed his despair) Ah, Madam, I will see you again; nor is there any power in the world that shall make me renounce that felicity. Questionless it must not be with my consent that you ever see me more; for I have solemnly engaged, (said she with a doleful aspect) to calm the troubles of *Sarmatia*, and restore the life of my Father to safety and repose. This last promise, said he, does not at all oblige you to performance; for besides that it was forc'd from you against your will, you know I have already receiv'd a promise that prohibits you from making any contrary engagement. Nor will I, replied *Gilismene*, ever give my hand to Prince *Harmaxes*, to whom I have testified with sufficient constancy that I

would prefer death before marriage, though thereupon the re-union of the Royal Family, and the peace of all Sarmatia would have ensued. Yes Sir, for your sake I let the cause of our troubles continue, but it is not necessary for me to recount the particulars, of which you would be too sensibly apprehensive. Nor is it fit for me to discover to you all my affection, at a time when it is for your repose to lose the remembrance of a Princess, whose thoughts you cannot but suspect, and who seems to act by consent with your enemies. How Madam, replied he sighing, can you wish that I should forget you? I cannot tell, said she, whether I can, but I know well that I ought. Ah cruel Princess, said he interrupting her, if you are capable of doing your self that piece of service, then am I still more miserable than ever I thought my self, and the niceness of my heart finds more of inhumanity in your last words, than in all the persecutions of my Enemy: So that now being only to follow the instigations of my despair, I will appear to morrow before these walls that enclose a power which you favour, I will throw to the earth those cruel Barricadoes, that separate you from me, and after I have triumphed over my Rival, and set at liberty a generous Prince, to whom I am so infinitely engaged, I will expire at your feet, if you will not permit me to be the most happy among men.

He pronounced these words with such an aspect, that it was easie to conjecture thence, that he intended what he said, so that *Gilismene* fearing lest *Harmaxes* should be transported, to use more violent extremities, sigh'd, and let fall some tears from her fair eyes. Then looking upon my Master with a languishment, not to be denyed whatever it requested; "I make no question Sir, said she, but that you are in a condition to overcome all your enemies, and to carry whatever Cities you assault: But what success soever you may promise your self from your valour, it can never be possible for you to secure the life of the King my Father. That unfortunate Prince must undergo the fate which is threaten'd him by the Rebels, and Prince *Harmaxes* by his death and the absence of *Agathyrus* shall be looked upon as King of *Sarmatia*, it may be by those very Troops that at present obey your command. I need not tell you after all this that if you march against *Tamyraque*, the people will certainly accuse me of having betrayed them, and being once incens'd that I incited you to my revenge, will without doubt sacrifice me to their fury. "Let me perish first, cryed he in an Agony, Let all things go to ruine first, but let my dear Princess live and live in peace. I will quit *Sarmatia* since it is your pleasure, and in regard it will not be difficult for me to dye, when I find my self condemned to be exiled from your presence, 'twill be easie for *Harmaxes* to dispose of the body of the unfortunate *Agelmond*, that abominated body deprived of his soul because deprived of his love.

Concluding these words and beholding those charming beauties of which he was now upon the point of losing the sight, his eyes fix'd in his head, when I seeing him begin to stagger, ran to uphold him in my Arms. *Gilismene* became so sensible thereof, that the same assistance which I gave him, seem'd almost as seasonable from other hands for her. But that prudent person upbraiding the symptoms of her weakness, and using her utmost endeavour to begin again; "You would then dye Sir, said she, and is it not enough for me to endure every moment the insultings, and bear the threats of my Enemies, but that the King of the *Lombards* himself must afflict me with his despair, and expose me to more cruel persecutions? I confess I have consented not to see you while *Harmaxes* lives, yet that I neither do or ought to desire the death of the Princess. But nature and honour required of me to strive so far against my love, for the safety of my Father and the security of his dominions. Let us then suffer since Heaven ordains it so to be, and instead of impatiently winning the change of our fortune, let us wait that happy resolution, with a constancy that may render us worthy of it. "What not a word of answer, (added she; observing that my Master had not the power to speak) will not your reason permit you to resolve———" Ah Madam, replied he, you must not seek either for reason or resolution in me, for there is nothing in my heart but love and grief.

He could utter no more so was his soul oppress'd with sadness, but *Gilismene* still urging him; "Had you a real kindness for me, you would grant me that tranquillity, as well for my Country as my self, but since you refuse me so obstinately, I must return to a City up in Arms, or———" Stay my Princess, said he interrupting her, I beseech you stay a moment. With that he held his peace, he beheld *Gilismene*, he sigh'd, and at last determining with himself in an instant; "Well Madam, said he, I will obey, I will leave *Sarmatia*, and I will live because you command me.

While he thus spoke, love had the honour to draw some tears from his eyes, and the Princess who observed him, began to be so deeply sensible, that she was afraid she should not be Mistress of her own heart, unless she put an end to a conversation that wrought

so powerfully upon her mind. Upon that she turn'd away, but in regard her motion was slow, she could not forbear to look back upon the unfortunate *Agelmond*, and to give him this Farewel, *Adieu, Generous Prince, preserve the remembrance of a Princess that never will forget you.* My Master quite forlorn and disconsolate, called aloud after her, and conjured *Gilismene* to stay yet a little longer; but as she made a sign to him with her hand to return, *Farewel then*, cryed he, *too beautiful, but too severe and cruel Princess.*

Viginizus was about to have continued his Relation, and to have proceeded to the most moving passages of the Story, but he was interrupted by a great noise and Hurly Burly in the Army, which obliged those illustrious personages to leave the King of *Suevia's* Chamber, and to shew themselves in the Camp where the cause of the tumult required their examination.

The End of the Ninth Part of
PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

The Tenth Part.

BOOK I.



He Princes who had been hearkening to the Story of *Agelmond's* Adventures, were no sooner departed out of the King of *Suevia's* Chamber, but they saw a certain person in pursuit of another, *He shall die, cryed he, the Traitor shall die, nor shall the rescue of any one prevail in his favour, that seeks to rob him from an Arm strengthened with the justest indignation that ever was.* Thus spoke the fell *Briomer*, not only endeavouring to accompany his threats with blows, but, so blind was his rage, to make his way also at the same time through an infinite company of armed men that oppos'd his fury. The implacable Enemy of *Pharamond* understanding that that Prince had sent some propofals to the King of the *Basternes* for the exchange of Prisoners, was got out of his Chamber, notwithstanding his wounds, to break off the Treaty, to the end he might prejudice those persons whom the King of the *Franks* demanded, only because he thought they were belov'd by the unfortunate Vanquisher of *Theobald*: but when he saw and knew a certain Knight that was sent back to *Pharamond*, a particular interest intermixing with that famous aversion that surpris'd all the world, his rage augmented after so strange a manner, that they who favoured not his passion, were hardly safe in the company of that furious *Cimbrian*. True it is that *Balamir* came just in the nick of time, being one of the first that hastened to the Hurly Burly, either in regard it concern'd a Lieutenant-General of the Army of which he had the command, or else because his Generosity delighted in the preservation of any person in misery. *Briomer* no sooner cast his eyes upon the Prince but he grew pale, and fain would have disengag'd himself out of the Crowd, but the fierce *Balamir* taking notice of his behaviour, *Stay, cryed he, and seeing he made no haste to obey him, Stay, said he again with a more commanding utterance, and force me not to make use of the authority which I have receiv'd from your Sovereign Mistress. I acknowledge not, insolently replied he, the power which you have from the Queen of the Cimbrians, while you employ it to the advantage of her Enemies against her most faithful Subjects.*

Upon that contumelious answer the incens'd *Balamir* cast a menacing look upon the outrageous *Briomer*, yet afterwards considering him to be an object unworthy of his anger, *Know, said he, that such violences as these are not permitted during the time of a Treaty. I know, replied the obstinate Cimbrian, that a Treaty suspends acts of Hostility between two Armies, but does not protect a Villain from the punishment of a thousand crimes which he has committed among us. Let him speak, cryed the Prisoner, let him speak on, accured by the presence of Balamir, to whom he address'd himself, so much it concerns you more than you think for, to examine the cause of an assault which I had no reason to have suspected from Briomer's hands,*

bands, considering what has pass'd. Perhaps it may concern you more than your life; at least it will be some satisfaction to you to know it the same time, by the examination of our difference, what the Generous Pharamond has done for the renowned Balamir.

At those words Briomer grew pale a second time; whereupon the Prince of the Huns, who observ'd him, conceiving that he was to omit no part of his Duty at such a time, sent to give Rosamond an account of all that had happened; and turning himself toward a Trumpeter that came from Pharamond upon his dismissal, *Tell the King your Master,* said he, *that it is only to understand how much I am engag'd to his favour that I keep this Prisoner two or three days longer; and that when I have discovered what I seek for, I will conduct him my self to the Camp of the Franks: and in the mean time I shall not fail to take care of a person who, for ought I know, is not indifferently esteem'd by the King that sends to demand him.*

While Balamir spake in this manner, and that the Soldiers gathered from all parts to the noise of the tumult, the Queen of the Cimbrians was not a little vexed to hear of Briomer's outrageous deportment: and in regard that incomparable Princess had a very great value and kindness for Balamir; and that Pharamond was more deeply fix'd in her heart than was convenient for her repose, all the inclinations of her mind contended within her to arrest Briomer, and to leave him to the rigour of the Law if he were convicted of any crime that deserved punishment. But while she was sending for the Captain of her Guards to give him order to execute what she had resolv'd upon, several persons came into her Chamber to speak to her in the behalf of the furious Briomer, whether it were that they were already his Friends, or that they desired to gain his friendship, by preserving him from a disgrace which they knew was not enough to ruine him quite: *Madam,* said one of the principal Officers to Rosamond, *I am too fearful that what you are about to do may prove an action of too much severity; nor can I tell whether the simple accusation of a person already guilty, and already misus'd by Briomer, be enough to force you to that resolution which you have taken against the Lieutenant General of your Armies. You know, Madam, how great an esteem the King your Father had for Briomer, and that the valiant Cimbrian has been very vigilant in your service. You also see, Madam, that he is only accus'd by a Traytor as unworthy to be believ'd, as incapable of fidelity, and who accuses him at a time when he was about to punish him for deserting his Colours, and running away to the most irreconcilable of your Enemies.*

These arguments made some impressi'on in Rosamond's mind, and produced at length a good effect, being seconded by a complement sent to the incomparable Princess from the King of *Suevia*: for that Prince was soon inclin'd to protect a man whose humour was so conformable to his own; so that he having entreated the fair Queen of the *Bohemians* in favour of him, she would not resolve to execute altogether what she had resolv'd, though her heart sollicit'd her to give an entire satisfaction to the two Princes whom she preferr'd before all the world: yet because she resolv'd not to leave altogether unpunish'd a fault of which Balamir had reason to complain, she commanded an Officer of her Guards to seek out Briomer, and take him into custody. The furious *Cimbrian* so soon as he understood his Commission, could not forbear to cast a fierce look upon him, and to lay his hand upon the Hilt of his Sword: and 'tis verily thought his fury would have transported him to a Rebellion, if the strange antipathy which he had for the King of the *Franks*, being the prevailing passion of his Soul, had not staid his Arm, when he considered that his death, which would be the issue of such an attempt, would be the best of tydings that could glad the ear of a Prince whom he hated so mortally. He submitted therefore to the execution of the Queen's commands, but trembling for madness; and the multitude that was gathered together, not only beheld his disgrace with astonishment, but also expected some more extraordinary consequence. The Princes and great personages whom the tumult had either drawn together, or who heard it discours'd of, were differently affect'd in taking some one part, and some another. *Varanez* and all those whom the charms of Rosamond had rendered Rivals to Pharamond and Balamir, were not over glad of a change which they saw likely to happen in the fortune of a *Cimbrian* who had always oppos'd the Prince of the *Huns*, and was the implacable enemy of Pharamond. But *Ambiomer* and all they whose Generosity acted at full liberty, were well contented to see the insolency of a violent man brought down and curbed, which was always quarrelling with some great Prince or other.

So soon as the Officer had executed the command which he had receiv'd from the Queen his Mistress, the multitude presently dispers'd. *Varanez* went up to the Castle to visit that renowned Beauty that reign'd Sovereign Mistress of his heart, notwithstanding the natural fierceness of his disposition: and Balamir went to the King of the *Batarnes*, to return into

his hands, and to recommend at the same time to his care, the prisoner whom he had promised to send back in a few days to Pharamond's Army. As for Ambiorix, he had no sooner turn'd himself about, but he seem'd to be surpris'd to meet the Knight, whom he had dispatched toward Ambiorix (which was the name of the Gaul who had bred him in his infancy) and being impatient to know the cause of his so sudden return; Clagesilius, said he, *what obstacle have you met with in the journey which I sent you? Sir,* (said he presenting him a Servant of Ambiorix) *This Gaul whom you know, will tell you the reason of my sudden return, by informing you that Ambiorix is coming himself, with all the speed that his aged years will permit him, to give you information of a Father, whom you have so long time desired to know.*

Which being confirmed by the Gaul, and repeated with several other circumstances; Ambiorix who was of an excellent disposition, received no small satisfaction; and the cause of his joy was no sooner spread through the whole Camp, where his vertue was generally esteem'd, but he was complemented by all the great personages. Yet how great soever Ambiorix's expectations were, he resolv'd to obey Amalazombha's orders, and to put himself presently at the head of the Turlingiens, unless she would permit him to tarry two or three days for Ambiorix, if it might not be prejudicial to an obliging Queen whom he loved with all. As he was going to the Apartment of that Princess, he perceiv'd himself as it were train'd along to Agione's: And thereupon following the imperious motion of his heart, he was received by the fair Princess of the Lombards, with all the civility which he could expect from a person of her sex and quality. Generous Ambiorix (said she after a most obliging manner) *I make no question but that all the world is glad of that good fortune which is promis'd you, but I assure you, with that frankness which your kindness and your obligations merit, that there are very few that more rejoyce at it than my self.*

These words pronounced by so fair lips, fill'd the soul of Ambiorix with a pleasure that diffus'd something of an unusual novelty into his heart, and as he was about to give such testimonies thereof, as apparently appear'd not to be the effects of a single acknowledgment, some persons of quality entred at the same time, and chang'd the subject of the discourse. Ambiorix also for that reason, in a short time took his leave, and notwithstanding all the joy that fill'd his thoughts, he was not a little vexed that he had not time to answer Agione after that manner which he desired, insomuch that after he had examin'd what kind of discontent it was, he found it to be a symptome of change which his generosity upbraiding, he went to Amalazombha's Chamber, as it were to fortifie his former passion. There he found a Turlingien Officer sent by the General, to give her an account of what concern'd the march of her Army. He told her that Prince Sunnon had made a hundred obliging offers to the Turlingiens, yet that not so much as one among them had accepted them, after all the Compliments that had pass'd, *But Madam* (said Ambiorix so soon as he understood the Turlingien's Errand) *your forces will not be so unwilling to serve me, for besides that they have been successful already in obeying my commands, there is no particular cause that can make them have any aversion to me.*

Those words caus'd Amalazombha to blush, renewing the remembrance of Amalaric, and causing her to meditate upon the strong affection which she had for a Prince, who had deprived her of her only Brother: However having somewhat recollect'd her self; *'Tis not the death of the King of Turlingia,* answer'd she, *that hinders us from receiving the assistance of Prince Sunnon, he is no way guilty of it, nor can I complain of the valour of the King his Brother, as the only cause of my affliction. There are other reasons that perswade me to carry my self circumspectly toward the Brother of Pharamond, and oblige me to shew the same reservedness to Ambiorix. Those reasons which you speak of, Madam,* reply'd he, *were in force while you were in Turlingia, yet they produced not the same effects, which I have observ'd in your Majesty's mind, since your Arrival in this Camp. At that time,* reply'd Amalazombha, *I was under a necessity, that put me out of a condition to consult the law of decency, so exactly as I would have done: But since I have no more enemies that can force me to put the same restraint upon my soul; I am altogether perswaded that it is no longer lawful for me to act with the same liberty. Besides that I have forgot to talk to you concerning Ambiorix, or to tell you that it would be a very unjust thing to send you from a place, where they say that famous Gaul will arrive in few days.* Upon these words pronounced with such a visible indifferency, Ambiorix, a generous contempt about to take possession of his soul, and to drive out of his mind the remainder of an affection so ill bestow'd, and beholding Amalazombha with an aspect that apparently upbraided her disrespect; *I must confess Madam,* reply'd he, *that you have exceedingly oblig'd me, and that you could not speak more engagingly to a person so useless as Ambiorix, of that which concerns the discovery of his birth.*

. Having so said, he took leave of the Queen of the *Turingians*, and the better to meditate upon the behaviour of that Prince, he resolv'd to go forth of the Camp, and to seek a place proper for his intention. In the mean time he revolv'd in his mind, wherein he observ'd a certain negligence, which seem'd to be so injurious and cruel to him, that being no longer Master of his anger; *Unjust Princess*, cryed he, *ingrateful Amalazontha, is it thus that you slight the most important of all the happinesses of my life? I have forgot methinks, do you say, to talk to you of Ambiomex: Is this all the acknowledgment which you have reserved for Ambiomex? How! you not only forget to speak to him of that, for which all the greatest persons in the Army have wish'd him joy, but with such a Methinks, so scornful as not to be endured. You shew that you vouchsafe not so much as to remember whether or no you spake to me, about the clearing the nobility of my birth. Well disobliging Queen, take no more care for what concerns the life of Ambiomex: Forget that he restored you to your Kingdom, forget that he established your Throne with the price of his blood, and to carry your ingratitude yet further, forget also that Ambiomex had a passion for you, which he infinitely preferred before the most important services he ever did you. For my part, insensible Princess, yet perhaps too sensible for some other Lovers good, that is to be more happy than Ambiomex, I will deface all those impressions which the charms of your face had printed in my heart. Or if by accident I come to think upon the chains which for your sake I have worn, I will never call them to my memory but to remember their weight, or to reproach my own faint-heartedness, that wore them so patiently.*

When he had uttered these words, he went forth of the Entrenchments, and took notice that the distance between the two Camps, seem'd rather to unite than separate them, by reason of the pleasing effect of the Treaty then on foot. An infinite number of Soldiers and Officers fill'd the Plain, seeking for one anothers friends, to give some proofs of their kindness, that had given so many of their Animosity. In short, that Plain that had been so fatal to so many thousand men, began to change the Copy of its countenance, and instead of those dreadful sights of horreur, which it had display'd some days before, there was nothing then which offer'd it self to the eye, but objects of divertisement and various marks of reconciliation.

Ambiomex was extremely pleas'd to cast his eyes upon such an infinite multitude of various Nations gathered together, but instead of standing to consider the variety of their Arms, Weapons and Habits, he perceiv'd that the charms of *Amalazontha*, and the beauty of the *Lombard* Princess had begun a Combat in his heart: So that he went a good way into the wood, to the end he might with more convenience examine his thoughts, and know the precise nature thereof. But not being able to find out a place retir'd enough for his purpose, he took notice that those great Trees, which had been the occasion of so much dread and fear, by favouring so many murders and robberies; extended then their fair and large branches but only to afford a cooler Air, and to draw a greater number of people to their delightful shades, so many personages of the highest quality of both Sexes, were to be seen in that part of the wood. Among the rest, *Ambiomex* saw two or three Magnificent Chariots, out of which several Ladies were alighted to walk, in a place where since the Cessation of Arms, their Tranquillity was not disturb'd with the least appearance of fear.

The prepossess'd Knight would not stay, either to behold the women nor to inform himself whether they came from *Cologne* or from the Camp of *Pharamond*. The sight of them wrought only this effect, that it brought to his remembrance that in that wood it was, where he first met the fair Princess of the *Lombards*. After that he thought with himself, that the Heavens had shew'd her to him, to the end her charms might uphold the generous resolution which he had taken, of banishing the Queen of the *Turingians* out of his heart, And at the same time perceiv'd his heart more violently turmoyl'd; *Questionless*, cryed he, *my fate ordains me to break my former Chains, and to put on the fair Agione's fetters, fortune desires at length to be reconcil'd to me, she is upon the point of putting into my hands a happiness which I have sought in vain until this hour. For certain it is, that she had not brought me to Agione's Chariot, but that she intended I should only serve so fair a Princess. More than that, have I not already observ'd more ample marks of acknowledgment from the Sister of Agelmond, than I have found ingratitude in Amalazontha's behaviour? After two such opposite experiments as these, is it lawful for me to take a moments consideration? and ought I not presently to determine to prefer that lovely sweetness, that spreads a secret charm through all the words and actions of the Lombard Princess, before Amalazontha's indifferency.*

At the same instant he thought himself to be no longer subject to the laws of the *Turingian* Queen, so that he impatiently desir'd to see *Agione*, to whom he thought himself behold-ing for the repose which he hop'd to enjoy. But so soon as he was got out of the Wood

upon his return to the Army, that constancy that fortifies the hearts of great men against all sorts of change, caus'd him to make new reflections, and was at length the occasion of new discontents: *Unhappy Ambiomer*, cry'd he sighing, *what is that which makes thee conceive such flattering hopes? Unless they let thee know the person that gave thee life, who can warrant thee that thy Birth is illustrious? Who knows not but that it may obscure the lustre of some Actions that have spread thy name so far? And although the Lombard Princess may testify some kindness for a Dutiful Knight that has faithfully serv'd her, who can assure thee that she will preserve the same thoughts for a presumptuous Lover, the first marks of whose passion may offend her?*

He entred into the Camp with his thoughts turmoiled, and his mind altogether unresolv'd; but as he was going both to visit *Amalazontha* and *Agione*, to fix according to the favour which they shewed him, he understood that they were both with *Albisinda* at the King of *Suevia's* Apartment, whither the Queen of the *Cimbrians* was gone to justify her self to that Prince, in reference to what she had acted against *Briomer*. *Ambiomer* therefore believing that the lustre of those four renowned Beauties might dissipate some part of his melancholy humour; or rather considering that there was more than one Magnet that drew him to that fair Assembly, went to the King of *Suevia's* Apartment, where besides those renowned persons before-mentioned, he found the famous *Balamir*, the Prince of *Persia*, and the King of the *Tongres*. They were talking of news which they had lately receiv'd, that the King of the *Huns* was sending a most magnificent Embassy to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*; which for that the fair Princess possess'd a large Kingdom, and in the choice of a Husband preferred virtue before power, was sent to her to negotiate in favour of *Balamir*. The haughty *Varanez* made his interpretations upon it, with all the heat that a Rival could be thought to make use of upon such an occasion: and the famous *Balamir* not being able to keep within the bounds of his usual moderation when he met with so furious a Competitor, had answered him in such a manner, that there was no small reason to fear the ill consequences of the dispute, when *Ambiomer* entring, brake off the violence of the contest: and *Taxander*, to hinder them from continuing the same, briskly undertook the discourse so soon as decency would permit, and falling upon a subject far different from that which they had left, he began to talk of the renowned *Theon* who was come to the Camp but that very day, together with several other considerable personages whose names they yet knew not. *Do you not acknowledge, Sir*, answered the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, *that Theon is truly worthy the reputation which he has acquir'd? All persons agree that he foretels very justly what he can either hope or fear; and if you would take our part, I cannot tell whether we might not engage you as well as Balamir and Ambiomer, and as well as Varanez also, to visit so great a person, from whom we may learn the knowledge of such things which cannot but be very advantageous to us.* *Madam*, replied he with a courtly aspect, *if my curiosity be not strong enough to carry me to visit Theon, 'tis not so much because I am no where engaged in your Army, as because Adelaiada resides in Pharamond's Camp, whose fair eyes are the only Stars which I must consult to know my good or evil fortune.* *For my part*, replied *Balamir*, taking notice of *Rosamond's* design, *though I expect the sentence of my destiny to be pronounc'd against me by other lips than Theon's, yet would I not forbear to see him, though it were only to know whether his judgment be conformable to those appearances which we have observed in relation to the issue of this famous War that has equally divided all Europe into two parties.* *As it is lawful for every one to follow his own inclinations, or his own interest*, replied *Varanez* very haughtily, *in my opinion I am no way forbid to renounce a curiosity that can be no way profitable for me, let the cause be what it will that nourishes it in my heart.* *In short, the only Heir of the King of Persia is not to seek after other presages of his Grandeur, than those which his Birth affords him, Besides what necessity can there be for a Prince that finds himself undaunted upon all occasions, to perplex his mind with an idle curiosity to know the success of his Enterprises. 'Tis sufficient for him to consult his own courage, to examine the strength of his Forces, and then without farther considering, he may boldly venture upon the most bazardous designs.* *But, Sir*, replied the Queen of the *Turingiens*, *when there is some other passion besides ambition, or the desire of Glory that prevails in the heart; when this passion becomes violent, and is as violently crossed, is it not natural to be somewhat impatient to know the Issue?* *I confess*, answered he, *that such a curiosity as that whereof you speak, does not seem to be very strange or improper.* *But, Madam, it may be you will agree with me, that such a Prince as Varanez is so far above the common sort of men, that he ought not to allow all those things which are not generally condemn'd. I am not at all surpris'd, said Agione, that a Prince who is suddenly to be one of the greatest Monarchs of the earth should so little care to know future things: but I cannot tell but that a Knight of a sublime courage, yet of an uncertain fortune may be*
excus'd

'excus'd for being a little inquisitive what he may hope from his destiny. You may guess by this discourse, pursued *Albisinda*, addressing her self to the famous *Ambiomer*, that the Princess of the Lombards would fain persuade you to visit Theon, and that she would not be troubled to bear him ascertain you some great fortune answerable to your merit and our wishes. For my part, added the Queen of the Cimbrians, I should be very glad to see a high and ample merit rewarded in the person of *Ambiomer*; and that Fortune whom he so often accuses, would be just in favour of him.

She had no sooner concluded those few words, but she kept silence for some time; and questionless *Amalazombia* would have proceeded to have spoken something to the advantage of so valiant a person to whom she was so much beholding, had not *Agelmond* entered—who although he were an afflicted Prince, whose heart was prepossess'd with grief, and that instead of seeking company he carefully avoided it, yet did he not omit to visit personages of his own rank, when decency obliged them thereto: and at such meetings he always locked up close in his heart all those marks of despair that had taken possession of it: and his melancholy being rather accompanied with a soft indisposition than a raging discontent, his humour was ordinarily very taking and sociable.

The King of *Suevia* having receiv'd him according to his merit, gave him an account in few words of the subject of the discourse, and still addressing his speech to him, Sir, said he, hitherto we have seen none but misfortunes the most insupportable, that have turmoiled the great *Agelmond's* life to the utter ruine of his quiet; but in regard that only the most wonderful and terrible blows of fate could not so much as shake your resolution, when you think it convenient we will entreat *Viginizus* to inform us the rest of your unhappy Story, and Theon shall undertake to put an end to your sufferings. Neither Theon's Art, answered the pen-sive King, sighing, nor all the power of nature can put an end to my misfortunes: and since I see the person at liberty whose concernments are so considerable to me as to make me endure the world, so long as my assistance can do her any kindness, there is nothing that can retain me here in this life, but the consolation which I expect of dying suddenly for that party which I have embrac'd. We have too much confidence in your valour, replied the King of *Suevia*, nor are our Enemies so sufficiently formidable that we should fear the misfortune with which you threaten us. Besides that you will be so vigorously seconded, replied the fierce *Varanez*, that you will prove no less a Vanquisher among the Cimbrians, than you have always been at the head of the Lombards. I question not, replied *Agione*, but that so many valiant Princes as are in this Army will fight with all their Generosity for the preservation of an Ally who exposes his life in their quarrel: and I wish to Heaven that they could as well defend him against the cruel enemy which he always carries in his heart. I cannot think, replied *Rosamond*, that so great a personage as the King of the Lombards has need of any other succour than his own reason to triumph over that secret adversary that wages so terrible a war within his Breast. But, replied *Amalazombia* somewhat impatiently, can they have all their reason about them that have such powerful enemies? Ah, Sister, replied the Queen of the Cimbrians, I beseech you do not quote this general excuse, for authentick, of which all people that are fainthearted make use. For my part I am perswaded that reason is never weak in us, but when we are resolved to forsake its assistance, but that on the contrary to render it victorious, we have no more to do but only to take its part.

“ However, Madam, replied the King of *Suevia*, you know that we are to act after a different manner in the behalf of reason, according to the difference of those persons that are to acknowledge her Law, guided also by the variety of accidents that may fall out during the whole course of an indifferent life, 'Tis for that reason, Sir, added he, addressing himself to the King of the Lombards, that we desire that *Viginizus* may finish the Relation, whose beginning we so much admire; and we may know what we have to do, in order to the consolation of a valiant Ally from whom we have so much reason to hope for a powerful assistance: and in regard the unfortunate oft-times receive some kind of ease when we discourse of the subject of their sadness; the afflicted Prince let them know the cause of his despair. The reason the Queens of the Cimbrians and *Turingiens* testified their eager desire to know the most important of his Adventures; and having entreated the Princess *Albisinda* to remember the most remarkable circumstances of which they would put her upon the repetition, they took their leave together with *Agelmond's* Sister, to make use of the liberty they enjoyed of walking forth of the Trenches. However, they were attended on by a numerous Guard, not so much for their security, as out of that respect and honour which was due to persons of their extraordinary Dignity. The King of the *Tongres*, the Princes of *Perfiz* and the *Huns* commanded the Convoy. *Rosamond* was led by *Taxander*, of whom she made choice for so great an Honour, not only by reason of his Royal Dignity, but for fear of kindling a dangerous jealousy in the minds of two such fu-

rious Rivals. While this noble company were going to take the Air beyond the Trenches, *Agelmond* and *Ambiomer* stayed with the King of *Suevia*, as coming last to visit him. But the King of the *Lombards* withdrawing soon after, sent his Esquire to finish the relation, which they had so earnestly entreated. *Viginizus*, who was never better satisfied, than when he was talking of the great actions of the King his Master, soon put himself into a posture to satisfy those Princes that desired his rehearsal, and pursued his Repetition as follows.

The Continuation of the History of Agelmond.

SOON as the King of the *Lombards* had lost the sight of the charming Princess of the *Sarmatians*; *Alas*, (cried he with a mournful utterance) *she is gone*, then instead of saying any more, he turn'd his eyes upon me in a most languishing manner, pausing for some time and sighing, and after that resuming his lamentation; *Let us be gone*, said he, *let us be gone*, *Viginizus*, *let us submit to the divine Gilismene's commands*: And having uttered these few words he came to his Convoy, and without letting the Officers that presently flocked about him understand the success of the conference, he marched toward the Army not having any farther power to speak.

Toxares, *Indyrfes*, and several of the chief Commanders of the Army, kept their eyes fix'd upon his face, to consult the motions of his eyes, and conjecturing by the deep melancholy which they there observed, that some extraordinary accident had happened in *Tamyraque*, they murmured against the Prince of the *Venedians*, and threaten'd to cut in pieces all those Rebels that adhered to his party. *It will be your better way*, replied the King of the *Lombards* sighing, *to quit those thoughts of revenge. There is none but Agelmond who ought to be unfortunate: 'Tis he alone that ought to bear the punishment of Harmaxes's revolt, while he must sacrifice to the quiet the felicity that he had promised himself.*

Then having repeated all that *Gilismene* had told him, concerning the power of the Rebels; *You see*, said he, *the danger wherein your King now is, that King whom you so highly esteem: You see the necessity that compels poor Agelmond to return to his Dominions, and while he renounces all his pretensions and his life, he gives you leave to reunite, and takes away from the Prince of the Venedians, all cause of complaint against a Stranger whom he so mortally hates.* How Sir, replied *Toxares*, shall we be guilty of upholding a hatred, which is but an effect of ingratitude and rebellion? No, no, Sir, pursued *Indyrfes*, we will never commit so foul a piece of treachery, and since we have the power in our hands, if *Harmaxes* refuses to obey his King, his obstinacy must be his ruine, and not the removal of so great a Prince, who has so highly oblig'd the Kingdom. *It shall never be said*, replied my Master, *that Agelmond ever plung'd you into the miseries of a civil war, when it is in his power to keep off the Storm. Rather forsake a miserable wretch, on whom the Heavens visibly display their anger, rather abandon an unfortunate creature, whom your fair Princess abandons her self. She ordains my departure; is it in my power to stay? Can my heart revolt from that divine person whom I adore? But on the other side*, (pursued he sighing, after he had paused upon what he had to say) *ought I to forsake a Country which I cannot but look upon with delight, or rather with a kind of veneration? Can I depart out of a Country where I may every moment see and serve her, and where I have receiv'd such honourable hopes. Yes, yes, it must be so*, said he all of a sudden, *there's no considering since my Princess commands me, being afraid of our Fathers life.*

The chief Leaders of the *Sarmatians*, moved with this Generosity and my Prince's entire resignation of himself to *Gilismene's* will, began to be the more furious against *Harmaxes*, and protested that they would have him in their power in less than three days. "Sir," cried they, we desire no longer time to revenge the injury done you, to give you the possession of our Princess, and to restore the King to his power and dignity. Upon those words the enamour'd Prince, felt a secret joy that surpris'd his heart, and at first his inclination, flattered by the promises of the *Sarmatians*, perswaded him to attend the success of their Enterprize. But he had no sooner reflect'd upon this motion of his heart, but he condemn'd it, and repented of it as of a crime, that contended with that obedience which he had promised. And therefore that he might not be expos'd to hear discourses, that the more pleasing they seem'd to be, were still so much the more dangerous; he resolv'd no longer to defer his departure: So that all the *Lombards* that were in the Army, had orders to march the next day toward their own Country.

He passed the Night in strange disquiet, and before his departure appearing upon a little hillcock where he might be heard by the best part of the Soldiers, he testified to them all the acknowledgment of their kindness that they could expect; he commended their fidelity to their King, and after he had conjured them to preserve their obedience and affection for their King that so well deserved it, he gave all his jewels even to the very Trappings of his horse. After that he gave particular treatments to the principal Officers, he promised them his friendship, assured them of his assistance, and to give them excessive rewards. And as if all that he had done till then, had only been to dispose the *Sarmatians* to lend him a more favourable Ear; when he came to talk of *Gilismene*, he began a discourse after such a manner, as if he had never intended to finish it. For though he addressed himself to persons that knew the Princess, yet he omitted not to describe her to them, such as he had always fancied her in his mind. And his passion ingenious to set forth the praises of that which he admired, persuaded him that to render *Gilismene* the more considerable, it behoved him to describe exactly all her transcendent qualities: So that he had the pleasure to run over part by part the several charms which he adored, and taking notice that the heat that enflamed him, touched the very hearts of the *Sarmatians*; "What my honoured friends, (*pursued he, zealous to perfect the acquisition of their friendship*). will you suffer the Daughter of your King, the Sister of the generous *Agathyrus*, in a word your divine Princess, to be exposed to the Tyranny of her Enemies, and to be exposed for no other reason, but "because she was born with those advantages, that ought to win the esteem and affection of those persons that persecute her? Shall Heaven have bestowed those rare endowments upon her, only to render her unhappy. What though those graces wherewith Heaven has favoured her, cause her to be envied by her nearest relation, shall they not excite in your breasts a veneration, able to protect her from all sorts of violences?"

He pronounced these words after so passionate a manner, that all the Soldiers felt a new access of zeal, and testified by their loud shouts that rent the very Skies, that they would all either perish, or restore their King to his former dignity. This transportation of the Soldiers, filled the heart of *Agelmond* with a secret joy, which for a time suppressed the grief that master'd it. However being passionately in love, and consequently never without fear, he still recommended *Gilismene* to them over and over again, and spoke several things that were altogether needless, lest he should omit any one that might be of advantage. At length, after he had reiterated many things several times over, to make the deeper impression into the memory of the *Sarmatians*, he took horse, but with so many marks of sadness, that there was a universal pensiveness in the Camp, where he was so generally beloved and fear'd. But being so extremely unwilling to leave *Sarmatia*, instead of making haste he made a stop every moment, he sigh'd and turn'd his head with a languishing aspect, but I resolv'd to withstand this dangerous passion, that had overturn'd all the repose of his Soul; I endeavoured to awaken in his heart, those thoughts of love and kindness which he had for his people and his Army: I laboured to renew that affection, of which he had so often given such tender proofs to his Sister, and the more powerfully to move him, I laid before him all that Honour still promised, would he but turn his thoughts toward her. But alas I spoke in vain, for all that I could say made no impression in his heart, which was wholly filled with the image of *Gilismene*: So that, Sir, instead of troubling your Majesty with the story of a journey, wherein there was nothing extraordinary but the grief of an afflicted Lover, I conceive it more pertinent to repeat what happened in *Tamyraque*, while we were Travelling homeward.

Notwithstanding the zeal of some *Sarmatians* faithful to their Prince, *Harmaxes* power increased together with his Brothers indisposition of body, whereby the Princess was soon reduced to a most deplorable condition. She was threatned with the loss of the Prince from whom she had her being, and with the persecutions of a Lover, whose passion was more terrible than the hatred of the most implacable Enemy. In the midst of these misfortunes which she had reason to apprehend, she found her self without any support or consolation: Her illustrious Brother the generous *Agathyrus*, was perhaps in *Asia* upon some design which he had entertained before his departure: And though *Agelmond*, her faithful and disconsolate Brother, removed but slowly from her, yet since it was by her order that he absent-ed himself, his return (considering the troubles that ensued) was looked upon as an effect of inconstancy: to which that incomparable Princess, ought not to have shewed her self subject. In this condition she found no comfort but at the feet of the Altar, and in attending upon the person of the King her father: But when they began to despair of the life of that Prince, she no longer stood to consider but determin'd to send for *Agathyrus*. Not but that same secret Lover when he opened his heart to her, had conjured her never to recal
him:

him: but she made that consideration give way to another more important, believing that the presence of the only Heir to the Crown might produce some happy revolution; so that she concluded at length to write to that person who was most highly concern'd in the change that troubled the Court of *Sarmatia*: but then she found her self at her wits end about the choice of a faithful Officer whom to trust with a Letter of so much confidence. For *Harmaxes* and *Dorcira* had won to their side almost every person that belonged to her Family: so that she was in no small fear lest a packet upon which *Agathyrfus's* life and fortune in a manner depended, should fall into the hands of some of their creatures. At length she saw her self oblig'd to cast her eyes upon *Thyscon*, who was Brother to *Amasia* the best belov'd of all her Maids of Honour, and who had already given her several proofs of her fidelity upon several occasions. For *Thyscon* therefore she sent into her Closet, and after she had well prepar'd him, she gave him the Letter, charging him withal to omit nothing that might persuade *Agathyrfus* to return. In the mean time the Prince of the *Venedians* and the Princess of the *Igylions* lost no time in strengthening their party, and kept such a continual watch upon the actions, words, and very looks of *Gilismene*, that they were soon advertis'd of the private conference in her Closet: and judging thereupon that *Thyscon* could not be put upon any enterprize in a City that was so absolutely in their power, they made no question but that *Gilismene* reduc'd to the utmost extremity had at length sent for *Agathyrfus* or the King of the *Lombards*. So that *Harmaxes* beholding the Princess his Sister, By what means, said he, shall we find out this contrivance, which it so much concerns us to know, and how shall we do to examine a person that we could never gain to our party? There is no studying upon the matter, replied the fierce *Dorcira*, since we have endeavoured fiercely to win *Thyscon* to our side, why may we not kill him out of the way? Is there any necessity for us to examine him, provided we can get into our hands the packet with which *Gilismene* has entrusted him; 'tis sufficient that he die, and for those of our people that way-lay him upon the Road to rid him out of the way, and bring us hither carefully what they shall find about him for information.

Harmaxes approving *Dorcira's* resolution, they chiefly took care how to execute their design; and two days after *Thyscon* having taken the Road toward *Tanais*, was set upon by a Troop of armed Soldiers of the Rebels party. At first he defended his life with an exceeding valour, he felled to the ground two of his Assassins, and wounded *Lycorax* their Captain. But how extraordinary soever his endeavours were, he was forc'd to yield ro number. No sooner was he fallen to the ground, run through and through the body, but *Lycorax* himself search'd the pockets of the faithful and unfortunate *Sarmatian*, and having found the packet, he carried it with all haste to *Dorcira*, triumphing as much in his treachery as if he had won some great victory. The Princess of the *Igylions* very hastily open'd the packet which he presented to her, and was very well satisfied; finding a little Note under *Gilismene's* hands, she presently knew that the Letter was directed to the Prince of the *Sarmatians*, though it had no subscription, and having read it over and over again very attentively, she walked about the Chamber in such a deep contemplation, which sufficiently testified that either she was most highly concern'd in what she had seen, or that she intended to make some other advantage of it more considerable. *Harmaxes* finding her in that condition, looked upon her very much surpris'd. Is it possible, Madam, said he, that you should be melancholy when you have succeeded so prosperously as I understand you have done? I cannot tell, answered she, whether you observe any thing of sadness upon my countenance, but I am sure my heart is very light: and when you have seen, said she, giving him the Princesses Letter, what I have read, you will agree with me that we have an infalible way to triumph over *Gilismene* and *Agelmond* both together.

While she spake in that manner, *Harmaxes* read on very seriously, and in regard he apprehended not presently *Dorcira's* design, and testified as much by his eyes: What, Sir, replied she, do you not take notice that in the Letter which *Gilismene* sends to her Brother, there is not one word that she might not write to the King of the *Lombards*? You may then conjecture that she may recall *Agelmond* as well as the Prince of the *Sarmatians*, and with more probability, in regard the King of the *Lombards* is not so far off, if he be not still in our Territories.

Upon those words *Harmaxes* cast his eyes again upon the Princess's Letter, and having read it, and paus'd a while, he found that *Dorcira* was not deceiv'd; for that *Gilismene* wrote nothing to Prince *Agathyrfus* that she might not have written to the King of the *Lombards*. Thus abusing the intentions of that admirable Princess, they resolv'd to send for *Agelmond*, and to make themselves Masters of his life and fortune. This they might easily do, inasmuch that it was all their care to execute a design wherein they had so great hopes. For the accomplishing whereof they send for *Lycorax*, gave him instructions; then giving him

him *Gilismene's* packet, they sent it with him to the King of the *Lombards*, as if it had come from the Princess, with order to play his part with *Agelmond*, as if he had been sent to the Prince of *Sarmatia* in the unfortunate *Thyfen's* place. *Lycorax* overjoyed to see himself put upon such an extraordinary employment, made all the vows and protestations to *Harmaxes* and *Dorcira* that could be made to confirm their good opinion of his fidelity: and so taking Horse he potted so diligently after us, that he soon overtook the King who mov'd but slowly and unwillingly. So soon as my Master was advertis'd that the pretended Officer of *Gilismene* was come, he perceiv'd no less than two or three violent and contrary passions at one time assailing his heart; Joy and Grief, Hope and Fear assail'd him at the same time: so soon had the only name of that divine Princess rais'd a tumult in his heart that was wholly subjected to her: *Dear Friend*, said he to the Traytor *Lycorax* so soon as he appear'd in his Chamber, *what is our Princess's pleasure? Requires she some new proof of my obedience, having impos'd that cruel tryal to which you see I have submitted?* Sir, answered the dissembling *Sarmatian*, *you will not find the least unwillingness to obey the Princess's desire upon this occasion: for Harmaxes and Dorcira continuing still their persecution, and not restoring peace to Tamyraque according to their promise, force her to break her word with them, and oblige her to call you back to a City where your presence may——* How! said the enamour'd King, interrupting him, *Does my divine Princess recal me? Does she consent that I should see her again? Will she deliver me out of a heap of miseries, wherewith I find my self overwhelmed to raise me to the top of all felicity? Ah, no, no, 'tis impossible: nor do I find my heart capable of flattering it self with a change so happy. I am not to be the Judge of your happiness,* replied the Traytor, *but I am sure you will have no reason to doubt of the good news which I bring you, when you shall have read what the Princess her self has written.*

Concluding those words he presented the King with *Gilismene's* packet, which the enamour'd *Agelmond* having taken and kiss'd with a transportation of joy answerable to the violence of the passion that reign'd in his heart, he greedily open'd it, and read these words that *Gilismene* had sent to *Agathyrus*.

SO odd and unfortunate a change has succeeded your departure, that I find my self constrain'd to recal you, whatever resolution you saw me take to the contrary. Return then I conjure you, Sir, return then to a City where your presence may cause some favourable revolution. Flatter not your self at all, for here the lawful authority groines under the weight of Rebellion. Our Enemies give Laws to disconsolate *Tamyraque*, and you may easily fall under their potent tyranny. Shun not I beseech you this last blow of misfortune; enter only in the night time, nor appear till you have made your party considerable, and in a word follow the advice of the bearer. He is the most faithful person among all my Servants.

Once more I beseech you take care that you be not surpris'd by our Enemies. Consider how terrible you are to them; and that they will leave no stone unturn'd to ruine a Prince whose valour they so well know, and whose anger they have so much cause to fear.

Agelmond transported with joy could not make an end of reading without kissing again those characters written with *Gilismene's* own hand. He was overjoyed to see the care which that fair Princess took of his preservation: he hop'd to be suddenly with her where he might cast himself at her feet, to return her thanks, and to venture in her quarrel a life which he had wholly dedicated to her service: *How am I bound to your kindness, most divine Princess*, cryed he, not being able to utter any more. Then of a sudden making answer to a thousand thoughts that thronged into his Breast; *Is it possible, pursued he, that the most divine Gilismene should vouchsafe to call me back; and commit the defence of her most important concerns to my Arms? What Honours does she intend to heap upon me after the loss of all my hopes? Will she raise me to a felicity that I never could expect? Ah, this is too much happiness at once for one miserable wretch: You are too generous, dear Princess, so that Agelmond has reason to complain in the midst of his good fortune: what is he able to offer to the divine Gilismene? His life, his Dominions are to inconsiderable for this last favour which she hath done him: nay, has he not already devoted his life and his Dominions to his divine Princess.* At those words a noble motion of choler joyning it self to the heat of his love, *Let us flie*, cryed he, *to the assistance of that person whom we love: what can Harmaxes, what can all his party do, when Agelmond fights in the defence of his Princess?*

He would have made himself ready, taken Horse, and been at the same time in *Tamyraque*; yet how eager soever he were to perform all those things which his heart tumultuously inspired into him, he forgate not to testify his acknowledgment to the Traytor *Lycorax*. He gave him all his Jewels which he had at that time at his disposal, and acting

according to that disorder which the excess of his love and joy produc'd, he promis'd the perfidious Villain recompences above measure, and gave him that kind entertainment which was above all his promises, or his presents. After that he gave order to the Army to continue their march, and he himself departed with so much haste, that the *Lombards* seem'd to be all surpris'd, nay, I my self was astonish'd at it, as well as I knew the cause of his precipitation.

We were no sooner upon the great Road to *Tamyraque*, but *Agelmond's* mind seem'd to be still more tormented than before: so that abandoning himself to the violence of his passion, he rode after that desperate rate that he got ground of us every day: *Lycorax* and I changed Horses at every Town where we could without losing time. And I dare safely say without any Romancing, that the enamour'd *Agelmond* rid more way in a few hours, returning to *Gilismene*, than he had done in as many days while he remov'd from her. We began to discover the Towers of the magnificent City of *Tamyraque*, when we understood that the King of *Sarmatia* was dead, and that *Harmaxes's* power was so absolute and so establish'd, that those few persons that stood faithful to the Princess were constrain'd to quit their Houses, to avoid the persecution of the Tyrant. Those fatal tydings griev'd *Agelmond* beyond expression, so that his impatience to be with *Gilismene* as well to comfort as to serve and assist her, caus'd him to redouble the haste which he already made, that notwithstanding the design which we had not to let our selves be seen, we were constrain'd to ride with our Vipers up, only for air. 'Tis true that my Master and I pulled them down when we met with any people who as we thought might know us. But *Lycorax* did not think it necessary to be so cautious to his own inconvenience; so that we were no sooner come within two miles of *Tamyraque*, but a certain Knight of a very comly presence, accompanied with six others, knowing *Lycorax* by his face, presently laying his hand upon his Sword, with a countenance inflam'd with anger, *Ab, Traitor*, cry'd he, *thou shalt die, nor do I make use of this advantage, which I would scorn at another time, but only that I may punish thee the more speedily for thy crimes.*

Concluding these words, he flew upon *Lycorax* with so much violence, and his companions seconded him so vigorously, that my Master had been delivered from that perfidious Villain who was leading him to the brink of a terrible precipice, if his Generosity, seeing him so near a cruel end, had not oppos'd his own happiness by causing him to fight for the author of all his misfortunes. In short, Sir, *Agelmond* not conceiving it for his honour to stand to inform himself of the occasion of a quarrel at such a time as a stronger party than his own assaulted his friends, oblig'd him to defend them; and perhaps not attributing the subject of the quarrel to any other cause than the animosities of the Factions, he took no farther care than only to succour him whom he thought faithful to his Princess; which he did with so much valour and ready activity, that with the two first blows he gave, having slain two of *Lycorax's* enemies, he turn'd to the rest in so terrible a manner, that he either wounded or terrified them all in a short time. When he perceiv'd them in a condition no longer to resist him, he felt the fury of his anger begin to slacken, and addressing himself to the chief of the company with a more moderate fierceness, *Retire*, said he, *if thou wilt not undergo the fate of the most unfortunate of thy companions, and forbear to seek a particular mischief in a general quarrel.*

The unknown *Sarmatian* instead of being obstinate, where he saw his life so much in jeopardy, spurred his Horse forward, yet not being willing to part with *Lycorax* before he had given him some farther testimony of his vexation; for losing the opportunity of his revenge, *Perfidious wretch*, cryed he, *thy ruine is but delayed; for Heaven is too just to raise thee up such defenders always.* But though as he pronounc'd those words, he rode away in very great haste, yet *Lycorax* would fain have pursued the advantage which he then had to have rid himself quite of such an enemy, had not my Master hindered his intention, willing to continue his journey, it being now almost fit time to enter into *Tamyraque*, according to the Princess's orders.

So soon as day-light had given way to so much night as was dark enough to keep us undiscovered, we were conducted to the Palace of the King of the *Sarmatians*, and *Lycorax* led us into an Apartment that looks into the Garden. 'Tis impossible to represent to your imagination after what manner *Agelmond's* heart was mov'd, when he thought himself so near his admir'd *Gilismene*. The enamour'd Prince instead of resting after such a tiresome journey, walked up and down the Chamber, casting his eyes every moment toward the door, in expectation still of some person or other to come and carry him to the Princess; and every moment of delay gave him so much disturbance, that it appeared not only in his eyes, but over all his countenance. At length the King of the *Lombards* having waited long,

fav'd Lycorax enter, and advancing toward him with an aspect that testified his impatience; *Is it not yet time for us to see the Princess,* cryed he. *No Sir,* replied the Traitor, *'tis impossible for me to bring you to her Apartment this evening, for Harmaxes with most of the Sarmatian nobility, are with her treating upon a general accommodation.*

At these words the enamour'd Agelmond blushed, and seem'd very much disturb'd, he could not endure to hear that his Rival should be with his Mistress, nor was he contented that the differences in *Tamyraque*, should be ended by an accommodation, which would secure the Rebels from his just revenge. I do verily believe that the inclinations of his heart were for war, while he aim'd to revenge the affronts put upon *Gilismene*, by a way so conformable to his disposition, besides that he could the higher advance her interest, by signaling in her quarrel that renowned valour, whereof he had given such noble proofs, upon occasions of less importance than that. But reflecting upon his first thoughts he condemn'd them; for preferring the repose of his Princess before all other considerations, he found that he could pardon the Rebels, provided they would return to their obedience. With less trouble he looked upon *Harmaxes's* happiness, imagining that he was present with *Gilismene* for no other reason, but to reestablish the quiet of the Kingdom. But as those persons that violently love, can never remain long in the same calm, he was afraid lest the Prince of the *Venedians* should move *Gilismene's* heart, by means of some remarkable compliance, in surrendering into her hands all the authority which he had usurp'd: so that he could not forbear enquiring of *Lycorax* the particulars of *Harmaxes* and *Gilismene's* interview. *Took you no notice,* said he, *after what manner the Princess received her new Lover, that has given her such strange proofs of his passion? Could she preserve all her moderation entire, when she beheld in her presence her Lover, her Enemy, her Kinsman and her Persecutor? In short tell me Lycorax, did you observe in her divine countenance, either joy or anger, kindness or disdain? Sir,* answered he, *I am not able so subtilly to distinguish between the different passions of his heart, but,* added he according to the instructions which he had received, *yet I could with ease discern that the Princess and Prince Harmaxes beheld one another, with that satisfaction, which it is proper for persons nearly related to have, when they would reunite their families and restore peace to an unsettled Kingdom. This is all I could observe, and for what relates to the visit which you so earnestly desire to give the Princess, I believe that at such a time it will be no less against the rules of decency, than according to the dictates of safety, but that rather Gilismene will come her self to this Apartment, for fear you should be discor'der'd by going to hers.*

Upon a promise so pleasing, the enamour'd Agelmond felt some part of his disquiet to diminish, nor all the night was his rest disturb'd, but only with his impatience to see the promised satisfaction of his hopes: Upon the first appearance of day he made himself ready, and prepared himself to meet that happiness with which his soul had been so sweetly flatter'd. But while he expected that the Traitor *Lycorax* should come and inform him of all things; in came a *Sarmatian* Officer, who no sooner drew near him; *But Sir,* said he, *I am come by order of the Princess, to attend at your Chamber door with twenty more of my company. You have free leave,* answered the King of the *Lombards*, *since it is the Princess that sends you: For I shall never oppose her will which is to me an inviolable law. 'Tis not,* (added he after he had observed the *Sarmatian's* aspect) *but that if it were lawful for me to examine the proceedings of a person whose actions I reverence, I might quarrel at this as something extraordinary. For in short, whatever design the Princess may have, 'twas to little purpose to give you that commission which brought you hither: For if it were to keep me from stirring out of this place, one of her commands should have done more than all your weapons can do. If on the contrary it be for my preservation what need I to fear, what occasion have I of your assistance, if Gilismene be kind to him, that has nothing else to be afraid of but the misfortune of displeasing her? You know Sir,* replied the Officer, *that it is not for me to dive into the Princess's designs: I am only to obey, and to tell you that if I be not deceived, you will be very suddenly better inform'd of her intentions.*

Having so said, he took his station, and while the King of the *Lombards* was seriously musing by himself upon this adventure, in comes *Dorcira* magnificently habited, and glittering with Jewels. *I question not Sir,* (said she after the first complements had pass'd between them) *but that you are surpris'd at this visit, and that you rather expected to see the Princess of the Sarmatians, than the Princess of the Egyptians. I must confess Madam,* replied he very coldly, *that I cannot tell what should be the reason of this honour which I receive, and indeed it is a wonder to me to see a Princess in my Chamber, who perhaps ought not to have known of my being in the Town. Gilismene and Harmaxes,* cunningly she replied, *who sent for you back, did not conceal from me a thing———* *Ab Madam,* said Agelmond interrupting her, *it is not possible that the Princess of the Sarmatians and the Prince of the Venedians, should have advis'd,*

by consent upon this occasion. No, no, Madam, Gilismene would never have recalled me by the advice of my Enemies, and it was rather for the punishment of a Rebel that I was sent for to Tamyraque, than to be sacrificed to the hatred of my Rival. If that confidence, replied Dorcira, would serve for the tranquillity of your mind, I would give you leave to remain entirely undeceiv'd and instead of contending with it, let you wait till the proceedings of the Princess her self alter'd your belief. Till the proceedings of the Princess alter'd my belief, (cryed he with an astonishment mix'd with an extravagant discomposure) How Madam, are you able to say that a Princess so divine, can be capable of actions unworthy of her birth? Who I Sir? I say nothing (said she with an affected reservedness) nor am I ignorant but that all I could say would never be believed, while I spoke of the Princess of the Sarmatians. Ah Madam, replied the enamour'd Prince, speak I beseech you, if it be of Gilismene that you have any thing to say. By what I (perceive replied she with a kind of disdain) the reason that urges me to this discourse, is altogether an obligation to my self, 'tis no matter however, I will speak on since you desire me, but I shall speak with that freedom, which may make you perhaps repent your curiosity, and shew you the difference between mine and the Princess's heart, whom you have always preferred before me.

How great soever were the esteem and veneration, which the passionate King of the Lombards had for the fair Princess of the Sarmatians, he could not hear Dorcira's last words without an extraordinary discomposure, which the dissembling Princess no sooner perceived, but she continued her discourse as follows.

So soon as you were upon your march toward the Vistula, in order to your repassing into Germany, our troubles began, and the fire of civil war brake forth more furiously than before. In a word, Sir, the desolation was so fatal, that the Princess took pity of a City which she highly respect-ed, and perhaps she also looked upon the actions of Harmaxes, rather for proofs of his love than marks of his rebellion. To this purpose she no longer oppos'd the propositions for peace, and being at more liberty to act by reason of your absence, she consented to a treaty, the principal condition whereof you would never have granted. The people desired to joyn Harmaxes and Gilismene together, they could not endure that you should be preferred before a Prince, who was in a probability to be their Sovereign; and the Princess her self, how unresolv'd soever she might be at the beginning, felt at length that the love of her Country prevail'd in her heart, above the kindness which she had for a Stranger, whom she had already banished from her presence.

My Master hearing those words more attentively, beheld Dorcira, while there appear'd in his eyes, that sought for nothing more than some clearer evidence of the truth, the several excesses of love, anger, grief and jealousy. Ye Gods, cryed he, could you suffer that so prodigious an example of inconstancy, should dishonour the fairest piece of all your workmanship. Having spoken these few words he held his peace, standing in a deep study for a while, but the thoughts of esteem which he had for Gilismene, prevailing still in his heart above the disorders that she was going to raise; No no Madam, pursued he, Gilismene is not capable of so strange a piece of infidelity: Nay Madam I will tell you more, it is impossible that a Princess so accomplished, should deport her self after a manner so little conformable to those inclinations, whereof her ordinary proceedings are a continual testimony. You speak reason, coldly replied the dissembling Dorcira, and 'tis I then whom you would persuade without any ground, that you have given over your pretences to the Princess of Sarmatia. 'Tis I whom you would make believe, that Gilismene sent you back to your own Territories, that being ready to marry Harmaxes, she has recalled you, that she has set a guard upon you, to protect from your anger the person who is to be her Spouse, and to confirm the courage of a people, who have already but too well experienced your valour. But, Sir, you must begin to understand that all this is but an illusion, that Gilismene never desired you to quit Sarmatia, nor to return thither again, that she never wrote to you afterwards to draw you into a place, where others might be the controllers of your life and fortune, nor is it true that you see Soldiers at the dore. There is nothing of reality in any thing that has happened to you, nor in any thing that you have seen, 'tis only Dorcira that bewitches your eyes and your imagination.

While she spake in this manner, Agelmond perceived that despair began to take the place of those passions that had turmoy'd his mind. The unfortunate Prince recalled into his memory, all the circumstances, that seem'd to fortifie the discourse of the crafty Dorcira, and fatally assembling whatever could augment his grief, his colour changed after a strange manner. He grew pale, his eyes lost their lively lustre, and after he had fixed them for some time upon the Princess of the Igylious, without being able to make any answer, he sunk down upon a seat that stood nearest him. Dorcira seeing him in that condition, touch'd with some kind of repentance, could not forbear to strick out, and to run to the assistance of the afflicted Prince.

For my own part, seiz'd as much as I was with an affright which I never felt before, I followed the Princess of the *Igylions*, and many of the Officers taking our example, we assisted her most readily and zealously. Nevertheless we laboured at first in vain, for the disconsolate *Agelmond* came not to himself in a long time after, nor that without a double application of remedies. So soon as he was able to discern the difference of the objects, he testified as much as his weakness would permit him, how impatiently he endured our assistance. But when he saw that he could not easily disengage himself, from the diligence of those persons that encompassed him, nor execute the resolution which he had taken, never to survive his misfortune, he acted otherwise than he intended, and with eyes not so full of provocation as languishment, he laboured rather to attract the effects of complaisance, quite contrary to these effects of compassion, which he found so troublesome to him. On the other side, the Princess of the *Igylions* taking notice of the danger, into which she had reduced him by so cruel a relation, was willing to sweeten the lowest part of her discourse, and cunningly to manage the affection of a Prince, whose life she was afraid to hazard. Sir, said she, *what is become of that great courage of yours, of which you have given such eternal proofs? Do you believe that the pretended misfortune which you apprehend so much, can so readily throw you into an abyss of despair, and that you cannot still expect some change of humour in a person, that has already changed quite contrary to so much probability?* "What Sir," said I, will you undergo the torment of a crime which you never committed? "And must *Agelmond* dye," said *Dorcira*, because *Gilismene* proves unfaithful? "Yes Madam," he mull, answered he with a feeble yet passionate utterance, for I declare that I adore the Princess as unfaithful as she is. Not but that I am satisfied and too visibly satisfied in the bloody injury she has done me, but I find withal, that my suspicions are all stifled in their infancy, and that whatever cloudy and froward thoughts rise in my heart against the incomparable *Gilismene*, her bright Image that continually hovers in my thoughts, feathers them like so many mists.

Dorcira was unimaginably enraged at this constancy of *Agelmond*, but politickly dissembling her spite to the end she might be the less suspected, and take her opportunity the better another time; "I am very glad," replied she, that you banish all such thoughts as may disturb your rest, and I will even be gone too, that I may be no farther a trouble to you myself. But Sir, permit me to leave with you such attendants, that may take all the care that may be of your person, till you have recovered your former health, and who in serving you shall obey no other orders but those of *Viginizus*.

As she had concluded these words, and was turning away to go toward the Chamber door; "I protest to you," added she with a positive ingenuity, that I would have concealed those things which it so much concerned you to know, had I thought that my frankness of which I only made use to give you the better satisfaction, would have produced an effect so contrary to my intention. But since it is impossible without so deeply afflicting you, to discover those truths which concern *Gilismene*, I promise you Sir, not to speak a word more of that Princess, but when you shall allow me. I will go yet a little farther, Sir, and to render you a kind office, which I see will be so very acceptable, though you will reap no advantage by it, I will do all that in me lyes to bring hither the Princess herself, to the end you may understand from her mouth, what you have to hope or fear in reference to her favour.

The dissembling *Dorcira* had no sooner made this promise, which she never had any intention to perform, but the enamoured *Agelmond* more vehemently than before; "How much shall I be bound to your kindness," said he, if I may but obtain so great a favour by your means. In the name of the Gods forget not to grant me but this, and if alterward you demand my life as an acknowledgment of so great a benefit, I will surrender it freely, and sacrifice it with joy: For yet once more Madam, I passionately love the Princess of the *Sarmatians*, whatever injury she may have done me, and how unfaithful soever she be, I will adore her to the last gasp of my breath.

Those words did so stagger *Dorcira's* dissimulation, that she could hardly forbear to shew her distast, but being resolved to lay her plots at a great distance, she took her leave without manifesting the least mark, of that cruel jealousy which devoured her heart. When I found I had the Liberty to speak to my Master, with that freedom which I had the honour always to use when I was alone; "Sir," said I, after all this that you have done in consideration of *Gilismene*, after you have———"Ah *Viginizus*," said he hastily interrupting me, keep your self within bounds, and do not cast any reproach upon the *Sarmatian* Princess, for I only permit you to bewail the misfortune of a Master whom you love: For I can never endure that either you or any other person in the world, should fail of your re-

“spect for so divine a person whom I adore, notwithstanding all the proof which I have heard of her inconstancy.

He pronounced these words with such a resolution, his countenance appeared so discomposed, and his health so alter'd; that I durst not presume to open my lips to set forth the injustice which they did him. But on the contrary, that I might deprive him of all occasion of continuing a discourse that so much tormented his mind, I retired out of his presence, and called in the most considerable of the *Sarmatians* that *Dorcira* had left to attend him: for I had some reason to believe that *Agelmond's* wisdom would moderate the transportments of his grief before such persons with whom he had no acquaintance, and after the first instigations of his passion were over, he would become more capable to hear what should be said to fortify his reason against the violence of these commotions that reign'd too tyrannically in his heart. This course that I took, though it were not altogether fruitless, yet did it not contribute a jot more toward the repose of the King of the *Lombards*: for though the Prince did not so much bewail his misfortunes in the presence of the *Sarmatians*, yet the constraint which he put upon himself was but a redoublement of his torment. In short, Sir, the violent agitation of his heart, the heat of his temper, the fire of his youth, and the restless disquiet of his thoughts threw him into a very great fit of sickness, enflaming his blood with that foreign heat that usually contends with the heat of nature. They immediately advis'd *Dorcira* thereof, who was much afflicted at the news. She sent at the same time to visit the King of the *Lombards*, and to tell him, that since she had been the innocent cause of his sickness, she durst not presume to come her self to manifest how sensible she was of the injury she had done. She also sent him Physicians, but such as she had instructed, and who all the while my Master was under cure, omitted no opportunity to speak according to *Dorcira's* intentions.

While the Princess of the *Igylions* thus abus'd the poor King of the *Lombards*, *Harmaxes* as cunningly deceiv'd *Gilismene*: for he no sooner understood that *Agelmond* was sick, but he went to the *Sarmatian* Princess, and after some general discourse, *You have so great an esteem*, said he, *for the King of the Lombards, that I do not wonder you cannot believe his affection to be changed with his fortune. However, true it is that he has turn'd his love toward the Princess Dorcira, finding that you were not in a condition to favour his pretences, should I refuse to grant my consent, which you well know I never will. But, Madam, I am more surpris'd that you should not believe Agelmond to be in this City, nay, in the very Palace, and that he is every day with the Princess of the Igylions: for in short, to disabuse you, I do not much care if I shew you the King of the Lombards, that you may see how strangely you are prejudic'd against a Prince that strives to serve you, and how averse you are to believe those truths which are advantageous to him: if therefore you will send to his Chamber either Amasia, or some other person whom you can trust, you will be soon satisfied, seeing that Agelmond is in no condition to conceal himself being dangerously sick in his Bed.*

This cruel assurance caus'd the Princess of the *Sarmatians* to blush; but after she had paus'd for some minutes, she began with a Majesty that easily conceal'd the troubles of her mind: *Sir*, answered she, *I have several times protested to you, that I should be glad that Agelmond would return to Tamyraque without my consent, that I might be oblig'd never to see him more; but after that, restore the people to their former quiet, and talk no more to me of a Prince that I am willing to forget. How, Madam*, reply'd he, *then you bear Agelmond in your remembrance still, for all his infidelity. Alas, he has too still settled a habitation there,* (reply'd she with a sigh that escap'd from her fair lips) *and since I must openly declare my self to disabuse you altogether, I must acknowledge with that sincerity to which our consanguinity obliges us, that to this hour I have labour'd all to no purpose to banish Agelmond out of my mind; He was so settled in my heart, so established by so many considerable services, by so many marks of affection, by the earnest importunities of a dear Brother: and in a word, by the command of a Father to whom I owed an entire obedience, that I know not whether it be in my power to rase out of my heart that innocent affection which I thought my self oblig'd to grant him. What becomes then,* briskly reply'd *Harmaxes*, *of that great courage wherewith I thought you so amply endowed? That little constancy which you call greatness of courage,* reply'd she, *will serve me to no other end than to hinder me from changing my thoughts for the King of the Lombards, or at least from yielding my heart a second time, if I can at length recover the free disposition of it.*

Upon these words the fierce *Harmaxes* beheld the Princess with eyes enflamed with choler and madness, and though he broke not forth into any extravagancy against her, 'twas not so much through an effect of moderation, as to compass his designs according to those consultations which he had held with the Princess of the *Igylions*: indeed it behov'd him

not to jar with *Gilismene*, for fear of quashing the report that was already spread abroad, that he was to espouse her, on purpose to deceive the King of the *Lombards* with more probability: and therefore stifling the rancour which he carried in his Breat, *Madam*, replied he very cunningly, 'tis most necessary, to the end you may give some satisfaction to the *Sarmatians*, that you should declare that you have now some kind of inclination to render me happy. " Ah Sir, said she interrupting him too discomposedly for so wise a person, that you should so little know *Gilismene*, to believe that she can speak these things which are not in her thoughts. " But *Madam*, impatiently replied he, what is it hinders you from declaring what I desire while you tell the truth? " I have so often toid you, replied *Gilismene*, that methinks you should not labour thus to pluck words out of my mouth, which you know to be altogether unpleasing to your humour, if it be true that you aim at those pretences to which you so often court me.

Concluding these words she was about to go into her Closet and leave *Harmaxes*, but the Prince holding her by the Garment; " How *Madam*, said he, do you not then understand what my design is: You refuse to gratifie a people that adores you, but only with an outward condescension, and will you not consider that I engage you to nothing by those bare promises which I request. I consider, said she, that I am not to betray my own thoughts. " But since your intentions are not evil, and that I am not obliged to contradict you before all the world, you may give out what you think convenient, so long as I open my heart to no other person than *Amasia*, and that I am not compelled to bewail my misfortunes, but only with her alone.

Thus it was that the Prince of the *Venedians* parted from the generous Princess, nevertheless by his countenance and by his discourse, he could not chuse but discover that he had surmounted those obstacles that opposed his happiness. To give the better credit also to the report of his being married, which he was going about to fling abroad, he made a most magnificent preparation, as for some remarkable solemnity the better to prepossess the people: And in regard I had my liberty to go in and out as I would my self, I was the more easily abused, and imposed my own error upon the King of the *Lombards*. In the mean while the Prince's Physicians put me into most terrible frights, they waver'd between hope and fear, and could give me no assurance till after the seventh day of his sickness. At that time nature reinforced her self, and growing more powerful than the distemper, that had almost got the upper hand, gave us symptoms of a favourable change, and made me hope that Heaven would at length restore *Agelmond's* life, as the Guerdon of my Tears and prayers.

The Princess of the *Igylions* went often to visit him, nevertheless she did not entertain him with any thing of discourse that might disturb his thoughts as before, being willing to preserve the person whom she loved, out of hopes that she might obtain him in the end. But when the disconsolate Prince began to recover his health, when he was permitted to talk, and that his weakness having left him, his afflictions only stook by him, he sought after nothing more than to speak to *Gilismene*. He enquired after her of all persons that came near his bed, and I had order my self to try what I could learn concerning the Princess. I was presently toid that she was resolved to marry *Harmaxes*, that her own indisposition of health and the King of the *Lombards* sickness, was the cause that they deterred so magnificent a solemnity. I was displeas'd at the news beyond expression, I ran from place to place and attempted every way to speak to *Gilismene*, and in regard no person was permitted to come into her Chamber, I resolv'd at least to speak to *Amasia*. I waited for her so long in a little Gallery, joyning to the Apartment belonging to the Princess's Maids of honour, that at length I met with her. But so soon as she saw me she blush'd, went into her Chamber, and hastily locked the door after her, which testy behaviour of hers I then attributed to the effect of her shame. But from that day forward it was no less impossible for me to see her, than to speak with *Gilismene*: so that all my pains took no effect, and all the account I could give my Matter, was only of a report that I heard in the City, the most troublesome circumstances whereof I laboured to conceal.

Dorcira, and the persons that attended the King of the *Lombards* by her order, no way thwarted my intentions, but so soon as the passionate Lover had recovered some strength, finding himself but half inform'd of that which most concern'd him in the world, he put us into a very great perplexity, by reason of certain speeches which he uttered. For he determinately averr'd, that he would either see *Gilismene* or dye, then darting from his eyes certain looks that had something of more than ordinary terror; " If they think, continued he, to keep me from the Princess whom I adore, their weak endeavours shall prove all in vain, to hinder *Agelmond*. Though without any Arms but my despair, I will seek *Harmaxes*

“ in the midst of all his numerous Guards, and either die at the points of their Javelins,
 “ or reaching the usurper of my happiness, I will tear out that unjust heart that causes all
 “ the misfortunes of my life.

Then seeing the Princess of the *Igylions* enter the Room, *Wherefore, Madam,* continued he, addressing his speech to her, *wherefore will you not at length to all your other kindnesses add that only favour which may render them profitable to me, and which is the most important of all that I can receive? Wherefore,* added he, *shall I not see the Princess? Or do you think me able to live without seeing her?* Sir, replied the dissembling *Dorcira*, *I have omitted no persuasions to persuade her to give you but one visit, I have entreated Gilismene even to importunity, I have made use of all Harmaxes's credit: in a word, I have left no means unessayed to obtain that which I desire so earnestly: but not to flatter you, Gilismene is inexorable. She is inexorable,* cried he, *Oh, Heavens, what is my crime, that I am thus barbarously dealt withal? If you desire that I should perish, is it not in your power to ruine me? Am I not return'd alone to a City among a million of my Enemies? Is there a necessity that I must taste all the bitterness of that fortune which is prepared for me? And must I be reserv'd for a death so strange and cruel?* *Ab, too charming, but too inhumane Princess,* have you recall'd me only to betray me to the most terrible punishment that ever was endured? *Is this your reception of a Prince that returns only by your orders? Is this your kindness to that Agelmond which the King your Father by your own consent was willing to advance to the sublimest height of his felicity? That Agelmond so often recommended to your ears by the generous Agathyrus? That Agelmond that adores you notwithstanding your infidelity, even at the same time when you overwhelm him with sufferings intolerable?* *Ab,* said he, *it is too much,* endeavouring to raise himself up in his Bed; and as they went about to hinder him in an attempt that seem'd prejudicial to his health, he beheld the persons that stood about him with so terrible an aspect, and so majestic withal, that he fill'd their hearts with fear, and their thoughts with respect, inso-much that there was not any person, unless the Princess of the *Igylions*, who durst lay before him the ill consequences of such an attempt: but the disconsolate Prince immediately interrupting her, *Is there any regard to be had,* cried he, *to a miserable creature that desires to die, and whom they are throwing headlong down a precipice?* “ So far are we
 “ from casting you from the precipice, that in despite of your self we labour to draw you
 “ out of the danger. “ That, replied he, is only to prolong the torments that tear my
 “ heart. But, Sir, replied she, — “ But, Madam, said he, interrupting her again, what
 “ reason is there that I should be thus miserably persecuted? If there be any remembrance
 “ left of that fortunate success which my Arms have obtain'd in *Sarmatia*, and that there
 “ be any desire of being revenged on me for that, let them take it all at once: have I so ill
 “ us'd my Victories, as to deserve thus to be kept in a lingering pain. “ On the contrary,
 “ replied *Dorcira*, we are all ready to confess the acknowledgment which we owe to your
 “ Generosity. “ I beseech you then, Madam, replied *Agelmond*, explain your self, and since
 “ you have been pleas'd to tell me the cause wherefore the Princess sent for me back, let me
 “ also know to what fortune she designs me. “ In few words, replied she, to unfold the Riddle
 “ which you so earnestly desire to understand, I will tell you, that the Princesses of the *Igylions*
 “ and *Sarmatians* preserve a great esteem for the King of the *Lombards*, which will never
 “ let them consent to the loss of such a Prince: I will go farther, Sir, said she, *Harmaxes*
 “ himself no longer hates his Rival, not finding any probability that he will ever be hap-
 “ py to his disadvantage. “ I would he did hate me, cried the enamour'd *Agelmond*, and
 “ that I should come to dispute with him the possession of a heart that has been so solemn-
 “ ly promis'd me. But, Madam, if he hate me not, if he do not desire my death, what is
 “ it that he demands from the King of the *Lombards?* “ His Friendship, and his Alliance,
 “ replied *Dorcira*: But I cannot tell, Sir, so she continued, laying her hand upon her face to
 “ hide her blushes, whether modesty will permit me to declare to you the means which they
 “ would make use of to unite the Royal House of *Sarmatia* to your Family. However,
 “ added she, to give you a hint out of a manifest Generosity I am obliged to make you this
 “ protestation, that all those little offices of kindness which I have rendred you, as well by
 “ their order, as by my own inclination, I have not performed out of any aim to engage
 “ your Gratitude: for I must publicly declare, that a Princess of my humour and incli-
 “ nation would scorn to ascend the most glorious Throne in the world by any indirect
 “ means unworthy of her Birth and Courage. Having made you this ingenuous confession,
 “ which you could not have expected from me, I would willingly be so kind as to leave
 “ you, that I may not give you the trouble of returning an answer upon a subject no way
 “ grateful, if it prove not a greater perplexity. Nevertheless, permit me before I go to re-
 “ quest you that you will be pleas'd to moderate those passions which may hazard your life

“in the least. If you will do that, and observe those instructions which I am obliged to give you, I despair not of bringing the Princess of *Sarmatia* into your company, and to tell you the truth I have thought upon a way that cannot fail.

Those last words having in some measure, recovered my Master out of that astonishment into which the last discourse of *Dorcira* had put him; “Ah generous Princess, *cried he*, labour to obtain me but that one happiness, and doubt not but *Agelmond* will yield to all the proofs of obedience, that can be required to accomplish your most obliging intentions. For your part Madam, I am perswaded that you pretend not to a heart, prepossessed already by another beauty. And though I were not an utter enemy to all dissimulation, think you I would betray the Princess *Dorcira*, after so many kind offices as she has done me. No no, Madam, I shall never be capable of so black a piece of ingratitude, and the only protestation I can make you, without wounding the sincerity whereof I make profession, is that I preserve in my breast all those thoughts of acknowledgment and respect, to which you can pretend. But Madam, *for so he presently went on as if he had done some injury to his Princess*, I am bound to acknowledge at the same time, with that frankness your proceeding merits, that I reserve all my affection for *Gilismene*, and that it is impossible for me to wear any other chains, but those which that unfaithful, yet overcharming Princess imposed upon me, after the taking of *Tamyrasque*.

Dorcira making as if she had been satisfied with that answer, though she were inwardly deeply engaged at it, left the King of the *Lombards* and went to her own Apartment, where she was advertised that the Prince of the *Venedians* impatiently expected her. At first they beheld one another without speaking a word, and with an aspect full of disquiet and shame, but at length *Dorcira* beginning the discourse; “And well Sir, *said she*, have you met with as much obstinacy in the heart of *Gilismene*, as I have met withal in *Agelmond's* constancy? I wish for your satisfaction, *replied he*, that the King of the *Lombards* may be more easily moved than the Princess of the *Sarmatians*. *How*, *said she* interrupting him, *is it possible that a Lady so moderate in outward appearance, can make so stout a resistance as a young Soldier, whose heart is so fiery and passionate? I cannot tell*, *replied he*, *but if you have gained no ground upon the King of the Lombards, I do declare that the Princess of the Sarmatians has not granted me an Inch. I must confess*, *replied Dorcira*, *that Agelmond has still an obstinate love for Gilismene, and it is too true*, continued *Harmaxes*, *that Gilismene cannot hate Agelmond*.

Upon those words they beheld one another again, with a new access of inward malice, and after they had mus'd for some time in a deep silence; *What shall we do then*, *said the Prince of the Venedians*, *shall we always spend our time in vain? There is a necessity of an interview*, *replied the Princess of the Igylians*, *between the King of the Lombards and the Sarmatian Princess, but that they may have no opportunity to clear their mistakes by speaking together, you shall be with Gilismene while I accompany Agelmond; so shall the Princess be perswaded that the King of the Lombards and I are in league together, and Agelmond be brought to believe, that you and Gilismene are inseparable, and perhaps spite and madness will cause that operation in their hearts, which neither the kindnesses we have shewn them, nor all the testimonies of our esteem which we have given them, could ever effect to this hour.* The Prince of the *Venedians* being of the same mind that this last means was to be tryed, they both consulted and agreed upon those cautions, which were to be observed for the accomplishing their design. But in regard they were not assured to labour with more success than before, they parted not till they had fully agreed that if their pains took no effect, they would have recourse unto violence, and regard no other laws but what their resentment should suggest.

To lay the foundations of this new treachery, *Dorcira* went to my Masters Chamber, when the enamoured Prince who thought upon nothing else but *Gilismene*, presently addressed himself in this manner to the Princess of the *Igylians*. *Well Madam*, *said he*, *shall I see the person whom I adore, and have your entreaties obtained the favour which I so passionately desire? You are in so ill a condition to go abroad*, *replied she*, *and the Princess testifies such an aversion to come to your Apartment, that there is no necessity of your being so earnest, after a satisfaction which you cannot enjoy: besides that, not to deceive you, the content which you expect will be attended with that strange disquiet, since you cannot see Gilismene but you must see Harmaxes at the same time, and the joys you will reap to behold a Princess whom you deem so charming, will be overbalanced by the affliction, which the presence of a more prosperous Rival brings along with it. Nor is this all, Sir, for Gilismene will by no means endure that you should speak to her, for I could not obtain what I entreated on your behalf with so much importunity, but upon a condition that I know would appear to you very severe.* “How, *cried he*, can I not see *Gilismene* but in *Harmaxes's* company, and must I see *Gilismene* and not speak to her? “You will never be able, I find, to see her at all, *replied Dorcira with an affected negligence*, and whatever pains I have ta-

“ken to accomplish your most ardent desires, this would be my comfort for having so
 “frankly and willingly laboured to none or little purpose, could I but see my self deliver’d
 “from the trouble that still remains for me to take. So let us talk no more of——
 “Ah Madam (*said he interrupting her in a most passionate manner*) I had rather see the Prin-
 “cess of the *Sarmatians*, without the hopes of enjoying her, I had rather see her in the com-
 “pany of *Harmaxes* and dye for grief, than not see her at all. But Madam, (*added he some*
 “*few minutes after, with an aspect that would have obtained any suit but that which he begged*
 “*for*) is it impossible for me to obtain by means of that diligent mediation of which I have
 “received such obliging testimonies, but one quarter of an hours discourse with that Prin-
 “cess whom I adore? “Sir, *answered she*, I have already told you that it is a thing impossible.
 “*Gilismene* will not stand to hear her self upbraided, nor tye her self to a converse that may
 “give the least suspicion of jealousy to a Prince that is to be her husband: So that of ne-
 “cessity you must either utterly refuse my offer, or accept it upon these conditions only,
 “which she has commanded me to impose upon you. “Well then, *said he sighing*, I will
 “obey *Gilismene*, I submit to her commands how cruel soever, and also I submit thereto
 “with that veneration, which I ought to have for whatever concerns that divine Princess.
 “I will see her then, but Madam, let it be suddenly I conjure you, and refuse not this last
 “favour to a Prince whom you have already so much obliged. “That which you request,
 “*said she*, depends not so much upon the will of *Dorcira*, as upon *Agelmond’s* health, so that
 “as soon as I am assured, that you may without danger walk down into the Garden, I shall
 “endeavour to satisfy your desires.

Thus *Dorcira* left the King of the *Lombards*, upon whom the promise she had made him wrought more effectually than all the Art of the Physicians. While the enamoured *Agelmond* gathered strength, *Harmaxes* perswaded *Gilismene* to take the Air, to dispel that melancholy that hung upon her brows: And by degrees he engaged her when he saw it convenient, to walk out into a great Balcony, as *Dorcira* and she had agreed, that they might observe a fit place whither to bring *Agelmond*. *Harmaxes* spoke nothing at first of my Master, but as he was discoursing the Princess about some affairs, that related to the people of *Tamyraque*, he cast his eyes as well as she upon one part of the Garden, that offered to the sight whatever almost could please the eye. In short, at one glance they saw borders of flowers, Streams, Meadows, Woods, and among several great Trees a great number of Arbors, falls of water, and Statues. *I must confess*, said the Prince of the *Venedians*, *that a more charming variety was never seen, and that we cannot chose a place more proper, to shew us whatever is most delightful in so beautiful a Paradise. True it is*, added he as the plot was laid, *that our pleasure will soon be disturb’d if I be not deceived, for I am afraid the King of the Lombards and the Princess of the Igylians, will be both together there by and by. They use to walk together in yonder Alley, and I wonder that they are not there already, since Agelmond is in a condition to go abroad.*

No sooner had he said the words but my Master appeared indeed, being led, ere he dreamt of it, by *Dorcira*, to the same place of which *Harmaxes* was speaking: so that he beheld the Princess of the *Sarmatians*, standing with the Prince of the *Venedians*, which two objects of his love and hatred had no sooner pierced his eyes, but his heart began to be mov’d with an extraordinary violence, and his countenance manifested the trouble of his mind, by many visible alterations.

Dorcira observing the vehemency of the commotion, and willing to avoid the consequences that she had reason to fear; Sir, said she, *since your heart is not fortified with that resolution that I thought it was, let us mind our walk I beseech you, and not concern our selves with persons that will but excite your choler and your indignation. Agelmond* far from returning any answer, held his eyes fixed upon that face which was his only delight, a face that soon rendred love and joy the Mistress of all those other passions that disputed the Empire of his heart, insomuch that the King of the *Lombards* not being able to moderate these transportments, began to walk toward the Balcony, when *Dorcira* surpris’d and somewhat affrighted; How Sir, said she, *have you forgot that you promis’d——— I have not forgot*, said he, *that the Princess of the Sarmatians is the fairest person that ever was in the world, and that it will be more easie for the King of the Lombards to renounce his life, than the hopes of enjoying what he loves.* As he was thus talking and still moving toward *Gilismene*, *Dorcira* laying hold of his Arm; *What is it you are about to do*, cryed she? *To bewail the cruelty of my fate*, replyed he, *and to dye at the feet of my divine Princess.*

He was about to have stung himself out of *Dorcira’s* hands, but *Gilismene* at the same time beholding him with disdain, turn’d away her eyes, and return’d in haste into the Chamber with *Harmaxes*. The King of the *Lombards* touch’d to the quick with that de-

partment of hers, sigh'd, and like a Statue stood immovable. Certainly, had he only followed the instigations of his love and despair, he would have left *Dorcira*, he would have ran into the Palace, and in despite of all his Rival's Guards, I question not but that he would have opened his way to the fair Princess of the *Sarmatians*: but the fear of displeasing her was of greater force to restrain him, than all the force of his Enemies; for that fear had so much power over his enamour'd heart, that the pentive *Agelmond*, uncertain what resolution to take, remain'd as before expos'd to the Artifices of the Princess that betrayed him; insomuch that she easily perswaded him to return to his Apartment, whither he was no sooner come, but the dissembling Lady complain'd of his behaviour: *Well, Sir, do you think you have done well to fail of your promise; or would you be glad that Gilismene should accuse me for breaking mine? I know not, Madam, replied he, what I promised you, nor in what I have offended you: I only know that Gilismene is the most amiable person that ever was, and that she is exasperated against the unhappy Agelmond.*

Dorcira prick'd to the heart with these words, quitted the King of the *Lombards*, having much ado to keep her self from breaking forth into a rage, and shewing her resentment as well against *Agelmond*, as against the Princess whose Empire he acknowledged with such a firm fidelity: nevertheless, because she had some hopes left to accomplish her design, she betook her self to policy; and having instructed *Lycorax*, she sent him as from *Gilismene*. The perfidious Traytor went to the King of the *Lombards*, and conforming his countenance to the commission which he had in trust: *Sir, said he, the Princess was very much surpris'd, that you should venture to come so near and speak to her, contrary to the promise which you made. Be pleas'd to consider the consequences of such a discourse, seeing that if the slight which she put upon Harmaxes had come to the ears of his party, they might thereupon in a rage have taken Arms. If the fear of a tumult, replied he, were Agelmond's only misfortune, I have Friends in Tamyraque whom my presence would encourage to declare for the juster side: and though Sarmatia should refuse me Forces to punish the Rebels, I would return at the head of my own Lombards, but I should return far more terribly irresistible in Gilismene's defence, than when I fought for the King of the Huns. We have had sufficient experience of your valour, replied Lycorax, to question the support of whatever interest you maintain. But, Sir, whatever Forces you bring against Harmaxes's Faction, you will still employ them against the Sarmatians; and I leave you to guess whether the Princess would be pleas'd to see her Cities ruined, and her Subjects cut in pieces. And indeed she takes so much care above all things, since the death of the King her Father, to keep Harmaxes's humour steady, that she conjures you by all the esteem and kindness which she still preserves for you, not to interest your self against a Prince of the Blood, nor to shew your self openly in a City where your presence may cause some disturbance, but to follow as much as in you lies the advice of a Princess, who by the kindness which she manifests towards you every day, does not shew her self unworthy the trust which she desires you to repose in her.*

The King of the *Lombards* believing that the Traytor spoke according to *Gilismene's* true intentions, "Ah, *Lycorax, said he, I will obey to the end: but if I have a respect to Gilismene's* Relations in the person of my Rival, if I remain clos'd up in this Chamber, and with reverence act according to the Princess *Dorcira*, what may I hope for as the recompence of such an absolute submission? Shall I afterwards see the Prince of the *Vendians* triumph unpunished over the King of the *Lombards*? Shall I see him advanc'd to that happiness that was promis'd me: and do they think that I shall be a peaceable Spectator of *Harmaxes's* happiness? No, no, *Lycorax, let them not deceive themselves, I will pursue Harmaxes* as the person that ravish'd from me all my joy: nor will the command of *Gilismene* that withholds my Arm at present, be powerful enough perhaps to protect that unworthy Lover from my despair. In short, let them determine among themselves, now they have an opportunity, let them put *Agelmond* to death, if they intend to assure *Harmaxes* his life, unless *Harmaxes* will renounce his claim. However, replied *Lycorax, to me there seems to be a great deal of danger in acting overhastily in such a weighty affair as this, seeing there is a moderation to be observed as well in reference to the King himself whose memory all Sarmatia adores, as also in relation to a Prince of the Blood, and who in the absence of Agathyrfus we look upon as our Sovereign: and therefore the better way will be to give way to the Season, and far from running upon desperate courses, to stay either till the return of our Prince, or that the Kingdom be better settled. In the mean time, I make no question but the Princess will frequently send me to give you an account of affairs: Besides that, the Princess Dorcira will continue her visits, and instead of keeping close in your Chamber, you may have the liberty to walk in the Garden wherever you please.*

Thus had *Dorcira* instructed him to speak to the King of the *Lombards*; for she was afraid lest too much grief should deprive her of the Prince, and therefore she was willing to moderate and sweeten his sorrows, hoping at length to move that Heart which she could not believe altogether insensible of acknowledgment. But my Master after he had seriously ponder'd upon the message which *Gilismene's* pretended Officer had sent, and had gathered from thence some kind of consolation, he return'd this answer to the dissembling *Sarmatian*, *Lycorax*, said he, *assure our Princess that I will obey her commands with all the exactness that she can expect from a Prince that only lives to serve her: but tell her withal, that she must not think to depend upon Agelmond's promises, could he apprehend that she would espouse Harmaxes: for I cannot answer for my own heart, should she deliver it over to despair by so cruel a piece of injustice.*

By and by, not being satisfied with what answer he had made, he called *Lycorax* back more than once or twice, and having given him several commands and instructions, *In the name of Heaven*, said he, *let the Princess know, that 'tis impossible for me any longer to live a life so deplorable; and that I shall suddenly seek to put an end to it, if Gilismene her self do not speedily tell me what she intends to do with the unfortunate Agelmond; that Agelmond whose life ought to have been so happy, but now groaning under the weight of intolerable sufferings.* Sir, replied the dissembling *Sarmatian*, *rely upon me in every thing that concerns your interest in this affair, my diligence shall be extraordinary, and I only beg of you a little longer patience, that I may have time to act with success.*

Concluding those words, he departed, and I understood an hour afterwards, that there was express order given not to let any person, without any exception, enter into that part of the Garden which was under the King of the *Lombards's* Apartment. That day the Prince and *Dorcira* having been together, I made use of the liberty I had of going abroad, and went into the City to try if I could learn any news that might concern a Master whom I so dearly loved: I coined several pretences to get into several places, and in the Evening I gave him an account of what I had learn'd: Sir, said I, *there runs a report in Tamyraque that you are return'd, and that they cannot imagine wherefore you should keep your self concealed: some say you have no reason to shew your self in those places where your Rival has the sovereign authority: others more bold, and less affected to Harmaxes, say if you would appear in publick, you would be soon more powerful than your Rival.* "I do not wonder," answered he, that they talk of my return in a City where to many persons have not seen me since my arrival, and I also am induc'd to believe that my appearance in publick would cause some change: *Gilismene* is beloved, *Harmaxes* hated and perhaps I my self am not in a little esteem; so that the Princess's private party only want a Commander to head them, and then if they should openly take Arms, they would put the Rebels into a very great confusion. But *Viginizus*, this would be to arm the *Sarmatians* against the *Sarmatians*, and whatever advantages the Princess might gain thereby, she would look upon them as losses, being purchas'd with the blood of a people so dear to her: besides she has commanded *Lycorax* to forbid me — — — *Ab, Sir,* said I interrupting him, *'tis concerning Lycorax that I have much to tell your Majesty; most people accuse him not to be faithful: but all people agree that he is far more real to Harmaxes's and Dorcira's interests than to the Princess's.* "You know, replied the generous *Agelmond*, that *Lycorax* wants no wit, and perhaps because he believes that he may the better serve *Gilismene* by keeping a fair correspondence with her Enemies, he labours to preserve *Harmaxes's* good will, so that 'tis no wonder if persons whose flattery is not so prosperous, or who dive not so far into *Lycorax's* intentions speak either out of envy or ignorance. But, Sir, said I, *'tis most certain that Harmaxes has bestowed a most considerable command upon him.* "Can any person," replied he with the same goodness, think it strange that *Harmaxes* should gratifie *Lycorax*, if *Lycorax* can serve him with the Princess? I must confess, replied I, that your Majesty's reasons stop my mouth: but, Sir, to tell you the truth, I am not absolutely perswaded of his fidelity, and yet I cannot tell wherefore. "Ah, *Viginizus*, replied he, *Agelmond* never taught thee to be jealous without a cause. "I know very well, Sir, answered I, that my thoughts are not conformable to the high Generosity of your Soul: nevertheless, I cannot but believe that your Majesty would do better not to confide so much in people of whom your knowledge and experience is so uncertain. "I will not deny, replied my Master, but that it is a piece of imprudence to give credit too slightly: but *Viginizus*, I can justify my proceeding, and demonstrate that I am not deceiv'd when I believe that *Lycorax* is faithful to *Gilismene*. You know the Princess's writing, read over the last Letter which I received from her, and remember that it was *Lycorax* himself that brought it me.

Concluding

Concluding these words he shewed me the fatal Letters which I have already mention'd, and I had no sooner seen the words which were most to be interpreted in favour of *Lycorax*, but the King of the *Lombards* thus continued. *Well Viginizus*, said he, *when you see that choice that Gillismene made, the words that she has so obligingly written in his behalf, can you be so unjust as to question the Sarmatian's fidelity?*

Though by these Arguments and some others of the same nature, the King of the *Lombards* had in some measure convinced me in favour of *Lycorax*, yet I could not forbear to have something of a secret aversion against him, which I could not put out of my mind. In so much that I was not a little troubled, to find my Master so unapt to receive those impressions which I endeavour'd to imprint in his mind concerning a person, whose behaviour was so generally suspected by all good persons. And therefore I ponder'd all the night long upon those circumstances, which most strangely harass'd my thoughts. In the first place I could not apprehend why a wife and generous Princefs, should send so far to bring a potent Monarch back, and never come near him, not so much as to speak to him when he was return'd.

Then the reasons that *Dorcira* had so plausibly given my Master, began to appear very weak, for though *Gilismene's* Letters kept me from accusing *Lycorax* openly, however they did not absolutely justify him in my opinion. Every day some new doubt or other arose, which made me desire to examine the Princefs's Letter, and I had no sooner weigh'd and considered every word, but I observ'd that *Lycorax's* name was not set down in the writing. By degrees I began to think that the Letter might be intercepted, and that certainly so judicious a Princefs, could never cast her eyes upon a person of whom she had so little knowledge or experience, for the management of an affair so nice and of so extraordinary consequence. At the same time that these suspicions began to fortify themselves in my fancy, the King of the *Lombards* how generous soever he were, began to be of an opinion little different from mine: But his natural frankness and ingenuity, would not permit him to fix his thoughts seriously, and not only quitted *Lycorax* of all manner of collusion, but also infused into him an obstinate opinion, that all those persons that sent him could not be guilty of any injustice. However this is true, that being in his Chamber when he rose and having discovered my thoughts, he made a more considerate reflection than he had been accustomed to do, and at length began to think it necessary not to neglect the discovery of an Affair, that most concern'd him of any in this work.

As he was considering which way to proceed, *Lycorax* entred, and accosting my Master with a countenance more confident, than became a person so much an offender; *Sir*, said he, *while I was seeking an opportunity to do you some small piece of service, I met with a Lombard, who passionately desires to kiss your Majesties hands. However it is requisite that with your leave I present him first to Harmaxes, who is at present entrusted with the Sovereign Authority, especially since the dispute will be about introducing a Stranger who keeps himself private, yet whom the other more vigorously and earnestly seeks after. Take you a care of that.* (replied my Master seriously fixing his eyes upon *Lycorax*) *For you would be very ingrateful should you so soon forget your duty to a Prince, to whom you were so lately engaged, for so considerable an Employment.*

Upon those words *Lycorax* seem'd surpris'd, and *Agelmond* giving him to understand that he began now to take better heed of him, the politic *Sarmatian* reassuring himself with that dissimulation, that had rendred him so worthy to be trusted by *Harmaxes* and *Dorcira*; *I confess*, said he, *that you may perceive me to be somewhat amazed, but Sir, I have too much cause, nor can I apprehend why a generous King should privately suspect me, when I make open profession of taking your interests. Nor will your Majesty I hope judge me a criminal, for having received a benefit from the hand of a Prince which I durst not refuse, and which I intend to surrender up again for fear of being obliged to live too remote from my Mistress. And yet you might have had a better opinion of her than you have, coldly replied the King of the Lombards, had she given you a clearer testimony of your fidelity, by putting your name into a Letter which she wrote to a Prince, who had never any knowledge of your person.* *Ab Sir*, presently replied he, *would you that so prudent a Princefs should be tied to a formality so unnecessary, and which might have proved very dangerous to me. For if I could come to give you the Letter myself, there was no need of mentioning my Name, but had it been lost by any accident that might have easily happen'd, would not the sight of my Name have procur'd me as many enemies, as there be Sarmatians in Harmaxes's party, or in Dorcira's faction.*

These Arguments though outwardly propable enough, yet did not fully satisfy the King of the *Lombards*, which when *Lycorax* perceiv'd; "I find *Sir*, said he, that you are not sufficiently perswaded of my innocency: But that you may better understand a disposition

"upon

“ upon which you look with some disadvantageous prejudice, I leave your Majesty, to take
 “ yet farther pains for your sake, while you are jealous of my proceedings: I am going to
 “ speak again in your behalf to the Princess, and I will carry the Lombard who is so eager to
 “ kiss your hands to the Prince Harmaxes.

Thus this dissembling *Sarmatian* parted the last time from my Master, leaving the Prince strangely agitated and tormented: I confess, said he, that *Lycorax's* discourse is grounded upon something of probability: Yet on the other side, there are so many other likelihoods that destroy it, that I make no farther question that I am abused and *Gilismene* betrayed, and therefore without any farther meditation or consideration, it behoves me to know the truth from the mouth of my Princess her self. But unfortunate as I am, what greater proof can I have than what I have already? Have I not *Gilismene's* Letter, do I not there find that she recalls me, and after that do I not find, that instead of letting me understand how she intends to dispose of my destiny, she will not suffer me so much as to speak to her? Alas she beholds me with indignation, she flies my sight, she retires from me in the band of my Rival.

At the same time the afflicted Prince ponder'd upon all the circumstances that might augment his grief, and by and by all of a sudden; *How know we*, continued he, that this Letter was directed to the King of the Lombards without a subscription: Or if it were really directed to me, as the words seem to imply, why may not *Lycorax* be thought to have betrayed me, brib'd by *Harmaxes*? May not he have perswaded me to act contrary to *Gilismene's* thoughts, on purpose to incense that divine Princess against the unfortunate *Agelmond*. Having uttered these words, he held his peace, turmoyl'd for some time with variety of uncertain thoughts, but at length he resum'd his first intention, which was to speak with the Princess of the *Sarmatians*.

At that time his natural boldness filled his imagination only with hazardous designs, in so much that though a Prince so mild, so amorous and so amiable, of a sudden he felt himself animated with that noble courage, that always accompanied him in fight, and rendered him so formidable. But as he was considering what ways to go, for the removal of all those obstacles that might oppose the execution of his design, he saw a stranger coming into his Chamber, whom he presently knew to be the Nephew of that *Grimoaldus*, whom *Agelmond* had entrusted with the Command of all his Forces. My Master received the Lombard with many Testimonies of affection, and taking notice that his Countenance was clouded with many symptoms of sadness, he was unwilling suddenly to demand the cause of his coming. But considering that no news how delectful soever that did not concern *Gilismene*, could augment his sorrows in that deplorable condition, to which he saw himself reduc'd; *Garibaldus*, said he, I see too apparently that fortune has forsaken us, for the language of your eyes too loudly tells me, if I am not deceived, that my Army in my absence has not been able to preserve its renown entire. That victory, said he, which is always bound to follow you, has not yet forsaken us, for though perhaps we have not fought with that success, which advances the renown of our great King, yet we have no reason to complain of any cross misfortune: And therefore Sir, that is not the cause of my coming. This little Letter from *Grimoaldus*, will inform your Majesty so well, that I hope your Majesty will dispense with my declaring what I cannot relate without an exceeding sorrow. Having so said he presented a Letter to the King of the Lombards, which he had no sooner opened, but he read these following Lines.

Grimoaldus to the King of the Lombards.

Sir, I am at present in a condition so disconsolate and forlorn, that these few words must now suffice to inform your Majesty, of a misfortune that has begat a general consternation in the people. *Mundisic* is accustomed to Rapes, and to violate all the rights of Nations, has ravished away the Princess from us, I am making all the haste that may be after that perfidious Traitor, and I protest before all the Gods whom we adore, that I will not give over the pursuit of him as long as he lives, unless he restore the Sister of my King.

Upon the tydings of this new misfortune, the afflicted Prince lifted up his eyes to heaven, and then cast them again upon the paper, which he read over and over, to see if he could find out the least reason, to doubt the truth of this his last misfortune. But finding it too certainly testified, he turned his head toward *Garibaldus*, and with a look that demonstrated both trouble and sadness, he seem'd to require the circumstances of the mishap, that had befallen

befallen the Princess *Agione*. The *Lombard* understanding the King's intention more inspired with melancholy than eloquence, he thus began.

It is now, Sir, said he, about fifteen days since *Mundisic* came to *Lupia*, rather as one of our Renowned King's Allies, than as a Lover of our fair Princess. And the first thing he did was to offer himself to head the *Lombards*, and to march against the *Sarmatians* for your delivery, or to revenge any wicked attempt which they should make upon your sacred person. The Princess not only refused her acknowledgment to the perfidious Traitor, but understanding that he desired to take a view of our Troops, she caus'd his commands to be obeyed with all extraordinary diligence. The politick *Mundisic* ordered the *Rendezvouz* in a large plain some twelve miles distant from *Lupia*, to remove all the *Lombards*, from whom she might receive present assistance, far enough from her. Afterwards, that he might the more easily commit his intended crime under the advantage of a long journey, he perswaded the Princess to shew her self at the *Rendezvouz* to the *Lombards*, to the end, she might the better encourage them to fight for your Majesty's interests, but she had no sooner rode a hundred furlongs from the City, when he ordered those of his party whom he had already employed and rewarded to take a quite contrary Road from that which he led to the *Rendezvouz*. In short, Sir, what can I tell you more but that the faithless *Mundisic* carried away the Princess, and was got a great way off with his Royal Prey before *Grimoaldus*, who was at the head of the Army, understood the least tittle of the news. So soon as he was advertis'd thereof, he flew after *Mundisic*, and I followed him. But notwithstanding all our extreme care, and the swiftness of our Horses, we understood two days after by such as we met upon the Road, that it would be a very difficult thing to overtake the Ravisher whom we pursued. *Grimoaldus* was very sorrowful to hear it, yet he followed *Mundisic*'s steps with the same diligence, and according to his Duty sent me away with this Letter to give you an account of all things. But, Sir, as if one misfortune were linked to another, your absence, and *Grimoaldus* being so far out of the way, has so inflam'd the ambition of many of the *Lombard* Princes to take upon them the Government, that as I came along through our own Country, I found nothing but faction and disturbance, and every one striving for the Sovereign Authority.

While *Garibaldus* made this Relation, *Agelmond* walked up and down the Chamber, pondering upon the cruelty of his mischievous misfortune: he found how destiny and fate seem'd to take pains to trouble and perplex his life; that they seem'd ingenious to persecute him so many ways, and that at the same time that they kept him at *Tamyraque* for his love's sake, they recalled him into *Germany* for his own honour to the succour of *Agione*, and the good of his people. Through this contrariety he felt a pain which he had not till then experimented; for though the consideration of *Gilismene* most strongly prevailed in his heart, 'twas a very hard thing for him to determine what course to take: and then his reason not being at liberty, while all his thoughts were in a tumult he retired into his Closet: but the disturbance that followed him thither, soon after having as it were fetch'd him out again, he went down into the Garden, whether it were that he desired to be lets observ'd, or whether it were that while he walked, he thought he should put a less constraint upon his mind that was so violently turmoiled. And though persons were suffered to come into that part of the Garden, yet he chus'd the most remote and lovely walks, and there in the midst of a thick Tuft of Trees he abandon'd himself to his despair: *Unfortunate Agelmond*, cryed he, *unhappy Prince, wilt thou not put an end to a life that thou shouldst have determin'd long since? If thou fliest after the Ravisher of Agione, will it be possible for thee to live absented from Gilismene? If thou cowardly abandonest Agione to the power of him that has taken her away, canst thou, having once renounc'd thy Honour, endure the presence of that Lady whom thou adorest?*

Having pronounc'd those few words, he sigh'd, cross'd his Arms, and walked slowly: "Alas, said he, since love and fortune first joyn'd together to make men miserable, was ever Prince more expos'd to the rigour of their strokes? Did ever unhappy wretch more cruelly feel their tyranny? Ah, *Agelmond*, 'tis not for thee to consider so much as one minute; flie from *Gilismene* that flies thee, flie *Gilismene* that looks upon thee only with the looks of an ancient Enemy: run to assist *Agione* that loves thee, run to a Sister that calls thee to her succour, to a Sister that will receive thee with tears of joy and affection. Ah, treacherous Lover, presently replyed he, perfidious Lover, canst thou frame a thought so criminal? What seest thou in the whole world which thou oughtest to prefer before the divine *Gilismene*? How canst thou pretend that that Princess should owe thee any thing of acknowledgment, and give her but a heart divided? Consider that she is not to reign in thy heart unless she reign there alone, and Sovereignly; and to manifest a Loyalty worthy of her divine qualities, it behoves thee to be always ready without repugnancy

“ to sacrifice to her interest thy Armies, thy people, thy Sister, and thy own honour. But, miserable Prince, is it for thee to lodge so fair and illustrious a Princess in a heart dishonour’d ? Ah, *Agelmond*, blind *Agelmond*, what an error art thou running into? Canst thou abandon *Agione*, and not cowardly renounce *Gilismene* at the same time? Satisfie both those Princesses, ’tis in thy power, visit the *Sarmatian* Princesses, try whether she abuse thee or not, and whether she have any kindness yet left for thee; if that be true, deliver her from the tyranny of her Enemies, and then hasten to the relief of thy Sister, that with extended Arms implores thy assistance: but if *Gilismene* hate thee, die miserable, since how unjust soever she may prove, thou canst not but always love her passionately; but afore thou diest, according to the obligations of consanguinity revenge and deliver *Agione*.

To this resolution, Sir, at length the King of the *Lombards* came: but in regard it was not easie for him to execute it, how undaunted soever his courage were, he sat down at the foot of a great Tree, that he might in quiet consider of a way to satisfie himself in reference to *Gilismene*, and bring the well affected *Sarmatians* to take Arms. While he was in this deep meditation, he heard a kind of a noise, and turning his head, he beheld two men that came and sat down upon the brink of a little Fountain on the other side of a thick Tuft of shady Trees; at first they looked upon one another without speaking a word, but by and by he that was most advanc’d in years beginning the discourse, *You see*, said he, *that I have the sole power over him that looks to the Gardens, and that he made no difficulty to bring us through his house into this place, where you know no person has been suffered to come since the last order which was given to the contrary.* At those words the prudent *Agelmond* listening more attentively than before, he heard the *Sarmatian* who first began, proceed, *We may make choice of this Garden as a most convenient place for our conferences, and we can stay here till Toxares comes hither to tell us his resolution. In the mean while, instead of prosecuting your revenge too hastily against Lycorax, ’tis very inconvenient for you to appear in Tamyraque, nor that your Friends should meet together for fear of giving our enemies too great a cause of suspicion. How, Indyrfes, replied the other Sarmatian, interrupting his Friend, shall Lycorax that treacherous Flatterer of Harmaxes always abuse us, and escape unpunished? Shall he cause us to be exiled? Shall he enjoy our Goods and Estates? Ah, no, no, either he must die, or I perish: he will not always meet with valiant Defenders, and though he were lately rescued from me upon the great Road to Tamyraque, I may light upon him with more success a second time. In short, I will never endure that my Father’s employment shall be taken from him, because he stands firm to his allegiance, and takes part with the Princess to recompence a Villain for the treasons which he commits. But, replied the former, Toxares’s advantage, and our common security require us to moderate a heat that may prove dangerous to us all in the consequences. We have no long time to be Sufferers, Agathyrfus will suddenly return: and certain it is, that the King of the Lombards lies somewhere concealed in this City; could we but make known our intentions to that generous Prince, I make no question but that he would head our party, and that—— You have no reason to doubt it, (replied my Master, and accosting Indyrfes with whom he was acquainted) for here you see Agelmond ready to joyn his zeal with yours for the interest of the Princess.*

The younger of the two, who was most passionately concern’d, would have cast himself at the King’s feet, had not *Agelmond*, who took notice of his intention hindered him in a most obliging manner: and as he rais’d him up he no sooner cast his eyes upon his face, but he knew him again to be that fierce *Sarmatian* against whom he had defended *Lycorax*: in somuch that he admir’d at the fantasticks of his Destiny, that had arm’d his hand against so faithful a servant of *Gilismene*, to save the life of a Traytor that only laboured to make his own miserable. While he was making this reflection, he omitted not to give his hand to *Toxares*’s Son, and addressing himself in particular to him, *Generous Knight*, said he, *you behold a Prince of whom you had once reason to complain, yet one that now desires to gain your friendship by actions quite contrary to that through which he merited your hatred. In short, it was Agelmond, who deluded by his own fate, fought against his own proper interest, and rescued Lycorax from your just indignation. True it is, that fortune was not altogether unkind to me at that time; yet though she made me take part with your enemy, she was also no less the cause that now I know you sufficiently to have a better confidence in your valour when we come to draw our Swords for our Princess.* “ Sir, answered the *Sarmatian*, I had absolutely conjectured by the blows that fell from your Arm, that you were either the invincible *Agelmond*, or the formidable *Agathyrfus*; but the injustice of the *Sarmatian* whom you protect’d oppos’d that belief of mine: nor could I apprehend that the King of the *Lombards* would have fought for the Agent of *Dorcira* and *Harmaxes*, that is, for the chief Minister of *Gilismene*’s

“ persecutors

“persecutors. You will not be surpris’d, answered my Master, for having seen me in the Lycorax’s part, when I give you to understand that it was he with whom the Princess entrusted the secret of my return, and that it was Lycorax himself whom she dispatched with this Letter to recal me: But you will wonder to hear that Gilifimene has never permitted me to visit her since my return, and not contented with so injurious a proceeding, one time when I had the happiness to see her in the Garden, that she should behold me as an Enemy, and the only object of her hatred. Ab Sir, replied Indyrfes, it must necessarily be that he has betrayed both you and her, nor will it be difficult to understand by what tricks and devices, and this very Evening will I be better inform’d of all these things from the Princess her self. You know very well, that she has some confidence in me, for besides that I have been always devoted to the service of her Father, Amasia is my Niece, and I know that she has given Gilifimene notice of my being return’d to serve her, into a City where I can promise very little security to my self: So that it behoves me to confer with her, what course we ought to take to oppose Harmaxes’s Tyranny, and I promise you, Sir, that I will find out, by what juggle they have deluded so wise and quick sighted a Lady, and to morrow in the same place and at the same hour, I will give your Majesty an account of all things.

The End of the First Book of the Tenth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK II.

AT the time that Indyrfes concluded these words, and that the grateful Agelmond was about to reply, one of the Princess of the Igylians Pages; was seen coming toward the Wood, to seek for the King of the Lombards in the behalf of his Mistress. His appearance not only caused the two Sarmatians to retire, but so thorowly vexed my Master that he blush’d, and that so remarkably that his colour was observed by Indyrfes and Ateras, for that was the name of the other Sarmatian. Agelmond therefore return’d to his Apartment, where he found the Princess Dorcira who stayed for him; to testify how much she shar’d in his sorrow for the loss of Agione. Their discourse was very sad, tedious, and ill hung together, but in the mean time, Indyrfes, desirous to acquit himself of the promise which he had made to the King of the Lombards, went accompanied with Ateras to the Princess’s Chamber, into which Amasia had introduced them. Gilifimene received those two Sarmatians with many marks of her affection, and notwithstanding the melancholy that raign’d in her fair countenance, she seem’d to be touch’d with some kind of joy. Indyrfes, and Ateras, said she, why do you expose your selves thus to no purpose for a Princess destin’d to be unhappy? You see I am alone, forsaken by all the world unless Amasia. The King my Father is dead, I hear no news of Agathyrsus, my enemies environ me on every side, and what is yet more dreadful, I receive daily injuries from those persons from whom I expected all my support and consolation. Reserve your selves therefore, I beseech you, and signalize your fidelity

lity when the King my brother returns. It suffices Madam, said they, that we have Agelmond to head us——— Ah for Heavens sake, said she interrupting them, never talk to me more of that very person whom it behoves me mortally to abhor, and whom I must be forced to look upon to my very death, as the object of my hatred. 'Tis my opinion, Madam, that you are most certainly abused and betrayed. 'Tis your Agelmond himself, replied she very hastily, that has so dealt by me as you say, and that you may be fully convinced in reference to a discourse, which I cannot endure to hear, as it is not true that Agelmond is return'd to Tamyraque, contrary to the promise which he so solemnly made me. But Madam, replied Ateras, did not you recal him your self, and did not Lycorax carry the Letter from your hand? Who I? replied Gilismene very much astonished, Did I write? Did I send Lycorax? He assured us so, replied Indyrfes. I see very well, answered she, that his crimes cost him nothing now he has begun to commit them, and that he can easily add imposture to infidelity. However it would have better become him to have invented his untruths with more likelihood, and not make you believe that I recalled him, when he is never out of Dorcira's company. He should have done better also to have nominated some other carrier of his pretended Letter than Lycorax: For in short what probability is there, that ever I should chose Lycorax with whom I was never concern'd, and whom all the world knew to be a creature of Harmaxes and Dorcira's. Thus you see Indyrfes, thus you see Ateras, that the ambitious Agelmond had no longer any love for me, when he saw that Fortune had forsaken me. It may be also he despised me, when he saw that I being a person not given to study fraud and deceit, expos'd my self every day to the devices of my Enemies, and believing my disposition to be more moderate and just than his, he has preferred Dorcira whose Genius I must confess is much more suitable to the humour of a young Soldier than mine. Is it possible, Madam, replyd Indyrfes that Agelmond, the great, the generous Agelmond, should be guilty of such a Treachery as this. 'Tis not only possible, replied Gilismene, but there is nothing more true, I am assured that Agelmond has not been out of Dorcira's company, not a moment since his return to Tamyraque. And it was but once that I step'd forth of my Chamber to take the Air, when I observed him my self walking with that Princess. I observ'd also that he spoke to her after a very passionate manner, yet he no sooner saw me but he stood like one that had been struck dumb, as much accusom'd as he had been to injure me: He strove also by what I read in his eyes to have paid something to common civility, and I believe he would have come to me, with an intention doubtless to have put off some of his pitiful excuses in my hearing, had I not retired into my Chamber, or that Dorcira had not stop'd him to prevent the consequences of a Confusion which she saw in his face. "O ye Gods, cried Indyrfes, what reliance is there upon the faith of man, if the most honourable among men are capable of so ungrateful a change. Well, Madam, I begin to be convinced, and now I remember that we had not been long in Agelmond's company, but there came one from Dorcira to seek for him, and I found that he was very much troubled, when he saw the Princess of the Igylians Page. "I remember far better, said Ateras, that Agelmond fought for Lycorax, and that he ventur'd his life to preserve Dorcira so necessary an Agent. "Well then, added Gilismene, will ye open your eyes, will ye at length confess that the King of the Lombards is unfaithful to the Princess of the Sarmatians, though a kind servant to the Princess of the Igylians? We are not only of the same mind, answer'd Indyrfes much perplex'd, but for my part I believe that Ateras and I shall not do amiss for our better security, rather to leave Tamyraque than to meet where we appointed Agelmond.

The Princess approv'd Indyrfes purpose, and after she had fully instructed him by what means to hold a correspondence till the return of the new King, the two Sarmatians stole out of the Town, and went to all the principal of their friends, to let them understand the pretended inconstancy of Agelmond. Indyrfes also went to the overseer of the Gardens, and having related all things to him, engaged him to quit his house and follow him: whereupon Telchir, for so was the Officer called, consented to obey Indyrfes, yet that his flight might be the less suspected, he left his Wife at home sick abed. However before he departed, he instructed her what answers she should make to such persons, as either Harmaxes or Gilismene should send to make any enquiry there.

Thus my Master who failed not to be at the place, where Indyrfes and Ateras had appointed to meet him, waited for the two Sarmatians: But when he saw it was to no purpose, they being gone out of Town, he was extraordinarily troubled at it. At first he imagin'd, and that with probability enough, that Harmaxes had seiz'd upon them, and therefore all his thoughts and actions, having no other aim than only the service of Gilismene, he design'd altogether the delivery of two persons so faithful to the Princess. To that purpose he commanded me to try all ways, to learn what was become of them, and to that intent I went to their Lodgings, and to all the nearest of their Relations. I enquir'd also of a hundred several

ral persons, but could by no means be inform'd of what I desir'd to know. All people deny'd that *Indyrfes* or *Ateras*, were return'd to *Tamiraque* since they last left it, and observ'd also that their aspects were full of fear, and that they looked upon me with a strange kind of aversion: So that when I gave my Master an account of the little success I had had; he was prodigiously afflicted at it, and making a sad reflection upon every circumstance when he was alone; *How*, cry'd he, *are there none that will come near me but they that betray me, and do all that are faithful to Gilisimene flee me, and refuse to see me again? Indyrfes and Ateras, who shew'd themselves so free to join with me, who desired Agelmond only for their Leader, who appeared willing to obey my commands, the very Indyrfes the same Ateras, that appear'd so willing to follow me, they also break their words and shun me. But alas they neither break their words nor shun me, till they have spoken with Gilisimene.* After those words he ponder'd a-while, and then he darted forth such terrible looks, that I was perswaded my self, that he was forming some dreadful resolution in his thoughts.

Nevertheless how disconsolate soever his condition were, and how inflam'd soever his courage seem'd to be, he did not go about blindly to precipitate himself upon the execution of his design: On the contrary, before he absolutely abandon'd himself to despair, he resolv'd to try all things, that he might not have any thing wherewith to upbraid himself. He went therefore to *Telchir's* house, but not finding him, he address'd himself to his wife, who as I told you before lay sick abed. *Can you tell me*, said he, *no news of Indyrfes? Of Indyrfes*, answer'd she with a counterfeit surprize, *Ab Sir, is it for such a person as I to satisfy your curiosity in such a particular? It is certain however*, said he, *that the Master of the house could inform me what I desire to know. He concerns himself*, reply'd she, *but very little in any other affairs but his own: For since the troubles in Tamiraque have produced so many different factions, we never discourse of any person at Court, for fear of begetting enemies to our selves that might make a bad construction of our words.*

She utter'd these words with such an evident ingenuity, that my Master had not urg'd her any farther, could he have confin'd his moderation, in reference to *Gilisimene's* concerns, or had he not possibly known that the person whom he sought, had brought *Indyrfes* into the Garden: So that he resolv'd to inform himself yet more exactly. To which purpose he related all that he had heard, and proceeded with all the cunning that a noble courage could make use of, without having recourse to deceit or dissimulation. But all his industry was ineffectual, he could get no intelligence of any thing, so that being touch'd to the quick at his ill success; *Poor Princess*, cry'd he sighing, *is it impossible for those persons who are most faithful to thy interests, to testify their zeal but to thy prejudice, is there a necessity that they must be thought to do thee mischief, at the very time when they labour most to serve thee?*

He accompanied these words with an aspect which demonstrat'd such a visible sincerity, that that transportment of his passion wrought more of a sudden, than all his protestations that preceded. In short, the Wife of *Telchir* more exactly observ'd his countenance, but so far she was from beholding any thing that might render him suspected, that she discover'd there nothing but the symptoms of Grandeur and ingenuity, in the midst of those other effects of love and grief. My Master thereupon taking notice that she began to totter, redoubled his intreaties, repeated the particulars which he had learn'd from *Indyrfes* mouth, and to those incitements added the perswasion of a considerable jewel. Thereby she that was inclin'd to answer him with more freedom, began to make him a clear confession of all things, being strongly prepossess'd that it would be an absolute betraying *Gilisimene*, to act otherwise with a person, whom she saw so devoted to her service. Afterwards more earnestly beholding *Agelmond*; *Sir*, said she, *you see how candid I am with you, nevertheless I do not believe I shall have any cause to repent, or that you will ever reveal this secret to the Prince of the Venedians or the King of the Lombards.* To the King of the Lombards, cry'd he altogether astonish'd, *do you then think that Agelmond is not faithful to see the Princess.* *Oh Sir*, reply'd she shaking her head, *I see you are abus'd as well as many others at the Court, since you believe that the King of the Lombards loves the Princess of the Sarmatians. But 'tis too true that that Prince having changed his affection as well as his party, without any ground or cause, is so ashamed thereof, that he speaks of Gilisimene still as if he had the same passion, which caus'd so much joy in Tamiraque. And thus that dissimulation, which was thought to be incompatible with Agelmond's generosity, only serves to lead many people into error. Among the rest Indyrfes was so deceiv'd, that the Princess Gilisimene her self had much ado to convince him of the truth, he was so far prepossess'd in favour of a Prince, that gains the hearts of all that know him.*

How then, replied the pensive Agelmond, does the Princess believe that the King of the Lombards has renounc'd his love to her? She not only believes it, replied the other, but she has with her own eyes seen such assured signs thereof, that for that reason she looks upon him as her greatest enemy; and at length Indrycis and Ateras confirm'd by those reasons, cal'd to mind several circumstances which confirm'd the Princess much more in what already she had too apparent grounds to believe. But, (replied he, labouring to conceal some part of his grief) may not we for the advantage of the Princess, and the justification of the King of the Lombards——
Al, Sir, cried she, spitefully interrupting him, and turning to the other side of the Bed, *I begin to know who you are, and if I be not deceiv'd in my conjecture, take your Jewel again—I will not only not take it again,* replied the King hastily, interrupting her, *but I will take care of your advancement. I had rather chuse a quiet and innocent poverty,* replied she, *than riches that will every moment upbraid me with a crime. 'Tis very strange,* replied he, *that you will continue in an error; and that you should refuse so obstinately a satisfaction which can never do you any damage. For in short I will tell you now, and I must say it as long as I live, that I adore the Princess, that I am as faithful to her as any person under Heaven, not excepting King Agathyrus himself; and I desire to talk with her but for one moment, or with any of her Attendants whom she shall make choice of: I will go to her Apartment alone, and disarm'd, if you will but introduce me in such a manner as may not be displeasing to her.*
The Gods preserve me, replied she with an utterance more constant than before, from promising to meddle in an affair of this nature: no, no, Sir, I have been forewarn'd, I know how delusive you are in persuasions, and I should never deserve to be pardon'd, should I act for your interests after all the advice that I have had.

For all this my Master would not yield, he prayed, he entreated, he promised, he urged, but all to no effect; so that at last he was constrain'd to depart without any farther information. He beheld that resolute woman with a most sensible anguish of mind; nevertheless, instead of breaking out into any extravagancy against her for her obstinacy; for so nice was his love, that his heart was rather pleas'd to see her so well affected to the Princess whom he admired. So soon as he came into the Garden he crossed his Arms, and lifting up his eyes to Heaven, *Thou providence,* cryed he, *whom I have always adored, content thy self to have rendered me the most miserable among men; but extend not thy anger to the most perfect person that ever was. After that he pondered as he walk'd, then of a sudden,* *Good Gods,* cryed he again, *let my prayers prevail, that you would let a fair and innocent Princess rest in tranquillity, who better deserves the effects of your protection than those misfortunes with which her life is continually turmoiled: if you afflict her to make me suffer the more dreadful torments, trouble not the repose of her life, Agelmond will put an end to his, he will remove out of your sight the only cause you have to render Gilismene unhappy: Nay, it behoves him to die, pursued he, infligated by his despair, since there is no longer any doubt of the continuance of my misery: for in short, adoring Gilismene as I do, notwithstanding all her cruelty, it is not my Duty to deliver from the odious object that troubles the tranquillity of her Soul? Let us then no longer stand to deliberate, let us die, let us overturn all those obstacles that separate us from Gilismene. If Heaven, so much our enemy, will permit us at length but to present our selves before the feet of that Princess, we will sacrifice to her the victim which she demands. Happy in that last misfortune, if the loss of our life may appease that implacable hatred with which the Gods torment my miserable days.*

Having taken this resolution, he marched toward the Palace with a haughty and furious Gate; for my part, as I had attended him together with *Garibaldus*, not willing to forsake him in that disconsolate condition, I was confirm'd in my fears, observing the terribleness of his looks, and how he began already to stare somewhat wildly with his eyes, wherefore we resolv'd to keep sight of him, and following him at a distance, I heard the undaunted Prince demand leave to see the Princess. The Officer that commanded the Guard answered him with little or no respect, having strict order not to let any person enter: *Did you know who I am,* replied Agelmond, doubtless you would believe that my quality deserves a more particular consideration, and perhaps I may teach you, if you deny a more peculiar privilege to the King of the Lombards. *I must not omit my Duty,* replied the Commander very briskly, *and it suffices that I know that among all the men in the world I am only to except the Prince Harimaxes.*

My Master hearing the name of his more fortunate Rival, felt a new access of anger, and laying his hand upon the Hilt of his Sword, *force me not,* cryed he, *to make thee repent of thy behaviour, and know that if I have recourse to that means which is in my power to open my self a pass'g—— I shall never repent,* cryed the Officer, interrupting him, *of doing my Du-*

ty, and to shew you that I intend to acquit my self with all fidelity, if you forget that you are out of your own Territories: I shall it may be remember better than you would have me, that you are not here King of this Country.

The enraged Prince then losing the remainder of his patience, drew forth that formidable Sword which the *Sarmatians* had so often felt to their cost, and as he was about to fly upon that piece of insolence that had excited his rage, Ten or Twelve of the Guards presented the points of their Halberds to his Breast, notwithstanding that sacred Character that claims obedient reverence, in whatever condition it be. But the number of his Enemies augmented my Master's courage, for being at the door he had this advantage, that he could not be encompassed round, but fought with less inequality notwithstanding their multitude.

Garibaldus and I hearing the noise of this hurly burly, ran to the assistance of our Master, crying out aloud that succours were coming: Not so much to encourage a Prince that was one of the most daring persons in the world, as to terrify those Cowards that assailed his precious life. The furious *Agelmond* who had at our approach, already beaten to the ground two of the stoutest of the Guards, no sooner heard our voices but that thinking himself engaged, instead of fighting with less vigour, to do something extraordinary, he flung himself in among the *Sarmatians* with an incredible fury, and having singled out the Captain, he gave him such a blow thwart the head, that he cleft it in two. They that beheld him lay on so desperately were so affrighted, that *Agelmond* might have easily enter'd into the Princess's Chamber, if at the same time the perfidious *Lycorax*, destin'd to do him continual injuries, had not opposed him with seven or eight Armed men. For he apprehended that the enterview of *Agelmond* and *Gilismene*, would be worse than death, conjecturing very rightly, that it would produce a revolution to his ruine. Besides that at that time preferring *Harmaxes* advantages before *Dorcira's* interest, he thought it no time to dissent, seeing that nothing now remain'd but only for him openly to withstand my Master's designs, as he had already secretly countermin'd him in all his purposes, and therefore addressing himself to those that accompanied him, left us to revenge the dishonour of *Sarmatia*, and destroy a Stranger that never came among us but to our damage. The undaunted *Agelmond* beheld with a new supply of courage, the new recruit, whose number in all likelihood threatned his ruine, and having spied *Lycorax* among them; "Ah Traitor, cried he with a menacing utterance, thou shalt dye, for heaven has not brought thee before the King of the *Lombards*, but to receive the punishment of thy crimes. With those words he reinforced his fury, and how formidable soever he had always appeared before to me in combat, I can safely averr, that he outdid all the former acts of his valour, at that very time.

In short Sir, *Agelmond* excelled himself fighting for his own justification, and the service of *Gilismene*. But while he strikes, while he kills, while he overturns, notwithstanding his weariness and the wounds which he had received, he finds the number of his enemies increase, and though there seem'd no great probability, that he could preserve his life in the midst of so many dangers, however he despaired not to revenge himself, and to perform what he had threatned against *Lycorax*. *Garibaldus* and I followed him prosperously, but I fear that neither all our endeavours nor all our zeal, could have warrant'd him from an inevitable death, had not *Dorcira* her self understanding what had pass'd, hasten'd to his succour at the head of several of her own servants and Attendants.

The valiant King of the *Lombards* had by that time made his way to *Lycorax*, and vigorously pressed upon him, so that at the very instant that *Dorcira* appeared, he had sheath'd his Sword in the bowels of the perfidious *Sarmatian*, though unluckily for my Master, *Lycorax* did not expire upon the place, but reeling off he recovered to much strength as to get to *Gilismene's* Chamber, "You see Madam now, said he, that *Agelmond* no longer conceals his designs, you see that he aims as well at your life as at the life of *Harmaxes*, and that his intentions are to advance to the Throne of *Sarmatia* that Princess that has joyned with him in the midst of so many Swords Points.

Concluding these words he gave up his black Soul, and dyed like a Traitor as he had always lived, and *Gilismene* seeing the belief she had already so confirm'd by *Dorcira's* forwardness and the testimony of a dying man, felt such a violent agitation of spite, grief, anger and jealousy, that as wise as she was she forgot all her moderation, and suffred her self at length to break out into complaints and reproaches. *Amasis* for her part no sooner beheld *Dorcira's* Attendants fighting for the King of the *Lombards*, and *Dorcira* her self encouraging them with more than ordinary manhood, but her passions almost equal'd the force of her fair Mistress, that now she began to speak against a Prince, whose part she had always taken, at

all times, that she found the least appearance of reason to defend him: *Well*, Amasia, said the Princess with a resentment that had inflam'd her lovely countenance, *do you now any longer question the falsity of this ingrateful person? I am so far from questioning it, Madam,* answered Amasia, *that I palpably beheld it, and abhor it.*

In this manner came *Harmaxes* also, and put himself into a posture to have overwhelm'd my Master with his multitude: *Dorcira* trembled at it, and believing there was no way to deliver the King of the *Lombards* from the greatest danger that ever threatned his life, but to cause *Harmaxes* to retire, she forsook the person whom she loved, and took *Harmaxes* along with her, who was the more ready to obey her will, fancying that in the absence of that Princess, *Agelmoud* would be expos'd to some new danger. But on the contrary that valiant Prince soon made way to *Gilismene* her self; and he no sooner came near her but he dropped the point of his Sword out of respect, that warlike fury that encouraged him changing into a profound submission. However, surpris'd at the sight of the most amiable Beauty which he so passionately lov'd, he had not power presently to draw near her, being first desirous to discover in *Gilismene's* Heavenly eyes the condition of a fortune of which they were the Sovereign Controllors. The prepossessed Princess took that mark of respect for an effect of shame, and the countenance of a pretended offender which she thought she had reason to abominate, excited in her Soul a new addition to her indignation. So soon as she perceiv'd that *Agelmoud* mov'd toward her, *Approach*, cryed she, *approach perfidious wretch, to give me my dear's wound, which I prefer far before the sight of a Monster who is the object of all my antipathy.*

Upon those words more terrible than the Thunder of the Sky, our disconsolate Lover tremblingly ador'd the Princess that pronounced them; he felt a mortal Ague run through all his Veins, and as he was about to throw himself at the feet of the exasperated *Gilismene*, she turn'd about hastily to have gone into her Closet together with *Amasia*: but *Agelmoud* holding her by the Garment, *Stay, cruel Princess*, said he, *stay, see if you can suspect the testimony which I am about to give you of my love; see if you can question the despair into which a hatred which I have so little merited has thrown me?*

Having so said in a most doleful, yet passionate manner, he beheld that lovely Princess who had reduced him to that strange extremity; then turning the point of his Sword against Breast, and throwing himself upon it, he tumbled upon the Floor before we could possibly hinder the execution of so terrible a design: *Amasia* gave a loud shriek, and I ran to my poor Master, whom I saw swimming in two Rivers of Blood, while a mortal paleness covered all his face.

How extreme soever my afflictions were, instead of deploring in vain so dreadful a misfortune, I made it my business to try whether I could do my Sovereign any service, if he were in a condition to be the better for it; I gently drew out the fatal instrument of our disconsolation, and if *Amasia* came not to our relief, it was because she was obliged to assist the Princess her self who was swooning away in her Arms; yet notwithstanding the trouble wherein the generous *Amasia* found her self, she sent me presently her own and the Princess's veil, wherewith I stopp'd both *Agelmoud's* wounds, then I caus'd the Prince to be carried to a Bed, expecting the coming of the Chirurgeons whom I had sent for with all the speed imaginable. Then it was that all my courage forsook me, having beheld my Master as earnestly as my love would give me leave, I watered his face with my tears; and not being in a condition to consult the Laws of good Manners, or of Reason, I spoke and acted whatever a kind of rage with which I found my self transported could infuse into me: "Poor Prince, cryed I, was it possible that thou shouldst put an end to thy renowned days in so deplorable a manner? Was it possible, that fortune having assailed thee so often with so little advantage to her self, should at length make thee thine own enemy, having no other way to triumph over thy great courage.

But then not able to speak a word more, oppress'd with a grief too quick and vigorous, I looked upon *Agelmoud's* eyes; but alas, the lovely fire was gone that always enlivened them; I could neither descry the *sweet*, nor the *terrible* which they had accustomed to display according to the difference of occasions. While thus I was recollecting my sorrows, the Physicians and Chirurgeons came; who, without losing a moment of time, opening the wound, were not a little astonish'd at the wideness of it, but when they had well search'd the depth of it, they all agreed that it was not mortal, and that the Sword that made it had not well answered the despairing hand that thrust it in. This opinion of theirs recovered my Soul, yet notwithstanding that consolation which I receiv'd, I was a little afraid of my dear Master's life; and every moment I consult'd the countenances of the Chirurgeons, to see whether they had spoken according to the truth of their thoughts. In the interim they

applied

applied their first dressing, and poured upon the orifice of the wound a certain Balsam of that wonderful efficacy, that in a short time he came to his senses. Then did he softly turn his eyes upon those persons that stood about him, and having discovered my face, he fixed his eyes upon me with a kind of earnestness which upon such accidents infuses into a man such a dread as cannot be well expressed. It may be, that having but a confused knowledge of things, he beheld me in that manner either to satiate himself, or rather to require some other kind of service from me, than he receiv'd from those that dress'd his wounds. In short, he was no sooner able to distinguish the objects of sight, and to judge of things, but perceiving that he had been dress'd, and that there was an intention to save his life, he looked upon all those that were diligent in his relief, as his most cruel enemies: nay, he went farther, so that when he was able to stir his Arms, he endeavour'd to tear off the plasters that were laid upon his wounds; and because it was an easie thing for us to hinder him, in regard of his weakness, he complain'd thereof with an aspect that forced our pity, seeing himself in a condition not to act otherwise against himself, or to obtain that by violence which we refus'd to his entreaties: *And you also, Viginizus, said he to me with a feeble utterance, will you constrain me to live, that is, to be yet more miserable? Are not you a witness that Gilismene hates me? And would you then desire me to love my life? Live, Sir,* answered I, *live, for Gilismene has changed her resolution. she no longer has any unkindness for you, or to say better, she never had: they had deceiv'd her to incense her against you; but the Gods inspired you with this violent resolution that she might see her error, and to deliver you from those afflictions with which your life has been miserably persecuted.*

Though the King of the Lombards had shut his heart against all the sounds of joy, yet he could not chuse but feel some kind of consolation, hearing those words to which his innocency gave credit. True it is, that not being able long to flatter himself, he cast his eyes once more upon me, and he was about to require some proof of what I told him, when the Physicians gave him a farther assurance of it, and conjured him at the same time on *Gilismene's* behalf not to obstruct the pains which they took to preserve his life. That assurance wrought as effectually as they could desire upon the enamoured *Agelmond*, so that he not only suffer'd them to attend his cure, but he refrain'd from talking as they had advis'd him, how great soever his desire were to talk, and to learn the particulars of all those ways which they had made use of to deceive the Princess.

In the mean time the afflicted *Gilismene* had a longing impatience to visit the King of the Lombards: but *Harmaxes* and *Dorcira* so artificially oppos'd it, that the fair Princess could not have compass'd a design so favourable to my Master, had not the King, out of an eager desire of so absolute a happiness, relaps'd into a dangerous languishment: whereupon the Princess of the *Igylions* looking upon the death of the person whom she entirely loved, as the greatest evil that she could expect, not only consented to *Gilismene's* desire, but she facilitated that very visit which she had so much cause to be afraid of; for my part I thought it convenient to give my Master some reason to hope for so great a happiness, and to prepare him insensibly to undergo without danger so sudden an alteration from the extremity of despair to the height of joy; so that when I had us'd all those cautions that might settle *Agelmond's* heart in some security, the Princess came to his Apartment, but she came in such a manner as had like to have overturn'd all the foundations which I had taken so much care to lay; for she was negligently habited, and grief having sweetened all that she had terrible in the lustre of her fair eyes, she was to be beheld with more delight than fear, and yet no person could behold her without being mov'd to compassionate that sadness that vigorously assailed her heart; she mov'd toward *Agelmond* with a languishing air, and that languishment shewing it self in her Majestick Gate, had such an unutterable charm, that it powerfully commanded all the hearts of those that stood by. As soon as she perceiv'd the King of the Lombards, she sigh'd; but when she came near him the tears stood in her fair eyes, notwithstanding the flames that enlivened them. The enamoured *Agelmond* no sooner saw her, but, not being able to contain his joy: *Ah, 'tis too much, dear Princess,* cry'd he, *and though I suffered a thousand deaths for the divine Gilismene, yet should I accuse myself of too much pride, if I durst presume my self deserving the favour which I now receive. 'Tis you, most Generous Prince,* reply'd she, *whose perseverance is too obliging toward a person that reduc'd you to this extremity: true it is, that several probabilities made me collect that you had changed your faith, and you might have the same opinion of Gilismene. In short, we have been both guilty and innocent: or, to say better, we have mutually both preserved an inviolable faith, not knowing the sincerity of each other; let us preserve to the end so fair an affection, and be confidently perswaded, that if the King of the Lombards continues his favour to the Princess of the Sarmatians, the Princess of the Sarmatians will never be engaged to any other person*

ban to the King of the Lombards. She said no more for fear of injuring a Prince, altogether transported with love and joy, while the passionate Prince instead of returning an answer, kept his eyes fixed upon the fair eyes of the Princess, there to consider that affection which it was no difficult thing to discover.

Some few days after my Master finding himself in a better condition, to resist the powerful effects which *Gilismene's* visits produc'd, the fair Princess came again, and I had no sooner caus'd those persons to withdraw, whom I had any reason to suspect, but those two illustrious persons began to give each other that satisfaction, which they had so long desir'd. *Agelmoud* shew'd her the Letter which the perfidious *Lycorax* had given him, and the Princess having looked upon it with an extraordinary surprize, declared to whom and to what intent she had writ it. After that they mutually gave each other the absolute knowledge of all things, wherein as I have told you, they had been abus'd, when the incens'd Prince not being able, as he desired to have done in *Gilismene's* presence, to restrain the violence of his resentment; *Ab Traitor*, cryed he, *unworthy Rival, dishonourable Harmaxes, Thou wilt find one day by the success of thy perfidy, whether it be by such treacheries as these that thou art to pretend to that fair Conquest which thou wouldst ravish from me? Thou wilt one day see, whether it be possible to prosper by such ways as these, so contrary to those that lead to the accomplishing of all generous enterprises?*

He would have spoken more in that extasie, nor can I tell whether a Sex for which he had a general respect, could have protect'd *Dorcira* from his just reproaches, if the prudent and moderate *Gilismene* out of the effect of her admirable virtue, had not interrupted him, to put him beside all thoughts of revenge. *Sir*, said she with an incomparable sweetness and Majesty, *what is become of that magnanimous courage, of which you have given so many fair proofs upon so many various occasions? Ought not that to set you at this time above all those injuries which you have received, as it has always taught you to despise the greatest dangers? I find the courage of my soul*, replyed he, *sufficient to pardon all those wrongs that have been offer'd to the King of the Lombards, and do really pardon them every one: But, Madam, it troubles me to suffer those persecutions to go unpunished, which they have made my Princess suffer, nor can I remember them without a just indignation, without a just desire to revenge the injuries, done to that fair Princess whom I adore.* *Ab, Sir*, replyed the generous Princess really moved, *can you think upon the proceedings of Gilismene and Dorcira, without considering at the same time the proximity of blood that unites them to Gilismene? Think you that it were possible for me to see them miserable, without being my self afflicted? And in a word Sir, can you assail them without spilling my blood? Besides that after all this, neither the Prince of the Venedians nor the Princess of the Iglions have offended us, but as they were capable of an affection, which is not always grounded upon reason. If they had recourse to those contrivances that are beneath us, are we not in a manner obliged to pity their errors and their ignorance? Ought we not instead of offering violence for violence, rather bewail the persons of an illustrious extraction, whom the immortal Gods have not favoured with these advantages, which we have received from heaven?*

The King of the Lombards hearing such evidences of a prodigious virtue, beheld his Princess more earnestly, and transported with admiration; "Madam, cried he, how does the Grandeur of your Soul advance you above the degree of mortals, even as the beauty of your eyes, exalts the excellency of your charms above whatever was charming upon earth? But my dear Princess, amorously added he, is it to be imagin'd that in so generous and so great a Soul, there should be so much tendernefs with so much moderation? Can I believe that a wisdom, the exact regularity whereof I cannot chuse but fear, will ever suffer in your heart those motions of affection, which a Prince that adores you may be subject to require? Rather Sir, replyed she, can you imagine that the Princess of the *Sarmatians*, can fail of a true kindness for the King of the Lombards? No no, Sir, *Gilismene* can never want an affection for a Prince, to whom she is so much engaged: For this real kindness is so well founded upon eminent services, so firmly establish'd by the consent of a Father to whom I owed an entire obedience, so well fix'd by the sollicitations of a Brother infinitely dear, that I know nothing able to shake it, unless it be the infidelity of *Agelmoud*. How happy am I divine Princess, cried he interrupting her, taking her by one of her fair hands, which he kiss'd with a deep respect before she could withdraw it, Yes my divine Princess I am happy, and since the Mistress of my destiny has spoken these words of comfort to me, I desire all that the malignity of fortune can raise against *Agelmoud*, to trouble those joys that have taken possession of his Soul. However Sir, replyed she, I cannot tell whether it be just that I should give you this assured satisfaction, since I have still some ground to fear your repentment against the Prince of the *Venedians* and the Princess of the *Iglions*. Well Madam, replyed he, since you forget that *Harmaxes* and *Dorcira* were your most

“most cruel enemies, and only remember that they are your nearest relations next your Fa-
 “ther, I am willing to sacrifice all the anger which I had conceived against the persecutors
 “of your life. Yes, Madam, I pardon both the Princess of the *Igylions* and the Prince of
 “the *Venedians*, nor is it more true that I adore you, than it is certain that they shall never
 “receive any damage or injury, by consent of the King of the *Lombards*.”

The generous Princess was satisfied with this my Master's protestation, and in regard her
 virtue had banished from her Soul all thoughts of revenge either against *Harmaxes* or *Dor-
 cira*, she still behaved her self as she was accusom'd, toward those enemies of her repose.
 This made the Prince of the *Venedians* and the Princess of the *Igylions* believe, since they
 saw no change in *Gilismene's* carriage, that their wiles and cheats were not discovered,
 which was the reason that neither did they change their manner of acting. In the mean
 time, the Princess of the *Sarmatians* having rather shut up, than dispell'd the violence of
 her grief, by means of that constraint which she had put upon her self, perceiv'd by little
 and little the effect of a profound melancholy, which was retired to the bottom of her soul,
 so that the conceal'd poyson had no sooner gathered new strength, but it cast the incompa-
 rable *Gilismene* into a troublesome fit of sickness. The Prince of the *Venedians* was very
 diligent to provide her attendants, and to serve her himself: But *Gilismene's* heart was not
 to be touched with any acknowledgment for all his pains, for though the prudent Princess
 would not testify any disgust against a Prince so nearly related to her, yet she little regarded
 whatever he did for her, and denyed all courtesies at his hands, which decency would per-
 mit her to refuse. In the same manner was *Dorcira* received by the King from the *Lombards*,
 for it was only out of respect to her Sex, which that Prince naturally honoured, that he
 shewed her any countenance, or that he did not appear unmannerly to rid himself of the
 importunity of her visits. This she took so hainously, that she never met *Harmaxes* at the
 usual places of caballing, but with violent resolutions. At first they beheld one another
 without speaking a word, but with eyes wherein their passions seem'd lively colour'd forth,
 Soon after the Princess being the first that brake silence, Sir, said she, *I am quite weary of a-
 cting in vain, nor can I endure that an ingrateful Stranger should receive as injuries all the good
 offices which I labour to render him every moment. 'Tis much more grievous Madam,* (replyed
 he in a tone that testified his malice, *that a person so nearly related to me, should slight and
 contemn me in this manner: But my misfortune astonishes me worse than yours, that I should
 meet with as much constancy and resolution in the heart of a young Virgin, as you find in the brest
 of a haughty Soldier.* Well Sir, replyed the Princess of the *Igylions*, *then let us cast off this
 Yoke which they have imposed upon us, so little conformable to our degree, and the grandeur of
 our courage. Let us hate at length what we ought not to love, and since our power is absolute in
 Tamyrake, let us destroy what we cannot purchase to our selves. Praised be the Gods Madam,*
 replyed the Prince of the *Venedians*, *for having inspir'd you with this generous resolution; now
 it is that you shew your self to be that illustrious Princess, whose constant and elevated thoughts have
 struck an admiration over all Sarmatia. For indeed there is a necessity for us to destroy a common
 Enemy, that refuses you a heart which you have so well deserved, and that robs me of the Princess
 whom I adore.* How, said she interrupting him and blushing, *would you that we should begin
 our Revenge upon Agelmond? Would you draw down all the forces of the Lombards and the
 Huns, into a Kingdom where we are so ill assured of the Sovereignty, and where that very person,
 far more popular than you, is able to raise all the people against your faction.* No no, Sir, *'tis
 more secure for us to destroy Gilismene, she has more Right than you to Sarmatia, and her death
 will not only establish you in the Throne, but will facilitate a way for you to purchase an Alliance
 with the King of the Lombards.* “But Madam, cried he shewing his dislike of her advice, will
 “it be possible for you to purchase this Alliance, rather do you not believe that *Agelmond*
 “will arm all the force of his Kingdom against us? Can you otherwise think but that he
 “will be more ready to sacrifice your life to the Ghost of *Gilismene*, than to yield you a place
 “in that heart, which she with so much Sovereignty possesses. “And you Sir, (*boldly re-
 “plyed she, being touched to the quick at Harmaxes's words*) think you that you shall sooner
 “overcome *Gilismene* than I gain the good will of *Agelmond*? That friendship, said he, which is
 “ordinarily among kindred, may at length perhaps encline the Princess of the *Sarmatians*,
 “not to hate the Prince of the *Venedians*. Quite on the contrary, replyed she, there is no-
 “thing so opposite to love, as that friendship of parents from which you hope so much re-
 “lief. And it may be boldly maintained that *Gilismene* will never have that affection for
 “*Harmaxes* which he aims at, seeing that from her infancy her affection has been of a
 “another nature. “That's your opinion Madam, replyed he, but since mine is quite contra-
 “ry to yours, I declare to you that I will not quit my hopes: And therefore that we may
 “lose no time in proving which of our opinions is best, let us take such courses as may be
 “equally

“equally advantageous; let us leave which of these two persons we love to the determination of fate, and which of us two fortune shall favour, they shall labour for the others satisfaction. *Dorcira* having consented, they went forth both together, and conferred privately in the Garden, very likely with an intention to deceive each other.

However, some few days after a report was spread abroad that *Gilismene's* first Physician was discarded: that *Amasia* had receiv'd orders to be gone; and that because that generous Virgin would not obey her Mistress's Enemies, she was taken away by force, and carried to a House which her Father had built upon the River *Borythenes*; the news hereof very sensibly afflicted me, and I remember it struck me with such a secret terror that might well pass for a preface of the misfortune that threatened us. However, I spoke not a word thereof to my Master till some time after, that upon the arrival of one of his Subjects which came to *Tamyraque* upon extraordinary business, I did not bind my self to so strict a silence. That *Lombard* having undertaken a voyage, and meeting by accident with a Knight of the *Hun's* Nation, had quarrell'd with him, and briskly encountered him, being encouraged by the interest which his fidelity to the Royal Family of his own Country made him take. The *Hun* less stout than he was forc'd to desire Quarter after he had received three or four wounds; and whether it were that he thought more easily to obtain Quarter out of the hopes which he gave him of some great reward, or that he desired to charge his Enemy with the troublesome commission which he had in trust, and was weary of by reason of his wounds: the *Hun* delivered into the *Lombard's* hand a packet, which the famous *Keva* General of the *Huns* had sent to the King his Master: also to shew the importance of the packet, he told the *Lombard* that *Keva* did therein give an account to the King of the *Huns* of the Negotiation that kept him at the Court of *Honorius*; and gave him intelligence besides of a fair Princess that *Mundisc* had taken away by force. At those last words the *Lombard* was overjoyed, and preferring the fidelity he owed his Prince before any other act of duty or promise, he posted with all haste to *Tamyraque*. *Keva's* Letter was very welcome to *Agelmond*, who having opened it with great expectations of news, to the best of my remembrance read therein these following words.

Keva to the King of the Huns.

Sir, we have continued our private conferences, and I have obtain'd almost all those things which I demanded in your Majesty's name: I make no question, but together with the alliance of the two Nations, to make another, which may unite your Royal Family to that of the great Theodosius, and to settle the Princess Theodolinda upon the Throne of the most famous Empire that ever was. I did believe that *Honorius* would make some obstruction in that important affair, for I was certainly inform'd by *Heraclian*, that the Emperour was passionately in love with a Stranger who was called *Bellamira*. But, Sir, can you believe it? For *Bellamira* does but slight the lofty Title which the Emperour of the Romans so submissively offers her; and that which I more wonder at, was, that that noble Stranger is no other than the fair Princess which, to the great displeasure of your Majesty, *Mundisc* carried away by force through the impulse of his love, the violence whereof he could not moderate.

The King receiv'd some consolation, understanding in what place he might find *Agione*, and that she was treated with respect by the most potent Monarch of the West: nevertheless he resolv'd to send Embassadors to *Honorius* as soon as possibly he could, to demand her back again, or else to invade *Italy* with a powerful Army, should the Emperour, possess'd with too strong a passion, refuse to deliver a Princess so near and dearly related to him.

But while he desires so earnestly to see *Gilismene*, and to deliver *Agione*, while so just a desire contributes so visibly to his cure, and that *Gilismene* her self began seemingly to mend, at the same time, Sir, that incomparable Princess dies, and her sudden death caus'd a general consternation among all the *Sarmatians*. But in regard *Harmaxes* and *Dorcira* were very much dreaded in *Tamyraque*, the people durst not openly accuse them to be the authors of her death: so that those persons who spoke with most freedom, did but only mutter that the death of *Gilismene* was the fatal effect of some poison prepared by the disorderly rage of ambition and jealousy. The discarding *Amasia* and the Phylician whom the Tyrants could not entice to their party, sufficiently confirm'd the suspicion, but the orders which

the Prince of the *Venedians* afterwards gave, put them almost quite out of doubt. For in short, *Hymixes* would not permit any person to come near the Princess, not the very principal of her own Servants, causing her to be carried out in the night, and to be buried without any State in the Tomb of her Ancestors, for fear, as he said, that the sight of so sad an object should augment the affliction of the *Sarmatians*. 'Tis true, that the next day he ordered sumptuous preparations for *Gilismene's* Funerals, and counterfeited a shew of all the signs of sorrow and heaviness; whether it were that he were really grieved, or that he thought it necessary to appear so in the sight of a people that were sincerely dejected for their loss. In the mean time I was obliged to advertise my poor Master of the most terrible of all his misfortunes: 'twas expedient for him to understand the extremity of his miseries, and the most dismal stroke that the most dreadful Thunders of Heaven had ever given him. To this purpose I ponder'd for some time how to prepare his fancy, and how I might in some measure qualify that mortal grief which I knew would seize his heart upon the first bad tidings of the accomplishment of his misfortunes; I forbid all persons to go near him, but by order, to the end, that being alone with him, I might with less difficulty take such opportunities as might give the fairer success to my design. First therefore I began to tell him that *Gilismene's* sickness was more dangerous than it was thought to be; and because the sorrow of my countenance agreed with my words, the enamour'd Prince impatiently interrupting me, *Ah, Viginizus*, cryed he, as if he had taken some alarm, *What is it that you tell me? That which I ought not to conceal*, answered I sighing. *But, Viginizus*, pursued he, *is my Princess in any danger? Though she were, Sir*, replied I, *and though it were the will of Heaven it self to take from the earth that ornament that so adorns it, is it for me, Sir, to tell you the news? Is it for me to bring the tidings of such a direful stroke of fortune?*

Upon those words *Agelmond* appearing much more troubled, earnestly beheld me, and with a trembling utterance, *I beg of thee, Viginizus*, said he, *to explain thy meaning fully*. While he spake in that manner he kept his eyes fixed upon mine, and seeing nothing there that pleas'd him, nor indeed in any other part of my countenance; *Yet once more*, said he, *speak, Viginizus, speak; and if I must die, pronounce my doom, without suffering me to linger out a life more insupportable than the most cruel death*. *Sir*, replied I, *I do assure you, that if the incens'd Gods do dispose of the destiny upon which yours depends, contrary to our expectations, I will not hide the misfortune from you, nor any part of its circumstances. It may be I may go a little farther than you think; for I do not believe that after so great a loss I shall have so much courage to desire you to take care of your own life, though my own have an inseparable dependency upon it*.

Those words having surpris'd *Agelmond*, and as it were disarm'd his grief, he beheld me with more moderation, and in the language of his countenance seem'd to tell me, that he relyed with an absolute confidence upon me: that it was from me that he expected the determination of his fate: and that it was from my mouth that he looked to be inform'd of what he had to hope, or what to fear. When I found that my innocent wile had thus succeeded, and that my Prince was absolutely dispos'd to give credit to what I should say, *Sir*, said I, pursuing my discourse, *since I have promised not to flatter a Master to whom I am entirely devoted, it behoves me to advertise you, that though you should lose the Princess of the Sarmatians, the Heavens have not decreed that you should follow her, and at the same time put an end to all your troubles*. *How, Viginizus*, cryed he, interrupting me, *do you change your opinion already*. *Quite on the contrary, Sir*, said I, *that which I say is a true sign of my devotion to your interests, since it is only for your honour, and the honour of the Princess that I speak as I do*. *In short, Sir, would you die, despoiled of your Kingdom, like a cowardly Prince whose low courage had submitted to his misfortune? Would you that the world should believe that you die for grief to see your only Sister Agione under the power of a Prince so potent, that you could never hope to reduce him to the necessity of restoring her? Do you not believe, Sir, that the world will attribute your death to these two great losses, the report whereof is already spread over all the earth? Think you that men will dive into your heart for arguments proper to excuse your despair, which only love can render pardonable in the Souls of great men? Ah, Sir, if that be your opinion, I beseech you chase it from your Breast, it is too flattering, it will injure you too much: all the world gazes upon your Territories, while your people harass one another with civil wars: all the world knows that the Princess of the Lombards is carried away by force; and after all these remarkable misfortunes can you imagine it honourable, that a passion known to so few should be the cause of your death? Your reasons*, impatiently cryed he, *are not without very good ground: but, Viginizus, how dreadful they are to me! How sadly do I suffer already from the dismal apprehensions which they have insus'd into me! For Heaven's sake hold*

me no longer in suspense, speak, explain your meaning; you have no more to do for a miserable wretch that endures a torment a thousand times more horrible than death.

Upon those words I resolv'd to make use of that favourable opportunity, for fear I should be constrain'd to renew my Master's affliction: so that I summon'd up all my strength to enable me to reveal to him at length that which I knew he could not long be ignorant of. So soon as he perceiv'd that I began to behold him with a pensive look, and that the tears fell from my eyes, *O Gods*, cryed he, *Viginizus*; like one distracted, *what do your tears denounce?* *That all is lost, Sir*, answer'd I sighing, *and that Gilisimene*——
How, cryed he, interrupting me, transported with despair, *is Gilisimene dead?* And observing that my countenance gave him too much assurance, not having the power to speak a word more, he laid his hand upon his wound to have tore it open, that he might not survive the greatest of his misfortunes, I no sooner conjectured his intent, but I laid hold of his Arm, and while he beheld me with a threatening aspect, and endeavoured to get loose, I called the Servants in, to the end that the disconsolate Prince losing the hope of executing his design, might at the same time moderate a violence no less dangerous than that from which I sought to avert his despairing hand. Thus disappointed, and darting wild and furious looks upon the persons that stood about him, *Barbarians*, cryed he, *will you never cease to persecute me with your importunate double diligence? Will you never leave to do me kindnesses that only prolong my sufferings? And you, Viginizus, once so faithful to your King, but now so disobedient to his will; what is become of your affection? What is become of the Generosity of your Soul? Do you hate me because you see the Heavens and the Earth abominate me? Are you my Enemy when you see me encompassed round with none but Enemies? And do you conspire with those Enemies to prolong the torments which I endure?* *Sir*, reply'd I with a more courageous and resolute utterance, *I have already told you, that it is not for you to die like a mean and cowardly Sufferer. Reascend your Throne, Sir, reascend your Throne, and die like a King; deliver Agione, and then die honourably, rather than give the world an occasion to report any thing disadvantageous to our memory. But, Viginizus*, reply'd he with tears in his eyes, *have I not given sufficient proof of my valour, which may both assure your belief, and permit me to die without that nicety of which you would fain make me afraid? Though you have given those proofs of your courage, you are still Sovereign of a warlike Nation, you have a potent Army under your command, and you are now to declare a war against the Emperour of the Romans. But, Sir, now you are so far from all assistance, stripped of your Dominions, without Arms; while you have an honourable quarrel with the Successors of the Great Theodosius, what will all the world say, what will posterity say, if now you faint without doing something worthy that name which you render'd so famous, so renowned.*

This discourse of mine having made some impression in the King of the Lombards's heart, he more earnestly beheld me; and after he had fetch'd a deep sigh, *Is it possible*, said he, *that you will so obstinately constrain me to prolong my torments? And that I must be oblig'd to live for a Princess's sake that is dead?* 'Tis not for Gilisimene's sake, reply'd I, *that you prolong your life: it would be more noble to let the world see that you died for that fair Princess, than when it were in your power to live like a great King, when surrounded with all the fame that you have won, you might be said to forsake all that honour for her sake. But now all the world will attribute your death not to the death of Gilisimene, but to Agelmond's own misfortunes which he poorly faint'd under. Well, Viginizus*, answer'd he, *I will endure this miserable life a little longer, since it must be so; and that it is not just, that loving Gilisimene I should leave behind any suspicions after my death which may be prejudicial to my memory. After these few words he paus'd, and fetching several sighs, then of a sudden returning an answer to his own thoughts, Yes, yes*, pursued he, *I will live: the end of my sufferings is not yet come: it behoves me to surmount all those misfortunes that cross my life; and to shew to all the world, that the misfortunes of Gilisimene only had power to oppress the courage of Agelmond.*

He had no sooner taken that resolution, but he requested the Chirurgeons to redouble their care, and for his part he contributed all he could to the success of their endeavours. And thus it might be said, that he desired the recovery of his health that he might die the sooner. But now having got a little time while this eager desire of his advanced his cure, I went abroad and walked into every Quarter of the City where I was not known, to learn what news were stirring that concern'd my Master: chiefly I desired to find out whether the people were not inclin'd to take his part, should the Princess of the *Igylions* be so unjust as to stop him in *Tamyraque*. But I could not hear of any design which they had upon his liberty, there being nothing more pryed into than *Harmaxer's* behaviour at that time:

All people wondred that he was less zealous than at first, in providing for *Gilismene's* Funeral, that he took such particular care not only to appease the exasperated *Amasis*, but absolutely to purchase her friendship: 'Twas therefore said that he would have given the Command which he had bestowed upon *Lycorax* to *Amasis's* Father, but that he would not accept it, and yet on the other side *Lycorax's* Father could not obtain it, though he sued for it as a recompence due to him, and a right already belonging to his Family. I gave my Master an account of what I had learn'd, but instead of minding such things as did not concern *Gilismene*, he continually bewail'd the loss of that fair Princess. He beg'd her pardon for not following her, and notwithstanding the great designs that made him desire to live, he could not but look with shame upon the remainder of his days. When he began to sit up, I made it my business to get all things ready, that there might be nothing to obstruct our departure, and notwithstanding my unwillingness to see the Princess of the *Igylians*, I omitted not to go to her Apartment, that I might discover what her intentions were toward my Prince. There I easily perceiv'd that though she did not visit him so often, as she had accus'd to do, out of meer shame and madness, yet she had the same affection for him as formerly, and that instead of putting any constraint upon him, she had a design to renew her kindnesses, with an intention still to try if she could stir his heart. In short, she not only offer'd me all things necessary for the King of the *Lombards*, but also study'd for all accommodations, that might make a tedious Journey more pleasant and easie.

When I came back to the unfortunate Lover, whose hope and joy were buried in *Gilismene's* Tomb, I observed that, mangre the resolution that he had taken, mangre the constancy of his mind and all the vigour of his courage, his mouth was open to his sighs, and that his eyes paid the tribute of their Tears, to the memory of his departed Princess. Cruel death, cryed he, *that instead of darting thy Arms at a heap of persons inconsiderable, didst turn thy fatal Arms against the divine Gilismene? Since thou hast not power enough to hurt me, and that thou canst not restore me what thou hast taken from me, why dost thou not also take the deplorable remainder of that Princess of which thou hast robbed me?* Then inveighing against heaven, though he were always very religious; *Envious Deities,* cryed he transported with the violence of his grief) *why have you deprived the earth of its most glorious ornament? Did you fear that Gilismene received here below, those homages which are only due to your selves? Or was it only to make me miserable, that you have display'd all your malice against me? Why did you not throw down upon his abominated head your most consuming thunders, instead of meanly assailing the life of a fair and innocent Princess, instead of destroying the perfection of your own handy work, which you had fram'd with so much care and consultation? And You Gilismene, Princess altogether charming, if in quitting whatever you had of mortality, you have not altogether yet forgot all thoughts of earthly affairs, cast your eyes upon your faithful Agelmond. Nay I am still faithful, and if I live after your decease, 'tis not for any kindness that I have for a world that has nothing in it which I covet, unless it be to dye such a death as may not be unworthy nor beneath the virtue of a Prince who is entirely yours. I am willing to dye, dear Princess, I am willing to dye, and since you cannot be deceived in that immortal light with which you are environ'd, certainly you cannot question the desire which I have to follow you.* While he thus entertain'd his sorrow, notwithstanding the strict injunctions, which his Physicians had laid upon him to be silent, I still made it my business to provide things necessary for our departure.

To relate the circumstances of a journey, which we undertook some few days after, would be to little purpose, it shall suffice therefore to tell you, that the disconsolate *Agelmond* sigh'd all the way, and continually bewailed the loss of his Princess. He took along with him no other Arms but what he always us'd to wear, only a black Plume shadowed his Helmet, and all the outward marks of his grief, were suitable to the sadness of his countenance. Thus we travelled through the vast Province of the *Peucors*, pass'd the *Vizula*, and arriv'd at *Lupia*. The nearer we came to the Territories of the King my Master, the more news we heard of what was act'd there: we understood that there were several factions, that there were two Armies on foot, whose Commanders aspir'd to the Sovereignty, notwithstanding a third party, which the friends of *Grimaldus* and mine oppos'd against the other two, for the interest of the Royal Authority. Nevertheless you may judge from hence, of the affection and veneration which the *Lombards* had for *Agelmond* their Prince, for no sooner had he set foot in his own Territories, but the report of his return being nois'd abroad, and successfully spreading it self through the whole extent of his Dominions, though his Face was grown pale, sad and lean, yet did his presence cause an universal joy, all factions united, and the conformity of their Allegiance, embodying them all together under the Standards of the valiant *Agelmond*, it seem'd as if they had not taken Arms, but only to furnish their King with a more numerous Army, without giving him the trouble of raising men. My

My Master seeing such a brave Army ready to follow him, sent Embassadors to the Emperour of the Romans to demand the Stranger *Bellamira*, whom he took to be *Agione*, and marched toward *Menofgade* with an intention to invade *Italy*, if *Honorius* should refuse to restore him the Princess of the *Lombards*. Twenty several Nations were alarm'd at our formidable preparations for War, being ignorant of *Agelmond's* design: and *Rome* it self also trembled, hearing that our invincible King was not satisfied with *Honorius's* Answer: for he being then at *Ravenna*, told the *Lombard* Embassadors, that it was not in his power to restore *Bellamira*, because *Heraclian* had carried her away by force; and not only gave them smart language, but also flew out against *Agelmond* himself, whether it were that he was vexed to think of losing a beautiful Lady, whom he so passionately lov'd, or that he thought to recover his reputation in that manner, who had shewed so little courage during the irruption of the *Goths* into *Italy*: Tell your Master, said he, that he need not have sought for such a pretence to declare a war against me: I know that the riches of pleasant Countries more happy in their Climate than his own, more powerfully invite him to invade our Lands, than his respect to *Bellamira*: but though the misfortune of *Rome*, and the absence of *Constance* embolder him to quarrel with the Emperour of the Romans, he shall know that it is not an easie thing for the Son of *Agion* to assail the Successor of the great *Theodosius*.

The *Lombard* Embassadors not enduring *Honorius's* language so contrary to his wonted mildness, return'd him an answer becoming the haughtiness of their Nation, Sir, said they, either you are ignorant of the King our Master's reputation; or we our selves may not understand with what success your fierceness against *Agelmond* may inspire you, since *Rome's* misfortune which you mention your self. But you are to know that the invincible Master whom we serve, was never engaged in any war wherein he was not absolutely victorious.

They uttered those words with such an undaunted aspect, that you might have easily perceiv'd in their countenances the confidence which they had in the valour of their King: and *Honorius*, though naturally gentle, having begun to raise his voice, had certainly flown out into a passion, had not the wiser and more considerable of his Favourites over-ruled his heat, for fear of consequences worse than these which they had yet any ground to apprehend. With this answer the *Lombard* Embassadors departed, and in regard they were no way satisfied with *Honorius's* demeanour, they gave out threatening speeches in all the Cities through which they travelled. But so soon as they came to the King their Master, they gave him an account of their Embassy, and not omitting the least circumstance fitting for him to know, they rekindled in the Breast of the Generous *Agelmond* a desire of Glory, which the death of *Gilismene* had almost extinguished. Well, answered he with a fierceness which his melancholy rendered more terrible, we shall see how bravely he will maintain the magnificent Titles of Emperour and Successor of *Theodosius* against the Son of *Agion*.

Nor did he say any more, his humour not permitting him to boast, or threaten a Prince whom so many several Kingdoms yet separated from his Army. Some *Lombards* there were that did not put so favourable an interpretation upon his silence, imagining that he did not march with that confidence which was wont to accompany him in the greatest dangers, being then to lead his Army against that famous people who had subdued all the world by so many remarkable victories.

But on the contrary, the haughty King felt a double augmentation of his courage, while he prepared to invade the Territories of the *Cesars*. The Glory of the enterprize kindled a new heat in his Soul, so that after we had marched through several Provinces, we drew between *Menofgade* and *Marobude*, and came at length to the Banks of the *Danubius*, without the least opposition. True it is, that at that time all the Forces of the *Franks*, *Gauls*, *Burgundians*, *Cimbrians*, *Suevians*, and several other Nations whom *Resamond's* quarrel had aim'd one against the other, were then as now they are encamped upon the Banks of the *Rhine* in the sight of the famous *Cologne*. So that *Agelmond* without any molestation marched through *Vindelicia*, not finding any resistance till he came into the Country of the *Rhetians*. There it was that the Lieutenant of *Honorius*, supported by a fell and warlike Nation, living at the foot of the *Alpes*, briskly oppos'd our Van-Guard. Their onset was so vigorous, that they might have made us give ground, if not absolutely routed us, had not the admirable courage of our Chief, who fought at the head of his Army, stopped their fury. But *Agelmond* having born the first brunt, broke in among their Ranks, drave them vigorously before him, and had cut them all in pieces, had not their Forests favourable to their flight, rescued them from his valour. *Italy* alarm'd at this success, but much more at the renowned name of the Enemy that was making long days marches toward her, assembled all her force to oppose a Conquerour whom victory followed every where; which when *Agelmond* heard, he resolv'd to give the *Romans* Battel before they recovered their

courage: to which purpose, having pass'd the *Alpes*, he encamped his Army in a wide plain that enlarges it self at the foot of the Mountains, and having refresh'd his Soldiers for two or three days, he advanced towards the Enemy lying between *Mantua* and *Mordena*.

There it was that our valiant King perform'd Exploits far surpassing those which till then we had admired; whether it were that he fought with more contempt of his life, or whether it were his eagerness to deliver his Sister, to the end he might with the better excuse an end to his sufferings and miseries by a quick death. Nevertheless, at first he found a stout resistance; for *Castinus*, *Aurelian* and *Ariobindus* miraculously signalized themselves for their Country, and the young *Ætius* did wonders worthy the renown of ancient *Rome*. In short, he fell into our left Wing, and had questionless disordered it, had not the victorious *Agelmond* hastened to their relief, after he had wounded *Castinus*, taken *Ariobindus*, and forc'd the main Battel to give ground, notwithstanding all the bravery of a multitude of Voluntiers that fought there with an extraordinary valour. The fiery *Ætius* lost neither his courage, nor his judgment in the view of an invincible enemy; but on the contrary, he assailed him with all the vigour that a great courage could infuse into him, but being parted from his illustrious adversary, they forsook one another with more malice than advantage. However, victory was faithful to the King of the *Lombards*, and declared her self absolutely for us, inasmuch that *Agelmond* not only found himself in a condition to refresh his men in fairer Quarters, but also to march to *Ravenna* when he had rested some few days.

After that he led us into the fertile Country about *Bononia* for our greater refreshment; and indeed we *Lombards* were so taken with the pleasures of that soil, that we parted not from thence but with an extreme sorrow, and an eager desire to return again, and to settle a Monarchy in our own renowned name. But when the hardy *Agelmond* resolv'd to take his march toward the City where *Honorius* had shut himself up, to the great good fortune of that Prince, as we were about to sit down before it, *Agelmond* received a Letter that stay'd his Arm, and not only set a bound to his Conquests, but made him also repent that he had proceeded so far. The Letter was sent by the Princess *Agione* her self, who understanding what *Agelmond* had perform'd for her deliverance, was willing to divert the fury of the Tempest from a Country whereof she had no reason to complain: and at the same time to give the King her Brother an account of all things that concern'd her. The Letter was to this effect.

The Princess *Agione* to the King of the *Lombards*.

Sir, could I have sooner sent you this news, I had prevented the shedding of much innocent blood, and hindered you from declaring war against a Prince that never did you any injury. I wish to Heaven that I were in his power, rather than to be continually persecuted by the person that forced me from my Country. This Tyrant finding no Sanctuary in the King his Father's Territories, is gone to seek for refuge either at *Cologne*, or in the Army of *Pharamond*, not daring to adventure among the *Cimbrians*, where Prince *Balamir* is in high esteem. This is all that an unfortunate Virgin can inform you, who has not one moment of liberty. I conjure you to make use of the advice which I send you, and remember that I expect you with all the impatience that can torment a Captive Princess, who looks upon you as her only deliverer.

Agelmond just in all his actions, had no sooner read the Princess his Sister's Letter, but he found all his anger bent against *Mundisic*: so that he not only caus'd all acts of Hostility to cease, which we were constrain'd to exercise in an Enemy's Country for our subsistence; but he resolv'd also to send offers of peace to *Honorius*, and to restore him all those places which we held in *Italy*. The Emperour transported with my Master's Generosity, receiv'd his Commissioners with as much kindness and acknowledgment as he had shewed disobedience to our former Embassadours; so that that war was concluded with more haste and more joy than can be imagined. *Agelmond* almost the very same moment after gave orders for the march of the Army, and then left it; taking along with him only a small but select number of Horse, that he might with less trouble perform a journey, to the end whereof he might make so much haste, as also lest the news of his approach should come before his arrival to the ears of an enemy that had so much reason to shun him. We cross'd the *Alpes*, and travelled through *Gallia* with an extraordinary speed, and when we came into *Belgia*.

we began to enquire what news in all places, and to inform our selves of all particulars that might be of any advantage to us. Every morning our little Troop divided it self, with order to meet again at Night at the Rendezvous appointed. But though we did all that lay in our power, our diligence was all to no purpose, for we not only sought for *Mundisic* in Ten several Countries, and Thirty several Cities in vain, but we remain'd a long time either in *Cologne*, or in *Pharamond's* Army as volunteers, without any possibility of informing our selves any thing that might concern our Princess. At length Sir, which was but another day and in the Wood which parts the two Camps, we learn'd the news which we had inquired in so many places, and which we so ardently desired to know. For there we met with two Hunnish Knights, whom we defeated with their company, and by a prisoner that we took, we understood that *Grimwaldus* had met with the party that convoyed *Agione*, that he charged them, and notwithstanding the inequality of their number, put them to flight, being assisted by a body of *Burgundian* Horse, which the justice of heaven sent to his relief. You have heard already in what condition *Ambiomer* found the Princess of the *Lombards*, and I question not but you have heard all the particulars, in reference to *Agelmond's* meeting with *Mundisic*: So that Sir, to finish my relation I am only to assure you, that if it were no small joy to find so dear a Sister among so many beautiful Ladies as are in this Camp, yet the satisfaction which he has thence received, has but augmented the profound sadness that reigns in his Soul. For now in short he has bent all his thoughts toward death, either because that it alone can put an end to the sufferings that persecute his life, or else because he looks upon it as the only means, that remains to bring him to that charming and unfortunate Princess, whom he has always adored in despite of that cruel separation, which one would have thought might have made him dispense with some part of his Constancy.

Viginizus had no sooner concluded his relation, but the King of *Suevia*, the Princess *Albisinda* and the famous *Ambiomer*, beheld him without returning answer, whether it were to recollect the principal accidents of the story which they had heard, or whether it were that the adventures of the *Lombard* King, appeared so extraordinary as to put them into a kind of an amaze. But the King of *Suevia* first breaking silence, with an aspect more obliging than was to be expected from the ruggedness of his disposition, to testify his acknowledgment to the Squire of a King, whose friendship he so earnestly desired, *We must confess*, said he to *Viginizus*, *that there have been strange intermixtures in the life of your illustrious Master. That great person has not triumphed upon all occasions, where he wanted no assistance but his own courage, but only to be the more unhappy in his pretensions to the Princess of Sarmatia, and Fortune that always favoured his valour in Combat, has been so ingenuous and so obstinate, to persecute him upon the score of his affection, that certainly, as great as he was, he had fainted under the burthen, had not your prudence prevented his fatal intentions. But Viginizus*, added he infligated by his prevailing passion, *seeing that it was through your care that Agelmond still lives, and that we enjoy his presence in our Camp, why should not we be beholding to you also for the assistance of so great a King: Since his Army must pass quite through Germany, and since his Kingdom is in perfect peace, the Lombards might as well joyn with the Cimbrians and Suevians, and win their share of honour in so memorable a war, wherein you see all Europe engaged, with all her chiefest potentates upon one side or other.* "Sir, replied *Viginizus*, I shall make such proposals to my Master, as your Majesty shall think expedient, though my solicitation would be needless to a Prince, who so well understands the rules of duty and generosity, but that the weight of his particular misfortunes, has as it were stifled all those thoughts which he ought to have for the general interest of Nations. Truly I should think, replied the famous Gaul, that after the death of the person beloved, nothing could have gone to the heart of such a Hero as *Agelmond*. "We see however, said the King of *Suevia* impatiently interrupting him, that Prince *Balamir* whose courage is known to all the world, has here in our Camp met with the end of a sorrow, that in all probability would have lasted as long as he had lived, and I am easily perswaded that the same charms that wrought that change in *Balamir*, may at least give some consolation to the King of the *Lombards*. "I believe, replied *Ambiomer*, that there are few examples among great men of such a change, and I must confess that notwithstanding that veneration which I bear to the Prince of the *Huns* virtue, I always thought from time to time, that so fair a life was not always exempted from blemish. When I consider that he has forgot the most admirable Princess of the *Goths*, by whom he was so tenderly beloved, I could never endure that kind of infidelity, let the beauty be never so divine that caused it. "You are very precise, replied the King of *Suevia*, but should the eyes of the *Lombard* Princess steal away your heart from the Queen of the *Thuringians*, would you fear to be guilty of such an ap-
parent

“parent inconstancy. Upon those words *Ambioner* blushed, but having recovered himself, Sir, said he, *If through the infligation of a heart too haughty for my fortune, I durst pretend to wear Agione's chains, after I had had the strength to break those Fetters which Amalazonth's has inhumanly imposed upon me, I should not only find my excuse in the different behaviour of these two Princesses, but I also believe that all my friends would rejoice with me, for so happy a change. If what is reported be true, replied the King of Suevia, I agree that the Queen of Turingia has not been over grateful to the valiant defender of her Dominions, and therefore, since that, contrary to the will of the King her Father who had a kindness for you, she has refused you the reward that was your due, you have no reason to continue your service to a person so unthankful. For my part I found something so strange in her behaviour, when she sent her forces away from our Camp, that I should be very glad to hear what you did for her in Turingia, that I might have the satisfaction to admire the actions of so brave a Knight, and to see the ingratitude of a Princess who has renounced her own honour, by separating her self from your interests. Those adventures whereof you require the rehearsal, replied *Ambioner*, are too considerable to be repeated after the great exploits of the Lombard King, but if your Majesty continue in the same mind to morrow, less possessed perhaps with those remarkable circumstances that *Viginizus* has rehearsed, a certain Gaul that knows all the particulars of my life, shall in a few words give you a full account, slightly passing over those which are more commonly known. In the mean time, said he, be pleased to let me take part in what concerns a fair Princess, of whose charms you would make me afraid, and to complain that *Viginizus* has not exactly told us, that which relates to the rest of her misfortunes. I did not believe it necessary, replied *Agelmoud's* Squire, to insert so long a relation into a Story tedious enough of it self. But since the generous *Ambioner* to whom all the Lombards are obliged, requires a particular recital, be pleased Sir, (continued he addressing himself to the King of Suevia) to give me leave to satisfy his curiosity, and to tell him what I have heard from the mouth of *Guinoaldus*, as also from the lips of our Princess her self. Having so said he pursued his discourse as follows.*

The perfidious *Mundisic* had no sooner got the Princess *Agione* into his possession, but he was uncertain what rode to take, *Agathyrhis* had retaken from him those places which he held in *Sarmatia*, whither he had carried the fair and unfortunate *Hunnimonda* before, nor was there any security in his Fathers Territories, whom he had provoked by a second crime. On the other side, all the Nations of high Germany were either allyed to the *Huns* or in amity with the *Lombards*, so that he resolv'd to travel either into *Gallia*, or to put himself into the Army of the *Franks*, thinking to find a Sanctuary there, after he had rendred himself remarkable by his valour.

To this purpose he bent his course toward *Cologne*, and had soon arriv'd there, but that the Princess after she had shewn an admirable constancy of courage, at length fainting under the burthens of her Travels and sadness, fell into a dangerous fit of sickness, that put her Ravisher into no small affright. The Tyrant seem'd to be very much afflicted, and not only for some time forbore to persecute the afflicted *Agione*, but observing in a few days after that her indisposition increased, he caus'd her to be carried to a Town quite out of any Rode, which he thought those that pursued him would take. In the mean time *Grimoaldus* who had got together with all the hast he could, such a company of Knights as he thought most proper to follow him, omitted nothing that lay in his power to set at liberty the Sister of his Sovereign, performing all things that a real fidelity could prompt him to, upon such an occasion: But all his diligence prov'd ineffectual for a long time, for *Mundisic* foreseeing that the *Lombards* would leave no means nor dangers unattempted to redeem their Princess, observ'd all the probable caution that might be, to preserve the beautiful prey which he had got in his clutches. He never travelled but by night, or if he appear'd in the day time, it was only upon the by-Rodes. But the indefatigable *Grimoaldus* after he had taken different Rodes, and us'd variety of means, joyfully at last received more precise information, and more apparent hopes that his Travels would be suddenly at an end, either by delivering *Agione* out of *Mundisic's* power, or by losing his life in so just and generous an attempt.

With this resolution following the tract of the Chariots, which he understood that *Mundisic* had order'd to drive toward *Cologne*, he conjectur'd that he should overtake the Prince in the wood, that is between this Camp and *Pharamonds*. Coming near the Camp he left one of his men at the entry into the Forrest, to bring to our assistance such parties as should appear in that Quarter, and to prepossess them to our advantage, and then vigorously made up to the persecuter of *Agione*. Upon the sight of the Prince his indignation grew more violent, yet notwithstanding the violence of his passion, he was so overjoyed when he saw the Princess, that not being able to contain himself; *We are come to your assistance Madam,*

he cryed out so loud as to be understood, *and Heaven has decreed this day to put an end to the persecutions which you suffer.*

Upon those words the haughty *Mundisc* fiercely beholding *Grimoaldus*, and with a threatening utterance, *Return*, he cryed, *if thou intendest to shun the death which thou wilt infallibly meet with, by opposing my intentions that will not be disadvantageous to thy Princess.* Then turning to the most faithful of all his Followers, *Go, Bela*, said he, *go and do that which I commanded you to do if ever I were assailed.* Not having time to say more, he put himself at the head of fifteen or twenty Horse, while *Bela* with ten or twelve more caus'd the Chariots to drive on with an intention to get to *Pharamond's* Camp. But the *Huns* and the *Lombards* were no sooner fighting pell mell together, when the Officer who staid at the entrance of the Forest by order of *Grimoaldus*, had engaged the King of the *Burgundians* to succour a distressed Lady who had been taken away by force, and whom they were now carying against her will into *Pharamond's* Camp. *Gondioch* followed by a great Squadron of Horse hasted to *Agione's* relief, when *Bela*, who perceiv'd him at a distance off the Combat, incited by the zeal which he had to serve his Master, after he had studied a while what course to take, at length resolv'd to return with all his men to *Mundisc*, believing that the Prince would stand in need of assistance: yet fearing lest *Agione*, having so fair an opportunity, should make her escape, he followed the advice of his own cautious Barbarism, without considering whether the Sister of so great a King, or a fair Princess so passionately lov'd by *Mundisc* could bear it or no. True it is, that he knew too well the humour of that unjust Prince to think he could displease him by using any farther violence, having been accustomed to make use thereof upon occasions of this nature, wherein he had been already employed. For it was this *Bela* that formerly kept that incomparable *Hunnimonda* in *Sarmatia*, when the inhumane *Mundisc* had shut her up in the Castle of *Paziris* after he had taken her by violence, as it were out of the very Arms of her Mother the Queen of the *Goths*. Hence it was that this too faithful servant made nothing to use the fair *Agione* so disrespectfully; for to secure her, and carry back his men to the Prince of the *Huns*, he bound the Princess's Arms to the Chariot in that manner as the noble *Ambiomer* found her: nor did this cruel wariness fully satisfy him, for knowing that the illustrious Captive whom he was afraid to lose, might be relieved by the women who had been inseparably with her, he took them all from her, notwithstanding all their prayers, their tears, and their lamentations, and causing them to get into the Chariot that belonged to their companions, with an Intent to drive it along with him, he return'd to the Princess's Chariot, and took out the Horses, for fear they should draw it to some place less remarkable than where he had left it. Thus in few words you see, Sir, how the Sister of my Sovereign was quite forsaken and abandoned in this deplorable condition: to which, when the fair Princess saw her self reduced, it afflicted her to the heart, that what with weariness, and what with weakness, not having fully recovered her strength since her sickness, she fell into that dangerous swoon from which *Ambiomer* recovered her. And therefore, Sir, that generous Knight can better than I relate to your Majesty the circumstances of that last accident, since it was he who was sent by Heaven to succour *Agione*, and that it is to him that so amiable a Princess is beholding for the life which she enjoys.

I did so little for her, replied the famous *Gaul*, when he perceived that *Viginizus* had ended his short Relation, *and it was so easie a thing for me to do that which all persons would have done for her, that had seen her in that extremity, that I wonder she should still preserve the remembrance of it, more especially that she should continue the marks of an acknowledgment so extraordinary.* You know however, replied the King of the *Suevians*, *that we do not always measure the importance of the service by the trouble to which he is put that performs it: for there be those happy accidents when we may do that without obstruction which at another time we should meet with strange difficulties to attempt.* Thus did you save the life of the *Lombard* Princess, without exposing your own to any danger; and methinks for that very reason you have less cause to wonder at *Agione's* acknowledgment, than at the carriage of an ungrateful Queen for whom you have run so many hazards, and perform'd so many memorable exploits.

The King of *Suevia* was discoursing in this manner, at what time they heard certain Chariots make a stop, and by and by in came the charming Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and the amiable Sister of the King of the *Lombards*. These two Princesses were return'd from taking the air, whither they went before *Viginizus* began his Relation, and being desirous to take *Albisinda* with them to the Castle, they came to desire leave of the King her Father. To whom the King, having a most high respect for those two illustrious persons, not only consented that she should leave him that Evening, but that she should also resume her former Apartment, and live inseparably with *Rosamond*. Though *Albisinda* were not a little glad

glad to hear her Father's resolution, yet the excellent temper of her disposition would not permit her to part without some marks of sorrow; of which pretty preciseness when the fair Queen and the Princess of the *Lombards* took notice, they cheered her up with a short discourse, and brought her to the Chariot where *Amalazontha* staid for them, who shunn'd the sight of the King of *Suevia* as often as decency would permit her.

It soon appeared that it was not possible for these admirable persons to be together, without giving each other mutual testimonies of their joy: nor could they behold themselves environed with so many great Princes that adored them, without appearing animated with a haughtiness equal to their charms and their quality: yet all this while there was to be seen in their eyes less satisfaction than languishment; and these lips in whose power it was to pronounce the destiny of so many great persons gave free passage to their sighs, and made it manifest that they did not altogether enjoy their own tranquillity, while they troubled the repose of the most illustrious hearts in the world. As for *Agione*, who had no other cause of grief than what proceeded from the misfortunes of the King her Brother, who was as incapable of receiving any consolation, as *Theobald*, *Vindimir*, or *Amalarie* capable of living again. The Princess of the *Lombards* seem'd to be less afflicted, having her thoughts at liberty, and her heart free from all those passions wherewith *Rosamond*, *Albisinda* and *Amalazontha* were prepossess'd. But on the contrary, the Queen of the *Turingiens* having seen that day several of the *Franks*, and cast her eyes towards the Entrenchments of their Army, returned from taking the air so prepossess'd with an imperious inclination, which she labour'd ineffectually to vanquish; that the *Cimbrian* Queen was really griev'd at her misfortune. However, she durst not presume for more than one reason, to speak a word to that unfortunate Princess concerning the extraordinary merit which had produc'd an effect so surprizing in her heart; insomuch that by degrees she parted with the company to discourse alone with her dear *Albisinda*, leaving the afflicted Queen of the *Turingiens* and the Sister of the *Lombard* King to entertain one another: for nothing hinder'd *Agione* but that she might freely talk of the King of the *Franks*, and of all the illustrious Princes of that Royal Family, without observing any thing of caution. Whereas *Rosamond* and *Albisinda* were obliged to be so cautious, not only as the Sisters of *Theobald* and *Vindimir*, but because it was publickly known that they were most tenderly beloved by *Pharamond* and *Marcomire*.

These fair Princesses, thus dividing themselves, went up to the Castle, attended by several Princes that followed like Captives tied to the Victor's Chariot. But by reason it was late, they all retired immediately, except *Balamir*, whom the Queen of the *Cimbrians* detain'd a while. Though there was no person but understood the passion of that Prince, *Rosamond* however did not deny to grant him particular privileges, so far as the rules of decency (which she exactly observ'd) would permit, and which she might the more readily condescend to, in regard that famous Soldier command'd the *Cimbrians*, and for that reason was by his employment engag'd to confer often with the fair Queen from whom he held it. True it is, that at that time *Rosamond* staid him not so much for the concerns of the Army, as out of a particular kindness, nor did she scruple to take him aside, and to lead him to the window, while *Amalazontha* and the Princess of *Lombardy* related to *Albisinda* what they had seen when they were abroad. The charming Queen cast her eyes upon *Balamir's* face, displaying an obliging trouble in those celestial lights which preceded her discourse, Generous Prince, said she with a sweet Majesty that always accompanied her words and actions, you have so much oblig'd us, that I dare not find any reluctancy to pass beyond those bounds which my Sex ought to prescribe to themselves, and to declare to you with all the confidence that your virtue merits, that I was this day more afraid for you than ever I was before; I could not call to mind the words of the *Cimbrian* Prisoner whom *Pharamond* demand'd of the King of the *Balternes*, without believing that your life was ill assured, and that I am oblig'd to protect you from the secret practices of a person whose violences and contrivances are sufficiently known. Ah, Madam, reply'd the grateful *Balamir*, my life is above all danger, since you take care of it; nor can I imagine that it is possible to injure a life protect'd by an Angelical Queen belov'd of Heaven, and reverenc'd over all the world. Question not, reply'd the obliging *Rosamond*, but that I am deeply interest'd in your concerns; and though you did not venture as you do every moment in our quarrel, I believe that I could not forbear to have some certain motions of affection for the illustrious *Balamir* which I should not have for any other Prince that fights for our interest.

Concluding those words, she perceiv'd an Officer coming in that she had sent to the King of the *Balternes*, and after him the prisoner whom she mentioned, and was about to have.

But for. The *Cimbrian*, how well soever he had prepared himself to appear before his

Queen, durst not move toward her but with his eyes fixed upon the ground, and a guilty gate: so that he was no sooner come near the bright lustre of the Princess, but he cast himself at her feet altogether like a mute, and without being able to give any answer to what she demanded. At length, encouraged by his repentance, and the clemency of those illustrious persons whose displeasure he had just cause to fear, *I am guilty, cryed he all of a sudden, and I confess that I deserve death. But, Madam, if I must die, rather let it be by the order of that great Prince who stands by your Majesty, than to conceal the devices of that person that encouraged me to the fact.*

Upon those words his tears and sighs hindered him from proceeding; but the Queen, who longed impatiently to understand what the danger was wherewith *Balamir* had been threatened, to the end she might take the better care for his future protection, *Speak, said she to the Cimbrian, but speak sincerely, and let not the fear of punishment, nor the hope of pardon make you disguise the truth which it concerns us to be inform'd of from your mouth.* The *Cimbrian* perswaded by those words, and by that horror which proceeded from the remembrance of an evil action, appeared somewhat more confident, and rais'd upon his legs by the Queen's command, he paus'd a while keeping his eyes fixed upon the ground; but soon after he thus proceeded.

Some few days before the King of the *Franks* came to offer to your Majesty a life which he hoped you would have sacrific'd to the Ghost of the Prince your Brother, *Briomer* received a Letter from *Alba Julia* which extremely perplexed him: he lost his sleep, and his wild eyes testified that his thoughts were all discompos'd and roving: nor was it long before he carried *Menebaldus* and my self into the Forest of *Lysurgis*, to discover to us a secret, with which at first however he durst not trust us. So that it was not without an extraordinary circumspection that he declared it, nor till he had secured himself by promises which he made to us, and oaths which he exacted from us. Then he beheld us far more earnestly than before, and addressing his speech to us with a countenance which he labour'd to make a little more serene, *You have several times had experience, said he to us, how dear your interests are to me, whereby you may easily conjecture what you are to expect from me, if you prove but faithful at this time, now that my life and fortune lie at stake. In short, either I am lost, or we will ruine a Stranger, to whom you never were obliged for any benefit in this world; you must not therefore stand to consider, nor waver in your resolutions. And for my part, after all those protestations which I have made you, I should give you cause to complain of my behaviour, should I go about to express my meaning in ambiguous terms, and not rather with an entire confidence tell you the downright truth, that it is Balamir who must be sacrificed to my security.*

When we heard a name so beloved, and so adored among the *Cimbrians*, *Menebaldus* and I beheld one another with astonishment; when *Briomer* beginning to fear lest the veneration which we might possibly have for the Prince of the *Huns*, should cause a change in our resolution, pursued his discourse to hinder us from consulting our reason, which made him speak to us more vehemently than he did before, *What, said he, do you deliberate upon a thing resolv'd upon? Or is it possible that the reputation of an unknown Stranger should cast such a terrour into the hearts of two such valiant persons, and who will be assisted by several others in the execution of their design. It is not,* replied I, so soon as my surprisè would give me leave, *that I am scared with the danger which you propose; for I could willingly attack Balamir, were he but only a formidable Soldier, and were he not also, as without doubt he is, a most generous Prince, and most lovely in all respects. And do you think, said he, briskly interrupting me, that I would desire the assistance of such men as you, and promise such ample gnerdons, if I were to rid my self only of an ordinary Enemy. No, no, Gilcer, do not abuse your self, I should not be so ready to sacrifice all things for your interests, were not you devoted to do the same for my advantage; nor could you ever think to be Master of a considerable fortune all of a sudden, were you not to perform some exploits the desert whereof might procure it.*

After those words he spoke to me by way of aggravation, as to the power which he had in *Bobessia*, and laid before me the interest he had to fix me at Court, by reason that he had the disposal of great part of the Employments, and of the Exchequer it self: then he shew'd me how little danger there was in attacking a Stranger in a Country where all the Soldiers would take our part, so that I must confess my resolution was shaken, and *Menebaldus* drawing me aside, absolutely over-ruled me. He told me in few words, that considering how things stood, we had no time to deliberate, since there was a necessity that I must either serve *Briomer*, or else that *Briomer* must perish. In short, Madam, what shall I say, but only that I am guilty, as I have already confess'd, and that I have deserv'd death, for undertaking to destroy a Prince whose virtue is more worthy to attract the ve-

neration of the whole Earth, than to be expos'd to the villany of such attempts.

'Twas therefore in the Forest of *Lysurgis*, that we assaulted a life so absolutely devoted to the service of your Majesty, and I fear me that honourable life had certainly fall'n under the number of the Assassins, had not heaven brought the King of the *Franks* to his assistance, who generously fought for his enemy. Yes Madam, it was the renowned *Pharamond* himself, that threw himself headlong into danger, to save the life of a renowned Soldier, from whom his adversaries reap'd no small advantages, and fortune having thus united those two Princes, and oppos'd against us the two most valiant persons in the world, rendred all our great endeavours in a moment ineffectual. *Briomer* no sooner understood the ill success of our enterprise, but he foam'd for anger, and never standing to consider that there was a peculiar providence, that always waited for the preservation of *Balamir*, he tryed several other ways to execute his design, till at length he began to think of corrupting the Chirurgeons, that dress'd the wounds of that illustrious Prince whom he intended to destroy. But in regard all these ways took no better effect than the former, and that he imagin'd that considering what had happened, *Balamir* would not be so imprudent, as courageous as he was, to go without a guard, he began by degrees to despair of ever accomplishing his execrable design: So that after he had labour'd under an extraordinary disquiet of mind, he bent his violent thoughts toward *Dacia*, and would have sent *Menebaldus* and I to *Alba Julia*, with some men pickt out among those wicked villains, whom he was wont to entrust with such like commissions. He had no sooner spoken of that journey, and of the persons that he told me should bear me company, but I knew he intended to engage me upon some new desperate attempt: but in regard I began to abhor his wicked actions, I determin'd absolutely not to execute any thing whatever it were that he propos'd to me. However there was a necessity for me either to obey his will, or else by a speedy flight to save my self from his anger. Nor did I stand to consider what I had to do, for I chose rather to abandon my Country and all the right that I could pretend to there, than to stay expos'd to the revenge of the most violent of men. I considered then whither to retire, and not knowing any Sanctuary so safe, as under a great monarch who is the enemy of injustice, and has sufficient reason to be no less a foe to *Briomer*, I stole secretly away and put my self into *Pharamond's* Army. So soon as I came there, I desired to speak with *Cloderic*, to whom I was presently conducted, and no sooner had I given him an account of the reasons why I left the *Cimbrian* Camp, but he commended me, and presented me to the King of the *Franks*.

The generous Prince received me with all the marks of his wonted goodness, and not only by certain words which he let fall, when I spake to him concerning *Balamir* and my own crime, but also by the arms which he wore that day, I was confirm'd that it was *Pharamond* himself who had saved *Balamir's* life. But soon after I was fully satisfied from the mouths of *Cloderic* and *Cleomer*, whereupon I was struck with so great an admiration, at the magnanimity of that heroick Prince, as also for several other transcendent endowments both of his mind and person, that I resolv'd not to be idle in his Army, but to venture my life for his interest, in the battel which was fought the other day. True it is that I would not fight against the *Cimbrians*, yet on the other side I did not believe it to be any great forfeiture of my fealty to forsake a faction that shelter'd themselves under your fair Name, and to serve a Prince that adores you against several others, the greatest part whereof do but keep your Majesty a prisoner, under pretence of maintaining your quarell. But good intentions are not always favoured with success, for I was taken by some of the *Bastern* Officers, of which *Pharamond* was no sooner advertis'd, but he sent to demand me of King *Humbert*, before the quality of the prisoners came to be examin'd.

This Madam is the full of all that I can declare to your Majesty, for I make no question, but your Majesty has been inform'd, that *Briomer* no sooner understood that there was a Trumpeter come from the King of the *Franks* into this Camp, but notwithstanding his wounds that kept him in his bed, he rose only to oppose the intentions of that Prince, let them be of what nature soever, and that seeing and knowing me, he would have slain me, either to have had the satisfaction of sacrificing me to his anger, or for fear I should reveal the crime whereof it lay in my breast to accuse him.

Giler had no sooner concluded but he fix'd his eyes upon the ground, expecting with an extraordinary disquiet and shame, what answer those two illustrious persons whom he had wronged, and who had the sovereign power over his life, would return him. *Rosamond* and the Prince of the *Huns* stood still a while without making any reply, pondering very seriously upon what they had heard: Afterwards the fair Queen out of her love to justice, and incited by the good will she bare to *Balamir*, was about to have sent to apprehend *Briomer* in the field, and to leave him to the rigour of the law together with his Accomplices:

but her prudence would not tumultuously determine upon an affair of so much weight. Besides that, *Giler's* recantation mov'd her by degrees not to mix him in the List with the rest of his Confederates. And therefore with a Majesty that immediately bred veneration, *Your change of life*, said she to *Giler*, *and the sorrow which I have observed in your countenance, have wrought the full effect which you could hope for; and that you may meet with favour for a crime that deserves the most severe punishment, I remit your destiny to the will of a Prince who never did you any wrong, though you have attempted his life.* But can you not tell, continued she, *the reason that transported Briomer to so horrid a villany? Could you never learn from whence the Letter came that was brought him from Alba Julia? Nor can you tell whether he has sent into Dacia or no, nor against whom he gave that commission that was the cause of your forsaking him?* No, Madam, replied he, *I cannot certainly inform you; for I must acknowledge that I can go no farther than only conjecture, to which several circumstances give little certainty.* At first I supposed that there was no person in Dacia, unless it were *Mundilic*, that could have any cause to rid himself of the illustrious *Balamir*; for besides that he has no kindness at all for him, I heard say that there ran a report among the Huns, that in the Royal Family virtue was to be prefer'd before seniority in the succession of that Monarchy. So that he could address himself to no person with more probability for the execution of such a fact; not only because he is ambitious, bold, and one that never stumbles at any scruple, but also because there was nothing more desired of him than to destroy a Stranger in a Country where he was both feared and powerful. I am of the same opinion, replied *Balamir*, sighing, that the Prince of the Huns has not always that kindness for his nearest Relations that he ought to have; but had his fury transported him to acts of violence, I cannot conceive why he should rather have recourse to fraud and contrivance than to open force. Besides, replied the fair Queen, if the last attempt were an effect of the former, I cannot imagine that *Mundilic* should be any way concern'd therein, who could have no need of *Briomer's* people in a City where he has so many creatures of his own, and where he is looked upon as Heir presumptive to the Crown.

Concluding those words, she beheld *Balamir* with an aspect which let him understand that she gave him full authority to dispose of the prisoner, which the generous Prince refus'd at first; yet afterwards, directing his speech to *Giler*, Go, said he, *and live: 'tis not just that you should return miserable from the presence of the Queen. I shall not inform you after what manner you may repair your past offences, since I am obliged to send you back to Pharamond's Camp, where the presence alone of so virtuous a Prince will be enough to inspire those thoughts into your Breast, which it behoves you to follow.*

After *Balamir* had expressed himself in that manner, *Giler* was sent back to the King of the *Basternes's* Tents, when *Rosamond* manifesting in her countenance a certain kind of discontent which did not usually reside there, the Prince of the Huns earnestly press'd her to know the cause. Thereupon the incomparable Queen finding that the confidence which she repos'd in the virtue of that Prince did still from time to time encrease, no sooner understood what that eagerness meant that she observ'd in his eyes, but she resolv'd to tell him her real thoughts. But considering how long she had been kept from the Queen of the *Turingiens*, and the Princesses who were to sup with her that night, she thought it convenient to return to them, and to defer till after Supper the giving *Balamir* that satisfaction which he so earnestly wish'd for, yet for which he begged only with his looks, whose eagerness was still accompanied with submission.

The End of the Second Book of the Tenth Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK III.

THe fair Queen had no sooner made known her intentions to *Balamir*, but she return'd to her illustrious companions; and the Prince of the *Huns* departed with a design to return again so soon as decency would permit him, or that he could gather any pretence from his employment. At his own Apartment he found the King of the *Tongres* who waited for him with a more than usual impatience, the cause whereof when *Balamir* demanded in such a manner as testified that he was sorry to have made him wait so long, *I acknowledge, Sir, said Taxander, sighing, that when I was walking to day upon the Road that leads to my amiable Adelaïada, I felt my impatience to see her, doubly reinforc'd: you know my engagement, and were my humour as well known to you as my passion, I might have some hopes suddenly to see the Princess of the Nemetians: for then I might be permitted to go to the Camp of the Franks upon my paroll, either to return, or send back to this Camp the King of the Herulians, who no less ardently than my self desires the exchange which I propose.* Sir, replied *Balamir*, *Telanor has told me how generously you dealt by him at the end of the Battel, I know that you rather chose to surrender your self a prisoner in a Camp whither you had only promised to suffer your self to be conducted, than to return with the valiant King of the Franks, who fought in your behalf, and rescued you from the Cimbrians that had the Guard of your person. After all this can you suspect that we should refuse you whatever you shall think fit to demand? Or do you believe that I would not grant it my self without the least hesitation, had I the absolute disposal of those affairs, seeing that all the power which I have in this Army depends upon the fair Queen only, on whom my destiny depends? This evening I will speak with her about it, and I make no question but she will do all things conformable to the Generosity of her Soul; and that you will have as much cause to extol her noble carriage, as many other Princes have reason to complain of the power of her charms.*

Immediately those two Princes agreed upon what they had to do; so that they had no sooner supped, and understood that it was a seasonable time to wait upon the Queen, but they went up to the Castle with all the eagerness that the hopes wherewith they were animated could infuse into them. *Balamir* had all the leisure he could desire to entertain *Rosamond*, not only in the behalf of *Taxander*, but also to hear from her fair lips such expressions of her confidence in him, which she never had been capable to pronounce before. For as good luck would have it, none of the other Princes that us'd to meet there, came to the Queen's Apartment that evening. For *Martian* and *Theon*, who were but newly arrived with some of *Theodosius's* Officers, were already come to Prince *Varanez's* Lodgings. On the other side, *Agelmond*, contrary to his custom, and notwithstanding his profound melancholy, had put *Ambiomer* upon a discourse of War and Politicks; so that the King of the *Tongres* was alone with the Queen of the *Turingiens*, and the Princess of the *Lombards*, while *Rosamond*, *Albisinda* and *Balamir* entertained one another with all the freedom that might be.

Then it was that the Queen found her self sweetly inclin'd to speak her real thoughts, so that beholding *Balamir* in a most obliging manner; *I must acknowledge Sir, said she, that I have no disposition to chose me a husband among so many great Princes, as put themselves to the*
trouble

trouble to oblige me, but I will tell you at the same time, with all the freedom that you could expect from the Princess Theodolinda, that neither Varancz, Gondioch, Arderic nor Godegefile have so great a share in my esteem and favour as Balamir. Yes, generous Prince, for you I have an affection which I never had for any of them, and that affection has made me more afraid for your life when I knew it was in danger than ever I thought I should have been. True it is that your honour which called you to the fight, and that modesty which so becomes persons of our Sex, would not permit me to manifest those marks of my apprehension. But since it is lawful for me at this time, to follow those notions which my fear inspires into me, and to cloath them with an action of justice, I will have Briomer punished according to the quality of his crime, though the King of Suevia should hate me for so doing. I beg my Sisters pardon, and if she be surpris'd to hear that I am grown more bold, to explain my self in reference to your concernments, than formerly I was wont to be, I must tell her that the thoughts which I have for you, are exempt from that passion which causes us for the most part, to speak with more reservedness. Moreover since I find they have inclin'd me to give Balamir that place in my heart, which I have resolv'd to refuse all those other Princes that fight to obtain it, I do not think my self oblig'd to such an exact circumspection. While she spake in that manner, Balamir very seriously beheld her, not being able to determine what answer to make.

He was at the same time about to complain of the fair Queen, and to return her thanks, he had an affection for her not to be expressed, but that esteem was balanc'd in a generous heart, by an acknowledgment and esteem that he held for the King of the Franks. I see very well, Madam, replied he all of a sudden, and I have already said it, that I was never born to enjoy that honour, the hopes whereof you are now going about utterly to take from me. You may remember questionless, that during the Truce which was made at the mediation of the great Constance, I began to tell you that which it behoves me now more perspicuously to unfold. I will no longer dispute with Pharamond a premium of that value, whereof he is far more worthy than Balamir, and whither it be that those favourable thoughts, that you have for that Prince do regulate mine, by virtue of that power which you have over my Soul, or whether I am guided by inspirations that I understand not, I perceive that I must adore you as long as I live without any hope, nor being capable to hate the most formidable of my Rivals. In short, I must acknowledge that heaven has not sent me into the world, only for the fair and unfortunate Princess of the Goths sake, nor bestow'd so many admirable endowments, upon the celestial Queen of the Cimbrians, but to recompence the deserts of the King of the Franks; But alas Madam, Hunnimonda is dead, and Pharamond has slain Theobald.

At those words Balamir sigh'd and Rosamond blusht, in somuch that the amiable Princess of Suevia, to break off a discourse that was but irksome to both, Do ye believe that the Gods, said she, have been so favourable to ye both, to no other purpose than to make ye both miserable? For my part I can never think it, nor do I despair to see a change in your present fortunes. Why Sister, replied Rosamond, do you think that the Tomb will restore me my only Brother again: Or though the same miracle should happen to the Princess of the Goths, continued Balamir, do you think that Mundilic's wife will return to the earth, to visit an unfortunate Prince, that was constrained to renounce his title to her? I ground my thoughts upon a little better foundation, replied Albisinda, for I do not believe it to be very impossible, but that a weighty reason of state, may make the Queen of the Cimbrians lay aside her displeasure against a family, which she looks upon as one that is more willing to dispense with her justice than her prudence: Otherwise could we think it strange, that Balamir should accept of the heart of a fair Princess, who for the love of his merit, readily consents to repair the loss of which he complains. But my Sister, (added she addressing her self to the Queen, and speaking with an aspect more cheerful to change the subject of the entertainment) for fear lest I my self also should have some reason to complain, tell me I beseech you, whether in the punishment of Briomer you will not observe such rules as may
 ———— Ah Madam, said Balamir interrupting her, how much should I have been assur'd of my self, for not having beg'd the Cimbrian's pardon of whom you are speaking, had I not been bound to give the utmost of my attention to a discourse, that absolutely possess'd my heart. Concluding these words he turned toward the Queen, and to obtain Briomer's pardon he beg'd it of her with so much earnestness, that more he could not have shewn for any person that had done him a signal kindness.

Rosamond could not but admire a generosity, of which she saw such evident testimonies every day, but she could not presently consent to let go so many crimes unpunished, of which she was so deeply concern'd to take notice. She could well call to mind without any repentment, that Briomer had always oppos'd her intentions, but she forgot her usual moderation, when she remembered that that violent Cimbrian had assailed the lives of Pharamond and Balamir, and that he had done a very great diskindness to her dear Sister, the incomparable

comparable Princesses of *Suevia*; however *Albisunds* and *Balamir* gave her so many reasons, and urged her, after such a manner, that she could not withstand their powerful entreaties. *Well*, said she, *I give you the offender whom you require, but it is my pleasure that he may understand, that 'tis to you that he owes the pardon which I grant him, to the end that Balamir's demeanour may disarm his rage, and then the King of Suevia may give my Sister thanks, who has been always so ready to promote his designs.* Just as she had concluded these words, and was turning about to go to the Queen of the *Turingiens*, *Balamir* spake in the behalf of the King of the *Tongres*, and had immediately granted what the happy lover of *Adelaiada* had so passionately desired.

The illustrious company being got all together, the fair Queen addressed her self to *Taxander*, and having most obligingly given him her own grant, thereupon by degrees there began a discourse, concerning the forces on both sides. In short, the King of the *Tongres* having testified his acknowledgment to *Rosmond*, could not forbear to talk of the Camp, whither he was going to see the person that he so entirely loved. *How overjoyed should I be, Madam*, said he, *how well satisfied as well in my defeat as in my imprisonment, now that I have the liberty to pass from one Camp to another, if I could but with Constance's assistance, bring things to a general accommodation: For in short how many thousand men must perish, how many great Captains must fall for the humour of a few Princes, who miserably drill their allies into the miseries of a long war? We find in a league made in your illustrious name, on the one side the Cimbrians, Suedes, Burgundians, Gepides, Alains, Herules and many other Nations engaged, besides that the Emperour of the East has sent considerable forces to this side, to which an Army of Saxons have also joyned, and they say that the Lombards make an additional strength to this party. But Madam, though this preparation be very great, though it be very formidable, the valiant Prince perhaps whom they would make you believe, to be your irreconcilable enemy, does not so much fear it: for besides the Gauls and Franks, potent and warlike nations, who have filled the world with the fame of their Arms, I am inform'd that he will have the Britainers of both Britains, commanded by Constantine himself, that the Vandals lead by Thrasimond are coming to joyn with him, that the famous Wallia brings him Twenty Thousand Goths, and that by the order of Honorius several Legions are advancing toward his Camp, which the renowned Constance and Artabure are to head.* "How, replied the Queen of the *Turingiens*, does *Wallia* and *Thrasimund* take the King of the *Franks* part?" "Yes Madam, replied *Taxander*, and there are also in that Camp several beauties, which you may not have heard of perhaps, because they are not yet known but to few persons. In short, there is nothing noble or charming upon the earth, which the world has not now to display upon the banks of the *Rhine*, and I long to see the Princesses in both Armies all together, that a man might have time to view and consider them all at once. *Azione* told the King of the *Tongres* that he might easily accomplish his design, but *Rosmond*, the Queen of the *Turingiens* and the Princesses of *Suevia*, would not presume to express themselves upon that subject, so that it was only by their silence, that they gave *Taxander* liberty to act as he saw good.

He and *Balamir* then took their leaves, and the King of the *Tongres* having acknowledged his obligation to the Prince of the *Huns* for his last courtesie, he retired to his Apartment, overjoyed, that he should the next day see his beloved *Adelaiada*. *Balamir* also went to his Chamber not so much to repose himself, as to revolve in his mind the Queen of the *Cimbrians* words: But he had no sooner began his meditation, when *Telanor* presented a stranger to him of a comely presence, who was sent by Prince *Wallia*. *Balamir* very civilly received the *Vigstob* Knight, and having demanded of him how his illustrious Master did: "Sir, said *Hilderic*, for that was the strangers name, Prince *Wallia* believes that you will be very much surpris'd, to hear that he has taken the contrary interest to that which you have embraced: and therefore he has sent me to assure you that he is deeply sensible of it, and that he will never fight against those Troops, where he shall understand you to be in prison. And I have order also to make you this protestation in his behalf, that he would not have marched to the succour of your Rival, had he not been constrained thereto by the passion which he has for the Princess *Theodolinda*." "How, said *Balamir* interrupting him, does my Sister raise such formidable enemies to the *Cimbrians*? She did not engage *Wallia* to declare himself against *Rosmond*," replied *Hilderic*, but being reduced to a necessity, either to joyn with the *Cimbrians* or to reinforce *Pharamond's* Army, he durst not serve a Princess for whom, as we all knew, *Theodolinda* had no great kindness. "Can you not tell, said he interrupting him again, the reason of a prejudice that seems so strange? No Sir, replied the Goth, nor could *Wallia* ever learn it from a Princess, who is altogether very reserved, when there is any mention made of the Queen of the *Bobemians*." "I have more reason on the other side to complain of her," replied *Balamir*, for reposing so little trust in a

“ Prince, to whom, as I am inform’d, she owes such vast obligations. And I should be very much obliged to you my self; would you but be pleas’d to let me understand the particulars of an affection of which I know so very few, though I am so much concern’d therein, and in reference to which I shall never oppose an illustrious Lover, whose virtue is to be preferred before those Crowns, with which his merit ought to be rewarded. “ Sir, replied he, you may command the relation when ever you shall think it convenient, not only because it is my duty to obey your commands, but also because there is a necessity that I should justify Prince *Wallia* as to this last action of his, which perhaps you may not absolutely approve. In short, I am to let you see that he hopes for very great advantages, and such advantages as may in time advance him to the Throne, and put him into a condition to publish his honourable pretensions to the King your brother, which he has respectfully concealed to this day. But in regard it was late, *Hilderic* retired for that night, but the next morning being introduced by *Telanor* into *Balamir*’s Chamber, after some few complements, and that he had paused a while to recollect his memory, he began as follows.

The History of Wallia.

YOU well know Sir, and there are few Princes that know so well as the illustrious *Balamir* what strange effects such obstacles, as oppose themselves to the execution of their designs, produce in the hearts of great men. Fierce and bold spirits are usually exasperated at the sight of difficulties that cross their hopes, and I am apt to believe that they never can behold them without a more violent desire, to enjoy the happiness to which they aspire. You will be easily convinced hereof, by the proof of those adventures which I am about to relate. Not to speak any thing of his birth or education, who was so near a kin to *Alaric* renowned for so many victories, and immortaliz’d by the taking of *Rome*, *Wallia* had no sooner learn’d the performance of all martial exercises, but he was resolv’d to practise them, transported with a warlike impatience that then only reigned in his soul, and signaliz’d himself so eminently upon all occasions that offer’d themselves, that the *Goths* as much accusom’d as they were to see great actions, beheld the exploits which he perform’d with a kind of astonishment. But Sir, after what an extraordinary manner did this admiration suddenly encrease? In short, he was no sooner at liberty to act, without consulting those persons who had the care of his youth, but he appeared like a Lyon let loose from his chains, he only followed the dictates of his courage, and continually throwing himself into danger, he ran on with an impetuosity that had something in it both charming and terrible. And in regard he always returned laden with honour, and for that there appeared in his face, what has something in it more than ordinary of great and lovely, caused either by the active heat of fight, or the satisfaction which proceeds from prosperous success, he became the love and delight of the *Goths* in war: And if the Soldiers looked with respect upon *Alaric*, they had an affection for young *Wallia*. This universal affection was accompanied with submissiou and respect, insomuch that the *Goths* were absolutely perswaded, that it was enough but only to march under *Wallia* to obtain the victory. *Alaric* also who was not easily led by the blind opinions of the multitude, better understood than all the Captains in the Army, the heroick qualities that adorn’d my Master, and not looking upon the Prince’s youth, as an obstacle to obstruct the recompence of his valour, did not stick to entrust him with the most important employments in the Army.

You well know Sir, that in the Reign of the Emperour *Theodosius*, our Nations left their cold and frozen Countries, to fix themselves in more pleasant habitations, under the leading of their two Kings, *Atharic* and *Fridigeru*: And that those two Princes return’d back into their Countries well satisfied, by the prudence of that famous Emperour, many of whose most pleasant Countries they had already invaded. We had not the same reason to commend the proceedings of *Honorius*, insomuch that *Alaric* and *Radagaisus* resolv’d some time since to invade his Territories, and the better to maintain the hideous multitude that followed them, they thought fit to divide themselves and to take different ways. *Radagaisus* fell into *Italy* at the head of two hundred thousand fighting men, either *Ostrogoths* or *Herules*, and the valiant *Alaric* led the *Visigoths* into *Illyria* and *Palmatia*. But after the defeat of the *Ostrogoths* and the death of *Radagaisus*, *Stilicon* puff’d up with his good success, for which he was almost absolutely beholding to *Constance*’s valour, advanced furiously toward

toward us, and soon found us out; for we were no less eager than he to come to a general Battel. But the two Captains who had a mutual esteem for each other, minded nothing more than to watch one another's motions, and to endeavour to get all the advantages they could spy out for their own benefit; but at length after they had several times remov'd their Camps without attempting any thing, after they had sent out several parties wherein *Constance* and *Wallia* most memorably signaliz'd themselves, they came to a pitch'd Battel, which was fought near the City of *Epidaurus*.

Mesceca a famous Soldier, renowned for the defeat of the Rebel *Gildon* his Brother, led the Right Wing of the *Romans*, *Eucherus Stilicon's* Son commanded the Left; and the Cavalry was all under the conduct of the renowned *Constance*. The Right Wing of our Army was under *Autalpb* a Prince of great valour, the Brother of our King: the Left obeyed the orders of *Sigeric*, who at this day reigns over the *Goths* in *Barcinona*, and the Cavalry were commanded by young *Wallia*, who was esteem'd by the Enemies as well as by all our Soldiers the most valiant and most virtuous of all the *Goths*. Never any thing appear'd so lively and vigorous as his aspect and behaviour upon that occasion, his deportment thirsted to be engaged; and that noble emulation which he felt in his heart, excited by the reputation of the great *Constance*, encouraged him in such a manner, that he surpass'd himself in that Battel where we fought to preserve the honour of our Nation. Sometimes he brake in among the *Romans* with an unspeakable and most impetuous fury; sometimes he succoured those that began to give ground; sometimes he rallied those that were broken. In a word, he shew'd himself with that quickness every where, that instead of one *Wallia* you would have thought there had been thirty all the time of that desperate Fight. No doubt, Sir, but you have heard that *Constance* and the valiant Prince fought for one another at the beginning of the Fight, that they brake their Lances one against the other, with such a bravery as attracted the admiration of both the Armies, and that not satisfied with a course which so many great Soldiers had wondred at, they drew their Swords, and met with that terrour and fury as froze the hearts of those Spectators who were concern'd in their lives. And when they were separated by the great Bodies that came to meet, they fought with a double access of valour in all places where there Commands call'd them, shewing such experience and activity, that it may be truly said that they both vanquished, and both kept each other from vanquishing. In short, both Armies, after they had fought with great obstinacy till night, retreated with equal loss, and the next day, there being a truce granted for three days for the more convenient burying the dead, my Master and the valiant *Constance*, charm'd with each others mutual reputation, desired to see each other; nor did they only see one another with an augmentation of mutuall esteem, but they entred into a most inseparable league of friendship, whereof they promised to give each other the most signal proofs upon all occasions that were not injurious to the publick interest. After that, they laboured so diligently in both Armies, that they brought *Alaric* and *Stilicon* to confer together, and at last to conclude a peace for four years. *Alaric* promised to depart out of the Territories of the Empire; and *Stilicon* on the other side promised to fulfil the Articles which had been granted by *Theodosius* formerly to the Kings of the *Goths*. He also gave us some hopes of reparation for our damages sustained by a war which we had not entred upon, had not *Honorius* denied to fulfill several Articles that had been granted us by the Emperour his Father. Thereupon our King quitted the Territories, which were under the power of the *Romans*, with a resolution however not only to return, if they failed in the performance of their Articles, but to march directly to *Rome* with an Army sufficient to carry it by force.

You have heard also that we were no sooner departed out of the Provinces of the Empire, but *Constance* was chosen to oppose the *Alans* and *Gepides*, who under the command of *Ardaric* and *Acaces* were fallen into *Spain*; and that he was also forced afterwards to advance as far as *Betia*, to drive out the *Vandals* that harassed the Country under the command of *Gunderic* their King. In his absence neither *Honorius* nor *Stilicon* had taken any care to satisfy *Alaric*; insomuch that he provoked by such unjust delays, with an Army far more powerful than that which the Emperour's Favourite had encountred, march'd directly toward *Italy* through *Pannonia* and *Ilyria*. Our advance soon terrified *Rome*, while *Stilicon*, to buoy up the courage of the Emperour and the people, with what Forces he could raise of a sudden, put himself into *Ravenna*, which we intended to besiege, being advanced to a place not far off, which is called *Candian*. And while the Army of the *Romans* lay on the other side of *Ravenna*, ordered his own to march toward *Palleno* a small Town in the sight of the Enemy, where the *Goths* had no sooner retresh'd themselves, but their valiant Leader offered Battel to *Honorius's* Lieutenant: *Stilicon* durst not run a hazard of so

much importance, but fearing that just before the Gates of *Rome* the loss of his Army might be the loss of the Empire, he lay under the Walls of *Ravenna*, and like another *Fabius* was resolv'd to attend the destruction of an Army which could not long subsist in an Enemy's Country, surrounded with Enemies. *Alaric* on the other side, like another *Hannibal*, several times made several attempts upon *Stilicon*; but not being able to force him out of his Trenches, nor draw him to a Battel, he was constrained to quit the Field at the beginning of Winter, and retire into Winter Quarters in such places where he was not like to find any great resistance.

During the winter season, the former propositions for peace were renewed; and after several conferences wherein each party scann'd the difficulties that could oppose their pretensions, they agreed that *Stilicon* should persuade the Emperour to surrender to the *Goths* those Lands which *Theodosius* had promised to give them in *Gallia*: and that *Alaric* should send Embassadors of the most considerable quality to *Rome*, to treat themselves with the Emperour. *Autalpb* and my Master were entrusted with this Commission, and were received by the Emperour with all the honour that two such Princes could pretend to, who were the nearest Relations of so formidable an Enemy. They appeared in the Court of *Honorius* after a different manner; for the Prince of the *Goths* was very magnificent in his expences, yet in the sumptuousness of his Equipage the *Romans* observed something that still appeared to be Gothic; for in every thing that belonged to him there appeared the symptoms of a haughty vain glory. On the other side, they acknowledged that *Wallia's* Magnificence was better understood, and that there was a gain of politeness in all his Equipage that did not so much as border upon any thing of pretended Barbarism, for which our Nation is condemn'd. Their affections also were differently engaged; for *Autalpb* no sooner beheld the Princess *Placidia* but he fell in love with her; but my Master minded nothing more than to strengthen that noble and generous friendship with *Constance*, who was now return'd, which they had already contracted, notwithstanding the enmity of their party. Some seven or eight days after we had been at *Rome*, there was a rumour spread, that the Princess of the *Huns* was coming to that City, *Heracian* was sent to the other side of the *Alpes* to receive her in the Emperour's name, and when she approached the famous Metropolis, *Constance* by *Honorius's* order went to meet her about twenty miles off, attended by all the Court most magnificently habited; for they had newly left off their Mourning for the Empress *Termantia* that was *Stilicon's* Daughter. That Favourite was not then with his Master, being unwilling to part from the Army till the truce were concluded and signed. But they that appeared most gallant at that Courtly Ceremony were *Artabure*, *Mescezel*, *Maximus*, *Castinus*, *Aurelian*, *Anaxilla* and *Ariobinda*. On the other side, *Placidia* was no less earnest than the Emperour her Brother to pay those honours which were due to *Theodolinda*, being accompanied by *Cleomira*, the Princess of the *Tongres*, the Sister of *Taxander*, *Virginia*, *Camilla*, *Hersilia*, *Hyppolita*, *Flaminia* and several other beautiful Ladies of the greatest quality at Court: *Autalpb*, *Wallia*, *Taxander*, *Eucherus* *Stilicon's* Son, the young *Atius* and the famous *Claudian* would needs be of the number: and I remember that I was not so much surpris'd at the remarkable discourse which I heard, as I was at the Magnificence of that stately Train that attended the Sister of *Honorius*: not but that the jealousy which *Autalpb* and *Euchere* had of each other, sometimes spoiled their discourse, and made it incline to a little too much seriousness, but *Claudian* being seconded by *Hersilia*, *Camilla*, *Wallia* and *Taxander*, was so careful to intermix his own jollities, that it soon continued its former Gayety. True it is, that being devoted to *Stilicon's* interest, he often spoke in the behalf of *Euchere*, but it was with so much ingenuity, that it was no difficult thing to discover the subtilty of his wit.

Claudian had fixed his eyes upon those beautiful Ladies that were next *Placidia*; and *Wallia* who took great delight to hear him talk, *Were you not*, said he, *taken up with the consideration of so many wonders, I should be surpris'd at your silence which robs us of a thousand pleasant conceits with which your fancy abounds.* You would wonder more, smartly answered he, *to flatter Stilicon's Son, if I should tell you that it is the wisdom of Prince Wallia that I admire above all those lovely countenances that you see me behold.* In short, Sir, I am of opinion that you have not withstood so many charms, but only because you would not engage your self in the service of those Ladies from whom you are so suddenly to depart. *Eucherus* presently apprehended the true meaning of that discourse, and addressing himself to *Claudian*, *Do you not also believe*, said he, *casting his eyes upon Placidia, that our Ladies are obliged to act more warily than Prince Wallia, and to defend themselves against the Strangers; whose friendship they no sooner shall have gained, but they must lose them perhaps for ever, according to all probability?* Those Strangers, replied *Autalpb* very briskly, *pray not only con-*

time inseparable from those fair Ladies, but they are of that quality that they can confederate themselves with whole Nations, and restore peace to a good part of the world.

Those words pronounced with a slow utterance, touched the enamour'd *Euchere* to the quick, and in regard he was supported by *Stilicon's* power, he was about to have made a reply to the Prince of the *Visigoths*, when we perceived a far off that the Emperour had made a stop with his magnificent Train, and *Placidia* judging that he had met *Theodolinda*, order'd us to make more hast, and to interrupt a discourse the consequences whereof might have proved dangerous, she took upon her to describe the fair Princess that was so near at hand, My Master listned to the Sister of *Honorius* with an exceeding attention, which *Virginia* taking notice of, made him a most obliging challenge, wherein the Prince of the *Goths* defended himself like a compleat Courtier. But that jollity and the lively air of his countenance soon vanished, when we were come to the place of enterview between *Honorius* and *Theodolinda*.

The Emperour being arrived at such a distance, that he might be easily observed by the Princess of the *Huns*, presently alighted, and the charming *Theodolinda* having done the same, these two illustrious persons, of the highest rank of any persons in the world, advanced toward each other, with that Majesty as testified more evidently than the magnificence of their Train, the grandeur of their birth and the loftiness of their dignity. The noble presence of *Honorius* was set out with a magnificent Helmet, staded with a most stately Plume of Feathers, and a rich Coat of Arms altogether as sumptuous. On the other side, the Jewels that glitter'd upon *Theodolinda's* head and her other habiliments, seem'd to borrow from that Princess the lustre, which they were wont to lend to beauties less surprising. All the Court of *Rome* stood in admiration at the sight of her, while the Princess alighting from her Chariot, seem'd to be some Goddess descended from heaven to honour the Earth, and to favour the vows of mortals that ador'd her. For being tall, straight and rarely proportion'd, having a complexion altogether dazzling by virtue of its whiteness, and her eyes black, fair and full of fire, she immediately darted a pleasing trouble into the Soul of every one that cast their eyes upon so accomplished a Princess.

As for my Master, he was surpris'd with an admiration of which I thought him so little capable, that I soon foresaw what would be the effect of that first motion, which made me narrowly observe his looks, and every particular action at that time. I perceived that the Prince took delight to receive into his heart the glances of those fair eyes which he admir'd, I took notice that he was so mov'd at the sight of that wonderful Princess, that he minded nothing but her, listned to nothing but what she said, and that he seem'd to have accompanied *Placidia*, only to offer to *Theodolinda* a liberty, which till that fatal day he had preserv'd entire. He was ignorant a good while of the loss which he sustain'd, but as we were upon our return to *Rome*, it was no difficult thing for him to perceive, that he was passionately in love with the Princess of the *Huns*. He never took his leave of her without being troubled, he never came into her presence but overjoyed, and he began to take more pleasure than ever he had done before, in Balls, Turnaments, and such like magnificent pastimes. At first these marks of his growing passion, made him suspect a good part of the truth, but a few days after a violent jealousy seizing his heart, absolutely convinced him.

He was the first that took notice that the Emperour was not so respectful to *Theodolinda*, out of that civility which was due to the daughter of a great King, as out of a certain inclination, which he seem'd to have toward so lovely a Princess: And upon a rumour that was spread abroad, that there was to be an alliance between the *Romans* and the *Huns*, for the strengthening whereof, the charming *Theodolinda* was to be match'd to the Emperour *Honorius*, he became so insupportably melancholy, that he fell into a fit of sickness. Now in regard that he was generally beloved, all the Court took notice of the change of his humour: But *Placidia* and *Constance* who had a particular kindness for him, were more highly concern'd. Nay *Theodolinda* her self, who began to have as great a kindness for him as the Sister of *Honorius*, often desired to know the cause of his distemper: But the pensive *Walia* told her enough without speaking, while he looked upon her sighing, and then looked down upon the ground, not daring to return an answer. True it is that *Theodolinda* could not understand that manner of his expressing himself, for the being a haughty Princess that slighted the very offic of *Honorius* himself, would not believe that a Prince who was not heir to a Crown, and indeed in no probability of ever attaining one, could be so bold as to think so presumptuous a thought. My Master on the other side, who had nothing but what was great and lofty in his Soul, resolv'd more than once to let her understand, how he dyed for love of her, but a profound respect always stopp'd the impetuosity of his passion.

At that time *Stilicon's* Son prepared a magnificent Turnament in honour of *Placidia*, there *Wallia* resolv'd to fight for the honour of *Theodolinda*, but he ran without declaring his intention or making himself known, so much he feared lest his presumption should displease the Princess whom he adored. At the end of those famous courses wherein he honourably signaliz'd himself, the enamour'd Prince retired to his Chamber, wholly taken up with the bright idea of *Theodolinda's* beauty, and the magnificence of the Court of *Rome*. Then reflecting upon his having engaged himself, where he could not hope for any favourable success; *Unfortunate Prince*, cryed he sighing, *wilt thou always love Theodolinda, or to say better, wilt thou always love without hope, not daring to make known thy love? What fruit canst thou expect from that rash passion that reigns in thy heart? Knowest thou not that Theodolinda is the daughter of a potent monarch, and is not an Emperour thy Rival? What hopest thou for unhappy man, wouldst that Theodolinda should renounce one of the chiefest Thrones in the earth, to espouse Wallia and become the Subject of Alaric?*

These thoughts so cruelly tormented him, that he refused to see any person all that evening, and he took a hundred several resolutions, without determining any thing. He would be gone in all haste from *Rome* sometimes, sometimes he would love no longer, but *Theodolinda's* beauty more prevalent than his reason, detained him in the Court of *Honorius*, more strongly riveted his chains, and increased the violence of his passion in that manner, that he found he could not chuse but love her as long as he lived, and that he could not live unless he made known his passion to her. Nevertheless though he were as bold as any person living, though *Theodolinda* had a very fair esteem and a great kindness for him, he durst not presume to complain of his sufferings before her, had not the fair Princess herself given him a very favourable opportunity. One day finding her alone without any other company than one of her Maids of honour, she intimated to him that she had something to say to him in private, and thereupon taking him aside, and beholding him in a most obliging manner, *Generous Wallia*, said she, *the Princess Placidia reposes such a confidence in your virtue, that she requested me to declare to you her real thoughts, with an absolute freedom of speech: It seems she has apprehended for some days since, that Auralph has a more particular kindness for her, and therefore she not being in a condition, to receive those Testimonies which he gives her, with that acknowledgment which he may pretend to, she hopes you will divert the Prince from pursuing his design.*

The fair Princess of the *Huns* had no sooner concluded those words, but *Wallia* beholding her in a most passionate manner; *Alas Madam*, said he, *how difficult a thing it is for a man to stifle in his breast the marks of a violent inclination, and how unhappy are they that suffer, when it is not lawful for them so much as to complain.* While he spake in that manner, he sigh'd, and cast his eyes downward, so that *Theodolinda* beginning to apprehend some suspicion of the truth; blushed out of modesty, and went about by degrees to alter the subject of the discourse. *I am apt to believe*, replied she, *that you never speak but of business with Prince Auralph, and therefore since without doubt you intend to be gone so soon as your business is dispatched, the Princess would do her self more right to persuade the Emperour, to determine your affairs with all speed, rather than trouble you with a commission, which you may not think so proper to discharge.*

The enamour'd *Wallia* was more afflicted at these words than before, finding his jealousy thereby awaked, inso-much that lifting up his eyes to the fair Countenance which she adored; *I am persuaded Madam*, replied he, *that Placidia's mediation would very much forward our affairs, but it is not from her alone that we might hope for kindnesses of the highest nature, had we a desire to return to our Camp. I know no person*, replied she, *whose reputation is so great with the Emperour as hers. How Madam*, replied he interrupting her, *can you be ignorant of what all the world already knows, and of what you have reason to know better than all the world? Ab no no, Madam, it is not possible that you should be ignorant of the power which your charms have obtained over the Emperour, and I make no question but the Emperour has already told you several times over, what an unfortunate Prince, that has no Crown to offer you; dares not presume to declare.*

At those words the Princess blushed, not only out of modesty, for there was something of honour that had a share in the change, which appeared in her fair countenance, which made her desirous to let *Wallia* understand, after what manner *Honorius* had behaved himself toward her, and to shew that the dignity of that Prince had not made her so hardy as my Master imagin'd. *I must acknowledge*, answered she, *that the Emperour has given me to understand, that he had some kindness for me: But I am also obliged to tell you, that he did not let me know so much, but with all that respect, that I could not have expected more from a Prince far beneath him that sits upon the chief Throne of the world.*

But, Wallia, pursued she, to hinder him from taking any hold of her discourse, I will go a little farther, for seeing that Placidia and I look upon you as a discreet and virtuous Friend, I make no scruple to tell you the real thoughts of my mind: for as I neither receiv'd the offer of Honorius with incivility, so perhaps I neither considered them to be of such an obliging value; since methought it was not for the Princess of the Huns to be transported with those honours that had been so easily bestowed upon Stilicon's Daughter before. I confess that Honorius is a good man, and full of integrity, but I cannot tell whether those two qualities are sufficient in a Prince that I would accept for a Husband, and whether I should not desire some other person more worthy my esteem. In short, whether this humour proceed from my Country, or from my Birth, methinks I cannot but scorn, that the Successor of the Cæsars, that the Son of the great Theodosius should so degrade himself to seek for an Empress in the Family of his Favourite. Yet such matches many times happen, replied Wallia, for love seems to take pleasure sometimes to unite persons unequal in degree, the better to display the effects of his power. Thus we see presumptuous hearts that sometimes dare aspire to the Thrones of their Sovereigns, while on the other side there are Kings that let their sights fall upon Beauties which they chuse among their Subjects. 'Tis necessary then, replied Theodolinda, that such Princes should be as great in the endowments of their minds and persons as in the extent of their Dominions. They ought to be the delight and honour of their people, the terrour and admiration of their Neighbours; and being such, I give them leave to love where they please, since 'tis their fate that they can no where love above themselves; and for that reason they cannot be accus'd of doing any thing beneath themselves. I will go a little farther, Madam, replied Wallia, since it is my opinion that generally all great Princes are obliged to love. For in short are they always oblig'd, though they could do it, to put on the severity of command, to keep their State, or observe the exact rules of wisdom? Rather is it not better for them to descend a little? And which way can they better shew their courtesie and humanity, than by appearing sensible of that noble passion which I defend?

While he spake in that manner, he so amorously beheld Theodolinda, that the prudent Princess took upon her to speak, that she might hinder my Matter from proceeding in a discourse, the consequences whereof she began to suspect: But, Prince, said she, do you not believe but that a King who has not those endowments which I spake of, would render himself contemptible by such a match as you mean? And will you not acknowledge, that of the two, it is more noble to offend out of pride, than of—— I not only acknowledge it, said he most passionately, interrupting her, but, divine Princess, added he sighing, and with a guilty utterance, I must confess moreover that the charms for which you are so ador'd, contrain me to put it in practice: yes, yes, great Princess, the presumptuous Wallia—— Ah, Prince, said she, I beseech you practise it no more, nor oblige me to change the manner of my behaviour toward you. How! Princess, too severe, cryed he, would you not so much as understand that I adore you? Alas, if it be so, I am far more miserable than I thought my self; for if you take the testimony of the most respectful passion that ever was for an offence, I must then prepare my self to die, since it is impossible for me to live without doing you that injury every moment.

At those words his grief oppress'd him in so violent a manner, that he could say no more; but his sighs having as it were opened a passage for his speech, and Theodolinda's irresolution giving him time to resume his lamentation: Ha, Madam, I beseech you, said he, leave those niceties: you know that my Birth is sufficiently illustrious to hinder me from blushing, when you shall vouchsafe so far to humble your eyes, as to count me among the number of your slaves. Though on the other side I know this Birth of mine ought to be supported by those Crowns which fortune has denied me, and which it ought to be in my power to offer you, if I would pretend to a felicity so infinitely above my hopes. But, Madam, I do not aspire to that honourable felicity, nor do I beg any other advantage, than only to serve the fair Princess of the Huns with her permission.

While he spake in this manner Theodolinda felt a kind combat of her heart between that esteem which she had for my Matter, and the resentment which persons of her humour and quality might have upon such an occasion: so that the enamour'd Wallia seeing her hesitate in that manner, What, Madam, answered he with many signs of discomposure as well in his looks as in his behaviour, have you any reason to study so much as one moment what to answer, after so many real protestations which I have made you? Have I conceived the least rash hope whereat you can be in reason offended, and though perhaps I have declared my self with more freedom than I ought, has it not been accompanied with all the veneration that could be offered to a Deity? By that time the Princess having absolutely determin'd, with a serious aspect, Prince, replied she, I see too well that those testimonies of esteem which I have given you upon several occasions, have drawn upon me the effects of a boldness which offends me: but absolutely

truly know this, that either you must forbear to see me any more, or else never let me hear a word more of your affection, which infalibly will produce those consequences, which will never please your humour. Must I forbear to see you more, replied he in a most pensive manner, Ah! too inhumane Princess, exact from me other proofs of my obedience. Require of me that which it is possible for me to grant. No Madam, I will see you as long as I can see day, for I feel that I cannot———You shall speak no more to me, replied she with a more resolute utterance, of a thing which I require you to banish from all your discourse.

She pronounced these words with such symptoms of her anger, in so much that *Wallia* being touched to the quick, and beholding her with a grief intermix'd with submission; Well Madam, replied he sighing, I will endeavour to the utmost of my power to hold my tongue, I will say no more if it be possible, but that you are the most charming Princess in the world, provided you will reward so painful a silence, and that at the same time when only my eyes, my diligence and my services shall speak for me, you will suffer your self to be convinced that I adore you, and that I am willing to wear to my Tomb those chains which you have put on. He would have spoken more without doubt, but *Placidia* entering at the same time, brake off the discourse.

My Master afterwards conversed with *Theodolinda*, after such a manner that she could not disapprove. The air of his countenance, his languishment, his diligence, his entire submission to her commands, and that blind obedience which he punctually observed, were testimonies of his love sufficiently visible. But these marks of his passion were accompanied with such a reservedness, that the most rigorous severity could not in reason condemn him: On the other side, being supported by a great merit and a noble reputation, I am persuaded that *Theodolinda* as she was, did not always with displeasure behold the Empire, which her beauty had obtained over the heart of a Prince, young, handsome and famous for so many renowned deeds. But before she would dispose her self to permit this illustrious Lover to presume to complain of her cruelty, *Honorius* upon *Placidia's* solicitation had sign'd the Treaty, for the compleating whereof they resided at *Rome*: So that they left behind them that which they held most dear in the world.

Whatever passion they deserve that are forced to absent themselves from what they love, certainly none did ever deserve more than *Wallia* merited upon that lamentable separation. For he not only left his Princess, almost without any hopes of ever seeing her again; but also left her with a Rival who had great probability of success, a Rival who was Emperour of the *Romans*, young, courtly, and very amorous. Besides that it was not permitted him to discover his torments, so that his grief and his affection only appeared in his eyes.

But instead of relating all the circumstances of this departure, I will only tell you that *Wallia* was so afflicted, that all the Court of *Honorius* seemed to grieve for his sake. *Placidia* and *Constance* openly testified the high esteem and friendship which they had for that Prince, and *Theodolinda* her self bid him farewell, with an aspect neither so haughty nor so cheerful as she was wont to carry: And though the Emperour had given those two Princes an absolute satisfaction, yet they found so little in absenting themselves from *Placidia* and *Theodolinda*, that they made but easy journeys toward the Army, and that with no small affliction to their minds. At their arrival they perceived that the *Visigoths* were already advanced toward *Gallia*, to take possession of *Aquitain* which the Emperour had granted them. But Sir, you know the revolution which overturning all the good intentions of *Honorius*, caused *Alaric* to change a resolution. For at that time a certain Jew named *Saulus*, a hardy Soldier, and wholly devoted to the favourite of *Honorius*, commanded several Provinces through which we were to march. To him had *Stilicon* sent a private order to set upon our Troops, and not to question the success, provided he began the war. *Saulus* obeyed his commands with all exactness, so that we were no sooner upon the Frontiers of the Province of *Narbonne*, but he fell upon us unawares and cut our Vanguard in pieces. The surprize and fear thereof was so great among the *Visigoths*, that they had been absolutely defeated before they could have made any defence, had not my Master rallied them and led them on well encouraged to the Battel. He thunder'd in upon the Enemy with such an impetuosity, that he bore to the ground the stoutest resistance, while death and terror were his attendants wherever he appeared. He sought out *Saulus*, met him, fought him, kill'd him, and saved the life of the King of the *Goths*, and changing the fortune of the two Armies, constrained victory to declare her self in our behalf. The generous *Alaric* had no sooner acknowledged, how much he was bound to him for so prosperous and so unlooked for an event, but he storm'd against the prodigious perfidy of the *Romans*, and vowed before the principal Officers of his Army, to take a revenge worthy the justice of his provocation.

tion. Presently he consulted which way to execute what he had resolv'd upon, and believing he could not undertake a nobler design than the famous City of *Rome*, he made it his whole business to prepare all things fit for an enterprize conformable to the grandeur of his thoughts.

The *Goths* overjoyed at their King's design, desired nothing more than to march back into *Italy*, and encouraged with the hopes of the plunder of that rich City, fill'd with the spoils of the whole earth, they promised themselves the ransacking of that populous place, though it had been defended by those very Citizens that had formerly made her Mistresses of all the world. Nor was there one in all that numerous Army that shewed any sadness in the midst of the general rejoycing of the Soldiers, unless it were *Wallia* himself. He could not hear of marching as an enemy against a people by whom he was so well beloved, and he made use of all the power he had with the King, to divert the storm which threatened a Country that he could not think upon but with affection. And still his discontent encreas'd, to see that all his entreaties nothing prevailed, and that he could not handsomely continue in the Army, when *Alaric's* Honour, and the reputation of the *Gothish* Arms lay at stake. But his grief encreas'd beyond measure, when we understood that *Placidia*, *Theodolinda* and *Cleomira* were unanimously resolv'd to endure all the hardships of a Siege, on purpose to encourage the people to defend themselves, while the fainthearted *Honorius* fight'd at *Ravenna* in love with a Stranger that was called *Bellamira*. A consolation which did not a little please him to see himself delivered from the corrivalship of an Emperour, and made him think himself not altogether the most unfortunate Lover in the world: *Ab, Hilderic*, said he to me several times in our march to *Italy*, *to what an extremity am I reduc'd, and what resolution ought I to take? Must I forsake my Sovereign's interest, or else bring Fire and Sword where the divine Theodolinda remains shut up: Ab, how shall I be every moment surrounded with deadly fears, for the life of that celestial Princess! I fancy already some barbarous Visigoth may sheath his Sacrilegious Sword in her bosom; methinks I already see her lovely Body buried in the ruins of that magnificent Palace where I have seen her shine so bright with all her charms.* Then transported with his despair, *May we all perish and be ruined, rather than a destiny so lamentable should put an end to her days.* But fainthearted *Wallia*, added he again, *determine with thy self: dost thou stand considering, poor spirited Lover, when thou art to serve Theodolinda? Get into Rome, offer thy life to her whom thou lovest, and take a generous Princess's part against an ambitious King to whom thou art so scrupulously loyal.*

These thoughts so violently and so long afflicted him, that by that time we came into *Italy* he was neither in a condition to fight for *Alaric*, nor to offer himself to *Theodolinda*; he fell into a lingering Fever that presently weakened him, and cast him afterwards into a languishing condition, which so disheartened the *Goths*, that they were not so hot upon their enterprize, whatever confidence they had in *Alaric's* valour. The nobler sort went to visit him every day, while the disconsolate Prince raising out of every thing new matter to feed his grief, all the time they were present with him was forc'd to put a constraint upon himself, which augmented his torments: sometimes he struggled with himself to give them some testimonies of his acknowledgment; but then looking upon them as *Theodolinda's* Enemies, he could not behold them but with a kind of horreur which encreas'd his displeasure against them. He remain'd in this condition till we were just ready to sit down before that famous City; at what time the King having given him some more particular marks of his esteem and affection, insus'd those appeals into his head that serv'd to allay the better part of his trouble: for because his distemper arose from the cruel irresolution wherewith his mind was tormented, he had nothing to do but to determine with himself to dispel the violence of his malady, which he did by considering that he was not to be unfaithful to his Prince to satisfy his passion, and that by taking the right tide he not only fought for his Country, and the honour of his Nation, but thereby he put himself into a capacity to be considerably serviceable to *Theodolinda* herself. *Rome* by the death of *Stillicon*, the absence of *Honorius*, and by reason that *Constance* lay sick at a great distance, remained forsaken and abandoned to the Arms of the valiant *Ardaric*, for which reason my Master thought it to be in part for his own interest to second the designs of a grateful Prince, to the end he might pretend to a kind of right to demand any kindness in favour of the Princess. He found so much justice in his purpose, and so much probability in his pretences, that his restless desire, to render himself considerable to *Alaric*, and profitable to *Theodolinda*, soon brought back into his countenance that warlike heat which was wont to enliven it. Nevertheless, he perswaded the King to send to the Princesses to offer them liberty, to come forth out of the City, and to retire to *Ravenna*. But those brave Heroick Ladies return'd

answer, that they would rather chuse to be buried in the Ruines of *Rome*, if heaven should surrender it up to destruction, than to preserve their lives by abandoning an unfortunate City in its misery.

After the *Romans* had made a stout resistance, and endured unsufferable hardships, their City was taken by assault, by a Nation whom they called *Barbarians*, and in regard that *Wallia* glowing with impatience to see the Princesses and to serve them, had fought with a double reinforcement and valour, he was the first that entred that deplorable City, whatever *Autalpb* could do to dispute that honour with him. He ran to the Palace through horror and desolation, and opening his way with his victorious sword; he cryed out at the same time that they should take care of the Princesses, promising great rewards withal to let him pass. Those words having enfeebled a resistance, which his valour could not have so soon surmounted, he presently got to *Placidia's* Apartment, and no sooner did he cast his eyes upon the illustrious Daughter of the great *Theodosius*, but he looked upon her without being able to utter so much as one syllable, so violent a sorrow seiz'd him all of an instant. *Ab Wallia*, said the Princess, *are you come hither as an Enemy?*

Then it was that my Matters courage forsook him, and though so valiant and so laden with new honour as he was, he could not refrain from letting fall a shower of tears, to behold *Placidia's* affliction. The Sister of *Honorius* was mov'd, to behold those signs of affection in the *Gothick* Prince, who then breaking silence; *I am come Madam*, answered he, *to repair some part of the crime which I have been constrained to commit, and to pay you such services as you might expect from the most faithful among the Romans.*

Those words pronounced with a pensive and respectful aspect, gave some consolation to *Placidia*, but at the same time *Autalpb* coming in, broke of any farther compliments; a little while after came *Alaric* himself attended by *Sigeric* and *Attalus*. Then the enamour'd *Wallia* looked about for the charming *Theodolinda*, and no sooner had he spied her at a distance, but he advanced toward her with a profound submission, and falling upon his knee and taking her by one of her fair hands; *You know Madam*, said he, *that my birth and honour obliged me to fight for the King of the Goths, however I make you this protestation, that I had never born Arms against a City, which your divine person had rend'ed sacred, had not the hope of being serviceable to you at such a dismal time as this, more powerfully engaged me, than my duty to Alaric, or Wallia's own reputations. Not Madam, that the services I have done or may perform, are of that importance but that you might have received them, from the first Officer that had any sence of honour. But Madam, I have some credit with Alaric himself and some power among the Goths, and I will lose both the one and the other, but I will obtain the liberty of a fair and noble Princess, which we have only found by an accident shut up among our Enemies. Generous Wallia*, replied she with an air as obliging at it was possible for her to shew, during the trouble that still discomposed her, *we were not deceived, neither the fair Princesses nor my self, when we had some hopes that you would succour us in these dreadful calamities, enough to daunt the stoutest courages in the world. We also find that your respect has far surpassed, what we expected from you, and if the temper of the King of the Goths be answerable to his fair reputation, and if his blood that sprung from the same veins with yours, have infused into him inclinations like your own, we shall have some reason to comfort our selves in his misfortunes. But whatever fall out, we have so great a confidence in your virtue, that we shall commit our selves wholly to your protection.*

Wallia sensibly obliged to his Princess, return'd her thanks with all the submission that he could have done, had he received the same kindnesses which he offered: And as soon as he had order'd some Companies to guard and attend the Princesses in the absence of *Alaric*, who was gone to look after his wounds, he went to visit the King where he found *Autalpb*, *Sigeric*, and *Attalus*. The King of the *Goths* very joyfully received him, and beholding him with an obliging countenance, *Come hither Cousin*, said he, *come and receive the first testimonies of my acknowledgment, till we can reward those actions that have so great a share in the honour of our success. Your valour by the taking of Rome, affords me a most remarkable advantage to acquit my self, toward those persons to whom I am most deeply obliged: And I shall dye a very ingrateful person, if I should not find something worthy your acceptance, in a City whose magnificence all the world admires. With the government of this famous City, accept also the choice of all the Spoils, and therefore seek out for what is most precious among all the treasure, or most considerable among all the Prisoners. Wallia* return'd no answer at first but only by his submission, but taking notice that *Alaric's* words did authorize the intention which he had, to demand the liberty of the Princesses, he resolv'd to explain himself to a Prince so generous and grateful. The King of the *Goths* taking notice thereof, and being willing to encourage him; *What Cousin*, said he, *shall Wallia's generosity continually contend with Alaric's*

acknow.

acknowledgment, and will you never permit me that boldness which so successfully accompanies you in fight, to follow you after the victory when we desire that you should reap the reward of your virtue? Sir, then answered my Master, I cannot tell whether your Majesty may not be surpris'd to see me make use of that freedom which you give me, and whether I may not be accused for obeying too exactly your commands that make me so bold, when I shall presume to beg the liberty of three fair Princesses, who are more worthy to fetter others, than to wear Chains themselves.

Autalph, *Sigeric*, and *Attalus*, appeared somewhat dissatisfied at *Wallia's* words, and the former who could not restrain from looking upon him with a kind of envy, addressing himself to his Brother; Sir, said he, I am of opinion that no person can desire you to let go the Princess *Placidia*, but such as would at the same time deprive you of several other great advantages: For in short, whether you think fitting to continue the war or to make peace, what may not you demand and stand upon, when you have at your disposal all that *Honorius* has most dear in the world, and the most considerable person in the Empire. Besides if your Majesty think it more convenient to enter into an Alliance, *Placidia* may be a means to unite your house to the family of the great *Theodosius*, and to make *Autalph* the most happy Prince in the world. As he concluded these last words he blushed, and turning toward my Master with the same commotion, "You are not ignorant, said he, what thoughts I have for the Sister of *Honorius*, you know that I adore her, Yes, you know it, and yet you would deprive me of the company of so fair a Princess." "Twas because I knew that, replied *Wallia* slightly enough, that I thought that you would either make the same request that I did, or at least that you would second me if I made it my self." "It appears, said *Autalph*, that you never laid to heart the sorrows that I may suffer, upon the absence of the only person whom I love: For certainly you would be of another mind, if you understood what it is to love so well as I. I agree with you, replied *Wallia*, that the knowledge which I have thereof is far different from that to which you pretend, seeing that I could never understand how any Lover, could be pleased to see his Mistress a slave, who should rather chuse to take off her Fetters and wear them himself." "Cousin, said the King interrupting him, fearing lest the consequences of the discourse, might at length exasperate the two Princes, It would be an act of generosity to send away the Princess *Placidia*, but there is more security in detaining her. She is Sister to the most potent of my enemies, and I may thereby expect great advantages in treating with *Honorius*. As for the Princess *Theodolinda*, added he beholding him very steadfastly, I give you full power to dispose of her as you please and at your pleasure, to keep her in the Camp or to send her back to her father.

Presently *Wallia* was overjoyed at those words, in regard he had obtained what he most ardently desired: However he perceived a while after that he wanted something to complete his joy, whether that he thought he had not sufficiently acknowledged the King's kindness, or whether he thought that *Theodolinda*, whose generous humour he knew would never consent, to leave her two Royal companions among the *Goths*, having always desired to share in their dangers and afflictions: And therefore renewing his address as well to testify his acknowledgment, as to speak a little farther in the behalf of *Placidia* and *Cleomira*, "You may well believe, said he, that I shall not take upon me to give the Princess of the *Huns* her liberty, in any other than my Sovereigns name, nor upon any other score to tell her that the may return for *Dacia*. But Sir, what will not Renown report in honour of your Majesty, if you extend your favour and clemency yet a little farther to the two Princesses, who are neither guilty nor fit to endure servitude. What advantage can you expect from the exchange of two prisoners, which you are not always in a condition to obtain by the force of your Arms, which is a way far more becoming the grandeur of your courage?" "It may well befit Prince *Wallia* to speak in this manner, replied *Alaric*, and I should be of the same opinion and act accordingly, were I to answer for none but my self. But Cousin, a King without committing apparent faults, cannot be too wary in managing the affections of his Soldiers, and he must follow the advice of his head, not his heart, when he is to act either as a Father of his people, or as a Captain of an Army.

Whatever reasons the King made use of, it was not easie for him to satisfy *Wallia*, for that generous Prince, so far from submitting, that he could not forbear to intreat on for *Placidia* and *Cleomira*, pressed *Alaric* still with all the vehemency, that his respect to his Sovereign would permit. But finding that he employed his time in vain in the behalf of his two Princesses, he went to the Princess of the *Huns*, who observing him to look somewhat discontented, most sweetly addressing her speech to him; How Prince, said she, is it possible that *Wallia* should appear sad before us, after so much honour and success. He has cause to be so,

Madam, answered he, apprehending that you will be in the same condition to leave *Placidia* and *Cleomira* among us, but on the contrary, nothing sad when you bid farewell to— At those words, instead of making an end he held his peace; then casting a look full of love and languishment, upon the eyes of the Princess; You see, *Madam*, said he, that I dare not absolutely presume to explain my meaning; and though the testimonies of my grief ought not to be compris'd in the rigorous command which you have laid upon me, yet I dare not take the boldness, while I bring you the tidings of your liberty, to tell you what effect the freedom which you have to leave us, has produc'd in my heart.

How great soever the Prince's passion were, he shew'd no more particular sign of his love, but contented himself with giving an account to his Princess of the dispute which he had with *Alaric*. He carried himself also with more reservedness toward her, than he would have done in the Court of the King of the *Huns*, that he might not seem to take advantage of *Theodolinda's* misfortune, and the kindnesses which he had done her, to disobey the commands which she had laid upon him. No sooner had he told her all those circumstances which he thought himself oblig'd to let her know, but *Placidia* and *Cleomira* came into the Princess's Chamber, who no sooner understood what the Prince of the *Goths* had done, but they testified to *Theodolinda* how much they rejoyced in her happiness, yet that fair Princess appeared more melancholy than cheerful: and indeed there was neither of those illustrious persons but shew'd an unwonted kind of Generosity. The incomparable Sister of *Honorius*, and the amiable Princess of the *Tongres* seem'd to be rid of their chains, seeing *Theodolinda's* taken on: on the other side, the Princess of the *Huns* only endured the captivity of her Friends. But then the two Princesses considering *Wallia's* good intentions beyond the success of his mediation, gave him all the marks of acknowledgment which he could possibly expect, had he obtain'd in their behalf as much as *Alaric* had granted *Theodolinda*, and they treated him with far more apparent demonstrations of friendship than the Princess of the *Huns* had done, who thought her self obliged to carry her self more reservedly toward my Master. *Wallia* for his part receiv'd the marks of such inestimable kindnesses more abashed, than had he been himself obliged to the Princesses as much as they thought themselves engaged to him, and addressing himself to *Placidia*, *Alas, Madam*, said he, sighing, how unhappy am I, that it is not in my power to redeem you out of the hands of *Autalph*? What may not the unfortunate *Constance* say of *Wallia's* proceedings? But what can the unserviceable *Wallia* do in opposition to his Sovereign's Brother, to serve the incomparable *Placidia*, if persecuted by him?

Much after this manner ended their discourse, after which my Master went to give orders to prepare a most stately equipage for *Theodolinda*. However, in regard it was not an ealie thing to employ many workmen, but that it must be taken notice of, the Princess of the *Huns* was soon advertised thereof, who instead of giving *Wallia* thanks, very much blam'd him, which manifest'd the generosity of her Soul far beyond all the testimonies of acknowledgment which she could have given: Prince, said she so soon as he came to see her, is it after this manner that you treat the best of your Friends? Would you have me believe that you esteem *Theodolinda*, after the publick proofs that you have given to the contrary? Who, I, *Madam*, cryed he surpris'd, have I committed any such offence? No, no, *Madam*, believe no such thing, for you will have little reason to accuse me ere long: Would to God, said he, beholding *Theodolinda's* fair eyes with less astonishment than love, would to God, that in obeying you with all the exactness imaginable, I were as little capable of letting you understand that I am—— But alas, presently added he sighing, whither will your reproaches carry me?

Concluding those word, he held his peace, and the fair Princess mov'd without doubt with so respectful a passion, had suffered her self to discover some part of the kindness which she already had for my Master, if her Soul out of the severity of her wisdom that guarded it against the tenderness of her heart, had not hindered her by causing her to continue her discourse in the same manner as she had begun it, Prince, said she, in taking so much care of my Equipage, you have a strange opinion of my friendship; for in short, you believe that your labour will not be fruitless, thinking that I am resolv'd to depart. It is so natural, replied my Master, to have no dependance upon others, and to love liberty, that in truth, *Madam*, I thought that you would not be very much troubled to accept of that favour which I obtained of the King of the *Goths*. I do not deny, replied she, but that liberty is very sweet, and that we are born with the very seeds of antipathy against all things that put a constraint upon our wills. But, Prince, you know, that it is not always requisite to follow the motions of natural desire, seeing that oftentimes a noble Soul is obliged to make use of *Maximes* far different: you are not ignorant of the love which I bear to *Placidia* and *Cleomira*, and can you then believe that I can
be

be ever able to abandon them in chains, to return into my own Country? Your behaviour obliging in appearance manifests as much outwardly, but secretly upbraids me, yet which of my actions has overpersuaded you? How did you know that I was unwilling to suffer a servitude, which your continual kindnesses render so easily supportable, and indeed what likelihood is there that I should leave my companions, having had the honour to partake with them in the misfortunes of a besieged City.

While the incomparable *Theodolinda*, strengthened *Wallia's* passion with the fair proof of her generosity, *Placidia*, *Cleomira* and *Autalpb* entred the Chamber, and interrupted their converse for some time, but my Matter soon renewed it by letting them understand, after what manner the Princess had refused the liberty, which the King of the *Goths* had given her. *Placidia* and *Cleomira* testified to their illustrious friend, how much they were bound to her with all the Caresses that a real affection could inspire, and indeed the charming Sister of *Honorius*, conjur'd her most earnestly to forsake unfortunate *Italy*. But when she saw that her entreaties nothing avail'd, she blam'd her with an extraordinary tenderness, and endeavoured to vanquish a resolution, which she however found her self more willing to follow than condemn. The two Princes on the contrary, gave *Theodolinda* all the commendations that she deserved, and took their leaves of her so charm'd with the beauties of her Soul, insomuch that *Autalpb* talk'd of nothing else to the King his Brother, but of the rare qualities of that Princess.

Wallia was at first overjoyed to hear a discourse, so much to the praise of her whom he loved, but soon after his joy became secretly disturb'd, for though the honour of *Theodolinda* was infinitely dear to him, the report thereof that then began to spread, caused him to sigh though he could not by any means conjecture the cause. *Alaric* who had not only all the accomplishments of a great King, but the conditions also of a just and honest man, was extremely taken with an action so worthy his esteem, which made him so eager to give a visit to the Princesses, that he resolv'd no longer to defer it. The next morning he sent the Captain of his Guards to those illustrious prisoners, to know whether they would be pleas'd, to permit him the honour of attending upon them, who being very just and not able to blame *Alaric* for any thing but his valour and his success, they admitted the officer that came from him very civilly, returning for answer that it was not for the vanquished to prescribe him laws.

The King of the *Goths* no sooner heard their answer, but he would needs go to their Apartments, notwithstanding the trouble of his wounds. This earnestness of his was no small, but secret disturbance to *Wallia*, though in all outward probability he ought to have been well pleas'd, as well in reference to *Alaric's* honour, as in relation to the advantages which the Princesses might gain by his visits. But examining a certain kind of envy so little conformable to his usual humour, and not able to understand the nature of that inward morion that caused it, he took it for an ill omen of that misfortune that threaten'd his passion.

In the mean time *Alaric* went to visit the Princesses, affecting at that time to appear more magnificent than he was wont: He was most splendidly habited, while *Autalpb*, *Sigeric*, and *Wallia* went before shining in Coats of Armour, that glittered all over with precious stones, and followed by five or six of the most considerable Officers in the Army. He was no sooner entred the Chamber resting his hand upon *Attalus's* Arm, but his eyes were dazzled at the lustre of so many persons as came forward to receive him: Nor did the charming Princesses appear less surpris'd at the noble presence of the famous *Alaric*, and he upon the sight of *Theodolinda*, felt a kind of pleasing disturbance in his heart, to which he had never been accusom'd before, but whether it were that he were desirous to recompense himself, or that he thought he was oblig'd to address himself in the first place to *Placidia*, to whom the success of his Arms had been most fatal, to her it was that with a Majesty mingled with submission, he thus began. Great Princess, said he, *Alaric* had appeared before you with less terror, and Rome had still enjoyed her native freedom, had *Honorius* observed those agreements to which he had so solemnly sworn. But since he would bring a war into the very bowels of his Empire, I have been constrained to assail a City, which you so powerfully defended against me. However Madam, we shall always make a difference between what you have aïed against us, and the rest injuries that we have received from our Enemies, and we shall look with more admiration upon the honour which we have obtained by your means, than with resentment upon the losses which you have caus'd us to sustain.

Sir, answered she, tis not for *Placidia* to examine the proceedings of *Honorius*, especially in affairs of important weight which are now maturely deliberated upon: So that if he were deceiv'd in his counsel, or otherwise thought he had reason to act as he did, I only followed the dictates of

my own duty, and labouring to do that for my Relations, for my Country, and for a miserable people, which it became the Daughter of the great Theodosius to act against the enemies of his Successors. But after all that, it behoves me now to make a more exact distinction, and as before I put up my vows and prayers to Heaven for the ruine of a potent Adversary, whom I beheld arm'd to the destruction of my Country; yet to the King of the Goths I must confess my self oblig'd to render all the acknowledg'ment due to a generous Conquerour, whose chains are so light and easie.

Alaric believing that he had discharged the full of his Duty to *Placidia*, made no other answer than with a respectful bow; and therefore knowing as well the passion which *Antalpb* had for her, as out of his desire to discourse *Theodolinda*, he left the Prince of the Goths with the Sister of *Honorius*, while he address'd himself to the Princess of the Huns: to whom with a courtly air, and a countenance which he had rendered more serene, through the strength of his imagination, *Madam*, said he. I must confess that you are a good friend to the Romans even to the end: for in short, not to say any thing of what you have done for them by shutting up your self in their City, during the inconveniences of a long Siege: I very well see that you only stay in Italy to cause some revolution worthy of your charms, while you compel the Conquerours of a Nation so by you belov'd to wear your fetters.

My Master, who listened with an extraordinary attention, hearing those last words, seem'd to be very much disturbed, insomuch that he could not forbear from coming to the King of the Goths. Thereupon *Theodolinda*, who already had a kindness for him, sometimes would cast her eyes upon his countenance, and perceiving the trouble that was easie to be observ'd therein, she was sensible thereof, and taking care to revive the heart of her illustrious Lover, to whom she thought her self oblig'd for so many real kindnesses: *Sir*, answered she very obligingly to the King of the Goths, were I so formidable as to cause the revolution which you speak of: however, you would be very secure for all me; for besides that, my humour does not lead me to make such eminent disturbances, I would not give *Wallia*, to whom I am so infinitely oblig'd, any just reason to accuse me for obtaining victories which I ought not to do, since perhaps he may be somewhat concern'd at the conquest.

My Master had been overjoyed at the answer, could he have apprehended all the fence: but he was so little inclinable to put favourable interpretations upon what concern'd his affection, that he was but in part satisfied. On the other side, *Alaric* presently understood the force of the words: both in regard that *Antalpb* had already given him an inkling of *Wallia's* passion, as also for that he perceiv'd him so much concern'd for *Theodolinda's* affairs. So that all of a sudden, perceiving an inward disturbance which was not usual, he resolv'd to withdraw himself out of an entertainment that began to be little to the purpose, but very perplexing; away therefore went he, and taking *Wallia* along with him; and no sooner was he return'd to his Quarters, but he call'd my Master into his Closet: at first he beheld him very earnestly, and changing colour, but then with an aspect that betrayed the disquiet of his mind, *Prince*, said he, you never told me that *Theodolinda* was the fairest person in the world. Those words very much troubled my Master, but recovering himself, *Sir*, said he, if I found not the Princess of the Huns so charming as she seem'd to be to you, it was not for me to speak contrary to my thoughts: but if she were as fair as your Majesty affirms, I did not think it convenient to make such a report, which might involve you in a dangerous piece of curiosity. "Either I am very much deceiv'd, replied *Alaric*, or you have had some experience of the jeopardy; but that which is dangerous for *Wallia*, is not so for *Alaric*: for you know that I may have reason to hope, where you cannot think your wishes should be entertained. The Prince of the Huns does not so disdain an alliance with me, to refuse me the enjoyment of *Theodolinda*, if I desire it: for if the Conquerour of Rome send him Embassadors upon so acceptable a proposition, the fair Princess will not put me to the expence of many sighs, to court her to be Queen of the Goths. "She deserves to be Queen of all the world, sadly replied *Wallia*: but, *Sir*, would you be beholding to an Embassy only for *Theodolinda*? Think you a Princess so charming as she deserves no more pains, whose heart is not to surrender to reasons of State, but to the constancy of her Lovers services? "She is more than worthy, replied the King, and therefore instead of acting upon this occasion like persons of my Rank, I declare to you, that I am resolv'd to apply my self wholly to the service of *Theodolinda*. Thus I thought good out of the friendship which I still preserve for you, to speak to you in this manner on purpose to divert you from pursuing any design opposite to my intentions. In short, I would have you know that I shall find all the likelyhoods and assistances imaginable to my pretences, where *Wallia* will meet with nothing but obstacles, and that therefore it will be a vanity for him to continue obstinately the Rival of *Alaric*; but that rather he should endeavour

“deavour to overcome a passion the happy success whercof is so improbable. While he spake in that manner, he generously embrac'd my Master, and pursuing his discourse in a most obliging manner, “*Cousin, said he,* 'tis only in favour of a Prince that loves you, that you are desired to put these constraints upon your self which *Alaric* demands, and that if you win the victory which I expect from the greatness of your courage, I shall be more engaged to you for that, than for all those others for which I am so much obliged to your valour. In all Battels and Sieges you have fought for *Wallia* as well as for *Alaric*: you have won honour by these actions that have been advantageous to me, and then your enemies were neither persons by you belov'd, nor formidable: but now you must quarrel with *Wallia* himself, you must carry the war into his heart, you must drive out thence what you take the greatest pleasure to harbour there; and your Generosity acting only within your self, and without any noise or affectation of fame, instead of those exclamations which you would have heard from Nations and Armies you will receive for the noblest of all your actions, only the reward of a secret satisfaction for having been able to perform it.

While he spake in this manner, he took notice that *Wallia* appeared very exceedingly troubled, and scarce in a condition to return him an answer, so that to master altogether a heart which he saw began to waver, he pursued his argument; “*Besides the satisfaction, said he,* that you will have in your self, what may you not expect from a Prince that never was ingratul, and how can you better free your self from the strangest disturbance that ever was: For to tell you plainly, I love *Theodolinda*. “*Ah, Sir, replied Wallia with a pensive aspect,* I know it too well for my repose: and I see too apparently that I am the most unfortunate of men. *Alas, pursued he sighing,* was it not enough that I was born to love the Daughter of a great King, without being born to reign, but must I be immediately crossed by the Competitorship of an Emperour, and meet a Rival in the person of my King? But what King, *modestly replied Alaric,* he is not such an one as your affection would make him appear to be: for, Prince, I can assure you that for your sake he has contended with the passion which he feels for the Princess of the *Huns*, and that he is resolv'd still to withstand it, though with little hope of victory, so that though you are not in a condition to supply a place which he would freely surrender into your possession: strive you on your part, *added he,* and we will shortly give you an account of the progress we our selves have made in so just an enterprise.

Concluding these words, he went forth, and my Master remained so exceedingly perplexed, that he knew not whether it were best to follow *Alaric*, whether he were best to return him thanks, or whether he ought to complain of a procedure which he found so obliging, at a time when he perceiv'd that he could not have that acknowledgment which it behoved him to shew. However, he went to his Apartment to argue with himself whether it were possible to be complacent to *Alaric's* persuasions. But after many various reflections, after many unprofitable sighs, and extraordinary disturbances, *Theodolinda* was still Mistress of his heart, and he was so far from being willing to break those chains with which that charming Princess had fettered him, that he only found that he had not so much as the power to think of any such thing: neither could he forbear to visit that incomparable person; so that *Alaric* coming in a little while after, blush'd so soon as he perceiv'd *Wallia*, and *Wallia* for his part turn'd away his eyes, and cast them upon *Theodolinda's* face, as it were to shew the King a fair excuse for those faults which he was constrained to commit. They both presently saw that they should be a mutual hinderance to each other, in their intentions to entertain *Theodolinda* alone: and therefore *Alaric* instead of standing upon his Dignity, considering that *Wallia's* engagement was before his, and that a Prince whom he infinitely esteem'd, had reason to bewail the small hopes of success in his affection, departed first out of the Room, and by that obliging act as it were violently pulled away the enamour'd *Wallia* from out of the charming Princess's presence. However, *Autalpb* staid with *Placidia*, *Sigeric* applyed himself to the Princess of the *Huns*; and *Attalus*, as diligent as he was to keep near the person of the King, now staid with *Cleomira*.

The King of the *Goths* was no sooner return'd to his Palace, but taking my Master aside, and stedfastly beholding him; *Prince,* said he, *have you followed my advice to good purpose? Have you yet forgotten Theodolinda? In short, what can you tell me in reference to those things which so much concern us? That the great Alaric,* answered my Master, *is the most generous that ever was; and that Wallia is the most in love of any person in the world; for having done what I can, I am obliged after all, Sir,* added he, *sighing,* *to confess to your Majesty that I am so far from being able to vanquish my passion, that I was never able to contend with it in the least.* “*But, Prince, replied Alaric,* what hopes have you? How will you order
“your

“your affairs in such a nice occurrence as this, or how will you divide *Wallia* between *Theodolinda* and *Alaric*? The King of the *Goths*, replied my Master, shall have my Arm wholly devoted to his service, and the Princess of the *Huns* shall enjoy my heart, where she shall be adored to the last gasp of my breath.

Upon these words the King seemed to be prepossessed with a thought that wholly took up his mind, so that after he had studied a while; “Well then Prince, added he of a sudden, let us even take our chances, let us both love *Theodolinda* since heaven has so resolved it, I will neither put a constraint either upon your intentions or my own: and I promise you withal not to make use of any advantage, which I may expect from my Royal dignity. I do not find my self altogether destitute of endowments, fit to purchase an illustrious heart, and I question not to be able to assail *Theodolinda*, notwithstanding the corivalship of a young Prince, though of so fair a reputation and so great a merit. He had no sooner concluded these words, but he turn’d toward a company of Courtiers, who were retir’d out of respect, and *Wallia* instead of making any answer, sigh’d to see himself overcome by generosity, having no other comfort but the pleasure of knowing that his love was greater than his Rivals, and that he had given visible testimonies thereof.

At the same time that those two renowned lovers prepared to contend for the enjoyment of *Theodolinda*, yet without any injury one to another we departed from *Rome*, whereof *Attalus* as it is well known was made Governour: For how noble soever the employment were, the generous *Alaric* durst not bestow it upon *Wallia*, to whom he had already offer’d it, that he might not seem to offer but an envenomed potion, while he separated him from *Theodolinda*. As for *Autalpb*, he rather chose to follow the Sister of *Honorius* whom we carried along with us, than to command in *Italy*. And *Sigeric* also, though no person could ever tell the reason, refused that honour which he had well deserved by his famous exploit, and which would not have been bestowed upon him, but in regard of his birth. While those things were a doing, the *Goths* who were in pay earnestly sought the protection of the Princess of the Royal Family, to the end that by their favour they might obtain the employments to which they aspired. To that purpose they would not lose so fair an opportunity to fix themselves, minding nothing else but to get rewards and recompences, before they left a Country where it was not difficult to find satisfaction. The Army was march’d toward *Calabria*, the government whereof was given to me at *Wallia*’s request, and that of *Capua* was in a manner promised to a Soldier of fortune, who was named *Autharic*, whose interests Prince *Sigeric* most ardently supported. He had also several private conferences with him, the meaning whereof we could not presently discover, though we were no sooner arrived at *Constance*, but there happened strange Revolutions as you shall understand.

Hilderic had proceeded thus far in the history of *Wallia*’s life, when the King of the *Tongres* came to consult with *Balamir*, what he had to do as well in the Camp of the *Cimbrians* before he departed thence, as also in the Army of the *Franks* when he came thither. They presently agreed that *Taxander* should visit those two Princes, whose interest had been most prevalent with *Rosamond*, to gain that leave which he had obtained: And *Balamir* not only thought it convenient, to let him have a convoy proportionable to his dignity, but also to send *Telanor* after him, to carry along with him the *Cimbrian* prisoner, which *Pharamond* had demanded from the King of the *Basternes*. For that reason he called his faithful Squire so soon as *Taxander* was gone, and as he was about to instruct him what he should say from him to the King of the *Franks*, he observed an extraordinary melancholy in his eyes, whatever the other could do to conceal it. *Balamir* who had an extraordinary kindness for him, seeing him surpris’d and compassionately sad, desired to know the cause thereof: When *Telanor* sighing, Ab Sir, said he, would to heaven I were not obliged to satisfy your curiosity in that particular, and that the news which I expect, may not prove answerable to the news which I have received. Now Sir, I beseech you ask me no farther, to clear a thing which I know no more of my self, and for your own quiet sake, never meet a misfortune which it may be will never happen.

Though those words had in some measure moderated *Balamir*’s desire of a more exact information, yet could they not have hindred him from being eager, to know at least what *Telanor* already understood, had he not observed in his countenance an unwillingness to explain himself, which was the reason that he only spoke to him about such affairs, as he had to do in the Camp of the *Franks*: and presently sent him away perceiving *Ambiomer* coming into the Chamber. It was a particular design that led him thither that morning, beside the pleasure which that famous *Gaul* took in the company of a person whose virtue he so highly revered: For, said he to *Balamir*, You know Sir, that the fairest lips in the

world have commanded you to visit that learned Greek, that came yesterday to the Camp together with Martian. And the uncertainty of my own birth having bred in me a curiosity so great, that I should not have a greater, but only to know the story of your noble adventures, obliges me to visit Theon as well as the illustrious Balamir. Nor shall I have any reason to complain of the command I have received: For if in the visit we shall make both together, I bear my own life threatened with accidents that I have reason to be afraid of; this will be my comfort when Balamir shall be promis'd all the happiness that his merit can be recompens'd withal: "Alas to this hour, replied the Prince, I never saw that I had the least ground to expect a fortunate destiny, for excepting "only some few actions, the success whereof has not been altogether contrary to my hopes, "You know how I have in other things been persecuted all along by fortune: So that I have "as little reason to hope well as the valiant *Ambiomer*, and were I not assur'd but that I am "Son to the King of the *Huns*, I know no cause that I have to visit *Theon* with more confidence, than you may have in his predictions.

They went forth continuing all the way this discourse, and calling upon *Martian* whose virtue was at that time no less famous in the *Cimbrian* Camp; than in the Court of *Theodosius*, they went into the Chamber of that renowned lover of *Pulcheria*, where they heard of the advance of the Emperours forces toward *Cologne*. *Balamir* then told him, in few words, that to satisfy the curiosity of the Princesses, he had a design together with *Ambiomer* to visit the learned *Theon* without making himself known, to the end he might hear what that great person could say, after he had punctually observed the Lineaments of their faces.

Martian believing that desire of theirs not to be ill grounded, carried those two famous Soldiers to *Theon's* Apartment, concluding that *Ambiomer* should lead the way, to the end the old man might be the more easily deceived, when he gave his judgment upon their natiivities. Most learned *Theon*, (said he presenting to him *Ambiomer* and *Balamir*) your reputation has brought hither two noble Knights, who being every moment to encounter great dangers, and to travel in the chase of honour, fain would understand what they have to fear or hope.

Theon had no sooner cast his eyes upon *Ambiomer*, but he seem'd to be surpris'd at the noble haughtiness of the *Gaul*, and the Grandeur of that air that appear'd in his behaviour, and the whole composure of his countenance. But no sooner had he turn'd his looks upon illustrious *Balamir*, when an astonishment more than ordinary seiz'd him. He fix'd his eyes with delight, to consider the sweet Majesty and brisk vivacity, that spread it self over the whole person of that young Prince, and having attentively observ'd the lineaments of his face, and as earnestly beheld *Ambiomer's*; Either all the rules of my art are false, cryed he strangely moved and addressing his speech to *Martian*, or those two great Princes whom you call Knights, are worthy the Crowns which they are one day to wear. *Balamir* listned to his words with astonishment, and *Ambiomer* who found them conformable to the generousness of his thoughts and inclinations, could not withstand a secret motion of hope, that leap'd in his heart, ere his prudence could suppress it.

On the other side, the learned Greek found himself insensibly engaged, to behold the two young Soldiers more exactly, which he did while *Martian* went to speak to *Varanez*, concerning some affairs in reference to the Army. After he had examin'd all the lineaments that serv'd to fortifie his knowledge; I do not believe, said he, that there are any two persons under heaven, between whom there is that agreement in their fortunes: For in short not to tell you, that you are the most valiant among the most valiant persons in the world, and that you are passionately in love, I dare assure you that notwithstanding your potent Rivals, that the one will not be less happy than the other in reference to your Amours, than you have both been hitherto prosperous in the pursuit of honour.

At those words *Balamir* and *Ambiomer* both sigh'd, and *Theon* believing that they gave little credit to his words; I fear, pursued he, that you take my prediction for one of those general conjectures, that may be made upon your age and your noble affects: But if I tell you what has already happened of most importance, you will then believe it may be, that the secret of future events is not altogether clos'd from me, since with less trouble I sometimes discover to the knowledge of men, the most hidden of their past adventures. And in short to begin with the first accidents of your lives, I must tell you that your births have been both a long time concealed. "I must confess, replied the Prince pointing to *Ambiomer*, that this noble Knight is not well satisfied "of his own to this day. But learned *Theon*, that very particular which you would have "me apply to my self, confirms me in my former opinion, that it is not for the unfortunate *Balamir* to flatter himself, with those hopes which you would persuade him to conceive.

At the name of *Balamir* whom a thousand victories had rendred famous through all the

World, the old man appeared of a sudden surpris'd, and full of contemplation: But at length with all the respect imaginably due to the Prince, Sir, answered he, *if it be true that you are Balamir, then must Theon renounce his heart as a vain amusement and a meer cheat: seeing that setting aside that remarkable valour, all those other things that I find in your face, appear to me quite contrary to what I have heard of the great Balamir: That Prince was not born till after Mundific; and according to the best of my skill you can have no brother: besides it is reported, that Balamir has lost the most incomparable Princess of the Goths, and I am strongly persuaded, that no accident nor no power in the world can deprive you of that which once you loved. And after all Sir, I do not find that nature has given you a heart capable of inconstancy. Yet I know that Balamir is reckon'd in the number of these illustrious slaves, that wear the chains of Rosamond with so much honour.*

Though the Prince of the *Huns* did not perceive his curiosity fully satisfied with the old mans words, yet he forbore not to return a most obliging answer: *I wish it had pleased heaven, said he, that Mundific and death had not so surely ravish'd from me the fair and unfortunate Hunnimonda, as it is certain that I am Balamir, and that I have an affection for the Queen of the Cimbrians, which I shall preserve to the end of my life.* I cannot tell, replied the learned Stranger, *whether you do not talk in this manner to puzzle me, but if what you say be true, then I must agree that all the knowledge which my Art affords me is very uncertain, and that I should not dare to tell your friend that he was born a Prince, though I see marks thereof that pass infallible among those of my profession.*

Ambiomer had reason to be well satisfied with those last words, yet out of the effect of his moderation, he was so far from continuing a discourse so pleasing to his fancy, that he himself altered the subject thereof, and insensibly oblig'd *Theon* to talk of the principal Courts which he had seen, since his departure from *Alexandria*. The Greek acquitted himself like an experienced person, and having judiciously displayed the several interests of those persons which he had known, *Balamir* and *Ambiomer* took their leaves of him, with a greater esteem for his worth, than inclination to believe what he had related, concerning the condition of their fortune.

The generous Prince being gone, it was easie for him to conceive an advantageous opinion of *Ambiomer's* birth, nor did he fail to repeat all that *Theon* had said in favour of that noble Knight. The report thereof was presently spread abroad, and it caused no small joy in an Army where *Ambiomer* had given so many proofs of his valour. The famous unknown person for his part, neither contributed to the confirmation or denial of the report, but keeping himself within the true bounds of moderation, he was contented only to shew himself obliging to those persons, who earnestly wished that *Ambiorix* were come to establish *Theon's* opinion. In the mean time it being late enough in the morning, to go to the Castle and visit the Princesses, *Balamir*, *Varanez*, and *Martian* went to *Rosamond's* Apartment, and *Ambiomer* to the Queen of the *Turingiens*. *Amalazontha* who already knew what had been made publick to his honour, believ'd him to be put up with *Theon's* words, and that he was come only to entertain her with the discourse of a passion the testimonies whereof she could not endure to hear, so strangely was the prepossessed with a respect for the King of the *Franks*: And therefore she seem'd to be troubled, and beginning a discourse according to her own design, she spake very little of *Theon*, and that very slightly. Whereupon though the dispute of that learned man, had made no impression in the mind of *Ambiomer*, yet the fiery *Gaul* was not a little displeas'd at *Amalazontha's* behaviour. He immediately summon'd into his memory all the causes of complaint that he could think upon, and being dispos'd to shake off the severe yolk of a disobliging Princess, whom he had but too religiously ador'd, He went to find out the Sister of *Agelmond*, there to meet with that sweetness, which he observ'd no longer in the *Turingien* Queen.

He was no sooner entred into *Agione's* Chamber, but the amiable Prince's presently rising up, "Generous *Ambiomer*, said she, how overjoyed was I to understand, that the skill "of a great personage not accus'd to be deceived, proves so conformable to your actions, "and the universal belief of the Camp. For my part I am very easily perswaded, that "your birth is such as it is reported to be: And though I were not prepossessed with *Theon's* "Art, yet should I be always so much in favour of *Ambiomer's* merit, as never to believe "otherwise, than that so famous a Soldier could never be born, but of an illustrious extraction.

Those words entirely subdued *Ambiomer's* liberty, for the enamour'd Knight charm'd and embolden'd to see himself so obligingly us'd by a young Princess, whose heart he knew was not yet engag'd, of a sudden followed the incitements of his own exalted Soul, that could inspire nothing but what was great upon what occasion soever. Then he beheld

Agione with a passionate aspect, and notwithstanding the fierceness of his courage, looking down upon the ground out of respect; *Would to God Madam*, cryed he, *that one day I might wear the Crown that Heaven makes me hope for: But divine Princess*, added he immediately with a sigh, *I should wish also that you would not be offended, if I put my Scepter at the same time into your hands, and that I could presume also to demand in exchange those Fetters, which I should be contented to wear as long as I live.*

He had no sooner concluded these words, but the amiable Sister of *Agelmond* seemed to be surpris'd and blush'd, and making a reflection upon a discourse which she had drawn upon her self; "Ah *Ambiomer*, replied she with a disdain which the enamour'd Knight observed, "it did not become you to abuse *Agione's* ingenuity, nor ought those thoughts of esteem which I had for you, give you the encouragement to offend me.

These words pass'd between them when the King of the *Lombards* entred into the Chamber, and notwithstanding the melancholy of his heart, taking notice of the discomposure in *Agione's* countenance, and *Ambiomer's* looks, "Sister, said he, I do not think I am deceiv'd, when I believe that this illustrious Knight, has the same thoughts of kindness which before he had for *Amalazontha*, to the great advantage of the *Turingiens*. You know that his passion was approv'd by an understanding and grateful Prince, and I hope instead of following *Amalazontha's* example, that you love the *Lombards* too well, to refuse them a King which I would chuse for them, since I shall never be in a condition my self either to rule my people, or command my Armies. There is a necessity for a famous Soldier to govern a warlike Nation, and those disorders which you saw the desire of Rule excited, when I was at *Tamyraque*, teach me that the fierceness of the *Lombards*, will never submit to a person that does not appear among them, with some extraordinary mark of superiority. 'Tis also better for them to let them have a Stranger for their Sovereign, to stifle that emulation the consequences whereof may prove dangerous, by dividing those families that may pretend to the Supreme power. Ah Sir what is it you say, (replied the amiable Princess, letting fall certain tears from her fair eyes?) That which I have resolv'd upon, replied *Agelmond*, and what you shall see me put in execution in a few days. I beseech you answered she, change a thought that bodes to me nothing but what is fatal, and if I must purchase you the friendship of *Ambiomer*, if he will be contented only with *Agione's* affection, I will freely give him my hand since you command it. But after all that, I would rather chuse a private wedlock than to be a Queen, if I can obtain that dignity by no other means, than by the resignation of a brother whom I love beyond my life. How Sir, pursued *Ambiomer* with an utterance, that testified both his wonder and acknowledgment, could you abandon a Nation that submits to your laws with so much obedience? No no, Sir, you ought not to deprive them of a King, than whom there is no Prince more worthy to supply that potent Throne. Surely if Fate would afford me the opportunities to be your Comforter, while you remain oppress'd with those sorrows that have seiz'd your heart, I should never be so happy as in serving a great King, and in adoring a great Princess whom it is infinitely above my hopes ever to enjoy.

This noble and generous dispute had not ended so, had not the Princess of the *Lombards* been sent for by *Rosamond* and *Albisinda*, to the Queen of the *Turingiens* Apartment, where all the Princesses dined that day.

The End of the Third Book of the Tenth Part:

PHARAMOND.

BOOK IV.

THe King of the Lombards had conceived an esteem so extraordinary for *Ambiorer*, that detaining him in the Princesses Chamber, he discovered to him his whole mind, and obstinately resolv'd to render him happy, notwithstanding the modest excuses which the generous Knight made. On the other side, *Balamir*, *Varanez*, and *Martian*, descended from the Castle and they were no sooner come into the Borough but *Balamir* retired to his quarters, believing that by that time *Taxander* would have visited the King of *Suevia*, and those other persons of quality of whom he had design'd to take his leave, before he departed from the *Cimbrian* Camp.

There he found that by *Telamir's* care, *Giler*, the King of the *Basternes* prisoner was already dispatched away, and that there was a Convoy ready, who only expected orders to attend the King of the *Tongres*, who was no sooner return'd to the Prince of the *Huns*, but he presently prepared to be gone: when *Balamir* observing the gayety of his countenance; *How fortunate is your lot*, said he sighing, *you love a fair Princess and you are going to see her: You love her and you are going to be received by her, with all the marks of a tender affection, which you can possibly expect from a person that you hope to enjoy. Alas how different is the unfortunate Balamir's destiny, from that of the King of the Tongres! I never loved Hunnimonda as it fell out, but to see her ravished from me by a Brother, by a marriage and by death: and if I wear the Queen of the Cimbrians chains, I do not find in my heart that I was ever born for that divine Princess, but she has also told me with her own lips, that she can never agree to grant me that precious reward, that has been promised to so many Kings that fight for the prize: So that if I were a Rival formidable to Pharamond, I would willingly out of a sence of acknowledgment, that he should understand all the particulars which I have told you. I shall only speak of them to himself*, reply'd *Taxander*, and I am very confident he will more joyfully receive the news hereof, than of the total defeat of his Enemies. "I will go a little farther, reply'd the Prince of the "Huns, for I must confess I should be glad to see the famous King of the Franks, if many "weighty considerations, did not hinder me from going to his Camp. "Let me alone to "procure the interview, pursued *Taxander*, and I'll promise you to return to morrow "merely upon that occasion, whatever kindness I have for my lovely *Adelziada*, nay though "the return of *Godegesile* to this place, should disengage me of the promise I have made. The two Princes then embracing with all the marks of esteem and real affection, *Taxander* departed from *Balamir*, to return whither his love called him.

Not long after, an ancient grave person of a comly presence came to the Prince of the *Huns*, and making himself known to be *Ambiorix*, he was receiv'd by the Prince with all the testimonies of sincerity with which *Balamir* was wont to gain hearts: *Sir*, said he, *in regard I could not see Ambiorer, who, as they told me, was gone to walk upon the Banks of the Rhine with the King of the Lombards upon a very serious conference. I thought fit to address my self to the famous General of the Cimbrians, to put into his hands that which may be of advantage for the knowledge of a Soldier whom I bred up; to be afterwards presented to Rosamond, to whom I am come to discover a secret worthy of some consideration. What*, said the Prince of the *Huns*, interrupting him, *was the valiant Ambiorer born in Bohemia? He*

was born there. or I am deceiv'd, replied the old man. If that be true, said *Balamir*, interrupting him again, let us not delay to give the Queen that satisfaction, which she will most certainly receive upon such acceptable tydings. "She shall know the whole truth, replied *Ambiorix*, when you think it convenient for us to go up to the Castle, where I am told she is lodged. "Rather, answered the Prince, so soon as you have well rested your self after your journey. I travelled such short journeys, replied the Gaul, that I have no need of repose.

Concluding those words, he called one of his Attendants to him, and took a little Cabinet out of his hands, which he presented to *Balamir*. The Prince having ordered it to be carefully looked to, he went with *Ambiorix* to the Queen of the *Bohemians* Apartment, who no sooner understood the cause of their coming, but she was extremely joyed, and most civilly welcomed the Stranger. She testified a world of impatience to be satisfied in an Adventure, the truth whereof she had so long desired to understand, to which purpose she carried *Ambiorix* into her Closet; where the Gaul having recovered himself out of that surprize which the surpassing Beauty of *Rosamond* usually produc'd, began his short Relation, addressing himself as follows to the Queen.

The History of Ambiorix.

MADAM, I shall be very careful to cut off from my discourse all particulars which are not absolutely necessary for the information which you desire. For in short, Madam, I know that we are not to abuse the precious leisure of persons of your Quality. Therefore, Madam, to speak to your Majesty as succinctly as may be, give me leave to tell you, that I am a Gaul born in *Belgia*, of a Family sufficiently noble, and that the first time I bore Arms was at the famous Battel which the great *Theodosius* gained against *Eugenius* and *Arbogastus*. After the defeat of those two men, the Gauls enjoyed a most pleasing tranquillity, so that I being neither of an age or humour to live at peace in my own Country, went to seek employment in the Wars as far as *Pannonia*, where the Huns every day enlarged those Conquests which have rendered them so formidable to the best part of Europe. To that purpose I marched toward the *Rhine*, whither I came in few days, stopping no where but in such Towns where there was something remarkable to be seen. Passing the River I entred *Germany*, I saw the Country of the *Marcomans*, and crossing the *Hermanns* I came into *Bohemia*, where I understood the little Prince *Theobald* was newly born, and that there were magnificent preparations in hand to solemnize his Birth. Three days after the Solemnities began, I parted from *Marobudus*, and passed the great Mountains with which your Majesty's Dominions are environed, and descended directly into *Celemanzia*. No sooner was I come there, but that I understood that the King of the Huns was making great preparations to invade the higher *Mætia*, at the head of four and twenty thousand men, and that the Queen his Consort should suddenly follow him, though she had been but a little before delivered of *Balamir*, and found some inconvenience in it. Presently I advanced toward the *Danow*, and having crossed it at the City of *Comagenes*, I listed my self among the Troops that were raising in *Pannonia*, which were ordered to the Frontiers of *Dacia*, near the great *Meurse* where the King had commanded the Rendezvous to be, and to take a general view of the Army. As for my own part, in regard I had been a Soldier already, and that my Equipage was remarkable, I was soon taken notice of, and presented to the King in a great plain where we encamped, between *Sirminum* and the two *Meurses*.

But in the interim there came news from *Pannonia* that overthrew all the King's designs and compelled him to return in haste to the succour of three or four Countries which Fire and Sword had already laid waste in several parts. For forty thousand *Histrians* having passed the *Julian Alpes*, and being joyned with thirty thousand *Japodes*, had ravaged all that part of the Country which extends it self from their Territories to the *Dravus*. That invasion struck such a terrour into all *Pannonia*, that those persons to whom the education of the Princes *Mundisic* and *Balamir* was omitted, minded nothing else but to flee for refuge into Climates far remote from the seat of the war, and thought it also convenient to separate themselves for fear some one single accident might overturn the double hopes both of the people and the Royal Family. So that they carried them both at a great distance beyond the *Danow*; and as they chose for *Mundisic* the Capital City of the *Terracians*, they secured the

young *Balamir* in the City of *Singone* in the Territories of the *Quadians*. In the mean time the King of the *Huns*, to the end he might not utterly give over his Conquests in *Mæsia*, left some part of his Army in Garrisons in such places as he had taken; and marched for *Pannonia* with the rest of his Forces, hoping to reinforce them in his march, as also that the King your Father would send him other assistance. But he was hardly arrived among the *Cibaliens*, when he understood that all *Bohemia* was up in Arms, and that the *Narissquians* having passed the *Hercinian* Mountains, were got into the great Province of the *Turiocherians*, and had cut in pieces thirty thousand *Cimbrians* who oppos'd their march. The report ran also that the *Bohemians* had taken the same care for the preservation of young *Theobald*, as the *Huns* had done to preserve *Mundisic* and *Balamir*; and that the King your Father had sent the Infant Prince into the Country of the *Quadians* under the tuition of a person in whom he had an entire confidence. We understood this last particular by reason that *Theobald's* Governour went to live at *Rbobodun*, a City not far distant from *Singone*, where, as I have already told you, *Balamir* was secured: and from whence you may well conjecture that we often received news of our Army. The King of the *Huns* was not a little discontented to see himself disappointed of the Succours which he expected; yet was so far from discovering to his Army any sign of his trouble, that he marched furiously toward his Enemies, and set upon them in their Trenches before *Rogonda*, which they had vigorously besieged for above a month before. The *Huns* however, maugre the stout resistance of the Enemy, encouraged by the presence of their King, entered their Trenches, and raising the Siege with great loss to the *Histrians*, who thereupon finding themselves separated from their own Country by the *Alpes*, sent to make some propositions of peace, and obliged the *Japodes* to enter into a Treaty for a general accommodation. While the Commissioners treated upon this important affair, it was agreed that the two Enemies should remove at a distance the one from the other, and that the *Huns* should march toward the *Danow*, while the *Histrians* and *Japodes* retreated toward the Mountain *Ocra*. The King of the *Huns* also for the more commodious subsistence of his Army, thought fit to divide it, and to send one part beyond the River into the Province of the *Quadians*. I was in that Body that marched out of *Pannonia*, and we had not remained long in our Quarters, when the news came that the *Belgians* and *Menapians* were at war with the *Morins* and the *Tongres* upon certain claims which they laid to some part of each other's Territories. That news being confirm'd in a few days, I resolv'd to quit the Strangers who were making peace, and to hasten to the relief of my own Country, which *Marsiliandus* Father of *Taxander* now King of the *Tongrians* threaten'd to invade. I march'd with all speed, glad in my mind, that I was returning into my native soil, when crossing a wood I saw there the fresh marks of a Combat which had been lately fought: for besides the blood wherewith the Grass had been stained in several places, I saw five or six Horsemen that lay stretched upon the ground dangerously wounded: one of them was dead, the rest gasping for life, and not one of them that could inform me what I question'd to know. Thereupon I looked about every where to try what discovery I could make; and taking notice of an Osier that grew some two paces from the high way, I observ'd that it shook, though there were no wind stirring, which made me earnestly desire what the meaning thereof should be: thereupon having removed with my Lance those Boughs that hindered my sight, I perceived a lovely infant, who no sooner beheld the glittering of the end of the weapon which I held forth, but he began to play with it with his little hands, and smiled in my face: I was charm'd both with the behaviour and countenance of the child, and for fear he should hurt himself, I presently sent one of my Attendants to take care of him: being alighted, I ran to the lovely innocent, I took him in my Arms, and kissed him. He was pleas'd with my Careffes, which without doubt I had longer continued, but that at the same time one of my men shew'd me a Knight, who being less wounded than the rest, gave me some hopes of better information. I went to that unknown person, and I had no sooner enquired his Country and whose the child was, but instead of returning an answer, he made me a sign to take up a little Cabinet that lay close by him, signifying to me that I should there find the full discovery of all that I looked for. But, added I, to whom must I restore what I have here by providence, found in a Country where I know no person living. To Briomer, said he in short, But, said I presently perceiving his strength begin to fail him, can you not tell me who that Briomer is, or where I may meet with him? He strove to have returned me an answer, but being stifled with his blood he dyed, not being able to speak a word more.

The fair Queen seem'd surpris'd at that part of the old mans relation, and as little satisfied in reference to *Ambiomer*, however not willing to interrupt him, she suffer'd him to proceed.

I made

I made no question, pursued *Ambiorix*, but that *Briomer*, whose name they had told me, had been the Father to whom I was to make an acceptable restitution, So that being desirous to restore him a Son, the loss of whom I could not but think was a great grief to him, I enquired after him in several places round about, and went to several Neighbouring Cities to hear news of him: but all my care was fruitless, no person could tell who that *Briomer* was; nor did I see any thing in the Cabinet that could give me any light. True it was, that by the Riches and Magnificence which I found there, I readily conjectured that the wealth of the person whom I sought was vast, but he I was perplexed to consider that an infant was deprived of it all by such an effect of his evil fortune. I was mov'd by that reflection which I made upon his misfortune; and in regard the affection which I had for him every day increased, as also for that I never had any inclination to marry, I resolv'd to adopt that Son which Heaven had as it were given me for a present, and to apply my self to give him an education so noble, that he might not look upon me hereafter as the author of a second misfortune. Thereupon I gave him the name of *Ambiomer*, compos'd of my own and his supposed real Father's name; I sent for women also to take care of him, and travelled easily; for fear of injuring his health. As soon as I came into *Gallia*, I sent the little *Ambiomer*, to the City of the *Parisians* to be educated there, and I went my self to the Army where I was not a little respected. At that time the war of *Hungary* began to be so famous over all *Europe*, that the *Belgians* were of opinion that I must have learn'd an art which I had practis'd in those Armies so famous for their victories, insomuch that they made new Levies, of which they gave me the command, where I laboured by my actions to uphold the repute which they conceived of my abilities. We fought a long time with various success, and that equality of force and fortune made us so obstinate, that it was impossible for our Neighbours to compose our differences, though they often offered us their mediation. Then it was that the young *Ambiomer*, in whom I had observed several good omens of his valour, having but just accomplished the exercises of his youth, conjured me by several Letters to send for him, and to permit him to expose for my sake a life the preservation whereof he owed to me: I could not refuse his generous suit, I sent for *Ambiomer*, and I found his proportion so rare, his aspect so noble, that his goodly presence confirm'd me more in the true opinion which I had before of his extraction, than all his swathing Cloaths of Cloth of Gold which I preserv'd; or the little Box enriched with large Diamonds which I found in the Cabinet that I have mentioned. But, Madam, how did my esteem and affection encrease, when he was permitted to seek out opportunities to signalize that great courage wherewith nature had endowed him. He would be in all parties; they never went far enough to answer his courage; and though by reason of his years he had at first no command, yet he would still act as chief in all Encounters where disorder hindered the Soldiers from obeying their Leaders. In short, he rallyed, sustain'd, encouraged, led back to the charge, and what was more wonderful he never return'd but Victor, and never without giving all the honour to his Commander. Such a generous carriage joyned to his extraordinary valour, so charm'd the *Belgians*, that they looked upon *Ambiomer* as a person sent from Heaven, and that general affection grounded upon his great merit, soon rais'd that famous Soldier to the supreme command. Then being able to put in practice his military virtue with greater splendour, he always design'd enterprizes conformable to his new Dignity; and having carried the terrour of our Arms beyond the *Rhine*, he compelled our enemies to beg for peace upon terms very disadvantageous to themselves. I recalled him then, that he might taste the fruits of so much labour; and at his return the Sovereign Magistrate of *Cesorumage*, who was the chiefest in quality among the *Belgians*, decreed him high honours, and assign'd him large pensions in those Territories where he presided. *Ambiomer* failed not to go see him, and to testify his acknowledgment, and was receiv'd by him with an aspect and behaviour more obliging than all the kindneses which he had receiv'd at his hands. At that time *Codrusus*, for so was the *Belgian* called, was at a pleasant House which he had built in the Country of the *Ambianians*, together with his Family, there he entertained *Ambiomer* with all the demonstrations of friendship, and all the Divertisements which a lovely Country that was environed with three or four fair Cities could afford. In several marches also which he made, he engaged several Knights of the most considerable Quality in the Country; and on the other side his wife drew together all the handsome Ladies that liv'd in those parts. But how courtly soever that assembly was, *Codrusus* had the principal ornament in his own House, for the amiable *Virione* his only Daughter surpassed all the rest; none of the other *Belgian* Ladies presuming to contest with her for precedency of Beauty. The charming Virgin was about sixteen years of age, her proportion was tall, and free, her hair of a dark white, her eyes blew, and equally dis-

stanc'd, and in her complection was to be seen that lively freshness, that usually accompanies youth. *Virione*, such as I have described her in few words, had already caused as many persons to sigh for her, as there were lovers fit for her in our Country: And I may safely say that the bounds of our *Gallia*, did not limit the bounds of her charms. She had extend'd her conquests beyond the *Rhine*, for the young *Vindoristus* King of the *Bructeres* almost dyed for love of her near the River *Amisia*: while she remained insensible of a passion that procured pity from the most severe and cruel. But if the Chains which a person of his quality wore in *Germany* were so apparent, how were *Belgians* that wore theirs undiscovered, and *Virione* who perceived them not, remain'd expos'd to their contrivances. One of these secret lovers named *Terambaud*, came with several Others of his friends to *Codrufus's* house, while *Ambiomer* stay'd there, and while the Magistrates friends thought upon nothing else, but how to invent new diversifements every day, *Terambaud* only watch'd an opportunity to execute a design which he had laid a long time before.

A hunting match furnish'd him with as fair an advantage as he could desire, for with the boldest of his company keeping close with *Virione*, he had carried away that lovely person with little resistance, she being at a great distance in a wood, with only two of her Fathers men near her, who as it was thought had betray'd her into that remote part, and secur'd her in the place which he had chosen for his retreat, had not *Ambiomer* hearing her loud shrieks hasten'd to her relief. He presently flew upon the Ravishers with a most furious impetuosity, and being intermix'd among them with amazing blows, he opened a passage to *Virione*, who was struggling to get out of *Terambaud's* hands.

The *Belgian* no sooner perceiv'd *Ambiomer* coming to snatch his lovely prey from him, but transport'd with rage and seeing his party much stronger than *Virione's*, that came but thinly in to her assistance, he resolv'd to dispatch the most valiant of his enemies, that he might be at liberty to flee: So that he gave *Virione* in charge to his Esquire, and with two of his companions presenting himself before *Ambiomer*, *Rash Stranger*, cryed he, *oppose not the happiness of this Country, nor cross those intentions that only serve to unite two of the most potent families in these Territories. Is it by violence, disdainfully reply'd Ambiomer, that thou thinkest to carry her away, whom it became thee to win with the utmost of thy respect and services?* Instead of saying more, he was about to have flown upon *Terambaud*, but meeting a Knight that stood in his way, he gave him so rude a brush that he tumbled him horse and man to the ground: at which time *Terambaud* taking his time, with the point of his Sword drew blood of *Ambiomer*, when the haughty Soldier more enraged at the foul play offer'd him, than at the wound he had received; *Traitor*, cryed he, *thinkest thou by treachery to keep what thou hast cowardly got into thy possession?*

Concluding those words he flew upon *Terambaud*, and while he wav'd his glittering Sword before the visier of his Helmet, he strook such a fear into the Traitors heart, that *Terambaud* fled and forsook *Virione*. The lovely Maid no sooner saw her self deliver'd, but she mov'd toward her preserver in a most obliging manner, and beholding him with a pretty blush which *Ambiomer* attributed to her modesty, she testified her gratitude in words which she thought most proper to express her acknowledg'ment, yet such as express'd far less than her eyes. In the interim *Codrufus* and his wife attended by a noble and numerous Train, came to the place, and after they had given *Ambiomer* all the praises which were due to him, they return'd home talking all the way of an adventure, which was sufficiently surprizing to afford ample matter of discourse.

But all the company were very sorrowful when they observ'd some drops of blood upon *Ambiomer's* vestments, which made them oblige the young Soldier to betake himself to his bed, how unwilling soever he seem'd to be, to mind a repose which he believ'd no way necessary. The Magistrate immediately went to visit him, and after he had commended his valour, with all the expressions of an extraordinary esteem, "Generous *Ambiomer*, said "be, had not the command of our forces been decreed to you for the number of your conquests and victories, this last of your actions had been sufficient, to have made you worthy the supreme government of our people. I will resign for your sake, and I will cause my own choice to be approv'd so soon as you shall think it convenient, provided you are willing to take upon you, that which I would never have yielded, either to *Terambaud* or any other Knight in all our Provinces. For in short to tell you my thoughts, I had design'd *Virione* either for the Prince of the *Bructeres* or to our valiant General: But being very contentedly satisfied, that she is less taken with the quality of *Vindoristus*, than the virtue of *Ambiomer*, I am overjoyed that it lies in my power to unite in your person the full Authority over the *Belgians*, and to give my Daughter for a Wife to a person, that seems to me the most nobly endowed of all that ever I saw in my life.

Ambiomer

Ambiomer surpris'd at a discourse which he never dream'd of, made no answer at present, though the offer of a beautiful and young Virgin with a considerable sovereignty, did not a little please him: But soon after considering that he had no inclination to love, he was unwilling to abuse the generosity of *Codrusus*, or to pretend to the enjoyment of a charming Lady, whom he saw so worthy to receive his heart, while she surrendred her own. Besides that he had a reluctancy to ruine the pretensions of a Suitor who was already acknowledged, nor did he think that he could obstruct the good fortune of *Vindoristus*, without opposing *Virione's* happiness. And therefore that he might not injure the Prince of the *Bructeres*, nor shew himself ingratul to a Family, whose kindness he had so much reason to extol, Sir, said he to the Magistrate of *Cesaromagum*, when I relieved a lovely Virgin which the hand of violence would have ravished from you, I did you no other service than what you might have expected from the first person that found her in that distress: And therefore you had better reserve rich offers for a person already considerable in Territories, than for a Soldier of fortune like *Ambiomer*. I beseech you Sir, approve your self a juster Father, and instead of reducing your self to the necessity of having no other posterity, but such a one whose original is unknown, suffer the incomparable *Virione* to be in a condition, to bring you Princes for your Grandchildren. *Codrusus* charm'd with an answer so modest and generous, We know, replied he, that your extraction is very noble, and though *Ambiorix* had not given us sufficient Testimonies thereof, yet our thoughts and actions are such infallible proofs, that we could never have question'd it.

This discourse had doubtless longer held, but that the Magistrate was advertis'd that his friends were ready to depart, for they found it inconvenient to trouble him, when they saw him obliged to wait upon an illustrious Soldier, that was wounded only in his quarrel. *Codrusus* therefore beholding *Ambiomer*, We shall better understand one another, said he, for I apprehend that I shall be suddenly able to attend you altogether. Then shall I have nothing to do but wholly to employ my cares, in the cure of my Daughters deliverer, and we shall have time also to examine what to determine upon, in that weighty concern which I have already mention'd. In the mean time seeing that *Virione's* complements are needless at the departure of our friends, or rather since it is more necessary that you should be better acquainted, she has the liberty to stay with you, while her Mother and I take leave of the company.

Concluding these words he went forth, leaving *Virione* without any other than two of her attendants who kept themselves at a distance out of respect. *Ambiomer* no sooner cast his eyes upon the countenance of that lovely Maid, but he beheld it covered with a rosiè tincture wherewith modesty had overspread it, when with a respectful utterance, Madam, said he, I find that *Codrusus* is too favourable to *Ambiomer*, and that he ought to take more care how he profusely wasts his benefits upon an unknown person. For Madam, I beseech you not to believe that his good intentions have so far puff'd me up, as to make me cover an honour so far above my hopes. No no Madam, I will never abuse the kindness of *Codrusus*, yet all my life I shall have that reverence for *Virione*, as ever to submit to her will. Mine, answered she with a modest shamefastness, is absolutely conformable to my Fathers, to whom I owe an entire obedience: For as I am perswaded that he will never command me any thing, till he has consulted the affection he has for me, it will be no hard thing for me to frame my humour to my duty, and to follow the commands of *Codrusus* to the full satisfaction, that he can expect from a grateful daughter. But Madam, replied he, if you will be prepossessed to my disadvantage, must the charming *Virione* be obliged to renounce that liberty, which is allowed to all persons that are to engage themselves during the whole term of their lives? It may be I should not renounce my liberty neither, replied she, biding her fair cheeks with the veil which she held in her hand, for I do not apprehend that I ought to have that reluctance, to give the consent which is expected from me. And indeed since there was never any person that complained of *Codrusus*, in the exercise of the Supreme Authority; there is little probability that being so just in the publick affairs of our Nation, he would prove unjust in those things, which concerns the private interest of his Family.

How modest soever *Ambiomer* were in his thoughts, he could not but perceive that *Virione* both by her eyes and by her language, was not ill inclined to admit him for her husband. Thereupon at first he seem'd willing to accept of that beautiful Virgin, he considered her charms and was well satisfied in them, he considered the advantages which an alliance with *Codrusus* might afford him, and found them considerable: Nevertheless when he began to ruminate upon the effect which those reflections had produced, he found that he had a heart sufficiently grateful, but that people are not always in love that are desired to be so. In the mean time *Virione* gave him as many innocent marks of her affection, as prudence and

modestly would permit her. And on the other side *Ambiomer* stirr'd up his heart, to that affection which he thought he owed her: but his endeavours were in vain, for a natural haughtiness still oppos'd and imperiously perswaded him, that the enjoyment of *Virione* could never satiate the full ambition of his Soul.

At length he understood that he had no passion but only for honour, and knowing that the profession of Arms wherein he had been so successful, was the only way to obtain fame, he turn'd all his thoughts upon war, imagining that after he had contented that eager desire, yet more and more to signalize himself in feats of Arms, he might perhaps be in a better condition to steepe his inclinations to love. At that time the *Batavians* having taken several prizes from the *Belgians*, gave him an opportunity to employ his Valour in a new sort of combat: So that it was resolv'd in the chief council of the *Belgians*, that he should hasten to the Ports of *Gessoraque* and *Bononia*, to get our Naval forces together, and that in the mean time he should take order for the giving out commissions, raising of Seamen, and providing Ammunition.

But then the lovely *Virione* lost some part of her gayety, when she saw that *Ambiomer* was ready to leave her, and her bright eyes though somewhat fearful, told her these things which her fair lips durst not presume to express. As for *Ambiomer* in regard he could not speak against his real thoughts, he only continued the testimonies of his acknowledgment to the charming Virgin, and beholding her with looks full of respect; *I hope Madam*, said he, *that when I return, it will be lawful for me absolutely to utter my mind, and that I may do it then with more assurance than now, that Ambiomer wants something to merit the incomparable Virione.* Thus he avoid'd that passion which he thought he owed to a person so amiable, and the daughter of *Codrufus* who was not ignorant of *Ambiomer's* modesty, imagin'd that he was only willing to repair the uncertainty of his Birth, by an augmentation of his fame and wealth.

Your Majesty no doubt has heard how victory accompanied our noble General no less by Sea, than she had followed him in his battels by land, and that after the peace which was made between the *Belgians* and *Batavians*, he sail'd away to the mouth of the *Elbe*, to settle the tottering Throne of the King of *Turingia*. You also know Madam, that the pride of that haughty Knight was humbled in that Country, where the angry heavens punished him to revenge *Virione*, subjecting that proud heart which she could not subdue to the charms of a Princess, who was no more destined to establish the felicity of *Ambiomer*, than *Ambiomer* was dispos'd to yield to *Virione*. In short Madam, *Amalazontha* captivated the haughty liberty, which *Ambiomer* had but too warily preserved, and we knew her in *Gallia*, when the news was brought of the great advantages he had gain'd over the enemies of the *Turingians*, and of the famous encounters between him and the Prince of the *Saxons*, and the Prince of *Freizland*, who as you well know were both passionately in love with the fair Princess, whose charms the conquering *Ambiomer* could not resist. The *Belgians* joyfully heard what renown published in honour of their famous General, and if they saw him in corivalship with the presumptive heirs of two potent Kings, they were still satisfied to hear that *Amalazontha's* father preferred him before two Rivals, so much above him in dignity: *Codrufus* easily perceiv'd that the choice which he had made, was authoriz'd by the King of *Turingia*, and because he had a real kindness for *Ambiomer*, he earnestly wish'd that the enjoyment of *Amalazontha*, might be granted him as the guerdon of his noble exploits, and thereupon turn'd all his thoughts upon the Prince of the *Eruliers*, for the advancement of his daughter. However you are not ignorant Madam, that *Amalaric* Prince of *Turingia*, utterly oppos'd the good fortune of our passionate Knight, and having shut his eyes against the lustre of his famous deeds, he perswaded the Princess his Sister never to accept a Soldier of fortune, whose extraction was obscure, for a husband: So that the disconsolate *Ambiomer* return'd to *Cesaromagum*, not so well satisfied in his victories, as he was afflicted at *Amalaric's* carriage, and the ingratitude of the Princess whom he adored. The *Belgians* received him with all the acclamations, wherewith they were wont to accompany their Triumphs, but he was not sensible of the honour which they did him, and we perceiv'd sadness in his countenance, at the very time when he caus'd a universal joy among us. He appear'd in *Codrufus's* company somewhat ashamed of himself, though he had learned by experience that a man is not always the Master of his heart, at all times that he has a mind to dispose of it.

True it is that the generous Magistrate soon recover'd him out of that bashfulness, receiving him with an aspect full of sincerity and gladness: He talk'd to him only of those noble actions which he had performed in *Batavia* and against the *Saxons*, and if he intermix'd in his discourse, any thing of the affection which that valiant Knight had for *Amalazontha*,

Amalazontha, he only commended it as a passion worthy the grandeur of his courage, and approv'd by the King of *Turingia*.

But *Ambiomer* was in a greater labyrinth when he came to *Virione's* Apartment, and cast his eyes upon a Beauty that would have surrendred to his desires, had his destiny but permitted him to have had an affection for her. At first he sigh'd, and secretly upbraided himself, then with an utterance that betrayed his guilt, *I make no question, Madam, said he, but that you have heard of all that befel me in Turingia, and that you already know that Ambiomer has been rash and unfortunate.* After those few words, he cast his eyes downward, and instead of saying any thing more, he expected *Virione's* answer, who had not the power to speak: for indeed there appeared a discomposure in her lovely cheeks so soon as she perceived *Ambiomer*, whether it arose from the presence of a Knight whom she no way hated, or from a jealousy mixed with a kind of surprize, which is usual at such meetings. *Ambiomer* perceiving her at such a plunge, *Madam, said he, speak your real thoughts; for it is not from the charming Virione that I am to expect compassion for my misfortune, or any excuse for my boldness.* You may be deceived however, answered she very seriously, for as I never heard that an aspiring boldness was ever any crime in a young Soldier, I do not believe that loftiness is to be condemn'd which encouraged you to court the Queen of the *Turingiens*; nor that it is a thing unusual for a person accustomed to vanquish to promise himself prosperity in all his undertakings.

That was the moderate answer which she gave him out of a sense of honour, being compelled to smother those marks of displeasure that lay concealed in her heart. *How, Madam, replied Ambiomer, do you not altogether blame me for that haughtiness that made my hopes aspire to the Daughter of a King, and can you so much slight me as to refuse to tell me your thoughts of that which most concerns me?* Ah, *Ambiomer*, answered she, casting down her eyes, and fetching a short sigh, you know that I expressed my self but too freely before your departure from *Cesaromagum*; and I must seriously protest, that had not the intentions of *Codrusus* in some measure authorized that liberty which I thought I might lawfully take, I would never pardon my self for having said that to you which I ought to have expected from your self.

Thus they concluded their first converse, afterward they visited one another more frequently, and with more familiarity. For as *Ambiomer* found sufficient consolation in the company of a lovely Virgin that no way hated him, to dispel the melancholy which he brought from *Turingia*; so *Virione* could not chuse but joyfully entertain the testimonies of love and respect from the most noble Knight that ever she knew: not but that she had her hours of disconsolation, when she called to mind that *Amalazontha* had deprived her of a heart which was in a manner due to her. But when she considered again how little likelihood there was that *Ambiomer* could espouse that Princess, she despaired not but that one day her innocent affection might be regarded. In this very interim *Codrusus* fell sick and died: and it being then discovered that his liberal hospitality, and his honesty had left him poorer than he needed to have been, many of *Virione's* Suitors grew cold, not beholding so many dazzling charms in the fair eyes of a Lady from whose Family they could not expect that wealth and support which they hoped for. The generous *Virione* took not so much as any notice of those changes; but *Ambiomer*, who observed them, look'd with contempt upon those mean Souls that only worshipped fortune. From thence forward therefore he not only stood up mainly for the interests of *Virione* upon all occasions; but to extend his Gratitude as far as it would go, he made use of all his credit, which was not inconsiderable among the *Belgians*, to make the Daughter of *Codrusus* the most considerable person in all our Provinces. To that end, how powerful soever her party were, he resolv'd to strengthen it, and gave it out underhand, that he would put the supreme power into her hands, and render his own command of General of our Armies to the person that had the honour to marry *Virione*. There was no question but he would have accomplished what he undertook: but before the Estates were assembled for the election of a chief Governour, there came a Courier from *Vindoristus*, who brought news that the Prince was coming with a most magnificent Train to conjure her at length not to despise the principalities of the *Brueteres*. *Virione* seem'd very well satisfied with *Vindoristus*; and *Ambiomer* being really sensible of his affection, spake in the Prince's behalf, and endeavoured to persuade *Virione* to accept those obliging offers which he made her. *Virione* was vexed at first to hear *Ambiomer* speak in the behalf of another, whose Rival she so willingly desired him to be. But our generous Soldier giving her to understand with equal frankness and sorrow how unable he was to break those chains wherewith he was laden, so well laid before her her ingratitude to *Vindoristus*, if she should refuse him for a Husband, that he began at length to shake a heart sensible of acknowledgment. In the interim, *Terambaud*, whose faction was not

despicable, spread abroad reports proper to the design which he had to oppose the pretensions of a *German Prince*, giving it out that *Ambiomer* was going about to deprive the *Belgians* of their liberty: that *Vindoristus* came only to possess himself of the supreme authority, together with *Codrusus* his Daughter; and that the stranger so potent and sovereign would not fail to make that command hereditary, which was wont to honour and enrich so many Families in *Belgia*. Thus the people, prepossess'd with an opinion founded upon great probabilities, was soon wrought upon to take Arms to break off the marriage between *Vindoristus* and *Virione*.

But *Terambaud* fearing that *Ambiomer* would be too hard for him in open fight, instead of making a publick insurrection, he only mustered up his people in private, with an intention to set upon *Vindoristus* unawares as he travelled upon the Road: But in regard the Prince of the *Bructeres* had a Train so numerous, that it was not an easie thing for his Rival to conceal a party as would be strong enough to assail him, *Ambiomer* being advertis'd thereof, presently took Horse with such as were ready to follow him, and hastened to the relief of *Vindoristus* with all the vigour that *Virione's* interests could inspire into him, and the natural antipathy which he had against all bad actions. Had he not been so diligent, his endeavours had been to no purpose, for he found that *Vindoristus* and *Terambaud* were already engaged, and that *Vindoristus*, though far more valiant than his Enemy, was very near being oppress'd by the multitude of his Enemies: not but that he still defended his life with an extraordinary vigour, that he had not wounded his Rival, and was fighting at the same time as it were environed with a Breast-work of dead men, which his own terrible weapon had raised: but he had very few of his men left; for to make more haste to the amiable *Virione*, he had outrid the Body of his Train, and was assaulted by a far greater number of his Adversaries far more numerous than his own Convoy. Thus *Ambiomer* came just in the nick of time to his rescue, and finding an object whereon to exercise his excellent valour that had rendered him so renowned: he flew upon *Terambaud's* party with a most impetuous violence. The *Belgian* no sooner perceived him, but he was more transported with rage, then struck with fear, and whatever experience he had that his strength was not equal to *Ambiomer's*, yet out of the fresh malice which he had against a person that seem'd destin'd to cross his most important desires, he stoutly bore the shock of so terrible an Assailant. But notwithstanding all his resolution, he made no long resistance, for the fierce *Ambiomer*, who had immediately singled him out, and charged him, redoubled his blows with that agility and violence, that the unworthy Lover of *Virione* fell down dead at his Horses feet: *Vindoristus*, who had opened a passage with his Sword to fight by his valiant Defender, no sooner saw *Terambaud* beaten down to the ground, and his party put to flight, but he lift up the Viser of his Helmet, and turning toward *Ambiomer* in a very obliging manner, *Invincible Champion*, said he, *whether you have fought in my defence, or only to satisfy your own Generosity, yet I must acknowledge my self indebted to you for a life which I offer to your service, and which you shall command me always to expose for the preservation of yours upon all occasions where I may have the honour to be present.*

He uttered those words with an excellent grace, when the Conquerour of *Terambaud* being uncovered, Sir, answered he, *when you shall understand that my name is Ambiomer, you will then perhaps find that you were not so much engaged to me for your defence, as I was bound to it my self. 'Twas not for me without being an accomplice with your Murderers, to stand still while a great number of Cowards and Traytors distressed an illustrious Stranger in a Country where I have some command. And though I had never known any thing of Terambaud, yet my Gratitude would not have permitted me to consider a moment what I had to do, when I was to fight in the defence of a Prince who was only assailed because he came to wed the Daughter of my Benefactor.*

After these Complements they alighted, reciprocally admired each others goodly presence, embraced with all the demonstrations of Friendship, and having given convenient orders in reference to the lame and wounded, they took Horse and continued their journey with all the haste that *Vindoristus's* wounds would permit. They were no sooner come into *Cesaromagum*, but the enamoured Prince was earnestly desirous to visit the charming *Virione*, notwithstanding the Chirurgeon's admonitions, who ordered him to keep his Bed, so that *Ambiomer*, sensible of his noble passion, presented him to the Daughter of *Codrusus*. But in regard that *Ambiomer* had several advantages over *Vindoristus*, both in respect of the Majesty of his presence, the fame of his reputation, and *Virione's* affection, the passionate *Vindoristus* found himself not so happy at the first meeting, nor at some others that followed, when he consulted his fortune in her fair eyes. Thereupon his sorrow was so great, that he began to grow careless of his cure, insomuch that that languishment where-
into

into he fell all of a sudden moved all persons that knew the real cause, to pity him. *Virione* her self also seem'd to be sensible thereof: but being not yet sufficiently Mistress of her heart, as Gratitude oblig'd her, she still delayed to declare her self, being neither able to speak against her own thoughts, nor being willing to disoblige a Prince whom she tenderly loved. But in short, at the same time *Vindoristus* is ready to die for her, she observ'd that *Ambiomer's* thoughts were more than ever fix'd upon *Amalazomba*. He received news from *Turingia*, where he kept a strict correspondence, that *Amalaric* who reigned for some time in that Country was slain by the King of the *Franks*: so that seeing himself deliver'd from a Prince that had always thwarted his pretensions, he resolv'd to leave us, that he might be near the Queen whom he adored. For that reason the just *Virione* opened her eyes, moderating that inclination ere it grew too potent, which she had for a person whose heart was not at his own disposal: so that out of a generous resolution she determin'd of a sudden to make the passionate *Vindoristus* happy. *Ambiomer* was infinitely satisfied, and our people, who were by this wholly disabus'd, generally rejoiced: and the Prince of the *Brüderes* was so transported, that he could not return *Virione* thanks, but with a pleasing kind of bashfulness which arises from the excess of joy. The Festivals lasted several days in *Cesaromagus*, though the delights and pastimes wherewith the *Belgians* graced the Solemnities were no sooner at an end, but they were as sorry for *Ambiomer's* departure, who was resolv'd to be gone whither his passion call'd him. The two Lovers made him a thousand sincere professions of their friendship: and the Knight, being satisfied that he had so honourably match'd so fair a person whom he could not wed himself, sorrowfully departed from us, taking his march toward the *Rhine*. Several of the most considerable of our Officers would have attended him, but in regard he knew not how *Amalazomba* would entertain him, he only took along with him two or three of his Domestick Servants, that he might come privately to the place where he intended to reside. And in short, he never shew'd himself to the Princess, till he had fought Prince *Sumnon*, who would have stopp'd her Army from returning into *Turingia*. In the mean time, the affection of a Father, which I had for so famous a Soldier whom I had bred from his infancy, made me take a particular care to know what happened in this Camp; and thereby I soon heard of *Briomer*, and that next the Princes who are engag'd in your Majesty's quarrel, he held one of the greatest Commands in this powerful association, which was the reason I never scrupled to make a just restitution; and instead of writing to *Briomer* and his illustrious Son, to give them the means to acknowledge one another, I rather chose to come my self to share in the satisfaction of being the cause of such a strange good fortune. But, Madam, the satisfaction which I hop'd for, is not so great as I expected, for I was extremely perplexed when I understood the ill disposition of the Father of my *Ambiomer*. However, I am not the less oblig'd to restore him what I believe belongs to him, to the end, the fairest Queen in the world may regain a valiant Subject whose noble exploits, already perform'd, make a fair promise of others, which may prove of no less advantage to your Majesty, and the honour of his Country.

Thus the *Gaul* concluded, when the charming *Rosamond* having pondered a while upon what she had heard, *I am glad*, answer'd she, *that the good education for which Ambiomer is beholding to you, added to the excellency of his natural parts, hath qualified him in another manner than could have been expected from the breeding of the Cimbrian whom you assign him for his Father. In the mean while I would not have you make any farther discovery of his Birth; for besides, that he is generally belov'd in an Army where his Father is hated for his barbarous carriage, I know that there are nobler advantages design'd him, than he can possibly expect from the Lieutenant General of my Army.*

Thereupon she told him what were the intentions of the King of the *Lombards* in favour of *Ambiomer*; and the Prince of the *Huns* being admitted into the Closet, declared that they were not so slightly to pass sentence upon the fortune of so great a personage, but carefully to examine what *Ambiorix* had preserv'd for better and clearer evidence of the truth; so it was resolv'd that the next morning the Cabinet which *Balamir* had in his custody should be brought to *Rosamond's* Apartment. As for *Ambiorix*, he retired to *Ambiomer's* Quarters, whither that famous Warriour came so soon as he understood of the arrival of the *Gaul* whom he had so long expected. They tenderly embraced each other at first, but the General of the *Belgians* no sooner understood the probability of his being *Briomer's* Son, but he chang'd colour, causing the *Gaul* to repeat the circumstances upon which such an unwelcome opinion was ground'd. *Is it possible*, cry'd he, *that I am descended from a parentage so much abominated, and that fortune should seem to desire a reconciliation with me, by making such advantageous proffers as she has done, only to precipitate me from the happy condition*

dition where to I was advanced, into an abyss of melancholy and discontent? I know, answered Ambiorix, for the Queen of the Cimbrians has told me, that your hopes are very great: but, Ambiorix, why should you lose them? Is there any necessity for you to reveal a secret, the knowledge whereof might be destructive to your expectations? Ah, Sir, replied he, how little should I have deserved your care, were it possible for me to dissemble upon such an occasion? No, no, Sir, Ambiorix will never enjoy the felicity which has been promised him, if he must purchase it by ways unworthy the grandeur of his Soul, and he would rather chuse absolutely to renounce them, than dishonourably gain their enjoyment by keeping an ignominious silence that would upbraid me all my life time. However, I do not find, replied Ambiorix, any reason that should move you to publish your first Adventures. I do not say, answered he, that I will make them publick; on the contrary, I believe it would be imprudence in me to do it: but I am persuaded at the same time, that I neither can, nor ought to conceal it from those persons that have a particular interest to know it: so that I will go to Briomer as soon as I am confirm'd in the opinion which you have infus'd into me, and offer him that blood which I had from him. In those combusions also which he shall make, I shall either take his part, or if justice forbids me, I shall labour to moderate the violence of a humour of which so many complain, and of which I my self have seen the fierce effects as well toward the Queen of the Turingicns, as in his behaviour to Prince Balamir. I am contented, replied the old man, that we both together do visit Briouer, provided that it be without any noise, and that beforehand we may consult Rosamond and Balamir, who with an extraordinary affection take upon them to concern themselves in all things that may be for your advantage. I will not only follow their advice and yours, replied Ambiorix, since I know you will never urge me to be ingrateful to him that gave me my Birth, but you shall also see me very diligent in the search of all things that may make me question the belief of what you have related to me in reference to my extraction. In brief, Sir, I shall not omit to call to mind all the circumstances which may confute the opinion which you have fixed in my Breast; for I declare to you, that if I could recover my former ignorance without any injury to the laws of nature, I would heartily prefer it before the cruel information which I have received.

Thus they entertained one another in discourse till the Evening, at what time they were to visit Balamir, to whom Telator soon after returning, they enquired of him what news in the Camp of the Franks, and what persons of eminent quality were arrived there, drawn thither either by the reputation of Pharamond, or the charms of his incomparable Sister. But Balamir's Esquire who was not well contented in his mind, was glad that he had an opportunity, instead of answering, to present an Officer belonging to Theodolinda, who could better satisfy their curiosity. In short, that Officer had no sooner acquitted himself of those Complements which he had to make the Prince of the Huns, but he gave them the Relation which they expected in graceful language, and made them a description in few words of a Magnificent and warlike Court: Besides a very great number of Princes, added he, that are continually about Pharamond, and who seem to borrow their lustre from that great King, I this day saw in his Army the great Constance, the noble Viridomar, the Kings of the Britains and Tongres, the famous Wallia, the valiant Artabure, nor is this all, for the report goes, that the Emperour Honorius himself will be there, which they who know his love to Bellamira make no question of, seeing that that charming Stranger is also come to the Camp together with the Princess of the Franks. But, said Balamir interrupting him, is it possible that the unknown Bellamira should be so surpassingly fair as fame speaks her to be? 'Tis most certain, replied he, that she exceeds whatever is fair in the world, excepting Rosamond and Polixena, and that she may also contend for the first rank of Beauty with those two wonderful Princesses without any disadvantage to her self. However, all those perfections which are admired in her person, neither can infuse any pride into her, nor dissipate that sadness which the misfortunes of her life have fixed in her heart, and depainted in her countenance. But, Sir, I should perhaps tell you too much, should I undertake to give you a particular account of all her virtues, only this you must further understand that yesterday arrived in the Camp the Queen of the Goths the widow of Autalph, together with Octavia Queen of great Britain, who being better informed as to the pretended infidelity of Constantine, has now consented to make that Royal Suitor happy. Thus Placidia, Polixena, the Queen of the Britains; the Princesses of the Huns and Nemetians, Cleomira and Elelinda intermix their lustre and brightness with the noble reputation which so many valiant personages seem'd to have spread through the whole Camp; and their fair eyes in some measure sweeten the terrible sight of warlike preparations, while they make living in an Army to be a kind of comfortable delight. Yesterday I saw a great part of those fair and great Princesses at the sage Melusina's Apartment. But Bellamira was not there, either because, she does not mind curiosity, or else because she no where finds so much delight

delight as in Theodolinda's company with whom she has contracted a strict and sincere friendship.

He was interrupted by a great noise of the trampling of Horses, and by the coming of the King of the *Tongres*, who presently entered *Balamir's* Chamber, and after the usual Compliments, he spoke to the Prince in *Pharamond's* name, in the most obliging expressions that obligation and gratitude could inspire into him: *Balamir* having testified the effects which the Generosity of his magnanimous Rival produc'd, failed not to enquire of *Taxander* for his charming *Adelaiada*, to oblige him by speaking of her: *I wish to Heaven*, answered he, *that all those great personages that sigh for love upon the Banks of the Rhine, had but the same good fortune as I. I cannot see*, sadly replied *Balamir*, *that what you wish can ever come to pass, seeing so many Lovers bend their desires toward one and the same object, so that it is not possible for any one of them to arrive at the happiness to which he aspires, but that all the rest must be inevitably miserable. But, Sir, can a happy Lover absent himself so quickly from the person whom he loves, as I find you have done? You understand*, replied *Taxander*, *the cause that brings me back; for although the return of the King of the Herules sets me absolutely at liberty, I am willing to discharge my promise, and procure an interview of the greatest personages in both Armies.* "Either I am deceived, replied *Ambiomer*, or you will be very much perplexed to manage so many different spirits; for if the fiery disposition of men be not easily pliable at such meetings, the reservedness of the women affords no less trouble. "I am not ignorant, replied the King of the *Tongres*, but that it would be very difficult for me to compass my design, had I grounded it upon any important affair, where every one should make particular delays according to their particular interests: and therefore I have steered a different course, where there are no advantages to be taken, or preliminaries to be examined; but on the contrary, where a single curiosity shall draw all those persons, which I intend, to the designed Interview. In a word, *Theon* and *Melafina* shall meet in a convenient place which I have chosen, to confer upon the most important secrets of their Art, whither the greatest part of the Princes and Princesses will be glad to come at my invitation, to see and hear the conferences of two such famous persons. But because I did not think it lay in my power to persuade the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, I thought fit to procure the assistance of the Princess *Albisinda*, to whom I am to deliver a Letter which Prince *Viridomar* has written to further my intentions. Concluding those words, he produced a Letter which he shewed to *Balamir*, in these words.

Prince *Viridomar* to the Princess *Albisinda*.

I Make no question but that you have a desire to see the famous *Melufina*; and though you should not be guilty of so much curiosity your self, yet you may engage the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, since I conjure you so to do, upon a design which the King of the *Tongres* will tell you. 'Tis only for *Pharamond's* sake that I make you this request: and if you shut your eyes against the merit of so great a Prince, yet remember at least that he is *Marcomire's* Brother, by whose only means I can hope to enjoy the fair Princess whom I adore.

"Since it behoves the fair *Albisinda* and you to act by consent, said *Balamir*, you cannot chuse but succeed in your undertaking. . And I know also, that should the Queen of the *Cimbrians* be unwilling, that *Viridomar's* Sister will put some innocent deceit or other upon her, to bring that to pass which without doubt will not displease her in the end. For in short, Sir, I am of opinion, that if *Theobald's* death had not been an invincible obstacle to the pretensions of the King of the *Franks*, *Rosimond* had never scrupled to render him happy, nor to have given him that precedency which the crowd of his virtues so loudly demanded. "Few people however, replied *Ambiomer*, agree, that *Pharamond* would have supplanted the Rival that so generously praises him; and *Rosimond's* proceedings are so far from being answerable to your opinion, that they sufficiently demonstrate what her affection is for a great Prince, who better than any other in the world is able to dispute all sorts of Conquests with the King of the *Franks*. Though such obligations as those are: beyond my desert, modestly replied *Balamir*, nevertheless I will tell you, that the Queen of the *Cimbrians* does not afford me those publick testimonies of her good will, for any other reason but because she is convinced that she shall never be inclin'd to allow me any further fa-

vours. But Sir, replied Taxander, will it not behove her to declare her self more fully to the King your Fathers Ambassador, and can you think that she will declare against you: You Sir that ave received from that Princess, so many Testimonies of her confidence and esteem? I do sincerely protest, replied Balamir, I am ignorant what that great negotiation means, but whatever design the King of the Huns may have, I am not inclinable to conceive those hopes, wherewith others believe I have reason to flatter my self. On the contrary, I have in my heart those checks of melancholy, which the best part of the world may well take for a bad Omen.

After this Balamir and the King of the Tongres went up to the Castle to the Queen of the Taringiens, where most of the Royal Associates were that evening. As for Ambiomere he went along with Ambiorix, and while he was considering what was most severe in the relation of his extraction, and that the Gaul was endeavouring to cheer him up, Agelmond wondring he had not seen him, sent impatiently to know the cause, as also to enquire after the Gaul who had taken care of his education. That Prince whom Gilismene's death had mortally afflicted, desired nothing more than speedily to provide a match for the Princess his Sister, and a King to reign over the Lombards, that he might the more willingly put an end to a life which he led in sorrow. He had declared his mind to Ambiomere, and in regard he resolv'd to resign his Kingdom, and the possession of his Sister to that renowned Soldier, he could not apprehend what obstacle could keep him from a place, whither two such potent motives allured him.

Viginizus who came to him from the King his Master, had no sooner delivered his errand, but the sad Ambiomere sigh'd, so that it might easily be observed after what an odd kind of manner his mind was tormented, by the strange whimsies of fortune, that at the same time gave him a prospect of so much good and bad luck together. However, believing himself obliged to wait upon Agelmond, he went together with Viginizus and Ambiorix, asswaging by his presence the discontents of a Prince, that shewed himself highly interest'd in all his concerns. He was most civilly received by the King of the Lombards, and a while after the Princess Agione entering the Chamber, apparently demonstrated by the cheerfulness of her looks, that the company of Agelmond and Ambiorix, were more pleasing to her than all the Noble Society, which she had left at the Queen of the Taringiens Apartment.

Immediately the King her Brother addressing himself to the learned Gaul Ambiorix, Sir, said he, I am very glad that you are come into this Camp, not that I have any desire to be better inform'd of the extraction of a Knight, whose merit is sufficient for me, but that you may see Ambiomere in that splendid condition, of which he has rendred himself so worthy by his renowned deeds. At those words the Gaul was as much overjoyed, as if he had been a real Father: when Agelmond continuing his discourse; It is not just however, said he, that I should shew so much of indifferency at such a time as this, as not to desire with the rest of the world, what so eminently concerns so great a person, whom I look upon as my Ally. Be pleas'd therefore to tell me of what family you believe him to be descended, and you will do me the greater kindness in regard I expect nothing, but what will be for his advantage, not only in respect of the noble endowments of Ambiomere, but also for the prediction of the learned Greek, who seldom is wont to be deceived.

These words caus'd the Knight to sigh, which the amiable Princess of the Lombards observing blush'd, while Ambiorix less satisfied than before, only said in few words that his extraction was noble. Agelmond observing that coldness, had some suspicion of Ambiomere, and therefore instead of requiring any other more particular circumstances, 'Tis enough, generously replied he, for since I only look upon Ambiomere's virtue, I will go on in my resolution, which the Princess questionless will not oppose. You know Sir, answered she with an extraordinary sweetness, that it is my duty only to obey. Ah Madam, said Ambiomere interrupting her and fetching a sigh, that you should so little know me. If your extraction, answered Agelmond observing his countenance, be not so illustrious as ours might require, you will the better like our manner of proceeding, and I am apt to think that you will live the better with a Princess, that shall never scruple to take you for a husband. Ah Sir, answered Ambiomere, 'tis not lawful for me to pretend to such an honour, for if I am the Son of Briomer as probabilities may persuade me, I must rather dye than——— Ah Ambiomere, said the old man interrupting him, why do you discover when there is no necessity, what you see no person obliges you to confess? How, replied he, shall I pretend to a silence full of dissimulation and perfidionsness, and by a tacit consent shall I abuse a heavenly Princess, that deserves the adoration of all the world, and betray a generous King to whom I am so infinitely oblig'd? No no, Ambiomere will never aspire to a happiness with which he might flatter his hopes, by ways not conformable to his inclinations: and if he be dazzled with the glistering fortune which it foretold him; he ought not to be so blind to gain it by a treacherous

treacherous surprize, suffering the blood of Briomer to be united to the blood of an illustrious Race, which he has so much cause to reverence.

This magnanimity of *Ambiomer* strook the King of the *Lombards* into an admiration; *Agione* seem'd to be astonish'd and less chearful, while the enamour'd Knight cast his pensive looks upon the amiable Princess and sigh'd. As for *Ambiorix* he felt his heart pierc'd with such a lively sorrow, that he was forced to leave the Room, and *Ambiomer* who would not forsake him, left a redoubled esteem in *Agelmond's* breast, yet with some kind of irresolution, what course to take in an Affair of so much consequence and nicety.

On the other side, when it was dark and that the Princes were going home through the Burrough to their quarters, *Balamir* was surpris'd after a strange manner. Coming to his Apartment, he found all the Officers of his household extraordinarily sad, and that a general disconsolation reigned in all their faces. He stop'd the first he met, he demanded the cause of their affliction, but not meeting with any that could give him a punctual answer, he called for others by whom he was no better satisfied. Then commanding his Squire to be called, one of the most considerable of his Attendants answer'd him with a low voice; *That it was Telanor's discontent that caus'd their grief, though doubtless neither would have wrought so powerfully in our minds, but that several conjectures perswade us, that you your self, Sir, have no small share in the news that causes our discontent, for Telanor transported with that that despair that turmoyls him, has told us confusedly such things as confirm'd our belief.*

At those words *Balamir* not so much concern'd for himself, was really griev'd for the sadness of his Esquire, and in regard he had an extraordinary esteem and love for him from his infancy, he went forward to his Chamber with that eagerness, as easily demonstrat'd how much he was concern'd for him. Nor was this carriage of his to be admir'd at, for *Telanor* was the Son of *Valamber*, whom the King of the *Huns* had entrusted with the education of *Balamir*, so that he had been always bred up with the Prince, and was so entirely fix'd to his service that no revolution could separate them. When his Master came to him he was sitting near a Table, leaning his head upon one hand, and holding a Letter in the other which carelessly hung down. At first he knew not *Balamir*, his thoughts were so deeply retir'd into his breast: but the presence of the Prince having awaken'd his imagination, which was wholly taken up with his Masters resemblance, excited whatever was most active in the profound melancholy of an afflicted Knight. *Valamber*, cry'd he, *is a prisoner, but Valamber is innocent: Yet 'tis not his misfortune that pierces me so much, as the terrible blow that I fear will follow it. Alas poor Prince*, continued he sighing, *hast thou appear'd in so many places as the greatest and most vertuous among men, to tumble on a sudden into this misfortune?*

Upon those words *Balamir* labour'd to comfort him, *Telanor* be of good comfort, said he, *perhaps I am not yet so low in credit but that I may do Valamber a kindness, and for those misfortunes that threaten my life, I only desire thee to have so much constancy to behold them, as I shall have to undergo them.* The faithful Squire upon the sound of a voice that was so dear to him, being so far come to himself as to be able to return an answer, *Ab Sir*, said he, *'tis your self that is concern'd chiefly in the news which has been more terrible to me than death: But Sir, I beseech you excuse me from making so cruel a relation, and be contented to receive that satisfaction which will be too heavy a task for me to give you, only from a Letter of Valambers and the person that he has sent.* Concluding these words he presented him the Letter which he held in his hand, which the Prince had no sooner open'd, but he was surpris'd at the following words.

The unfortunate Valamber to Telanor.

I Write to you from the great Tower in Alba Julia, where I remain in a most terrible perplexity, my Sovereign requires at my hands a Son which he committed to my care: But it is impossible for me to restore the same wherewith he entrusted me. Your illustrious Master with all his merit cannot repair the losses which has befallen us, 'tis the true *Balamir* that he commands me to find out, and whatever esteem he may have for that famous Warriour that has so honourably born his Name, a Stranger will not satisfy a Father who demands his own flesh and blood. I would tell you more had I strength and convenience, but *Narva* who is faithful to me and well instructed, will give you a full account of all things.

How courageous soever the Prince of the *Huns* had at other times appeared, he could not but look upon that Letter with astonishment. He read it over and over again, to see if he were not mistaken in the sense, then reflecting upon so strange an accident, *What*, said he to himself, *must I now all of a sudden question my parentage without apparent ground, after Twenty Years peaceable possession: If the King of the Huns be not my Father, to what Prince can I be beholdling for my being, seeing there is not any Prince in the world that bewails the loss of a Son? On the contrary if my extraction be mean, how came I to have those high thoughts that never were below the Royal Title which has been hitherto attributed to me.* At the conclusion of those meditations which he kept private to himself, he turned toward *Telanor* and talked to him a good while, on purpose that he might mitigate his discontent, and that with such a tranquillity of mind, that the greatest person that ever was in the world, could have shewn upon such an occasion.

Having in some measure in that manner asswaged the anguish of his mind, he committed the care of his most faithful Squire to the most dutiful of all his Attendants, and retiring to his Chamber commanded *Narva* to be sent for, by whom he hoped to be better satisfied than by *Valamber's* Letter. The *Hun* was no sooner come into his presence, but he appeared very sad, and not daring to look up in the Prince's face, he seemed by his Behaviour to let him understand, that his news would not be very pleasing. The undaunted *Balamir*, who was always ready to encounter the most troublesome events, with a constancy becoming his noble reputation, having observed those timorous looks that already boded his misfortune, to confirm the drooping spirit of *Narva*, *What fearest thou*, said he, *if thou knowest Balamir speak, speak boldly and be confident, that if there be in the world those strange and hidden circumstances, that can take from me the birth and Title of a Prince, yet there will remain that riches in my Soul that fortune cannot deprive me of: Nay I shall have a Sword left too, of which I may still make use with success.* O heavens, cried out *Valamber's* messenger, *can you suffer so great a personage to be thrown from that degree, wherein you had so justly placed him: And must Narva be obliged to let him undertake his fall?* After those words he paused a while, and then addressing himself to *Balamir*; *I find Sir*, said he, *that there is a necessity for me to repeat to your self what I have already related to Telanor, not only because it is my duty to obey, but that you may also proceed with that caution which you shall think convenient, according to the information you shall receive of what concerns you.* He had no sooner concluded those words, but he made a second stop. But after a long silence,

Sir, said he, I make no question but you will be extremely surpris'd, when I shall tell you that the young *Balamir* Son of the King of the *Huns*, was brought up in the Province of the *Quadrians* where *Valamber* had secured him, when the *Histrians* and *Japodians* made that famous irruption into *Pannonia*. Then it was that they who took away *Balamir*, put you in his Room, while my Master was but gone to give a visit to *Briomer*, who as you may have heard remain'd with young *Theobald* at *Rhabodunnm*, another City of the *Quadrians* not far from *Singone* where we were not to be comforted, neither by the beauties that appeared in your face, nor the riches of your cloaths, which however gave him to understand that your birth was not mean. Nevertheless well considering that it was not a time to make vain complaints, or to display his grief to the world, which would but discover a loss which it concern'd him rather to conceal, he took horse with all the Soldiers under his command, and dividing them into several Troops he sent them several ways, under the charge of such Officers as he most relyed upon. I was one of the first whom he entrusted, and indeed I was the only Officer that took the Road which we should all have taken. For in short, being entred into a Wood not far from *Celemuntia*, I discovered certain horsemen, who by the disguises that they wore upon their Arms and habits, I shrewdly suspected. I soon overtook them and finding I was not deceived, I charged them notwithstanding the inequality of their number. Immediately they divided, and while one party stayed to put a stop to us: the other rode on mending their paces, to the end we might be out of hopes of ever recovering our young Prince. For my part I never stood to consider, but flew after the division that carried *Balamir* away, but being constrained to leave the best part of my men to hold the other party in play, I fought but with an unprofitable zeal, though the *Huns* highly signaliz'd themselves at that time. For in short, their vigour and their courage only served to destroy our Enemies, not leaving us in a condition to make any advantage of their defeat: For indeed so bloody and so rude was the encounter, that we fell altogether dead or mortally wounded, and the little Infant as I thought, lay exposed to the mercy of the wild Beasts, among a heap of men slain outright or else expiring. And most infallibly had I perished among the rest, had not heaven guided to that part of the Wood,

some

some charitable Hunters who gave me all the relief that I could expect; for though they found me in a most desperate condition, yet perceiving some hopes as long as I was warm, they carried me to a Village not far from the place, and omitted nothing of care and skill which either *Singone*, or the nearest of my Relations could have afforded me.

In the mean time there was no more hopes of recovering *Balamir*, and therefore it concern'd *Telamor's* Father to dissemble his grief, and to keep secret a loss that was irreparable. True it is, that it was no difficult thing to conceal it, as well in regard there was no little difference between yours and the Prince's age, as also for that the lineaments of infancy never perfectly shap'd, nor easie to be distinguished, rendered the success infallible. To this also the distance of the Court mainly contributed; for though he had made such a strict pursuit, I was the only of *Velamber's* Officers to whom he had discovered the true ground of his affliction. For he had perswaded the rest that it was a Nephew of his which was taken away from *Singone*; and though they had known the contrary by recovering *Balamir*, *Velamber's* prudent management of things could not all have surpris'd them afterward. Besides that, *Telamor's* Father had no great reason to care what they could say against him, provided the little Prince that was committed to his care, had been found again. But when he perceived that all his pains and inquisition proved fruitless, then he bestow'd all his care upon you; but when he began to observe in your countenance the good omens of those extraordinary endowments which we afterwards admired, he grew perfectly satisfied, and bequeath'd all his affection and tenderness to you; not but that some remains of sorrow still perplexed his mind, when he called to memory the change that had befallen the fortune of his Sovereign's off-spring; no less fearing also lest the Ravishers themselves might one day discover what they had done. Indeed there was little probability that they had committed so great a crime to no purpose, but rather that they had made themselves Masters of *Balamir's* life and fortune, to draw some considerable advantage to themselves, by making his quality known. Nevertheless, 'tis not above twenty years ago, yet nothing has been heard of that Prince. During which time you have made his name famous by a thousand glorious actions: you have fill'd the world full of your renown, and you have more than that, given such proofs of your Virtue as far surpass the fame of your Victories and Conquests.

When that alliance was made which still continues between the *Romans* and the *Huns*, and that the Princess *Theodolinda* resided in the Court of *Honorius*, *Keza* was sent privately to the Emperour, to treat of certain particular interests in reference to the two Royal Families, and the Confederates of both Nations. While these things were a doing, the King of the *Huns* having found certain expedients more proper to put a more speedy end to that weighty Negotiation, thought fit to give more ample instructions to his Embassadour: and having pitched upon me for the person to carry them, I departed with all speed from *Alba Julia* to *Ravenna*, where *Honorius* then kept his Court. *Keza* and *Aurelian* conferred daily together, but I could not stay to see the success of their Conferences; for a little while after our Ambassadours thought fit to send me back into *Dacia*. He also oblig'd me to take *Gallia* in my way, and to visit the King of the *Tongres*, to whom he order'd me to make certain propositions that concern'd our alliance with the *Romans*; but that journey prov'd very unsuccessful; for besides that I was set upon and wounded passing through a Forest upon the top of the *Alpes*, I was also constrain'd to encounter a *Lombard* in *Belgia*, against whom I was not able to make any great resistance, in regard I had not fully recover'd my former health: so that at the end of the Fight, not having strength enough to continue my journey, I was forc'd to entrust my own Enemy with a Letter which I had from *Keza* to deliver to the King of the *Huns*, and remov'd my self to *Cesaromagum*, a place where in all likelihood I might soonest find a cure for my wounds. That very day that I came thither, a person considerable among the *Gauls* somewhat stricken in years came to visit me, understanding that I was a *Hun*: he took great delight to hear me talk of my own Country, where he had formerly been himself; and by reason that he had had a command in our Army, he related to me many particulars of the *Messian* and *Histrion* War, which was the reason that the young *Balamir* was carried to the City *Singone* in the Province of the *Quadrant*. That was not all, Sir, but *Ambiorix*, for that was the *Belgian's* name, would needs entertain me in his own House, where he not only had me carefully looked to, but he trust'd me all with a horse which he never had declar'd to any person, believing perhaps that I could get him some other way in a business that was an absolute mystery to him.

Here *Narbor* came to the great Prince, and heard him all the story of *Ambiorix's* childhood, and then he went with him, and he had seen those things that would easily evidence the truth concerning this renowned Soldier, he pursued his Rchearfal as follows.

Be you the judge now, Sir, said he, whether I had reason to be surpris'd at so unexpected an accident? Assuredly 'tis not easie for me to exprets my *Ambition*, in so much that I had like to have imparted a secret to *Ambiomer*, which I well knew I ought not to do without consulting *Velamber* first. Thereupon I only promised the *Count* to find him speedily such news as should give him better satisfaction. In short, upon my return to *Alba Julia*, so soon as I had given *Telanor's* Father an account of what I had heard, I asked him whether it were not convenient to let the old *Belgion* know what had befallen us at *Singone*, during the war between the *Huns* and the *Hibernians*: *It will be the better way*, answered he, so soon as his surpris'e would permit him, to confer with *Briomer*, that I may understand what that great person was that I bred up under the name of *Balamir*. For in short, if I must be the occasion of so great a fall to that great Hero, to restore the Son of my Sovereign, I would not be so exactly just, to lose my own labours for the sake of an unknown person. Besides that the alteration may be prejudicial to the King and Kingdom, seeing that it is impossible that any Prince in the world, unless the King of the *Franks*, can so worthily supply the room of the illustrious *Balamir*.

To that purpose some few days after *Velamber* sent me with a bare Letter of credence to *Briomer*, entrusting me to declare that by word of mouth which it was not fitting to commit to writing. In short, the *Cimbrian* appeared so strangely surpris'd, and his colour changed so often, so soon as he understood the cause of my coming, that I was confirm'd in the belief which I had already. However, he presently recollected himself, and then with a stern aspect, and a resolute utterance: *If your Master's conjectures*, said he, *be not grounded upon a good foundation, it matters not whether I give you, or cause you to wait for an answer to your demands. But if there be any shadow of truth in what you have said, I am not bound to satisfy you presently, or at any other time.*

After those few words, I was forc'd to depart from the *Cimbrian*, who obstinately refus'd to see me any more, only he gave me to understand that I might return into *Dacia*, and that he would suddenly send to *Velamber* himself. But, good Gods! how well did the Errand become the person that sent it: for not long after, as *Telanor's* Father was riding to a House of his own, some twelve miles from *Alba Julia*, he was set upon and wounded, and had certainly perished, had he not been relieved by certain persons that lay hid in a thick Thicket of Trees. It was the valiant *Keza*, who attended by three or four Horsemen, no sooner observed the Encounter, but he fell in violently upon the Murderers of *Velamber*, and after a stout resistance, he slew some part, while the rest fled away to save themselves. After that in regard it was of great importance to know the Abettor, and the reason of such a crime, he fought among the dead to see if he could find any thing to give him information. Among the rest he found one *Cimbrian*, who, though dangerously wounded, was in a condition to speak, Him they caus'd to be rais'd up, and upon a strict examination.

“Being now at the point of death, said he, and having nothing to hope or fear, I will discover the naked truth, happy if my sincerity may repair some part of my crimes. I was born in *Bohemia*, and it was *Briomer* that sent me hither, together with my Accomplices, to kill a certain Knight who is called *Velamber*: I cannot tell the cause that urged him to this mischievous design, but this is that which I understand by conjecture: For it is most certain, that *Briomer* formerly took away young *Balamir* by force, while he was a mere infant, to put his own Son in place of the Prince: *Velamber* lately discovered that this exchange was made at *Singone*; and therefore *Briomer*, who never scruples any mischief to serve his own turn, thought fit to secure himself by destroying the person that might be able to destroy him. The Captain of our Company, who is his most faithful creature, can tell you all these things more positively than myself: for it was only upon certain words that *Briomer* spoke to him when we parted from *Marobuda*, that I ground-
ed this conjecture of mine: Go, said he, embracing him, go, my dear *Menebalde*, expect the highest reward from *Briomer's* Gratitude, and pardon a Father whose indulgence thought he might dare any thing to advance a Son to that degree where you——” Instead of saying more, he sigh'd, for what reason I know not; and presently took Horse to follow *Menebalde*.

“The *Cimbrian* had no more to say; whereupon *Keza*, that attentively listened to him, went and gave a perfect account of what had fallen out to the King; who having an extraordinary affection for your self, was so astonish'd at the Relation, as if he had been thunder struck: immediately out of respect to you; he commanded them to keep the news private. But out of his natural affection he resolv'd to have his Son relieved him, and left nothing omitted to reobtain him at a time so favourable to his design: he spared not

“not *Telanor's* Father, and caus'd him to be arrested; and he sent so many Horsemen after
 “*Menobaldus*, that the *Cimbrian* not being able to flee by reason of his wounds, was taken
 “before he could pass the *Danow*; and I believe he is at this time at *Alba Julia*, or at least
 “they were bringing him thither when I set forth toward this Camp.

“This, Sir, added *Narva*, finishing his short Relation, is the reason of my journey: and
 “indeed *Velamber* thought it convenient that I should discover to you what I have already
 “declared, believing that in the midst of your discontentments you might make a good use of
 “his information.

Narva having spoken those words, the Prince paus'd a while upon what he had heard; but
 immediately after, I should be really griev'd, said he to *Narva*, should this disgrace that
 threatens me, deprive me of the power of doing good to those persons that have devoted them-
 selves to my service: otherwise I am little concern'd, that I will endeavour my self all that lies
 in me, to find out a Son for the King in my own room, since obligation and justice command me,
 and perhaps the pains which I shall take to that purpose may not be altogether fruitless. Hav-
 ing so said, he sent for the little Cabinet that was left in his hands, and opening it, he
 shew'd *Narva* all that *Ambiorix* had there preserved. Ah, Sir, replied *Velamber's* Agent,
 do I not see *Balamir's* swathing cloaths which I saw at *Cesaremagum*? There is no longer any
 question to be made, replied he of a sudden, having cast his eyes upon a little piece of Gold-
 smith's work, enriched with remarkable Diamonds, and Heaven has so ordain'd it as to put
 into your hands the only token in the world to discover the Prince whose name you bear, and you
 will easily agree with me, when I have shew'd you what I did not think fit to shew the *Gaul* *Ambi-*
orix when I was in *Belgia*.

When he had so said, he took a little glistening Box, and opening it, he readily pick'd
 out from among the rest of the Jewels a certain gold plate, whereon was enanelled the
 pourtraiture of the chief Idol that the *Huns* worshipp'd at that time, and over which
 these words were written in the characters of that Nation.

To young *Balamir's* Tutelar Deity.

Thus you see, *Narva*, said the Prince, that I have not made any advantage of a thing com-
 mitted to my trust: for if you do not believe my disposition to be changed with my fortune, you may
 affirm that I would rather do a good action, though it made me miserable, than by an unjust deed
 acquire all the Crowns in the world.

That extraordinary personage said no more, but retired, and went to Bed with the same
 countenance as he was wont to do. However, though he were generous, he was not in-
 sensible, so that instead of taking any rest, he only made his reflections upon an accident
 so severe and strange: “Was it not enough, said he, to tell me that I was not the Son of a
 “great King, as all the world has made me believe, but at the same time it must appear that
 “*Briomer* is my Father? For in short, there is no doubt to be made but that I was born in
 “*Bohemia*; the affections which the *Cimbrians* have for me, and the very thoughts of my
 “heart that always told me there was no enjoyment of *Rosamond* for me, are intallible
 “proofs thereof. “Not but that, added he, after he had paused a while, *Briomer's* designs
 “to have killed me seems to destroy that faith which faith would fix it self in my mind.
 “But why should I question but that a person of his humour might have a design as well
 “to murder me as *Velamber* for his own security; for what affection could he have pre-
 “serv'd for me, if he look'd upon me no longer as his Son, after so many years?

He pass'd the night in these disturbances; and the next morning without staying for
Ambiorix to go along as they had agreed, he went very early into *Ambiorix's* Quarters,
 taking *Velamber's* Messenger with him. *Ambiorix* and *Narva* no sooner had taken acquaint-
 ance one of another, but they manifest'd all the signs of joy for their happy meeting, that
 the occasion which afflicted both, and that reservedness of behaviour which it became them
 to observe in *Balamir's* presence would permit: and that they might discourse the more
 freely, they retir'd both to the window, when *Ambiorix* addressing himself to the Prince
 of the *Huns*, “Sir, said he, since it was agreed between us that we should both go toge-
 “ther to the Queen of the *Cimbrians's* Apartment, you need not believe that I would
 “have waited upon you; and therefore wonder not: what surpris'd to see the great
 “*Balamir* in my Chamber at such an early hour, when I could not expect the honour which
 “I receive. Sir, answered the Prince, when you were inform'd that I am able without

Rosamond's assistance to give you all that light and satisfaction which you can require, and all likewise to your own advantage, I make no question but that you will no longer wonder that I should be so hasty to give you a visit sooner than you expected.

After that he called *Ambiorix*, and repeated every particular as *Narva* had inform'd him : he shewed the Box open, which the *Belgian* did not believe could have been opened, and very diligently and clearly demonstrated that *Ambiomer* was the real *Balamir*, that the renowned Warriour stood like a Statue, not so much out of the excess of his joy, as through a well grounded astonishment : I see, Sir, said he at length, that there is some probability that I am the Son of the King of the Huns ; but there is so little likelyhood that you are Briomer's Son, that all the proofs which you have given me less prevail upon my belief, than *Balamir's* virtues so long since imprinted in my mind. Yours, replied the Prince, perswaded all the earth that the valiant *Ambiomer* could not but spring from a Royal Extrac^on : and the words of a person whom death hindered from farther explaining himself are not so slightly to be considered. I confess, Sir, replied he, that my disposition is not conformable to *Briomer's* ; but how unlike is yours to his ! And how improbable is it that you should be the Son of that *Cimbrian* ? He is the best able to satisfy us himself, replied *Balamir*, and therefore since a bare curiosity carried us to visit *Theon* together, an interest of greater concern may well persuade us to see *Briomer*.

Having thus concluded their generous dispute, they immediately went to the implacable Enemy of *Pharamond* ; and the savage *Cimbrian* no sooner saw them, but his colour changed, and he appeared very much dismayed : Be of good cheer, said *Balamir* immediately, no design of harm brings us hither : on the contrary we have brought you a Son, whom perhaps you thought you had lost a good while ago. At those words *Briomer* sigh'd, notwithstanding his natural fierceness, and how important soever the news which they brought him ought to have been to him, he was so far from giving them any attention, that he seem'd to be altogether taken up with other more troublesome. But no sooner was the Officer, to whose custody *Rosamond* had committed him, retired, out of the respect which he had for *Balamir*, but the Prince beginning the Relation which he had to make, took notice that the *Cimbrian* grew pale when he heard the very first circumstances. 'Tis true that he recovered himself so soon as he understood that *Balamir* and *Ambiomer* were both at an uncertainty, so that when they press'd him to declare himself, Well then, answered he at length, more boldly than he ought to have done, since you desire to be better satisfied which of you two is my Son, examine with your selves the greatest antipathy against the King of the Franks. If to be your Son it be necessary to hate *Pharamond*, replied the Prince, I dare affirm that you never begat me. And I wish to Heaven that it were impossible to be of your kindred, unless he had those unjust thoughts which I am sure I shall never be guilty of. You believe perhaps both of you, replied *Briomer*, resuming his wonted fierceness, that you should make a low exchange, if from the degree of a Prince, to which I confess you have reason to aspire, you should fall into such a Family as mine, but to redeem you out of that error, and to let you understand my power, I engage either to lose my life, or to make you two of the greatest Potentates in Europe, will ye but own those inseparable Titles of *Briomer's* Son, and *Pharamond's* Enemy. " Rather we altogether renounce so honourable a fortune, coldly replied *Balamir*, if there be no other way " to obtain it, but upon those conditions which you impose. But instead of putting any " farther constraint upon you, since I know not yet what to trust to, I am willing to preserve " an esteem for you, and without giving you any farther trouble, to stay till I can hear from " *Menebaldus's* own mouth, what I could willingly have learn'd from yours.

At the name of *Menebaldus* the wild *Briomer* changed colour, and stood dismayed : How, Sir, cryed he, is it possible that you should know the *Cimbrian* which you have nam'd ; or that you should have heard any news of him ? I have received most certain news of him, replied *Balamir* ; for this very Hun from whom I had the relation which I have repeated to you, assures me that *Menebaldus* is taken by the King, whose Son you caused to be carried away from *Singone*. Those words were so piercing to *Briomer*, that he felt a most furious augmentation of his trouble, and not being able to endure a discourse that lay so severe upon him, he fell into a deep meditation of the terrible events which he apprehended, and fix'd his eyes upon the ground in a frantick kind of posture.

As for *Balamir* and *Ambiomer*, they had no sooner taken their leaves one of another, but the Prince of the *Huns* went up to the Castle to visit the *Cimbrian* Queen, to whom he intended to give a full account of all things. For besides that he knew the admirable prudence of that Princess, he thought himself obliged to that respect, imagining also out of a natural instinct, that it would be a great ease to his sufferings, if *Rosamond* should appear to be mov'd at his misfortunes. She was without doubt more troubled than he expected, for her celestial eyes ; so worthy the wonderful effects which they every day produced, vitibly manifested

manifested that her heart was more pensive than *Balamir's*, upon the strange accidents that he had related to her: But at length opening her fair lips, *No no generous Prince*, answered she, *'tis impossible that you should be descended from the blood of Brioner, all the world will agree with me, and I find my very thoughts incens'd against that belief, which you with so much earnestness embrace. You see however Madam, that my opinion is but too well grounded, and that if I were not the Son of Brioner, he would never have removed Balamir out of the way to put me in his place. Besides, from whence should proceed that reluctancy of yours to listen to my suit, had not the Gods to whom you are so dear, inspired you for fear one of your subjects should advance himself to the Throne? Whence proceed those thoughts in me, so opposite to all those pretensions which I might as lawfully have had, as so many Princes that preserve their own, with as little reason as I had to hope for success. 'Tis too true Madam that I am unfortunate, nevertheless, added he with an air that had something else more than ordinary Majesty in it, I am so far from fainting under my burthen, that it may be I may have courage enough to behold it, and it may be I may undergo it with that patience, that may not be unworthy those renowned marks of kindness, wherewith you have honoured me.*

While these two illustrious persons thus entertained each other, the Princess of *Suevia* and the King of the *Tongres* who knew not the subject of their discourse, came into the Room as jolly and pleasant as might be, and told the fair Queen that it was high time to take the Air without the Camp, as they had made an agreement for that morning. "You know, dear Sister, pursued *Albifinda*, that in some measure it is lawful for me to press you, since it behoves me to see *Viridomar*, and that *Marcomire* and *Gondemar* cannot stir abroad by reason of their wounds: I could willingly comply with your desires at another time; but I have no great fancy at present, besides I am perswaded that we shall meet with more company than you are aware of. "Though your Majesty should meet with more than you expected, they cannot admire at your curiosity to see the famous *Melufina*, since the other party are as eager to see the learned *Theon*.

Albifinda and *Balamir* also joyning others of their own to the King of the *Tongres* reasons, they absolutely won *Rosamond's* good will, and perswaded her to go along with them, the freshness of the Air and the splendour of the day, giving then such a pleasing invitation to divertize themselves that morning,

Thus without any magnificence either in apparel or attire, a most beautiful company fit to be admired by all the world, rode forth of the *Cimbrian* Camp. The Queens of *Bohemia* and *Turingia*, the Princesses *Albifinda* and *Agione*, shone like the Lustre of the Sun when he breaks through the tender Clouds, environed with extraordinary personages, among whom were to be seen the great *Balamir*, the haughty *Varanez*, the renowned lover of *Puleberia*, the melancholy *Agelmond*, the valiant *Ambiomer*, the King of the *Tongres*, and the learned *Theon*. All these illustrious personages, entertained one another according to their several interests, the Princes of the *Huns* and the *Persians* never left *Rosamond*, *Albifinda* and *Taxander* whose minds were free and unengaged were very pleasant together: On the contrary *Amalazomba* and *Agelmond* were deep in contemplation, but said little. As for *Ambiomer*, he pleased himself with the sweet affableness of the Princess of the *Lombards*, and *Martian* who was a great distance from what he loved, took delight to hear *Theon* discourse in his own Art, that he had rendred so famous over all the East.

But now it was time for *Theon* to advance forward, seeing a great body of horsemen and Chariots that came from the other Camp: But before they drew so near as to know each other they alight, and *Theon* and *Melufina* moved on the one toward the other, encompassed about with several Officers, that served to hide their persons from being too much expos'd to publick view. Though *Altoruna* were already far stricken in years, yet she went very upright, her countenance was Majestick, her complexion brown, her face Oval, her eyes black, her looks stedfast and piercing: But neither she nor the learned Greek gave one another those tedious commendations, with which most people are wont to tire their expressions, yet they seemed to be so satisfied, that though they spoke without any strain'd language, it was after a manner altogether as obliging, as their admiration each of other was reciprocal. *I make no question*, pursued *Theon*, *but that you are of the same opinion with me, that e're long we shall see the foundations of great Monarchies new laid. We may affirm it before all the world*, replied *Melufina*, *nor is it very difficult to see the presages thereof, in the effeminacy of the successors of the great Theodosius, and the valour of these fierce Nations, that wage war against the two Empires. But learned Theon, both you and I may look for other causes of these revolutions, and find them as certain though somewhat more remote, in those great luminaries that roll over our heads. "I have already consulted them*, replied he, *and if I am not* "deceived, those sublime Planets, whose conjunctions govern the most memorable events

“in this low world, declare to us the wonderful revolutions that must happen over all the world. Those that fell out after *Hannibal* was chosen General of his own Country-men, were of less consequence, though at the same time the young *Philip* ascended the *Macedonian Throne*: *Achæus* usurped *Asia*, *Licurgus* subdued the *Lacedæmonians*, *Ptolomy Philopater* seiz'd upon *Egypt*, and *Antiochus* fixed himself in *Syria*. I am of your opinion, though it be not so universally received, replied *Altorana*, and to make it more clear I need go no farther, than to shew you some observations which I have made, upon what success, the Stars do promise to the glorious Monarchy of the *Franks*.

While they were thus discoursing, the Princes and Princesses of both parts advanced forward by degrees, and immediately next to *Meluzina* might be seen the charming Sister of *Pharamond*, the incomparable *Placidia*, the fair Queen of *Albion*, the lovely *Adelaiada*, the Princesses *Cleomira* and *Blesinda*. Among the Princes that compos'd that Court of renowned personages, was the great King of the *Franks*, who was yet more remarkable for his haughty and warlike presence, and the splendor of his Arm glittering with jewels in every part. The lover of *Polixena* the illustrious *Viridomar*, did not meanly contribute to the glory of that meeting, the famous *Constance* appeared laden with honour, and the King of the *Britains* with the valiant *Artabure*, discovered themselves there with a presence conformable to the high reputation which they had won.

The first of these great personages on both sides, that separated from his company was the Prince *Balamir*, for besides that he had a desire to see the fair *Theodolinda*, and all probabilities perswaded him, that she might be with the Queen of the *Goths* and the Princess of the *Tongres*: However she did not meet him at present, for the King of the *Franks* being advanced toward his generous Rival, accosted him so far unlike an Enemy, that his aspect manifested nothing but esteem and acknowledgment. *Will it never be possible Sir*, said he, *for Pharamond to see himself free, from the competitorship of the renowned Balamir? Neither Balamir, answered the Prince of the Huns, or any other King in the world, must contend with Pharamond for a heart which he has so well deserved, and whereof he still made himself more worthy, by that fatal exploit which overthrew all his hopes in the death of Theobald. But Sir*, added he with a more serious utterance, seeing *Viridomar* approach, *'Tis not for you to spend so much time in a converse, which you may better elsewhere employ. For I am much deceived, if the Prince of Suevia who as I know too well has taken your side, be not coming to do you some good office.*

Viridomar hearing these last words, answered with an aspect full of acknowledgment, so that those three renowned and valiant Princes, who at another time would have been overjoyed to have held on their discourse, broke off immediately to go where their differing intentions guided them: But *Viridomar* still addressing himself to the Prince of the *Huns*; *I am*, said he, *so many ways obliged to the King of the Franks, that I am desirous with your permission, that he may receive some part of acknowledgment from my Sister, and that I may attend him to her, notwithstanding we run the hazard of meeting her with the Queen of the Cimbrians, Should that misfortune befall you*, replied *Balamir* with the same aspect, *'Tis very likely that you will find some expedient to comfort your selves in the midst of your pain.* He said no more that he might not any longer retard the two Princes, but *Pharamond* would not leave him till he had brought him to *Constance*, to whose care he committed him that he might present him to the Queens and Princesses.

The famous lover of *Placidia* admirably discharged his trust, and *Balamir* as much accustomed as he was to see *Rosamond*, could not chuse but be surpris'd at the sight of so many Beauties, which he beheld all at one time. Some marks of which astonishment he gave in his discourse to the Sister of *Honorius*, to whom *Polixena* and the other Princesses gave the chief place of honour, which the Queen of the *Goths* observing; *Sir*, said she, *I must confess that the whole world has not a place unless it be this where now we are, that affords you the sight of so many wonders at once, and yet the person whom you look for is not here, for the Princess Theodolinda would not come along with us.*

While *Placidia* spake in that manner, the other Princesses earnestly beheld *Balamir*, in whose person they found nothing but what was Majestick, nothing but what was conformable to his noble Reputation. But when he had paid them all the respects which he could imagine due to them, and that they had returned him all the testimonies of their esteem, which he could expect. *It is not just*, replied *Autalph's* Widow, *for us to detain you any longer, the Princess Theodolinda also would take it ill as well as you, if we should one moment retard your meeting after so long an absence. I believe however*, replied the Queen of *Albion*, *that Prince Balamir will not be a little troubled, where to find the Princess his Sister, for I was told that she was gone to take a walk with the fair and melancholy Bellamira.* At these words the Sister of *Honorius* seem'd to be somewhat surpriz'd and ponder'd, whereupon *Polyxena* made

made answer to *Olivia*, that she would send some of her Attendants along with the Prince of the *Huns*, to shew him the place where *Bellamira* and *Theodolinda*, were wont to seek retirement.

In short she turned about, and sending for five or six very comely *Franck* Knights, she gave them order to attend *Balamir*. They conducted him through many turnings of the Wood, into a remote and wild place where they were forced to alight. Afterwards they divided taking several paths that led several ways, that they might the sooner meet such persons as went to hide themselves, having their Guards at the avenues of the little deserts. As for *Balamir* he kept the same path as the King of *Sueden* had done, when he threw himself into the fetters of his Enemy's Sister, and no sooner had he walked along the side of a Rivulet, to the fountain which had been so fatal to the Father of *Viridomar*, but he saw two Ladies negligently habited, sitting at the head of a great Tree. The one leaned upon the other in a muling posture, yet might her incomparable presence be observed. The Prince had no sooner cast his eyes upon as much of her face as he could discover, but his heart was moved as it were at the apparition of some Deity, and thereupon having stepped a little nearer, and more earnestly considered what he believed he had not well discerned before, he made a loud exclamation to Heaven, pronouncing the name of *Hunnimonda*. But then the two Ladies immediately rose up, and she that had caused *Balamir*'s wonder, beheld him with indignation, and with all the speed she could, endeavoured nothing more than to avoid him.

The End of the Tenth Part of
PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

The Eleventh Part.

BOOK I.



Are you the Ghost of my Princess, cryed the astonished Balamir, *are you the divine Hunnimonda? Has Heaven sent you to comfort a miserable person, so cruelly ravished from me? Rather,* added he, *fetching a deep sigh, having better observ'd the countenance of that incens'd Lady, are you not come to overwhelm me with more misfortunes than I am already plunged into.* He was about to have continued, transported with several passions, when he took notice that his words had rather irritated than mollified the haughty Lady to whom he made his addresse; so that he held his peace, and having viewed her more circumspectly than before; *Or I am deceived,* cryed he like one dismayed, *or you are that divine Princess which an inhumane Brother ravished from my glorious hopes.* *Yes, ingrateful Prince,* answered she, *I am Hunnimonda; but Hunnimonda rather dead to thy remembrance, than in the opinion of the rest of the world.*

After she had in that bitter manner reviled him, she turn'd swiftly about to go toward a Tuft of Trees where she had left *Theodolinda*, when the passionate Balamir catching hold of her Garment, *Ah, Madam,* cryed he, *for Heaven's sake tarry; and if the Gods have preserved you in this world, or if else they have raised you from the dead by some omnipotent miracle; hear for the sake of those Gods what a Prince that adores you can say in his own justification* No, no, *perfidious man,* said she, *I will hear nothing; get thee to thy Rosamond, court a Princess that can bestow a Crown upon thee, and never more look after an unfortunate person that has nothing left her to move thy ambition.* *Ah, Madam,* replied he, sighing, *that you should know Balamir no better!* After which words, while he strove to hinder *Hunnimonda* from running away, the incensed Lady beheld him with eyes, which notwithstanding the fury that enflamed them, yet darted forth most inexpressible charms, and with a loud voice, and a redoublement of indignation, *Unhand me, faithless man,* cryed she, *I know thee too well.* She would have said more no doubt, considering the fury she was in, had not *Theodolinda*, hearing her voice, hastened to her with all speed; *Dear Brother,* cryed she, *I beseech you force not the will of the Princess; 'tis enough that you have wronged her, and still continue injurious to her, without persecuting her in these solitary retirements, where she seeks that repose which you disturb.* *Alas,* pursued she, beholding the Prince with eyes full of tenderness and grief, *who would once have thought that Hunnimonda would have ever fled from Balamir? Or that Balamir would have worn any other Fetters than Hunnimonda's? But since you have been the cause of that injustice from whence the change proceeds, let us talk no more of a change that extremely afflicts me, and not cross those joys which we ought to have upon the sight of each other.*

While

While she was thus talking, her beautiful friend ran in all haste into the Wood, and getting into her Chariot, she fled from her inconstant lover whom she could not hate however. Then *Balamir* beholding *Theodolinda* with all the symptoms of a new disturbance, *How Sister*, said he, *must I always receive the most sensible unkindnesses from my nearest Relations? Was it not enough for Mundisic to ravish from me the Celestial Hunnimonda, but must it be Theodolinda's care also, to deprive me of the sight of the only person whom I love which the propitious heavens have restored me again?* “Dare you say, said she disdainfully entertaining him, that you love *Hunnimonda*, or do you believe that fair Princess can be ignorant of your passion for the Queen of the *Cimbrians*? No Brother never flatter your self, all the world knows that you are the most dreaded Rival that *Pharamond* has. “Cruel Sister, replied he, why speak you so positively to augment my grief: I say no more than what all the world reports as well as I. “Well then Brother, pursued she all of a sudden, will you promise me to submit again to *Hunnimonda's* Commands. I not only promise it, replied he with a certain liveliness in his eyes, but I also vow dear Sister to dye her captive. Then you are no longer in love with *Rosamond*, said *Theodolinda*, and taking notice that *Balamir* answered not a word, “Speak, said she very earnestly, are you in love with the Queen of the *Cimbrians* or no? “I cannot betray my thoughts, replied he at length, and therefore I must confess, that notwithstanding the violent passion which I have for the Princess of the *Goths*, I feel a kind of tenderness toward *Rosamond* at the bottom of my heart, which I shall have to my dying day. “By what I find, coldly replied she, you have not lost all your infidelity, but what has this *Rosamond* done for you, that you are only constant to her, and what has not my generous friend done for *Balamir*, from the very time that he ingratfully forgot her? “I beseech you, said he interrupting her, tell me what these last obligations are which she has laid upon me. They are so great that I am ashamed to relate them, for fear of making you ashamed, of the indifferency of your behaviour. *Balamir* then beholding *Theodolinda* in a supplicating posture; “Dear Sister, said he, will you not tell me whether the report that ran of *Hunnimonda's* marriage with *Mundisic*, be as false as the news of her being dead, and will you not also tell me by what miracle, that heavenly Princess saved her self from the hands of her Ravisher. “Tis not material, answered she very slightly, for a lover of *Rosamond* to understand the concerns of the Queen of the *Goths*, “Ah cruel woman, said *Balamir* interrupting her with a deep sigh, how well do you confirm me in the suspicion of my meaner birth? For were you my Sister, you would not so cruelly refuse the satisfaction on which I desire. *Were I your Sister*, answered she with some surprize, *what have you as clean forgot Theodolinda as Hunnimonda? Or is it because I have lived so long in Honorius's Court, that you remember not that I am the daughter of the King of the Huns?* I know it very well, replied he, but *Madam* I know not whether I owe my life to the same person that gave you yours: For I can tell you of an adventure that will perhaps, very much stagger your belief, in reference to my Parents. I cannot apprehend, replied the Princess, upon what ground you build this uncertainty, but I confess withal that were I positively convinced of the untruth of a thing that I have believed from my infancy, yet I could not chuse but have a greater affection for *Balamir's* virtue, than for *Mundisic* himself. And upon that assurance I hope you will not be unwilling to discover to me the reasons of your suspicion, at the first convenient opportunity.

Balamir more transported with his love than with any other consideration, offered immediately to satisfy the Princess of the *Huns* request, imagining that thereby he might insensibly engage her, to tell him what concern'd the fair *Hunnimonda*. But how great a comfort soever it were for *Theodolinda*, to see a Prince whom she so entirely loved, and whatever interest she had in the adventures of his life, she yielded rather to good manners, than to her own satisfaction at this first interview, and referred it to *Balamir's* next visit. But as she was about to take her leave of the Prince, he looked with so much affliction in his Countenance, finding himself constrained to return without re beholding his Princess, that *Theodolinda* touched with compassion, and being willing to give him some consolation, I protest Brother, said she, I would willingly by a full relation of her Story, let you understand the whole heart of the incomparable *Hunnimonda*, could I do it without asking her permission, perhaps she will not absolutely deny me. But will she not wilfully refuse my company, cryed he interrupting her. I dare not undertake, replied *Theodolinda*, that I can bring her into your company by her own consent, for she is no unsettled person in her resolutions: But, Prince, add but you as a Lover of *Hunnimonda*, and I will shew myself to be *Balamir's* Sister. This is all I can say at present, and the reason I beseech you ask no more, but give me leave to follow that fair Princess from whom I cannot long be absent.

She had no sooner said these words but she took her leave of *Balamir*, and though the

Prince fain would have stay'd her longer, she absolutely resolv'd to return to *Hunnimonda*, and defer the rest of the discourse till a longer time. Thereupon the Prince beholding *Theodolinda* with all the symptoms of sadness in his face; "Well then, *said he*, I must part from my Princess and from you, not being able to obtain so much compassion from a Sister, as to hear my justification to the person whom I adore. But it may be you will be both more just the next time I see you, for in regard I cannot tax my self with the guilt of any crime, I despair not utterly, but that I may one day move the incens'd *Hunnimonda's* heart.

In this manner *Balamir* took his leave of *Theodolinda*, and the Prince of the *Huns* return'd to the noblest interview that ever was in the world, whither he was no sooner come among those renowned persons, that environ'd *Theon* and *Melusina*, but he returned thanks to the Princess *Polyxena*. After that he accosted the renowned *Constance*, who was discoursing the incomparable Sister of *Honorius*: who had no sooner cast her eyes upon his face, but she observed the extraordinary disturbance that appeared in his countenance, but in regard she knew the reason; "I am deceived, *said she*, or you have found more than you sought for, and that instead of one you saw a couple for whom you had no indifferent esteem. "Ah Madam, *replied he*, in regard you are not ignorant that *Hunnimonda* lives, I have only your protection to beg, against a Princess that has caus'd you with the most important secret of your life. "Should I take *Balamir's* part, *replied the Queen of the Goths*, perhaps it may not be the first time that I have openly declared in his behalf: But the change of your affection has made such a noise, and so enrag'd the fair Princess, that *Theodolinda* and *Placidia* have been little hearkned to, when they undertook as several times they have done, to speak in your justification.

Constance from whom they kept nothing secret, was overjoyed to hear that the charming *Bellamira* prov'd to be *Hunnimonda*, and addressing himself to the Prince of the *Huns*, *By what I find*, *said he*, there may be a reconciliation at length between two potent persons that infinitely esteem each other, for that jealousy that arn'd them one against another, and made them seek each other with so much animosity in fight will now be laid aside, seeing that if I be not deceived, you are no longer the King of France's Rival. I confess, *replied Balamir*, that I must return to my former capacity, but on the other side generous *Constance*, the difference is great between us two in the recovery of our *Mistresses*: For you appear before the incomparable *Placidia*, with all the confidence that can proceed from the innocency of a faithful heart. But the unfortunate *Balamir* is looked upon to be guilty by the severe *Hunnimonda*, who flies him and beholds him with detestation. After he had spoken these words, he took notice that the King of the *Franks*, was discoursing with the Queen of the *Cimbrians* and the Princess of *Suevia*, and it was the first time that he beheld the King of France's happiness, more pleas'd than disturb'd at it.

The enamour'd *Viridomar* had done that kindness for *Polyxena's* brother, for he guessing that *Pharamond* would not presume too boldly to approach *Rosamond*, and that *Rosamond* would not endure a long familiarity with *Pharamond* before so much company, presented the King of France to the Princess *Albisinda*, who was always inseparable from the Queen of the *Bohemians*. Thus having shew'd himself the contriver of that interview, 'twas his own fault if the more scrupulous sort reflect'd a little too severely upon him. He had also gone somewhat farther, for knowing that *Varanex* might disturb their communication, he had drawn him aside by degrees, under pretence of acknowledging the kindness which she had shewn him, after the conflict which he had had with *Balamir*.

Ambiomer and *Agione* were very busily unfolding their thoughts one to another, and the Queen of *Turingia*, who would fain have been where the King of the *Franks* was, durst not stir from that part of the wood where *Agelmond* remained with her, staying with that Prince not only in point of decency, but out of a virtuous resolution wherewith she oppos'd that violent inclination, of which she was not always the Mistress: So that *Balamir* found *Pharamond* and *Rosamond* without any other company but *Albisinda's*, and accosting those three illustrious persons, he cunningly fell into discourse with the Princess of *Suevia*, on purpose to give the King of France (towards whom he had nothing but a perfect esteem and affection) the more liberty to speak his full mind to the Queen of the *Bohemians*. But that fair Princess as also the generous *Pharamond*, no sooner cast their eyes upon him, but they press'd him very earnestly to know the cause of his discontent, when *Balamir* returning for answer that he had been to see *Hunnimonda*, put them into an extraordinary Amaze.

Immediately they thought that either they had not rightly understood him, or that *Balamir* had made some mistake: So that he was forc'd to tell them in few words, that *Bella-*

mirz was *Hunnimonda*. With that the King of the *Franks* addressing himself to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, "I make no question Madam, *sudbe*, but that heaven it self has been sensible, of what *Balamir* would have done for *Pharamond*'s sake, and has restor'd *Linn Hunnimonda* as the recompence of so just an action. But Madam I am past all hopes, that ever the Gods should do a second miracle in my favour, nor am I so well beloved of fate, as to change the destiny of *Theobald*. I would joyfully sacrifice his murderer to your revenge, if the life of that inhumane assassinate, might prove an offering pure and precious enough, to restore a Prince to your wishes, that so well merited your affection.

Concluding those words he fetch'd a deep sigh, and cast a look so full of love and grief, upon the countenance of the fair Queen, that *Rosamond* could not but behold him again with such an Air, as display'd her natural haughtiness tempered with an obliging languishment. "You know Sir, answered she, that it was only report that published the death of the Princess *Hunnimonda*, but in regard I was an eye-witness myself of the Prince of the *Cimbrians* death, the loss which I have sustained is as unquestionable as the Prince *Balamir*'s misfortune was uncertain, so that you are not to preserve these thoughts of kindness for me, that would meet with those acknowledgments in the breast of any other Princess but *Rosamond*, which it is not lawful for me to testify: Nor can I tell how to pardon my Sister and myself, for having entred into a communication so familiar, after I had taken a resolution never to have more to do with *Pharamond*. For my part Sister, very complaisantly replied the *Saxian* Princess, I was bound to pay my thanks to the French King in *Viridomar*'s behalf, and when I saw the Prince of the Franks in your company, the antipathy which I have against war, made me look upon the interview of both the Generals as a good omen. You are so imprudent to day, replied the Queen yet not so seriously as she was wont to do, that I am perswaded I should be angry, did I not consider that the sight of a famous and beloved Brother, does in some measure authorize a gaiety not usual with your mirth.

While she spake in this manner, the impatient *Varanez* bristles up in great haste to her, and observing more of sweetness than disdain in her fair eyes, he was mad at the heart and soon would have discovered his fury, had not the presence of the charming Queen humbled his haughty humour. Fearing however lest *Pharamond*'s virtues, might take too deep a root in *Rosamond*'s heart, he could not but look upon his Rival with a mortal hatred, imagining that one day he might be happy. Nor could all those rare qualities which he formerly admired in the person of the King of the *Franks*, defend his heart against the assaults of a jealousy which his temper rendred so violent. In the mean time *Pharamond* had an opinion far different of the condition of his fortune, for though the Queen appeared less incens'd than formerly, the last words that she had spoken convinc'd him plainly, that the obstacles of his pretensions were as invincible, as *Rosamond*'s loss which he had occasion'd was inseparable.

Upon the neck of this fell another vexation, for it being now time for both parties to retire, the Queen began to walk toward the Chariots that waited for her. The enamour'd *Pharamond* could not then take leave of the Queen, without apparent testimony of his grief, nevertheless that he might not fail in the punctilio's of good manners, as also in obedience to those tender whispers of affection which he had for his brothers, he gave the lovely Sister of *Viridomar* to understand, what extremities of sorrow *Marcomire* sustained, by reason that his cruel wounds kept him from appearing at this interview. Afterwards accosting the fair and penive *Amalazontha*, he let her know that the passionate *Sunnon* was departed from the French Camp to assist the *Turingians*, And you may well think, added he, that I shall always most willingly pardon him, when he leaves me to serve so incomparable a Princess, and so worthy the veneration which he has for her. I am so accustomed, answered *Amalazontha*, to receive kindnesses Sir, both from your self and Prince *Sunnon*, that I am nothing surpris'd to hear that you have laid new obligations upon me. I am more oblig'd myself, replied he, to your favour, nor can I remember but with an infinite return of acknowledgment, that you should send away your Troops to weaken my Enemies Army, especially when my own Arms have done you so much injury. The effectual services which you have done me, replied she, have made a deeper impression in my soul, than the resentment of offences unwillingly committed: But willingly, added she, my acknowledgments are little to be regarded, for all persons that have suffered far more than I under your victorious achievements, yet give you more respect and a higher esteem. I agree Madam with you, replied he, that no person in the world has ever looked upon my actions with so much indulgence as you have done. But in regard the Queen of the *Turingians* has done me an honour which she was no way oblig'd to do, I have no reason to complain if others refuse it me, and judge not so favourably of the misfortune that has drawn upon me their aversion. A

for aversion, replied she, 'tis a hard thing to conceive such a sin against the King of the Franks: but I cannot tell, Sir, whether it be justice to all the part of an enemy against a Prince that offers to lay down his Arms, and submits to orders tending to his own ruine.

She would have said more perhaps, if *Agelmond's* presence had not put her to silence, who at the same time undertook to excuse himself to *Pharamond* for being obliged to take the *Cimbrians* part. *Ambiorix* justified himself much after the same manner, at what time the Princes of the *Lombards* came toward the King of the *Franks*, who, as soon as he had payed the lovely Sister of *Agelmond* all the respect and honour due to a person of her Quality and Sex, was just about to return to his own party, when he was met by the furious *Varanez*, who had all along very narrowly observed his steps: *I am of opinion*, said the lofty *Persian*, *that you return with more satisfaction from Rosamond than ever you expected, and that that Princess is not deeply incens'd against a King who slew her Brother before her own eyes. It may be you and I may differ in our thoughts in reference to the Queen*, slightly replied *Pharamond*, *but if I must be of your opinion to disturb my Rivals, I will tell you, that the Princess was so just as to consider my intention, when I had the misfortune to displease her. Among those Rivals whom you so little esteem*, answered *Varanez*, *I know that some are sufficiently able to impeach your enterprises, and to dispute with you the possession of Rosamond, even to the last drop of their blood. Though you should mean Prince Varanez himself*, impatiently replied the King of the *Franks*, *I should never believe it to be the greatest of my misfortunes to undertake the combat with him.*

Upon those words, the haughty Son of *Isdigestes* redoubled the measure of his fury, and had certainly hastened to the decision of his quarrel, if notwithstanding the heat of his boiling rage, he had not considered those illustrious personages that were in presence, as so many obstacles that would oppose him in the execution of his wrath. He judged it also better to stay till the Queen had made choice of a Husband, that he might afterwards assault the Lover whom she intended to render happy; fearing also lest before that decision his other Rivals might draw any advantage from his quarrel with *Pharamond*: and therefore addressing himself to the King of the *Franks*, *Remember*, said he with a lofty utterance, *the resolution we have both taken, and know that there must be no Quarter between Pharamond and Varanez, if Rosamond her self declares either for the one or the other. Pharamond will never beg it*, replied he, *and you may do as you please, if you gain the victory, of which you are no way assured.*

The King of the *Franks* and the Prince of *Persia* were upon these terms when *Viridomar*, *Contance*, *Martian* and *Taxander* came in, and altered the scene of the discourse. However, these great personages did not converse long together; for the Troops being obliged to march, they were presently constrain'd to take their leaves, and return to the fair Princesses whom they had accompanied all the day. Never did two contrary parties receive greater satisfaction the one from the other: never was seen more occasion to breed emulation, nor hearts more capable to harbour it. *Rosamond*, *Amalazontha*, *Albisinda* and *Agione* did nothing but extol the Princess of the *Franks*, the Queens of the *Goths*, and *Britains*, and their fair and illustrious companions: and on the other side, *Polyxena*, *Placidia*, *Odivia*, *Adelaiada*, *Cleomira* and *Blesinda* were in a manner charm'd with the bright and surpassing Majesty of the *Bohemian Queen*. They also acknowledged that lovely languishment in the Queen of *Turingia's* Beauty, which no heart could withstand, that the sweetness and mildness of the *Suevian Princess* infinitely pleased them; and that there were few persons more amiable than the Sister of the *Lombard King*. Thus did those two renowned and Royal Assemblies entertain each other; and when they that followed the charming *Rosamond* were come into the Camp, the spirit of joy spread it self through all that vast Army, and every one press'd to repeat the circumstances of an interview so worthy of admiration.

In the mean time *Briomer* waiting with a strange impatience to be resolv'd about the detention of *Menebaldus*, understood that they brought along with them that great accomplice of his, that they intended to have him examined before the Queen. The hair-brained *Cimbrian* hearing such dreadful news, seem'd to be in a manner quite dismayed; but his natural boldness, that rendered him capable of undertaking any abominable enterprise, soon dissipated the greatest part of his fear: nay, his pernicious audacity went farther; for *Briomer* finding himself warrant'd in his thoughts by the implacable hatred which he bore to *Pharamond*, and sustained by the support which he expected from the King of *Suevia*, took such resolutions as he thought most proper to preserve him from the danger that threatened him. Immediately he went to *Albisinda's* Father, the most zealous of all his protectors, and desires to speak with him in private, which request he obtained: he spoke long, and spoke

spoke vehemently, so that he put the King of *Suevia* into an extraordinary surprize. The King beheld him very earnestly, but said very little: afterwards having given him something which the *Cimbrian* very carefully concealed, *Go on*, said he, taking him fast by the hand, *I will never forsake thee; only return as soon as may be, that we may not lose the least moment in the execution of our designs,*

Briomer being reassured by those words, was no sooner in his own Quarters, but seeing 'twas night he sent the people that were in his Chamber upon several Errands. Afterwards advancing toward the *Cimbrian*, who had order to observe him, he comes up close to him, feigning as if he had some earnest request to make him: and when he perceiving him busily minding to hear what he would say, he lifted up his hand, and stuck his dagger full in his bosom, and so quickly redoubled his blow, that before he could cry out, or defend himself, the *Cimbrian* fell dead at the feet of his wild Assassinate. The famous Villain was no sooner at liberty, but he fled to the King of *Suevia's* Quarters; and being introduced into his Closet, there he found the King impatiently expecting him, to whom he thus address'd himself, *I cannot think, Sir, you will be surpris'd at what I have done, since you know that I have formerly executed all that ambition could infuse into a Father for the advancement of his Son to the supreme Dignity.* Afterwards he conferred very succinctly with *Albisinda's* Father, being desirous to get out of the Camp before his last crime came to be known: *In short, Sir,* added he, *all that I can do is to put my self into Cologne, and if you do but act as we have resolv'd, we shall not only hinder our common enemy from triumphing in the possession of Rosamond, but you may also be Master of that Princess's life and fortune, and reduce the Franks under your power.* He said no more, but disguising himself with all expedition, he followed certain *Suevian* Officers, who had orders to assist him in his escape.

While he was upon his journey, led by some evil Angel fatal to many illustrious personages, the last of his cruelty became publick through the whole Camp, and they sought to punish the Offender, whose future violences they had so much reason to fear. At first it was believ'd that such a person as *Briomer* would not lightly forsake his commands, that he had some more than ordinary reason to do what he had done; and that he must be upheld by some Sovereign Authority. All persons suspected that the King of *Suevia* was his protector. *Rosamond* only, *Albisinda* and *Balamir*, who had heard *Menebaldus's* confession, conjectured that the imprisonment of *Briomer's* accomplice had mov'd the *Cimbrian* to that strange resolution which he had taken, for fear he should be left to the severity of the Law. The fair Queen was very glad to find her self rid of a subject whose humour was so dangerous; and in regard she could not imagine so wicked a person should be the Father of *Balamir*, besides that he had conspired his death, she took upon her to mitigate the discontents of that Prince: to which intent she fell into a discourse with him concerning the Princess of the *Goths*, that admirable Princess that had rendered the names of *Hunnimonda* and *Bellamira* so famous over all *Europe*. This she did after so generous a manner, and so far from all sort of jealousy, that *Balamir* not being able to master the sudden motions of his Soul, *Would to God*, cryed he, fetching a deep sigh, *that the incens'd Bellamira and the incredulous Theodolinda were well acquainted with that affection that permits the Cimbrian Queen to commend the Princess of the Goths; and hinders not Balamir from speaking in favour of the King of the Franks.*

That very transportation of mind convinced the fair Queen how kindly *Balamir* thought of *Hunnimonda*; and therefore as she was very much interest'd in all her concerns, she let him know how glad she should be to understand what had befallen him in the visit which he gave to *Theodolinda*. *Balamir* feeling I cannot tell what kind of sweetness in trusting *Rosamond* with the most important of his concerns, and the most secret of his thoughts, gave her an exact account of all that had happened in the Forest, where by accident he met with the Princess of the *Goths*: and then continuing his discourse with many marks of grief in his face, *Madam*, said he, *do you not plainly see the malignity of my Stars, and how that fortune could be never more ingenious to persecute a miserable man? I confess she has advanced me to some reputation among men, but that was only a poisoned present; for it was that very fame that dissipated the melancholy that reigned in my Soul, by a strong desire of Glory which it possessed me with in lieu of the other: and by that means I was hindered from searching among my sorrows for the end of my unfortunate days, or indeed of a life that I find I must lead like a person forsaken of all the world.* For after all, *Madam*, I fear that in a short time I shall lose the dignity of my Birth, which hitherto has been accounted great; and perhaps I may appear to be the Son of that person whose violences and enormities you are so well acquainted with, for the Son of an inhumane Father, who would sacrifice me to his own safety: on the other side, I find that my affection for your Majesty will remain for ever in my heart; and that

this so just affection will constrain me to be hated by Hunnimonda, and if my duty oblige me to head the Cimbrians, 'tis only to fight against a Generous Prince to whom I am beholdng for my life, to fight against an Army that secures me a Sister and a Mistress.

The penfive Balamir could not conclude these words without a sigh, so that the charming Queen sensibly moved at his affliction, instead of returning an answer seem'd rather in a study, what means to find out to assuage the grief of a person so renowned, and yet so unfortunate. But the Princess of *Svevia* drawing near on purpose to break off such a melancholy discourse, "What Sister, what Prince, *pleasantly said she to both*, think you to find "a way to comfort one another without consulting *Albisinda*, or that there needs no more "than a moment of time, to find out remedies for such extraordinary evils? No no, we "must have more than one consultation in this case, and therefore since it is time for us to "return to our company, let us take a little time to arm *Balamir* with necessary cautions "against the accidents threatned him as well by fortune, as the renewed love of *Hunni-* " *monda*.

Concluding these words she went forward, together with the *Cimbrian* Queen toward *Amalazontha's* Apartment, where there was a most noble meeting of great personages. But the enamoured *Balamir* instead of making any stop there, departed presently to try whether he could get a sight of the fair Princess, that reigned in his heart more imperiously than ever. To that purpose he went in all haste toward the Camp of the *Franks*, and though he had a great desire to see *Pharamond*, to whom the concerns of *Hunnimonda* were no mysteries, yet he went directly to the place where *Theodolinda* was lodged. But he was strangely surpris'd to find *Polixena*, the Queen of *Albion*, and *Adelziada* in *Theodolinda's* Chamber, and to hear that *Pharamond* and *Placidia* were with *Hunnimonda*, using their endeavours to mollifie and appease the incens'd and hardned heart of that fair Princess. *Balamir* was received by all those charming Princesses, with all the marks of esteem that a person of his high renown, and to whom *Alexander*, *Constance*, and *Pharamond* himself had been beholdng, could possibly expect. However *Odivia*, the Princess of the *Franks*, and the Princess of the *Nemetians*, believing that *Balamir* and *Theodolinda* might have some private business together, were not long ere they took their leaves, and left them their full liberty of discourse.

The enamoured *Balamir*, who had nothing in his mind but the image of that incomparable Lady, who had made two Names so famous over all the world, the first thing he did, he enquired whether *Hunnimonda* continued inexorable, and understanding to his grief, that her anger was not yet appeas'd, in regard he could not see her then, he resolv'd to justify all the actions which he had done, since an inhumane Brother had ravish'd from him, all his happiness and all his hopes.

He related to her the despair of his heart, when he was constrained to abandon all that was dear to him, he repeated all the circumstances of his travels, while he rather wandred at the mercy of his grief, than out of any curiosity. Then he told her how strangely he was dismay'd at *Hunnimonda's* marriage, how disconsolate he grew upon the news of her death. After that coming to what concern'd the *Cimbrian* Queen, *I vow dear Sister*, said he, *that it would be happy for me that the too severe Princess whom I adore, could but discover in the bottom of my heart, the nature of my affection to the fair Rosamond. I am perswaded she would rather approve than hate me for it, for there being no question to be made of her justice, I cannot conceive she should take it ill, that I should be grateful to a Princess, that has not only given me the greatest command she could bestow upon me, but reposes also a greater trust in Balamir, than in all those potent Princes that take her part. But brother*, reply'd *Theodolinda*, *Rosamond is fair, so fair that you might rather give your gratitude some other name, for I cannot tell whether in having been so zealous to serve her, it may not amount to an affection for a Beauty, that inspires nothing but violent passion. How Sister*, reply'd he sighing, *will you always interpret my words so contrary to my intentions, and will you not believe me when I shall protest to you, that my love to the Queen of the Cimbrians is not greater, than that which I bear to the Princess of the Huns, and that Rosamond's affection for me is no other, than what you your self have always testified for me. "Were Rosamond the King of the Huns daughter*, reply'd *Theodolinda*, *or were Balamir the Son of Rosamond's father you might overperswade us, but* " ———— *But*, said he impatiently interrupting her, *'tis most certain that I have sigh'd* " *and mourn'd for Hunnimonda, that I thought her dead at that very time, when I had so* " *much reason to acknowledge the Queen of the Cimbrians kindnesses. "Had you done* " *more for the Princess of the Gaths*, reply'd she, *all your performances would not have out-* " *vyed the fame of her actions. "I beseech you*, said he in a supplicating posture, *let me but* " *know what they are and do not, I conjure you, so obstinately refuse me a favour which* "you

“ you should be glad to grant me: For in so doing you have an opportunity to speak in praise
 “ of the incomparable *Hunnimonda*, and to extol a Princess whose part you take so zealously
 “ against a brother that loves you, and who without doubt is more unhappy and less guilty
 “ than you imagine. *I have not only permission*, replied *Theodolinda*, *to satisfy your desire,*
but also for a reason that you shall know at the end of my Relation, to discover to you the most se-
cret of her thoughts. Upon these words the enamoured *Balamir* impatiently listned, and the
 lovely Princess thus proceeded,

The History of Hunnimonda:

I Do not believe there is a greater proof to be found, of our uncertain knowledge of hu-
 mane affairs, than by reflecting upon *Balamir's* actions or *Hunnimonda's* government
 of her self: For in short, Brother, who would have thought that a Prince of an un-
 daunted courage, could have been subject to inconstancy, and that a Lady without any sup-
 port in foreign and remote Countries, should contemn death with such a heroick resoluti-
 on. That this Princess despoiled of her fathers fortune, should despise Empires, to preserve
 her heart for an ungrateful man, whom she beholds unfaithful in the sight of all *Europe*.
 Yes Prince, you have been both ungrateful and unfaithful, but I shall be so far from up-
 braiding you with a crime which has made so much noise, that I will only tell you the sto-
 ry of a virtue unknown, which you will consider with admiration, when you under-
 stand the particular circumstances of my relation.

Know then that your departure out of *Sarmatia*, soon appeas'd the tempest in *Mundisic's*
 breast, so that as violent as he was in all his passions, he appeared very moderate for some
 days, through the satisfaction which he received from your absence. He visited *Hunni-*
monda, he spake to her with all respect, he offer'd to remove her from the Castle of *Paziris*,
 either to *Olbia* or to any other City which she would make choice of, among all these un-
 der his jurisdiction. But the afflicted Princess gave so little ear to him, and gave him such
 cold and slight answers, that the impatient *Mundisic* slung from her in a rage, resolving not
 to endure such kind of usage, so disrespectful to a Prince of his birth. The next day un-
 derstanding that *Hunnimonda's* sadness increased, and that she did nothing but spend all her
 time at her devotions, or in reflecting upon your sorrows, he grew mad at the advantage
 which his distant and inferiour Rival had over him. Insomuch that being come to the Prin-
 cess's Apartment, *I shall not know Madam*, said he fiercely, *whether or no you will ever open*
your eyes to my pretensions, or whether the lustre of those Crowns I offer, will not overcome at length
your antipathy against me. 'Tis time Madam, 'tis time to have your reason about you, and to
yield to a Prince that can advance you to one of the most potent Thrones in the world, rather than
to preserve your heart for a Lover that cannot espouse you, but he must make you my subject. Sir,
 answered the generous *Hunnimonda*, *besides that I prefer the virtues of that Prince you men-*
tion before all the Empires in the world, it may be his conquering Sword may one day gain as ma-
ny Scepters, as you will lose by your injustice. I find then that I am no otherwise unjust but be-
cause I am in love, because I would remove a Rival from you, by whom your heart is prepossessed,
and because that notwithstanding the blindness of your passion, I strive to advance you to a glorious
fortune. The pretended fortune which you boast of, replied the Princess, is but a torment to
me, when I consider how disagreeable our humours are, and the happiness I shall meet with in the
possession of a noble heart.

Upon these words the furious Prince beheld the magnanimous *Hunnimonda*, with eyes
 enflamed with anger, but believing that time and *Balamir's* absence might work a change,
 that neither rudeness nor threatening language would ever prevail, he rather chose to depart
 than provoke a fair Princess whom he really loved. However some few days after finding that
 nothing would weaken that tender affection which she had preserved with such an immo-
 vable constancy, he alter'd his course of proceeding, and shut the generous *Hunnimonda* up
 in a very close confinement, allowing her but two Virgins to attend her in her captivity.
 While that unfortunate Princess led her life in so languishing and deplorable a manner, *Mun-*
disic came to visit her with a more serene countenance than formerly, and bluntly address-
 ing himself to her at length, *Madam*, said he, *heaven favours my designs, and taking Bala-*
mir out of the world has at last removed the obstacle, that oppos'd my pretensions and your
happiness.

At these words the Princess grew pale and turn'd away her eyes, unwilling to behold the

odious person that spake them; but afterwards hearing him confirm the dreadful news by several probable circumstances which he had framed out of his own head, she felt her strength begin to fail her, and that *Balamir's* untimely fate had shaken that courage of hers, which her own misfortunes could not move. But how charming soever the Princess appeared in her sorrows, *Mundisic* could not behold her without a certain madness which he found he could not master, so that he left her for fear of discovering the marks of his rage, and that he might not leave her in that dangerous extremity into which he had thrown her, he sent others to her by the way to contradict the news, and to tell her the improbabilities of your death. But this faithful Princess, who without doubt had never survived so great a loss, by reason of your absence only, lived in that languishing condition that would have moved a very Monster of cruelty to compassion; and seeing that time did nothing avail to mitigate her sorrows, the impatient *Mundisic* published abroad, that he was resolv'd to marry her in three days. He no sooner told her of it himself, but with her wonted Generosity, *Sir*, said she, *methinks you should not thus deceive your self, nor seek to enter into a heart which none but Balamir shall ever enjoy. Yes, Sir, that heart which I never set open to any but that Prince, I will keep close shut against all other men: nor do you take the way to move it, by seeking to rend it from your own Brother, to whom you ought to acknowledge your self obliged for so many famous Victories.* "He has won one, *spitefully replied he*, that defaces in "my mind the remembrance of all the rest: and if he be yet alive, I will surrender into "his hands all the Provinces which he has added to the Dominion of the *Huns*, provided he "will but let me reign in one place, whereof he shall never have the possession. "That "place, *resolutely answered she*, is able to hold out not only against *Mundisic*, but against all "the world; so that all your assaults be but in vain: and therefore instead of being so "obstinate in your Siege, consider how unjustly you assail an innocent affection, which "Prince *Balamir* gained by many signal services, and which your Father's consent and *Hunnimonda's* own inclinations have authoris'd. "'Tis a most ingenuous confession, *Madam*, "replied he very smartly, but to shew that I have as much privilege as you, I must tell you "that in three days I intend to marry you, and so long time I give you to prepare your "self, and to consider of it: and if then you shall refuse me that satisfaction which you "ought not to have denyed me the very moment that I demanded it, I shall take that course "which a passionate man that has all things at command can prompt his rage to make use of. "I know, *replied she*, that you can kill me, but your power as absolute as it is cannot reach "the liberty of my Soul: and for that reason I do loudly declare, that I will never be "*Mundisic's* Wife, but if you constrain me to an act which the weakness of my Sex cannot resist; I shall publickly protest against the giving my consent, that your violence will but "draw upon you the anger of Heaven, and the aversion of your people. "The Heavens, "said he, *not at all disturbed*, and our people will but blame your own blindness, and "when my perseverance has opened your eyes, you will thank my constancy that procured "you that good fortune which you so obstinately refus'd; and therefore I leave you to "consider of it, and not to flatter you, I give you this farther advertisement, that a Prince "of my humour would never use the utmost extremities, if he did not intend to reap those "advantages which he expects from thence.

He flung out of the Room after he had spoken those words, and not only continu'd firm in the resolution that he had taken, but also resolv'd to celebrate the day of his marriage with such an extraordinary solemnity, that the report thereof should come to his Rival's ears. To that purpose he sent *Bela*, one of his most trusty confidants, to the City of *Olbia*, with orders to spread the news, and to provide all things proportionable to the pomp that was intended. In the mean while, the fair and mournful Princess had no other consolation but in her devotion, and in conversing with her faithful *Zenelia*: *Alas*, said she, fetching a deep sigh, *what will become of Balamir, who is only miserable for the affection which he bears to an unfortunate Virgin! And what will become of the unfortunate Maid her self, if she remains under the power of a cruel tyrant, whose heart nothing can move, so far distant from an illustrious Prince that so well deserves her love and respect? Then letting fall certain tears from her fair eyes: Ah, Balamir, pursued he, that thou shouldst not be able to see what passes in the heart of thy beloved *Hunnimonda!* There thou wouldst find such thoughts as would not be perhaps unworthy of thine: there thou wouldst see thy virtues triumph over all the proffers of *Mundisic*: there thou wouldst lastly observe a constancy, that I am apt to think, is able to resist all the persecutions that threaten me. But now, Generous Prince, 'tis better I should suffer, without desiring that thou shouldst understand what I endure for thy sake; the comfort thou wouldst receive thereby, would but produce doleful effects, and the more doleful thy *Hunnimonda* appeared, the more sensible thou would be of thy affliction. However, *Madam*,*

replied

replied *Lyriana*, (one of those Virgins whom *Mundisic* had put to wait upon her, being the Daughter of *Cephaloneze*) you may be happy, and yet not render *Balamir* unfortunate: for if his love be real, can he be displeas'd to see you one day sitting upon the Throne of your Ancestors? And will he not prefer your advancement before his own particular satisfaction? But if he loves himself better than he loves *Hunnimonda*, may you not lawfully dispense with your esteem for him, that would persuade you to flight a Crown? "That thou shouldst so little understand me! replied she, to think that I am one who regulates the motions of my heart; otherwise than according to that real love and acknowledgment which is shewn me!" For my part, added the faithful *Zenelia*, addressing her self to *Lyriana* with a kind of disdain, I cannot think it to be the part of a generous Soul to change upon any consideration of pomp or advancement; and I am strongly perswaded that our Prince will never forget that kindness which she has for the illustrious *Balamir*, though the Prince himself out of an inconstancy, of which I cannot think him capable, should neglect her precious affection. *Lyriana* durst not reply for fear of being suspected, nevertheless it was soon discovered, that she acted only for *Mundisic's* interest.

The fair and afflicted *Hunnimonda* had spent in prayers and tears all the time which the Prince had allotted her: when upon the morning of the third day they brought her most magnificent Habits, and at the foot of the Castle they beheld the numerous Convoy that was to attend her to *Olbia*. Then *Lyriana* began to commend *Mundisic's* Magnificence; but the prudent Princess, instead of breaking out into vehement language, gave her not a word of answer, only she made it appear, that 'twas not outward pomp, or appearance of submission that could move her heart. In the mean time, *Mundisic*, attended by *Bela*, and glittering all over with Jewels and precious Stones, entred the Chamber, and notwithstanding his natural fierceness, having saluted the Princess with a very great deal of respect, Madam, said he, will you not surcease at length to oppose our common felicity? Will you not surcease at length, that we may be both as happy as our wishes can make us? Our dispositions are so different, answered she, that I cannot see that your satisfaction can ever prove the content of my mind. Methinks however, replied *Mundisic*, that if the enjoyment of *Hunnimonda* could tend to my felicity, that fair Princess should be willing to see her self established in the Throne of her Ancestors, and to be the Queen of a flourishing Nation. I willingly renounce all those glorious claims, replied the generous Princess, and provided you will but allow me that liberty which I was born to, I freely give you leave to bestow those Crowns which you offer me upon some person more ambitious. How, Madam, said he smartly interrupting her, are you still so obstinate in your denials? Will you never leave troubling the repose of a Prince that adores you? But, Sir, will you your self, answered she, never leave persecuting a Prince so worthy of your esteem, will you eternally seek to rob him of what he eternally loves? And will you never be perswaded that *Hunnimonda* would refuse the fairest Empire in the world to follow the fortune of an illustrious Prince, whose interests ought to be so dear to your self? I can never look upon that happy Rival, fiercely answered he, but as the most irreconcilable of all my Enemies: the more you love him, the more I shall hate; and I will seek him over all the world, to tear out that heart which you so unjustly prefer before *Mundisic's*: but before I leave you, I will make sure of you, and advance you to that degree you can never expect from *Balamir*. Sir, replied *Hunnimonda* with a charming languishment, I believe assuredly that you will never open my eyes to consider the advantages of such a change; and therefore if my Sex and Birth cannot prevail with your passion to be civil to the King of the Goths's Daughter, yet you cannot but remember, that *Hunnimonda's* consent is necessary for the execution of your design. I am not ignorant, replied he, of the usual formalities: but, Madam, your vanity and my quality dispense with those things at this time. In short, that we may not lose time, taking her briskly by the hand, know that I am in love, that I have all the power in my own hands, and that you must go along with me to *Olbia*, there to be married in the sight of the immortal Gods, and a multitude of people that will be there assembled at so solemn a Festival. But, Sir, said she, fear you not those immortal Gods that you are about to make witnesses of your violence?

Upon these words she not only beheld *Mundisic* with a look that would have forced pity, but also let fall some tears from those eyes whose Heavenly power you are so well acquainted withal. Those precious drops distilling from two fountains of fire that had enflamed so many noble hearts, more vehemently scorched the Breast of *Mundisic*; so that how imperious soever he was wont to be in his passions, he beheld the the charming Princess for some few moments in such a manner, as if there had been some hopes of being mollified: at what time the perfidious *Bela* addressing his speech to him, "What, Sir, said he, can such a Prince as *Mundisic* labour under such an injurious irresolution, or can you be insensible of the scandals which it will bring among your people upon your high dignity, and the

"noble reputation you have won? Loose no more time Sir, lay aside superfluous words, for when we act for advantage the violence of a provoked passion is to be pardoned, and when you are married you will be soon beloved.

The Princess looked with scorn upon so dangerous a Counsellor, disdainful to return a word of answer, and *Mundisc* who never much considered what he did, being emboldened by *Bela's* words, prepared to pull her out of the Room. But the prudent Princess no sooner saw his intention, but she went of her self to avoid uncivil usage. When she came to the Gate of the Castle, she went into the Chariot of her own accord, and suffered her self to be carried to *Olbia*, without testifying the least reluctance to follow her persecutor. True it is that there was such a mournful sadness appeared in her countenance, that neither the convoy nor the people that met her, had any power to congratulate her with their shouts of acclamation, but were so concerned to see the Princess so melancholy, that there was never less joy seen in the midst of so much magnificence. *Hunnimonda* was not contented to publish to the world the occasion of her discontents, but being entred into the Palace that was prepared for her she took *Mundisc* aside, and with a majesty that would have humbled pride it self, *Prince of the Huns*, said she, *I should not fear the power thou hast over me, did the religion of my Country allow me to put an end to my misfortunes by a voluntary death. But know withal, that though I must submit my life to the disposal of Providence, yet heaven permits me to be absolute Mistress of my liberty: And therefore never expect that I should submit to a yoke, whose weight you have made me feel so heavy before you could impose it. And therefore carry me as often as you please, to the Temple where we are expected, I will declare before your Gods and your people, that I no way give my consent, nay I will speak it so loud and with such a resolution, that I shall have the consolation to see the whole crowd look upon you with horror, when they shall behold me with that compassion, which any heart but *Mundisc's* would afford me.*

At this very passage *Balamir* sigh'd, he felt his eyes moist, and he had certainly interrupted *Theodolinda*, had not his admiration of *Hunnimonda's* resolution kept him silent, while *Theodolinda* pursued her story.

The Princess said she, had no sooner spoken these words, but the Prince of the *Huns's* courage was somewhat shaken notwithstanding his natural savageness; but a few minutes after the heat of his passion, the violence of his humour, *Bela's* advice and his resentment of a denial, transported him beyond all the respect which ought to have proceeded from his love, and now the Princess must be led to the Temple as a victim to the slaughter. She was no sooner come thither, but *Bela* who knew her constancy to be immovable, put her into a place encompassed with great Balisters, together with *Mundisc* and some faithful Officers. As for his part he sat a horseback at the head of a great number of the Guards, to keep off the people, while the Priest who was at the Prince of the *Huns* devotion, was ready to begin the ceremony. But he no sooner advanced toward *Hunnimonda*, when she undertaking to speak, with such a presence as would have inspired respect into the most barbarous breast, *You are now to make it appear before all the world*, said she, *whether you must respect the sacred commands of the Gods, or your own terrestrial interest: The Gods whom you serve forbid you to put any force upon my will, *Mundisc* commands you to do an act of violence, are you now to consider what course to take, or dare you prefer the injustice of a Tyrant whom you ought to abhor, before those laws which require your adoration?*

Those words pronounced with a Majesty so formidable, begat astonishment in all that stood by, so that they stood with their eyes fixed upon the ground, when the impatient *Mundisc* offended at their behaviour and silence, threaten'd the Priest with a menacing look, and turned toward *Hunnimonda* to have upbraided her in her misery: but his fury was disarm'd when he beheld her fair face, that was the innocent cause of his rage. He observed how the lovely Carnation that enlivened her cheeks, gave way to the paleness that came in place, and there was also a languishment in *Hunnimonda's* eyes, that convinced him of her indisposition. In short the Princess swooned away, not being able to endure your absence nor the indignities of *Mundisc*: The Prince who really loved her, fearing she might dye should he finish the ceremony, instead of venturing any farther caused her to be carried back to the Palace, and to take all the care imaginable to restore her to her health. In the mean time *Bela* to blind the people, told them that the Marriage was done, but that the reason why there were no acclamations nor no shouting, was because the Princess was sick with her journey.

This, Brother, was the ground of the report of *Mundisc's* being married to *Hunnimonda*, though that fair Princess has always continued faithful to you, so that *Mundisc* having try'd all ways which he thought proper to gain her affection in vain, abandon'd himself to whatever despair could inspire into a Lover of so violent a humour, that saw himself despised.

I know he had often an intention to have sheathed his sacrilegious Dagger in her bosom, nor did any thing divert him from that barbarous design, but that he would not put an end to the sufferings of a person that was the cause of his. But in short he return'd to *Pasris*, carrying *Hunnimonda* along with him although at that time very ill, and after he had warned her with all the reproaches and threatnings which his fury could devise, he departed from thence in a proud disdain, and thinking to use the Princess yet more unmercifully, he left the surly *Bela* to command the Castle and obey his orders. After he was gone, his creature did but too exactly obey a Prince, from whom he expected all his advancement, and having shut up *Hunnimonda* in a very close imprisonment, some few days after he came to see her, with this insolent language in his mouth. *Troth Madam*, said he, *I cannot but admire your conduct, and rejoyce to see you in that condition which you have so earnestly sought after. I confess you have marvellously prospered in your designs, for being resolved to contemn grandeur and despise a Prince that proffers you so many diadems, you could not have advanced your self with more honour.*

Upon these words the generous Princess losing some part of her moderation, *Insolent fellow*, disdainfully answered she, *Is this the respect which thou shewest to my birth, and to that which fortune cannot take from me? Open thy eyes and behold the Daughter of the King of the Goths, whom thou unjustly detainest a Prisoner by the command of a Tyrant, and if thou hast a mind to proceed to extremity with Hunnimonda, pierce, pierce this heart which I have denied to thy Master, and I will rather pardon thee that murder than thy want of respect.*

She pronounced these words with so much Majesty and such a lofty Air, that *Bela* as audacious as he was was forced to look down, so true it is that Royal Personages bear that character about them, which awes the rest of the world with Fear and Submission. Thus *Mundisc's* Agent retired notwithstanding the violence of his humour, but he was no sooner out of the Chamber, but having lost that veneration which *Hunnimonda's* presence inspired in to him, he felt himself transported with rage, and more transported than before to second the intentions of a despairing Lover. Thereupon he began to put a thousand indignities upon that fair and great Princess, he allowed her but two Chambers and a Closet, he fixed grates to the windows so strong and close, that it was impossible for the unfortunate *Hunnimonda* to see or be seen. He kept a constant Guard at the door night and day, and for fear the Princess might corrupt any of his Soldiers, he took from her all her money and her jewels, all her books wherewith she was wont to divertise her mind, and the use of pen and paper. Yet could not that *Barbarian* hinder her, but that sometimes she felt some certain motions of joy, when she called to mind that she suffered all this for your sake. *Balamir* was all her consolation, the name of *Balamir* was always in her mouth, and the only belief that *Balamir* was faithful to her, stirred up in her heart those motions of tenderness, that turned her sorrows into real pleasures. Nevertheless a life so deplorable could not have long endured, had not her heart sustained her body, and *Zenelia* had sunk under the burthen of fatal a melancholy, had not her affection for her illustrious Mistress, produced the same effect in her soul, as that constant courage which was so admired in *Hunnimonda*. Yet then did that Princess appear no less charming than ever, and there was something of tranquillity still in her countenance, only your absence troubled her repose, that was more harsh to her than her confinement. And those pains which she thought you suffered, more sensibly afflicted her than all her own sufferings.

As for *Lyriana* who was only shut up with *Hunnimonda* to serve *Mundisc*, upon hopes of some great preferment, she soon grew weary of such a melancholy life, seeing how much in vain she laboured for the Prince, from whom she expected her reward: Inasmuch that she desired leave to return to *Cephaloneze*, but *Mundisc* unwilling to leave any stone unturn'd, obstinately refused her. Thereupon out of meer madness and for the inconveniences that she suffered every day, she fell into a disease which proved mortal. But though *Hunnimonda* and *Zenelia* had then more liberty to talk of you, than before a person that they knew to be treacherous, yet the generous Princess could not forbear to pity *Lyriana*, though she were a confidant of *Mundisc's*.

In the mean while there was a hot Alarm in that part of *Sarmatia*, for the report ran that *Agathysus* was return'd into his Father's Kingdom, and that he was marching with a formidable Army to regain those places, which the *Huns* had taken during his abode in *Asia*. *Mundisc* who was really a person of a very lofty courage, was fully resolv'd to defend his conquests that had cost so much blood. But he was strangely hamper'd when he found himself oblig'd to send to Court for orders: For in regard he was not much in the King's favour, that he had but few friends, and that the greatest part of the *Huns* were devoted to your service, he was afraid lest you should be sent for to command the Army to his prejudice,

nor could he tell who to pick out to send to *Alba Julia*: some were more capable, others more zealous. At first he cast his eyes upon *Keza*, whose merit and valour you know. But besides that, he did not like the honesty of that good man, he was afraid to call him from his command at such a time. On the other side, believing himself to be hated by all the *Huns*, he was unwilling to trust any one of that Nation, and therefore pitched upon *Saturninus* a *Roman*. That Stranger was a person of wit and courage, and which rendered him the more acceptable, he had only served under himself, and had never known you. However, the Prince changed his mind, when he considered that *Saturninus* had little or no acquaintance at *Alba Julia*: so that at length no person pleased him like *Bela*; and yet his unwillingness to take him from *Paziris*, kept him in a cruel suspense; but still there was a necessity of powerful recruits to defend a Country that was to be so vigorously attacked. In the mean while, the fair Princess and her faithful *Zenelia* spent their time usually in talking of you and your condition; when on a sudden they heard the Trumpets sound, and the noise of several great Bodies of Horse upon the march, *Zenelia* was very glad, imagining that no change could happen so bad, that it was not to be wished for: Pray God, said she to *Hunnimonda* more than usually merry, *it be not Prince Balamir come to set us at liberty!* *Ab*, *Zenelia*, answered the Princess, *canst thou flatter thy self with a hope so far distant from probability. 'Tis but too true I fear me, that Balamir is dead, or at least not in those Countries that have been so fatal to him: I knew his heart, I knew his affection; and I make no question but he believes that Mundisic has married Hunnimonda, and has thereupon renounced all the interests in the world.*

I had renounced them indeed, cryed the enamoured *Balamir*: *but alas, some secret fatality has inspired into me a tenderness for the Queen of the Cimbrians, notwithstanding the passion which I have always preserv'd for my divine Hunnimonda.*

The Princess of the *Goths* had no sooner made some such kind of reflection, pursued *Theodolinda*, but she fell into a deep meditation upon what she had to say, so that *Zenelia* being desirous to abate some part of her melancholy, *Madam*, said she, *what can fall out, from whence we may not hope for some ease of those miseries which cannot be multiplied. If the King of the Huns recover the Country which is at Mundisic's devotion, will not your fortune then change with all the advantage you can wish for. On the other side, if the Prince of the Sarmatians regain the same Country which the Huns possess in his Territories, will it not be to your satisfaction to leave the tyranny of Mundisic for the protection of Agathyrus?* But, *Zenelia*, replied she, fetching a deep sigh, *should I recover my liberty, should they set me upon the Throne of my Ancestors, what good would all those felicities do me without Balamir? For if that Prince be dead, what is there more for me to wish? For my part,* replied *Zenelia*, *I cannot imagine that Balamir would make away with himself, how great soever his torments were, so long as yours lasted. But dost thou believe,* replied the Princess, *that there is any way to make publick Hunnimonda's destiny? I will make it known my self,* replied *Zenelia* with a confident utterance, *for the march of so many Troops cannot be disadvantageous to my Princess.*

Having so said, she sought always to bring about her purpose; but not being able to find any, by reason that she could neither call, nor be seen out at a window, she cut of a picce of Sheet-Lead that lined some part of the Room, and with her Bodkin, instead of a Graver, she wrote those words,

WHo ever you are that pass by these Walls a foot, know that Heaven has not brought you this way, but only that you may have the Honour to free the fair, but unfortunate *Hunnimonda*. She has been several Months confined in this Castle, and the unjust *Mundisic*, the Ravisher that tyrannizes over her, dayly puts innumerable Indignities upon her. That's enough for you to understand, if you are but sufficiently generous to attempt her deliverance.

When she had written those words, she threw the piece of Lead out at Window, with such a force, that the ditch not being very broad, the Lead fell into the great high way, where the Troops were to march. It happened also by good luck, that *Saturninus*, whom I have mentioned already, was then near the place, and saw the Lead fall; who thereupon taking it presently up, read what *Zenelia* had written, and immediately resolved to serve a Princess so unworthy to suffer what she endured. But knowing himself not in a condition to set her free without assistance, and being acquainted with *Keza's* Generosity, who rode over to that famous *Hun*, who lay quartered at this side *Paziris*, and shewed him what he had found, as a motive to take *Hummimonda's* part: *Keza*, who from his heart detested the violences of *Mundisc*, who was overjoyed at such an opportunity to serve the Princess, and *Saturninus* having promised to second his diligence, they consulted together what course to take to bring their design to perfection. *Saturninus* went back to his Squadron, and coming with all speed to *Olbia*, whither *Mundisc* was arrived some days before, he went and paid his respects to that Prince whose esteem he had already gain'd. On the other side, *Keza* went to the Castle of *Paziris* to visit *Bela*, and was by him received with all the honour and all the demonstrations of joy that could be shewn to a Knight of his Quality and Reputation. Now in regard it was very proper to talk of the great preparations against the next Spring, it was not long ere the two *Huns* fell to discourse upon that subject, and *Keza* beginning according to his design: *I believe, Sir, said he, that being in so great favour with the Prince of the Huns as you are, you will hardly leave this Castle to take a Command in the Army, otherwise the war which is generally the spring of honour and reward, would become prejudicial to you on which side soever the victory falls; for if Agathyrus be Victor, then you will lose your command; if Mundisc conquer Agathyrus, he will be sure pursue his victory, and so Paziris will be inconsiderable, ceasing to be a Frontier Town.* *Bela* listened very attentively, and *Keza* finding him begin to waver, continued his speech to this effect, *Do you not think, said he, that all commands that are near the person of the Prince are not to be preferred before those that are at a great distance, how important soever their services may have been? For my part, I am of opinion, that no great Officer can be in any security that follows not the Court; for they are subject every moment to be destroyed by a word or two spoken to their prejudice. I agree to what you say, answered Bela, and therefore it is not without reason that I am troubled to see my self shut up in this Fort, when every body else is in the Field. But, Sir, I hope you will not refuse me your assistance, having given me your advice, rather that you will stand my Friend to obtain that leave which I shall entreat you to beg of your Prince in my behalf. It will be no difficult thing for you to obtain your wishes; nor will it be a hard matter in such a numerous Army to find out employments more proper for you, nor difficult for him to find out persons more fitting for this courage. It may be, answered Bela, it will not be so easy as you think for, to find out a person fitting to be entrusted with this Castle, and you will confess as much when you shall understand that the Fort is not so considerable as what I keep therein by Mundisc's command.*

Having so said, he looked upon *Keza* more earnestly than before, and being well acquainted with his sincerity, he made no scruple to declare to him all the concerns of his fair prisoner the Princess. Upon those words, the General of the *Huns* dissembled the surprize which it was convenient for him to shew in his face; and then resuming his discourse with more earnestness than before: "Having told me what you have done, said he, there is no dallying any longer in the case; for besides that in the Army you will serve your Master with more honour, than in spending your time with his unjust passions: most certainly while you persecute *Hummimonda*, you will but draw upon your self the King's displeasure, *Balamir's* anger, and *Mundisc's* contempt, when better thoughts have opened his eyes; it may be all Generosity is not quite extinguished in his Soul; and though the Prince should be so unhappy as not to be capable of so fair a virtue, are you therefore to renounce it your self? Would it not better become you to appear with your Sword in your hand in a Battel fighting for the honour of our Nation, than to be doing poor offices which nobody dares mention; So far will you be from receiving those applauses which are due to noble actions?"

Instead of saying any more, taking notice that *Bela* was sufficiently convinced, he only then discoursed him after what manner he should steer his course in so ticklish a conjuncture, and having consulted with him how to carry on his own design, he left *Paziris* without so much as asking to see *Hummimonda*, guelling that such a visit might create a suspicion, should it be known that he had made it, whereas he might be otherwise more serviceable to the Princess.

After this, *Keza* attended very diligently upon *Mundisc*, and he had not been with him

above three days before he received a Letter from *Bela*, as they had agreed at *Paziris*, conjuring him to second the petition which he had sent to *Mundisic* for an employment. The Prince seem'd very much perplexed what answer to make to a person who was first to be prepared before he could speak. But having a great esteem for *Keva*, in regard the noble Knight spake to him in the behalf of the Governour of *Paziris*, he made no scruple to trust him with his secret, to the end he might more justly consult him in an affair of so much importance: *For my part, Sir*, said the General of the *Huns*, *I should never stand to remove a person from a charge of which he professes himself weary; nor would I stay till his fidelity were corrupted by his stomaching a denial.* But, *Keva*, replyed the Prince somewhat disturbed, *who is there among all the Huns whom I can entrust to secure the Queen of the Goths?* There *Keva* paused a while, but afterwards the better to carry on his design, *'Tis very true, Sir*, replyed he, *there are very few in our Nation that may not be tempted to restore the Princess to her Father, in hopes of a reward which Prince Balamir may be forward enough to promise: but, Sir, cannot you think of an honest Officer that has no relation to our Court. I know one*, replyed the Prince, *that I think very fit to succeed Bela: but in regard he is a Stranger, and has no tie in our Country, you cannot believe it safe to commit the fortune of the Princess I adore to such an one.* *It may be said as well, Sir*, replyed the Knight, *that the quality of a Stranger can give no suspicion in this case. For in short, the Princess of the Goths is not in a condition to gain an Officer by presents: nor is it probable she can ever persuade him, by letting her go to renounce the recompense which he may be may expect from your liberality.* *Mundisic* made some kind of reflection upon that discourse, and retorting afterwards all of a sudden: *You speak reason*, said he to the General of the *Huns*, *and I think Saturninus to be a very fit person to be entrusted with a charge as precious to me as my life.* *I confess*, said *Keva*, *that Saturninus really deserves to be chosen out for such an employment, and there is no question but he will very faithfully acquit himself.*

He had no sooner spoken those words, but the *Italian* entred into *Mundisic's* Chamber, who having determined to bestow the Government of *Paziris* upon him, received him after a most obliging manner. He declared his intentions to him, he instructed him in all things that he could possibly think or imagine to tell him; and in a few days he dispatched him away to supply *Bela's* place, whom he sent for into the Army. *Saturninus* had no sooner taken possession of the Castle where *Hunnimonda* was imprisoned, but he behaved himself as respectfully toward the Princess, as *Bela* had carried himself rudely; and coming often to comfort her, he found something that was very amiable in *Zenelia's* face. He was also taken with that fidelity which the Generous Virgin shewed to her Mistress; and he had discovered his thoughts to her, but that considering the place he held, and the condition to which *Zenelia* was reduced, the more power he had to speak, the more it became him to be respectful and wary. However, his eyes, his complaisance, his passionate diligence, which could not be the effects of an indifferent love, gave her to understand that her charms had subdued *Saturninus's* liberty: nor was the lovely Maid, as modest as she was, troubled at all to perceive the effects of her Beauty, not only for that *Saturninus* was both virtuous and deserving, but above all that she might thereby be serviceable to the unfortunate Princess.

One day that this same Knight met with a favourable opportunity to entertain the person whom he loved: "How much to be dreaded are you, said he, most charming *Zenelia*, you reign where you are not at liberty your self, and *Saturninus* wears your Fetters in a place where all the world acknowledges his authority." "You will not easily persuade me to such a belief, replyed she, for as long as I am in *Mundisic's* prison, I shall never believe that any person wears my Fetters that has power to break my chains." "I could resolve to break them, replyed *Saturninus*, but after all, how unjust soever *Mundisic* be, ought I not to remember that he has entrusted me with all that is dear to him in this world? And is it not lawful for me to wish that you might recover your liberty without any blemish to my honour? You are too prudent for a person that professes so great a passion, slightly replyed she, but since you take part with tyranny, and that the interests of our persecutors are so dear to you, never come—" "Ah, too severe Princess, answered he, impatiently interrupting her, why interpret you my words with so much cruelty? And why do you so bloodily reproach me, when out of a thought that you cannot but approve, I only fear to lose your esteem by proffering a kindness? To cure you of that scruple, replyed *Zenelia*, consider that *Mundisic* is no Prince of yours, that you give weapons to a mad man, by obeying him so exactly; and that if you are engaged to preserve *Paziris* for him, all the Laws dispense with your being an instrument of his inhumanity." "In a word, I beg at your hands the Princess's liberty, tell me whether I may expect it. or

“if——” Yes yes, you shall have it, *cryed he interrupting her in a very passionate manner,* “for there is nothing that *Saturninus* can refuse the amiable *Zenelia*, but I beseech you *Madam*, let us be careful how we undertake an enterprize of this nature. *Mundisic* is in love, it may be he has spies upon me, and I am certain that the *Garison* is not all so much under my command, as publickly to give you your liberty. However deny me not your advice, and let the noble flame which you have kindled in my heart, enlighten my invention and shew me the way which I am to take, at such a ticklish conjuncture as this. *Zenelia* glad to see her Lover so well enclined, *Generous Saturninus*, said she, *I was not at all deceiv'd in my hopes when I observed your civil behaviour, I believed, I told the Princess, that heaven was at length moved with our misfortunes, since it had put into your hands the government of the place of our captivity. 'Tis your part to make good my belief, and mine to seek after all means that may bring our designs to a good issue. Do you your duty, and be assured that Zenelia's heart shall never fail of acknowledgment.*

'Twas about this time that they feared *Lyriana* would dye, so that her indisposition increasing they wrote to *Mundisic*, that the health of the Princess was in some danger. The Prince was really afflicted at it, and in regard his passions did partake of the impetuosity of his temper, he would have quitted all things to have returned to *Hunnimonda*; had not *Keza* who corresponded with *Zenelia* and *Saturninus*, taken great care to divert him. He represented to the Prince that the very sight of him, might cause new troubles in the Princess, and that his presence would prove as hurtful at *Paziris*, as it was necessary at *Olbia*, where was the general Rendezvous of all the Army. Besides the *Sarmatians* making inroads upon all that side of the Country, he laid before him that there could be no safety for him, unless he took along with him the greatest part of his forces, but that at that time it would be of dangerous consequence to divide the Army. At length he persuaded the Prince who was pretty well satisfied, that his going to *Paziris* would signify little. But some few days after *Keza* was harder put to it, to manage his impatience, as you shall hear.

Lyriana's sickness encreasing, that poor Victim to *Mundisic's* passion dyed, notwithstanding all the remedies that were used for her recovery: The Princess and *Zenelia* who were truly generous, were sorry for her death; but when *Saturninus* and his Lieutenant came in haste to see her before she expired, *Zenelia* was nothing sorry that he beheld more sorrow in her face, than she might probably be sensible of. She met them and beginning her speech after an ingenious manner, in language which *Hunnimonda* might as well have uttered as *Lyriana*, she still spoke nothing contrary to truth. You see Sirs, said she, *that only death can put a period to our miseries, and hereby you may judge what we are to expect from Mundisic, when a person that was so dear to him or else ought to have been so, could not break those chains, which that unjust Prince had put upon her Arms, but by breaking the bonds of life. But for your parts I cannot think you so hard-hearted, as to suffer the unhappy Captives that survive, so miserably to perish, and I hope that when you give Mundisic an account of what has happened, you will both put in a good word for two persons, whose acknowledgment may not be contemptible.*

After she had so said she pulled her veil over her eyes, and retiring to the farther end of the Chamber, she gave the Officer that was with *Saturninus*, liberty to confirm himself in the opinion which he had already conceived, that the Princess was dead. *Herderic*, for so was he called, was one of those Soldiers of fortune, who knew nothing but what concerns their trade, insomuch that never having had any inclination to visit Ladies, he never had seen those at *Paziris*, nor knew so much as their faces. *Saturninus* who was well assured thereof, failed not to second *Zenelia's* intentions, and so walking with *Herderic* toward the fair Maid, *Madam*, said he, *I know you can procure us friends at the Court of Alba Julia, and that Prince Balamit will never let those kind offices which we have done for you go unrewarded, But though we should not interest our selves in your concerns at this time upon those considerations, yet humanity it self which as not altogether left us in the Army, persuades us to take your part, and to assist you in the change of your fortune, and without doubt it must of necessity change: For besides that 'tis very improbable that the Prince should trouble himself in vain, to give me any order to the contrary, I believe he will be too sadly afflicted, when he shall upbraid himself to have been the cause of the Princesses death, to have any thoughts of persecuting those Virgins that served her: so that you may be absolutely assured, Madam, that I shall leave nothing undone to procure your liberty, from this captivity which you have so long suffered. Herderic who pities the desolation that we behold is going for *Olbia*, he will see the Prince, and after he has made a faithful relation of what has happened, he will not fail to add a few prayers, to the petition I shall make in your behalf.* After this communication *Saturninus* and *Herderic* departed: And the

Roman Knight wrote both to the Prince and *Keua*, the Letter to the Prince being to this effect.

Saturninus to the Prince of the Huns.

SIR, the news that you will receive will be so lamentable and so doleful, that I have not the heart to mention it, and I had rather you should understand it from Herderic's mouth, than be the publisher my self. He will let you understand the loss that you have sustained notwithstanding all your care, and therefore seeing that this change will cause you to alter your resolutions, I expect your commands which I shall obey with more zeal, than I had an inclination to afflict you

This Letter and the Relation that followed were so terrible to *Mundisc*, and excited such a redoublement of love in his heart, that the Prince suffering himself to be guided by the impetuosity of his temperament, was about to have left all things at six and sevens, to post to the place where he thought he might still view the body of *Hunnimonda*. *Keua* laboured very hard to divert him from a design so much to be feared, but seeing all his entreaties and all his arguments nothing availed, he resolved to oppose a violent passion with a smart resentment. "Sir, said he, I beseech you consider and do not leave the Army, do not run to *Paziris* only to see a dead Corpse, which can be nothing but a spectacle of horror: But this is not all Sir, will you go weep over a Victim wholly devoted to your Rival? Can you testify your self so highly afflicted for a person, that chose rather to dye miserable for *Balamir*, than to live sitting upon your Throne? Ah no no, *Keua*, replied he transported with jealousy, no longer will I bewail that ingrateful person, that has preferred *Balamir* before me with so much obstinacy and boldness.

Having so said he held his peace, but a few moments after love and grief inspiring him, "Why, pursued he staring with his eyes, why should I not bewail the death of a fair Princess, that I my self have brought to her grave. "Yes, added he sighing, 'twas I that was the cause of her death, 'twas my inhumanity that held a dagger to her breast, so far from admiring her constancy, that I used all the tyranny I could to shake it. After all this who can condemn my affliction for having been so barbarous, for having been the murderer of *Hunnimonda*?

He spoke with so much vehemency, that at length his grief, the agitation of his mind, and the heat of his temper excited such troubles in his heart, that they almost disturbed his reason: Inasmuch that instead of thinking any more upon going to *Paziris*, he fell into a rambling discourse, wherein he often confusedly mentioned the names of *Hunnimonda*, *Balamir* and *Keua*. Sometimes he asked pardon of you as well as the Princess, for the misfortunes he had occasioned to both. These transportations of mind endured for three or four days, and had weakned him in such a manner, that he was not only not in a condition to take a journey at that time, but his impetuosity waxing less violent, he began to give ear to *Keua* and to follow his advice: So soon therefore as the generous Knight took notice of the Calm, which the abatement of heat and want of strength had produced in the breast of *Mundisc*, he drew near the Prince and in mournful language, "Sir, said he, 'tis not my business now to oppose your desire to see *Hunnimonda*. By this time you cannot but think, that her Corps can be no other than a ghastly spectacle, and therefore instead of taking a journey to no purpose, were it not better to send order for the funeral of that Princess, whose death you so lament? Is not your resentment dead with her, or can it hinder you from paying to the deceased *Hunnimonda*, the last tribute due to mortality? "No *Keua*, no, answered the Prince, for I will erect a magnificent Monument in memory of that admirable Princess, and engrave upon her Tomb all the marks of my love and grief. This is all I can do, and this is all that remains for me to do for the fair and unfortunate *Hunnimonda*. Yes, replied *Keua*, you may do her one kind office more, and that is by giving the two Virgins that served her their liberty. However Sir, added he very politickly, 'tis for your interest to send out of our Territories such persons, as I believe have no kindness at all for you, who in bewailing their Mistress will talk of your rigor after such a manner, as will make but bad impressions in the hearts of all that hear them: And in my opinion 'tis no way convenient, that a people who are one day to live under your laws, should have their ears filled with complaints, which they may take for acts of your injustice. You

“speak

“ speak reason, *replied Mundisc*, I think it absolutely necessary that *Zenelia* be sent out
 “ of the dominions of the *Huns*, but I think there is no such necessity but *Lyriana* may stay.
 “ Oh Sir, you cannot imagine, *said he*, that *Lyriana* will ever applaud the ill usage she re-
 “ ceived at your hands during her confinement, (so she termed her abode at *Paziris*) for you
 “ know that although she took your part all the while she lay sick, you would not give her
 “ leave to return to *Cephaloneze* for the recovery of her health: And in regard she never fa-
 “ voured the Princess, her complaints will be less suspected and more dangerous than
 “ *Zenelia's*.

Mundisc having made a short reflection upon *Keza's* words, “ I will follow your advice;
 “ *said he*, so that we are now only to consider whom to trust, for the conveying those two
 “ Virgins away. That's a thing very easie to determine, *replied Keza*, for I conceive that
 “ *Saturninus* being a person so conceited of his own Country that he despises all others, will
 “ not think much to return into *Italy*, and to carry along with him such persons, as they
 “ that shall oblige him by the effects of your liberality.

Mundisc pleased with what the General of the *Huns* had said, sent very considerable pre-
 sents to *Saturninus*, made him larger promises, and charged him to convey away quite out
 of our dominions, both *Zenelia* and *Lyriana*. The Roman Knight full of love and genero-
 sity, was overjoyed to receive those orders which he so ardently waited for, and then which
 the Princess desired nothing more but that they should be quickly executed, for she had no
 mind to stay in those Provinces, where she might fall again under the power of *Mundisc*.
 Besides she had a great desire to see me, believing she might live with her dear *Theodolinda*,
 with more comfort and with more reputation, than with any other person in the world.
 But before her departure she was willing that *Saturninus* should receive his reward, for be-
 sides that the fortune of the Roman who was of a noble extraction, would thereby be well
 fixed in the world, she wisely thought it inconvenient to undertake so long a journey with
 him, till *Zenelia* and he were mutually affianc'd together.

After that she deemed it necessary to change her name, in regard her own was so well
 known over all *Europe*, but here, Brother, we may admire the quick invention which her ten-
 der affection toward you inspired into her: She never studied for the choice of a name but
 presently called her self *Balamira*, pleased that she should always hear your name repeated,
 while she was called by her own. True it is that when she came into *Saturninus's* Coun-
 try, the *Italians* more polite than our Nations, accustomed themselves to call her *Bellamira*,
 as being more soft in pronunciation. And thus brother, by that only name you may un-
 derstand already, the greatest part of those Adventures, which yet remain for me to
 relate.

How Sister, said *Balamir* interrupting her, is it possible that the divine *Hunnimonda* should
 call her self *Bellamira*, through an effect only of that kindness wherewith she honoured *Balamir*?
 'Twas only by a motive of that very affection, Brother, that she chose that name which has been so
 famous in the world, and only under that name has she done so many great and obliging actions,
 for your sake. I know confusedly, *replied he*, that *Honorius* saw *Bellamira* in *Trajan's* gar-
 den, that he became desperately in love with her, and that his favourite *Heraclian* was enamour-
 ed of that incomparable Princess, with the same violence of passion. I have also heard of the
 famous revolt of that Roman, and of his carrying *Hunnimonda* away by force: I have also been
 convinced that if the divine *Hunnimonda's* Soul, were too large for the Empires that were of-
 fered her, her courage appeared yet more heroick, when that generous Lady alone unarm'd in an
 enemies Country slew her Ravisher, to defend her honour which she infinitely priz'd beyond her
 life. Well then, *replied Theodolinda*, I shall but lightly touch upon those particulars, which
 fame has already brought to your knowledge, and dilate only upon those which I am sure you ne-
 ver heard of.

So soon as the incomparable *Hunnimonda*, (whom I shall call hence forward by the name
 of *Bellamira*) had passed the *Alpes*, I was advertised thereof by her own order, and she was
 no sooner arrived at a house, which *Saturninus's* Father had built near *Trajan's* garden, but
 I made hast thither with that impatience and joy which I cannot express. Immediately we
 ran to each other, we threw our Arms about each others necks, and thus we stood for a
 good while mutually embraced, not having the power to speak, while the tears which af-
 fection and the remembrance of our past misfortunes drew from our fair eyes, trickled down
 our checks. Dear Sister, cryed I at length, am I certain that I see you again, and that you
 are that incomparable *Hunnimonda*, who has been dead in the opinion of all the world? So she
 be not dead in *Theodolinda's* breast, answered she, nor in *Balamir's* heart, she troubles not her
 self with the rest of all the world.

Pronouncing those words she embraced me with all her strength, and beheld me with

charming eyes that have enthralled so many illustrious Hero's. Afterwards there pass'd some complements which are usual upon the first interview, but ere we came to a conclusion you were all the subject of our discourse. *Balamir* only was the subject of our communication and our disquiet, we enquired of each other what news concerning him, as fearful as earnest to know what was become of him, and not being able either of us to resolve the question, we both of us sigh'd at the same time, though both for different reasons. In short, I must confess that the sadness which appeared in my face, was far less obliging than the passionate languishment that I saw in her fair eyes, and I farther observed that she must be a good Sister indeed, that was so deeply sensible of the loss of a brother, as she was of the loss of a Lover. Yet was *Bellamira* so far from being happy, that on the contrary she had no other content, but what she received from my company, which it was impossible for me to afford her so often as I intended. And therefore when I could not dispense from being at Court or with the Princess *Placidia*, the Queen of the *Goths* spent her time in *Trajan's* Garden, either meditating upon the banks of *Tyber*, or else retired within some solitary grove adjoining: One day that I went to *Saturninus's* house later than I was wont, she not expecting me, was gone to walk where her melancholy for your absence led her.

Honorius who at that time had some thoughts upon me, came to look for me at *Saturninus's* house, but seeing *Hunnimonda* as you have heard already, he fell so deeply in love with her, that the violence of his passion seem'd to exceed the ordinary humour of that Prince, whose temper you know has a softness too mean for the offspring of *Theodosus*. This passion whatsoever it were at the beginning, encreas'd to such a degree in a few days, that *Honorius* fondly offer'd her his Empire, before he knew so much as her extraction. But the magnanimous Princess was so far from accepting such a splendid present, that it was the only satisfaction which she then enjoyed, that she had refus'd one of the most glorious Thrones in the world for the love of *Balamir*.

True it is, that though she had never told me what she had refus'd, to the great astonishment of all the Court, yet was I not ignorant of any circumstance of that noble denial, so that I went to *Hunnimonda*, and as soon as I saw her, I ran to her and embraced her with a redoubled affection. Dear Sister, said I to her in a kind of extasie that I could not moderate, *By what means can the fortunate Balamir ever requite what you have done for his sake? Ah Sister*, answer'd she, *you are too good natur'd, Alas what have I done to merit that acknowledgment which you speak of, and the inestimable caresses of your favour? I confess*, reply'd I after an ironical manner, *'tis no great wonder for a person of our Sex to crave death, and for a Princess despoil'd of the fortune of her Ancestors, to refuse the Empire of the greatest part of the world. But after all*, added I seriously, *though you have forgot that Bellamira did all this, you must not think to hinder all the world, and future Ages from preserving it in memory. Though it were true*, reply'd she, *that I had shew'd some constancy of courage, how do you know Sister whether Prince Balamir would be more oblig'd to me, than I should be beholding to him? For in short*, said she with a pleasing smile accompanied with a modest blush, *I should never believe Balamir to be fix'd in my heart as he is, were there any thoughts there that could displease him, or be unworthy of his esteem.*

Thus the affectionate and generous *Bellamira*, made her self a debtor to you for the kindness which she continually shew'd you, and not only refus'd the first degree of honour in the world with an admirable constancy, but what was more extraordinary in a heart like hers, she resist'd the very tears of *Honorius*. That Son of the great *Theodosus* wept a hundred times in vain at her feet, and without moving in the least that strong affection which she preserv'd for a Prince, of whom she could not so much as hear any tidings. Nevertheless this behaviour of *Hunnimonda* that in a manner surpris'd all *Italy*, wrought no change at all in the heart of *Honorius*, for the fair Princess still command'd with Sovereign power over the Emperours heart, as the happy *Balamir* still reign'd in hers. But at length that generous Lady mov'd with pity toward a Prince that so highly oblig'd her, strove to remove the cause of a passion so improbable to be happy in the event, and declar'd to me the resolution that she had taken, in such language as manifest'd her affection both for you and me. Dear Sister, said she embracing me, *there is an absolute necessity for us to part: The malignant Star that has persecuted me from my infancy, envying those pleasures which I tast in your company, hales me from your Arms, and to separate me from Theodolinda, convinces me that Balamir's interest commands my quick departure.* " Ah Sister, cry'd I, forbear to proceed in a design, that already so much afflicts me: For in short, though you are not able to hearken to *Honorius* in prejudice of my Brother, what need you take any course so grievous to your friends? " What, said she interrupting me with surpris'e, would you have me endure that

“any other than *Balamir* should give me proofs of his affection every moment; or that being obliged to *Honorius*, my presence should inspire such thoughts into his heart as cannot but trouble his repose? No, my Princess, cried I, I desire nothing that may give you any offence. But I must confess, added I, embracing her in my Arms, I desire your company, and there is nothing which I would not do to enjoy so great a happiness. Nevertheless, replied *Bellamira*, I do not see how it is possible for us to enjoy that satisfaction; for indeed there is an absolute necessity for me to avoid *Honorius*, seeing that though *Balamir* should never know that *Bellamira* is *Hunnimonda*, or that she had despised for his sake the chiefest Throne in the world, *Hunnimonda* must not for all that forbear to do those things which her own virtue claims from her self, with as much right as *Balamir* has reason to expect them from the most exact and scrupulous constancy.

In short, Brother, *Bellamira* was resolved to be gone; and all that I could do by my often repeated prayers and entreaties, was, to prevail that she would not depart out of *Italy*, to the end we might write one to another, and have the happiness to travel together to *Alba Julia*, when my Father should call me home. I need not tell you that the fair Princess fled to *Ravenna*, which is no more than you know, as also in a short time the Emperour followed her thither, that he might abide inseparable from her charms; whereby abandoned *Rome* became a prey to the terrible *Alaric*. But this you must know that the Emperour of the *Romans* and the Queen of the *Goths* lived in that manner together till the revolt of *Herzelian*. You have heard how that Favourite rebelled in *Africa* where he was governour, that he came to *Ravenna*, that he took away *Bellamira* by force, and that at length he was killed by the courageous *Hunnimonda*, at a time when he was about to have done her an injury less supportable than death it self. You may well guess then, Brother, what was *Theodolinda's* grief when she understood that *Bellamira* was carried away to *Carthage*, and her self separated by the Sea from a person so dear to her? I protest that all the afflictions of a Siege without any hopes of being relieved, less disturbed my mind, during *Rome's* misfortunes, than the force put upon *Bellamira*. But at length the fair Princess wrote to me, and I understood by her Letter that she was gone to *Hyppone*, there to find some consolation in the company of a renowned personage, who was called *S. Austin*, a man of great virtue and sublime wit. It was to the counsel of this prudent *African* that we owe the return of *Hunnimonda*, for she believing you were dead, would have led a languishing life in some religious retirement, never dreaming to have return'd into *Germany*, had not the holy *Austin* perswaded her to the contrary, by an inspiration that seem'd to promise more prosperity than yet we had experienced. In short, *Bellamira* and I being mutually advertis'd of the time of our departure for *Alba Julia*, and being desirous to travel together some part of the way, we appointed to meet in these Countries: *Hunnimonda* not daring to pass through *Italy*, or *Gallia*, for fear of falling again under the power of *Honorius*. But no sooner had the fair Princess, whom *Zenelia* never forsook, and whom *Saturninus* attended in *Africa*, set foot upon the *European* Shoar, but together with the news of the irreconcilable war between the *Cimbrians* and *Franks*, she also heard the fatal tydings of *Balamir's* infidelity. At first she would not believe it, but when it was confirm'd to her with all the circumstances by several persons of great reputation, nay, by the report of whole Nations, she had not power to withstand this last stroke of misfortune; even that constancy of courage, which had rendred her so famous, quite forsook her in that terrible conjuncture. That undaunted Princess that had brav'd death and fortune, could not support her self against your inconstancy: that sprightly air that enlivened her fair countenance gave place to pallid languishment; and those eyes, those lovely eyes that were wont to dart forth flames and terror, lay drown'd in tears, while she complain'd of your injustice. She usually address'd her lamentations to the generous wife of *Saturninus*; and *Zenelia* found so much reason, and felt such charms in her grief, that she could not chuse but have the same resentments of her injuries: Alas, said the disconsolate *Bellamira*, fetching a deep sigh, what crime have I committed? By which of my actions have I drawn upon my head such a crowd of dismal misfortunes? Was it not enough for me to see my Father's Throne quite overturned, but that I must be torn from the Arms of her that brought me forth? Was it not enough to be under the tyranny and imprisonment of *Mundilic*, to see his Sword bent against my Breast to sacrifice me to his rage, but the malignity of my fate must separate me from what I loved? Not the loss of Kingdoms, not all the force that has been put upon me, not all my being threatened with death, not all the attempts of my Ravishers ever came so near my heart as this last injury which I have received. Then addressing her self to you, as if you had been there, Well, ingrateful Prince, added she, I look upon thy infidelity more inhumane than all the violences of *Mundilic* or *Heraclian*. They never were beloved by *Hunnimonda*, but thou hast received the most obliging testimonies of her affection.

on. *Ab, Balamir, is it possible thou should court Rosamond for the sake of a Crown, when I for the love of thee fled from Honorius, who offered me the most splendid Throne in the world?* Then turning toward the companion of her misfortunes and her sorrows, *Ab, Zenelia, said she, what have I done that can justify Balamir's inconstancy?* *Nothing but was great,* answered she with tears in her eyes, *nothing but was heroic, nothing but what might deserve the heart of the most renowned person in the world.* *Wherefore then,* replied she, *has Balamir prov'd inconstant? Because,* said she, *you are out of sight, Rosamond still in his eyes, and because he is only a man.*

These were *Hunnimonda's* and *Zenelia's* lamentations, after they understood the news of your change. But when *Theodolinda* and she met together, *Ab, cried I, fair Princess, how charitable you are still to preserve a kindness for Balamir's Sister? but while you are sincere it behoves not me to prove unjust: I take your part against the most ingrateful of men, and wholly devote my self to your interest.* You are too generous a Friend, answered the afflicted *Hunnimonda*; but I fear you will not be thought a charitable Sister in condemning Balamir's proceedings. I confess my self, the *Queen of the Cimbrians* is more beautiful, and her fortune more splendid; and that the inconstancy of the Prince your Brother may pass rather for an effect of his judgment, than a mark of lightness.

Such as this was generally our discourse, and though we usually sought out the most retired and solitary places, yet we still met upon the Road either the Princes, or the attendants of those Princes that served in *Pharamond's* Army. *Bellamira*, who avoided all society, was troubled at it, yet this was her comfort, that she met with no person that knew her: only the other day she was somewhat surpris'd to see *Artabure* in a Country from whence she thought him far enough off. That famous Roman no sooner perceived the Princess whom he also loved, but in a most respectful manner falling upon one knee, *Divine Bellamira*, said he, *you need not fear the approach of a person that dares not draw so near with any other thoughts than those of veneration* Your beauty and your virtue have wrought quite contrary effects in mine, to what they produced in the heart of *Heraclion*: I seek after you only for my *Matter's* sake, to establish your felicity: for I have order from the Emperour, to assure you that he has not yet changed his mind. I offer you more earnestly, and with more submission than before, the Crown of the great *Theodolius*, and with that Diadem a heart whose affection and fidelity are to be preferred before all the Thrones in the world.

Those words made *Hunnimonda* sigh; she could not chuse, when she heard them, but accuse her self of injustice to *Honorius*, and be ashamed of her self, that she could not hate a person that had forgot her upon the first sight of another Beauty. Nevertheless, not all the obliging protestations which he made her on the Emperour's behalf, nor the crime of an inconstant Lover could move her heart. Still you remained there with absolute Dominion, notwithstanding your egregious levity: and *Hunnimonda* return'd for answer only certain complements of her acknowledgment both to *Honorius*, and to *Artabure*. *No, no, my Princess,* replied *Bellamira*, *these are no examples for me to imitate; if Balamir be guilty, his crime cannot justify a fault in me.* But would it not be great satisfaction, replied I, to behold from the Throne of the *Cæsars*, your Rival moving with Balamir in a lower orb?

At those words *Bellamira* blushed and sigh'd; but then with a languishing and dying tone, *Ab, my dear Sister,* pursued she, *that you should be so little acquainted with Hunnimonda's heart, and Balamir's merit! Can you believe that I should be less troubled to see Rosamond Balamir's Wife, than she would be to see me Empress of the Romans? Alas, how different are these two sorts of jealousy! Jealousie of greatness is not half so powerful in a heart like mine, which obeys no law but that of my affection.* But most heroic Princess, cried I, transported in mind, *what is it that you intend to do?* Die for grief, replied she, fetching a deep sigh, *for I can no longer live, since the ingrateful Balamir lives no longer mine.* After those sad words, she let fall some tears from those divine eyes that formerly you would have so religiously adored. Then turning them toward me, as she wept in a languishing posture that would soon have made you shake off your last chains: *Fair Princess,* continued she, *I have but one thing more to beg of that generous friendship of yours, of which you have given me so many proofs: Tell the inconstant Balamir that his infidelity cost me my life, that he sheathed a more fatal weapon in my Breast than the Sword of Mundisic: and relate to him the manner of my death with all the circumstances that may produce a repentance in him for the crime that caused it.* But, alas, replied she, redoubling her sighs, *with what vain hopes do I flatter my misfortune? No, no, my Princess, there's no talking to that fickle Lover, of Bellamira's deplorable fate; for he pursues his Courtship to Rosamond, and never mentions to her the Princess of the Goths, which as a Victim he has prepared to sacrifice to her charms.* But after

all, replied I impatiently, if Balamir be really perswaded that Hunnimonda is lost to him, either by death or marriage with Mundilic, does he not prove thereby the less guilty, and may he not at length dry up his tears upon the sight of the Queen of the Bohemians. No, said she, he could not without injustice, his heart was mine, he should have preserved it for me to the last gasp: there I ought still to have lived, notwithstanding the pretended death that separated us. Alas! who would have said that Hunnimonda, should have set Balamir an example of constancy, and that Balamir would not follow it? Ah Balamir ingrateful Balamir, how cruel art thou to the constant and disconsolate Hunnimonda, who was always thine. Ah Queen of the Cimbrians too fortunate Princess, if the ornaments of thy Soul are correspondent to the beauties of thy face, why art thou more rigorous than fortune, why hast thou deprived me of the only felicity that she left me, to comfort me for the loss of all the rest? Hast thou not renowned Captives enough to wear thy chains, but thou must covet Balamir from me? But wherefore do I always flatter myself, added she redoubling her sighs, ought I not to consider that the malignant Star that governs my unfortunate days, preserves me alive only to persecute me without ceasing? But alas my miseries are not yet compleat, inhumanity still pursues me, and that fatal constellation hurries me into a crowd of misfortunes, and provoked at the constancy which I shewed in those assaults whence it delivered me, it assails my heart upon the score of affection, to sink it into utter ruine. That fate which could not move me with the splendid proffers of Crowns and Scepters, that could not scare me with the threats of fire and sword, at length to overturn my constancy must render Balamir unfaithful, and that ungrateful person whom I cannot hate, must cease to love me.

Pronouncing those doleful syllables she turned her self toward me, in such a dying posture as would have drawn compassion from a Barbarian, and beholding me with eyes drowned in Tears, Generous Princess, pursued she, you will in a short time be freed from all these my troublesome complaints. You have not long to hear the repetition of the disconsolate Bellamira's moans, you will in a few days behold the end of her life, which she leads after a manner so deplorable.

At that part of *Theodolinda's* Relation Balamir let fall certain tears, which he had till then retained, and though he knew that *Placidia* and *Pharamond* were both in the Room with *Hunnimonda*, he rose hastily from his Seat and ran into the Princess's Chamber. True it is he was not ignorant, that the King of the *Franks* and the Queen of the *Goths* took his part, and that they were pleading for him at that very time: So that without any scruple by reason of their presence, he threw himself at *Hunnimonda's* feet ere she were well aware of him, and embracing her knees which he watered with his tears, Behold that ungrateful, cried he, behold that faithless person, who is now come either to expire at your feet by the force of his repentance, or merit a heart which you have so generously preserved for him.

At the same time the violence of many other passions stopp'd the course of his words, but *Pharamond* and *Placidia* leaving the Room, that the two illustrious Lovers might enjoy the more freedom, the enamoured Prince resuming his lamentation, Most divine Princess, said he, behold your Balamir, 'tis you that are to dispose of his destiny, must he dye for the expiation of his crime, or may he resume those splendid hopes which he once conceived by your allowance? *Hunnimonda* who could not hate the faithless Balamir, redoubled her affection for him now so passionate and repenting, and as soon as her surprise would permit her to speak, But are you then returned Balamir, cried she. I am not only returned, cried he very earnestly interrupting her, but most dear Princess, there is nothing how potent or powerful soever in the world, that shall ever separate me more from Bellamira. Will you never see Rosamond again then? replied she. Then Balamir finding something of injustice in her words, notwithstanding the violence of his love; But my dear Princess, answered he, suffer———How ingrateful, cried she smartly interrupting him, does the only name of Rosamond startle thy resolution, nay can it cause *Theodolinda* also to favour thy perfidiousness?

Having uttered these few words she threw her self into a little Closet; and clap'd the door after with that violence and hast, that neither the astonished Balamir nor the Princess of the *Huns* with all her speed could prevent it. *Theodolinda* observing the surprise that spread it self, all over the countenance of the enamoured Prince, What brother, said she somewhat discomposed, have you given the incomparable *Hunnimonda* any new cause of complaint? Or will you not tell me the reason of your trouble? Alas, replied he tetching a deep sigh, it proceeds from a misfortune that always attends me, and which doubtless will never forsake me as long as I live.

The unfortunate lover then gave an account to *Theodolinda* of what had befallen him, who being very much concerned for him, How am I vexed, said she, at the interruption you gave me, and that your impatience has thus incensed Bellamira, considering the course which I had taken to oppose her anger. Alas, abruptly answered he, I could no longer defer the joy which I expected,

expected, from the sight of my fair Princess, for certainly you would not have had me as unfortunate in this house as I was in the Forest, when my Astonishment, Hunnimonda's flight and your severity, stop'd me from the pursuit of what I adored. But Brother, replied Theodolinda, If you have those thoughts which you pretend for the Princess of the Goths, whence is it that you avoid not all occasions of displeasing her? "The Gods are my witnesses, replied he, that I had rather suffer the most cruel death in the world, than fail in the least tittle of my duty and submission: But Dear Sister (if it be lawful for me to call you so) use your endavours I beseech you to assuage the rigour of Hunnimonda's severity. She would not have me see the Queen of the Cimbrians any more, but you know how deeply I am engaged to that Princess, you know the nature of that kindness which I have for you: And therefore will you not take my part, will you not speak to Bellamira for a Prince, that would not be ungrateful to Rosamond? "Had you had but patience to the end of my Relation, said she, we had acted by consent and perhaps prosperously enough. Dear Sister, then said Balamir, for heavens sake finish your Relation, that we may try in the conclusion whether there be any remedy for this mischief that befalls me, only because I am too desperately in love.

Constance then said she, and Artabure have seen her several times, though not knowing her to be any other than the charming Bellamira, for whom Honorius had so great a passion, but whatever they could say in behalf of that Prince, they could never draw any thing from the constant Hunnimonda, but complements of acknowledgment: So that the Queen of the Goths and my self to whom the heart of that Princess was open, thought there was no better way to assuage her discontents, but by taking part with the person whom she lov'd: To which purpose Placidia seconding my intentions, I make no question, said she, but that Balamir will see his error so soon as he understands Bellamira to be Hunnimonda. But fair Princess if that fugitive Slave shakes off his criminal Chains, and resumes those Fetters which he ought to wear, shall not his repentance blot out the memory of his crime, and will not you receive a Lover justified by that very last act of his. "I must acknowledge, answered the afflicted Bellamira, that I should be very well pleased to see him change a second time, and that after he had forgot me for Rosamond's sake, he should forsake that fair Princess, and return again to an unfortunate Lady that cannot hate him. But after all, though he should highly prefer me before a Rivaless whom all the world admires, though he should return and weep at my feet for the expiation of his crime, can he persuade me that he has not been faithless, or can my love find any security in the affection of a Lover, who as all Europe knows has sigh'd for another besides Hunnimonda.

We were at this dispute, when we were told of the interview of Theon and Melusina, but Bellamira who avoided all company not being willing to be there, rather sought for privacy and solitude, among those wild and obscure parts of the Forest where you found us. At first I was as zealously incens'd against you as the Princess more justly provoked, but when I observed you so passionate for her, and so full of repentance for your fault, I took your part with so much eagerness and spoke so powerfully, that at length Hunnimonda prest by a friend that was dear to her, and for a Lover that was so lovely, declared her resolution and final determination in these words. "I find, said she, that you will never let me be at quiet, I am contented then that you shall discover to Balamir the most secret of my thoughts, that if he should forsake Rosamond and cleave entirely to me, I should hardly have the heart to send him back to the Cimbrian Camp, or to remember his inconstancy: But if he waver and has nothing but a share of his affection to offer me, all the earth shall not hinder me from retiring to a religious life and renouncing the world, where Balamir has taught me that there is nothing of solid certainty. In regard I knew the constancy of her mind, those expressions somewhat frighted me, out of an apprehension that such an incomparable Lady should embrace such an austere life.

Thereupon I used the utmost of my endeavours to divert her from a design, the consequences whereof might prove to fatal to us, but to speak ingeniously all my entreaties nothing prevailed, for the constant Hunnimonda was as immoveable then as upon all those other occasions, that signaliz'd the greatness of her courage. At length all that I could obtain from her was, that in regard you were General of the Cimbrians, and that it would seem to be too apparent a piece of levity, over-hastily to quit your command, you have eight days to manage a change that will make so loud a noise, to the best advantage of discretion and civility. But, brother, you must not expect any longer time, and if you do not return within the time prefixed, resolve never to see that fair and generous Princess again.

Theodolinda had no sooner made an end of speaking, but in casting her eyes upon Balamir's

mir's countenance, she observed that the Prince seem'd to be prepossessed with some certain thought that held him in a deep suspence: *What, Brother,* said she with some surprize, *can you not yet determine with your self, after all that I have said concerning the Princess of the Goths? Not so, Sister,* replied he, fetching a sigh, *but because I make no question but I shall render my self unworthy of her esteem, when I shall become ingrateful toward Rosamond, I find that in resuming her splendid chains, I shall die both for love and grief at the feet of that too severe Princess. Can you call that person too severe,* cryed Theodolinda, impatiently interrupting him, *who having preserv'd all her affection entire for you, will not accept of a piece of a heart at your hands? But, Sister,* replied he, *if her friendship for the Princess of the Huns be not incompatible with her tenderness toward Balamir, wherefore may not I be permitted to accompany my acknowledgment of the Cimbrian Queen's favours with some thoughts of affection; especially if that affection acknowledges the Empire of an over ruling passion? Do you not know, or at least have I not told you, that Rosamond's Beauty would always render that good will suspected? And after that, can you be still irresolute? And shall I not at length return your positive answer, which the charming Hunnimonda expects in an agony that your irresolution is too unworthy of. Speak then, Brother, explain your meaning, tell me what I shall say to the Princess? That I will adore her to the last gasp of my Breath,* replied he: *And as to what concerns the Queen of the Cimbrians, pursued Theodolinda? That I do not feel my self Master,* replied Balamir, sighing, *of those motions of affection which I have for her. Upon these words Theodolinda blushed for very madness, and Balamir changing colour, when he considered what he had said. "Alas, added he with a scornful countenance, "to what purpose is this contest between us, now that I am threatened with such a terrible "overthrow, which would make you blush as well as Bellamira, if you have still the same "kindness for me that formerly you had.*

Theodolinda then interrupting Balamir, desired him to recite the circumstances that made him question his Birth, who having given her an account accordingly of all that he had understood from Narvis and Telanor's mouths, thus pursued his discourse: *When I was at Alba Julia it grieved me to be the Son of a Prince who had despoiled Hunnimonda's Father of her Dominions; and I wished that the King of the Huns had not been my Parent. But as the case now stands, I am constrained to look upon that which I took to my greatest unhappiness, as the only means to procure my good fortune: for after all, Madam, I am but too well assured of my ill fate, that strange love which the Cimbrians bear me, convinces me that I was born among them, and the affection which I have for their Queen, not being able to change my thoughts, tells me by a kind of natural instinct, that certainly I was born in Bohemia. But, alas, is it not enough that my fall must be so great, and that I must now no longer be the Son of one of the greatest Kings in Europe, but that it must appear at the same time that I was begot by one of the most wicked men living.*

The Princess finding too much probability in all that Balamir had recounted, was sensibly touched at the discontents of a young and renowned Warriour which she had always taken to have been her Brother. However, to put him by an opinion that could not but be grievous to him, she told him that notwithstanding some probabilities that seem'd not to favour his pretences, there were others that strongly convinced her, that a person of so much virtue could never be descended from one that was abominated by all good men.

She had proceeded farther, would Balamir have permitted her, but the enamoured Prince causing all his disturbances, not produced by his passion, to give place, to that incomparable Hunnimonda's repose: *For Heaven's sake, Madam,* replied he, *let me but behold my divine Princess but for a moment. Were it in my power to grant your request, answered Theodolinda with some certain symptoms of anger in her face, I believe I should refuse it, since you have done me so great an injury: you have given me a Title offensive to the affection I have for you; but know, Brother, that though the misfortune which you fear should happen, Hunnimonda and Theodolinda would value that in you, which all the power of fortune cannot take from you: for in the loss of your quality, you will no less preserve their esteem than your own virtue.*

But what comfort soever Balamir received by this obliging discourse, the Prince was still restless, and press'd Theodolinda to procure him the happiness which he so earnestly desired: but she protested to him that he could not hope to see the Princess of the Goths till he had renounced Rosamond. Balamir, who could not possibly withstand that torments which he had for the Cimbrian Queen, was mortally afflicted at her last words; but notwithstanding all his entreaties, notwithstanding all his grief, he could obtain nothing; for the Princess of the Huns was immovable in the punctual observation of her vow. Thus Balamir was forced to take his leave of Theodolinda; for besides that company began to

come in, time called him away to his Army: but though his employment and some motives of affection called him to be near *Rosamond*, yet he made no great haste to her, departing from the Princess of the *Goths* but very slowly, and very sorrowfully. Guided by his unquiet thoughts, he took through the Forest, imagining that among so many great Trees, he should not fail to find some one of those places of solitude, where the miserable seek to unlade the burthen of their sorrows. At length having spied an obscurity proper for his melancholy purpose, he alighted, and parting from his attendants, buried himself in the thickest part of the Wood with some kind of consolation. Presently all his misfortunes crowded into his fancy, so that his great courage that served him with so much renown at other times, now forsook him; nor could he forbear to abandon himself to his troubles, and to make all the complaints that his grief could inspire into his thoughts: By which of all my actions, cryed he, or rather by which of all my thoughts have I drawn upon my head these terrible misfortunes that overwhelm me altogether? Can I not recover *Hunnimonda* without losing that quality which authorises my pretences to her? And can I not lose the honour of an illustrious Birth, but I must find my extraction by the crimes of *Eriomer*? Then he paused upon what he had said, he sighed, and resuming his lamentation: Ye just Gods that I have always adored, pursued he, is there any reason for you to be always so incens'd against me, that I must be reduced to a necessity of doing so terrible a piece of injustice? You know the obligations that *Rosamond* has heaped upon me, what an opinion that generous Princess has of the unfortunate *Balamir*, and yet you constrain me to forsake her party at a time when she shews me most affection, and honours me with her most secret trusts: what will she say of my proceedings? What will all the *Cimbrians* say, that so well love me? What will all the world say, that have hitherto applauded the reputation of my Actions? For I find that I shall never stand to prefer the chains of my divine *Bellamira* before all that is great and precious in the world: but I would willingly return to her with all that acknowledgment which is due to her, without shewing an ingratitude to the Queen of the *Bohemians*, which I can never pardon my self.

Thus he lamented a long time, and his sorrows so turmoiled his thoughts, surpris'd by night and weariness, that he fell into a slumber which he thought impossible to have seized upon his eyes. No sooner was he fallen asleep, but he dreamed that he saw the two Princesses that continually haunted his imagination, but so fair withal, that nothing was ever comparable to those charming shadows. They did not seem to behold each other like two Rivals, but on the contrary, having saluted one another, they seem'd to testify in most obliging language both their surprize and satisfaction. *Balamir* observing them very diligently, seem'd to take notice, that at the end of their discourse, *Rosamond* took from her own head the Crown which she wore, and presented it to *Hunnimonda*, who received it more joyfully, than she had disdainfully refused the Diadems of *Honorius*. With that the enamoured Prince was so satisfied, that he awaked in an extasie of joy, and his fancy being yet wrapped up in the pleasures of his Vision, he stretched forth his hands toward the place where he thought he had seen the two Princesses stand. But afterwards it was an imaginary comfort of real miseries: I see, cryed he, fetching a deep sigh, I see that the miserable must not flatter themselves, and that *Balamir* wrongs himself to draw favourable conjectures from a repose that he so seldom enjoys." Afterwards reflecting upon what he had seen in his dream, Is it not a very hard thing, continued he, to guess the meaning of *Rosamond's* respect to *Bellamira*? Does it not signify that the *Cimbrian* Queen having a bare respect for me, yields the Empire of my heart to a Princess that has preserved the most tender and obliging thoughts in the world for *Balamir*. But, alas, very pensively added he, what will such an inestimable tenderness avail me, if the misfortune that threatens me, render me unworthy all those testimonies and proofs of her affection?

The End of the First Book of the Eleventh Part.

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK II.

THe afflicted *Balamir* concluded his complaints but only that he might the more seriously ponder upon the various assaults of his evil fortune. He walked cross the Wood, not minding that the obscurity of the shade might lead him out of his way: so that in less than an hour he came by chance to a certain place where he heard the tongues of some that were discoursing together. At first he thought they might have been his own Attendants; but hearing immediately a voice that he knew not, he made a stop, and listened with that attention, that one would have thought he had not then been capable of. Presently some person or other thus pursued his discourse: "Sir, *said he*, 'tis most certain that the Princess of the *Goths* is in the Camp of the *Franks*: they that told me of it know her, and cannot be mistaken. From them also I understood the news that is reported among the chief Officers of *Pharamond's* Army, that *Balamir* had renounced his pretensions to the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, that he had seen *Hunnimonda*, and that he loves her more passionately than ever. "I make no question of it, *answered the other to whom the discourse was address'd*, but that you might have been betrayed, and that this *Beilamira* so famous over all the world may be that very Princess whom you thought to have been so long dead. I can tell, and it may be by experience, after what a manner a Lover may be abused upon such an occasion: and I observe also that the friendship which is between us, not only rose at first from the correspondence between our dispositions, but also from the conformity of our fortunes. You shall be convinced when I tell you some circumstances that make me speak in this manner: for I must confess, that I come as well as you to seek out a Rival that is in the Camp of the *Cimbrians*. Yes, Sir, I come to seek out *Agelmond*, and to be the death of him; for my antipathy against him is no less, nor no less lawful than your hatred against the Prince that stole from you the affections of *Hunnimonda*.

Balamir not questioning but that the first that spoke was *Mundisic*, felt an inclination to combat his detested Rival, that had caused all the misfortunes of his life. Nevertheless, the generous Prince kept himself within bounds, out of a sense of that respect which he preserv'd as yet for an Enemy which he had always acknowledged for his elder Brother, and farther out of a firm belief that his Adversary would never be entertained by the Princess of the *Goths*. On the other side, scorning to slip an opportunity that invited him to take *Agelmond's* part, he thus address'd himself to the person that pretended himself to be that Prince's Adversary: "Whoever thou art, *cry'd he with a surly utterance*, that seekest the King of the *Lombards's* life, so soon as day appears thou mayst attacke him in the person of one of his Friends, and according to thy success against me thou mayst proceed in thy design. For that very reason, *answered the other*, shalt thou see my strength; and though thy Birth should not be answerable to thy pride, 'tis enough that thou takest the part of a person whom I hate, for me to desire to fight thee. In satisfying that desire, perhaps thou mayst win some honour by the Combat, if fortune favour thee.

He had no sooner concluded those words, but *Mundisic*, for it was he himself, returned this answer, *Were it likely*, *said he*, that *Balamir* could be out of the *Cimbrian Camp* at this

time of the night, I should sorely suspect thee by thy speech: But in regard his employment will not permit him that liberty, and that thou takest the part of a person whom Balamir himself hardly knows, I am apt to think I have made a right conjecture. While he spake in that manner, some body was heard to come along toward the place where the dispute began, however, Mundisic continuing his speech, *If thou servest in the Cimbrian Army*, added he, let Balamir know the hatred which I bear him, and tell him moreover that I am resolved to have his life.

Upon those words Balamir could not hold, when a certain person comes up of a sudden, and interrupting Mundisic, "You may chance to miss of your design, said he in a surly tone, and it may be a valour inferiour to Balamir's, may teach you another Lesson and school you for your rashness. "The rashness of your Language is more to be wondred at, replied the enraged Mundisic, and were it not for the darkness of the Night, we should quickly try whether the gallantry of your Actions could so well maintain his quarrel, that you have so audaciously undertaken. You shall hear of me and my Friend in Pharamond's Army, at the Tent where the King of the *Herules* lodged, and because I care not to conceal my name if thou enquirest for Mundisic, thou shalt meet with a Prince that will make thee repent thy boldness. And having spoken these words, he thrust himself into a Thicket of Trees, together with the King of the *Lombards* Adversary.

Balamir was surpris'd at the strangeness of the accident, but instead of examining any farther into it at that time, he rather chose to testify his acknowledgment to the person that had taken his part. To which intent advancing toward him, "You have so obligingly embraced Balamir's quarrel, said he, that I my self being very much his friend, would gladly know whose generosity it is that has so much obliged him. "If you rightly knew me, answered the other, you would be soon of another mind, and never believe that a person so unhappy as I, did any thing extraordinary for the great Balamir, in venturing a life only which I lead in so much sorrow.

The language and the voice made the Prince of the *Huns* suspect the truth, so that after he had paused a while upon the words, *Either I am deceived*, said he, or it is the valiant King of the *Lombards*, whom Balamir must acknowledge for his Champion. The very same unfortunate person, replied he fetching a sigh, the miserable Agelmond, who at a time and place that he had chosen to bewail his misfortunes, never dream'd of such a lucky opportunity, to serve a person whose virtue he reverences. The famous Agelmond's virtue, replied the Prince of the *Huns*, with more justice deserves the veneration of all the world, and Balamir who cannot conceal himself from so generous a friend, shall ever have———How Sir, replied the King of the *Lombards* interrupting him in a surpris, Is it possible that a Prince so great and happy as you, should be met with in a place only proper for the moans of the miserable. Alas, replied Balamir, it appears that you never heard of the malignity of my Stars: But Sir for your better understanding, you need no more than remember the words of the Prince of the *Huns*, for you know I have a Rival that has ruin'd all my happiness, you know how obstinately he seeks after my life, not contented to have made it so miserable. Yet notwithstanding all this a strange whimsy of fortune, that hinders me from being at peace with my self disarms my revenge, for while she shows me the most implacable of my Enemies, she shows me the person of a Prince, whom I have always acknowledged for my elder Brother, she shows him wounded and in a condition rather to move my compassion than provoke my anger. And therefore I beg your excuse for speaking in his behalf, presuming that the greatness of your daring courage, will scorn to handle a weapon against an adversary, whose overbrow will yield you no honour, nor seek the death of a Prince who has been sufficiently punished for his violences, by the contempt and hatred of those Princesses, that he has still taken away by Force.

Thus the magnanimous Balamir took care of the safety of an ingrateful man, who sought to take away his life, but notwithstanding all the power which he had over the King of the *Lombards*, Agelmond being naturally proud and having received so terrible an injury could not speak of Agione's being carried away from him by force, without thinking upon his revenge likewise. "I know Sir, said Balamir, that I must never expect to see unpunished those crimes which have been committed against the King of the *Lombards*, yet I dare assure you upon very good grounds, that before Mundisic be in a condition to fight, you will find such an Accident happen that your resolution will be alter'd.

Balamir would have said more, and without doubt have better satisfied the King of the *Lombards*, when he heard several persons coming behind him, and therefore thought fit to change the subject of the discourse, without examining whether they were of Agelmond's or his own retinue. As for Agelmond whose victories had rendred him so famous, he let Balamir understand at length, that he would defer his quarrel with Mundisic, and falling by degrees

degrees into a discourse that was always in his mind, he began to bewail his loss and spoke with so much grief concerning *Gilismene*, that you might easily see that the death of that Princess was the chief trouble of his thoughts. Yet the afflicted Lover had this consolation to make his moans till day appeared, to a Prince that shared in his sorrows. But daylight no sooner shewed it self but a French Officer came to *Balamir*, accompanied with seven or eight others. "Sir, said he, I knew by the Lyons in your Arms that we did not follow you in vain, for I perceive we have now found, what we have sought after with so much pains. "I cannot apprehend, replied *Balamir*, why you should put your selves to so much trouble, but believing you had some reason for it, I suppose you will not be unwilling to reveal it. "I will tell you then Sir, replied the other, that the King my Master having intelligence that you left the Camp in a discontent, sent several parties after you with orders to tell you, that he longs for a meeting between himself and you, with an intent to try whether he caused the difference which you have with Prince *Balamir*. "I do not wonder, answered he, to see my self so far engaged to the King of the *Franks*, having received so many testimonies of his generosity upon several other occasions, and if the Prince for whom you have taken me be of the same mind, the Royal house of the *Huns* will not be divided. "Is it possible, replied the Frank, that so many probabilities should deceive me, and that you should not be *Mundisc*? 'Tis very probable, replied *Balamir*, that you might be deceived by the likeness of our Arms, but we are so unlike in Face, that no man would take us to be brothers. The difference between your dispositions, replied *Agelmound*, is as remarkable, and excepting that you are both in love with the Princess of the *Goths*, there is no conformity in the world between your inclinations.

Those words caused *Balamir* to sigh, putting him in mind of his misfortunes, and while the *Frank* was pondering what to believe, he saw the Prince of the *Huns* retinue come up, among whom he knew *Telanor*. On the other side *Balamir* casting his eyes upon the Troop, took notice that *Theodolinda* had reinforced his Convoy, having sent several Horsemen under the command of *Hilderic*, a *Visigoth* very considerable in his Country, as well by his own merit as being in *Walia's* service: So that *Balamir* having testified to *Pharamond's* Officer, his acknowledgment to the King his Master, return'd together with *Agelmound* with a greater Train than was wont to attend him.

He was no sooner come to the *Cimbrian* Camp, but he made it his business to take upon him the King of the *Lombards* quarrel, and in regard that *Telanor* was in the *Franks* Army, and might be seen by *Mundisc*, he rather chose to employ *Walia's* Squire, and having fully instructed him he sent him to make enquiry after that unknown person with whom he was to fight, and then abandoned himself to his prevailing passion.

At first he found himself strangely unresolv'd, for he thought it might be some ease to his mind, to give *Rosamond* an account of his restless disturbances, and presently after he chid himself for having such a thought, as being a new crime against the Princess of the *Goths*. For that reason he determin'd of a sudden, not to go so presently to visit the *Cimbrian* Queen, that he might by degrees wean himself from her company, being obedient to the commands of the inexorable *Bellamira*. 'Tis very true that he saw himself forced to go to the Castle, not only because his employment and civility obliged him, but also because *Rosamond* her self had sent for him, impatiently desiring to know the success of his visit. *Balamir* therefore believed that he might listen to the motives of good will, yet never wound the duty of his love. However he was at a great loss, when he began to think it necessary for the Queen of the *Bohemians* to understand, what *Bellamira* had impos'd upon him. Nevertheless he delayed it as long as he could, but *Rosamond* taking notice of the trouble that appeared in his face, Prince, (said she with an Air that testified how much she shared in his affliction) I beseech you never stand to consider, but since you cannot live without your Princess, go to *Pharamond's* Camp, and let me not look upon my self as the cause of your sorrows. Ah, Madam, cryed he, that you should be so generous and *Balamir* so unfortunate: For 'tis impossible for me to fight against the Queen of the *Cimbrians* interest, or to be an Enemy to the Princess of the *Goths*. To shew you, replied she, that your being in that Army will not trouble me, and to cure you of the scruple of conscience that detains you here, know that the satisfaction which you will receive in *Hunnimonda's* enjoyment, will make me amends for what I shall suffer for your absence. But if I must tell you all, added she with a blush, I must acknowledge that I more fear the reinforcement of your valour given to *Pharamond*, than all the succours which he expects from *Theodolinda*. I find Madam, replied he, that you are just to the King of the *Franks*, and I would to God that the severe *Hunnimonda*, would be but as just to the unfortunate *Balamir*, to permit him to preserve an affection for you, though not comparable to that passion which I have for her, so I believe we might one day be all satisfied———But with what kind of felicity, replied

plied she interrupting him, *would you flatter Rosamond? I would fain,* answered Balamir, *see you Queen of the Franks, and in regard that Pharamond is not guilty but only in the false accusations of his enemies, methinks there is nothing binders why he may not aspire to the honour which I intend him.* *Ah, no, no, Prince,* replied she with a resolute utterance, *Rosamond will never do that injury to a Brother slain before her eyes, and how sensible soever she may be of Pharamond's merit, she will rather perish in the Ruines of the last City that holds out against him, rather than yield to what you advise me. For in short my heart would upbraid me, though my reputation were safe in such a necessity, that I must either perish or espouse Pharamond. Think therefore no farther of it, but since I am the cause of your afflictions, observe how I will restore you to your full content,*

You shall know then all that lyes concealed in my heart, for Rosamond will discover to you all her thoughts, that she never fully revealed, not to the Princess of Suevia her self. Upon these words a slight blush spread it self in the cheeks of the lovely Queen, and after she had a while cast down those Angelical eyes, that ruled the destinies of so many great potentates; she turned them in a languishing posture upon Balamir, and thus continued her discourse: *I know as well as you and a little more, too much indeed for the repose and quiet of my life, what those noble qualities are which are so much to be admired in Pharamond. The extraordinary merit of that Prince which has gained your esteem, has had a more absolute dominion in my heart, than ever my resentment, though left me as a legacy by my deceased Father, and as it were implored at my hands by the Tears of a Brother slain before my eyes. In a word I cannot hate the King of the Franks, and notwithstanding all my endeavours to have an aversion toward him, when I was oblig'd to look upon him as my irreconcilable enemy, I found my intentions always ill seconded by the motions of my heart, and that heaven had not created that Prince such as we behold him, to render him odious to Rosamond.* "Hitherto, Madam, replied Balamir, you have said nothing that surpriseth me, and I less wonder to hear you so just with Pharamond's vertue, than if you had been unjust toward a Prince so potent and so lovely." "Would to God," replied the fair Queen, *fetching a deep sigh,* that I had continued in this moderation, but, alas, I know too well how far my affection extends, the more I find my self constrained to smother my love, the more it encreases and strives to break forth, being accompanied with certain troubles that make me ashamed. Yes Balamir, I am sometimes ashamed of my weakness, and when to flatter my pride I begin to commend my courage, I chide my self for those fears which I cannot but pity, I fear lest Pharamond should in the end grow weary, lest he should shake off his chains which it will never be lawful for me to ease him of, and sometimes I am thinking that Amalazomba's Glances and her carriage toward him, will one day rob me of his affections." "Ah, Madam, cried Balamir, *interrupting her,* can you so injuriously suspect the King of the Franks? No, no, Madam, Pharamond will never change, but to the last gasp of his breath he will adore that Angelical Queen, to whom he is always ready to sacrifice his life and Kingdoms." "Should what you say be true," replied Rosamond, as sometimes I make my self believe for my own repose, I should not be altogether unhappy, for being free from any other Prince in the world, this would be my satisfaction that no other Princess in the earth, could deprive me of Pharamond's heart. This consolation will be supported also by my joy, to see you restor'd to Hunnimonda's affections: For in short, Prince, I will make your peace with that Princess, and when I have told you which way, you shall confess it to be infallible." "Can you be so rigorous," replied Balamir, *beholding her very stedfastly,* to propose that to me which Belanira has offered. Ah, if it be so, I had rather dye for grief at the feet of that severe Princess, than submit to so unmerciful a command." "When you tell me what that command is, answered the Queen of the Cimbrians, you shall soon know whether my intentions are conformable to the Princess's." "Well then, Madam, replied he, she commands me to renounce for ever the sight and company of the most incomparable Rosamond. Now, Madam, is there any other way but death, to get clear of such a Rock as this. I am so deeply engaged to the testimonies of your affection, that I never can so ingratfully forsake your service, as never to see you more: And on the other side it is impossible for me to live, hated by the Princess whom I adore." "I confess, replied Rosamond *smen hat disturbed,* I should be loth to be for ever deprived of your company, and not be suffer'd to see the only person to whom I can speak the secrets of my heart with confidence and consolation. But, Prince, assure your self, the way that I shall take is not altogether so severe, and I make no question to accomplish your hapipness, yet never break that secret Link of friendship that tyes us together, proceeding from a secret sympathy, of which I have often examin'd, but never yet could find the cause.

I have already told you, that since it is not in my power to make choice of Pharamond for a Husband,

Husband, I am resolv'd never to marry any Prince in the world. And therefore in regard I owe the Cimbrians a King, and for that how pleasing soever my Government may be, they will never be satisfied, unless they find some likelihood of a Successor, I have cast my eyes, Prince, upon you, to settle you upon the Throne of my Ancestors. You shall reign over a Nation already accustomed to obey your commands; besides, my people will have a Sovereign whom they entirely reverence, and may promise to themselves from Balamir and Hunnimonda a race of Heroes worthy to command all the earth.

The Prince charm'd with such obliging expressions, threw himself at the Queen's feet, and in an extasie of acknowledgment and affection, Rather, cryed he, rather let Balamir perish, than owe his happiness to a Generosity so prejudicial to your person. No, no, Madam, I shall never accept those offers that cannot enrich me but with your spoils. And if nothing but a Crown will carry Bellamira, I will seek to gain it rather by my Sword, than by the liberality of a Princess to whom I am so excessively obliged. Then making a second reflection upon Rosamond's kindness: Ah, Madam, cryed he, fetching a deep sigh, how unhappy am I, that my destiny should draw from your Magnanimity an effect contrary to your intentions? Alas, Madam, the means wherewith your kindnesses have inspired you to render me happy, rather sends me to my Tomb, than advances me to that honour which you allow me to claim from your affection. The more generous you are toward Balamir, the more you confirm him in his resolution never to forsake you; and therefore since I cannot see you without provoking Hunnimonda, and that I cannot provoke Hunnimonda but I must die for grief, there nothing more remains than for me to end my life.

He concluded those words with an aspect so pensive, that Rosamond, who took upon her to feel a great share of his afflictions, was most sensibly moved therewith, but as she was about to have given him some testimonies of that reality, word was brought her, that Amalazontis and the Princesses of Suevia and Lombardy were come to kiss her hands, together with Varanez, Agelmond and Ambiomere. The Prince of the Huns perceiving that he was not able to moderate his sorrows before those illustrious personages, rather chose to depart, than to appear sad and pensive in such company, thereupon he retired to his Quarters, and while he expected Hilderic's return, he pondered with astonishment upon the condition of his fortune. At first he thought that mark of Generosity which he had received from Rosamond, to be the interpretation of his dream: but then reflecting upon Bellamira's humour, he was soon perswaded that Princess would never consent that Rosamond should resign her Crown.

In the mean time, the King of Suevia having received intelligence that the King of the Huns Ambassadors were near at hand, that they were in the Country of the Sicambers, and that in crossing the Territories of the King of the Franks, they had given out, that the War should suddenly be ended by the strangest, yet most welcome accident in the world, was afraid lest Briomer's villany should come to light; and therefore to shelter him from the storm, he tryed all ways that he could imagine or think of. At first he thought to way-lay the Hunnish Commissioners, and to have them murdered; but understanding that the prudent Keuz was one of the chief Deputies, and that he had either a Train or a Convoy of two thousand Horse, he foresaw some difficulty in that design. But being of that disposition he was of, he never would have scrupled laying violent hands upon the Ambassadors whatever had come of it, had he not foreseen that it would have been to no purpose, in regard the King of the Huns himself was able to declare at any time the contents of their Embassy.

For that reason he turn'd all the violence of his malice upon Balamir, not being ignorant how much he should suffer by that renowned Soldier's Birth, and sought his absolute destruction, imagining there would be no stirring for a dead man's sake, in order to any change of affairs, which was a thing dreaded by so many great personages. At first he thought to have acquainted Varanez, Gondioch, Ardaric and Godegesilus with his design: but in conclusion he discourf'd his mind only to the King of the Herules; whether it were that their humours sympathized better, or whether he thought that Pharamond's other Rivals would not second him in his enterprize: for in regard there was a necessity to make use of many hands in the murder of Balamir, he was afraid that the jealousy of the Persian Prince, or King of the Burgundians had not quite extinguish'd their Generosity, which would make them abhor to seal a piece of treachery. As for Godegesilus, he not only approv'd the King's contrivance, but being fix'd to his interest, he spurred him on, and exhorted him to lose no time, before the Huns Ambassadors arriv'd at the Camp. They wanted neither means nor opportunity, those two Kings having still at their command a stock of Villains ready upon all occasions, and besides, they knew that Balamir went every day to the
Camp

Camp of the *Franks* with a very small Train. Thus they gave order for the murder of a person whom they ought to have reverenc'd rather, while *Balamir* seem'd to contribute to his own ruine, out of his extraordinary impatience to be gone. But being oblig'd to expect the *Visigoth* Knight, to the end he might know where to meet with *Agelmond's* Enemy, he was forc'd to spend the rest of the day in the Camp of the *Cimbrians*, where he met with new vexations by the King of *Suevia's* devices, for that Prince having laid his plot with *Briomer*, sent to the *Cimbrian* Queen, requesting her to come to his Quarters, and in the presence of *Varanez* and *Martian*, spoke to her to this effect, *Madam*, said he, *you know that the Vanguard of the Grecian Army are within some few hours march of the Camp, and therefore would your Majesty be pleas'd to meet them, and to see them drawn up, it would be a pleasant recreation, from whence you may expect other advantages. It would oblige the Emperour Theodosius, and give new courage to the Soldiers.*

Rosalmond, who was constrain'd to take worse advice from him than that, readily consented. Thereupon, notwithstanding her unwillingness to animate an Army against a person too dear to her for her repose, she gave orders accordingly, and the three Princeesses went along with her, attended by the Prince of *Persia*, *Martian* and *Ambiomer*. Nor did the King of *Suevia* make any scruple to open his very heart to *Varanez*, declaring to him the reason why he had made this match, and the advantages which *Pharamond's* Rivals would reap thereby, As for *Balamir*, he saw the departure of the Queen, but could not follow her; for besides that his honour detain'd him in the *Cimbrian* Camp in expectation of *Wallia's* Squire, his love also called him to the Camp of the *Franks*; so that they took their leaves each of other, as if they had not been to meet again in a long time: but at length, inwardly checking their own weakness, they parted with more courage to outward appearance, than really they had in their hearts.

In the mean time, *Hilderic* being returned, gave an account to the Prince of the *Huns*, that it was the Prince of the *Venedians* with whom he was to fight, that *Agelmond's* Enemy would meet him in that part of the Wood where *Theon* and *Melusina* had their interview appointed, and that he seem'd to be much troubled that they had not an opportunity to decide the quarrel yesterday: *'Tis very certain*, said the *Visigoth* in pursuit of his message, *Harmaxas has us'd all his endeavours to persuade him from taking Mundific's part: but he being enraged against you, is resolv'd not to leave him, already suspecting that it was you that were the King of the Lombards's Friend.*

Thereupon, confirm'd as he was in his resolution, *Balamir* sent for the principal Officers of the *Cimbrian* Army, who were no sooner met in his Chamber, but he thought good to exhort them to continue in their loyalty, not only because the Queen was absent, and because he was going to the Camp of the *Franks*: but out of a prophetick foresight, the reason whereof he did not understand, which made him the more zealously renew the marks of his affection, and those exhortations which he gave them to continue faithful to their fair Queen. To all which, the Commanders that reverenc'd his personage, return'd their acknowledgment, and such protestations of their fidelity, that he could desire no more. *Balamir* was not a little satisfied therewith; nor did he dismiss the *Cimbrian* Officers without a considerable present, and such Carestes as were of more value than his gifts. After that, he gave order to *Telanor* to provide all things necessary for his departure the next morning by break of day: and finding it not to be very late, in regard that *Hilderic* was to stay all night, he request'd the Squire to relate the remaining part of his Master's Adventures; for though his troubles were at that time incompatible with his curiosity, yet had he a great desire to hear the Story, not only because he had a very great esteem for *Wallia*, and was deeply concern'd for *Theodolinda's* good fortune, but also because he hoped to find an opportunity to serve a Princess so highly respected by *Hunnimonda*. Thereupon the *Gothish* Knight glad that he could please a Prince to whom he was altogether devoted, thus address'd himself to that renowned Warriour.

The Continuation of the History of Wallia.

I Think, Sir, I was interrupted in my Story by the coming in of *Taxander*, when I was speaking of our departure from *Rome*; at what time I told you that *Alaric* having left *Attalus* to command, took his march toward *Consensum*, attended by *Autalph*, *Sigeric* and *Wallia*. Those Princes courted their fair Ladies all the way; for, Sir, we carried along with us the incomparable Sister of *Honorius*, the charming *Theodolinda*, and the lovely Princess of the *Tongres*: and besides these persons so highly eminent, there were several others of a lower degree, who were however no small grace to the company. For on the one side, *Placidia* and her two companions were attended by several Ladies of Quality, and our Princes generally surrounded by the chiefest Officers of the Army. *Alaric* sigh'd for *Theodolinda*; and though his Royal Dignity, which he maintain'd with so much splendour, might easily have made her his own, yet his Generosity forbid him to have recourse to ways that could not make him happy, unless it were in consideration of his Dignity. Thereupon he resolv'd, as I have told you already, to gain her affections by his services, laying aside Maxims of State, and unwilling to owe so fair a conquest to the Negotiation of an Embassadour. On the other side, he could not absolutely resolve to supplant his Rival by the advantages of his greatness; for his Rival was so dear to him, and had been so prodigal of his blood at all times for the encrease of his honour, that the graceful *Alaric* was very unwilling to raise himself upon his ruins. While he was considering how much he owed to that valiant Prince, and while opposite thoughts divided his heart and mind to his extraordinary trouble, *Wallia* had more reason to complain on the other side: for besides that he was deeply sensible of *Alaric's* behaviour, certain it was that he was more in love, though with less hope. And as for the Princess *Theodolinda*, she had so high an esteem for the King of the *Goths*, and such a kindness for *Wallia*, that she was in as troublesome a perplexity as either of her Lovers.

This, Sir, was the condition of those three principal persons of whom I am to discourse; for as for *Autalph* and *Placidia*, it will suffice to tell you in a few words, that *Alaric's* Brother was most passionately in love without being beloved; and that *Placidia*, importun'd by the protestations of his love, never minded any thing but the misfortunes of *Rome*, the weakness of *Honorius*, and the absence of her dear *Constance*. As for *Sigeric* that now reigns over the *Visigoths*, he is a Prince naturally proud, impatient and furious. At that time he mightily affected *Theodolinda's* company, but the Princess always avoided it as much as civility would permit. However, one day that *Alaric* and *Wallia* were taken up with some great affairs, she was persecuted by this new Lover, after a most cruel manner: for he not only beheld her with a boldness that displeas'd her; but when she turn'd away her face, *Well, Madam*, said he, according to his wonted pride, *I see you scorn my heart, that will not so much as vouchsafe me one look toward the conquest of it. I beseech you, Sir*, said *Theodolinda*, *talk not of hearts, nor conquests, nor looks, they are words that no way please me, and — They do not always dislike you*, said he, interrupting her, *for when they come out of Alaric's or Wallia's mouth, then no question but they are very mellow and well accepted. Alaric and Wallia demean themselves in so different a manner from you*, replied *Theodolinda*, *that I should be unjust to complain of their behaviour. You would say*, answered he, *that they are more happy than I, but I cannot tell whether their passion be stronger than mine, or so well worthy to succeed: for theirs is too moderate and wise; but a vigorous love proportionable to your charms, can only impose Fetters upon Sigeric. Perhaps he would not find them very light*, replied the Princess, *but 'tis well for him that I am neither in a condition nor humour to impose any shackles at all upon him.*

This dispute began too smartly to have ended so soon, had not *Alaric* at the same time stepped into *Theodolinda's* Chamber, and by his presence altered the subject of the discourse. Immediately he was not a little troubled to observe a disturbance in *Sigeric's* face, and a discomposure in the fair eyes of *Theodolinda*: but being enamour'd; and understanding the cause, *Is it possible, Madam*, softly said he to *Theodolinda*, *that none but my Brother escapes your charms? And that your Beauty, fatal to all the rest of my Family should raise Sigeric up to be my Rival? I cannot tell*, answered she, in the heat of passion that *Sigeric* had put her into, *what that Prince's real thoughts are; but I guess that he has forgot me to be the Daughter of the King of the Huns, and takes me only for a Captive to the King of the Goths.*

At those words, *Alaric* turning toward the haughty Prince, *I wonder not* (said he with a severe and surly utterance) *to see you charm'd by a Lady that all the earth adores, but that you may hence forward know how to carry your self, know that your King has a divine veneration for the divine Theodolinda, and would willingly make her your Queen, could I but win her consent. As far as I can see, Sir,* replied he, with a despite that he could not dissemble, *the Princess of the Huns is so accustomed to hear of the effects of her Beauty, that she takes a bare complement of Sigeric for a serious protestation of love: but since the smoothest of my expressions will not please, I will even hold my tongue, though at the very same time that I must not dare to speak, Wallia shall be permitted to hold the Princess Theodolinda in a discourse of his love, and to profess himself unpunished to be the King's Rival.*

Alaric, provoked with his words, and yet not willing to flie out in the presence of a Princess that he adored, gave *Sigeric* only such a look that his pride was soon quelled; and away he went out of the Chamber, for fear of incensing the King any farther; and now the King being alone with the Princess of the *Huns*, with a melancholy deeper than he was wont to shew, *You see, Madam,* said he, *what a conspiracy there is against me: for not only Wallia's merit is a potent obstacle to my claims, but Sigeric's violent humour also threatens me with strange crosses. How, Sir,* answered she in a kind of surprize, *is it possible you should fear Sigeric for a Competitor? I do not fear,* replied he, *that he will ever win your heart: but something has strangely discomposed my mind ever since Sigeric has been under your Laws. Were you acquainted with my Laws,* replied *Theodolinda*, *you would quickly see that Sigeric is not a man to be feared; so that you are safe enough as to him. But am I as safe as Wallia?* replied the King, fetching a deep sigh. *I confess,* said she with a slight blush in her cheeks, *the virtue of that Prince has equalled the kindnesses that he has done me, and made far different impressions from those which Sigeric has imprinted in my heart. So then, Madam,* answered the King, *you prefer the happy Wallia before all those other Princes that adore you? There is a great distance,* replied she, *between your thoughts and mine: for I believe there may be justice done to Wallia, without any necessity of determining so hastily upon the choice of him in that manner that you intend. But is there no hope,* answered *Alaric*, *for the King of the Goths? As I am not the Mistress of my own will,* replied she, *'tis a needless thing for me to break the Laws of civility by a positive answer. But, Sir, you have dealt so generously by me, that I dare frankly make you this protestation, that the kindness which I have for Wallia shall never lessen that esteem and acknowledgment which I owe to the King of the Goths.*

While they were upon this dispute, the illustrious Prince of whom they were discoursing entred, so that his presence did not a little trouble *Alaric*: and *Wallia* himself was not a little disquicred to behold the discomposure of mind that appeared in both their faces. Immediately he began to examine the nature of their discontent, and casting his eyes upon the Princess, he seemed to conjure her by that very action to lay aside those fears that vexed her soul. *Theodolinda* understanding that secret request, answered him with a look that might have confirmed *Wallia*, had not the presence of such a Rival as *Alaric* weakened the effect of that innocent favour, insomuch that those three illustrious persons so worthy to have been all happy, and yet so unlikely to be so, observed one another a good while with a mutual silence; and when they did speak, their discourse hung but ill together, shewing only the esteem which they reciprocally had for one another: but when they were parted, they went severally to bewail the misfortune of their virtue; and while their Generosity bounded their desires, *Sigeric* gave all the twinge to his that his rage cou'd demand. He had shut himself up with one *Autharic* a Soldier of fortune, upon whom for his valour the Government of *Capua* was bestowed at the same time that I obtained the command of *Calabria* by *Wallia's* means: so that he being beholding to *Sigeric* for his advancement, that Prince determined without any more to do, to discover his whole mind to him. To which purpose, beholding him as attentively as his troubled thoughts would permit him, *Autharic*, said he, *you know I have so well carried on your interests upon all occasions, and by the proofs that you have received of my good will, you may easily conjecture what you have still to hope. Sir,* answered he, not giving him time to say more, *all the marks of your goodness are so deeply engraved in my memory, that you need but tell me your business to be assured of my zeal to serve you.*

Sigeric was very well satisfied with this answer, but though he questioned not in the least the fidelity of the *Gothish* Officer, he could not fully resolve what to do. His passions increasing his natural boldness, he found there was a necessity of declaring himself; but the greatness of the enterprise, the difficulty of the execution, and the uncertainty of the success, so violently turmoiled his mind, that 'twas impossible for him that day to explain his thoughts: and therefore addressing his speech to *Autharic*, *Wonder not,* said he, *that I seem*

seem more cautious than I was wont to be, of discovering to you the secrets of my breast: They are of that consequence, that it is best for you to examine the thoughts of my heart, and to consult that fidelity which you have promised me, before I entrust you with so great a secret. The Goth would have made him vows and protestations, but the Prince interrupting him, *No, no, 'tis not time for me to speak yet, go and ponder upon what I have said already, and come again to morrow if you find your self undaunted enough, to satisfy your Ambition by signaling your Arm.*

Autharic, after he had sworn a hundred Oaths, that no danger how terrible soever should make him change his resolution, went out of *Sigeric's* Chamber, while the Prince abandoned himself to all those violent thoughts, that jealousie and desire of Reign could insufe into him. He looked upon *Alaric* as a Tyrant, *Theodolinda's* Majesty seemed to be an unmannerly rudeness, and he looked upon *Wallia's* noble pride as an insupportable presumption. *What*, said he, *wouldst thou that the Daughter of a great King, that a Princess who has scorn'd the offer of Kingdoms should take notice of this passion? Wouldst thou that she should prefer thee before thy Master, and when she may be a Queen and spouse the vanquisher of Rome it self, stoop to be a subject and marry Sigeric? For what reason should she make such an idle choice, is it in regard of thy dignity which is inferior to Alaric's, is it for the renown of thy actions so far outdone by Wallia. Remember thy self unjust Prince, and since thou canst not merit Theodolinda's affections, render thy self at least worthy to obtain the pardon of thy disobliging behaviour.*

These reasonable thoughts which only the Image of the fair Princess had inspired, were such Strangers in *Sigeric's* heart, or rather were so little conformable to his ordinary humour, that in a short time they gave way to thoughts far different. In short, the Prince suffered himself to be carried away, by the violence of his natural inclinations, and the heat of his temper overpowering his reason, he minded nothing but pernicious contrivances, blinded by those malignant vapours that his passions raised. At the same time *Autharic* coming to him, made him such solemn protestations to shut his eyes against all considerations that might oppose the services which he vowed him, that the Prince discovered to the *Visigoths* all the plots that lay concealed in his breast, and in a long and private conference, resolved upon those desperate Villanies, that caused those great revolutions which ensued.

No sooner were we come to *Consensum*, but the King thought it convenient to make some stay there, as well to visit the Princesses as to enjoy the pastime of such sports and recreations, as the politest of the *Goths* and *Romans* in *Placidia's* Train could invent or set forth. But instead of that gayety that usually appears at Balls and Turnaments, there was only to be seen a dull magnificence, accompanied with I know not what to call it of languishment and negligence. I need not tell you the cause of that melancholy, in regard you know that our Princes and Princesses, had reason little enough to be merry. *Theodolinda*, *Alaric*, and *Wallia*, though their interests were different, yet they looked upon one another with that real esteem which their virtues merited, nevertheless they still beheld one another fighting, and their misfortune was so strange, that because they would not injure one another, they rather chose to continue unhappy, than to wish for any change in the condition of their loves.

Sigeric on the other side never any farther troubled, mix'd the importunate proofs of his passion with theirs, and being very indifferent whether he ever saw *Theodolinda* or no, the whole Court was perswaded to believe, that he had banished from his heart the true cause of the Kings displeasure against him. The generous *Alaric* believing the concealed Lover had done great things merely to debar himself from being the Kings Rival, in recompence of the Act granted all the favours which his private enemy besought him, whose only business it was to make and oblige his creatures. Thus the cunning *Sigeric* had raised a potent faction, against a King whose benefits afforded him the means to seek his ruine: So that when he saw both his practices and his love were quite out of all suspicion, he resolved to execute a design, which promised him the satisfaction of all his hopes. He gave order to *Autharic* to make all the preparations imaginable, for a most magnificent and Royal Feast, and when he was advertised that all things were ready, he went to the Princess *Placidia* and told her that it was chiefly for her sake, that *Capua* the delicious had so displayed all her dainties and charming Varieties. *You know Madam*, continued he, *what advantages Rome has found by the pleasures of that lovely City, when they melted and disarm'd the Soldier like fury of Hannibal, the most famous Enemy of your Country: And I believe you will be glad to see the place which scattered that terrible Cloud, that had like to have poured such a Tempest over your Capitol.* *I confess*, replied she, *I could have been very well contented, that the King of the Goths notwithstanding*

standing his generosity, had made such another journey before he came to Rome, and that he had met the same disaster in Capua which befel the Carthaginian. Though this City, answered he, have not put a stop to Alaric's conquests, as she put a period to Hannibal's victories, yet she can promise you the overthrow of certain friends, whom you fear more than the Visigoths. For in short Madam, I am deceived if you return with those vexations, which you carried with you from Constantinople. You must give me leave however not much to credit what you say, since my misfortunes are of another nature, than to be remedied by any thing that you can make me hope.

As they were thus arguing Alaric comes into Placidia's Chamber, and presently after Theodolinda and Cleomira led by Autalpb and Wallia, after the usual complements were over, the Princess of the Huns, the King of the Goths and my Master, fell into a particular discourse by themselves. As for Alaric, he being somewhat sadder than ordinary that day, was willing to let Theodolinda know the last of his mind, which he did in the presence of Wallia to this effect. 'Tis high time Madam, said he, for you now to put a period to Alaric's fortune, and to declare your thoughts before two Princes that adore your Beauties: But Madam, speak more boldly I beseech you, and redeem us from that cruel uncertainty, which hinders us from resolving what we have to do. If that small renown which I have won among men, together with that extraordinary adoration which I yield to the divine Theodolinda, can render your inclinations conformable to the will of the King your Father, then should Alaric be suddenly one of the happiest Princes in the world. But on the contrary if Wallia's merit bear a greater sway in your heart, and that it be closed against the King of the Goths, I renounce my dignity, I renounce my Conquests and all the honour I might probably win, to seek the end of a life altogether lamentable. Before the Lady, replied my Master, pronounces the final determination of our destinies, be pleased only to let me speak my mind first, and then to depart the Chamber, that I may not hear the sentence which your virtue makes me dread. It is not just for you, Divine Princess, said he turning toward Theodolinda, to prefer a Prince that has no Crowns to lay at your feet, before the great King of the Goths: But in regard my passion for you is the most violent that ever was, suffer me to love you without hope, and because it is impossible for me to behold you in the possession of another, 'tis the miserable Wallia that must seek for death, to deliver his King and his Princess, out of the Labyrinth of their own generosity.

He had no sooner concluded these words, but he beheld the fair Theodolinda's eyes, fetching a deep sigh, and never staying for an answer he departed in such a posture, that constrained pity even from the Prince that disputed with him for the affections of the Princess: In so much that Alaric, as passionate as he was, could not but in justice repent that he had gone so far, and blamed himself that he had strove no more than he did, for the sake of a renowned Soldier that had so faithfully served him. 'Tis very true, that having cast his eyes afterwards upon a Princess altogether charming, he felt in himself a gentle inclination to excuse him, from the impossibility there was of losing that love which he had inspired, and not losing his reason withal. And therefore resuming his first question, Well Madam, pursued he, are you yet ready to pronounce the sentence of our destinies, and will you be but so kind as to tell me your real thoughts, that I may govern my self according to the sincerity of your answer. Sir, answered she, I will either not speak my mind at all, or if I do, it shall be with all the freedom you can expect from me; for I always thought dissimulation to be much below my birth. And therefore since you deem it so necessary for us to know how far our thoughts of kindness may extend each to other, I am contented to discover mine more precisely than ever I did. I will tell you then, Sir, that before I saw the King of the Goths, I observed something so noble and lofty in the person and courage of Wallia, that was sufficiently effectual to gain my esteem: And I must presume to say, added she blushing, that it was enough to move my affection. And now Sir, since I have told you that which I never spoke to Wallia himself, be pleased to let me have the liberty not to declare to any one but Wallia; how far my kindness extends to Alaric. "But Madam, impatiently replied he, should your Father command you to marry me, what resolution would you take. To obey his commands, answered Theodolinda: And yet to tell you the truth, I should be very unwilling to be constrained to deprive Wallia of an innocent affection, which is the reward of his love. Suppose then the King of the Huns, said Alaric, should favour the fortunate Wallia———That can never be; said she interrupting him and fetching a sigh, for I know my Father too well, that he will never yield me a Husband so unlikely to wear a Crown: And therefore Sir I am prepared never to be happy, and were I not acquainted with your generosity, I should have too much ground to fear for my repose. In short, I am not ignorant that so great a Conquerour as the famous Alaric, has many ways to supplant Wallia and to obtain Theodolinda: But Sir, I should prove unjust to your virtue, durst I apprehend
that

that any violence could proceed from thence. 'Tis most certain Madam, very pensively replied he, that I should rather dye for grief of loving without hope, than to thwart your inclinations. However divine Princess, added he, beholding her in a most passionate manner, will you not at least reserve some acknowledgment for a miserable person, that resigns so submissively to your will, though to his own ruine?

He had no sooner expressed himself in that manner, but *Theodolinda* out of a pure respect toward him, "Sir, answered she, your carriage has been so obliging, that it can never be any stain to my modesty to tell you, how sensible I am of your obligations. "However, replied he, you would not stick to espouse my Rival before my face, had you but the consent of the King your Father. "Were it the King of the *Huns* will, replied *Theodolinda*: that I should marry *Wallia*, most willingly would I consent: But Sir, I declare withal, that never of my own head, would I prefer that Prince before the King of the *Goths*, since I find you take the true way, to make your self Master of my Destiny.

Alaric satisfied with what she had said, departed from her less melancholy than he was before, and *Wallia* who saw him not long after, observing a kind of tranquillity in his eyes, apprehended a thousand strange fancies in his mind, not without being mortally grieved at it. For which reason instead of taking order for his departure from *Capua*, he sent for me to bear a share in his affliction. So taking me into his Closet, he beheld me with an extraordinary trouble in his countenance: "Ah *Hilderic*, cryed he fetching a deep sigh, I am lost: for the ambitious *Theodolinda* without doubt prefers *Alaric's* Diadems, before the most tender affection that ever was. "But Sir, said I interrupting him, who inform'd you that the Princess of the *Huns* has taken up such a hasty resolution, wherein she has hitherto appeared so wary. "The King by his eyes assured me of it, and Lovers are seldom deceived by those conjectures. Yes *Hilderic*, it must of necessity be, that either *Theodolinda* has been very kind to *Alaric*, or very unkind to *Wallia*: But 'tis no strange thing that the daughter of a great King, should forget a Prince that has nothing but his Sword and his Love, or that she should favourably accept the vows of an illustrious Victor, that has filled the greatest part of the world with the Renown of his conquests. "Ah *Wallia*, added he, flatter thy self no longer, but if through thy injustice thou wouldst not render thy self worthy of this misfortune, approve those reasonable and lawful thoughts, and shew thy zeal and thy respect, as well for thy King as for thy Mistress.

He held his peace after he had taken this resolution, but then having considered a while, whether he were able to keep it or no; "I know right well, answered he to himself, that I can never cease to love *Theodolinda*, I know she will Reign with absolute Sovereignty in my heart, till the last gasp of my breath. But after all, does it behove me to be contented only with being more in love than the King of the *Goths*, without attempting to carry my generosity, as far as I have seen the extent of his. He has contended with his passion for my sake, though he knows himself in a condition to gratifie it, and shall *Wallia* who loves without hope, endeavour nothing for the King's sake? Shall he give no proof of his acknowledgment to a magnanimous Prince, to whom he is so much beholding? No, no, I will never tax my self of so much ingratitude, rather he shall find that I am not altogether without that virtue, which makes us thankful for such benefits as we receive. I am resolved not to go along with the Court, but here in this City will I shut up all my sorrows, and never go to *Capua* there to intermix them with those delights, that *Alaric* and *Theodolinda* will enjoy after those obliging protestations, which in all likelihood they mutually made to each other. But immediately repenting, "Wherefore, said he, shall I let my Rival peaceably enjoy the company of the person whom I adore? and not go if it be but to interrupt his discourse, disturb his joy and be always in his sight? But alas, added he fetching a sigh, so far shall I be from disturbing *Alaric's* satisfaction, that I shall but go to be a witness of his success, I shall but go to behold my misfortune in his Countenance and in *Theodolinda's* eyes.

Thus he demurred a while upon that resolution of going to *Capua*, but his love afterwards enticing him to visit *Theodolinda*, he went to see her, and with a redoublement of grief, heard from her own lips, all that she had promised to *Alaric*. How generous soever my Master were, he could not endure patiently to hear the praises of so formidable a Rival, but interrupting *Theodolinda* with an air not usual, "Well Madam, answered he, with a resentment which he could not moderate, submit to the fate of a Prince on whom victory always attends, but never expect that *Wallia* should live to honour his Triumph. No, no, Madam, you shall never see me tyed to his Chariot, for your cruelty that would deserve me to that punishment, shall free me from it by that death which it forces me to seek.

Concluding

Concluding those words, he went his ways, absolutely determining to abide at *Consensum*, to the end he might be at his full liberty to abandon himself to his troubles, while all the rest of the Court went to divertise themselves in the pleasantest City of all *Italy*. Therefore it was that he sent me to those persons whom he most respected, to make his excuse. But after I had discharged my Commission, I was very much surpris'd to take notice that *Sigeric* was more discontented at it than any of the rest, and us'd all arguments imaginable to make him alter his resolution: but all his persuasions nothing prevail'd; for the pensive *Wallia* not only staid at home, but fell also into such a distemper of body, that had he been willing to have gone he could not. Well, Sir, to be short, there was a most magnificent Ball, Horse-Races and running of Chariots, and a small Sea-Fight upon the Lake *Vulturinum*, but the Magnificence of the Festival, as to the abundance, delicacy and rarity, was most admired by all the Court, though indeed they had not time to see all the variety which was intended: for the King found himself ill upon a sudden, and being less patient than he was wont to be, he resolv'd to leave *Capua*, and not stay to see the end of that pompous Feast: *Sigeric* endeavour'd all he could to have perswaded him to tarry, but *Alaric*, instead of returning an answer, retired into his Bed-Chamber. Immediately he sent for his most trusty Physicians, who had no sooner looked upon him, but they beheld him with astonishment without speaking a word. Their countenances and the quality of the Medicaments soon confirm'd the King in his suspicions, so that as soon as he had received some ease by vertue of those Antidotes which he had received, he would not stay a minute, but leaving a City where his secret enemy was in a condition to attempt any thing, he return'd to *Consensum* with as much speed as if he had been in perfect health.

In the mean time, *Wallia*, whose love, grief and distemper had increased altogether through *Theodolinda's* absence, no sooner understood that the fair Princess was return'd, but not being Master of his passions, he rose, notwithstanding his weakness, and ran where his heart was drawn by those potent spells, whose power it acknowledged. He found the Princess alone, and beholding her with eyes full of tenderness and languishment: *Will you not tell me yet, Madam, whether you are in the same resolution, to comply with the King of the Goths in the point of marriage? Not,* added he with a deep sigh, *that I pretend to that choice: but, Madam, there is something in it that so torments my mind to think that you should consult my Rival in such a doubt as this; that from hence forward, lest I should be expos'd to so terrible a misfortune, I absolutely renounce both your company and my life.*

He utter'd those words after so sad a manner, that *Theodolinda* was really moved, yet believing it became her to have that respect for the King of the Goths which she had promised him, Prince, said he, *I know the King my Father earnestly desires an alliance with Alaric, and that he will never encline to prefer you before those Kings that seek to be in amity with him: so that you see it only lies in Alaric's power, whether he will have Theodolinda or no: and therefore since he has promised not to force my will, and that it is impossible for me to be yours, wherefore should not I have a kindness for the King of the Goths, which being far from being prejudicial to you, may keep him constant to those thoughts which may always prove for our good? Must that Prince then, Madam, replied he, dispose of your affections? Would you have me provoke him, answered she interrupting him, or that I should incense him to prove my Master, instead of my Husband? I know not what I would have, replied he sighing, but it may be, I should think my self less unfortunate in dying suddenly, than to see you Queen of the Goths, and linger out a long and languishing life. Then 'tis with your consent, replied *Theodolinda* with a kind of disdain, that I should marry Alaric? I have told you already, answered *Wallia*, that I neither know what I would have, nor what it becomes me to desire: for you know, Madam, that having so much love, and so little hope, 'tis a very hard thing for me to preserve my reason entire.*

He concluded those words when the Sister of *Honorius* entred the Chamber, and no sooner had she cast her eyes upon my Master's countenance, but that taking compassion upon a Prince for whom she had so great a kindness and esteem, she spake to *Theodolinda* in his behalf; nor was it without good success, for the Princess of the *Huns* not daring to promise *Wallia*, and not caring at all to promise *Alaric*, thought it enough to shew, that her affections inclin'd toward my Master, not repenting however of those testimonies of her acknowledgment, which she had given the King of the Goths. *Placidia* would not give her off so; but as she was about to have put a smooth interpretation in *Wallia's* behalf, upon what *Theodolinda* had spoken in behalf of *Alaric*, one of the King's Attendants came in, and with a strange alteration in his countenance brought word, that the King's distemper increased to that height, that they began to be afraid of his life: that *Autalpb* and *Cleomira* were in the Chamber, and that the sick Prince only desired for his consolation to see those

two Princesses, together with *Wallia*. Thereupon they all three went to the Royal Apartment with all the speed they could make.

Alaric would have risen up to have saluted them, but his Physicians not thinking it convenient, “ Friends, *said he to them*, you have nothing more to do for me; for since I cannot end my life with honour at the head of my Army, as I had resolv’d to do, you shall not constrain the King of a warlike Nation to die in his Bed, like one that had neither the Dignity nor resolutions of *Alaric*. Thus *Autalpb*, *Cleomira*, and afterwards *Placidia*, *Theodolinda* and *Wallia* found him sitting in an Elbow Chair, and as they were about to have expressed their sorrows, *Sigeric* desired admission, complaining that there had been no regard had to his Rank and Quality; he sent in word, that he had not only never been inform’d of the King’s indisposition, but that he could not be permitted to come to pay those devours which so great a King had reason to expect from persons so near him in blood. *Alaric*, as feeble as he was, yet his blood rose at the very sound of *Sigeric*’s name, but in regard he had nothing but bare suspicions against that Prince, he only return’d him this answer: “ Let *Sigeric*, *said he*, have but a little more patience, for if he can but wait a short while longer, he will see me with much more joy than now.

Having by those few words given him to understand that it was he whom he suspected, he turn’d toward Prince *Autalpb*, and majestically addressing his speech to them, “ Brother, *said he*, my death will suddenly put you into the possession of my Throne: but remember your self I conjure you, and let not the greatness of your power range according to the dictates of your unbridled passions, but let your virtue give it those bounds which your people cannot prescribe. It may be you think it a fine thing to see the destinies of three fair Princesses at your disposal; but have a care that you forget not what you owe to persons of their Rank and Sex. Above all remember that the illustrious *Placidia* is the Daughter of the great *Theodosius*, and if she refuses you to be Queen of the *Goths*, instead of putting a force upon her inclinations, consider that she may look upon us as the destroyers of her Country, and Princes more than barbarous. As for the two Princesses of the *Huns* and *Tongres* I recommend them to you with more hopes to obtain the effect of my prayer: for since you can have no prejudice against them, I cannot imagine you will ever give them any cause to think themselves your prisoners. But, Brother, what am I not to say in the behalf of Prince *Wallia*? his Arm, his Prudence and his Generosity will support your Reign with Honour. You have nothing to do but to give him an Army to keep your People in awe, and your Neighbours in fear. There is nothing can shake your Throne if he uphold it; and if the *Visigoths* will give that honour to so valiant and generous a Prince which is due to his virtue, I make no question but you will quickly lay the foundation of a lasting Monarchy. Besides this National advantage, I desire one kindness in particular: for I must acknowledge, that having a very great affection for the Princess *Theodolinda*, I cannot die in peace unless I leave *Wallia* in a condition to protect her against *Sigeric*: and therefore once more, Brother, *added he with all the vehemence he could*, I recommend to your care these four illustrious persons.

At those words he fetched a deep sigh, his spirits being wasted. Afterwards having kissed *Placidia*’s and *Cleomira*’s hands, and given his own to *Autalpb*, but still holding fast *Wallia*’s and *Theodolinda*’s: at first he beheld them without speaking a word, but soon after his love, and the strength of his courage exciting him to do his utmost, he pronounced these words, which he accompanied with some tears “ Prince, *said he to my Master*, I leave my Scepter to *Autalpb*, and *Theodolinda* to *Wallia*: but how advantageous soever you may think this share, I cannot be absolutely satisfied without giving you some power to preserve her to your self. You know full well, that he that aims at the Princes of the *Huns* must be a King, and that you cannot with justice think to reign in *Barcelona*, since both *Autalpb* and *Sigeric* are your elders. But without entrenching upon their Privileges and Rights, without doubt you may easily obtain the Kingdom of *Aquitain*, which has been hitherto denied us, but that which *Honorius* will never refuse to *Wallia*’s merit, by the mediation of *Placidia* and *Constance*. Yes, Prince, by taking part with the *Romans*, you may obtain all that Country of *Gallie*, and the possession of the most charming Princess that ever was. But when you are arriv’d at so great a happiness, will you not forget the unfortunate *Alaric*, will you ever mention more his unhappy name to the divine *Theodolinda*? Oh, Sir, cryed *Wallia*, throwing himself at the feet of his King, and transported with acknowledgment and grief, *wherefore is it not possible for me with the loss of all these glorious hopes, and the overthrow of my life it self, wherefore is it not possible for me to divert this fatal blow that threatens us?*

Alaric mov’d with his Generosity, embraccd my Master. and then turning toward *Theodolinda*,

dolinda, and beholding her for some time with tears and love in his eyes, *Divine Princess*, said he fetching a profound sigh, *I could no longer live without a crime, for crossing the affection of two such illustrious persons, so well deserving each the other: And therefore now I dye willingly, though I die wearing those precious Chains wherewith you fetter'd me, and which I now resign to my Rival. Yes Madam, I resign them to Wallia as to the Prince, who of all the Princes in the world best deserves to enjoy your virtues. But Princess, will you absolutely forget Alaric? Will you not sometimes pity his end so much to be deplored?* But then *Theodolinda* and *Wallia* feeling the sinews of their constancy and courage fail, lost the use of speech, and to such obliging questions only return'd him the doleful answers of their Tears; while the King of the *Goths* casting his farewell look upon the Princess of the *Huns*, took her by the hand and kissed it, tasting so much sweetness thereby as seemed to make his departure ealie, which some few minutes after ensuing, left us all unspeakably disconsolate.

The *Visigoths* had no sooner lost their renowned Prince, but their sorrows were attended with many troubles: For in short, Sir, when our Princes and the most considerable Officers of our Army, were assembled to acknowledge the new King, *Sigeric* put in his claim to be chosen Lieutenant General of the Crown, pretending that *Autalpb* having no nearer Kinsman, they could not in justice refuse him what was his due by birth. No sooner had he made his harangue, but there ran a murmuring noise among all the *Goths* that were of his party, and among those to whom his humour, and the circumstances of *Alaric's* death were too well known, to permit them to approve his pretensions. *Wallia* for his part being an utter enemy to all acts of violence, and having besides particular reason to oppose *Sigeric's* advancement, made answer that all the great employments and Commands, lay absolutely in *Autalpb's* disposal. *And if it were the will of heaven, added he, to afflict us with a second loss, we may believe the Goths would be so just as to obey any Prince, who had right by birth to rule over them, provided he were not unworthy the command.*

Sigeric was about to have interrupted my Master, and to have lanced out into a fury, when the King commanded him to be silent. But notwithstanding the Antipathy which he had against him, he only told him then very moderately, *That he was not yet of years to undergo so great a charge: That before he demanded such an employment, it behoved him to learn more experience in affairs, and to get more repute in the Army.*

Sigeric nipped with so severe a reproof, blushed, held his tongue and gave *Wallia's* a sour look: And dissembling his revenge during the ceremony, he was no sooner got out, but having got together the Heads of his faction, he protested against all that had been done during *Autalpb's* Coronation. Afterwards while the King was consulting privately with my Master, to settle the present confusion of things, *Sigeric* who had already laid his plot, not only carried away *Theodolinda* by force, but also met *Autbaric* upon the way, who came to receive her with a party out of his Garison: Insomuch that *Theodolinda* was upon the rode to *Capua*, before he could be in any condition to pursue. True it is that the enamoured Prince, having with an inconceivable diligence, drawn out a considerable strength to follow him, flew out of *Consensum* with a party of a Thousand horse, after the Ravishers of *Theodolinda*. Nor had he marched with that fury long before he overtook *Sigeric*, who had time to prepare himself with a party of three thousand horse: And being a Prince of courage he brought up the Rear, in case of any opposition that might come from *Consensum*, And being advertis'd of his coming, he sent away *Autbaric* before with five hundred Horse, to guard the Princess to the Castle of *Capua*, while he made a halt at the head of his own Brigade.

Wallia, notwithstanding the inequality of number, considering it was for the recovery of *Theodolinda*, never stood to consider what he had to do, but having exhorted and ranged his men, he thundered upon his enemies in a most terrible manner, however his virtue would not permit him to fall directly foul, upon a Prince that might happen one day to be his King: So that perceiving *Sigeric* at the head of a Squadron, he turned his fury upon another which was led by a Kinsman of *Autbaric*, but understanding that his Rival, that the Ravisher of *Theodolinda* challenged him, and was coming directly toward him, he looked upon his former scruple as very unnecessary at such a time: So that there began a most terrible fight between *Wallia*, who was one of the most valiant men in the world, and *Sigeric* whose courage was supported by Love and Antipathy. Their Lances being shattered in a thousand pieces, gave way to weapons more conformable to my Masters impatience, and the two fierce Rivals met with loud cries, and laid at each other so furiously, that the very fire sparkled out of their armour.

Wallia incensed with so much resistance, and reproaching himself with it as a new injury done to *Theodolinda*, discharged so furious a reverie blow upon the head of his Adversa-

ry, as made him reel again: For the ponderous blade lighting upon that part where the Helmet joyns to the Cuirafs, hewed out a considerable Gap into his shoulder. My Master was about to have redoubled his blow and compleated his victory, when of a sudden he was parted by two great bodies, that came to charge each other in that place: So that he was constrained to turn the stream of his valour another way. In the mean time our party encouraged by the Achievements of their Chieftain, and the justice of their cause had got an entire victory had not Night come on. We lost about two hundred, they above a thousand; so that *Sigeric* was almost at his wits end, and his fury not being to be moderated by his disgrace, he wreck'd his malice upon his own people, he taxed them of cowardise, and rallied them again in expectation of a new charge, notwithstanding his loss of blood and men, True it is that the principal Officers of the faction, knowing that by his fall they should be all ruined past redemption, represented to him, that if he made a halt he would but give *Wallia* leisure to recruit, so that it were better for him to retire to *Capua*, where he might get advantageous Articles for himself, and also obtain the possession of *Theodolinda*.

Sigeric moved by these reasons, and at length perswaded by his love, was now altogether for seeing the fair prey, which he had got into his clutches, however that he might not seem to make more hast than good speed to her by a shameful flight, he made a kind of a retreating fight, to the end he might give some satisfaction to his courage. But alas, his resistance was very feeble, for besides that *Wallia* charged him with an irresistible vigour, *Autalpb* sent us a fresh recruit not only to reduce a Rebel, that aspir'd to be his associate in the Sovereign Authority, but also to please *Placidia* who tenderly loved *Theodolinda*, and had a particular esteem for my Master.

Thus we drove them before us to the very Gates of their Sanctuary, and when we came before *Capua*, we were above four thousand men. Immediately *Wallia* sent summons to the Town in the name of the King of the *Goths*, and to incense the Inhabitants against the Garrison, he posted himself so as to cut off all provisions, that came from the Lake *Vulturnum*. In the mean time the body of the Army came up, with the battering Rams to force the Walls if the Town refused to yield, while *Sigeric* on the other side shewed himself publicly to the inhabitants of *Capua*, he thought it convenient to do some signal piece of service for a City, where it was of so much necessity to him to maintain his Authority. To this purpose having given *Aubaric* orders to keep my Master in play with a thousand horse, while he himself charged those that lay upon the *Vulturnum*, who resisted stoutly for some time, but *Sigeric* breaking in among them at length forced ours to give ground, and beat them as far as a fort that we had raised to make our selves Masters of the Lake. Strangely was he puffed up, when *Wallia* returning from pursuing *Aubaric* to the very drawbridge of *Capua*, renewed the fight, and making his way to the Ravisher of *Theodolinda*, he flew upon him covered with blood and dust as he was with that impetuous violence, that all the witnesses of his fury that were his enemies trembled, fearing the ruine of themselves by the loss of their Captain. Nevertheless *Sigeric* stood his ground, and put himself into a posture to receive his enemy, like a person whom no sight of danger could scare; when his Commanders drew him by force to his place of retreat, where he might be able to hold out a good while, and make advantageous Articles for himself and them. And indeed *Capua* was at that time one of the greatest Cities of *Italy* next to *Rome*, and besides the strength of the place, the Rebels had a considerable party in our Army. My Master therefore understanding the divisions that were among us, and fearing that the inconveniences of a long siege, might cause the *Goths* to mutiny and thereby strengthen the faction of *Sigeric*, he resolved to carry the Town by storm, how rash soever the attempt seemed to be. To that purpose he order'd me to advance toward the Citadel, and to make as if I intended to assault it, in the mean time he marched toward that part of the City, which was farthest off from the Castle.

When the night was a little advanced, I gave a most terrible Alarm to the besieged, at which very time my Master with a thousand *Visigoths*, carrying each a Ladder in his hand and a faggot at his back filled up a good part of the Ditch, and setting their Ladders to the wall, which was continually pelted by his own Slingers, which he had planted at a convenient distance for that purpose, and magnanimously mounting, and having slain two or three of those that opposed his laying hold on one of the Battlements, he so scared the rest that he presently got upon the wall, and being bravely seconded by those that followed him in this amazement of the besieged, he leaped down into the City, and opening the Gates to the rest of his Troops, got possession of all the advantages which he desired for the reducing the Castle: So that *Sigeric* now in extremity, was forced to come to a Capitulation and to sur-

render *Theodolinda*. *Wallia* no sooner understood where the Princess of the *Goths* was but thither he ran with all speed, and casting himself at her feet, *You are at liberty, Madam*, he cryed, transported with love and joy, *you are at liberty, and by the consent of the King of the Goths, Wallia will be your convoy where-ever you command him. If Placidia be still at Consensum*, answered she, and raising him up again, *I am contented, generous Wallia, to stay with her till I find an opportunity to return into Dacia.*

Her last words caus'd the enamoured Prince to sigh, *Oh, Madam*, said he, *will you be so cruel to part from us, to leave the Sister of Honorius alone, and to go into a Country where perhaps I may never see you again. You are too just*, replied *Theodolinda*, *to think that I have not staid long enough here, and that I have been a very sufficient time absent from the King my Father. Not that I would forsake Placidia, could my feeble conversation stand her in any solid stead: but, alas, Wallia, what can be hope for from Theodolinda's friendship? Rather, cryed Wallia, interrupting her, what may she not promise to her self from your affection? I would be glad*, replied she, *that the Princess of the Romans might be happy in the return of Constance, and though you are a Visigoth, and that I am so highly obliged to your Generosity upon many accounts, yet I must confess, I would leave you for Placidia's sake restore Rome again into the possession of Honorius. But since it is not in my power to do such kindnesses as these, 'twill be enough for me to go and share the sorrows of my Friend, if Autalph renew his persecutions upon the death of a Prince whose virtue was an Asylum against all violence. And if the King of the Goths, replied my Master, treats not the Princess of the Romans with that respect which is due to her, will you then presently be gone to Alba Julia? Is there a necessity, if Autalph prove unjust, and Placidia unfortunate, that Wallia must prepare himself to suffer the torments of Theodolinda's absence?*

Those mournful words so pensively he uttered, that the Princess, touched with compassion, beheld him with a most obliging air: but in regard she made no answer, and for that there appeared something of fear in her eyes, the enamoured Prince urged her so seriously, that at length, *What would you have me say?* cryed she. *Alas*, replied my Master, *you will not yet tell me what I would fain understand from your lips: for I would fain know what thoughts you treasure in your Breast in favour of me? A Boon you may the more freely grant me, now Alaric is gone. Speak then, dear Princess, most passionately added he, speak I conjure you, and tell me for what destiny the divine Princess whom I adore has reserved me?* Then *Theodolinda* blushed, and casting a glance of tenderness from her fair eyes, *Ah, Wallia*, answered she at length, *I have a Father, and you are not a King.* Having pronounced those few words with an utterance that testified her affection for my Master, she looked upon the ground like one ashamed, willing to conclude a communication wherein the thought her self too far engaged before she was aware. Nevertheless, the passionate *Wallia* having considered the sense of her words in that pleasing perplexity which had puzzled the Princess: *Provided*, cryed he, *the divine Theodolinda's heart be not unkind to mine, Fortune and my Sword may prove favourable to me, and by their assistance I may acquire sufficient to make good those glorious hopes which you allow me.*

Thus those two illustrious personages concluded that discourse, though they had several others upon the Road to *Consensum*. And all the way did *Wallia* taste those sweets which he had not been acquainted with before, being permitted to discover his passion in all those expressions that were capable to set forth the violence of his love. And *Theodolinda* for her part manifested to the enamoured Prince a tenderness so obliging, which quite transported him with joy and acknowledgment. But no sooner were they come to the King of the *Goths*'s Court, but their satisfaction gave way to several new occasions of sorrow. They observed much confusion there, they descryed many marks of discontent in *Placidia's* face, and took notice, that they who took her part, were very often forced to excuse the rudeness of King *Autalph*. For he no sooner saw himself absolute, but he began to shew the power of his Sovereignty. You know without doubt how he used the Sister of *Honorius*, and how that incomparable Lady, after all the resistance she could make, was constrain'd at length to marry *Autalph*, while her Religion would not permit her to avoid the match by a voluntary death. You have also heard how that *Attalus*, taking advantage of our divisions, usurped the name of *Emperour*; how he kept the Princess of the *Tongres* a long time shut up in a Tower, after he had stollen her away from us; and how that Rebel was afterwards beaten, taken, and sent prisoner to the Prince whose Majesty he had usurped. As for *Autalph*, he being charmed with the Beauties of his Queen, left *Rome* and *Italy* entire to the possession of her native Sovereign: only before he marched from *Barcinona* the Capital City of his Dominions, he sent *Theodolinda* back to the Court of *Honorius*, being thereto requested by *Placidia* for several reasons. For indeed the Rape of *Cleomira* and *Sigeric's* humour

humour made her the more careful of the Princess of the *Huns*. On the other side, she thought that such an incomparable Princess as she, while she staid for an opportunity to return into *Dacia*, might work her Brother to do an act of Generosity for a Princess's sake, who had had so great a respect for his Sister. To which purpose she thus reasoned with *Theodolinda* before their departure: *Fair Princess*, quoth she, in the presence of *Wallia*, with tears in her eyes, *I am now by the will of Heaven Autalph's Wife, and my Fortune is so linked to his, that I am no longer permitted to think of him whom once I loved so innocently. I dare not pray for my Relations, nor for my ruined Country, if the Prince, whose interests must govern mine, should resolve either to march against Rome or Honorius himself, I must go farther, dear Princess, seeing I find my self obliged to shun your company; for you are so likely to take away from me some part of that affection which is due from me to the King of the Goths, that your company otherwise so charming and alluring, seems now as dangerous as it was really charming before. Ah, my fair Queen*, cryed *Theodolinda*, *your conscience is too nice; so that instead of parting from you, I must blame your virtue so severe to my prejudice. However*, replied she, *now that I am the King my Husband's, and must be his alone, 'twill be a difficult thing for me to refuse you a share of my heart*—— How! said the Princess of the *Huns*, impatiently interrupting her, *will you then no longer love me? Not so, dear Princess*, replied *Placidia*, *but to tell you truth, I would not that your presence should augment my affection for you; for I fear 'twill weaken my affection to the King of the Goths. And you, Prince*, said she, addressing her self to my Master, *do you not take my part, or do you slight the joyful honour of conducting the charming Theodolinda to the Court of Honorius? I have perswaded Autalph to make an alliance with the Romans by your mediation: and in regard Honorius has that esteem for you which he has not for any of the Goths, I make no question but he will easily grant Prince Wallia those Provinces which the great Theodosius promised your Countrymen. The care which Alaric took of your fortune, puts us in remembrance to labour in your advancement, as well as to humble the pride of Sigeric: so that the intentions of so great a King being conformable to Autalph's inclinations, you may be sure that nothing shall be omitted to render the journey which I propose successful. Autalph shall not limit your Commission; and I my self will write in your behalf, so as to produce some effect: and it may be also*, added she with a blush, *you will regain a Friend zealous for your interests, and in sufficient credit with Honorius.*

You may well conjecture, Sir, that my Master was easily perswaded, and that *Placidia's* discourse gave him hopes, which otherwise he durst not have conceived. Nevertheless, before he would return an answer in testimony of his acknowledgment, he consulted the fair eyes of his Princess with a passionate look, seeming to demand whether *Theodolinda* consented to the Queen of the *Goths* proposal: and not observing any reluctance to the establishment of his good fortune in the eyes of her that was to raise it, he return'd *Placidia* thanks, and then pursuing his design, "Madam, said he, I would renounce both *Aquitain*, and all the Kingdoms of the world, would the divine *Theodolinda* vouchsafe to crown all those Grandeurs, and add thereto one happiness infinitely above all the Empires in the earth. "Think you, replied the Sister of Honorius, that your lovely Princess is so unjust, as neither to be mov'd with *Wallia's* virtue, nor so many services which that generous Prince has perform'd for her sake? You are little acquainted with her upon my word, if you think her capable of such a coyness; nor did I ever observe that she ever gave you cause to have any such suspicion. "Ah, Madam, replied the enamour'd *Wallia*, that I should have so little reason to be at quiet in my mind, seeing I am not able to gather any precise or punctual answer from the lips of my Princess, so that my heart continually floats in a cruel uncertainty. For 'tis very probable that the King of the *Huns* may be advis'd of a sudden to make some alliance for the advantage of his Kingdom, where I am every moment likely to be depriv'd of the Princess whom I adore; for there is no doubt but the over-nice *Theodolinda* will certainly obey those commands, though never so fatal to the fortunate *Wallia*. I must confess, replied the Princess, I shall never dispute the case. "Then confess to boot, replied *Placidia*, that you will never dispute the case, if you are permitted the choice of Prince *Wallia*.

Theodolinda giving no other answer to those words, than by her silence and a modest blush, that displayed it self in her cheeks, my Master addressing his speech to her with a vehemence accompanied with submission: "Since you return no answer, Madam, said he, you desire there should be nothing of certainty in those hopes with which you are requested to bless me. "Ah, *Wallia*, replied she, you have little reason to complain, since I have sufficiently declared to you the meaning of my thoughts, by permitting you the boldness to urge me so far, without fearing to displeas me. "Very good, replied *Placi-*

“*dia*, and do you think that to be a plenary satisfaction to the Prince? Do you think it
 “does not become him rather to have those assurances which he demands from your own
 “lips? For my part, *pursued she*, I will know before we part, whether *Theodolinda* and
 “*Wallia* shall be happy or no: promise me then, dear Princess, the matter wholly depends
 “upon you; and therefore vanquish I conjure you a nicety of less moment than *Wallia’s*
 “merit; and which with some sort of justice may give place to that affection which you
 “have for *Placidia*. I find, fair Queen, replied the Princess of the *Huns*, that I must obey
 “your commands; and therefore I declare to Prince *Wallia*, that he shall never have any reason to
 “complain of his destiny, if *Theodolinda* can contribute to his happiness.

She could not conclude those words without blushing, and then continuing her speech
 on purpose to recover her self, *Tousee*, said she with more boldness, *what you have obliged*
me to say, yet not repenting of my conformity to the illustrious Placidia’s thoughts, besides that it
would not be civility to disobey the Queen of the Goths in Autalph’s Court. My Master o-
 verjoyed to hear so charming a protestation, testified his acknowledgment to both Princess-
 ses, but in such expressions as are not easily repeated by one not inspired with the same pas-
 sion.

Thus, Sir, stood things at what time *Theodolinda* and the Queen of the *Goths* parted.
 The former took her way for *Ravenna*, accompanied by *Wallia*, and the greatest part of the
Roman Ladies who had accompanied that Princess: and *Placidia* in a short time after set
 forward for *Barcinona* with the King her Husband. My Master had all his Letters, his
 Commissions, and his instructions in the most full and amplest manner: and being thus fur-
 nished with the means of establishing his fortune, and having also every moment the oppor-
 tunity of enjoying the company of his beloved Mistress, he forgot all his past troubles,
 pleasing himself in the assurance of his hopes. *Honorius* received *Theodolinda* with the same
 testimonies of his affection which he could have given *Placidia*: and *Wallia* he treated
 also with so many marks of his esteem and confidence, that only *Constance* could have ex-
 pected such a welcome. In a few days the alliance between the two Nations was made;
Aquitain was promised to *Wallia*; and *Honorius*, whose mind was wholly set upon *Bellami-
 ra*, undertook to unite my Master’s and the fortune of the Princess of the *Huns* together.
 On the other side, *Autalph* sent for *Wallia*, and after he had conferred with him, and set-
 tled affairs together, he gave him twenty thousand men, either to serve the *Romans* if they
 had occasion, or to take possession of that part of *Gallia* which was promised him. But
 you know, Sir, that there happened such strange revolutions afterwards, both among the
Visigoths, as also in the Court of *Honorius*, that my Master’s good fortune was very much
 disturbed, if we may not fear its total overthrow. In short, *Sigeric* understanding *Au-
 talph’s* intentions, plotted against him more than ever; and by gifts and promises wrought
 so far to discredit his Government, and render the King odious to the people and the Sol-
 diers, that the people first murmured against their Prince, and soon after brake out into open
 Rebellion: *Autalph* was killed in his Palace, and *Placidia* forced to flee from a City where
 her party was not strong enough to assist her against the Rebels. *Wallia* no sooner under-
 stood the news of this terrible revolution, but he marches for his own Country with all the
 principal Officers of the Army; but notwithstanding all the haste he could make, he heard
 that *Sigeric* was crowned King before he came to the Borders of *Spain*. And therefore
 though it is very probable he might have made great alterations again, in regard of the high
 authority he had among the *Visigoths*, yet considering that his Enemy was his King, that
 the crimes he had committed were done when he was a private person, and that he sat in
Autalph’s Throne by right of succession, he resolved not to give any pernicious President
 to those that sought to authorize their ambition. However, he went to *Tarracona*, where
 he understood that *Autalph’s* Widow was retired, offering to serve that fair Queen to the
 utmost of his power. *Placidia* having returned him her thanks, and given him to under-
 stand the comfort she enjoyed by his presence: I know, pursued she, by what means this se-
 dition was raised so fatal to the King my Husband; yet after all that, I have no great reason to
 revenge his death.

Then she enquired after *Theodolinda*, and told him how willing she should be to return to
 the Court of *Honorius*. In answer whereto, my Master gave her a full account of all things,
 and promised withal to convoy her safe into *Italy*. But the Queen of *Albion* being then at
Tarracona, whither she came to be resolved by *Placidia* in certain jealousies of *Constantine’s*
 fidelity. The two Queens entered into such a strict league of Friendship, that they resolved
 never to part but in the Territories of the *Gauls*, and to travel together some part of each
 others way in their return to their native Country. *Octavia*, to whom renown had several
 times reported *Wallia’s* famous Deeds was very glad to be acquainted with such a Prince,
 giving

giving him such marks of her esteem, as were little different from the Queen of the *Goths*. Thereupon those three illustrious personages having given orders for their departure, set forward with a numerous Train toward *Gallia Narbonnensis*, where my Master's Army lay. But when we came thither, news was brought us, that made us alter our Road and intentions. For my Master was inform'd by a *Visigoth* Knight, that *Theodolinda* was gone from *Rome*, that *Honorius* set out in a short while after to attend the Princesses to the Frontiers of *Germany*: How, said *Wallia*, impatiently interrupting him, is *Honorius* become my Rival? Have the eyes of my Princess kindled a fire so prejudicial to my hopes? All people would think so, replied he, and you your self might well think so: however, upon my word you have no reason to fear him. But the truth, Sir, is, that *Theodolinda* and *Bellamira* having held a correspondence together all along, the Emperour discovered at length that they had appointed a Rendezvous: so that he resolv'd to follow the Princess incognito, that he might come upon the charming Princess before she was aware. But, cryed *Wallia*, very impatiently interrupting him, know you not where *Theodolinda* intends to stop? In *Pharamond's* Army no question, replied the *Visigoth*, for as I crossed the Province of the Romans, I understood that *Constance*, *Artabure*, *Taxander* and the Princess *Cleomira* are now in the Camp of the Franks.

My Master finding so much probability in his discourse, desired to go thither where he thought he should find his Princess: and having told *Placidia* the whole Story, as it was related to him, only leaving out any mention of *Constance*, he found her easily disposed to change her journey: *Octavia* also not being willing to forsake the Sister of *Honorius*, has crossed along with her all the Provinces of *Gallia*, intending to take shipping in *Belgia* when she returns into her own Kingdom. Thus came these two Princesses to the Banks of the River *Rhine*, and *Wallia* as well to serve the great *Constance*, as to preserve his Title to *Aquitain*, is returned toward his own Army, with an intention to march them back to the relief of *Pharamond*. However, finding in himself a reluctancy to fight against an Army where you are engaged, notwithstanding all the reasons that urged him to take the other side, he sent me to make his most solemn excuse: and for my part, I know no better excuse to make, than by relating to you the story of his amours, to shew you the reasons that tie him to the interests of the Romans.

The End of the Second Book of the Eleventh Part.

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK III.

Hilderic had no sooner made an end of speaking, but the Prince testified the satisfaction which he received from his Relation; giving him to understand with much joy, that he perceived in the fortune of *Wallia* many probabilities of favourable success. But it being now late, the *Visigoth* retired to his Chamber; and *Balamir* went to Bed, with less disposition to sleep, than to muse upon the charming Idea that was always hovering in his fancy. Sometimes he was transported with joy when he reflected upon *Bellamira's* affection, and called to mind what he had heard of her unshaken constancy. Nevertheless, when he came to examine the severity of her last orders, and found himself not able to obey them, he muttered in his heart, and privately upbraided the divine Lady that he adored. He passed the night in that uncertainty, and day appeared before he could precisely tell whether he had most cause to think himself happy in the prosperity of his amours, or to complain of his hard fate. In the mean time, it behov'd him to be gone to fight *Harmaxes*; for which purpose he quickly made himself ready, and got him out of the Trenches. But because he was inform'd that *Mundisic* sought all opportunities to fight him, with whom his Generosity would not permit him to encounter, not so much regarding his valour, as his wounds, he left *Telanor* in the Camp, and putting on a plain Coat of Arms that he might not be known, he took the direct way to the Wood, believing that *Mundisic* would stay for him in the high way between the Camps. But while he is thus parted from the *Cimbrian* Army, the Princess *Albisinda's* Esquire comes thither from *Cologne* in that post haste as put them in expectation of some strange news. Presently he went to the King of the *Suevians*, to give him an account of the reason of his return, which was to tell him that the Citizens of *Agrippina* were resolv'd to detain the Queens of the *Cimbrians* and *Turingiens*, the Princesses of *Suevia* and the *Lombards* in their City till the end of the war. The Father of *Albisinda* seem'd to be less surpris'd than indeed he was: but in regard he was slow to demand any farther Relation, the Squire went on with his message: "Our Princesses, said he, were no sooner arrived at *Cologne*, but they were received by the Magistrates with all the submission of Loyal Subjects; and when it was perceived that they intended to go farther to meet the *Constantinopolitan* Troops, the Magistrates came again and besought them to change their resolutions, and to stay in their City, there being no place more convenient for their Sex and Dignity than a Spacious and Noble Town." But the Princess of *Suevia*, in obedience to your commands, persuaded the *Cimbrian* Queen to meet the Army. *Rosamond* preferring *Albisinda's* satisfaction on before any other consideration, return'd a civil answer to the Citizens of *Agrippina*, but instead of giving ear to their request, gave order for their departure: thereupon the people mutinied, and threatened to take Arms, while *Martian* and *Ambiomer* endeavour'd to bridle their insolency with such as they could procure to stand by them. But that which was most to be wonder'd at, was the remissness and tameness of the *Persian* Prince that used to be so zealous, and so amorous; and not only so, but he encouraged the Deputies that came to speak to the Queen. He told the Queen that she had no reason to blame the Citizens of *Cologne*, if fortune having by accident thrown into their City a

“Gage sufficient to save them harmless from the dammages of the war, wherever the victory fell, they let not slip the opportunities that were put into their hands.

While he spake in that manner, Briomer was seen riding from street to street, exhorting the people to stand firm to that resolution, which as it was thought he himself had inspir'd into them. The Princesses no sooner understood that the *Bohemian* was in *Agrippina*, but they no farther questioned who had laid the foundations of that tumult: And examining *Varanez's* proceeding, they made as little doubt of his being in confederacy with the *Cimbrian*, and that your Majesty was not ignorant of the accident: And therefore they thought it convenient, rather than to venture the lives of *Ambiomer* and *Martian*, and for fear of having any thing of ill usage put upon them, not agreeable to the respect due to their quality; they sent me, Sir, for your advice upon an adventure so surprizing. Ought they not to wonder, replied the King of *Suevia*, that the City should be loth to let them go, when their presence is so profitable to the inhabitants? Or is it for persons of their Sex to refuse such a security as that when it is offered?

By that brisk answer *Albisinda's* Squire rightly judged, that his Mistress's Father had more than an ordinary share in the violence offer'd to the Princesses, and therefore knowing and fearing his humour he said no more. But the King of *Sueden* for some time eagerly beholding him, in regard he had often felt his pulse but knew not what to think of him, now tryed him again in this manner.

Vinderic, said he, I never thought I was deceived, when I advanced you to the service of my Daughter, believing you to be a faithful Servant, and that you would never prefer the slight rewards of *Albisinda*, before the substantial favours of your Prince, which are to employ you in the most important affairs of my house, and to give you other opportunities to raise your fortunes: To oblige thee yet more I will trust thee with a secret, and in a few words let thee understand the reason of this action. Know then that *Briomer* and I have taken notice, that there is a wonderful kindness between *Balamir* and our irreconcilable Enemy, which private amity has given us alarms so much the more terrible, by how much the more dangerous we apprehend the effects of it must be. For certain it is that *Balamir* carries a very great sway with *Rosamond*, and that she a foolish Princess, has a kindness for him whom she ought mortally to hate: So that the Prince of the *Huns* having all the *Cimbrians* under his command, and their Queen at his beck, will not fail to oblige *Pharamond*, to the end he may give him the possession of *Hunnimonda*. By this pernicious exchange shall our league be dissolved, the murderer of *Theobald* and *Vindimir*, shall triumph over mine and *Briomer's* antipathy, and thou wilt see me die for grief, after the overthrow of all my designs. For this cause we thought fit to remove *Rosamond* from the Camp, and to drill her into a strong City, whose interest it is to keep her safe. *Briomer* no less courageous, than faithful to his Master whom he has lost, is gone to *Cologne* to keep the hearts of the Citizens firm, and you see that *Varanez* is of our opinion, to whom we imputed the design as being a Prince, that has a natural antipathy against *Pharamond*. In the mean time this Army shall advance toward *Agrippina*, and there joyning with that which comes from the East, we shall be able not only to secure a place, where we have stored so inestimable a treasure, but also to defend it against the King of the *Franks* and all the world beside.

Having thus declared to you what concerns our party in general, I must discover now my own particular interests: You may easily guess *Vinderic*, what an affliction it is to me to see *Viridomar* in *Pharamond's* Camp, and to hear how the Coward fights for the Sister of the most odious of all my Enemies. Unnatural bruit, be forget that that very *Pharamond* whom he so ignominiously courts, killed his Brother, robbed me not only of a Son, but also of an eldest Son and the Heir to my Crown. I have laboured all I can to reduce this ingrateful, that so obstinately disobeyes me, and to reunite him to my Fatherly affection, but to the grief of my heart, all my endeavours have proved vain. I must now seek other ways to accomplish my ends, since this perfidious youth has deserted me, I must get into my power the absolute Mistress of his will, and to recover my only Son, I must have my enemies Sister at my disposal. You may contribute to this double satisfaction which I hope for, and I doubt not but you will perform your duty, chusing rather to assure to those rewards which you may expect at my hands, than to dye tormented for betraying your Sovereign. You are only to go to the Camp of the *Franks*, to see *Viridomar* as if you had been sent by his Sister, and to tell him what has happened at *Cologne* as a Cloak of your coming. You may tell him then that *Albisinda* desires you to see the Princess *Polyxena*, and to complement her in her behalf. This is what I would have at present, and be assured that though the command be slight, I shall measure my liberality by the importance of your service, rather than by the pains which you take.

Vinderic overjoyed to be a sharer in the secrets of the King, promised him to obey his orders with all exactness and fidelity imaginable, and as he was preparing to be gone to

Pharamond's Army, there was a rumour spread it self in the *Cimbrian* Tents, growing still louder and louder till it came to the King of *Suevia's* Quarters: Thereupon the King desirous to understand the reason, was about to have sent out, when of a sudden there entered three or four Officers into his Chamber looking very melancholy, that brought along with them a Knight, who presently averred that *Balamir* was slain. The dissembling King counterfeited both wonder and affliction in his eyes, and manifesting a desire to know the circumstances of an accident which he called so fatal, he commanded a short Relation to be made him, not so much out of compassion as to feed his revenge, with such tidings as he had impatiently looked for. Thereupon the person who was brought before him, began his relation and told him, that he saw *Balamir* run through in several places of the body, dead and stretched forth upon the ground, that several of the *Franks* had taken away his body, and carried it probably into their own Camp. That the Prince had defended himself even to admiration, but was at length forced to yield to number, and the obstinacy of those that assailed him.

At those words the King of *Suevia* seeming to be moved for the death of *Balamir*, cried out aloud, that the whole confederacy had sustained a very great loss, for that he believed there was no person in the Army, who had won greater fame by his honourable Achievements. Then making a shew as if he desired to be better inform'd, the Crowd that was in his Chamber retired out of respect, and the Soldier approaching very near him, *Well then*, said the King with a low voice and an apparent satisfaction, which till then he had dissembled; *are my orders obeyed? is it certain that Balamir is slain? He is slain without all peradventure*, answered the other: *But*, replied the King, *are you sure you are not deceived? Not at all*, added the cut-throat, *for though the courage and valour of the Prince of the Huns had not made it apparent, yet his arms, remarkable for the Lyons painted upon them, were a sufficient testimony of our not being mistaken. And where are your Companions*, replied the King somewhat disturb'd: *We have lost three*, answered the other, *the rest I believe will return suddenly to the Camp*. The King of *Suevia* being thus settled in his mind, sent away the Soldier, and published the death of *Balamir* through the whole Army.

This mortal report strook all the *Cimbrians* into a deadly consternation, and among the rest all persons that honoured virtue, were sensibly afflicted. The faithful *Telanor* was like one pierced with a Thunderbolt, but resolving to search into every particular of an accident; that concerned a person much more dear to him than his own life, away he posted to inform himself more exactly, and no sooner was he satisfied as he desired to be, but he felt a considerable abatement of his grief. In short, he judged by the relation which they made him that it was *Mundisic* who was slain, knowing that *Balamir* had not put on his Arms painted with Lyons that day, and not believing that he had taken that Rode where the murder was said to be committed: So that after he had out of his affection to his Sovereign, bewailed the death of his Son, he more admired the justice of heaven, in the reward of so signal a punishment. For indeed *Mundisic* lost his life, in the violent design that was laid against his Brother, and *Balamir* escaped the danger by means of his generosity, that avoided an enemy, whose obstinate malice dispens'd with a circumspection so exact. Though *Telanor* no way doubted of the truth, yet he thought it not convenient to disabuse the world, believing that the secret enemies of his Master, acted less warily in the strength of their belief: So that it was probable he might discover their thoughts, and the motives that had arm'd them against the life of so great a Prince, as well in the Forest of *Lisurgis* before, as now upon the Rode between the two Camps. He had a notable suspicion of the Kings of *Suevia* and the *Herules*, and if his generosity forbore not to stop there, prudence yet enjoined him not to omit any means to secure a life, which had been fought after from time to time by enemies so dangerous.

Thereupon he went to the principal of the *Cimbrian* Commanders, and in regard he was assured of their fidelity to his Master, he discovered to them without any more to do, what he knew in reference to the Prince. Afterwards he conjured them to be ready to fight for the interests of their Prince, if those enemies whom his vertue had raised him up, should make more open attempts upon his life, having twice already missed their secret contrivances.

The *Bobemians* had so great a veneration for *Balamir*, thrt they were overjoyed to hear, that the report of his death was false, and having promised all things to the faithful Squire, that he could expect from their affection, they went to order their affairs with all the prudence, requisite to conceal their design.

In the mean time the King of *Suevia* sent word to *Gondisic*, *Arderic* and *Godegesile*, that he desired to confer with them about a matter of great weight. The three Princes being

come, he beheld them very earnestly, and thus addressing his speech to them all, *Your good fortune, said he, has delivered you from an enemy who was so much the more to be feared, by how much the more he was able to hurt you, without being suspected. You guess right if you think I mean Balamir, and I make no question that none of you can deny, but that he was a more terrible enemy as a private friend of Pharamond's, than as a Lover of the Queen of the Bohemians.*

After he had thus prepared their ears, he repeated to them all that he had already said to *Vinderic*, and perceiving that they were very much concerned in his discourse, he continued after this manner with more vehemence than before. *Besides that, Balamir, said he, was then in a condition to have deprived ye all of Rosamond, and to betray her into the hands of the King of the Franks, he went about to purchase a privilege, openly to dispose of that fair Princess, and to reconcile himself with Pharamond. That which I go about to tell ye is wonderful, but unhappily for us too true: You know that the King of the Cimbrians had so great a kindness for Briomer, that he trusted him with his only Son, while he was yet but a mere infant. At that very time the Narisquians invaded Bohemia, and all the Kingdom was in such a hubbub, that they were forced to seek a Sanctuary for young Theobald out of his Father's dominions. Briomer chose the Country of the Quadians for his retreat, and made his abode in the City of Rhobodunum, at what time young Balamir, second Son to the King of the Huns, was brought to Singone a City of the same Country. That infant was of the same age as the Cimbrian Prince, and Valamber Telanor's Father had the charge of him, as Briomer had of the Brother of Rosamond. The Guardians of these two Princes visited each other very often, and had contracted a kind of friendship together, rather through the conformity of their employments, than any agreement between their humours. In short, I have often heard say that Valamber was of a sweet disposition, moderate in his desires, and upright in his dealings. On the contrary, we know that Briomer was of a working brain, a haughty humour, and a courage that would not easily stoop: Those qualities proper to second the ambition of the Bohemian, bred in him hopes that were extraordinary, and infused into him a design to advance his posterity to the Sovereign dominion of his Country. He thought that in the opportunity that offered it self, he should meet with but few obstacles proportionable to the importance of the attempt: For in short, he knew he should not be recalled in a long time to a Country, where troubles every day increased, besides he was certain that all who attended the young Infant out of Bohemia, depended upon him (though there were no occasion of trusting many) so that he resolved to put an only Son of his own, into the place of young Theobald. However though the conjuncture were favourable, and that fatherly affection confirm'd him in his design, yet when he saw himself going about to betray a Master, that had trusted in his hands all that was dear to him in the world, he could not chuse but have some checks of conscience. As immovable as he was wont to be in all assaults of danger, he was at a stand more than once, and that which made him sometimes repent the execution of his design, was the smiling infancy of young Theobald, that laughed in his Arms when he took him out of his Cradle, to lay his Son in his Room. Being thus disturbed he sought out a way to calm his disturbances, he thought he should be the less troubled, the less damage he did his own Prince, for which reason he resolved to send away young Balamir quite, and to lay young Theobald in his place: So that he only changed from one Family Royal to another. The enterprize at first succeeded happily enough, but not with that series of success which he desired, for Valamber returning to Singone, sooner than was convenient for Briomer's project, and perceiving what he had lost, took Horse and pursued those that had taken away young Balamir with an extraordinary diligence,*

Here the King of *Suevia* repeated *Valamber's* encounter with *Menebaldus*, how *Ambiorix* found young *Balamir* whom he named *Ambiomer*, together with all the particulars which he had learn'd from *Briomer's* own mouth. At the end of that repetition the King continuing his discourse; *Thus you see, said he, that Balamir who lived among us as General of the Cimbrians, was the true Theobald Brother of Rosamond, and that Ambiomer who is now at Cologne with the Princesses, is the real Balamir second Son to the King of the Huns, and that Theobald whom Pharamond killed before Rosamond's face, was only a Son of Briomer's.*

Those words having redoubled the Princes wonder, they beheld each other for some time without speaking a word, till at length the King of the *Burgundians* breaking silence, *I am apt to believe, said he, that Theobald who was thought to be the Prince of the Cimbrians was Briomer's Child, his natural fierceness and something of his Air in the Youth's face, and lastly, Briomer's implacable hatred of Pharamond, serves to convince us fully of the truth. For Briomer would never continue so obdurate against the King of the Franks, had not his valour deprived him of a Prince, whom he made it his only care to advance, and when he was so near being King of Bohemia, I make as little question but that that Balamir who is killed was Rosamond's*

Brother, in regard of that trust and confidence which they had each for the other, and the little scruple they made to manifest their affection is a testimony sufficient, should we omit the extraordinary reverence which the Cimbrians bare to their General, which was nothing but an instinct of nature which carried them to love their Prince. For my part, added the King of the Gepides, I not only agree to the truth of what has been already said, but I am of the same opinion also in relation to Ambiomer; for certainly such a person as he could never descend but from a Royal Extraction.

The King of Suevia observing that the three other Kings were convinced, Judge you now, said he, whether Briomer had not reason to fear, lest Balamir should come to be known, and lest the Prince whom you mortally hate should be reconciled to the fair Queen, at whose feet you sigh your selves. He had a most terrible apprehension of it, that he sought by all means to avoid it, and endeavoured himself to have slain Balamir, to the end, that they who knew the truth, might care the less to put themselves to the trouble of declaring it, in regard the person was dead. To this intent therefore it was, that Briomer caus'd him to be set upon in the Forest of Lysurgis, when fortune, favourable to Pharamond, conducted him to the succour of that very person that only could establish his felicity. The Cimbrian was mad at his ill success, and believing that Balamir would be better guarded for the future, he sent into Pannonia to kill Velamber, thereby to rid himself of the only person in the world whom he had reason to fear. But all those attempts proving fruitless, the last of his enterprises has been more prosperous. In short, Keva not only rescued Velamber, but took Menebaldus, who is brought along by the Ambassadors to discover all those pranks which he has committed by Briomer's order.

Now, Sirs, that we may the more successfully oppose Pharamond, in regard that the death of Balamir enlivens us still with some hopes that we may conceal his extraction, my most weighty advice is this. Let us write to Keva, if you think it to the purpose, not to discover the exchange which was made in the Province of the Quades: we will lay before him that 'twere a piece of inhumanity to afflict the Queen of the Bohemians to no purpose, in regard that he himself may well conjecture, that this new grief will work so much the more violently in the heart of that Princess, by how much the more Balamir's merit surmounted the pretended Theobald's, who was slain by Pharamond. That instead of discovering to Rosamond the loss of a Brother not to be recovered again, it were better for him to conceal the real ground of his Embassy under some other pretence apparent enough to be believed. To which purpose nothing could be more probable than to say that the end of his coming was to propose a match between Rosamond and Balamir, a Prince to be endowed with all those noble qualities to be beloved of her, and feared by her Subjects already accustomed to obey him.

The King had no sooner concluded, when Gondioch, Ardaric and Godegisilus agreed that it was necessary to send some experienced and faithful person to Keva, to act according to their intentions; and having pitched upon a certain Sueve of a nimble and quick wit, they dispatched him away with all speed with Letters and all other necessary instructions.

In the mean time, the King of the Lombards had other thoughts in his mind: for he was so concern'd for the pretended death of Balamir, that he took Horse, and rode forth out of the Line better to inform himself of an accident of so great importance, for which he was greatly afflicted notwithstanding the predominant sorrows that almost stifled his heart. He had not rode far upon the great Road that led to Pharamond's Camp, but he met certain Horsemen of whom he thought he might receive intelligence: and no sooner had he asked the question, but one of the Troop, to whom he more particularly addressed himself, return'd this answer, "I believe, said he, that none of my companions can better satisfy your curiosity than myself, being a witness of the greatest part of those things which you desire to understand. Know then, Sir, said he, that as I was this morning riding to visit a Captain of my acquaintance in the King of the Herules Army, I discovered a top of yonder rising ground before us the marks of a Combat, but newly ended. There were Bodies of men lay dead very sorely cut and mangled, among the rest a Soldier of a noble presence run through in several parts of his Body with all the signs of a dying man. Cleomer being upon the Road, and riding up to the Prince, who was ready to expire, while three or four Franks, by his order, pursued two Horsemen that endeavoured to save themselves with equal swiftness. "Courage, Sir, cryed Pharamond's Esquire, relief is come, and your murderers shall soon feel the punishment of their crime in torments. "So saying he went about to disarm Balamir ——" How, cryed the King of the Lombards, was it that renowned Prince whom you beheld in that extremity. "There is no question but it was he, replied the unknown person, and you will be of my opinion when you hear all. I will tell you then, that Cleomer's good intentions nothing availed to a person that was past relief, and who expired at the same time. So that all the comfort which the gene-

“rous *Frank* had, was, to take two of the *Assassins*, and to carry them disar’m’d. At first the *Esquire* examined them softly, but when he had heard them with astonishment, *Surely*; cryed he aloud, *the enemies of that great Prince were extremely blinded by their own rage, or else they would never have acted so much against their own interest: for they saw not what advantages they might have expected from the valour of a Soldier who was the principal support of their party. As for Briomer I wonder not that he should conspire against Balamir, seeing that his brain’d Cimbrian was only born to attempt the lives of great men; but I admire that persons whose thoughts should be answerable to their Dignities, could be guilty of a deed so treacherous and black.* “After that he commanded the body of *Balamir* to be taken up, and “carried to *Pharamond’s* Camp. This is all, Sir, that I know of this dismal accident: but “yonder, *added he*, is *Cleomer*, if I am not deceived; probably from him you may receive “better satisfaction.

The King of the *Lombards* civilly returning thanks to the unknown person, rode up to *Pharamond’s* *Esquire*, and that he might speak his mind with less distrust, he made no scruple to discover himself. *Cleomer* transported to see a Prince, famous for so many great victories, in testimony of his joy that he had met him, and could better satiate the great *Agelmond*, without any more ado told the King of the *Lombards*, that it was *Mundisc* was slain: “But, Sir, *replied he*, by the confession of these two prisoners, *Balamir’s* life is in “no small jeopardy, so that I am resolved to make all the haste I can to the *Cimbrian* Camp, “to give him notice of the dangers that threaten him, and to offer him all assistance in my “Master’s name. “You will not find *Balamir* there, *replied Agelmond*, for I came forth “on purpose to seek him: either he is with the Princess of the *Goths*, or else we shall find “him in this Wood. “Let us make haste then, *said Cleomer*, and beat the Wood, for I “am sure *Balamir* is not with the Princess *Hunnimonds*. *Agelmond* consenting, they took several ways, appointing to rendezvous at the place where *Theon* and *Melusina* met. The King, conducted by his good Genius, had not rode far, but he heard the clattering of weapons, whereby he understood that there was some encounter or other hard by. Immediately he descryed two, who most furiously animated against each other, laid on with an extraordinary valour, but with a remarkable difference of skill and strength. One of those Knights had receiv’d but one slight wound; the other had given his Adversary three that were considerable. Besides that, there was not only a terror in his countenance, but something so dreadful in his manner of fighting, whereby a man might easily be persuaded that such a person as he was not wont to be vanquished. For he no sooner understood that people were coming, but fearing to be parted before he had concluded the Combat, he discharged so furious a back blow upon the head of his Enemy, that his Head-piece flew from his Head, the Buckles being cut away, whereby *Harmaxes*, for he it was, was compelled to shew his face: so that *Agelmond* knowing him by his countenance, out of a wonderful Generosity stepped into his relief. “Valiant Knight, *cried he, turning himself round*, shd not I beseech you the blood of so many great Princes in the person of your “Enemy; but be contented with those advantages you have won, without completing “your victory.

The Prince of the *Huns* no sooner heard *Agelmond’s* voice, but he let fall the point of his Sword, and lifting up the Viser of his Helmet, “*Balamir, said he*, scorns to take away the life of a person that is not able to defend it. But is it possible that the King of “the *Lombards* should concern himself so vehemently for the Prince of the *Venedians*? “Alas, Sir, *replied he sighing*, what would not a real Lover do for a Princess’s sake that he “adores? I promised the divine *Gilismene* that I would never attempt any thing against “the life of any Prince related to her: and I should believe I had failed her in my word, “should I not endeavour to rescue Prince *Harmaxes* from the danger that now threatens “him.

Concluding those words he turn’d toward his Rival, and addressing himself to him, “Sir, “*said he in a very friendly manner*, that *Agelmond* whom you so vigorously hate, is now come “to tender you all the services which you can expect from the most faithful of your Friends. Instead of saying more, both *Balamir* and he prepared to disarm *Harmaxes*, and to look after his wounds, when the *Sarmatian*, who looked very furiously at first, began to relent, and with a low and feeble voice return’d this answer, “Go, happy *Agelmond, said he*, go “and possess thy *Gilismene*, and leave a miserable creature to perish, whose frauds and trea- “sons have so little availed.

The passionate King not knowing how to interpret those words, “Ah, Sir, I beseech you “explain your meaning, and do not think that an unfortunate person that has lost all his “hopes, can flatter himself with so slight an intimation only. “Therefore it is certain,

“ replied the Prince of the Venedians, that *Gilismene* lives: ’twas I that took her from thee; and rais’d the report of her death; and *Agathyrfus*, who drove me out of my Dominions, for thee preserves that fair Princess, who would at this hour be surrounded with delights, did not thy absence cause her to sigh in the midst of—— He would not have concluded, but that he began to faint away; and soon after gave up the Ghost; as if those moments of life had only been spared him, to tell *Agelmond* the happy resolution of a fortune which had so long and so unjustly crossed him. *Balamir* and *Agelmond* could not but pity his untimely fate; but when they had caus’d him to be carried off, *Balamir* perceiving that the King of the *Lombards* was still in doubt of those acceptable tydings, “ Sir, said he, I must acknowledge that there is something in the *Venedian* Prince’s last words very much to be admired: but though the speech of a dying man were little to be heeded, there is no accident whatever, of which the Adventures of the Princess of the *Goths* will not confirm the probability. For in short, Sir, why should not *Harmaxes* do as much to coven you, as *Mundisc* did to cheat me? He took *Hunnimonda* from me, he buried her in the opinion of the world, and the report of her being dead; and wherefore may not *Harmaxes* use the same deceit that *Mundisc* used?

Those words somewhat abated the King of the *Lombards* grief; yet not being able to let so much joy into his Soul at once, as such a happy change deserved to produce, he resolved for *Sarmatia*, so soon as he should return to the *Cimbrian* Camp. But notwithstanding the agitations of his thoughts at such a conjuncture, he minded *Balamir*’s security: and therefore to advertise the Prince of what had passed, “ Sir, said he, I know not whether *Harmaxes* made use of the same contrivances as *Mundisc* did, but I am certain both those Princes have undergone the same destiny to day, being both slain in search of our lives. “ How, replied *Balamir*, is *Mundisc* dead? “ He is most certainly dead, replied the King of the *Lombards*, for *Cleomer*, King *Pharamond*’s Esquire, saw him expire of his wounds: he also caused his Body to be carried into the Camp of the *Franks*, where, it is said, they intend to keep him, till the King of the *Huns* pleasure be known. “ I protest, said *Balamir*, I bewail the loss of that Prince, notwithstanding all his violent humours: for to say truth, methinks Generosity compels me to pity his fate.

While he was pursuing this discourse, *Agelmond* led him to the place where he had appointed *Cleomer* to meet him, and by the way he told him the whole contrivance which was laid against him in the *Cimbrian* Camp. *Balamir* was not much surpris’d, having already discovered some of *Briomer*’s designs, and knew the humour of those Princes that were in league with that famous Villain. However, he could not chuse but be nettled, and as his moderation kept him within bounds, one way for *Viridomar*’s and *Albisinda*’s sake; on the other side, the wounds of *Godegesilus* suspended his rancour. Nevertheless, he could not conceive why those two Kings who had conspired with *Briomer* to take away his life, should go about to deprive their party of an assistance not readily to be despis’d, unless they had some very powerful reason. And indeed *Agelmond* and he were diving into the nature of this foul and unworthy secret, when *Cleomer* drew near, and in discharge of his Commission, offered him a hundred men, and the King of *France* at the head of them. *Balamir* return’d an answer to that obliging language, with all the acknowledgment which he thought due to *Pharamond*; and having carress’d his Esquire according to his quality, he would needs return with *Agelmond* to the *Cimbrian* Camp, though *Cleomer* would fain have perswaded them to have gone another way.

So soon as he came to the Trenches he met *Telanor*, who no sooner spyed him, but he ran towards him with all the marks of an extraordinary joy: and being come near his illustrious Master, not able to moderate his transportment, *Welcome, Sir*, said he, *for the Gods your visible protectors not only restore you to the vows and wishes of all good and virtuous men, but it is their pleasure at length that you be acknowledged for the true Theobaldus, Brother of the incomparable Rosamond.* For *Theobald*? cryed *Balamir*, interrupting him, and with a surpris’e that made him change colour. *Yes, Sir, for the same person*, replied *Telanor*, *nor is there any person through the whole Army that questions but that you are King of the Cimbrians, and that Ambiomere is the Son of the King of the Huns, and the real Balamir.*

After that he told the Prince succinctly all that the King of *Suevia* had discovered to the three Kings: how they had wrote to *Keza*, who was come to *Cologne* already, and to convince him that he spake nothing but truth, he thus pursued.

The Embassadors of the *Huns* very patiently heard the *Suedish* Deputy, but how potent soever their Arguments were, or how considerable soever they were in their persons, *Keza* would not declare his mind either one way or other. In the mean time he went to visit the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, there he discovered all *Briomer*’s crimes, and rather chose to afflict

afflict her with your pretended death, than longer to keep her in an error which rendering her the enemy of *Pharamond*, had prolonged a war between so many various Nations.

The incomparable *Rosamond* was easily persuaded to believe what *Keos* and *Menebaldus* said, a hundred circumstances seemed to support the Relation, but then remembering that affection which she always had had for him, she looked upon it to be an effect of nature, and that absolutely convinced her. But hearing that this Brother newly brought to light was as newly slain, she was so sensibly afflicted that she fainted away, and the fairest eyes in the world began to be lavish of their tears. This news being spread abroad, caused a strange surprize in *Cologne* and in our Army, and you may well think, Sir, that it was variously received according to the variety of accidents. For my part, in regard I could give a better account of your condition, I dispatched away messengers both to *Cologne* and to the Camp of the *Franks*, as well to disabuse and revive the incomparable *Rosamond*, as to excite the great *Pharamond* to succour a Prince, to whom he would now most certainly shew redoubled kindnesses: Not but that the *Cimbrians* impatiently expect their King, or that they are not disposed to spend their blood to the very last drop in your service; but you know there are so many Princes in our Army jealous of *Pharamond's* happiness, that there is no question but they will oppose the belief of a truth, so prejudicial to your interest, and it may be take up Arms against you, if they find you inclinable to the King of the *Franks* interest.

Balamir having listned with very great attention, *Is it possible*, cryed he, *that one day should be famous for so many strange accidents? How fortunate, Sir, should we be, if what we have heard from the mouth of Harmaxes and Telanor, should prove as true as the probabilities seem to promise? Let us go then, let us go where our destinies call us. For my part*, said the Lombard King, *I shall return into Sarinatia without any farther consideration, though my heart mis-gives me that my hopes are groundless. But, Sir*, added he in a most obliging manner, *'tis but juſt before I go, for me to ſtudy, which way I may be ſerviceable to Agelmond's defender, upon all important occasions that may befall him: For the Cimbrians being overjoyed to have found their loſt King, will without any reluctance acknowledge their Sovereign: So that there will be no obstacle of my departure. If my advancement be ſo near as I am promiſed*, replied *Balamir*, *I had rather you would ſtay with us, that when you ſee what befalls me, it may be a confirming omen of what you are to expect.*

Concluding these words he entred the Camp, and *Telanor* being gone before to give notice of his return, all the young *Cimbrians* came to attend the person of their King. The Soldiers of that Nation were presently in Arms, and the principal Officers meeting him in a body saluted him King, and carried him on their shoulders upon a buckler to shew him to their Army, commanding their Shouts and Acclamations: So that the Sky resounded nothing but,

God save King THEOBALD: Let our Great King Live: And let the Traitor BRIOMER dye, that would have deprived us of such an accomplished Prince.

These loud cries surprized *Arderic* and *Gondioch*, but the King of the *Suevians* and the *Herules* were so raging mad at it, that they were about at first to have openly declared against *Balamir*, and to have set upon his forces. But foreseeing the consequences of such a division in the Army, they resolv'd to take another course: So that instead of sending to complement the new King of the *Cimbrians*, they went in person and told him, ordinary civilities were not sufficient upon extraordinary accidents. *Theobald* who had a fair prospect of their inward thoughts, received them with an indifference, which he was not wont to shew to persons of that dignity, and if other considerations had not held him within the limits of moderation, he had certainly told them more of his mind,

The King of *Suevia* surprized at his carriage, was so raging mad at it that he looked red again in the face: nevertheless dissembling his choler, that he might act more conformably to his designs, he undertook to speak addressing himself to the Brother of *Rosamond*. Or

I am deceived, Sir, said he, or else you no less inherit the King your Father's disposition, than his Dominions, so that there is little probability of your proving any great friend to Pharamond, in regard that he who gave you being, left the antipathy which he had for the common enemy of our League, as a Legacy to his Son by his Will and Testament. You see however Sir, replied the King of the Cimbrians, that the foundation of that hatred is quite taken away, for it is impossible for me to be the Brother of Rosamond, unless at the same time you will acknowledge, that Pharamond never slew the real Theobald. "How! added the King of the Herules, you speak in justification of Pharamond, not taking notice that you cannot be kind to that enemy of the Bohemians, without being unjust to many other great Kings, who have exposed their lives, and sacrificed their subjects in your Sisters quarrel, and for the defence of your people. "I cannot tell, very regardlessly cried Theobald, but that those great Kings you mean, minded more their own particular interests, than the service of the Queen of the Cimbrians. "What signifies it, cried the Suevian King, impatiently interrupting the other, whether those Princes acted for love of Rosamond, or out of hatred to Pharamond? Is it not sufficient that while they are thus united, you are Master of the most powerful Army in the world, if you know how to make use of those advantages which Fortune offers you? For you will be looked upon as Head of the League, and as the sole disposer of Rosamond: And in regard both sweetness and honour wait upon command, no doubt but you will delay the marriage of your Sister, to keep those Princes that fight for her at your devotion. "'Tis very like I may be of your opinion, replied the King of the Cimbrians, but I am not bound to tell you my thoughts, only this I will declare before ye all, that I will always give Rosamond the freedom of her own will, and as I am one that either have no enemies, or none that I much care for, I shall never labour much for those preferments which you would heap upon me. "I confess, replied the King of Suevia, there are few enemies can scare a courage like yours: Yet for all that you must confess you have an enemy, if you are entirely persuaded that you are the Son of a Prince, that mortally hated Pharamond. "Otherwise, added Godegesile, think it not ill that we carry on our councils, distinctly according to the diversity of our designs. "Let every one do as he pleases, fiercely replied the King of the Bohemians, for ye have known Balamir long enough, to think that Theobald will easily change his resolution.

Upon those words the Kings of the Suevians and the Herules, seemed to be more exasperated than before, and were about to have displayed their passion, had not Gondioch and Arderic entred at the same time, who come to pay their visits to a Prince, whose good will they gladly endeavoured to purchase: So that their discourse was not so tart as before though it continued not long, by reason that they all laid a great constraint upon themselves, disguising their thoughts according to their different interests. Thereupon they all took their leaves of Theobald, not with that coldness as they ought to have done, if they thought him to be a Friend of Pharamond's, nor with that kindness which they owed him, had they taken him for the Brother of Rosamond. Being altogether at the King of Suevia's Quarters, they cursed the fatal destiny, that to the overthrow of all their designs, had at the same time and in the same Country, kept alive all those very persons that could have been picked out, for the discovery of Balamir and Ambiomere's extraction. In short, they discoursed of Menebaldus's imprisonment, the arrival of Ambiorix, the exactness of Keza, and Theon's answer to Balamir and Ambiomere, when they consulted him in relation to their future fortunes, at the intreaty of several Ladies. They were so much concern'd in that discourse, that it had certainly continued longer, had it not been interrupted by Vinderic's return.

The King of Suevia no sooner had spied Albisinda's Squire, but impatient of the news which he brought from Pharamond's Army, "Well Vinderic, said he, hast thou seen my enemies Sister? "Yes, Sir, replied the Squire, I have not only seen her, but also for the Princess Albisinda's sake, I was received with all the favour and kindness which I could have expected, either from the Queen of the Turingiens or Albisinda herself.

At these words the King of Suevia longed to hear something, which might flatter that new passion which had taken root in his heart, notwithstanding all the hatred that reigned there. But being obliged to be somewhat wary before Arderic, Godegesile, and Gondioch, they were no sooner gone, but the Lover of Polixena calling Albisinda's Squire to him again, "Speak, said he, and be sure you call to mind every particular that concerns the Princess of the Franks, "Sir, said he, as soon as I came into Pharamond's Camp, Prince Vidorimar demanded of me, whether your Majesty continued in the same severity of humour as before, and whether you had the same antipathy against the Brother of a Princess,

“for whom to his knowledge you had such a passionate affection. “No, no, *replied the King, interrupting him, and blushing,* I will never forgive the murderer of *Vindimir,* nor the Lover of *Polyxena.* But go on, *said he,* and if you saw *Vindomar* in the company of my Enemy’s Sister, tell me how the Princess receiv’d the testimonies of his passion that so much torments me. “To say truth, Sir, *replied Vinderic,* the Prince of *Suevia* is not much in fault; for *Polyxena* is a most charming Lady, and if I am not deceiv’d, she has no unkindness for him. “The danger then is greater than I thought, *replied the jealous King,* so that I must lose no time, if I intend to separate two persons that are so mutually affectionate each to other. And therefore since *Polyxena* has so kindly entertained *Albisinda’s* Complements, return you to *Cologne,* and after you have given your Mistress an account of her own affairs, find out *Briomer,* and tell him that *Polyxena* will receive the present, coming in *Albisinda’s* name, that I have an impatience to see the business brought to pass; and having done my part, the rest remains for him to do, and that therefore I desire him to make all the haste which the design requires.

He had no sooner dispatched his Daughter’s Esquire, but he went to the King of the *Herales,* where he understood both *Gondioch* and *Arduric* were: “Sirs, *said the King of Suevia,* since it is too certain to our sorrow, and that the Prince which we have known by the name of *Balamir,* is the real *Theobald,* let us never stand to oppose a truth so apparently confirm’d, but let us contrive to put a stop to all his intentions to the prejudice of the League. Never dream that your passions for the Princess his Sister must bring you to dance after his pipe. But on the contrary, if you find that he intends to dispose of that Lady according to his own humour, it behoves you to turn your Arms against him, and look upon him rather as *Pharamond’s* Friend, than the Brother of *Rosamond.* “How ever, ’tis the best way, *answered the King of the Gepides,* for us to see which way he drives, before we resolve in a heat and a tumult how to proceed against him. “How, *said Godegefilus, briskly interrupting him,* do we not see plain enough already whither his inclinations bend; and if it happen that he come to be in a condition to chuse *Rosamond* a Husband, without discovering his design to us, is it for us to doubt but that he will favour the most odious of all our Rivals? “if he be so cruelly bent against us, *pursued the King of the Burgundians, addressing his speech to the King of the Gepides,* ’tis most certain that we shall have nothing else to mind, and that the interest of our Love will bear us out in whatever we shall undertake for the preservation of our hopes. “It absolutely behoves us to hold together, *cried the King of Suevia,* and to act by consent, if ever we intend to cross the designs of *Theobald* to the prejudice of our solemn League. We must also take Arms against the *Cimbrians,* if they pretend the support of a person whom above all others in the world we ought to hate, when we find him about to act a piece of infidelity, which he sees already so much in his power to perform.

While the King of *Suevia* takes this resolution, and inspires it into the rest of his Enemy’s Rivals, *Theobald* sent one of his chief Officers to the *French* Camp, to give an account to his Princess of what had happened; as also to return thanks to *Pharamond* for the obliging proffers he had made him by *Cleomer:* and by that time he had dispatched the Messenger, *Narva* return’d from *Cologne,* whither *Telanor* had sent him, and brought word that the Princesses were still there detain’d, as *Vinderic* had related to the King of *Suevia.* The King of the *Cimbrians* was incens’d with this piece of injustice. However, not having interrupted *Narva,* he understood farther, that the report in *Cologne* was, that the King of the *Sarmatians* and the Prince of the *Saxons* were both in the *Constantinopolitan* Army.

Theobald no sooner understood the last particular, when he was not only glad thereof for *Agelmond’s* sake, but he resolv’d to find out that Prince, and give him intelligence thereof in person. As soon as he met with him, with a satisfaction in his countenance that shewed how much he shared in his good or bad fortune: *You know, Sir,* *said he,* *that I never doubted but that Harmaxes* *spake true,* when he told you those tidings wherewith you durst not flatter the hopes of an afflicted heart. However, if you think I was too easily persuaded to believe a Prince whose cursed plots have cost so much, you may be quickly better inform’d; for the King of *Sarmatia,* who is certainly arrived at *Cologne,* will soon satisfy you, whether I was deceiv’d in giving credit to a dying man. How, Sir, *replied Agelmond* in a surprize, *Agathyrus* to whom I am so infinitely beholding, *Agathyrus,* the Brother of my Princess, is he so near this Army? At least, *replied Theobald,* he is in the Army which *Theodotius* and *Pulcheria* have sent to reinforce this party for *Varancz* and *Martian’s* sake. Ah, if it be true, *replied Agelmond* with an air less pensive, *that the King of the Sarmatians is alive, and in*

these Countries, I desire not of seeing a revolution in my fortune. But alas! added he immediately, what ground have I for this alteration? May I imagine for my consolation, that there is that correspondency between the misfortunes of the Brother and the Sister, which may be sufficient for me to judge of Gilismene's Fate, by the adventures of Agathyrus. I know, replied the King of the Cimbrians, that there is no reason that Gilismene should be alive, because the King of the Sarmatians is not dead. Yet Sir, it is upon the last breath of Harmaxes that I settle my belief: For if he spoke true in relation to Agathyrus, it is as unlikely that he would betray his own thoughts, when he came to speak of the Princess Gilismene. Away then, away, and learn from the Lips of the Sarmatian King himself, whether I be not more in the right as to what concerns the King of the Lombards, than he himself. Yes Sir, replied Agelmond, I will be gone, to meet my friend that laboured so much in vain for me, but I will not stir till I see the great Theobald fixed in his Throne, that all the Enemies of his virtue shall not be able to move him. I would not refuse the assistance of the valiant King of the Lombards, replied the Cimbrian King, did I fear too great a Tempest would pour down, upon an authority but new established and void of succour. But having the Cimbrians on my side, and the support if need be of the King of the Franks, there is no necessity for you to defer the satisfaction, which you may receive from Agathyrus. The danger lurks in this Camp, replied Agelmond, the King of the Franks is not nigh enough, and many Armies may of a sudden unite against yours, so that I am resolved not to forsake you, till you are in a condition to withstand the confederacy that is hatching against you, the effects whereof you will feel, when they find you inclined to do justice to the merits of Pharamond. Fear not however that I will be long absent from the King of the Sarmatians, for if I am not mistaken the face of things will soon teach us how to steer our course. In the meantime I can know by a messenger whether it be true, that Agathyrus be in Cologne or in the Army, and where I may meet him: For as for my Divine Princess, I have not confidence sufficient yet, to ask what is become of her.

Theobald would not yield for all that, but urged the King of the Lombards with all the Arguments he could use, till at length seeing he could by no means prevail, he was constrained to quit the Generous Prince, and leave him to his own inclinations. He was no sooner come out of Agelmond's Quarters, but a great Commander of the Cimbrians met him, and advertised him that the Kings of the Suevians, Herules, Turgundians, and Gepides, had had frequent and long conferences, and that no question they were hatching some design, the execution whereof it concern'd him to prevent.

The King of the Bohemians as little guilty of negligence as fear, immediately gave such orders as were necessary at that time, and suffering himself to be controuled by the grandeur of his courage and his just resentment, he boldly went to the Quarters of Godegeste, where he no sooner entred, but after some cold complements that had passed between them, he thus began, though he were alone in the company of four Kings, by whom he knew himself but ill beloved. Sirs, said he, since ye would have the world believe, that ye have taken up Arms only in the defence of Rosamond's quarrel, methinks you should not be unwilling to joyn your forces with mine, to rescue that Princess out of a City, where she is detained contrary to all right and justice. They who detain her there, replied the King of Suevia, do it only that she may be safe from such inconveniences, as may befall her in this Army, and seeing that I am contented, that Albitinda shall remain at Cologne till the end of the war, you may as well permit a Princess to abide with her, for whom you have had so long since such a Brotherly affection. Our humours are so different, replied the Cimbrian King, that I do not wonder we are so opposite in our opinions: And therefore without examining whether you act as a Father toward Albitinda, or whether I have loved the Cimbrian Princess as a Sister, before I knew she was so indeed, let us follow our own inclinations, without putting any constraint the one upon the other. You may protect if you please such seditious people in Cologne, that Briomer has encouraged to make a tumult, and I will endeavour to serve those Princesses, of whom you seem to take but little care. Were you not engaged with Pharamond, replied the King of Suevia in a heat, you would put a more favourable interpretation, upon the care which we have for those persons that you pretend to serve. And were you not wholly prepossessed by Briomer, impatiently replied Theobald, you would less condemn the good opinion, which is generally conceived of the King of the Franks. Well then, smartly replied the Suevian King, do you embrace Pharamond's interest, whither your inclinations lead you. And do you, cried Theobald interrupting him, follow Briomer's inspirations, and let it appear by the success, whether the generosity of a noble Prince whom you so unjustly hate, will at length yield to the crafty tricks of a person, that so little deserves the protection which you afford him.

Having so said he flung out of their presence, and having observed in the Countenance of Pharamond's enemies, that they intended an absolute Rupture. He sent for the principal

pal Officers of the *Cimbrians* to his Chamber, and there represented to them how tyrannically the confederate Princes intended to make themselves Masters of *Rosamond's* destiny. The Officers had such a reverence for their valiant Prince, that they professed themselves ready to obey his orders, of what nature soever they might be. And in regard they all admired the virtues of *Pharamond*, and safely then might they their dislike of *Primer*, they openly declared that *Pharamond* was only worthy of their Princes. "In short, Sir, *judged one of the most considerable of all the Commanders*, was it not *Pharamond's* Sword that slew the false *Theobald*, which delivered us from all those mischiefs, we had reason to fear from the Son of *Briomer*, advanced to the Throne of our Nation, and did not the same Prince rescue our lawful Sovereign in the Forest of *Lisurgis*, to be the delight and glory of his people?"

Theobald satisfied to see the *Cimbrians* such as he wished them to be, made no question but that they would consent to retreat into the Army of the *Franks*, and that they would be glad to leave a Camp, where they were every day exposed to the assaults of a million of enemies. Nor was he deceived in his conjecture, so that he no sooner proposed it to the *Bohemians*, to take that part where justice and generosity reigned, but they promised to follow wherever he led them. Such a noble ardor as this was not to be neglected by *Theobald*, and therefore he was so far from letting it cool, that he order'd the several Commanders, to go and make sure of the Troops that were under their particular commands. However he thought it not convenient, whatever cause he had to break the League so soon, but out of a pure sincerity rather chose to demand the liberty of the Princesses, before he came to those extremities, that might prove fatal to so many thousand men. For that reason he went to the King of the *Basternes*, and sent *Telanor* to *Arderic*, judging that it might not be impossible to draw to his side two Princes, in whom he had observed much of moderation. He laid before them the bad usage of the Princesses, by detaining them in *Cologne* against their will, but whatever he said to them was all in vain, for young *Humbert* was afraid of displeasing *Albifred's* Father. On the other side, the King of the *Gepides* was loth to be contributory to *Pharamond's* good fortune, believing that if he should declare for *Theobald*, he should but strengthen the strongest part already of his Rivals, and weaken at the same time those forces, which were only united to hinder *Rosamond* from being taken away, and carried to the King of the *Franks*: So that *Theobald* being now clear of all scruples, nourished only disdain and anger in his breast, and determin'd to leave an Army which he could not look upon, but as the refuge and protection of injustice.

This resolution pleased him in more than one respect, for first it cleared him from the guilt of those disorders, which were committed by the King of *Suevia's* command, and the councils of *Briomer*, and thereby he hoped to deliver *Rosamond* and make *Pharamond* happy. But his chiefest transportation proceeded from hence, that he was marching to a Camp, where he should be inseparable from his Princess, and where perhaps it would be permitted him to pretend to a felicity, which he could not enjoy for so many years past. "Divine *Hunnimonda*, said he to himself suddenly, shall I have the satisfaction of your company, and shall I entertain you a thousand times a day without obstruction? Nothing shall ever rend thee again from my hopes, for apparently fortune is now my reconciled good friend, since she has surceased to cross that passion, which begat the felicity of my life.

While he played with those sweet thoughts, the Messenger whom he had sent to the *French* Camp, came to acquaint him that *Hunnimonda*, how moderate soever she used to be, seemed now more than ordinarily satisfied to understand, that a Prince whom she always thought so worthy of her esteem, was no way guilty of the crime whereof he stood accused with so much appearance of reason. As for what concerns the King of the *Franks*, I do assure you Sir, that there appeared in his face, the visible signs of an unspeakable joy, whether he spoke of the Revolution that he foresaw, as a Lover of the incomparable Princess of the *Cimbrians*, or as a Friend of that valiant *Balamir*, who had filled the world with the loud report of his famous Achievements. More than that, I took notice, that all the forces of that Prince are unanimously agreed, to fight for the interests of your Majesty, and that they are not only ready to come to your assistance, but that they are resolved to show the utmost bravery of their courage, to satisfy the courage and generosity of their famous Leader.

Upon the Conclusion of those words, a confused noise of war diffused it self through every Quarter of that numerous Army, which by and by begat such a tumultuous hubbub, as gave *Theobald* timely notice that he was no longer to be idle. In short, he saw that his enemies were arming themselves, and that they would thunder all upon him, thinking

perhaps to overwhelm him under the burthen of that dreadful multitude that marched under so many various Standards. Nevertheless, our great Captain expecting to be assailed, and wanting nothing of foresight, was so far from being surpris'd, that he found all things ready for a vigorous resistance. Those *Cimbrians* that were foremost beholding that noble fierceness that enlivened his countenance, begged only leave to signalize their Loyalty. *Theobald* now perceiv'd what the Confederates intended; for he saw the *Suevians*, the *Burgundians*, the *Alains*, the *Gepides*, and the *Basternes* all ranged under their particular Ensigns, by order of their Generals: fearing therefore lest he should be too remote from the succours which he expected from the *Franks*, or to be inclosed up in a Camp where he had so many Enemies, he threw down all the Fortifications upon his Quarter, and commanded *Telanor* to lead the Van and march towards *Pharamond's* Army, keeping along by the River, that they might not be environed on every side.

While the faithful Squire obeyed his orders, though not a little troubled to be so far remote from his Master, whom he had left in the place of greatest danger, *Theobald* brings up the reer, consisting of the old Soldiers, there with an undaunted bravery expecting the dismal tempest that threatened him. He had no sooner secured his men in the best posture he could, but word was brought, that the *Suevians*, *Herules* and *Burgundians* were at hand, and that the *Alains*, *Gepides* and *Basternes* were to be the reserve. The King of the *Bohemians* heard the messenger, but the tydings rather excited his fury than appalled his courage; and therefore turning toward those Officers that were about him, he beheld them with an aspect that would have infus'd courage into the most timorous of Cowards, and thus incens'd their warlike anger.

My dear Companions and Friends, I make no question but that you are this day willing all to signalize your valour in the preservation of a Prince whom ye have recovered, notwithstanding all the cunning of a *Cimbrian*, who would have deprived ye of him so many years ago. Remember then that ye have taken Arms for the defence of your King, and for the liberty of your Princess; and that so just a quarrel promises favourable success. On the other side, am not I at the head of ye? and is not *Pharamond* coming to your assistance? What have ye then to fear? What though your Enemies were never so numerous, their number will but render your Victory more glorious.

No sooner had he spoken these words, but a Soldier of a most noble presence came and joyned himself to *Theobald*, attended by half a dozen other Horsemen. The King immediately knew him to be the great *Agelmond*, who, to shew how sensible he was of the others Generosity, *I fear me*, said he, *you will not find me so successful as you were prosperous when ye fought for my interest. Rather*, replied the King, *I shall find, that instead of one Rival of yours whom I assailed, that you are about to encounter enemies without number in my quarrel. However, the wonders which I have heard perform'd by the great Agelmond, instruct me that I need not wonder at his manner of acting, and that I ought not to refuse the assistance of so valiant a person.*

They said no more; for the *Bohemians* advancing to the place where *Theobald* thought the *Franks* would joyn, the enemies seeing him at a distance from the Body of the Army, sent out a numerous party led by *Gondioch*, who flew like lightning upon the Body of

Horfe that *Theobald* kept near his perfon. At other times, neither that Prince nor *Agelmund* were wont to expect their Enemies, but were always the Affailants. But now they were obliged to mind the prefervation of the *Bobemians*, rather than to fatisfie their own courage: they threw to the ground all thofe that durft venture to feel their firft blows, and having in a fhort time beaten back feveral Bodies that rashly attacked them, *Ardarie* was forced to haften to the fuccour of the King of the *Burgundians*, with the Battalia under his command. At the fame time thofe two Lovers of *Rofamond* leaving the conjunction of the *Cimbrians* and *Franks* redoubled their fury, thinking to have ruined *Theobald* before *Pharamond* could come to his affiftance, but though they perform'd great things, and that they far exceeded *Agelmund* and *Theobald* in number, the victory was obftinately difputed, and the *Cimbrians* had undoubtedly carried the day, had not the whole Army of the Confederates come in all of a fudden: yet, notwithstanding the inequality of the two parties, the *Bobemians* testified an incredible refolution. But being now all either wounded or wearied, their refiftance began to flacken, and not long after they were put to a very great diforder, infomuch that *Theobald* endeavouring to rally them, neither by words nor his example could do it, fo great was the terrour amongst them. And therefore the valiant King afpiring only to die with honour, flew among the thickeft of his Enemies, feeking out for the principal Leaders, and like Thunder overturning whatever oppofed his paffage, at length meeting with *Gondioch*, who was encouraging his men to the purfuit of the *Cimbrians*, King of the *Burgundians*, cryed he, 'tis more proper for thee to turn thy Sword upon fuch an Adverfary as *Balamir*; for as I am *Theobald*, thou art to look upon him as the only obftacle of all thy hopes. By that confeffion, briskly replied *Gondioch*, I am releafed from fhewing thee any kindnefs as *Rofamond's* Brother; and I take thee for no other than a perfidious creature, that haft broken thy faith with us to take *Pharamond's* part.

To thofe words the incens'd *Theobald* made no reply, but with a back ftroke he let drive at *Gondioch's* head, and that with fo good a will, that the *Burgundian* Prince was wounded, notwithstanding the goodnefs of his Helmet, and reeled in his Saddle: but being young and vigorous, he quickly recovered himfelf, and made a thruft with fo much ftrength and animofity, that he pierced the King of the *Cimbrians* Buckler, and gave him a flight wound in his Thigh; which incenſing *Theobald's* rage, he preffed fo hard upon *Gondioch*, that he drew more blood from him, and flew upon him to put a period to a Combat that hindered him from looking after *Agelmund*, and a Troop of young Gentlemen of Quality that fought about the perfon of their Prince. As for *Agelmund*, he was come to handy ftrokes with *Ardarie*; but though the *Lombard* had advantage enough, yet there was little likelihood that his valour or *Theobald's* could fave the *Cimbrians*, or snatch a victory out of the hands of fuch a number. But when thofe two great perfonages, invincible till then, were menaced with utter deftruction, the *Cimbrian* Bands that had almoft forfaken the Field, of a fudden return'd to the charge with an extraordinary courage. *Theobald* was at firft furprifed, but believing that new confidence might be occafioned by the arrival of the *Franks*, he turn'd about to fee if he were not deceived in his conjectures. Then it was, that caſting his eyes upon certain Squadrons that haſtily advanced to his relief, he faw feveral young Soldiers whoſe prefence and beauty begat his admiration. But though they were all able to have produced the fame effect, yet was it no difficult thing to obferve ſome difference between them, but among fo many there were two that were particularly remarkable, the King of the *Franks*, and the famous Prince of the *Suevians*. Thoſe two Princes and *Theobald* no ſooner met, but that they vehemently defired to ſhew the proofs of that eſteem and value which they had each for other. *Viridomar* unwilling to attack the *Sueves*, flew upon the *Gepides* with an impetuofity that nothing but Thunder could parallel. *Theobald* threw himfelf into the thickeft of the *Herules*, and performing wonders worthy his fame, brought death or terrour among all the Troops of *Godegeſile*. At the fame time the King of the *Franks* having drawn his Sword to defend the Brother of his Princefs, and being free from all confiderations that might withhold his Arm, charged the *Burgundians* with fuch a rapid fury, that he threw down all that ſtood before him, and pierced as far as *Gondioch*, who was rallying his own men, and laboured to bring them to a new charge, notwithstanding the dreadful Adverfary that ſtood before him. The King of the *Franks* no ſooner ſpyed the *Burgundian* King, but he made toward him, when a younger Brother of *Gunttran*, to ſhew himfelf worthy of the illuſtrious blood from whence he ſprang, reſolv'd to guard his King, advancing between *Pharamond* and *Gondioch*, and to make good his attempt, he offered ſome blows at the moſt famous Soldier of the world. But having either ſtrength nor luck to maintain the Grandeur of his enterprife, he was preſently beaten to the ground. True it is, that he was no ſooner out of the Fight, but he

was out of danger, for he was drawn from among the *Horfes* heels by some of his own Officers. On the other side that obstacle being taken away by the fall of the *Burgundian* Prince, the two fiery Rivals joyn'd, and assailed each other with that cruel animosity, as if that day were to have been the last of thier lives. *Pharamond* could not moderate his anger against an ungrateful person that endeavoured to deprive him of his Princess: and *Gondioch's* jealousy rag'd to see *Pharamond* fight for the liberty of *Rosamond*, and in the defence of her Brother. But how equal soever the animosity of those two Warriours appeared, there was a great difference between their strength; for the victor-fate of the King of the *Franks* threaten'd *Gondioch* with a most fatalevent, at what time that Prince, desperately wounded as he was, was carried away by the press of one of his own Squadrons that fled. Nor was it possible for the *Burgundians* to make any long resistance, especially the *Gepides* and the *Herules* giving ground, seeing themselves ready to be attack'd by a Body of *Franks* led by *Constance*, the King of the *Britains*, the King of the *Tongres* and the valiant *Artabure*.

Those renowned Captains made haste to the relief of *Pharamond*, *Theobald* and *Viridomar*, but when they came to fight, they found they had nothing to do but to pursue. In the mean time, *Gondioch* and *Ardaric*, wounded as they were, did all they could to encourage their Troops. They shew'd themselves to the Soldiers, and not only told them that the Confederates were still stronger than the *Bobemians* or *Franks*, but that they were the more secure, having *Cologne* their Friend, and the Army of *Theodosius* being at hand. On the other side, the Kings of the *Suevians* and the *Herules* left nothing undone that could be thought upon on their part, understanding to their unspeakable vexation, that their party was routed, they caus'd themselves to be carried among the Troops that were most disorder'd, and by threats and promises endeavour'd to restore that courage to their Army, which their more valiant Enemies had taken from them. While they bestir'd themselves every way, *Briomer*, transport'd by his implacable hatred, comes in from *Cologne* with some of the Militia which he had scrap'd together; but his endeavours were all to little purpose, as had been before the utmost diligence of four Kings, incens'd against the life of *Pharamond*. And all that great multitude that would have swallowed up *Theobald*, were now no other than a frighted Remnant that fled for safety to the Woods, and to the City of *Cologne*,

The King of the *Franks*, *Theobald*, the Prince of *Suevia*, *Constance*, *Agelmond*, *Constantine*, *Taxander* and *Artabure*, always accustomed to overcome, were so far from being puffed up with the victory, or eager to prosecute farther, that they advanced toward each other; and having in imitation of *Pharamond* surrounded the new King of the *Cimbrians*, they testified their joy to see him advanced to the Throne of his Ancestors, *Theobald* most gratefully acknowledged the marks of their esteem and affection; but taking notice that *Pharamond* and those other Captains would have given him the honour of the day, he yielded them the victory, looking upon them as his protectour, and upon himself as only safe in their triumph. In a word, where nothing a little before was to be heard, but the horrible cries of the miserable, nothing to be seen but slaughter and desolation, there nothing now appeared but kindness and Generosity. *Pharamond* could not but with tenderness behold the Brother of that Princess whom he adored: and *Theobald*, who could not forget the obligations which the King of the *Franks* had laid upon him, passionately desired to deliver *Rosamond*, to the end he might complete the felicity of a Prince that so well deserv'd to be happy, as well for the qualities of his Soul, as person. But now it was high time to take care of the Army and their own preservation: thereupon orders were given to take care of the wounded, and for Burial of the dead; and *Pharamond* propos'd to lodge the Army in the Camp which the Enemy had forsaken: *Viridomar*, *Constance*, the King of the *Britains*, *Tongres*, and *Artabure* not only agreed that this change would be very convenient, but themselves ready to assist the King of the *Franks* in any thing that he thought conducing to his designs. As for *Theobald*, in regard he had not seen *Hunnimonda* since he was acknowledged to be King of the *Cimbrians*, and for that he seem'd not much to like the resolution they had taken, *I see, Sir*, said *Pharamond*, *that you are in as much haste for Segodunum, as I am desirous to stay near Cologne: go then whither your passion calls you, receive the glorious recompense which is your due, and never absent your self any longer from a most incomparable Princess, who by a secret conduct of destiny has been always preserv'd for Theobald, notwithstanding the infidelity of Balamir.*

At those words the King of the *Cimbrians* fetch'd a deep sigh, which he offer'd to *Hunnimonda's* absence: and after that resuming a more pleasant posture, *I will go, Sir*, said he, *since our Enemies are in no condition to hurt us, and in hopes that you will pardon my impatience, that so well have experienced the force and power of love.*

He had no sooner resolv'd to visit *Hunnimonda*, but *Pharamond* resolv'd to send for the Princesses to the new Camp, and to give the same Apartments which *Rosamond*, *Amalazontha*, *Albifinda* and *Agione* had held before. The King of the *Cimbrians* offered to be their Convoy, and having received full Commissions from *Viridomar* and the rest of the illustrious Lovers concerning their Princesses, he put himself in the front of a numerous Convoy which *Pharamond* particularly ordered to attend him; and taking the Road that led to his felicity, he marched to it with all the speed that a Lover could make, encouraged by a hope above all crosses and misfortunes.

The End of the Third Book of the Eleventh Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK IV.

NO sooner had he left the Camp which *Pharamond* had quitted, but he enquired after *Hunnimonda*; but as he rid on toward the place where she lay, *Prinam*, *Charamont* and many other considerable persons among the *Franks* who had been left behind for the Guard of the Princesses, meeting with all the respect and all the satisfaction they could shew him, conducted him to the very place, deferring till another time to do him those honours which were due to so great a Prince and the Brother of *Rosamond*. *Polyxena* and *Placidia* being at that time with the Princesses of the *Goths* when they understood of his arrival, would have left their Friend, but whatever excuse they made to be gone, the Princesses of the *Goths* knew their meaning, and with a modest blush endeavoured to stay them, but she could not obtain what civility made her request; for the two Princesses, without taking any farther notice, left her in a kind of perplexity that seem'd to have something in it very moving, and infinitely amiable. But if modesty added new charms to her Beauty, 'tis as certain there appeared a new splendour of Grandeur in the presence and carriage of the King of the *Cimbrians*, whether it reflected from his new Dignity, or from the victory which he brought along, whereof he had won so glorious a share, or from the fair hopes that enlivened him. For this reason those two persons so worthy the admiration of all the world, at first beheld each other with amazement. And though they were prepossessed with so much esteem each for other, yet was it impossible to avoid this mutual surprize. But in a short while after, the King of the *Cimbrians* threw himself at the feet of his divine *Hunnimonda*, and transported with love and joy, *Celestial Princess*, cryed he, behold *Theobald* who comes to justify *Balamir*: he offers you a Scepter instead of many others which you have refus'd for his sake: protesting that nothing more joys him to ascend the Throne of his Ancestors, than that he is thereby able to fix you there: that he cares not for his Crown, but as the recovery there-

of demonstrates to you that he never was unfaithful, and that he never loved the Queen of the Cimbrians, but with an affection which nearness of blood produced.

He had no sooner concluded these words, but he eagerly expected her answer, and to read his destiny in *Hunnimonda's* eyes, he cast his own upon that famous beauty that had caused so many revolutions in the world, which after he had surveyed for some time with a tenderness mixed with fear, *What my dear Princess,* pursued he, *are you still at a stand whether you shall declare your thoughts to me or no, especially now you're convinced of my innocence? And is it possible that you should be provoked against Theobald, because it became Balamir to love Rosamond?*

At those words, which a violent and respectful passion seemed to force from his Lips, the Princess of the *Goths* brake silence, though not before she had cast a look upon the King of the *Cimbrians*, enough to have charmed and set on fire a thousand hearts. *You conjecture right, Sir,* answered she, *that my anger ought to go along with the cause that produces it: So that it will never trouble me to let Balamir love where he pleases, so long as Theobald continues true to Hunnimonda.*

That obliging answer so sensibly mov'd a Prince, already passionately in love, and very much enfeebled in body, that his excessive joy had like to have proved fatal. But *Hunnimonda* perceiving the condition he was in, made it her request to him to have a care of himself, so that at her entreaty the King of the *Cimbrians* was forced to retire, giving a short visit to those other Ladies that were in *Pharamond's* Camp, who were almost all together with the Princess of the *Huns*, whom he had not seen since *Mundisic* was slain. 'Tis true that the death of *Mundisic* had not caused any extraordinary sorrow, which was the reason that there were some complements past which he would not have used, had the affliction been more solemn, but he concluded them as soon, that he might have time to talk of a loss considerable enough, to be the first subject of the entertainment. For how violent soever *Mundisic* had been, he had been Brother to the Princess of the *Huns*, and heir presumptive to one of the fairest Monarchies in the world, so that the Princess of the *Huns* who was of an excellent good nature, was very much grieved at his death, which made all those illustrious persons that were with her, to bear a share in her affliction. But to comfort her they desired her to consider the happiness of that famous *Balamir*, who had been always so dear to her, and *Theobald* himself who had always looked upon her as a Sister, after he had given her all the marks of a brotherly tenderness, told her how she had found another *Balamir*, equally recommendable for all noble and virtuous qualities, to the bravest men in the world. *But dear Sister,* said he, *have you heard all the particulars that make out the discovery of the real Balamir? Yes Brother,* said she, (for the King of the *Cimbrians* would not admit of any other appellation) *I am better instructed in what relates to the family from whence I am descended, than you think: For besides what I understand concerning Ambiomir who is now the real Balamir, I know that the King of the Huns is coming into those parts to meet his children and relations, and that he set forth from Alba-Julia, some days after Keva's departure. I am very glad of the news you tell me,* replied *Theobald*, *but Sister, do you think the affection which the King your Father has for you, will be enough to engage him to our party, or that Balamir's love for the Princess of the Lombards, will not make him take up the interests of the Persian Prince,* *"I never heard,* replied the Queen of the *Goths*, *that there was any such familiarity between Varanez and Ambiomir, and therefore it can never be for the Prince of Persia's sake, if the King of the Huns declare against us, but rather it is some particular league, that engages him to reinforce our enemies. Certain it is that Ambiomir is bound to Agelmond by the charms of Agione, that Agelmond will never quit the Brother of Gilismene, and I know that Agathyrus loves so well the Prince of Persia, as to embrace any part that Varanez takes without any consideration. But why,* replied *Polixena*, *should we fear that the King of the Huns will declare against us? I rather hope that by his mediation, there may be a peace made to the joy of so many Nations. I confess Madam,* replied *Theobald*, *that for the good of Europe, it were well that all these troubles were allayed, that have so long divided it, and laid desolate the fairest part of all her Provinces. But to tell you the truth, I see no probability of such a speedy conclusion of our miseries: For besides that the King of the Suedes humour and Briomer's frauds, are altogether opposite thereto, the pretensions which so many Princes united against Pharamond have to Rosamond, are obstacles not easily to be surmounted. Is it impossible for these enemies of the King of the Franks to be ever capable of reason,* replied the Queen of *Albion*, *or that so many Princes should never be able to open their eyes, which they have closed with so much obstinacy, to see the reproaches which they lie liable to every hour?* She uttered these words with a disturbance that was observed by all the company, and no question it was very much wondred at, that a Princess who had so little reason to fear for her own Territories,

torics, should so earnestly desire an end of a war, by which in all likelihood her Island could endure little or no inconvenience.

However *Placidia* and *Theodolinda*, thought it better to break off a discourse which had been so tedious for *Theobald*, rather than to desire her to explain her meaning, after which they begged him to take his repose, so that to pleasure them he was constrained to go to his Chamber, where his trusty Squire *Telmor* order'd his wounds to be searched, more diligently than they had been after the Battel. That Night he rested better than was expected, and the next morning so soon as it was convenient, all the persons of Note that were left in the Camp, came to visit a Prince, whose far-applauded Reputation they had so often admired. And it was observed that every one had a tenderness and respect for so famous a warrior, and the proofs which they gave thereof, were little different from those which *Pharamond* himself could have expected. Nor were the *Franks* the only persons so zealous to serve him, for *Gondemar* and *Guntran* who by the turn that had happened, saw themselves no longer obliged to look upon the *Cimbrian* King as their friend, yet forbore not however to pay him their devoirs, and to congratulate him for his happy restoration: So that *Theobald* finding himself obliged to those two Princes, *I confess*, answered he, *your generosity is very great, since it permits you to rejoyce at an adventure that cannot please King Gondicoh, and which carries off the Cimbrians quite from your party. For my part*, replied *Gondemar*, *'twould never trouble me to see the confederacy broken, and I wish with all my heart that the King my Brother would not so obstinately contend against Pharamond's right and Rosamond's inclinations. I fear me*, Sir, replied the King of the *Cimbrians* smiling, *you would not take the right way to gain the good will of Albitinda's Father, to shew your self so just, and whether the King, being of that temper you know he is, would receive you kindly, did he but understand what your opinion is of the Franks, and the Princess of the Bohemians. As there is a time*, replied the Prince of the *Burgundians*, *that I hope for nothing either from him or from his daughter, perhaps I should be less concern'd than you think for, at all his anger against me: And it may be*, said he blushing, *if a greater change than this should happen, he could not accuse me either of infidelity or lighness. In short*, Sir, *you know that Albitinda always prefer'd Marcomire before Gondemar, and you may well guess that when the war is done, the King of the Suedes will rather declare for the King of the Batavernes, than for a Prince that wants a Kingdom, and that Viridomar likewise whom I unwarily caused to be imprisoned, will never plead for me to the King her Brother. For which reason if another Mistress were ready to take possession of my heart, my reason would submit to her charms, and maintain them against a Princess whose own inclinations, and whose Parents would advance my Rivals before me. Ah Prince*, replied *Theobald*, *since you call your reason thus in question, I fear me you are a prisoner in this Army in more than one capacity, and by all outward appearances, Albitinda is not in your eye the most amiable person in the world. I am of your opinion*, replied *Gondemar* no way disturbed, *and I cannot tell whether the Prince here in our company, will not also confess that he has much ado, to withstand certain beauties that abide in this Camp. 'Tis very true*, replied *Guntran*; *that there are some whose power is irresistible, nor do I wonder that I have lost my liberty among them, since your heart, pre-engaged as it was, could not defend it self against their puissance.*

These words increased the King of the *Cimbrians* curiosity to have understood more, but at the same time he was advertised, that the Queens of the *Goths* and *Britains*, *Theodolinda* and *Adelaida* were come to visit him. He received those illustrious persons with all the respect and civility, that the condition he was in would allow him: For he could not raise himself in his bed, by reason his indisposition began to increase through the neglect of his wounds: Nor was he so well satisfied as at first, not seeing his Princess among the rest: So that he cast his eye about the Room, demanding by his looks that which was wanting to make up the honour of the visit: which when the Sister of *Honorius* observed not without some trouble, *I see Sir*, said she, *that inwardly you take us not to be your friends, and that you think we neglected, to bring the Princess Hunnimonda along with us. But you must know*, replied *Theodolinda*, *that we omitted no argument to persuade her, but to tell you the truth, she could not in civility prefer Theobald before Polixena. That Princess has taken her along with her, to see a most magnificent pinnace sent her by the Suevian Princess, and Vinderic Albitinda's Squire, besought us also to have born her Company. They say there is a most costly banquet prepared, for those persons that will take their pleasure in this Vessel by water. But for our parts, we rather chose to be contented with seeing than making use of it: And thus being divided as you see, some of us are gone with the Princess of the Franks, and some of us are come to visit the *Cimbrian* King. Hunnimonda indeed to whom Vinderic had particular recommendations, was in some measure obliged not to quit Polixena, so that Cleomira and Blefinda having agreed to stay*
with

with them, we could not but leave them to their discretions. But, replyed Theobald very impatiently, can you not return to your illustrious Friends? Or ought I to suffer you to leave them for my sake, and not use the utmost of my strength to conduci you to them again? No, my dear Brother, replyed Theodolinda, 'tis not for you to stir out of your Chamber, and perhaps I should have more blame than you are aware of, should I suffer you to go abroad without the consent of your Physicians.

The content which the Prince of the *Cimbrians* took in those last expressions pleas'd him not a little; however, after he had considered a while, *I would fain know*, said he, *whether this Vinderic you speak of be a person known, and whether he come certainly from the Princess Albisinda?* There is no question to be made of it, replyed the Queen of *Albion*, for I know that *Viridomar* himself presented him to the Princess of the *Franks*. For my part, I dare assure you, said *Adelaiada*, that this same *Sueve* told *Polyxena* that *Albisinda* would be overjoyed to entertain a correspondency of friendship, notwithstanding the war. I have order, *Madam*, added he in these very words, to tell you, that the Sister of *Viridomar* will begin first, as it is her duty, provided you will be contented to receive what she shall send you for your diversion. Judge you now, continued *Theodolinda*, whether *Vinderic* can be any way suspected, being known and presented to her by *Viridomar* himself, and whether *Polyxena* could refuse a present sent her from the Sister of *Viridomar*, and *Maicomire's* Mistress? "

She had no sooner concluded those words, but a confused noise of Trumpets and other warlike instruments disturbed their discourse. Immediately news was brought that *Wallia* and *Thrasimond* were near the Camp, and that *Priam* was mounted to meet the two Princes with a Body of the *French* Cavalry. *Theodolinda* was not a little discomposed when she heard the news, but *Placidia* taking notice of it, and knowing the cause, lest the blushes that spread themselves in her cheeks should be discovered, I confess, said she, that I shall be very glad to see *Thrasimond*; for in regard he was so highly esteem'd at *Constantinople*, I would fain know by what qualities these *Vandals* win the friendship of my nearest Relations. As far as I have heard, replyed Queen *Octavia*, the Brother of *Gunderic's* pretensions were far different from *Stilicon's*. And I am assured that he never strove to win *Theodotus's* favour, but upon designs which the other never could have. He is then more unfortunate than I: for, replyed the Queen of the *Visigoths*, I know nothing more insupportable for a man that is in love, than to sigh for a person that cannot truly love him. But, my dear Sister, said the King of the *Cimbrians*, whispering to *Theodolinda*, 'tis but just that the Prince that comes along with *Thrasimond* should enjoy a better fortune. 'Tis not in *Theodolinda's* power, replyed the blushing, to be the Mistress either of his good or bad fortune. But hold you, added *Placidia*, we never mind that our discourse has held very long, and that it is time for us to leave our sick patient, unless we intend to retard his cure. Upon the conclusion of those words, the four Princesses took their leaves of the *Cimbrian* King, after they had perswaded him to follow *Telanor's* advice in reference to his health.

No sooner was the pationate *Theobald* alone in his Chamber, but all his thoughts ran upon *Hunnimonda*: but notwithstanding all the satisfaction which the charming Idea that filled his Soul could afford him, he felt certain secret disturbances which he could not throw off: he sent to her Lodgings to be better inform'd what the meaning should be of this taking the air, a thing which as it no way liked him, would by no means go out of his mind; but her Attendants return'd him for answer, that they did not expect their Mistress till the Evening, there being a magnificent Supper and rare Musick provided; and besides, that the Boat was to return by the light of several artificial fires by night to conclude the Solemnity of the Entertainment. The King of the *Cimbrians* saw very well that there was likelyhood enough that *Albisinda* might be thus facetious to divert *Polyxena*. However, that opinion instead of becalming his mind, turmoiled it with secret fears, till they were suspended by the arrival of *Wallia* and *Thrasimond*. They were desirous with the first opportunity to visit that great personage, whose renown since had published through all the world. *Theobald* was as glad to see two valiant Soldiers whose Adventures he had heard of, for as *Hilderic's* Relation had begat in him a respect for *Wallia*, *Mortian* had given him no less a character of *Thrasimond*, and touched him with a desire to understand the concerns of *Gunderic*. For which reasons he testified all the demonstrations of joy that he could testify at a time when his Soul was under such an afflicting prognostication. And certainly they were truly worthy of that Reception; for besides the lustre of their Birth, and the noble Reputation which they had won, the qualities of their minds and persons were such, that it was no difficult thing to afford them something more of esteem than is due to ordinary merit. *Wallia* had an air more brisk and lively in his carriage: but in *Thrasimond's* countenance there appeared a sweet languishment that moderated the fierceness of

his looks, and which without much trouble was capable of touching the heart with the quickest motions of affection: *Sirs*, said the *Cimbrian King*, *your arrival permits me not to doubt the success of this war: for since Pharamond's valour receives this day such a reinforcement, I dare say the justest side is not the weakest.* Great King, replied *Walia*, *our assistance was so needless, and the event of the war so assured, especially where you command an Army with Pharamond; that it must be thought that nothing but our proper interest brought us hither, since all the world knows, that they who would be victorious, need only follow those invincible Princes, to whom we offer both our Forces and our Sword.* For my part, pursued the Brother of *Gunderic*, *I must ingenuously confess, that my Services will be little or no obligation to the Army where I shall perform them, rather must I be engaged to the Bohemians and Franks: for in regard these warlike Nations never fight without success, I cannot die in their service, without losing honourably a life which I linger out in misery.* *I never heard*, replied *Theobald*, *that you have had any such cause to complain of fortune: for by what Martian has related to me of your Adventures, I do not remember any misfortune capable of infusing such melancholy thoughts into your mind.* Then it seems, replied the Prince of the *Vandals*, *my friend has not told you any thing concerning the King my Brother, or what has befallen me since my departure from Constantinople.* *I grant it*, answered the King of the *Cimbrians*. *But, Sir, you may be pleased your self to perfect his Relation, and to grant me the favour which I beg, not so much out of a curiosity, but because I would willingly contribute to your ease, bearing so great a share as I do in your sorrows.* Though your intentions were not so obliging, replied *Thrasimond*, *there is nothing that I can refuse the King of the Cimbrians.* Besides that, it seldom happens that a person in misery desires to lose an opportunity to talk of his misfortunes.

Having concluded those words, he took notice that *Theobald* and *Walia* began to listen: so that after he had paused a while upon what he had to say, he thus brake silence, addressing himself to the King of the *Cimbrians*.

The History of Gunderic.

THOUGH I am but young in years, yet I have found by my own experience, that the pride of men has but weak foundations, since there needs but one bare reflection to overturn it; and it is impossible for us to defend it, if we but consider our own weakness for is there any thing besides our thoughts that is within our power? But if we form them into resolutions, do we not find them always attended by a success quite contrary to our hopes? To give you a remarkable example hereof, I need no more than relate the Story which you require: give me leave to tell you then, that the *Vandals*, after they had maintain'd several bloody Wars, and often changed their Habitations, at length invaded *Spain* under the conduct of their King *Gunderic*, a Prince of a vast ambition, and if I may presume to say it, of a great and magnanimous courage. While we advanced toward the River *Betis*, and that the *Romans* had gathered an Army together to give us Battel, a person of a goodly presence and well stricken in years came into our Camp toward the close of the day, who declaring that he had business of importance, was conducted to the King's Tent: *Gunderic*, though naturally proud, received the stranger very courteously. The *Vandals* retired to the other end of the Room, and I was about to follow, when the King holding me by the hand, *Prince*, said he to me, *do you think I keep any thing secret from such a Brother as Thrasimond?* Upon those words I made a stop in a posture of acknowledgment, and observed that the unknown person was nothing frighted at the splendour of Majesty: but on the contrary, he accosted the King of the *Vandals* like a person of Quality, and having made him an obeysance in a posture as far from abject humility, as from pride, *Sir*, said he, *I make no question but that you have foreseen those obstacles which you will meet with in the design which you have contrived: you march against the Romans and Spaniards, Nations powerful and warlike, who can every moment be recruited from Countries where you will find none but enemies.* But, *Sir*, I come to offer you a way just, certain and acceptable, how to purchase the hearts of the Inhabitants of this Country, and how to establish a noble and lawful Monarchy in those Provinces, from whence, if you will not follow my counsel, you will be driven out by the whole Nation as an odious Usurper. I have correspondencies in most of the greatest Cities, several Troops of chosen and active men at my command, who only expect my orders to declare themselves; and what is more considerable I have at my disposal, the only Heiress of the Kingdom which you pretend to conquer, This Princess was born with an abundance of

whose perfections which most people admire. And if you never heard of her beauty and her jurisdictions, 'twas only because she was privately carried away and kept concealed, for fear the Romans should make use of some cruel way of prevention against a person, so likely to raise them up great enemies. Consider now, Sir, whether you will seat her upon the Throne of her Ancestors, and sit there with her your self or no. This alliance will so unite the Spaniards and the Vandals, that you will be no longer looked upon as Strangers, you will fight them for your own advantage and we may be able with our joynt forces, not to drive them only out of Betique Spain, but also, wage war with their whole Empire.

He had no-sooner done speaking but I began to be of his mind, and in regard it appeared in my face, I observed as much gladness in his, and that he seemed in some measure to acknowledge it. But he received not the same satisfaction from *Gunderic*, for that Prince naturally ambitious, consulting his own pride rather than the other's solid reasons, return'd him an answer much to this purpose, I grant you, said he, that the claims of your young Princess are just and beyond controversy. I believe also you have forces and intelligence, sufficient to procure me the victory. However I declare to you I shall not accept your proposition, for I had rather be beholding to my Sword, for that which you would give me by the marriage and in right of a woman. I will make use of no other but the Conquerours right, I will march against the Romans and Spaniards at the head of my own Vandals, and if I flatter not my self too much, I believe I shall overcome them both, and that you will suddenly see me in Hispaly, Master of all *Betica*. Then you may speak to me in the behalf of that fair Lady, whom the Spaniards had despoiled of her Dominions, and then you will find that in that place, I shall be more prone to be liberal to give, than now to receive that assistance, to which I must be beholding for a part of my victories.

The Stranger was nettled at this answer, and beholding *Gunderic* with a dissatisfied look; Perhaps, said he, you will not find those victories so easily won, which you scorn to share. But should you fight with all the success you could desire, never believe that I intend to put you in mind of your promises: For I had rather dye or pass the rest of my days in exile, than become a suppliant to a Prince, to whom I repent that I have made such advantageous offers. Having uttered these few words with a kind of disdain he went his way, leaving the King of the Vandals strangely surpris'd at his boldness, such as he was not wont to suffer in his presence. Nevertheless, the King who was truly generous, never took care to stop the Spaniard, but on the contrary turning toward me full of moderation, he asked me what I thought of the boldness of that unknown person. Sir, said I, I believe the Stranger was fully perswaded, that you would have listned to his propositions, and that in all probability you would have accepted what you have now refused. But Brother, said he, what would you have done in the same case? Speak, pursued he, perceiving I was unwilling to tell my opinion, for I find by your countenance, my thoughts and yours are not conformable. Since your Majesty commands me, answered I, to speak my opinion concerning this matter, I confess that I should have well examined the matter, and if I had thought that I could have made those advantages which he opposed, I should without any more to do, have made the alliance which he offered me. You could not then be said to have vanquished the Romans, answered *Gunderic*, but by the assistance of the Spaniards, and so instead of founding of a Monarchy of Vandals, you would only but fix the Empire of your confederates. I grant it, said I, 'twould have been less honourable to have acted in that manner. But Sir, as my thoughts are less exalted than your Majesties, I should have been contented to have taken the surest way. And then you would have married a person, answered *Gunderic*, that had no other fortune but what you might have won by your Sword. If this Princess be so fair as they report, said I, I should not have been so unwilling to unite my fortune to hers; and her want of estate would have been a new charm to have allured me. In short, I should have thought that acknowledgment had begat my love, and that as upon one hand she had made me lawful possessor of her Territories, that very obligation would have proved thereby the more happy. For my part, said the King of the Vandals, I will not love any woman that is not the greatest Queen in the world, and I declare to you there must be something else besides beautiful cheeks, to move *Gunderic's* heart. By what I find Sir, replied I, the difference of our humours is as great as the difference between our qualities: For I should rather love a person that were of a condition inferiour to mine, believing it to be a pleasure to advance what we love, and still to be looked upon with acknowledgment.

Thus instead of convincing one another of our opposite opinions, we both of us kept our own, but these disputes were now to give place to other thoughts, opportunity offering us an occasion to invade *Betica*, while the *Alains* and *Gepides* under their Kings *Acaces* and *Arderic*, fell upon the other side of Spain, and were advanced almost as far as the River *Iberus*. We were overjoyed to see so powerful a diversion of the Roman Arms, and indeed

we did not find that *Honorius* had Captains enough, to oppose against so many enemies. In short, it was reported that *Stilicon's* authority diminished every day, and that he had resolved to stir no more from his Master's fight, for fear of losing the remaining stock of his credit, by such ill offices as might be done him in his absence. Not but that renown had already filled our ears with the fame of the renowned *Constance*, but we hardly believed that being not above four and twenty years of age, they would chuse him Captain, to undergo the weight of so important a war: So that considering the kindness of the opportunity, we marched toward *Betis* full of hopes.

The *Romans* and *Spaniards* with a body of four and twenty thousand men, commanded by *Maximinus*, *Anaxilla*, and *Licinius*, expected us upon the banks of the River, having walled all the Country round about, to starve our Army which was very numerous and in an enemies Country: But *Gunderic* being young and fierce, made such hast that we had no want of victuals, and withal came suddenly in sight of *Maximinus*, though he had sent out several little bodies to dispute the passes, and annoy us upon all occasions wherein we always had the upper hand.

These small successes though seemingly of no great importance, yet produced very considerable effects, for the *Spaniards* took them for omens of a great victory, so that many of the Soldiers came and joyned with us, and several of their Cities opened their Gates to our Forces. The *Roman* Generals finding that their Conduct had nor succeeded according to their hopes, resolved to come to a pitch'd field, to regain the reputation of their Arms, for they saw that if they were victors, we were without all manner of recruits, that if fortune should not favour them that then they could retire over the *Betis*, break down the bridges, defend the passage of the River, and every moment receive recruits from the *Spaniards*, whom common interest called to the defence of his Country.

Thereupon the two Armies advanced in very good order, the King gave me the command of the right wing, the left was led by *Gidiseles* a famous Soldier among the *Vandals*, a kinsman and relation of *Stilicon's*. On the other side *Anaxilla* was opposed against me, *Licinius* fought against our left wing, and *Maximinus* was to bear the brunt of the valiant *Gunderic*, who thunder'd in upon his enemies with such an impetuous violence, that he brake immediately the first ranks of the enemy, and forced his way even to *Maximinus* himself, whom he challenged and encountred. *Gunderic* was run through the shoulder, but *Maximinus* was run through the body and fell off his horse: *Licinius* hastned to rally and sustain the main battel. But for *Anaxilla* I held him so in play, that he could give little or no relief to *Maximinus*. In short Sir, I had no reason to complain of my fortune, I had the good luck to beat the left Wing of the *Romans*, to wound *Anaxilla* and take him prisoner. Then intending to help the King, I found him in a vigorous pursuit of the enemy, having wounded and taken *Licinius* prisoner: So that the victory was compleat on our side, having slain above thirty thousand, with the loss of ten thousand men. And certainly their defeat had been the greatest that ever was, had they not been succoured by a miracle.

For while *Licinius* ran about the field encouraging the Soldiers, which the valour of *Gunderic* and the fall of *Maximinus* had altogether dismayed, a certain person splendidly arm'd, and followed by several Squadrons threw himself into the Battel, and declaring for the *Romans* fought for the King of the *Vandals*, in all places where he thought there was most danger. *Gidiseles* coming to joyn with *Gunderic* met this unknown person, and after a tedious combat remarkable for the valour of those two great Soldiers, they parted with some loss on the *Vandals* side. For this unknown person took several of our Officers prisoners, rallied several Troops and retreated in view of us like a great Captain, making use of all advantages, either of the ways which he knew better than we, or the obscurity of the night which by that time began to grow on apace. Not long after he made great fires upon a hill which he had got possession of, and judging well that we would certainly believe that he intended to keep that post, he steals away toward the River in the dark, passed it, and made use of all advantages to hinder us from pursuing him: So that when we came to the River side, we were forced to stop there, till we had made boats enough to pass the Army over. In the mean time the Officers who were sent back upon exchange, assured us, that the unknown person was not at all for the *Roman* interest, but on the contrary quite opposite to all their enterprizes, and that he had nor served them at this time, but that he bare a greater hatred to the King of the *Vandals*, against whom he was resolved to arm all *Spain*, protesting that if fortune were so unjust as to favour the designs of a usurper, he would exile himself from a Country miserably enslaved, and end his days in some dire solitude beyond the Seas, in expectation of some happy revolution:

This Relation made us conjecture that this Enemy of the King of the *Vandals* was the same Stranger who made these proposals which I have mentioned; and that which confirm'd us in our conjectures, was, that it was also reported, that the same *Spaniard* testified a far different opinion of me, than he had of my Brother: "I am very glad, *said the King*, that you are so well beloved by this unknown person: but to say the truth, I could be very well pleased that he had not such an antipathy against me. However, 'tis not because he is a brave person and a great Captain that I desire his friendship: but, *said he, smiling*, because he has a fair Lady at his disposal. Nor for that cause neither, *replyed he to himself*, for were she the most charming Beauty in the world I could never love her: nay, I will go a little farther, I do not believe 'tis possible for me to fight for any Beauty living, to whom fortune had refused those Grandeurs to which my ambition aspires. "Then, *replyed I*, 'tis only out of a natural inclination to be beloved of as many you can, that you desire the *Spaniard* should change those bad thoughts which he has of your inclinations. "The design you speak of, *replyed he*, is in me too general to be too deeply sensible of it: and yet I must acknowledge that at this time I find a certain alteration within me, which it becomes not a person of my humour to undergo for one that he never saw in his life. But, Brother, *added he of a sudden*, upbraid not the weakness that I have discovered, I will soon chase it from the heart of *Gunderic*, I will hate the person that hates me. Nor can I tell whether he will not find it as troublesome to protect himself from the effects of my anger, as for *Gunderic* to defend himself against his threats.

Having made known his design, he minded nothing but performance, and to that end he so encouraged the workmen, that in a few days we had Boats enough ready to pass the River. The King himself led the way, and so encouraged others by his example, that notwithstanding whole showers of Arrows, we gain'd the other side of the River, chasing the Enemy, after a bloody fight and a long resistance, *Atalorque*, for so was that Soldier named that spoke so boldly to *Gunderic*, caused himself to be carried, wounded as he was, from Rank to Rank, to encourage and rally those Troops of his that either the hardness or impetuosity of ours had disordered and frighted; but all the *Spanish* Captain endeavoured, did but serve to prolong the Fight and the Slaughter, we remain'd Masters of the Field; and indeed that victory was the conquest of *Betica*. But while he was preparing to subdue the whole, and to besiege certain places that still held out against us, we received intelligence that the famous *Constance* had defeated the *Gepides* and *Alains*, that King *Acaces* was slain, and that *Ardaric* hardly escaped with eight or ten Horsemen. Moreover, that the Conquerour of these two Kings was marching against us, together with *Artabure* and *Ariobindus*; and that *Atalorque* mainly solicited and hastened his advance, being ready to reinforce them with an Army of ten thousand men.

The two Armies dally'd a long time, watching their advantages; but at length the *Romans* made a shew of besieging a Town that was garrison'd by ours, on purpose to draw the proud and fierce King into places where the *Romans* were well acquainted. *Gunderic* failed not to hasten to the relief of his own people, and marching his people with less caution than he ought to have done, considering he had to deal with such a Captain as *Constance*, he engaged a little too far between two Hills, the tops whereof were guarded by *Atalorque*, who knew all the secret turnings and by-ways of the Mountains: so that all of a sudden we were almost overwhelmed with Darts and Stones; whereupon the King of the *Vandals* perceiving his error, instead of repenting to no purpose, he only took care to repair his losses by some extraordinary action. To that intent he alighted, covered himself with his Buckler, and followed by the Volunteers of his Army with an undaunted confidence, he mounted the Hill through a thousand dangers, till he fell into an Ambuscade, where he thought he should meet with *Atalorque*: and by the resistance which he found, he knew he was not deceived, besides that *Atalorque* several times appeared at the head of his own men, encouraging them as well by his word, as by his example. Nevertheless, there was nothing impossible to the *Vandals* led by their King, they forced their Troops from their Entrenchments, wounded their Captain; and in a word, made themselves Masters of that Post. But this advantage cost *Gunderic* dear; for in the mean time *Constance* had won a victory far more considerable; for he set upon our Army with that vigour and conduct which had already subdued several Kings, and was so signally seconded by *Artabure* and *Ariobindus*, that he defeated the greatest part of our Troops, and put all the rest into disorder, and a more dreadful flight. *Gunderic* no sooner beheld the rout of his people, but he shewed himself much more disheartened than he was wont to be at other times in dangers of the same nature, At first he resolv'd to die honourably among the thickest of his

his Enemies, but we opposed him in the execution of so martial a design, partly by our prayers, partly by laying before him how much that resolution would be unworthy his great courage, especially when things were not in such a desperate condition as to require it. Thereupon he made it his business to rally and save the remainder of his *Vandals*, which he did with so much experience and speed, that he got together above thirty thousand men, and regained the Hill which *Atalorque* had fortified: *Constance* who could not despise such an Enemy, though weakened, and in a very bad condition, followed us, and seizing all the Avenues of the Mountain, resolves to besiege us. The undaunted *Gunderic*, instead of appearing surpris'd at the news, prepared to force his way through the *Roman* Army by dint of Sword; but when he examined the matter more seriously, he found there was no good to be done that way; for he found he had above twelve thousand men wounded, and the rest quite tired out, and but enough to tend the sick; and that he could not perform what he intended, but by forsaking and abandoning his own people, and that though he should break through, yet 'twas impossible for him to hold out against a victorious Army, and in a Country enraged against him for all those miseries he had brought on it. These reflections shook him, being seconded by those arguments which we laid before him; and yet I cannot tell whether he would have desired Articles, had he been to deal with an Enemy less generous than *Constance*. But in regard he infinitely esteem'd that great person whose virtues all the world adored, he sent a Trumpeter to desire an Interview, which the Lieutenant of *Honorius* very obligingly condescended to. In conclusion we quitted *Spain*, with a promise never to return thither again so long as *Constance* had any thing to do with the *Roman* interest, yet resolved to try the total conquest of it, if there should happen any change in the fortune of that renowned *Roman* who had driven us to forsake it: After this our Army being recruited with those Soldiers which we drew out of the Garrisons which we delivered back into *Constance's* hands, *Gunderic* bethought himself what famous Enterprize to undertake, that might satisfy his ambition with some more remarkable conquest than that of *Spain*. So that while his Troops lay to refresh themselves, and that his Navy was fitting up in the Sea-port Towns, he was studying which way to steer his course, and in what part of the world he might most conveniently lay the foundation of that Monarchy which he intended to rear. At length out of that greedy desire of greatness with which his Soul was continually turmoiled, he threw aside several determinations, embracing only two, which he found most conformable to the grandeur of his courage; he was therefore at a stand whether he should attack *Carthage*, or carry the war into the Eastern Empire: his first design seem'd less honourable, the latter more difficult. *Africa* was unprovided of Soldiers ever since the wars between *Gildon* and *Mescezel*; so that the *Vandals* being Master only of some of the Sea-port Towns, might easily enlarge into the Continent, and become Lord of the third part of the world. Nevertheless, for fear of disobliging *Constance*, whom he truly loved, he would not invade any of the *Roman* Territories before he knew whether the Lieutenant of *Honorius*, who was become his Friend, would consent that he should seek to plant himself in these parts. He sent therefore *Gidisdies* into *Italy*, and rendezvouzing all his Naval Forces, he set sail for *Constantinople* with an intention to set upon that City, which he might do without offending *Constance*, in regard the Emperours at that time were more related in blood, than united in friendship. I shall omit the particulars of this Voyage, the Relation whereof you have heard from *Martian*, who was sent against us by *Theodosius*.

'Tis very true, said the King of the *Cimbrians*, interrupting him, that the renowned Lover of *Pulcheria* spake to me of Prince *Thrasimond*, but it was in such language as gave me a more perfect knowledge of him than all that you have said: so that I have too patiently suffered you to conceal out of a modesty a hundred noble exploits, which *Martian* would have more justly related than you have done; for had he not published your valour by comparing you to the God of War, I could never have known it by those Adventures which you have recounted.

In regard that friendship misprizes hyperboles, and in some measure excuses them, replied the *Vandal* Prince, *Martian* was not obliged to use so much sincerity in my applause, only he thought to speak that of *Thrasimond*, which *Thrasimond* would have spoken of *Martian* with more justice and good will. But since he has so highly applauded the little I have done, I will content my self to tell you, that after several Engagements upon the *Egean* Sea, at length we came to a set Fight, which having very much weakened both sides, both parties thought good to put an end to a war, which through the valour of their Captains could not chuse but be very bloody, without any great advantage to the Victor. To this purpose *Martian* and *Gunderic* had several parleys, and in regard I was generally admitted to their Conferences, the Lieutenant of *Theodosius* took an affection to me, and

sympathy

Sympathy wrought the same effect in his, as merit produced in mine. In a word, we lov'd entirely, and I went upon his engagement to *Constantinople*, to agree with the Emperour upon such things which *Martian* had not power to conclude.

Here the enamoured *Thrasimond* stop'd to give free passage to some sighs, and to appease certain storms that arose in his breast, when he called to mind that fatal voyage that had occasioned all his misfortunes. Then resuming his relation with a more penitive Air, and a countenance altogether changed, Alas Sir, continued he, that *Martian* should leave my adventures unfinished, thus to revive my sorrows? But I shall not tell you all the particulars, for besides that they are known to you already, 'tis the Story of the King of the *Vandals* that you expect, and not of the valiant *Thrasimond*. You must know then, that that man whose desires were so moderate, that man who would love nothing but what was beneath himself, fell in love immediately at the Court of *Theodosius*, nay he loved the most exalted person in the world without exception, since he loved the Empress of the Orient, at that time when the *Roman* Empress was dead. But Sir, I say nothing, when I tell you that I loved the incomparable *Athenais*, the divine *Eudoxia*, if at the same time I forget to tell you that I loved her without hope, in such a manner as would have drawn compassion from my enemies. In short, Sir, all that *Martian* could speak upon this subject, did but imperfectly express my torments, and the torments that I shall endure while I linger out this miserable life. But not to engage my self in a subject, from whence it is impossible for me to retire, let us see what became of the King of the *Vandals*, during my abode at *Constantinople*.

While he was in treaty with *Martian*, the report ran that there was a rebellion in *Spain*, and that the illustrious *Constance* was slain, but the particulars of his death were unknown. *Gunderic* was extremely afflicted at such a rumour, concerning a person whom he both esteem'd and loved, and had presently sent to *Rome* to have been satisfied of the truth, but that he thought that *Gidiscles* then at *Rome* in the Court of *Honorius*, would have infallibly sent him word had it been a truth. So that he only dispatched away a light Vessel to the coast of *Betica*, and in expectation of the return thereof he obtained leave of *Martian*, not only to refresh himself for a Month in some Island of the *Archipelago*, but also gave him liberty to chuse which he thought most convenient. You may well guess that he was not long determining, for he immediately landed in *Creet*, the fairest and most renowned Island in all the *Egean* Sea.

After the Army had refreshed themselves, the Officers were desirous to see the rarities of so famous a Country, and were shewed by the most knowing of the Islanders, all that remained of the Temple, and other Monuments raised in honour of *Jupiter*, to whom that Island was consecrated. But *Gunderic* was for satisfying another piece of curiosity, according to his humour. He examined the strength and government of the Island, and when he went a hunting he took great delight, to observe the places where battels had been fought, either during the war between *Mark Anthony* the renowned lover of *Cleopatra*, and the young *Augustus*, or else during the war that *Metellus* so prosperously ended, when by the entire conquest of that Island he obtained the Sirname of *Cretan*.

One day that the Prince had rid very hard, he had a great desire to rest himself as he crossed a pleasant wood, which the King of the *Vandals* beheld with that pleasure, which he had seldom before been accustomed to betray, and thereupon alighting, he walked about in search of a commodious place to lye down. Immediately he found one as fit for his purpose as he could desire, covered with high grass and a thick tuft of trees. *Gunderic*, being tyred fought no farther but lay down, and while the company kept at a distance, soon buried in sleep all those cares with which his ambition perplexed him. When he waked instead of rising, he lay musing and feeding his eyes with the pleasures of the prospect, and while he turned them about to view the fair variety of objects, he spied two women that were discoursing together not perceiving him. Their habits were very ordinary according to the Country mode in that place; and though *Gunderic* had no desire to hear what people said, that he thought could discourse of nothing but either of their Gardens or of their sheep, yet without any design of listening, he overheard one of the two continue a discourse begun between them both after this manner, *But did we ever think*, said she, *when we chose this Island for a retirement, that we should have seen an Army, especially an Army of the Vandals, landed in the Territories of the great Theodosius?*

Those last words somewhat nettled *Gunderic*, for believing that his nation were monstrously set out among the *Greeks*, and that those people had a strange aversion toward his Countrymen, because they were so far remote from all commerce. That reflexion made him curious to understand more, and not only to know what opinion they had of his Ar-

my, but also whether they had any reason to make any complaint. To that purpose he went toward them with all the civility imaginable, that he might not put them into any affright, but no sooner had he cast his eyes upon the countenance of the youngest, but he found himself smitten with a most dazzling splendour. And his Soul was seized with that admiration, which he had never experienced in all his life before. He was so unable to step a step farther, that he became immoveable: He could do nothing more than look, nor could he tell but that what he saw was one of those Deities, that were said to have appeared formerly in that Island. On the other side the two Strangers were truly surpris'd, to meet in such a solitary place, a person so magnificently habited, and whose presence was answerable to his Royal Dignity. But in regard their astonishment had not wrought the same effect in them, as it had produced in *Gunderic*, they rose and took a private path, that led in all likelihood to the house which they had chosen for their retirement. The King not being able to suffer the departure, of that which already he so passionately lov'd, went after the wonderful person that had becharm'd his heart, and holding her by the garment with a trembling hand, and a respect that took notice of his natural fierceness, *I beseech you*, said he, *let me not fright you hence, for if you will not permit me to admire but for a little while, whatever was fair upon this earth, I will retire for fear of troubling your repose, though I am sure you have robbed me of mine, all the rest of my life.*

While he uttered these words, he beheld her with an unspeakable joy, and through the pleasure which he tasted, he deeply thrust into his heart the fatal dart, which was already entred too far, the wound whereof so dolefully tormented him afterwards. But Sir, to justify the Prince, it behoves me to describe the person who enthralled that liberty, which till then he had so proudly preserved.

The fair Virgin was about seventeen years of age, her Stature was very tall, streight, free and admirably shap'd. Her complection was a dazzling white, with only such a tincture as could give it life to the eye: her mouth perfect in proportion, and her Lips a most glorious vermilion: her hair the brightest in the world, and her eyes more charming than all the rest, blew, large, and sparkling with such a lively fire, that you might as well behold the Sun as them. Besides all this, there was in her presence and in her countenance, such an air of grandeur as seem'd to be above her mortal condition, and attracted respect from the most morose of men. Thus Sir, methinks I have said enough of her, for a person whose fancy is taken up only with the Idea of the most incomparable *Eudoxia*, and hereby I have shewed you how difficult a thing it was for *Gunderic*, not prepossessed with any other passion, to defend his heart against a beauty so accomplished. Alas! he never took care so much as to resist it, but suffering himself to be allured by that sweetness, which Lovers usually slip from such interviews, or rather suffering himself to be carried away by the force of his own destiny, he opened a passage to his heart for that poyson which afterwards proved so fatal to him. In short, Sir, he was so far from slisting that mischief in the birth, the production whereof he cared not to examine, that he abandoned himself in such a manner, to the pleasure of beholding that lovely Stranger, that he forgot his dignity, his ambition, and all these noble designs of never loving, unless it were one of the greatest Princesses in the world. And thus Sir, you see how anger'd heaven sported with *Gunderic's* resolutions as well as mine.

In the mean while to return to the charming Stranger, I must tell you that she entreated the King to let her go along with her mother: But the passionate Prince not being able to give his consent; *How*, said he fetching a deep sigh, *can you leave so soon a place so pleasant, or can you be afraid to meet a man, you that carry in your eyes enough to make your person revered by all the earth.* Sir, answered she, *you may do well to reserve your obliging discourse to persons of another condition, and who have more leisure to hear you.* Having so said she made an offer to be gone, when the enamour'd *Gunderic* beholding her with a transportation of tenderness and astonishment; *Oh!* said he, *that you should so little understand your power over souls, or so little know the anguish of my heart, since you have so little regard for a King.* Upon those words the two Strangers beheld each other with surprize, and the younger undertaking to speak with more courage than before, Sir, replied she, *then you must give me leave to tell you that I am the more obliged to see your company, and that I shall avoid it as much as lies in my power.* Instead of attending *Gunderic's* answer, she pulled her garment briskly out of the King's hand, and tripped away in great haste cross the Wood. The King of the *Vandals* could not chuse but follow her a few steps, and taking hold of her by the Coat, *Once more for heavens sake*, cryed he, *stop but one moment, and do not think a King is a monster prepared to devour you.* *I have a better opinion of Kings*, replied she, *than you are aware of, turning towards him, for I believe they know more and love virtue better than*

ther men, For that reason, added she very coyly, I wonder that you thus pursue me, and seek to put a force upon a person who is none of your subject, a person whose Sex ought to be used with more respect by yours.

The Majesty wherewith she pronounced these words, surpris'd *Gunderic*, terrified and stopp'd him, but it the fear of displeasing that severe Lady kept him from running after her, his love would not permit him to neglect the means of seeing her again. After he had followed the fair Stranger with his eyes as far as it was possible, finding those passages for his eyes which a thousand great Trees seem'd to deny him, he call'd his Attendants, and chosing out the most nimble witted among them, he commanded them to divide themselves and to look for a house which could not be far off in some part of the Wood or other. Then he told them all these circumstances that might serve for their instruction, and some that were nothing to the purpose, so great a care he had not to omit those that were necessary, and after he had with many aggravations, but confusedly, describ'd to them the person that he would have them find out, he promis'd them great rewards if they brought him tydings according to his mind, such as he expected from their fidelity and cunning. He call'd them back also more than once, to repeat to them what he had said already, and returned home with such a change as well in his face as in his humour, that all the Court was astonish'd, and earnestly sought to know the cause. However it was no easie thing to conjecture, what should be the reason of *Gunderic's* disquiet, for in regard it was believ'd that only ambition reigned in his Soul, it was thought he might have received some ill news and that his melancholy proceeded rather from the Court of *Rome* or *Constantinople*, than from any retirement in the Island of *Crete*. But it far'd not with the King of the *Vandals*, as with those Lovers who knew not the nature of their distemper, he knew his own as soon as he felt it, for the fire of his love having enlightn'd his mind by setting his heart on fire, he found that he loved, but he found he loved a person of a mean birth, and all this he saw with grief, vexation and shame. *Is it a becoming thing*, (said he to himself when he saw himself surrounded with his Officers) *for a Prince that commands so many valiant men, to submit so pusillanimously to the first assault of an unworthy passion, which he should have repuls'd with all his vigour? Are these, Gunderic, thy noble resolutions and thy great designs? Is this the Monarchy whereof thou wouldst lay the foundations? or dost thou shew thy self worthy of such an undertaking, to sigh so poorly for a Girl that it may be the meanest of thy Domesticks would despise?*

He had no sooner thus rebuk'd himself in silence, but he felt a lively repentance and grew pale, as if the fair Lady that he had offended, had indeed received that injury in a heart wherein he knew he was settled notwithstanding all his wise reflections. He also demand'd pardon of the charming Lady, he confess'd he had committed a crime worthy of her anger, and calling to mind all those beauties that he had observ'd in her, he strongly maintain'd against his own reason, that the lustre of her eyes was to be preferred far before the splendour of Crowns. He accus'd the *Cretan* inhabitants of blindness, because they did not publickly adore that wonderful Stranger, but suffer'd her to live obscurely in a desert, that deserv'd to reign over all the world, or at least over an Island which had formerly erected temples to persons less worthy to be adored.

While his love inspir'd him with these thoughts, he saw one of the *Vandals* coming, whom he had sent to inform himself of all that concern'd the Lady that so fully possess'd his heart, but withal he saw himself in a great passion. Immediately suffering himself to be transported with the motions of his love, he went to the Officer and having consult'd his face, he was overjoyed when he found nothing but good success in his eyes. *Well Athenil*, said he receiving him very courteously, *bringest thou any certain tydings of what I desire to know? Yes Sir*, said he, *for I have not only seen the fair Lady whom you met in the Wood Minos, but I know also where she lives, and that the house which she has chosen for her retreat, belongs to the Father of Cydillion, who often attends your Majesty a mornings.*

Thereupon instead of staying till *Cydillion* came to see him, he sent to speak with him, and the young *Greek* proud that the King of the *Vandals* had sent for him, made hast to the Prince, who thus obligingly expostulated with him. *I cannot tell*, said I, *why I should be so much your friend as I am, after that severe unkindness which you have shew'd me, wherefore should you conceal from me a thing, which you ought to have told me of with the soonest, and though you might think your self not oblig'd to do it out of affection, am I not a Stranger, and ought you not to have shewn me the chiefest rarities in your Island?*

Cydillion not apprehending what the King of the *Vandals* meant, *How*, reply'd the Prince, *have I not spoken plain enough, and must I be forced to complain of you for your better understanding, that you would never let me know you have one of the most beautiful persons in the world,*

in one of your Houses? I protest, Sir, replied the Islander, 'tis more than I know myself; only I have heard, and that but confusedly neither, that my Father has entertained certain Strangers in a House of his near the Wood Minos. Then you ought to thank me for my news; replied Gunderic, and you are obliged in gratitude to carry me to a place where you can go when you please. That shall be when your Majesty thinks convenient, replied he, and I believe the best excuse we can make, will be to hunt that way. Can we not make that match to-morrow? replied the enamoured Gunderic. No question but I may, replied Cydillion, for I shall prefer your Majesty's satisfaction before any other business of my own.

The King of the Vandals had no sooner received that promise from Cydillion, but he gave all orders necessary in reference to his design, so that the joys which he felt were only crossed by the length of a day, to which his felicity was next to succeed. Not but that at first he would willingly have deferred the seeing of a person whom he had not yet given liberty enough to recover her self out of a surprize which he himself had occasioned; but the heat of his temper being joyned to the ardour of his love, was so far from enduring any such delay, that it inspired into his mind a resolution to make himself happy by that infallible means which he seem'd to have in his power. Yes, Sir, the famous Gunderic, who had made his way through so many Provinces of his Enemies with his Sword in his hand, that Gunderic that pretended to lay the foundations of a Vandal Monarchy, he that would love none but the chiefest Princesses and Sovereignesses of the world, that very Gunderic determines all of a sudden to marry an unknown Lady that wanted both extraction and fortune: and to remove those obstacles which his ambition might lay in his way, he called to mind the example of Theodosius, who advanced to the Imperial Throne the fair Athenais, Daughter of the Philosopher Leontinus. The next day away he went with all the satisfaction which the hopes of so supreme a felicity could afford him, not doubting but to mollifie the disdain of his unknown Mistress, and to gain the affection of those persons whose wills he was obliged to follow, so soon as he should make known his intentions. To this purpose he made as much haste as one that runs to meet a certain happiness; nor was it without an extraordinary commotion of mind, that he discovered the Wood that had been so fatal to his liberty. Cydillion would have told him that Minos was formerly a Park, which carryed the name of the ancient King of Crete: but Gunderic not being in a condition to listen to his Tale, gave little heed to his words, his fancy being wholly taken up with the passion that had vanquished his inclinations! he was so incapable to resolve what he had to do, that Cydillion perceiving it, Sir, said he, since your Majesty has made your self known, I know not whether persons not accustomed to see great Princes will be willing to appear before the King of the Vandals, and whether it would not be better for me to go before and prepare the Lady to receive a visit so extraordinary? For God's sake go then, answered Gunderic, and be assured that you take this pains no less for the advancement of the Lady, and Cydillion's good fortune, than for the repose of the King of the Vandals.

Long it was ere the Ladies would be won to receive an unnecessary visit from the King, till at length the entreaties and persuasions of their Governess more than Cydillion's prevailed. When they had given their consent, the King entred the Hall where they were, never giving them leave to meet him, in case they had thought themselves obliged to do it: immediately he asked which was the Mother of *Philinira*, (for that was the name of the beautiful Stranger) and after he had address'd to her his first complements, "if you know the merit of your incomparable Daughter, said he, you would be less surpris'd to see a King come to find her out in such a place as this, than you would be to see him neglect his attendance on a person to whom all the world ought to do homage." Sir, answered *Herminia*, (for that was her name) I so little expected to hear any such discourse, especially from the lips of a great Prince, that 'tis no wonder to see me so unable to answer your Majesty as others might do more accustomed to such conversation.

While she uttered those words, the enamoured Gunderic covetously cast his eyes upon the charming *Philinira*, and though she kept behind her Mother, and that her Mother had but half unveil'd her face, he presently knew her again, whether it were that she had never been absent from his fancy, or whether there reflected from *Philinira's* Beauty any splendour more than usually enlightening the sight. The diligent Cydillion, observing the King of the Vandals looks: cunningly drew near *Herminia*, and in regard she was a person that lay in his Father's House whom he had not yet seen, he made it a plausible pretence first to complement her, then to entertain her in discourse, thereby to give Gunderic an opportunity to discourse the young *Philinira*.

The Prince lost not a moment, but going to her with an extraordinary commotion of mind, Fair, but too rigorous Lady, cried he, I confess that the first time I saw you, I drove you

from the place of your content: But in regard it was contrary to my desire that you left it, I have less reason to beg your pardon than to complain of your cruelty, to flee that person that adored your beauties. 'Tis very true Sir, answered she, that your Majesty was the cause, that I retired sooner than I should have done, yet you must grant me withal that it was not civility for me, to tarry in a wood with a person that I knew not, and that the same civility commands me to implore your Majesty not to return thither any more, unless you give your self the trouble for some other reason, than to disturb those persons that only seek retirement. The disproportion between our conditions and your exalted dignity, cannot suffer—— Pitiless Philinira, cryed the King interrupting her, why would you deprive me of so great a happiness, before you know my intentions that carry me thither? Know then that I come to repair the injustice of fortune, you were born divinely beautiful, and together with that beauty, there shines a virtue which is above your charms, and in regard that having all these admirable qualities, you yet want a Throne, the King of the Vandals comes to offer you a Crown. Yes Madam, Gunderic lays his Scepter at your feet, troubled only that he has none of greater value to give you, and they that wonder that he has so suddenly resolved upon a matter of so great importance, let them only cast their eyes upon the heavenly Philinira, and consider the force of an extraordinary merit. "I am willing to believe, replied she, that your Majesty speaks according to the reality of your intentions, and that you have that kindness for an unknown person, that you hardly ever saw before, which you only ought to reserve for some great Princess. But Sir, to tell you my thoughts alter my humble thanks to your Majesty, my humble supplication is, that you would be pleased not to engage your self any farther, in uniting two persons between whose extractions there is so wide a difference, it may be far greater than you are aware of. "Though yours, replied Gunderic, were as mean as it ought to be exalted, to keep any proportion with your virtue, that shall be no obstruction to my purpose, rather will it be a greater satisfaction and joy to Gunderic, to have brought you out of that obscurity, to shew you to the world with all that splendour, wherewith you ought to be surrounded. "I cannot tell, replied she, whether your Majesty can bring those things to pass so easily as you imagine, and whether your will, which has been accustomed to be a Law among the Vandals, has the same power at this time. "How cruel fair one, replied he beholding her with eyes full of tenderness and grief, Am I become so abominable in your sight, to refuse the Crowns I offer, for fear you should make me happy by your acceptance? I should be too unjust, replied Philinira, to nourish any such ill grounded scorn, nor is it for that reason that I oppose the King of the Vandals intentions, but only to spare him the pains which he knows how to spend, more profitably in enterprizes of a higher nature. The most important design I have, replied the enamoured Prince, is to move the heart of the incomparable Philinira, and since that through her contempt of my Scepter, I know she is above all the grandeurs that I can proffer her, I shall only employ my services and respects, but services both long and faithful, and respects as deep as it is possible for me, to tender the greatest Princess upon earth.

Thus ended their first entertainment, and Gunderic took his leave of Philinira, firmly resolved to omit no means unattempted, to gain the esteem of so fair a person: And Philinira having hearkned to Gunderic with an admirable moderation, notwithstanding all his promises, contented her self only to return all those respects, which she thought due to so great a Prince: That is to say to value his degree and merit. But whether she were touched with the proofs of his generous affection, that preferred an unknown Virgin before all those Princesses, to whom such a Prince as Gunderic might pretend, I know not.

The passionate Lover return'd home very well satisfied, that he had made his mind known to Philinira, and though the fair Stranger had not testified all the acknowledgment which he thought she would have done, yet was he not a little overjoyed, that he had cross'd those discontents that foster'd his melancholy. She seem'd to him so prudent, and so worthy the esteem he had for her, that running toward Cydillion, "Think you, said he, that there are many Ladies of Philinira's humour? Are ye acquainted with any more of those young and fair Ladies, that would have been so reserved hearing such promises made, such a fortune offered as would have enflamed the ambition of the most moderate among them. For my part I cannot believe, but there are certain beauties in the Soul of this Stranger, as admirable as those that shine in her face, though her graces be the most perfect and most charming that ever I beheld.

Then he made a description of her beauty, and several times asked Cydillion if he had taken notice of such and such Lineaments, but above all things he entreated the young Greek to carry him again the next day to his Fathers house. But Sir, answered Cydillion, I believe your Majesty would do better not to move so violently, for the too frequent visits of a King, may chance

chance to leave persons at first that are not in a condition high enough to receive them. Quite contrary, replied the enamoured *Gunderic*, it behoves me to use no delay, for if I should be so negligent as you say, I should persuade *Philinira*, that all my promises were but outward Courtship, without any thing of sincerity. In short, *Cydillion*, you might do as you please, but for *Gunderic* who will never be accounted a dissembler by any person living, especially by *Philinira*, he will certainly go to morrow, as well to confirm the promises he has made to day, as to throw himself ready to perform them, when ever *Philinira* shall give her consent. *Cydillion* understanding the Kings resolution, thought it the best way to submit, and from that time forward he devoted himself to the Prince, for the remainder of his life.

Gunderic was not only well satisfied but returned him thanks, regarding not only the Islanders merit, but knowing the kindness he might do by assisting him in his Courtship, which was now become his only business.

The next day *Gunderic* failed not to make another journey to the wood *Minos*, and that with all the speed, that a most passionate Lover could have done upon the same occasion: He was no sooner come near the house, but his joys augmented in such a manner, that it is impossible for me to express the signs that he gave of his passion. But Sir, to see that so much delight should be changed of a sudden, into such an overwhelming sorrow. For no sooner had the King enquired for *Philinira*, but answer was made that she had left the Island with two other Strangers, not discovering in the least whither they went to seek a new retirement. Upon that terrible and surprising answer, *Gunderic* stood like a man that had been thunderstruck, then casting forth such looks as easily shewed the trouble of his mind, he caused the people to repeat those fatal words, which he had heard too often already.

The Governess of *Cydillions* family, related to him more precisely what he desired to know, but what she said being all to little or no other purpose, than only to give him the greater assurances of his misfortune, he had suffered himself doubtless to have been transported by the violence of his despair, if his faithful *Cydillion* who foresaw it, had not persuaded him that 'twas not for him at such a time to stand bewailing himself to no purpose, but that it behoved him to dispatch away Posts to all the ports of *Creet*, and to leave nothing undone to get intelligence, which way *Philinira* was gone. I will do whatever you think good, answered the King fetching a deep sigh, but since the ungentle *Philinira* flees the unfortunate *Gunderic*, will she not take that proof of my love for a new persecution, and is it not better for me to dye for grief, than trouble the repose of a person whom I adore, notwithstanding all the cruelties that altogether void of pity she exercises toward me? Then turning toward the woman that gave him the answer, and promising her vast rewards, I beseech you, said he, if you can, give me some better information concerning *Philinira*. Is she not concealed in this Island? does she not lye somewhere hid to avoid the company of *Gunderic*? Know you not how I have disoblighed her? Is there no means to appease her anger and obtain pardon?

The disconsolate Prince demanded a hundred things of this nature over and over again, but taking notice that he either asked the question in vain, or that the person to whom he addressed himself, either knew nothing at all, or was else so faithful to *Philinira* as not to reveal the secret, he e'ne followed *Cydillions* advice and returned back, to the end he might send away messengers to the several Port Towns, to inform themselves if it might be done, what was become of the Stranger so lately departed.

While the Messengers were upon their duty, he himself went to visit the Wood *Minos*, as a place which he revered, as a place that was conformable to his thoughts, and a place that would make him always think upon *Philinira*. Nevertheless he was no sooner come thither, but he found a remarkable change, the very shades themselves seemed more obscure and pensive, the grass looked not so fresh and verdant, the murmuring fountains pleased not his ears, the chirping of the Birds seemed harsh and unpleasant, and what more tormented the enamoured Prince, *Philinira* was not there. How many times fetching deep sighs, did he demand her of the Trees, the Fountains and the Rocks? how many times, while he accused them to have neglected their own advantage, did he upbraid them? In short Sir, neither *Cydillion* nor the most considerable of the *Vandal* Officers that were about them, could by any means allwage the sorrows of *Gunderic*. They were so numerous that they soon begat an alteration in his countenance, and when upon the return of his messengers, he found no likelihood of hearing any news of *Philinira*, he fell into a languishing distemper, not unlike to that which seiz'd upon me, when I separated from the incomparable *Eudoxia*. I arrived about that time in the Island of *Creet*, being forced from the Court of *Constantinople*, by the cruel order of the Empress: And though I took little notice of

those things which did not concern that heavenly person, yet when I saw my brother reduced to that lamentable condition, the burthen of my sorrows was more than too heavy by that addition of grief. At first we blush'd and sigh'd, though then we neither of us knew the cause of our misfortunes, and as I was about to testify the share which I took in his misfortunes, "Ah Prince, *said he*, how happy should I be were it in your power, to act successfully for my consolation. But only fate has overwhelm'd my quiet, and only fate can restore my repose.

He fetch'd a sigh at the conclusion of these words, and beholding me as earnestly as the troubles that turmoyl'd him would give him leave, "Brother, *pursued he*, either I am very much deceived, or you are as little in health as I, and enjoy as little tranquillity in your mind. "Alas Sir, *replied I*, that it should be so easie a thing for me, not only to grant what your Majesty has said, but also to acknowledge my self the most miserable creature upon earth. "It well appears, *replied Gunderic*, that you know not what my misfortune is, while you contend for superiority with me in sadness, or think you have more reason to complain than I, or any other far more miserable than *Thrasimond*. If you think there be any such, *said I*, you know not what it is to love passionately without hope. I know it too well, *replied he*, and the proof of it which I apprehend, is far beyond your experience. For in short, Brother, you seem'd formerly dispos'd only to love with moderation, to love only those that would be glad, to receive the marks of your favour and be thankful. "'Tis very true Brother, *replied I*, that was my fancy once when you fancied quite the contrary. But a malignant Star has intruded it self to dispose of my inclinations, and to make them so soaringly bold, as to aspire to the Empress of the East. You have heard of the virtues of the fair *Athenais*, and her obligations to *Theodosius*, and therefore it will be no surprize to you, when I tell you that it was she that severely commanded me to begone from *Constantinople*, forbidding me absolutely to return thither while she lived. In pursuit of these words I gave him a relation of all the passages between me and *Eudoxia*, which when *Gunderic* with great attention had heard, "I confess, *said he*, your fate is hard: But ere long you will acknowledge that *Gunderic's* is much more severe. In short, Brother, you have the comfort to love a great Princess, to know where she is, to hear her discours'd of every hour, and you may see her in disguise. But *Gunderic* the King of a warlike Nation, *Gunderic* that loves honour and nourishes in his breast all that ambition, which keeps persons of his rank and age in perpetual motion: That *Gunderic* no sooner cast his eyes upon an unknown Lady that he met in the Country, but he loved her with all the heat and passion imaginable. However Prince, this was but the beginning of my misfortunes, this Virgin, seemingly but of a mean extraction, rudely treats the humbled Prince of the *Vandals*, she refuses a Crown which I offer her, and as if she had only shewn her self to make me miserable, no sooner she appeared but she vanish'd, and cruelly leaves in my heart those flaming darts that consume it, and hurry me headlong to my Tomb. Thus the two unfortunate Brothers bewailed their own miseries, and though generally the unhappy receive some consolation from the mutual repetition of their afflictions, it far'd not so with *Gunderic* and *Thrasimond*.

On the contrary it rather augmented their grief, every time that they repeated the cause of their sufferings: This it was that cast us both into a languishing distemper, that would not let us think of any thing else but of our loves, and as for the King of the *Vandals*, he so totally abandon'd himself to the remembrance of his unknown Mistress, that he minded neither Army nor enterprizes, nor so much as his own honour. At the same time *Gidiseles* returned from *Rome*, and told us, transported with his disgust against *Honorius*, that the Western Empire was threatned with a speedy and absolute ruine, that his Kinsman *Stilicon* was killed by *Heraclian*, that *Constance* was certainly dead, and that *Alaric* was marching toward *Italy*, at the head of a formidable Army. He added that it was not fit for the *Vandals* to lose so fair an opportunity as this, to fix themselves in *Spain*, which *Gunderic* had all along design'd, and that *Atalorque* had rais'd great divisions, between the *Romans* and the Inhabitants.

This news which would have been most welcome to the ambitious *Gunderic*, was but coldly received by the disconsolate Lover of *Pbilinira*, and if he bewailed the great and generous *Constance*, he never minded the conquest which *Gidiseles* propos'd to him. The *Vandals* astonish'd at so great a change, languish'd like their leader *Gunderic*, yet not daring to murmur against their Prince. But while they were in that general consternation, and that all our affairs went to wrack, I began my self to have some sense of pity, for a Nation that had been always dear to me, and that for their sakes I might preserve the life of *Gunderic*, I went to the Prince, and after I had some time discours'd him concerning the un-

known Philinira, Sir, said I, were it not better for us to seek an honourable death at the head of an Army, than thus to abandon our selves to the consuming poison of love melancholy? Is it fitting for the great King of the Vandals to end his days in obscurity? Is it for him to die in an Island as if he were banished, or that he were commanded and durst not stir out of it? Let us be gone, let us hasten out of a Country so fatal to your quiet; and when you begin to act like a great King, all the world will strive to please you, and will find out Philinira for you. You have drawn these poor people from their homes, will you leave them without habitations, when you may so easily settle them in fair and fertile Provinces? I took notice that Gunderic began to hearken to my discourse, which made me continue it more vehemently and vigorously than before: Gidiscles and Cydilion were my seconds, so that at length we obtained orders from Gunderic to be ready to set sail in a few days for *Betick Spain*, which we had begun already to call *Vandalusia*, after we had made those conquests already mentioned.

Here the Prince of the *Vandals* broke off his Relation, not thinking fit to continue it any longer, as well by reason of the King of the *Cimbrians* indisposition of Body, as for that he heard people at the Chamber Door, whom he judged to be such as had particular business with *Theobald*. Thereupon he rose, promising to finish the rest when it might be done without injury to an illustrious person, whose health was too precious to the world not to be taken care of to the utmost of humane ability. The King of the *Cimbrians* made answer to those obliging expressions with all the acknowledgment imaginable, and signifying that he would hear the rest of the Story of *Gunderic* in *Thrasimond's* Apartment, he testified withal how great a share he bore in the misfortunes of two Princes so well worthy of a better fortune. After that, as *Wallia* had taken his leave, and was going forth in *Thrasimond's* company, *Theobald* addressing himself to both, I am glad, said he, there is so strict a friendship between two Princes of so fair renown. But, Sir, said *Wallia*, have you taken notice of the correspondency between *Thrasimond's* life and mine. The Gods and *Theodolinda*, replied the penfive Lover preserve you from such a resemblance. I confess, answered the Prince of the *Visigoths*, that the divine Princess whom you last mentioned has not yet disposed of her heart, as the fair *Athenais* has done in favour of *Theodosius*; but if you except that only circumstance, you will find few accidents in my life that do not answer yours. In short, we were both born among warlike Nations that have quitted their own to seek out more pleasant Habitations; you were sent to the Eastern Emperour by *Gunderic*, and I by the King of the *Goths* to the Court of *Honorius*: you are in friendship with *Martian*, and *Constance* has honoured me with his: and in a word, we both lost our liberties during the time of our Negotiations, you at *Constantinople*, and I at *Rome*.

Upon the conclusion of this discourse, the report that had already flown abroad began to encrease; so that the two Princes took their leaves, that they might not intrench too far upon the privacies of the *Cimbrian* King. They were no sooner gone out of the Chamber, when *Telanor* entred with a strange alteration in his countenance, and presenting a strange Officer to the King his Master: Sir, said he, behold here one of the King of *Suevia's* and *Briomer's* Agents; behold that *Vinderic* whom your Majesty may probably have formerly seen attending upon the Princess *Albisinda*. How! cried *Theobald*, interrupting him, a servant of *Albisinda*, and act for *Briomer* the most deadly of my Enemies, and the most wicked person living! Ah, my Princess, continued he, lifting up his eyes to Heaven, what is become of thee, if what I hear be true? Then turning toward the *Sueve*, speak, pursued he, speak, and stay not till I tear from thy lips the truth which I long to know. The Boat which was to be for their Divertisement, and was sent as a present from *Albisinda*, was it not some trick of *Briomer's* contrivance? The *Sueve* then preparing to speak with more confidence than became his guilt, Sir, said he to the King of the *Bohemians*, before I answer to your Majesty's demands, I must declare that the Princess *Hunnimonda*, in the place where she is, will find no better usage than I shall find here. And now, Sir, I must tell you, that I am come hither by the order of the King of *Suevia*, according to which I acted. In short, Sir, 'twas I that conveyed away *Hunnimonda*; and *Briomer*, whose contrivance it was, is now conducting her to *Cologne*, to — O, Heavens, cried the disconsolate *Theobald*, interrupting him, can ye suffer the most famous Villain that ever was to be the Master of *Hunnimonda's* destiny, and that the chiefest piece of Nature's workmanship should be snatched out of your hands to be delivered up into the power of the most perfidious among men? But let us flie, added he, raising himself in his Bed, let us flie to the rescue of my Princess, and not lose in unprofitable complaints that precious time which may be still employed in her delivery. "Sir, answered *Vinderic*, your Majesty will but put your self to a vain trouble; for be assured, that having served the King my Master, I would not have been the messenger of a loss which I my self had a hand in, but that I know how to repair it at the same hour. 'Tis not for nothing that

"I dare appear before a Prince whom I have provoked, but that I come with a remedy
 "proper to cure the wounds which I my self have given : and therefore I must tell you,
 "Sir, it will be your fault if *Hunnimonda* do not return when you please ; you have a
 "great predominancy over *Pharamond*, and you are only desired to use your power so far
 "as to make an alliance with the King of *Suevia* by the marriage of *Polyxena*. " I will
 "joyfully make the proposals, and I question not but successfully too, *replied the Cimbrian*
 "*King*, for besides that such a reconciliation will restore peace to *Europe*, the merit of *Vi-*
 "*ridomar* is so great that I shall be overjoyed to———" 'Tis not for the Prince of *Suevia*
 "that I speak, 'tis for the King his Father, *cryed Vinderic*, *interrupting him*, who passio-
 "nately loves the Princess of the *Franks*, and has obstinately resolv'd the enjoyment of
 "her, or to perish, having resolv'd in his ruine more persons than you are aware of. He
 "holds in his hand that which *Theobald* accounts most dear to him in all the world, and
 "what *Pharamond* esteems above his life ; so that he can bring you both to an advantageous
 "composition when he pleases, or make you tremble in the midst of your victories. " And
 "we, *cryed Theobald*, *impatiently interrupting him*, can deliver our Princesses, maugre all
 "the assistance of *Theodosius*, or the Ramparts of *Cologne*. In the mean time, talk no
 "no more to me in the behalf of a Prince whose injustice I abominate : retire you where
 "*Telanor* shall conduct you, and fear nothing for *Hunnimonda's* sake ; for though you have
 "thus cruelly afflicted me, I shall take more care of your safety, than the dearest of your
 "Friends : I will be your convoy, I will expose my life for your preservation ; and since
 "the fantastical conduct of fortune will have it so, the fair Princess whom you have be-
 "trayed, shall be the cause that you receive such advantageous rewards of infidelity.

The End of the Eleventh Part of
 PHARAMOND:

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

The Twelfth and Last Part.

BOOK I.



He passionate King of the *Cimbrians* burn'd with so fervent an impatience to deliver *Hannimonda*; that having clos'd his ears against all the admonitions of the Surgeons, he caus'd himself to be made ready, notwithstanding the pain and trouble of his wounds, resolving personally to act in all things which might be advantageous to his love. Immediately he went to the Queen of the *Visigoths*, where he found *Osavia*, *Theodolinda* and *Adelaiada*, and hardly giving him so much time as to pay them his respects, so deeply was he press'd with his own grief, he made his addresses to them in this manner, after he had taken notice that their sorrow was as great as he could possibly expect it to be: "I see, *said he*, most generous Ladies, that you are most sensibly touch'd with the misfortunes of your illustrious Friends, and that you will not take it ill to be hasten'd from hence, to the end that our Forces being united, may be in a condition in a few days to march against the common Enemy. "Sir, *answered* *Placidia*, we are resolv'd to second your intentions to the utmost that persons of our Sex can contribute there-to. "And it shall be none of our faults, *pursued the Queen of Albion*, if this very day you do not quit this Camp to return to the King of the *Franks*. *Theodolinda* and *Adelaiada* immediately told him that they were ready to go forthwith, and pray'd the King of the *Bohemians* not to take care for any thing that might concern their departure. The Prince however was not slack to use all the diligence which the troubles that tormented his mind would permit him; and after he had issued out all necessary orders that concern'd the Troops, *Wallia*, *Ibrahmond*, *Priam* and several others of the chief Commanders undertook to see them carefully put in execution. Afterwards they conjur'd *Theobald* to rely upon their conduct, and urg'd him so earnestly, that at length he was well satisfied, how contrary soever it were to his natural activity. True it is, that his mind was never the more at rest; for in regard he was not Master either of his love or of his resentment, the violence whereof he could not keep enclosed in his Breast, he was glad of a slight occasion to retire for three or four hours, where he might not be encumber'd with company. Understanding therefore that *Marcomire* had a design to give him a visit, he was resolv'd to prevent him, and to seek him out on the other side of *Segoduna*, in a little Village, whither by the advice of the Physicians he had withdrawn himself, for the more quick recovery of his health. But as he was just ready to go, there came a person from *Cologne* to speak with him from *Keva*, with a command also to attend the Princess *Theodolinda*. That Officer had no sooner obtain'd the audience which he desired, but he advertis'd *Theobald*, that the King of the *Huns* would be the next day at *Agrippina*: that he had

not laid much to heart the death of *Mundescic*, having exchanged for such a Son as *Ambiomer*, and understanding besides that the illustrious *Balamir* so generally esteemed, and always so affectionately beloved by himself, was now discovered to be the true successor to the Kings of *Bohemia*. *Theobald* who forgot not the least particular of that gratitude, which he owed to a person to whom he was so deeply engaged, as well for his education as for many other marks of his liberality, enquired after the prosperity of that Prince, with all the vehemency that his grief would permit him, and when *Keza's* messenger had satisfied him in all other things, he inform'd him in few words, how joyfully the King of the *Huns* had acknowledg'd, and own'd his Son *Ambiomer* instead of *Balamir*. *But can you not tell me*, replied the enamour'd *Theobald* transported with his passion, *whether Hunnimonda were at Agrippina, when you came from thence? or if she be there, how the King of Suevia behaves himself toward her.* Sir, answered the Hun, *the report that I heard was that they had carried that Princess to Cologne, with other very considerable persons in her company. And that the King of Suevia had caused them to be cunningly stoln away, to the end the Citizens of Agrippina, might be in a condition to make the better conditions with your self and the King of the Franks, if for the future, victory should attend you both, with that success as hitherto it has done. But Sir, added he, take no care I beseech you for the Princess of the Goths, neither she nor any of the rest need be afraid, in a City which must be forced to implore their protection: Nor is there any thing which they dare deny them, only the liberty of going out of the Town. Not that the Princess of the Franks enjoys the same repose with the rest of her companions, for (to speak ingenuously) the King of Suevia loves her with an extraordinary affection as the report goes. But considering his humour, you may well imagine that his company cannot be very acceptable, especially it being so impossible for him to conceal the implacable hatred, which he so choicely foment against Pharamond and Vi-aidomar.*

When the Hun had given *Theobald* an accompt of those things which he desired to now, he was sent back with a most obliging answer, and while he went to attend the Princess *Theodclinda*, the King of the *Cimbrians* made choice of *Narva*, for his envoy to the King of the *Huns*, for which purpose he gave him a Letter and instructions what he had to say. *You shall assure the King*, added *Theobald*, *that I shall always think my self happy in the Title of his Son, and that I beseech him to preserve for Theobald that affection, with which he always honoured Balamir. Tell him that I would most gladly wait upon him, were it safe for me to come into a City, where my enemies have an absolute power, and that he would sensibly oblige me, would he but afford me the opportunity of a meeting, and I might make him the same protestations which I make by another. But Narva, pursued he blushing, and earnestly beholding the Hun, above all things discharge your self of this farther commission which I shall give you in trust. Beseech the King of the Huns to protect my Princess upon all occasions, wherein she shall have need of his support. Put him in mind that he had often design'd the little Hunnimonda for the young Balamir: and therefore since he never had any dislike of that innocent affection, which I ever had for that most admirable Lady, tell him that he has some reason, and is in some measure concern'd to contribute to that union which he approved, and formerly so earnestly sought after. For your part, Narva, I make no question but when you are at Cologne, you will endeavour to find out the fair *Bellamira*, if you prove so happy, and see withal my most adored Princess, can you sufficiently represent to her what I undergo for her sake? Can you describe my sorrows to her? were you ever in love? But, added he immediately, it is impossible that you should have ever loved so passionately as the unfortunate *Theobald*, and so it is impossible you should ever express my thoughts. However endeavour to omit nothing that you can imagine I would say to my Princess, could I come to Cologne without prejudice to that party, which must fight for her liberty.*

The enamour'd Prince used many other passionate expressions to *Narva*, but at length having dismissed him with much ado, he went away himself to visit *Marcomire*, as he had fully resolv'd before.

No sooner was he gone beyond the Trenches, but the beauty and misfortunes of his Princess crowd'd into his thoughts: But when he began to consider that *Hunnimonda* had been forcibly taken from him, at a time when there was no obstacle between him and her happiness, he began to be so far transported as to complain of the cruelty of his destiny. *Divine Princess*, cry'd he as if he had heard him, *was it not enough that thy innocent life has been cross'd with so many misfortunes, but that thou must fall into the hands of the most unjust of all Princes, and under the power of the most wicked villain that ever lived.*

Having so said he began to consider with horror, the affrights wherewith *Hunnimonda* might be daily terrified, the rudeness of the King of *Sueden* and *Briomer's* cruelty: and then the constancy which that most incomparable Lady had shewn upon all occasions the most dangerous,

dangerous, instead of putting him out of fear, cast him into new apprehensions, perswading him every moment, that *Hunnimonda's* courage might provoke and incense her persecutors.

He was as it were ingulph'd in those sad reflections, when a great noise awaken'd his contemplations: When turning his head he saw two parties of Soldiers in combat one against the other. Immediately he rode up to the place where the skirmish was, and he had no sooner observed the difference of their Armes, but he perceived that about three hundred *Romans* fought, retreating before a greater number of *Vandals* who vigorously pursued them, to the end they might compleat the victory which they had already in their hands. The generous *Theobald* never stood to consider what he had to do, but advancing with his Sword prepared to strike, he resolv'd either to moderate their fury by some gentle admonition, or else to take the weakest side if they refused to give fair Quarter. He was just about to execute what he intended, when a certain *Roman* addressing himself to that *Vandal* who fought with greatest fury, *Hold*, said he, *spare the life of the great Theodosius, 'tis Honorius whom thou pursuest. Rather the murderer of Serene and Stilicon, cryed the fierce Vandal* interrupting him, *and therefore oppose not my resentment, which arms me to punish that Tyrant, if thou intendest to avoid the destiny.*

By the surliness of his answer, the King of the *Cimbrians* guessed the *Vandal* to be that *Gidifcles*, of whom *Thrasimond* had made mention in the History of *Gunderic*, and therefore never considering that *Honorius* was his Rival, or examining what design might bring that Prince where *Bellamira* was, he only applyed himself to divert the storm that threaten'd him. To which purpose addressing himself to the enemy of *Honorius*, after he had lifted up his Viser, *You speak of Stilicon*, said he, *like a person so deeply concern'd for him that I believe you are Gidifcles: So that I am apt to think when you understand that my Name is Theobald, you will at my entreaty moderate that fury, which carries you on to revenge your Kinsmans death.* Those words and the countenance of the King, having suspended a while the *Vandals* rage, *How Sir*, replyed *Gidifcles*, for it was really he, *will such a Prince as you protect ingratitude and perfidy? For indeed by the death of Serene you are sufficiently dispens'd with, though you extinguish those effects of your generosity, toward persons so unworthy to merit them.*

Concluding those words he would have fallen upon the Emperour of the *Romans*, when *Theobald* displaying his Sword aloft, *Hold Gidifcles*, cryed he with a commanding utterance, *and force me not to fight against those Troops which are come to our succour. You may do as you please*, surlily replyed the *Vandal*, *but for my part I must attaque Honorius wherever I find him.* At the same time he endeavoured to come at the Prince, but the King of the *Cimbrians* having pulled down his viser, opposed the charge of the *Vandal*, standing only firm at first between them. But *Gidifcles* being moved with that action, spurred on his horse, whether it were that he was not master of that violence which exasperated his mind, or whether he thought that the respect which he had for a Prince of so much valour, would not be looked upon as a piece of Cowardise: Inasmuch that *Theobald* incensed at his rudeness, summon'd up together all the powers that sustain'd his great courage, and notwithstanding his wounds which were not a little troublesome to him, he let fall to terrible a blow upon *Gidifcles's* head, that he broke his Helmet and made the *Vandal* reel.

Thereupon certain Officers who had attended the *Bohemian* King, clos'd up to his person, and the *Romans* recovering their courage upon the sight of a succour so little expected, rallied with that speed, and joyned themselves to their defender with that bravery, as was not unworthy the honour of their Nation. However their assistance seem'd to be of little use to *Theobald*, for that valiant Prince had made his way into the thickest of his enemies, and had already with an amazing and overbearing impetuosity, overthrown whatever made resistance against him. Not but that *Gidifcles* whom the generous Soldier had spared, was come to himself again, and endeavoured all he could with words and actions, all in vain to encourage his party. For the Prince being accustomed to vanquish, the face of the Combat immediately changed, and victory having declared for that great personage whom she never forsook, the victor now began to look after the preservation of those he had overcome. *Retire*, cryed he several times aloud, *and compel us not to be your enemies, contrary to the desire we have to take your parts upon all occasions.*

He repeated the same thing so often and in so many places, that at length *Gidifcles* having received a wound which hindred him from opposing the Prince's design, he obtained his end, and the *Vandals* retreated to the Camp, owning their acknowledgments to the Prince.

After that *Theobald* calling to him a person of quality among the *Cimbrians*, *Go find out Thrasimond*, said he, *and without laying any blame upon Gidifcles to his prejudice, excuse me*

as the Prince of the Vandals with all the excuses of a Friend who was so unhappily engaged to fight his Troops.

He had just given that order when *Honorius* came to him with all the marks of acknowledgment that the seasonable assistance which he had received deserved: *Sir*, said he, *were the life which you have preserved as dear to me as it is uncomfortable, I could not be more sensible of the obligation which you have laid upon me. Sir*, modestly answered the King of the *Cimbrians*, *I have done no more for the Emperour of the Romans, but what he might have expected from any other person, who with less Generosity had met with the same opportunity to serve him as I did; and to take the part of so great a Prince, so furiously pursued by such an advantageous number of Enemies. But, Sir*, said he through the motion of his love, *neither what I have done, nor all that I am able to do for you can discharge me of the debt which the divine Bellamira, whom I only adore, stands engaged for to your Imperial Favours. Do you adore Bellamira*, cryed *Honorius* interrupting him with a strange discomposure in his face, *ah, Sir, if that be true I am yet more miserable than I thought my self, since I find my self constrain'd to combat a passion in my heart, a passion which is infinitely more dear to me than the life for which I am beholding to your Sword.*

Having so said, the passionate *Honorius* made a reflection upon his Rival's words, he examined his countenance also; and finding those symptoms therein, that *Bellamira's* Lover was not a person hated by her, he blushed, he sigh'd, and breaking silence of a sudden, *Ah, Sir*, cryed he, *wherefore did you not suffer me to perish by the Arms of the Vandals, seeing you could not but be acquainted with all my misfortunes when you heard my name?* Instead of saying any more he turn'd away his head, without doubt to hide the symptoms of his discontent. And *Theobald*, who gave a shrewd guess in what condition he was, let him ride on without interrupting him in his thoughtful contemplations.

In the mean time, *Marcomire*, who was coming toward the Camp, so soon as he drew near the Body of Horse, presently knew the King of the *Cimbrians*, and advancing toward him with an air which sufficiently evidenced the part he took in the change of his fortune; *Sir*, said he, *if I am come too late to testify to King Theobald with how much joy I receiv'd the news of his being restor'd to the Throne of his Ancestors, it behoves you rather to accuse Balamir's valour, than the neglect of Marcomire. For all the world will agree with me, that the honour of singly engaging that famous Soldier, is usually attended with those consequences which will not always permit a man to do that which he knows necessary to be done. That Balamir you mention, modestly replyed Theobald, was better assisted by his own Troops, than the King of the Franks was seconded by those which he commanded; and you know very well, Sir, that it was the valour of the Chieftains that decided the Battel between us.*

These obliging complements having continued for some time on both sides, *Theobald* gave *Marcomire* to understand, that he had not stirr'd from the Camp but only to give him a visit; and then thinking it but civil to present him to the Emperour of the *Romans*, he did it with these Encomiums whereof the Brother of *Pharamond* was no way unworthy, as well in respect of his own merit, as the Grandeur of his Extraction. *Honorius*, notwithstanding the sadness which appeared in his countenance, received the Prince of the *Franks* with all those honours which he had accustomed to render to personages of his high Degree and Reputation; and after many complements usual upon such occasions, he continued his march toward the Camp, attended by his *Romans*; the King of the *Cimbrians* and *Marcomire* riding on each hand of him. No sooner was he entred the Camp, but *Theobald* and the Brother of *Pharamond* took care of a wound which he had received; but in regard it was but slight, he was resolv'd to visit the Queen of the *Visigoths*, before he took that repose which he might well be thought to want. *Placidia*, who had all the virtuous inclinations of a good Sister, was no sooner advertis'd of his arrival, but she was overjoyed, and came to meet the Emperour with all the eagerness imaginable, and with all the marks of affection which he could expect. But the delight which the Emperour of the *Romans* and the fair Widow of *Autalpb* took at first meeting, suddenly gave place to a more pensive conversation; for those two illustrious persons could not behold each other without calling to mind the misfortunes that had persecuted them. *Placidia* with her fair eyes swimming in tears talk'd of the irruption of the *Goths* into *Italy*, the sacking of *Rome*, the fatal wound that detained *Constance* in the City of the *Teciosages*, when his assistance was so much required for the safety of his Country; and lastly she bewailed the loss of her Husband in the fury of a sedition of which she had been the innocent cause. The passionate *Honorius*, instead of continuing a discourse that no way concern'd *Bellamira*, impatiently enquired after the welfare of that most incomparable Lady whom he had so exceedingly lov'd, and still lov'd so tenderly. The Queen of the *Goths* told him in few words

words that *Bellamira* was *Hunnimonda*; and afterwards explaining her self more at large, she gave him to understand that that fair Princess had not run through so many dangers, had not despised death, and refused Empires, had it not been for *Balamir's* sake, who was now discovered to be King of the *Cimbrians*: So that, Sir, pursued she, being so just as you are, I have no reason to doubt that you have any design to interrupt so noble an affection: especially after such an exploit of *Theobald*, as merits that you should in some measure strive with your self in favour of so generous a Prince.

Upon those words the Emperour sigh'd, and seem'd to be strangely accused by his own thoughts: when *Placidia* perceiving that her discourse had made some impression in his mind, Ab, Sir, pursued she; consider I beseech you how far *Hunnimonda* might be engag'd before ever you saw her; and if you have thoughts of that Princess worthy of her, renounce all your own pretences to her. Instead of contending with her inclinations, instead of attempting to render that incomparable Princess unfaithful to a Prince so worthy of her affection, and to whom you are beholding for saving your life, do that which acknowledgment challenges, and change that violent passion which you have for *Hunnimonda* into a rational friendship: so shall you not only preserve the esteem of that fair Princess, but also engage to your interests a King, whose valour will be no mean assistance to you, at a time when all the world is up in Arms, and the two Empires shaken by the invasion of so many Nations. Your counsel is good, Madam, replied *Honorius* sighing, and I must confess that you have said nothing to me but what my reason has advis'd me to a thousand times. But, my dear Sister, pursued he, how little your advice, how little my resolutions are able to prevail over a heart where reigns the fairest person that ever was! however, forbear not continually to tell me of my duty; speak to me often of the illustrious *Theobald*, lay before me all the justice of his glorious hopes, and procure for me *Bellamira's* conversation, or at least a Letter from her, to the end, that the wisdom of that incomparable person may in some measure appease the tumults of my mind, and at length produce the effects which you desire. Nevertheless, do not believe that I desire so powerful an assistance, to spare my self the labour in an affair of this importance: for I intend my self to use all my endeavours, and I leave you now, added he with a serious discomposure in his countenance, to enter into a Combat where I am sure I shall never get the victory, and wherein I cannot tell whether I should be glad to be the Victor.

The sorrowful *Honorius* had no sooner concluded those words but he left the Princess *Placidia's* Chamber, and went to the Apartment which was prepar'd for him, where he minded more to recollect in his mind whatever could fortifie his reason, than to take that rest which was necessary for him. He call'd to mind the virtues of the great *Theodosius*, that he might not do any thing unworthy his Birth; he perswaded himself upon good ground that *Bellamira* would be as constant at *Cologne*, as she had been at *Ravenna*, when she never hop'd to see that Prince again to whom she had bequeath'd her affection: and lastly he rais'd up against himself the acknowledgment due to a Rival who had ventured his own for the preservation of his life. However, he could not bring his design to perfection, so that it behov'd him to use other endeavours to break those Fetters wherewith *Bellamira* had chain'd him, *Bellamira* whom all the world admir'd. However, he despaired not altogether to conform his passion to *Hunnimonda's* will, and that he might omit nothing that could further his intention, he went to visit the Princesses, not so much in point of decency, as out of hope that *Theodolinda's* eyes, which had once enthralled him, might still make some impression in his heart, which would not prove disadvantageous to the design which he had laid. Nevertheless, that visit produced not the effect which he expected; for after the usual complements, they fell into a discourse of *Vinderic's* treachery, and for that reason it was impossible to talk of those fair Princesses which had been carried away by force, without giving a thousand applauses to the incomparable *Bellamira*: So that *Honorius* was altogether as deep in love when he left the Queen of *Albion's* Lodgings, where *Theodolinda* and *Adelaiada* also were, as before: and therefore being resolv'd to testify his acknowledgment to the King of the *Cimbrians*, he was met by that Prince in the company of *Marcomire*, *Wallia*, *Priam*, and several other of the chief Commanders. As for *Gondemar* and *Guntran* they did not think themselves oblig'd to that visit, in regard that *Gondiech* was an Enemy of the *Romans*: not but that the Prince of the *Burgundians* had something of kindness for *Honorius*, because the Princess *Cleomira* was brought up in his Court: but besides, that particular interest was not to be preferred before the honour of his Nation, his love was not yet so well known to justify an action that would have soon reach'd the King his Brother's ear. On the other side, *Thrasimond* had more reason to be nice in his conduct at that time; for when he considered that *Gunderic* had got possession of *Betica*, and that *Gidifles* had attack'd *Honorius* himself with all the fury of

the most irreconcilable enemy. He thought himself no way obliged to visit a Prince, who had so great an aversion against the *Vandals*, yet knowing that *Gunderic* for *Constance's* sake, was willing to come to an accommodation with the *Romans*, he came to be of another mind, and believed that he might pay that respect to *Honorius*, which was due from a Prince of his quality, to an Emperour of whose friendship and alliance he had no need. And as he was highly incensed against *Gidifles*, and had already made more excuses to *Theobald*, than he was willing to receive, he thought it but a piece of Royal civility, to give *Honorius* all the satisfaction that lay in his power. He seriously protested that he was so far from countenancing *Stilicon's* Kinsman, that he condemned the action as altogether unjust, and that he would himself go and declare to him in King *Gunderic's* name, that the *Vandals* were not only no longer the enemies of the *Romans*, but that they came for no other reason to assist the King of the *Franks*, but because they heard that the great *Constance* had taken *Pharamond's* part. The Emperour received his complement in a most obliging manner, and afterwards gave to *Thrasimond* when he came to visit him, all the honours that were due to a Prince of his Birth and merit.

Nevertheless these interviews lasted not long, for besides that the most part of those Princes, were prepossessed with a passion, that called them several other ways, it behoved them to depart and to shew themselves, where *Pharamond* had made a stand with his victorious Army. For all the whole League was ready to march, except the learned *Melufina*, who seemed somewhat unwilling to leave a retirement she had upon the *Segua*, where she was deeply employed in the discovery of those future Grandeurs, which the Stars seemed to promise for the future to the Monarchy of *France*. While the learned *Theon* made the same observations in another retirement, which he had chosen near *Cologne*. The next morning the Army march'd out of their Trenches, and *Theobald* having sent to give *Pharamond* notice of the Emperours Arrival, the fair Train of Princes and Princesses, that accompanied *Honorius* and *Placidia*, were pleasingly surpris'd to meet between the two Camps, the illustrious King of the *Franks*, the great *Constance*, the King of the *Tongres*, and the famous *Artabure*, attended by a numerous Convoy of Officers, of goodly presence and magnificently arm'd.

The Son of the great *Theodosius*, how highly soever he were prepossessed by fame to the advantage of *Pharamond*, nevertheless could not chuse but behold that Prince with some kind of astonishment, and plainly manifested a greater value and esteem for him, than ever he had shewed to any person in the world before. Afterwards he received the King of the *Tongres* with all the demonstrations of friendship and acknowledgment, that the most interested of all his Allies could pretend to. But when *Constance* advanced toward his Emperour, the Prince out of a Transport of joy, greater than any that he had expressed for some time before, called him aloud his support, his consolation and his true friend. But when the famous Warriour drew near him, he cast his Arms about his neck and hugged him with tears, and shewed a vehement affection for him, which neither his Love for *Belamira*, nor the absence of several years could extinguish in his heart.

Now *Constance* and *Artabure* being persons free from all thoughts of injustice, they no way flattered the passion of *Honorius*, but on the contrary taking a liberty little different from what the Queen of the *Goths* had taken, they vigorously represented to him how unjust he was, to oppose himself to the happiness of those persons whom he loved, and to whom he was beholding. *Artabure* never spake of the matter, but still fetching deep sighs, and struggling with himself to bring out his words: whereupon the Emperour perceiving, that those persons whom he accounted most dear to him of any in the world, still repeated to him what his reason had so oftentimes already done, undertook a deep contemplation within self, to determine upon the final resolution which he had to take.

On the other side *Pharamond* and *Theobald*, having accosted each other with all the marks of esteem and friendship, which they mutually owed to each other, began to discourse of the violent carrying away of the Princesses against their wills, with an indignation conformable to their great courage; and the noble fire that sparkled in their eyes seemed to pronounce that there was no power upon earth, that could protect their enemies from that just resentment, which inspired their amorous hearts. After that the King of the *Franks* overtook *Placidia's* Chariot, and when he had rode a while by the side thereof, discoursing either with that incomparable Princess, or the Queen of *Albion*, he sought for *Wallia* whom he found with *Theodolinda*, while *Taxander* pleaded himself in the company of his lovely *Adelaiada*.

Pharamond gave the Prince of the *Visigoths*, all the marks of esteem that were due to his virtue, but instead of engaging in a long discourse with him, as he might have done at another

nother time, he left him with the Princess of the *Huns* and advanced toward *Thrasimond*, whom he had descried among a great company of *Vandal* Officers. To that Prince he made known the high opinion, which he had conceived of his extraordinary merit, and taking notice that he was possessed with a deep melancholy, he omitted nothing which he thought might contribute to his consolation, hoping that he should soon be in a better condition, than upon a march, to render as well to him as to *Wallia*, those honours which were due to Princes of their illustrious birth and unspotted reputation.

In the mean time *Theobald* was not without some fears in reference to *Vinderic*, so that whatever confidence he had in *Telanor*, to whose care he had committed him, he felt in himself some certain disturbances, which he could by no means quiet. To say the truth, he thought and that upon very good grounds, that in the confusion of such a noble meeting of so many illustrious persons, the *Suede* might be tempted to make his escape, and that being sufficiently hated and as sufficiently known, he might be killed in the execution of his design: Inasmuch that the enamoured Prince sought for him, as soon as in point of decency and civility he could, with all the earnestness and all the fear of a true and real friend. But he no sooner met the Troop which guarded that same Traitor, but his fears were as soon over, for he perceived that *Telanor* was very careful of his charge, and that *Vinderic* was so far from shewing any discontent in his face, that he marched along with that tranquility of mind, which offences generally do not afford the guilty.

When they came near the Camp, *Constantine* and *Viridomar* marching out with a fair Train, advanced three or four furlongs to meet *Honorius*, and received that Prince with all the honours that were due both to the Emperour of the West, and the Son of the great *Theodosius*. The King of the *Britains* addressing his speech to him in the behalf of *Constance*, who presented him to *Honorius*, Sir, said he, *I confess I have not always been a friend of the Romans, but though my Conqueror would not have made my peace, as he did at Arles in the most generous manner in the world, I believe I should have found some other way to have courted the favour of a Prince, who disdaining to march against me himself, only sent his Lieutenant to overcome me. I am beholding in all things,* replied *Honorius*, *to that Lieutenant of mine: For without doubt that great Captain, has always been the support of my Empire. But Sir,* added he, *among all the most important services which he has done, I am apt to believe that the amity of the King of the Britains, is one of the greatest advantages which his courage has procured me.*

They were going on in their discourse, when the Prince of *Suevia* appeared, and was received by *Honorius* after such a manner, as a famous Warriour, renowned for so many great actions ought to be, besides that he was descended from a house, that had been an ancient confederate of the *Romans*. However he stayed not long with the Emperour, in his thoughts being all enflamed for the taking away of *Polixena*, he soon returned leaving *Constance* and *Artabare* to entertain *Honorius*, the King of the *Britains* being gone to attend a fair Lady, that no longer opposed his happiness. But if *Constantine* enjoyed that sweetness which ordinarily Lovers taste, when having made their peace they feel their satisfaction renewed, the afflicted *Viridomar* found himself plunged in sorrows of a different nature: At first he visited the Princesses, whether it were that civility obliged him to it, or that he desired to speak of *Polixena* to them: However being agitated with a restless disquiet, that permitted him not to rest long in a place nor with the same persons, he quitted them, though he knew not where to meet with more acceptable company. He could not possibly resolve what to do, so highly did those passions transport him that reigned in his heart, till at length perceiving *Theobald*, he made hast to meet him, imagining that he might perhaps find some consolation from a Prince, who having had the same loss might perhaps have the same thoughts. But no sooner had he accosted the King of the *Cimbrians*, when spying *Vinderic* in the Troop which had the Guard of him, he could not Master that resentment which redoubled the violence of his fury: Inasmuch that having drawn his Sword he spurred his horse forward, with an intention to have flown upon the criminal, and attacking him with a most terrible look, "Ah Traitor, cried he, thou shalt dye, nor has the justice of heaven give me this opportunity, but that thou shouldst receive the punishment of thy crime.

At the sight of that action, the enamoured *Theobald* looked pale and trembled, and and throwing himself between *Vinderic* and the assailant, "What, said *Viridomar*, do you take the part of this perfidious Traitor. "Yes, replied the King of the *Cimbrians*, (*with no less trouble than was the fury which transported the other*) I defend *Vinderic*, and I am commanded so to do for *Bellamira's* sake, and to venture my life for the preservation of this *Suede* which you attacke,

At those words the prepossessed *Viridomar*, whose reason was in an uproar, instead of calmly informing himself grew more incensed; neither had *Theobald* either time or thought to answer with that moderation which he might have preserv'd upon an accident less astonishing.

Thus these two formidable Warriours turn'd their Weapons one against another, and met notwithstanding the great number that fought to oppose their meeting. They had time also to bestow upon each other two desperate blows, and they were going about to lay on more vigorously, when the King of the *Franks* having espied them, made all the haste he could, and throwing himself between the two Combatants, *Valiant Princes*, cryed he, *what evil Demon, the fatal Enemy of our League, labours to ruine us by your divisions: forbear I beseech ye, to signalize your valour till we come to meet with the oppressours of our Princesses, and let not that valour prove fatal to each other, which only ought to appear to the prejudice of our Enemies.*

Those words were so prevalent over persons that revered the Prince who had pronounced them, that *Theobald* and *Viridomar*, who had an infinite esteem one for another, not only quenched that heat which enflamed them, but also knit that knot of friendship in a few minutes that tied them together all the rest of their lives. Thereupon the King of the *Cimbrians* addressing his speech to *Pharamond*, Sir, said he, *when you shall understand that Hunnimonda is threatened at Cologne with the same usage that Vinderic shall find among us, you will not wonder without doubt that I should go about to save the life of a person upon whose life depends the destiny of my Princess: I would have explain'd my self to Viridomar would he but have vouchsafed me time: but in regard he was surpris'd of a sudden at the sight of a Domestick who had betrayed him after the most cruel manner in the world, during the just resentment that transported him, he could not with patience give ear to the Defender of a perfidious miscreant, against whom he could not be more incensed than I was.* *Viridomar* taking notice that *Theobald* spoke in his behalf: "Ah, Sir, said he, interrupting him, excuse me not I beseech you, my prepossession cannot justify what I have done. Yes, generous Prince, added he in a most obliging manner, I am guilty, though I have sufficiently made it out, that my reason could not be free, since that in attacking you I ran to punish the fault which I committed. But consider that I am also a Lover, that I have lost what I love, and that I met unexpectedly with the person that committed the force, a Ravisser, from whom I had some reason to have expected actions quite contrary to this that has thrown me into this despair. For, pursued he, sighing, and addressing himself to both the Kings, I see my fortune is in a most deplorable condition, I understand all the malignity of it, and I find it more strange than that whereof you have cause to complain. For besides that he is a servant of my Sister that has betrayed me, and put me to take pains to ruine my self, he has robbed me of the Princess of the *Franks*, only to put her into the power of the King of *Suevia*, whose violent humour you know full well; so that the divine *Polyxena* is in the hands of an unjust Lover, who will prove her most pitiless persecutor, and whether she hate him, and whether she may be induced to love him, I must be always miserable, since my Princess must be either always unhappy, or else render my Rival fortunate. Yet could I not be thought to be perfectly miserable, were it in my power to take away his life that robs me of my love: but more than miserable as I am, I cannot behold my Rival but I must see my Father, and I find my soul in such a disorder, what through my Duty to my Parent, what through the interest of my love, that I know not what course to take for the delivery of my Princess, or which way to act that I may not offend a Prince from whom I received my being.

He pronounced those words with so sad an air, that the two Kings being deeply touch'd therewith, gave a cessation to their own grief, to the end they might wholly intend the consolation of *Viridomar*, all the way they had still to ride before they entred into the Camp.

They were no sooner arrived but they began to consult which way to attack a City wherein their Princesses and their Mistresses were enclosed. Thereupon a Council of War was called, as well in reference to the Siege of *Cologne*, as in giving battel to those that should come to relieve it. At first they thought of meeting in the Tent of *Honorius*; but that Prince making his excuses to *Pharamond*, who gave him notice of the general intentions: *Alas, Sir, said he, sighing, to whom do you address your self? My thoughts are so little at liberty, and I am so far from being in a condition to give my own opinion in a matter of so great importance, that I begin to be a weary of the Government of my own Empire. However, Constance, upon whom I can safely rely, shall go if you think fit, and take the place which I should have held, not so much with the Title of Emperour, as being a Friend to the*
great

Great Pharamond. Nevertheless the King of the *Franks* forbore not to press *Honorius*, but seeing it vain he was contented that the meeting should be at his own Apartment; the Castle where *Rosamond*, the Queen of the *Turingiens*, *Albisinda*, and the Sister of the King of the *Lombards* had lodged before, being left for the Princesses.

But now the noise of the Army no sooner fill'd the new Camp of the *Franks*, but that *Gundemar* and *Guntran*, who were now in a condition to retire to *Cologne*, resolv'd to be gone, lest their presence might raise any new suspicions. To which purpose they immediately took their leaves of the most considerable persons of the Army, they were just going out of the King of the *Franks* Apartment, at the very instant that *Sunnon* arriv'd, after a long absence, and they took notice that he had a more numerous Train, than was usually accustomed to attend him. But they soon perceived that it was compos'd of several persons of quality of the *Turingien* Nation, who would not forsake a Prince to whom they were so much oblig'd, for having settled the affairs of that Kingdom. Nor were they wanting publickly to declare, how much they were engag'd to their valiant protector; and one of the most considerable among them, having taken his opportunity to speak to *Pharamond*, at a time when *Sunnon* was otherwise employ'd, gave him an exact account as follows, of all that pass'd in the Capital City of that Countrey.

“ You have been inform'd Sir, *said he*, without doubt, how strangely the King of *Suevia* and *Briomer*, were transported against the fair *Amalazontha*; when she sent back her Army into *Turingia*, being unwilling they should serve against a Prince, that had so infinitely oblig'd her. Now as the fury of persons of that humour never sleeps, but continually wakes for mischief, you cannot wonder at the effects which it produced to the prejudice of the *Turingiens*. You must know then Sir, that the King of *Suevia* had particular conferences with the General of our Army, before it march'd from the confederacy; wherein he laid before him whatever could flatter his ambition. He told him he ought not to neglect the opportunity which he had of raising himself to the Throne, and enjoying a fair and lovely Princess, who would be constrain'd to espouse him for the preservation of her Dominions. *We will here*, added he, *safely keep Amalazontha as a pledge for the promise I have made you, you have the power in your hands, you are going into a Kingdom where there is no King and where you may easily have the Sovereign power, purchasing, as it is easie for you to do, the good will of the Souldiery. Besides*, *said he*, *you shall receive continual supplies of men and money from me, I will also give you hostages for the performance of my word, and which is more I do not believe you can find any obstacle to your pretences, how difficult soever they may seem to be at first: For I do not see that the Turingiens have any Captain, who is able to oppose your designs. Nor can I believe them to be so much the enemies of their own honour, as to chuse rather to obey a Stranger than one of their own Nation, to whom the stoutest among them are contented to submit themselves already, and who already understands the Laws and Customs of their Countrey.*

“ In a word Sir, the King of *Suevia* made it out, that there was so little difficulty in the enterprize which he propos'd, that *Hildion*, for so was the name of our General, shut his eyes against all that reason could lay before him, and abandon'd himself intirely to the conduct of a Prince, who had promised him the possession of so fair a Queen, together with the Sovereign power over the Nation.

“ The Ambitious General therefore having labour'd to make himself Master of the Army under his command, in a short time accomplish'd his design: For they no longer obey'd any orders but his, finding the Scepter of *Turingia* in the hands of a person, that knew not how to make use of a Sword. However Prince *Sunnon* would not forsake the Army of a Princess, whose interests were so infinitely dear to him, whether it were that he suspected any thing of *Hildion's* design, or that he would not stir from an Army that was not formidable enough of it self to defend themselves, if assaulted on their march. However it were, he resolv'd to march along with us even into *Turingia* it self, whatever persuasions our General could use to him, not to absent himself at too great a distance from the Camp of the *Franks*. Though it be very true that he made no great opposition to the Prince's intentions, not believing he had any reason to be afraid of a single person, but rather conceiving it to be for his advantage, that he had in his power a Brother of *Pharamond*.

“ No sooner were we arriv'd at *Lephante*, which as you know well is the Metropolis of *Turingia*, but *Hildion* endeavour'd to gain the people, as he had got the hearts of the Souldiery, and he swelled to that degree of insolence in a short time, that he undertook to dispose of Offices and Commands, without making *Amalazontha* privy to his Actions. *Sunnon* could not endure that any one should usurp the rights of that Princess, but having assembled together the remainder of those, that continued faithful in *Lephante*, he not

only opposed *Hildion* in his designs, but by actions full of wonder upheld *Amalazontha's* tottering Throne, having with only four thousand men raised in haste, overthrown seven-teen thousand *Turingiens*, reinforced with three thousand *Saxons* and as many *Suevians*. In a word Sir, the Prince shewed himself a person worthy to be the Brother of the great *Pharamond* upon all occasions, wherein he had an opportunity to signalize his valour, and constraining the Rebels whose leader he had slain to beg their peace, he restored a perfect calm, and established *Amalazontha's* authority over all *Turingia*. Nor have our people proved ingrateful, but having given a thousand thanks to heaven for their protector and set up his Statue with an honourable inscription in the Piazza of *Lephante*, they have deputed me for *Cologne* with a sufficient Train, to make their humble address to the Queen, and to propose to her in all humility, that as well out of acknowledgment as for the good of her Kingdom, she would not refuse to make choice for her Spouse, of a Prince who preserved her Crown upon her head, and who is able to keep it fixed, as well by his own valour, as by the assistance of the *Franks*. But my commission Sir reaches farther, for the government not being absolutely Monarchical, as it is not in many other parts of *Germany*, I have order to speak more home, if *Amalazontha* refuse to yield to the reasons and supplications of her Subjects. *Without doubt*, replied the King of the *Franks*, you do more for Prince *Sunnon* than he himself requires at your hands: But generous *Thanaric*, I dare assure you that he has so great an affection for the interests of the *Turingiens*, that you need not go about to oblige him, by doing him any kind Offices with *Amalazontha*: Rather I believe it would be a grief to him, to hear that there should be any violence or constraint put upon the intentions of that fair Princess: So that if you will take my counsel, instead of endeavouring to force a consent which should be always left free, let Prince *Sunnon* only have the liberty to obtain it by his services, which he may have daily opportunities of rendering her, while you afford him the occasions.

Pharamond was thus discoursing with *Thanaric*, when the Prince of whom they were speaking entered the Chamber, and besought his Brother that he might go to *Cologne* to visit the Queen of the *Turingiens*. Provided you might do it with safety, answered the King, I would very willingly spare you for so small a journey, and that you should go to a City where I would be glad to go my self, could I do it without the ruine of our designs. But Brother, consider that the King of *Suevia* and *Briomer* keep there so exact a Guard in that place, that it is impossible for any single person to enter into *Agrippina*, till they have examin'd him from whence he comes, and what business he has there. Sir, replied *Sunnon*, I know it is of great importance for me not to be stopped at *Cologne*, because it is only my desire to see the Queen of *Turingia*, and to return so soon as your affairs call me away, and therefore I have made such provision, that certainly I cannot fail in the success. I know that the two *Burgundian* Princes which are in the Camp, are now about to return, and therefore in regard that *Guntran* had never any particular quarrel with any Prince of your family; but on the contrary that he became a Captive to a Princess of your blood, while he was a prisoner of war in your Army, I thought he would not deny me a favour which I durst not demand of *Gundemar*. To that purpose I requested of *Guntran*, that he would permit me to ride along as one of his Train, there being no fear that any of them should be observed or examin'd, at the Gate of a City into which they were known to enter friends. Nor did the Prince scruple in the least to grant me my desire, deeming perhaps that it was only love that drew me to *Cologne*, or else believing that I might do him some greater piece of service. Thus Sir, you see that I am certain to get into the Town, without any likelihood of being discovered, and if I am not deceived, you will easily agree with me, that it will be an easie thing for me to return before you can lay any formal Siege to the City. Besides Sir, *Thanaric* will never be refused the liberty of going out of the Town, when ever *Amalazontha* shall think fit to send him back, and to carry along with him as many attendants as he brought, so that it will be easie for him to leave one of his own men behind with the Queen, and to take me in his room along with him. But, answered *Pharamond*, in regard that most of them that follow *Thanaric*, may be suspected by the jealous King of *Suevia*, my apprehensions are that they will be as strictly examin'd when they go away, as when their names were given in at their entry. And therefore good Brother, if you do not think my fears to be groundless, do nothing rashly but stay with *Amalazontha*, till you have a more convenient opportunity to return, and take heed of being kept in restraint from us, out of too eager a zeal to come to our assistance. *Sunnon* testified his acknowledgment to his Brother, for his respectful admonitions, and was about to have explained himself more precisely, when *Theobald* came to visit *Pharamond*, and for some time interrupted their discourse.

True it is that they fell into it again soon after; for the King of the *Franks* addressing him-
self

self to the King of the *Cimbrians*, Sir, said he, *there is a Lover in my Chamber, that is likely to be more happy at Cologne than either Theobald or Pharamond in this Army, so that as it is impossible for him to spend all his time with the Princess which he loves, it will be in his power to speak in the behalf of the King of the Cimbrians, and not to forget the interests of Pharamond.*

Having so said, he told him in a few words of *Sumon's* resolution, and having also inform'd him how *Tbanaric* was likewise bound for the same place, *You see Sir,* said he, *that I have here a very secure opportunity to write to Rosamond, if you will be but pleased to give me leave. You know Sir, that you may do it obligingly,* answered *Theobald*, *and I believe that Pharamond's merit has a greater influence over my Sister, than the near relation of a Brother. I confess,* replied the King of the *Franks*, *that I have formerly taken the liberty, but it was when I knew no person that had the privilege to grant me such a favour. I understand,* replied *Theobald*, *you would have authority from the Brother of Rosamond, and I am content with a cheerfulness equal to your affection, which is a truth I believe you little question.*

Thus the two Kings parted, but with an intention to meet again so soon as they had writ their Letters, which they had an intention to shew each other but did not however: For *Theobald* refusing to look upon *Pharamond's*, Sir, said he, *you know that love chooses to keep his Courtships private, and you may perhaps incense her by letting a Brother see, what you have only designed to the Sister. However,* replied the King of the *Franks*, *methinks it would be a surplussage of satisfaction, if the Princess Rosamond should only see what the King of the Cimbrians had singly approved.* “Your virtue, replied *Theobald*, governs me in that particular “far beyond your biller, so that you may write to my Sister whenever you have an oppor- “tunity, without any regard to my inspection, which would but injure that friendship, “which we have sworn to preserve as long as we live. But Sir, continued he, a Brothers “Letter and a Lovers Letter are two different things, and therefore you may look upon “what I have writ to *Rosamond*, and never fear to deprive my thoughts of that sweetness “which is wrapped up in a passionate Billet.

Having so said he presented his Letter to the King of the *Franks*, but the Prince having refused to take it, “Sir, said he, I am sufficiently satisfied what I am to expect from you “at this time, for the great *Theobald's* generosity is so well known to me, that I question “not the new encomiums you have given of me, without being so curious as to look into “your Letter. Upon those words, the King of the *Cimbrians* never urging the King of the *Franks* any farther, gave his Letter to *Tbanaric* and not to Prince *Sumon*, not only because he thought it more decent, but also because it seemed to him more probable that a Letter written in *Pharamond's* behalf, might be less suspected, and produce a better effect if it were delivered by a Stranger, than by the Brother of the King of the *Franks*, who for his part gave his own Letter to his Brother *Sumon*: and though he had expressed therein, all that tenderness could inspire into the most passionate Lovers upon such occasions, yet was he dissatisfied in his own Oratory, and prayed *Sumon* to add by the advantage of conversation, whatever he found omitted in the Letter. “Brother, pursued he, since you have for “*Amalazontha's* sake felt the whole power of love, and in regard you have a friendship “for *Pharamond*, it will be a needless thing to recommend my interests to your care. For “I cannot imagine that you will omit any thing to the advantage of a Brother so dear to “you, and who suffers as much as any man can suffer, by the absence of the person whom “he loves.

After these words and some other expressions of affection, which it was impossible for him not to add, he gave *Sumon* leave to depart, who carried the *Turingien* Deputy to his Chamber, where he fell into a long discourse with him concerning the Princess, who had no less the possession of his thoughts, than the Sovereignty over his heart in words to this effect. “Generous *Tbanaric*, said he, you will have the advantage to see our Queen sooner than I, since I must be constrained to attend the motion of two Princes, that perhaps “stay all night in our Camp, and therefore I conjure you to speak to the divine *Amalazontha*, as little as possibly you can, concerning the services which you say I have done her. “Attribute to the faithfulness of her subjects, what we have hitherto imputed to my fidelity, and never make use of the unfortunate *Sumon's* name, to raise any new discontent in “the Princess whom he adores. You know that *Amalazontha* is full of acknowledgment “and justice, and I know moreover that there is not any inclination in that fair Soul, which “is not favourable to *Sumon*. For assuredly *Tbanaric*, it would be no small trouble to her, “to see her self obliged to a person that she has no desire, or it may be no will to love, “besides that the believing my presence to be a kind of reproach of her ingratitude, the “sight of me would become the most insupportable thing in the world, and I should prove “the most unhappy Lover in the world.

The *Turingien*, mov'd with the expressions and looks of *Sumon* to a compassion mixed with astonishment, and having thought upon a means to give him an answer, without engaging himself to any thing that might offend the generous Prince: *Sir*, said he, *neither you nor I can justly tell what we have to say to the Queen; but as I am not altogether ignorant of her disposition, and for that I intend to observe how she stands affected, before I explain myself, you have no reason to fear that I will ever go about to overthrow that which I so fervently desire may be effectually established.* He made some farther protestations also which fully satisfied the respectful Lover. After which the *Turingien* took his leave, and departed for *Cologne*, attended by those of his Nation who were ordered to wait on him in his Deputation.

On the other side, *Pharamond* being inform'd that the famous *Keva* was coming to the Camp, testified no small gladness at the news, as well for the merit of the Knight, as for that he thought him sent by the King of the *Huns*, he received him therefore with all the marks of his esteem, and with a most hearty welcome; but before he suffered him to speak a word of his journey, he carried him to *Theodolinda's* Apartment, that he might not retard the joy which he knew the Princess would receive at the sight of a messenger from her Father. The Princess therefore had no sooner paid all the civilities to *Keva* which he could possibly expect, but he began to unfold the contents of his Deputation as follows: "It would be a difficult thing, Madam, said he, for me to express either to your self, or to the King of the *Cimbrians* how much overjoyed the King was, when he understood that you were both in this Army; and that notwithstanding the great journeys which the Princess has undertaken, and the change that has fallen out in the fortune of our first *Balamir*, you have still the same tender respect for him which you had at *Alba Julia*: for that reason has he given me order to assure you in his name, that he has still the same paternal affection for you which ever he had, and that he has an extraordinary impatience to let you see the truth of his words, chusing rather to come to this Camp, than to send for you to a City where he is every day a witness of their injustice and violence. Besides, he has an infinite desire to visit the great *Pharamond*, whose Renown is so far spread, and to be likewise acquainted with the famous *Constance*, who has so long upheld the *Roman* Empire, the illustrious *Viridomar*, and all those other Princes in this Army, who have rendred their names famous by so many renowned Actions. The King of the *Sarmatians*, and the Prince of the *Saxons* having the same desire may be induced to come along with him: so that if I am not deceived, you will have a good part of the company at *Cologne* in your own Camp before the Forces of either party be in a condition to undertake any enterprise. *But what do you say concerning the Princess of the Goths?* suddenly replied *Theobald* interrupting him. "That she is highly esteemed in *Cologne*, replied *Keva*, that she is admired by all; but that no person dares presume to make love to her, having heard the stories of her immoveable constancy, which made her despise death, and refuse Empires for a Prince's sake that she never expected to see again as long as she lived. The King of the *Huns* and Prince *Balamir*, who still adhere close to her interests in whatever concerns her, not only take particular care of them, but are also resolv'd to crown her Queen of the *Goths*, and to restore her these Provinces which they had won from her Father. *Hunnimonda* return'd her thanks to the King with a moderation becoming the Grandeur of her Soul; and after she had given him to understand that neither her disposition was inclinable, nor the season proper for the ceremonies which they propounded: she added, that as for the restitution of her Dominions, she would refer her self in reference to that affair to the King of the *Cimbrians*. "I am in a rapture of joy, replied the King of the *Huns*, and my Son *Theobald* shall not only seat you again upon the Throne of your Ancestors, but he shall also have when he pleases under his command the entire disposal of all those conquests for which I am beholding to his valour. His Brother who hears me will not contradict me in what I say: for as I leave him a large Dominion besides, and the friendship of the King of the *Cimbrians*, I believe he will have little reason to complain. "I should have had some reason to complain however, replied the generous *Balamir*, if all that your Majesty has spoken had befallen me by the loss of such a Father. *But, Sir*, I shall be very well contented with my fortune as long as your Majesty rules that Monarchy which you govern with so much fame, provided withal, that the King of the *Bobenians* has the same kindness for me which you have assured me of.

Theobald was very much satisfied in what *Keva* had repeated to him: and having obliged him to tell them some more particular news of the Princess of the *Goths*, the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, and all the other Ladies in *Cologne*, he took particular care of the Knight, and

and staying a while with *Theodolinda*, he entertained her in discourses either of the Generosity of the Princes of the *Huns*, or of the extraordinary qualities which he admired in the Princess *Hunnimonda*.

In the mean time, *Pharamond* going to visit the two Princes of the *Visigoths* and *Vandals*, who lay together, where he found *Constance* with *Wallia* his ancient Friend, understood that *Thrasimond* was retired to a private Chamber with a Stranger that brought him tidings of *Gunderic*. The King of the *Franks*, as *Constance* had already done, forbade *Thrasimond's* Attendants to tell their Master, being unwilling to interrupt the Prince in a conversation which was in all probability of such importance to him: so that he entertained himself with the Prince of the *Goths*, and the Lieutenaut of *Honorius*. Afterwards he went with the illustrious *Roman* to *Queen Placidia's* Apartment, where he met the Emperour, and a great number of other persons of Honour. As for *Wallia*, he return'd to *Thrasimond*, and in regard he took part in all things that concern'd him, he was overjoyed to see him less penive than he was wont to be. He was about to have testified his joy, when the Prince of the *Vandals* taking the words out of his mouth, and presenting the Stranger to *Wallia*, Generous Friend, said he; *this is Cydillion, of whom I have so often made mention. He comes from Betica, and brings me news that the King of the Vandals is very like to be happy. You could not have told me more pleasing tidings,* answered *Wallia*, after he had most obligingly received *Cydillion*, and there nothing remains but that I may see a change in your fortune. *Ab, Prince,* said *Thrasimond* interrupting him, *how unlikely is that change to be! for in short, should Theodosius die, and his divine Widow consent to give me her hand, could I think to render my self happy to her prejudice; Would it be just that the Empress of the East should espouse Thrasimond without a Crown or Kingdom? No, no, Wallia, the divine Eudoxia would never condescend to so mean a fall from the most exalted degree, wherein all the world admires her: so that all I can hope for is to die with some consolation for the good fortune of the King of the Vandals. In a word, if you would be so kind as to employ your interest with the great Constance in his behalf, I make no question but he will peaceably enjoy all Betica, to which he may pretend as well by the conquest he has made of it, as in right of a Princess which he is now about to espouse. To say the truth,* replied *Wallia*, *I do not well apprehend upon what ground you build this pretension; for if the King your Brother espouse the Heiress of Betica, I cannot see what happiness that will be to him, considering the violent passion which he had for his unknown Philinira: so that I would willingly be a little better informed of his Adventures, wherein I hold my self very much concerned, and wherein it behoves me to be the better instructed, that I may be the better able to speak to Constance and the Emperour. Though there be no great necessity for that,* replied *Thrasimond*, *yet you may well believe that I would not deny you the rehearsal which you request, and that your friendship is a Law as binding as any consideration which you can alledge: and therefore, if we be not interrupted, you shall hear in an hours time all that I have more to repeat of the story of the King of the Vandals, and what I have since heard from Cydillion's mouth.*

Having so said, after *Wallia* had forbid that any person should be admitted till farther order, he began his recital as follows.

The Continuation of the Story of Gunderic.

You know, Sir, that the King of the *Vandals* was at last moved by our Entreaties, and having made a generous contest with the profound grief which had almost overwhelm'd him, he resolv'd upon the conquest of some pleasant Country wherein to settle himself. He also looked with an eye of his former tenderness upon his people that followed him in so many perillous adventures, and that for so long time had undergone the tedious toils of painful war with him. Thereupon he gave orders for our departure, which we speedily put in execution. So that in a few days being in a readiness to quit the Isle of *Crete*, we sailed away for the Coast of *Betic Spain*, where we earnestly desired to found a Monarchy of our own name, and to put an end to all those labours which Nations are forced to undergo, that have no subsistence but what they win by their Swords. Our Army was in a good condition, and very numerous, besides a reinforcement of Volunteers which *Cydillion* brought him, who had also hired into *Gunderic's* service one of the most skillful Chyrurgeons that was to be had, not only in *Greece*, but all over *Europe*, and his name was so famous for the wonderful cures he had done, that when he was brought to

Gunderic, Theodosius would have drawn him to *Constantinople*, with large proffers answerable to the merit of his art and skill. Thus we embarked in our Vessels full of men, and furnished with all necessary provisions: and the report being spread abroad in what place we were like to land, *Atalorque* made no question but that we would first set footing in *Betica*, of which he had made himself almost the sole Master, by many Victories which he had obtained against the *Romans*. We were about ten leagues a this side the mouth of the River, when we descried a Fleet consisting of several Sail making toward us; and when we came within ken of them, we discovered that they carried at the Top Mast head the Standard of *Honorius*. At the sight of those Eagles, so dreaded in all places, new desire of Honour, so natural to our Nation, began to kindle in our Breasts. However, I must confess, that we should not have refused a Treaty, had the great *Constance* at that time been concern'd in the affairs of the Empire. But in regard we did not so much as know what was become of him who was the only illustrious Soldier, for whose sake *Gunderic* would have withheld his Arm, we resolv'd without scruple to mind nothing more than to extend our Conquests as far as possibly we could.

You have heard how the King of the *Vandals* signalized himself in that first Battel, and therefore not to dwell upon particulars, it shall suffice that I mention only those things which were most worthy observation. *Atalorque* and *Maximinus* made towards us with eighteen Gallies and forty Vessels, and they both fought us with extraordinary courage and conduct, though to say truth, it was with something of inequality; and as true it is that the exploits of the *Spaniards* far excelled the performances of the *Romans*, and that *Atalorque* did not only appear every where, where his presence was required, but I must confess that whereever he shewed himself, he acted the part not only of a Captain, but a private Soldier, according to the difference of occasions. But all his stoutness, whatever he could do, could not long prevail, nor dispute the victory with the King of the *Vandals*: that Prince flew among his Vessels like a whirlwind which nothing could oppose; and shewing himself upon a stately prow, he brought death or terrour with him whereever he came, the art of his Pilot seconding the vehemency of his fury whenever he had a mind to come to grapple. The Soldiers, encouraged by the example of such a Captain, grappled, boarded, and overthrew whatever came in their way: so that we were Victors in that Sea-fight, with all the advantages that we could desire.

But, Sir, cryed *Wallia*, interrupting him, do you think I will be satisfied with knowing how *Gunderic* behaved himself, unless you also inform me what *Thrasimond* did?

I must confess, since you will have it so, replied *Thrasimond*, that the *Vandals* were very well satisfied with my courage that day; for as you have been told already, after that fatal amour wherein the wrath of Heaven engaged me, I fought all ways carelessly to lose; so that our Soldiers might have beheld my actions with astonishment, had not the actions of the King drawn off their admiration. In short, we took four Gallies and twelve Ships, and pursued the rest to *New Carthage*, which you know is the best port which the *Spaniards* have in the Mediterranean. *Gunderic* not willing to lose time, but land his men during the rout and fear among his Enemies, made back again toward the mouth of the River *Betis*: but before he landed, he sent for such prisoners as could give him the best information both of the Shoar, and of the Country. Immediately they brought before him a Nephew of *Maximinus* called *Sextilius*, whom the King having received very civilly, made a sign for all others to depart the Cabin, unless it were my self: and then addressing his speech to the Roman, I know, said he, that you are none of these persons that are to be threatened: and I know also that you will find me troublesome in demanding questions which you will be unwilling to answer, and indeed such as you cannot well answer without prejudice to your Country. But may I not enquire how *Maximinus* and *Atalorque* came to joyn together, since their pretensions are different? Sir, answered *Sextilius*, it may be they are not so different as you imagine them; for I cannot tell but that you have caused them to take up an interest which they will hold together as long as they live: for upon the news that you had an intention to make your self Lord of *Betica*, there happened that which usually falls out upon such occasions, that is to say, that *Maximinus* and *Atalorque* came to an accommodation without any more to do, and agreed to joyn together against an Adversary whom they called the common enemy. Now as they often visited each other during the Treaty, *Maximinus* beheld in *Atalorque's* Palace a young Princess with whom he straight fell in love, and that most desperately, she being a Lady that would have easily inspired the same passion into any person less capable to receive it.

I then prayed *Sextilius* to describe that lovely *Spaniard*, for to say truth, I could have been content that *Gunderic* would have fallen in love with her, to have taken off his inclinations toward the unknown *Philinira*, as also that in right of the Heiress of *Betica*, for I made

made no question but that she was the person, he might the more securely settle himself, and with less loss of the *Vandals*.

Sextilius then returning his discourse, "This incomparable Lady, *said he*, had hardly attained to seventeen years of age, yet as young as she is her stature is very tall, straight and free, with an air of grandeur that enlivens both her gait and her behaviour. Her complexion is extremely clear and lively, her hair most beautifully white, her mouth little with a vermilion Lip, her eyes blew, equidistant, and sparkling, are for ought I know the fairest eyes in the world.

"Ah Sir, (*cryed I, addressing myself to the King of the Vandals*) how do I wish that you had seen this Princess, when *Atalorque* had proposed you the match, for as *Sextilius* describes her she resembles *Philinira* so exactly, that I make no question but you would have loved her at first sight. Thereby would you ere this have enjoyed so fair a Lady, and been King of all *Betique Spain* quietly and without any noise. "How Brother, *said he smartly interrupting me*, do you believe this Princess is to be as beautiful as that incomparable Lady which I saw in *Crete*? Sir, *answered I*, what I heard of *Philinira* then and what *Sextilius* tells us, do most justly agree together, and I am apt to think your Majesty would confirm me in my opinion, if I durst presume to beg *Philinira's* picture. "That which you desire is not so easie to be had, *replied the prejudicated Prince*, and had you seen that charming Lady, you would agree with me that she carries in her face, something of splendor and divinity, which is rather to be conceived than expressed: And therefore brother, let us forbear to make comparisons between people that we know not, and give *Sextilius* leave to go on.

"Sir, I cannot tell whether that *Philinira* which you seem to prefer before the Princess of *Hispaly*, were able to challenge her for beauty before dis-interested Judges: But I know that all the world agrees that *Spain* never produced so perfect a creature. 'Tis needless to give you a list of all her Charms, she enthralled *Maximinus* at first sight, who coveted as a supreme happiness, the enjoyment of such a Lady so really deserving for a thousand incomparable qualities.

Atalorque was little or nothing offended at his passion, for *Maximinius* was a handsome person, and descended from one of the most noble Families in *Rome*, and in regard there was no other likelihood but that he might enjoy a peaceable dominion in *Spain*, could they but once oblige you to fix your pretensions another way, there seemed to be no obstacle to hinder an alliance between the *Romans* and the *Spaniards*, by the marriage of our General to the Heiress of *Betica*. "But who is that *Atalorque*, *said the King interrupting him*, whom you mention so often? and what right has he to dispose of a Princess, not being her Father? "Sir, *answered Sextilius*, that *Spaniard* is of a very noble extraction, descending from the Race of King *Mandonius*, who found the great *Scipio* so much work, being in league with *Indibilis*, in defending those Countries in *Spain* which were not yet under the power of the *Romans*. However it has been observed for a long time, that *Atalorque's* predecessors, never exacted more honour than was their due, but on the contrary that they lived with a moderation, which was most proper to gain the good will of the *Spaniards*, and to remove all suspicions which the *Romans* might have, of persons that assumed too high Titles. True it is that there has been a strange alteration of affairs, since the death of the great *Theodosius*: For under the Empire of his successors, the greatest part of those noble persons, who either in right of inheritance or by plain force could make any advantage upon the alteration of government, made their parties to shake off the *Roman* yolk, and to settle themselves in better fortunes; insomuch that at that time so liable to revolutions, *Atalorque* united friendship and interest with a Prince, who drew his Original from the ancient Kings of *Betica*, and who was indeed the true and lawful Heir. He went farther, and to tie the bonds more strongly between him and *Cordubare*, for that was the name of his confederate, he gave him to wife his only Sister named *Thargire*, a Princess of a charming beauty. This alliance was at first most fortunate in the consequences, but in regard that several armed Nations, afterwards spread themselves over the territories of both Empires, *Atalorque* and *Cordubar* resolutely determining to make all the advantage they could of that opportunity, took the field with all the friends and all the forces they could raise, with an intention to drive the *Romans* quite out of *Spain*, and to make themselves Masters of all those Countries, where their predecessors had formerly reigned. At first they succeeded very prosperously, and several people rebelling in favour of them, cut the throats of the Garrisons that remained in their Cities, and tearing down the Eagles that had been dreaded for so many ages, set up the Ensign of the confederate Princes, and shewed themselves on their side with all the zeal, that such well pretended novelties could infuse into the head of a rebellious multitude. "Some-

“Sometime afterwards *Cordubare* transported by his great courage, fell into an ambuscade which they had laid for him, where after he had most valiantly behaved himself, he received a wound of which he dyed the next day. He spent the remaining hours of his life, in taking care for the Princeſs his wife and the young *Atanalifa*, the laſt remainder of a long ſtock of Kings, whom he moſt earnestly recommended to *Atalorque*'s care, who not only brought up *Atanalifa* with all the tenderness of a Father, but he also refused to marry, that he might employ his time and pains more sedulously upon the young Princeſs, whom he always looked upon as his own daughter. It may be said also that he sacrificed his ambition, and in some measure a part of his honour to the safety of *Atanalifa*, in regard that contrary to his natural inclinations, he laid aside his great design to husband his own life, the loss whereof would have left the two Princes without any support, and exposed to the fury of their enemies. Certain it is that though he made a peace with the *Romans*, however he did not omit privately to preserve his friends, and waiting till the party which had been shaken by the death of *Cordubare*, had recovered their former courage, to take arms upon the first opportunity that might favour an enterprise of that importance. The calm which *Spain* did at that time enjoy was very smooth, and continued so till such time as the report was spread, that *Gunderic* intended to invade *Spain*. Then the *Romans* and *Spaniards* who had continued in friendship with them, vigorously prepared to repulse your Army, when *Atalorque* overjoyed at the news which so terrified all the world, made no question but the hour to establish and provide for *Atanalifa* was come. For he knew himself able to give the victory to the *Vandals*, by reinforcing them with the potent faction which he had in *Betica*, whereby it was not only in his power under the protection of *Gondemar*, to authorize the pretensions of *Atanalifa*, but also in right of the fair Princeſs, to legitimate all the conquests of the King of the *Vandals*. Having thus conceived these great and well grounded hopes in his mind, he thought of nothing else but of marrying *Atanalifa* to *Gunderic*, and you may remember that he proposed you a match, which I have heard say you did not think so needful, as *Atalorque* thought it was, considering the success of your Arms.

“*Atalorque* being enraged at this refusal, contrived in his mind a short time after, to do that by the means of *Maximinus*, which he had proffered to you, provided the *Spaniards* and *Romans* could drive your power out of the Country. For it had been no great difficulty to have established *Maximinus* in the Sovereign Authority, in regard that *Honorius* minding nothing but his Suit to *Bellamira*, took no care of the affairs of the Empire, while on the other side the great *Constance*, having renounced the cares of this world, lay sick in the City of the *Tectosages* expecting death, which he thought too slow in putting an end to his miseries.

“How, said *Gunderic* interrupting him, is the famous *Constance* yet alive? “Yes, Sir, he lives, replied *Sextilius*, if to spin out the remainder of his unfortunate days may be called living. But is there no cure for the distemper of so great a personage, answered the King of the *Vandals* with that vehemency, which testified how much he was concerned for his preservation. “I do not believe, replied the Roman, that there is any cure to be found, since the wound which a poisoned dart has made mortal, is not the most dangerous of his evils, it being certain that the loss of *Placidia*, solemnly promised him by *Honorius*, threw him into that despair which makes him wish for death, as the only felicity that can befall him in so miserable a condition.

Upon these words *Gunderic* fell into a deep study, but remembering that *Sextilius* had been interrupted, he made him a sign to go on. “Thereupon, said he, *Atalorque* finding that neither *Honorius* nor *Constance* could prove any obstruction to *Maximinus*'s pretences, insinuated into the Roman those hopes, the success whereof he judged would prove most advantageous to *Atanalifa*, and therefore you need not wonder Sir, to see them united against a Prince, who would overthrow the foundations which they have laid of so splendid a fortune.

“That is to say, replied *Gunderic*, with more disturbance than was thought he would have shewed, that *Maximinus* would enjoy *Atanalifa* and *Betica* both together. You conjecture right Sir, that he would have been overjoyed at a such a double felicity, and I make no question but he will use all his endeavours to defend *Hispaly*, and give the other parts of *Spain* time to succour *Betica*. “Well, said *Gunderic* interrupting him, you have your liberty to go and tell *Maximinus*, that it is high time for him to be in a readiness, for that I am marching directly to the Capital City of that Country, where he expects to reign himself, and you shall suddenly see who will carry it, the King of the *Vandals*, or a subject of *Honorius*, that revolts against his Prince to usurp a Crown.

Having thus dismissed *Sextilius* after he had given him his liberty, he retired to write to the great *Constance*, and sent *Timander* to him, though he understood the inconvenient absence of such an assistant. You have heard how that most skillful Chirurgeon cur'd *Honorius* of a distemper, which all the world thought incurable. *Gunderic* had no sooner dispatch'd him away, but he gave order for one part of the Army to land, while the other remained aboard, so to block up *Hissaly* both by Sea and Land, and to hinder any relief from coming to the Town. He gave me the command of his forces by Sea, making *Cydillion* my Lieutenant-General, and giving *Gidiscles* the same employment by land, he put himself at the head of those forces, with which he had designed to attack the City. Here setting other circumstances aside it will suffice to tell you, that *Thargire* and *Atanalisa* were retired into *Hissaly*, and that *Atalorque* and *Maximin* finding themselves straitned, by the King of the *Vandals*, laboured to save those two Princesses, mortally afraid lest they should fall into the hands of *Gunderic*.

Thereupon it was designed that *Maximin* should make a sally upon the Kings quarter, and that while the chiefest number, and the valiantest of the besiegers were bulie in fight, *Atalorque* should sally out on the other side, and let forth a Chariot which he was to convoy with a Squadron of select men. In the mean time in regard the uncertainty of the success held *Maximinus* in a cruel suspense, *Atalorque* taking notice of his melancholy, demanded the cause, when the Roman fetching a sigh, *Ab Sir*, said he, *how unfortunate should I be should the enemy recover the Princesses, and Gunderic behold Atanalisa's beauty. I never heard said Atalorque, that there is any reason to be afraid of Gunderic, in reference to what you apprehend. I grant it, replied the General of the Romans, that the reputation of that Prince stands fair enough to persuade me, that he will by no means abuse the power that his victories give him. But Sir in a word, Gunderic would see Atanalisa, and if Atanalisa has those charms, which are sufficient in a moment to captivate the most haughty liberties, Gunderic is young, handsome and valiant: Besides he is a King he will be a Conquerour, and that fortune which bears her favours upon those persons, which she begins once to smile upon, may honour Gunderic with more than one sort of triumph. Sir, answered the Spanish Prince, I could tell you some particulars in reference to this business, that would encourage you to have a better heart, but not having time now, I shall only solemnly engage my word, that you shall never see Atanalisa in the hands of Gunderic.*

Upon those words *Maximin* who knew *Atalorque's* humour, felt his disturbances calm'd; and giving thanks to the Kinsman of the Princess, manifested a fiery impatience to put the design in execution, which they had framed together. At first the enterprize in both places had very good success, for at the same time that *Gunderic* was engaged with *Maximinus*, *Atalorque* attended by a stout and chosen Squadron, marched toward *Gidiscles* purposing to break through the *Vandals*, and to open a passage for the two Princesses. *Gunderic's* Lieutenant no sooner perceived them, but he furiously advanced till the *Vandals* having made a stout resistance for some time, were forced to give ground to *Atalorque*, who conducted the Chariot out of our Line, and brought up the Rear of his *Spaniards* to make good their retreat.

The fiery *Gunderic* who had driven *Maximinus* back to the very walls of the City, being advertised of the advantage which the Enemy had got, immediately flew where his presence was most requir'd, and no sooner had he rallied his men again, but they charged the *Spaniards* with a redoubled valour: whether it were that their Kings example elevated their courage, or that they were touched to the quick for shame, that they could not vanquish under the conduct of a Prince, who was so accustomed to victory. On the other side *Atalorque* made a stand, like a Soldier who was not so easie to be stirred, so that in the Bickering which was not a little terrible, the two Captains fought for each other, signaling themselves by exploits that were altogether extraordinary, bringing death or fear along with them, wherever they broke through to come at each other. At length they met, and knowing one another by the mark which easily distinguished them from the rest of the medley, they disdain'd all other opposition that kept them asunder from a single Combat, wherein they engaged with an impetuosity little different. But Sir, how vigorous soever *Atalorque* shewed himself, how great soever his courage was, he was forced at length to submit to *Gunderic's* more puissant strength, and it may be said that he made no other resistance but what became him, while two Princesses sat looking on, the witnesses of his noble actions. In short, during the Combat between the King and him, the *Vandals* having driven the *Spaniards* to the very Chariot, which I told you was gone before, brought back *Thargire* and *Atanalisa*, who arriv'd time enough to see that *Atalorque* disputed the victory with *Gunderic*. At first they rejoiced to find their Kinsman alive, who was so dear to them, but

presently

presently the fear wherein *Gunderic's* valour put them, balanced that satisfaction, seeing the unfortunate *Atalorque* staggering upon a sudden, and presently after fallen all along under his *Horses* feet. When they beheld a sight that so sensibly touched them, they shrieked out so loud, that the King seeing them, alighted, and coming toward *Atalorque*, whom they beheld with tears in their eyes, their affliction struck him with a strange kind of disquiet, which ill became him after a victory, and during the tumult of a fight.

Thereupon he commanded *Atalorque* to be disarm'd, and to be attended with relief, if he were in a condition to receive it, and very courteously advanced toward the Princesses, that he might in some measure assuage their grief: but he was no sooner come near enough so as to discern their countenances, but he was struck with a flash of Lightning, and by a surprize that stopped his pace, where he stuck like one dismayed, and quite forlorn: for you must know, Sir, that he had no sooner cast his eyes upon the youngest of the two Princesses, but he knew her to be the charming *Philinira*, which he had always preserv'd in his memory. Yes, Sir, he found that the fair unknown Lady that reign'd in his heart was the Heir of *Betica*, who had been offered him, and whom he had already refused. Nevertheless, how strange soever the astonishment were, into which such an unexpected adventure had cast him, he could not chuse but feel those pleasing motions of joy which awaken at the sight of the beloved object. But when he began to make reflections upon the Combat between him and *Atalorque*, he so violently disturbed himself, that he seem'd to be mad at the victory which he had obtain'd: *Fatal Victory!* cryed he, and not being able to say more, with so many various passions was his mind turmoiled, he approached the afflicted *Atanalisa*, guided rather by the motion of his heart, than out of any resolution that he had taken. Then beholding *Atanalisa* with eyes full of love and grief, *Divine Princess*, cryed he with a respectful utterance, and kneeling with one knee, *could fate ordain no otherwise but that I should meet the most incomparable Philinira, only to be the occasion of that sadness of which I see the marks in her eyes?*

Atanalisa, busily employed in assisting *Atalorque*, gave little heed to his words: but as *Gunderic* was about to have proceeded in his submission, the turn'd toward him, and looking upon him with eyes which drowned in tears as they were, yet darted forth a thousand Beams of fire through those clouds of sorrow, she return'd him an answer with more disdain than seem'd to become her present grief: *What, Sir, said she, will you persecute me over all the world? Can I find no Sanctuary out of your reach, neither beyond the Seas, nor in my own Dominions?*

She would have said more out of the indignation that emboldened her, had not the assistance which she owed her Kinsman obliged her to help *Thargyre*, who bestowed all her cares and fears upon a Brother that was infinitely dear to her.

In the mean while, *Gunderic* remain'd like one that had been Thunder struck, at those expressions so terrible to a heart enamoured as his: and when the Spanish Prince was disarm'd, he beheld the wound with so much fear as plainly evidenced his sorrow, and testified to the assistants that he waited the success of the cure, as the decision of his destiny: so that not being able to moderate his impatience, he issued out several orders at the same time, and caused them to be put in execution with a celerity not to be conceiv'd; he commanded *Atalorque* to be carried to his own Tent, which he quitted for his sake, he sent for the most able Surgeons in the Army and City: he wished for the famous *Timander*; he promised great rewards to those that could be helpful to *Atanalisa's* Kinsman: and lastly, he charged them aloud, that they should take more care of him, than they would have taken of his own person, had he himself been in the same condition. This way of proceeding of his, accompanied with so many other marks of Generosity and tenderness, at length so far prevailed upon the heart of the just *Philinira*, that she began to moderate her resentment against the Conquerour of *Atalorque*: but neither *Gunderic's* extraordinary diligence, nor his grief, nor his tears themselves could overcome that disdain which that haughty Lady thought her self obliged to preserve in her Breast toward a proud King that had scorn'd to receive a Scepter at her hands. In vain he sought to entertain that fair, but severe Princess, with so much cunning she still avoided his company: so that the unfortunate Lover, transported with the violence of his passion, was one day forced to take hold of her Garment, as she was nimbly whisking by him into *Atalorque's* Chamber, according to her common custom when she met the King of the *Vandals*: *Ah, Madam, cryed he, I beseech you stop but one moment: and if you find me guilty when you have heard me, I will sacrifice a life which deserves to be hated by all the world, if it be detested by a Princess whom I adore.*

Atanalisa, instead of giving ear to the enamoured King, endeavoured to get away from him,

him, but finding that all her striving was in vain, *What is it you have to say to me,* said she; *do you give me notice to prepare my self to be your suppliant at the feet of that Throne which you are now erecting in Hispaly?* *Al,* Madam, replied he, *fetching a sigh, can you be so unjust that are so charming? and will you not open your eyes to behold the over-ruling power of fate in all things that have befallen us?* *By the decree of Heaven you are descended from an extraction that entitles you to a great part of Spain.* *But, Madam, your endowments are infinitely beyond all those advantages which you have gain'd by your Birth, and to these divine Qualities the Gods have subjected the heart of Gunderic: it was by the lustre of your eyes, rather than by all the splendour of your progeny that I was dazzled.* *In a word, Madam, 'tis not the ambition of Gunderic, but the merit of Atanalisa that makes me renounce my liberty to lead my self in your glorious Fetters.* *And tell me most beloved Princess,* added he more vehemently than before, *have you not observed, that before I saw you, I was nothing mov'd with all those Conquests and Crowns which Prince Atalorque promised me; but at the very moment that I beheld those eyes of yours, unknown, in Country Weeds, and in a desert place, you triumphed over my heart: and that then I testified more subjection to your Glances, than upon all those honourable proposals which were made me?*

He had continued his discourse without doubt, though he found that it made but little impression, if *Thargyre* had not interrupted him, coming of a sudden out of *Atalorque's* Chamber. That Princess treated *Gunderic* very civilly: and in regard she passionately longed for peace, she made him some overtures that day, and the morrow after she sent to *Maximinus* to let him know, that there was not any thing wherein he could so sensibly oblige her, as in putting an end to the miseries and calamities that wasted a Country so dear to her. But the *Roman* having intelligence of what passed in the Camp, understood that the King of the *Vandals* was his Rival, and therefore hating him now worse than he did before, he set himself with all his might and main to the defence of a City, which, if taken, would be the ruine of all his hopes: so that how submissive soever *Gunderic* might be to *Thargyre*, and whatever protestations of obedience *Maximinus* had made her, there was no likelihood of any accommodation, since neither would renounce their pretences to *Atanalisa*. Thereupon, as soon as the truce which they had made at *Thargyre's* mediation was expired, acts of Hostility began again on both sides with greater fury than before: and *Gunderic* prepared to carry *Hispaly* with all the speed that might be, not enduring his Enemy should command a place where he resolv'd to crown his Princess. But before he went about to batter a City which he had a desire to preserve undefaced, that he might restore it to *Atanalisa* in its flourishing condition, he went to the fair Princess to know of her what her thoughts were upon the resolution which he had taken. No sooner had he cast his eyes upon that miraculous Beauty that had so suddenly charm'd him in the Isle of *Crete*, but transported with an odd kind of mixture of love, delight and grief, he was about to have complain'd of all his sufferings ever since the fatal moment that he first saw *Philinira*: but discerning I know not what kind of dreadful Majesty in her countenance, he sigh'd instead of speaking, and durst not open his lips, but only in these few words, *You know, Madam,* said he, *that Maximinus refuses to leave the Capital City of your Dominions; nevertheless, if it be your pleasure that I should drive him thence, and will but give Gunderic a Commission to that purpose, it may be in a few days he will let you see he is not every way unfortunate, but that victory is more kind to him than the Princess he adores.* *But, Madam, if I must be constrain'd to fight against a City where your Subjects are intermingled with Rebels and Usurpers of the Crown, 'tis only that I may restore you to the Throne of your Ancestors, only that the Vandals may recover for you a Scepter, which the Romans had long since taken from your Predecessors.* *No, no, Sir,* answered she, *take you no thought for that, but follow your own ambitious inclinations that moved you to invade Betica at the head of such an Army, and leave me to my quiet, which you cannot disturb but with your injustice, having little reason to bring a war into a Country so far remote from the place of your Nativity.*

She had no sooner concluded those words, but new discontents appeared in her face, and it was easily perceived, that she would have quitted the King of the *Vandals*, would civil decency have permitted her. *Gunderic* took notice of it to his sorrow; however, instead of complaining, he only made this answer with all the marks of submission. *Since you have mentioned,* said he, *the design which I might have upon Spain, I will not make use of the reasons of Conquerours, in regard it is not as a Conquerour that I would speak in your presence; I will not confess to you that I ever believed the Vandals could take from the Romans, what the Romans had taken from the Spaniards.* *But, Madam, I will make you this protestation, that I have no other pretensions at this time than to make good the claim which you lay by right of Birth and Inheritance.* *Sir,* said she, *I thought I had already sufficiently explain'd*

my self upon the offers you have already made me, nevertheless to reinforce that resentment which you thought began to grow weak, not having apprehended the whole scope of my words, I do tell you once again, that I renounce the hopes of all your promises, and that I would rather refuse the Empire of the world, than be obliged to a Prince from whom I am resolved never to accept a kindness. Wherein do I oblige you Madam, replied he sighing, who am wholly devoted to your service, and resolved to sacrifice my life to your satisfaction and interests? Yes Madam, I will sacrifice this life which is yours though you cannot abide it, or if I preserve it still contrary to the intention I have to displease you, 'tis only that I may free you from the ambition of a Rival unworthy of you, a Rival who is not only but a bare Citizen of Rome, but also being a Rebel to his Prince, gives you sufficient cause to believe, that he will never acknowledge those favours wherewith you have honoured him.

The unfortunate Lover made use of many other most respectful expressions, and pronounced them with so much love and grief, that *Philinira* appeared at length less disdainful and more moderate. However being in a high degree tender of her honour, she believed that generosity obliged her to be inflexible toward a Prince, by whom she thought she had been slighted even to contempt.

Atalorque also having the same thoughts as *Atanalisa*, was in a terrible perplexity, for he found himself constrained to behold with sorrow, the good Offices which the King of the *Vandals* did him. He was unwilling to be ungrateful, and yet he could not forget the denial which had armed him against *Gunderic*, nor did he think it became him ever to forget it. So that this uncertainty what to do insupportably turmoiling him, he ponder'd and considered how he might calm the troubles of his Soul, and act in such a manner as neither to prove ingrateful to *Gunderic*, nor be forced to ingratiate *Atanalisa*, with a Prince against whom he had provoked her.

Having weighed several resolutions in his mind, wherewith he did not find himself entirely satisfied, he determined at length upon that which he thought most proper to second his designs, though before he put it in execution he deemed it convenient, to attend the success of the siege of *Hispaly*. In the mean time he desired *Atanalisa* by the help of *Atigia*, one of her Attendants wherein the most of all confided, not to carry her self so strangely toward the King of the *Vandals* as she had done, and to endeavour to vanquish that aversion which she had for him. *Philinira* who was well acquainted with *Atalorque's* constancy, was strangely surpris'd at the orders which he had given *Atigia*, however she acted conformable to the *Spanish* Princes will, having as much reverence for him as she could have had for a real Father. *Gunderic* presently perceived by conversing with her, the alteration which *Atalorque's* new intentions had produced: However whatever joy he felt in a heart so passionate as his, he was not only not the more remiss in carrying on the siege, but maintained it rather more vigorously than before, being encouraged by the fair hopes that began to flatter him.

He sent me orders to land the greatest part of the forces which I commanded, and in regard the enemy was not strong enough to oblige me to keep the Sea, the King gave me leave together with *Cydillion* to come ashore, being desirous to signalize our selves at such a time of danger, wherein of necessity honour was to be won. We landed then at the head of our best Soldiers and most of our Volunteers, and in a few days after we had joyned with *Gunderic*, the enamoured Prince not enduring to stay till we had fully refreshed our selves, caused the Rams to be brought, and battered the Walls with so much vigour and so little intermission, that we had soon made breaches wide enough to enter.

Gunderic thereupon not content to encourage his men, by those noble exploits which they saw him perform every day before their eyes, exhorted them to follow him to the taking of a City, wherein he promised them they should find that repose, which they had so long fought for. On the other side *Maximinus* represented to the *Romans* and *Spaniards*, what a shame it would be, to be driven out of their habitations, and to leave their estates, their wives and children, a prey to a hodge-podge of *Barbarians*. These two Rivals afterwards made good by their valour the remonstrances they had given out: They spied each other at the breach, they challenged each other and met, and the proofs of their valour prolonging the fight, proved fatal to some thousands of men. But at length *Gunderic* forced virtue to declare for us, notwithstanding the resistance made by two warlike Nations in a fortress. And *Maximinus* finding himself wounded, and not in a condition to rally his men, was so afraid of falling into *Gunderic's* hands, that without regard to his honour, he saved himself in the tumult, at the very time when we entred *Hispaly*.

The King of the *Vandals* perceiving his fury to assuage, as the resistance and number of his enemies abated, cryed out to the Citizens not to fear any thing, that he had only made
the

the conquest for *Atanalisfa's* sake, and that he gave them quarter in the name of that Princess, though he might take another course by the laws of war.

Upon those words the *Spaniards* and *Romans* retreating, chose rather to stand to the clemency of the victor, than to attempt his repulse in vain. Thereupon they not only opened to the right and left, to let him pass through them, but also turned the points of their Swords downward, whereby they seemed to beg that good quarter which he had promis'd. *Gunderic* kept his word exactly, he forbid killing and plundering, he caused the Garrison to be safe conveyed to a fortress, that still held out for *Honorius*, and reduced the City into so good order and in so short a time, that before Night all things were as quiet as before the Siege. He had also that respect for his Princess, that he would not leave in *Hispany* the least footstep of his victory, nor of the war which he had almost put to an end: So that he caused the *Vandals* to retire to their Camp, while he had prepared all things for her reception, according to his first resolution.

After that he went to visit the fair Lady, but with an air that testified more of love and submission, than of that haughtiness that usually sits upon the Conquerours brow. *Divine Princess*, said he, accosting her in a very respectful manner, *I am come to return you thanks, for the victory which I owe to the justice of your claim, and to offer you the Scepter which your Ancestors have wielded heretofore in Betica. Hispany Madam is yours, the Romans are departed, and I make no question but the rest of your dominions, which have always depended upon it, will follow the example of the Capital City.* "Sir, answered *Atanalisfa*, you know that I never pretended that you should fight for me, when you fought against *Maximinus*, so that you cannot be surpris'd, if I refuse to reap the fruit of your labours, and to accept of a Crown which you have purchased with the blood of your subjects, and by exposing your own person to a thousand dangers.

Though the King of the *Vandals* looked for this denial, he could not however but be afflicted, nor could he relish the sweetness of those words, wherein *Atanalisfa* had left something of an obliging fence. For indeed the Princess had insinuated by her expressions, that she was not altogether displeas'd that *Gunderic* had so well escap'd, being inform'd without doubt of the dangers, wherewith the life of that Prince had been threatned. However he was not quite satisfis'd, but looking upon the charming *Philinira* with a passionate Air, "Fair but cruel Princess, said he, explain your commands I beseech you more precisely, and if you refuse the Scepter which I offer you, only because you will not receive it from the hand of *Gunderic*, if you refuse to ascend the Throne for fear lest *Gunderic* should be your companion, fear not that a Prince your adorer, has any design to make you an envenom'd present. You may rest assur'd most beloved Princess, and I solemnly protest that when I am satisfis'd, that *Maximinus* shall be forbid to pride himself in those glorious hopes which he has conceiv'd, I will free you from the presence of a person so odious, whose unfortunate neglect you so tacitly upbraid. For this unfortunate person that cannot move your heart, nor live being hated by the divine *Atanalisfa*, shall expire at your feet so soon as he has seen you crown'd in *Hispany*, and finds that the rest of his miserable life will be of no use to his Princess.

He continued this his courtship in so submissive and respectful a manner, he spoke with so many marks of love and grief, that it was ealie to perceive that *Philinira* was not altogether insensible. That disdain which she had formerly shew'd the King of the *Vandals*, appear'd no longer in her eyes, and by the moderation which succeeded, it was thought that *Gunderic* was not forbid to hope a more favourable alteration. Certain it is however, that the scrupulous Princess was only careful at first, not to shew her self ungrateful to the King of the *Vandals*, and for fear of giving him any opportunity of discovering the least Symptome of that affection, which perhaps she might already be sensible of, she only testified a bare acknowledgment, without accompanying her words with any obliging air, she went also somewhat farther, and to avoid her being entangled in any conversation with *Gunderic*, she entreated him to address himself to Prince *Atalorque*, when he had any thing to say of business that concern'd her. But how reserved soever *Atanalisfa* was, *Gunderic* perceiv'd some glimpses of consolation in the midst of those disturbances, with which his love infest'd his thoughts, finding his Princess alter from that aversion which she had shewn him, to a behaviour wherein there was nothing froward or churlish.

The pleasure of these thoughts was soon after attended by another, for in the evening of the same day, *Timander* returned back from the City of the *Tectosages*, after he had cured the famous *Constance* of that infirmity, which till then was thought incurable. First he returned the acknowledgments of the *Roman* from whom he came, and then continuing his discourse "I have order, added he, from the great *Constance*, to assure you that he will not only never

“ oppose your settlement in *Betica*, but that he takes so great a part in your concerns, that
 “ he will not fail either to speak or write in your behalf to the Emperour: nor have you
 “ any reason to doubt of the success of his mediation; for besides the great power which
 “ he has over *Honorius*, that Prince is so passionately in love with the incomparable *Bella-*
 “ *mira*, that he takes very little care of the affairs of the Empire, insomuch that there is no
 “ fear of his coming to disturb you where you are entred with so formidable and victori-
 “ ous an Army.

Those words greatly rejoiced *Gunderic*, and as a generous Friend he was overjoyed that he contributed so much to the cure of the great *Constance*, and that he saw such fair hopes that his Princess might reign peaceably in *Betica*, considering the powerful protection which was promised her.

The tidings that *Timander* brought, and the alteration of *Atanalisa's* humour in favour of the King of the *Vandals*, made such a noise, that the report was soon spread abroad over all the City; in so much that some of the best of the inhabitants that still adhered to *Maximin*, failed not to give him intelligence of all things that fell out to the advantage of the King of the *Vandals*. The General of the *Romans* received the news with an unexpressible grief: And in regard he passionately loved the Princess of *Hispania*, with whom he was just upon conclusion of a Marriage, and could not without dying, renounce those fair hopes which he had conceived, he made it his business by all manner of ways, to oppose the happiness of his Rival. And therefore, calling to him the chiefest of his Confidants, he conferred in private with them what course was best to be taken: and after they had thought upon, and rejected several designs, he determined at length to examine whether he could without any blemish to his honour, take that course of which he had made choice in the transportment of several violent passions. True it is, that before he put his design in execution, he was desirous to write to *Atalorque*; putting into his Letter all the expressions which he thought proper to make an impression in the mind of a Prince whose consent was necessary for the establishment of *Gonderic's* good fortune.

All this while *Atanalisa's* Uncle was extraordinarily disquieted: And I believe it would not have much troubled him had his Distemper lasted longer; that he might have made use of it as a kind of Sanctuary, wherein he thought they would not be so troublesome as to urge him to explain himself, how he intended to dispose of the Princess. But at length, when his cure began to be more forward than his desire, he found, to his sorrow, that he could no longer delay to give an answer to *Gonderic's* Proposals. So that he began to revolve in his mind all that he had observed in the Carriage of that Prince, his former Affronts, and present Obligations. Then he found himself in a strange necessity, either to give *Atanalisa* to a haughty Soldier, who seem'd to have despised her, or to deny her to a King, young, handsome and renowned; and who, ever since he knew the Princess, had served her with an entire submission. In this uncertainty wherein he wavered, they say that Acknowledgment would have prevailed above his Resentment, if at the same time that his heart was agitated with two such contrary motions, a Roman Officer had not found him out, and delivered him the following Letter, which *Maximinus*, as I said before, had writ to him.

Maximinus to Prince Atalorque.

IS it possible, Sir, that my intelligence should be true, that you are about to consent to the felicity of my Rival, against the Engagements which you have so solemnly made me? You know you promised me, that I should never see *Atanalisa* in the possession of *Gonderic*; and yet I am told, you are about to deliver up that fair Princess a Prey to the Barbarian; and to bestow her upon a Stranger, remarkable for nothing, but for having wasted your Country with Fire and Sword. What, shall Success be preferred before Merit and Vertue? and shall a Vandal be advanced before me, because Fortune has pampered him up with Victory? An, no, no, Sir, you must not act such a piece of Injustice: For I hope you are so far from changing your mind, out of an inconstancy unworthy the Greatness of your Courage, that you will wholly apply your self to the execution of a design that we have resolved upon. The Officer that brings you this Note is my faithful Confident, and will inform you what course we intend to take, and will assure you above all things, that I had rather die a thousand times, than forsake your Interests.

Atalorque

Atalorque had no sooner read this Letter, but with an augmented disturbance, instead of returning an Answer, he held his peace for some time; whether it were to study what he had to say, or that he would not speak till he found his mind better settled. At length, when he thought that more Moderation appeared in his Countenance, turning toward the *Roman*: “You may tell *Maximinus*, said he, that I remember the promise that I made him; but you may tell him withal, that he has no reason to claim it, nor that I should dispose of the Princess *Atanalisa* in favour of him, or forget the Obligations which I have received from the King of the *Vandals*. On the contrary, I declare that I will do for that Prince all that lies in my power, to make him amends; and provided I do not prefer him before *Maximinus*, I have no reason to fear any ill grounded Reproaches that he can lay upon me. But, Sir, replied the *Roman*, if you are willing that I should discover, how by acting with the *Roman* General you may surprize the *Vandals*, and the ——— Heavens forbid, cryed *Atalorque*, interrupting him, that I should retaliate with Treachery all the good Offices which I received from a Prince who was no way bound to have performed them. And you would do better, added he imperiously, to find out a master willing to listen to such enormities, than to give me advice that no way pleases a person of my disposition.

Having thus dismissed *Maximinus*'s Agent, he reflected upon the present conjuncture, and came to this result with himself, that in failing to make good the promise which he had made, and which he was desirous to stand to, he should throw himself into a strange labyrinth, if *Gunderic* should come to demand of him *Atanalisa* for his wife: wherefore he resolv'd to delay no longer the execution of that resolution which he had fix'd upon before *Hispaly* was taken, to which end he sent for *Cydillion* to come to him, believing that his mediation would be very useful to bring his design about. The Greek Officer fail'd not to wait immediately upon *Atalorque*: and he was no sooner come to the Bed side, but addressing his speech to him, Generous *Cydillion*, said he, 'tis a long time since your Father became my Friend, and gave me sufficient testimonies of his fidelity, which made me trust him, as you know, with the destiny of two Princesses which are infinitely dear to me. And if at your first coming into these parts, I did not discover to you the secret which I now make known to you, that the unknown *Philinira* is the Princess *Atanalisa*, it was only because you took part with the *Vandals*. But the face of things being changed, it behoves me now to act after a quite contrary manner, and that I not only open to you the bottom of my heart, but also beg your counsel and assistance. Sir, answered *Cydillion*, I dare not presume to believe that it is in my power to do you any service; but in regard I am perswaded that you expect no other services but what I am capable of performing, you need not question but that I shall obey your commands with all the zeal the Son of *Aristoclitus*, and one so well acquainted with *Atalorque*'s virtue can pay to your high desert. After so obliging a protestation, replied he, I must tell you, that being oblig'd to *Gunderic* for so many favours, and being also desirous to settle a Princess whom I have look'd upon as my Daughter for many years, I have resolv'd to bestow *Atanalisa* with all her Claim and Title to this part of Spain, upon *Thrasimond*, knowing how to open a way for *Gunderic* to the Crown of *Lusitania*. Ah, Sir, I beseech you alter your intention, and do not believe, that by any such resolution you will gratifie those illustrious persons. For either I am very much deceiv'd, if *Gunderic* does not prefer the enjoyment of his adored *Philinira* before all the Grandeurs that can flatter his ambition; and I cannot tell whether *Atanalisa* would be glad to—— *Atanalisa*, answered he, will be always obedient to *Thargyre*'s and my will, and so may I be able to discharge my obligations to the King of the *Vandals* without thwarting *Atanalisa*'s inclinations. But, Sir, added *Cydillion*, what should hinder you from being grateful to *Gunderic* with his own good liking, since it is for *Atanalisa*'s advantage? No doubt, replied *Atalorque*, blushing, but that you have heard, that the King of the *Vandals* refus'd a proposal which he would now gladly accept: but besides my resentment of such an injurious denial, I have a private reason which hinders me from uniting *Atanalisa*'s fortune and *Gunderic*'s together. And therefore, *Cydillion*, assist me I beseech you, and take such order in these affairs of mine as much as in you lies, that they may succeed according to the intentions of a person who has a love for you, and whom you find in a strange labyrinth. I shall omit nothing, replied *Cydillion*, but to tell you the truth, Sir, I fear I shall not prosper in what I undertake, being a design which will never be approved by those who are chiefly concern'd.

Thus *Atalorque* and *Cydillion* parted; the latter leaving the Spanish Prince's Chamber, with a great desire to serve him, but with little hopes of serving him effectually, considering the love which all the world knew *Gunderic* bore to *Philinira*. However, he had a mind to discover how *Atanalisa* stood affected to the business; next how my self would relish such a proposal, to the end he might the better satisfy *Atalorque*. He knew that I had

relinquish'd my liberty at the Court of *Theodosius*, and that I passionately adored the divine *Athenais*. However, he came to me, and desiring to speak with me in private, he threw me into a great surprize, and sensibly displeas'd me when he had made known to me *Atalorque's* design. I was amaz'd that the *Spanish* Prince should prefer me before the King of the *Vandals*, and I was sorry to see him deal so unjustly by *Gunderic*. On the other side, I was vexed to see my self reduced to that necessity, that I should be forced to confess, that I could not love *Philinira*, and so expose her to the indignity of a second refusal. To avoid all which inconveniencies, I thought it my best way to abate my self for some time: so that after I had return'd *Cydillion* many thanks, and desired him not to speak a word of what he had discovered to me, I prepared to leave *Spain*; and to lay the grounds of a plausible pretence, I went to the King, and without ever discovering *Atalorque's* intentions, You see, Sir, said I, that the Romans are utterly defeated and ruined in *Betica*, and not only that they have not strength enough in any other part of *Spain* to make any attempts upon your new Conquests, but also that neither *Honorius* nor *Constance* are either in a condition, or dispos'd to relieve them, or to seek to regain their Territories in these parts: so that in my opinion you may do well to send away some part of your Army, to ease a Country where you intend that *Atanalisa* should reign, and to gain the hearts of a people which your victories have subjected under your Dominion. With that part of the Army which you think fit to send away, if you hold it convenient, I will march to the City of the *Tectosages*, and offer them to the conduct of the great *Constance*, whose fortune I will follow, whether he intend to lead them against Nations that overdeluge the Empire, or whether, which is the most received opinion, he intend to chuse his party in the great Wars upon the Banks of the *Rhine*, rather to end his miseries, than to augment the honour which he has purchased by so many renowned exploits.

When I had thus deliver'd my mind, I waited for *Gunderic's* answer; but the King, instead of speaking to me, look'd upon me with such an eye, as told me he would first consider of my request. After a long silence, "Brother, said he, fetching a sigh, I do not believe you make any question but that the concerns of my Princess are the highest concerns to me in the earth; that I would not only give her *Betica*, but all the Kingdoms of the world in a flourishing condition. Nevertheless, I would willingly desire you to change your resolution: for I must confess I never found that reluctance to endure your absence as at this time. "I know, Sir, wherefore you would now detain me, replied I, counterfeiting a smile to cheat his melancholy, because you are here with that person who is more terrible to you than all the world besides. But, Sir, *Philinira* will be better pleas'd to see you send away fifteen or twenty thousand men that only subsist upon the spoil of her Subjects, than with the unprofitable stay of a Brother that can do you no remarkable service. "You will have your reasons more prevalent than mine, replied the King of the *Vandals*: Well then, Prince, said he, take your course; but to tell you the truth, I am very loath to consent.

In regard he utter'd those words with a sad air, I feign'd a forc'd mirth to divertise him, all the rest of that day. But the morrow after, I made it my business to muster those men that were to march, and to provide all things necessary for my journey. *Atalorque* was extremely surpris'd at my departure; and suspecting that I understood his intention, he conjectur'd presently that the reasons of my leaving *Spain*, was, because I saw my self constrain'd either to accept or refuse the offers which he had made. Thereupon he griev'd exceedingly, and keeping himself private all that day, he walk'd about the Chamber in a melancholy posture, as long as the faintness of his body would permit him: What, said he to himself, does *Thrasimond*, whose disposition always appear'd mild and courteous, does he alter his disposition so suddenly in contempt of my alliance? And must I be still the person born unfortunately to bring affronts upon a Princess worthy of a more noble usage?

Then he made all the malicious reflections imaginable upon what had come to pass, and he resolv'd more than once to be revenged upon *Gunderic*, by the means of *Atanalisa's* disdain, because that his pride had been the original of all his discontent. But no sooner had he fram'd that unjust design, but he repented of it, and found himself in a strange perplexity. For it became him to be grateful to a Prince who had laid such obligations upon him: on the other side, besides the resentment which he had renew'd in his heart against *Gunderic*, he could not flatter the passion of that Prince with any hope, after the promise which he had made to the *Roman* General. In this contrariety of thoughts he had neither strength nor humour to dissemble before the King of the *Vandals*: so that accounting it some ease to him to avoid his presence, he resolv'd to retire to a little house which he had by the side of the River *Betis* for change of air. But in truth, to stay there till he had more precisely contriv'd which way to behave himself toward *Gunderic*. *Thargyre* and *Atanalisa*

Atanalisa would not stay behind a Prince that was so dear to both; and you may well believe that the King of the *Vandals* would have been overjoyed to have been of the company; but that he was afraid to interrupt that liberty, for the sake of which in all likelihood *Atalorque* retired into the Country, so that he was forced to part with *Philinira*, not daring to follow her; but with so much grief, that I am not able to express it. Immediately every thing became insupportable to him, even his very Army that went to be his sole delight, seemed to be an importunate multitude that environed him, as he thought only to keep him from thinking upon his Princess. So that sometimes he shut himself up whole days together, that he might more absolutely give himself over to his unquiet thoughts; and to contemplate without any obstacle upon the satisfaction, which he had lost by the departure of *Atanalisa*. However that was but cold comfort to the enamoured *Gunderic*, the passionate Lover could not live without seeing the charming *Philinira*, and having spent some days in a melancholy unexpressible, he was at length constrained to send to *Ibargire*, to know whether he might give her a visit, without any disturbance to her retirement.

The Mother of *Atanalisa* who had never been very obstinate against the King of the *Vandals*, received his complement with all the civility which she thought due to his rank and virtue, and *Gunderic* no sooner understood that *Ibargire* had given her consent, but he made hast to be gone, notwithstanding the trouble and pain of his wounds. Thereupon he speedily gave such orders as concern'd the Army and Garrison, and though *Timander* that attended him perswaded him to make use of a Litter, yet he would needs ride a horseback; that he might be the sooner at the desired end of his journey. Upon the way he met with ten or twelve horsemen, who having spied them quitted the great Rode, and flew into the forest with that speed that it might be easily conjectured, that they neither desired to be pursued or known. By their Arms they seemed to be *Romans*, but the Kings thoughts being wholly taken up with the charms of that fair Lady which he was going to visit, he minded them no farther, but when he discovered the Towers of *Medelina*, then did he feel the agitations of redoubled joy, and redoubled melancholy both at once in his heart.

No sooner was he arrived, but he enquired after the health of the Princesses, and being conducted where they were, he was received with all the honours due to his grandeur, but not with those marks of a confiding friendship, which he would fain have observed in their countenances. *Atalorque* himself seemed more cold and more reserved, nor was it a difficult thing to take notice, that he laboured as far as civility would permit him, to avoid being alone with the King of the *Vandals*, to whom he was resolved to make no promises, having passed his word to *Maximinus*. Thus *Gunderic* found that *Atalorque* did nothing favour his intentions, and because he knew him to be constant in his resolution, and that *Philinira* bare him an absolute reverence, he apprehended that his sufferings would be tedious, in regard he could expect no change but with the alteration of a humour, that was not easily stirred. This so afflicted him that the marks of his grief appeared in his face, yet before he abandoned himself to his discontents, he had a mind to understand *Philinira's* inclinations, and whether that Princess would be more just than *Atalorque*.

He sought therefore all ways to express himself to *Philinira*, but the understanding his drift and *Atalorque's* mind, would not afford him any opportunity to entertain her in private, well considering in what a Labyrinth she should be, to be constrained to give or quite bereave the Prince of those hopes, which seemed to be so legally his due. But the impatient *Gunderic* not able to live in uncertainty, took his time at length, and understanding that *Atanalisa* was alone in her Chamber, with no other person but *Aligia*, he entred notwithstanding the apprehensions which his love infused into him, and after he had made his obeysance with a profound respect, *I cannot tell Madam*, said he, *whether a miserable person whose company you seem to avoid, may approach your presence without intruding upon your liberty*, Sir, answered she, *I have not yet forgot that you are the Conquerour of Atalorque, and that Atanalisa is King Gunderic's prisoner: This is my answer instead of giving you that leave which you seem to desire*. Ah Madam, replied he sighing, *that you should be so severe to impute the faults of fortune to me, to upbraid me with the discontents you have received, and to perswade me that you are a prisoner to a person that adores you, and one whom you have laden with your fetters*. But over cruel *Philinira*, tell me I beseech you by what carriage of mine, I have incens'd you against the unfortunate *Gunderic*, and if it be true that I am guilty, I will be so far from craving a pardon of which I am unworthy, that I will pour forth my blood even to the last drop, as an expiation for my crime.

He pronounced these words with so sad an air, that *Atanalisa* could not chuse but be mollified, however deeming that it was impossible for the pretensions of the Prince, to have any favourable success, she would not afford him the least glimpse of hope, only contented

her self to tell him, that she was so far from having any reason to complain of his actions, that she was highly bound to extol his generosity. But to say truth she spoke in that manner, rather at the instigation of her innate equity, than out of the true meaning of her heart, giving him to understand that she would never dispose of her affections, without the consent of *Atalorque*.

Gunderic fretting at that injustice of which he durst not complain, retired, not being master of his grief, and no sooner had he quitted the Chamber with an air that testified his affliction, but *Atigia* was deeply touched therewith, and resolved to take the unfortunate Prince's part. She was about to have opened her lips in favour of him, when she perceived the melancholy that clouded fair *Philinira's* eyes, and discern'd that the Princess was so far from having that indifferency for *Gunderic*, which that Prince had seemingly so much reason to accuse her of: So that instead of taxing her incomparable Mistress, she took compassion of her, and set her self rather to calm her discontents, than to speak of the King of the *Vandals*.

In the mean while *Atanalisa* unwilling to be disturb'd in those contemplations to which she had abandoned her thoughts, took a walk in the cool of the evening, the Sun being upon setting in a little Grove, which served her always for a retiring place when she avoided company, or had a mind to open her mind to her faithful *Atigia*. She was no sooner in a place as solitary as she could well desire, but she sat down upon the grass at the foot of a great Tree, and *Atigia* kneeling down by her, made it her business to divertise her with pleasing discourse. Presently she took one of her fair hands, kissed it, and pressing it between her own, *My most fair Princess*, said she, beholding her with eyes full of affection, *will you not tell me the cause of your sorrow, at a time when all things succeed so prosperously, and when fortune seems to be weary of being your enemy? I cannot tell*, answered she, *upon what grounds you build that reconciliation, but I know I have been too unfortunate from my infancy, to expect any such propitious change. How Madam, can you complain when you disarm the Conquerour himself, when you save your Country and are restored to your Throne? But if it be not convenient for me to accept his Offer and his friendly Offices, do you think they are not as displeasing to me, as you believe them acceptable? I confess*, replied she, *I cannot apprehend wherefore you should be so much troubled to be beholding to the King of the Vandals: For if he carried himself to Atalorque like a young Soldier who had only ambition in his heart, have not you had since the pleasure to humble his pride? and when he knew the value of the felicity which was offered him, has he not coveted it with all the eagerness imaginable?* "I confess it," answered she, but then you "must likewise acknowledge that I am never a whit the more happy, seeing that difference of carriage overwhelms me with an insupportable discontent. For would it not be more for my repose, that I should either absolutely hate or absolutely love *Gunderic*, than to live in this suspense what to determine." "But my dear Princess," added *Atigia* in a most soothing and engaging manner, will you not tell me what thoughts you would rather be obliged to have, were it in your power to chose, or that it had been in your power to have controuled *Gunderic*, when he first made war upon *Etica*.

That question put *Atanalisa* to a stand, and occasioned a pleasing blush to ascend into her cheeks, "Ah Madam speak I beseech you, and think it not strange that I am unwilling to let you seek for an evasion, when there is a necessity to be sincere. Then *Philinira* recovered her self, and beholding *Atigia* with more confidence than before, "It may be," said she, "I may explain my thoughts with less reluctance than you thought for: But *Atigia*, added she smiling, do not you put a bad interpretation upon my words, when I tell you that methinks it is more natural to desire that we may receive kindness, and that it might be in our power to shew our acknowledgment, than that we should be constrained to continue our resentment for injuries done us.

The Princess said no more, but in regard she blushed upon the conclusion of those words, *Atigia* began to be assured of what she only suspected before. However she desired to be better satisfied, that she might be able more successfully to serve a Mistress, to whom she believed her scrupulous humour was very prejudicial: So that having let her rest a while, "I would not willingly Madam," said she, "that the boldness which I take presuming upon your goodness, should prove impenitent or troublesome, and yet there is a little curiosity remaining behind, wherein with your leave I would fain be satisfied. I believe pleasantly," replied *Philinira*, "that you would have me tell you more than I know my self, and indeed you have been the occasion already, that I have made reflections upon some things which I never yet examined. I should be overjoyed Madam if that were true, for indeed Madam we are sometimes unfortunate, because we believe our selves so, and many times it happens that we are really miserable, at a time when we may make an exchange of our

“ misfortunes for a considerable happinels. While you speak but in general, *replied the Princess*, I must tell you you may be deceived, when you come to that particular application to which I see you tending: But it grows late, *added she*, and therefore 'tis better to retire home, than to enter farther upon this discourse.

Concluding these words she rose up, but as she was going to take the path that led to the house, of a sudden ten or twelve armed men presented themselves before her, and presently after she knew the chief of them to be *Maximinus*. At an adventure so unexpected *Aligiz* gave a loud shriek, and *Philinira* seemed extraordinarily surpris'd, but being a Virgin of great courage she presently recovered her self, and beheld *Maximinus* with less fear than indignation, *I see Madam*, said he, *that you never understood of my coming to Medelin, to spoil the design that was contriving against me. But know Madam, I would have crossed the Seas and gone to the worlds end, to have been revenged of your injustice and Atalorque's breach of promise, by snatching you out of the hands of a Vandal, whom you would prefer before me.* “ *How Maximinus, answered she*, come you then hither only to commit crimes, and do you think you can carry off your booty with success and scot-free? No, no, *Maximinus*,—— “ *Madam, (said he interrupting her, as not willing to lose time)* I will hear what you have to say, when you are within my jurisdiction.

He had no sooner concluded these words, but he seized *Philinira*, and was just carrying her away, when the courageous Lady bestirring her self in his Arms, *Ab Coward*, cryed she *is it by treachery that you think to gain the affections of Atanalisa?* More she could not say finding her self environ'd by some of *Maximinus's* complices, who having no respect for her, were the more rudely diligent to serve their Master: So that the fair Princess having made all the resistance that modesty would permit her, had like to have become a prey to *Maximinus*, if five or six of her attendants, who waited according to custom at the side of the wood, had not speeded to her assistance, drawn thither by *Aligiz's* shrieks. But when they came they found themselves too weak, to accomplish their generous design to rescue the Princess, only they put a stop to the Ravishers till better fortune happened. They did what they could, but were cut in pieces, by an enemy more numerous and better arm'd: And by and by appeared a Troop of *Romans* at the very Castle Gate, to beat all that should issue forth to relieve the distressed *Atanalisa*: So that the fortune of that fair Princess was in *Maximinus's* hands, when two women that had not entred into the Thicket, came and advertis'd *Atalorque* what had happened.

The *Spanish* Prince hearing the news, made no question but that *Maximinus* was the Ravisher, doing that justice to the King of the *Vandals* as not to suspect him in the least, though *Gunderic* loved with as little hope as his Rival. *Atalorque* transported with fury against an ingratelul person, for whom he had had so great an esteem, ran to his Sword not having time to arm himself, he put himself at the head of such of his servants, which he could hastily rally together to pursue after the Princess. But no sooner was he out of the Castle gates, but he found an obstacle not so ealie to be overcome, and yet so far was he from ceasing to prosecute his intention, though he saw but little hopes, that he flew upon the *Romans* that stood in his way with an astonishing vigour. But while he fought with more likelihood of death than victory, considering the inequality of the number, the enemies set fire to the Castle Gate, at what time some of *Atalorque's* servants told *Gunderic*, that they were murdering his Master.

Then did the King of the *Vandals* remember the severity of the *Spaniard*, yet understanding he was in danger, his love and generosity prevailing over his resentment, he flew to expose his life for the preservation of a person without pity, who had so many times set a dagger to his breast. He came just in the very nick to save his life, for just as he was come up with the Combatants, he saw a *Roman* ready to have run him through behind with his javelin, while he was fighting with two of his enemies before him. The enamoured *Gunderic* foamed to see the danger that threaten'd *Atanalisa's* uncle, and throwing himself between the *Spanish* Prince and his enemy, received the Blow which would have proved more dangerous where it was directed, but little dream'd of by *Atalorque*. The *Spanish* Prince observed the noble action of the King of the *Vandals*, which not only infused into him a full sense of acknowledgment, but also renewed his valour by the confidence which he had in the assistance of a Soldier famous for so many victories: Insomuch that the Combat was so boysterous and bloody; that *Maximinus* found himself constrained, to leave *Atanalisa* in the custody of five or six of his men, and hasten to the relief of his own party. Immediately he made himself known to encourage his *Romans*, when *Gunderic* having heard him nam'd, singled him out, and transported with love and jealousy, flew upon him with a most dismal impetuosity. *Maximin*, cryed he, *turn, turn against Gunderic those weapons, with which*

thou seekest to lay violent hands upon our Princess. Yes, answered he very surlily, I will turn them against thee; for I desire not to enjoy Atanalisa, but by Gonderic's defeat.

Thereupon they began a most terrible combat, wherein the King to rescue *Philinira*, prodigal of his own blood, fought nothing but the life of *Maximinus*. Immediately he let drive a most furious back blow at *Maximinus*, and perceiving himself environed by the *Romans*, and wounded in several places, he pressed however upon his enemy with such an undaunted fury, that maugre their number and his resistance, he thrust his Sword up to the Hilt in his Body. Upon the fall of the Captain of the Enterprize, the rest were soon dispersed. But that which was most doleful after so prosperous a success, was, that both *Gunderic* and *Atalorque* fainting away, fell both of a sudden to the ground, without any appearance of life. *Thargyre*, *Atanalisa*, *Astigia*, *Timander*, and many Officers run with all speed to their assistance; and seeing both the Princes in so deplorable a condition, by their shrieks and by their tears they manifested the height of their affection.

But understanding presently that both those Illustrious Soldiers were yet alive, they all diligently set themselves to work for their recovery, according to *Timander's* directions. That skilful Chirurgeon omitted nothing for the preservation of those two great men. He stanch'd their blood, bound up their Wounds, whereinto he had first poured his healing Balsoms; and caused them to be carried to the Castle, as charily and as gently as possible could be. They had no sooner opened their eyes, but the King of the *Vandals* enquired whether *Atanalisa* were at liberty: And as soon as they had made him answer that she was, and were about to give him an account in few words of what had happened; Tell me rather, said he, what is become of *Atalorque*? He is very much wounded, as well as you, answered *Timander*: But, Sir,—— How, cryed he, impatiently interrupting him, is *Atalorque* wounded, and you not with him? Ah *Timander*; That you should know no better how to cure *Gunderic*. But Sir, replied he, must I not also take care of your Majesty? Not at all, replied the passionate Lover; you are to bestow all your time upon *Atalorque*: For I had rather that *Gunderic* should perish, than that my Princess should be in the least danger of losing so Illustrious a Kins-man. In short, the enamoured Prince would not let *Timander* stay, but sent him away immediately to *Atalorque*. By which Action of his he made such an impression in the hearts of all the Assistants, that immediately they ran to inform the Princesses therewith; which they could not do, but with tears and admiration. *Thargyre* and *Atanalisa*, sensibly touched with this last act of Generosity, went to visit the King of the *Vandals*; wherein they so behaved themselves, that they made it clearly manifest, that *Atanalisa* was no longer his Enemy, but that her Repentment had given place to a more equal Gratitude. On the other side, *Atalorque* charmed with *Gunderic's* Noble Qualities, caused himself to be carried into his Chamber, notwithstanding all the Chirurgeons Directions to the contrary. And no sooner had they placed him so near the Prince as to be understood, but with all the marks of a real joy; Sir, said he, it is a long time since your virtue won our hearts; but we could not till now, confess our selves vanquished, or acknowledge your Victory. Having concluded those words, he grew faint, and made *Thargyre* a sign to go on; which she did: declaring that there had been an Engagement between *Atalorque* and *Maximinus*; and that in regard his Conquest had removed that Obstacle out of the way, there was nothing now could put a stop to his Pretensions. The passionate King of the *Vandals* listened to *Atanalisa's* Mother with such a Transportation of joy, that I am not able to express: And for an addition to his Felicity, having consulted the fair Princesses eyes, he soon discovered that she gave her consent according to *Thargyre's* words. He beheld in those bright Mirrors the willing kindness she had for him, he observed therein an obliging sadness: nay, they seemed to make excuses for that mixture of Acknowledgment and Repentment they had so odly shewed at other times.

After this they left the two wounded persons to their repose, and sent *Maximinus's* body to *Sextilius*, who no way approved his Kinsman's design.

Thus, Sir, you have an account of the Change that has happened in the King, my Brother's Fortune: And now *Cydhillion* brings me word, that both his, as well as *Atalorque's* wounds are almost cured; and there is nothing more wanting to compleat his happiness, but that the Emperor, by the Mediation of *Constance*, would grant him the quiet Possession of all his Conquests, and that *Atanalisa*, according to her Claim, may be restored to the Throne of her Ancestors.

Pharamond had no sooner ended his Relation, but *Wallia* testified the satisfaction he had received thereby; and went that Evening to *Honorius*, to sollicite for *Gunderic's* Interest; which he did with all the zeal of a real Friend, and with all the success that *Gunderic* could have wished or desired.

The end of the First Book of the Twelfth and last Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK II.



HE next morning the two *Burgundian* Princes were no sooner in a condition to leave the Camp, but they departed for *Cologne*: And *Sunnon*, having thrust himself amongst *Guntran's* Domestick Servants, took the same Road, highly impatient to see the Queen of the *Turingiens*. But when they arrived at the City where *Amalazontha*, *Cleomira* and *Blesinda* were enclosed, the Lovers of these three Princesses felt a strange commotion in their minds. The Enamoured *Sunnon*, more passionate, but more unfortunate than the rest, was seized with certain discontents which would not have been concealed in his face, but that he marched all the way with his Beaver down, because he would not be discovered. The Captain of

the Guard at the Gate, was extremely glad to see *Gondemar* and *Guntran*; and sending to advertise *Gondioch* of their Return, he received them with all the Civility imaginable. Now, in regard it happened, that day that neither Citizens nor *Suevians* were upon the Guard, which was only of *Herules* and *Gepides*, there was nothing but a salutation pass'd between them and the Prince's Attendants; so that *Sunnon* had the less trouble to conceal himself: and when he was entred *Agrippina*, he return'd *Guntran* thanks in a few words, and went to *Thanaric's* Lodging. The first thing he did so soon as he saw the *Turingien*, was to enquire after *Amalazontha*: "Well, *Thanaric*, said he with an extraordinary impatience, have you seen my divine Princess, have you had any words concerning me? And when you discoursed to her of that unfortunate Lover, did you not gather from her discourse, did you not observe in her celestial eyes that cold indifferency that causes the misfortune of my life?" "Sir, answered he, I could not make any true conjectures upon the Queen's thoughts; for besides that a profound sadness that reigns in her countenance, conceals the marks of other passions, I staid so short a while with her, and she for her part had so little time to answer me, and to declare her mind to me, that I dare not venture to assert any thing in relation to the Queen's intentions." "However, replied the enamoured Prince, interrupting him, let your conjectures be never so uncertain, you may tell me what you think; for whatever comes from *Amalazontha* is of too great value to me, to let me rest till you have told me your thoughts.

Upon those words, taking notice that *Thanaric* was at a loss, his curiosity redoubled, inasmuch that not having that reservedness in a conversation which concern'd his love as he might have had at other times, he put the *Turingien* so hard to it, that he was forced to make this answer: "Since you constrain me to speak, Sir, said he, I must confess that I mentioned to her the preserver of *Turingia*, and related all the high services he had done her with all the applause that I thought it was requisite for me to give him, when I spoke to a Princess who is still obliged to him for the Crown she now wears." "Oh, *Thanaric*, replied the Prince interrupting him, wherefore were you not more faithful to me?" "Because I could not, replied *Thanaric*, unless I should have been a Traitor to my Queen, and ungrateful to my Benefactor." "And *Amalazombha*, replied he, was not she vexed

“and troubled to be beholding for services done to a Prince whom she cannot love? *The Princess was moved with some kind of acknowledgment, answered Thamaric, but instead of explaining her self any farther, she sigh'd and cast her eyes downward.* “I foresaw, *cry'd she* “*Prince, that you would plunge her into that perplexity. You see that Amalazontha's* “*shame does but too unhappily correspond with those thoughts which I always told you* “*she had for the unfortunate Sunnon: and I was hated too severely before by the Queen* “*that I adore, for any person to take so much pains to render my person more odious: I* “*know your intention was good, but I knew better that it would not produce the effects* “*which you expected.*

He had no sooner spoke those words, but he paused a while, and then resolv'd at length to go and see *Amalazontha*, whether he followed the insligations of his love, or thought to pacifie those discontents which his great obligations had been the cause of. *The Queen of the Turingiens* had languish'd under a double excess of melancholy, ever since *Balamir* had been acknowledged for *Theobald*: for that unfortunate Princess not finding any reason why she should look upon *Pharamond* as *Rosamond's* enemy, could not altogether forgo the hopes which she had conceived, without falling into a relapse of grief which she could not conceal. However, her sorrows were accompanied with a certain languishment that rendred her charms more powerful; so that the enamour'd *Sunnon's* heart being but the more subdued thereby, felt at that interview something which he had not experienced through the whole course of his passion, how violent soever it were. *Amalazontha* received him with all the civility that her sadness would permit her, and after the first ceremonies of complement she thus continued: “Prince, *said she*, I have understood by *Thamaric* the new obligations which you have laid upon me, and my resolution is not to be “long ungrateful, if the Crown which you have preserv'd will enable me. “How, *Ma-* “*dam, cry'd the passionate Sunnon*, do you think you can be any ways obliged to a person, “who being wholly devoted to your service, does nothing but what you are to challenge “from his Duty? No, no, *Madam*, you are not in the least beholding to me, and if I “should be so inconsiderate as to expect any reward from the Sovereign Mistress of my “heart, my pretensions would favour of more boldness than perhaps you are aware of. “For in short, *Madam*, I fear me they would aspire to those inestimable affections which are “infinitely above the Scepter which you offer me. “Having done such great things for my “sake, *replied Amalazontha*, I may lawfully declare to you that I am sorry it is not in my “power to give you that recompense which you desire. But, *Prince*, that I may not deceive “you, it behoves me to make a sincere profession of my present condition: know then, “that so long as I live, I shall always preserve that esteem for your person which your “high qualities deserve, and all the acknowledgment which I owe for the signal good of- “fices you have done me. But if you expect from *Amalazontha* any thoughts more ten- “der, you expect them in vain from an unfortunate person that cannot dispose her self to “gratifie your requests.

Concluding those words, she sigh'd, and *Sunnon* beholding her with eyes full of love and sorrow, *Ab, Madam*, cry'd he, *that I should be so unfortunate, if the obstacle that opposes my happiness be invincible. But, divine Princess, proceeds this misfortune from any difficulty which I can mend, or from any natural antipathy which you are not able to vanquish.* “It “proceeds rather from my injustice, *replied the Queen of the Turingiens*: but alas, *Prince*, “I find little likelyhood that I shall prove more just to you: but I am not however so blind “but that I see well enough that you are worthy of a better fortune, which I wish you “with all my heart: I am sorry for your sake, and perhaps I have more reason to be sorry “than you. This is all that I can say, and therefore I beseech you cease your suit, and “retire to your Brother the King's Camp, instead of staying in a City where you cannot “come to be discovered but with extreme hazard to your person. That misfortune which “will not suffer me to have that affection for you which you have right to claim, does not “hinder me from interesting my self in what concerns your conservation, and I have con- “vincing reasons not to be altogether ungrateful. *But, Madam*, sadly replied *Sunnon*, “*wherefore should you take care of a life which you have reduced to such a fatal necessity? I* “*beseech you, Madam*, said he bending upon one knee, which *Amalazontha* could not hinder him from doing, *either render that life altogether happy, since it is in your power, or permit me to surrender it up to such a despair, as may soon put an end to that and to the sufferings which attend it; for I am now a miserable creature that have no more to do in this world: for as the violence of an ill requited passion consumes me, and hurries me to my Tomb, I had rather die at Cologne than in Pharamond's Army: I had rather be in the City where you reside, than in the midst of all my Kindred and Relations. Nor will I Madam, renounce these hopes wherewith I*

take delight to flatter myself every moment, till you shall be mov'd to take pity upon those deplorable miseries that threaten the end of my unhappy days.

Upon those words he sigh'd, instead of continuing any farther: and the Queen of the *Turingiens* was about to answer him, when they brought her word, that the Princess of the *Lombards* and *Tongres* desired admittance; *Sannon* retired, not so much out of fear to shew himself to those Ladies whom he suspected not in the least, but because that after that conversation which they had interrupted, he did not find himself in a condition to be good company in another, wherein perhaps he might be little concern'd. Thereupon he was constrain'd to leave *Amalazontha*, and he was no sooner out of her Chamber, but he went without any more to do to the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, to court her on *Pharamond's* behalf. True it is, that hearing that *Thanaric* was with her, he stay'd till the *Turingien* had delivered his Embassy, which he did, no doubt, with a great deal of fidelity. He began to discourse very quaintly whatever he thought might be pleasing to *Rosamond*, in relation to *Theobald* and *Pharamond*; and having presented the King of the *Bohemians* Letter to that incomparable Princess, she opened it with no less impatience than joy, and found therein the following contents.

King *Theobald* to the Princess *Rosamond*.

I make no question, dear Sister, of your willingness to resign, since 'tis in exchange for the recovery of a lost Brother, and that you are no way griev'd to see that settled upon *Theobald*, which you would have parted with for *Balamir's* repose. Besides, it is as certain, that on the change of our fortunes there is such an equality of condition, that while I ascend the Throne of my Ancestors, you have the choice to reign over a Nation renowned for many victories over all the world. But, my dear Sister, the Kingdom which you have restored me, and the Monarchy which is offered you, is inconsiderable to the price of those other benefits which we are to expect. For you will agree with me that the enjoyment of *Hunnimonda*, and the heart of *Pharamond* are infinitely above all the Empires which the most boundless ambition can aspire to: what a happiness it will be to us, when we shall spend our lives with those two illustrious persons! Heaven has ordain'd that our destinies shall be united to theirs, and sufficiently attests it, having by the discovery of the real *Theobald* removed the obstacles that might have crossed our hopes. After so happy a revolution, we cannot say, but that our misfortunes are at an end; and that the just *Rosamond* is now free to dispose of her heart to him, that of all persons in the world best deserves it.

There was also a Postscript to this effect.

You may also without any scruple return an answer to the King of the Franks, and that in favour of his desires, and if there be nothing wanting but the entreaties of a Brother to persuade you to it, *Theobald* makes it his absolute hearty request.

The fair Princess had no sooner read the Letter, but she perused it over again with the same delight, as coming from a person so infinitely dear to her: And after she had examined the most weighty Clauses therein; casting upon *Thanaric* those Celestial eyes, that caused the joy and grief of so many great Princes, she demanded from the *Turingien* many more particulars in relation to the King of the *Cimbrians*. Madam, answered he, that Prince has no other thoughts at present, than of reducing into his power a City that so unjustly keeps you in restraint: And as there is nothing that equals the merit of *Pharamond*, nor the passion which he has for the *Cimbrian* Princess, no doubt, but that, as soon as he has set you at liberty, he will endeavour to tie you more strongly, and with more content to the King of the Franks. Upon those words, a lovely Carnation dyed the fair cheeks of the Princess; and in regard that *Thanaric* knew the quality of that tincture to be such, that it proceeded from nothing of displeasure, he began to applaud the admirable Vertues of *Pharamond*; which he did with so much fervency, that the modest *Rosamond* thought it not convenient to hear him out. So that, interrupting him: As far as I see, said she, finishing, you come not only from the King my Brother; or else *Theobald* is not the only Prince that you admire in the Camp from whence you bring us news. I grant it, Madam, replied *Thanaric*; and I be-

lieve you are not much surpris'd to hear that I have the same veneration for the King of the Franks, which all the world owes to his Vertue.

After the *Turingien* had a while continued this discourse, he took his leave of *Rosamond*; but the fair Princess was not a little surpris'd, when she took notice that *Theobald* should make his earnest request to her, to return an answer to the King of the Franks, and yet that *Thanaric* should not deliver her any Letter from that mighty Prince; which caus'd in her a disturbance, of which she was not altogether the Mistress. Thereupon, recalling the *Turingien* back, as he was going toward the Chamber door: *Are you going then, Thanaric*, said she? *Yes, Madam*, answered he; *For having done the business for which I came, if you have no other Commands to lay upon me, it behoves me to give way in a place where the greatest Princes in the world would be glad to succeed me. Then you had nothing else to deliver me, but the King of the Bohemian's Letter?* replied she, blushing, and holding a part of her Veil which she had in her hand before her face. *I had no other most certainly, Madam*, replied *Thanaric*: *But*, added he immediately, understanding what *Rosamond* meant, *I believe Prince Sunnon will within these few hours, bring a Letter from the King his Brother; and will give you an account, better than I can do, of the condition of the Army which is to fight for your Liberty.* The *Turingien* had no sooner returned that answer, but he related in short to *Sunnon*, what he thought the Princess of the *Cimbrians* would be very joyful to hear: And immediately he went to visit the fair *Amalazontha*, and to receive from her such Orders as were necessary for him to carry to *Lephane*.

He was no sooner departed *Rosamond's* Chamber, but the Prince was introduced; and after he had been received by the Princess in a most obliging manner, when the first Ceremonies were over, he presented her with the passionate *Pharamond's* Letter. *Rosamond* took it, but not without blushing; nor did she presume to open it in *Sunnon's* presence. *I beseech you, Madam*, thereupon, said he, *carry not your self so strangely to me; for besides, that you are no way oblig'd to it, it may be I may have some Additions to make by word of mouth to what my Brother has written; and I fear the loss of such an advantage, if you delay to grant me the favour; in regard it would not be permitted me to visit you any more, should I be discovered when I leave your Apartment.* For that reason, and upon his farther earnest entreaty, the incomparable Princess condescended to his request; and read those lines to him, which she would rather have perus'd without Witnesses. So that it was no difficult thing for *Sunnon* to observe the little changes in her Countenance, when she rehear'd those words that gave her to understand the affection of the most Illustrious of her Lovers, and with what thoughts that Affection was accompanied in the most noble heart in the world.

The King of the Franks to his Divine Princess.

AT length, Madam, Heaven has done justice to the Great *Theobald*: But in restoring him the Crown of his Ancestors, it makes him a Present less considerable, than the favour that it affords me, while he takes my part, and pleads for me to his Divine Sister. Not that his approbation renders me worthy of my Divine Princess; but I am apt to believe it permits me to aspire, as well as the rest of my Rivals, to an Honour which they no better deserve than *Pharamond*. I speak with certainty of an event which may seem uncertain. But, Madam, I speak of it with those Advantages that suffer me not to make any question of it. Considering the reinforcements of Men and Friends which I daily receive, does it not behove me to fight against your Oppressors? Am I not assisted by the great *Theobald*? And after all, Madam, is it not lawful for me to be tender of one party, that is become yours? We hope that it is for that Party that you will pray for Victory. But most dear Princess, how happy should I be, if the Prayers you make would not be all for a Brother, but that *Pharamond*, your faithful *Pharamond*, might have some share therein! His Valor has more need thereof, than that of the Invincible *Theobald*: And though your own interest did not oblige you to fortifie it with your assistance, methinks you should allow something to the most tender, and most respectful passion that ever was.

The fair Princess, so soon as she had read the King of the Franks Letter, could not forbear to cast her eye upon it once more; but being Mistress, for the present, of that desire which she had to examine every Clause, she turned toward *Sunnon*, and thus address'd her self to him: "I do not think, Sir, said she, that there is any necessity for us to confer to-

cerns you, though perhaps you may think there does. How! Madam, *replied Sunnon*, do you think I have no share in the most important Affair of the King of the *Franks*? and that after I have delivered you a Letter from that Prince, I should be remiss in observing what impression it makes in your mind? Ah, Madam! I beseech you do me more justice; and be persuaded, that as long as I live, I shall be always most deeply sensible of whatever concerns such a Brother as *Pharamond*. You know, Madam, and all the world beside knows it, that he lives only for your sake. You know to what dangers your disaffection has exposed him hitherto. But now that his Destiny must change with the illustrious *Balamir*'s, I cannot believe that you can, with your former aversion, look upon what the King of the *Franks* has done, or whatever he is ready to do for the Princess he adores. And therefore, I will not scruple to require your Answer to that Prince: And if I dare not presume to speak of *Pharamond*'s Merit for the attaining of it, yet me thinks I may be suffered to put you in mind of the protection which the Generous King of the *Cimbrians* himself allows him. *Rosamond* feeling a Contest in her breast, between her Modesty, and the strong Inclination that she had for the King of the *Franks*, could by no means resolve what Answer to give *Sunnon*: But the Prince not ceasing to press her; with an air that gave him no small satisfaction, "Sir, *said she*, seeing you are not presently to depart, and for that I am not accustomed to do that which you desire me, I must beg some time to consider what I have to say. How, Madam! *cried he*, somewhat impatiently, are you to consult any other thoughts than those with which your Justice shall inspire you. I cannot tell, *replied she*, smiling, whether the qualities of an affectionate Brother, such as you are, be compatible with those of a good Friend. But however it be, to grant you that satisfaction which you will not allow me; I must confess that I have no inclination to disoblige a Prince that fights for my Liberty; and who is united by Interest and Friendship with the King of the *Bohemians*.

Thus ended that dispute, the Kings of the *Burgundians* and the *Herules* both entering the Chamber, to whom the Princess rendered that civility which was due to their quality, not thinking her self obliged to treat them as Allies, who were indeed her persecutors. In the mean time *Sunnon* visited *Hunnimonda*, and spake to her as effectually as the King of the *Cimbrians* could desire: But for *Polixena*, he knew not which way to see her, the King of *Suevia* kept so strict a Guard upon that Princess, in a house where he had shut her up. *Rosamond*, the Princess of the *Gobbs*, *Albisinda*, the Queen of the *Iuringiens*, *Agione*, *Cleomira* and *Blesinda*, had made it their request to live with her, but notwithstanding all the endeavours they could use to obtain permission, the King of *Suevia* obstinately refused them, making a kind of an obliging excuse, that it was not for them to be used like the Sister of *Pharamond*. However they would not give over so, but the next day returning to the King of *Suevia*, they pressed him so earnestly that he made a semblance at least of yielding to their request. Fair Princess, said he, since you are so earnest that besides *Polixena*'s Maids of honour, there should be one of her friends to bear her company; I allow her *Albisinda* for a companion, not only to cheer the solitude of a Princess, whom I cannot look upon as any way guilty of *Pharamond*'s crimes, but also to punish a person that is not altogether an enemy of *Marcomire*, and has too great a kindness for *Viridomar*.

Rosamond taking her beloved Sisters part, justified her in relation to the disguise, wherewith *Marcomire* and *Gondemar* had deluded her, and then continuing in a more earnest manner, Sir, added she, for what concerns the affection which the Princess *Albisinda* has for the Prince of *Suevia*, you must be prepossessed by some contrary interest, to be so unjust as to condemn her: For when you have said all you can, *Viridomar* is a Brother too illustrious, and too——*Viridomar*, *cried he* smartly interrupting her, is a Rebel, and since *Albisinda* preserves a friendship for him that sullies her innocence, she deserves a punishment more severe, than that which I go about to inflict upon her. I grant, *replied the Princess of the Bohemians*, that the conversation of that incomparable person, will afford her more satisfaction than a solitude which cannot but afflict her: So that you may as well suffer me to bear her company, and allow me as a kindness that which you would inflict upon her as a punishment. Ah Madam, (*cried he* with a tone less severe, perceiving *Gondioch* and *Godegesle* to enter the Room) the Gods preserve me from giving my consent to your request, and from making many great Princes my enemies, from whom you desire that I should keep you safe. I shall soon find in *Cologne* both the Soldiers and the inhabitants rise against me, and make it their business to break your prison, employing those arms to that end which are designed for our defence. Beside, it would be thought strange that a Princess so accustomed to fetter others, should lose her liberty among her adorers.

He had not time to say more, because at the same instant the Kings of the *Burgundians* and *Herules* entered the Room, who had no sooner taken their seats, but the King of *Suevia* addressing

addressing his speech to them, *Sirs*, said he, *I am contesting for your interests, with a person to whom all the world submits without resistance.* I see very well, replied *Godegesile*, *that you have taken our part against a Princess, that without doubt complied with our enemies.* But I cannot tell, added he, transported with jealousy and the violence of his humour, *whether Rosamond showing her self so favourable to Pharamond, does not give us an occasion to treat her otherwise than we have hitherto done, to the end she may be constrained to carry her self toward us after another manner.* “Truly I cannot tell, replied *Rosamond* with a scornful coldness and “indifferency, whether if you change your course of proceeding, we may have those “thoughts for you which we have hitherto dispens’d with. But I am deceived if I expect “more moderation in you or more quiet for my self, for you are altogether for putting me “to a double persecution. With that the incomparable *Bellamira*, who under the softest and mildest temper in the world, concealed the constancy of an hero, took *Rosamond’s* part, and looking upon *Godegesile* with a kind of indignation, “I wonder not at all, said she, that a person “so accomplished as the last person you spoke of, has so much reason to complain of her “fortune, in the midst of so many occasions that she has to bless the liberality of heaven: “but I think it very strange that you should go about to gain her heart by continual inju- “rics. What, pursued she more vehemently than before, can you think her obliged to grant “you her affection, at a time when you refuse her her liberty? when you fight against her “brother, and venture your lives only to detain her in prison? “I must confess, replied the “King of the *Herules* with a bitter smile, that the Princess of the *Goths* is very generous, in “taking part with *Theobald’s* Sister, with so much heat as she testifies, seeing she is to be “Queen of the *Cimbrians*. “But Madam, pursued he addressing himself to *Hunnimonda*, “there are no such probabilities but that you may wait long enough for the Crown which “is promised you: For I believe the war will last long enough, or perhaps may be ended “with a success quite contrary to your hopes.

Upon those words a lovely carnation overspread the fair *Bellamira’s* cheeks, and that courageous Lady casting a look full of disdain upon *Godegesile*, “As far as I see, replied she, you “are cutting out more work for the King of the *Bohemians* valour, than I expected: and “for what concerns the events of a war which you desire so much to prolong, give me leave “to make my conjectures of the future by what is past: For in so doing I have less reason “to fear the fortune of the King of the *Bohemians*, than of the King of the *Herules*.

She had just uttered these words, when the King of the *Huns* and Prince *Balamir* entered the Chamber, and perceiving the disturbance in her countenance, they took upon them to speak their minds, and gave the rest to understand that they were clearly of that incomparable Princesses side.

The King of *Suevia* who mainly feared a division in the league, which he laboured to preserve entire, dexterously changed the discourse, and *Gondioch* who had the same fears, made answer, that he did not admire that the Princess of the *Goths*, and the King of the *Herules* had engaged with so much heat upon a subject, wherein it was not easy for them to accord, since the King of the *Cimbrians* was the occasion of their discourse. “I do not apprehend however, replied the King of the *Huns*, why they should be of such different judgments in that particular, and why *Godegesile* should be an enemy to a Brother, for whose “Sister he has publickly declared so great an affection. “For my part, replied the King of “*Suevia*, I am no way surpris’d at it, that two persons so different as *Rosamond* and *Theo- “bald*, should be the causes of such discording passions in others. “Nevertheless you see “in your own family, replied *Rosamond*, an example very conformable to what the King “of the *Huns* has spoken, since in despite of the war between the *Franks*, and *Suedes*, Prince “*Viridomar* is become the friend of *Pharamond*, contracting that friendship from the very “time he knew that that Prince govern’d the destiny of *Polixena*. “How Madam, answered the King of *Suevia* with fire in his eyes, do you quote a guilty criminal, a Rebel, an “unnatural Son, whose very name I abominate to hear pronounced? do you compare his “rath and wicked carriage, to the proceedings of the King of the *Herules*, who has always “hated what it became him never to love?

That violent Prince would have shewed himself much more transported, at a time wherein his love was so much interested, had he not feared to disoblige the most considerable of his party, by disobliging *Rosamond*: and if the King of the *Huns* had not also interrupted him in a dispute, that began already to be so sharp. But in regard that Prince was a person that could not flatter, he spoke for *Viridomar* and very boldly, and with much justice declared himself in reference to *Rosamond’s* concerns: So that the whole company soon parted, not being able long to hold together, by reason of the diversity of their opinions. It may be also said that there were two parties in *Cologne*, one that had conspired the death of *Pharamond*,

Pharamond, the other that sought an accommodation and to pacifie *Varanez*, who was the only person that stood out against the King of the *Franks*. The King of *Suevia* and the *Burgundians*, *Godegefile* and *Briomer* composed the first faction, and had all the same intentions. As for the Kings of the *Gepides* and *Basternes*, they were led away by those Princes, but it was rather through the engagement of their Amours, which they had for *Rosamond* and *Aphsinda*, than for any particular spleen conceived against *Pharamond*. And for the Prince of the *Saxons*, *Condemar* and *Gautran*, they were less violent for that Cabal than either *Arderic* or *Humbert*.

On the other side the Kings of the *Huns* and *Sarmatians*, *Agelmoud*, *Martian* and the new *Balamir*, were engaged by their own to follow the fortune of *Varanez*, and yet continually pealing that Prince in the ear, they never gave over perswading him to lay aside these violent inclinations, that had rendred him guilty of adhering to that unjust cause, which the league had embraced. But *Agathyrfus* uled his endeavours more than any other, to oblige him to depart out of a Countrey, so far remote from that potent Monarchy to which he was the immediate heir: And knowing the vastness of that Prince's ambition, he laboured to increase the force of that natural passion, that he might counterbalance the powerful impression, which the charms of *Rosamond* had imprinted in his heart. However it was not so easie for him to bring about his design, and therefore the King of the *Sarmatians* finding that his reasons could not prevail against the beauty of the *Cimbrian* Queen, resolv'd not to flatter *Varanez*, but to discover to him the danger he was in of finding a usurper in the Empire, if he staid but a month longer in *Germany*.

He had no sooner displayed in a few words, what he had good grounds to suspect, but the Prince as much enamoured as he was, began to be very much troubled, and addressing himself to the King of the *Sarmatians*, Sir, said he, *will you not more precisely give me a relation, in what condition you left the Court of Persia, and let me understand by what good fortune my Father came to obtain the friendship of the illustrious Agathyrfus, the most formidable enemy that ever he had to deal with. I will not only obey your commands,* replied the King of the *Sarmatians* blushing, but Sir, continued he, *I had made you the recital which you desire long before now, could I have found as convenient an opportunity as now I have, by reason of your earnest solicitations of a Princess, who to speak ingenuously is really deserved by the King of the Franks and to whom I am apt to believe she is already engaged.*

Upon those words *Varanez* blush'd, but having recalled his passion, *I know not,* answer'd he, *why they should be more obliged to bestow Rosamond upon Pharamond, than upon the Prince of Persia, nor can I tell who should so well instruct you in the knowledge of interests which are not so easily divid'd into.* "I will tell you however, replied *Agathyrfus*, if you please, that there needs but a very cursory examination, of the Prince of *Persia's* and the King of the *Franks* pretensions, to make a man admire wherefore a person that has been so publickly remarkable for acts of generosity as you have been, should give your self the liberty to disturb affections so lawfully and innocently grounded. For Sir, you cannot be ignorant that by the secret conduct of heaven, it was *Pharamond* that killed the Son of *Briomer*, it was *Pharamond* that saved the real *Theobald's* life, it was by the valour of that Prince that *Bobemia* has been deliver'd from her oppressor and usurper, and that *Rosamond* finds out an illustrious Brother instead of a wicked villain, that would have infected her house with the blood of *Eriomer*. "I do not speak this, added he, to moderate the fierceness of *Varanez's* indignation, or that you might not have performed what the King of the *Franks* has done, But fortune that apparently designs him the possession of *Rosamond*, has made choice of him to give him those opportunities to serve that Princess, which she has denyed you. Nevertheless *Rosamond* ceases not to be absolutely perswaded, not only of the grandeur of your courage, but of your zeal to serve her or whatever concerns your interest. She does you justice in that, as well as in all other particulars: She knows the advantages she might enjoy by yielding to *Varanez*, and though she be ignorant of the large extent of your Empire, yet I am apt to think she considers no less the lustre of your degree, than the endowments of your person.

Agathyrfus taking notice that *Varanez* began to take his words into consideration, "Wonder not, proceeded he, that I speak so positively of *Rosamond's* thoughts, and that I so vehemently labour to retrieve your heart, from the power of a Princess that cannot give you hers. For *Rosamond* her self who has made me a clear confession of her most secret thoughts, she begged of me to beseech you in her name to be satisfied with her esteem, and to remember at all times that she was not in a condition to dispose of her affection, when you first arriv'd in these parts. She cannot but with an extraordinary disquiet of mind, behold you here engaged in a war, the success whereof can never be advantageous to that passion,

“ which you seem to have. For in short if you are a victor, that can only be by the death
 “ of *Theobald* and *Pharamond*, who perhaps is no less dear to your Mistress than her beloved
 “ Brother, and if on the contrary the *Franks* and *Cimbrians* triumph over their enemies,
 “ you imagine to be preferred before your Vanquisher. What honour could you draw from
 “ your defeat, or rather what a grief will it be to your Father and to all *Persia*, when
 “ they shall hear that without any necessity, you are going about to extinguish the hopes of
 “ one of the greatest Monarchies in the world? “ You believe then, replied *Varanez* with
 “ some disturbance, that ’tis in vain to contest with a happy Rival. If it be so, you never
 “ were in love, and I will be so far from following your advice, that I declare to you I am
 “ resolved to dispute the possession of *Rosamond* to the last drop of my blood. “ I cannot tell,
 “ coldly replied *Agathyrus*, whether that Princess intends to bequeath her self to the most
 “ valiant of her adorers: But this I know that they who assail the life of *Pharamond*, will
 “ most sensibly disoblige her, and that she would willingly that *Varanez*, whom she esteems
 “ above all the Princes that environ her, would retire from an association that only fights to
 “ keep her in prison. She shall affirm to your face whatever I have said, and when that in-
 “ comparable person shall explain her own meaning, you will hear questionless with more
 “ patience the same which I have told you, it may be a little too home. I hope Sir you will
 “ pardon me this little heat, which may perhaps have given you distaste. For besides that
 “ justice urged me to speak in this manner, I may excuse the liberty which I have taken, by
 “ declaring that I have a passionate love for your person, and that my destiny depends abso-
 “ lutely upon yours. “ Yes Sir, added he blushing, I shall be happy if you please, and in the
 “ honour to which you may advance me, I shall find those advantages which——
 “ Never talk of advantages, replied *Varanez* interrupting him, but be assured without any
 “ regard to the promises you seem to make me, I shall do for your satisfaction all those things
 “ that lye in my power. But if to establish your felicity, there is no other way for me but
 “ to part from the Queen of the *Cimbrians*, I cannot tell whether I shall be so good a Friend
 “ as to do it; or whether it will be possible for me to labour for your happiness to the
 “ prejudice of my own repose as long as I live. I should be very unjust, answered the King
 “ of the *Sarmatians*, should I go about to build my content upon your misfortunes. But, Sir,
 “ before I make you a relation wherein you will see what you have to hope or fear as well as I, let
 “ us visit the *Cimbrian* Queen, and when she has discovered to you the real thoughts of her Soul,
 “ you may take up a resolution conformable to your fortune, and the grandeur of your cou-
 “ rage.

The Prince of *Persia*, who was all fire and love, could not without disturbance hearken to what the King of the *Sarmatians* had said: and you may assure your self he did not over patiently endure the pains which that Prince had taken to shew him a way which he had so little disposition to follow. However, he kept his indignation concealed, notwithstanding his quarrelsome and contradictory humour; and he had so much moderation as not to break forth in language against an illustrious personage to whom he knew his Father was most signally obliged; and to whom he was also himself beholding for a potent reinforcement: for in truth, *Agathyrus*, besides the *Sarmatians*, had at his disposal the *Huns* and the *Lombards*, by reason of the great share that *Agelmond* and *Balamir* had in the interests of *Gilismene* and *Agione*; so that *Varanez* observing that that concatenation of friendship rendred him considerable in the league, and being moreover satisfied of *Agathyrus*’s good intentions toward him, he consented without reluctance to go along with him to visit *Rosamond*. But it was not so much out of any design to change his mind, as to shew himself complaisant toward the King of the *Sarmatians*, but more especially to gratify himself with the sight of his beloved object; he found *Martian* in company with the the *Cimbrian* Princess: however, the presence of a person so prudent, and so much his Friend, did not hinder him from speaking his mind, so soon as they had finished those ceremonies which proceed from a regulated knowledge among persons of the highest degree: I make no question, Madam, said he, but the King of the *Sarmatians* told me the truth, when he gave me to understand that you would not be offended to see *Varanez* among the number of your slaves. Truly, answered she, I should be very glad that you were not of my Enemies side, and that such a Prince as you, whom I really esteem, and for whom I still desire to preserve the same respect, would not strengthen the chains that hold me in prison. Do you take one of the fairest Cities in Europe, Madam, replied the Prince, to be a prison; a City wherein you are attended and adored by so many great and potent Princes? I see, replied *Rosamond*, that we are not agreed what Title to give *Cologne*: but for my part I cannot tell by what other name to distinguish a place, from whence I would fain depart, but that I am detained by force. You might have your full liberty, replied *Varanez*, but that they fear you will make use of it in
 favour

favour of the King of the Franks. But after all this, added he, transported by his love, and a sentiment of that pride which was natural to him; What is there that you see in the person of Pharamond, that you may not meet with in the person of Varanez: And as for the Fortune of either, are you so prepossessed in favour of my Rival, not to see the difference between the Empire of Persia, and the Kingdom of Franconia? I know the difference very well, replied she, with a haughty air; for though all the world were ignorant what degree the Kings of Persia hold in the world, you have told me so often your self, that I cannot but bear it in mind.

Agathyrus and Marcian, being willing to pacify a dispute that began to grow so sharp, were about to have spoken: But Rosamond not giving them time; "Sir, continued she, "addressing her self to Varanez; when to that Franconia, you shall see those fair and noble "Provinces joyned, which are comprehended under the name of Gallia, I believe the Prince "that reigns over that Extent of ground, will have no great cause to complain of his fortune. Especially, replied Agathyrus, to appease Rosamond, that great Kingdom being "in a flourishing condition, and in one of the most fertile Situations of the world. And "being governed, added Martian, by such a Prince as Pharamond. Varanez, upon that, blushing for madness, he beheld Marcian and Agathyrus with an air that sensibly reviled them; yet being resolved not to shew his passion, though they were never so much prepossessed to the advantage of his Enemy, he departed, carrying a fire in his Countenance, that displayed the agitation of his soul. The King of the Sarmatians and the Lover of Pulcheria immediately followed him, not only to moderate his transportation, but also because they read in Rosamond's fair eyes, how much she would take it in good part, if they should take the pains to temper the fierce spirit of that Prince, in regard the power of his Party bore such a sway to encline the whole League to Peace, or continue the War. The King of the Sarmatians first accosting him, in regard he had most reason to preserve his Friendship: "Sir, said he, I find that my freedom of speech has given you distaste; but "besides that we desire to put a stop to the Repentment of that fair Princess whom you so "admire, yet have so highly incensed, we thought it a piece of treachery to flatter you "with a poor spirited compliance, at such a time when your Repose and Honour lay at "stake. This is not all, added Marcian, for I believe we shall not long have the disposal "of the Troops that are come from Constantinople; for I understand that the Court of "Theodosius is divided into different Factions, and that the Imperial Family is very much "disunited within it self. How deeply soever Varanez was perplexed with the thoughts of his Love and Jealousie, he could not forbear being surprized at this news, nor from making enquiry into some particulars: So that Marcian resuming the discourse: "That "which I have been inform'd, said he, appears so unlikely, that I beg you to dispence with "me from giving you any farther account, till I am better satisfied by a person who is come "to me on the behalf of Pulcheria. But, Sir, so long as we have so brave an Army under "our Command, I would fain that so great a Prince as you, would be a means to restore "Peace to Europe, to set so many fair Princesses at liberty, and to give them their freedom "entire to dispose of their affections as they themselves shall think most proper, according "to their own Inclinations. This would be a piece of Generosity that would spread far "and near, and worthy such a Prince as Varanez: and yet I fear that instead of pretending "to that Honour, you will suffer your self to be lead astray, by maintaining a Party, whose "Cause is too unjust to be protected by Heaven. And indeed, was it ever seen, that men; "without any pretence of Right, should detain in prison those very Ladies whom they "pretend to love, as they do here in Cologne? And with what Countenance can we admit "of a Reception into a Town, where so many fair and Illustrious Ladies are confined under so severe a Restraint. In the mean time, Rosamond has requested me to tell the King "of Suevia roundly of his Injustice, and to speak to him in the behalf of the King of the "Franks; but if he refuses me that which of necessity you see he ought not to deny me, "shall I be obliged to venture my life for the Interest of his passions? Besides, you may easily perceive that this League is every moment likely to be dissolved, through the divisions that begin to arise between the Captains that are all for Tyrannical proceedings, and "those other Princes who are for Moderation. I will say no more, added he, that I may "not press too far upon the impatience of such a friend as Varanez: And I believe you are "willing I should leave you, having undertaken to discharge my Commission to the King "of Suevia, while you, for your part, are going to take such resolutions from your great "Courage, which shall be no less honourable than the most famous Victory that ever you "obtained.

Martian being thus parted from Varanez without expecting any answer, went to the King

of *Suevia* but could not find him, because he was gone to visit the Princess *Polixena*, whom he would not suffer to rest one minute hardly in quiet. So soon as he was entred into that fair Princess's Chamber, he consulted her eyes, and labouring to sweeten the fierceness of his own, he began a discourse of the following nature, not being able altogether to bow his humour to that respectful manner of speaking and acting, which is usual to persons that know how to love. *Well Madam*, said he, *shall I find you in the same obstinacy which I met with yesterday? Have you not considered that Viridomar whom you esteem so highly, is a Rebel, odious to his King to his Parents and to his Country? In whose embraces I shall see you suddenly in a destitute condition, wandring from Province to Province without either refuge or subsistence? And yet Madam, you prefer him as miserable as he is and fortuneless, to a Prince that offers you a Crown, and who adores you notwithstanding your injustice and your imbecility. Speak Madam, speak, but before you explain your mind remember, that upon your answer depends all the repose or calamity of your life. For in short, if you drive me to a despair that may change my love into hatred, I shall look upon you no otherwise than as the Sister of Pharamond, that is to say, as a person upon whom I shall only take pleasure, to satisfy my aversion and revenge.*

He accompanied these words with an Air sufficiently conformable to his threatening language, when the generous *Polixena* beholding him with a look, which as modest as she was demonstrated a most manly constancy, *Sir*, said she with a stern utterance, *I have told you already that I am not the mistress of my own will, of which the King of the Franks has the entire and sole disposal. Nevertheless to make you a more exact protestation, I declare to you that for the Father of Albisinda and Viridomar, I shall always preserve that respect which is due to his rank and age: But on the other side I shall never have that sort of affection for him which he insists upon.* Then you design that for your beloved *Viridomar*, replied he with a rage which he labour'd to dissimble. But without studying much to tell you, that a perfidious fellow that has betrayed me, may as well prove unfaithful to you, I will as sincerely unfold my own thoughts to you as you have done to me. Know then that I will make use of the power which is in my hands, to hinder you from giving your hand to *Viridomar*, and to obstruct your idle intentions, there is no extremity to which I am not able to carry my resentment. And in a word, I will not spare either Sword or poyson to satisfy my self and injure you: and by my actions past you may guess, whether I am a person so easily wrought upon, to quit the resolutions I have once taken.

Those words were attended with a dreadful look; but the undaunted Princess instead of being terrified, *I am descended from a family, replied she with a regardless coldness, and an extraordinary Majesty, that is sufficiently acquainted with your violent proceedings, and how far your indignations can reach, but as you never saw any of my relations that were ever frightened with menaces or dangers, it may be you will find in Polixena a heart, not unworthy the Royal blood from which she is descended. Persons of my Sex have their opportunities to signalize their courage, and if their modesty does not permit them to seek honour in Arms, they may meet with it elsewhere, and it suffices for them that they know to look death in the face, rather than change their resolutions, when they are assured they cannot do it with justice.* We shall suddenly see, replied he with a cruel jealousy, how far that constancy of yours will extend, for when I have advised with *Briomer*, it may be you may find that since I cannot move your love, I may cause my self to be feared, notwithstanding that generosity which you affect to shew, now that you see no danger near.

Having concluded these words he flung out of the Chamber in such a heat, that he had not time to take notice that at the name of *Briomer* *Polixena* changed colour, not so much however out of any apprehension that concern'd her, as out of the antipathy which for the sake of her Brother's interest she had against a Villain, who not long before had conspir'd the death of so great a Prince.

So soon as the violent King of *Suevia* was come to his own Apartment, he sent to seek out *Briomer*, and while he expected him with an extraordinary impatience, *Martian* came to see him, and after the first ceremonies of their complements were over, he spoke in *Rosamond's* name on the behalf of the Princess of the *Franks*. *Sir*, said he, *I believe that Polixena cannot be safer in the house where you have enclosed her up, than if she had as much liberty as is permitted to persons of her rank and Sex who are in this City. For which reason all the Princesses and particularly the Cimbrian, have desired me that I would make it their request to you that——* *Sir*, (said the King interrupting him, with an extraordinary disturbance in his countenance) before you make an end of what I understand but too well already, I would fain know whether *Rosamond* have given you the trouble, to come to exact from me that which she may well believe I cannot grant her, or whether it be to oblige

“oblige *Pharamond*, whom I look upon as the most hateful of all my enemies.

That kind of answer displeas'd *Martian*, but in regard he was a person of great moderation, and one that desired to mediate successfully for *Polixena*, he was so far from showing his resentment that he only made this reply. Sir, said he, *you think the intentions of Rosamond to be very scanty, as if it were such a strange thing to see them engaged, for the interests of a person of the same Sex, of equal rank and merit little different. Those noble qualities which you applaud in Polixena, replied the King of Suevia, shall not hinder me from keeping her in that place where she is guarded by my order, if you have no other reasons for what you desire of me. When you have told me the arguments that move you to treat that Princess so unworthily as you do, replied Martian somewhat nettled, I may perhaps in my turn tell you more of my mind, I hate Polixena, replied he blushing, because she is the Sister of Pharamond. And for the same cause, answered Martian, Rosamond loves the Princess of the Franks, in regard that Pharamond is a friend and ally of the King of the Cimbrians. But Sir, (added he very hastily, hearing that some persons were come to attend the Suevian King) I did not believe you would have refused me that, which indeed you ought not to have given me an occasion to require, and I thought you would have considered that it is the Princess of the Cimbrians that sent me to request you, and that it is the Lieutenant of the Emperour Theodosius that makes the request.*

He took his leave having spoken these words, contrary to his accustomed moderation, and few minutes after *Briomer* succeeding him, by his only presence calm'd all the disturbances of the *Suevian King*. He embraced the *Cimbrian* with all the demonstrations of amity which he was able to testify, and addressing his speech to him, *My dear Briomer, said he, I must confess you are come in season according to my wishes. For indeed I had an extraordinary impatience, to have your advice upon a resolution which I have taken, finding my self at a strange loss.* Thereupon he repeated to him all that *Martian* had said, and then continuing his discourse, “You see, *added he*, to what an extremity I am reduced, either I must deprive my self of the means of enjoying *Polixena's* company, or else I must break with *Rosamond* and *Martian*, who you know have a great strength and much credit in our association. “I did verily believe Sir, *answered the Cimbrian*, that you would not be well pleas'd with *Martian's* visit: I never lik'd the disposition of that man, and to speak ingenuously 'twas my self that sent in word, that there was company stay'd to speak with your Majesty, on purpose to free you from his tiresome converse: But now Sir, I cannot see why you should stand to consider what you have to do, for in my opinion you may give *Polixena* the liberty which the other Princesses enjoy, without any disappointment or injury to the design you have in hand. “How *Briomer, replied the Suevian King in a surprise*, can you give me the counsel so contrary to my own inclinations and your repose? “However, *answered he*, I must presume to tell you, that you have no other way to take but that: For if your Majesty obstinately refuse to grant *Rosamond* her request, she may not only cause a mutiny in the Army, but also have a plausible pretence to render you odious to the inhabitants of *Cologne*, with whom it absolutely behoves you to keep a fair correspondence. But *replied the passionate King*, when the greatest part of the Princes behold *Polixena*, what if they should become my Rivals, and as they are in better esteem than I, should lay new obstacles in the way of my pretensions. Then Sir, *replied the Cimbrian*, you may lock her up in the same place again, and *Briomer* that brought her out of *Pharamond's* Camp, dares still engage his word, without being suspected by your Majesty to make you the Master of *Polixena's* destiny whenever you please. “Would to God, *replied the King sighing*, that I could really dispose of the fortune of that enemy of mine, though I purchas'd the means to do it with a part of my dominions.

After these words he paused a while, and then stedfastly fixing his eyes upon *Briomer's* face, “What shall we do, *cry'd he*, so to manage the differing judgments that are among us, that we preserve the authority which we have hitherto maintained? Speak, *Briomer*, speak I conjure you, you know the trouble into which this strange passion has plunged me, succour me then at a time when your assistance is so needful, for you know I have no other person faithful to me in the world to confer withal. Besides I have always found in you a quick apprehension and a daring courage, together with a soul free from faintness or scruple. In short, you have the qualities to be desired in a friend, to whom a King would commit the management of his fortune; so that I question not but you will give me advice beyond all the reflections I have made, and that you will tell me precisely by which way I shall carry my self both toward the Princesses, and toward the Captains of those Troops that compose our League. “Sir, *answered Briomer with many marks of satisfaction in his countenance*, there is no necessity for me to study an answer to what your Majesty demands. In the first place I must tell you, it is absolutely necessary for you to make sure

of *Varanez*, for besides that the valour of that Prince will be no mean assistance to us, it is most certain that the *Constantinopolitan Army* depend chiefly upon his directions. In the mean time I am informed by those persons, which I continually gain among the creatures of the most considerable Princes, that *Varanez* is not well satisfied with the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, that he is very much sollicited to abandon our interests, so that in regard he is not a person of much constancy, having already forgot *Athanaïs* for *Rosamond*, he may change again and leave us, when we have most need of his Arm and his forces: So that Sir, it being my judgment that you ought to preserve his friendship, your business is to flatter his love and feed his haughty humour. You may make a seeming engagement to him to assure him of *Rosamond*, you may promise him the full possession of her, not only because he is superiour in all things to the rest of his Rivals, but because you should take it for a great happiness to advance to the Throne of *Persia*, a Princess, which was recommended to your care by your dying friend. When this is done, who can hinder you from nourishing the same hopes in the rest of *Rosamond's* Suitors, grounding your promises variously according to the different humours of those Princes to whom you make them? When you speak to *Gondioch*, after you have extolled his valour and the victories he has obtained over the *Romans*, you may represent to him how much he ought to be preferred, and that it cannot be otherwise, in regard that he being the first that had the honour to serve the *Cimbrian* Princess, it would be an injustice for him to be turned back from the race which he had always run, while later Princes were suffered to get before him. You will have yet less trouble to Cajole the King of the *Herules*, to whom it will be sufficient to make a protestation, that that correspondence of thought and judgment that has always been between you will never permit you to forsake his interests. As for *Arderic*, you must court him upon the score of his virtue, wherein as he thinks he excels the rest of his Rivals, you may easily persuade him that being so well known to *Rosamond* and you, he has no reason to fear being supplanted by his Competitors, who have less share in yours and the esteem of a Princess whom he courts. Then you may tell *Gondioch* and the Kings of the *Herules* and *Gepides*, that you intend vigorously to oppose the pretensions of *Varanez*, coveting rather a confederate in *Germany*, than in a Country whence you can never expect assistance. In the mean time without being a slave to your promises, you may sacrifice those Princes to your particular interests, at all times that fortune shall give you an advantage to put them upon the hazard of their lives. You know, replied the *Suevian King*, that I am not so simple to scruple the following your counsel, for indeed I may assure you that you have advised me to nothing which I had not resolved upon before. But *Briomer*, I am at a greater loss how to carry my self toward three Princesses, who have a strange influence upon the several parties of our league, As to what concerns *Rosamond*, replied the *Cimbrian*, you must never stand to consider but make your self absolute Master of her fortune, and delay her marriage as much as in you lies, to the end you may keep the several Princes who are in hopes the longer in suspense. By *Bellamira's* means you may draw off *Honorius* to your party, as you have already the Emperour of *Constantinople*, where you have all the refuge and sanctuary you can desire, if the success of your affairs should fall out contrary to your expectation. But *Briomer*, cried the enamoured Prince with a blush, How shall I do to mollifie the Sister of *Pharamond*? When complaisance and kindness prove in vain, replied the *Cimbrian*, you have then the liberty to proceed in a different manner, not following the example of young Lovers, that vex themselves with plaints and sighs, but by acting like a King, who having a desire has also the power to satisfy himself, being Master of the means to qualifie the most violent fires that burn within him.

The King of *Suevia* listned to this discourse with an extraordinary attention, and making afterwards some reflections upon *Polixena's* disposition and his own, which he perceived to be flattered by a pernicious confidence, You speak reason *Briomer*, said he, and I am already ashamed of the respect which I have shewn to a person, that has rendred her self so unworthy of it, by a behaviour too injurious to be endured. I will alter my manner of proceeding, and I will use the haughty *Polixena* not only as the Sister of my most irreconcilable enemy, but as a slave that ought to be entirely at my disposal. And therefore since we have resolved what course to take, let us hasten to put our results in execution, and I desire you not to omit any thing that may bring us to a prosperous conclusion of what we have design'd together. You would do well in my opinion, replied the *Cimbrian*, to send and make some obliging overtures to *Honorius*, whose ally you have been for a long time, and to promise him the possession of *Bellamira*, if he will but be pleased to trust himself with his forces, in a City where he may enjoy the company of that Princess every day. 'Tis time also that you should give out orders for a general Muster, not only because it is necessary to know in what condition your Army is, but that the inhabitants of *Cologne* may be the more encouraged to continue faithful to your side. You see Sir, how important it is for you to be absolut

in Agrippina, for if a division should happen, they may easily be induced to open their Gates to the enemy. I am very glad, replied the Suevoian King, to find that you and I so well agree in our opinions. To-morrow I will see Varanez, and the most considerable Chiefs of our party, and it may be I shall without much trouble persuade them to approve our resolutions, I mean those only which it is convenient for me to make known: For you must not think me so imprudent to discover all. In the mean time because you think it fitting, and for that there is such an obstinate bustle about it, I will give Polixena the same liberty which the other Princesses enjoy. But Briomer, added he blushing all of a sudden, if by so doing I chance to procure my self a formidable Rival among the Princes of the League, you promise me to return the person whom I love into my own power again. 'Tis only Sir because you are in love, coldly replied the Cimbrian, that you suspect Briomer's ingenuity, and that you have forgot the proofs which he has continually given you thereof upon all occasions, when you had otherwise little likelihood of success. In a word Sir, without being obliged to convey them away by force into any other place, or using any other contrivances, 'tis but telling the Princesses that the people begin to murmur against them, and that the inhabitants and Soldiers look upon them as the cause of the war, and that therefore it is convenient they should have a stronger guard for their own security. And then Sir, which of the Princes can better pretend than you, to chuse such Soldiers as you shall think convenient to be entrusted with a treasure so inestimable? You may be sure that none of Rosamond's Lovers will be offended at it, for they looking upon one another with an eye of suspicion, every one of them will be more ready to injure his Rival, than to allow him so great a privilege. Besides there is not one that does not believe you to be her friend and an enemy of Pharamond, so that you need not doubt but they will all agree to give your Majesty that precedency, which will easily make you Master of the fortune of the Princesses. There is an apparent probability in what you say, replied the King of Suevia, but who is there that I can confide in at such a nice conjuncture as this, unless I rely upon my faithful Briomer? For besides that for the good of the whole party, you are obliged to look after all things, the fortifications, the Arms, the provisions, the Engines of war, perhaps you are not so well beloved by the rest, because you are not guilty of those general condescendencies, which are usually accompanied with effeminacy and cowardise.

He had no sooner concluded those words, but he began to consider who was the fittest among all the chief Commanders, to be entrusted with an employment of so great a consequence, and after he had studied a while, "I cannot think of any but the Prince of the Burgundians, said he, whom I can better trust upon such a ticklish occasion, for besides that he has as much courage as such a charge can require, his affection for Albisinda whom I will promise him, will be security enough for Polixena and Rosamond. "But Sir, replied the suspicious Briomer, can you away with that humour which they call virtue in Gondemar? or do you think that he will answer your expectations? 'Tis for the reputation of that Prince that I approve the choice I have made, and until you can find me out another more likely to second my intentions, I shall not alter my thoughts in reference to the charge, which I have resolved to trust to Gondemar's fidelity. "But Briomer, added he, as far as I see you do not take notice that we are not yet at the end of our designs, for there is an absolute necessity for me to get Viridomar into my possession, to the end I may have him within my reach, and that I may declare him a Rebel, and unworthy to succeed before the most considerable of the Suedish Nobility. "I must confess, replied the Cimbrian with a mischievous joy, I have not yet spoken of the punishment which the Prince deserves, but Sir, it was not out of any neglect of your concerns, but on the contrary because I was persuaded that Viridomar being revolted to your Majesties enemies, has condemned himself sufficiently to the punishment which you shall inflict, without observing any formalities in reference to a crime which he has perpetrated in the face of the world. However, said he, you must not speak a word to any of Viridomar's accomplices, for fear of losing an opportunity to entrap him.†

While the King of Suevia and Briomer were thus complotting mischief, the enamoured Sunnon spent his time with the penfive Amalazombas. Balsmir entertained the Princess of the Lombards, and Rosamond was perplexed with the importunities of Gondioch, Godegesile, and Arderic. As for Varanez he, being naturally impatient and fiery, ponder'd with vexation upon what the Cimbrian Princess, the King of the Sarmatians and Mariam had said to him, and not enduring they should all speak for Pharamond, "Yes, yes, cried he walking alone in his Chamber, I will follow the counsel which you give me, I will take a resolution worthy of Varanez, rather I will not delay one moment to execute the resolution which I have already taken. Your Pharamond cannot forget upon what terms we parted, upon the

“the Enterview between *Theon* and *Melufina*; and though he be so happy to contest with me
 “in the heart of a Princess prepossessed in favour of him, perhaps he may not always be
 “so fortunate, but that he may be forced to yield in Combat; to which I will not chal-
 “lenge him, but with Arms alike, and equal advantages.

Upon those words suffering himself to be hurried away by the impetuosity of his humour, he was about to call *Mitrancs* to send him away with a Trumpet to the Camp of the *Franks*, when the King of *Suevia*, who was in a perpetual motion, came to the Prince for his approbation of the general muster which he and *Briomer* had agreed upon; *Varanez* believing it would be a means to enliven the league, consented immediately, and notwithstanding the eager desire which he had to fight *Pharamond*, he promised to be at the Rendezvous in the head of all his forces under his command. The King of *Suevia* had no sooner received that answer, but he visited *Gondioch*, *Godegesilus*, *Ardaric* and *Martian* with the same success. Then he went to those other Princes that had not brought along with them such numerous Armies as the King of the *Huns*, the King of the *Lombards*, *Agathyrfus*, the Prince of the *Saxons*, and the new *Balamir*, and many other Captains who were sufficiently considerable to be admitted into their consultations. While he thus employed himself, *Briomer* made it his chief business to consider of a fit person to send as an Envoy to offer *Bellamira* to *Honorius*, provided he would change his party; he endeavoured to debauch the chief Officers of the *Suevian* Army, to give their consent to declare *Viridommar* unworthy to succeed his Father: but as for the order which they had agreed upon, to give *Bellamira* the same liberty which the other Princesses had, *Briomer* would by no means meddle with it, whether it were that he looked upon the Princess of the *Franks* as the Sister of *Pharamond*, or that he had a natural reluctance to do her any kindness, was best known to himself. Therefore that he might rid himself of that which she esteemed so great a trouble, he impowered *Chilric*, Captain of the King of *Suzvia*'s Guards, to give the Princess that freedom which she was allowed, and gave him likewise a commission to attend the Emperour of the *Romans*, esteeming him the most proper person for that employment. Though it was not possible for him to go to the Camp of the King of the *Franks* till such time as the Muster was over, not only for that he was to serve his Master at such a time when his Army was to appear in its greatest splendour, but that being to go along with certain Princes that were to visit *Pharamond*, he had the better opportunity to observe their behaviour, and to take notice of their very words and looks.

The next day there was nothing to be heard but the sound of a thousand warlike instruments, varying according to the variety of those Nations that were united against the King of the *Franks*. In all parts the Officers were to be seen running and riding about, some exercising the Soldiers, while others took a view of the Arms and Horses, others of the Engines of War. They sent to know whether the Princesses would be pleased to see the Army drawn up in Battalia, but *Rosamond*, *Bellamira* and *Polyxena* absolutely refused to go; not judging it a delightful object for them to see such a Muster of their Enemies: *Amalzontha*, *Albifinda*, *Cleomira* and *Blesinda*, whose interests were little different, return'd the same answer; and *Agione* would not forsake the company of those most incomparable persons, not so much out of any engagement that she had to be of *Pharamond*'s side, as out of a meer motion of tenderness and Generosity.

Varanez, *Gondioch*, *Godegesilus* and *Humbert* were not a little mad at the refusal which they took to be a slight of their Dignity, so that they forbore not to complain of it in publick, and took it to be a strange contempt, though it were no more than they expected. The King of *Suevia* more severely nettled, sent for *Albifinda* to his Quarters, and after he had loaded her with all the reproaches that his rage could dictate to his resentment, he commanded her with a sharp austerity, not to stir out of an Apartment which he had allotted her in his own Lodgings, to revenge himself of the pretended provocation that she had given him, by depriving her of the company of her illustrious Friends. On the other side, he permitted *Condemar* and *Humbert* to visit her apart, making a semblance to them as if he kept her as the reward of those services which he expected from them. The news of *Albifinda*'s new misfortune was no sooner divulged in *Cologne*, but the Princesses were extremely griev'd, and being no less afraid of the violent humour of the King of *Suevia*, they offered to be Spectators of the Muster, provided they might enjoy the liberty of their Friend. The King of *Suevia* would yield neither to the one nor the other, obstinately refusing to hearken to the propositions of *Rosamond* and *Bellamira*, rightly judging that the thoughts of those Princesses were not conformable to his intentions. Moreover, because he believed that such a denial would stand him in good stead to purchase the good will of the King of the *Easternes*, and the Brother of *Gondioch*, he went to visit those two Princesses

before he rode forth to the Army; and coming to *Humbert*, after the first complements were passed between them, *Sir*, said he, *I know the affection which you have for Albinde, and because I would not have her prepossessed in favour of Pharamond's Brother, I thought it convenient to keep her apart from the company of those persons that maintain'd Marcomir's interests to your prejudice. Is it possible*, replied the enamoured *Humbert*, with many marks of joy in his face, *that you should for my sake refuse to restore her to the fair Princesses that desired her liberty? You are not to question it*, replied the King, *and farther I intend you shall have those advantages by my alliance which you never expected. You know that Viridomar has rendered himself unworthy to succeed me in the Kingdom, being revolted to the enemy; so that as the Husband of Albinde, I intend you the right of inheritance to my Crown after my decease, and to enjoy that Throne where Viridomar should have sat; that rebellious Son that menaces his rebellious Sword at his Father's Breast. However, not to flatter you*, replied he with a fierce countenance, *I declare that you are obliged to use all your endeavours, not only to revenge me of a Monster that I abhor, but to free your self from a Rival who is a continual plague to those Territories of which I design to leave you the peaceable possession. But, Sir*, answered the astonished *Humbert*, *would you have me forget that Viridomar is your Son, and that he is the Brother of——* “*How*, replied the violent King, interrupting him, *do you believe that I can*

“*look upon a Friend of Pharamond as my Son; a Lover of Polixena, a piece of Perfidiousness, that fights against his Father, and one that I intend to sacrifice to my just Resentment? I would not require your assistance, if I thought I could prevent you, and meet that Traitor, whom I would cut in a thousand pieces; for that indignation that animates me, would easily supply the weakness of my Age. And therefore, never study for the matter, quickly declare your self; either renounce my Alliance, or be an Enemy to my Enemies. Yes Viridomar is my Enemy, a dangerous Enemy, an irreconcilable Enemy, and in a word, an Enemy more odious than Pharamond. I cannot think you are surprized to hear me thus express my self; for, questionless, you know, the hate of Parents turns to an antipathy as implacable as their affection was tender before.*

Upon those words he beheld *Humbert* with a manifest open-heartedness: And to touch the young Prince the more deeply to the quick, being yet in love, and full of hope; “*Sir*, said he, *with a low voice*, *does the report of Viridomar's Valour fright you into a Renunciation of your pretensions to Albinde, which you cannot well preserve, but by the death of that Traitor that seeks my life? For he looks upon me as the Obstacle that crosses his intentions of marrying the Sister of Pharamond, and of giving the Princess, which I design for the King of the *Baïerns*, to Marcomir. Is it possible*, replied *Humbert*, *that you should put such an unkind Interpretation upon my words, as to think Humbert guilty of Cowardice; I am sure you never found me so: and I will make it evident in a short time, that I am not unworthy those Royal promises which you have made me. Yes, Sir, I will challenge Viridomar, since it is your desire, and what my Love commands me.*

The King of the *Suevians*, over-joyed with that Answer, told *Humbert*, that he never questioned the greatness of his Courage. And then, to fix him in the resolution which he had already inspired into him: “*Do not think*, said he, *however, that I put you upon a necessity of listening to the interest of your Passions; or to the Courage that prompts you to fight for a Prince, who has the sole disposal of Albinde; For things of this nature are to be left at liberty, there being seldom good success where there is Constraint, Consider therefore what you have to do, that I may know how to deal with Gondemar. You know his Valour, you are not ignorant that he loves Albinde; and in regard that not being Heir to a Crown, as he is in hopes of the Scepter of *Suevia* by the Marriage of Albinde, you may well believe he will be glad to accept those Offers which I have made to you. Oh, Sir*, replied *Humbert*, *with an extraordinary disturbance in his Countenance*, *wherefore should you prefer my Rival before me? What actions of mine has created any suspicions in you to my prejudice? Forbear them, I beseech you*, replied he, *with a passionate vehemence, and all the marks of fierceness in his looks; and be assured that I will either lose my life, or be the death of Viridomar, whom I abhor, because you hate him; and because he loves Marcomir.*

The King of the *Suedes* transported at those last words: “*Sir*, said he, *since I perceive you have taken so Generous a resolution, and so worthy your pretensions, my business must be to stay the Prince of the Burgundians in Cologne, by giving him some Employment, while we attack the Franks. For besides the Honour he would gain, had he that liberty, you may well guess that he has the same design that you have, and that he may prevent you, and put me to trouble, when he shall demand of me the Guerdon of those*

“ Noble Actions, with which I should be more glad to gratifie the Ventures of your Courage.”

The Lover of *Albifinda* could not but be sensible of a double satisfaction, to see that at the same time that the King of *Suevia* went about to advance his hopes, he was no less zealous to ruin *Gondemar's*, a formidable Rival; who besides his Merit and fair Reputation, had the advantage to be of the same side with the *Basterns*. In so much, that not being Master of the joys which he felt: *Ab, Sir*, cryed he, *how apparent is your goodness! Of how large an extent it is! How happy shall I be, if your Intentions have that success which I have reason to promise my self from a Prudence like yours! How much shall I be obliged to your Majesty to the last gasp, though in satisfaction of your revenge upon Viridomar, I should lose that life which you labour to render so fortunate. For Heaven's sake*, replied the *Suevian King*, with an appearing Generosity, *let us not lose in Complements the time which we may more profitably employ; but permit me to take my leave, to the end I may go and persuade the Burgundian Prince to accept of a Trust, which your Interest will not suffer him to refuse.*

Thereupon the King of *Suevia* went to seek out *Gondemar*; but it was the least of his thoughts to acquit himself of the promise he had made, or to act for the King of the *Basterns*, the violent Inclination which he had for *Polyxena* leading him to the execution of other designs. And therefore, accosting the Prince of the *Burgundians* with a large shew of pretended Friendship, to which the usual Austerity that appeared in his Countenance gave way: “ Generous Prince, *said he*, I come to make you a Proposal, which in all likelihood you cannot but approve of. You know that the chief aim of the *Franks*, the *Cimbrians* and their Allies in making War against us, is only to take from us *Rosamond*, *Belamira* and *Polyxena*; and to that end, they boldly threaten to besiege us. So that we may say, that though the Fortune of those Princesses depends upon us, yet is not our Fortune less tied to theirs: so that there is nothing of greater importance to us, than to keep them under a sure Guard. And therefore among all our great Commanders, I cannot think there is any one more fit to be trusted with so precious a Gage, than the Prince of the *Burgundians*, in whose power it may be to repair the losses we may sustain, should fortune be so cruel as to favour our Enemies. *But, Sir*, answered *Gondemar*, *if the employment be of that importance you speak of, why do you not rather bestow it upon some one of the Kings, who has——* Because that in all our league, replied the King, hastily interrupting him, *there is no King or any other Commander that can better acquit himself than the illustrious Gondemar: for you know that the King of the Lombards, Agathyrus, the Prince of the Saxons, Martian and Balamir are not so much our Friends as to be entrusted with a charge that will render them the arbitrators of peace and war. On the other side, the young King of the Basternes has not sufficient experience for so great an employment: and Varanez, Gondioch, Ardoric and Godegesile will never agree to submit to to one another, so that I cannot pitch upon any person to be preferred before you: for though you are the King of the Burgundians Brother, and may be suspected by his Rivals, your virtue which is in so fair a repute will remove all their suspicions, Besides, in giving you the keeping, not only of the three Princesses already mentioned, but of all the rest, I shall preserve *Albifinda* in my power to bestow upon you, together with the right of succession to a Crown, which is at my disposal through the rebellion of a Traitor that should have worn it after my death.*

Gondemar felt a kind of sweetness in the hopes of an employment which would give him daily opportunities to see and serve *Cleomira*; so that the King of *Suevia* believing that the satisfaction which he observed in his countenance, proceeded from the promise he had made him, “ Yes, Sir, *continued he*, you may be assured of my fidelity in keeping my promise; and in acknowledgment of the double present which you will receive at my hands, I only engage you to let me have the Sister of *Pharamond* in my custody whenever I require her, as a pledge to secure me from an enemy who will be tender how he drives to utmost despair the person who commands his Sister's destiny.

Upon those words the generous *Gondemar* was at a stand, and the King of *Suevia* observing him with an inward vexation, “ Sir, *said he*, do you find any unwillingness to do according to my desire? *Gondemar* unwilling to declare his mind, or to discover his thoughts, “ I confess, *replied he*, that there is one thing which I scruple, that almost persuades me to deny the employment which you offer me as a favour: for, *said he*, with what honour to my self can I stay in *Cologne*, when all the rest of the Soldiers are signaling their valour in the Field? “ I know not whether I may be deceived or no, *replied the Suevian King*, but to tell you the truth, I do not believe I can bestow upon you a more honourable, or more dangerous employment: for you are entrusted with a charge which you are to defend as well against the people of *Agrippina*, who will be apt to move se-

“dition to make themselves Masters of so vast a treasure, as against the most formidable
“Princes of our League, who for ought I know may every moment have designs, to convey
“away their particular Mistresses.

To this argument he added so many others, that *Gondemar* accepted the employment which he had made him hope for, but not so much to obtain *Albisinda* by surrendring up *Polixena*, as to serve those fair and illustrious Ladies that were so unjustly confin'd, and to avoid meeting in the conflict with the Princess *Cleomira's* Brother.

Upon this the King of *Suevia* took his leave of *Gondemar* very well satisfied, not doubting but that Prince in love with *Albisinda* would be true to his interests. On the other side he was highly pleas'd, that he had incens'd the King of the *Basternes* against *Viridomar*, inso-much that he put on a more serene countenance than he was wont to do, all the way he march'd at the head of the principal Officers of his Army and Household, to a large Plain where the Army was to be drawn up in Battalia. The Plain was soon covered with a terrible multitude of Soldiers drawn together from a thousand different Regions, to maintain the unjustest hatred that ever was in the world. The King of the *Huns*, the King of the *Lombards*, *Agathysfus*, the Prince of the *Saxons* and the new *Balamir*, not having forces proportionable to their quality, joyned themselves without command to the Prince of *Persia*; for whose only sake they were engag'd in the League. But though they were nobly mounted and magnificently arm'd, the richness of their ornaments did not so much attract the eyes of the beholders, as the loftiness of their carriage.

The fiery *Varanex* glister'd with an infinite number of precious Stones, wherewith his Helmet, his Cuirass, and his Buckler were enchas'd, and his Steed which was of the famous *Cartbaginian* race, did not badly imitate the pride of his Master, as well in his fieryness as in his prancing. Thirty thousand foot and ten thousand horse all *Greeks*, were under that Prince sent him by *Theodosius*, they were armed with Bows and Arrows, slings and javelins. The *Persian Mitranez*, and *Acreontes* a *Macedonian* Captain, were the two Lieutenant Generals of that Army. Next after him march'd *Martian* with an air worthy the fair reputation which he had won, and the supreme dignity to which he was afterwards advanced. Under him *Licastes* a *Corinthian* commanded ten thousand *Thracians*, renowned for their past services, all pick'd and chosen by the order of *Pulcheria*. The King of *Suevia's* Troops were about forty thousand men, for the most part fierce and well disciplin'd, over which *Cimbrian Briomer*, was the first Lieutenant General, being preferred before *Rodoaldus* a *Suede*, and a person very considerable in his own Nation, as well for his birth as for his courage. Five and thirty thousand *Burgundians*, coming from the parts that lye beyond *Gallia* followed the famous *Gondioch*, and testified by their countenances how great confidence they had in their Prince, so well assist'd by *Gondemar* and *Guntran*.

The generous *Arderic* led fifteen thousand *Alains* and twenty thousand *Gepides*, and though there appeared both love and ambition in his face, yet his carriage shew'd that he knew how to curb those passions within the bounds of reason. *Calisir* a *Gepidian* Prince, and *Volderan* of a very high extraction among the *Alains* were his Lieutenant Generals. Next to him march'd a Soldier, whose meen was quite different from *Arderic's*, I mean the sovre *Godegesile* who commanded forty thousand *Herules*, that were all for blood and booty, being the remainder of *Radagaisus's* formidable power, having for his Lieutenant Generals the fiery *Ricobald* and the bold *Guerules*, Soldiers of an obscure birth, only they had advanced themselves by their courage. The young *Humbert* animated with the fair hopes, which the Father of *Albisinda* had infused into him, brought up the Rear with a most lofty aspect, and was remarkable as well for the magnificence of his Arms, as for thirty thousand *Basternes* that followed him, under the conduct of *Zafron* and *Generic* two experienced commanders. After which was to be seen an infinite number of Carts and Waggons, laden with warlike provisions.

While the Kings of *Huns* and *Lombards*, the illustrious *Agathysfus*, the Prince of the *Saxons* and the valiant *Balamir*, made their observations like great Masters in the art of war, in the midst of those prodigious numbers, *Sunnon* quietly enjoyed the conversation of the Princesses, and having visited *Belamira* and *Polixena*, and received from *Rosamond* such answers, as she thought fit to give him the trouble of carrying to *Pharamond* and *Theobald*, he devoted all the rest of his time that he had to stay in *Cologne*, to converse with the *Turingien* Queen. For her part *Amalaxantha*, who found nothing in the person of that Prince, nor in his behaviour, which was not worthy of a more happy fortune, answer'd him as a real friend, and gave him such advice as she thought was most proper, to restore the tranquillity which he had lost: She conjur'd him to banish from his heart a passion that caus'd all his misfortunes, but her suit was accompanied with a languishment so moving, that it

served only to rivet those Chains the faster which it sought to have unloosed: So that the passion of the enamoured *Sunnon* was not a whit the more abated, when he was constrained to take his leave of *Amalazoniba*, and that he went to retire to the house where *Athanasvic* lodged. The *Turingien* had already received his dispatches and was preparing to be gone, as he did accordingly the next day with the King of the *Huns*, and those other Princes which were resolved to visit *Pharamond's* Camp.

Pharamond had no sooner intelligence of the visit which was intended him, but he resolved to ride forth to meet the illustrious company. However it was but just that *Theodolinda*, the King of the *Cimbrians*, and the Prince of the *Visigoths* should prevent him, and be a little before him in their observance of the King of the *Huns*, wherein they were so diligent that they met him just in the mid way between the two Armies, and in his company the famous *Martian*, *Agelmond*, the King of the *Sarmatians*, the Prince of the *Saxons* and *Balamir*.

Theobald left *Wallia* close by *Theodolinda's* Chariot, that he might have the satisfaction of giving his hand to that fair Princess, and making haste first of all toward that great King whom he had always looked upon as his Father, he accosted him with so much joy and respect, as if he had been his real Father. The King of the *Huns* immediately threw his Arms about his neck, he embraced him with a tenderness unimaginal, he called him a hundred times his dear Son, not being able to say any more. And in a word he expressed by his tears and his Caresses, much more than he could have done by the most eloquent of words.

Afterwards he presented *Balamir* to him, and in regard it was his desire that the two Princes should use all the freedom that might be between themselves, they embraced with all those marks of esteem which they had already one for another. They were about also to have made mutual protestations of an inviolable friendship, when they were interrupted by *Theodolinda*, who impatiently hasted to the extended Arms of a father, whom she had not seen in so long a time before. The King of the *Huns* received that fair Princess with a satisfaction so extraordinary, that it soon appeared in his looks notwithstanding all the care that he took to conceal some part of it. And whereas he found that his incomparable daughter had acquired at *Rome* something of an air which I cannot express, that she had not to that degree of perfection at *Alba Julia*, he had prolonged the pleasure which he took in beholding and caressing her, but that he was willing to give way to *Balamir*, to see and discourse with his Sister. Thereupon *Balamir* and *Theodolinda* accosted each other, and were both overjoyed mutually to behold in each other those perfections, above the descriptions which fame had already made.

But while they are thus awakening in the bottom of their hearts, an affection which a long ignorance had lull'd a sleep, the King their father gave to *Wallia* whom *Theodolinda* had presented to him, all that he could imagine due to his quality, his merit, and the services which he had payed the Princess his Daughter, and expressed himself to him in that obliging manner that it was easily to be discern'd, that he was more inclinable to consider the virtues of the *Visigoth* Prince, than to disrespect him as one that had not a Crown to offer his daughter. On the other side, *Wallia* testified to the Father of his Princess, all the acknowledgment he was capable to return: At what time, *Agelmond*, *Martian*, the King of the *Sarmatians* and the Prince of the *Saxons* came forward, not deeming it so convenient before. *Agathyrsus*, *Aldemar*, *Martian* and *Agelmond* were surpris'd at the beauty of the Princess of the *Huns*, though they lived in a City where they every day beheld the *Rosamonds*, the *Balamiras* and the *Polixenas*, that had filled the world with the loud report of their charms: But if they beheld *Theodolinda* with admiration, she could not chuse but cast a most steadfast look upon them, as much accustomed as she was to behold in *Pharamond's* Army the most lofty Aids, and the goodliest presences of the most accomplished persons living.

At length appeared *Pharamond* himself, and with him *Constantine*, *Thrasimond*, *Taxander*, *Meroveus* and *Genebaud*, while *Constance*, *Viridomar*, *Marcomire* and *Artabure* stayed behind, as well to accompany *Honorius* as to take care of the Princesses and the Army. What can I say more, but that all obliging expressions were made use of, and that there appeared in the countenance and looks of *Pharamond*, an air that attracted the eyes and surpris'd of all that beheld him.

As for the King of the *Cimbrians*, so far was he from appearing less amiable, that being the delight of all the Earth under the name of *Balamir*, it might be then said that men were overjoyed to see the goodly air of his countenance reinforced with a support of dignity, which he had so long wanted.

In a word, all these illustrious persons beheld and discoursed one with another with an

extraordinary esteem; and the King of the *Huns* at length addressing himself to the King of the *Franks*, made excuses for all his Friends, in that they were unfortunately engaged on his Rival's side, and then continuing his speech, "Sir, *said he*, when I have told you that it is love that binds those Princes to the interests of *Varanez*, you cannot be surpris'd at that sort of injustice which may be laid to their charge; and doubtless you will pardon them a fault which they only commit through the force of that tyranny whose power you are not ignorant of. "I have too sad an experience of it, *replyed Pharamond*, *sighing*, and for that reason, Sir, I am more inclinable to pity those persons that are subject to it, than to reserve any resentment against them. Besides, the passion you speak of has always poured upon me whatever it could invent of most cruel, and after I had endured it all from the eyes of the divine *Rosmond*, I cannot wonder it should raise up a new misfortune against me, through the valour of so many great Princes. But if those famous Warriours are so formidable to our party, we hope their virtue may serve as a consolation and Sanctuary to our Princesses, if there be not a greater reason for us to lay aside our fears for their sakes, while they are in a City where the King of the *Huns* and his illustrious Friends are able to afford them protection. "Yes, Sir, *replied he*, I dare undertake that my Friends will not be wanting to shew the Princesses all the offices of kindness which they can expect: for besides that their Generosity commands them, they cannot do otherwise without betraying the party to which they have engag'd themselves. "Nay, I will go a little farther, for I can assure you that the King of the *Sarmatians* and *Martian* use all their endeavours to make *Varanez* more just than he has been hitherto, and to draw him from a league where he is reduced to act all manner of injustice. For my part, you may well believe that I shall omit nothing to procure a general peace. For while the King of the *Cimbrians* and *Theodolinda* are in your Army, and the Princess of the *Lombards* and *Balsmir* at *Cologne*, I can never be able long to endure such a distraction of my affections, and Family.

Those two Princes continued their discourse when *Agelmond* having drawn *Theobald* aside: "Sir, *said he*, with an impatience mixed with love and joy, *Gilismene* is not dead, *Gilismene* lives: but though the King of the *Sarmatians* has promised her in possession to the more than happy *Agelmond*, I should but enjoy a more than imperfect happiness, were I not absolutely perswaded, that the great *Theobald*, who is deeply himself in love, will not think it strange that the claims which bind me to my Princess, have tied me for her sake to *Agathyrfus*'s interests: I know very well, that being infinitely obliged to your—I beseech you, Sir, *modestly replied the King of the Cimbrians*, *interrupting him*, forbear to mention those pretended obligations unless it be to make me acknowledge how far you have outdone me as well in the quality as in the number of your kindnesses: for I never fought for you but against a single enemy of *Agelmond*, but the generous *Agelmond* ventured his life against above a hundred thousand enemies of *Theobald*. But, *continued he*, *not to give the King of the Lombards occasion to continue this discourse*, let us rather talk of our Princesses, than our interests; and as there is none that desires more to share in your concerns, as a real Friend, than my self, suffer me to enquire by what miracle the charming *Gilismene* has been preserv'd to her constant *Agelmond*.

Thereupon the King of the *Lombards* briefly related what the King of the *Sarmatians* had inform'd him of the last adventures of *Gilismene*; and *Theobald* having heard him with delight, *How you overjoy me*, *said he*, *to acquaint me with the calm you enjoy after so many shipwracks as you have escaped; and how thankful should I be to my own destiny, were I so near the having of my content as you.* Truly, Sir, *replyed Agelmond*, *I do not think you are far off, nor can I believe after so many revolutions as have happened, you have so much cause to complain of fortune.* You may speak in her favour, *replyed the Cimbrian King*, *now that she has been so kind to you; but as she is implacable in the hatred she has displayed against me, I am so far from being obliged to the same acknowledgment, that I must accuse her to have taken from me that which I account most dear to me in the world, and at such a time too when there was no obstacle to my happiness.* However, Sir, *replyed Agelmond*, *I believe she will be suddenly reconciled, and make you restitution.* She must either restore me my Princess, *replyed Theobald*, *or deprive me of my life: and indeed had I been convinced that I must have renounced my hopes, I had been dead ere now.* But to tell you the truth, I never yet despaired of the event of the war. At first I may perhaps look with some perplexity upon the Ramparts of *Cologne*, the number of your Forces, and the valour of those Princes that prepare to defend a place which we are resolv'd to assail. I confess also that my perplexities redouble, when I remember that *Agelmond* and his illustrious Friends have taken *Varanez*'s part, yet I recover my hopes again when I consider that nothing ought to be impossible to Lovers, that fight for the liberty of those they love. Besides

you need not question but that we have the prayers of many fair Ladies for our prosperity; and you may well guess, that such an advantage will not permit us to question the success of our enterprises.

While they were thus discoursing, *Martian* and *Thrasimond* withdrew themselves from the company so soon as they could with conveniency do it, and having embraced each other with all the testimonies of kindneses which a long continued friendship could inspire, they fell into a discourse which they knew not how to get out of, in regard it was altogether of their Princesses, *Athenais* and *Pulcheria*. *Martian* inform'd the Prince of the *Vandals* all that he had heard from the Court of *Theodosius*, telling him withal that he expected every day from thence tydings more than ordinary, which he would impart to him so soon as they came. After that they return'd to their company, and entred all together into *Pharamond's* Camp, where they were received at their first approach by *Marcomire* and *Viridomar*. So soon as the Princes were alighted, they went up to the Castle with *Theodolinda*, who was led by the King of the *Sarmatians*, and went to the Queen of the *Visigoths* Apartment, where they found the Queen of *Albion*, the Princess of the *Nemetians*, the Emperour of the *Romans*, the famous *Constance* and the valiant *Artabure*. The discourse which they began was lofty, and conformable to the quality of those illustrious persons, but it was soon interrupted by a Collation which the King of the *Franks* gave them, the magnificence whereof was admired by all the Court, which being ended, they discoursed a while before they retired, and when they came to talk of the Enemies Forces, *Pharamond* promised to shew him the next day a full muster of those Battalions that were to fight for the liberty of the Princesses.

The End of the Second Book of the Twelfth and last Part.

PHARAMOND.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK III.

P*Haramond, Theobald, Viridomar, Wallia, Thrasimond and Marcomire*, with all the military Ceremonies usual in so great a Court, entertained the Kings of the *Huns and Lombards, Agathysus*, the Prince of the *Saxons, Martian* and *Balamir*; and having acquitted themselves with an unwonted Grace, they retired severally to the particular Quarters which were assign'd each. After that, the King of the *Cimbrians* and the *Suevian* Prince went to visit the King of the *Franks*, where they met the enamoured *Sunnon*, whose fancy being wholly taken up with the Idea of *Amalaxontis*, he chose rather to stay with the King his Brother, where he might be free to contemplate upon the Beauties that had charm'd him, than to appear in an assembly where number would but deprive him of those pleasures which are tasted in solitude. Immediately he found himself environed with those Lovers whose Princesses he had been to wait upon; and though *Pharamond, Theobald* and *Viridomar* had a mutual respect for each other, they could not avoid interrupting the contemplative Prince more than once, while they enquired after *Rosamond, Bellamira* and *Polixena*. *Sunnon* satisfied them all three with all the speed that might be: he delivered to the Kings of the *Cimbrians* and *Franks* the answers which he had brought from *Rosamond*. Then while he turn'd toward *Viridomar* to speak of *Albifinda* and *Polixena*, *Theobald* opened the Letter which he received, and read therein the following contents.

The Princess Rosamond to the King of the Cimbrians.

“**Y**Es, Sir, 'tis with more than an ordinary joy that I resign the Scepter of *Bohemia*, since
 “by that loss I gain a treasure to be preferred before the Empire of the earth: but my
 “joys abound, when upon the consideration of Heaven's Bounty, I find *Balamir* to be
 “*Theobald* and that *Rosamond* is the Sister of a Prince whom she had chosen for a Bro-
 “ther from among all the men in the world. I am extremely impatient to see you that I
 “may be able to testify what I write: but, Sir, let not the knowledge of this desire of mine
 “put you upon any precipitate action; but on the contrary, be careful of your own pre-
 “servation upon all occasions, where your honour will dispense with exposing your self to
 “danger. Your fair Princess commands you, and *Rosamond* conjures you with all her
 “might.

“I have sent an answer to the King of the *Franks*, and such a one as I believe will give
 “you no cause to complain. Thereby you see, Sir, that I have not failed to acknowledge
 “you for my Sovereign, and exactly to obey your commands.

Theobald

Theobald had no sooner read those words, but he gave his Letter to *Pharamond*, though the passionate Prince had no power to look upon it till some minutes after: for he had employment enough to peruse over and over again the Letter which he had received himself from his fair Princess, after he had kissed it a thousand times. For he had now no farther cause to complain of *Rosamond*, in regard, that since the change that had befallen the Fortune of *Balamir*, she had made no scruple to remit her former severity; and had testified to the most Illustrious of her Lovers, the marks of her Esteem and Acknowledgment, in a Letter containing these obliging words.

The Princess of the *Cimbrians* to the King of the *Franks*.

I Have writ you these lines by the Command of the King my Brother; but, Sir, you are not forbid to believe any otherwise, but that I obey without reluctancy. I will go a little further, and confess, that how transcendent soever my joys might be for the discovery of *Theobald*, they could not at the same time hinder me from remembering my obligations to the King of the *Franks*. You have been so far from depriving me of a Brother, that you have delivered me of an Enemy. And perhaps it has not been so much a trouble to me to have had so little cause to complain of your Valour, having so much reason to commend your Generosity. This is as much as is permitted me to discover you of my thoughts, since the last Revolution happened. And as for what concerns the prayers which you tell me I should make for your prosperity, you may very well believe, that the greatest share of my good wishes shall be for the good success of a Prince, who exposes his life for the interests of *Theobald*, and the liberty of *Rosamond*.

While the enamoured *Pharamond* was busied in so pleasing an employment, *Theobald* enquired after *Hunnimonda*; and *Sunnon* gave him a full account, as far as he knew. More than that, Sir, added he, I think it my duty to inform you, that the Captain of the King of *Suevia's* Guards is in the Camp, and his business is to *Honorius*. *Honorius* is generous answered *Theobald*: But, continued he, with some disturbance, in regard he is a lover of my divine *Bellamira*, it behoves me to look about me: And therefore, I think it will not be amiss to visit a resigning Rival; to the end, that by my presence I may fortifie a Vertue, whereof he has given me such obliging marks. He went his ways without saying a word more: and he was no sooner got to the Emperor of the *Roman's* Quarters, but the King of the *Franks*, the Prince of *Suevia*, and *Marcian*, who followed them presently after, informed him very earnestly of whatever concerned their Princesses.

Honorius received *Theobald* with all civility, though with a Countenance, wherein it was no difficult thing to discover both trouble and sadness: And after he had done him those Honours which were due to his Rank and Merit, he turned toward a certain Stranger then in the Room; and addressing his speech to him, *Gilric*, said he, we may hold on our discourse before a Prince, to whom I am too much beholding, to conceal from him any thing that concerns the incomparable *Bellamira*. Then tell the King your Master, that I am very unhappy to find, that so divine a Princess will not vouchsafe me her affection, unless I render my self yet more miserable, by drawing her hatred upon me; which I must certainly do, should I accept the proposition which you have made me. And therefore, you may well think, that I shall never change the side that I have taken. But if you could procure me the sight of *Bellamira*, how far should I be indebted to your kindness; or what is there that you may not expect from the acknowledgment of *Honorius*? *Ab Gilric*, added the enamoured *Theobald*, do us the favour, I beseech you, to let us see our Princess. I make no question, sadly replied the Emperor, addressing his speech to the King of the *Cimbrians*, but that we would both desire the same thing, and with the same passion; but alas! it is with different hopes.

Instead of proceeding farther, he sighed; and the generous *Theobald*, being touched with his grief, took his leave of the Emperor; fearing to augment the sorrows of an unfortunate Rival by his presence, while he looked upon him as the Cause of his misfortunes. However, *Gilric* gave *Honorius* to understand, that there was no possibility for him to see *Bellamira*, but upon the conditions which he had propounded; and so quitted his presence, perceiving the disturbances that turmoiled his soul to increase more and more. Nevertheless, he put a constraint upon himself to be at the *Mulier*; but it was rather out of a complaisance

plaisance to *Pharamond*, who had requested his company, than out of any curiosity to behold Shews of that nature, how gay and pompous soever they were. And indeed, there never was any sight so stately, so magnificent, or so formidable, as the Battalions of that vast Army; being drawn up in a wide Plain, which had separated the two Armies some days before. Quite through the whole Body there was to be seen such a fair and surprizing diversity of Arms, Ensigns, Standards, and military Habiliments; such variety of warlike Instruments, such frightful Woods of Pikes and Javelins offered themselves to view, and yet their terrour afforded a delightful and pleasing prospect. But when the confusion, inseparable from such great Bodies, had given way to the order wherein the Officers had ranged the whole Army, the illustrious *Pharamond* appeared with an aspect so fierce and charming, that he attracted the eyes and hearts of all that numerous Multitude. Never was any thing so magnificent as the Coat and Buckler of that Prince; nor were the precious Stones that glittered every where so remarkable, as the workmanship that seem'd to exceed the materials in value. Upon his head he wore a light Headpiece, covered over with a plume that yielded to the breathings of a gentle wind, and was fastened with a knot of large Diamonds in the fore part of the Morrión. His Horses of the right *Mauritanian* breed, was of an *Isabella* colour, with a black Mane that hung down to the ground in curls, and swept the ground: but so lofty, so stately was his Gate, that he seem'd to have a redoublement of pride to find himself only under the curb of *Pharamond*. Upon each hand of the King rode the goodly *Marcomire* and the enamour'd *Sannon*, being followed by twenty thousand *Franks*, fifteen thousand *Sicambres*, and ten thousand *Mursians*, all lusty well disciplin'd, and accustomed to vanquish under their King. They marched under the command of *Genebaud*, *Meroveus*, *Cleomer* and several other Princes and Captains of their several Nation. Their Arms were polished and glittering, their countenances fierce; nor was it a difficult thing to observe the courage that reigned in their countenances. After them marched thirty thousand *Cimbrians* or *Bohemians*, drawn from those Countries that are enclosed by the *Hereynian* Mountains. Their Arms were Bows and Poleaxes, and the boldness that appeared in their looks proceeded from the renown of their past actions, and the confidence which they had in the conduct of their King. That valiant Warriour lead them with an incomparable Grace; nor did the magnificence of his Arms, nor the richness of his Plume add at all to the charming and astonishing air that caused him to be revered by all the world. His fiery Steed of a lovely shape, and the *Sarmatian* Breed, was of a tiger colour, and the foam that covered his Body seem'd to have made new marks. The Prince of *Nomistrata*, the most considerable among the *Cimbrians*, and *Telanor* were Lieutenant Generals to that Army which was followed by twenty thousand *Gauls* that came from the pleasant Provinces that border upon the *Seine* and the *Loire*. Those Troops composed of Archers, Slingers and Javelins, marched with an assurance that became their reputation under the command of *Viridomar*, by the appointment of *Pharamond*, who would not suffer that Prince to be without a command. The Lover of *Polyxena* appeared at the head of his charge, with so many marks of extraordinary valour; that he seem'd to have brought a considerable reinforcement, though he came single, to take part with the *Franks*, and whatever sadness he carried in his heart, he was nevertheless most magnificent in his Arms, and in his warlike Habiliments: *Antenor* and *Dagobert* were the principal Officers under him. At the reere of the Army followed another little differing in Nation from that which marched before, being drawn from those Provinces that stretch beyond the *Rhine* toward the coast of *Massilia*. Those *Gauls* were armed like the former, and their number was almost equal, being reinforced with four thousand *Romans* under the command of that great personage to whom the whole League would have resign'd the supreme authority. It was the famous *Constance*, the support of *Honorius*, and the only Pillar of the Empire, a Victor over many Kings, who upon the return of his glorious hopes had recovered that former Gayety which always accompanied him in danger. That great Captain whom so many remarkable exploits had covered with renown, was so far from accepting the obliging offers which the Princes made him, that he yielded the chief honours to *Pharamond*, *Theobald* and *Viridomar*, not only because those three Princes were the most valiant in the world, but also because they were the most concerned in the design, having every one of them a Mistress or a Sister to set at liberty. *Valerius* and *Sigebert* commanded under the Lieutenant of *Honorius*. *Constantine* had ten thousand *Britains*, which *Dinox* had sent him out of *Armorica*, and two hundred Chariots filled with Archers, arm'd with Sythes and broad blades of Swords: his Horse was bred in one of the Countries under his own Dominion; and besides that it was the best and fairest that ever was seen in that Country, it seem'd to be the more stately for having been preferred by his Prince to all his other Horses

brought from remote Countries. The King of the *Britains* naturally of a fiery disposition, breath'd after nothing but combat, and though he might have been contented with the reputation he had purchased, and the Queen of *Albion's* affection, however he could not but shew a generous impatience to signalize himself for the interest of his friends.

Taxander had the same thoughts as he had, for though he were very near being married to the lovely *Adelaiada*, yet he was unwilling to have his Nuptials celebrated till the end of the war wherein he had taken a part, or till he had set *Cleomira* at liberty. His Helmet, Cuirass, his Coat of Mail and his Buckler, glittered with precious Stones in all the most remarkable parts, and with an air conformable to the grandeur of his degree, he rode at the head of fifteen *Tougres* and ten thousand *Nemetians*, of which *Flavian* was Lieutenant General. After him appeared the Prince of the *Visigoths* attended by *Hilderic*, who led twenty thousand fighting men, all experienced Soldiers and of approved valour. They had been at the taking of *Rome*, and had signaliz'd their courage as well under the famous *Alaric* as under the generous *Wallia*.

He rode with a most comely grace upon a Sorrel Horse, that was bred near the Banks of *Tagus*, but a Beast so lovely, so fiery, and so lofty in his prancings, that he would have busied the eyes of the spectators much more, had not the Master drawn off their eyes both by the beauties of his person, and by the magnificence of his Arms. His Helmet, covered all over with a Plume of different colours, was fastned before with a rose of Diamonds of a very great value, and the most remarkable parts of his Cuirass, his Buckler and the Hilt of his Sword were enchas'd with large Diamonds.

The penfive *Thrasimond* followed him negligent in his habit, for his Arms were plain, but they were polished and excellently temper'd: A large Feuille mort Plume floated upon his Helmet, and his Horse was the loveliest that was ever bred in that Coast of *Spain*, the melancholy that appeared in the countenance of that Prince, was so far from having any thing in it of dogged or ill-natur'd, that it was only a kind of sweetness accompanied with a certain languishment: And it so visibly appeared to proceed from a profound tenderness, that it was impossible to behold that unfortunate Lover, without sharing in his affliction. *Gidifles*, whose pardon *Honorius* had not only requested but obtain'd under *Gunderic's* Brother, led twenty thousand *Vandals* arm'd with long javelins and terrible clubs. They consisted of old disciplin'd Soldiers enured to labour: After them the valiant *Artabure* appear'd commanding six thousand chosen horse, who were still to be at hand where succour was required. Prince *Priam* brought up the Rear, having the command of the Engines of battery, and rode at the head of those Officers, who had the charge of either managing or making them. In short, the whole Army consisted of about a hundred and forty thousand foot, and sixty thousand Horse, besides those that looked after the carriages, and the sick and wounded.

The King of the *Huns* and the rest of those Princes that came down from *Agrippina*, were extremely satisfied in the Muster which they had seen: And very pleasant they were between whiles, in discoursing with the Queen of the *Visigoths*, the Queen of *Albion*, *Theodolinda*, and *Adelaiada*. But *Honorius* was buried in so profound a melancholy, that he spoke little, and took less notice of what passed before his eyes, nor did he break silence till the Princes were upon their return to *Cologne*, nor then neither but only to talk of *Hunnimonda* to the King of the *Huns*, who he knew well had almost as great an affection for that Princess, as for *Theodolinda*. *Balamir* parted from his Sister and the *Cimbrian* King very unwillingly, and addressing himself to *Theobald*; Sir, said he, 'tis not for me to bear that name which you have rendred so famous through the world, with a renown answerable to yours, but that I may not utterly ruine it by running upon a certain defeat, be pleas'd to let me understand how I may avoid you in the fight. You have prevented me, replied the King of the *Cimbrians*, for indeed for my own safeties sake, I should have us'd that caution before, which you have already done. After those expressions of modesty, they were agreeing upon what marks they should observe, when *Thrasimond* and *Martian* having taken the same course, embraced each other a thousand times before they parted.

As for the King of the *Lombards* he was very unwilling to leave the *Cimbrian* King, nor was *Wallia* less grieved to part with the Father of his Princess: And for *Theodolinda*, she could not chuse but shed some tears upon that occasion, though the Queen of the *Visigoths* and the Queen of *Albion*, did all they could to quiet the discontents of her mind.

In the mean time there was nothing more apparently visible, in the countenances of the Princes, than the generous impatience which they had to attack *Cologne*, and encounter the Army which prepared to defend it. To which purpose *Pharamond* would have resign'd the honour of general command to the great *Constance*, the vanquisher of so many Kings
and

and warlike Nation. But the famous Roman refused it with an extraordinary modesty, giving him to understand at the same time, that no person would presume to accept of the Supreme command in an Army led by *Pharamond*, *Theobald*, and *Viridomar*. Every one of them having all the qualifications of a great Captain, besides that they were more concern'd than any of the rest in the enterprise it self. Nevertheless the Kings of the *Franks* and *Cimbrians*, together with the *Suevian* Prince, so strongly opposed the general inclination to have submitted to them, that it was at length concluded, that the whole Army should be divided into six Bodies, the first of *Franks*, *Sicambers*, and *Martians*, under the invincible *Pharamond*: the Second of *Bobemians*, *Coldalians*, and *Sudinians*, under the famous *Theobald*: The third of *Gauls* and the remainder of *Pharamond's* Army under *Viridomar*. The Fourth of *Romans*, *Gauls*, and *Visigoths* under *Constance* and *Walita*. The fifth of *Britains* with their scythed Chariots, and *Vandals* under *Constantine* and *Thrasimond*. The sixth of *Tongres* and *Nemetians* under *Taxander*; *Artabure* commanded the reserves. It was moreover agreed that these six should be Generalissimo's in their turns one day after another and that *Pharamond* should be the first obeyed.

But the enterprise was so difficult, that had they not been Princes whose courage was invincible, they would never have undertaken it. For it behoved them to take *Cologne*, a very strong and well fortified place, and they were to take it in spite of an Army, more numerous than that which was to attack it, and commanded by as great Soldiers as any were in the world. The Kings of the *Franks* and *Cimbrians* together with *Viridomar*, saw the difficulties that opposed their intentions, but their warlike heat was so far from being cool'd thereby, that the generosity of their Souls was but the more incens'd against those obstacles, and nothing would serve their turns but a speedy victory. Thereupon the King of the *Franks* desirous to know what pass'd in *Agrippina* and in the Camp of his Rivals, sent several parties toward the Camp and City, as well to observe the motion of the Enemy as to bring in prisoners.

To this purpose the bold *Genebald* with a thousand choice horse, set upon that Quarter where the *Burgundians* lay, and after some few skirmishes wherein he still got the better, he brought away several that yielded themselves. On the other side, *Meroveus* with another party equal in number, march'd toward *Agrippina*, and having advanced as far as the bridge whereby the Army of the League and the City corresponded together, he return'd with success little different. So that by the report of the two Princes, or by the confession of the prisoners, *Pharamond*, *Theobald*, and *Viridomar* understood those things which it was very necessary for them to know. They were advertis'd that the King of *Sweden* had an absolute power in *Cologne*, that the City was at his devotion as well as the inhabitants, and that *Briomer* in whom he entirely confid'd, had acted with so much cunning and success, that he had no cause to be afraid which way soever the victory fell, since if fortune were never so contrary to him, he had the destiny of the Princesses in his own hands. But Sir, added one of the prisoners that had undertaken to speak for the rest, *the Suevian King has rais'd two forts at the end of the Bridge of Cologne, which Prince Meroveus might easily take notice of: For the defence whereof he has put into them six hundred Suevians, and six hundred Herulians, under the command of Gilric and Ricobald, two persons of an approved valour, who will not only be able to hold out, till they be succoured by the sallies from the Town, but from the body of the Army whenever it shall be requisite.*

Pharamond having inform'd himself in some other little circumstances, sent for a *Burgundian* that *Genebald* had taken, who being examined made answer, that there was not a better Army in the world, than that which had undertaken to defend *Cologne*. *It consists of six great bodies,* continued he, *under the command of the Prince of Persia, Marcian, the King of the Burgundians, the King of the Herules, Arderic and Humbert. But besides the confidence they have in these Captains, they promise themselves a great assistance from the four Princes that take part with the Persian Prince, meaning the King of the Sarmatians, the King of the Lombards, the Prince of the Saxons and the valiant Balamir. For as for the King of the Huns it is reported that he will stay in Cologne, on purpose to mollifie the humour of the King of Suevia, upon all occasions wherein he might be urg'd to acts of violence.*

After he had declared some few other circumstances the Stranger was dismiss'd, and *Constance*, the Kings of the *Britains* and *Tongres*, with many other Princes and Officers came to consult with the King of the *Franks*, about the execution of their great design in hand. The general opinion was, that they should forthwith make a Bridge of Boats to pass some part of the Army beyond the *Rhine*, into the Country of the *Ubians*, so to begirt *Agrippina* in on every side. Thereupon *Flavian* and *Dinox* were ordered to march to *Segodunum*, there to build Vessels with all the speed that might be, to be brought into the

Rhine through the mouth of the *Segna*. They concluded also to storm the two Forts that were kept by *Gilric* and *Ricobald*, notwithstanding all the succours that could come out of *Agrippina*, or from the Camp. By such a vigorous action the Princes thought they might win a reputation to their party; and that which flattered their impatience was, that by such an Attack they hoped to draw out the Body of the Enemy, and to fight him out of his Entrenchments; and so by putting it to the decision of a Battel, they should either see their Princeesses at liberty, or in the Conflict meet with the end of their lives and miseries, both together.

Thereupon, it being the King of the *Franks* turn to command next morning, *Telanor* and *Valerius* marched by his order towards the Bridge of *Cologne*. They had with them four thousand Foot: for whose relief followed *Thrasimund* and *Sunnon*, with ten thousand Horse. Those two Princes had requested that Employment, for reasons grounded upon Love and Friendship: For the Brother of *Gonderic* chose rather to take the Road for *Agrippina*, than to encounter an Army where he might meet *Martian*; and the passionate *Sunnon* took pleasure in going either to fight or die near a City, where the fair Queen of the *Turingiens* was immur'd. *Theobald* and *Constance* prepared to follow, with the two Bodies under their Command, the ten thousand Horse, led by *Sunnon* and *Thrasimund*; while *Pharamond*, *Viridomar*, *Constantine* and *Taxander* marched in good order toward the Camp of the Enemy. In the mean time, *Telanor* and *Valerius* being far advanced before, and discovered by the Out-Guards of the *Suevians*, were suddenly charged by a Party that made a most vigorous Sally, to keep them off from the Forts. But those two valiant Personages made so good use of what they had learned under the famous *Constance*, and the King of the *Cimbrians*, that after a stout resistance, and considerable loss on both sides, they repulsed *Gilric* and *Ricobald*, and had carried the Forts, had they not been charged on a sudden by the Garrison of *Cologne*; while on the other side, *Balamir* and *Aldemar* advanced against *Thrasimund* and *Sunnon* at the head of many thick Squadrons, followed by *Arderic* and *Godegesile*, who led the two Bodies of the Armies under their Commands. The valiant *Ambiomer*, and the famous Lover of *Melasintha*, thundred in upon *Thrasimund*, and the Brother of the King of the *Franks*: but they were encountered with so terrible an impetuosity, that their four Lances flew into a thousand pieces; and the shock of the four Warriors was made with that violence, which I believe few of the stoutest among men were able to have endured. After that they drew their dreaded Swords, incensed at a resistance with which they were not accustomed to meet: and they were about to have continued a Combat, the consequences whereof would have proved very fatal, but that the Troops that they conducted with a fiery impatience charged each other, and parted their Captains, whatever endeavours they made to meet again. So that being all four constrained to set upon Enemies less worthy of their Valour, *Aldemar* and *Ambiomer* poured in among the *Gauls*, which were commanded by *Antenor* and *Dagobert*, whom they threw to the ground, at the same time that *Thrasimund* and *Sunnon* having beaten *Ricobald* and *Gilric*, to the Earth, made a Squadron of the *Suevians* and *Herules* give way, who had fought till then with much obstinacy. They chased them with so much heat, that not being able to moderate their Courages, they entred the very City it self. *Briomer* came running to the Conflict, and foamed for madness to see so much ill success. He caused the Gates to be shut where the two Victors were entred, which he intended to have sacrificed to his Cruelty: And commanding them to be environed on every side, *Thrasimund* and *Sunnon* found themselves in the midst of a dismal shower of Darts and Javelins. But perceiving the danger wherein they were engaged, they minded less the preservation of their lives, than to fight for the interest of their Princeesses, by weakening the Forces of their Oppressors. Thereupon they flew like two enraged Lions upon the Soldiers that *Briomer* encouraged to their destruction, and charged them with so much fury and violence, that every blow beat down an Enemy to the ground, so that they stood almost surrounded with a Rampart of dead bodies, which, though it could not absolutely defend them, yet the terror of their Spectacle rendred them more formidable than they had been before. But in regard they had received already many wounds, and that they were in the midst of an unexhaustible deluge of adversaries, without any likelihood of being relieved, their valour must of necessity have been overpowered by number, had not the King of the *Huns* and the Prince of the *Burgundians*, espying their distress, commanded off the multitude which *Briomer* had got together, representing to the violent *Cimbrian*, that it was for his interest to preserve two such Captains that could not but be very considerable in their own party. With that they put *Thrasimund* and *Sunnon* into the hands of some of their Officers, with special order to take care of their persons, and then rode about to visit other parts of the

City, where their presence was necessary for its defence, or to succour the distressed.

In the mean time, *Ambioner* and *Aldemar* having broken in among the Cavalry which *Ibrahimond* and *Swinnon* had commanded, were of a sudden surrounded by *Pharamond*, while *Constance* and *Theobald*, having taken the two Forts, were come to blows with *Ardaric* and *Codegesile*; and *Martian* and *Viridomar* having attacked one another, gave a thousand proofs of that conspicuous valour which had purchased them so high a renown. In another Quarter *Constantine* and *Gondioch*, *Alexander* and *Umbert* opposed each other, and met with that heat and impetuosity that the Combat portended a very fatal event: nevertheless, those famous Warriors were parted more than once, while the force of their own Troops carried them like a stream, one one way, one another, notwithstanding all their endeavours to have had a second encounter: so that they were constrained to turn their fury against meaner Foes, and to offer up lives less considerable to their revenge, than they had assailed at the beginning of the Battel. It happened also that the great *Pharamond* and the fiery *Varanez* after they had broken their Lances, and made use of their Swords, could not fully accomplish their purposes, being separated by their own Squadrons, who, encouraged by their example, maintained the fight with an extraordinary vigour. However the victory inclined to *Pharamond*, who was only slightly wounded, whereas the *Persian Prince* had received a great cut of a Sword that made him hit the pommel of his Saddle. The haughty *Varanez* enraged at the sight of his blood, threw himself into a Body of the *Franks* with such a violence as triumphed soon over all the resistance that was made against him: and the valiant Kings of the *Sarmatians* and *Lombards* being joyned with him, made way through all opposition, and having forced the *Sicambres* to give ground, they got as far as the ten thousand *Marsyans* that were in the rear of the Army: *Artabure* with his Reserve, *Wallia* with his *Visigoths*, and *Marcomire* with a reinforcement of *Franks* hastened to the relief of those Troops which *Agathysus* and *Agelmond* pursued: then began a Combat between those great Heroes so bloody, and so obstinate, that the success was very doubtful: the dreadful *Pharamond*, after he had overrun like a dismal torrent the *Geecks*, *Ibracians* and *Gepides*, and was got as far as the Enemies Line, was advertised of the progress of the *Persian Prince*, which made him turn to the assistance of those that stood in need of his aid. His presence immediately changed the face of the Combat, for *Varanez's* Troops being forced to retire, were in a short time after absolutely routed: So that the Prince *Agathysus* and *Agelmond* had no other thoughts but of joyning together and dying honourably.

The King of the *Sarmatians* took care only to defend the Prince of *Persia*, and *Agelmond* laboured only to save *Agathysus*, when *Pharamond* arriving and knowing who they were, caused the Soldiers that environed them to retire, and thus bespake them: *Valiant Princes*, said he, *live invincible, and do not believe that among persons that know how to reverence virtue, your lives shall be exposed to sink under the inequality of multitude.* The three illustrious friends moved at so magnanimous an action, and *Varanez* himself perceiving a certain moderation in his natural fierceness, as he began to feel a remissness also in the violence of love, undertook to speak, and addressing himself to the King of the *Franks*, *Pharamond*, said he, *I must acknowledge that thy generosity surpasses mine, and that Varanez must at length yield thee that which he had resolved to dispute with thee to the last drop of his blood.* He had no sooner expressed himself in that manner, but the Kings of the *Sarmatians* and *Lombards* testified their acknowledgment to *Pharamond*, while *Marcomire*, *Wallia*, and *Artabure*, came up time enough to be witnesses of what had passed.

But now in regard that Night grew on, and that the two Armies were about to retreat, before the *Franks* could make use of all those advantages which they had right to claim, *Pharamond* was willing that *Varanez*, *Agathysus* and *Agelmond* should return to their Camp, which they did accordingly after they had promised to return to him again, if they could act advantageously for him, either in *Cologne* or among the confederate forces.

They were no sooner arrived within their own entrenchments, but the King of the *Sarmatians* overjoyed, to see the change that had happened in the heart of *Varanez*, would not lose the least moment of time, in seeking to persuade him absolutely from staying in *Germany*, and because he had most powerful arguments for his return to *Persia*, he made choice of that opportunity, to insuse into him a desire of departing into his own dominions, repeating to him the generosity of the King of the *Franks*, and *Rosamond's* engagement to him. Afterwards having awakened his ambition, he gave him to understand that the Crown of *Persia* was but in a tottering condition, if he did not go himself to settle it upon the head of *Isdigestes*.

Varanez more alarm'd at that news than he had been some days before, was very curious

to know what had happened in the Court of *Persepolis* during his absence, and requested the King of the *Sarmatians* to make him a Relation, to which he readily consented so soon as they had searched their wounds and had taken a little rest. Thereupon the two Princes leaving it to others to inform them of the condition of the two Armies after so signal a battle, retired into a Closet, giving order not to be interrupted. And then the King of the *Sarmatians* addressing his speech to the *Persian* Prince, thus began.

The History of the King of the Sarmatians.

I Do not believe Sir, that you expect a long recital of my Adventures, for besides that it is not for me to enlarge upon the particulars of my life, I see you so taken up with those passions wherewith your mind is agitated, that I will only insist upon those circumstances which may be most inducing, to make you determine best for your advantage. I will only tell you then, that I was about seventeen years of Age, when the King of the *Huns* invaded the dominions of the King my Father, while on the other side upon the banks of the great River *Rba*, which are the bounds between us and *Scythia*, the *Perierbes* and the *Sapotrenes* endeavoured to free themselves from our Yoke, and made use of an opportunity favourable to the design, which they had premeditated so long before.

Thereupon they openly revolted, and having either slain or expell'd their Governours, they gave the chief employments to those of the Rebels, who had been most forward at the beginning of the sedition. At such a troublesome conjuncture, the King of the *Sarmatians* determin'd to march against the *Huns*, as being the more formidable Enemy by the conquest of whom he should reap most honour. Whereupon, I being able to bear Arms, and unwilling to lye idle in the City when all the Court was gone to the war, the King my Father to satisfy a desire which he could not well disapprove, sent me toward the *Rba* with a Lieutenant General, whose experience was well known and to whom he recommended me, as a trust that was infinitely dear to him.

Nor had I any reason, Sir, to complain of fortune in my first apprenticeship in war, for after some slight skirmishes I gave the enemy a general Battel, wherein I obtained a signal victory, and reduced the Rebels to their obedience, though it be very true that I received a very considerable recruit from *Adamarfes* King of the *Scythians*, who was our confederate and had espoused the Sister of the King my Father. *Syrdenia*, for that was the Princess's name, was more than ordinarily tender of the concerns of her family: So that she received me with the affection of a Mother, when I came to *Iffedon* to return thanks to the King her Husband. While I was at the Court of *Adamarfes*, I was advertis'd that the King your Father was raising forces in all parts, with an intention to invade the *Scythians*, and to retake from them the Province of the *Sogdians* and a part of *Bactriana*, of which the *Scythians* had made themselves Masters, when the Monarchy of the *Persians* fell into the hands of the *Parthians*. But while he stay'd till the season of the year was fit to take the field, there was great care taken by the orders of *Syrdenia* for my divertisement: So that I was entertain'd with much more sumptuousness and gallantry than I expected. For I must confess ingenuously, I did not think to have found among the *Scythians*, either magnificence or politeness. But I was soon convinced of my error, for I beheld those publick pastimes which were accompanied with so much pomp, that I was altogether surpris'd, though all that I saw was far beneath what I admir'd in the person of the *Scythian* Princess. Thereupon I was so much moved with the charms of her converse, and those testimonies of kindness which she every day afforded me, created so much gratitude in my heart, that I suddenly felt for that fair and illustrious Kinswoman an affection, as tender as that which I had for the Princess of the *Sarmatians*. *Sydemiris*, that was the name of the *Scythian* Princess, had not yet attained the fifteenth year of her age. Yet as young as she was, she was very tall, and though her proportion were streight and full of Majesty, there was however somewhat which I cannot tell how to express, of freedom and unaffectedness which was infinitely taking. Her complexion was so clear and lively that it even dazled the eye, and her hair the fairest white in the world, hung in natural curls about her lively cheeks. Her eyes were blew, large, fairly distanc'd and glittering: Her mouth small with a vermilion lip, exact in proportion, her teeth even and white beyond compare. She has a piercing wit, aspiring, and so delicate that few persons are able to please her. I thwarted her several times, but in regard she had a real friendship for me, she freely gave me that liberty, and conversed with

me with all the confidence I could expect from a Sister. One day that I was walking with her in a Gallery, where were the portraitures of several Princes, *Madam*, said I a little seriously, *these pictures which I observe have occasion'd me to take notice; that notwithstanding all the fair qualities which we admire in you, there is something which you want, that it is not over easie for you to be Mistress of.* I believe, replied she with the same Air, *you need no more than cast your eye upon me to make that observation, and I dare boast that I am able to instruct you better in that argument, than all the pictures you can consult.* I believe you so unable, replied I, *to perform what you say, that I cannot tell whether you have not need your self of a little instruction, since if I am not deceived you want an adorer of your charms, nor is it an easie thing for you to find one worthy of them.* I see very well, (added I immediately, not giving her time to return me an answer) *by my observation of those pictures, that among those who are neighbours to the King your Father, Theodosius or Varanez might not be ashamed to wear your Chains, but I am disturb'd to see that fate should otherwise ordain it.* For the Emperour of the East is just upon a marriage with the fair Athenais, and Varanez is preparing to invade the Dominions of Adarmartis. I must confess, replied she very pleasingly, *I should do ill to complain of your little care though it be but slight, however to settle your disturbance I must tell you that I bear no envy toward the daughter of Leontin: And for the preparations which are made against us, in Persia, I assure you I am nothing afraid of them so long as you are of our side.* As far as I see, merrily replied I, *you are no way ingrateful to a person that would be glad to behold those eyes of yours triumphing over the most illustrious freedoms.* However do not think to satisfy me with this piece of acknowledgment, I require one of another nature, for I would fain have you tell me whether Varanez does not merit the esteem of a fair Princess? Though it were only to appear generous in doing justice to our enemies, answered she, *I must needs say with all the ingenuity you can expect from me, that there is no Princess in the world, that has any reason to be offended at the vows and protestations that Varanez should address to her.* On the contrary, as they have described the heart of that Prince to me, I believe the person that should reign there, would have no reason to complain of the extent of her Empire. But, answered I, *what if such another enemy as he should become a Slave to the incomparable Sidemiris? Well,* replied she immediately, *as that will never come to pass, I have as little reason to make you an answer as to content my curiosity.* You know it is more probable that you may one day see the Princess of Persia, which if it should come to pass I have more reason to enquire of you, whether you could so well defend your heart against the charms of Artaxira? I am ignorant of the time to come, (answered I strangely discompos'd I knew not wherefore) *But,* added I endeavouring to smile, *if I ever see Artaxira, and that she be so inhumane to load me with chains, I shall leave nothing unattempted to bring Varanez under your subjection: For to tell you truth Madam, if he were once but here you would return me a thousand thanks, nor would you give Varanez a worse reception than the Princess his Sister gave me.*

It was thus Sir, that we sometimes discours'd of you and of the divine *Artaxira*, out of a kind of prediction of the future, and these pleasing conversations divertifed us from time to time, till I was forced to return to *Adamarses*, then in those provinces where we conjectured your Father would pour in his Army. Ours was no less numerous than his when we took the field, and that which made us more confident than the number of our Soldiers, was the news which we heard that you were departed out of *Persia*, and that no person was able to give an account whither you were gone. They told us that the discontent of *Isdigestes* for your departure was such, that he could not dissemble it, though afterwards he put a constraint upon himself, lest his sadness might discourage the Soldiery. Nor was he willing to discredit his own reputation, should he give over an enterprize that had made such a noise over all the East, which would not permit him to hesitate any longer: so that he entred *Bactriana* at the head of sixscore thousand men. *Resaces* an illustrious Prince of your blood, conducted the right wing of that Army, and the left was commanded by *Megalases*, a Soldier of high repute among the *Persians*. Nor will it be necessary to tell you more, than that the two Kings gave a thousand proofs of their courage and experience, that *Resaces* signaliz'd himself, and that *Megalases* perform'd exploits worthy of eternal remembrance. However, Fortune was not favourable to the *Persians*, but on the contrary visibly declared her self for our party, so that the *Scythians* had no reason to complain of the success of that day.

Here *Varanez* interrupted the King of the *Sarmatians*, not enduring that his modesty should pass over many circumstances so much to his honour. Sir, said he, *you think you have concealed by your silence, the great actions which you performed at that time, but renown has sufficiently spread the report thereof.* I know we have lost six and thirty thousand men in that battel, and that the *Scythians* being Masters of the field, confess, that it was to your valour alone that they were beholding for the victory. I also understand that you took *Megalases*, that

you wounded *Resaces*, and that you saved the life of the King my Father, when it was in your power to have slain him, or made him a prisoner to the Scythians.

I grant, replied *Agathyrus*, since you will have it so, that I might have had advantages considerable enough, and that *Isdigestes* was convinced of it, as you will find by the sequel of this discourse. The King of the *Scythians* also bestowed upon me many marks of his acknowledgment; nor did I at any time perceive, that he ever preserv'd any resentment for those actions which perhaps would not have been approved by a Prince less generous. The Queen and the Princess received me with an extraordinary affection, and were as joyful for my return, as if I had been the young *Acarus's* Prince of *Scythia*, had he been in a condition to have serv'd in the war, and had obtained so great a victory. But during our publick rejoycings, they told me that *Megalases* was fallen into an extraordinary fit of melancholy: and in regard I knew his chains were not very uneasy, I conjectured that disease proceeded not so much from his stay at *Issedon*, as from his absence from *Persopolis*. Thereupon I took pity of him, and obtained his liberty, and gave order that he should be provided of all things necessary for his return according to his Quality. Never did person appear so sensible of obligations as *Megalases*, for the kindnesses I had shewed him. He would have thrown himself at my feet, in testimony of his acknowledgment. And he gave me to understand, that his life would have been far more insupportable to him than death it self, had he been constrained to have stayed any longer at *Issedon*: Not, Sir, added he, that I have had any reason to complain of the usage I have received here; or because I am forced to be absent from a Court which is so gallant and magnificent. But, Sir, it is because I am in love, because the charms of that person I adore have caused me a thousand Rivals, and I am still afraid lest my absence may prove fatal to me. Go then, *Megalases*, replied I, be gone, reestablish your own happiness by your return, and deliver me from the trouble it would be to me, should I be the cause of the prejudice which you fear.

Thereupon the enamoured *Persian* went his ways, so soon as he had return'd thanks to the King of the *Scythians*. And some few days after we understood that *Gobrius*, a very considerable person among the *Persians*, was coming in the quality of an Embassadour from *Isdigestes* for the dispatch of several weighty affairs. And it was indeed to put an end to that famous War which had been as ancient between us as the two Monarchies, and that since *Cyrus* and *Tomiris* had been but too often renewed with dreadful losses on both sides: But, Sir, you shall see how far the King your Father abounded in that acknowledgment which he thought was due to me, and what an opinion he had conceived of *Agathyrus*: He gave order that a peace should be concluded upon such conditions as I should think fit to impose: and he gave such absolute command to that purpose, that his orders were fulfilled, whatever reasons I could give against my being Umpire in an affair of such importance. Thereupon the Treaty was concluded, yet so that the King of *Persia* had no cause to repent; for besides that we did him no injustice either in reference to his interests, or to his honour, he had very suddenly an occasion for our Army to march against the *Partians*, who were revolted from him. Then was I so taken with the proceeding of *Isdigestes*, that I resolv'd to serve him in person, but with an intention to keep my self disguised, to free my self from any more marks of his obliging disposition. To that purpose I took very few along with me, and changing my name, I called my self *Phradates*: but before I set forward for *Persia*, as I was in discourse with *Sidemiris*, I told her I would suddenly let her know whether the Princess *Artaxira* were so fair as she had perswaded me to believe her: If it be so, added I, and that I feel by experience the force of that wherewith you have threatened me so often, I will not fail of the promise I have made you, being resolv'd so soon as *Artaxira* shall have laden me with her Fetters, to betray *Varanez* into your chains. I will dispense with you for putting your self to that trouble, replied the smiling, and provided you do not make good your freedom against a Princess whose charms, as I have said, you have no power to resist, I will discharge you of all the rest.

Thus, Sir, I took my leave of *Sidemiris*; and having afterwards kissed the King and Queen's hands, I left *Issedon*, and rode toward the Province of the *Massagetes*, where I entered the Dominions of the King your Father, I was no sooner arriv'd at *Persopolis*, but I was inform'd of the effects which your absence had produced. It was reported that the *Partians* had taken Arms against a Prince whose Successor they dreaded. On the other side, *Resaces* acting as presumptive Heir of the Crown, seem'd to be puff'd up with a new pride, and openly spoke of his pretensions to the Princess *Artaxira*, and the Scepter which he was ere long to wield. *Isdigestes* was constrain'd to give way to the Season; he saw the *Persians* would rather chuse to obey a Prince of their own Nation, than to fall under the Dominions of Strangers: and for his part, if it should be his misfortune never to hear of

you again, he found it more consolation to leave the Empire to *Araxius*, than to provide for her any other way. Thereupon *Resces* desirous to shew himself worthy those glorious hopes which he had conceived, besought the King for the command of the Army which was to march against the *Partians*, a request that was presently granted him; and thereupon *Megalases*, who was his Lieutenant General, with all speed marched directly toward the Banks of *Etymander*, whither it was reported that the Rebels were advanced, having made themselves Masters of all the considerable places in *Drangiana*.

Now in regard it was not possible for me to conceal my self long from *Megalases*, whether I intended to stay in the Camp or visit the Court, I discovered my self to him, believing that the confidence which I reposed in him would oblige him to be the more conformable to my intentions. To which purpose I gave him a visit, and having obtained a particular audience for a strange Knight, I went into his Closet and discovered my face. He no sooner knew me again, but he shewed himself more than extraordinarily joyful; he would have thrown himself at my feet, he would have advertised the King; but having opposed all his resolutions which he had only taken up in haste, I conjured him not to make known my real quality: I told him I had reasons wherefore I would not make my self known; and that he could not suspect a Prince that was so far from being an Enemy of *Isdigestes*, that he came on purpose to serve him: 'Tis not, Sir, answered he, 'tis not that he has any reason to suspect your manner of acting, your Generosity sufficiently assures him of that. But, Sir, does it become me to see my Benefactor in *Persia*, nay, my Prince's Benefactor too, without yielding him all the acknowledgments that are due to him? It must be so, my dear *Megalases*, replied I, for if I obtain not that which I desire you to grant, you will disoblige me more sensibly than you can think to do me kindnesses in bestowing honours upon me, which will only serve to perplex and entangle my designs: suffer me therefore to live at my own freedom I conjure you: if you will be so kind to me, I may stay a while in *Persia*, otherwise I must be gone again presently, to seek out other Countries where I may be at liberty to live as I think most convenient for me. And therefore if you desire to detain me here, you must only treat me as a certain Knight called *Phradates*, that is come to see the most flourishing Kingdom in the world.

At length, Sir, I over-perswaded *Megalases* in such a manner, that he consented to my request: so that it was no difficult thing for me to conceal my self under the name of *Phradates*. For *Gobrias*, who knew me as well, not being able to overtake either the Army, or the King, was retired to a House of his own, some seven or eight miles distant from *Persepolis*.

Isdigestes advanced with some part of his Household as far as *Marasium*, which, as you know, is a fair and great City upon the Frontiers of the Rebels Country which he was going to subdue: but in regard I was not willing they should present me to that Prince, till I had done him some considerable service, I went and offered my self: and I was so fortunate in the first Battel, that the principal among the *Persians* perswaded the King that he owed the advantages which his Army had obtained, to me. *Resces* also confessed that I had disengaged him from his Enemies, and that I had slain the General of the *Partians*. He would also have made me a very considerable present; but *Phradates*, being *Agathyrsius*, had no need of his gifts. The same day they brought me a Sword from the King, the Hilt whereof was enriched with precious Stones of a great value, which I accepted with that return of thanks that it became me. But I could not forbear to give the Officer of *Isdigestes*, a Diamond, of which the *Persians* so well knew the value, that they were surpris'd at my liberality: so that the King imagining that a person who used that kind of prodigalities, could not be of a mean extraction, was not contented to bestow extraordinary Caresses upon me, but he gave me honours little different from those which I might have expected, had my real condition been known. Thereupon he urged me several times to discover my self more precisely than I had done before: so that not having the power to speak against my own thoughts; nor yet to declare that I was that *Agathyrsius* to whom he thought himself beholding, I besought him only to believe that I had sufficient cause to conceal my name, in regard I was to travel into Countries far remote from *Persia*; But, interrupted *Isdigestes*, is there no way to make our Court the bounds of your travels? and to give you that content that you shall have no cause to wish your self in that Country which you quitted for the sake of ours? I know 'tis not wealth that will stay you with us. But if the lustre of some great employment can move you, and that you have not a heart altogether insensible, I will find in my Court, and that of the Princess, wherewith to give you double satisfaction.

As it was impossible for me to oblige my self to his service, he was surpris'd at my refusal: how respectfully soever I might behave my self, so that he was extremely perplexed out-

of the desire he had to detain me in his Kingdom. Nor was it any more than he testified upon an opportunity, that presented it self a little while after: For besides that he gave me the government of a most considerable City, and the Country under its jurisdiction, he made choice of me among the small number of personages of quality, which he took along with him to see the Princess, who was advanced as far as *Marasium*. Upon the appearance of the divine *Artaxira*, those eyes of hers strook mine with a most dazzling lustre. I will not say the Princess appeared that day more lovely than ever you beheld her, she was in a riding habit, which as magnificent as it was yet was very fashionable, and corresponded exactly well, with that air which is remarkable in *Artaxira's* stature. And yet the freedom of her carriage was maintained by so many marks of grandeur, with a Majesty so conformable to the rank of that illustrious Princess, that it was easie to judge of the height of her extraction. In short, I found *Artaxira* such as it behoved her to be, to raise that trouble in my heart which had never perplex'd it before. She triumphed over a liberty which I had preserved till then, whereby it seem'd that destiny had taken care to engage me in those chains long before, as you may perceive by what I have already told you. The King discoursed with *Artaxira* a while, after that he presented *Resaces* to her, and in regard he did it with commendations, I was so far from hearing his praises with delight, that I felt an aversion from that time forward in my heart, for the Prince on whom they were bestow'd. True it is, that afterwards I received some kind of consolation, taking notice that the Princess, at the reception of *Resaces*, betrayed a certain blush that seem'd no way advantageous to that ambitious Lover. At which if my Rival were inwardly nettled, his despite could not but increase in a strange manner, if when he beheld me so favourably treated by *Artaxira*, he had known the passion which I then had for her. In short, *Isdigestes* addressing himself to his incomparable daughter, after a most obliging manner in my behalf, Princess, said he, *if we have overcome the Rebels, and that my authority be again acknowledged by the fiercest Nation in the world, 'tis to the valiant Phradates that I am beholding for the greatest share of my success. But in regard his Soul is above all Benefits which his merit can expect from the King of Persia, I have little hopes to give him the recompence of his services, if I did not believe he would be more sensible of the marks of Artaxira's acknowledgmen, than he has been hitherto of the presents offer'd him by Idigestes. Therefore I leave with you this generous Stranger to deal with him in such manner, that he may not repent him of having expos'd his life for your service. And if there be in this accomplished Court, (pursued he, casting his eyes upon the fair Ladies that accompanied the Princess) ere a lovely person whose charms are able to retain Phradates among us, I should be more beholding to her for such a noble purchase, than to any of my Captains that should add a large Province to my Dominions.*

Isdigestes had no sooner made an end of speaking, but that taking *Resaces* along with him, and all those other *Persians* that attended him, he left me alone with the divine *Artaxira*. But there I stay'd, not having either the power to behold her, so much did the lustre of her beauty dazle me, nor confidence to speak, my Soul was so surpris'd with joy, love, and admiration.

The Princess was not a little at a stand, when she perceived those changes which she observed in my countenance, and not believing that I was one of those as she confess'd afterwards, that was to be put out of countenance by the splendour of the Court, she thought that what the King had spoken in my commendation, had cast me into that confusion: Inso-much that beginning to speak in a most obliging manner, "For ought I see, generous *Phradates*, said she, you are less willing to hear the praises which have been bestow'd upon you, than you were forward to perform those noble actions that have gain'd your applause. But that modesty is so far from imposing silence upon us, that it affords us new matter of discourse.

To those words I could not dispense with an answer, but having recovered my self, "Great Princess, answered I with a respectful Air, though it were true that the little I have done for the *Persians*, had not altogether been for their disadvantage, I should be the most presumptuous person in the world, to think I deserved the recompence I have received. "But Madam, (added I transported with that boldness which growing love inspires) it may be one day I may render my self less unworthy. For I perceive that if I meet with more opportunities to serve the great King of *Persia*, my zeal will carry me so far that he shall have no reason to repent him of the favours he has done me.

We continued this discourse so much to the joy of the ever happy *Phradates*, that I could not part from the Princess but with an inward delight, with which the heart never fails to be moved, when at the beginning of love it foresees not the obstacles that may cross its passions.

No sooner was I retired into my Chamber, but I made a reflection upon the condition of my fortune, and upon all that the Princess of the *Scythians* and I had discoursed together, before I left *Iffedon*: So that having found a pleasing concurrency between the discourses which I had had in *Scythia*, and the adventures which had befallen me in *Persia*, I resolv'd to send *Sydemiris* an account thereof, which I did in the following Lines, with an Air conformable to the gayety of my humour at that time.

Prince Agathyrsus to the Princess Sydemiris.

AT length Madam, I have seen the divine *Artaxira*, and I must confess I no sooner saw, but that I passionately loved: So that you are not at all deceived in your conjectures, and for my part I have given you an account thereof, according to my promise. But Madam, to be punctual in all things to my word, I have a design in my head in reference to *Varanez*, that I am sure will take according to your wishes. It will cost that Prince his freedom, and therefore you must not refuse me your assistance in an enterprise, which I am about to proceed in. Consider that it no less concerns the honour of your charms, than the interest of my passion. For if I may stand in need of the protection of *Varanez*, the heart of so illustrious a Prince cannot be a Conquest unworthy of the most incomparable *Sydemiris*.

Thus Sir, I wrote to the Princess of the *Scythians*, in the mean time I continued my visits to the *Persian* Princess, and that with so much diligence that the zeal which I had for her concerns was soon perceived. It was observed that I particularly apply'd my self to attend her, and that when I either spoke or acted for her interest, I did it with that vehement eagerness which was easily remarkable. On the other side, the Princess being willing to treat favourably a person who was recommended to her by the King her Father, openly shewed an esteem for *Phradates*, which she had never testified for any person before. After that, finding insensibly both in my conversation, and the little services which I was always ready to render her, something that no way displeas'd her, she accus'd her self in her speech and converse with me, to use a confidence which altogether charm'd me. She forbore not to tell me how much she was perplex'd with the passion of *Resaces*, and believing that I shar'd in every thing that concern'd her, she took it not amiss, but innocently afford'd me new testimonies of her good will.

Thus transported with a joy which I could not moderate, I was about a hundred times to have cast my self at her feet, and discovering my name to have made known the passion which I had for her, to the end I might free her from the persecutions of *Resaces*. But the profound respect which the Majesty of *Artaxira* had imprinted in my soul still restrain'd me, and far from believing that *Phradates* happiness could extend to *Agathyrsus*, I was afraid lest the Princess should look with scorn upon the fallacy which I had put upon her. I thought she might nourish a resentment against me, when she found that my disguise had made her act with *Phradates*, in another manner than she would have carried her self toward the Prince of *Sarmatia*. Besides as *Phradates*, who was entirely devoted to her, I durst not discover the design I had laid to revenge her upon *Resaces*, so much I feared to offend her moderation. However I resolv'd to go on with the resolution I had taken, and if I did not put it presently in execution, it was only to stay till I could meet with an opportunity to do it without giving the least suspicion to the Princess, for whose sake I had undertaken the enterprise.

The discontent which proceeded from my impatience, that I could not find an occasion to fight my Rival, was the only trouble which then afflicted me, being favourably treated as well by *Isdigestes* as *Artaxira*. And then it was that I received from *Sydemiris* an answer, of which it is necessary that I should make you a recital, in regard it contained the following Lines:

The Princess Sydemiris to Prince Agathyrsus.

I Am glad you have found the Princess of Persia so lovely as I described her, and I must confess for my predictions sake, that I am nothing troubled that you were not able to resist the power of her charms. But Prince, can you not love the Sister without disturbing the Brothers repose? For my part I am of Varanez's side, for I cannot consent to the design you have against him: For besides that it is not generous to nourish an evil intention, against a Prince that never offended you, 'tis certain you may meet with obstacles, of which you dream'd not, in the execution of your purpose.

You see, Sir, that Sydemiris answered me with a gayety which was usual betwixt us, and yet her Letter produced a strange effect, as you will know by and by. You must know then that Resaces continued his importunities to Artaxira, and that the Princess carried her self toward Resaces after such a manner, as was no way pleasing to him. Inasmuch that he being naturally fiery and impatient, resolv'd to unfold his mind as a Lover, whose pretensions were authoriz'd as well by the consent of Isdigestes, as by the general desire of all the Persians.

Thereupon he came to Artaxira, and being received by her with her wonted coldness, "What Madam, said he, will you always retain this cold indifference for me? will you never open your eyes to see whether a scorn of this nature be to be endured by a person of my quality? To a person of your quality, answered she, tender, Resaces, tender to mine that which you know it is your duty to do, and I shall then consider how to carry my self toward you. You have no reason I think, replied he, in justice to complain of my behaviour, for you cannot but have a thousand times observed, that I have always respected you as my Sovereign Mistress. However you are mistaken, briskly replied she, and it would be the greatest trouble to me in the world to be so. But Resaces, I am the daughter of Isdigestes who is your King, and I am the Sister of a Prince, who is to be your Sovereign after his decease. "Varanez, replied he, is supposed to be dead, and you cannot but know that by his death, nay by his very absence, I am the presumptive Heir to the Crown. How Heir of the Crown, answered she fiercely interrupting him, no, no, Resaces, that will never be as long as I live: And know that if Heaven take from us both Isdigestes and Varanez, Artaxira will make you submit to her laws, and impose a Master upon you when she pleases.

Concluding the last words she could not but blush, and Resaces replying with a laudable moderation, "As for your laws, Madam, said he, you know that I was always very submissive to them, and am still as willing to them, how severe soever I may find them to be. But for imposing a Master upon me, I cannot tell whether you can so easily do it, and whether the Persians will so readily incline to submit to the dominion of a Stranger. Nevertheless, since you threaten us with a misfortune which we had always reason to fear, you would bring upon us, you must not think it strange that Resaces and the principal Peers of the Kingdom, take a course to prevent it by opposing a design, so prejudicial to the honour of the Nation.

Having so said he took his leave of the Princess, and no sooner was he got to the Palace, but he sent for the most considerable of his party, and gave them to understand what had been his conversation with Artaxira, and then vehemently pursuing his discourse, "You see, said he, that we have no time to lose, Artaxira has declared her self, there is no news of Varanez, so that the death of Isdigestes which through age and sorrow may happen on a sudden, will bring us into a miserable condition, if we prevent not the storm that threatens us. But I make no question but your own generosity, and the affection which you have for me, will preserve you firm to my interest, if there be any Persians so treacherous as to comply with a Princess, that goes about to subject them to some Barbarian, whom in a humour she shall prefer before the blood of your Lawful Kings. Let us consider then how to act at such a perillous conjuncture, and for heavens sake let us take such a course, that we may not be forced to a shameful submission, and be laughed at for having less conduct than an unexperienc'd Princess.

Upon those words Resaces and his friends entering into a deliberation what they had to do, resolv'd at length to go all together to the King, and to admonish him how far Artaxira's

ira's resolution might tend to the ruin of the Monarchy of *Persia*.

To this purpose they immediately went to *Isdigestes* who received them kindly, and gave them as favourable an answer as they could desire, for besides that *Isdigestes* was desirous to remove all occasions of disturbance out of his Kingdom, he had a great respect for *Resaces* looking upon him as a Prince to whom he might be one day constrained, to leave the possession both of his Crown and *Artaxira* together. Thereupon he promised to send me to the fair Princess, to signify to her in his name, that it was his desire she should carry her self in a different manner, to one of the first Princes of the blood. He would have spoken himself to *Artaxira*, but that he was afraid as a Father, to hear the reasons of her own justification: And therefore looking upon me as a more proper person, he called me into his Closet, and addressing his speech to me in a most obliging manner, "You are not to question, "*Phradates*, said he, but that I have been very much pleased in taking notice, that the Princess has a kindness for you, and in regard I have also observed that you interest your self "in whatever concerns her: I know not whom to pitch upon better than your self to signify "my pleasure to her, and to desire her in my name to comply more suitably with the "times than she has hitherto done. You are not ignorant that the absence of *Varanez*, renders *Resaces* very considerable in my Empire, so that it behoves *Artaxira* to carry her self "toward *Resaces*, not only as a Prince of my blood, but as a person that I design for her husband, if heaven do not restore me *Varanez*.

Upon those cruel words I was so little the Master of my grief and my surprize, that I changed colour, which *Isdigestes* perceiving; "Can it be possible, added he, that you should "be so unwilling to receive a message, which I thought you would have so gladly accepted? Sir, answered I transported with the violence of many passions, were it to sacrifice my life "for the service of your Majesty, you could not cast your eyes upon any person that would "do it more readily than *Phradates*. But in regard it does not behove me to deceive your "Majesty or to disguise my own thoughts, there is no person so improper as my self for this "employment.

The astonished King beheld me very earnestly, then resuming his speech, "I cannot apprehend, said he, the reason of a denial which I so little expected. "'Tis not, answered I, but that the commission with which you would entrust me is very important, but Sir, "would it be just for *Phradates*, in an affair that only concerns the Empire, to dispute against the resolutions of so great a Princess, to whom he owes a particular respect and acknowledgment? How can I pretend to receive a favourable answer, when there are so "many *Persians*, who have more right than a stranger to speak their minds where the quiet and honour of the Nation is concern'd.

To these I added so many other arguments, that the King changed his mind, and he dismissed me, very sorry that he had put me upon an errand so displeasing: But then I, instead of leaving the King, immediately was about to have thrown my self at his feet, and to have spoken in the Princess's behalf, so much was I transported by the violence of my passion: Yet fearing he might dive into the true cause of such an extraordinary zeal, I forbore what I intended, deeming the consequences thereof so dangerous, as well to my self as to *Artaxira*. Thereupon I thought it sufficient to advertise that incomparable Princess, of the King her Fathers intentions, to the end she might be prepared with an answer, and that she might take notice of *Phradates's* readiness to serve her. *Artaxira* return'd me thanks for the care I had of her interests, and directing her speech to me with a courtesie altogether charming, "I assure you, said she with a pensive Air, I should be very much discontented, should the King persevere in the thoughts which he has for *Resaces*. For in "short, *Phradates*, I am resolved to obey his orders, though I were sure to dye for "grief.

At those words through a capricious fancy of my love, I was very much afflicted, observing a serious melancholy in the fair eyes of *Artaxira*, yet at the same time was I entranc'd with an unexpressible joy, seeing how the fair Princess still defended her heart against my Rival, but on a sudden fearing again that *Resaces* misfortune proceeded only from the insensibility of *Artaxira*, and that it might be also my own ill fate: I was seized by such a disturbance, that the Princess taking notice thereof, pleasingly demanded of me, if I had embraced the Courtiers humour, to shew my self more a friend of *Resaces* that day, than I had accustomed to do. "Madam, answered I, I need not justify my self in that particular, for "you may well conjecture me to be a person very incapable, to take part with one who obeys not you with a submission never to be cast off.

Upon those words the Princess looked upon me, as if she expected I should tell her the real cause of my grief, inso much that I was in a strange perplexity, till having calm'd the troubles

troubles of my countenance, with all the confidence I could use before the person I adored, Madam, said I, *if you espouse not the most considerable among the Persians, who is there out of Persia that may pretend to the felicity which you refuse Resaces? Theodotus is wedded to Athenais; the Prince of Scythia is not in a condition to wear your chains; nor do I believe you have any thoughts upon Pharamond, Balamir or Viridomar, who besides their remoteness have seen those charms which already have enthrall'd their hearts. I am of opinion, courteously answered she, that you did not refuse the commands of my Father laid upon you, since you take that care which I never expected at your hands.*

Those words put me to a plunge, and believing my expressions had displeas'd her, I testified so much sorrow, that the Princess interrupting me in a most obliging manner, Phradates, said she, *you are not well acquainted with my humour, if you think there was any thing in your discourse that has displeas'd me, rather I find your zeal extends very far for my sake, since it travels even into Germany for a match for Artaxira. Alas,* replied I with more freedom of thoughts, *I need not go about to disunite the hearts of those illustrious Princes from their beloved Princesses: for without doing them any injustice, I know where to subject a Prince to your Empire, that never yet acknowledged other Laws.*

Upon those words I blush'd, not being able to explain my self any farther, but immediately recollecting my self out of a desire to know how the Princess stood affect'd toward me, Madam, said I, *I make no question but you took notice that I held my tongue when I had yet more to say, and I must needs tell your Highness, with that liberty which you are pleas'd sometimes to allow me, that there is a curiosity still remaining, of which I would fain be satisfied. I would fain know,* continued I, *whether if Agathyrus had been so rash as to aspire to the same honour, he should have met with the same ill fate as Resaces. Were it lawful for me to give you a serious answer to such a question,* replied Artaxira, *I should make a great difference between one of my Father's Subjects, and the Heir to one of the greatest Monarchies in the world. But, Madam,* replied I, *that Prince has serv'd the Scythians against the Persians. I grant it; answered she, but he us'd his victory so generously, that we have no Allies to whom we are more oblig'd.*

I was so charm'd with this conversation, that I was much troubled when I heard that *Isdigesler* was coming to her Apartment. The fair Princess also blush'd so soon as she had notice of it; and understanding that the King came on purpose to speak in favour of *Resaces*, I left the Room with a redoubled aversion against a Rival, that so many several ways persecut'd the Princess whom I adored. In the mean time, *Resaces*, who neither knew me to be *Agathyrus*, nor a Lover of *Artaxira*, no sooner understood that I had been so long with the Princess, but he made no question but I had acquitted my self of a commission which he thought I had very joyfully accepted: so that out of an impatience to hear *Artaxira's* answer, he went into the King's Garden, and whisper'd me in the ear, that he expected me in such a walk. I fail'd not to be with him with all the speed I could, not so much to assail him, as to give him an occasion to quarrel with me: when we were alone, Phradates, said he, *have you been happy in your mediation? Have you seen the Princess? Have you spoken to her in my behalf? Has she given you that favourable answer which I ought to expect?* Sir, answered I with an air not usual with persons that were wont to speak to him, *I did not think my self engag'd to the King to speak to Artaxira in your behalf; not only believing that it became not Phradates to dispute the sentiments of so great a Princess, but that it was a piece of injustice in all others that sought to constrain her will. When her will,* briskly replied he, *may prove to be of dangerous consequence, we are not bound to be obedient to it: but it is not for me to dispute with a Stranger upon the most weighty affairs of the Empire. However,* replied I, *a stranger, and such a stranger as Phradates, may take the liberty to tell you, that the Persians will never presume to take your part: and therefore give me leave to tell you that—— And therefore give me leave to tell you,* fiercely cry'd he, interrupting me, *I will make you know that you owe me respect: and if you give me not that which is my due; know,* said he, laying his hand upon his Sword, *that I have wherewithal to command it in such a manner, that if I am not deceiv'd, you will get no advantages by your obstinacy. Tell you have seen me Master of such,* replied I without any passion at all, *that you have no reason to believe your menaces can fright me. No more,* cry'd he, interrupting me again, transport'd with choler, *such an impudence shall never go unpunish'd.*

Upon that he drew and made at me with an impetuous fury, and I being in a posture to receive him, the combat grew obstinate and vigorous, insomuch that the blood stream'd down our Cloaths in a short time. At length the desire I had to deliver the Princess from his persecutions redoubling my strength, I gave my Rival three large cuts, receiving only a slight wound, so that *Resaces* fury giving place to paleness and faintness, he stagger'd and

was just ready to fall, when his servants drawn thither by the clashing of our Swords, and seeing what condition their Master was in, some ran to help him, others advanced toward me to revenge their Masters quarrel. I looked upon my self as a lost man, considering the number of my enemies, but resolving to sell my life at a dear rate, and beholding them with a threatening Air, *Come on Cowards*, cried I, *against a person all alone, and whom you durst not otherwise assail.* Those fiery words caused some confusion among them, and one above the rest addressing his speech to his companions, *Let me alone*, cried he, *to chastise this haughty Stranger.*

So saying he raised his Cymiter Arm, but I prevented him from doing any more harm, for I cut him so fully into the head, that he fell at my feet without any appearance of life.

Two other of his friends taking his place had the same fate, insomuch that then the whole croud transported with revenge and rage, came powdering all upon me with an intention to sacrifice me to their fury. I had set my back against a Tree, to keep my self from being surrounded, but their number was so great, that notwithstanding all the resistance I could make, I had been run thorow and thorow in a thousand places, had not *Megalases*, coming into the Garden to walk, made hast to the Throng where he saw so many Swords drawn.

He no sooner knew me, but he applyed himself to moderate the fury of my enemies, *Hold*, said he, *kill not Phradates before you hear him speak for himself: He durst not being a Stranger have made such an attempt as this, but that he has other accomplices to back him. No, no, friends, let us first discover the conspirators and then punish him.* Those words and the authority of the person that pronounced them, wrought that effect upon the *Persians*, that they surceased their fury. Thereupon *Megalases* to appease them all together, turning to me, *Phradates*, cryed he, *yield thy Sword to Megalases, who demands it of thee in the Kings name. I yield it then to Idigettes*, replied I to *Megalases*, *and though a Stranger that might have died with his Sword in his hand, I am willing to teach the Subjects of so great a Monarch, how readily they ought to obey his orders.* While I was thus speaking another croud surrounded me, and presently they brought me a Chariot, to carry me where the Prisoners of State are kept. So soon as I was confin'd, they found that *Resaces's* wounds were not mortal, and the tempest that threatned my life being overblown, they were content to wait the Kings justice, for their revenge which was otherwise contrary to Law.

Soon after *Megalases* sent me Chirurgeons to search and dress my wounds, which were not very dangerous. When they were gone, my generous friend that took care of me came to my bed-side, and addressing his speech to me, *You see Sir*, said he, *what I have been constrained to do to save your life, but now you must of necessity discover who you are. for I cannot think of any other way speedily to deliver you out of this place, though I am resolved to use all my industry to obtain your liberty. In short, Sir, though your enemies be not dead, they will punish in your person the attempt of Phradates, which will not be thought otherwise than a quarrel between Resaces and Agathyrus, when your quality is once known. Ah Megalases*, cryed I, *be not so hasty I beseech you, rather before you tell who I am, consider the consequences which I dread, if you discover a secret which is to me of so great importance. What would the King say, what would all Persia say, if they knew that the Prince of Sarmatia had been so long disguised at Persepolis? That he has often visited Artaxira, and fought Resaces the Lover of that incomparable Princess? Will they not have reason to believe that Artaxira was not ignorant that Phradates was Agathyrus, that the Princess has a kindness for me which is the true reason of her aversion to Resaces? They will imagine that the fair and innocent Artaxira, has kept a correspondence with me, that it was she that incensed me against a Prince of the blood, and shall I consent that they should have such an opinion of my Princess, by discovering my self to be the Prince of Sarmatia? Let Agathyrus perish first a thousand times, before he exposes the person whom he loves, to such an apparent injustice.*

Megalases however would not give over so, and therefore as he was going about to shew me how well the Princess might plead in her own justification; *Never deceive your self*, said I interrupting him, *For there would remain that impression in the heart of the King and the people, which it would be never possible absolutely to rase out. Therefore, Megalases, take heed of being transported out of an excess of zeal, for I protest to you by all that I understand of sacred, that if after all that I have told you, you cease to be true to me, instead of saving the life of a friend, you will put him to that tormenting death, which Resaces himself would never adjudge him to, either as an Enemy or a Rival.*

In short, Sir, my eyes and my countenance so well confirm'd the reality of my thoughts, that *Megalases* consented to my request, notwithstanding the reluctance which he had testified before. But while I was so cautious to keep *Phradates* from being known to be *Agathyrus*,

Agathyrus, the servants that took off my cloaths forgot not to pry into the crime of which they thought me guilty; so that having rifled my pockets, and found certain Letters sumptuously written, they thought themselves very well satisfied, and failed not to carry them to *Isdigestes*. By them the King came to understand to his sorrow all that happened, and walked up and down in his Chamber with an air that shewed how much he was troubled in his mind: and as he had for me a great esteem and a real kindness, he could not consent to my destruction, though he found himself constrained to do justice to his blood, to the kindred of *Resaces*, and to all the *Persians*. He was extremely discontented what course to take upon such an accident, when he was plunged into such an extraordinary surprize, casting his eyes upon certain Letters, the superscription whereof was from the Princess *Sydemiris* to Prince *Agathyrus*. But his astonishment redoubled after a strange manner, when reading the answer which I had received from the Princess of the *Scythians*; he saw those words which I have already recited:

But, Prince, cannot you love the Sister unless you disturb the quiet of the Brother; for my part, I am clearly of Varanez's side, and cannot consent upon the design which you have upon him: for besides, that there is nothing of Generosity in having so ill an intencion against a Prince that never offended you; 'tis most certain you will meet with those obstacles which you dream not of in the execution of your design.

Isdigestes being hardly able to believe his eyes, read the same words over and over again; and having made several reflections thereupon, he called to mind all the circumstances that might confirm the suspicions he had conceived. He called to mind the frequent conversations which I had had with *Artaxira*, the Princess's aversion for *Resaces*, and the reluctance which I had to speak in his behalf, and at length the duel with my Rival: "What cried he in a chafe, does *Artaxira* hold a secret correspondence with *Agathyrus*, and as if it were not enough to love him without my consent, is she so prepossessed with her passions, to seek to put the Diadem of *Persia* upon the head of *Agathyrus* by the ruine of *Varanez*? Who knows but that I my self may be sacrificed to the ambition of *Agathyrus*, and the unnatural *Artaxira*?"

Then examinining the conduct, the moderation and the virtues of that Prince, "Have I not abused my self, cried he, and is there not some mystery concealed under the expressions of *Sydemiris*, which I do not apprehend? No, no, replied he to himself, after he had paused a while, I must not flatter my self with such vanities, since I find they are now upon the execution of their designs. The death, or at least the fatal wounds of *Resaces* open my eyes. That Prince is become the first victime, which the love and ambition of *Artaxira* had required from *Phradates*, and *Phradates* is without question *Agathyrus* himself, or an Agent whom *Agathyrus* maintains near the person of the Princess whom he loves. But *Agathyrus*, canst thou in this manner envenome the kind offices with which thou hast honoured *Isdigestes*? Couldst not thou have obtained *Artaxira* by fair means, and is not *Sarmatia* large enough for a Prince, who ought to be as reasonable in his ambition, as thou hast seemed to be in all thy passed actions. Yet there are so many charms and so much Lustre in the Monarchy of *Persia*, that might well tempt a Princess who by the absence of *Varanez* finds her self to be the only Heir. Nevertheless let us examine *Artaxira*, let us see whether *Phradates* be not *Agathyrus*, and let us dive into the mystery of a Letter and a Duel, which so strangely perplex me.

Then spurred on by his own impatience, instead of sending for *Artaxira* he would needs go himself to her Apartment, whither he was no sooner come but he caused the Room to be cleared, and beholding the Princess with that heat of anger, which he had never manifested to her before, *Artaxira*, said he, *I must advertise you before hand, that it is a vain thing for you to seek excuses for a crime, of which you stand convicted already, as well by the duel of Phradates, as by this Letter which you may read if you please.*

Concluding those word he gave *Sydemiris's* Letter to the astonished *Artaxira*, who having cast her eyes upon it with a fear which her eyes could not dissemble, no sooner saw the superscription, but as one that thought her self no way concern'd in it, *Sir*, said she, *I know not what part I ought to take,——I have already given you to understand, cried Isdigestes interrupting her, that your affected Surprises would nothing prevail with me. Read therefore, read, and then we shall see how you can justifie your self, as to that secret and precious Correspondence which you keep with Prince Agathyrus.* "I *Sir*, replied she with an astonishment that would not suffer her to say more. "Yes you, answered *Isdigestes*, and when you have read the Billet which I gave into your hands, you will find that I had in my own keeping, a

“ conviction in language that needs no interpretation. Thereupon the Princess opened *Sydemiris's* Letters, but when she found what the Princess had said of her Beauty, and the passion of *Agathyrus*, she blushed and stood amazed. The King believing that effect of surprize and modesty to be a mark of shame, “ Go on, go on, *said he*, I mind not the first words ; for the Prince of the *Sarmatians* may love the Princess of *Persia*, without fearing to be contradicted by *Isdigestes*. But was it so necessary, that his love, which I would never have disapproved, should be kept so secret from me, that *Agathyrus* should come disguised to *Persopolis*, that he should kill *Resaces*, and design the destruction of *Varanez* ? “ I know you will omit no argument to persuade me that you are not guilty of these crimes : but I know as well, that it is impossible you should be innocent. In the mean time, in regard it behoves me to be exemplary in the revenge of my own blood which has been spilt from the wounds of *Resaces*, I charge you not to stir out of your own Apartment, till you hear farther from me.

Having so said, he flung out of *Artaxira's* Chamber, while the fair Princess was strangely troubled to see her Father provoked, though she were sensible how unjustly he had accused her. True it is, that she had no sooner read *Sydemiris* Letter, but she saw there was some kind of intimation of some design laid against *Varanez* by *Agathyrus*. But she was always of this belief, that there was a concealed meaning in the words of *Sydemiris*. While they were thus searching into the obscurity of strange accidents above their reach, the King caused *Megalases* to be arrested, because he was said to have taken great care of *Phradates*. He also sent *Gobrias* to find out whether *Phradates* were *Agathyrus* or no ; what was the reason of his quarrel with *Resaces*, and what was his design against *Varanez*. *Gobrias* went first to *Artaxira*, and after he had discoursed her in reference to the commission he had received : “ Tell my Father, *said she*, that I know not whether *Phradates* be *Agathyrus* or no : but withal make him this protestation in my behalf, that neither *Phradates* nor *Agathyrus* ever opened their mouths to me in reference to the least tittle what the *Scythian* Princess has written : but, *Gobrias*, 'tis for *Isdigestes's* Honour, and the honour of the whole Nation, not so slightly to accuse a Prince to whom all *Persia* is so much beholding ; or to lay a crime to his charge of which he cannot be guilty, if you consider his virtues. In brief, *Gobrias*, 'tis very improbable that *Agathyrus* should give *Isdigestes* his life and liberty, if he had any design against *Varanez*. “ Nevertheless, Madam, *replied Gobrias*, if *Phradates* be *Agathyrus*, and that he have yielded his Arms to our Princess, the King, in my opinion, may answer your reasons how strong soever they seem to be : for *Agathyrus* may be generous in *Scythia*, yet prove ambitious in *Persia*. And having beheld the divine beauties of *Artaxira*, and the magnificence of our Court, 'tis very probable, that such temptations may kindle in the heart of a young and courageous Prince, not only an ambition to enjoy our Princess, but to usurp our Empire. For my part, *replied Artaxira*, blushing out of meer modesty, I cannot apprehend why the Prince of *Sarmatia* having an intention to court the Princess of *Persia*, should chuse to conceal himself under the name of *Phradates*, rather than to act openly, as persons of his degree are wont to do. “ Madam, I believe, *replied Gobrias*, that at first *Agathyrus* might come into *Persia* for no other end than to satisfy his curiosity, and that he might disguise himself to live with more freedom among us : but that afterwards he laid this design of which you are speaking. “ But, *replied she*, what should move *Agathyrus* to plot against the life of *Varanez*, who is God knows where, rather than of *Isdigestes*, whom he sees every day at *Persopolis*. “ Because, *answered Gobrias*, 'tis more easie to kill a Prince that travels alone, and helpless, than a King in the midst of his Court and Armies. Besides *Isdigestes* may be more useful to *Phradates* to authorise his actions, and raise a Faction against himself. “ But what is this enterprize, *answered she*, what are those Cabals which he has contrived. “ Then, Madam, *replied the Persian*, you look upon *Phradates* Combat with *Resaces*, and the strict friendship of a Stranger with *Megalases* one of the most potent Princes in *Persia*, next to those of the Blood, as nothing. “ As for what concerns the quarrel, *replied Artaxira*, 'tis very probable that a person of courage, no way obliged in this Country, might be provoked to draw his Sword against *Resaces*, as not willing to receive an injury from a Prince so apt as he is to give it. As for *Megalases* I should very much wonder if he had not that kindness for *Phradates*, whether he looked upon him as a Prince to whom we know he is obliged, or as a person who has served us faithfully in the *Parthian* Rebellion. And if there had been any conspiracy between them, think you *Megalases* would have been so earnest to have saved the life of a person that might prove his accuser ? “ I confess, Madam, *replied he*, there is a great deal of reason in what you say : and I wish to Heaven you may not be deceived in your conjectures.

"I should be extremely joyful, as well for the King's, yours, and the satisfaction of *Megalases*, as for the Stranger's sake, whose reputation stands so fair among us.

Having so said, *Gobrias* took his leave of *Artaxira*, and went to *Megalases*, and having declared to him the intention of his coming, the generous *Persian* preparing to speak with an air that manifested his resolution, "Tell the King, said he, that neither the Princess nor *Phradates* are guilty, and that in all that has passed, there has been nothing done to the prejudice of his Crown; and so without failing in my fidelity, it was not unlawful for me to shew some small kindnesses to a person who is only unhappy because he could not stoop to *Resaces*'s pride. "Let us not talk at present either of *Resaces* or *Phradates*, answered *Gobrias*, but as the Prince of *Sarmatia* has conspired against the Prince of *Persia*, will not you tell us——" "How, cried *Megalases*, interrupting him with a kind of amazement, do you believe the generous *Agathysus* capable to act so foul a crime? "But suppose we shew you some evidences of his conspiracy, replied *Gobrias*, what will *Megalases* then say in justification of the Prince that he excuses? "He will say, stoutly replied he, that the evidences are false; and shall never persuade me to the prejudice of a virtue wherewith I am so well acquainted, and of which I have had so fair an experience. Thus *Gobrias* finding he could pick out nothing out of *Megalases*'s words, he left him and came to me.

He no sooner entered my Chamber, but though he had already suspected *Phradates* to be *Agathysus*, he was strangely surpris'd when he cast his eyes upon me. "How, Sir, cried he, is it fitting that so great a Prince, to whom all *Persia* is beholding, should be a prisoner at *Persepolis*?

- I was vexed to perceive that my face was known, and to find that it was not possible for me to obtain that favour from *Gobrias*, who came from the King, which *Megalases* had granted me. But being forced to moderate my discontent; "Yes, *Gobrias*, answered I, I am a prisoner, though I have no reason to complain of the *Persians*, who could not do any otherwise toward a Stranger that had drawn his Sword against the Blood of *Isdigester*. "However, as *Agathysus* could cease to be *Phradates* upon some occasions, you must not wonder that I acted after such a manner as might render *Phradates* more criminal than perhaps the Prince of the *Sarmatians* is. "I must confess, replied he, I cannot think Prince *Agathysus* to have committed any such great crime, either in fighting *Resaces*, or in loving the Princess: but——" "In loving the Princess, cried I, interrupting him, and blushing, who dares to say that *Agathysus* ever durst presume to cast his eyes upon the divine *Artaxira*. "They have dared to say more than that, replied *Gobrias*, having made publick the conspiracy which you intended against *Varanez*. I conspire against *Varanez*? cried I, interrupting him with more surpris'e than before. Then not being able to apprehend upon what ground they raised such an accusation, If the Friends of *Resaces*, continued I, are so eager after my ruine, they must invent some crime more probable than that which they have laid to my charge. "As it was not *Resaces*'s Friends that you trusted with your most weighty secrets, replied *Gobrias*, you may be sure 'tis not from them the King has received those informations which are so obscure to his apprehension. "Let me see his evidence, impatiently cried I. "He has sufficient, replied he, but it is in the Princess's hands. "Does the Princess then, replied I, accuse the unfortunate *Agathysus*? "Quite contrary, answered *Gobrias*, she always speaks in your justification, though at present she be confined to her Lodgings for your sake, and the King very much incens'd against her, notwithstanding his indulgent affection toward her. "How, cried I in a rapture of despair, am I so unhappy to have contributed to the sufferings of the divine *Artaxira*? Ah, *Gobrias*! if that be true let them sacrifice me to the interests of my Enemies.

In short, Sir, I was so sensible of *Artaxira*'s misfortune, that I offered my life a thousand times for her liberty. In the mean time, not being able to apprehend what that strange accusation should be, I besought *Gobrias* with so much vehemence, that immediately he went to the King for leave to bring me *Sydemiris*'s Letters. He was no sooner gone, but word was brought me, that there was a *Scythian* come to Town, who had a Letter for me, and that *Resaces*'s Friends sought to arrest him. After that *Gobrias* returning with the Letter, the sense whereof they had so much mistaken, I was well enough satisfied, seeing the hand of *Sydemiris*; and thereupon turning toward the *Persian*, "Is it possible, said I, that my Enemies should have so much power over the King, as to persuade him so easily to the truth of what they interpret to my ruine? "However, you see, Sir, answered he, that the *Scythian* Princess speaks very positively of a plot which you have laid against *Varanez*. "I grant it, replied I, but in regard that *Sydemiris* does not so positively declare the nature of the plot, methinks the very jocular stile of the whole Billet might have produced a more gentle exposition. Then

Then continuing my discourse more for *Artaxira's* sake than my own justification, I gave *Gobrias* an account not only of my converse with *Sydemiris*, but of the Letter to which he had shewed me the answer, and so convinced him of the truth of what I said, that *Gobrias* fully satisfied, promised to make *Isdigestes* a faithful recital of my justification. But though he kept his word exactly my condition was nothing better'd, for all *Resaces* kindred redoubled their solicitations against me, being more afraid of *Agathyrsus* than *Phradates*. Not that they durst mention the putting me to death, but in regard my presence was a great obstacle to the pretensions of my Rival, they pressed the King to send me away, telling him it was not convenient for him to suffer a person in his Court, that would not have disguis'd himself had his intentions been sincere.

Isdigestes having considered upon their reasons, resolv'd to send me out of his Territories, and to remove *Artaxira* to some remote place for a time, the news whereof, when *Gobrias* told it me, I received as the sentence of my death. Then pondering upon the Prince's misfortune and my own unhappiness, "No, no, cryed I transported with many passions, I will never forsake *Artaxira*: my enemies shall sooner make me renounce my life, than the company of that divine Princess. But *Gobrias*, added I, wherefore am I hunted hence? wherefore are they incens'd against the fairest and wisest person in the world. Is she guilty of the crime which I committed in presuming to cast my eyes upon her? And is that so great a crime that the Prince of *Persia* cannot expiate it with the loss of his blood? Might I not have an innocent curiositiy to see one of the greatest Courts of the world? and for the more commodiousness of travel, might I not have the liberty to leave that Train behind, which ought to have attended upon *Agathyrsus*? "You know Sir, answered *Gobrias*, that it is not usual for such a Prince as you, to enter the Dominions of another without notice first given and appearing openly. But *Gobrias*, cryed I, tell me, good now, upon what does *Isdigestes* ground his suspicion, that *Artaxira* knows that I adore her? When you give me reasons strong enough to convince him to the contrary, replied *Gobrias*, I will labour to put him out of that conceit, which at present seems so probable. Is it possible, replied I, that such an interpretation should be put upon my bare obedience to *Artaxira*? *Isdigestes* presents a Stranger to her who had served him, signifies his pleasure to her, on purpose to stay him in *Persopolis*: who now can blame *Artaxira* for her complacency to *Phradates*: and if the daughter of the greatest King of the world, condescends by her Father's command to be familiar with a person, that seems to be but an ordinary Gentleman, is that a blemish to her virtue? But Sir, replied he, who can say that the Princess took you only for *Phradates*? And who dares to say, cryed I impatiently interrupting him, that she knew me to be *Agathyrsus*, for there is nothing but the Letter from *Sydemiris* which has been the cause of this mischief. But *Gobrias*, I beg of you to tell the King, that if he will but vouchsafe to send to *Issedon*, we shall not fail to clear out this mystery fully to his satisfaction: Or I will write thither my self, and if I disguise any thing or, the truth, as he has me in custody let him either put me to death, or banish me for ever from the sight of *Artaxira*.

Gobrias failed not to make this proposal to *Isdigestes*, but the friends of *Resaces* whose interest it was to remove me, told the King that there was no credit to be given, to what *Sydemiris* should say, in regard he might be sure she would take *Artaxira's* part. On the contrary, they pressed him to arrest the *Scythian* that had brought me a Letter, from whence he might be sure to make a truer discovery, as well by reading the contents as by examination of the party. In short, they acted so cunningly and so artificially perswaded the King, that *Artaxira* knew who I was, that he commanded me without farther delay to be gone in three days. When *Gobrias* brought me this order, "For Heavens sake, replied I sighing, tell the King that I freely submit my self to punishment, if he thinks me to be guilty. But if he cannot prove me to be an offender, he has no reason to deprive me of my liberty. We know Sir, 'tis no such crime for the Prince of *Sarmatia* to love the Princess of *Persia*, but to speak ingenuously, though the King has no reason to complain of the passion of *Agathyrsus*, he may be offended at the behaviour of *Artaxira*. "Who can say, said I interrupting him, that *Artaxira* knew how far my passion extended? "I confess, replied the Persian, that we have no other discovery, than what we gather from the Prince of *Persia's* Letter, but in regard there is nothing mention'd of *Artaxira's* ignorance of your thoughts, and that in all probability she will never write, but upon particular desire which is never intended, I think it Sir, for my part your best way to be gone. "No, no, very earnestly replied I, I shall never forsake the Princess: For I had rather dye in *Persia* before the completing of my Rivals happiness, than undergo in *Sarmatia* a torment more cruel, by understanding that *Resaces* should be possessed of the divine *Artaxira*.

I was about to have continued such a kind of discourse as my grief should have inspired into me, when I was interrupted by a great noise, of which I was forced to demand of *Gobrias* the cause. He was inform'd that they were carrying to the Tower a Courier from the Princess of *Scythia*, who was sent to the Court upon business of great concernment. And presently after I understood that they had carried to *Isdigestes*, the Letter which was directed to me from *Sydemiris*. But Sir, we must here admire the conduct of Providence, while my enemies thought to have been absolutely Masters of my Life and fortune, observe what *Isdigestes* found in the Paper which came to his hands.

The Princess Sydemiris to the Prince of Sarmatia.

WE understand that Prince *Varancz* is not far from Cologne in the Camp of the *Cimbrians*, and I was willing to send you such tidings with all the speed I could, knowing how gladly you would receive them, and how acceptable they would be to the King of *Persia* and the Princess *Artaxira*. But Prince, do not you believe I give you this intelligence for my own interest, for if *Varancz* be detained in Germany, 'tis only by the charms of the *Bohemian Queen*. So that you see there is nothing for me to hope, and that your design against the Prince of *Persia* is come to nothing, since as you cannot attack a liberty which he has already lost, it is not for *Sydemiris* to bereave *Rosamond* of the Conquest she has made.

But Sir, as if the Princess of *Scythia* had not thought it sufficient to have spoken for me in her Letter, the Postscript seemed to have been written on purpose for *Artaxira*.

Will you never let your Princess know the thoughts which you have for her? For Heavens sake resume the person of Agathyrsus. For the Prince of the Sarmatians may be allowed to speak where Phradates ought to hold his tongue.

Isdigestes overjoyed at such a particular information, that so clearly justified two persons for whom he had so high an esteem, was extremely sorrowful that he had been so severe to *Artaxira*, and that he had been so easily led away to favour the contrivances of my enemies, to whom the King was now so far from listening that he sent for the Princess, *Megalases*, and the Courier that came from *Sydemiris*. And receiving *Artaxira* with all the testimonies of affection, which he was wont formerly to express, he shewed her that which had brought all things to light, and satisfied his suspicions. That sudden change no way displeased the Princess, and yet she behaved her self with that moderation, as not to shew the least resentment against the friends of *Resaces*, not so much as speaking a word of me, though *Isdigestes* had given her opportunities enough in the communication he had with her. Which the King taking notice of, yet being desirous to know what her thoughts were concerning me, he took an occasion to speak of *Phradates* and *Agathyrsus*, to whom the Princess having recovered her self out of that discomposure which the Kings words had caused, "Sir," said she, as it was only by your order that I shewed so many marks of kindness to *Phradates*, you may as well be sure that only your will shall govern my behaviour, to the Prince of *Sarmatia*.

Isdigestes observing the countenance of the Princess, made no question but that she spake as she meant, and understanding by *Gobrias* that I was passionately in love with *Artaxira*, he never stood to consider, but immediately preferred me in his thoughts before *Resaces*. However he kept himself very reserved, declaring his mind only to *Megalases* who was my friend. All this while *Resaces* party murmured extremely, that *Isdigestes* would suffer himself to be guided in the most important affair of the Empire, by a bare Letter of *Sydemiris*. But he overruled them by his own authority, promising for their farther satisfaction, that I should not marry the Princess until your return into *Persia*. He received also the same day a packet from *Mitrans* which confirm'd the news which concern'd your self. And it was no looner assured that you were in the Army of the *Cimbrians* safe and well, but that all the *Persians* that loved *Isdigestes*, highly embraced my interest. As for *Megalases*, he came to fetch me out of Prison, and brought me to *Isdigestes* by whom I was received with

all the marks of kindness that I could possibly expect. The King failed not to excuse himself, by alledging his ignorance of my quality, and treated me so obligingly, that I was then more sensible of the kindness which I received, than I was before of the sufferings I had undergone. But the pleasures of Lovers never continuing long undisturbed, I thought of a sudden that it was impollible but that *Artaxira* must conceive some disgust against me. This fear suddenly appeared in my looks, which *Isdigestes* taking notice of, he beheld me without speaking a word, intimating to me by his silence, that I should tell him the cause of such a sudden alteration. I could not determine at first what to do; but the desire I had to see *Artaxira*, and to preserve her kindness, carrying me above all other considerations, rais'd up all the confidence I had to return him an answer: *Sir*, said I, *I make no question but Gobrias has given you an account of all the particular reasons I had to justify my disguise, and that he has told you withal what moved the Princess Sydemiris to write to me in that manner: and therefore I must only make you this protestation, that the liberty which you have given me will be of no value to me, unless I make use of it to let the Princess understand that I was most certainly by mistake the innocent cause of her misfortune. I have been unhappy, yet no way in fault: I privately adored her, and my passion was accompanied with so profound a respect, that perhaps I should never have made it known to the divine Artaxira her self. However, Sir, as it was you that presented me to that most incomparable Princess, whose Fetters I am bound to wear as long as I live; as it was you that provoked her against me, by giving her the knowledge of those thoughts which I should never have discovered to her: will not you, Sir, also——* Upon those words I blushed, and made a stop, when the obliging *Isdigestes* interrupting me, *I understand you, Sir*, said he, *I will make your peace with Artaxira: or to speak more justly, since she has no reason of complaint, I will let her know how glad I am that you have that kindness for her which she might have deemed a fault in Phradates.*

He gave me a thousand testimonies of his affection, and that he should not be only glad of an alliance with me upon your return into Persia, but also to see the peace which I had made between the two Kings, confirm'd by your marriage with *Sydemiris*. Such language as this, so sincerely spoken, redoubling my satisfaction, I made answer to *Isdigestes*, that *Adamarses* would be overjoyed to hear me make such a proposal: and I promised at the same time to take all the care imaginable to bring it to pass. The King highly satisfied with my offers, gave me new marks of his affection and acknowledgment; and then led me himself to *Artaxira's* Apartment: *Princess*, said he, *here is the illustrious Prince of Sarmatia, you know how signally we are obliged to him. Respect him then, and esteem him according to his Quality, his Virtues, and the obligations he has laid upon us. Megalases, who is a Friend to both, will tell you the full of my mind, nor do I believe the resolution I have taken will be displeasing to either.*

Artaxira blushed at those words, with a modesty intermixed with certain marks of submission to her Father's will. When *Isdigestes* was retired, *Divine Princess*, said I, *condemn not I beseech you the inconsiderate Agathyrsus: but consider that if he had the boldness to wear your Fetters, his respect was more than to let them be seen. But, Madam, may I presume to ask of you whether fortune was kind to me or no, when she declared to you, that the first of your glances triumphed over my liberty.*

After those words I held my peace in expectation of an answer that was to be the sentence of my life or death, while my eyes spoke in their turns, and interpreted the language of my love and fear, *Artaxira* importun'd by my silence and my looks; *Sir*, answered she, *you know with what acknowledgment the King of Persia looks upon the Prince of Sarmatia: and I believe you need not question Artaxira's compliance with Idigestes's judgment. But, Madam*, replied I, *find you no reluctancy to obey your Father's pleasure? If Phradates, answered she, had no cause to complain, I do not think Prince Agathyrsus will have any. I confess*, replied I, *that Phradates received favours, which were infinitely above his Services. However, Madam, you were not aware of his boldness, but Agathyrsus you find to be one of the most presumptuous among men.*

The Princess believing she had said enough, made no farther answer till upon my importunity she told me there might be those privileges allowed to *Agathyrsus*, which were not to be pardoned, had they been claimed by *Phradates*. In regard she concluded those words with a blush, and for that I perceived the force she had put upon her humour for my sake, I durst not presume to urge her farther, but took my leave, to give *Megalases* time to explain the King's mind, and speak in my behalf. And indeed he did both with so much zeal and success, that from that time I was admitted as a Lover, whose pretensions were authorized by *Isdigestes*, and no way disapproved by *Artaxira*.

But these pleasures that gave so fair hopes, were soon intermix'd with crosses the most bitter

bitter in the world. There was a necessity for me to absent my self from that which I adored, and that my absence should be of a long continuance. For my happiness depends upon your return, nor could I trust any other person to bring about a thing of such importance, but my self. I was also to pass through *Scythia* to propose the match, which *Isdigestes* so much desired to see concluded, and through *Sarmatia* I must pass to obtain my Fathers consent, without which I could not enjoy the felicity which I expected. Heaven knows how unwillingly, and with what reluctance I undertook this journey, though so absolutely necessary. The Princess her self perceived the disturbance of my countenance, and understanding the cause, she afforded me the pleasure of reading in her fair eyes, that my absence was not a thing indifferent to her, and that my Rival should reap no advantage by it.

This was all I could obtain at present from that severe Lady, as for *Isdigestes* his caresses were beyond expression: He besought me over and over again, to dispatch the alliance which I had promised to make in *Scythia*, and *Megalases* gave me his word to take care of all things that concern'd the passion prevailing in my heart. Thus I parted from *Persepolis*, having *Artaxira* always in my thoughts, and being arrived at *Issedon*, I was received by the King, the Queen, and the Princess of *Snevia*, after such a manner, as gave me no small hopes of the success of my negotiation. I lost no time, I spake to *Adamarfes*, told him how much it was for his interest to have peace with *Isdigestes*, which could not be effected, but by restoring what the *Scythians* had usurped from the *Persians*.

Adamarfes was at first surpris'd at this proposal, and though he had a more than ordinary kindness for me, most certain it was that he was not well pleas'd to renounce the dominion of many fair Provinces. 'Tis very hard, said he, that I should give that to purchase a peace, which perhaps I should never lose by war. But, I replied, that lawful restitution was no gift, to which I add'd so many other reasons, that finding him to be somewhat shaken in his resolution, "Sir, said I, if you will not give those Territories to the King of the *Persians*, bestow them upon the Princess of the *Scythians*. The immense tract of ground on both sides the *Imans* will satisfy your successors, nor will *Lycarsis* have reason to complain "if to make his Sister Queen of one of the most flourishing Kingdoms of the world, you only give to the *Persians* such provinces to which you have no certain claim. And therefore "for Heavens sake, unite the fortunes of the incomparable *Sydemiris* and the illustrious *Varnez*, and strengthen *Lycarsis* with the alliance of a formidable Neighbour.

Adamarfes was very unwilling to yield at first, and made all the reflections that such an important affair required. But in regard he loved *Sydemiris* with a tender affection, and for that the Queen desired peace and the match which I had propos'd, he came to a positive resolution, and with all the testimonies of acknowledgement, readily granted me, whatever I required in the name of *Isdigestes*. As for *Sydemiris*, she was the most submissive person in the world to the will of her Parents: and therefore knowing that the Queen had a most excellent portraiture of the Princess, I besought her to give it me that I might have wherewithal to justify the Beauty of her Daughter.

The King, the Queen, and the Princess had thus yielded to whatever I could desire, in order to the happy success of my negotiation, I departed from *Issedon* to travel in search of you into these Countries. But I had not gone above four days journey, when I received the afflicting news of my fathers death. That *Sarmatia* was divided into two factions, and that the Prince of the *Venedians* and the Princess of the *Igylions* headed them, inspir'd by their ambition only. In my return to *Sarmatia* I heard that *Gilismene* was fallen ill, that *Harmaxes* had secretly convey'd her away, and having confin'd her under the power of certain of his own trusty confidants, he caus'd it to be reported abroad that she was dead; and order'd a woman of *Tamiraque*, that died at that time, to be buried among the Kings of *Sarmatia*, pretending her to be *Gilismene*. But the cheat which he put upon the people, he could not long time put upon *Dorcira*, who being in love with the King of the *Lombards*, most exactly pry'd into whatever concern'd her Rival so that her quick-sighted jealousy had soon found out the truth, notwithstanding all the pretences and policies of *Harmaxes*. Thereupon looking upon him as a person that had betray'd her in saving *Gilismene*, she had held out a war against *Harmaxes* to the ruine of my Kingdom, had not my return put an end to it, by the reunion of both parties. For upon my appearance *Harmaxes* and *Dorcira* fled into the Countries allotted them for their several portions, where *Dorcira* is fallen into an incurable distemper. And as for *Harmaxes* you know how, and where he was but lately slain.

After I had deliver'd *Gilismene*, with all the testimonies of a Brother who loved her so tenderly as I did, I minded nothing but to satisfy the passion which reigned in my heart.

Thereupon

Thereupon I determined to leave *Sarmatia*, and a Sister whom I had so lately restored to life; and if any thing troubled me at my departure, it was only whether I should bring you any reinforcement of men, or whether I should travel alone, that I might make that haste which was conformable to the eagerness of my desire. But while I was thus in doubt, I received intelligence, that *Theodosius* had sent you a considerable recruit. Thereupon I resolved to accompany that Army, attended only by five *Sarmatian* Knights, being received by the Officers of *Theodosius* with all the honour they could have done me in my own Dominions. They had also that reverence for me, that they offered to lend me a party sufficient for an expedition, the particulars whereof are worth your attention.

When we had passed the *Vistula*, and were marching toward the *Ormanimes*, a *Saxon*, Esquire to Prince *Aldemar*, came riding toward us with all speed, and addressing his speech to me, half out of breath, he desired some assistance to divert a misfortune wherewith his Master was threatened. *Ah, Sir*, cryed he, *for Heaven's sake deliver the most incomparable Melasinthia out of the hands of Sinibald, who having stolen her from the victorious Aldemar carries her away against her will, and perhaps with some criminal intent.*

The *Saxon* had no sooner done speaking, but I promised him all the assistance I could from an Army that was not under my command; and having by the General's order obtained a thousand Horse, I marched my self toward the place where he told me I should have the opportunity to deliver *Melasinthia*. Nor was *Gilmond*, so was the *Saxon* named, deceived in his relation: for I met with *Sinibald* according to his information. The *Danish* Prince was surpris'd to see such a Body of Horse advancing toward him, and in regard he was in a Country where he had less to hope than fear, he put his men in order, and began to march with an intention to defend himself as well as he could. Before I charged him I sent to him to grant me a parley, which he consented to. Coming together, I conjured him not to constrain *Melasinthia's* will, but to send back the Princess of *Jutland* to the King her Father, but he rejected my proposal with so much obstinacy, that I was compelled to fight him, justice made fortune favourable; for *Sinibald* was beaten, *Melasinthia* set at liberty; and two days after I restored her into the hands of *Aldemar* her Lover, who made a restless pursuit after her.

After this I returned to *Theodosius's* Camp, and *Aldemar* conducted the Princess to *Hispalia*, where the two Kings of the *Saxons* and *Jutlanders* were met, and had put an end to that mortal hatred which was between them with a most perfect amity. But though they both equally desired a consummation of the alliance by the Nuptials of *Aldemar* and *Melasinthia*, there was a necessity for some time to defer the happiness of those two illustrious persons, in regard that the two Kings lay wounded at the same time. So that while the *Saxons* and *Jutlanders* were marching home under the commands of *Gilmond* and *Gilimer*, *Aldemar* out of Gratitude, and partly at *Melasinthia's* persuasions, resolved to accompany me; to which end he met me in *Sicambria*, and so we came both together into this Camp.

This is the Story which I had to tell you, said the King of the *Sarmatians*; and then presenting *Varanex* a Box all over beset with precious Stones: All that remains on my part, said he, is only to desire you to accept this present, and to wish, that for the good of many Nations, that Portraiture may as sensibly move your heart, as it has once already touched by the light of *Rosamond's* Picture.

The End of the Third Book of the Twelfth and last Part.

PHARAMOND.

BOOK IV.

VAranez taking the King of the Sarmatians's present, cast his eyes upon the countenance of the Princess Sydemiris; at the first sight thereof he blushed, and then set himself to behold it more earnestly, believing it to be a remedy to cure the distemper of his present affection. Agathyrus joyfully observed it, and so soon as he thought it seasonable to speak, Sir, said he, *can that Prince be said to be unfortunate, that may pretend to the possession of so fair a Princess?*

Varanez returning no answer at first, cast his eyes again upon a Picture wherewith he seem'd to be charm'd; and in regard the heat of his temper made him quickly capable of a sudden passion, *Ab, Sir,* said he, turning toward the King of the Sarmatians, *how fortunate should Varanez be, could he pretend to those glorious hopes wherewith you fill his fancy? Though I could do a thing so ugly,* replied Agathyrus, *as to speak contrary to my own thoughts, you have no reason to believe that I should do it now: for what Prince in all the world can Sydemiris prefer before the Prince of Persia? I would to Heaven,* continued he, *that Agathyrus were as worthy of the divine Artaxira, as Varanez to merit the affections of Sydemiris. How,* cryed Varanez, interrupting him, *can you question Artaxira's love? can you believe she can be insensible of the person and services of Agathyrus? No, Sir, 'tis a thing impossible: nor do I find by the Relation you have made, that you have any reason to complain of her acknowledgment. But for Varanez,* added he with a strange commotion, *I know not whether he can have the boldness to present himself before so great a Princess, to whom he can only offer a heart that has already loved Athenais and Rosamond with so little success? the Princess Sydemiris cannot be ignorant of it: so that——— I confess,* said Agathyrus interrupting him, *she may perhaps have heard thereof; yet at the same time no question but she was also inform'd, that Varanez refused to marry the Daughter of the Philosopher Leontin: and that on the other side, the Cimbric Queen had as much esteem and respect for him, as he could in reason expect from a Princess already prepossessed in favour of the King of the Franks. However, if after this declaration which I have made, if still you continue a Captive to Rosamond, Sydemiris will have no great reason to commend your proceedings; and perhaps it might produce a resentment which Varanez himself could not condemn. Shake off then those Fetters, Sir, which you have worn thus long; and since the Kings of Scythia and Persia have resolv'd to unite Varanez and Sydemiris together, and that Sydemiris her self has so obligingly consented, can you refuse what you should be overjoyed to grant to the desires of Ildigettes, to the charms of Sydemiris, the merit of Pharamond, the request of Rosamond, and your own particular Generosity? Ob, Sir,* impatiently replied he, *never entreat from me any more what the eyes of Sydemiris have already exacted from the heart of Varanez, rather be afraid, as I am, lest the divine Princess should alter her mind, and repent of the favour for which I am only beholding to the courtship of the Sarmatian King. Nevertheless,* added he, *in regard it will not become me to forsake a party which I have embraced with so much vigour, I only beg of you so much necessary time as to consider what course to take in an affair of this importance. There are so many acts of injustice in this league,* replied Agathyrus, *which persons of our rank and humour ought not to endure, that we need not be so cautious in abandoning this party, when we may so well justify*

our proceedings before all the world, and indeed you have but this to do, either to procure peace, to so many harrassed Nations, to set the Princeesses at liberty, and discharge the Prisoners on both sides, or to declare against that Army which shall reject your oppositions, for a general accommodation.

Thus ended the communication between those two Princes, but the Persian keeping the portraiture of Sydemiris in his own hands, retired to his Quarters with all the conveniency he could, and there abandoned himself wholly to the pleasure of beholding a beauty, which to him appeared to be altogether divine, and of which he was so fairly promised the possession. He fix'd his sight upon the countenance of that Princess which he already adored. He examined her complexion, her eyes, her features, and all those inexpressible charms, which were diffused through every part. Then pondering upon the hopes which the King of the Sarmatians had given him, *Is it possible*, cryed he transported with joy, *that I have a priviledge to pretend, or does Agathyrus incite me to aspire. If that be true let us not delay our departure for Iffedon, let us flee to the embraces of fortune, that desires to be reconciled to us, and offers us a happiness far more sweet, than all the mischiefs we have endured have hitherto been painful.*

Concluding those words he made a reflection upon the difference of the fetters he had worn, and believing that it was by the decree of heaven, that he had missed of Athenais and Rosamond, he was no less confident that the same destiny had ordered Sydemiris for Varanez. While his fancy was thus contentedly busied, Martian came to give him an account of the condition of both Armies, and to impart to him certain intelligence that he had received from the Court of Theodosius. *I cannot tell Sir*, said he, *whether you have been inform'd that Aldemar, Balamir, Arderic and Godegefile were wounded, that we have lost thirty thousand men and the two Forts which were rais'd for the defence of the Bridge, but on the other side the report runs, that besides many other losses which the Franks have received, Sunnon and Thralimond are prisoners in Cologne. And yet I am very much deceived, if Pharamoud have not obtained in this Battel, all the advantages which he could in reason desire, since you your self in having yielded him what the fortune of war has given, cannot but in acknowledgment forsake those interests which are contrary to his. But Sir, to enter upon a subject of a far different nature, I must tell you there is a most unhappy Rupture between Theodosius and Athenais——*“ How, cryed Varanez surprised and interrupting him, *is it possible that Theodosius, the enamoured Theodosius, should quarrel with the charming Athenais, whom he had rais'd to the most splendid Throne in the world?* “ Yes Sir, replied Martian, 'tis most certain that Theodosius and Athenais are parted, and for ought I know are never to come together again. They write also that there is great probability, that Eudoxia will remove at a great distance from the Court, to which purpose she intends for Palestine, though the pretence be given out, that it is only to visit those places which are so highly in veneration, among those of our religion.

After those words, Martian went on with the story of that fatal Apple, which had caused so famous a disorder in that Court. “ For you must know Sir, said he, that there was an Apple presented to Theodosius, who admiring its beauty carried it to the Empress, with that kindness which he was always wont to shew the fair Athenais. Eudoxia admired the present that appeared so rare, and because there is nothing so delightful to the eyes of the sick, as the sight of fair fruit, she sent the lovely Apple to one Paulinus a great Courtier, who lay very ill, but of whom Theodosius was extremely jealous at that time. This unlucky accident coming to the ears of the Emperour, encreased his suspicion to that height, that immediately he caused this separation, which posterity cannot read of but with amazement. But Sir, I must presume to tell you, that the trouble of mind wherewith this accident has afflicted me, has been accustomed with a joy which I am not able to express. For I am called home by my Princess, who has also signified in her Letter to me, that upon my return I shall have no reason to complain, either of her acknowledgment or the Emperours kindness. For this reason, and for what the Prince of the Sarmatians is able to inform you, be you your self judge, whether it does not concern us to put an end to the differences that stays us here in Germany.

When Martian had done speaking, Varanez obligingly testified how great a share he took in his satisfaction, being as much concerned therein, as it was possible for a real friend to be. Then after he had given him to understand how much he was grieved at the jealousy of Honorius and the misfortune of Athenais, as one that was wholly possessed with a new passion, and had no other thoughts but of seeing the Princess of Scythia, “ I confess, said he, that we spend our time very discontentedly upon the Banks of the Rhine, but this is my comfort, that there is nothing can hinder us from a sudden and honourable departure. Let us send therefore

“ therefore to desire a truce for three days, do you in the mean time consult with *Constance* for a general peace, and if the King of *Suevia* and the Rivals of *Pharamond*, shall obstinately continue in their injustice, let us take the *Franks* side, and then we shall see whether *Cologne* can long hold out against our united force.

Martian overjoyed at the Prince's resolution, quitted *Varanez* to begin the management of a design, so much for the good of so many Nations: But while they are assembled in the Camp to consider of propositions for an accommodation, the King of *Suevia* was projecting quite the contrary. He could not endure that the *Franks* should keep the two Forts, and was therefore resolved to make a sally out upon them, either instigated by the violence of his courage, or else to gain the affection of the inhabitants of *Cologne*, when they should see how ready he was to expose his person, to gain two such posts so necessary for their defence. *Briomer* inform'd of the Kings resolution, was much dismayed, and hasten'd to him to persuade him to change his mind. *What Sir,* said he, *are you so mistak'd as to sally out in person, or rather are you so weak as to surrender up at once a power, which you have had so much trouble to establish, and which is not yet so well fixed, but that it may be as suddenly ruin'd, so soon as you leave the City? The King of the Huns whom you have reason sufficient to suspect, is highly honoured in Agrippina. The Princesses are in great esteem, and where you are only fear'd, you will soon be slighted in your absence. After all Sir,* added he more earnestly, *will you expose your self to the hazard of being taken by your enemies, and to be reserved alive to see Viridomar in the possession of Polixena?*

At those words the King changed colour, and *Briomer* knowing that his mind was alter'd, *Sir,* continued he, *is it not better for me to make the sally, and for Gondemar also to be put upon the same duty, who is not of an age to be confin'd in a City environ'd with enemies? Besides that, as I am inform'd by some of his own servants, he has not the same affection for the Princess of Suevia, as he had before the Battel where he was taken Prisoner. And therefore Sir, 'tis but common prudence to remove him with the Soldiers under his command, from the charge you have confer'd upon him, and to place Suevians in the stead of those Burgundians that followed him, whereby you will become the sole Master of the destiny of the Princesses.*

The King of *Suevia* pondered upon his advice, with as much consideration as his troubles would permit him, and then embracing the *Cimbrian*, “ You speak reason *Briomer,* said he, I now foresee all that might have happen'd, through the fault which I had like to have committed, and since I find your counsel so good, I promise you never to undertake any enterprise without it. Let us take no farther care then, but only to defend a City where we have wherewithal to render our selves happy, if fortune favours our courage, and where if she prove unkind, we are in a capacity to render our Victors more miserable than our selves.” But *Sir,* replied *Briomer* transported by the violence of his active humour, will it not be necessary for me to make a sally, to let the inhabitants of *Cologne* see, that it is not only in their City that I am able to do them service? No, no, *Briomer,* cryed the King impatiently interrupting him, *never hazard the falling under your enemies power, but stay with me, where we will make them tremble in the midst of their victories.*

Then the ill natur'd *Cimbrian* reflecting upon what the King had said, and foreseeing the danger to which he expos'd himself, trembled to think of it not so much out of a fear of death, as out of a mortal apprehension that he should be no longer able to mischieve *Pharamond* or *Theobald*, should he be either slain or lose his liberty. So that having consented to the desires of a Prince, whose inclinations were so conformable to his own. *Sir,* said he with a bold and fierce look, such as he was wont to put on when he had any pernicious plot in his head, *I will not only not forsake your Majesty nor the Princesses, but I also solemnly protest before that Prince, whom I reverence above all the Princes in the world, that however fortune deals by us, Pharamond whom I will hate to the last gasp shall never be happy, if it be true that he is a Lover of Rosamond. For in short Sir, Rosamond and Bellariva shall perish if we lose Agrippina, and I will involve Polixena in the same destiny, if she will not consent to submit to your Majesty.*

Briomer made these detestable protestations, when news was brought of the resolution which had been taken, to demand a truce for three days. The King of *Suevia* was nothing surpris'd at first, that they had desired that time, thinking it had only been to bury their dead, and to require time to repair the damages that had been received in both the Camps, but his suspicious humour rendering all things doubtful, he examin'd the Messenger that came from the Army, by whom he found that it was *Varanez*, that had not only propounded the suspension of Arms, but also had thought it reasonable that *Martian* should confer with *Constance* about putting an end to a war, of which they knew he was grown weary. The violent King was strangely disturb'd to hear of this same change in *Varanez*, he dread-

ed a peace that would certainly ruine his expectations, and settle the prosperity of *Ibrasmond* and *Viridomar*. For he so well understood the haughty humour of that Prince that he would have a concession to his demands, or else withdraw himself and his Friends from the league; being desirous to impart his conjectures to the cruel *Cimbrian*. *Briomer*, said he, now it is that we stand in need of that constancy which we have shewed upon so many dangerous accounts.

And having so said, he declared to him what he thought of the Prince. *Briomer* agreed that *Varanez* had taken off his affections from *Rosamond*: but, Sir, said he to the King, if we intend to reduce a Spirit so haughty as his, we must go along with him for a time, that we may insensibly divert him from the course he pursues. But if he will be obstinate, and that there be no way to retain him with us, let us endeavour to make sure of Prince *Aldemar*, that we may have the Saxons and Jutlanders to our Friends, instead of of those Forces which the other will be sure to draw along with him. I have the same design, replied the King, and it may be I have thought of a way to bring it to pass.

He was about to have expressed himself more at large, when he was inform'd that *Martian* was arrived, not only to make certain propositions on the General's behalf, but to visit *Ibrasmond*, whose discontents of mind were more to be feared than the wounds that he had received in the last Conflict. The *Suevian* King was vexed to the Soul, to hear that *Martian* was come to *Cologne*: and while he was consulting *Briomer* which way to oppose the peace, without provoking the Captains, which they intended to preserve in the league, *Martian* alighted at *Ibrasmond's* Quarters, saw him, and endeavoured to comfort him up, but told him nothing of the news which he had received, only what he thought would not be any way offensive to him. But being gone to visit *Sannon* in another Apartment, certain Officers came to *Ibrasmond* out of respect: and by them that Prince, whose mind ran only upon *Eudoxia*, inform'd himself of all the particulars that concern'd that Princess. *Ibrasmond*, who was well acquainted with *Eudoxia's* disposition, knowing what the effects of her grief must be, was pierced with such a lively and violent sorrow, that no Thunderclap could have prov'd more terrible than the fatal tidings that he had heard. He beheld the Officer without speaking a word, but with eyes wherein the trouble and wildness of his looks spoke much more than his tongue could express. At length, "Cruel Fortune, cryed he with more vehemency than was seasonable for his strength at that time, was it not enough for thee to hate *Ibrasmond*, but that thou must persecute the incomparable *Athenais*? Spare, unjust and cruel Divinity, spare the greatest Beauty upon earth; and acknowledge that virtue at length whose brightness might be enough to clear the blindness of thy sight.

He could say no more, in regard his strength began to fail him: *Martian*, the Physicians and several others halted to his relief; but all their endeavours prov'd in vain for a person that desired nothing but death: when he had recovered a little strength, he made use of it only to bemoan himself; and rather making answer to his own thoughts, than to the people that spoke to him, "Fair *Athenais*, dolefully cryed he, incomparable *Eudoxia*, is it possible they should raise suspicions against you, more offensive to a person of your humour, than the gift of that Empire where I have seen you reign with so much glory? Divine Princess, did they crown you only as a victim which they intended to sacrifice? And thou prejudicated Prince, blind *Theodosius*, that Heaven should bestow upon thee the possession of a treasure, of which thou knowest not the value! Cast thy eyes upon the unfortunate *Ibrasmond*, and consider, that if he dies because he could not move *Eudoxia's* heart, there is little probability, that *Paulinus*, who so disturbs thy fancy with ill grounded suspicions, could ever triumph over *Athenais*, or enter into a heart prepossessed by *Theodosius*, and where he still reigns as ungrateful and unjust as thou art.

Ibrasmond accompanied those words with a deep sigh; and at length tears trickled down from his eyes in such abundance, as melted all the beholders into compallion: *Martian*, more sensibly afflicted, used all his endeavours to comfort his Friend. But the Prince beholding him with a languishment that moved all the standers by, "My dear *Martian*, said he, and will you oppose the only felicity that *Ibrasmond* can pretend to? He is about to terminate a life which he cannot endure but as a continual torment: and can he more gloriously end it, than in sacrificing it to the divine *Athenais*? Yes, *Martian*, I will sacrifice it, and the sacrifice which I offer to the divine *Athenais* will not be unprofitable to her reputation, when all the world shall see that *Paulinus* could have but little hopes, where nothing but despair proved so fatal to the Brother of *Gunderic*.

He would have said more, but the unfortunate *Athenais* presenting her self to his fancy, overpressed his soul with grief, that he could proceed no farther. *Martian* still desirous to save his life, did not stick to breath into him a desire and a probability of seeing *Eudoxia* a-

gain, so soon as she should be disengaged from the Court. But *Thrasimond* perceiving the intention of his Friend, *Ab, Martian*, cryed he, *why should you propose that which you could never approve? Without question you know how scrupulous and nice Athenais is, and you desire to make me hated by that incomparable person, at a time when I may move her compassion, and perhaps her acknowledgment.*

After those words he paused a while, but having recovered a little strength, *My dear Martian*, said he again, *nothing grieves me more but that I must leave you before I see you united to that Princess whom you so entirely love. But, Martian, I conjure you by that friendship which I have always faithfully preserved for you, to publish in the Court of Theodosius how Thrasimond came by his end, and to let the incomparable Athenais*——

He would have made a conclusion, but he pronounced the name of *Athenais* with such a redoublement of love and grief, that his Body being extremely weakened by the tediousness of his sufferings, and a great loss of blood, yielded to a violent agitation, which his soul was no longer able to resist.

Thus died the illustrious and unfortunate *Thrasimond*, a Prince whom a thousand noble qualities had rendered more worthy of a better fate. All the standers by bemoaned a destiny so deplorable; and *Martian* yet more afflicted, had not constancy enough to conceal his grief. And after he had shed sufficient testimonies upon his Herse, he took order that the Body should be sent to the Camp of the *Franks*, to the end, that *Gidiscles* returning into *Spain* might carry it to *Gunderic*. But as it was impossible they could bestow their moans and funeral Ceremonies upon him without a noise, *Sunnon* perceived that *Thrasimond* was dead, and laying his death as sorrowfully to heart as his present sufferings would permit, *Ab, poor Prince*, cryed he, *is this then the end of thy virtuous life? We have lost thee Thrasimond, but thou art gone but a few days before Sunnon; for I find too well the fatal passion that reigns in my heart, will have no better success than that which thou hast experienced.*

Then the serious protestation of *Amalazontha* so cruelly seized his imagination, that the disconsolate Lover, abandoning himself to his discontents, was suddenly reduced to a most miserable condition. Every one was grieved at it in *Cologne*, except the King of *Suevia* and *Briomer*. And the Princesses no sooner heard the news, together with the death of *Thrasimond*, but they were most sensibly afflicted as well for the one as the other. As for *Sunnon*, *Rosamond* and *Albisinda* highly esteemed him, not only for his own merit, but for *Pharamond* and *Marcomire's* sake. Yet durst not *Rosamond* speak for him, not being willing to address her self to a Princess who looked upon her as the cause of her own misfortunes; but *Albisinda* went to the Queen of the *Turingiens*, and finding the Princess of the *Franks* with her, she not only spoke, but was by her seconded with all the vehemency that could be expected from her friendship. *Polyxena* conjured *Amalazontha* with tears in her eyes, to have compassion upon the Prince her Brother, a Brother for whom she had a particular affection from her very cradle. The Queen of the *Turingiens* sigh'd, instead of returning an answer, and by the languishment which was observed in her eyes and her countenance, it might be easily conjectured that she was no better treated by fortune than those whose miseries made the loudest noise. For if *Rosamond*, *Polyxena* and *Albisinda* were cruelly separated from their dearest Brothers, and illustrious Lovers, yet they had some hopes to be relieved by their valour; even *Hunnimonda* her self, that had lost her Kingdom and her Parents, believed she should recover much more in the person of her beloved *Theobald*, than she had lost. But *Amalazontha* endured those mischiefs without any expectation of comfort or redress: she loved a Prince whose heart she knew was preengaged; she loved him in despite of her own reason, and against her own will; and whatever resolutions she took, she could not forbear loving what all the world admired as amiable. Nevertheless, she vigorously opposed the progress of that tyrannous passion; and as she was obliged to be just to *Sunnon*, and generous to *Rosamond*, she made those reproaches to her self, which redoubled the violence of her discontents. In this sad condition she beheld *Polyxena* and *Albisinda* with tears in her eyes, and in words that shewed the troubles of her mind, *Fair Princess*, answered she, *I cannot tell whether I have not spoken to my self for Prince Sunnon all that you your selves have spoken in his behalf; and whether I have not a thousand times considered, that it is enough for Ambiomer to accuse me of ingratitude, without giving Sunnon reason to make the same complaint. But after all this, I have not yet overcome the malignity of my destiny; however, I despair not altogether to shake off the yoke of my misfortune, and to do justice to a Prince who merits a better fortune than*—— *That Prince*, said *Polyxena*, interrupting him, *knows very well the value of your affections. But, Madam, I am to let you understand, that he is reduced to so deplorable an extremity, that I fear the kindness you begin to have for him, will be altogether ineffectual, if he receive not quickly some testimony from you, either by*
word

word if mouth, or under your hand. I should never refuse, replied the Turlingien Queen, to give Prince Sunnon a visit in your company, had I that command over my self which I ought to have. But, Madam, what can I answer to a Prince who says I render him unhappy, should he press me to declare my self, when I am not in a condition to do it to his advantage. Be satisfied therefore I beseech you with a Letter; I will write my real thoughts, and perhaps he shall have no reason to complain.

Polyxena mollified by the looks and language of Amalazontba, was contented that a Letter should suffice at present, to mitigate Sunnon's despair. Thereupon Amalazontba wrote the following lines to a Prince whose misfortunes she did not look upon with that indifferency with which he had taxed her.

The Queen of the Turlingiens to Prince Sunnon.

I cannot tell whether the Gods be mov'd at our misfortunes or no; but this I know, that I perceive such a Combat in my heart in your behalf, that I never felt the like before. Perhaps my reason will not always give ground, which in regard it is of your side, and pleads altogether in your behalf; there is some probability that you will not always have cause to complain of my injustice. The hope of this change ought to mitigate some part of your pains. Then mind your health, Prince, 'tis Amalazontba begs it of you and commands you by all that power which you desire she should have over your heart.

She had no sooner wrote this Letter, but she sent it away by one of her servants to Sunnon. Presently after, Polyxena waiting upon her, with an intention to have carried it herself: I have already, Madam, said she, sent away what you come for; deeming it convenient that my letter should precede your visit, to the end you might find the Prince in a better condition, if it be a truth that he has such a respect for me. The impatient Polyxena interrupting her, return'd her those thanks which she thought were her due; and immediately went to see her Brother that was so dear to her. She was no sooner come to his bedside, but she cast her eyes upon his Countenance; and perceiving an apparent mitigation of those sorrows that were imprinted in his looks before. "Well Brother, said she, will you not expel from your thoughts that despair which has hitherto oppress'd your spirits? And will you not agree, that you have now less cause to complain of Amalazontba, than you believed you had? I must acknowledge, dear sister, answered he, that that Divine Princess has done those things in my behalf, from whence I have received a more than ordinary Consolation. And I dare assure you, that if that kindness which she has begun to shew me, could but overcome at length that reluctancy which has always oppos'd my good fortune, I should not only recover and live, but I should also be the happiest man in the world.

He had no sooner concluded, but a pleasing phantasm of love causing him to ponder upon Polyxena's words, perswaded him that he was beholding to that Princess for the letter he had received; which, in regard it produced a suddain dejection of mind: "But, dear sister, added he, did not your entreaties, rather than Sunnon's sufferings, move Amalazontba to this compassion? "If you go about, answered she, to seek new ways to torment your

“ your self, you may believe that the Queen of the *Turingiens* only flatters you, to continue your sorrows by prolonging your life : but if you knew her humour, and would judge according to equity, you would see that *Amalazontba* is no dissembler, and that no consideration of friendship could make her write contrary to her own thoughts. Therefore, since she forbids you to despair, you have reason to hope : nor need you to question but that she is very much concerned for your preservation. “ Well, sister, answered he, my life and death are in the fair hands of the *Turingien* Queen ; for which reason I beg of you not to omit any thing which may be effectual to render her favourable and kind to my sufferings ; and to act for me with that affection which you have always testified upon occasions less important.

While *Sunnon* and *Polyxena* thus entertained each other, the King of *Suevia* was more differently perplexed ; not knowing what answer to give to the proposals that *Marcian* had made him : For as he hated the very thoughts of peace, yet durst not provoke those persons that desired an end of the War, he bent his mind by what stratagem he might disengage himself out of these intricacies. After he had considered of a thousand ways, at length he fixed upon one resolution ; at what time *Martian* came to attend him: Sir, said he to the King, *I cannot tell whether the Forces of your League are weary or no of the labours and dangers which they have so long undergone : but this I am sure of, that most of the chief Captains are clearly for a general Accommodation ; and to terminate the differences that keep so many Nations in Arms, one against another.*

Though the King knew what *Martian* came about, however, at first he would needs seem to be surprized, and indeed, to be very much vexed at it : and therefore, after a very smart manner ; “ Sir, said he, either I am deceived, or few of our Generals are of that opinion which you declare : For can you believe so many great Princes, passionately in love with *Rosamond*, will so easily renounce their hopes, to establish *Pharamond*’s felicity ? “ However, replied *Martian*, I must tell you, that the King of the *Franks* has fewer Rivals than you are aware of ; and there is one great Soldier in our Camp so far from fighting for *Rosamond*, that his only aims are to contribute to the delivery of that fair Princess, and to a general peace. “ I understand you, replied the King of *Suevia*, with a visible discomposure ; you mean *Varanez* without doubt : but though that Prince be so unconstant in his humour, there are Kings among us, that will more vigorously defend us, should you your self deprive us of your Recruits. *Martian*, after he had justified *Varanez* upon the change of his mind, with which the King of *Suevia* taxed him ; “ I am apt to believe, added he, that the assistance you speak of is not very necessary ; yet the manner of losing of it, for ought I know, may put you to more trouble than you are aware of. The King of *Suevia* apprehended too well *Martian*’s meaning ; and though he mortally dreaded, lest the Army of *Theodosius* should joyn with *Pharamond*’s, yet with his wonted natural fierceness : “ I understand your meaning, Sir, said he ; but let us speak and act more plainly. “ For your part, resolve as you please, either to stay with us, or joyn with *Pharamond*. “ For my part, the world shall know I am not so much afraid of my life, to fear any accident that can threaten it. Nay, it will be less advantageous to *Pharamond* to receive a large recruit, than to keep that equality of number that might ballance Fortune. For though she should bring me down to the lowest depth of despair, I will neither desire nor grant any favour ; but burying my self under the ruins of *Cologne*, I will involve in my destiny those persons whose loss will make my enemies repent of being Victors.

He pronounced those words with an air so conformable to his language, that *Martian*, who had all the reason in the world to suspect the violence of his humour, took his leave for fear of provoking him any farther, and went to consult with the King of the *Huns* what course to take to moderate a fury, whose menaces might prove so tragical.

But the politick King of the *Suevians* had no other desire than to hinder the *Greeks*, that were about to leave him, from joyning with the *Franks*, and to gain him time for the *Saxons* to come to the league before the truce were expired. To bring about his design, it behoved him to remove *Theodosius*’s Army, and to prolong *Martian*’s Negotiation : and therefore he would by no means presently hear of an accommodation, as well to spin out the time, as to take away all suspicion, should he appear too condescending to that from which all the world believed him so averse. However, he thought that *Martian* would not be easily put off at the beginning of an enterprise of so much importance, and that the greater reason he had to fear the consequences of the war, the more he would endeavour for a conclusion of it. Nor was he deceived in his conjectures : for while he was thus reasoning with himself, the King of the *Huns* came to him, and laid before him that it was now high time to calm the Tempest that had shaken all *Europe*. Nor do I believe your condition

dition to be so desperate, added he, to infuse into you these resolutions, of which *Martian* has given some intimation: But on the contrary that it will be much more for your advantage to make a peace and consent to the welfare of *Pharamond*. In short, you must resolve quickly upon the one or the other, before the departure of the *Greeks*, upon whom there is a necessity of leaving Germany.

He used so many other strong and pressing Arguments, that the King of *Suevia* after he had paused a while, and made as if he had had a great conflict with himself, thus began, Sir, said he, I find at length that there is a necessity for me to discover my very heart, and to speak to you with that confidence which the conformity of our age and quality requires that we should have the one in the other. I must tell you then that I am obstinately set upon war, not out of the hatred which I bear to *Pharamond*, for that is not so violent to hinder me from consenting to a peace, could I but reconcile my self to my enemies, without the absolute ruine of my own affairs: For if I consent to surrender *Rosamond* to *Pharamond*, I deare against me the *Burgundians*, *Hercules*, *Gepides* and *Alains*, and this only in favour of a Prince who believes he may forsake me without being ingrateful. And therefore before the treaty begin, I think it will be my best way to secure my self from the scandals that *Gondioch*, *Arderic*, and *Godegefile* will throw upon me, and that I also endeavour to have some security from *Pharamond* himself.

The King of the *Huns* overjoyed to find the *Suevian* King so well disposed, I am glad, answered he, that you are so well inclined to take that part, which it most concerns you to adhere to. Let us consider then how to deal with the Kings of the *Gepides* and *Alains*, for as for the King of the *Franks*, he is too much obliging and too much in love, to be ingrateful to the deliverer of *Rosamond*. Truly I think, replied the King of the *Suevians*, that I may rely upon *Pharamond*'s generosity, and that I shall have less trouble to unite my interests with his, than to preserve the alliance of his Rivals. But Sir, added he all of a sudden, I believe I have found out a way, not only to let you see that I have no reluctancy against peace, but also to oblige *Gondioch*, *Arderic*, and *Godegefile* to submit to the accommodation which you desire. To which purpose we must resolve to weaken our selves, by dismissing the forces of *Ibeodossus*, provided we may be assured that *Pharamond* will not insist upon more severe terms than he now demands. Were you well acquainted with that Prince, replied the King of the *Huns*, questionless you would have no cause either of fear or suspicion, and I dare be confident his acknowledgment would grant you your own conditions, provided you would deliver *Rosamond* to the King of the *Cimbrians*. Well then Sir, replied the *Suevian* King, let us put an end to the differences wherein we have interested so many Nations: Let us dismiss *Varanez* and *Martian* with their forces, and for my part I protest that I will endeavour to facilitate the success of the negotiation to the utmost of my power.

The King of the *Huns* fully satisfied with these expressions, failed not to fortifie the *Suevian* King in his good intentions, with all the arguments imaginable, as also to advertise *Martian* of all that had passed. *Martian* having joyfully received the news, immediately attended both the Princes, and in that last conference it was resolved upon, that that very day orders should be given for the departure of the *Greeks*, and for meeting of the Commissioners on both sides in reference to the treaty. *Martian* thereupon took leave of the two Kings, and as he was going the *Suevian* stedfastly beholding him, Pardon me Sir, said he, if I make you a small request, which I cannot forbear to desire though I believe it to be inconsiderable. It is only this, that you would not give the least cause of suspicion to *Gondioch*, *Arderic* or *Godegefile*, that I consented to the departure of your Troops. For then those Princes will look upon the loss of which we have been the cause, as the original of all those other misfortunes, wherewith they are threatned. I think it also necessary for me to send one of my Officers to the Camp, to conjure the Rivals of *Pharamond* not to oppose the march of your Army, lest they should draw out the *Franks* to your relief, and give you thereby good cause to joyn with our enemies. *Martian* cheerfully agreeing to the King of *Suevia*'s proposal, the King called for the Captain of his Guards, and having instructed him in a few words, he commanded him to follow *Martian*, and discharge himself of the Commission wherewith he had entrusted him.

While they are thus resolving, and that nothing but surprize and admiration alarm'd the Camp near *Cologne*, to hear that the *Greeks* were about to leave them, honour and renown resplendently shines in every part of the victorious Army of *Pharamond*. And yet there was a kind of gloomy melancholy clouded their joy, while every one grieved for the death of *Ibrahimond*, and the sad condition of *Sunnon*. Every one bewailed the Brother of *Gunderic*, every one longed to see the Brother of *Pharamond*, and if that lover of *Amalazouba* would have left the City where the fair Queen resided, the important offices which the King

of the *Franks* sent for his Ransome, would have soon freed that valiant Prince, from that Captivity which had befallen him, only to moderate the heat of his courage. But he not finding himself in a condition to fight for the Princess, was easily induced to stay in *Arippina*, till heaven and *Amalazontha* should dispose of his future fortune. However after he had received the Queens letter, he was much more at ease than before, and patiently endured those applications which were used for his recovery. The news of that change being spread in the Camp of the *Franks*, caused an extraordinary joy, and the same day as much to their content there appeared upon the *Rhine* a great number of boats and vessels, which *Flavian* and *Dinox* had built with a celerity equal to their fidelity and experience. Then the impatience of those illustrious Lovers that longed for the taking of *Cologne*, visibly appeared as well in their countenances as in their actions, and the whole Army having an awful respect to their Commanders, had no sooner received all necessary orders, but they set themselves to the building of the Bridge, with all the alacrity and expedition imaginable.

While so many thousand men were thus diligently employed, there arrived in the Camp a Soldier whose presence and train shewed him to be a person of no mean quality. Nor was it long ere he appeared to be *Sinibald* the Brother of the *Danish* King. But *Pharamond*, because he had heard several stories of his Adventurcs, and believed that he came to the Camp of the *Franks*, only because his Rival had declared for the *Saevian*, did him but the bare honours which he thought due to him, not testifying that acknowledgment which he used to do to other Princes, that came to fight for his interest. But afterwards in a much more obliging manner, he received two other extraordinary persons, who came to the Army the same day. Those were *Theon* and *Melufina*, who were desirous to impart to the King of the *Franks* and his illustrious friends, the observations they had made in the solitudes to which they had retired. The Queen of the *Visigoths* took *Melufina* into her own Apartment, *Theon* being lodged by *Pharamond*'s peculiar order: And in regard the world was highly perswaded of their great knowledge and foresight of future things, some there were who that very evening were importunate to understand, what would be the success of the war and the siege of *Cologne*. And in regard that *Theodolinda* was the first that put the question, as having a brother and a father in the City, "Madam, answered *Melufina*, there is such a chain of accidents in the order of the universe, that they seem to depend one upon another, so that we cannot think it probable that Heaven has brought to light the King of the *Cimbrians*, to deny us that which we expect from so strange a discovery. From thence it is, that *Rosamond* has the liberty to bestow her affections upon the King of the *Franks*. From thence it is, that the felicity of *Pharamond* overturning the pretences of his Rivals, shall quench that evil desire in them, of continuing the war to no purpose. "I think Madam, replied the Princess of the *Nemetians*, you might maintain our hopes by better reason than those you bring, and instead of observing the events of this lower world, you must look up and see in heaven, that which is not yet happened upon earth. "I confess, replied *Melufina*, that I have made some observations upon the success of this war, and would not stick to impart them did I not see here a more learned man, who can better satisfy your curiosity. "Then 'tis you prudent *Theon*, said the Queen of *Albion*, addressing her self to the famous Greek, that keeps us between hope and tear in reference to the siege of *Cologne*. For heavens sake, added *Placidia*, help us out of this cruel uncertainty wherein we live, and tell us as much as in you lies, what will be the end of these differences that divide almost all the world.

Thereupon *Theon* addressing himself to the Queen of the *Visigoths*, "Great Princess, said he, I make no question but we are now very near an happy end of those strange calamities, which perhaps have made Nations murmur against the providence that permitted them: Yet thereby has that providence shewed it self favourable to that virtue which it seemed to abandon, while it suffered it to undergo the toyls of war, that it might vanquish: and we may averr that vertue had been less renowned, had it been more at quiet. There was a necessity for a *Briomer* to oppose *Pharamond*, and for every one of you to have your particular persecutors, and heaven had in vain bestowed on you those heroick qualities which you possess, had it not delivered you over to the assaults of adverse fortune. Though I am deceived in the observations I have made, if you have now long time to suffer.

The whole Court retired very well satisfied with his predictions, and that which confirm'd their hopes was, that the next day came intelligence that *Theodosius* Army had left the confederate Prince, and had begun their march for *Constantinople*, and that *Martian* desired to confer with *Constance* between the two Armies, in order to the putting an end to a war, which had lasted too long already. This news spread such a lively and universal joy, through

the whole Camp of *Pharamond*, that it seemed to have passed through the hearts of the Captains into the countenances of the meanest Soldiers: nor did it stop there, but more and more augmented, upon the interview of the two Lieutenant Generals of both the Emperours, which produced so great a probability of coming to a general accommodation. The passionate *Pharamond* and the enamoured *Theobald* were transported with a real joy, when they understood in what a fair way they were to their real happiness. But *Vitidomar* and *Marcomire*, whose destinies depended absolutely upon the King of *Suevia*, they could not admit those hopes into their Breasts which others had conceived. *Constance*, *Wallis*, *Constantine* and *Taxander* testified no less impatience in behalf of their Friends, than for themselves; and though they had every hour the company of their Princesses, and that they were assured of their happiness, they could not but earnestly desire the liberty of *Resamond*, *Bellamira*, *Polyxena* and their fair and generous companions.

In the mean while, *Martian* was no sooner parted from *Constance*, but he return'd to give an account to the King of *Suevia*, who after he had seemed to be well enough satisfied with what had passed at the first Conference: *You must give me leave, Sir*, said he, *to be as careful of my Allies, as mindful of the peace, and Pharamond's advantages. It will be necessary then that the Province of Senonois be added to the Burgundians, and that Gondioch be settled therein, not only by the permission of Honorius, but by the consent of Pharamond to whom all Gallia has submitted.*

Martian had no sooner testified that he made no question of obtaining whatever the King of *Suevia* could pretend to; but the politick Prince, to prolong the Treaty, resolv'd to demand several Provinces in *Germany* for the *Alans*, *Gepides*, *Herules* and *Bastarnes*. Then being informed that *Sinibald* was in the Camp of the *Franks*, so soon as *Martian* was return'd to the Camp, he sent for the Prince of the *Saxons* to come to *Cologne*, to which *Aldemar* readily consented. The politick King having received him with all the honour, and all the marks of affection which he could expect from a Prince of his disposition, *Sir*, said he, *I know that Sinibald is in the Camp of our Enemies, and that Pharamond has promised him all the assistance he shall stand in need of, as well to repair his losses, as to recover Melanitha. But, Sir, I will let you see how highly I value such a Confederate as you are; for either Pharamond shall fore-go the interests of your Rival, and consent that you may be happy with the Princess, who is already yours by promise, or else he shall feel the war hotter than ever; and I will perish, together with all my friends, in the support of your pretensions.* *Aldemar*, who understood that *Sinibald* was really in the Army of *Pharamond*, testified his acknowledgment for such obliging protestations; but declared withal, that he would singly decide the difference which he had with *Sinibald*, without engaging many nations in a particular quarrel, who had undergone too many hardships and dangers already. Nevertheless, in regard the King of the *Sarmatians* was about to abandon the League in a few days, *Aldemar* thought it convenient to offer the *Suevian*, finding it so seasonable, the same courtesie that he had offered to him; which he did with an incomparable grace, yet not so much out of inclination, as out of acknowledgment.

The King of *Suevia* overjoyed that he had engaged in the League the *Saxons* and *Jutlanders*, minded nothing more than to gain time, till such a considerable recruit could come to the Camp. But when *Gilmond* and *Gilimer* were arrived with the forces under their Command, he put off his Vizer: so that when *Martian* came to *Cologne* the next time, their conference ended in a manner far different from the civilities they used to shew at other times. The Lieutenant of *Theodosius* accepting him with all the marks of a true satisfaction in his looks: *I protest, Sir*, said he, *all the Princes whom you call your enemies, are very generous; they have readily consented to what you demanded for the King of the Burgundians; and they will use all their endeavours to satisfy Humbert, Arderic, and Godegesile. I am very glad of it*, replied he: *but after I have spoken in behalf of my friends, I think it will not be improper, to desire security from Pharamond for my self. You shall have it in as ample and firm a manner as you can expect*, replied *Martian*: *You shall not only have the liberty to ally your Family to the King of the Franks, by the marriage of Vitidomar with*——

How! cryed he, interrupting him with a strange fury, and transported with choler, *would you that a perfidious wretch, that revolted to the Franks, only to sacrifice me to his ambition, that an unnatural monster that seeks my life, should strengthen himself by an alliance with Pharamond, and with my consent too? First let the men which you would save by a peace so tragical to me, perish a thousand times in the most bloody war that ever was waged upon the earth. But, Sir*, replied *Martian*, *how can you else so solidly reconcile your self to the King of the Franks, as you desire? I intend*, replied he, *to espouse Polyxena my self. Is it possible, answered Martian, that you should speak as you mean? Do you believe the Princess of the Franks will*

prefer you before Viridomar, or that Marcian dares make a proposal—— Let him let it alone. cryed he, interrupting him, and transported with his wonted fury: And I also declare, that Pharamond shall enjoy neither peace nor happiness as long as I live: and now do as you think fitting, take my Enemies part, assail Cologne, take the Town, but never expect that Pharamond shall get any advantage by a victory which I can render tragical and fatal when I please. “Yes, Sir, briskly replied the Lieutenant of Honorius, we will take Pharamond’s party, and beat up your Quarters with an Army so formidable, that the Ramparts of *Agrippina* shall not protect you from the Fire and Sword wherewith they intend to complete the quarrel of their great King.

Upon those words he flung out of the Room, and the furious Prince, instead of returning an answer, began to consider whether it were not his best way to seize his person. But thinking himself in a condition to resist *Pharamond*, not without some flattering hopes of victory, he would not commit an act of violence that might provoke *Varanez*, *Agathyrus* and *Agelmond*, and cause them to march back their several Forces upon him. He also feared the loss of *Aldemar*; but more lest the Inhabitants of *Cologne* should take Arms in the defence of an illustrious person so highly affronted, only for endeavouring to restore peace to their Gates. As for the Rupture, he was unwilling to be accounted the author of it himself, and therefore he sent for the Magistrates of *Cologne* to make his excuse; telling them that it was not his fault that the Treaty did not go on with that success as they expected. “I gave my consent, said he, to whatever might facilitate the accommodation; but when I had submitted to all that concern’d the general interest, they would invade the particular interests of my Family, they would dispose of *Viridomar* and *Albisinda*, and compel me to reward a Rebel that has born Arms against me.

Then to persuade them how moderate a person he was, “That the world may know, pursued he, how far I am from using those acts of violence of which my Enemies accuse me, I give free liberty to all persons that will leave our party to depart out of *Agrippina*, though it be to the Army of the *Franks*.

While by these politick insinuations he strives to preserve his own authority in a City where all his hopes were enclosed, *Varanez*, *Martian*, *Agathyrus* and *Agelmond* resolve to joyn with the Camp of the *Franks*. As for the King of the *Huns* and Prince *Balamir*, they had too great an aversion against the injustice of the league, too high an esteem of the noble qualities of *Pharamond*, and were too amicably linked to the interests of the King of the *Lombards*, not to embrace the same party. *Agelmond* at his departure from *Cologne*, proposed it to his Sister to go along with him, but the generous *Agione* besought him to let her stay with her illustrious companions, and to run the same fortune with them, rather than to shelter herself in the Camp of *Pharamond*. The magnanimous King of the *Lombards* could not disprove her answer, and the enamoured *Balamir*, who never parted from his charming Princess but with a most sensible sorrow, was so far from contesting with her resolution, that he not only admired it, but was overjoyed to hear it, notwithstanding the discontents it might cause him to suffer. As for *Aldemar*, they perceived him insupportably melancholy, by reason of the word which he had passed to the King of *Suevia*, whom he began to suspect to have spoken ill of *Pharamond*; but *Agathyrus* restored his mind to its former tranquillity, by telling him the reality of things. He inform’d him after what manner *Pharamond* had received *Sinibald*; and after he had justified that Prince, “Sir, said he, ’tis most true that the most just of the two parties would receive a most considerable reinforcement both from your own valour, and the courage of your Soldiers, yet I dare say, if you stay in this league, you may act more friendly in *Pharamond*’s behalf, than if you turn to his assistance with all your Forces. You cannot think, added he with a smile, that I speak in this manner to injure the virtue of Prince *Aldemar*, but rather to testify the reliance we have in your Generosity. Stay then where I see there is none else that can oppose the violences of the *Suevian* King, for the interest of the Princesses. For though the King of the *Gepides*, and the Prince of the *Burgundians* are noble in their inclinations, yet fortune will have it that *Ardaric* loves *Rosamond*, and that *Gondemar* has no power but under a Rival of *Pharamond*.

Aldemar having consented to whatever the King of the *Sarmatians* requested, promised to keep in *Cologne* with a good Body of *Saxons*, and in serving the league, at the same time to serve those most incomparable persons that were so tyrannically treated. Then continuing his discourse full of acknowledgment, “I will tell you more, said he, to avoid being ingrateful, and worsted in fight, that is, that I may avoid engaging with the preserver of *Melanthia*, I will only seek out *Sinibald*; *Sinibald* shall be the only enemy that I will have in your Army.

Agathyrfus having return'd him an answer, with a generosity little different from *Aldemar's*, the two Princes embraced as they took their leaves, and the King of the *Sarmatians* together with his illustrious friends, departed to joyn with the *Franks*, as was vehemently suspected in the League. But though their arrival produced an extraordinary joy in those places where their valour was so well known, yet the enamour'd *Pharamond* who trembled every moment for his *Rosamond*, was constrained to strive with himself to conceal his grief at the reception of those Princes, to whom notwithstanding his inward disquiet of mind, he gave those due honours with which they were very well satisfied.

Afterwards as his affliction was accompanied with a vehement desire of taking *Cologne*, for the delivery of his Princess, he consulted the same day with the King of the *Huns*, *Theobald*, *Varanez*, *Constance*, *Viridomar*, *Agathyrfus*, *Wallia*, and those other Princes and great Commanders in the Army, about the quick execution of so important an enterprize. Presently it was resolv'd that they should finish the Bridge, so that after they had taken a view of the materials provided for that purpose, *Pharamond*, *Viridomar*, the Prince of *Persia*, *Martian*, *Agathyrfus*, *Agelmond*, and *Balamir*, marched courageously and in good order, toward the Trenches of the Enemy, to repel such forces as should oppose the designs of the *Franks*. *Constance*, the Kings of the *Cimbrians*, and *Tongres*, the Prince of the *Danes* and *Gepides*, who commanded the *Vandals*, marched toward the two forts to succour *Telansr* and *Valerius*, if the enemy should fall upon them.

The King of the *Britains*, *Marcomire*, and *Artabure* embark'd in that little Fleet which was appointed to assist the workmen at the Bridge, as also to keep off with their shottwenty thousand *Suedes*, that lay on the other side of the River. *Constantine* besides his ordinary valour, made it appear how much experience he had learn'd, as well upon the *Loire* as upon the *Thames*. Nor were *Marcomire* and *Artabure*, though less experienced in Sea fights, wanting to signalize themselves by a thousand noble exploits. All this while there was no considerable sally made, either from the Town or from the Camp: For they thought it not convenient to hinder the making of a bridge, which would but serve to divide *Pharamond's* forces. But the next day the impatient *Varanez*, by the consent of the passionate King of the *Franks*, the enamour'd *Theobald* and the sorrowful *Viridomar*, sent to tell the enemy, that they wondred after they had refused the peace so kindly offer'd them, that they were so unwilling to come to a battel. That a deciding Battel would be less dangerous to the Soldiers, than the continuance of toyl and labour. That the *Franks*, the *Cimbrians*, and their allies gave them their choice, either to fight with all their forces united together, or to divide them by passing the River by consent, that both parties might have the more room to engage with less confusion. The general opinion of the League was to accept the latter proposition, and not to make any delay for fear that *Varanez* and *Martian* should recal the *Greeks*, and that *Agelmond* should bring up his *Lombards*, who were not far off in Germany.

The fiery *Godegesle* and the young King of the *Basternes*, were for marching with all speed, without putting themselves to the trouble of passing part of the Army over the River. But the King of *Suevia* was of a contrary opinion, for knowing the humour of *Theobald* and *Pharamond*, he was in hopes they would leave the bridge of *Cologne* free for those forces that should be appointed to pass the River. The King of the *Burgundians*, the King of the *Gepides* and the *Saxon* Prince, followed the last advice. Thereupon by consent of both parties, the *Franks* drew their forces out of the two forts which they had taken, and the *Suedes* permitted them to finish the bridge unmolested so that on *Pharamond's* side, the *Franks*, one part of the *Gaules*, the *Romans* and the *Cimbrians*, passed over into the Country of the *Ubians*, led by *Pharamond*, *Theobald* and *Constance*. The remainder of the *Gaules*, the *Britains*, the *Visigoths* and *Tongres* stayed in the Camp commanded by *Viridomar*, who was unwilling to pass the River, that he might avoid fighting with the *Suedes*, by the King of *Armorica*, the King of the *Tongres*, by Prince *Wallia* who had joyn'd his Troops to *Constantine's*, and by *Sinibald*. As for *Varanez* with his illustrious friends, together with *Marcomire* and *Artabure*, they marched with the King of the *Franks*. *Constance* stayed before *Cologne* with *Artabure* and *Gidsicles*, the Town being defended by the King of *Suevia*, *Gondemar* and *Briomer*. *Pharamond*, *Theobald*, and those illustrious Generals that were come over to him, embattel'd themselves to advance against the *Burgundians* and *Herules*, commanded by their own Kings. On the other side of the *Rhine*, the *Gaules*, the *Britains*, *Tongres* and *Visigoths*, were to give battel to the *Alsins*, *Gepides*, *Basternes* and *Saxons*. The valiant *Aldemar* was at the head of his *Saxons*, for in regard *Cologne* was not straitned, and that the Princesses had no need of his assistance, he rather chose to fight in the field, than to be shut up in the City.

The night preceding so memorable a Battel, was spent in giving rest to the Soldiers, while the Captains employed part thereof in mutual consultations, or in providing all things necessary for next days action. But no sooner had the Sun dispel'd the darknets of the night, but the sound of a thousand warlike instruments having awakened the Soldiers, and excited their courage, every one prepared to signalize himself in the most important Battel that was ever fought. Every one stood to his Standard or to his colours, nor did the Generals omit any thing which concern'd their duty. After every Nation had perform'd the ceremonies of the religion which they profess'd, *Pharamond* and *Theobald* rode from Rank to Rank, with their Vipers up to shew themselves to the Soldiers, by whom they were truly honoured. Some they encouraged with the hopes of honour, to others they promised rewards, not failing to speak and act in such a manner, as was most proper to excite their valour. *Friends*, said they, *Remember that the Army which we are going to encounter, have refused the peace we offer'd them, but remember withal that you have overcome them already more than once: So that it behoves you to resolve to dye honourably with your Swords in your hands, rather than to fall into their hands. For what usage can you expect from an enemy so irreconcilable? what favour can you expect from a League, so barbarous to the fairest Princesses in the world?*

They spoke these words with so much vehemence, and there shone such a Heroick Vigour in their countenances, that the Soldiers animated by their language, and by the confidence they had in their valour, by their shouts and acclamations testified the fiery impatience that transported them, and called impatiently to be led on to the Combat. The Princes overjoyed to observe so noble a resolution in their Soldiers, advanced toward their enemies in good order, and full of those hopes which appeared in their eyes. The King of the *Franks* led the right wing, with the Prince of *Persia* and the King of the *Sarmatians*, *Theobald* led the left accompanied by *Martian* and *Agelmond*, and the King of the *Huns* led the battel, assisted by the valiant *Balamir* and Prince *Marcomire*. On the other side, the fierce *Godegesile* and the King of the *Burgundians* having ranged their men, like experienc'd Captains, adding the Fire of jealousy to that of their courage, mov'd toward their Rivals with countenances both bold and martial.

So soon as the Armies came within their Arrows flight of one another, they challenged each other with a menacing hollow, and then discharged a shower of arrows that darkned the sky. Now in regard that *Gondioc* was oppos'd to *Pharamond*, and the King of the *Herules* to the *Cimbrians*, they met more than once, but more than once they were enraged to see themselves parted, without any hopes of meeting again. However, *Gondioc's* misfortune brought him once more to engage the King of the *Franks*, and the combat which began with a redoubled fury, was ended to the advantage of the invincible *Pharamond*. Not but that *Gondioc* resisted with a valour, which would have attracted admiration, had it not been oppos'd against the King of the *Franks*. For as he was lifting up his hand to strike his adversary, *Pharamond* made a thrust at him so nimbly, with so much vigour and so fortunately, that his Sword finding a defect in his Cuirass, ran up to the Hilt in *Gondioc's* body, who falling at his horses feet without any appearance of life, the generous *Pharamond* commanded *Cleomer* to cause him to be carried off, and to give him such relief as he was capable to receive.

He pursued his victory with little resistance, for the *Burgundians* terrified as well by his valour as by the loss of their own King, soon betook themselves to flight, notwithstanding all the endeavours of *Guntran* to rally them again. *Cologne* opened her gates to them, as well as to the *Herulians* who followed them soon after, pursued by *Theobald*, who had obtained the same advantage over *Godegesile*, as *Pharamond* had obtained over *Gondioc*.

How many noble actions should we have so described, were we to give a particular relation of the exploits of those two Princes, or to set down the wonderful acts of the Prince of *Persia*, *Martian*, the King of the *Sarmatians*, *Agelmond*, *Balamir*, *Marcomire*, and the King of the *Huns*. But as they are too long to recite, let us see how far valour and courage displayed themselves in the Army commanded by *Constance*, *Viridomar*, *Constantine*, *Wallia*, and the King of the *Tongres*. The King of the *Basternes* at the beginning challenged the Prince of *Suevia*, and there was a fierce and obstinate encounter between them, wherein the enamoured *Humberz* manifested the eager desire he had, to please the father of his Princess. But the unfortunate Lover was forced to yield, for *Viridomar* having wounded and taken him prisoner, put all the *Basternes* to the rout. *Constantine*, *Wallia*, *Taxander*, and on the other side, *Arderic* and *Aldemar* outdid themselves, and the two Lovers of *Melafintha* having fought each other out, met at length with that animosity and fury, which only ended

ended in the death of *Sinibald*. After that *Aldemar* and *Ardaric* retreated in pretty good order, and regained their own Trenches; by which means, and by the coming on of the night, they saved themselves from the pursuit of the Enemy.

But if these terrible Warriours had surpassed the hopes that was conceived of their valour, you may easily conjecture that the famous *Constance*, seconded by *Artabure* and *Gidifcles*, had won no less honour: for having pursued the Forces that sallied out upon him, to the Walls of *Cologne*, he had made use of his advantage with such an undaunted courage, and a perfect experience, that he had lodged himself in a readiness to attack the Counterscarp, notwithstanding all the resistance that *Gondemar* could make. But while he left the place to oppose the Captain that pressed so vigorously upon him, *Briomer* got possession of the Cittadel by the help of the King of *Suevia*, whereby the wickedest person became Master of the lives and destinies of the fairest persons in the world.

In the mean time, *Pharamond*, *Theobald*, *Varanez*, and their illustrious Friends, though most of them wounded, advanced toward *Cologne*, not losing a moment of time, with an intention to carry the City with a celerity becoming their love and valour. They advanced toward the Walls with aspects enough to have terrified the Defenders; and the fierceness of their looks was soon supported by actions that caused a far greater dread. *Aldemar* was then in *Agrippina*, where he consulted sometimes with *Gondemar*: but though those two Princes were just in themselves, and that they had the same resolutions to serve those incomparable persons that were shut up in the Castle of *Cologne*: however, they did all they could in defence of the cause wherein they had engaged. The King of *Suevia*, having now no more than these two valiant persons to oppose against so many that assailed him, with a horrible discomposure stood studying what resolution to take: for his despair was enough to have killed him for very grief, had it not found a consolation suitable to his humour, and the violent passions that turmoiled him, in the consideration of those calamities to which he was able to reduce *Pharamond* and *Viridomar*. This active and impetuous humour carrying him at length to make a sally, he prepared himself for the encounter, having first sent word to *Briomer*, that he should be sure to remember his promise. But being opposed to the assaults of *Constance*, he found more resistance than he foresaw; and indeed he had lost his life, had not the generous *Artabure* looked upon him as the Father of *Viridomar* and *Albifinda*, and had he not had a respect to that Dignity to which all the world submits with reverence. At the same time news came to *Pharamond* and *Theobald*, that *Gondioch* and *Godegesile* were still alive, and that their wounds were not mortal, whereupon the magnanimous Princes gave strict command that they should be looked to with all the care imaginable. Their Officers failed not to obey their orders exactly; but though the King of the *Burgundians* had something of moderation in him, the King of the *Herules* less patient, could not endure to outlive his misfortune: so that he died soon after through the violence of his lorrors, having torn the plaisters from his wounds.

The next day *Guntran* and *Gilmond* got into *Cologne*, and *Gidifcles* with his *Vandals* relieved *Artabure*, with order to make some attempt to draw out the Enemy. For at the same time, though on the opposite side, the King of the *Franks*, the *Cimbrians*, the *Sarmatians*, the *Lombards*, *Martian*, the Prince of *Persia*, the Prince of the *Huns*, *Marcomire*, *Meroveus* and *Genebaud*, having prepared long Ladders, were about to fill up the Ditch with a resolution to scale the Walls, whatever danger they met with. The news of that enterprise coming to the old Camp on the other side of the *Rhine*, *Viridomar* was resolv'd to share in the honour of such a bold Adventure, and to that intent pass'd the Bridge with the Prince of the *Visigoths*. As for the Kings of the *Britains* and *Tongres*, though they were near their Princesses, they were sorry they could not joyn with their illustrious Friends, but being to keep *Ardaric* in Play, they resolv'd to put an end to the war on their side.

The invincible *Pharamond*, the undaunted King of the *Cimbrians*, the valiant *Viridomar*, the fierce *Varanez*, and all the other renowned Soldiers whom we have named, boldly advanced toward the Walls of *Agrippina*, notwithstanding the showers of Arrows, Stones and combustible matter which fell from the Walls. There they lost six thousand Soldiers, and a great number of Officers; Prince *Meroveus* was slain, and *Agelmond* was run through the Arm with a Javelin, *Varanez* received so ponderous a blow upon his Helmet, that he was beaten down almost senseless at the feet of *Agnibarsus*: but notwithstanding the terror of so much danger, they began to mount. *Viridomar*, *Theobald* and *Pharamond* himself were wounded. But at length, notwithstanding all the resistance of *Aldemar*, *Gondemar* and *Guntran*, the transported Lovers got up to the Battlements, of which they took hold with one hand, while the terrible blows of the other removed all opposition out of their way. The Princes, who had defended that Post so vigorously, were forced soon af-

ter to be carried off, by reason of their wounds, the news whereof coming to the King of *Suevia's* ears, he resolv'd to retire back into the City, either to repel the Enemy, or die with honour. But *Gidifcles*, who besides the violence of his humour, was puffed up with the honour of commanding his own Country men, thought himself oblig'd to make sure of his victory, and pursuing the King of *Suevia*, wounded him dangerously, and fain would have killed him before he could get into *Cologne*. The fierce Prince, notwithstanding his wounds, his age and his faintness, was resolv'd to run where the danger was greatest, and encouraging the Troop that environed him, *Come on, my Friends*, said he, *let us go and tumble from the Walls these rash fools, whom we shall easily vanquish, and send to seek their Graves in our Ditches.*

He would have said more, but his strength failing him, they were forced to carry him to his Lodging, and to give him such relief as he stood in need of. At the same time there was a great noise that the Town was taken: and indeed *Pharamond*, *Theobald* and *Viridomar* were got down, followed by *Agathysus*, *Martian*, *Balamir*, *Waliala*, *Marcomire* and *Genebaud*, while *Constance* and *Artabure* had entred at another part, after they had lost *Gidifcles* and more than four thousand Soldiers.

The Victors immediately caus'd the heat of slaughter and plundering to cease, and sent to summon *Briomer* to yield up the Princesses. The King of the *Franks* went to *Sannon*; *Agathysus* took care of *Aldemar*, *Marcomire* of *Gondemar*, and the Prince of *Suevia* halted to be serviceable himself to his Father. But upon the hearing of his name, the furious King gave such a look upon the Officer that brought him word, as sufficiently declar'd his mind; and understanding that *Viridomar* and *Pharamond* were in *Agrippina*, he trembled for madness, and a short while after he was all over of a cold sweat. His assistants did not believe then he had long to live, when the King putting his strength to the utmost stress, call'd to one of his Esquires next his Bed-side, and demand'd of him what news of *Briomer*. So soon as he understood that he was alive, and Master of the Cittadel, resuming his speech, *I die satisfied*, cry'd he, *since there yet remains alive so courageous a person, and faithful to me, in such a condition to mischieve my Enemies.*

With a consolation of this nature expired a Prince whose end was answerable to his life. *Viridomar* was much concern'd for his loss, how unjust soever his Father had been. And while the *Suevians* throng'd to acknowledge their Sovereign, news was brought that *Briomer* demand'd three days to set his own particular affairs in order, as also to capitulate for those that adhered to him. The passionate Lovers, who after so many crosses and sufferings saw their happinesses so near approaching, thought the time to be insupportable, so that they were more than once resolv'd to storm the Castle: but the frantick humour of the *Cimbrian* being more dreadful to them than a million of armed men, they determin'd to yield to that person who made them tremble in the midst of their triumphs: not but that they sometimes flatter'd themselves with hopes, that *Briomer*, thinking to reap some great advantages to himself, might at length prefer a considerable advancement before the pleasure of acting a crime which he could not commit without running the hazard of his life. Nevertheless, those thoughts, though ground'd upon strong probabilities, could not assure them, when they reflect'd upon the wickedness of the person that still alarm'd their quiet; which made them undergo disturbances hardly to be express'd, though they had business sufficient at such a time as that. In short, besides that they were wounded, it behov'd them to pacifie the present Tumults, and to receive *Placidia*, the Queen of *Albion*, *Theodolinda*, the Princess of the *Nemetians*, and the famous *Melufina*; who were arriv'd under the safe conduct of the Kings of *Armorica*, and the *Tongres*; being attended by a great number of Officers, by *Theon*, *Dinox* and *Flavian*. *Constantine* and *Taxander* had brought the Enemy's Army on their side, to accept of Conditions of peace; so that the Kings of the *Gepides* and *Basterns* removed from the banks of the *Rhine*, because they would not be witnesses of their Rival's happiness. *Varanez* and *Agelmond*, whose wounds were neither dangerous nor painful, entred also that day into *Agrippina*. And at the same time *Aldemar*, *Contran*, *Gondemar* and *Sannon* began to rise, and resolve to go abroad the next day: So that all things began to tend to the revolution which was desired. Nevertheless, the Princesses not being yet at liberty, they durst not open their hearts to admit those joys, which seem'd to crave entrance. On the contrary, the enamour'd *Pharamond*, the King of the *Cimbrians*, the King of the *Suevians*, the Prince of the *Huns*, *Marcomire*, *Gondemar*, *Sannon*, and *Contran*, were possess'd with a deep languishment, that stifled their publick rejoicing: and whatever could be said for their consolation, they were always in fear for the sake of those persons whom they lov'd; and that fear was incompatible with all other pleasing passions. The Queen of the *Visigoths*, to whom *Melufina* had declar'd what

whatever concerned the fortune of *Pharamond*, laboured to fill that Prince with hopes; and assured him that he should not only be suddenly happy with *Rosamond*, but that there was not any Monarch in the world, to whom the Heavens had promised a more numerous, or more glorious train of Successors. Though the King of the *Franks* had too great a soul to entertain a slight belief, yet he could not chuse but hearken to *Placidia* with great attention: for in regard she quoted two Authors, whose knowledge he could not despise, after so many pregnant proofs of their experience, no question but the discourse of the Queen of the *Visigoths* made some impression in his mind. In so much, that *Placidia* taking notice thereof, and being desirous wholly to convince the Prince, desired *Theon* the same day to truit her with those observations which he had made, concerning the most remarkable accidents, that should befall the Monarchy of France. You may very well think, *Madam*, answered he, *that I shall never be backward to yield you all obedience; yet, with your Majesty's permission, I should be very unwilling that any other than Pharamond should see what I have done for his sake: for there are many Kings at present in Cologne, whose Kingdom one day shall be all reduced under the Dominion of the French; and there is no necessity for me to give them the trouble of knowing so much.*

Concluding those words, he presented several papers to *Placidia*; who gladly receiving them, delivered them into the hands of the King of the *Franks*, when he came to visit her in the evening, and to know of her whether the Emperor *Honorius* would be pleased to come to *Cologne*. *It was his pleasure*, answered she, *that I should come hither; and that I should leave him, as sick as he is, to accompany those fair Princesses with whom you find me.* But, *Sir*, added she, *I believe you will see him here in a few days; for his reason, and his gratitude to the King of the Cimbrians, have made a fair progress toward the subduing a passion, which we have observed to have been very violent formerly.* After they had a while continued this discourse, *Pharamond* retired to the place prepared for him: and in regard he did not believe that any thing could be said concerning his fortune, without mentioning his Princess, so soon as he came into his chamber he opened the papers which he had received, and there he read the words which *Theon* had written, after he had compared his Observations with *Melusina*.

PREDICTIONS

PREDICTIONS

CONCERNING THE

Monarchy

OF THE

FRANKS.



Whether the Rules of a Science, which has never failed me hitherto, are false and uncertain, or *Cologne* shall be taken in a few days; and in a few days after, the King of the *Franks* shall be happy with the Queen of the *Cimbrians*.

Their felicity shall be too great to be of a short continuance; they shall enjoy it as long as they live: and it shall descend to a numerous Train of Illustrious Successors: And shall be in a manner Hereditary to the flourishing Monarchy which they have founded.

However, I must acknowledge, that the Empire of the *Franks*, according to the common-fate of Kingdoms, shall not be free from Troubles, and disturbing Revolutions; but it shall remain immoveable in the midst
of

of the most violent flogs of Fortune : And beginning with *Pharamond*, shall endure to the end of the World.

The Bounds thereof shall extend according to the difference of Princes, to whom it shall owe Subjection ; but the usual Bounds thereof shall be the two Seas, the *Alps*, the *Pyreneans*, and the great River which we see.

Among the number of the Kings that shall succeed to *Pharamond*, there shall be many of high Renown : But not having leisure to mention them all, I will not detain you, till I come to two great Monarchs, that shall be the Glory of their Age, as well as of their Nation.

The first, in order of time, shall enlarge his Conquests into *Germany*, into *Italy*, into *Spain* ; shall subdue many Nations, succour others. He shall assume the Title of Great. He shall pull down a Monarchy, and raise an Empire.

France shall wish a long time after for the other, and at length Heaven shall send him into the world ; and shall send him so accomplished, that his People shall believe Heaven was all the while creating him for their satisfaction.

There shall appear in his Person, and all his Actions that Character of Grandeur, that shall distinguish him from all other men.

He shall excell all his Subjects in Prefence, in Aspect, in Wit, and Grandeur of Courage, to the same degree that his Birth has exalted him as their Sovereign Master. Yet, at that time shall his Subjects excel all other Nations.

He shall be just. He shall make those Laws, which he shall exactly observe himself. He shall suppress Luxury, establish Commerce. He shall cherish Arts and Sciences by his Liberality. And in a word, he shall be endued with all the Vertues of a great Prince, and all the Qualities of a real honest man.

He shall be as Magnificent as the ancient Kings of *Persia*, and as Valiant as the famous *Macedonian*, that destroyed their Empire.

Honour he shall passionately love. He shall forsake Pleasures, to encounter Dangers. He shall be at the head of his Army, when the most indefatigable Warriors are glad to be at rest in Cities.

He shall subdue Provinces in as little time as others travel through them.

His Subjects shall live at their full repose, free from the fear of their Neighbours, to the admiration of all the World.

He shall make a Voyage no less magnificent than the Triumphs of the Ancient *Romans*; but which shall much surpass them in Glory and Pomp, while the eyes
of

of the Spectators shall be dazzled at the Lustre of that great Prince's Court.

This Pompous Festival shall be attended—

P*haramond*, whose Soul was infinitely fraught with Generosity, was so far from envying so great a King, that he was overjoyed at the number of his Successors; so that if any pensiveness intermixed it self with his satisfaction, it was because the Learned *Theon* had not completed his observations in reference to a Monarch that was one day to be so eminently renowned. But while his thoughts were set upon this Hero, *Briomer* loses no time, labouring to put an end to his days in such a manner as was conformable to his natural Genius; and worthy to crown all his crimes. In the first place he resolves to die, and upon that resolution he grounds all those others, which he took up against the most illustrious persons in the world. He believes it not enough to kill the Princesses, they must die a strange death, *Pharamond* must also partake of their sad fate; and if he can, he will involve all the other Lovers in his ruine. The more easily to execute this execrable design, he puts out of the Cittadel all those Soldiers whom he suspects; and he considers whether he shall not expel two *Saxons* that were sent to him some few days before: his suspicious humour resolves it; but certain reflections made him wave it. He considers that those two persons, having no obligations to the *Sueves* that remained with him, might have an eye upon them, and inform him of whatever they might undertake against him: he sees no likelihood that *Aldemar*, unknown to him, and who knew none of the Princesses, should have any reason to make any party in the Castle more than *Balsmir* or *Gondemar*, nor can he imagine that he himself should be thought capable of the last crime which he intended to commit, it not being probable, that a person in a condition to make a good capitulation, would forgo it, and renounce his life only for the destruction of those from whom he might be in hopes of a considerable fortune: so that he prepares himself with more boldness to the execution of his abominable design; and that he might not breed any suspicion among the Soldiers to make a rãutiny, he tells them, that he intended to make a shew of exposing the Princesses to some eminent danger, only to create a fear in the Victors, and to obtain the better conditions. He sends also to *Rosamond*, *Bellmira*, *Polyxena* and the rest of their illustrious companions, to tell them, that they might go to a place where he gave them liberty to walk, having made choice of it as most fit to his purpose. This place was a pleasant Gallery, though the windows were barred with Iron, but being supported with wooden Pillars: mark how he had laid his plot. The Princesses were no sooner entred, but he locks three or four doors upon them, he either removes, or employs the Soldiers upon several occasions; after that, he goes down, and lays combustible matter about the Pillars, he lights a Torch and sets in a corner of the Room, and then draws his Dagger with an intention to kill himself, should he be in any danger of falling alive into the hands of those Princes whom he called his Enemies. Then did his Soul swim in all the joy to which he had aspired; but considering that he should not see *Pharamond* involved in the mischief which he was about to execute, he wanted something to complete his content. Therefore to accomplish his satisfaction, he resolved to feed his eyes with the affliction of that Prince; to which end, he sends for him out of a desire to have some conference with him. He promises him that he should find him alone without offensive Arms at a window which looked out into a little Courte which he appointed, provided the King would come in the same posture, and that the door after him so soon as he was entred, Though these precautions were persuasive enough,

that a person so wary was not over hasty to die, yet the King of the *Franks*'s Friends would not yield that he should expose himself upon the word of a person whose humour and perfidiousness was so well known. But the enamoured Prince was so far from listening to their advice, that he would omit nothing which he thought might tend to the liberty of his Princess: so that without any more ado he went to the place where *Briomer* had appointed, and where the *Cimbrian* soon after came in the same posture as he had promised. So soon as he perceived the passionate King of the *Franks*, he cast a terrible look upon him, and addressing his speech to him in a most dreadful tone, Pharamond, cryed he, *thou knowest what I have done to advance my Son to the Throne, that Son who was the object of my cares, and whom I loved as much as I hate thee. Nevertheless, thou knowest that it was thou that slewest this Son of mine, that was my only hope and consolation. Thinkest thou then that Briomer, whose humour thou art so well acquainted withal, can ever be reconciled to thee? Thinkest thou that he can suffer thee to be happy with Rosamond? No, no, he will never be guilty of so mean a spirit; he will have the pleasure to sacrifice to his revenge that which thou lovest above all the world; and it shall be his comfort to his death, that he has rendred thee as miserable as thou hast rendred him unfortunate.* After those words he was about to return, when the terrified Pharamond, *Hold, hold*, cryed he, *spare the noblest blood in the world; and if thou seekest for victims, take the life of Pharamond, which is so detested by thee. I will attempt that life which thou offerest*, replied he, *after the most tragical way I can think of, that is, by the destruction of Rosamond.* *How!* cryed the disconsolate Pharamond, *is there no way to soften thy cruelty? no way to save the life of my Princess? Take my life, take my Dominions——* I require nothing, replied the inhumane Villain, *since I have preserved my hatred to this hour, and that I see my self in a condition to second it.* He had no sooner pronounced those words, but without expecting Pharamond's answer, he turns about, goes where his rage carries him, and sets fire to the combustible matter.

Then the two *Saxons* who had laid their design declared themselves, and taking arms how weak soever their party might be, *Fellow Soldiers*, cryed one of the two addressing himself to the *Suedes*, *you are lost if you save not the lives of the Princesses, you have only this way to obtain your pardon, do you believe that a desperate person who runs headlong to his own destruction, takes any care of your interests?*

He could say no more the time was so short, and the *Suevians* perswaded by his words, and the extremity to which they were reduced, presently took the *Saxons* part: So that the one half endeavoured to force open the doors, the other descends to put out a fire, that had daunted the courages of the most undaunted hearts. Pharamond, *Theobald*, *Viridomar*, and all the other lovers were mortally afflicted, but instead of standing to bemoan themselves, they brought their battering engines, made a breach, ascend the Gallery, and finding the Princesses already escaped by means of the succour which the Soldiers had afforded them, every one flew to her that ruled his affections. Upon this occasion it was easie to observe, how far love surpasses friendship, for Pharamond ran toward the Princess of the *Cimbrians*, without any more ado, in a place where *Polixena* was in danger. *Theobald* and *Viridomar* ran to *Henrimonda* and *Polixena*, *Marcomire* took *Albifinda*, and *Sannon* the Queen of the *Turingiens* who was very ill at that time: *Balamir* the Princess of the *Lombards*, *Gondemar* the Princess of the *Tongres*, and *Gumtran* *Blefinda*, a noble Lady of the Royal blood of Pharamond.

These happy Lovers every one carried away what was most dear to them, and feeling these inward transpartations of joy which are not to be expressed, and the precious burdens which they carried in their Arms, being too charming to be troublesome, they flew through the flames with that swiftness which they could not have done, had it not been to save their Princesses. No sooner had they got them out of danger, but they threw themselves at their feet, not having the power to speak a word, so much were they transported with their several passions, and only gave those incomparable persons to understand by their looks full of love and joy, that which they could not otherwise express. The Princesses at another time would not have suffered such illustrious and renowned Hero's to have kneel'd so long before them, but then they were so little Mistresses of their own thoughts, that they hardly knew what they did. They could return no answer but as the others had spoke to them, their eyes were their interpreters, but it was no difficult thing to observe that the tenderness which rests in the soul of a lovely person, is far beyond the most ardent and tumultuous affection in the most passionate of lovers. However they were about to have fallen into other discourse, when the Queens of the *Britains* and *Visigoths*, *Theodolinda* and *Adelaisada* came at the same time as well to embrace their friends and rejoyce with them as to admire the most incomparable *Rosamond*, who had filled the world with the fame of her

her charms, as also to see the Queen of the *Turingiens*, and the lovely Princesses of *Suevia* and *Lombardy*.

While these most admired persons are bestowing upon one another the testimonies of their esteem and affection which they mutually merited : The inhumane miscreant had no sooner lighted the fire, from whence he expected such dreadful consequences, but he retired into his Chamber to behold the ensuing desolation. But hearing the *Saxons* speak, and finding the *Suevians* overperswaded, he stabbed himself with the dagger which he had ready provided for that purpose, and was fallen upon the floor without any appearance of life. When they found him in that condition, several persons ran to behold so famous a criminal, and a *Frank* Officer approaching to his help, Briomer, said he, *fear nothing, the King my Master is more generous than thou hast been wicked.* How, cried he interrupting him with a strange surprize, *is not Pharamond destroyed with Rosamond in the Flames?* No, no, replied the *Frank*, *Pharamond and Rosamond are likely to live together, with more felicity than thou hadst design'd them misfortune.* If it be so, replied the despairing Briomer, *thinkest thou I will receive help from a person that brings me the most dreadful tydings that ever could have pierced my ears? Go, cruel, go, mayest thou perish as miserably as I, and mayest thou live to be another Briomer to this Pharamond, whom I have the pleasure to hate to my last gasp.*

Upon those words he laid his hand upon the wound to have torn it wider, but his weakness which would not permit him, soon accomplished that which his fury could not execute. So dyed, but too late, the most famous villain that ever was, who as he expired, preserved that tell aspect in his face, which the paleness of death could not sweeten.

The Princesses as well by the will of those persons who had the disposal of them, as from their own inclinations, and out of the acknowledgment due to their illustrious Lovers, had now remitted that severity which decency did not now oblige them to continue, at such a Jubilee as that. So that love and joy displayed themselves in *Cologne*, more splendidly than had been seen before in any City of the world. The Queen of the *Turingiens* was fallen into a distemper, caused by those violent Conflicts in her heart that had been of so long continuance. Her reason, her generosity, her friendship for *Rosamond*, and her gratitude toward *Sunnon* perswaded her to extirpate out of her heart a passion which was the enemy of her repose : and yet that passion, proceeding from a natural inclination, and supported by a vast merit, had held out against all the assaults she could make upon it. But a war so rude could not continue in so delicate a place, without a sensible devastation. *Amalazontha's* distemper increased through the happiness of the *Cimbrian* Princess, whatever the unfortunate Queen could do to resist it ; *Is it possible,* said she, with tears in her eyes, *that my destiny should be so spiteful, to make me guilty of those unjust actions which I myself condemn, and fain would not commit? Why should I love the person that cannot love me? Wherefore can I not look upon Rosamond, rather as my friend, than as my Rivalless? And wherefore should I not bestow all my affections upon a Prince, upon whom I ought to have bestowed them long since?* These vehement complaints, the effects of the King of the *Franks's* presence, and the secret reproaches which the sight of *Sunnon* taxed her with, soon reduced that fair and unfortunate Princess into a condition sufficient to have moved the compassion of persons less sensible. All the whole company went to see her, but she desired them to forbear frequent visits, requesting only the society of *Sunnon* and *Polyxena*. By the conversation of these two persons it was, that the passion which she had for so long time endeavoured to cherish, began to take root in the heart of *Amalazontha*. For while *Sunnon* continued near her, transported with love ; and that she could not chuse but believe that *Pharamond* at the same time, neglectful of her, surrendered up all his affection to *Rosamond*, she redoubled her endeavours in favour of a Prince that had so well deserved her love. Thereupon she yielded to *Sunnon* that heart, of which he had so passionately desired the possession. But the Prince enjoyed it so small a while, that he hardly had time to know whether he had obtained it or no. For *Amalazontha's* malady increased with so much violence, that her life began to be despaired of, so that there was not any person of any Quality in *Cologne*, that did not bewail the condition of these two unfortunate Lovers. *Sunnon* observed the symptoms that happened to *Amalazontha*, and all the while his lips were open to nothing but his sighs ; and his eyes served to no other use, but to behold the person he loved, and to shed tears for the pains she endured. The Queen of the *Turingiens* endeavoured to comfort the afflicted *Sunnon*, she concealed for some time the greatest part of her sufferings ; but when she had no longer power to continue her kindness, and that *Sunnon* perceived what she endured ; sadly lamenting, *Ab Madam,* added he, *how kind would you be, and happy would be my fate, were it but united to yours.* My dear Princess, added *Polyxena*, with tears in

in her fair eyes, *I beseech you in the name of friendship, grant that favour to a Prince, whom you——* No, no, my dear Princess, answered the Queen of the *Turingiens*, interrupting her, *I will never grant that to the entreaties of the Sister, which I ought to grant to the merit and affection of the Brother.* Yes, Sir, pursued she, giving her hand to her passionate lover, *Amalazontha will be yours, and will die yours; she declares that she is the Wife of Prince Sunnon; and that nothing grieves her, but that she has been so long ungrateful.* Having so said, she felt her self so faint, that after *Sunnon* had returned her thanks, she bid adieu to *Rosamond* with a real tenderness. She spake afterwards but very little to *Bellamira*, *Placidia*, and all the other Princesses, to several of the Princes, and even to *Pharamond* himself. This last constraint which she put upon her spirits, contrary to the advice of the Physicians, hastened her without doubt to her end. For no sooner had she turned her self towards the King her Spouse, to address her last words to him, but she fetched her last gasp; manifesting thereby, that all her tenderness was for that Prince to whom it was due. But oh, the wonderful effects of love! no sooner had she yielded up her last breath, but the passionate Prince expired at the same moment: So truly we may aver, that the soul of a Lover is in the person beloved, rather than in the body which it enlivens: Thus did *Amalazontha* and *Sunnon* end their lives, who at the same time had submitted to different fetters under an unlucky Planet.

The Princes and Princesses in *Cologne* were extremely afflicted at their death; and for some days there was nothing but a gloomy sadness, where before there appeared nothing but mirth and joy. But as if these sorrows had been necessary to set off the publick rejoicings that succeeded, we may safely say, that there was never any thing so magnificent as those Festivals, at the Marriages of the most illustrious Heroes and Heroesses in all the world at that time. Nevertheless, there was nothing in all that pomp, which equalled the charms which those illustrious Lovers found in their mutual conversations, more sweet and pleasing than ever they had been before.

But instead of making a rehearsal, which would be too large, I will conclude with a discourse conformable to their impatience; only giving this account, that the enjoyment of the fairest Beauties upon earth was at length the reward of those Princes, who in all the world best deserved them. *Pharamond* espoused the incomparable *Rosamond*, and was declared King of the *Gauls*. *Theobald* reigned in *Bohemia* with the most adraired *Bellamira*, to whom the King of the *Huns* restored all the Dominions of the King his Father. *Viridomar* went into *Suevia* with the Princess of the *Franks*. *Honorius*, who came to *Cologne*, took *Constance* to be his Associate in the Empire, and gave him the fair *Placidia* for his Empress: he also granted *Aquitain* to *Wallia*, who espoused *Theodolinda*, and added *Catalonia* to his Territories, *Sigeric* being slain by his own people. *Constantine* by his marriage with *Octavia* united both the *Britains* under his Dominion. *Balamir* with *Agione* possessed the upper and lower *Hungary*. And *Martian* some time after espoused *Pulcheria*, and was Emperour of the East. *Varanez* changed no more, but all his life long loved the Princess *Sydemiris*, whom he espoused at *Iffedon*. The King of the *Lombards* had *Gilismene* for his reward. *Marcomire* with *Albisinda* reigned in *Franconia* and *Turingia*. And *Aldemar*, to whom they were all beholding, was happy in his beloved *Melasimba*. In a word, all the Lovers that were at *Cologne* attained the felicity to which they had aspired. For as for *Gondioch*, he would not come near a City where *Pharamond* enjoyed that happiness which he had always envied him.

F I N I S.

University of California
SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY
405 Hilgard Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90024-1388
Return this material to the library
from which it was borrowed.



3 1158 01180 4522



D 000 001 507 3

